THE THEATER OF HONOUR AND KNIGHT-HOOD.

OR

A Compendious Chronicle and Historie of the whole CHRISTIAN WORLD.

CONTAINING

The Originall of all Monarchies, Kingdomes, and Estates, with their Emperours, Kings, Princes, and Gouernours; Their *Beginnings, Continuance, and Successions,* to this present Time.

The First Institution of Armes, Emblazons, Kings, Heralds, and Pursuiuants of Armes: With all the Ancient and Moderne Military Orders of Knight-hood in euery Kingdome. Of Duelloes or single Combates, with their Originall, Lawes, and Obseruations. Likewise of Iousts, Tourneyes, and Tournaments, and Orders belonging to them. Lastly of Funerall Pompe, for Emperours, Kings, Princes, and meaner Persons, with all the Rites and Ceremonies fitting for them.

Written in French, by ANDREW FAVINE, *Parisian:* and Aduocate in the High Court of Parliament.

M. DC. XX.

LONDON

Printed by WILLIAM IAGGARD, dwelling in Barbican, and are there to be sold. 1623.

TO THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE, SIR HENRIE MOVNTAGVE, Knight, Lord Baron of *Kimbalton*, Viscount *Mandeuille*; *And Lord* President of his Highnesse most Honourable Priuie Councell, &c.

ANACHARSIS *the wise Philosopher (Right Honourable, and my most esteemed Lord) writing to* Crœsus *the rich King of* Lydia, *concerning the Maiestie of Historie and Chronologie, wherein the Grecians excelled all other Nations, vsed these Words;* Historie, and Chronologie, in their essentiall vnderstanding; Are the Treasure of passed occasions; the patterne of such as are to succeed; the Picture of Mans Life; the Touchstone of our actions; the effecter of our Honor. *And as* Cicero *(ioyning in iudgement with him) affirmeth:* That they are the Testimony of Times; the Light of Trueth; the Life of Memorie; the Mistresse of Life, and the Messenger of Venerable Antiquitie.

The reading of Chronicles and Authenticke Histories, doe giue vs an instant sight of such things, as Millions of men haue tried with losse of their Liues, Goods, and Honour; beeing made wisely perspicuous by their perill, and prouoked to loue the vertues of other Men, which else we our selues could neuer attaine vnto.

This great and learned Labour, concerning the very soule of all that formerly hath bin said, or can be any way else enstructed; being yours by long since precedent promise, and more effectually

yours by present performance: Aduentureth it selfe into the wide Worlds view, craving no other Shield of safetie, then your Honourable protection, to defend it from the ranckling Tooth of Enuious Detraction, and the snarling reproaches of backe-byting Whisperers, whose crookednesse in iudgement, would gladly make all other mens like theirs, and bark at the Moone, when they haue nothing else to bite at.

Accept it Noble Lord, as I make no doubt but you will: And all my best abilities, while this poore old body of mine hath an houre to breath, is

Your Honors in all dutie,

MVSEVM
BRITANNICVM

W. I.

The French AVTHOVRS Epistle Dedicatorie.

To the most Noble and Learned Lord, *Monsieur Maistre* NICOLAS LE CLERC, Lord of *Franconuille*, of *Tremblay*, of Saint *Remy*, &c. Counceller to the King in his High *Court of Parliament at PARIS.*

THe Poet *Euripides*, being aduised by his Friends, to put forth (for publique view) a Worke written by his owne hand, which they esteemed to be of worth, and to Dedicate the same to *Archelaus*, King of *Macedon*; made them this answere.

To a Rich man I must no poore Gift send,
That may my folly iustly reprehend:
Or else suspect thereby, that giuing so,
I begging aske great Bounty to bestow.

Hauing communed with you some yeares past, concerning this Worke, roughly hewne by mine owne hand; you iudged it worthy to see day-light, vnder the Fauour and Name of some Prince, or great Lord. And then, I requited your aduice with those Verses of *Euripides*. For in mine owne Naturall disposition, I am of a quite contrarie humour to them, that set all to sale, and make a price of their paines. Experience hath alreadie twice resolued mee, that in this Iron Age, the Dedication of painfull Labours to Great Persons, vnder hope of meeting with deserued Recompence; is vainely sayling to the *Indies* of *Peru*, and by such a cutting North-west Winde.

Sweating vnder the Armour of Learned *Minerua*, full Fiue and Twentie, if not Thirtie yeares, trauayling day and night, to choose the fayrest Flowers growing in the Worlds best stored Gardens, and then offering them to Great men: All your recompence will bee but Crimosine Taffata fine tearmes, as thus. *Beleeue mee* (Sir,) *it is an Historie of exceeding great Trauaile: Therein are many curious and costly Recherches: You are a Worthy Man: And you merite much.* Like to the Bottle of *Simonides*, of *Grands-Mercys*, full of nothing, but Winde and Smoake of the Court.

Est Labor ingratus, quem debita præmia fallunt.

Because Recompence is the Nursing Mother of Arts and Sciences.

The Reigne of *Alexander* the Great, swarmed with braue Spirits, excelling in Know-

Knowledge and Learning: as also rare Artizans, who indeede (to speake vprightly) were not borne vnder the Reigne of *Alexander*, but made by *Alexander*. a Liberal and Magnificent Prince, especially to them that knew any thing. He heaped no mean store of goods on *Aristotle*, and his Followers: yea, he honoured the memorie of the Greeke Poet *Homer*, because he had celebrated that of *Achilles*.

For he knew by sound and setled iudgement, that all that a great Prince could doe, to sauour of Excellencie in his life, was but comparable with clapping the hands and fingers, which maketh no Sound or Hermonie whatsoeuer (the Symbole of a Man dying without Memorie, among the Ægyptians) if in his life time he did no good to them, that could draw him out of the Charnell-house of Obliuion.

Such men are they, as may raise their Tombes and Monuments, vpon a Module and Patterne more excellent a thousand times, then that of *Memnon* the Æthyopian Prince, which was made with such Artificiall cunning: that his Statue fixed thereon, yeelded a most pleasing Hermonie to heare, at all times, and as often as the Worlds great Eye the Sunne, came and darted his Golden Beames, in at the eyes and mouth of the same Statue.

Princes of the Earth, are as subiect to death, as the poorest and meanest Peazants in the World. *Mors Omnibus ex Natura æqualis est: Obliuione apud Posteros, vel Gloria Distinguitur.* So speaketh the Noble Historian *Tacitus*, in the First Booke of his Histories.

Hfter this common passage, and this generall Procession, although they are no more then *Skelitons*, couered either with Marble or Brasse: yet notwithstanding, they reuiue, and see all the Sunnes golden dayes, onely by the Pennes of Learned and skilfull Writers, who engraue their Memorie with the Instrument of Immortalitie.

.. .. *Monumentum Ære perennius,*
Regalique situ Pyramidum altius.

But this is to be vnderstood of such, as are truely louers of Arts and Sciences, being bountifull to the maintenance of them: Otherwise, their liues are iustly worth nothing, and their Actions of greatest Fame and report, no more then as the sound and clapping of hands, or fillipping the fingers. Hereupon it was, that the queint and Learned *Sapho*, emblazoning an ignorant person in generall; made this Epitaph for him, during his life time.

To Graue thou carriest all, thus dead,
Because thou hast not gathered
The Roses on Pieriaes Mount:
That flourish by the Siluer Fount.

The *Rose* is the Liuery of the Muses, and the Hieroglyphicke of such as loue them: So *Plutarke* enstructeth vs, in the third Booke of his Table discourse. Whose Memorie shall neuer perish by the Wheele of Time.

Virum laude dignum Musa vetat Mori:

Because that

Ἀμάραντον Μουσῶν τίμιαι ἀμαράντινοι εἰσί.
Th' Immortall Sisters Chaplets in their Bowers;
They wither not, as doe all other Flowers.

To you my Lord it is, that I offer this Worke, and giue it to publique view, vnder the fauour of your liking and allowance. It is a Chaplet or Garland, composed and combined with all kindes of Flowers, gathered in the Gardens of the Kingdomes and Prouinces of the World. To you, who perticularly (among all the Learned men of this Age) that haue a solid and perfect knowledge, of all

all whatsoeuer Nature hath produced; euen from the Hisope and the Ant, so farre as to the Cædar of Libanus, and to the Royall Eagle: But more principally, you haue most certaine and vndoubted knowledge, in all things that haue past for excellent and famous, in the Parliament of *France*, yea, all that concerneth the distribution of Iustice, the chiefest Piller of this Monarchie.

You are the Refuge and Sanctuarie, of all such as make profession of Learning, whom you loue and cherish without any feigning. Whereby plainely appeareth, that it was not without good cause; that your Noble Great Grandfathers (renowned in their times for knowledge and Learning) did beare (as now you doe) in their Armes, the Colour and Liuerie of the Immortall Sisters: *D'Argent Clair-& luisant, au Cheuron d'vn Azur Bleu-Cæleste, accompagne de Trois Roses d'vne Riche couleur, Deux en Chef, & Vne en Pointe.*

By your singuler humanitie towards mine and me, God hath enabled me with the grace and leisures, to beget and cloath (vnder you) this Infant of my Spirit. And therefore, such as it is, it is yours, and if it can doe any seruice or benefit in publique; the honor is onely due to you. And for so many good turnes and fauours, as I haue already, or can receiue from you: I wish those of Heauen to you, and (my good Lord) desire of God with all my heart, that he will be pleased, to blesse you with perfect health, happie and long life.

At Paris, *from your House, this fifteenth day of June,* 1619.

Your most humble and deepely obliged
Seruant for euer:

ANDREVV FAVINE.

A BREVIATE of the Ten Bookes.

ooke 1. The Originall of *Armes, Emblazons, Escocheons, Targets, Shields, Helmets, Crests, Mantles, Kings, Heraulds, Pursuiuants of Armes, Crownes, Wreaths, Rewards, Recompences, and Ceremonies obserued in Creation of Knights.*

ooke 2. The Originall of *the French; their Kings from time to time, their Iustice, Courts of Parliaments, Precedency, Riuers, Lands, Vniuersities, Bishopprickes & Ceremonies at Coronations, with all their Orders of Knighthood.*

ooke 3. Orders in France, of *The Gennet. Crowne Royall. Starre. Broome-Flowre. Ship. S. Michael. Holy Ghost. Christian Charitie. Mount Carmell. Orleans. Bourbon. Aniou. Mary Magdalen. Bretaigne. Knights of Battaile. Mines vnder Ground. Besiedges, and Accollades.*

ooke 4. Orders of *Flanders, the Low-Countries, and the Golden Fleece.*

ooke 5. Orders of *England. Scotland. The Bathe and Garter. S. Andrew.*

ooke 6. Orders of *Spaine: As Nauarre. S. James. S. Julian. Alcantara. Calatraua. The Band. The Doue. Montreall. Arragon. Montesa. Our Ladies Glasse. Christus. Portugall. D'Auis.*

Booke 7. Orders of Germany, *The Dragon. Bohemia. Hungaria. Austria. Polonia. Denmarke. Sweden. Cleueland. Teutones. Liuonia. S. Gall. Switzers Cantons.*

Booke 8. Orders of Italy. *Military Orders made by Popes. Knights of the Virgin Mary. Orders of Citties, and Commonweales of Italy. Sauoy. S. Maurice. S. Stephen.*

Orders of *Florence. Mantua. And Montferrat.*

Booke 9. Orders of the *Holy Land. Cyprus. Lusignan. Armenia. Sepulcher. Malta. S. John Ierusalem. Rhodes. Templers. S. John of Acres. S. Thomas. S. Lazarus. S. Gerion. S. Blase. East and West Indiaes.*

Booke 10. Orders of the *Nine Woorthies of the World. Originall of Duelloes, Fights, Combats, Iouستes, Tournaments, with their Appeales, Answeres, Ceremonies, and all whatsoeuer appertaineth thereto. Of Military Paines, Punishments, & degradation of Noblemen. Ceremonies obserued at Funerals: Of Kings, Princes, Lords, Knights, Gentlemen, and meaner persons.*

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the whole ten Bookes of this Historie.

The First Booke.

OF Armes, Blazons, their Original, Antiquity, and continuance vnto these times. Chap. 1

Of Escutcheons, and Shields, Targets, & Bucklers; their Originall and vse in all Nations. Chap 2

Of Helmets, Crests, and Mantles: their Originall and Honourable vse in all Christian Kingdomes. Chap. 3

Of Kings, Heraldes, and Pursuiuants of Armes. At what time they first beganne, as also of their first titles and appellations among the ancient Romaines, and other great Nations. The high honor of their Office, and estimation with Emperors, Kings, and Princes; and punishment inflicted on such as dared to strike or wrong them, &c. Chap. 4

Of Militarie Honors, Rewards and recompences, first deuised among the Romaines. As Crownes, Chaines, Collers, Girdles & Rings of Gold, bestowed on such as could best deserue them. Also, how Crownes, Scepters, and Diadems came first into vse, and became as hereditary vnto Emperors, Monarches, Kings, Princes, and other degrees of Nobilitie in all Christian Iurisdictions, &c. Chap. 5

Of such Ceremonies as were obserued in elder times, in the Creating and giuing Armes to the seuerall Orders of Knighthood, and to Esquires and Gentlemen of meaner ranke, for their better encouragement to Military exercises. Chap. 6. & vlt.

The Second Booke.

OF the Ancient Originall of the French, in contradiction of former fables. Chap. 1

Of the Migrations and passages of the Sicambres, and other people of Germanie into Gaule, and on this side the Rhine. Chap. 2

Of other Migrations and shifting of places, of the Sicambres into Gaule, as also into Germanie. Chap. 3

At what time the Sicambrians & Swenes tooke the names of French and Allemaignes, according to the truth of Antiquitie. Chap. 4

The Militarie exploits of the French, before the Conquest of the Gaules. Chap. 5

Of King Pharamond, disproouing him to be the first King of the French. Also, of the Originall of the Salique Law. Chap. 6

Of Clodion, surnamed the Hairy, because he wore his haire very long. Chap. 7

Of King Merouens, and what honourable actions hapned in his time. Chap. 8

Of Childericke sonne and successor to Clodion, expulsed the space of eight yeares from his kingdome; but afterwards restored againe, by meanes of his faithfull Councellor Widomarus. Chap. 9

Of great Clouis, who was the first Christian King of France; and by what happie meanes he first condiscended to forsake his Idolatry, and was baptized. Chap. 10

Of the Miracle of the holy Viole or Bottle, and other memorable accidents, happening at the Sacring of King Clouis. Of the Armes and Banners of France, and cheefely of that

of Saint Denis in France. Of healing or curing the Disease called the Kings Euill: And of the Soueraigne authority in Archbyshoprickes, Byshoprickes, and other Spirituall Benefices. Chap. 11

Chap. XII.

Of the hand of Iustice, or Soueraigne marke of Authoritie, carried by the Kinges of France onely.

Of their Royall Throne, and great Seale.

Of the Greatnesse of their Court of Parliament.

Of the Peeres and Chancellors of France.

Also of Princes, Straungers, voluntarilie submitting themselues to the iudgement of the Parliament at Paris.

Chap. XIII.

Of the Excellencie and Precedencie, of the Kings and kingdome of Fraunce, beyond all other Nations of Christendom whatsoeuer.

Chap. XIIII. & vlt.

Of the Ceremonies kept and duely obserued at the Sacring and Crowning the most Christian Kings of France, with especiall solemnitie.

THE THIRD Booke.

OF those seuerall Ordes of knighthoode, as haue (from time to time) been instituted by the most Christian Kinges of France, and Princes of their Blood.

The Order of the Gennet, established by Charles Martell, in the yeare 726. and vpon what occasion: It being the first Order of Knighthood, that had been knowne in France.

The Order of the Crowne Royall, Instituted by king Charlemaigne, in honour of the Frisons, who carried themselues worthily in his warres XXXII. yeares, against his enemies the ancient Saxons. Which Institution was in the yeare, M. CCC.II. ending the Lyne of the Merouingnians and Carlouingians.

The Order of the Starre, instituted at Paris by King Robert, sur-named the Deuout, sonne of the valiant Hugh Capet. And this institution was in the yeare, MXXII.

The Order of the Broome Flower, in the cod or huske, Instituted by the King called Saint Lewes, ninth of the Name, in the yeare, MCCXIIII.

The Order of the Ship, called, Of beyond the Seas: and of the double Cressent, or halfe Moone. Instituted by the same king S. Lewes, in the yeare MCCLXIX.

The Order of S. Michael, Instituted by K. Lewes, eleauenth of the name, in the Citie of Amboise, and in the yeare MCCCCLXIX.

The Order of the Holy Ghost, Instituted at Paris, by the most Christian King of France and Poland, Henrie third of the name, and in the yeare, MDLXXIX.

The Order of Christian Charitie, Instituted by the same King Henrie the third, for the releefe and maintainance of poore Captaines, and Souldiours maymed in warre.

The Order of Mounte Carmell: and of Saint Lazarus, reuiued againe (after a long time of ceasing) by great King Henrie, fourth of the name, at Paris, and in the yeare, MDCVIII.

The Order of Orleans, tearmed of the Hedge-hogge or Porkepine: Instituted in the yeare, M.CCCCXCIII. by Monsieur Lewes of France, Duke of Orleans.

The Order of Bourbon, tearmed of the Thistle, and of our blessed Lady: Instituted at Moulins in Bourbonnois, and in the yeare, MCCCLXX. by Monsieur Robert of France, Count of Clermont,

mont, sonne vnto the Great King Saint Lewes, the Ninth of that Name.

The Order of Aniou, called of the Cressent, or halfe Moone: Instituted in the Cittie of Angiers, in the yeare, MCCCCLXIIII. by the good King Rene.

The Order and Crosse of Saint Marie Magdalene, deuised by a woorthie Gentleman, named Iohn Chesnell of Bretaigne, in the yeare of our Lord, MDCLXXX.

The Order of Bretaigne, tearmed of the Hermine, and of the Eares of Corne: Instituted by Frances Duke of Bretaigne, last of the name, in the yeare MCCCCL.

Concerning Knights of Battayle, Besiedges, the Mine, and the Accolade, hugging or embracing.

The Contents of the Fourth Booke.

THE Orders of Flanders, and of the Low Countries.

Chap. I.

The Order of the Golden Fleece, Instituted in the Cittie of Bruges, in the yeare of our Lord, M. CCCC. XXIX.

Chap. II.

Of the first Dukes of Bourgongne.

Chap. III.

Of such as were the second Dukes of Bourgongne, but of the House of France.

Chap. IIII.

The second and last Lyne of the Dukes of Bourgongne, which were issued of the House of France.

Chap. V.

The Institution of the Order of the Golden Fleece: The number of the Chapters, and the Knights thereof.

Chap. VI.

Of Homages done and rendered to the most Christian Kings of France, by the Counts of Flanders, and them of Henault, &c.

Chap. Vlt.

Concerning the Prouinces and Seigneuries of the Low-Countreyes.

The Contents of the Fift Booke.

The Orders of Great Bretaigne.

Chap. I.

OF the Order of England, tearmed of the Blew Garter, Instituted in the year MCCCXL.

Chap. II.

The Institution of the Orders of England.

Chap. III.

The Order of Scotland, called of Saint Andrew: Or, of the Thistle, and the Rewe.

Chapters, Names, and Armes of the Knights of the Round Table.

The Contents of the Sixt Booke.

Orders of Kingdomes belonging to Spaine.

The Order of Nauarre, *tearmed of the Lilly, Instituted in the yeare,* M.XL. VIII.

Chap. I.

The Originall of the kingdome of Nauar, *And true Etimologie of the Name.*

Chap. II.

The Genealogie of the Kings of Nauarre, *and a true Summarie Chronologie of their Reignes.*

The Order of Saint Iames, *tearmed of the Sword. Instituted in the kingdom of* Leon, *in the yeare* MCLXXV.

The Order of Saint Iulian, *called, of the Peare-Tree, Instituted in the Kingdome of* Leon, *An.*MCLXXVII.

The Order of Alcantara, *Instituted in the kingdome of* Leon, *& in the year* MCXIIII.

The Order of Calatraua, *Instituted in the Kingdome of* Castille, *and in the yeare,* MCLVIII.

A particular Chronologicall relation, concerning the Originall of the Kingdom and lineall discent of her Gouernours and Kings succesiuely.

The Order of Knights of the Crosse, *& of the Red Scarfe, Instituted in* Castille, *and in An.*MCCCXXX.

The Order of the Doue, *or of the Holie-Ghost, Instituted in the City of* Segobia *in* Castille, *and in the yeare,* M. CCCLXXIX.

The Order of S. Sauiour of Monireall: *Instituted in the kingdom of* Arragon *and in the yeare,* MCXX.

The Originall of the kingdome of Arragon, *and succession of her Kings.*

The Order of Montesa, *Instituted in the kingdome of* Valentia, *and in the yeare,* MCCCXVII.

The Order of the Glasse *of the blessed Virgin* Mary.

The Order of Iesus Christ, *commonly called,* Of Christus: *Instituted in the Kingdome of* Portugall, *in Anno,* MCCCXX.

The Originall of the kingdome of Portugall, *with a Chronologicall Relation of her first Gouernors, and succeeding Kings.*

The Crosse and Armes of the Order called D'Auis: *Instituted in the Kingdome of* Portugall, *in the yeare,* M. CXLVII.

The Seauenth Booke.

The Orders of Allemaigne, *or those properly belonging vnto Germany.*

The Order of the Dragon *ouerthrown, or turned vpside downward, Instituted by the Emperour* Sigisinond *in* Allemaigne *and* Bohemia, *in Anno* MCCCCXVIII.

The Genealogie and Original of the kings of Bohemia, *and the true Chronologie of their succession.*

The Order of Austria, *as also of* Carinthia; *called by the name of* S. George.

The Genealogie and Original of the house of Austria; *according to the best and most approued Chronologers, and Historians.*

The Order of Polonia, *called by the name of the* White Eagle.

The Original and Genealogie of the kings of Poland, *as also the Etimologie of the word.*

The names, sirnames, Armes, and qualities of the Ambassadours of the kingdome of Poland, *which came to* Paris, *to conduct thence Monsieur* Alexander *of France, elected king of* Poland, *and afterward King of France, by the name of* Henry *the third.*

The Order of Denmarke, *termed, of the* Elephant.

The Original and Genealogie of the kings of Denmarke, *and how the Countrey became so named at the first.*

The Order of Sueden *or* Suetia, *called by the name of* Iesus: *or of the Seraphins*

The Originall and Genealogy of the kings of Sueden, *and first Armes.*

The Order of Cleues, *or* Cleue-Land, *called of the Swanne: And how the Countrey was first so called, with the succession of the Rulers, &c.*

The Crosse *and Order* Teutonical, *termed of* Prusia: *And of the table of Honour, Instituted in the yeare,* M. CXCI.

The Originall of the Teutonicall *Order, beginning first in the Holy Land, by an* Allemaigne, &c.

The Institution of the Order of Liuonia, *tearmed, Of the Brethren Sword-bearers.*

The Order of the Beare, *called of Saint* Gall *in* Swetia: *Instituted by the Emperour* Fredericke, *second of the name, in Anno* MCCXIII.

The Names and Armes of the thirteene Cantons of Swetia: *And of their Allies or Confederates.*

The Eighth Booke.

The Orders of Italy.

Of such Orders as were instituted by the Popes of Rome: not Monasticall, but Military Orders.

The Order of Knights, of the most happie Virgin Mary, *the mother of God: Instituted in the City of Rome, in Iuly, Anno* MDCXVIII.

Orders of Common-weales *and* Cities *of* Italy.

The Order of Sauoy, *called of the Annunciation.*

The Originall and Genealogie of the Dukes of Sauoy.

The Institution of the Order of the Annuntiation *by* Amadis *fift of the name, Count of* Sauoy; *And vppon what occasion, An.*MCCCLV.

The Crosse of the Orders of Saint Maurice; *And of Saint* Lazarus *in Sauoy.*

The Institution of the Orders of Saint Maurice, *and S.* Lazarus.

The Order of S. Steuen, *Pope, called, of* Florence.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Dukes of Florence.

The Order *of the precious blood of our Sauiour and Redeemer Iesus Christ, called,* The Order of Mantua.

The Genealogie of the Dukes of Mantua, *and of* Monferrat.

The Ninth Booke.

The Order of the Holy Land: *Of the East, and of the Indiaes.*

A Summarie Discourse of the Voyages made into the East, by the Princes and Paladines of France.

The Order of Cyprus, *and of* Lusignan, *termed of the sword.*

The *Originall & Genealogie of the kings of* Cyprus, *and of* Armenia.

The *yeares of the seuerall Reignes of the Kings of* Cyprus.

The *Names and Armes of the Families, issued of the famous house of* Lusignan

The Crosse of the Order of the Holie Sepulcher of Ierusalem, *beeing the first and most auncient of all those of* Palestine, *and the* Holy Land.

The Crosse of the Order of Malta, called The Hospitable Brethren of Saint Iohn Baptist of Ierusalem.

The Ceremonies kept and obserued in the deliuery of the said Order.

The Crosse of the Order of the Knights of the Temple: commonly called, Knights Templers.

The Rules obserued by the poore Knightes Templers in the Holy City.

The Crosse of the Order of Saint Lazarus.

The Crosse of the Order of S. Katherine of Mount Sinai.

Of diuers other Militarie Orders of the Holy Land.

As, the Knightes of Saint Iohn of Acres.

The knights of Saint Thomas, instituted by the king of England, Richard first of the name.

The knights of Saint Gerion, Instituted by the Emperour Fredericke Barbarossa, consisting onely of Gentlemen of the Germane Nation.

The knights of Saint Blase, Byshoppe of Armenia, &c.

Of other Orders obserued in the East: as also in the East and West Indies.

The Contents of the Tenth, and Last Booke.

Seuerall Tracts: the first, of the Nine Worthies of the world.

The second of Fights, Duelles, and combates, fought at the sharpe, and to the vttermost perill.

The third, of Appeales: and how a man ought to forme his appeale: Also, in what case a man may be appealed: and with what Armes hee is to combate.

The fourth, the ordaining of Combates and Duelles; and the Ceremonies to be obserued by the Combatants at extreamitie.

1. Of foure things especially appertaining before the Gadge of Battaile, may bee adiudged.
2. How the Defendant should come to present himselfe before the Iudge without being adiourned.
3. That no Gage is to be giuen, in the case of theft.
4. How the Appellant is to propose his case, before the Iudge of his appeale.

How if any of the Parties depart vvithout taking his leaue, hee is to bee censured on the Kings behalfe.

Of the three seuerall Cryes or Proclamations: and also of the Fiue Defences vvhich the King of Armes, or Herald ought to make to al gages of battel

How the Appellant should come on horsbacke into the Fielde, armed with all his Armes.

Of the Requests and Protestations which the two Parties ought to make, at their entring into the field.

How the Lists is to be ordered, as also the Appellants Pauillion, and the Scaffolds about the place.

Of the Oathes which such are to take, as will combate vnder Gage of Battaile.

The Defendants Oath taken before the Iudge.

The third oath, which both the Parties do take before the Iudge.

The answer to the oath of the appellant, by the defendant.

The third and last crie, made by the king of Armes, or Herald.

How the two Parties are to come foorth of their Pauillions, to do their deuoire at the voyce of the Marshall, and casting downe his gloue.

In what manner the gage for battel ought to be granted: and how the Conqueror should drag the vanquished out of the Field.

How the vanquisher ought to depart out of the Lists honourably.

The end of the ordinance of Duelles and Combates.

Of Iousts, Tourneyes, and Tournaments, with their first Inuention.

The number of Iousts and Tournaments, held in Germany.

The

The Tourney performed in Normandie, in the time of King Lewes the younger, the seuenth yeare of his reigne.

Of Militarie paines and punnishments, and degradation of Noblemen.

Of Ceremonies kept and performed, at the Obsequies and Funeralles of Kinges and Princes: with the full description, according to the order in France: As also the manner of Sacring of the most Christian Kings,

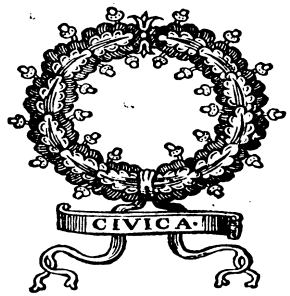
Of Ceremonies kept and obserued, at the Obsequies and Funeralles of Knightes of Order, and Gentlemen of note.

FINIS.

Soli Deo Laus, Honor & Gloria.

See the Deſcription of theſe ſeuerall Romaine Crownes at large, in Pag. 40. 41. and 42.



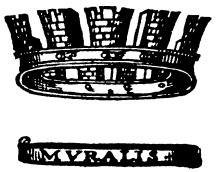




See the Deſcription of this Coine, Fol. 41.





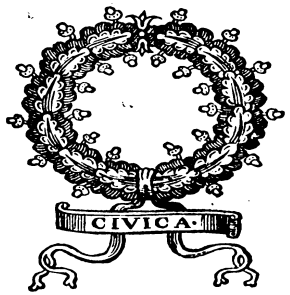






See the Deſcription of theſe ſeuerall Romaine Crownes at large, in Pag. 40. 41. and 42.



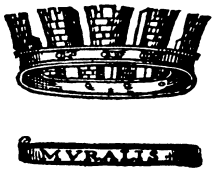




See the Deſcription of this Coine, Fol. 41.











See the Deſcription of the Emperors, Kings, Dukes, Marqueſſes, Counts, and Viſcounts, their ſeuerall Crownes,

in Fol. 43.

FRANCE.





ENGLAND.



SPAINE.



PRINCES Crowne.



MARQVES Crowne.



DVKES Crowne.



EARLES Crowne.



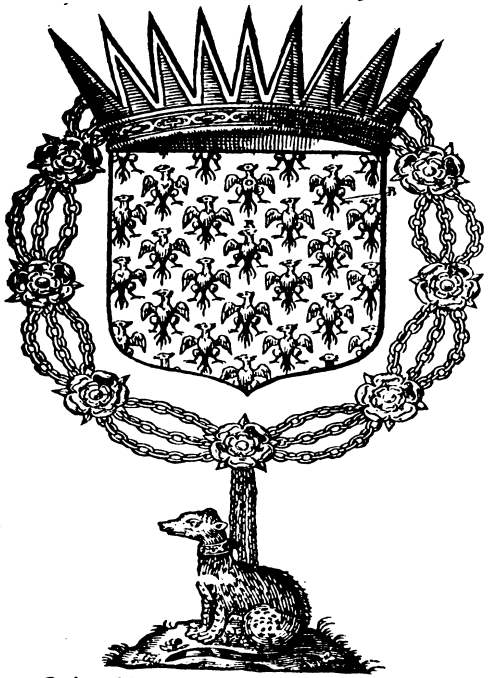
VISCOVNTS Crowne.



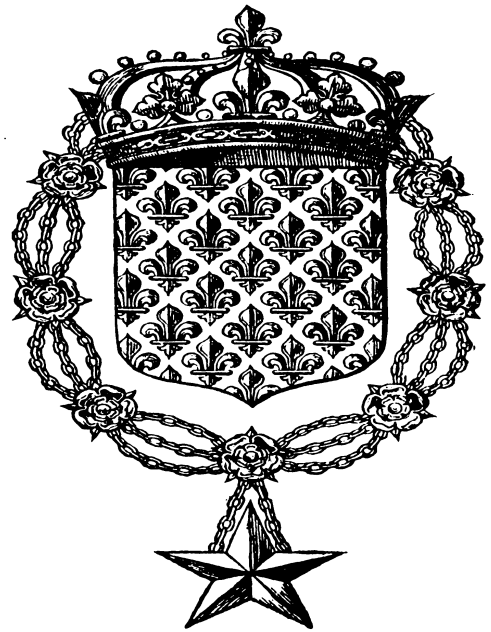
ORDER of the *Holy-Bottle*, Folio 39. and 301.



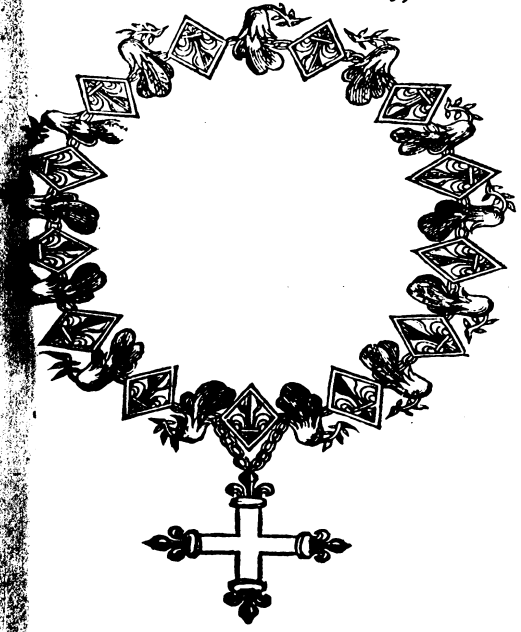
ORDER of the Gennet. Fol. 312.



Order of the Starre. Fol. 323.



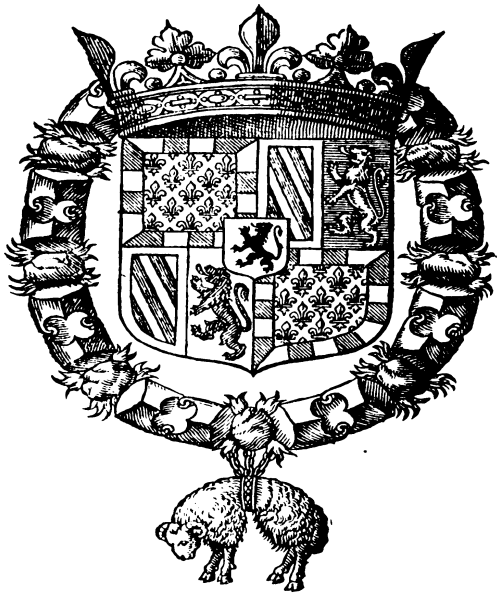
Order of the Broome-Flower. Fol. 351.



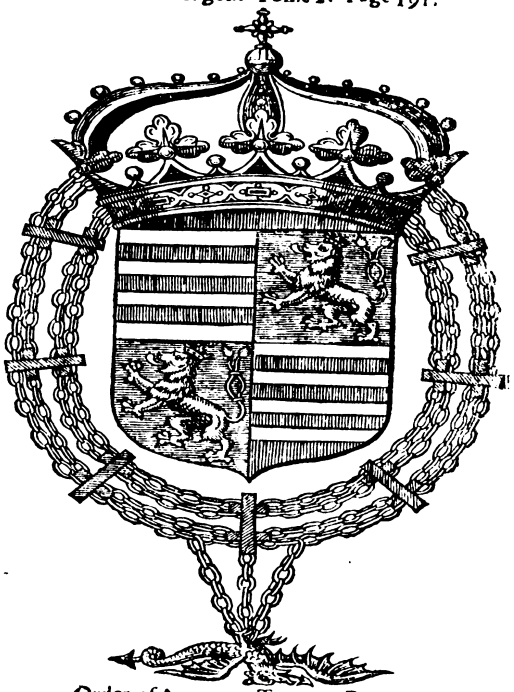
Order of the Ship. Fol. 359.



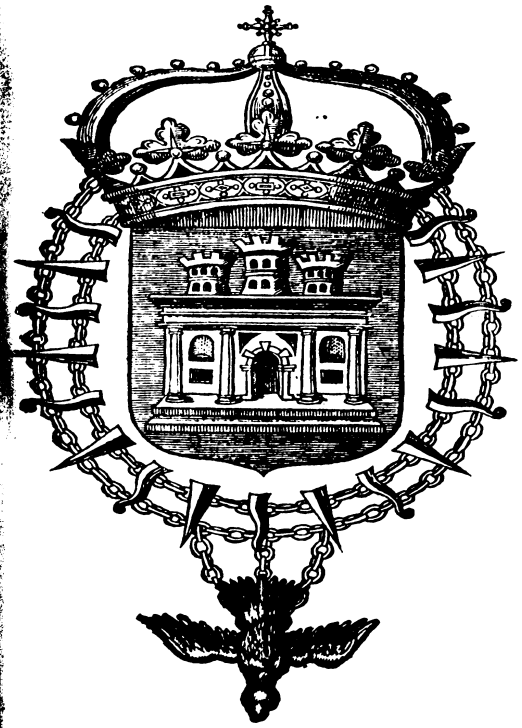
Order of the Golden Fleece.
Tome 2. Pag. 14.



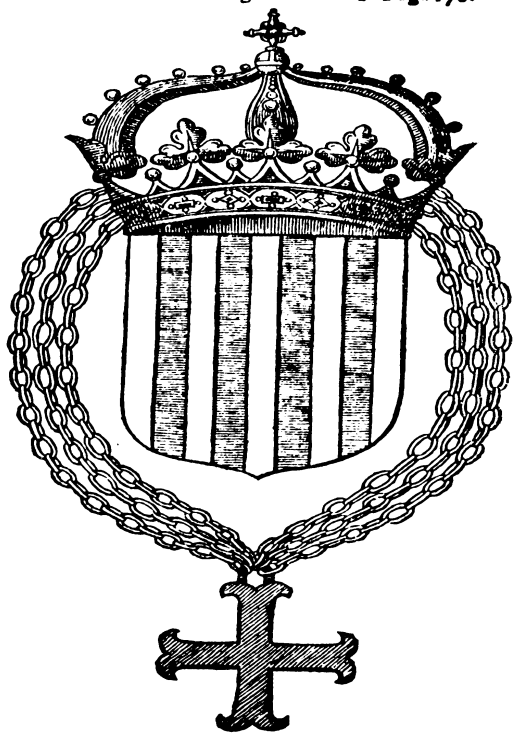
Order of the Dragon. Tome 2. Page 191.



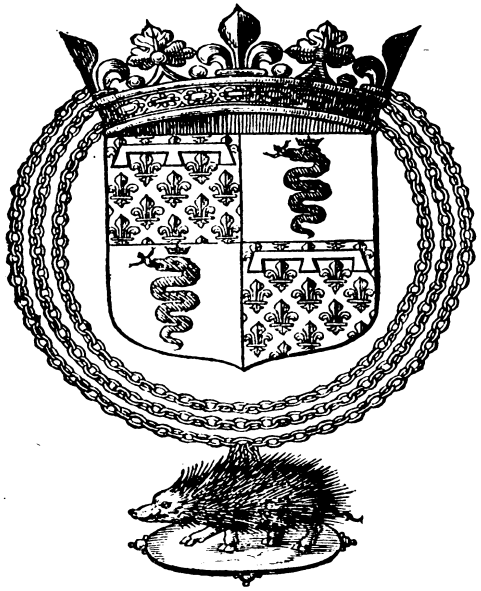
Order of the Doue. Tome 2. Page 167.



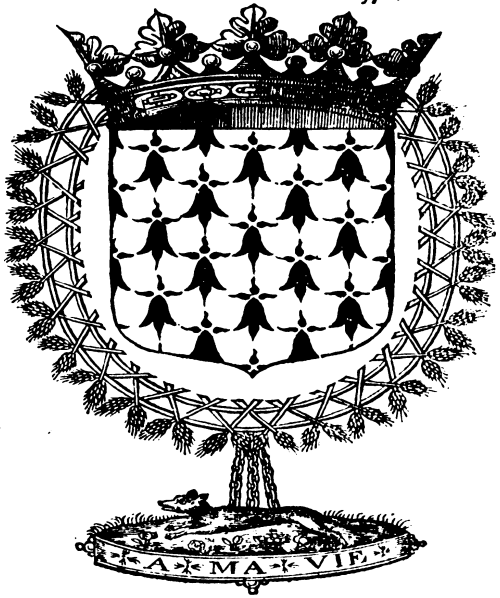
Order of Arragon. Tome 2. Page 176.



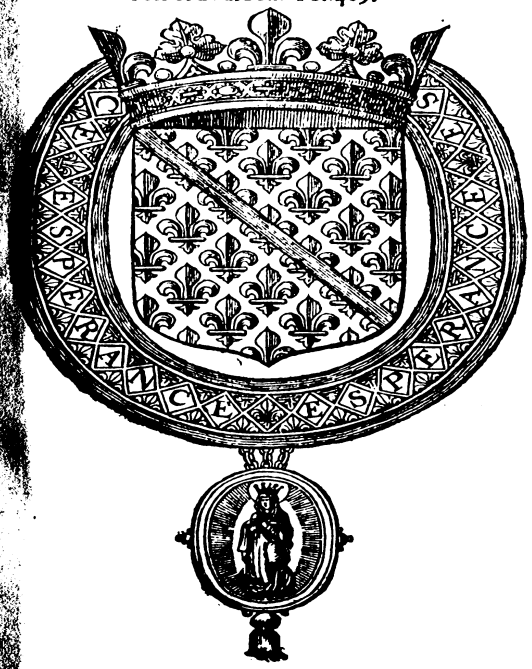
Order of Orleance. Fol. 449.



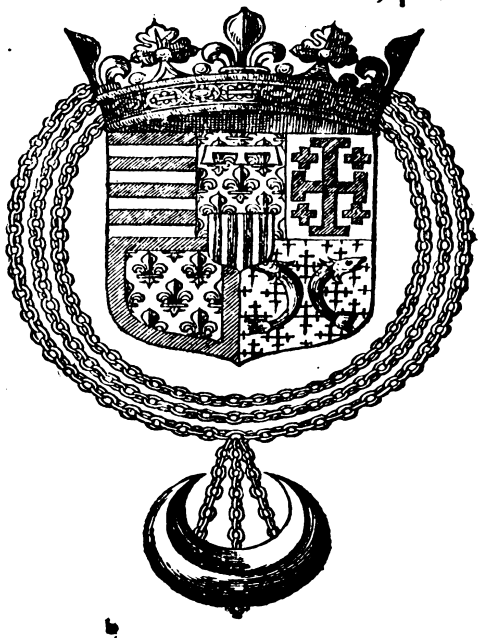
Order of the Hermine. Fol. 572.



Order of Bourbon. Fol. 489.



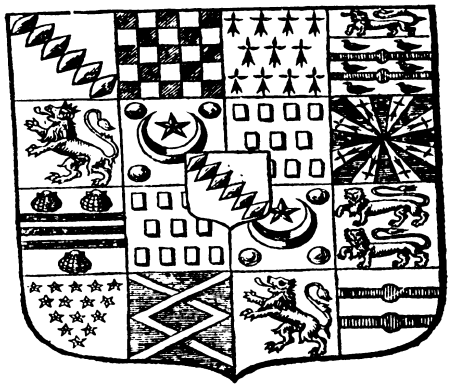
Order of Aniou. Fol. 546.



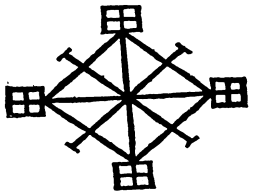
Order of S. Magdalen. Fol. 551.



The Armes of the Author of the Order of S. Magdalen. Fol. 552.



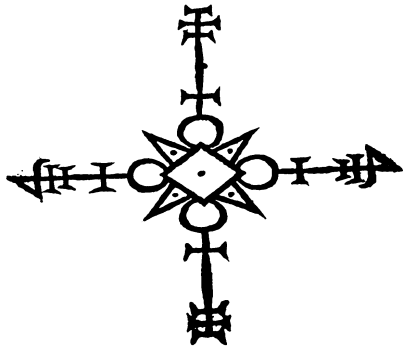
The figure of a Seale Folio 529.



Order of Mount Carmel, Fol. 447.



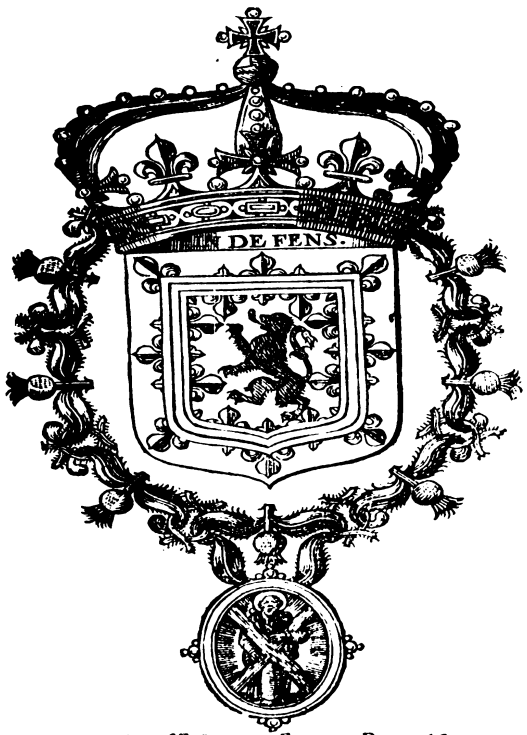
Another Seale, Fol. 530.



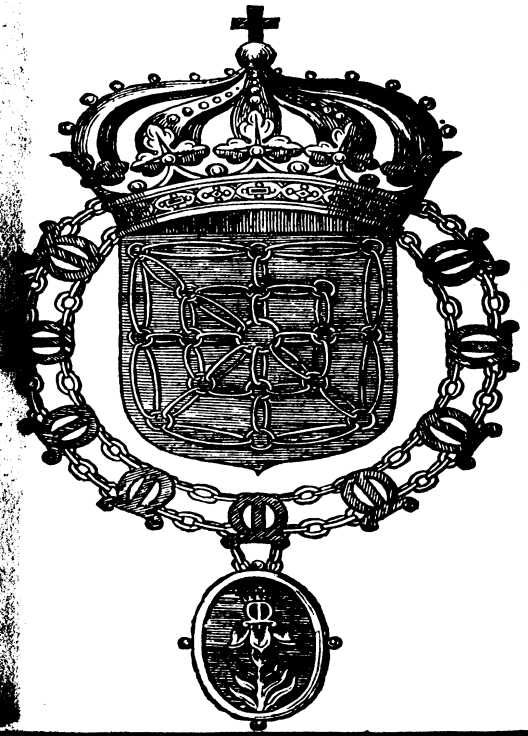
Order of England. Tome 2. Page 35.



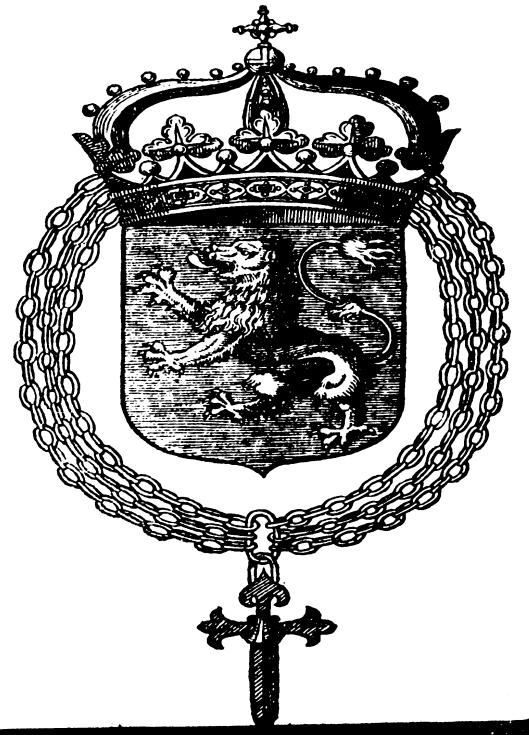
Order of Scotland. Tome 2. Page 79.



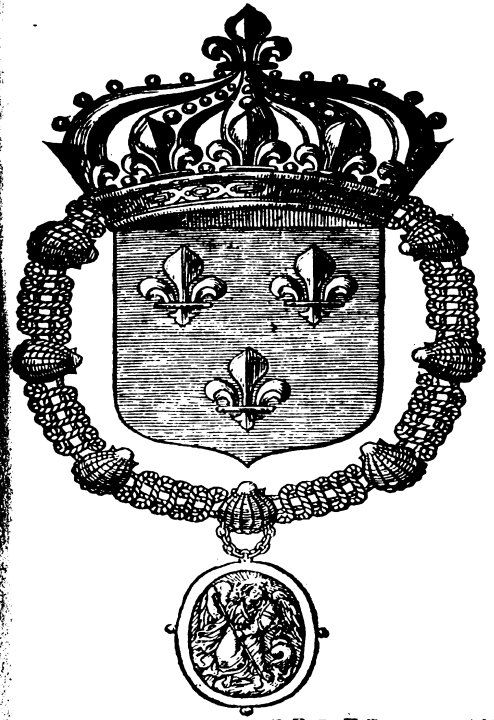
Order of Nauarre. Tome 2. Page 111.



Order of S. Iames. Tome 2. Page 136.



ORDER of S. Michael. Fol. 371.



ORDER of the Holy-Ghost. Fol. 391.



ORDER of Christian Charity. Fol. 414.



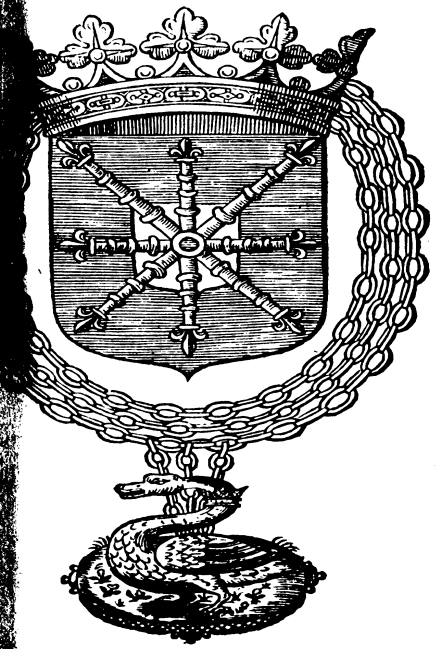
Order of Chriſtus, and D'Auis. Page, 188.



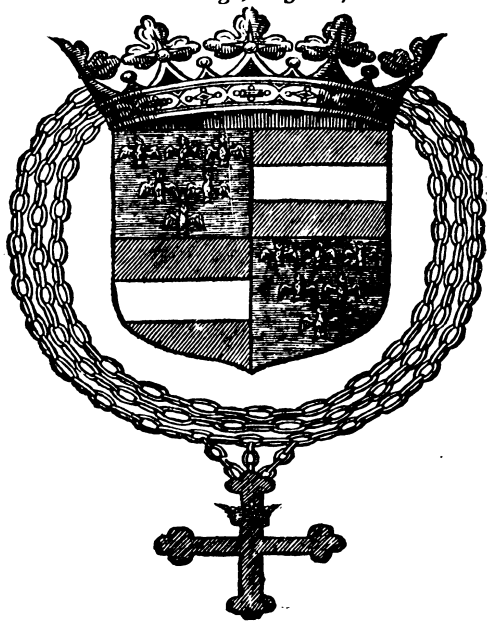
Order of Denmarke, Page 245.



Order of the Swan, Page 248.



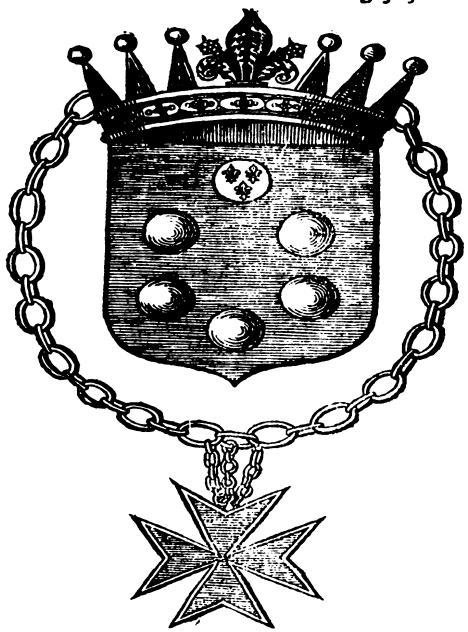
Order of S. George, Page 217.



Order of Savoye. Tom. 2. Page 311.



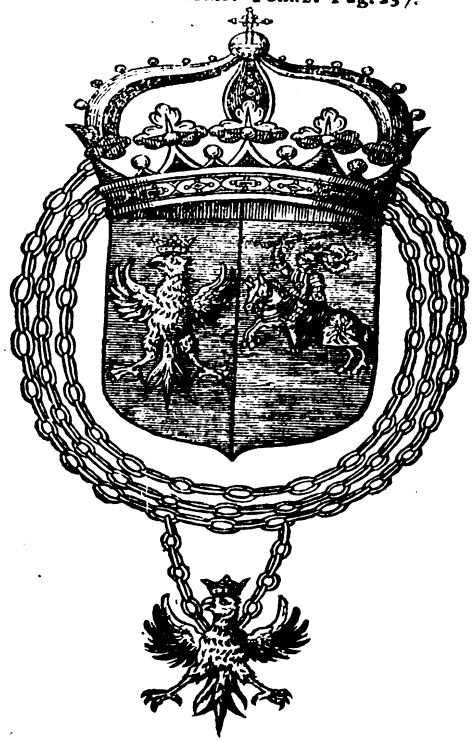
Order of Florence. Tom. 2. Pag. 323.

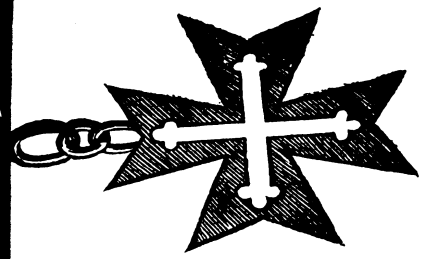


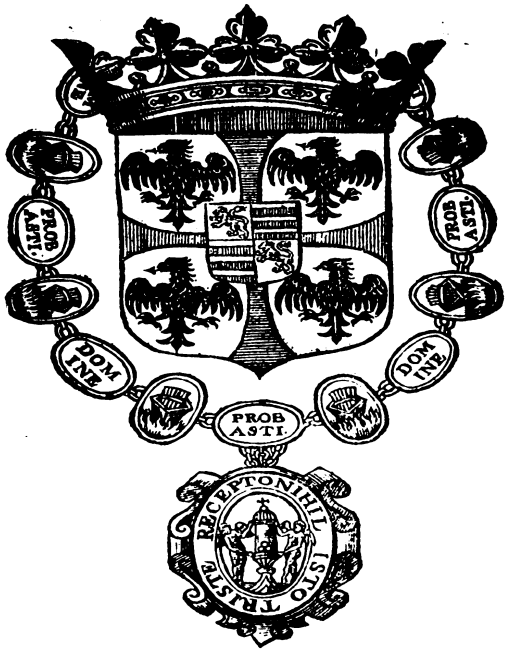
Order of Sweden. Tom. 2. Pag. 246.

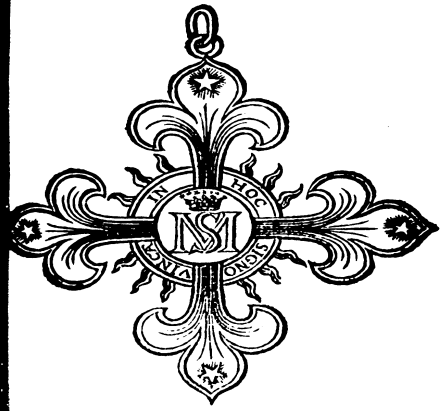


Order of Polonis. Tom. 2. Pag. 237.

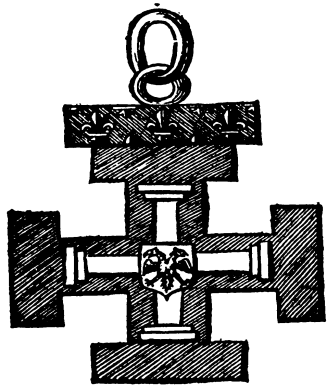




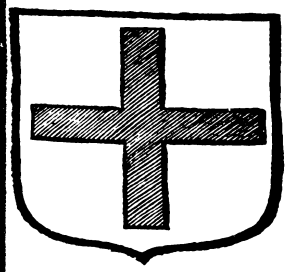

PROB ASTI
DOM INE
DOM INE
PROB ASTI
ESTO TRISTE
RECEPTONIHIL

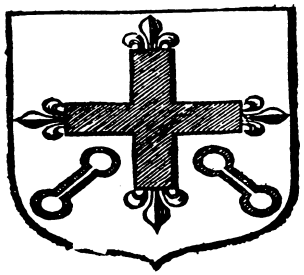

IN HOC
SIGNO
VINCES ORDIS













The Order of the Beare, both fully and amply expreſſed in this faire Figure : Containing a liuely Deliniation of all the Thirteene Cantons, the Allies and Confederates ioyned with them, and all the ſeuerall Coats of their Armes. Wherein you may bee at large ſatisfied, if you pleaſe to peruſe the Diſcourſe, in Page 275. Tome. 2.



THE THEATER OF HONOR AND KNIGHT-HOOD.

CHAP. I.

Of Armes and Blazons, and their Antiquity.

THE Romaines were wont to acknowledge for Noblemen (whom properly they termed *Patricians*) such as their Fathers and Grandfathers had beene Senators or Knights: Thereby to learne and instruct vs, that there are two meanes, whereby to atchieue and conserue the Title of Nobility: namely, Armes, and Letters or Learning. And from these two professions, are come the titles of Excellence, and Honor of Armes, & Knights of Learning, both in the auncient Romane right, and our owne Annales.

Noblemen by Armes, and likewise by Learning.

For, like as they which managed Armes for seruice of the Prince, did beare their titles of Honour, as Counts, Marquesses, and Dukes, for the Gouernment of Bayliwickes, places on the Frontiers, and intire Prouinces: So in the same manner, such as for their ability and capacitie in Learning, were called to the Princes seruice, and so had continued for the space of two and twenty yeares, in action of the same exercise; such a one obtained the title of Count Palatine, or Count of Learning, and ware the Pearled Circle or Collar, and Guilt spurs. According to the Pragmaticall sanction of the Emperor *Theodosius* the yonger, the 1. *de Professoribus*, at the *Code Theodosian*, dated the Ides of March, in the yeare of Grace, foure hundred, twenty six, and the nineteenth of his reigne.

Lib. de profess. Code Theod.

Now, although that Nobility alone, is so properly called onely by Vertue, according to the truest opinion,

Nobilitas sola est, atque vnica virtus;

And that the Title of Noble doth not appertaine iustly, but to him that hath walked in the pathes of vertue, making himselfe to be famous by his owne industry, according to the remarkeable tract of the Amorous Poet,

Nam Genus & Proauos, & quæ non fecimus ipsi,
Vix ea nostra voco:

Yet notwithstanding, such is the case, that vse or custome hath so much preuailed, that now we call them Noblemen, as are issued or descended from Father and Grandfather, by one of the two forenamed meanes, or else by both of them together. Howbeit, it is much more honorable to be (by one of those means) rather the First, then the last of his Race. As the Orator answered them, who were Noblemen by extraction, but Yeomen or Plebeyans by their depraued liues. Such a one was called a Gentleman of the first Tappe (whose Lance stood at the Hay-stack) in meere contempt.

More Honour for a man to be the first, then last of his race.

Ego cæteris meis maioribus virtute meâ præluxi.

And ordinarily it commeth so to passe, that the Bramble is a Queene, and the Hysope commandeth the Cedars of Libanus. So the Scripture informeth vs, as much to say, that in the *Degree of Nobility, the last go before the first.*

Descendunt Statua.

It is Vertue alone, which distinguisheth men one from another, and the glorie and honour acquired by our Ancestors, noted in Histories and Authenticke Marbles: but lost,

Vertue onely maketh men Noble.

loſt, or rather growne ruſtie by our negligence, through defect of imitating their Vertues, becauſe

Nothing heere beneath is conſtant,
For all things change in an inſtant:
Vnder the circle of the Moone.
One hundred yeares a Banner-Bearer,
Another hundred yeeres a Barrow-driuer.

So ſaith the Ancient French Prouerbe, grounded vpon truth it ſelfe.

All is ſubiect to the Wheele of Time.

Monimenta fatiſcunt,
Mors etiam ſaxis, nominibuſque venit.

To ſerue as the burthen of the ſong, and for a Leſſon (a thouſand times repeated) to the Prince and Ploughman, to the Gentleman and peaſant.

Nobilitas ſola eſt, atque vnica Virtus.

And this degree of Nobilitie, atcheeued by vertue onely, doth both acknowledge and diſtinguiſh it ſelfe by Armes, giuen (as a recompence thereof) by the Prince onely, and Blazoned (according to the naturall diſpoſition and courage of the perſon ennobled) by the King of Armes, to whom the doing thereof onely belongeth, anſwerable to the rules and precepts of the Noble Art of Painting.

The Orders of Knighthood from Antiquity.

For this cauſe it is, that by the Ordinances made from all Antiquity, concerning the Orders of Knight-hood, this Article is alwayes the firſt. That the parties named to enter the Order of Knighthood, muſt ſtand bound by Letters, Titles, Partages, Foundation: and other Acts Publique and Authenticke: whether they be Gentlemen of three Paternall deſcents or races: And whether the Armes which they beare, haue bene borne by their Fathers, Grandfathers, and great Grandfathers. This Ordenance (practiſed in all times) ſhall ſerue vs as the ſubiect, for this our diſcourſe of Armes.

Antiquitie of Armes and Blazons.

From the Creation of the world (which was the firſt Age) Armes and Blazons haue bin in vſe. We will verifie this vndoubted Maxime, by the particularities of each Nation and Prouince, and from Age to Age.

The learned Rabbines do teach vs, that before the Flood, the children of *Seth*, ſonne to the ſole Monarch of the world the Patriarch *Adam*, ſeeing that they who were deſcended of *Caine*, addicted themſelues to all wickedneſſe, which was Idolatry, forgetting the worſhip of one onely God, Creator of Heauen and Earth: they reſtrained their Families within the tearmes of dutie, and perſeuerance in the feare of God. And the ſame was continued ſo ſtill by *Enos* the ſonne of *Seth*, famous in the Sacred Hiſtorie for his deuotion. For this cauſe, the children of *Caine* were called the ſonnes of Men and Gyants: And the other baptized with the name of Angelles, *Filij Dei & Angeli qui cœperunt orare in nomine Domini*: As in Gen. 4, 26.

Geneſis 4, 26.

Theſe men, to continue their Families in the feare of God, and to withdraw the children of *Caine* from their Idolatry, yea, to leade and guide them (by the hand as it were) to the worſhip and knowledge of the Almighty: They made vſe to themſelues of Symboles, and of Hieroglyphickes, and by the figures of Animals, Simples, brute beaſtes, and other viſible things, which fall vnder the ſenſe, are ſeene, and touched, both with the finger and the eye, they drew them by degrees to thoſe things which were inuiſible. For there is not any man, how ruſticke or groſſe conceited ſoeuer he be, who both ſeeing and hearing the young birds at the breake of day, to warble (by way of thankeſgiuing) their dumbe praiſes and prayers: Alſo the * *Helioſelinum* and the * *Selenitis*, mouing and turning themſelues, to regard and follow the motion of the Sun and Moone with a very ſweete and pleaſing murmure: but he muſt needs confeſſe, that theſe ſecond cauſes are agitated and moued to do thus, by a primary and firſt cauſe, that is to ſay, by one onely God, the Author of all theſe meruailes. The world being a booke laid open, wherein may be read (both in great and leſſer Letters) the admirable effects of his Almighty power.

viſible things inſtructed the knowledge of them inuiſible.

* An Hearbe hauing but one leafe.

* A ſtone, encreaſing & decreaſing as the Moone doeth.

The ſelfeſame exerciſe was (after the Flood) reduced into practiſe, by the good Patriarches *Sem* and *Iaphet*, to turne away the children of deteſted *Caine* from their depraued liues, plunged euen in the gulfe and depth of all Idolatrie. For, by the Arke or Ship made by *Noah* the Patriarch, they enſtructed them to obſerue the diuine prouidence, as the conſeruator of the whole vniuerſe, who ruled and gouerned all things therein.

The Arke an inſtructer to knowe the worlde Creator.

By

By the repreſentation of a thicke ſpreading Forreſt, they vnderſtood Nature, termed of the Greekes *Hyle*, and thereby alſo receiued intelligence, that as from forth ſuch a Forreſt, the matter is taken, which ſerueth for the ſtructure of many buildings: euen Nature her ſelfe ſerued as a Nurſerie or fruitfull Orchard, for the generating & yeelding all things whatſoeuer. One of which meanes, our great God made vſe of, for the producting of Elementarie bodies.

How Nature was vnderſtood.

The ſelfeſame diuine Prouidence was likewiſe repreſented, by the painting of a ſcepter, and by one Eye figured thereon: in regard that God ſeeth all, ruleth all, and directeth all, continuing alwayes right, that is to ſay, exempt, at libertie, and free from all humane paſſions and changes.

From notion and knowledge of the Diuinitie, they went on ſtill, and deſcended to inferiour cauſes, which we call Seconds, to induce their Families, to ſhun, deteſt, and abhorre vice, for the embracing of Vertue, and addicting themſelues to all good things. By Simples, Hearbes and Rootes, they gaue inſtruction (euen as if it were by tablature) to gouerne themſelues morally, and the like by other Creatures.

Knowledge of ſecond and inferiour cauſes, and what they vnderſtood by them.

By the Oxe and the Poppie, they deſigned Fertility: By the Pomgranate, the ſociable and coniugall communitie of Man and Wife: By the Oliue, Peace and Tranquility: As alſo their contraries, by the figure of a Horſe, the Symbole of warre, in regard that

Bello armantur Equi, Bellum
hæc armenta minantur.

By the Iuy and the Laurell, euermore beautified with flouriſhing leaues, they vnderſtood the immortall memorie and faire fruits of Vertue: As by the Cypreſſe they acknowledged Death and Obliuion. By the Storke they ſignified Honour, Loue and dutie of Children to their parents. By the Turtle-Doue they meant Chaſtity: As by the Goate, Luſt and Impudicity. The Lyon, power and Command: The Sun, the Yeare: The Moone, the Moneth: The Starres, Night: the Fire, Day: and other ſuch like Figures, as they are made remarkeable by S. *Clemens*, and S. *Cyrille* both *Alexandrians*. And according to their teſtimony, we are taught, that the great Patriarks of the ancient Law, *Moyſes*, *Salomon*, and others, made vſe of theſe Figures, to giue knowledge (by them) of ſecond cauſes: by notion whereof, we are exalted to penetrate the heauens, for comming to that of the Diuine Eſſence.

Clemens Alexandrinus & S. Cyrill.

Zonarus, a Greeke Authour, in the firſt booke of his Annales, and the firſt Chapter, hath remarkeably ſet downe (following the doctrine of the Rabbines) that the deſcendants of *Noah* being multiplyed, and (by conſequent) diuided into Families & Tribes: were knowne by their Armes, and name of the Prince from whom they deſcended. The ſame Rabbines ſay, that the Patriarch *Noah* gaue for Armes the Lyon (the Symbole of Command and Royaltie) to his eldeſt ſonne *Sem*, and to *Iaphet* the youngeſt, whoſe linage was to acquire the title and right of Primogeniture or elderſhippe, aboue his elder brother, and to command ouer the children of *Cham*, and all the Nations of the earth. According to the propheſie and bleſſing of the holy Patriarke in Geneſis the ninth Chapter. *Dilatet Deus Iaphet, & habitet in tabernaculis Sem ſitque Chanaam ſeruus eius. Sem* and *Iaphet* bare then for Armes, *L'Eſcu d'azur vne Lyon rampant d'Or.*

Zonar. in Annal. Lib. 1. ca. 1.

Armes giuen by Noah to his ſonnes Sem & Iaphet.

Gen. 9, 26, 27.

That in their imitation, *Cham* (and his ſonne *Chanaan*, plunged in, and addicted to all wickedneſſe) tooke for his Armes, *L'Eſcu de Synople vne Leopard Argente, tauele & mouchete de Sable.*

That *Iſmael* the ſonne of *Hagar* the ſeruant of *Abraham*, tooke the ſame Armes: *Auec la leurre verde en ſes accouſtrements.* Which alſo was held by his deſcendants, with the naturall fiercenеſſe and crueltie of the Leopard.

The Armes of Cham and his race.

The ſelfeſame Rabbines, expounding the nine and fortie Chapter of Geneſis, where the Patriarke *Iaacob* lying on the bed of death, gaue his bleſſing to the two Children, Heads and Princes of the twelue Tribes, and linages of *Iſrael*. There (they ſay) that he gaue them for Armes and deuiſes, that which the naturall inclination of each perſon, ſeemed beſt to ſignifie, Armes which their children and deſcendants retained and kept carefully. As much they ſay vpon Exodus and Deuteronomy, and that *Moyſes* willing to enter the promiſed land of Canaan, which God had giuen them to conquer, and to demand backe from the deſcendants of *Cham*, becauſe the poſſeſſors held it by no valuable title, *Torquem ab iniecta poſſeſſoribus*: That he cauſed the children of Iſrael to aſſemble by Tribes, Bands, Enſignes, and Banners, which hee diuided into foure Battalions,

Gen. 49, 8, 9.

or foure *Corps d'Armées*.

The 4 battalions of the tribes of Israel

The Banner of the Tribe of *Iuda*, which marched in the head of the Hoast, and w the Collonell, had vnder it the Tribes of *Issachar* and *Zabulon*, holding to the East p The hoast of *Reuben* encamped themselues South, being followed by the Tribes of *meon* and *Gad*. Towards the West, marched those of *Ephraim*, with the Tribes of M *nasses* and *Beniamin*, the very least of all. And to the North, the Tribes of *Dan*, and *Nepthaly*. In the midst of these foure Battallions, marched the Priests and Leuites, bearing the Arke of the Couenant, and the Sacred vessels.

Each of these foure heads, or principall Conducters, *Iuda*, *Ruben*, *Ephraim* and *Dan* had a Colonell before his hoast and Battalion. The Colonell of the whole Armie was that of *Iuda*: Being *D'Azur (c'est Bleu Celeste) au Lyon rampant d'Or.*

The Colonells of the tribes described with their Armes and Colours, the 4. cheefe Leaders.

That of *Ruben*, *De gueulles au Belic (c'est la couleur Rouge) a l'Homme armé d'Argent.*

Ephraim had his *De Sable (c'est Noir) au Boeuf passant accorné d'Or.*

And *Danne*, hee likewise, *portoit Synople (c'est Verd) au Serpent Dragonné d'Argent.*

In Armes, there are no more then two Mettalles, *Or & Argent*, Gold and Siluer: And foure Colours, *Azure*, *Gueulles*, *Synople & Sable*, Blew, Red, Greene, & Black. Mettall vpon Mettall, and Colour vpon Colour, are false Armes, if they be not quartered: Otherwise, they are subiect to question, and are good, beeing priuiledged by Princes and Soueraigne Lordes, and giuen vnto particular men by graunt. If not, they are *false*, and deserue not the name of Armes, but of fooleries, and foppish deuises.

The other eight Tribes had their Standards, each answereable to the colour of his Colonell, but with different charge, agreeable to their greatnesse.

The standards of the other 8. tribes, & theyr Armes.

Isachar portoit d'Azur a l'Asne passant d'Argent.

And *Zabulon*, *D'Azur au Nauire arme & fresté d'Argent.*

They which were of *Rubens* Hoast, *Simeon portoit de Gueulles, a deux Espees d'Argent en Sautour.*

And *Gad* gaue likewise, *De Gueulles a l'Espee d'Argent, mise en Pal, la pointe embas.*

Vnder *Ephraim* was *Manasses*, *Qui portoit de Sable au Sceptre Couronné d'Or*: Because hee was the eldest sonne of the Patriarch *Ioseph*, and hee that had the first lotte in the Land of Promise. To him appertained the Royaltie and the Priesthood, whereof he was despoyled, because he had not honoured his father.

Beniamin portoit de Sable au Loup passant d'Argent.

Vnder the Tribe of *Dan*, was that of *Aser*: *Qui portoit de Synople semé d'Espics de Bled d'Or.*

And that of *Nepthali*, *De Synople au Cerf sommé d'Or.*

This is thus remarked by the Rabbines, in the place before alledged, and on the second Chapter of the booke of Numbers, and the first and second Verses. *Loquutus Dominus ad Mosé & Aaron dicens, Singuli iuxta VEXILLVM suum, & sub SIGNIS domus Patrum suorum, castra ponant filij Israel, e Regione, & in circuitu Tabernaculi fœderis castra ponent.* The Lord spake to *Moses* and *Aaron*, saying, Euery man of the Children of Israel, shall campe by his Standard, and vnder the Ensigne of their fathers house: farre off about the Tabernacle of the Congregation shall they pitch. Which passage they interprete by the nine and fortieth Chapter of Genesis, and by the third plate of their High Priest, garnished with twelue precious stones, and on each of them was engrauen the names, and the Armes of the Tribes of Israel.

They adde beside, that *Iosuah* hauing caused the children of Israel, to passe ouer the Flood Iordane dry foote, he procured euery one of them, to place a great Stone vpon the banke of the fayde Flood, at the highest boundes thereof, and on each of them was carued the Names and Armes of the twelue Tribes, to serue as a figurale memorie vnto posterite, of that myraculous passage. And those twelue Stones, about the time when our Sauiour Christ conuersed among men, serued as titles and proofes of Nobility among the Iewes, to declare their extraction.

The 12 stones on the bankes of Iordan, bearing the names and Armes of the Tribes.

Saint *Iohn*, speaketh of the like Stones, representing the peoples dissolute and depraued liues, in the third Chapter of Saint *Matthews* Gospell. *Putchris ex Deo Abrahæ filios suscitare*, God is able, euen of these stones, to raise vp children to *Abraham*.

Saul in like manner, appointed to bee King ouer the Children of Israel, tooke for the Armes of his kingdome, the Ensigne Colonell of the Tribe of *Beniamin*, whereof he was descended. And *Dauid*, being called in his place (as one worthier then hee) tooke that of the Tribe of *Iuda*, whereunto the Patriarch *Iacob*, had transferred the right of Elder-shippe, and the appurtenances of Royaltie and the Priesthoode, as it is saide in the nine and fortieth chapter of Genesis, the eight and nine verses. *Iuda te laudabunt fratres tui, manus tua in cernicibus inimicorum tuorum, adorabunt te filij Patris tui.* Thou Iuda, thy Brethren shall praise thee, thine hand shall bee in the necke of thine enemies, thy fathers sonnes shall bow downe vnto thee.

Dauid had the Armes of the Tribe of Iuda.

The same Patriarke, blazoning the Armes of his sonne *Iuda* (which the Rabbines deuise to bee *D'Azur au Lyon rampant d'Or*) saide: *Iuda, requiescens accubuisti vt Leo, quis suscitabit eum?* He shall couch downe as a Lyon, and as a Lyonnesse: who shall stirre him vp? *Dauid* taking the Lyon for his Armes, caused it to bee engrauen in his Signet or Seale Royall, yea, and on his monies, which helde in currant course, vntill the declination of the Iewish Estate, according as it is set downe by *Rabbi Abraham*, in his historicall *Cabala*.

Iudaes Armes blazoned by his Father.

These Armes were conserued by the great King *Salomon*, who blazoning on them in the thirtie Chapter of his Prouerbes, saith: That amongest all the Creatures on earth, there are three which doe exceede and surpasse the rest. Also hee compareth them to Princes, as thus: *Tria sunt quæ bene gradiuntur, & quartum quod incidens fœliciter. Leo fortissimus bestiarum ad nullius Panebit occursum. Gallus succinctus lumbos, & Aries; Nec est Rex qui resistat ei.* The Lyon, King of Beasts, hath alwayes beene the Symbole of Royaltie, for his Generositie, conioyned with his clemencie, neuer running on any Beast which is humble to him. In like manner, in a good Prince:

Pr. 30, 30, 31.

Hailli erunt artes,
Parcere subiectis, & debellare superbos.

In the verie height of his anger, hee qualifieth it of himselfe, so soone as a Lambe is present before him, the Symbole of mildenesse and clemencie. For this cause it was, that the Diuine Poet *Du Bartas*, made the Lyon a Schoolemaster to Princes, thus:

The Lyon a Schoolmaster to Princes.

You Kings whose hands are arm'd with Iustice sword,
Pardon the subiect, to Rebelles death afford.
The generous Lyons vertue imitate,
Who neuer frownes vpon a Soldier prostrate.

The Assyrians (as the same Rabbines affirme) being so called of *Assur* son to *Belus*, who conquered Chaldea (afterward named Assyria) from the descendants of *Nemrod*, the sonne of *Chanaam*; tooke for the Armes of their Monarchie, *L'Estendard vert au Bel or d'Argent.* Their money, stamped with a Ramme, had course throughout all the East, noted in the Scripture, in Genesis the three and thirtie Chapter, the nineteenth verse, and in the seuenth of the Actes of the Apostles, the sixteenth verse. In memorie of this *Belus*, represented by a Ramme, the Assyrians, Ægyptians, and other people of the East, did so reuerence that creature, as they durst not eate thereof. So we read in Genesis the sixt, the one and twenty verse, and the three and fortieth Chapter, the fiue and twentieth verse.

The Armes of the Assyrians Monarchie.

The same Assyrians, first Authors of Idolatrie, adored their *Belus*, whom they reputed for a God; and did as much to their Queene *Semiramis*, wife to *Ninus*, called *Belochus*, placing her among the number of their Gods, charging their Standards and Banners (signed with the Leopard and Ramme) *D'vne Colombe Argentee aux aisles estendues sur le drappeau Iaune.* And the selfe-same *Colombe releuee d'Argent sur vne Escu de Sin Or*, was the first Armes for search and enquirie after. *Semiramis* in the Assyrian language, signifieth a Fowle or Bird, which serued as an apt subiect to those idolatrous people, to ranke their Queene in number of their Gods, and to say, that after hir death he tooke her flight vp to heauen, with her husband *Ninus*. According as it is obserued by *Diodorus Siculus*, in the third booke of his Annales, and the fift Chapter.

Diod. Sicul. in Annal. l. 3. c. 3

The Standard of the Ægyptians.

Now although this might be a lying and false discourse: yet so it is, that the Holie Scripture remarketh and designeth the Assyrians by this Doue, as it doth the Ægyptians by the Vulture. For, the Ægyptians *Portoient l'Estendard Iaune a l'Esprevier & Vautour de Sable.* It was also engraven in the Seale Royall of *Pharaoh*, giuen to the Patriarch *Ioseph*. So say the Rabbines, vpon the one and forty Chapter of Genesis.

Ori Apol. in Trast. Sac. Egypt. Norm.

The Ægyptians called the Vulture a Bird, without any addition, as for *Antonomasia* and excellence: Because that among all the Fowles and Birds of prey, she is the most iust, imparting equally the prey, to the Fowles which follow her: so saith *Orus Apollo* in his Treatise *De sacris Ægyptiorum notis*: *Plutarch* termeth this Fowle an Innocent, because (saith he) it feedeth a man from being offended by other creatures. Moreouer, it is the most full of pitty to her young ones, of all other Fowles that are. For, in the space of sixe and twenty dayes, abiding with them for their nourishing, she neuer leaueth them: but if she want sustenance for them, she launceth her thigh with her beak, and draweth thence blood for their food and nourishment. In like manner, this Bird was vsed as the Symbole of Iustice and Piety, and many times of Royalty: to serue as a lesson or Lecture to Princes and Monarches, for being clement and kinde Fathers to their Subiects. So I say then, that the sacred Scriptures vnderstoode the Assyrians by the Doue, and the Ægyptians by the Vulture.

A Fowle more kinde to her broode, then many Nurses to their Children.

Ier. 25, 38.

The Prophet *Ieremie* in his twenty fiue chapter, verse thirty eight, threatning the Iewish people with the comming of *Nabuchodonosor*, saith, *Dereliquit quasi Leo vmbraculum suum, quia facta est terra eorum in desolationem, a facie iræ Columbæ, & a facie iræ furoris eius.* He hath forsaken his couert as the Lyon, for their land is desolate, because of the fiercenesse of the Oppressour, and because of his fierce anger. *Nabuchodonosor* was King of the Assyrians, as it is euident in *Daniel*, and the Kings of Iuda and of Israel, led captiue into Babylon, are remarked by the Lyon, *Dereliquit Leo sub vmbraculum suum*: Because that the Kings of the twelue Tribes (diuided in their Kingdomes) bare the like Armes as King *Dauid* had taken and appointed.

Ozea 11. 11.

The Prophet *Ozea*, speaking of the Assyrians, ioyned with the Ægyptians against the Iewish people, to bring them into seruitude and slauery, saith: *Anolabunt quasi Auis ex Ægypto* (by the Bird he meaneth the Vulture) *et quasi Columba de terra Assyriorum.* They shall tremble like a Bird out of Ægypt, and as a Doue out of the Land of Assyria. And the same Rabbines interprete literally this Verse of *Dauid*, Psalme 68. *Si dormiatis inter medios cleros, pennæ Columbæ Deargentatæ & posteriora dorsi eius in pallore Auri.* Though you haue lyen among the pots, you shall be as the wings of a Doue couered with siluer, and her feathers with yellow gold. Concerning the ouerthrowe of *Senacherib* King of the Assyrians, and of his Army, wherein the Angel of God slew in one night, an hundred fourescore and six thousand men, as it is in the fourth booke of the Kings.

Psal. 68, 13.

4 Reg. 19, 35

The Banner and Armes of the Persians.

The Persians carried a white Banner, *Chargee d'vne Aigle d'Or Essloye & Couronné*, which was their principall Ensigne, as it is written by *Zonaras*, in his first Booke, and nineteene Chapter. And according to *Xenophon*, in the expedition and institution of *Cyrus*, the seuenth booke. *Erat ei signum aurea Aquila in longa hasta suspensa, & nunc etiam id insigne Persarum Regibus manet.* And the Prophet *Ozea* in his eight Chapter. *Est sicut Aquila, quæ perniciter volat, ascendet Rex cum copijs suis, & castrametabitur contra Sacrosanctum Templum Domini*: Speaking of *Nabuzaradan*, Lieutenant Generall to the king of Persia (whom the holy Scripture vnderstandeth by the name of King, without addition) which ruined the Temple of God, the Pallace Royall, and the principall houses of Ierusalem into ashes: As it is written in the fourth Booke of the Kings, the last chapter. As yet they haue the Sagittarie, as much to say, as halfe a Horse, and halfe a man, drawing a Bowe to let flye an Arrow. This Sagittarie was the stampe of their Coyne, whereon *Agesilaus* alluding, complaineth in *Plutarch*, to haue beene chased from the conquest of Asia, by thirty thousand Archers to the King of Persia: that is to say, by thirtie thousand pieces of Gold, called *Darickes*, because on the one side they had *Darius*, and the Sagittarie on the other.

4. Reg. 25, 9.

Pieces of gold called Daricks the Coyne of Persia.

Alexander the Great, hauing transferred the Monarchie of the Medes and Persians to the Greekes, retained still the white Banner, the colour and Liuerie to the Kings of Persia (so saith *Plutarch*, in the life of *Artaxerxes*) which they had borrowed from them of Iuda and Israel, who went cloathed in White, according to the custome of great King

Plut. in vit. Artaxerxis.

King *Salomon*, who shewing himself publiquely, vsed to weare a long white Robe: as is written by *Iosephus*, in the eight Booke of his Iewish Antiquities, the second Chapter.

Ioseph. in Ant. Iudaic. l. 8. c. 2

So the most Christian Kings of France, haue retained for their Colonell the colour White, bearing the Crosse and Bauldricke or Scarfe White, whereby the French are knowne in battaile from other Nations, that carry them Red, with a Crosse disguised in Saultour, vnfitly applyed to Saint *Andrew*, whose Crosse is to bee seene at Saint *Victor* of *Marseilles*, wholly resembling those whereon our Sauiour suffered, Saint *Peter*, and the other Apostles Martyrs.

The Armes of Alexander the Great.

Alexander retaining the White Liuerie, Symbole of Royaltie, and colour of the Diademe, tooke the Lyon rampant Gueulles for his Armes, forsaking the Kingly Eagle: and caused it to be engraven in his Seale Royall. An Armes, which (in his memorie) was borne by his successors, Kings of the Parthians, Medes, Ægyptians, and other Easterne Princes. *Plutarch* in the life of this Monarch writeth, that he tooke the Lion for his Armes, because his Father *Phillip* of Macedon, dreamed the first night of his marriage, that he set such a seale on his wife *Olympia*, as had a Lyon stamped or imprinted on it. This dreame might be true, yet it came so to passe neuertheless, that (long time before the birth of *Alexander* the Great, and of *Cyrus* King of Persia) their Empires had bin prophesied, That of the Persians, by a creature hauing the visage of a man, to demonstrate the clemency of *Cyrus*: That of the Greekes, by the figure of a Lyon: And that of the Romaines, by the Royall Eagle. According as it is reported by the Prophet *Ezechiel* in his first Chapter, enstructed by a Cherubin, which he called *Chobar*: Like as the Monarchy of the Assyrians (finished before) had bin represented by an Oxe.

Plutarch in vit. Alexand.

Ezek. 1, 10.

The like was obserued in the Antiquities of young *Phillip*, King of Macedon, in the bignesse of a peece of three Blancks, or of a *Carolus* with the sword, where on the one side, was the head of the King with great bushy hayre not well combed: And on the other side, a King sitting in his chaire, leaning on a small Iaueline, and holding a Gripe or Vulture on his left fist, which serued to expresse the Antiquity of Hawking. Whereby the Rabbines vnderstood that passage in the Prophet *Baruch*, his third chapter. *Vbi sunt Principes Gentium, & qui dominantur super bestias quæ sunt super terram? qui in Auibus Cæli ludunt.* Where are the Princes of the Heathen, and such as ruled the beasts vpon the earth? That had their pastime with the Birds of the Ayre. But I thinke rather, that he meant the Bird, sacred among the Ægyptians, whereof we haue spoken before. Other Antiquities are yet also to be seene, and of the like bignesse, which bee of King *Perseus*, hauing an Eagle on the one side, and on the other a Squire on horseback, which is the Sagittarie. This may seeme to demonstrate, that these Kings (ouer and beside the Lyon) retained both the Eagle and the Sagittarie of the Persians, as wel as the Vulture or Bird of the Ægyptians.

A note for the Antiquitie of Hawking.

Bar. 3, 16, 17.

The Armes of the Romaine Empire.

The Romaines tooke for the Armes of their Empire and Monarchy, the Royall Eagle, and for their Liuerie the Colour Red, as Purple and Scarlet. Their Colonell and principall Standard, which they called *Labarum*, was of purple, made square in forme, round about engirt with a frindge of Gold, carried on a Pike; In *longa hasta*, and of the same fashion as the Banners are in our parish Churches. The Heraldes and Kings of Armes called the Colour Red by foure sundry names; as Cinabre, Belic, Gueulles, and Rich colour, by reason of his brightnesse. And allowed it not to be carried, but by the Romane Emperors onely, and *Cæsars* destined to the Empire: For others were not permitted to take it, but by their concession and priuiledge.

The Red Colour had four names.

Romain Kings carried the Eagle.

The Eagle was borne by *Numa Pompilius*, *Seruius Tullius*, and other Romaine Kings. Succession of times inducted the Minotaur, the Wolfe, the Horse, the Swine or Bore. These foure beasts serued for Ensignes and Standards to the Legions and Cohortes of the Romaines, vntill the time of *Caius Marius*, who abolished the vse of them altogether, leauing the Eagle alone by it selfe, as is obserued by *Plinie*, in the tenth Booke of his naturall Historie, and the third Chapter. *Romanis Legionibus Aquilam Caius Marius in secundo Consolatu suo proprie dicauit. Erat & ante prima, cum quatuor alijs, Lupi, Minotauri, Equi, Apri, quæ singulos Ordines anteibant. Paucis ante Aquila, sola portari in aciem cœperat, relinqua in castris relinquebantur, Marius in totum ea abscidit.*

Plin. in Hist. nat. lib. 10. c. 3

Iulius Cæsar, Augustus, and their descending Emperors, *Portoient de Gueulles a l'Aigle d'Or, aux aisles estendues, & a la teste Tesse. Constantine* the Great, hauing parted in twain (as

(as it were) the Roman Empire, into that of the East, and that of the West, transforming from Rome to Bizantium, although it was the Emperiall Seate: yet he called it Constantinople, by his owne name, leauing an Exarc or Vice-Emperour as Lieutenant General at Rome, for guard and conseruation of the West. The Romane Eagle was then painted with two heads circled, which some termed *Desplayed*, and remained in common, as much to say, As Armes to the one and other Empire. Vntill the yeare of Grace, eight hundred and one, when King *Charlemaigne* (hauing by his valour wonne and conquered Italy) was crowned Emperor of the West, and honoured as he was of the Romaines, after the manner of the ancient Emperors. And for a more signale note, he wonne the Empire to the French (with deere expence of their blood) retaining in his Armes the Mettall and Colour of France, *D'Azur al'Aigle a deux Testes Esployé d'Or.* A heauy burthen on the stomeckes of numberlesse French, how it should bee so then, and Armes remayning for them too of the Empire, so farre as to the house of Saxon in Germany, who carried of their Mettall and Colour, namely, *D'Or al'Aigle Esployé de Sable.*

King *Charlemagne*, crowned Emperor of the West.

By the example of Princes and Monarches, their subiects and seruants (neerest to their persons) made themselues separate and distinguished from others, by titles of Nobilitie and Armes, which conserued their Families, and makes them to appeare aboue the common people. For, seeing that Vertue and Vice haue concurred from all times, and they do best distinguish their Louers, by contrarie Liueries to them here meant, euen as white from blacker It is no more then reason, that the Noble and Vertuous (by Blazons and Deuises) should be discerned from the vulgar. Moreouer, of those Nobles, the distinction is to be knowne by diuersitie of Armes, according to their inclination, and good or bad breeding. This is that which the Prince of Poets hath learnedly noted, of Nobleby Extraction, Science, and Learning, in his second Royall Boscage.

Of Nobility by discent, vertue, and Learning.

Celuy qui desiroit de monstrer sa Vertu,
Portoit sur le Harnois dont il estoit vestu
Ou dessus son Bouclier vne Recognissance,
Afin que par la presse on congneust sa Vaillance.
L'vn auoit vn Serpent, l'autre auoit vn Lyon,
Vn Aigle, *vn Leopard. Ainsi vn Million*
Par les Siecles passez D'Enseignes *sont venuës,*
Que les Races depuis pour marque ont retenues,
Escussons, & Blasons de leurs premiers Ayeulx,
Que la Guerre ennoblit parfaict Victorieux.

He that desires to shew his Vertue cleare,
Beares on the Armour he doth vse to weare,
Or on his Shield, a plaine Recognisance;
That thickest crowdes may know his Valiance.
One beares a Serpent; Other, hath a Lion,
Eagle, or Leopard: And so a million
(From Ages past) of Enseignes haue beene gain'd,
Which (afterward) their Races still retain'd
From their Fore-fathers; Scutcheons and Blazons knowne,
Victoriously by Warre ennobled for their owne.

Then it is a popular errour, to say, that the inuention of Armes, of Blazons and Deuises, appeared not vntil within fiue hundred yeeres, and the Voyages to the East, for Conquest of the Holy Land, Religiously attempted by many famous persons: Because (in all times) their vse is made manifest, and practised by Nations, furthest of all other from our knowledge, as the Inhabitants of the Easterne Isles.

The vse of Armes, practised at al times, and by people furthest from vs.

Those people, at the Funeralles of their *Tyrans Kings* and great Lords, caused to be born before their bodies, the notes of Honour and the Trophees, which they had wonne and brought from their enemies in warre. Those Honours and Trophees were carried in the saide Funeralles, by Knights most apparant in Valiance and Nobilitie. And to this effect, exactly they kept the practise and vse of Armes and Blazons, conserued to their Families, and carried them to the enterring of their dead. So writeth *Iosephus Acosta*, in his fifte Booke

Booke of the Naturall historie of the Indians, and the eight Chapter.

In the fourth Chapter of the same Booke, we learne by him, that the Kings of *Peru* carried in Armes, *Vne Arc en Ciel, auecques deux Coulenures estendues aux costes d'iceluy.*

The Armes of the Kinges of Peru.

That the Kings of *Mexico* carried for their Deuise, *Vne Main tenant vne poignee de fleches de Roseaux*, in remembrance and memorie of the first King of Mexico, named *Acamapixtli*, which signifieth in the Mexicane language, *A handfull of Reeds.*

That the Citie of *Mexico Tenuchtitlan*, had for her Armes; *Vne Aigle Royale aux aisles, Esployees, & la Teste eslaue regardant Soleil, comme pour receuoir sa chalcur, ayant vne bel Oyseau de Proye, vne de ses serres, & de l'autre plante sur vne Tunal, & Pierre relegue.* Because that in such a posture, this Bird was found, and in the place where the Capitall Citie of Mexico was builded, now named New Spaine: As the said *Acosta* affirmeth in the same Booke, and the seuenth Chapter.

The Citie, Armes of Mexico.

The *Tlaxcalans*, conjured enemies to them of Mexico, bare in their Standard & Banner, *Vne Grue d'Or estendant ses aisles.* And this was their Armes, as it is reported in the life of *Ferdinando Cortese*, who vanquished the Mexicanes, and conquered their chiefe City, in Nouember, 1519. And the great Standard of the same Mexicanes, when the King himselfe in person marched to the field; *Portoit vne Griffon Furieux deschirant vn Tigre, qu'il tenoit soubs ses serres.* A deuise erected ouer the gates of the Palace, belonging to the saide Kings of Mexico.

In lib. 7. Per. Cor. Cap. 17.

But what neede is there, of crossing ouer so many Seas, for this Antiquitie of Armes, and to go seeke it so farre off? We haue it at our owne doores, in regard that the Auncestors of the Gaules and French, carried for their ancient Deuise, the Ship.

The ancient deuice of the Gaules and French.

Cornelius Tacitus, describing the Customes of the Germaines (being but badly informed of their Religion) hauing seene, or heard by report, from such as had beene in the voyage of Germanie, that a Ship was figured in their Temples and Ensignes; immediatly he conceyued, that they adored the Goddesse *Isis. Pars Suevorum & Isidi sacrificat. Vnde causa, & origo peregrina sacro parum compert, nisi quod ipsum Signum in modum Liburnicæ figuratum, docet aduectam Religionem.*

The errour & mistaking of *Tacitus.*

The men of Suaba, neighbours to the Francs Sicambrians, dwelling in the Marshes of Westphalia, Cleue, & Guelderland, with Gulich, obserued the same Religion, Customes, and Policie, as the Gaules did. And as those two Nations were one selfe same people: euen so they retained (carefully) the figure of the Shippe, which *Tacitus* (in his language) tearmeth *Liburnicall*, in memorie of the passage which their Ancestours made from Asia into Europe, vnder the conduct of their Prince *Gomer*,

For by the same suiect, the ancient money of the Gaules and Germanes, were of two fashions and stampes on both sides. The one with a Lyon, Armes proper to Prince *Gomer* (the Gaules *Hercules*) on the one side; and on the other an Altar, with the number of LXIIII. which represented the sixtie and foure Prouinces of the Gauls (that extended themselues so farre as *Rhine*) mentioned by *Tacitus*, in the third Booke of his Annales, *At Roma non Treuiros modo, sed quatuor & sexaginta ciuitates Galliarum defecisse videbantur:* And thus he saw (of Antiquities) a like number on the backe side, and his figure on the other, stamped vnder the name of the Emperor *Antoninus.* And *Strabo* in the 4. booke of his Geography, and *Dion* in his 54. booke, vnderstood the Altar to be prepared in the City of Lyons, whereof *Iuuenal* thus saith:

The Ancient Coynes of the Gaules and Germaines.

Aut Lugdunenses Rhetan dicturus in Aram.

This should bee interpreted of the generall Altare of the Gaules, prouided stable and permanent by the *Druides*, within their sacred wood at the mountaine of Chartres, dedicated to the holy Virgin, that should bring forth the fruite of life.

The other kinde of Coine, had a Shippe on the one side, and a Head on the other, figuring the Image of the Patriarke *Noah*, or of his youngest sonne *Gomer*. A kinde of money brought into Italy by the first Gaules, when they went thither, and possessed it. Neuertheless, the Romaines enuying the glorie and fame of the Gaules; reserre the inuention thereof to their King *Janus Bifrons*. So saith *Ouid* in the first of his Fastes.

The description of the other Coyne.

At bona Pallenæis posuere Palatia Tectis
Hospitis aduentum testificata Dei.

Ouid in Lib. 1. de Fastis.

Speaking of a voyage which Saturne made to vs, the Romaines hauing retayned some shadow of *Gomers* passage to the Gaules, obscured (neuertheless) with lyes and fables: but the Gaules being possessed of Italy by their Coine, brought the knowledge to this

this apparant passage. So the ancient Gaules had a sport, which they tearmed Head or Ship: for by putting one of those peeces into a Bonnet, and then (casting them both aloft) asked them which they would haue, Head or Ship, *Caput aut Nauem.* After the manner of a pastime, retained to this present day, by the name of Crosse or Pile.

Tacitus taxed with ignorance, in matters of great moment.

So *Tacitus* (shallowly informed) seeing some figure of Frigates and Shippes, with the Gaules and Germaines, equiuocated, by interpreting them of another sort, because hee would not seeme to be deceyued. Also he is constrained to confesse his ignorance, *Ignarum comperisse*, by not hauing discouered the subiect of such paintings. But as if hee had bene in Ægypt, he thought (seeing this) that it was the Hieroglyphicke of the Goddesse *Isis*, whom the Romaines vnderstood, *Per peregrinum sacrum*, because shee was brought to them out of Syria, and called *Deum Syriam.* Of whom *Apuleius* (in his Milesians) describeth the worship and Ceremonies, as we haue learned by *Methodius, Latinus Pacatus, Sidonius Apollinaris, Beatus Rhenanus*, and others. *Non in signum aduectæ Religionis*, as *Tacitus* beleeued: but, *In memoriam huc aduectæ a Nationis Gallicanæ*, by the passage of *Gomer* and his children, out of Asia into Europe.

Apul. in Milef. Methodius. Latin. Pacatus Sid. Apolinaris Beat. Rhenan.

The Citie of Paris (built in the yeare of the World, 2981. the first of *Abezan* of Bethleem, Iudge of Israel, successor to *Ieptah*, 1325. yeares after the Flood; and before the foundation of Rome, 199. yeares, according to the testimony of Learned *Genebrardus*, Archbyshop of Aix in Prouence, in the first book of his Chronologie:) *A retenu pour son Armes le Nauire d'Argent Frette & Arme en Champ de Gueulles*, as the Metropolitan of the French Nation.

Genebrard. in Chron. Lib. 1.

Some haue written, that *Phillip Augustus*, second of that name, called *Gods Gift*, & the Conquerour, was the first inuenter of the Lord Maior and Sheriffes in the Citie of *Paris*, for which he had not any reason or apparance whatsoeuer. For, could it be credible, that so goodly a Cittie, the dwelling place of our Kings, euen from the first and second Lyne, should be without a Body, and Officers fit for the same. Considering, that in the Capitularies of *Charlemaigne* and his Children, mention is made (in many places) *De Scabinis*, of Sheriffes, who were as Gouernours and Iudges Politicke, in the best Townes of France.

Lord Maior & Sheriffes in the City of Paris.

In the like errour are they, who report, that the Armes of the Ship were giuen to the said City of Paris, by the same *Phillip Augustus*. Considering, that from the time of the ancient *Druides*, the Ship had beene an Ensigne, of the said Citie of Parisians. It may be, for the reason alledged by *Stephen Pasquier* (treating on the same subiect) that the first limits of that great Cittie, represented the forme and figure of a Ship. For Paris, at her beginning, was no other then a Castle of pleasure, built (for the delight of Hunting) by the first Gaulish Kings, where (at this present) is the Pallace.

Afterward, the inhabitants chose their dwelling within the Isle shaped by Sein, which (in her situation) figureth the forme of a Ship, being large, and like to a Ship in her poop and hindmost part: where is erected the Cathedrall Church, her Cloysters, the Bishops Pallace, with the Hospitall. And the Prowe pointeth to the end of the Pallace Garden, now ioyning to Pont-Neuf, and full of houses, enclosing the Cittie, and liuely figuring the forme of a Ship: which among the Ægyptians, was the Hieroglyphicke of *Soueraigne Power*, the marke or Symbole of command and preheminence: And so Paris (by good right) is called, *The Queene of Cities.*

Affris, Lunaque prior, tua robore & armis,
Et reliquas Vrbes consilio superat.

The Germains are all (almost) descended of one Countrie, were neuertheless distinguished by their Armes the Lyon, but yet by diuers Blazons.

The verie greatest part of the Germaine Nations, albeit all (well neere) descended of

For the Francs or French, *Le portoient d'Or en champ d'Azur.*

The Gothes, Ostrogothes, and Visigothes, *Le portoient d'Or en champ de Gueulles.* And they that dwelt in Spaine, *Le portoient de Sable en champ d'Argent.*

Paradine writeth, that the ancient Bourgongnons (in like manner, issued and descended from Germanie, and of whom the Noble Romaine Tacitus maketh mention in his *Germania*) *Portoient en Armes le Lyon de Sable en champ d'Argent.* Wee shall shew the contrary, and the same of the Gothes in Spaine.

They of Denmarke, *Portoient trois de Lyons de Sable passant l'vne sur l'autre*, to shew their Balticke Sea as their descente.

The Alans, Vandales and Sweues, *Portoient d'Argent au Chat de Sable*: A Symbole of pertie, so saith *Methodius.*

Method. in lib. 4. cap. 19.

The Cymbrians had the Bull for their Ensigne, and they made one of Mettall, which they caused to be carried on a Pike in the front of their Armie. They would sweare by it (saith *Plutarch* in the life of *Marius*) and this people being subdued by the Consull *Catullus Luctatius*, the Bull was carried home to his house, as a note of the victorie which he had ouer them.

Plutarc. in vit. Cai. Mar.

We will conclude this Chapter of Armes and Blazons, with acknowledging and distinguishing the eldest sonnes from the yonger and inferiour.

The Eldest are knowne and discerned from the other, by the plaine Paternall Armes, without any *Brisure* whatsoeuer, except the Father gaue them so.

Eldest sonnes giue their Fathers Armes, without any difference.

It is ordinarily seene in illustrious and most Noble Houses, that the second son quartereth the Fathers Armes with them of his Mother. But this occasioneth confusion to their descent and Linage, if they haue store of masle children.

Others diuersifie and varie in the Chiefe, or else in the first quarter and Canton of the Chiefe, which is tearmed of Honor: Or else, *Partissent, Flancquent, Entent en Poincte, ou mettent sur le tout.*

The Canton of Honor.

But the most certaine knowledge is made by *Brisures*, so farre as to the seuenth generation, the end of all Parentage.

The extens of generation.

It is an assured Rule, that among Masles, the eldest acknowledgeth himselfe, & he ought to be acknowledged by his Father Armes: If he be not otherwise stipuled by Contracts of marriage, of donation, or of substitution, which doe extend so farre, as to the fourth degree.

The eldest beareth his fathers Armes

And if all the Masles would beare the Fathers Armes: they ought to bee distinguished according to degree of birth, or primogeniture, by *Brisures.*

For the second sonne, *Doit porter le Lambeau de trois pieces*: which is to be vnderstood, of Mettall or Colour, and which also ought to be obserued in all other *Brisure.*

Distinction for the seuerall sonnes in order

The third sonne, *Vne simple Bordure.*

The fourth, *L'Orle.*

The fift, *Le Baston.*

And the sixt, *Le Bande.*

If there be any more: the Chiefe, the first or last Canton of the Chiefe, or else, *L'Ente en Poincte*, will serue to be remarked.

The Assaillants or Challengers of all the younger thus borne, must bee acknowledged by *Doubles Brisures.*

How Challengers are to be acknowledged in their degrees.

In regard that the eldest sonne issued of the second, ought to retaine and beare the Fathers Armes: *Auecques leur Brisure, le Lambeau de trois pieces en Chef.*

The second, *Le Lambeau de quatre pieces en Chef.*

The third, *Pareil Lambeau mouuant de Chef.*

And the fourth, *Pareil Lambeau chargé selon sa fantasie d'Aigles, Lyons, Croissants, Roses Aleryons, Merletes, ou Diapre.*

The second sonne issuing of the first third, *Portera la Bordure engreslee.*

The third, *Chargee de Besans, ou Torteaux.*

The fourth, *La Bordure Componee.*

The next, *Endentee*, or *Endenchee.*

And the rest (if there be any more) *Chargee de Annelets, partie de l'vn en l'autre, ou bien le Simple, ou le Double Essonier & Trescheur.*

The second sonne issuing of the first fourth: *L'Orle*, which his descendants and he may diuersifie: *d'Eschiquette, Pale, Conterpale, Lozange, Frette, Fusille, Faisses, Contre-Faisse, Pairle, Viure, Cheuronne, Contre Cheuronne, Verse, Contre verse*, or charged with the before named Beasts, with *Pannes, Macles, Molettes, Estoiles ou de Rustres*, or other varieties which may be put into Armes.

Diuersitie of charges for their best distinguishing.

The second sonne of the first fift, and his descendants, may charge and varrie *Le Baston*, as hath bin said before, and the like.

Of the second sonne, and his Assayllants of the first sixe: *A la Band*, which may bee *Coticee, Iumelee, Bretessee, Fewillee de Six, Componee, Endenchee, ou chargee d'Animaux ou de Pannes*

But it is to be held for a Rule, and an infallible Maxime in Armes, and the noble Art of

or foure *Corps d'Armees*.

The 4 battalions of the tribes of Israel

The Banner of the Tribe of *Iuda*, which marched in the head of the Hoast, and w the Collonell, had vnder it the Tribes of *Issachar* and *Zabulon*, holding to the Eaſt pa The hoast of *Reuben* encampeth themſelues South, being followed by the Tribes of *meon* and *Gad*. Towards the West, marched thoſe of *Ephraim*, with the Tribes of *Ma naſſes* and *Beniamin*, the very leaſt of all. And to the North, the Tribes of *Dan* and *Nepthaly*. In the midſt of theſe foure Battallions, marched the Prieſts and Leuites bearing the Arke of the Couenant, and the Sacred veſſels.

Each of theſe foure heads, or principall Conducters, *Iuda*, *Ruben*, *Ephraim*, and *Dan* had a Colonell before his hoaſt and Battalion. The Colonell of the whole Armie was that of *Iuda*: Being *D'Azur (c'eſt Bleu Celeſte) au Lyon rampant d'Or.*

The Colonels of the tribes deſcribed with their Armes and Colours, the 4. cheefe Leaders.

That of *Ruben*, *De gueulles au Belic (c'eſt la couleur Rouge) a l'Homme armé d'Argent.*

Ephraim had his *De Sable (c'eſt Noir) au Boeuf paſſant accornue d'Or.*

And *Danne*, hee likewiſe, *portoit Synople (c'eſt Verd) au Serpent Dragonné d'Argent.*

In Armes, there are no more then two Mettalles, *Or & Argent*, Gold and Silver: And foure Colours, *Azure*, *Gueulles*, *Synople & Sable*, Blew, Red, Greene, & Black. Mettall vpon Mettall, and Colour vpon Colour, are falſe Armes, if they be not quartered: Otherwiſe, they are ſubiect to queſtion, and are good, beeing priuiledged by Princes and Soueraigne Lordes, and giuen vnto particular men by graunt. If not, they are falſe, and deſerue not the name of Armes, but of fooleries, and foppiſh deuiſes.

The other eight Tribes had their Standards, each anſwereable to the colour of his Colonell, but with different charge, agreeable to their greatneſſe.

The ſtandards of the other 8. tribes, & theyr Armes.

Iſachar portoit d'Azur a l'Aſne paſſant d'Argent.

And *Zabulon*, *D'Azur au Nauire arme & frette d'Argent.*

They which were of *Rubens* Hoaſt, *Simeon portoit de Gueulles, a deux Eſpees d'Argent en Sautour.*

And *Gad* gaue likewiſe, *De Gueulles a l'Eſpee d'Argent, miſe en Pal, la point en bas.*

Vnder *Ephraim* was *Manaſſes*, *Qui portoit de Sable au Scepter Couronné d'Or*: Becauſe hee was the eldeſt ſonne of the Patriarch *Ioſeph*, and hee that had the firſt lotte in the Land of Promiſe. To him appertained the Royaltie and the Prieſthood, whereof he was deſpoyled, becauſe he had not honoured his father.

Beniamin portoit de Sable au Loup paſſant d'Argent.

Vnder the Tribe of *Dan*, was that of *Aſer*: *Qui portoit de Synople ſeme d'Eſpics de Bled d'Or.*

And that of *Nepthali*, *De Synople au Cerf ſomme d'Or.*

This is thus remarked by the Rabbines, in the place before alledged, and on the ſecond Chapter of the booke of Numbers, and the firſt and ſecond Verſes. *Loquutuſq; Dominus ad Moſe & Aarone dicens, Singuli iuxta* VEXILLVM *ſuum, & ſub* SIGNIS *domus Patrum ſuorum, caſtra ponant filij Iſrael, e regione, & in circuitu Tabernaculi fœderis caſtra ponent.* The Lord ſpake to *Moſes* and *Aaron*, ſaying, Euery man of the Children of Iſrael, ſhall campe by his Standard, and vnder the Enſigne of their fathers houſe: farre off about the Tabernacle of the Congregation ſhall they pitch. Which paſſage they interprete by the nine and fortieth Chapter of Geneſis, and by the firſt plate of their High Prieſt, garniſhed with twelue precious ſtones, and on each of them was engraien the names, and the Armes of the Tribes of Iſrael.

They adde beſide, that *Ioſuah* hauing cauſed the children of Iſrael, to paſſe ouer the Flood Iordane dry foote, he procured euery one of them, to place a great Stone vpon the banke of the ſayde Flood, at the higheſt boundes thereof, and on each of them was carued the Names and Armes of the twelue Tribes, to ſerue as a ſignale or memorie vnto poſterities, of that myraculous paſſage. And thoſe twelue Stones, about the time when our Sauiour Chriſt conuerſed among men, ſerued as titles and proofes of Nobility among the Iewes, to declare their extraction.

The 12 ſtones on the bankes of Iordan, bearing the names and Armes of the Tribes.

Saint *Iohn*, ſpeaketh of the ſame Stones, repreſenting the peoples diſſolute and depraued liues, in the third Chapter of Saint *Matthewes* Goſpell. *Poteris eſt Deus de lapidibus iſtis ſuſcitare filios Abrahæ.* God is able, euen of theſe ſtones, to raiſe vp children to *Abraham*.

Saul in like manner, appointed to bee King ouer the Children of Iſrael, tooke for the Armes of his kingdome, the Enſigne Colonell of the Tribe of *Beniamin*, whereof he was deſcended. And *Dauid*, being called in his place (as one worthier then hee) tooke that of the Tribe of *Iuda*, whereunto the Patriarch *Iacob*, had transferred the right of Elder-ſhippe, and the appurtenances of Royaltie and the Prieſthoode, as it is ſaide in the nine and fortieth chapter of Geneſis, the eight and nine verſes. *Iuda te laudabunt fratres tui, manus tua in cernicibus inimicorum tuorum, adorabunt te filij Patris tui.* Thou Iuda, thy Brethren ſhall praiſe thee, thine hand ſhall bee in the necke of thine enemies, thy fathers ſonnes ſhall bow downe vnto thee.

Dauid had the Armes of the Tribe of Iuda.

The ſame Patriarke, blazoning the Armes of his ſonne *Iuda* (which the Rabbines deuiſe to bee *D'Azur au Lyon rampant d'Or*) ſaide: *Iuda, requieſcens accubuiſti vt Leo, quis ſuſcitabit eum?* He ſhall couch downe as a Lyon, and as a Lyonneſſe: who ſhall ſtirre him vp? *Dauid* taking the Lyon for his Armes, cauſed it to bee engraien in his Signet or Seale Royall, yea, and on his monies, which helde in currant courſe, vntill the declination of the Iewiſh Eſtate, according as it is ſet downe by *Rabbi Abraham*, in his hiſtoricall *Cabala*.

Iudaes Armes blazoned by his Father.

Theſe Armes were conſerued by the great King *Salomon*, who blazoning on them in the thirtie Chapter of his Prouerbes, ſaith: That amongeſt all the Creatures on earth, there are three which doe exceede and ſurpaſſe the reſt. Alſo hee compareth them to Princes, as thus: *Tria ſunt quæ bene gradiuntur, & quartum quod incidet feliciter. Leo fortiſſimus beſtiarum ad nullius pauebit occurſum. Gallus ſuccinctus lumbos, & Aries; Nec eſt Rex qui reſiſtat ei.* The Lyon, King of Beaſts, hath alwayes beene the Symbole of Royaltie, for his Generoſitie, conioyned with his clemencie, neuer running on any Beaſt which is humble to him. In like manner, in a good Prince: Pr. 30, 30, 31.

Hailli erunt artes,
Parcere ſubiectis, & debellare ſuperbos.

In the verie height of his anger, hee qualifieth it of himſelfe, ſo ſoone as a Lambe is preſent before him, the Symbole of mildeneſſe and clemencie. For this cauſe it was, that the Diuine Poet *Du Bartas*, made the Lyon a Schoolemaſter to Princes, thus: The Lyon a Schoolmaſter to Princes.

You Kings whoſe hands are arm'd with Iuſtice ſword,
Pardon the ſubiect, to Rebelles death afford.
The generous Lyons vertue imitate,
Who neuer frownes vpon a Soldier proſtrate.

The Aſſyrians (as the ſame Rabbines affirme) being ſo called of *Aſſur* ſon to *Belus*, who conquered Chaldea (afterward named Aſſyria) from the deſcendants of *Nemrod*, the ſonne of *Chanaam*; tooke for the Armes of their Monarchie, *L'Eſtendard verd au Belier d'Argent.* Their money, ſtamped with a Ramme, had courſe throughout all the Eaſt, noted in the Scripture, in Geneſis the three and thirtie Chapter, the nineteenth verſe, and in the ſeuenth of the Actes of the Apoſtles, the ſixteenth verſe. In memorie of this *Belus*, repreſented by a Ramme, the Aſſyrians, Ægyptians, and other people of the Eaſt, did ſo reuerence that creature, as they durſt not eare thereof. So we read in Geneſis the ſixt, the one and twenty verſe, and the three and fortieth Chapter, the fiue and twentieth verſe. The Armes of the Aſſyrians Monarchie.

The ſame Aſſyrians, firſt Authors of Idolatrie, adored their *Belus*, whom they reputed for a God; and did as much to their Queene *Semiramis*, wife to *Ninus*, called *Belochus*, placing her among the number of their Gods, charging their Standards and Banners (ſigned with the Leopard and Ramme) *D'vne Colombe Argentee aux aiſles eſtendues ſur le drappeau Iaune.* And the ſelfe-ſame *Colombe releuee d'Argent ſur vne Eſcu de Sin Or*, was the firſt Armes for ſearch and enquirie after. *Semiramis* in the Aſſyrian language, ſignifieth a Fowle or Bird, which ſerued as an apt ſubiect to thoſe idolatrous people, to ranke their Queene in number of their Gods, and to ſay, that after hir death ſhe tooke her flight vp to heauen, with her husband *Ninus*. According as it is obſerued by *Diodorus Siculus*, in the third booke of his Annales, and the fift Chapter. *Diod. Sicul. in Annal. l. 3. c. 1.*

Now although this might be a lying and falſe diſcourſe: yet ſo it is, that the Holie Scripture remarketh and deſigneth the Aſſyrians by this Doue, as it doth the Ægyptians by the Vulture. For, the Ægyptians *Portoient l'Eſtendard iaune a l'Eſprenier & Vautour de Sable.* It was alſo engrauen in the Seale Royall of *Pharaoh*, giuen to the Patriarch *Ioſeph*. So ſay the Rabbines, vpon the one and forty Chapter of Geneſis.

The standard of the Ægyptians.

The Ægyptians called the Vulture a Bird, without any addition, as for *Antonomaſia* and excellence: Becauſe that among all the Fowles and Birds of prey, ſhe is the moſt iuſt, imparting equally the prey, to the Fowles which follow her: ſo ſaith *Orus Apollo* in his Treatiſe *De ſacris Ægyptiorum notis*: *Plutarch* termeth this Fowle an Innocent, becauſe (ſaith he) it freeth a man from being offended by other creatures. Moreouer, it is the moſt full of pitty to her young ones, of all other Fowles that are. For, in the ſpace of ſixe and twenty dayes, abiding with them for their nouriſhing, ſhe neuer leaueth them: but if ſhe want ſuſtenance for them, ſhe launceth her thigh with her beak, and draweth thence blood for their food and nouriſhment. In like manner, this Bird was vſed as the Symbole of Iuſtice and Piety, and many times of Royalty: to ſerue as a leſſon or Lecture to Princes and Monarches, for being clement and kinde Fathers to their Subiects. So I ſay then, that the ſacred Scriptures vnderſtoode the Aſſyrians by the Doue, and the Ægyptians by the Vulture.

Orus Apol. in Tract. Sac. Egypt. Notis.

A Fowle more kinde to her broode, then many Nurſes to their Children.

The Prophet *Ieremie* in his twenty fiue chapter, verſe thirty eight, threatning the Iewiſh people with the comming of *Nabuchodonoſor*, ſaith, *Dereliquit quaſi Leo vmbraculum ſuum, quia facta eſt terra eorum in deſolationem, a facie iræ Columbæ, & a facie iræ furoris eius.* He hath forſaken his couert as the Lyon, for their land is deſolate, becauſe of the fiercenеſſe of the Oppreſſour, and becauſe of his fierce anger. *Nabuchodonoſor* was King of the Aſſyrians, as it is euident in *Daniel*, and the Kings of Iuda and of Iſrael, led captiue into Babylon, are remarked by the Lyon, *Dereliquit Leo ſub vmbraculum ſuum*: Becauſe that the Kings of the twelue Tribes (diuided in their Kingdomes) bare the like Armes as King *Dauid* had taken and appointed.

Ier. 25, 38.

The Prophet *Oſea*, ſpeaking of the Aſſyrians, ioyned with the Ægyptians againſt the Iewiſh people, to bring them into ſeruitude and ſlauery, ſaith: *Anolabunt quaſi Auis ex Ægypto* (by the Bird he meaneth the Vulture) *et quaſi Columba de terra Aſſyriorum.* They ſhall tremble like a Bird out of Ægypt, and as a Doue out of the Land of Aſſyria. And the ſame Rabbines interprete literally this Verſicle of *Dauid*, Pſalme 68. *Si dormiatis inter medios cleros, pennæ Columbæ Deargentatæ & poſteriora dorſi eius in pallori Auri.* Though you haue lyen among the pots, you ſhall be as the wings of a Doue couered with ſiluer, and her feathers with yellow gold. Concerning the ouerthrowe of *Senacherib* King of the Aſſyrians, and of his Army, wherein the Angel of God ſlew in one night, an hundred foureſcore and ſix thouſand men, as it is in the fourth booke of the Kings.

Oſea 11. 11.

Pſal. 68, 13.

4 Reg. 19, 35

The Banner and Armes of the Perſians.

The Perſians carried a white Banner, *Chargee d'vne Aigle d'Or Eſploye & Couronné*, which was their principall Enſigne, as it is written by *Zonarus*, in his firſt Booke, and nineteene Chapter. And according to *Xenophon*, in the expedition and inſtitution of *Cyrus*, the ſeuenth booke. *Erat ei ſignum aurea Aquila in longa haſta ſuſpenſa, & nunc etiam id inſigne Perſarum Regibus manet.* And the Prophet *Oſea* in his eight Chapter. *Ecce ſicut Aquila, quæ pernicitur volat, aſcendet Rex cum copijs ſuis, & caſtrametabitur contra Sacroſanctum Templum Domini*: Speaking of *Nabuzaradan*, Lieutenant Generall to the king of Perſia (whom the holy Scripture vnderſtandeth by the name of King, without addition) which ruined the Temple of God, the Pallace Royall, and the principall houſes of Ieruſalem into aſhes: As it is written in the fourth Booke of the Kings, the laſt chapter. As yet they haue the Sagittarie, as much to ſay, as halfe a Horſe, and halfe a man, drawing a Bowe to let flye an Arrow. This Sagittarie was the ſtampe of their Coyne, whereon *Ageſilaus* alluding, complaineth in *Plutarch*, to haue beene chaſed from the conqueſt of Aſia, by thirty thouſand Archers to the King of Perſia: that is to ſay, by thirtie thouſand pieces of Gold, called *Darickes*, becauſe on the one ſide they had *Darius*, and the Sagittarie on the other.

4 Reg. 25, 9.

Pieces of gold called Daricks the Coyne of Perſia.

Alexander the Great, hauing transferred the Monarchie of the Medes and Perſians to the Greekes, retained ſtill the white Banner, the colour and Liuerie to the Kings of Perſia (ſo ſaith *Plutarch*, in the life of *Artaxerxes*) which they had borrowed from them of Iuda and Iſrael, who went cloathed in White, according to the cuſtome of great King

Plut. in vit. Artaxerxis.

King *Salomon*, who ſhewing himſelfe publiquely, vſed to weare a long white Robe: as is written by *Ioſephus*, in the eight Booke of his Iewiſh Antiquities, the ſecond Chapter.

Ioſeph. in Antiq. Iudaic. l. 8. c. 2

So the moſt Chriſtian Kings of France, haue retained for their Colonell the colour White, bearing the Croſſe and Bauldricke or Scarfe White, whereby the French are knowne in battaile from other Nations, that carry them Red, with a Croſſe diſguiſed in Saultour, vnfitly applyed to Saint *Andrew*, whoſe Croſſe is to bee ſeene at Saint *Victor* of *Marſeilles*, wholly reſembling thoſe whereon our Sauiour ſuffered, Saint *Peter*, and the other Apoſtles Martyrs.

Alexander retaining the White Liuerie, Symbole of Royaltie, and colour of the Diademe, tooke the Lyon rampant Gueulles for his Armes, forſaking the Kingly Eagle: and cauſed it to be engrauen in his Seale Royall. An Armes, which (in his memorie) was borne by his ſucceſſors, Kings of the Parthians, Medes, Ægyptians, and other Eaſterne Princes. *Plutarch* in the life of this Monarch writeth, that he tooke the Lion for his Armes, becauſe his Father *Phillip* of Macedon, dreamed the firſt night of his marriage, that he ſet ſuch a ſeale on his wife *Olympia*, as had a Lyon ſtamped or imprinted on it. This dreame might be true, yet it came ſo to paſſe neuertheleſſe, that (long time before the birth of *Alexander* the Great, and of *Cyrus* King of Perſia) their Empires had bin propheſied, That of the Perſians, by a creature hauing the viſage of a man, to demonſtrate the clemency of *Cyrus*: That of the Greekes, by the figure of a Lyon: And that of the Romaines, by the Royall Eagle. According as it is reported by the Prophet *Ezechiel* in his firſt Chapter, enſtructed by a Cherubin, which he called *Chobar*: Like as the Monarchy of the Aſſyrians (finiſhed before) had bin repreſented by an Oxe.

The Armes of Alexander the Great.

Plutarch in vit. Alexand.

Ezek. 1, 10.

The like was obſerued in the Antiquities of young *Phillip*, King of Macedon, in the bigneſſe of a peece of three Blancks, or of a *Carolus* with the ſword, where on the one ſide, was the head of the King with great buſhy hayre not well combed: And on the other ſide, a King ſitting in his chaire, leaning on a ſmall Iaueline, and holding a Gripe or Vulture on his left fiſt, which ſerued to expreſſe the Antiquity of Hawking. Whereby the Rabbines vnderſtood that paſſage in the Prophet *Baruch*, his third chapter. *Vbi ſunt Principes Gentium, & qui dominantur ſuper beſtias quæ ſunt ſuper terram? qui in Auibus Cæli ludunt.* Where are the Princes of the Heathen, and ſuch as ruled the beaſts vpon the earth? That had their paſtime with the Birds of the Ayre. But I thinke rather, that he meant the Bird, ſacred among the Ægyptians, whereof we haue ſpoken before. Other Antiquities are yet alſo to be ſeene, and of the like bigneſſe, which bee of King *Perſeus*, hauing an Eagle on the one ſide, and on the other a Squire on horſeback, which is the Sagittarie. This may ſeeme to demonſtrate, that theſe Kings (ouer and beſide the Lyon) retained both the Eagle and the Sagittarie of the Perſians, as wel as the Vulture or Bird of the Ægyptians.

A note for the Antiquitie of Hawking.

Bar. 3, 16, 17.

The Romaines tooke for the Armes of their Empire and Monarchy, the Royall Eagle, and for their Liuerie the Colour Red, as Purple and Scarlet. Their Colonell and principall Standard, which they called *Labarum*, was of purple, made ſquare in forme, round about engirt with a frindge of Gold, carried on a Pike; In *longa haſta*, and of the ſame faſhion as the Banners are in our pariſh Churches. The Heraldes and Kings of Armes called the Colour Red by foure ſundry names; as Cinabre, Belic, Gueulles, and Rich colour, by reaſon of his brightneſſe. And allowed it not to be carried, but by the Romane Emperors onely, and *Ceſars* deſtined to the Empire: For others were not permitted to take it, but by their conceſſion and priuiledge.

The Armes of the Romaine Empire.

The Red Colour had four names.

The Eagle was borne by *Numa Pampilius*, *Seruius Tullius*, and other Romaine Kings. Succeſſion of times inducted the Minotaur, the Wolfe, the Horſe, the Swine or Bore. Theſe foure beaſts ſerued for Enſignes and Standards to the Legions and Cohortes of the Romaines, vntill the time of *Caius Marius*, who aboliſhed the vſe of them altogether, leauing the Eagle alone by it ſelfe, as is obſerued by *Pliny*, in the tenth Booke of his naturall Hiſtorie, and the third Chapter. *Romanis Legionibus Aquilam Caius Marius in ſecundo Conſolatu ſuo proprie dicauit. Erat & antea prima, cum quatuor alij, Lupi, Minotauri, Equi, Apri, quæ ſingulos Ordines anteibant. Paucis ante Aquila, ſola portari in aciem cœperat, relinqua in caſtris relinquebantur, Marius in totum ea abſtulit.*

Romain Kings carried the Eagle.

Plin. in Hiſt. nat. lib. 10. c. 3

Iulius Cæſar, Auguſtus, and their deſcending Emperors, *Porterent de Gueulles a l'Aigle d'Or, aux aiſles eſtendues, & a la ſeule Teſte. Conſtantine* the Great, hauing parted in twain (as

(as it were) the Roman Empire, into that of the East, and that of the West, transpor-
from Rome to Bizantium, although it was the Emperiall Seate: yet he called it Conſta-
nople, by his owne name, leauing an Exarc or Vice-Emperour as Lieutenant Genera
at Rome, for guard and conſeruation of the West. The Romane Eagle was then painted
with two heads circled, which ſome termed *Deſplayed*, and remained in common, as much
to ſay, As Armes to the one and other Empire. Vntill the yeare of Grace, eight hundred
and one, when King *Charlemaigne* (hauing by his valour wonne and conquered Italy)
was crowned Emperor of the West, and honoured as he was of the Romaines, after the
manner of the ancient Emperors. And for a more ſignale note, he wonne the Empire to
the French (with deere expence of their blood) retaining in his Armes the Mettall and
Colour of France, *D'Azur a l'Aigle a deux Teſtes Eſploye d'Or.* A heauy burthen on the
ſtomeckes of numberleſſe French, how it ſhould bee ſo then, and Armes remayning for
them too of the Empire, ſo farre as to the houſe of Saxon in Germany, who carried of
their Mettall and Colour, namely, *D'Or a l'Aigle Eſploye de Sable.*

King *Charlemaigne*, crowned Emperor of the West.

By the example of Princes and Monarches, their ſubiects and ſeruants (neereſt to their perſons) made themſelues ſeparate and diſtinguiſhed from others, by titles of Nobilitie and Armes, which conſerued their Families, and makes them to appeare aboue the common people. For, ſeeing that Vertue and Vice haue concurred from all times, and they do beſt diſtinguiſh their Louers, by contrarie Liueries to them here meant, euen as white from blacker It is no more then reaſon, that the Noble and Vertuous (by Blazons and Deuiſes) ſhould be diſcerned from the vulgar. Moreouer, of thoſe Nobles, the diſtinction is to be knowne by diuerſitie of Armes, according to their inclination, and good or bad breeding. This is that which the Prince of Poets hath learnedly noted, of Noble by Extraction, Science, and Learning, in his ſecond Royall Boſcage.

Of Nobility by diſcent, vertue, and Learning.

Celuy qui deſiroit de monſtrer ſa Vertu,
Portoit ſur le Harnois dont il eſtoit veſtu
Ou deſſus ſon Bouclier vne Recogniſſance,
Afin que par la preſſe on congnuſt ſa Vaillance.
L'vn auoit vn Serpent, l'autre auoit vn Lyon,
Vn Aigle, *vn Leopard. Ainſi vn Million*
Par les Siecles paſſez D'Enſeignes *ſont venuës,*
Que les Races depuis pour marque ont retenues,
Eſcuſſons, & Blaſons de leurs premiers Ayeulx,
Que la Guerre ennoblit par faict Victorieux.

He that deſires to ſhew his Vertue cleare,
Beares on the Armour he doth vſe to weare,
Or on his Shield, a plaine Recogniſance;
That thickeſt crowdes may know his Valiance.
One beares a Serpent; Other, hath a Lion,
Eagle, or Leopard: And ſo a million
(From Ages paſt) of Enſeignes haue beene gain'd,
Which (afterward) their Races ſtill retain'd
From their Fore-fathers; Scutcheons and Blazons knowne,
Victorioufly by Warre ennobled for their owne.

Then it is a popular errour, to ſay, that the inuention of Armes, of Blazons and Deuiſes, appeared not vntil within fiue hundred yeeres, and the Voyages to the Eaſt, for Conqueſt of the Holy Land, Religiouſly attempted by many famous perſons: Becauſe (in all times) their vſe is made manifeſt, and practiſed by Nations, furtheſt of all other from our knowledge, as the Inhabitants of the Eaſterne Iſles.

The vſe of Armes, practiſed at al times, and by people furtheſt from vs.

Thoſe people, at the Funeralles of their *Tyngas Kings* and great Lords, cauſed to be born before their bodies, the notes of Honour and the Trophees, which they had wonne and brought from their enemies in warre. Thoſe Honours and Trophees were carried in the ſaide Funeralles, by Knights moſt apparant in Valiance and Nobilitie. And to this effect, exactly they kept the practiſe and vſe of Armes and Blazons, conſerued to their Families, and carried them to the enterring of their dead. So writeth *Ioſephus Acoſta*, in his fifte Booke

Booke of the Naturall hiſtorie of the Indians, and the eight Chapter.

In the fourth Chapter of the ſame Booke, he ſeaſons by him, that the Kings of *Peru* ca-
ried in Armes, *Vne Arc en Ciel, accompagnee deux Couleuures eſtendues aux coſtes d'iceluy.*

The Armes of the Kinges of Peru.

That the Kings of *Mexico* carried for their Deuiſe, *Vne Main tenant vne poignee de fle-
ches de Roſeaux.* In remembrance and memorie of the firſt King of Mexico, named *Acamapixtli*, which ſignifieth in the Mexicane language, *A handfull of Reeds.*

That the Citie of *Mexico Tenuchtitlan*, had for her Armes; *Vne Aigle Royale aux aiſles eſployees, & la Teſte eſleuee regardant droict le Soliel, comme pour receuoir ſa chalcur, ſe-
ante ſur vne pel, ou eſcau de l'vne de ſes ſerres, & de l'autre plante ſur vne Tunal, & Pierre rele-
uee.* Becauſe that in ſuch a poſture, this Bird was found, and in the place where the Capitall Citie of Mexico was builded, now named New Spaine: As the ſaid *Acoſta* affirmeth in the ſame Booke, and the ſeuenth Chapter.

The Cities Armes of Mexico.

The *Tlaxcalans*, conjured enemies to them of Mexico, bare in their Standard & Banner, *Vne Grue d'Or eſtendant ſes aiſles.* And this was their Armes, as it is reported in the life of *Ferdinando Cortezze*, who vanquiſhed the Mexicanes, and conquered their chiefe City, in Nouember, 1519. And the great Standard of the ſame Mexicanes, when the King himſelfe in perſon marched to the field; *Portoit vne Griffon Furieux deſchirant vn Tigre, qu'il tenoit ſoubs ſes ſerres.* A deuiſe erected ouer the gates of the Palace, belonging to the ſaide Kings of Mexico.

In lib. vii. Per. Cort. Cap. 17.

But what needs is there, of croſſing ouer ſo many Seas, for this Antiquitie of Armes, and to go ſeeke it ſo farre off? We haue it at our owne doores, in regard that the Auncеſtors of the Gaules and French, carried for their ancient Deuiſe, the Ship.

The Ancient deuice of the Gaules and French.

Cornelius Tacitus, deſcribing the Cuſtomes of the Germaines (being but badly informed of their Religion) hauing ſeene, or heard by report, from ſuch as had beene in the voyage of Germanie, that a Ship was figured in their Temples and Enſignes; immediatly he conceyued, that they adored the Goddeſſe *Iſis. Pars Sueuorum & Iſidi ſacrificat. Vnde cauſa, & origo peregrina ſacro parum compert, niſi quod ipſum Signum in modum Liburnicæ figuratum, docet aduectam Religionem.*

The errour & miſtaking of *Tacitus.*

The men of Suaba, neighbours to the Francs Sicambrians, dwelling in the Marches of Weſtphalia, Cleue, & Guelderland, with Gulich, obſerued the ſame Religion, Cuſtomes, and Policie, as the Gaules did. And as thoſe two Nations were one ſelfe ſame people: euen ſo they retained (carefully) the figure of the Shippe, which *Tacitus* (in his language) tearmeth *Liburnicall*, in memorie of the paſſage which their Anceſtours made from Aſia into Europe, vnder the conduct of their Prince *Gomer*.

For by the ſame ſubiect, the ancient money of the Gaules and Germanes, were of two faſhions and ſtampes on both ſides. The one with a Lyon, Armes proper to Prince *Gomer* (the Gaules *Hercules*) on the one ſide; and on the other an Altar, with the number of LXIIII. which repreſented the ſixtie and foure Prouinces of the Gauls (that extended themſelues ſo farre as *Rhine*) mentioned by *Tacitus*, in the third Booke of his Annales, *At Roma non Treuiros modo, ſed quatuor ſexaginta ciuitates Galliarum deſciuiſſe videbantur:* And thus he ſaw (of Antiquities) a like number on the backe ſide, and his figure on the other, ſtamped vnder the name of the Emperor *Antoninus*. And *Strabo* in the 4. booke of his Geography, and *Dion* in his 54. booke, vnderſtood the Altar, to be prepared in the Citty of Lyons, whereof *Iuuenal* thus ſaith:

The Ancient Coynes of the Gaules and Germaines.

Aut Lugdunenſem Rhetan diſturus in Aram.

This ſhould bee interpreted of the ſecretall Altare of the Gaules, prouided ſtable and permanent by the *Druides*, within their ſacred wood at the mountaine of Chartres, dedicated to the holy Virgin, that ſhould bring forth the fruite of life.

The other kinde of Coine, had a Shippe on the one ſide, and a Head on the other, figuring the Image of the Patriarke *Noah*, or of his youngeſt ſonne *Gomer*. A kinde of money brought into Italy by the firſt Gaules, when they went thither, and poſſeſſed it. Nueretheleſſe, the Romaines enuying the glorie and fame of the Gaules; referre the inuention thereof to their King *Numa Pompilius*. So ſaith *Ouid* in the firſt of his Faſtes.

The deſcriptiō of the other Coyne.

Ouid in Lib. 1. de Faſtib.

Speaking of a voyage which Saturne made to Italy, the Romaines hauing retayned ſome ſhadow of *Gomers* paſſage to the Gaules, obſerued (neuertheleſſe) with lyes and fables: but the Gaules being poſſeſſed of Italy by their Coines, brought the knowledge to this

this apparant passage. So the ancient Gaules had a sport, which they tearmed Head or Ship: for by putting one of those peeces into a Bonnet, and then (casting them both aloft) asked them which they would haue, Head or Ship, *Caput aut Nauem.* After the manner of a pastime, retained to this present day, by the name of Crosse or Pile.

Tacitus taxed with ignorance, in matters of great moment.

So *Tacitus* (shallowly informed) seeing some figure of Frigates and Shippes, with the Gaules and Germaines, equiuocated, by interpreting them of another sort, because he would not seeme to be deceyued. Also he is constrained to confesse his ignorance, *Rerum comperisse*, by not hauing discouered the subiect of such paintings. But as if he had bene in Ægypt, he thought (seeing this) that it was the Hieroglyphicke of the Goddesse *Isis*, whom the Romaines vnderstood, *Per peregrinum sacrum*, because shee was brought to them out of Syria, and called *Deum Syriam.* Of whom *Apuleius* (in his Milesians) describeth the worship and Ceremonies, as we haue learned by *Methodius, Latinus Pacatus, Sidonius Apollinaris, Beatus Rhenanus*, and others. *Non in signum aduecta Religionis*, as *Tacitus* beleeued: but, *In memoriam huc aduecta Nationis Gallicanæ*, by the passage of *Gomer* and his children, out of Asia into Europe.

Apul. in Milef. Methodius. Latin. Pacatus Sid. Apolinaris Beat. Rhenan.

The Citie of Paris (built in the yeare of the World, 2981. the first of *Abezan* of Bethleem, Iudge of Israel, successor to *Ieptah*, 1325. yeares after the Flood; and before the foundation of Rome, 199. yeares, according to the testimony of Learned *Genebrard*, Archbyshop of Aix in Prouence, in the first book of his Chronologie:) *A retenu pour ſes Armes le Nauire d'Argent Frette & Arme en Champ de Gueulles*, as the Metropolitan of the French Nation.

Genebrard. in Chron. Lib. 1.

Some haue written, that *Phillip Augustus*, second of that name, called *Gods Gift*, & the Conquerour, was the first inuenter of the Lord Maior and Sheriffes in the Citie of *Paris*, for which he had not any reason or apparance whatsoeuer. For, could it be credible, that so goodly a Cittie, the dwelling place of our Kings, euen from the first and second Lyne, should be without a Body, and Officers fit for the same. Considering, that in the Capitularies of *Charlemaigne* and his Children, mention is made (in many places) *De Scabinis*, of Sheriffes, who were as Gouernours and Iudges Politicke, in the best Townes of France.

Lord Maior & Sheriffes in the City of Paris.

In the like errour are they, who report, that the Armes of the Ship were giuen to the said City of Paris, by the same *Phillip Augustus.* Considering, that from the time of the ancient *Druides*, the Ship had bene an Enſigne, of the said Citie of Parisians. It may be, for the reason alledged by *Stephen Pasquier* (treating on the same subiect) that the first limits of that great Cittie, represented the forme and figure of a Ship. For Paris, at her beginning, was no other then a Castle of pleasure, built (for the delight of Hunting) by the first Gaulish Kings, where (at this present) is the Pallace.

Afterward, the inhabitants chose their dwelling within the Isle shaped by Seine, which (in her situation) figureth the forme of a Ship, being large, and like to a Ship in her poop and hindmost part: where is erected the Cathedrall Church, her Cloysters, the Bishops Pallace, with the Hospitall. And the Prowe pointeth to the end of the Pallace Garden, now ioyning to Pont-Neuf, and full of houses, enclosing the Cittie, and liuely figuring the forme of a Ship: which among the Ægyptians, was the Hieroglyphicke of *Soueraigne Power*, the marke or Symbole of command and preheminence: And so Paris (by good right) is called, *The Queene of Cities.*

Affris, Lunaque prior, tua robore & armis,
Et reliquas Vrbes consilio superat.

The Germans are all (almost) descended of one Countrie, were neuertheless distinguished by their Armes the Lyon, but yet by diuers Blazons.

The verie greatest part of the Germaine Nations, albeit all (well neere) descended of

For the Francs or French, *Le porteient d'Or en champ d'Azur.*

The Gothes, Ostrogothes, and Visigothes, *Le portoient d'Or en champ de Gueulles.* And they that dwelt in Spaine, *Le porterent de Sable en champ d'Argent.*

Paradine writeth, that the ancient Bourgongnons (in like manner, issued and descended from Germanie, and of whom the Noble Romaine Tacitus maketh mention in his *Germania*) *Porteient en Armes le Lyon de Sable en champ d'Argent.* Wee shall shew the contrary, and the same of the Gothes in Spaine.

They of Denmarke, *Portoient trois de Lyons de Synople passant l'vne sur l'autre*, to shew their Balticke Sea as their descent.

The Alans, Vandales and Sweues, *Portoient d'Argent au Chat de Sable*: A Symbole of pertie, so saith *Methodius.*

Method. in lib. 4. cap. 19.

The Cymbrians had the Bull for their Enſigne, and they made one of Mettall, which they caused to be carried on a Pike in the front of their Armie. They would sweare by it (saith *Plutarch* in the life of *Marius*) and this people being subdued by the Consull *Catullus Luctatius*, the Bull was carried home to his house, as a note of the victorie which he had ouer them.

Plutarc. in vit. Cai. Mar.

We will conclude this Chapter of Armes and Blazons, with acknowledging and distinguishing the eldest sonnes from the yonger and inferiour.

The Eldest are knowne and discerned from the other, by the plaine Paternall Armes, without any *Brisure* whatsoeuer, except the Father gaue them so.

Eldest sonnes giue their Fathers Armes, without any difference.

It is ordinarily seene in illustrious and most Noble Houses, that the second son quartereth the Fathers Armes with them of his Mother. But this occasioneth confusion to their descent and Linage, if they haue store of masle children.

Others diuersifie and varie in the Chiefe, or else in the first quarter and Canton of the Chiefe, which is tearmed of Honor: Or else, *Partissent, Flancquent, Entent en Poincte, ou mettent sur le tout.*

The Canton of Honor.

But the most certaine knowledge is made by *Brisures*, so farre as to the seuenth generation, the end of all Parentage.

The extens of generation.

It is an assured Rule, that among Masles, the eldest acknowledgeth himselfe, & he ought to be acknowledged by his Father Armes: If he be not otherwise stipuled by Contracts of marriage, of donation, or of substitution, which doe extend so farre, as to the fourth degree.

The eldest beareth his fathers Armes

And if all the Masles would beare the Fathers Armes: they ought to bee distinguished according to degree of birth, or primogeniture, by *Brisures.*

For the second sonne, *Doit porter le Lambeau de trois pieces*: which is to be vnderstood, of Mettall or Colour, and which also ought to be obserued in all other *Brisure.*

Distinction for the seuerall sonnes in order

The third sonne, *Vne simple Bordure.*

The fourth, *L'Orle.*

The fift, *Le Baston.*

And the sixt, *Le Bande.*

If there be any more: the Chiefe, the first or last Canton of the Chiefe, or else, *L'Ente en Poincte*, will serue to be remarked.

The Assaillants or Challengers of all the younger thus borne, must bee acknowledged by *Doubles Brisures.*

How Challengers are to be acknowledged in their degrees.

In regard that the eldest sonne issued of the second, ought to retaine and beare the Fathers Armes: *Aucecques leur Brisure, le Lambeau de trois pieces en Chef.*

The second, *Le Lambeau de quatre pieces en Chef.*

The third, *Pareil Lambeau mouuant de Chef.*

And the fourth, *Pareil Lambeau charge selon ſa fantaſie d'Aigles, Lyons, Croiſſants, Roſes Aleryons, Merletes, ou Diapre.*

The second sonne issuing of the first third, *Portera la Bordure engreſlee.*

The third, *Chargee de Beſans, ou Torteaux.*

The fourth, *La Bordure Componce.*

The next, *Endentee*, or *Endenchee.*

And the rest (if there be any more) *Chargee de Annuleis, partie de l'vn en l'autre, ou bien le Simple, ou le Double Eſſonier & Treſcheur.*

The second sonne issuing of the first fourth: *L'Orle*, which his descendants and he may diuersifie: *d'Eſchiequette, Pale, Conterpale, Lozange, Frette, Fuſille, Faiſſes, Contre-Faiſſe, Pairle, Viure, Cheuronne, Contre Cheuronne, Verſe, Contre verſe*, or charged with the before named Beasts, with *Pannes, Macles, Molettes, Eſtoiles ou de Ruſtres*, or other varieties which may be put into Armes.

Diuersitie of charges for their best distinguishing.

The second sonne of the first fift, and his descendants, may charge and varrie *Le Baſton*, as hath bin said before, and the like.

Of the second sonne, and his Assayllants of the first sixe: *A la Band*, which may bee *Coticee, Iumelee, Breteſee, Feuillee de Six, Componee, Endenchee, ou chargee d'Animaux ou de Pannes*

But it is to be held for a Rule, and an infallible Maxime in Armes, and the noble Art of

of Painting and Blazon *That he which beareth least, is the best*; which will serue for question and enquirie.

CHAP. II.

Of Scutcheons, Shields, Targets, and Buclers.

The best way of Arming a Knight.

IT hath beene an ancient common Prouerbe among the French: That the Knight beginneth to Arme himselfe with his Spurres, and compleateth all with the Shield. But contrary to this popular error, we will begin to honour our Noble Gentleman, that is to say, to Arme him with a Shield, and make our conclusion with the Bathe and Spurres. For, the Scutcheon or Shield, (to speake vprightly) is the essentiall note of a Nobleman, as also of an Esquire and Knight. But let vs first obserue, the structure and fashion of the Shield, and the difference thereof, from the Target and Buckler.

Diod. Sicul. in Lib. 6. de Ant.

Diodorus Siculus, in the sixt booke of his Antiquities, describeth the fashion of our Shields: *Arma ferunt* (saith he, speaking of the Celtes and Iberians, French & Spanish) *Scutum ad staturam hominis longum, proque libito cuiusque ornatum.* He speaketh much to the purpose, according to the Custome of the French Nation, *Scutum*, a Shielde, and not *Clypeum* a Buckler, common to the Italians and other Nations, otherwise (neuertheless) then the French, Germaines, Spaniards, and English, who neuer bare any other, then the Shield.

In like manner, there is very great difference, concerning the fashion of *Scutum*, *Clypeus*, and *Parma*, the Shield, the Buckler, and the Target, among the Latines.

The Buckler of the Romans

The Buckler, which the Romaines called *Clypeum*, was of round forme, yet shaping Quail-wise, according to the manner of the Greekes. This is that which wee vse to call a Rondell, or round Target, in regard of the round figure. In this manner, the Greeke *Palladines* went to the pretended conquest of their Golden Fleece, described by *Apollonius Rhodius* in his *Argonautes*, who carried their Shieldes of round forme, whereon each man had his deuice answerable to his owne fancie, and of them, those Bucklers were termed Bucklers of Argos.

Apollon. Rh. de eo Tra. de Arg

Argolici Clypei, aut Phœbea Lampadis instar,

Virg. in Aeneid lib. 3.

So speaketh *Virgill*, describing the frightfull eye of the Gyant *Polyphemus*, great & wide as the roundure of the Sunne, when he is seene on the point of his rising in the East.

The *Parma* or Target.

The *Parma*, which we call a Target, differed from the Buckler, because it was of square forme, and yet more long then large, and somewhat more narrow both aboue and beneath, then in the middle: which enlarged it selfe more forward, then at the two endes, bowing, vaulting, or turning ouer, like to the ridge Tiles of houses.

The forme of the Buckler.

The Buckler was ordinarily in containdure, no more then three foot in circumference, proper for them, termed *Enfans perdus*, Gentlemen of Companies, reserued for, and exposed vnto all desperate seruices in warre (called by the Greekes *Stradiots*, of the word Στρατιὸς, placed in the vantgard of the Armie, to begin the conflict and combustion. The Romaines called them *Velites*, by a Metaphor deriued from the sailes of shippes, which guides them, being swolne bigge with winde. So these aduenturous Soldiers were lightly armed, for the surprizall of them before.

The Romaine *Velites*.

The Buckler for Horsemen

This Buckler was likewise common to Horsemen, seruing to receyue the blowes of stones cast by Slings, Darts, and Arrowes shot from the enemie.

Three sorts of seruitors on horseback, *Hastati*, *Principes*, *Triarii*.

Now concerning three other sorts of Foote Seruitors which they had, tearming them *Hastatos*, *Principes*, and *Triarios*, they vsed the Target called *Parma*, which ordinarily contained foure foote and an halfe in heighth, broad aboue, and beneath two foot and an halfe: In such sort, as it might couer the whole man in necessitie, bending one knee down to the ground.

The manner of the French Shield.

The Shield proper and particular to the French, and their neighbouring people, was broad aboue and in the midst, but finished in a point. *Forma Scuti summum latius quæ pectus, atque humeri teguntur, fastigio æquali, ad imum cuneatior, mobilitatis causa*, so sayeth *Liuius* in his ninth booke, speaking of the Samnites, who (made martiall by the Gaules)

Titus Liuius lib. 9.

passed

led into Lombardie, being armed after the Gaules manner: and this was the reason, y such shields were called *Scuta Ligurina*; they contained almost the height of a man, ueable at the point, because of turning and making head, on which side soeuer the ene- e appeared.

Diodorus Siculus, speaking of them belonging to the men of Geneway and Millaine, aulish from all antiquitie, as *Plutarch* writeth in the life of *Furius Camillus*, and of *arcellus*) in this manner describeth their Armes, that is to say, their Shields: *Arma ent leuiora quam Romani. Operiuntur eorum corpora Scuto longo. Ad formam Gallorum to.* Our Ancestors serued themselues with Shields, finishing in the point, as well for n on horse-backe, as on foote; as wee finde on Marbles and ancient Monuments or mbes.

These words, *Operiuntur corpora longa* Scuto, doe giue vs to vnderstand, that those ields were so long and large, as a man might couer himselfe in warre against the Ene- es darts and arrowes. And at such time as question was made, for passing and freeing y great Riuer; those long and large Shields might commodiously serue their masters in- ead of boates or *Gondolaes* for passage. Hereof we haue many remarkeable examples, Saint *Gregory Victor* Archbishop of *Tours*, the most ancient Annalist of France, and ho serued as a Lanthorne, Guide, or *Iacobs* staffe for the discouery of the Min s and vn- owne Treasures, concealed vnder goodly and venerable Antiquitie. In the third booke d thirteenth chapter of his history of France: *Venientes ad Mosellam fluuium, cum transirent illum, & detinerentur a quibusdam, relictis equis, ac vestimentis* Enatantes super uto (speaking after the Romane manner, he vseth this word *Parma*) *positis, amnem in ulteriorem egressi sunt ripam.* And in the fourth booke, the thirtieth Chapter, describing e siedge of Arles in Prouence, and the encounters there performed: *Cum exercitus a rgo iaculis foderetur, operiretur que lapidibus ab Vrbanis, ad amnem Rhodanum dirigunt, que* Scutis Superpositis *ulteriorem ripam expectant.* The impetuous Current of that eat Riuer Rhodanus carried a great number of the Enemies; so that the saying of the atine Poet, speaking of the riuer *Simois*, carrying on her waues the miserable Troyans, w it selfe then in practise.

Shields seruing men in need for passing Riuers instead of boates

Virg. in Aeneid. lib. 7.

—*Correpta sub vndis*
Scuta *virum, galeasque, & fortia corpora voluit,*
Apparent rari nantes in gurgite vasto.

Qui vix nandi impulsu, Scutorumque *adiuti adminiculo, litoris alterius plana contingere tuerunt.*

Shields kept in vse both for men and women.

Vnto this present time the forme of Shieldes, large aboue, and to the midst, haue been ept in vse, but finishing in the point, as well in the Armes for men as women, which had art of the moitie of those belonging to their husbands on the right side, and on the left, e moitie for those women. But as for maides vnmarried, they bare none but the Armes f their Father, framed *Lozenge* wise. And for the same reason, the Tombes of Stone, herein anciently their bodies had enterrement, were made in the forme of a *Lozenge*, cording to the custome obserued in *Greece*, on the graues of the *Amazones*, that is to y, Noble Maides: As *Plutarch* obserueth in the life of *Theseus*; but so they ought not o be made for Wiues.

The Shield the principall piece of Armes

And because the Shield was the principall part of Armes for a Knight; for the same respect, and in regard of excellency, he is said to be armed, *ab Armo*, so say the best expositors; because hee beareth it aloft on his arme, or on his left shoulder, which they call *Armum.*

Quam fortis pectore, & Armis!
What strong brest, What large shoulders!

So saith *Virgill* in deciphering his Prince, whom he maketh to haue large shoulders, as we vse to speake of large squareneſse. *Armillas* called *Festus, ex Auro, quas Viri militares ab Imperatoribus donati gerunt, dictas esse existimant, quod Antiqui* Humeros cum Brachijs, Armos *vocabant.*

How, and of what the Shields and targets were made.

These Shields, Targets, and Bucklers were made of thinne and yeelding boords, of Birche, Fig-tree, Linden, Willow, Elder, and Poplar, cut and framed into many pieces, and afterward ioyned together one vpon another, with cloth well glued; which being throughly dried, they then vsed to couer the Shields with the strong hide of an Oxe,

being doubled twice or thrice, for to make it the stronger. The amorous Poet makes his *Aiax* the *Telamonion*, to carrie a Buckler fastned and couered with seuen-doubles.

Surgit ad hos Clypei Dominus septemplicis Aiax.

For better keeping the whole substance together, they fur-rounded the Shields, Targets, and Bucklers, with a circle of yron, brasse, copper, gold, or siluer, according to the wealthinesse of the Souldier. *Tacitus* in the second of his Annales, speaking of our Ancestors, saith: *Nec* Scuta *quidem ferro, neruoque firmata, sed viminum textus, vel tenues & fucatas colore tabulas.* In the midst or Bosse of the said Bucklers, there was ordinarily fixed a long pointed yron, which aduanced it selfe halfe a foot in height: The Romans called this pointed yron, *Vmbonem. Virgil* saith,

The ancient Order of Bosses in Bucklers

Flectunt que saligna
Vmbonum crates aly.

This was peculiar to Bucklers onely; for in the Greeke and Romane Targets, there was not any point at all, no more then in our Shields: in which place our Ancestors pleased to imbosse some Fowle, or foure-footed beast, as *Diodorus Siculus* relateth in the sixt booke of his Antiquities, *Strabo, Cornelius Tacitus, Posidonius* and *Atheneus.*

Heereupon afterward, they vsed to tearme those Shields *Armes*, or (speaking more grossely) *Armories of Cognisances.* And so, such a man, and such a Lord of such a house, carried (as we vse to say) such and such Armes. Because their Shield, or Escutcheon, was charged with such or such mettall, hauing an Eagle displayed, a Lion rampant, a Bull passant, or any other beast, *d'Or*, or *d'Argent, d'Azure, Gueulles, Synople*, or *Sable.*

How Coates of Armes began to be called so.

And by these differences of Shield, Target, and Buckler, men learned how to make Shields and Scutcheons of Armes: For the French, Germanes, Spaniards, and English ought to beare them square aboue, and so to the midst, but finishing orderly in a point without the aduise of ignorant Painters or Caruers, who make them of bias and thwart shape, and cut the point in part or wholly short, which should begin much higher. The Italians retaine the ancient forme of their Buckler in their Armes, making them Oualwise, and not in the round forme. For vs to doe the like after the Italian manner (as those personages are figured in the magnificent Gallery at the Louure) were to misprise the Nation for following the fashion of Strangers, or else to condemne faire and venerable Antiquitie, because her face is furrowed with the wrinkles of age.

How the French and others should beare their shields.

The Bucklers of the Italians

It is not long since I saw, that the Bretons carried square Armes, which wee call *Banner*, to shew that they are descended of the Knights Bannerets, as much to say, as of Lords: to whom for their wealth and number of seruants, the Dukes of Bretaine gaue permission to beare Bannners, and to haue Mottoes in them, as it is in France, bearing the name of Knights Bannerets. This is that whereof the Lord of *Ioinuille* speaketh in the life of the good King Saint *Lewis*: that they of the Court of Champaigne had beyond the Seas, in seruice of the said King, lost fiue and thirty Knights, all bearing Banners. And the Ceremonies obserued at the making of these Knights Bannerets, is remarked by *John Froissard*, where he speaketh of the battell fought in Spaine by *Messire Bertrand du Gueselin*, afterward Constable of France, for King *Henry* of *Castile* against the Prince of Wales; to whom, before the said Battell, an Englishman presented himselfe, named *Iohn Chandois*, the words in French are thus Englished.

The Bretons descended of Knights Bannerets.

There Sir Iohn Chandoyes *brought the Banner betweene the Battailes, which (as yet) he had not any way moued out of the Princes Hoast, to whom he spake thus. My Lord, heere you see my Banner, I deliuer it you in such manner, that you pleasing to display it, I may thinke to beare it: for I thanke God I am well prouided of lands, goods, and inheritances, whereby I maintaine and hold this estate, according as thereto appertaineth. So the Prince, and the King* Don Peter (*who was also there present*) *tooke the Banner into their hands*, Qui estoit d'Argent a vn pieu (c'estoit vn pal) aignise de gueulles, *and restoring it to him, spake thus*, Sir Iohn, *behold heere your Banner, take, and God giue you leaue to vse it well. So departed Sir* Iohn Chandois, *and brought the Banner among his owne followers, speaking thus vnto them: Gentlemen, you see heere my Banner and yours, wherefore defend it as yours.*

Against intruders to be Banner-bearers.

Now such as doe intrude themselues to beare a Banner, without hauing seruants sufficient to defend it, and meanes to support the expences thereto belonging: a mockerie

is made of them, and they are to be armed like vnto the Square Ouppet: For his meniee (at the least) must be such, as to maintaine (at his owne charge) fiue and twenty Gentlemen, well mounted and armed, with each one his Sergeant at the least; for they were called *Seruientes*, and by a word (I know not whence deriued) *Mattheruel*, who with the sword, and a Iacke of Maile, carried the Battle-Axe, and the Shield. There are many Tombes to be seene in the Church and Cloyster of Saint *Katherine du Val*, of the Scholers at Paris of these *Seruiteurs*, qualified the Kings Sergeants, though stiled *Seruientes ly Roye.* Their Maces of Armes (to this day retained by the hundred Gentlemen of the Kings house, with the Pentioners halberts) engrauen by them; for none but their masters are they who carry the Launce.

These Bannerets caused to be carried before them in Battell, *A square Pennon*, armed with their Armes and Deuises, and thereby called a Banner; because it was made in the fashion of our Church-Banners, which were made the Standerds and Enfignes of the Romanes. After they were granted to beare a Banner, the Bretons cut off the point of their Shielde, and carried it square, marching so boldly with it in the front, to shew that they were become great Gallants. This grant of bearing a Banner, brought them another priuiledge, to haue high authority of Iustice, and to execute Iustice in the right of a Baron. So the States of Bretaigne sitting at Naunes, in the yeare 1451. *Peter*, second of the name, Duke of Bretaigne, gaue to *Messire Rolland Peam*, Lord of *Grand-Bois*, and of the *Roche-Isgu*, the title of Banneret, Right of Iustice in case of a Baron, and to beare Armes in his Banner. So saith *Argentre*, a diligent Obseruer of all the Priuiledges and Rights.

The Bannerets Pennon in battaile.

For the execution of malefactors vpon the gallowes.

Concerning the last Knights of the Holy Ghost, made by the late King *Henry* the Great (of happy memory) at the Augustines in *Paris*, among all the Armes of the Princes and Lords, I could not see any Armes in Banner, but those of the Marshall *de Biron*, *Paremens escartelles d'Or & de Gueulles*, and without any charge.

How Armes in Baner became so called.

Those Armes in Banner were so nominated, because of their cutting short by the point; so that they containe the same largenesse, as well in point as in chiefe.

Concerning the word Enseigne.

Monarches, Princes, and great Lords (whom the Ancients of France honoured with the title of Barons) marching in warre, carried many Ensignes of their Armes and deuises; for the worde *Enseigne*, is the generall name applied to the Companies, either of Foot or Horse.

In the first place, marcheth the Banner, a little longer then otherwise, and square in forme, (yet not after the fashion of Banners in our Churches) cut off beneath, like vnto a *Gonfanon* of Italie (the ancient Armes of the house of Bologne) is not carried by the means of a Staffe, trauersing the middle backward, but by a staffe at one of the ends.

The fashion of the Banner leading the way.

Next after followeth the great Standard, carried in the same manner, large aloft, but finishing in a round point, after the fashion of the French shield, which is cut like two round tongues diuided: And this great Standard ordinarily appeareth, and ought to be of much longer extendure then the Banner.

The great Standard.

After marcheth the *Guidon*, much lesse by a third part then the Standard, and differing from it in this manner: because at the point, it hath one onely round tongue, whole, and without any cutting.

The Guidon

In the fourth place is the *Pennon*, lesser by halfe then the *Guidon*, but hauing the same forme and tongue. All these are ordinarily made, and fringed with the Litteries and colours of the Prince, or Lord, to whose funerals they are carried. And beside what hath beene said, first of all is carried the great Standard of the Colours, charged on the one part and the other, with the Patronc and Tutelary Saint of his Realme or title, and his deuise. As not long since in Picardie, the three most ancient Houses thereof, carried their Armes and the title Blazoned on their name.

The Pennon.

The great Standard of Colours.

D'Ailly, Mailly, Crequy,
Such Names, such Armes, such Title.

The Coronet is of the same fashion as the Banner; square, but long, in number of the Standard, cut by a thred directly forward, and not declining to the point, as the Banners doth.

The Enseigne of a Horse Company.

In times past, there were none but Princes Souuaigues that carried the Coronet, which ought not to be charged with Armes or Deuise, but only the principall Lyne-

tie of the Prince. In France it is White, in Spaine Red: in England and elsewhere it is of the Kingdomes Colours. This Cornet ought not to be carried, but in the presence of the Soueraigne Prince, vnder which other Princes and great Lords, haue ordinarily to serue to ranke themselues, for the conseruation thereof.

Enfignes of the Foot Souldiers

As for the Infanterie, they haue Enfignes and Flagges made Banner-wise: the Colour whereof (like to the Cornet) should be without Charge or deuise: but onely the sole Liuerie or Colours of the Kingdome, as we haue already sayd.

Who ought to beare Armes onely, & none other.

The Honour of bearing Shieldes, that is to say Armes, belongeth to none but Noble men by extraction, or by calling and creation. And it is not yet an hundred yeares, since such as were not of Noble condition, were punished with great fines and amercements, if they but attempted to beare any.

Marks or notes of Tradesmen, & of Merchats

It was permitted to them, to haue onely Markes or notes, of those Trades and Professions which they vsed: As a Tailor to haue his Sheares, a Cutler a Knife, a Shearman his Cloth-sheares, a Mason his Trowell, and the Compasse or Squire, and so of others. Merchants (for their more honour) might beare the first Letters of their names and surnames, enterlaced with a Crosse: as is to be seene in many ancient Epitaphes, and as yet to this day, vpon their packes or burthens of Merchandises. All these were called but Markes, they were not permitted to haue Shields, but onely Targets, hollow at the chiefe and flankes, like them which are giuen to Villages, at the Feast of the Saint their Patron, to manifest that they were not Shields.

Of such as counterfeyt Gentility.

But now adayes, the very meaneſt Merchant and Artizane, will counterfeyte to be Noble, and to giue Armes, for the most part falsely made, and worse emblazoned, and their cheefest excellencie, when they time and make answer to their Names. As *Vide-Bichet*, a Village, and the Fawne of a Hinde: *Bourdin*, a Bourrough and a Fallow Deere: *Clergeon*, a Key and a Bull-rush. Nay moreouer, there must be some Starre or Cresent (heeretofore the onely marke or note of Nobility) to shew the Diuinity of their spirit, in the composition of their representations. I haue seene a counterfeyte fellow, to giue himselfe Armes *D'azur a Cheuron d'Or, au Croissant de Gueulles, Au hault d'iceluy deux Estoilles d'Argent au Chef & la Sphere Celeste soubs le Cheuron*, with Crest and Mantle (extreme impudence) euen as it hee had beene Noble by foure races: there wanted but a Ladder and a Broome, to sweepe off the Cobwebbes from the roofe-Tiles of his Fathers house.

vpstart Companions will presume to giue Armes.

The cause of this great error and confusion

This corruption and confusion first grew from this, that the Noble Science of Blazons, was negligently preserued in her auncient splendour, by Kings, Heralds, and Pursuiuants of Armes, whose principall charge (in precedent times) was, to haue especiall care, that not any person should presume to beare Armes, if they were not giuen and graunted by the Prince, or retayned from his Auncestours, who had lawfull priuiledge to beare them. For they stoode bound, to keepe a Register of all Noble Houses, and therein to paynt their Armes, and describe their good actions in Warre, a Custome remaining well kept to this day, in the Chamber of Accompts at Paris, in the Letters of Nobilities which those Monarches then gaue, in the middest whereof is fairely limned, the Armes of such as were more lately ennobled. But returne wee now againe, to our former Discourse of Shields.

Of the Romain Emperours at their comming to the Empire.

By example of the French, the Romaine Emperours comming to the Empire, were exalted and carried on a Shield of fine or pureſt Gold, enammelled with the Empire, that is to say, *De Gueulles a l'Aigle esployé d'Or, a deux testes*. First taken by *Constantine*, at the time of his electing Constantinople in Thrace, to be the Imperiall Seate, the Empire being then diuided, into that of the East and West. It is thus reported by *Georgius Cedrenus*, in the second booke of his Collections, that he who was declared to be *Augustus*, that is to say Successor in the Empire, was exalted and carried on the Imperiall Shield: *Imperatorio Clypeo insidetis, qui Imperio destinatur*. And those Shields as wel as the sword of the Emperors, were hallowed & consecrated by the Popes, who ordinarily sacred the said Emperors. As *Pope Leo* did to the person of the Emperour *Charlemaign*, who being crowned Emperour of the West, he charged his Shielde with *D'Or, de Esmaux de France*, that is to say, *D'Azur au Fleurs de Lys d'Or, a deux testes Couronnes, Lhuict l'Escu de France sans nombre*.

The Emperors sacred by the Popes.

According as it was borne by his Grandfathers and Father, *Pepin*, *Charles Martell* and *Pepin le Bref*, first King of the second Lyne, the sayd Shield carrying Gueules

Crowne,

Crowne, in regard of the Imperiall dignity, and about it the Order of the *Garter*, instituted in the Noble house of France by the saide *Charles Martell*, Imperiall Armes, retayned by all the Kings of the second Lyne, and further on in the third. For *Philip Augustus* in some Charters, styled himselfe Emperour of the French, bearing the Golden Apple, as is noted in his Picture, the last of the Kings, on the frontispeece of the Church at Paris, of eight and twentie there figured, maintaining (with truth) the Title of Emperour appertaining to the King of France priuatiuely, before any other Prince, as descending of *Charlemaigne*, by whom the Empire came from the Greekes to the Freuch. And the Pope, a Germaine by Nation, *Stephen*, eight of the name, could not with equitie, spend largely vpon another mans purse, or disanull (without subiect) that which his predecessour (so many yeares before) had done, Pope *Leo*, third of the name. For he ordayned (sacring & crowning *Charlemaigne* Emperour, in Anno eight hundred and one) that by inuesting him, his Successours the Kings of France, should hold the Empire of the West; Curſing, euen to the day of Iudgement (*Anathemate Maranatha*) all such as should dispossesse or trouble them therein.

The Empyre translated from the Greekes to the French, by the Emperour Charlemaigne

The saide Pope *Stephen*, hauing crowned the Emperour *Otho*, first of the name (whom the Germaines tearmed *Otho* the Great) Duke or Count of Saxon: the saide *Otho*, to deface the memorie of the French Emperours, changed the Imperiall Shield blazoned by *Charlemaigne*, *De Esmaux de France*. For, being of the house of Saxon, who, as his Armes, *Porte D'Or a trois Faisse de Sable, a la Coronne de Synople periee en Bande*: He tooke *L'Escu d'Or a l'Aigle esployé de Sable*, Armes which the Germaine Emperors haue retained to this day.

Otho the great changed the Empires armes of the French.

We haue formerly saide, according to *Pachymerus*, that the Emperours (comming to the Empire) were exalted vpon a Shield, according to the example of the French: lee vs now see the proofe thereof.

Of the Emperors exaltation vpon a shielde at the first.

This custome was proper and particular to the French, from whom the Greekes and Romaines deriued it by example. It is very likely, that the Kings of the Gaules (extirpated by *Iulius Cæsar*) were not receyued into the Royaltie, without many Ceremonies; seeing we haue learned by tradition, that a Prince of the *Druides*, in whose person the Image of the Gaulish Kings remained, walking in publique, or holding Assembly of the Generall Estates of the Gaules, had alwayes carried before him, The Hand of Iustice, vpon a Cubite of Iuorie. And that comming to the saide Authoritie, the Seat whereof was kept at Chartres: he was exalted vpon a Shield, and so carried about the Assembly of the sayd States.

The Hollanders, neere neighbours to the Gaules, and with whome also they did take part, being reuolted from the Romaines: established (as King) one named *Brinio*, exalting him vpon a Shield, and so carrying him on their shoulders about the Campe. As it is obserued by the Noble Romaine Historian *Cornelius Tacitus*, in the fourth Booke of his Histories. *Brinio, ipso rebellis familiæ crimine placuit. Impositoque Scuto, more Gentis, et succolentium humeris vibratus, Dux eligitur*. He speaketh to the purpose *More Gentis*, because this fashion was proper and particular to the Gaules, and to their Brethren the Germaines, altogether conformable in Religion, and manner of life.

The Hollanders exalting of their King.

Iulian the Apostata, being Gouernour of the Gaules, was by the Gaulish Legions proclaimed Emperour, at his Pallace of *Thermes*, in the Suburbes of Paris. This Palace comprehended (in those times) the whole extenditre, where now is the Hay streete, the *Hostel de Clugny*, the streets of the Mathurins, of Coupe-gueule (at this present Sorbonne) and of the Masons, so farre as to the gates of Saint Iames, and Saint Michaell: And after the fashion of the Ancient Gaules, exalted vpon a Shield: so speaketh his Historian *Ammianus Marcellinus*. *Impositusque Scuto Pedestri, & sublatus eminens, nullo sciente, Augustus renuntiatus est*.

Iulian the Apostata proclaimed Emperor.

Hee saith *Scuto Pedestri*, to shewe, that it was according to the Gaules manner, and not the Romaines, because the Romaine Souldiours had the *Clypeum* or Buckler, and the Germaines and Gaules, the *Scutus* or Shield. Those there, the Target, long, and square both aboue and beneath: and they heere the Shield, largelaloft and at the midst, the rest finishing fairely in a point. *Scutum ad staturam Hominis longum, prolibito cuiusque ornatum*: So saith *Diodorus Siculus*, in the sixt Booke of his Antiquities. For the principall Armes of French Cheualiers, was the Lance and Shield. As for the word *Framea*, it is equiuocall, namely in the history of Saint *Gregory Victor*, Archbyshoppe of Tours,

taking it for all kinds of Armes, to be vsed with the hand, Lance, Dart, Iauelin, Arrow, *Eques Scuto, Framea que contentus est.* So saieth *Tacitus, de moribus Germanorum.* The Knight is sufficiently armed with his Shield and Lance: For the Gauls neuer went without Swords, which they wore in a Scarfe or Bauldricke, *A dextro latere, ad sinistrum pendent*; saith the same *Tacitus*, Hanging from the right side to the left.

Difference betweene the Shieldes for Horse & foot

But there was difference betweene the Horsemans Shield, and the French foote Souldiers, which *Marcelinus* called *Scutum Pedestre*, because it couered the foote Souldier from the foote to the head, and whereon (when neede required) he might safely passe the greatest Riuers, by swimming on it, as before hath bin saide, according to the Authorities of *Gregorie of Tours*, in his history of France. Whereas the Horsemans Shield was little, to couer the breast onely, against the dangers of the Lance. As is to be seene in Figures on Tombes and Graue stones, after the Ancient maner: And at this present day, on the great Seales of Princes and supreame Lords, represented on horseback, armed from foote to head, with the Shield before the breast, and the drawne sword in his right hand.

The shield the chiefe Armes for a souldier on horse and foote.

Now the Shield being the principall Armes for a Souldier both on horse and foot, and an vndoubted acknowledgement, concerning the Nobleness of his extraction: it was all the care and diligence of the Foote Souldier and Horseman, to keepe and defend it with the perill of his life. Because such a one as was so negligent, or such a villaine, as to suffer it to be torne from him, or to loose it in a raunged Battaile: he was abandoned of all the world, as an excommunicated person, hated, detested, excluded, and banished from all commerce with men, so that he might better kill himselfe, rather then to suruiue such a shame, as we are instructed by *Tacitus*. *Scutum dereliquisse præcipuum flagitium, nec cui sacris adesse* (there is excommunication) *aut consilium inire* (diets and publike assemblies) *ignominioso fas est. Multi superstites bellorum, infamiam laqueo finierunt.* In the Salique Law (that is the Code of the Ancient French, from *Pharamond* so farre as to *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*) he that iniuried another, by telling him, that hee had lost or throwne away his Shield in the Hoast; he should pay six times twenty Deniers for a fine, that was three Solles, for the Sol of the French valueth forty Deniers. *Si quis alteri imputauerit, quod Scutum suum proiecisset in Hoste, vel fugiendo præ timore* CXX. *denariorum, qui faciunt Solidos tres, culpabilis iudicetur.*

Concerning the Salique & Ripuarie Law

Vnder the first Monarchs of France, at the Seats of Iustice, when the Pleas and suites were debated, contained in the Salique and Ripuarie Law, called *Mallos*, the place for the Assembly tearmed *Mallus*, (from whence came the Verbe *Admallare*, as much to say, as an Appealee, or defendant in an Appeale, *Admallatus*, Appealed:) there was vpon the Chaire or Seate of the President an Intendant of Iustice, *L'Escu charge des Esmaulx*, that is to say, A Shield charged with the Armes of the King; to demonstrate, that there was the Bench of Royall Iustice. The Salique Law, at the title *De Reippus*, concerning the marriage of Widdowes, the first Paragraph: *Tunginius, aut Centenarius Mallum indicent, & in ipso Mallo Scutum habere debent & tres Sagibarones.*

The titles of Officers of Iustice.

These *Mallus* or Pleas were not intended for ordinary dayes, when meetings were before the first Iudges, whom we call Prouosts: but on those held by the Bayliffs, who were called Countes, in the Law *Ripuarie*, Chapter XC. *Graziones, Graffiones, Margraff*, and *Grauen* in the Germane tongue, as much to say as Counts, Intendants of Iustice, who had vnder them Vicounts, particular Iudges in Cities and Townes, whose Lieutenants were also named *Vicary*, Vicares (a word retained to this day in the Germane Empire) and in France knowne by the name of *Viguiers*. But the Countes were the men, to execute the charges and commands of Iustice, they whom the Salique Law and the Capitularies called *Tunginos* and *Centenarios*. And for Associates on the Seats of Iustice, they had three sufficient and honest men at the least, men of good life, without any reproach, who serued to the said Counts as well for Assistants, as also Commissaries, to make the enquests, Informations in causes doubtfull, in matters Ciuill and Criminall. Those Associates and Commissaries, were called in the Salique Law *Sagibarones*, at the title of *Afatomie*, that is to say, of Donations. *Hoc conuenit obseruare vt Tunginus, aut Centenarius Mallum habeant, & Scutum in ipso Mallo habeant, & tres Sagibarones.*

Assises or times of generall Sessions.

Those *Mallus* were properly such, as in France are called Assises, or Great Sessions, because at those times, they iudged none other but causes of importance, specified in the Charter of Priuiledges, granted by King *Lewes* the Debonnaire, Emperor, to Spanyards fugitiues from Cathalogna, Rossillion, and Cerdaignia, Prouinces vsurped by the Moores.

Moores. Maiores causæ sicuti Homicidia, rapsus, incendia, depredationes, membrorum amputationes, furta, latrocinia, alienarum rerum inuasiones, quæ cum vicinis criminaliter accidunt, ad Comitis Mallum venire debent.

Prohibited places where the Sessions ought not to be kept.

And those great dayes of Sessions were prohibited and charged, not to bee kept in the Churches or Porches of Churches, or in sanctified places, which were called by our Ancients *Paruis* and *Paradises*, and we at this time tearme *Paruis*, were they couered or inclosed with walles, or no. *Comes conuenientem locum consideret & inueniat vbi Rationem Ad Mallum tenendum constituat, Quia nefas est ibi reos puniri, vbi respectu diuinæ reuerentiæ misericordiam consequuntur.* So speaketh the Ordonance of the generall Estates, held at Soissons, the yeare of Grace, 853. So that, if there were no any *Paruis*, couered or distinguished by a wall: before euery Church should be reserued a square Arpent of ground, to serue as Paruis, within which the Lay Iudge was prohibited to exercise his Iustice, in the Ordonance of King *Clotharius* the first. *Si quæ Ecclesiæ, quibus Atria clausa non sint, vtraque parte parietum terræ spatium*, Arpennis *pro atrio obseruetur.* And those Assises, for the weightinesse of the matters in them to be handled, were not to be holde but in the mornings. *Placitum Comes non habeat nisi ieiunus*, so saith the Ordonance of *Charlemaigne*, at the fifteenth Paragraphe.

The Parliament holde in the open field.

Aboue those Assises and great dayes of Generall Sessions, was the Parliament held euery yeare (as we shall further relate in our second booke) in the open field: In *Campo*, and not of good Cities, by the Ordonance of *Childebert*, first of the name, with the Generall Estates, that is to say, in the Generall Parliament held at Vtrecht. *Traiecti omnibus nobis adunatis conuenit* Campo. Notwithstanding, the Appellations of those great Sessions or Assises, were not concerned in the Parliament: because the Counts sentenced crimes, by the last iudgement, as the Prouost Marshalles do in France. They onely consulte on the State Affayres, according to the occurrences whereof, they make and publish diuersity of Ordonances. For, from the time of the *Druides*, who were the Soueraigne Iudges of the Gaules, the Parliament tooke knowledge of the State affayres, as well for Peace, as for Warre. And this generall Parliament was composed of Church-men, Nobles, Dukes, and Countes; that is to say, of Gouernours and Lieutenants generall and particular of Prouinces, and Officers of the Crowne of France, who were all held and obliged vnder paines) to yeelde themselues to the generall Estates: according to the Ordonances reiterated by King *Charlemaigne*. *De pœnis Episcoporum, Abbatum, & Comitum qui ad Placitum nostrum non venerint.* For the Parliament was called Royall, farre differing from the great Assises held by the Countes.

The Druides the chief Iudges of the Gaules.

The marke or note of the Parliament.

And the marke or signale of this generall Parliament, was a high Pole, planted in the middest of the field where the Assembly was made, on the toppe of which pole or stake, was fastened the Shield Royall, that is to say, the Armes of the Kings of France, in like manner as ouer the Iudges Seats.

A custome retayned by the Emperours of Germanie, as we are enstructed by *Otho* of Austria, Archbishop of Frisinghen, in the life of the Emperour *Fredericke* the first, the first Booke and the twelfth Chapter. *Est autem consuetudinis Regum Francorum, quæ & Teutonum, vt quotiescunque ad sumendum Imperij Coronam, militem ad transalpinandum* (passe the Alpes to go into Italy) *coegerint, in prædicto* Campo *mansionem faciant. Ibi, ligno in altum erecto* Scutum *suspenditur.*

Titles giuen to the French, by the great King *Clouis*.

The Poet *Guntherus Ligurinus*, in the life of the same Emperour,

Ligno suspenditur alte
Erecto Clypeus, *tum Præco regius omnes*
Conuocat, a Dominis Feudalia iura tenentes.

Thus the French made such worthie esteeme of their Shields, that they exalted and carried vpon them, their Princes and Monarches; comming to the Crown, to make publike note thereby, that by the like ceremonies as those, Royall Maiestie was embraced, be-weene their armes, as being iudged worthy of such manner of conduct. And that Nation, wholly generous and warlike (*Gens Francorum inclyta, auctore Deo condita, fortis in armis, profunda in consilio, firma in pacis fœdere, corpore nobilis, candore, & forma egregia, audax, velox, & aspera*, Titles which the Great *Clouis* gaue them) neuer went but armed, in what place soeuer it were: holding it for an assured Maxime, that the very greatest honour which they could do to their Prince, was to receiue him into their Armes. Accounting as it was obserued by *Tacitus*. *Honoratissimum Assensus genus inter eos, arma laudare Prin-*

principem: For the reasons rendered by *Cassiodorus*, in the tenth booke of his diuer... *Indicamus parentes nostros inter Procinctuales gladios, More maiorum Scuto suppositu... lem nobis præstante Deo, contulisse dignitatem.*

And this was the reason, why at this ioyfull comming to the Crowne, the gen... Parlement was assembled in the open Field, where he was exalted on a Shield, and ca... ed on the shoulders of the chiefest persons, three seuerall times about the assembly: wh... being done, he receiued their homages, and their oathes of fidelitie, according to th... ranke, dignity, office, and benefits. And so the *French* would be no longer comman... by electiue Dukes, in regard of the diuision, which ordinarily followeth plurality of G... uernors, and such as command: wherefore they established (as Soueraigne Monarc... ouer them) *Pharamond*, a Prince of equity, iust, and a keeper of his word, vertues m... necessary in any Prince, that is desirous to haue renowne. The old manuscript Ch... nicle speaketh thus, *Marchomirus dedit id Consilij* Francis, *& elegerunt* Pharamund... *Marchomiris filium, & leuauerunt Regem supra se crinitum*: by long haire, a note for th... to discerne the Princes of the blood Royall, from them that were strangers.

The French first ruled by electiue Dukes

The Monke *Aimonius*. *Regem caterarum more nationum* Franci *sibi deligentes*, Pha... ramundum *Marcomiri filium solio sublimanti Regio.*

S. Gregorie Victor of Tours, in his second Booke and fortieth Chapter of the Histor... of France, speaking of Great *Clouis*, taken and chosen for King by the men of Cologne: *Colonienses ista audientes, & Plaudentes tam palmis, quam vocibus, eum* Clypeo *eue... per se Regem eleuauerunt.*

Gombauld, tearming himselfe to be the sonne of King *Clothaire* the first, proclaim... King of France by the rebels which tooke his part, because they would fish in troubl... waters: was exalted at *Briue la gaillarde in Limosin* (called *Briua Curetia*) vpon the Shiel... as is auouched by *Gregory* of *Tours* in his seauenth Booke and tenth Chapter. *Ibi par... superpositus Rex est leuatus. Sed cum tertio cum eodem gyrarent, cecidisse fertur, ita ut t... manibus circumstantium sustentari potuisset.* Hauing exalted him on the Shield, at t... third time as they walked with him about the Campe, he fell so loutishly to the ground... as he thought himselfe to be slaine, which was taken for an assured presage, and progn... sticke rule, of this supposed Princes ruine, pursued by the French, so farre as to the fou... dation of the Pyrenian Mountaines: where he was taken, and afterward slaine in the Ci... ty of Saint *Bertrand de Comenges*, vpon whose Reliques is yet remaining the Bourg of Ba... crauera, somewhat beneath the said City of Comenges.

In like manner *Sigibert*, King of *Austrasia*, sonne of that *Clothaire* the first, w... (neere to *Tournay*) exalted on the Shield, and proclaimed King of *Soissons*, in the plac... of *Chilperic*; against whom hee questioned for the Kingdome, as saith the same *Gr... gorie.*

The custome of the Shield carried from Gaule into Greece.

This Custome was, with the French language (to slender purpose called Greeke) carri... ed out of Gaule into Greece, at such time as the Gaules, to the number of three hundre... thousand soules, vnder the conduct of *Belouese*, one of the Nephewes to *Ambigat*, Ki... of *Auuergne*; about the yeare of the world, 3350.613. yeares before the natiuitie of t... Sauiour of the world, *Nabuchodonosor* ruling ouer the Iewes, and *Tarquinius Priscus* re... ning ouer the Romaines. At which time they possessed themselues of the City of Rom... of the Estate of Naples and Sicilie, afterward called Great Greece; of Thrace, Macedo... nia, Galatia, and other Prouinces of Asia, and of the most part of the Isles of Greece: A... is recorded by *Titus Liuius*, *Plutarch*, *Strabo*, *Pausanias* and *Lucian* in his Gaulish Hero... les, and in his Herodotus, where he describeth the marriage of *Alexander* the Great, wit... the faire *Roxana*, daughter to the *Satrape Oxiartes.*

Zonaras and *Zozimus*, Greeke Authors, speaking of the eleuation of *Iulian* the Apost... ta (of whom we haue already spoken, in the passage cited by his Historian) haue well... marked this auncient custome, and practised in Thrace. The first of them writeth in th... life of *Iustinian*, that that Prince being mortally hated of his Subiects for his extrem... auarice; the Pretorian Souldiors (that is to say, the Guard of the Romaine, Greeke a... Latine Emperors) desired to haue for their Emperor, a poore wretched man named *A... parius*, to whom giuing a new name of *Anastasius*: they exalted him vpon a Shiel... and carried him (in a brauado) three times about the great Market place of Constan... tinople.

Nicephorus Gregoras, speaking of the eleuation of *Theodorus*, the sonne of *Ducas*, ob... seruet...

...eth, that by vniuersall consent of the people, hee was proclaimed Emperour, seated, carried vpon the Shield, according to the ancient custome.

This ceremonie of eleuation of the Greeke Emperours, is particularly described by *Popalates*, in the great Office of the Crowne Officers of Constantinople, saying. Then the new Emperour seased on a Shield, was exalted on high, to be seene of the people, and that the ...res before, which sustained the said Shield, were raised by the said Emperor reigning, ...the Father of the Elected (if he were liuing) were with the Patriarche of Constantino... before; on the sides and behinde, came the Princes of blood, and for want of them, principall Officers of the Empire. If it so fell out, that the new Emperour crowned ...g, had no father liuing, nor the old Emperor likewise: their places were supplied by first Princes of the blood, and the rest by Priuate Strangers, or principall Officers, so marched immediately after them formerly named. In this order and equipage, the ...ted Emperor was carried three times round about the field, which the Romaine Hi... rians called *Fossatum*, where he descended from off the Shield; and afterward was ...nducted into the Church of Saint *Sophia*, to be crowned and Sacred: after the Sacri... e of the Masse, and the accustomed prayers. *Postea vero Imperator ipse Scuto insidens ...altum extollitur, & spectandus exhibetur omnibus turbis stantibus inferiore loco. Tenent ...em partem anteriorem* Scutum *ipse Imperator, & Patereius qui renunciatur, sua uxoris ...tum Patriarcha. Latera vero, & posteriorem partem qui summas dignitates obtinent ...e Domini, & Subastores, & qui sunt sua minores, Patentissimi Principum, & Nobilissimi.*

The exaltation of an elected Emperor in Greece.

CHAP. III.

Of Helmets; And likewise of their Ornaments, Labels and Crests.



Diodorus Siculus, describing the furniture of the ancient *Gauls*, speak... eth thus of their Armes for the head. *Aerea galea caput muniunt paulum eminentiora, in qua cornua impressa, aut auium aut quadrupedum effigies sculpta sunt.* The Gaules had for habillements of the head, Helmets, Murrians, or headpieces of Brasse, the Mezail or Beauers eleuated before the face: And for Crest, the hornes of terrestriall Animals of diuers kindes, and of Foules with wings displaied. That which this Greeke interpreteth *Galeam*, the Ro... maines called *Cassidem*, and the ancient French *Helmum*, which ...e call a Helm t, following the old Law of the Ribarols, in the thirty eight Chapter, where there is made some enumeration of Armes, and garments for warre, worne by ...e auncient French: *Spatham cum Cogisa*, the Sword and the Ponyard; *Helmum*, the ...ad piece; *Beinbergas*, the Greues and Tasses, &c.

Two kindes of seuerall Head-pieces for warre.

Of these Murrians, Caskes, Timbres, Helmets, and Head-pieces, our Ancestors had ...wo seuerall fashions, for the Horsemen, and for the Infanterie. For the Seruitours on foote, namely the *Bisognes*, that is to say, fresh men, or new come Souldiors, whom the ...omaines called *Pyrones*; they wore Caps or Coifes of hard boyled Leather, such as flaggons and Bottles were wont to be couered withall. And this kinde of couering the ...ead, was called *Galea*, by the Gaulish name *Galerus*, a Cap or Scull Cap. And as for the Caske or Murrian, which the Romans called *Cassidem*, it was made of apt yeelding plates of Iron, or of Brasse, which serueth for our better vnderstanding (those) passages in *Diodorus Siculus*, and *Cornelius Tacitus*, in his Germanie. *Vix uni alterive Gallis aut ...alea.*

These Murrians of Leather, or of Iron, which in elder dayes were reserued Burgeones, by reason the Bourgongnons (their deadly enemies) made vse of such Armours, did ordinarily represent the Muzzell of a Lyon, a Woolfe, a Dragon, or else some other fearefull ...eature, to strike (as hath beene said) feare in tiede children. ...

We learne of *Homer*, in the tenth booke of his *Iliades*, that on the dayes of battaile, *Agamemnon* sacred himself vnto the Sunne, with the skin of a Lyon, and with the head thereof couered his ...e head, ouer his back and shoulders, the skin reaching downe vnderneath his Cuisses. *Virgil* hath imitated the very same, in the seuenth booke of his Aeneidos, describing the equipage of a certaine man named *Auentinus.*

Ipse

Ipſi pedes tegmen torquens immane (Leonis
Terribili impexum ſeta, cum dentibus albis,
Indutus capiti, ſic. Regia tecta ſubibat.

The ſame Poet deſcribeth alſo the faſhion of thoſe Caskes of Leather.

Spiculis geſtans
Boina manu, falloſque Lupi de pelle Galeri.

Our Auncestors enrich them with the Hornes of diuers Beasts, or elſe the Probo and ſnowts of Elephants: as yet to this preſent day doe the Nobles and great Lord Germanie, a cuſtome long time put in practiſe by them, as *Plutarch* writeth in the li *Caius Marius*: where he deſcribeth their Helmets and Creſts with Lyons mouthes, o other wilde and cruell beasts, as alſo the Hornes of them, whereon, becauſe they w ſeeme the more terrible, and greater then naturally they ſhould be, they wore the Pl of diuers Birds and Foules.

The Greekes learned of the Gaules, to ſur-round their Helmets and head pieces w plumes of Feathers, which we tearme Mantles, or Labels of a File, and the Creſt Hornes: As is obſerued by *Euripides*, ſpeaking of *Hyppomedon* the Myrenian; and *N ſuruh*, in the life of *Pyrrhus*, reporting, that this Prince was knowne aboue all the C taines of his Armie, becauſe out of his Helmet iſſued out two great Hornes of a Goate, in the very midſt of them, a high goodly Plume, wauing ouer the Helmet, which th called an Armet. The word Armet, is a diminitiue of the word Armes, becauſe, acc ding to the Noble Science thereof, it is, or ought to be, ordenarily adorned, with principalleſt Armes. For example, if the parties Armes be of a Lyon, an Eagle, o Bull: the Helmet ought to beare as Creſt, a Lyon, an Eagle, or Bull, if there be no ma for enquirie.

The ordinary adorning of the Helmet, according to the Armes of the perſon.

The reaſon of Enquirie.

Matter to be enquired is ſo called, in regard of Supporters (that is to ſay, which ſuſta the Armes) whether they be different, or no.

The Birth, or
The Office.

An example alleadged.

Concerning Birth; As all they of the famous houſe of Linſygnan, carrie for Cr *Vne Cuue d'Or a la femme naiſſante qui ſe mire, & ſe peigne*: becauſe that this illuſtri Farnilie (the ſourſe of ſo many Kings of Ieruſalem, of Armenia, of Cyprus, and ſo m *ny* wayes allied to the moſt famous houſes of Chriſtendome) tooke originall and defc from a great Lady of Poitou, the Lady of Melle, and of Luſignan, whence was diuid the name of Melluſine, whom the auncient Romancers ſuppoſed to be a Fayrie. In li manner, they of the worthy houſe of *Cleues*, carried a Swanne for Creſt, by being d cended of the Knight of the Swan.

Concerning Office.

By Office; for the dignity of the perſon, and namely, if he be an Officer of the Crown For, to this effect, the Chauncellor, chiefe of all the Soueraigne Iuſtices in France, and t Preſidents of the Mortier, or Cap worne in the Courts of Parlement; doe carrie as *Cy le Mortier*, as a note or marke of their Soueraigne Offices.

Creſts for diuers Officers in great place.

In like manner, the Conſtable may carry for Creſt of his Timbre, *L'Eſpee nue en t a trauerſe*. And the Deſtrochere of France, the Great Maiſter, and the Chamberlai *Les Baſtons d'Or aux Eſmaux de France le premier en Pal, & l'autre en Bande*. The Marſh the Battaile Axe; the Admirall, the Anker; the Colonell of the Infantrie, *La Cuiſſe Hanche aux Poignees, & a la Trabe de France*; the Maiſter of the Horſe, *Porte en Ban Eſpee au ſouuereau, & la ceincture Royale ſemee de Fraunce*, and in like manner other Of cers of the Crowne onely.

Princes of the blood of France.

As for the Princes of the Noble blood of France, they haue no other Creſt on th Tymbre and Helmet, but onely the *Floure de Luce* double: neither the moſt famous M narches and Soueraignes of Chriſtendome. In former times, as the Kings of France h had no other Supporters, then two Angels. As alſo their priuate Seale or Signet, w ſupported by one Angell onely. And not two: euen ſo the Princes of the blood of Fra for preheminence and dignity of the *Lys de Lyllie*, had no other ſupporters but two A gels. As I haue obſerued in many Monſteries of their foundation, and as any man m ſee in the Chappell of Bourbon, neere to the Louure. Now in regard of the Lambr quins, which are the Plumes for ornament of the Helmet: they ought not to be varied proceeding as the *Eſmaux des Armes*, and no other colors, for otherwiſe they are falſe. B ſume we now to our ancient Creſts:

Tit

Titus Liuius, ſpeaking of the King of Macedon *Philip*, in the ſeauen and twentieth ooke of his Romaine Hiſtory, writeth, that (according to the Gauliſh manner) this Prince rried on his Caske, a goodly Creſt of Hornes (if he were the Father of *Alexander* the reat, his wife *Olimpias* perhaps gaue him the Blazon) *In arborem illatus impetu aqui alte n cornu* Galeæ *ad eminentem ramum poſtregit*. Thus of the Greekes.

The Romaines, at their beginning, as in happeneth in euery new-ſpringing Common ealthes: were as ſimple in the tir harneſſe for warre, as in their manner of life, yea, and in eir Sacrifices, for they neither offred or burnt any Beaſts for Sacrifice.

(*Victima pro Victis datur, Hoſtia pro ſuperabundis.*)

On the Altars in their Temples, in the ſhade of ſome tufted wood, but only the branches Verueine.

Ara dabat fumos herbis contenta Sabinis,
In ſacris nullum culter habebat opus.

This we learne of *Ouid* in the firſt booke of his Faſts.

They had a cuſtome of delight, for ſome dayes in the yeare, to viſite one another in e forme of a Maſque-rado, and to diſguiſe their inuention, they would maske and co r their faces with great leaues of Bardane, the rootes whereof do beare Burre-Dockes: nd of this hearbe (hurtfull for labour) *Virgill* ſpeaketh in the firſt booke of his Geor cks.

Lapaque, Tribulique.

The reaſon was, becauſe this herbe called *Lapa*, had the ſurname of *Perſonata*: accor ng to the teſtimony of *Plinie* and *Mathiolus*, in his iudgement on *Dioſcorides*. So in the time of their firſt warres, when they marched on to battaile, or elſe returned cke with victorie: they ſhaddowed their Cabaſſets and Murrians with broad leaues of *anthus*, an herbe renowned by *Virgill*, in the ſecond booke of his Georgicks.

Et baccas ſemper frondentis Acanthi.

It is that which we call *Brank-vrſin*, whereof *Plinie* in the two and twentieth Chapter his Naturall Hiſtorie, *Dioſcorides*, and the great herbaliſt doe ſet downe the proper s.

In time following, the Romans borrowed of the Gauls, the faſhion of Helmets and reſts of Birds, placing Hornes vpon their Armets and Murrians, as *Virgill* in his twelft iade.

Enſemque, Clypeumque, & vmbræ cornua criſtæ.

But concerning the Lambrequins of Princes and great Lords, they made vſe (princi lly) of Oſtridge Plumes, for fairer embelliſhing their Helmets, and Chanfraines of their les for battaile. *Plinie Prawia ex iis una propter amplitudinem pro quibuſdam habita ſis, Conoſque Bellicos, & Galeas Adornantes.*

For want of them, they imployed in the ſame places, the tailes of Peacockes. *Claudian* his Panegyricke for the ſixt Conſulſhip of *Honorius*.

Gaudet metuens, & pollice monſtrat,
Quod picturatas Galeae *Iunonia Criſtas,*
Ornet Auis, vel quod rigidos vibrata per Armos,
Rubra ſub aurato criſpentur ſerica dorſo.

Some other ſerued their turns with Plumes of Swans, for their whiteneſſe, anſwerable *Virgill*.

Cuius Olorinæ ſurgunt de Vertice pennæ.

But they were practiſed by Knights of honor.

Concerning the cruell and fleſh-deuouring *Leſtrigons*, couetous of humaine blood, hout diſcretion: they couered them and their horſes, with the tailes of Horſes or Buls, adfull for their ruddie colour, and condemned by all Antiquitie: *Virgil* in his ſeauenth oke, deſciphering the cruell and inhumane *Mezentius*, ſaith:

Criſtaque hirſutus equina.

And for the ſame ſubiect, *Virgill* armed *Turnus* with an Helmet and Creſt of a *Chimera*, moſt frightfull aſpect.

Ipſe inter primos præſtanti corpore Turnus
Vertitur, arma tenens, & toto vertice ſupra eſt.
Cui triplici crinita iuba Galea Alta Chimeram
Sustinet, Æneas ſufflantes faucibus ignes.

To

To fixe and fasten those Plumes in the Crests and tops of Helmets: they had alwaye ready three or foure sharpe mayles, according as it is obserued by the Prince of Frenc Poets *Peter de Ronsard*, in his Franciade of the Combate betweene *Francus* and the Gia *Phoneus*: Thus Englished.

That this Minion should become our prey,
Let vs fasten his nailed Murrian,
Aboue the Temple, vowed to my Father.

And the same man, in describing the Helmet and Timbre of the Gyant, giueth him flash of Lightning for his Crest.

His Lance in hand, the Murrian on his head
Well Crested, the tempest doth resemble
Sent downe from Iupiter in Summer monthes.

How Helmets were beautified in ancient times

In elder times, vpon the dayes of battaile, Princes and great Lords vsed to adorne and decke their Helmets (according to their qualities) with Buckles, Studdes and Circles of Gold, garnished with rich and costly Stones, & on the top or Crests of them, wreaths of corded Silkes, being the Liueries and colours of their Ladies and Mistresses, as also some curled lockes of their haire. Those Cordons (like wauing Scarfes) dangled downe (behinde them) on the crupper of their horses, the ends of them being fairely tasselled, and enriched with Pearles and precious Stones. Because vpon such dayes of Triumph and Glory, they rode with like alacritie of spirit, ioy and pompe; as if it were to wedding or solemne festiuals.

Zonaras, in the first booke of his Histories, the nineteenth Chapter, and other following, describing the battaile which *Cyrus* the Monarch of Persia, gaue to *Croesus* King of the Lydians; maketh the Prince *Abradatas* to be armed by the hands of his wife, the faire Queene *Panthea*, with rich Armour, which she her selfe had beaten and forged, commelled with Gold and Azure, because her husband should haue some neere resemblance to his Prince *Cyrus*. On the Armour was engrauen diuers Histories, which his *Panthe* couered with a Coate of Armes, composed of Tyrian Purple, embrodered curiously with Gold.

And taking her last farewell of him (for hee dyed in the battaile) shee embellished his Helmet (guilded and damasked with Gold and Azure, like to his Armes) with a great goodly Plume of Feathers, resembling the colour of the Hyacinthe, spangled with Gold. What followeth of this Historie, is at large set downe by *Xenophon*, in the seauenth booke of the Institution of a Prince: most worthy to be read by Ladies of Honor, who in the death of that faire and vertuous Princesse, may see a well polished Christall, of true and Conjugall loue.

These passages of *Zonaras* and *Xenophon*, doe enstruct vs, that the Greekes and Persians vsed Helmets and Plumed Crests. Ouer and beside which, those men that among the Romaines had won any prizes and Crownes, by their valiancie in warre: couered their Helmets and Caskes, as is remarked by *Virgill*, in his seauenth Æneiad.

Fronde super Galeam, & fœlici comptus Oliua,

The Poet *Claudian*.

Haud procul exacto latus certamine Victor
Cespite gramineo confederat arbore fultus
Acclines humeros Dominum gaudia coronat
Terra suum.

Close Crowns Chappeaux and Circles.

And from thence it ensued as a custome, that the Helmets and Crests of Monarchs, Princes and great Lords, which by right could carrie close Crownes, Chappeaux, or Circles, were relieued, raised or lifted vp, to be distinguished and knowne in fights and battailes. And for the same subiect, the Shields of their Armes were adorned and relieued with faire Mantles (if they were Princes, or Dukes) charged with Esmaux and Blazons of their Armes, which wrapped about them.

The supreme part of Kings Crownes distinguished.

But concerning the point or top of those Crownes, they were different. For, among Christian Princes, the Noble King of France had his exalted with a double *Fleur de Luce*. The Emperour; the Kings of England, Spaine, Sicilie, Hungarie, Bohemia, and others of Poland, had their Crowns finishing in a Boule or Mounde, supporting a Cross. By example of the Romaine Emperors, successors vnto *Constantine* the Great, who

pointed that his Buckler should be adorned with the Cipher and Monograme of X. P. S. and his Helmet with a Crosse for Crest; so saith *Prudentius*.

Christorum insignia Christus
Scripserat, ardebat summis Crux addita Cristis.

And the same Emperors carried also the Globe, on the dayes of their pompe and solemnities, to make it publiquely knowne, that by their beliefe in the wholesome signe of the Crosse; they were Lords on the earth, which the Globe represented by his rotunditie, and their Faith by the Crosse; on the tree whereof Iesus Christ was nailed, to deliuer the world from eternall death, according as it is written by *Suidas*.

We will conclude this Chapter with this aduertisement, that there are many sorts and differences of Helmets (as, in the like manner, of Crownes, whereof we will discourse in the last Chapter of this first Booke) practised and kept more carefully, and (if it may be said) more religiously in Germanie, then in all the other Kingdomes. Not permitting meane Gentlemen to cut and square with Princes, nor Yeomen to counterfeit Noblemen (Armes, Crests and Ornaments of them. For they will not suffer a simple Souldior, or a new-made Captaine, to beare Helmets, Lambrequins, Crest nor Supporters, the rules of the noble Science of Armes and Blazons, not being prophaned among them, as they are in other parts, through the ignorance of Heralds, Kings and Pursuiuants of Armes, to whom (being learned and skilfull) it appertaineth to giue Armes and Blazons, according to the quality of such persons, as are capable of bearing them, by the leaue of the Soueraigne Prince, and to none other.

Many varieties and differences of Helmets

The honorable care obserued in Germanie.

The distinguishing of bearing Helmets.

To Kings onely it belongeth, *Porter le Heaulme au Mentail tarre de front a vnze grilles*. To Dukes, *A haults fleurons*, that is to say, Soueraignes in their Countries, Nine Others, Dukes, Marquesses, Counts and Viscounts; Seauen: the high Barons, and Knights fiue; Gentlemen of so Noble a house, as they neither doe nor ought to *Tarrer de front*, may haue on the side onely, that is, *Trois grilles*. Such as are borne in lawfull and loyall marriage, turne to the right side; but Bastards to the left (all in one manner as the placing of their Armes.) But if they be no Bastards of a Soueraigne house, hauing right to beare *Chappeaux* or *Circles*: in this case they may be allowed to beare it, *Tarre de front*.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Heralds, Kings, and Pursuiuants of Armes.

The dignity of an Ambassadors place and Office.

AMong all the best gouerned Nations, it hath euermore bin held for a maine maxime, that Ambassadours haue the place of inuiolable persons, and euen (as it were) Sacred. Moreouer, whatsoeuer iniuries or wrongs they receiued, were reputed to be done to the persons of those Princes that sent them. *Hanon*, King of the *Ammonites*; hauing (in contempt) shaued off halfe the beards, and cut the garments to the thighes, of the Ambassadours sent from King *Dauid*: the Ammonites, with their King, were quite exterminated, and *Rabbah*, their capitall City (with all the rest be-) consumed into ashes: As it is written in the second booke of the Kings, the tenth d twelfth Chapters.

In what regard Ambassadors are punishable.

Now, although Ambassadours (to speake properly) are Spies (couered with a title full honor) to obserue the actions of Princes to whom they are sent: yet notwithstanding, ey haue no such permission granted them, as to debosh and corrupt the subiects and ailes of those Princes, to vrge priuate conspiracies, practises and threatnings, against ir estates and persons. For in so doing they are punishable, according to the right and of Nations, for breaking the lists and order of Hospitality: So that they are no longer to be held and reputed for Ambassadours, but disturbers of the publique peace and iet. There is one example of the ancient Gaules (without seeking any where else) recited by *Plutarch* in the life of *Furius Camillus*, where speaking of the Gaules departing out of their originary or naturall Countrey, to the number of three hundred thousand men, vnder conduct of the Nephewes to *Ambigatus*, King of the Gaules: hee saith,

that having vnthralled the Alpes, they conquered *Tuscanie*, and at the siege of *Clusium*, the Romaines sent three of the *Fabij* to them as Ambassadours, to deale wisely with them in raising the siege, in fauour of the *Clusians*, who had requested and entreated the Romains so to doe.

Treacherie most infamous in Ambassadors.

The Ambassadours hauing deliuered their message to *Brennus*, Generall of the Gaules Armie, instead of returning backe to Rome, they went into the besieged Citie, and incited the inhabitants, to issue forth vpon the besiegers: among whom *Quintus Fabius Ambustus* (one of the Ambassadours) happened to be knowne: Vpon this occasion, *Brennus* calling the Gods of the Romaines to witnesse, how basely they had violated the rights of Nations, by being come as Ambassadours, and yet afterward to performe the action of an enemy;

The reuenge of a iustly offended Generall.

hauing raised the siege at *Clusium*, he caused the Gaules to march directly to Rome, which they surprised vpon a sodaine, and sacking it, put all to fire and sword, but first they sent their Heralds to the Romaines, demanding him who made the offence, that they might be reuenged on him. The Capitole was so narrowly besieged, that the Romaines were constrained to redeeme both it and themselues, paying the ransome of ten thousand pounds of Gold, which *Brennus* brought into *Tuscanie*; and this Gold was kept many yeares after, as a marke and especiall remembrance, concerning the dutie of an Ambassadour, and the iust reuenge which the Gaules had taken, for the breach thereof.

But so long as Ambassadours keepe within the tearmes of their charge, which ought to be maintenance of the Princes peace who sends them, with him to whom they are sent. In this case *Sancta sunt corpora Legatorum, & inter Hostes esse debent incolumes*; so saith *Varro*, in his third booke of the Latine tongue, and the Oratour also, inueighing against *Verres*. Their person is inuiolable, and the Prince that offendeth them, without occasion; begetteth the title of an enemy, and thereby draweth warre vpon him. So the Romaines ruined the Citie of Corinth, because the Inhabitants had outraged their Ambassadours. Vpon the same subiect, they delegued Great *Pompey*, to goe and make warre vpon *Mithridates* King of the Parthians. *Si quis Legatum Hostium pulsasset, contra Ius Gentium id commissum esse putatur, quia Sancti Habentur Legati*: So saith the Ciuile Lawyer *Pomponius*, in the finall Law *De Legato. Digest.*

Heralds haue the same priuiledge as Ambassadors.

Heralds haue the selfe same priuiledge, their persons are inuiolable and sacred: to them no outrage ought to be done, neither any violence, by words or deedes.

They tooke their beginning and first originall, so soone as the Kings and Princes of the world distinguished their Subiects into Nobles and Yeomen: by drawing the one sort neere to their persons, for their prudence and vertue, and reiecting the other from their seruice and counsell, because they could not be knowne worthy, or capable.

The Assyrians, Persians, and other Nations of the East had them in honor, their Princes making vse of their seruice. As the *Rabbines* haue obserued on the 41. Chapter of *Genesis*, in the aduancement of *Ioseph*, and on the third of *Daniel*. *Plutarch* in the life of *Alexander* the Great, writeth, that this mighty Monarch had for his ordenary Guard, three thousand yong men, all Persians, readily fashioned and prepared for Armes, and fit for all honest exercises; especially speaking the Greeke tongue most elegantly. Among these some were the Guards of his body; others, Gentlemen of his Chamber, Vshers of the Haule, Mace-bearers, Heralds, and Kings of Armes, for the executing of his commands.

The Greekes called these Heralds *Ceryces*, and *Irenophylaces*. *Dionisius Halicarnassæus* tearmed them Κηρυκες: the *Romaines Caduceatores, Feciales, Præcones*: and the French Kings, Heralds, or Pursuiuants of Armes, according to the interpretation of the Greeke names Εἰρηνοφύλακες *Pacis Arbitros*, Guardians and Sequestrators of Peace, as their ordinary appellation founded of *Irenophylaces*, taken from the effect and issue of their charge, which was, to appease differences by the waies of mildnesse, and to appoint Nations enemies, before they should proceede to handy strokes.

The effect and issue of a Heralds charge.

In euery City of Greece there were two Heralds, called by honourable title Κήρυκες as we learne of *Vlpian*, Interpretor of the Oratour *Demosthenes*, in th: Oration against *Timocrates*. They were honoured by all estates, in regard of their charge, nourished and maintained of the publique purse, and priuiledged aboue all other Citizens, to be the Apostles and workers of Peace, which still they councelled & maintained, inciting the people to preserue themselues in peace, & not to seek after war. As did the traitor Herald of the Athenians, Lords of *Athens*, named *Laos*, who discouered the designs of his Maisters to *Thy-*

The honorable estimation of Heralds.

Plutarche recordeth in the life of the said Prince. Hereupon, and for this reason, they carried Rods and Wands, made of the branches of Palme or Oliue (Symboles of peace) writhed or wound about with wooll, to demonstrate with what soft gentlenesse, they ought to acquit themselues of their charge. Those Rods were called *Iresione*, of Ἐιρήνη which signifieth to accord and make peace. They were painted between two Hornes of *Amalthea*, or of Abundance: because Peace, which is the best guift that God can giue to men, produceth all kindes of goodnesse whatsoeuer.

Pax aluit viteis, & sulcos condidit vna.

The Romaines writhed about the *Caduceus* of their *Fecialians*, two Serpents, like to that of *Mercurie*, whom they feigned to be the Messenger, the Herald and Interpreter of the Gods, and who (as the Poets maintaine) going one day vpon an Embassage, found in his way two Serpents, which fought together. Hauing put his Rod betweene them, they writhed themselues about it, comming to embrace and kisse each other: And in memorie of this miracle, alwayes after, *Mercurie* carried his Rod writhed about with two Serpents, and in imitation of him, the *Caduceatores*, Greekes and Romaines, carried their Rods in the same manner. These are Poeticall fictions, which carry no probability or likelihood of truth, it was with the Gaules Heifers that the Romaines ploughed: for *Plinie* reciteth in the nine and twentieth Booke of his naturall History, and the third Chapter, that the fashion of this *Caduceus*, was borrowed by the Romaines of the auncient Gaules.

Mercurie the Herald and messenger of the Gods.

The auncient *Druides*, Arbitrators and Sequesters both of Peace and Warre, before they gaue power to the Gaulish Kings and Princes, to march in battaile against their enemies (which they did by the tradition of militarie Standards and Ensignes, whereof they had the custody in their sacred Temples: *Signa Detracta Lucis in prælium ferunt*, so saith *Tacitus*) they sent their Heralds to their enemies, to incite and summon them to peace, and reparation of the iniuries receiued. Those Heralds carried their *Caduecan* Rods, made of the branches of Verueine, and thereof the auncient *Druides* made vse (according to the testimony of the same *Plinie*, in his fiue and twentieth booke, and ninth chapter) writhed with two figures of Serpents, by a certaine proportion and simmetrie: not for the Fables picted and inuented by the Greekes (ouer-bold and impudent lyers) but onely to giue knowledge and demonstration, that those Heralds interpreted the will of their Princes, being therein short, sweete, well aduised, wise and subtile as the Serpent, the Symbole of prudence and wisedome in the sacred Scripture. A vertue necessary in euery Statesman, but especially in an Embassador; if he would worthily accomplish his charge, to the honor and content of the Prince that sent him.

Obseruations concerning the Serpent.

Orus Apollo writeth in his *Hieroglyphickes*, that the Rod or Caduceus, writhed with Serpents, was the signale and noate of prouidence and wisedome: because, that among creeping creatures, of a foule and earthie substance, there is not any more aduised and subtile, then the Serpent; who to warrant and secure himselfe from the Shepheards armes, stoppeth his eares, the one with his tayle, and fixing the other firmely to the ground. He purgeth his braine and cleareth his sight with a certaine Hearbe, the property and vertue whereof is knowne onely to himselfe. Moreouer, he knoweth how to renew his old skin, becomming yong againe, and conserning himselfe long in life, by eating certaine Hearbe, remarked by *Plutarch*, *Plinie*, and other Naturalists.

For this reason the *Druides*, consuming themselues continually in the knowledge of naturall things, euen from the Cedars of Lybanus, to the Hysope, knowing the properties and admirable vertues of the Serpent, caused their Heralds Rods to be so writhed. This is that whereof *Plinie* speaketh, in the passage before alleaged, concerning the *Druides* and their Heralds. *Hic complexus anguium, & efferatarum concordia causa videtur esse, quamobrem exteræ Gentes Caduceum in pacis argumentis circumdatum effigie anguium fecerint; neque enim cristatos esse in Caduceo mos est*: The Greekes and Romaines learned the fashion of the auncient Gaules. And thereupon, for the properties of the Serpent, to make himselfe become yong againe: they feigned, that the Rod and Caduceus of *Mercurie*, had the vertue to cure diseases, and to re-seate the soule in the body, being deuided from it. And other wonders, whereof *Homer* speaketh in his fourth *Odysses*, *Virgill* in his fourth *Æneiad*, and the Lyricke Poet.

Tu pias lætis animas reponis
Sedibus, Virgaque leuem coerces

Aurea turbam, Superis Deorum
Gratus, & imis.

Those Rods and Caduceuses of the Greekes, made of Oliue branches, were nam*Cericia* Κηρύκια, whereof is said in the eight Law *De ver. diuis.* at the *Digest. Sanct*
*est quod ab iniuria hominum defensum atque munitum est. Sanctum autem dictum est a S*minibus. *Sagmina sunt autem quædam herbæ quas Legati Populi Romani ferre solebant,*
quis eos violaret, sicut Legati Græcorum ferunt ea, quæ vocantur Κηρύκια.

The Romaines carried them of Verueine, which they called a Sacred Hearbe, and t
Naturalist *Plinie*, by the vulgar name of *Sagmina*, in his two and twenty Booke, the seco
Chapter. *Interim fortius augetur auctoritas, quæ quanta debeatur etiam surdis, hoc est*
nobilibus herbis, perhibetur. Si quidem auctores Imperij Romani Conditoresque, immol
quiddam, & hinc sumpsere, quoniam non aliunde Sagmina *in remedys publicis fuere, &*
Sacris Legationibus *quam* Verbenæ. *Certe vtroque nomine significatur, hoc est,* Gram
ex arce cum sua terra euulsum. Hac semper & Legati cum ad hostes Clarigatum *mitte*
tur, id est, res raptas clare repetitum, vnus vtique Verbenarius *vocabatur.* So that of t
hearbe, the Heralds were called *Veruenaries*, bearers of *Verueine.*

Of the excellency of Verueine.

The Greekes called Verueine *Hierobotanon*, and *Peristereon*, held by them (as well
by the Romaines) for the most excellent among all other hearbes. And therewith th
washed and made cleane the Table of their God Iupiter, and purified their houses; b
making Perfumes and Suffumigations, of the masle Incense.

Verbenasque adolo pingues, & mascula thura.

So saith *Virgill* in his eight Eclogue. And the Greeke Priests, as also the Romaine, clo
thed in their linnen Albes (in imitation of the *Druides*) making their Sacrifices, were cro
ned with Verueine.

Velati Lino, & Verbena *tempora vincti.*

Saith the same *Virgill* in his twelfth *Æneiad.* And namely, that from the time of *N*
ma Pompilius, the Disciple of *Pithagoras*, who was long time since those wise *Druides* t
Romaines made no other Sacrifices, but onely with Verueine.

Ara dabat fumos herbis contenta Sabinis
In sacris nullum culter habebat opus.

So writeth *Ouid* in the first of his Fasts.

We learne of the auncient Annalist S. *Gregorie Victor*, Archbishop of *Tours*, in h
seauenth Booke and two and thirtieth Chapter of the History of France, that Fren
Heralds vsed to carry (in the deliuery of their Messages) Scepters, and consecrated Rods
which was as much, or rather more ceremony, then water cold or boyling, and barre
Iron made red hot with fire, for the iudgement of crimes, which had no proofe at all. I
such manner were taken, chastised and punished, the Heraulds of false and supposed G
hauld, saying himselfe to be the sonne of *Clothaire*, King of France, notwithstandi
their consecrated Rods, to haue them declare the motiue and subiect of their Legatio
before they came to King *Gonthran*, to whom they were sent. *Post hæc missi iterum G*
debaldus duos Legatos ad Regem Guntrannum, Cum Virgis consecratis, iuxta Ritum Fra
corum, *vt scilicet non contingerentur ab illo, sed exposita Legatione cum responso reuerter*
Sed hi incauti, Priusquam Regis præsentiam cernerent, multis, quæ petebant explanauerun

Homer giueth Scepters to Heralds (and not Rods and whisking wands) euen as to Kin
and Soueraigne Princes, attributing the like authoritie to them, yea, and in such sort
the Grecian Princes would stand vp before them, giuing them honor and reuerence. A
in those times then, such as exercised the Office of Heralds, were men well borne,
great grauity, delicate in speech, skilfull and vertuous, which caused them to be hono
red and respected of euery one. In the first of *Homers Iliades*, King *Agamemnon*, Ge
rall of the Grecian Army, sent his two Heralds *Talthybius* and *Euribates*, to the Pri
Achilles, for recouery of the faire *Briseis*, that he might restore her to her Father, the Pri
Chryseis. (Whereto the said *Achilles* shewed himselfe gracious and obedient), and ent
taining the Heralds honourably, saluted them, by the name of Messengers from the g
God *Iupiter*) the title giuen onely to God *Mercurie.*

The two Heralds of King Agamemnon, and their honorable respect by Prince Achilles.

Te eadem magni Iouis, & Deorum
Nuntium.)

And Mediators of men: he caused them to come neere him, cherishing them louingly
taking the as his witnesses before the gods & men, that he forgaue & pardoned the offen

his Generall, in taking from him his dearely affected *Briseis*, whom he had won in faire
rre, to the great good and aduantage of the Greekes.

It belonged to Heralds, to assemble Princes for Councell, and giue them Scepters (for
ne but the Gods did then weare Crownes) as we learne of *Homer* in the second of his
ysses: in the persons of an Ægyptian Herald, making an Oration to the Inhabitants
Ithaca; and of *Telemachus*, receiuing his Scepter at the hand of his Herald *Piseno*r.
the third Booke, the same *Telemachus* and the goddesse *Minerua*, being entertained in
the Mannor and Pallace of the wise Prince *Nestor*; the Heralds gaue them water to
sh their hands, before they sate downe at the Table. In the fourth Booke, and diuers
ces else, euermore the Heralds inducted, guided, and made the way for forraigne Prin
, arriuing at the Courts of Kings their Maisters, to see and obserue the singularitie of
im.

Appollonius Rhodius gaue for Herald to his *Argonautes*, the *Heros Æthalides*, whom he
gned to be the Sonne of *Mercurie*, and armed him with his *Caduceus*: to shew, that hee
s eloquent and expert, quicke in a delicate flowing stile, and sufficiently capable to ex
ute their enterprises.

Hereupon the Poets named these Messengers *Heroas*, which signifieth *Demie Gods*: And
seemeth, that the French name of *Herauld* or *Herault*, descended from hence, as being
y difficult, to finde any where else a truer Etymologie. The Romaines called them
ciales, a name which *Varro* in his fourth booke of the Latine tongue, deriued and made
descended from the word *Fides*: because the *Fecialians* were in such degree, as the de
fenaries and Guardians of the publique Faith. *Feciales dicti sunt, quod fidei publicæ in*
Populos præerant, Nam per hos fiebat vt iustum conficetur bellum, & vt fœdere, Fides
eis constitueretur. Numa Pompilius, Second King of the Romaines, instituted their
olledge, ordaining: that it was not lawfull to take Armes against any enemy, without
ir consent and appointment.

The Heralds had a Colledge in Rome

Whensoeuer these *Feciales* went to denounce warre, or conclude peace: they carried
the one hand the Stone, consecrated to beate downe the Romaine Engine, which they
d to immolate in swearing Peace; *Cum*
Cæsa iungebant fœdera porca.

And in the other hand a branch of Verueine. Ouer and beside these things, they car
d a certaine Vaile, made and wouen of Wooll, wherewith they wrapped and couered
ir heads, when they denounced warre, or deliuered their message: as, we learne by
us Liuius, in the first booke of his first Decade. This Vaile came somewhat neare to the
me of them, which are vsed in Churches ouer the Images of Saints. In following time,
stead of thus couering their heads, they made a slit or hole in the midst of the Vaile, for
heads passage, and so the Vaile was equally diuided, couering the brest before, and
ke behinde of the *Fecialian.* And then it lost the name of a Vaile, and became to be
ed a Coate of Armes: which the learned *Budeus*, the honor of France, on the Law
ctum de rerum diuis. at the *Digest*, called *Armillas, & Spinteres.*

During the estate of the Romaine Common-wealth, the *Fecialians* wore their Coates
Armes, made of fine white Cloath, fringed with fine white silke (the Colour and Li
y of the Romaines for excellency, as yet it is of the French, and was of the auncient
gs of Persia) *A la Bande Iumelee*; And foure Letters of Gold, S. P. Q. R. *Senatus*
lusque Romanum. And from thence is descended the fashion of tearming Armes of ex
ency, called to enquire for Mettall vpon Mettall.

A richer alteration of the Heralds Coate of Armes.

When the popular Estate was changed into Monarchie, the *Fecialians* of the Empe
rs wore their Coates of Armes of Purple and Scarlet, fringed with Gold, an Eagle of
same (with the Emperours name reigning) embrodered thereon; Because that the
abre (called rich colour) was the Liuery of the Emperours, which the Romaines e
lled with their Gods. This they borrowed from the Kings of Persia, who went attired
he module of the high Priest of Ierusalem, at such times as the Iewes were translated,
d tained among them in bondage and slauery. The glorious actions of Armes of
Kings of Persia, were registred downe in Tablets of Cedar, gummed with *Cina*
which we tearme painted with red, like to the Rubrickes and titles of our Bookes,
is obserued in infinite places, by *Xenophon, Arianus* and *Quintus Curtius*, treating on
liues of the Kings of Persia. To whom no one durst present himselfe, or speake,
with words of Crimosine Silke, as much to say, as in highly exalted tearmes,

Of the Kings of Persia.

and worthy the care of Royall Maiesty, as we learne of *Plutarch*. And the magnificence of those Kings of Persia, (making their ordenarie residing in the Citie called *Shushan*, which signifieth *Floure de Luce*) is described in the Booke of *Hester*, the first Chapter. The in the Garden and Forrest of the King, in all parts of the Tents, and Pauillions of Azure were hangings of White, Crimosine and Hyacinth colour, supported with Cords of fine Linnen and Purple. *Pendebant ex omni parte tentoria Ærei coloris, & Carbasini, & Hyacinthini, sustentata funibus byssinis atque purpureis, &c.*

The Greekes and the Romaines (by their example) made the Idols their Gods of wood of Cedar, and of *Thyma*, incorruptible, and not subiect to worme-eating: whereof ensued the prouerbe, *Non ex quouis ligno fit Mercurius*, common to the whole Do monomanie of the Paganes. And *Plinie* informeth vs, that the Greekes and Romaines painted and coloured the faces, neckes, hands, and whatsoeuer else was to be seene naked of their Idols, with the red tincture of Cynabre and Vermillion. In such sort, as it was by first Article of expences, which the Censors couched in their accounts (saith *Plinie* in his three and thirtie booke, the seauenth Chapter) for Cinabre and Vermillion, bought to transfigure their Idols. By which example, the Captaines, that came home triumphing into the Citie of Rome, were painted in the same manner, so saith *Plinie*. *Triumphantium corpora* Minio *illini solita, sicque Camillum triumphasse.*

Fuery Iride of Wood forbeth not to make gods of.

And like as the Romaine Emperors had their Imperiall Mantle, the Cassocke and Buskins of Purple, and of fine Tyrian Scarlet, Furred with a whitish Gray, or Ermines (as now adayes goe attired the Presidents and Councellors, of the right Parlements of France and as heretofore went the most Christian Monarchs, as well of the first, as the second and third line) In like manner, the Charters, Letters and Placards of the said Auncient Romaine Emperours, which they called Rescripts, and Pragmaticall Sanctions, were writen with red Ink, or Vermillion or Cynabre, as is said in the Law *Sacri affatus. De diuersis rescriptis*, at the Code *Affatus nostræ manſuetudinis in quacunque parte Paginarum, non alio vultu penitus, aut colore, nisi Purpurea tantummodo inscriptione lustrentur: scilicet cocti Muricis, & triti Conchylij ardore signentur*: For they were not esteemed as Ordonnances, Commands and Imperiall Rescripts, being signed in any other manner. For this reason, the composition of that Inke is, (in the same Law) named *Sacrum encaustum*, and was not permitted to any to make vse thereof, or serue their owne turnes therewith, under paine of being attainted of high treason, to be punished with death, and their goods confiscated. At this day in Turkie, the Passe-ports and safe conducts of the Grand Seignieur, and the Mandates of Iustice, are written in Arabian Letters, with fine Celestine Blew and Azure; and the names of God, of the false Prophet *Mahomet*, and of the Grand Signeur, in Letters of Gold: a magnificence retained by this people, albeit barbarous, ignorant and grosser (then euer were any) of the Romaine Emperors, or of Constantinople. So that of one thing, which was not worthy of a Prince, the auncient Romaine Prouerbe arose in vse, saying:

The habite of the auncient Romaine Emperours.

The great prerogatiue of Red Inke.

Nec titulus Minio, *nec* Cedro *Charta notetur.*

So saith *Ouid, Elegia prima Tristium*. But come we now againe to Heralds.

Ammianus Marcellinus, in the foureteenth booke of his History, telleth vs, that heretofore, Heralds and Kings of Armes, were cloathed with Coates of Armes, made according to the fashion, as Deacons of the Catholique Church vsed to weare. *Pectunt tuniculam sine manicis textam, Maras quidam nomine (vt appellant Christiani) Diaconum latera scripta Græco sermone portabat, &c.* Euen so, (*Silices miscere sacra profanis*) the Coates of Armes for Heralds, imitated the Dalmaticke fashion, without sleeues, but farre as to the elbow: bearing vpon the said short sleeues, and both before and behind the Armes of the Prouinces whereof they carried name, and such Armes, with their Query, are called Enamels, of the word Ammell, which Goldsmiths worke with fine the heads of Rings, when they fixe rich and costly Stones in them; *Per latera scripta, Marcellinus* spake to very good purpose, in mine opinion.

The auncient fashion of Heralds Coats.

For like as among the Greekes, and namely in the Metropolitane and Patriarch Churches of Constantinople, the Chasuble of Priests, the Dalmatiques of Deacons and the Pallium or cloake of Bishops, had the name of God wrought in capitall Letters about the hemmes or skirts: So in the same manner, the embrodered and long Tunicles and Dalmatickes of the Romaine Emperours, as also of the Consuls, were charged with Gold-embrodery, with the Emperours names. For the Greekes, beside this pas-

Order of Ecclesiasticall ornaments in Churches.

Marcellinus

Marcellinus, Zonaras, Zosimus and infinite other haue obserued the same. For the Emperors and Roman Consuls, as well of the Old as New Rome; we haue *Ioannes Curopalates*, in his Tract of the Offices of Constantinople: where he remarketh the garments of the Romaine Emperors, and likewise of their children, brethren and kinred; For so farre as to the Hoods or Chapeaus, the plates and skirts were garnished with Letters of Gold. *Omnem capitis Domini quod embella dicitur, ex margaritis est totum, Replo eius habentur non ea eius qui fert ipsam ex virgulis aureis fimbriata, Tunica honorata eius sanguinea, aut rubra ornata margaritis, quale per illud tempus optauerit.*

Concerning the Consuls, we haue the testimonie of the Bourdelois Poet and Senator *Ausonius*, in the gratitudes and thankefull kindenesses, which hee gaue to the Emperour *Gratian*, who had honoured him with the Consulship of Rome. *Palmatam tibi misi, in qua Diuus Constantinus parens noster in textus est.* Which giueth vs to know, that the Cloake Royall of the Emperours and Consuls, otherwise called the Mantle of Triumph, made of fine Tyrian Scarlet, and Furred with whitish Gray or Ermines; was embroded a hands breadth, enterlaced with names and titles of excellence, belonging to the Romaine Emperors. Whereby also another note may be obserued, concerning the Medales and antique figures, of the Images of our Redeemer and the Virgin *Mary*, represented with mantles; the bordures whereof are charged with titles of excellence and honor, which the Church thought fit to giue them.

Among the Heralds of France, there is one aboue all the rest, who is called *Mont-ioye*, surnamed, at the military cry or proclamation, of the great King *Clouis*, after he had embraced Christianitie: *Mont ioye Sainct Denis*. As if it should be said, that the Faith preached and brought into France, by great Saint *Denis Areopagita*, was the ioy and cheerefulnesse of the heart; or that that God, whom Saint *Denis* had proclaimed to the Gaulish people, was afterward to be his *Ioue*. This Herald, for his greater excellence, is called King of Armes of France; he weareth a Violet coloured Veluet Coate, with the Escocheon or Shield of France Crowned, and entoured with the two Orders of France, on the foure parts of his Coate of Armes. The other Heralds beare but simply three *Floure de Luces* of Gold, with the enamels of France, which is of Violet coloured Veluet, and on the halfe sleeues, the Armes and name of the Prouince or Duchie, whereof he is Herald, and so the rest: As *Daulphine, Orleans, Anion, Alanson* (Inheritances of the Lords and Sonnes of France) *Valois, Bourbon, Berry, Vendosme, Bretaigne* or *Ermine, Bourgongne* or *Toison D'Or*, when these two Orders had their course in France, as heretofore the *Genette*, the *Starre, La Cosse de Genest*, and Saint *Michael*, names and titles due to Heralds of the said Orders.

Mont. Ioye aboue all the Heralds of France, and the reason of his calling King of Armes of France.

Names and titles of the other Heralds of France.

And as each Prouince and generall Gouernment of France had his Herald and King of Armes, hauing his name wrought in Golden Letters on the sleeues of his Coate: So the King of Armes of Nauarre, *Porte les Esmaux de Nauarre*; Of Red or Crimsine Veluet, with the Escocheon of the Kingdome Crowned, and the Order of the Lillie entoured about. The other sixe Heralds of Nauarre, bearing names of the Kingdomes *Merindades*; doe carrie the same enamels naked, without Crowne, and without noate of Order. On their halfe sleeues they beare the most, to wit; *Nauarre brizé, ou componne, escartelle des Armes de la Merindade*. For in Armes the King thereof beareth the least, and the Heralds the most, as namely; *Pampelona, Viana, Estella, Tudela, Olita* and *Sainct Palais*, Capitall of the lower Nauarre, which had (in times past) for cry or proclamation of warre, the Heralds name (then) *Roncenaux*, after the preuailing against the Emperor *Charlemaigne*, as the Spanish Romancers say. And as heretofore the Cry of warre, for the first King of Sorrabia or Nauarre, was *Begorre*; in remembrance, that they had derived their originall from the Counte of *Begorre*, who long time was on the Chesse-borde of Nauarre, and for whose Antiquitie, the Countie was charged to the King, but with the wages for three Launces, and halfe, instead of a whole Subfide: A priuiledge granted to the Inhabitants of the said Countie, onely for their fidelity.

The King of Armes of Nauarre, and his habit, as also of the sixe other Heralds.

The first Kings of Sorrabia, or Nauarre.

At Rome there was a Colledge of the *Fecialians* or Heralds, composed of twenty, the chiefe whereof (for excellence) was called *Pater Patratus*; because, by being chiefe of that Company, he ought to haue children, and his owne Father yet liuing.

The chiefe Herald of Rome *Pater Patratus*.

In France, not onely the King of Armes *Mont-ioye S. Denis*, but also the other Heralds and Pourssuiuants were of Noble extraction; and *Mont-ioye* could not be admitted, without making proofe of his Nobleneſſe by three races, as well of his Fathers Stocke, as by his Mothers

Heralds of France of Noble descent.

Annuall Pensions to the Heralds.

Mothers side. There was two thousand pounds of rents in Lands and free tenure, allowed for the said *Monioye* particularly, and a thousand pounds of annuall pension. As for the other Heralds, they haue a 1000. pounds in pension, & other rights, whereof we shall speake he reafter. The Colledge and society of the said *Monioy*, Heralds and Pursuiuants of Armes for France, was established in the Church of Saint *Anthony* the lesse at *Paris*, where anciently were and are to be seene, the Charters and Statutes of the Officers of Armes, and the Rolles, Names and Sur-names of the said Kings, Heralds and Pursuiuants; which Charters are of the yeare, 1406.

The Heralds Colledge at Paris.

Heralds are allowed entrance into all Courts of Princes and great Lords: and whosoeuer denieth their entrance, is held for inciuill, discourteous, and vnworthy any Noble Title.

They haue power to reproue the vices of Knights, Esquires, and Noblemen liuing badly: and if they do not correct such errors in themselues, to expulse them from Iousts, Tourneyes, and all other Martiall exercises.

Prerogatiues of Heralds.

They ought to counsell and aduise Princes and great Lords, to maintaine the Estate of Nobilitie, alleadging the truth of their words by their owne experience.

Such as eyther by words, deedes, or otherwise offred them any outrage; ought to make them amends in the hearing of the Colledge: otherwise, they were declared guiltie of high treason, degraded from Nobilitie, being published as ignoble and yeomen, both they and their posteritie.

Rights & dues to the Officers of Armes.

To *Monioy* did appertain particularly, the Garments which the King did weare on the day of his Sacring, and before him.

At Funerals.

To the Heralds in generall, at the Obsequies and Funeralls of Kings, Queenes, Princes and Princesses, appertained the Cloakes and Chaperons of mourning, the Litters of Violet Veluet, semed with floure de Luces of gold, and the hangings of blacke Veluet in Churches and Chappells, with the Ornaments of the burning Lights, the waxe excepted. The Cloakes at marriage of the said Kings and Princes, Queenes and Princesses, prouided, that there were but one Coate of Armes onely displayed.

At Marriages.

At Baptizing of Children.

At Baptizing of children to the said Kings and Princes, appertained to the said Heralds and Kings of Armes, the Vessell, Saltseller, Bason and Ewer to washe withall, the Mantles, Swathe-bands of the best, the warming-panne, the cloth of State, and Pillowes for the Infants baptizing. After Baptisme, they haue right also, three seuerall times to cry Largesse, and throw peeces of gold and siluer among the people. The like priuiledge likewise they haue, at the Sacring, Coronation, and entring of the Kings and their Wiues to their marrying.

At the foure chiefe feasts.

At the foure chiefe feasts of the yeare, when the Kings keep open Court and great Reuells, they haue then whole Largesse, and new Liueries, as also the Cup of gold, wherein the King drinketh that day.

Proclaiming of Peace.

At the publication of any Peace, the City or Towne where it is published by the said King of Armes, or Herald, is to pay him a Marke of gold.

The Creation of Knights.

On those dayes when eyther the King himselfe, or the Lieutenant Generall of an Armie doth create Knights; beside the habits of those Nobles, they haue double wages, and whole or entire Largesse: that is to say, both crownes of gold and white money: to wit, the King of Armes to haue twice as much as the Herald, and the Herald to haue twise as much as the Pursuiuant.

Tilting daies or otherwise.

On the dayes of Tourneyes, and actions of Armes, as well in fight, as to winne the loue of their Ladies; the defendants stand obliged to giue to the Heralds whatsoeuer falleth to the ground, and all that was carried betweene the two Lists, during the Combat, except the booke whereon the Chalengers and Defendants tooke their oathes. And the Combat or Tourney being ended, the Victors are to giue a Largesse.

Offices of the Heralds.

In like manner, the said Herald ought to draw the vanquished by the heeles out of the Lists and Railes, and afterward to set downe in writing, whatsoeuer passed in the said Iousts and Tourney: to paint the Armes of the Challengers and Defendants, their Portraitures, Titles, and Qualities, according to the truth. For this cause, it is very necessary for them, to haue seene many strange Countries, and read the histories of the World; to know the needfull formes and ceremonies, as well for the Creation of a Nobleman, as of a Knight. To be exquisite in the Noble Art of Blazons, Painting, and Limming, for better ordering the Armes of them, whom the Prince shall enoble for their Vertue, according

ding to their naturall inclination to Armes or Learning. As also the propertie, nature, and condition of birds, creatures irrationall, both on the land, and in the water: the vertues of Plants, Trees, Flowres, Hearbs, Starres, and Planets. And from Heauen, to descend into the bowells of the Earth, there to apprehend the Nature of Mettalls, Mineralls, and precious Stones, as well as of the foure Elements; by whose intermixture, they may learne the composition of Colours, necessary for emblazoning according to Art, such Armes as they are to prepare, and what Creatures are to be *Passant*, *Naissant*, or *Rampant*.

The dues of Knights Banerets and Captains of bands to the Heralds.

To the said Officers of Armes, euery Knight Banneret that hath the meanes & power to carrie a Banner, ought to pay a Marke of Gold. And euery Captaine of a Companie of Foote, bearing Ensigne open in the Field; ought to pay a Marke of Siluer, due to the said Officers of Armes; for taking the names, sir-names, qualities and Blazons of their Armes, to bee set downe and depicted in the booke of the Nobilitie, of the Prouince whereof they are Heralds or Kings of Armes.

What Heralds are to doe on the daies appointed for battell.

It was also within the compasse of their charge, to aduertise Knights, Esquires, and Captaines, when the day of battell is appointed: on which day, the said Officers of Armes are to appeare in their best Ornaments before the white Cornet, or before the Great Standard or Banner of France, and at the brunt of violent encounter, to withdraw to some high exalted place, to make their eyes witnesses of that which is done on eyther side, and who haue carried themselues most valiantly; for making true report thereof to the King, or Generall of the Armie, after the Battell is ended, and then to set it downe in writing, that the memory thereof may remaine to posterity.

Their Office after the battel

It belongeth also to them when the battell is concluded, to number the dead; to restore the Ensignes; to demand the Prisoners taken in warre, for making exchange; to summon rebellious Townes and Cities: And in case of composition, reddition, or exchange, to marche first before the Captaine or Gouernour of them, and there to giue him assurance of his person.

Of apointing the field, or place for fight

At Iousts, Tourneyes, Combats, or Enqounters; it is their charge to marke forth the field for Battell, the Lists or the ground for Combat; to impart the Sunne equally to the Combatants at extremitie, be they Squires or Knights. And for their wages or reward, whatsoeuer falleth betweene the two Lists, appertaineth to them, as we haue already said: to wit, Horse, Armour, Armes, Plumes, Bardes, Chaufraines, Caparisons, and other Ornaments of Warre, and whosoeuer is desirous to make redemption of them, is to pay the Heralds the iust value of them.

Railes of the persons vanquished.

In Combats or Fights, all the Armes and Ornaments of the vanquished, belongeth to the said Officers of Armes, and the Lists likewise · the Chayres and the Cup or Bolle, wherein the Combatants drinke each to other, after the contention shall be ended.

Honor done to the Conqueror.

The Victor or Conqueror is to be conducted by them to his Chaire, with the cheerfull noyse of Trumpets and applausiue shouts of ioy, for exalting the glory, valiancie, and iust quarrell of the victorious: all (afterward) being Registred downe in writing; as the name, sur-name, quality, and Armes of the Partie. In recompence whereof, the Heralds ought to receiue sixe Markes of gold and siluer, to be distributed as formerly hath beene said.

Disgraces done to the vanquished person.

And as for the party vanquished, they are to tread on him with their feete, as a Traitor, a falsifier of faith, periured and forsworne: and then both he and his Armes to be drag'd at a horse tayle by the heeles, and so cast out of the Lists with all ignominie, to be deliuered to the executioners of Iustice. Then is the Victor to be conducted backe in Triumph to his lodging, and in the chiefe Church they are to hang vp and affixe his Armes and Shield, to serue as a memoriall of his victory to posterity.

At the King or Princes ennobling any man.

When the King or Prince doth enoble any one, the King of Armes or the Herauld is to emblazon his shield, and to Register him in the Charter, among the Noblemen of the Prouince, with the name, sir-name, Lordship and quality of the person: for the doing whereof, the new-made Noblemen is to pay him (by ancient right) a marke of siluer, and the new-made Knight a Marke of gold, as a dutie.

Two Heralds vnder euery K. of Armes.

Euery King of Armes is to haue two Heralds (at the least) vnder his command and obedience: and euery Herald a Pursuiuant onely, who before he may obtaine the title and dignity of a Herald, ought to serue seuen whole yeeres fully compleated.

In elder times, there were three seuerall kindes of Coates of Armes. The first was called

Three seuerall kindes of Heralds Coates.

called *Tunique* as we haue obserued by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, hauing short sleeues, and rounded beneath, which was particular for Kings of Armes.

The second was tearmed *Plaque*, particular for Heralds, and of the same fashion as the *Tunique* or *Dalmatique* for the King of Armes. Onely to shew the difference of Ranke and Qualitie; in the middest thereof hung two Pendants of silke, with faire tassels of the same colour as the Coate was made of.

The third was called a Coate of Armes, proper for Pursuiuants of Armes, which had wide long sleeues, finishing as in a point.

Heralds distinguished frō Kings of Arms

Heralds were (moreouer) distinguished from Kings of Armes, becausе Kings of Arms bare the Escutcheon crowned with the Crowne Royall, as well before as behinde, and also vpon the little sleeues. The Herald bare it but before and behinde, and on the shoulder or right sleeue, and not vpon the left. Beside, the Herald could not beare the said Escutcheon, but onely crowned with a *Chappeau*, that is to say a Dukes Crowne, or with the pearled Circle, that is, a Counts Crowne.

Pursuiuants from the rest.

As for the Pursuiuants, they ought not to beare the crowned Escutcheon, but wholly simple, on the left shoulder onely, and not on the right, as the Kings and Heralds doe, to shew, that they were of meaner qualitie, and may discharge themselues from the place of Pursuiuants of Armes, at such time as themselues thinke fit: but the King of Armes and the Herauld cannot doe so, or quit their places; except it be for mounting to a higher degree, as the King of Armes to be a Knight, and the Herald to the Office of the King of Armes.

Of such persons as may haue Officers of Armes in each degree.

Kings, Princes, Dukes, Marquesses, Counts and Viscounts Soueraignes, may haue Kings of Armes: but Dukes, Marquesses, Countes and Viscounts; not Soueraignes, Heralds onely. High Barons, and Knights Bannerets, may haue Pursuiuants onely: but by the approuing and acknowledgement of some Herald. Notwithstanding, sonnes to the King, and Princes of the Blood of France, at all times haue had a King of Armes, as well in their Courts and Houses, as at their Marriages and Funeralls.

Concerning Princes Soueraignes.

We call Princes Soueraignes, such as (in Temporall occasions) do not acknowledge any Superiour: as the Dukes of Lorraine, Sauoy, Millaine, and other Potentates both of Germany and Italy, which beare not the Title of King.

Pursuiuants of Armes in their appellations.

Pursuiuants of Armes beare not the names of Prouinces, as the Kings and Heralds doe: but onely Epethites of Gallantry, of good encountring or ioyfull tearms; as Plaine-Way, Iolly-Hart, Verdure, Cleare-sight, Bright-greene, No-lier, Tell-troth, Cheare-fulnesse, Faire-seeming, Loftie-foote, and such like pleasant tearmes. Euery Knight Banneret hath his Pursuiuant, whom he calleth according to his owne minde; and sends to see strange Prouinces: to take knowledge of Princes, Lords, and Gentlemen, their Genealogies, Armes, and Blazons, to obserue them in Bookes and Registers.

How Pursuiuants of Arms are baptized.

At solemne feasts, when Princes and Lords keepe open Courts, Pursuiuants of Armes are ordinarily baptized: for we call it baptizing, when the name of their Heraldry or Pursuiuance is first giuen them, and the Ceremonie is in this manner. After Supper, the Prince or Lord of the assembly, causeth the Herald or Pursuiuant (whom he would baptize) to be presented before him, he being cloathed in a Coate of fine white Serge. Then the Prince taketh a great standing guilt cup, full of Wine, and in the presence of all his Court, powreth it on the head of the Herald or Pursuiuant, giuing to the Herald the name of his Prouince, or to the Pursuiuant, what pleaseth him, with his Coate and Esmaile, assigning him some good rentage, or some Borough for his support and maintenance.

Froissard writeth thus. After the Battell of Auroy, *Iohn de Montfort* aduertised the King of *England*, by a Pourſuiuant of Armes standing there ready, with the tidings of what had hapned. Of a Pourſuiuant he made him a Herald, baptizing him with the name of *Windsore*, giuing him great profits and Reuenues to maintaine him: so this ceremony was called Baptizing. And both Kings and Princes instituting the Militaric Orders of Knighthood, ordained there with a Herald of the said Order, baptizing him with the name thereof. As *Lewis* the eleuenth named *Mont Saint Michael*, the Herald of his own Order: the King of England *Garter*; and them of Orleans, Aniou, Bretaigne and Bourgogne; *Porcupine*, *Cressant*, *Hermine* and *Toison d'Or*, or *Golden-Fleece*. In France the Heraulds with their *Esmaux*, *Portent le Sceptre Esmail le d'Azur, semmez de fleurs de liz d'Or*: As in other kingdomes, *Ils le portent des Esmaux*, which are particular to them.

Kings

At what time Kings of Arms began to bee honored with respect in France.

Kings of Armes and Heralds began to be respectiuely knowne, as also to be in great honor and authoritie, vnder the reigne of *Philip de Valois*, King of *France*, whose Court was more magnificent and full of splendor, then euer any Kings had beene in France, hee delighting to haue Iousts and Tourneyes daily. Also at that time, and long after, the charges of Kings and Heralds of Armes could not be apprehended, but by the Nobilitie, hauing made proofe of their worthinesse before the Master of the Horse of France, to whom it belonged, to order prouisions, to receiue and install any in charge. Now a daies all is so corrupt and out of order, euery Office being bought and sold: that such as holde the places of Heralds, are Clownish persons, who haue neuer seene any thing; but are so impertinent for the Noble Art of Blazons and Painting, that they know not how to deuise the Armes of a Prince or great Lord.

Ignorance of Heralds and Painters.

At the entrance of the late King *Henry* the third of that name (of happy and glorious memory) made at Paris, he hauing beene called King of *Poland*; ignorant Painters, vpon the view of Heralds (more ignorant then they) Emblazoned the Armes of Poland *d'Argent & de Sable*, whereas (indeed) they are *De Gueulles a l'Aigle d'Argent coronne d'Or. party de mesme au Caualier d'Argent a l'Escu d'Azure a la Croix Patriarchale d'Or*, which is of *Lithuania*, and the white Eagle of Poland, as wee shall better perceiue in the following discourse.

Heralds the Controllers of Painters and Caruers.

Ignorance in Heralds (who ought to be Controlless of Painters and Engrauers, and who heeretofore acknowledged them as their maisters, and had their Letters, by reason of ignorance in the said Painters and Caruers, especially concerning the principles and rudiments in the noble Art of Painting) was apparantly knowne, at the entrance of Queene *Mary* of *Florence*, wife to King *Henry* the great, of glorious memory. For then, the Painters deuised and blazoned the Armes of *Monsieur le Daulphin* (at this present King of France) the one *d'Argent*, and the other *d'Azure*, to the *Daulphine*, the one *d'or*, and the other *de Synople*: whereas *Monsieur la Daulphine* ought *Porter de France escartele de Daulphine, qui est au Daulphine passme Pers*, that is to say, *d'Azure*.

Armes prepared for the Qu. of France.

The Armes of Queen Mary, purposely prepared for her entrance; there was defect in the Arms of *Florence*, which some make *d'Azur. a six Besans d'Or*. These chiefe charged, *de trois Fleurs de Lys d'Azure escartelle d'Austriche, d'Argent a la Fesse*. Others, *A la Bande d'Argent*: and all by extreame ignorance; becausе *Austriche porte de Gueulles a la Fesse d'Argent*. And Florence, or rather the illustrious house of *Medicis*, *Porte d'Or a cinq Torteaux de Gueulles*. And in chiefe, the place most honourable in Armes, *Le Tourteaux de France*, that is to say, *D'Azure a trois Fleurs de Lys, d'Or*. Which King *Lewis* the eleuenth gaue permission to be borne by *Peter de Medicis*, and by his Letters Patents, dated in the moneth of May, *Anno* 1465. As concerning the Armes of the Citie of Florence, they beare *d'Argent a la Fleur de lys fleuronne doublement de Gueulles*; which King *Charlemaine* gaue them, so say the Citizens thereof themselues.

Errors in Armes by negligence of Heralds or Painters are punishable.

The same impertinence, and on the same subiect of Armes, to honor the entrance of the said Queene *Mary*, followed at the same time. For the Painters and Sculpters entowred her Armes with *Cordeliers d'Argent*, instead of *Palmes*. And the field whereon the said Armes were couched, *Blazonne de Tanne, ou fueille morte*: All noates of a Widdow Queene, and mourning for a sonne or brother of the King. For the Noble Kings of France mourne in Scarlet violetted, and married Queenes in *Estamine de roze seiche*, and widdowes in blacke Cypres, but heeretofore Linnen; their vailes white, whereon they were called white Queenes. As concerning *Cordeliers*; the Armes of Queenes, Princesses and married Ladies of high birth, ought to be entoured with Palmes, Lawrell, Myrtle, and such like light greene things; but widdowes with Cordeliers of siluer, which tooke beginning by the inuention of Madam Anne, Duchesse of Bretaigne, & Queen of France, a chaste and modest Princesse, who being the widow to King *Charles* the eight, deceasing in the floure of his age, as she did the like: she caused her Armes to be entoured with a *Cordeliere* of siluer, wearing one also for a girdle about her, bestowing the like on all the Widdowed Ladies, and others that mourned in her traine for the Kings death.

Mourning habits for Queens, Princesses, &c. and order of their Armes.

Priuiledges granted to Kings & Heralds of Arms

Now, for such priuiledges as were granted to Kings of Armes and Heralds, some doe ascribe them to the King and Emperor *Charlemaigne*: others to *Alexander* the Great of Macedon, and others to the Emperor of Germanie, *Charles* King of Bohemia, fourth of that name, nourished from his youth in the Court of the Father of Cheualrie, *Philip de Valois*, King of *France*, first and last of that name, as heere followeth the Tenure in these words.

Mes

MEs soldats vous serez appellez Heraux, compaignons des Roys, & Iuges des crimes commis par les Nobles, & Arbitres de leurs querelles, & differends. Vous serez par vos empris de plus aller en Guerre, & de faction militaire. Conseillez les Roys pour le bien, & vtilité du Public, & leur honneur, & dignité Royale; corrigez les choses vilaines, & deshonnestes: fauorisez les Vefues; secourez les Orphelins; & les defendez de toute violence. Assistez de vostre Conseil les Princes & Seigneurs, en la Cour desquels vous aborderez, & demandez librement & sans crainte ce qui vous est necessaire, le viure, accoustrement, & deffray. Que si quelqu'vn d'eux vous refuse, qu'il soit infame, sans honneur, & sans foy, tenu pour criminel de leze Maiesté. Mais aussi donnez vous bien de garde d'vsurper vostre louable exercice, & l'honneur que vous auez d'approcher prés de nous à toute heure, & d'vsurper les traces és Cours des Princes, & Seigneurs, par yurongnerie, mesdisance, flatterie, trop parler, Indiscretion, par Ianglerie, Bouffonnerie, & autres vices qui soüillent & honnissent la reputation de l'Homme: monstrez bonne exemple par tout, maintenez l'Equité, & reparez les torts faicts par les grands aux petits. Souuenez vous des Priuileges que nous vous donnons pour recompence des penibles trauaux de la Guerre où vous vous estes trouuez, à ce que les honneurs que nous vous octroyons ne tournent à blasme, & infamie par vie deshonneste, duquel nous vous sermons la peine à nous, & à nos successeurs Roys de France.

The Priuiledges granted to Kings and *Heralds of Armes.*

MY Souldiers, you are and shall be called Heralds, companions for Kings, and Iudges of crimes committed by Noblemen, and Arbitrators of their quarrells and differences. You must liue heereafter exempted from going any more to Warre, or Military factions: Councell Kings for the best, the benefit of the Weale publique, and for their Honor and Royall dignitie. Correct all matters vile and dishoneste: fauour Widdowes, succour Orphanes, and defend them from all violence. Assist with your Councell, such Princes and Lords in whose Courts you shall abide, and freely and without feare, demand of them whatsoeuer is needfull for you, as foode, rayment, and defrayings. If any one of them shall denye you, let him be infamous, without glory or honour, and reputed as criminall of high treason. In like manner also, haue you an especiall care, to keepe your selues from vilifying your noble exercise, and the Honor wherewith you ought to come neer vs at all times. See there be no entrance into Princes Courts, eyther of drunkennesse, ill speaking, flattery, babling indiscreetly, tanglerie, buffonnerie, and such other vices, which foyle and shame the reputation of men. Giue good example euery where, maintaine equitie, and repaire the wrongs done by great men to their inferiours. Remember what Priuiledges we haue granted you, in recompence of the painefull trauells in warre, which you endured with vs. And let not the Honours which we haue bestowen on you, be conuerted to blame and infamie by dishoneste liuing: the punishment whereof we reserue to our selfe, and to the Kings of France our Successors.

The Antiquity of Heralds & Kings of Armes

It cannot be iustly said then, that Heralds and Kings of Armes were not in request, but since the time of *Charlemaigne*. For euen from the instant, that the descendants of *Adam* were distinguished into Nobles and Yeomen; there haue beene Combats, Battels, and Encounters, and consequently Heralds, deriued from the body of Nobilitie.

We read in *Arianus*, *Quintus Curtius*, and *Plutarch*, in the life of *Alexander* the Great, that that Prince hauing sent Heralds to the Inhabitants of the City of Tyre, to make peace and alliance with them: the Tyrians in a mad incensed rage, (ignorant in the Lawes of Nations) tooke the Heralds, and threw them downe headlong from the battlements of their walles into the ditches, where they were bruised in pieces. *Alexander* to reuenge this iniury, inuaded the City, and hauing suprized it by a long fidge, he razed it downe to the ground, although it commanded the Sea, and put all the people to the edge of the sword. Because that Heralds walked in the same pace as Ambassadors doe, for honour and assurance of their persons.

But it belongeth, that both the one and the other should gouerne themselues with all

modesty, without offending the Princes to whom they are sent. *Sigismund*, first of the name, King of Poland, caused the hat to be nayled to the head of the Ambassador sent from *Basilius*, the great Duke of Moscouia; because hee had spoken to him with his head couered, alledging, that it was the custome in his Country of Moscouia. An vnmanerly Ambassadors hat naild to his head.

During the reigne of *Ferdinand* King of Arragon, the Count of Orgell sent his Herald to defie him, and called to Combat the Count of *Cardonna*, *Ammirant* of Arragon. To braue whom, the said Herald came to deliuer his message at Barcellona, attired in a linnen cloth Coate, painted with some dishoneste actions, imputed to the said Count of *Cardonna*, named *Iohn Raymond*. The foolish Herald performing his charge with al indiscretion, was apprehended by the command of King *Ferdinand*, who hindered the Combat, and caused the Herald to be whipt naked with rods, through all the streets of Barcellona; a worthy chastisement for his presumptuous folly, so say the Spaniards in the life of the said *Ferdinand*. An indiscreet Herald iustly punished.

Sabellicus in the eight booke of the history of *Venice*, and the second Decade, writeth, that the Venecians, hauing reduced the City of Vicenza vnder their obedience, sent their Herald to *Don Vincent de Carara*, commanding him from warring on the Vicentines, with sharpe words, and full of brauing *Rodomontados*. *Carara* much offended at his behauior, commanded the Herald to be taken, cutting off his nose and both his eares, & so sent him backe to the Venecians, with this answer; That they ought not to send him a message in such manner; declaring thereby, that Princes should manage the liues of their Heralds, and not expose them to death by iniurious messages, or of such negotiations, as are difficult and dangerous in the execution.

In those cases, the wisedome of King *Lewis* the eleuenth may well be followed, who hazarded in great enterprises, men of base and meane quality. To the end, that if they succeeded not according to his minde, and that his people fell into any ill fortune, the losse should be the lesse, where he could not auouch them, but with danger of their liues. So he would not hazard the person of his Herald, by going into England, to mooue the motion for Peace: but employed a man of silly respect, gracing his Coate with the Cornet of a Trumpet, and giuing him the supposed name of a Herald. The same King in like manner, to mannage his affaires in Flanders, serued his turne with a vaine-glorious Barber, called *Oliuer* the Dane, and otherwise tearmed the Wicked, calling himselfe the Vicount of *Corbeill* (who would needs be reputed Count of *Meulant*:) But he was hanged in the reigne of *Charles* the eight, on a Iybbet in Paris, by Order from the Court of Parlament, the twenty day of May, *Anno* 1493. for his notorious robberies, cruelties, and massacres: but especially, because he had vsurped the Vicountie of *Corbeill*, against *Iohn Amyart*, lawfull Lord thereof. The prouidēt care of King Lewis the 11. in enterprises of perill. Oliuer the Dane a foolish Barber.

But if they be true Ambassadors or Heralds, and such bad entertainment be vsed vnto them, by those Princes to whom they are sent: it might iustly, (as it hath done heeretofore) serue as a new sparke and fire-brand of Warre. As happened, according to the testimony of *Varro* and *Suetonius*, betweene the Emperour *Augustus Cæsar*, and the Germanes, who (contrary to the right of Nations) had put to death the Romanes Ambassadours and Heralds, *Titurius* and *Arunculeius*. For reuenge of whose deaths, *Augustus* solemnely sware, neuer to cut his haire or beard, vntill they had felt due infliction. Heereupon beganne the Warre in Italie, and namely at Millaine, in the time of King *Francis* the first, to reuenge the death also of his Ambassadors, *Rinson* and *Fregose*, executed by night in the City of Millaine; by report of the Lord of *Bellay*, and the History of Italie. Of iniuries done to true Ambassadors or Heralds.

In the yeare 1527. the same King *Francis* the first, and the King of England, *Henry* the eight of that name, sent their Heralds into *Spaine*, to defie the Emperor *Charles* the fift, and to carry him the Lye, and bid him Combat. Being arriued at *Burgos* in Castile, where the Emperor then kept his Court, they had audience granted them, on wednesday the 22. day of Ianuary, the said yeere 27. and in the Hall of Presence, the Emperour being assisted with the greatest Lords of Spaine, when they spake. At entring into the Hall, *Guienne* King of Armes for the King of France, and *Clarenceaux*, King of Armes for England, presented themselues before the Emperour, about the ninth houre in the morning. Their heads were bare, and their Coats of Armes hanging on their right armes, when they demanded permission to deliuer their message, with assurance and safe conduct of their persons, for returning backe to France, without iniury or disturbance, Two Heralds sent to Charles the Emperor, and their worthy carriage.

which the Emperor promised them on the worde of a Prince. *Guienne* then defied him on his Masters behaife, as well by Sea as by Land, and deliuered him the Lyt in writing, Signed *Guienne* King of Armes: dated at Paris the eleuenth day of November, the said yere 1527. *Guienne* hauing heard the Emperors excuse, *By the arrest of Rome, detention of the Pope*, and the sacred Colledge of Cardinalls, tooke his Coat of Armes, & put on his body: the same Ceremonies being obserued by *Clarencieux* the Herald of England, who defied him likewise in his Masters name, and the Emperour gaue them their dispatche, and sent them away the said second day of Ianuary. So should Heralds and Kings of Armes gouerne themselues, when they are sent vnto Princes, and carry words of displeasing nature: to demand (first) assurance for deliuery of their message, or else, not to deliuer it all.

The Emperors answer returned to the Kings of France and England.

The said Emperour, *Charles* the fift, was seauen or eight moneths in sending backe an answer to the Kings, euen vntill the tenth day of September, in *Anno Dom.* 1528. His Herald *Golden Fleece*, or *Toison D'or*, presented himselfe first to the King of France, in the great Hall of the Pallace at Paris, the King being assisted with all the Princes of his Blood, diuers Ambassadors and strange Lords, with an infinite number of Prelates, Peeres of France, and other. But beeause the Herald had discouered his message with impudence, indiscretion, and Spanish *Rodomontado* rearmes, in presence of the King, and cloathed in his Coat of Spaine; hee was summoned to giue his Patent for acceptation of the fight, and the field for battell.

The impudence of an Embassador from the Emperor.

When he had declared publiquely, that he had nothing in writing, but onely his credence by word of mouth; the King denied him audience, and forbad him (before all present) on paine of his life, not to vtter or moue one word that might offend him. And so the Herald of Spaine returned backe, without doing any thing.

The Ceremonies whereby the Kings Heralds of France and England made vse, for denouncing Warre to *Charles* the fifth, were very simple, yet very sprightly.

The manner of defiances sent to enemies by sundry Nations.

The Ancient Romanes defied their enemies to extremitie, by throwing an enflamed Torche vpon their land: expressing thereby, that they would make their passage by fire and sword.

The Scythians, Tartares, and the Nations of Germanie (seated vnder the North) gaue to their Enemies the choyse of winde or sword; that is to say, eyther Peace or Warre: Peace by the winde, which causeth vs to breath; and Warre which is death, by the sword.

The Mexicanes, and people of Peru, defied Kings their enemies, by sending them Presents of Armes of defence, the Heralds rubbing their foreheads with a certaine oyntment, such as they embalmed their dead withall, round decking their heads likewise with plumes of feathers, such as they bestowed on the dead, before they gaue them enterring. And in making these Ceremonies, they defied them to the field, saying: *Seeing you will not like of Peace, we will take away the life of you and yours*: According as it is auouched by *Iosephus Acosta*, in his naturall history of India, the seuenth booke, and twelfth Chapter.

CHAP. V.

Of Honors, and Military Recompences, Shields, Collers, Girdles, Crownes, and Rings of Gold.

THE Romanes, (a most Warre-like Nation, and the best gouerned in all the inhabitable World) recompenced the valiancie of their Citizens and Souldiours, with certaine Prizes of Honour: which at the first were nothing else but fruites: produced by the Earths enemie; according as Crownes were then composed, plaited and fitted, but with simple Herbages of *Grumen, Dogge-grasse, Oake, Lawrell*, and other branches of Trees, as *Titus Liuius* writeth in the seauenth Booke of his Romane History, and *Plinie* in his Naturall History, the two and twentieth booke, and the third

third Chapter, and onward. But as excesse and riot crept into Rome, by the aboundance of Conquered Prouinces; euen so in the same manner, the Prizes of Honour became changed and altered into Siluer and Gold. Nay more, those Mettalls were also releuated with the excellency of precious stones, tripled Collers, or Chaines of Gold, Crownes, Rings, or Horses, bredde and maintained at publique expence, became added thereunto. And then began the vse likewise of making Images and Statues (according to the life) of such men as had brauely exposed their liues in dangers, for the Cities safety and Honour. So that Amazonian Romane * *Clælia*, was honoured with her Statue on Horse-backe, planted in an honourable place, mounted aloft in the sacred street to serue as a Mirrour or Beacon, for conduct of the Romane youth, to arme themselues with courage, casting in their faces the reproach of a cowardly or home-keeping life, as the old Latine Poet said:

Plenty is the Nurse of excesse.

* A Noble Romane maide, that being in Hostage with *Porsenna*, deceiued her keepers, & swam ouer Tyber to the Citie.

Vos etenim Iuuenes animos geritis muliebres,
Illaque Virgo Viri.

Now these departments and distributions of Honors were not done but with great and good knowledge of the cause. For, although at Rome the Temple of Honour stood with open face to the East, West, South and North, as granting entrance indifferentlie, to all them that cherished vertue, as some by one meanes, and some by other: yet notwithstanding, that they might be equally vsed, or knowne after one and the same manner, the Reward and the paine (according to the quality of persons) were alwaies different; because the distribution of them ought to be different, and ruled *Ad Pondus, & ad Iustitiam.*

The temple of Honor at Rome.

In the same manner, in all well gouerned Soueraigne Estates, distinct and separate by degrees of honour and preheminence, as Dukes, Princes, Marquesses, Counts, Vicounts and Barons; they are knowne as well by their Ornaments, as neere approach to the person of the Prince and Soueraigne, who for the distribution of those great honours, ought to locke them vp, and restraine them to the smallest number as possibly hee may. Hee should bestow them on his owne, as a sport or exercise of great price, earnestly wished for by all, but granted or admitted to very few; for nothing in the world doth more abase the worth of glory and honour, then when it is made common, or granted (without choyse and merit) to men of meane and wretched condition.

Acknowledgment of eminent persons.

How Honors and dignities ought to be distributed.

There are sufficient testimonies in one of the French Historians, concerning what contempt was made of the Order of the *Starre*, in the reigne of King *Charles* the seuenth, who gaue it (without choyse) to all such as offered him any seruice. The Princes & Lords disdained it, and the King himselfe abolished it from all vse, hauing giuen his Starre to the Captaine of the night watch, in the City of Paris. Another, in the learned Commentaries of *Blaise de Monluc*, Marshall of France, one of the very braueſt Captaines in his time, saith: That as an excellent testimony of Honour, King *Henrie* the second gaue him the Order of Saint *Michael*, which was not then prophaned, as it was in the time of *Charles* the ninth, when the Court was more full of Knights then it was of Horses: the Order being then so basely abused, that for giuing fiftie Crownes, any one might be made Knight of the Order of Saint *Michael*, without any regard or merit, neyther were those new-made Knights Gentlemen, or yet so good as the Farmers sonnes of the Countrie.

Sleiden in his second booke, obserueth the restriction made by the Emperor *Sigismond* King of Bohemia and Hungaria, concerning the number of Knights of his (ouerthrown) Order of the *Dragon*; consisting but of thirty persons (himselfe being chiefe of the Order) signale for vertue and well-deseruing. And the Emperour *Charles* the fift, whose life was of sufficient length, held but foure Chapters of his Order of the *Golden Fleece*, instituted by the house of *Bourgongne*. It is likewise the prophaning of the Dignity of any Order (the sole prize of honour and valiancie) in conferring and giuing it indifferently, to all such as desire it, or get it (vnder-hand) by fauour, and no merit.

Of prophaning Knighthoods dignity.

Amongst the Romanes, *In Equite Romano Census, & Probitas spectabantur*: So saith the Light of Ciuill Lawyers, the learned *Cuiaux*, in the one and twentie booke, and ninth Chapter of his Obseruations. Hee ought to haue goods and faculties sufficient to maintaine the Estate of Knighthood, and with those meanes, probitie of life.

His reuenues ought to be foure hundred *Seſtertiaes*, the *Seſtertia* valuing two Aſſis and an halfe, which made the fourth part of the Romane *Denarius*, which valued fiue Sols of French money, whereby the *Seſtertia* amounted to the peece of three Blanks: ſo that foure hundred *Seſtertiaes* aroſe yeerely to Foure-ſcore Pariſian pounds, which make an hundred pounds *Tournois*.

The probatiō of him that was to be Knighted.

Probitie or integritie, conſiſted in good manners, and a life without the leaſt taxation, or reproofe, being very neere to Noble nature: whereof he was to make proofe, by Antiquity of Triumphs, and olde duskie Images. *Milites fieri non poterant, qui de genere militum nati non eſſent.* And no one could be regiſtred downe in the Rolle of Honor, vntill he had formerly verified his Deſcent, to proceed from a Grandfather and Father of free condition: *Conſtitutum ne cui jous eſſet, niſi cui ingenuo Patri, Auoque paterno Seſtertia CCCC. Cenſus fuiſſet*: ſo ſaith *Pliny* in the three and thirtieth booke, and tenth chapter of his naturall hiſtory.

But after that the Romane Emperors had admitted into the ranke of Knighthood, all kinde of perſons indifferently, as well free as enfranchiſed; by money or fauour; the Honor of Knighthood became changed into contempt and diſhonor.

Honourable Recompences among the Romanes.

Now, among the Romanes, the prizes of Honor and Recompence, were Crownes, Collers and Rings of Gold, Bardes and Chanfreines for horſes; *Coronæ Torques, Phaleræ, & Signa Militaria*: and Standards, Banners, and Penons of Warre.

Concerning Crownes there were different ſorts, and ſome more worthy then the other: *Aulus Gellius* in the fift booke *De Noctibus Atticis*, nnmbreth ſeauen or eight. The firſt was called by the Romanes, *Ouall, Oualis Corona*, of the olde Latine verbe *Ouare*, which ſignifieth to reioyce, and the word *Ouatio*, Reioycing. This Crowne was made of Myrtle, a Shrub dedicated to the goddeſſe *Venus*:

Populus Alcidæ gratiſſima, Vitis Iaccho,
Formoſa Myrtus Veneri, ſua Laurea Phœbo.

So ſpeaketh *Virgill*.

Corona Oualis, how beſtowed.

It was giuen to the Generall of an Armie, who without receiuing any wound, and effuſion of bloud, had the vpper hand of his enemie: Or had beene ſent againſt wretched ſlaues and Pyrates, vnworthy the exerciſe of Romane valiancie. This Generall might enter into Rome Triumphally; but on foote, being followed onely by the Senate (yet not on horſe-backe) with the bands of the Armie.

Corona Naualis.



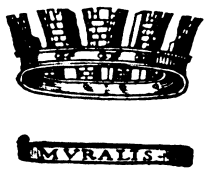
The ſecond was *Corona Naualis*, the Nauall Crowne, made with a Circle of gold, releuated like Prowes and Poupes of Gallies and Ships, of the ſame Metall. It was beſtowed on a Captaine or Souldier, that firſt grapled the Enemies Galley, and leapt into it.

Corona Vallaris.



The third was tearmed *Paliſſado* or *Vallaris*, made of the ſelfe-ſame ſtuffe, and releuated with Pales, Piles or Stakes. The Generall of the Armie gaue it to a Captaine or Souldier, who firſt enfranchiſed the Enemies Campe, and ſo forced the Paliſſado.

Corona Muralis.



Of the ſame temper was that called *Corona Muralis*, raiſed with *Breteſches*, *Parapects* and *Battlements* of gold; ſeruing as a Recompence & Prize for him, who firſt mounted on the walls of a beſieged Towne or City, and there fixed the Standard, belonging to the Generall of the Armie.

Coron



Corona Ciuica. Or the Cities Crowne.

Corona Ciuica, more eſteemed then the Precedent, and made with flouriſhing branches of the greene Oake; was giuen by the Citizens of Rome to their fellow Citizen, who had ſaued a Citizens life in a ſiege, or in a ranged battell. The ancient Romanes (as well as the wiſe and learned *Druides*) held the Oake in ſingular eſtimation, as beleeuing verily, that the fruit of this tree ſerued (in former times) for bread and ſuſtenance to their elder predeceſſors, and that Wheate and Rie was in no practiſe for the vſe and nouriſhing of men, but by defect of Maſt or Acornes, as the Latine Poet ſpeaketh in his *Georgicks*.

Prima Ceres ferro mortales vertere Terram
Inſtituit; Cum iam glandes, atque arbuta ſacra
Deficerent ſiluæ, & victum Dodona negaret.

Rome gaue it likewiſe to them, who had well deſerued of the publique eſtate, and managed matters for her conſeruation. For this cauſe the Orator obtained it, hauing diſcouered the mine of treaſons deuiſed by *Catiline* and his Complices. *Iulius Cæſar* deſired it aboue all the reſt, & yet could not obtaine it; becauſe he had ſullied his hands in the bloud of his fellow Citizens. But the very faireſt Title of Honour which the Romanes could excogitate, to illuſtrate the memorie of *Auguſtus*: was to call him their Father, and gaue him the Oaken Crowne: ſo that the Medalls and Moneyes (as well gold as ſiluer) of that good Emperor (vnder whoſe reigne the King of Kings, and Monarch aboue all Monarchs pleaſed to take birth in his humanity) had on the one ſide the Image of the ſaid *Auguſtus*, and for a Legend round about, *Divus Auguſtus Pater*: And on the other ſide, a Crowne of Oaken leaues, ſuſtained or carried by two Harts, Symboles of Eternity, for their exceeding long life, and vnder them a round bowle of the world, with a Scepter of Antiquity. Within the Crowne were theſe Letters engrauen, *Ob Ciues Ser. Ob Ciues Seruatores*, on the ſides theſe two Letters, *S. C. Senatus conſulto*, to ſhew that this money was ſtamped by Decree of the Senate.

Cæſar could not obtain the City Crown, and the reaſon why.

The Moneys in Auguſtus Cæſars time.







Corona Triumphalis for Victors.

The *Triumphall* Crowne was plaited with branches of Lawrell, the Symbole of Victory; and (ſoone after) made of the pureſt gold; whereupon it was named *Aurum Coronarium*. It was giuen to the General, that returned home with Victory from a dreadfull enemy, by whoſe ſurprizall or ouerthrow, the Romane Eſtate wonne great aduantage: According to the ancient Prouerbe of our reuerend Forefathers; *Let him haue the Honor of the Warre that bringeth home profit.*



But the most excellent Crowne of all, was *Corona Graminea*, called by the Romanes *Corona Obsidionalis*, obserued by *Virgill* in his *Bucolics*;

Qui Gramineis attigit Herbam.

Plinie in the two and twentieth booke, and third chapter of his naturall history, saith: That this Crowne was giuen by all the people of Rome; but the other, by the Emperor or by Generals of the Armie. *Corona quidem nulla fuit Graminea nobilior in maiestate Populi Terrarum Principis, præmijsque gloriæ, Gemmatæ, & Aureæ, Vallares, Murales, Rostratæ, Ciuicæ, Triumphales post hanc fuere. Cæteras Imperatores dedere, sola Graminea ab vniuerso Exercitu seruato, Seruatori Decreta est.* The Ciuica or City Crowne was giuen to him that had saued the life of a Romane Citizen: but this was giuen to the Captaine, that deliuered a whole enclosed Armie, sharpely besieged on all sides by the enemies.

The composition of the Obsidionall Crowne.

This Crowne was taken, and made of the same grasse and hearbs, which were first found in the same deliuered field. *Dabatur hæc viridi è Gramine decerpto inde, ibi obsessu seruasset aliquis.* Because, that like as the ancient Ægyptians, Greekes, and Romanes (so speaketh *Porphirius* in the booke of Sacrifices and Magicke) made present (in elder times) of nothing else but hearbs to their gods, but afterward fruits gathered from the ground, & (in the end) liuing creatures: In the same manner, the honor and sacrifice (if it may be so said) which the Souldier rendred to his Generall, that had deliuered him from death, was to present him with the first hearbs found in the field, where hee had so happily receiued a second life? *Summum enim apud Antiquos* (so saith the same *Plinie*) *Signum Victoriæ, erat Herbam porrigere Victoribus, hoc est Terra, & Altrice ipsa Humo, & humatione etiam cedere.* A custome practised (saith *Plinie*) and deriued from the ancient Gaules, who vsed the same; by report of *Cæsar* in his Commentaries of the Gaulish warre. In obseruing that sprightly and Warlike Nation, he saith, that while they attended the shocke and signall of Battell, they would sit down on a Sod of earth, and tufte of greene grasse in their fielde of battell. And the Romanes (according to the testimony of *Plinie*) had not any thing in greater estimation, then *Verueine*, and the hearb called *Dogges tooth*, which is the *Graminea. Auctores Imperij Romani Conditoresque immensum quidam sumpsere ex ignobilibus herbis, quoniam non aliunde Sagmina in remedijs publicis fuere, & in sacris legationibus, quam Verbenæ. Certe vtroque nomine idem significatur. Hoc est gramen ex arce cum saxo terræ euulsum: Hac (Verbenæ) semper Legati cum ad hostes Clarigatum mitterentur vsi, id est, res raptas clare repetitum vnus vtique Verbenarius vocabatur,* as wee haue obserued in the former Chapter.

The meanest Crowne in value, but the most honorable.

This Obsidionall Crown was the meanest in value of all the rest, but the most excellent in honor, and it was giuen to the Generall of an Armie Romane, that had deliuered his followers, and compelled the enemy to dis encampe, and found the retreat. In the second warre of the Carthagenians, *Fabius Maximus*, hauing deliuered the City of Rome, when it was extreamely besieged by them: by order and decree of the Senate, hee was honoured with this Crowne *Graminea*.

The Crowne of Peace and Concord.

Outer and besides these Crownes that were of Honor, there remained yet another, and the very simplest of all; which (in Iudging vprightly) ought to haue the prime ranke of honour and preheminence: nay, rather more; because Peace is the sacred gift of God, and the best that man can haue, or wish for, farre excelling and surpassing in felicitie, the wretched and miserable condition of Warre. It was a Crown composed and made of Oliue Branches, which was bestowed on him that had managed Peace and Concord, betweene two mortall enemies, and by solid discretion, brought it to a successefull conclusion, neuer to be dissolued.

A Hieroglyphicall controuersie betweene Neptune and Minerua.

It is sufficiently known, that the Oliue is the Hieroglyphicke or Symbole of Peace, and by a queint inuention of the Poets, it was feigned, that question being moued for naming the City of Athens; the debate and controuersie hapned betweene *Minerua & Neptune*. To determine this difference, the gods being assembled in their Synagogue, it was ordained, that the preference should appertaine to the party of the Contendants, which could bestow on men the most beneficiall gift. *Neptune* striking the Earth with his Mace or Trident, immediately bounded forth a goodly horse, the Symbole of Warre.

Bello

Bello armantur Equi, *Bellum armenta minantur.*

Minerua on the contrary, shee produced a flourishing Oliue-Tree, the presage of Peace.

Oleaque Minerua inuentrix.

Hereupon, by an vnanimate voyce of the Gods, the prerogatiue was adiudged to *Minerua*, the Goddesse of Peace.

The Romane Honors greatly out of request by the Empires declination.

The vse of these Crownes became lost beyond measure, when the greatnesse and Maiesty of the Romaine Empire, began to totter and decline. And then Kings, who made a benefit of her decadence and fall, subrogated others in their stead. As namely the close Crowne for Imperiall, but altogether of a contrary fashion, to those of the moderne Emperours, both of the East and West; as wee are enstructed by *Curopalates*, in notice of the one and other Empire, who sets them downe quite otherwise, then they are at this present.



The Crowne for France.

NOw concerning that belonging to the *Sacred Kings of the Lilie*, The floure best beloued, which is without any Paragon: the Princes which are the yong shoots, and budding branches thereof, haue their Chappeaux and Tymbres honored on the Creast.



Dukes Crowns.

DVkes haue their Chappeaux, with Roses blowne and open spreading.



Marquesses.

MArquesses haue theirs composed of a Chappeau, and a Circle, three vpon one.



Counts.

FOr the Count, he hath a Circle with Buttons.



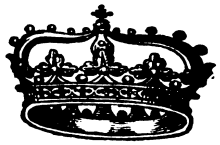
Vicounts.

AND the Viscount with Pearles; the first is releuated, but this other without any releuation at all: And the Ordonance of Chappeaux and Circles, is conformable to the preheminence.



Crownes for England and Spaine.

AS for the Crownes belonging to the Kings of *England* and *Spaine*, they are represented (without preiudice to their ranke) according to the common obseruation of Geographers.



Returne we now againe to the Romaine Antiquity.

The Emperor *Augustus Cæsar* (whose Ordonances may be taken from the Table of Royall dignity, and the degrees of honor) was long time retained in the distribution of them:

them: as *Suetonius* telleth vs in his life, the fiue and twentieth Chapter. *Dona militaria aliquanto facilius* Phaleras, *&* Torques, *& quidquid Auro, Argentoque constaret, quam* Vallares, *ac* Murales *Coronas, quæ honore præcellerent, dabat.*

And in the three and fortieth Chapter, speaking of Chaines of Gold, whereof (oftentimes) he made liberall gifts. *In hoc ludicro Caium Nonium Asprenatem lapsu debilitatum* Aureo Torque *donauit, passusque est ipsum posteroſque* Torquati *ferre cognomen.*

Caligula, to the Crownes formerly obserued, added other of his owne inuention: as *Suetonius* saith in his life, the fiue and fortieth Chapter. *Participes Victoriæ nouo genere* Coronarum *donauit, quas distinctas* Solis, *ac* Lunæ, Syderumque *Specie*, Exploratorias *appellauit.*

The same *Suetonius* noteth (on the words of the Emperor *Augustus*) that he gaue, as an especiall priuiledge of excellency and honor, to his Sonne in Law *Agrippa* (who had won the Nauall battaile on the coasts of *Sicilie*, the Storie whereof is sufficiently knowne) the Blew Standard for Generals by Sea, whom we call Admirals. *Marcum Agrippam in Siculo post Naualem Victoriam*, Cæruleo Vexillo *donauit.*

Concerning Collers and Chanfraines.

The fore-alleadged passage of the Emperor *Augustus*: *Ne facilius Phaleras, & Torques*, affirmeth, that those Collers and Chanfraines were his ordenarie gifts: but yet neuertheless, they were not granted at any time, except to persons of especiall merit. As is well obserued by the learned *Budeus*, the honor of France, vpon the Law *Finale, De Senatoribus*, at the *Digest*. That *Torques Aurei Militibus ob rem Strenue gestam ab Imperatoribus donari solebant.*

Because that this was the prize of Valiancie, and the most worthy recompence of Vertue. As it is said in the Chapter *Ius militare*, the first distinction *Stipendiorum modu, Dignitatum gradus, Præmiorum honos, veluti cum* Corona, *vel* Torques *datur.* For otherwise, *Iuuenall* would haue improued such a distribution, as speaketh his last Satyre.

Ipsius arte Ducis hoc referre videtur,
Vt qui fortis erit, sit fœlicissimus idem,
Vt lœti Phaleris *omnes, &* Torquibus *omnes.*

For concerning men of merit and honor, such recompences were neuer enuied; but (contrariwise) worthily acknowledged, both by the adornements of their Horses, and by the Coller of the Order, as witnesseth *Silius Italicus*, in his fifteenth booke.

Phaleris hic pectora fulget,
Hic Torque *aurato circumdat bellica colla.*

Vpon these two passages, of the Poets, and the speeches concerning Chaines of Gold in Collers, which is the true auncient note of Knighthood: we will insert here some other obseruations, collected from a farre greater number.

The honorable antiquitie of Chaines and Rings.

Among the *Assyrians, Aegyptians, Medes* and *Persians*, the Chaine of Gold for the necke, and the Ring of Gold for the finger, was the marke or Symbole of libertie, nobilitie and Chiualrie. In the foure and fortieth Chapter of *Genesis, Ioseph*, being a slaue in the Court of *Pharaoh*: was proclaimed Vice-Roye of *Aegypt*, for at free liberty, and the Ring of Gold put on his finger, and the Chaine of Gold about his necke, by King *Pharaoh*. As much was done to *Mardocheus*, by the King *Ahasuerus*, in the booke of *Hester*: And to the Prophet *Daniell* (as himselfe writeth) by the great King of *Persia Nabuchodonosor.*

Of the weathies called Stemma and Diadema.

We learne of *Curopalates*, in the booke of the Offices of Constantinople, that the Chaines of Gold giuen to Knights or Souldiors by the Romaine Emperors, were ordenarily thrice double. His noate is very remarkeable, for thereby hee enstructeth vs, that those that were giuen in his time (which is aboue eleuen hundred years since) called *Stemma*, were formerly named *Diadema*: which was a head-band of pure Gold, couered with Pearles and rich Stones, and therewith were engirt the browes of the Romaine Emperours, being made fast behinde the head, which they then called *Stemma*. Now concerning the word *Diadema*, it was taken (in his time) for a Girdle or Baudricke, proper onely to Knights and Souldiors, as a marke of honor, and preheminence. For this cause (saith he) Tyrants and Pagan Princes, desiring to martyrise Christian Knights, that would not offer incense to their Idols: first of all, they would despoile them of their Girdles and Baudrickes, and afterward deliuer them to the Hangmen and Tormentors, to make them endure the tortures of Martyrdome. Obserue here how hee describeth the Coller.

The Iron Ring a noate of slauerie to the Gaules and Germaines.

Coller, belonging to the Order of those Knights, which hee calleth *Strepton*, στρεπτὸν δὲ ἐστιν ὁλκὸς χρυσοῦ ἐκ τριῶν τορτευμένος καθάπερ στέφανος, ὅπερ φοροῦσι ἐπὶ τράχηλου.

That which at this present they call *Strepton*, is a Coller of Gold made and wrought by the Goldsmiths hand, into the forme of a wreath or garland, composed of three chaines, *Torques. Aurum ductum, implexum ex tribus quasi funiculis, quod gestabant de collo.*

Those Collers deriued onely from the Gaules.

Now you are to vnderstand, that the Romaines drew not the practise of these Collers from the Greekes, or any other Nation, but onely the Gaules, a most dreadfull Nation to the said Romaines, since the sacke of the City of Rome. *Virgill* (I will begin with his testimony, as most auncient) in the eight booke of his *Æneidos*, describing the Gaules by their long curled lockes of goodly haire, their golden Beards, their Iacquers, Cassockes and arming Coates, *Bandez en Pal de diuerses couleurs*, (as yet are worne by the Guard of the Kings Gates, and the great Prouost of the Household) and about their necks, white as Snow, (bare, and without any necke couering, according to the fashion of the auncient Gaules) but adorned with Collers and Chaines of Gold.

Aurea Cæsaries collis, atque aurea Vestis,
Virgatis lucent sagulis, tum lactea colla
Auro inclutuntur,

Diodorus Siculus, in the sixt booke of his Antiquities, speaketh thus of the Gaules. *Circa collum grandes Torques gestant ex solido auro, & in digitis Annulos aureos.*

Strabo, his contemporarie, in the fourth booke of his Geographie, making mention of the Chaines and Collers of Gold, as also Rings of the same mettall, which those Auncestors of the French wore about their neckes, and on their fingers; calleth both the one and the other, *Honors of Excellence* and *Dignitie.*

Titus Liuius exalteth one *Manlius Torquatus* (whom he maketh fourse and originall, of one of the greatest and most renowned Families in the Citie of Rome) for bearing the firname of *Torquatus, A Torque detracto cuidam militi Gallo*, by victorie in single Combat of a Gaulish Knight; whom *Cæsar* and *Titus Liuius* (coniured enemies to that warlike Nation) make more easie to be vanquished and surmounted by their pens, then euer they could haue bin by their Armes. Thus much concerning Collers: come wee now to Rings.

The passages formerly reported by *Diodorus Siculus* and *Strabo*, haue made vs an entrance, yea, another passage of the precedent. *Manuum articulos, & brachys armillis aureis, exornant, & in digitis Annulos aureos gestant.*

The endeauor of French youths to gain the honor of Knighthood.

The youths of France, to the end they might attaine to the honor of Knighthood, so soone as their first Armes were bestowed on them: made shew of wearing but a Ring of Iron, vntill they had made some proofe of themselues against their enemies, and brought to end some enterprise, whereby to win account and reputation. This is the testimonie of the noble Romaine Annalist *Cornelius Tacitus*, in describing the common manner of life of the Gaules and Germaines, ruled and gouerned by one and the same kinde of pollicy. *Fortissimus quisque insuper annulum ferreum (ignominiosum id genti) velut vinculum gestat, donec se cæde hostis absoluat.*

He said to very good purpose, *Ignominiosum id genti*, to a Nation wholly generous and magnanimious, borne to command, and not to serue; borne to subdue all the people in the world by force of Armes, and from their inuincible power, to giue and make Lawes, but not to receiue them from any person. Vndoubtedly, it was a matter very ignominious, to weare a Ring of Iron, the most vile and abiect mettall, that mother nature could yeelde from her fruitfull wombe: a mettall, the marke and Symbole of slauery and seruitude.

The most acceptable presents, which the round neighbouring people could send to these couragious men, to let them liue in peace (saith the same *Tacitus*) were the goodliest Armours, bright and cleare shining, sprightly Horses, brauely limb'd and accoustred, with costly Bardes, Chanfraines and other furniture for the said Horses, as also rich Collers of Gold. *Gaudent præcipue finitimarum gentium donis, magna arma, electi equi, phalera, Torques que.* It was no wonder then, if they affected Horses, their meere nature made it sufficiently knowne: because (at all times) they haue bin obserued, to be the most actiue, and very best Souldiors of the world.

The Gaules naturally affected to Horses

The Ring of Iron was (as we haue already said) a noate of slauery to the Gaules and Germaines,

Germaines, to the Greekes and Romaines, who borrowed from the Gaules the diffe[rence] of Rings. All Slaues (in auncient times) wore Rings of Iron, in holes bored through their eares, vpon their fingers, and very often on their feete, like miserable Gally-slaues, fastened to the chaine: and in this manner they were condemned to digge and labour in Mines. *Ad Metalla, Fodinasque damnati.*

Lucian, for this consideration, introduceth *Prometheus*, fastned on the mountaine *Caucasus*, with great Iron Chaines, and on his finger a Ring of the same mettall; subiect to rust, and of no value.

Anulum *aureum neque Seruus, neque Libertinus gestabat in publico, sed Anulo aureo Liberi vtebantur; Libertini argenteo, Serui ferreo*, so learned *Isidore* telleth vs. It was by the Ring of Iron, that Slaues were knowne, as *Apuleius* saith in the tenth booke of his *Milesians*. *Donec iussu Magistratum ministeria publica, contrectatis nequissimi, Serui manibus*, Annulum Ferreum *deprehensum, cum signo sacculi conferunt.*

A passage which may make vs to obserue an order well kept in auncient houshold gouernment, when, to hinder the infidelity of Slaues, of vile birth, and worse breeding, as naturally inclined to all vice; those reuerend Elders lockt vp all things vnder key. For the Mothers of the Family, who had no other troubles in their heads, but loyall loue to their Husbands, and respect of the houshold (two points to be most wished in euery wife wife) did weare (on necessity) Rings of Gold. Within the table of some one of them, were ingraued certaine carracters, and a Scale on the one side, and on the other a little Key, fastened to a Chaine turning in the hand, to locke and open whatsoeuer might be subiect to pilfering. Because our auncients held this as an vndoubted maxime, *Tot serui, tot hostes*: whatsoeuer distinction may be induced of voluntary seruitude, or forced. *Simus semper omnes, etsam in purpura. Si sperat fore clam, rursum ad ingenium redit*, so saith the prouerbe, and the learned Comicall *Terence*.

A notable obseruation of Auncient Houshold gouernment.

Plinie in the three and thirtieth Booke, and the first Chapter of his Naturall History, saith: *Nemo cibi, & potus*, Anulo *vindicantur a rapina*. In *Plautus*, the Mother of the Family, to keepe her selfe from pilly theeues, went her selfe to Market, and at going forth of her house, lockt and made fast her Cubbords and other places of charge.

Obsignat cellas, refert Anulum *ad me.*

Whereof a seruant complained, detesting this dilligence, most requisite in house-keeping, to locke vp all things vnder Key, euen to the Salt-seller, as the same *Plautus* affirmeth:

Isti parcipromi qui Saliuum seruis obsignant
Cum Sale.

And *Marshall* in his ninth Epigrame.

Nunc signat meus Anulus *lagenam.*

A diligence which *S. Clemens Alexandrinus* approueth, and commendeth in a Christian woman, in the third Booke of his Institutions. *Dat Fœminis* Anulum Aurcum, *nec eum quidem ad ornamentum, sed vt ea obsignent, quæ doni digna sunt quæ custodiantur, propterea quod domus cura ad eas pertineat. Si enim rectam Pædagogi institutionem omnes probe sequerentur, nihil opus esset* Signaculis, *cum omnes essent ex æquo Iusti, & Serui, & Domini. Sed quoniam ignorantia, & mala educatio præbet occasionem propensionis ad iniuriam, fuit opus* Sigillis. A passage which well deserueth to be translated into English.

The reason why the Ring of Gold was taken from a Christian woman.

It was permitted to a Christian Woman, to weare the Ring of Gold on her hand, not for ostentation, or vaine braucry, but for necessity and care of House-keeping. It is giuen her to seale and locke vp such things as are to be conserued; because she was married, to conserue and gouerne the goods of her Husband. For, if euery one vnderstood and knew the rules belonging to a rich Oeconomie, there would be no neede of locking any thing vnder Key: because the Maister and the Seruant would walke equally alike in iustice. But by reason of ignorance in the Maister, and bad breeding in the Slaue or Seruant, doing vniustly to his Maister; he makes his good guard, locking all things safely vp vnder Key.

Romaine triumphers did not weare the Ring of Gold, but one of Iron.

Among the Romaines, the Generals of Armes, that had deserued to triumph, were mounted vpon a Chariot, drawne by foure white Horses; hee cloathed in a large Mantle of Tyrian Purple, imbrodered with Palmes of Gold, and the Diademe or triumphall Crowne on his head. And yet notwithstanding, it was not lawfull for him to weare Rings of Gold, but onely of Iron, the marke of Slaues, and of their baseneſſe. To the end, that

that on this day of brauery, they should fixe their eies on the vilenesse of the mettall, which they wore on their hands, and thereby acknowledge the inconstancy of the affaires of the world, whom they tearmed Fortune, who had nothing for her pedestall, but a rowling Bowle.

This is that which *Plinie* obserued, in the three and thirtieth Booke, and first Chapter, of his Naturall Historie. *Et quum coronæ ex auro Hetrusco sustineretur a tergo*, Anulus *tamen in digito Ferreus erat, æqua Fortuna Triumphantis, & Serui publici Coronam sustinentis.*

Concerning that which the saith of the Triumphall Crowne, made of pure Tuscane Gold: it was carried ouer the Victors head, by the publique Seruant which was behinde him (and on the same Chariot of Triumph) vnderstood to be the Executioner of Iustice, whom the Romaines held in such detestation, that he had his dwelling house farre enough off from the Citie, as the Oratour saith, and *Iuuenall* in his tenth Satyre, is conformable to the testimony of *Plinie.*

Quippe tenet sudans hanc publicus, & sibi Consul
Ne placeat, curru seruus portatur eodem.

This was in regard of feare, to haue the Hang-man for so neere a neighbour.

Zonoras a Greeke Author, in the second booke of his Ecclesiasticall Historie, hath added another notable noate. That to the Chariot of Triumph, was fastened a withy-band, a Bell and a whip: to let him vnderstand, that (being but a man) he might fall into some such inconuenience, as might cause him to be bound & whipt like a slaue, and passe through the Hang-mans hands; to the end, that he was not to be ouer-proud of his present prosperity. Malefactors condemned to punishment were led bound, bearing a Bell, or the Hangman for them: to aduertise the people walking vp and downe in the streetes, to withdraw themselues from thence, least they should be polluted by so vile company. Which custome is yet to this present day obserued in Turkie, in one and the same manner: sauing that the Turkes, not hauing retained the vse of Bels (which are euery where broken) haue none, in leading their condemned to punishment. In some places of France, Spaine and Italie, offenders are led to punishment with the sound of a Trumpet.

Concerning punishment of Malefactors.

The Triumpher, being highly exalted with glory and magnificence, rustling in Gold and precious Stones, brauely glittering in his Mantle of Scarlet, and Cinabre, wherewith his naked body was made to looke red, like to the Pagans Gods, or rather like the Persians, among whom the seauen Princes of their Empire (according to the ordonance of great King *Cyrus*) painted their faces and hands with Vermillion, to make themselues both more venerable and dreadfull to their Subiects, by their lookes: This Victor, adored as a *Mars*, when he returned from battailes in *Honor*: This Triumpher, preceded by all the Squadrons and Romaine Horse, of Kings and Princes subiugated, captiued and chained, with their lookes deiected, and fixed on the ground.

The seauen Princes of the Persian Empire.

(*Manibus post terga reuinctis*)

And followed by all the Romaine people, attired in fine white garments, crowned with Laurell, and bearing both Palme and Laurell in their hands: This magnificent man, in the height of all his Royall pompe, was (at diuers times) stearnely gazed in the face, by this publique Seruant, who caused him to remember the frailtye of worldly affaires. As we learne of great *Tertullian*, in the three and thirty chapter of his Apologies. *Hominem se esse etiam* Triumphans *tunc illo sublimissimo Curru admoneatur. Suggeritur etiam ei a tergo. Respice te, Hominem; Memento te.*

And the same Romaines, setting their Slaues at liberty, which they called enfranchising; tooke away their Ring of Iron, and gaue them one of Siluer, and, of Slaues, they tearmed them Freemen, and their children Ingenious and Free: to whom onely it was permitted to weare the Ring of Gold: the marke of the Son of the Family, returning home againe to his Father, as we reade in Saint *Luke*.

The Ægyptians at enfranchising their Seruants, gaue each of them a Ring of Gold: as appeareth in the Historie of *Ioseph, Genesis* the one and fortieth Chapter. To Captaines that had carried themselues valiantly in warre; as a recompence of honour, they gaue a Ring of Gold; within the beazill or collet whereof, was engrauen the figure of a Beetle-flye, so saith *Plutarch* in his Tract of *Isis* and *Osiris*; Because that

that creature is altogether masle, and hath not any female: giuing thereby to vn-
derstand, that Nobilitie maketh best apparance of it selfe, by valiancy and manly
courage.

Euen so among the Romaines, the Ring of Gold was numbred among the gifts
and recompences of honor, giuen to valiant Captaines, as *Asconius Padianus* witnes-
neth in these words. *Quadam præmia, & dona militaria, & honori, & lucro sunt, vt ha-
sta, vexilla, Phalera; & Corona Ciuica.* At Anuli Aurei *Ingenuitatis signa sunt.* Con-
cerning Military Gifts and Recompences, some doe bring but Honor onely, and
others Honor and Profit together. Iauelins, Banners, Streamers, Ornaments for
Horses, and the Citizens Crowne, they onely are honorable: but Rings doe bring
both Honor and Profit together, because they are the signale or marke of free con-
dition, and of liberty. And this he speaketh to very good purpose, because the Ro-
maine Emperours granting the priuiledge of wearing Rings of Gold to their Slaues,
did also (by the same meane) set them at liberty, so (by little and little) gracing them
with Noble titles, among the ranke of Romaine Knights.

How the Romaine Emperors gaue freedome to their Slaues.

What they did in honor to Captaines and men of warre; they afforded to Slaues
by fauour, or corruption. The fashion or manner vsed by the Romaine Emperors,
in giuing Rings of Gold to Generals of Armes, was with these words. *Quando tu
quidem in prælijs, in bello, in re militari versatus es, ob hasce res,* Hoc Anulo Aureo Dono.
To the former speeches, they added a long Oration, wherein was noted particu-
larly, the prowesse and heroicall actions (of him whom they made Knight) performed
in Battailes and dayes of Chiualrie, done in the sight of the chiefe of the Armie,
with obseruation of circumstances, particularities of place, time, and the occa-
sions, according as the Orator remarketh, inueighing sharpely against *Verres (Diuina-
tione quinta)* who contrary to all the auncient formes, had granted the Ring of Gold
to his *Tabellion* or publique Notarie, vtterly incapable, and vnworthy to be made
Knight.

When the Ring of Gold was giuen to the Generall of an Armie.

By money and corruption, Slaues obtained to be made Knights; as we learne of
the great *Arnobius, Aduersus Gentes,* in the fourth Booke. *Pecunia donat* Anulos, &
priora loca in spectaculis: Because in the Theaters and Amphitheaters, they sate in the
places of Knights.

Plinie in his three and thirtieth Booke, the first and second Chapters, noateth this
corruption, somewhat reformed by Authenticall Rules: *Sed hodie De iure Anulorum
Aureorum,* at the *Code,* whereby following the ordonance of the Emperours *Dioclesian* and *Maximian*, the Enfranchised enioyed the place of Romaine Bourgesses, and
to weare Rings of Gold. But yet debarred from the rights of Patronage, as it is said
in the Law, *Is qui ius, D. eod. Statius* obseruing this corruption, spake very effectually
to a Slaue, made Noble, and a Knight.

Mutauitque genus, lanaque ignobile ferrum
Exuit, & celso natorum æquauit honore.

And before him, *Petronius Arbiter,* describing the riot and excesse of the Slaue
Trimalcion. Habebat in minimo digito sinistræ manus, Anulum Grandem Subauratum, &
extremo vero articulo digiti sequentis minorem, vt mihi videbatur Totum *Aureum, sed pla-
ferreis velut Stellis ferruminatum.* He taxeth him, with deriuing from Slauery to No-
bility; which the Ring of Gold declared: distinguished with small Stars of Iron, on
the next finger to the little, on the left hand.

The Physician finger

And from thence we learne, that Rings of Gold are worne by Noble persons on
the medicinall finger of the left hand, called by the Latines, *Digitus Medicus,* as the
little finger, his neighbour, *Auricularis. Aulus Gellius,* in the tenth Booke and Chap-
ter of his *Attick-Nights* (followed by the whole Schoole of Physitions) declareth
that a small and subtile Arterie (but not a Nerue, as *Aulus Gellius* saith) proceedeth
from the heart, to beate on this Physition finger. The motion of which Arterie
may be felt by touching the finger, as an Index or demonstration, of whatsoeuer is
next to the Pulse, either in women in trauaile, or in weary and ouer-laboured per-
sons; informing alwayes from time to time, when the heart beateth, or is of-
fended.

The Physition finger neuer offended with the Gout.

This finger on the left hand, is rarely afflicted with the Gout, for the sympathie
and neighbourhood it hath with the heart (the first liuing and last dying) which con-
serueth

ueth the Gouty, vntill such time as the infection of corrupted humours, come to
perse themselues in the left crannies of the brest or stomacke, vnder which is the
int of the heart, and then this Annulary finger becommeth Glandulous & swolne.
r then, when vitall heate is quenched and wholly abated (as a light without oyle)
r Lampe is extinguished, by the deuision of a whole part.
And the Canonists hold in the Glosse of the Chapter *Fœmina* the thirtieth, and
e fift Question, that to this Physicall finger, a veine answereth, which taketh his
urse and originall from the heart.
And this is the reason, why at Sacring the most Christian Monarches of France
e only solemne act which they doe in all their life) the Ring of Gold is put on
e fourth finger of the left hand, in signe of a marriage that day, betweene them and
e Kingdome. As the same is done to married wiues in the Church, with the Sil-
r Rod, the marke of honor, and obedience vowed by her to her Husband. For such
ings ought not to be giuen, or worne otherwise.

CHAP. VI.

Of Ceremonies exercised and performed, in giuing Armes to Esquires, and bestowing the Order on Knights.

Whence came the first naming an Esquire.

Oncerning Esquires, without making any vnprofitable inquisition further off: they receiued appellation, as well of the Shields belonging to their Maisters, (termed in French *Escuts*) and vsed in their quests and actions of Armes; as also of their Horses, whereof they had the charge and respect, aboue all things else.

It is also sufficiently knowne, that in the *Salique* Law, Stables for Horses were, and are still called *Escuries*, at the eighteenth title *De Incendijs*, and the third Paragraph. *Si quis Su-
em, cum Porcis*; Scuriam *cum Animalibus, vel Fenile incenderit, I I D. Denar. qui faci-
ut Solidos L X I. culpabilis iudicetur, excepto capitali, & dilatura.* The selfe same, is in
e fourth title of the Lawes of *Bauaria*, and in the complaint of the Archbishop of
heims Hincmarus, against the Bishop of *Laon*, who carried the same name. *Insuper &*
curiam *ipsius intercluſit, &c.* In processe of time, the name of Esquire became com-
on to such Gentlemen, as serued for Caruers at the Tables of Kings and Monarches
f France, as likewise to the principall Officers of their household, and waiting in their
itchin.

Obseruation among the ancient Gaules & Germaines.

Vnder the estate of the auncient Gaules and Germaines, their Sonnes did not ap-
eare in publique, vntill they were become tall youths, and of yeares capable, to fa-
ion themselues for the managing of Armes. *Liberos suos, nisi quum adoleuerint, vt mu-
as Militiæ sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur; filiumque in pueriti state, in
ublico in conspectu Patris assistere, turpe ducunt.* This we learne of *Cæsar*, in his sixt
ooke of the memories of the Gaules warre.

Such as was most in vse among the Princes of the Empire.

In this age of youthhood (commonly called *Adolescencie*) capable to learne what
elonged to Armes: those yong Gallants were brought to diets and publique Assem-
lies, to learne some knowledge of the world, and to grow Courtly; And then it was,
when they were made Esquires, by giuing them their first Armes, which ought not
o be vnderstood of the Sword, because that was put into their hands, euen from their
irth.

The presentation of the young Gentleman.

At these publique Assemblies, the Prince, the Father, or the neerest kinsman of the
ong Gentleman there presented, deliuered report of his discent and Genealogie:
with persuasion of vndoubted hope, that he would neuer wander or degenerate from
he wayes, wherein his famous Ancestors had alwayes walked. Then was hee re-
eiued as an Esquire, by giuing him the charge of the Lance, and of the Shield, be-
onging to the Prince or Lord, that entertained him into his traine. This haue we learn-
ed of the Noble Historian *Tacitus*, in his Germania. *In ipso consilio vel Principum, vel
ater, vel Propinquus, Scuto, Frameaque Iuuenem Ornant.* Thus you see the Ceremonies

The ancient manner of creating an Esquire.

obserued, in giuing the first Armes to a yong Esquire: which was (properly) a kind of Adoption, made by the Prince, of these yong vpshooting plants, to inmatriculate them, and giue them enrolement, among the Sonnes of the publique weale, whereof they began then to be made members: for, before these ceremonies, they were reputed no other then houſ-birds, or home-lings. *Hac apud illos toga, hîc primus insignis honos; ante hoc, domus pars videntur, mox* Reipublicæ.

Diſtinction betwixt yong Esquires of Birth-right.

In elder times (as yet to this day) Noblemen tooke the title, and the quality of Esquires, & carried their Fathers Armes, by distinction (as we haue already said) of the degrees of primogeniture, or birth-right: which yet neuertheleſſe could not be permitted, before the said Esquires were married, and become Fathers of the Family. For yong Esquires could not beare Armes (at leaſt paternall) if they were not knighted. Well might they seale with the Armes of their Mothers, and then when they were Knighted, it was permitted them to take the paternall Armes, (according to the degree of birth) in their Escutcheon and Seale, engirt with the Order by them receiued. But it was very carefully respected, that Esquires (were they married, or vnmarried) should haue their Spurres and Armes but siluered. *Il n'appartenoit qu'aux Chevaliers d'en porter de Dorees.* It belonged to none but Knights, to beare such as were Guilded.

A prohibition concerning Esquires.

Greeke Authors, as *Posidonius*, *Strabo*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and *Atheneus*, in the fourth Booke of his *Dypnosophystes*, and the Tract *De Coena Celtarum*, maketh mention of the Gauliſh Esquires; who attended diligently behinde the Knights their Maiſters (so long as they were seated at the Table) with their Shields and Lances.

The proper Armes of a French knight.

For, the Lance and Shield were the proper and naturall Armes, appertaining to a French Knight. And therefore they are called in their Capitularies, *Arma Patriæ*, which Esquires carried alwaies after their Maiſters, into whatsoeuer parts they went, and vpon what occasion, as namely.

To feasts and Banquets: the passage formerly alleadged of *Atheneus*, may serue for proofe.

To Benches of Iuſtice, called places of suites and controuersies; their owne Capitularies, third Booke and two and twentieth Chapter. *Vt nullus ad* Mallum, *vel* Placitum *nisi Patria arma, id est*, Scutum, *&* Lanceam *portet.*

Likewise to the Church. At the Councell of *Magunce*, and the seauenteenth Canon. *Laici vero qui apud nos sunt* Arma Patria *portare non prohibemus, quia antiquus mos est ad nos vsque peruenit.* We shall obserue this auncient Custome more amply in the Tract concerning the Order of the *Starre*.

Of these Esquires (whom the Latiniſts call *Armigeros*) *Virgill* hath a passage in the second booke of his *Aneidos*.

Et Equorum Agitator Achillis.
Armiger Antomedon.

Tacitus witnesseth vnto vs, that they were appointed to follow in the seruice of Kings, Princes, and great Lords, to learne the training and profeſſion of Armes, and to make application of them, as well for peace, as warre. And this was the reason why he gaue them the title of Companions, or fellowes. *Magna Comitum aemulatio, quibus apud Principem suum locus, & Principum cui plurimi, & acerrimi Comites. Hæc dignitatis, hæ vires, magno semper* Electorum Iuuenum *globo circumdari, in* Pace *decus, in* Bello *præsidium.*

As we passe on in this discourse, we may remember, a word formerly spoken of which Latine Authors (traducing it from *Strabo* and *Diodorus Siculus*) haue interpreted by the name of Lance (a meere Gauliſh word) for that of *Framea*, which they say is Equinocall, for all Armes both offensiue and defensiue, hurting farre off. And *Pilum* in the passage before alleadged, maketh the Gaules to be armed with *Lance-gaies* and long Iauelins, to hurle and dart out of their hands, as in the eight Booke of his *Aneidos*.

Bina Aſpina coruſcant.
Geſa manu.

And it is well knowne, that the Gaules (in elder times) possessed a great part of Italie,

talie, and all Insubria, at this instant called *Lombardie*, and tearmed *Transalpine Gaule* in regard of France) consequently the Mountaines of the Alpes, *Alpina geſa, & Liburna Scuta*, which euermore haue beene taken for Armes of the Gaules, namely, the Lance and Shield. This is respectiuely obserued by *Procopius*, speaking of the wars in Italie, done by *Belisarius*, in the time of the Emperor *Iuſtinian* the Law-maker.

The Sword is a weapon generall to all Souldiors.

But the word *Framea*, should not be vnderstood of the Sword, Armes generall to euery man of warre indifferently, albeit disguised with many diuers names, of a Tucke, Horsemans-Sword, Blade, Cemitarie, Faucheon, Rapier, Flamberge: all which epithites notwithstanding, that of the Gaules and Germaines was properly but a Sword. The Interpreter of *Diodorus Siculus*, hath remarked this propriety; *Pro Ensibus*, Ferreas Spatas *gerunt a dextro latere pendentes*. In France, they that speake the language of *Oc*, doe yet tearme it *Espade*. And the Romaines, in their tongue, name this weapon of Armes, *Ensem*, as in the second *Aneidos*.

Laterique Argiuum accommodat Ensem.

And the Armes of the long Pike or Speare, called by the Romaines

Pila minantia Pilis;

Was among the Gaules and Germaines *The Lance*: As the same Interpreter of *Diodorus Siculus* hath very well obserued; *Iaculis bellant, quæ illi* Lanceas *vocant*. Beside which, as well the Horseman, as the Fantaſsine, had the *Axe of Armes*, commonly called the *Battaile-Axe*, which in the Historie of S. *Gregorie* of Tours, is called *Francisque*. And *Flodard*, in the Historie of the Church of *Rheimes*. In elder time also, the hundred Gentlemen of the Kings house, with their Battaile-Axes, carried the same kinde of Axe, represented by their Pentioners Polaxes.

How the name of Cheualier tooke the first beginning.

The greatest care that any Knight had, was, to be continually furnished with a good Horse, which he tearmed *Bon Cheuall*, and thence it seemeth, that the name of *Cheualier* receiued Originall. And it is well knowne, that (at Rome) such men were called *Chualers*. *Qui Equo publico moerebant*. For such Horses were maintained at the publique charge, in time of the Common-wealths first springing: And afterward, at the Knights owne expences, when their Reuenue valued foure hundred *Sestertues*, as we haue already said.

The degrading of Romaine knights

Cornelius Tacitus, speaking of Romaine Knights degrading, and cast off by the Emperour *Vitellius*, for the murthering of his predecessour, writeth: that he tooke away *Their Baudrickes and Horses*. He saith moreouer, that the Horse of one of those dismounted Knights, running after his Maister, would not forsake him, till the Knight at one stroke with his Sword, slew the Horse; and afterward sheathing it in his own body, died betweene his Horses feete.

By this pittifull spectacle, and the passage formerly remarked from *Curopalates*, touching the Diademe; we vnderstand, that the Baudricke giuen to Knights, was called *Cingulum Militare*, and that the Romaine Emperours, or Lieutenants Generals of Armies and Prouinces, in honoring Captaines or Souldiors (respectiue for valiancie) with the Baudricke and Girdle, did first declare the proweſse of Knights in future hope, and afterward vsed the same kinde of formall proceeding before set downe, of words at the deliuery of Rings of Gold. *Quando tu quidem, &c. Hoc te Baltheo Dono.*

The first Christian order of making knights.

The first Kings and Princes, being Christians, at giuing this golden Girdle, kissed the new made Knight on the left cheeke, and vsed these words. *In honor of the Father, of the Sonne, and of the blesſed Holy Ghoſt, I make you a Knight.* And then they receiue his hommage, the Oath of vassailage, and fidelity of the Knight, he being on his knees before them.

In the life of the Emperour *Lewes the Debonnaire*, and in the Monke *Aimonius*, his fift Booke and seauenteenth Chapter of his Historie of France, he saith, That the Emperour *Charlemaigne*, euen on the point of marching to Battaile, to vanquish and ouercome the Hungarians; made the said *Lewes* the Debonnaire (his Son) Knight, in the Towne of *Reganesbourg*, at this day called *Ratisbonne*, engirting him with the Baudrick, & the Sword of a Knight, giuing him also the Accollade, that is say, kissing him.

The Knights Sword differing from them of ordinary vse.

We haue tearmed it *The Sword of a Knight*, to declare, that it was different from the ordenarie vse; for like as vpon solemn daies, for Ceremonies beloging to the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, Instituted in the *Augustines* at *Paris*, by the mirror of Christian

Princes and Monarches *Henry*, third of the name, King of France and of Poland (of blessed memory) the Knights were all cloathed in white, their hose and pumpes white, and their Swords adorned with a Scabbard of white Veluet: euen so the Swords which the Knights wore, vnder the reignes of the first, second, and at the beginning of the third Ligne, vntill the reigne of the great King S. *Lewes*, were couered with fine white cloathe, curiously waxed, and the same Scabbards were all ouer-semmed with Crosselets of Gold. As testifying thereby, that it appertained particularly to them, to fight for the faith of Iesus Christ, against the enemies of the Crosse. We learne this out of the Chronicle of the same Monke of S. *Gall*, in the life of the King and Emperor *Charlemaigne*.

Hæc erat paratura antiquorum Militum Francorum, Calciamenta forinsecus aurata, cum rigijs tricubitalibus insignata; fasciolæ crurales vermiculatæ; & subtus eas tibialia, ac coxalia lineæ, quarnuis ex eodem colore tamen artificiosissimo opere Variegata, superque, & fasciolas in modum intrinsecus, & extrinsecus, Curcis ante, & retro, longissimæ illæ corrigiæ tendebantur. Deinde *Camisia gluzzina; posthec* Baltheus Spatæ *colligatus, quæ* Spata *primo Vagina Fagea; secundo corio qualicunque; Tertio*, Linteamine, Candidissimo *cera lucidissima roborato, ita cingebatur, vt per medium* Cruciculis *eminentibus, ad* Peremptionem Gentilium *demonstradam, auuaretur.* We shall hereafter obserue the particularities of this excellent passage.

These Swords for Knights were hallowed with plentie of Ceremonies, by the very chiefest Prelate that was then in the Court. Being laid vpon the Altar, the Prelate Officiant vseth these Prayers.

The manner of hallowing the Swords of Knights.

EXaudi Domine, quæsumus preces nostras, & hunc gladium quo famulus tuus N. accingi desiderat, Maiestatis tuæ dextera benedicere dignare, quatenus defensio, atque protectio possit esse Ecclesiarum, Viduarum, Orphanorum, omniumque Deo seruientium, contra sæuitiam Paganorum, alyisque insidiantibus sit potior, terror, atque formido, per Christum Dominum nostrum, &c.

Heare Lord we beseech thee our Prayers, and this Sword, wherewith thy seruant N. desireth to be guirded and readily Armed (the right hand of thy Maiesty will vouchsafe to blesse. That it may serue for a defence and protection of thy Church, Widdowes, Orphanes, and all the Seruants of God, against the tyrannies of Pagans, and other deceiuers, seruing also as a terror and threatner of them. Through Iesus Christ our Lord, &c.

Duties to be performed by the Knights to be made.

After that the Knight to be made, hath bathed the day before, watched all night in the Church, receiued his Creator (after confession first made) and taken the Oath, to protect and defend the Churches of God, Widdowes, and Orphanes from all wrong and violence, with promise to warre against (to his power) the Pagans and enemies of Iesus Christ: the Prelate deliuereth the Sword into his hand, with these words. *Serue Christi, sis Miles in nomine Patris, & Filij, & Spiritus Sancti, Amen.*

Seruant of Iesus Christ, be a Knight, in the name of the Father, and Sonne, and Holy Ghost, Amen.

ACcipe hunc gladium tuum Dei benedictione Collatum, in quo per virtutem Spiritus Sancti resistere & eijcere valeas omnes inimicos tuos, & cunctos Sanctæ Ecclesiæ aduersarios, atque protegere castra Dei, per auxilium inuictissimi triumphatoris Domini nostri Iesu Christi. Esto memor illius de quo Prophetauit Psalmista dicens. Accingere gladio tuo super femur tuum potentissime. Vt in hoc per eundem, vim æquitatis exerceas, molem iniquitatis potenter destruas, & sanctam Dei Ecclesiam, eiusque fideles propugnes, ac protegas, nec minus in Fide falsos, quam Christiani nominis hostes execreris, & destruas, Viduas, & Pupillos clementer adiuues, atque defendas, desolata restaures; restaurata conserues; Vlciscaris iniusta, confirmes bene disposita; quatenus hac in agendo, Virtutum triumpho glorioſus, Iustitiaque cultor egregius, cum Mundi Saluatore, sine fine merearis ad Cælestia Gaudia peruenire. Qui cum Patre, & Spiritu Sancto viuit, & regnat Deus, per omnia sæcula sæculorum. Amen.

Receiue this thy Sword, coupled or ioyned with Gods blessing, wherewith, by vertue of the Holy-Ghost, thou shalt preuaile, to resist and ouerthrow all thine enemies,

mies, and all aduersaries of the holy Church, as also to protect the Armie of God, by the vnconquerable assistance of the Triumpher Iesus Christ our Lord: Guird thy Sword vpon thy strong thigh: That with it thou maist exercise the power of equity, destroy and ouerthrow the hopes of iniquities, and for Gods Church, and faithfull people thereto belonging, fight valiantly and defend them, and no lesse against them of *False Faith*, then the name of Christians, to repell the hostes of such enemies, and destroy them: Widdowes and Orphanes clemently to assist and defend, and restore the desolate, preseruing them that are deliuered. Thou shalt reuenge the wronged, confirme the well disposed; and in performing these things, by vertue hereof triumph gloriously, be a worthy patron of Iustice, and with the Worlds Redeemer and Sauiour, attaine to the heauenly ioyes without ending. Who with the Father and the Holy-Ghost liueth and reigneth God, world without end, Amen

Antiphona.

Confortare, & esto Vir, & obserua custodias Domini tui, vt ambules in vijs eius, & custodias cerimonias eius, præcepta eius, & testimonia, & iudicia, & quocunque te verteris, confirmet te Deus.

The Antiphonall.

Be of good courage, goe forth like a man, and obserue the ordenances of the Lord, that thou maist walke in his wayes, and keepe his commandements, precepts, testimonies and iudgements, and which way soeuer thou turnest thee, the Lord be with thee.

Oremus.

DEus *qui prouidentia tua Cælestia simul, & terrena moderaris; propitiare famulo tuo. N. Militiæ tuæ sacris addicto; vt omnis hostium suorum, fortitudo, virtute gladij Spiritualis frangatur, ac te, pro illo pugnante, penitus conteratur.* Per *Dominum nostrum Iesum Christum, &c.*

Let vs Pray.

God, who gouerneth both heauen and earth by thy prouidence, blesse and prosper thy seruant N. vndertaking thy sacred warfare; that all hostes of his enemies, by fortitude, and vertue of the Spirituall Sword, may be broken: And (thou, fighting for him) be deepely wounded: Thorow Iesus Christ our Lord, &c.

And to close vp the Ceremony, the Canticle is sung of the Sonnes of *Corah*, which is the foure and fortie Psalme, beginning; *Eructauit cor meum verbum bonum*, the eight verse whereof, is to be repeated three seuerall times. According to the vsual translation, it is the 45. Psalme.

Concerning the Oath, which the Knights make in receiuing the Order of knighthood; at all times, and in all places, it hath bin continually vniforme and alike. As we learne of that great splendor of the Church Saint *Hierome*, in his third Epistle, speaking of *Nepotianus, Qui ad hoc habebat* Cingulum; *vt Viduis, Pupillis, Orphanis, Oppressis, Miserisque subueniret.*

But the Ceremonies were diuers, according to customes obserued in the places. To some, Princes gaue the Kisse of Brotherhood, of Fauour, and of Loue, *Osculum Pacis*, to new Knights. To others they gaue a boxe on the eare; as the Emperour *Charlemaigne* vsed to doe, a custome long time retained in France, as well as in Germany. Others were made Knights, by giuing them three blowes with the Sword flat-long, betweene the necke and shoulders: which is yet obserued, especially on the dayes of Battaile, before they proceede to handy strokes. And as yet also is in vse, with the Guardians of the holy Sepulcher of our Lord at Ierusalem, in conferring the Order of the *Holy Sepulcher*, to voyagers comming so farre, and requesting to haue it. Ceremonies sundry, according to diuersity of places. Knights of the Sepulcher.

Petrus Blessensis writeth in his nintie and fourth Epistle, that in his time, Knights went and receiued their Swords from off the Altar: declaring thereby, that they were obedient Sonnes to the Church their Mother: for maintenance and defence whereof, they protested to make no spare of their blood, euen to the last drop thereof, and to accomplish whatsoeuer they stood bound to doe, by the Oath of Knighthood. *Hodie Tyrones* Enses *suos recipiunt de* Altari, *vt profiteantur se filios Ecclesiæ, atque*

ad honorem Sacerdotij, ad tuitionem Pauperum ad vindictam Malefactorum, & Patriæ illa-
rationem, gladium accepisse.

A custome obserued in France.

And for making this protestation, of defending the Faith of Iesus Christ, such was the custome obserued in France; that Knights in hearing Masse, *Tenoient leur Espee nue in Pal*, so long as the Gospell was in reading.

We haue formerly noated from the Monke of S. *Gall*, what was the equipage and ornament of Knights of France, vnder the first and second ligne of their Kings, here now you shall see the forme and practise obserued by the *Romant* of old *Reynard*, deuised and composed in the time of *Philip le Bel*, fourth of the name, King of France and of Nauarre, whose Court was better stored with Princes and Noblemen, then any other in those times. The Author feigneth in this Romant, that the Lyon, King of foure-footed Beasts (to whom, he giueth the name of Noble) determined to make his sonne *Noblon* Knight, vpon the day of his natiuity. The greater part of Antiquities were sought for, and deriued out of the most auncients Romants, as well in Prose as Verse, like Pearles out of the smoakie papers of *Ennius*. And because it appereth much better in the old French tearmes (the Authors further meaning referued to himselfe, as may be discerned by the lines fractions) then it can doe by traduction; I haue truely inserted the same, as it is in the Originall.

Premier s ly vesty l'Augueton
De desdain, & despit farcys . . . .
Apres ly vesty la chemise . . . . . .
Apres ce ly Roys ly vesty
L'aubert donnie, & puis aussy
De menacer vne Cuirie.
Apre ly a ly Rois vestie.
Cotte a Armer . . . . . .
De Boban ly donna L'Escu
Et ly Hiaume de Connoitise.
Ou il ot mainte pierre assise,
Saphis, Rubis & Camahiez.
Ly Roys a Renart appellez,
Et puis s'y a commendez.
Noblon son fils L'Esperon *destre*
Chaussast Isangrain le seneschre.
Ensemble tuit s'agenoullerent,
Noblon *les Esperons chaucierent,*
Messire Noble *ne s'y feint.*
A Noblon *Branc d'Acier ly ceint.*

Moreouer, we shall obserue other Ceremonies, vsed at the making of Knights, in the Tracts of the Orders of England, and of Spaine.

Nobility in three descents by Father and Mother.

But before they may come to the honor of Knighthood, and to receiue the *Accolade*, they must make proofe of their Noblenesse by three races at the least, as well on the Fathers side, as the Mothers. Otherwise, the man is not to be admitted, nor receiued, although he be ennobled by the Mothers side in sixe descents or races, because the wombe doth not ennoble.

Custome of sundry places in France.

The old custome of Paris, Orleans, and of the Baronny is such, as if a man be not Noble from his Father; yet were he so by eighteene descents of stocke by the Mother: such a one being suffred to be made Knight. *His Lord may cause his Spurres to be cut off vpon a dunghill.*

The Man ennobleth, but not the Woman

The verball Processe in the auncient Custome of *Meaux*, importeth, that in the Palatinate Countie of Champaigne and Brie: *La Verge Ennoblit, & le Ventre affranchit.* Which approueth, that the Woman cannot *Ennoble*, but the Husband onely: And so (consequently) that the sonnes descended of a father, being a yeoman, and of a mothers Gentlewoman, are not sented and reputed to be noble.

And yet notwithstanding, the same verball Processe of the said custome of *Meaux*, imparteth this rule and Maxime, that the Compartitor, deriuing his principall meanes from the *Rule of Right*: it must needs be, that *Partus sequitur ventrem*; which is alwaies vnderstood

hood of the same condition of the mother, be she free or seruile. So that in Champaine and Brie, it is held, that the *Woman doth Ennoble*, and many (in the said two Prouinces) are not ennobled, but in regard of the mother. I haue neuer seene that Priuiledge, although I haue made very diligent inquisition, in my being at *Troies* in Champaigne, where that worthy Gentleman *Seigneur Pithous* could not fully resolue mee, which hee might haue done sooner then any other, being of the same Country. But the Lord of *Joinville*, Seneschall of Champaigne, in the life of Saint *Lewis* (vpon whose seruice hee attended in his first voyage ouer the Seas) writeth, concerning himselfe: That he refused to accompany the said holy King S. *Lewis* in his second voyage; because (saith hee) that during his absence, his people had beene badly vsed by the Kings Officers. And in the said voyage, he had lost twenty or thirty Knights of Champaine, all Banner-bearers; by which losse it ensued, that the greater part of the Nobilitie of Champaine were dead, or else remained prisoners, in the two battailes which the said King S. *Lewis* lost at the *Masore*, and at *Rexell*. The widdowes and their daughters were enforced to re-marry themselues to Yeomen and Farmers, onely through defect of Noble persons. And thereupon, by some custome or priuiledge (which that place held as a Law) the Gentlewomen of Champaigne and Brie ennobled their husbands and kinred.

Enobling by the mother.

Men made honorable by their wiues.

Philip de Beaumanoir, Bayliffe of Clermont in Beauuoysis, in his Customary or Court-Rolle, which he alwaies kept by him fairely written, of *Anno* 1283. informeth vs, that the Sonne of a Gentleman, and of a woman seruant held in slauery, was made a Knight by him to whom the said seruant belonged, being ignorant of his condition. His seruitude comming to knowledge, the Lord of the woman-slaue would haue sould the said sonne, alleadging, that he was made Knight by ignorance of his being a slaue borne. Nuertheless, fauour of freedome so farre preuailed, that hee continued a free-man and Knight, because the Honour of Knighthood had enfranchised him, which his Lord and Master might doe, the fauour sufficiently couering the error. If any other but his Lord had made him Knight, he had lost both Knighthood and freedome together; because he that made him Knight, had not sufficient power to enfranchise him.

A testimony out of an ancient manuscript.

A yeoman may be Knighted by Fauour.

The King or Prince Soueraigne, and none other, by Grace and absolute power, may make him Knight that is Noble by the Mother. Hee may also make a yeoman Knight, because the Letters of Knighthood ennobleth the Yeoman, though hee be issued in villenage, both by father and mother.

A man called *Philip*, surnamed of *Bourbon* (by reason hee was borne in the said place) a Yeoman, had two sonnes: the Count of Flanders made one of them Knight, and the Count of Neuers did as much to the other. The two Counts were condemned in a-nereements to the King, by an Order set downe on the day of All-Saints, 1279. and at Pentecost also, 1280. And the two brethren each of them in a thousand pounds fine to the King, by a Decree ordered on S. *Martins* day, 1281. And yet notwithstanding, they remained Knights still, by grace and fauour which the King of France and Nauarre, *Philip le Bel*, fourth of the name, afforded them.

Preparatiõ to receiue the Order of Knighthood.

The proofe of Nobilitie being made, or the dispensation of Yeomanrie obtained by grace and fauour; the Esquire prepareth himselfe to receiue the Order of Knighthood, watching the night before in the Church or Chappell, with deuout prayers and meditations. When morning is come, *He entreth into the Bath*, to wash and make cleane his whole body; whereby he is giuen to know and vnderstand, that in all his following lifetime, he ought to be neat and cleane, as well of body as soule; honest in his manners and behauiour of life, wholly disposed to embrace vertue, and to vse in all his actions, modestie, prouidence, and wisedome. But especially, and aboue all things, to keepe his word inuiolably, and his faith vnstained, which is called by the Orator in his booke *De Officijs*, *The foundation of Iustice.*

What is vnderstood by bathing.

Fides alma, alta primis, & iusiurandum Iouis.

Because whosoeuer hath violated, or (but once) failed in his worde, by iests or lies; is forsworne before God, in whose presence he plighted his Faith, as the same Orator saith: *Qui Fidem violat, is Iouem violat.* And whosoeuer is a belier of his Faith, if he would be reuenged at another time, it behoueth him necessarily, that *Aut nouos faciat Deos, aut Auditores*: Either *to forge new gods, or new Audators*: so saith *Demosthenes*, in his declaiming against *Æschines.*

The

Office of the High Chamberlaine.

The Great Chamberlaine of *France*, in regard of his said Office, ought (among other things of like seruice) to furnish the Kings Court in Winter with straw, and in Summer with Rushes, to keepe it cleane, and in handsome condition. To looke that the King Haubert, that is, his Cuiraſſe want no Buckles, nor tongues to those Buckles: to prouide the Bardes & Chanfreines for his horse: and to prepare the *Bathes for new-made Knights*. And in regard of discharging this duty, there belongeth to him, the Robes and Surcoats which the said new-made Knights did weare, when they entred into those prepared Bathes: And the Cloake of euery Vaſſaile, doing Homage to the King.

After the Bath, the Knight to be made, was cloathed on his naked body, with a garment called a *Gambiſon*, which was like to a womans kirtle quilted, otherwise tearmed *Auqueton*, and ouer that a shirt of silke or fine linnen cloth, which the Monke of S. Gall called *Camiſiam Glizzinam*, ordinarily imbrodered with gold and silke at the skirts and corners. Vpon this shirt was put the Haubert, that was the Coat of Maile, reaching downe to the knees, and a Coller or necke peece of Leather about his necke, which the *Romancer* of *Reynard* meant by his rime;

De menacer vne Cuirie.

Ouer all was put the Coat of Armes, so named, in regard it was made with *Lambeaux* of Colours and Liueries of the Knight presented. Those Coats were in ancient Epitaphs and Paintings, figured in the fashion of skirted Cassocks, but short enough, like vntothe Archers of the Kings Guard, streaked & paled with his liueries. And such as they were of the Gauliſh Nation in elder times, of whom *Virgill* speaketh.

Virgatis lucent Sagulis.

But at this present, the Coates of Armes are made short, after the fashion of the *Chastres* shires, which are kept and worne vpon deuotion: and such are the Coats of Kings, Heralds and Purſuiuants of Armes in these daies.

The ancient fashion of French Knights Cloakes.

But by the testimony of Antiquitie (as we haue already said) reuerend in her furrowed wrinkles, we learne from the Monke of S. *Gall*, that French Knights were Cloakes large and deepe, which were called Cloakes of Honour, in the fashion of those for Kings and Dukes, being fastned vpon the right shoulder, and then turned vp on the left, so that they were long both before and behinde, and according to the ancient Romane square forme. The Monk of S. *Gall* continuing the habits of Ornament for French Knights, saith; *Vltimum habitus eorum erat Pallium Canum, vel Saphyrinum quadrangulum, duplex, sic formatum vt cum imponeretur humeris, ante, & retro pedes tangeret, delateribus vero, vix genua contingeret.* I haue seene in the Cappell of Dukes at Digeon in Bourgongne, the square *Chasubles* of Antiquitie, which were shewne me, with the Reliques wherwith the Church is adorned.

Corners of Veſtments open on either side.

* Or *Mantelet* according to Plautus.

This Cloake was double, *Pallium duplex*, because the Cape or Coller is called * *Mantelet*, as is plainely signified by the teatmes of the Monke of Saint *Gall*. He informeth of a garment, such as when the French fortified themselues in *Gaule*, vnder our Kings of the first line, perceiuing the *Gaules* to make vse in their seruice of Warre, of long skirted Cassocks, or sleeueleſſe Iackets, varied into diuers colours or Liueries; they forsooke their great Cloakes, and garmented themselues answerable to the Gaules manner: euen as in new fashions and habits of nouelty are pleasing and affected, onely through the desire of change. King *Charlemaigne* well obseruing the discommodity which those long-skirted Cassocks or Mandilions, brought to the Horſemen of the ancient Gaules, reaching but halfe way downe their thighes (as *Martiall* saith,)

Dimidiaſq; nates Gallica Pallia tegit,

Like short Cloakes with sleeues.

According as the inhabitants in the Villages neere about Paris, with their Palletocs or Cassocks, white or violet, such as they were described by the Monke: *Charlemaigne* ordained, that the French should resume into vse, the great and long Cloake, worne by the *Swart-Rutters*; and that the *Friſons* which then were in France, exercising the Trade of Taylers, who (like Millers, that out of one sacke of Corne take double toule) made the like benefit of one garments fashion. Obserue heere the very wordes of the Monke of Saint *Gall*: *Sed vt mos eſt humani ingenij, cum inter Gallos Franci militantes, virgatis Sagulis lucere conſpicerent, nouitate gaudentes Antiquam conſuetudinem dimiſerunt, & imitari cœperunt. Quod interim regidiſsimus Imperator idcirco non prohibuit, quia bellicis rebus aptior videretur. Sed quum Friſones hac licentia abutentes, aduerterent, & breuiſſima illa Palliola ſicut prius maxima vendere compersſſet, præcepit, vt nullus ab eis, niſi grandis*

longiſsimaque illa longiſsima Pallia conſuetudinaria pretia cœmeret.

The ancient Cloakes in vse to this day.

The fashion of this ancient Cloakes of Honor, are practised and in vse euen to this day, in the Orders of Knighthood; as wee perceiue by the great Cloake in the *Order of the Holy Ghoſt*, which is the Great Order of France, the most famous and venerable of all Christendome: the Mantelet, and the turning great Cloake, releuated with Charracters and *Monogrammes* of the King (Great Master and Founder of the Order, with the Lillie) according as heeretofore were the Cloakes of Honor, worne by the Emperors and Consulls of *Rome*, formerly obserued in the Tract of Kings and Heralds of Armes; according to whose Coates, those were fashioned like, belonging to Kings, Princes, and Knights, made in forme round, yet square, more long both before and behinde, and more short at the shoulders.

Cloaks worn by the Emperors and Consulls of Rome.

The Knight to be made, being in such equipage as formerly hath beene described; was presented and conducted to the Prince, who caused him to haue guilt spurres put on, beginning with the right heele, and ending with the left. Then the Knight, and such as guided him, brought him on his knees before the Prince: who, after the *Liedge Oath*, taken on the holy Euangeliſts: guirded him with the Sword, and made him a Knight, in the name of the father, the sonne, and the Holy Ghoſt.

The reason why the Liege Oath is giuen in the Order of Knighthood.

We haue tearmed it *Liedge Oath*, because that Oath of Knighthood being such, it bindeth him (as a Knight) to the Prince that gaue him the Order, to serue him toward and against all, *Nemine dempto*. And this is the reason, why Kings and Soueraigne Princes, be they naturall or protectors, ought not permit to Princes and Lords, which are their naturall vaſſailes, or vnder their protection, to erect or meddle with other Orders of Knighthood, except they declare to the protector, that they withdraw themselues from his protection. In the doing whereof, the goods which they enioy in the Eſtate of the Prince, Protector, are to be confiscated, in what manner soeuer they doe poſſeſſe them. Because to erect an Order or particular society, with any Oath whatsoeuer; setting any cloud or colour thereon, that may be giuen thereto: is to make a State within a State, a League and Rebellion against the Soueraigne, punishable with death.

Now concerning the Ceremonies formerly particularized, they are done in the times of Peace and leyſure, in the Courts of Kings. For in the times of Warre, they are not so carefully obserued, as on the day of Battell, before they proceed to handy-stroakes, when Esquires desire to be made Knights, to giue them the greater courage in well doing, and to be enterred as Knights, if they die in the fight. For the Prince or Generall of the Army then giueth them three stroakes, smitten flat-wise with the naked Sword on the backe, and pronouncing those words formerly related, without any other ceremonie. The like is done after the battell, to such as the Generall taketh knowledge of, for their valiant and worthy seruice, accordingly to recompence their valour: as King *Charles* the eight did, at his returne from the kingdome of Naples, after the battell of *Fornoue*.

Difference between Knights made in peace and in warre.

In the time of *Charles* the sixt, called the well-affected King, the Emperour *Sigiſmond* came to see him at Paris, and was lodged at the Pallace in the Chancerie: this happened in the yeare 1416. and the moneth of Marche. By permiſſion of the King, hee came and sate in the Court of Parlament, on a day of Audience, when the cause was pleaded between the two Lords of *Peſteill* & *Signell*, they both pretending right to the Office of Steward for *Beauquaire*. In the contract of marriage of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, King of *Sicilie*, with *Ioland* of Arragon; he is named *Seneſcallus Nemauſi, & Beliquadri*.

A Hiſtory well worth the obseruation.

By fauourable and friendly Letters, *Signell* was highly commended to the said Emperour, who hearing that *Peſteill* (to fortifie his right) alledged *Signell* to be vncapable of exercising and holding the Office of Stewardship; because (as yet) hee was not knighted: suddenly he caused him to be brought before him, saying; That hee had the power to make Knights. Then commanding a sword to be brought by one of his Gentlemen, and *Signell* being on his knees before him, he gaue him three blowes on his backe with the sword, and taking off one of his owne guilt spurs, caused it to be put on *Signels* heele, and guirded him with a Girdle, whereat hung a long knife, in stead of a sword. So he was made Knight by the Emperor *Sigiſmond*, not in any enterprize against the sacred Maiesty of the King of France, in his Royall Pallace (as all the ancient Ordonances and Charters of France doth specifie) but because the said Prince had power to make Knights in all places of Kingdomes and Seigneuries, belonging to other Kings and Princes, according to the constructions of the *Iuriſconſultes*, who hold the Creation of Knights to be

A Knight suddenly made by the Emperor Sigiſmond

The Emperors power in other Princes Iuriſdictions.

be an act lawfull, which is not restrained to any day, condition, or distinct place, but assigned precisely.

Another attempt of the Emperor impeached by the Kings Officers of Lyons.

Neuertheless, when (in the same yeare) the said Emperour, being in the City of Lyons, would haue exalted the Countie of *Sauoy* into a Duchie, and cloathed *Amadis* with the Ducall Cloake, setting the Cap of Honour on his head, after the fashion of *Princes* of the Empire: The Kings Officers in Lyons caused him to dislodge thence, passing ouer the riuer of *Rosne*, and the Lands of France, to performe that act of an Emperor, on the lands belonging to the Sauoyan, if so it seemed good to him: for he could not exercise any such in the Kings Territories, such as are *Lyonnois*, *Prouence*, *Bourgongne* and *Dauiphine*. The King is Emperour in his kingdome, not relying temporally, but on God onely. For this cause *Iohn Froissard* obserueth, that at the entrance of *Charles* of *Luxembourg* Emperour, fourth of the name, and his sonne *Wenceslaus*, King of Bohemia, and elected of the Romaines (which entrance was made in the City of Paris, *Anno Dom.* 1378. and at the gate of Saint *Denis*) King *Charles* the fift, furnamed the wise, put himselfe between them, affording the right hand to the Emperor, and the left to his sonne the King of Romanes, but King Charles himselfe was mounted but on a white Gelding, as shewing thereby, that he was Emperor in his owne Kingdome, and (there) such honor was due to him as could not be communicable to any other Soueraigne Prince, whatsoeuer he were.

Cingulum Militare of the ancient Romanes, & the Baldricke of the old French

Now, concerning the Girdle, wherewith the Emperour *Sigismond* caused the Seneschall *Signell* to be guirded, and whereat hung the long knife: this maketh vs to remember, that the *Cingulum Militare* of the auncient Romaines, and the Bauldricke of the olde French, were made of a large strong thong or strap of whit-leather, hauing the ends of pure gold, couered and fastned with nailes of the same mettall, (as wee haue already formerly said, and may haue occasion to speake of againe hereafter.) And to this *Bauldrick* or Militarie Girdle, the sword was made fast on the left side, and on the right a long Poniard or Warre-knife of fine steele, with three or foure squares on the blade, very keene and sharpe-pointed, (much like to the daggers of Scotland) which hung all along vpon the right thigh.

The Lord of *Ioinuille*, Steward of *Champaigne*, in the life of the great King S. *Lewis*, speaketh thus: *I remember that I found there a Horsemans thicke quilted Cassocke, cut off from the owner, who was a Sarazin, which I tooke vp, and put the open part towards me, to make a Shield thereof, and it did me good seruice in such necessity, for otherwise I had been slaine: and yet I was wounded in fiue parts of my body, and my horse in fifteene. Within a while after, there came to me one of the Burgesses of Ioinuille, who brought me a Banner of my Armes, and a great knife of Warre, which I haue yet still to shew.*

The Poet *Claudian* armeth the Romane Knight with this knife, hanging (according to the French Prouerbe) at the girdle, ouer and beside the sword. In his second Panegyrick of *Stilico*:

Quin & Sydonias chlamides, & fingula bullis
Aspera, gemmataque togas.

And so he further proceedeth on.

The long dagger-like kniues, had three or foure cutting edges, and were after the Germane fashion. The first of them that was seene in France, was at the battell of *Bouines*, wonne by *Philip Augustus*, in the yeare 1215. on Sunday the 27. of July, against the Emperor *Otho*; *Iohn Without-land*, King of England; *Ferrand* of Portugall, Count of Flanders, in regard of his wife *Ioane*, eldest daughter to deceased *Baldwin* Count of Flanders, Emperor of Constantinople; *Renaud de Dommartin*, Count of Boulongne likewise by meanes of his wife; and *Simon de Dommartin* his brother (*Comes Domini Martini*, and not *Dammartin*) according to the testimony of *Rigordus*, a Monke of S. *Denis* in France, Physitian, Chronicler, and Chaplin to the said *Philip Augustus*, whom hee followed on the day of the said battaile. He saith: that the Almaignes and Dutch attending on *Otho*, all ran vpon the person of the King, who saw slaine before his eyes *Stephen de Longchampe*, a braue, noble and most faithfull knight, by the blow of a knife, which he receiued into his head at the sight of his Caske or Helmet. For the enemy made vse of a kinde of weapon, admirable for fashion, and (before then) vnknowne: because they carried long kniues, thin and slender, yet formally made, hauing three edges, all cutting downe from the handle to the point, and vsed them in the stead of Swords.

The bloudy battell fought at Bouines in Anno 1214.

Pugnatur

Pugnatur ergo ibi ab vtraque parte virtute admirabili, & cadunt multi. Ibique ante oculos Regis ipsius occiditur Stephanus de Longo-Campo, *Miles probus, & Fidei integræ* Cultello recepto in Capite per Ocularium *Galeæ. Hostes enim quodam Armorum genere vtebantur admirabili, & hactenus inaudito. Habebant enim Cultellos longos, graciles, tria quadrata, quolibet acumine indifferenter secantes, a cuspide, vsq; ad Manubrium, quib. vtebantur pro Gladijs. Sed per Dei adiutorium, prævalnerunt gladij* Francorum, *& Virtus eorum indefessa. Namque repulerunt totum aciem Othonis, & peruenerunt vsque ad eum, adeo vt Petrus Malenicinus Miles, quidem plus Armis, quibus alios præcellebat, quam seculari prudentia pollens, ipsum Othonem per frænum apprehenderet.*

The knife called the knife of mercy.

Ancient Romancers called this long knife of Warre *Miserecorde*, Mercy, because such Souldiers or Knights as were beaten downe and vanquished, beholding their enemy to grasp this knife in his hand ouer them, and ready to stab it into the sight of his Helmet, or into his shirt or Coat of Male, or (wanting them) into his Haubert, cried for Mercy, by desiring life. The Noble *Romant of the Rose* saith:

Thou that in Manhood art to good inclin'd,
Take pitie, and let Mercy rule thy minde,
When thou discouerest bleeding sighes and teares,
Instead of Sword, and words of frightfull feares,
Then Mercy in most maiesty appeares.
Vndoubtedly, if Authors trueth rehearse,
The rudest stones and Diamonds it will pierce:
But let Warres knife *be painted n'ere so faire,*
Yet both the point and edge too piercing are.

After the manner of wearing Dudgeon daggers.

Such men as made profession of Armes, vsed to weare Swords, and those Kniues of Warre, and some others, as well Citizens as Country-men, weare at their girdles those kniues of Warre: yet not behinde, as on their backes, but hanging downe on the thigh, like to the *Baionets* in Gascoigne: young lads vsed to weare them euen from their childhood, and those lads in Paris, as also else-where, were called *Bachelers*, as much to say, as ready (for yeares) to be Esquires or Souldiers. Young maidens likewise, apt for mariage, were tearmed *Bachelettes*, according as in Picardy they are called to this day. They haue yet in Paris a Country song or Roundelay, which is sung and danced by Maides and youths in Summer-time, on Festiuall dayes after supper, Dialogue-wise in questions and answeres.

Mariage-able Maides.

Where then is the Bacheler?
Safe and sure, safe and sure,
Heere behold the Bacheler,
With goodly lookes, milde and demure.
A rich girdle, and faire knife;
He deserues a faire wife.

On the behalfe of Bachelers, and in honour of the worde or name, wee will conclude this Chapter for two remarkeable reasons. The first, because in the French Military discipline, there was such an Order obserued: that all the first ranke of honour, consisted of Knights Bannerets, followed by Knights Bachelers, and in the third place merched the Squires. The Knight Banneret was he who had so many Gentlemen his seruants at command, as he could raise a Banner, and make vp a company of Souldiers, to be maintained at his Table, and their wages paid out of his purse.

Knights Bannerets seconded by Knights Bachelers. Of the Knight Banneret.

Of the Knight Bacheler.

The Bacheler or lower Knight, was he, who had not seruants sufficient to leade to the Warre at his owne expences, but marched vnder the Banner of some other. And these degrees of Honor were knowne and distinguished by wages; in regard that the Knight Banneret had twenty *Sols* by the day, the Bacheler tenne, and the Squire had no more to dispend, but onely fiue.

Concerning the Oath of a Knight.

Moreouer, it is obserued also, that the Knight had no other oath, but the faith of a Knight, as appeareth in the Letters Obligatory of *Hugh* Count of Saint *Paul*, of *Guye*, and of *Iames* his brethren, dated in the moneth of Aprill, *An.* 1289. for the Land of *Anenes* in

in Henault: and the brethren were bound to King *Philip le Bel*, by the faith and oath of Loyall Knights.

The Captall de Buch.

Concerning that of *Iohn de Grailly, Captall de Buch*, which is a Signeurall Principality in Guienne, abutting on the Ocean Sea, betweene Bourdeaux and Baionne, sometime peopled by a part of *Bourbon men of Bourdeaux*, acknowledged vnder the name of *Visuſci*: And therefore this Signeury (appertaining to the Noble houſe of *Candale*) is called *Veſta, vel Caput Boiorum*; in *French*, The *Captalat de Buch*. He was taken priſoner in warre, in the moneth of September, and in the yeare 1364. when he gaue his Seale vnto King *Charles* the fift, to keepe within the priſon appointed for him. But if he chanced to breake it, he was to be held for falſe, periured, and a diſloyall Knight, in belying and failing his owne faith. His Armes were alſo to be reuerſed, and turned with the heeles vpward, And as a man thus ſhamed and diſgraced, to be ſo condemned in all the Princes Courts.

The reward of perfidie in Knighthood.

The like Oath made *Iohn* Duke of Bretaigne, to King *Charles* the ſixt, by the agreement concluded betweene the King and him, the fifteenth day of Ianuary, in the yeere one thouſand three hundred and foureſcore, and the ſaid Oath was dated the ſixteenth day of Aprill, next following.

All the examples hitherto alleaged, are taken out of the Court Regiſters.

The end of the firſt Booke.

THE INSTITVTION FOR THE SACRING AND CROWNING THE MOST CHRISTIAN KINGS OF FRANCE.

AND

Of the Originall, as alſo Ancient Antiquity of the French: The Excellency and Precedency of the Kings and Kingdomes of France, beyond all the reſt of Chriſtendome.

The ſecond Booke.

CHAP. I.

Of the Ancient Originall of the French.

SAint *Hierome*, the Father of Learning, and cleare flame of the Church, who (for a very long time) made his abiding among the Gaules, and namely in the City of Treuers, at that time the Capitall City of the reſt; in his Epiſtle *Ad Ageruchiam, de Monogamia*, deſcribing their miſerable condition, as he had good knowledge thereof, and beheld with his owne eyes, vnder the Empire of *Arcadius* in the Eaſt, and *Honorius* in the Weſt, ſpeaketh in this manner.

Innumerabiles, & ferociſſimæ Nationes vniuerſas Galliás occuparunt. Quidquid inter Alpes & Pyrenæum eſt quod Oceano, & Rheno includitur. Quadus, Vandalus, Sarmata, Alani, Gepides, Heruli, Saxones, Burgundiones, Alemanni, & O lugenda Reſpublica, hoſtes Pannoniæ vaſtarunt. Maguntiacum nobilis quondam Ciuitas capta, atque ſubuerſa eſt, & in Eccleſia multa hominum millia trucidata: Vangiones longa obſidione deleti, Remorum vrbs praepotens, Ambiani, Attrebates, extremique hominum Morini, Tornacus, Nemete, Argentoratum tranſlati in Germaniam, Aquitaniæ, Nouem popularum, Lugdunenſis, & Narbonenſis Prouincia (præter paucas vrbes) populata ſunt cuncta.

How the Gaules with ſeuerall Nations inuaded, became in miſerable eſtates

An innumerable company of ſtrange Nations, ſauage and barbarous inuade the Gaules in generall, that is to ſay, their ancient extendure, compriſed within the encloſure of the mountaines of the Alpes and Pyrenæans, and the great River of Rhine. The Wallakians, the Polonians and Vandales, the Alans, Gepides, Herules, Saxons, Bourgongnons, Allemdignes, and (O poore deplorable condition of the Gaules) the Hungarians made a totall forraging of them. Ma-

Maguntia, a City sometime most famous and renowned, forcibly taken and sacked; the Citizens and Inhabitants massacred, euen in the Church. Wormes, with all the wealth thereof, made desolate by a cruell and long siege. The rich, strong, and potent City of Rheims, as also Amiens, Arras, the people of Picardy and re-conquered Countries, planted vpon the Ocean shoares, Tourney, Spire, Strasbourg sacked and spoyled, & the people of them, branded with the names of prisoners and slaues, carried into Germany, and on the further side of the Rhine, with all their wealth and possessions, to serue as slaues to those cruell Nations, voyd of all pitty; by whom the Prouinces of Guienne, Gascoigne, Languedock, Lyonnois and Prouence (some of the Townes excepted) serued but for an Essay of their tyrannie.

At what time the Gaules came thus oppressed, and how.

Those barbarous Nations passed the Rhine, and threw themselues into *Gaule*, and in the yeere of Grace, foure hundred and sixe, about the ending of December; being incited thus to doe by the promises of *Stilico* the Vandale, who coueting to make his sonne *Eutherius* Emperour, was slaine with his Father, by the command of *Honorius*, in the yeere foure hundred and eight. So saith *Orosius* in his seuenth booke, and the eight and thirtieth chapter, and the two and twenty day of August.

The persecutions in the primitiue Church

God sent forth the arrowes of his wrath and fury, vpon the Romaine people, to reuenge the bloud of so many Martyrs, shedde on the face of the earth, during the persecutions excited wrongfully, and without cause, against the Church then growing. As is obserued by the Spanish Priest *Paulus Orozius* (who was a Contemporane with those two great Pillers of the Church, Saint *Ierome* and Saint *Augustine*, to whom *Orozius* was a Scholler) in the seuenth booke, and two and twentieth Chapter of the Worke-manship of the world. *Soluuntur vndique, permissa Dei, ad hoc circumposita, reliquæque Gentes, laxatisque habenis in omnes Romanos fines inuehuntur. Germani Alpibus, Rhetia, Italiaque perrupta atque peruastata Rauennam vsque peruenunt. Alemanni Gallias peruagantes, etiam in Italiam transeunt. Grecia, Macedonia, Pontus, Asia, Gothorum inundatione deletur. Nam Dacia trans Danubium in perpetuum auferetur. Quade, & Sarmata Pannonias depopulantur. Germani vlteriores abrasa potiuntur Hispania. Extant adhuc per diuersas Prouincias in magnarum vrbium ruinis paruæ, & pauperes ædes, signa miseriarum, & nominum iudicia seruantes, ex quibus nos quoque in Hispania Tarraconem nostram, ad consolationem miseriæ recentis, ostendimus.*

Behold the Allemaignes which forrage the Gaules. The Germanes hauing franchisted the Alpes and Grisons, trauersed Italie, and rauaged all, so farre as Rauenna. The Gothes hauing laid open Scandinauia, ouer-ranne Greece (or Epyre) Pontus, and the people of Asia. Dacia is (for euer) subiected to the Romanes. Wallachia and Polonia, aduancing themselues into Countries, haue Cantonned themselues with Austria and Hungaria. The Germaines beyond the Elba, haue possessed themselues of Spaine. Marcomir at this present, as a marke and testimony of their courses, you may behould (heere and there) desert fieldes throughout the Prouinces of Spaine; the Cities and Townes sometime highly renowned, to haue now no more then the Name to haue sometimes beene; and the soyle and seate thereof marked out with small Cottages, which beare their Names. Namely the place of my birth, poore Arragon, whereof remaineth now no more, but olde decayed houses, and ruined buildings, for all their comfort and consolation.

The chief City of Tarraconia.

Those holy men formerly alleadged, liued about the yeere of mans saluation, foure hundred.

Saint *Gregory Victor*, Archbishop of Tours, the most ancient and faithfull of all the French Annalists, in his first booke, and two and thirtie chapter, informeth vs: That a King of the Almaignes, whom hee calleth *Chrochus*, came and forraged the Gaules (where he lost his life) vnder the Emperour *Probus*, in the yeere of Grace two hundred and fourescore.

The inundations and rauages of those Barbarous Nations, beganne altogether in the ninth yeere of the Empire of *Galien*; and of our Lord, two hundred sixty three. Wherein (so saith *Trebellius Pollio*, the Romaine Historian, in the life of the said Emperour) there was a generall Pestilence throughout all the Prouinces of the Empire, with fearefull tremblings of the earth, and an vniuersall darkenesse (more then *Cimerian*) which continued for many daies together. Great claps of Thunder (*Ioue non Tonante*) contrary to reason, and against all common rule. All

finite number of houses, villages, and Cities, with their Inhabitants, swallowed , beside many thousands of people, dying with the meere feare and affrightment. uers openings of the earth, filled with mortiferous stinking waters, and the Seas erflowing their bounds and limits prescribed, drowned the land, deuouring al- with the Waters impetuous passage, whole Townes and Villages.

And in one and the same instant, Nations and People, before vtterly vnknowne, med desirous to displume the great Romaine Eagle, and conuert her into the rowe of *Horace*: *Quasi coniuratione totius Mundi, concussis Orbis partibus, vndique lum extitit*, so saith the same worthy Historian.

Wee haue seene the Deluge of people, that wasted Gaule in the time of Saint ome, following the course by him formerly set downe, after they had passed the ine.

In the yeere foure hundred and twelue, *Honorius* the ninth time, and the youn- *Theodosius* the fifth time being Consulls; the Gothes forsaking Italie, vnder the onduct of *Athaulphus*, once more vanquished the Gaules. As Saint *Prosper* of Aitaine, and *Sabaianus* Bishop of *Marseilles*, (who liued at the same time) in the reatise which hee wrote of the iust iudgement and Prouidence of God, affirmeth his third booke, and so forward.

Latinus Pacatus, in his Panegyricke to the Emperour *Theodosius* the yonger: *Vnde ordiar nisi a tuis, Gallia, malis? quæ ex omnibus terris, quas illa pestis insiderat, haud inuia tibi vendicas priuilegium miseriarum.* The Vandales, after they had forraged e lands at their arriuall, possessed for some time the Champaigne Countrey, and this possession there remained no more of noate, but *Vandalorum opera*. Bourngne hath kept the name of her ancient possessours, euen to this day; and the andales quitting the place to the Bourgongnons, passed the Riuer of Loire, to possesse themselues of Aquitaine; from whence, both they and the Alans and Sweues ere expelled by the Visigothes of Italie, Conducted by *Gisericus*, (or *Gensericus*, cording to some Writers) to whom *Honorius* had giuen this rich Prouince (which e could not keepe any longer) in the yeere of Grace foure hundred and eighene.

By vertue of this donation, the Visigothes got the possession of Aquitaine, part hereof was called Gothia; and to this day *Langue de Hoc*, or of Goth. Accordg to others it was named *Septimania*, and *Narbonnoise Gaule* by our Ancients.

They chased from thence the Vandales, the Alans and Sweaues, who being vnle (in a companie) to turne backe againe, shifted for themselues in Spaine. The andalls and Sweues, conducted by their Princes *Gondericus* or *Genthairus*, and nsericus brethren, and sonnes of *Modegisila*: the Sweues by *Hermenericus*, and e Alans by *Ataces*; so that in the yeere foure hundred and nineteene, part of the andales and Sweues ouercame *Galicia*, and *Castille* the elder: the Alans had Portgall and the Prouince of *Carthagena*.

Successe of the Barbarous nations in other Countries.

The other Vandales and Silinges, held for their Lotte and partage, the Counie *Bætita* of Spaine, called (after their name) *Vandalia*, and thence forward, uen to this present) by change of a Letter, *Andalousia* the best Prouince of Spaine. ll these people, as well as the Gothes of Italy, and the Visigothes of Aquitaine, were fected with the Arrian Heresie.

Concerning the French in these tempestuous times.

But where are the French all this while, while others make themselues so much oken of? Were they at this time vnknowne, or hidden, as *Achilles* in *Homer* as, handling the distaffe? Nothing so; for they were a long time renowned for aliancie and Prowesse, and held in reputation, to be the very hardiest people of Gerianie.

The French that went into Gaule.

And yet neuertheless, it is a Maxime constant and assured, that they were the st of them that passed into Gaule; not to take an Essay of it, as the rest had done, hose defects they noted; but to possesse themselues there in earnest, and to beome Masters of it by setling their Conquest there, without letting slip or loosing eir hold, following the Nature of the generous Lyon, which they bare for their rmes. For the French (as wee doe commonly see one nayle drueth out another) pelled from thence by force of Armes, all such others as had made possessi-

sion of the places before them, as namely the Romanes, Vandales, the Alans, Sweuians, Bourgongnons and Visigothes, whom *Gregorie* of Tours, the ancient Annalist, named *Gothes*, without making any difference of them that held Italie (properly named Gothes) from the Visigothes of Gaule, who afterwards possessed themselues of Spaine.

The Authors purpose before he proceed any further in this discourse.

Yet before I set downe their Conquests, I shall perhaps doe an acceptable worke vnto the Readers, to touch by the way, what was their Originall. And so much the rather, because many writers haue placed their first abiding in the Marishes of *Mœotides*, and builded thereon Castles in Spaine, in the time of King *Bamba*, and the great Aunt *Sicambria*, Grandmother to a new people, abiding within the Circle of the Moone; making a new world, according to the opinion of some distempered Philosophers, destitute of iudgement and reason.

The opinion of some Historians, whence they came.

Some Historians make them to come from the *Pannoniaes*, for there are two at this day, the higher and the lower, which are the Kingdome of Hungaria, and the Archduchie of Austria, and that they came from thence, to dwell vpon the bankes of Rhine first of all.

And so hauing past ouer that famous Riuer, they went into *Thuringe*, where they builded many Cities and Townes, ordaining to rule and gouerne ouer them, as also to conduct them in Warres, Kings and Dukes, distinguished and discerned from other neighbouring Princes, by their long lockes and tufts of hayre; chosen and culled out of the principall families among them.

Saint *Gregory Victor*, Archbishop of Tours, in his second booke of the Historie of France (which shortly shall be seene of mine owne Translation) toucheth this opinion in the ninth Chapter. *Tradunt multi eosdem* (hee speaketh of the French) *de Pannonia fuisse digressos, & primum Litora Rheni amnis incoluisse: dehinc transacto Rheno Thuringiam transmeasse, ibique iuxta Pagos, vel Ciuitates* Reges Crinitos *super se creauisse, & prima, & vt ita dicam nobiliori suorum familia.* Hee reporteth nothing but this opinion of the ancient Originall of the French, whereunto neuertheless he trusteth not, for the reasons which wee shall relate more at large, when we come to the fifth chapter of this second booke.

He speaketh nothing at all of the Marishes of *Mœotides*; of the imaginary *Sicambria*, nor of the cinders of Troy.

A second opinion of a Germane original

Others doe maintaine, that the French had a Germane Originall: *De Francorum Origine, secundum Germanos lis esse data videtur, qui Francos Galliæ Incolas rebus bello egisque gestis Clarissimos sibi vendicant.* So saith *Adrianus Turnebus*, in the fiue and twentith booke, and the seauen and thirty Chapter of his *Aduersaries*. And hee addeth, it must necessarily be concluded, that they made one part of Germanie, as mingled and confused among them, without making any band apart; because *Tacitus* and *Ptolomie*, who exactly haue remarked the people and Nations of all Germany or Allemaigne, make no noate or mention at all of the French.

A third coniecture concerning Scandinauia.

Others will haue them to be descended from *Scandinauia*, grounded on a pretended passage drawne out of *Ptolomie*, who describing this *Peninsula*, which *Plinie* the Naturalist in his fourth booke, calleth *Clarissimam Scandinauiam magnitudinis incomperta*, denominateth and specifieth amongst the Inhabitants thereof, some one kinde of people, bearing the name of *Phiraisi*, which they say to be depraued, changed and altered, instead whereof (according vnto their iudgement) it should bee reade ΦΡΑΓΓΙ, and pronounced *Frangi*, from whence (as it should seeme) should come the title and surname of *Franci*.

A fourth different out of Scythia.

There be others beside, who from the same *Ptolomie*, and other Geographers, following his straine, will haue them to be descended from Scythia, and the Marshie *Mœotides*, and by the name of *Brenci*, the *B.* changed to *F.* and so drawne in by the eares, to be made that of *Franci*.

A good rule, and aduise in doubtful cases.

Now, at all times, and as often as question is made of Etymologies, and the Originall of proper names and Appellatiues (a matter somewhat difficult and queazie) wee should not proceed to the correction of them, without certaine and apparant reasons, and supported by the testimony of Authors of good noate, with this obseruation of the same *Ptolomie* (which they doe alleadge) who speaking of *Scandinauia*,

Scandinauia, otherwise called *Scandia*, *Baltica* or *Basilia*, auoucheth it to be inhabited with seauen seuerall kindes of people, which were the *Gothes*, *Ostrogothes*, *Visigothes*, *Danes*, *Rataines*, *Rugians* and *Tanians*. He speaketh no more of the *French* then of the *Megarians*; a common prouerbe vsed by the *Greekes*.

Seauen seuerall kindes of people inhabiting Scandia.

But the most ridiculous opinion, is of them, who would create them out of the miserable ashes of great *Troy*, and of a supposed *Francus* or *Francion*, the pretended Sonne of *Hector*, a Paladine in painting, yea, a precious Relique, carried throughout the world; to the end, that her desert Prouinces might be planted with so noble a Seede. *Hunibauld*, and the Abbot *Tritemius*, Germaines: One Frier *Annius* of *Viterbo*, an Italian, the Comenter on a false and supposed *Berosus*, the pretended Chaldean, and of one *Manethon* of Phrygia, who neuer had being but in the world of the Moone (for the true *Berosus* a Chaldean, whom the learned *Phylo* a Iew, and *Iosephus* doe alleadge so often, neuer wrote any thing of the ashes of *Troy*) *Iohn Maire* the Belgian, in his illustrations of Gaule; *Richard de Vesselbourg*; one Frier *Noel Talepied*, of the Gray Fryers Order; and of later date, one *Du Pre* of Lyonnois, displayeth in the frontispice of his celebrated trauailes, the mangly countenance. And the rest of the same ignorant temper, haue plunged themselues in the Gulfe of those lyes and fables, taking them for money of the best payment, maintaining; that the people which followed the fortune of this imagined *Francus*, were (of him) named Frenchmen. All these reporters of Fables and Sonnets, are resembled to the pretended God *Iupiter*, whom the French Poet in the first Booke of his *Franciades*, feigneth and figureth in painting, to saue the supposed *Francus*. They made a Phantasma, like to the Iuglers of the *Hostell de Bourgongne* at Paris, making of *Astianax*, a *Francus*, like to *Amphitrio* in *Plautus*.

Fabulous writers of the Troyan Francus and the people comming of him.

Homer, Prince of the Greeke Poets, giueth but one Sonne, called *Astianax*, and surnamed *Scamander*, to the valiant *Hector*, and *Andromache* his wife, in the sixt Booke of his *Illiades*.

The Latine Poet calleth him nothing but *Astianax*, in the second Booke of his *Aeneidos*.

Sæpius Andromache ferre incomitata solebat
Ad Soceros, & Auo puerum Astianacta trahebat.

And like as those are meere Fables, of all the pretended Gods, and forged by the Greeks and Romaines:

Mulciber in Troiam, pro Troia stabat Apollo.
Æqua Venus Teucris, Pallas iniqua fuit.

Reade *Thucidides* his preface, an Historian of approued integrity, and more likely to vnderstand the truth of those antiquities of Greece.

Fables meerely inuented by the Poets.

So are the Siedges of *Troy* the Great, and of *Thebes* with an hundred Gates: And the voyage of the *Argonautes*, to conquer the Golden Fleece, the three most famous enterpises which the Poets euer feigned.

If *Troy* was, it neuer was taken, nor sacked after such manner, as *Homer* and *Virgill* haue feigned: According as it is proued by *Dion Prussensis*, in the booke which he wrote *De Troia non capta*.

Æneas, *Anthenor*, and other supposed great Lords of *Troy*, pretended founders of Rome and other places, are imagined names of persons that neuer were, but in the minde and fantasie of Poets. The *Cato* of his age, *Pybrac*, made (to good purpose) the Queene of Carthage say, that the Latine Poet taxed her with immodestie, and her *Æneas* with treason and perfidie.

I Rome, in me, ne're saw thy fugitiue Æneas.

But leaue we these Fables, to whosoeuer liketh to be led by them.

The French Poet, in the place before alleadged (to the end wee may talke no more of diuinations) being desirous to encounter them on the name of the French, by the adoption and composure of two Gaulish words ioyned together, *Phere-Encos*, which signifieth Beare-Launce, saith that his *Francus*.

In signe of Valiance,
Was by his Souldiors named Bear-Lance,
Phere-Encos, *a name of people conquered,*
Afterward said Francuz, *ill pronounced.*

Called Francuz by corrupted pronunciation.

Among the Armes of the auncient French, ouer and beside the Launce, was the Battaile-

The Battaile-Axe a weapon vſed by the ancient French.

taile-Axe, which they called *Anchon*, and moreouer, yet to this day, in many Prouinces of France, it is tearmed an *Achon*, wherewith they ſerued themſelues in warre, by throwing it a farre off at ioyning with the enemy, onely to diſcouer the man, and to cleaue his Shield. Becauſe this *Achon* was darted with ſuch violence, as it would cleaue the Shield and compell the Maiſter thereof to hold down his arme, and being ſo diſcouered, as naked or vnarmed; it made way for the ſooner ſurprizing of him. It ſeemeth, that this weapon was proper and perticuler to the French Souldior, as well him on foote, as on horſeback. For this cauſe they called it *Franciſcus*. Franciſca, *Securis oblonga, quam Franci libram in Hoſtes*. For the Horſeman, beſide his Shield and Franciſca (Armes common, as we haue ſaid, to the Footeman) had alſo the Lance, which being broken, and ſeruing to no further effect: he laid hand on his Franciſca, as we learne the vſe of that weapon in the Archbiſhop of *Tours*, his ſecond Booke and twentie ſeauenth Chapter of the Hiſtory of France: and *Floardus*, in that Hiſtory of the Church of Rheims, the firſt Booke, and the thirteenth Chapter. But returne we now againe to the French.

If they had bin deſcended from the *Pannoniaes*, which haue (from time to time) bin famous, and tooke part with Germanie: it is not to be doubted, but that the Noble writer *Tacitus*, who purpoſely tooke delight to be a Topographer; would haue obſerued ſomewhat of them which cauſed the contradiction, and bringing to compromiſe, of the ſame *Turnebus* before alleadged, that the Anceſtors of the French tooke Originall from Germanie. Whereas contrariwiſe, he deriueth their ancient Originall from the Gaules: *Gentis nobilis præſertim, & glorioſa in Europa, Imperij maieſtatem retinentis, Propaginem, & Sobolem, noſtros nominauerim.* And this he wrote not without cauſe (although there be ſome that take it againſt the haire) becauſe it is a matter aſſured, that Germanie was peopled by the Gaules, and that the Allemaignes, by ſuch Colonies and plantations, were of the Romaines, baptiſed with the name of *Germaines, Brethren of the Gaules*, whom they reſſembled in corpulence of body, manners, and behauiour of life.

Germanie peopled by the Gaules.

The Geographer *Strabo*, in the ſeauenth booke of his Geographie (whereon all the Hiſtorians and Geographers, the Greekes and Romaines moulded and faſhioned their workes, as on a good Originall and perfect exemplary) informeth vs, that *Regionem trans Rhenum ad Ortum vergentem* Germani *colunt, nationem Gallicam pauliſper imitantes, & fœcunditatis abundantia, & proceritate corporum, & colore flauo: cum reliquis in rebus, & formis, & moribus, & victus cultu pares exiſtant, quales* Gallos *diximus. Ideo Romani hoc illis nomen iure indidiſſe mihi videntur, perinde ac eos* Fratres (*Romano ſermone*) *Germani intelliguntur.* But for the better vnderſtanding of this paſſage, it behoueth vs to obſerue the time, when Germanie was peopled by the Gaules.

At what time Germanie was peopled by the Gaules.

About the yeare of the World, three thouſand and three hundred; before the moſt bleſſed birth of the Sauiour of Mankinde ſixe hundred and thirteene; at ſuch time as *Nabuchodonoſor*, King of the Aſſyrians, held the Iewes in ſlauerie; and that *Tarquin* the elder Commanded ouer the Romaines; were made two ſignale departures of the Gaules, to inhabite Greece, Italie, Allemaigne and Spaine: So ſaith the learned Antiquarie *Claudius Fauchet*, at the beginning of his Hiſtorie of France.

At that time reigned ouer the fertile Gaules *Ambigat*, a rich and puiſſant Prince, whoſe Court was ordenarily kept in the Towne of *Bruges*, according to the vulgar opinion (and as others ſay, at *Viarion*) ſo called by *Cæſar*, and ſuch as followed him, tearmed it *Auaricum*: the inhabitants and people of Berry; *Auares*, & *Bituriges*, and the Champaine grounds thereof, which ſome name *Sologne*, are tearmed of the ſame *Cæſar* in his language, *Campi Catalaunici*, and in *Me*, one word *Catalaunia*.

The Nephews of Ambigat appointed to conquer new Countries.

Ambigat, to diſcharge the Gaules, which ſwarmed then to an infinite number of people; made election of the Sonnes of his Siſter, being his Nephewes, *Sigoneſe* and *Beloueſe*, to goe conquer new Prouinces, and gaue to each of them three hundred thouſand men, with their Families. *Beloueſe* tooke his way to Italie, which he peopled, there building Townes and Villages, and all his conqueſt beyond the Mountaines of the Alpes, was named *Tranſ-Alpine Gaule*, and is ſo ſtill to this day. Her preſſed further on his fortune, and aduentured his conqueſts into Thrace, ſubduing Macedon and Greece, as well the Iſles, as the firme Land: as it is written by *Strabo*, *Plutarch*, *Pauſanias*, *Titus Liuius* and *Iuſtine*. This migration is not here any part of our

Tranſ-Alpine Gaule.

The Conqueſts of Belouefe.

ſubiect, *Fauchet* tooke it to his taske, and worthily acquitted himſelfe thereof: Now we will take our owne, that of Allemaigne or Germanie.

Sigoneſe had his troupes compoſed (as well as that of his Brother) of *Sambres*, called at this preſent *Picads*, of *Arteſians*, *Beauuoiſins*, Chartraines, Berruyers, Bretons, Aquitains, Sequanois, Suiſſes, Bourbonnois, Limoſins, Toloſians, Seuenois, Rouergats, and other people, drawne from all the Prouinces of Gaule, and diuided into two troupes, for the better peopling of ſuch Lands, as ſhould fall to their lot and partage; whereunto alſo they gaue their names, conſerued euen to this preſent day.

The compoſture of the troupes belonging to Sigoneſe, and their deuiſion.

He had Almaigne or Germanie to his part, and hauing paſſed Rhine, which ſeperated the Gaules; in ſtead of the goodly plaines, and Champaine grounds of Italie, he found himſelfe to be in vnpleaſing places of the Forreſt *Hercynia*, which the Romaines called *Syluam incomperta magnitudinis*, and whereof no one knoweth the end. The people of *Sigoneſe* inhabited and made their abiding in the ſhades thereof, making glades (by little and little) for their commoditie.

Rhine the partition of the Gaules.

The firſt that freed themſelues of the Riuer, were the *Sambres*, the *Arteſians* and *Toureſians* formerly named, in regard of the Riuer of *Sambre*, called *Sabis* by *Cæſar*, in his ſecond and ſixt Bookes of the Gaules warre. *Ipſe cum reliquis tribus legionibus ad flumen Sabin* (and not *Schaldim*) *quod influit in Moſam, extremaſque Arduennæ partes peruenit. Quo cognito, Cæſar ad eum locum pontem facere, atque exercitum traducere conſtituit.* For this Riuer, which they of the *Ardennes* called *Sambre*, hath her ſpring in the ſaid Forreſt of *Ardenne*, on the confines of *Vermandois*, and of *Henault*, and making diuers turnings and windings, commeth to laue the Towne of *Namure*, and afterward looſeth her ſelfe in the Riuer of *Meuxe*. *Fortunatus*, the Biſhop of *Poictiers*, rancketh among the Riuers of France, this *Sabis* of *Cæſar*, called *Sambre*, which the ſaid *Fortunatus* tearmeth *Sabam*, in his ſeauenth Booke, and fourth Poemme.

Iſara, Sara, Chares, Schaldis, Saba, Somena, Sura.

This is that which *Cæſar* calleth *Sicambros*, and *Tacitus Sugambros*; diſguiſing thus auncient proper names, and Gauliſh vocables in the Romaine definence or ending, to make them the apter for their owne language. Which *Cæſar* began with a purpoſed deliberation, to the end, that (in time) the honor and glory of the Gaules Nation might be vtterly loſt. A ſtratagem of Romaine malice, to hide the Gaules for euer, from the moſt rare ſecrets of their goodly pollicie, with the antiquity of their Cities and Prouinces. Yet notwithſtanding all this, in the end they found bright day light, and knowledge of their hainous and deadly enemies, namely, the writings of *Cæſar*, of *Titus Liuius*, and others. After *Cæſar* followed the Greekes, who, not to bide behinde, and not appeare inferiour to the Latines in ſpirit; meeting with what was written of remote and ſtrange Nations, omitted not (though not tyed thereto) to change and diſguiſe the ſame Latine names, inuented by *Cæſar*, and ſuch as followed him, by cloathing them alike in their Grecian garments. So that the Gaules had no meane paine and trauaile, to know their owne rights, in the writings of *Strabo*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Dion*, *Ptolomie*, and other Greeke Authors, as hardly as in them of the Latines. And this is that which made them trip and ſtumble ſo often, in the broad way of the *Itinerarium* Coſmographicall of *Æticus*; attributed vnaduiſedly by the ignorant, to the Emperour *Antoninus*, and thought to be his.

The mallice of the Romaines againſt the Gauls.

The Greekes following the Romaines in malice to the Gauls

Thoſe people then, which by *Iulius Cæſar* are called *Sicambres*, the firſt that paſſed ouer the *Rhine*; planted themſelues alſo firſt on the borders and lands of Allemaigne, where they were then, when the ſame *Cæſar* (to make himſelfe knowne) croſſed ouer that great Riuer. They peopled all the extendure of the Countrie, bounded on the one ſide of the ſide Riuer for one part, euen from the way where the Riuer of *Lipp*, in Latine *Lippias*, runneth to ſwallow it ſelfe in the *Rhine*, and remounting againe all along the Forreſt *Bacenis*, bordereth the two Landſgraues territories of *Heſſen* and of *Thuringe*, the Dutchie of *Saxonie*, and the Marquiſate of *Brandenbourge*, ſcourbing it ſelfe round-wiſe, to returne and winne the coaſt of the Ocean Sea at *Hambourg*, continuing on ſo farre as to the Riuer of *Rhine*; *Friezland* being a dwelling of the *Sambres*, in one part of her bounds.

The firſt plantation beyond the Rhine.

The moſt notable Riuers of this their abiding, which bathe and water it, at this preſent are named *Lemſs* and the *Weſere*, heretofore called by *Tacitus Amaſias*, *Amaſis*, *Amaſia*

The famous Riuers of the Sicambres abiding.

Amasia and *Visurgis* by *Strabo*. And the name of the same extendure, was called *Sicambria*, but afterward *Westphalia*. In following time, the said *Sicambrians* remounted further into the Countrey, peopling there *Franconia*: which *Gregorie* of *Tours*, in the place before alleadged, calleth properly *Franciam*. Come we now to the numbring of the Gaules, which peopled Allemaigne.

The second company that passed the Rhine, were them of Sens, and where they made their plantation.

The men of *Sens*, hauing (after the *Sambres*) passed the Riuer of *Rhine*; planted themselues neere to the other. These are they whom *Cæsar* called *Senones*, and *Suenos*: *Tacitus Semnones*, and others *Suiones*. They inhabited that extendure of the Countrey, which reacheth from Hambourg, so farre as to Pomerania, all along the Ocean Sea, which of them was called *Sueuica* on the one side: along the Riuer of *Elb*, called *Albis* in Latine, coasting the *Sicambres*, and remounting by the other side, coasted the Riuer *Odera*, cutting by *Bohemia*, they mounted vp so farre as to *Nuremberg*; in such sort, that they had their quarter both within and without the Forrest *Hercynia*, on this side and beyong the *Elb*, euen to the Forrest *Bacenis*, called at this present of *Turing*. This extendure of the Country, is called by *Cæsar Senonia*, soone after *Sueuia*, and vnto this instant *Saxonia*, and the inhabitants of them *Sesnes*, *Senons* and *Saxons*. In following time, and by example of the *Sambres*, they got more elbow-roome, reaching vp higher into the Countrey, and possessed themselues of places, which *Cæsar* calleth *Noricos*, and so farre as to the Mountaines of the Alpes, called *Alpes Noricæ*. This new intrusion into the Countrey, and whereof they had made seisure in the Norican Alpes, and round about them: was, of their name, called *Senonia Noua*; afterward *Suevia*, and at this present *Suaba*, in Latine *Sub Albia*. *Strabo*, in the seauenth Booke of his Cosmographie, saith, *Senones, Sueuorum natio, partim intra, partim extra syluam Hercyniam habitant. Sueuorum quidem gens amplissima, à Rheno siquidem vsque ad Albim perueniunt.* These are his owne words.

How far they extended themselues at euward.

The plantations of the Senones and Beauuoisins.

The *Angeuins* and *Beauuoisins*, planted themselues betweene the *Senones* and the Sweuian Sea, making vse of the Country now called *Pomerania*: in memory whereof, the Inhabitants of that Prouince are (euen to this day) named *Andes*, *Andegan*, and *Anty* by *Beatus Rhenanus* vpon *Tacitus*.

The men of Languedoc.

Betweene the Saxon and the Bohemian, the people of *Languedoc* made their stay, as also about *Tolossa*; but *Cæsar* in his sixt Booke, calleth them *Tectosages*, holding them in esteeme and reputation, for their valiancie and iustice. Their Capitall Cittie among the Gaules, where they receiued birth, retaineth the name of *Tolosa Tectosagum*, the Metropolitane Sea, and second Seate of Iustice, belonging to the most Christian Kings. And *Cæsar*, when hee speaketh of them of Germanie, saith, that *Fertilissima Germaniæ loca, circum Hercyniam syluam Tectosages occuparunt, atque ibi consederunt: quæ gens ad hoc vsque tempus his se continet sedibus, summamque habet iustitiæ bellicæ laudis opinionem.* Sebastian Munster, in the third Booke of his Cosmographie writeth: That the most part of the Country where the *Tectosages* dwelt, is at this present enclosed within the Duchie of *Wittemberg*, and watered with the Riuer of *Necre*, *Necar*. *Tectosagum gens putatur* Necri *ripam occupasse, quo loco adhuc arx vetusta visitur, qua* Tecktkensibus *postea Comitibus, & Ducibus nomen dedit. Ea arx* Teckt *ab iis dicta Tectosagum Populis vulgo appellatur.*

The plantation of the Seuenois.

The *Seuenois*, dwelling in the Mountaines of *Languedoc*, peopled the Forrests and Mountaines, which are betweene *Saxonie* and the *Sweuian* Ocean, neere about *Mombourg*. The inhabitants of this extention, are to this present called *Gabali*, and *Gabalitones*, conformably to them of *Geuaudan*, the Cathedrall Church whereof is *Mimat* called in Latine *Mimatus*, and her people *Gabali*, *Gabalorum*. The title of the Bishop thereof, being *Episcopus Minatensis, Comes Gabalorum*.

The plantation of the Bretons.

The Bretons, whom *Cæsar* calleth *Armoricos Populos*, fashioned at all times for Marine negotiations; tooke for their partage the coasts of the Germaine Ocean, called Sueuian and *Suionicall* by *Tacitus*, instead of Senonicall. *Suionum hinc Ciuitates ipsa in Oceano, præter vires, armaque* Classibus *valent. Ergo iam dextro Sueuici maris latere Æstyorum gentes alluuntur, quibus ritus, habitusque Sueuerum, lingua Britannicæ proprior.*

The peopling of Russia and Prussia.

In the same steps, the men of *Rouerge*, and of *Ouercy*, whom *Cæsar* tearmed *Rutenos*, peopled *Russia* and *Prussia*, called in Latine *Rutenia* and *Prutenia*, and the people

People of the said two Prouinces called *Ruteni* and *Pruteni*.

The plantation of the Limosins.

The *Limosins* peopled in like manner, neere about the Germaine Ocean of *Limosia*, and of their name, the inhabitants there dwelling, haue beene from all times called (especially by *Tacitus*) *Lemouices*, and *Lemouij*, in stead of *Liuonienses* and *Liuonij*.

The Chartraines and where they planted.

The *Chartraines*, named by *Cæsar Carnutes*, made their dwelling neere to the Pannoniaes, peopling *Carnutia*, with the great and lesser Carnia. Their first Colonie, by change of letters, was called *Carinthia*, *Carnutia*, and by *Eusebius* in his Chronologie, vnder the yeare of our Lord one hundred and fourescore, the inhabiters there are named *Populi Carnutum*. The two other haue retained their auncient appellation of Carnia, and of Carniola, or Carniolis: but returne we now to the *Sicambres* and *Sueues*.

The plantation of the Heluetians.

On the right hand of them, betweene them and the bankes of *Rhine*, there the *Heluetians* planted themselues; at this instant called *Swizzers*, and in the Germaine language, the Confederates or Allies: who caused to be builded Seafouse, Fribourg, and Rotuill, they dwelt sometimes in the Marquisate of Bada.

Plantation of the Bourbonnois in Bohemia.

On the left hand of the same *Sueues*, the *Bourbonnois* lodged themselues, whom *Cæsar* calleth *Boios*: And they planted themselues in that Prouince of Germanie, which beareth title of the Kingdome of Bohemia, whereunto they gaue their name, confirmed euen to this present day.

What they were that planted with the Bourbonnois.

The *Berruieres* peopled coniointly with the *Bourbonnois*, the Dutchie of Bauaria, by *Cæsar* called *Noricum*, tearmed Bauaria, and *Baiocaria*, *à Boijs, & Auaris populis*, with all the extention of the Countrey, contained vnder the name of *Noricum*, *Alpes Norica*, and the inhabitants *Noriques*, called by *Titus Liuius Bourbonnois*: and these extended from the Rhine, so farre as the passage to the Citie of Trent (which maketh the seperation of Germanie, and the Lands belonging to the State of Venice) & from thence so farre as Hungaria. *Cæsar* in the first Booke of the Gaules warres, speaking of the *Bourbonnois*, writeth, that the *Heluetians*, which are the *Swizzers*, tooke as companions and associates *Boios, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, & in agrum Noricum transierant, Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptes ad se socios sibi adsciscerant*, to shew the auncient dwelling of the Gaules in Allemaigne, or Germanie.

Concerning the peopling of Hungaria and Morauia.

And as for Hungaria, it was perticularly peopled by the *Berruyers*, who gaue it the name of *Auaria*, changed afterward into that of *Hungaria*, the people being called *Auares Populi*, soone after *Hunnes* and *Hungars*. They peopled also *Morauia*, which bare their name, and afterward the *Pannoniaes*, as much to say as the lower, which is the *Hungaria*, named *Auaria* (as we haue said) honored with the title of a Kingdome. And the higher, which is the Arch-Duchie of *Austria*, named *Marche d'Austria* by *Charlemaigne*, after he had conquered it, as *Auentine* writeth in the fourth Booke of his History of *Bauaria*, more at large.

Of these troupes or Colonies of the Gaules in Germanie, *Cæsar*, speaketh in the text Booke of *Bello Gallico*, with these words worthy to be remarked. *Ac fuit ante tempus illum Galli Germanos virtute superarent, & vltro bella inferrant, ac propter hominum multitudinem, agrique inopiam Trans Rhenum Colonias mitterent. Strabo* saith as much in his fourth and seauenth Bookes of his Geographie.

And the learned *Tacitus*, in his *Germania*, deducing briefely that which *Cæsar* set downe in larger manner, saith. *Validiores olim Gallorum res fuisse, summus auctorum diuus Iulius tradit, eoque credibile est etiam Gallos in Germaniam Transgressos. Igitur inter Hercyniam syluam, Rhenumque & Moenum amnes Helueti, Vlteriora Boij, Gallica Vtraque Gens tenuere. Manet adhuc Boiemi nomen, significatque loci veterem memoriam.* The same Historian, in another passage, saith. *Leuissimus quisque Gallorum & inopia audax, dubia possessionis solum occupauere.*

And this is the reason, why the auncient Geographers comprehended vnder the name of *Celtes* and *Galates* (that is to say the Gaules) the Allemaignes and Germaines. In like manner, the *Genius* of nature *Aristotle*, who liued three score and ten yeares before *Cæsar*, in the second Booke of his *Meteores*, writeth: That the great Riuer of *Danubius* thwarted the Countrey of the *Celtes*, and yet notwithstanding, euery man knoweth, that *Dunoua* watereth the most part of Germanie.

Diodorus Siculus, who liued (well-neere) at the same time as the Geographer *Strabo* did

did, maketh mention, that *Aristotle* comprehended vnder the name of *Celtes*, Gaules of *Almaigne* and *Spaine*, long before peopled by the same Gaules. In memory whereof, it retaineth the name of *Celtiberia*, from the Riuer of *Ebro* or *Eberus*, so farre as to the Pyrenean, and the Kingdome of Portugall likewise, vpon the same subiect.

Dion anoth r, Greeke Author, in the life of *Augustus*, speaking of the Conquests which *Claudius Drusus Nero* made in Allemaigne; called the Inhabitants *Celtes*. *Drusus Tiberij frater missus contra Celtas qui trans Rhenum incolunt, captis rebus omnibus quæ facta essent obuiam, vsque ad Albim Fluuium est progressus.*

And *Vibius Sequester*, a Romane Historian, is of the same opinion, as the Authors before alleaged. For, vnder the name of *Galates*, he comprehendeth Allemaigne, wholly and intirely: in the Tract which he wrote of Riuers, Mountaines, and Nations subiected to the Romaine Empire, which he seemeth to haue borrowed from *Strabo* and *Diodorus Siculus*, who called all the extension of *Germanie*, comprized and enclosed within the Rhine, from beyond *Danubius*, and from beyond *Scythia* (which comprehend Poland, Moscouia, and Tartaria for the greater part) *Galatiam Magnam*, Great Gaule.

Two especiall obseruations concerning the Riuer Rhine.

Wee will conclude this Chapter with two particularities of the great Riuer Rhine: The first, that it hath beene receiued from all times, to serue as a borne and limit of the Gaules and Germanes. We haue one Tract of *Cæsars*, in his fourth booke of the Gaules warres, of the answere which the *Sicambres* made to him. *Populi Romani Imperium Rhenum finire.* For then the Romans had ranged the Gaules vnder their obedience, & would subiugate Allemaigne, for which they neuer had any reason. While so many people thereof fought valiantly for their freedome, the Romanes many times triumphed in paintings, of such there as they had vanquished. Moreouer, that great Riuer was whole and intire to the Gaules. And therefore the Poet *Catullus*, writing, *Ad Furium & Aurelium*, said:

Siue trans altas gradietur Alpeis,
Cæsaris visens monimenta magni,
Gallicum Rhenum, horribile & vlti
. . . . . mosque Britannos.

How the Iewes made triall of their wiues honesty

The other particularitie, whereby *Catullus* called that great Gaulish Riuer; *Rhenum Gallicum*, is; for as much as the Iewes did serue their owne turne of bitter waters, thereby to approue the pudicity or chastity of their wiues, when they suspected them to be somewhat short heel'd, as we learne from *Iosephus* and learned *Philo* the Iewe: euen so in like manner, and for the same subiect, the Gaules serued their turne with the Riuer of Rhine. For they desiring to haue an assured proofe of the fidelity of their wiues, (as if there were place to try it by a Ballance or compromise) after they were layd in childe-bed, they took the tender young Infants and exposed them (starke naked) vpon the water of that violent Riuer. If they sunke, and were drowded therein, then they iudged them to be Bastards, fit for no other fortune, excluding their wiues from their houses, and seuerely punishing them for their incontinency: for they wholly had the power of life and death ouer them, according as *Cæsar* writeth in the sixt booke of his *Bello Gallico*. On the contrary, if the Infants did swim, as borne vp vpon the Rhine, they acknowledged them to be legitimate, nourished and educated them carefully, as children of the family.

The like triall made by the Gaules.

For this cause the Greeke Poet Poet *Nonnus*, in *Dionysiacis*, to good purpose called that great Riuer of Rhine ελεγχιγάμον, *The Iudge and Reuenger of Marriage*, foyled with the wiues immodesty, *Matrimonij violati vindicem.*

Iulian the Apostata obserueth the same noate, in his Epistle *Ad Maximum*, naming the Rhine the Essayer and Touch-stone of Chastity in the Gaulish women; the Plummet for sounding, and infallible proofe of their Legitimate children; καὶ ἀμέμπτων γάμων, καὶ παίδων σωτηρίων ἀντιδωρούμενος. As much saith *Galen* (who by the saying of *Plutarch*) lockt in the schoole of Philosophy, in the Tract which hee wrote, *De Sanitate tuenda*: The Greeke Prouerbe.

Ταρσαλίοις Κελτὴν ποταμῷ ξυλίμενι Ῥῆνῳ.
Τύχια τελαστήσειν.

Audaces

Audaces rapido Celta nouæ pignora Rheno
Explorant.

And the Poet *Claudian.*

Et quos nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenus.

CHAP. II.

Of the Migrations, remouings and passages of the Sicambres, and other people out of Germanie, into Gaule, and on the hither side of the Rhine.

IN the former discourse we haue made knowne, what people of Gaule peopled the waste Germanie. The *Sambres*, who are they (as we haue already said) which dwelt vpon the Riuer of *Sabis*, rested on the Riuer of *Rhine*, and were they whom *Cæsar* called *Sicambri*. These people, renowned for valiancie among the naturall Gaules, were present in the Armie of *Arioustus*, King of the Germaines, when he would needes make head against *Cæsar*, who commenced the conquest of the Gaules. They were they, who confronted the same *Cæsar*, then by way of a brauado, he would shew himselfe to the Germaines, to succour the Inhabitants of Cologne on the Rhine: after hee had caused a Bridge to be builded, whereof hee describeth the forme and fashion, in the fourth Booke *Bello Gallico.*

The Sicambres famous for their valiancie.

A Bridge built by Cæsar neer to Cullen.

This Bridge was built very neere to *Cologne*, which declareth, that the *Sicambres*, and their neighbours the Sweues, possessed not onely the higher Germanie, but also great part of the lower: for otherwise *Cæsar* had (to small purpose) built that Bridge neere to Strasbourg, or to Spire, which are (at this day) face to face with the Sueuian Suaba. So that it behoued him necessarily, that those two neighbouring people, and which followed him alwayes in warre; should hold and possesse all the Country, which marched to the Riuer of Elb (that is *Albis*) from whence they might make their inuasions and courses, euen so farre as to the territorie of them of Cologne, which *Cæsar* calleth *Vbiens*, constrained to appeale for their aide and succour. And this is the reason why we haue formerly placed the Sambres, or Sicambres, so farre into Friez-Land, where the Riuers of Emss and of Vuezer, runne rowling and dessending into the Ocean Sea. *Sicambria (quæ nunc Vuest-phalia dicitur) inter Rhenum, Cheruscos. Bructeros, Langobardos extendebatur.*

The Sambres or Sicambres placed in Friezland.

The ancient Sicambria, afterward called West-phalia, had on the East side the Riuer of Vezer (*Visurgus*) for frontier: on the South, the Mountaines of the *Landsgrave* of *Hessen*, which *Ptolomie* calleth *Monte Orobios*: on the West, the great Riuer of Rhine; and on the North-side Friezland, Holland, Vtrecht and Transi-Issellana.

The scituation of the ancient Sicambria.

It is a matter very remarkeable, that the French hauing embraced Christianity, at the Sacring of *Clouis*, which happened in the yeare fiue hundred, and by their expulsion, the very neerest prouinces of their obedience: yet notwithstanding, they of Westphalia retained long time the Romaine Demonomanie, euen vntill such time as *Charlemaigne*, being become a peacefull Lord ouer them: he established foure Episcopall Churches, namely, Munstre, Osnabourg, Paderbrun, and Minde. And to hold vp in dutie of the Catholique Faith, the inhabitants of this Countrey (meruailously inclined to Idolatrie) he instituted a cruell Inquisition (by the modell and patterne whereof, was the holy Office in Spaine prouided) or secret kinde of Iustice; with soueraigne power to punish Traitors, and periured persons to God, taken in Idolatrie, without hearing them speake: so that (without any noise) from euening to morning, the Idolaters were seene hanged, and fastened to Trees, without distinction of Noblemen from Peazants, poore from rich, because ordenarily, the greatest persons were hanged vp, whose authority might otherwise serue for a shelter to the meaner sort, to doe ill. By which rigorous course, without forme or any figure of Iustice; the *Westphalians* were kept within the compasse of well doing. Those close concealed

At what time the French receiued the Christian faith.

Immediate seuere Iudges of life or death or as Sheriffes for execution suddenly.

concealed Iudges were called *Eschevins Scabini*, so say the Germaine Authors: and after them Pope *Pius* the second, in whose life time this bloody Inquisition came to force againe.

The old people of Allemaigne.

This ancient Sicambria, was (in following time) inhabited with diuers Nations. there were the *Teutons* of Mela, whom *Ptolomie* calleth *Teutones*, placed on the Ma ticke Sea, and these men ioyned themselues to the *Cimbrians*, at such time as th entred among the Gaules, and were ouercome by *Caius Marius* in Prouence, neere Arles Camargne plaine, called *Campus Marius*, of that great Romaine Captain These *Teutons* or *Theutons*, caused *Teutoburgum* to be built by the side of a good Forrest, famous by the buriall of the Romaines. Next followed the *Busasteres* Ptolomie, whom *Tacitus* calleth *Bructeros*, who possessed the Diocesse of Mu stre and neighbouring Countries: for there were both the great and less *Bructeres*.

Of other peoples passages to them.

Then the *Chamaues* of Tacitus, *Camani* by Ptolomie, which are they of the Cou tie of the *Mark*.

The *Augriuarians* of Ptolomie, placed on the Vezer, that is the Dutchie of *Ang* euen to this day, and the Countie of Lippe, the Diocesse of *Minde*.

The *Lombards*, who afterward were regents in Italie, euen to the time of the gre Emperour *Charlemaine*.

The *Delgumnins* of Ptolomie, and the *Dulgibins* of Tacitus: the markes of these w last people doe shew themselues at *Bardewich*, and *Dulmon*, a Towne seated in the Di ocesse of Munstre.

Sometimes called Angelsland.

The *Angles* or *Anglois*, who gaue their name to *Great Bretaigne*, otherwise call *England*, whether they passed in the yeare foure hundred forty foure.

The *Chauchos*, whom *Ptolomie* calleth *Conchos*, and the Poet *Claudian Caicos*.

. . . . . *Non indignante Caicos,*
Pascat Belga pecus.

They held the Diocesse of Breme, bordering on *Frieze-Land*, and the Riuers Vezer and of Emss, returning backe so farre as to the *Cattes* and *Cheruscques*; whi are them of *Heidelberg*, and of the Landsgraviat of *Hessen*, heretofore called *Ca Agathias* a Greeke Author, addeth to them the *Arborickes*, called *Arborichy*, peo neighbours to the Landsgraviat of Hessen, which are said to be the *Eiscsfældeu* this present.

This noate of the auncient inhabitants of *Sicambria*, will serue to vnderstand t passages of *Tacitus* in his *Germania*, and in the first Booke of his Annales. *Concti Modo per hæc Cheruſci, ſed & contermina gentes. Vnde maior Cæſari metus, qui ne bell mole vna ingrueret, Cæcinam cum quadraginta Cohortibus Romanis deſtrahendo hoſti Bructeros ad flumen Amiſiam* (that is the Emss) *mittit. Equitem Pædo Præfectus ſimul F ſiorum ducit, ipſi impoſitas manibus quatuor Legiones per lacus vexit, ſimulque pedes, equ claſsis per prædictum amnem conuenere. Chanſi, cum auxilia pollicerentur, in commilit aſcitt ſunt. Bructeros ſua vrenteis, expedita cum manu L. Stertinius miſſu Germanici fud interque cædem, & prædam reperit vnde vigeſimæ Regionis Aquilam cum Varo amiſſam. ctum inde agmen ad vltimos Bructerorum, quantumque Amiſiam, & Luppiam amnes l vaſtatum, haud procul Teutoburgenſi ſaltu in quo reliquiæ Vari, Legionumque inſepu cebantur.*

Satisfaction concerning the Sicambrians, and their original.

That which hath aboue bin said, in my iudgement, may suffice to make seene knowne, both with the eye and finger, the auncient dwelling of the *Sicambrians*, their true originall. Hereafter we shall see further, how they were transported (some part of them) into Holland vnder *Augustus*; then carried away from thence der the Empire of *Constantius* (father to *Constantine* the Great) further off into Ga namely into Picardie, and Prouinces neighbouring on the Ocean Sea; whe they returned after the death of the said *Constantius*; how those of Westph mounted higher into Allemaigne, to inhabite *Franconia* and Thuringe: from whe (some yeares after) they repassed the Rhine, to descend (in good earnest and m fully) to possesse themselues of the Gaules.

Cæsar hauing nothing aduanced his fortune, by passing the Rhine; his succes *Augu*

gustus performed some small matter more: yet his Lieutenant *Varus*, and some Le ons, remained there for gages at *Teautobourg*, as we haue ittremarked by *Tacitus*. *erius*, Lieutenant to the said *Augustus*, partly by loue, and partly by force; trea some meanes of peace with the Sweues and Sicambrians, the very neereſt to Rhine: and made alliance with their King *Maroboduus* (King of the Sicambri and Sweues, from the time of *Augustus*) by the consent of whom, the Sicambri were causd to passe the Riuer of Rhine, and planted themselues betweene armes thereof (of three, as some haue noated) where it disgorgeth it selfe the Ocean Sea. This abiding of theirs, gaue a part to the said Sicambri traiected or ferried out of Germanie into Gaule, and to the vtmost confines reof, and it is acknowledged vnder the name of Holland, called by the Ro ns *Batauis*, and the arme of Rhine, whereon it is seated; *Vahalis*, and at this present *l*; but by the Bishop of *Auuergne*, *Sidonius Apollinarus* (writing to the Emperor *iorian*) *Vachalis*.

Where Cæsar left, his succes for Augustus proceeded on, but to small aduantage.

Maroboduus, King of the Sicambrians and Sweues.

Sic ripæ duplicis tumore fracto
Detonsus Vachalim bibat Sicamber.

Of this migration, leauing the Countrey, and new Colonie of the Sicambrians, n beyond the Rhine, vpon the confines of the Gaules; the Geographer *Strabo* aketh in his fourth Booke, and elsewhere. *Dion*, in whom, for *Cantabri*, must read *Sicambri*. *Eutropius* in his Breuiarie, mounted the account of these peo very high, to the number of foure hundred thousand men. *Tacitus*, in the se nd Booke of his Annales, maketh *Tiberius* speake thus. *Sic Sicambros in deditio n acceptos, sic Sueuos, Regemque Marobodum pace obstrictum.* And *Suetonius*, in life of *Augustus*: *Sueuos, & Sicambros dedentes se in Galliam traduxit, & in proxi agris Rheni collocauit.* *Horace* in his fourth Booke, *Ode* 14.

Te cæde gaudentes Sicambri,
Compositis venerantur armis.

And these are the very same, whereof *Martiall* speaketh, who liued vnder the ell *Domitian*.

Crinibus in nodiam tortis venere Sicambri.

Expeditions by one and the same meanes, and all in one traine their other migra ns; vntill their assured dwelling in Gaule.

CHAP. III.

Other Migrations or shifting of places, of the Sicambrians into Gaule and Germanie.

Colonies of the Sicambrians transplanted into Holland.

WE haue in our precedent Chapter declared, how *Tiberius* placed and transported Colonies of the Sicambrians into Holland, betweene the arme of Rhine, where it rowleth into the Ocean by three mouthes (for indeede it hath so many, howsoeuer those Auncients tooke knowledge but of two) according to the testimonies of Poets; as *Claudian* in his first Booke *De Laudibus Stilonicis*.

Impiger a primo descendent fluminis ortu
Ad Bisidos tractus, & iuncta paludibus ora
Fulmineum perstringit iter.

Sidonius Apolinaris, in the place before alleadged.

Sic ripæ duplicis tumore fracto.

And in the Panegyricke, spoken by him to the Emperour *Anitius*.

. . . . . *Et flauis in pocula fracte Sicambris*
Rhenetumens)

The transmigration from Westphalia into Holland.

But this transmigration from Westphalia into Holland, is not to be vnder of all the *Sicambrians* in generall, but onely a part or company of them. T did not (for this present occasion) forsake their auncient *Sicambria*, which possessed vntill such time, as they made assurance for themselues in Gaule, in declining of the Romaine Empire. That bright burning Lampe of the Chu Saint *Hierome*, who had long time studied at *Treuers*, then Capitall Citie of Gaules, and who (in his owne person) had seene *Marcomir* and *Sunnon*, Kings France, Grandfathers to King *Pharamond* (for Saint *Hierome* passed out of thi into a better, in the yeare foure hundred and twenty, being aged fourescore thirteene yeares, in the holy Citie of *Bethelem*) describeth thus their dwell (such as it was in his time) in the life of the good Hermet Saint *Hilarion*, *ter Saxones, & Alemannos, gens non tam lata, (quam valida) apud Historicos Ge mania, nunc vero Francia vocatur.* For (as we shall say elsewhere) the Romaines cal

All Allemaign in generall called Germania by the Romains

Allemaigne in generall, *Germania*. But after that the inhabitants thereof leagu themselues in two troupes, as namely the *Sicambrians* vnder the name of Fren and the *Sueues*, vnder the name of Allemaignes: then Germanie were (by the Ga meanes) deuided into two lots and partages, seperated the one from the other the Riuer of *Elb*. Afterward, from thence, so farre as to the vtmost confines the Alpes, *Sclauonia* and *Carinthia*, with all that great extendure of the Countr

The higher Germanie called Allemaign

called sometimes the Higher Germanie, was called Allemaigne, by a new na of *League*, and commonly *Suaba*, or *Suenia*. And then, from hitherward *Elb*, so farre as to the shoare of the Germaine Sea, and to the swallowing of Rh into the Oceans mouth: all that circumference (acknowledged vnder the name the lower Germanie, or simply Germany, as Saint *Hierome* saith) was called Franc by generall name of the league, of all the people thereof; so that particular

The lower Germanie called French.

Westphalia was the dwelling of the *Sicambrian French*, seated betweene the *Sy* or Saxons, and the *Sueues* or High-Allemaignes.

Sidonius Apollinaris, who liued in the time of King *Merouæus*, and was sent an Ambassage to him, by the Romaine Emperours, to moue an agreement disciphereth this auncient dwelling of the French, by the Floods and B uers of *Waal*, of *Viadeer*, of the V. and of the *Elb*, writing to *Cossea* a man of a singuler good aduise, and whom hee reputed (for integritie of li capable, to settle some appointment with this generous Nation, and warl French.

Tu Vidrum, & Vachalini, Visurgim, Albim
Francorum, & penitissmas paludes
Intrares, venerantibus Sicambris,
Solis moribus inter arma cutus.

The same dwelling of theirs was assured, so saith *Agathias* the Greeke Aut (who had Souldier-like serued vnder the Emperour *Iustinian*, and liued in time of Great *Clouis*, King of France, his Sonnes) as well in Westphalia, b beyond, and on this side the Rhine, in the Duchies of *Cleues* and *Gulich*, Countie of *Zutphen*, where they extended themselues into Gaule on the one and on this side the Rhine into Thuringe, and also into Franconia, saith this Aut in his first Booke of the *Gothes* warres.

Constantius, father of Constantine the Great.

It is a case most certaine, that *Constantius*, the Father of *Constantine* the Gr was sent Lieutenant Generall into Gaule, to represse the maritime incursio which the French (setled in Holland) made on the shoares of the Oc Sea: from whence ioyntly with the *Sesnes* or Saxons their neighbours, they d bled euery way the Sea-coasts of the Romaine Empire. To checke these proc dings of theirs, he transported out of Holland the shrewdest & hardest kinde of po ple, further vp into Gaule: thus we are instructed by the Panegyricke of *Ma*

an spoken to the said *Constantius*, whom hee commended, for hauing retaken logne on the Sea; ouerthrowne *Alectus*, successour to *Carausius*; and the *nch*, who shouldered them in England, and swept the coastes of the Nor- ndie Sea, Picardie, Flanders and Holland, from the rouing and Piracies of French, whom hee had rid the Countrey of, and transported to *Beauuois niens*, to *Langres* and *Troyes*. *Per Victorias tuas, Constanti Cæsar inuicte, quid- id infrequens Ambiano, & Bellouaco, & Triquassino solo, Lingonicoque restabat*; *baro cultore reuirescit* Which hee meaneth of the French, dispersed into ese Prouinces, emptied of their auncient Inhabitants, by the spoyles of strange ations in Gaule. The same Rhethoritian, in another Panegyricke, informeth , that the same Emperour surprized some French, euen within their owne arishes, whom hee transported into Gaule, as well as those out of Holland. *quid loquar rursus intimas Franciæ nationes non ad iam his locis, quæ olim Romani in- serant; sed à proprijs ex origine sua sedibus, atque ab vltimis Barbariæ litoribus ulsas, vt in desertis Galliæ regionibus collocatæ, etiam pacem Romani Imperij cultu iuua- nt, & arma dilectu.*

But these people thus traiected into Gaule, made their stay there for no long time; r being of a generous and martiall spirit, and such as made sale of their liues ra- er for fight, then to consume them in the rust of ease and sloath: And as *Claudi-* saith, speaking of them;

Illi terribiles, quibus otia vendere semper
Mos erat, & fœda requiem mercede pacisci.

No sooner heard they the death of the Emperour *Constantius*, but they returned gaine into Holland, where they recommenced their Pyraticall kinde of life, and ought valiantly against *Constantine* the Great, and his Sonnes, as well by Sea, as firme Land, so say the *Panegyristes*, because the French Nation encreased to in- nite numbers of people. By meanes whereof, they made their extendure daily, oth beyond, and on this side the Rhine, and namely into the lower Germanie, here they peopled the Prouince, which of their name (euen to this day) is cal- d *Franconia*. *Sigibert* in his Chronicle, nameth this peopling, to be in the yeare f Grace, three hundred twenty fiue. *Franci, Sicambria egressi considere secus Rhe- um in oppidis Germaniæ* But it is a question, whether he speaketh of their Colo- ies in Franconia, or of them which they sent on the hither side of the *Rhine*, into he Duchies of *Cleues*, *Gueldres* and *Gulich*, which they held then, when they pos- essed themselues of the Gaules.

Franconia bearing name of the French.

For the Germaine Authors agree together, that in the yeare of Grace, three hun- red twenty sixe, the *Soraues* (who were they of *Thuringe*) being hurried by the *ueues*, who (by *Droit de Bien-Seance*) became possessed very suddenly, of one part f the Lands belonging to them of Bauaria, where they had planted a new Colo- ie of the *Suabes*: were constrained (to conserue the rest of their deuision) to call to eir aide and succour the Sicambrians, renowned for valiancie, vnder the name f the French; to serue as a bulwarke and strong wall betweene them and the *ueues*, who made themselues knowne by the name of Allemaignes, as wee said efore.

The generall opinion of Germaine Authors.

The departure of the French out of their Sicambria.

These French then departed out of their Sicambria, to the number of three hun- red and fourescore thousand men, with their Families; and went to plant them- elues in the Lands of the *Soraues*, where formerly had made their abode the *Tsipetes* and *Tenchteres*. *Cum inter Sarabos* (so say the Germaine Authors) *& con- nes eorum Sueuos, perpetuum esset diſsidium, commeatos ex infariori Germania Si- ambros, illos collocarunt in pago Herbipolensi, qui mediarent inter ipsos Thuringos, atque ueuos.*

The people of Wirtzbourg in Franconia.

The same Authours (for the Romaine Historians speake nothing of these migrations) expresse moreover, saying that *Francones primum habitauerunt iux- a Rhenum in inferiori Germania, in his regionibus quæ hodie Vuestphalia, & risia, appellataque est ab eis regio illa Sicambria, sicut, & Sicambri sunt appellati.*

sunt appellati. Contigit autem sub Anno Domini Trecentesimo Vigesimo Secundo, [illegible] ringi & Sueni multa haberent dissidia, & praelia continua quæ propter Franci a[illegible] gio vocati, quasi murus constituti fuerunt inter eos, atque Suenos. Thus you see [illegible] they say in this case.

In this place to set downe the Topohraphies of thir plantation, and Colonie, [illegible] the Paralels of them, which are renowned to this day, with those beside [illegible] the French wan passage: the narration (in my iudgement) would be too tedious some, and it may be discerned in *Munster*, who tooke it to his taske. Wee [illegible] onely say, that this *Franconia* is gently watered with the Riuers of *Moein*, of [illegible] *berne*, where *Neccar* in part, and *Saltz* make a supplement: which serueth [illegible] this discourse, because that the French, those I meane which dwelt in the very [illegible] part of *Franconia*, and of *Westphalia*, were named by the Historians of Rome, *Franci Antiuarij*, and *Ampsiuarij*, and those people which bordered on the Riuer [illegible] (called *Salts* by the Allemaignes) were by the same Romaines named *Franci Salici*, and by abridgement *Salij*, of the verbe *Salire*, that is to say, *Saulter*, to be agile, quicke and nimble of foote, to leape and mount well, a quality most notably requisite, for such as dwell in watrie and marshie places, except they helpe themselues with Stilts. So that it differeth nothing from the purpose, that those people of the French, who (at all times) inhabited neere to the Rhine, and within the marishes, which the Riuer procureth by her ouer-flowings, in the auncient *Cambria*, as well beyond, as on this side the great Riuer, with them that are planted there on the *Sala* (whereof we now speake) should not for their agility (as iustly they might haue bin and were) named and called *Salians* by the Romaines; who were alwayes wont (and the same is common to other Nations) to obserue each one particularly, by his proper habitude and custome. For example. Such of the French, as were dwellers on the great course of the Riuer, were called *Nageurs*, Swimmers, and they of the Marshes *Saulteurs*, Leapers, and so of other Nations. Peculiarities familiarly obserued by *Sidonius Apollinaris*.

Franci Salici, a name giuen them by the Romaines.

A notable Riuer in Germanie.

> . . . . . *Tibi vincitur illis,*
> *Cursu Herulus, Chamus iaculis, Francusque natatu,*
> *Sauro mato clypeo, Salius pede, falce Gelonus.*

So that it was a nicke name giuen to the French, in regard of their naturall disposition and dwelling, as (yet to this day) their enemies tearme them *French Toades*. From whence grew the Fabe, that their auncient Kings carried such creatures in their Armes. And this shall serue to shew, that from the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who serued Souldierlike in Gaule, vnder the impious *Iulian* the Apostate; the French were surnamed *Salians* (*Quos consuetudo Salios, vocitauit*, as serueth this Author) saying, that (by custome in one word) the French were surnamed commonly, *Salians*.

Foure noated Riuers.

Betweene the Cities of *Bamberge*, and of *Nuremberge*, is a great Mountaine, couered with high Pines, from whence it tooke the name of *Fichtelbourge*: in it is the sourse of foure Riuers, commended in Germanie, to wit, the *Moein*, the *Nab*, the *Egra* and the *Sala*.

Seine, Queene of the Riuers in France.

This last Riuer tooke name of the Bourgade (neighbour to the place of her nomination, which (is called Sala) as (without paragon) the Queene of Riuers in France, that is *Seine*, tooke name of a small Village, named Saint *Seine*: aboue which, in a Wood on the left hand, this Riuer hath her spring. Saint *Seine* is an Abbey of the order of Saint *Benedict*, about fiue miles from *Dijon*, betweene *Chanceaux* and the Vale of *Suzon*, a most dangerous passage.

Strabo touching in his passage along (concerning the Riuers of Germanie) particularly that of *Sala*, saith. *Bisurgis & Luppias amnes in vnum ad Amasiam (Ems) calleth it Amisiam) deferuntur Bructeros minores* (as we haue already [illegible] the *Bructeres*, otherwise tearmed *Busatteres*, were diuided in twaine, that [illegible] er and the lower, these last neere to Friex-land, and the other neere [illegible] and of *Bronsvicke*) *labens. Est & Salas fluuius, inter quem, & Rhenum* [illegible]

Drusus Germanicus belligeraret, domitis hostibus, Victor opetyit. These are the Riuers of the *Vesere*, of *Lepp*, *Ems*, and *Saltz*. *Ems* and the *Vesere* doe ouerthwart Westphalia, the first dwelling of the French.

By others it is called Moenis.

The *Saltz* hath his course from East to West, and engrossing eight other small [illegible] uolets; maketh it selfe nauigable, vntill it looseth it selfe in the *Moein*, called in [illegible] tine *Mogonus* and *Moganus*. It giueth name to the Hamlet or the Hamlet to it. much I dare say, that like as the *Seille* which laueth and sprinkleth the great [illegible] wne and Citie of *Mentz*, was heretofore called *Salia* by *Fortunatus*, Bishop of [illegible] ctiers, in his third Booke, and twelfth Poem, in regard of some Well or Spring Salt, which was neere vnto it, as he saith in his seauenth Booke;

Seu qui Mettim adit de sale nomen habens.

Euen in the same manner, the Village and the Riuer of Sala in Franconia, tooke t appellation *A Sale*: because that neere vnto them there were (in former times) pe Wels, the water whereof was apt to make Salt in great abundance, and but very few of fresh water. As we see the same exercised at Salins, in the Countie of [illegible] urgongne; and at *Salies*, in the *Pyrenian* Mountaines, in the Countie of Co[illegible] nges, the Diocesse of *Couzerans*, from whence streameth the Riuer of Salat, which [illegible] h watereth and crosseth Saint *Girons*, passeth vnder the Bridge of Saint *Lize* (in [illegible] tine *Lizerius*) the Cathedrall of *Cozerans*, betweene *Prat* and *Taurignan*, to *Salies*: called of a Well, the water whereof maketh Salt, and so to Saint *Iulian*, vnder [illegible] hich the Salt runneth, and looseth it selfe in the Riuer of *Garonne*, at a place [illegible] ed *La Fourche*.

Garumna, parting Celtica from Aquitania.

The Noble Historian *Tacitus* telleth vs, that the *Hermondures* and *Cheruscques*, [illegible] *Marcomans* and the *Catters*, made strong warre among themselues, which of them [illegible] ould be Maister of that place, called *Sala*, in regard of the *Salines*, or Salt-pits, hereof (yet to this day) Springs and Wels are to be seene, neere to the Towne of [illegible] ala, the aspiration added, and pronounced for an S. on the Riuer of *Sal* (which [illegible] lleth in the *Moein*, in the Towne of *Gemonde*, after it hath made the separati[illegible] of *Misnia*, and of the Landsgrauate of Thuringe) Sometime there had bin [illegible] o Villages, whereof the old ruines are yet to be seene, the one called the higher [illegible] la, and the other the lower. The higher was remarkeable, by a Castle of plea[illegible] re, builded by *Charlemaine*, for the recreation of Hunting at *Antonne*. It is sweet[illegible] seated on the *Moein*, and so thence on the *Sal*, and to this Castle hee would send [illegible] e Ambassabours comming from strange Princes, and tooke his delight to hunt [illegible] ere, in the months of September and October, and thence forward to the night Saint Martin in winter. At the comming from this Castle was a goodly Forrest [illegible] led *Saltz Forte*, a limbe of the Forrest of *Bouchone* (*Bichona Sylua*) branching [illegible] om the *Hercynia*: commodities which made this place very pleasing to the Emrours *Charlemaine*, and *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*.

A Citie by Albis in Germanie.

King Charlemaigne delighted greatly in Hunting.

CHAP. IV.

At what time the Sicambrians and Sweues, tooke the names of French and Germaines.



HE People most potent, and renowned of all other in Allemaigne or Germanie, and which euermore (without ceasing) warred with the Romaines; were alwayes the Sicambrians, and the Sweues: these latter dwelling in the higher Allemaigne (as we haue formerly said) and the other in the lower. *Sueui in superiori, & Sicambri in inferiori Germania sedes suas habuere*, the one being deuided from the other by the Riuer of *Albis*. The Romaines were a very long time, without any knowledge of the people beyond this *Albis*, yea, and not so much as seeing them, or their glittering Armes; this Riuer hauing

The Sicambrians and Sweues continuall warriours with the Romaines.

ing ſerued as a Borne, and Imitation of their conqueſts. *Strabo* in the fourth Booke of his Geographie, ſaith *Sicambri fluuiali regioni* (of Rhine) *toti ſuperemineut.* [illegible] *Germani alteri, quos Sueuos appellant.* And in his ſeauenth Booke, ſpeaking of the Sicambrians, thus. *Cogniti ſunt qui ab exitu Rheni, vſque ad Albim initium capiunt, quibus Celeberrimi ſunt Sicambri.*

The Sueuus and Sicambrians ioyned enemies to the Romanes.

So that the Romaine Hiſtorians neuer ſpeake of the *Sueues*, but when the *Sicambrians* marched along with them in Field, to keepe them company. Both of them were conioyned enemies to the Romaines, banded againſt theſe people in hate, onely to oppreſſe, & bring them into ſeruitude & ſlauery. And this neere neighbouring of theirs, cauſed them to be wholly conforme in their faſhions & manner of life, as also of a mutuall will, to conſerue their libertie, and expulſe the Romaines out of the plenteous Gaules, and to become Maſters of them themſelues, as *Tacitus* telleth in his Germania. *Eadem cauſa ſemper Germanis transcendendi in Gallias, mutandæ ſedis amor, vt relictis paludibus* (this he meaneth of the Sicambrians) *& ſolitudinibus ſuis* (of the Sueues) *ſoecundiſsimum Galliarum ſolum poſſiderent.*

The Sicambrians were obſerued by their yellow haire, treſſed and knit in cordons like to Loue knots, with Ribbands. So ſaith *Martiall.*

Crinibus in nodum tortis venere Sicambri

And Claudian.

Ante ducem noſtrum Flauam ſparſere Sicambri
Caſariem.

Againe, in the third Panegyrick of *Stilico*, he ſaith.

Hæc Alemannorum ſpoliis Auſtralibus, Illo,
Ditior exuuis Illinc Flauente Sicambri
Caſaria.

Then *Sidonius Apollinaris* ſaith.

Et Flauis in pocula fractæ Sicambris
Rhenè cumens.

The Sueues, as the ſame *Tacitus* ſaith. *Inſigne gentis obliquare crinem, nodoque ſubſtringere.*

Lucane in the ſecond of his Pharſalia.

Fundit ab extremo Flauos Aquilone Sueuos
Albis.

And *Claudian* in his firſt Booke

Arduus, & Flauis ſignabat iura Sueuis.

The true Originall of the Gaules.

Which declareth and confirmeth that which we haue formerly ſaid. That their People were the Originall of the Gaules, becauſe their butt and aime wholly tended, to regaine *That Gaule, from whence they departed.* For it is a conſtant caſe, by the teſtimonie of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that the Gaules had their Beards and haire yellow like Gold, treſſed and knit in cordons. The Latine Poet in his eight Æneid, ſpeaking of the Gaules Colonie paſſing into Italie (and which raſed Rome) vnder the reigne of *Ambigat*, ſaith.

Galli per dumos aderant, acieſque tenebant
Defenſi tenebris, & dono noctis opacæ,
Aurea Caſaries ollis, & Aurea veſtis.

A Captaine without a beard, called Inueſtis.

Caſaries, that is, their long lockes of haire, and yellow as Gold, and Beard of the ſame colour, which he called *Veſtem Auream*: becauſe that a Captaine without a Beard, was tearmed *Inueſtis.* So doth *Seruius Atheneus* tell vs, in his *Dypnoſophiſtes De Cæna Celtarum*: And *Claudian* in his ſecond Booke *In Eutropium.*

. . . . . *Tum Flaua repexo,*
Gallia crine ferox, reuinctaque crine decoro.

But come we to the names of Allemaignes and French.

Concerning the name of French.

Some there are, who would deriue the name of French from theſe Latine words (for excellence) *Ferias, Ferocitas*, & from thence *Feroces*, & *Franci* of *Ferocitate Dicti*, grounding (at aduenture) on the paſſage of *Strabo*, purpoſely reported before of the Gauls Colonies planted in Germanie. *Nationem Gallicam imitantes, & Feritatis abundantia,*

animis, proceritate corporum, & colore Flauo. And in truth *Ammianus Marcellinus* deſcribeth the man and woman Gaule, to be white of fleſh, with broad ſhoulders, goldyellow of haire, being ſo tall and ſtrong of body and ſtature, that the Romans ſtanding by them, ſeemed as if they were but dwarfes and Pigmeies, falling (by chance) out of their ſleeues. Hereupon it was, that the Gauliſh women made a mockery of them, as dwarfes and diminitiues of men; ſo ſaith *Cæſar* in his *Bello Gallico.* But aboue all, they were of a dreadfull countenance, and affrighting, as *Marcellinus* ſaith in his fourth booke. So that the *Sicambrians*, of the Gaules Originall, are called by *Horace* (deſcribing the praiſes of the Emperour *Auguſtus*) *Feroces*, and fleſhed with bloud, *cæde gaudentes.*

Te non pauentis funera Galliæ,
Direque tellus audit Iberiæ.
Te Cæde gaudentes Sicambri
Compoſitis venerantur armis.

And in the ſecond *Ode* of the ſame booke, to the ſonne of *Marcus Antonius.*

Cancines maiore, Poëta, plectro
Cæſarem, quandoque trahet Feroces
Per ſacrum cliuum, merita decorus
Fronde Sicambros.

Iſidore, with all his Etymologies, would haue much adoe, to draw by the lockes, *Francois*, out of this Latine word *Ferocia.*

For, concerning the remitting the Tribute by the Emperour *Valentinian*; that is but a meere gullery, and a groſſe ignorance; as wee ſhall ſee heereafter, by the date of time.

The honorable Antiquity of the French.

Other Authors, *of more ſublime and elenated ingenuity*, deſeruing immortall praiſe for their great Reading, teach vs; that the French haue beene famous (by that name) from the time of the Oratour *Cicero*, that is to ſay, from the times of *Cæſar* and *Auguſtus*, all along. For theſe braue ſpirits ſay, that *Cicero* ſpeaking of them in the ſixth Epiſtle of his fourteenth booke, *Ad Titum Pomponium Atticum*, and calling them by their name: *Balbus meliora de Gallia X X I. dicliteras habebat. Germanos illaſque Nationes re audita de Cæſare, Legatos miſiſſe ad Aurelium, qui eſt Præpoſitus ab Hircio, ſe, quod imperatum eſſet facturos.* All went well hitherto, and heere followeth the purſuit of diuers found Huntſmen, in queſt of finding forth the Frenche.

A falſe ground to build vpõ.

Redeo ad Theos, Beſſos, Sueuos, Francones, hos tu exiſtimas confidere ſe illa habituros antibus nobis, in quibus plus virtutis putarunt, quam experti ſunt? Thus you ſee the text depraued, wherewith ſo boldly they vnder-prop their ſaying: but behold now the native and corrected impreſſion.

Strabo abuſed by theſe Allegations.

Redeo ad te. Beſſos, Scæuas, Francones, &c. Thoſe Doctors ſhould haue taught vs, by one and the ſame meanes, in what place of the Geography of *Strabo*, wee ſhall finde the notes of theſe new-ly named people, *Theos, Beſſos.* Who perceiueth not by the reading of that long ſixth Epiſtle, that this clauſe *Redeo ad te, Beſſos, Scæuas, &c.* is not meant apparantly of the people of Allemaigne? For, tell me (I pray you) to what purpoſe did he cut off the thred of his diſcourſe, by thruſting in that of the vnhappy funerals to the Romanes, of *Iulius Cæſar* reduced into aſhes? Leaue theſe idle ſtuffs to ſuch as loue them, and come we to the truth.

This is verified by good and probable Authors.

The *Sicambrians* hauing (by their valiancie) wonne the aduantage, and the command ouer the reſt of the people in the lower Germanie, as they had it from the time of *Strabo*; made among one part of them, a *Hanſe*, that is to ſay, a League & Societie: for this opinion, I ſubſcribe to the deceaſed M. *Iohn du Tillet*, whoſe memorialls are the markes of his painefull labours, and who might well ſay (without enuy) for his great and diligent examinations in ſuch caſes

Auia Pieridum peragro loca, nullius ante
Trita ſolo.

The interpretation of the word *Aleman*

We may learne by him, that the people of the higher Germany, called themſelues *Alemans*: the word *Aleman* being compoſed of two dictions Germanicall, as name of *Al*, which ſignifieth *All*, & *Man, Homo, Almand.* All-man, or elſe *Allerley-Mans*, men of diuers Countries, vnited and ioyned together; as *Agathias* writeth, in his firſt booke

booke of the *Gothes* Hiſtory. And ſo ſaith *Du Tillet*, that the people of the higher Ger-
manie, were called *Alemans*, of the name of the League which they made together.
In imitation of the *Sicambrians* of the lower Germany, who were the firſt that league
themſelues with other of their Germane neighbours, to maintaine together their li-
berty againſt the Romanes.

They tooke a new name to auoyd al enuy among them.

Theſe people being thus leagued with one accord, (to take away all enuy among
them) took a new name, and (by a good preſage) anſwerable to the deſire which they
had to make themſelues famous by Armes, and to make the people free, *Free People*,
without bending vnder the yoake of the Romane Empire: called themſelues hereupon *Frein-Hanſen*, which ſignifieth in the Germane tongue, *The Company of Free-Men*, and of theſe two words (by *Syneresis*) it is made but one, *Franſen*, which ſignifieth *More then a Man*. So ſaith *Iornandes*, in his *Gothiſh* hiſtory, that the Gothes called their chiefe Leaders in Warre *Hanſen*, *Demy gods*, and *more then Men*: as if they would ſay; that their Captaine, he alone had the ſtrength of all a Company.

The company of Freemen.

The like was obſerued in certaine *Aleman* townes, aſſembled into one Company,
to Trafficke and Merchandiſe with one common purſe: they had many exemptions,
by name of the *Harſe Teutonique*, that is to ſay, *The Company of Alemans*.

Hanſe Teutonique, the company of Alemans.

Of this name of *Hanſe*, there remaineth the memory of certaine rights, granted by
the firſt Kings, to the Prouoſts of Merchants, and Sheriffes of *Paris*. I haue ſeene
and read the Charter of the *Hanſe*, granted to the Inhabitants of *Mante*, by *Philip Auguſtus*, concerning his rights of the *Hanſe*, and this is the Tenure.

A Patent granted to the *Hanſe* of Mante

Philippus, Dei gratia Francorum Rex. Notum ſit omnibus, quod homines noſtri de Meduanta habent ab antiquo omnes Hanſas Meduntæ, tam de Villa, quam de aqua, ſuas proprias, pro ſeruitio quos nobis faciunt, & anteceſſoribus noſtris fecerunt, ſcilicet quod adiuuant ad onerandum, & exonerandum noſtras machinas infra Meduntam, & quod reddunt Propræfecturæ quinque denarios de ſingulis Hanſis aquæ. Pro hoc vero ſeruitio & redditu, & quia eas ab antiquo habuerunt, concedimus in perpetuum vniuerſitati hominum noſtrorum Meduntæ omnes Hanſas tam aquæ, quam Villæ, ſicut hactenus habuerunt. Quod vt firmum ſit, &c. Actum Anno Domini Milleſimo Ducenteſimo Primo, Regni Vneſimo Tertio.

The names of Alemans and French vnknowne to *Cæſar*, *Strabo*, *Tacitus* and other Romane writers.

Theſe names of *Aleman*, and *Frenche*, hauing ſucceeded in place of them of Germanes, Sweues, and Sicambrians; were vnknowne to *Cæſar* and *Strabo*, who liued (well-neere) at one time; to *Tacitus* and other Hiſtorians and Geographers, vntill the declining of the Romane Empire. Thus you ſee the times, when the names of *Franc* and *Alemans*, began to be obſerued by the Romane Hiſtorians.

When the Sicambrians were knowne by the name of Frenche.

The Sicambrians appeared vnder the name of French, during the Empire of *Galien*, ſonne and Aſſociate to *Valerian*, who going to warre with the Perſians; was betrai-
by his Lieutenant Generall *Macrinus*, to the Perſian King *Sapores*, who lockt him
in a Cadge, where he ended his life. This ſurpriſall happened in the eight yeere
their Empire, and in the yeere of Grace 262.

Sixe Emperors aduancing their ſelues together.

The yeere after, to wit, two hundred ſixty and three, that *Macrinus*, or *Macri-
nus* cauſed himſelfe to be proclaimed Emperour by the Souldiers of his Army. The
like did *Aureolus* in Sclauonia: *Valens* in Achaia: *Piſo* in Theſſalia: *Æmilianus* in
Ægypt, and *Poſthumus* in Gaule. In briefe, at this time was the reigne and Empire
of the thirty Tyrants.

Againſt this *Poſthumus*, *Galien* ſent an Armie, thruſt into rout and confuſion by
the French, waged by the ſaid *Poſthumus*; who by their aide and fauour, maintained
himſelfe (ſome time) in his vſurpation. For from thence forward, the French were re-
nowned in valiancie, aboue all the people of Germany.

Galiens vanity and folly notwithſtanding his foyle.

Now although *Galien* was vanquiſhed, yet neuertheleſſe, at the ſolemnity of the
tenth yeere of his Empire, which was in the yeere of Grace, two hundred ſixtie and
foure, he made a muſter and appearance of the Romane people in diuers troupes, all
conſiſting and compoſed of two hundred men, whom he had clothed after the fashion
of French, Perſians, Gothes, Polonians, and other ſtrange Nations, euen as if he had
come home with victory, whereto he neuer enclined, or made any proffer.

And for this he was mocked by the Romanes, who very well knew the contrarie:
ſaith the Romane Hiſtorian *Trebellius Pollio*, in the life of the ſaid Emperour.
Thus came the *Sicambrians* to be knowne, vnder the name of French, the yeere of
ce, two hundred ſixty three, and by the ſame name are noted by *Trebellius Pollio*,
firſt of the Romane Hiſtorians, that maketh mention of the French.
Which cauſed this to be written by the learned *Genebrard*, Archbiſhop of *Aix* in
uence, in the third booke of his Chronologie. *Gallienus aduerſus Poſthumum, qui
am annis iam Imperatorium nomen obtinebat in Gallia, exercitum miſit, & Fran-
Rheni accolas ſibi adiunxit: Atque hic primum Francorum mentio in Romanis
is.*

There was a later ſpeaking of the Alemanes, and onely in the time of the Emperor
bus, who reigned in the yeere of Grace, two hundred foureſcore and fiue, and o-
threw ſome troupes of the Almaines, by the report of *Vopiſcus*, whereupon *Gene-
rd* ſpake ſo. *Hic primum Alemannorum fit mentio.*

So that it remaineth conſtant, by the teſtimony of the alleadged Authors before,
d by that of *Aſinius Quadratus*, a Romane Hiſtorian, alleadged by *Agathias*, in the
t booke of the Gothes warres: *That thoſe people of the higher Germany, were called
mans, and them of the lower, French; who ſomtimes extended their dwelling vnto the
thes of Rhine. For the Germanes dwelt (in former times) between the Riuers of Mœin,
he Rhine, and of Danubie, ioyning to the Martian Forreſt, Countries and Prouin-
which at this preſent the Sweues poſſeſſe, comprehended vnder the name of Ale-
ines.*

So we may plainely perceiue, that the French obtained not this name by payment
imaginary tolles or tribute, whereat they were tallied by the Emperour *Valentinian*
firſt (as ignorants haue written) becauſe that Emperour began not to reigne vntill
out the yeere of Grace, 364. And the French were knowne for Warriours, euen
the Romane Hiſtorians themſelues, an hundred yeeres before, to wit, from the
re two hundred ſixty three. Let vs now ſuruay ſummarily, their Military exploits
d actions, ſince they tooke the name of the French Company, vntill the Conqueſt
the Gaules.

Confeſion of the Antiquity of the French by the Roman writers.

CHAP. V.

The Military Exploits and Actions of the Frenche, before the Conqueſt of the Gaules.

THE French, vnder the name of *Sicambrians*, did daily make warre vpon the Romanes, & on the Gauliſh Townes of their obedience, being on this ſide of the Rhine, and namely on them of Cologne, from the time of *Cæſar*, as wee haue already ſaid. So that to ſuccour the Inhabitants of that City, the Romane Emperours were conſtrained, continually to keepe ſtrong Garriſons there, according to the report of *Tacitus*. *Vlpius Traianus* cauſed it to be peopled with olde Legions of Romans, to keep it in Guard, & hinder their courſes.

Strong Garriſons ſtill kept by the Romãs, to ſuccor Cullen.

Vlpius inde venit. quo formidata Sicambris
Agrippina fuit.

So ſaith *Sidonius Apollinaris*, in the Panegyricke ſpoken to the Emperour *Auitus* Father in law.

But it proued a quite contrary caſe, after that they were aſſembled vnder the name *French*; for then they made themſelues knowne (for valiancie) to the Romanes, both by Sea and Land. In the time of the Emperour *Claudius*, ſucceſſour to *Galien*, they made themſelues famous for actions on the Sea, aboue all other Nations, becauſe for making ſhippes and ſayling, they were the onely Maiſters, according as it is reſerued by *Sidonius Apollinarius*, in the ſame Panegyricke.

Prorumpit

Prorumpit Francus, cecidit cito secta bipenni,
Hercynia in lintres, & Rhenum texuit alno.

The French absolute Lords and Masters of the Seas.

In the time (I say) of that Emperor *Claudius*, they began to vndertake a formal course of trafficke and merchandizing, of Roauing and Pyrating on the Sea, wherof they became absolute Lords and Maisters. But not contented with those booties gotten on the West Ocean of Germanie, and on the Coasts of Flanders, where the Romanes (though not safely enough) conserued their Empire and domination: the French performed as much on the Seas of Gaule and Spaine, so much their stomacks boyled to feede on Warre.

Notable Piracies committed by the French on the Seas.

In the yeere of Grace, two hundred threescore and ten, they beeing associated with the *Saxons*, or *Sesnes* their neighbours, aduentured to run and proceed on in their fortune: so that sweeping the Seas before them, they pillaged all the Romane Vessells, found on the Ocean. So saith a Panegyrist of that time. *Franci prater ceteros truces, quorum vis, cum ad bellum effecuescet, vltra ipsum Oceanum æstu furoris euecti, Hispaniarum oras etiam armis infestas habebant.*

Eight yeeres after, to wit, in the yeere of Grace, two hundred threescore and eighteene, the second of the Empire of *Probus*, they robbed againe all the coasts of Gaule, afflicted by land with the courses and rauages of *Chrocus*, and of his Alemans, barred vp beyond the *Necar* and *Elb*, as it is written by *Vopiscus*.

In the yeere of Grace, two hundred fourescore and two, the sixt of the reigne of the same Emperour *Probus*, his Lieutenants tooke some French Foists, separated by a stormy Tempest from their consorts. The Romaines tied the French men to a chaine, to make a Triumph of them through the Cities of Asia. Those men, howbeit very few in number, hauing met (by chance) with some Barkes of passage; got possession of them, and made themselues so dreaded by their great boldnesse, that at the very fame of their valour, and expertnesse in occasions on the Seas; the whole Nauall Armie of the Emperour *Probus*, durst not meddle with them, but (constrainedly) fled to a place of retreat, sauing themselues by the helpe of a prosperous winde. So that this meere handfull of the French, hauing gotten roome and liberty, coursed at ease and their owne pleasure, the Sea called *Mare Maiore*, robbed all the Isles and Coasts of Greece, from Asia and Affrica, without meeting any person that dared to oppose them.

The name of the French much feared in many places.

Saragossa that famous and rich City ransacked by the French.

They tooke landing in the Isle of Sicilie, sacked Saragossa, a famous and most wealthy Cittie, the very chiefe of all the Isle; disburdened the Ships Anchored in the Ports and Hauens thereof, and (laden with vnspeakeable booties) returned homeward free, and passed the strait of *Hercules*, at this day called *Gibraltar*, recouering the great Ocean Sea, and their Marishes of Holland, and of *Westphalia*.

We learned this admirable aduenture, from the Greeke Historian *Sozimus*, and from the Panegyrist *Eumenius*, in his declamation spoken to the Emperour *Maximinianus*. *Recursabat in animos illa sub diuo Probo, & Paucorum ex Francis captiuorum incredibilis audacia, & indigna felicitas, qui à Ponto correptis manibus Graciana Asiamque populati, & impune plerisque Lybiæ litoribus appulsi, ipsas postremo nauibus quondam Victoriis nobiles reperant Syracusas, & immenso itinere peruecti, Oceanum, qua aperuit, intrauerunt, atque ita euentu temeritatis ostenderant, nihil esse clausum piratis desperationi, quo nauigijs pateret accessus.* And after that time, the French continued their Sea robberies, in as ample manner as before.

Carausius lieutenant to *Diocletian*, sent against the French.

So that in the yeare of Grace, two hundred fourescore and fiue, the Frenche and Saxons, vnited and knit in amity together; againe appeared on the Ocean Sea, making themselues Masters thereof. In such manner, as to impeach their courses, *Diocletian*, in the second yeere of his Empire, was forced to prepare and rigge forth a Fleet, the conduct whereof he gaue to one of his Lieutenants, named *Carausius*, who found that he met with his match; in plaine tearmes, men that neither feared him nor his forces; because they forbare not to robbe still on the Coasts of Flanders, Picardy, Normandie and Bretaigne, then called the coasts of *Armorica*, and the *Morini*. *Carausius* was constrained to fall to agreement with them, and feeding them fat with money tooke them for his good friends and neighbours.

Afterward he made good proofe of their valour in Warre, and employed them in his

seruice so profitably, that making them his breast-plate of defence, hee proclaimed himselfe Emperor, got the possession of Great Bretaigne (afterward called *England*) and of the coast *Armorica* of the *Gaules*; as wee vnderstand out of *Eutropius*, in the ninth booke of his *Breuiarie*: *Post has etiam tempora Carausius, cùm apud Bononiam* (Bullen on the Sea) *per tractum Belgicæ, & Armoricæ mare pacandum accepisset, quod Franci, & Saxones infestabant, à Maximiniano iussus occidi, purpuram sumpsit, & Britannias occupauit.*

Diocletian, more furiously incensed against them, then before, tooke for his Sonne in Law *Constantius*, first of that name, to whom he gaue the charge and gouernement of the Gaules, in the yeere of Grace, two hundred fourescore and twelue, or thirteene. This man, as we haue elsewhere said) pared the nailes of the French, as well of them that tooke part with *Carausius*, and of his Successor (who maintained himselfe for the space of ten yeeres in the vsurpation, onely by the French Armes) as those of *Holland*, with whom were ioyned some of the *Sesnes*; which by the said *Constantius* were thence dislodged, and placed elsewhere: as saith the sixt Panegyricke. *Purgauit Batauiam hoste aduecto.* He transplanted out of *Holland* diuers troupes of the French (who were most factious, and could best skill of Nauall affaires) into the firme Land of the Gaules, Picardy, Champaigne, and Bourgongne, and others into fields desert of inhabitants, seated on the lands of *Treuers* and *Tourney*, by command from the Emperour *Maximianus*, proclaimed *Cæsar* by *Diocletian*. *Tuo? Maximiniane Augustæ natu, Neruiorum, & Treuirorum arma iacentia lætus postliminio restitutus, & receptus in leges Francus excoluit. Vt loca deserta quæ ipsi deprædando vastauerat, culta redderet seruiendo.*

Constantius sent by *Diocletian* against the French.

The same *Panegyrist*, declaring the praises of the two *Cæsars*, saith: *O Kalenda Martia, sicut olim armorum voluentium, ita nunc æternorum auspices Imperatorum. Partho vltra Tigrim redacto. Dacia restituta: porrectis vsque ad Danubij caput Germaniæ, Rætiaque limitibus, destinata Batauiæ Britanniæque vindicta, &c.* So that the French remained quiet and safe enough, and without remouing by Sea; vntill the death of *Constantius*, which happened in England, in the yeere of Grace, three hundred and sixe.

As for the French on firme land, they trauersed and passed the Rhine, to forrage the *Gaules*. *Aurelian* (who was Emperour soone after) hauing his Garrison at *Maguntia*, with the troupes whereof he was Tribune: came and tooke tardie seuen hundred of their troupe, detaining three hundred of them prisoners.

Afterward, when he was possessed of the Empire, he preuailed once more against another band of them, whom he made Captiues, and led them Captiues to Rome, to serue as an Ornament in his Triumphe, with a song in his owne praise; the burden whereof (after Ballad manner) declared: *That he had ouercome a thousand French, a thousand Sarmates or Polonians, and other Nations, easie to be vanquished in painting.* So it is deliuered by *Flauius Vopiscus*, in the life of *Aurelianus*.

Aurelian ouercunning for the French, in taking troups of them.

But so soone as the winde brought tidings to the French of the death of *Constantius*; they presently entred into the Field. But his sonne *Constantine* (who was surnamed *The Great*, for his glorious actions, & namely for embracing the Catholique Religion, forsaking Idolatry) he hindred them from their bad courses. He marched himselfe in person against them with a puissant Armie, quickly laying a great part of them to sleep, and tooke prisoner *Ascaricke*, King of the Frenche, with *Ragazehis* brother, whom he sent to Rome, where they serued as pastime to the people, and for food to Lyons in their sports. The Panegyricke of *Nazarius* informeth vs, that this discomfiture of the French, was at the beginning & entring into the Empire, of *Constantine* the Great; who pardoned the rest, tooke their chiefe Commanders to his seruice; and (among other) a valiant Captaine, named *Bonicius*, who performed incredible exploits against *Licinius*; so saith *Ammianus Marcellinus*, in his fifteenth booke.

Constantine the great marched in person against the French with his Armie.

Vnder the same *Constantine*, the French went againe into the Field, hauing vnderstood that hee was busied against *Maxentius*, who beeing vanquished, they returned into their Marishes, where they did keepe themselues quiet, vntill after his death.

Constantius, the eldest sonne of *Constantine*, being possessed in the Empire of the East

Conſtantius, eldeſt ſonne of *Conſtantine* the great.

Eaſt; they fell againe to their former diſorder, and repaſſed the Rhine to forradge the Gaules. *Conſtantius* had little reaſon to meddle with them, for the ſixt Panegyricke declareth, that this Nation made themſelues vnconquerable. *Francum truculentum ſola carne ferina diſtentum, qui vitam pro victus ſui vilitate contemnat, Quanta Mala ſe Superare vel capere?* And which was worſe, the French, expelled the Country by his grandfather *Conſtantius*, into Champaigne and Bourgongne; returned into Holland, at the ſame time as other French (their companions) hauing ſet free the Rhine, came likewiſe to neaſtle themſelues in Holland: *Diuerſa Francorum Gentes Batauiam inualerunt*: So ſaith the Panegyriſt. To hold them in (as it were with a bridle) *Conſtantius* was glad to ſend his Nephew *Iulian* the Apoſtata, to gouerne the Gaules, in the name of his Brother the Emperor *Valens*: to whoſe lot and partage Gaule was falne, by the death of *Conſtantine* the Great his father.

Valens vexed them with mighty warres, during the peace of two yeeres; namely, the fourth and fifth of his Empire: yet neuertheleſſe with diuerſitie of euents, one while ſpeeding well, and then againe worſe, according to the lotte of Armes, and fortune inceſtably following warre. So that loſing any longer patience with them; of enemies they became his friends, making peace and alliance with them, in the yeare of his ſecond Conſulſhip, and of Grace, three hundred forty two. Hee choſe a good number of the moſt valiant among them, wherewith hee filled his Romane Legions, and they ſerued him beneficially; for he left the French *Saliens*, enioying the poſſeſſion of *Toxiandria*. Theſe men were they whom *Iulian* the Apoſtata much turmoyled (by the ſaying of *Ammianus*) contrary to the intention notwithſtanding of his Vnkles *Conſtantius* and *Valens*, who ſo long as they liued, kept peace with the French, of whom the Court of *Conſtantius* was filled: for the ſame *Ammianus Marcellinus*, ſpeaking of them in the forenamed fifteenth booke, hath theſe words: *Francorum ea tempeſtate multitudo in Palatio florebat*, and that was for their faithfulneſſe. For he obſerueth a Tribune of the Emperors horſemen, named *Laniogazus*, a French-man by originall, who was ſo loyall and faithfull to *Conſtans*, as hee onely followed and aſſiſted him to the death, which hee alſo hindered in one *Silvianus*, vpon his rebelling againſt *Conſtantius*, who would haue done it in the yeare of Grace, three hundred fiftie and fiue.

The proceedings of the Emperor *Valens* with the French.

Concerning *Toxiandria*, otherwiſe named *Taxandria*, it was a great village, planted in the midſt of the Mariſhes or Fennes, to make all approches thereto the more difficult, chiefely to them of *Tongres* in the ſecond Germanie, betweene the confines of *Liege* and *Brabant*, whereof there may be yet ſeene the ancient trackes at the place called *Teſſendorlo*, vpon the confines of the ſaid *Liege*, very neere to *Dieſt* in Brabant: from which places, the Saints *Lambert* and *Hubert* expelled Idolatry, and planted there the true Religion of *Ieſus Chriſt*.

The chiefe & ſtrogeſt dwelling of the French, was in Fenny grounds.

Theſe Emperors hauing then long time kept peace with the French, it was broken by a courſe and rauage, which the Alemans made vpon Gaule, all along the Rhine, where they poſſeſſed themſelues of forty townes, in the yeare of Grace, three hundred fiftie and foure; in regard that the French were ſuſpected to haue their hand in the buſineſſe, as it is written by *Zozimus* and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, in his ſeauen and twentieth booke. *Gallicanos tractus Franci, & Saxones ijſdem confines quo quiſque erumpere potuit terra vel mari, prædis acerbis, incendijſque, & captiuorum funeribus violabant.* For theſe were the Galleries and ordinary walkes into the Gaules, becauſe ouer and beſide *Taxandria*, they had *Holland* on this ſide the Rhine, and other lands elſwhere: So ſaith the Panegyriſt of thoſe times. *Multa Francorum millia Batauiam, aliaque loca cis Rhenum innaſerant.* And another *Terram Batauiam, vicinaque loca a diuerſis Francorum Regibus occupatam.*

The peace of the French broken by the Alemans.

Cullen take by the French frō the Romans.

Moſt certaine is it, that in the yeare three hundred fifty and fiue, the French ſurprized from the Romanes the City of Cologne, ſeated on the Riuer of Rhine, which they pilled, ſacked, and ruined. So that to make head againſt them, the Emperor *Conſtantius* proclaimed as *Cæſar* his Nephew *Iulian* (ſurnamed the Apoſtata) and ſent him to command ouer the Gaules (as wee haue already ſaid) in the yeere of Grace three hundred fiftie and ſixe. At which time the Apoſtata being aſſiſted with a potent Armie, recouered from the French the City of Cologne, and made Peace, to the honor of

Cullen recouered from the French.

of the Empire) with the Kings of France, who had ſought to compaſſe it by their Ambaſſadors: ſo ſaith the Panegyriſt, and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, in his 27. booke.

But in the yeere following, three hundred fifty ſeuen, the French perceiuing the Apoſtata gone vp farre in warre againſt the Alemanes, who had robbed theſe Townes vpon the Rhine; once more they made a rode forth into Gaule, to get what firſt ſhold come to their fingring. The Apoſtata returning with victory from the Alemanes, came with a fierce and hot aſſault vpon theſe boote-halers, whereof hee hewed a great number in peeces, and beſieged others 3. moneths together in a Caſtle, whereof they got poſſeſſion on the *Meuze*, compelling them (by famine) to yeeld themſelues to his diſcretion. In the Sommer following, 358. hauing once more ſet his Army on foote to goe againſt the Alemans, he tooke his way through the Countrey of Tongres, and ſo ſtrongly beſieged *Toxandria*; as the French Inhabitants were inforced to yeelde themſelues vpon compoſition. So that they left the Gaules and Toxandria, and repaſſed beyond the Rhine, into their ancient dwelling: ſo it is affirmed by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, in his 17. booke. *Quibus paratis petit primos omnium Francos, eos videlicet quos conſuetudo Salios vocitauit, auſos olim in Romano ſolo apud Toxandriam locum, habitacula ſibi figere prælicenter.*

Another aduenture of the French to their own detrimēt

Toxandria beſieged by the Apoſtata.

There is a plaine appearance, that this peace was of no long continuance, & that the French (lickeriſhly longing after ſuch rich booties, as they had caried out of abounding Gaule) could not reſtraine themſelues from paſſing thither. For the ſame *Ammianus Marcellinus* writeth in his 20. book, that the Apoſtata, hauing alwaies a flea in his eare, and a wary watchfull eye, ſurprized a troope of French, aſſembled at a feaſt & mariage of one of their Princes; carried away the Bride, made hauock of the company, mangling diuers of them in peeces. *A Towne taken, and the Triumph Straw: A blow for a blow, with ſmall aduantage.* For the French quickly made way to reuenge themſelues, putting the people to fire and ſword, all along the coaſt of Rhine, to the no meane coſt and harme of the Townes and Villages belonging to the Romane Empire; and in contempt of *Iulian* the Apoſtata, who in the yeere 360. (like a perfidious Traytor to God and his Prince, though anſwerable to the nature of hereticall Apoſtats) hauing cauſed himſelfe to be proclaimed Emperor by his Armies; would, for his laſt peece of ſeruice (as the ſame *Marcellinus* telleth vs in his 20. booke) worke wonders, & giue ſuch a gird to the French, as ſhould remaine for remembrance of him.

Reuenge wrought by the French in deſpight of *Iulian* the Apoſtata.

Hee muſtred then together all his Armie, paſſed freely and ſilently the Riuer of Rhine, and ſurprized the French in the ſtrength of their Mariſhes, where (vntill that time) the Romanes durſt neuer aduenture to paſſe. The firſt they met withall, were the *Antuarians*, meaning thoſe French both before, and at the paſſage of Rhine, all of them being put to the ſword. Among whom were *Theomir* (ſon of *Richimer*, Kings of France) for ſo the Weſtphalians and their round engirting neighbors called them, and *Aſcila* his mother. Hee had a great number of priſoners beſide, with very rich ſpoyles, and compelled the reſt to beg their peace of him, which he granted to them: Prouided, that they ſhould afterward refraine from forraging, and committing any more robberies in Gaule. S. *Gregory* of Tours toucheth this ſharpe checke of theirs, in his ſecond booke and ninth chapter of the hiſtory of France. *In Conſulatibus legimus Theodomerem Regem Francorum, Filium Richemeris quondam Regis, & Aſcilam matrem eius gladio interfectas.* This ſtormy tempeſt kept the French to ſtrict tearms of peace, during the reignes of the Apoſtata, and alſo of *Iouinian* as *Valentinian*, firſt of that name, with whom *Macrianus* King of the Alemans made a treaty of peace, in the 11. yeere of his Empire, and of Grace 374. This *Macrianus* couetouſly affecting to forradge France, was taken and ſlaine by *Mellobaudes*, King of the French, as we learne by *Ammianus Marcellinus* in his 30. booke. It is apparant that the Alemanes and French entred into contention, about the bounds and limits of their lands, making ſhrewd attempts one vpon the other, as ordinarily it hapneth betweene two potent Princes.

The ſilent ſtealth of *Iulian* on the French in their Fennes.

Macrianus K. of the Almans

For, vpon the ſame ſubiect, the Saxons iſſued forth the bounds of the Ocean Sea, vexing the French for paſſage through their lands, to fall violently vpon the Gaules. But the French (as *Paulus Oroſius* the Spaniard informeth vs, and *Iohn* the Deacon of *Aquileia*) welcommed them with ſuch ſharpe entertainment, as they were not willing to meddle any more with them.

And from thence (as it seemeth) sprang the sourse and originall of the immortall wars between the French, Almanes, and Saxons, who (in the end) met with their matches, and were ouer mastered by the French.

Now, the Emperour *Valentinian* the first, being dead in the yeere of Grace 375. *Gracian* his sonne acknowledging the good offices, done by the King of the Frenche, *Mellobas* or *Mellobaudes*, to his father and him: created him Great Master of his Pallace, and Consull with him, in the yeare 377. And in the yeere after, hee made him Lieutenant Generall on the coast of the Rhine, to hinder the courses and passages of the Alemans, who in the yeere three hundred threescore and eighteene, and the third of his Empire, came with a puissant Army to besiege the Towne of *Strasbourg*. *Mellobandes* and the French fought with the Alemans so successiuely, that thirty thousand of them lay slaine in the field. And from that time forward, *Gratian* held the French in such account, only for their valiancie; as he filled his Regiments with them, whereof likewise he gaue the conduct and command to French Captaines, saith *Marcellinus* in his thirtieth booke, with further addition of their braue behauiour.

The great aduancement of *Mellobaudes* by the Emperor *Gratian*.

This King *Mellobaudes*, (by some tearmed *Merobaudes*) soone after brought into credit with *Gratian*, a valiant French Prince, named *Ricomer*, to whom hee gaue command of the Armie, which he sent as succour into Thrace (spoyled by the Gothes) to his Vncle the Emperour *Valens*. But the courses of the Aleman Nations, by their robberies in Gaule, imported such remedie, that *Gratian* sent *Ricomer* to guard the frontiers of the Rhine, in quality of a Duke, as much to say, as Lieutenant Generall of the Empire, in absence of the King *Mellobaudes*, which as wee haue already said, vanquished neere to *Strasbourg*, those whom *Ammianus Marcellinus*, in his 31. book, calleth *Barbaros Letienses*, making vp the body of an Armie of threescore & ten thousand men. This ouerthrow happened in the yeere of Grace 378. And the *Bourdelois* Poet *Ausonius* (sometime schoolemaster to the Emperor *Gratian*, who had made him Consull with *Olybrius*, in the yeere 379.) testifieth (speaking of his said Consulship) that this great Victory ensued from the French and Sweues, ioyned together in fauour of the Romanes.

Ricomer, a valiant French Prince, in fauour with *Gratian*.

Iane, veni, nouus annecueni, renouate veni Sol.
Hostibus adomitis, qua Francia mixta Sueuis
Certat ad obsequium, Latys vt militet armis.

And afterward hee sheweth vs, what enemies waged Armes against the Romane Empire, all issuing forth of Pannonia and from Scythia, to wit, the Gothes, who were possessed of Thrace, the Hunnes, Quades, Gepides, Alanes, Vandales and other.

Enemies against the Roman Empire.

Quà vaga Sauromates sibi iunxerat agmina Chunis,
Quaque Getis socijs Histrum insultabat Alanis, &c.

Heere may be obserued, whether the French tooke their Origine, or no, from the *Pannoniaes*, or the Marshie *Mœotides*, to come make their flanking and abiding on the Rhine. And S. *Gregory* of Tours, noting the Descent of all these strange Nations, and the Countries of their Originall and birth; would haue done as much of the French Nation, if they had beene any other (originally) but Gaules or Germanes.

Something wee learne from the Bishop of Auuergne *Sidonius Apollinaris*, and an admirable doctrine in mine opinion: for in the Panegyricke of the Emperour *Maiorian*, he remarketh the flood of those strange Nations.

Basterna, Sueuus,
Pannonius, Neurus, Chunus, Geta, Dacus, Alanus,
Bellonothus, Rugus, Burgundio, Vesus, Alites,
Bisalta, Ostrogothus, Procuites, Sarmata, Moschus.

He maketh no mention at all of the French, whom hee calleth otherwise *Sicambrians*; for hee knew them to be of the Gaulish Nation, inhabiting long time on the banks of Rhine, and that they were knowne by the name of French, almost two hundred yeeres before *Maiorian*.

The prouident respect of the Emperor *Gratian*, for the Empire of the West.

Now the Emperor *Gratian*, presaging that this swelling deluge of Nations before named, would make a confusion in the Romane Empire, and labour to vnplume the Eagle: hee named for *Cæsar* and Successour to the Empire of the West *Theodosius* the Great, in the said yeere of Grace, three hundred threescore and nineteene, sending him

him against the Gothes into Thrace. And *Gratian* himselfe went into Gaule, to impeach the Alemans from robbing and spoyling, where hee vanquished them in a ranged battell. So writeth *Sozimenus*, in his 7. booke, and 4. chapter: *Sub hoc tempus Gratianus Alemannis Galatas Occidentales* (that is to say in Gaule, at this present named France) *adhuc infestantibus, bellum intulit, illosque deuicit.*

Gratian hauing proclaimed *Theodosius Cæsar*; he gaue him the conduct of the succor which he led to the Emperor *Valens* his Vncle, who was burned aliue in a Cottage of straw by the Gothes, that then made hauocke and spoyle in the East, and against whom (as the Greeke Authors affirme) *Theodosius* obtained a famous Victory, the same yeere as he was proclaimed *Cæsar*; or, according to other, in the yeere 380. *Claudian* speaking of this Victorie, in the fourth Consulship of *Honorius*, sonne to the said *Theodosius* the Great, wrote thus:

Nulla relicta foret Romani nominis vmbra,
Ni pater ille tuis iamiam ruitura subisset
Pondera, turbatamque ratem, certaque lenasset
Naufragium commune manu.

And the honor thereof was attributed vnto the French troupes, conducted by two braue Captaines of the same Nation, named *Bautonius* and *Arbogastes*, whom the Emperor *Gratian* gaue as Councellers and handy-helpes to *Theodosius*, and he made very profitable vse of their worthy seruice, in all his great and glorious enterprises.

In the yeere of Grace, 383. *Mellobaudes* or *Merobaudes*, King of the French, being made Consull the second time, (with *Flauius Saturninus*) the Gouernour of Great Bretaigne, called *Flauius Clemens Maximus*; proclaimed himselfe Emperour, and passed into Gaule, to establish the seat of his vsurped Empire, in the City of Treuers, which *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth *Clarum domicilium Principum*, because that in those times, it was the capitall City of the Gaules, &c.

Flauius Clemens Maximus Gouernor of great Britain.

This *Maximus* was a Natiue of great Bretaigne, issued of very meane birth, but what wanted that way, he made good appearance of in Armes; and the better to couer his vsurpation, hee tearmed himselfe a neere kinsman to *Theodosius* the Great, by the Empresse Saint *Helena*, mother to the Emperour *Constantine the Great*. So thus vnder this couerture, he got possession of the Gaules and Spaine, where (as some said) he was borne. *Gratian* offended to be thus betrayed by his Romane Souldiers in Gaule, in Spaine, and in Great Bretaigne; called to his ayde the *Hunnes* and the *Alanes*, to send them against *Maximus*, to fight with him both by Sea and Land. Whereat the Souldiers of his Guard waxing angry, the good Emperor *Gratian* was miserably murdered in the City of Lyons, and by his owne people, who forsooke him, leaning to one of the Captaines, named *Andragathius*, belonging to the Tyrant *Maximus*. S. *Hierome* bemoaned the violent death of this good Prince, hapning in August the said yere, 383. *Gratianus ab exercitu suo proditus, & ab obuijs vrbibus non receptus, ludibrio hostis fuit, cruentæque manus vestigia parietes tui, Lugdune testantur.* So speaketh that great light of the Church in his third Epistle. In briefe, *Maximus* so proceeded on, that the same yere he procured to be slaine *Mellobaudes* King of the French, then Consull, and making his abode at Maguntia, with a valiant Captaine, called *Balion*, Lieutenant of the Horse to *Gratian* in Gaule, which Prouince they manfully defended against *Maximus*. The same yeere also, *Theodosius* proclaimed his eldest sonne *Arcadius*, *Augustus*, and his successor in the Empire of the East, albeit he was then but 8. yeeres of age.

The good Emperor *Gratian* cruelly murdered by his owne followers.

Mellobaudes King of the French slaine.

But why in the passage of this discourse, do I not set down one especiall note, wonderfully remarkable for Princes, in a chiefe quality belonging to them? It is reported by *Socrates*, in his fift booke and tenth chapter, and by *Sozimen*, in his 7. booke and 12 chapter. *Theodosius* hauing written to the Emperor *Gratian* some few months before his death, earnestly intreated him to send him a man of singular Piety, only to instruct his children. Seeking for a man of that worthy quality, and hauing found him, he sent him to Constantinople: for *Gratian* had entreated Pope *Damasus* (a man famous for sanctity of life, both before, & long after his death) to send him a Decon of the Roman Church, named *Arsenius*, a man of signall probitie, & great learning. When this man was come to Constantinople, *Theodosius* deliuered his sonnes into his charge, saying:

An excellent President for Princes.

The care of Princes for their childrens education.

That thence forward, hee should be the father of his sonnes, much rather then himselfe. Euen as if hee would haue said, that such as informe the soules of young children in vertue, are their true fathers indeed, and more then they that gaue them but their bodies. *Theodosius* going (on a day) into the Schoole where his sonnes were taught, saw *Arsenius* standing, reading the lesson to the Emperour *Arcadius* sitting in his Throne. He grew offended against *Arsenius*, and reproued him, as not knowing what belonged to his charge; in standing, and suffering his Scholler to sit. *Arsenius* excused himselfe by the honour which was due to the Emperour, before whom it was vnbeseeming for him to sit, and the Prince to stand. Immediately *Theodosius* took the Empires notes of honour from his Sonne *Arcadius*, and caused him to descend from his Throne, wherein hee seated *Arsenius*, and held his sonne bare-headed before his Master, speaking this notable sentence: *My Sonnes shall be worthy to succeed in the Empire, at such time as they haue knowledge and learning, maried and coupled with Grace & Piety.* He was none of those ignorant Princes, which held a sottish beliefe; *That if one can read, it is sufficient for a Gentleman.*

This age affords few such Fathers and Masters.

The death of *Grattian*, and of his most confident friends, hapning in such manner as you haue heard, and by the trecheries of the Tyrant *Maximus*; *Theodosius* sent the two worthiest Captaines which he had, *Bautonius* and *Arbogastes*, to succour the Emperor *Valentinian* the yonger, who remained ordinarily at Millaine; against whom *Maximus* was desirous to marche, to possesse himselfe of Italie. This was in the yeere 385. the tenth of the Empire of *Valentinian*, and seuenth of *Theodosius*: at which time, the Emperor *Arcadius*, & this *Bautonius* the French Captaine were chosen Consuls at Rome, the one residing at Constantinople, and the other in the City of Millaine. This is the same *Bautonius*, of whom S *Augustine* made the Panegyricke, before the Emperor *Valentinian*, as such time as he came to Millaine; for so himselfe testifieth, writing against *Petilian* in his third booke, and 25 chapter: *Cum ego Mediolanum ante Bautonem Consulem venerim, eique Consuli Kalendis Ianuarijs laudem in tanto conuentu consectanti hominum pro mea tunc Rhetorica professione recitarem, &c.*

Bautonius and *Arbogastes* chief Captains to *Theodosius*.

As for the other Captaine *Arbogastes*, hee was sent with his French troupes into Gaule, to fight with *Maximus*; who to frustrate the intention of *Arbogastes*, and vtterly disappoint his endeuour: in the same yeere made a counterfeit peace with the Emperours, *Theodosius* and *Valentinian*. So that in the yeere 386, *Euodius* (made *Prefect* of the Gaules *Praetorum*, by this Tyrant *Maximus*) was created Consull with *Honorius*, the second sonne of *Theodosius*, being then in the Cradle, and aged fourteene moneths onely; for so we are instructed by *Claudian*,

> ..... *Inter cunabula Consul*
> *Prouehcris signans posito modo nomine Fastos,*
> *Donaturque tibi qui te produxerat annus.*

The politicke craft of the tyrant *Maximus*.

Genebaudes the sonne to *Mellobaudes* made king of the French.

By the death of *Mellobaudes*, his sonne *Genebaudes* was chosen King of the French, who continued the fidelity of his father with the Emperour *Valentinian* the younger: neere about whom was the Consull *Bautonius* (Count of the Domestickes, that is to say, Great Master of the household to *Valentinian*) who by intelligence with the new King of the French, secretly made offers to the Tyrant *Maximus*, to assist him with a great number of the French, to possesse him of Italy, according as hee had resolued. But the cunning plot was disclosed, and found to be a politique deuise to intrap *Maximus*, and rid the world of him; as we learne by that great Doctor of the Church Saint *Ambrose*, Ambassador from *Valentinian* to the said *Maximus*, in his 25. Epistle, sent from Treuers to Millaine, to the said Emperor *Valentinian*, in the yere 387. and wherein he defendeth the practises wrought by the said *Bautonius* against *Maximus*. *Et quid mirum si hoc Bauto fecisset Trans-Rhenanus genere, cum tuministeris Imperio Romano Barbarorum auxilia, & turma transfumitanas?* *Maximus* pursuing his purpose, passed into Italie, and ransacked the Cities thereof. *Valentinian* and his mother *Iustina*, saued themselues by Sea, fledde to Thessalonica, to the Emperour *Theodosius*, who to furnish himselfe with the charges and expences, fitte and sufficient to re-seat them in their dominion: made a new imposition to be leuied on them of Antioch, that had rebelled against him, and of a popular outrage, which admitteth no matter of fence or reason (and then which can be no worse) they beate downe the Statues of Brasse of the Emperor

Emperour *Theodosius*, and of his first wife *Aelia Flaccilla*, mother to the Emperours *Arcadius* and *Honorius*.

This folly was sharpely reuenged on the Authors thereof, and to the intire ruine of the Citie: but by the mercy and clemencie of *Theodosius*, who committed this vengeance wholly to God. So that at the tidings of pardō, the Inhabitants of the city, as men risen againe from death to life, testified the notes of their ioy, by venerable antiquity; as *Sozomen* obserueth, in his seuenth booke and three and twenty chapter. *Forum Coronantes, Lucernas Accendentes, Et Lectos ante Officinas Componentes, & tanquam nuper Ciuitate nata, festum agentes.* In more yonger daies, and before the furious league, in *An.*1588. in *Paris* hath beene seene on festiuall daies and recreations; tables set for suppers at the doores of houses and shops in the streets, with generall reioysing: but ciuill warres caused the whole losse of those ancient customes.

The fruits of Popular furye & disturbance

Maximus being possessed of Italie, and knowing that *Theodosius* leuied a powerfull Armie to meet and fight with him, prouided his best meanes for entertaining him, gathering (from all parts) his troops of men, and made *Andragathius* his Admirall, to keepe the *Ionian* Sea in his power, if *Theodosius* should make his passage that way.

prouision of the tyrant *Maximus*, to encounter *Theodosius*.

The Colonell of his Armie by land, was his brother *Marcellinus*, to guard the bywaies and passages of Italie. And he himselfe with his troups (euermore victorious) tooke the guardance of the *Pannoniaes*, to winne way before *Theodosius*, if hee should take that course, as indeed he did.

Maximus foyled by the Emperor *Theodosius*.

Theodosius finding *Maximus* encamped before *Siscia* (a City of the higher *Pannonia*) gaue him battell, and won the victory. *Maximus* fled for safety into *Aquileia* but being brauely pursued, the City was so narrowly besieged, that his owne Souldiers (reuolting from him) seized on his person, and cloathing him in Imperiall garments, fast bound and manacled, deliuered him to the Emperour *Theodosius*. Hee being a milde and mercifull Prince, would haue beene gracious to him: but the Souldiers of his guard plucking him violently from him, cut off his head, the sixt of the Calends of September, three hundred fourescore and eight, then being Consuls the Emperour *Theodosius* the second time, with *Cynegius*.

Maximus the tyrants death.

We learne the end and Catastrophe of this Tyrant *Maximus* from *Sozimus*, in the fourth booke of his histories, and from the Panegyricke of *Latinus Pacatus*. *Rapitur ab oculis Theodosij Maximus, et nequid licere posset Clementiæ, inter innumeras manus fertur ad mortem.* *Theodosius* likewise ouerthrew the Armie by land, conducted by *Marcellinus* and the Admirall *Andragathius*, hauing receiued tidings of his Masters death; first of all leapt headlong into the Sea, and so was drowned.

Victors death last sonne to *Maximus*.

These newes being reported in Gaule, the Count *Arbogastes* (by pollicie) tooke out of his mothers armes the last sonne of *Maximus*, named *Victor*, whom he put to death. And thus (in a moment) Gaule, Spaine, England, Italie, and all that belonged to the Empire of the West, was deliuered vp to the lawfull Emperor, and that of the East sufficiently secured. So saith the same *Latinus Pacatus*, a most famous Oratour, and a Gaule by nation, in his Panegyricke spoken to the Emperour *Theodosius*, in the Citie of Rome on the day of his Triumph, in the moneth of August, 389. But returne we to the French.

Sigibert writeth in his Chronicle, vnder the yere 387. that the French put to flight and to the edge of the sword, neere to the City of Treuers, *Quintinus* and *Heraclius* Lieutenants to *Maximus* the Tyrant, during the time of his absence in *Italie* (so hee would haue it to be credited) because some other report this ouerthrow to be in the yeere fourescore and eight, in stead of seauen. *Franci Quintinum & Heraclium Romanorum Duces cum omnibus penè suis iuxta Treuerim delent.*

This passage being cut ouer-short, is interpreted more at large by S. *Gregory Victor*, Archbishop of Tours, in the second booke of his History of France, and the ninth chapter, according to the testimony of *Sulpitius Alexander*, and in these words.

The Tyrant *Maximus*, hauing lost all hope of enioying any longer his authority, shut vp himselfe in the City of *Aquileia*, like a man bereft of all spirit and iudgement.

In the time of this Emperor, the French vnder the conduct of their Dukes (*Claudian* calleth them Kings) *Genebaudes*, *Marcomir*, and *Sunno*, enfranchising the bounds & limits of their ancient dwelling, impetuously (first of all) inuaded Germany, where after

after they had slaine an vnspeakeable number of the Inhabitants, and pilled the richest townes thereof, they gaue shrewd affrightments to the City of Cologne. The newes of their proceeding being reported in the Cities of Treuers, *Nannius* & *Quintinus*, both Commanders of the Horsemen, and vnto whom the Tyrant *Maximus* had comitted the charge of his son, as also the gouernment of the *Gaules*, hauing brought their forces into the field, came to succour Cologne. But the French laden with most rich spoyles, passed backe againe ouer the Riuer of Rhine, hauing left good troupes of theirs on the Romanes lands, resolued to pursue their former purpose, and to make hauocke of all. But it fell out otherwise, for the Romanes followed them in the Rere, and hauing ouertaken them in the *Charboniere* Forrest, gaue them the check-mate, and slew a great number of them.

The French slay also the trade Germanike *Nannius* and *Quintinus*, Commanders of the Gaules.

A great number of French slaine by the Romanes.

The Romane animated and exalted with courage, sate in Councell & deliberation, whether it were better to crosse the Rhine or no, and by that means enter into France. *Nannius* being a wise and politique Captaine, could not allow of this aduise, alleadging for his reasons, that there were euident appearances of the Frenchmens fore-cast, hauing all prepared to welcome the Romanes, of whom (vndoubtedly) they would winne the aduantage, in regard they were the stronger on their owne grounds.

Quintinus quite contrary in opinion to *Nannius*.

This opinion was nothing pleasing to his companion *Quintinus*, and them that followed his directions: so that *Nannius* hauing made his retreat to Maguntia, *Quintinus* with his Armie went and encamped neere to the Castle of *Nuz*, and afterward passed the Rhine. At the second lodging vpon this passage, *Quintinus* and his followers found themselues to be among great Villages, and numbers of Cottages or Coats, yet without any inhabitants. For the French, appearing to be fearfull of the Romans, and meerely driuen to flye before them, intended to intrap them; and therefore (purposely) left those Cottages and Townes as forsaken, withdrawing themselues into the thickest parts of their Woods, the great wayes and passages whereof, they had bound taft with the spreading branches of Trees, knitting them intricately on strong knots one within another.

A notable deuise of the French before the Romanes.

The Romanes in a fond and foolish reuenge, set all the Villages and Cottages on fire (onely in meere despight, because they found no victualls in them) in signe of Trophies and Triumphes of straw, remaining all that night with their Armour on, and yet not discouering any person.

A silly reuenge taken by the Romanes.

About the breake of day, conducted by their Colonell *Quintinus*, they entered beating into the Woods, where they continued hem'd in till noone day, misled in all the pathes and passages, with infinite toyle and trauell they found meanes to free themselues of the combined branches, but yet met with worse fortune: and as the vulger Prouerbe is, fell out of a feauer, into a disease of farre greater danger. For at issuing forth of the Forrest, they came into the wide open fieldes, which were all Marishes, both at the entrance, and all sides about them.

The Romanes vnfortunate in their proceedings.

The French had purposely hidden themselues within the woods, onely to draw the Romanes into those myery fields of trembling earth, and full of Bogges and Quagmires, wherein the Romanes were much pestered. Now appeared the French-men on the tops of trees, which serued them as so many exalted Towers and Turrets, for discouery of an enemy before he draw neere. At them they let flie their darts and arrowes embalmed in venemous hearbs (for it was a custome of the Frenche, to impoyson their darts and arrowes, as it is noted in the *Salique Law*, the first Paragraphe, at the Title *de Vulnerbus*) with Lead. And like vnto a thicke darke Clowd, which breaketh into hayle and stormie raine; euen so it chanced to the poore Romanes; or rather much worse; for such as the arrowes fell vpon, the skinne being but pierced, it festered immediately, and they died rauing by violence of the poyson. By this meanes the French (who knew the best and warrantable grounds) assembled in great numbers, engirting the Romane Armie, and made a most terrible slaughter of them.

The French shed poysoned darts wherewith they greatly annoyed the Romanes.

The miserable perplexities of the Romanes.

The first rankes of Horse were ingulfed in the Bogges, both men and horses, and the beasts that carried charge and luggage, were so deepely swallowed in the myres, as no meanes serued for drawing them out, as likewise the rest that followed their steps were subiect to the like successe.

As for the foot Souldiers, they being more agile and light then them on horseback, although

although they were bemudded and foyled with the filth of the moist fields: yet (with some difficultie) they got thence, and escaped into those Woods, from whence they issued in the morning, there hiding themselues among the bushes till night came (which hath neither shame nor feare) and so were sheltered by fauour thereof, in the best manner they could deuise, or as was possible for them.

The whole Armie being thus confused, and the rankes in disorder for to saue themselues: it need not be demanded, if the French (being in safetie) were well reuenged for the Charboniere Forrest, and no great good market of their enemies. For *Heraclius*, maister of the Campe *du Regiment*, and of the Legion of the *Iouiaians*, and all them that had command in the Armie, remained there dead; and such as saued themselues from this dayes misfortunes, were but a very small number. You heare what is anouched by *Sulpitius Alexander*, in the third Booke of his Historie.

In the fourth booke he speaketh of the death of *Victor*, the last or yongest sonne of the Tyran *Maximus*. At that time, in the place and sted of *Nannius* and *Quintinus*, were subrogated two other Captaines, named *Carietto* and *Surius*, who (with their Armies) encamped themselues face to face with France, vpon the confines of Germanie. It must be vnderstood of the first Germanie, which is on this side the Rhine, and not of Allemaigne, beyond the *Elb*, nor of that Germanie afterward called *Franconia*.

Three distinctions concerning Germanie.

He saith afterward, that as the French intruded themselues againe into Germanie (doubtlesse the first) they brought away thence an vnspeakeable bootie. And *Arbogastes*, being vnwilling to endure these brauadoes, which was nothing else but *Griefe to the vanquished*, and *Dishonor to the Romaines*: councelled his Emperour *Valentinian* the yonger, to chastise the French, and make them pay the penaltie of their passed transgressions, except they would readily deliuer, and in all haste what they had stolne and carried away before, from the Lands of the Romaines, and surrender vp into his hands, the principall Commanders of their people, who had massacred the Captaines and Romaine Legions, to take vengeance on them, for the broken and violated peace. This last course vpon the limits of Rhine, made by the French, in the time of those new Captaines *Carietto* and *Surius*, chanced in the yeare of Grace, three hundred fourescore and nine, and the ouerthrow of *Quintinus*, and the Legions established for guarding the Rhines frontiers, was in three hundred fourescore and eight, and not fourescore and seauen, as *Sigibert* obserued.

The Councell giuen by Arbogastes to the Emperour Valentinian.

To know the reason, why *Arbogastes*, a Frenchman by Nation (so saith *Auentinus*, the brother of *Marcomir* and *Sunon*, sonnes to *Genebaudes*) incited the Emperour *Valentinian* his Maister, against the French: these are close and concealed Letters from vs, and what soeuer thereof can be said, meere guesses and coniectures, wherewith a faithfull Historian ought not to be charged. Very certaine it is, that *Valentinian* neuer would haue the French for his enemies, who had loyally confirmed the Romaine alliance, vnder their Kings *Mellobaudes* and *Genebaudes*, so lately deceased, and to whom succeeded his sonnes *Marcomir* and *Sunon*, not crediting the councell of *Arbogastes*. Onely he came to visite the Gaules, and the frontiers of Rhine, whereon he had speech and conference with the Kings *Marcomir* and *Sunon*, who renewed the auncient alliance, giuing hostages on both sides for assurance thereof, sworne on either part in the yeare three hundred fourescore and ten.

Guesses are no good grounds to build on for any true Historian.

Arbogastes offended at this alliance, made without his aduise and counsaile; thenceforward studied reuenge, as well against the Emperour his Maister, as them of his owne Nation. So that (notwithstanding the peace, and the hostages giuen) he resolued to make warre vpon the French. And so soone as *Valentinian* (who had spent the winter in the Citie of *Treuers*, after the peace made) had taken his way towards *Lyonnois*, in the yeare of Grace three hundred fourescore and eleuen, and that the Traytour *Arbogastus* had shut vp his Maister in the Citie of *Vienna*, vnder sure and sufficient guard: he came with a part of his Romaine Legions to *Cologne*, euen in the hart of winter, to the end he might suddenly rush into France. Imagining

Arbogastes conspired against his Maister the Emperour, and his owne Nation of the French.

ning this to be the apteſt ſeaſon, to giue a gird to the French, and taking them at vnawares, he ſhould ſpeede the better, by ranſacking their Townes, and conuerting them into aſhes: all meanes of ſuccour being denied them, for ſeeking ſhelter in their woods, in regard there were no leaues or branches (as then) on the Trees.

The Bructeres were firſt let vpon by Arbogaſtes.

Hauing then aſſembled the body of his Armie, preſently he paſſed the Rhine, and for his firſt attempt, aduentured on the *Bructeres* (as being neereſt to the Rhine, reducing into cinders the Towne of Ætia, as then peopled with the *Chamanes*; making ſpoyle and waſte all thereabout, without meeting any perſon to offer reſiſtance. Onely he ſaw appeare the King of the French, *Marcomir*, with his French *Antuarians*, and ſome number of the *Chattes*, (we haue formerly noated the moderne names of all thoſe Nations) on the top of the Mountaines; but ſo farre off, as he could not receiue any harme by them. This is that which *Sulpitius Alexander* deliuereth in the fourth Booke of his Hiſtorie.

S. Paulinus, in the life of that great ſplendour of the Church *S. Ambroſe*, Biſhop of Millaine, purſueth the reſt of this paſſage, concerning the Count *Arbogaſtes*, ſaying. At the beginning *Arbogaſtes*, in his firſt attempt, was ill welcomed by the French, of whom yet in the end he had the victory: After which, hauing had conference with the Kings *Marcomir* and *Sunon* (for *Paulinus* giueth them the name of Kings) there was peace and alliance made againe betweene them, ſolemnely ſworne on either part. Now it happened, that *Arbogaſtes*, at a magnificent Banquet, conferring with the Kings *Marcomir*, *Sunon*, and the chiefeſt Lords of the French, he was queſtioned by *Marcomir*, if he had any knowledge of Saint *Ambroſe*. He replying, that he knew him, and was familiar with him. *It is not then to be wondred at* (ſaid *Marcomir* to him) *if all things ſucceede with thee, ſo well as thou canſt wiſh, hauing the grace and fauour of ſo Holy a man, who could ſay to the Sunne: Stand ſtill, and by and by it ſtood ſtill.* Theſe are the very words of S. *Paulinus*.

The words of King Marcomir to Arbogaſtes.

Per idem tempus Arbogaſtes Comes aduerſus gentem ſuam, hoc eſt Francorum, Bellum parauit, atque pugnando, non paruam multitudinem manu fudit, cum reſiduis vero pacem firmauit. Sed cum in conuiuio a Regibus gentis ſuæ interrogaretur, Vtrum ſciret Ambroſium, & reſpondiſſet noſce ſe virum, & diligi ab eo atque frequenter cum illo conuocari ſolitum, audiuit: Ideo vincis omnes, qui ab illo viro diligeris, qui dicit Soli, ſta, & ſtat. The French, although they then were Pagans and Idolaters; attributed neuertheleſſe the good fortune of *Arbogaſtes*, to the knowledge which he had with Saint *Ambroſe*, whoſe ſanctity of life they much admired.

The reaſon why S. Ambroſe loued Arbogaſtes.

And that which moued him to affect *Arbogaſtes*, was the perfections that he acknowledged to be in him, euen ſuch as *Suidas* hath noated on the name of this Captaine. *Arbogaſtes Francus, robore corporis, & aſperitate animi flammæ ſimilis, proximus a Bautone, in hoc fuit conſtans, & exquiſita modeſtia, & odium irreconciliabile auaritiæ, &c. Arbogaſtes, a French man by Nation, in ſtrength of body, and in viuacitie of ſpirit, like vnto a flame of fire, held the ſecond ranke and dignity of Honor, next vnto Count Bantonius. He was conſtant and couragious, of ſinguler modeſtie, a mortall enemie, and vtterly vnreconcileable, to the peſtilent vice of auarice, ſo that he made no ſpare of any thing to his Soldiours.* And this was the reaſon, why the Emperour *Theodoſius* thought him meete and neceſſary, to be neere the perſon of *Valentinian*, to ioyne the grauity of his manners, and carriage of life, with his owne, and faſhion them with his yong yeares, to make him a Prince perfect and compleate, when he ſhould become an aged man; but he neuer attained thereto.

Arbogaſtes growneth ambitious againſt his Maſter the Emperour Valentinian.

Becauſe *Arbogaſtes*, hauing all the neceſſary vertues, remarkeable in a worthy Captaine, and had won the praiſe and honor to be ſuch a man: he ſuffered himſelfe to be led by idle opinions, and ſurprized with ambition, of attaining (one day) to the Empire. So ſaith *Sulpitius Alexander*, in his fourth Book. For he began to trouble the calme quietneſſe of the Eſtate in Gaule, hauing procured the Emperour his Maiſter *Valentinian*, to be lockt vp in his Pallace at *Vienna* (in *Daulphine*) and brought him to ſuch tearmes, and deſperate condition, as to be depriued of the Empire. For the charges of the warres being in the hands of the Romaine Legiona, and all Offices (as well of peace as warre) giuen by *Arbogaſtes*, and as himſelfe pleaſed; *Valentinian* was onely Emperour in name, but his Conſtable in effect. And the whole State being

being at his command: of all them that had taken the Oath of fidelity to the Emperour, there was not one that durſt ſhew himſelfe familiar and friendly, or obedient to whatſoeuer he commanded. *Nullus ex omnibus Sacramentis militiæ obſtrictis reperiebatur qui familiari Principis ſermoni, aut iuſsis obſequi auderet.* Theſe are the words of *Sulpitius Alexander*.

So that the perſon of the Emperour, and all the occaſions of the Empire, remaining in the power of Count *Arbogaſtes*: it was very eaſie for him to cut off his Soueraigne, as *Zozimus* faith in his fourth Booke, and in theſe tearmes.

Arbogaſtes, hauing the whole power ouer the Romaine Horſemen, for which he was moſt conuenient, in regard of his experience in actions of Warre, and being an vtter enemy to Couetouſneſſe: attained to ſuch ſupreame authority, that he carried himſelfe very ſaucily in ſpeeches, and wholly vnſufferable to the Emperour, whom he would taunt and cenſure in his meaneſt actions, appointing quite contrary to whatſoeuer he commanded. Which Valentinian being vnable to endure, grew diſpleaſed many times againſt him; but without aduantage, becauſe Arbogaſtes had all the Romaine Armie on his ſide. Vpon a day, as the Emperour ſate in his Throne, he beheld Arbogaſtes paſsing by before him, whoſe boldneſſe and vnreuerent behauiour, he being no longer able to ſuffer: as he went by, he thruſt into his hand a countermand, whereby he tooke from him the charge and dignity of Conſtable, and of Coloncll of the Romaine Legions. Arbogaſtes hauing read the countermand, rent it in pieces, and trampled it vnderneath his feete, ſaying to the Emperour: That hee did not hold any of thoſe Offices of him, and therefore he could not take them from him. From that day forward, falſe reports being carried betweene them, each of them ſtood vpon his Guard; but the ſtronger ſtill fell to *Arbogaſtes*. Who cauſed the Emperour to be ſtrangled, and afterward faſtened his body to a Iibbit, as if he had bin the hangman of himſelfe. So writeth that excellent Father of knowledge and learning Saint *Hierome*, in his Third Epiſtle. *Adoleſcens Valentinianus, & bene puer, poſt fugam, poſt exilia, poſt recuperatum multo ſanguine Imperium, haud procul ab Vrbe, mortis Fraternæ conſcia,* (for of two Brothers the eldeſt was ſlaine at *Lyons*, and the yonger at *Vienna*) *necatus eſt, & cadauer exanime ſuſpendio infamatum.* And this cauſed many Hiſtorians to write, that this Emperour was ſtrangled by himſelfe, impatient of the rude and intollerable wrongs, which he ſuſtained by his Conſtable *Arbogaſtes*.

A ſubiect ouerbold and ſaucie with his Soueraigne.

And eſpecially *Sigibert*, who ſetteth downe the vntimely death of that yong Emperour, of great hope, and very peaceable nature (as Saint *Ambroſe* writeth in the Funerall Oration for this Prince) in the yeate three hundred foureſcore and ſixteene. *Valentinianus Imperator nimia auſteritate Arbogaſtes Magiſtri militum ad vitæ tedium perductus, laqueo vitam finiuit.* An errour in the circumſtanee of his death, and alſo in the date of time: becauſe he dyed in the yeare of Grace, three hundred foureſcore and twelue, the day before the Eeue of Pentecoſt, in the Conſulſhip of the Emperour *Arcadius* (for the ſecond time) and of *Ruffinus*, according to the *Conſularic Faſts*.

Arbogaſtes, to couer his villanie, aduanced (by little and little) to the Empire, a certaine man named *Eugenius*, to reigne in effect, but as his ſubſtitute to vſe command. *Eugenius auxilio Arbogaſtis tyranniſat*; So ſpeaketh *Sigibert*, purſuing the end of *Valentian*. Adding withall, that in the yeare three hundred foureſcore and ſeauenteene, the Emperour *Theodoſius* the Great, exterminated both theſe Tyrants, and dyed immediately after. *Theodoſius Eugenium, & Arbogaſtem in Bello perimit, & ipſe non multo poſt obyit. Poſt quem filij eius Arcadius & Honorius, imperant annis tredecim.*

Claudian enſtructeth vs, that this *Eugenius* was one of the Houſhold of Count *Arbogaſtes*, in the Panegyricke for the third Conſulſhip of the Emperour *Honorius*.

Proh! crimen Superûm, longi proh dedecus æui:
Barbarus Heſperias exul poſſederat oras,
Sceptraque deiecto dederat Romana clienti.

And at the fourth Conſulſhip of the ſame *Honorius*.

Hinc ſibi Germanus famulum delegarat exul.

Theſe

The singular wisedome of the Emperour *Theodosius.*

These men to maintaine themselues in their tyrannie, and sound the secrets of the Emperour *Theodosius* the Great, sent Ambassadours to him: but he kept them some time, without admitting them audience, and onely shewed them a muster of his potent Armie, and would not giue them any other answere. *Arbogastes* and his fellow Tyrant issuing forth of *Millaine*, to hinder the Emperour *Theodosius* from passing the Alpes, who marched in person to the warre, hauing vnder him *Stilico*, husband to his Niece *Serena*, and other great Commanders in warre: when they arriued at those Mountaines, and being not so strong as the enemy; *Theodosius* prepared himselfe to Prayer, by the example of *Moyses*, and God gaue him the victory (famous for the Miracles described by *Claudian*) albeit he was an Idolater. As we reade in the Panagyricke, for the third Consulship of the Emperor *Honorius*, where speaking of the victory giuen to *Theodosius*, he saith

O nimiùm dilecte Deo, cui fundit ab antris
Æolus armatas hyemes, cui militat æther,
Et coniurati veniunt ad classica venti.

The Tyrant *Eugenius* was brought bound fast and mannacled, to *Theodosius*, who pronounced the sentence of death vpon him, But as for *Arbogastes*, hauing bin two whole dayes in flight, full of furie, rage and despaire; he slew himselfe with his owne Sword and Ponyard, as is verified by *Claudian* in the place before alleadged.

At ferus inuentor scelerum traiecerat altum
Non vno mucrone latus, duplexque tepebat
Ensis, & ultrices in se conuerterat iras.

A plaine contradiction of *Sigibert.*

This victory happened in September, the yeare of Grace three hundred fourescore and foureteene, and not seauenteene as *Sigibert* saith) then being Consuls the Emperors *Arcadius* for the third time, and *Honorius* the second time.

Before this Battaile, the tyrant *Eugenius* (by the counsell of *Arbogastes*) would haue made the French afraid, but obserue what *Sulpitius Alexander* saith. *Eugenius* hauing prepared his Armie, resolued to crosse the Rhine, to the end, to make a muster or shew of such forces, as he had at his command of barbarous Nations, as the *Almans* and *French*, to whom the Kings were at all times allied, and confederates together: but he did not make his passage.

The quiet continuance of the French.

So the French continued in quietnesse, after the alliance and peace, which the Count *Arbogastes* made with them, till after the death of the Emperor *Theodosius* the Great, happening at *Atillane*, the sixteenth of the Calends of February, the yeare of Grace three hundred fourescore and sifteene, in the Consulship of the two Brethren *Olybrius* and *Probinus*.

The Empires of the East and West deuided betweene the two Sonnes of *Theodosius.*

Theodosius left the Empire of the East to his eldest Sonne *Arcadius*; hauing from the yeare fourescore and eleuen, inuested in that of the West, his yongest sonne *Honorius*. In whose tender time of yeares, the Alemans and French began againe to moue and stirre: euen as all mischances happen to such Kingdomes, as haue children to be their Kings, for then it is, when euery one will be fishing in troubled waters. *Væ Regno cuius Rex puer est, & Principes mane comedunt.* So saith the diuine wisedome. In this manner was the Empire of the East troubled, and by the fastious deuises of *Ruffinus*, to whom *Theodosius* (going against the Tyrant *Eugenius*) had giuen the gouernment of the East Empire, and of his two Sonnes. And the subiect of his discontentment, ensued from this, that *Theodosius* had preferred *Stilico* with him; as we learne of *Claudian*, his second Booke *In Ruffinum.*

Iamque tuis, Stilico, Romana potentia curis
Et rerum commissus apex, tibi credita fratrum
Vtraque maiestas, gemminaque exercitus aula.
Ruffinus (neque enim patiuntur saua quietem

Crimina,

Crimina, pollutæque negant arescere fauces)
Infandis iterum terras accendere bellis,
Inchoat, & solito pacem turbare tumultu.

And also by another occasion, that, as a signe and noate of especiall fauour, *Theodosius* had caused the daughter of the said *Stilico* (named *Maria*) and of *Serena*, daughter to the Brother of the said *Theodosius*, to be affianced to his yongest Sonne, and he to wed her, so soone as he should come to the age of foureteene yeares, as he did in the yeare of Grace three hundred fourescore and eighteene, in September. The said *Honorius* being Consull the fourth time, with *Eutichianus*, as *Claudian* informeth vs, as well in the Panegyricke of the said Consulship, as the Epithalamium for the said *Honorius*; who in the yeare before named, and in the said moneth of September entred into the foureteenth yeare of his age.

So soone as the newes were certainely knowne, concerning the death of Great *Theodosius*; as suddenly were the Alemans and French in the Field, to repasse the Rhine, and seeke their further fortune in Gaule. To stay their forwardnesse, *Honorius* the Emperour of the East (who, as we haue already said, had *Africa*, *Italie*, *Spaine*, *England* and *Gaule* in partage) presently sent away *Stilico*, who in the same yeare three hundred fourescore and fifteene, reassured the frontiers of Rhine, which he viewed and visited from the very originall and spring thereof (and which beginneth within the very high Alpes, neere to the Episcopall Citie of the *Grisons*, called *Curia Rhetorum*, issuing forth of a Mountaine named *Adula* by *Strabo*) so farre as to the Ocean, so saith *Claudian* in the Panegyricke for the third Consulship of *Honorius*, happening in the yeare three hundred fourescore and sixteene, hauing for companion his brother *Arcadius*, Consull the fourth time. In the which voyage, he saith, that the Kings of the Alemans and French, came and did him honour, laying downe their Armes, to the end they might haue peace with him. This was the first militarie expedition of *Stilico*, against the Nations (enemies to the Romaine Empire) in the West, exalting themselues as foes to his Maister *Honorius*. According to the testimonie of the Poet *Claudian*, who noateth that voyage with these perticularities.

The large partition of the Easterne Emperour *Honorius.*

The first voyage of *Stilico* against mutinous Nations in the West.

Hunc tamen in primis populos lenire feroces,
Et Rhenum pacare iubes: Volat ille citatis
Vectus equis: nullaque latus stipante caterua,
Aspera indiferas qua Rhetia porrigit Alpes,
Pergit, & hostiles (tanta est fiducia) ripas
Incomitatus adit, totum properare per amnem.

So that this first voyage of Count *Stilico*, was but to take knowledge of the enemy, whose designes he wisely preuented, as alwayes it behoueth a valiant Leader in warre to doe. For without the attendants of an Armie, which neuer walketh but by counted steps; *Stilico*, with his presence onely, secured the frontiers of the Rhine, and gaue the Alemans and French Kings, sufficient breathing to embrace peace, thereby to salue them anew, by comming themselues to moue it on this side the Rhine.

The very presence of *Stilico* dreadfull to his enemies.

——— *Segnique verenter*
Ostendisse mora transiecti lintribus amnem.

And againe.

Attonitos Reges humili ceruice videres
Ante ducem nostrum: Flauam sparsere Sicambri
Cæsariem, pauidosque orantes murmure Franci
Procubuere solo: iuratur Honorius absens:
Imploratque tuum supplex, Alemannia, nomen.

And discyphering the Aleman people, which performed homage to him, he saith

Basternæ venere truces, venit accola syluæ

Bructherus

Bructherus Hercinię, latisque paludibus exit
Cymbrus, & ingentes Albim liquêre Cheruſci,

The Oſtrogothes poſſeſſed themſelues of Prouinces belonging to the Romaine Empire.

This thorne taken thus forth of *Honorius* his foote, *Stilico* with his Armie paſſed into Greece, to fight againſt the *Oſtrogothes*; who, by intelligence from the Count *Ruffinus*, were ſeiſed on prouinces ſubiected to the Romaine Empire. Alſo by other intelligence from the ſame *Ruffinus*, the two Conſtables, *Gaines* of the Eaſt, and *Stilico* of the Weſt, were conſtrained to leaue the buſineſſe, without doing any thing, which coſt the life of *Ruffinus*: who to vſurpe the Eaſterne Empire, had formerly raiſed vnknowne people, inhabiting vnder the North climate, in the Mariſhes of *Meotides*, and in *Pannonia*, as *Claudian* ſaith in his firſt Booke.

Iam gentes, Iſtrum mouet, Scythiamque receptat
Auxilio: traditque ſuas hoſtilibus armis
Reliquias: mixtis deſcendit Sarmata Dacis,
Et qui compedes in pocula vulnerat audax
Maſſagetes; patriumque bibens Mœotium Alanus.
Membraque qui ferro gaudet pinxiſſe Gelonus,
Ruffino collecta manus.

Ruffinus ſlaine by the Romain Armie neere to Conſtantinople

But *Ruffinus* liued not to enioy all theſe match-makings of his treacheries; becauſe he was ſlaine neere to *Conſtantinople* (the fift of the Calends of December, in the yeare three hundred foureſcore and fifteene) by the Romaine Army, which he had delaied and hindred from fighting.

Gildonus proclaimed himſelfe Emperor.

Now, in the yeare of Grace three hundred foureſcore and eighteene, *Honorius* being Conſull the fourth time, with *Futychianus*: the Gouernour of *Affrica*, named *Gildonus*, cauſed himſelfe to be proclamed Emperour, he reuolting from *Honorius*; who forthwith ſent *Stilico* againſt him, and who, after ſome encounters, taught him to vnderſtand reaſon. *Claudian* deſcribing this warre of *Affrica*, ſaith:

Poſt domitas Arctos alio prorumpit ab axe
Tempeſtas: & ne qua tuis intacta trophęis
Pars foret, Auſtralis ſonuit tuba. Mouerat omnes
Mauſorum Gildo populos.

Gildonus ſtrangled himſelfe in *Sicilie*.

But this new vpſtart Traytour, was paid with coyne of the ſame ſtampe, as is onely currant and due to ſuch, as are fellons and Traytours to their Prince. For he ſeeking to ſaue himſelfe by Sea, the windes proued ſo contrary to him; as, after their impetuous ſeruice, in driuing on, and returning him backe againe, out of one tempeſt into another: he landed in *Sicilie*, where he hanged himſelfe, feering to fall into his enemies hands, who afterward cut off his head, as it is auouched by *Claudian*.

Agnouitque nouos abſens Arethuſa triumphos,
Gildonis ſenſit teſte cruore necem.

The titles of honor giuen to *Stilico*.

During this warre in *Affrica*, which tooke an indifferent long continuance; the French in the abſence of Count *Stilico*, Conſtable and Colonell of the Romaine Armie (for he was knowne by theſe titles of honor and preheminence: *Stilico, vir Illuſtriſſimus, Magiſter Equitum, & Peditum, Comes Domeſticorum, & Tribunus Prætorianorum*) began to vndertake their wandrings againe, for paſſing the Rhine, and robbing the Gaules, as they did vnder the conduct of their King *Marcomir*. So that at returne from the Affricane warre, *Stilico* was conſtrained to refreſh his Armie ſome few dayes in *Italie*, and afterward tooke his way towards Gaule: where he fought with the Alemans, conioyned with the French, and gaue them a

Stilico, ouerthroweth the Alemans and French.

great ouerthrow; in the Ides of Iune, the yeare of Grace three hundred foureſcore and nineteene, *Manlius Theodorus* bing then Conſull. For the Conſularie Faſtes beare no name, of an abhominable Eunuch, named *Flauius Eutropius*, ſtrangled for his vile extorting concuſſions: As *Claudian* obſerueth in, the Panegyricke, ſpoken to the ſaid Conſull *Theodorus*.

Stilico tooke priſoner *Marcomir* King of the French.

Stilico paſſed the Rhine, ſtill purſuing on his Conqueſt, and at the retraite of the Alemans and French: he entrapped *Marcomir*, King of the French, whom he made his war-priſoner, and then ſo boldly followed on the troupes of the French, that he compelled the reſt to pleade for agreement, and deſire peace with ſuch conditions, as ſhould be pleaſing to the vanquiſher. *Stilico* ordered his victory, by command from the Emperour *Honorius* his Sonne in lawe; made peace with them, impoſing for Tribute on the French, that he knew them good Souldiours, and a certaine number muſt be taken from among them, to ſerue in the Romaine Armies; with expreſſe charge, to liue thenceforward in quietneſſe, without making any foradgings on the Rhines frontiers. According to that which *Claudian* ſaith:

——— *Cum forte decorus*
Cum Stilicone, Gener, pacem implorantibus vltro
Germanis reſponſa dabat, legeſque Chaucis
Arduus, & ſtauis ſignabat iura Sueuis.
His tribuit leges, his obſide foedera ſancit
Indicto, bellorum alios tranſcribit in vſus,
Militet vt noſtris detonſa Sicambria ſignis?

In two words he expreſſeth the Alemans, by the name of Sweues; and the French by that of the Sicambrians, as we haue related already.

Stilico leadeth *Marcomir* priſoner.

Stilico hauing left good Garriſons, for defending the Rhines frontiers, and receiued the hoſtages: tooke his way to *Millaine*, leading along with him *Marcomir*, King of the French, whom he ſent priſoner to *Sienna* in Italie, where he ended his life. So ſoone as he was departed thence, King *Sunno*, brother to *Marcomir*, and his ſucceſſour; would needes make head againe, as endeauouring to recouer his Brother, taking (by way of reprifall) certaine Townes of the Romans. But he was ſlaine by the French themſelues, who would keepe the peace ſworne to the Romans, and (thereby) made meanes for recouery of their King. The end of theſe two Brethren Kings, is liuely deſcribed by *Claudians*.

Sunno, brother to *Marcomir*, ſlaine by the French.

Regia Romanus diſquirit crimina carcer;
Marcomirus, Sunnoque docent, quorum alter Etruſcum
Pertulit exilium: quem ſe promitteret alter
Exulis vltorem, tacuit mucrone ſuorum.
Res auidi conſcire nouas odioque furentes
Pacis & ingenio ſcelerumque cupidine Fratres.

And, after their deaths, the French were ſeauenteene yeares without any Kings, being then gouerned by Dukes onely.

After the ſecond voyage of *Stilico*, both Alemagne and French were (for a time) ſo encreaſed and tranquile; as, without any damage, a man might trauaile thorow them, as *Claudian* ſaith. *The Rhine, being (before) furious, and and ſwarming with armed troupes; was become like an vnhorned Stagge.*

——— *Rhenumque minacem*
Cornibus infractis adeo miteſcere cogis
Vt Saltus iam rura colat, ſtexoſque Sicambri
In falcem curuent gladios.

It ſeemed, that they had vtterly forſaken the actions of warre, to vndertake the ſickle and Scith, addicting themſelues to husbandry. For they of the firſt and ſecond Germany, freely paſſed the Rhine with their Flockes and Heards; to let them feede at the Mountaines of France and Alemagne.

Geminasque viator
Cum videat ripas, quæ sit Romana requirat,
Vt iam trans fluuium, non indignante Chaico,
Pascat Belga pecus, mediumque ingressa per Albim,
Gallica Francorum montes armenta pererrent.

The same Poet in the Epithalamium of the Empresse *Marie*, wife to the Emperour *Honorius*, and daughter to Count *Stilico*, telleth her; that *Thence-forward, she might walke thorow Alemagne and France, without any euill encounter.*

——— Iam Rhenus, & Albis
Seruiet, in medios ibis, Regina Sicambros.

The Empire of the West being thus calme and tranquile, *Stilico*, who had neuer bin Consul: was chosen the first day of the Serculare yeare foure hundred, with *Aurelianus*. *Claudian*, in the second Panegyricke, spoken to the said *Stilico*, maketh Rome to speake in this manner.

Qui mihi Germanos solus, Francosque subegit
Cur nondum legitur Fastis?

Because he sought to make the Westerne Empire in peaceable condition.

——— Nullus Boreæ metus: omnis & Austri
Ora silet: cecidit maurus Germania cessit:
Et tanum pax alta legat, te Consule.

But this peace (not long after) was molested by the practises and factions of the same *Stilico*, to make *Eucherius* his Sonne Emperour, and played at spoile-King with *Honorius*.

Stilico, conspireth against *Honorius* his Lord.

For, hauing bin created Consull (the second time) with *Anthemius*, in the yeare of Grace foure hundred and fiue: he practised with strange Nations, and namely the *Gothes*, then holding Greece and part of Thrace, that they should come thundring into Italie: As afterward they did, vnder conduct of their King *Alaricus*. In the meane while (on the other side) the *Alans*, *Scythians* and *Vandales*, with the *Bourgongnons* and other Nations of the North, prepared themselues, to goe take their share of the *Gaules*, neuer to part thence: which they did, onely to please *Stilico*, a Vandale by Nation.

Alaricus Kig of the Gothes inuadeth Italy by the meanes of *Stilico*.

Alaricus comming into Italie, by practise and intelligence with him, in the yeare foure hundred and sixe: *Stilico*, that he might giue freer passage to the Northerne Nations; leueied the companies which guarded the Rhines frontiers, and caused them to come into Italie, as *Claudian* saith.

Agmina quin etiam Flauis obiecta Sicambris
Quæque domant Castos, immansuetosque Cheruscos
Hue omnes uertere minas, tutumque remotis
Excubys Rhenum solo terrore reliquit.

Now during the time that *Alaricus* tooke and sacked Rome, making himselfe rich with the spoyles thereof, and all his Armie (this surprizall happened the ninth of the Calends of September, in the yeare of Grace foure hundred and ten, *Varanes* being then alone Consull of the East, created by the Emperour *Arcadius*, for *Honorius* did nothing in the West, but expected what should become of the Siedge of Rome) the two Kings of Alemagne, *Goarus* and *Respendialus*, coueted to passe the Rhine, to infest Gaule with their Armies. But he first ranked himselfe on the side of *Honorius* (*Stilico* and his Sonne *Eucherius*, conuinced both of fellonie and treason, were slaine by the Romaine Armie, in the yeare foure hundred and eight) the other King, named *Respendialus*, was constrained to make his retreat, and to forsake the frontiers of the Rhine.

Goarus and *Respendialus* Kings of Alemagne.

The death of *Stilico* and his Sonne *Eucherius*.

In the yeare foure hundred and ten, the Vandales would plant themselues in Gaule, and in passing on the way, forradged the Lands of the French: but because they could winne passage no where else, they were well beaten in three or foure encounters. And in one of them, their King *Godegisilus* was slaine in the field, with twenty thousand of his people, perishing by the edge of the Swords of the French. So that the Vandales had bin quite foyled, if the Alanes (who came in the time of greatest neede) had not brought succour, and passed the Riuer of Rhine with the same company. Thus are we instructed by the Historian *Renatus Profuturus Frigeridus*, and reported by *S. Gregory* of Tours.

The yeare foure hundred and eleuen, vnder the Consulship of the Emperour of the East *Theodosius* the yonger, the fourth time (without any Consull in the West, being ouerwhelmed with miseries) a man named *Constantine*, of a simple Souldiour, as he was no more, being exalted Emperor by the Garrisons of England (at such time as *Alaricus* desquieted Italie) sought also make himselfe Maister of Italie, as he had already done of the Gaules, England and Spaine: the Regencie of which Prouince hee had giuen to his Sonne *Constantius*, whom hee had likewise proclaimed his Companion in the Empire: So, saith *Sozomenus* in his ninth Booke.

Constantine a silly Souldiour made Emperour.

Constantius being come from Spaine, where he left his wife, and all his furniture at *Sarragossa* (the Capitall Citie of *Arragon*) and for his Lieutenant one named *Gerontius*: hee went to parlee with his Father at *Arles* in *Prouence*, vpon the subiect for his voyage into Italie. Both of them agreed in one opinion, and perceiuing, that in Italie none would stirre against them: *Constantine* giue himselfe to all dissolute courses of life, and aduised his Sonne, to returne backe againe into Spaine, hauing to guide and conuoye him, taken certaine troupes of well appointed Souldiours, to make way before him, while as yet he remained with his Father. He receiued newes from Spaine, that *Gerontius* had caused to be proclaimed Emperour, one (named *Maximus*) of his most intimate and endeared friends, who kept his Imperiall seate at *Tarragona* in *Catalogna*, and prepared a potent Armie composed of strange Nations) for his descent into Gaule, going desperately onward, to besiedge *Constantine* in Arles, and his Sonne at Vienna.

Constantius the Sonne of *Constantine* gouerning in Spain.

One vsurper striueth in Armes against another.

The Tyrants Father and Sonne, being thus summoned to the Trompets sound; speedily dispatched away *Edolegus* or *Edobeccus*, a Duke of the French, into Alemagne and France, to deriue succour from those Nations.

But during these entercourses, another Captaine, belonging to the Emperour *Honorius* (Father of *Valentinian*, who was third Emperour of that name) and his Lieutenant *Decimus Rusticus*, Maister of the Offices, and conductors of a puissant Armie, consisting of French and Alemanes (that of the French, was led by two of their Dukes, called *Marcomir* and *Ingomer*, Brethren) descended from Italie into Gaule, and went to besiedge the Tyrant *Constantine* within the Citie of *Arles*, before which *Gerontius* had already held some moneths siege. But constrained to raise it, by the Armie of *Honorius*, which drone the other into disorder: hee made his retraite in all haste towards Spaine, where hee was slaine by his owne Souldiours, who held him in contempt, by reason of his flight.

A third Captaine sent from the Emperour *Honorius*.

While the Siedge of *Arles* proceeded on, *Constantius* was aduertised, that *Edobeccus* Duke of the French (so *Frigeridus* calleth him, and *Sozomenus*, from whom we derive this Narration more amply, yea and perticularly, then that which *Frigeridus* saith) approched neere, with great supply of succour of the Alemans & French, to raise the siedge: *Constantius* resolued to cut off this succour by the way, & therefore passed the *Rhosne*, to surprise the fore-goers, ambuscading in a wood part of his people, conducted by *Vlphilas* his Grand Prouost, as also the French Dukes *Ingomer* and *Marcomir*. Duke *Edobeccus* being (for his part) desirous to fight, hauing past the troupes of *Vlphilas*, without perceiuing them: came to handy-blowes with Duke *Constantius*, the encounter waxing very hot. Then *Vlphilas* with his Horsemen, came to charge vpon this fresh reply, setting on them in the rere, which troubled the ranks, some whereof fairely fled, and the rest yeelded to *Constantius*. But as for the chiefe Leader *Edobeccus*, well mounted as he was, he retired to a Gentleman, named *Ecdicius*, whom he accounted to be his friend, by hauing (formerly) done him many great courtesies: but he in barbarous vnthankfulnes, smote off his head, which he brought to the said *Constantius*, from whom he expected some great recompence. *Constantius* tooke the head, and said vnto him, In the Emperours name I giue thee thankes: But presently he dismissed him from his Campe, saying; That he would not haue it sullied, with the company of a man so traiterous, and perfidious.

A note of abhominable ingratitude, & worthily rewarded.

After this ouerthrow, *Constantius* returned to the Siege of *Arles*, sending to the beſieged Tyrant, the head of *Edobeccus*. *Conſtantius* ſeeing all comfort fled from him, deſpoiled himſelfe of all his Imperiall habits, and fled into a Church, where he was admitted to be a Prieſt. They of the Citie, hauing capitulated for themſelues, opened their Gates to *Conſtantius*: who reduced the Prouince into the power and obedience of the Emperour his Maiſter, in whoſe name he placed the Gouernors, and then returned into Italie; ſending before him the tyrant *Conſtantine*, and his other Sonne *Iulian*, to be preſented to the Emperour *Honorius*. But they were ſlaine by the way, and their heads cut off vpon the Riuer of *Mince*, ſo ſaith *Prigeridius*. *Sozomenus* onely writeth, that they were put to death, without any notice of the place. And the Spaniſh Prieſt *Paulus Orozius* addeth thereto, that the Tyrant *Conſtantine* had taken out of a Cloyſter, his eldeſt Sonne *Conſtantius* (where he had long time bin a profeſſed Monk) to make him his companion in the Empire. And that God ſuffred the Father and Son (being both ordained Prieſts) thus to be ſlaine and maſſacred; becauſe they preferred earthly Empire, before that which is heauenly.

Arles is deliuered to *Conſtantius* on the Emperors behalfe.

Difference betweene Authors.

So in the ſame time, and about the ſaid yeare foure hundred and eleuen, an infinite number of Tyrants were cut off by violent deaths: As namely *Conſtantine* and his yongeſt ſonne in Italie; *Conſtantius* and *Maximus* in Spaine; *Iouinus* and *Sebaſtianus*; *Iouinus* his Brother alſo in Italie; *Sarus* and others in England and in Gaule.

An infinite number of Tyrants periſhing in one and the ſame yeare.

Theſe troubles and garboiles thus moued in the Eaſterne Empire, gaue occaſion to the French, vnder the conduct of their Dukes *Marcomir* and *Pharamond*, to aduenture an attempt on the Gaules Lands, by paſſing the Riuer of Rhine, to ſteale priuily for ſurprizing the great Citie of *Treuers* (now the ſecond time) as we learne by S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his ſecond Booke of the Hiſtory of France, and ninth Chapter. *Hiſdem diebus Præfectus Tyrannorum decimus Ruſticus Agroetius ex Primicerio Notariorum Iouini* (he was deceiued, becauſe he tooke part with *Iouinus* after the Siege of *Arles*) *multique Nobiles apud Aruernos capti à Ducibus Honorianis, & crudeliter interempti ſunt. Treuerorum Ciuitas à Francis direpta, incenſaque eſt Secunda Irruptione.* Some Hiſtorians doe account this ſecond enterpriſe, in the yeare foure hundred and foureteene, and referre the firſt to the yeare three hundred foureſcore and ſeauen, at ſuch time as the Romaine Captaines *Heraclius* and *Quintinus* were ouerthrowne by the French neere to *Treuers*, as *Sigibert* telleth vs in theſe words: *Franci Quintinum, & Heraclium Romanorum Duces cum omnibus pene ſuis iuxta Treuerim delent.*

Marcomir and *Pharamond* being Dukes of the French.

Here you perceiue what we haue obſerued of the French, from the time as they made themſelues knowne vnder the name of the *Hanſe*: the learned may ſupply where I faile. And yet notwithſtanding, the chiefe Commanders of this Company, euermore kept their auncient name of *Sicambrians*, not onely to the time of the Emperour *Honorius* (as we haue noated by the Verſes of *Claudian*) and of *Valentinian* the third: but alſo very long time after, to wit, vnder *Merouæus*, ſo the Biſhop of *Auuergne* informeth vs.

Francorum & penitiſſimas paludes
Intrares, venerantibus Sicambris.

Vnder *Clouis* their firſt Chriſtian King, at whoſe Baptiſme and Sacring, S. *Remigius* ſpake theſe words.

Mitis depone colla Sicamber,
Incende quod adoraſti, adora quid incendiſti.

So we learne by *Floardus* in the Hiſtorie of *Reims*, and (before him) by S. *Gregory* of Tours.

And vnder the yongeſt Sonne of the ſame King *Clouis*, called *Charibert*, or *Aubert*, King of Paris, ſonne to *Clotharius*, firſt King of all France; Son to the ſaid King *Clouis*. *Fortunatus* Biſhop of *Poictiers*, ſaith, that he was deſcended of the auncient ſtocke of the *Francs-Sicambrians*, whom S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his ſecond Booke and ninth Chapter, calleth for honor, *Primum, & Nobiliorem familiam Crinitorum Regum*. *Fortunatus*, in the fourth Poem of his ſixt Booke, ſpeaking of *Charibert*, ſaith

Cum ſis progenitus Clara de gente Sicamber,
Floret in eloquia lingua Latina tuo.

Clotharius the firſt King of all France.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of King Pharanond: And likewiſe concerning the Salique Lawe.

WE haue heretofore ſeene, how the French were gouerned by their Kings, vntill the yeare of Grace three hundred three ſcore and nineteene: to verifie the ſaying of the noble Romaine Hiſtorian *Tacitus*, ſpeaking of the people as well of the higher, as lower Germanie: *Semper apud vos Bella, Regeſque fuere, donec in ius noſtrum conſederetis.* Which will ſerue to contradict ſuch, as (in meere ignorance) haue written, that *Pharamond*, was the firſt King of the French, and haue ſuppoſed falſities vnder fabulous names, inuented at mens pleaſures, to be deriued out of *Dauids* Pſalmes, *Og, Bazan Regem.*

Marcomir (Couſin to the laſt Kings *Marcomir* and *Sunon*, iſſued and deſcended from *Richimer*, brother to King *Merobaudes*) iuſtly afflicted, becauſe thoſe of his Nation rendered themſelues mercenarie to the Romaines, alwayes weakening them by one meanes or other; inſtead of compoſing a body together; and forming it into an aſſured eſtate on the Gauliſh Lands, vſurped by the Romaine Emperors (as Nations further off from them, made apparant by their example) declared to the French (being aſſembled in the open fields, to hold their eſtates according to their auncient cuſtome) theſe or the like ſpeeches.

Elſewhere called *Mellobaudes*.

That it was a ſhame, or rather a misfortune, which ſerued as their ruine, that in the warres with the Romaines; the chiefe and principall perſons among them, tooke contrary parts, either to cut their owne throates, or to periſh by the Romaines Armes. Witneſſe whereof was *Ebodichus*, traiterouſly maſſacred by his hoſte *Ecdicius*, and Duke *Ingomer*, his owne brother, ſlaine at the Siege of *Arles*. It was therefore moſt expedient, to liue no longer in ſuch confuſion: but rather to conſpire altogether, to the end for creating a King among them, to whom at all times they ſhould ſweare intire obedience, and that vnder his conduct, they might poſſeſſe themſelues of the rich abounding Gaules, whereto their predeceſſours had (from time to time) aſpired, and for their attaining thereto, had ſo often times croſſed the Riuer of Rhine, all ending their liues (by a glorious death) in an enterpriſe ſo honorable; in regard they had now ſuch a time, wherein their ancient enemies, the Romans, knew no longer of what wood to make themſelues Arrowes, or which way to be of any certainty.

The effect of the Oration made by *Marcomir* to the French.

This councell being allowed for good, all with one voyce and conſent, elected and named for their King, the Sonne of the ſaid Duke *Marcomir*, and who fought vnder his Father in reſiſtance of the Romaines, which made him famous for valour and height of courage. He called himſelfe *Pharamond*, which ſignifieth in the Germaine tongue; *A true Prince, and one that keepeth his word*: Vertues which made him preferrable before all others, and cauſed him to be exalted and carried on a Shield (according to the manner of the French) three ſeuerall times about the whole aſſembly. *Varamundus impoſitus Scuto, more Gentis, & ſuccolentium humeris vibratus Rex Francorum eligitur.* All the Nations of the French Hanſe, hauing ſworne firmely obedience and fidelity to him (vpon their Armes) conformed themſelues according to the cuſtome obſerued by the ancients of the French.

The election of *Pharamond* to be King of the French.

The Nations of the French Hanſe.

But in this place (before wee paſſe any further) I would gladly roote vp that falſe opinion, conceiued by too many, and make it apparantly knowne; that long time before this *Pharamond*: the French had bin gouerned by Kings, famous for vallancie in the Romaine Hiſtories.

The French had Kings long time before *Pharamond*.

I make not any account at all, of Princes ſpoken of by ſuch as are ignorant in the French Hiſtorie, deriuing them from the aſhes of old *Troy*. I abhorre and condemne Poeticall fictions, when they ſhall be vſed for the foundation and beginning of a Hiſtory, wherin the horoſcope & natiuitie of Princes of noate, ſhould haue no other

guide or direction, *but only truth it selfe*, testified by such Authours, as couch nothing in their writings, but what they haue seene with their eyes, and not led by heare-say.

What care & reſpect ought to be in a faith-full hiſtorian.

In like manner, I deteſt such as by the selfe-same ignorance, burne day-light with a bead roll of Kings, reported vnder fabulous names, inuented vpon pleasure; as *Trithemius* hath done, after *Hunibald* the Lyer, the *Belgian Maire*, and those of his ranke: I onely honour and esteeme them, that are credibly obserued by the Romane Hiſtories, since the time as the *Sicambrians* (the famous Ancestors of the French) made themselues dreadfull to the Romanes, vnder the name of *French-men*, according as the Sueues vnder that of Alemans.

The dignity and maieſty of Hiſtory.

Full well I know that the Romane Geographers *Strabo*, *Tacitus*, *Suetonius*, and diuers other Authors, famous for learning, and especially in Hiſtories, which is (to speake properly) the Regiſter of Immortality, and Mirror of the worlds inconstancy; haue made notable mention of *Maroboduus*, King of the Sicambrians & Marcomans, acknowledged by *Augustus Cæsar*. But then to remarke the Kings his Successours; the queſt is obscure, and drowned in the Sea of eternall obliuion. And therefore we purpose to speake of none, but such as wee haue light of, by testimony of our enemies the Romanes themselues, in their Hiſtories and Poesies. Now; among those certaine and assured Kings, which ought to precede *Pharamond*, I obserue the first to be;

1. *Aſcaricus*, who commanded ouer the French, in the time of *Conſtantine* called the Great. The Panegyricke of *Nazarius*, made and pronounced to the said *Conſtantine*, enstructeth vs: that the said *Aſcaricus*, King of the French, and the Prince *Regazus*, or *Radagazus* his Brother, were vanquiſhed and ouerthrowne in a foughten battell, by the said *Conſtantine* at the beginning of his Empire. As much saith *Ammianus Marcellinus*, Secretary to *Iulian the Apoſtata*, in his 15. booke. After *Aſcaricus* and *Regazus*, succeeded their Cousine.

2. *Richimer*, King of the French, Father to King

3. *Theodomir*, surprized and defeated by *Iulian* the Apoſtata, who sent him prisoner to Rome, with the Queene *Aſcila* his mother; as we learne by the Hiſtoriographers, *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Renatus Frigeridus*, and S. *Gregory* of Tours, the most ancient French Annaliſt, in his second booke and ninth chapter of the Hiſtory of France. *Theodomir* left two sonnes,

Mellobaudes and *Richimer*, 2. of the name; Father to } *Marcomir* and *Ingomer*, } Dukes of the French.

4. *Mellobaudes*, King of the French, in the time of the Emperour *Valentinian* the first, who knowing the Valour of the said *Mellobaudes*, sought his friendſhip, and made him Conſull of Rome with him, in the yeere of Grace, 368. as *Ammianus Marcellinus* affirmeth in the 31. booke of his hiſtory. After *Mellobaudes* succeeded in the French Kingdome his Sonne.

5. *Genebaudes*, King of the French in the time of the Emperour *Valentinian* the yonger, according as it is witnesſed by that bright splendor of the Church, S. *Ambroſe* Bishop of Millaine, in his 25. Epiſtle. The said *Genebaudes* left two sonnes,

6 *Marciomir* and *Sunon*.

Both of them Kings of the French, in the time of the Emperor *Valentinian* the yonger, as it is obserued by S. *Paulinus*, describing the life of S. *Ambroſe*. These two brethren seeking to continue the purpoſe of their Predeceſſors, Kings *Aſcaricus*, *Richimer* and *Theodomir*, to posſeſſe themselues of the *Gaules*: were vanquiſhed by the Lieutenant Generall of the Romane Emperour *Stilico*. *Marcomir* was confined to *Sunon* in *Thuſcane*, and *Sunon* slaine some few yeeres after by the faction of the Romanes: As it is recorded by *Claudian*, in the Panegyricke and Tract *De Laudibus Stilichonis*.

By the death of these two laſt Kings, there was *Interregnum* or vacancie of Gouernment 17. yeeres, during which time, the French were conducted and ruled by their Princes and Dukes of the line Royall.

Marcomir
And
Ingomer.

Brethren, sonnes to *Richimer*, second of the name, brother to the King *Mellobaudes*. They were Souldiors in pay to *Honorius*, Emperour of the Eaſt, in fauour of whom they were preſent with a powerfull Armie, composed of the French, at the siege of the Towne of *Arles* in Prouence, against the Tyrants *Conſtantine* and his Sonnes, taken prisoners at the surpriſall thereof; As we finde written by *Sozomenus*, and S. *Gregorie* of Tours in their Hiſtories. *Marcomir* (eldeſt Brother of *Ingomer*, was Father to

7 *Pharamond*.

Seauenth (and not first) King of the French, elected in the open field of *Wrtzbourg*, the first day of May, foure hundred and seauenteene, as *Sigibert* writeth in his Chronicle: And in the *Diet* or generall Parlement of the French there aſsembled; then being Conſuls of Rome, the Emperour *Honorius* the eleuenth time, and *Conſtantius* (of whom we haue so often made mention in the end of the precedent Chapter) the second time.

From this King *Pharamond*, the Monarches of France deriue their originall; and of them, they make the moſt Illuſtrious houses of Chriſtendome to be deſcended.

Concerning the eleuation of this *Pharamond*, as King; the Preface of the Salique Lawe speaketh in this manner. *Marcomiris quoque dedit hoc Conſilium Francis, & elegerunt Pharamundum ipſius Filium, & eleuauerunt in Regem ſuper ſe Crinitum.*

William the Breton, in the first Booke of his *Philippides*; that is to say, the life of King *Philip Auguſtus*, called the Conquerour, and *Gods-giſt*, saith

Aqua Francigenæ progreſsi cum Pharamundo
Marcomiri genita, quem iam genitor ſuus illis
In regem dederat.

The same Poet, Phyſition in ordenary to King *Phillip Auguſtus*; and a Monke of S. *Denis*, the stately Mauſolus or buriall place of the French Kings, speaking concerning the changing the name of *Gaule*, into that of *French*, saith:

Et ſic terra fuit Francorum nomine dicta
Francia, cuius erat antiquum Gallia nomen
In qua Regali Pharamundus primus honore,
Excluſis penitus Romanis ſuſſit.

The Reigne of *Pharamond* was foureteene yeares, for he dyed (according to the learned *Onuphrius*, and other Authors before him) in the yeare of Grace, foure hundred and thirtie: then being Conſuls of Rome, the Emperour *Theodoſius* the second, for the thirteenth time, and *Valentinian*, third of the name, the third time.

His ordenary abiding was at the Caſtle of *Diſparch*, on the frontiers of *Thuringe* (where the Lands-Grauiat of *Heſſenis*) as we learne by S. *Gregorie* of Tours, in the second Booke of the Hiſtorie of France, and the ninth Chapter. But not in *Toxandrie*, that is to say, the confines of Liege and Brabant, as some haue imagined, who would change the Text of S. *Gregorie* of Tours: *In termin Thoringorum*, by setting downe, *In termino Throngorum*. For *Pharamond*, and *Clodion* his sonne, neuer had their setled dwelling, in any other part, but in *Thoringe* or *Thuringe*. And the place of their buriall, on the top of the Mountaine called *Franckenburge* (as one would say, the *French-mens Mount*, neere to the Forreſt *Boucone*, planted iuſtly betweene *Franconia*, *Heſſen* and *Thoringe*) where the Kings of the French, *Merobaudes*, *Ingomer*, *Marcomir*, *Pharamond* and *Clodion* his son, and Succeſsors had their buriall.

The Mount of the French.

In the yeare of Grace foure hundred twenty two, during the Conſulship of the Emperours *Honorius* the thirteenth time, and *Theodoſius* the tenth time: *Bonifacius*, Count of Affrica (as much to say as Gouernour) a braue and valiant Captaine,

Captaine, vpon some discontentment, reported by Saint *Prosper* of Aquitaine in his Chronicle, forsooke the part of the Emperor *Honorius*, and made himselfe Master of Affrica, to the great hurt of the Easterne Empire, continually troubled by the death of the Emperour *Honorius*, hapning the eighteenth of the Calends of September, some hundred twenty three, in the Consulship of *Marinianus*, and *Asclepiodorus*. Immediately after whom, one named *Ioannes*, Notary and Secretary to said *Honorius*, possessed himselfe of the Empire, and held it vnto the yeere following; when hee was ouercome by *Ardaburius*, Lieutenant to the Emperour *Theodosius*, and *Valentinian* the third made Emperor of the East.

Iohn the Notarie or Secretary attained to the Empire.

During these Commotions in Italie and Affrica, *Pharamond* resolued to get possession of one part of the Gaules, the very neerest to the hitherside of the Rhine. And thereupon, in the said yeere foure hundred twenty and two, hee sent a puissant Armie to that part of the Rhine, forraging round about the Cities of Treuers, Maguntia, and possessing themselues of Tongres, with other neighbouring places, wherein he planted good Garrisons of Naturall French-men, to inhabit there, as they did, for the better fauouring of such as should passe after them, and for further pursuit of the Conquest.

Pharamond inuaded one part of the Gaules.

It is also recorded in the Romane Histories, that in the yeere of Grace foure hundred twenty foure, then being Consuls the Emperors *Theodosius* of the East the eleuenth time, and *Valentinian* of the West: there was some agreement and Treatie of peace, betweene the said Emperour *Valentinian* the third, and King *Pharamond*; to whom *Valentinian* voluntarily acquitted what he had conquered (by the sword) of the Romanes lands, sparing some Territories of his owne in Italie.

A treaty of peace between the Emperour & *Pharamond*.

Pharamond had quiet enioying of the said conquered Lands, and gaue way to no one for them, vntill the yeere of Grace, foure hundred twenty eight, in the Consulship of *Taurus* and *Fœlix*, in which yeere Count *Aetius* (sent to defend the Gaules) surprized the French in a Towne called Helena, being at a wedding, slaying some part of them, forcing the rest to flight, and carried away the new married wife, with her furniture.

Aetius a famous generall of the Romanes.

We haue formerly obserued, the like act done by *Iulian* the Apostata. *Aetius* afterward recouered from the French, what they possessed on the hither side of the Rhine, as we learne by S. *Prosper* of Aquitaine in his Chronicle, where hee saith. *Pars Galliarum propinqua Rheno, quam Franci possidendam acceperant, Aetij Comitis armis recepta est.* As much saith *Cassiodorus*, and the Bishop of Auuergne, *Sidonius Apollinaris*, in the Panegyricke spoken to *Maiorian*, noting this surprizall made by the Count *Aetius*, and these are his owne words:

Pugnastis pariter Francis, qua Clodio patentes
Attrebatum terras peruaserat, hic coëuntes
Claudebant angusta vias, arcuque subactum
Vicum Helenam, flumenque simul subtramite longo
Arcus suppositis trabibus transmiserat agger.

And then followeth,

..... Fors ripa colle propinquo
Carbaricus resonabat Hymen, Scythicisque Choreis
Nubebat Flauo simillis nouanupta Marito.

Now, in the yeere of Grace, foure hundred twenty fiue (wee will no longer count the History of France by the Romane Consulls, which serue but as markes and dates of the yeeres) the French began not to be pollicied by any new Lawes, as if they had formerly liued altogether in Barbarisme: but reformed their owne ancient constitutions newly, and put them into better order, by command of their King *Pharamond*, a iust Prince and good Iusticer.

No new Lawes ordained among the French, but their owne old.

From all Antiquitie, the principall charges, as well of Peace as Warre, of Iustice and Armes, were held in France by Noblemen onely, without any calling of the Yeomen, or Common kinde of people: as retaining this ancient custome from the Gaules their Ancestors, among whom, *Plebs pene seruorum habebatur loco, Quæ per se nihil audebat, & nullis adhibeatur consilio*, as *Cæsar* saith in the first booke of his *Bello Gallico*. And after King *Clouis* became a Christian, in the Parlements of France held two seuerall times in the yeere, there entred none but the Prelates and Nobles; who likewise had their Prelatures. Nor speech was made of the third estate, till after the Nobilitie had preferred Ignorance with Vertue, and made a Trophie of it.

Wherefore, to collect the ancient Lawes of the French into one Code; *Pharamond* gaue order to foure principall Lords of Franconia, *Wisogast*, *Bodogast*, *Sologast*, and *Widogast*, Superintendents of Iustice. These men met together three sundry daies of Parliament, in the Seigneuries whereof they bare the names, as *Solohaim*, *Bodohaim*, and *Widohaim*, and couched them downe in writing, in the auncient Germaine language.

The ancient French Lawes collected into one Code.

Pharamond did nothing, but added the 6. Paragraphe, at the Title of *Aleudes*, or *Franchise*, which is the threescore and second of the *Salique Law*, according whereto, the successions of the *Fiefs* and *Franc-Aleu d' or High Iurisdiction*, held without homage, fealty, fine, or seruice, were ruled. And heere you may see the Paragraphs of this Title.

Paragraphs of the *Salique Law*.

1. The Frenchman (*Homo Francus*) chancing to dye without an Heyre masle, the Father and Mother suruiuing, shall succeed in the Seigneury which he held.

2. If the Father and Mother are deceased before, and the defunct hath brothers and sisters left; the Brothers shall succeed in the said Seigneuries.

3. And where there are no Brethren at all, the Sisters by the Fathers-side shall inherit them.

4. And in defect of them, those by the Mothers-side.

5. And if there be neither Sisters by Father nor Mother, nor Brothers by Father nor Mother, at the day of the *Franc-Mans* death; the *feodale succession* shall belong to the very neerest kinsman of the Fathers side.

6. *But concerning lands conquered by the French Saliens, and wonne with the Sword: Women cannot succeed in the totall, nor in the meanest part or portion of them; but they shall intirely appertaine to the masles, and from Lance to Lance, without falling vnto the Distaffe.*

De Terra vero Salicâ Nulla Portio Hæreditatis Mulieri Veniat: Sed ad Virilem Sexum Tota Terra Hæreditas Perueniat.

Thus you see the fundamentall Law of the Kingdome of France, the most famous of Christendome; which admitteth none but Masles to the Crowne thereof; it excludeth women, and the Masles descending of them.

The *Salique* Law admits no women to the Crowne.

But for better vnderstanding the subiect of this Ordinance, and what is meant by the *Salique Land*: it behoueth to know, that *Pharamond* hauing begun the Conquest of the Gaules; to animate further the courage of his people, and for a firme continuance, would needs appoint, that those lands should be in *Franc-Aleud*, or *Free Iurisdiction* (a tearme which is yet to this day in vse of that Antiquity, *Francorum Allodium*) that is to say; they were held by the Cheualiers of that Conquest in full exemption, as relying vpon God onely, and their swords.

Lands of free-hold, & without controule.

And forasmuch as among the Nations of the French *Hanse*, the French *Saliens* were the apt est to Armes, and most ready in seruices for their Kings: To honor them, *Pharamond* ordained, that all that which they had won in Gaule, should be named *Salique Land*. Imitating the Romanes in this point, according as in many other, among whom, the lands conquered from their enemies, were distributed, parted, and diuided to the Souldiours of the old Bands, and others, who were present at the Conquest of them, and so appointed as their recompences.

Salique Land so named of the French *Salians*.

Tacitus in his *Germania*, calleth *Decumates agros*, Lands vsed by the Gaules beyond the Rhine, and the large Danubius. Those Lands of nouell Conquests, being Frontiers and Limitrophing on enemies, were consequently subiect to courses and robberies, and which smelt (according as we vse to say) first of all the Canons powder, and therefore were left to the naturall inhabitants of those places, by the War-like Conquerors, to till and husband them, at the charge of *Champart* or *Field-rent*. And in this regard they were called *Agri Decumates*, of the tithe which they payed as a dutie, to the Lord of the soyle, and of the Fee.

Agri Decumates, turned Fields.

Such

Such Lands neuer fell to the Distaffe, but alway from Lance to Lance, *Nunquam a Lancea transibat ad fusum.* Nay moreouer, if the male of the Lords of Conquest were vncapable to make profession of Armes; by right of reuersion, those Lands returned to the Prince, who eythet kept them, or else inuested some other in them, by right of kissing his hand onely, or as his Liege-man.

This is that which *Lampridius* obserueth in the life of his Emperor *Alexander*. *Ea quæ de hostibus capta sunt, Limitaneis Ducibus, atque militibus donauit, ita vt hæreditaria essent, si hæredes militarent, nec vnquam ad priuatos peruenirent. Addidit hic animalia, & seruos vt possent colere quod acceperant.*

And *Procopius*, in his first booke of the Vandales Warres, writeth that *Giserich* being gone out of Spaine into Affrica, and hauing conquered a part thereof; diuided it betweene his two sonnes, *Honoricus* and *Gensonius*: *Theodatus* his yongest sonne being deceased without children. And as for the best Lands, Houses, & Cattell, hauing taken them from the vanquished Affricans; hee made partage and deuision of them to the Captaines that had borne him company ouer the Seas. So that those Lands (saith this Author) did afterward beare name of the partage, and of the lotte of the Vandales, Κλῆροι Βανδίλων καλοῦνται: *Sortes Vandalorum.* And so the lands conquered from the Romane Empire by the *Ostrogothes* of Italie, and *Wisigothes* of Spaine, are tearmed in their Lawes, *Sortes Gothica*, and by way of Brauado to the vanquished, *Sortes Romana.*

The Lot or portion of the Vandales.

So by the example of *Procopius*, and other Historians of ancient knowledge, the Alemans which haue written of the French Monarchie; baptised with the name of *Decimes Saliques*, all that extendure of the Countrey conquered by the Kings thereof, as well from the bankes of the Rhine, as on this side, and beyond the Alpes and Pyreneans.

Decimes Saliques, the Country so named of Conquest.

Women then, by the ancient Law of the French *Salians*, as also the *Ribarols*, the very neerest to the Rhine; succeeded (by defect of Heyres masles) in the Fiefs or Fees seated as well in Franconia, wonne without striking one blow (as we haue already said before) as in Sicambria. But in those of Conquest, they had nothing to meddle with them: and the reason is, because they are not capable of taking vp the Gadge of Battell, to beare a Banner, and to march vnder it, for the command of men; to whom they ought to be obedient, by order of nature, as also right Diuine and humane.

Women vncapable to inherit Lands of Conquest.

It hath beene practised at all times, among the Nations of greatest fame, that women neuer had any command. *Eumonius*, King of Sparta dying, left his kingdome to his Sonne *Polydectes*, who deceased also without heyres masle liuing, onely hee had two daughters, so that (by right) his brother *Lycurgus* came to the kingdome. He vnderstood within a while after, that the widdow to his brother was great with childe, and being deliuered of a sonne named *Charilaus*, which signifieth *Ioy of the people*; hee caused him to be acknowledged for King, giuing him the Gouernment, and the Regencie to his Mother, setting the Crowne vpon his head.

The truly noble minde of *Licurgus.*

The Empire of the Romanes was neuer held, or commanded by Women. *Aristotle*, the *Genius* of Nature, in the second book of his Politiques, and ninth Chapter, telleth vs: That there were some People valiant & courageous, gouerned and commanded by women, *Qui sexum in Imperijs minime discerunt* (as *Tacitus* speaketh for them of Great Britaigne:) But he excepteth the Gaules, vnder whom hee comprehendeth the people of Alemane, generally acknowledged by the appellation of *Celtes*, Κελτοί. They reiected the command of women, ἀκούω Κελτοὺς μὴ γυναικοκρατουμένους διὰ τοῦτο μᾶλλον ἀνδρεῖους εἶναι: *Celtas non imperari a Mulieribus*, saith the same *Aristotle* elsewhere: and here obserue out of his Politicks before alleadged. Ὥστε ἀναγκαῖον ἐν τῇ τοιαύτῃ πολιτείᾳ τιμᾶσθαι τὰ θήλεα τῶν ἀρρένων, ἄλλως τε κἂν τυγχάνωσι γυναικοκρατούμενοι, παθάπερ τὰ πολλὰ τῶν στρατιωτικῶν ἐθνῶν γένη, ἔξω ΚΕΛΤΩΝ, ἢ καὶ εἴ τινες ἕτεροι φανερῶς τετιμήκασι τὴν πρὸς τὰς ἄρρενας συνουσίαν.

It cannot otherwise happen in such a politique gouernment, where wealth and all the blessings of Fortune cannot be in any request; and principally, if men be subiected to the Empire and command of Women, as there be too many worthy and warlike Nations that are, the *Celtes* excepted, &c.

The Sacred Lillies of France neuer stouped to the Distaffe. To that blessed Monarchie may be appropriated (by good and iust cause) the saying of the diuine Wisdome in Saint *Mathew*: *Considerate Lilia agri quomodo crescunt; Non Laborant: Neq;*

Mat. 6.28.

Nent. The Lillies of the French field cannot be gathered by a Strangers hand, none but the Princes of the Bloud may haue any power ouer them.

The *Salique Law*, sole foundation of the Kingdome, excludeth daughters, consequently strange Princes which marry with them: And so *Lilia non laborant externorum Principum dominatione.* They spinne not, they neuer fall to distaues; *The daughters are onely to be seene*, and the children descendants of them, can make no pretence by them.

The *Salique Law* sole foundation of the Kingdome.

And to shew those mens impertinencie, who haue written, that the *Salique Law* is meerely imaginarie, and not aboue one ancient Author hath made any note thereof; as being onely forged by the French, in fauour of King *Philip de Valois*, sixt of the name, after the death of King *Philip le Long* his Cosen, against King *Edward* of England, before which time, this pretended *Salique Law* was neuer in practise: It will be approued, that it hath beene many times in vse, vnder the Kings of the first line, as well for generall succesſe of the Crowne of France, as for that of the French Nobilitie in perticular. And therefore it may be very easily knowne, that according to the *Salique Law*, daughters may and ought to succeed (for default of heyres male) in the Seigneuries and Knights fees comming by descent, as heyre-loomes, that is to say, Purchases or Proprieties from the father and grandfather, and such is the generall custome of the Kingdome.

Obiections against the Salique Law.

Proued vnder the Kings of the first line.

Lands made hereditary from the Father & Grandfather.

But according to the exception specified in the *Salique Law*, as being the fundamentall conseruatrix thereof; they cannot succeed in all, nor in part of the inheritances and demeanes of the sacred Crowne of France: then consequently, by extreame ignorance in the rights thereto belonging (as wee shall more at large shew in the fourth booke) the Counties of Flanders and Artois, and other of the same nature, being great Fiefes or inheritances of France; ought not to passe, or be from the Lance to the Distaffe, and so (to no purpose) the generall custome of Fiefes be preferred to particulars, which is the Law *Salique*, and so to be trampled on, to the detriment of the Kingdome.

Appertaining to the Crown of France.

S. *Gregory* of Tours sheweth vs, that the daughters of Kings of the first line, were excluded from their succession, although deceasing without heyres masles, and their Paternall kindred preferred before them.

The King of Paris *Childebert*, first of the name, (sonne to the great King *Clouis*, who caused the Church of Paris to be builded) had two daughters, *Chrodesinda* and *Chrosberga*, by his wife *Vulthrogotha*; and dying without heyres masle, the said daughters succeeded not in the Kingdom of Paris, but their Vnkle by the Fathers side, King *Clotharius*, first of the name.

Childebert King of Paris.

Charibert, otherwise called *Aribert* (of whom the Bishop of Poictiers had sung high praises, while he was of great expectation and hope) King of Paris, sonne to the said *Clotharius* the first; deceasing without heyres masles, left three daughters: *Nigerida*, married to the King of Denmarke, *Berthefleda* and *Chradielda*. The married, and the two other daughters inherited not any part or portion of the heiredome of their Father; which was partaged or diuided by their paternall Vnkles, *Sigibert* King of Austrasia, and *Chilpericke* King of Soissons.

Charibert King of Paris.

Guntran King of Bourgongne, another sonne to the said *Clotharius* the first, had but one only daughter, called *Clotielda*, whom he married richly, as well in goods as reuenues of his owne purchasing: but yet she had nothing of his Kingdome, and her Father in his life time, adopted for his sonne and successor in his kingdome of *Orleans*, his paternall Nephew *Childebert*, King of Austrasia. He had not any apparance at all, why he should depriue his onely daughter of his Kingdome, if the Law thereof had not beene his hinderance.

Guntran King of Bourgogne

Agathias a Greeke author, who liued in the time of the first Kings forenamed, writeth in his first bookes of the Gothes warres; that *Thibauld* the onely sonne to *Theodebert* King of Austrasia, (his seate Royall was at *Mentz*) succeeded in the said Kingdome, albeit he was very yong in yeeres, and vnder the charge of a Schoole-master. And that the custome of the French was such, as the Kingdome was alwaies held by the masles, succeeding one after another, as well in the direct line as collaterall, for the vtter exclusion of women.

Vnder

Succesion in the second line of Kings, from Father to Son.

Vnder the second line, the Kings succeeded from father to Son, without any changing: but onely vnder *Charles the simple*, for the yonger gouernment of whom, *Eude* of *Anion*, his Tutor and Cousin by the Fathers side, prime Prince of the blood of France, was exalted and sacred King, with consent of the generall Estates of the kingdome. Against this Sacring, *Baldwin* the yonger, Count of Flanders opposed himself, pretending that the Crowne appertained to him, in right of his mother Madam *Iudith* of France, Aunt to the said *Charles* the Simple. By finall sentence of the said Estates, *Bauldwin* was debouted in his opposition, and payed with such money; *That according to the Salique Lawe (fundamentall of the Kingdome) the Crowne of France neuer tooke knowledge of women, nor the descendants of them capable to weare it.* So, according to the resolution of the States, *Eudes* was Sacred and Crowned at *Sens*, by *Gaultier*, Archbishop of the place.

Bauldwin Count of Flanders defeated in his purpose.

The Lillies of the sacred Field of France, cannot be gathered by a Strangers hand.

Succesion in the third ligne beginning with *Hugh Capet*.

Hugh Capet, first King of the third Ligne, reigning happily euen to this present: by another decree of the generall Estates of France, assembled at *Noyon*, was preferred before *Charles*, Duke of Lorraine, Sonne and Brother to the Kings of France. Because he the said *Charles* was a stranger to France, and became a contured enemy to the Kingdome, the rest and quiet whereof hee had many times troubled, taking part with the King of Alemaigne, capitall enemy to the French, and so the said *Charles* was published vncapable of entertaining the Crowne. On the contrary side, *Hugh Capet* and his Predecessours, Princes of the blood of France, issued of the same stocke as the Emperour *Charlemaigne* was, he being in all occurrences, exposed to the perils and hazards of war, for maintaining the Order of the *Lillie*.

The continuance of the Salique law in the third ligne of Kings.

Vnder the third ligne, the *Salique Law* was carefully kept. King *Lewis Hutin*, tenth of the name, King of France and of Nauarre, first of the name, left but one daughter, Madam *Ioane* of France, in her owne right Queene of Nauarre, and Countesse *D'Eureux*, in regard of her husband. The Duke of Bourgogne his Vnckle, contested against *Philip le Long*, that the Crowne of France belonged to the said *Ioane*, and not vnto *le Long*. At whose Sacring and Coronation, the said Duke of Bourgongne was an opposite, and Madame *Agnes* of *France*, daughter to the King S. *Lewis*, wife to *Robert* second Duke of Bourgongne, Grand-parents of the said *Ioane*. By sentence of the Generall Estates, pronounced by *Messire Pierre d' Arablay*, Cardinall and Chancellor of France, the said Dukes of Bourgongne, and Madame *Agnes* were frustrated in their opposition, and intercepted by their appeale, from the sacring of the said *le Long*, conformably to the Law of the Kingdome.

Successor Imperij Francorum Masculus esto.

The Text of the law for succession.

A Verse sometime painted in Letters of Gold, at the feete of the Image of King *Phillip de Valois*, in the Pallace at Paris.

Charles le Bel, Brother and succor to the said *le Long*, being dead, left but one daughter, borne after her Fathers death, Madam *Blanch*, of France. After the death of the said *Charles*, his Cousine *Philip de Valois* came to the Crowne of France, whereto the Princes of the Blood are called, be they an hundred degrees off. Against him rose *Edward* King of England, third of the name, who pretended right to the Crowne of France, and Regencie of the Kingdome, while Queene *Ioane*, Widow to the said *Charles le Bel*, went great with childe, and then his preferrence to the Crowne, if she should be deliuered of a daughter: as it happened two moneths after, by the *Posthumus Blanche*. For the English King alleadged, that he was Nephew to the three last Kings, dying without heires masle, sonne to Madam *Isabell* of France, sister to the said Kings, and thereby to be preferred before *Phillip de Valois*, who was but a Cousine to the deceassed, and further off in degree, then he was.

Edward King of England the 3. claimed the Crowne of France.

Notwithstanding all whatsoeuer his Ambassodours could alleadge and say; the Estates Generall of France (iudging according to the Salique Law) adiudged the Crowne to *Phillip de Valois*, sixt and last of the name, who with his wife *Iane*, daughter to *Robert*, second of the name, Duke of Bourgongne, was Sacred and Crowned at Rheims, by *William de Trie*, Archbishop there, in the yeare of Grace 1328. on Trinitie Sunday. Their entrance into Paris was more magnificent, then any that formerly

erly had beene seene: So saith *Froissard*, where the curious Reader may more at large e acquainted with the whole Order and Ceremonies.

And thus was this cause adiudged, according to the *Salique Law*, and custome of the ingdome, as it is written by the Emperour *Charles*, fourth of the name, and in the hiory of his life. *Eodem Anno* (the first day of February 1327. the yeeres then began the first day of Aprill, with this distinction, before or after Easter.) *Obijt Carolus rancorum Rex, relicta vxore prægnante, quæ filiam peperit. Et cum de consuetudine Regi Filiæ non succedant, prouectus est Philippus Filius Socere mei in Regem Franciæ, quia opinquior hæres erat in linea masculina.* But there is a fault in these words, *Filius Soceri mei*, because of all the daughters to *Monsieur Charles* of France, Count of *Valois* Father to the said *Philip de Valois* King) which were nine in number, there was not ny one of them married to the said *Charles* of Bohemia, Emperor. Contrariwise, the deest sonne to the said *Philip de Valois*, named *Iohn* King of France, in the life time of is Father, had espoused *Bonna* of Bohemia, daughter to the said *Charles* fourth Empeour. So that the said King *Philip de Valois* was brother in Law, according to the orinary form of speaking, and King *Iohn* his sonne, sonne in Law to the said Emperor; herefore in stead of *Filius Soceri mei*, we should read *Pater Generi mei*.

A mistake in the Emperors writing corrected.

Otho Bishop of *Frisinghen*, issued from the illustrious house of the first Marquesses f Austria writeth: that the French did alwaies liue according to the Salique Lawe, eing the foundation of their Monarchie.

Albert of Strasbourg, saith in his Chronicle, *Francia à nullo habetur in feudum, & ullus ei per Lineam Fœmineam succedit.* Thus you see examples of three Royall lines, nd testimonies of Authors liuing in the third: now see the second.

The donation made to the Church of *Basile* by the Emperor *Charlemaigne*. *Insuer in Honica duos mansos, & dimidium præter Salicam Terram de nostra propria manu suam manum, vt iustum est, percepit.* Hee gaue the choyce and option to the Lombards, to be gouerned by their owne Lawes, or according to the Salique.

The Emperor *Lewis* the Meeke, or *Debonnaire*, reduced the *Sol* of French money, o twelue *Deniers*, because vntill his reigne it consisted of forty *Deniers*, whereof we aue already spoken in the third booke of the Emperors Capitularies at the 30. Title. *mnia debita, quæ ad partem Regis solui debent, Solidis duodecim denariorum soluantur, xcepta Freda, quæ in Lege Salica conscripta est, illa eodem solido, quo cetera compositiones olui debent, componatur.*

In the fourth booke of the Capitularies ordained by the Emperours, *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*, and his Sonne *Lotharius*, at the Title *De solutione & compositione*, mention is ade of the Salique Law. *Vt omnes solutio, atque compositio, quæ in Lege Salica continetur inter Francos, per duodecim denariorum. solidus componatur, excepto vbi contentio tra Saxones & Frisiones exorta fuerit, ibi volumus, vt quadraginta denariorum quantitatem solidus habeat, quem vel Saxo, vel Frisio ad partem Salici Franci cum eo ligantis soluere debet.*

Hinchmarus, Archbishop of *Rheims*, who liued in the times of these Kings and mperors, *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*, *Charls* the *Bauld*, & *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, in the book hich he wrote concerning the life of S. *Rhemigius*, speaketh thus: *In testamento a Beo Rhemigio condito Lector attendat, quia solidorum quantitas numero quadraginta denariorum computatur, sicut tunc solidi habebantur, & in Francorum Lege Salica continetur. Et generaliter in solutione vsque ad tempora Caroli perdurauit, velut in eius capitulis entinetur.* Behold most certaine and assured testimonies of the Salique Law, vnder ings of the second Ligne: now let vs mount and ascend vp to the first.

Clouis the first Christian King, hauing driuen on his Conquests of the Gaules, so arre as the Pyrenean Mountains on the one side, and iustly to the Rhine on the other; auised the ancient Salique Law, to be translated out of high Dutch, into the Latine ongue, to the end that it be vnderstood as well of the Romanes and other Nations, s of the French. And that the said Law might be baptized from the name of Barbaous people, such as were the Bourgongnons, Alans, Sueues, Vuisigothes and Vandals nhabiting the Gaules. Hauing thus conuerted the Salique Law into Latine, *Clouis* dded thereto many Titles; for order to the said Nations, being obedient to him, and liuing after the Salique Law.

The Salique Law traduced out of the high Germane language into Latine.

King *Clouis* addeth new titles to the Salique Law.

At the 49. Title, that is to say, of things ſtollen, known & conueyed to a third hande he preſcribed a practick rule, how a man ſhould gouerne himſelfe in ſuch a buſineſſe.

Si quis qui Lege Salica viuit, ſeruum aut ancillam, cabellum, vel bouem, ſeu inmentum, ſeu quamlibet rem ſuam ſub alterius poteſtate agnouerit mittat eam in tertiam manum, & ille apud quem agnoſcitur debet adrahamire (to make oath, and pledge faith, whether he had the thing ill taken, by exchange, or buying) *& ſi intra Ligerim, aut Carbonariã ſyluam* (that is, the Country of Flanders, and places round neighbouring) *ambo manet, & qui agnoſcit, et apud quem agnoſciter, in Noctes quadraginta Placitum faciant.*

Example by this of his addition. Theft and robbery.

(all delayes or prolongings of Iuſtice, as well in Gaule as Germanie, are granted and counted by nights, and not by daies) *& in ipſo placito quanticumq; fuerint, qui rem in tertiatam* (put into a third hand thoſe moueables, as to him tearmed a Guardian, and to ſequeſter for the fruits of contentious benefices) *vendiderint, aut cambiauerint* (by exchange) *aut fortaſſe in ſolutionem dederint, omnes intra placitum iſtum commonean-tur* (aſſigned & ſummoned) *vt vnuſquiſq; cum negotiatoribus ſuis alter alterum admoneat. Si quis vero commonitus fuerit, & aliqua Sunnis* (exoine) *eum non detinuerint, & ad placitum venire diſtulerit, tunc ille qui cum eo negotiauit habeat tres teſtes, quod enuntiare ad placitum venire debuiſſet, & alios tres teſtes ſimiliter habeat, quod cum eo publice negotiaſſet: hoc ſi fecere exeat ſe de Latrocinio; ille autem qui admonitus non venerit, ſuper quem teſtes iurauerint, erit Latro illius qui res ſuas agnoſcit, & ei ſecundum Legem ipſas componat, & inſuper pretium reddat qui cum eo negotiauit. Ita omnia vbi ſuus Hemallus* (the place and dwelling of Iuſtice) *ſuper quem res primitus agnita fuerit, aut interita fieri debent. Quod ſi trans Ligerim, aut Carbonariam manet ille apud quem res agnoſcitur, in Noctibus LXXX Lex iſta cuſtodiatur.* There needeth a delay or reſpit of three moneths, for ſuch as dwell beyond the *Loire*, or the Forreſt *Charbonniere*.

For Homicids and Manſlaiers.

At the Title of Homicides of Noblemen, which is the 43. *Si quis ingenuus Francum, aut hominem Barbarum occiderit qui Lege Salica viuit, &c.*

For Sureties called by their Creditors.

At the Title of Sureties (which is that of fooles) the 52. the Creditor cauſing the caution and Surety to be called, whom the Law tearmeth *Gaſachionem*, the demands thus: *Rogo te, Iudex, vt hominem illum Gaſachionem meum qui mihi fidem fecit de debito tali denominato ſecundũ Legem Salicam mihi inde eum adſtringas:* wherto the Iudge ſhall anſwer: *Ego Gaſichiũ tuũ illum in hoc mallo, ſecundũ qd. Lex Salica habet tibi adſtringo.*

For Borrowers & Forfeitors.

At the 45. title, which is of things borrowed, and not rendred backe againe: the ſtile for calling the debtour to Iuſtice is thus: *Quia res meas noluiſti reddere quas tibi præſtiti, in hoc eas tene Nocte Proxima* (the aſſignation on the morrow) *ſecundum quod Lex Salica continet, &c.* For it is a matter to be obſerued, that the ſtile of actions of Seizure, Acquitting, Renunciation, Acceptation, Poſſeſſion, Nouell diſſeiſin, and whatſoeuer is to be done in Iuſtice, was vnderſtandingly expreſſed by the Salique Law, with reaſonable delayes or prolongings. Each Style or tearme hauing the proper and ſignificant Epithite; which *Clouis*, *Charlemaigne*, *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*, and *Charles* the *Bauld*, and other Kings haue in their Capitularies, left in the high Dutche Germaine tongue, as elſewhere wee haue ſaid, without permitting any paraphraſeby Latine circumlocution. There are an infinitie of proofes in words naturally French, (beſide them rehearſed in the former alleadged paſſages) as *Vueregildum*, Fine or Amercement; *Alode*, *Franc-Aleud*, *Eriliz* or *Heriſchlith*, *Hoſt abandonne*, and an hundred more beſide. *Marculphus* in the reigne of *Dagobert* (Reſtorer and Founder of S. *Denys* in France) had bin Audiencer in the Chancery of France very long time. After the death of the ſaid *Dagobert*, *Clouis* ſecond of the name his ſonne, ſucceeded him, who obtained (by his earneſt entreaty, with the purſuit and ſolicitings of the ſaid *Marculphus*) of S. Landry, then Biſhop of Paris, an exemption of the ſaid Abbey of S. *Denys*, for him and his ſucceſſors Biſhops of Paris, which exemption continueth to this very day. *Marculphus* in his aged daies, became a Religious man in the ſame Monaſtery, & reduced into writing, the Stile and manner of iudiciall proceedings (which he dedicated to the ſaid Biſhop of Paris S. *Landry*) concerning the Chancery of France, which was vſed in his time) according to the Salique Law. King *Dagobert*, firſt of that name, died in the yeere of Grace 545, the fift of Ianuary; and *Clouis* the ſecond his ſon 652. So that (anſwerable to S. *Gregory* of Tours) this *Marculphus* is one of their moſt ancient Authors. This is the ſame man.

Significant Epithites in the Salique Law.

S. Landry, of Paris.

At the manner of weddings, *N. filius N. puellulam ingeniam, nomine N. illius filiam*

per Solidum, & Denarium, Secundum Legem Salicam in portione paterna cum fratribus ſuis filijs meis minime potes accedere There may bee alleadged numberleſſe paſſages, drawne forth of the ancient Formularies, as alſo the Capitularies of *Charlemaigne*, and his Succeſſors the Kings of France; which we let ſlip in ſilence, to returne to our diſcourſe of King *Pharamond*. And tell you, that after King *Clouis* had embraced Chriſtianity, and conquered France, ſo farre as to the Pyrenean Mountaines: hee cauſed to be couched in Latine the ſaid *Salique Law*, adding thereunto, what ſeemed beſt to rule as well the French as the Romanes, and other ſtrangers dwelling in Gaule. So that in his time the ſaid *Salique Law* comprehended from the firſt title, which is of Adiournements, to the account of threeſcore and eighteene: his ſonne *Childebert* the firſt King of Paris, added titles after threeſcore and eighteene, ſo farre as to foureſcore and foure. *Clotharius* King of Soiſſons, in imitation of *Childebert* his brother, added ſome titles; where ended the Salique Law, deuided into three bookes, according to the three Kings, *Clouis*, *Childebert*, and *Clotharius*. *Charlemaigne* in like manner added titles to them: *De homicidijs Clericorum: De cauſis admonendis, &c.* In the frontiſpeece whereof is this Prologue: *Hæc ſunt capitula quæ gloriosiſſimus Carolus in Lege Salica, mittere præcepit.* Now we come againe to *Pharamond*.

The *Salique Law* ruled the French, Romans, and other ſtrangers in Gaule.

To whom are giuen diuers Armes. Some, *Couppe de Gueulles a l'Aigle d'Or*, & *d'Azur a Lyon rampant d'Or, deſchirant de ſes Armes de derriere la teſte de ceſte Aigle.* Which is a deuiſe and no Armes, to ſhew that the French began to vnplume the poore Romane Eagle, by the conqueſt of the Gaules.

Diuerſitie of Armes, as diuerſly giuen to King *Pharamond*.

Others affirme, that *Il portoit des Gueulles a trois Corones, ou Diademes d'Or.* Or according to *Paulus Æmilius*, *D'Argent a trois Diademes, & Corones de Gueulles.* As willing thereby to ſignifie, that hee had three ſundry Kingdomes and Prouinces: as namely, *Franconia*, *weſtphalia*, and *Holland* on this ſide of the Rhine.

Others ſay, *D'Azure a la Pauillee, ou Lys Iaune de Maraiz.* To note the ancient dwelling of the olde French, in the Fennes and Mariſhes of Weſtphalia, and among the horned nookes of Rhine. Armes properly emblazoned, and anſwerable to the nature of the water, which remaining ſtill and quiet, receiueth ſo but one colour Ceſtiall, and like the Mariſh Lilly which is yellow, and not white. And in all theſe Armes, Deuices, or Blazons; euery man may abound in his owne ſenſe, and diſcourſe after his manner; for in matters of ſuch ancient note, there cannot be aſſured any certaintie, ſpeaking like to the Shepheard in *Virgill*.

The Rhine had many horned nookes, or corners.

Non noſtrum inter vos tantas componere lites.

But in mine owne iudgement, I hold that opinion leaſt warrantable, of the *Wallons* and other Strangers, who emblazon theſe ancient Armes of *Pharamond*, *D'Or ou de Iaune a trois Crapaux de Sable, ou de Synople.* And thence would deriue their flouting nick-name of French Toades, as figuring thereby the firſt dwelling of the ancient French, in the Fennes and Mariſhes ſo often before named. For by an innumerable company of Authors of note, which I haue read in my life time; I could neuer finde one onely man to inſtruct me, that *Pharamond* ſhould beare ſuch a wicked beaſt in his Arms. And euen to this inſtant day, in moſt part of the Prouinces of France, it ſerues for a deteſtable iniury, fit to be inflicted on none, but a man full of all wickednes & infamie. In Gaſcoigne, Languedock, Guienne, & elſwhere, they tearme it *Grapault*.

French Toads an abuſiue nick-name giuen to the French by the Wallons.

I haue ſeene neere to Bourdeaux, in the Abbey of S. *Sorin*, a remarkeable Tombe of Stone exalted vpon foure ſmall Pillers aboue the ground. And yet neuertheleſſe; it is full of water at the changes of the Moones, and the pretended Horne or Bugle of *Rowland*, which he wore and died withall at *Ronceuaux*, like to the figure of a Toade. Two other alſo of the ſame cunning performance, in the Priory of S. *Seuerine*, on the hill of Gaſcoigne. And on one of the gates of the towne of Bayonne, towards S. *Iohn de Luz*, there is an Eſcutcheon charged with three things like Toads; which I iuſtifie belongs to the Lord of *Hilliere*, Gouernour of one of thoſe two Caſtles, being the Key of France: & neuer were they intended for Toads, but only floure de Luces, wickedly made by the Painter & Caruer. For without wandring any further then to Poiſſy, in one of the Pariſh Churches of our Lady, you may behold at the 4 corners, the likenes of Toads; and yet notwithſtanding they are floure de Luces, ſo ill done, as nothing can be worſe, & ſauor of their pure Antiquity: for my ſelf, I think it a matter hard to be wel

Things verified by the Authers owne view.

A difficult thing to form truely a floure de Luce, but by a French man.

made, and represent a Floure de Luce minikinly trussed, but by an excellent Painter, a Frenchman borne, and ingenuous spirit. For a Germane, an Englishman, Spaniard and Italian, can neuer winne honor in proportioning it truly. The Germanes make it double, that is to say, a double floure in point and chiefe. Italians make it with shoots and Sirns, after a new fashion. In briefe, each stranger fashioneth it according to his forme, and so disguiseth it, that if this diuine flowre were not knowne in all parts and angles of this habitable world, there would be need of Painters and Sculptures to imitate the ancient Authors in the noble Science of painting: who by the saying of *Pliny* in the thirty fiue booke of his naturall history, and the second chapter, hauing begun to draw by the lines, traced on such shadowes as the Sunne yeelded; and not vnderstanding any other cunning, were enforced (that their workmanship might be known) to write vnderneath; this is a man, this is a horse, and this is an Oxe.

CHAP. VII.

Of King Clodion, Sirnamed with the long Haire

AFter *Pharamond*, succeeded his onely sonne *Clodion*, *Cloion*, or *Clogion* (for all these three names are attributed to him) sir-named the Hairy; because, as some say, he brought vp an ancient ordinance of wearing long haire, to distinguish the French, as well from the Romanes, as other strange Nations, which as then ranne rauaging through the Prouinces of the Romane Empire. Others are of opinion, that hee made restriction of this long haire, tressed and cordonned after the Anticke practise of all times by the *Francs-Sicambrians*; onely to Princes of the blood Royall, issued from his Grandfather *Marcomir*, and *Ingomer* his brother, to the end that they might appeare aboue the French.

There are in the History of Saint *Gregory* of Tours a great number of examples, how the Princes of the blood might be knowne, by their haire tressed, and bound after a different fashion. But in generall, all the French had a custome to weare long locks of haire; and therefore in the Authors of the Romane history, they are indifferently called *Crinigeros*; and in their owne Lawes, *Crinitos* and *Crinosos*. In the ordinance of King *Childebert*, made at the Pallace of *Attigny* in Champaigne, dated the Calends of May, touching incestuous alliances and marriages; it is said. *Cognouit hoc vna cum Leudis nostris, vt nullus de Crinosis in cessum vsum sibi societ coniugio, hoc est, ne fratris sui vxorem; nec vxoris suæ sororem; nec vxorem patris sui; aut parentis consanguinei. Si quis vxorem patris acceperit, mortem incurrat. De præteritis vero incestis commentionibus, per præditionem Episcoporum inquirantur emendari. Qui verò Episcopus noluerit audire, & excommunicatus fuerit, perennem condemnationem apud Deum sustineat, & ad Palatio nostro sit omnino extraneus, & omnes facultates suæ legitimis permanant.*

The Gaules vsed to weare long haire.

It is a case beyond contradiction, that the Gaules were wont to weare long haire, tressed and bound vp with Ribands of gold; and that their Colonies, as well of Allemaigne as of Greece and Italie, obserued carefully that ancient custome, remarked by *Homer* in the tenth booke of his Illiades: and by *Pliny* in his three and thirtieth booke and first chapter. *Est quidem apud eundem Homerum Virorum crinibus auram implexam.* And *Lucian* writeth in his *Carracon*, that among the Egyptians, the sonnes of Noblemen wore their haire tressed and bound vp behinde, with ribands and tissues of gold and siluer, and sometimes of silke. But the Gaules by being subiugated to the Romanes, forsooke this ancient custom, retained by the *Francs-Sicambrians* constantly.

It was in like vse with the Kings of the first line, and some of the second, who bound with ribands of gold and silke, as well their head-haire, as their beards, which the Kings of the first, second, and third line wore long, vntill King *Lewis* the young, seuenth of the name, who caused his haire to be cut, in regard of a certaine admonition given him by *Petrus Lombardus*, Bishop of Paris, whose Sepulture is to be seene in the Church

Church of S. *Marcellus* at Paris. Long haire, dangling downe so farre as the shoulders, continued vntill the time of King *Francis* the first, who hauing beene hurt with a fire-brand which fell vpon his head, caused his haire to be shorne, that hee might the sooner bee cured; but suffered his beard to grow on still, which was cut quite away from *Lewis* the seuenths time. And according to the example of King *Francis*, they did then weare their head-haire cut short, and their beards long.

King *Francis* the first, his head broken by a fire-brand.

For commonly the Subiect doth conforme
His fashions, as he sees his Princes worne. But returne wee to *Clodion*.

He began to reigne in the yeere of Grace, foure hundred and thirty, and his reigne continued eighteene yeeres, as *Sigibertus* saith: *Clodius filius Pharamond Regis Rex Crinitus Regnat super Francos Annis decem & octo.*

In the second yeere of his reigne, hee conquered *Thoringe*, the yeere foure hundred thirty and one, according to the same *Sigibert*, in these tearmes: *Clodius Thoringiam inuadit, & in Dispargo Castello Thoringorum aliquandiu habitauit*, where he died. His Father *Pharamond* began the Conquest in his life time, and had established his dwelling in the Castle of *Dispargo*, as we haue formerly said.

In the yere 445. the same Author affirmeth (concerning King *Clodion*) that he sent spies to discouer the Romans condition in the Towne of Cambray. Immediately following after them, he crossed the great Riuer of Rhine, chased the Romanes from the frontires thereof, and ouerthrew them in a ranged Battell, to their great discomfiture; he beleiged and tooke *Cambray* by strength, and afterward Tournay, crossing all the Forrest *Charboniere*, so farre as into *Artois*, and the Riuer of Somme. *Clodius Rex Francorum missis Exploratorib. e Dispargo Castello vsque ad vrbem Cameracum transijt Rhenum, & potrito multo Romanorum populo citra Rhenum vsque Ligerim Fluuium habitantium, Carbonariam Syluam ingressus vrbem Tornacum obtinuit, & inde vsque ad vrbem Cameracum properauit, vbi pauco tempore residens, Romanos si quos ibi inuenit, peremit; & exinde ad Somenam Fluuium perueniens, omnia occupauit.*

The Romanes held then all that extendure of the Countrey, which is from the frontiers of Rhine so farre as to the Riuer of Loire. They assembled all their Armie into a maine great body, couering this spaciousnesse of ground, to hinder the passage of *Clodion*. But they were driuen to flight, with a great slaughter of them, which gaue him the meanes to possesse the Countries of the Charboniere Forrest, which comprehended then Tournay, Valentiennes, Monts and Cambray, pursuing still his purposed point, through the spacious fields of Artois; as *Sidonius Apollinaris* reporteth in the passage of the precedent Chapter.

What a spacious compasse of the Country the Romãs held.

Quo Cloio patentes
Attrebatum terras peruaserat.

And went so farre as to the Riuer of Somme, which *Sigebert* calleth *Somenam*, by imitating the Bishop of Poictiers: *Fortunatus* in the fourth Poem of his seuenth book, speaking of the Riuers of France;

Isara, Sara, Chares, Scaldis, Saba, Somena, Sura:

She is also called *Symbra* and *Somena*, taking her fourse neere to the Fountaines of *L'Escault*, enlarging her selfe and swelling at *Vermandois*, from whence it maketh passage to S. *Quintines*, to *Peronne*, *Amiens*, *Abbe-ville* and S. *Vallery*, beneath which Somme runneth, and falleth impetuously into the lap of the Ocean Sea. Such then were the bounds of *Clodions* Conquests, according to the testimony of S. *Gregorie* of Tours, in his second booke and ninth chapter of the history of France; where he further informeth vs, that when *Clodion* attempted his Conquests, the Romanes enioyed from the forrest Charboniere, iust to the riuer of Loire; beyond which, the Gothes (you must vnderstand the Vuisigothes) held Gaule so farre as to the Pyrenean mountains, and that those people were tainted with the false doctrin of wicked *Arrius*, when the Bourgongnors (sectators of the same heresie) domineered beyond the Riuer of Rhone, neere to the City of Lyons. The same Historian *Sigebert* and others do not denie, that *Clodion* aduanced his Conquest any further then vnto the Riuer of Somme; although *Fundius* and some other French Annalists haue written, that hee made himselfe master of the City of Maguntia, and that of Amiens, a City heretofore built on the Riuer of Somme, by the Romane Emperours *Antoninus*

the debonnaire, and his Sonne *Aurelius*, and by them called *Somona britis*, in regard of the said Riuer, an appellation which was said to be changed into that of *Ambianis*, *Ambianus, ab Ambitu fluminum*. But beit howsoeuer, most certaine it is, that the said *Clodion* conquered the *Cambreses*, *Tourneses*, *Antois*, *Henaulte*, and the Citie of *Cologne*, surnamed by the Romaines *Agripina*. Whereof his Sonnes, and their descendants had the possession, and entitled themselues Kings, vnto the reigne of *Clouis*, the first Christian King, who exterminated them, re-uniting to the Crowne of France, the Lands which he possessed, as is recorded by S.*Gregory* of Tours, in the end of his second Booke of the Historie of France.

The honorable conquests of King *Clodion*, and how farre they extended.

Clodion hauing reigned twenty yeares, or eighteene, according to some writers, dyed in the Castle of *Disparch* in *Thuringe*, and was carried to *Franquembourg* in *Franconia*, and laid in the Sepulcher of his Ancestors. He left three masle children, *Ragnachaire*, *Regnauld*, and *Adalberon*. But being ouer yong in yeares, to consume the conquest of their Father, and maintaine by power of Armes that yong rising Monarchie: the French elected for their King, the first Prince of the blood, called *Merouees*, neere kinseman to the deceased King *Clodion*; because he was the sonne of *Richomer*, son of *Ingomer*, brother to *Marcomir*, father of *Pharamond*, and so by consequent, Cousine Germaine to *Clodion*, of whose Sonnes hee was Tutour.

The death of *Clodion*, and election of *Merouees*.

Saint *Gregorie* of Tours affirmeth, in his second Booke and ninth Chapter, that the said *Merouees* was issued of the Blood Royall, and a very neere kinseman to the said King *Clodion*.

Sigibert (to small purpose in mine opinion) maketh him his sonne, saying, that in the yeare foure hundred fortie eight, this *Merouees, Filius Clodij super Francos regnat annis decem, à quo nimis vtile Rege Franci Merouingi cognominati sunt.* And in truth, the Kings which held the Kingdome vnto *Pepin le Bref* (Authour of the Kings of the second Ligne, called the *Carlouingians*) descended from Father and Sonne to the said *Merouees*: And therefore they called the ligne of their Kings, after this *Merouees*, the *Merouingians*.

CHAP. VIII.

Of King Merouees.

THE Bishop of *Auuergne*, *Sidonius Apolinaris*, in the Panegyricke spoken to the Emperour *Maiorian*, obseruing the miserable condition of the Gaules, vpon the declining of the Romaine Empire, when so many Tyrants possessed themselues of their Gouernements, by the titles of Emperours (as we haue before declared) and that, in such confusion, they knew not who was their certaine Lord; makes the poore Romaine Eagle to speake in this manner

——mea gallia rerum
Ignoratur adhuc Dominus, ignoraque seruit.

And shewing by what meanes the French possessed themselues thereof, beginning their Conquest in the Panegyricke of the Emperour *Aulus* his Father in law he saith.

Francus Germanum primum, Belgamque secundum
Sternebat.

Enstructing vs, that they began it by the frontiers of the Rhine, and continued it in the possession of Belgicke Gaule, which *Cæsar* alloweth for the third part of the rich and abounding Gaules: And that the Romans after the Conquest of them (by the same *Cæsar*) parted and deuided it into many Gouernments, narrow limits and deuisions.

For,

The deuision of Belgicke Gaule.

For, concerning Belgicke Gaule, they deuided in twaine, the first and second *In Belgicam primam, & Belgicam secundam.*

The containdure of the first.

The first had within her enclosures, *Mediomatrices, Leucos, & Viri Dunenses, & huius erat caput & Metropolis Treueris*: then of *Mentz*, *Toul* and *Verdum*, of which the Towne and Citie of *Treuers* was the Metropolitane.

Iurisdictions of the second.

The second had vnder her iurisdiction, *Suessiones, Catalaunos, Camaracos, Neruios, Morinos, Attrebates, Ambianos, Bellouacos, & Nouiomagenses, quorum erat Metropolis Durocortorum Remorum*; Those of *Soissons*, *Chaalons*, *Tournay*, *Terouenne*, *Arras*, *Amiens*, *Beauuais*, and *Noyon*; of which people, the strong Citie of Rheims was the Capitall.

The same Belgicke Gaule was moreouer deuided by the same Romaines, into the first and second Germanies.

High Germanie.

The first, which they called the higher, comprehended *Argentoratum, Maguntiacum, Nemetes, Vangiones, cetera quæ Rheno finitimas Regiones: Strasbourg, Magunce, Spire, Wormes*, and other Townes planted on the banckes of Rhine.

The containdure of the lower Germanie, & the deuisions therof.

The second and lower Germanie, had within her iurisdiction, *Tongros*, *Neruios*, *Morinos*, *Maritimosque Morinorum Populos, Quorum Metropolis erat Agripina Colonia*: Those of *Tongres*, who were no longer of *Tournay* of *Terouenne* (raced during the warres of King *Fraunces* the first, and the Emperour *Charles* the fift) and the people dwelling on the shoares of the Ocean Sea, the Capitall Towne of this second Germanie, being the Citie of Cologne on the Rhine. This may suffice to vnderstand the passage of the Bishop of *Auuergne*, formerly reported, concerning the Conquest made by the French: But returne we now backe to *Merouees*.

The valiancie of this Prince, and the robberies of the *Hunnes*; compelled the Emperours of the East to accord with him, concerning the Prouinces conquered by the deceased King *Clodion*, with charge of assistance. For in the time of these proceedings, and the yeare of Grace foure hundred fiftie and one, *Attila*, King of the *Hunnes*, assisted with the Kings of the *Ostrogothes*, *Valamer de Ardaricke*, of the *Gepides*, and other Nations of the North, departed from *Hungaria* with a mightie Armie, which consisted of seauen or fiue hundred thousand men, wherewith he rauaged *Treuers* and *Strasbourg*. And on Easter euen, being entred stoutly into the Citie of *Mentz*: after he had pilled and ransacked it, he consumed it into ashes, putting to the edge of the Sword the Inhabitants thereof; massacring inhumainely the Priests at the Altar. From *Mentz*, like to an impetuous Torrent, cruell *Attila* went and sacked the Citie of *Rhemes*, passing wholly ouerthwart from thence to the towne of *Troyes*, without doing any harme thereto; but admiring the sanctitie of life led by S. *Lupus*, Bishop thereof, and forraging the rest of *Belgicke Gaule*; came to *Paris*, miraculously preserued by the deuout prayers of the holy Virgin S. *Geneuiefue*, Patroneffe of the Parisians.

The proceedings of cruell *Attila* with his armed forces.

Paris preserued from the tyrants cruelty miraculously.

From thence he went impetuously on to *Orleans*, which he besiedged, and prest so hardly, that it was euen at the next doore to destruction; but for the religious intercessions of S. *Aignanus* the Bishop, according as other Cities and Townes were, which he had desolated. But in a sudden moment of time, comfort appeared, brought by *Aetius* the Patritiah; accompanied with *Theudo*, King of the Gothes, and his Sonne *Thorismond*, who caused *Attila* to discampe, pursuing him to the fields of *Maurica*, from whence (on either side) they departed, to prepare for fight, as it is declared by S. *Gregory* of Tours, in the second Booke of his History of France, and the seauenth Chapter.

Where hither he giueth vs to vnderstand, that *Merouee*, succoured with the French (whom first of all he nameth) and the Gothes, fought with *Attila*, who seeing his Armie in confusion, in a good houre shifted for his owne safetie: there perishing in the day of Battaile (as well on the one side, as other) an hundred and foure score thousand men. Among whom was the King of the *Vuisigothes*, called by *Sigibert*, *Theierry*.

Aetius well satisfied with winning the victory, left *Attila* to his flight, and to vnderstand himselfe of the French, and the Gothes; gaue them apprehension of their people reuolt, saying to *Thorismond*, That it behoued him to make speedily for his

his

his owne Countrey, as fearing least his yonger brother, hearing the tidings of his Fathers death; should possesse himselfe of the Kingdome. *Ideo cum velocitate itineris fecit, quasi anticipaturus fratrem, & prior patris cathedram adepturus. Similiter & Attilam Regem dolo fugauit.* So the Patrician being alone; rifled (at ease) all *Attilaes* Campe, returning to Rome heaped with honor, and riehly laden with the spoyles which he had conquered. Thus you see what S. *Gregory* of Tours saith, concerning the battaile won against *Attila*, King of the Hunnes. As for the place where it was fought, some say, that it was neere to the Citie of *Tolosa* in *Lauragais*. Others say, it was by the Towne of *Chaalons* in *Champaigne*, called *Catalaunum*, on the Plaine whereof is to be seene an Oratorie and Chappell, erected, to serue as a remembance thereof. Others affirme it at *Chaalon* in *Bourgongne*, a Bishoprick, and no Peeredome, named *Cabillonum*. Difficulties grounded on the passage of *Sigebert*; *Conserto Prælio in Campis Cathalaunicis pugnatum ad diremptionem noctis.*

Cassiodorus, , speaking of this Battaile, fought in the yeare of Grace foure hundred fiftie and one, in the Consulship of the Emperour *Marcian*, and of *Adelphius*, saith. *Romani, Aetio duce, Gothis Auxiliaribus, contra Attilam in Campis Cathalaunicis pugnauerunt qui virtute Gothorum superatus accessit.* This Authour giueth all the praise and honor of this Battaile to the Gothes (without any speech of the French) in fauour of the *Ostrogothes* King of Italie, to whom he was a Courtier. And yet notwithstanding S. *Gregory* of Tours, who was not any long time from this battaile, obserueth perticularly, that the French came to the succour of the Romaines. And all Historians doe agree, that King *Merouæus*, and *Childericke* his Sonne, with their French, conducted and made the right wing of the Armie belonging to *Aetius*.

Saint *Gregory* of Tours noteth perticularly the place where the said Battaile was fought. *Liberata obtentu beati Antistitis (Aniani) Ciuitate (Aurelia) Attilam fugat, qui Mauriacum Campum adiens, se præcingit ad bellum.* That the field of Battaile was called *Mauriac*, or Saint *Maurice*, I cannot directly say whether (at this day) there is any place so named, or still retaineth the same, betweene *Orleans* and *Bourges*: but in mine owne opinion, I thinke, that the battaile was fought on the Plaine and field of *Cologne*, properly called *Campa Catalaunici*. For which there is a great deale more apparance and likelihood, then at *Chaalons* in *Champaigne*, and neere to *Tolosa*. For it cannot be credible, that the Armie of *Aetius*, suffising to raise the siedge of *Orleans* by cruell *Attila*, would giue him leasure to winne an hundred miles of ground, as there is from *Orleans* to *Tolosa*, and (at his owne pleasure) to spoyle the Lands which the *Vuisigothes* held from the Riuer of *Loire*, so farre as to the Pyrenean Mountaines, as we haue said, according to the testimonie of Saint *Gregory* of Tours. It must be thought, that two such puissant Armies, could not be any long time without comming to handy-blowes, in the neere neighbouring fields of *Orleans*, which was the victors prize and Trophee. To small purpose then did the Patrician. *Aetius*, after he had won the Battaile, aduise *Thorismond*, to come in all haste to *Tolosa*, for preuention of his Brother; if the Battaile had bin fought neere to *Tolosa*.

The Armie of *Aetius* raised the siedge at Orleans.

And lesse likelihood of trueth is there in their saying, who would haue it in the field neere to *Chaalons*; seeing all the auncient Authors doe agree, that *Attila*, halfe broken after the battaile won from him: speedily returned the same way he came in *Champaigne*, trauersing part of the Duchie of Bourgongne (then a Kingdome, where he trampled on the Bourgongnes bellies, & slew their King *Gundichaire*, who would haue hindered his passage) to win Italie, which he rauaged soone after.

The consent of all ancient Authors concerning *Attila* after the Battaile.

Priscus Panytes, a Greeke Author, and who was Secretarie to *Theodosius* the yonger, Emperour of the East, hee repotteth (better then any other Historian) the perticularities of the spoyles made in the Westerne Empire, by cruell *Attila*, hauing bin sent Ambassador to him by the said Emperor *Theodosius*, as himselfe witteth.

Priscus Panytes an Ambassador sent to *Attila* from the Emperour *Theodosius*.

Attila being resolued to forradge the Westerne Empire, *Valentinian* quickly leuied an Armie, whereof he made his Lieutenant General *Aurelius*, an *Auuergnac* by nation, a Senatour of Rome, and Prefect of the Gaules *Pretorium* (who afterward was

was Emperour of the West) to follow and to fight with *Attila*. who had his Armie compосed of diuers people, specified by the said *Panytes*, and drawne out of his relations, by the Bishop of *Auuergne*, in the Panegericke spoken of the said *Auitus*: who after he left the charge of Prefect to the Gaules, returned home to his Countrey house.

Iam præfecturæ perfunctus culmine, tandem
Se dederat ruri, nunquam tamen otia, nunquam
Desidia imbellis, studiumque & cura quieto
Armorum semper: subito eum rupta tumultu
Barbaries totas in te transfuderat Arctos,
Gallia, Pugnaeem Rugum comitante Gelono,
Gepida trux sequitur: Scotum Burgundio, cogit,
Chunus, Bellonotus, Neurus, Bastarna, Toringus,
Bructerus Vluosa quem vel Nicer abluit vnda,
Et iam terrificis diffuderat Attila turmis
In campos se Belga tuos.

He placeth in this band the Thoringians and Bructeres, people of Alemagne, inhabiting on the slimie Riuer of *Necar*. *Attila* with his Armie, consisting of fiue hundred thousand men, had already rauaged Alemagne and Franconia, pilled Tongres, and raced it from the top to the bottome, and burnt Treuers, without finding any soule to resist against him. At that time *Merrueus* betooke himselfe to guard the Gaules, and therefore prepared a great number of vessels in the Forrest of *Hercynia*: So say *Panytes*, and the Bishop of *Auuegne*.

Fiue hundred thousand men in the Armie of *Attila*.

Prorumpit Francus, cecidit cito secta bipenni
Hercynia in lintres, & Rhenum texuit alno,
Ibant Pellitæ post Classica Romula Turmæ.

It is generally knowne, that the Romaine Historians called the Kings of France *Reges Pellitos*; because it pleased them to weare Garments richly Furred, yea, preciously with Furres of Ermines, Letices, Menuuaire, the Sable Martin, and the Starnie Genettes. Already had Belgicke Gaule serued as the Theater, whereon *Attila* made presentation of his bloody Tragedies, putting all to fire and sword: hauing sacked the Citie of *Rhemus*, died red with the blood of the chiefest Inhabitants, and of their Bishop holy *Nicasius*, and of his sister *Eutropia*. As much hee would haue done to the Citie of *Troyes*, if the Prelate thereof had not with-held the blow: to goe and discharge his rage and barbarous furie on the Citie of *Orleans*, inuested with his whole Armie, and to be made desolate. But the good Bishop of S. *Aignanus* remedied the extremity, by his feruent prayers to God, for the conseruation of his little flocke: as also the sudden succour of *Aetius*, whom he went to seeke, so far as the Towne of Arles in Prouince.

The Kings of France vsed to weare rich Furres in their garments.

Earnest prayer hath affwaged the violent furie of Bloody tyrants.

His part being so secured, the King of the French, *Merouæus*, and *Theodrricke* of the Vuisigothes, in this common cause, and each one to conserue his Conquest: tooke part with the Romaines, although they had bin sollicited to ioyne with *Attila*, who thought himselfe sure enough of their Armes. So saith *Priscus Panytes*.

Freculphus, Bishop of *Lysieux* writeth in his Chronogtaphie, that at the siedge of *Orleans*, the Patrician *Aetius*, and the Kings of France and Aquitaine, *Merouæus* with his sonne *Childericke*; *Theodoricke* and *Thorismond* his sonne, gaue so rough a charge on the Armie of *Attila*, a braue and expert Capraine: that he iudged (at the first blow of proofe) he could not stay long without fight. Which made him resolue vpon the Battaile, and which was hotly deliuered him, without any more vaine marching *In Campis Catalaunicis*.

Auitus, contrary to the attempt of *Attila*, wonne *Merouæus*, King of the French, to his side; acquitting to him (in name of the Emperour *Valentinian*) that which his prede-

The French ioyne willingly with the Emperours forces.

Predeceſſour *Clodion* had made conqueſt of, belonging to the Romaine Empire, on this ſide the Rhine.

He preuailed in the like manner with the King of the Vuiſigothes, *Thierrie* or *Theodoricke*, whoſe ſeate Royall was then at *Toloſa*; which the Biſhop of *Auuergne*, in the Panegyricke of the ſaid *Auitus*, calleth (for honor ſake) *Palladiam Toloſam*.

Palladiam implicitis manibus ſubiere Toloſam.

He needed not any great diſcourſe, to animate him in ſo doing, becauſe (as the Spaniſh Hiſtorians ſay) cruell *Attila* had bin incited and perſwaded to come thundring on the Gaules, to exterminate (principally) the Kingdome of the Vuiſigothes of Aquitaine: by the King of the Vandales in Spaine *Genſericus*, father to *Hunericus*. Who hauing taken to wife one of the daughters to the ſaid *Theodoricke* the Vuiſigoth; vnder couler and ſuſpition, that ſhe would haue giuen him poyſon: cauſed her noſe to be cut off, and ſo deformed, ſent her to King *Theodoricke* her Father; who beſide had intereſt to preſerue Aquitaine, which the Romaine Emperours had giuen to his Predeceſſours, when they could no longer keepe it themſelues.

Genſericus King of the Vandales in Spaine.

A contrary opinion where that bloody Battaile was fought.

The ſame Spaniſh Hiſtorians ſay, that this memorable battaile againſt *Attila*, was fought in the fields of *Maroch*; without ſpecifying where the fields of the ſaid *Maroch* are. And moreouer, beſide them which dyed on that bloody day, the night before, *Merouæus* with his French, had giuen a Camiſado to the quarter of the Gepides, wherein more then foureſcore and ten thouſand men were ſlaine in the place. Thus you ſee what hath bin written by diuers Hiſtorians, Greekes, Romans, Spaniards and French, concerning this Battaile againſt ſtout *Attila*. Now to *Merouæus* againe.

Valentinian, third of the name, ſo wrought in his youth (fearing leaſt *Aetius* ſhould aſpire to the Empire) that he put him to death, without ſubiect or any occaſion whatſoeuer. And the ſame *Valentinian* (ſometime after) being in **Campus Martius*, ſeated on his Throane, and making an Oration to the Romaine people; *Scylla*, the caruing Squire to the ſaid *Aetius*, ſtealing behinde him; ſtoutly kild him. So ſaith Saint *Gregory* of Tours, in the ſecond Booke and eight Chapter of his French Hiſtorie.

* A Field neere Rome by Tiber for the vſe of all manly exerciſes.

Procopius in the firſt Booke of the Vandales Hiſtorie, deſcribeth theſe ſad accidents more perticularly. Affirming, that the death of *Aetius* happened by the contriuing of *Maximus* a Romaine Senatour, deſcended of the race of the tyrant *Maximus*, whom the Emperour *Theodoſius* the elder cauſed to dye, as we haue before related. This *Maximus* had a wife peereleſſe for beauty and modeſty, of whom *Valentinian* became ſo ſtrongly enamoured:

That he lou'd her a thouſand times more deere,
Then his owne life, or ought elſe n're ſo neere.

Where Vertue is conſtant, all affaults are impertinent.

But all his paſſions and fiery flames, hardened the yce of her faire and chaſte reſolution: when he perceiuing, that his loue ſuites and ſearches proued vaine and of no effect, determined to compaſſe his deſire by a diuelliſh inuention. He ſent for *Maximus*, to play with him at the Dice for a certaine ſumme of Gold, and *Maximus* looſing, ſet his gold Ring as a pledge to *Valentinian*. And hauing loſt it too, *Valentinian* compaſſed the meanes, to ſend it (as a token to the wife of *Maximus*, in her hurbands name commanding her ſpeedily, to come viſite the Empreſſe *Eudoxia*. She knowing the token, and crediting the meſſenger; readily obeyed, and came to the Pallace, where ſhe was receiued by the Court Bawdes (ready to all euill, vnprofitable for goodneſſe, the plague and vtter ruine of Princes) who ſeeming as if they conducted her to the Empreſſes quarter, to ſalute her: brought her to *Valentinian*, where, by the meanes of his incarnate deuils, he compaſſed his pleaſure by force and violence, like vnto another *Tarquine*,

Nothing more deteſtable then ſuch Court diuels.

This Chriſtian *Lucrece*, being returned home to her houſe, ſat downe and bemoaned her miſery, with vehement deteſtation of her husband, whom ſhe thought had bin ouer-prodigall of his and her honour. And making her ſad complaint to him;

him; *Maximus* was ſo affronted with horror and ſhame (being a man of high courage and ſpirit) that he immediately vowed to be reuenged. For hardly can men of vnderſtanding reſolue (with the leaſt patience whatſoeuer) to endure *Acteons* title. But there are ſome, that being banquerout of honor; will willingly claw the head with their owne nailes, at the baſe name of a Cuckolde; to deriue benefit thereby, or elſe to cloude their owne weakeneſſe.

The difference between truely Noble, and baſe borne natures.

Maximus pondering on the reuenge of his wiues honor, foyled by the lubricitie of *Valentinian* (Princes, learne by other mens examples, to bridle and ouer-rule your vngouerned appetites) gaue *Valentinian* aduiſe, to put to death the Patrician *Aetius*: becauſe it was whiſpered in his eares, that he would vſurpe the Empire of the Weſt, and (to that end) had intelligence with barbarous Nations. *Valentinian*, a yong Prince, followed the counſell of this *Achitophell*, without making proofe of his fidelity, or the vnfaithfulneſſe of *Aetius*, who neuer had conſpired againſt him. He ſlew him with his owne hand, ſo ſaith *Caſſiodorus* in his Chronicle, the yeare foure hundred fiftie and foure; the ſaid *Aetius* being Conſull of Rome (created by *Valentinian*) with *Studius*, named by *Marcian* Emperor of the Eaſt.

In this manner *Valentinian*, bad councelled (like to another *Reboboam*) by putting *Aetius* to death; did cut off his owne right hand from the left. *Caſſiadorus*, in the place before alleadged, ſaith *Aetius Patricius, in Palatio manu Valentiniani Imperatoris extinctus eſt.* The Biſhoppe of *Auuergne*, deteſting the Authour of this murder, ſaid:

Aëtium placidus mactauit ſemiuir amens.

With him was ſlaine the learned *Boetius*, *Præfectus Prætorium* of Rome (of whoſe workes we haue a good part, and ſome Hymmes in Latine of *Elpis* his wife, which are ſung in the Church to this preſent day.) *Aetius*, ſome ſhort while before his death, had practiſed the ending of *Attila*, like vnto that of *Holophernes*; for he being gorged with wine and foode, and ſleeping in his bed; was ſlaine with a knife, by the hand of a woman, that ſhould haue lien with him. So (at one time) happened the death of *Valentinian*, and totall ruine of the Weſt Empire.

Attila ſlain by in his bed by a woman.

Marcellinus Comes writeth in his Chronicle, that the death of *Aetius* was the loſſe of the Weſt Kingdome, in theſe tearmes. *Aetius Patricius, magna Occidentalis Impery Salus, & Regis quondam Attile terror, à Valentiniano Imperatore cum Boetio amico in Palatio trucidatur, atque cum ipſo Heſperium cecidit Regnum, nec hactenus valuit reluari.*

For in the yeare of Grace, foure hundred fiftie fiue, *Valentinian* being Conſull for the eight and laſt time (with *Anthemius*) was ſlaine, by the meanes of *Maximus*; whoſe wife dyed with conceit of griefe, in regard ſhe had bin ſo monſtrouſly diſhonored, which by *Froiſſard* and *Monſtrelet* is tearmed *Deflowred*. Her death happened in the ſaid yeare fiftie fiue, the ſixteenth of the Calends of Aprill. *Marcellinus Comes*, and *Caſſiodorus* writeth thus. *Valentinianus Imperator Occiditur in Campo Martio ab amicis Aetij, dolo maximi per Oſcilan & Tranſtilam Aetij Satellites, iam percuſſo Heraclio Spadone,*

Valentinian, being thus ſlaine, *Maximus* poſſeſſed himſelfe of the Empire, and tooke to wife *Eudoxia*, the widdow of *Valentinian*; creating as Conſtable and Colonell of his Infanterie, the Præfect of the Gaules *Prætorium Auitus*. As wee learne by the Biſhop of *Auuergne*, in his Panegyricke ſpoken to the ſame *Auitus*.

——— *Sed perdita cernens*
Terrarum ſpatia Princeps iam Maximus, vnum
Quod fuit in rebus Peditum, Equitumque Magiſtrum
Te ſibi, Auite legit,

And he gaue him charge to worke a peace, firmely ſet downe for confirmation of the Lands, already conquered on the Romaine Empire by ſtranger Nations: Which he did, acquitting himſelfe worthily in his charge, as well to *Merouæus*, King of the French, as to them of the Bourgongnons and Vuiſigothes.

Maximus, being cleare-ſighted outwardly, for maintaining himſelfe in the Empire;

The malice of a woman is implacable.

pire; was yet ſtarke blinde to himſelfe, ſo ſaith *Procopius*. For he could not containe his tongue, but one night reuealed his maine ſecret to his wife *Eudoxia*, concerning his practiſes, and compaſſing the death of *Valentinian*. His wife ariſing from him about the breake of day, diſpoſed her ſelfe to be reuenged on him, and wrought ſuch meanes; that ſhe ſent ſome truſtie friends of hers into Affrica, to *Genſericus*, King of the Vandales, offering him the Empire of the Weſt, if he would come ſpeedily, and reuenge the death of her husband *Valentinian*.

Preſently he ſet ſaile for Italie, and got poſſeſſion of Rome without any reſiſtance. *Maximus* was ſurprized vnawares, and beaten downe with blowes of ſtones, wherewith he was mangled in pieces, as being no way able to helpe himſelfe. According as the Biſhop of *Auuergne* writeth, in his Epiſtle *Ad Serranum*, the ſecond Booke.

And afterward, as a remarkeable leſſon to well aduiſed Princes, neuer to ſerue their owne turne with ſtrange ſuccour, vnder colour of taking reuenge: which (ordenarily) teareth the eyes out of the bodies and mindes, of them that ſeeke after ſuch aſſiſtance. For *Genſericus* robbed and burned Rome, carrying her into Affrica, that called him to her helpe, with her two daughters *Eudoxia* and *Placida*; as alſo the Treaſure of the Weſterne Emperors. So ſaith *Procopius* in his ſecond Booke of the Vandales warres.

Thirtie dayes after the death of the Tyrant *Maximus*, the Legions of Gaule exalted *Auitus* to the Empire: whereof he had the enioying, vntill the yeare after foure hundred fiftie ſixe, hauing reigned but ten moneths and eight dayes: and then conſtrained for his diſordered life, to renounce the Empire, as he did at *Placentia*. As is written by S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his Hiſtorie of France, the ſecond Booke and eleauenth Chapter. After his death, the Empire was vacant ten moneths and fifteene dayes; next whom ſucceeded *Maiorian*.

Now, while theſe tumults continued in the Weſt Empire, *Merouæus* ſat not with his hands benummed, or armes croſſe-foulded: for, taking his owne aduantage, and occaſion by the fore-locke, he poſſeſſed himſelfe of all that extendure of the Countrey, which is betweene the Riuers of *Soinme* and *Seine*, and eſpecially of the Citie of *Paris*. So that he was the firſt of the French Kings, that boldly affirmed Gaule to be a Kingdome, which happened (according to the Romaine Hiſtories) in the yeare of Grace foure hundred fiftie ſixe, *Ioannes* and *Varanes* being Conſuls. The ſaid *Merouæus*, to preſerue the memories of the Kings his Predeceſſours, and his owne: ordained, that all that which they had ſubdued from the Rhine, ſo farre as to the Riuer of *Seine*, and that which afterward he wonne in Gaule, ſhould be called *France*. He dyed in the yeare of Grace foure hundred fiftie nine, hauing reigned ten yeares, and had his buriall at *Cambraye*.

Merouæus the firſt King that made Gaule a Kingdome.

The firſt entitling of France.

CHAP. IX.

Of Childericke, Sonne and Succeſſour to King Merouæus,

HE had for his Succeſſour, his Sonne *Childericke*, a generous Prince, and of great hope in his Fathers life time. *William* the Breton, ſpeaking of *Clodion* ſaith.

At ille
Regia decedens Merouæo Sceptra reliquit,
Is Childericum genuit,
Ille Clodouei Regis Pater extitit.

But ſo ſoone as he ſaw himſelfe abſolutely ſeated in his Throne Royall, and of command with full power: he cauſed the French to looſe their good hope conceiued of him; by abuſing wiues and Maides, which appeared liking to him, drowning himſelfe in all vices and lubricities. Whereat the French being iuſtly offended; rebelled againſt him, and purſued him to death. Which cauſed him to leaue France, and withdraw (for his owne ſafety) to the King of *Thuringe* his kinſman, named *Biſſinus*, with whom he remained eight whole yeares. This retreate of his happened (according to the ſupputation of *Sigibert*) in the yeare of Grace foure hundred threeſcore and one; the third yeare of his reigne. He had a faithfull Councellour (an vnſpeakeable treaſure for a Prince) named *Widomarus*, who oftentimes had blamed his licentious life, which guided him to vtter ruine; by whoſe diſcreete aduiſe, he gaue way awhile to the Frenchmens furie, with aſſured promiſe of working his peace, ſo ſoone as occaſion did offer it ſelfe. And for aſſurance of his returne into France, the wiſe Councellour deuided a Crowne of Gold betweene them, which ſerued as a token to that effect. So ſaith S. *Gregory* of Tours in his Hiſtory of France, the ſecond Booke and the twelfth Chapter.

A notorious ſinne, when Kings grow forgetfull of their royall dignity.

Faithfull Councellours are Iewels about Princes.

During this time the French, being vſed to liue at all times vnder gouernment of Kings, elected a Romaine Senator ouer them, named Count *Gillonus*, as much to ſay, as Gouernor of the Soiſſons, and of ſome other Townes, which the Romans yet held in Belgicke Gaule, and ſo farre as to the Riuer of *Loire*, as formerly hath bin reported to vs by S. *Gregory* of Tours. This *Gillonus* had bin made Maiſter of the Horſe, and Gouernour of the Gaules by the Emperour *Maiorian*, and he ſeeing himſelfe exalted to this Royall dignitie; laboured the fauour and friendſhip of the *Viſigothes* Kings, to maintaine himſelfe therein, if the French ſhould chance to change, as they did afterward. For many of their principall perſons, were depriued of their liues by his politique practiſes; others deſpoyled of their goods, and all of any command, the *Viſigothes* onely being preferred: to whom Count *Gillonus* had giuen *Narbona* in *Septimania*, which at this inſtant time is called *Languedocke*.

Count *Gyles*, by ſome Authors of credit

Widomarus taking hold on this diſcontentment of theirs; wunne the loue of the French on the behalfe of his Prince, and (with one conſent) they accepted him againe to be their King: So that the halfe Crowne was ſent him, to ſerue as an aſſured teſtimony, that his peace was firmely made with them.

The loyall dealing of a true harted Councellor.

Childericke returned into France, reſolued on his better behauiour, in the yeare of Grace foure hundred ſixtie and nine. *Cum Egidius iuſto grauius Francos opprimeret* (ſaith *Sigibert*) *perpendens Vuidomarus eoſdem Francos Poenitere ſuper electo Hilderico, reuocat eum clam miſſo diuiſi aurei ſigno, egitque vt electo Egidio, ille reſtitueretur in regno.*

While his eight yeares continuance was with *Biſſinus*, King of *Thuringe*; he had wonne the amorous fauour of Queene *Baſſina* (whereof was diſcerned no outward appearance, or that this Woman, depriued of his preſence, was become extraordinarily affectionate towards him) and in ſuch violent manner; that ſhe forſooke her husband, and went into France to her gueſt *Childericke*. Who preſſing her to tell him, what had induced her to leaue the King her husband; ſhe made him this anſwere. That ſhe was compelled thereto, by a certaine foreknowledge which ſhe had of his valour, aboue all the Princes of his age, and that ſhe complained not of her croſſing the Sea, to ſeeke ſuch a worthy man as he, who had not his equall in the world. And therefore, meerely moued by her owne good opinion of him, ſhe had paſſed the Rhine, and made ſo long a voyage, onely to dwell with him. Which *Childericke* accepted, making her his wife, and in this marriage he had *Clouis* his onely Sonne, and two daughters, *Albofleda* and *Lanthilda*. The Hiſtories of Germanie doe report, that this *Baſſina* had experience in the Art of Diuination, and to foretell matters to come: Shewing to the King her husband *Childericke* thoſe Kings that naturally ſhould deſcend of him. Which ſerued as a ſubiect to the Prince of French Poets, to feigne this Nigromancie in the fourth Booke of his *Franciades*,

Childericke purpoſing to recouer his Kingdome, leuyed a potent Armie to make ſeizure of *Gillonus*, who kept himſelfe ſometime in his vſurpation, by aſſiſtance of the Viſigothes, and vntill the yeare foure hundred threeſcore and fifteene. Then *Childericke* ouercame him in a ranged Battaile, with ſuch a diſcomfiture of his

men; as he could hardly get forth of the presse, and gaue *Soissons*, where he left himselfe, without stirring any more all the rest of his life. *Franci post Vandalos, & Alanos, post Gothos, & Hunnos incessunt Gallias, non vt habitare eas diuptibus, sed vt sibi sint habitationi perpetuo, qui capta Colonia Agrippina, & Fugato Egidio Duce bellis multis Romanorum occidunt*; so *Sulpitius* telleth vs. *Childericke* making good vse of his victory, vn-nested the Romans from the Citie of *Cologne*: which he gaue (for his good seruice) to his Cosine *Sigibert*, second sonne to *Sigmacaire*, sonne to King *Clodion* in the title of the Crowne.

The Imperiall Citie of *Treuers* wonne from Count *Gillonus*.

And afterward, hee conquered from the same *Gillonus* the Imperiall Citie of *Treuers*, so many times wonne and reconquered by the French and Romaines, that it was the aime and but of either strange Nation, to make open sacke and spoyle thereof. This Conquest happened in the yeare of Grace foure hundred threescore and sixeteene, according to the testimonie of the same *Sigibert*, who but toucheth it in his passage along, thus, *Franci Treuerim Ciuitatem super Mosellam ceperunt.*

Childericke being become Maister of the Realme of France, so farre as to the Riuer of *Seine* (some few Townes excepted) went and besiedged the Citie of *Paris*, renowned in the time of *Iulius Cæsar*, and the well affected abiding of *Iulian* the Apostata, exalted to be Emperour therein. The Inhabitants whereof, who feared the furie of an Idolatrous Prince and Pagan, and seeing it at the point of surprizing, and their goods put to spoyle and pillage: had no other recourse but to Saint *Geneuefue* the Virgin, acceptable in Gods grace from her tender youth, endued with singular beauty of body, but much more glorious in the endowments of minde; issued forth for safetie of the people and Citie, shee being the tutelarie Patronesse thereof, and obtained of *Childericke* a peaceable entrance, in the yeare of Grace foure hundred threescore and eighteene, as is affirmed by *Suryus*, in the first Tombe of his Saints Historie, according to Saint *Fregory* of Tours in the Tract which he wrote *De Gloria Confessorum*, Chapter foursecore and eleauen. *Childericus Rex Francorum, tametsi non esset Christiana Religione initiatus, Virginem hanc sanctissimam singulari veneratione prosequutus est. Nam cum aloquando quosdam reos capitis extremi animi sententia decreuisset occidere, ne Sanctæ Genouefe precibus plecti posset ut misericordiam, ex Vrbe egressus, iussit portas occludi. At vbi S. Genouefe renuntiatum est, Regem eos necandi gratia extra Oppidum processisse; mox illis veniam precatur, & festinabyt. Atque aduenienti illa ad portas obseratas, consternatis stupefactis, custodibus, quæ sint quoddam tubentis imperium, reseratæ sunt; sicque cœptum carpens iter, vbi ad Regem peruenit, ne miseri illi capite plectentur, obtinuit. Ita illi iam iamque perituri, à præsentissimo mortis discrimine sunt liberati.* Occurrences which daily continued, by the feruent prayers of that holy Virgin, vpon the most pressing necessities of the Realme of France and Paris her capitall Citie.

Childericke a Pagan and no Christian Prince.

Childericke in farther pursuite of his fortune, possessed himselfe of the Towne of *Sens*, and the whole extendure of the Countrey, which reacheth frm *Paris* along the Riuer of *Seine*, and remounting so farre as to them of *Marna* and *Yonne*, in turning to *Orleans*, a faire and strong Citie, seated on the Riuer or mouth of *Loire*, of which it receiued name. *Ex Ligere quippe sibi congruo flumine agnomen habet indutum, dicturque Aurelliana, quasi Ore Ligeriana, eo videlicet quod in ore eiusdem fluminis ripa sit constituta, non vt quidam minus cauti existimant, ab Aurelliano Augusto, quasi eam ipse ædificauerit, sic vocatam, quin potius ab amne, vt diximus, quod rectius veriusque illi congruit.* This we learne from the Monke of *Clugnye*, *Glaurus Rodolphus*, in his Historie of France, the second Booke and fift Chapter. They likewise are deceiued, which beleeue *Orleans* to be the *Genabium* of *Cæsar*: because it is *Gien* vpon *Loire*, a Towne whereof one Subbrub retaineth (yet to this day) the first name of *Genabium*.

Childericke makes Vse of the aduantage of his good fortune.

This Citie was wonne by the said *Childericke*, from a Romaine Captaine, named *Paulus*, who being not able to defend it; made his retreate to the Towne of *Angiers*, whereof he was likewise Gouernour. As we are enstructed by Saint *Gregory* of Tours, in his second Booke and eighteene Chapter: *Childericus Aurelianis pugnas egit.* Which happened in the yeare of Grace foure hundred and foure-

foursecore, at which time a Saxon Captaine, named by *Gregory* of Tours *Odouaricus*, departed from his Countrey of Saxonie into Alemaigne, with a fleete of his followers, being Shipt vpon the Ocean Sea (pursuing the fortune of others of that Nation, who in short time after became possessours of Great Britaigne) and made their entrance by the mouth of *Loire*, forradging the Prouince of *Anjou*, and the Towne of *Angiers*. *Odouaricus, cum Saxonibus Andegauos venit.* So saith Saint *Gregory* of Tours, in his second Booke and eighteene Chapter; and possessed himselfe of those Isles, which make on the Riuer of *Loire*, and of the Villages belonging thereto, from *Angiers*, so farre as *Orleans*.

King *Childerick* pursueth after *Odouaricus*.

Childericke, being vnwilling to endure, that these new-commers should paire his nailes, or haue any pertaking with him: departing from the Citie of *Orleans*, followed in the pursuite of *Odouaricus*, against whom *Gillonus*, Gouernor of *Soissons*, had sent succour to Count *Paulus*, Gouernour of *Angiers*. But in the heate of these proceedings, *Gillonus* being dead at *Soissons*, left there (as his Successour) his Sonne *Syagrius*, so that the expected succour wanted feete to come. By which meanes, *Odouaricus* and his followers made hauocke at their pleasure, all about the Towne of *Angiers*, compelling Count *Paulus*, and those of the Villages of the Riuer of *Loire*, to send him hostages. This was done in the yeare of Grace foure hundred foursecore and one.

The Romaines shut vp in Gaul yeelde to ioine themselues with King *Childericke*.

The yeare foure hundred foursecore and two, Count *Paule* requested assistance of King *Childericke*, against the said *Odouaricus* and his *Saxones*. For the Romaines being detained and shut vp in Gaule, without hope of seeing Italie any more: betooke themselues to ioyne with King *Childericke*, a Prince very valiant and generous, who receiued them into his protection and safeguard, permitting them to liue, habite themselues, and gouerne according to the Romaine manner, persieuering in the Orthodoxall Religion, so saith *Procopius*, in his first Booke of the Gothes warres. And that which moued the Romaine Legions, to surrender themselues rather to *Childericke*, then to the Bourgongnons and Vuisigothes, was, because they iudged the rule of *Childericke* more milde and sweete (although he was an Idolater and Pagan) then that of the Bourgongnons and Vuisigothes, who were infected with the Heresie of detestable *Arrius*, no beast being more cruell and bloody, then an Heretique against a Catholique; for their Dominion was tyrannicall, and not to be endured. This also was the occasion, that the same Romaines, whose dwelling was vnder controule of the said Vuisigothes and Bourgongnons, coueted nothing more, then to change their Maisters, and liue vnder the French. S. *Gregory* of Tours in his Historie of France, the second Booke and three and thirtieth Chapter, hath a Tract very remarkeable, following in these words.

No beast more tyrannous, then an Heretique against a Catholique.

Interea cum iam terror Francorum resonaret in his partibus, & Omnes eos Amore Desiderabili cuperent Regnare, Sanctus Aprunculus Lingonicæ Ciuitatis Episcopus, apud Burgundiones cœpit suspectus. Cumque odium de die in diem creseeret, iussum est vt clam gladio ferirctur. Quo ad eum perlato nuncio, nocte à Castro Diuionensi per murum dimissus, Aruernos aduenit, &c.

The Romans liuing among the Gaules.

Saluianus, Bishop of *Marseilles* in Prouence, in his fift Booke *De Vero Iudicio*, informeth vs, that the Romaines among the Gaules, affected rather to put themselues into the protection, and be in subiection to the French, then to their owne Gouernours. (This worthy man liued in the time of *Merouæus*, and of his Sonne *Childericke.*) Because, saith hee, each Romaine Gouernour, would fley off the skinnes of his owne Nation, and eate them to the very bones. *Franci hoc scelus nesciunt. Itaque illic Romanorum omnium votum est, ne vnquam eos nesse sit in ius transire Romanorum; vna & consentiens illic Romanæ phalangis oratio, vt liceat eis vitam quam agunt agere cum Barbaris. Hinc accidit vt ad Francos potius, quàm ad Gothos, Hunnos, Burgundiones, Sueuos, vel Vandalos, quos omnes Gallias inuadentes Arianæ hæresis comitabatur, Gallorum Audia se conuerterint, quòd Catholicis populis tutior fides esset apud Gentiles, licet veræ Religionis ignaros, quàm hæreticos Catholicæ Religionis peruersores, atque persecutores.* This Tract is very remarkeable, whereof I my

selfe haue seene the practise at *Mont-pellier, Nismes, Niort, Rochelle*, and other Townes of the Kingdome.

And the same *Saluianus* obseruing the bountie of the French, and what singuler affection they extended to their guests, against whom they neuer knew what it was, to vse treason or perfidious dealing (which couered their imperfection, of being ouer-ready in speaking, or too much, and so, by consequent, very subiect to lying, as the Scripture saith: *In multiloquio non desunt vanitas, atque mendacium.*) This learned Bishop, making paralels of other strange Nations, with that of the French, saith, there was not any nation of the world more detestable, then that of Affrica; in his seaueth Booke of the Iudgements of God. *Paganæ ac ferinæ Gentes & si habeant specialiter male propria, non sunt tamen in his omni execratione digna. Gothorum gens perfida, sed pudica: Alanorum impudica, sed minus perfida: Vranci mendaces, sed Hospitales: Saxones crudelitate efferi, sed castitate veneranda: Omnes quippe gentes habent sicut peculiaria mala, ita etiam quædam bona. In Afris penè omnibus insunt omnia mala: inhumani, impuri, ebrioſi, falſiſſimi, fraudulentiſſimi, cupidiſſimi, perfidiſſimi, & obſcoenis libidinum omnium impuritate, & blaſphemijs addictiſſimi.*

A maker or vn-maker of Kings by the Nations.

If then the Nation of the French was beloued, and desired of the Orthodoxe Romaines and Gaules, although they were ingulphed at that time, euen in the depth and hell of Paganisme, honouring (as their Gods) Forrests, Riuers, Birds, Beasts and Idoles, fabrickt according to the representation of elementary bodies, & offering Sacrifices to them (as S. *Oregory* of Tours informeth vs in his Historie of France, the second Booke and tenth Chapter: by farre greater reason were they then, when they embraced the Faith of Iesus Christ.

Childericke thus followed by the French, and the Romaine Legions being also vnder his obedience; pursued the Saxons conducted by *Odouacrius*, whom he ouertooke neere to Saumur, as I haue red in an auncient Manuscript Chronicle, at S. *Bertrand de Comenges*, in the hands of a learned Diuine of that Church, named *Sarton*) and made a terrible slaughter of them: not onely on firme Land, but likewise in the Iles belonging to the Riuer of *Loire*, being couered ouer with dead bodies. So that the Saxon *Odouacrius* appeared no more in Gaule; but the Iles which hee had vsurped, remained onely to the French: As it is noted by S. *Gregory* of Tours in his Historie of France, the second Booke and nineteenth Chapter. *His itaque gestis inter Francos & Saxones Bellum gestum est. Sed Saxones terga vertentes, mult

the Bourgongnons(who at that time domineered in Gaule, in all that extendure of the Countrey, which at this day is called the Dutchie and Countrie of Bourgongne) with the Kings whereof, this yong *Syagrius* had contracted such habitude and frequencie; that although he was a Romaine by originall and birth, instructed from his yongeſt yeares in good Letters, and eſpecially the readings of *Cicero* and *Virgill*, to vnderſtand eloquence and Romaine Poeſie (in both of which his great Vnckle *Syagrius*, the ordenary Conſull of Rome, had ſo excelled, as to preſerue the memorie of him, they erected his Statue of Braſſe) yet neuertheleſſe, as miſpriſing the Romaine tongue; hee addicted himſelfe wholly to the Germaine, ſuch as the Bourgongnons there ſpake, and wherein he was ſo expert, that hee pronounced it better then the Alemans themſelues, ſo that they ſtood in feare of faltring before him. And to doe him the greater honour, they named him the *Solon*, and Interpreter of their Lawes, whereat the Biſhoppe of *Auuergne* made a mockerie. *Aeſtimari minima poteſt, quanto mihi, ceteriſque ſit riſui, quoties audio, quod te præſente formidet facere linguæ ſuæ Barbarus barbariſſimus. Adſtupet tibi Epiſtolas interpretanti curua Germanorum ſenectus, & negotijs mutuis arbitrum te diſceptatoremque deſumit. Nouus Burgundionum Solon in legibus diſſerendis, nouus Emphion in citharis, ſed tricordibus temperandis, amnis, frequentaris, expeteris, oblectes, adhiberis, eligeris, decernis, audiris.* And in the end, ſhewing the folly of ſuch giddie-headed Courtiers, as affect rather to imitate, and counterfeit the geſts and ſpeech of ſtrange Nations, then to follow their owne, ſeruing (by thoſe meanes) for tales and laughter to euery one; hee counſelleth him to forſake that vicious humour. *Reſtat vt cuſtodias hoc temperamentum, vt iſta tibi lingua teneatur, ne ridearis, illa exerceatur, vt rideas.*

Syagrius the famous Conſull of Rome.

A diſcourſe whereto while worth hath him and is much affected

Clouis hauing proclaimed warre againſt the ſaid *Syagrius*, went to meete with him on the Plaines of *Soiſſons*, accompanied with the King of Cambray *Ragnacaire*, Sonne to *Ragnacaire*, the eldeſt Sonne to *Clodion*, King of France, and, without conteſting or bargaining vpon bare words; fell to handy-blowes, with ſuch aduantage to the part of *Clouis*, that hee wonne the victory, famous by the taking of *Soiſſons*, and flight of the Romaine *Syagrius*, who thinking hee had aſſured Bourgongne for his ſafe retreate; was expulſed thence by King *Gondebauld*, who feared to incurre the enmitie of *Clouis*, a youthfull Prince, wholly addicted to warre and courage. So that he was conſtrained to ſhelter himſelfe in the Court of *Alaricus*, King of the Vuiſigothes, at Toloſa, to whom *Clouis* in all haſte ſent his moſt faithfull Counceller *Aurelianus*, to ſay boldly from him: that either hee muſt deliuer him his enemy, or elſe prepare for warre. *Alaricus* greatly dreading the French, and doubting leaſt hee ſhould haue to deale with them ſooner then hee would; as it was the ordinary cuſtome of the Gothes, to liue alwayes in diſtruſt and feare, (ſo ſaith Saint *Gregory* of Tours) according to the nature of Heretiques, ſleeping with open eyes, and attentiue eares: He deliuered *Syagrius* (bound hands and feete) to the Ambaſſadour of *Clouis*, who within a ſhort while after, and without making any rumour thereof, rid the world of him. And ſo by his death, the Romans had no longer any command, place, or retreate in all Gaule.

The victory of King *Clouis* againſt the Roman *Syagrius*.

The end of the Romans command in Gaule.

Hic finis fatorum Romuli?

During this firſt warre of *Clouis*: there were many Churches robbed and ſpoyled by the French (as yet Idolaters and Pagans as well as their King.) Among others, they robbed one, wherein there was a Cuppe or Challice, of great and admirable worth, with the Caſket and Ornaments thereto belonging. The Biſhop of the place, ſent certaine of his Clergie men to the King, with humble entreatie, that he would be pleaſed, to reſtore the Veſſels & Ornaments of his Church, or, at the leaſt, that great Cup or Challice. The King commanded the ſaid Meſſengers, tv follow him ſo far as *Soiſſons*, at which place, all the ſpoyles and booties won in war, were to be ſhared and diuided among the Souldiors; and there (very willingly)

Spoyles won in war Ꝑared among the Souldiors.

ly) he would deliuer them the Cup they demanded, if it happened to his lot & partage. Being come to *Soiſſons*, the whole bootie was laid in a heape together, and the King made his requeſt to the troopes of Horſemen, in theſe tearmes: *I pray you, O my braue and generous Warre-fellowes, that by way of right, and, as out of ſhare, you would giue me this Cup* (pointing to that which the Biſhop had ſent to requeſt of him.) Immediately, the men of beſt iudgement in the company, returned him this anſwere. *All the bootie heere, and all our goods are yours, euen as iuſtly as our liues (Moſt excellent King, full of all glorie) diſpoſe at your good pleaſure of all that is heere before you; for it appertaineth not to vs, to doe any thing contrary to your Will.* At theſe words, one in the troupe; enuious, mutinous, raſh, and full of ſpleene, cried out in a fooliſh brauerie (lifting vp a Battell-Axe which he held in his hand, & letting it fall rudely on the Cup) and out-facing the King, replied: *You ſhall haue nothing heere, except by lot and partage it fall to your ſhare.* All there preſent, ſtanding as confounded with amazement, at the affronted impudence of this Gallant: the King endured the offence patiently, and taking the Cup vp, being bruiſed and battered as it was, deliuered it to the Biſhops deputies, awaiting fit time & opportunity, to make him know and feele what iuſtly belonged to his ouer-bold behauiour.

The beſt companies are not free fró one or other degenerate mindle among them.

At the yeeres end, the King made a generall Muſter of his Horſe-troupes in the field of *Mars*, to ſee in what condition they were accouſtred. Going himſelf in perſon throughout all the rankes & quarters of his troups; he came at laſt to him that had ſo raſhly offended the yeere before. *How happens this?* quoth he, *Is this fit furniture for a Horſe man? There is not any man in the Army ſo much out of order, nor ſo badly armed as thou art: for this Lance of thine is not worth any thing; thy ſword is ruſty in thy ſcabberd, and this Battell-axe fit for no imployment.* And as he ſpake the words, he raiſed vp the Battell-axe, and let it fall ſo heauily on his head, that he puſhed it in peeces, a iuſt payment in his owne coyne, ſaying. *So didſt thou at Soiſſons the yeere paſt, vpon the Cuppe which was freely giuen me.* The miſerable wretch lying there dead, and iuſtly puniſhed for his boldneſſe: it ſerued as a leſſon to the heads of Regiments, and a meet example for due obedience and honour to Princes, and after this was done, he diſmiſſed his Armie.

Raſh & ſaucie rudeneſſe very royally recompenced.

This act of Iuſtice, and puniſhment ſo exemplarly made, raiſed great hope in the Religious Catholikes: that God would (one day) open the eyes of this great Prince, and let him vnderſtand the vnprofitable ſeruice of his falſe gods, by breaking them in peeces, and giuing true worſhip to Ieſus Chriſt. According as it came to paſſe 9. yeres after; when making profeſſion of the Orthodoxall Religion, hee repaired his former offences committed during his Paganiſme, in robbing & burning Churches, rebuilded by his command, and richly endowed. Particularly that of Rheimes, which he ſtored with Riches, exquiſite Ornaments, endowments and great Signeuries: as it is declared in the Hiſtory of the Church at Rheimes, compoſed by *Hincmarus* the Arch-biſhop, and *Floardus* the Arch-Prieſt thereof.

Good beginnings are no meane encouragement to vertuous mindes.

Particularly (I ſay) hee enriched that Church, in fauour of Saint *Rhemigius*, whom hee affected with a fatherly loue, heaping honour and wealth vpon him, becauſe hee made him know the way to ſaluation, Baptizing and Sacring him.

For that Cup before remembred, *Clouis* gaue one of Siluer to the fore-ſaid Saint *Rhemigius*, as hee wrote himſelfe in his Teſtament. *Aliud Argenteum Vas decem librarum; quod mihi ſæpe nominatus Dominus, illuſtriſque memoriæ Hludouicus Rex (quem vt prædixi) de Sacro Baptiſmi fonte ſuſcepi donare dignatus eſt, vt de eo facerem, quod ipſe valuiſſem; tibi Hæredi meæ Eccleſiæ ſupra memoratæ iubeo thuribulum, & Imaginatum Calicem fabricari, & Epigrammata quæ Lauduni (Laon in Laonnois, where Saint Rhemigius erected the Cathedrall Church) in argenteo ipſe dictaui, in hoc quoque inſcribi volo, quod per me faciam, ſi habuero ſpatium vitæ.*

Clouis hauing made his firſt eſſay and attempt, againſt *Syagrius*; at the inſtant requeſt of his Mother, who much deſired to reuenge her ſelfe on the King of *Thuringe Baſinus*, for blazing euill Rumors abroad of her: hee vnderrooke the Warre of *Thuringe*, wherein he had the victory, making the Kingdome Tributary, and ſubiect to the Crowne of France, commanding the people there, to bee afterward gouerned and ordered according the *Salique Law*.

Clouis conquered *Baſinus* K. of *Thuringe*.

This

This hapned in the yeere of Grace, foure hundred foureſcore and fourteene, and the tenth of his reigne.

Three yeeres after, he re-conquered that which his Father had wonne on the Riuer of Loire, and after laid a long ſiege to the Caſtle of *Meleun*, a place then thought to be impregnable, which he gaue as a gift, and the whole Prouince about it, to his Loyall Counceller *Aurelianus*. For he the ſame yeere (ro wit, foureſcore and ſeuenteene) had managed the marriage of King *Clouis* his Maſter, with *Clotilda*, the Princeſſe of Bourgongne.

The race of the Kings of Bourgongne from *Athanaricus* the Tyrant.

Of the blood and race of *Athanaricus*, a King cruell and bloudy againſt Chriſtians, was borne *Gondericus*, King of Bourgongne, who had foure ſonnes, to wit, *Gondebauld*, *Godegiſillus*, *Chilpericus*, and *Godomarus*. *Gondebauld* the eldeſt ſonne, ſlew his Brother *Chilpericus*, and threw his Wife into the Riuer of Roſne or Rhene, with a great ſtone about her necke, and there ſhee was drowned. *Chilpericus* left two daughters, the eldeſt whereof being named *Mucurna*, was by *Gombauld* made a religious profeſſed Nunne: and as for the youngeſt called *Crothilda*, hee kept her neere vnto himſelfe.

The faireſt bodies doe vſually contain the faireſt ſoules.

Aurelianus, who oftentimes went and came into Bourgongne for his Maſter, hauing ſeene the young Princeſſe, endued with exquiſite beauty of body, and ſo (conſequently) of the ſoule, (for, according to the teſtimony of Diuine *Plato*, within the faireſt bodies doe ordinarily dwell the faireſt ſoules) made ſuch report of her to his maſter, that he reſolued to make demand for her of the King of Bourgongne, as accordingly *Aurelianus* did. *Gombauld* durſt not vſe any deniall; but hauing affianced her, after the ancient cuſtome of the French, he brought her into the City of Soiſſons, where the marriage was ſolemnized with all magnificence. So ſimply ſpeaketh S *Gregory* of Tours, in his ſecond booke and eight and twenty chapter; without ſpecifying what was the ancient cuſtome of Marriages obſerued by the Gaules and French.

Fredegarus the Scholaſticke, in his Hiſtory of France, obſerueth the ſame particularly, by this notable paſſage: *Clodoueus Legatos ad Gondebaldum dirigit, petens vt Chrotilde neptem ſuam ei in coniugium ſociandam traderet. Quod ille denegare metuens, & ſperans amicitiam cum Clodoueo inire, eam daturum ſpopondit Legati offerentes Solido, & Denario, vt Mos erat Francorum, eam partibus Clodouei deſponſant.*

Maides thus bought with the price of one *Sol* and one *Denier* (the ancient cuſtome whereof is yet ſtill retained at Paris, on the wedding day, to giue to the wife thirteene peeces of gold or of ſiluer, or a thirteene penny-peece at the leaſt) is in the *Salique Law* called in the old French Language, that is to ſay, High Dutch, *Druchies*: At the fourteenth title *De Rapt*, or rauiſhment of maides, the tenth Paragraphe. *Si quis puellam, quæ Druchte (deſponſata) ducitur ad maritum, in via adſalierit, & cum ipſa violenter Mœchatus fuerit, VIIII. Denarios: qui faciunt ſolidos C C, culpabilis iudicatur.*

Reaſons yeelded, why the husband bought his wife.

This *Sol*, and this *Denier* of ſiluer, was giuen to the Father of the Maide, to the Vncle, or to her neereſt Kinſman, to ſhew that ſhe was bought. And to the end that ſhe ſhould not expect to command her husband, but to obey him, and to doe him ſeruice. Becauſe, that by the meanes of this buying, it was publiquely vnderſtood, that the husband had power of her, both in life and death, as wee ſhall hereafter declare more at large.

Moreouer, euen to this day in Turkie, as well as in the Eaſt, as alſo the Eaſt & Weſt Indies, he that hath moſt daughters, doth enrich himſelfe by them.

Widdows alſo to be bought in their ſecond marriages.

In like manner, in the *Salique Law*, Widdowes comming to bee ioyned againe in ſecond marriage; he that was willing to eſpouſe her, ſhould enter bond and couenant, to pay vnto her neereſt Kinſman, a certaine ſumme of *Deniers*, which ſhe called *Reippus* in the *Thioſte* Language: that is to ſay, three *Sols* and one *Denier* of ſiluer. *Si quis Homo moriens Viduam dimiſerit, & eam quis in coniugium voluerit accipere, antequam eam accipiat Tunginus vel Centenarius Mallum indicent, & in ipſo mallo Scutum habere debent, & tres homines cauſa tres demandare; & tunc ille qui viduam accipere vult, cum tribus teſtibus, qui adprobare debent, Tres Solidos Æque Penſantes, & Denarium Habere Debet, & hoc facto, ſi eis conuenit, Viduam accipiat.*

At the ſecond Paragraphe of the ſame fortie ſixe Title *De Reippis*, hee that eſpouſed the

the Widdow without paying this price, ſhould pay to the neereſt kinſman of the partie deceaſed, the Amercement ſpecified in the Law. *Si vero iſta non fecerit, & ſic eam acceperit, ille cui Reippus debetur LIDs. qui faciunt Solidos LXII. culpabilis iudicetur.*

At the third. *Si autem quæ ſuperius diximus, omnia ſecundum Legem impleuerit, & Tres Solidos & Denarium ille cui Reippus detur acceperit, tunc eam legittime accipiat.* And this arrerage of dutie, appertained to the Parents of the deceaſed, from degree to degree, euen to the ſixt knee, *Vſque ad ſextum genuculum*, as the Law it ſelfe ſpeaketh. And for want of kinred in the ſaid ſixt degree, this *Reippus* belonged, and was payed to the Kings Houſhold or Exchecquer; or to the Lord Feodall and Fee-farmer, and the Amercement before ſpecified. *Si autem nullus niſi poſt ſextum genuculum proximus fuerit, in Fiſcum ipſe Reippus, vel cauſa quæ inde orta fuerit, colligatur.*

The forme and ſtile of Contracts and marriage of the Ancient French, was preſcribed and taught vnto vs, by the Monke of S. *Denys Marculphus*. *N. filius. N. puellam ingenuam nomine. N. illius. N. filiam, Per Solidum & Denarium Secundum Legem Salicam, & antiquam conſuetudinem deſponſauit.*

The French hated Bigamy or ſecond marriage.

Now the reaſon why more Ceremonies were vſed at the marriages of Widdows, then of maides, was: becauſe the French (very ſeldome and rarely) ioyned againe in ſecond marriages; for they abhorred Bigamie, and plurality of Wiues: So wee are inſtructed by the Noble Romane Hiſtorian *Tacitus*, in the Tract which he wrote, *De moribus Germanorum*. Second marriage being alwaies exempted, eſpecially on the Womans ſide, as branded with the crime of impudicity, or of lubricitie. *Melius quidem adhuc ea Ciuitatis* (ſaith *Tacitus*) *in quibus Tantum Virgines Nubunt, & cum ſpe, votoque uxoris ſemel tranſigitur. Sic vnum accipiunt maritum quomodo vnum corpus, vnamque vitam, ne vlla cogitatio vltra, ne longior cupiditas, ne tanquam maritum, ſed tanquam matrimonium ament.* The whole deſire and ambition of maids, was, to be but once maried. She receiued her husband, to liue the reſt of her life with him, as one and the ſame bodie, and one and the ſame life. Her thoughts had no further expectation (after the death of her Spouſe) to combine againe a ſecond marriage. She had her heart, and the eyes of her body and minde, onely fixed vpon her houſhold affaires, and nurtriture of her children: *Suæ quemque mater vberibus alit, nec ancillis, aut nutricibus delegantur.* They tooke as great delight, in nurſing their children with their owne milke, as bringing them into the world.

The renowme of Maides to be but once married.

It was of this people that the great *Tertullian* ſpake: *Monogamia apud Ethnicos ſumme inhonore eſt, & inſolentibus, & inauſpicijs prior eſt Vniuiræ locus, & ipſa Flaminia non niſi vniuira eſt.* And to keepe the perpetuall fire in Rome (introduced by *Numa Pompilius*, in imitation of the Perſians and Iewes) they tooke none for Veſtalls, but ſuch as were borne of Father and Mother no Bigamies. *Tacitus* at the end of his ſecond Annales, ſpeaking of the daughter to *Domitius Pollio*, preferreth her before the reſt: *Non ob aliud, quam mater eius in eodem coniugio manebat*, becauſe ſhe had neuer conſented to a ſecond marriage.

And although it was the ordinary cuſtome among the wiues of the French, to haue their armes diſcouered, and their breaſts (as white as ſnow) bare, as *Ammianus Marcellinus* ſaith, which rather prouoketh deſire to women in an vntemperate man, then otherwiſe: yet ſo it was, that euery man contented himſelfe, without changing his owne fruite-basket; for *Tacitus* ſaith: *Singulis vxoribus contenti ſunt.* Alſo this was the reaſon, why the husband ſerued as a mirror and example to his wife, for making her modeſt.

Concerning a wife taken in the act of adultery, and her puniſhment.

And therefore ſo few Adulteries were noated among the French: *Pauciſſima in tam numeroſa gente adulteria.* And if the Husband tooke his Wife in the fault; he himſelfe, without any reſpect of her extraction, wealth, or age, acted his owne reuenge, and without any hinderance of the world. And hee that was moſt mercifull, ſatisfied himſelfe (hauing taken his Wife in the act) with ſhauing of her haire, and then ſtripping her naked in the preſence of her kindred and friends, thruſt her forth of his dores, and (in that manner) made her to walke about the City, that is to ſay, whipping her with rods, in ſight of all the neighbours. *Acciſis crinibus nudatam coram propinquis expellit domo maritus, ac per omnem vicum verbere agit: publicatæ enim pudicitiæ nulla venia*

The very words alleadged by *Cornelius Tacitus.*

venia, non forma, non ætate, non opibus maritum inuenerit. Maides that had once made forfeit of their honor, and suffered the Cat to be ouer-freely familiar with the cheefe, could neuer make their part good, were she neuer so gilded with gold, or graced with the excellency of beauty. *Nemo enim illic vitia ridebat, nec corrumpere, & corrumpi seculum vocabatur,* saith *Tacitus:* It was not so then, as now in these times, when Riches is preferred before a Maid, (how infamous soeuer, or deriued from a Mother, that her life hath beene talked of) with her vertue and good manners. And what excuse serueth for all this? *why, thus goes the world.*

Cæsar speaking of the Marriages of the Ancient Gaules, setteth downe this in his sixt booke, *De Bello Gallico.* That men laid downe in a masse or heape, so much money as they receiued in marriage with their wiues; that the profit of the summe should be reserued, and remaine to the suruiuer of the two people married. *Viri quamas pecunias ab vxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis æstimatione facta cum dotibus communicant: huius omnis pecuniæ coniunctim ratio habetur, fructusque seruantur: Vter eorum vita superarit, ad eum pars vtriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum peruenit.*

The husband had equall power of his Wiues life and death.

Moreouer, that the Husband had equall power of the life and death of his Wife, as ouer their children. So that the Husband chancing to dye, vpon the least suspition to be had of his death so suddenly happening; the Parents and Kindred of the defunct, might put his widdow to the racke and torture, euen as if shee had beene a simple seruant. And if they discerned in her any euill demeanour, after shee had endured all kindes of punishments and tortures, they would commit her to be burned aliue. *Viri in vxores sicut in liberos, vitæ, necisq; potestatem habent. Et cum pater familias illustriore loco natus discessit, eius propinqui conueniunt, & de morte, si res in suspitionem venit, de vxoribus in seruilem modum quæstionem habent, & si compertum est, igni, atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt.*

The case not so among the French, as it was with the Gaules.

Concerning this which *Cæsar* wrote of the Gaules, it was not common to the French, for the Maides portion and dowry set apart, with the profit: for in the case of first dying, it appertained to the Husband, or the Wife, because they gouerned themselues both after one manner. The husband pre-deceasing, might by his Testament or donation, among deeds of gift; giue and leaue to his wife the third part of his goods, gotten in the time of their marriage.

The Monke of Saint *Denys Marculphus*, in his Formularie of Law-pleadings, saith: *Quod pariter stante coniugio adquisiuimus, prædicta Coniux nostra tertiam partem habeat.* The Author of the prosecution or supply of S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his fourescore and fift chapter, speaking of the Treasure of *Dagobert*, saith: *Humbertus Pontifex vrbis Coloniæ, & Pippinus Maior-domus cum aliquibus primatibus Austriæ à Sigoberto directi villam Compendium (Compaigne) vsque perueniunt, ibique thesaurus Dagoberti, iubent Nanthilde, & Clodouco instantia Aganis Maioris-domus præsentatur, & aqualance diuiditur: Tertiam tamen Partem de Qua Dagobertus Adquisierat, Nanthildis Regina Recepit.*

The good housewifes portion.

This third part is called in the French Capitularies, *Pars conlaborationes*, the part of labourage or good huswiferie of the wife, in the time of her marriage. In the fourth booke and ninth Title, the Ordenance speaketh thus. *Volumus, vt vxores defunctorum post obitum Maritorum Tertiam Partem Conlaborationis, quam simul in beneficio conlaborarunt, accipiant, & de his rebus, quas is qui illud beneficium habuit, aliunde adduxit, vel comparauit, vel ei ab amicis suis collatum est, has volumus tam ad Orphanos defunctorum, quàm ad vxores eorum pertinere.* So that by this Ordinance, the third part should extend to the gettings and winnings, and Deeds of gift executed in the donors life-time; and by reason of death, the Testamentary Legacies, howbeit, before, vnder the first Ligne of the French Kings, this third part did not extend but onely to the moueables, and not at all to the immoueables. But returne we now to the ancient Ceremonies of marriages.

Marriages anciently contracted in three seuerall maners.

The buying of Wiues was in practise, not onely in strange Nations, but (by degrees) among the Romanes; for it is generally knowne, that the Ciuilians obserue Marriages to be formerly contracted in three seuerall kindes; two wherof were common with the French, *Vsu, Confarreatione, & Emptione.* The last was the most excellent

and solemne, for the ancient Pagans beleeued, that the gods and goddesses vsed the same, in contracting Alliance and Mariage together. *Horatius.*

Teque sibi generum Thetis emat omnibus vndis.

Concubinage or keeping a harlot.

As for the other Ceremonie (the third was not done to this purpose) to speake plainely, was true Concubinage; which yet concluded in marriage at the last, after long vse and familiarity, which men then had with women for some space of time, maintaining them at bed and boord, as we vse to say.

To lodge together, eat and drinke,
Is meerely marriage, as I thinke.

Of Marriage termed *Vsage.*

But especially if they had any issue, which by marriage were legitimate. That manner of marriage by vsage, and tearmed *Vsus* by the Ciuill Lawyers, was practised by the ancient French (as yet it is to this day) and designed of them by this phrase of speaking: *Nubere ad Morganaticam.* Mention is made thereof in the second booke, *De Feudes*, at the nine and twentieth Title: *De Filijs natis ex Matrimonio ad Morganaticam contracto.* It was deriued from the ancient *Salique Law*, saith the Text at the same Title. Yet notwithstanding, I neuer read it in the *Salique Law*, but rather in the * *Ripuarie* (which was the ancient forme of proceeding before *Pharamond*) at the nine and thirtieth title, and in that of the Alemans, the sixe and fiftieth title. And this name of *Morganatica*, is deriued of *Morgangheba*, mentioned in the said *Ripuarie* Law.

Morganaticall, Matrimonie. *A Law agreeing with the Salique, both in substance and date.

This was the gift to buy pinnes withall, which the husband gaue to his wife, the morrow morning after the Nuptialls, as the price of her Virginity, and remembrance of their combined Alliance.

So Saint *Gregory* of Toures noteth in the ninth booke of his Historie, in the treaty betweene the Kings of France, *Gonthran* and *Childebert* the second. That the saide Kings gaue to their Spouses certaine Townes and Villages, to buy them pinnes and other pleasures, on the morrow morning after their wedding. *De Ciuitatibus vero, hoc est, Burdegala, Lemouica, Cadurco, Benarno & Begarra, quas Gailesuindam Germanam domine Brunechildis, tam in dote, quam in Morganegiba, hoc est, matutinali dono, in Franciam venientem, certum est adquisisse.*

All Nations obserue some ceremony in contracting marriage.

There is not any Nation in the world, how barbarous or badly gouerned soeuer it be, but hath some Ceremony or other in contracting marriage. The people of the West Indies haue their chiefe Priests, whom they call *Papas*, and they, after diuers Orisons and Prayers, according to their manner, take a corner of the Cloake or Mantle of the future Spouse, and tie or fasten it to a corner of the Brides Vaile; to let them vnderstand, that they are conioynd together by the bond of marriage. So writeth *Iosephus Acosta*, in his naturall history of the West Indies.

Those of the East Indies, and of China, are amply described by *Hieronymus Osorius*, and other Portugall discouerers of those people. And of further date by *Iean Huges de Linscot*, Hollander, and *Francis Pyrard de Laual*, a Frenchman; whereof *Aimonius* the Monke setteth downe the particularities, in his Historie of France, the first booke and third chapter.

The Christian speeches of Q. *Chrotilda* to her vnbeleeuing husband *Clouis.*

Saint *Gregory* of Tours telleth vs in his second booke, and nine and twentieth chapter, that *Clouis* had by his second wife *Chrotilda*, a sonne, the first borne, and shee desiring to haue him baptized in the Church, catechized her husband in this manner: *The Gods which you worship, are but Gods of straw, who can neither doe seruice to themselues, nor to any other: For they are eyther hewne out of wood, cut out of stone, or made of Mettall, and the names which you impose on them, are of mortall persons, that neuer were Gods. As one called Saturne, who saued himselfe with his Father (that did eate his owne children) for feare they should be chased out of their dignity. Another named Iupiter, what was he but a most infamous man, the lewdest of all that could be lewd? Addicted wholly to Sodomie, Incest, and Whoredome; without abstaining from the knowledge of his own sister, making his vaunt in the Poets, that she was his sister and his wife.*

Aſt ego quæ diuum incedo Regina, Iouisque
Et Soror, & Coniux.

What power haue your pretended Gods Mars & Mercury? They were rather Deuils, Sorcerers, & Magitians, then any diuine perſons. Good Sir, theſe abeare all this Cauillation of Dwells, & beleeue in him, who by his word alone created Heauen & Earth, the Sea and all that is in them, which (before that Word) had ſtill his being or ſubſiſtance. It is he only who made that great Eye of the world, the Sunne to ſhine, and fixed in the Heauen Cloudes of Diamonds, thoſe glorious twinkling Starres which giue luſtre to the night. Hee filled the Waters with Fiſhes ſweetly ſwimming, and ſtored the Earth with millions of creatures, as alſo the Ayre with Fowles, in number numberleſſe. By the very turning of his eye, are the fields diapred with flowres, & made golden coloured with Haruеſts, the trees laden with fruits, & the Vines dangled with blacke cluſters of grapes. He fabricked and made all man-kinde, and by his bountifull hand all creatures are nouriſhed and maintained; yea hee hath communicated himſelfe to Man, and heaped on him all fauours and bleſſings.

The vnchriſtian anſwere made by King *Clouis* to his Queene.

To theſe and the like holy remonſtrances, *Clouis* did long time lend a deafe eare, & perſiſting in his fond beleefe, anſwered his wife: That all things were created by the command of his gods, and as for hers, hee was without power, and was not begotten of the gods ſeede.

Chrotilda neuertheleſſe perſiſting in the Catholike faith, vſed the like good Counſell to her husband daily, concluding to haue her firſt-borne ſonne Chriſtened in the Church of the Orthodoxe Chriſtians. She commanded the Church to be moſt richly hung with Tapiſtries, euen the beſt that could be had, to the end, that exterior ceremonies might induce King *Clouis* to beleeue; but all exhortations preuailed not with him. The ſonne was baptized, and named *Ingomer*; but it came to paſſe that he died, being as yet *In Albis*; and in thoſe daies when the *Catechumenes* were clothed in white. Immediately was *Clouis* vp in Armes againſt his Wife, reproaching her God with impuiſance, and that (queſtionleſſe) the child had liued, if it had not beene vowed and conſecrated to her God, whereas now it died by being baptized.

Ingomer the firſt ſonne of King *Clouis* died a Chriſtian.

The Queene tooke all patiently, yeelding thankes to God, the omnipotent Creator of all things, that he had beene ſo gracious to her, to place the firſt fruits of her womb in his heauenly kingdome, for which ſhee did not a little reioyce, and ſo much the rather, becauſe ſhee well knew, that yong infants dying in the ſtate of Innocencie, are Angels before God.

Chlodomer the ſecond chriſtened ſonne of King *Clouis*.

The yeere following, ſhe was deliuered of another ſonne, who at the Sacrament of Baptiſme, was named *Chlodomer*, (*Agathias* the Greeke Author, who liued in the time when *Clouis* had his children, ſaith, that the eldeſt of them was named *Childebert*) who falling likewiſe ſicke, *Clouis* (according to his former) reputed it as dead already. It can happen (quoth he to his wife) no otherwiſe with this childe, then it did with the other: for it being baptized in the name of your Ieſus Chriſt, without all doubt it muſt needs dye. But the Queene was ſo earneſt in prayers, ſighes and teares to God, that the childe recouered health: whereupon ſhe ceaſed not night and day, her continued exhortations to her husband to forſake his falſe gods, and take knowledge of the true God. But ſhe could not preuaile, *Clouis* continued obſtinate in his wrong beleefe, vntill a certain time afterward, when, being troubled with affliction, he made his recourſe to that God which his wife adored, and which followeth in this manner.

The Hiſtory of the warre of King *Clouis* with the Alemanes.

In the yeere of Grace, foure hundred foureſcore and nineteene, *Adalaricus* King of *Suaba*, and *Adalagerion*, King of Bauaria, ioyned their powers together, ſtomacking (very grieuouſly) the aduancement of the French in Gaule, determining to withſtand any further proceedings, and to make a Conqueſt of their parts. Being come into the field with a mighty power, they paſſed the Rhine, putting to ſacke and ſlaughter all the Territories of Cologne, (the King whereof was called *Sigebert*, who was made lame of one leg, on the day of *Tolbiac*) & had his recourſe vnto *Clouis* his neereſt kinſman, as wee haue formerly ſaid, who preſently went to giue him ayde and aſſiſtance.

The Kings of the Alemanes and *Clouis* met to fight a furious and bloudy battell, in

in the place called Tolbiac, In the ſame Territory of Cologne, & neer to the Rhine. At the firſt meeting and ioyning, the two Armies fought with equall aduantage: but the Alemans being the farre greater number, the French ſide began to diſhearten, and fall into diſorder; with a great ſlaughter of them. *Clouis* then called to memory, the God which his wife *Chrotilda* ſerued, & in his greateſt diſtreſſe, lifting vp his eyes to heauen (though they were full of teares, and his heart aking with griefe) ſuddenly he entred into this prayer.

The furious and bloudy battell fought at Tolbiac, neere to the Rhine.

The Prayer of King Clouis, vttered in his greateſt extremity.

IEſus Chriſt, who my Wife Chrotilda *auoucheth to be the Sonne of the liuing God, and (as ſhe ſaith) hath all power of giuing ayde and ſuccour to the afflicted, and victory to all ſuch as put their whole truſt in thee: From the depth of my ſoule, I implore thy fauour, and the glory of thy ſupport. With proteſtation, that if it be thy pleaſure to giue me the honour of this battell, and the day againſt mine enemies, whereby I ſhall know in this need and extremitie whereto they haue brought me, the power and aſſiſtance, which all the people that worſhip thee, confeſſe to be in thee: I will henceforth beleeue in thee, & cauſe my ſelfe to be baptized in thy name. For I haue called vpon mine owne Gods, who are both dumbe and deafe, and I finde by proofe, that they are very farre off from mee, immooueable, and without vigour, to ſuccour ſuch as haue affiance in them. And therfore I ſhape my courſe to thee, O Lord Ieſus Chriſt, with firme purpoſe to abiure thoſe Idolls; deliuer mee therefore from this dangerous paſſage.*

A Note well worthy the obſeruation.

His Prayer being ended (ſaith S *Gregory* of Tours) the Alemanes began to bee ſwallowed in among the French, being reuiued againe with freſh forces, who purſuing the point, ſlew the two Kings their enemies in the field: ſo that the remainder of the Armie, caſting downe their Armes, yeelded themſelues to *Clouis*. And after that day, the Alemans were reduced vnder the Lawes and obedience of the Kings of France, without any means of recouery, or making a diſtinct part to themſelues. So ſay *Beatus Rhenanus*, and his Countrymen, in their hiſtories of Alemaign, and *Ioannes Auentinus*, who deſcribeth the particularities of this memorable day, in his Annales of Bauaria.

Clouis ouer-heaped with victory, returning home into Gaule; made diſcourſe at large to his Wife, of the extremity whereunto hee was brought; the hazard of his owne and peoples liues, being vpon the point of flight: and that by calling on the name of *Ieſus Chriſt*, the honour and renowne of the victorie remained vnto him.

At theſe good tidings, the Queene ſent for ſecretly into the Court, S. *Rhemigius*, then Biſhop of the City of Rheims, to inſtruct the King in the Chriſtian Faith. *Clouis* willingly granted thereunto for himſelfe, but yet drew backe from embracing it without diſſembling: becauſe the French were wholly Idolaters, and could hardly like changing from their Idolatry. *Libenter te, ſanctiſſime Pater, audiam*, (ſaid *Clouis* to S. *Rhemigius*) *ſed reſtat vnum, quod Populus qui me ſequitur, non patitur relinquere Deos ſuos: ſed vado, & loquor eis iuxta verbum tuum.* *Clouis* hauing made an Oration to his Armie, for giuing them the firſt taſte of knowing the only God, whoſe power had granted the deſire of *Clouis*: the people with one voyce began al to cry; *We renounce our mortall gods (O moſt mighty and milde King) and are reſolued to adore and follow the onely and immortall God, whoſe goodneſſe S. Rhemigius hath preached to vs.*

Clouis yeelded faintly to become a Chriſtian.

The peoples generall renoncing Idolatry.

This being reported to the Biſhop, as one ouercome with vnſpeakeable ioy and gladnes, hee cauſed the Font of Baptiſme to be prepared, adorned the ſtreets & places of paſſage to the Church, with rich and coſtly hangings. Within the Church, it was beautified with fine white cloathes, bathing tubs, and ſuch other veſſels as ſerue for Baptiſm; beſide Incenſe & exquiſite perfumes, and ſuch ſtore of illumined waxe lights, as made the Church looke bright like the Sunne, and ſo filled with ſweete odours, that ſuch as entred thereinto, were rapt with admiration, as imagining themſelues tranſported into the ioyes of Paradiſe.

The Biſhops preparation for the Baptiſme.

The King marching along first of all, required the holy Bishop to giue him Baptisme, and so presented himselfe at the Font; euen like a new *Constantine*, being fully resolued, to cast off the olde leprous skinne of his Idolatry, and take a new one by washing and bathing himselfe in the true Riuer of Iordane, and so hee entred the Font in pompe, and greatnesse of courage. But S. *Rhemigius* gaue him this precept.

The Kings coming to the Font.

Mites depone colla Sicamber,
Adora quod incendisti, incende quod adorasti;

The Bishops words to the King.

Embrace the Faith of Iesus Christ in all humilitie; Adore that which heeretofore thou hast burned, and burne that which thou hast formerly adored. The King hauing confessed one Almighty God in Trinitie, was baptized in the Name of the Father, Sonne, and holy Ghost; being annointed with Sacred Oyle, and the signe of the Crosse.

Of them that were baptized after the King.

After the King, more then three thousand men of his Armie were then baptized. *Albofleda* his sister was also baptized, who presently after passed out of this life into a better. His other sister *Lanthilda*, infected with the detestable Heresie of *Arrius* (as then the Bourgongnons and Vuisigothes were) was likewise re-baptized, after she had confessed the equality of the Sonne and holy Ghost with the Father.

Thus you see what as yet we haue obserued, of the Sacring and Baptisme of King *Clouis*, which hapned on Easter euen, beginning the Secular yeere fiue hundred: according to the ancient Annalist, S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his History of France, the second booke, and one and thirty chapter.

In further pursuing the life of this great Prince, he telleth vs, that the Kings of Bourgongne, *Gombaula* & *Godegisilus*, brethren, held that extendure of the Countrey, which lieth about Rhosne, and beyond Saosne, Rhone and Soane, and the Prouince of Marseilles, which is the maine Prouince. These Kings, as well as their people and subiects, were infected with the impious heresie of *Arrius*. These two Brethren being in contention, and at strife each with other, *Godegisilus* finding himselfe to be the weakest, and vnderstanding the victories of King *Clouis*; sent his Ambassadors secretly, to require his assistance, and to call his brother King *Gombauld*, to an equall portition of the lands betweene them, or else to deriue such annuall tribute from them both, as hee should please to impose vpon them. *Clouis* took hold of the offer, & forthwith raised a potent Armie, which instantly marched into Bourgongne. *Gombauld* seeing an Army entred on his land, made recourse to his brother *Godegisillus*, intreating his strong troups to assist him, knowing nothing of the treaty betweene him and *Clouis*. He had very goodly promises of succor & supply, while *Clouis* proceeded stoutly on in his purpose. These three Princes being in field, and comming neere to the Castle of *Dijon*; *Clouis* gaue offer of battell to *Gombauld*, who presently accepted it, thinking to be seconded by his brother. They fought vpon the Riuer of *Ouische*, and *Godegisillus* being ioyned with *Clouis*, God knowes what a slaughter was made in the Army of *Gombauld*; the most of them were hewn in peeces, and himselfe forced to flight towards the Riuer of Rhosne, & seek for safety in Auignion. This battell was fought in the yeere of Grace 501.

The two brethren Kings of Bourgongne.

Clouis taketh aduantage of the two brothers warre, but pretended traitor to the other.

Godegisilus recommendeth himself to *Clouis*.

Afterward, *Godegisilus* went to make his entrance in triumph at Vienna (in Dauphine) as if he had been peaceable possessor of his brothers kingdom, whom *Clouis* (in the meane while) pursued, and besieged him in Auignion, only to rid the world of him; because he had promise of the half of his kingdom, lying neerest to France.

Gombauld apprehending the issue, both of this siege, & likewise his life, detesting the treason of his brother, laboured to draw *Clouis* to partake with him: which hee did by meanes of mediation, and aduise of his faithfull Counseller, named *Aredius*, who, to bring his enterprise to full effect, went and yeelded himselfe to the seruice of *Clouis*, feigning (purposely) to be come from Auignion, & had left there *Gombauld* who by his speeches) wanted both succor and friends. This *Aredius*, hauing insinuated himselfe into the good liking of *Clouis*, by such faire parts as made him acceptable, began (on a day) to discourse on the siege, which seemed to grow irkesome to *Clouis*. And taking Occasion by the fore-top, for doing good seruice to his Master, he gaue him counsell to stand no longer wilfully vpon the Siege, which might [illegible] respite of time, then he had reason to afford; in regard of the potent Castle, and strength of the wals.

Aredius loyal seruice to his Master.

He

He thought it fitter for him, to attempt another course, and try whether *Gombauld* would speake French or no, and yeeld himselfe tributarie to King *Clouis*: who allowing the motion to be good, sent the same *Aredius* to his Prince *Gombauld*, who agreeing vpon an annuall tribute, satisfied and contented *Clouis* for his warre-charges, giuing him assurance for keeping his promise afterward faithfully.

Successe of sieges are doubtfull, when they last ouer-long

Gombauld hauing taken breath a while, refused to pay the tribute to *Clouis*, and bringing an Armie secretly into the field, went directly to Vienna, to infest his brother *Godegisilus*. The siege drawing on in length, and the Prince fearing to be famished, sent forth all vnprofitable mouthes, and the vnseruiceable baser people: Among whom was the Conduit-maker of the Citie, who had charge of the water-pipes, and their courses of passage. This man, offended to bee thus thrust out among the rascalitie: prouided and made meanes for *Gombauld*, that he should enter into the Citie, onely by those water-conueyances; as hee did, this *Fontenier* seruing as his guide and conduct. At a Conduit head hee made way for him and his Armie, and so passing along couertly vnder the ground, suddenly arose with such aduantage, that he surprized *Godegisilus*, who had taken refuge with his Arrian Bishop in their Synagogue, and there they both were beaten downe. The French which were in Garrison at Vienna, kept themselues strongly within a Tower: but being narrowly pressed, yeelded vpon safety of their liues, *Gombauld* sending them in exile to *Tolosa*, the abiding of *Alaricus*, King of the Vuisigothes. The Senators of Bourgongne were all put to the sword, for taking part with *Godegisilus*, whose kingdome and Seigneuries the said *Gombauld* possessed, and that is it which properly is called Bourgongne. This *Gombauld* was author of the Bourgongnons Law, called by his name (to this present) *Gombette*, very neere to that of the Romanes, whom he highly fauoured. There is therein a Title of Duells and Combats, and other proofes by fire, water, and the crosse: against which, the Archbishop of Lyons, named *Agobardus* or *Agobo*, wrote a remarkeable Treatise, inserted amongst his other workes (at this day to be seene) by the deceased *Papyrius Massonus*.

Gombauld breakes promise with *Clouis*, and besiegeth his brother *Godegisilus*.

Necessary members in a City are not rashly to be excluded.

The Law *Gombette*, so named of *Gombauld*.

Alaricus, King of the Vuisigothes, perceiuing that *Clouis* in greatnesse increased daily: desired to make him his friend, and sent his Ambassadors to him, to mediate an enter-view betweene them, for contracting brotherly league and alliance together. The place of enterview was made choise of, in an Iland belonging to the Riuer of Loire, neere to the Towne of Amboise, in the Dioceese of Tours. There the two Kings met, conuersed and dined together, and hauing afterward contracted peace betweene them; each returned home to his Kingdome. This enterview happened in the yeere of Grace, fiue hundred and sixe, according to the supputation of *Sigibert*.

A League of Peace between the two kings, *Clouis* and *Alaricus*.

This Alliance was but of slender continuance; because *Clouis*, perceiuing that *Alaricus* had fought it for feare of the French (euery where victorious, and to make no more Warre on him) then any friendly amitie indeede: sent to defie, and proclaime Warre against him; except he would forsake Aquitaine, and all that he possessed in Gaule, which could not obey two Maisters, nor two Sunnes to shine vpon them. *Alaricus* then made his abiding at Poictiers, and *Clouis* hauing his Armie ready for the fight, marched straight to Poctiers, trauersing ouer Tourraine, where (on paine of death) hee prohibited the taking of any thing from Churches, and sanctified places in the City and territory of Tours, in memorable reuerence of S. *Martin*, the second Apostle of the French, to whom he sent Offerings, and receiued assured hope by diuine Soothsayers, of winning victory against the Vuisigothes, so saith S. *Gregory* of Tours. *Huncmarus* writeth in the life of Saint *Rhemigius*, that *Clouis*, before he went to fight with the Vuisigothes, came and receiued the fatherly benediction of *Rhemigius*, and vndoubted hope to returne with victory, as also a Bottle of Wine, which lasted so long as the Warre endured, to his no little admiration. As he would haue passed the Riuer of Vienna with his Armie, he could by no possible meanes finde any Foord; which yet in the night-time was strangely shewne him. For he hauing spent the whole night in prayer; euen at the point of day, a goodly Hinde stood before him, and entring into the Riuer, serued as guide to him and the whole Armie, which passed ouer without encombrance:

Clouis sendeth defiance to *Alaricus*.

Clouis encamping in the night time neere to Poyctiers, a flame and piller of fire was seene issuing from forth the Church of S. *Hillarie*, and lighting directly vpon the Campe: which serued as an assured presage, that the hand of heauen was his Lanthorne and guide, to haue the vpper hand and victory ouer those Arrian heretiques.

Clouis camped neere to Poictiers.

The two Armies ioyned in the new-shorne fields, within fiue miles of Poictiers, at a place called *Vogledim*, the French making fiercely vpon the Vuisigothes, shewed good experience of their valour: and the enemies constrained to flie confusedlie; *Alaricus* was met by *Clouis*, who slew him with his owne hand, enioying the intire victory with the head of his enemy, and the whole Campe, with the spoyles thereof, which he carried with him to his Kingdome.

The Visigoths vanquished, & Alaricus slain by *Clouis*.

The particularities of this famous battell, were the death of *Alaricus*, slaine by the hand of the chiefe of the contrary part; which the Romans expressed in these tearmes of *Optima Spolia*. *Clouis* had vnder his Coronet fighting with him, his Cousin *Chlodericus*, Sonne to the King of Cologne *Sigebert* the Lame, who performed wonders in the battell of *Tolbiac*. After the death of *Alaricus*, two of his followers sought to reuenge it on *Clouis*, purposing to haue his life likewise, by piercing their Launces thorough both his sides. But such was the goodnesse of his *Cuirace*, that it withstood the stroakes, and his horse being full of courage, carried him speedily out of the crowd. The most part of the Senators and Noblemen of Auuergne, conducted by *Apollinaris*, Gouernour of the Country, were put to the edge of the sword.

The memorable occurrences of that notable battell.

Gesiticus, the bastard sonne of *Alaricus*, seeing his father slaine in the field, immediately fledde, and sauing himselfe in Narbona, was there proclaimed King, whereof he held the title foure yeere, or thereabout.

The bastard sonne of *Alaricus* proclaimed himselfe King.

Clouis making good vse of his victory, sent his sonne *Theodoricke* to possesse himselfe of Auuergne, Albigeois, Rouergne, and the neighbouring Countries. Also to besiege Carcossona, where the forces of the *Ostrogothes* King of Italie, named *Theodoricke* too, were, but hee dislodged them thence. In the meane while, *Clouis* wonne Gascoigne and Guienne, but chiefly Bourdeaux; whence he caused to be brought from Tolosa (the capitall City belonging to the Kings of the Vuisigothes) the treasures of *Alaricus* and his predecessors. Afterward hee went and besieged Angoulesme, the walls whereof (euen miraculously as it were) fell at the sight of the Banner of France. And so this Prince, couered ouer with Lawrells of Victory and Triumph, came to yeeld thankes to God in the City of Tours, vpon the Tombe of S. *Martin*. This battell of Vogledim was fought in the yeere of Grace, 507. but by some, 509. in the 25. yeare of King *Clouis* his reigne.

Theodoricke, sonne to King *Clouis*.

The Kings of the Vuisigoths their chiefe Citie.

While hee soiourned in the City of Toures (this is recorded in the yeare fiue hundred and eight) the Emperor of the East, named *Anastasius* (a coniured enemy to the Ostrogothes and Vuisigothes) hearing tidings of the Victory won by *Clouis*, sent his Ambassadors to him, to congratulate his happy successe, with presents and rich ornaments, which the Romane Emperors vsed to send and giue to victorious Princes.

Anastasius Emperour of the East, sendeth Ambassadors to *Clouis*.

The passage in Saint *Gregory* of Tours, is corrupted through ignorance, concerning the Title of Patrician and Consull, in regard that of Patrician, was inferior in honour to that of Consull: And in the Consulary Fasts, the name of *Clouis* is neuer read, in quality of a Consull ordenary, or extraordinary, as it remaineth to be obserued.

Clouis entertained the Ambassadors of *Anastasius* with Triumphes in the Church of S. *Martin* at Tours, cloathing himselfe with the Ornaments sent him, and wearing on his head a rich Crown of gold, sumptuously adorned with precious stones, such as the publique seruant of the Common-wealth weareth, when he entreth triumphally into the City of Rome.

The royall entertainment of the Emperors Ambassadors.

In thus manner he set forward from the Pallace of S. *Martin*, mounted on a goodly Courser, vnto the great Church of the City, giuing largesse to the people all the way, in bountifull summes of gold and siluer, which hee threw abroad with his owne hands, in signe of Royaltie and reioycing.

Within

Within a while after, *Clouis* remoued to Paris, which he made the capitall City in the Kingdome of France: so saith S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his second booke, and 38. chapter. *Egressus autem à Turonis Parisios venit, ibique Cathedram Regni Constituit.* He builded his Pallace on the Mount of Paris, vpon the olde foundation whereof was erected the Abbey house of S. *Geneuiefue*; which Pallace was adioyned thereto by *Clouis* and his Queene *Chrotilda*, at the instant request of S. *Geneuiefue* (which Virgin liued aboue fourescore yeeres, and had seene the reignes of *Meroueus*, *Childericke* and *Clouis*) of most royall construicture, with a goodly Church (called by *Gregorie* of Tours *Basilicam*) in memory of S. *Peter* and *Paule*, the chiefe of the Apostles, where the foresaid Virgin had sometime erected a Chappell and Oratory, which *Dionisius Areopagita* (remaining then at Paris) had dedicated to the Apostles his Masters, and there vsually hee exercised his deuotions, and S. *Geneuiefue* chose her buriall to be there, rather then in any other place.

Now, there is euident appearance, that *Clouis* elected Paris for the Capitall City of his kingdome, rather then Tours, Orleans, Rheimes, or Soissons, where formerly he had made his abiding: because, ouer and beside the commodity of sixteene Riuers, which by diuers passages came to bury themselues in the great Riuer of Seine, and made Paris to abound with all benefits, for the maintaining of so great a people: This City stood in the nauell or middle of his Monarchie, for he enioyed (in full possession) from Paris, so farre as to the Pyrenean Mountaines, holding Poictou, Anion, Aquitaine, part of Largiedock, Albigeois, Quercy, Rouergne, Auuergne, the Forrests of Beaulieulois, with Lyons, and all that appertained to the Kingdome of Bourgongne, beyond the Riuer of Rhosne, and on this side Saosne.

The reason why *Clouis* made his choise of Paris, rather then any other Citie.

The large extent of the lands belonging to *Clouis*.

On the North side he held the two Belgiaes, so farre as to the Riuer of Rhine, and beyond that in Alemaigne, all the said Country of Suaba, Alsatia, and the most part of Swetia; whereof, next and after the battell of Tolbiac, hee made a State, in Title of the Duchie of Alemaign, ordaining for Gouernor of the whole body, a Duke, & Countes in each other Country. All the great Realme of Bauaria was likewise vnder the Soueraignty of France; for after the death of *Adalagerion* (happening at Tolbiac) *Clouis* gaue this State to the Sonne of the said King, named *Theodon*, with the Title of Duke only: as also charge and condition, to hold it in Fiefe and Liege homage to the Crowne of France, without any other addition at all, of Honour.

Or *Halsatia*.

Bauaria vnder the soueraignty of France.

The greatnesse of King *Clouis* his Conquests, may be knowne by the partition which he made to his foure sonnes after his death, diuiding his kingdom into foure equall portions. *Ad qua Lance*, saith *Gregorie* of Tours, in his third booke and first chapter. *Childebert*, as eldest of his legitimate children, had to his lot and partage by preference, the City of Paris. *Clodomire*, Orleans: *Clotharre*, Soissons, as Capitall Cities of their Kingdomes; comprehending the whole extendure from Seine to the Pyrenean Mountaines, and part of Belgicke Gaule. As for *Thierry*, eldest sonne to *Clouis* (but by his Concubine before marriage) hee had that of Mentz, the Kingdome whereof contained the Duchie of Alemaigne beyond the Rhine, and some places on the hither side, with the homage of Bauaria. This Realm was called Austrasia. This *Thierry* or *Theodoricke*, returned from chasing the Vuisigothes out of Languedock, when *Clouis* establisshed his royall seat at Paris; till then, *Clouis* had the commendation of a valiant & iust Prince, sought to by strange Princes for friendship, and feared of his neighbours. But when he saw himselfe at rest and repose; hee soyled his renowne and reputation with such a foule staine of oyle: as all the Machiauelists and historians, that sought to conceale it from publique shame, could not deuise to wipe it out. For, to enlarge his greatnesse further vpon his owne kinred, he caused them to be slaine and massacred one after another; without leauing any one of them aliue, that could concerne him in kindred. He began with the descendants of *Clodion*, the sonne of *Pharamond*.

How *Clouis* diuided his kingdome to his foure sons.

The kingdom of Austrasia.

In what manner *Clouis* lost his fame and reputation.

We haue formerly obserued, that *Sigebert*, tearmed the Lame, one of them that was King of Cologne; whose sonne was named *Chlodericke*, who fought valiantly on the day at *Vogledim*: *Clouis* sent secretly some of his familiars to the said *Chloaerick*, to stir him on in contriuing the death of his father, who had (as we vse to

A son instructed by *Clouis* to murder his owne father, which within a while after he did

to say) one foote already in the graue, offering him the meanes, and his friendship for supporting him in his fathers kingdome.

The Prince being desirous to reigne, resolued to doe it, as hee did immediately after: for *Sigibert* being on a day gone forth of the Citie of Cologne, and past ouer the Rhine, to hunt in the forrest Boucane :. As he reposed himselfe after dinner in his Tent or Pauillion, *Childericke* most inhumanely massacred him. So soone as he sent newes of his Fathers death to *Clouis*, he also entreated him to send some of his trustiest followers, to take such portion of the defuncts treasures, as should stand with his owne liking, which accordingly he did. As *Chlodericke* shewed the deputies from *Clouis*, the precious moueables of his father one after another; he brought them to a great Chest: In this Chest (quoth hee) my Father hoorded vp his gold and siluer. And as hee stouped his head into the chest, to ransacke it to the very bottome, one of *Clouis* his followers (who had the watch-word giuen him) gaue him such a stroke with an axe on the head, as made his braines to flye about the roome, and he lay sprawling on the ground.

A iust reward for men that would kill his father.

Clouis being aduertised of his death, went in all possible haste to Cologne, where he caused the people to be assembled, and like a hungry Lion, couered with the Foxes skinne, made before them this goodly Oration.

The Oration of King Clouis, spoken to the people of Cologne.

I Like to mee good people. As I was rowed for my delight vpon the Riuer of Escauld, Chlodericke, *sonne to my Cousin* Sigibert *your King, perswaded his Father, that I was desirous to haue him kill him. Which hee hauing fully setled in his braine, ouer-ruled him to part out of Cologne, and flie for safety into the Forrest Boucone, where the said* Chlodericke *murdered his father. And hee himselfe, vainely shewing his Treasures to idle companions, was deformedly slaine in the same place. Of both which murders I sweare to you, that I was altogether innocent. For can it be possible, that I should haue so cruell and fellon ous a courage, as to shed the blood of my neerest kindred? There is not any likelihood or appearance. But seeing it hath thus come to passe, I would aduise you (if so it might stand with your liking) to choose me for your Prince, and commit your selues into my safeguard and protection.*

As *Pilate* was in washing his hands.

The men of Cologne being quickly contented, accepted him as their King, crying with shouts of ioy, and clapping of their hands, *Vive le Roy*; exalting him vpon a shield, and carrying him three times about the whole assembly: So saith S. *Gregorie* of *Tours*. *Vn plaudentes tam palatis, quam vocibus, eum Clypeo exactum super se Regem constituunt.* And so *Clouis* became enriched with the riches and kingdome of *Sigibert*.

With whom he caused to keep company, *Chararick* or *Ararick* King of *Haynault*, another kinsman of his. He called to mind, that when hee won the battell against *Syagrius*, King of Soissons, he had requested the ayd of his Cosin *Ararick*, who indeede came with his Armie; but he kept himselfe aloofe off, doing nothing, like a Neuter, attending who should haue the better of the day, to ioyne then with him, and require his friendship. And as neutrall people are alwaies reputed and held to be enemies and traitors, according to the common saying; *Qui pro me non est, contra me est*: So *Clouis*, keeping a choake-Peare in his pocket for this Prince, came and besieged him, and hauing so narrowly constrained him, that both hee and his sonne yeelded to his mercy, with safety of their liues: he caused them to be bound and manacled, their haires shauen off, (because they ware them long, like Princes of the bloud of *France* appointing *Ararick* to be a Priest, and his sonne a Deacon. And as *Ararick* grieued and complained of his hard fortune, his sonne, plucking himselfe by the small-increasing locks of his head, comforted him in this manner. *These tender twigs of a tree yet fresh and greene, will not die altogether, but spring againe as formerly they did: Oh would God were so well pleased, that the author of this our disgrace might as soone be quite cut off.*

Ararick King of Haynault Cousin to *Clouis*.

How *Clouis* dealt with *Ararick* and his sonne.

A comfort to miserable men in their misfortune.

These words being reported to *Clouis*, he sent them solemne threatnings: and (soone

soone after) putting them both to death, possessed himselfe of their Kindome, and what treasures else they had beside.

Ragnacaire, King of Cambraye, had couragiously assisted him against the same *Syagrius* the Romaine, King of Soissons, Sonne and successour to *Gillonus*, as Saint *Gregory* of Tours speaketh in his second Booke, the twenty seauenth Chapter. *Super Syagrium Romanorum Regem Clodoueus cum Ragnacario parente suo, quia & ipse Regnum tenebat, veniens, campum pugnæ præparari deposcit.* This *Ragnacaire* was a very debosht and so infected with whoredome, that he would make no spare of his very neerest kinswomen. He had for his principall minnion and Councellour, a famous Pander and Bawde, named *Pharao*, on whom he bestowed all whatsoeuer was giuen to him; commonly vsing to say, *This is for me, and my Pharao.* Which animated the French Subiects of his Kingdome against him, whereof *Clouis* being aduertised, and liking well their discontentment, he wrought so with the chiefest of them, that hee would deliuer him their King, giuing them a certaine number of Weapons, Armours, Bauldrickes and Girdles for Knights, of pure Gold, but *Clouis* made them of guilded Brasse, and so sent them to them, marching on his Armie in the meane while, to besiedge *Cambraye*. Now, as *Ragnacaire* sent to discouer the forces of *Clouis*; those men themselues, that had made marchandise of him, when hee desired to know the enemies number and condition: they payed him with his owne ordenarie words; *They are not enow for you, and for your Pharao.*

Ragnacaire and his Pander *Pharao.*

Ragnacaire bound and sold by his owne Lords.

Vpon this contempt of his enemy, accompanied with his Brother *Richarius*, *Ragnacaire* went to meete with *Clouis*: who as speedily droue his Armie into disorder, and he thinking to withdraw out of the presse, was taken by his owne people, with *Richarius* his Brother, and both of them (being bound hands and feete) were so presented to *Clouis*, who conuerting his speech to *Ragnacaire*, vsed these words. *Why hast thou bin such a base and contemptible villaine, to shame our Race, and suffer thy selfe to be taken, bound and manacled, as in this case thou art brought before me? Thou shouldst rather haue torne thy selfe in pieces.* And, as he spake these words, he cleft his head in twaine with an Axe. As much he did to his Brother, reproching him, because he had giuen him no better assistance; but permitted him (as also himselfe) to be so basely bound, like to a thiefe and malefactor.

Both the Brothers deuided bound & *Clouis*.

The death of *Ragnacaire* & his Brother *Richarius*.

After the death of these two Brethren, the Merchants and sellers of their liues, hauing discouered how well they were recompenced, and with a false kinde of paiment: made their complaint to *Clouis*, who returned them this answere. *Such men as haue basely betraied their Lord and Prince, deserue to haue no better paiment. Well may they content themselues, that they haue their owne liues saued, onely by my goodnesse and clemency: whereas contrariwise, they should iustly be tortured with torments and corrections, as a due recompence to their villanie and treason.* And thus, by the death of these two Brethren his Cousines, he possessed himselfe of their Treasures and Seigneuries, both of the *Cambresis*, and them of *Artois*, with other places vnder their obeysance.

The answere of King *Clouis* to the sellers of their Lord and Maister.

These two before named, had yet another Brother named *Ricomer*, to whom, for his faithfull seruices and succours, against *Odouacrius* and his *Sesnes* or *Saxons*; *Childericke*, Father to *Clouis*, had giuen the gouernment of *Mans*: *Clouis* caused him to be slaine, and enioyed all his possessions. As much did he to other Kings and great Lords, who were the neerest in kinred to him; as Saint *Gregory* of Tours telleth vs in these tearmes. *Interfecit & alios multos Reges, & Parentes suos primos, de quibus zelum habebat ne ei Regnum auferrent, & ita Regnum suum per totas Gallias dilatauit.* This passage giueth vs clearely to vnderstand, that he fought wholly to exterminate the race of *Clodion*, before whose Children, *Merouæus*, Grandfather to *Clouis*, was preferred in the arising Kingdome of Gaule. And declareth the ignorance of *Richard* of *Vassebourg*, and an infinite number of false Historians, who deriue the very greatest houses of Europe from the descent and ligne of *Clodion*, to giue them the greater aduantage of Precedency and honor (meerely imaginary, and set downe in painting) aboue the Monarches of the *Lillie*, and to bring their naturall and legitimate possession, within compasse of compromise; it being continually perpe-

Of *Ricomer*, Brother to *Ragnacaire* & *Richarius*.

The errour of diuers Authors & Historians.

perpetuated from twelue hundred yeares hitherto, without any let or intermission.

Herein likewise may be seene their impertinency, who for more honoring the Kings of the second and third Ligne, descended from *Ansbert*, called the Romaine Senatour (albeit a Gaule borne by Nation, and a great Lord in *Austrasia*, which is *Lorraine*) doe fetch his birth and originall from the said King *Clodion*: feigning his transport from thence to Rome, where he was made a Senatour, to auoide the furie of *Clouis*, wholly bent to the totall ruine of his collaterall kinred. Being also vterly ignorant, that in those times, Rome had not any Emperours, and that both it, and all Italie, were subiected vnder the command and Seigneurie of the Arrian Ostrogothes, and of their King *Theodoricke*. They knew not, that this *Ansbert* (howsoeuer named the Senatour) was a naturall Gaule, as we haue already said, and so shall doe elsewhere, and no Romaine: And that the whole power of the Romaines in Gaule, was quite quenched by *Clouis*, according as wee haue formerly obserued.

Of *Ansbert* the Romaine Senatour, and his Originall.

Proued to be a Gaule borne, and no Romaine.

Clouis, to make yet a further discouery, whether he had any more kinred or no; being one day in good company, and feigning to complaine for the death of them, who had bin dispatcht out of the world by himselfe; spake thus. *Vnhappy man* (quoth he) *as I am, to be thus left alone, like vnto a poore Pilgrime among Strangers, I haue not one kinsman left to helpe me, if any disaster of Fortune, or whatsoeuer else inconuenience should happen vnto me.* But he spake not this, saith S. *Gregory* of Tours, as grieuing that he had bin the death of his kinred: but rather in mallice and deceit, to try if any more remained aliue, that he might likewise be rid of them: *Hoc non de mortuis Parentum condolens; sed dolo dicebat, si forte potuisset adhuc aliquem reperire, vt interficeret.*

The diligence and practise of King *Clouis*.

And to shew the Iustice Diuine falling vpon him, hee dyed in the floure of his age, being not fiue and forty yeares old, fiue yeares after the Battaile of *Vogledim*. He reigned but thirty yeares, departing out of this life into another, the yeare of Grace fiue hundred and fourteene: an hundred and twelue yeares after the death of Saint *Martin*, which happened the sixteenth yeare after the Councell held at *Treuers*, the eight of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*. Whereupon it is to be noated, that the Gaules began their yeare on the night of Saint *Martin* in winter (an Antiquitie obserued to this instant, in the Courts of Parlement in France) accounting the Reigne of their Kings, from the death of the said Saint *Martin* of Tours. *Clouis* was buried in the Church builded by himselfe on the Mount of Paris, now dedicated to Saint *Geneuiefue*. And *Chrotilda* passed the yeares of her widdowhood at Tours, seruing in the Church of Saint *Martin*, and comming to Paris oftentimes. In the yeare fiue hundred and twelue, according to the testimony of *Sigibert*, *Clouis* caused the first Councell of Orleans to be held, to bring the French Church againe into her luster and splendour.

The death of King *Clouis*, in the very floure of his time.

We haue bin enforced to continue the Originall of the French, so farre as to the end of the life and Reigne of *Clouis*, for the better clearing of our History, which (vntill his time) was wonderfully intricated: there being very few Historians, that would take any paines, to make an exact enquirie; as accounting that for coine of the best allaye, which they receiued from *Hunibauld*, *Trithemius*, and other reporters of Fables and Lies. Come we now to the Sacring and Baptisme of King *Clouis*, and to the holy Bottle or Viole.

The Conclusion of the Originall of France.

CHAP

CHAP. XI.

Of the Miracle of the Holy Bottle or Viole, and other things happening at the Sacring of King Clouis. *Of the Armes and Banner of France; And that of* S. Denis *in France. Of curing the disease called the* Kings Euill. *And of the Kings Regall Prerogatiue.*

THere are some French Historians, who haue passed ouer with silence, many particularities of the French History: As those of the Holy Bottle; the Banners of France, and of S. *Denis*, and curing the disease of the *Kings Euill*, reserued onely to the Kings of France. Or else they haue put them to compromise, or doubtfully called them in question, because all the reason they can alleadge, is: that S. *Gregrery* of Tours, the onely ancient Historian of France, hath spoken nothing of them in his History. I thinke the most part of these Pyrroniste Historians, and a number of such as will credit nothing, except it be set downe in sacred Scripture; will make as little account of these particularities, although they had bin written by S, *Gregory* of Tours: as they doe of the miracles reported by him in the same History, and in his workes *De Gloria Martyrum, & Confessorum.*

Matters omitted by diuers Historians.

Some kinde of people will not credit any thing.



Were it nothing else but the credence of our Fathers, who haue giuen them vnto vs, and left them by tradition from hand to hand, and from one age to another, for memories and remembrances; surely it were sufficient. But because the curious doe couet more illumination, and to see by a perfect light indeede: we will set downe good proofe in writing, by faithfull witnesses, and by experience, which shewes it selfe daily to the eyes of the world. And we will begin with the particularities of King *Clouis* his Sacring, and of the Holy Viole or Bottle.

So soone as the tydings were known, of the Battaile at *Tolbiack*, S. *Vast*, Bishop of *Arras*, Diuinely inspired, concerning the vowe which *Clouis* had made to become a Christian: went to meete him in the Village of *Toull*, on the frontiers of *Austrasia*. *Vast* accompanying the King, to bring him to Rheims to the great S. *Rhemigius*, the light for doctrine and sanctity of life, to all the Prelates of his time. It chanced, that at passing the Riuer of *Aisne*, in a small Hamlet, then called by the people of the Countrey *Vngise*, neere to the Borough of *Reuly*, a blinde man came and presented himselfe to S. *Vast*, coniuring him by the name of God, to take pitty on him, and to giue him sight. S. *Vast* made his prayer in these words.

The vow of King *Clouis* at the battaile of *Tolbiacke* to become a Christian.

Sweete Lord Iesus Christ, who art the onely light, and who didst open the eyes of a more man borne blinde, that beleeued in thee: open the eyes of this man here, to the end, that all the French people here present, may beleeue, that thou art the onely God, who worketh wonders in Heauen, and on Earth.

The Prayer of S *Vast*.

And making the signe of the Crosse on the blinde mans eyes, and touching them with his hand; immediately he gaue him sight, to the great amazement of the King, and the whole Armie. As it is written by *Albinus Flaccus*, in the life of the said Bishop, reported by *Surius* in his first Tome, vnder the sixt day of the Moneth of February.

To bedewe this new plant, with cleare water of Celestiall Doctrine, S. *Solenne*, Bishop

Bishop of *Chartres*, ioyned himselfe on the way with S.*Vast*, as *Sigibert* informeth vs, vnder the yeare foure hundred and nintie, and both of them together, pertaining in one and the same holy desire: prepared *Clouis* to receiue Baptisme, by the hand of S.*Remigius* at Rheims.

Being there arriued, the Church was prepared with rich Ornaments, Waxe lights and Torches, Floures and Perfumes, as also the Fonte. The Sacring was preceded with an infinitie of Miracles, as is written in the Buls of Pope *Hormisda*, in the Legation sent by him to the said S.*Remigius*, throughout the Kingdome of France; as is reported by *Surius*, in the life of the said *Rhemigius*, vnder the thirteenth of Ianuary, in these tearmes. *Vices nostras per omne Regnum dilecti, & spirituales Filij nostri Ludouici, quem nuper, adminiculante superna gratia, plurimis, & Apostolorum temporibus æquiparandis signorum Miraculis prædicationem salutiferam comitantibus, cum gratæ integra conuertisti, & sacri dono Baptismatis consecrasti.*

Hincmarus, Archbishop of Rheims, who liued three hundred yeares after S. *Remigius*, (for he had seene the Kings and Emperours *Charlemaigne*, *Lewes* the Debonnaire, *Charles* the Baulde, and *Lewes* the Stammerer, second of the name) in the life of the said S.*Remigius*, obserueth these Miracles, whereof this is the first.

As the three Bishops, the King, the Queene, and the chiefest French Lords were set in the Church, hearing the holy discourse of the chiefe Priest S.*Rhemigius*; God, willing to shew visibly, what he had promised to his seruants, at all such times as they met together in his name, that is, *To appeare among them*: Suddenly filled the whole Church with so great a Light, that the bright splendour thereof exceeded the glory of the Sunne. And in the midst thereof was heard a voyce, distinctly and well formed, which pronounced these words: *Pax vobis, Ego sum, Nolite timere, manete in Dilectione mea. Peace be with you, it is I the God of Peace that speaketh to you; be not affraide, perfist in louing mee.* Which being said, the Light ceased, and so sweete pleasing a smell remained in the Church, that it appeared clearely and sensibly, that God, the Author and Father of Peace, was descended there. And the light was so piercing, as not one of the Assistants, except S.*Rhemigius*, durst behold it, and the face of the said holy Bishop, became so luminous and resplendishing; that it surpassed in clearenesse, all the Tapers and Torches burning in the Church, whereat the King and Queene being astonished, fell downe at the Bishoppes feete (as in a place of safety) full of feare and terrour, with that that they had seene.

The first Miracle that appeared.

The other Miracle, was likewise full of admiration, reported by the said *Hincmarus*, and *Floardus*, Archdeacon of *Rheims* (he liued but little aboue an hundred yeares since) in the first Booke of his Historie of the Church of *Rheims*, and thirteenth Chapter, was that of *The holy Viole* or *Bottle*, brought by an Angell, in the forme of a Doue, or white Pidgeon. These come from those Authors, who haue filled the breaches and pits of the History, written by S.*Gregory* of Tours, which we haue maimed and imperfected by iniury of time, or malice of men, in more then a thousand places. For example, in the election of *Pharamond* to be King, and his Eleuation, in the tenth Booke. At the Sacring of King *Clouis*: In the deduction of the Kings of Bourgongne, in the third Booke, and all the following reports, places and passages very defectuous. Which are easie to be supplyed, as well by the Authors formerly alleadged, as by the Monkes *Sigebert*, *Aimoinus*, as also other ancient Annalists, and Chroniclers.

The second Miracle.

The History of S.*Gregory* of Tours defective in many places.

But to iudge of the whole Cloth, by a scantling thereof, and to shew that S.*Gregory* did not silently let slip the Miracle of the said holy Bottle: wee will here produce the testimony of the Centuriatours of Germanie, called of *Magdeburg*, who haue this Author more intire, then they in France haue. Behold then what they say, concerning the Sacring and Baptisme of *Clouis*, at the beginning of the fift Age, that is to say, the yeare of Grace fiue hundred, in the fift Chapter of their fift Centurie. *Vbi hemigius Clodoueum Baptizasset, non affuit Chrisma, sed ait Gregorius Turonensis, & Henricus Erfordiensis, Columbam ore attulisse Vas Chrismate plenum.* Thus you see the passage of S.*Gregory* of Tours.

Behold them then of *Hincmarus* and *Floardus*, in the places before alleadged. *Cui-*

rius Chrisma ferens a Populo interceptus, ad Fontem pertingere, penitus est impeditus. Sanctificato denique Fonte, nutu diuino, Chrisma defuit. Sanctus autem Pontifex Rhemigius oculis ad Coelum porrectis, tacite traditur orasse cum lachrimis. Et ecce subito Columba ceu Nix aduolat candida, Rostro deferens Ampullam Coelestis doni Chrismate repletam, cuius odoris mirabili respersi Nectaro inæstimabili qui aderant, super omnia quibus antea delectati fuerant replentur suauitate. Accepta itaque Sanctus Præsul Ampulla, postquam Chrismate frontem Clodouei conspersit, species mox Columbæ disparuit. As the Clarke which brought the Holy Oyle to Baptise Clouis, would haue come to the Font; the affluence of the people hindered his passage. The Font being hallowed, by Gods permission, the Oyle could not be brought. Whereat S.Rhemigius being much amazed, he lifted his eyes vp to Heauen, praying in teares, that this Act so importing his owne glory, might not be intermitted; to the contempt of the Catholique Religion, scandale of Christians, and the losse or shipwracke of so many Pagan soules, euen now at the gate of their saluation. But behold, presently appeared a Doue, whiter then Snowe, bringing and holding in her beake a little Viole of Glasse, very thicke, full of a sweete smelling balme, but of a ruddie colour, and which with admirable sauour, rauished the spirits of all the Assistants into such an extasie, as if they had bin rapt vp into the ioyes of Paradise. And the holy Bishop, rendering thankes to God, tooke and receiued with his hands, this sacred gift sent from Heauen, and annointed therewith the forehead of King Clouis. Which being done, the Angell of Heauen, in the forme of a Doue, vanished; leauing with S.Rhemigius, this precious Gage of Holy and Celestiall Oyle, reserued from twelue hundred yeares, to this day, to Sacre the most Christian Kings of France, the onely famous Monarchs of Christendome.

Experience hath made vs know the truth of this Miracle, at the Sacring of our Kings, from the Fathers to their Sonnes, and from Ligne to Ligne: euen to our King *Lewes*, thirteenth of the name, whom God preserue to infinite ages. Of whose Sacring, we will set downe the authenticall Acts, at the end of the Tract of this Order.

This Miracle of the Holy Viole or Bottle, hath bin obserued by Historians of three Lignes of our Kings, Strangers and French. Vnder that of the *Capets* (who Reigned aboue sixe hundred yeares hitherto.) Testimony is to be had of all them which haue written, namely of *William* the Breton, in the first Booke of his *Philippides*, that is to say, the life of King *Phillip Augustus*, second of the name, called the Conqueror, Grandfather to the great King S.*Lewes*, ninth of the name.

Srrange and French Historians haue noted this Miracle.

At sacer Antistes erecto lumine sursum
Cum manibus meruit sacra per supplicamina sacrum
Cœlitus emitti cum Sacro Vase liquorem.
Ipso Rege palam, cunctisque videntibus ipsum
E Cœlo missus quem detulit Angelus illi,
Quo Rex Sacratus fuit idem primus, & omnes
Post ipsum Reges Francorum ad Sceptra vocati,
Quando Coronantur, alco sacrantur eodem.

S.*Thomas Aquinas* (who liued in the time of the King S. *Lewes*) in the second booke, which he composed of a Princes gouernment, and the last Chapter, maketh honorable memorie of our Kings Sacring, and of the gift of Grace by them receiued from Heauen, to cure the disease of the *Kings Euill*. *Sanctitatis Sacræ Vnctionis argumentum assumimus ex gestis Francorum, & beati Rhemigij super Clodoueum Redem ex delatione Olei desuper per Columbam. Quo Rex Præfatus fuit inunctus, & inunguntur Posteri: & ex signis, & portentis, ac varijs curis apparentibus in eis ex Vnctione radicit.* Which he meaneth of curing the Kings Euill, and the Armes of the Sacred Kings of France, sent from Heauen, because all of them tread in the same dance with the holy Bottle.

Ioannes Ludouicus Viualdis, of *Monte Reale* in the Kingdome of *Naples*, Doctor and professour in Diuinitie, of the Dominicane Order, in his Royall worke, discoursing the Miracles which happened at the Sacring of the said *Clouis*, saith. *Ea die qua Clodo-*

Clodoueus à sancto Antistite Rhemigio vnda Sacri Baptismatis perfusus est, quam mirabilia facta esse perhibentur. *The same day as* [Clouis *was Baptized by the Bishop,* S. Rhemigius; *foure Miracles then happened.*

Nam primo Clodoueus erutus de potestate tenebrarum, translatus est in Dei lumen, & Regnum per Baptismatis Sacramentum, Spiritus Sancti factum est Templum.

Secundo, cum in tanto Mysterio Sacrum Chrisma deesset, illico Columba candore Niueo resplendens de Coelo lapsa est, quæ rostro Sacram Ampullam Chrismatis plenum attulit, Ampullum, quo Antistes Regem liniuit. Quæ Ampulla, ob memoriam tanti Sacramenti in Rhemensi Ecclesia vsque in hodiernum diem reuerenter conseruatur. Et inde Francorum Reges in sua Coronatione inunguntur. A qua Sacra Vnctione puto omnes Francorum Reges diuinum munere, accepisse virtutem curandi quoddam genus infirmorum, sola impositione manuum.

Et quia dignum erat, vt Clodoueus ob meritum tantæ pietatis, aliquod perenne memoriale susciperet, ideo tertium admirabile subiungitur. Nam tria Lilia Aurea in nitido colore Saphiri, miro splendore micantia à superis transmissa sunt.

Baptisato autem Clodoueo non solum quartum mirabile, sed plurima sequuntur. Nam illico Francorum Populi, Fide recepta, baptizantur, Idolorum Templa destruuntur, & Ecclesiæ in honorem Christi restaurantur; ac denique tota Gallia in qua sunt Prouinciæ multæ, & Regiones magnæ, ac diuersarum gentium Nationes, tam in vita, quam in moribus admirabiles, quæ tota ambulabat intenebris, eo quòd relicto vero Deo, Idola multa, & vana sequebatur, Christianæ Religioni aggregata est. Et tunc quidem vaticinium Isaiæ completum visum est, quod dicitur; Populus qui ambulabat in tenebris, vidit lucem magnam.

The Armes of *France* brought from heauen to *Clouis*

The same Author, discoursing on the Armes of France, brought from heauen to *Clouis*, saith. *Huic Clodoueo, quia Mysterium Incarnationis Christi mente suscepit, Tria Lilia Aurea de Cœlo delapsa sunt, vt tota Christiana Religio palàm cognosceret nobilissimam Familiam Francorum Principum fore electam ad tuendum diligentius facta mirabiliora Ecclesiæ Dei, &c.* I passe ouer in silence that which *Robertus Gaguinus*, Minister generall of the *Mathurins* of Paris, hath said of the said Armes, in the first Booke of his Historie of France, to auoide reiterations of one and the same subiect.

The ancient Armes of the Gaules and French.

In the former Booke, according to the testimonie of *Latinus Pacatus*, *Sidonius Apollinaris*, and *Tacitus* himselfe, we haue obserued, that the Lyon rampant, and the Shippe, were the proper Armes of the auncient Gaules and French; so that they might be tearmed common Armes to both the Nations. Besides which, the Kings of France, Predecessours to *Pharamond*, and his Successours vnto King *Clouis*, had other perticular Armes; to wit, *D'Argent a Trois Corones, & Diademes de gueules*: For it is meerely a lye to speake of Toades, as we haue said.

The Armes of King *Clouis*.

The Chronicle of the Abbey of *Besse*, a Manuscript, which I haue, saith, that *Clouis Portoit en Blazon & Deuize, l'Escu de Gueulles a trois Croissants d'Argent*, the Symbole of Excellence and Nobilitie: And some of his Successours, Kings, bare the same, as wee shall approue in the Order of the *Shippe*, and of the double Cresceut.

After that *Clouis* had receiued the Shield of *Azure*, and the three Floures de Luces of Gold, from Heauen, as they say: The Kings his Successours would no longer haue those Armes. They of the first Ligne bare but three Floures de Luces onely. They of the second Ligne, descended from *Martell*, *Les porterent sans nombre*: howbeit, before *Pepin le Bref* was exalted to be King of France, his Predecessours, *Ils portassent que de Guelles a trois Aigles d'Or. Charles Martell* tooke sixe, *auec le chef de France. Pepin* forsooke his auncient Armes, *Et prit Seme de France, sans nombre.* For the Kings of France his Successors, continued vntill the last King *Lewes*, who did nothing, because he reigned but one yeare.

Of *Pepin le bref* and his Predecessours.

Hugh Capet the prince of all of the third Ligne.

Hugh Capet, chiefe of the Kings of the third Ligne, and his Successours, Kings, bare likewise *Seme de France sans nombre*: vntill the vnhappy reigne (and fatall to France) of *Charles* the fixt, who is said to be the Author, for reducing the Shield of France to three Floures de Luces onely, according as they were vnder the first Ligne. The yeare of this change is vncertaine, because some will haue it in the yeare foure hundred

red and twelue, and others foureteene; yet all to no purpose: for *Froissard*, *Monstrelet*, and the Chronicle of Maister *John Iouenall de's Vrsins* doe noate, that at the entrance of Queene *Isabell* of Bauaria, wife to *Charles* the sixt, at Paris in Anno 1389. there was before the great Court, a Bed all couered with Tapistrie of Azure, with Floures de Luces of Gold, representing the Throane of Iustice, belonging to the Kings of France, most richly adorned. In the midst whereof was a Hart, in greatnesse resembling that at the Pallace, wholly white, and made most artificially: about the necke whereof hung the Armes of the King, to wit, *L'Escu d Azur à Trois Fleurs de Lys d Or*, very sumptuously wrought.

The Entrance of Queene *Isabell* of Bauaria

Robert the valiant Marquesse and his descendants.

The Predecessors of *Hugh Capet*, as namely *Robert* the valiant Marquesse; and his Sonnes and descendants, Counts of *Anion* and *Maine*, who made their ordenarie abiding at *Chasteau-Neuf* in *Anion* (before King *Eudes*, who was Count of Paris, and his descendants to the said *Capet*) *Portoient pour Armes & Banneres de Gueulles à huict Bastons Fleurennez d'Or à la Bordure de France*: So saith the Manuscrip: Chronicle (which I haue) of *Monstier-Neuf* at *Poictiers*. These Armes are properly called *Escarbeucles Pommettees & Fleurettees d'Or*. Wherein *Feron* is abused in his Constables of France, who giueth to the descendants of the said *Robert*, *D'Or à Aigle de Synople*.

Armes proper the Kings of Paris onely.

Now, here is a thing to be especially noated, in regard it hath not bin common; that vnder the Kings of the first and second Ligne, there were none but the Kings of Paris onely, which bare *D'Azur à Trois Fleurs de Lys d'Or, ou sans nombre*, during the second Ligne; the other caried but Color and Mettall. For my Manuscript Chronicle of Monsiur *Iean de France*, Duke of Berry, teacheth me, that the Kings of *Austrasie*, *Portoient Bande D'Or, & d Azur de six Pieces*.

Kings of *Soissons*.

The King of Soissons *Portoient Eschiquete d'Or, & d'Azure.*

Kings of *Orleans*.

And those of *Orleans*, called of Bourgongne: *Portoient l'Escu d'Azur, seme de Cailleux à Or.* They carried in their Mantles a bordure of France, to shew, that they were issued of the most Noble blood of the world. The Effigies of King *Clothaire* the first, enterred at S. *Mard de Soissons*, hath one of the Shooes *Tout parsemé de France.* And in the same place, the figure of King *Sigibert* the first, hath his Coate Armor so named. And these are of the first Ligne.

Concerning them of the first Ligne.

The Kings vnder the second ligne.

Vnder the second, there were none likewise but the Kings of France, *Qui portassent le Lys.* For the Kings of *Aquitaine*, Sonnes to *Charlemaigne*, and their descendants, *Porterent Fuzele d'Or et d'Azur.* So saith the Chronicle of *Monstier-Neuf.*

The Kings of Germanie.

The King of Germanie, descended of *Lewes* the debonnaire: *Portoient d'Or fasce de Trois Pieces d'Azur.*

The Kings of Italie.

The Kings of Italie, descended of the said Debonnaire: *Portoient de Gueulles à Aigle d'Or, à la Bordure componce d'Or & d'Azur.* So saith the Chronicle of Berry.

The Kings vnder the third ligne.

Vnder the Kings of the third Ligne, there were none but their elder Sons (I meane their assured and certaine Successors) that bare of France. Their other Sonnes, they are but onely Mettall and Colour in diuers Brizures: Or else they tooke the Armes of their Wiues, according as it was conuenient for them to ioyne in Marage.

Armes borne by reason of the wife.

I finde, that Monsieur *Hugh de France*, called the Great, Brother to King *Phillip* the first, Count of *Vermandois* by reason of his wife; *Porta d Or Eschiquete d'Azure*, the Armes of *Hebert*, Count of *Vermandois*, his Father in Law. The said Monsieur *Hugh* placed fiue Floures de Luces in the chiefe of the said Armes; by especiall priuiledge from King *Phillip* his Brother: So I finde it recorded in the Chronicle of Berry.

The Armes of the Countesse of Dreux.

It is found likewise, that the wife of Monsieur *Robert* of France, Brother to King *Lewes* the yonger, Countesse and heire of *Dreux*, as also of *Brenne*: *Portoit D'Azure Eschiquete d'Or à la Bordure de Gueulles.*

Difference of another wifes Armes.

It could not be in the same manner with Monsieur *Peter* of France, the other brother to the said King *Lewes* the yonger, who (by contract of marriage) tooke the Sirname and Armes of his wife *Isabell*, heire to the house of *Courtnay*: *Qui portoit d'Or Trois Tourteaux de Gueulles.*

Monſieur Phillip of France, Count of Bologne, Sonne to King *Phillip Auguſtus*; *Porte de France au Lambeau de Gueulles.*

Monſieur Robert of France, Count of *Artois*, brother to S. *Lewes*: *Porta pareillement de France au Lambeau de quatre pieces de Gueulles Caſtellees d'Or de douze pieces.*

Princes bearing Armes by eſpeciall priuiledges.

Monſieur Alphons of France, Count of *Toloſa*, *Porta party de France, & de Toloſe.* *Monſieur Charles* of France, King of *Sicilie*, Count of *Anion* and of *Maine*, *Porta Pareillement de France au Lambeau de Gueulles, mouuant du chef.* Theſe two laſt were likewiſe brethren to the King S. *Lewes*. All the ſaid Princes bare of France by eſpeciall priuiledges, which the Kings their Brethren gaue vnto them, and not otherwiſe.

The firſt king of France that gaue his brethren ſuch liberty.

And S. *Lewes* was the firſt of the Kings (ſo ſaith the Chronicle of Berry) that, in imitation of ſome of his famous Predeceſſours, permitted to his Brethren, and his Sonnes: to beare Eſcutcheons and Banners of the Floures de Luces of France, with Briſures and differences; although they bare the Floures de Luces for ornament onely (ſaith the Chronicle) and not as Armes. But returne we now againe to our former diſcourſe.

Denis Areopagit a the Saint of France, as Saint *George* of *England*.

King *Clouis* enſtructed carefully, that the Faith of *Ieſus Chriſt* ſhould be preached in Gaule, and namely at Paris, by the Great S. *Dionyſius*, or *Denys Areopagita*, the firſt Biſhop of the *Pariſians*, who was taken as their Saint and Tutelarie Patron, and his *Iupiter* (not he whom the blinde Idolaters adored, but the great God of Heauen and Earth, whom the Gaules Apoſtle S. *Denys* preached) and his Warde.

Mon-ioue turned to *Mon-ioye* Saint *Denys*

Cry or ſhoute; *Mon-ioue Sainct Denys*; in time (which corrupteth all things) changed from *Mon-ioue*, to *Mon-ioye*. As if one ſhould ſay, that the conſideration of the wonderfull power of God, preached by Saint *Denys*; was the whole ioy, comfort and contentment of King *Clouis*, which made him vnconquerable, and heaped with the victories of all his enemies, ſpeeding neuer the worſe, by the deuout prayers of the Gaules Apoſtle Saint *Denys*. And let it not be forgotten, that from

The King of Armes of France *Mon-ioye*.

King *Clouis*, the King of Armes of France, hath euermore to this very day, retained the Sir-name of *Mon-ioye*.

The Banner of S. *Denys*.

Moreouer, in reuerend remembrance of the ſaid *Denys Areopagita*, Protector of the French Empire; the Kings ouer and beſide the Banner of France) cauſed to be carried in Battaile, that belonging to the Abbey of *S. Denys* in France. Which they tooke with many Ceremonies, when they receiued it from the Altar; and gaue it to be carried and defended, by one of the moſt valiant Knights of the Kings Court. As *Rigordus* writeth in the life of *Phillip Auguſtus*.

But it behoueth eſpecially to obſerue, what difference there was betweene the Banner of France, and that of Saint *Denys*: very many times confounded together, and taken one for the other, by ignorants in the French Hiſtory, and their Antiquitie.

The difference betweene a Banner and Standard, in their true forme and fa-

In the precedent Booke we haue already ſhowne, what difference there is betweene that called a Banner, and the *Vexillum de Suger*: becauſe Banners, Penons, Enſignes and Lance-Flagges are of ſquare forme, without any cutting. Whereas Standards (which are properly the *Vexilla* of the Romaines) are made in point, or round, and cut with two points, tailes, or tongues, like to our Standards. The Vexillum was moreouer made, according to the faſhion of Banners in Pariſh Churches, ſquare in forme, but cut beneath in many pieces; like to the Gonfanons in Italie, and the Armes of the Counts in Bologne.

The Banner of France.

The Banner of France (ſuch as thoſe Monarches carry to this preſent day) is of *Veluet Violet-Blewe Celeſtiall*, two wayes ſemed with Floures de Luces imbrodered more full then ſparing. As it is deſcribed by *Rigordus*, the Monke of Saint *Denys* in France, Phyſition and Chronicler to King *Phillip Auguſtus*, in the life of the ſaid Conquerour, ſpeaking of the Battaile of *Bouines*. *Signum Regale, Vexillum Flore Lily diſtinctum.*

In like manner we ſee (euen to this day) the Canopie Chaire of State; the Tunique or Dalmatique; the great Cloake Royall, yea, and ſo farre as to the regard Sandales and Buskins of thoſe Sacred Monarches: *Semez de Fleurs de Lys ſans nombre*. The Chronicle of *Iuuenall des Vrſines*, ſpeaking of the returne of *Charles* the firſt from

from his Sacring, performed at *Rheims*, ſaith: *That he entred Paris, cloathed with a very rich Robe, Toute ſamee de Fleurs de Lys d'Or.*

And as at S. *Denys* in the Quire, we ſee it wholly garniſhed with cloathes of Violet Veluet, ſemed with Floures de Luces of Gold, for the Sacring and Crowning the Queenes of France, and at *Noſtre Dame de Rheims*, for the Kings: Euen ſo at their buryings and Funerals, the Churches were round hung with adornments of Violet Veluet, embrodered with Golden Floures de Luces numberleſſe; and not as now adayes, with Serdge or Blacke Veluet. The Duke of *Berry* (in his Chronicle) maketh mention thereof; ſpeaking of the Obſequies and Funerals of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Charles* the fift, *Alanus Chartierus*, ſpeaking of that of *Charles* the ſeuenth, ſaith: *The Canopie was but of blew Linnen Cloath, painted with Floures de Luces.* Which hee ſpeaketh the rather, to noate the mecanicall couetouſneſſe of *Lewes* the eleuenth.

Adorning Churches for Funerals of Kings and Queenes.

Hearſe-cloths and Paules to couer Coffins.

As for the Coffins & Beeres of the Kings, they were (till the time of King *Frances* the fift) couered with a large Hearſe-cloath, or Paule of Violet Veluet, all ouer ſemed with Floures de Luces, and without number, of rich Gold embroderie: And not of Blacke Veluet with the white ſattin Croſſe. Armes onely for fixeteene Eſcutcheons of France: So ſaith the manuſcript Chronicle of the Chancellor *du Prat*, ſpeaking of the Funerals of King *Lewes* the twelfth: All theſe impertinences proceeded from the ignorance of Maiſters of the Ceremonies, and Criers or Proclaimers, who would haue matters to be heard, though themſelues (indeede) did not vnderſtand any thing.

Princes of the Blood being Sons of France

Moreouer, this is to be marked, that the Mantles or Cloakes of Dukes, Princes of the Blood, and eſpecially the Sonnes of France; are indeede of Violet colerd Veluet. But as the Dalmatiques of the ſaid Sonnes and Princes of Blood, ought not to be but of Crimoſin or Red Sattin, and their Buskins and Sandales of the ſame: Euen ſo vpon their Dukes Cloakes, there ſhould alſo be but *Vne Bordure de trois Fleures de Lyz de front, & de large, ou quatre tout au plus, & trois apres en Eſchiquier, & encore tranchees des Briſures marquees en leurs Armes.* There is not any but the King, and the Daulphine, a King deſigned from his birth, that ought *Porter les Sandales, la Dalmatique, & le Manteau Royal, ſemez de France, ſans nombre.*

Concerning the Eſcutcheon of France.

As for the Eſcutcheon of France, without all queſtion to the contrary, it was more famous and venerable: *Seme de Fleurs de Lys ſans Nombre, qu'eſtant reduict a trois.* And it ſhould be obſerued by Painters and Engrauers, that like as the Sonnes of France, and Princes of the Blood, *Nont point autre Cimier ſur leur Timbre tarré de front, que la ſeule Fleur de Lys double*: Euen ſo their Armes ſhould be ſuſtained, and haue two Angels for Supporters, if (for pleaſure or deuiſe) they haue no other perticulers. As in the Glaſſe windowes of the Gray Fryers, we ſee the Armes of *Mont-penſier*, hauing two white Greyhounds for Supporters. As wee ſee in them of the Royall Ligne of *Bourbon*, in the Glaſſe windowes of the Chappell, in the Caſtle of the *Louure* at *Paris*.

Concerning the Creſt and Supporters.

For others, be they Princes, or great Lords, and Officers of the Crowne, euen the very chiefeſt: *Ne doiuent auoir des Anges pour Supposts*, (if they haue not eſpeciall priuiledge from the King, who is the onely diſtributer) *Partant pour enquerir.* And as for the Kings priuie Scale, it onely is ſuſtained and borne vp by one Angell: but the Armes of France ſhould be ſupported by two Angels, and neuer were they made otherwiſe, but vnder *Charles* the ſixt, who tooke two flying Harts for his deuiſe and ſupporters. Not for the dreame reported by *Froiſſard*, but as a notable remembrance, of that which happened in the yeare 1380. He being then hunting at *Senlis*, a Stagge or Hart was found, that had about his necke a Chaine of guilded braſſe: he prohibiting, that any ſhould kill it, but onely lay ſnares to take it aliue, as accordingly it was done. And vpon the Coller of the Chaine was engrauen theſe words; *Cæſar hoc mihi donauit.* And thereupon, the King (by his owne meere motion) ſo altred his Armes, and bare for his deuiſe *A Hart flying, with a Crowne of Gold about his necke.* And euery where as his Armes were fixed, Harts in like manner ſupported either ſide; as we finde in the Chronicle of the *Vrſines*. But now let vs come to the Banner of S. *Denys*.

Of the Kings priuie Seales and Armes of France.

The reaſon why the King altered the Supporters of his Armes.

The great Oriflambe of France or Banner of S. Denys.

It was made of *Sendall*, that is to say Taffata, or other Red Silke Tiffred; three times semed with Flames of Gold, whereby it tooke the name of *Oriflambe*, and vulgarly in the Hiſtory of the Lord *de Ioinuille*, and other Hiſtorians: The Banner of *S. Denys*: *Vexillum Beati Dionyſij*, which was that deſcribed by *William* the Breton, in the eleauenth Booke of his *Philippides*.

Aſt Regi ſatis eſt tenues criſpare per auras
Vexillum ſimplex Cendato ſimplice textum
Splendoris rubei: Letania qualiter vti
Eccleſiana ſolet certis ex more diebus.
Quod quum flammas habeat, omnia, vulgariter aurea nomen
Omnibus in bellis habet omnia Signa præire:
Quod Regi præſtare ſolet Dionyſius Abbas
Ad bellum, quotiens ſumptis proficiſcitur Armis.

The Oriflambe borne before king Philip de Valois the firſt.

The great Annales of S. *Denys*, deſcribing the Battaile of Caſſell in Flanders, won by King *Phillip de Valois*, ſixt of the name, informeth vs, that before him was carried the *Oriflambe*; *Faſtened to the top of a Lance, of Vermillion colour, in manner of a Gonfanon, with two tailes, hauing Strings and Taſſelles about it of Greene Silke.* And thereby we iudge, that the Banner of Saint *Denys* was of diuers faſhions, that is to ſay, ſometimes ſquare, as Banners are in our Pariſh Churches: And then againe like to our Standards, with two points or tailes, as it is deſcribed in the former Booke.

Of whatſoeuer faſhion this Banner of S, *Denys* was made: they obſerued an auncient cuſtome, that in ſuch voyages as the Kings vndertooke, as well within as without the Realme, to fight with enemies, namely in their voyages, beyond the Seas: the Kings cauſed the Banner of S. *Denys* to be hallowed, as they took it from off the Altar, with Ceremonies of extraordinary deuotion.

The Banner of S. Denys hallowed on the Altar.

Suggerius, Abbot of the ſame place, in the life of *Lewes* the ſeauenth, and the yeare 1147. ſaith. *In hebdomada ſecunda poſt Feſtum Penteceſtes, prius ordinatis rebus, adiit Peregrinationis* (in the voyage beyond the Seas) *venit Rex, vt moris eſt, ad Eccleſiam beati Dionyſij, à Martyribus licentiam accepturus, & ibi poſt celebrationem Miſſarum, Baculum Peregrinationis* (the Pilgrimes Staffe,) *& Vexillum Beati Dionyſij, quod Oriflambe Gallice dicitur, valde reuerenter accepit, ſicut mox eſt antiquorum Regum Francorum quando debent ad bella procedere, vel votum Peregrinationis adimplere.*

The ſame Author, ſpeaking of the Frenchmens ouerthrow by the Turkes, in the ſaid voyage beyond the Seas, ſaith. *Faciebat Antegardam illa die Gaufridus de Ruceio, vnus de nobiliorib. Barenibus Prouinciæ Pictauenſis qui regebat Regis Bannieram. Quam Præcedebat Prout Moris Eſt Vexillum Beati Dionyſij, Quod Gallice dicitur Oriflambe.* Thus you ſee there was difference betweene the Banner of France, and that of S. *Denys*, which marched alwayes in the head of the Armie, and after it, the Banner of Fance, followed by the Enſignes and Flagges of the Lords and Commons. And the Lord of *Ioinuille* obſerueth in the Life of S. *Lewes*, that the ſaid King did expreſſely forbid his whole Armie, from deſcending before *Damieta*, vntill the Banner of Saint *Denys* was brought on Land from the Ships.

The Order of the Banners marching in warre.

At the voyage beyond the Seas, vndertooke by King *Phillip Auguſtus*, the greateſt King that hath reigned to this day, vnder the third Ligne, in the yeare of Grace 1190. at S. *Iohn Baptiſt*, went to take the Banner of S. *Denys*, and two more, which he had cauſed to be hallowed, from off the Martyrs Altar. *Rigordus*, Monke of the ſaid Abbey, Chronographer and Phyſition to the ſaid *Philip Auguſtus*, in the Life of the ſame King, writeth thus.

Philippus Rex ad Eccleſiam beatiſſimi Martyris Dionyſij, cum maximo comitatu venit, cauſa licentiam accipiendi. Conſueuerant enim antiquitus Reges Francorum, quandcunque contra hoſtes arma mouebant, Vexillum deſuper Altare beati Dionyſij pro tutela, ſiu cuſtodia, ſecum portabant, & in prima Acie pugnatorum ponebant. Quod videntes Aduerſarij, & cognoſcentes territi, multotiens terga dederunt. Ideoque Chriſtianiſſimus

Rex ante corporum ſanctorum Martyrum Dionyſij, Ruſtici & Eleuthery humiliter ſuper pauimentum marmoreum in oratione proſtratus Deo, &c. Tandem cum lacrimis ab oratione ſurgens, Sportam, & Baculum Peregrinationis, (the Scrip and Pilgrims Staffe) *de manu Guillelmi Rhemenſis Archiepiſcopi Auunculi ſui reuerenter accepit.* This Archbiſhoppe then, Legate of France, had the ſirname of *Champagne*, and was brother to *Alix de Champagne*, Mother of the ſaid *Phillip Auguſtus*, and was nicknamed the *Chardinall with the white hands*. This was the man, who by decree of the generall Parlement, King *Lewes* the ſeauenth, his Bother in Law, ſitting on his Throane of Iuſtice, in the Pallace of the Biſhop of *Paris Morice*: preuailed in his ſuite, for Sacring the Kings of France in the Church of Rheims, as we ſhall haue cauſe to relate more at large elſewhere.

The Cardinal with the white hands.

The ſame *Rigordus*, ſpeaking of the Battaile at *Pont de Bouines*, wonne by the ſaid King *Phillip Auguſtus*, behinde which Bridge he was on the day of Battaile, fought on the morrow after the Feaſts of S. *Iames* and S. *Chriſtopher*, in the yeare 1215. ſaith. *Clamatur vbique per campos Arma, Arma Viri, clangunt Tubæ, reuertuntur Cohortes, quæ iam Pontem tranſierunt, Reuocatur Vexillum Beati Dionyſij, Quod omnes præcedere in Bello debebat.*

And in another place. *Interea aduenium Legiones Communiarum, quæ fere vſque ad hoſpitia proceſſerant, & Vexillum B. Dionyſij, & accurrunt quantocyus ad aciem Regis, vbi videbant Signum Regale, Vexillum videlicet Floribus Lily diſtinctum.* Thus we diſcerne the difference, betweene the Banner of S. *Denys*, and the Royall one, which *Rigordus* affirmeth to be ſemed with Floures de Luces. Whereas that of S. *Denys*, was made but of ſimple Red Sendall, as it is deſcribed by *William* the Breton, ſpeaking of this Battaile of *Bouines*, loſt by the Emperour *Otho*, *Iohn without Land*, King of England, and *Ferrand* of Portugall, Count of Flanders, in regard of his wife. The ſame Breton, conuerting into Verſe, that which *Rigordus* wrote in Proſe, informeth vs; that after the ſaid Banner of S. *Denys*, marched the Banner of France, carried before the King.

Ante tamen Regem ſignum Regale tenebat
Montmiracenſis vir fortis corpore Galo.

William de Nangis, deſcribing the deſcent of the King S. *Lewes*, into the Port of *Damieta* in Ægypt, ſaith. *Rex cum Legato Sacraſanctam Crucem Domini triumphalem, omnium, & apertam in quodam vaſello erat, Præcedente quoque iuxta ipſos in alio Vaſello B. Dionyſij Vexillo Fratribuſque Regis, cum cæteris Baronibus, Baliſtarys, & Militibus circumquaque comitantibus.*

The ſame Author ſpeaking of the ſecond Voiage beyond the Seas, of the ſaid King S. *Lewes*, camped before the Citie of Carthage in Affrica, after that the Chriſtian Armie was deſcended to the Port of *Thunis*: writeth in the life of King *Philip* the hardie, the fifteenth Chapter. *Vexillo igitur Sancti Dionyſij erecto, omnibuſque rite diſpoſitis, prout moris eſt ad bellum præcedere, ſonantibus tubis, noſtri milites in hoſtes primæ Cohortis inſeruntur.*

From time to time, and Reigne after reigne, thoſe ſacred Monarchs neuer marched to warre, were it without or within the Kingdome, againſt their enemies: but the Banner of S. *Denys*, the Gaules Apoſtle, marched alwayes in the head of the Armie. As it is obſerued in their great Chronicles, and Authors diſcourſing on the Hiſtorie of France, as *Froiſſard*, *Alanus Chartierus*, and others.

The Chronicle of *Iuuenall des Vrſines*, in the Reigne of *Charles* the ſixt, and Anno 1381. ſaith. *The King went to S. Denys, to viſite the Saints bodies, and performe there his Offerings: he cauſed to be hallowed the Oriflambe by the Abbot, and gaue it to Meſsire Peter de Villiers the Elder, who tooke the accuſtomed Oath, and kept it almoſt a whole yeare.*

The Flemmings rebel againſt their Lord Count Lewes.

The Flemmings turning rebels againſt *Lewes* their Count, Father in Law to Monſieur *Phillip* of France, tearmed the hardie, Duke of Bourgongne: the ſaid Count requeſted King *Charles* the ſixt, his Soueraign Lord, to lend him ſuccor, whereby he might reduce his rebellious ſubiects to their duety & obedience. The King hauing leuied

leuied an Armie, and being in readineſſe to march away: went to S.*Denys*, where he was worthily welcomed by the Abbot, and Religious brethren of the place. On the morrow morning, Maſſe was ſolemnely ſung, and a Sermon preached by a reuerend Diuine, the holy Reliques being ſet vpon the Altar. Then the King according to the laudable manner of his Predeceſſours, without Chaperon, and without Girdle, performed his prayers, deuotions and Offerings, as his Lords did the like. Which being done, he cauſed the *Oriflambe* to be brought, which he deliuered to an aged Knight, a valiant Gentleman, named *Meſsire Peter de Villiers*, the elder, who tooke the Oath, as in ſuch caſes is required, and then the King returned to *Bois de Vincennes*. This was in the yeare 1382.

Two ſtrange accidents happening at the ioyning of two Armies.

In which yeare the King being ready to giue battaile to *Philip Arteuelle* and his Flemmings, at *Pont de Commines*; two things happened, which ſeemed to be ſomewhat marueilous. The one, there came ſuch a flight of Rauens, which engirt the Hoaſte on either ſide, as it was wonderfull; neuer ceaſing their flickering and flying about it. The other, that for the ſpace of fiue or ſixe dayes, the Ayre was ſo darke, and charged with ſtormes; that hardly could one man ſee another. When the King knew that the Flemmings came to fight, he made a kinde of promiſe; that he would fight with them, cauſing his people to march, & the *Oriflambe* to be diſplayed. No ſooner was it diſplayed, but (as the Storie ſaith) the Aire immediately cleared, and became as faire and bright, as euer it had bin ſeene; ſo that the Battels ons plainely ſaw each other. The firſt accident was reputed almoſt miraculous, in regard of that great flight of Rauens, creatures which (of their owne naturall diſpoſition doe hate blood and ſlaughter, as a thing ordenarily happening. But the ſecond obſeruation chanced on the day of the ſame Battaile.

The ſecond fire great accident on the day of Battaile

Arteuelle and his Flemmings encountred the French ſo furiouſly, that they retired backe diuers paces. Which the French perceiuing, they made a ſhoute, and out-cry, ſo loud as poſſibly they could: *Noſtre Dame, Mont-Ioye, S. Denis, On them, On them.* At this War-crie the ſtrength of the French redoubled in ſuch manner: that the Flemmings (faint hartedly) recoyled, brake their rankes, and in few houres were quite diſcomfited. So that there remained ſlaine on the ground, fortie thouſand on the Flemmings ſide, with their firebrand of ſedition *Arteuelle* himſelfe: And of the Kings followers about, three and fortie perſons.

What the King did after the day of Battaile

After this Battaile, the King and his Vnckles went to the Church of S. *Denys*, tooke the *Oriflambe*, himſelfe being bare headed, and without Girdle, and going before the Altar in great deuotion, deliuered it to the Abbot and gaue to the Church a goodly Pall of Cloth of Gold: So ſaith the Chronicle of the *Vrſines*.

The men of Gaunt reuolted from their allegiance.

In the yeare following, three hundred foureſcore and three, the men of *Gaunt* being againe reuolted, to aide the *Engliſh*; the King reſolued to goe fight with them. He departed from *Paris*, and came to S. *Denys*, where he heard Maſſe, receiued the *Oriflambe*, and gaue it to *Meſsire Guy de la Trimouille*, a very valiant Knight: who receiued the Sacrament, and ſwearing the ordenary Oathe, tooke it.

How the *Oriflambe* ought to be carried in warre, and when.

The yeare 1386. when King *Charles* enterpriſed the Conqueſt of the Kingdome of England, at his departure from Paris; he went to S. *Denys* in France, where he performed his prayers and Offerings. He fell into a doubtfull deliberation, whether he ſhould take the *Oriflambe* with him, or no. For he ought not to take it, but for defence of the Kingdome; and not when he intendeth to conquer new Prouinces: So ſaith the Chronicle of the *Vrſines*.

Now, it is to be noated, that the Kings of France doe cauſe it to be newly hallowed, when they march in perſon againſt their enemies. Otherwiſe, when the warre is performed by Lieutenants; then there is carried no *Oriflambe* at all

Bearing the *Oriflambe* an Office of the Crowne

And the order of bearing this Standard or Banner of S. *Denys*, was created in title of an Office belonging to the Crowne (as we learne by the ſame Chronicle) in Anno 1397. *At this time there happened a great alteration of Officers, becauſe many were ſlaine in the Battaile of Hungaria* (loſt at *Nicopolis*, by the folly of *Iohn* of Bourgongne, Count of *Neuers*, eldeſt Sonne to the Duke of Bourgongne *Phillip* the Hardie, in the yeare 1396.) *And then was made Conſtable of France, Sancerre, who before*

before had beene Marſhall; Meſsire Iohn le Maingre, otherwiſe called Boucicault, was made and ordained Marſhall; Meſsire Iacques de Bourbon great Chamberlaine; and Meſsire Hutin d'Omont appointed to carry the Oriflambe.

So by the death of *Meſsire Guy de la Trimouille*, ſlaine on the day at *Nicopolis*, the ſaid *d'Omont* had the Office of bearing the *Oriflambe*. So that the faction of Bourgongne (fatal and vnfortunate to France) hauing conſtrained King *Charles* the ſixt to goe and beſiege Bourges, to ruinate the Princes of his bloud, his Vnkles and Nephewes of Berry and of Orleans, in the yeere 1411. the ſaid *D'Omont*, after he had receiued the Sacrament, and taken the Oath in ſuch caſes required; receiued the *Oriflambe* from the Kings owne hand, and reſtored it againe the yeere following, into the Abbey of S. *Denys*.

The faction of Bourgongne fatal to France

The Regiſters of the Court do report, that in the yeare of our Lord 1414. in the moneths of February and March, there aroſe a wonderfull winde, ſtinking and full of nipping colds, whereby the inhabitants of Paris (without diſtinction of age or quality) were ſo troubled with Rheumes, that it cauſed ſtrange Coughes in the Parliament Iuriſdictions, and namely that of the great Chamber, and *du Chaſtelet*; whereby they ceaſed for a time, and not a man was ſeene to walke.

A very noyſome and dangerous winde.

This ſickneſſe cauſed the death of many, and particularly of the ſaid *Hutin d'Omont*, a worthy valiant Knight, in whoſe place there was choyce made of another.

So that in the ſaid yeere, the King marching to the Siedge of Compeigne (called *Karnopolis* and *Karolopolis* by the King and Emperor *Charles* the bald, who cauſed it to be compaſſed with walls) vſurped by *Iohn* Duke of Bourgongne. *There the King cauſed an aſſembly of his Councell, to know to whom it ſhould be deliuered: For it was a cuſtome obſerued at all times, to giue the bearing of the Oriflambe to a Knight, a man Loyall, Wiſe, and Valiant. And becauſe the Lord d'Omont (who had vſed to carry the Oriflambe) was dead; by election, choyce was made of Meſsire Guillaume Martell, Lord of Bacqueuille, to whom was deliuered the Oriflambe, according to order, who greatly excuſed himſelfe in regard of his olde age. But then was granted to him, as an ayde and aſſiſtant, his eldeſt ſonne, and another goodly gentleman, named Meſsire Iohn de Betas, Lord of Sainct Cler; who were appointed as Coadiutors to the ſaid Lord de Bacqueuille.*

Compeigne called Karnopolis and Karolopolis.

A new election made of the Oriflambe-bearer.

In like manner the Romane Emperours, when they marched forth to Warre, cauſed to be carried before them their *Imperiall Banner*, compoſed of Red ſilke, which their Hiſtorians called *Diabeſtion, Diuum Velum, Labarum*, and by the particular word *Flammeum*, either for being ſemed with flames of gold in embroydery; or by finiſhing (as all Standards ought to doe) in two points, or tailes, when it waued in the ayre, then the two tailes ſeemed like a flame of fire. On the top of this *Labarum*, was exalted the Cypher and Monogramme of our Redeemer *Ieſus Chriſt*, in Greeke letters of pure gold, entoured with a rich Crowne of precious ſtones: So ſaith the Chriſtian Poet *Prudentius*.

The Banner Imperial born before the Romane Emperors.

Chriſtus purpureum gemmanti textus in auro
Signabat Labarum.

It is generally knowne, that the ſacred Monarches of the firſt Ligne, did beare ſo much honor and reuerence to the reliques of great S. *Denys Areopagita*, and his companions S. *Ruſticus*, and S. *Eleutherius*, the firſt Apoſtles of the Gaules; that they held them for defenders and protectors of the holy Kingdome of France, as *Rigordus* hath obſerued in the life of *Philip Auguſtus, Anno* 1195. *Rex Philippus non ſine mor Patroni, & defenſoris Sacri Francorum Imperij B. Dionyſij, quàm citius potuit ad Eccleſiam Beatiſsimi Martyris properauit: vbi pro gratiarum actione Deo, & Martyribus pallium ſericum pretioſum, in pignus charitatis, humiliter ſuper Altare obtulit.*

The firſt Apoſtles of the Gaules.

So that they made choyce of their buriall in the Church dedicated to the ſaid holy Martyrs, long time before *Dagobert* (whom the vulgar fondly would haue to be the founder thereof) according to the teſtimony of S. *Gregory* of Tours in his hiſtory of France, compoſed long time before the reigne of the ſaid King *Dagobert*, who

was no more then a repairer of the said Abbey. Thither they made recourse, as well in their sicknesse, as when they went forth to Warre: and then they caused to be taken downe the Shrines wherein their ashes were kept.

King Lewis very grieuously sicke.

S. *Lewis* falling sicke very dangerously, the yeere of Grace 1244. in the Moneth of December, the Saturday before S. *Lucie*; all France made publique prayers for his recouery to health. But particularly they of the Abbey of S. *Denys* in France, (where is the common *Mansoleum* of those Sacred Monarchs) contributed so holy an action. For the fryday before the Feast of Christmasse, the Abbot caused the Shrines of the holy Martyrs to be taken forth of their Screenes and Vaults, and carried them in procession, wherein went bare-footed, the Bishops *Charles* of *Nyon*, and Peter of *Meaux*, the Abbot of S. *Denys Odo Clementis*, and all his religious brethren, followed by an vnspeakeable number of Burgesses of Paris, and of all sexes. And the very same houre of extracting the said holy bodies, the good King Saint *Lewis* returned from death to life.

Mathew Paris, a Monke of Saint Albanes in England, who liued at the same time, recordeth it in these words, vnder the yeere 1248. *Hoc Anno multi Nobiles Angliæ proponentes iter arripere Hierosolymitanum cum Christianissimo Rege Francorum, quem miraculosè à portis Mortis, vel potius ab ipsa Morte, Dominus dignatus est reuocare, & reuiuificare.*

William de Nangis, in the life of the said S. *Lewis*, the twentieth chapter, speaking concerning the extraction of the said holy bodies, saith. *Dum ista parabuntur, auditum est Parisijs, quod pro salute Regis Beatorum corpora Martyrum, quæ nunquam nisi solummodo pro salute Regis Franciæ, vel Regni sui periculo extrahuntur.*

When the Kings were marching to Warre, the said extraction of these holie Bodies was peformed; and oftentimes they remained still vpon the Altar, vntill their returning backe.

Rigordus, in the life of King *Philip Augustus*, *Anno* 1191. when the said *Philip* sayled beyond the Seas, to beliege Acres, saith. *Hoc Anno octauo Kalendas Septembris consilio Domini Guillelmi Rhemensis Archiepiscopi, & Adelæ Reginæ, & omnium Episcoporum, corpora Beatorum Martyrum Dionysij, Rustici & Eleutherij, cum purissimis Vasis Argenteis, in quibus diligentissime sigillata continebantur sunt extracta et super Altare posita, vt ibi omnes fideles ad tam Sanctum spectaculum conuenientes, cum gemitu & suspirijs pro sancta Terra liberanda, & pro Rege Francorum, & Vniuerso Comitatu suo puras manus cum Moyse leuantes ad Dominum preces funderent.*

This was practised as well vnder the reignes of King *Francis* the first, as of King *Henry* the second his Sonne. *Francis* the first, going and returning from Italie, as we read in the Manuscript Chronicle of the Chancellor *Du Prat*, in these words. *The King being at Lyons, in Iune Anno* 1515. *ready to passe into Italie, to conquer his Duchie of Millaine; sent to S. Denys in France, to the end that the Holy Bodies might be descended, as was wont to be done when the Kings of France went in person to any War so off. And the fifteenth day of October,* 1516. *the King returning to Paris from his iourney of Italie, went to Saint Denys in France, to giue thankes to God, and to haue the Holy Bodies put in their places againe, which had beene descended, when the said King passed ouer the Alpes.*

The like was done in the time of King *Henry* the second, in *An.* 1552. the 28. day of Aprill: the Cardinall of Bourbon, Abbot of the said Abbey, caused the Bodies to be taken forth in the Kings absence.

The Ceremonies at setting vp of the Shrines into their places.

But concerning their replacing, it was alwaies done in presence of the King, and when he was returned home again. At this Ceremony, the King was clothed in his Royall Ornaments, the Crowne on his head, the Sword naked, the Scepter Royall, and the Rodde or hand of Iustice, carried before his Maiesty, by Princes of the Blood bare-headed; and for want of them, by the very greatest Lords of the kingdome, followed also by the Court of Parliament, in their red robes, the Chamber of Accounts, the Generalls of the Aydes, the Vniuersitie and the Hostell of the Citie. Because, before replacing the said holy Bodies, Procession was made, two Bishops bearing each of them three Shrines of the holy Martyrs, after which followed the Clergy, the King, and his Soueraigne Courts.

In

In ancient times (meerely in deuotion) Princes of the bloud were bearers of them, and the Kings themselues of that of S. *Denys*, with their eldest Sonne. We haue the testimonies of King *Lewis le Gros*, sixt of the name (reported in his life by the Abbot S. *Denys Suggerus*) and of *Lewis* the yonger, his Sonne; and of *Philip de Valois*, according to the great Chronicle.

The Romane Emperors after *Constantine* the great, going in publique to solemn Festiualls, and on dayes of honourable disporting; carried a Crosse of gold in the right hand, and another as the Crest or Timbre of their *Tyarus*: So saith *Curopalates*, and the Christian Poet *Prudentius*.

Ardebat summis Crux addita Christis.

How highly the signe of the Crosse hath been honored in France.

The Monarchs of the Lillie, haue so honored this marke and Symbole of mens saluation, that all their Monie is stamped therewith. Their Monagrammes, Ciphers and Signatures are made in a Crosse, as is obserued in the Treatise, concerning the principall Officers of the Crowne of France.

When they marche in publique, or in ranged Battell against their enemies; it hath beene ordinarily their custome, to haue a Crosse high hly exalted borne before them. As that of their Oratory and Chappell, finishing in a Foure de Luce, ouer the Coape of S. *Martin*, the second Apostle of the Gaules.

A piece of the true Crosse sent to King *Lewes*.

King *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, Emperour, hauing receiued from him of the East, named *Basilius* (in the yeare of Grace, eight hundred threescore and twelue, and the moneth of Ianuary) a small peece of the true Crosse; hee caused it to be richly set in gold and precious stones, and had it carried before him. So saith *Nithardus*, and the Chronicle of *Laureshеim*.

Theganus, Archdeacon of the Metropolitane Church of Treuers, and *Nithardus* sonne to *Angilbert* and *Bertha*, daughter to the King and Emperour *Charlemaigne*, obseruing the dispositions of the said *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, and of his Sonne *Charles* the *Bauld*, by the bloody factions of a distempered League, doe tell vs: *That the Bauld being in the field, and seeking to passe the Riuer of Seine, where she loseth her name in the Ocean Sea, his rebellious Vassailes which kept the passage therof, acknowledging the Crosse borne before him, whereon they had sworn to him the oath of fidelitie; were surprized with such a dreadfull feare, that immediately they forsooke the Foord and bankes of Seine, leauing them freely to the King. Who came to S. Denys in France, there rendering thankes vnto God, and to his holy Apostles add Protectors of the Holy and Sacred Kingdome of France.*

The Crowne of Thornes pawned to the K. of France.

In the yeare of Grace 1240. *Baldwine* Emperour of Constantinople, being narrowly pressed with want of money, to furnish the Warre then much importing him; aduertised the King S. *Lewes* to furnish him with meanes. And for assurance thereof, he would send him *The Crowne of Thornes, which the Iewes planted on the head of the Sauiour of the World*; which the King most willinglie accepted, and with all his heart.

The true Crosse where on Christ suffered, brought to Paris.

The yeere following, the *True Crosse* (which after the death of the Prince of *Sarrazins Saladine*, had beene kept in the Citie of Damieta, vntill the most vnfortunate day when the City was first conquered, and afterward lost and conquered by the said *Sarrazins*) was brought to Paris. Saint *Lewes* King of France, and Queene *Blanch* of Castile, his Mother, made no spare of their goods and liuelode, to gaine this vnspeakeable Treasure. It had been pawned first to the Venetians, for an hundred and fiftie thousand pounds of siluer, by the two sonnes of *Iohn de Brenne*, King of Ierusalem, to warre vpon the Greekes.

The Royall assembly at presentation of the Crosse.

The Emperour *Baldwin* afterward engaged it againe, and finally wrought the meanes that it was released from the said Venetians, by the King S. *Lewes*, who vpon good-Friday, *Anno* 1241. caused the said true Crosse to be brought into the Abbatall Church of S. *Anthonie des Camps lez Paris*, at the entrance whereof was prepared a Theater, whereon the King, the Queenes, *Blanch* his Mother, and *Margaret* of Prouence his wife, and his three brethren mounted; with the Archbishops, Bishops, Prelates, Princes and great Lords of the Kingdome, & an infinite number

of

of people assisting the Ceremonie. The King and whole company, melting themselues into teares of ioy, receiued that precious gadge of our Redemption, which he raised vp vpon the said Theator aloft, to let the people see it, the Prelates singing with chearefull voyces, *Ecce Crucem Domini.* After adoration done thereto, the King, bare-footed, cloathed in a Coate of plaine Cloath, vngirt, bare-headed, and hauing fasted three dayes before (imitating the good Emperour *Heraclius*, when he returned victorious from the Kingdome of the Persians) carried the true Crosse from S. *Anthonies*, to the Cathedrall Church of our Lady in Paris. Followed by the Queenes and the Kings three Brethren on foote likewise, who carried the *Crowne of Thornes*, highly exalted to be seene of the people, brought into the Kingdome the yeare before, the chiefe Lords of France sustaining the Kings Armes, and the Princes his brethrens.

The King himself carried the Crosse.

This memorable Processiō hapned in the Church of Paris, al the Bels in the City ringing, & praier being perfected, the King (in the same Order of Ceremonie) came from the said Church, to his own great Pallace in the midst of the Citie. *Reuersus est Rex ad matus Palatium suum, quod est in medio Vrbe, deferens Crucem suam gloriosę, Fratribusque eius Coronam, consequente Prælatorum ordinata Processione, qua nunquam visa fuit in Regno Francorum solemnior, aut iucundior.* Alwayes bearing the Crosse, and his brethren after him the Crowne of Thornes, all the Prelates and Cleargy following in an orderly procession, the most solemne and ioyfull that had euer beene seene in the Kingdome of France, thus speaketh *Mathew Paris*, whereto hee addeth this remarkeable tract, for the greatnes and precedency of the holy & sacred kingdome of France. *Vniuersi igitur, & singuli Dominum, qui Regnum Francorum pra omnibus alijs specialicomplectitur dilectione consolatur, & tuetur* (Spanish writers, answer to the passage of this Englishman!) *iunctis manibus glorificarunt:* That God comforteth, guardeth, and maintaineth the Kingdome of France, which hee affecteth with an especiall loue aboue all the Kingdomes of the world. *Sic igitur Dominus noster Iesus Christus Rex Regum, & Dominus Dominantium, cuius iudicia abyssus multa, in cuius manu corda sunt Regum, dans salutem quibus vult; ipsum Regnū Francia his tribus dotauit, & ditauit in breui tempore beneficijs preciosis.* That God had in small time enriched and endowed the Kingdome of France with three precious benefits; the Crowne of Thornes; the Crosse of our Lord Iesus Christ (he might haue added the steele head of the Lance that pierced his side, and the Spunge which sucke vp the Gaule and Vineger, which are likewise in the holy Chappell of the Pallace at Paris; and one of the foure nailes, wherewith hee was fastned to the Tree of the Crosse, which is at S. *Denys* in France) and the body of the most happy *Emond*, Archbishop of Canterbury in England (that is S. *Edme* of Pontigny in Bourgongne; where euen to this instant day, he is to be seene in flesh and bones, without any iot of impairing) and Confessour, shewing daily infinite strange myracles.

The 3. great Blessings bestowed on France.

A Chappell purposely builded for the Reliques.

The King of France then (so proceedeth on our Monke) caused to be builded neere to his Pallace, a Chappell of royall structure, wherein hee enclosed these precious Reliques of our redemption. Moreouer, the said King had his Chappell adorned with the Cloake of our Lord, the head of the Lance, and the Spundge, with innumerable other precious Reliques; in honor and reuerence whereof, the Pope hath granted forty daies of true pardon, to all such as goe to say prayers and meditations, in the said holy Chappell of the Pallace at Paris. *Vnde Dominus Papa concessit omnibus eas adeuntibus in Capella Parisiensi orandi causa, Quadraginta dierum relaxationis.* As much auoucheth *William of Nangis*, in the life of the King S. *Lewis*, and the twelfth chapter.

The said King S. *Lewis* caused to be enchased in gold, a part of the said true Crosse, which is to be seene in the holy Chappell, called *The Crosse of Triumph and of Victory*, and he carried some part thereof with him whersoeuer he went, and at solemne feasts, himselfe shewed it to the people.

The following Kings obserued the example of King *Lewis*.

By his example, the Kings his descendants obserued the same laudable custome, when making their entrance into Paris, they went to render thankes to God in the Cathedrall Church thereof, where they shewed to the people that *Crosse of victory.* *Alanus*

Alanus Chartierus, describing the entrance of King *Charles* the seuenth, called the Victorious, telleth vs, that his Maiesty arriuing at the Porch (*Paradisus* in the Capitularies) of the Church of Paris, tooke the accustomed Oath, for conseruation of the Rights and Priuiledges thereof, betweene the hands of the Bishop of Paris: which being done, he entred into the Church, within the body whereof were three Arches, couered with great burning Tapers, which shewed the structure of the faire Temple so admirably, and as cleere as at noone day. Hauing said his prayers, and *Te Deum* being sung, he went to suppe and lodge at the Pallace in the wonted manner. *On the next day in the morning, being Wednesday, the 13. of Nouember, Anno 1437 the King went to heare masse in the holy Chappell, and shewed there to the people, the true Crosse, and the head of the Speare, wherewith our Lord was pierced on the Tree of the Crosse.*

This custome obserued by the most Christian Kings, in shewing the true Crosse to the people of Paris, on the morrow after their entrance; was deriued from their yeerely meeting on good Friday, at the said holy Chappell, for shewing the true Crosse to the people, in honor and reuerence which they bare to the holy Hieroglyphicke of our Redemption. For, after that the King S. *Lewis* had receiued the true Crosse, from the Treasury of the Latine Emperors of Constantinople (as wee haue said) and p'aced it in the holy Chappell of his Pallace, by him newly builded, as yet is to be seene: he and the Kings his successors, went to adore it yearelie on good-Friday, and soone after they shewed it to the people, at the trauers of a grate, or lattice made in an yron cage, at issuing forth of a Chappell in the Quire, fronting on the South-side of the Pallace. As it is seene on Palme-Sunday (when the Church of Paris goeth on Procession) then prepared on a Table, couered with a faire white cloth, and two lighted Tapers on both sides of the said true Crosse, when it is adored by the Cleargy and people.

Whence the custome was deriued.

Prouision made because it should not be touched.

This latter custome is taken forth of the Registers belonging to the Court of Parliament, in *Anno* 1423. wherein is an Order, whereby the Duke of Bedford, Regent of France, for his Nephew King *Henry* of England, sixt of the name, chalenging his title to France) had power to shew the true Crosse to the people of Paris, and these are the words of the said Act. *The Duke of Bedford, by the absence of the King his Nephew, and representing his person, shall shew on good-Friday the true Crosse to the people, as the Kings of France vsed the same day to doe.* This was during the beginning of the most miserable and vnfortunate reigne of King *Charles* the seuenth, who reconquered his Kingdome by the point of the sword, and was victorious ouer all his enemies.

The Duke of Bedford regent of France for the King of England.

Passe we now to the disease called the Kings euill, and curing thereof, reserued to the Monarchs of the Sacred Lillie of France: for thereof it was that so excellently spake S. *Thomas Aquinas*, in the passage before alleadged, concerning the holy Viole or Bottle, and sacring the Kings of France.

King *Clouis* made experience thereof, on the person of one of his ordinary household, one whom he affected, named *Lanicetus*, whom he made whole and sound from that foule and infectious disease. And the Kings his Successours, euen to this very day (after their Sacring, but not before) shewed by experience, that this Celestiall grace is infused into them, yea, and continued, from the day of their Sacring, vntill the houre of their deceasse.

The Kings Euill, and how the King of France vsed to cure it.

Petrus Blesensis, Archdeacon of Somersetshire in England, but borne, and buried at *Blois*, the yeare of Grace one thousand two hundred, vnder *Philip Augustus*, in his hundred and fiftieth Epistle, speaking of the Kings Euill, hath these words. *Fateor quod sanctum est Domino Regi assistere: Sanctus enim, & Christus Domini est, Nec in vanum accepit vnctionis Regiæ Sacramentum. Cuius Vnctionis virtus si ignoratur, aut in dubium venit, fidem eius plenissimam facit defectus inguinariæ pectis, & curatio Scrophularum.* This wicked foule disease, hath many Latine and Greeke names, *Cherades, Sodelle, Strumæ, Scrophulæ*, and other beside.

Clouis and the Kings his Successors, touching their throates that were so diseased, vsed but these words, as all other Kings doe to this day: *The King toucheth thee; but God cure thee.* S. *Lewes*, ninth of the name, added thereto the signe of the Crosse, which

The words vsed by the King, touching the disease.

which the Kings his Predeceſſours had not vſed to doe. As we learne by *Guillaume de Nangis*, in the liues of S. *Lewes*, and of his eldeſt Sonne *Phillip* the Hardie, King of France, third of the name. *In tangendo infirmitates, quæ vulgo, Sodellæ vocantur, ſuper quibus curandis, Franciæ Regibus Dominus contulit gratiam ſingularem, pius Rex* (ſpeaking of S. *Lewes*) *modum hunc, præter cæteros, voluit obſeruari. Cum enim alij Reges Prædeceſſores ſui tangendo ſolummodo locum morbi, verba ad hæc appropriata, & conſueta proferrent, quæ quidem verba Sancta atque Catholica ſunt, nec facere conſueuiſſent aliquod ſignum Crucis, ipſe* (S. Lewes) *ſuper conſuetudinem aliorum hoc addidit, quod dicendo verba ſuper locum morbi, ſanctæ Crucis ſignaculum imprimebat, vt ſequens curatio virtuti Crucis potius attribueretur, quæ Regiæ dignitati.* And yet notwithſtanding, I haue ſeene ſome ſuch diſeaſed perſons handled by the Kings *Henry* the third, *Henry* the Great, of famous memory, and King *Lewes* the thirteenth, now reigning, who did onely touch the Euill, pronouncing the words before remembred.

The ſigne of the Croſſe added by the king S. *Lewes*.

Iacobus Valdeſius, a Spaniſh Doctor, in a Tract which hee wrote concerning the dignity of the King and Kingdome of Spaine, is compelled to ſubſcribe to the truth, touching the excellency of the Kings of France, in healing this dangerous diſeaſe. Howbeit, according to the naturall diſpoſition of his Nation, which in ſo wretched a ſickneſſe cannot exceed the true meanes indeed: he laboureth ſubtilly, to tarniſh and deface the glory of the French to his vttermoſt, anouching, that the power of this curing, proceeded not by the purity and ſweetneſſe of the ayre of France, but contrariwiſe, by heauenly grace and fauour giuen to the Noble Kings thereof. *Non deſunt qui detrahere gloriæ Gallorum velint, id euenire dicentes occaſione aeris Gallici curandis Strumis ſalubris, & ita omnes aerem mutantes, & ad regionem Gallicæ venientes, valetudinem recuperare. Sed ego ſentio id accidere gratia conceſſa a Deo optimo maximo eius obſequio deditis Regibus Galliæ, & fidelibus, præſertim Diuæ Ludouico, adeo quod in oppido Poblete* (that is a Burrough and Monaſtery, ſeated on the frontiers of Arragon and Catalogna, where the moſt part of the Kings of Arragon are enterred) *in regione Hiſpaniæ Catalauniæ, vbi brachium veneratur Diui Regis Ludouici, quos laborantes Strumis tangit, brachium illud ad ſanitatem reducit.* But this Author (ignorant in the French Hiſtory) is miſtaken, alleadging S. *Lewes* to be the firſt King that cured the Euill: the paſſage of *Nangis* before anouched, proueth the contrarie.

That it is done more naturally in Italy and Spaine then in France.

In referring this cure to the temperate ayre of France, is a great abſurdity, becauſe the ſame hath beene done as well in Italy as in Spaine, which Prouinces are ſtuffing, and wondrous hote.

In Italie, the Continuer of *Enguerran de Monſtrellet*, in his Hiſtory of France, and the Italians *Paulus Iouius*, and *Guichardin*, ſpeaking of the entrie of King *Charles*, eight of the name, into the City of Rome, as he went to re-conquer his Kingdom of Naples. *The King* (ſaith the Continuer) *ſhewed himſelfe to haue power then ſo ſumptuous and magnificent, euen in the Citie of Rome, that hee cauſed to be erected threm foure payre of gallowes*, commanding to be hanged, ſtrangled, and beheaded certain theeues and malefactors, in the field of floures (*In Campo Floris:*) Others likewiſe were beaten, whipt, their noſes and eares cut off, and ſome ſuch delinquents drowned. *To declare, that as the true eldeſt Sonne of the Church, and moſt Chriſtian King, he had all the high and loweſt meanes of Iuſtice within Rome: like as in the City of Paris, and other of his Kingdome of France.*

After this moſt remarkeable Tract, followeth that concerning the touching or handling the Kings euil. *On the Tueſday next enſuing, being the twentieth day of Ianuarie, Anno* 1493. *the King heard Maſſe in a place called the Chappell of France* (that is of S. *Lewis*) *where he handled and healed the diſeaſe of the Kings euill; which when the Italians beheld, they were neuer ſo ouercome with wonder.*

Arnoulle Ferron, Counceller in the Parliament of Bourdeaux, in the life of good King *Lewis* the twelfth, called *Father of the people*, writeth, that this Prince hauing made his entrance into the City of *Geneway*, as being Soueraigne Lord thereof: the people of *Geneway* admired nothing more, then to ſee him cure ſuch a diſeaſe, onely with the touch of his hand: *Mirati ſunt illi Regem Strumis ſolo remedio mederi.*

The

The Chronicle of *Anthony du Prat*, Chancellour of France, in the life of King *Francis* the firſt, telleth vs, that after the battell of *Marignano*, (in the field of Saint *Bridget*, a place famous for the ouerthrow and buriall of ſixeene thouſand and fiue hundred Switzers, ſlaine there in the field) King *Francis* became Maſter of his Duchie of Millaine, and Seigneury of Geneway, Cities whereinto hauing made his entrance, he went to *Bologna le Graſſe*, where Pope *Leo de Medicis*, tenth of the name then remained. The King ſoiourning ſome few daies at Bologna, departed thence the fifteenth day of December, Anno 1515. *Vpon which day of his departure, hee handled & healed the diſeaſed of the Kings Euill, in the Chappell of the ſaid Popes Pallace, to the great amazement of the Holy Father, and the Italians that came to ſee the wonder. Among the reſt, a Biſhop of Polonia was cured, who came (expreſſely for that effect) to Millaine, and from thence to Bologna, with commendatory Letters from the King of Poland, his Lord and Soueraigne Prince.*

A Biſhop of Poland cured of the Kings Euill.

After the vnfortunate day at *Pauia*, ſo fatall to France, by ſurprizall of the ſame King *Francis*, and that great Prince tranſported into Spaine, where hee was vſed like a Barbarian, and with all rigour, by *Charles* the fift, his Vaſſall and Liedgeman for the Counties of Flanders and Artois. The ſaid King (rendring good for euill) healed all Spaniards infected with the loathſome diſeaſe (wherewith thoſe people are troubled beyond all other in the world.)

The bad entertainment of the King, and his goodneſſe extended to the Spaniards, was ſole ſubiect to the learned *Laſcaris*, to make this Epigram, whereby hee touched (to the quicke) *Charles* the fift for the ingratitude, ſmall reſpect and honour by him offered to the *Aſculapius* of his people, his Prince and Soueraigne Lord.

Ergo manu admota ſanat Rex Charadas, eſt que
Captiuus Superis gratus vt ante fuit?
Iudicio tali, Regum ſanctiſſime, qui te
Arcent, inuiſos ſuſpicor eſſe Deis.

The Epigram of *Laſcaris* againſt *Charles* the fift.

And now we come to the Kings Regall Right and Prerogatiue.

S. *Gregory* of Tours, in the ſecond booke and thirty eight chapter of his hiſtory of France, ſpeaking of the Preſents which King *Clouis* receiued from *Anaſtaſius*, Emperour of the Eaſt, ſaith that *Aſcenſo equo, aurum, argentumque, & itinere illo quod inter Portam Atrij, & Eccleſiam Ciuitatis eſt, præſentibus Populis manu propria ſpargens, voluntate benigniſsima erogauit.* Hauing receiued them in the Church of S. *Martin* in Tours, he mounted on horſeback, and cloathed in the Ornaments of the Emperour of the Eaſt, with the Diademe on his head; hee threw (with his owne hand) gold and ſiluer to the people, from the Church porch of S. *Martin*, vnto the great Church of the City. He had learned this behauiour of the Romane Emperours, who vpon the dayes of their Coronation gaue very liberall Largeſſe to the people.

Curopalates, in the booke concerning the Officers of the Court of Conſtantinople, obſerueth that ancient cuſtome, that the new Emperour appointed, going to the Church to be Sacred and Crowned, mounted on a Theater (prepared for the purpoſe) at the Porch of the Gate Royall, where hee diſtributed his Largeſſe of pieces of new Cloth, being of his colours and Liueries, with ſome pieces of gold or ſiluer. *Nouus Imperator aſcenſo Triclinio, quod Thomaites appellatur, ſpectans verſus Auguſtale, vbi ſtat Populus, ſimul & milites, per aliquem Senatorij Ordinis virum (antequam ſe videndum exhibeat) Populo Miſſilia iacit, Epicombia dicta, Segmenta videlicet expanno, in illorum vnoquoque ſunt nummiſmata aurea tria, argentea totidem.* And afterward, he was ſhewne to the people, exalted vpon a Shield, as wee haue ſaid in the precedent booke.

After the ſolemne Feaſt for the ſaid Sacring and Coronation, there is yet a further Largeſſe giuen to the people, by a Senatour appointed to doe it; which is continued for the ſpace of eight or ten daies, during the Ceremonies of the ſaid Coro-

A further largeſſe to the people of 8 or 10. daies continuance.

Coronation, more or leſſe, according to the benefit of time, and ſeaſon of the yere. The firſt day thereof, the new Emperour comming to his Pallace, preſenteth himſelfe to all them of his Court, vpon a place highly exalted, hauing the Maſter of his Wardrobe with him, or chiefeſt Gentleman of his Chamber, who holdeth in his Cloake skirt many peeces of gold and ſiluer, which the Emperour gripeth with his owne hands, and diſtributeth to the Princes and Lords of his Court, as alſo to their children, the people then preſent, and to all his Officers.

Saint *Gregory* of Tours hath not obſerued (or elſe wee come farre ſhort of this paſſage in his Hiſtory, as well as of other more beſide) that *Clouis* hauing vnderſtood that this Emperour *Anaſtaſius* of the Eaſt, to be infected with the Hereſie of *Eutiches* the Magician, *Acephales* the Manichean, and rooted in all impiety (for he was ſlaine with a clap of thunder, and his body beaten into powder) ſent the Crowne of Gold (whereof *Anaſtaſius* had made him a preſent) to Rome, and made an Offering of it on the Altar of Saint *Peter* the Apoſtle.

The ſtrange death of *Anaſtaſius*, the Emperor of the Eaſt.

Sigibert auoucheth this to be in the yeere of Grace, fiue hundred and ten. *Clodoueus Rex ab Anaſtaſio Imperatore codicillos de Conſulatu, & Coronam Aueam cum gemmis, & Tunicam Blatteam* (*Blatta* ſignifieth a Scarlet Robe, which the Romanes called *Tyrian* Purple, and *Sidonius Apollonaris*, in the Panegyricke ſpoken vnto *Maurian*, ſaith:

——— Pecuaria Gallus,
Pontus Caſtorea, Blattam Tyrus, *æra Corinthus,*
Sardinia argentum.)

accepit. Ipſe vero Rex miſit Romæ S. Petro Coronam Aureum cum gemmis, quæ Regnum appellari ſolet. As much ſaith the Monke *Aimonius*, in his firſt booke and 24. chapter of his hiſtory of France.

These words vſed by *Sigibert*, *Regnum appellari ſolet*, doe inſtruct vs, that in perpetuall memory of the piety and deuotion of *Clouis*, (on behalfe of the Church) the Crowne was religiouſly kept in the Treaſury of S. *Peter*. And that, *For Excellency, the Realme of France was called Regnum, and her Monarch Rex, without any other addition*, as we ſhall heereafter ſhew more at large in another Chapter.

A Kingdome and King.

The greatneſſe and riches of S. *Peters* Patrimony, came not by the imaginarie donation of *Conſtantine* the Great, as the Greekes, to get ſome precedencie in honor ouer the Latine Church, haue falſly ſuppoſed: and, among other Authors, *Photius*, Patriarch of Conſtantinople in his *Nomocanon*, *Theodorus Balſamo*, and ſome other Italians, as *Auguſtinus Eugubinus*, in hatred and enuy, which he bare (without reaſon) to the French, would make men beleeue.

Hunc fabulam longi temporis mendacia finxit.

And that Honor is due onely to the moſt Chriſtian Monarchs of the *Floure de Luce*, the moſt iudicious are forced to confeſſe. *Anaſtaſius*, Maiſter of the Romane Librarie, in the life of Pope *Hormiſda*, ſaith: *That Clouis gaue great Gifts and Preſents to the Confeſſion of S. Peter: And among the reſt, the Imperiall Crowne which Anaſtaſius, Emperor of the Eaſt, had ſent vnto him.* This is alſo the opinion of *Joſephus Stephanus, Epiſcopus Oriolanus*, in the Treatiſe which he wrote *De Coronatione Summi Pontifici*.

It was the ſame *Clouis*, who at the motion of the Romane Emperors, with-held the Royall Prerogatiues concerning the Inueſtitures of Biſhops, and Soueraigne Patronages of Archbiſhoprickes, in his owne Kingdome.

As concerning Inueſtitures or Enſtallments, *Sigibert* writeth in the yeere fiue hundred, that *Clouis* gaue great heritages and goods to the Church of Rheimes. *Floardus*, in his Hiſtorie of the ſaid Church, ſetteth downe the number of them; of all which goods, *Clouis* retained the homage to himſelfe, and to the Kings his Succeſſors. Saint *Rhemigius* ſeeing himſelfe ſtored with more riches then was needfull for his Church, gaue part of them vnto the Church of *Laon*, which

which he erected for a Cathedrall Church. And the firſt Biſhop was named *Genebaudus*, inueſted into the ſaid Biſhopricke by *Clouis*, *Per Annulum & Virgam*, with a Croſier and a Ring, as the Romane Emperors did.

The maner of inueſting Biſhops.

Of Elections to Biſhopricks and Abbeyes.

It is generally knowne, that the Elections to Biſhopricks and Abbies, were anciently made in France, by voyce and ſuffrages of the people and Cleargy, and were afterward agreed vnto by the Kings, who very often (without any regard of thoſe Elections) placed others at their owne will, taking, (ordenarily) Prieſts and Chaplaines out of their Oratory and Chappell; of whom, after their Inueſtiture, they receiued the Oath of Allegiance, which continueth yet to this day, the Kings Regall right being open for the King to this day, and the ſaid Oath taken.

In the fift Councell of Orleans, it was namely decreed, that Eccleſiaſticall perſons ſhould not make any vnder-hand ſute, for election to the ſaid Biſhoprickes and Abbeyes of France, without the will and conſent of the King. *Vt nullus Epiſcopatum donis, aut comparatione liceat adire, ſed cum voluntate Regis iuxta electionem Cleri, Plebis, &c.* with prohibition giuen to the Comprouinciall Biſhops, not to conſecrate them vpon the paine of excommunication; as appeareth in the eight Article of the firſt Councell of Paris.

And according to theſe Decrees of the *Gallicane* Church, we ſee in S. *Gregorie* of Tours his third book, and ſeuenteenth Chapter, that *Omnatius, Dionyſio Epiſcopo apud Turonos decedente, tribus annis præfuit. Hoc iuſſu Chlodomiris Regis ordinatus eſt:* And in the following bookes we reade, that *Theodorus Proculus*, and *Diniſius* were promoted to the ſaid Biſhopricke of Tours, by the command and nomination of the King.

In the ſixt booke and ninth chapter, *Dumnolus*, Prior of the Monaſtery of Saint *Laurence* at Paris, which at this preſent is a Pariſh, was made Biſhop of *Mans*, by command of King *Clotharius*. And after this *Dumnolus* (by his fauour and recommendation) the Abbot *Theodulphus* (the Abbots in Cathedrall Churches being in thoſe times ſuch as now adaies wee call *Decanos*, Deanes, as Archdeacons or Country Deanes at this preſent, were tearmed anciently *Chorepiſcopi*) was admitted Biſhop of Mans by the ſaid King *Clotharius*.

In the ſame booke and ſeuenth chapter wee vnderſtand, that Biſhops choſen and conſecrated without the conſent and will of the King, were depoſed, and others enſtalled in their places. *Dynamius*, Gouernour of Prouence and Languedocke, for the King of Bourgongne-France *Gonthran*, eſtabliſhed in the Biſhopricke of *Vſez* (after the death of *Ferreolus*) one named *Albinus*. *Gonthran* offended at the boldneſſe of his Lieutenant, who had arrogated to himſelfe the Right truely Royall: deprined and diſmiſſed *Albinus* from the ſaid Biſhoprick, which he gaue to *Iounus*, formerly Gouernour of Prouence. *Albinus ex præfecto per Dynamium Rectorem Prouinciæ, Extra Regis Conſilium, ſuſcepit Vticenſem Epiſcopum, quo non amplius quam tribus fruitur menſibus, & Iouinum qui quondam Rector Prouinciæ fuerat, Regium de Epiſcopatu præceptum accepit.*

Biſhops choſen and conſecrated without the Kings conſent, depoſed, and other inſtalled.

These examples, taken from an hundred more, may ſuffice (in mine opinion) to ſhew, that from all Antiquitie, and from the time of the firſt Chriſtian French Kings, the Inueſtiture in the Biſhoprickes of France, was reſerued by the Kings in due right of Soueraignty, and not by grant or conceſſion of Pope *Adrian*, made to King *Charlemaigne*, as *Gratian* the Monke, and ſome other Italians after him haue imagined. For it is a caſe euident & notorious, that *Clouis* hauing embraced Chriſtianity, made reſeruation of all ſuch markes & rights of Soueraignty, as the Chriſtian Emperors vſed to haue; namely, that of Inueſtitures, and Rights Royall: vpon which ſubiect, we ſay, that Pope *Boniface*, eight of that name, howſoeuer otherwiſe, one of the learneſt and worthieſt men that held the City of Rome, next to Pope Innocent the third; was ill informed in the particularities of the French Hiſtory, and Soueraigne Prerogatiues of the holy and ſacred Luces Monarchs; when he ſought to draw into arbitrement and compromiſe, the Regall Right of *Philip le Bel*, King of France and Nauarre, in the yeere of Grace 1301. And the ſaid *Philip le Bel* had good reaſon to anſwere him, that *In Temporalibus*, hee knew not any Prince in the world, who could any way command him. And that hee held his

The Kings Royall prerogatiue from all times of Antiquity.

The Pope deceiued in queſtioning the Rights of Kings.

his Kingdome of none *but God*, and *by his Sword*, and *that the Regalities*, that is to say, vacant Prebendaries, and fruits of vacant Bishoprickes in his Kingdome, appertained to him *Iure Regio*, *As due Rights to his Crowne*. *Ecclesiarum & Prebendarum vacantium collationem ad Francorum Reges, Iure Regio, pertinere, & fructus earum posse percipere.*

What the Right *Regale* is Psalm. 24. 1.

Regale is a Right, which the most Christian Kings haue by reason of their sacred Crowne, aboue all the Bishops of, or in, the Kingdome of France: *Domini est terra, & plenitudo eius*, to enioy the Reuenues of the said Bishoprickes, and dispose of the vacant Prebendaries, in what part soeuer of the Kingdome they are, by death of the Bishop, all the while, and so long as the See shall be vacant, and vntill such time as a new Bishop (prouided in the place of the deceased) hath sworne to the King the Oath of Allegiance. In like manner is it of the Bishops, honoured by the Pope with the Cardinalls Hat, whether they haue any title or no; because by this dignity, *Fiunt noui Homines Papæ, The Pope hath made them new men.*

The Honor of the Cardinalls Hatte.

How the Right *Regale* extended it selfe in elder times.

Anciently, the Right *Regale* extended it selfe, not only on the Benefices, whereof the Bishops disposed, but also on all the moueables, cheuisance and riches of the said Bishops, either deceasing or changing the See, if they made not an authentical Testament, wherein they ought (first of all) to demand the Kings power; for otherwise they could make no Will, and all their moueables appertained to the King, who to receiue them, deputed ordinarily men of his Court and House. I will alleadge some few examples, deriued from a million of other.

The Borough of the Abbey *S. Remy* at *Rheims*.

King *Clouis* (as wee haue already said) gaue store of inheritances to the Church of Rheims, and to the Archbishop S. *Rhemigius*: among other, hee gaue the Borough of the Abbey, called S. *Remy* at Rheimes, with charge of taking the Oathe of fidelitie to him, and to the Kings his successors, all the Inhabitants and abiders in the said Borough.

In the Registers of the Court of Parliament at Paris, is that which was giuen to King *Philip Augustus*, by the hands of his deputies, at receiuing the *Regales* of the Archbishop of Rheims, whereof heere followeth the true tenure.

The tenure of the *Regale*.

HOmines de Burgo Sancti Rhemigij Rhemensis fecerunt Domino Regi fidelitatem sub hac forma. Ipsi conseruabunt pro posse suo, bona fide, vitam, Corpus, & membra Regis, honorem Regni, & omnia iura Regis. Præsente Petro de Nongento, tunc Abbate, Raulfo Priore consanguineo suo, Monachi præsentes Garnerius Orillardus Camerarius domus, Nicolaus Anis, Garnerus Suessionensis, Petrus Capellanus Abbatis, & plures alij. Hanc fidelitatem pro Domino Rege receperunt Magister Boso Clericus eius, & Robertus de Lesga. Actum Rhemis dum ipsi custodirent Regalia post decessum Alberici Archiepiscopi Rhemensis Anno Domini Millesimo, Ducentesimo, Decimo Octauo, Mense Martio, aut Capellam Abbatis.

In the same Registers is the donation made by the said King *Philip Augustus*, of certaine Acres of Vines, being in the Vineyard of *Argentoeil*, neere Paris, to the Bishop of *Senlis*, for augmentation of the *Regales* of the said Bishopricke.

A Donation granted by *Philip Augustus*.

PHilippus Dei gratia Francorum Rex; Notum sit omnibus quod nos Charissimo, & fideli nostro E. Siluanectensi Episcopo, propter eius fidele seruitium, & successoribus ipsius Siluanectensis Episcopis dedimus in perpetuum omnes vineas quas R. Comes Bolonia habebat apud Argentocium. Et hoc ferimus in augmentum Regalium Nostrorum de Siluanectis. Actum Parisius Anno Domini Millesimo Ducentesimo Decimo quinto, Mense Augusto.

Other Decrees of the Kings *Regale*.

In the same Registers are the Arrests and Decrees of the *Regales* of Rouen, and Suffragan Bishops of Normandie, and the Bishopricke of Arras, the Capitall City of Artois, adiudged vnto the said King *Philip Augustus*. There are likewise those of Guyenne, that is to say, of intire Aquitaine, and of Bourgongne, although these Prouinces were held by Princes of the Blood, and great Lords that had them in subalterne Soueraignety. And none of the Bishops of them were exempted, but by especiall grace and priuiledge, which the Kings gaue them.

Subalterne Soueraignety.

In some certaine Dioceses, the Kings taxed the Bishops subiects, during the *Regale*,

Regale, and at their will: except other speciall grace and fauour had bin granted. The Church of *Paris* was one of this number, as we vnderstand by a Decree of the Parlement Court, in the time of King *Phillip Augustus*; which, during the Regale, after the decease of the good Bishop *Maurice* (vnder whom the Church of Paris was finished) taxed the Customes at two hundred fortie and so many pounds. But in fauour of *Eudes de Sully*, Cousine Germaine to the King (whose Picture and Tombe is to be seene in *Potin*, placed betweene the doore of the Quire, and the Pulpet in the Church of *Paris*) the Bishoppe, successour of *Maurice*, and the Pulpet in the Church of *Paris*) the Bishoppe, succeessour of *Maurice*, the custome was reduced to the summe of threescore Parisian pounds: A very remarkeable Decree, the tenure whereof here followeth, to serue as a light to Posteritie.

People vnder Bishops in their Dioceses.

The Parisian pound is 20.s. 6. d. starling.

The Tenure of the Decree made in the Court of Parliament.

PHilippus Dei gratia Francorum Rex; Omnibus præsentibus pariter, atque futuris, Notum sit quod nos inspeximus chartas patris nostri, & nostram, in quibus continebatur, quod nos in hominibus Episcopi Parisiensis extra Parisius *non poteramus Talliam accipere, vel exactionem facere quæ excederet numerum sexaginta librarum Parisiensium, nec illam accipere poteramus nisi statuto tempore, & Episcopo debitam. Quia verò vacante sede Parisiensi, defuncto bonæ memoriæ* Mauritio *quondam Episcopo Parisiensi, in hominibus Episcopi accipimus summam Ducentarum & Quadraginta librarum, aut amplius, vltra prædictas Sexaginta libras, ad petitionem dilecti Consanguinei, & fidelis nostri* Odonis *Parisiensis Episcopi concessimus, quod quando* Regalia *in manum nostram, vel successorum nostrorum deuenient, ea quæ nos, aut Ministeriales nostri, accipiendo vltra prædictam summam sexaginta librarum, exigere fecimus, nullum Episcopo Parisiensi, vel Ecclesiæ Parisiensi in posterum inferre præiudicium, aut grauamen, nec in hominibus Episcopi, extra Parisius, sicut supradictum est, nos, vel successores nostri aliquid de cetero poterimus accipere, vel requirere vltra prædictam summam sexaginta librarum pro Tallia, vel exactione. Quod vt in perpetuum, &c.* Datum *apud sanctum Germanum in Laia, Anno Domini Millesimo Ducentesimo Septimo, Regni nostri anno Vigesimo Septimo, Dapifero nullo. Signum Guidonis Buticularij. S. Mathei Camerary, S. Drogonis Constabulary. Data vacante Cancellaria, per manum fratris Garini.*

The Church of *Chartres*, one of the most famous in Christendome, was subiect to these *Regales* from all antiquity. So that the death of the Bishop thereof happening, the Countes and the people diuided and made pillage of the Bishops Pallace, vntill such time as Count *Henry*, otherwise called *Stephen*, who by Letters vnder his priuie Seale, wherein *Adela* (that is *Alix*) his wife, and his children were vnder-written; acquitted this bad custome to the Bishops of Chartres, in fauour and contemplation of the learned Bishop *Yuon*, famous for his writings, which wee haue vnder his owne hand. And vpon it the King his Soueraigne interposed his authoritie, Leures the *Deuout*, seuenth of the name, whose Letters Patents you may heere reade, as they are registred in the said Court.

The Church of Chartres admirably famous.

A true Coppy of the Kings Letters Patents.

IN nomine Sanctæ & indiuiduæ Trinitatis, Amen. Ego Ludouicus Dei gratia Francorum Rex, notum facimus vniuersis, Clericos nostros Carnotenæ Ciuitatis existentes adhuc in desolatione quam acciperant ex morte bonæ memoriæ Episcopi Gosleni nostram adiisse Regiam serenitatem, & humiliter expostulasse, quantinus præceptum Aui nostri Regis Philippi (that was *Philip* first of the name) *& nos iam-dictæ Ecclesiæ confirmaremus. Tenor igitur priuilegij talis esse dignoscitur. Regem Philippum notum facere vniuersis in regno Franciæ, per futura tempora successuris, quod Dominus Tuo sanctæ Carnotensis Ecclesiæ venerabilis Episcopus humili deuotione celsitudinem suæ serenitatis adierit; obnixe deprecans, vt prauam consuetudinem in domibus Episcopalibus eiusdem Ecclesiæ a Comite Henrico cognomento Stephano, & Adela vxore eius concessione filiorum suorum*

suorum Guillelmi, Theobaldi, Odonis & Stephani remissam, & libertatem prædictis hominibus, & rebus in eisdem collectis à prædictis Comitibus collatam, concederet, Et sua Pragmatica Sanctione firmaret. *Cuius pio desiderio assentiens, & aquissima postulatione aurem inclinans secundum tenorem scripti quod de prædictis rebus prætaxati Comites fieri decreuerunt sua Sacra Maiestatis auctoritate Rex prætaxatas à prauis consuetudinibus liberauit, domum scilicet, & domus eiusdem, ferrum, plumbum, vitrum, lignum, lapides, cæteramque supellectilem, scilicet stabulas, scamna, scabella, vasa vinaria, lectos nec non equinas, & horrea granaria, cellaria, torcularia, furnos, furnorumque domos, siue in vrbe, siue extra vrbem syluas vt non vendantur, nec succidantur, nec dentur; Annonam quoque vinum, fœnum, oues, & boues, & cætera animalia, omniaque, reliqua mobilia quæ congregata sunt, vel collecta fuerunt, siue in vrbe, siue extra vrbem, ante obitum & discessum Episcopi cuius-libet, intacta manere firmauit, illis profuturæ quibus Episcopium reliquerit seruare, vel donare, seu per se, seu per Oechonomum suum eadem Sacra Maiestis dum decreuerit, vel Maiores personæ Ecclesiæ, si id Episcopo aliqua occasione præuento, facere non licuerit. Concedimus etiam vt exactio quæ defunctis Episcopis, vel discendentibus fieri solet, in Seruientes Episcopi, vel Rusticos de cætero nunquam fiat. Hæc omnia sicut à prædictis Comitibus concessum est, & firmatum, & ipse prædictus Rex, vt prædictum est, concessit, & per Pragmaticam Sanctionem suam firmauit. Nos autem Clericorum eiusdem Ecclesiæ audita, & suscepta postulatione hæc omnia eis in eundem modum, & immobilitate atque in perpetuum, sicut prædictus Auus noster Philippus Rex Francorum, concessimus, & nostri signilli auctoritate firmauimus, & nominis caractere testificati sumus.* Datum *publicè Parisius, Anno Domini* 1155. *adstantibus quorum nomina subscripta sunt & signa. Signum Comitis Blesensis, Theobaldi Dapiferi nostri. S. Guidonis Buticulary. S. Mathei Camerary. S. Mathæi Constabulary. Data per manum Hugonis Cancellarij.*

Another Charter granted to the said Count

The Charter of the said Count *Henry Stephen* of *Chartres*, registred after this, is very remarkeable, which neuerlesse we will passe ouer, becausse it would seeme too long and tedious.

The same King *Loüis* the yonger, called the Deuout, and vulgarly the Piitifull, exempted or gratified (for the same subiect) the Church of *Laon* by his Letters Patents registred at the Parliament, as heere you may reade.

EGo Ludouicus Dei Gratia Francorum Rex. Notum facimus vniuersis præsentibus & futuris. Quod per consilium fideliũm nostrorum nobis assidentium pro humili & reuerenda prece Episcopi Laudunensis Magistri Galteri de Mauritannia (de Mortaign, or Mortaigne) *grangias, & curtes, carrucas, greges, & armenta, de quibuscunque animalibus, vineis de campo Britonis, de clauso iuxta Brolium, & ipsum Brolium, vineas de Pulciaco, alias etiam vineas quascunque plantauerit siue acquisierit, & omnino omne instrumentum suum libertate donauimus in perpetuum. Ipsius etiam petitione omnes eius successores in ea auctoritate posuimus, vt tempore vindemiarum ad reficiendas vineas de fructu earum tantum residui conseruetur, & cultoribus reddatur, quod earum cultura sufficiat, libertate quorum donauimus domos Episcopi de Lauduno, & quascunque extra Lauduno, & quascunq. extra Laudunum habet, & quidquid in eisdem domibus consistit de ligno, & filo, de ferro, & vitro, & are, & de quacunque alia materia. In hoc autem Memoriale, Regio, & pro euidentia rerum in posterum, & pro conseruando eiusdem libertatis fructu inserere dignum duximus, quod decedens Episcopus, sicut testatus fuerit, ratum erit. Et si decesserit intestatus (quod absit) Regij iuris erit aurum eius, & argentum totum, Annona tota, excepta illa quam custodes granchiarum, & Magistri carrucarum retinebunt ad seminandos agros, & ad sufficienter sustentandum se, & seruientes necessarios sibi, & familia sua. Similiter vinum ab intestato Episcopo remanens totum Regij iuris erit, excepto vino illo quod de vineis acquisitis, vel plantatis à præfato Episcopo fuerit, quod sanè vinum nostrum non erit, sed inde prænuncupati Episcopi soluentur debita, & si nulla sunt, reseruabitur vinum successoribus. Porrò post decessum Episcopi, Episcopatu veniente in manum Regiam, Seruientes de parte Regis venientes non stabunt in domibus Lauduni, nec in aliis domibus vbi munitiones non erunt, sed alys in locis vbi munitiones sunt, ipsi Ministri Regij in munitionib. manebunt ad custodiam earum, & in distrahendis rebus Episcopi prædicti, quas libertate donauimus, vel ordinando, vel in vsus suos assumendis, potestatem*

carebunt, sed illi potius Seruientes, (Ministeriales, & Seruientes, are such as now a dayes are called Sergeants) *qui in vita Episcopi eam sortiti sunt administrationem, retinebunt eandem, & seorsum in domibus, & grangijs Episcopalibus manebunt. Dum in manu Regia Episcopatus fuerit, Brolium, nec vendere, nec donare, nec aliquo modo diminuere poterimus; & si vacauerit sedes messionum tempore, custodes grangiarum retinebunt quod sufficiat seminandis agris, pascendis, & conducendis bubulcis, pastoribus, minibus, & animalibus, cæterum Regij iuris est. Et si vacauerit Sedes in vindemijs, vinum strij, & animalibus, cæterum Regij iuris est, cæterique omnis redditus, præde Taxone, de Tallijs, & vinagium quod per pagum colligitur, cæterique omnis redditus, præter ea quæ libertate donauimus; similiter Regij iuris erit. Vt autem hoc donum nostrum in posterum ratum sit, & fixum permaneat, &c. Actum Parisius Anno Incarnationis Dominj Millesimo Centesimo Quinquagesimo Octauo, Regni verò nostri Vicesimo secundo.*

When the Christian forces went in the expedition.

The same King, beginning his voyage to the Holy Land, among the Infidels and Miscreants; remitted to the Bishop of *Chaalons* in *Champaigne* his right Regale, in regard of the victuals by his kinred sent into his Campe neere *Verdune*, and here followeth a Copie of the same.

The Kings free remission of his Regal right

LVdouicus Dei Gratia Francorum Rex, & Dux Aquitaniæ. Notum facimus Vniuersis, &c. Inter vniuersa quæ Magnitudo Regalis agere debet, nihil gloriosius esse dignoscitur, quam quod Ecclesiarum tranquilitati studet in posterum prouidere, & libertatem earum ad honorem nominis Domini nostri Iesu-Christi incessanter angere. Huius rei gratia, dilectissimi nostri Bartholomei Catalaunensis Episcopi precibus annuentes, ei, & successoribus suis Episcopis in perpetuum condonamus, ne post decessum Catalaunensis Episcopi, sicut antiquæ consuetudinis huc vsque tenor habuerat in domibus Episcopalibus, quidquid ligneum, aut ferreum, siue per nos, siue per Ministeria les nostros, de cætero capiamus. Animalia quoque Episcopi, & cætera omnia quæcunque ad supellectilem domorum Episcopalium pertinere dignoscuntur, sub eadem immunitate concludimus, præter annonam, vinum, aurum, & argentum, quæ omnia iuxta vetustam consuetudinem in manu, & potestate Regia retinemus. Quod si de his præfatæ Sedis Episcopus ante obitum suum sub legitimo testamento disposuerit, illius ordinationi contradicere nolumus. Vt hoc igitur in perpetuum, &c. Actum in Castro apud Verdunum Anno ab Incarnatione Domini Millesimo Centesimo Quadragesimo Septimo, Regni nostri Vndecimo, quando viam Sanctæ Hierosolymitanæ Expeditionis inuimus. Bartholomeus Cancellarius, Sacri Nostri Palatij Subscripsit.

Of the same Kings Letters Patents, is to be seene in the said Court Registers, concerning his Regall Right in the Bishopricke of *Menda* in *Geuaudan*, a Suffragan Bishopricke belonging to the Archbishopricke of *Bourges*, the Primacie of *Aquitaine*. The Bishops of the said place (it is a small Towne, seated neere the Riuer of *Oi*, on all sides engirt with Mountaines of the *Seuenes* in *Languedocke*, betweene the Bishops of *Montpellier*, *Nismes*, *Puy* in *Velay*, and *S. Flour*) haue heretofore tearmed themselues Lords Soueraignes, of the Lands belonging to their Dioceſſe. And therefore they made solemne Festiuals, with a Scepter of Gold carried before them, which likewise they would lay vpon the Altar, when they celebrated in Pontificalibus. Vnto this day, they beare the title of Counts of *Geuaudan*, and in their Episcopall house (beside other places in the Citie of *Menda*) are to be seene many Armes of the Bishops thereof, couered with a Counts Circle or Crowne. Others haue aloft a Miter, on the one side, an Helmet on the other, and a Crosier in the midst, to shew, that they were Lords Spirituall and Temporall of the Countrey. But afterward, the King became Maister thereof; were it by consent of the Bishops of the place, or by some other manner. This small Citie of *Menda* hath for Armes *L'Escu d'Azur à vne M. à l'Antique* (as one would say *Mimatus*) *& vn Soleil d'Or en Chef, & pour Deuise a l'entour: Tenebræ eam non comprehenderunt.* But now the case is altered, becausse it being ouercome with Heresie, it hath proued to be the ruine of the Citie, and the Bishoppes Church, one of the richest in France. Here are the Letters Patents of King *Lewes* the seauenth, sent to the Bishop *Aubert*, who did him homage for the said Countie of *Geuaudan*.

Bishops that called themselues Lords Soueraignes and Countes

The Armes of the small Citie of Menda.

The

The Kings Letters Patents, directed to Aubert, Bishop of Menda.

Ludouicus Dei Gratia Francorum Rex: Adelberto Venerabili Gabalorum Episcopo, & omnibus Successoribus suis in perpetuum. Longe est à memoria omnium mortalium nostri temporis, quod aliquis Episcopus Gabalorum ad curiam Antecessorum nostrorum Regum Francorum venerit, & eorum subditionem agnouerit, & fidelitatem eis fecerit, quamuis tota terra, illa aditu difficilima, & montuosa, in Episcoporum potestate semper extiterit, non tantum ad faciendum Ecclesiasticam Censuram, sed ad iudicandum ingladio, super illos quos culpa sua monstrabat sic redarguendos. Vir autem illustris iam dictus Adelbertus Episcopus, religiose cogitans materiales gladij iustitias ad virgam Regni pertinere, nostram serenitatem adijt Parisius, & ibidem in præsentia totius Baroniæ nostræ cognouit Episcopatum suum de Corona Regni nostri esse, & se nobis subdens, nobis & Regno, celebriter tacto Euangelio sacro, fidelitatem fecit; quod sane factum ad nullum detrimentum, ad nullum prorsus priuationem hactenus habitæ potestatis in posterum conuerti volentes, Notum facimus vniuersis præsentibus, & futuris, quod Ecclesiæ Gloriosi Martyris Priuati (Saint *Priuat* was Patron of the Citie of Menda, and yet neuertheleſſe, the Cathedrall is dedicated to the Virgin *Marie*) *& Episcopis omnibus venerabili amico nostro Aldeberto canonice succedentibus, totum Gabalorum Episcopatum, cum regalibus ad nostram coronam pertinentibus, ex integro concedimus, & vt libere & quiete in perpetuum possideant, auctoritate Regia confirmamus. Ne autem de cetero aliquis successorum nostrorum molestiam, & violentiam aliquo modo inferre conetur; Pacis, & Quietis præcelsæ Ecclesiæ Regia benignitate prouidentes, ipsam liberam, & ob omni exactione immunem esse concedimus, & vt sic temporibus cunctis permaneat decernimus, subtus inscripto nominis nostris characterè confirmantes. Actum publicè Parisius Anno ab Incarnatione Domini Millesimo Centesimo Sexagesimo Primo. Astantibus in Sacro Palatio nostro quorum nomina apposita sunt, & signa. Signum Comitis Blesensis, & Theobaldi Dapiferi nostri. S. Guidonis Buticularij. S. Mathei Camerarij. Data per manum Hugonis Cancellarij.*

These were no common fauours of the Kings, but to perticuler persons

This was a great Priuiledge, and could not be common to all the Bishopricks in France, and these relinquishings of the Regale, were but to perticulers, and, as personall. For we finde that King *Phillip Augustus* his Sonne, who wonderfully augmented his Kingdome, by an infinitie of requisitions: tooke these Regall Rights from the Lords that had vsurped them, as in possession and absolute enioying.

An Inquisition made concerning the Right Regale.

In the Registers of the Court, there is found an Inquisition made by the Kings Attourney Generall, and the *Vidame de Chaalons* in Champaigne, who pretended to be in possession thereof, by the Bishops death. Enquirie being made on either side, by the Iudge of the Inquisitions, giuen by the Bishops of *Paris*, and *Meaux*, *Lotharre de Cremont*, *Rodolphe*, Arch-Deacon of *Bourges*. Master *Godfrey de Poissy*, and *Nicolas de Chartres*, Councellers, and Knights by Learning, the Count *de Beaumont*, the Count *de Ponthieu*, *Simon de Montfort*, *Guillaume de Barres*, *Guillaume de Garland*, *Gautier* Chamberlaine of France, *B. de Roye*, *Phillip de Lens*, and *Nicolas le Chat*, Councellers and Knights at Armes; it was said. *That the Regales ouer the Cathedrall Churches in the Kingdome of France, appertained to the King onely in common right; that they were without compasse of perscription. and no way communicable, to any other then the Royall person.* The *Vidame de Chaalons* was frustrated in his cause, and he condemned in a merciament to the King (*Phillip Augustus*) vpon a day named, as hee was, and you may behold the Act. *Notum &c. quod Vicedominus Catalaunensis fecit emendam Domino Regi apud Castrum nouum super Ligerim, de illis mobilibus quæ caperat apud hæredes Domini Episcopi Catalaunensis; Testibus Decanis Aurelianensis Ciuitatis, & Magistro G. de sancto Lazaro, & G. Iuuene.*

The Verdict giuen by the Iurie.

So that the new Bishops were bound immediately after their election, to come and take the Oath of fidelity to the King, and to acknowledge, that that the Regale Prerogatiue appertained to him, in right of his Crowne, as here you behold an example, concerning the Bishopricke of *Mascon*.

Notum,

Notum &c. Quod ego Electus Matisconensis veniens ad Dominum nostrum Philippum illustrem Regem Francorum, potestatem habens à Decano, & Vniuerso Capitulo Matisconensi, per litteras eiusdem Decani & Capituli patentes, videlicet quod quidquid facerem in presentia Domini Regis ratum haberent, & in perpetuum obseruarent; Recognoui ius Domini Regis Francorum quod habet in Regalibus Matisconensis Ecclesiæ, scilicet quod mortuo Episcopo Matisconensi, vel quotiescunque sedes Matisconensis vacauerit, omnia Regalia, & omnes prouentus Regalium existentes in Regno Franciæ, libere sunt Domini Regis Francorum, sicut Episcopus libere possidebat. Et si quis Episcopus Matisconensis decesserit intestatus, quod omnia tam mobilia, quam prouentus omnes sunt domini Regis Francorum integre, & absolute. Quia vero Decanus, & Capitulum Matisconense contradixerunt Nuntio Domini Regis Francorum, Odoni scilicet Clementi Archidiacono Parisiensi Clerico suo Regalia, & mobilia in Morte E. Episcopi, ego emendaui pro Decano, & Capitulo, & Dominus Rex Francorum hanc emendam misit in summonitione sua. Quod vt ratum, firmumque permaneat hoc scriptum sigilli nostri munimine fecimus roborari. Actum Parisius Anno Domini Millesimo Ducentesimo Primo, Mense Martio.

The publique acknowledgement of the elect Bishop of Mascon.

So that vpon the refusall which was made by the Deane and Chapter of *Mascon*, to the Archdeacon of *Paris*, *Eudes*, Clearke of the Chappell to the said *Phillip Augustus*, of the Regales, as well in vacant Prebendaries, as the moueables of the last deceased Bishop: the said King reuoked the power of electing a new Bishop. And yet he restored to them (at their owne charge, to make amends to him, according to his owne liking; as is specified in the Letters Patents, sent to the said Deane and Chapter, in such manner as followeth.

The King reuoked the power of the electing a new Bishop.

Philippus Dei gratia Francorum Rex. Nouerint vniuersi præsentes pariter & futuri. Quod quotiescunque Episcopus Matisconensis moritur, vel quotiescunq; Sedes Matisconensis Ecclesiæ vacauerit, & Capitulum Matisconense a nobis licentiam de electione faciendæ requisierit, eidem sine contradictione eligendi licentiam concedemus. Si vero Episcopus eiusdem Ecclesiæ intestatus decesserit, omnia mobilia, quæ ipse, vel per se, vel per alium in Regno nostro possidebat, libere, & integre nostra erunt. Si vero idem Episcopus nostra licentia testamentum fecerit per testimonium bonorum virorum de mobilibus quæ ipse in vita sua possidebat, nos contra idem testamentum nequaquam veniemus. Præterea sciendum est quod omnia Regalia, & omnes Prouentus Regalium post mortem Episcopi Matisconensis, quandiu sedes dicta vacauerit, vbicunque sint in Regno nostro quiete, & pacifice possidebimus; & nos eadem Regalia in eo statu, & puncto post quam ad manum nostram deuenerint, sine violentia contrectabimus, quomodo prædecessor Episcopus Matisconensis ea contrectauerit. Quod vt firmum sit &c. Actum Parisius Anno Domini Millesimo Ducentesimo Primo, Mensis Aprilis, Regni nostri Vicesimo quarto.

The Regales of Langres Bishopricke giuen to the Deane and Chapter, and vpon what reason.

The same *Philip Augustus*, during the warre which he had against the elected Emperour *Otho*, *Ferrand* of Portugall, Count of Flanders, and *Iohn* & *Richard*, Kings of England, Vncles to the said *Otho*: gaue the Regales of the Bishopricke of *Langres*, to the Deane and Chapter of the said Bishopricke, & power to elect a new Bishop, without attending his permission: in contemplation or regard of this, that *Langres* was a Frontier Citie of the Kingdome of France, vpon the marches & limits of *Lorraine*, & because (of this neere neighbouring) it was exposed to the rauages, courses and robberies of enemies to the Crowne. With charge neuertheleſſe, to keepe the moueables of the deceased Bishop, for him that should succeede him. Who immediately after his election, came to the place where his Maiesty as then resided, to take the Oath of allegeance, & also to acknowledge, that he held the Regales of his Maiesty. This priuiledge was giuen to the said Church of *Langres*, in regard of the war, & not by being a Ducall Peerdome, as some haue written. For it was & should be common to fiue other Ecclesiasticall Peerdomes, *Rheims*, *Laon*, *Beauuais*, *Chaalons* and *Noyon*; and yet notwithstanding, we haue before reported the contrary. These are the Patents of the said King *Philip Augustus*.

The Kings Letters Patents.

Philippus Dei Gratia Francorum Rex, Vniuersis præsentibus pariter & futuris. Notũ fieri volumus, Quod nos concedimus vt Decanus, & Capitulũ Lingonensis Ecclesiæ Regalia Episcopatus Lingonensis cadẽ sede vacante, quotiens, & quandiu vacauerit, libere teneant, & conser-

conſeruent ad opus Epiſcopi ſucceſſoris. Et quod Eccleſia prædicta à nobis remota, & in confinio Regni, & Impery ſita eſt, ad periculum vitandum, & pro vtilitate Eccleſiæ, & noſtra concedimus, vt quotienſcumque ſedes prædicta vacauerit, Decanus & Capitulum, non petita à nobis, aut ſucceſſoribus noſtris licentia eligendi Epiſcopum, ſed eligant, & incontinenti quàm citius poterunt ipſum electum ad faciendam nobis fidelitatem, & ſuſcipienda à nobis Regalia nobis repræſentem. Actum Pariſius Anno Domini Milleſimo Ducenteſimo tertio, Regni noſtri Viceſimo ſexto. Data per manum Goufredi Cancellarij Sacri Palatij.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Rod, called the Hand of Iuſtice, borne by the Kings of France onely: Of their Throane, and Great Seale: Of the greatneſſe of their Court of Parlement: Of the Peeres and Chancellers of France: And of forraigne Princes who haue voluntarily ſubmitted to the Iudgement of the Parlement of Paris.

Iuſtice the Queene of all vertues whatſoeuer, in what manner figured by the Druides.

IVSTITIA *ante eum ambulabit, & ponet in via greſſus ſuos.* The Queene of Vertues, that cleare and bright-shining *Aſtrea*, *Iuſtice*, whom the wiſe *Druides* repreſented by a Rod of excellent beauty, her garments long, and of Azure blew, celeſtiall colour, thickely powdered with ſtarres, with the Creſcent of a Moone at her feete, the Symbole of Nobility, holding in her right hand a Ballance, and the other full of eares of Corne, the noate of Abound lance. This Diuine and heauenly Virgin, the ſigne whereof is the aſſured Horeſcope of France, & hath euermore ſerued as a Lanterne and guide to the Monarches of the Lillie, whoſe ſteps haue, at all time, bin ruled and diſpoſed in the wayes of Iuſtice.

Of whom the Romans borrowed Royalty.

The Romaine Emperours borrowed of the Perſians, the noates of Royaltie, and the Perſians learned them of the Iewes, being kept and reſtrained in ſlauery among them.

In *Media* flowing into *Tigris* by the borders of Perſia.

The capitall Citie in the Kingdome of Perſia, was named *Suſa*, which in the *Syriake* tongue and Eaſterne, ſignifieth *Floure de Luce*. It was thwarted with the great Riuer *Choaſpis*, of which water (and none other) the Kings of Perſia vſed to drinke, in whatſoeuer place they were. At one *Paraſangue* of *Suſa* (a Paraſange containeth threeſcore Stades, which make ſeauen thouſand fiue hundred Paces, amounting to two miles, or thereabout, at foure thouſand paces for a Mile) was a Village called *Perſepolis*, for excellency, and therein was a Temple dedicated to *Pallas*, the goddeſſe of Armes, and named *Paſargadis*: in which Temple the Monarches of the Perſians were crowned.

The Coronation of the Perſian Monarches, and in what manner performed.

At which Coronation were aſſembled the Princes and Lords of the Kingdome, the Prieſts and the People. The high Prieſt (in the language of the Countrey, called *Surena*) receiued the Prince whom he was to Crowne, at the entrance of the Gate: and put on him the Caſſocke and long Cloake or Mantle, which was worne by their auncient *Cyrus*. Then he preſented him (to feede on) a Turtle-Doue and a Cake, compoſed of Figges and Turpentine, and gaue him to drinke a Cup of Wine or Breuage, mixed with Milke and Vinegar. Afterward, he laid both his hands on the Princes head, inuoking their great god *Mitra* (for ſo the Perſians called the Sunne) whom hee ſupplicated, to make happie and proſperous the reigne of this Prince, to dilate and extend the bounds and limits of the Perſian Empire, and to make him agreeable, beneficiall and beloued of his people.

The morall meaning vnderſtood by the Cake and Wine.

He gaue him then to vnderſtand, that the Cake thus brought him to eate, and the Breuage or drinke prepared for him, compounded of things very contrary, ſome ſweete and other bitter, ſignified; that Royaltie, which gaue men Soueraigne power to command ouer other, was a thing very ſweete and acceptable: neuertheleſs,

was confexioned with bitterneſſe and croſſes, that very ſeldome did the pleaſure exceede the paine and trauaile. And therefore he ought to be very carefull and reſtiue, not to ſuffer himſelfe be led and ouer-come with voluptuous pleaſures and delights, which doe too eaſily ouer-rule Princes, that haue no ſuperiours to reproue them, and reſtraine their deſires from exceeding reaſon. Becauſe the ſafetie of his kingdome, and repoſe of his Subiects, ſhould be the full ſcope and principall end, of all the actions of his life, onely to the end, of maintaining and conſeruing them in peace, entreating them with mildeneſſe, as a good Shepheard is carefull of his Flocke. Moreouer, hee ſhould haue engrauen liuely on his heart, theſe fiue words, *Salus Populi Suprema Lex Eſto*. A Sentence, which Princes (borne to rule other People) ought to vnderſtand from their tender youth: as well as that Lane one of King *Lewes* the eleauenth; *Qui neſcit diſſimulare, neſcit regnare.*

Fiue words fit to be vnderſtood of Princes.

These aduertiſements giuen, the *Surena* placed on the head of the new King, the Diademe, and the Perſian Tiara, called *Sidaris*, round, yet pointed aboue like a ſugar-loafe. And in this manner he leadeth him, to ſit downe in the Throane and Chaire of Gold, belonging anciently to *Cyrus*, where the chiefe *Surena*, the Princes and Lords adore him, couched and proſtrated on the ground: As we learne of *Xenophon*, *Arianus*, *Quintus Curtius* and *Plutarch*, in the liues of *Cyrus*, and of *Alexander* the Great. *Perſas quidem non pie ſolum, ſed etiam prudenter Reges ſuos inter deos colere Maieſtatem enim Imperij ſalutis eſſe tutelam.* For they knew not how to do honour enough to the Prince.

Now, like as God had commanded *Moyſes*, that fire ſhould night and day be conſerued in his Sacred Temple: euen ſo the Kings of Perſia neuer went abroade in publique, but they cauſed to be carried before them, Veſſels and Caſſolets of Gold and Siluer, full of fire, maintained with Incenſe and Perfumes, as alſo moſt aromaticall Odours. And *Xenophon* in the Inſtitution of *Cyrus*, the eight Booke, writeth; that in the Oratorie and Cabinet of the Kings of Perſia, was maintained vpon an Altar (deſtenied for the ſame ſubiect) a perpetuall fire: And the like in the Hales of Preſence, and Chambers of the ſaid Kings, where Suiters and Supplicants required grace and pardon; were diſperſed Aromaticall ſauours and perfumes. This Cuſtome was taken from the Iewes, who vpon their Feſtiuall dayes, and other beſide, when they made Expiations for the ſinnes of the People: by offering in the Golden Altar ſweete Sauours, prepared by King *Salomon* before the Propitatorie, and Arke of the Couenant. That Altar was called *Altare Thimiamatis.*

The Order obſerued among the Iewes on certaine daies.

Thimiama is a Greeke word, which ſignifieth Euaporation, Suffumigation, and perfuming with Incenſe. *Thima* was a Wood of admirable ſmell, whereof the Pagans made their pretended gods, and neuer would it be worme-eaten. And this Thimiama of the Hebrewes, was not onely compounded of the Incenſe named *Thus*, and otherwiſe *Lebona*, but alſo of ſweete ingredients of Perfumes, more exquiſite and precious, beaten and made in ſuch a manner and faſhion, as the fume aſcended wholly aloft and vpright, without any diſperſion here and there. This compoſition was called by the Rabbines *Retoreth*, interpreting the Verſe of the hundred and fortieth Pſalme. *Dirigatur oratio mea, ſicut incenſum in conſpectu tuo,* and hereupon they nominated theſe ſweete kindes of Sauours, Aromaticall ſpices.

The Wood whereof the Pagans made their gods.

Pſal. 104. 2.

God imployed to his owne ſeruice, the Element of Water, for drowning the old World. But his Iuſtice being ouer-paſt, he promiſed to the Patriarch *Noah*, neuer to make any more vſe thereof, but the Element of Fire. And he did the like of his Angels, conuerting them into fiery formes; as is deſcribed by the Pſalmiſt, and the Apoſtle. *Facit Angelos ſuos ſpiritus, & miniſtros ſuos flammam ignis.*

Gen. 7. 20.

Pſal. 50. 14. 1 Cor. 7. 12.

He communicated himſelfe with the auncient Patriarches, in the forme of fire, and contracting Alliance or a Couenant with *Abraham*, the Father of the faithfull; preſented himſelfe to him in the forme of a ſmoaking Furnace, and a burning lampe. *Ecce Clibanus fumans, & Lampas Ignis quæ tranſiebat per diuiſiones illas.*

Gen. 15. 17.

In

Exod. 3. 21.
Exod 19. 18.
Leuit. 9 23.
Zach. 2. 5.
Act 2. 3.

In *Exodus* we reade, how he conducted his People thorow the Deserts of Arabia, vnder the forme of an enflamed Pyramide. *Præcedebat eos per columnam ignis*. To the Law-giuer *Moyses*, hee spake in a flame of fire, issuing forth of the burning Mountaine. *Reuelat se in flamma ignis ex ipso Rubo.* At the first Sacrifice of the high Priest *Aaron*, he appeared in a flame of Fire. In a wall of Fire, as in Zacharie the second Chapter. And in fiery Tongues vpon the Apostles, and Disciples assembled together in *Ierusalem* on the day of Penticoast. And this was the reason why he did forbid, that any Sacrifice should be offred to him without Fire. And this was the perpetuall Fire maintained night and day without quenching (after it had bin Sacred and kept carefully; vntill the time of the King of Iuda *Manasses*, carried as a miserable captiue into the Kingdome of *Persia* in *Babylon*, the capitall Citie of *Assyria*, builded in former times by *Nabuchodonosor*: and not by *Semiramis*, as *Herodotus* hath written, and the Greeke lyers, who haue falsified the Sacred History.

King Manasses carried captiue into Babylon.

To the said *Assyrians* and *Persians*, came the Doctrine and knowledge of the perpetuall Fire: but veiled and not discouered by the Iewes their slaues. And these Nations of the East, iudging the Sunne to be the Author of that perpetuall Fire, tooke it for God himselfe, and for an assured Symbole of Diuinitie. The Throne whereof they beleeued to be seated, and planted iustly in the midst of the Sunne, enstructed by the Iewes to such beleeuing. and the saying of the Royall Psalmist *In Sole posuit Tabernaculum suum*. Whereunto the Apostle conformeth himselfe, saying, *In Sole Deus habitat, suum domicilium habet, vnde glorioſe illustris maiestatis suæ nitus apparet*. And the wise man to the same purpose teacheth vs, that the Sunne is *Vas admirabile Excelsi, & opus ipsius*. This is the reason, why the *Persians*, *Assyrians*, *Medes*, *Ægyptians*, and other people, as well in the East-Indies, as those of the West, vnto this day doe adore the Sunne, which the *Persians* vnderstand by the name of *Mithra*, and Sacrifice to him in the bottome of a Caue, as we learne of the great *Tertullian*, in the Treatise which he wrote, *De Corona Militis*, seeking thereby to hide the misteries, which the Iewes had taught them.

The East Nations haue euermore adored the Sunne.

Psal. 19. 5.
1 Cor 4. 9.
Sapient. 7 6.
Diuers Nations that adore the Sunne.

They represented this pretended god *Mithra*, round compassed with flames of Fire, and the beames of the Sunne, according as our Painters doe, and to him they sacrificed Horses wholly white, without spot of any other colour, and likewise Cockes altogether white: creatures which *Psellus* and the Naturalists affirme to be Sunnie, swift, and very prompt of flight and course, and so consequently, acceptable offerings to the Sunne, the fountaine of light; admirable for his three qualities, his luminous beautie; his force and efficacie of heate; and his promptitude and swiftnesse of course.

Sacrifices to the god Mithra.

Placat equo Persis radijs Hyperiona cinctum,
Ne detur Celeri victima tarda Deo.

The same *Persians* carry the figure of the Sunne in their Guidons, Standards, Flagges, and likewise on their Shields and Targets; as *Xenophon* writeth, and *Tertullian* in his Apologetickes. *Ad Persas si forte deputabimur, licet solem in linteo pictum non adoremus, habentes ipsum vtique in suo clypeo, quod innotuerit apud nos Orientis Regionem precari.* He answered the Pagans, who rumourd abroad, that the Christians worshipped the Sunne, after the manner of the *Persians*; because from the breake of day, they sent vp their prayers to God, as offering themselues to him in the beginning of the day (yea, and at midnight, *Media nocte surgebam ad confitendum tibi*, saith the Royall Prophet; which *Plinie* obserued of the Christians in the Primitiue Church, in one of his Epistles written to an Emperour of that time, that persecuted them, and martyred many) and that their Oratories were inclined towards the Sunne rising. *Tertulian* declareth to them, that the Christians had no correspondencie with them, setting downe good reasons, why our Churches are ordered toward the East. Because they worshipped but onely one God, and they themselues were Idolaters, in adoring the creature for the Creator by a diuellish instigation, punishable with fire, kissing their hands, and eleuating their

at the rising of the Sunne; *Ad Solis ortum vibrantes*. As the noble King of *Edom*, *Iob*, mirrour of patience, reprehended the Gentiles of his time. *Si vidi Solem cum fulgeret, & Lunam incedentem clare. Et latatum est in abscondito cor meum, & osculatus sum manum meam ore meo. Quæ est iniquitas maxima, & negatio contra Deum altissimum.* A custome practised by the inhabitants in the West Indies. For they of *Peru* and *Mexico*, in adoring the Sunne and the Moone, put their Gloues on their hands, and then lift them vp towards heauen: as is recorded by *Iosephus Acosta*, in his naturall Historie of the Indies, where also he obserueth the behauiour of the people to be such, in making their prayers to those false Deities: that they open their hands, and kisse them, making a certaine sound and muttering with their lips, which is answerable to the saying of the holy Patriarch *Iob*.

Iob 31. 26. 27 28.

Now, it was an ordenary matter among the people of the East, to adore the Sun, for the very greatest of their Deities. The *Rabbines* expounding the third Chapter of the Historie of *Hester*, write, that the Minion of *Ahasuerus*, *Haman*, to the end he might be honored, quite contrary to the Princes of that great Monarchs Court (euen in arrogancy and remarkeable vanitie, which euermore waites on such, as from base and low degree, are exalted to the chiefe fauours and dignities of a Kingdome) wore a Chaine of Gold about his necke, whereat hung the Idole of the Sunne, round engirt with beames of Gold. So that the people seeing this Shittle-cocke passe by them, as Fortunes Tennis-ball, and plaine mirrour of inconstancie and vobilitie, wearing vpon his brest, the Idole of their great god *Mithra*: they fell on their knees presently to the ground, kissing their hands, with all humiliation of their bodies. Thus was he honored in an extraordinary fashion, and farre from the common rule or practise.

The East Indies held the Sun to be their greatest Deitie.

A notable example of *Hamans* pride, in coueting a peculier honor to himselfe.

The Persians published abroad, that the Armie of *Cyrus* was preceded by a flame of Fire, to make him knowne as Monarch of the world, this was deriued from the Iewes, as already wee haue said. *Ammianus Marcellinus* testifieth in his Romaine Historie, speaking of the Persians, Medes and Parthians. *Feruntque etiam (si iustum est credi) ignem cœlitus lapsum apud se sempiternis foculis custodiri, cuius portionem exiguam vt faustu præisse quondam Asiaticis Regibus aiunt,*

When the deceasse of a King of Persia happened, all the lighted Fires (so carefully preserued night and day in the Pallace) were extinguished, and afterward none in euery chiefe Family, maintained on their perticular houshold Altars, as *Xenophon* informeth vs: to expresse their intire griefe and mourning, for the death of their Prince; according to the testimonie of *Diodorus Siculus*, in the seauenteenth Booke of his Antiquities. And those Fires were not kindled againe, till after the Coronation of a Successour in the Empire; when the *Surena* lighted a new Fire, obseruing such Ceremonies therein, as is described by *Plutarch* in the life of *Numa Pompilius*, the Author of this pretended Diuine Fire, which hee appointed to be kept by Vestall Virgins, without quenching, in imitation of the Iewes.

The Ceremonie of carrying Vessels full of Fire before the King of Asia, was common to the *Ynguas* of the West Indies, and to the *Samorins* of the East. *Iosephus Acosta*, in the fift Booke of his Indian Naturall Historie, the fourth Chapter, and other following, reporteth, that the dwellers in *Mexico* and *Peru* doe adore the Sunne, which in their Language they call *Pinchao*, kissing their hands, and babling with their lippes, as wee haue said. And that before the Idole thereof (which in *Peru* they name *Viracocha*, and at *Mexico*, *Vitzilipuztli*, that is to say, God supreme, most high and most great) was maintained night and day a perpetuall Fire.

How the people were admitted to salute their Kings.

Gonsalo Ferdinando d'Ouiedo, at the discouery of this new *Spaine*, obserued the same thing, and by way of addition, saith: That the people of the Indies in the West, were neuer admitted to salute their Kings, till first they had throwne strong gummes and Aromaticall Perfumes, into the Cassolet and Brazeraine burning continually, planted (for that purpose) on the right hand, in the Haule of Presence.

And our fore-named *Acosta*, discouering the presages, fore-runners of the losse and ruine of the King of *Mexico Motecumacin*, sheweth, that the Kings of that rich Prouince, caused ordenarily to be carried before them, lighted Torches, & flaming Lampes, compounded of incredible costly Odours and Perfumes.

In what manner the Fable is obserued among the Indians.

Moreouer, that in all those Countries, the people maintained a perpetuall Fire. And from one Iubilie to another, which they kept after the Iewish fashion, from fiftie to fiftie yeares, the last night whereof; they quenched all their Fires, brake and defaced all their Houshold-stuffe and Goods, being assuredly perswaded, that the World was come to his finall period. And so consequently, they had not any more needs of Fire nor light, neither of any Furniture for feeding: but they must all dye that very night; which they spent in horror, and certaine expectation of death. But when they beheld the breake of day to appeare; as ouercome with vnspeakeable ioy and gladnesse, they would all issue forth of their doores, beating Drums and Tabers euery where, and sounding their other Instruments for warre, Fifes and Trumpets, in signe of reioycing, because their great God *Vizil puztli* had prolonged their time, to behold yet another Age. And the first day, their *Papas*, or high Priest walked about their Townes and vtmost limits, with a generall Procession: wherein the people assisted, with giuing of thanks, that they were spared to see the beginning of another new world. The Procession being ended; with great and solemne Ceremonies the new Fire was kindled, to burne both day & night before the Idole of their great God: and thither the people went, to take some for kindling their owne Fires.

Procession vsed among the Indians.

Hieronimus Osorius, a *Portugaze*, Bishop of *Sylues* in the *Algarues*, in the fourth Booke of his Portugall Historie, writeth; that (in his time) the King of *Benomotapa* a Kingdome of very great extendure, and which maketh part of *Ethiopia* beyond the *Cape de bona Speranza*) caused vsually to be carried before him, the noates of his Royalty. The first whereof was a Mattocke, hauing the handle of Iuorie, and two small Iauelins, crossed into a Saltour. By the Mattocke hee gaue his Subiects to vnderstand, that they ought to addict themselues to labour & husbandrie, the most innocent and happy life that any man can wish to leade, and his iustest Reuenewes, all that the earth yeelded. One of the Iauelins serued him as a Scepter, and the other he vsed in stead of a Sword.

The King of *Benomotapa*, and his noates of Royalty.

This King had vnder his obeysance, many Princes and great Lords his Vassalls, whose Sonnes he educated in his Court; as well to accustome, fashion and ey them to his seruice, as to containe their Fathers, within the compasse and tearmes dutie and obedience, he hauing their Sonnes in hostage. Euery yeare, at a certaine day beginning their yeare, he sent his Couriers or Posts, to carrie them new Fire, whose houses when the Posts were arriued: all their former Fire was quite quenched, which belonged to the precedent yeare. And they that were subiect vnder them, when they kindled new fire; they were to fetch it from their Lords houses, which was performed with great Ceremonies, and publique reioycing. And whosoeuer of the Princes and Lords, that refused to take and receiue the new Fire: warre was instantly made on them by the rest, as on him that entred into rebellion, & so should be punished for his treacherie.

New Fire sent yeerely to the Princes and Lords from the King.

Euen so the Romaine Emperours, be it that they deriued it from the Kings of Persia, or them of Iuda, ouer whom *Augustus* and *Tiberius* commanded (as ours their owne Vassailes after great *Pompey*: they vsed as a noate of their Excellence and Soueraigntie, when they went forth in publique, or made their entrance in Triumph, to haue borne before them, vpon their Battaile-Axes, in forme of halfe-Pikes, Vessels and Censers of Gold and Siluer, like to the bottomes of Lamps, filled with prouision, and maintained with Oyles, Perfumes and Aromaticall confitures.

The Romaine Emperours vsed the noate of Royalty & Soueraigntie.

Pertinax being exalted to the Empire, refused the honor, to haue Lampes of Perfumes carried before him; vntill the Romaine Senate had agreed to his Renuntiation, so saith *Herodian* in his life. *Neque Ignem sibi præferri, neque ... principatus insignia passus est attolli, donec Senatus sententiam scisciteretur.* And the same Historian, speaking of the Emperour *Gordianus* at Carthage

in *Affrica*, discouering the markes of the Empire (whereof hereafter we shall say something) speaketh thus. *Sequebantur cum Virgæ Laureatæ, quo insigni Principes à priuatis dignoscuntur, prætereaque Ignis de More deferrebatur.* This Honor and priuiledge was granted to women, and sometime to the Romaine Emperours Sisters. The same *Herodian*, in the life of *Commodus*, speaking of his eldest sister *Lucilla*, to whom *Sella Imperitoria sedere in theatro, & Ignem de more præferri patiebatur.* Which was not permitted to their Fauourites; for the same Authour speaking of *Martia*, whom *Commodus* loued better then his lawfull wife, saith. *Sic, vt præter Ignem, omnes honores illi, velut Augustæ tribuerentur.*

God had commanded *Moyses*, that the *Sancta Sanctorum*, should be engirt with Veiles and Curtaines; because it should not be daily exposed to the peoples sight. The same was practised for the Benches and Seates of Iustice of the Iewes, which they called *Sanhedrins*. For before the *Pretorium* of the Iudges, called *Camera, & Domus Iudicij*, and by the Hebrewes *Gazith*, the Councell Chamber; there were *Custodes* or Curtaines, which were very seldome drawne: because sacred and holy things, such as Iustice is, ought not to be seene of the common people, or in any manner to be prophaned.

Concerning Seates of Iustice among the Iewes.

And so the Kings of Persia had their Imperiall Throane of pure Gold, couered and Veiled with Curtaines of Tyrian Purple, and of Crimosine Silke. For, when any spake to them with words of Crimosine Silke, that is to say, in tearmes of excellence and honour, and with all reuerence: their faces were Veiled (as we reade in the Historie of *Iester* of King *Ahasuerus*) *Necdum verbum de ore Regis exierat, & statim aperuerunt faciem eius.* The *Rabbines* explicating this passage, say, that in the Chamber of Honor, and Hall of Ptesence, belonging to the Kings of Israell and Iuda, before the Chaire and Throane of them, hung Curtaines, and ordenarily, when any one spake to them in publique, their faces were veiled and hidden, and that from them the Kings of Persia tooke the practise. Which the Subiects also did, in honor of their Princes, not daring to looke them fixedly in the face, no more then the Sunne: because they are liuing Images of the Diuinitie, and the best affected Sons of great *Iupiter*, saith *Homer*. It was an extraordinary fauour, when the said Kings of Persia spake to any one bare faced.

Of the Imperiall Throane of the Persian Kings.

The Kings of Israel & Iuda

——— Satis est potuisse videre.

So spake the God of the *Bucoliques* in *Virgill*. And so the Children of Israell at the Mountaine of *Sinai*, learned to see God with feare of death, and by his vision, the face of *Moyses* being become resplendantly shining; he spake to the people, his face being veiled.

In like manner, the Throanes of the Kings of *China*, of *Motecuma*, of *Mexico*, and of *Atabalippa* of *Peru*, were veiled and couered with Curtaines: so speake the Histories of the *Indiaes*, and of *China*, meaning of the *Yngas*.

Throanes of the Indian Kings.

The Romaines had the same practise, in the person of their Emperours, of their Altars, the Statues of their pretended Gods, and Councell Chamber.

Concerning Counsell, there are many Law-passages, and namely in the fift Law *De Naufragijs*, at the *Code*, *de submersis Nauibus decernimus vt lenato ... causæ istæ cognoscantur.* That is to say, that the causes of this nature, wherein many persons associated haue interest: they were pleaded, iudged, and terminated in full Audience, and not with a closed doore. *Oppanso velo*, as *Tertullian* speaketh. Vpon this Law, the light of Ciuill Lawyers, *Iacques de Cuiaux*, obserueth many Antiquities. Of those Curtaines is mention made in the last Law *De Officijs diuers. Iudic.* vnder the name of Secret. *Sciant Principes, & Cornicularij, & Primates officiorum, & Iudices etiam, ternas libras auri de suis facultatibus erundas, si honoratis viris (quibus etiam Consistorium nostrum ingredienda facultas præbetur) Secretarij Iudicium non potuerit ingressus.* In the fift Law de Proximis sacro. Scrinij at the *Code*. And the Ordonance of the Emperour *Constantine*. *Non sit venale Iudicis Velum, non ingressus redempti, non infame licitationibus Secretarium.*

There is an excellent passage, concerning those Veiles and Curtaines, in Chambers of Iustice, in S. *Basile* the Great, in the Epistle *ad Eusebium*. In the Ecclesiasticall Historie of *Eusebius*, the seauenth Booke, Chapter 32. And in the third Booke *De Gubernatione Dei*, written by *Saluianus*, Bishop of *Marseilles*. *Intra ianuas non modo illustrium potestatum, sed etiam Præsidum, aut Præpositorum non omnes passim intrare præsumunt, nisi quos aut Iudex vocauerit, aut negotium taxerit, aut ipsa honoris propry dignitas introire permiserit.* Which passage referreth it selfe to the fift Law before alleadged.

Of Statues, *Tertullian* in *Apologetico*. *Solis Sacerdotibus adire licentium, & conspectu ceterorum velo oppanso interdicebatur.* *Apuleius*, in the eleauenth of his *Metamorphosis*, speaking of the goddesse *Isis*. *Ac dum velis caudentibus reductis in diuersum, Deæ venerabilem conspectum apprecamur.* And of himselfe, in the said Booke. *Sic ad instar Solis exornato, & in vicem simulacri constituto repente velis reductis in conspectum Populi errabam.* Those that were on the Marches, and publique places, were veiled at such time as they performed Iustice, or some dismall and Tragicall act, besmeared with humaine blood, as we vnderstand by *Dion*. *Claudius delectabatur gladiatoribus, & præsertim Meridianis. Ideo plerosque seruos, qui dominos sub Caio aut Tiberio calumniati erant, hoc modo perdebat. Eorumque tantus fuit numerus, vt Augusto statuum eo loci positam iusserit transferri, ne aut semper aspiceret cædes, aut semper Velum mutaret.*

Of Altars, there are an infinitie of passages in *Plautus*: we will rehearse but this following.

——— Querulo
Isti sunt qui in fanis, & in facellis obseruant Vela.

And *Lucretius* in his fift Booke.

Nec pictas vlla est, Velatum sæpe videri
Vertier ad lapidem, atque omnes accedere ad aras.

Paulinus ad Cytherium.
Tunc & discusso nudata altaria Velo
Amisere sacri religionem adyti.

Of Emperours, *Suetonius* in the life of *Vitellius*. *Idem miri in adulando ingenij primus C. Cæsarem adorari instituit, quum reuersus è Syria non aliter adire ausus esset, quam Capite Velo, circumuentesque sic, deinde procumbens.* The Emperour *Tiberius*, making the Speech and Funerall Oration, for his Sonne *Drusus*, had his face Veiled; *Vt à Funere oculos suos auerteret*: So saith *Seneca De Consolat. one ad Marciam*. And this was as well in regard of the Emperours quality, as of the chiefe Priest, to whom it was permitted to assist in Funerals, according to the ordonance of God in the Mosaicall Law. *Lampridius* setteth it downe for an example of great familiaritie and priuacie, in the Emperour *Alexander*, because that *Saluidatur quasi vnus de Senatoribus, Patente Velo.* In this manner Princes gouerned themselues, by borrowing Diuine Honors, for imploying them to their owne vse; and namely Fire in Lampes carried before them, but now abolished. Yet to this day, they retaine the practise, of making their pompous Entrances in night time, with lighted Torches. And on dayes of publique receiuing, to haue lighted Lampes, lighted Lanthornes in their Windowes, and at the doores of their houses, a custome likewise taken from the Persians and Easterne Kings.

Princes imployed Diuine Honours to their owne vse.

For, ouer and beside that which wee learne from *Xenophon*, and *Plutarch* in the life of *Cyrus*: we reade in the Historie of *Iudith*, and third Chapter, that *Holofernes*, Lieutenant Generall to the King of the Assyrians, was receiued by the Assyrians into the Citie of *Damas*, with the light of Torches, flaming Lampes, Chaplets of Floures, and sound of Musicall Instruments. *Cum Coronis & Lampadibus, ducentes choros in tympanis, & tibijs.* As much was done at the entrance of *Antiochus*, King of Ægypt, into the holy Citie. *Magnifice ab Iudæis susceptus*

susceptus est cum facularium luminibus, & laudibus. *Augustus* would neuer enter into any famous Citie, but in the night-season: So saith *Suetonius* in his life. And the Ceremonies of strewing Floures, and other greene Hearbes along the Streetes, and decking Gates and Doores with branches of diuers goodly Trees, and beautifying Windowes with burning Lampes, filled with Balmes and costly Perfumes; was learned (as meerely borrowed) by the Romaines, of the Easterne people. *Herodianus*, in his first Booke, describing the entrance of the Emperor *Commodus* into Rome, saith, *imperatorem faustis omnibus, acclamantibusque, & coronarum, florumque sparsionibus excepere.*

As for Lampes in Windowes, *Persius*;

——— Vnctaque fenestra
Dispositæ pinguem nebulam vomuere Lucernæ.

But much more apparantly *Iuuenall*, in his sixt Satyre.

Hic nostrum placabo Iouem; Laribusque paternis
Thura dabo, atque omnes Violæ iactabo colores:
Cuncta nitent, longos erexit ianua ramos,
Et matutinus operiatur fenestra Lucernis.

Tertullian, in the Treatise which hee wrote *De Corona Militis*, declareth, that the Romaine Emperours, and Kings on the Earth, worne their Crownes in the forme of the Sunne-beames: because they were as Sunnes, and flaming Lights to their people.

Lux publica Principis Ignis.

Because that

Commonly we see the conquered Prouince
Shapes manners by the same mould of the Prince.

Crownes Royall had their circle enamelled with Colours of the Bowe fixed in Heauen. *Velleius Paterculus*, in his second Booke, speaking of *Octauius Cæsar*, saith;

Aduentanti Romam immanis amicorum occurrit frequentia, & cum intraret vrbem, solis orbis super caput eius curuatus æqualiter, rotundatusque in colorem arcus, velut coronatus tanti mox vir capiti imponens conspectus est.

Suetonius in the life of the same *Augustus*, saith *Videre visus est Filium mortalium decore ampliorem, cum fulmine & sceptro, exuuijsque Iouis optimi maximi, ac Radiata Corona super Laureatum currum bissenis equis candore eximio trahentibus.*

Where he remarketh to vs, that the Triumphall Chariots and Waggons of Kings and Princes, were drawne by Horses absolutely white, which are dedicated to the Sunne: the Chariot whereof is represented by Poets, to be drawne by such creatures. And thence ensued the custome, that Kings and other Princes of the world, are ordenarily mounted on white Horses; on those dayes when they appeare in greatest brauery. The Chariot of the Sunne drawne by white Horses.

Plinie in his *Panegyricke*, *Horum vnumsi præstitisset alius illi, iamdudum radiatum caput, & media inter Deos sedes aurostaret, & ebore.* And the *Panegyricke* spoken to *Maximianus*; *Trabeæ vestræ triumphales, & fasces Consulares, & Selbe curules, & hæc sequiorum stipatio, & fulgur, & illa Lux Diuinum Verticem claro orbe complectens, vestrorum sunt ornamenta meritorum pulcherrima, & Angustissima.*

We finde, that the Kings of Israell were (by title of excellence and honor) called of their people, *The Lampes of Israell*. The Princes and Captaines attending on King *Dauid*, seeing that hee had runne the fortune of life, going himselfe to warre against the *Philistims*; would no longer suffer him to goe with them: *Iam non egredieris nobiscum ad bellum, ne Extinguas Lucernam Israel.* And their reason was very pertinent, because the Scripture speaketh in the same Booke, *That the life person of the King, is reputed of greater worth then an hundred thousand men.* Kings of Israel called the Lamps of Israel. 2 Reg. 21. 17. 2 Reg. 18. 3.

men. Wherefore he ſhould not daily (as we ſay) expoſe himſelfe to the hazards of warre, and aduenture like to a Captaine or Souldiour; the loſſe of them is not of ſuch importance, as the very leaſt accident that can happen to a King, who is the Lampe and light of her Kingdome. *Princeps eſt Lucerna Regni ſui*; the maine Lanterne of the people of Iſrael.

A King's life ſhould not be expoſed to perils of war

Now, concerning the French, they honour their Kings and call them *Sires*, of the auncient Gauliſh word. Σείν, Σείος, which ſignifieth the Sunne: becauſe thoſe Monarches haue bin ſaid to be truely the Suns, not onely of France, but of all Chriſtendome, which will laſt ſo long as their Kings endure. They are the ſacred ſupporters of the Catholique Religion; *Colimus Reges noſtros ſicut homines à Deo ſecundos, & ſolo Deo minores*: They depend immediately vpon none but God onely.

The Kings of France called *Sires* of an ancient Gauliſh word.

Plutarch, in the Treatiſe which he wrote, concerning the defect of Oracles, very apely compareth the Kings and Princes of the world, to a lighted Lampe, hanging in the midſt of a Haule, it delighteth all the by-ſtanders with the light. But then men muſt not behaue themſelues like diuers kindes of Flyes, who ſporting pleaſantly thereat, flye ſo oftentimes about it, that in the end they are ſcorched with the flame, as we vſe to ſay in a common Prouerbe; Kings are not to be taunted, or riſen againſt, no, nor troubled in their State. Fire is the Symbole or Hieroglyphicke of Royalty: *Sic cum Igne. Sic cum Principe*: Such as preſume ouer-neere to the Fire, burne themſelues: and they that ſtand too farre off, feele no warmth at all.

An eſpeciall noate well worth the obſeruation.

Sothen we may ſay, that as a bright-burning Lampe, is ioy and comfort to all the beholders: the like we ſay alſo of a Prince, that ſo long as he liueth, he is the admirable Lanterne to his people, the holy fire and ſacred flame, by the ſplendor whereof, *Mutatur pro cella Maris in auram, & ſilent fluctus eius.*

Concidunt nubes, fugiuntque Venti.

What gentle horror at the ſight of a Prince.

His very name onely ſtilleth troubles and ſeditions. But ſo ſoone as this bright Lampe is extinguiſhed, the Land ſeeth it ſelfe obſcured with darkneſſe, and pitchie cloudes. As the Eclipſe of the Sunne happening, by little and little the Ayre is darkened, altred into ſullen lookes; and the Subiects troubled, being (without a guide expoſed to the windes of ambition, of all diſorder and diſobedience. Becauſe at all times, and as often as there is no Maiſter in the houſe, all is in confuſion: where contrariwiſe, his very preſence ſerueth as an ornament, and keepeth all within compaſſe of duety. And this is the reaſon, why the extinction of theſe faire Lights, the death of great Princes; is ordenarily foregon by extraordinary Starres, and Comets of a fiery nature, which appeare in heauen, as Auant-Courreurs, or their quite quenching.

Strange Starres foretelling the death of Princes.

Nunquam viſus impune Cometes.

The Romaine Emperours, beſide thoſe Lampes of Fire, liuely deſcribed by *Apuleius* in the eleuenth Booke of his *Mileſians*, deſcribing the order of the Proceſſion of *Iſis*, ſaith. *Quorum primus Lucernam præmicantem porrigebat lumen, non adeo meis illis conſimilem, quæ veſpertinas illuminant epulas, ſed aureum cymbium medio ſui patore flammulam ſuſcitans largionem*) cauſed alſo to be borne before them, *The Eagle, The Scepter, And the Hand or Rod of Iuſtice*; which in the times of peace, were kept in the Temple of *Saturne*, at the Capitole of Rome. And in warre, in a Tent or Pauillion (in forme of a Temple) which they called *Ad Principia*, cloſe ioyning to the Tent *Pretoriall*. And when as the Emperours or Lieutenants Generall made Orations to the Souldiors (they tearming that Oration or ſpeech Militarie *Adlocutionem*) ſome one or other fetched out of the *Ad Principia*, the markes or noates of the Empire, *The Eagle, The Hand of Iuſtice, The Lampe* and *The Scepter*, which either were fixed, or brought to the Tribune, at the Orations. Then were there to be ſeene an infinite number of *Medales*, or ſtamps of Auncient Coines, and among the reſt, that of the Emperour *Galba*, whereof here you may behold the Figure.

The Hand or Rod of Iuſtice in ſeruice.

Adlocutionem the Militarie Oration.



Of all the Princes of Chriſtendom, there is not any one, but the King of France onely, that beareth this *Hand* or *Rod* of Iuſtice. He carrieth a Scepter of pure gold in the right hand, which is alſo common to other Princes: but, in the other, hee carrieth the *Hand of Iuſtice*, that is, a Rod of a Cubit in height, hauing on the top thereof a left hand wide open, wholly of Iuorie (and not of gold or ſiluer) to ſhew the integrity that Iudges ſhould obſerue, in rendring Iuſtice equally to euery one, without hatred or fauour, and any acception of Prince or Vaſſaile, Rich or Poore. And this is the reaſon, why this Rod and Hand of Iuſtice is called *Æquitatis Iudicium*, the marke and Hieroglyphicke of Equity, by *Apuleius* in his *Mileſians*, as a moſt remarkeable paſſage. For there hee rendreth a reaſon, why this Iudex and Symbole of Iuſtice, is rather, the left hand then the right. *Quartus Æquitatis oſtendebat iudicium, effigiatam Manum Sinistram porrecta palmula: quæ gemina Pigritia, nulla calliditate; nulla ſolertia prædita, videbatur Æquitati magis aptior, quàm dextera.* The left hand (ſaith hee) being not imployed to the working of many diſhoneſt actions, or violent, without Art, Deceit, or Induſtry; is much more proper to repreſent and ſignifie the Rudder or Sterne of Iuſtice, then the right hand.

No Prince beareth the Hand of Iuſtice but the King of Frãce onely.

This Hand of Iuſtice, which Saint *Clemens Alexandrinus*, in the ſixt book of his Obſeruations inward calleth *Cubitum Iuſtitiæ*, *The Cubit of Iuſtice*, was framed all of Iuorie, which white like ſnow, is the note of the brightneſſe of the faire Virgin *Aſtrea*. And euery one knoweth, that the teeth of an Elephant are Yuory; and therfore *Propertius* called them,

Libici nobile dentis opus.

Among all foure-footed Beaſts, the Elephant is obſeruable for his deuotion and Pietie, loue to his Gouernours, and likewiſe for his Equity: as we learn of *Ariſtotle* and *Plutarch* in their bookes *De Animalium*. *Plinie* in the eight booke of his Naturall Hiſtory, reporteth wonders: *Intellectus illi ſermonis Patrij, Imperiorumque obedientia, Officiorum quæ didicere memoria, Amoris, & Gloriæ voluptas; imo verò (quæ etiam in Homine rara) Probitas, Prudentia, Æquitati: Religio quoque Syderum, Soliſque, ac Lunæ veneratio.* The French *Lucretius*, *Du Bartas*, in his ſixt dayes worke, ſetteth him downe, as the Generall of all foure-footed creatures.

Du Bartas in Sextieſme Iournee.

Digne de telle charge, ou ſoit qu'on ait egard
A ſon dos tourrelé qui porte maint Soudard:
Ou ſoit qu'on mette en ieu ceſte prudente adreſſe,
Dont il ſemble obſcurcir des Humains la ſageſſe.
Eſcolier ſtudieux, il rumine à part ſoy
La leçon qu'on luy baille. Il reuere ſon Roy.
Il ſaluë la Lune, &c.

Worthy of ſuch a charge: be it in regard
His Caſtle backe, to Souldiers a ſafe ward.
Or be it for his diſcreet readineſſe,
Wherein he dimmes all witte men can expreſſe.
A ſtudious Scholler; he conſults alone
With his owne ſonle, Leſſons to him made knowne.
He riuerenceth his King: Salutes the Moone.

The

Kings of Israel carried the hand of Iustice.

The Kings of Israell carried (with their Scepter) this Hand of Iustice, to say the Rabbines, who describe it ; *Virgam Eburneam, An Tuorie Rod ; Virgam Regni ; Virgam Directionis ; Iosh, Sceptrum Rectitudinis, Æquitatis, & Iustitiæ* : The Rod of Right and of Equity, and of Iustice of *Astrea*.

And from the Iewes, the practise passed among the Ægyptians ; before the King and the President of Iustice, this Hand of Iustice was carried. *Clemens Alexandrinus*, in the place before alleadged, saith : That there was borne before them, that is to say, before the King, and the high Priest, the Intendant of Iustice (named by *Diodorus Siculus* Prince of the Iudges, *Princeps Iudicum*, and by *Elianus* in his fourth booke of Diuersities, *Princeps Sententiæ*) the notes and adornments of the Priesthood, as also of Royaltie : namely, this *Hand or Rod of Iustice*, and the *Chalice for Sacrificing*, and the bearer of them was called ϖολιαρχ. *Clemens* in the forequoted Booke, reporteth more particularly the full manner and order of proceeding. And *Diodorus Siculus*, in the second booke of his Antiquities, who obserued, that the Prince of Priests, and Iudges of the said Ægyptians, wore vpon his breast a precious stone called *Veritie*, which they had borrowed from the High Priest of the Iewes. *Aelianus* in the passage formerly alleadged, saith : *Iudices apud Ægyptios ydem quondam fuerunt, qui & Sacerdotes. In his Princeps erat sententiæ Maximus natu, & in omnes statuendi ius habebat. Eum omnium hominum esse iustissimum, & syncerissimum portebat, qui circa collum imaginem ex Saphyro gemma confectam gestabat, quæ vocabatur Veritas.*

The Prince of the Druides had the hand of Iustice before him.

The Prince of the Druides had it borne before him, as the marke of his Principality, and he had the guard and managing of Iustice, euen ouer the Kings & Princes of the Gaules : who gaue strong hand to the execution of Iustice, and commands deliuered from the Druides, to whom they were euen as Ministers and seruants. As it is obserued by *Dion* of *Prusia* in *Suidas*, in these remarkeable words.

Celtæ habent Druidas Diuinationis, Sapientiæque studiosos, sine quibus nihil est licitum Regibus facere, aut consulere ; ita vt si quis rempenitus consideret, Druidas regnent, Reges autem sententiæ sint administri, & serua. For it is not for Kings and Princes of the earth, to reigne and command absolutely after their owne fantasie, and by an immoderate power ; but to reigne in all assurance, to gouerne himselfe, and rule his Estate, by Councell of the wise, and according to Iustice.

How Kings & Princes ought to reigne.

According as the Kings of France vsually haue done, who at all times haue beene commended for loning Iustice ; because they take the Scepter thereof at their Sacring, Coronation, and at receiuing thereof, the Prelate that Sacreth and Crowneth them, saith :

The words of the Prelate, at Sacring and Crowning the kings of France.

Accipe Virgam Virtutis & Æquitatis, qua intelligas mulcere pios, & terrere reprobos, errantibus viam dare, lapsisque manum porrigere, dissperdasque superbos, & releues humiles, vt aperiat tibi ostium Iesus Christus Dominus noster, qui de se ipso ait. Ego sum ostium : per me si quis introierit saluabitur. Et ipse qui Clauis est Dauid, & Sceptrum domus Israel : qui aperit, & nemo claudit, claudit & nemo aperit, sit tibi adiutor, eduxit vinctum de domo carceris, sedentem in tenebris, & vmbra Mortis : vt in omnib. sequi merearis eum, de quo Dauid Propheta cecinit. Sedes tua, Deus, in sæculum sæculi, Virga Æquitatis Regni Tui, & imiteris eum qui dicit. Diligas Iustitiam, & odio habeas iniquitatem, propterea unxit te Deus, Deus tuus lætitiæ ad exemplum illius, quem ante sæcula unxerat præ participibus suis Iesum Christum Dominum nostrum, Amen.

Mention also is made of the Ornaments for their Kings, and namely of the Hand of Iustice, in the history of *Sugerus* Abbot of S. *Denys* in France, speaking of the Sacring of *Lewes le Gros*, sixt of the name : *Diademate Regni gratanter coronatus ; nec non & Sceptrum, & Virgam*, &c. Wherin it is euident, that they are mistaken, who haue written, that *Charles* the fift was the first King of France, that (at his Sacring) receiued the Hand of Iustice.

Of the great Seale and Throne of Iustice.

These Monarchs then, as they are the onely Kings of Christendome, who (beside their Scepter) doe beare the Rod and hand of Iustice : so are they likewise the onely Princes, who are figured by their cloathed Royalty, and in peaceable habits ; whereas other Princes make themselues to appeare Armed, and mounted on horseback, like to S. *George*.

That

The golden Chamber of the Parlament house.

That is called the Throne of Iustice, when the King comes in person into the golden Chamber of the House of Parliament at Paris, about great and serious affaires of the Kingdome. Then is it, when the said Chamber is hung and adorned with rich violet Veluet, very thickly powdred with Floures de Luces of gold, in costly embroydery, and the great Canopy of the same ouer the Throne Royall, garnished with sumptuous pillowes to sit on, and to support the feet of his Maiesty, assisted with the Princes of his Bloud and Parliament, in their red Robes, as Peeres and Officers of his Crowne. On the contrary Seale to the said Great Seale, are the Armes of France crowned, sustained and supported by two Angels ; and the same is also allowed to the lesser Chancellours of France.

Concerning the Seales of the first Kings.

In some of the Charters of the first Kings, their Seales haue beene stamped with the sole visage of the said King, as halfe faced, that is to say, onely halfe of the countenance, which the Latines tearme *Luscam Imaginem*, as we see on *Teslons*, and other peeces of gold and siluer, euen so low as to the *Doubles*, a Money of France. And the Seale thus engrauen, was cut somewhat deepe inward, that the face appeared swelling fully vpward ; as hath beene obserued in that of King *Childebert*, first of the name, Founder and endower of the Church of Paris, in his Charter kept to this very day, and in other of the Kings his Successors, which haue beene seene in the same manner presented.

Kings of France onely seale with white waxe.

The Kings of France onely haue sealed at all times with white waxe, whereas other seale with greene, or red, or yellow, and some with blacke. King *Lewes*, the eleuenth of the name, by his Letters Patents, renewed from the twenty eight day of Ianuary, 1468. and to the moneth of May 1469. granted by an especiall priuiledge to the Duke of *Anion Rene*, King of Sicilie & Ierusalem, Count of Prouence, and to his heyres in direct Ligne (which went not farre, being ended in a daughter married in the House of Lorraine, and in regard of her, the Dukes of Lorraine haue retained to this day, the Armes and Title of Kings of Ierusalem and Sicilie) to seale with white waxe, as well in the Kingdomes of Ierusalem and Sicilie, as in his lands in France.

The Throane and Seate of Iustice.

The Throane and Seate of Iustice, ordenary to the most Christian Kings of France, is the Parlement of Paris, called (for Excellency) *The Court of Peeres, and Parlement of France* ; albeit there are seuen other in principall Prouinces of the Kingdome, which we shall elsewhere speake of more conueniently.

Parlements vnder the second Ligne.

It is obserued in the second booke, concerning the Officers of the Crowne of France, and the tenth Chapter, that the Estates and Parlements general of France, vnder the Kings of the second Ligne, met and held but twice in the yeere onely, according to the testimony of *Hincmarus*, Archbishop of Rheims, drawn from the narration of the Abbot of *Corbie Alard*, who liued in the time of *Charlemaigne*, Emperour of the famous French.

Parlements vnder the third Ligne now reigning.

Vnder the Kings of the third Ligne, at this instant happily reigning, the Parlement hath beene diuersly changed, according to the occurrences and necessitie of the affaires of France, and as they walked foot by foot, with the Princes & Lords that were possessed of the Prouinces, and Successors to them, who had compassed their affaires (as some say, fishing in troubled waters) vnder the declining of the Kings, descendants from *Charlemaigne*. Which is meant of two Thrones of Iustice, held by the Kings *Lewes* the *Deuout*, & *Philip Augustus*, called (by good right) the Conquerors Sonne : both of them held in fauour of the Church of *Mascon*, and Bishop thereof, against the violences of the Count of Vienna. The first was held at Chaalon-*Cabillonis*, in the yeare of the Word Incarnate, 1166. the nine and twentieth of the reigne of *Lewis* the *Deuout*, being set downe in eloquent tearmes, as followeth.

Two thrones or seates of Iustice.

The tenure of the Rule set downe in the Court concerning K. *Lewes*.

DEr longam Regum absentiam sine disciplina, & fræno iusti regiminis longo tempore dissoluta fuit terra Burgundiæ, & illis qui in ea erant alicuius potentiæ licuit impugnare, & inter se decertare, & pauperes opprimere, & Ecclesiarum bona vastare. Nos propter tantam indignitati malitiam, & zelo Dei commoti, terram Burgundiæ cum copijs Regni interuenimus obtentu faciend vindictas, & reformandi pacem in patria. Notum itaque facimus

facimus vniuersis, præsentibus, & futuris, quod cum sederemus Cabillonis *ad iudicandum super negotys, & ad cognoscendum causas diuersas, inter alias audiuimus querimoniam Ecclesiæ Matisconensis contra Comitem Girardum Vianensem, & ipse non potuit asserere, se super Ecclesiam aliquid iuris habere, siue in Episcopi, siue in Capituli terris, aque Hominibus:* And that which ensueth.

The other proceeding of K. *Philip Augustus.*

The other of *Philip Augustus*, for execution of the said Arrest before specified, was with raising a maine Armie against the same Count *Gerard* of Vienna, in behalfe of the Bishop and Chapter of the Church of the said *Mascon*; and was given *Apud Petræpertusum, Anno Incarnati Verbi Milleſimo Centeſimo Octuageſimo Regni autem Anno primo*: which sheweth, that according to the occurrences, the first Kings of the third Line, went to hold their Parliaments and seats of Iustice, with a strong Armie; where the accused were constrained to be by Law, and to obey the Decrees which were signed by the King, & sub-signed by the Officers of the Crown. For those of *Lenes* the *Denout*, had the signatures of *Thibault*, Count of Blois, and Champaigne, of Master of the household; of *Guy de Boutieller*; of *Matthew* the Chamberlaine, and of *Raoull*, Constable.

Parlements held by armed power.

Foure Parlements holden yeerly in time of peace.

Vnder the Reign of King *Lewes*, called *Sanctus*, when France was in her flourishing estate, and the Princes and Lords werie of fouple nature, rancking with the tearmes of duty and obedience: the Parliaments were ruled and assured at certaine seasons of the yeere. For in times of peace, foure Parlements were holden yearly, or three at the least. And the same was vsed vnder the reigne of his sonne, *Philip the Hardie*, third of the name.

No Parlement in some yeeres by reason of warre.

In the time of *Philip le Bel* his sonne, King of France and Nauarre, they were reduced to two yeerely, according to the ancient custome; one in Winter, and the other in Sommer, during peace; and but one in Winter during warre. It appeareth neuertheleſſe by the Registers of the Court, that by hinderance of warre against the rebellious Flemmings, there was not any Parlement during some yeeres. And the King by his Ordinance, dated the Monday after mid-Lent, *Anno* 1302. set downe in the Register of ancient Orders of Parlement, *fol.* 45. appointed that two Prelates, and two Councellers Layicks, should dispatch causes most pressing and attending the Parlement. *Quia verò multæ magnæ causæ in nostro Parlamento interueniebant personis & magnas aguntur, ordinamus & volumus quod duo Prælati, & duæ aliæ bonæ, & sufficientes laicæ de nostro Consilio, vel saltem vnus Prælatus, & vna persona laicæ, causa deliberandi, & audiendi istas causas continuè in nostris Parliamentis existant.*

Especiall Ordinances of K. *Philip le Bel.*

In the same Ordenance, the said King *Philip* willed, that for the commodity of his Subiects, there should be two Parlements at Paris, two Exchequers at Roane, and extraordinary Sessions, called Great dayes, at Troyes in Champaigne, and a Parlament at *Tolosa*.

Præterea propter commodum Subiectorum nostrorum, & expeditionem causarum, præcipimus ordinare, quòd duo Parlementa erunt Parisius, duo Scacaria Rothomagi, & duo Trecenses bis tenebuntur in Anno, & quod Parlamentum apud Tolosam tenebitur, & gentes prædictæ terræ consentiant, quod non appelletur a Præsentibus in Parliamento prædicto.

Of causes appealed to the Court of Auditors.

The Ordinance of the King Saint *Lewes*, speaketh expressely, that causes should be appealed in the Audience, according as they are in the Rolles, and that they should be concluded, before any other be appealed, without Checquer-play, as the Prouerbe was in those times, or calling on the nayle; that is to say, calling other cases, and then leaping from one cause to another, without determining any. *Deputati ad causas audiendas, partes duarum, vel trium causarum coram se faciant exponi, & quasque fuerint & quantum ad diem pertinet, expeditæ, alias non audiant introduci, illis expeditis, aliæ audiantur, & sic fiat quousq; totum sit expeditum.*

Court Registers vnder K. *Philip le Long.*

In the Registers of Decrees of Parlement, beginning Anno 1320. vnder the Reigne of *Philip le Long*, fift of the name, King of France & Nauarre, in the Arrest or Order of the Court of Bologne on the Sea, (who was a Counceller of the Parlement) pronounced the tenth of Nouember, in the said yeere 1320. it is shewn that

Chiefe Lords of France Councellers of the Court.

that the Lords of the Parliament of Paris, had their cause commised in the said Parlement, which was held to be of such esteem and greatnesse, that the very chiefest Lords of France laboured to haue themselues receiued as Councellers of the Court; and hauing that priuiledge, they did account it for the prime Ranke of Honour.

And this is the reason, why we see at S. *Quentins* the picture of *Herbert*, Count of *Vermandois* (vpon the Tomb) attired in his Robe and Cloake, furred with Ermines, as a Counceller of the Court: and at the Church of S. *Iohn* at *Dyon*, in the great glasse window of the Quire, the foure last Dukes of Bourgongne, cloathed and habited in the same manner.

Gentlemen of the Parlement exempted frō calling to Combats.

In the same Register is also to be seen, that the Gentlemen of the said Parlement were exempted from being appealed to Combats: for in the Order or Decree dated the sixt of Ianuary, in the said yeere, 1320. *Mesire Guillaume de Marsilly*, a Counceller in the said Parlement, was appealed to Combat by *Iohn Remilly*, vassall and household seruant to *Alix*, Lady of *Arsis*, Aunt to the King; who charged the said *Marsilly* for being corrupted with money, in Commission of a Processe depending in the said Court, betweene the said Lady and *Henry* of Lancaster. Answere being made, that there was no place for Combat; as well, because that formerly hee had beene accused and absolued, as also by being a Counceller in the Parlement, he stood clearely exempted.

The Order enacted by K. *Charles le Bel.*

Charles le Bel, fourth of the name, King of France and Nauarre, made his Ordenance, to rule the said Parlement of Paris, as is to be seene in a Rolle and Register of Priuy Councel for the said King. *Hee fuerunt ordinata in consilio celebrato apud Asnerias* (*Asnieres* neere to *Royaumont*, an ancient house of pleasure, belonging to the King S. *Lewes*) *videlicet die Lunæ ante Ascensionem Domini, Anno Milleſimo Trecenteſimo Viceſimo Secundo, qui incipit.*

Primo mandatum est per Regem Magistris Inquestarum, quod non recedant quousque Cancellarius venerit Parisius. Et id est mandatum Domino Thomæ de Marafountaine, & Domino Erardo l'Alamant, & quod illi duo dicant hoc idem alijs de Parlamento.

The triple composition of the Parlement.

Item ordinatum est eadem die per Dominum Regem in Consilio suo, Presentibus Domino de Valesio, Domino Roberto de Attrebato, Episcopo Vinariensi (*Viniers* at *Seuenes*) *& Domino Ioanne de Cheichemon, & alijs de quibus videbitur, ordinat de Magistris Inquestarum qui remanebunt: & idem de illis de Requestis, & qui adiungentur eis, & qui ibunt ad commissiones vsque at futurum Parlamentum.* Which approoueth, that the Parliament was composed of the great Chamber for the audience; of the Iudges for Enquests, and of Commissaries for Requests.

And which more particularly may be vnderstood from the Register, concerning the ancient Ordinances of the said Parlament, there is (among the rest) that of King *Philip de Valois*, sixt and last of the name, which was made the eight day of Aprill *Anno* 1342.

The Ordinance of K. *Philip de Valois.*

Item, that when our said Parlement shall be ended, we will send our said Chanceller, the three Masters Presidents of our said Parlement, and ten other persons, as well Clearks as Layicks of our Councell, such whom we shall please; who shall ordaine (according to our will) of the said Parlement, as well of the great Chamber of our said Parlement, and of the Chamber of Enquests, as the Requests for the Parlement to come. And they shall be sworne, that they shall name vnto vs, the most sufficient persons which are in our said Parlement; and shall tell vs, what number of men will suffise for the said great Chamber, Enquests, and Requests.

Concerning the Masters of Requests.

Item, that hence-forward, we will not make any Maisters of Requests of our said Household, vntill such time as they shall be come to the number of sixe; three Clearks, and three Layickes. And of the said Maisters which at this present are: there shall bee but foure, that is to say, two Clearkes, and two Layickes, which receiue any thing in household; but only in the manner as the Maisters of Requests of our said Household were wont, and haue accustomed to receiue in ancient times.

Vnder King *Iohn*, Sonne and Successor to the said *Philip de Valois*, in the Register of Decrees of Parlement, beginning *Anno*, 1351. there is an Order set downe for the Abbot, religious persons and Conuent of *Vendosme*. Wherein it is expref-

ted

ſed that the Count of *Vendoſme* was a Councellor in Parliament, in the great and ſecret Councell for the King, and that the cauſes of Councellers, as well of the ſaid Parliament, as the great Councel; by an eſpeciall priuiledge, ought to be treated on in the ſaid Parliament, and not elſewhere, and ſo it was adiudged.

An Order for Lords & Gentlemen of Parlement

In the Regiſter of Letters, and orders of Parliament, beginning the Moneth of February, *Anno* 1356. in the Commiſſion of the fourth of Iuly, 1357. for M. *Reynauld Dacy*, Aduocate for the King in the ſaid Parlement; it is expreſſely ſaid, that the Gentlemen and Lords of the ſaid Parlement, are not obliged to plead any where elſe, but in the ſaid Parlement, if they will haue right and Iuſtice there.

A condemnation for threatning the kings Aduocate in Parlement.

In the Regiſter of Orders of Parlement, beginning in Anno 1360. in an Order bearing date the foure and twentieth day of Iuly 1361. M. *Iohn Paſtoureau*, Aduocate for the King in the ſaid Parlement, pleading and concluding againſt a Partie: the Sonne of the ſaid Partie being preſent at the pleading, threatned him in open Audience. He was condemned in a thouſand pounds Fine to the King, and in an hundred pounds to the ſaid *Paſtoureau*. Which Order imported, *That the ſaid Sonne had dared to quench the light of Iuſtice, in her principall Candleſticke*, that is to ſay, the Parlement, which is the Capitall Court of the Kingdome.

No perſons to be impriſoned that haue ſuits in Parlement.

In the ſame Regiſter are two Orders, giuen the ſeuenth, and one and twentieth of Auguſt, 1361. whereby appeareth, that ſuch as come to plead in the ſaid Parlement, are in Safeguard and ſafe conduct thereof; and are not to be impriſoned for debts, cauſe, or any ſubiect whatſoeuer, without appointment of the ſaid Parlement; except it be for debt of expences for the belly, during the awaiting and purſuing his affaires in the ſaid Parliament. There are diuers other Decrees made, concerning the ſame priuiledge, dated the one and twentieth day of May, 1365. and the ſixt of Ianuary, 1365.

Vnder King *Charles* the fift, called the Wiſe, Sonne and Succeſſour to the ſaid King *Iohn*, in the Regiſter of the ſaid Parliament, beginning in *Anno* 1365. is an Order, dated the ſeuenteenth day of Ianuary in the ſaid yeere, 1365. for *Thibault de Morcuill*, which ſheweth; That ſuch parties as ought to appeare perſonally in Parlement, are to haue (during their iourney) all their other cauſes to ceaſe, and be intermitted before all other Iudges whatſoeuer.

A condemnation in Parlement preſently remitted by the King.

In the Regiſter of Acts or Orders of Parlement, beginning 1366. by Decree dated the twenty fiue of Nouember in the ſaid yeere, the King then ſitting on his Throne of Iuſtice: *Thibault*, Lord of Bedox was condemned in fine to his Maieſtie, which preſently he remitted to him. And the ſaid gift was ſigned by the Regiſter or Pregnotarie of the Parliament, and not by any Secretary of the Finances.

High treaſon to kil a Counceller of Parliament.

In the Regiſter of Acts of Parliament, beginning 1368. there is one dated the twenty ſeuenth of Iune, 1369. for matter of murder and aſſaſſinate, committed on the perſon of M. *Emery Doll*, Counceller of the ſaid Parliament, whereby it was approued, *That it was the crime of high Treaſon, to kill a Counſeller of the ſaid Parliament*

The Declaration of the Parlement.

In the Regiſter of Councell of Parlement, *Anno* 1475. it is declared, that the eleuenth day of Nouember in the ſaid yeere, *Monſieur* the Chanceller came to aduertiſe the Court for going to the *Baſtille*, to heare the confeſſion of the Conſtable of S. *Paul*, to whom for his rebellions and diſobediences, King *Lewes* the eleuenth directed his Proceſſe. And the ſaid Parlement declared, *That there was not any Lord in the Kingdome ſo great, Except the King and Monſieur le Dauſphine, but ought to come and appeare at the ſaid Parlement in Perſon, when it was ordained for him.*

And this is witneſſed by a Lion abaſing his head, and the tayle betweene his legges exalted ouer the gate and entrance of the great Chamber, by the *Parquet des Huiſſiers* thereof. So that by this illuſtrious and Soueraigne Parlement, are ordered and determined the principall affaires of the Kingdome.

In the Regiſter of Parlement Councell, beginning *Anno* 1482. the ſecond day of Aprill in the ſaid yeere, King *Lewes* the eleuenth ſent vnto the Parlement, the Oath which hee tooke at his Sacring, exhorting the ſaid Parlement to performe good

ned good Iuſtice, according as the King had promiſed to doe by his ſaid Oath, which he purpoſed to keepe: and the Oath is there Regiſtred downe.

Kings & Princes repreſented in Scripture.

It is not then to be wondred at, if Kings and Princes in the ſacred Scriptures, are miſtically repreſented by the Tree called an Oake, and that God himſelfe (who honoureth them with the Throne and Scepter, according to his owne good pleaſure) did communicate or impart himſelfe to the ancient Patriarches, vnder *the Oake of Mambre*. Becauſe in like manner, as the Oake couereth & defendeth from the ayres iniury, ſuch as commit themſelues to the ſhelter of his branches, his leaues and fruites being apt for paſturing and nouriſhing the creatures of the earth: euen ſo the Parlements of France are Oakes with exalted heads, vnder whoſe branches the people are couered from the very ſtrongeſt violences, which conſtraineth them to yeeld obedience to their Prince.

How the Greeks & Romanes honored their Emperours and Captaines.

Plutarch in the life of *Coriolanus* writeth, that the ancient Greekes and Romanes honoured their Emperors and Captaines, with Crownes made of Oaken leaues, which alſo they beſtowed on a Burgeſſe and Cittizen, who had ſaued the life of another in a ranged battell: and this was giuen as a note of honor, becauſe this Tree was conſecrated to *Iupiter*, the fauer and defender of Cities, that is to ſay the conſeruation of men. Moreouer, the Oake (among all other Trees) is that which beareth the very faireſt fruit, and amongſt thoſe cultiue and domeſticall, the very ſtrongeſt and durable. Beſide, at the beginning, men made their bread of Acornes, and their drinke of hony. Alſo, to the ſaid Emperors and Captaines, being Victors, they gaue a ſufficient part of Beaſts and birds, and likewiſe the Miſſell-toe of the Oake, whereof they deuiſed to make Glew for the catching of them.

Acorns, mens bread, & their drinke hony.

Parlements protectors of the King, State and people.

Now it plainely appeareth, that Parlements are the true conſeruatours and protectors, not onely of the people, but alſo of the State and perſons of our moſt Sacred Kings, who ought to haue all ſubmiſſion and obedience rendred to them by their ſubiects. Whom likewiſe (as by an equall Ballance) they ſhelter and defend from vnreaſonable willes in the Prince; becauſe they make a moderate and equall harmony, by the Queene of all vertues Iuſtice.

Princes ought to be zealous defenders of their people.

By good and iuſt cauſe is it then, *That the Parlements of France are compared to Oakes*. But when Princes (by bad Councell) miſ-prize the authority of them, whereof they ought to be zealous defenders, as being exalted to the Royall dignitie, to rule and gouern their ſubiects by Iuſtice; they cut off the right hand from the left. If they refuſe the holy remonſtrances of their Parlements, vnder colour, that they are not to meddle with affaires of State, but onely with the act of Iuſtice, and lend a deafe eare, when they are aduertiſed of euill gouernment; it is an aſſured Prognoſticke fore-warning, of the intire decadence of the kingdome.

Princes are examples, good or bad, for their people.

Theſe great Oaks are neuer ſmitten with the lightning of the Princes contempt, but as ſoone followeth that of the people, who rather imitate the Princes example for the worſt, then for vertue, which neuer bringeth harme to any Kingdome. As hath beene obſerued by examples in the laſt troubles, when France being gouerned by Strangers, was euen at the point of totall ruine, if the King (whoſe minoritie was ſo long time abuſed) had not boldly vndertaken to ſteere the ſhippe.

Sæpe malum hoc nobis, ſi mens non læua fuiſſet,
De cælo tactas memini prædicere Quercus.

Now come we to the Peeres of France.

The firſt Inſtitutor of the Peeres of France.

In the third booke of Officers of the Crowne, and the ſecond Chapter, mention is made that King *Robert* the *Deuout* inſtituted the Peeres of France, in the yeere of Grace 120. the 24. yeare of his reigne. And the firſt cauſe iudged by thoſe ancient Peeres, was that of *Richard* Duke of Normandie, ſecond of the name, for the Caſtle of *Dreux* and the appurtenances, againſt *Eudes* Count of Chartres. It is likewiſe there ſaid, that a Peere of France was aſſigned by a Peere, aſſiſted with two Knights, and thereon reported in the following Chapter, the Decree giuen againſt *Ioane*, Counteſſe of Flanders, to the benefit of *Iohn de Nelle*; giuen at the Caſtle of

the Louure in Paris, by King *Lewes*, eight of the name, holding his Court adorned with Peeres, *Anno Dom*, 1224. We shall now relate here another remarkeable matter, giuen by King *Philip Augustus*, the reading whereof will giue vs to vnderstand, that the number of the Twelue Peeres was from thence assured, and the Ceremonies which were to be obserued for calling to Iustice a Peere of France, and here followeth the subiect of the said Order.

The number of the Peeres of France.

Henry le Large, or the liberall, Count Palatine of Champaigne and Brie, espoused Madame *Mary* of France, daughter to King *Lewes* the seuenth, and by her hee had two sonnes, and one daughter, *Mary* of Champaigne, wife to *Baldwine* Emperour of Constantinople, and Count of Flanders.

Henry Count Palatine of Champaigne.

The eldest sonne was *Henry*, who tooke to wife *Hermenzeta*, daughter to Henry Count of Namur, deceasing without issue. *Henry* seeing himselfe to be a widdower, went in the voyage to the Holy Land with King *Philip Augustus*, by whose fauour he espoused in second marriage, *Isabell*, Queene of Ieruſalem, sister to Baldwine fourth of the name, King of Cyprus and Ieruſalem; who in her first nuptialls had married *Geoffrey de Tholon*, from whom she was separated. In the second, she had to husband, *Conrade*, Marquesse of Montferratt, and in the third, *Henry* of Champaigne, of which marriage issued two daughters, the eldest whereof was Madame *Alix*, Queene of Cyprus; and the other was Madame *Philip*, Wife to *Eyrard le Brenne*. And of this marriage came *Thibault de Brenne*. The said *Henry* died at Acres, in the yeare M. C. X C V I I. as *Rigordus* writeth in the life of *Philip Augustus*. *Temporibus istis Henricus Comes Tracensis Rex Hierosolymitanus, apud Achon decessit, cui in Comitatu Trecensis successit Theobaldus Frater eius.*

Isabel, Qu. of Ieruſalem.

The second sonne to the Count of Champaigne *Henry le large*, was named *Thibault*, who had to Wife Madame *Blanche* of Nauarre, Sister vnto the King of Nauarre *Sancio* the *Strong*, eight and last of the name. And in this marriage was borne *Thibault*, sixt of the name, who in right of his Mother was King of Nauarre, and as his owne inheritance, Count Palatine of Champaigne and Brie.

Thibault, second sonne to Henry le Large Count of Champaigne.

Eyrard de Brenne pretended on behalfe of his Wife *Philip* of Cyprus, second daughter to King *Henry* of Cyprus, eldest sonne of *Le Large*; that the Countries of Champaigne and Brie appertained to him, and not to *Blanche* of Nauarre, Mother and Guardian in Wardship of *Thibault* the sixt: whom hee procured to be called before King *Phil p Augustus*, in his Court of Parliament furnished with Peeres, to be receiued in homage for the said Counties, whereof they were debauted by solemne Order (whereon grew the question) considering the generall custome of the great Fiefes of France. And here followeth the same Decree of the Court, quoted 23, as it was taken out of the Register.

Philip, second daughter of the K. of Cyprus.

The Order agreed on solemnely by the King and Peeres in Parlement.

PHilippus Dei Gracia Francorum Rex, &c. Nouerint Vniuersi præsentes pariter, & futuri; Quod cum dilecta, & fidelis nostra Blanca Comitissa Campaniæ citata esset per Ducem Burgundiæ, Matheum de Monte-Maurencij, & Wilelmum de Barris, vt in Curiam nostram veniret iuri paritura de querelis quas Erardus de Brena, & Philippa quæ dicitur vxor eius, contra eandem Comitissam, & eius filium proponebant, & super eo quod ipse Erardus, & eadem Philippa petebant a nobis, quod nos reciperemus eiusdem Erardi homagium de Comitatu Campaniæ, sicut Comes Henricus Nepos noster, quem ipsa Philippa patrem suum esse dicebat, inde saisitus fuerat. Tandem apud Melodunum in nostra presentia constituti prædicta Blanca Comitissa Campaniæ, & Theobaldus Filius eius ex una parte: & prædicti Erardus de Brena, & Philippa ex altera, requirentes super hoc sibi fieri iudiciam. Iudicatum est a Baronibus nostris, videlicet a Rhemensi Archiepiscopo, Willelmo Lingonensi, Willelmo Catalaunensi, Philippo Beluacensi, R. Nouiomensi Episcopis, & Odone Duce Burgundiæ Paribus Regni Nostri, & aliis multis scilicet willelmo Com. Pontiui, Roberto Comite Drocensi, R. Comite Britanniæ, Guidone Comite Sancti Pauli, Willelmo de

Ruppibus, Senescallo Andegaui, Willelmo Comite Iouiniaci, Ioanne Comite Belli-Montis, Roberto Comite de Alenconia, & etiam quibusdam Episcopis videlicet Antisiodori, Carnotensi, Syluanectensi, & Lexouiensi, nobis audientibus, & iudicium approbantibus. Quod hommagium Erardi de Brena, vel dicta Philippa, de Comitatu Campania nullatenus recipere debebamus, quamdiu Comitissa Blanca, & Theobaldus Filius eius vellent ius suum facere in Curia nostra, & persequi: & quod vsus, & consuetudo Franciæ talis est, quod ex uno aliquis saisitus est de Feudo per Dominum Feodi, Dominus Feodi non debet alium recipere in Hominem de eodem Feodo, quamdiu ille qui saisitus est de Feodo per Dominum Feodi, venit, & paratus sit ius facere in Curia Domini Feodi, & persequi. Et quia Comitem Theobaldum quondam Nepotem nostrum, Patrem istius Theobaldi, per assensum Baronum nostrorum, nullo contradicente, recipimus in hominem de Comitatu Campaniæ, & Briæ, sicut Pater eius Comes Henricus tenens, fuerat, & post decessum dicti Comitis Theobaldi, recipimus Blancam Comitissam de eodem Comitatu in fœminem nostram, sicut de Baillio, & præterea Theobaldum filium eius, saluo Baillio, & præterea Theobaldum filium eius, saluo Baillio Matris suæ, nullo contradicente, de iure non debemus dissaisire Blancam Comissam, vel Theobaldum filium eius de Comitatu Campaniæ, & Briæ, quamdiu parati essent ius facere in Curia nostra, & persequi. Et ipsi coram nobis, & alijs Baronibus nostris semper obtulit. Hoc autem Iudicium factum fuit, nihil amplius quæsierunt de prædicta Comitissa, & eius filio, & sic sine die recesserunt.

This Order giuen at *Melun*, is dated in the Moneth of Iuly, 1216. And this sentence is very remarkeable, that the Court representing the Kings most sacred person, rendreth a reason of the Iudge, which is likewise practised in the pronouncing and proclaiming of criminall Iudgements, where demonstration is giuen to the people for some reparation of forfeits, wherein the criminall are condemned. To shew, that the Kingdome is ruled by Iustice open to the whole world, and not enthralled vnder the yoake of a voluntary and absolute power, which hath no other language, but *I will haue it to be so*, tyrannicall words.

The Court presenteth the Kings Royall person.

Sic volo, sic iubeo, sit pro ratione voluntas.

The absurdity of tyrannicall power.

And this great Equity declareth it selfe in *Propositions of Error*, when the Court decreeth much rather to retract her Sentences and Iudgements, confessing freely that she hath erred; then to doe any iniustice.

It behoueth moreouer to obserue, that from the time of King *Philip Augustus*, *the number of the Peeres of France was firmely ordered to be Twelue.* This is iustified by the Historian of England, *Mathew Paris*, Monke of S. Albanes in England, who lued in the time of the King S. *Lewes*. This Author informeth vs, that about the affaires of the Holy Land, wherein the said King *Lewes* then was: Queene *Blanche* his Mother, at that time Regent of France, to deriue some commodities from the King of England, *Henry* the third; would needes render to him the Duchy of Normandy, which by decree of the said *Phillip Augustus*, and his Court furnished with Peeres, had beene confiscated from King *John without Land*, for causes whereof we shall speake hereafter.

At what time the number of the Peers was concluded on.

Against this restitution opposed themselues, the Princes of the Blood, the Peeres and Parlements of France, by these remarkeable Tracts. *Si velit Domina Blanchia hoc facere nunquam Regni Francorum Vniuersitas hoc concedet. Absit enim vt duodecim parium Iudicium, quo iuste abdicatur Rex Anglorum, vt priuatur Normannia, cassetur, & pro friuolo habeatur.* And it was sent to tell the King of England, on behalfe of the Princes and Pernage (that is to say Baronage) of France, with a dreadfull oath: *Quod antequam Rex Angliæ sperata reciperet, oporteret eum necessario per mille lancearum cuspides, & post earum fragmenta, per totidem gladios cruentandos transitum facere militarem.*

Opposition of France against restoring the Duchy of Normandie.

The King S. *Lewes*, conferring with the King of England *Henry* the third, who was come expressely to visit him at Paris, in the yeere 1254. *O vtinam ait Rex Francorum, Duodecim Pares Franciæ, & Baronagium mihi consentirent certe amici essemus insolubiles.* Mathew Paris.

Speeches at the two Kinge meeting.

The very greateſt Lords in the ſacred kingdome of France, are the 12. Peeres, whom *Mathew Paris*, vnder the yeere 1257. calleth *Magnates*. *Non rem* (ſaith this Engliſh Author) *à materia alienum, ſi nomina Francorum Nobilium, præcipuè ad quos negotia Regni ſpectant ardua, præſenti inſerimus paginæ.*

Peeres of France bound Eccleſiaſticall perſons.

Archiepiſcopus Rhemenſis, qui Regem Francorum Cœleſti conſecrat Chriſmate, quapropter Rex Francorum Regnum omnium cenſetur digniſſimus (Spaniſh Writers auouch this paſſage) *eſt omnium Franciæ Parium primus & excellentiſſimus Epiſcopus Noniomenſis, qui eſt Comes Palatinus. Epiſcopus Beluacenſis, qui eſt Comes Palatinus. Epiſcopus Catalaunenſis. Epiſcopus Lingonenſis, qui quamuis pauper ſit, dignus tamen habetur. Epiſcopus Laudunenſis, qui Dux eſt, & Comes, ratione Sancti Rhemigij, ad quem deuoluta ſuit illa præclara hæreditas.*

The Lay men Peeres of France.

Dux Normannia primus inter Laicos, & digniſſimus. Dux Aquitaniæ, Dux Burgundiæ, Comes Flandrenſis. Comes Campaniæ, & Comes Toloſæ, qui dicitur Sancti Ægidij. But this Order is changed, the Duke of Bourgongne being Deane of the Lay Peeres, and not he of Normandie, and the ſame of the Eccleſiaſticks.

The Chancerie is the chiefe Office in France.

The chiefe of the Parlements of France, and of all the Iuſtices, and Soueraigne Chambers in the Kingdome, is the Chancerie; which the Abbot of *Corbie Alard*, by good right calleth *Cancellarium Summum*. Already hath been ſaid ſufficient, concerning the Dignity of the Office, in the ſecond booke of the Officers of the Crowne, and the fourth Chapter. Onely we will adde in this place, that which is obſerued in the Court Regiſters, vnder the reigne of the great King S. *Lewis*, ninth of the name, concerning the Rights of the Chancery, and them belonging to the Chancellor.

The Seal of Parma much as the Fountaine, and Lyon.

Gifts and benefits belonging vnto the Chancellor.

The Chancellor taketh for himſelfe, his horſes and ſeruants on horſebacke, a Pariſian Sol daily for Oates and for all other things; but excepteth his Clerke and Seruant which ware in his Chamber at the Court, and feede there. Their wages were double at foure good feaſts of the yeere, and when the King had his priuate lodgings in the Countrey. Theſe Chancellors had Liueries alſo, as other Clerks of the Kings, and Liuerie of Candles, ſuch as were conuenient for his Chamber, and for his Notaries to write by. Sometimes the King gaue him a Palfrey (that is a Hackney or ambling beaſt) for his owne ſaddle & riding; a horſe for his Clerke, and a Sumpter horſe for the Regiſter. Of Letters which haue duely threeſcore Sols for the ſealing, the Chancellor hath tenne, and his portion of the common Chancerie, as the other Clerkes belonging to the King. And when this Chancellour lay in Abbeyes or other places, where he ſpent nothing for horſes; it was abated to him in his wages or allowance.

In the time of K. Philip de Valois.

In the Regiſter for Acts and Orders of Parliament, beginning *Anno* 1343. *Philip de Valois* then reigning, in the Order of *Guillaume de Quernes*, the one and twentieth day of May, 1344. is declared, that vpon refuſall made to the Biſhop of *Auranches* by the Chancellor, to ſeale him certaine Letters; the ſaid Biſhop cauſed them to be re-written, and ſealed with the Kings priuy Seale, but the ſaid Letters were declared to be of no worth.

The Kings are poore in Court for Calling in abſence of the great Seale.

In the Regiſter for Acts of Parliament, beginning *Anno* 1348. there are two Letters Patents of the ſaid King *Philip de Valois*, dated the fourth and ſixt of January, in the ſaid yeere 1348. whereby is declared, that becauſe the King had ſent his Chancellour in iourney about his affaires, hee appointed, that in abſence of the great Seale which he carried with him, they ſhould ſeale with the Seale *Chaſtelet de Paris*, and counter-ſealed with the Signet of Parlement. Yet to this effect, that the ſaid Seale and Signet ſhould be deliuered to M. *Peter de Hangeſt*, and *Foulques Mardoull*, Clerks Councellers of the ſaid Parlement, to whom he committed the truſt for thus doing. And yet notwithſtanding, from thoſe times then, there were Maiſters of Requeſts in the Kings houſhold, to whom at this preſent appertaineth the keeping of the Chancery Seale of the Pallace (neuertheleſſe diſcerned by the name of the leſſer Chancery, becauſe the greater is in the Court of the King, where the great Seale repreſenteth the image of his Maieſty, ſitting on his Throne of Iuſtice, and is kept by the Chancellour, or keeper of the Seales) from moneth to moneth following, according to the order of their reception.

The Chancellor ſworne on the day of his Enſtallment.

It is not any long time ſince, that the Chancellours of France being choſen; on the day of their enſtalling, tooke their Oath in the Court of Parliament at Paris, as is iuſtified (from time to time) in the Regiſters thereof. An Oath wholly anſwerable to that which (at this inſtant) the Chancellers and Keepers of the Seales doe take before the King. And the ancient Oath importeth, that they ſhall not take any garments, penſions or gifts of any other Prince, but onely of the King.

It remaineth now to ſhew, for the concluding of this chapter, to the honour and preheminence of France: that the famous Monarches thereof haue bin continual renowned, for rendring of Iuſtice in an vpright ballance, and according to Equity, without regard either to the weake or ſtrong.

Of vpright Iuſtice in the Kings of Frãce to ſtrãge Princes.

Strange and forraigne Princes haue ſought, and ſubmitted themſelues to the iudgement of their Parlements, euen in their affaires of greateſt importance. And from the time of the firſt Ligne of their Kings, forraigne Writers foretold an eternall continuance to that Monarchy, for Iuſtice to be there ſincerely rendred.

The Chronicle of *Laureſheim*, vnder the yeere eight hundred and three (followed by the Monke *Aimonius*, in the fourth booke of his hiſtory of France) reporteth that King *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*, holding his Parlement in May (which was the firſt of the yeare, as we haue already ſaid) there came thither from ſtrange Prouinces, two Brethren, Kings of *Vuiſſes*, who with franke and free good will, ſubmitted themſelues to the iudgement of the ſaid Parlement, to which of them the Kingdome ſhould belong. The elder of theſe two Brethren was named *Meligaſtus*, and the yonger *Celeadractus*.

A difference betweene two brethren for a Kingdome, adiudged by the Parlement of France.

Now, albeit the Cuſtome of the ſaid Kingdome, adiudged the Crowne to the eldeſt, according to the right of Primogeniture, allowed and practiſed by the Law of Nature, and of later memory, in the perſon of the laſt dead King *Liubus*, father commune to theſe two Contendants: yet notwithſtanding, in regard of the Subiects vniuerſall conſent of the Kingdome, who for the cowardiſe and want of gouernment in the elder, had giuen the Crowne to the yonger, for his valiancie and diſcreete carriage; by ſentence, the Kingdome was adiudged to him, and the eldeſt did him homage, with oath of allegiance in the ſaid Parlement. Obſerue here the words ſet downe in the ſaid Chronicle.

MEnſe Maio conuentus ibidem habitus eſt, in quo inter ceteras Barbarorum legationes quæ ſua ſponte venerunt, duo fratres Reges Vuiſſorum controuerſiam inter ſe de Regno habentes ad Regis præſentiam venerunt: quorum nomina ſunt Meligaſtus, *&* Celeadractus: *erant enim filij Regis Vuiſſorum* Liubi, *qui licet cum fratribus ſuis Regnum ſuum ſtatuſum teneret, tamen propterea quod natu maior eſſet, ad eum totius Regni ſumma pertinebat. Illo occiſo, commiſſo cum Orientalibus Obotritis prælio, Vuiſſi filium eius Meligaſtum, qui maior erat, Regem ſibi conſtituunt: Sed cum eius ſecundum ritum gentis commiſſum ſibi Regnum parum digne adminiſtraret, illo abiecto, iuniori fratri Regium honorem detulerunt, quam ob cauſam ambo ad Regis Imperatoriſque præſentiam venerunt. Quos cum audiſſet, ſtatuit vt iunior frater delatam ſibi a Populo ſuo poteſtatem haberet, &c.*

A difference betweene the Pope and Emperor referred to the Parlement of Frãce & there ended

Vnder the third Ligne, then reigning *Philip Auguſtus*, by good right called the Conqueror; Pope *Innocent* the third, and the Emperor *Otho*, fourth of the name, being in variance for the forme and tearmes of the Oath of fidelitie, which the ſaid Emperor ſhould make to the Pope; they referred it to the iudgement of King *Philip* in his Parlement furniſhed with Peeres, and here enſueth the ſubiect of their contention.

The 5. ſonnes of the Emperor *Barbaroſſa*

The Emperor *Fredericke*, ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, firſt of the name, left fiue ſonnes, *Henry* who was Emperor after him, and by the Popes fauour and furtherance (as we ſhall ſhew elſewhere) eſpouſed *Conſtance* a profeſſed Nunne, already well ſtept into yeeres, the onely daughter to *Roger* King of Naples and Sicilie, ſo that by her he had the ſaid Kingdome. *Fredericke* deceaſing in *Syria* (and *Otho*, Count of Bourgongne and Palatine of *Beſançon*; *Conrade*, Duke of *Suaba*; and *Philip*, who was King of the Romanes after his Brother.

This Emperor *Henry*, sixt of the name, the eldest sonne of *Barbarossa*, was a capitall enemy to the Church and Popes, who had aduanced him, as it is a common custome. So that dying in *Anno* 1198. some Princes of Germany elected in the Empire, *Philip*, brother to him deceased. Against whom Pope *Innocent* the third made opposition, he succeeding in the Papall seate, by the death of Pope *Celestine* the third, happening the sixt of the Ides of Ianuary, in *Anno* 1197.

The causes of the Popes opposition in this case.

The causes of this opposition in Pope *Innocent*, are specified by the Historiographer to King *Philip Augustus*, named *Rigordus*, vnder the said yeere, 1197. and set downe in these tearmes.

Eodem Anno Henricus Romanorum Imperator obyt qui eo tempore per tyrannidem suam Sciciliam sibi subiugauerat, & multos viros magnos, & nobiles ibidem peremerat, & contra Religionem Christianam, Archiepiscopos, & Episcopos trucidauerat: contra Ecclesiam Romanam, sicut & prædecessores sui, semper tyrannidem exercuerat. Qua de causa Innocentius Papa Tertius in promotione Philippi Fratris sui aduersarius fuit, & omnes fautores eius excommunicauit, & Othoni Filio Ducis Saxoniæ viriliter adhæsit, & Aquisgrani in Regem Germaniæ coronari fecit.

Otho crowned King of Germany by the Pope.

So that by the fauour of the said Pope *Innocent*, this *Otho*, fourth of the name, eldest sonne to *Henry* the proud, sirnamed the Lyon, Duke of Saxonie, & Bauaria, slaine by *Fredericke Barbarossa*, was crowned King of Germanie, in the Cittie of *Aix le Chapelle*.

But hee made some exception, concerning the forme and tearmes of the oath of fidelitie, which the said *Otho* should sweare to the Pope. And not being able to agree of themselues; both Parties submitted to the Iudgement of King *Philip Augustus*, and of his Court of Parliament furnished with Peeres. So that by Order giuen at *Melun* in Iuly 1204. the forme of the said Oath was prescribed and Registred in the Parliament Register at request of the said parties, and sent vnto *Otho*, to render it to the said Pope *Innocent*, who sent assurance and Certificate to the said Parliament, for registring it (being performed) in these words.

Exception against the oath to the Pope.

INnocentius Episcopus seruus seruorum Dei, Charissimo Filio nostro Philippo Francorum Regi Christianissimo, Salutem, & Apostolicam benedictionem. Absque dubitatione meueritis, quod secundum formam à vobis, & Curiæ Regni vestri Paribus præscriptam, habetur apud nos iusiurandum Charissimi Filij nostri Othonis Romanorum Regis Illustris auea Bulla munitum, nobis, & Ecclesiæ præstitum.

Ego Otho Romanorum Rex, & semper Augustus, tibi Domino meo Innocentio Papa, & Ecclesiæ Romanæ spondeo, polliceor, promitto, & iuro quod omnes possessiones, honores, & iura Romanæ Ecclesiæ, pro posse meo, bona fide protegam, & ipsam ad eas retinendas bona fide iuuabo. Quas autem nondum recuperauit adiutor ero ad recuperandum: & recuperatarum, secundum posse meum, ero sine fraude defensor: & quæcumque ad manus meas deuenient, sine difficultate restituere procurabo. Ad hanc autem pertinent tota terra quæ est de Radicofano, vsque ad Ceperanum; Exarchatus Rauennæ; Pentapolis; Marchia; Ducatus Spoletanus; terra Comitissæ Mathildis, Comitatus Bricenorij, cum alijs adiacentibus terris expressis in multis priuilegijs Imperatorum, à tempore Ludouici Pij Francorum, & Romanorum Imperatoris Christianissimi. *Has omnes pro posse meo restituam, & quietè dimittam, cum omne iurisdictione, districtu, & honore suo. Veruntamen cum ad recipiendam Coronam Imperij, vel pro necessitatibus Ecclesiæ Romanæ ab Apostolica Sede vocatus accessero, de mandato summi Pontificis ab illis terris præstationes accipiam. Præterea adiutor ero ad retinendum, & defendendum Ecclesiæ Romanæ* Regnum Siciliæ. *Fidelitatem Domino meo Innocentio Papæ, & successoribus tuis omnem obedientiam, & honorificentiam exhibeo, quam deuoti, & Catholici Imperatores consueuerunt Sedi Apostolicæ exhibere. Stabo etiam ad consilium, & arbitrium tuum de bonis consuetudinibus Populo Romano seruandis, & exhibendis, & de negotio Tusciæ, & Lombardiæ. Et si propter negotium meum Romanam Ecclesiam oportuerit incurrere guerram, subueniam ei sicut necessitati perfluauerit in expensis. Omnia verò prædicta tam iuramento, quam scripto firmabo, cum Imperij Coronam adeptus fuero. Actum Aquisgrani, Anno Incarnationis Dominicæ Millesimo Ducentesimo Quinto, mense Martio, Regni nostri Septimo.*

Bur

But this Emperour kept not his Oath, for the Emperour *Phillip* being slaine in the yeare 1208. by a Count Palatine, whom *Rigordus* calleth in the Germaine tongue *Landanga*, for these are his words. *Eodem anno quidam Comes Palatij, qui Germanica lingua Landanga vocabatur, ideſt, Comes Palatini, Philippum Romanorum Imperatorem interfecit. Quo mortuo Otho Filius Ducis Saxoniæ per niduſtriam, & auctoritatem Innocentij Papæ Imperium obtinere nitebatur.* The Historie of Germanie write, that he was murdered by *Otho* Palatine of *Vuitlispach*, to whom the said Emperour had affianced his daughter, and yet notwithstanding, married her to his competitor *Otho*) *Phillip* being then dead at *Babemberg*, *Otho* was crowned Emperour by the said Pope *Innocent* the third, in the Citie of Rome, in Anno 1210. And at the said Coronation, he renewed his former Oath, as *Rigordus* noteth in the same yeare. *Exegit Papa ab eo in ipsa Coronatione iusiurandum de patrimonio, & iure beati Petri indemniter ei, & Ecclesiæ Romanæ in pace dimittendo, & contra quoſtibet defendendo.*

The Emperor slain by Count *Landanga*.

Otho crowned Emperour in Rome by the Pope.

And forasmuch as *Phillip Augustus* impeached this Coronation, because hee was his mortall enemy, and fauoured the part of *Iohn without Land*, King of England, his Vncle by the Mothers side, and the Counts of Flanders, of *Bologne* and *Auuergne*, his rebellious Vassailes: Pope *Innocent* added to the Oath this clause. *Si militer & consilio tuo, & mandato parebo de pace, & concordia facienda intere me, & Regem Francorum.* Hereupon he gaue his Seale to the said Pope, by a publique instrument: but the very same day after his Crowning, he violated his faith so solemnely sworne, as *Rigordus* thus relateth. *Receptoque iureiurando, & instrumentis publicis ſuper hoc confectis, & Imperiali caractere confirmatis, eodem die quo Coronam ſuſcepit, contra iuramentum temere veniens ſignificauit Papæ ſe non poſſe ei dimittere caſtra, quæ ab Anteceſſoribus ſuis aliquib. temporibus fuerant poſſeſſa.* So that at his parting from Rome, he possessed himselfe of Castles and strong places, which were the patrimonie of S. *Peter*. As *Aquapendente*, *Radicosani*, S. *Quirice*, *Montefiascon*, and of all *Romania*. And pursuing on his fortune, in *Apouillia* he became Lord of all that, which *Fredericke*, Sonne to *Henry* the sixt Emperour had enioyed, and afterwards of the Cities and Townes, the Churches de-meanes and dependances.

Another addition to the Oath.

So he was excommunicated by the said Pope *Innocent* the third, who deliuered his Vassailes and Subiects in the Lands of the Empire, from the Oath which they had sworne to him. And consequently, of this Fulmination it followed, that the Lands-Graue of *Thuringe*, the Archbishops of *Maguntia* and *Treuers*, the Duke of *Austria*, the King of *Bohemia*, and many other Princes and great Lords of *Germanie* and *Italie*, as well of the Church, as Layicks, forsooke his seruice.

Otho excommunicated by the Pope.

Whereupon, in the yeare 1211. by the councell and power of King *Phillip Augustus* (to whom Pope *Innocent* the third, in imitation of his predecessours in the holy Seate had recourse) the Princes of *Germanie* elected for their King the said *Fredericke*, second of the name, sonne to *Henry* the sixt: who being aided with meanes, and the forces of France, went to Rome, where he was well receiued by the Pope. From thence he passed by Sea, and landed at *Geneway*, going ouer the Alpes, and made his entrance at *Constance*, where the Herbingers had before marked the lodgings for *Otho*: who was constrained to make his retreate to *Brissac*, and from thence he was expulsed. *Fredericke* (the same yeare) went so farre as to *Vaucouleurs*, to parley with *Augustus*, who sent (on his behalfe) his eldest Sonne *Lewes*, accompanied with great Lords of France, where a new alliance was sworne. And afterward, *Otho* lost both his honor and power, being vanquished by King *Phillip Augustus*, in the Battaile fought neere *Tournay* at *Bouuines*, Anno 1214. Returne we now to the Parlement of Paris, and Princes Strangers, no way Iusticiable to the Crowne of France; which yet voluntarily haue submitted their differences, to be censured by the iudgement thereof.

Fredericke, second of the name chosen King.

Otho ouercome in the Battaile at *Bouuines*.

William Rishanger, Monke in the Abbey of S. *Albane* in England, continuer of the Historie of *Mathew Paris*, obserueth vnder the yeare 1263. that the King of England, *Henry* the third, and the Barons of England, who made warre vpon him: *commited their whole difference and quarrell, to be iudged by the Parlement of France. Vt Pax reformaretur inter Regem Angliæ, & Barones ventum eſt ad iſtud, vt Rex & proceres*

ceres se submitterent Ordinationi Parlamenti Regis Franciæ (in the time of S. Lewes) *in præmissis prouisionibus Oxoniæ. Nec non pro deprædationibus, & damnis vtrobique illatis.*

Igitur in crastino S. Vincenty, congregato Ambianis populo pene innumerabili. Rex Franciæ Ludouicus eorum Episcopis, & Comitibus, aliisque Francorum proceribus solemniter dixit sententiam pro rege Angliæ, contra Barones, statuis Oxoniæ, prouisionibus, ordinationibus, ac obligationibus penitus annulatis. Hoc excepto, quod antique Charte Ioannis Regis Angliæ Vniuersitati concessæ, per illam sententiam in nullo intendebat penitus derogare. In this Parlement at *Amiens*, were present the King of England, *Henry* the third, Queene *Eleanor* his wife, *Boniface* Archbishop of Canterbury, *Peter*, Bishop of Hereford, and *John Maunsell*: and on the Barons of Englands side, a very great number of choice elected Lords, who (the same yeare) repassed backe into England, after the Parlement, as the same Monke speaketh. *Eo tempore redierunt à Francia, qui Parlamento Regis Franciæ inter fuerant, Rex videlicet Angliæ Henricus & Regina Eleonora, Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Bonifacius, Petrus Herefordensis, Ioannes Maunsel, &c.*

A number more might be here alleadged, of the like nature, concerning this distribution of Iustice, which renowned the Kings of the first Ligne, euen by the pennes of strange Writers. *Agathias*, the Greeke Authour, in his sixt Booke of the Gothes warres, deliuereth two diuers passages, in honour of the French, concerning Iustice and Equitie, the two maine props and Pillers assured of any Estate.

Where Iustice flourisheth in true Splendor, the Kingdome is most happy.

THe French are all Christians, and their Cities gouerned by Bishops, and Priests. Among all the Nations descended from Allemaigne; they follow and professe the true opinion. They obserue and solemnise dayes of Feasts, as we doe. Among all other People, they are adorned with good manners, very ciuile and courteous: and there is not any thing in them (in regard of vs) which maketh them strangers, but their garments, and Language. Smooth enough I. commend them infinitely, by reason of their vertues, and namely for that of Iustice; for they vse it equally to euery one. And therefore it is not to be wondred at, if they winne much, and make themselues mighty. Because in what place soeuer Iustice flourisheth among men; it is an infallible rule, and without all question to the contrary, that onely and principall Vertue, maketh the State and Monarchie to be most happy, firme and stable, and to remaine in longest continuance.

The same Author (as we haue formerly obserued) liued in the times of the Kings Sonnes and Successours to *Clouis*, the first Christian King, and saith afterward: *Very hardly can that Monarchie fall, or see it selfe brought into such calamitie; as is to be surmounted by her enemies. For the French being addicted to the Vertues of Iustice and Pietie, by a commendable manner and course of life: first, they vanquish and ouercome themselues, and next, all the neighbours about them.*

So the Monarchs of the sacred *Lillies* of France, excell all Kings and Princes on the Earth, for greatnesse and excellencie, euen as the Sunne doth all the Starres of heauen: their Iustice and Pietie so singuler, hath wonne them the ranke of precedency and honor, and their Throane of Iustice, is luminous and wholly shining with glory and magnificence. *Thronus Regis Lily est sicut Sol in conspectu Dei, & sicut Luna perfecta in æternum Dominatio eius.*

To them may aptly be appropriated that Prophecie of the diuine Wisedome. *Dilexisti iustitiam, & odisti iniquitatem, propterea vnxit te Deus, Deus tuus Oleo lætitiæ, præ consortibus tuis.* For, among all the Princes of Christendome, there is none, but onely the Monarch of the *Lillie*, that is Sacred with Oyle sent downe from Heauen, or with more Ceremonies. For the Kings of Spaine are not Sacred, but sworne onely, and acknowledged for heires to the Kingdome, by such meane actions, as merit not to be registred downe in writing. So the Sacred *Lillies* of France doe surpasse in greatnesse and excellencie, the glory and magnificence of the great King *Salomon*, and all the Princes on the earth.

CHAP

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Excellencie and Precedencie of the Kings and Kingdome of France; aboue all them of Christendome beside.

Primogenitum posui eum, Excelsum præ Regibus Terræ. Psal. 89. 28.
I will make him my first borne; higher then the Kings of the Earth.

How to iudge of the Honor of Kings Precedency.

ALthough to Iudge soundly the honor of Precedencie, betweene Kings, Princes, and great Lords, cannot be deriued as an essentiall cause, by Blazons of their Armes, which they may varrie, and paint according to their owne fancies, or the diuers occurrences of their Battailes and Conquests: yet notwithstanding, in regard that the vulgar sort make Trophees of them, and (according to worldly apparance) draw antiquitie of Nobilitie, by the matter of Escutchions; we will begin honestly, to shew briefely (leauing a taske so serious, to others of more able performance) with the Armes of our most Christian Kings, which are, *The Lillie floures of Gold, in a field Azure.*

We wil begin with the subiect of Armes, becaus such as are desirous to shew the greatnesse and excellency of the Catholique Kings of Spaine, and to make them march, not onely equall with the most Christian Kings, but imagine also, that they haue a Precedency aboue them; among other reasons, call in question, and maintaine, that this imaginarie Precedency, deriueth it selfe from their Armes of the Kingdome of *Ouiedo*, or of *Leon*, which they would gladly haue to be thought to be the first and chiefest Prouince of Spaine, conquered from the Moores by the Prince *Dom Pelagius*. In memory whereof, he and his Successors, Kings, haue carried to this day, *D'Argent au Lyon rampant de Sable*: And that the Armes of Spaine were miraculously brought from Heauen by Angels. Thus is written by *Iacobus Valdesius*, a Spaniard by Nation, in a Treatise which he made, concerning the dignity of the Kings and Kingdome of Spaine: And by one *Augustino Cranato*, a Romaine, in a Tract *Of the Precedencie of the Kings of Spaine*: which this named Author pretendeth to iustifie by Arguments, badly grounded, and reasons so vnedged and impertinent, as they doe not deserue any answere.

The principall Prouince in Spaine.

They haue imitated, and formed the miracle of their Armes, (pretended to be sent downe from Heauen) from the truth of the Historie of the King of France, *Clouis*, first of the name. For the most part of the Armes of the Prouinces of Spaine, doe answere to their names; which declareth nothing miraculous in them. *Leon* hath a Lyon; *Gallicia* a Cup, couered in forme of a Challice; *Castille* a Castell; *Granado* an Apple of *Granado*, *Pomo de Granado*, a Pomgranate, and so of others. Concerning them of Arragon, they came from the Kings of France. And *Dom Pelagius*, who conquered the Realme of *Ouiedo*, or *Leon*, could, nor cannot be qualified, the first King of Spaine, because he had deriued example from fighting with the Moores vsurpers and possessors thereof, by the faint-hartednesse of the *Vuisigothes* Kings) of *Dom Garcia Ximenes*, a French Prince, and Count of *Begorre*, first King of *Sobrarre*, or *Nauarre*, to whom the Armes appeared in heauen, which he should take, as markes of his Conquest.

Foure notes of strength and power.

Salomon obserueth in his Prouerbes, that there are foure things, seruing as Symboles of strength and power. *Tria sunt quæ bene gradiuntur, & quartum quod incedit viriliter*: The Lyon, the Cocke, the Ramme, and the King. *Leo fortissimus bestiarum ad nullius pauebit occursum. Gallus succinctus lumbos, Et Aries. Nec est Rex qui resistat ei.* The Cocke, mounted on his Spurres, chanteth victoriously, by preference aboue all the creatures of the earth; so say the Philosophers and Naturalists, God hauing giuen him such light and power: As we learne from the wise King of Edom,

Pro. 30. 30. 31

Iob 23.17. Edom, and mirrour of patience, the Patriarch *Iob*. *Quis dedit Gallo intelligentiam?*

Differences of honor in the Cock & Lyon

If then preferrence iudgeth it selfe, by Armes and Blazons of creatures without reason; the Cocke must march first, and not the Lyon. And if that is giuen to the Lyon; it must then be common to the most part of the Germaine Nations, and of the North; who beare it in their Armes. And the ancient Gaules (before them all) had it for their Ensigne, with the Ship, as we haue already related in the first Booke.

But yet (by your leaue) some Tracke of precedencie and honor (moreouer) may be fetcht from Armes charged, and diapred with Eagles, Lyons, Buls, Vnicornes, Harts, or Horses, &other creatures; which contrariwise we learn by *Iosephus*, the most learned Hebrew Historian, in the life of the King of Israel *Salomon*. That this Prince committed great offence towards God, by hauing imployed as vtensils of his sacred Temple, Buls to sustaine the brazen Sea of Expiations and Lauings, and of Lyons also, to serue as ornament to his royall Throane. *Deum suum proprium* (saith *Iosephus*, speaking of *Salomon*) *non solum illicitis vxoribus iugiter inhonorabat, sed etiam ante hæc peccauerat, & circa Legum custodiam iam deceptus fuerat, quando Bouum Æneorum similitudines fecit, quos Mari subiecit, & Leonum quos in suo Solio Regali decoris causa disposuit. Non enim hæc facere fas erat, dum optimum, & familiare paternæ gloriæ, & Virtutis habuisset exemplum, quod ei propter Dei pietatem fuerat relictum.* That *Salomon* offended all his dayes his owne God, *running after Idolatrie, the sinne of sins* (as Heresie is the name of sinne, wherewith God punisheth depraued soules) not onely by *medling and conioyning with strange wiues; but before that, hee had committed very great offences, preuaricating the Law of God, because he placed in the Temple, to support the Sea, Buls of brasse, and Lyons to vphold his Throane royall, they seruing as reliefe and ornament thereto. For* Salomon *should haue gouerned himselfe, by the module and example of King* Dauid *his father, the mirrour and glasse of a true Christian, fairely polished with glory and vertue, as also singuler pietie: who neuer taught him, to place in the Lords Temple, pictures and representations of Buls, Lyons, or other creatures.* So farre proceedeth *Iosephus*.

Iosephus describing the life of King *Salomon*.

Heresie is detested the cause & punishment of sinne.

Salomon far-ued greatly from the steps of his father *Dauid*.

God commanded *Moises* to place *Lillies* and *Pomegranets* in his Temple, but not Beasts. And from thence is it, that the Spanish writers before named, should haue drawne some tract of aduantage, in fauour of their Catholique King; and not from an vntameable Beast, the fiercest of all other creatures. In like manner, it is taken in the sacred Scriptures, for the Hieroglyphicke of cruelty and tyranny, as is said of *Lucifer: Leo rugiens, qui circuit quærens quem deuoret.* The most vniust creature of all other on the earth, in the deuiding of his prey, for hee will haue it alone by himselfe: to verifie the deuision of the Cormorant (whose nature is) *All on one side, and nothing on another.* He will neuer let loose his hold, and the wise Politician durst neuer trust him.

The Lyon more vniust then any other creature, for deuiding his prey.

——— *Quia me vestigia terrent*
Omnia te aduersum spectantia, nulla retorsum.

Those Spanish Historians, might (I say) much more properly, haue deriued the excellencie of their Catholique Kings, from the Pomegranate (*Entre en pointe dans leurs Armes*) which in the holy Scripture, is the noate and Symbole of Loue, and of royaltie: whereof the Rabbines sing wonders, explicating this verse of the 45. Psalme. *Instimbrys aureis circumamicta varietatibus*: It beginning, *Eructauit cor meum verbum bonum*.

Those Spaniards attribute the marke of Loue and Royaltie. Psal. 45.16.

They say, that the Mantle Royall of the Kings of Israel and Iuda, was of Cloath of Gold, damasked with Apples of Granada; Apples which likewise were imitated by order and Symmetrie, beneath the Ornament of the Iewes high Priest. This fruite is the Symbole of Royaltie, because it weareth a Crowne on the top.

The Pomegranate carrieth a Crowne.

And of Loue, because that among the same Hebrewes and Ægyptians; Loue was crowned, to shew the force and perfection thereof. Because the passion of Loue is so

The passion of Loue is aboue all other.

so mighty and powerfull, that it tameth and ouer-maistreth all other in men: And Loue being so contenting in it selfe, deserueth to be truely crowned, and obserued by the same noate of the Pomegranate.

To helpe the bitternes of the Pomegranate tree.

The Naturalists doe hold, that to take away the bitternesse of the Pomegranate tree; it behoueth to cut the barke, and fixe therein a splinter or slice of the Pine tree: which, by a soueraigne and naturall power, sweeteneth the Pomegranate tree, and cleareth it from bitternesse and sharpenesse.

Among the Ægyptians, the Pine tree was the Hieroglyphicke of death: because this tree being but once cut, lopt or plashed, it neuer buddeth or sprouteth againe, it is of such an exceeding cold nature. So saith *Plinie*. And therefore dead bodies among the Ægyptians, Greeks and Romans, were crowned with Pine tree branches, when they carry them to the graue. And the man that died without issue, was figured by this barren and vnfruitfull tree.

At Picea emittat nullos quod stirpe stolones,
Illius est iudex qui sine prole perit.

Saith *Alciat* in his Emblmes.

We could adde to the nature of the Pomegranate, a thousand and a thousand rarities: the search whereof we leaue to the Spaniards, because it concerneth them. For we will come to our Lillie, the ornament of the Armes, belonging to our Kings and Monarches, the most renowned in the world, and Precedencie adiudged to them by Blazon of Armes. Nouices in that Noble Science, doe well know, that *Argent* and *Sable* (whereof the Armes of *Leon* consisteth) haue euermore bin held, for the most abiect mettall and couler that are in Armes.

Concerning the Armes of Leon.

The Pomegranate, as we haue already said, is the Symbole of Royaltie; And the Lillie, the Floure of Floures, is of the Diuinitie, of whitenesse and puritie; Of a Loue most compleate in all perfection, Charitie and Benediction. And this was the reason, why God commanded, that this Floure chosen and elected among all Floures, should namely be represented in his holy Temple, as it is written in *Exod.* 25.37.

The Lillie is the Symbole of Benediction, because by that which we learne from the Hebrewes, there are two kindes of Benedictions or blessings. So say the Rabbines, in the first Booke of the *Talmud*, at the Chapter of them entitled *Massechot Berachor*, that is to say, *Of Prayers and Benedictions*. The one of them was performed by the high Priest, and that was the most excellent, and the perfection of Benedictions. The other, euery Father of a Family exercised in particuler, two seuerall times in the day at the least, namely, at Euening, and in the Morning: and this was called the common Benediction, which was performed in this order. The Father of the Family stood obliged, twise in the day (at the least) to say by hart and audibly, these words taken out of *Deuteronomie: Heare O Israel, the Lord our God is God only*. In vttering which words, he lifted his head vp towards heauen, then he bowed it downe to the earth, and afterward turned it to the right hand, and then to the left, in forme of a Crosse.

Two kindes of Benedictios

Deut. 6.4.

But that of the high Priest was done otherwise. The Sacrifices being ended, he turned himselfe to the people, and hiding his face with the Palme of both his hands, and swing somewhat backeward; in proffering the Benediction, he spake these words, as they are written in *Numbers* 6.24. *The Lord blesse thee, and keepe thee*. As he vttered the word *Adonay, The Lord*; he ordered the three great fingers of his right hand, after the fashion of a *Floure de Luce*, so say the *Rabbines*, and so shewed it to the people. This was the Symbole of the Sacred Mysterie of the Trinitie, noated in the first Chapter & the first Verse of *Genesis*. This Benediction he performed (say they) according to that which is written of the Worlds Creation by the Prophet *Esay*. *Quis mensus est pugillo Aquas, & Cœlos palmo ponderauit? quis appendit Tribus Digitis molem terræ? Esa.* 14.10.

In what manner the Benediction was performed by the high Priest.

It is generally knowne, that the Crosse is applicated to Benedictions, because it is the Symbole of our Redemption; and therefore it is exalted on all Churches of Christen-

The Crosse exalted on all Churches of Christendome

Christendome. But this is a matter very remarkeable, that from the time of the Apostles, all Crosses finished in *Floures de Luces*. As it is obserued by *Hieronimus Osorius*, Bishop of *Sylues* in the *Algaraes*, in his Historie of *Portugall*, discoursing on the Crosse of the Apostle S. *Thomas*, martyred in East India, in the Kingdome of *Narsinga*, and in the Citie of *Malipur*, aunciently called *Calamina*, at this present S. *Thomas*, after that the *Portugales* had there found the body of the said holy Apostle of the *Indians*; the Author setteth downe these words. *About the yeare* 1548. *there was found on the hill of Malipur, a Crosse cut in Stone, on the top whereof was the figure of a Pigeon, the Baze being planted on a tuft of Hearbes, which spread abroad in length and largenesse. The top, the Baze, and the Armes, had the ends cut in fashion of Floures de Luces.* As much is written by *P. Gouean* the Portuguize, an Hermet of S. *Augustines* Order, in his Historie of the Indiaes. *S. Thomas* (saith he) *was slaine, & transpierced with a Launce, as he made his Prayer before a Crosse, the forme whereof he had engrauen in a Stone, and figured like to the Crosse, which the Bretheren D' Auis vsed to weare.* We shall shew you that Crosse in the Armes of Portugall. So though at this day it be not so, the Crosse finishing in *Floures de Luces*; yet not in France onely, but thorow all parts and corners of the earth, where the Faith of Iesus Christ had bin planted, this fashion of the Crosse was in vse, and practised from the yeare threescore and fifteene, when the said S. *Thomas* so dyed by Martyrdome.

Loue full of perfect charity

The Lillie is the Symbole of such a Loue, as is altogether filled with perfect charitie. *Salomon* was the most wise, learned, rich, and potent, of all the Kings that had bin before him, or euer shall be. *Makeda* (so is shee called in the Relations of the great *Negus* of *Aethiopia*, to the King *Dom Emanuell* of *Portugall*, reported by *Damianus a Goes*, in his Æthiopian Historie: *Iosephus* and the Rabbines name her *Nicaula*, in his Iewish Antiquities) Queene of the higher and lower *Æthiopia*, of Saba, the East *Indians* and part of *Ægypt*, came expressly from Countries so farre remote, to heare the wisedome of the said *Salomon*. She was rauished with admiration, seeing his Prudence so admirable, the magnificence of his Court, Pallace and proud buildings, as also his sumptuous treasures. But all the glory and magnificence of this great King, was nothing, in comparison of the Lillies beautie. *Considerate Lilia agri quo modo crescunt, non laborant, neque nent; Dico autem vobis, quoniam nec Salomon, in omni gloria sua, coopertus est sicut vnum existis:* So speaketh the same Wisedome. Affirming the Lillie to be more excellent, and to surpasse in glory and magnificence, that great King *Salomon*.

The Queene of Saba that came to see King *Salomon*.

Mat. 6. 26. 29

The Lillie, an ornament Royall, and the principall flouret in the Crowne of the said *Salomon*, a King, who, beside that which his Father King *Dauid* had left him, conquered by him from the King of the Ammonites, *Ammon*, who put him to death, and raced his capitall Citie *Rabbath* for hauing violated the Law of Nations, on the persons of his Ambassadours, as it is in the second Booke of the *Kings*. His Crowne weighed a Talent of Gold (which amounteth to sixe hundred Crownes) garnished with precious Stones, and namely a Sardonixe, of inestimable value; so saith Iosephus. Beside this Crowne, I say, King *Salomon* foreseeing a farre off, as perniciously enstructed by that wisedome, which he had desired of God at the beginning of his Reigne: caused another to be made of admirable workemanship. To wit, a Garland of pure Gold, semed with *Lillie Floures*, enterlaced with a circle of Thornes, naturally growing in the Countrie of *India*, hauing this deuise enamelled round about the circle of the said Garland: *Victoria Amoris*; *The Triumph and Victorie of Loue*. *Makeda* hauing seene the Kings Cabinet, garnished with so many singuler rarities, and among them this Crowne, with the fashion and deuise thereof, she desired him to acquaint her with the interpretation.

2 Reg. 12. 30

The answere of king *Salomon* to the Queen of *Saba*

Salomon made her answere, that among all the Floures, whereof God had given expresse command to the great Law-maker *Moyses*, to adorne and enrich the Vessels of his Temple withall: he had made choice of the *Lillie*, a Floure which ordenarily receiueth his springing and growth among Tornes, as delighting to dwell with Thornes, and so much the rather, because the more it is pricked with Thornes, the finer I of this admirable Floure is the more sweete and pleasing. And that by the Floure, was denoated or signified a *Sacred Virgin, the Lillie of the Vallies*, who [illegible]

issue of his seede, that should produce a childe without blemish, the King of Kings, and Lord of Lords, who should take delight to repose himselfe, and be nourished among the *Lillie Floures*. That this great King should loue his people with a loue so feruent, and a fire of Charitie, surpassing that of the most violent loues: whereby he should expose himselfe (and of his owne free will) to death, to giue his people eternall life. And that on the day of his death and Passion, instead of a Crowne of Gold, his head should be crowned with sharpe pricking Thornes. In which manner, triumphing ouer death; he should haue against him a most famous victorie, noated by that deuise, *Victoria Amoris*, *The Victorie of Loue*.

Purity & chastitie denoated by the Lillie.

The *Lillie* is the Symbole of Puritie and Chastitie, and in the holy Scripture, the blessed Virgin is represented by the Lillie. So are we enstructed by that great light of the Church, S. *Hierome*, in his Epistle *Ad Rusticum Monachum*: And in them which he wrote *Ad Demetriadem*, & *ad Eustochium*. According to the Naturalists, the Lillie being of a most cold qualitie, hindereth conception, as it is obserued by *Rabbi Aben-Ezra*, vpon the thirtieth Chapter of *Genesis*, expounding that passage of the Mandrakes, found in the Field by yong *Ruben*, and gaue them to Mother *Rachell*, the figure of the blessed Virgin. *The Lillie odoriferous of the Vallies*, and wherewith the whole world hath bin embalmed. *Mandragoræ dederunt odorem suum*. So be reth the *Ierusalem Thargum*, explicating this passage in the seaueneth of the *Cantacles*, by that of the first, where the holy Ghost, speaking of the fruite of the Virgin Mother, saith of him: *Dilectus meus descendat in hortum suum, ad aquulas Aromatum, vt pascatur in hortis, & Lilia colligat*. And in holy Scripture, the mirrour of Chastitie *Susanna*, is defined by the name of *Susan*, which signifieth the *Lillie Floure*: as the chiefe Citie of the *Persians* bare that name for excellencie. Euen so, the *Lillie* excelled the glory and magnificence of the great King *Salomon*.

The figure of the Floure de Luce.

The Lillie Floure, or Floure de Luce (so speaketh *Nicolaus Agidius*, in the admirable life of the King S. *Lowes*) hath three Leaues or Flourets; the greatest in the midst, signifieth the Catholique Faith, firmely kept and defended by the Kings and Kingdome of France: since such time as King *Clouis*, first of the name, made profession therof, and the French, by his example. The two other Flourets, standing lower to represent (saith he) Nobilitie and Iustice, two bodies of the State, euermore prepared to maintaine the Faith Catholique.

We may say moreouer, that our Lord gaue himselfe the name of a Lillie, in the Song of Songs. *Ego flos campi, & Lilium conuallium*. S. *Bernard* expounding this passage, in his 72. Sermon vpon the *Canticles*, speaketh to good purpose, saying, *God hath euermore had especiall care particularly of the Monarchy of the Lillie, to loue, protect and defend it.*

In the second of the same *Canticles*, verse 16. the holy Ghost saith. *Dilectus meus mihi, & ego illi, qui pascitur inter Lilia, donec aspiret dies; & inclinentur vmbræ*. Some haue appropriated this to the Noble Kings of France, whose reigne shall endure to the worlds end, because thus speaketh S. *Bernard* in his 71. Sermon. *Si plenitudo boni totum in Christum est, Liliorum*. The Kings of France are they that haue endowed, enriched and defended the Church in all plenitude, aboue all other Christian Princes: and this is the reason, why they are stiled *Most-Christian*.

Three reasons why Christ is compared to the Lillie, and no Floure else.

There are three reasons, why the Scripture compareth our Lord to the Lillie, rather then any other Floure; as the Gilliflowre, the Rose and such like. It is, because as our vnderstanding is guided, and led by the hand (as it were) to the knowledge of the Diuinitie by that of naturall things: So in like manner, by this Floure the Lillie, we are leuated to the contemplation of the diuine Essence. The Leafe the midst, more highly exalted then the other, doth represent the height of Gods greatnesse, because, as *Plinie* speaketh in his Naturall Historie. *The Lillie among all herbes, mounteth higher by three cubites. Nullis florum excelsitas maior, interdum tricubitum*: taken so our Lord, as it is said in the *Apocalips*, *Is the onely King of Kings, and Lord of Lords, who hath all power in Heauen and on Earth. He sitteth on the right hand of God, in exalted Maiestie, aboue all Principalities*, saith the Apostle.

By the *Lillie*, the humility of Christ is designed: *Quod languido semper colle, & non sufficiente, capitis oneri*, saith the same *Plinie*.

And by the good smell or sauour of the *Lillie*, are noated the effects of his Godhead, he hauing the power (alone of himselfe) to ouerthrow and conquer death, and to expell the darke shades of sinne, to illuminate vs with the Sunne of Grace and righteousnesse. *Lilium est lactei floris herba* (so *Isidore* telleth vs) *cuius candor, & ardor admirabiles sunt.* There is not any thing more soueraigne for burnings, and to consolidate the skarres of old vlcers, then Onyons and the Lillie roote well boyled, and applied with the Oyle of Roses, saith *Dioscorides*, *Auicenne*, and other Doctors in Physicke. Also, that it hath wonderfull effects, for incision of the Nerues; to asswage the swelling of the spleene; to ripen Impostumes; to resolue tumours; and to heale the biting of venemous beasts, for they shunne the very smell of the Lillie. This was diligently obserued by the *Rabbines*, vpon the tenth Chapter of *Iudiths* Historie, where it is said: That to goe fight against venemous Beasts, which would haue deuoured the Iewes of Bethulia (that is to say, *Holophernes* and the *Assyrians*, who had besieged it) *She adorned her head with sweet smelling Lillies. Assumsit ornamenta Liliorum plena, ornamenta in modum Liliorum facta:* So speakes the Chaldean Paraphrase, and the common of Saint *Hierome*; *Assumpsit que dextra sua, & Lilia, & in aures, & annulos, & omnibus ornamentis suis ornauit se.*

Soueraigne vertues of the Lillie.

Iosephus de Acosta, in his Naturall Historie of the *Indiaes*, reporteth; that the new world hath her common plaines and gounds, flourishing with millions of faire shrubbes, and diuers Floures of most exquisite beautie, smelling excellently. But aboue them all appeareth *The Lillie Floure*, hauing such a sweete and pleasing sauour, as it rauisheth (with admiration) all such as come neere it. And that the Vice-Roy *Dom Francisco de Toledo*, sent some of those Lillies (as a rare and exquisite present) to the King of *Spaine*, *Dom Philip* the second, to shew, that this Floure had no equall in the world.

The Lillies of India.

The bottome of this rare Floure, is Yellow, as our view of it testifieth. And S. *Isidore* saith. *Lilium est lactei floris herba cuius dum candor, & odor in foliis est; Aurei tamen species intus effulget.* And as the Sunne out-shineth all the Starres: euen so doth Gold all other mettals, hauing in it an infinite number of vertues, and medicinable properties.

Water is the best Element,
And Gold, like the Fire resplendent,
Shineth aboue all other Cheuisance.

The Golden Lillies or Floures de Luces of France.

Saith *Pindarus* very learnedly. And that is a reason, why in the Armes and Banners of France, the *Floures de Luces* are of Gold: to enquire and acknowledge, the Excellencie and Precedencie of the Monarchs of the Lillie, aboue all the Kings and Princes of Christendome.

The Armes of our Sauiour compared with them of France.

And for the same reason, the Field of the same Armes, is rather *Azure*, which is the true colour of Heauen, when it is calme and cleare; then *Guelles*, *Sable* or *Symple*. For like as our Redeemer, who is the King of Kings, and Lord of Lords, hath for Armes in the sacred Scripture, and in the *Apocalips*, the Heauens shining with *Azure*, and the true *Blew Celeste*, thickly stored with Starres, twinkling and respledishing like Gold, nailed or fixed in Cloudes of Diamonds: Euen so the most Christian Kings of France, for the glory of Iesus Christ, *Portent l'Escud Azur à trois Fleurs de Lys d'Or. Scuto Francorum Regum color similis sereno Cœlo conuenienter datus est, quia sicut Cœlum situatum est in loco eminentiori, atque inter omnia corporalia altius eleuatum est: Sic Rex Christianissimus inter omnia Reges, & Principes Christiane Religionis, dignitate potentia, Nobilitate, & diuitijs est sublimior, atque mirabilior.*

Like as (saith the Diuine *Vinaldus*, an Italian Doctour, in his Royall worke) *Heauen is seated in the highest place of the world, exalted aboue all corporall things; Euen so the most Christian King, is the most sublime, the most excellent, & admirable, of all Kings and Princes in nobility and riches.* And this is the cause why he beareth *l'Escu d'Azur*

trois Fleurs de Lys d'Or. According as the Saphir is spred with points of Gold: euen so is the Stone, which beareth name thereof for excellencie. *Saphyrus aureis collucet punctis*, as *Plinie* hath obserued.

The comparation of the Saphyre Stone.

Moreouer, this celestiall colour, which is of the Saphyre (and which is called the holy Stone) like vnto Heauen, when it is calme and cleare; agreeth better with the Armes and Escutcheon of the most Christian Kings, then any other. Because, like as the Saphyre is more medicinable, and full of vertuous properties naturally, then all other precious Stones whatsoeuer (and in the holy Scripture, it is the Symbole of eternall Glory, like vnto the Seate of God. *Quasi opus lapidis Saphirini, & quasi Cælum cum serenum est:* as it is in *Exod.*24.10. and in *Ezek.*10.1.) Euen so the most Christian Kings, are full of excellencie and glory, aboue all Kings and Princes of Christendome. For they haue succeeded one another, persisting in the Catholique Faith, euer since the great King *Clouis*, euen to this instant, by a eternitie, race and long continuance, of more then twelue hundred yeeres inclely, not hauing any Kingdome in Christendome, that can equall and compare with the long lasting of the Monarchie of the sacred Lillie of France. So hath the excellencie of the Lillie, exceeded and surpassed the glory and magnificence of the great King *Salomon*.

The long continuance of the Kingdome of France.

Thronus Regis Lily sicut Sol in conspectu Dei, & sicut Luna perfecta in æternum Dominatione eius. The Throane of the sacred King of the Lillie, is wholly luminous and shining in excellencie and glory; like to the Sunne, and the Moone when she is in her full among the Stars, and that Monarchie shall eternally continue and endure.

Wilde Beasts flun the smell of the Lillie.

Eagles, Lyons, Leopards, Serpents, and other Beasts, naturally fierce, doe fle and shunne the sauour of the Lillie. *Concidet Dominus inimicos eius, & fugientes eum in fugam conuertet.* By extraordinary meanes, hee will serue himselfe with an Infant King, and a yong Shepheard *Dauid*, to deliuer the most noble Kingdome of Christendome, from the gripes and menaces of Gyants; who had vndoubted hope, to become maisters thereof, and to haue it vnder their controule.

An allusion to the future growth and prosperice of the Lillie

This goodly odoriferous Lillie of France, shall neuer wither, and his stemme shall grow greene to infinite ages. *Folium eius non defluet. Erit tanquam lignum quod plantatur super aquas, quod ad humorem mittit radices suas: non timebit cum venerit æstus. Erit folium eius viride; on tempore siccitatis non erit sollicitum, nec aliquando desinet producere fructus:* Prophesies of the Royall Psalmist *Dauid*, and of *Ieremie*.

The application of Prophecies to the Lillie of France.

Germinauit Lilium (before God in future times, and instantly, because his promises are altogether infallible) *radices eius eruperunt vt Libani, quasi Oliua Gloria eius, & odor eius vt Libani*, saith the Prophet *Osea* 5.7. All the Prophecies before alleadged may adapt, and morally appropriate themselues, yea, litterally, and more purposely to the sacred Monarches of the *Lillie*, then to any other Prince of Christendome: because in them cannot be demonstrated, any such subsistance and continuance of their State, as can compare or equall it selfe with that of the *French*. Because alliance or linking in kinred with the Lillie, is honor, ornament, renowne, and a very rarest splendour, that Princes here on earth can wish for, wherewith to diaper their Armes.

The Authors absolute determination, to answer the cauils of wrong opposers.

Whatsoeuer we haue said hitherto in this second Booke, by discourse (at aduenture) perhaps lasting with too long a breath; hath bin expressly set downe, and with an aduised purpose, to answere those Doctours, who to tarnish the lustre and glory of the Kingdome of the *Lillie*, by a fantasticke and imaginarie Precedencie: would preferre the Kings Catholique, and *Spaine*, before the most Christian, and Kingdome of *France*, and paragon Madrill with Paris. Like as the Neate-Heard (*Virgill*: by a depraued kinde of sence) beleeued *Mantua* to be as great as *Rome*. Or there is so much difference betweene *Paris*, and the very greatest Cities of *Spaine*; as b twee e day and night. I may safely speake it, as hauing seene *Spaine* in ers times. Part is an abridgement of the World, and of it may be said, as somewhile it was of *Rome*.

Verum hæc inter alios tantum caput extulit Vrbes
Quantum lenta solent inter Viburna Cupressi.
Sic Canibus Catulos similes, sic Matribus Hædos
Noram, sic paruis compouere magna solebam.

The *Gaules* did heretofore people the greater part of *Spaine*, the markes whereof remaine yet to this day, in the ancient names of *Portugall*, *Gallæcia* and *Celtiberia*; as we haue already said at the beginning of this Booke.

The *Gothes*, *Ostrogothes* of *Italie*, and the *Vuisigothes* of *Spaine*, are obserued by Historians, to be more then two hundred yeares after the *French*; of whom *Pharamond* was not the first King, as (thorow extreame and grosse ignorance) it is set downe in writing by *Augustino Cranato*. With whom hee appointeth *Athanaricus*, to be the first King of *Spaine*, and that there hee tooke place, before *Pharamond* was King. Hee would haue sung naturally in another noate, if he had read the Historie of *Spaine*, composed by *Dom Roderigo Ximenes*, Archbishop of *Toledo*. and the Chronicler *Idaccus*, who conuince the errours of the new Spanish Historians.

The first appearing of the Scandinauian Ostrogothes.

Hee would then haue learnd, that the *Ostrogothe* people of *Scandinauia*, appeared not till the yeare of Grace three hundred fourescore and three, in which yeare, they elected for their chiefe Commander, *Vinitharius*. And the *Vuisigothes*, their *Fritigernus*, and after him *Athanaricus*, who reigned but one yeare; for this man dyed at Constantinople, in the Court of the Emperour *Theodosius*. Hee had for his Successour *Alaricus*, first of the name, and the first that had title of King of the *Vuisigothes*, which was in the yeare three hundred fourescore and eighteene.

Succession of the first Vuisigoths Kings.

Hee would haue learnd, that the said *Alaricus* dyed in Italie, the yeare foure hundred and thirteene; and that he had for Successour *Athaulphus*, slaine in the yeare foure hundred and fifteene, at *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, next whom succeeded *Sigericus*, who reigned but one yeare, being massacred by his owne people, as his predecessour was. After the said *Sigericus* succeeded *Vallia*, to whom the Emperour *Honorius* gaue *Aquitaine*, one of the Prouinces of the *Gaules*; which extended it selfe from the River of *Loire*, so farre as to the *Pyrenian* Mountaines.

Hee would haue learnd also of *Paulus Orosius*, a Spaniard, that this donation was performed the yeare of Grace, foure hundred and eighteene; and that this Prouince giuen by the Emperour, was then vsurped by the *Alains*, *Vandales*, & Sueues, driuen thither by the *Iren h*, who made them to dislodge, without sound of Trumpet, and to flit from the Gaules called *Belgicke* and *Celticke*. And that the *Vuisigothes*, as one naile driueth another, chased the *Vandales* and their associates, out of the said Aquitaine, from whence they scudded ouer the mountaines, and possessed themselues of *Spaine*, but very long time after. And that the *Vuisigothes*, vnder conduct of their King *Vallia*, conquered *Aquitaine*, Anno foure hundred and nineteene. And that the same King beganne not his courses in *Spaine*, but in the yeare of Grace foure hundred twentie foure (according to the Chronicle of *Idaccus*) where hee made a great progresse in the yeare foure hundred thirtie two.

King *Vallia* conquered Aquitaine.

The bloudy Battaile of *Orleance* lost by *Attila*.

He had for succour *Theodoricke* (not he of the Ostrogothes of Italie, who bare the same name) who conquered a great part. This man dyed in the furious and bloody battaile lost for *Attila*, on the plaines and fields of *Sologne*, and his Son *Thorismond* had his succession and hauing reigned but three yeares, he had for his successor *Theodoricke*, second of the name, his brother. After whom succeeded *Eoricus*, Father of *Alaricus* the second, put to death by *Clouis* King of France, in a foughten Battaile, who had the honour and profit thereof, by the conquest of Aquitaine and Tolose the seate Royall of the said Vuisigoths Kings.

So that *Amalaricus* was constrained to shift for himselfe in Spaine, despoyled of that which his Predecessours had held in France, and there hee whom established

stablished his abiding. Thus we may iudge of the learning and expertnesse of Doctor *Cranato*, in the Historie of Spaine, which hee will haue to be the first King in painting, *Ataiaricus* (he would haue said *Athanaricus*) who neuer saw Italie or Spaine.

To deriue more aduantage in fauour of Spaine, by the Armes of *Leon*: wee haue shewne, that in this point of Nobilitie, the Precedencie it due to the sacred Lillie of France, which excelled the glory and magnificence of great King *Salomon*, and consequently, that of all Kings and Princes on earth.

Cranato draweth one point of his pretended Precedencie, because *Ptolomie* preferreth Spaine before France. But if his argument may take place, the Precedencie appertaineth to the Isle of *Albion*, that is Great Brittaine, which the same *Ptolomie* setteth downe, and placeth before Spaine.

Ptolomies deuision of Europe.

That excellent Ægyptian Geographer, who liued vnder the Empire of *Adrian* and *Traian*, hath deuided Europe into sixe tables. The first whereof is that of *Albion*, seconded by that of *Spaine*, followed by that of *Gaule*, of *Alemaigne*, of *Rhetia* that is the Leagued *Grisons*) of *Vindelicia*, that is the Countrey of the *Switzers*, of *Sardignia*, *Sicilie*, *Sarmatia*, *Dacia*, *Misia* and *Greece*.

The order of the new Geographers.

At this day, the moderne and new Geographers begin the discourse, and their tables of Geographie, not onely with England, Scotland and Ireland; but also with *Groenland*, the last Isle discouered vnder the North. Shall it therefore be well argued, to deriue some Precedencie from that desert and ill peopled Island, against that of Great *Bretaigne*?

Cranato for a Romaine, hath shewne, that he was most ignorant in the Romaine Historie: not knowing, that England and Scotland were subiected to and with the Gaules, vnder the Romaine Emperours. If he had read the Notice of the West Empire, he would then haue learned; that the Empire of the West was deuided into three Gouernements, which were called the *Prætories*: All that of then Gaules, of Italie, and of the Citie of Rome.

Deuision of the West Empire.

Gouernement of the Gaules Prætorie.

That vnder the Gouernment of the Illustrious *Præfect* of the Gauls Prætorie, were comprehended nine and twentie Prouinces: namely, seauenteene in the Gaules; seuen in Spaine; and fiue in Great Bretaigne.

Sub dispositione Viri Illustris Præfecti Prætorio Galliarum, erant Dioceses infra scriptæ.

Galliarum Prouinciæ Septem & Decem:

The seauenteen Prouinces of the *Gaules*.

- *Viennensis.*
- *Lugdunensis prima.*
- *Germania prima.*
- *Germania secunda.*
- *Belgica prima.*
- *Belgica secunda.*
- *Alpes maritima.*
- *Alpes Pennina, & Graia.*
- *Maxima Sequanorum.*
- *Aquitania prima.*
- *Aquitania secunda.*
- *Nouempopuli,*
- *Narbonensis prima.*
- *Narbonensis secunda.*
- *Lugdunensis secunda.*
- *Lugdunensis tertia, &*
- *Lugdunensis Senonia.*

Hiſpaniæ Prouinciæ Septem.

The ſeauen Prouinces of *Spaine*. { *Bætica*, *Luſitania*, *Gallecia*, *Tarraconenſis*, *Carthaginenſis*, *Tingitana*, & *Baleares Inſulæ*.

Britanniarum Prouinciæ Quinque.

The fiue Prouinces of Great *Bretaigne*. { *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, *Valentia*, *Britannia prima*, *Britannia ſecunda*, & *Flauia Cæſarienſis*.

You behold here, how the Prouinces and Dioceſes of *Spaine*, *England* and *Scotland*, were comprehended vnder the departement of the *Gaules*, and not the *Gaules* ſubiected to that of *Spaine*.

But we will ſay, and that truely, that *Spaine* ſhall neuer walke Peere-like, for aboundance of people, fertillitie of all good things; excellencie of ground; temperature and wholeſomeneſſe of the Ayre; length and largeneſſe of her whole extendure (comprehending thereinto the Kingdome of Nauarre, vngraciouſly vſurped, and worſe detained from the iuſt Lords thereof) with *France*. For *Spaine* being ſeperated from *Affrica*, but onely by a narrow ſtraite, of ſome three miles in largeneſſe; is (for her burning heates) barren in moſt parts of the Kingdome; that is as much to ſay, as Prouinces badly peopled. and almoſt vn-habited. Fell'd Fields without Corne, without culture, without Trees, Springs or any Riues. And the foule diſeaſe of the Kings Euill, wherewith moſt part of the Inhabitans are infected, and made lotheſome: ſcrueth for a ſufficient proofe, what difference there is betweene Sunne-burnt *Spaine*, and the ſweete Ayre of *France*. Whether they may come yeerely, to make proofe, that the excellencie and vertue of the Lilies Monarche, excelleth and ſurpaſſeth that of *Salomon*; ſo conſequently the King of *Spaine*, and all other Kings and Princes on the earth.

The temperate ayre of France

Wee haue the meanes to paſſe by, that which encreaſeth and commeth from *Spaine*: becauſe the ſterrilitie of the Soyle, cauſeth continuall carriage thither from *France*, of Corne, Wine, Cloth and other things, moſt neceſſary for the life of man.

The Kings of *Spaine* want no qualifying and ſtiling themſelues, to be Kings of *Leon*, of *Arragon*, of *Nauarre*, of *Valencia*, of *Granada*, of *Toledo*, of *Murcia*, of *Cordoua*, of *Portugall*, and of the *Algaraes*, with a long thred of other the like titles, which are all but Prouinces, and hath cauſed ſuch as haue not ſeene the Country, to thinke, that *Spaine* is a number of times farre greater, then is the Kingdome of *France*.

——— *Sed non ego credulus illis.*

Experience hath ſuffered me to ſee the contrary, and verifie both plainely and palpably, that it can no way be compared with *France*; except through extreame ignorance. And whoſoeuer ſhall meaſure the fertile Prouinces of the Monarche of the Lillie; as *Prouence*, *Languedocke*, *Guienne*, *Poictu*, *Bretaigne*, *Normandie*, *Champaigne*, *Bourgongne*, *Lyonnois*, and *Daulphine* (without making any mention of the Prouinces ſeated in the midſt of them which we haue named, and which would make as many Kingdomes, if our Kings gouerned themſelues, according to the manner of *Spaine*) will

finde without all doubt, that *France* in latitude and longitude, excelleth very much that of *Spaine*.

It is admirable *France*, from all antiquity, that (for her greatneſſe) ſerued as a ſpacious field, and a moſt noble ſubiect to the Spaniſh Poet *Lucane*; to ſhew: That *Ceſar* became Maſter of the Romane Empire, by the meanes of her wealthy Prouinces; whereas he hath not ſpoken the like of *Spaine*. He admireth earneſtly her extendure, and preferreth her (by good right) before all Kingdoms of the ſpacious World.

How *Ceſar* became Lord of the Romane Empire.

——— *Sparſas per Gallica rura Cohortes*
Euocat, & Romam motis petit vndique ſignis.
Deſeruere cauo tentoria fixa Lemano.

He beginneth with *Suetia*, watered by the Lake of Geneua, and of Lozana, and runneth from thence to the mountaines of Vaulga, which make ſeparation of the lands of Germany and France.

Caſtraque quæ Vogeſi curuam ſuper ardua rupem
Pugnaces pictis cohibebant Lingones armis.

The great extendure of the Mountaines.

Theſe mountaines extend themſelues very far into Germany, by Luxembourg, and ſo farre as Strasbourg; and from thence take and deriue their ſourſes, the Riuers of Meuſe, and of Saoha, ſeparating them of Mentz, Toull and Verdune, with the Bourgongnons & Langrois, whom *Lucane* tearmeth *Pugnaces*. And ſaith, that they delighted to weare enameled Armes, varied with diuerſity of colours. And *Martiall* ſaith, that the Common people of the Langres were cloathed with a garment of ſmoaky colour, called a *Minime*, ſuch as the Bardes vſed to weare among the Druides.

Sic interpoſitus vitio contaminat vnctio
Vrbica Lingonicus Tyrianthina Bardocucullus.

And *Lucane* maketh a Leape, ſaying:

Hi vadâ liquerunt Iſaræ, qui gurgite vaſto
Per tam multa ſuo, famæ maioris in amnem
Lapſus, ad æquoreas nomen non pertulit vndas.

He ſpake concerning the people of Sauoy, which is watered with the Riuer of Iſera, that taketh her ſourſe neere to Mont-Cenis, and (running rowling thorow Sauoy) taketh largeneſſe to Mont-Melian, thwarting Granoble, and *Romans* in Daulphine, & ſome few miles from thence, ſinketh it ſelfe in the Riuer of Rhoſne, or Rhone, ariſing out of the Alpes) which he calleth *Amnem famæ maioris*. *Plinie* in his naturall hiſtory, noteth the originall and ſpring of the Riuer Rhoſne, whereunto it ſwalloweth and looſeth it ſelfe, and Iſara and Saona thus. *Galliarum fertiliſſimus Rhodanus Fluuius ex Alpibus ſe rapiens per lacum Lemanum, ſegnemque deferens Arim, nec minus ſe ipſo torrentem Iſaram*, becauſe Iſara hath her courſe as impetuous as *Rhoſne*.

And thence againe the Poet hath another leap into Rouergne, whereof Rhodes the Biſhops See; *Ciuitas Ruthenorum*.

Soluuntur flauis longa ſtatione Rutheni.

And with theſe Rouergas, he windeth on the ſame bottome, them of Narbonois (*Narbonenſis Gallia*, the Country of Narbone in France) and Carcaſſois, watered and bathed with the Riuer of Auda; a Riuer big enough, but troubled and heauie in her courſe, which cannot carrie any great Bottomes.

Mitis Atax Latias gaudet non ferre Carinas.

It paſſeth betweene the Towne & the City of Carcaſſona, and paſſing the Rocks of the Carcaſſes and Minerues; paſſeth on all along, croſſing the Martiall and Metropolitane City of Narbonna, to Serignano and Beziers, a very pleaſing and delightfull Citie, whereof aroſe the Prouerbe.

Si Deus in terris
Vellet habitare Biterris.

Plinie

Pliny calleth it *Blitteræ*, and some few miles frnm thence, *Auda* loseth it selfe in the Mediterranean Sea: Of this therefore is it that *Trebellius* make[s] mention,

Hunc fore Aquitanas posset qui fundere gentes,
Quem tremeret forti milite Vibius Atax.

And *Pliny* in the place formerly alleadged, saith; *Fluuius Atax è Pyrenæo ruens, sem permeans lacum, &c.*

From Auba he commeth to the Riuer of Gar.

Finis, & Hesperiæ promoto milite Varus.*

* A Riuer dividing Narbon from Liguria.

He saith that it maketh separation of the Gaules from Italie, & in this maner speaketh *Plinie*: *Narbonensis Prouincia appellatur pars Galliarum, quæ interno mari adluitur, Braccata ante dicta, Annæ Varo ab Italia discreta.* But hee must take it to be thus, during such time as the Prouince was wonne by the Romanes, and reduced into the forme of a Prouince, for otherwise, at all times it made part with the Kingdome of France. There is in the lower Languedocke, a Riuer which beareth name in the same manner, and rowling from the *Seuenes*, passeth betweene *Nismes* (*Nemausus* in Latine) the Episcopall City and Auignion, to Romoulins. It is very obseruable for the bridge of Gar, one of the Wonders of the world, an admirable worke and worthy the greatnesse of the Romanes; as well as the *Arenes* of Nismes, a mile and a halfe from which, is the said bridge of Gar.

Thence the Poet passeth to the ends of the Prouince,

Quæque sub Herculeo sacratus numine portus
——— Et tuta prohibet statione Monæci.

To the Port of *Hercules*, at this present called *Ville-Franche*: Of this Port, and of *Monego*, or *Monacho*, writeth *Plinie*: *Portus Herculis, Monæci, Ligustica Ora.*

From the side of Prouence, and of Gennes, hee commeth to cut ouer the Riuer of Rhine, and in the Episcopall City of Spire, *Ciuitas Nemetum*, and the Inhabitants called *Nemetes*.

——— Tunc rura Nemetis
Qui tenet, & ripas Atiri qua littore curuo
Molliter admissum claudit Tarbellicus æquor,

And from Spire, he flieth away to the last end of the Gaules in the Ocean Sea, to the Countie of Begorre, and the lower Nauarre. Of this Countie, Tarbes is the Episcopall City, the inhabitants whereof are called *Tarbelli* by *Cæsar*. The Riuer of *Aduus*, called by *Lucane* Atirus, and by *Scaliger Ador*, rowleth from the Pyrenean Mountaines, and making two branches the one is called Adoua, and the other Midoua; it commeth to loose it selfe in the Ocean, neere to Bayonne. *Sidonius Appollinaris* in his Epistle *Ad Trigetium*, calleth it *Atturricus Fluuius*: And the Bordelois Poet *Ausonius*, baptizeth it with the name of *Aturrus*.

People of Gaul couper neere the Pyrene Mountaines.

Infamunque ruens per saxa rotantia latè
In mare purpureum, domine tamen ante Mosellæ
Numine adorato, Tarbellius *ibit Aturrus.*

Afterward, the Poet recouereth them of Xaintonge, & of Berry (or Bourdesan for there are the *Bituriges Cubi*, which be the *Berruyers* of Bourges, and those of Bourdelois, called *Bituriges Vbisci*, or pronouncing according to the ancient Gallish retained in Gascongnie, *Biuisci*, changing V. into B by the conuersion.

Signa mouet gaudetque amoto Santonus hoste,
Et Biturix.

And from thence he commeth into Champaigne, vpon the Riuer of Aysne.

——— Longisque leues Axones in armis.

Axona (whereof *Ausonius* maketh mention in his *Mosella*,

——— Axona præceps.)

And taketh her course from Bassigny, or (according to others) from the mountaines of Vauga, the people wherof are commended by *Lucane*, for their seruice with the Pike or Partizane, whereby he meaneth long Armes. Long Armes then in vse.

Optimus excusso Leucus, Remusque lacerto.

He giueth them the honour of being stout and strong; for acting, casting, and getting loose Darts, Iauelins, and Arrowes, making them to be good and skilfull Archers.

Then he setteth downe the Sequanois, which are they of Bourgongne, and other neighbouring people.

Optima gens flexis in gyrum Sequana frænis.

For the Riuer of Seine, writhing it self like a Serpent, receiueth her Spring aboue S. Seine, drawing towards Chanceaux, within fiue miles and a halfe of Dijon, descending to S. Mard, Aize the Duchie to Chastillon, Mussy the Bishopricke, Bar, Troyes and Nogent, where it beareth bottomes of charge, to come to Paris. From whence it rowleth to Poissy, Meulant, Mante, Vernon, Gaillon, Ponte de l'Arche, Rouen, Chaudebec, Honfleur, Harflew, Haure de Grace, and drowneth it selfe in the Ocean Sea. The course of the riuer Seine. New Hauen.

From Champaigne and Bourgongne, it passeth into Picardy, and to the Countrey of Flanders; to the Inhabitants whereof hee giueth commendations, for well-gouerning and mannaging Waggons and Chariots, and for being very expert Waggonners. Good wagon driuers.

Et facilis rector rostrati Belga Couini.

From Belgicke Gaule, he returneth backe into Aquitaine, and the Countrey of Auuergne: the People whereof, boasting themselues to be Romane, hee mocketh for their vaine ostentation. The men of Auuergne reaming themselues Romanes.

Aruernique ausi Latios se fingere Fratres
Sanguine ab Iliaco Populi.

From Auuergne hee leapeth into Tournaisis, the people whereof vanquished a Legion and fiue Companies, left in Garrison by *Cæsar* in the Countrey of Liege, as he writeth in his *Bello Gallico*. And thus *Lucan* obserueth it.

——— nimiumque rebellis
Neruius & cæsi pollutus sanguine Cottæ.

Vpon one thred he fileth them of Treuers, sometime the Capitall City of the Gaules, them of Wormes and of Holland.

Tu quoque latatus conuerti prælia Treuir,
Et qui te laxis imitantur Sarmata braccis
Vangiones, Batauique truces,

habited after the Scythian and Poland manner.

And from thence hee commeth to the Garden of France; Poictou, Touraine, Aniou, and round-neighbouring people, dwelling on the Riuers of Loire, and them of Guien and Maine. The garden of France.

Pictones immunes subiungunt sua rura; ne vltra
Instabiles Turones circumsita castra coercent.
Inripis Manduana tuis marcere perosus
Andus, iam placida Ligeris recreatur ab vnda,
Inclyta Cæsareis Genabos dissoluitur alis.

The Pictes or Poicteuins, of whom the Capitall City is called *Augustoritum Pictonum*, seated on the Riuer of Clan, which descendeth into that of Vienna, were so named, because they made markes in their faces with a hot yron, as *Claudian* informeth vs.

Ferroque notatas
Perlegit examine Picta moriente figuras.

And in his second Panegyricke,

Ferro picta genas, cuius & vestigia verrit
Carulus

As for that which *Lucan* calleth *Genabum inclytam*, such as take it for Orleans, are sottishly deceiued; because it is Gien vpon Loire, part of which City retaineth yet the name of Genaba, euen to this day. *Cæsar* saith, that in his time it was the *Magazine* or Storehouse of the Chartrains, whereof it seemeth that *Tibullus* tooke note, extending the said Chartrains to the Riuer of Loire.

Carnuti & flaui cærula lympha Liger.

Cæsar consumed this poore Citie into cinders, for the reasons which himselfe reporteth in his *Bello Gallico*. Now the Riuer of Loire, which *Plinie* calleth *Flumen clarum Ligerim*, taketh her fourse neere to the Towne of Puy en Velay, tearmed in Latine *Anicium*, encreased with other Springs, and Snowes melting from the Mountaines of Auuergne. After it hath rowled foure and twentie miles from the Spring, to *Rouana*, it beareth boates of Burden, and passing by *Desise*, *Neuers*, *la Charité*, *Sancerre*, *Cosne*, *Gien*, *Gergeau*, *Orleans*, *Boigency*, *Bloys*, *Amboyse*, *Tours*, *Saumur*, the bridges (called corruptly by *Cæsar*) *Sea*, *Ancenis* and *Nantes*; it commeth to disgorge it selfe into the Ocean Sea, at S. Lazaro.

From thence the Poet scuddeth to the Pyrenean Mountaines, where the Inhabitants of them are noted to be of the Gauliſh Nation; and extendeth himself farre into high Spaine, called *Celtiberia*, so farre as the Riuer of *Ebro*, or rather Iberus, (A Riuer in Spaine rising neere *Iuliobrica* in *Cantabria*.) So that in those times then, all that rounded the *Cinga*, was inhabited with naturall Gaules.

Gurgite ——— *Qua Cinga pererrat.*

And the same *Lucan* hath described it elsewhere.

Cinga rapax, vetitus fluctus, & littora cursis
Occani populisse suo: nam gurgite mixto,
Qui præstat terris ausert tibi nomen Iberis.

This Riuer hath not changed her name, but descendeth from the Mountaines of Catalogna, and after shee hath laued the Townes of Balbastra, Moncon, Lenda, Fraga, with some other little villages and Bourgades of Nauarre and Arragon, she commeth with the *Segro* (*Sicoris* called by *Lucane*) to discharge her burden in the Riuer of Iberus, which causeth her to lose her name.

——— *Qua Cinga pererrat*
Gurgite:

From thence he skippeth to the Riuer of Rhosne,

Qua Rhodanus raptam velocibus undis
In mare fert Araxim.

Rhosne or Rhodanus, receiueth her fourse from Mont de la Fourche, in high Valais, passing by the Lake of Lozana, and Geneua the Knightly, and doeth descend to Lyon the Merchant; where beyond it, she meeteth the sleepy * *Saona*, and falleth with it into the Sea of Prouence. Rhosne maketh two branches, separating the Viuarez and Languedock, from Prouence and Daulphine. Beside which Principalitie, (the title to the eldest Sonnes of the Monarches of France) it watereth the Cities of ancient Vienna, the olde Chancery belonging to the Emperours of the West; Thin, Valencia, Lorioll, Mont-Limar, Auignion, Nonna, Tarascon, Arles la Blanche, and S. Gilles, where one of her hornes droppeth into the Sea. Thother watereth all along from Viuarez, the Townes of Tournon, Cursoll, Viuiers, Pont S. Esprit; and from thence coasting Auignion and Beauquaire, shee throweth her selfe into the Sea at *Aigues mortes* at Langudock. Ysera at Saona loose themselues in Rhosne, as the *Durance* doth, whereof *Ausonius* speaketh, calling it *Durance*, which after it hath washed part of the Cities and Towns of Daulphine, Prouence, and the Countie of Venissa, to witte, Guilera, Ambrun, Tallart, Cisteron, Cauaillon, and Poincte d Orgon, it looseth it selfe in Rhosne, which they of the Countrey call Rose.

* Or Saaona in Latine by the Scottish, which extendeth not hath.

Luouse discipliereth, and afterward taketh the people of Languedock, for inhabitants on the Mountaines of Ceuenes, which eythet begin, or finish them of the Pirenean. Ioyning to the Martiall City of Narbona, they goe (like a Scarse) to gaine them of the Alpes; hauing trauersed the higher Languedocke, the County of Geuaudan, the Puy in Velay, S. Floure, part of Viuarez and Auuergne, so farre

Concerning the people of Languedocke, & their dwelling.

to the Riuer of Rhosne. *Lucane* calleth all the people generally Seuenois, by the name of those Mountaines.

Qua montibus arduâ summis
Gens habitat cana pendentis rupe Gebennas.

G. being set downe for C. *Strabo*, *Potolomy*, and other Geographers, comprehendeth them vader the name of *Cebennus mons*, *Cæsar*; *Mela*, and the Naturalist *Plinie*, *Gens Cebenna* in the singular, and the Inhabitants *Cebenni Populi*. *Ausonius* the Bourdelos, describing the City of Narbonna, saith:

The error and mistake of some Geographers of Cebenus Mons.

Interiusque premunt Aquitanica rura Cebennæ.

And in that of Tolosa.

Ninguida Pyrenes, & pinea Cebennarum
Inter Aquitanas gentes.

From thence *Lucan* maketh a leap to the City of Treuers, seated on the Riuers of Mosella, and of Seila; and thence he flitteth to the people of the Alpes, and beyond the side of Genoway and Millaine, which at all times made part of Longbeard Gaule.

Et nunc tonse Ligur quondam per colla decora,
Crinibus effusis toti prælatæ Comatæ.

How the Gaules extendure is finisht by *Lucan*.

Lucan, to very good purpose, finisheth the Gaules extendure, by the Riuer of Rhine; because their naturall extent was from this great flood, so far as to the Pyrenean Mountaines on the one side, and from one Sea to another, as we haue elsewhere said.

Et vos Crinigeros bellis arcêre Caycos
Oppositi, petitis Romam, Rhenique feroces
Deseritis ripas, & appertum gentibus Orbem.

The Precedencie of one Prouince to another.

Now, concerning that which giueth precedency of one Prouence to another, it is the fertility of the Soyle, for abounding in fruites, Woods, and Gardenings; which is wrought by the meanes of Riuers watering it. Spaine (for the most part) is wanting and defectiue in such an aduantage, few great Riuers to water it. For take away *Iberus*, *Guadiana*, *Tagus* and *Guadalquibir*; and there are none but small Brookes. Spaine is halfe desert; of a yellowish earth; burnt with the Sunne, euen as her neighbour Affrica is. And you see the Spaniards to be of small stature, demie-Moores, duskie and swarthy like the Affricans; with whom they haue consonance enough in manners and fashion of behauiour. Whereas the French are of a rich shape, actiue, and of gracefull presence; white fleshed, & open visaged: which sheweth the goodly temperature of the ayre in France, not ouer-hot, like that of Spaine, nor yet too cold, as it is in England.

Tibullus tooke pleasure in making France famous by her Riuers.

Testis Arar, Rhodonusque celer, magnusque Garumna,
Carnuti, & flaui cærula, lympha Liger.

But more particularly the Senator *Ausonius*.

Non tibi se Liger anteferet, non Axona præceps,
Matrona non Gallis, Belgisque interfita fines,
Santonico refluus non ipse Carantonius æstu,
Concedit gelido Durani de monte volutas
Amnis, & Auriferum postponet Gallia Tarnem.

The one maketh mention but of Saona, Loire and Garonna, as also of Rhosne; and the other of Loire, Aisna, Marne, Charanta, Dordogna and Tarn. The Riuer Charanta

Charauta is named by *Ptolomy Cauentelus*, which running from Poictu, adorneth hath watered the Townes of Engoulesme, Congnac, Xaintes, Tallebourg and Bourbiss; commeth to loose it selfe in the Ocean Sea, Father of all these Riuers as we learne by *Homer*.

That which *Ausonius* saith, in deriuing her Spring from the Mountaine Duran, is in our ancient Annales, and in the life of great Charlemaigne, called Dordogne, *Derdania*, whereof *Sidonius Apollinaris* maketh mention:

Exis ceruatis, Durani nuscose, saburra.

She bathes and trauerseth Perigord, and the Townes of Fumell, Bergerac, S. Foy, Libourne, Frontacke, built by *Charlemaigne*, and called (according to the opinion of some) *Fines Saracenorum*, at this day a Duchie and Peeredome, belonging to the Illustrious House of S. *Paul* of Orleans, neere vnto which place, the Riuer of Dordogne looseth it selfe, in that of Garonna beneath Bourdeaux.

As for the River of Tarn, which hee depicteth as *Pactolus*, and whereof *Ausonius* speaketh, that it hath for a Raye among the Tolosians, and them of Perigord, *Tarn anne discrets, a Tolosiens, Petrocoris*: the receiueth her Originall from the Cheuenes, from whence she rowleth to Lauregais, watereth the Townes of Lescure, Villemar, Alby (where it was said that the Mother of *Cicero* was borne), Gaillac, Rabasteins, and other places, discharging her selfe into that of Garonna, aboue the Towne of Agen.

The Mother of M. T. Cicero borne at Alby.

And so descending Garonna, (or Garumma, parting Celtica from Aquitania) a River so much renowned; I haue seene it from the Spring, to her declining, which is in the Vally of Aran, *Vallis aranica*, in the Diocesse of Comenges, and bottome of the Pyrenees, passing to Montrean de Riuiere, to Bacerauera, and to Pont de S. Iust, Beneath S. Bertrand the Episcopall Seate of Comenges, *Ciuitas Conuenarum*, and her diuision, *Conuenis conuentum Conuene*, drawne from S. *Hierome*, a light in the Church; to Valentine, S. Gaudens, Estaucarbon, S. Martory, Caseres beneath Pui Laurens, Tenasse, Muret, Partet, Tolosa, Grenada, Le Porte S. Mary, Aiguillon, Le Mas and Peeredome of France, in the famous house of Maiesme of Lorraine: Tonins, Marmande, La Reole, S. Macary, Langon, Cadillack, Bourdeaux, Blaye, Talmond and *Arun*, where Garonna looseth her selfe in the Ocean Sea, and yet re-flowes aboue it so farre as to the said Langon. Heereupon she is called *Vasconia, Aquitanica & Aquerca*, and in *Claudian*.

A Riuer of Celtica, Rises in the Pyrenees, and looseth her selfe in the Ocean Sea.

——— Retrò pernicior vnda Garumnæ
Oceano plenos quatenus impelitur æstus.

It would require a discourse, able to breake the longest breath, to obserue a million of Riuers that water and besprinkle France, and which make it to abound in all things that can be wished for, fit and necessary for the Nature of Man; without her constraint of begging any thing of strange Countries, especially of Spaine, which cannot be two yeeres (at the most) without the helpe of France, a good nurse, mother to the rest of Europe.

The fertilitie of France.

Among all the Nations of the world, that of the ancient Gaules was the best polished, and most ciuilized: because they were taught, ruled, and gouerned by the wise Druides, Masters of all Sciences and Vertue. For, in the first place, they had a setled knowledge of one only God, *Creator of Heauen and Earth*; and vnder stood perfectly his Worship and Seruice, that is to say, in what forme hee should be adored, in Spirit, and outwardly also.

The Gaules were the most ciuilized.

And to obserue (in a briefe Summary) the whole Masse of their knowledge and learning, they made profession of instructing the Gaulish Nobility, in the Morals & Politiques, all parts of the Mathematicks, the Immortality of the soule, and the knowledge of one onely God. But they opened the dore to all these, first by knowledge of themselues; the point most needfull and important, and preciseste to know any matter of goodnesse.

Their first Classe or forme in Schoole, was hung with Mirrours, in whose Glasses

Classes their Schollers learned their first Alphabet. Such as were endued with corporall beautie, were admonished to make themselues much fairer by the goods of the Soule: because those of the body were but flitters, subiect to changes, the wheele of age, and the least sickenesse.

Forma bonum fragile est, quantumque accedit ad Annos
Finis minor.

Deformed and mis-shapen men, were taught to couer the defects of Nature, with all manner of vertuous actions, which made all such truly noble, as embraced them.

For impertection of body.

For the knowledge of God, they had for Maxime, *Non colere Idola*, and in all the Gaules (of very great extendure) there was no Image to be seene: *But of the Sacred Virgin, that should bring forth, and giue sucke to the fruite of life, the onely Sauiour of the World.* And yet this Image was but on the Generall Altar, for all the Gaulish Provinces: prepared on the Mountaine of Chartres, and in the faireste middest of the sacred Forrest, as it is reported by *Epiphanius*.

For the knowledge of God.

Cohibere parietibus Deos, & in vllam oris speciem assimulare, ex magnitudine Cœlestium non arbitrantur: so saith *Tacitus* in his *Germania*. Because God being a pure Spirit, diffused throughout the whole Vniuerse; hee cannot be restrained, nor shut vp within walls, or represented by humane figure. *Deus est Sphera cuius centrum est ubique, Superficies vero nulla. God is a circle, whose point and Center is the earth, without Center, and without circumference.* This is the doctrine of S. *Paul*, *Excelsus non in manufactis Templis habitat, sicut per Prophetam dicit? Cœlum mihi sedes est, Terra autem scabellum pedem meorum: Quam domum ædificabis mihi? aut quis locus requietionis meæ est? dicit Dominus: Nonne manus mea fecit hæc omnia. The most high dwelleth not in Temples made with hands, as saith the Prophet. Heauen is my Throne, and earth is my foot-stoole: What House will ye build me? saith the Lord: or what is the place of my rest? hath not my hand made all these things?* And preaching to the Athenians, when he conuerted to the faith of Iesus Christ, the great S. *Denys Areopagita*, and his Wife *Damaris. Deus qui fecit mundum, & omnia quæ in eo sunt, Hic Cœli, & Terræ cum sit Dominus, non in manufactis Templis habitat, nec manibus humanis colitur. God that made the world, and all things therein, seeing that he is God of Heauen and earth, dwelleth not in Temples made with hands, neither is worshipped with mens hands.*

Acts 7. 48. 49. 50.

Acts 17. 24 25. 34.

Before the building of *Salomons* Temple, God was not adored in enclosed Temples; but *In Excelsis, & in Lucis*: as we reade in Genesis, that the Patriarch *Abraham*, contracting alliance, and making a Couenant with the King of Palestine *Abimelech*; planted a Wood in *Beer-sheba*, and there called on the name of the Lord. *Plantauit nemus in Beer-sheba, & inuocabit ibi nomen Domini Dei æterni.* The same is to be read in infinite passages of the Scriptures, which serueth to shew, that before the building of the Temple at Ierusalem; Forrests & tufted Woods were Temples, and places destined for prayer by the people of Israell, and their Sacrifices to the liuing God. And that those Woods and places of deuotion, were ordinarily *In excelsis*, on the tops of Mountaines, shaded with Forrests and Woods. *Gloria in excelsis Deo*; as the Angells sung in the night time of his blessed birth.

Gen. 21. 32. 33.

Places for Prayer, before the temple at Ierusalem was made.

Euen so the Wise Druides, diuinely inspired, ordered their Temples in the veriest faireste places of thickest Woods, couered and shadowed vnder the couert and leading of high tufted Oakes; without enclosing their Temples with Walls and couertures, as the materiall are, built by mens hands. *Lucos ad Nemora consecrant, deorumque nominibus appellant Secretum illud quod sola reuerentia vident*, so saith the learned *Tacitus*. *The Gaules and Germanes* (saith he) *had for their Temples some goodlie separate place, in the middest of a thicke Forrest, which they dedicated and consecrated vnto God.*

Where the *Druides* prepared their temples.

There were not any Idolls, but the secret and most shadie place of the Temple was by them reuerenced, euen as the Mansion or dwelling of the Diuinity, which they durst not looke on with their eyes, but in great feare and reuerence. As if they would haue said. This *Celticke* people and Nation, doe dedicate and consecrate their Forrests and Woods to God, and serue him there as in Temples, the thickest

The *Celtes* dedication of their Woods and Forrests.

thickeſt tufts whereof is contemplated with their eyes, with all condigne humilitie and reuerence; not hauing ſo much boldneſſe or preſumption, to approach neere the Sanctuary of the Diuinitie: that is to ſay, from the moſt ſecret and deepeſt place of this ſacred Temple, to draw neerer then by ſight onely.

The Druides had knowledge of ſacred Letters. Gen. 13. 18. Exod. 3. 2.

And we need make no doubt, but that thoſe diuine Druides had (without all queſtion to the contrary) notice and knowledge of thoſe ſacred myſteries, obſerued in holy bookes; as God made himſelfe ſeene and knowne to the Patriarche *Abraham*, vnder the Oake of *Mambre*; and to the Law-maker *Moyſes*, in the thickeſt of a Buſh, burning on the Mountaine of Horeb, which Buſh *Moſes* approached vnto, in all feare, honor, and reuerence, after he had put off his ſhooes.

The ſecret place of the Druides Temple, how they called it, and reuerenced it.

And ſo thoſe Druides called the moſt ſecret place of their Temples, by the name of the liuing God: *Domini Dei viuentis nomine dicabant Secretum illud quod ſola reuerentia videbatur.* Honouring the place as moſt ſacred and holy, where they preſented their prayers to God, which they beleeued to make them moſt happy by his Diuine preſence. And the reuerence which they bare to thoſe Temples, was ſo great, as they dared not to approach neere them, but in all humilitie. Euen ſo the *Sueues*, the moſt potent people of Alemaigne (iſſued and deſcended from them of *Sens*, ſometimes renowned among all the Gaules) on the firſt day of their yere, that is to ſay, the firſt day of the Moone of September, they aſſembled together in their principall Temple, according to the cuſtome of their Noble Grandfathers, which was in a thicke Forreſt, where they held their Generall Eſtates, for an hundred Bourgades and Cominalties vnder their obedience. *Tacitus* ſaith: *Vetuſtiſſimas, nobiliſſimoſque Sueuorum Senones memorant. Fides antiquitatis religione firmatur. Stato tempore in Syluam,*

An Order obſerued among the Sueues euery moneth

——— *Auguris Patrum, & priſca formidine ſacram* ——— *omnes eiuſdem ſanguinis Populi Legationibus, cœunt. Eſt & alia Luco reuerentia. Nemo niſi ligatus ingreditur, ut minor, & poteſtatem Numinis præ ſe ferens; ſi fortè prolapſus fuerit, attolli, aut inſurgere haud licitum, per humum euoluuntur, eoque enim ſuperſtitio reſpicit, tanquam inde initia gentis, Ibique Regnator omnium Deus, cætera ſubiecta, atque patientia.*

A ſuperſticious ceremony for ſuch as entred the temple.

Whoſoeuer deſired to enter into this Sacred Temple, were he the Prince or the greateſt Lord; was to haue his hands and feet faſt bound with cords, ſo that if peradeuenture he fell or tumbled to the ground, it was not permitted him to riſe again, or ſo much as to lift vp his head; but onely to rowle along on the earh. This ſuperſtition pointed and tended to this end; to make it knowne, that God alone (the onely Gouernour of all things) had choſen there his ſanctuary.

The ſame Antiquary *Tacitus* obſerueth in other places, that the *Celtes* had not any Idolls or Images in their Temples. *Nulla Simulacra, nullum peregrinæ ſuperſtitionis veſtigium ibi videre licebat.*

The Gaules met in hallowed Forreſts, before the Romanes came into Gaule.

The paſſage of *Tacitus*, concerning the Aſſembly of the Seuenois, or people of Alemaigne, giueth vs to note; that before the arriuall of the Romanes in Gaule, the publique aſſemblies of the ancient Gaules, were alwaies made in thoſe Sacred Forreſts: Becauſe they verily beleeued, that there was the acceptable dwelling of the Diuinitie: to whoſe preſcience or fore-knowledge, they referred the beginning and concluſion of their ſaid Aſſembly.

This is it which the ſame *Tacitus* obſerueth in his Hiſtories of aſſemblies, called *Ciuilis*, the Hollanders to treat and feaſt, and (by degrees) to hold a Councell, what they had to doe for redeeming themſelues from the Romaines ſlauery. *Vocauit Batauos Sacrum in nemus ſpecie epularum.* And *Lucius Florus* affirmeth: *Vercingentorix feſtis diebus, & Comitialibus, quum frequentiſſimos in Lucis haberet, ferunt dictis ad ius priſtinum libertatis erexit.* All which theſe Authors ſay, is to remark the faſhion of the ancient Druides, Presidents of the Generall States, that euery yeere they aſſembled on the firſt day of the Moone in September, in the Sacred Forreſt of the City of Charters, the Nauill or midſt of the Gaules, according as *Cæſar* ſpeaketh in his *Bello Gallico. Druidæ certo Anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, qui regio totius Galliæ media habetur, conſidunt In Luce Conſecrato.*

In thoſe times then, and more then a thouſand yeres after, *Paris*, and all the thereabout, for more then twenty miles round about, drawing towards *Dreux*, &

Aquilina Sylua the Forreſt of Paris, or *Tuelina.*

…ſe, was but one great Forreſt, called by our Annaliſts, *The Forreſt of Paris*, otherwiſe named *Aquilina Sylua*, and at this preſent *Tuelina*. Thereof *William* the *Breton* maketh mention in his *Philippides*, ſpeaking of *Mont-Fort l'Amaury*, of S. *Arnoul* and S. *Legier* in *Tuelina*, where King *Philip Auguſtus* merited to ſee our Lord in humaine forme, betweene the Prieſts hands at the eluation of the holy Hoſte.

In caſtro Syluis Aquilina quod vndique cingit
Cui ſanctus nomen Leodegarius aptat,
Dum fortè audiret Miſſæ myſteria, vidit
Presbyteri in manibus qua ſacra leuantur in hora.

Returne we to our Gauliſh Temples.

Numa Pompilius, the very wiſeſt King of the Romanes, Scholler to *Pythagoras*, who had beene Scholler to the wiſe *Druides* (as wee learne by *Clemens Alexandrinus*) inſtituted for Temples to the Romanes, Woods and Forreſts, without any Idolls. And therefore the Latine Poet well obſeruing this Antiquity, purpoſelie determined to figure the ſame by the Venerable Temple of King *Latinus*.

Horrendum ſyluis, & religione parentum.

Concerning great Forreſts, and high topping trees.

And *Seneca* ſaith, *Si tibi occurrat vetuſtis arboribus, & ſolitam altitudinem egreſſis, quens Lucus, & conſpectum Cæli denſitate ramorum alienorum alios protegentium ſubmouens; illa proceritas Syluæ, & ſecretum loci, & admiratio vmbræ in aperto tam denſæ attentæ continuæ, Fidem tibi numinis facit.* If thwarting a great way as thou paſſeſt along, is offered or preſented to thine eyes ſome goodly Forreſt, or ſome faire Boſcage, ſhadowed with aged Oakes, hauing their heads exalted aboue all the woods; it be an vndoubted perſwaſion to thee, that this exceeding height, and admirable ſhade, made by thoſe goodlie tall trees, and the ſecrecie of a place ſo venerable, doe plainely ſhew, that there did remaine ſome Diuinitie, which ought to be adored.

And *Plinie* (next to this wiſe and Chriſtian Philoſopher, the familiar friend of S. *Paul* the Apoſtle) ſpake to good purpoſe: That olde Oakes, with their heads crowned in a round forme; were to our Auncients as their ſacred Temples, and onely places for their deuotion. *Hæc fuere Numinum Templa, priſcoque ritu etiam nunc ſimplicia rura Deo præcellentem Arborem dicant.* And in his Panegyricke to the Emperour *Traian. Atque inter hæc piâ mente Adire Lucas, & occurſare Numinibus.* And therefore the Poet in his Transformations, in the perſon of *Erebonius* the Atheiſt, maketh appearance of the paine or puniſhment, for all ſuch as profaned them.

Ille etiam Cereale Nemus violaſſe ſecuri
Dicitur, & Lucos ferro temeraſſe vetuſtos.

And *Apuleius* would elegantly darken the renowne of his Accuſer *Æmilianus*, by imposed on him, that in all his Inheritances hee had neither Temple, nor Lucus, dedicated and conſecrated to the Gods, wherein to make their offerings and prayers.

Quam, vt audio percenſentibus ijs qui iſtum nouêre, nulli Deo ad hoc æui ſupplicauit, nullum Templum frequentauit. Si fanum aliquod prætereat, nefas habet adorandi gratiâ limina libras admouere. Iſte verò nec Dys rurationis qui eum paſcunt, ac veſtiunt, ſegetibus, aut vitis, aut gregis primitias impartit. Nullum in villa eius Delubrum, nullum Lucus conſecratus. Et quid ego de Luco, & Delubro loquor? Negant eſſe ſe, qui fuere, vnum ſaltem in finibus eius aut Lapidem vnctum, aut Ramum coronatum.

All this before recited, was drawne from the practiſe and doctrine of the Ancient Druides, whom the Philoſopher *Tyrius Maximus* preſuppoſed (badly informed

as he was) to haue for their principall Deity, the higheſt exalted Oake in their ſa
cred Forreſts, ἄγαλμα Διὸς κλιτύχου ὑψηλὰ δρῦς.

Heereupon it was eſpecially, that the ancient Philoſophers would repreſent the
God of Nature (as ſpeaketh the Gaules Apoſtle, S. *Denys Areopagita*, ſeeing that ge-
The generall Eclipſe at our Sauiours Paſſion. nerall Eclipſe, which happened at the death and Paſſion of our Redeemer Ieſus
Chriſt) by a thicke Forreſt, which they called ὕλην, becauſe, that like as it ſerued in
The God of Nature did alwayes vſe word only. buildings for couerture, and repaire to all kinde of creatures, which ſhe fedde and
nouriſhed from her fruitfull wombe: Euen ſo the God of Nature, by his Word
onely, is the production, ſourſe and birth of the whole Vniuerſe, and all therein
comprehended.

Inprimis eſt quodcumque vides, quodcumque mouetur.

Such then were the Temples of the ancient Gaules, without Idolls or Images
whatſoeuer: they adored but one onely God, to whom they dedicated and conſe-
Spoyles conſecrated from enemies dedicated to God. crated ſuch ſpoyles as they conquered from their enemies. For it hath been a po-
ctiſe from all times, among the moſt ciuill and beſt gouerned Nations, to offer and
preſent to God, by way of gratitude and thankeſgiuing, the ſpoyles of conquered
enemies; and to hang vp or affixe them to ſacred and ſanctified places: becauſe he
is pleaſed, and delighteth in the title, to be called *The God of Battells and Armes*, as
the ſole Author of Victories, which he giueth to whom hee pleaſeth. So the Patri-
Gen. 14. 22. 23. arch *Abraham*, after he had ouercome the fiue Kings his enemies; hee offered vnto
God the tenth part of his conquered ſpoyles. And ſo the King and Pſalmiſt *Dauid*,
hauing vanquiſhed the Giant *Goliah* in ſingle fight, and in the Valley of *Terebin-*
1 Reg. 21. 11. *tha*, hang vp in the Tabernacle of the Lord, the *Coutelas* or Sword of the Giant,
where it was kept to ſerue for a memory to poſterity.

In like manner, the Anceſtors of the Gaules, hauing vanquiſhed *Cæſar* at old
Clermont of Auuergne (*Gergouia*) where he ranne his fortune for life: hung vp
a Trophee, in the great Temple *Vaſſo*, his ſword, which they had wreſted from his
hand. And afterward, *Cæſar* hauing viſited the Metropolitane Temple of Auuergne
(about which, on the height of Mountaines, were prepared Temples for the prin-
cipall Gods and Goddeſſes) he found there his Sword, which neuertheleſſe he did
not take away, as *Plutarch* noteth.

The Romaines, by the Gaules example, exalted as Trophees, the Armes of Ge-
nerals and Captaines of Armies, belonging to conquered Nations. *Virgil*, ſpeaking
of that which his *Aeneas* prepared, ſaith.

Ingentem quercum deciſis vndique ramis
Conſtituit tumulo, fulgentiaque induit arma
Mezenti ducis exuuias, tibi Magne, tropheum
Bellipotens, aptat rorantes ſanguine criſtas,
Telaque truncа viri, & bis ſex thoraca petitum
Perfoſſumque locis: clypeumque ex aere ſiniſtræ
Subligat, atque enſem collo ſuſpendit eburnum.

The order of Hanging vp Trophees of Armes. For among theſe Trophees of Arms, they exalted in the higheſt place, the hea-
piece or Helmet, garniſhed with Lambrequins and Plumes, died red in the blo
of enemies. *Chriſtas ſanguine rorantes*: and then followed the Gorget of Maile
the Cuirats or Breſt-plate, the Vambrace, Taſſes, and Greues: the Shield, Swo
Lance, Dart, or Iaueline, Arrowes and their Quiuer, yea Bucklers and Targets
Souldiers on foote, with their Flagges, Banners, Cornets and Pennons; yea, fo
as Drums and Trumpets, the Watch-bels and Proclaimers of Warre.

In the ſame Temples, beſide the Spoyles of enemies Armes & Harneſſe of W
there was kept (as in ſafeguard) the Diſmes or Tenths of Gold and Siluer, wh
from conquered people, ſo ſaith *Diodorus Siculus* in his Antiquities. *It is a*
marueile, ſaith he, *that in the Temple of the Gaules, you might behold great heapes of gold &*
ſiluer, not any daring to touch them; although that Nation was deepely in loue with
yet were they ſo deuout and religious.

Strabo in his Geography, remarketh the ancient cuſtome of the Gaules, to
yerely, & on certaine daies, their offerings to the Temples of moſt deuotion a

e Gaules, ſpeaking of that at Toloſa. *At Toloſa there was a Temple, moſt famous*
ſanctitie of the place, whereto all the neighbouring people ſent yeerely their Offerings of
ld and ſiluer, and a very great number of all kindes of gifts; yet not any one of the Gaules
ring to touch them. This Temple, vpon report of the Toloſans, was dedicated to
e Sacred Virgin, adored at Chartres; and at the ſame place is yet at this preſent
be ſeene, the Monaſtery and Church *De la d'Aurade*, that is, *Our Golden Lady*,
on the border of Garonna.

The ſame Geographer, ſpeaking of the Toloſans, calleth them *Tectoſages*, and
ith, that they made a voyage into Greece, with their Captaine *Brennus*; who ha-
ng heard the Idoll of *Apollo* ſpeake, which was at Delphos ſo highly renowned,
all the poore Idolaters of thoſe times, and deteſting ſuch impiety; he reſolued
ith his followers, to ſpoyle and deface that Idoll, by the Organe whereof, Sa-
an the common ſeducer, deliuered ſo many of his lying Oracles. This Prince of
euils wrought wonders, to conſerue his Rocke-hold, the dungeon of his tyran-
all Empire, by dreadfull Lightnings and Thunders; as is written by *Pauſanias*,
ſme the Hiſtorian, with other Greeke and Latine Authors.

The voyage of the Tectoſages into Greece with *Brennus* their Captain.

The Deuill in the Idoll of *Apollo* at Delphos.

Yet ſo neuertheleſſe it came to paſſe, that notwithſtanding all theſe Bug-beare
rightments, *Brennus* & his Gaules, who had no other feare, but leſt heauen ſhould
l on their heads, forbare not to ſteale or pilfer the inredible treaſures, which had
long time beene kept in that Plutonicall Manſion.

Which doth make publiquely knowne, that if the Gaules had beene Idolaters,
co:ding as *Cæſar* ſuppoſed, and ſuch as haue followed him, building vpon his
port, contrary to truth) they would not haue beene ſcrupulous in robbing the
elphian Temple, which ſerued them as preſent ſupply, conſidering that they were
nowned aboue all the Nations of the World, for ſingular piety and deuotion.
ns admodum dedita Religionibus, ſaith the ſame *Cæſar* in his Commentaries of the
ules.

Cæſar wronged the Gauls in teaming them Idolaters

Part of thoſe Tectoſages dwelt in theſe quarters, where afterward they founded
City of Ancyra, on the confines of Cappadocia and Paphlagonia: but the reſt
urned home to Toloſa, the place of their birth and breeding, called by Geogra-
ers, *Toloſa Tectoſagum*. Where being arriued, they preſented and offered in the
mple *De la d'Aurada*, the ſpoyles gotten from the Deuill of Delphos, as matter
quered by iuſt Title. Adding thereunto, the Tenths of that which they had got-
in ſo long a voyage, and the inſcription thereon according to the ancient cu-
me. Theſe Treaſures were kept there whole and intire, vntill ſuch time as the
mane Conſull *Quintus Cæpio*, hungring after ſo rich a Booty (which by eſtima-
n commonly ſpoken of, amounted to more then 15. thouſand Talents, taking
h Talent of ſiluer at ſixe hundred Crownes of our money) laded himſelfe and
llowers with ſo much as they could carry. Which Sacriledge made him after-
rd moſt miſerable, and the very Tennis-ball of Fortune. For, as *Strabo* ſaith, af-
he had run through a thouſand dangers, and baniſhed from his Country, he died
iſhoneſt and vnfortunate death, like a ſacrilegious theefe as he was; as his chil-
n likewiſe did, after they had ſpent all their meanes in diſſolutions and wicked
ces. The ſame diſaſterous fortune fell on all the Souldiers of *Cæpio*, who with
ir prophane and impure hands, had made their ſhares of thoſe ſpoyles. Which
de way to a Prouerbe vſed among the Romanes: *He had Gold at Toloſa: Aurum*
et Toloſanum, as much as to ſay, *He carried miſchiefe away with it*; and fit for any
e, that maketh ſuch a fatal ending, as *Aulus Gellius* obſerueth in his *Attick Nights*.
e Toloſans, to preſerue the reſt of the Romane pillage, melted into maſſie In-
ts of gold and ſiluer, which they threw into the Lake and Mariſh ground, made
Garonna round about their Temple. The Romanes within a while after (hauing
quiſhed the Gaules ſold) this Mariſh ground at Port-ſale, which the buyers cau-
to be digged, made themſelues extraordinarily rich; for there they found infi-
e Ingots of gold and ſiluer, the quantity being vn-ualuable.

Spoyles won fr6 the Deuill at Delphos.

Quintus Cæpio robbed the treaſury at *Toloſa*.

A iuſt reward of Sacriledge.

Theſe ſpoyles and treaſures, thus left as in depoſt & ſafety, and kept in the Gaules
mples, ſerued as a modell and example to the Romanes, for doing the like, as *Plu-*
ch obſerueth in infinite places, and namely in his *Aulularia*. *Vide ſides etiam atq;*

etiam, nunc ſaluam vtaulam abs te auferam. Tuæ fidei concredidi aurum, in tuo Lato, & fano eſt ſitum.

Lucian, a Grecke Author, in his Gauliſh *Hercules* ſheweth, that the Romanes had derined from the Gaules, as well how to obſerue their offerings, as alſo gifts, by their names, which they tearmed *Litterata dona, Litterata ſpolia.* *Plautus Rudens.*

Vt comprehendar cum ſacra Vrna Venerea.
Nempe optimo me iure in vinclis enicet
Magiſtratus; ſi quis me hanc habere viderit.
Nam hæc Litterata eſt, apſe cantat cuia ſit.

And to this purpoſe *Apuleius* ſaith in his *Mileſians.* *Videt dona ſpecioſa, & lacrumas auro Litteratas Ramis Arborum, Poſtibuſque ſuffixas, quæ cum gratia facti, nomen Dei, cui fuerant dicata teſtabantur.*

There were alſo kept their Standards and Banners, which the Captaines went to receiue from the hands of the Druides, when there was any noyſe of Warre. For the Druides only had power to take them into the Cloſture of the Generall States: and likewiſe to deliuer them to him or them, whom they had determined and nomed for conducting the Armie. *Signa detracta Lucis in prælium Ferunt*, ſaith *Tacitus.* And in thoſe Standards and Flagges were painted the Arms of the Gaules, the Lyon and the Ship, which *Tacitus* hauing ſeene in their ancient Temples, imagined that they worſhipped (as Idolaters and Pagans) the great Mother of the Gods *Cybele*, otherwiſe tearmed the Idoll of the Syrians, the ſame error of *Cæſar.*

The power of the Druides in the States Houſe of Cuſtodie.

It is well knowne that the deſcendants of *Cham*, Founder of the Aſſyrians Monarchy, were the firſt inuenters of Idolatry, as well in the perſon of *Belus*, father to *Ninus*, as in repreſentation of the Starres and Planets, euen as in humane figure, which they reuerenced for gods, forgetting the Creator, to honor Creatures: making the ſeuen Planets of Mettalls, which Nature (a moſt fruitfull Mother) engendreth and produceth in her hard entrailes, after continuall trauell of many ages of yeeres. Attributing Gold to the Sunne, Siluer to the Moone, Iron to Mars, Lead to Saturne, Tinne to Iupiter, Copper to Venus, and Quicke-ſiluer to Mercurie. The holy Scripture calleth theſe ordinarily, a Luminous company: *Exercitum, & Militiam Cœli.*

Cham, Founder of the Aſſyrians Monarchie, and firſt inuenter of Idolatry.

The attributiõ of the ſeuen Planets.

Geneſ. 2. 1.

God did ſeuerely forbid the adoration and worſhip of theſe Idoles. And therefore the wiſe King of *Edom*, the Patriarch *Iob*, iuſtified himſelfe before the heauenly Maieſty, who enthroneth and vnſceptreth Kings & Princes on earth, according to his owne good pleaſure: becauſe he being (on all ſides) encloſed with Idolatrous Nations, yet he notwithſtanding, neuer bowed his knee to *Baall*, or ſoyled his ſoule with ſuch abhomination. *Si vidi Solem cum fulgeret, & Lunam inſedentem clare, & lætatum eſt in abſcondito cor meum, & oſculatus ſum manum meam ore meo, quæ eſt iniquitas maxima, & negatio contra Deum altiſſimum.* Thoſe Infidels, ſeeing the Sunne beames ſhining on their heads, and the Moone cleering the nights darkeneſſe, lifting vp their eyes to heauen, kiſſed their hands in ſigne of adoration, reuerence and honor. And the like they did, in paſſing before their Temples and Idolls. *Apuleius*, in the place before alleadged ſaith: *Si fanum aliquod prætereant, nefas habet, adorandi gratia, manum labris admouere.* It was Idolatry to repreſent *Iupiter*, and other Deities adored by Pagans, vnder the Image of a Ramme, a Bull, or other brutiſh Beaſts and Creatures, as the Ægyptians did, Greekes and Romanes: becauſe, *Numinis nulla eſt ratio, neque figura.*

The Patriarch *Iob*, the wiſe K. of Edom.

Iob 31. 26. 27. 28.

Pagans worſhip the Sunne and Moone.

The Idolatry of the Syrians extended to other Nations of the Eaſt, but principally it was planted among the Ægyptians, who be-mealed the Greeks therewith. And they, hauing (in verity) liuely and ingenious ſpirits, yet alwaies children in true wiſedome; as daily they were reproched, excelled in Demonomanie, all them that had gone before them, the Deuill ſeducing both the one and the other, by an infinite number of impoſtures, falſe miracles, and lying Oracles, euermore carrying a double intent. For the Aſſyrians, hauing no Idolatry but in the hoaſt of Heauen, the Greekes (hardy and bold lyers) ranked in the rolle of their gods, Princes and Tyrants of their firſt knowledge, addicted to all vices & diſorders, as *Herodotus* re-

The Greekes notoriouſly infected with Idolatry.

rs, and the Oratour. *Si vero ſcrutari veteri, & ex eis quæ Scriptores Græciæ prodiderunt eruere coner, illi ipſi Maiorum Gentium Dij qui habentur, hinc à nobis profecti, in Cælum repercientur. Quærere quorum demonſtrentur ſepulchra in Græcia, &c.* Of mortall men, and whoſe graues & Tombes were daily to be ſeene; they made their Gods.

Numa Pompilius, enſtructed by the Phyloſopher *Pythagoras*, had learned of our Druides the very beſt of his Phyloſophie, as is written by *Clemens Alexandrinus:* prohibited the Romaines, to repreſent the Image of God, by any humaine figure and repreſentation, or any creature whatſoeuer, which was obſerued for an hundred threeſcore and ten yeares continuance. *Numa Romanorum Rex* (theſe are the very words of *Clemens Alexandrinus*, in his firſt Booke of diuerſities) *prohibuit Romanis, ne Homini, aut Animali ſimilem Dei facerent imaginem. Cum itaque Centum, & ſeptuaginta primis annis Templa ædificarent, nullam imaginem, nec affictam, nec deſtam fecere. Occulte enim iudicarat Numa quod id quod eſt optimum, non alia ratione, quam ſola mente vlli licet attingere.* And in his time, the Temples of the Romaines were in the middeſt of Forreſts and Wods (as we haue already ſaid) without any wals or couerture whatſoeuer; which continued ſo an hundred and ſeauenty years, and vntill the vnfortunate Reigne of

The Romans Temples in Forreſts and Woods in the time of *Numa Pompilus.*

Seruius Tullius, who hauing heard the winde of the proud Temple of *Diana* at *Epheſus*, built at the common charge of the Grecian people; aſſembled the Romans, and he cauſed one to be built in the Citie of Rome, in ſuch faſhion: as hee was the firſt that planted Idolatrie, formerly vnknowne in the Latines Land, which from that time forward, became plundged (euen as with vailed head) to the diuels ſeruice, who cauſed himſelfe to be adored vnder diuers figures, and by ſundry names of Gods; As the Orator (before alleadged) obſerued for principall Gods of the Gentiles; *Maiorum gentium Deos*, compriſed in theſe two Verſes.

The firſt man that planted Idolatry in Rome.

Iuno, Veſta, Minerua, Ceres, Diana, Venus, Mars,
Mercurius, Iupiter, Neptunus, Vulcanus, Appollo.

Becauſe, that ouer and beſide the deifying of the ſeauen Planets, they added to them the foure Elements; and afterward *Bacchus*, with other names of Diuels beſide, as *Euſebius* noateth.

The Romaines then thus enſtructed in Idolatrie by their King *Seruius*, who ſuffred iuſt puniſhment by a ſpeedy death (and by the hands of one of his own begetting) no ſooner ſet he footing in the Gaules: but he eſtabliſhed thorow all the Cities and Prouinces of them, the worſhippe and adoration of their falſe Gods. As it is affirmed by Saint *Auguſtine*; *Euſebius* in his fore-alleadged paſſage; and *Paulus Oroſius.*

And as the Citie of *Authune* in Bourgongne, was the firſt of the Gaules, that ſought for alliance with the ſaid Romans: euen ſo was it the firſt likewiſe, infected with their Demonomanie, to the end that they might appeare acceptable and pleaſing to theſe new-commers. The Inhabitants of this Citie, refer her foundation to the Patriarch *Gomer*, who made it one of the capitall Cities in his Kingdome. But howſoeuer, *Cæſar*, & the Noble Romaine Hiſtorian, make honorable mention of this ancient Citie. For *Tacitus*, in his Annales informeth vs, that vnder the Empire of *Tiberius Cæſar*; it was called *Auguſtodunum*, in memory of the Emperor *Auguſtus* (vnder whom it had bin built) and that then it had in it a moſt famous Vniuerſitie, whereunto the yong Noble men of the Gaules were ſent to ſtudie. *Apud Æduos maior moles exorta, quanta Gnut as opulentior. Auguſtodunum caput gentis, armatis Cohortibus Sacrouir occupauerat nobiliſſimam Galliarum ſubolam, liberalibus ſtudijs ibi operatam, vt eo pignore Parentes, propinquique eorum adiungeret.*

A famous Vniuerſitie at *Auguſtodunum*

In this Citie was prouided the Colledge of the *Druides*, the moſt famous of the Gaules: in all parts whereof, thoſe diuine perſonages taught the worſhip of the true God. And yet (to this preſent) is to be ſeene, the prints and markes of this Colledge of the Druides of *Authune*, at *Mont-Iou*, otherwiſe called *Mont-Dru*, that is to ſay, the Colledge of the Druides, and afterward named the Mount of *Iupiter*, diſtant a quarter of a mile from *Authune*, taking foure thouſand paces for a mile, after the manner of the Romaines account. Vpon this Mountaine (which

The Colledge of the Druides

Mont-Iou, or Mont-Dru, the Druides Mount or Colledge.

is

is Westward from the Citie) was raised a Temple to *Iupiter*; *Cybele*, Mother of the Pagans Gods, and to *Mercurie*.

On the North side, in the Suburbs of the Citie, neere to the Riuer of *Arou*, was another Temple dedicated to *Proserpina*, and her husband *Pluto*. And there was the dwelling of the *Bardes*, who lodged neere enough to the *Druides*, to receiue their commands: for, by knowledge of the Starres, they foretold of things to come. And therefore the Romaines named them *Genethliacus*, directers of Natiuities: and of them the memorie remaineth to this day, at the Port of *Authune*, which is called *Genethoye*.

Genethliacus, a foreteller of mens fortunes by their Nativities.

In the faire middle of this Citie, was the Temple of *Mars*, whom the Gaules (infected with Idolatrie) tooke to be their principall God: as best correspondant to their naturall disposition, being Martiall and Warlike.

On the East side of this small Hill, called *Philosia*, as one would say, a place destined for Loue, was the Chappell of *Cupid*, and of his Mother *Venus*, and round about it were Stoues and Hot-houses, where the daughters of delight and dalliance, won gaine for maintenance of their wretched liues, by the sinnes of their bodies. Close ioyning thereunto was the *Concoubarre*, that is to say, a thicket or thornie Copice, on the highest part whereof, was exalted the figure of a Cuckoe, made of luorie; before which yearely) at the Springs beginning, those scant-honest Wenches, sacrificed to their God *Priapus*, the first Cuckoe that they could catch.

Madames of the common gender, liuing in the Bordell or Stewes.

Like God, like Sacrifice.

In the highest part of the Citie, was the Capitall on the one side, and on the other the Temple of *Apollo*, ioyning to the *Fraixine* Streete, which we hold so called of Ash-trees, sometimes there growing. At the West side of the Citie was the Dog-quarter, where the Idole *Annubis*, with his Dogs-head stood fixed: And in that quarter, Cut-purses and Theeues were punished with death.

The Dog-like God *Anubis* in the Dog-quarter.

Beside these forenamed Temples, the *Authunois* had another, belonging to what Idole I know not, but named *Koch*: which they tooke for the Tutelarie God of their Citie, in imitation of the Romaines, who had their God named *Romanessius*. If this *Koch* were the *Roth*, or *Rothot*, which they of *Rouen* said, had bin the principall Idole of their Citie, and of whom it retaineth the name to this day: it may then be said, that such names were taken & deriued from the seede and off-spring of the Romaines *Romanessius*, as (in complement and flattery) honouring and reuerencing them, whereto the inhabitants of *Authune* addicted themselues too much. For vnder the Reigne and Empire of *Vespasian*, it was called *Ædua Flauia*, or *Flauia Æduorum*.

Romanessius the Tutelarie God of Rome

By example whereof, other Townes and Cities of Bourgongne, gaue themselues to the honoring of Idols, erecting and building Temples and Chappels to them. One to *Iupiter*, instead of *Ioigny*, called (by reason thereof) *Iouiniacum* to these times. Another at *Flauigny*, and at *Semur en l Auxon*, at *Auxerre*, in Latine *Autricum*. One to *Diana*, and her Nimphs of the Woods, whereto from all parts of the Gaules, the very greatest Maisters in Hunting, sent their Offerings of Gold and Siluer, and afterward (as times drew on) in faire Linnen cloathes, they sent the spoiles of Harts, and heads of the greatest Boares they slew in hunting. This Citie of *Auxerre* had diuers names, the most auncient whereof was *Autricum* (and not *Antricum*, *ab Autris*, as some say.) *Concilium Autrici*, in the *Itinerarium* of the Cosmographer *Æthicus*, made in the time of the Emperour *Theodosius* the elder, first of the name, in the yeare of Grace foure hundred. This *Itinerarium* was (to small purpose) imprinted vnder the name of *Antoninus Pius Augustus*, as *Hermolaus Barbarus* dreamed in his Annotations vpon *Plinie*. *Floardus*, in his Historie of *Rheims*, on the name *Durocortorum Remorum*, citeth for Author *Æthicus* in *Cosmographia*. *Gesnerus* in his *Bibliotheca*, saith, that he liued in the time of S. *Ambrose*, and *Symmachus*; and that this Citie of *Auxerre* was called *Antisidiorum*, now at this present *Altissiodorum*.

One Citie euill examples draws on many more.

The Hunters offerings to the Temple of Diana.

A Iournall of trauailes from Country to Country.

In the small Citie of *Dyon*, at this instant the chiefest of Bourgongne, in regard of the Parlement, and which was called but a Castell, by S. *Gregory Victor*, Archbishop of Tours, in his Historie of France, where he setteth downe the description, according as now it standeth, and watered with the Riuer of *Ouische*, which he called

ch Oscarum, and accompanieth it with another, which is not named by him, and thereof he maketh the entrance at one Gate of the Citie, and issuing forth at another. This is the torrent of *Suson* in winter, and yet without water in Summer; rier. This is the torrent of *Suson* in winter, and yet without water in Summer; ri-
ng from a Spring in the dangerous Vale of *Suson*, foure miles from *Dyon*, and one om S. *Seine*. In this Citie of *Dyon* was a Temple, dedicated to all the Pagan gods. The Romaines made such Temples for all the Gods, which they called *Pantheons*, ormed round, and open aboue: as that which is now at Rome, dedicated to the Mother of God, called S. *Maria la Rotunda*, the like is yet to be seene at *Dyon*, euen ich an auncient *Pantheon*, behinde the Church of S. *Benigne*.

A Temple called Pantheon, dedicated to all the Pagan Gods.

The entrance (at this present being the Quire of the moderne Church) as made in he forme of an Hemicicle, with strong Collomnes, and numbers of degrees, with wo Towers on both sides; the whole builded of Stones with wals and couertures, he rest is altogether round, open, and without couerture likewise in the roundnesse, uen from the toppe to the bottome, to receiue light, raine, and other iniuries of he Ayre. There are three stories or stages one aboue another, the two vppermost eing garnished with Ballisters of Stone. At the foote of this *Pantheon* are three Chappels erected one aboue the other: that highest, is dedicated to the most holy Trinitie; that in the middest, to the blessed Virgin; and that lowest of all, to the Martyre S. *Benigne*, the tutelarie Patron of *Dyon*, and where he was buried, after he had finished his course of life. Hee was the Disciple or Scholler of S. *Polycarpus*, the Scholler to S. *Iohn* the Euangelist, who sent him to the Gaules, there to proclaime the Law of Iesus Christ: and being arriued in Gaule, he was there martyred by the Gouernour thereof, named *Terentius*, Lieutenant to the Emperour *Marcus Aurelius* the Philosopher, Founder of *Dyon* (and not *Aurelianus*, as we read in S. *Gregory* of Tours) the first day of Nouember, in the yeare of Grace one hundred, sixtie and fiue.

The forme of the Pantheon at *Dyon*.

S. *Polycarpus* the Disciple to S. *Iohn* the Euangelist.

At *Talan*, halfe a mile beneath *Dyon*, on the beginning of the Mountaines, was a Mannor house of the *Druides*, and another of the *Bardes* at *Fountaines*, a quarter of a mile from thence. where (since then) hath bin builded the Church of S. *Ambrosian*, and the Castell of *Fountaines*, famous by the birth of the Father of Religion S. *Bernard*, of Noble extraction. *Et qui portoit de Sable à la Bande Eschiquettee d'Or & de Guenilles de deux filets.*

The place where the holy Father S *Bernard* was born

At the said *Talan* was a Temple, dedicated to the sacred Virgin, that should bring forth a childe: but afterward prophaned by the Romaines, and (by them) dedicated to their Gods *Apollo* and *Mercurie*; yet rechanged after againe, and consecrated by the Christians, in honor of the Mother of God, and graced with Miracles. The ouer-plus of those Antique Temples, may be read in them, that haue written the Annales of Bourg-Ogne.

The Romains prophaners of temples

But seeing we are now come to the Mannor and Colledge of the Druides and Bardes; we will touch one word more of them, as we passe along, and then returne to the *Demonomanie* of the Romaines.

There remaine some noates in good Authors of ancient Philosophers, who report their ordenary dwellings to be in Woods, and not in Cities, Townes or Villages, peopled with inhabitants. As in the Forrest of *Iury*, vulgarly called the Forrest of *Dreux*, where the remainder of the Castle is to be seene, belonging to the Prince of the Druides, and where he made his continuall abiding. And round about it (in the same Forrest) were Cottages and small houses of other Druides, that were neere in Office about their Prince: who yeerely the seauenth day of September (the beginning of the yeare, Sacred by the Druides) assembled the generall States of all the Gaules Prouinces, at the foote of the Mountaine of *Chartres*.

The Office and charge of the Druides in the Gaulish Prouinces.

These Druides were dispersed and scattered, throughout all the said Prouinces, whereof they had the charge as well of the Sacrifices and Priesthoods, as also of Pollicie Criminall and Ciuile, and institution of the Gaulish youth. They knew also the affaires of State, as well in matters of peace, as for warre: so that they were Priests and Iudges together, iudging without any further appeale; so saith *Cæsar* and *Strabo* likewise, speaking thus. *Iustissimi omnium opinione sunt Druidæ, ideo & priua-*

ta,

& publica iudicia eorum fidei mandantur, adeo vt rem etiam Bellicam antea indictam & Martem collaturi, illis iubentibus desistunt: Capitis quoque iudicia horum sententia permittuntur.

The Druides did not set downe any thing in writings.

And because those wise Druides did not set downe any thing in writing, but their learning and doctrine was giuen from hand to hand, by Cabala and tradition, we must make our recourse to the pens of strangers, as namely to the Romans, and after them to the Greekes.

Cæsar was the first of the Latines, who in his Commentaries hath said somewhat, and vpon his relation, and *Iulius Celsus*, Secretary of his Cabinet: the Greeks, *Strabo, Possidonius, Diodorus Siculus, Plutarch, Atheneus, Pausanias, Lucian* and others haue likewise said something.

The deuotion of the Gaules.

Cæsar in his Commentaries obserueth in the first place, that the Gaules (in generall) were very full of deuotion, and that in their sicknesses of minde and body; they made their recourse to deuotion, to vowes and Sacrifices, and, for discharging themselues in those cases, they made their repaire to the Druides. But because he hath added thereto somewhat of their humaine Oblations, wholly dyed red with Blood: that (by his comforts) is annexed to his narrations, to make the conquest of the Gaules the more admirable. According to a common saying of the Oratour, that ordenarily such as come from farre: *Sæpe aliquid de suo, cum mentiant latius.* And as they say at Paris: *Hee may easily lye, that commeth from farre off.*

The two Estates among the Gaules, Clergie and Nobilitie.

Hee enstructeth vs moreouer, that throughout the Gaules, there was but two Estates (speaking as now we doe at this present) that of the Cleargie, which had the power of Iustice annexed thereunto, which at this day is reduced to the third Estate (by ignorance in the Noble men.) And the other of Nobilitie. For hee speaketh nothing of the third Estate, which is tearmed *Plebeian. Plebs pene seruorum habetur loco, quæ per se nihil audet, & nulli adhibetur consilio.* They were not called to the Generall Estates, nor to publique charges. *De his duobus generibus alterum est Druidum; alterum Equitum.*

The Offices and charges belonging to the Druides in their gouernement.

The Druides (saith he) had the charge and superintendencie of the Sacrifices, publique and perticuler, and of preaching what ought to be beleeued in Religion. The direction of the Vniuersities and Colledges, whereto the yong Nobilitie were sent to studie. In causes Ciuill and Criminall, as well in State matters, that is to say, for that which respected and concerned as well generally, as perticularly; of Successions, Deuisions, and generally for the Iudgement of paines and punishments, for chastising of bad behauiors, and regarding the honors and gouernments of such, as for their faithfull seruice, deserued recompences.

Excommunication vsed by the Druides, and the powers thereof.

If the Generall Estates in some Prouince, or the Perticuler, obeyed not (saith *Cæsar*) that which the Druides had determined by their sentence and iudgement: they thundered against them, and deprined them of the Sacrifices. After this excommunication, such refractarie people were auoided and hated as execrable, forsaken of God, and of men: who fled from their frequencie and conuersation, without saluting, receiuing them into their houses, speaking or conferring with them; as fearing, least they should be pollured and blemished by touching them. They might complaine, but there was no Iustice for them.

Tacitus addeth to this power of the Druides, that they presided in the Generall Estates; that the Nobilitie dared not to speake, without their permission: yea, they had such height of prerogatiue and authority, as, beside interdiction and suspension from the Sacrifices; they sent such to death as had deserued it, and whom they had condemned with such sentence. *Silentium per Sacerdotes quibus tum, & coercendi eius est, imperatur. Caterum neque animaduertere, neque vincire, neque verberare quidem nisi Sacerdotibus permissum, non quasi in pœnam, nec Ducis iussu, sed quasi Deo imperante.* And the same *Tacitus*, speaking of the force and power of their Excommunication, informeth vs, that such men of the Nobilities body, as in warre had suffered their Shields to be lost, or taken from them; were interdicted from publique assemblies, yea, and from the Sacrifices also. *Scutum dereliquisse præcipuum flagitium, nec aut Sacris adesse, aut consilium inire ignominioso fas est.*

The

The Metropolitane Prince of the Druides and the manner of his election.

These Druides were presided and commanded by their Metropolitane, knowne the name of *Prince of the Druides*, who had that supreme place during life. By decease, they proceeded to election of another in his Office, by plurality of the yces loudly pronounced, and not by Scrutinie: but in this election, none were downe in the Bill, but onely the most excellent in learning, and integrity of life. *mortuo, si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; at si plures sint pares, suffragio uidum* (the Kings, Princes and Nobles had no voyce at all in those Elections) *aditur.* The Princes and Nobilitie (by their Armes) fauoured those Elections, if y came to them.

The Druides free from all taxations.

All the Druides were exempted from contributions and charges, both in times of ace and warre, whereto they could not be constrained to march. So that in rerd of their great priuiledges; the Noble men sent their Sonnes to their Colledges, t they might attaine to the dignitie (by Studie) to become of the Druides Soctie.

The time of Studie limited to their Schollers.

The Rules and Precepts of the Druides Doctrine, were reduced and couched in rses, which they taught to their Schollers, and by hart: and the time of Studie, such as would excell other in learning, was twenty yeares. For in those things ich concerned the Sciences, they had not any Bookes by writing; but all must apprehended and engrauen in the Booke of Memorie. For Contracts and or publique Acts, they were written in the Gauliſh-mother tongue, which *Cæ*, and others that haue followed him (against all reason) called the Greeke ngue.

The Gaulish tongue called Greeke by *Cæsar* & others.

And therefore, in this case, I entreate the Reader not to dislike of this digressi- to vnderstand and know, whether the Gaulish tongue was the same, which s knowne to the Sages of Ægypt, Greece and Italie, by reason of the Druides. d that it was not without subiect, that the excellent Poet *Du Bartas*, speaking of auncient Gaulish tongue said.

Before the Latine name, and the Romulides,
Were by Euander sharpned in such sort:
The Learned-Holy speech of Bardes and Druides,
In Greece, in Italie, and Memphis held report.

We will shew what this Gaulish tongue was, which we haue maintained to be the ne; that (by wrong information) was said to be Greeke.

Concerning certaine names

Some haue thought, that it was perticularly to the Gaulish Nation, neither Greeke Latine, building vpon some passages of *Suetonius*, in the name of *Galba*, which affirmeth to be Gaulish, & to signifie a man grosse and fat, plumpe or well liking, ing full the belly of his doubtlet: as now a dayes we vse to say; *Hee hath a good belly.* Or that of *Beco* (in the life of *Vitellius*) which in the *Tolosane-Gaulish* tongue, nifieth the Bill or Beake of a Capon. Or of *Caracalla*, a name which in the same ngue signifieth a Garment for a Horseman-Souldior, vulgarly called a Cassocke, *aque* or Mandillion, according to the common kinde of speaking at Paris, where s pronounced instead of R. As contrariwise the Romaines doe, in imitation of *Parisians*, pronouncing *Fusius Camillus: Si quis Asam Struxesit*, instead of *Fu- Camillus*, and *De Aram Struxerit*, and a thousand such like. And so of *Caligula*, tocking or Hose, proper for a Gaulish Horseman, made in forme of halfe-Buss, and of curried-leather, the soales whereof were set thicke with nayles, for the nger-lasting: these Buskins rose vp to the calfe of the legge. The like of *Alauda*, Gaulish word, the meaning whereof is a Larke, the firname of that Gaulish Le- on, so much renowned for valour and readinesse. These are the most pregnant d pressiue passages to serue their turne, which (neuertheless) are not sufficient to ld on, for inferring and concluding from thence, that the Gaulish tongue was ther Greeke nor Latine, but perticuler by it selfe. Whereto wee may answere, t it is a Romaine which speaketh it, and as well the Greekes as the Romaines ue confused and altered proper names, and appellatiues of the auncient Gauls, acding to their owne fancies, as we haue already said before in other places.

Pronouncing one Letter for another.

The Larke legion of the Gaules very famous.

The Romans and Greekes altered names of the Gaules as themselues pleased.

The

to make themselues vniuersall in all their Sciences, Customes & Ceremonies; which soone after they carried into Italie, Greece and Ægypt. For euery one knoweth, that *Plato* was the most famous Phylosopher, which euer had beene in Greece.

Learning brought into Italie by *Pythagoras*.

Concerning Italie, Science was brought thither by the Phylosopher *Pythagoras*, a natiue of *Thuscane*, who, according to the *Druides* manner; caused Colledges to be erected, or rather Conuents and Monesteries well gouerned. He called his Conuent ἐμπεδοκλεῖον, as we say a Church. So speaketh (well to purpose) *Clemens Alexandrinus*; according to whose testimonie, the Priests and Iudges of Ægypt had deriued the very choisest of their Ceremonies, as well for Religion, as Iustice. So that in the same authoritie of the Prince of the *Druides*, who had the dignitie of the high Priest-hood, and the intendance or Soueraigne Gouernement of Iustice: the *Aegyptians* had of their Bodies and Colledges, a Prince, Chiefe of Iustice, whom they called (according to *Diodorus Siculus*, and *Aelianus*) *Principem Iudicij*. So likewise were they Priests and Iudges together, ened in the same manner as the *Druides* were.

Pythagoras was Schoolemaister to *Numa Pompilius*, second King of the Romaines, so saith *Clemens Alexandrinus*. *Numa Pompilius Romanorum Rex erat Pythagoreus*. Hee taught him the Ceremonies of Sacrifices, and of Religion, as also how to gouerne the Romaines by good and holy Lawes, drawne from the Gaulish customes, and obserued by the wise *Druides*. In like manner the Greekes had for their Law-maker *Draco*, and after him *Solon*, Founder of the *Areopagites* at *Athens*: hauing learned of the Gaules which passed into Greece, at the time before noated, *Tarquinius Priscus* being then King, the fift of the Romaines. For, before that passage, the Greekes were but meere children, so speaketh diuine Plato, *In Critia*, being stupified in such grosse ignorance; as they knew not Phylosophie, Astrologie, Geometrie, and other parts of the Mathematicks. The Ægyptians knew not any more, and whatsoeuer is found written of them before that named time; they are nothing else but Fables and tales, made vpon pleasure, without any certainty, or appearance of probabilitie.

The grosse ignorance of the Greekes, and likewise of the Ægyptians.

Aesculapius and *Pimander*, the true Fables of Diuinitie of the *Druides*.

Mercurius Trismegistus, instructed in the Schoole of the *Druides*; had there his eyes vnsealed, and by communication with his *Aesculapius* and *Pimander*, which are the true Fables of the *Theologie* of our diuine *Druides*, and which hee wrote in the Greeke tongue, proper and naturall to the Gaules; he taught a solide and perfect Doctrine. All the Sages and Phylosophers, *Solon*, *Thales*, *Chilo*, *Periander*, *Cleobulus*, *Bias*, *Pittacus*, *Pherecydes* the Syrian, *Pythagoras*, *Anaxagoras*, *Numenius*, and Diuine *Plato*, all men renowned for Phylosophie: had learned from the *Druides*, the keye and secret of the Soules Immortalitie; of Diuinitie, Astrologie, Phylosophie Morall and Naturall, and other good Sciences, accounting their labour pleasing and acceptable, comming into the Gaules Countrey, to sucke from the sweetest bottome, the excellent learning of our Phylosophers, whereof they had begun to taste, by commerce and frequentation with the Gaules dwelling in Greece, and the firme-land of Asia. For all those men forenamed, had no noate or fame, but since the passage of the Gaules thither, and about the yeare of the World three thousand fiue hundred sixtie, and almost to sixe hundred yeares.

The *Druides* were instructer well neere to the whole world.

At what time *Mercurius Trismegistus* liued.

As for *Mercurius Trismegistus*, hee liued vnder *Ptolomie Lagus Soter*, ninth King of Ægypt, after *Alexander* the Great, the yeare of the World three thousand eight hundred thirtie seauen, some three hundred yeares before the Incarnation of the Eternall Word. So then if it were so, that the *Marsellians* should bring into France, the knowledge of Sciences, and of the Greeke (which quite contrary they drew from the Gaulish *Drudes*:) the reason is alleadged, because *Ptolomie* in his Geographie, speaking of *Achaia* (vnder which he comprehendeth most part of the Iles of Greece) saith in eloquent tearmes, that it was peopled by the Gaulish people, who (with their victorious Armes) carried thither their Religion, Police and Language, and so *Graecos à Gallis Litteras habuisse*. The *Elanians*, that is to say, the Greekes, learned of the Gaules, the knowledge of the Greeke tongue

and good Sciences; as it is concluded by *Clemens Alexandrinus*; and *Xenophon* in his Equiuocations, saith. *That Cadmus brought into Greece, Letters and Characters of writings, altogether like to them of the Galates*, that is to say, *Of the Gaules*. Wherefore *Du Bartus* hath said to good purpose, that the Language of the *Druides*, that is to say the Gaulish, improperly tearmed and called Greeke; was knowne to strange Nations, to wit, in Ægypt, Greece, and Italie, long time before that *Cadmus* and *Euander* had deliuered the knowledge and vndeestanding of Letters.

Before the Latines name, and the Romulides
Were by Euander sparpned in such sort:
The Learned-Holy-Speech of Bardes and Druides
In Greece, in Italie, and Memphis held report.

And to shew yet more clearely, that the Greeke tongue was the same of the Gaules, behold here two passages of *Cæsar*, which can receiue no reproach. The first is in his Commentaries of the Gaulish warre, thus set downe. *In Castris Heluetiorum tabulae repertae sunt Graecis Litteris confectae, & ad Cæsarem perlatae. That the Rowles of the Horsemen of the Switzers, People inhabiting a Countrey of the Gaules, were (after their defeate) brought to Iulius Cæsar, written in Greeke Letters.*

The other is in his sixt Booke, where he writeth, that the *Druides*, did set downe nothing of their Science and Learning, by writing: howbeit, in their affaires, they serued their turne with the Greeke tongue, as well in their Acts Publique, as Perticuler. *Neque fas esse existimant ea Litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis, privatisque rationibus Graecis Litteris vtantur.*

Lucian, a Greeke Author, who liued vnder the Empire of *Traiane*, Contemporane with *Plutarch*, describing our Gaulish *Hercules*, saith; *That the Gaules spake elegantly the Greeke Language, as being theirs naturally.*

S. Hierome, that glorious Light of the Church, and incomparable for knowledge and learning, had long time made his aboade in the Citie of *Treuers*, it being then the chiefest of the Gaules; and there hee ranne the course of his Studies, wrote the Paraphrase and interpretation of the Psalmes of *David*, and transcribed with his owne hand, the long labour of Saint *Hillaries* Synodes, as himselfe witnesseth in his sixt Epistle *Ad Florentium*. This worthie man, who liued the yeare foure hundred of our Saluation, in the Commentarie which hee wrote on the Epistle of Saint *Paul*, sent written to the *Galatians*, who in his time were them of the *Hellespont*, *Æolia*, *Phocæa*, *Ionia*, with other people of Greece and Asia (he had trauailed thorow all those Countries there, passing from Rome to the Holy-Land, where he confined himselfe all the rest of his dayes, and died at *Bethleem*) spake the same Language, as they then did at *Treuers*.

Treuers the Capitall Citie of the Gaules in those times.

S. *Hierome* died in the Holy-Land at Bethleem.

These considerations caused a resolution in the learned *Gulielmus Budeus*, the honor of our France, in his Booke *De Asse*, and in his Pandects on the first Law *De Ser. Corr.* at *ff. Quod ait Prætor*; *Lazarus Baif*, and other skilfull persons, to say: *That that Language, which thel Greekes* and *Romaines haue called the Greeke, was the Naturall and Maternall of the Gaules. From whom shee went to the Alemaignes, our Germaine Bretheren; to the Italians and Greekes; who of vs learned Eloquence, the Mathematickes and Philosophie.* This is it which heretofore moued many learned men, to report the conformitie of the most part of French vocables, to them that are called Greeke.

The resolution of diuers men concerning the Gaulish language.

The Alemaignes or Germaines, are not sundered from the Gaules, but by the Riuer of *Rhine*, which from all Antiquitie) hath made the bounds and limits of France and Germanie. And beyond the *Rhine* is *Franconia*, that is Orientall France, so much renowned by *Claudian*, *Ausonius*, *S. Hierome*, and the Bishoppe of *Auuergne Sidonius Apollinarus*. And it is not to be wondred at, if this neighbourhood occa-

The bounds and limits of Alemaigne & France.

occasioned, that the Greeke tongue, or (to speake better) the Gauliſh, had her courſe throughout Alemaigne, the moſt part whereof was peopled with naturall Gaules, as we haue ſaid. *Iulius Cæſar* writeth, that *Arioviſtus*, King of Alemaigne, vnderſtood and ſpoke perfectly the Greeke tongue, without neede of any Truchemman or Interpreter: which is not to be admired, becauſe it was his mother tongue. And *Cornelius Tacitus* hath obſerued in his *Germania*, that the Epitaphes in that great Prouince, were written in Greeke letters. *Monumenta, & Tumulos quoſdam Græcis Literis inſcriptos in confinio Germaniæ, Rhatiæque extare audio.*

If thoſe Greeke Letters had not bin thoſe, which the Gauliſh people brought thither, from whence ſhould they elſe come? For the ſame Authour noateth at the beginning of his relations, that no man of any ſtrange Nation had euer entred into Alemaigne, before *Iulius Cæſar*. *Quis præter periculum horridi & ignoti maris, Aſiâ aut Africâ, aut Italiâ relictâ, Germaniam peteret*? And that which the ſame Hiſtorian ſuppoſed, concerning the voyage of a pretended *Vlyſſes*; are meere lyes and inuentions, hauing taken *Vlyſſes* for, and inſtead of *Hercules*, the memorie of whom was venerable, as well among the Germaines, as Gaules. So that he muſt make his recourſe to truth. *Gallos atque Germanos nulli, aliarum Nationum connubys infectos fuiſſe. That the Gaules and Germaines had not any commerce and habitude, with ſtrange Nations.* And this is the reaſon, which moued *Ioannes Auentinus*, the Annaliſt of Bauaria, to ſay: *That the Alemaigne tongue was wholly like to the Greeke.*

The memorie of Hercules venerable with the Gaules & Germaines.

And as concerning that of the Iſle of Albion, called at this preſent England, heretofore peopled by the Gaules, as we ſhall hereafter more at large relate; it was that language of the Druides. For we learne by that Father of learning *Origen*; *Quo nemo melius, vbi bene dixit. That God, by his vnſearchable Prouidence permitted, that the Wiſe Druides ſhould paſſe from the Gauliſh Bretaigne, into great Albion, to the end; for gouerning the Inhabitants of the Iſle of England; to inſtruct them in their Language, and to giue them knowledge of one onely God, Creatour of the World.*

For the Language of the auncient *Spaniards*, *Ioſephus* deduceth their firſt Originall from *Tuball*, *Iubal* or *Ibal*; but hee ſpeaketh nothing elſe, neither haue the Greekes and Romaines made any great account. There was no acknowledgement of them, but vnder the conqueſt of Spaine, made by the Carthagenians, whom the Romaines ſent packing by force of Armes. And that which is ſpoken by a falſe and ſuppoſed *Berroſus*, with his Sequell; is a fabulous diſcourſe, without any likelihood of truth whatſoeuer. And the Spanish Hiſtorians agree with one conſent, that their prime anceſtors liued groſely in ignorance, and all ruſticitie. They ſpeake not any thing of their Religion, neither had they any *Druides*, to guide them in the way to Saluation: which is attained vnto, by the knowledge, worſhippe and ſeruice of one onely God. So that Poets haue made Spaine to ſerue as a Theater, for bloody and pittileſſe Tygers; for *Geryons* with three heads, and an infinite number of Monſters, and Sonnes of the Earth, deſtroyed and trampled on by our Gauliſh *Hercules*. They ſpeake nothing of the Gauliſh Nations comming thither.

The auncient Originall of the Spaniards.

The firſt Peeceſſours.

The writings of Poets concerning Spain.

The firſt Spaniſh Language, was that, which their moſt remarkeable Authours name *Sepharadin*, that is to ſay, *Armenia*, *Syriacke* and *Africane*; corrupted by commerce and frequencie of *Phœnitians*, *Tyrians*, *Carthagenians*, *Romaines*, *Vandales*, *Alaines* and *Sueues*: to whom ſucceeded the *Vuiſigothes*, iſſued from *Scandinauia*, as we haue ſaid, ſupplanted by the Moores of *Affrica*, who for a long time gouerned the Spaines, where they haue conſerued ſuch memorie of their Conqueſts, as moſt part of the proper names of Cities, Prouinces, Mountaines and Riuers there; are meerely *Arabe*, or mingled with the *Arabian* and *Gothiſh* language, euen to this day.

The firſt language of the Spaniards by their owne Authours.

Whereas the Gauliſh Nation (from all times) hath bin renowned for her Mother tongue; for her deuotion and ſinguler pietie; and for being the moſt ciuile, of all them on earth. According to the faithfull teſtimonie of the Greekes

The reuerence of the Gauliſh Nation from time to time.

Greekes and Romaines, whom truth it ſelfe hath forced to teſtifie for vs, yea, euen in our fauour and contemplation. Returne wee now againe to our *Druides*.

The principall thing, which they imprinted in the minde and memorie of their Schollers and Diſciples; was, *The Immortalitie of the Soule*, which ſerued as a ſharpe Spurre or Needle, to beare themſelues valiantly in hazards of Warre, and to deſpiſe death, by aſſured hope of eternall life. *Hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putabant, metu Mortis neglecto.* This *Cæſar* obſerued.

The Druides chiefeſt leſſon, Immortality of the Soule.

This being perſwaded as an Article of their beliefe; they taught them the Mathematickes, and namely Aſtrologie, which diſcourſed on the nature and motion of the Planets; the Creation of the World; the greatneſſe of the Earth; and the nature of things. And from Phyſicke, their Schollers mounted to Metaphyſicke, that is to ſay; to the knowledge of things purely eſſentiall and ſupernaturall, which are God and the Angels.

Other leſſons deliuered by them to their Schollers.

After *Cæſar*, *Strabo* ſpeaketh thus. *Among the Gaules, the Druides are honored aboue all other, and next to them goe the Bardes and Poets, (Vates, ſo ſay the Romaines, a name equiuocall and common, as well to them that make profeſſion of Poeſie, as to prepare Horoſcopes and Natiuities, and to foretell of future things, onely by inſpection of Phyſiognomie. And many Druides, and Druiades foretold to Romaine Captaines, that they ſhould attaine to the Empire, as wee reade in the Romaine Hiſtories.)* I let paſſe in ſilence, that which *Poſsidonius* reporteth of the Gaules, and of their Iudges and Prieſts the Druides: becauſe *Strabo* argueth to be lying and falſehood, whatſoeuer is alleadged by that Authour. Whereto the Naturaliſt *Plinie* (a bold lyer) hath added out of his owne braine, a thouſand reports of old tales, done vpon pleaſure: as of Egges hatched by Serpents, the vſe whereof was neuer practiſed by the *Druides*; without diſpleaſure offred to the honeſt man of *Chaſſeneux*, in his *Glory of the World*, who hath ſet downe Egges for *Armes of the Druides*, inſtead of Oaken Leaues and Acornes.

The Druides were Iudges and Prieſts of the Gaules.

Diodorus Siculus in his Antiquities, ſpeaking of the Gaules and Germaines (whom he comprehendeth all vnder the name of *Galatæ*) calleth our *Druides*, *Saronides*, whom hee maketh *Theologians* and Phyloſophers, honoured by the *Galates* aboue all other, and that after them went the *Bardes* and *Deuiners*: who by other Authours, and namely *Ammianus Marcellinus*, are called *Eubages*, and the *Druides*, *Drasidas* and *Druidæ*. For they haue had diuers names; *Saronides*, by one of the deſcendents of *Gomer*, who inſtituted the firſt Colledge of the *Druides*, in the Prouince of *Bretaigne Armorica*, as wee ſhall report elſewhere. *Semnothes* of *Samothes*, a ſir-name giuen to the Patriarch *Gomer*, our Gauliſh *Hercules*, whom the Bourgongnons make Founder of their Citie *Alexia*, or by the reſt, of *Flauigny*: And the *Piccards* of their Mother-Citie *Bratuſpantium*, on the ruines whereof are remaining *Breſtuell*, *Caſtelet* and *Camp-Reims*, *Beauuoir*, &c.

Semnothes or rather Samotheans.

Diogenes Laertius, at the beginning of the Phyloſophers Liues, writeth, that Phyloſophie receiued her ſourſe and firſt originall, not out of Greece or Italie; but from Nations farre further off. Becauſe among the Babylonians of Aſſyria, the *Chaldeans* made their profeſſion; the *Mages* among the *Perſians*; and among the *Celtes* and *Gaules*, the *Druides*, otherwiſe called *Samotheans*, that is to ſay more plainely, Diuiners.

Euen ſo *Suidas*, vpon this word Δρυΐδαι, ſpeaketh thus. *Druidæ qui & Semnothei Philoſophi Gallorum.*

S. Clemens Alexandrinus maketh honorable mention of the *Druides*, and other Gauliſh Phyloſophers, ſaying. *Philoſophie, moſt beneficiall and neceſſarie for Man, to guide and conduct to the path of Vertue, and the notice or knowledge of the Sciences: tooke her birth from the Druides, Gauliſh Phyloſophers.* Whence the Greekes did deriue. *Philoſophia res valde vtilis olim floruit apud Barbaros* (it was a cuſtome with the Greekes, to baptize with the name of Barbarians, all ſtrange Nations, more ciuilized then themſelues, alwayes children) *per gentes reſplendens; poſtea autem venit ad Græcos. Et autem præfuerunt Gallorum Druidæ, & Celtarum, ij qui Philoſophati*

phatis sunt. Non solius autem Philosophiæ, sed etiam omnium ferè artium fuerunt inuentores.

The whole scope of the Druides Studies.

Strabo writeth, that the *Druides*, beside the knowledge which they had in naturall things; practised also those Politicke and Morall. For they addicted all their Studies, to professe Vertue, and to auoide Vice, so that their Colledges were Seminaries and fruitfull Orchards, stored with men of knowledge, and of merit to gouerne an Estate. And so their Soules being pure and cleane from all soyle of sinne; it was not to be wondred at, that they became so capable of diuine secedes.

Ammianus Marcellinus, who had remained long time at Paris, and other places of the Gaules, with his Emperour *Iulian* the Apostata, vnder whom he serued as a Souldiour, and whose life he wrote; speaking of the *Druides*, with whom he had conferred very often, saith thus to their aduantage, concerning the Colledges of the Gaulish Priests. *Inter hos Druidæ ingenijs celsiores, sodalitijs adstricti consortijs, quæstionibus occultarum rerum, altarumque erecti sunt, & despectantes humana pronunciarunt Animas Immortales.* And this is no more then *Cæsar* said in his sixt Booke, formerly spoken of.

Great difference betwixt the Druides and Bardes or Diuiners.

The *Druides*, endowed with soules more sublime and exalted, then the *Bardes* and Diuiners, were assembled by Conuents and Colledges, lodging and dwelling together. They addicted themselues to the contemplation of secrets in Nature, and of Celestiall things; contemning humaine matters, as too lowe, and vnworthie of their meditation, which they mounted to a higher flight, to Heauen, and therefore they pronounced, that mens *Soules were Immortall.* Of them it was that *Ouid* spake.

Felices animæ quibus hæc cognoscere primis,
Inque domos superas scandere cura fuit.
Credibile est illos pariter vitijsque, ceiisque.
Altius humanis exeruisse caput.
Non Venus, aut Vinum sublimia pectora fregit.

And the Poet *Lucane* reporteth, that they onely were capable, of hauing perfect knowledge in all things, and to Philosophize, euen from the Phoenixe and Cedars of Libanus, to the Ante & Hisope. *De Syderibus atque eorum motu, de Mundi ac Terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de Deorum immortalium, vi, ac potestate disputant, & iuuentuti tradunt.*

Strabo addeth hereto, that they assured themselues, that as the face of the Earth was purged by the vniuersall Deluge: euen so the same World, shall (one day) by a generall burning. And that the beliefe of this consuming, being the Doctrine of the *Druides*, was passed to the Greekes and Romaines.

Esse quoque in fatis reminiscitur affore tempus
Quo Mare, quo Tellus, correptaque regia Cœli
Ardeat, & Mundi moles operosa laboret.

Diodorus Siculus writeth, that the Gaules made such an account of the *Druides* for their great knowledge and good life; that they beleeued them to be descended from Heauen, and to participate with the Diuinitie. *Druidas esse diuinæ naturæ consciosque, & tanquam Dijs propinquiores; horum intercessione bona à Dijs censent petenda.* And that the more men had from the *Druides*, the more blessings they receiued from heauen, in far greater affluence and plantation of all goodnesse. And that their holy Prayers being carried vp to heauen, they heaped all benedictions and most happy life vpon Gaulish People, such was the opinion of *Strabo*. So that the Gaules, grounding certaine beliefe, on the sanctitie of the *Druides*, their Iudges and Sacrificers, it was no wonder, if they grew wealthy, & heaped vp treasures in the Colledges, which they had through all the parts of Gaule. For they had the charge and direction of youth, that was sent to them from all places, as to an assured Schoole of Pietie. The

The Orator *Cicero* maketh mention of *Diuitiacus*, one of the principall persons in the City of *Anthune*, because being a *Druide*; hee had perfect knowledge in things Supernaturall and Diuine, whereby he could presage and foretell matters to happen afterward. *Diuitiacus ille Æduus, cum ex Druidis vnus esset, Naturæ rationem quam φυσιολογίαν Græci appellant, notam esse sibi profitebatur, & partim augurijs, partim coniectura, quæ essent futura dicebat.* For they measured them by their Elle of Idolatry, of Auguries, and such follies: as another,

——— Interpres diuum qui numina Phœbi,
Qui tripodas, Clarij lauros, qui sydera sentis,
E volucrum linguas, & prapetis omnia penna.

And *Tacitus* to the same purpose, *Sin permissum, Auspiciorum fides adhuc exigitur, & illud etiam hic notum, Aurium voces, volatusque inuestigare.* But they gaue not themselues to such Sorceries, till after they were corrupted with the Demonomanie of the Romaines.

Now, for the Immortality of Soules, taught by the *Druides* to the Gaulish youth; it made them to contemne death, as *Lucane* obserueth.

——— Vobis auctoribus vmbræ
Non tacitas Erebi sedes, Ditisque profundi
Pallida regna petunt: Regit idem spiritus artus
Orbe alio longe, canitis si cognita, vitæ
Mors media est.

The Gaules beleeued the Resurrection.

So that the Gaules, filled with the faith of this Resurrection, had no feare at all of death; it being no more then a passage to immortality, and a life happy & tranquile in all eternity. And this was it that made them so couragious and valiant in War, holding it a note of great cowardise, to be sparing of the body, which was to rise againe.

——— Hos ille timorum
Maximus haud vrget Leti metus. Inde ruendi
In ferrum mens prona Viris, animæque capaces
Mortis, & ignauum est reditura parcere Vitæ. Said the same *Lucane.*

The Gaules courage in going to Warre.

To this purpose is very obseruable, that which *Ælianus*, a Greeke Author reporteth, concerning the valiancie of the ancient Gaules, in his booke of Varieties. *I vnderstand* (saith he) *that the Celtes (among all the Nations of the World) are the most prompt and ready, in exposing themselues to perills and hazards. They marche to the Warre Crowned with Garlands and Chaplets of Floures, as if they were going to a wedding. To conserue the memory of such as dye in Warre, they cause to bee composed by their Bardes, Hymnes and Songs, containing their praises. They make Trophees with the Armes of their conquered enemies, to leaue notes and enfignes of their valour to posteritie. They hold it for great shame and ignominie, to flie from dangers and dreadfull encounters; so that they will not shun houses which fall by age, no more then those that are consumed with fire, suffering themselues rather to be scorched and burned, then cowardly to flie away. Others, beholding the Sea angerly swelling, and mounting out of her bounds and limits; stand boldly to the bankes and shoares, as if they would force her backe againe into her bed, and ordinary Channell, by strength of their bodies. And others throw themselues couragiously into the midst of her sterne billowes, to grasp and restraine their fury; fighting against them with their drawne Swords, their Arrowes, Darts, and Iauelins.* These are the very words of *Ælianus.*

The name of the Gaules dreadfull to the Romanes.

Polybius a Greeke Author hath left vs written, that the ancient Romanes, hauing seene the Gaules fight on the day of *Plombine*, and with inuincible courage; did so admire their Valiancie and generositie, that they reputed them to be the onely braue spirits of the habitable World. In like manner, this Nation was so dreadfull to the Romanes, after they heard Rome to be ransacked, and her Capitall; that at the least noyse of the Gaules arming themselues, the rumor (were it true,

true, or but ſuppoſed) cauſed all the States of Rome, without exception of age or qualitie, immediately to enter Armes. The Prieſts and Sacrificers ſtood exempted by their habits, as much to ſay, from going to Warre: but if any one talked of the Gaules comming, then, they were no more priuiledged then the meaneſt of the people.

The Alemaignes or Germanes, brethren to the Gaules, and liuing vnder the ſame Lawes and Policie, held reſoluedly the Immortality of the Soule. Whereupon, *Appianus Alexandrinus*, ſpeaking of this Warre-like Nation, ſaith. *The Germaine Nation is of wonderfull hardineſſe in Fights, holding great contempt of Death, by firme beliefe which they haue of the ſoules immortality, and the Reſurrection.*

Tacitus alſo writeth, *That they ſing when they march in Battale: Ituri in prælia canunt.* For the Germanes had the ſame Religion as the Gaules, of the *Druides* and *Bardes*, contrary to that which *Cæſar* ſaith in the ſixt Booke of his Commentaries, ſpeaking vnaduiſedly, and without hauing beene there.

But *Tacitus* writeth otherwiſe, becauſe he had hanted & frequented them, as formerly we haue related ſomthing, concerning their Temples. They branched aloft & below on Trees, ſuch as ſled from, and forſook their rankes on the day of Battel: or elſe drowned them in ſome Marle or Lime-pits, throwing clay and earth on them, becauſe they ſhould no more be ſeene. And marching to the Warres, euen as the Gaules doe, they haue at the head of their Armie, *Bardes*, who ſing hymnes and ſongs, compoſed to honor the memory of hardie and v. liant Captaines, dying in the Warres: the Germanes and Gaules taking the Refret or burthen of the Song, ſing after the *Bardes*.

The *Bardes* ſing tongs marching in the Armie.

Tacitus in his *Germania*, ſaith: *Sunt illis carmina, quorum relatu, (quem Barditum vocant) accendunt animos, futuræq; pugnæ fortunam ipſo cantu augurantur.* The Gaules celebrate the memory of their Patriarche *Gomer*, whom they place chiefeſt in the number of their worthieſt. The Germanes in like manner, ſaith *Tacitus*, *Fuiſſe apud eos Herculem memorant, primumque omnium virorum fortium.* Of our Gauliſh *Bardes* the Poet *Lucane* writes.

Vos quoque qui fortes animas, belloque peremptas
Laudibus in longum Vates demittitis ævum,
Plurima ſecuri fudiſtis carmina Bardi.

And the ſame Poet, ſpeaking of the excellency in knowledge of the *Druides*, wrote: That they onely were worthy and capable, to ſound and know the depth of the Diuine Eſſence.

Solis noſce Deos, & Cœli numina vobis
Aut Soles neſcire datum.

The *Druides* abiding in great Forreſts.

And that their dwelling was in the greateſt Forreſts.

Nemora alta remotis
Incolytis lucis.

Onely he wanted, in deſcribing the Garments of the *Bardes* and *Druides*, and what faſhion they walked in the Cities of the Gaules. Yet hee inſtructeth vs, that the King, *Numa Pompilius*, had brought into the City of Rome, the Ceremonies of Temples without Idolls, and the Order of Prieſts and Sacrificers, deriued from the Gauliſh *Druides*. And according to their example, their high-Prieſt was daily cloathed with a *Sotane* or Caſſocke gowne of fine white Serge, guirded to him with a broad guilded Belte, and ouer that a Rochet of fine white Linnen cloth, with the *Albo-Galerus*. And that the other Prieſts (like vnto the *Druides*) had but onely the white *Sotane*, and white hood or Bonnet, differing neuertheleſſe from that worne by the Prince of the *Druides*; and on his head a *Focquet* of fine white ſilke, with Eare-lappes of the ſame, and ſomewhat reſembling the Manniples of our Biſhops Miters.

What maner of Habit the high Prieſt vſed to weare.

He

He had written, that in publique aſſemblies, and namely, of the Generall States of all the Gaules (which was kept at Chartres yeerely, the ſeuenth day of the firſt Moone in September) the Prince of the *Druides*, was carried by the chiefeſt of the Gauliſh Nobilitie, hee ſitting vpon a broad Shield (according as the Kings of the Gauliſh Prouinces did) exalted on their ſhoulders; and ſo they walked three times about the aſſembly, as we haue formerly ſaid.

The Prince of the *Druides* carried vpon mens ſhoulders.

That at all times, and ſo often as the ſame High Prieſt went in ſolemnity to the ſaid Aſſemblies, one carried before him (as a Scepter and note of Soueraigne power, belonging to the Prieſthood and Iudgement) *A Hand of Iuſtice*, fixed vpon a rod of Iuorie. And that in imitation of the *Druides*, this Hand of Iuſtice, and other notes of Soueraignty, were carried before the High Prieſt of the Ægyptians, as hath beene elſewhere already obſerued.

The Hand of Iuſtice carried before the high Prieſt.

Now, concerning the other *Druides*, they neuer went abroad in publique; but carried in a mouing Chariot, drawne by Oxen or Buffells, like to our Kings of the firſt Ligne. And the ſaid Chariot was couered with Basketting Wicker, wholly round, like to a Coach of the Antique faſhion; the fore-part and hind-part finiſhing like the Prow and Poope of a ſhip. The forme of this Coach is noted by *Lucane*, in the place before alleadged, and named *Couinum*.

How the other *Druides* vſed to bee ſeene in publicke abroad.

Et docilis rector Roſtrati Belga Couini.

And *Tacitus* telleth vs, that the Prieſts of the Romanes, called *Flamines*, and the Princeſſes and great Romane Ladies, had taken the practiſe, vſe, and faſhion of thoſe Coaches or Chariots of the *Druides*. *Numa Pompilius* (in like manner) granted the ſame Priuilege to the Veſtal Virgins. The Noble Hiſtorian *Cornelius Tacitus* in his Annales, ſaith: *Suum quoque faſtigium Agrippina extollere altius, Carpento Capitolium ingredi, qui mos Sacerdotibus, & Sacris Druidibus communis, venerationem augebat fœminæ, quam Imperatore genitam, Sororem eius qui rerum potitus ſit, & Coniugem, & Matrem fuiſſe, monicum ad hunc diem exemplum eſt* Which *Tacitus* admireth vpon iuſt reaſon, as a rare example, this *Agrippina* to be Daughter, Siſter, Wife and Mother of Emperors, which neuer was at any time ſeene in France, nor yet elſewhere.

Priuiledges of the veſtal Virgins to ride in Coaches.

Agrippina, daughter, ſiſter, wife, and mother of Emperors.

The Greekes in all their Hiſtories, haue obſerued but *Lampedo* of *Sparta*, who was Daughter, Wife, and Mother of a King, but not Siſter, Sonne, Brother, Vnkle, and Father to Kings of France, (without hauing beene King) was ſeene in the perſon of Monſieur *Charles* of France, Count of *Valois*, ſonne to *Philip the Hardie*, brother to *Philip le Bell*, Vnkle to *Lewes Hutin*, *Philip le Long*, and *Charles le Bell*, and Father to *Philip de Valois*, Kings of France.

And to very good purpoſe is this Text of *Tacitus* remarkeable, that the vſe of Coaches was not common then, as now at this preſent, when all is out of reaſon and order, and they ought to be permitted but to eſpeciall perſons. For then there was ſufferance but to high Prieſts, and Illuſtrious perſons, to enter into the Capitole, and the Imperiall Pallace Coached. From whence iſſued the cuſtome obſerued in the Courts of Kings and Princes, to enter (on horſe-backe, or in Caroſſe) the Court; which was neuer permitted in France, but onely to Princes and Princeſſes of the Blood Royall. An honour (ſince then) communicable to Princes Strangers, allied to the houſe of France; to the Conſtable, prime Officer of the Crowne, & to Cardinalls Legates in France. But now a-daies, all is confounded, without rule or any obſeruance (whatſoeuer) of the dignity Royall: euery one will carue with the Prince, and goe as his Peere.

Coaches not ſo common then as now in theſe daies.

The order for entring the Court of France.

That which the Romanes called *Carpentum*, the Gaules in their language tearmed *Couinum*: the olde Gloſſe *Couinum, vehiculi genus cameratum, Galli ſua lingua Couinum appellabant.* Thoſe Coaches were made after the modell of *Gondolaes* and boates for paſſage, whereof the Gaules made good ſeruice, for going to any place (neerer then otherwiſe) by water. And thoſe Gondolaes are called by *Aulus Gellius, Galli*, as particularly proper to the Gaules, and of their owne inuention, hauing the Prow and Poope diſcouered, to haue the Rowers or Watermen there placed, and the middle couered Arch-wiſe.

A Chariot vſed in Warre.

Of

Of this fashion were the Coaches of the Gaules, large and broad behinde, like the Poope of a Ship, and pointed before, like the spurre of a Prow, couered aboue in round wise, and in the middest onely. According to this modell, the Romanes made their Chariots for Warre, whereon their Knights fought stoutly; *Cosinarius Eques*, in the same *Tacitus*.

And as the Coaches and Chariots of the ancient Gaules, were built in forme of Stems and Gallies, *Rostrata Cauna*; so in like manner were their Hose and Shooes.

The hose and shooes of the ancient Gaules.

The Romanes vsed shooes the fashion whereof is seene in ancient Paintings and Medalls, leaning to the fashion of *Espartignes*, and shooes of cords, vsed in Spaine) which they called *Soleas*. Those of the Gaules were not couered with leather, but in the midst onely, the heele squared like halfe a *Lozenge*, and the toe pointed and raised, as in forme of a Spurre.

The Romane Ladies Pantofles.

The Romane Ladies doe yet weare their high Patines and Pantofles, couered and diapred, the point or toe rising in two hornes, and the heele in halfe a *Lozenge*. The Romanes gaue their name to their shooes, as well as to their Bonnets *Galeri*, so saith *Varro*. *Pileus rotundus in modum Galeæ factus à Gallis inuentoribus dicitur Galerus*, for it is Masculine, and Neuter. So their hose and shooes were called *Galligæ*, or this instant tearmed *Galoches*.

Cicero reprehendeth *Marcus Antonius*, because he disdained to habit himselfe Romane like, but went cloathed after the Gaulish manner, *Cum Gallicis, & lacerna cucurristi*. *Aulus Gellius* saith: *Omnia ferme id genus quibus plantarum calces tantum infimæ tegantur, cætera prope nuda, & teretibus habenis vincta sunt, soleas dixerunt, non minus quam Græci Crepidulas. Gallicas autem verbum esse opinor nouum, non diu ante at tem Marci Ciceronis vsurpari cœptum.*

Vpon the same subiect we may say, that the ancient Greekes, in steed of Goblets, Cups and Glasses; serued themselues with Cornets and Rams-hornes to drinke in, as is obserued by *Athenæus* and the learned *Xenophon*. But the Gaules had their Cups and Boules to drinke in, not made round and high; but long and Ouall-wise, in forme of a Shippe or Galley. Wherefore the Romanes called those Vessells *Galeolæ*, which we now at this day tearme *Gondolues*. *Nonius Marcellus*, *Sinum & Galeola Vasa genus fuit. Varro*. in his ancient liues of the Romane people, saith. *Phœrat Pinum in Mosella positum, aut Galeola, aut Sinum*. And from thence descended the ancient *Verbe Gallique*, that is to say; to drinke louially; to row in a good Galley like a Gaulois. The same *Varro*, cited by *Nonius Marcellus*, saith: *Gallare est Bacchari Varro. Cum illo cantato, vtdeo Gallorum frequentiam in Templo, qui dum effert iam hora, Deam adhuc non potuerunt adis signo, & Deam Gallantes vario retinebant studio, &c.* Now adayes, at the Tables of our Kings, Princes, and great Lords, the ancient custome is retained, to set at one end of them Shippes of Gold, or Siluer enammelled with Gold, and in them are placed Salts, Spoones, Forkes, Knines and Napkins, by example of the ancient Gaules, who euer made vse of such seruice, as a note and memorall of their ancient Originall.

The Order now adayes at great tables.

The Habit of the Druides.

Returning now to the *Druides*, they were clothed like to the Chanons Regulars, of S. *Augustines* Order at Paris, at S. *Geneuiefue*, S. *Victor*, S. *Lazarus* in the Suburbs of *S. Denys*.

Habit of the *Bardes*.

Poor Schollers

But concerning the *Bardes*, how they were distinguished from the *Druides*, by dwelling separated; so in like manner were they garmented. For the *Bardes* were cloathed poorely and simply, in a duskie or smoaky colour, euen of the same fashion and manner, as goe the *Capettes* of *Montagu* Colledge at *Paris*. For they haue a Cowle or Capouche close and strait, sowed to their Cassock, to couer them against the Ayres stormes and iniuries: and ouer that, their long Cloake or Houpe-land, without any coller, but tied with a Tach-hooke of wood. And because they of Xaintonge delighted to goe cloathed in the *Bardes* fashion, *Martiall* and other Latine Poets called them *Santones Bardocucullatos*.

Gallia Santonico vestit Bardo cucullo
Cercopithecorum penula nuper erat.

Yet to this day, not onely in Xaintonge, but in all the rest of Guienne, Gascoigne and

and Languedocke; most part of the men goe cloathed in the naturall colour of the *Minimes*, (a light sootie colour, with an eye of grey in it) hauing sleeues to their Cloakes, and a little Cowle or Capouche, to thrust the head in.

Come we now to the Romanes Demonomany, brought into Gaule.

Cæsar in his Commentaries, supposed the Gaules (in his time) to adore *Mercurie* as the very principall and greatest of their gods, and to haue many Idolls and Images of him. They made him the inuenter of Arts, the guide and conducter to Merchants, and other men in their Voyages; because hee had the whole power of giuing riches, and all affluence of good things.

Cæsar his opinion of the Gaules gods.

After *Mercurie*, they worshipped *Apollo*, *Mars*, *Iupiter*, and *Minerua*: For *Apollo* healed Diseases, *Minerua* instructed in Workes and Trades; *Iupiter* held the Empire of the heauens, and *Mars* presided in fights and battels.

Bloody Sacrifices offred by the Gaules.

And adding to this first supposition of Idolatry, murder and slaughter; hee feigneth, that to all those imaginary and fantasticke Deities, the Gaules offered in bloody Sacrifice, liuing men of all qualities, innocent and faultie, good and wicked indifferently, according as the humor tooke them. Such (saith he) as they found

Liuing men offered in Sacrifices.

afflicted with some incurable disease, exposing themselues boldly to dangers and hazards of the Warre; offered liuing men, in stead of Beasts for Sacrifice, or else made vowes to offer them.

In these Sacrifices they made vse of the *Druides* Ministery; as neuer beleeuing that the Maiesty of the immortall Gods, could and would recompence the life of one man, with that of another. This was, because they held publiquely Schools of such bloudy Sacrifices. Hee adethd moreouer (lye vpon lye) that the Gaules had

Huge Idolls with liuing men in them.

Idolls of immeasurable greatnesse, made and composed of Oziers and Wickers, which they filled with liuing men, and then set them on fire, to burne them aliue, being stuffed with flame and smoake, and so consumed to ashes.

Offenders in high treason burn'd among the Gaules.

But *Cæsar* returning to truth, and the ancient Custome obserued amongst the Gaules, of burning malefactors publiquely, and principally the Criminalls in high Treason (as they would haue done as much to the pretended King of the Switzers, *Orgetorix*, if he had not bestowed death on himselfe) he saith, that the execution of them which had beene condemned to death for crimes; was a most acceptable oblation to the immortall Gods. Is not this conforme to the doctrine of the Old Testament, that is an agreeable worke to God, to wipe the wicked out of the Booke of Life, and to take them from off the face of the earth?

Cæsar maketh his conquest of the Gaules wonderfull to the Romanes.

Cæsar, for his owne aduantage, and to make his conquest of the Gaules more admirable to the Romanes, hath described the Gaules, wholly comparable to the inhumane *Lestrigons*. But instead of arming them with constancy and magnanimity, which are ordinary companions with the Queene of Vertues, Iustice; hee supposed them all to be died red in the bloud of their Citizens, especially in speaking of their Generall Assembly. For he saith in his fift booke, that *Indiciomarus*, hauing made an Assembly or generall Muster in Armes (which was, after the Gaules manner, an infallible note of commotion and ouuerture of warre) ordained by publique Cry, that all youthes (aged fourteene or sixteene yeeres) stood bound to appeare armed to their vttermost. And hee that came last, was to be massacred before the assembly in the same place, after he had beene first tortured with all torments, and the most cruell punishments that could be deuised.

The Gaules came armed to generall assemblies.

Most certaine it is, that the ancient Gaules went alwaies armed to the Generall Assemblies. *Tacitus* saith in his *Germania*: *Vt Turba placuit, considunt armati. Titus Liuius*, speaking of such Assemblies in his Romane History, saith. *In his noua terribilisque species visa est, quod armati (ita mos gentis) in consilium venerunt.* A Gaule could neuer be taken without a sword by his side, his Lance or Iauelin in his hand. At feasts and banquets, as going about their very meanest affaires, *Tacitus*. *Tum ad negotia, nec minus sæpe ad conuiuia procedunt armati.* Their seruants following their Maisters, were it in the hall of banqueting, carried Shield, Lance, and other Armes of their Masters. *Athenæus* saith in his *Dypnosophists*: *That going to their Temples, the place of all assurance, they went Armed.* And the Panegyrist said, *Maiores vestri hæc Templa ingrediebantur, nisi armati.*

The Gaules went armed about all their affaires.

In

The Gaules born to be warriours.

In briefe, this Nation declared in all their actions; that they were generous, warre-like, inured and fashioned to manage Armes. In the generall Estates, they approued the sayings of their Prince, by the clattering of their Armes. *Si Principis sententia placuit, frameas concutiunt: Honoratissimum assensus genus est, armis laudare;* Striking the Steele of their Lances on their Shields, saith *Tacitus* in his *Germania*. And in his Annales, speaking of the Oration of *Ciuilis*, he saith. *Vbi sono armorum, tripudysque (stabilis mos) approbata sunt dicta.* They exalted their Princes and Generalls of Armies, vpon broad Shields, so soone as by the resultation of the generall Assembly, they were declared to be such. And the same *Tacitus* saith againe. *Brinno Impositus Scuto (more Gentis) & sustinentium humeris vibratus Dux eligitur.* At their reception, or (to speak better) their eleuation, the Gaulish Nobility take their Oath of fidelity to them, vpon their Armes: A custome kept by the ancient French as *Cassiodorus* hath obserued. *Iudicamus Parentes nostros inter procinctuales gladios (more maiorum) Regalem constituisse dignitatem.* And the Bishop of Poictiers, *Fortunatus*, who liued vnder the Kings of our first Ligne, in his *Epithalamium* of *Chilperick* and *Golsinda* of *Spaine*.

Vtque fidelis erit, gens armata per arma
Iurat, iure suo se quoque lege ligat.

But that the Gaulish Nation, so milde and so benigne, euen toward Strangers, should be so cruell against their owne bloud, in an age so tender as fifteene or sixteene yeeres; this must needs stand out of all beleefe. Resembling (to speake vprightly) the Tales of the Storke, whereof *Plinie* speaketh in his Naturall Historie, reciting their meeting. These Creatures (saith he) assembled together yeerely in the Moneth of August, and in a wilde field of Asia, called *Pithon*, to conceiue (from thence) the drinesse of other Countries beyond *Thrace*: and after they haue held among them some forme of Councell, the last Storke that came to the *Rendevous*, is torne in peeces by all the rest. *Pythonos Comen vocant in Asia patentibus campis, vbi congregatæ, inter se murmurant. Eam denique, quæ nouissimæ aduenit, lacerant, atque ita abeunt.*

Diodorus Siculus, and the Geographer *Strabo*, well-neere Contemporanes together, and who did (more diligently then *Cæsar*) obserue the Gaulish customes; toucheth not so much as one word of this cruelty. Indeed the latter of the two saith, that at publique Diets, he who first shall interrupt and trouble the Assembly, by importune discourse, hearing him that proposeth the Herald, or Vsher of the doore, menaceth him with his sword drawne, to aduise him to be silent: which if he reiterate to the third time, and perceiue his aduertisements vnprofitable; hee cutteth from his Cassocke or Mandillion, such a lappet, as the rest shall remaine vn-vseable to him, a note of ignominie, for hauing no better brideled his tongue, when he had most need.

A good note for barbarous babblers.

And yet notwithstanding, there are Authors, who haue credited the Gaules to be armed with all cruelty. For *Lucane* painteth their supposed gods, with humane blood, in stead of Cynoper & Vermillion, a colour wherewith the Romans would disfigure their Idolls on the daies of great feasts, as we vnderstand by *Plinie*. *Lucane* giueth to the Gaules, these imaginary Gods.

Et quibus immitis placatur sanguine diro
Tentates, horrensque feris altaribus Hesus
Et Taranis Scythicæ non mitior ara Dianæ.

AN Opinion followed by *Lactantius Firmianus*, in his Diuine Institutions: whereunto we may answere in the same manner, as *Plutarch* did in the life of *Pelopidas*. That such abhominable, cruell, and barbarous Sacrifices, were neuer acceptable to any of the gods, or to any Essence, better or more powerfull then ours. Considering that there are no Typhons or Gyants, who haue the domination of the world: *But the onely All-mighty, who is the Father of Gods and Men.* And to thinke that

that there be gods or demy-gods, that can delight themselues with murder, and effusion of bloud of men, vndoubtedly is a meere folly. But if it were so, there is no other account to be made of them, but of such as haue not any power: For it is the signe of a base and wicked soule, when it shall imprint in it selfe such strange and vngracious appetites, and let them dwell there still.

Cæsar deceiu'd in the Gaules Originall.

But like as *Cæsar* (trusting to other mens reports) was grossely mistaken in that matter, which concerned the Religion of the ancient Gaules; euen so hath he dealt in the case of their Originall, writing thus: *Galli omnes a Dite patre se prognatos reputant: All the Gaules deriue their Originall from Father Dis.* The Romanes called *Pluto* god of Hell, the Rich Father, *Ditem Patrem*, Father of Wealth and riches, because the Mines created by the Sun and Moon, are drawn from the fruitful wombe of the earth.

Effodiuntur opes irritamenta malorum.

Cæsar, to vnderprop his opinion with some apparant reason, alleadgeth afterward; *That the Gaules had learned such beleefe of the Druides. Idque a Druidibus proditum dicunt.* Next he alleadgeth the custome vsed by the Gaules, of accounting by nights, and not by daies. *Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis, non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt, & Dies natales, & Mensium, & Annorum initia sic obseruant, vt Noctem Dies subsequatur; The Night preceded the Day.*

How the *Druides* counted their yeares & moneths.

According to the diuersitie of Climates, Moneths, Dayes, and Yeares haue had diuers beginnings. The wise Druides began their yeeres, and counted their Moneths by Nights, and not by dayes: in the same manner as the Iewes did, who had their yeares of two fashions; the vulgar or the Naturall for one, and the other was called Legall, or holy.

Of the Legall or sacred yere.

This last named, began at the Equinoctiall of the Spring time, in the Moneth of March, which they called *Nisan*, according as God had commaunded the great Law-giuer *Moyses* in *Exodus* 22.17. when the Israelites departed from the bondage of Ægypt, to prepare towards the Land of Chanaan, which was promised them. This Equinoctiall entred it selfe, the fourteenth day of the Moone of March, vpon which day the Iewes celebrated the Feast of Easter. But at this present the Equinoctiall of the Spring (when the dayes begin to exceed the nights in length) falleth not but about the twentieth of March, since the reformation of the Calender, made by Pope *Gregory* the 13. the yeere of Grace, 1581.

At what time the Æquinoctiall entred, by the Iewish account.

And like as the Hebrewes began their yeeres by the Moneth of March, and of September: so likewise were their Moneths Lunary, diuided into thirteene Moneths, and baptized by these names: *Nisan, Iiar, Siuan, Tammuz, Ab, Elul, Tizri, Marchesuan, Kisleu, Tebet, Sheuet, Adar* and *Veadar*. Marche, Aprill, May, Iune, Iuly August, September, October, Nouember, December; Ianuary and February, first and second.

The names of the Months according to the Hebrewes.

How many daies the Solarie yeere contained.

For, because the Solarie yere had three hundred sixty fiue daies and sixe houres, which redoubled foure times, maketh from foure to foure yeeres, a naturall day of foure and twenty houres, from whence ensueth the Bissextile; and, accounting by Moones, there are onely three hundred fifty and foure daies, by reason of allowing twenty eight daies for each Moone: the Hebrewes made from three to three yeeres, a thirteenth Moneth, which they *Intercalled* and made it of thirty daies.

A thirteenth moneth made by the Hebrewes.

The *Intercalary* Moneth was called *Ve-Adar*, the second Moneth of February, because it had place betweene *Adar* and *Nisan*, February and Marche. And as for the Moneths of Marche, May, Iuly, September, Nouember and Ianuary; they were of thirty dayes, and the other but nine and twenty. So by the meanes of this *Intercalary* Moneth, the Lunary or Moone yeere, equalled that of the Sunne: and the first day of the Moone of Marche, made the principall, and the beginning of the Sacred or holy yeere.

The Moone yeere equalled the Sun yeare.

The yeere Ciuill or Vulgar, began the first day of the Moone, properly termed the 6. Moone, because the Moones intermingled themselues one vpon another.

The beginning of the Vulgar yeere.

Isicles hang i'th' Ayre. Orithiaes Loue,
Rocke-rending blasts to Scythia doth remoue
Lazilie Languish'd: Bacchus, Vulcan appeare,
To checke the cold of best moneths in the yeere.

The seuerall names of December.

This Moneth, or rather Moone of December, was named by the Hebrewes *Tebet*; by the ancient Gaules *Kimerinon*, and by the Germanes, *Haleg-Monacht*, that is to say, *The Holy Moneth*, as wee learne by venerable *Bede*, in his booke of *Times*; where he saith: *The Ancient Germanes named the Moone Monaon, and by Almanish aspiration, Monacht, Princesse of the Night, who began their yeare at the Solstice of Winter, in the moneth of December, which they called Sacred or Holy, because therein were performed their solemne Sacrifices, for a good beginning of the yeere. That the Moneth of Aprill was called (by them) Easter-Monacht, the Moneth of Reioycing: in remembrance that they came to their Lands in the said Moneth of Aprill.*

The ancient Gaules celebrated ioyfully the moneth of March.

Which they had retained and kept from such time as they dwelt in the Gaules. For the ancient Gaules celebrated (with all reioysing) the Moneth or Moone of March, which they had baptized with the name of their Gaulish *Hercules*, the Patriarch *Gomer*, and which they called *Ogmion*, in memory and remembrance of this, that at departing from the Land of *Sennaar*, after floating long on the Ocean Sea; they were arriued (in a good port) on the Coasts of Armorica, in the Moneth of March.

December, the beginning of the Gaules yeere.

And as for the Moone or Moneth of December, beginning the vulgar yeere of the Gaules: this Moneth was called by the Romanes, *Mensis brumalis*, during which Moneth, the Sea would be troubled and tossed with vnruly billowes and tempests, which made it vn-nauigable; except at such time as the gentle Halcyons brought forth their young.

Dum compte Halcyones tranquilli in marmoris vnda
Nidificant, pullos inuolucresque fouent.

The *Druides* gather Misselloe, and send it to all their Colledges.

The Gaules called this Moneth of December, *A Sacred Moneth*, because in it the wise Druides gathered the *Misseldine*, or *Missell-toe* of the Oake in great Ceremonie, and deuided it (as a New-yeeres Gift) and beginning of the yeere, to the people. From whence ensued the ancient Prouerbe, which yet we retaine to this very day; *With the Missell-toe, comes the New yeere, Ad viscum Annus nouus*: For, after that the Prince of the *Druides* had gathered, blessed, and consecrated the Missell-toe; he imparted it to all the Colledges of the Druides: by command of whom, the *Bardes* went from City to City, and from one Towne to another, to proclaime the beginning of the yeere to the people. Because they were to come and receiue the Missel-toe, (which they called *Panacreston*) as a Catholicon and remedy for all euils. And vpon this subiect was alleadged this verse, which is generally reported to be *Ouids*.

Ad viscum Druidæ, Druidæ clamare solebant,

A notable custome yet obserued in Picardie.

This ancient custome is yet kept in diuers of the Prouinces of France, so that in the night of the euening for the yeere, the children go crying through all the streets, *At Missell-toe Tide, comes the New-yeeres Bride*, by a kinde of corrupted speaking, *The New yeeres Missell-toe*. In Picardie, where are kept more particularities of the Gaules ancient customes, then in any Prouince of France, the children after they haue cried, *At Missell-toe tide comes the New-yeres Bride*, they adde this ancient French word, *Plantè, Plantè*, that is to say, *Plenty, Plenty*, or a yeere abounding and fertile in all good things; words deriued from the Prayer of the ancient *Druides*, where they wished the People all affluence of good things.

The addition of Bourgongne.

In Bourgongne they adde, *That God would send them a rich and plentifull yeere*, with a long circumlocution and Bead-roule of words, which are trucked vp in one word by the Picard, *Plewie*.

The

The Missell-toe of the Oake, was called by the Greekes (who learned it of the Gaules) ἰξος, the vertues and singularities whereof are noted by *Galen* in his *Medicamentorum simplicium*; by *Plinie*, and by *Dioscorides*. This hearbe or simple is alwaies greene, especially in the very strongest of Winter, when his graines are ripe and yellow as gold, as *Virgill* enstructeth vs.

Quale solet syluis Brumali tempore Viscum
Fronde virere nouâ, quod non sua seminat arbos.

Three kindes of Missell-toe.

There are three kindes of Missell-toe, for it increaseth and groweth on Oakes; as the most hard and branchie Oake; the holme, or barren Skarlet Oake, and on the wilde Ballace and Turpentine trees, for it is seldome seene on any other Trees.

The strange growing of the Missel-toe

The Missell-toe neuer commeth by seede, nor planting, but groweth maruellously by the dung of Ring-doues, or Wood-coysts, and of Thrushes or Feldi-fares who are fed therewith; for it neuer sprowteth or buddeth, till it be first mortified in the bellyes of Birds: It neuer exceedeth a Cubit in length; is alwayes greene, and very branchie. The Male beareth Seedes or Graines, but the Female none: and the best is onely that, which is gathered on old hard Oakes, called strong Oakes, in Latine *Robora*.

The great account made of the Oake by the Druides.

Pliny in his Naturall Historie sayth, The *Druides, who are the Priests and Sacrificers of the Gaules, esteeme nothing in the World more rare and singuler, nothing more Diuine and Holy, then the Missell-toe, and the Tree whereon it groweth: prouided neuer beleese, that it be an hard Oake*. Therefore they made choyce of Oaken Forrests, and neuer offered any Sacrifice, but with the branches of his Tree. All things which grew on those Oakes, were reckoned by them as things sent from heauen; and they held it for an vndoubted beleefe, that this Tree was acceptable to the Diuinity, and especially elected to be honoured.

The Missell-toe (saith he) *is very difficult to be found; but hauing discouered it, the Druides keepe it most religiously. For the Moone (of necessity) hath sixe daies (according to the Moone they establish the beginning of their Moneths and their yeares, making their Ages of fiftie yeares. The Moone then hauing sixe daies, and mounting to her force, they prepare to gather the Missell-toe of the Oake, which in their language they call* Panchreston; Omnias sanans, *An Antidote and Remedy against all harmes.*

This was the liuely image of the Worlds Sauiour, extended vpon the Crosse, made and carpented of Oake, the true Missell-toe, whereby all our infirmities are healed; for he is the Author of Life, and the onely Physician for our aduersities. So *Lactantius Firmianus* maketh him deciphered and described, by the *Sybilla* πᾶσαν ἰάσιν σημαίνουσα. *A Medicine for all euills, and the Christians saluation.*

Bread and Wine in the Druides Sacrifice.

Plinie continueth on further yet, saying. *At the foote of this aged Oake, was an Altar erected, whereon, in Sacrifice and solemne Festiuall, The Prince of the Druides offered and blessed Bread and Wine. And when the Sacrifice was ended, they brought (moreouer) two yong Buls, all white, which had neuer bin subiected to the yoake of labour: they were coupled together, and reserued for a Sacrifice and Oblation, after the gathering of the Missell-toe.*

The Druides generall Procession.

But this Author hath let slip in silence, that before the gathering of the Missell-toe; the Prince of the *Druides*, assisted with his Colledge, the King, the Princes of the Gaules, and the People, went in generall Procession: according to the equipage and order, described as well by *Diodorus Siculus*, *Ælianus*, *S. Clemens Alexandrinus*, and *Apuleius*; as by the Ceremonies which the Ægyptians, Greekes, and Romaines had deriued and borrowed from the *Druides*, as well as their learning.

The order and manner of the Druides Procession.

First, the *Eubages* and Diuiners went formost, leading the Buls for Sacrifice. These were followed by the *Bardes*, singing the Canticles of reioycing and praise, with thankesgiuing to the diuine Essence. After them next marched the Schollers, imitated in the mysteries of the *Druides*, who followed in their due order. After them went an Herald, or King at Armes, all alone, cloathed in white (like vnto the *Druides*) his hat or bonnet likewise white, whereunto were two wings fastened, and a *Caduceus* in his hand. Those wings (according to *Clemens Alexandrinus*) shewed the diligence which his Office imposed on him. *Alæ sunt ministeria, & operationes*

The Heralds Office belonging to the Druides.

tiones sublimes dexterarum simul, & sinistrarum potestatum. For these Heralds were true Interpreters of their Princes secrets; who, vpon the fidelity of their Relations, resolued themselues for Peace or Warre. The *Caduceus* which the Herald carried in his right hand, was a branch of Verueine, writhed into the shape of two serpents, ioyned together by symmetry and proportion: not for the fables subiect inuented by the Greekes (as hardie lyers, as theeues of ceremonies, and other mens doctrine) as, to their reproach, the same *Clemens Alexandrinus* speaketh of them; because they attributed the inuention thereof, to their pretended *Mercurie*.

The *Caduceus* was the inuention of our Sacred *Druides*, according to the testimonie of *Plinie* in his Naturall Historie, speaking there of the said *Druides*. *Hic complexus Anguium, & efferatorum concordiæ causa videtur exteræ Gentes Caduceum in Pacis argumentis circumdatâ effigie Anguium fecerint. Neque enim cristatos esse in Caduceo mos est.* And the King of Armes going before the Prince of the *Druides*, gaue thereby to vnderstand, that the authoritie of the said Prince depended on Peace and Warre; for the one and the other could not be resolued, but by his appointment, as we haue already said.

The three Sacrificing Druides in their Offices.

After the King of Armes came three auncient men, the most venerable of the *Druides*, all equally together. The first of them carried the Challice and Cruet of Wine; He next to him, Bread for the Sacrifice; And the third, the hand of Iustice, called *The Cubite of Iustice, Cubitum Iustitiæ*. These three Sacrificers were followed by the Prince of the *Druides*, who went alone, cloathed in a white Cassocke, and ouer it an Albe of fine Linnen, girded with a broad Girdle or Belt of Gold, and a white Bonnet on his head, with Tassels of white Silke, and the Fanons (hanging behinde) of the same. If the King were in the Prouince, he went along with the *Druides* Prince; followed by the Nobilitie, and all the People in traine.

The Prince of the Druides his habite.

How the Druides Prince gathere I the Mistl-toe.

The Prince of the *Druides* being thus cloathed, as we haue said, ascended vpon the Tree, and with a Sickle of Gold, tooke and cut the Misselt-toe: which the other *Druides* (cloathed likewise in white Linnen Albes) receiued in a faire white Napkin, or Table-cloath. *Sacerdos candida veste cultus, arborem scandit, falce aurea demetit, candido excipitur sago*; so saith *Plinie*, holding on still the thred of this Ceremonie. Which being done the Buls were Sacrificed, and the Prince of the *Druides* made The generall Benediction: entreating the Diuine bountie, that the gift which they receiued from his liberall hand, might be beneficiall and profitable to the Gaulish people. The Misselt-toe serued as an *Alexypharmacum*, and a soueraigne mischiefe-expeller, against all kindes of poysons: and being taken in drinke by women barren, and vnfruitfull creatures; it made them plentifull and fertile. *Fœcunditatem eo poto dare cuicumque animali sterili arbitrantur.* And this was the reason, why in saying: *At Misselt-toe tyde, comes the new yeares Bride*, the word of *Plentie, Plentie* was added. Which was (moreouer) obserued, in sending (from one to another) the leaues of the Misselt-toe of the Oake; as a good New-yeares gift on the first day of the yeare. And that was pleasantly obserued by one of our French moderne Poets.

The sacrificing of the Buls.

Misselt-toe a preseruatiue against all Poison.

En lieu d'Anneau, de Dorure, ou de Chaine
A ce Matin Premier Iour de l'Annee
Ie vous enuoye vn brin de Guy de Chesne
N'estes-vous pas richement estrenee?
Ceste façon d'en donner n'est pas nee
De moy premier. Les vieux Druides Sages
En presentoient ce Iour par bons presages:
O qu'en ce Guy tel signe fust compris
(Puisque que la Glus se faict de ses fueillages)
Que vostre Cœur au mien deust estre pris!

In stead of Chaine, or Gold-Ring, I commend
To you this New-yeares morning (deerest Friend)
This tender Slip of the Oakes Misselt-toe:

Ist not a rich Gift, to be giuen so?
This forme of giuing was not bred by me,
The wise old Druides, famous for memorie,
This day made it their gift of good presage,
I wish this louing token like in comperage.
That as the Leaues make Glew, and fast combine:
Euen so your heart (as fast) may knit to mine.

The Poet made his allusion to the Misselt-toe, whereof the Glew or Lime is made, which for the catching of small Birds serueth very necessary: the manner whereof is noated by *Virgill*.

Tum laqueis captare Feras, & fallere Visco
Inuentum: & magnos: & magnos Canibus circumdare saltus.

In like manner the Romaines, the first day of their yeare, with their other gifts, which they sent from one to another (instead of the Oakes Misselt-toe) sent the leaues and branches of Verueine: a custome practised from the time of *Tatius*, King of the *Sabines*, as we learne by *Symmachus*: *Ab exortu penè Vrbis Martiæ Strenarum vsus adoleuit auctoritate Tatij Regis, qui Verbenas fœlicis arboris, ex Luco Strenia Anni noui auspices primus accepit.* And in his imitation, the Emperour *Augustus* receiued the new yeare of the Romaines, the first day of the yeare.

As concerning the branches of Verueine, which *Symmachus* (after the Romaine manner) called *The happie Tree*; the Romaines (in memorie of King *Tatius*) called them not Verueine, but Sabine, without which they offred not any Sacrifice. And yet at the first rising of their City, they sacrificed nothing else but Verueine onely, as it is obserued by *Ouid*.

The Verueine called Sabine.

Ara dabat fumos herbis contenta Sabinis:
In sacris nullum culter habebat opus.

Which *Numa Pompilius*, the Author of such vnbloody Sacrifices, had deriued from the doctrine of the *Druides*; whose King of Armes (as wee haue formerly said) carried his *Caduceus* of Verueine, which was in as great esteeme for the singuler vertue, and admirable properties thereof; as the Plant *Baaras*, so celebrated by the learned Iew *Iosephus*. And this was the reason, why the diuine *Druides* gathered it with the same Ceremonies, as they did the Oakes Misselt-toe. They are noated by *Plinie* (who scarsely comprehended the misteries, either of the one or other, hauing his eyes sealed vp with grosse ignorance, by being fleshed against the blood of Christians, during the persecutions of *Domitian* and *Traian*) in his Naturall Historie. *Similis est huic herbæ Sabinæ Selago appellata. Legitur sine ferro, Dextra manu Sinistræ superpositâ, modo furcæ, Flamine candida veste vestito, purè lotisque pedibus, & Sacro, Pane, Vinoque, facto, priusquam legatur: Fertur in mappâ nouâ. Hanc contra omnem pernitiem habendam prodidere Druidæ Gallorum, & contra omnia oculorum vitia fumigationem eius prodesse.*

To the Verueine is altogether like and conforme, that which wee call* *Sauine. It is gathered without any Iron instrument, hauing the right hand interlaced and put vpon the left, in forme of a Saulter. The Priest being (before) cloathed in a fine white Albe, purifieth his soule, washeth his feete to be neate and cleane: offreth the Sacrifice of Bread and Wine, and after, maketh the Hearbes gathering, which is put into a faire white Table-cloath. The Druides great Sacrificers among the Gaules, strongly held: that it had power to chase away all mischances, all impostures, illusions and sorceries.*

* An Hearbe much vsed of the Druides for all eye-soares: called by some Hedg Hysope.

In the place of Idols, behold the wholesome signe of the Crosse (whereat the Gentiles made a mockerie, calling it a Iibbet or Gallowes, not vnderstanding the misterie and power) and the pure Sacrifice of the auncient *Druides*, of Bread and Wine. And not those of the *Mexicanes*, be-smeared with humaine blood, according to the opinion of *Cæsar*: vnder whose name, his Secretarie *Iulius Celsus*, hath,

suppo-

Iulius Ceſſus Secretarie to Iulius Cæſar.

ſuppoſed a thouſand lyes and tales, in his Commentaries of the Gauliſh Warres. Which hath bin obſerued by *Suetonius*, in the life of that great Captaine. That *Cæſar* himſelfe, acknowledging his imperfections, had reſolued to new-cloath his Commentaries, and to correct the ſuppoſitions which hee had there inſerted: as well in regard of his owne fleeting memorie, as hauing (ouermuch) truſted to heare-ſay, and other mens reports. *Parum diligenter, parumque integrâ veritate compoſitos fuiſſe hoſce Commentarios; quum pleraque, & quæ per alios erant geſta, temerè crediderit, & quæ per ſe, aut conſulto, vel etiam memoriâ lapſus, perperam ediderit.*

The Druides being infected corrupted the people with Demonomany

It is then to be held for infallible and certaine, that the Romaines brought their Demonomanie into Gaule, wherewith the *Druides* once infected; corrupted the people: taking for pretended Deities, ſuch things as beſt anſwered to their Martiall and warlike nature, and thereby ſuſceptible of all kindes of Science, as well as mechanicall Arts. But it is to be noated, that thoſe ſuppoſed Gods were not in the Gauliſh Temples repreſented after the Romaine manner: but according to thoſe effects, which the *Druides* iudged conuenient for them.

Venus the goddeſſe of generation.

For, to begin with the Idole of *Venus*, the pretended Goddeſſe of Generation; the Greeke and Romaines preſented her vpon a triumphall Chariot, accoaſted with three graces, *Venus* and they ſtarke naked, and crowned with Mirtle; a ſhrub greene at all times, and the Symbole of Loue.

Populus Alcidæ gratiſſima, Vitis Iacchо:
Formoſæ Myrthus Veneri, ſua Laurea Phœbo;

The Latine Poet ſaid; *That Hercules was crowned with Poplar; Bacchus with Vine leaues; and cluſters of Grapes; Apollo with Laurell; and immodeſt Venus with Mirtle.* *Pauſanias* writeth, that the Greekes did crowne their *Venus* with a Chaplet of Roſes, and that the three *Carites* or Graces (her aſſociates by her) the one held a little Bone, the ſecond a branch of Mirtle, and the third a Roſe. Poets haue feigned, that (of their owne nature) Roſes were white, before the death of the Minion *Adonis*, torne by a Boare in hunting: but *Venus* at the blaſt of thoſe ſad tydings, vnprouided of hoſe or ſhooes, as then ſhe was; ran ſwiftly to helpe him, and in her running, her feete being rent with thornes and briers, it gaue to the Roſe a Vermillion tincture.

How the white Roſe became red.

The Gaules emblazoned farre otherwiſe *Venus* (whom they tooke as the marke or Symbole of Generation) and her Graces. For they preſented them in a Baſtile, fortreſſe, or grated donion, not naked, as the Greekes and Romaines: but antiquely cloathed in Robes of courſe cloath, after the Countrey faſhion, with face, hands, and feete veiled or couered, their heads crowned with Garlands, compoſed of all kindes of floures except the Roſe, which the wiſe *Druides* held for the Hieroglyphicke of immodeſt Loue.

How the Gauls preſented their Venus and her graces

The picture of a wife and good Woman.

The donion wherein they were ſhut vp, declared that the vertuous and well nurtured woman, ſhould keepe her feete within her houſe, thinking vpon her houſhold (without gadding daily here and there) as the Apoſtle wiſhed her to be *Domus Custodem*. For in figuring a wiſe Woman, they figured a Tortoiſe vnder her feete (a creature which neuer leaueth her houſe) and a Dogge ſtanding by her, the emblеme of faithfulnes. Moreouer, the grated or lattiſed donion, ſignified Matron-like modeſtie, which ſhe ought to keep carefully all her life time, according to the end & intent of marriage.

——Natis Venus Alma creandis
Seruiat, hos fineis tranſilyſſe nocet.

This chaſtitie was obſerued in our Gauliſh Women, *Pauciſſima in tam numeroſa gente Adulteria, nec corrumpere, aut corrumpi ſæculum vocabatur.* So ſaid the noble Hiſtorian *Tacitus*. It was not then, as now at this preſent in Women, giuen ouer to all whoredome and diſſolution: be it Man or Woman, no other anſwere is returned, but this; *Such is the World, Scculum vocatur; youth muſt needes haue*

haue his paſſage. This falſe Coine had no currencie, in the time of the ancient Gaules, as we haue ſaid.

The face, hands and feete couered, repreſented modeſty, with honeſt ſweete-fac'd ſhame, which the married wife ought to be carefull of, in her ſpeech, touching and treading, meaſuring her paces by the Elle of modeſty and grauitie both together. Nothing was to be diſcouered, becauſe (as *Plutarch* ſaid, to very apt purpoſe) *The Wife putting off the garment neereſt to her body, diſpoyleth her ſelfe of all ſhame and modeſtie.* The Roabe of plaine and courſe cloath, figured the trauaile and care of houſekeeping, and that in her cloathing, ſhe ought to be decently modeſt: like to a woman of honour, and not as a bold faced Courtizane, daily fitting her ſelfe with new deuiſed paintings, to make her ſeeme beautifull outwardly, hauing a ſoule worme-eaten with all vices and ſinnes within, like vnto poliſhed Sepulchers. The Crowne of all kindes of floures, pleaſing to the ſinell, and goodly to looke on, expreſſed, that the principall paintings and guildings of an honorable woman, are the loue of her husband, good enſtruction of her children in feare and pietie; her care for houſekeeping, ſeldome ſpeaking, honor of her actions, and modeſty in her carriage. Theſe are ſuch Odours and perfumes, wherewith ſhee ſhould be ſweeted; yet there were no Roſes, that is to ſay, immodeſt allurements, to charme men withall, and attract them by the behauiour of Courtizanes: Becauſe the end of ſuch Syren Enchauntreſſes, is euermore deplorable, wofull and vnfortunate. Such women are deſcried like to falſe Coine, expoſed to the worlds coſenage and mockery, deſpiſed and contemned, as paſſant Roſes, becomming like Heps growing on the wilde Brier.

The difference betweene a good woman and a bad.

The reaſon why there were no Roſes in the Crown or Garland.

The Idole of *Apollo* (in the following Tract, we ſhall ſee that of pretended *Mars*) which repreſented the bright eye of the world, the Sunne; had a great head, thickly buſhed and tufted with haire, entoured with beames, the face beardleſſe, like vnto a youth, the mouth open, euen as if he would ſpeake. In his right hand he held a Lyre with ſeauen cords or ſtrings, and a Cornucopia or Horne of abundance in the left. A Creſcent or halfe Moone couered both his knees, his breſt thrickly parſemed with Starres, and his feete fixedly planted on a Bowe in Heauen, bending Boulewiſe. Thus the Gaules figured *Apollo*, with his effects and miſteries; as willing thereby to make knowne, that it was nothing elſe, but as appeareth by this morall deſcription.

The Idole of Apollo, figuring the Sunne, deſcribed.

The Sunne, the Moone and Starres fixed beneath his Circle, haue no other light or ſplendour, but that which they borrow from him. And the ſame Sunne, although it be the goodly eye of the world, and the flaming luminous Planet of Heauen, ſo preſented by the colour Celeſtiall and Azure, whereof this Idole was compoſed: yet notwithſtanding, he was (in part) tarniſhed or diſcoloured, his brightneſſe and luſter couered and obſcured, by the gloomy and obſcure body of the Moone, vpon this occaſion painted (face to face) with his head. That the ſame Sunne, by the attractiue power of his rayes or beames, diſſipated miſts, fogs and cloudes, motiues of Raine: figured by the Bowe in Heauen of diuers colours, and by that meanes, illuminating the whole round frame of the world. His Lyre or Harpe with ſeauen ſtrings, repreſented the hermonious motion of the ſeauen Heauens, knowne by the name of the ſeauen Planets. Iuſtly in the midſt of them was the Sunne planted, to impart his light to them, and by their courſe equally ordained, the ſeaſons of the yeare had their conuenient times and propitious, for yeelding to the hoſtes of this terreſtriall world, plentie and abundance of all good things, obſerued by the Horne of Abundance.

The moral application or meaning of the Idole of the Sunne.

The Raine-Bowe fixed in Heauen.

The Sun placed in the middeſt of the ſeauen Planets.

S. Gregory Victor, Archbiſhop of *Toure*, in his Hiſtory of France writeth, that *Chrocus*, King of the Alemaignes (which were the *Sweues*) went to forrage Gaule; and paſſing through *Auuergne*, he burned the Temple, which the *Galates* (in their materiall tongue) called by the name of *Vaſſo*, about the yeare of Grace two hundred and foureſcore; the ſixt of Pope *Eutichianus* his Pontificacie, and ſecond of the Empire of *Probus*. *Chrocus Alamannorum Rex, commoto exercitu, vniuerſas Gallias peruagatur, ciuitaſque edes, quæ antiquitus fabricatæ fuerant à fundamentis ſubuertit. Veniens vero Auernos delubrum illud quod Gallica lingua Vaſſo Galatæ vocant, incendit, diruit, atque ſubuertit.*

This

Two especial things to be obserued.

This passage of our most auncient French Historian, is worthy singuler obseruation, for two things. The one, for the liuely description of the principall Temple in *Auuergne*. And the other, to shew, how likely it was, that the Gaules (whom this Romaine Authour, issued of a famous house, descended from Senatours, and allied to the Romaine Emperours) called *Galates*, as did S. *Hierome*, that worthy cleare light of the Church, hauing for their mother tongue, that which vnfitly was called Greeke. To this passage may be added an other of the same Author, concerning foure Letters added to the French Alphabet, by King *Childericke*: as the Emperour *Claudius* made addition of three to the Romaine Alphabet, according to the testimonie of *Tacitus*. This is spoken, to cause them enquire, that are of a contrary opinion.

S. Gregory of Tours a Roman by birth

As concerning this Temple *Vasso*, which some haue thought to be that of *Polignac* in *Auuergne*: *Gregory* of Tours maketh the Topographie, in these words. *Miro opere factum fuit, atque firmatum, cuius paries duxplex erat. Ab intus enim deminuto lapide, à foris vero quadris sculptis fabricatum fuit. Habuit enim paries ille crassitudinem pedes treginta, Intrinsecus vero marmore, ac musiuo variatum erat. Pauimentum quequedis, marmore stratum, desuper vero plumbo tectum. This Temple* (saith S. Gregorie) *was built of proud structure, for it was double walled. That within was of small stone, and that without was of great Quarrie, all squared, and this Wall had thirtie foote in thicknesse. The wall within was spotted or in-laied with Marble, and pieces painted with Mosaicall worke, diuersly colored with Floures and Animales: The Pauement was in like manner of Marble, and the roofe couered quite ouer with Lead.*

A description of the Temple in *Auuergne*.

The Mountaine of *Polignac*.

Polignac (a Vicountie, and most auncient Noble house) is on a Mountaine of meane height, betweene S. *Floure*, *Clermont* in *Auuergne*, and *Velay* on the side of the great French high-way: on the top whereof was built a Temple in the honour of *Apollo*. This mountaine is round engirt with other hils, whereon likewise were erected Temples, dedicated to pretended Gods and Goddesses of the Romans: but much inferiour to that of *Apollo*, and of meaner expences.

A great Tower seated on *Poignac*.

Vpon this of *Polignac*, is a great Tower, square on the one side, and neere thereto (heretofore) was a very auncient Temple, inwardly pargetted with small stones, depicted and coloured in the Mosaicall manner: but so excellently cimented and Masonned, as it was impossible (in an whole dayes space) to get forth a handfull. At the place where the head of this Idole was fixed, there is now a Crosse fastened to the Wall: because the Villagers of *Velay*, ascending vp to this Castell of *Polignac*, should there fall prostrate on their knees, vttering there their Prayers and Orisons, euen as before the Images of Saints.

The Idoles stature by measure of the head.

The head of this Idole was fiue foote in height, and the circumference answerable to the same proportion: so that by iust measure and simmetrie of the head (which ought alwayes to make the eight part of a mans body) it is easie to iudge, that the Idole contained fortie foote in height. And yet notwithstanding, *Plinie* maketh mention of a Colossus, representing the Idole of *Mercurie*, which contained foure hundred foote in diameter. *Vibio Autio prouinciæ Aruernorum præsidente, ætate nostra* (*Plinie* the second, liued vnder *Vespasian*, his Sonnes, and *Traian* Emperours) *omnem ampletudinem eius generis statuarum vicit Zenodorus, Mercurio facto in Ciuitate Galliæ Arnernis per Annos decem, pedum CCCC. immani pretio.* That the excellent Caruer *Zenodorus*, made in the Citie of *Auuergne*, a Colossus of immeasurable greatnes, & that he was ten whole years in the caruing it, with incredible expences.

Ioyning to this Temple of *Polignac*, is another little Chappell, Vaulted in like manner as the Temple was, and painted Mosaically, to serue as the Vestrie. At the yssuing forth thereof, may be seene the steps and treadings, as also the foundation of auncient buildings, ordained as dwellings for the Priests, seruants and attendants on this Idole, whereby Sathan the seducer of men deliuered his lying Oracles. At this Temple it was, where the Emperour *Tiberius Cæsar* shewed his deuotion, and sent his Offerings, to be assured in the length of his life. And in memorie thereof, is yet to this day to be seene (on the left hand in the Temple) an Antique inscription, but bitten and worne with age, which conteineth these words following.

Tib.

Tib. Claud. Cæ. Aug. Ger. Pon. Max.
Trib. Pot. V. Imp. X I. PP. Coss. I I I I.

The inscription on the wal, in memory of the Emperour *Tib. Claud. Ca.*

Tiberius Claudius Cæsar Augustus, Germanicus, Pontifex Maximus, Tribunitia potestatis quintum, Imperator vndecimum, Pater Patriæ, Consul quartum.

The Romans called their God *Apollo*, by the name of *Belenus*, and *Belenus* was deriued from *Belus*, King of the Assyrians, who was beleeued by Antiquity, to be the first inuenter of the Science Astrologicall, as *Plinie* reporteth in his Naturall History. *Durat adhuc Beli Templum, Inuentor hic fuit Syderalis Scientiæ.*

The Priests imployed in seruice for the Idols of *Apollo*, were called *Phœbitians*, by the name of *Phœbus*. *Ausonius* in his Professors and Doctors Regents of the Gaules, famous and renowned for learning in his time, speaking of a Sexton belonging to this pretended God, said:

Nec reticebo senem
Nomine Phœbicium
Qui Beleni Æditutes
Stirpe satus Druidum
Gentis Aremoricæ.

They had the name also of Cup-Bearers, Cup-Carriers, Tasters, Gobletters and Butlers to *Apollo*. *Pateræ dicebantur apud Romanos Sacerdotes Apollinis, qui & Phœbicy. Ausonius*, speaking of *Attius*, Sonne to *Phœbicius*, both of them famous Rhetoritians, issued from the auncient *Druides* of *Bayeux* in Normandie, said:

Tu Baio cassis stirpe Druidarum satus
Si fama non fallit fidem.
Beleni sacratum ducis à Templo genus,
Et inde vobis nomina.
Tibi Pateræ, sic Ministros nuncupant
Apollinaris mistici.

Titus Labienus, Lieutenant to *Iulius Cæsar*.

In the Towne-house at *Clairmont* in *Auuergne*, is a Coffin of Stone, hollow like a Trough, in forme of an Ouall, which had (in times past) serued for the buriall of the wife to *Titus Labienus*, one of the Lieutenants to *Iulius Cæsar*, in Conquest of the Gaules: And who afterward reuolted from him, and followed the part of Great *Pompey*. On one of this Coffins sides is an inscription, the most part thereof eaten away with yeares.

I

——— *VL. PauTL i n*
T. I. AITLia. T. La-
Bieni. V X O R.
Belleno. D. D.

The Epitaph for the wife of *Labienus*.

Which sheweth that the Romaines, from their first Conquests, had erected in the honour of *Apollo*, some Temple neere to *Clairmont* in *Auuergne*: the People of which Prouince, to please the Conquerours, did (with the first) embrace their *Denomanie*, yea, euen tearmed them their Brethren, saith *Lucan*.

Aruernique ausi Latios se fingere fratres
Sanguine ab Iliaco populi.

How the Gauls figured the Idole *Mercurie*.

As for the Idole of *Mercurie*, the Gaules deciphered it according to their mistiall meaning, in like manner as the rest, without receiuing any Poeticall fictions of the Greekes or Romaines. They presented him cloathed with a Surcoate or loose Mandillion, made all of Feathers; great Wingges at his sides; his face Beardlesse,

lesse, like to a Woman. In his right hand hee held a Bowe bent, as readie to shoote, and a great Purse, with many little Purses; and in the other hand a Trompet.

The morall interpretation concerning *Mercurie*.

The Mythologie or morall interpretation serued to make knowne, that *Mercury* was the God of Eloquence, and of Riches. His Feathered Coate, his Wings of Feathers; his young face, and his Trompet signified, that the memorie of learned and skilfull men, flye quite throughout the world, as being for euer consecrated to the Temple of Immortalitie, continuing euermore in strength and vigour, without growing old at any time.

Ἀγλαόκαρπον Μούσων σέβασμα ἀμαράντινος ἀεί.
Nunquam æternarum marcescunt Serta Sororum.

Onely the Chaplet of th' Immortall Sisters:
(As others doe) It neuer fades nor withers.

Concerning the admirable power of Eloquence.

The bended Bowe expressed the power of Eloquence, which hath effects of admirable vigour: for an Eloquent man hath so much strength, as he is able to manage and guide a whole People or Nation, at his owne deuotion, and to turne them on which side he will. *Eloquentia est sagitta in manu Potentis.* As for the great Purse, swolne bigge with other: it figured the wealthie substance and Riches, which is obtained by the trafficke of Merchandise; whereof they made *Mercurie* the Lord and President.

Per mare, per terras currit Mercator,
Pauperiem fugiens.

Vigilancie was denoated by the Surcoate, and Wings of Feathers thereto most expedient. Such then was the Idole of *Mercurie*.

Paris infected with Idolatrie before the comming of *Denys* the Areopagita.

Beside which, they had likewise those of other Gods, and pretended Goddesses and Deities of the Greekes and Romaines, adored by the Gaules, and in whose honor, worshippe and seruice, Temples were erected thorow all the Prouinces and Countries of Gaule. And namely at *Paris*, and in the skirts round about, where the great S. *Denys Areopagita* being arriued, he found it wholly infected with Idolatrie. For, in the territorie of *Vauuert* was a Temple, consecrated to the Idole of *Mercurie*, which serued as an Orgaine and instrument for the Diuell, to render his doubtfull answeres, and his Oracles of mischiefe against the credulous Paritians.

From thence beyond the Riuer of *Seine*, was the Temple of *Mars*, where the Gaules and Romaines made their assemblies and meetings.

The Temple of the Goddesse *Isis*.

Repassing the said Riuer, and on the bankes thereof, ioyning to the territorie of *Vauuert*, was that of *Lars* (improperly by the vulgar called S. *Andrew des Arts*) where was exalted the Temple of the Goddesse *Isis*. The Niche or hollow seate where this Idole was pearched, is yet to be seene, on the North side of the Quire, in the Church of S. *Germain des Prez lez Paris*. In place of which Idole, in the life time of our Fathers, *Messire Guillaume Bricouuet*, Bishoppe of *Meaux*, and Abbot of the said Abbey, caused the Crosse to be there aduanced, which at this present, is to be seene.

The Village of *Isis*, called *Issy* by the vulgar, was the Farme appointed for the sustentation of the Priests, which serued this Idole *Isis*.

The Temple of the Goddesse *Ceres*.

In like manner, fiue miles from *Paris*, was the Temple of the Idole *Ceres*, whereof at this present the Village of S. *Ceour*, in Latine *Sacrum Cereris*, retaineth the name. The ignorant vulgar called it *Cinq Souls*, to small or little purpose. About this Village there is another, which the same Vulgar call *Huict Souls*, instead of *Vict-Ceour*, in Latine *Victus Cereris*: because it was ordeined or destenied, for the nourriture and maintenance of the Priests of *Ceres*, and their Familie.

Origen in his Homilie before remembred, telleth vs, that it was the most easie for

for the *Druides*, and the Gaulish people (by their example) to abiure the Demonomanie of the Romaines; at the first preachings of S. *Denys Areopagita*, the *Parisians* first Bishop, and of other Bishops his Contemporanes, sent thorow all the Prouinces of Gaule. *Because* (saith he) *they had assured notice and knowledge of the Sacred Mysterie, of the Incarnation, and descent of the Sonne of God on earth, for the Saluation of men.*

And they liued Morally, keeping and instructing the Gaulish People in these Precepts.

The enstructions taught to the Gaules.

Non colere Idola, sed benedicere Deum. *To flye Idolatrie, and to worshippe one onely God.*

Cauere ab incestu propinquorum, & alio nefando concubitu. *To keepe themselues from committing Incest, and vnlawfull coniunction.*

Non fundere humanem Sanguinem. *Not to commit any homicide.*

Non rapere. *Not to steale the goods of any other man.*

Non tolere membrum Animali viuenti. *Not to mutilate, or maime the member of any liuing creature, whereby to make it vnapt for labour.*

Precepts of Nature binding all men generally to obserue them.

Other Maximes they had beside, and enstructions to keepe and preserue publique Societie, Precepts and Commandements, which were nominated and called; *Præcepta Naturæ*, for obseruance whereof all men stood obliged, of what Religion soeuer they were; especially Pagans and Gentiles. So saith *Rabbi Salomon*, vpon the second Chapter of the Prophet *Hieromie*, and the *Sedar-Olam*, fift Chapter.

Commandements left by *Noah* to his Sonnes.

They were called *Præcepta Filiorum Noe*: *The Commandements of the Sonnes to the Patriarche Noah*, in regard that *Sem*, *Iaphet* and *Cham* (hauing receiued them of their Father, with charge, to leaue them as memorials to their Sonnes and descendants) they were inuiolably kept and obserued by the Linages and Families of *Sem* and *Iaphet*. Whereas, on the contrary, wicked *Cham* contemning them, and addicting himselfe to all impietie: was the first Author of Idolatrie, and ingratitude to God; and of Idolatrie were deriued Incest, Sodomie, Theft, Robberie, Murders and Massacres.

The *Druides* receiued their Precepts from *Gomer*.

The *Druides* hauing receiued from their Founder and Patriarch *Gomer* those Precepts: caused them to be exactly kept and obserued by the Gaules and vpon the preuarication of them, were grounded Iustice and Pollicie both Ciuile and Criminall.

And this was it which made them more capable, then all other Nations on the earth, of gathering those diuine Seedes, reuealed by the great S. *Denys*; and which made them also so apt for receiuing his Doctrine, wherby the Gaules (in a moment) became Christians, firme and constant in the Faith of Iesus Christ, without the least feare of any torments.

The firme constancie of the Gaules in the Orthodoxe Religion.

And their firme constancie in this case, was the foundation, originall and well-spring of the Gallicane Churches libertie: the Bishops whereof shewed themselues as Bucklers of the Orthodoxe Religion, against all Heretiques. The Prouinces of Greece, Italie and Spaine hauing bin infected with Heresie: the Gaules onely remained constant (without wauering in the Catholique Faith) foure hundred yeares together. And vntill such time as the diuell (the enemie to man) caused to be sowne in this field of blessing, the Darnell of a most wicked and detestable Doctrine, by one *Vigilantius Tauerner*, a native of *Calahorra* in Spaine. As we learne by that learned Father of the Church S. *Hierome*, writing against *Vigilantius*: *Gallia sola monstris caruit, cum Vigilantius (immo Dormitantius) Caupo Calaguritanus subito exorsus est, &c.* Heretiques shoote vp in one night, like to Mushromes.

For the firme constancie in the Catholique Faith, the French Church hath alwaies had the preference & precedency (aboue all other of Christendome) with the holy See of Rome. And vpon this constancy are grounded the liberties thereof, which (to speake all in three words) consist in maintaining the Authority of the holy See Apostolique, & of the vniuersall Councels. Against which is no tolleration in France, of those things which Popes (made men) would innouate. In which case, the

Steered Parlaments of France, and namely of Paris, are the *Ephores*, or rather the *Areopagites* of his power; ruled according to holy Councels, the abuses rooted out.

The great liberties of the Church of France against some Popes proceedings.

The liberties of the French or Gallicane Church, are so great, that it is no matter of meruaile, if Popes (preoccupated with passions) sending their fulminations against France: haue no longer bin acknowledged for such men, and that they haue stept out of their obedience, as well by prohibiting the transport of Gold and Siluer out of the Kingdome, as the prouision of Benefices, which (in this case) are remitted to Ordenaries.

The kingdome of France hath power to elect a Pope.

The Kingdome of France (by a most auncient priuiledge) hath power, the holy Seate of Rome being vacant, and the Cardinals not agreeing for the election of a Pope: to make choyce of one in France. Pope *Gregory* the ninth being dead, the Cardinals at Rome were long time proceeding in the election of another. The King S. *Lewes*, in the yeare one thousand two hundred forty three, sent his Ambassadours to Rome, to signifie and declare to the Cardinals, that they should speedily and without day, proceede to the election of a Pope: if not, thorow their default and negligence, the Prelates of France should elect one beyond the Mountaines, according to the auncient liberties of the *Gallicane* Church.

Per idem tempus miserunt Franci solemnes Nuncios ad Curiam Romanam significantes persuadendo præcisè, & efficaciter, vt ipsi Cardinales Papam ritè eligentes, vniuersali Ecclesiæ solatium pastorale maturius prouiderent, vel ipsi Franci propter negligentiam eorum, de sibi eligendo, & prouidendo summo Pontifice citra Montes cum obedire tenerentur, quantecyus contrectarent. Et hoc audaciter significabant, Consisi de antiquo Priuilegio suo, per Sanctum Clementem beato Dionysio concesso, & obtento, qui ab antiquo Priuilegio suo, per Sanctum Clementem beato Dionysio concesso, & obtento, qui ab eo sit Apostolatus erdem Dionysio super gentem Occidentalem. Vnde ipsi Cardinales, quasi quibusdam stimulis, hinc Domini Imperatoris, inde Francorum agitati, Romam conuenientes adierunt, vt Papam eligerent, in vnum ibidem congregati. As they did, electing to the holy Seate Pope *Innocent* the fourth, on S. *Iohn* Baptist day, the yeare aboue named, the Seate hauing bin vacant a yeare and nine Moneths.

Pope Innocent the fourth elected by the French Clergy

We may, and will say, for an infallible point of Honor & Precedency of France before Spaine; that France and her Kings, haue preceded Spaine, in beleeuing the Faith of Iesus Christ, Orthodoxall, and Catholique. And the oldest Christians of Spaine, had neuer become such; but by Bishops of France.

Pope *Clement* sent *Dionysius Areopagita* into Gaule by Parisis by Irenæus, and other helpers with him.

For the Breuiarie of the Church of *Toledo* in Spaine, speaketh conformely to that of *Paris*, and of S. *Denys* in France: That the Pope S *Clement* sent the great S. *Denys Areopagita* into Gaule, and namely to *Paris*, there to preach the Law of Iesus Christ. Hee gaue him also as coadiutor, these, S. *Rusticus*, *Eleutherius*, *Eugenius* and *Regulus*; who S. *Denys* sent as Bishop into *Prouence*, and he was the Apostle and first Bishop of *Arles*. To S. *Eugenius* he gaue the charge of passing into Spaine, which he did, trauailing to the middest thereof: making his stay at *Toledo*, where he conuerted a great number of Spaniards to Christianitie, so that hee was the first Bishop of *Toledo*. For which place, hauing prouided a Successour, and ordained Bishops in the principall Cities of Spaine; he returned into France, to conferre with his Maister, concerning the gouernment and ruling the Church of Spaine.

S. *Denys* and his companions entreated Martyrdome.

But being arriued at *Paris*; hee vnderstood, that the great S. *Denys* and his associates had suffered Martyrdome. And being filled with ioy, as hoping to follow them speedily in the same way; he laboured to consolate the Parisians, exhorting them to continue firme and constant in the Faith, resolute to liue and dye with them, following the footesteps of his worthy Doctor and Maister.

The Prouost of *Paris*, *Fescennius Sisinnius* beleeuing that S. *Denys* was risen againe: caused S. *Eugenius* to be taken, and being vnable to compell his sacrificing to the Romaines Idols; hee sent him in banishment to *Dueill*, betweene S. *Denys* and *Gonnesse*, where hee was Martyred, and cast into a Ponde at the same place, where he lay (for a time) vnknowne to the Christians; vntill S. *Denys* appeared to one of them, named *Hercolde*, to whom hee gaue charge, for taking vp the body

body of his Brother and fellow Scholler, and cured him of a disease, which quite bereaued his sight, *Hercold* hauing found the holy Body, as fresh at the same houre as when it was stabd: tooke it thence, and carried it into a piece of his owne Land, where he gaue it buriall.

Hercold found the body of *Eugenius* and buried it.

He made it soone after very famous, in regard of infinite miracles, so that to honour the memory of him; the Inhabitants erected a Church, where his body was reuerenced long time, and the people came thither from all parts of France in Pilgrimages. The Normans and Danes robbing the Kingdome, vnder the declining of the second Ligne of the Kings: the body of S. *Eugenius* was carried from *Ducill* to S. *Denys* in France, a place strong and well guarded. When the Warres were appeased, the people of *Dueill*, willing to regaine their Tutelarie Saint and Patron: it was vtterly impossible for them, to beare it from the Church of S. *Denys*, where it was carefully kept; so that perforce and constrainedly, they returned without performing any thing.

The Normans and Danes ransacked France.

In the yeare of Grace 1148. the Archbishop of *Toledo*, called *Dom Raymond*, Primate of Spaine, came into France to the generall Councill, then held in the Citie of Rheimes in Champaigne, by Pope *Eugenius* the third. This Archbishop soiourning at *Paris*, went to see the Church of S. *Denys* in France, and visiting the Reliques there, being a great many in number: he espied in one of the Chappels this Epiaphe. *Here lyeth Eugenius the Martyre, the first Bishop of Toledo.* The memory of whom was abolished, and vtterly lost in Spaine, as well by the length of time, that the *Affrican Moores* had held *Toledo*, as ignorance of the place, where the said S. *Eugenius* had suffered and endured Martyrdome. Wherefore it was at S. *Denys*, that *Dom Raymond* learned his Legend, such as we haue summarily before related; and perticularly, that he was Martyrised with stabs of a Ponyard and Sword, by Priests of the Roman Demonomanie, a yeare after the death of the Apostle of the French, S. *Denys*, by command from the Prouost of Pairs *Fescennius Sisinnius*, vnder the reigne and Empire of *Adrian*.

A generall Councill at Rheimes in An. 1148.

The Councell at *Rheimes* being ended, *Dom Raymond* returned into Spaine, and aduertised the King of Castile *Dom Alphonso*, in the former narration; requesting his sending into France, to haue some Reliques of the said S. *Eugenius*. The Historians of Spaine doe confesse, that our King *Lewes* the yonger, made a voyage to S. *Iames* in *Galitia*, as well for deuotion (according to our Chronicles) as to visite the King of Castile *Alphonso* the seauenth, whose daughter, named *Constance*, he had espoused (after repudiation of his first wife *Alianor* of Aquitaine, at the Councell held for the same occasion at *Baugency*) *Alphonso* hauing entreated him, to giue him some Reliques of the S. *Eugenius*, the prime Apostle of Spaine: King *Lewes* at his returne, sent him the right Arme of the said Saint, richly enshrined. The Shrine was brought to *Toledo*, carried on the shoulders of the said *Alphonso* and his Sonnes; which happened in the yeare of Grace 1156. the twelfth day of February, and the said day is yearely celebrated at *Toledo* as Festiuall, for finding the said S. *Eugenius*.

King *Lewes* the yonger his voiage into Spain

In the yeare 1565. King *Charles*, ninth of the name, was entreated and moued by Ambassadours sent from the King of Spaine *Dom Phillip* the second, his Brother in Lawe; to giue him the body of the said S. *Eugenius*. This precious Relique, the most Noble present that one King could deuise to send to another; was deliuered to the Chanon of *Toledo*, *Dom Pedro Mauriques*, Sonne to the great *Adelantado* of Castile, expressely therefore sent into France, very honorably accompanied. The King *Dom Phillip*, went to receiue the holy body, and himselfe, attended by the Prince *Dom Charles* his Sonne, and the Arch-Dukes *Rodolphus* (afterward Emperour, second of the name) and *Ernestus*, Sonnes to the Emperour *Maximillian* the second, and his Nephewes; carried on their shoulders the Shrine of S. *Eugenius* from the Gate of the Citie, to the great Church of *Toledo*, into a Chappell vnder the high Altar, where it remaineth. Thus Princes and Christian Monarchs, honored and reuerenced the Bones of holy Martyrs & Confessors of Iesus Christ, which the Heretiques of our times haue consumed into cinders, in all places where those angry Tygers, haue planted their Ensignes of their Rebellion.

The body of S. *Eugenius* requested by the King of *Spaine* and sent vnto him.

The entertainment of the body in *Spaine* and where it was placed.

A Lampe of Siluer sent from Spaine into France.

The said King *Phillip* the second, in acknowledgement of so great a benefit, gaue as a present to the Apostle of France, the great S. *Denys Areopagita*, a Lampe of Siluer, which is to be seene in the vpper Quire at S. *Denys* in France, before the morning Altar, called of the Trinitie: vnder which, vpon a Piller of Brasse or Copper, is exalted the Shrine of another S. *Denys*, Bishop of *Corinth*.

The same Historians of Spaine report, conformably to that which is said by S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his Historie of France. That *Herminigilde*, Sonne to *Leuuigilde*, King of Spaine, had to wife the Sister of *Sigibert*, King of France, by whose perswasions, he detested Arianisme, professed by the Gothes, and conuerted him to the Catholique Faith. Whereat his Father grew so hatefull towards him, that hee vsed him with all cruelty, sending him farre off into exile, with his wife, and caused him also to be slaine, on the very night of Easter, in the yeare of Grace 589. And his wife *Ingunda* (although shee withdrew into Affrica) ceased not to Cathechise and instruct in the Orthodoxe Religion, the Brother of her Husband, named *Reccarede*, who hauing succeeded after King *Leuuigilde* his Father, in the Crowne of Spaine: caused a Councill to be assembled at *Toledo*, in the yeare of Grace 595. the fourth yeare of his Reigne, whereat were present 62. Bishops. Before whom, the said King *Reccarede*, *Bada* his wife, and his *Vuisigothes* abiured Arianisme, and made profession of the Catholique Faith, yet afterward, the *Spanish Gothes* perseuered therein. By the meanes of this conuersion, King *Reccarede* (being a Widdower) fought alliance & amity with *Childebert*, King of France, second of the name: taking in marriage *Anthare*, sister to the said King *Childebert*, and *Ingunda*, wife to *Herminigilde*, which happned in the yeare 598.

The deserued memory of the vertuous & famous religious Lady.

King *Reccarede* becommeth by marriage allied to France.

The Gothes being exterminated by the Moores, in the yeare 714. the Ammirant of Affrica, named *Musa*, Gouernour of Spaine, because he would not desert *Toledo*, *Corduba* and some other Cities; permitted some small number of old Spanish Christians, retired from the Moores furie, to inhabite there; namely at *Toledo*, where were fiuen Churches of the Saints, *Maria*, *Eulalia*, and *Iusta*; of the Saints, *Marke*, *Luke*, *Sebastian* and *Torquatus*. With them (to be supported) they receiued the Africane or Arabian Christians, passing out of Affrica into Spaine with *Musa*; by whose name, both the one and other, confused pell mell together) were called *Musarabes*, iudged and gouerned according to the Gothes Lawes, by one of their Religion. These *Musarabes* and old Spanish Christians, long time maintained the Diuine Seruice, according to the manner formerly obserued in Spaine, called the *Isidorian* Office, or of S. *Leander*; vntil they receiued that according to the vse of France, otherwise called the Romaine, and the Gregorian, in Anno one thousand threescore and sixteene.

Musa Ammirant of Affrica and Gouernour of Spaine.

Musarabes old Spanish Christians.

When there was held a Nationall Councill at *Burgos*, the Capitall Citie in the Kingdome of *Castile*, at the request of *Alphonso*, sixt of the name, King of *Leon* and *Castile*, for reformation of the *Isidorian* vsage, which smelt yet and tasted of the old leuen of *Arrius* his Heresies: Pope *Gregory* the seauenth, then sitting in the holy Seate, sent as Legate, and to preside in the said Councill, *Richard*, Abbot of S. *Victor* at *Marseiles*, who with inuincible courage, and without any distaste, abolished (quite throughout *Castile* and *Leon*) that auncient vsage, instead whereof, he planted there the French. This had formerly bin attempted many times, without bringing it to passe, and likewise in this Councill, it was opposed by some Bishops of Spaine, who would not receiue a new vsage, which they tearmed *Officium Gallicanum*: as it is reported by the Archbishop of *Toledo*, *Dom Roderigo Ximenes*, and the good and faithfull subiect *Mariana*, in his Historie of Spaine. But especially *Ximenes*, in his Spanish Historie, where he saith: *That the French earnestly pursued in Spaine the abolition of the Musarabe Office, for the reception of their owne.*

A Nationall Councill held at Burgos in the Kingdome of Castile.

Now, as the Spaniards were naturally opinionate and superstitious, and rather good Christians in apparance, then indeede and effect: so the Histories of Spaine doe report, that before receiuing in Spaine this *Officium Gallicanum*, as they called it; the Nobilitie and People openly bandied themselues, so that the most part of the Cleargie, contrary to this Decree in the Councill of *Burgos*, could not induce nor perswade them to receiue it: vntill after the proofe and examination,

on, vsually made in *Spaine* and elsewhere, in matters of importance, to know whether the French Office should be preferred, before their *Musarabe*: they brought two Champions in Battaile, to decide this quarrell in Combate, and by force of Armes.

The Spanish Historians, to despight the French, haue purposely let slip vnder silence (malitiously and disdainfully) the name of the French Champion. And yet tell vs, that theirs was called *Iohn Ruiz de Matienza*, a Bourgade seated by the Riuer of *Puiserga*. Also, that the Champion fighting for the *Gothish* Office, ouercame him for France: and by that meanes, the preferrence and honor remained to his side.

The difference to be decided in single Combat by two Champions.

When the Combat was ended, they made their recourse to proofe by Fire. For in the Citie of *Toledo*, in those times newly conquered from the Moores, a great Fire was kindled, wherein the French and Gothish Offices were throwne together. The *French* leapt immediately out of the Fire, whole, intire, and without any harme. That also of the *Gothes*, hauing continued there a much longer time; was likewise taken forth without any burning. Notwithstanding all these essayes, in right defended and prohibited by the Church, against the opinion of the *Spaniards*: the Decree of the Councill preuailed, and the Legate Apostolicall, *Richard* of *Marseilles*, *Dom Bernard*, then Archbishop of *Toledo*, and the most part of the Bishops Suffragans, ordained. That in the ancient Churches, built by the Christians *Musarabes*, the auncient forme of Prayers should be maintained, after the *Gothish* manner. As yet to this day it is (in my time) certaine dayes in the yeare, in the Cathedrall Church of *Toledo*, in the Chappell of the Sacrament of the Altar: but in other Churches, the Office Romaine, or Gallicane, should be receiued in *Castill* and *Leon*.

A second triall made by fire, and what succeeded thereon.

The ordination for a finall conclusion

Sixteene yeares before, to wit, in Anno One thousand and sixtie, the said *Gallicane* Office had bin receiued in *Arragon*, and the neighbouring Prouinces of the ancient resort or iurisdiction of the Crowne of France (as we haue said) by the Nationall Councill held at the Citie of *Iacca*. Wherein Presided S. *Austindus*, Archbishop of *Auch* in *Armagnac*, with the Suffragans the Bishops, *Sancio* of *Iacca*, called of *Arragon*; *Paternus* of *Sarragossa*; *Arnaudus* of *Roda*; *William* of *Orgell*; *Heraclius* of *Tarbes* in *Begorre*; *Stephen* of *Oleron* in *Bearn*, and many other Prelates. In this Councill it was ordained, that the *Gothish* Office should be vtterly suppressed; and the *Romaine* or *Gallicane* introduced and obserued. Moreouer, if hereafter the Citie of of *Huesca* should be wonne from the *Moores*, that then possessed it; the Episcopall See of *Arragon*, being then at *Iacca*, should be there established, as it had bin before.

The Gallicane Office receiued in Arragon, & the neighbouring Prouinces

In this manner then, both the Monarches of the *Lillie*, and the Kingdome of France, had the principall aduantage aboue that of Spaine, for profession of the Catholique Faith, the true point of Nobilitie, a Precedencie obtained by our first King *Clouis*, when he embraced the Orthodoxe Religion, and not Arianisme, whereof the Kings of *Spaine* made profession. It is true Nobilitie, to be truely Christian: as the Bishoppe of *Auuergne*, *Sidonius Apollinaris* said, in the Epitaph for his Grandfather.

Hæc sed maxima dignitas probatur
Quod frontem Cruce, membra fonte purgans:
Primus de numero Patrum suorum
Sacris sacrilegis renuntiauit.
Hoc primum est decus, hæc superba Virtus,
Spe præcedere, quos honore iungas.

It is an Historicall meditation, greatly remarkeable from the Sacring of King *Clouis*, that then when he embraced the Faith of Iesus Christ: the Kings of Christendome were infected with Heresie, and he alone Orthodoxall. For the Emperour *Anastasius*, who reigned in the East, was infected with many Heresies, and for them Excommunicated by Pope *Symmachus*. The Kings of England were eithe

Clouis the onely Catholique King in the World.

Pagans or Idolaters, and the reſt plundged in the errour of *Pelagius*. *Theodoricke*, King of the *Oſtrogothes* in Italie; them of *Bourgongne*; *Alaricus*, King of the *Viſigothes* in Aquitaine; The Kings of the *Alanes*, *Vandales* and *Sweues*, who then commanded the moſt part of Spaine and Affrica, all taking part with deteſtable *Arrius*. There was not then in all the world, an Orthodoxall and Catholique Prince; but onely *Clouis*: King of the French. And this was it which moued the moſt learned Cardinall *Baronius* (diſcourſing on his Sacring) to ſay. *Contemplare, Lector, præſentis temporis Eccleſiæ Catholicæ ſtatum, quo (mirum dictu) nullus eſſet reperiri in toto terrarum orbe penitus Princeps. Chriſtianus Catholicus: nam & qui velamento Fidei Orthodoxæ diu latuit Anaſtaſius Imperator, iam apertiſsime cognitus hæreticus, Catholicæ fidei oppugnator, iuſte, meruit tandem à Romano Pontifice Excommunicatione percelli, &c.*

A further relation collected out of Cardinal Baronius.

And in another place after he had admired the vnſearchable Counſels of the Diuine Wiſedome, who for the ſupport of his Church; illuminated *Clouis* to embrace earneſtly the Catholique Faith; he ſaith. *Etenim hoc ipſo anno (quis credit?) quo tam denſa tenebræ operuerunt vbique Terram, & caligo Populos, in Gallijs plane diuinitus Nouæ Lucis Fulgidum Sidus apparuit, cum videlicet Clodoueus ille magnus Francorum Rex, illuſtratione ſacri Baptiſmatis filius lucis efficitur.*

And from that time is it, that the Monarchs of the *Lillie* obtained the right of Precedency, aboue all other Kings and Princes on the earth. As God promiſed to *Dauid* (*Pſal.*89.28.29.30.) to giue him the right of Primogeniture, aboue all Kings of the earth, for the conſtancie of his true Religion, wherein the Sacred Kings of France haue bin ſucceſſours to *Dauid*. *Ego Primogenitum ponam illum excelſum præ Regibus Terræ: & ponam in ſeculum ſeculi Semen eius, & Thronum eius, ſicut dies Cœli.*

This is the auncient teſtimonie of S. *Gregory* the great Pope, in the Epiſtle which he wrote to the King of France *Childebert*, ſecond of the name, and yongeſt ſonne of *Clouis*. *That the King of France is as excellent, aboue all other Kings of the earth, as Maieſtie Royall is aboue all other men. Quanto Regia dignitas cæteras antecellit, tanto cæterarum Gentium, Sentium, Regnorumque Regni perfectio veſtri culmen excellit. Eſſe Regem, quia ſunt & alij, non mirum eſt. Sed eſſe Catholicum, quod alij non merentur, hoc fortis eſt. Sicut enim magnæ lampadis ſplendor in tetræ noctis obſcuritate, luminis ſui claritate fulgeſcit: ita Fidei veſtræ claritas inter aliarum gentium perfidiam rutilat, atque coruſcat. Quidquid cæteri Reges ſe habere gloriantur, hoc habetis: ſed ipſi in hac re vehementius ſuperantur à vobis, quoniam principale bonum non habent, quod habetis.*

Looke how much Royall Dignity ſurpaſſeth all them of the World; ſo much the more the Kingdome of France excelleth the height and greatneſſe of the Nations and Kingdomes of the earth. To be honored with the magnificent title of King, is no matter of noueltie, neither wanteth a ranke of Precedencie and Honor; becauſe it is but equall to many other Kings of Prouinces in the World. But to be a King that maketh profeſſion of the Catholique Faith, and who (in that reſpect) deſerueth to be tearmed Most-Chriſtian: therein is the Excellencie, and the infallible right of certaine Precedencie, which is not communicable to a Prince on the earth, how great ſoeuer he may pretend to be. Becauſe, like as the brightneſſe of a great burning Lampe, ſerueth as the Sunne at mid-day, during the feares of a cloudie darke night, drowned in all obſcuritie: in the ſame manner, the clearenеſſe of Faith in the Most-Chriſtian Kings of France, ſhineth in all bright ſplendour and glory, aboue all the Kings of Chriſtendome.

Wherein conſiſteth iuſtly both Excellencie and Precedencie.

At ſuch time as great King *Clouis* receiued the Faith of Ieſus Chriſt; *Anaſtaſius*, *Theodoricke*, *Alarick*, and the reſt, who tearmed themſelues Chriſtian Kings; were deuided from them that profeſſed true Religion indeede, by an infinitie of torments and punithments. On the contrary, *Clouis*, immediately after his Baptime; applied his minde, to bring the Church into her auncient luſter, and to warre vpon ſuch as tyrannized ouer her.

The great difference betweene Chriſtians of this time and the other ſorte.

A generall Councell at Orleans in France.

Firſt, he cauſed to be aſſembled a generall Councill of all the Prouinces in France, in the Citie of *Orleans* (as it is obſerued by *Hincmarus* of *Rheims*, and *Sigibert* after him) writing to the Fathers aſſembled at the ſaid place, this remarkeable Letter, the tenure whereof thus enſueth.

The

The Letter written by King Clouis, to the Generall Councell aſſembled at Orleans.

... Dominis ſanctis, & Apoſtolica Sede digniſsimis Epiſcopis, Clodoueus Rex.

ENunciante fama quid actum fuerit, vel præceptum omni Exercitui noſtro priuſquam in patriam Gothorum ingrederemur, Beatitudini veſtræ prætierire non potui. In primo quoque de miniſterio Eccleſiarum omnium præcipimus, ne ad ſubripiendum ea aliquis conuertatur, neque de Sanctimonialib. neque de Viduis quæ in Religione Domini deuotæ eſſe probantur: ſimili conditione de Clericis, vel filijs ſupradictorum tam Clericorum, quam Viduarum, qui cum illis in domo ipſorum conſiſtere videbantur. Idem, & de ſeruis Eccleſiarum, quos de Eccleſijs tractos per Epiſcoporum ſacramenta conſtiterit, præceptum eſt obſeruare, vt nullus ex ipſis aliquam violentiam, vel damnum patiatur. Quod ita ad intelligendum eſt, vt ex his ſupradictis ſi aliquis vim captiuitatis pertuliſſet ſiue in Eccleſia, ſiue extra Eccleſiam, omnino ſine aliqua dilatione præcipiamus eſſe reddendos. De cæteris quidem captiuis Laicis, qui extra pacem ſunt captiuati, & fuerint approbati Catholici, aut cui volueritis arbitrio veſtri, non eſt denegandum. Nam de his qui in pace noſtra tam Clerici, quam Laici ſubrepti fuerint, ſi veraciter agnoſcitis, veſtras Epiſtolas de annullo veſtro inſignatas ſic ad nos omnimodis dirigatis, & a parte noſtra præceptionem latam nouerit is eſſe firmandum: ſic tum Populus noſter petit, vt cuicumque Epiſtolas veſtras præſtare fueritis dignitati, cum ſacramento per Deum, & benedictione veſtra dicere non tardetis, rem iſtam quæ poſcitur, veram eſſe: quia multorum varietates, & falſitates inuentæ ſunt, vt comprehendantur, ſicut ſcriptum eſt: Perit Iuſtus cum impio. Orate pro me, Domine ſancti, & Apoſtolica Sede Papæ digniſsimi.

And in the ſecond place, hee reſolued to warre (with all his power) vpon the Vuiſigothes, ſworne enemies to the Catholiques; becauſe they were Arrians, and to purge and cleanſe France of ſuch an hereſie. For ſo ſaith S. *Gregory* of Tours in his Hiſtory of France. *Clodoueus Rex ait ſuis; Valde moleſte fero, quod hi Ariani* (ſpeaking of the Vuiſigothes, from whom the Spaniards deriue a part of their pretended Precedency for their Kings) *partem teneant Galliarum. Eamus cum Dei adiutorio, & ſuperatis redigamus terram in ditionem noſtram.* At the very opening of this Warre, he ſpeaketh as if he had the Victory already aſſured to him; and the God of battell bleſſed his enterpriſe, as we haue formerly ſaid.

His ſecond purpoſe to warre againſt the Vuiſigothes Arrians.

For this cauſe the Fathers aſſembled in the ſaid Councell of Orleans (wherein are named aboue all the reſt for ſanctitie of life, and numbred in the Catalogue of Saints, to this day famous in the Church: *Gildardus* Biſhop of Rouen; *Lupus* of Soiſſons (Sonne to S. *Principus*, Biſhop likewiſe of Soiſſons, and Nephew to S. *Remigius* of Rheims) S. *Melanius* of Rennes, *Quintianus* of Rhodes, *Theodoſius* of Auxerre, and *Leontius* of Toloſa:) doe teſtifie that it was the feruour and deuotion of this great King *Clouis*, for augmentation of the true Religion, and that therefore onely, he deſerued (by good right) aboue all Princes in the world, the title of Catholike, and the Sonne of the Catholique Church.

Especiall reuerend fathers aſſembled in the Councell, remembred for their vertues.

Domino ſuo Catholicæ Eccleſiæ Filio Clodoueo Glorioſiſsimo Regi.

OMnes Sacerdotes, quos ad Conſilium venire iuſsiſtis, quia tanta ad Catholicæ Religionis cultum glorioſæ fidei cura vos excitat, vt Sacerdotales mentis affectu, Sacerdotes de rebus neceſſarijs tractaturos in vnum colligi iuſſeritis; ſecundum veſtræ voluntatis conſultationem, & titulos quos dediſtis, ea quæ nobis viſa ſunt, definitione reſpondimus: ita vt ſi ea quæ nos ſtatuimus, etiam veſtro recta eſſe iudicio comprobantur, tanti conſenſu Regis ac Domini maioris, auctoritatem ſeruandam tantorum firmat ſententia Sacerdotum.

Such

K. *Clouis*, Son of the Catholicke Church.

Such was the reuerence and honour, which those Holy men bare vnto this great King *Clouis*, in giuing him the title of Son of the Catholique Church, that is to say, the *Elogium* or testimony of Catholique King. This Councel was held in the yere of Grace, fiue hundred and seuen. And the Title of Catholique was not giuen to the Kings of Spaine, in the person of *Don Ferdinand* of Arragon, till long time after the taking of Granada (happening in the yeare 1492. there are sixe score yeeres) to wit, in the yeere 1412. by Pope *Iulius* the second, a Capitall enemy to the French, in despight of the battell at *Lauenna*, lost by him and his partakers. Which gaue good occasion to the Italian *Sabellicus*, to write in sufficient intelligible tearmes: *That the King of France Clouis, was the first of all the Kings on the Earth, that drew sword against Heretiques, to extirpate them.* The same honourable title of Catholike King, and eldest sonne of the Church, was giuen to the said *Clouis*, by the Councells of *Magunce*, and of *Aix* in Germany.

Pope *Iulius* 2. a heauy enemie to the French.

And his example serued as a Lanthorne and guide, for doing the like to his Descendants and Nephewes. King *Gonthran* perceiuing that the Arrian Vuisigothes held and possessed the frontiers of the Gaules, Languedocke and Prouence; concluded to rouze them thence, as S. *Gregory* of Tours telleth vs in his French Historie: *Igitur hex Gunthrammus in Hispania exercitum commoueri præcipit, dicens. Primus Septimaniam Prouinciam dittioni nostræ subdite, quæ Galys est propinqua. Indignum enim est, vt horrendorum Gothorum terminus vsque in Gallias sit extensus.*

He cald the Vuisigothes execrable, because they were infected with the Heresie of *Arrius*, the most abhominable of all other that euer had beene; and in regard, that in all their actions they were cruell and bloudy, according to the Nature ingrafted in all Heretiques.

Concerning the donation of S. Peters patrimony.

Augustino Cramer, among all his cunning trickes, some-what cleanly sowed together with fine white sisters thred, could not iustifie, that the Patrimony of Saint *Peter* should come from the donation of the Spanish Kings. In despight of his teeth he must confesse and auouch, that the *Exarcate* of *Rauenna*, *Romaignia*, and all else contained in the Oath of *Otho* (formerly spoken of) came onely from the Kings of France, alwaies good benefactors to the Holy See. The same *Cranato*, knew not how to blanche the Emperour *Charles* the fift, (whom hee exalted vp to the third heauen) concerning the sacke of Rome, set downe in very few words.

The sacking and spoyle of Rome, by the Army of *Charles* the 5. Emperor.

Philebert de Chalon, Prince of *Orenge*, Lieutenant to the said *Charles* the fift, hauing besieged Rome, preuailed in his purpose on Sonday, the fift day of May, *An.* 1527. There, by true Catholique Spaniards, (of the grossest graine) ioyned with the Germanes, he caused to be exercised the very greatest cruelties, that the Turke and Affricane Moores (coniured enemies to the Christians) knew not how to doe the like; without respect or any distinction, eyther of Age, Sexe, or the most sacred things, no more then they that were the prophanest.

Pope *Clement*, the Cardinalls, *Rancio de Cere*, with other Romane Lords, saued themselues in the Castle of S. *Angelo*: whereunto they were no sooner entred, but prested also with a long siege, from which to be deliuered, the Holy father was enforced to giue an hundred and fiftie thousand Crownes in ready money, for redemption of the persons and goods being in the said Castle, which the Pope was to deliuer to the Spaniards, with all the munition for Warre therein, beside two hundred and fifty thousand Crownes, at time agreed vpon.

The Pope extreamely constrained by the Spaniards.

Ouer and aboue those, foure hundred thousand Crownes for ransome, the Pope was constrained (by composition) to discharge the said *Charles* the fift, and the Kings of Naples his Successours, of an annuall *Cens* or quit-rent of eight thousand Ounces of Gold and of all the arrerages which formerly were owing; and to content himselfe afterward with a white Haquency, at euery Lords change. This Order was dated in *Anno* 1528.

The King of France offers to reuenge the Pope's cause.

King *Francis* the first, as *the most Christian King of France*, and *Eldest Sonne of the Church*, to reuenge this iniury done to the High Priest of the Catholique Church, and set him at libertie, leuied presently a potent Army, the Conduct whereof he gaue to the Lord of *Lautrec*, *Messire Odet de Foix*. It was composed of nine hundred men of Armes, and of fiue hundred light horse, and of sixe thousand Lance-Knights;

Knights; whereof was Colonell, the *Count de Vaudemont*; sixe thousand Gascoins, conducted by *Don Pedro de Nauarre*; ten thousand Switzers, commanded by *Mondragon*, a Gascoin Captaine; and foure thousand French, by the Lord *De Burie*, with good number of Artillery.

This Army being ready to marche on, King *Francis* sent *Guyenne* King of Armes, to defie the said Emperour *Charles* the fift, hee then soiourning at the City of Burgos in Castile. The Letter of defiance vnder hand and seale, was dated at Paris, the eleuenth day of Nouember, in the yeare 527. signed by *Guyenne* King of Armes, importing as followeth.

A Letter of defiance sent to *Charles* the 5. in part declared.

FRancis, by the Grace of God, the Most-Christian King of France, of Naples and of Sicily; Duke of Millaine, and Lord of Geneway, defied and declared warre against him both by Sea and Land: Because by his command (entitling himselfe Catholique King) the City of Rome was taken, forced and spoyled, the Pope and his Cardinalls detained Prisoners, as yet still they were; Churches pilled, Women and Maidens violenced, and that great City, the chiefest of the World, reduced into an estate so wretched and miserable, as she neuer had bin so vsed by the Gothes, Hunnes, and other sworne enemies to the Church, &c.

The Emperors cold excuses in this case.

Charles the fifth laboured to excuse these violences, but it was apparant, that he onely had part of the booty, of the Sacke and Pillage of the City of Rome, and the Popes ransome; beside the acquitting and discharge of the Kingdome of Naples, amounting well-neere to a Million of Gold. The same Emperor *Charles* the fifth, and his sonne *Dom Philip* the second, then being in England, caused *Rome* to be besieged, making strong warre vpon Pope *Paul*, fourth of that name. To whom in the yeare 1556. King *Henry*, second of that name, sent succor, conducted by the Duke of *Guise*; which Armie consisted of fifteene thousand Foote, fiue hundred men of Armes, and eight hundred Light-horse; which constrained the Dukes of Parma and Florence, Lieutenants to the said Emperour and *Philip*, to discampe from before Rome, and to leaue the Pope and Romanes quiet.

Henry King of France sent succour to the Pope *Paulus Quartus.*

Popes at all times haue found no sicli refuge as in France.

At all times, Popes being offended by forraigne Princes, and namely Emperors, neuer found any more assured retreat, then to France, neither any such ready succour in the very strongest of their afflictions: the Monarchs of the Lillie haue alwaies beene the men; others neuer had any part or portion, in the honour of so holy an enterprise.

The offer of King *Lewis* to Pope *Innocent* the fourth.

Pope *Innocent* the fourth, being persecuted by the Emperour *Fredericke* the second of that name, vsurper of the Kingdome of Sicilie, came into France, as into a place of certaine safety. He assembled a Councell at Lyons, in the yeere of Grace 1245. whether the King S. *Lewis* went to see him, and offered him and the Holy Seate, for succour against the said Emperour *Fredericke* and other enemies, his Person and Kingdome, which (at all times) had beene the Refuge and Sanctuary for afflicted Popes, so saith the Historian of England, *Mathew Paris*.

In the yeare 1244. towards the feast of S. *Michael*, the King S. *Lewis*, Queene *Blanch* his Mother, the Kings Brethren, Counts of Artois and Poictiers, the Duke of Bourgongne, and sixe Counts of France, went to the Generall Chapter at the *Cisteaux*, (an Order of white Friers in France) there to vtter their Prayers, and to see so many Abbots there assembled together; who marched in Order and Procession before the *Most-Christian King*.

The Pope hearing of the Kings comming to the *Cisteaux*, sent to entreat the Abbots of the saide Order, to obtaine of his Maiesty permission to come and shield himselfe in France. *Vt secundum antiquam, & consuetam Franciæ consuetudinem, & libertatem, patrem suum, & pastorem summum ac præcipium Ecclesiæ rectorem, videlicet Romanum Pontificem, contra insultus Imperatoris potenter tueri, atque defendere dignaretur. Et si necessitatis articulus expostularet, sinum pandens ingenuæ pietatis, cum in Regno suo benigne receptaret. Sicut quondam bonæ memoriæ Alexandro Papæ (tertio) exulanti, & a facie Frederici Imperatoris persequentis, fugienti: consolationem & refugium nouerat præstitisse.*

Philip Augustus did as much to Pope *Innocent* the third, against the Emperors, *Philip*,

Philip Augustus succoured Pope *Innocent* the third.

lip and Otho, as we haue already declared in the precedent Chapter.

Pope Adrian succoured by Charlemaigne.

Charlemaigne went diuers times into Italy, to the assistance of Pope Adrian, against Didier, King of the Lombards, afflicting the Pope and the holy Seate; hee exterminated his reigne in Italie, and confined him prisoner in the Castle (famous by his name yet this day) *Mons-Desidery, Mount-Didier* in Picardy.

Pope Stephen assisted by K. Pepin le Bref, & restored to his seate.

King *Pepin le bref*, Father to *Charlemaigne*, receiued into his Protection & safeguard, Pope *Stephen*, in whose fauour he went two seuerall times into Italy against *Astolphus*, as then King of the Lombards; whom he sent packing from Pauia, constrained (after he had endured a long siege) to submit himselfe. Hee restored the said Pope *Stephen* to the Holy Seate, which he held by his liberalities, euen the Patrimonie, called of S. *Peter*, particularized before in the Oath of the Emperor *Otho*, fourth of that name, to Pope *Innocent* the third. And the same Pope *Stephen*, comming into France, King *Pepin*, his wife, his children, and all the Nobilitie, went to receiue him at the farthest Frontires of the Kingdome, and kept him company to Pauia.

At the first meeting of K. *Pepin* with the Pope, he forth-with alighted on foot, and all his company, and in that manner went three miles, or three thousand paces before him: and then going neerer to him, fell on his knees, kissing his feete in all humility, taking the Holy Fathers Palfrey by the bridle, and so conducted him to the place which was prounded for him.

Like Honour and Reuerence haue many Popes receiued, comming into France (which haue beene a very great number) where they haue beene welcommed, nourished, and defended against their enemies, by our Kings and the people of France, as the like cannot be said of any other Kingdome in Christendome. As hath been obserued by the learned S. *Thomas Aquinas*, in his booke *De Regimine Principum*, dedicated to *Iames* King of Cyprus, of the Illustrious House of *Lusignan* in Poictou. That in former times the Emperours of the East, and of Constantinople, were Protectors of the Holy Seate of Rome, to the time of the Sacred Kings of France, *Pepin* and *Charlemaigne*, of whom he implored helpe, to be redeemed from the slauery and seruitude of them of Lombardy. *Aduocauit Romanus Pontifex ad sui defensionem contra Longobardos Reges Francorum. Primo quidem Pepinum Stephanus Papa, & successor Zachariæ contra Astulphum Regem Longobardorum. Deinde Adrianus, & Leo Carolum Magnum contra Desiderium ejusdem Regem. And for this cause* (saith hee) *the Kingdome of France is and alwaies hath beene, the assured Retreat for the afflicted Popes.* Nothing can be said of the like in fauour of Spaine

Another way whereby to continue our Kingdome in Excellency.

The Precedency of France ought likewise to be iudged by Learning, Pietie, and extendure of the Kingdome, with the other, which is best knowne by the great number of Dioceses and of Vniuersities: an Argument which may Warre to some purpose.

The Vniuersities of Spaine are of least fame.

All the Spaines intirely (comprehending therein the Kingdomes of Nauarre and Portugall haue no more but sixe famous Vniuersities, as namely *Academiæ Illerdenses, Conimbrensis, Oscensis, Toletana* and *Salamanticensis*. Speaking properly in the Countrey Language: *Lerida* in Nauarre; *Coimbre* in Portugal; *Huesca* in Arragon: and the rest in the midst of Spaine, to witte, *Alcala de Henarez*; *Toledo*, and *Salamanca*.

The Vniuersities in France, Paris the first.

In France there are twelue; as namely Paris, *sans Pair, without Peere*, the City of the Lillie; not of the Kings of the Persians, but the ordinary abiding of the greatest Monarch in the World, *The Most Christian King of France*. Paris, the true residence, and the Parnassus of the Muses; the *Magazine* and Store-house of all kindes of Arts, Sciences, and Faculties; and principally renowned through all parts of Christendome, for that of Diuinity.

Foure Academies in the middest of France.

She is followed by the Vniuersities of Orleans, of Bourges, Poictiers, and of Angiers in the middest of France: of Bourdeaux in Guienne, of Tolosa, of Cahors, and of Mont Pelier (particularly famous for the faculty of Physicke, Chirurgerie, and Pharmacie in Languedocke; of Valentia in Daulphine; of Rheims in Champaigne, and of Caen in Normandie. And all these Vniuersities are Regented by Professors of singular Pietie, and exquisite learning.

The

The names of the said Vniuersities, are *Lutetia Parisiorum, Aurelia, Biturix, Pictauium, Andegauum, Burdegala, Tolosa, Cadurcum, Mons-Pessulus, Valentia, Rhemensis, & Cadomum*, called and sir-named otherwise, *Caij, vel Gaij-domus*.

As concerning the number of Dioceses; France hath euermore made her deuotion to shine and appeare, aboue all other Kingdomes in Christendome.

We learn in the histories of Spain, that their King *Bamba*, or *Vamba*, as they please to pronounce it, and of whom the Spaniards make fabulous tales (concerning his stature, which bloomed or blossomed so soone as it was fixed in the ground) was hee who made diuision of Bishoprickes & Dioceses therein, as now at this day; changing and disposing, quite contrary to that which they were ordered for, in the time of *Constantine* the Great; vnder whose Empire, the Metropolitane Sees of Spayne were these.

Hispalis, Emerita, Carthagena, Taracona, and *Brathara*: which in Spanish are *Seuill, Merida, Carthagena* is ruined, and the Metropolitane Seate transferred (say they) to *Toledo*, the primatiall Church of the Spaynes *Taragon* and *Braga*, famous by her Councell, called by ignorants in the Spanish tongue, *Bracarense Concilium*.

The Archbishopricks Suffraganes.

As for the Suffragans belonging to these Archbishopricks, Seuil had the Bishopricks of *Italica, Seritium, Assidonia, Elepla, Malaca, Eliberis, Astigium*, and that of *Egabrum*: hereafter we will obserue the Spanish Vocables.

Dioceses of Merida.

Merida for her Dioceses, had the Bishopricks, named *Pax Iulia, Olissipo, Egitania, Conimbrica, Lamecum Ebora, Cauria* and *Lampa*, otherwise vulgarly called *Salamanca*.

Suffragans of Carthagena.

Carthagena had for Suffragans, *Toletum, Oretum, Setabis, Segobrica, Complutum, Caraca, Valentia, Murcia, Biatia, Castulo, Montogia, Basta*, and *Bigena*, otherwise called *Bigastra*.

Bisshopricks of Taragone.

Taragone, the Bishoprickes named *Barcino, Auca, Morada, Beria Oriola, Ilerda, Dertusa, Cæsar Augusta*, and anciently called *Salduba, Osca, Pompelo*, and the last, *Calagurris*.

Them of Braga.

Braga, the fift and last Metropolitane Seate, had vnder it *Dumio, Portu-Cale, Auria, Oueto, Asturica, Britonia, Iria, Allubria, Iffa*, and the last, *Tuda*.

The diuision made by King Bamba.

King *Bamba* diuided these Dioceses wholly after another fashion; erecting for Metropolitanes, *Toledo*, which he made Primatiall of all Spaine, *Seuille, Merida, Braga*, and *Taragone*.

Belonging to Toledo.

Toledo, which was sometime the Capitall City of the Vuisigothes, Kings of Spaine, had for Suffragans these Bishopricks; *Oretum, Biatia, Mentesa, Acci, Basti, Murcia*, (otherwise called *Vrci*) *Bagasta*, (that City is ruined) *Illici, Setabis, Dianium, Valeria, Segobrica, Arcabrica* (by *Ptolemie* called *Percabica*, and these two last Cities are destroyed) *Siguntum, Complutum, Vxama, Segobia*, and *Palença*, called at this present *Almagro, Baeca: Montison, Guadix, Baza, Almeria, Helche, Xatiua, Dénia, Valence*, otherwise called *Valere la Bruslee*, in Spanish *Valeria quemada, Alcala de Henarez, Monuiedro, Osma*; *Segobia* and *Palença* haue kept their ancient appellation, and the *Castulo* of *Constantine*, is at this present *Lez Naues de Tolosa*.

Of them appertaining to Seuille.

Seuille had vnder her diuision these Bishopricks following; *Italica, Assidonia, Lepe*, otherwise *Elepla, Eliberis* seated on the knap of a hill, named *Eluira*, two miles from *Grenada, Astigij, Corduba, Egabrum* and *Tucci*, called at this present *Seuille la Vieille, Medina Sidonia, Niebla, Malaga, Ezigia, Cordona, Cabra* and *Martos*.

Olde Seuille.

Of them belonging to Merida.

Merida had *Pax Iulia, Olissipo, Elbora, Oxonoba, Igeditania, Conimbrica, Lamecum, Viseo, Calsabria, Salmantica, Numantium, Auila*, and *Soria*, at this day *Begia, Lisbona*, (capill City of Portugall, where the name is pronounced without *N. Lisboa*) *Euora*,

lip and Otho, as we haue already declared in the precedent Chapter.

Pope Adrian succoured by Charlemaigne.

Charlemaigne went diuers times into Italy, to the assistance of Pope *Adrian*, against *Didier*, King of the Lombards, afflicting the Pope and the holy Seate; hee exterminated his reigne in Italie, and confined him prisoner in the Castle (famous by his name yet this day) *Mons-Desiderij, Mount-Didier* in Picardy.

Pope *Stephen* assisted by K. *Pepin le Bref*, & restored to his seate.

King *Pepin le Bref*, Father to *Charlemaigne*, receiued into his Protection & safe-guard, Pope *Stephen*, in whose fauour he went two seuerall times into Italy against *Astolphus*, as then King of the Lombards; whom he sent packing from Pauia, constrained (after he had endured a long siege) to submit himselfe. Hee restored the said Pope *Stephen* to the Holy Seate, which he held by his liberalities, euen the Patrimonie, called of S. *Peter*, particularized before in the Oath of the Emperor *Otho* fourth of that name, to Pope *Innocent* the third. And the same Pope *Stephen*, comming into France, King *Pepin*, his wife, his children, and all the Nobilitie, went to receiue him at the farthest Frontires of the Kingdome, and kept him company to Pauia.

At the first meeting of K. *Pepin* with the Pope, he forth-with alighted on foot, and all his company, and in that manner went three miles, or three thousand paces before him, and then going neerer to him, fell on his knees, kissing his feete in all humbity, taking the Holy Fathers Palfrey by the bridle, and so conducted him to the place which was prouided for him.

Like Honour and Reuerence haue many Popes receiued, comming into France (which haue beene a very great number) where they haue beene welcommed, nourrished, and defended against their enemies, by our Kings and the people of France, as the like cannot be said of any other Kingdome in Christendome. As hath been obserued by the learned S. *Thomas Aquinas*, in his booke *De Regimine Principum*, dedicated to *Iames* King of Cyprus, of the Illustrious House of *Lusignan* in Poictou. That in former times the Emperours of the East, and of Constantinople, were Protectors of the Holy Seate of Rome, to the time of the Sacred Kings of France, *Pepin* and *Charlemaigne*, of whom he implored helpe, to be redeemed from the slauery and seruitude of them of Lombardy. *Aduocauit Romanus Pontifex ad sui defensionem contra Longobardes reges Francorum. Primo quidem Pepinum Stephanus Papa, & successor Zachariæ contra Astulphum regem Longobardorum. Deinde Adrianus, & Leo Carolum Magnum contra Desiderium Astulphi Fratrem. And for this cause* (saith hee) *the Kingdome of France is, and alwaies hath beene, the assured Retreat for the afflicted Popes.* Nothing can be said of the like in fauour of Spaine

Another way whereby to censure, concerning precedency.

The Precedency of France ought likewise to be iudged by Learning, Pietie, and extendure of the Kingdome, with the other, which is best knowne by the great number of Dioceses and of Vniuersities: an Argument which may Warre to some purpose.

The Vniuersities of Spaine are of great fame in Spaine.

All the Spaines intirely (comprehending therein the Kingdomes of Nauarre and Portugal) haue no more but sixe famous Vniuersities, as namely *Academiæ Ilerdensis, Conimbricensis, Oscensis, Toletana* and *Salamanticensis*. Speaking properly in the Countrey Language: *Lerida* in Nauarre; *Coimbre* in Portugal; *Huesca* in Arragon: and the rest in the midst of Spaine, to witte, *Alcala de Henarez*; *Toledo*, and *Salamanca*.

To the vniuersities in France, Paris the prime.

In France there are twelue; as namely Paris, *sans Pair, without Peere*, the City of the Lillie; not of the Kings of the Persians, but the ordinary abiding of the greatest Monarch in the World, *The Most Christian King of France*. Paris, the true residence, and the Parnassus of the Muses; the *Magazine* and Store-house of all kindes of Arts, Sciences, and Faculties; and principally renowned through all parts of Christendome, for that of Diuinity.

Foure Academies in the middest of France.

She is followed by the Vniuersities of Orleans, of Bourges, Poictiers, and of Angiers in the middest of France: of Bourdeaux in Guienne, of Tolosa, of Cahors, and of Mont-Pelier (particularly famous for the faculty of Physicke, Chirurgerie, and Pharmacie) in Languedocke; of Valentia in Daulphine; of Rheims in Champaigne, and of Caen in Normandie. And all these Vniuersities are Regented by Professors of singular Pietie, and exquisite learning.

The

The names of the said Vniuersities, are *Lutetia Parisiorum, Aurelia, Biturix, Pictauium, Andegauum, Burdegala, Tolosa, Cadurcum, Mons-Pessulus, Valentia, Rhemensis, & Cadomum*, called and sir-named otherwise, *Caij, vel Gaij-domus*.

As concerning the number of Dioceses; France hath euermore made her deuotion to shine and appeare, aboue all other Kingdomes in Christendome.

We learn in the histories of Spain, that their King *Bamba*, or *Vamba*, as they please to pronounce it, and of whom the Spaniards make fabulous tales (concerning his staffe, which bloomed or blossomed so soone as it was fixed in the ground) was hee who made diuision of Bishoprickes & Dioceses therein, as now at this day; changing and disposing, quite contrary to that which they were ordered for, in the time of *Constantine* the Great; vnder whose Empire, the Metropolitane Sees of Spayne were these.

Hispalis, Emerita, Carthagena, Taracona, and *Brachara*: which in Spanish are *Seuill, Merida, Carthagena* is ruined, and the Metropolitane Seate transferred (say they) to *Toledo*, the primatiall Church of the Spaynes *Taragon* and *Braga*, famous by her Councell, called by ignorants in the Spanish tongue, *Bracarense Concilium*.

The Archbishopricks Suffragans.

As for the Suffragans belonging to these Archbishopricks, Seuil had the Bishopricks of *Italica, Seritium, Asidonia, Elepla, Malaca, Eliberis, Astigium*, and that of *Egabrum*: hereafter we will obserue the Spanish Vocables.

Dioceses of Merida.

Merida for her Dioceses, had the Bishopricks, named *Pax Iulia, Olisipo, Egitania, Conimbrica, Laxecum Ebora, Cauria* and *Lampa*, otherwise vulgarly called *Salamanca*.

Suffragans of Carthagena.

Carthagena had for Suffragans, *Toletum, Oretum, Setabis, Segobrica, Complutum, Caraca, Valentia, Murcia, Biatia, Castulo, Montogia, Basta*, and *Bigena*, otherwise called *Bigastra*.

Bishopricks of Taragone.

Taragone, the Bishoprickes named *Barcino, Auca, Morada, Beria Oriola, Ilerda, Dertusa, Cæsar Augusta*, and anciently called *Salduba, Osca, Pompelo*, and the last, *Calagurris*.

Them of Braga.

Braga, the fift and last Metropolitane Seate, had vnder it *Dumio, Portu-Cale, Auria, Oueto, Asturica, Britonia, Iria, Allubria, Iffa*, and the last, *Tuda*.

The diuision made by King *Bamba*.

King *Bamba* diuided these Dioceses wholly after another fashion; erecting for Metropolitanes, *Toledo*, which he made Primatiall of all Spaine, *Seuille, Merida, Braga*, and *Taragone*.

Belonging to Toledo.

Toledo, which was sometime the Capitall City of the Vuisigothes, Kings of Spaine, had for Suffragans these Bishopricks; *Oretum, Biatia, Mentesa, Acci, Basti, Murcia*, (otherwise called *Vrci*) *Bagasta*, (that City is ruined) *Illici, Setabis, Dianium, Valeria, Segobrica, Arcabrica* (by *Ptolemie* called *Percabica*, and these two last Cities are destroyed) *Siguntum, Complutum, Vxama, Segobia*, and *Palença*, called at this present *Almagro, Baeca: Montison, Guadix, Baza, Almeria, Helche, Xatiua, Dénia, Valence*, otherwise called *Valere la Bruslee*, in Spanish *Valeria quemada, Alcala de Henarez, Monuiedro, Osma*; *Segobia* and *Palenca* haue kept their ancient appellation, and the *Castulo* of *Constantine*, is at this present *Lez Naues de Tolosa*.

Of them appertaining to Seuille.

Olde Seuille.

Seuille had vnder her diuision these Bishopricks following; *Italica, Asidonia, Lepe*, otherwise *Elepla, Eliberis* seated on the knap of a hill, named *Eluira*, two miles from *Grenada, Astigij, Corduba, Egabrum* and *Tucci*, called at this present *Seuille la Vieille, Medina Sidonia, Niebla, Malaga, Ezigia, Cordona, Cabra* and *Martos*.

Of them belonging to Merida.

Merida had *Pax Iulia, Olisipo, Elbora, Oxonoba, Igeditania, Conimbrica, Lamecum, Viseo, Caliabria, Salmantica, Numantium, Auila*, and *Soria*, at this day *Begia, Lisbona*, (capill City of Portugall, where the name is pronounced without *N. Lisboa*) *Euora*,

Euora, Eſtombar neere to *Sylues aux Algarues*, which at this preſent is a Biſhopricke, *Idania la Vieille, Caimbre* the olde, built heeretofore, two miles from the new, *Viſeu, Lamego, Montange, Salamanca, Garay*, built neere to olde *Numantium* (ſo much renowned by the Roman Hiſtories for her obſtinacy), and theſe two latter haue ſtill retained their ancient appellations.

The Biſhopricks of Braga.

BRaga had theſe Biſhopricks; *Dumio*, which is no more then a Monaſtery, *Cala*, *Auria, Tude, Iria Flauia, Brentonia* (otherwiſe called *Britannica*, and *Lucus Auguſti*) *Aſturica*, and *Legio gemina*. This is now *Caia, Orenſe, Tuy, Padrono in Galicia*, *Bretagna, Aſtorga* and *Leon*.

The ſuffragan Biſhopricks of Tarragone in Arragone.

TArragone in *Arragon*, had for Suffraganes theſe Biſhoprickes of *Barcino, Egara*, which is no more: *Morada*, called otherwiſe *Gironda, Beria, Auca, Oriola, Ilerda, Hiſtoſa*, which is no more: *Dertuſa, Cæſar Auguſta*, at this day an Archbiſhopricke, and chiefe City of the Kingdome of Arragon: *Oſca, Pompile, Calagurias, Turiaſo* and *Aucs* (the ruines of this laſt City are to be ſeene beneath *Burgos*, capitall Citie of *Caſtille*, and from thence the Liſt and round of Mountaines, which engirt olde *Caſtille*, ſo farre as neere to *Nauarre*, is named the Mountaines of *Oca*.)

Biſhopricks of Barcelona.

Theſe are at this preſent the Biſhopricks of *Barcelona*; *Girone, Empuries*; *Vic D'O. ſone, Orgel, Leruia, Tortoſa, Saragoce, Huceſca, Pampelona* capitall City of the Kingdom of *Nauarre, Calaorra* and *Taraçone*. But this Order hath beene ſince changed, ſome of theſe Cities being Metropolitane, as *Burgos* and *Saragoſſa*, which were ſomtimes but Biſhopricks.

Auch in Gaſcoign the Metropolitane, & her ſuffragans.

And this is worthy to be obſerued of France, that Arragon, and the Prouinces neighbouring to France, conquered by our King *Charlemaigne*; acknowledged for Metropolitane, the Archbiſhoprick of *Auch* in *Gaſcoigne*, of which were Suffragans the Biſhopricks of *Barcelona, Girona, Orgell, Empuries, Vic D'Oſoue* & *Taraſſone*. And the very greateſt part of *Arragon*, the Counts of *Barcelona, Catalogna, Rouſſillon*, and *Cerdagna* relied on the Crowne of France, and thereof they acknowledged the Soueraignty, ſince the Conqueſt of the ſaid *Charlemaigne*, and the names of the Kings of France were inſerted and noted, at the beginning of all publique Acts, which were expedited to the ſaid Prouinces, and which was obſerued vnto the yeare of Grace, 1182. when *Alphonſo*, ſecond of that name King of *Arragon*, Count of *Barcelona, Catalogna, Rouſſillon* and *Cerdaigna*, cauſed a Nationall Councell to be aſſembled at *Taragona*. In which Councell was prohibited for euer after, to acknowledge the Kings of France as Soueraignes in the ſaid Prouinces, and the Notaries, Regiſters and Scriueners, were no more to inſert in their Acts, the names of the Kings of France, and the date of their yeeres Reignes, as they had done before: but onely the yeere of the Incarnation of our Sauiour and Redeemer *Ieſus Chriſt*, which in France we call the yeere of Grace.

A Nationall Councell cal'd by *Alphonſo* K. Arragon againſt the ſoueraignty of France.

7. Metropolitans, and 60. Biſhopricks in Spaine.

There are then in all the Spaines, ſeuen Metropolitane Seates; as *Toledo, Seuille, Merida, Burgos, Braga, Saragoſſa*, and *Taragona*: and threeſcore Biſhopricks, or thereabout.

15. Metropolitans, & 110. Biſhopricks in France.

In France there be fifteene Metropolitane Seates, and an hundred and ten Biſhoprickes.

At the beginning of this Chapter, we obſerued the ſeuenteene Prouinces of the Gaules, according to the ancient Order and Ranke which they held, when they were obedient to the Romane Emperors. But the Order is not ſuch, in regard of the Metropolitane Seates, and Dioceſſes of France. Whereof S. *Iſidore*, Archbiſhop of Seuill in Spaine, (for we will ſerue our ſelues with Spaniſh Authors, which cannot be gaine-ſaid by them of their owne Nation) nameth the firſt Metropolitan Seat, to be that of Lyons.

Lyons the firſt Metropolitan Citie.

An ancient goodly City, laued and watered with the Riuers of Rhoſne, and of Saoſne, Rhone and Soan. The Archbiſhop thereof is Primate of the Gaules. This Primacie was heeretofore conteſted by the Archbiſhop of *Sens*, who euen to this day ſo entitleth himſelfe, and qualifieth Primate of the Gaules, and alſo of Germanie.

And

And yet notwithſtanding theſe interiected appellations of the Archbiſhop of Sens, it relied to the Primacy of Lyons, the Archbiſhop whereof preceded all the Metropolitanes in the Kingdome of France; conſequently thoſe of Spaine, and all the Kingdomes of Chriſtendome, what part ſoeuer they tooke or held in the Generall Councells. The Church is dedicated vnder the name of S. *Iohn* the Euangeliſt, remarkeable for the integrity there carefully kept for Diuine ſeruice, as it had beene from the Apoſtles time, and birth of the Church. For this cauſe it is ſaid of her, that *Eccleſia Lugdunenſis non recipit nouitates*.

The Order of the Metropolitane Sees of France, and how they are marſhalled ech after other.

It is then to be noted, that the Metropolitane Sees and Dioceſſes in the holy Kingdome of France, doe marche in this order. *Lugdunenſis prima, Lugdunenſis ſecunda, Lugdunenſis tertia, Lugdunenſis quarta, Lugdunenſis quinta*.

There is next after the firſt Gaule Belgica and ſecond, follow

The firſt, ſecond, and third Prouinces of Aquitaine: after which come the

First and ſecond Prouinces *Narbonnoiſe*, which S. *Iſidore* calleth the ſecond and third Prouinces *Viennoiſes*, and theſe are followed by the

Fourth Prouince Viennoiſe, ſo ſaith S. *Iſidore*, and of the ſaid Prouinces, theſe are the Dioceſſes,

Lyons the firſt Prouince of the Gaules.

The firſt Prouince of the Gaules, is that of *Lyons*, called in Latine *Lugdunum*, which hath for Suffragans foure Biſhopricks, on this ſide the Saone in *Bourg-Ogne*; to wit *Autun*, in Latine *Aedua* in the Commentaries of *Cæſar*, and *Auguſtodunum* by the Doctor of Doctors S. *Hierome*.

The City of Autun now deſert and ruined.

When as the See of Lyons is vacant, the Biſhop of *Autun* preſideth and gouerneth therein, whereof he maketh the fruits to be his: And the Archbiſhop of Lyons doth as much in the Biſhopricke of *Autun*, at ſuch time as it is without a Biſhop. This City of *Autun*, heeretofore one of the moſt renowned of the Gaules, in the time of *Cæſar*, and now deſert and ruined, is ſeated on the Riuer of *Auron*.

Kings of Orleans called Kings *De Bourg-Ogne*.

Next after marcheth *Langres*, called *Lingonenſis Eccleſia*, a Duchie and Peeredome of France, a City ſeated on the mountaine of *Vauga*, or *Vouge*, tearmed in Latine *Voſegus*, and *Vogeſius* by *Lucane* the Spaniſh Poet. A place famous for hunting, by our Kings of *Orleans*, called *De Bourg-Ogne*, of the firſt Line; as we haue ſaid in the Treatiſe, concerning the principall Officers of the Crowne of France.

After *Langres* is the Biſhoprieke of *Maſcon*, cited by *Cæſar*, and called *Matiſco*, and vulgarly, *Ciuitas Matiſconenſis*, ſeated on the Riuer of *Saone*. It is followed by that of *Chalon*, called by the Latine Geographers *Cabilonum*, and by *Cæſar*, *Cabilinum*; in like manner ſeated on the Riuer of *Saone*.

The 6. Biſhopricks of Normandie, marſhalled in their rank & order.

Lugdunenſis ſecunda, or the ſecond Prouince *Lyonnois*, is the ſame which wee call *Normandie*, the Metropolitane See or Seate whereof is *Rouen*, called in Latine *Rothomagus*, ſeated vpon the royall Riuer of *Seine*, and beautified with one of the Parlements of France. The Archbiſhop whereof entitleth and qualifieth himſelfe Primate of Normandie, hauing ſixe Suffragans vnder him, remarkeable by this ancient name *Saeble*. Theſe are the Biſhoprickes following; of *Bayeux*, called *Baiocaſiu, Baiocenſis, Baiocæ*, and the Inhabitant *Baiocaſſes*. *Auranches* is ſecond, in Latine *Abrincenſis, Abrincantum, Abricatenſis, Arboricenſis*, and *Abrincæ*. A Seate renowned by *Robertus Cœnalis*, Doctor in Diuinity, of the faculty of Paris, Biſhop of *Auranches*, whoſe Tombe and figure is to be ſeene raiſed in Copper, on the North ſide in the Quire of S. *Pauls* Church at Paris. After *Auranches*, is the Biſhopricke of *Eureux*, in Latine *Ebroicum*; the Inhabitants *Ebroices* in *Cæſar*, and their City *Ciuitas Ebroicenſis*. The next is *Seez*, in Latine *Saienſis*, and *Sagium*, the Inhabitants thereof are called by *Cæſar*, *Populi Seſuuij*. After *Seez*, followeth the Biſhoprick of *Lizieux*, in Latine *Lexouium*, the Inhabitants *Lexouij Populi* by *Cæſar*. And the laſt *Coutances*, in Latine *Ciuitas Conſtantienſes*, which is ſaid to be ſo named, not of the Emperour *Conſtantine* the Great, but of him that bare the ſame name, and who poſſeſſed himſelfe of Gaule, and of Great Britaine, as wee haue already ſaid. And although the Vulgar people of Normandie comprehend their Biſhopricks vnder the name of *Saeble*, as we haue ſaid) and aſſigne them their ranke according to that ano-

Conſtantius the Britaine that poſſeſſed himſelfe of Gaule.

minate name; *Sees, Auranches, Coutance, Bayeux, Lizieux, Eureux*: yet notwithſtanding from all times) the Biſhop of *Bayeux* is the prime Suffragan, and he of *Auranches* the ſecond.

Lugdunensis tertia, the third *Lyonnois* Prouince, comprehendeth the Archbishopricke of Tours, in Latine *Turonus*, and *Vrbs Turonum*, called *Cæsaromagus* in *Ptolomy*, a faire and famous City in the Garden of France, seated on the Riuer of Loire; greatly renowned, as well for hauing bin the assured retreat for the Parliament of Paris, during the troubles in France, excited by the factions of a bloudy and furious League: in memory whereof (euery yere) the Parlement of Paris feasteth the day of S. *Gratian*; as also for a Generall Councell, which was held there by Pope *Alexander* the third, who made his recourse into France, the nursing-mother of Popes, as we haue said. *Alexander Papa tertius Concilium congregauit Turoni in Ecclesia sancti Mauritij duodecimo Kalendas Iunij.* For the Metropolitane Church is dedicated to the Knight and Martyr S. *Maurice*, howsoeuer the Vulgar sort call the said Church S. *Gatian*.

France a Nursing-mother of Popes.

11. Suffragans belonging to Tours.

Shee hath 11. Bishopricks Suffragans; two in France, and the other nine in Bretaigne. The first is *Mans*, a City seated on the small Riuer of Sarte, in Latine *Sarta*, and the City *Cenomannum & Coenomanensis Ciuitas*. The second is Angiers, seated on the Riuer of Maine, in Latine *Maduana*; and the City of Angiers called *Ciuitas Andegauensis*, the Inhabitants *Andes* in *Cæsar*, and *Lucane* in his first booke.

Angiers.

In ripis Maduanatuis marcere perosus
Andus.
And quæ Populi, by *Tacitus*.

The third Bishopricke is Rennes in Bretaigne, in Latine *Ciuitas Redonensis*, and the Inhabitants called by *Cæsar Redones*. This City honoured by the Parlement of Bretaigne, is seated on the Riuer of Vilene, in Latine *Vigelania*, and *Vicinonia*. *Nantes* followeth next, a Merchant City, and riche, seated on the Riuer of Loire, in Latine *Ligeris*, and the City, *Ciuitas Namnetensis*: the Inhabitants called *Namnetes* by *Cæsar*. Some are of opinion, that a part of the said Inhabitants, made a Colonie on the Adriaticke Sea; giuing being, sourse and Originall to the mighty and wel-gouerned Common wealth of the Venetians, so called of their first Founders, issuing from *Bretaigne Armorica*.

Nantes

Concerning the Originall & foundation of Venice. Cornoalia.

After followeth the Bishopricke of *Cornoalia*, in Latine *Coriſopitum*, *Oppidum Coriosolitarum*, the Inhabitants in *Cæsar Curiosolitæ*, & their City *Ciuitas Coriſopitensis*.

Leon.

The seuenth Bishopricke is denominated *Leon*, *Ciuitas Leonensis*, and by *Cæsar*, *Legnum*; her Inhabitants *Osisimy*, *Leonum oppidum Osisimorum*. The eight is *Trecuict*, *Ciuitas Trecorensis*, and *Trecora*, of the *Peninsula* or halfe Iland *Trecor*, in the Countiy Language. The ninth, is called by the name of her Apostle, and Tutulaire Patron S. *Brieu*, in Latine *Brioccnsis Ciuitas*, *à S. Brieco*. And yet notwithstanding, the Cathedrall Church is dedicated to the first Martyr S. *Stephen*. This City is seated between two Riuers, named by *Ptolomy*, *Titius*, and *Argennus*; and by the Bretons, *Trieu*, and *Argueuon*. Next followeth S *Malo*, so named of her Patron Saint *Maclou*, S. *Magloire* at Paris; *Ciuitas Macloulensis*, it is almost round engirt with the great Ocean Sea.

Treiguet.

S. Brieu.

S. Malo.

The tenth is the Bishopricke of *Doll*, *Ciuitas Dolensis*, which sometime was pretended Metropolitane of Bretaigne, against the Archbishops of Tours; as we will further shew vnder the Order of Bretaigne. She hath for Patron her first Bishop S. *Sampson*, whose body, and that of S. *Malo*, are in the Church S. *Magloire*, called S. *Iames*, otherwise called S. *Iacques du haut Pas*, in the Suburbs S. *Iacques lez Paris*. So we conclude this Prouince.

Doll.

S Samps. first Bishop of Doll

Lugdunensis Quarta, or the fourth *Lyonnois Prouince*, containeth the Archbishopricke of *Sens*, *Senonia* and *Senonensis Ciuitas*, a Citie seated on the Riuer of *Yonne*, called in Latine *Icauna*. *Yues* Bishop of Chartres, in his tenth Epistle, called the Church of Sens his Mother, and there doth make mention of the olde quarrell of this Church, against that of Lyons, for the Precedencie and Primacie. Yet neuertheless, acknowledgeth that of Lyons for the Prime, and calleth it *Primam Sedem*, namely in the hundred twenty sixe Epistle. *Hugoni primæ sedis Lugdunensis Ecclesiæ Episcopo, Sedis Apostolicæ Vicario.* And in the 18. Epistle, written to

Sens.

to the Archbishop of *Sens*, *Richerius*, he counselleth him to labour his cause; because the Popes had ordained and giuen the Primacie to the Archbyshops of Lyons. *Non est consilium meum* (saith he) *vt contra torrentem brachia dirigatis: immo Apostolicis sanctionibus interim acquiescatis absque preiudicio Priuilegiorum, vel authenticarum scripturarum, si quando rapperiri poterunt, quæ hanc subiectionem ab Ecclesia vestra removeant, & eiusdem Ecclesiæ libertatem defendant.* And we learne, that the Primacie of Lyons might be founded vpon the Antiquity of the Citty. *De veteri querela quam habet aduersus Senonensem, Ecclesia Lugdunensis Apostolicæ manu roborata, vel Scripta authentica, quæ Primatum Lugdunensis Ecclesiæ, quam aliquando ex catalogis Ciuitatum coniecimus exitisse, &c.*

The Primacy of Lyons founded on the Cities Antiquity.

Vnder the said Archbishopricke of Sens, are seuen Bishoprickes, obserued of the vulgar by this Anonimate name, *Campont*: as namely *Chartres*, *Auxerres*, *Meaux*, Paris, Orleans, Neuers and Troy in Champaigne; and yet notwithstanding, they goe not in this Order. *Chartres* marcheth first of all, *Ciuitas Carnotensis*, and *Carnatens*, a Citie both high and low, seated on the small Riuer of Eure, in Latine called *Autura*, the Inhabitants named by *Cæsar Carnutes*, and by the Spaniard *Lucan Carnuti Populi*: vpon the Mount of this City it was, that the wise Druides had erected an Altar, dedicated and consecrated to the Virgin that should bring forth a Childe, *Virgini Paritura*. After *Chartres* is *Auxerre*, which holdeth the second place. It hath diuers appellations, the most ancient whereof is *Autricum*, and her Bishop, *Episcopus Autricr, Altissidorum*, and *Ciuitas Altissidorensis*, seated on the Riuer of Yonne. The third suffragan Bishopricke is that of Troy in Champaigne, a Citie seated on the royall Riuer of Seine, *Ciuitas Tricassinorum*, and the Inhabitants called by *Ptolomie*, *Tricasses*, and *Tricassini*. And in the *Itinerarium* of the Cosmographer *Athicus Augustobona*, but at this day commonly *Trecæ*, *Trecarum*. The Cathedrall Church is dedicated to S. *Peter*, Prince of the Apostles; after which is the Collegiate of S. *Stephen*, in the Quire whereof are three Tombes of Siluer, of Kings of Nauarre, Counts Palatine of Champaigne and Brie. *Orleans* is the fourth, whose denomination we haue formerly obserued. After *Orleans* is Paris, the acceptable abiding to the Monarchs of the Sacred Lillies of France, by good and iust cause named *the Queene of Cities*, and Capitall of the Kingdome of Kingdomes; famous by her first Bishop, the Great S. *Denys Areopagita*, Metropolitane Bishop of the Gaules, as we already obserued by the testimony of strange Authors. *Cæsar* called it in his language, *Lutetiam Parisiorum*. The sixt is the Bishopricke of Meaux, the Church whereof is dedicated to the first of Martyrs S. *Stephen*; *Ciuitas Meldorum*, seated on the Riuer of Marne, called in Latine *Matrona*, and *Materna*. And the last is that of Neuers, which receiued that name by her small Riuer, called Neuy, in Latine *Neueris*, which rowleth into Loire, in Latine *Nigerna*, and *Ciuitas Niuernensis*, which *Cæsar* saith, had beene a City depending vpon *Autune*, and the name *Noniodunum Aeduorum*. These are Bithoprickes Suffragans of the Church of Sens.

7. Bishopricks marshall'd vnder Sens.

Chartres.

Anxerre.

Troy in Champaigne.

Orleans.

Paris.

Meaux.

Lugdunensis Quinta, the fift and last Prouince *Lyonnois*, is *Besançon*, or *Besanson*, tearmed in Latine *Vesontio*, and by Historiographers *Maxima Sequanorum*. This Archbishopricke hath but one onely Suffragan in France, which is the Bishopricke of *Bellay*, called in Latine *Episcopatus Bellicensis*, of the Citie which beareth the same name, in the County of *Bresse*, happening by a Treaty of Exchange to the Sacred Crowne of France, in the reigne of King *Henry* the fourth of glorious memory, in *Anno* 1600.

Bellay.

The first Belgicke Gaule, hath for her Archbishop and Metropolitane, him of Treuers, sometime the capitall City of the Gaules, and which *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth in his History, *Clarum Domicilium Principum*, The dwelling best liked of the Romane Emperors; and it is seated on the Riuer of Mosella. In the time of the Geographer *Pomponius Mela*, it bare the name of *Augustam Vrbem*, *Of the Royall City*, which he saith was the richest of the Gaules. S. *Hierome* bestowed his Study there, as we haue already said. The Bishop of Marseilles, *Saluianus*, and the Consull *Ausonius* the Bourdelois, speake wonders thereof. *Yues*, Bishop of *Chartres* giueth it the title of an Archbishopricke, *Primæ Sedis Belgicorum*.

Treuers.

Mentz. Her dignity consisted in the Electorate of the Empire, becauſe the 3. Biſhopricks which ſhe had for Suffragans, are ſubiect to the Crown of France. The firſt whereof is the Biſhoprick of Mentz, called *Ciuitas Metenſis*, ſeated on the Riuers of Scille, and Moſella, tearmed in Latine *Salas*, and *Sala* in *Fortunatus*, Biſhop of Poictiers; and *Mozella*, as we haue formerly ſaid. The Inhabitants of Mentz, and of the Mef-

Toull. ſine Country, are in the Geographers called *Mediomatrices*. *Toul* hath the ſecond place, called *Tullus*, and *Tullenſis Ciuitas*: the people whereof, by *Cæſar* and *Lucane* are deſigned by the name of *Leuci*, *Leucorum*.

Optimus excuſſo Remus, Leucuſque lacerto.

Verdun. The laſt is the Biſhopricke of *Verdun*, *Ciuitas Verdunenſis*, and *Virdunum*, by the Biſhop *Fortunatus Vereduna*, ſeated and trauerſed with the Riuer of Meuſe, called *Moſa*.

The ſecond Belgicke Gaule containeth a part of Champaign, & Picardy wholly. Rheimes, called *Durocortorum Remorum*, by the *Itinerarium* of the Goſmographer *Aethicus*, and of *Flardus* in his hiſtory of the Church of Rhemes, was one of the Metropolitane Cities of the rich and abounding Gaules, as is obſerued by the Geographer *Strabo* (who liued vnder *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius* Emperours) and who nameth the City of Vienna in Daulphine, on the Riuer of Rhoſne, *Metropolim Allobrogum: Durocortorum Metropolim Remorum*: and Niſmes in Languedocke, *Nemauſum Metropolim Arecomicorum*. By the name of Μητροπολις were noted the capitall Ciuitates of the greateſt and moſt celebrate Prouinces, before the deſcent of the ſonne of God heere on earth. Chriſtians had retained this name of Metropolitane, and had Biſhops who had their ſeates in capitall Cities, where (before) Dukes and Romane Gouernours made their ordinary abiding, and who had other Prouinces alſo vnder their gouernments: becauſe the Dukes commanded in Counties, and the other in Vi-Counties and Vicaries or Vecegerencies, afterwards named Viguiers in the Nature of Preuoſts, as we haue ſaid in the booke of the principall Officers of the Crowne of France.

The Antiquitie of Metropolitane & Biſhops in chiefe and capitall Cities.

The Chriſtians of the Primitiue Church gaue (for honour) the name of Metropolitanes to Biſhops ordained by the Apoſtles, or their Diſciples; in principall Cities which bare name: with charge to haue an eye and command ouer Biſhops, appointed to Towns and Cities of the ſaid Prouince: and thoſe Biſhops were named *Suffraganei*, Suffraganes to the Metropolitane of ſuch or ſuch an holy Seate.

Thoſe Metropolitanes were called Firſt-Biſhops, and baptized with the name of Archbiſhop, about the yeere of Grace, fiue hundred foure-ſcore and ten, or very neere, as we ſhall further relate heereafter. And yet notwithſtanding, the ſaid Archbiſhops (for humilities ſake) tooke no other then the Title of Biſhops, as yet (to this preſent) doth the Pope, vniuerſall head of the Church; who tearmeth himſelfe *Epiſcopus, Seruus ſeruorum Dei*, and who, by a name of Precedency and Honor, was ſometime called *Apoſtole*, *Apoſtolle*, in our Romanciers, and by Biſhops *Apoſtolicus*. And the Readings of the Biſhop of Auuergne, *Sidonius Apollinaris* enſtructeth vs; that Biſhops, famous for Learning and Sanctity of life, were called by their Fellow brethren, *Papæ*, that is to ſay, *Fathers of Father*, *Patres Patrum*: and by another manner of ſpeeche, *Apoſtolica ſede digniſſimi*, worthy to gouerne the holy Seat of Rome, and S. *Peters* ſhippe.

When the name of Archbiſhop firſt began.

The Citie of *Rheims* (very famous from the time of *Cæſar*, becauſe it was then honored with this title of Metropolitane) ſeated on the Riuer of *Vele*, in Latine *Vidula*: is a Duchie, and the prime Peeredome of France, and the place where are Sacred and Crowned *The moſt-Chriſtian Kings of France*. And in the incloſure thereof, is the Abbey and Arch-Monaſterie of S. *Rhemigius*, Apoſtle of the French, as Pope *Sylueſter*, before named *Gebert*, calleth him in one of his Epiſtles: where is kept the holy Viole or Bottell, full of Baulme, brought from Heauen, at the Sacring and Baptiſme of *Clouis*, wherewith our Monarches are Sacred.

Senlis. The Archbiſhopricke of *Rheimes* hath eight Biſhops Suffragans; as namely, that of *Soiſſons*, a Citie called by the Geographer *Aethicus*, and other auncient Authors, *Auguſta*

Auguſta Sueſſionum, ſeated on the Riuer of Aine, in Latine *Axona*, and the Inhabitants *Sueſſiones* by *Cæſar*; but by the Spaniſh Poet *Lucane*, *Axones*, of the ſaid Riuer.

Leues Axones in Armis.

Soiſſons the dwelling of the Kings of the firſt Ligne. It was ſometime the dwelling place for the Kings of France of the firſt Ligne, by the diuiſion or partage made betweene the foure ſonnes to our great King *Clouis*: and firſt was King thereof, and afterward of all France, *Clothaire*, firſt of the name; Founder of the Abbey of S. *Mard* (that is *Medard*) of the ſaid Soiſſons; where is his Sepulchre.

Great Priuiledges granted to the Abbey of S. Mard. Pope *Gregory*, firſt of that name, gaue great Priuiledges to this Abbey, in the Bull, where are named *Flauius*, Archbiſhop of Rheimes, and the Archbiſhop of Arles *Etherius*. The ſaid Pope (who ſate vnder the Reigne of *Childebert*, ſecond of the name, King of France) granted the ſaid Priuiledges, whereby he gaue this *Elogium* of Honour to the ſaid Abbey of S. *Marde*: That it was the Mirrour, and the Rule of them which made profeſſion of Monaſticall life. *Erat regula Monachorum Francia*, and *Vic on Aine*, the place of their obedience. In the Cathedrall Church of S. *Gerualſe*, is written this verſe in Capital Letters, for the rank of the ſaid Church.

Vrbs debet vere hæc, poſt Rhemos prima ſedere.

Chaalons. AFter Soiſſons is the Biſhopricke of *Chaalons*, in Latine *Catalaunum*, and *Eccleſia Catalaunenſis*, ſeated on the Riuer of Marne, in Latin *Matrona*, and by ſome Hiſtorians, *Materna*, a Count Peeredome of France. The Church was dedicated in the name of the moſt bleſſed Trinity; of the Virgin *Mary*, S. *Stephen* the firſt Martyr, S. *Iohn Baptiſt*, S. *Valerie*, and S. *Vincent* Martyres, in the yeere of Grace 1147. the ſeuenth of the Calends of Nouember, by Pope *Eugenius*, ſecond of the name, refuged in France, and aſſiſted by ſixe Biſhops; to witte, *Albericke* of *Hoſtia*, *Viuiers* of *Tuſculanum*, *Thibault* of *Paris*, *Bernard* of *Auxerre*, *Hugo* of *Neuers*, and *Bartholomew* of *Chaalons*.

Pope *Eugenius* the 2. ſuccoured in France.

Laon. *Laon*, in Latine *Laudunum cleuatum*, a Duke Peeredome of France, and an Epiſcopall See erected by S. *Rhemigius*, Apoſtle of the French, as wee haue ſaid in the diſcourſe of the *Regales*.

Senlis. *Senlis*, in Latine, *Syluanectum*, in the Epiſtles of *Fulbertus*, and of *Yues* Biſhops of Chartres; *Ciuitas Syluanectenſis*, by reaſon of the Forreſt that ſometime did engirt it. It hath for Patron S *Rule*, in Latine *Regulus*, ſcholler to the great S. *Denys Areopagita*, who appointed him the firſt Biſhop of Senlis, as we haue already ſaid in the life of S. *Denys*.

Beauuais. *Beauuais*, in Latine *Beluacus*, *Ciuitas Beluacenſis*, an Eccleſiaſticall Count Peeredome, ſeated on the Riuer of Therine, in Latin *Thara*: the Inhabitants are called by *Cæſar Belouaci*, an ancient City, and renowned by the magnificent ſtructure of the Quire, in the Cathedrall Church of S. *Peter*.

Amiens. *Amiens*, *Ambianum*, *Ciuitas Ambianenſis*, ſo named, in regard of ten Chanells of the Riuer of Somme which water this City; famous by her Cathedral Church, the very faireſt in the world, and for the head of the firſt Martyr, S. *Iohn Baptiſt*.

Noyon. *Noyon*, in *Cæſar Noniodunum Belgarum*, a Count Peeredome of France, chiefe of the County of *Vermandous*. S. *Eloy* her Patron transferred the Biſhops Seat of Verman, to the ſaid Noyon, beholding the remainder of the Caſtle of *Corbeau*, and in the Church neere to the Meridionall or South doore, is a Table to be ſeene, containing the Sacring and Crowning of *Charles*, afterward ſir-named *the Great*, ſonne to King *Pepin le Bref*, made in the Cathedrall Church of our Lady; at the ſaid Noyon. And halfe quarter of a mile from whence, the Riuer of Oyſe, in Latine *Iſara* (as well as the *Lizere*) beginneth to beare boates, to the place called *Pont-l'Eueſque*, Biſhops-Bridge.

Charles the Great ſon to K. *Pepin le Bref*.

Bologne on the Sea. The laſt Suffragan is Bologne on the Sea, knowne by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be *Bononia*, and *Ciuitas Bolonienſis*. This City is ſeated on the Ocean ſea, famous by her ancient Pharos, called *The Tower of Order*, rebuilt by our King *Charlemaigne*, as

as we haue already said in the Principall Officers of the Crowne of France.

During the Warres of King *Francis* the first, and of *Charles* the fift, *Terouenna*, in Latine, *Teruana*, was razed downe to the ground; and by treatie made among them, the Bishops seate, which from all times had beene at the said place of *Terouenna*, called *Ciuitas Morinorum*,

Vltimi hominum Morini,

Ciuitas Morinorum diuided into three Bishopricks.

was diuided into three portions, each of them attributed to a new Bishopricke, as namely; one at Bologne, in former times an Abbey of great deuotion, dedicated to the Sacred Virgin; another at S. *Omer*, *Sanctus Audomarus* in Latine: and the third at *Ypre*. And these three new Bishopricks, with the three ancient of *Arras*, *Cambray*, and *Tournay* (the Cathedrall Churches whereof are dedicated vnto Gods Mother) were Suffragans to the Archbishopricke of Rhemes. Let vs now come to the seuerall Aquitaines.

Of the first Aquitaine, & all thereunto appertaining.

Aquitania Prima, comprehendeth *Berry*, *Limosine*, *Auuergne*, *Caourcy*, *Rouergue* and part of *Lanouedocke*. The Metropolitane City is *Bourges* in *Berry*, called *Auarum Biturigum* in Latine; by reason of the small Riuer, whereon this City is seated, called *Auron*, in Latine *Varon*, and her streame passing betweene the Port of Auron, and the Wall of the City, is termed *Yeure*. The Inhabitants beyond it are called *Auaricenses*, by a difference from those of Bourdeaux descending among them, and named *Auarices Vrnefci*; as we haue obserued in the History of Nauarre. The Cathedrall Church is dedicated to the Martyr S. *Stephen*, on the Frontespice whereof, these words are engrauen in Capitall Letters.

Patriarchalis Ecclesia
Sancti Stephani.

The Holy Chappell at Bourges.

At Bourges is to be seene the holy Chappell, built by Monsieur *Iohn* of France, Duke of Berry (brother vnto King *Charles* the fifth) who liued aboue foure score and two yeeres: and in the Quire thereof is to be seene his Tombe of Marble, and by him one of his two wiues, whose name I haue forgot. But I remember well the deuise of the good Duke, which is engrauen on his Tombe, whereby I learne, that (vpon pleasure) he called his wife by a merry nick-name *Ourſigne*, and her deuise was thus emblazoned. There was the figure of a Beare, and another of a Swanne, and between them these words, *Le Temps Viendra*, implying thus much, *Ourſigne, The Time will come*: perhaps vpon some hope which he had, which we are not able to diuine of. But well we know, that he bare the Beare for his deuise, a creature which produceth her like without any forme, like to a lump of flesh, as Moales or Monne-calues; but by the power of licking, she formeth and patterneth it. Wherefore *Lambendo*, by *Licking*, *the Time will come*. According to that which *Plinie* reporteth: *Plutarch* in his Tract of loue of Fathers towards their children; with *Aelianus*, in their naturall Histories of Creatures.

The deuise engrauen on the Duke's tombe.

Lewis de Bourdon a valiant Gentleman of Auuergne.

The Chronicle of *Messire Iuuenall des Vrsines*, vnder the yeare 1411. speaking of the Siedge of *Dampes*, being a demaine belonging to the said Duke of *Berry*, in which regard, there commanded a valiant Gentleman of Auuergne, named *Lewes de Bourdon*, to whom, (after surprizal of the Towne, and he retreated to the Castle, which could no longer hold out:) word was sent, that hee should come to speake with the King, *Charles* the fixt, and the Dukes of Guienne and Bourgongne, with safety: *He came thither well apparelled, in a Robe of crimson Velvet, all imbroadered with Beares, and according to the Deuise of the Duke of Berry, and he likewise had giuen it him.*

Like delight of Princes in deuises, and obseruation of Creatures, and Ladies names by them affected.

In those times then, the solace and delight of Princes was, to take pleasure in Deuises, and obserue them according to Creatures, and letters of Ladies names by them affected. The same Chronicle of the *Vrsines*, speaking of King *Charles* the 6, saith, that he loued the daughter of a Knight, named *Cassinell*, in fauour whom, he made his Standards & Banners, according to her liuery, and in letters of gold were wrought a *K.* a Swan, & an *L.* which denoted the name of his fauored *Cassinelle*. In these daies a mockery is made, of the vse of Ciphers or Deuises, as in the time of King *Frances*. Al. fauours of *Susan*, sister to *Magdalen D'Estampes*. *Quidquid Principi placuit, lege Regia, Legis habet vigorem.*

The

Bourges in Berry hath 10. Bishops Suffragans.

THe Archbishopricke hath ten Bishoprickes Suffragans, the first whereof is that of *Clairmont* in *Auuergne*, *Sedes Aruernorum*, *Ciuitas Aruernensis*, and by another *Claromontensis*, and for excellencie *Aruernum*, seated at a place, or about the auncient *Gergouia*. At the said *Clairmont* was held a generall Councill, wherein presided Pope *Vrbane* the second, and his Cardinals, being come for refuge into the Kingdome of France, according to their custome, in the yeare one thousand foure-score and fifteene. In this Councill was resolued the enterprise, for Conquest of the Holy-Land, by the French Princes.

A generall Councill held at Clairmont.

Rhodes.

AFter *Clairmont* marcheth *Rhodes*, *Ciuitas Ruthenorum*, the Inhabitants *Ruthens* by *Cæsar*, now at this time *Rouergats*; great vaunters in their Buffaric language. This Citie is entoured with Mountaines, washed by the Riuer of *Auion*, in Latine *Aueris*. The Steeple of the Church is made of Bricke, in forme *Octogone*, flat aboue: a Tower which is held for the goodliest in the Countrey, and raised a Prouerbe, as we say in France. The Quire of *Beauuais*; the Body of *Amiens*; the Porch of *Rheims*; and Towers of *Paris*, all to make a Church perfect and compleate. So they of the Countrey say, *Cloutherie de Rhoudes*, *Campane de Mende*, *Egleyse d'Alby*. The Steeple of *Rhodes*, the Bell at *Mende*, and the Church of *Alby*; which followeth next after *Rhodes*.

The compleat forming of a Church.

Alby

THis white Citie of *Alby*, called *Albia*, *ad Tarnum Sita*, is on the Riuer of *Tarn*. Her Cathedrall is Dedicated to the Virgin S *Cecilie*, and holdeth but one onely Vault or Arch. But it is so richly depicted with Gold, euen from the top to the floore; as I haue neuer seene a fairer any where else. The Inhabitants are called by Romaine Geographers, *Elay*, and of the said Citie, the Mother to the Oratour *Cicero*, was a native.

Cahors in Quercy.

AFter *Alby*, followeth *Cahors* in *Quercy*, and by them of the Countrey *Cahourcy*, in Latine *Cadurcum*, seated on the Riuer of *Oll*, called in Latine *Olda*. Famous in regard of her Bridge, Rampared with three or foure Gates, strongly Porcullized, and being the great passage to *Tolosa*.

Limoges.

LImoges, the Inhabitants whereof are called by *Cæsar Lemouices*, renowned by her first Apostle S. *Marcell*, Contemporane with the great S. *Denys Areopagita*, as we haue said in the life of this first Bishop of the *Parisians*. It is seated on the Riuer of the *Vigenna*, according to the *Limozine* pronuntiation, where all the cadence is in A: in Latine *Vigenna*. This Church was held for the first Seate of the said first *Aquitaine*, and there was held a Prouinciall Councill, in the yeare one thousand fourtie two: vnder signed by *Aimon*, Archbishop of *Bourges*; *Iourdain*, Bishop of *Limoges*; *Stephen*, Bishop of *Puy* in *Velay*; *Raucon* of *Auuergne*; *Ragamond* of *Mende*; *Aemilius* of *Alby*; *Deus-Dedit* of *Cahors*; *Isembert* of *Poictiers*, *Arnould* of *Perigueux*; and *Roull* of *Engoulesme*. After *Limoges*, commeth in order the Bishopricke of

A Prouinciall Councill held at Limoges.

Menda.

MEnde, in Latine *Mimatus*, *Ciuitas Gabalorum*, seated on the Riuer of *Oll* (as well as *Cahors*) which is passed on a small Bridge of Stone, two Crosse-Bowe-shoote going from *Seuenes* (*Cabennæ*, *vel Gebennæ*) to S. *Geniez* on the banke of *Oll*. Wee haue said somewhat heretofore, in speaking of the *Regalias*, whereto we will adde, that the Cathedrall Church thereof, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, was pilled by a wicked wretch, and rebuilded by Bishop *Adam de Heurte-Lou*, after God had giuen vs peace, by the treatie of *Veruins*; decorated by his Successour and Nephew, Bishop *Charles Rousseau*. At the Porch of this Church, are two great Steeples of Stone, whereof that on the North-side, is of admirable structure, entoured with Galleries for the day-time. Here was the place of the great Bell, so farre ſamed, whereof I haue seene and measured the height and bredth, by the Clapper,

Dedication of the Cathedrall Church.

as they call it (it is a Bataill in Armes) comming neere to that of S. *Geneniefue* at *Paris*. This Steeple is the very faireſt of *Languedocke*, whereto that of *Rhodes* is not to be compared.

Puy in Velay.

Puy in *Velay*, in Latine *Auicium*, ſo named by the Mountaine, at the foote where-of it is ſeated; but by the Inhabitants *Lou Puech*, and beyond it, *Podium*, her Cathedrall Church being dedicated to the Sacred Virgin, daily reſorted to for Miracles; the Spanyards call it *La Segnora di Francia*. This Church (among all other) hath this priuiledge, that at all times, and as often as our Lady day in March, chanceth to fall vpon Good Friday (which we at Paris call Holy-Friday:) there is a Iubilie of plenary Indulgence; whether people reſort from all the Coũtries of France and Spaine. The Chronicle of *Iuuenall des Vrſins*, vnder the yeare 1406. ſaith. *In this Lent, our Lady Day was on the Holy-Friday. And it is ſaid, that when it falleth ſo on the Holy-Friday: there is then generall pardon for ſinne and puniſhment at Puy. And there was a World of People, wonderfull to behold: for there were aboue two hundred perſons crowded to death and ſmothered.*

A yeare of Iubilie in France vpon occaſion

Foure Biſhoprickes added by the Pope, in the firſt *Aquitaine* Prouince

Pope *Iohn* the two and twentieth, erected in the ſaid firſt Prouince of Aquitaine, foure Biſhoprickes, as namely; *Caſtres D'Albigez*, in Latine *Caſtrum Albienſium*, vpon the Riuer of *Agu*, *Acutus Amnis*: *Vabres* in *Rouergue*, *Ciuitas Vabrincenſis*, and *Vabrincuia*: *Tulles* in *Limoſines*, in Latine *Tullum*, *Ciuitas Tutelenſis*, and in the plurall number *Tutele*, as *Bituriges*; this Citie is ſeated on the *Coreze*, in Latine *Curetia*. And the fourth is that of S *Flour* in *Auuergne*, called *Ciuitas Sancti Flori*, ſcituated on an high Mountaine; called *Le Plan*, and beneth in the Suburbs, where paſſengers lodge, is the Riuer of *Dre*, in Latine *Adra*. This is the great high way from Paris to Toloſa. And all th is happened in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred and eightcene.

Of the ſecond *Aquitaine* and her appendixes.

Aquitania ſecunda, properly called *Guienne*, hath for her Metropolitane Seate, the Cittie of *Bourdeaux*, *Turgum Aquarum*, in Latin *Burdegala*; & by the Geographers *Portus Luna*, becauſe ſhee is ſeated like to an halfe Moone, on that ſide where ſhe is b thed with the great Riuer of *Garonna*, bowed in an halfe Circle, yet wholly round, that way which leaneth to the Lands of *Bourdeaux*. And vpon this reaſon, this Citie beareth a Creſcent in her Armes, with the repreſentation of her Riuer, of her Towne-Houſe, the Leopard of *Guienne*, with the Chiefe of France. Her Inhabitants are called *Auares Vibiſci*, as we haue elſewhere ſaid. The Metropolitane Church is dedicated to the Apoſtle S. *Andrewe*; honored with a Parlement, and a moſt famous Vniuerſitie. She hath pretended the Primacie of *Aquitaine*, againſt her Mother, the Patriarchall Church of *Bourges*, maintained in her auncient priuiledge. *Bourdeaux* hath nine Biſhoprickes Suffragans, as namely;

The Armes of the Cittie.

Agen.

Agen, a goodly and pleaſant Cittie, ſeated on the Riuer of *Garonna*, called by *Ceſar Nitiobrigum*, the Inhabitants *Nitiobriges*: and now *Aginnum*, and *Ciuitas Aginnenſis*, renowned by her Patron S. *Capraiz*.

Angouleſme.

Angouleſme, in Latin *Eccoliſma*, and *Engoliſma* by S. *Gregory* of *Tours*, and *Lupus*, Abbot of *Ferrieres*; bencath which runneth the Riuer of *Charente*, in Latine *Carentonus amnis*; famous by the ſanctitie of her Abbot *Sanctus Eparchius*, in French S. *Cibar*, according to the teſtimonie of S. *Gregory* of Tours. The learned Cardinall *Baronius*, obſerueth the Feaſt of S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his Romaine Martyrologe, on the ſeauenteenth day of Nouember, in theſe words. *Turoni Sancti Gregorij Epiſcopi*. He departed out of this life in the yeare of Grace, fiue hundred foureſcore and foureteene, the fourth of the Pontificacie of Pope *Gregory*, firſt of the name, and the one and twentieth of the ſaid *Gregory* of Tours.

Saintes or Santes.

Saintes, *Santones* in *Ceſar*, and in the Itinerarium of *Aethicus*, *Mediolanum Santonum*. This Citie is deuided in two parts, by the ſame Riuer of *Charente*, and without it, in going from *Poictiers* to *Bourdeaux*, is to be ſeene the remnants of three Churches

Churches of S. *Eutropius*, Patron of them, builded one vpon another, and laid in ruines, as markes of the irreligion of pretended Reformers, who of all the Images of Saints, haue not left one whole, or without breaking; but the repreſentation of the wicked Traitor *Iudas* Iſcariot, the firſt Sacramentarie Heretique that had bin during the Lawe of Grace. I haue ſeene the like Hiſtorie, at the Porch of the auncient Abbey of S. *Gilles* in *Languedocke*, where all the Apoſtles and their Maſter, are broken and maſſacred by the ſame pretended Reformers, and *Iudas* is left in his Pontificacie, by a ſecret article of their reformed Cabala.

Poictiers.

Poictiers, in Saint *Hierome* called *Pictauium*; by *Ptolomie*, *Auguſtoritum Pictonum*, a faire Citie, & famous Vniuerſitie (where I tooke my Licences in the Ciuile and Canon Lawes) ſeated on the Riuer of *Clain*. By the Inhabitants (whom *Ceſar* calleth *Pictones* and *Lucane*

Pictones immunes,)

named the *Clan*, and in Latine *Glanus*. Which hath for her Cathedrall Saint *Peter*, *ter* and for Tutelarie Patron, Saint *Hilarie*, the Hammer of the Arrian Heretiques.

Perigueux.

NExt followeth the Biſhopricke of *Perigueux*, in Latine *Petracorium*, called and named heretofore *Veſuna Petracoriorium*, by the Geographers: at this preſent *Ciuitas Petracorcenſis*, ſeated on the Riuer of *Iſles*, tearmed in Latine *Ella*.

In *Aquitania ſecunda* foure Biſhoprickes added by the Pope.

Pope *Iohn* the two and twentieth, added there foure Biſhoprickes Suffragans and more, to wit; *Condom*, *Ciuitas Condomienſis*, ſeated on the ſmall Riuer of *Baize*, in Latine *Biliſa*; famous by the Poet *Du Bartas*, becauſe it paſſeth by *Nerac*, three miles from whence, and ſixe miles from *Auch*, is the Citie of *Condom*. In the Cathedrall Church (dedicated to S. *Peter*) are the Tombes of *Iohn* and *Blaize de Montluc*, Brethe.en, the one Biſhop of *Valencia* in *Daulphine*, and the other, Marſhall of France, honored by his Commentaries.

Maillezais.

Maillezais in the Dioceſſe of *Poictiers*, *Ciuitas Malleacenſis*: the Chanons retaine ſtill to this day, the habite of S. *Benet*.

Luſon.

Lygon, or *Luſon*, likewiſe eclipſed from the Biſhopricke of *Poictiers*, *Ciuitas Lucionenſis*, and *Lucronum* in one word. And of theſe two new Biſhoprickes is deſcended the Prouerbe: *Beati qui habitant Vrbes; exceptis Luſon & Maillezais*.

Saſlat.

AND the laſt is *Sarlat*, betweene *Cahors* and *Montauban*, and in the Dioceſſe of *Perigueux*, *Sarlatum*, *Ciuitas Sarlatenſis*; famous by the Tombe and Body of *S. Sacerdos*, a *Bourdelois* by originall, and the thirteenth Biſhop of *Limoges*.

Of the third *Aquitaine*, and her dependances of nine Dioceſſes.

Aquitania tertia called *Gaſcoigne*, & by notice of the Roman Empire *Nouem populana*, commanding ouer nine Dioceſſes; hath for her Metropolitan the litle Citie of *Auch* Metropolitan of the Countie of *Armagnack*, & neighbouring Prouinces: but which ſurpaſſe in valure *L'Arcobiſco de Toledo*. It is ſeated on a Mountaine, where is the Cathedrall Church, dedicated to the ſacred Virgin, *The Treaſure of Miracles*. At the foote of this Citie of *Auch* (called in Latine *Auſcenſis Auſcitana*, and *Auxitana Ciuitas*) runneth the ſmall Riuer of *Gers*, in Latine *Aegircius*, which deſcendeth downe the Valley of *Aura*, and looſeth it ſelfe in *Garonna*. *Fortunatus*, Biſhop of *Poictiers*, deſcribeth theſe Meruailes.

Lubicat hic quoniam tenuato Aëgircius hauſtu,
Præfert druitias paupere fonte tuas.
Laus tibi ſorte minor fuerat generoſe Garonna.

Anciently the Metropolitaine Seate was in the ſmall Borough of *Eaure*, called by the Romaines *Eluſaberis*: by the Geographer *Pomponius Mela*, and by the Poet *Claudian*, *Eluſa*.

Muroſque

——Muroſque inuadit Eluſæ,

It is diſtant from *Auch* twelue great miles, and the ruines doe ſhew, that it had bin in much better condition, for I my ſelfe haue ſeene it: the auncient Church of *Auch* is S. *Peter*, beneath the Mountaine on the Riuer of *Gers*, without the Citie: on the backe whereof is the Abbey of S. *Orens*, in Latine *Orentius*, of the Order of *Cluny*, where I haue ſeene many auncient Sepulchers: it was founded by a Count of *Armagnac*, whom they called *Bernard Luſt*. The Seate of *Auch* is famous by an infinite number of worthy Biſhops, placed in the Catalogue of Saints, the chiefe of them, and their Reliques, are releuated by *Leonard de Trappes*, at this preſent Archbiſhop of *Auch*, a venerable Seate, which hath for Suffragans theſe following.

Aqs. *Aqs*, in Latine *Ciuitas Aquenſis* by the Romaines, and in the *Itinerarium* of the Greographer *Aethicus*, *Aquæ Auguſtæ*, in regard of the Bathes of hot water, which are of no great moment.

Letoure in Armagnac. THe ſecond is *Letoure* in *Armagnac*, as is the Citie of *Auch*, and both of them ſeated on the ſmall Riuolet of *Gers*, in Latine *Aegircius*, I haue ſeene on one of the Gates this inſcription. *Lectora Ciuitas Regia, Ciuitas Lectorenſis.*

Comminges. *Comminges*, which hath for Epiſcopall Seate S. *Bertrand*, of the name of the Biſhop: a little Citie, beneath which is the Village called *Baccrauere*, in Latine *Vallis Capraria*, where is a Monaſterie of Cordeliers, or Graie Friers. Neere to which is the Riuer of Garonna, which hath bin paſſed (in my time) vpon a Bridge of Wood, called S. *Iuſt*, as we haue ſaid. The ordenary dwelling of the Biſhop is fiue miles from the ſaid S. *Bertrand* of whom I haue ſeene the Coape, and an Vnicornes Horne, curiouſly polithed, and pierced quite thorow: that at S. *Denys* in France cannot be compared therewith) at the Caſtell of *Alan*, repaired (in my time) by Biſhop *Vrban* of *Gelas*, of the houſe of *Lanſacke*, in whoſe Librarie I haue ſeene very rare Manuſcrips Bookes; for that Prelate knew many things. S. *Hierome* enſtructeth vs, that Great *Pompey* hauing made the *Spaynes* peaceable, and laid the foundation of the Royall Citie of *Nauarre Pampeiona*, called it by his owne name, *Pompeiopolis*, in the yeare ſeauen hundred from Romes foundation, *Iulius Syllanus*, and *Lucius Murena* being then Conſuls. So paſſing and returning to the Gaules, hee made ſtay for his old Souldiours (S. *Hierome* writing againſt *Vigilantius*, qualifieth them to be *Bardoultors*, that is to ſay, men liuing badly, by the [a] Sacke or Corde: *Ex Veſtionibus, Arbuſtis, & Cultoribus*, that had no other honeſt meanes) on the Riuer of *Garonna*, in the Pyrenean Mountaines. And that there he cauſed to be builded a Citie of very great circuite, thwarted by the Riuer of *Garonna*, and that this inhabitation he called *Conuenæ*; afterward by corruption of Language, *Comenges*, as it is at this day, retaining the ſame deuiſe which S. *Hierome* gaue it *Conuenis, Conueniunt, Conuenæ*.

The Biſhops ordenary abiding.

A note concerning *Pompey* the Great in building *Pompeiopolis*.

[a] Such as liue by drowning men in Sacks, or ſtrangling them with Halters.

And of S. *Bertrand*, it is called *Ciuitas Conuenarum*; and the Prouince *Comitatus Conuenarum*: which hath eight [b] Caſtell-wicks, as namely *Muret, Semmathan, Caceres, Aurignac*, S. *Iulian, Salzes*, and *Caſtillon*; in all which Townes are to be ſeene the Armes of the auncient Counts of the Prouince, who bare *De Guelles à Quatre Otelles d'Argent en Saultour*. This Countie is of very great extendure, from the Frontiers of France and Spaine, ſo farre as to the Port of S. *Subran* of *Toloſa*, hauing many Vicounties vnder it, and three Biſhoprickes: as namely *Comenges*, from fiftie to ſixtie thouſand pounds, according to the moſt value of Corne: *Couzerans*, at twelue or fifteene thouſand pounds: and *Lombez*, from nine to tenne thouſand.

[b] Farr'ier or ordinary of a Lord's Caſtell.

The extendure of the Countie of S. *Bertrand*.

At what time, and how it was reunited to the Crowne of France.

It was reunited to the Crowne of France, in the yeare 1442. as it happened by the will and teſtament (and as I haue read in the Regiſters of the Chamber or Court of Accounts at *Paris*) of the Counteſſe of *Comenges Margaret*, Wife (vnworthily, and ill-entreated, theſe are the words of the donation) of *Mathew de Foix*, fourth Sonne of *Archembauld de Grailly*, Captall *de Buch*, and of *Puy-Paulin*, Vicount of *Benauges*, and of *Caſtelbon*; and of *Iſabell*, heire to the Countie of *Foix*, and Seigneurie of *Bearn*: This was thus done vnder the reigne of King *Charles* the ſeauenth.

Fabulous reports of *Pompey* the great his City of *Comenges*.

I let paſſe in ſilence the fabulous Tales, which they of the Countrie haue related to me, concerning the greatneſſe of their auncient Citie of *Comenges*, builded by the great *Pompey*, which (they ſay) extended from the Village of *Barbazan*, ſo farre as to *Mont Rean* (that is *Mont-reall*) on the Riuer, which are almoſt two leagues in length, and the like in breadth. And as for this Countie, it extendeth it ſelfe farre into Spaine, and ſo farre, as to the Vicountie of *Paillars*, and to many Ports, for paſſage into Spaine. Namely, to that of S. *Beat*; another of *Bagneres de Luſon*, ſo named by the excellent Bathes of hot Water, whether there is going twice yearely, in the Moneths of May, and of September. This Port is alſo named by *Benaſque*, for the prime Village of Spaine, whence men paſſe to *Saragoſſa*, trauailing by *Nelle, Campo, Aguas, La Puebla de Caſtres, Barbaſtre, Peralta, Saragnica, Hoſtalric, Ville Maſar, Sarragoſſa*. After that is next the Port of *Beauce*, ſo named of the laſt Village of Spaine, betweene *Nauarre* and *Arragon*, from whence men deſcend into France, to the goodly Valley of *Aura*, in Latine *Vallis Aurata*. And from Spaine they come to lodge at a pleaſant Bourough, named *Arreon*, whereof S. *Exuperius*, Biſhop of *Toledo* was a native. I haue ſeene the place of his houſe, and a little Chappell of deuotion aboue *Arreon*; whence they goe to *Sarancoulin*, *Prieure*, where the Marſhall of *Monluc* (as he writeth in his Commentaries) ment to make his retear, ſeeing the troubles of France, raiſed by the new Euangelians, to whom he was a great friend. This Prioric appertained to his Brother *Iohn de Monluc*: From *Sarancoulin* they come to *Monlon, Caſtelnau-de Magnoac*, and to *Auch*.

Hot Bathes of reknowned vertue, Yeerely, May and September.

The goodly Valley of *Aurata* in France.

Couzerans. AFter *Comenges* followeth the Biſhopricke of *Couzerans*, *Conſoraunenſis Ciuitas*, a Vicountie. The Lord of *Iornaille* writeth, that at the firſt Voyage beyond the Seas, which S. *Lewes* made, he tooke acquaintance with *Arnaud*, Vicount of *Couzerans*, who bare the ſir-name of Spaine (there are many of this ſir-name in *Gaſcoigne*, as the Lord of *Monteſpan*, and others) *Et l'Eſcu d'Or à la Bordure de Gueulles*, Armes which our King *Charlemaigne* had giuen to his Predeceſſours. I know not whether theſe Viſcounts (in my time, this Viſcountie was fallen to the Diſtaffe, or Female) are as yet of this ſir-name: for, concerning them of S. *Girons*, beneath *Couzerans*, they are ſirnamed of *Narbona*, the laſt hauing the name of *Emeric de Narbona*. Now, his name of *Couzerans*, is that of the Prouince, and not of the Cathedrall Citie, which by the name of one of her Biſhops, was called S. *Lize*, in Latine *Sanctus Licerius*, who is the Patron of the Citie, where is his Church. And as for the Cathedrall Church, which is aboue, encloſed with Walles, and ſeperated from the Citie by the great *Corps de Garde*: it is dedicated to S. *Mary*, where the Biſhopricke is in goodly ſight. Since my time, there was a Biſhop, borne in *Piedmont*, a Gray Frier, named *Franciſcus Bonardus*, a learned Prelate, and who Preached very often to his Flocke. He had for his ſucceſſour one called *De Lingua*, his Nephew, a Gray Frier likewiſe; but yet not equalling his Vncle in learning. This ſmall Citie bare for Armes, *D'Azur à la Campane d'Argent Batailee de Sable*. In the Suburbs is the *Hoſtel de Dieu*, founded by a Biſhop, whoſe Tombe is yet to be ſeene in the Chappell at the ſame place. Beyond that we paſſe the Riuer of *Salat*, in Latine *Sala*, vnder a Bridge of Stone; in the midſt whereof is a ſtrong Tower, where Sentinell is kept, and the ſaid Bridge is ſhut vp faſt in the night time. At the end whereof, againſt the Mountaine, is a little Chappell, called *Noſtre Segnore del Cap del Pon*, which is obſerued by all the Townes of *Gaſcoigne*, where there are any Bridges. Vnder the firſt Arch of that of S. *Lize*, as we come from *Toloſa*, to goe to S. *Girons*, or to *Caſtillon*; I haue often times read this inſcription, engrauen in old Letters, *Sacrum. Mirmuae. Fatidicae.* Which ſheweth, that this Bridge had bin builded, during the Denonomany of the ancient Romans; notwithſtanding the fabulous reports, which thoſe of the Country ſpread abroad from time to time.

Couzerans.

A great diſhonour to any Houſe of France to fall to the Female.

The Bridge of S. *Lize*.

Next

Aire, at the further end of Gascoigne.

NExt followeth the Bishopricke of *Aire*, a small Citie, at the other end of *Gascoigne*, called in Latine *Adura, Ciuitas Aduxensis*; seated on the Riuer of *Adour*, *Atyrus*, and *Aturrus*, as we haue said.

Bazas.

THen is *Bazas*, seated in the Launds betweene *Castet-Ieloux*, and *Langon*, for going to *Bourdeaux*; in Latine *Ciuitas Vasatensis*, and the Inhabitants *Vazates*. The ground is very meagre, barren and sandie; therefore *Paulinus*, writing to the *Bourdelois* Poet *Ausonius*, tearmeth his Soyle *Vasates Arenosas*.

Consul Arenosas non dedignare Vastatas.

The said *Ausonius* called this Citie of *Basas*, *Cossionem, municipale genus Vasatum*; and *Sedonius Apollinaris* nameth it, *Ciuitatem Vasatum*. Whereto he gaue this nickename or by-word; *That it was not seated on greene turffie, fattie earth, but on dust*; *Ciuitas Vasatum non cespiti imposita sed pulueri*.

Tarbes. The first Kings of Nauarre their defeat.

NExt is *Tarbes*, *Tarbella* in *Vibius Sequester*, and *Tibullus*

——— *Tarbella Pyrene.*

The Inhabitants *Tarbelli Populi*, otherwise *Bigerriones*; this is the Countie of *Bigorre*, held by one named *Centon*, Count of *Bigorre*, of whose Ligne are descended the first Kings of *Nauarre*, as we haue said in the Historie of the Kingdome, the most auncient of all them of Spaine. These *Bigourdans* are surnamed by *Ausonius*, *Fourrez*, *Pellitos Begerras*, and their houses Smoakie, because their Chimnies stand in the middest of them smouldred with fire of Pine-tree-Wood, whereof they make their Cottages and Candelles.

Nigrantesque casas, & tecta mapalia culmo,
Dignasque pellitus habitas deserta Bigerris.

Tarbes diuided into three Bourgages.

Tarbes is a Valley sufficiently acceptable, watered with the *Adoue*, *Aturrus*, and *Atyrus*, as we haue so many times said; and deuided in such sort, as into three long Villages or Hamlets: whereof one is the Citie, the Cathedrall Church whereof is dedicated to the Sacred Virgin.

A goodly great way paued with Stone three miles long.

From *Tarbes* in ascending three miles aboue, is a goodly great way paued (during all the three miles) with faire great Stones, for going to the Bathes, the very goodliest that I haue seene in all my Voyages. For those of *Barbotan*, the Batherie of *Lucon*, and of *Eucausse* (which in the *Itinerarium* of *Aethicus* are called *Aquas Conuenarum*) nor all those of *Genaudan*, *Languedocke*, *Prouence*, and other Prouinces of France, cannot equall these Bathes, for pleasantnesse of the place, and aboundance or plentie of all kinde of Game. And this was it which moued the Poet of *Gascoigne* to write in praise thereof, after hee had toucht others in his passage along.

Baigneres la beauté, l'honneur, le Paradis
De ces monts sourcilleux.
Ces monts enfarinez d'vne Neige eternelle
La flancquent d'vne part, la verdure immortelle
D'vne plaine qui passe en riante beauté,
Le Vallon Penean la ceint d'autre costé.
Elle n'a point maison qui ne semble estre neufue;
L'Ardoise luit par tout: chaque Rue a son Fleuue,
Qui clair comme Christal, par la Ville ondoyant
Va toute heure bu'on veut le Paué ballayant.
Et bien qu'entre son flot, aussi froid que la glace
Et le Bain chasse-mal on trouue peu d'espace,
Il retient sa nature, & ne veut tant soit peu
Meslanger, orgueilleux, son Froid auec son Feu.

Bathe

Bathe there bright Beauties: Honors Paradise
To those high Mountaines well may you entise.
Mountaines all whited with eternall Snowe
Flancke the one part; Immortall verdures flowe,
Vpon a Plaine, that's lonely Beauties pride:
The penean Vale engirts the other side.
Not any House, but seemeth fairely new,
Slate shines on all. Each Streete hath (as his due)
Bright Christall currents; washing through the Towne,
And all the goodly Pauement streameth downe
Entring his waues, so cold as any Ice,
The harme expelling Bathe, as very nice
Of his owne nature: proudly doth aspire,
Not to commix his cold, with that of Fire.

The Bathes of Bigorre resorted to from all parts of *Spain*.

The like is seene of all the Bathes by him specified, whether the Spaniards themselues come from all the parts of Spaine; but especially to the Bathes of *Bigorre*. For there is one Channell or Current of hot Water, and Sulphure, wherein Egges may be boyled, and Foules plumed or pluckt. At the rest (yearely) are an infinite number of vnknowne diseases cured, vtterly forsaken of Physitions.

Ceste Prouince abonde en Bains non achetez,
Ou le Peuple Estranger accourt de tous costez,
Ou la Femme Brehaigne, ou le Paralytique,
L'Vlceré, le Goutteux, le Sourd, le Sciatique
Quittant du blond Soleil l'vne, & l'autre maison
Trouue sans desbourser sa prompte guarison.
Encausse *en est tesmoin, & les Eaux salutaires*
De Cauderetz, Barege, Aigues caudes, Baigneres.

The Soyle abounds in Bathes, surpassing Art,
Strange People thither flocke from euery part.
The Barren Woman, and the Palsied Man,
Th'Vlcerd, Goutie, Deafe, Sciaticke, can
Finde present cure, without disbursing pay
(When golden-tressed Sol forsakes the way
To both his Houses:) There is no delay.
Encausses *Soueraigne waters witnesse plaine:*
That all Diseases are quite cleerd of paine.

Aquas Terebellicas.

THe *Itinerarium* calleth these Baths of *Bigorre*, *Aquas Terebellicas*, from which he counteth the waies, which make for *Bourdeaux* and *Tolosa*, in descending from *Spaine*. Now although the name of this delectable place, be designed by the titles of the Bathes of *Bigorre*: yet notwithstanding, without the Church of S. *Martin*, in the Subburbs of the said Village, is a Stone of the Countries White Marble, whereon is an Inscription in olde Romane Letters, which declareth, that the Inhabitants of the place were called *Vicani*; and that where this Church now standeth, was sometime a Temple, dedicated to the God of Physitians, *Mercurie*, to whom the blinded Romans (during the time of Paganisme) attributed the vertue of the waters of these Bathes.

The people in former times were called *Vicani*.

Merc. Sac. Vicanorum.
Aquensium.

Euery one knoweth what is meant by the name *Vicus, & inde Vicani*: in Spaine

and Gascoigne there are many Villages and Hamlets, baptised by the name of *Vic D'Ozone*, a Bishopricke formerly spoken of, in the Diocesses of Spayne. In Gascoigne, in that of *Auch*, *Vic-Fezensac*, *Vic-Bigorre*, and infinite other beside. Now, it is a question, to know certainely, whether this Citie of *Tarbes*, be that, or no, whereof S. *Gregory* of Tours speaketh, calling it *Bigorram*, when he maketh relation of *Morganengeba*, of the Queene of *Austrasia Brunehault*, who committed so many Murders in France, on the persons of tenne, as well Kings, as Princes of the Blood of France. And by iudgement of the Generall Estates of the Kingdome, she was drawne alive at the taile of an vntamed Mare, to *Authune*, where shee was buried. *De Cuntalibus Burdegala, Lemouica, Cadureo, Benarno & Begorra, &c.* To take them vpon the letter of the word Citie, ought to be vnderstood as of Townes and Cathedrall Cities.

Brunehault, the great Murdresse of France

Going from S. *Sean* the Promontorie of Gascoigne) to *Tarbes*, you shall see a great Borough, which the Inhabitants of the Countrey call *Lourde*. All these Boroughes, situated within the Pyrenean Mountaines, are wonderfully faire, and well built of Stone, hauing likewise all couered with Slate, whereof there is great aboundance.

This Borough of *Lourde*, is called *Lapurdum*, in the notice of the Westerne Empire, and where the Romaines alwaies kept a strong Garrison of old Souldiours, on dead payes, for guard of the Frontiers of Gaule and Spaine. I soiourned there one whole day with my Company, to obserue the Antiquities, among which there is a great Tower (worke manship of the Romaines) which serued as a donion to a Castell, the ruines whereof are yet to be seene. It is impossible (in a dayes space) with a Mattocke and a Chizell, to get forth so many Stones as will fill a Hat; it is so well wrought by Masons, and so extraordinarily Cimented. After *Tarbes* of *Begorre*, are the two Bishopricks of the Principalitie, heretofore the Vicounzie of *Bearne*, namely

In the notice of the West Empire Lapurdum.

Worke manship of elder times

Oleron. OLeron, seated on the Riuer of *Gaure*, in Latine *Gauus, Gaber*, and *Gaberus*, and the Citie *Iluro* in the *Itinerarium*; denoating the way which is from *Sarageſſa* of *Aragon*, so farre as vnto the Citie of *Hortez*, anciently called *Bearne*, the one being distant from the other, an hundred and twelue thousand paces, at foure thousand to a Leage. *Aethicus.*

Iter à Cæsare-Augusta, Benebarno Milia plus minus. 112. *Sic.*
Foro Gallorum ..... *Milia plus Minus.* 30.
Elellino. M. P. M. ..... 22.
Summo Pyreneo. M. P. M ..... 24.
Foro legnico. M. P. M ..... 5.
Aspalluca M. P. M. ..... 7.
Iluron. M. P. M. ..... 12.
Benebarnum M. P. M. ..... 12.

Orthez or Oleron. FRom *Saragossa* to *Orthez* is twentie eight Leagues of Gascoigne & Spaine, where Land is at good rate. Of this Citie of *Oleron*, the auncient stile & forme of Iudging (practised in *Bearne*) was called *The Court of Oleron*, in Latine *Forum Iluri.*

Lescar. LEscar is the second Bishopricke of *Bearne*, in Latine *Ciuitas Lascurienſis*, the *Mansus* for the latter Kings of Nauar, *Of the most Illustrous Siruam De Foix*, and *D'Albret*. The last Bishopricke Suffragan belonging to the Archbishoprick of *Auch*, is

Bayonne. BAyone, in Latine *Baiorum Ciuitas*, vulgarly called *Baiona*; by them of the Countrey *Bonne*. It is seated and laued with the Riuer *Adoue* (which looseth it selfe in the Ocean Sea) called by *Lucan Tarbellica.*

——*Per saxa rotantia latè*
In mare purpureum Tarbellicus ibit Aturrus.

Auch the first Prouince of Narbonoise. THe first Prouence *Narbonoise* (which hath two Archbishoprickes in her dexion) the first of them is *Narbona*, the Metropolitane of *Languedocke*, called *Septimana*,

Septimania, in the time of *Flauius Constantine* the Tyrant, vsurper ouer Great Britaine and the Gaules, of whom we haue formerly described the death, after the surprizall of *Arles*. For this Warlike Citie, was the Metropolitaine of seauen Prouinces; as namely, of the first and second *Narbonoise*; of the *Viennoise*; of the first and second *Aquitaine*; of *Gascoigne*; and of the Maritime Alpes.

Metropolitane of 7 Prouinces.

Narbona was auncienly named *Narbo-Martius*, becausse *Iulius Cæsar* (the perpetuall Dictator) caused to dwell there a Colonie, drawne from the *Martian* Legion, which was otherwise called the tenth Legion, *Legio Decumanorum*. The Emperour *Augustus*, in honor of the Dictator (his adopted Father) appointed, that it should be called *Narbonam Paternam Iuliam*, as the same is obserued by *Plinie*, and her auncient inscription.

Narbona called Narbo Martius.

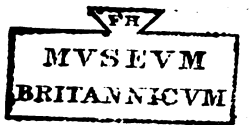
Col. Iul. Paterna. Narbo. Mart.

Serving to vnderstand these Verses of *Martiall*, which giue to this Citie the Sirname of *Faire*.

Quem pulcherrima iam redire Narbo,
Docta Narbo Paterna Votieni
Ad Leges iubet, annuosque fasces.

The Oratour giueth it the title of Bulwarke of Italie, and the Sentinell thereof; *Speculo, & propugnaculum Italiæ*. The learned Bishop of *Auuergne*, *Sidonius Apollinaris*, giueth therto these praises.

Salue Narbo potens salubritate
Vrbe, & rure simul bonus videri,
Muris, Ciuibus, Ambitu, Tabernis,
Portis, Porticibus, Foro, Theatro,
Delubris, Capitolijs, Monetis,
Thermis, Arcubus, Horreis, Macellis,
Pratis, Fontibus, Insulis, Salinis,
Stagnis, Flumine, Merce, Ponte, Ponto.



That which he saith in his first Verse, is good, in regard of them of the Country: but for Strangers, it is very vnhealthfull, by selfe hauing bin sicke so often as I Soiourned there, for the space of fifteene dayes, and more; for the Ayre is there very grosse, by being neere the Sea, about twelue thousand Paces, so that you may easily heare the noyse thereof, when it is troubled. It is seated in a bottome, and the Parapet of the Wals leuell with the ground, so that without, there can nothing be seene thereof, except the Steeples of S. *Iustus*, and of S. *Paul*, whereupon it is now tearmed *Narbona, Latrina Mundi*. It is a strong Citie for Warre, without Suburbs, not batter-able, being in a plaine euen Field, fortified with good Ramparts, strong Towers, and Case-mates, aptly disposed, to make double round both aboue and below, from an hundred to an hundred *Corps de Guarde*, and *Magazines* stored with Powder and Bals, as also a great number of Canons, which hath made it to be often attempted by the Spanyards, as well as *Marseilles* and *Baione*. It is a Keye for France, and therefore she beareth for Armes; *De Gueulles à vne Croix Patriarchale d'Or, & vne Clef d'Argent.*

Narbona, very vnhealthful to such as are Strangers.

The Sinke of the World.

The circuit of the Citie Wals, are full of antique inscriptions, and one quarter of them raised with hard Stones, cut like pointed Diamonds. The Citie is watered with the Riuer of *Aude* (whereof we haue already related somewhat) named by the Romaines *Atax*, and the Inhabitants called by *Mela, Populi Atacini, & Atacinorum Colonia*; and by the Gaules, *Volcæ Arecomici*. There are three Bridges on this Riuer of *Aude*, two at the ends, the Arches whereof are ioyning to the Walles of the Citie, and firmely fastened with Portcullises of Iron, which shut and open, for the entring in and issuing forth, of great Vessels of charge.

The Bridge in the middeſt, is couered with Marchants Houſes, very neere in length and wideneſſe (equally) to the ſmall Bridge at *Paris*. In the Citie is the Cathedrall Church, dedicated in honor of the Martyres S. *Iuſtus* and S. *Paſtour*, whoſe bodies are on the high Altar, incloſed in a Shrine of Wood, couered with a Pall of cloath of Gold.

There is but the Quire remaining in this Metropolitane Church, which is accompanied with two great ſquare Towers, and aloft vpon them (in a platforme) is the Beacon, Watch-Bell and Clocke, the Church and Chappels couered with Stone, according to the faſhion of *Languedocke* and *Prouence*, or (without going ſo farre) like the platforme of the *Tuilleries* Pallace at *Paris*. In the midſt of the Quire, is to be ſeene a rich Tombe, wherein are the bowels of *Phillip* the Hardie, third of the name, King of France, ſon to the King S. *Lewes*, who died at *Perpignan*, returning from the Warre againſt *Don Peter*, King of *Arragon*, as it is obſerued by *William de Nangis*, in the life of the ſaid King *Phillip*. *Exequijs Regis expletis, & oſſibus per excoctionem a carne ſeiunctis, carnem quidem, & viſcera apud Narbonam in maiori Eccleſia ſepelientes, cum reduſſem Pariſios, Barones, & Prælati oſſa apud Sanctum Dionyſium cum honore præcipuo iuxta Patrem ſuum Ludouicum Regem ſanctiſſimum tumularunt.* In one of the Chappels, on the South ſide of the Quire, I haue ſeene a great Table of the Reſurrection of *Lazarus*, held for excellent.

King Lewes the Hardy died at Perpignan

In the Citie is the Abbey Church of Chanons, and a Secular Abbot, dedicated in honor of S. *Sergius Paulus*, firſt Biſhop of the place, diſciple to S. *Paul*, by him conuerted to the faith of Ieſus Chriſt (as it is in the Acts of the Apoſtles) and by him deſtenned to be the Apoſtle of *Narbona*. Behinde this Church, and at the end of the Citie, where the Ramparts is, is the Fountaine S. *Paul*, the water whereof is very pleaſing to drinke, and admirable for Maide-ſeruants growing great (with ſome other Ingredients.) But ſuch it is, that from this water of S. *Paul*, is deriued a Prouerb adapted to ſuch as are forward and willing,

Sergius Paulus firſt Biſhop of Narbona Acts 13. 12.

The Well or Fountaine of S. Paul.

The magnificence which the Biſhop of *Auuergne* obſerued in this Citie, is no more: becauſe it was ruined by the ſerious and cruell *Attila*. After whom, it fell (with *Aquitaine*) into the power of the Gothes, by the donation formerly noated. Of them it was called *Gothia*, and to this inſtant vulgarly *Languedocke*: but to ſpeake properly, *Landſgot*, that is to ſay, *Land of Goths*, *Lands kenet*, a man of the Countrie. This name of *Land*, ſignifieth Ground or Earth in *Alemaigne*, and the Northerne Nations.

Narbona ſurprized by the Gothes and called Gothia

Beziers. The Wolfes paſſage.

THe firſt Biſhopricke Suffragan of *Narbona*, is that of *Beziers*, eight Leagues from *Narbona*. In the midway betweene theſe two Cities, is a dangerous paſſage, named *Le Pas du Loup*. *Beziers* is a pleaſant Citie, where there is an excellent Ayre, as being exalted on the top of an high Mountaine, whence eaſily may be ſeene the *Adriaticke* Sea and the *Peeles de Cendres*, and other round neighbouring, with varied and ſpangled flourie Fields, wonderfully delectable to be ſeene. Whereupon the Inhabitants ſay (as praiſing and emblazoning the pride of their Citie:) That if God ſhould come to dwell, and conuerſe againe with the World in his humanitie, he would make choiſe of *Beziers* to be his abiding.

Si Deus in terris,
Vellet habitare Biterris.

The Armes of Beziers.

It beareth for Armes, *Faiſſe d'Argent, & de Gueulles de ſix pieces, au Chef de France*, as all good Cities elſe doe. It is tearmed plurally *Biterræ*, and in the Geographers *Strabo*, *Ptolomie*, *Aethicus*, *Bliterræ*, *Ciuitas Biterrenſis*. It hath for Patron S. *Aphrodiſeus*, her firſt Biſhop ordained by S. *Paul* of *Narbona*. At the foote of the Mountaine is the Riuer of *Orde*, called in Latine *Obris*. The ſecond Biſhopricke Suffragan, is

Agde.

AGde, in Latine *Agatopolis*, *Agata* and *Ciuitas Agathenſis*, remarkeable by a Councill there held, in the time of the King of the *Vuiſigothes Alaricus*. This Citie is ſeated on the *Adriaticke* Sea, the Biſhop whereof beareth the Title, and Circle of a Count.

Carcaſſone,

Carcaſſona, a High & Low Towne.

CArcaſſone, in Latine *Carcaſſona*, deuided into an high and low Towne, by an interiect and diſtance one from the other, by the Riuer of *Aude*, as alſo great Gardening and husband-able grounds; ſo that they ſeeme as two ſeperated Towns, yet adorned with very good wals. The Citie is exalted on the height of a Mountaine, beautified with a Cathedrall Church, wherein is to be ſeene a rich Tombe of Copper, with a faire Graue Stone all of one piece, ſtanding before the high Altar, belonging to one of the Biſhops, named *Martin de S. Andrew*: whoſe Armes were and are *D'Azur à vn Chaſteau ſommé de trois Tours d'Argent, le tout maſonné de Sable, à trois Eſtoiles d'Or in Chef*. This Citie bare in Armes likewiſe, *D'Azur ſemé de France, & au mitan le pourtraict du Portail de ladite Cité hercee, & maſonné de Sable.*

The Armes of the Citie.

The lower Towne is formed foure ſquare, leuelled by the line, conſiſting of foure great Streetes, hauing foure Gates. The Towne houſe is planted iuſt in the midſt thereof, on a great goodly leuell; adorned with two Monaſteries, and two Pariſh-Churches; namely of S. *Vincent*, where (in my time) was kept the Commiſſaries Court, and the other of S. *Mighell*.

The low town

This lower Town beareth for Armes *Seme de France au Tourteau de Gueulles bordé d'Or, à vn Agnus Dei d'Argent*. During the troubles of the League, the Parlement of *Toloſa* was transferred into this lower Towne, and kept at the Carmelite Friers; On the Gate of the Chapter-houſe of the ſaid Monaſtery, hath bin ſeene (in my time) a long Stone, hauing this inſcription engrauen vpon it.

The Armes of the low towne

Anno Domini Milleſimo Quingenteſimo Nonageſimo, Henricus, IIII. Dei Gratia Francorum & Nauarræ Rex Senatum Toloſanum huc Tranſtulit, Henrico Mommorantio Procurante.

An Inſcription engraued on the Chapter-Houſe.

After that the Leaguers had ſurprized this Citie, the ſaid Parlement was transferred to *Beziers*.

Nifmes.

AFter *Carcaſſona* followeth the Biſhopricke of *Niſmes*, in Latine *Nemauſis*, ſometime called the Metropolitane Citie of the *Auuergnacks*, *Nemauſus Metropolis Aruernorum*; and by *Mela* and other Geographers, *Nemauſus Arecomicorum*. *Strabo* ſpeaketh wonders. *Caput Arecomicorum eſt Nemauſus, longe inferior Narbona, ſi peregrinam, & negotiantium turbam ſpectes; ſin Rempublicam, multo præſtantior. Nam viginti quatuor habet pagos populariũm præſtantes viris, quibus & Latij ius, ita vt Nemauſi innenias Romanos qui Aedilitatis, & Quæſturæ honorem ſint conſequuti, eamque ob cauſam gens ea cum Præfectis Romæ miſsis nihil habet negotij.* So that this Citie enioying the right of Burgeſhip by the Romaines, was ſometimes renowned aboue that which is called *Aurigera*, in the Countrie-language *L'Ariege*: And the other, by ſmall graines of Siluer, called *Graines d'Argent*, it receiued the name of *Argentaria*, and the Countrey *L'Arget*. I haue ſeene them both many times. The ſecond Suffragan is

The Citie famous in the Romans time.

Mirepoix, a Vicountie.

MIrepoix, in Latine *Mirapincum, Ciuitas Mirapicenſis*, a Vicountie, which depended heretofore on the Counts of *Toloſa*. But it was exempted by ſentence of Condemnation; pronounced at *Paris* againſt Count *Raymond* the fourth, and laſt of that name. This Citie is watered with the ſmall Riuer of *Lers*, in Latine *Lertius*, which deſcendeth from the *Pyreneans*, into the confines of France, and from *Rouſſillon*, it runneth and looſeth it ſelfe in the *Garonna*.

Montauban.

MOntauban, in Latine *Mons-Albanus*, and by the vulgar *Montalba*, ſeated on the Riuer of *Tarn*.

Lauaur in Lauragais.

LAuaur in *Lauragais*, a Countie; in Latine *Vaurum*, *Lauracenſium Tectoſagum Oppidum*, ſeated on the Riuer *De La-Gout*, in Latine *Acutus Fluuius*. This is the Countrey of *Woade*, for the beſt dying of Cloathes, which is carried and vented in Spaine, and throughout all the Countries of Europe. This hearbe is called *Glaſtum*; it hath leaues falling like new Coleworts, that haue not bin replanted: and it is gathered at diuers times, from the beginning, vntill the end of Summer. It is

pounded,

pounded, and made vpon lumps and clods, for the easier transporting it into strange Prouinces: And it is that which at *Paris* we call *Gueſde*. *Du Bartas* in his Weekes, giueth it the name of *Herbe Lauragaiſe*.

Admired Woade, that being toucht without,
Imparts thy tincture all the Corps about.

Rieux. R*Ieux, Ciuitas Riuenſis*; and *Riuence*, *Riouz* by the vulgar, ſeated on the little Riuer of the *Rize*, in Latine *Riza*, which rouling downe the Mountaines of *Foix*: after it hath engirt the ſmall Citie of *Rieux*, runneth and diſchargeth it ſelfe in the *Garonna*, neere to the *Terrace*.

Lombez in Comenges. L*Ombez, Lomberia*, and *Ciuitas Lomberienſis*, in the Countie of *Comenges*, a quarter of a mile from *Semmathan*. *Frances Petrarch*, the Italian Poet, was a Chanon of this Cathedrall. The laſt Biſhopricke is that of

S. Papoull in Lauragais. SAint *Papoul*, in Latine *Sanctus Papulus*, a ſmall Citie of the Countie of *Lauragais*, a mile diſtant from *Caſtel-nau-d'Arry*.

Toloſa made an Archbiſhopricke by Pope *Iohn* 22. In auncient times, the Citie of *Toloſa* was Suffraganced by the Archbiſhop of *Narbona*. Pope *Iohn* the two and twentieth made *Toloſa* an Archbiſhopricke, and gaue it for Suffragans *Apamiers* (which Pope *Boniface*, eight of the name, had made) Biſhopricke in Anno 1296. without the conſent & agreement of *Phillip le Bell*, fourth of the name, King of France & Nauarre. Which gaue ſubiect of bad intelligence betweene them, & whereof the Pope repented himſelfe afterward: ſeruing as a mirrour and example to his Succeſſours, not to preiudice the Kings of France) and theſe ſixe other following. For of Abbeies, as they had bin before, he erected them to be Cathedral Churches, as appeareth in the fourth Booke of common Extrauagans of the ſaid Pope *Iohn*.

The ſecond Narbonois Prouince. Aix in Prouence. IN the ſecond Prouince *Narbonoiſe*, otherwiſe called the third *Viennoiſe* Prouince, is the Archbiſhopricke of *Aix* in Prouence, called in Latine *Aqua Sextia*, in the *Itinerarium* of *Aethicus Aquæ Sextæ*, in regard of Bathes, which now are no more in vſe. It is honored with a Parlement, and a Chamber or Court of Accounts. The Metropolitane Church is named by the vulgar, Saint *Sauuary*, that is S. *Saluator*, wherein I haue ſeene a very goodly Font, made Dome-wiſe, exalted vpon great Colomnes of Marble, at the South-ſide in the body of the Church. Behinde the high Altar is a painting of France, for the Sepulture of the great Prior of France, ſirnamed of *Angouleſme*, Gouernour and Lieutenant Generall in *Prouence*. *Aix* hath ſiue Suffragans, the firſt whereof is the Biſhopricke

Apt. OF *Apt*, called in Latine *Apta Iulia*; followed by that of

Riez. R*Iez. Ciuitas Reienſis.*

Frejus. F*Reius, Forum Iulij*, ſeated at the foote of the Maritime Alpes, according to the teſtimony of the Geographers, *Mela*, *Strabo*, and the Authour of the *Itinerarium Aethicus*: deſcribing the paſſage from Italie into Prouence, by the Maritime Alpes, euen from the Citie of Rome, ſo farre as to *Arles*.

Gap G*Ap*, in Latine *Vapincum*, *Ciuitas Vapencenſis*; and the laſt is

Siſteron. S*Iſteron*, in Latine *Siſtaricum*, and *Ciuitas Siſtarienſis*: This Citie is ſeated on the Riuer of *Durance*, called in Latine *Druentia*.

The firſt Viennois Prouince. THe firſt Prouince *Viennois*, is *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, tearmed by *Cæſar* and other learned Geographers, *Vienna Allobrogum*, ſeated on the great and famous Riuer

Riuer of Rhoſne. This City, heeretofore the abiding for the Emperours of the Weſt, vpon the declining of the ſame Empire, and the Chancerie for the ancient Kings of Bourgongne; is diſtant from Lions onely ſiue leagues. The Archbiſhopricke of Vienna hath in number ſiue Suffragan Biſhoprickes, the firſt whereof is that of

Valencia. V*Alencia*, in Latine *Ciuitas Valentinenſis*; *Valentia Segalaunorum*: By *Iuſtine* the Hiſtoriographer, and by the Chronicle of *Proſper*, it is tearmed *Nobiliſsima Galliæ Ciuitas*: it is likewiſe ſeated vpon the *Rhoſne*. Next followeth

Die. The City of Fortune. D*Ie*, a Burrough anciently dedicated to the Goddeſſe *Fortune*; and therefore it was called *Deæ Fortunæ Oppidum*, during the Paganiſme of the Romanes, afterwards dedicated to the Virgin of Virgins.

Viuiers: *The* vineyards of *Viuiers*. V*Iuiers, Ciuitas Viuarienſis*, and *Viuarium*, and the Country *Viuarez*. A Citie ſeated on the Riuer of *Rhoſne*, and renowned in regard of her Vineyards; from whence Wine is conueyed through all the *Seuenes* and *Auuergne*, in Goates-skins, which they doe call *Boucs*. *Sidonius Apollinaris*, in his time commended a Biſhop of *Viuiers*, whom hee calleth *Patientius*, becauſe that the *Viſigothes* hauing rauaged and ruined the Gaules, and reduced the people to Famine; that good Biſhop ſuccoured them with his fruites and Corne. *Poſt Gothicam depopulationem, poſt ſegetes incendio ab ſumptas, peculiari ſumptu inopiæ communi per deſolatas Gallias gratuita frumenta miſiſti: cum tabeſcentibus fame populis nimium contuliſſes, ſi commercio fuiſſet ſpecies iſta non munere. Vidimus anguſtas tuis frugibus vias, vidimus per Araxii, & Rhodani ripas, non vnum, quod vnus impleueras, horreum.* Hee ſaid that this good Biſhop was another Patriarch *Ioſeph*, for nouriſhing hunger-ſtarued people. After *Viuiers* followeth

Granoble. G*Ranoble*, called *Gratianopolis* by S. *Auſtine*, and by *Sidonius Apollinaris*, in many of his Epiſtles. This City is ſeated on the Riuer of *Yſere*, in Latine *Iſara*; honoured with a Court of Parlement, for the reſort or Iuriſdiction of *Daulphine*, the Principality belonging to the eldeſt Son of France, as we ſhall ſpeake of elſwhere. The laſt Suffragan is,

S. Iohn de Maurienne. S*Aint Iohn de Maurienne*, in Latine *Maurienna*, a Bourgade at this preſent in the Eſtate of Sauoy; but heeretofore of the Prerogatiue, yea of the body of the Principality of *Daulphine*, as likewiſe the Biſhopricke of

Geneua. G*Eneua*, which was Suffraganced by the Archbiſhopricke of *Vienna*, and the Principalitie of *Daulphine*, whereby the Countes of *Sauoy* had formerly vſurped this Citie: but the Inhabitants became Maſters thereof, to hold it as a ſeparate Eſtate, for contrarietie in Religion. The Biſhops ſeate had beene transferred to a place called *Anicy* in *Sauoy*: and yet notwithſtanding, the Bayliwickes of *Gex*, *Bangey* and *Veromey* (which almoſt toucheth the walls of Geneua, and of the ſaid Biſhopricke) are of the Crowne of France, and annexed vnto the Duchie of Bourgongne.

Anicy in Sauoye. This City of *Geneua* hath many and ſundry names, the moſt honourable whereof, is that of Knights, in Latine *Ciuitas Æqueſtrium*. As it very remarkeable by the Inſcription engrauen on the Gate of the *Treillis*, neere to the Court, which they call

Many names giuen to Geneua.

Imp. Cæſ. M. Antonio.
Pio. Foel. Aug. Pontif. Max.
Trib. Potes. Coſ.

Ciuitas Equeſtrium.

Bur

No certainty of gaining this ſir name.

But to vnderſtand the aſſured and certaine time, when ſhe wonne this ſir-name, I could neuer yet attaine vnto; hauing beene at the place my ſelfe, and continued there three daies (with liberty of conſcience among the Catholiques) yet all to no purpoſe. They ſay, that the Emperor *Aurelianus* was the reſtorer thereof, and of him retained name.

Moreouer, that of the Emperor they had daily ſundry bookes, which they imprinted, to make them runne in apt diſguiſes. Now, although theſe pretences iſſued forth of one and the ſame ſhop; yet had they ſtill variety of names. One while of S. *Germaſe*, which is the leſſer *Geneua*, diuided from the greater by a large bridge of wood, vnder which runneth the Riuer of *Rhoſne*: of *Aureliæ Allobrogum*: and by another change, that of *Auguſtæ Allobrogum*.

They contemne that which was remarkeable from the time of *Cæſar*, & whereof himſelfe ſpeaketh the words. *Extremum Oppidum Allobrogum, proximumque Helueticarum finibus, Geneua.* Their deuiſe is retrograde, and their Armes well enough emblazoned. This City of *Geneua* is a dependant on the principality of *Daulphine*, let the Dukes of Sauoy ſay what they will.

An Order of Court concerning Geneua.

In the Court Regiſters of Parlement, there is an Order, dated the 13. day of Aprill, 1388. giuen between the Prince *Daulphine*, and *Peter* then Count of *Geneua*, whereby it was ſaid, that the Countie of *Geneua* appertained to the *Daulphine*, and that the ſaid *Peter* Counte of *Geneua*, ſhould doe homage, and take the Oath of Liedge fidelitie, as he did to King *Charles* the ſixth, at that time *Daulphine* of *Viennois*.

The 2. Viennois Prouince. Arles the Metropolitane.

The ſecond Prouince *Viennois*, is the Archbiſhopricke of *Arles*, a City ſeated on the Riuer of Rhoſne, and (as we haue formerly obſerued) honoured with the title of Metropolitane, for the holding of many generall Councells, and hauing an admirable Amphitheater.

In Latine it is named *Arelas*, and *Arelate*, ſometimes held and reputed for one of the dugs or ſucking-teates of the Gaules; whereupon ancient Geographers called it *Galliæam Romam*, and not *Romam Gallulam*, as the depraued paſſage of *Anſonius* ſpeaketh. Wherefore this Mother-Citie had diuers appellations; as namely *Conſtantina*, of *Conſtantine* the Great, Author of new Rome; or of *Flauius Conſtantinus* the Tyrant, who had eſtabliſhed his dwelling there, and where (after a long ſiege) he was taken, as we haue already ſaid, and this ſeemeth to ſauour of moſt truth. By the ancient *Gaules* it was called Θυμάρη, and by the Romans *Mamillaria*; as *Auſonius* maketh it the Teat, Breſt, and Nurſing-mother of *Aquitaine Gaule*.

Sundry names giuen to this Citie.

The likeſt and trueſt opinion.

Præceptis Rhodani ſic interciſa fluentis,
Vt mediam facias nauali ponte plateam,
Per quem Romani commercia ſuſcipis Orbis,
Nec cohibes; Populoſque alios, & mœnia ditas,
Gallia queis fruitur, gremioque Aquitania lato.

The ſtore-houſe of Italy and Spaine.

In regard that this City was the *Magazine* of Italy and Spaine, whether they carried all their Merchandiſes by Land (although they might haue done ſo by Sea) the great high way (which we tearme Royall) betweene *Arles* and *Narbonna*, and then ſo farre as to *Tarragona*, which is vpon the entrance into the *Adriatique* Sea. For it is a goodly roade way, namely from *Arles* to *Narbona*, the Waggons running at eaſe all the way. From the one of theſe two Metropolitane Cities to the other, is counted an hundred thouſand paces. The Coſmographer *Aethicus*.

Iter ab Arelato Narbonæ Milia plus minus, 100. ſic.

The diſtance of way betweene Narbona & Arles.

Nemenſum. M. P. M.	13.
Ambruſſum. M. P. M.	15.
Sextantione. M. P. M	15.
Foro Domitij. M. P. M	15.
Ceſerone. M. P. M.	18.
Beternus. M. P. M.	12.
Narbona. M. P. M.	12.

We

Difference of the olde Romane way.

We vnderſtand that they made it a farre greater length of ground, then at this preſent now they do, leauing the old way of the Romans, and taking the great road way *French* from *Niſmes* to *Margalides*, *Le Pont de Lunel*, famous for her white thatched ſhelter, *Lunel* the olde, *Mont-Pelier*, *Veruna*, *Pezenas*, *Cerignano*, *Beziers* and *Narbona*.

The Orator and Philoſopher *Phauorinus* borne in Arles.

In this City of *Arles* was borne the great Orator and Philoſopher *Phauorinus*, ſo much honoured by the Romanes, and renowned by *Aulus Gellius*; vpon whoſe ſo far famed Learning, he wrote his *Atticke-Nights*, as *Plato* did his Dialogues and immortall Tracts, on that of wiſe *Socrates*.

Heereby may the Spaniards learne to know, that they could neuer be Peered with the Gaules, famous in the Art Militarie, and all good Sciences, from one end of the world to the other, and in euery part thereof, as it is witneſſed by the Romaine *Saluſt*, in the end of the warre brought againſt *Iugurth*. *Vſque ad noſtram memoriam Romani ſic habuêre, alia omnia virtute ſuæ prona eſſe, cum Gallis pro ſalute, non de gloria certari.* In that againſt *Catiline* (compelled to confeſſe the truth) hee ſaith: *Galles gloriâ belli, ante Romanos eſſe.* *Cranato*, their owne ignorant Hiſtorian, in fauor of his Spaniards, malicioufly abuſeth the Gaules and French, againſt the Maximes of Warre. *Cato* giueth them theſe Titles of Honor in his Originalls. *Plerag, Gallia duas res induſtrioſiſſime proſequitur, Rem Militarem, & Argute Loqui.* They are ignorant in that which *Iuuenall* ſaith, concerning the Eloquence of the Gaules.

Gallia Cauſidicos docuit facunda Britannos.

They burie in ſilence their Studies and Colledges, more renowned then thoſe of Athens, againſt the notable teſtimony of that worthy Father of the Church, Saint *Hierome*, who baptizeth them with theſe names, *Studia Galliarum florentiſſima*. They make them vnapt for Armes, contrary to the Rules Military, which inſtruct; *Let no man miſprize his enemy, but doubt him alwaies to be much ſtronger then he is not.* And yet their owne Hiſtorians neuer ſpake of the Gaules and French, but with honour, eſteeme, and reputation to command the whole world.

Cranato, your Hiſtorian *Vopiſcus*, would haue taught you, if you had vnderſtood Latine, that *Galligens hominum inquietiſſima eſt, & auida ſemper vel faciendi Principis, vel Imperij.* Goe to Schoole *Cranato*, goe to Schoole, to learne the naturall diſpoſition of the Gaules and French. The Archbiſhopricke of *Arles* hath foure Suffragans, to wit:

Marſeilles.

A miſtake of ſome Hiſtoriographers.

Marſeilles, Ciuitas Maſilienſis, called *Maſilia* by the Greeke and Romane Geographers, who make there a Colonie of the *Phocenſes*, arriuing there out of Greece in their opinion, meerely ignorance. Whereas it was part of the ancient Gaules, which paſſed into Greece vnder the conduct of Captain *Brennus*: who (after his death) returned from Phocis into Gaule, and made their dwelling at *Marſeilles*, and in the land of Languedock, where they were borne, and named *Volcæ Arecomici, & Tectoſages*. For all of that Prouence and Languedocke, were knowne by the names of the ancient Gaules, long before any ſpeech of the Romanes.

Inſinuant qua ſe Sequanis Allobroges oris,
Excludunt Italos Alpina cacumina fines;
Qua Pyrenacis niuibus dirimuntur Iberi,
Qua rapitur præceps Rhodanus genitore Lemano
Interiuſque premunt Aquitanica rura Cebennæ
Vſque in Tectoſagas primæuo nomine Volcas.

Marſeilles a Key of France.

So ſpake the *Bourdelois* Poet *Auſonius* (to good purpoſe) in his Cities. *Marſeilles* is a Key of France, on the Mediterranean Sea, and one of the very goodlieſt Ports of Chriſtendome. After this Biſhopricke, next followeth in order that of

S. Paul.

S. *Paul, Ciuitas Sancti Pauli*, and the men of this Dioceſſe are called *Tricaſtini Populi*, making a part of *Daulphine*, diſtant from *Pont S. Eſprit* (a dangerous paſſage

ouer

ouer the *Rhosne*) two leagues only. This City tooke name by her first Bishop. The third Bishopricke is that of

Tolon. *Tolon*, a Port of the Leuant Sea, betweene the City of *Marseilles*, and the Iles of *Eres*, *Lirinenses Insulæ*; *Toletensis Ciuitas*: retaining the name of a Romane Captaine, called *Telo Martius*, who made there a Colony and Plantion. And the last Bishopricke is

Telo Martius a Romane Captaine.

Orenge. *Orenge*, or *Orence*, so named of her Cathedrall City, in Latine *Aransio*, *Ciuitas Arausiensis*, and by others *Argenna*, by the name of her Riuer *D'Argent*, tearmed in the Country Language *Arceny*. It was heretofore a Colony of the second Legion, and therefore it is called in the Geographer *Pomponius Mela*, *Colonia Arausio. Secundanor. Coh. xxxiij.* Without the gate of the said Citie, as men come from *Lyons*, is seene the remaines of a Triumphall Arche, which we may iudge by the eye to haue beene most magnificent, when it was whole and sound. And yet a Combat on horse-back may be discerned thereon, very admirably engrauen. They of the City say, that *Marius* the Romane was Author thereof, after hee had vanquished the *Cimbres* and *Teuthones*. Others doe beleeue, that it was made by *Fabius Maximus*, after he had ouercome (in a foughten battell) the *Allobroges* and *Auuergnacs*, as also their King *Boduacus*, called by the Romanes *Bituitus*, according to the testimony of *Lucius Florus*, one of their owne Historians.

A famous ruined triumphal Arche.

Allobroges deinde, & Aruerni cum aduersus eos similes Aeduorum querelæ, opem & auxilium nostrum flagitarent, Varus Victoriæ testis, Isaraque, & Vindelicus (this ouerthrow happened on the Riuers of Gar, the Lisere, the Sorgue, and the Rhosne) *amnis, & impiger fluminum Rhodanus. Maximus Barbaris terror Elephanti fuere, immanitati gentium pares. Nil tam conspicuum in Triumpho, quam Rex ipse Bituitus distinctus in armis, argentoque carpento, qualis pugnauerat. Vtriusque Victoriæ quod quantumque gaudium fuerit, vel hinc æstimare potest, quod & Domitius Aenobarbus, & Fabius Maximus ipsis quibus dimicauerunt locis saxeas erexere turres, & desuper exornata armis hostilibus trophæa fixere.*

The portraict of a conquer'd King, led by Rome in triumph.

There likewise is to be seene vpon this Arche, on the side towards Lyons, the picture of that King bound and manacled with chaines, his hands tied behinde him, according to the manner of a slaue, hauing vpon his breast this word written, *Buduacus*, with the Image of Rome, a Crowned woman, who with her right hand held the desolate King by the beard, to make him hold vp his head.

I should be ouer-long in relating all the particularities of this Arche, which I oftentimes beheld in nine or ten moneths time of my abiding in Auignion; and it is planted as in the middest of three Townes, of *Orenge*, *Carpentras* and *Cauaillon*, all three distant from *Auignion* by foure miles of the Countrey. So, *Fabius Maximus* was then the Author of this Triumphall Arche at *Orenge*, and not *Marius*; against the opinion of *Sieur Iulian*, in my time a Minister of the said place, one better acquainted with money, then skild in Antiquities.

Fabius Maximus Author of this triumphal Arche.

As concerning that which was prouided for *Domitius Aenobarbus*, the ruines and remaines thereof is to be seene at S. *Remy*, neere vnto *Tarascon* in Prouence. The Romanes made the Gaules a thousand times more easie to be vanquished, then indeed they were, onely to make themselues the more dreadfull to strange Nations, forming (many times) an Elephant of a Flye, and seruing their turne with a Foxes skinne, in stead of a Lyon. To make themselues great, they imployed all their purposes, like to the Spaniards; who notwithstanding all their Treaties and Alliances, neuer part from or forsake their praises. Practising the saying of the Confessor to the Emperor *Charles* the first: *In all doubtfull matters, it is much better to hold fast then goe seeke. In obscuris melior est causa possidentis, quam petentis.* As that Emperor perceiued on the persons of imprisoned Germaine Princes, on the Kingdomes of Naples and Nauarre, on the Duchie of Millaine, vsurped and vniustly with-held from the Crowne of France; and on other Cities of Italie, from their right and lawfull Lords.

The insulting of the Romans ouer the Gaules

A saying of the Confessor to the Emperor.

In this manner the Romanes triumphed in pictures, and this poore King of the *Auuergnacs*,

Auuergnacs, *Daulphinois* and Prouencialls, and not by force of Armes, in regard they surprized him at an enter-view, notwithstanding the faith which *Aenobardus* had giuen, to let him come in all assurance. Neuertheless, this Roman Captaine brake his word brauely, by Equiuocation, and double meaning.

I will alleadge (for my warrant) *Valerius Maximus*, who freely discouereth the treason of the Romanes, in these tearmes. *Iratus Betulto* (hee should haue said *Boduaco*) *Regi Aruernorum Cn. Domitius, quod tum suam, tum Allobrogum gentem, se etiam tum in Prouinciâ morante ad Qu. Fabij successoris sui dextram confugere hortatus esset, Per Colloquij simulationum accersitum, Hospitioque. Acceptum vinxit, ac Romam naui deportandum curauit. Senatus eius factum neque probare potuit, neque rescindere voluit, ne remissus in patriam Boduacus bellum renouaret; igitur eum Albæ custodiæ relegauit.* Behold the instruction of *Machiauells* Prince.

An ancient theater & ruined temple.

In the same City of *Orenge*, are likewise the ruines and remaines of an ancient Theatre and Circle; as also the great walls standing of an antique Temple, which the said *Sieur Iulian* told me had bin dedicated to the goddesse *Diana*, & her Wood-Nimphes; and that the Theatre and Temple had beene built by *Marius*. Wherein the good man followed vulgar opinion, which (very often) is not the most assured and certaine.

We learne the contrary by *Strabo*, who giueth the honour to *Fabius Maximus*: obserue heere the testimony of that ancient Geographer. *Quo loco Isara, & Rhodanus fluuij confluunt prope Cemmenum montem Qu. Fabius Maximus* XXX. *millium non integrorum exercitu instructus, Ducentâ Atilia Gallorum concidit, ibique Trophæum statuit ex albo lapide, ac duo Templa; Vnum Martis, alterum Herculis.* So that there is the most appearance and likelihood, that this ancient Temple of *Orenge*, had beene dedicated to the Gaulish *Hercules*; to serue as a famous not of that memorable disrout and discomfiture of the Gaules in picture, rather then otherwise, of the Goddesse *Diana*.

Orenge a Principality included in the Countie of Prouence.

As concerning this Citie of *Orenge*, it is a Principality lockt vp within the Countie of *Prouence*. The King of Sicilie *René*, sold the Homage, Prerogatiue and Soueraignty, to *Lewis de Chalon*, Prince of *Orenge*. *William* (sonne to the said *Lewis*) also Prince of *Orenge*; sold them to King *Lewis* the eleuenth, who submitted the said Principalitie to that of *Daulphine*; which happened in the yeere 1475. So that although the Princes of *Orenge* doe enioy in the said Principalitie, all Soueraigne Rights by the concession of our Kings; yet neuertheless it is so, that if they intermeddle among Strangers Warres, the Kings of France make seizure of this Principalitie by Soueraigne hand. As in that of *Charolois*, appertaining to the house of Spaine, as we haue seene in our time, by the Treaty of *Veruins*, King *Henry* the Great (of glorious memory) raised his hand vpon the County of *Charalois*, wherof he remitted the enioying to the King of Spaine, *Dom Philip* the second. The same he did on the Principalitie of *Orenge*, which he remitted (by making a marriage of *Madamoiselle de Conde*, with the Prince of *Orenge*) to her Prince returned from Spaine, and sent thence the Gouernour *Bacon*, who held Authoritie there for the King.

The Kings of France hold soueraigne power in this Principality.

A comparison concerning the Countie of Charolois, and Principality of Orenge.

In the same second Prouince *Viennois*, is the Archbishopricke and Legation of *Auignion*, called in Latine *Auenio*, a Metropolitane Citie in the County of *Venice*; in Latine *Comitatus Venuxinus*, and *Veniessinus*, and *Venesinus*; and *Auignion* called *Cauarum* by the Geograper *Pomponius Mela*. This Citie and Countie is gouerned by a Vice-Legate, and the money thereof hath on the one side, the Picture of the Pope reigning, and his name for the Legend; and on the other side, the Armes & name of the Legate, or Vice-Legate, who is then Gouernour.

Auignion an Archbishopricke in the second Viennois Prouince.

The Bridge of *Auignion* ouer the swift and violent *Rhosne*, containeth ninteene Arches, sixteene whereof doe appertaine to the King, and the rest to the Pope. To whom also belongeth *Auignion*, and the Accountant of County, by meanes of the acquisition which Pope *Clement* the sixt made of *Ione* Queene of Naples & Sicily, and Countesse of Prouence; who ingaged them vnto the said Pope, for the summe of fortie thousand Crownes; with condition of perpetuall redemption by her, and her Successors, the Countes of Prouence: which engadgement happened in the yeare

Auignion and the Accountate belongeth to the Pope.

The Riuer of Rhosne adiudged in Parlement to the King.

yeere 1360. Redemption was not made by the Countes of Prouence, Successors to the said Queene *Ioane*. King *Lewes* the eleuenth hauing caused the Riuer to be ruled in the Parlement of *Tolosa*, and adiudged to the King; was preuented by death, euen when the Offers and Moneyes were ready, for withdrawing the ancient parcells, dismembred by engaging the Countie of Prouence.

The Kings, *Charles* the eight, his sonne *Lewes* the twelfth, and *Francis* the first, hoping the assistance, or the neutralitie of Popes, for recouering the Kingdomes of Sicilie, and Lands of Italie; brought the Redemption to a quite surceasing, which hath so still remained (euen to this day) to the Popes, being Lords of the Lands engaged by the Counts of Prouence.

Three Suffragans belonging to Augnion.

Auignion within the enclosure of the Countie, hath three Bishoprickes Suffragans: namely,

Carpentras.

Carpentras, in Latine *Carpentoratte*, and *Ciuitas Carpentoratlensis*. Aboue which is the *Windie Mountaine* (as the Countie men call it) and which I haue seene from the foote, to the Pond on the highest part thereof. They are of opinion, that from thence blow the cruell and rigorous windes, which whistle into *Auignion*, and maketh it healthfull: from whence grew their Prouerbe, *Aucnio ventosa, sine vento venenosa.* In a word, the Prouince is very subiect to windes, and especially *Auignion*, where they are daily resorters. If it proceedeth from the neere neighbouring of the Alpy Mountains, or the Leuant Sea; let the Prouincialls deside the quarrell.

Windie Auignion is venemous without winde.

Vaison.

Vaison, in Latine *Vasionense Oppidum*, by *Sidonius Apollinaris*, and by the ancient Geographer *Mela*, *Oppidum Vocontiorum*; a small City, seated neere to the Riuer of *Durance*, and watered with the *Sorga*, renowned by the same *Mela*, who calleth it *Solgam*. So doth *Strabo* likewise, who recounting the imaginary ouerthrow of the *Auuergnacs* King, before remembred, saith; that she runneth to lose her selfe in the Riuer of *Rhosne*, at the Towne of *Vndale*. *Tertius est Sulgas fluuius, qui adVndalum Vrbem Rhodano infertur. Quo loco Cn. Domitius Anobarbus ingenti pugna per multa Barbarorum fudit instructa.* This Riuer of *Sorga* (if I haue any good memory) taketh Originall from the fountaine of *Vaucluse*, in Latine, *Fons Clausa Vallis*, neere vnto which, is to be seene the remaines of the Castle of *Cabrieres*, where was borne *Madona Laura*, so celebrated by her Louer *Petrarch*, as well as the Spring of *Vaucluse*, (which I haue many times noted) at the issuing forth whereof, the water is so bigge, that it sunders it selfe into two armes, which make an Iland, furnished with a Towne, bearing name of the Isle, at the lower point whereof (ioyning together againe) it passeth on to *Vaison*, and from thence to *Auignion*. There it is diuided into many branches and channells, for best commodity of the Citie, which hath seuen Bridges passing ouer it; seauen Ports or gates; seuen Colledges of *Chanons*; seuen Monasteries of Men; as many of Nuns; seauen Hospitalles: And to close all with a Rime: To behold

Source or spring of the Riuer Sorgi.

Trois choses rares en Auignon
Beau Mur, belle Femme, & beau Pon.

3. Mir cles seldom seen in Auignon.

Three things in Anignion very rare:
A goodly Wall, a handsome Bridge, a Woman faire.

At entring into the Church of the Gray-Friers, on the right hand, in the first Chappell, named of the Holy Crosse; before the Altar is a long Tombe, in the middest whereof is engraued a Crosse, thwarted with two boughes or branches of Laurell, in forme of a Saultour, and on the top of it a Rose: this is the Tombe of *Madam Laura*, and the deuise which she had during her life. In my time, vpon a little Table in the same Chappell, was written the Sonnet, which King *Francis* the first composed, in honor and memory of this Lady of *Cabrieres*; and the Sonnet is imprinted in the Frontespice of *Petrarches* workes.

The Tomb of Madam Laura, Petrarch his Loue.

At departing from *Auuignion*, the *Sorga* hauing rowled some extendure of the Country,

Country, runneth and looseth it selfe in the *Roze*, as they call it in *Auignion* and *Prouence*.

The last Bishopricke Suffragan of *Auignion*, is that of

Cauaillon.

Cauaillon, in Latine *Cabellicum*, a little Citie, but well piled together, and within halfe a quarter of a League thence, men passe the Riuer of *Durance* by boates, to the point of *Orgon*; which is the beginning of Prouence, and the great Roade-way of *Marseilles*, by *Salon* from *Craux*, *Aquille*, *Francon*, *Aix*, *Ventabran*, *Marseilles*, a goodly City, and beautifull Port of the Sea, so oftentimes attempted by the Spainards. Heere it is where men take shipping for passage to *Genoway* and *Liuorne*, into *Sicilie*, and to *Malta*: yea, it is the very shortest cut and passage for the *Leuant* Sea, to the Port of *Alexandreta*, *Amman*, *Damas* and Ierusalem.

The excellent Port for passage of Marseilles.

The fourth Prouence *Viennois*, containeth the Archbishopricke of *Embrun*, in Latine *Eberodunum*, the Metropolitane Seate of the *Cottien* and *Maritime Alpes*, which hath fixe Bishopricks Suffragans, as namely;

Of the fourth Viennois Prouince.

Digne.

Digne, in Latine *Ciuitas Dinienſis*, and by some Geographers, *Dianium*, & *Dinia*; which was sometimes a Metropolitane, as we may see in the first Councell of *Orleans*.

Grasse.

Grasse, within the Maritine Alpes, three Leagues from *Antibe*, called in Latine *Antipolis*; a City of the Emperor *Antoninus*, a Port of the Sea, and a retreat (oftentimes) for Rouers and Pirates, *Grassa* and *Grassensis Ciuitas*.

Vence.

Vence, in Latine *Vencesina*, *Vencesium*, and *Vencienſis Ciuitas*. *Sancta Maria de Vence* is her Cathedrall Church, as well as those of *Grasse* and of *Freius*.

Glandesue.

Glandesue, in Latine *Glandena*, and *Glandenenſis Ciuitas*, within the Maritime Alpes also. The Bishops Pallace, and the Cathedrall Church, are seated in a faire and pleasant Valley, named *Entre-Vaux*, *Interualles* in Latine, three thousand paces from *Riez*.

Senez.

Senez, in Latine *Sanicienſium Oppidum*, and *Senetenſis Ciuitas*, likewise seated in the Maritime Alpes. And,

Nice.

Nice, *Nicea*, and *Niciensis Ciuitas* in Latine; a City and Port of the Sea, seated at the foote of the Maritime Alpes, and vnder the Homage, Authoritie, & Iurisdiction of the Countie of *Prouence*, engaged to the Counts of *Sauoy* (as we shall declare elsewhere) and as it is so maintained to this present. This place is beautified with a Castle, planted vpon the Mountaine, from whence may be discouered all the Adriaticke Sea. Beneath it is the City enriched with a goodly Hauen, where the Dukes of *Sauoy* haue their Gallies, serued by the Cheualiers of S. *Maurice*.

According to the former engadgement.

Such are the Metropolitane Seates and Dioceſſes of France, by the enumeration whereof, it is easie to iudge the greatnesse of the Kingdome, wherewith Spaine cannot be compared. The length of France is measured from the Towne and Port of *Callice* on the Ocean Sea, so farre as to that of *Aigues-Mortes* on the Mediterranean Sea, the extendure of two hundred and eight Leagues, more or lesse. The breadth or largenesse is from the Conquest in Bretaigne, vpon the Ocean Sea likewise, vnto *Pont de Bonnorsin*, the Frontier of *France* and *Sauoy*; being an hundred fourescore and twelue Leagues, more or lesse, at foure miles for a League: it is easie then to make the account. It cannot be found, that *Spaine* hath such bredth and length answerable to France; because *Spaine* in all her extendure, containeth no more then seuen Prouinces, whereof doe make part the Kingdomes of *Nauarre*, *Portugall*, and *Arragon*; as also the Counts of *Catalogna*, *Rousillion* and *Cardignia*, which appertaineth to the *Most Christian Kings*: and *France* containeth seuenteene, as we haue formerly obserued.

The measure of the longitude and latitude of Frãce.

Foure miles allowed to a league.

So that like as the Kingdome of France, being in a temperate climate (betweene the exceſſiue heates of Italie and Spaine, and the cruell coldneſſe of Germanie and England) is called by *Mathew Paris*, *The ſweete Kingdome of France*, and the chiefe of Chriſtendome; *Dulce Regnum Franciæ*. Euen ſo, for deuotion and pietie; knowledge in Learning and Sciences; expertneſſe in the Militarie Art; abundance and fertilitie of Soyle; mildeneſſe, politeneſſe and ciuilitie of the Inhabitants, it is not to be equalled by any. For they neuer liued in the barbariſme and ruſticitie of the auncient Spaniards, who by a kinde of cuſtomarie behauiour, would waſh and perfume themſelues with Vrine, long time kept in Sinkes and muddie places, wherewith both men and women cleanſe their teeth; an vnſeemely faſhion, yet common among the people of Spaine; like vnto thoſe Indians of *Malabar*, that bathe and waſh themſelues in filthie muddie waters: Therefore well may France be tearmed *The Kingdome of Kingdomes*.

Matthew Paris, the Engliſh Hiſtorian, further ſaith. *Anno etiam eodem, verno tempore arridente, inſurrexerunt multi Magnates accincti ad prælium, vt bellum mouerent aduerſus Regnum Gallie. Indignabantur enim quod Regnum Regnorum ſedulet Gallia, conſilio muliebri regebatur.* He ſpake of Queene *Blanch*, Mother to the King S. *Lewes*, regent in France: who was thwarted in his Regencie by *Meſſieurs* Hugh of France, Count of *Boloigne*, and *Thibault*, King of *Nauarre*, Count Palatine of *Champaigne* and *Brie*.

The Order of the Monarchall Hierarchie.

It is generally knowne, that in the Monarchall Hierarchie, the Emperour of the Romaines is the prime potentate. Yet ſo it is (notwithſtanding) that the Kings of France doe neuer acknowledge him for Superiour: but, as his equall in dignitie, walke foote by foote. As daily is to be ſeene at Rome, when Ambaſſadours come from the Emperour, and from the King of France, at ſuch time as he ſitteth in the Chappell: their preſent and encenſings are at one ſeaſon, and the ſame day they haue audience of the Pope. But others doe follow them of Spaine, and ſo the other Kings and Potentates of Chriſtendome.

Pope *Gregory* excommunicated the Emperor *Fredericke* 2

In the yeare 1239. Pope *Gregory* the ninth, hauing excommunicated the Emperour *Fredericke* the ſecond; he and his Cardinals, being aſſembled in the Conclaue: elected for Emperour *Monſieur Robert* of France, Count of *Artois*, brother to the King Saint *Lewes*. To which King the Pope wrote, and ſent his Nuntios, with command to reade his Letters before him, and all the Barons of France, and let them vnderſtand, that by vniuerſall conſent of the Cardinalles of the holy Church; the ſaid *Monſieur Robert* was elected Emperour of the Romaines. Heere you may reade the tenure of the Popes Bull.

The Popes Bull ſent to the King of France:

Gregorius Epiſcopus, Seruus Seruorum Dei. Nouerit dilectus Filius Eccleſiæ ſpiritualis Illuſtris Rex, & totum Francorum Baronagium, nos deliberatione, & tractatu diligenti omnium fratrum noſtrorum condemnaſſe, & a culmine Imperiali abiudicauiſſe Fredericum dictum Imperatorem, & Robertum Fratrem Regis Francorum loco ipſius elegiſſe ſubſtituendum, quem etiam omnibus nobis Eccleſia non tantum Romana, ſed vniuerſis, duxit non ſigniter adiuuandum, & efficaciter promouendum. Nullo igitur modo tantam ſponte oblatam dignitatem apertis brachijs ſuſcipere non pigritemur, ad quem opes, & operam, & opem abundanter effundemus conſequendam. Scelera enim prædicti Frederici multiplicia, ſicut tam nouit Mundus, eundem irreſtaurabiliter condemnarunt.

The King of France beſeeches the Pope to the contrarie.

S. *Lewes*, by the aduiſe and counſell of his Barons, vpon this nomination of the Emperor, returned this anſwere to the Pope. That by a ſpirit thirſting for reuenge, or elſe meerely in raſhneſſe, he had interdicted and fulmined againſt the Emperour *Fredericke*; not conuinced of ſuch crimes as the Pope had obiected againſt him. And therefore, to no purpoſe hee had depoſed him from the Empire, and left his Seigneuries as ſpoile and pillage, to the firſt that ſhould attempt to inuade them. But

But if the crimes whereof he accuſed the Emperor, were ſo execrable, as to deſerue depoſing from the Empire: the depoſition ought to bee done by a Generall Councell, and not onely by the Pope, his capitall enemie, being both a Iudge and Partie in the cauſe. For my owne part (quoth he) vntill then, I will acknowledge the ſaid *Fredericke* both for innocent, and an honeſt good neighbour; for I neuer knew any thing in him, that ſauoured of hereſie from the Catholique faith, or perfidious dealing towards men. The Emperors good ſeruice in the Holy Land.

Well know I that he hath fought valiantly for the Law of Ieſus Chriſt, as well on firme Land againſt Heretiques, as beyond the Seas againſt the Sarazens, dreadleſſe of all perills and hazards in Warre. Nor haue I found a zeale ſo feruent and deuout in the Pope, who is the man that ought to aduance the ſeruice of God, to loue, protect, & defend the ſaid *Fredericke* againſt his enemies: whereas quite contrary, he endeuoured with all his power, to ſupplant and depriue him of the Empire, during the time of his abſence, by cunning trickes, and very vnreaſonable waies. It is no part of my meaning, to hurle my ſelfe headlong into ſuch quagmires, by declaring War againſt *Fredericke* ſo potent; who hath, and can haue (at need) aſſiſtance of Kings and Princes, his neighbours and friends, and in a cauſe ſo iuſt as his is. It would be pleaſure and contentment vnto the Romanes, to ſee Riuers and Streames prodigally ſluced forth of our bloud, to ſatiate and glut their rage and fury, if by our owne meanes, and that of others, they could trample vnder their feet, the Kings and Potentates of the world, tranſported with an audacious and proud gale of winde: when ſo great an Emperor as is *Fredericke*, ſhall ſee himſelfe trode downe, without all hope or meanes of riſing againe.

An article of inueterate malice, & whereof Princes had need to be ſenſible.

Neuertheleſſe, not to ſeeme or appeare diſdaining, or miſ-priſing the Popes meſſage (though it be plainely euident, that it is done rather in hatred to the Emperour *Fredericke*, then any fauour which the Romane Church beareth to vs:) we will (for our part) ſend to the ſaid Emperour *Fredericke* our diſcreet and well aduiſed Ambaſſadors, to vnderſtand of him, what his credence is of the Catholique Faith; to the end, that we may be the more certaine & duly informed therein. For if nothing be found in him, that may ſubiect him to reprehenſion, why ſhould wee make warre vpon him? If we finde the contrary, we will marche in open field; not onely againſt him, but euen againſt the Pope himſelfe, if hee be offenſiue to God; yea, againſt any other perſon liuing, whom we will valiantly purſue, and proſecute euen to the death.

The return of the Popes Nuncios to Rome, and Ambaſſadors ſent to the Emperor *Fredericke*.

The *Popes Nuncios* returned with this magnanimous and generous anſwere, quite contrary to that which the Pope expected. And the King (on his owne behalfe) ſent his Ambaſſadors to the Emperor *Fredericke*, to acquaint him with the Popes goodly Letters. Which when the ſaid Emperour had read; all amazed at the calumnies thus impoſed on him, he made anſwer to the Ambaſſadors of France: That he was a Catholique and a Chriſtian, and conſtantly beleeued all the Articles of the Orthodoxall Faith. O God forbid (quoth he) that I ſhould euer forſake the beleefe of my moſt famous Grandfathers, to walke in the way of the wicked. I call God to be Iudge betweene the Pope (who hath ſo wickedly ſcandalized mee through all the world) and my ſelfe. Then lifting his hands towards heauen, & his eyes ſtreaming forth teares, his voyce being confounded with heart-breaking ſighes and grones, he cried out; O God, thou God of vengeance, reward the Pope according to his deſeruings. So turning to the Ambaſſadors, he ſaid; Moſt deare friends, and good neighbours, beleeue vndoubtedly, that whatſoeuer the vtter enemy to my bloud (faith, who would depriue mee of all honor; that I beleeue as a Chriſtian ought to beleeue. And if you be diſpoſed to make warre vpon me, credit conſtantly; that I will defend my ſelf valiantly againſt them that preſume to meddle with me. For my hope is firmly grounded on God (who is the protector and ſhield of the innocent) that he will deliuer me from my enemies. God knoweth, that the Pope (fauouring my rebellious ſubiects, the Millaine Heretiques) hath thus bandied himſelfe againſt me. But I am obliged to render infinite thankes both to your King, and to the Barons of France, that they would vnderſtand and take knowledge what manner of man I am, before they gaue credit to the Popes perſwaſions. The Fmperours words to the Ambaſſadors. The Pope moſt maliciouſly addicted to the Emperour. The Pope ioyned with the Emperours Enemies.

Hereupon the Ambaſſadours imparted to him, theſe words concerning their

A remembrance of the Kings words to the Popes Nuntius.

King, deseruing obseruation. *God forbid* (quoth they) *that it should euer enter into the heart and minde of the French, to make warre against a Christian Prince, without cause, and manifest subiect. Ambition cannot moue vs a iot, to aspire or make any pretence to the Empire. Because we beleeue, that the King of France our Maister, that the Ligne called of the Royall Blood, and made to mount on the Kingly Throne of the Noble Flower de Luce, death seazing his life: his neereſt Heire to succeede him, is much more excellent then the Emperour, whatsoeuer he be, who commeth to that dignity but by a voluntarie election. It shall suffice then my Lord Count Robert, to be Brother to so great a King.*

Ad hoc Legati. Nolit Deus vt vnquam ascendat in cor nostrum, vt aliquem Christianum sine manifesta causa impugnemus. Nec nos pulsat ambitio. Credimus enim Dominum nostrum Regem Galliæ, quem linea Regij sanguinis prouexit ad Sceptra Francorum regenda, excellentiorem esse aliquo Imperatore, quem sola electio prouehit voluntaria: sufficit Domino Comiti Roberto fratrem esse tanti Regis. These are the very words of the Monke of England, *Mathew Paris.*

Concerning the peaceful estate of France

On the peaceable estate of the Kingdome of France, dependeth the whole prosperity of the holy Seate, and of all Christendome.

The King of France visiteth Pope *Innocent* the fourth at Lyons.

In the yeare 1248. the King S. *Lewes*, setting on his voyage ouer the Seas, passed by Lyons, to visite Pope *Innocent* the fourth, who (by his permission) was retired thither for safety (as France hath bin at all times the Sanctuary, and the onely assured refuge for Popes, in the very strongest of their afflictions) against the Emperour *Fredericke* the second. In this parley or conference, the King most earnestly entreated the said Pope, to listen to some good agreement betweene his Holinesse and the said Emperour, the respect, reuerence and honour of the holy Seate reserued: to the end, that peace being granted to Christendome; passage to the Leuant Sea, and the Prouinces of Europe might thereby be kept open, free and safe for all Croisades, and for the affaires in the holy-Land. Because the wars of Popes against Emperours, serued but as a Bridge to the Sarrazins, to expell the Christians from their possessions in the holy-Land. And the King perceiuing, that the Pope lent but a deafe eare to his remonstrances: looking frowningly on him. I plainely perceiue (quoth he) that so soone as I shall be gone forth of my Kingdome: all disorder will step in, by Armes of strangers, through your peruerse and wilfull obstinacie. If the voyage to the holy-Land be impeached, all the blame will be imputed on you. As for my selfe: *I will keepe France, as the apple of mine eye; because the whole prosperity of you, and of Christendome, dependeth on the State of France. Custodiam Franciam vt pupillam oculi, à statu ipsius, & tui, & totius Christianitatis dependet prosperitas.* These are the words againe of the same *Mathew Paris.*

The words of king Lewes to the Pope.

The Greeke Authors, speaking of the Church of S. *Sophia* at Constantinople, say (in vaine ostentation:) That it is fastened to a Chaine of Gold, which descendeth downe from Heauen. We may truely say, that God, who ballanceth the whole world with his three fingers; *Qui appendit tribus digitis molem Terræ:* holdeth the Crowne of France fastened to a Chaine of Diamonds in *Cœlum Empyrium*, descending downe on earth. How many times hath it bin seene in great brandling, to be set vpon Strangers heads? And yet notwithstanding, when they supposed themselues neereſt catching it; God gaue so strict a closure to their fingers, that they were glad to leaue it behinde them. How many tempestuous stormes hath France (in her own Kingdome) endured, one while by the English on the one side, and then by Spaniards on the othe, through the factions and practises of two furious & bloody Leagues? As often hath God comforted her in the very fiercest of her afflictions, protecting, maintaining and preseruing her by wayes meerely miraculous, and out of all humaine apparance. A yong Damosell, of obscure birth, expelled the English out of France. An Angell of Heauen threw downe to the earth the Spanish Armies, and conducted by the Arme of a victorious King; returned to the great Church of *Paris*, where (the very same day) the Strangers were beaten thence, confused with shame and confusion.

The manifold afflictions of France by strangers.

We haue (in our dayes) seene a yong *Salomon*, aged but fifteene yeares, calme and make smooth in an instant the Kingdome of France, when it was in danger of totall ruine, by the small factions of two wretched Strangers; which moued the Monke of England *Mathew Paris*, to say in his History of England thus remarkably, *That*

That God particularly saueth, guardeth, maintaineth and comforteth the Kingdome of France, which he loueth especially & particularly, aboue all Kingdoms of the world. Dominus, Regnum Francorum, præ omnibus alijs speciali complectitur dilectione consolatur & tuetur.

The same Author, making a parallel or comparison of the Kings of France, with them of Germany (in those times, the elected Emperors had no other title, but Kings of Germany) saith excellently well. That the Kings of France were much more potent, then the said Emperours: *Because the holy Kingdome of France hath alwaies beene in the especiall safeguard and protection of God. Hucusque auxiliatus est Dominus, qui semper opitulantibus Regni Sanctis, Francos sub alis refouet protectionis.*

A Royall feast in France, and the guests present at it.

The same Historian, describing the stately Banquet and Feast, which was in the great Hall of the Temple at Paris, (it being without the City at that time) where were lodged the King and Queene of England, *Henry* the third of that name, and a great Traine: he saith, that at this feast sate three Kings, two Queenes, fiue and twenty Dukes, twelue Bishops among these Dukes, eighteene Countesses; three whereof were sisters to two Queenes of France, and of England, as namely those of Anion, Cornwall and Prouence, with the Countesse *Beatrix*, their Mother.

The words alledged by *Mathew Paris* in his history of England, *Ann.* 1254.

As concerning the sitting at the table of the said Kings, the same Historian saith, that for Honor) the King of France S. *Lewis*, was set in the middest, King *Henry* of England on his right hand, and on the left, *Thibault* King of Nauarre, Count Palatine of Brie and Champaigne: howbeit, the said holy King *Lewes* was pressed by *Henry* of England, to take his place in the midst. And the Author saith, that the most honorable place was granted to the said *King Lewes: Because the King of France is the King of Kings. Consederunt igitur sic ordinati. Dominus Rex Francorum, qui terrestrium Rex Regnum est, tum propter eius Cœlestem inunctionem, cum proper sui potestatem & militiæ eminentiam in medio sedebat; & Dominus Rex Angliæ à dextris; & Dominus Rex Nauarriæ à sinistris. Et cum interitur Dominus Rex Francorum alter ordinare, et videlicet Dominus Rex Angliæ in medio, & in eminentiori loco sederet, ait Dominus Rex Angliæ. Non Domine in loco, decentis sedetius modo. sedliet in medio, & digni-*

The place of honor & precedency.

us. So at the entrance into Paris, of the Emperor *Charles* the fourth, & his Son *Wenceslaus*, King of Bohemia; the King of France, *Charles* the fift, rode betweene them, which is the place of Honour and Precedencie, hauing the Emperor on his right hand, and the King of Bohemia on his left: to shew, that the Kings of France are greater Emperors in their Kingdome, and acknowledge no Prince in the world to be greater, then they themselues are.

Queenes of France Queens of Queenes.

And like as the Kings of France are Kings of Kings, that is to say, they are the chiefest Kings of Christendome: by one and the same argument, the Queens Mothers and wiues of our Kings, *are Queenes of Queenes, and Ladies of Ladies throughout Christendome. Matthew Paris* speaking of the departure and death of Queene *Blanch* of Castile, Mother to S. *Lewes*, saith: *Circa id quoque tempus, videlicet prima Dominica Aduentus Dominici, prima die Mensis, obijt Dominarum Secularium Domina Blanchia Francorum Regis Mater.* The King of France, according to the testimony of the same Historian, is the example and mirrour of Iustice, to Princes Strangers: as the Sunne, whose luminous and splendant beams are darted directly, to cleare the most obscureſt darkenesse; *For he is King of Kings.*

The words of the Relation.

In like manner, he speaking of the voyage made into England (to be there crowned King) by *Lewis* the 8 of the name, sonne to King *Philip Augustus*, writeth: that not onely the English and French, but all Christendome generally, were entranced with feare, least some accident should happen to the Kings sonne of France, who was the Prince of Christendomes Princes, and in regard of the loue and honour, which he bare to the most Noble Kingdome of France.

The Relation of *Denys de Corbeill, Iohn de Monstre-veuë*, and *William de Limets*, Knights, Ambassadors from *Monsieur Lewes* of France, elected King of *England*, against K. *Iohn without Land*, to Pope *Innocent* the third at Rome, importeth; that the said King, eldest sonne to *Philip Augustus*, King of France, *was the Arme of the Roman Church.* Behold here the true words of the Relation, reported by the said *Mathew Paris*, *Dominus Papa statim finito sermone, percusso pectore suo cum magno gemitu, effudit spiritu, & dixit. Heu mihi! quia in hac facto Ecclesia Dei non potest euadere confusio. Si enim Rex Angliæ vincitur, in ipsius confusione confundimur, quia vassalus noster*

noiter eſt, & tenemur eum defendere. (The vaſſaile might enioy to himſelfe his Fieffe or inheritance, vntill his demiſſion. But it is a queſtion, whether a Soueraign Prince can render himſelfe vaſſail & Tributary to another Prince, or no, without the conſent of his Vaſſails and Subiects.) *Si Dominus Ludouicus vincitur, quod Deus auertat, in ipſius læſione læditur Romana Eccleſia, & ipſius læſionem propriam reputamus, ſecure enim ſemper habuimus & adhuc habemus, quod ipſe in omnibus neceſſitatibus debeat eſſe Brachium & ſolatium in oppreſſionibus, & refugium in perſecutionibus Eccleſiæ.*

Pope *Innocent* the third might haue added heereto, that which the Neapolitane Doctor *Vinaldus* ſaith in his Royall worke. That it was the common beleefe of the Church (Learne, Learne *Cranato*) that by a particular gift of Grace, the diuine Clemency elected the ancient Kings of France, aboue all other Kings & Princes of the habitable earth; as the proper Combatants, Champions and Souldiers of the Catholique Church. *Credimus, & firmiter tenemus Diuinam Clementiam dono particularis gratiæ elegiſſe veterantos Francorum Reges præ cunctis Principibus vniuerſi orbis, quaſi proprios pugiles Catholicæ Fidei.* This Italian Doctor (*Cranato*) deriued this beliefe from the vniuerſal conſent of the Church, and the writings of the learned Rabanus *Maurus*, in the Treatiſe which he wrote of Antichriſt, inſerted in the ninth Tome of S. *Auguſtines* works (whom ſome affirme to be the Author of that treatiſe, but to none effect; in regard this Father of the Church, and the Mallet of hereticks in his time, departed from this life to heauen, in the yere of Grace 430. then being Conſuls, the Emperors *Theodoſius* for the 13. time, and *Valentinian* for the third.) The paſſage then is out of *Magnentius Rabanus Maurus*, a Natiue, and firſt Abbot of *Fulda*, & afterward Archbiſhop of *Maguntia*: he was Scholler to Venerable Beda, & died in the yeere of Grace, 856. Behold here what he ſaith in honor of France.

At what time S. *Auguſtine* died.

Dicit Apoſtolus Paulus ſecundo ad Theſſalonicenſes. Anti-Chriſtum non antea in Mundum eſſe venturum, niſi venerit prima diſceſſio, hoc eſt niſi diſceſſerint omnia Regna à Romano Imperio, quæ prius illi ſubdita erant. Hoc autem tempus nondum aduenit; quamuis credamus Romanum Imperium ex maxima parte deſtructum; Tamen quandiu Reges Francorum durauerint, qui Romanum Imperium integrum tenere debent, Imperij Romani dignitas non ex toto peribit; Quia ſtabit in Regibus ſuis (hee ſpeaketh not of Kings of Spaine, *Cranato*) but continueth on ſtill thus. *Quidam vero Doctores noſtri dicunt, Quod venus ex Regibus Francorum Romanum Imperium, ex integro tenebit, qui in nouiſſimo tempore Maximus, & omnium Regnum vltimus erit. Hic poſtquam Regnum ſuum feliciter adminiſtrauerit, ad vltimum Hieroſolymam veniet, & in Olineti monte Sceptra ſuum Coronamque deponet, & hic erit finis. & conſummatio Imperij Romanorum, & Chriſtianorum; ſtatumque ſecundum prædictam ſententiam Apoſtoli Pauli, Anti-Chriſtum hæreant futurum.*

The application of this Propheſie.

This ancient Propheſie is grounded, on the deuotion and piety of the moſt Chriſtian & moſt Sacred Monarchs of the Lilly; becauſe of all them which haue reigned in France, from the time of great *Clouis*, to K. *Lewis* the 13. of that name, now reigning, there is not found one King that hath wauered in Faith, or euer bowed his knee to *Baall*.

The faithfull Hiſtorian of the Spaniards *Mariana*, and all his fore-goers in the Hiſtory of Spaine, doe informe vs, that *Mauregat*, 7. King of *Ouiedo* and *Leon*, who began to reigne in *An.* 783. becauſe he would reigne; made himſelfe Tributary to the King of Moores in Spaine, named *Abdiramus*, yeelding a Tribute vnfitting for any Chriſtian Prince; namely, of fiftie Damoſels of noble extraction and lineage, and as many other meaner mens daughters, which he ſent yeerely vnto the Infidell Moores, to ſatisfie their infamous and beaſtly lubricity, by the loſſe of their Chriſtian ſoules. Whereas on the contrary, in all the three Lignes of our Kings with vs in France, we haue had ſome ſanctified and canonized.

A moſt diſhonourable tribute to be payed.

Kings of France ſanctified and Canonized.

Vnder the firſt Ligne, S. *Gontran* king of *Orleans* & of *Bourguignonne* France. The Romane Martyrologe of the moſt learned Cardinall *Baronius* (whom the Spaniards affect not, becauſe he ſpeaketh the truth, concerning the kingdomes of Naples and Sicily, wickedly vſurped from the Crowne of France) vnder the eight day of March, ſaith. *Cabilone in Gallijs depoſitio Sancti Gunthramni Regis Francorum, qui ſpretis ritualibus actionibus ita ſe mancipauit, vt relictis Saculi pompis, theſauros ſuos Eccleſiæ & Pauperibus erogaret.*

Vnder

Vnder the ſame firſt Ligne, Saint *Dagobert*, King of France, the 23. day of December, according to the Breuiaries of France.

Vnder the ſecond, Saint *Charlemaigne*, King of France, Ligne and firſt Emperor of the Weſt; and Author of S. *Peters* Patrimonie, the 28. day of Ianuary.

Vnder the third, Saint *Louis*, the 25. day of Auguſt.

So that on behalfe of the Kings of France, may be ſaid, as the ſubile Oratour in *Ouid* did.

Neque in his quiſquam damnæius, aut exul.

As much to ſay, that there was not a *Mauregat* among them all.

Aliances made with the *Turke* and *Moores*.

Cranato, you haue not ſpared to touch this ſtring; and yet notwithſtanding, you talke of foure formes of Alliance, which King *Francis*, firſt of the name, made with the great Seigneur of the Turkes. But you trip ſilently ouer them which *Charles* the fift, Emperour, made with the Sophie of *Perſia*, and the Moore-Kings of *Fez* and *Marocco*. Goe to Schoole *Cranato*, to learne this diſticke.

Tollere qui curas feſtucam ex fratris ocello,
Quæ tua perturbant lumina, tolle trabem:

Where intentions are different, the iſſues are diſcordāt.

Succeſſe of time hath verified that thoſe of *Charles* the fift, were in mallice, for reuenge, and fruitleſſe; whereas thoſe of King *Frances* the firſt, returned to the benefit of Chriſtendome. Who can tell, if God will ſerue himſelfe by extraordinary meanes, for reducing the Turkes to the knowledge of one onely God, and to make profeſſion of Catholique Religion? We ſee that this Alliance hath preſerued to this very day ſafely, the holy Sepulcher at Ieruſalem, and places of deuotion in the holy-Land, honored with the miſteries of our redemption: which elſe had long ſince bin ruined and defaced, by furie of the Iewes; but by reſpect in the Kings of France, who (by that Alliance) conſerued the poore Chriſtians in Turkie, and facilited the deliuerance of ſuch, as remained captiues among the Turkes. The libertie which the Engliſh, Italians and other Nations deriued from this confederation, to trafficke and merchandiſe on the Seas, and in the Lands belonging to the Turke, vnder the banner of France; may one day auaile, to aduance there the Chriſtian Standard of the Croſſe.

Other Nations made vſe of the French mens confederacie with the *Turke*.

Æghinardus, Secretarie of State to our King *Charlemaigne*, enſtructeth vs in the life of this great Prince. That he ſought, and obtained correſpondencie with *Aaron*, King of Perſia, who held all the Eaſt (India onely excepted) to maintaine and conſerue the holy Sepulcher of Ieruſalem: And thereof enſued the renowne and knowledge of the French in the Eaſt parts, and other ſtrange Nations; who baptized with the name of *Franky*, all the Chriſtian Nations, and the Spaniards alſo, in the Indiaes Eaſt and Weſt, and of *China*.

The care great *Charlemaigne* had of the poore diſtreſſed Chriſtians liuing among the Infidels.

The ſaid King *Charlemaigne*, ſought (in like manner) the Alliance (and conſerued it all his life time) of the Sarrazine Kings beyond the Seas; that he might haue the better meanes, for ſending his Almes, to the poore Chriſtians, which then dwelt in *Syria*, *Ægypt*, *Affrica*, *Ieruſalem*, *Alexandria*, and *Carthage*. *Vbi Chriſtianos in paupertate viuere comperat* (as Æghinardus telleth vs) *penuriæ eorum compatiens, pecuniam mittere ſolebat*. Behold here the fruite of theſe confederations, by the onely great Prince of Chriſtendome, with thoſe Infidels. *Ab hoc maximè tranſmarinorum Regum amicitiam expetens, vt Chriſtianis ſub eorum Dominatu refrigerium aliquod, ac relcuatio proueniret*. Becauſe poore Chriſtians, dwelling in their Marches, might be the more mildely gouerned and vſed. This Alliance then of the French with the Turke, is honeſt and profitable to all Chriſtendome: and ſo by conſequent, worthy of a moſt Chriſtian King, againſt which *Cranato* impertinently ſpeaketh. Returne we to our Precedencie.

The French, the right Arme and Champions of the Church.

If the Monarchs of the holy & ſacred Lillies of France, are the right Arme, and Champions of the Church, according to the teſtimony of ſtrange Authors formerly alleadged (*In this principall cauſe, we ſerue not our turne with our owne, who beare their blame vpon their foreheads.*) They are likewiſe the Founders & ſole Authours of the goods, which they poſſeſſe, or ought to poſſeſſe.

Petrum

Petrus Pomponatius, an Italian Phylosopher, saith, That the great benefits to the Romaine Church, giuen by the Kings of France: hath wonne them the title of excellence and honor of *Most Christian Kings*, aboue all Princes on the earth.

The imaginary precede ency of the Greekes.

The donation made to Pope *Sylvester*, by *Constantine* the Great, is falsely supposed by the Greekes (alwayes bold lyers) to arrogate it selfe to an imaginary Precedencie, and Honour of the Romaine Church; from which being sequestred and dismembred, they are become the Fable and contempt of the Turkes, the Iewes, yea, euen of their owne Nation, captiue and miserable, without hope of any reflorring. Also, the writings of *Theodorus Balsamo*, Patriarch of Antioch, and of *Nomocanonde Photius*, Patriarch of Constantinople, are meere impostures, fomented by the enemies of France. For *Augustinus Eugubinus*, and the Grammarian *Laurentius Valla*, who would gladly counterfeit Historians, with all their borrowed Greekes are learnedly contradicted by the iudicious *Sigonius* and *Onuphrius*, Italians. And the Annales of Germanie report vnder the yeare 756. that in the second voyage of Italie, made by the King of France *Pepin*, against *Astolphus*, King of the Lombardes; he made a donation to the holy Seate, of Lands and Prouinces by him conquered. Namely, *The Exarcate of Rauenna*, which contained thirteene Townes; *Pompolis, Tesauris*; the Seigneuries of *Vrbin, Romaignia* and *Ferrara*, of which Cities he sent the Keyes to the Confession of the chiefe of the Apostles S. *Peter*, by *Eckardus*, Abbot of S. *Denys* in France, Maister of his Chappell. *Iterum Pepinus Italiam ingressus Hastulphum Papie inclusum obsidet, Rauennam, cum Pentapoli reddere compellit, & per Fobradum missum suum Sancto Petro Apostolo, & Stephano Papæ Vicario eius tradidit.* Hee caused these to be surrendred at this second voyage, because at the first voyage of Italie, made before this, to wit, in the yeare of Grace 754. he had giuen to the Church the Lands before specified, by him conquered from the Kings of the Lombardes. That donation, made in the yeare aboue dated 754. was sometime engraued in a long Table of Marble, in the Citie of *Rauenna*. *Pipinus. Pius. Franc. Rex Christianiss. Primus. Amplificandæ. Ecclesiæ sum. Apperuit. & Exarchatum. Rauennæ. cum. Amplissimis.* .. .. ..

going against the Persians, hee being then aged, threescore and sixe yeares.

Seauen yeares before, hee had establisshed his ordenary abiding at *Bizantium*, which (by his name) was called *Constantinople*, and, for a title of honor, *New Rome*; enriched with the spoyles of the old, and of all the wealthiest Cities of the Romaine Empire, so saith the same S. *Hierome*. *Ditatur Constantinopolis omnium pene vrbium nuditate.*

Constantinople new Rome

Which passages may serue vs to approue, that this imaginary and pretended donation of *Constantine*, saw no light in the time of S. *Hierome*, who had bin as the soule and life of the Pope Saint *Damasus*. *Eusebius* his Predecessour, and the Chronicle, which he pursued during his life time, hath giuen vs to vnderstand some things.

The most-Christian Kings gaue originall to S. *Peters* Patrimonie.

It is then the most-Christan Kings, *Qui Aurum habet Ecclesia*, and vpon whose liberalitie, the Patrimonie of S. *Peter* receiued foundation and originall. At all times they haue bin the Conseruatours thereof, and of the Popes Authoritie. *Semper pro Legibus, & Iuribus Ecclesiæ Dei, Summorumque Pontificum soli fideliter decertarunt.* These are the words of the learned Doctor *Vualdus*.

The honorable offices of France to the Church and Popes, & their Precedencie thereby won.

These famous Offices, of the Monarchs of the holy and Sacred Lillies of France, rendred in all occurrences to the Church and Popes, with whom at all times they haue held such correspondencie, of reioycing in prosperitie, and comforting in their afflictions, which they layed vpon their owne shoulders, to disburden the Pope) won them the right of Precedency, aboue all Kings on the earth, and namely of Christendome. Beside these Epithites of honor; *Eldest Sonnes of the Church*; *The most Christian Kings*; *Best Benefactours*; and *Protectours of the holy Seate.*

In the Oration of Pope *Iohn*, eight of the name, a Romaine by Nation, made in the assembly of Bishops of Italie, in the Citie of *Pauia*, at the Coronation of our King and Emperour *Charles*, second of the name, tearmed the Baulde; hee was called *Christianissimus Princeps*: these are the words. *Inter has tempestates Clarissimum Sydus in diebus nostris apparuit. Ecce nobis Karolum Christianissimum Principem superna prouidentia præscitum àse, præelectum ante Mundi constitutionem, & prædestinatum, &c.*

Titles and additions of honor giuen to the Kings of France.

Anastasius, keeper of the Librarie to the holy Seate, in the liues of the Popes, *Zacharie* the first, *Stephen*, *Adrian* and *Leo*, neuer speaketh of our Kings, *Pepin le Bref*, *Charlemaigne* and *Lewes* the Debonnaire: but he addeth this *Elogium* of honor, *Rex Francorum Christianissimus*. And the like is read in the Decretall Epistles of the Popes, *Stephen* the second, *Paul* the first, *Stephen* the third, *Adrian* the first, and *Iohn* the eight: all which speaking of the Kings and People of France, say with one consent. *That the Kings and People of France, doe shine and excell aboue all Nations in the World; as well for pietie towards the Church, as for Prowesse, Manhood and Valiancie.*

A Bull for Legitimation Granted by Pope *Innocent* the third.

Pope *Innocent* the third, in the Bull of Legitimation for *Monsieur Phillip* of France, and of Madam *Mary* his Sister, Children (impeached from marriage by Iudgement of the Church) of *Phillip Augustus*, and of *Agnes*, daughter to the Duke of *Morauia* in *Bohemia*: The said Bull, giuen at the Castell of *Agnano*, dated the fourth of the Nones of Nouember, and the fourth yeare of his Pontificalitie, and of Grace one thousand two hundred and one, read, published and registred in the Court of Perlement, at the Candlemasse following; beareth these words worthy of obseruation, for the deuotion, and pietie of the Kings of France, on behalfe of the holy Seate, and of the said King *Phillip Augustus*.

The words contained in the Bul Inscribe

Nos igitur attendentes in eo deuotionis constantiam, & Fidei puritatem, quam à Progenitoribus suis Regibus erga Romanam Ecclesiam, quasi quodam hereditario iure, contraxit, vt tam honori Regiæ dignitatis quam vtilitati, & necessitati Regni Francorum prouide consulamus, præfatos puerum & puellam de speciali gratia, Legitimationis titulo, de communi Fratrum nostrorum consilio, decoramus.

And yet notwithstanding, the same Pope, in his Decretale directed to *William*, Vicount of *Mont-Pelier*, who vnder colour to relieue (in part) the Bishopricke of *Magnelone*: requested to haue a Bastard of his to be made Legitimate, had no other answere, but this. That he should shape his course to the King of France (the same *Phillip*

Phillip Augustus) to whom he was a seruant. And what he had done in this Legitimation, was, because the said *Phillip Augustus* had entreated him to doe it: and not as arrogating or attributing to himselfe, any power or right of Legitimation, ouer the Lands of the Kingdome of France; whose Kings and Monarchs acknowledged in their temporalities, not any other Soueraigne, but God alone. *In temporalibus neminem superiorem agnoscunt.* In the Decretale, *Per venerabilem*, *Qui Filij sint legitimi.*

Pope *Honorius* the third, saith in his Decretale. *That the King of France is the inexpugnable wall of Christendome; the Quiuer or Arrow-Case, from whence God taketh his Arrowes, and shooteth them abroad, to attract, subdue and reduce strange Nations, to the knowledge of his name.*

Pope *Boniface* the ninth, and his Cardinals, said. *That the King of France is the Soueraigne King of Christendome, by whom the Church ought to be illuminated, more then by any other King or Prince on the earth.*

Now, like as we reade in *Suidas* the Greeke Author, that by the word Βασιλεὺς μέγας, the name of Great King, the sole Monarch of the Persians was designed, vnderstood and noated, and in speaking of other Kings, there was an addition, and firname of the People, ouer whom they commanded, as King of the *Macedonians*, or *Lacedemonians*, and so of others: So in like manner, *The Kings of France are designed and acknowledged, by the name of King onely, and without addition, for Antonomasia.* Other Kings of Christendome are perticularized by the names of their People, as Kings of Spaine, of England of Scotland, Hungaria, Bohemia, Polonia, Denmarke, Sueden, Norwaye, &c.

Titles and additions of other Kings.

This is the Doctrine of Doctors of Italie (not to alleadge any of ours, in our own cause). First of *Bonifacius de Vitalinis*, *Auditour de la Rota in Rome*, in his Preface on the Clementines, in these notable words. *Dicendo simpliciter Episcopus, debet intelligi de Supremo, hoc est, Romano Pontifice, per excellentiam: Sicut decimus quod appellatione Regis simpliciter facta, Debet. intelligi. De. solo. Reges. Francie. per. Excellentiam.*

Ioannes Ludouicus Vualdus in his worke Royall, is of the same opinion. *Rex Francorum per Antonomasiam Christianissimus appellatur, & hic titulus ponitur vice proprij nominis, significans personam Regis Francorum; quæ quidem dignitas, Francorum Regibus data est, ob claríssima gesta, & admiranda prodigia, quæ pro Catholica fide semper egerunt.*

The same Doctor in another passage. *Rex Regum, Dominus Dominantium Iesus-Christus, per vniuersum Orbem statuit, & ordinauit Reges, & Principes in argumentum sue vnice Maiestatis. Elegit autem præ ceteris Regem Christianissimum quasi Nobilissimum Athletam Ecclesiæ suæ, cuius officium est auctoritatem Ecclesiæ Dei conseruare: Barbaras gentes, & Turcarum perfidiam expugnare: cultum diuinum, ac iura Christianæ Religionis magnificare: Tyrannos debellare: atque malenolos Principes infrænì subiicere.*

He (saith this Author) *who is pleased and delighted with taking this magnificent title of King of Kings, and Lord of Lords, Iesus Christ (in the Apocalypse) hath ordained and* Apoc. 19. 16. *established in all Prouinces of the World, Kings and Princes, to shew the effect of his Almightie Power. But principally he hath chosen the Most-Christian King, to whom he hath giuen the Precedencie of Honor, before all Kings and Princes on the earth: as being the vnconquerable Champion of his Church, whose care and ordenarie effect hath alwayes bin, to conserue and defend the authoritie thereof: Warring against Barbarous Nations, and Turks; to plant and aduance the seruice of God, and reduce to tearmes of dutie and obedience, all such as would harme the holy Seate.*

Nenisanus, in his twelfth Councell, enclosed within those of Doctor *Albertus Brunus*, hath left written: *That the Kingdome of France is the most excellent of all the Kingdomes in the World.*

Corsetus, in the Booke which he wrote *De Potestate Regia*, saith. *That the King of France is Emperour, and a more excellent Monarch and Soueraigne, then the Emperour of Germanie is.*

Baldus, on the Law *Exemplo*, at the title *De Probationibus* the *Code*: on the Chapter,

Per

Per Venerabilem (before obserued) *Qui Filij sint Legitimi*: In his Councell *Petita Venia* 218. And in his reading on the first Chapter, first Paragraphe, *Lib. de Prohibita Feudi Alienatione per Fredericum*, and first Booke of Fiefes, saith. *That the King of France glorieth and shineth, aboue all the Kings in the world, as the morning Star doth in the midst of the Clouds. And that the Kings of France wore the Crowne of Glory, Honor, and Freedome, aboue all the Kings that are in Christendome.*

Ioannes Andreas, and the *Panormitane*, write. *That the King of France acknowledgeth on earth, no Prince greater then himselfe, be it either in fact, or Right.*

This doctrine (word for word) is held by the Cardinall *Zarabella*, and *Guillelmus de Monte-Lauduno*, both Romaine Doctors, in their Readings on the *Vnica Clementina, De Iureiurando.* Goe to Schoole *Cranato*, to learne what the King of France is.

The Canonists, and the Glosse on the Pragmaticall Sanction, *In Capite Nouit. de Iudic. In Capite Solitè, de Maiorit.* The Glosse on the third Booke, *De Off. Proc. ad Digest*: And on the Chapter *Per Venerabilem, qui Fil. sint Leg.* doe hold and acknowledge with one consent. *That the Most-Sacred Kings of France doe not acknowledge, either in Fact or Right, any one to be greater then themselues: That they are borne Emperours, and to them onely it belongeth, to weare the close Crowne, made firme according to the Imperiall manner.*

Lucas de Penna, in his reading on the Lew *Vnica, ad Tit. De Conductoribus, & Code.*

Cursius the yonger, in his Treatise *De Feudis*, Part. and Quest. 2.

Andreas de Ysernia, on the Title *De Vasallo decrepitæ ætatis, ad Feud. Cap.* 1. And *Decius Cap. Nouit, de Iudicijs*, on the decretales, write all with one accord,

That the King of France is the most soueraigne Monarch in his Kingdome, and more then the Emperour is in his Empire. And

That he is the most Excellent and Noble, of all the Kings in the World. Thus you heare what the Doctors of Italie say: Come we now to Englishmen.

Venerable *Beda* writeth, that before the comming of Anti-Christ, to appeare in the world, a King must come forth of France, that shall reduce all Infidell Nations to the Catholique Faith, and range them vnder his obedience. This opinion is followed by *Rabanus Maurus*, as wee haue said, and by *Volaterranus*, on the word Ante-Christ. Wee haue formerly related an infinite number of passages of *Mathew Paris*, the English Monke, to the Honor and Precedencie of the Kings & Kingdome of France.

Let vs now make Spaniards (our contraries) to march along in Field with the rest, and draw from their owne mouthes the confession of Truth, in whose eyes can no dust be cast, according to the Great *Tertullian. Cui nemo præscribere potest, non spatia temporum, non longinquitas regionum, nec dignitas personarum. Cranato*, beare off this blow, and stand on your guard.

Oldradus, a Spanish Doctor, saith. *That the King of France weareth the Crowne of Excellencie and Glory, aboue all Kings on the earth.*

Petrus Bellugæ another Spanish Doctor, in his Mirour, *ad Tit.* 14. and Paragraphe *Nunc videamus, Numero* 29. writeth. *That the King of France acknowledgeth in the world, neither in fact or right, any Prince greater then himselfe.* Goe to the Schoole of your owne Spanish Doctors *Augustine Cranato:* but the glittering of Spanish Doublet hath blinded your sight.

The writings of *Rabanus Maurus* are filled with wonders, in behalfe and honor of the Kings and Kingdom of France. In the Treatise of Ante-Christ, he saith.

That the white Cloude, which couered all the rest, obserued in the Apocalips; designed and represented the Kingdome of France.

That he is the great finger, sustaining the foote of Iron, which is not to be bruised or broken: That the Fabricke of the world shall not perish by fire. In the Prophesie of *Daniel*, and as *Lyranus* expoundeth on the Apocalips. And

Dan 10.9.

That the Scepter of the Kings of France, is the Rod, which must breake the Scepters and Crownes of Infidell Kings.

I

I let passe in silence an infinite number of goodly Tracts, delivered on this excellent subiect, by *Iohn Froissard, Englebertus de Monstrelet, Iean le Maire, Oliuer de la Marche*, and other Historians; because they are Flemings, and Subiects to the Crowne of France, in regard of the Counts of *Flanders, Arbois, Henault*, and other Seignuries in the Low-Countries, vnder Authoritie of the Parlements of *Paris*.

They that haue written, that the Sacred Kings of France, obtained this priuiledge from Popes, to stand exempted from sentences of Excommunication of the Bishops of France, and of Popes themselues: are ignorant in our Historie, erring both in fact and right.

For we in France doe hold, that the Pope hath not any Iurisdiction in Temporall occasions, ouer the Kings and Princes on the earth; neither hath hee power to Excommunicate them; to deliuer their Subiects from the Oath of Allegeance; to giue their Kingdomes as preyes and spoiles, to the first Intruder, and their persons to the Knife and Sword, according to the new Doctrine of the Iesuites, mischieuously practised on the Sacred persons of our two last Kings, of holy and glorious memory.

The constant opinion held in France concerning the power of Popes.

Kings and Princes on the earth, haue no other Iudge, but God onely. If they decline, slip or swerue from the way of vertue (as they haue power by their Authoritie:) In case of this disease; the proceeding must be by faire Remonstrances, milde, yet somewhat piercing, according to the occurrences, and not to step any further. *Principes sæculi à nemine iudicantur.* Good or bad, they haue no Iudge but God: and such was the beliefe of the Gallicane Church, twelue hundred ago.

None but God onely is the Iudge of Princes.

Pretextatus Bishop of *Rouen*, was accused before King *Chilpericke*, to haue had some practise and medling with his enemies. *Chilpericke* assembled the Bishops of France, in the Church and Monasterie of Saint *Geneuiesue* at *Paris*. Saint *Gregory* Bishop then of Tours, had charge to deliuer the speech for them all, for innocence of the Bishop of *Rouen*, hee composed this action of importance for the Church of France, in all honestie and modestie; and not in brauing tearmes, for reprouing the King, by attempting on the persons of Bishoppes: Because Kings on the earth haue no other Iudge, but God onely, and sinne not, but to God onely. *Tibi soli peccaui Domine, & malum coram te feci*, so said the great *Arnobius*, on the fiftie Psalme. *Saule* the first King of Israel, was reproued of God for his wicked life; and *Dauid*, a better man then he, chosen. Neuertheless, the Priest *Samuel*, did alwayes giue him the honor and reuerence which were due vnto him, to make example for the like in the children of Israel, although hee had denounced the tydings to him, of his priuation from the Kingdome. *Scidit Dominus regnum Israel à te hodie, & tradidit illud proximo tuo meliori te. Saule* returned him his answere. *Peccaui, sed nunc honora me coram Senioribus Populi mei, & coram Israel, & reuertere mecum.* I see well, that I haue sinned before God, who hath reproued me, yet neuertheless, start not from me, to withdraw thy selfe from my obedience: but follow me, and giue me the honor due vnto me, for good example to my People.

The Bishop of Rouen accused by King *Chilperick.*

1 Reg. 15. 28. 30.

S. *Gregory* of Tours spake to the said *Chilpericke* (although he was a cruell Prince, and addicted to all vices) in milde and gentle language, with all honour and reuerence beseeming his King, as is witnessed by his owne words. This *Chilpericke* demanded Iustice against his Bishoppe. *O Episcope, Iustitiam cunctis iuri debes, & ecce ego Iustitiam à te non accipio.* Saint *Gregorie* answered. *Si quis ex nobis, O Rex, Iustitiæ tramitem transcendere valuerit, à te corrigi potest: Si verò tu excesseris, quis te corripiet? Loquimur enim tibi, sed si volueris, audis: si autem nolueris, quis te condemnabit, nisi is qui se pronunciauit esse Iustitiam?* Sacred Maiestie, if any one of ys Bishops, doe swerue from the paths of Iustice; it belongeth to you to correct and punish him. But if by your absolute power, you doe exceede the bounds; What is he that shall reproue you? We may giue you admonitions, but if it be not your pleasure to take them in good part; you send a deafe eare to vs, and who shall condemne you for it, but onely he, who giueth to himselfe

The answere refuted by the Bishop to the King.

selfe the same title, and the name of Iustice? Hee affirmed, that the King had no other Iudge, but God onely, and not the Pope, as the enemies of France (otherwise boldly) imagine.

Mathew Paris, vnder the yeare one thousand one hundred eightie eight, informeth vs, that warre being moued betweene King *Phillip Augustus*, and *Henry*, King of England, second of the name, the two Princes met together at a place neere to *Ferté-Benehart*, to finde some meanes, of ordaining and setling a good peace betweene them, to the end, that the voyage intended for the Holy-Land might be forwarded, but they could not agree. Which being perceiued by *Iohn d'Aguano*, a Cardinall sent by Pope *Clement* into France as Legate, who had drawne the English out of England thither: hee threatned King *Phillip*, to Excommunicate him, and to set an Interdiction vpon his Land. The King made him answere, that he did not feare any such fulmination, full of sinne and iniquitie. *For* (quoth hee) *it appertaineth not to the Romaine Church, to Excommunicate Kings or Princes authorised on earth: And perticulerly, the King of France. Cui Rex Francorum respondit, se ipsius sententiam nulla tenus formidare cum nulla æquitate fulciretur. Addidit etiam, ad Ecclesiam Romanam minime pertinere in Regem aliquem, & maxime Francorum, per sententiam animaduertere.*

The Kings royall answere to the ouer-bold Legate.

The same Monke further telleth vs, that *Monsieur Lewes de France*, eldest Sonne to the said King *Phillip Augustus*, was chosen King of England, in right of his wife Madame *Blanch* of *Castile*, daughter to *Alphonso*, eight of the name, King of *Castile*, & of Madame *Eleanor* of *England*, daughter (and onely then liuing) to the King of *England Henry*, second of the name, by generall consent of the Barons of *England*.

Galo, Legate to Pope *Innocent* the third, came to France, to hinder the passage of *Monsieur Lewes de France* into *England*. *In regard* (saith hee) *the Kingdome of England is part of S. Peters Patrimonie: because King Iohn without Land (to be absolued of his enormous sinnes) had cowardly, and through lacke of courage, and not in any deuotion, rendred the Kingdome of England Tributarie to the Holy-Seate, in a thousand Markes of Siluer, payable yearely.*

England a parcel of S. Peters Patrimonie.

For hinderance of this voyage, the said *Galo* came to meete with the Kings of France, Father and Sonne, at *Lyons*, fitting his turne with infinite perswasions and Prayers, which he perceiuing to faile: made his recourse, to the ordinarie threatnings vsed by Popes, namely, of Excommunication. *Monsieur Lewes* arising before the King his Father, holding his hat in his hand, said to him in all humble reuerence. *My Lord, although I am your Liege man, in those demeanes which you haue bestowed on mee, concerning the parts on this side the Sea: yet notwithstanding, you haue no reason to take knowledge of any thing in the Kingdome of England. Neuertheless, I submit my selfe to the iudgement of my Peeres, whether you ought, or no, to hinder me in the pursuite of my right, which is that belonging to my wife, for defence whereof I will fight, euen to death.*

Galo Legate from the Pope to King *Phillip Augustus* and his Sonne King *Lewes*.

But at departing out of the King his Fathers presence, hee told the Legate: *That it consisted not in the power of the Pope, to Excommunicate him, or hinder him in the pursuite of his rights.* Hee purposed to passe before him into *England*, there to haue him feasted and entertained by a Monke (who was a stoute Pirate on the Seas of *England*, named *Eustace* the Monke, Admirall of the Fleete belonging to *Monsieur Lewes* of France, for his passage into *England*.) of whom King *Phillip Augustus* had aduised the Legate to take heede. *Legatus rogauit Regem Francorum, vt saluum sibi conductum præberet vsque ad Mare. Cui Rex respondit, per terram nostram prouidam conductum tibi lubenter præstabo: sed si forte incideris in manus Eustachij Monachi, vel aliorum hominum Ludouici, qui custodiunt semitas Maris; non mihi imputes, si quid tibi contingat*, saith the same *Mathew Paris*.

King *Lewes* his words to the Legate.

The words of *Mathew Paris*

The Sacred Kings of France, are then no way Subiects to the Censures of Popes.

The Kings of France not subiect to the censures of Popes.

As wee haue at large related vnder *Phillip le Bel*, in the Historie of *Nauarre*, because their persons being Sacred with a Celestiall Balme, and so many Ceremonies, as are not any of the other Kings of Christendome: *Cæremoniæ Regum facultatem excedit, neque enim Regum Francorum Persona exterioribus prorsus est Laica, sed Sacerdotalis*: So effectually speaketh the Neapolitane Doctor

Doctor *Vualdus* in his Royall Worke. And therefore the Sacred Kings of France, from the time of *Clouis*, receiued the Communion vnder both the kindes, which the Doctors tearme *Communion Sacerdotale*, as other Kings of Christendome doe not. *Nithardus*, *Theganus*, and the Authors writing the life of *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, haue purposely obserued this King; that he communicated vnder both the kindes, of Bread and Wine, *iuxta morem Francorum Regum*.

And for Excellencie and Dignity of their Person, such as are imployed in their seruices, as are the Peeres, Councellers, and Officers of their Parlements, Councels, house and Crowne of France; neither can, or ought to be Excommunicated.

Attendants on the Kings person free from Excommunication.

And from the time of the first Ligne of our Kings, criminals and offenders, of what qualitie soeuer they were, being called neere about their person, and admitted and receiued to their Table: were (by that meanes) remitted in their temporall goods, charges and dignities.

Pardon granted to offenders.

Vnder the King of *Paris Chilpericke*, *Prætextatus*, Bishop of *Rouen*, by iudgement of fiftie, and of as many Bishops, was confined and banished into the Isle of *Gerzey* (opposite to the Towne of *Coutance* in Normandie, aunciently called *Moritonium*, and by *Ammianus Marcellinus Campus Constantij*; and this Isle of *Gerzey* sometimes *Cæsarea*, in the *Itinerarium* of the Cosmographer *Aethicus*.) After the death of *Chilpericke*, *Prætextatus* (whom they of *Rouen* called S. *Prætextatus*) went to *Paris*, to meete the King Saint *Gonthran*, who welcommed him honorably, admitted him to his Table, and, notwithstanding his enemies, sent him againe to *Rouen*, to gouerne his Bishopricke, as he had done before his exile. S. *Gregory* of Tours, in his Historie of France, saith. *Sic a Rege susceptus, atque comitio eius adscitus, ad Vrbem suam regressus est.*

The same S. *Gregory*, describing the entrance of *Gonthran*, King of France, into the Citie of *Paris*, where were met together most part of the Bishops of France: among them was *Palladius*, Bishop of *Xaintes*, Suffragan to *Bertrand* of *Bourdeux*. Both these men had bin conuicted of Felonnie, and to haue followed the action of *Balomer*, calling himselfe *Gombauld*, Sonne to a King of France, slaine at *Bertrand de Comenges*, in the Pyrenean Mountaines, as wee haue already elsewhere said. Behold what is said by S. *Gregory* of Tours. *Tunc Berchramnus Burgalensis Episcopus, cum Palladio Sanctonico, valde Regi infensus erat pro susceptione Gondobaldi: sed & Palladius Episcopus ob hoc maxime Regis iram incurrerat, quod ei opus fallacias intulisset. Discussi enim ante paululum fuerant, à reliquis Episcopis, ac Optimatibus Regni* (The Parlements of France were not in elder times composed, but of Bishoppes and Noblemen onely, they of the third Estate were neuer receiued into such charges; where, thorow ignorance in the Nobilitie, they are made capable of obtaining the estates and dignities of the Kingdome) *Cur Gondobaldum suscepissent, cur Faustianum Aquis* (of *Dags* in the Lands of *Bourdeux*) *Episcopum ad preceptionem eius leuissimam ordinassent.* These are the heads of their accusations.

The words of S. *Gregory* set downe in his Historie.

Now it fortuned, that the Sunday following this Entrance, King *Gonthran* went to heare Masse in the Cathedrall Church, and the Bishops Seruants at the Altar, receiued (with them) him of *Xaintes*, among the number of the Sub-Deacons. He then beginning to reade a Prophesie for the Epistle, the King demanded of the Prelates which assisted him, the name of the man that read the Epistle. So soone as it was told him, that it was *Palladius*: *How* (quoth the King) *durst he be so bold, to present himselfe before me, and appeare among you, most Holy Fathers, being the man that was the author of troubling my Kingdome by a strange League? How haue you admitted and receiued him into your Communion? And he so audacious, as to pronounce out of his infidell and periured mouth, holy Prophesies, words of Truth? Qui mihi semper fidelis, & perfidus fuit, ille nunc sacrata verba prædicabit? Egrediar prorsus ab hoc cœtu, ne inimicum meum audiam prædicantem.* (After reading the Epistles and Gospels, they were expounded to the people and Catecumenists, in the time of the primitiue Church, and very long after.) *Et hæc dicens, egredi cœpit Ecclesiam.*

King *Gonthran* goeth to the Cathedrall Church.

The words of the King to the Prelates.

The Prelates retained him, not by any threatning of Excommunication, or procuring to haue it done by the Pope; but by this reason. That all criminall and

guiltie persons, whom the Sacred Kings of France honored with their table and reception, had generall abolition of all Crimes: and by the sole admission of them into their house and presence, they ought to be free, and absolued from all excommunication.

Vidimus enim eum (thus spake the Bishops of France to King *Gonthran*, in fauour of Bishop *Palladius*) *conuiuio tuo adesse: ac de eius manu te benedictionem accipere: & cur eum nunc Rex aspernatur? Si enim sciissemus tibi exosum declinassemus vtique ad alium qui hæc agere debuisset.* These words are indeede very remarkeable.

A Decree set downe in the Councill of Orleans.

At the Councill of *Orleans*, held by command of *Clouis*, first Christian King of the French, it was ordained by the *Gallicane* Church; that the Officers and seruants of that great Prince, and of the Kings of France his Successours, should not be subiect to sentences of Excommunication, and that such as had encurred the same deseruedly, should be receiued and admitted into the Communion of the faithfull, in regard of the reuerence and honor, which Vassales and Subiects (without any distinction) should render and beare to the Persons of the Sacred Kings of France at all times.

The Decree of this Councill at *Orleans*, is inserted in the seauenth Booke of our Capitularies. *Vt hi qui à Sacerdotibus excommunicantur, à Fidelibus vsque ad reconciliationem, nisi quibus permissum fuerit, semper vitentur.*

Ex Concil. Aurel. sub Clodoueo. i.

Placuit vt his qui à suis excommunicantur Sacerdotibus, nullus Fidelium communicet, nisi quibus permissum fuerit, nec priusquam canonice reconcilietur, ad eos accedat, & si quis id facere tentauerit, simili sententiæ subiaceat.

Si quos autem culpatores Regia potestas mensæ suæ participes effecerit, ab obsequium suum, aut in Gratiam benignitatis acceperit, hos Sacerdotum, & Populorum conuentus suscipere in Ecclesiastica Communione debebit: Vt quos Regia pietas recipit admittat Ecclesia Dei; & inter Regnum atque Sacerdotium vna semper maneat æquanimitas.

This is the testimonie of the learned Bishop of *Chartres*, *Yues de Beauuais*, in his 62. Epistle. *De Geruasio quoque non debet vestra Fraternitas mirari, vel indignari, quod eum ad Communionem in Paschali Curia susceperi. Pro Regia enim Honorificentia huc fui fretus auctoritate Legis. Si quos culpatorum, &c.*

The Lawes of the Capitulares, aduersable to the Commandements of the Church.

The same Bishop saith moreouer. *Si Raptores, & sacrarum rerum violatores iuste à vobis à Communione separatos, sine satisfactione in Communionem recipitis offenditis legem, si in seperatione eorum ab Ecclesia, sicut dignum est, perseueratis, offenditis Regem.* Because the Law of the Capitularies, conformably to the Commandements of the Church, doe ordaine, that Excommunicate persons should be depriued of Communion with the faithfull, to the end that they should procure their speedier absolution. But the same Law doth except such, as are imployed in the Princes seruice. Which was practised in France, vnder the Reigne of the mirrour of all pietie Saint *Lewes*, according to the testimonie of the Lord *de Ioinuille*. Whereunto the Prelates of France supplicated, that the Excommunicate; might be bound and constrained by secular Iudges, to get themselues absolued wholly, at least within a yeare. But answere was made freely to the Bishop of *Auxerre* (who spake for all the Prelates of France) that it might not be permitted, that Princes and Officers should be Excommunicated. Alleadging the example of the Count of Bretaigne, Excommunicated by the Bishop of the place; against whom the King tooke part, and maintained the Act of the Count his Subiect.

The Count of Bretaigne Excommunicated by his Bishop.

Sancta sunt corpora Regum Francorum, to very good purpose so spake Doctor *Rualdus*. And for the Sacred Kings of France onely (because the like is not done for the Kings of England, Spaine, and others of Christendome) the Popes and vniuersall Church haue ordained, that generall Prayers should be made for them, by all the rest of Christendome.

S. *Thomas Aquinas*, in the solution of the last Argument, writeth thus. *That Prayer ought to be made particularly to God for the King of France.* In

In the third Councill of *Arles*, the second Chapter; the second Councill of *Chaalon*, Chapter 66. In that of *Rheimes*, Chapter 4. And in that at *Maguntia*, Chap. 7. it is expressely enioyned, to pray to God for the Kings of France.

Some may alleadge, that all these Councils were French Councils.

Whereunto we make answere, that ouer and beside the said Councils: Popes haue particularly giuen and granted Pardons throughout all Christendome, to men in all places, to pray for the Kings of France.

Pardons granted by Popes.

Innocent the fourth, granted ten dayes of Indulgence, to euery one that prayed for them.

Innocent 4.

Clement the fift, granted an hundred.

Leo the tenth, granted a whole yeare. And

Clement 5. Leo 10.

Clement the sixe gaue power to the Prelates, who should say Masse before them, to grant fortie dayes of Pardon to all such as gaue assistance to the Masse. We should neuer make an end, if we would here number the Titles of Honor and Precedencie, giuen to the Most-Christian Kings of France, by strange Authors, and Nations of the World. So that we will finish this Chapter, with the same Psalme which began it. *Psal. 89. 8. Primogenitum posui Regem Francorum excelsum præ Regibus Terræ.* *Because the King of France is as Excellent aboue the other Kings, as Royall Maiesty is aboue other men.* So saith S. *Gregory* the Great, writing to King *Childebert* of France.

Clement 6.

It remaineth yet (before we fully close vp this Chapter) to make knowne to *Cranato*, and them of his art, that the Precedencie of France, from Spaine hath bin adiudged by consent of the Kings of Spaine. And in this Spanish cause, we will serue our turne with none but Spanish Authours, whose testimonies are irreproachable. Afterward, wee will be tried by Strangers, with examples apparant to the eye, and practised in our time, both in the sight and knowledge of Spaniards themselues.

Precedency of France adiudged by Kings of Spaine.

Hieronimus Surita, in his Annales of Arragon, speaking of Ambassadors of Spain, deputed to goe to the Councill of *Basile*, saith

The sixteenth day of the moneth of September, 1434. were (*on the part of the King of Castile Dom Iouan*, second of the name) nominated for Ambassadours, *Dom Alphonso Carillos, Prothonotarie Apostolicall*; *Aluarez d'Isorna*, Bishop of *Cuenca*, *Iean de Sylues*, *Alfier Maieur de Castille*, and *Alphonso Garcia de S. Maria*, Deane of S. *Iacques*; To whom was giuen in charge, to request and demand of the Councill, to be receiued, and to haue the place of sitting, next to the Ambassadours of the Royall King of France. Goe to Schoole *Cranato*, and to the resolution of the Spanish Councill. The King of *Castile* and *Leon* required the sitting, next to the King of France: Because in the Councill of Constance, held in the yeare of Grace 1414. the Ambassadors to the King of *Arragon*, had preceded them of *Castile*.

At the said Councill of *Constance*, finished in the yeare 416. the sitting for the Kings of Christendome, was in this manner. On the right side, being the most honorable, was Maister *John Gerson*, Chanceller for the Vniuersitie of *Paris*, Ambassador for King *Charles* the sixt.

The order of sitting in the Councill of Constance.

Beneath him, *Dom Raymond Folcho*, Counte of *Cardonna*; Ambassador for the King of *Arragon*, *Dom Alphonso*, fift of the name.

On the left side were seated the Ambassadours for the King of *England*, *Henry*, fift of the name.

Those for the Kings of *Ierusalem* and *Sicilie*, *Iames* of *Bourbon*, and *Iane* his wife.

After whom was seated the Ambassadour for *John* (sir-named the *Bad*) Duke of *Bourgongne*, holding the Standard and Banner of *Bourgongne*: which the Bishop of *Cuenca*, Ambassador for *Castile*, snatched out of his hand, and cast it on the gound. So that next after the Ambassadors of *Ierusalem*, tooke seating those for the King of *Castile*, *Dom Iouan* the second: which were *Dom Diego d'Annaya*, Bishop of *Cuenca*, and *Dom Martinez Hernando de Cordua*; according as it is set downe in the Acts of the said Councill the 22. Session.

The Banner of Bourgongne cast to the ground.

Primo in primo loco sedebat egregius vir Ioannes de Gersono, Cancellarius Ecclesiæ Parisiensis, Ambasiator Francorum Regis.

Et post eum Dominus Raymondus Folchus, Comes Caudonæ, Ambasiator Arragonij Regis. Ad partem sinistram sedebant post Ambasiatores Regis Angliæ.

Oratores Iacobi & Ioannæ Regis & Reginæ Hierusalem, & Sciciliæ.

Quos sequebantur Dominus Didacus de Annaya Concensis Episcopus, & Dominus Martinus Ferdinandus de Corduba Ambasiatores Ioannis Regis Castellæ, & Legionis, loco Ambasiatoris Ioannis Ducis Burgundiæ.

The rank and order obserued in the Councell of Basile.

And as for the Councill of *Basile*, here you may behold the order and ranke, which the Ambassadours from Christian Princes there held; according to the testimonie of Pope *Pius secundus*, formerly named *Æneas Syluius*, Pregnotarie for the said Councill.

Ego nequaquam timebo Nationum ordinem seruare, &c.

1. *Ex Natione Italica recepti sunt Episcopi Guillelmus Vercellensis, Georgius Augustensis, &c.*

2. *Ex Natione Gallica quæ & ipsa secunda est, Cuiusque in Ecclesiam Dei permaxima extant beneficia, nominati sunt ex Archi Pontificali dignitate Ioannes Tarantasiensis, &c.*

3. *Ex Natione Germanica, quæ omnium est amplissima, recepti sunt ex Episcopali præeminentia Fredericus Basilicnsis, &c.*

4. *Ex Natione Hispanica (quæ & ipsa vastissimos habet, ac pernobiles Campo, quam or Christianis Regibus, & uno infidelis regnata) hi sunt ad electionem magni Pastoris accersiti Pontifices octo. &c.*

The beginning & ending of the Councill.

The Councill of *Basile* was begun in the yeare of Grace 1431. and ended in the yeare fortie. The verball Processe of Acts therein, reporteth, that the Archbishop of *Arles*, President of the Councill, tooke the opinion first of the Archbishop of *Lubecke*, chiefe of the Ambassadors from the Emperor *Albert*, second of the name.

In the second place, that of the Archbishop of Tours, chiefe of the Ambassadors from Kings *Charles* the seauenth.

And in the third place, that of the Bishop of *Cuenca*, chiefe of them from the King of *Castile*.

Ex Oratoribus Cæsaris Lubecensis Episcopus & Georgius Miles.

Ex Gallicis Archiepiscopus Turonensis, Trecensis Episcopus, & Collega alij.

Ex Castellanis Concensis Episcopus. &c. Who according to the memory of their construction, hath their sitting after them of France, as themselues had made their demand.

In the last Councill of *Lateran*, held at Rome, in the yeares 1513. 14. and 15. the same ranke was kept for the Precedencie of France, before Spaine, as is reported by the Acts thereof, and the confirmatiue Bull of the said Councill, in the time of Pope *Leo*, tenth of the name, giuen at Rome in the moneth of March 1516. and whereof these are the words.

The Bull of Pope *Leo* the tenth, dated at Rome, Anno 1516.

Charissimus in Christo filio noster Maximilianus in Imperatorem electus, Iulij Papæ secundi Prædecessoris nostri; nostro vero tempore clarissimæ memoriæ Ludouicus Francorum, & ceteri Reges & Principes Christiani, summo cum omnium gaudio Lateranensi Concilio in Spiritu sancto legitimè congregato, adhæserunt.

In this Councill, *Messire Lewes Forbin, Sieur de Sabiers*, Counceller in the Parlement of *Prouence*, Ambassadour for King *Lewes* the twelfth, preceeded *Hieronimo Vecho*, Ambassador for *Ferdinand*, representing the person of his daughter Dame *Ioan*, Queene of *Castile* and *Leon*, &c.

Nec minus continuis Principum Christianorum in Imperatorem electi, & Francisci Christianissimi Francorum, ac Caroli Catholici Hispaniarum, & ceterorum Regum illustrium. &c. Behold this precedencie adiudged in your Citie of Rome (*Cranato*) and yet you put it into compromise; either thorow grosse ignorance, or malice.

This Precedencie is witnessed by Italian Authors, first of all by *Thomas Thomapegius*, Bishoppe of *Feltro, in la Marche Treuisana*, Patriarch of *Aquilea*. But what will you say, *Cranato*, if by vniuersall consent of the Princes of Christendome, the King of France is the first of Christian Kings, before whom hee hath seating, yea, euen before the King of the Romaines? And at the Councill of *Trent*, where this Author was present, in the Session held the twentie nine day of January

January, 1546. the Letters which were sent to the King of France, were read before those sent to the King of the Romanes?

Omnium consensu receptum est, Christianissimum Regem primum esse inter Reges: & primum ei deberi locum post Imperatorem. Et ideo si Romanorum Regi data sit solum Imperio successio, apertissimum est Regem Christianissimum prius nominandum, eiusque Oratores præferendos Oratoribus Regis Romanorum. Et ita in Concilio Tridentino, dum ille essem, die vicesima nona Ianuarij, Anno Millesimo Quingentesimo Quadragesimo Sexto, prius recitatæ fuerunt literæ sacri Concilij mittendæ Christianissimo Regi, quam aliæ ad Romanorum Regem.

The words alleadged concerning the Letters.

And from hence he concludeth, that if the King of the Romanes, who precedeth all other Kings of Christendome, be fore-gon by the King of France: to small purpose then would he of Spaine precede or goe before him of France. But so many times as he laboured to doe it, as often was he defeated in his pretences, as well at Rome, as in Poland and Venice.

The King of France precedeth the King of the Romãs.

At Venice, in *Anno* 1558. *Francesco de Vargas*, Ambassador in Venice for the King of Spaine, *Dom Philip* the 11. pretended, that he ought to precede *Messire Frances de Noailles*, Ambassador for King *Henry* the second. The Senate of Venice maintained the Ambassador from France in his Precedency, and excluded him of Spaine. The King whereof had no occasion at all to be discontented, or to complaine; in regard that their Kings his predecessors in the Generall Councell before named, had demanded their sedence, after the Kings of France.

A contention at *Venice* for Precedency.

This is affirmed by *Menochius* the Ciuill Lawyer, Counceller to the said King of Spaine *Don Philip* the second, in his Councell of Estate at Millaine. *Serenissimum Dominum Venetorum aliquando declarauit obseruandam fuisse consuetudinem præeminentiæ sedendi, & ambulandi inter Regis Christianissimi, & Regis Catholici Legatos; Quo sanè prudentissimo iudicio factum est, vt Rex Hispaniæ conqueri non potuerit, cum id placuerit Dominio Serenissimo, quod olim Hispaniæ Regibus placuit.*

Pedro Iustiniano, a Venetian Gentleman (descended of the ancient house of the *Iustiniani*, Lords and Princes of the Isle of *Chio*, vsurped by the Turke: (this famous house, which hath a Cardinall of the name, an honest Frenchman) beareth *De Gueulles au Chasteau D'Or, au Chef de l'Empire d'Alemagne, c'est a dire d'Or a teste de l'Aigle esploye de Sable*, writeth thus. *Venetæ in vrbe controuersia inter Henrici Galliæ, & Philippi Hispaniæ Regum Oratores obort est. Vterque enim primum, & honoratiorem locum publicè apud Principem Senatumque sibi exhibere postulabat. Diu id Patres decernere recusarunt. Nihil que antiquâ priorique consuetudine, & quod omnium memoria semper obseruatum fuerat à Senatu immutatum est. Censuit tamen Senatus vt Gallus Orator Hispanum apud Principem publice præcederet.* And,

Armes of the *Iustiniani*.

Natalis à Comitibus, saith: *Franciscus Vargas Hispanus legatione apud Venetos tunc fungebatur, per quod tempus primum nata est controuersia de superiore loco inter Hispanum, Gallumque Reges.*

The same Author further saith: *Gusmanus Sylua Philippi Regis Orator, Venetios consesserat Ordinarius Orator futurus apud eum Senatum. Huius aduentu iniecta est opinio certa societatis belli constituendæ, quoniam multos iam annos, ob illam controuersiam de præcedentia cum Rege Gallorum, nullus Orator Hispanus fuerat ordinarius Venetijs.*

In Poland, in *Anno* 1573. the most part of the Christian Princes sent their Ambassadors thither, for preceding in the election of a new King, after the death of *Sigismond*.

Contention for Precedencie in Poland, in An 1573.

King *Charles* the ninth sent thither as his Ambassadour, *Messire Iean de Monluc*, Bishop of Valence, to make election for King, his Brother *Monsieur Alexander Hemrie* of *France*, Duke of *Aniou*, as accordingly he was.

Philip the second, King of Spaine, had there for his Ambassador, *Dom Pedro Fachardo*, Marquesse of *Velez*, who demanded the Precedency for the King his Master, against him for France, as well in the Church, as in publique; and to this end he was heard the first after the Ambassadors from the Pope, the Emperour, and after him for France.

Precedency requested for the K. of Spain against France.

The States and Lords of Poland, being assembled at *Varsouia*, adiudged the Precedency to the K. of France. So that after the Ambassadour from Pope *Gregory* the

13.

13. and from the Emperor *Maximilian*, the second were heard (for the Pope; the Cardinall *Commendon*, and for the Emperour *Dom Guillame des Vrsins*, Lord of *Salzemberge*) he from *France* was heard, and then he for Spaine, to whom orders (in ranke) was giuen to speake after him. But he, offended at this foyle, and in so notable an assembly; forsaking his Embassie, returned home from *Poland* with exceeping shame.

Contention for Precedencie at Rome, in An. 1564.

At *Rome*, which is the great Theater of the World, in *Anno* 1564. was Ambassador from King *Charles* the ninth, *Mesire Henry Clutin*, Lord of *Oisell*. At the same time was Ambassador from the King of Spaine *Philip* the second, *Dom Louis de Zunyga de Requesens*, great Commander of the Order of S. *Iames* of the sword in *Castille*, who laboured all he could possibly deuise with Pope *Pius Quartus*, to haue the Precedencie before him of *France*, or (at the least) to walke equall with him (for the Ambassador of France equalleth in Honours him from the Emperor,) and that at one and the same time, Incense might be giuen to him, and the *Pax* to kisse, as was done to the Ambassadors from France, and the Emperour. The Pope considered a long while, and ballanced this businesse in his braine; but in the end, he maintained the King in his Precedency, and in his Chappell vpon the day of Pentecost.

The Precedency granted by the Pope to the King of France.

The learned *Onuphrius Panuinius*, and the *Spaniard Morales*, in the life of the said Pope *Pius Quartus*. *Non longe post controuersiam de honoratiori in publicis concessibus loco inter Oratores Galliæ, & Hispanum, diu ante Francisci Vargæ opera Venetijs excitatam, alata renouata est. Pontifex post multas longasque tergiuersationes Summum Gallo Locum assignauit, cum concordiæ forma multum consuluisset, nec vllam reperisset. Hispanus enim superiorem concessum Gallo negabat, & Gallus Hispanum æqualem recusabat: de eam rem Ludouicus Requesens magnus Castellæ Commendator Hispanus Orator irritatus, post publicam contestationem Regis sui nomine, Roma abijt.*

Pedro Iustiniano saith againe. *Pontifex circa ius Precedentiæ inter Gallorum, & Hispanorum Regum Oratores priorem locum Gallo, vti semper obseruatum fuerat attribuit. Ex quo Philippus Rex valde indignatus, Oratorem suum è Romana Curia statim reuocauit.*

Cauallus, in his Annales of *Cremona*, vnder the yeere 1564. saith. *Orta controuersia inter Legatos Hispaniæ, & Galliæ Regum Romæ penes Summum Pontificem, cum alter alterum præcedere vellet in Pompis, & alijs, quibus contingeret ibi adesse. Summus Pontifex declarauit debere præcedere Legatum Regis Galliæ, sub fundamento, vt creditur, quod prædecessores Regis Galliæ statum Romanæ Ecclesiæ ac Religionis Christianæ valde auxerint* (goe to schoole to this man of Cremona, *Cranato*) *& pro conseruando & ampliando multa Bella obierint, & præclara facinora egerint aduersus Infideles & alios qui ipsum opprimere voluerint. Et Galliæ Regnum sit antiquius Regno Hispaniæ: Et Galli prius Hispanis fidem Christi receperint*: and thereto he might well haue added this Clause, *Et à Gallis Hispani Christianæ Fidei notitiam acceperint.*

These are (*Cranato*) those considerations which the Popes haue had, not to adiudge; but to conserue the Monarchs of the Lillies, in the Precedency which they had (from all times) ouer all the Kings and Princes of Christendome.

Precedency kept for the kings of France at Rome.

A Precedency kept for the Sacred Kings of France euen at Rome, in the eye of all Nations of the World; and in an Act the most solemne that had beene seene performed in fauour, pursuit, and at the charge of the King of Spaine, *Dom Philip* the second.

In the yeere 1588. Pope *Sixtus Quintus* then sitting at Rome (where the King of Spaine *Dom Philip* the second, had then the whole power; and where was the Fort and Dongeon of the bloody League, for rendring the French (as a prey) for the enemies pillage) Spaine caused a Religious Grey Frier, called in Latine *Didacus*, and in Spanish *Diego D'Alcala*, to be Canonized, for the gift of Myracles which God had wrought by his prayers, and daily did, both during his life-time, and after his death. Namely, for the health of the Infant of Spaine *Dom Charles*, according as it is more at large set downe and contained, in the Acts of his Canonization.

The Canonizing of *Diego D'Alcala*, a holy Grey Frier.

Dom Henry de Guſman, Count d'Oliuares, Ambassador of Spaine, with Cardinalls and

and others of the Spanish Nation, pursuing this act, wholly Spanish; performed what possibly they could, in an action so fauourable for them, now or neuer, to haue Precedency, and Prime place of Honour, before the Ambassador of France, *Messire Iean de Vinme*, Marquesse of *Pisany*, whom the Spaniards (in a brauery) wished to bee a Spectator of this Act, as to draw him a Iudge for Precedency, before France.

The Marquesse, who well enough knew these Spanish practises, and what they did at Rome against King *Henry*, third of that name of blessed memory, and his Master; stood stiffely to preserue the Precedency and Honor, atchieued by the Sacred Kings of France, with expence of their bloud, for the state and maintenance of the Romane Church; and not to giue way to him for Spaine, by any of his supplications, which were, to giue no assistance in this Act and Solemnitie, altogether Spanish, or at this time, to yeeld or grant him any place.

The stout resolution of the Ambassador for France.

To compound this difference of so great importance, the Pope *Sixtus Quintus*, made a Congregation of foure Cardinalls, by whom this act was balotted, for diuers ouertures and waies of amity. *Francis, Cardinall de Ioyeuse* (who died a while after, Deane of the Cardinals) propounded one, which was. That the Ambassador for the King should absent himself, from the solemnity of Canonizing the Frier *Diego D'Alcala de Henarez*; on condition, that at the first Assembly that should be made in Rome, the Ambassador of Spaine should (as hee ought) take his place beneath him for the King of France. This offer, more then reasonable, was refused by the Spaniards, and they iudged vncapable of this French courtesie by the Cardinalls of this congregation. So that that the Count *Oliuarez* forsooke and left the place, free and wholly to the Marquesse *de Pisany S. Gouast*, who was present at all this Ceremony, according to the testimony of

The Pope taketh order to compound the difference.

The 4. Cardinalls gaue voyce for France.

Cicarella, in the life of Pope *Sixtus Quintus*, *Anno Dom.* 1588. *Occasione Canonizationis Didaci ab Alcala, orta est inter Legatum Regis Hispaniarum, & Legatum Regis Galliæ magna contentio dicente Hispano in hoc actu Canonizationis sancti Didaci Hispani sibi deberi primum locum, cum is potissimum ad Regnum Hispaniæ pertineret: præterea sibi principales quasdam operationes in hoc actu incumbere.*

Respondit Legatus Francie, peractis ijs quæ faciendæ Hispano erant, aut Sacello exiret, aut locum inferiorem occuparet.

Hispanus iterum, vt saltem Francus ille hac vice, Idque ex Gratia (of grace and French courtesie) *primum locum concederet petijt.*

Cui Francus, se quidem hunc locum illi concessurum, hac lege, ne quid derogaret iuri præcedendi, quod Galli habebant, & quod absq; præiudicio, primo quod habiturus esset Pontifex Sacello, Legatus Hispanicus (qui se inferiorem Francico semper ostendens, huc nunquam accedere solet) præsens adesset, locumque inferiorem suo occuparet.

Respondet Hispanus, se nullo modo id facturum: hoc enim facto fateretur se illi cedere.

Dum sic inter se contendunt, subrepit paulatim ira, incaluit sanguis, adeò vt ad arma propemodum, & ad maximum tumultum ventum fuisset, nisi aliorum auctoritas interposita esset.

Tandem negotium hoc modo compositum est. Legatus Hispanicus ad Sacellum non veniret, sed Cardinalis Deca eius munere fungeretur, eaque faceret, quæ feciſſet Legatus. Gallicus vero Legatus consuetum locum retineret. His peractis, Canonisatio cum summa quiete, & modestia peracta est.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of such Ceremonies and Orders as haue beene, and yet are still kept and obserued, at the Sacring and Crowning of the Kings Most-Christian.

A comparison of the Parisian Kings of Fráce with other Kings.

AS there haue beene none but the Parisian Kings of France, which beare Armes of *Azure* with *three Floures de Luces* of *Gold*; and others, onely Colours and Mettalls, varied and diuersified as formerly we haue said: so in the same manner, there haue beene none but the said Parisian Kings of France, that were Sacred and Crowned at *Rheimes* with Celestiall Balme, kept in the *Holy Viole or Bottell*. The Kings of Bourgongne France, were ordinarily Sacred and Crowned at *Sancta Crux* of *Orleans*; those of *Austrasia* at Mentz; & those of *Soissons* at another place, with holy Oyles Sacred by Bishops; and not with that of *the Holy Bottle*.

Consideration of the 3 Lignes changes.

Now it is to bee noted in our passing ouer the Kings, represented on the great Frontespice of the Church at Paris, which are XXVIII, in number: there is a knowledge necessarily required, concerning the changes of the three Lignes, and of them that were Sacred and Crowned at Rhemes or elsewhere.

Clouis the first Christian King.

Clouis the first Christian King, is in the number of those XXVIII. Kings. His picture is to be seene without the Church on the North side, which answereth to the Cloyster, betweene S. *Iean le Rond*, and the North gate of the Church; where also are obseruable the pictures of King *Philip le Bel*, and of Madam *Iane* of *Nauarre*, his Wife, vnder whose Reigne the Portall was finished.

Childebert first of the name.

The first King on the Frontespice is *Childebert*, first of the name, King of Paris, Restorer and Endower of the said great Church; as wee learne by the Bishop of Poictiers, *Fortunatus*.

Si Salomoniaci memoretur machina templi
Arte licet par sit, pulchrior ista fide.

And more lower.

Hæc pius egregio Rex Childebertus amore
Dona sua Populo non moritura dedit.

21. Kings of the Ligne of *Clouis*, and all Kings of Paris

All the thirteene which follow, are of the Ligne of *Clouis*, as namely; *Clothaire* the first, *Charibert*, *Chilpericke*; *Clothaire* the second; *Dagobert*, first of the name, Restorer and Endower of S. *Denys* in France; *Clouis*, second of the name; *Clothaire* the third, *Childericke* the second; *Theodoricke* or *Thierry*; *Clouis* the third; *Childebert* the third, called the *Iust*; *Dagobert* the second, and *Clothaire* the fourth, all Kings of Paris, and Sacred in the City of *Rheimes*. The other Parisian Kings are not there represented; because they were but Maskes and shadowes of Kings, deiected, exalted and suppressed, when it so pleased the Maires of the Pallace, who (vnder them) gouerned France by absolute power.

Of such as were Kings of France, and Emperours.

On this Frontespice, such as beside Scepters, hold Apples or Balles in their hands, are they that were Kings of all France intirely, vnder the first Ligne; and likewise others, that haue beene Emperours, or renowned for valiancie: Like as those Kings that were negligent, idle, and cowards, are presented with their Armes hanging downewards.

The second Line of Kings, beginning with *Pepin le Bref*.

The second Ligne began at King *Pepin le Bref*, tearmed the Dwarfe for his little Stature, yet armed with inuincible courage, and that is the reason why he is figured mounted on a Lyon. He, his Wife and Sonnes were Sacred at S. *Denis* in France, by Pope *Stephen*, who came to implore his ayd and assistance against the Lombards Kings.

The said *Pepin* is followed by sixe Kings of France of his Ligne, as namely *Charlemaigne*,

Charlemaigne, first Emperor of the West, Sacred in the Church of Noyon; *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*, King and Emperor, Sacred in the Church of Rhemes, by Pope *Stephen*; *Charles* the *Bald*, King and Emperour, Sacred at Orleans by the Traytor *Ganelon* Archbishop of Sens; followed by *Lewis the Stammerer*, second of the name, King and Emperour; *Charles the Simple*; and *Lewis* of beyond the Seas. The other are not presented there, for the reasons formerly alleaged, in speaking of the last Kings of the first Ligne.

The third line beginning with *Hugh Capet*.

The two and twentieth King was *Hugh Capet*, Author of the third Ligne, reigning happily at this present; exalted to the Royaltie for his vertues, by vniuersall consent of the generall States of the Kingdome, assembled at Noyon; but hee was sacred at Rhemes, and his Sonne and Successor, *Robert the Deuout*; in the Citie of *Orleans*.

After *Robert* followed immediately, and by Order, these Kings; *Henry*, first of the name; *Philip*, first of the name; *Lewis le Gros*, sixt of the name; *Lewis* the seuenth, tearmed the yonger (to distinguish him from his father) sirnamed *the Pittifull*; and the eight and twentieth, King *Philip*, second of the name, called *Gods-gift*, the Conqueror *Augustus*, that is to say, Emperour: vnder whose reigne, and the Pontificacie of Bishop *Maurice*, the goodly Church was finished, as now at this day it is to be seene.

Lewis le Gros Sacred in the City of Orleans.

Now, in regard that *Lewis le Gros*, sixt of the name, immediately after the death of his Father, *Philip* the first, had beene Sacred in the City of Orleans, by *Daimbert*, Archbishop of Sens, assisted by his Suffragans, to witet, *Yues* Bishop of Chartres, *Iohn* of Orleans, *Giles* of Paris, *Manasses* of Meaux, *Hugh* of Neuers, and *Ymbert* or *Harold* of Auxerre: The Church and Archbishop of Rheimes complained of the Deed against the Archbishop of Sens, and his Suffragans, as of a manifest attempt on their ancient Priuiledge and possession, held time out of minde, euer since great *Clouis*, for Consecrating the Kings of France: whereupon, the Archbishop of Sens was sued in the Court of Parlement.

Yues, the learned Bishop of Chartres, made answer to this complaint, as appeareth by his Epistle, beginning *Nouerint Sancta Romana Ecclesia*, speaking in the name of his Comprouincialls, that this Act had not, neither was done by any enterprise in the Church of Rhemes: but onely to auoyd perills and dangers ensuing by long delay, after the decease of King *Philip* the first; in which respect it was thought expedient to Sacre *Lewis le Gros* in the City of Orleans. *Erant enim quidam Regni perturbatores, qui ad hæc omni studio vigilabant, vt aut Regnum ad aliam personam transferretur, aut non mediocriter minueretur.*

The time of *Interregnums* very dangerous.

Moreouer, he alleadged for example, the Sacring of the Kings, descendants of *Clouis*, who were Sacred in Principall Cities of their Kingdome and Partage, as already we haue said. *Isti quippe Regis nullam à Remensi Archiepiscopo Benedictionem, vel coronam acceperunt, sed à Sacerdotibus Prouinciarum quæ regebant sublimati sunt, & sacrati.* And afterward, examples of the Kings of the second Line, and third, Sacred elsewhere, and not at Rheimes. *Ex quibus exemplis manifestum erat, quòd Francorum Reges non omnes in Remensi Ecclesiâ, vel à Remensibus Archiepiscopis fuerant consecrati, sed multi in multis aliis locis, & a multis aliis personis consecrati fuerant.*

Kings Sacred in diuers cities of their kingdomes, & not all of them at Rheimes.

In the last place, that it was impossible, to haue Sacred King *Lewis le Gros* in the City of Rheimes, for reasons vtterly vnanswerable.

Reasons not way to be answered.

First, that the City of Rheimes was excommunicated, in regard of partialities and factions moued & raised therein, about the election of two Archbishops, chosen both at one time; to wit, *Geruase* and *Raoull*, or *Rhadolph*, by the partakers of whom, *Miserabilis, & mirabilis erat Remensis Ecclesiæ status; Geruase* renting all peace in peeces, by labouring to hinder the election Canonicall of *Rodolph*. *Possibilis non erat, quia consecratio Regis Remis ab Archiepiscopo Ecclesia nondum inthronisato, sine summa perturbatione, & sanguinis effusione celebrari non poterat.*

1. Reason.

The second was taken from the place and time.

2. Reason.

Of the Place. *De Loco non conueniebat, quia Ciuitas sub anathemate posita erat.*

Of the time. Because there was not any meanes for maintaining the State; by deferring and tardying the Sacring and Coronation. *Tempori oppartuna non erat; quia*

quia si consecratio Regis differretur, Regni Status, & Ecclesiæ Pax grauiter perclitaretur, and this reason of State was most pregnant.

Now, notwithstanding the defences of *Duo Carnotensis*, by interuention of the Peeres of France, who likewise complained, that they were not called to the Sacring and Coronation of *Lewis le Gros*: the number of Peeres were ruled by King *Lewis* the yonger, to the number of twelue, by Decree of the generall Parliament, held in the great hall of the Bishops Pallace at Paris, at the Feast of Pentecost, *Anno* 1179. And by the same Order, the Prerogatiue of Sacring our Kings, which was in compromise, betweene the Archbishop of Sens, and his Suffragane Bishops, defendants against the Church and Archbishop of Rheimes, maintainers of the complaint; was adiudged to *William de Champaigne*, tearmed with the *white hands*, Cardinall by the title of S. *Sabine*, Archbishop of Rheimes, where the Sacring of our Kings was concluded on for euer after. And since the Sacring of King *Philip Augustus*, truely *Augustus* and Conquerour, performed at Rheimes on All Saints day, in the said yeere 1179. all our Kings his Successors, haue beene there Sacred.

An Order determin'd by the Court of Parliament.

Philip Augustus the Conqueror.

The late King *Henry the Great* (of glorious memory) excepted, who, by rebellion of the City of *Rheimes* (a thousand times more accursed at that instant time, then it was in the daies of *Lewes le Gros*, for fauouring an Vsurper against his lawfull Archbishop) had his Sacring & Coronation performed in the Church of Chartres.

Our Most Christian Kings are Sacred and annointed with holy Balme, in seuen parts and places of their body.

Of Sacring & Annointing the Most-Christian Kings.

First, on the crowne of the head.
Secondly, on the brest.
Thirdly, between both their shoulders.
Fourthly, on the right shoulder.
Fiftly, on the left shoulder.
Sixtly, in the bending of the right arme.
And lastly, so on the left arme.

Queenes of France are ordinarily Sacred and Crowned at S. *Denys* in France, with other oyle then that of the *Holy Bottle*: and on two places onely,

Sacring and Crowning of Queenes.

On the Head, and
On the Breast, but not elsewhere.

It is very likely, that *Clouis*, hauing bestowed such great benefits on S. *Remigius*, the said Bishop (no doubt) gaue part of them in the Inuestiture of Noblemen, to hold them in Fiefe of the said Abbey. And like as thorow all the Bishoprickes of France, there are foure Noble Fiefes, erected in the Title of Baronies, for which the Lords owe seruice to the Bishops: so in the same manner, this rich and ancient Arch-Monastery, honoured with keeping the *Holy Bottle*, hath (at all times) had the foure Barons and Knights of the said *Holy Bottle*.

Some Light hereof may be discerned, in many passages of the Ecclesiasticall History of *Rheimes*, written by *Floardus*: which yet may much more clearely be seene by the Acts and Sacring and Crowning of our *Most-Christian* King, and Noble *Augustus Lewis*, thirteenth of that name, now happily reigning, performed in the Church of *Rheimes*, on Sonday the 17. day of October, and in the yeere 1610. whereof I purpose to speake somewhat.

A briefe discourse of the Coronation of King *Lewis* the 13. now reigning.

The Royall Ornaments being newly made, answerable to the age and stature of the King (he being then but nine yeeres olde) were prepared and brought vnto the City of *Rheimes*: and his Maiesty, accompanied with the Queene Regent his mother, made his entrance into the City of *Rheimes*, the 14. day of October, in the said yeare of 1610.

The preparations for the Sacring were prouided in the great Church of our Lady (the same which we haue described for King *Henry the Great*, in the first booke of the History of *Nauarre*, vnder the yeere 1594. in the Moneth of February) his Maiesty on Saturday the 16. day, went to the Euening prayers: after which, he receiued the Sacrament of Confirmation, by the hand of *Francois, Cardinall de Joyeuse*, presented to his Maiesty by Q. *Margaret*, and *Monsieur* the Prince of Conde. Which

Which being done, the King offred to the Church of our Lady, his gift or present. Which was a head of S. *Lewes*, carried by two Angels, all made of Siluer, doubly guilded, weighing threescore and foure Markes. At the bottome whereof was enchased a bone of one of his armes, couered with Rockie Christall.

The Kings Offering to the Church of our Lady.

The Bases of the Shrine was supported by Cherubins, made forward Ouall-wise, and halfe circkled, whereon was the Image of the King, adorned in his Royall habits kneeling, his hands closed, and vp-heaued, and before him (on a Pillow) lay two Scepters, and two Crownes. About the Bases were to be read these words.

Ludouicus Decimus tertius Filius Henrici Magni Galliarum, & Nauarræ Regis Christianissimi, Parentis Imperio, eiusdem virtutibus succedens, hoc Toreuma ossis Diui Ludouici Regis eius initij prosapiæ Monimentum Posteritati dedit Mense Octobri, Anno Domini Millesimo Sexcentesimo Decimo, in aduentu Regni, sede dicante, Deo dedicauit.

At the said Sacring, performed on Sunday the seauenteenth of October, the said Lord Cardinall *de Joyeuse*, represented the Archbishop and Duke of *Rheimes*, Deane of the Peeres; the other Ecclesiasticall Peeres were all there personally present, to wit; *Geoffrey de Billy*, Bishop and Duke of *Laon*; *Charles Des-Cars*, Bishop and Duke of *Langres*; *René Potier*, Bishop and Count of *Beauuais*; *Cosimo Clausso*, Bishop and Count of *Chalons*; and *Charles de Balsac*, Bishop and Count of *Noyon*.

The Ecclesiasticall Peeres present at the Sacring.

The ancient Lay Peeres, Dukes of *Bourgongne*, *Normandie* & *Guienne*, and Counts of *Tolosa*, *Flanders* & *Champaigne*, were represented; the Dukes with my Lords, Princes of the Blood, *De Conde*, *de Conte* and *de Soissons*: And the Counts, by the Dukes of *Neuers*, *d'Elboeuf*, and *d'Espernon*. My Lord the Constable was presented by the Marshall *De la Chastre*; my Lord the Chancellor was there in person. The Marshall *de Lauardin* presented the Great Maister, the Duke *d'Eguillon*, Great Chamberlaine; and the Marquesse *de Versoy Roger de Belle-Garde*, Maister of the Horse, and the prime Gentleman of the Chamber was there in person. The foure Barons, for fetching the *Holy-Bottle*, were the Marquesse *de Sable*, *Beauuais-Nangis* the Sonne, the Viscount *de Rabat*, and the fourth was the Baron *de Biron*.

Chesne Pouilleux, a Village in *Rhetelois*, appertaining to the Abbey of S. *Rhemigius*, at all times yeelded ten or twelue of the Inhabitants, for attending on the said *Holy-Bottle*, carried by the great Priour of the said Abbey. Instead of twelue, all the Rusticks of the said Village, haue taken libertie of themselues, to be present at the Sacring of our Kings, and comming to Rheimes, (so many of them as are able to beare Armes) they march thither, with beating the Drumme, and Ensigne displaied, wearing their best garments, and euery one an Oaken Leafe in his Hat. For three dayes space they are there feasted at *Rheimes*, and haue (more-ouer) as a booty, the white Hacquency which the King giueth, for bearing the said *Holy-Bottle*. These saucie companions would make it to be credited, that these priuiledges are granted them, because in the time of *Charles* the seauenth, they wonne gaine the *Holy-Bottle*; which the *Bourgongnons* had carried away from S. *Rhemigius*: which is altogether fabulous, and no truth in it.

Attendants on the Holy-Bottle.

The Bishops of *Laon* and of *Beauuais* being sent to fetch the King, demanded for him at his Chamber doore, saying: *Lewes the thirteenth, Sonne of Henry the Great*, which is remarkeable, for remembrance of the dead, and may serue as a Spurre to the Sonne, for imitation of his Fathers valour. At Masse, the Cardinall *de Joyeuse* being the Officiant, was assisted by the Bishops of *Aes* and of *Valence*. The Bishop of *Rieux* sung the Epistle, and the Bishop of *Boulongne* the Gospell. The Cardinall *de Gondy* brought the kisse to the King, first the *Pax*, and afterward the *Agnus Dei*. The Offerings were carried on Cushion-cloathes of tawnie Damaske, frinced with Gold. The Lord of *Montigny* carried the Wine; *De Ragny* the Bread of Siluer; *Beauuais-Nangis* that of Gold; *De Rambouillet* the Purse, wherein were thirteene Pieces of Gold, each of them valuing thirteene Crownes. The King received the Communion vnder both the kindes, with deuotion and humilitie, admired in such yong yeares.

The Bishops that are sent for the King.

The manner of carrying the Offering.

Guests, and order of the ſitting at the Royall Feaſt, with other obſeruations.

At the royall Feaſt, next to the Table of the King, and the Peeres Eccleſiaſticks and Layicks; was that of the Officers of the Crowne, whereat were ſeated my Lord the *Nuntio*; the Ambaſſadours of *Venice* and *Florence*, my Lord the Chancelier, and thoſe which carried the honors of the Offerings, with Lords and Knights of noate. *Roquemont Viole*, Maiſter of the houſhold, tooke the Table-Napkin, and preſented it to the Marſhall *de Lauardin*, from whoſe hand his Maieſtie receiued it. *Roquemont*, as the moſt auncient Maiſter of the Houſhold, had the honor that day, to Vſher and goe before the Dinner ſeruice. The Duke of *Rouannois* carried the firſt Diſh, ſeruing as Great Pantler of France: the Lord of *Crequy* waited as Cup-bearer and Taſter; and the Lord of *Rhodes*, Great Maiſter of the Ceremonies, and Caruer.

The King receiued the Order of the Holy-Ghoſt, and in what manner.

On Monday, being S. *Lukes* day, the 18. of October, the King receiued the Order of the Holy-Ghoſt, by the hand of the Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe*. He was conducted to the Altar by my Lords the Princes of *Conty*, and of *Soiſſons*, preceded by the Officers of the Order; tooke the Oath of Great Maiſter, and ſigned it; *Chaſteau-Neuf*, Chancellor of the ſaid Order, holding the Euangelicall Booke. Which being done, *De Rhodes*, Great Maiſter of the Ceremonies, and Prouoſt of two Orders for the King; cloathed his Maieſtie with the Great Mantle or Cloake of the Order, and Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe* put about his necke the Coller of the Order, *In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Holy-Ghoſt*, making the ſigne of the Croſſe. Which ſerueth to ſhew, that Kings are not borne Knights, and that receiuing the Order of Knighthood, is an act ſolemne, hauing perticuler Ceremonies thereto as perticularly belonging.

Kings are not Knights by their birth, but by creation.

Other Ceremonies belonging to the Order of the Holy-Ghoſt.

After the Great Mantle of the Order was thus put vpon the King, the Cardinall tooke from the hand of Viſcount *de Viſieux*, Great Treaſurer of the Order, the Blew Riband, and a paire of Beades, which his Maieſtie receiued. This done, and the Act of Ceremonie Regiſtred downe by *Aubeſpine Verderone*, Pregnotare of the Order, and Preſident of the Chamber of Accounts at Paris, the King remaining ſtill by the high Altar: the Dukes of *Eſpernon*, and *de Monbaſon*, preceded by the Lord of *Rhodes*, the Herald and Vſher of the Order; conducted my Lord the Prince of *Conde*, chiefe Prince of the Blood, before his Maieſtie, of whom he onely receiued the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*: to declare, that no perſon in the world can walke as Peere, with Princes of the Noble Floures de Luce.

On the morrow, the King and the Queene his Mother, went walking to the Caſtell of Baron *du Tour*, who preſented them with a Collation, and thence their Maieſties returned to *Rheimes*; from whence they departed on Wedneſday the 27. to performe their Prayers at S. *Marcoull*, a Priorie, where the King touched the diſeaſed with the *Kings-Euill*, which were a great number; Father *Cotton* receiuing them ſtill from the King, who returned to *Paris* on Saturday, being the thirtieth of October, the Eeuen of All-Saints, and on the morrow went to heare Maſſe in the Church of *Paris*.

The King cured the diſeaſed of the Euill.

Thirteen pieces of Gold the Kings Offering.

The thirteene Pieces of Gold, preſented by the King at the Offering, and thoſe of Gold and Siluer, which were throwne to the People by the Heralds, crying *Largeſſe*, after the wonted manner; had on the one ſide, the Image of the King Crowned, and for the Legend, *Ludouicus XIII. Dei Gratia Francorum & Nauarre Rex Chriſtianiſſimus*. And on the other ſide a Cloude, from whence iſſued a hand with long fingers, A *Fuzelles*, holding a Bottle, vnder which was the repreſentation of a Cittie, as that of *Rheimes*, with a date of time, to wit, the XVII. of October 1610. and for the Legend, *Francis data munera Cœli*: the deuiſe true, but the repreſentation falſe, and which (in it ſelfe) argueth the Author guiltie of groſe ignorance.

Of bringing the Holy Bottle to S. *Rhemigius*.

At the Sacring of our firſt Chriſtian King, the great *Clouis*, it was not an Angell in humaine forme, which brought (from Heauen) the *Holy-Bottle* to S. *Rhemigius* the Biſhop of *Rheimes*. *Floardus*, whoſe teſtimonie is without reproofe, authorized for more then eight hundred yeares; ſupplieth the defect, which ſome bad reformers haue enuiouſly impoſed on Saint *Gregory* of *Tours*, our auncient Annaliſt; whotelleth vs in his Hiſtorie of the Church of *Rheimes*: That on Saturday in

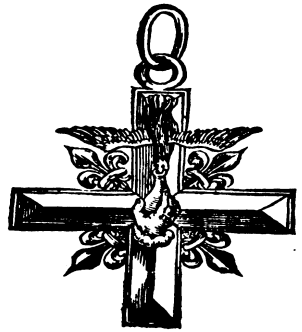
Easter weeke, in the yeare of our Saluation fiue hundred, on which day *Clouis* was regenerated by the Sacrament of Baptiſme, and by the ſame Saint *Rhemigius*, with three thouſand French. *Clericus Chriſma ferens à Populo interceptus, ad Fontem pertingere penitus eſt impeditus. Sanctificato denique Fonte, nutu diuino Chriſma deſuit. Sanctus autem Pontifex Rhemigius, oculis ad Cœlum porrectis tacite traditur orâſſe cum lachrymis. Et ecce ſubito Columba ceu Nix oduolat candida roſtro deferens Ampullam, Cœleſtis doni Chriſmate repletam, cuius odoris mirabili reſperſi Nectare, inæſtimabili qui aderant, ſuper omnia quibus ante à delectati fuerant replentur ſuauitate. Acceptus itaque ſanctus Præſul Ampulla, poſtquam Chriſmate frontem conſperſit, ſpecies mox Columbæ diſparuit.*

Confimation of the paſſage recorded by *Floardus*.

The great Seale of the Arch-Monaſterie of S. *Rhemigius* of *Rheimes*, confirmeth this paſſage of *Floardus*, the Biſhop is thereon figured, cloathed in his pontificall habits, aſſiſted by his Cleargie, preceded with a Croſſe, and two Candleſtickes carried by two Children Quireſters: *Clouis* on his knees before the Font of Baptiſme, attending for the Sacred Vnction, a Pigeon, white as Snowe, appearing on high, bringing in her beake the *Holy-Bottle*, which S. *Rhemigius* receiueth with his right hand.

The Inſtitution of this Order of Knighthood & manner of wearing the ſame.

The marke or ſtampe of this Seale, is preſented in the midſt of a Croſſe, which is carried by the foure Barons and Knights of the Order, of the ſaid *Holy-Bottle* of S. *Rhemigius* of *Rheimes*, inſtituted (as they ſtay) by the ſame King *Clouis*. About the necke is worne a Riband of Blacke Silke, whereto is faſtened beneath a Croſſe of Gold, cut and cornered, enamelled with white, charged with a Doue, holding in her bill the *Holy-Bottle*, receiued by a hand. And ſo ought the pieces of Gold and Siluer, at the Sacring of our Kings to be ſtamped; and on the other ſide the Image of S. *Rhemigius* of *Rheimes*. Behold here the figure of the Croſſe, which they weare about their necks.



The Mantles or Cloakes belonging to the Order.

On their Mantles or Cloakes, they weare a Croſſe angled and ſquared, made of white Sattin, or Cloth of Siluer; in the midſt, a round, containing the Seale aboue figured, the round Cantonned with foure Floures de Luces of Gold, the whole conſiſting of imbroderie. And becauſe this memory hath not bin noated by any other, before vs: I hold it conuenient, that the iuſtifiable acts of this Order, their Hommage to the Church of S. *Rhemigius*, and the Ceremonie at the Sacring of our Monarches, were not amiſſe to be inſerted in this place, according to their Originals, taken from the Records and Roules of S. *Rhemigius* of Rheimes, whereof here followeth the Tenour in the Countrey tearmes.

The receiuing of Faith and Hommage.

TO all ſuch as ſhall ſee theſe preſent Letters, *Rene* the Burgeſſe, Licentiate in the Lawes, Bayliffe of *Rheimes*, and of the Abbey and Arch-Monaſterie of

The true Copie of the Court Roule faithfully translated.

Saint *Rhemigius* of Rheimes, health. We make knowne, that by vertue of Letters of Commission, to vs giuen by the illustrious and reuerend Lord, *Lewes* of *Lorraine*, Arch-Bishop and Duke of Rheimes, first Peere of France, Legate borne of the See Apostolique, Abbot of the said Abbey and Arch-Monasterie of S. *Rhemigius*, perpetually vnited and incorporated to the said Archbishopricke, dated the fourth day of the moneth of October 1608. Reade, published and Registred in the Roules of the said Bailiwicke of Rheimes, the 24. of the said Moneth of October: There appeared before vs the honorable Lord, *Messire Thomas de Cauchon* and *Neuflize*, Knight, Lord and Castillion of the said *Neuflize*, Baron *de Chamlats*, there dwelling. Who said and shewed to vs, that no long while since, the Land, Seigneurie and Baronnie of *Terrier*, amounted in full Fiefe to the late Lord *Claude de Cauchon*, Esquire, Lord *Dunchaire Hourges* and *de Courlandon* his Father, by reason of which Land, Seigneurie and first Baronnie of *Terrier*, he had right to tearme himselfe the prime Seruant, Baron and Knight to my Lord S. *Rhemigius*, and so consequently had right, to beare and carrie (in the prime place of honor) the first and principall Staffe on the right side, of the Canopie or Pall, vnder which was carried from the Church of the said S. *Rhemigius*, vnto the Church of our Lady in Rheimes, the *Holy-Bottle*, wherein hath bin miraculously conserued, from King *Clouis*, first Christian King of the French, the holy Oyle and Sacred Vnction, wherewith haue bin annointed the most-Christian Kings of France, on the day of their Sacring and Coronation, euermore performed in the said Church of our Lady in Rheimes. Whereupon, he requested of vs, by vertue of our power granted by the said Commission: that we would receiue his Oath and Homage, for the said Land, Seigneurie and Barronnie of *Terrier*, with the appurtenances and dependances. Because hee is (next after the said *Thomas de Cauchon*) Lord of the said *Neuflize* & *Teerrier*, presenting himselfe there in person, and in presence of the venerable and iudicious man, *Dom Iohn* the Spanyard, Priest and Doctor in Sacred Diuinitie, chiefe Vicare for the said Lord, as well in Spirituall as Tempo all affaires. Performing also such Oath and Hommage, as by reason of the said Land, Seigneurie and Baronnie of *Terrier*, he standeth bound to doe, the Solemnities requisite in such cases of custome, euermore kept and obserued.

We haue, in presence of Maister *Laual*, Exchecker Atturney for the said Archbishopricke and Abbey of the said S. *Rhemigius*; receiued, and doe receiue, the said Lord *Thomas de Cauchon* and *Neuflize*, vpon his Oath of fidelitie, for the said Land, Seigneurie and first Baronnie of *Terrier*, with the appurtenances and dependances: Alwayes reseruing the right of the said Lord, and of any other, without preiudice to other rights which may be due, with charge to be giuen by the said Lord Baron *de Terrier*, his auouching and Inuentorie, within sortie dayes following, according to custome. In witnesse whereof, we haue signed these presents, and caused them also to be signed by the Ordenarie Register to the Bailiwicke, of S. *Rhemigius*; & thereto put the Seale of the *Holy-Bottle*, belonging to the Bailiwicke, with ours, which was done at *Rheimes* the eight day of the month of October, 1610.

Signed. *Bourgeois Bailly, And*

Le Poyure, Register.

Acts of Notaries for the Sacring of King Lewes *the thirteenth.*

IN the presence of vs *Peter Auger*, and *Thomas Roger*, Notaries for our Lord the King, hereditarilie abiding at *Rheimes*, for the Bailiwicke of *Vermandois*, subsigned. This day, being Sunday, the eighteenth of October, one thousand fiue hundred and ten, being in the Church and Arch-Monasterie of my Lord S. *Rhemigius* of Rheimes, about the ninth houre in the morning, appeared in the same Abbey the high and mighty Lords, *Messire Phillip de Laual*, Marquesse *de Sablay*; *Nicholas de Brichanteau*, Lord of *Beauuais-Nangy*; *Henry Gaston de Foix*, Viscount *de Rabat*; and *Armand de Biron*, Baron *de Chef-Boutonne*, being at *Rheimes*: who said and declared to the venerable and Religious man *Dom Iohn* the Spaniard, Priest, Doctor in the facultie of Sacred Diuinitie, great Prior of the said Arch-Monasterie of S. *Rhemigius*; and great Vicare both Spirituall and Temporall to the Illustrious Prince, my Lord *Lewes* of *Lorraine*, Archbishop, Duke of *Rheimes*, and chiefe Peere of France, Abbot of the Abbey and Arch-Monasterie of Saint *Rhemigius*; as also to *Dom Iohn Rauineau*, Sub-Prior, *Iohn le Clerke*, third Prior, *Claude* the Bishop, fourth Prior, Chanters and Treasurers, *Nic. Vaurouart*, and *Ondar Bourgeois*, Ouerseers of the Sicke, all the Religious Priests of the said Arch-Monasterie, and other Religious persons of the said Abbey. That they were sent on the behalfe of the King our Lord, *Lewes* the thirteenth of that name, to cause the bringing by the said great Prior of the said Arch-Monasterie, and the Religious persons, in all reuerend and honorable manner, the *Holy-Bottle* from the place at Saint *Rhemigius*, to the Church of our Lady, for holy seruice at the Sacring and Coronation of our said Lord the King, which is to be celebrated the 17. day of October, and in the foresaid Church of our Lady. The forenamed Lords offering and promising (on their faiths) to doe their vtmost duetie for securitie of the said *Holy-Bottle*, remaining as Hostages in the Church of S. *Rhemigius*, vntill the Ceremony be performed, and the *Holy-Bottle* brought backe to the said Arch-Monasterie of S. *Rhemigius*, according as in the like cases hath bin accustomed.

Whereunto by the Lord *Graund Prior*, and Graund Vicare to the said Lord Abbot, with other of the Religious persons, answere was made: that they readily prepared, to obey the Kings good pleasure. Which being done, the said Lords deputed by the King, were transported before the Arch-Monasterie of S. *Rhemigius*, with the Lord *Grand Prior* and religious persons, where they made Oath on the holy Euangelists, which was taken by the wife and honorable man, Maister *Rene Bourgeois*, Bailiffe to the Archbishop of *Rheimes*, and of the said Abbey at this present, promising to render and bring backe the *Holy-Bottle*, to the said Arch-Monasterie of S. *Rhemigius*, according to their former offers. Neuertheless, entreating and requiring the said Lords, Grand *Viscard* Prior, and Religious persons, that it might be permitted them, to carrie from the Arch-Monasterie of S. *Rhemigius*, the *Holy-Bottle*, to the said Church of *Rheimes*, by good conduct and assistance: with promise, the Sacring being done and accomplished, to bring it safely againe, to this abiding place of S. *Rhemigius*, which was granted to them by the said Grand Vicar, Prior and religious persons, vpon those solemne promises, and thereupon was deliuered to them the said *Holy-Bottle* on the high Altar, whereat were present a great number of people, and the said Lord Grand Prior, cloathed with a Coape of beaten Gold, taking the *Holy-Bottle* from off the said Altar: carried it vnder a Pall or Canopie of cloath of Siluer, fringed very richly round about. Which was supported by *Messire Thomas de Cauchon de Neuflize*, Knight, Lord and Castillion of the said place, Baron of the Baronnies of *Terrier* and *Chamlats*, remaining there: *Raoul de la Fontaine* Esquire, Lord and Baron of *Belestre*, *Neufuizy*, *Vaurineourt*, and *Arsilement*, dwelling at the said *Neufuizy*: *Iacques de Haudresson*, Esquire, Lord and Baron of *Lonurecy*, all three Barons and Knights of the *Holy-Bottle*, belonging to my Lord Saint *Rhemigius*, Oathe being taken by them. And in place of the fourth Baron and Knight, was Maister *Rene Bourgeois*, Bailiffe of the Arch-Bishopricke of *Rhemes*, and of the said Abbey: the Lord *Grand Prior* mounted on a white Haqueney, couered with a Foote cloath of Cloth of Siluer, and the other religious persons of the Abbey, with great deuotion, and in solemne Procession, hauing a Crosse carried before them, went singing all the way to the said Church of *Rheimes*, the Anthemes and Prayers meete for so holy a Misterie. After whom rode the Lords Hostages on horsebacke, hauing likewise before them riding foure men, that carried foure Banners or Ensignes of white Taffata, whereon were figured the Armes of his Maiestie, and those of the said Lords Deputies, with mightie crowdes of people, all the way to the Church of *Rheimes*. In the bodie whereof was my Lord the most reuerend and worthie Cardinall *de Ioyeuse*, accompanied and assisted with manie Prelates, and other

men of the Church, and a great number of the chiefest Lords.

To the Lord Cardinall *de Ioyeuse*, the fore-named Lord Prior of S. *Rhemigius*, offered, presented and deliuered the *Holy-Bottle*, for accomplishing and performing the acte of Sacring, speaking these words. *Most Noble and most reuerend Lord, behold here the Holy-Bottle, containing the Celestiall licquor, wherewith are annointed and Sacred, the Most-Christian Kings of France: which I present and deliuer into your hands, to consecrate King Lewes the thirteenth, our Soueraigne Lord; with full charge, to haue the same restored and rendered into my hands, the Sacring being perfected and accomplished.* Whereto the Lord Cardinall thus answered, clapping his hand vpon his breast. *So I make you faithfull promise to doe.* Immediately, the said Lord *de Ioyeuse*, tooke and carried the *Holy-Bottle* into the Quier of our Ladies Church, accompanied with the Lord *Grand Prior*, as also the Lords Hostages, Barons and Knights.

When the Sacring was finished, and Masse being solemnely Sung three whole houres; the Lord *Graund Priour* departed, in the foresaid manner attended and accompanied, bearing the *Holy-Bottle* vpon his brest, hanging at a Riband about his necke, and so returned vnder the same Canopie, to the Church and Abbey of Saint *Rhemigius*, where the *Bottle* was set againe in the wonted place. Which being done, and the Lords Hostages hauing ended their Prayers; they left their Enfignes of Armes in the Abbey, for a perpetuall memorie of the said Sacring, and were quitted and discharged of their former Oathes and promises made to the *Grand Priour* and Religious persons. As in like manner the Lords Barons and Knights, deliuered their *Pall* or Canopie of Cloth of Siluer, into the hands of the great Vicare and Religious persons, to serue as an ornament in the said Church. In remembrance whereof, and of all the Ceremonies then performed, the Lords Hostages, Barons, Knights, Lord Graund Priour and religious persons, haue requested of vs an Act, which was respectiuely granted to them, to serue as a memoriall to future times. Done at *Rheimes*, the day and yeare before mentioned, and deliuered to the Lord *Graund Priour*, religious persons, Barons, Knights, and the Lord *Bourgeois*, Bailiffe, Signed according to the Originals, in the presence of these following.

Signed,

Roger and *Auger*, Notaries Royall.

Acts of the Bayliffe, and discharge of the great or chiefe Vicare of the *Holy-Bottle*, and *Pallium* of Cloath *of Siluer*.

TO all, such as shall see or reade these present Letters, *Rene* the Burgesse, Licentiate in the rights, Bailiffe in the Bailiwicke of *Rheimes*, and of the Abbey and Arch-Monasterie of S. *Rhemigius* in *Rheimes*, sendeth greeting. Wee giue to vnderstand, that this instant Monday, being the eighteenth day of the Moneth of October, at eight of the clocke in the morning, did appeare in our Hostell in person, *Messire Thomas de Cauchon & de Neuflize*, Knight, Lord and *Castellaine* of the said *Neuflize*, and of the Baronnies *de Terrier* and *Chalants*, there dwelling; *Antoine de la Fountaine*, Esquire, Lord and Baron *de Bellestre Neufuizy, & de Varnecourt*, there dwelling; and *Iacques de Haudressom*, Esquire likewise, Lord & Baron *de Sonastre & de Lonuresi*, there dwelling; all Barons and Knights of the Sacred & *Holy-Bottle*. Which Lords *de Cauchon, de la Fountaine, & de Haudressom*, by the said remembred names in the presence of Maister *Lewes de Lauall, Licentiate* in the Laws, Exchecquer Attorny for the said Abbey, as also for the Bailiwick of *Rheimes*, declared, shewed & made appeare to vs, that in regard of the Baronnies of *Terrier*, *Bellestre* and *Sonastre*, which they held in full Fiefe, Faith and Hommage, vnder my Lord Abbot of Saint *Rhemigius* of *Rheimes*; they were, are, and did performe these Offices following.

A right belonging to them from all Antiquitie, each one of them to beare and carrie a Staffe (appertaining to the fore-said Order) of the Canopie or *Pallium*, vnder which is carried, from the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*, to that of *Nostre Dame* of the said *Rheimes*, on the day of holy Sacring and Crowning our Kings of France; the said *Holy-Bottle*, so farre as to the high Altar of the Church *de Nostre Dame de Rheimes*, which *Bottle* was miraculously sent from Heauen, and containeth the holy Oyle and Sacred Vnction, wherewith was annointed King *Clouis*, the first most-Christian King of the French, and successiuely to doe the like, to the most-Christian Kings of France in all times following.

At the end of which high Altar, they ought to stand as Assistants, vntill such time as the Sacring be finished, and high Masse said or celebrated in the Church of *Nostre Dame de Rheimes*; without being out of sight thereof, according as they stand obliged to doe: to haue the same with them at their returning, but in presence of the Lord Abbot of Saint *Rhemigius*, or he that hath the honor to beare it. They seruing as aides and assistants for conducting the same in safetie, to the body of S. *Rhemigius*, where it is, and hath bin (from immemoriall Antiquitie) kept and preserued in the same manner, as they haue vsed to accompanie it with all solemnitie, to the said Church of *Nostre Dame du Rheimes*.

Now know ye, that yesterday, being Sunday, the seauenteenth day of the Moneth of October, in the fore-said yeare, one thousand six hundred and tenne, the day of Sacring; in our presence, and of the said *Lauall*, Exchecquer Attorney; euery one of the said Barons, Knights of the *Holy-Bottle*, seruiceably came and performed their duetie, for carriage thereof the said day, at eight of the Clocke in the morning, in the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*: the said Barons and Knights being cloathed in habits of white Sattin, with Mantles or Cloakes of blacke Taffata, and on the left side of their Cloakes were embrodered the Crosse, belonging to the Knighthood and Order of the *Holy-Bottle*, framed of pure Gold and Siluer.

This was done in the presence of *Dom Iohn* the Spaniard, Priest and Doctor in sacred Diuinitie, high Vicare to my Lord Abbot of Saint *Rhemigius*, as well in spirituall as temporall occasions, and Graund Priour beside of the said Abbey, together with the Religious Brotherhood of the Abbey, the said Knights being placed in rankes, each after other, presented themselues before the high Altar in the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*, prostrating one knee each of them to the ground, in signe of Faith and Homage, to kisse the said *Holy-Bottle*, which was presented to them by the Lord *Graund Priour*, as it hung about his necke. The *Graund Priour*, after he had allowed them kinde acceptation, and deliuered them the Oath, in such cases required of faithfull seruice, each laying his right hand on the Booke of the holy Euangelists, for true and faithfull bringing the same backe againe: the said Lord *Graund Priour*, to each of them kneeling in ranke, did put a Crosse of Gold, enamelled with white about their necks, hanging at a large Riband of blacke Silke, the Crosse resembling that embrodered on their Cloakes, according to the order kept and obserued from Antiquitie, which they ought to weare during their life time, or shall enioy their said Lands and Baronnies, and neuer to be without the said Crosse about their neckes.

These Gentlemen, being thus come at the houre appointed in the morning, into the said Church of Saint *Rhemigius*: the honorable Lords, *Henry Gaston de Foix*, Vicount *de Rabat*, *Phillippes de Lauall*, Marquesse *de Sablay*, *Iacques de Brichanteau*, Lord of *Beauuais Nangy*, and *Armand de Biron*, Baron of *Chefboutonne*, all foure Lords Hostages, whom it pleased his Maiestie to send, to procure the bringing of the *Holy-Bottle* for his Sacring; they came and presented themselues to the Lord *Graund Priour* and vs, declaring; that it had pleased his Maiestie, to send them as Hostages for the *Holy-Bottle*, according to the custome obserued from Antiquitie, each of them holding a Lance in his hand, whereon hung an Enfigne of white Taffata, armed with the Armes of our Most-Christian King of France, according to the Orders kept in the Church of *Nostre Dame de Rheimes*, as also in the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*.

Moreouer, their ſuite was to the Lord *Graund Priour*, that he would be pleaſed, to honor them with the ſight of the Ceremonies obſerued in the Sacring, binding themſelues duely before the Notaries, for the ſafe conduct, and returne thereof backe againe. Which being granted, the ſaid Lords Hoſtages before named, laying their hands on the Booke of the holy Euangeliſts, tooke their ſeuerall Oathes, in preſence of the Notaries Royall thereto called. Which being done, the Lord *Graund Priour* deſcended downe the ſteps from the high Altar of Saint *Rhemigius*, with the ſaid *Holy-Bottle* hanging about his necke, the *Graund Priour* being cloathed with a Coope of rich Cloth of Gold. At the nethermoſt of the ſaid ſteps, he was preſented by the Lords Hoſtages, with a State Conopie or *Pallium* of Cloath of Siluer, ſent by them from his Maieſtie to the Lord Abbot or *Graund Vicare*, vnder which he was to carrie the ſaid *Holy-Bottle*, from S. *Rhemigius* to the Church of *Noſtre Dame*, according to cuſtome. The Lord *Graund Priour* receiued it graciouſly, and preſented himſelfe to the three Knights of the *Holy-Bottle*, and to vs, by reaſon of the other Knights abſence, to acquit them of their honorable charges. Vnder which Canopie the Lord *Graund Priour* ſtept with the *Holy-Bottle* hanging about his necke, and attired as before is ſaid.

Before the *Holy-Bottle* went two of the ſaid Lords Hoſtages with their Launces in their hands, and the other two behinde it, till they came forth of the Church. At the great Portall whereof, was preſented by the foure Lords to the *Graund Priour*, a goodly white Hacqueney, harneſſed all with white, and couered with a Foote-cloath of Cloath of Siluer, fringed with Siluer Fringe round about, which his Maieſtie had ſent him to mount vpon, for his eaſier carriage of the *Holy-Bottle*, and as it was the auncient cuſtome. The Lord *Priour* receiued it very humanely, thanking his Maieſtie, for ſo well following and maintaining good and auncient cuſtomes.

The Hacqueney was led by foure Groomes belonging to his Maieſtie, who aſſiſted the Lord *Graund Priour* to mount thereon: two of them leading him by the Bridle, one on the right ſide, and the other on the left, the other two waited on the Stirrops, ſo guiding and conducting him in the decenteſt manner. Hereupon, the Knights and Hoſtages mounted on their Horſes, the Knights ſupporting the Canopie of State, and the Lords Hoſtages riding two before it, bearing their Banners, and the other after the *Holy-Bottle* in the ſame manner, their Eſquires alſo bearing Banners by them. All riding before the venerable Religious Brethren of the Abbey of Saint *Rhemigius*, attired in white Aulbes, with the Croſſe and Torch-light, ſinging Proceſſionally, and the two Chauntres cloathed in Coapes, each bearing a Staffe of Siluer.

All the Houſes in the Streetes were adorned with Hangings of rich Tapiſtries, and before the chiefeſt religious men, went the Captaine, Lieutenant and Enſigne, with diuers Inhabitants *Du Cheſne le Populeux*, ſubiects to the Lord Abbot, according as they were enioyned to doe, and had warning ſent them by the Lord *Graund Priour*: Armed after their faſhion, Drummes beating before them, and Enſignes diſplayed, thus marched they about the Canopie, ſome before, and ſome behinde it, attended by the Officers of the *Eſcheuinage* belonging to S. *Rhemigius*, Subiects and Vaſſailes to the Lord Abbot, and the ſaid Religious Order in Armes, who were ſent for, and enioyned to be there, for ſafer conduct of the *Holy-Bottle*, vntill it ſhould be brought back againe to S. *Rhemigius*, according to the auncient cuſtome.

The Lord *Graund Priour*, being accompanied as formerly hath bin related; arriued before the great Portall of the Church of *Noſtre Dame de Rheimes*, and entred into the Church, attended on onely by the Religious Brotherhood, the forenamed foure Lord Barons and Knights, and foure Lords Hoſtages, together with the two Notaries Royall already named, with ſome other Officers, Captaine and Enſigne of the Companie *Du Cheſne*. At enting into the ſaid Church of *Noſtre Dame*, there arriued the moſt illuſtrious and reuerend Lord Cardinall, in his Pontificall habits, accompanied with the Peeres of France, attired in ſuch garments, as they vſe to weare at ſuch great ſolemnities, and many Prelates beſide, for more ſeriouſ receiuing the *Holy-Bottle*; which was deliuered by the Lord *Graund Priour*, into the hands of

of the ſaid Lord Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe*, Officient in the abſence of the Lord of *Rheimes*.

But yet notwithſtanding, before receipt thereof, promiſe was made by the Lord Cardinall, for ſafe deliuering the ſaid Holy-Bottle, to the hands of the Lord Graund Priour againe, when the Sacring ſhould be accompliſhed. And thereupon, the Lord Cardinall went vnderneth the Canopie with the Lord *Priour*, attended on by the Prelates and religious Brethren, going ſome before, others behinde, and round about the Canopie, ſo ſupported by the Lords Knights, and vs, as we haue ſaid; vnto the high Altar of *Noſtre Dame*, the ſaid Lords Hoſtages ſtill aſſiſting, and neuer parting from it, as was their eſpeciall charge and duetie, the Lord *Graund Priour*, keeping alſo on the right hand, which is the South-ſide on the high Altar in the Church of *Noſtre Dame*.

When the Sacring was compleated, which laſted about the ſpace of three houres; the Holy-Bottle was redeliuered into the hands of the Lord *Graund Priour*, in our preſence, by my Lord the Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe*, the ſaid Lords Knights and Hoſtages (with others) witneſſing the ſame. And at iſſuing forth of the Church of *Noſtre Dame*, the Lord *Graund Priour* mounted on his white Hacqueney againe, accompanied as already hath bin ſaid, as well by the foure Lords Hoſtages, as alſo the Barons Knights, and we the Officers, who came according to appointment, for conduct of the ſaid Holy-Bottle, and bringing it backe againe to the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*; the Streetes ſtill remaining beautified and adorned, and all the people praiſing God for his goodneſſe, that the Sacring was ſo happily performed and finiſhed.

Being come backe to the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*, the Holy-Bottle was there placed by the ſaid Saints body, as from all Antiquitie it hath bin accuſtomed, and the foure Lords Hoſtages, and Barons Knights of the Holy-Bottle, requiring of vs an Act of all before related: wee yeelded thereto, after that the foure Lords Hoſtages had deliuered into the hands of the Lord *Graund Priour*, their foure Liueries and Banners, to remaine in the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*, as a memoriall for perpetuitie of his Maieſtie, as formerly other Banners of our predeceſſours Kings haue in there preſerued, for an honorable remembrance of them, as alſo of the Lords Barons Knights of the holy-Bottle, who likewiſe left there their Staues and *Pallium* of Cloth of Siluer, deliuered to the hands of the Lord *Graund Priour*, and Vicaret of the Lord Abbot, to ſerue as Ornaments in the Church of Saint *Rhemigius*.

When the Exchequer Attorney had hereon conſidered, and granted, that each of the foure Lords Hoſtages, together with the other foure Lords Knights, ſhould haue an Act of this preſentation of their duetie and ſeruice, according as formerly is expreſſed: A rule was drawne, and afterward, their Patents fairely engroſſed, to remaine as a liuing teſtimonie of their worthy performance, as Law, reaſon and equitie iuſtly commanded.

In witneſſe whereof, wee haue hereunto affixed the Seale; belonging to the Holy-Bottle, *together with that of the Bailiwicke of Saint* Rhemigius: *And cauſed it to be ſigned by Maiſter* Iohn le Poyure, *Ordenarie Regiſter of the Bailywicke, the day and yeare aboue mentioned.*

Signed.

Le Poyure,

Regiſter.

WE let paſſe vnder ſilence, the Ceremonies obſerued, & the Prai-
ers which are ſaid at the Sacring of our moſt-Chriſtian Kings,
when

when they be ſent for to the Church: The preſentation of their perſons to the Archbiſhop of *Rheimes*: The Oath which they make to the people, for obſeruing the Lawes of State: The faſhion of their habits and Royall Ornaments: The benediction of the Sword Royall, and of the Ring, wherewith they are eſpouſed to their Kingdome: The conſecration of their perſon, Coronation and enthroning: Becauſe they are all exactly ſet downe in the Hiſtory of *Nauarre*, at the Sacring of King *Henry* the Great, of moſt glorious memorie.

The end of the ſecond Booke.

OF THE ORDERS OF KNIGHTHOOD, which haue bin Inſtituted by the Moſt-Chriſtian Kings of *France*, and by Princes of their Blood.

The Third Booke.

The Order of the Gennet, eſtabliſhed by CHARLES MARTELL. Anno 726.

CHAP. I.

The Order of the Gennet.

L'Ordre de la Genette.

IN the time of the *Merouingian* Kings declining, the Succeſſours of King *Clouis*; the Maires of the Pallace, Stewards of the Kings Houſe, called ſince *Seneſchals* of France, prime Officers of the Crowne of France, poſſeſſed themſelues of the Gouernement thereof by abſolute power: as we haue already ſaid in the former Booke, and in the ſecond Diſcourſe or Treatiſe, concerning the Officers of the Crowne of France, where we haue obſerued, what the power was of thoſe Maires of the Pallace, and their diuers appellations, with the Genealogie of the Kings of the ſecond Ligne, ſirnamed *The Carlouingians*, of *Charles Martell*; wherefore it is needeleſſe to vſe any more repetition thereof.

Cruell *Ebrouin*, Maire of the Pallace, in the time of King *Clothaire*, third of the Name, ſayling with full winde, by ill-ordered fauour of the Kings, whom he gouerned; was the firſt that (abuſing their facilitie) proiected to change and alter the State, grounded on his owne power. *Charles Martell*, following the ſteps of his predeceſſors,

predeceſſours, Maires of the Pallace (all periſhing in the purſuite of ſo perillous enterpriſe) by his valour and good carriage, wonne the Crowne of France to the of his Ligne.

In the yeare of Grace, ſeauen hundred and foureteene, the eleauenth day of N uember, the *Moores* of *Affrica*, hauing enfranchiſed the ſtraight of *Gibell-Tar* therwiſe called *Gilbrartar*: poſſeſſed themſelues of *Spaine*, by the death of *Fodericke*, the laſt King thereof (iſſued from the *Vuiſigothes*) ſlaine in a fought ba taile, on the plaine of *Cherez de Medina Sidonia*, a Bourgade called ſometime *Sidonia*, compoſed of two Villages; the one named *Seritium Aſſidonia*, and the ther *Caſarianum*, on the Riuer of *Guadaletta*, called by the auncient *Gaules* (whic inhabited this Prouince) in their Mother tongue, *Lethos*, which ſignifieth Ob uion.

Now theſe *Moores*, not contented with their domineering in *Spaine*; concein (in their opinion) a conqueſt of the *Gaules*, which they thought would be as e accompliſhed, as their winning of *Spaine*: but they had then no Count *Iulian* ſerue as their guide and conducter. Neuertheleſſe, it came ſo to paſſe, that in t yeare ſeauen hundred and twentie, theſe barbarous people, ſetting free the *Pyr nian* Mountaines, on the ſide towards *Narbona* the warlike: threw themſelues (li an impetuous torrent) into *Languedocke*, at that time called *Gothia*, and became Ma ſters thereof, vſurping *Narbona Beziers*, *Agda*, *Niſmes*, *Auignion* and *Prouence*, cuen fa farre as to the Mountaines of the Alpes.

Languedocke ouercome by the Moores.

This firſt paſſage hauing ſucceeded ſo well as they could wiſh; they concluded t goe into *France* the ſecond time, inuited thereto by a Duke, who wonne them to i vpon this occaſion.

Charles Martell, Duke of the French, and ſole Maire of the Pallace of France; deſired to re-vnite to the Crowne thereof, the Prouince of *Aquitaine*, held then by *Eudes*, Duke thereof, iſſued from the auncient *Vuiſigothes*, Brother in Law, and Coſine to *Garcia Ximenes*, Count of *Begorre*, and firſt King of *Nauarre*. And to a uert the Armes of *Martell*, and to expell the tempeſt of the French, ready to fall u on his head: he practiſed the ſuccour of *Abdiramo*, an *Arabian* Captaine, newly come forth of *Affrica* into *Spaine*, to the end, that he might enter on the Lands o France, being vnder the gouernment of *Martell*.

The intent of *Charles Martell* for Aquitaine.

Abdiramo, with an Armie of foure hundred thouſand *Arabes*, came thundring into *Aquitaine*, vpon the ſummons of Duke *Eudes*, and inſtead of well and milde vſing the Lands of the Duke; he rauaged the Prouince, pilled and put to ſpoile the Cities and Townes of *Bourdelois*, *Xaintonge* and *Poictu*, putting all to fire and ſword, as if he had bin in a land of Conqueſt, and of his deadly enemie. This made Duke *Eudes* to acknowledge the fault by himſelfe committed, ſo that falling into more familiar inteligence with *Charles Martell*; they agreed together, to giue a ſudden gird to the *Sarazines*, and to chaſtiſe them in ſuch ſort; that others (by their example) ſhould looſe all deſire of euermore comming into France.

The number of men in *Charles Martell* Armie.

The Armie of *Martell* conſiſted onely of thirtie thouſand men, but all of them being choice Souldiors, actiue and braue ſpirited warriours, by whoſe aſſiſtance he aſſured himſelfe, to haue the honor of a famous victorie. Grounding his hope on the God of Battailes, who giueth the aduantage of Armes to a ſmall number armed in defence of a good quarrell: and in whoſe ſight, men are not meaſured by number or multitude, or hugeneſſe of ſtature, but by valour and hardineſſe.

Abdiramo and his maine troupes, hauing (like a deluge) ouer-flowne all parts from the *Pyrenean* Mountaines, ſo farre as to the Cittie of *Tours*, where he lay encamped: beleeued verily, that this wealthie and well peopled Citie, would ſerue him but for a breakefaſt, as all the reſt before had done. There *Martell* gaue him Battaile, and the fight proued ſo ſucceſſefull (ſeconded by Duke *Eudes*, who valiantly followed in the Rere of the enemies Army) that God beſtowed the victory on him, famous by the death of *Abdiramo*, ſlain in the fielde, with three hundred foureſcore and fiue thouſand *Arabes*: on the French-mens ſide were ſlaine but fifteene hundred onely.

Abdiramo ſlain in the field, and the Armie foiled.

The

The Chroniclers of Spaine write, that Pope *Gregory* the third, had ſent to Duke *Eudes* hallowed Spunges, which being cut into ſmall morſels and pieces, and diſtributed among the Souldiours of the Chriſtian Armie on the day of Battaile; they warranted all ſuch as had them, from being wounded and ſlaine. But theſe are meere Fables, and tales of Spaniſh Romancers, wherewith their diſcourſes are vſually filled, as that of their King *Bamba*. For it was at the requeſt of *Eudes*, that this circumciſed people had paſt into France, to backe him againſt *Charles Martell*. It were a fortiſh thing, to referre the miracle of this victorie to inanimate matters, or to the creature; inſtead of rendring the praiſe and honour thereof to God, by whoſe mercie alone it came ſo to paſſe.

Our Annaliſts ſet downe this Battaile on the two and twentieth day of Iuly, in the yeare of Grace, Seauen hundred twentie ſixe, which memorable victorie obtained of God, by the interceſſions and prayers of Saint *Martine* of Tours, the ſecond Apoſtle of the Gaules: *Charles*, in ſigne of thankſgiuing, erected in the place of fight, an Oratorie, in honour and memorie of the holy Biſhop, called S. *Martine of the Battle*, and by corruption of ſpeech, *The Oratorie of S. Martin le Bel*, *Oratorium ſancti Martini de Bello*. And *Charles* of *Auſtraſia*, as a noate of his great valour, was ſir-named *Martel*, *Tudes Saracenorum*, *The Hammer of the Sarazins*.

Among the ſpoyles of the enemies Armie, there was found great ſtore of rich Furres of *Gennets*, and many of the creatures themſelues were there aliue, being preſented to *Martell*: who made ſuch eſtimation of them, for the beautie of their Skinnes, and pleaſing ſmell, ſomewhat neere to that of the *Ciuit-Cat*; that for excellencie, he gaue diuers of them, to the Lords and Princes of his Armie, who receiued them of him in very thankfull manner.

A deſcription of the Beaſt, cal'ed a *Gennet*.

The *Gennet* is a Beaſt, almoſt like to the *Foine* or *Wood-Martine*, in bigneſſe and forme like to the Cattes of *Spaine*: it hath a ſnout or muzzell long and ſlender, the necke and body ſleeke, ſupple, and it is as quicke and readie as a Catte. It is repreſented (according to nature) by *Petrus Belonius*, Phyſition, in his Obſeruations, where hee ſaith. That this Beaſt is gentle, and maketh it ſelfe as domeſticke as a Catte, hee hauing priuately ſeene of them at *Conſtantinople*, and other places in the Eaſt. *Meſsire Iohn de Bourdigne* reporteth in his Hiſtorie of *Anion*, that good King *Rene* of *Sicilie*, reſiding in his Countie of *Prouence*, the King of *Tertugall* (being his intimate friend) ſent him for a rare preſent, an Elephant, two Dromodaries, two Ciuet-Cattes, two *Gennets*, with Marmoſets and white Apes, beſide many other ſtrange Beaſts comming from the Indies.

Concerning two kindes of *Gennets*, the rare and the common.

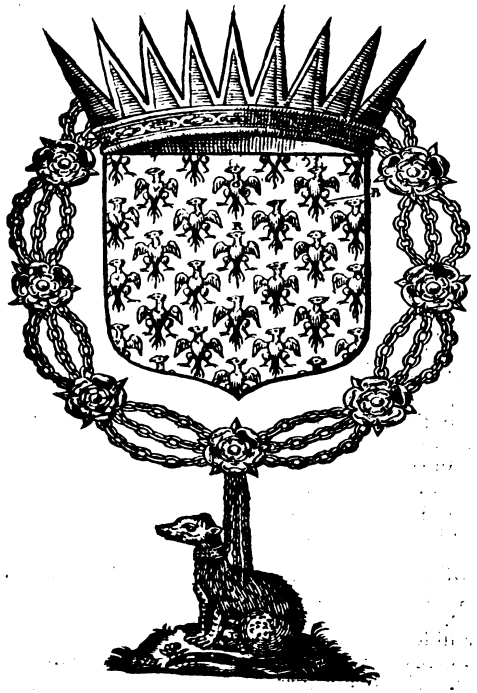
There are two kindes of *Gennets*, the rare, and the common. The common is Graye, ſpeckled and ſpotted with blacke. The other, which is excellent and rare, hath a blacke Skinne, and ſhining like to Sattin, or blacke Mathorne veluet; and it is marked or freckled with flat red ſpottes, which doe giue to the reſt a wonderfull beautie. The Skinne of this Beaſt, being rubbed and chafed, yeeldeth a delicate ſweete ſauour, or ſmell, like vnto Muske. And therefore Princes and great Lords delighted (in elder times) to weare their Gownes, Surcoates or Sotanes Furred with *Gennets* Skinnes: Nor is it aboue threeſcore yeares ſince, that the vſuall wearing of them ceaſed. For, as the *Ermine*, and the *Letice* next thereto, are prized and eſteemed for their rare whiteneſſe; euen ſo was the *Gennet* for her ſhining blackneſſe, and being moſt ſpotted with red freckles.

But becauſe this ſecond kinde of *Gennet* was ſo exquiſite, and difficult to be found; the *Martines Zubelines*, which came from *Ruſſia* and *Moſcouia*, vnder-went the others place; and is now held for the verie richeſt Furre. So that time, Skinners and Furriers will looſe all knowledge of the *Gennet*, as they haue done alreadie of other rich Furres, which had their full courſe in the time of our good King Saint *Lewes*. At his returning from the Holy-Land,

hee cloathed himselfe more simply then any man in his Kingdome, so saith the Lord of *Ioinuille* in his life. For he would no longer weare Minneuer, Gris, nor *Estoilettes* (they were *Gennets*) in his garments, neither did hee euer after vse Stirrops or Spurres that were Guilded. His daily wearing cloathes were of Lincsey-wolsey, and on Feast-dayes, of Chamlet, Lile-Grograine or Wosted, Black, Blew, or Warchet, and the Furre of *Garinthes*, or Legges of Hares. The auncientest Skinners in this Citie, know not the *Estoilettes*, nor the *Garinthes*: but thinke men speake Flemmith or base Brittish, when they talke of such Furres. The *Gennet*, as well as the *Puthois*, or *Fullmart*, is brought from the Indiaes, Affrica and Prouinces in the East, from whence come the richest Furres.

The passage of *Charles Martell* into Languedocke.

After the Battaile of *Tours*, *Charles Martell* went into *Languedocke*, to fight against the Moores, who vnder the conduct of *Athinus*, entred the third time into France, being sollicited so to doe by *Hunauld* (whom the vulgar called *Huon* of *Bourdeaux*, whose fabulous gests and voyages are written in his Romant) eldest Sonne to *Eudes*, Duke of *Aquitaine*, deceasing within a while after. *Athinus*, this Amirant of the *Sarrazins*, was long time besiedged in *Arigrignion*, from whence stealing secretly, he got into *Narbona*, and was vanquished at the foote of the Mountaine *De la Courbiere*, with his companion *Amerrheo*. *Aghinard* maketh mention of these two Battailes, famously wonne against the Affricanes. *Carolus Tyrannos per totam Franciam dominatum sibi vendicantes oppressit, & Saracenos Galliam occupare tenantes, ducibus magnis praeditis, vno in Aquitania apud Pictauum Ciuitatem, altero iuxta Narbonem apud Byrram fluuium ita deuicit, vt in Hispaniam eos redire compelleret.*



The first Order of Knighthood knowne in France.

NOw to preserue the memorie of this famous Battaile to posteritie, so happily wonne against *Athanimo*: hee instituted and deuised the first Order of Knighthood, which had bin seene in France, and which hee named *Of the Gennet*, in regard of the Beast before described. He composed this Order, to consist of sixteene Knights onely, hauing caused so many Collers of Gold to be made, with three Chaines interwouen or linched, all enamelled red Roses. At the end of which Coller hung a *Gennet* of Gold, enamelled Blacke and Red, as at the Collor of France, bordered with Gold, vpon a Terrasse or hanch of Floures, fairely enamelled. The

The first persons honored with this Order, next to him that declared himselfe the Chiefe thereof, and the Maires of the Pallace after him, of his Blood, Princes of *Austrasia*, were

1. *Childebrand* (Sonne of *Martine*) Colonell of the French Infanterie, Prince by Surname of *Austrasia*, Cousine-Germaine by Father and Mother, and Brother in Lawe.
2. *Eudes*, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and his two eldest Sonnes, who had followed him, and fought bravely,
3. *Hunaud*, And
4. *Gasfier*.
5. *Carloman*, Prince of *Austrasia*, and of *Thuringe*, eldest Sonne of *Martell*.
6. *Pepin le Bref*, his yonger Son, afterward chosen King of France.
7. *Lutprand*, Prince of *Lombardie*.
8. *Odilon*, Duke of *Bauaria*, And
9. *Lanfrede*, a great Prince in *Alemaigne*.

At what time this Order of Knighthood flourished in France.

The other afterward honored with the same Order, are not named. This Order went vnder full sayle in France, so long as the second Ligne of our Kings issued and descended of *Pepin le Bref*, and of *Charles* the Great his Sonne) held, and possessed the Crowne of France, worne onely by her Princes; vntill King *Robert*, who hauing instituted the new Order of the *Starre*, in honour of the Virgin *Mary*. *The Starre of the Sea*; that of the *Gennet* became vtterly abolished.

We haue said, that *Martell* appointed the first Order of Knighthood, which formerly was vnknowne in France; and which is to be vnderstood of a distinct Order, and acknowledged by a perticuler title. For, from all Antiquitie, Princes, Monarches and Common-weales, haue knowne and confessed the valour and magnanimitie of their Subiects and Citizens, by noates of worth and reward, as we haue formerly said.

The Bauldrick or Golden Girdle.

As our Kings of the first Ligne gaue the Bauldricke, that is to say, the Girdle of Gold (one of the markes or noates of Chiualrie) to their Vassailes and Subiects, chosen into Offices of most Fame vnder their obedience. Wee haue infinite examples in Saint *Gregory* of Tours, the most auncient of all our Annalists, and namely, where hee speaketh of one *Leonardus*, made Knight by *Chilperick*, husband to *Fredegonde*. *Quae furore commota iussit eum in ipsa Ecclesia Parisiaca* (in the Church of our Lady in *Paris*) *spoliari, nudatumque vestimentis, & Baltheo quod ex munere Chilperici Regis habebat, discedere à sua iubet praesentia.* The same Author saith in another place. *In Lib.* 10. *Cap.* 21. *Macone Comite eunte, vt debitum Fisco seruitium* (this was not the Annuall right of Offices, but the receipt of the Royall Monies, whereof the Counties were accountable) *solite deferret inferre, Filij Vaddonis praesentiam expetunt Regis, & co coram offerunt Baltheum magnum ex Auro Lapidibusque pretiosis ornatum, Gladiumque mirabilem, cui Capulum ex Gemmis Hispanicis, Auroque dispositum erat.* These passages doe shew vs, that this degree of honor and Knighthood, calleth it selfe properly, a Gift Royall, which cannot be giuen but by the King himselfe, and these Knights are distinguished from the Nobilitie, by perticuler habits of great estates.

Now, that these *Bauldricks* were not any common wearing Girdles, the same Author maketh it very plaine and apparant to vs. For the Nobilitie, that is to say, all the French in generall, vsed to weare the Golden Girdle, from whence ensued our ancient Prouerbe, vsed among vs.

Bonne, & commune Renommee,
Vaut mieux que Ceinture doree.

Good fame, and common Renowne,
Is more worth then a golden Girdle.

Whereas Knights wore such as were garnished with great Buckles, Studdes and Rings of pure Gold, being of great price and value: as is witnessed by the same S. *Gregory* of Tours.

We haue formerly obserued, that Collers giuen to Knights, were all composed of triple Chaines of Gold: such was the auncient custome, not to exceede the trine or ternarie number, full of misteries, noated by the *Ægyptians*.

Charles Martell caused those Chaines of Gold to be interwouen with Red Roses: And here you may behold a reason for it.

The pretended Gods of the Gaules and French.

The auncient Gaules and French, hauing embraced the Demonomanie of the Romaines, chose for their Gods of pretention; such as corresponded best with their nature, and according to their Martiall and Militarie inclination, answerable to the knowledge of Arts and Sciences. Wherefore among all other Deities they honored perticularly those of *Mars* and *Mercurie*: for the rest, it was but subsidiarily, and by way of superabundance. But they represented these pretended Deities, not after the Romane manner; but according to their Philosophie, much more exalted then that of the Romaines.

The Idole of *Mars*, the pretended God of Warre, was mounted on a strong Pedestall of Brasle (with a round Colomne) armed at all points, the Caske or Helmet on his head, flowing with Lambrequins, and leaues of *Achantha*, like an antique Plume, his broad Sword in Pall naked in his hand, with Ballances vnder it. In the other hand he held a Pennon or Banner, charged with a red Rose, as the deuise and Blazon. Close by him, and as it were vpon his left thigh, leaned his Shield, made according to the French fashion, broade aboue, and finishing in a point for the end: *Blazonne d'un Lyon Rampant bien Arme, & Lampasse. Au deuant de la Cuirasse estoit de relief vn Ours en colore & furu.* Such was the presentation of this pretended God *Mars* in his Temples, as well at *Mont-martre*, as elsewhere. As also in *Germanie*, on *Le Mont d'Eresberg*, that is to say, *Mont de Mars*, adored by the auncient French and Germaines, vnder the name of *Erminsull*, in this Temple (the most remarkeable of Germanie) at *Merspourg*, destroyed by our Emperour *Charlemaigne*, in the yeare of Grace, Seuen hundred seauentie two, according to the testimonie of our best and auncient Annalists. *Carolus Saxoniam bello aggressus Eresburgum Castrum cepit, & Idolum Saxonum, quod vocabatur Erminsull, destruit.*

The Temple of *Mars* on Mont-martre neere to Paris.

Now, as concerning the Temple on the top of *Mont-martre* neere *Paris*, built (as is beleeued) in the Reigne of *Augustus*, successour to *Iulius Cæsar*: it continued in full and firme condition, vntill it was thunder-smitten from Heauen, and left in such estate, as was to be seene in the yeare Nine hundred fortie foure, and as we learne by *Floardus* in his Chronicle. *Tempestas nimia facta est in agro Parisiaco, & turbo vehementissimus quo parietes cuiusdam antiquissimæ domus, qui validissimo constructi cemento, in Monte qui dicitur Martyrum diu perstiterant immoti, fundatus sunt eversi.*

Some are of opinion, that this Temple of *Mars* aboue *Paris*, was the same whereof mention is made by *Vlpian* the Lawyer, at the Title of such as should be instituted Heires, next to the Code *Theodosian*. *Deos hæredes instituere non possumus, præter eos quos Senatusconsulta constitutionibus Principum instituere concessum est, sicut Iouem Tarpæum: Apollinem Didymæum: Sicuti Martem in Gallia; Minervam in Melitensem; Herculem Gaditanum; Dianam Ephesiam; Matrem Deorum Cybelen, quæ Smyrnæ colitur, & Cælestem Salinensem Carthaginis.* So that it is not to be wondred at, if (during the Demonomanie of the Romaines) the Temples of these Idoles were full of riches, seeing they were capable to be instituted Heires.

The Ballances vnder the Sword of this Idoll *Mars*, represented the doubtfull accidents

accidents and euents of warre; victorie oftentimes inclining to the weaker side, or to the part of least iustice, as in the times of *Cæsar* and *Pompey*.

——Quis iustior arma
Tulerit, scire nefas:

For in outward appearance, the side of greatest iustice was that of *Pompey*, who yet was vanquished.

Causa Victrix Dijs placuit, sed victa Catoni.

The meaning of the Red Rose in the Banner.

The Red Rose emblazoned in his Banner, signified, That like as that faire Flower, pleasing to the sight and smell, so seth his sweet sauour and beautifull red colour, from this day to the next morning: euen so it falleth out in the successes of warre, to day fauourable, to morrow vnfortunate; because such as march vnder the ensigne of *Mars*, are said to haue no morrow at all, for their life stands on the instant daies determination. It behoueth them therefore to be armed with exalted courages, like to the Lyon, the symbole of Valiancie, as the Beare is of crueltie, as declaring; that Warre is voide of mildnesse and pittie, carrying along with it murders and massacres, according as *Homer* excellently figureth it, in the Shield of his Prince *Achilles*.

The Lyon is the type of Valour, as the Beare is of crueltie.

Now for his Shield, charged with a Lyon Rampant, on a banke or hillocke of variable flowers: it represented the auncient Armes of the Gaules, as also their natural and martiall disposition, they hauing no other delight and contentment, but in Armes, search of aduentures, broiles, encounters and battailes; being alwaies Armed, at their meetings, in their Temples, yea, and at their feeding. So saith *Tacitus* in his *Germania*: and *Cæsar* in his *Commentaries*; *Strabo*, with other Geographers; and *Athenæus*, as already we haue else-where said.

Athenæus his Censure.

Charles Martell, hauing all his life time followed the exercise of Armes, and made his memorie acceptable to the French: died in the yeare of Grace, Seuen hundred fortie and one, so saith the Chronicle of *Laureshem*, vnder the said yeare. *Eodem* Carolus Maiordomus *diem obijt, tres filios hæredes reliquens, Carolomannum, Pipinum, atque Grifonem.* He liued, died, and was enterred as a King among the Kings of France at S. *Denys*, the Mausolus for the Monarches of the Noble *Fleur de Luce*, and this inscription is about his Picture, as the obseruation of his Power.

The death of *Charles Martel*.

Dux, Dominusque Ducum, Regum quoque;
Rex fore spernit.
Non vult regnare, sed Regibus imperat ipse.

So would he ordinarily speake among his followers, *That it was a more glorious thing to command Kings, then to Reigne himselfe.*

Errors committed by *Charles Martel*.

But his renowne (otherwise immortall) became soiled with a blemish, which could not be wipt off; namely, in laying his hand on the goods of the Church, which he gaue to his Soldiours that followed him in Armes. For he was the Authour of the impropriation of Tithes, on the goods of the Church, for discharging the actuall seruices of his troupes; so that these impropriated Tithes holding place, and in the case of Fifes; the possessors of them were restrained and made subiect to the Ban, and Arrierban, as we tearme it in France. That if they be bequeathed, giuen or left in Mort-maine, *Et ad primæuam naturam redierint*, to the Churches from whence they proceeded, by want of seruice, or in case of dutie to the King; they are not then only impropriations, but the detainers bound to the Tithes. This vsurpation brought into France by *Charles Martell*, and his following Kings of the second Ligne, was the cause that it reigned very little time, passing but as a flash of lightning, continuing only Two hundred thirtie seuen yeares: yet this vnhappinesse lasted afterward in France, the Princes and great

Lords declaring no conſcience at all, in maintaining their houſes on the Churches reuennues, and with ſuch licence, as they were not aſhamed, to ſtile themſelues Abbots of Abbeyes, which they poſſeſſed.

A garment like a Petticoate with body & ſkirts.

So the Father of *Hugh Capet*, was ſirnamed *Hugh the white*, becauſe he pleaſed to goe attired in a white *Gonnelle*. Our Hiſtorians commonly tearmed him, *Hugh the great Abbot*, becauſe he poſſeſſed the Abbeyes of S. *Denys* in France, of S. *Germaine des prez* at Paris, and of S. *Martine* at Tours. So in our Annales, and thoſe of *Flanders*, we ſee that the Counts of *Vermandois* and of *Flanders* fought in ranged battailes, for the Abbeyes of S. *Vuaſt*, S. *Berthin* and S. *Omer*, titling themſelues by the names of Abbots. In like manner the good Abbot of *Fleury*, and hee of *Ferriers Loup* complained, that they had threeſcore Religious perſons to feede, and yet neuertheleſſe, they had no more then the halfe part of their Abbeyes reuennues, their great Abbots enioyed all the reſt. For, Abbots by profeſſion and habite, were called but the leſſer Abbots, and Princes and great Lords, were named great Abbots, who (of the Churches goods) maintained both their horſe and foote Souldiors; oftentimes for troubling the repoſe of France, and bandying themſelues againſt their Soueraigne Prince, in preſcribing Law to him. And thus by the meanes of ſo many rich Abbeyes, *Hugh* the great Abbot, prepared the way for his Sonne *Capet*, to make himſelfe King of France, vtterly exterminating the Ligne of the *Carlouingians*.

The condemnation of *Charles Martell*.

The manuſcript Chronicle of the Counts of *Foix*, ſpeaking of *Dagobert*, and of *Martell*, ſaith, *We reade in Chronicles, that the ſaid Martell is condemned; becauſe he laid hands and impoſitions on the Tythes of Churches: as it was miraculouſly reuealed to a holy man.*

Our Auncеſtours gaue the moſt part of their goods to the Church, to the end, that the poore might be nouriſhed, and ſuch as ſerued at the Altar. Churches rendered the ſame inheritances, to the poore kindred of the donors, as in Fee-Farme, and improuement. Theſe Farmes of inheritance, are called in our Capitularies *Precariæ*, *Quod precario Laicis ab Eccleſiâ vtendæ fruendæ concederentur*.

Charles Martell, *Pepin le Bref*, *Charlemaigne*, & *Lewes* the *Debonnaire* gaue theſe heritages in all proprietie to their *Leudes*, as they tearmed them; that is, to their *Franc*, men of Armes and Soldiours, to enioy for perpetuitie, and ſtill as Biſhopricks came to be voide, beſide the impropriated Tythes.

Charles the Baulde laboured to take away this abuſe, introduced for ruine of the Church, as is to be ſeene in the fift Booke of our Capitularies. *Nemini Regum, aut cuiquam Hominum liceat Præcaria in proprium tradere, vel commutare, vel quocunque noſtro coniato (conge) vendere.* And in the ninth Chapter hee ordained, that from fiue yeares to fiue yeares, deſcription ſhould be made to him, of the Lands appertaining to the Churches of France; becauſe they ſhould not come to be loſt in following time, and Noble-men ſhould not appropriate them perticularly to their owne vſurpation.

The vſurpation of the Churches goods, was brought out of Italie, long time before *Charles Martell*, for Pope *Symmachus*, firſt of the name, who held the Seate from the yeare fiue hundred, to the yeare fiue hundred and fifteene (vnder the reign of our great King *Clouis*) in the Councill which hee held at Rome, conſiſting of a hundred and two and twentie Biſhops, complained of this diſorder, and bemoaned the miſerie of his time, in theſe words. *Communis dolor, & generalis eſt gemitus, quod intra Eccleſiam, noſtris, & retroactis temporibus, de inuaſione rerum Eccleſiaſticarum, & Sacerdotum vexatione cognouimus.* For, vpon the declining of the Romaine Empire, as well in the Eaſt as Weſt, the Emperours, hauing their wealth greatly exhauſted, vpon neceſſitie poſſeſſed themſelues of the goods of Churches, which they gaue to their Captaines, to recompence their trauailes taken in Warre, hauing no other meanes, whereby to reſiſt againſt ſtrange Nations, who in enuie one to another hurried themſelues (like an impetuous and frightfull torrent) into all Prouinces of the Empire, there to canton themſelues as beſt they pleaſed, diſpluming (feather by feather) the poore Romaine Eagle.

Charles Martell imitating this example, poſſeſſed himſelfe of the Churches goods.

goods. The fragment of the Chronicle of *Fleury*, in the Tract *De Maioribus Domus Franciæ*, ſpeaking of the ſame *Martell*, ſaith. *Carolus Tudes Maior Domus, & Princeps Auſtraſiorum, res Eccleſiarum propter aſſiduitatem bellorum Daicis tradidit.* And *Floardus*, Arch-deacon of *Rheimes*, in his Chronicle of *France*, ſaith. *Hic Carolus, cunctis, qui ante ſe fuerant, audacior Regibus, non ſolum ipſum Archiepiſcopatum Rhemenſem, ſed etiam alios Regni Epiſcopatus Laicis hominibus, & Comitibus dedit.* But behold here his more ample Hiſtorie and diſcourſe, as it is recorded in the ſecond Booke of the Hiſtorie of *Rheimes*, and the twelfth Chapter, in this manner.

A briefe Diſcourſe concerning the Life and Actions of *Charles Martell*.

Rigobert Archbiſhoppe of Rheimes expelled by *Martell*.

Charles Martell, ſo ſoone as by force of Armes he was become Prince, and ſole Maire of the Pallace of France; ſpoiled and expulſed from his Archbiſhopricke of *Rheimes*, the bleſſed *Rigobert*, his Godfather. For it is auouched, that hee held *Charles* at the Font of Baptiſme, and he gaue the ſaid Archbiſhopricke to one named *Milo*, a ſimple Prieſt, that had followed him in the Warres. This *Charles*, borne out of lawfull marriage, of a woman of ſeruile condition, as we reade in the Annales of France; was the moſt audacious and boldeſt of all the Kings his predeceſſors. For he haue not onely thus the Archbiſhopricke of *Rheimes*; but likewiſe all the other Biſhoprickes of France, to Countes and Laye-men: ſo that the Biſhops were bereft of all meanes, for exerciſing the workes of Charitie, not hauing whereupon they might well liue.

Martell borne out of lawfull marriage.

But he was chaſtiſed by the iuſt iudgement of God, for the euill by him committed, and perpetrated againſt the holy man *Rigobert*, as alſo the Churches of Ieſus Chriſt, whoſe iuſt diſpleaſure fell vpon his head. For we learne by an Hiſtorie and true Relation, that S. *Eucherius*, ſometime Biſhop of *Orleans*, whoſe body is buried in the Monaſtery of S. *Treudon*; this holy Biſhop being (on a day) in feruent prayers, was rapt into an extaſie, and carried into the other world. Where, among other wonders which he ſaw there, God gaue ſuch permiſſion, that he beheld *Charles Martell* tormented in eternall flames.

A ſtrange viſion ſeene by S. *Eucherius*.

S. *Eucherius* mervailing at an accident ſo ſtrange, and demanding the ſubiect of the Angell his conducter; he receiued this anſwere. That this Prince was condemned for euer into Hell fire, beuauſe he had laid hand on the goods of the Church, which he had abandoned to his Souldiours, and imployed for the vſe of prophane perſons. S. *Eucherius* returning againe into this world, ſent (in writing) this viſion to S. *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Maguntia*, Legate then in France: and to *Folrardus*, Abbot of S. *Denys* the *Areopagite*, neere *Paris*, Arch-Chaplaine and *Apocriſiarie*, that is to ſay, great Almoner to King *Pepin le Bref*. And to aſſure them of his Relation, he ſent them to cauſe the Tombe or Sepulcher of *Charles Martell* to be opened, for he dyed at *Vermene*, neere to *Yſſoire* in *Auuergne*, and was brought for buriall to S. *Denys* in France. To which place *Boniface* and *Folrardus* being come, they procured the Tombe to be opened, and found it ſo blacke with ſmoake, as if fire had bin burnt in it, and a very dreadfull Serpent, but no bones at all.

At the end of the workes of the learned Biſhop *Yues de Chartres*, is a Chronicle added by an ignorant Author (for it ſauoureth nothing, neither commeth neere the learning and ſtile of *Yuo Carnotenſis*) who vnaduiſedly attributeth this admirable Hiſtorie to King *Charles* the Simple, where as it is onely meant of *Martell*. And yet his teſtimonie may ſerue vs to ſecond *Floardus*.

Karolus Ludouici Filius Rex Francorum Viceſimus quartus, regnauit Annis XXXVII. Huic Tutudis, quod Martellus dicitur, nomen eſt inditum, & quia in Regno ſuo vix, aut raro pacem habuit, ideo res Eccleſiarum ſuis militibus in ſtipendium contulit maximâ ex parte. Qui mortuus, in Eccleſia beati Dionyſij Martyris ſepultus à ſiniſtra parte Altaris maioris, viſus eſt noctu in ſpecie Draconis, effracto ſepulchro, per vitream Eccleſiæ, cum magno terrore exijſſe.

Atheiſts

Atheists and pretended Reformists of our Age, doe make a mockerie of this Historie, and say, that it is a meere Fable, inuented by the Monkes; who ordenarily place in the Catalogue of Saints, such as are beneficiall to them, and when any such matter happeneth; it must not be held or reputed for a miracle. Because it is the vniuersall Doctrine of *Hippocrates*, and the Schoole of Physitions; *Anguum gigni ex medulla spinæ hominis. Of the marrow in the backe-bone of men, Serpents are engendred.* So saith *Plinie*, following the opinion of *Pythagoras*, and reported by the amourous Poet *Ouid*.

Sunt qui cum clauso putrefacta est spina sepulchro,
Mutari credunt humanas Anguc medullas.

And that likewise out of the Graue of *Anchises*, Father to *Aeneas*, issued a great Serpent, according as *Virgill* writeth.

Dixerat hæc: adito cum lubricus Anguis ab imis.
Septena ingens gyros, septena volumina traxit,
Amplexus placide tumulum lapsusque per aruas.

These are naturall reasons, which neuertheless hinder not the effects of miracles, and things monstrous; as is testified not onely by our auncient Annalists, but Strangers also, namely *Rhegmon*, and other writers of good noate. And in the reading of this Historie, Kings and Princes of the earth may learne, and feare the iust iudgements of God, who forbiddeth the throwing of precious Stones to Swine; that is to say, giuing Church Benefices to prophane persons. For, oftentimes we see them to be possessed by enemies to the Church, and of contrarie Religion; by Bawdes, Strampers and Panders, to the great scandale & dishonor of Princes, which so basely bestow them.

The ceasing of the Order of the Gennet.

Charles Martell hauing bin but Maire of the Pallace, and Duke of the French; had for Successour his Sonne *Pepin le Bref*, exalted King of France, as wee haue said: And this *Order of the Gennet* was in maine strength then, and during all the length of the second Ligne, without proceeding any further.

A new Order of Knighthood in fauour of the *Frizons*, called, *The Order of the Crowne Royall.*

L'Ordre de la Coronne Royale.

Charlemaigne, to honour them of *Frizeland*, who had carried themselues valiantly in his Armies two and thirtie yeares, during which time, hee made warre on the *Sesnes* (which were the auncient *Saxons*, against whom the warre had beginning, from the time of the descendants of *Clouis*, and namely, vnder *Clothaire* the second, Sonne of *Chilpericke* and *Fredegonde*) who had ouercome them in a ranged Battaile, not leauing any one aliue, longer then his Sword: made them Knights of a new *Order of Knighthood*, which he established in the fauour of them, called *The Order of the Crowne Royall*. Because the Knights of this Order, vsed to weare on their breasts a Crowne Royall, in embroderie of Gold. The Gouernour of the Country, whom they called *Potestat*, after the manner of *Italie*, had power to giue this Order of the *Crowne*, to such as (for a certaine time) had followed the Armies of France, and warfared for our Kings, as well in Italie, as in Germanie. And we vnderstand, that in those times when our Kings made Knights, they gaue them a blow or cuffe on the eare; as Bishops vse to doe, in conferring the Sacrament of Confirmation. *Martinus Hanconius*, in his Historie of *Frisia* reporteth the Pragmaticall Sanction of our King *Charlemaigne*, touching the Institution of this Order of Knights of the *Crowne*, in these words.

The Pragmaticall Sanction of this Order.

Iubemus super statutum vt si ex ipsis sufficientationem habuerint, vel militare voluerint, dicta Potestas eis Gladium circumcingat, & dato eisdem, sicut consuetudinis est, Mantelo Colapho, sic Milites faciat, eisdemque similiter iniungendo præcipiat, vt deinceps More Militum Sacri Francia Regni, vel imperij incedant armati, eò quod consideramus si præfati Frisones secundum staturam corporis & formam eis à Deo, & Natura datam sic militaueriut, cunctis in orbe terrarum militibus sua fortitudine, ingenio, & audaciâ (dummodo vt prædictum est sint armati) facile præcellent, & præualebunt. Qui Frisones signum suæ militiæ à dicta Potestate recipere debent, in quo Corona Imperialis insignum suæ libertatis nobis concessæ debeat esse depicta. Datum Romæ in Lateranensi Palatio, Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis Octogentissimo secundo.

The said *Charlemaigne* wondrously enlarged the Kingdome of France. For, as *Eghinard* saith in the life of this Prince; In foure and fortie yeares space (which he reigned) he added double thereto so much, as king *Pepin* his Father had left him, and that was Gaule, limited by the Riuers of Rhine and Loire; of the Ocean Sea on the one side, and that of Maiorica on the other; that part of Germanie, which is comprised between Saxonie and the Riuers of Rhine, Danubie and Salas, which make the deuision betweene the Turingeans and Sarabes, from the Orientall French, which is Franconia from Germanie, and the Kingdome of Bauaria, whereto *Charlemaigne* annexed Aquitaine and Gascoignie, withall the bounds and skirts off and from the Pyrenean mountaines, so farre as to the Riuer *Iberus*, which runneth thorow Spaine, taking sourse or originall in the Kingdome of Nauarre, and afterward watering Arragon, looseth it selfe at Tortosa in the Sea of Maiorica. He conquered likewise all Italie, from Thurin so farre as the lower Calabria; Saxonie the great Prouince of Germanie; the two Panoniaes, that is to say, Hungaria and Austria; Denmarke from beyond Danubie; Sclauonia and Dalmatia, the maritime Cities and Townes only excepted, which he left (in courtesie) to be possessed by the Emperours of Constantinople. From thence he proceeded to the conquering of barbarous Nations, which inhabited betweene the Riuers of Rhine, and of *Vistula* the Ocean Sea, and wide spreading Danubie: speaking very well the same Languages, but their humours and customes being contrarie, he made them his tributaries. The principall People of those strange Nations, were then nominated and called Veltabes, Soraues, Abotrites and Boemes, against whom he fought valiantly, to ranke them vnder his obedience: the rest (in farre greater number) voluntarily submitting themselues to be gouerned by the French Empire.

How greatly King *Charlemaigne* enlarged France.

Charles Martell, *Pepin le Breue* his sonne (of whom it is said, that

Maior in exiguo regnabat corpore Virtus)

The three valiant Princes of the French.

And *Charlemaigne*, were valiant Princes: but their Successours more peaceable, then warriors. And the Crowne of France, (with diuers successes) was held by the descendants of *Charles Martell*, euen as before him, by the same accidents, it had beene gouerned by the Merouingians. For like as the Ligne of *Merouæus* failed in the person of *Childericke* the third, the last of nineteene Kings descended of *Clouis*, which *Childericke* was shorne a Monke in the Monasterie of S. *Hemerian* of Reganespourg, at this day called Ratisponna, in the Duchie of Bauaria, as is recorded by Auentine in his Annales:) So in the like manner, of *Charles Martell* failed the Ligne at the eleuenth King, in the person of *Lewes* the fift, tearmed, *Doe nothing*, or the Hartlesse loiterer. Being so named, because the Annalists of the time obserued all his Reigne, and comprehended it vnder these three words; *Ludouicus nihil fecit*. Likewise he reigned but one yeare, deceasing at *Compeigne*, (where he is buried in the Abbey of S. *Cornille* with King *Lewes* the Stammerer, Emperour) the 22. of *June*, in the yeare of Grace 988. And so the race of the Carlouingians continued but two hundred thirtie and seuen yeares; and that of the Merouingians reigned in France three hundred yeares continuance, to wit, from the yeare of Grace 450. when *Merouæus* assured his conquest on this side the Rhine in the Gaules; vntill the yeare 749. So that according to the Chronicle of *Laureshеim*, which I haue, *Bouchard*, Bishop of Wirtzbourg, and *Folrard* Priest, afterward great Almoner to *Pepin le Briefe*, were sent to Rome to Pope *Zacharie*, to haue his aduise. Because it had beene called into question, for proceeding to the new election of a King,

Lewes the loiterer, or Doe nothing.

King, and they made choice of *Pepin le Brief*, Maire of the Pallace of France, who supported all the burden of the Warres, reiecting the descendants of *Clouis*, without vertue, voide of courage and sprightly valiancie. *Zacharie* gaue his opinion answerable to the deliberation of the States. *Melius esse illum eligere Regem quem summa potestatis tota consisteret, quàm qui Regis nomen tantum, sed nullam virtute Regia potestatis haberet.* Whereupon, the yeare following, the same generall Stares assembled at Soissons (called by *Aethicus*, *Augusta Suessonum*) and *Pepin le Brief* was there declared, elected, and crowned King of France.

The Popes answer to the message.

Lewes the fift last King of the second Ligne.

So by the cowardlinesse and negligence of *Lewes* the fift, last King of the second Ligne; by resolution of the Generall States of France, met together at Noyon, in the remarkable yeare, obserued in the last Chapter of the former Booke; *Hugh Capet*, a valiant and wise Prince, was elected first King of the third Ligne, which only hath continued (euen to this present day) more then both the two former.

Indeed *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, sonne to *Charlemaigne*, was his Successour in the French Empire; but not in his good fortunes. He left three sonnes, namely, *Lothaire*, *Lewes*, and *Charles*, called the Baulde, of diuers natures, bandying and contending each against other, for enuie and desire of Reigning, without companion.

——Omnisque potestas impatiens consortis erit.

We finde the Salique Law to be in practise vnder the said *Debonnaire*. Because the said Emperour had by his first Wife *Ermingarde* three sonnes; to wit *Lothaire*, who was Emperour; *Lewes* King of Germanie, and *Pepin* King of Italie. This *Pepin* had espoused the daughter to the Count of Mastric, *Thiebert*, of whom he begat two sonnes, and two daughters, married to the Counts *Reginard* and *Girard*. The sonnes were *Pepin*, King of Aquitaine after his Father, and *Charles*: but these two Brethren (for their wicked gouernment) were shorne Monkes; the one, namely *Pepin*, at *S. Mard* of Soissons; and the other at *Prum* in Flanders. And by the ciuile death of these two Brethren Princes, the Kingdome of Aquitaine, (which then contained Guienne, Gascoigne, Biscaye, Arragon, Catalogna, and Cerdaigne) were by *Charles* the Baulde re-vnited to the Crowne of France; with exclusion of the two Sisters to the said Princes *Pepin* and *Charles*, as is obserued by *Aimoinus* the Monke.

The iffue of *Pepin* King of Italie.

The French Empire deuided into three portions.

The three sonnes that remained liuing, of *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, to wit, *Lothaire*, *Lewes*, and *Charles*, surnamed the Baulde, after many furious and bloudie fights accorded themselues, in the Assembly made at the Citie of Verdun, in the yeare of Grace 843. And there they deuided the French Empire left by *Charlemaigne* into the extendure before noted, and into three portions, which yet were vnequall.

Lothaire, the eldest sonne, had for his part, with the Title of Emperour (which after his death came to *Charles* the Baulde) Rome, Italie, Prouence, and the Lands which marched on the parts of the Baulde; and of *Lewes* of Germanie, afterward, the said portion was called Lotaringia, and now Lorraine, affer the name of the said *Lothaire*.

Lewes had Orientall France, which comprehended the most part of Germanie, and finished at the great Riuer of Rhine.

Charles, King of France, tearmed the Baulde, had in his Lot and portion, Occidentall France sometimes called Neustria, and Westria: which extended from the Ocean Armorica, so farre as the Riuer of Meuse. This is that which is properly called France, without any other addition.

Diuision the decay and ruine of the French Empire.

This deuision was the totall ruine of the French Empire, and the depressing of her prime Greatnesse; to verifie the Oracle of Truth it selfe, that *Omne Regnum in se diuisum desolabitur: Euery Kingdome deuided against it selfe, shall be desolated.* And the deuision of the same Kingdome, by the sonnes of *Clouis*, might haue enstroled those three French Princes, in the misfortunes which fell vnto them, and to their Subiects, bandied and deuided one against another, by many bloudie ciuill warres. Hereof

Hereof (by good and iust cause) complained *Hincmarus*, Archbishop of Rheimes, in the Epistle which he wrote to the Emperour and King of France, *Lewes* the Stammerer, second of the name, Sonne to the said *Charles* the Baulde. *Mortuo Lothario post multas controuersias, facta est diuisio inter Patrem vestrum Ludouicum, & tale deuenerunt miseriæ, sicut vobis sunt nota; & hoc Anno talis prouenit lugenda infelicitas, quæ per vniuersum penè Mundum, & per futura tempora merito erit in opprobrium.*

How dangerous the dismembering of a State is.

Giuing Councell by this Epistle of his, to take example by the mischiefes, happening through the meanes of this Deuision. For, to dismember a State into diuers Tetrarchies, vnder pretence of Natures Law, and aduancement of the Sonnes: is, as if we should from the body of man, cut off a legge or an arme, which maketh it altogether impotent and deformed. But the acknowledgement of these passed enormities, gaue foundation to the Law of the Kingdome, wisely and religiously ordained by *Hugh Capet*, Authour of our Kings of the third Ligne.

That in following times, the Title of King should not be giuen, but to the Eldest Sonne of the Kings of France, Who hath right and Soueraigne power ouer his other Brethren, and who ought to reuerence him as their Father and Lord, not hauing any assured portion or partage, but by his grace and fauour. If he giue them any Lands and Seigneuries, in title of younger Brethrens portions: the said younger Sonnes shall hold and redeliuer them to the Crowne of France; and they are not to be giuen them, but with charge of Homrnage, Iurisdiction, and Rights Royall, and as reuersions of the said Crowne, deceasing without heires mayles, begotten and borne in loyall Marriage.

The Order of the Starre: Instituted at *Paris* by King *Robert*, sirnamed, *The Deuout*. In the yeare 1022.

CHAP. II.

Of the Order of the Starre.

HEe haue seene in the precedent Treatise, the Crowne of France to change from the Ligne of the *Merouingians*, into the Ligne of the *Carolouingians*. In this whereof we are now to speake, we shall behold it fastened to a chaine of Diamonds in *Cælum Empirium*, and placed fixedly on the head of *Hugh Capet*, Father of *Robert* (the subiect of this discourse) to continue, euen to the Worlds end, as proper inheritance to them of his Bloud and Ligne.

The originall and descent of *Capet* questioned.

Most part of Moderne Historians, doe put to Compromise, the Originall and descent of the said *Hugh Capet*: because they would deriue him from that baddе branch *Vitichinde*, or *Witikind* the *Sesne*, that is to say, a *Saxon* by Nation, against whom our Emperour *Charlemaigne* made warre so long a time. And that of him descended *Robert* the *Saxon*, Graund-father to the said *Capet*; who by force and violence possessed himselfe of the Crowne of France, against *Charles* of Lorraine, Vncle to *Lewes* the fift, last King of *Charlemaignes* descendants, as they say.

Fables inuented only to disturbe the peace of France.

This his muddie and rustie opinion, worme-eaten with age, yet raised vp in our times, by infinite mercinarie pennes, to trouble the peace of France with their

their mustie pretensions. In like manner, that a certaine *Bourgongnon*, named of *S. Iulian*, (by a new Paradox) would make it to be credited, that the same *Capet* conceiued birth of an other *Hugh*, the published bastard Sonne of *Lothaire* the second, whom *Sigibert* vnder the yeare 886. writeth to haue his eies pluckt out, and was then shorne Monke in the Abbey of *Prum* in Flanders, where he ended his daies, without leauing any issue. *Hugo Filius Lotharij Regis ex Waldradi pellice, paternum Lotharingiæ regnum rebellando assequi sperans, ab Henrico excæcatur, & nouissime in Monachum Prumiæ attondetur.* If *Hugh Capet* had beene borne of this Bastard to King *Lothaire*, and of *Waldreda* his Concubine: the said *Capet* neuer would (so soone as he saw himselfe established in the Kingdome of France) haue published the Decree against the Bastards of our Kings, obserued yet to this day, without any contradiction.

An exact Order set downe against the bastards of kings.

Capet hauing obserued the faults in the State, concerning Kings his Predecessors, that the aduancement of their Bastards had alwaies beene the cause of troubles in France, hauing equally taken part with the Legitimate; yea, and exalted to the Royall Throne, as *Lewes* and *Carloman*, Bastards of the Stammerer: he ordained,

That thence-forward, I uery Bastard should not only be reiected from the Crown; but likewise from auouching the Sir-name of France.

And to manifest the obseruation of this holy Ordinance, it is sixe hundred yeares and more since it was published; and it is not read, That any Bastard of France, or issued or descended from the Sonnes of France, hath been legitimated and allowed. But *John* Count of *Dunois*, Bastard Sonne of *Monsieur Lewes* of France, Duke of Orleans, who for his great and worthie seruices done to the Crowne, was by the Generall States of France (assembled by command of King *Charles* the seuenth, called the victorious) declared Legitimate, and he and his descent proclaimed Princes, and all their rancke assigned immediatly after the Princes of the Bloud.

Concerning the descent of the House of *Lorraine*.

The same Authour of *S. Iulian* (supported by the Arch-Deacon of Verdun, misled with the same Doctrine) hath continued the descent of the Illustrous house of *Lorraine*, from Father to Sonne of the said *Charles of Lorraine*. And yet notwithstanding, it is a matter most certaine, that *Otho*, only Sonne to the said *Charles* of *Lorraine*, died without Children. Which hath made a great Ligne, described at large by the Authour of the Genealogie of *S. Arnoull* of *Mentz*, who liued vnder the Reigne of the good King *S. Lewes*, as it is described by himselfe. But returne we to the Originall of *Hugh Capet*, according to truth.

The Fragment of Maires of the Pallace of *France*, deriued from the Abbey of *Fleury*; *Paulus Diaconus*, in his Treatise of the Bishops of *Mentz*; *Theganus*, Coadiutor to the Arch-Bishop of *Treuers*, and all the auncient Annalists of Germanie and France, by a common consent doe instruct vs: That the two famous Families of the *Carlouingians*, and of the *Capets*, are descended of *Ansbert* the Senatour, Lord of the Auncient House, and whose Predecessors, at such time as the Romaines gouerned the Gaules, had beene Senatours and Gouernours of Austrasia, afterward named Orientall France. They erre then, that make this *Ansbert* the Senatour to be *Auberon*, the Graund-sonne to *Clodion*, King of France: For this *Ansbert* was of the Gaules Nation, sirnamed (but very vnconueniently) the Romaine.

Anchises the Father of *Æneas*.

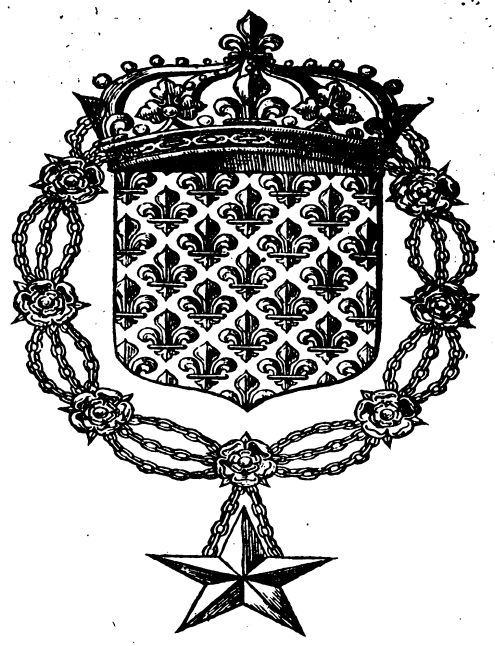
This *Ansbert* was issued from an House so Auncient, that to know the prime Originall thereof, and to gratifie the same: it is referred to the Troyan *Anchises*, the Father of *Æneas*, the pretended Founder of the Romaines. All these Fables let vs leaue them.

Clothaire the Great, King of all France.

The truth of this Genealogie speaketh, that this *Ansbert*, sirnamed the Senatour, was Maire of the Pallace of Austrasia, who had to wife *Blitilda*, daughter to the King of all France (as well *Westrienne*, as *Neustrienne*, and *Bourgongne*.) *Clothaire* the Great, second of the name, only Sonne to *Chilperick* and *Fredegonde*. It is the same *Clothaire*, represented on the Frontispiece of the Church at Paris, holding an Apple or Ball in his hand (according as the Romaine Emperours are figured) to shew, that he was the only King of all France.

Of

Of this Marriage of *Ansbert* and *Blitilda*, was borne *Arnauld*, Maire likewise of the Pallace of *Austrasia*, Father to *S. Arnoull*, Bishop of *Mentz*.



Arnulph restorer of the Abbey of *S. Denis* in France.

The said Saint *Arnulph*, before hee became a Bishop, was Gouernour to King *Dagobert*, first of the name (Restorer of the Abbey of Saint *Denis* in France) to whom he was Cousine Germaine, in regard of his Grand-mother *Blitilda*, and by him created Maire of the Pallace of *Austrasia*; in place of *Sadragesilus*, made Duke of *Aquitaine*. Saint *Arnulph* had to wife *Doada*, daughter to a Duke of Saxonie, after whose deceasse, hee tooke holy Orders, and so became Bishop of *Mentz*. The Fragment of Maires of the Pallace, saith; *Fuerunt Maiores Domus ex quibus Generatio Regalis processit. Primus quidem Ansbertus Senator, qui ex Blithilde filia Clotharij, genuit Arnoldum patrem Sancti Arnulphi, tandem Metensis Episcopi, qui genuit Anchisem patrem Pipini.*

Saint *Arnulph* had three Sonnes by *Doada* the *Sesne*, or Saxon, to wit, *Anchises*, *Walachises*, and *Clodulphus*; according as we learne by *Paulus Diaconus*, before alledged, in these words. *Arnulphus ex nobilissimo, fortissimoque Francorum Æmmiatestortus, ita Dei Ecclesiæ præfuit, vt & Palatij moderator sub honore Maioris Domus existeret. Hic iuuentutis suæ tempore ex legitimi matrimonij copulâ tres filios procreauit; Anchisum, Walachisum, & Clodulphum.*

Anchises, eldest Sonne to Saint *Arnulph*, had to wife *Begga*, sister to Saint *Gertrude de Niuelle* in Brabant, daughter to *Pepin Heristell* the Auncient, a great and powerfull Lord in *Austrasia*. Of which marriage was borne *Pepin*, Maire of the Pallace of *Austrasia*, called *le Gros* (for then and in those times, men had no other sir-names, but of their imperfections, or vertues, as well of the minde, as body) by reason of his fat and great corpulence.

The reason of sir-names in elder times.

Pepin the Auncient, had beside two daughters, a sonne named *Grimoald*, Maire of the Pallace to *Sigibert*, King of *Austrasia*, which he possessed by his Maire. And being himselfe without Children; he adopted (as his Sonne) *Hildebert*, Sonne to Maire *Grimoald*.

Hildebert son to *Grimoald*.

After this adoption (which was done in the West parts, by handling the beard and Haire of the adopted Sonne, and in the East, by putting on his shirt) *Sigibert* had a Sonne, named *Dagobert*, whom *Grimoald* and his Sonne *Hildebert* (after the death of the King his Father) excluded forth of his Country into Scotland, where he was shorne a Monke, so that no more speech was heard of him. And in his place, *Hildebert* was elected King of *Austrasia*, a Kingdome whereof he had no long enioying: because *Archambauld* (*Erceballdus*) Hildebert choosenking of Austrasia. ure and Count (that is to say, Gouernour of *Paris*, Founder of the Chapell

of *S. Christopher* in the Citie) vnder King *Clouis*, second of the name, was against those pettie Kings and Tyrants, slew *Hildebert* in the field, and brought *Grimoald* prisoner to *Paris*, where he was executed for his fellonies. And so, the whole ample succession of *Pepin Heristell*, fell to his daughter *Begga*, wife to *Ansegises*. For this cause *Paulus Æmilius* calleth her the only daughter; as she was from the death of her Father, and of the profession of her holy Sister S. *Gertrude*.

Pepin le Gros, sonne to *Ansegises* and *Begga*, was Maire of the Pallace of *Austrasia*, after the death of *Martine*, his Cousine Germaine by the Fathers side. He espoused *Plectrude*, and of her begat two sonnes, *Drogo*, that is *Dreux*, the young; and *Grimoald*, whom he made Maire of the Pallace of *Neustria* that was Occidentall France, whereof, *Paris* was the Capitall Citie, and position of the eldest; as Orientall France, called *Westria*, was that of the youngest.

The two sons of *Pepin le Gros*, and their portions.

Moreouer, he had by *Alpaida*, his Concubine, sister to *Dodon* (who stiled himselfe Maire of the Pallace of *Austrasia*, and who caused Saint *Lambert* of *Liege* to suffer Martyrdome) *Charles*, sir-named *Martell* (subiect of the Discourse of the *Order of the Gennet*) who hauing exterminated the legitimate sonnes of his Father, and published (as King) *Theodorick de Cheeles*, incapable to hold the Crowne of France: was made Duke, Prince of the French, and their King in effect.

Charles Martell maried *Bertha*, sir-named with the Great or Polte foote, daughter to *Martine*, Maire of the Pallace of *Austrasia*, his Cousine, sister to *Childebrand* and Colonell of the French Infanterie, as we haue said in the precedent Chapter. In this marriage he had *Pepin le Bref*, called and sir-named the Dwarfe, or little man in regard of his small stature: And *Carloman*, who yielded himselfe to be a Monke at *Mont Cassin* in Italie, being frghited with the report of his Fathers damnation. The Auncient Annalist saith; *Carolus Martellus genuit Pipinum Nanum, & Carlomannum post Monachum.*

The birth of *Pepin le Bref*, sir named the Dwarfe or little man.

Pepin the Dwarfe, otherwise called the little man, married *Bertrada*, daughter to the Emperor of Constantinople *Heraclius*, by whom he had two sons & one daughter named *Gisla*, Abbesse of *Argentueil*, in Latin *Gemes*, about two leagues from *Paris*, of whom *Aimoinard* speaketh. He had by a Concubine other Children, among which were *Gilan*, Arch-bishop of *Rouen*, and *Grifon*, whose eies were caused to be pluckt out, by his Brethren *Charles* and *Carloman*; because he would not liue in peace, but raised still new troubles in France. *Theganus*, in the life of *Lewes* the Debonnaire, saith. *Sanctus Arnulphus cùm esset in iuuentute Dux genuit Ansegisum Ducem; Ansegisus Dux genuit Pipinum Seniorem & Ducem* (the word *Senior* in our Auncient Annalists, is not alwaies to be vnderstood the auncient or elder, but signifieth Lord also. In the Oathes of Hommage and fidelitie; *Seniori meo Regi promitto, &c.*) *Pipinus Senior, & Dux genuit Karolum Seniorem, & Ducem: Karolus Senior & Dux genuit Pippinum quem Stephanus Pontifex consecrauit, & vnxit in Regem. Pippinus Rex genuit Karolum quem Leo Papa Romanus consecrauit & vnxit in Imperatorem.* *Ansegises* was Father to *Pepin le Gros*, Father of *Charles Martell*, Father of *Pepin le Bref* (sacred the second time by Pope *Stephen*, at *S. Denys* in France) Father of *Charles* the Great, and of *Carloman*, who after the death of King *Pepin* their Father, were elected and Sacred Kings of France; to wit, *Charles* in the Church of *Noyon*, at the entrance whereof (on the North side) is to be seene an auncient Table, which representeth the said Sacring: and *Carloman* at *Soissons*. The Chronicle of *Laureshеim*, saith; *Pippini Regis Filii Carolus, & Carolomanus consensu omnium Francorum Reges creati, & Carolus Noviomago Ciuitate, Carolomanus in Suessiona insignia Regni susceperunt.* The raigne of *Carloman* became in short time to be quite extinct: But for

The marriage and issue of *Pepin le Bref*.

The true Genealogie or descent of *Charles Martell*.

Charlemaigne, he had a Sonne, *Lewes* the Debonnaire, first of the name, King and Emperour, Father of

Lothaire, Emperour, King of Italie.

Lewes, King of *Bauaria*; And

Charles the Baulde, King of France, and Emperour, Father of

Lewes the Stammerer, second of the name, King of France, and Emperour, who marrying in the concluding of his daies, had by *Adeleida*, that is *Alix*, sister to the King of *England*, a Sonne Posthumus, named *Charles* the Simple, third of the name, King of France, in whom ended the Greatnesse of the House of *Charlemaigne*. The said Stammerer had by *Ansegarda*, his Lady in amorous embracements (before they were married) two Bastards, *Lewes* and *Carloman*, who being come to age at the death of their Father; vsurped perforce the Crowne of France, and stiled themselues Kings.

Charles the Simple borne after his Fathers death.

Charles the Simple, so named in regard of his deiected spirit, had to wife *Ogina*, daughter to *Elstan*, King of England, and of her begot *Lewes*, sir-named of *Beyond the Sea*, because he was nursed in England. This *Lewes* the fourth, espoused the eldest daughter to the Emperour *Otho* the first (eldest sonne to *Henry*, the Fowler or Bird-catcher, Emperour, and Duke of Saxonie) named *Herberga*: by whom he had two Sonnes, *Lothaire*, King of France in number, and *Charles* who was Duke of *Lorraine*, making himselfe Tributarie to the Emperour, and a mortall enemie to the French.

Why he was called *Charles* the Simple.

Henry the Bird-catcher.

Lothaire left *Lewes* the last, fift of the name, but last King of France, of the descendants of *Charlemaigne*; whose Ligne failed in the said *Lewes*, blamed with the sir-name of *Loyterer*, or *Doe nothing*, who reigned but one yeare. *Et hoc mortuo sine liberis translatum est Regnum ad Hugonem Capetum Filium Hadeuuidis*, so saith our ancient Annalist. You behold here the descendants of *Ansegises*, eldest sonne to *Arnulph* of *Mentz*: Let vs now speake of the younger Sonne, of whom are descended the most Christian Kings of France, in the third Ligne, which reigneth happily at this present.

Clodulphus the third sonne (for the second was of the Church) of *S. Arnulph* of *Mentz*, had to wife *Amalbertha*, daughter to a Count of Brabant, and of her begat many Children. After whose decease (following the steps and example of his Father) he yielded himselfe to the Churches seruice, and was Bishop of *Mentz*.

His eldest sonne *Martin* was Duke, that is to say, Gouernour of *Austrasia* (as his Father formerly had beene) intimately affected for his vertues, by *Sigibert*, King of *Austrasia*, sonne to *Dagobert* the first. After whose death, and of his Maire *Grimoald*, and his sonne *Hildebert*, the people of *Austrasia* deuided the power of the Maire of the Pallace into two parts, in sted of one: electing *Martin*, sonne of *Clodulphus*, and *Pepin le Gros*, both Cousins Germane by the Fathers side. These two Maires were summoned by *Ebrouin*, Maire of the Pallace to *Theoderick*, King of *Neustria* vnder colour (and his Maire in effect) to obey him. Vpon their refusall, he met them in Armes, neere to Laon in Laonnois, where the two Cousins were vanquished, *Pepin* saued himselfe by flight; but *Martin* remaining Prisoner, was slaine (in cold bloud) by *Ebrouin*, who would needes be sole Maire in all France. As he did the like to *Lendegisilus*, Maire of the Pallace, and Count of Paris, after the death of Archembauld, Founder of *S. Christophors* Church in the Citie of Paris. Afterward, *Ebrouin* was slaine by *Hermenfroy*, a French Gentleman: as a iust punishment inflicted on him, for so many cruelties by him committed, on the Princes and great Lords of France, from time to time.

Martin, eldest sonne to *Clodulphus*, eldest sonne to *Clodulphus* Duke of Austrasia.

Martin, eldest sonne to *Clodulphus*, espoused *Beatrix*, daughter to the Count and Gouernour of Ardenne, who was named *Ebo*, and by her he had diuers Children, the eldest whereof was

Childebrand, Duke of Austrasia, Cousine Germaine to *Pepin le Gros*, Father of *Charles Martell*, and *Mary de Bertha*, sister to the said *Childebrand*, which is the reason, why the Continuer of Saint *Gregorie Victor* of Tours, and *Gaguin*, doe call *Childebrand*, Father of *Charles Martell*. And this gaue subiect to *Du Tillet*, to mistake himselfe, and say, that the fore-named *Childebrand* was brother to *Pepin le Gros*; and to *Nicholas Gilles* in his Annals of France, to call him Vncle by the Mothers side to *Charles Martell*. If hee would be edited, he should say, that this *Bertha*, sister to *Childebrand*, was wife to

Errors committed by some Historians concerning *Charles Martell*.

Pepin le Gros, which he can no way finde: becauſe he had none but *Plectrude*, and therefore he ſhould not reade him Maternall Vncle to the Children of *Martell*, to whom he was Brother in Law, and Couſine by the Fathers ſide. This *Childebrand* ſucceeded in the honours of his Father, as well as in his valiancie. For he is renowned by all our Hiſtorians, for his dexteritie in managing Armes, whereof he made good apparance in the battaile of *Tours*, againſt the Sarazine *Abdirame*, where that great Thunderbolt of warre *Martell* (as *Paulus Æmilius* ſaith) ordaining and diſpoſing his Armie; vndertooke himſelfe to conduct the horſe-Troupes, and gaue that of the French Infanterie to *Childebrand* his Couſine and Brother in Law, Colonell of the ſaid Infanterie. Alſo, he had the honour of that victorious day; and, for recompence of his vertue, was firſt honoured (after the Chiefe) with *The Order of the Gennet*. After the ſaid battaile, the ſame *Childebrand* was ſent againſt *Athimus*, the Sarrazine Ammirant, who had poſſeſſed himſelfe of *Gothia* and *Prouence*. He ſhut him vp in the Citie of Auignion, famous in thoſe daies, for the ſtrength of her Scituation; he made it French, and conſtrained *Athimus* to ſaue himſelfe by the *Roze* (ſo did they call the Riuer *Rhoſne* in Auignion and Prouence) and flie to *Narbona*.

Thierry Count and Gouernor of France.

Thierry was the only Sonne to *Childebrand*, nouriſhed from his youngeſt yeares, in the Court of his Couſine by Father and Mother, *Charlemaigne*, by whom he was made Count, and Gouernour of France.

The Voiage into Spaine *of* Charles *the Great.*

DVring the voiage of *Charles* the Great into Spaine, the *Seſnes* (according to their wonted manner) reuolted from their obedience ſworne to the Kings of France: being incited to doe ſo, by *Witichind*, a Daniſh Lord, dwelling in Saxonie. *Charlemaigne* at his returne, in the beginning of Summer, held his Parliament in France (which is to be vnderſtood of Orientall France, in the Annales of Germanie) hauing paſt the Rhine at Cologne, he came to the Spring of the Riuer of *Leppe*, where his Tents and Pauillions were erected. And there he held his Generall Parliament, in the yeare 782. which being ended, and the Ambaſſadours of Denmarke and Hungaria diſpatched; he repaſſed the Rhine, and returned into the Gaules, the *Neuſtrian* France.

A Parliament helde by *Charles* the Great in his Tents.

Vpon this his returne, the *Seſne witichind*, who the yeare before had ſheltred himſelfe in Denmarke, his naturall Countrey: came backe againe into Saxonie, once more to make the people reuolt againſt *Charles*: to whom (at the ſame time) newes were brought, that the Sclauonians and Sorabes, inhabiting betweene the Riuers of *Saltz* and the *Elbe*, were entred into Armes, to forrage the Marches and confines of Saxonie and Thuring, fiering euerie where.

Speedily he expedited thence *Adalgiſus* his Chamberlaine; *Geilon*, Count of his Stable; and *Conrard*, Count of his ſacred Pallace (ſo in auncient times were called the Court and Caſtle of our Kings, as well during the firſt as ſecond Ligne of our Kings, Why then ſhould not we vſe the ſame now?) *Hincmarus*, Arch-biſhop of Rheimes, in the Epiſtle which he wrote to the King and Emperour *Lewes* the Stammerer, for ordaining and ruling his Court, ſpeaking of the Pallace of our Kings vſeth theſe tearmes (*Sacrum Palatium, Sacrum Regnum*) whom he commanded to take with them the Orientall French, and the *Seſnes* vnder his obedience, to checke the forwardneſſe of the Sorabes.

The Sacred Pallace an ancient name in France.

When they were entred on the Confines of Saxonie; they found all the *Seſnes* in Armes, conducted by *Witichind*, and readie to run vpon thoſe parts of France, which were the gouernment of *Thierry* of *Auſtraſia*. Wherefore, they were conſtrained to leaue the Sorabes in peace, to deale with a much neerer enemie, and ſo marched with the Orientall French, to encounter the *Seſnes* where they were then encamped.

Thierry met them at the entrance of Saxonie.

At the entrance of Saxonie they met *Thierry*, who came with his forces before the Emperours Lieutenant, of whom *Paulus Æmilius* termeth him to be

a neere kinſman, and to whom (in qualitie of a Prince of the Bloud) appertaine the command of the Armies. The Annaliſt of *Laureſheim*, vnder the yeare before dated, ſaith, *Quibus (Legatis) in ipſâ Saxoniâ obuiauit Thedericus Comes, Propinquus Regis cum ijs copijs quas auditâ Saxonum defectione, raptim in Ripuriâ congregare potuit.* *Thierry* gaue them councell to ſend firſt, and (with all diligence) to diſcouer by Spies, in what place the Saxons were, to the end they might the better aſſaile them; if commodiouſneſſe of the place, and his owne ſeating, would well permit it. The Councell being allowed for good, the chiefe leaders went in companie ſo farre as to the Mountaine of *Sontall*, on the North ſide whereof, the *Seſnes* had planted their Campe. *Thierry* hauing ordered his Campe, in the ſame place where he was arriued; *Adalgiſus*, *Geilon*, and *Conrard* (to engirt this Mountaine) paſſed by another way beyond the Riuer, where they incamped with their Squadrons. And there calling a Councell, they concluded among themſelues; to ſet vpon the enemie, without any knowledge giuen to *Thierry* (to whom the Conſtable *Geilon* bare deadly enuie, for the intendence and ſuperioritie of Commanding) as fearing, leaſt the glory and honour of victorie, which they accounted ſure in their owne poſſeſſion, ſhould be attributed to him.

The diſcretion of a prouident Commander.

Ambition and enuie hauing made theſe Chieftaines reſolute for battaile, they prepared themſelues for fight: marching (neuertheleſſe) in very bad order, as if they were to meddle with an enemie full of deſpairing feare, ready for retreate and flight; and not encamped on firme footing, or reſolued to ſell his skinne at a deare rate. On the ſpurre they galloped into the enemies Armie, and there prepared themſelues for pillage: whereas, on the contrarie, the enemie attending them with a ſetled determination; encloſed them on all ſides in ſuch ſort; that the moſt part of them periſhed by the edge of the ſword, very few remained, who got into the Campe of *Thierry*, which was on the other ſide of the Mountaine.

In this Battaile the loſſe was very great, in regard, that the chiefe Commanders loſt their liues, to wit, *Adalgiſus* and *Geilon*, foure Counts, and many great Lords, to the number of twentie. Vpon theſe ſad tidings, *Charles* himſelfe marched immediatly to the Field, with the Armie of *Thierry*; entred into Saxonie, called before him the principall Perſons of the *Seſnes*, and made enquirie for the chiefe Leaders of the Rebellion. All laid the fault on *Witichind*, who (after this ouerthrow) fled for ſafetie into Denmarke, according to his wonted manner. *Charles*, in reuenge of this diſhonour done him, diſcharged his anger on foure thouſand and fiue hundred *Seſnes*, attainted and conuinced of diſloyaltie, all which were beheaded in one day. *Cum Witichindum tradere nequirent, eo quod re Perpetrata ad Normannos ſe contulerat, cæterorum, qui perſuaſioni ſuæ mo-tum gerentes, tantum facinus peregerunt vſque ad quatuor & quinquaginta millia traditi, & ſuper Alaram fluuium in loco qui Ferdi vocatur, iuſſu Regis omnis vnâ die decollati ſunt.* After this reuenge ſo taken, *Charles* went and paſſed the Winter, as alſo the Feaſts of Chriſtmas and Eaſter at *Thion-Ville*, on the Frontiers of Luxembourg: giuing the gouernment of Saxonie to his Couſine *Thierry*, who (after that time) was Sir-named the Saxon. Yet with this condition, that foure yeares after, to wit, *An.* 786. (*Witichind*, and the moſt part of the *Seſnes* being ſubmitted to *Charlemaigne*, and embracing the Chriſtian faith) the ſaid *Thierry* ſhould take to wife *Iutha*, the only daughter to *Witichind*, ſir-named the Saxon: who thenceforward liued peaceably with his two ſonnes, of whom are deſcended the Dukes of Saxonie, which reigne to this day.

The Gouernment of Saxonie giuen to *Thierry*.

The deſcent of the Saxon Dukes.

Charlemaigne ſent the ſame *Thierry* (as his Lieutenant Generall) into Hungaria, to warre vpon the Hunnes, in the yeare 792. For, hauing deuided his Armie into two parts, *Partem Exercitus Thederico Comiti, & Meginfredo Cubiculario* (marke how the Annaliſt of *Laureſheim* maketh this Prince of the Bloud, to march before *Meinfroy* the Great Chamberlaine, and other Officers of the Crowne of France) *committens, eos per Aquilionarem Danubij ripam iter agere iuſſit: Ipſe cum parte quam ſecum retinuit, Auſtralem eiuſdem fluminis ripam Pannoniam petiturus occupauit.*

Ansbert the Senatour, his Predeceſſours and deſcendants, haning borne for Armes *De Gueulles à trois Aigles d'Or*, colour and mettail of the Romaine Emperor *Pepin le Bref*, whom the Genealogie of S. *Arnulph* of *Metz* calleth *Pepinum Numinum*, hauing bin exalted and Sacred King of the French, by vniuerſall conſent of the States of the Kingdome (that is to ſay, of the Church, and of the Nobilitie) tooke them of France, that is to ſay *E'Eſcu d'Azur ſeme de Fleurs de Lys d'Or*, colour and mettall of France, forſaking the three Eagles, which his Predeceſſours had carried.

The Armes of Prince *Thierry* permitted by *Charlemaigne*

And the ſame *Charlemaigne* permitted to Prince *Thierry*, by ſir-name of *Auſtraſia*, as his Predeceſſours were; to forſake the auncient Armes of the Familie, and to beare *De Gueulles au Raiz pommette & florence d'Or, à la bordure de France*: Armes which were retained from the time of *Hugh Capet*, who bare *De France ſans nombre*; ſo followed by the Kings his Succeſſors, euen to *Charles* the ſixt, *Qui les vemt à Trois Fleurs de Lys*.

Iſſue of the marriage of *Thierry* with *Iuthæ*.

In the marriage of *Thierry*, Count of *Saxonie* (that is to ſay, Gouernour) with *Iuthæ* were borne a Sonne and Daughter; to wit, *Hermingarde*, firſt wife to our King and Emperour *Lewes* the Debonnaire; and by this marriage was renewed the alliance betweene the deſcendants of the two Brothers *Anſegiſes* and *Clodulphus*. The Son was named

Robert, called the Strong and Valiant, alſo ſir-named the *Saxon*, becauſe hee was borne in *Saxonie*. Our King and Emperour *Charles*, ſecond of the name, and nicknamed the *Baulde* (The People is the ordenarie Godfather of Princes, whom they baptize with a Sir-name of their perfections and vertues of minde or body; as the Wiſe; the Valiant or Hardie; the Great, &c. as contrariwiſe, with imperfections; the Simple; the Stammerer; the Lame or Crookt backt; the Leaprous; the Good or Bad; the Blacke; the White; the Wrie-neckt; the Lewde; the Wretch; the Sullen or Dogged, and ſuch like.) Sonne to *Lewes* the Debonnaire, and *Iduith* his ſecond wife; cauſed the ſaid *Robert* the Strong to come into France, to ſerue as a Bulwarke or defence againſt the Daniſh and Norman Rouers or Pirats, who iſſuing from *Scandinauia*, ſpoyled the coaſts of the Ocean Sea, all along *Piccardie*, *Normandie*, *Bretaigne* and *Aquitaine*.

This Nation (then being Pagans and Infidels) began to ſhew themſelues (immediately after the death of our Great *Clouis*) vpon the Marches and confines of *Auſtraſia*, conducted by a Leader, whom the Archbiſhop of *Tours* S. *Gregory Victor*, in his Hiſtorie of France, calleth *Cochilarius*: who hauing carried his buſineſſe but badly in this firſt proceeding, continued ſome while afterward in quiet, without ſeeking his fortune any where elſe.

The inhumain cruelty of Pirates & Rouers

Vnder the Reigne of *Charles* the Baulde, thoſe *Normans*, that is to ſay, People of the North, (acknowledged vnder the name of *Danes*) returned to roue on the coaſtes of France, with moſt barbarous cruelty. They preſumed principally on the Marches of *Bretaigne*, wonne the mouth of the Riuer of *Loire*, and vpon a Saturday, in the yeare of Grace, Eight hundred fiftie three, they ſurprized the Citie of *Nantes*, maſſacred inhumainely the Biſhop and Prieſts, ſacked the Citie: and in the ſame furie, put to fire and pillage, them of *Angiers* and *Tours*, returning loaden with moſt wealthie booties to their Countrey in the North. So they left France as then for a time in quietneſſe; yet troubled afterward againe by the ſame wicked Nation, who miſerably forradged the Prouinces of *Touraine* and *Poicton*.

The reaſon why Prince *Robert* was called into France.

For aſſurance whereof in following times, and to repreſſe theſe Norman Pyrates, enemies (and riciprocally hated) of all Nations: our King *Charles* the Baulde, cauſed to come from Saxonie into France, this Prince *Robert* his Couſine, then eſteemed (ſo ſaith *Paulus Æmilius*) for the moſt valiant Gentleman, among all the other of his time. Hee came accompanied with his three Sonnes, *Thierry*, *Eudes* and *Robert*; beſide a good number of Gentlemen and Saxon Souldiours. The *Baulde* gaue him *Anion*, in title of an hereditarie Countie, to him and his deſcendants, and the name of Marqueſſe on the Coaſtes of *Bretaigne*. *Fecit eum Præfectum littoris Armorici*, ſay the Annaliſts of thoſe times. And concerning this Countie

Countie of *Anion*, it is to be noated, that *Anion* had (in former times) bin deuided into two Gouernments, by title of Counties, to wit, the Countie of *Anion* beyond *Maienne*, whereof *Angiers* was the capitall Citie, and the ordenary dwelling of the Count; and the other on this ſide *Maienne*, the principall place whereof was *Chaſteau-Neuf*. The Annales of *Anion* (ſtuffed with Fables and old wiues tales, as well as ours) doe ſay, that to the Countie of *Anion* beyond *Maienne*, belonged Counts from all antiquitie. But that on this ſide *Maienne*, was held by the Kings of France, and giuen by our King *Charles* the Baulde to *Robert*: who afterward (ſo ſaith *John de Bourdigne*) for defence and tuition of the Kingdome, againſt the furie and infidelitie of the *Normans*, then Pagans likewiſe, was made Count of Paris.

Anion deuided in two Counties.

This Riuer of *Maienne*, which paſſeth by *Laual*, *Chaſteau-Gontier* and *Angiers*, and which it thwarteth in the midſt; is called by the Poet *Lucane* in his deſcription of the Gaules, *Maduana*, in theſe fiue Verſes, which are not found in the impreſſions of *Paris* and *Lions*, but in a Manuſcript, as wee haue ſaid in the former Booke.

Pictones immunes ſubigunt ſua rura: nec vltra,
Inſtabiles Turones circunſita caſtra coercent,
In ripis Maduana tuis marcere peroſus
Andus, iam placidâ Ligeris recreatur ab vndâ.
Inclita Cæſareis Genabos diſſoluitur alys.

In the yeare eight hundred ſeauentie fiue, the ſame Normans (being lickoriſhly longing after more French booties) made another new apparance on the Coaſtes of Bretaigne. For reſiſtance whereof, Marqueſſe *Robert* of *Anion*, hauing to aide and ſuccour him the Duke and Gouernour of *Aquitaine* Lord *Ranulphe*, gaue them Battaile: but the ſaid two Commanders were ſlaine, and maſſacred in the Field by the Normans, who well mannaging their Victorie, went and ſurprized the Citie of *Angiers*. There were they as ſuddenly inueſted by *Odo*, that is, *Eudes*, ſecond Sonne to the Marqueſſe *Robert*, and compelled to yeelde to the mercy of *Charles* the Baulde; who (in ouer-much abounding clemencie) permitted, that they ſhould returne againe into *Dania*.

The fortunes of *Thierry* following *Lothair* King of Italie.

Thierry, eldeſt Sonne to *Robert*, following the Court and fortune of *Lothaire*, King of Italie, eldeſt Sonne of the *Debonnaire* by his firſt wife *Hildegard* (by whoſe death he was Emperour, and after him ſo was *Charles* the Baulde.) This *Lothaire* eſtabliſhed *Thierry* his Couſine, Duke and Gouernour of *Bourgongne*: which then (with *Prouence*) made part of the Kingdome of Italie, by the vnhappy partition of the *Debonnaire*. The Riuer of *Saone* deuided the French *Bourgongne* from the Italian, which ſince then hath bin named and called *The French Countie*, euen to this preſent. This *Thierry* left two Sonnes, to wit, *Richard*, Duke of *Bourgongne* (who was Father to *Raoull*, or *Radulph*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, and King of *France*, after *Eudes* and *Robert* his Couſins by the Fathers ſide) and *Richard* alſo, Duke of *Bourgongne*, whoſe onely Daughter was married to *Otho* (Brother of *Hugh Capet*) to whom ſhe brought in marriage, the Duchie of *French Bourgongne*,

Eudes, otherwiſe called *Odo*, ſecond Sonne to *Robert* of *Anion*, ſucceeded in the honours and titles of his Father, but with farre greater happineſſe. For his valiancie, he was intirely affected by *Lewes*, the Stammerer, ſecond of the name, King of France and Emperour; who gaue him the Citie and Countie of *Paris*, with the title of honour and preheminence of Duke of the *French*, and Seneſchall, that is, Great Maiſter of *France*. And becauſe *Charles le Gras*, Sonne to *Lewes* King of *Bauaria*, in a brauado, and to deſpight him, had procured himſelfe to be crowned Emperour: the Stammerer lying on his death-bed (by his laſt will and teſtament) ordained and inſtituted the ſaid *Eudes*, his Couſine by the Fathers-ſide, Regent of the Kingdome of *France*, and Tutour or Guardian to the fruite which ſhould iſſue from the wombe of his wife *Adelaida* (that is, *Alice*) of *England*, ſhe being conceiued with childe foure or fiue moneths, if ſhee ſhould be deliuered of a Soune.

Eudes made Regent of France.

Declaring

Declaring manifestly by this gift of Gardian and Regent, that he did not acknowledge any other Prince in his Kingdome, neerer to succeede in the Crowne of France, then the said *Eudes* of *Anion*.

The birth of *Charles* the Simple.

Adelaida was deliuered of a Sonne Posthumus, which was *Charles*, called the Simple, because he had slender endowments of minde. In regard of his minoritie in yeares; *Lewes* and *Carloman*, Bastards to the Stammerer (whom he begot of a meane Damosell, named *Ansegarda*, that had the fauours of his youth) entitled themselues Kings of France: Reigned for a time, and are denominated in the List and Catalogue of Kings.

The Stammerers Bastards.

Arnulph the Bastard son of *Carloman*.

By the death of these two, *Charles le Gras*, Emperour, was called to the Kingdome by some French Lords: but being excluded by want of Iudgement, *Arnoull* or *Arnulph*, Bastard to *Carloman*, Son to *Lewes* King of *Bauaria*, was elected Guardian for the person of the said *Charles le Gras* his Vnckle; in place of whom he tooke the title of Emperour. *Arnoull* seeing himselfe Emperour; pretended the Regencie and Tutelage of the Simple, and stiled himselfe King of France.

No stranger King of France although a Prince of the Blood.

Against this *Arnoull*, the Noblemen of France opposed themselues, who neuer would acknowledge a strange Prince for their King, although he were of the Blood of France. So that by common consent, the French ordered with one accord, that *Eudes* Count of *Anion*, should Reigne ouer them, during the minoritie of *Charles* his Pupile. According to this agreement, *Eudes* was Sacred King of France, by *Gautier*, Archbishop of *Sens*. Against this Sacring, young *Baldwine*, Count of *Flanders*, made opposition, who maintained his right of preferrence, as being descended in direct Ligne from *Charles* the Baulde, Father of *Iudith* his Mother, Sister to *Lewes* the Stammerer. Notwithstanding all his reasons, he was payed with the money of France; from the Crowne whereof all Daughters are excluded, although they be naturall and legitimate; according to the fundamentall *Salique Law* of the Kingdome.

The Text of the Salique Law.

Successor Imperij Francorum Masculus esto.

Vnder the first and second Lignes of our Kings, Bastards haue rather bin admitted to the Crowne, then Daughters, and their legitimate Sonnes. *Eudes* dying, left the Crowne to the Simple, to whom it appertained by right naturall and diuine.

Robert, second of the name, Count of *Paris* and *Anion*, brother to *Eudes*, maintained against the Simple, and his pertakers; that the Crowne appertained to him, by the death of his Brother, as a Prince of the Blood, legitimate and naturall Heire to his Brother. Nor did the last words of *Eudes* hurt or preiudice him, for acknowledging *Charles* the Simple, to be by (good right) excluded from the Crowne, as well for his imbecilitie, as by consent of the generall States of France, who had adiudged to the said *Eudes*, that there was no right or due, to deprive the hereditarie rights of Succession, by renouncing them for the profit of a person, who had formerly bin sentenced as vnworthy and vncapable. Vpon which words, *Robert* ioyning effects to them, was Sacred King of France by *Herue*, Archbishop of *Rheimes*, and made so strong a League with his kinred and friends, that death it selfe could not alter nor dissolue it. For those which proceeded of his Linage, remained (very speedily) peaceable possessors of the Crowne of France: *Robert* hauing (as it were) sealed it with his death, and signed it with his Blood, being slaine (to maintaine his title) in a foughten Battaile, neere to *Soissons*, in the yeare of Grace 922. *Charles* the Simple (alwayes keeping that Sir-name) deriued but small benefit from this *Cadmean* Victory, being hated and despised of his owne people, for his little care of gouernment, in aduancing to the height of Fortunes-wheele, his Minnion *Aganon*, of base and meane qualitie, preferring him with the greatest Lords of France. Who forsooke him in such sort, that keeping him prisoner at *Peronne*, he died within foure yeares after his surprizall; compelled by old *Hebert*, Count of *Vermandois* (that kept him prisoner) to resigne his Crowne to *Raoull* or *Rodolphe*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, his God-sonne and Kinseman, who reigned some time.

Robert Sacred King of France

time. *Robert* the second espoused the Sister to old *Hebert*, of whom he left a Sonne, named

Hugh the great Abbot, otherwise called the white Abbot, for reasons noated in the precedent Tract. Hee tooke to wife *Haunida* (that is *Auoya*) yongest daughter to the Emperour *Henry* the Bird-Catcher, Sister to *Otho*, Emperour, first of the name, and of *Gerberga*, wife to *Lewes* of Beyond the Seas, sonne of the Simple: so that the King and his Subiect were Brothers in Law by alliance. *Hugh* (neuertheleese) did not forbeare to maintaine the right, which he pretended to the Crown of France. This *Hugh*, had by his first wife *Auoya*, three Sonnes; as namely, *Hugh Capet*; *Odo* Duke of *Bourgongne*, and *Henry*, who by the decease of his brother *Odo*, became Duke of *Bourgongne*. In second marriage he espoused a daughter to *Edward*, King of *England*, sister to *Ogina*, wife to the Simple: and by her hee had a daughter, married to the Duke of *Normandie*, *Richard sans Paur*, Sir-named *Long-Legges*.

The issue of *Hugh* the great Abbot.

Hugh, Sir-named *Capet*, or *Capouche*, because he was wilfull and obstinate (eldest Sonne of *Hugh* the white Abbot, because he delighted to weare a white Gonnelle, and white Cloake) was by consent of the generall States of France, declared, published and Sacred King of *Rheimes*, in the yeare of Grace 987. as we haue elsewhere said.

Of *Hugh Capet* or *Caroucha* and his arising to be King.

And so the Crowne of France passed from the Ligne of *Charles* the Great, descended of *Ansegises*, eldest Sonne to S. *Arnulphe* of *Mentz*; to that of *Martine*, Maire of the Pallace of *Austrasia*, descended from *Clodulphe*, yongest Sonne to the said S. *Arnulphe*, and was rendered peaceably to his Family (which reigned happily) in the person of the said *Hugh Capet*, who rendered it firme and stable to *Robert* the Deuout his Sonne, and to his descendants: God appearing well pleased with this translation to the Ligne of *Hugh Capet*, which hath already continued in it selfe longer time, then both the other together.

The passage of the Crown of France from the Ligne of *Charlemagne*.

And this is the reason why *William de Nangis*, stopping the mouthes of the new Writers of our times (badly informed in our Historie, or purposely desiring to disguise truth, and obscure it with the vaile of lying) discourseth effectually, speaking of *Hugh Capet*: *That hee was no Vsurper of the Crowne of France, but a legitimate Lord, and possessour thereof. Sed nec iste Hugo Regni inuasor, aut vsurpator alequaliter est iudicandus, quem ad tantæ dignitatem Regni proceres elegerunt, & euexerunt.*

I let passe (vnder silence) the testimonie of the same Authour, speaking of Pope *Innocent*, who *In Decretali suo Ludouicum sextum* (that is *Lewes le Gros*) *qui descendit ab isto Hugone adstruit processisse de progenie Caroli Magni, quod fiare non posset, si iste Hugo de eadem progenie non descendisset.*

The same Author writeth in his Chronicle of *Hugh* the great Abbot, Father of *Hugh Capet*, who hauing caused to be brought into France, the bodies of S. *Riquier* and of S. *Valery*, to the Townes called by their names, and who, also to auoide the furie of the *Normans*, had transported them to S. *Omer*, in the Abbey of S. *Berthin*; S. *Valery* appeared to this Prince, and told him, that for the remembrance he had acknowledged of them; *His Sonnes and Descendants should reigne in France vnto the seuenth Generation*, that is to say, *to infinite Ages. Ipsi Hugoni magno post hoc factum fuit reuelationem à sancto Valerico dictum fuit, quod propter hoc quod fecerat, eius Generatio esset ipsum in Regno Francorum vsque in septimam Generationem, id est, in perpetuum regnaret.*

The apparition of S. *Valery* to *Hugh* the great Abbot.

Very idlely then doe those Writers (enemies to the peace of France) vse their mercenarie tongues, and corrupted pennes, to lay a false imposition vpon truth against which no one can iustly write, so saith the great *Tertullian*) affirming by their writings in our time: *That Capet the Stranger* (the Florentine Poet *Dante* deserueth no answere) *vsurped the Crowne of France against Charles of Lorraigne, legitimate and naturall heire thereof.* And that this vsurpation made contrary to all reason, of a Subiect against his Soueraigne Prince, could not hold any auaileable title of prescription, or lawfull possession; whatsoeuer immemorable length of time may be alleadged for it. Impertinent Iurists, well chosen and tried, to sustaine so bad a cause.

Dante the Florentine Poet.

What

What better title can all the Princes of the world haue, whereby to maintaine the posseſſion of their Eſtates, then vniuerſall conſent of their Subiects? That is a valuable title, which maketh preſcription againſt all ſuch as can call it in queſtion: being ioyned and annexed to an immemorable poſſeſſion and enioying, which is another title of good fidelitie, yea, euen to a Stranger Prince, were he called from the remoteſt parts of *China*. *Noneſt vſurpator & inuaſor, quem ad Regiam dignitatem Regni Proceres euexerunt.*

He is no vſurper or inuador that is called lawfully to the Crowne.

Impertinent is it by writing, to call *Capet* and his deſcendants, ſtrangers, thereby to bring Strangers into France, and ſo to faſten the Crowne thereof vpon their heads. And much more ſhameleſſe impudence is it, to make him (contemptibly) deſcended of a Baſtard, *Hugh*, the Sonne of *Lothaire* the ſecond, who gaue him the Dukedome of *Bourgongne* the higher, that is, *La France Counte*; and that this *Hugh* came to dwell in France, where hee was married, leauing a Sonne, named *Robert*, ſent by the Emperour *Arnulphe*, to defend the Kingdome of France againſt Norman Pirats: by whom (ſay thoſe vnnaturall French Writers) he was ſlaine in a foughten Battaile. And that the ſaid *Robert* was Sonne to *Eudes*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, who vſurped the Kingdome againſt *Charles* the Simple, and his Sonnes. Theſe are the tearmes of a pretended Plea, made (ſay ſome) by *Lewes*, eleauenth of the name, on the pretences of *Mary* of *Bourgongne*, eldeſt daughter to *Charles* the laſt Duke, brought to light at the beginning of the troubles excited in this Realme (vnder name of the *Holy League*, mad and furious) by a Bourgongnon, named of S. *Iulian*. Which diſcourſe is without approbation, and nameleſſe of any Aduocate or Proctor Generall, belonging to the ſaid *Lewes* the eleauenth, but truely worthie, and capable of the name of a Paradoxe, which it beareth for a fronteſpice. Neither is there any matter of truth in it, but where he ſaith in two paſſages, that this *Hugh*, the Sonne of *Lothaire* the ſecond, was not reputed legitimate, and from thence ſhould enſue a conſequence, more then moſt dangerous, againſt the honor and perſon of our Kings, deſcending from *Capet*. But in thoſe times then, was the reigne of falſe Prophets, wherein the Prince of darkeneſſe exerciſed his power on thoſe ſale-able ſoules; to the end, to cut and deuide in pieces (by Strangers Coyes) the Crowne of France.

The troubles of the vnholy League.

Very true it is, that in the yeare of Grace, eight hundred and tenne, *Godfrey*, a Daniſh Prince, came and coaſted on *Friezland*, with a Fleete of two hundred Shippes, burning and deſtroying the Iſlands thereof; ſo ſaith *Meier* in his ſecond Booke of the Annales of *Flanders*. In the yeare Eight hundred thirtie ſeauen, the *Normans*, neighbours to the *Danes*, made the like deſcent into *Zealand*, and the adiacent Iſlands, where they put all to fire and ſword. So that the Emperour *Charles* the Baulde, for aſſurance of the Coaſts on the Sea, in the yeare 863. erected *Holland* to be a Countie; and the firſt Count thereof was *Thierry*, who was likewiſe Surnamed the *Frizone*.

Godfrey a Prince of Denmarke.

Another returne of the Normans into France.

Yet notwithſtanding all this, the Normans left not their former courſes, but returned againe into France, in the yeare Eight hundred eighty foure, after the death of the King and Emperour *Lewes* the Stammerer, at ſuch time as *Lewes* and *Carloman* his Baſtards, tooke the title of Kings of France. Theſe two (being well ſtipended with money) bought of the Normans a Truce for twelue yeares, ſo that leauing France at reſt for a time: the ſaid Normans ioyned themſelues with the Danes, conducted by their chiefe Commanders *Godfreye* and *Sigefroye*. Being thus accompanied, they entred on the Lands of the Emperour *Charles le Gras*, and after they had pilled *Piccardie*, *Cambreſis*, *Therouenne*, *Artois*, *Cleues*, *Guelders* and *Brabant*: they tooke (by force) the Cities of *Liege*, *Vtrecht*, *Tongres*, *Treuris*, with *Aix la Chappelle*, from whence they ſet towards *Mentz*, to doe the like there.

Charles le Gras foiled in Battaile by the Normans and Danes, and forced to ſeeke their friendſhip

To checke theſe inſolent courſes of theirs, *Charles le Gras* marched in perſon againſt them, and gaue them Battaile, wherein he was vanquiſhed. So that he was conſtrained and forced, not onely to deſire their friendſhip; but alſo to giue them certaine parcels of Land, to make firme their dwelling in. And for the better aſſurance of theſe his new Gueſts, he gaue as wife to *Godfrey*, a choiſe Lady, named

named *Giſla*, the Baſtard daughter of his deceaſed Couſine Germaine, *Lothaire* the ſecond; and for her Dowrie, he gaue the Countie of *Friezland*, ſo ſpeaketh our Annales, and them of *Flanders*.

This *Lothaire* the ſecond had married *Thiethberga*, a wife and vertuous Princeſſe, iſſued from the Blood of *Charlemaigne*. But ſhe diſtaſting him, becauſe hee kept a Concubine, called *Waldrada*: he grew mallicious againſt her, tearming her barren and vnfruitfull. So that hauing won to his part *Gautier*, Archbiſhop of *Maugunce*, and *Thietgauld*, Archbiſhop of *Treuers*: they pronounced ſentence of ſeparation, betweene *Lothaire* and his wife *Thiethberga*, he being permitted to marrie againe, as (very ſoone after) he did, eſpouſing his Concubine *Waldrada*. But the Pope then ſitting, declared a *Nullitie* of that marriage, excommunicating *Lothaire* and his Concubine; depoſing alſo from their Archbiſhopricks *Gautier* and *Thietgaulde*, who had time and leiſure enough, for better performance of their penance, ſo are the words ſet downe in our Annales.

Lothaire married his Concubine *Waldrada*.

Lothaire had by this *Waldrada*, the ſame *Giſla*, which was married to *Godfrey* the *Dane*, made Count of Friezland; and *Hugh*, of whom our great Writers will haue to deſcend, *Robert* the Strong, Count of *Anion*, and our *Hugh Capet*.

Giſla married to *Godfrey* the *Dane*.

This *Hugh* poſſeſſed himſelfe of a part of *Lorraine*, in thoſe times of farre greater extendure, then it is at this preſent. And to maintaine himſelfe in this vſurpation, and (by little and little) to impeach the French, from forcing him to leaue his prize; he moued his brother in law * *Godfrey*, to ſend and demand of the Emperour *Le Gras*, farre greater matters, then (by his owne knowledge) was likely he euer would yeelde vnto. Which ſerued him as a new ſubiect, to forrage France and Germanie againe, and better meanes for himſelfe, in the conſeruation of his Conqueſt, whereof hee promiſed to beſtow a part vpon his Brother in Law.

Hugh vſurped a great part of *Lorraine*.

* The Huſband to his Siſter *Giſla*.

Le Gras diſcouering the mallice and perfidious dealing of the Baſtard; made anſwere to the deputies ſent from *Godfrey*; that he deſired to ſee their Prince, to the end, he might the more ſufficiently content him. *Godfrey* ſet forward on the way, and the Emperour hauing prouided an ambuſh for him, by a Saxon Lord, named *Henry*; by the principall of his Court, being fallen in among them, was ſlaine in the place. Which wicked deede was reuenged on the ſame *Henry*, for he being come to the ſuccour of the Citie of *Paris*, beſiedged then by the *Normans*; was taken by them in a charge, and there inſtantly ſlaine, as is more at large declared in the Booke of the ſame Siedge.

Godfrey ſlaine treacherouſly by the Emperors procurement.

Saxonia vir Ainricus fortiſque, potenſque
Venit in auxilium Gozlini Preſulis Vrbis.

And a little lower ſpeaking of his death.

En & Ainricus Superis crebro votitatus,
Obſidione volens illos vallare, necatur.

And as for the Baſtard of *Hugh*, being forſaken of his owne followers; he was betrayed, and brought before *Charles le Gras*, who cauſed him to be ſhut vp in a Monaſtery, his eyes being firſt pluckt out of his head. The Annales of Germany, and *Sigibertus Gemblacenſis*, vnder the yeare Eight hundred eightie ſixe. *Hugo filius Lotharij Regis ex Waldrada pellice paternum Lotharingiæ Regnum rebellando aſſequi perans, Godefrido Normannorum Duci, cui Soror ſua Giſla nupſerat, medietate affectati Regni promiſſa perſuadet, vt ab Imperatore Imperiales fiſcos ad libitum ſuum ſibi addi exoraret. Per hoc vtrimque Imperatorem circumuenire putans: ſi daret Normanni hoſtes Regni in viſceribus regni immitterentur: Si negaret iuſtam rebellandi cauſam habere viderentur. Ad hoc tractandum iuſſu Imperatoris, Henrico duce, & Godefrido in Batauia ex condicto conuenientibus, inter agendum Godefridus cum ſuis punitur. Nec multo poſt etiam Hugo ab Henrico excæcatur, & nouriſſime in Monachum Prumiæ attondetur.*

Of the Baſtard Son of *Hugh*.

Hugh Capet then was not iſſued of *Witichind* the *Saxon* Stranger, nor of this baſtered Baſtard, as ignorants ſay: But a Frenchman by extraction and originall, as alſo

a Prince, of the Noble blood of France, issued from the Counts of *Anion* and *Maine*, who made their abiding at *Chasteau-Neuf* in *Anion*, whose Tombes and Sepulchres are yet to be seene, with their Armes and Banners *De Gueulles au Raiz pommettè, & Fleuronne d'Or, de huit pieces, à la Bordure de France*, as we haue already said elsewhere.

Now concerning the Crowne of France, it appertained to the said *Capet* by three meanes.

Of three seuerall meanes, whereby the Crowne of France belonged to *Hugh Capet*.

First, because he was descended of *Eudes*, brother to *Robert*, Count of *Anion*, Sacred and Crowned King of France; whereof he was Regent, and Guardian to King *Charles* the Simple, as well by the Testament of the late King *Lewes* the Stammerer, Father of the said Simple; as by the consent generall of all the States of the Kingdome, by reason of want of gouernment in the Simple.

Secondly, because he was Son to *Hugh* the Great, Brother to *Robert*, Sacred likewise King of France, in the Church of Rheimes.

And thirdly, because he was issued of the auncient Princes of the blood, Cousin (in many degrees, as well by Father as Mother) from *Pepin* and *Charlemaigne*, and their Sonnes and descendants, as we haue said. So that being the prime Prince of the Blood; *Charles* of *Lorraigne* (meerely became a Stranger) the Crowne appertained to him.

Adde we hereto, that he was the wisest, and most iudicious Prince of all them in his time. And, for his rare vertues, he was wished, desired and requested of all the French people, as a sacred blessing sent of God from Heauen, to calme the tempests, troubles and disorders, which ouer-whelmed all France: whereof, by consent of the whole world, he was proclaimed King.

The beginning of the French Monarchie.

The Kings of the first Ligne, had begunne the Monarchie of France by franchise and libertie, retained it (very long time after) on the tearmes of duetie and obedience. But these bounds and limits were out-stept and changed, into all impunitie of doing euill. This first Franchise was supported, made firme and enabled, by sincerities of Religion; which saw it selfe disformed by abuse and Simonie.

Charlemaigne the reformer of Religion.

Charlemaigne the true Sonne of the second Race, by holy Ordenances (reported in his Capitularies) reformed the franchise of Religion; seruing as a Glasse or Mirrour to all them of his descent, for imitation of his example. But when they began to contemne it; it fell to the ground, without hope or meanes of restoring. For, leading dissolute liues; they abused Religion, possessed themselues of the Churches goods, to bestow them on their *Hagmons*, Women and Minnions. Yet, God did so farre suffer it, that the greatest men in the Kingdome, had the very best and richest Benefices: and, on their Reuenewes, they payed Armies, to make warre with their Kings, and (in the end) to suppresse them.

The wise and worthy gouernment of *Hugh Capet*.

God raised miraculously *Hugh Capet*, who, to become wiser; made profit of the later Kings bad behauiour; so that from the very entrance of his Reigne, hee appeased all troubles and disorders in the Kingdome. Yet not by Fire or Canterizing, but by a fairre milder way, that is to say; by politicall Lawes, and, through the obseruation of them, hee brought all (at the first) to former obedience.

He made the Law of Reuersions, and yonger Brothers portions; and that also, against alienating the demeanes of the Crowne. And, being able to doe no otherwise, he confirmed the Dukes and Counts in their Gouernements, which (of themselues) were become hereditarie to them; but yet with charge of seruice, and of continuing Liedge-men; and by these meanes he contented the Lords of the Kingdome.

A truely Noble minde in a King.

Hee discharged the people of all new Subsidies, and expelled from his Court dissolutions, superfluitie of habites and Feastes, corruption and selling of Court Offices, Flatterers, Bawdes, and councell of yong heads without experience.

In his time, his Court, and chiefely in himselfe, shined most wise and modest carriage in all actions. Power was maintained in the King; Iustice ruled euery where,

here, fastened with a knot and bond (more then *Gardian*) of Peace. Religion was carefully kept; and the State affaires were mannaged by iudgement, and aduise of the most aged and wisest Councellers, with speedie expedition, the onely noate of admirable experience.

Hee forgot all reuenge, and pardoned the offences committed against him and his Predecessours. From him grew the remarkeable Apothegme: *That the Kings of France will not meddle, in reuenging the enmities of the Counts of Paris, and of Anion.*

Hee caused his Sonnes to be educated among them of the Nobilitie of the Kingdome; to the end, that being inured to the good and happie ayre of the Court, as also the obedience and seruice which they owe to their King: by degrees they might be nourished vp in Religion, which shined principally in the Court. For, to shew an example, among others, hee restored to the Abbyes of Saint *Denys* in France, of Saint *Germain des Prez*, and Saint *Martin* of Tours, the fruites and reuennues, whereof, hee, his Father and Grandfathers had (against all right) vsurped. So that hee serued as a Lanthorne or guide to the great Lords of the Kingdome, for doing the like, to the great good of the *Gallicane* Church. Whereto hee also caused to be restored, the goods of the Pagans Idoles, giuen by *Charlemaigne*, and whereof euery Gentleman (in his place of dwelling) was made Maister by right of correspondencie. And here you may behold the very words of his Ordenance, published throughout all the Prouinces of France.

The Proclamation published by *Hugh Capet*.

IN Dei nomine, omnibus præsentibus & futuris. Hugo Dei Gratia Francorum Rex. Cum sit dignum Deo omnia bona referre, & quæ sunt Dei Deo dare, vt diuina bona multiplicet semen Regale nostrum in sui honorem, & vtilitatem gentium, omnes Ecclesiarum libertates, dona & priuelegia firmiter & deuote confirmamus. Volumus item vt Carta gloriosæ memoriæ Caroli Francorum Regis de possessionibus Dijs gentium quondam dicatis, & diuino cultui applicandis, in omnibus obseruetur. Qui aliquid de his aliquid subtrahere voluerit, vel aliquo tempore Cartam hanc Regalis rescripti violare præsumat, sentiat in omnibus rebus suis detrimentum, & partem habeat cum Sathana principe tenebrarum. Pactum hoc ad Aram beatorum Apostolorum Passus (which at this present is Saint *Geneuiefue* of Paris) *sub sigillo nostro, & infrascriptorum. S. Roberti filij nostri. S. Roberti de Nogeria. S. Genselini Syluanectensis Bursulary. S. Martini Camerarij. S. Genserici Referendarij.*

Abuses committed by great Officers of the Crowne.

The great Officers of the Crowne had abused their charges, and made profit of them, to the preiudice of the Kings their Maisters: so that being become more powerfull then they, euen in an instant, not onely they possessed themselues of the Prouinces of France; but also of their Kings persons. As was put in practise on those Kings, *Charles* the Simple, prisoner at Saint *Quentin*, and *Chasteau Therry*, and his Sonne *Lewes* of *Beyond the Seas*. *Hugh Capet* therefore made distinction of the Officers of the Crowne, from them about the person of Kings. Hee suppressed the Maires and Counts of the Pallace, burying their Offices honorably in the Royaltie, and in place of the Officers of the Houshold, Pallace Royall, and person of the King, preceding all other dignities; he caused them to be preceded by the Officers of the Crowne, whom hee instituted, to the end, that such as possessed the Kings person, might not also possesse the State. So that by this meanes, he planted an opposition or contradiction in his Court, to maintain (as it were by a counterpoize) the said Officers seuerally in their duties. He made the Maister of the Horse, chiefe Commander in his warres, and of his Armies: the Chancellor was the prime Officer of Iustice, and Pollicie in the Kingdome, as if he were the Lord chiefe Iustice.

Offices doubled on euery man in his degree.

On behalfe of the Nobilitie, and men of warre, which swarmed thorow France, as daily it happened during, and at the returne of the inciuile Warres, hee ordained and established Marshals in all the Prouinces; to haue a vigilant eye ouer the peoples tranquilitie, and roughly to chastise Theeues and Robbers

The Peoples tranquilitie especially respected.

on the wayes, pursuing them from one iurisdiction to another, with
any regard of the territories. *Henry*, first of the name, yongest Sonne of Ca
gaue ranke and title to Officers of the Crowne, and Marshals of France, wh
power to command in the Armies, as also to leade and conduct them to war
This was the first of the Kings of France, that submitted himselfe, as well to
Iustice of his Parlement, as of his subalternate Iudges; establishing an Attorn
Generall, to exercise in his name, and vndergoe iudgement and condemnation,
well in causes which concerned his State, as in those of the subiects agai
him. By this meanes, great men, and the Nobilitie were (by little and little) mild
ly disarmed, and made familiar with Iustice; whereas before, all their actions h
no other gouernment, but by force and violence, like to wilde beasts, and voi
of reason.

The birth and originall of Leagues and factions in France.

And in regard that these great Lords of France, had the principall cha
and superintendencie, for assembling the Nobilitie vnder their Banners, at
times, and as often as they should goe to the warres, and that from thence
grew the originall and birth of Leagues, factions and partialities in the land: C
pet wisely ordained, that Bayliffes and Stewards of Prouinces (to whom it appe
tained, to giue and lend the strong hand of Iustice) should likewise haue th
charge for assembling the Nobilitie, and people of the *Ban* and *Arriere-ba*
of France, and conduct them to Gouernours or Lieutenants Generals of th
Prouinces. So that by this meanes, the Noblemen, Barons and Lords could
not leuie a Banner, without leaue of the said Bayliffes and Stewards, who
vnder the shaddow of exercising Iustice, resided in the Prouinces of their
Iurisdictions, and thereby contained the Nobilitie within compasse of duetie,

The meanes of preseruing power in the Kings hand.

cutting off the spurres of all their complottings, and causing power to remaine
in the Kings owne hand, without whose command, the Bayliffes were not per
mitted to make any Muster, or leuye of Armes. So that (in time) the Baron
became subiected to the Stewards and Bayliffes, and so (consequently) to Iustice
Royall.

France was in a wofull condition when Hugh Capet recouered it.

And thus *Hugh Capet* (by admirable wisedome) redressed the affaires o
France, when all was in decadence and confusion, hauing the sadde counte
nance of Warre, as in a *Chaos* and commixture of infinite Lords, without
any rule or pollicie. Hee solemnized principally the Feast of the three Kings,
and ordenarily hee wore a Starre of Gold in his Bonnet; in memorie of that
Starre, which guided and conducted them from the Easterne *Indies*, so farre
as to *Bethlehem*, there to take knowledge of, and to worship the most Sacred *Iesus*
of Life.

Robert the Deuout, Sonne to *Capet*.

Robert, the onely man of that name, a wise and deuout Prince, succeeded
after his said Father *Capet*, and following his steppes; hee serued as an ex
ample and mirrour to all the Princes of Christendome. For hee addicted
himselfe to Pietie, and to erect and builde Churches, one in emulation of
another; so saith (very notably) *Glaber Rodolphus*, in the Life of the said
Robert.

Ego regnante contigit in Vniuerso pene Terrarum Orbe, præcipue tamen in Italia
& in Gallijs innouari Ecclesiarum Basilicas, licet plerèque decenter luctæ mi
me indiguissent. Æmulabatur tamen quæque gens Christicolarum aduersus alteru
decentiore frui. Erat enim instar ac si Mundus ipse excutiendo semet reiecta ve
tustate, passim candidam Ecclesiarum vestem indueret. Tunc denique Episcopalium
Sedium Ecclesias pene vniuersas, ac cætera quæque diuersorum Sanctorum monasteria, se
minora Villarum Oratoria, in meliora quique permutauere Fideles.

The great Saint *Denys Areopagita* arriuing at Paris, had his first dwelling neere
the Port of Saint *Iacques* (then this place was nothing but Woods, from the
tit Pont, so farre as to the Suburbs of Saint *Iacques*, at this present) at the place
by him named, *The Schoole of the Greekes, Schola Græcorum*, but now Saint *Stephens*
the Greeks; the whole Vniuersitie being then a fielden and wooddie Wildernesse

fit for solitude. During the space of twentie yeares, the time of his abiding at
Paris, hee prouided diuers places of deuotion; at Saint *Benoist le bien tourné*
in the Chappell of Saint *Nicholas*, Dedicated by him in honour of the most
Sacred Trinitie, the ineffable mistrie whereof hee had learned by heare of
the Apostle Saint *Peter*; and of his Tutour or Scholemaister Saint *Paul*. In
memorie of whom hee builded a small Oratorie, frequented soone after by
Saint *Geneuiefue*, Tutelarie Patronesse of the *Parisians*, at whose request our
first Christian King *Clouis* caused a Church to be erected; where hee chose a
buriall place for him and his, neerely ioyning to his Pallace, and on the foun-
dation where he built the Abbey, at this day called of Saint *Geneuiefue du Mont*
de Paris. Whereof S. *Denys* had (before) dedicated to the first Martyre S. *Stephen*,
the place of his abiding; wherein he enstructed the youths of *Paris*, to take know-
ledge of the Faith of Iesus Christ.

The Idole of Mercurie ouerthrowne.

The fourth Oratorie was built by Saint *Denys*, in the same place where stood the
Temple of *Mercurie*, whose Idole he ouerthrew by the signe of the Crosse. It is at
his present *Nostre Dame des Champs*.

Hic errorum cumulus, hic omnis spurcitia,
Hic infœlix Populus gaudet idolatriâ,
Adorabat idolum fallacis Mercurij,
Sed vicit Diabolum fides Dionysij.

The Temple of Mercurie the chiefest at Paris.

For this Temple of *Mercurie* was the principall of all them which were at *Paris*:
hauing his actions reported by the fictions of Poets, most proper and commenda-
ble to the *Parisians*, who (among all other Nations of the World) euen of their
owne naturall mindes, were capable of the Arts Liberall, Mechanicall, and the
best Sciences, ouer which (by opinion of our Auncients) *Mercurie* is said to haue
predominance.

Conuersion of Mercuries prophane Temple to a Church.

The Temple of whom was by the great Saint *Denys* (being prophane before)
conuerted and changed to a Church, and, for holy deuotion, dedicated in honor of
the Virgin *Mary*, said to be the Queen of Angels, and Princesse of heauen and earth,
and such was the happinesse of Saint *Denys*, to see her mount vp to Heauen on
the day of her Assumption; and by conference with her before her passage,
he learned those admirable secrets, which are reuealed in his rare and diuine
Writings. Hereof himselfe beareth testimonie, in the Tract which he wrote *De*
diuinis nominibus. Concerning the change of that prophane place to Sacred, the
Prose of S. *Denys* speaketh thus by conuersion.

Hic constructo Christi templo
Verbo docet, & exemplo.
Coruscat miraculis;
Turba credit, error cedit
Fides crescit, & clarescit
Nomen tanti Præsulis.

Concerning the Picture of the Virgin Mary.

By the portraiture of the Virgin *Mary*, holding her Sonne vpon her knee
as it had formerly bin figured in the Primitiue Church, and not standing vpright,
as ignorant Painters and Caruers haue represented her) S. *Denys* caused another to be
drawne, on a small Stone, about a foote square in Diameter (*Peint d'vn esmail de di-*
verses couleurs d Or, & d'Azur) which was to be seene not aboue two yeares
since, fastened without the Church of *Nostre Dame des Champs*, on the North-
side of the lesser Churchyard. But since, by reading the Antiquities of *Pa-*
ris, newly re-imprinted (by the dilligence of the deceased Brother *Iacques*
du Brueil, Monke of Saint *Germain des Prez*; the light for Lear-
ning to the Monasteries of France) the Intendant or Ouer-seer of this Church,
vnderstood the Antiquitie of this excellent piece, and passed it from one

extremity to another, causing it to be brought from a prophane place, and enclosed in the Conuent of the *Carmeline* Sisters. And instead of fastning it to some Pillar of the Church; either by grosse ignorance, or malitious enuie, the knowledge of that rare piece is taken from the Publique. This Stone is castellated within another of farre greater compasse, on the Basis whereof are engrauen these Verses in the Latine.

Siste Viator iter, Mariam reuerenter honora,
Nam fuit hac saxo primum depicta minori,
Quod medium spectas. At sculptum primitus, ædes
Et basilica tenet tanto de nomine dicta.

The Bishops See of *Dionysius Areopagita*

Saint *Denys* hauing purified this Temple of *Mercurie*, dedicated and consecrated it (as we haue said) to the Queene of Angels; and there he established his Episcopall Seate, and made his dwelling there all the remainder of his life, which was an hundred and twelue yeares. For *Fescennius Sisinnius*, perceiuing the fruit which this great Apostle made by his Preaching; after infinite torments and inflictions, which he caused him to endure, hee commanded his Braine-panne to be cleft with a Coopers Addis (as hee did the like to his Deacons *Eleutherius* and *Rusticus*) before the Idole of *Mars*, to whom they would not sacrifice and offer Incense.

The Martyrdome of *S Dionysius, Eleutherius* and *Rusticus*.

This Martyrdome happened at *Mont-martre* at *Paris*, in the yeare of Grace One hundred twentie and one, in the Pontificalitie of Pope *Alexander* the first, and Empire of *Adrian* the second: *Auiola* and *Pansa*, being then Consuls, according to the calculation of *Cassiodorus*. *Cuspinian* in his Annotations vpon the said *Cassiodorus*, reporteth this out of an auncient Annales, which he affirmeth to haue read. *Anno Domini Centesimo Vigesimo primo apud Parisios Dionysius Episcopus Martyrisatur.*

Some while after this martyrdome, the *Parisians* obtained the point of their life of the Romaines, where they erected a Church, the chiefe or high Altar whereof they raised iustly on the same place, where S. *Denys*, their Apostle & first Bishop had bin roasted on a Gridiron, and where (at this present) is the little Church of S. *Denys du Pas*: so named by the vulgar ignorant, but it is truely called *Sanctus Dionysius de Passione.*

S. *Denys* roasted on a Gridiron.

The first Church was (the second time) rebuilded by King *Childebert*, first of the name (Son to great *Clouis*) by the name of *The most holy Trinitie of Paradise*. In the second building it was enriched with great Pillers of Marble:

Splendida marmoreis attollitur aula columnis,
Et quia pura manet, gratia maior inest.

So saith *Fortunatus*, Bishop of *Poictiers*, who describeth (in Verse) all the particularities of this Mother Church, which he preferreth (by good right) with the Temple built by *Salomon.*

Si Salomoniaci memoretur machina Templi,
Arte licet par sit, pulchrior ista fide.

Translation of the Bishops See to the Isle of *Paris*.

And speaking of the translation of the Bishoppes Seate, from *Nostre Dame des Champs*, into the Isle of Paris, and of the deuotion of the great Prince *Childebert*, who is the first of our eight and twentie Kings, to be seene on the front of the great Church (*Clouis* his Father is onely alone without the Church, on the North side) he saith

Hac pius egregio Rex Childebertus amore
Dona suo populo non moritura dedit.

The pictures of King *Clouis* and his Sonne *Childebert*.

It is held by tradition, that the Pictures of this King *Childebert*, and of *Clouis* his father, which yet are to be seene on the toppe of the Meridionall Portall (vnder which is the Image of S. *Marcell*) on both sides of the Virgin *Mary*, before whom *Clouis* standing vpright, presenteth his Sonne *Childebert* on his knees, the Virgin sitting, with her Sonne on her lap, after the auncient manner (as she is depicted at *Nostre Dame des Champs*) accosted with two Angels: It vrgeth beliefe, that Great *Clouis* had (in his life time) begun the building, and that it was ended by his Sonne *Childebert*.

The misterie of the Trinitie taught to the *Parisians* by S. *Denys*.

The first Church, hauing bin dedicated in honour of the most blessed Trinitie; the ineffable misterie whereof had bin enstructed to the *Parisians* by the great S. *Denys*. The second was (by *Childebert*) dedicated to the Sacred Virgin, S. *Stephen*, and S. *Denys*. And from that time, it had the name of Saint *Maries* Church, vulgarly called of our Lady; vnder whose protection and assured safeguard, the *Parisians* henceforward) committed their Citie, as it is obserued by *Abbo*, in his first Booke of the Siedge of *Paris* by the *Normans*.

Vrbs in honore micat celsæ sacratæ Mariæ.

And from thence it proceeded, that *Our Lady day* in *August*, is in the Citie of *Paris*, a solemne Festiuall day; when, on the morrow following, the Sheriffes & *Prouost des Marchants* (instituted by the great King *Clouis*) are elected in Scrutinie, by plurality of voyces among the Bourgesses of *Paris*.

The Church built by *Childebert* held firme footing, vntill the declining of *Charlemaignes* Children; but then it was long time without any repairing, by reason of the ciuile wars, and troubles in the Realme of *France*.

Robert the Deuout a famous reedifier of Churches in diuers places.

Deuout King *Robert*, keeping his Court and ordenary abiding at *Paris*, and at S. *Martin des Champs*; rebuilded most part of the Churches in Paris, and elsewhere: at *Paris*, the Churches of S. *Nicholas des Champs*, and *Nostre Dame des Champs*. At *Orleans*, the Churches of *Nostre Dame de bonnes Nouuelles*, and the Abbey of S. *Aignan*. At *Poictiers*, S. *Hilarie*: S. *Legier* in *Yueline*, that is to say, in the Forrest of *Paris*, called *Aquilina Silua*. S. *Mary* at *Vitry*, and the Castell of the said place. At *Estampes*, the Church of *Nostre Dame*, and the Castell. At *Senlis*, the Church of S. *Rieull*. At *Poissy*, the Church of *Nostre Dame*. At *Autun*, S. *Cassin*, and other Oratories in diuers places of the Kingdome.

The Church of *Nostre Dame des Champs* at *Paris*, was rebuilded by the said King *Robert*, in the same estate and manner, as at this present is to be seene, the foundation iudged to be intire and sound, when the *Carmeline* Sisters, or Nuns were there established. On the top and pinnacle before the said Church, is yet to be seene the Image of the Arch-Angell S. *Michaell*, the tutelarie Angell and Guardian of the most Christian Monarchie of France, ensculpted after the antique forme, holding a Balance in the one hand, and a Crosse in the other; on his Head, and toppe of his Wings, are fixed and cramponned strong Pikes of Iron, to keepe the Birds from searching thereon. The ignorant vulgar conceiued in their opinion, that this was a Crown of Eares of Corne, and thought it to be the Idole of the Goddesse *Ceres*, a matter wherein they are much deceiued: for *Isis* and *Ceres* being but one and the same thing, her Temple was at S. *Ceour*, and S. *Germain des Prez*. The Pagans couered the heads of their Idole *Priapus*, their *Hermes* or *Mercurie* (planted at the ends or quarters, as well of Fields, as in Townes & Bourroughes, as Guards of Gardens, and beautifying the wayes) with Roundels of Wood, or of white Latten, because Birds should not foyle their Visages. Hereof there are infinite passages in good Poets.

In me veniant mictum atque cacatum,
Quidquid Coruorum est.

And elsewhere.

Merdisque coinquiner albis.
Coruorum.

Thoſe Rondels were named by the Greekes, as we finde *apud Iouem. Ariſtophanes in Auibus.* Wherefore the Painters and Caruers doe fondly deceiue themſelues in placing thoſe Rondels (which in groſſe ignorance they tearme Diadems) on the heads of Saints, as well raiſed, as in flat painting; applying (very abſurdly) prophane things to ſacred.

As for the Mother Church of *Paris*, King *Robert* making his reſiding at *Paris* as his Predeceſſours had done, *Eudes*, *Robert*, *Hugh* the great Abbot, and *Hugh Capet* his Father, all infeoffed Counts of *Paris*: cauſed it to be wholly new builded, and his will was accompliſhed, as now you ſee it at this preſent.

In elder time, and when it was built by King *Childebert*; it was more aduanced towards the point of the Iſle, ſo that the Quire and high Altar thereof, was in the ſame place, where at this preſent is the Church of Saint *Denys du Pas*, and the entrance of the Church was then, where now is the great Gate of the Cloyſter, but yet further inward; and the Biſhoppes houſe was at S. *Landry*, and the *Hoſtel des Vrſins.*

The Counts of Paris ſucceeded the Romaine Prouoſts

Now, concerning the houſe belonging to the Counts of *Paris* (who ſucceeded after the Romaine Prouoſts, for gouernment of Iuſtice and Armes) it was, where at this inſtant is the Hoſpitall; the circuit contained from the old Biſhopricke, where at this preſent are the Biſhoprickes Stables, ioyning to the Veſtrie or Treaſurie, which is now the Biſhopricke; cutting through the body of the Church of *Noſtre Dame*, and returning along the North ſide thereof, from the Churches of S. *Chriſtopher*, and S. *Geneuiſue des Ardents*, ſo far as to the end of the leſſer Bridge, where is the Portall of the Hoſpitall, rebuilded by the Cardinall *Du Prat*, in the time of King *Frances* the firſt.

The gift of *Archambauld* Count of Paris

Archambauld, Count of *Paris*, and Maire of the Pallace of France, vnder the declining of the deſcendants of *Clouis*, ſlaine by *Ebroin* the cruell, Maire of the Pallace to *Theerry*; gaue the ſaid Counts houſe of *Paris*, with all the extendure thereof, and S. *Chriſtophers* Chappell, which he cauſed to be builded for the place of his buriall, with his Village *De Chreſtell* on *Marne*, about three Leagues from *Paris*, to the Chapter of the Church of *Paris*. The words of the ſaid donation by *Archambauld*, Count and Maire of the Pallace of *Paris*, vnder *Clouis*, ſecond of the name, are ſet downe thus. *Ercembaldus dedit Eccleſiæ Sanctæ Mariæ domum ſuam, cum Cappella ſua de Sancto Chriſtophoro, & villam ſuam de Chriſtola ſuper Matronam, ita tamen vt in dicta ſua Cappella de ſancto Chriſtophoro nullus inhumaretur niſi ſit de linea, & Familia ſua.*

By meanes of this donation, the Foundations of this Mother Church, *Mater Eccleſiæ*, were by the ſaid *Robert* laid further on this ſide, to the end, of being neerer to the great Bridge of *Paris*, where heretofore (according to the teſtimonie of S. *Grigory* of *Tours*, in his Hiſtorie of France, and namely, in the time of Saint *Lewes* (as ſaith the Lord of *Ioinuille* in his life) dwelt the Merchants of Silkes, or Mercers, Goldſmiths, Iewellers, and Money-Bankers of *Paris*.

The ſaid Foundations were continued by the deſcendants aed ſucceſſours of *Robert*: to wit, his eldeſt Sonne *Henry*, firſt of the name: *Phillip* the firſt: *Lewes le Gras*, ſixt of the name: *Lewes* the Pious, tearmed the yonger, ſeauenth of the name, and *Phillip Auguſtus*, called the Conquerour, and Gods gift, ſecond of the name, vnder whoſe Reigne it was finiſhed: the Hiſtories and figures (both within and without the worke) onely excepted. The Picture of the ſaid *Auguſtus*, vnder whom the Church was compleated, is the laſt of the twentie eight Kings his Predeceſſours, which are to be ſeene on the forefront of that admirable and ſumptuous building.

The figure of *Phillip Auguſtus* and 28. Kings.

The deſcendants of *Clouis*, reſiding at *Paris*, their partition; dwelt at the Pallace of S. *Geneuiſue du Mont*; afterward at the *Louure*, built on the banke of *Seine* by *Childebert*, firſt founder of S. *Germaine des Prez* (where he lyeth with his wife *Vltrogotha*) and of S. *Germaine de l'Auxerrois*, Churches founded vnder the name of the Martire Saint *Vincent*.

Landegiſilus

Landegiſilus, Sonne and Succeſſour to the honours of his Father *Archambauld*; Maire of the Pallace, and Count of Paris; cauſed the dwelling for the Counts of he Pallace to be erected, at the other point of the Iſle and Citie of Paris. A buildng whereof we haue ſeene the foundation, at the end of the Kings Garden; but ow the end of the *Daulphines* Pallace.

Archambauld ſonne and ſucceſſour to *Landegiſilus*.

The Counts that deſcended of *Robert le Fort*, made there their Hoſtell, and the eſcendants of King *Robert* enlarged or encreaſed it. But *Lewes Hutin*, tenth of he name, vnder the conduct of the Intendant Generall, for the Finances or Reueues of France, named *Enguerran de Marigny*, Count of *Longue-Ville*, cauſed it to be builded, as you ſee it at this preſent: except the holy Chapell, the Greene Chamer, where the Chauncerie is, and that of the Audience *De la Tournelle*, built by the ood King *S. Lewes*. And at all times, the Church of *S. Bartholmew* was the Oratoe for the Countes of Paris, and Pariſh Church of our Kings.

Enguerran de Marigny, Count of *Longue-ville*.

Robert the Deuout, in the ſame place where this admirable building of the holy Chappell is, cauſed an Oratorie to be builded (for the benefit of him and his Domeickes) called (at this preſent) the lower Chappell, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, nder the name of *Noſtre Dame*, or Saint *Mary of the Starre*: becauſe he called the irgine *Mary*, *Stellam Regni ſui*: hauing ordinarily in his mouth theſe two Verſes, his owne compoſition.

A Chappell erected by *Robert* the Deuout.

Alma Redemptoris genitrix, Mundique ſalutis
Stella maris fulgens, cunctis præclarior aſtris.

And as he was one of the moſt excellent Latine Poets in his time; ſo, in honour f the ſame Virgin, he compoſed the Antiphonalles or Anthemes, and their Anwers, which the Church of Paris, and thoſe in his Dioceſſe, ſung on the day of the Natiuitie of our Lady, the eight of September. A feaſt day not inſtituted by Pope *nocent* the fourth, in the yeare of Grace 1250, as is ignorantly written by *Platina*, n the life of the ſame Pope: but celebrated from the beginning of the World (and amely by our wiſe *Druides*) as is learnedly obſerued by the Authour of *Faſciculus Temporum*. For ſolemnitie of this Feaſt, he made theſe following Antipholalles.

King *Robert* an excellent Latine Poet.

I.

Solem Iuſtitiæ, Regem Paritura ſupremum
Stella Maria maris hodie proceſſit ad ortum;
Cernere diuinum lumen gaudete fideles.

II.

Stirps Ieſſe *Virgam produxit, Virgaque florem,*
Et ſuper hunc florem requieſcit Spiritus almus:
Virgo Dei genitrix virga eſt, flos Filius eius.

III.

Ad nutum Domini noſtrum Ditantis honorem,
Sicut Spina Roſam genuit Iudæa Mariam,
Vt vitium Virtus operiret, gratia culpam.

Being gone on Pilgrimage to Rome, he preſented on the confeſſion of the Prince of the Apoſtles, the Anſwers which were ſung on the Feaſt day of Saint *Paul*, by *Cornelius Centurio*, in his manner. *Fulbert*, Biſhop of Chartres, and Chauncellour of France, maketh mention of this voyage, in his hundred and ninth Epiſtle.

The Pilgrimage of King *Robert* to Rome.

Conſtance his wife, Daughter to *william*, Count of *Arles*, a proud and diſdainfull Ladie, (who by her vnnaturall Ambition, would preferre to the Crowne of France, her youngeſt ſonne *Robert*, before the eldeſt, *Monſieur Henry* of France, hardly correſponding with the milde and gentle humour of her husband;) entreated him, becauſe he was a ſinguler good Poet, to compoſe ſomewhat in her praiſe. To con-

Conſtance, the proud Queene of France.

tent

Thoſe Rondels were named by the Greekes, as we finde *pisiformes*. *Ariſtophanes* in *Auibus*. Wherefore the Painters and Caruers doe fondly deceiue themſelues in placing thoſe Rondels (which in groſſe ignorance they tearme Diadems) on the heads of Saints, as well raiſed, as in flat painting; applying (very abſurdly) prophane things to ſacred.

As for the Mother Church of *Paris*, King *Robert* making his reſiding at *Paris* as his Predeceſſours had done, *Eudes*, *Robert*, *Hugh* the great Abbot, and *Hugh Capet* his Father, all infeoffed Counts of *Paris*: cauſed it to be wholly new builded, and his will was accompliſhed, as now you ſee it at this preſent.

In elder time, and when it was built by King *Childebert*; it was more aduanced towards the point of the Iſle, ſo that the Quire and high Altar thereof, was in the ſame place, where at this preſent is the Church of Saint *Denys du Pas*, and the entrance of the Church was then, where now is the great Gate of the Cloyſter, but yet further inward; and the Biſhoppes houſe was at S. *Landry*, and the *Hoſtel des Vrſins*.

The Counts of Paris ſucceeded the Romain Prouoſts

Now, concerning the houſe belonging to the Counts of *Paris* (who ſucceeded after the Romaine Prouoſts, for gouernment of Iuſtice and Armes) it was, where at this inſtant is the Hoſpitall; the circuit contained from the old Biſhopricke, where at this preſent are the Biſhoprickes Stables, ioyning to the Veſtrie or Treaſurie, which is now the Biſhopricke; cutting through the body of the Church of *Noſtre Dame*, and returning along the North ſide thereof, from the Churches of S. *Chriſtopher*, and S. *Geneuiſue des Ardents*, ſo far as to the end of the leſſer Bridge, where is the Portall of the Hoſpitall, rebuilded by the Cardinall *Du Prat*, in the time of King *Frances* the firſt.

The gift of Archambault Count of Paris.

Archambauld, Count of *Paris*, and Maire of the Pallace of France, vnder the declining of the deſcendants of *Clouis*, ſlaine by *Ebroin* the cruell, Maire of the Pallace to *Thierry*; gaue the ſaid Counts houſe of *Paris*, with all the extendure thereof, and S. *Chriſtophers* Chappell, which he cauſed to be builded for the place of his buriall, with his Village *De Chreſteil* on *Marne*, about three Leagues from *Paris*, to the Chapter of the Church of *Paris*. The words of the ſaid donation by *Archambauld*, Count and Maire of the Pallace of *Paris*, vnder *Clouis*, ſecond of the name, are ſet downe thus. *Ercembaldus dedit Eccleſiæ Sanctæ Mariæ Dominum ſuam, cum Cappella ſua de Sancto Chriſtophoro, & villam ſuam de Chriſtoloſuper Matronam, ita tamen vt in dicta ſua Cappella de ſancto Chriſtophoro nullus inhumetur niſi ſit de linea, & Familia ſua.*

By meanes of this donation, the Foundations of this Mother Church, *Mariæ Eccleſiæ*, were by the ſaid *Robert* laid further on this ſide, to the end, of being neerer to the great Bridge of *Paris*, where heretofore (according to the teſtimonie of S. *Gregory* of *Tours*, in his Hiſtorie of France, and namely, in the time of Saint *Loues* (as ſaith the Lord of *Ioinuille* in his life) dwelt the Merchants of Silkes, or Mercers, Goldſmiths, Iewellers, and Money-Bankers of *Paris*.

The ſaid Foundations were continued by the deſcendants aed ſucceſſours of *Robert*: to wit, his eldeſt Sonne *Henry*, firſt of the name: *Phillip* the firſt: *Louis le Gras*, ſixt of the name: *Lewes* the Pious, tearmed the yonger, ſeauenth of the name, and *Phillip Auguſtus*, called the Conquerour, and Gods gift, ſecond of the name, vnder whoſe Reigne it was finiſhed: the Hiſtories and figures (both within and without the worke) onely excepted. The Picture of the ſaid *Auguſtus*, vnder whom the Church was compleated, is the laſt of the twentie eight Kings his Predeceſſours, which are to be ſeene on the forefront of that admirable and ſumptuous building.

The figure of Phillip Auguſtus and 28. Kings.

The deſcendants of *Clouis*, reſiding at *Paris*, their partition; dwelt at the Pallace of S. *Geneuiſue du Mont*; afterward at the *Louure*, built on the banke of *Seine* by *Childebert*, firſt founder of S. *Germaine des Prez* (where he lyeth with his wife *Vltregotha*) and of S. *Germaine de l'Auxerrois*, Churches founded vnder the name of the Martire Saint *Vincent*.

Lendegiſilus

Lendegiſilus, Sonne and Succeſſour to the honours of his Father *Archambauld*; Maire of the Pallace, and Count of Paris; cauſed the dwelling for the Counts of the Pallace to be erected, at the other point of the Iſle and Citie of Paris. A building whereof we haue ſeene the foundation, at the end of the Kings Garden; but now the end of the *Daulphines* Pallace.

Archambauld ſonne and ſucceſſour to *Lendegiſilus*.

The Counts that deſcended of *Robert le Fort*, made there their Hoſtell, and the deſcendants of King *Robert* enlarged or encreaſed it. But *Lewes Hutin*, tenth of the name, vnder the conduct of the Intendant Generall, for the Finances or Reuenues of France, named *Enguerran de Marigny*, Count of *Longue-Ville*, cauſed it to be builded, as you ſee it at this preſent: except the holy Chapell, the Greene Chamber, where the Chauncerie is, and that of the Audience *De la Tournelle*, built by the good King *S. Lewes*. And at all times, the Church of *S. Bartholmew* was the Oratore for the Countes of Paris, and Pariſh Church of our Kings.

Enguerran de Marigny, Count of *Longue-ville*.

Robert the Deuout, in the ſame place where this admirable building of the holy Chappell is, cauſed an Oratorie to be builded (for the benefit of him and his Domeſtickes) called (at this preſent) the lower Chappell, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, vnder the name of *Noſtre Dame*, or Saint *Mary of the Starre*: becauſe he called the Virgine *Mary*, *Stellam Regni ſui*: hauing ordinarily in his mouth theſe two Verſes, of his owne compoſition.

A Chappell erected by *Robert* the Deuout.

Alma Redemptoris genitrix, Mundique ſalutis
Stella maris fulgens, cunctis præclarior aſtris.

And as he was one of the moſt excellent Latine Poets in his time; ſo, in honour of the ſame Virgin, he compoſed the Antiphonalles or Anthemes, and their Anſwers, which the Church of Paris, and thoſe in his Dioceſſe, ſung on the day of the Natiuitie of our Lady, the eight of September. A feaſt day not inſtituted by Pope *Innocent* the fourth, in the yeare of Grace 1250, as is ignorantly written by *Platina*, in the life of the ſame Pope: but celebrated from the beginning of the World (and namely by our wiſe *Druides*) as is learnedly obſerued by the Authour of *Faſciculus Temporum*. For ſolemnitie of this Feaſt, he made theſe following Antiphonalles.

King *Robert* an excellent Latine Poet.

I.

Solem Iuſtitiæ, Regem Paritura ſupremum
Stella Maria maris hodie proceſſit ad ortum;
Cernere diuinum lumen gaudete fideles.

II.

Stirps Ieſſe *Virgam produxit, Virgaque florem,*
Et ſuper hunc florem requieſcit Spiritus almus:
Virgo Dei genitrix virga eſt, flos Filius eius.

III.

Ad nutum Domini noſtrum Ditantis honorem,
Sicut Spina Roſam genuit Iudæa Mariam,
Vt vitium Virtus operiret, gratia culpam.

Being gone on Pilgrimage to Rome, he preſented on the confeſſion of the Prince of the Apoſtles, the Anſwers which were ſung on the Feaſt day of Saint *Paul*, by *Cornelius Centurio*, in his manner. *Fulbert*, Biſhop of Chartres, and Chauncellour of France, maketh mention of this voyage, in his hundred and ninth Epiſtle.

The Pilgrimage of King *Robert* to Rome.

Conſtance his wife, Daughter to *William*, Count of *Arles*, a proud and diſdainfull Ladie, (who by her vnnaturall Ambition, would preferre to the Crowne of France, her youngeſt ſonne *Robert*, before the eldeſt, *Monſieur Henry* of France, hardly correſponding with the milde and gentle humour of her husband;) entreated him, becauſe he was a ſinguler good Poet, to compoſe ſomewhat in her praiſe. To content

Conſtance, the proud Queene of France.

tent her, he made an Hymne in honour of holy Martyrs, and began the same with her name.

O Constantia Martyrum mirabilis.

Gracious humilitie in a King.

This great Prince held it no vnworthie thing, or vnbeseeming Royall Maiestie: to sing Psalmes and Anthemes, among the Priests and Chaunters in his Chappell.

King *Robert* his besiedging the Towne of *Analon*.

We reade of the same King *Robert*, that marching in person against *Landry*, Count of Neuers, who had entred into the Dukedome of Bourgongne, to possesse himselfe thereof: the King laid his Siege before the Towne of *Analon*, reputed to be impregnable. He continued there three Monthes, without any likelyhood of taking it by force: but when the good King began to sing Psalmes in his Tent, according as he was wont to doe; the most part of the Wals of the besieged Towne fell down to the earth miraculously. In which manner it was taken, & al the Dukdome of Bourgongne; which the King gaue (as a portion) to his second Sonne *Henry*, who being crowned King in the Citie of Rhemes (by the death of *Hugh* the Great his elder Brother) he estated (as inheritance) the said Dukedome of Bourgogne, to his younger Brother *Robert*; with reseruation of Hommage, and right of Reuersion to the Crowne of France, through defect of masle children, issued and borne in lawfull marriage.

The Order of Knighthood instituted by King Robert, *in Anno* 1022.

The Order of Knighthood instituted by King *Robert*, in Anno 1022

Robert putting all his hope in God, by assistance of the sacred Virgine, *Starre of the Sea*, the guide and Lanterne of his Kingdome: in honour of her, he erected and instituted a new Order of Knighthood, which he would haue to be stiled and named, *The Order of our Lady of the Starre*.

This Institution was in the Month of *August*, the yeare of Grace, One thousand twentie two; which was two yeares after the Institution and creation of the Peeres of France.

The Order was composed of thirtie Knights, comprehending therein the King of France, as chiefe and Soueraigne Master thereof.

The said Knights wore Cloakes of white Damaske, the Mantelet and lyning of light Carnation Damaske, and the Cassock or Gonnell of the same. Whereon, vpon the left side of the Brest, was embroidered a *Starre*, wrought in pure Gold, with fine rayes or pointed beames.

The great Coller was made of a round Chaine of Gold, with three linkes or chaines inter-wouen with enammeled Roses, inter-changeably white and red.

The Oath and daily duetie of the Knights.

The said Knights stood obliged by Oath, daily to say (in honour of the Virgine *Mary*) a Corona or Chaplet, composed of fiue Tennes of *Aue Maries*, and fiue *Pater Nosters*: as also the Anthemne before remembred, with the Answers, *Sicut Spina Rosam*, and so following to the end of the Anthemne.

Next, this Prayer composed by himselfe, according to his owne meaning, and for the Kings his Successours, Soueraignes of the said *Order of the Starre*.

A Prayer of the Kings own making.

Regum Princeps, atque Virtus, cuius nutu Cœlum gyrat, Terra perstat, disponuntur Secula, Regi Roberto nato stirpe nobilissima, sic domare des Superbos, & Subiectis parcere, vt hic regnans gloriosus, quondam viuat in Æthere. Amen.

The Ceremonies of the said Order, began on the day of the Natiuitie of the Virgine *Mary*, being the eight day of *September*, in the said yeare 1022, in the Chappell of his Pallace, called *Our Lady of the Starre*, which is the lower Chappell.

The first men that were honoured with this Order, next vnto himselfe, were his three Sonnes, as namely;

1. *Hugh* the Great.

2. *Henry*,

2. *Henry*, Kings in the life time of their Father.
3. And *Robert*, Duke of Bourgongne.
4. *Richard*, second of that name, Duke of Normandie, and of Britaine.
5. *William*, third of the name, called Stuft-headed, Duke of Aquitaine, Count of Auuerngne, and also of Poictu.
6. *William* the third, Count of *Tolosa*.
7. *Baldwin* with the goodly Beard, fourth of the name, Count of Flanders.
8. *Hebert*, the old Count of Troyes.
9. *Odon*, Count of Beauuais.
10. *Geoffrey Grise Gonnelle*, Count of Angiers.
11. *Amaury*, Count of Noyon.
12. And *Baldwin* of the Isle, Count of Henault, Sonne to *Baldwin* with the goodly Beard, Count of Flaunders. I haue seene an old Romant, made by a King of Armes, called *Brabant*, written in the time of *Phillip de Valois*, the Father of Chualrie, wherein the Knights of the said *Order of the Starre*, were set downe in order, as before hath beene related (together with their Blazons of Armes, and Collers, who according to the auouching of the said *Brabant*) were all Peeres of France, ordained and created by the said *Robert*. In number of which Peeres, there was neither Bishop nor Arch-bishop, which giueth vs sufficiently to vnderstand, that at the time of this Institution at the first, the number of Peeres was not then reduced to twelue, sixe of the Church, and sixe Layicks: as it was vnder *Lewes* the seuenth, called the Pious, and younger, at the Sacring of his Sonne *Phillip Augustus*, *Gods Gift*, as we haue already said.

Knights of the *Starre* all Peeres of France.

Phillip Augustus crowned King, and made Knight of the *Starre*.

The said *Phillip Augustus*, being Sacred King of France in the life time of his Father, and in the Church of *Rheimes*, on the day of *All-Saints*, 1179. was made Knight of the *Starre* by the King his Father, at his Coronation at *S. Denys* in France on *Ascension day* 1180, he being then aged foureteene yeares, or little more.

The same *Phillip Augustus*, in *Anno* 1200, being in the Citie of Gournay in Normandie, gaue the *Order of the Starre*, and made Knight *Arthur*, inuesting him in the Counties of Bretaigne, Aniou, and Poictu; and *Regnauld*, Count of Bologne, by meanes of his wife: As we are instructed by *Rigordus*, Monke of *S. Denys* in France, Phisition and Chronicler to the said *Augustus*.

King *Lewes*, eight of the name, termed of *Mont-Pensier*, was after his Sacring in the Church of *Rheimes*: made Knight also on our *Lady day* in *August* 1224.

His Sonne and Successour, the good King *S. Lewes*, was made Knight likewise of the same *Order of the Starre*, on the day of his Sacring in the Church of *Rheimes*, the first Sunday in Aduent, *Anno* 1226.

The same King *S. Lewes*, making Knight his Brother *Monsieur Robert* of France, on the day of Pentecost in *Iune*, *Anno* 1237, at Corbeill: ouer and aboue his Appennage, he gaue him for euery day of his life time, to grace his Order of Knighthood of the *Starre*, twentie pounds Parisian to dispend; *A die Militiæ*.

Other Lords honored with the same *Order of the Starre*. A most royall and lumptuous Feast.

In the yeare 1246, at Mid-*August*, in the Towne of Saumur, the same *S. Lewes* gaue the Order to *Monsieur Alphons*, his third Brother, Count of Maine and Poictu: to *Peter*, Count of Bretaigne: as also the Counts of Dreux, and of March. At which Solemnitie he held his great State pompe, that is to say, his Court and Table open to all commers, with such Royall magnificence, as neuer had beene seene the like, for the great plentie and aboundance of all things, and riches there present; which Feast continued eight daies together.

At the Kings owne Table fedde the Counts of Poictieres, Bretaigne, Dreux, and *De la March*, newly made Knights; in Cassocks, Mantellets and Collers of the *Order of the Starre*.

Thiebault first King of Nauarre.

At an other Table, on the side by the Count of Dreux, sate alone *Thiebault*, first of the name, King of Nauarre, and Count Palatine of Brie and *Champaigne* (fift of the name) who was very richly attired in Cloth of Gold, Coat, Cloake, Girdle, the Buckles and Studdes all of pure Gold. Before whom waited the Caruer or Squire for the mouth, *Iohn*, Lord *de Ioinuille*, Steward (that is to say) *Grande Maistre de Hostel de Champaigne*.

Before

Before the King *S. Lewes*, waited his two eldest Brethren, the Lords Robert Count of *Artois*, and *Charles*, Count of *Anioy*: And the Garuer was the good Count of Soissons.

As Guardes to the Kings Table, were appointed *Messires Imbert de Beaulieu*, afterward Constable of France: *Honorat*, *Sire de Coucy*, and *Archambauld de Bourbon*, called the Great, Father in Law to the King of *Nauarre*.

Behinde these three Noble Barons, attended aboue thirtie Knights, in Cassocks of Cloth of Gold, and to backe them, stood a great number of Vshers of Armes, and of the Hall: who were for the Count of Poictiers; *Portant ses Armes batues de Sandail.*

The King was most sumptuous in his garments, as it was a thing wonderfull to behold, and would require a tedious time to relate: For neuer had beene seene ((as saith the Lord of *Ioinuille*) so many Surcoates, Cloakes and other garnishments of Cloth of pure Gold, as he wore, during the time of this Feast.

Phillip le Bell Knight of the *Starre.*

King *Phillip le Bell*, King of France and Nauarre, was made Knight of the *Starre*, the day of Mid-*August* 1284. And on the morrow he espoused Madame *Ioan*, Queene of Nauarre, and Countesse Palatine of Champaigne and Brie. The Feast endured eight daies, the Streetes of *Paris* being richly hung with Tapistries, the Shops shut vp, and Tables prepared in euery Streete, readily furnished for all commers, the neighbours feasting their friends with all ioy and gladnesse.

In the yeare 1458, the Month of *August*, in the Citie of *Vendosme*, King *Charles* seuenth of the name, instituted Peere of France, *Gaston*, fift of the name, Infant of Nauarre, otherwise called Prince of *Viana*, Count of Foix, and Lord of Beame, being put in place for the Count of *Tolosa*, all the Peeres there assembled, only he of Bourgongne excepted.

Prince Gaston made Knight of the Starre.

From *Vendosme* the Court went to lodge at *Tours*; where the said *Gaston de Nauarre* was affianced to Madame *Magdalene* of France, the last daughter to King *Charles* the seuenth, termed the *Victorious*, and on the morrow following, was made Knight of the *Starre*, with great magnificence.

To solemnize this Feast of Knighthood, the Count of Foix lodged at *S. Iulian* of Tours, where he entertained the King, the Princes and chiefest Lords of his Court, to a most magnificent Feast: which we will describe, according as it is set downe in the manuscript Chronicle of *Foix*.

The famous and memorable Banquet made by the Prince Gaston de Foix.

Prince *Gaston* made the most triumphant Banquet, that euer had bin seene before. In the great Haule of Saint *Iulian* at Tours, were prepared twelue Tables; each of them containing seauen Elles in length, and two and an halfe in breadth.

At the first Table was seated the King, and the chiefe Princes of the Blood; as also the Queene, and daughters of France.

At other Tables were seated other Princes, as well of the Bloud, as of strange Prouinces, and the principall Lords of France, according to their ranke and dignitie; as also the Princesses and great Ladies in like manner.

The Maisters *d' Hostell*, were the Counts *Gaston de Foix*; *De Dunois*; *De la Marche*, and the great Seneschall or Steward of Normandie.

The Seruices as they come to the Tables.

1. The first Seruice was made with white Hypocras and Toasts.

2. The second Seruice consisted of boiled well fatted Capons, and Gammons of Bacon; accompanied with seuen kindes of Brothes or Pottages. All these Seruices were in dishes of Siluer, and each Seruice for the seuerall Tables, had an hundred and fortie Siluer Dishes.

3. The third Seruice was of meates Roasted; yet not any other, but Pheasants, Partridges, Conies, Peacocks, Bittors, Hearons, Bustardes, Greene-Geese, Woodcocks, Swannes, Teales, and all kindes of Foules of the Riuer, that could be thought on. Beside, in this Seruice was likewise Wilde Goats, Harts or Stagges, with all manner of Venisons, and the Seruice for each Table had an hundred and fortie goodly dishes of Siluer.

A goodly Castle framed in a Pie entercourse.

After which Seruice, twelue men brought in (as an entercourse) a Castle with foure goodly Towers at foure corners, erected vpon a Rocke. In the midst of the Castle

Castell stood a great Tower, in forme of a Donion, which had foure Windowes, in each whereof was placed a beautifull Lady, richly apparelled. At other foure Windowes stood foure gallant yong Boyes, singing most sweetly before the Presence. And to speake truely, this entercourse seemed a terrestriall Paradise, for on the tops and pinacles of the Towers and Donion, where fixed the Escutchions and Banners of France, richly painted and emblazoned in colours; as also the deuises of King *Charles* the seauenth, and Order of the *Starre* in White and Carnation.

4. The fourth Seruice consisted of Foules, as well great, as small, the whole Seruice being sumptuously guilded: And on euery Table were placed an hundred and fortie Siluer Dishes, according as in all the other Seruices.

The second Entercourse a Tiger.

After this Seruice was brought in (for an enter-course) the shape of a Beast, called a Tiger, which (by cunning Art) disgorged Fire from his mouth and nostrils. About his necke was a rich Coller, whereat hung the Armes and deuises of the King, very costly and curiously formed. This enter-course was carried by sixe men, each of them hauing a Mandillion and Bonnet, made after the fashion of *Bearne*, and they danced before the Lords and Ladies, according to the manner of the Countrey; which moued much mirth and laughter, and this Entercourse was commended aboue all the rest, in regard of the new daunting.

5. The fift Seruice was of Pies, Tarts, dishes of Creame, Orange-adoes and Citrons confected; each Table being likewise serued with an hundred and fortie Siluer dishes.

The third Entercourse was a great Mountaine.

After the said Seruice, was carried another Entercourse, which was a great Hill, or Mountaine, borne by foure and twentie men. In the Mountaine stood two faire artificiall Fountaines: From the one flowed (abundantly) Rose-water; and from the other Muske-water, yeelding an admirable smell ouer all the Haule. From diuers quarters and parts of the Mountaine, issued forth yong liuing Conies and sundrie kindes of small Birds. And in hollow places of the said Hill, stood foure yong Laddes, and a Damosell, attired like Sauages, who came forth at a passage in the Rocke, dauncing (by good direction) an excellent *Morisco*, before the assembly.

This being thus done, Count *Gaston* caused to be giuen to the Heralds and Trompets, who waited and sounded all the Dinner time, two hundred Crownes of the Sunne: beside tenne elles of Veluet, to the King of Armes of the Order, to make him a Roabe.

6. The sixt Seruice was of red Ipocras, with Wafers of diuers sorts.

The fourth Entercourse a man on Horseback.

And then came carried (as an other Enter-course) a man mounted on Horseback, very artificially formed, and attired in Crimzon Veluet, but the whole consisting of Gold-Smiths worke. In the midst was a small Garden, and therein stood a Poet, gathering all kindes of Roses and other Floures, made of Waxe; which he deliuered to the Ladies, who made high esteeme of such presents.

7. The seuenth Seruice was of Spiceries and Confections, made in the forme of Lyons, Swannes, Harts, and such like: and on each of them were the Armes and deuises of the King.

The fift Entercourse a Peacock in a Ship

After which was carried a liuing Peacocke in a goodly great Ship. The Peacocke caried about his necke, the Armes belonging to the Queene of France, daughter to the King of *Sicilie*, Duke of *Anioy*, *Lewes*, second of the name, such as are to be seene in the Order of the *Croissents*, or *Halfe Moones*) round about the Shippe hung Banderols, containing the Armes of all the Princesses and Ladies of the Court; who were not meanely proud, that the Count had so highly honored them.

In the midst of the Haule was a Scaffold, whereon were Consorts of singuler voyces, with all kindes of Instruments.

After the Banquet, Count *Gaston* caused to be openly proclaimed, a Iouste for all commers, on the eighteenth day of Iune, then next following, with Articles and conditions, such as are vsed in Iousts and Tournaments.

This

This Order of the Starre (being intermitted in the time of *Phillip de Valois*, by reason of the Warres and losses of Battailes, against the enemies of the Crowne) was againe set on foote by his Sonne King *Iohn*, heire to the misfortunes of his Father. Yet notwithstanding, very valiant and couragious of his person; and one that assuredly maintained his word with all the Princes of Christendome, for so it is auouched by *Froissard*, after this manner. *Albeit Faith were banished from the world; yet neuerthelesse, it ought to be kept inuiolably in the mouth of the Prince; although hee cannot be enforced to hold his Word, or had any iust occasion to breake it.*

Establishing of the Order of the Starre by King *Iohn*.

King *Iohn* hauing obtained of Madame *Mary* of Spaine, Countesse of *Alanson* and *D'Estampes*, and of *Charles* Count of *Alanson* her Sonne, the eight day of Iune, Anno 1356. the House called S. *Ouyn*, were to S. *Denys* in France, sometimes called the Pallace of *Clichy*: He established in that House, the principall Seate for the Order of the *Starre*. And at a Chapter held in the Palace of *Chichy*, on our Lady day in September 1356. he haue the Order of the *Starre* to

Knights created of the Star by the King.

1. *Messieurs phillip* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, his Brother
2. *Charles* of France, first Daulphine of *Viennois*, Duke of *Normandie*, the eldest Sonne to King *Iohn*.
3. *Lewes* Duke of *Anion*.
4. *Iohn* Duke of *Berry*.
5. *Phillip* Duke of *Touraine*, his other Sonnes.
6. *Charles*, King of *Nauarre*, Count of *Eureux*.
7. *Peter*, Duke of *Bourbon*.
8. *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la March*, these three being Brethren.
9. *Charles* of Spaine, Count of *Alanson*.
10. *Arnoul d'Endreghan*. } Marshals of France.
11. *Iohn* of *Clermont*. }
12. *George*, Count of *Chargny*, great Chamberlaine of France.
13. *Charles*, Count of *Tancarville*.
14. *Gautier de Brenne*, Duke of *Athens*.
15. *Iohn d'Artois*, Count *d'Eu*.
16. *Charles d'Artois*, Count of *Longueuile*, both Brethren.
17. *Iohn*, Vicount *de Melun*.

18. Knights of the Order of the Starre.

Being eighteene Knights, comprehending the King, Chiefe of the Order: the rest of the number were to be made perfect, at other Chapters of the said Order.

It is a popular errour, to say that this Order was instituted by King *Iohn*, or that he changed it to the title of the Virgin *Mary*, by calling it the bright and cleare Starre, which appeared to the three Kings of the East, for guiding them to the place, where was borne the King of Kings, and Lord of Lords. And that he tooke for his deuise Royall, a Starre Crowned, and for Soule thereof;

Monstrant Regibus Astra Viam.

Contradictions concerning the Order of the Star.

That hee transferred the Ceremonie of the said Order, from the eight day of September, to the sixt of Ianuarie, the Feast and solemnitie of the Kings. That *Charles* the fift abolished the Order; whereas others say, that it was *Charles* the seauenth, who vtterly abolished this Order. And not hauing any meanes, whereby to recompence those Captaines that had done him seruice, hauing spent his Reuennues: he gaue them the Coller of his Order of the *Starre*, which formerly had bin the noate of honour and excellencie, for all the Princes and great Lords of France. But now the communication of this Order, to such meane Gentlemen and Souldiours, became so distastefull; that they hated to weare the Order any longer, and so aduertised King *Charles* the seauenth. Who hauing assembled the last Chapter thereof at the Pallace of *Chichy*, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fiftie fiue, in presence of the Knights of the said Order; hee tooke from his necke a Riband of blacke Silke, at the end whereof hung a Starre of Gold,

Gold, and put it about the necke of the Captaine, appointed for the night-watch in the Citie of Paris, called there *Cheualier du Guet*. Ordaining beside, that in following time, none but he should weare the *Order of the Starre*, and that the Cassockes or Mandilions of the Archers, attending on the Knight or Captaine of the Watch, as well on Horseback as Foot; should haue both on the brests and backes, a Starre of white embroderie, which hath so continued to this day. And according to the Kings example, the Princes and Lords left the said Order to the Captaine of the Watch. This is (I say) a popular errour, which I my selfe sometime beleeued for a truth: but reading hath instructed mee in the contrarie.

Knight of the Watch for the night time in Paris.

If *Charles* the fift had abrogated this Order; *Monsieur Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, his youngest Sonne, had neuer worne it. As is to be seene in his Picture (according to the life) at the *Celestines* of Paris: as we shall further relate, in the Tract concerning *The Order of Orleans*, called, *Of the Porcupine*.

If *Charles* the seuenth had abolished this *Order of the Starre*, in the yeare 1455. he had not giuen it to the Prince of *Nauarre*, *Gaston de Foix*, his Sonne in Law, in the yeare 1458. And *Porte Bordelle*, called at this present *S. Marceau*, newly builded in the yeare Foure hundred sixtie and one (where the said *Charles* the seuenth deceased) should neuer haue carried on the Frontispiece, the Image of the Virgine *Mary*, on the Pedestall whereof is yet at this present discerned, a Shield Azure, wherein is figured a Starre of Gold.

The death of King *Charles* the seuenth.

I haue seene some Letters of King *Charles* the fift, whereby he made Knights of his *Order of the Starre*, *Viz.* the Lords *Iohn de Roche-Chouard*, and *Iohn de Beaumont*, very famous houses in *Poicton*. This *Iohn de Beaumont* had in the said Prouince great Seigneuries, by meanes of his Wife *Lucie de Bressuyre*. And for *Iohn de Roche-Chouard*, otherwise called (by old titles) *De Rupe Cauardi*, he was Brother to the Vicount *de Roche-Chouard*, which House most nobly beareth for Armes *D'Argent trois Viures de Gueules*. Heere you may reade the Letters of the said King *Charles* the fift.

The Letters Patents of *Charles* the fift, King of France.

The Starre Royall, or Royall Order of knighthood.

CHARLES *by the Grace of* GOD, *King of France, To all such as shall see these Our present Letters, Salutations. Wee make knowne, that in regard of the good relation, which hath beene made vnto Vs, concerning the Lords* Iohn de Roche-Chouard, *and of* Iohn de Beaumont, *Gentlemen of our Chamber: Wee haue this day (in a good and gracious houre, wee hope) giuen and graunted, and by these presents, doe giue and graunt, of Our especiall Grace and fauour, leaue, licence, and authoritie; that hence-forward, they may, and at their pleasure, beare* La Royale Estoile *in all Battailes, Tourneies, and Combates, and in all Fields, Places, Feasts, and Companies (as they shall thinke fit) to carrie the same.* Giuen at Paris the fouretenth day of *Ianuarie*, in the yeare of Grace, 1376. And of Our Reigne, the eleuenth.

Signed by the King.

De Scepeaux.

What Ceremonies were obserued in the times of the first Kings of the third Ligne, are liuely described by *Ioannes Monachus Maioris Monasterij*, in the life of *Geoffrey*, Duke of *Normandie*, Count of *Anion*, *Touraine*, and of *Maine*. This Monke of *Maire-Monstier*, liued vnder the Reignes of *Lewes le Gros*, and *Lewes* the younger, Father and Sonne of one name.

Foulques, King of Ierusalem, in right of his second wife, had by his first, a Sonne named *Geoffrey*, who maried with Madame *Mahaulde*, or *Maulde* of England, daughter to *Henry*, first of the name, King of England (youngest Sonne to *William* the Bastard, called the Conquerour, becaufe hee Conquered

Maulde twice married, and to whom.

the Kingdome of England) and Madame *Mahaulde* (that is *Mathildis* in Latine) Daughter to *Malcolme*, King of Scotland. This *Maulde* of England was twice ioined in marriage. First, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred and nine, to the Emperour *Henry*, fift of the name: who being deceased in the yeare One thousand one hundred twentie fixe, *Maulde* returned into England, and then re-married in the yeare One thousand one hundred twentie seuen, with this *Geoffrey* (sir-named *Planta-Geneist*, because he tooke delight in planting that Shrub) but by his enemies hee was called the *Red*, in regard his haire was of that coullour.

A Planter of Broom shrubs.

This Duke of *Normandie*, and King of *England*, *Henry*, first of the name, hauing assured the marriage of his daughter *Maulde* (who during her lifetime, was sir-named the Empresse) would make Knight (according to the Ceremonies then obserued in France) his future Sonne in Law *Geoffrey* of *Anion*, who as yet was but a meane Gentleman, and whom the Monke of *Maire-Monstier*, by a Periphrasis of time, nameth ingenuously *Nudum Militem*. *In super ex præcepto Regis Henrici exactum est à Comite Fulcone vt filium suum* Nudum Militem *ad ipsam imminentem Pentecostem* Rotomagum *honorificè mitteret, vt ibidem cum conquæstis suis* Arma Susceperus *Regalibus gaudijs interesset.*

A matter worth the obseruation.

It was obserued for an auncient custome, that young Gentlemen, as namely, the Sonnes of Princes and great Lords, were neuer admitted to the Table of their Fathers, if they were not made Knights. As we learne by *Iohn*, the Deacon of *Aquileia*, in the Historie of the *Lombardes*. *Apud Longobardos ea consuetudo est, vt filius Regis cum Pater non prandeat, nisi prius à Rege gentis extra* Arma Suscipiat. Such a custome was generall to the Germaines and the French, as we haue noted in the first Booke, according to the testimonie of *Cæsar* and *Tacitus*. To this purpose is to be obserued, that Princes and great Lords, who were not made Knights; at solemne Feasts, when Kings held full and open Courts: had no honour of sitting with them at the Table, that were Knights. Returne we now againe to our Knights.

Geoffrey of *Anion* made Knight by King *Henry* of England, in *Anno* 1127.

On the day of Pentecoste, in the said yeare One thousand one hundred twentie seuen, when the King of England should giue the Order of Knighthood to his intended Sonne in Law: the said *Geoffrey* of *Anion*, appeared in person at *Rouen*, accompanied with fiue Gentlemen and Barons of his owne age, to be made Knights with the Sonne of *Foulques* their Lord: to wit, *Iacquelin de Mailly*, *Robert de Sombreual*, *Arduin de Sainct Mard*, *Robert de Boloy*, and *Payen de Claire Vaux*, attended on by fiue and twentie Esquires of their age (for each Knight in this Ceremonie, ought to haue two Esquires, at the least about his person, and especially to bee presented at the Altar) with many Sericants and Officers.

The auncient manner and curiosine of making Knights.

On the euen of the Feast, the Knights to be made were bathed and washed according to the Auncient custome. And the day being come, the King commanded, that Count *Geoffrey* and his Assotiates should be brought before him. At comming forth of the Bathes, *Geoffrey* by his Esquires and Chamber-Groomes, had a fine Shirt put on him, and ouer it a Wastecoat of Crimzen Silke, embrodered with Gold; whereon hee had a Surcoat or Cassock of fine Scarlet, all ouer embrodered with Gold. His Breeches were of the same Stuffe, his Stockings of Silke, and his Shooes curiously wrought with small golden Lyons. His Companions were likewise cloathed with fine Linnen and Scarlet, departing so from their Garderobe to come to the Pallace. To these young Gentlemen were brought gallant Coursers, and glittering Armes, especially to the *Angeuin*, a good Iennet of Spaine, so fleete and swift, that his pace equalled the flight of the ayrie Birdes. He was armed with a Hawbert, double mailled, and made of such a temper, as it could not be pierced with the steele of a Launce, nor any Darts or Arrowes. The Greaues for his legges were likewise of Maile, curiously gilded, and so were his Spurres: about his necke hung a Shield, charged with Lyons of Gold, and an Helmet on his head, enriched with many precious Stones, and of so found a temper

per, that the stroakes of the best Sword could not enter it, and then was brought him a Launce of Ashe, the head whereof was fordged at Poictiers. To make vp the close of his Arming, they deliuered him a goodly Sword, brought forth of King *Henries* rich Armorie, Damasked and gilded, with diuers Histories engraued thereon, by the industrious cunning of the Master of Master-Engrauers, in that time, named *Galan*. The new Knight mounted vp brauely on Horse-backe, without putting any foote in the Stirrop, and the Solemnitie lasted seuen whole daies, in Feasts, Tourneis, and Mascaradoes. But on the eight day, were performed the Nuptials of the Royall Daughter, with the new-created Knight, in the Citie of *Mans*. Here follow the words of the Auncient Author:

Illucescente *die altera*, Balneorum vsus Vti Tyrocinij Suscipiendi Consuetudo Expostulat, paratus est. *Comperto Rex à Cubicularijs quod Andegauenses, & qui cum eo venerant, ascendissent de* Lauacro, *iussit eos ad se vocari. Post corporis ablutionem ascendens* De Balneorum Lauacro *Comitis Andegauorum generosa proles* Goffredus, *bysso retorta ad carnem induitur, cyclade auro texta, super vestitur, Chlamide conchilg, & muricis sanguine tincta tegitur, caligis holosericis calciatur, pedes eius sotularibus in superficie Leunculos aureos habentibus muniuntur. Eius vero Consodales qui cum eo militiæ suscipiendæ munus expectabant, vniuersi byssо & purpurâ inuuntur.*

Talibus *itaque, vt prætaxatum est, ornamentis decoratus Regius gener quasi flos Lily candens roseo superfusus rubore, cum illo suo nobili collactaneo comitatu de Secreto thalami processit in publicum. Adducti sunt Equi, allata sunt Arma, distribuuntur singulis, pro vt opus erat.* Andegauensi *vero adductus est miri decoris equus Hispanensis, qui tantæ, vt aiunt, velocitatis erat, vt multæ aues in volando eo tardiores essent. induitur Loricâ incomparabili, quæ maculis duplicibus in textâ, nullius Lanceæ, vel iaculis cuiuslibet ictibus transforabilis haberetur. Calciatus est caligis ferreis, ex maculis itidem duplicibus compactis. Calcaribus aureis pedes eius astricti sunt* Clypeus Leonculos Aureos *imaginarios habens, collo eius suspenditur. Imposita est capiti eius* Cassis *multo lapide pretioso relucens, quæ talis erat temperaturæ, vt nullius ensis acumine incidi, vel falsificari valeret. Allata est ei* Hasta *Fraxinea, Ferrum Pictauense pretendens. Ad vltimum allata est ei Ensis de thesauro Regio, ab antiquo ibidem signatus, in quo fabricando Fabrorum superlatiuus Galannus multâ operâ, & studio desudauit.*

Taliter *ergo armatus* Tyro *noster nouus Militiæ postmodum futurus, mirâ agilitate, absque stasi gratiâ, in velocitatis Equum prosilijt, &c.*

The Order of the Broome-Floure, in the Cod or Huske: Instituted by the Holy King Saint *Lewes*, Ninth of that name; In the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred thirtie foure.

CHAP. III.

The Order of the Broome-Floure *in the Huske or Cod.*

Two Orders of knighthood instituted by King *Lewes*.

THe good King Saint *Lewes* (the Mirror and Example of worthie Princes) Instituted two Orders of Knighthood. That of *The Broome-Floure* in the Cod or Huske, called by some the *Broome Huske*: And that of *The Ship* and *Double Cuescents*, or Halfe-Moones.

The birth of King *Lewes*.

This worthie King, Sonne to *Lewes*, eight of the name (tearmed of *Mont Penſier*) and to *Blanche* of Caſtille (a moſt wiſe and vertuous Lady, whoſe reigne may well be a patterne, not only to the Queenes of France, being Widdowes, but likewiſe to all Princeſſes of Chriſtendome) was borne on *S. Markes* day, being the fiue and twentieth day of the Month *Aprill*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred and fifteene.

His young comming to the Crowne.

By deceaſe of King *Lewes*, eight of the name his Father which happened on Sunday, in the Octaues of *All-Saints*, *Anno*, One thouſand two hundred twentie ſixe, he came to the Crowne of France, at the age of eleuen or twelue yeares: and was Sacred and Crowned King the firſt day of *December*, in the ſaid yeare, One thouſand two hundred twentie ſixe. All Regencies are perilous, and ſubiect to procure troubles and deuiſions in the State: but eſpecially that of Women, whoſe rule and command the French haue euermore deteſted. So Queene *Blanche*, being ordained Regent, by the laſt Will and Teſtament of the King her Husband; perceiued in a moment, that the great Lords of France banded themſelues againſt her, vnder the Standard and conduct of *Monſieur Phillip* of France, Count of *Bologne*, and prime Prince of the Bloud, who pretended right to the Regencie, during the minoritie of the King Saint *Lewes* his Nephew. But the wiſedome and holy life of Queene *Blanche*, calmed all thoſe commotions, wonne the malcontented Princes, as *Thibault*, King of *Nauarre*, Count Palatine of *Brie* and *Champaigne*, and the reſt by force of Armes.

The Regencie of Women alwaies hatefull to the French.

The worthie life and wiſedom of Queen *Blanche*.

Queen *Blanch* reſigned her Regencie to the King her ſonne.

In the eight yeare of his Reigne, of his Age nineteene, and of Grace, One thouſand two hundred thirtie foure, Queene *Blanche* deliuered vp the Gouernment of the Kingdome to her Sonne, who the ſame yeare ſent *Gautier*, Arch-Biſhop of *Sens*, and *Iohn de Neelle*, Knight of the *Starre*, as his Ambaſſadours, to the Count of Prouence *Raymond Berengarius*; to demand in mariage *Margaret* his eldeſt daughter, a beautifull and wiſe Princeſſe, who was brought into France to the King Saint *Lewes*, and he eſpouſed her in the Citie of *Sens*; where the Arch-Biſhop of the place Sacred and Crowned her, according to the accuſtomed manner.

The Inſtitution of this new Order of Knighthood.

AT this Sacring and Coronation, were performed many magnificent Triumphs, and for their further enlarging, the King ordained a new Order of Knighthood. For, ouer and beſide that of the *Starre* (which continued in honour to the Reigne of King *Lewes* the eleuenth, who vtterly abrogated it, by the Inſtitution of that of Saint *Michael*, and cauſed it to bee alwaies after worne by the Cap aine of the Watch;) he inſtituted the *Order of the Broome Flower*, which endured in France, vntill the death of King *Charles*, fifft of the name.

Geniſta Hiſpanica, Spaniſh broome. *Humilis*, wood waxen, Baſe broome. *Spartum Sylueſtre* Whinnes or Furres.

Euery one knoweth, that there are diuers kindes of *Broome*, called in Latine *Geniſta*, which is the name of the true kinde. There are two ſorts altogether full of thornie prickles; but in order next to the *Hou*, a Tree that hath the ſmoothеſt leaues in the World: there is a *Broome* which in France they tearme *Geneſt porte-Raues*; the *Broome* of Italie; the greater and the leſſer *Broome*, called by the Greekes Σπάρτον, and Σπάρτιον, according as the Latines. Alſo, two kinds of Herbes which carrie the ſame name: and laſtly the ſame Broome, called *Geniſtella*. This Shrub is very common, and is to be ſeene in all hilly and mountainous places and Forreſts, eſpecially in meager and barren lands. All the Plaines of *Bourdeaux*, from the Riuer of *Andaye* (ſo named of the laſt Village of France, ſeated on the banke of the ſaid Riuer, called by the Spaniards *Goſthbar*, and in Latin *Vedaſus*, which maketh the ſeperation of France from *Nauarre*, whereof *Font-arabie* is the firſt Towne, watered with this Riuer, which is all in the Kingdome of France) are full of Broomes, which the *Hidalgos*, Pilgrimes of *S. Iames* in *Galicia*, gather and bind vp in knots as they paſſe along the way, to obſerue the

Broome is alwaies ſaid to proſper beſt in ſtragie and leane grounds.

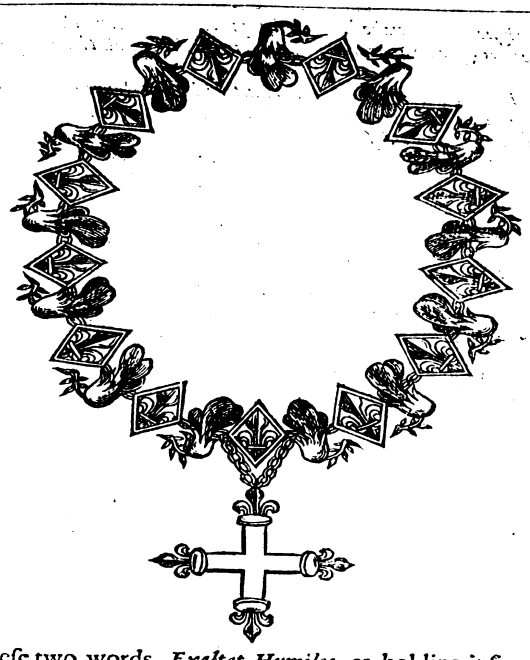
the turnings and windings of pathes, with heapes or piles of *Mercurie*, and where each *Hidalgo* caſteth his Stone or Flint, according to the Paganiſh Idolater, as quite bereft of iudgement and reaſon.

Broome beareth little greene leaues, of very ſmall extent, and the Floure is yellow, with long Cods or Huskes, which flouriſh in the Spring time, and in Autumne. This Shrub is much affected by the *Gaſcoins*, who haue made a Song thereof, beginning in their gibberiſh ſpeaking:

A la hou m'en ſon auade:

And at each couplet, a double bearing or reitterating.

La hlour dou Geneſt m'agrade,
La hlour dou Geneſt.



A deſcription of the Broom

The King Saint *Lewes* choſe this Shrubbe to be his Emblеme, and added thereunto theſe two words, *Exaltat Humiles*, as holding it for the marke and Symbole of *Humilitie*. Which was ſo great in the perſon of this holy and deuout King, that in going to Saint *Denys* in France; hee followed the Religious men, and the Abbot of that Arch-Monaſterie Royall, in their Chapter, and tooke his place laſt of the ſixe degrees, euen on the loweſt that aſcended to the Abbatiall Seate. *Tam humiliter cum ipſis in Capitulo reſidebat, quod nec locum Pueri elegit ſunt ſedere, vt de loco Abbatis, & ceterorum Monachorum taceam, ſed gradum inferiorem, de ſex Gradibus, per quos ad Abbatis Sedem aſcenditur, ſibi elegerit.*

The great and admirable humilitie of the holy and religious King.

Hee would not ſeate himſelfe in ranke among the ſillie Nouices, but a great deale lower, and beneath them. So ſaith *William de Nangis*, a Monke of the ſaid Abbey, in the Life of the ſame King Saint *Lewes*, the ſixtie ſixe Chapter.

It was likewiſe ſaid in his time, that God (in his vnſearchable prouidence) had exalted him to the *Throne Royall of the French Empire*, onely for his Humilitie; inſtead of his elder, *Monſieur Phillip* of France.

His exaltation to the Kingdome by his humilitie.

This great King was remarkeable, aboue all the Princes of his time, in regard of his ſtaule and goodly ſtature, as alſo his valiancie. The Seneſchall of *Champaigne*, *Iohn* Lord of *Ioin-Ville*, writing his life, and ſpeaking of the day at *Maſſourre* in *Aegypt*, with thus.

Le Roy s'arreſta ſur vn haut Chemin, & fit arreſter toute ſa Gent auſſi, & commenca de les enhorter, and prier de bien faire. Son Heaume eſtoit tout doré, & en ſa main tenoit une Eſpee d'Alemagne toute nuë, & vous promets que ie ne veis oncques ſi bel Homme comme il eſtoit, car il apparoiſſoit par deſſus tous les autres depuis les eſpaules.

The King made a ſtand vpon the High-way, and cauſed all his people to make a ſtand likewiſe, and beginning to exhort and encourage them; entreated them to performe their beſt behauiour. His Helmet was richly guilded, and in his hand he held a Sword of Allemaigne,

maigne, wholly naked. *And I protest vnto you, that I neuer beheld so goodly a man, as he was; for he appeared (in tauleneſſe) aboue all the reſt, euen from the ſhoulders.*

Le meſme Hiſtorien en parlant de ladite Iournee: Soyez certains que celle Iournee le Roy fit de plus grands faicts d'Armes, que iamais i'aye veu faire en toutes les Batailles ou ie fus onques. Il diſoit on apres la Bataille, que ſi n'euſt eſté ſa perſonne, nous euſſions eſté tous perdus, & morts à celle Iournee: & ie croy qu'a l'heure ſa Vertu, & Force luy fuſt doublee par la grace de Dieu: car il ne ſe feignoit point de ſe mettre aux dangers, & perils de la Bataille: & la ou il voyoit ſes Gens en detreſſe, il ſe venoit frapper parmy pour les ſecourir, & tant donnoit de coups d'Eſpee, & de Maſſe, que les Turcs n'oſoient approcher de luy. Et me compterent vn Iour le Sire de Courtenay, & Meſsire Iean de Salonay, qu'ils auoient veu que Six Turcs s'eſtoient addreſſez au Roy celuy Iour, & l'auoient pris à force par le ſeruice de ſon Cheual, & l'emmenoient: mais le vertueux Prince voyant le danger ou il eſtoit ſe ſeruit de tout ſon pouuoir, & par grand courage frappa ſur les Turcs qui le tenoient, en maniere que luy ſeul ſe deliura de leurs mains.

The ſame Hiſtorian, ſpeaking on further, concerning the ſame day, ſaith. *Believe it for certaine, that the ſame day, the King performed the very faireſt actions of Armes, that euer in my life time I beheld, in all the Battailes that I haue ſeene. And it was told me after the Battaile, by one of no meane credit, that if himſelfe (I meane the King) had not bin there in perſon, wee had bin all loſt, and ſlaine that day. I am perſuaded, that euen in the inſtant heure, his hie vertue and ſtrength became redubled, meerely by the grace of God. For he failed not to thruſt himſelfe into the greateſt dangers and perils of the Battaile, and where hee ſaw his men in any diſtreſſe, he laid about him luſtily, to ſuccour and relieue them, deliuering ſo many valiant ſtroakes, both with his Sword and Battle-Axe, that the Turkes durſt not aduenture to come neere him. And it was related to me the ſame day, by the Lord* de Courtnay, *and* Meſſire Iohn de Salonay, *that they ſaw ſixe Turkes, who addreſſed themſelues againſt the King that very day, and forcibly caught hold on the bridle of his Horſe, leading him ſo away with them. But the vertuous Prince, perceiuing in what perill he was; endeauoured to make knowne his Royall reſolution, and meerely by admirable courage, ſo laid vpon the Turkes which led him; that he deliuered himſelfe quite out of their hands.*

Concerning the Coller of the Order, with the Emblazon.

The Coller appointed for this *Order of the Broome-Floure*, was compoſed of ſuch Huskes or Coddes, as naturally doe grow on the *Broome*, wrought and enammelled to the true ſhape by Art. *Entrelaſſees de Fleurs de Lys d'Or, encloſes dedans des Lozanges Checkees (c'eſt a dire toutes ouuertes a iour) eſmaillees de blanc, enchainees enſemble, & dans vne Croix Florencee d'Or.* According to that which is in the Kings Cuappell, and following the auncient cuſtome.

The King Saint *Lewes*, firſt of all receiued the ſaid Order, by the hand of *Gautier* Arch-Biſhop of *Sens*, on the Eeuen before the Coronation of Queene *Margaret* of *Prouence* his wife.

Concerning the Knights of this Order, they vſed to weare Coates or Caſſocks of white Damaske, with violet Chapperons. The number of them was not fixedly concluded on; but depended onely on the will of our Kings, who were heads and Soueraignes of this Order. *William de Nangis*, Monke of S. *Denys* in France, obſerueth in the life of Saint *Lewes*, noated vnder the yeare One thouſand two hundred thirtie eight, that he gaue the ſaid Order to *Monſieur Robert* of France, his brother (to whom hee gaue for Appanage the Countie of *Artois*) in the Abbatiall Church of S. *Cornille de Compiegne*, on the morrow after Marriage of the ſaid Count of *Artois* with *Mahauld*, daughter to the Duke of *Brabant*. At this Solemnitie aſſiſted all the Nobilitie of France, as well women as men, two thouſand Knights Bannerets, with their Seriants and Varlets on foote, in ſo great number, that the Emperour *Fredericke*, who had entreated a Parlee with King *Lewes*, and their meeting appointed at *Vau-Couleurs*, the Marches and Frontiers of France and Lorraine, failed of comming to the Parlee, for feare of the French.

Marriage of the Count of *Artois* to the Duke of *Brabants* daughter.

The ſame King Saint *Lewes*, aſſembled the generall States of the Kingdome at Paris,

Paris, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred threeſcore and ſeauen, the Feaſt of Pentecoaſt, and in the Church of Paris; where he gaue the *Order of the Broome-Floure*, to *Monſieur Phillip* of France, being his eldeſt Sonne; to his Nephew *Robert*, Count of *Artois*, (Sonne to *Monſieur Robert* of France, his Brother, who dyed at *Maſſourre* in *Agypt*) and to many Barons and great Lords of France. The Solemnitie was great, and the Court moſt magnificent, and the Feaſt continued eight whole dayes. Moreouer, the Streetes of Paris were all hung with Tapiſtries, the Shoppes ſhut vp, and Tables readily prepared in the Streetes, to banquet all commers, according to the auncient cuſtome. Which is obſerued by the Monke of S. *Denys* in France, *William de Nangis*, in the Life of the ſaid King Saint *Lewes*, in theſe words.

An aſſembly of the Kingdomes generall Eſtates at Paris, for giuing the Order.

Anno Domini, M.CC.LXVII. in Pentecoſte, Prælatis, & Baronibus fere totius Regni Franciæ, Pariſius congregatis, Ludouicus Rex Franciæ videns filium ſuum primogenitum Philippum iuuenem fortem, & probiſſimum, atque Robertum Nepotem ſuum filium: oberti fratris ſui Attrebatenſis Comitis, quondam apud Maſſorram interfecti, eos, cum pluribus alijs, Milites nouos Geniſtellæ fecit: vbi tanta fuit Lætitiæ ſolemnitas, quod Populus Ciuitatis Pariſienſis ab omni opere vacans, ſolummodo Lætitiæ, & exultationi intentus, per Octo dies & amplius Ciuitate per totum cortinis pannorum varij coloris, & ornamentis pretioſis mirabiliter pallata, cibiſque publicis ſolemnitatem protenderent.

And thus doth the ignorance of Painters and Caruers make it ſelfe manifeſt, who taking the Image and repreſentation of the ſaid King Saint *Lewes*, as well high-raiſed or embоſſed, as in flat forme of painting, haue figurde him without any Order on the Cloake ouer his Royall Mantle. Whereas (indeede) hee had two Orders, as namely: that of the *Starre*, and (beneath it) that of the *Broome-Floure*, which two Orders held in full currencie, vntill the Reigne of King *Lewes* the eleauenth.

I haue ſeene and read the Letters, granted by King *Charles* the fift, Sir-named the Wiſe, concerning the *Order of the Broome-Floure*, and by him giuen to one of his Bed-Chamber, *Meſsire Geoffrey de Belle-Ville*, of a moſt auncient Houſe in *Poictu: Qui portoit Gironne de Gueulles, & de Vaire.* Behold here the tenure of thoſe Letters.

A Copie of the Kings Letters Patents.

CHARLES, *by the grace of God, King of France. To all ſuch as ſhall ſee and read theſe our preſent Letters; Greeting. Wee make knowne, that in regard of the good relation, which hath bin made vnto vs, of* Geffrey de Belle-Ville, *a faithfull Gentleman of our Bed-Chamber, concerning his good and Noble generation: Wee haue (of our eſpeciall grace and fauour) giuen and granted to him, that he may, and hath free leaue and licence, at all Feaſts and Companies, to weare* The Coller of the Broome-Floure, *without any manner of checke or reprehenſion. Giuen at Tours vnder our Seale, the ſixt day of Iuly, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and eighteene; and of our Reigne the foureteenth.*

At the entrance of Queene *Iſabell* of Bauaria into Saint *Denys* in France, the yeare One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and nine; to the ſame place alſo came the Queene of Sicilie, *Mary de Blois*, Widdow to *Monſieur Lewes* of France, King of Sicile, firſt of the name. There ſhe preſented her two Sonnes, *Lewes*, ſecond of the name, King of *Sicilie*, and *Charles*, Prince of *Tarentum*, to King *Charles* the ſixt; who made them Knights of the *Starre*, and of the *Broome-Floure*, with great magnificence and ſolemnitie, in a moſt ample Aſſembly; becauſe they were Couſins to the King, and very goodly Princes, ſo ſaith the Chronicle of *Monſieur Iohn* of France, Duke of *Berry*.

William

Le Viel dit Montaigne a tyrannous king of the Arſacides and Beduins.

William de Nangis, obſerueth in the life of the ſame Saint *Lewes*, that one terming himſelfe *Le Viel des Montaignes*, King of the *Arſacides* and *Beduins*, abiding on the Confines and Frontiers of *Antioch* and *Damas*, in Caſtles which were impregnable, ſeated on the tops of Mountaines; ſent certaine of his Aſſaſſins or murderers into France, to maſſacre and kill the ſaid Saint *Lewes*. This Tyrant, who commanded ouer fortie thouſand men, made himſelfe greatly feared, both of Chriſtians and Sarrazens, becauſe he nouriſhed, and gaue education in ſtrong Caſtles and places, to Children of the Countrey vnder his obedience, who were inſtr. ded in moſt horrid and abhominable maximes (renewed in France within fortie or fifty yeares of theſe times, for the killing and murdering of our Kings) and that they merited the ioyes and glory of Paradiſe; if they ſhewed themſelues readily obedient, to a blind-folded dutie which this Prince commanded them, to murder ſuch Kings and Princes as he would haue them, and in the places where he appointed, be it in any Kingdome whatſoeuer.

Schollers trained vp in a moſt deuilish Doctrine.

Such as died in thoſe enterpriſes, were adored by the people of the Countrey, and reputed to be Angels: as a new kinde of Doctrine, authoriſed, maintained, and practiſed at this day, ſubborning Subiects, to murder Kings and Princes of the Land, and afterward, to Canonize thoſe murdering Aſſaſſins and *Rauillacks*, among the bleſſed numbrr of Martyres.

Quoſdam Pueros de terra ſua faciebat in Palatijs educare, et ibi addiſcebant Idiomata, & docebantur Dominum ſuum ſuper omnia timere, eique vſque ad Mortem obedire, vt ſic poſſent ad gaudia Paradiſi peruenire. Quiſquis in obedientia moriebatur, à gentibus terræ pro Angelo colebatur, ſo ſaith *Nangis*.

God the preſeruer of Kings and Monarches, altered the heart of this *Viell dit Montaignes*, who repenting, that he had proiected the death of the ſaid King Saint *Lewes*: ſent him new Arſacides in all diligence, to aduertiſe him for care of himſelfe, becauſe there were Gallants come to his Court, that verily purpoſed to murder him.

King *Lewes* his Guard of an hundred Gentlemen.

Saint *Lewes* amazed at theſe ſtrange tidings; according to the aduiſe of his Counſell, tooke for the Guarding of his perſon, an hundred Gentlemen, well qualified; and of Noble extraction, bearing the title of *Eſcuyers des Corps*, and in the language then vſed, called *De Seriants Ly Roys*.

Each of the ſaid Seriants wore a long Caſſocke, and white ſleeueleſſe Iacket, reaching downe ſo low as beneath his knees, embrodered and thickly ſpread with Butterflies of ſiluer embоſſed, and both before and behinde was likewiſe embrodered the ſhrubs of the *Broome-Floure*, with a Hand aboue, as deſcending out of Heauen, holding a Crowne, and for the expreſſion of the deuiſe, there were three Roules plaited, with theſe words, *Deus Exaltat Humiles*.

Originall of the Kings hundred Gentlemen.

They caried Battle-Axes of Copper, ſo ſaith *Nangis*. *Rex ſalubri conſilio vſus, emptus ſuum* Per Homines Nobiles *Cupreas clauas aſſiduè deportantes, fecit diligentiſimè cuſtodiri*. From thence, ſome haue deriued the ſourſe and firſt Originall, of the hundred Gentlemen of the Kings houſe; and others, that of the Scottiſh Guard.

The hundred Gentlemen of the Kings houſe, heretofore carried nothing but Battle-Axes, of ſuch ſhape and faſhion, as is ſeene engrauen on many Tombes, which are in the Church, and at the Cloyſter of Saint *Katherine, du Val des Eſcoliers à Paris*, and elſe-where. In following time, ouer and beſide the ſaid Battle-Axe; they carried *Le Bec de Corbin*. And heretofore, at their enterment, (with their other Armes) was carried before the body, the Battaile-Axe, and the *Bec de Corbin*: And on their Tombes, the ſame Armes were engrauen *En Saultoir*, beneath the Eſcutchions of their owne Armes.

Guardes to the Predeceſſours of *S. Lewes*.

Nor doth this ſo alter the caſe, but that our Kings, of the firſt, ſecond, and third Ligne, Predeceſſours of S. *Lewes*, had in like manner their ordinary Guardes. For *S. Gregory* of Tours, in diuers and ſundry places of his Hiſtorie of France, doth there auouch vnto vs the contrarie. And namely, ſpeaking of the King of *Orleans*, Saint *Gonthran*, in his Hiſtorie of France.

King *Phillip Auguſtus*, called the Conquerour, had ſome feares and affrights, as well as Saint *Lewes* his youngeſt ſonne. For the great Chronicle of *S. Denys* in France

reporteth, that the ſaid *Auguſtus* being on a day at *Pont-Oiſe*; newes were brought him from parts beyond the Seas, beſide Letters ſent from ſome of his friends, containing, that *Le Vieil de la Montaigne* had ſent two *Arſacides* into France, at the requeſt, or rather command of King *Richard* of England. For hee had newly ſlaine the Marqueſſe, who was a Noble and puiſſant Knight in Armes, and gouerned both prouidently and vertuouſly his Land, before the comming of the two Kings. At theſe newes the King became much moued and troubled, ſo that preſently he departed from *Point-Oiſe*, and thence-forward was very curious and carefull, for ſafe-guarding of his body, becauſe his heart was greatly diſmaied at theſe tydings. And in regard his feare and doubt encreaſed daily more and more, he was councelled by his familiar friends, what he ſhould doe in this caſe. By their aduiſe, he ſent to *Le Vieil de la Montaigne*, who was King of the *Arſacides*, to haue more plaine and certaine information. And while the Meſſengers were gone about the buſineſſe: *Hee eſtabliſhed Serients, who alwayes carried great Battle-Axes of Copper* before him, as Guards to his Body; and in the night time they watched by him, ſome after other, and ſo diſtinguiſhed the ſeuerall houres of the night.

What enſued on the great feare and diſmay of King *Lewes*.

This is that which *Rigordus* hath obſerued, in the life of the ſaid King *Phillip Auguſtus*, vnder the yeare One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and twelue. *Allatæ ſunt Philippo Regi apud Pontiſarum literæ de tranſ-marinis partibus, quod ad ſuggeſtionem, & mandatum Regis Richardi Angliæ mittebantur Arſacidæ ad Philippum Regem Interficiendum. Interfecerunt enim eo tempore Marchiſium Regis conſanguineum.* (This is vnderſtood of *Conrard*, Marqueſſe of *Montferrat*, Prince of *Tyre*, and King of *Ieruſalem*, by meanes of his wife, murdered by two *Arſicides*, by conſpiracie of the *Templers*, enuious againſt the valiancie of this Prince, who was the ſcourge of the *Sarrazins*) *in tranſ-marinis partibus Virum in armis ſtrenuum, qui viribus ſuis, & potentia Terram Sanctam, antequam Reges illi illuc venirent, mira, ſtrenuitate regebat. Rex vero Philippus auditis literis, ira inflammatus, ſtatim ab eodem caſtro receſſit, & plurimum ſollicitus multis diebus permanſit. Et quia animus ipſius Regis pro huiuſmodi rumoribus multum turbabatur, & ſollicitudo magis, ac magis creſcebat in dies, habito cum familiaribus, conſilio miſit Nuntios ſuos ad Vetulum Arſacidarum Regem, vt per ipſum rei veritatem diligentius, & plenius cognoſceret.*

Interim tamen inſtituit Rex ad maiorem cautelam Cuſtodes Corporis ſui, Clauas Æreas ſemper in manibus portantes, & per totam noctem alternatim circa eum vigilantes.

The Order of the Ship, called; Of beyond the Seas: And of the double *Creſcents* or *halfe Moones*: Inſtituted by the King Saint LEVVES, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand two hundred threeſcore and nine.

The Order of the Shippe, &c.

Concerning the firſt inuenter of Nauigation.

HEE that was the firſt among men, diſdaining the furie of the Windes, drying vp wholly the Deſert *Lybia*, euermore counterbanded, oppoſite and contrary to his Brethren the Windes of the North, *North-North-Eaſt*, and *North-Eaſt*; who without apprehending the Raynie ſweltie heates, and tempeſtuous Windes of the South, aduentured himſelfe on the inconſtant billowes of the raging Seas, chuſing a Barke or Veſſell of Wood,

Wood, containing the estimate of three or foure fingers in thickneſſe, to serue as Iudge and Arbitratour of his Life; Without all question to the contrary, was indued with an inuincible courage, and his heart so armed, as with a triple Breſt-plate of Braſſe. Be it, that he was thereto incited, to tame the furious Lyon the Ocean, thorow auarice and desire, to enrich himselfe with strange spoyles; or by ambition, to conquer new Prouinces, and command ouer them; or elſe by a desire truely generous, deseruing to haue a well seated soule, to know and vnderstand the wonders of the world.

Illi robur, & as triplex
Circa pectus erat, qui fragilem truci
Commisit Pelago ratem
Primus: nec timuit præcipitem Africum
Decertantem Aquilonibus:
Nec tristeis Hyadas, nec rabiem Noti.

Very excellently said the *Lyrique* Poet, in the first of his Verses.

The reason of King *Lewes* his two voyages into the East.

Ambition, for conquering new Prouinces, nor desire to enrich himselfe with Gold, and the precious Stones of *Mexico* and *Peru*, or the Spiceries in the Isles of *Sonda*; had any power to instigate the good King Saint *Lewes*, for making his passage into the East two seuerall times. But it was the onely desire of Gods glory, aduancement of the Catholique Faith; and the conuersion, or extirpation of people, that were Infidels and miscreants.

Of the Kings of the first and second Ligne in their voyages.

The Kings of the first and second Ligne, did make diuers voyages into Germanie, Italie and Spaine, as well to winne conquests there, as to fight against their enemies. But there was not one of them, that attempted to passe ouer the Seas, for to plant there the Faith õf Iesus Christ. Vnder the third Ligne, the Seas serued as Galleries and ordenary walkes, for the Princes and great Lords of France, euen into *Palestine* and *Aegypt*, to vn-nestle the *Sarrazins*; yea, and into *Thrace*, to chastise the *Grecian* Emperours for their perfidie and disloyaltie, on behalfe of the Christians that were Latines.

The third ligne exceeded both the other in length of reign

And like as our Kings of the third Ligne, did surpasse the two other in deuotion and Pietie, euen so did their Reignes continue much longer, then the first and second together. In regard, that long life is promised as a recompence to such, as honor our Mother the Catholique and Apostolique Church (out of which there is not any to be saued) defending and protecting her from her enemies.

Vnder the Reigne of *Phillip*, first of the name, was made that famous enterprise, for Conquest of the Holy-Land; whereto the Kingdome of France (alone) furnished and contributed more Princes, Noblemen, and worthy Warriours, then all the rest of Europe together. In like manner, it had the honour (farre aboue all Nations elſe, for giuing Kings to the holy Citie of *Ierusalem*; yea, Princes to the best Cities in the Lands of *Idumea*, *Armenia* and in *Cyprus*, and Emperours to *Constantinople*.

The Kings of France voyagers to the Holy-Land

The Kings, *Lewes* the seauenth, tearmed the yonger (in regard of the difference betweene him and *Lewes le Gros* his Father) otherwise called the Pittifull; *Phillip Augustus* his Sonne, tearmed the Conquerour, and *Gods-Gift*; and his yongest Son Saint *Lewes* (the subiect of this discourse) made the voyage in person ouer the Seas, with most part of the Princes of their Blood, and S. *Lewes* two seuerall times.

The first voyage of King *Lewes* to Aegypt and Palestine.

His first voyage into *Aegypt*, and into *Palestine*, was in the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred fortie and eight. After he had set downe his firme resolution to doe it; all the remainder of his life (which was two and twentie yeares) hee cloathed himselfe more meane and simply, then all the rest of his Court. For he would not weare any costly or sumptuous garments; neither would hee weare Furres of Minever or Gray, nor Scarlet cloath, or Stirroppes or Spurres guilded. His garments were of Cammels haire of *Persia*, being of Watchet or Blew-Celestiall-colour, and they were furred with the skinnes of *Garintes*, and the legges of Hares, so saith the Lord of *Ioinuille* in his Life. Hee made no more

more vse of Greene, Red or fine Murrey or Violet, nor exquisite Furres, as the Ermine and Letice. His Spurs, the Bridles of his Horses, and his Stirrops were plaine white, or a water-colour, without any guilding or embrodery. *Ab illo tempore quo iter transmarinum arripuit, nunquam indutus est, Squaleto, vel panno viridi, seu Brunetta; nec pellibus varys, sed veste nigri coloris, vel Camelini Persei. Similiter ex tunc nunquam uti voluit calcaribus vel frænis, nisi omnino albis & ferreis absque aliqua aurarura, nec cellis ad equitandum nisi albis, sine omni pictura*: These are the words of *William de Nangis*, Monke of S. *Denys* in France, writing his Life.

The Kings of England Dukes of Guyenne & Normandie.

In those times the Kings of France had not any Port of the Sea belonging to them, where they might take Shipping for long Voyages, and the Hauens to remaine in their owne power: For the Kings of England (being Dukes of *Guyenne* and *Normandie*, vnder the hommage of France) possessed all the Ports of the Ocean Sea, from *Boiome*, so farre as into *Piccardie*, which the Counts of *Vermandois* held, and the Counts of *Flanders* the rest of the Sea. The Counts of *Prouence* and *Tolosa*, had in *Languedocke* and *Prouence*, the Ports of the Mediterranean Sea (which is the very shortest cut for passage into the Leuant Sea) vnder their subiection. So that Saint *Lewes* was constrained at his first voyage, to borrow of the Count of *Prouence* his Brother, the Port of *Marseilles*, from whence hee lanched forth his Armie (which consisted of two and thirtie thousand men) the fiue and twentieth day of August, in the yeare One thousand two hundred fortie and eight, shaping his course for *Cyprus*, where hee arriued in the Moneth of September following.

William of *Nangis*, in the life of the same Saint *Lewes*, more at large declareth, that he did set forth from the Port of *Aigue-Mortes*; *Tandem Rex ad Portum Aquarum Mortuarum veniens die Martis in Crastino beati Bartholomæi Apostoli nauem cum suis intrauit*. In which passage he hath failed. For I haue learned in the Towne of *Aigues-Mortes*, that the Port thereof was not finished, till the yeare One thousand two hundred fiftie two, a yeare after the death of the last *Raymond*, Count of *Tolosa*, who is said to decease in the yeare One thousand two hundred fortie nine. And *Mathew Paris*, who wrote his Historie of England at the same time, and dyed when the same S. *Lewes* did, obserueth notably; that the said King disanchored from *Marseilles*, and not from *Aigues-Mortes*. *Rex igitur Francorum vale dicto Papæ (Innocent* the fourth, who then held a generall Councill at *Lyons*, against the Emperour *Fredericke*) *& accepta ab eo remissione peccatorum post factam cum morosa deliberatione confessionem, cum Papali benedictione recedens à Lugduno, versus Marsiliam Lora direxit, & Vexilla*. And a little lower.

Progrediensque Christianissimus Rex Francorum multa maiora apud Marsiliam (his Armie had bin greatly iniuried in *Auignion*, and so was much more at *Marseilles*, saith this Authour, who noateth all the seuerall particularities, whereof *Nangis* speaketh nothing) *tolerauit detrimenta, ita vt Francorum Primates prouocati, nisi discreti, ac sanctæ Regis modestia retardarentur, istam Ciuitatem cum magna instantia, & indignatione obsedissent*.

The Iourney of King *Lewes* the seauenth to Ierusalem.

When *Lewes* the seauenth vndertooke the Voyage beyond the Seas, which proued fruitlesse and vnprofitable, by the disloyaltie of *Emanuell* Emperour of Greece, happening in the yeare of Grace One thousand one hundred fortie seauen, the second weeke after Pentecoast. He made the said Voyage by Land, trauersing with his Armie the Countries of *Bauaria*, the higher and lower *Austria*, *Hungaria*, *Bulgaria*, and both the *Thraces*, arriuing at *Constantinople*; from whence they passed the straite of *Galipolis*, otherwise called the Arme of Saint *George*, as also *Bithinia*, which is the first Prouince of *Asia*, pitching their Campe at *Chalcedon*, from whence at length they marched to *Ierusalem*, and thence to the Siedge at *Damas*, as we shall (by Gods assistance) declare in the ninth Booke.

The Kings returne by Sea.

The returne of the said King *Lewes* the seauenth, was by Sea; hauing hired Ships for passage of the *Genewayes* and *Pisanes*, and taken for his Guide *George*, Lieutenant to *Roger*, King of *Sicilie*.

Phillip Augustus, his onely Sonne, made his voyage of the Holy-Land, in the yeare of Grace One thousand one hundred foureſcore and ten, at the Feast of Saint

Iohn

Iohn Baptist: and from *Vezelay* in Bourgongne, he set on towards Italie, to take Shipping at *Geneway*. *Naues, & ea quæ erant victui necessaria, cum armamentis diligentissime parari fecerat, Ianuam venit.* All the Fleete was gouerned by the *Genewayes*, with whom he must of necessitie serue himselfe, because he dis-anchored from their Port. And as for the King of England, *Richard*, he had made his furnishments at *Marseilles*; in regard he had not any Port on the Mediterranean Sea, which was vnder his obedience, So saith *Mathew Paris*, the Monke of Saint *Albanes* in England. *Duo Reges, Francorum videlicet, & Anglorum conuenerunt apud Vizeliacum, vbi corpus beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ requieuit, in octauis Sancti Ioannis Baptistæ. Deinde Leges venerunt ad Lugdunum ad Rhodanum, postea diuisi sunt ab inuicem, Vnde Rex Francorum versus Genuensem Ciuitatem iter arripuit; & Rex Anglorum versus Massiliam.* In this Voyage, our *Augustus*, as well as King *Richard* of England, was constrained to be at the mercie of the *Genewayes* and *Prouencials*, inured to sayling continually on the *Adriatique* Sea.

The returne of King *Phillip Augustus* backe againe.

At his returne, *Phillip Augustus* made vse of the *Genewayes* seruice, for landing in *Apulia*. *Ventis, & Mari se commisit, cum tribus tantum Galeis, quas Rufus de Villa Iuuensis ei parauerat ad partem Apuliæ, Deo volente transuectus est. Vbi recuperatâ quantulacunque sanitate, quamuis debilis cum paucis iter arripuit, & transitum faciens per Romanam Ciuitatem, visitatis Apostolorum liminibus, & acceptâ benedictione à Romano Pontifice Cœlestino, in Franciam redyit, circa Natiuitatem Domini, quam apud Fontem Eblandi (Fontaine-Eblaud) celebrauit.*

Concerning the Conquest of *Constantinople* by the French Barons

In that memorable enterprise of the Conquest of *Constantinople*, made in the time of *Phillip Augustus*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred and one, by the Barons of France; *Baldwine* Count of *Flanders*; *Lewes*, Count of *Blois*; *Stephen*, Count of *Perche*; the Marquesse of *Montferrat*, and other great Lords, named in the Historie of that voyage, described by *Geoffrey de Ville Harduin*, Marshall of *Champaigne*. The said Barons were constrained, to goe and Shippe themselues at *Venice*, and to pay the *Venetians* for their passage to *Constantinople*; which they conquered from the Greekes. It was not then knowne in France, what benefit redounded by Ports and Marine prouisions; because our Monarches, contenting themselues with their owne demeanes, and hauing no enemies of strangers to meddle withall had nothing to doe vpon the Seas.

Yet we learne by *Rigordus*, in the life of *Phillip Augustus*, that that great Prince hauing resolued to conquer England, from King *Iohn without Land*, his mortall enemie, in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred and thirteene, prepared a Fleete of a thousand and seauen hundred Shippes. But this Fleete was commanded and gouerned by the wadged *Genewayes* And that for *Monsieur Lewes* of France his Sonne, elected King of England; was ruled by an English Pyrate, Sir named the Monke, according as we haue declared in the former booke.

Enguerrand de Bailleul first Admirall of France.

And the first Admirall of France, or that euer had bin there by title of Office; was *Enguerrand de Bailleul*, whom *Feron* in the Catalogue of the Admirals of France, maketh Lord of *Coucy*, of *Oizy*, *Montmirell*, *Marle*, *La Fere*, and other Seignuries; which were falne to the Royall House of *Bourbon*, to the King of *Nauarre Anthony*, first of the name, Grand-Father to King *Lewes* the thirteenth. Hee was created by *Phillip le Hardy*, Sonne and Successour in the Kingdome of France to Saint *Lewes*, in the yeare One thousand two hundred fourescore and foure, to command the Fleete, prouided by the said King *Phillip*, for the Conquest of *Cathalogne*, *Rousillon* and *Cerdaigna*, from King *Peter* of *Arragon*; as we are enstructed by *William de Nangis*, who wrote the Life of the said Saint *Lewes*. *Ibidem captus fuit à Arragonijs Classis Amiralius Ingerrannus de Baillolio Miles Egregius, & alius quidam in armis Arenuisimus Aubertus de Longua-valle interfectus, qui supra Arragones vlterius quam debuit pertransiuit. Istum Aubertum, vt tradunt aliqui, cum potuisset eidem in instanti succurrisse, occidere permisit Ioannes de Hardi-Curiâ Francia Marschallus.* Returne we to Saint *Lewes*.

His first voyage beyond the Seas into *Aegypt*, was (as we haue said) in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred fortie and eight, and not hauing any Port or Hauen on the *Adriaticke* Sea in his power, that is to say, in the Prouinces of *Languedocke*,

Languedocke or *Prouence*; he was compelled to borrow of the Count of *Prouence*, that of *Marseilles*. From whence he set forward with his Armie, which consisted of two and thirtie thousand men, the fiue and twentieth day of August, the yeare aforesaid.

The Hauen of *Aigues-Mortes* made by the King S. *Lewes*.

At his second Voyage, he would be no more be beholding to anothers courtesie, but the Prouince of *Languedocke* being reunited to the Crowne, by decease of *Iane*, the last Countesse of *Tolosa*: Saint *Lewes* caused to be builded the Towne of *Aigues-Mortes*, ingirting and entowring it with very strong Wals, with a goodly Port and large Hauen, for the receipt of Shipping, which (to this day) called by his name, *La Grau Louis*. And it was from this Port of *Aigues-Mortes*, that S. *Lewes* set to Sea, for sayling into *Affrica*, with an Armie of men, being fortie thousand in number, on Tuesday after the Feast of the Prince of the Apostles, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred threescore and nine.

A new Order of Knighthood instituted by King *Lewes*.

S. *Lewes*, for the greater animating and encouraging the Nobilitie of France, in attempting this voyage ouer the Seas with him: As a new recompence & prize of honor, beside the two Orders of France, then in full pride and request, *Of the Starre*, and *Of the Broome-Floure*) he instituted a Third, particularly for this last Voyage; the subiect and circumstances whereof, were represented by the Coller of this Order, called *Of the Ship*, & hanging at the lower end thereof. The Coller of this Order was interlaced with double Scallops, which figured the sandy Shore and Port of *Aigues-Mortes*; in like manner as the Ship & double Crescents, enterwouen and passed *En Saultour*, made manifest declaration; that this enterprize was to fight with Infidell Nations, which followed the false Law of *Mahomet*, who bare the Crescent.



It is not vnknown, that this false Prophet began to appeare, at the time of the Emperor *Heraclius*, in the yeare of Grace, sixe hundred twenty three. But when he published his detestable Law, intermixed with Christianity, Iudaisme and Paganisme, was in the yeare six hundred twentie & foure, some say one. And then he would haue his false and detestable doctrin to be receiued and embraced, by blood, murder and slaughter of such as refused to allow it.

Ordenances deuised & appointed by *Mahomet*.

He ordained, that the yeares of his *Egire*, that is to say, *Of his comming forth*, in *Armes*, should be gouerned and accounted by the courses of the Moone: That the Moneths of them also should be Lunarie: That his Armies, Squadrons & Battalions should br ordered, raunged and disposed in a Lunarie forme, and of a Crescent. And that his Successours should carrie for their Armes (as he had done) the Crescent and halfe Moone. Which Orders haue bin carefully kept by the *Grand Seigneurs* of the Turkes, the *Othomans*; who in their Standards and Banners beare the said Crescent.

How the Turkes do call *Constantinople* in their Language.

Nor was this the cause concerning the Citie of *Constantinople* (which the Turkes in their language call *CZARIGRADE* and *STAMBOVL*, that is to say, *The Royall Citie*, conquered from the last *Constantine* by *Mahomet*, second of the name, King of *Turkes*, on tuesday the seauen and twentieth day of May, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand foure hundred fiftie and three) that the Great *Turke* carried the said Crescent in Armes, as some haue written; and that the puissant Citie of *Constantinople* carried for her Armes the Crescent, or halfe Moone, because it was seated on a Port, made naturally in the forme of a Crescent. Like vnto the Citie of *Bordeaux*, the chiefest of *Guienne*: *Qui porte d'Or au Lyon passant de Gueulles, soustenu*

ſouſtenu de la forme de leur Hoſtell de Ville d'Argent maſſonnee de Sable à la Tour de meſme, chargee d'vne Cloche d'Azur, porte d'vvn Pont baſty ſur vne Riuiere ondee d'Argent, & d'Azur, au Croiſant d'Argent en pointe, au Chef de France:

This opinion hath not any apparance of truth, for from the time that *Conſtantine* the Great eſtabliſhed his Imperiall Seate in this new Rome, which hee called by his owne name: Hee gaue for his Armes the Mettall and Colour of the Romaine Empire, as well for the Eaſt as Weſt. *C'eſtoit de Gueulles à l'Aigle d'Or eſploie à deux Teſtes.* Hee gaue (I ſay) for Armes to the ſaid Citie, *L'Eſcu de Gueulles à la Croix d'Or, cantonnee de quatre B. Grecs*, which ſome call *Fuzils, adoſſez d'Or.* This ſecond Letter of the Greeke Alphabet, ſhould repreſent the name of *Biſantium*, in remembrance and memory of her firſt Founder, *Biſas*, and *Conſtantine* the Great, hauing made it become Royall, by reaſon of his ordenary abiding there; was eſteemed as the ſecond Founder, according as the Poet *Claudian* hath obſerued.

Hoc Bizas, Conſtantinuſque videbunt.

Some there are, who haue interpreted *Ces quatre Fuzils adoſſez d'Or*, to be the proud titles of the Emperours of the Eaſt, Succeſſours to the ſaid *Conſtantine* the Great, for a Greeke Cipher or Monogramme. ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ. ΒΑΣΙΛΕΩΝ. ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΤΩΝ. ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣΙ. *Rex Regum, & Dominus Dominantium; King of Kings, and Lord of Lords*, a title of loftineſſe, pride and arrogancie, vainely vſurped by the Kings of *Aſſyria*, and by *Nabuchodonozor*, in the Prophet *Ezekiel*, by *Cyrus* in *Eſdras*, and by *Phraates*, King of the *Parthians*, by the report of *Dion*. A Title of honor and preheminence, which appertaineth to none but God onely (in the *Apocalips*) vnto whom is giuen the power, to eſtabliſh and vnthrow Kings and Princes on the earth, according as it ſeemeth beſt to him.

The Emperors of the Eaſt their preſumptuous titles.

We will ſay of the Creſcent, that it hath bin (from all times) the Symbole and noate of Nobilitie, through all the Nations of the world, yea, euen in them furtheſt off from our knowledge.

The Creſcent the ſigne of the High-Prieſthood, and Royall Dignitie.

The high-Prieſt of the *Iewes* wore his *Tyaras* and *Mitre*, in the forme of a Creſcent, as the noate of his Prieſt-hood, and (by the ſame meanes) the marke of Royall dignitie. *Regale Genus Sacerdotium.* It was the figure of the Church, compared to the Moone, which receiued her light from the Sunne of Iuſtice or Righteouſnes; her vertue, her ornament, and all her power.

Apoc. 12. 1.

In the *Apocalipſe*, to demonſtrate the excellencie and Nobilitie of the Church; Saint *Iohn* exalteth her aboue the Moone. *Mulier amicta Sole, Luna ſub pedibus eius, & in capite eius Corona Stellarum duodecim. A Woman cloathed with the Sunne, and the Moone vnder her feete, and vpon her head a Crowne of twelue Starres.* Hee placed the Creſcent vnder her feete, becauſe the *Iewes* Children of the Synagogue, vſed to weare it on the inſtup of their Shooes, for a ſigne of Nobilitie, which they beleeued to be the chiefeſt in the world; as being deſcended from the Patriarches *Noah, Abraham, Iſaac* and *Iaacob*. In which reſpect, the Church hauing the Moone vnder her feete, and not on the inſtuppe of her Shooes: gaue it for publique notice and demonſtration, what was foretold of her by the *Wiſedome Diuine. Ab initio, & ante ſecula fuiſſe creatam: That ſhe had bin created before the World itſelfe.*

Eſay 3. 16. 17 18. 19. 20.

The Prophet *Eſay*, propheſing to the *Iewes*, that they ſhould be vſed like ſlaues and pezants, deſpoiled of all their honor, and titles of Nobilitie, be miſerably led into bondage and ſeruitude by Infidell Nations; telleth them. That in thoſe deplorable times, wholly conuerted into ſorrow and bitterneſſe: *Their Creſcents ſhall be taken from them, their Chaines, Rings and other noates of Nobilitie. Dominus auferet ornamentum calcea mentorum, Lunulas, Torques, &c.*

A Prophecie againſt the proud Iewiſh Women.

The night before that *Guye of Bourgongne* (Sonne to *William*, Count of *Bourgongne*) was elected or created Pope, vnder the name of *Calixtus* the ſecond; in his Dreame hee ſaw an Angell, who ſet a Creſcent on his knees, to aduertiſe him; that in a ſhort time, hee ſhould be the vniuerſall Head of the viſible Church of God, liuing on earth, and that all the Princes and Monarches of Chriſtendome, ſhould yeelde him ſubmiſſion, and render him all honour and obedience.

The people of *Arcadia*, a Prouince of Greece, eſteemed themſelues the very Nobleſt Nation of the world, as *Ouid* ſaith.

Orta prior Luna (de ſe ſi creditur ipſis)
A magno tellus Arcade nomen habet.

And they did weare Creſcents and halfe-Moones on their Shooes; like as the *Athenians* did weare *Cigales* on their Shooes, to ſhew thereby, that they were naturally Natiues of the Countrey, and not come from any other place. Becauſe the *Cigales* do liue and dye in thoſe parts, where they firſt receiued life. Whereupon, by way of mockerie, the Athenians were called by the other Grecians their neighbours, *Porte Cigales, Cigale-wearers* τεττιγοφοροι. The great Doctor *Tertullian*, in the Treatiſe which he wrote *De Velandis Virginibus*, mocking the curioſitie of men in his time, to ſing their Nobilitie, ſaith. *Debebant & ipſi aliqua inſignia ſibi defendere, aut Pennas Garamantum, aut Cicadas Athenienſium, aut Cyrros Germanorum.* That they did either decke themſelues with *Cigales* or Graſhoppers, after the Antique manner of the *Athenians*, who did weare them on their Shooes: Or couered their heads with great Tufts, or Perriwigs of Horſes-haire, like the Germaines; Or elſe ſhadowed themſelues, as with an Helmet of Armes, hauing Plumes and Pennaches ſpreading abroade at the top, in imitation and example of the *Garamantes*, a People farre enouge off from any commerce with men.

Graſhoppers

b People of Lybia, adioyning to the Eaſt.

The Romaines likewiſe (as well as others) vſed for a noate of Nobilitie, Creſcents vpon their Shooes and feete: And vpon this occaſion they were tearmed *Lunati calcei*, ſaith *Martiall.*

Lunata niſquam pellis, & nuſquam toga.

Statius in his *Boſcages*, ſaith.

Primaque Patritia clauſit veſtigia Luna.

And hereupon it was, that *Iuuenall* mocked a Minnion of *Couchette*, Caruer to a Gentleman, who ware Shooes of blacke Leather (Shooes beſeeming a Villaine, and men of baſe condition) yet faſtened at the inſtup with tyes of Silke, and Creſcents of Siluer.

Fœlix, & ſapiens, & Nobilis, & Generoſus
Appoſitum nigræ Lunam ſubduxit Alutæ.

It is held for certaine, that our firſt Chriſtian King *Clouis*, carried three Creſcents for his deuiſe, and by this meanes, the opinion of *Du Tillet* ſhould be warrantable, ſpeaking of a Fief or Knights Fee, aſſeſſed in the Citie of *Antwerpe*, by *Philip le Bel*, King of France and Nauarre, and granted to one named *Adam de Villeſonde*; with dutie at change of the Lord; of two Arſons for a Horſes Saddle, the one with the Armes of France, and the other with them of King *Clouis.*

The figure or repreſentation of King *Clothaire*, firſt of the name, and buried at *S. Marcl de Soiſſons*, by him builded, is yet to be ſeene; hauing his *Dalmatique* garnient couered with Creſcents.

Concerning the houſe of Angoleſme.

The houſe of *Angoleſme*, iſſued from that of *Orleans*, beareth *D'Orleans au Lambeau d'Argent, charge de trois Croiſſants, de Gueulles*: As is to be ſeene in the Glaſſe-windowes of the Chappell of *Orleans*, at the *Celeſtins* in *Paris*, and in many other places. And King *Henry* the ſecond, Sonne to King *Frances* the firſt, Duke of *Angoleſme*, bare for deuiſe, *Trois Croiſſants d'Argent entrelaſſez enſemble*, to make an intire Round, and for the Legend or ſpeaking part thereof; *Donec totum impleat orbem.*

Kings & great Lords of the Caniballs.

Nations furtheſt off from vs, and which we Baptiſe with the name of Sauages; do acknowledge the Creſcent for the Symbole of Nobility. Kings & great Lords of the Canibals, vpon their Iouiall and ſolemne dayes, doe decke and circle their neckes with Collers, compoſed and made with Creſcents of boanes, well poliſhed and ſhining, as white as Alablaſter. In their language they call Creſcents *Yaci*, by the name of the Moone, which they entitle ſo: As *Ville-Caignon* writeth in his voyage of *America*, as alſo of *Brazile.*

The industrious people of *China*, representing the principall God which they adore: holdeth in one hand a Cressent, and a Pony and in the other: as appeareth by relation of the *Hollanders*, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred foure-score and fifteene.

The Armes of the *Turkes*.

Likewise the Turkes, in imitation of their Prophet *Mahomet*, haue taken the Cressent for their Armes: as saying themselues to be descended of *Abraham*, For his Children had the assured promise, to encrease and multiple into innumerable people, exceeding the sands of the Sea.

This *Mahomet* hauing ordained for soueraigne happinesse, to all such as embraced his damnable Doctrine, the voluptuous desires of the flesh, seruing himselfe as the guide and module, marching vnder the Standard of *Venus*: tooke the *Esmaile* and Colour of that wanton Goddesse (according to the *Theogonia* of the Pagans) and her very Liuery, that is to say, Greene, which *Martiall* describing, by the posture of an amorous Gallant, calleth the Colour of Hearbes.

Herbarum fucatus indutus, Basse, colores.

The Loue-token of Husbands to their Wiues,

The Colour and Liuerie, which Husbands (louing their Wiues) sent them for New-yeares-gifts, on the first day of March, the beginning of the yeare in their *Ombelle* and *Parasoll*. In remembrance of that which the Romaine Ladies obserued, betweene the *Romans* and *Sabines*, fighting against each other, and falling to agreement. Which *Iuuenall* hath well noated.

En cui Viridem Vmbellam, cui Succina mittas
Grandia, Natalis quoties redit, aut medium Ver,
Incipit, & strata posita longâque cathedrâ
Munera Fœminei tractas secreta Kalendis.

Which he tooke from *Plautus* in *Milite*:

Da mihi quod Kalendis mittam, Martia cum venerint.

And those Iewels or Gifts, sent by Husbands to their Wiues, were not set down in the Inuentarie, after the Husbands decease, according to the modicitie of the price, or small value of the things then giuen. So saith the Lawyer *Pomponius*, in the Law *Sed si vir*, at the eight Paragraphe. *D. de don. int. vir. & vxor.*

Mahomet vsed alwayes to weare Greene colour.

Now, according to the Histories of the Turkes, the false Prophet *Mahomet* was daily cloathed in Greene, a Colour so highly esteemed among the people, subiected vnder the Turkish Empire, as no man had the sufferance or permission, be he whatsoeuer (except the Grand Signeur, and such as were issued and descended of the Ligne of the false Prophet *Mahomet*) that durst weare an Emeralde, Sotane, or any other greene thing. Such was the Colonelle and Liuerie of the Turkish Empire, with the *Cressent d'Argent*. And the very greatest honour that the Turkes could hope to receiue from their Prince, was onely permission to weare Greene. The greatest noate of fauour, which he could afford to his Grand *Vizer*, and to the *Pachats*, was to send them a Greene Banner, with a Golden Staffe: which are markes of absolute power, in actions of Iustice, and managing Armes.

The *Turkes* greatest fauor to his best friends.

The loue of King *Lewes* to his followers in his last voyage.

Saint *Lewes*, for leauing a memoriall of his passage into *Affrica* to posterity; gaue permission to his Lords and Gentlemen, which followed him in his last voyage, to qualifie themselues with the name of *Knights of the Shippe*, and *of the Double Cressents*, and to beare about their Armes the Coller of the said Order, composed (as we haue already said) of double Cressents of Siluer, and double Scallops of Gold, fastened together with double Chaines of Gold. The Coller finished Ouale-wise, wherein was presented an Armed Shippe, *Frette d'Argent en Champ de Gueulles, à la pointe ondoyee d'Argent, & de Synople.*

Hee gaue permission likewise to such as would; to take the Shippe for Armes or Crest,

crest, & the enquirie thereof was as a title of honour & prerogatiue, *D'Or au Nauire Argent aux Banderolles de Gueules*. We let passe vnder silence, the names & qualities of the Princes, Lords and Gentlemen, which accompanied the said King S. *Lewes* in his two Voyages beyond the Seas: because they are particularly discoursed in the Gests of those Voyages.

The death of King *Lewes* Before Carthage in Affrica.

This good Prince being dead of a *Dissenterie*, at the Campe of *Carthage* in Affrica, the first day of August, One thousand two hundred three score and tenne; his body was boyled in Wine and Water, vntill that the flesh was neately diuided from the bones. His flesh and entrailes were giuen to the King of *Sicilie*, *Monsieur Charles* of France, brother to the King, who caused them to be interred in the Monasterie of *Mont-reall*, of the Order of Saint *Benedict*, neere to the Citie of *Palermo* in *Sicilie*. But the bones, wrapped vp worthily in Soare-cloath and Silkes, excellently embalmed with most precious perfumes; were carried to S. *Denys* in France. And with them, those of his Sonne *Monsieur Iohn* of France, Count of *Neuers*, dying in the Campe, and of the same disease; As we learne by *William* of *Nangis*, in the liues of the said S. *Lewes*, the threescore and fifteenth Chapter, and of *Philip* the Hardie, the first Chapter.

The decaying of this Order in France.

Concerning this Order of the *Shippe* and *Double Cressents*, it continued not long in France, after the death and buriall of the good King S. *Lewes*; there being none left but the Nob'emen, that bare him companie in this his last voyage, who kept the memorie thereof on their Armes and Collers.

The continuance of this Order in Naples & Sicilie.

But it held full power in the Kingdome of *Naples* and *Sicilie*; because *Monsieur Charles* of France, brother to the said King Saint *Lewes*, Count of *Anion*, *Maine*, &c. King of *Ierusalem*, *Naples*, and *Sicilie*, first of the name, and Count of *Prouence*, tooke the same Order for himselfe, and his Successours the Kings of *Sicilie*, it began retained by the first Ligne of the said Kings: And vntill such time as the Kings of *Arragon* vsurped the same Kingdome, against the second Ligne of *Anion*. It was reuiued againe, vnder name of the *Order of the Cressents*, by the good King *Rene* of *Sicilie*, Duke of *Anion*, and Count of *Prouence*, according as we shall declare elsewhere.

Of the Ceremonies obserued in this Order.

We learne the Ceremonies obserued in the time of S. *Lewes* (and how the Kings conferring and giuing the Order of Knighthood, were then in their chiefest and most pompous State:) by *Mathew Paris* a Monke, in his Historie of *England*, in the time of King *Henry* the third, who liued in the reigne of the said King S. *Lewes*, the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred fortie seauen: when the said *Henry* newly made Knight the Count of *Valence*, a *Poictouin*, *William* of *Lazignan*, his Brother by the Mothers side.

Dum tanto solemnitate in Ecclesia West-Monasterij magnifice continuaretur, Dominus Rex veste deaurata, facta de preciosissimo Baldekino, & Coronula Aurea, quæ vulgariter Garlanda dicitur, redimitus sedens gloriose in solio Regio iussit aduocari fratrem suum vterinum Willelmum de Valentia, cum suis sodalibus quampluribus, qui cum eo statim suscepturi arma, prout decuit, sastigiose susceperunt. Ipsumque Dominus Rex, cum alijs Comitibus Baltheo Militari Gaudenter Insigniuit. That which this Author calleth *Baldequin*, or *Baldakin*, should be vnderstood of a piece of Curled Cloath of Gold, whereof the Kings Roabe or Garment was made, crowned with a Garland, and a like Wreath, or Circle of Pearles and precious Stones; which then Kings, Princes and Princesses ware at solemne Festiuals, and on dayes of delight.

William Cosit of Holland chosen King of the Romans, and created Knight.

In the Chronicles of Flanders, vnder the yeare One thousand two hundred fortie seauen, *William*, Count of *Holland*, was elected King of the Romaines, being but a yong Gentleman, made Knight before he was crowned at *Aix la Chapelle* in *Germanie*. After the Gospell, the King of *Bohemia*, one of the Electors of the Empire, presented the Knight (which should be made) to *Pedro Capuccio*, Cardinall of Saint *George Au Voile d'Or*, vttering to him these words. *Vestra Reuerendissima Pater Almistue, præsentamus hunc electum Armigerum; deuotissime supplicantes, quatenus vestra Paternitas votiuam eius professionem suscipiat, vt militari nostro Collegio inscribi valeat.*

Vpon this demand, the Cardinall represented what qualities a Knight ought to

be endued withall: That he must be generous and magnanimious, honest and ... uile in conuersation, and of singuler integritie and vprightnesse.

Afterward, he gaue him to vnderstand, what the Ordenances and Statutes ... Knighthood were, and how practised from all times.

Ordenances belonging to the Order of Knighthood.

First of all, to heare daily the Office of the Passion of our Sauiour.

To expose his person couragiously, for defence of the Catholique Faith.

To deliuer the Holy Church and her Ministers, from all such as would ... them.

To defend and protect Widdowes, Orphanes, and miserable or distressed ... sons:

The auncient Order & manner of making Knights.

At the end whereof, the Cardinall hauing made his demand to the Gentleman there present; If he would be a Knight; Receiuing his answere and consent, as ... his Oathe: then he said after the Cardinall as followeth. *Ego Willelmus ... sis militiæ Princeps, iureiurando profiteor regulæ militaris obseruantium; ... Domini mei Petri ad velum aureum Diaconi Cardinalis, & Apostolicæ Sedis Legati, per hoc sacrosanctum Euangelium, quod manu tango.* Whereto the Cardinall ... this answere;

Hæc deuota professio sit peccatorum tuorum vera remissio. Amen.

And after he had giuen him a blow on the cheeke, and caused him to guird on his Sword; then he proceeded in this manner:

Ad honorem Dei omnipotentis te Militem Ordino, ac in nostro Collegio te gratanter accipeo. Et memento quoniam Saluator Mundi coram Annâ Pontifice prolatus, & illusus est; coram Pilato præside flagellis cæsus, ac spinis coronatus; coram Herode chlamyde vestitus, & derisus est, & coram omni Populo nudus, ac vulneratus in Cruce suspensus est. Cuius approbria memorari te suadeo, cuius Crucem acceptare te cunctis, & mortem Christi vleisci te monco.

The Kings of France made Knights by Prelates.

It was the custome in auncient times, to receiue the Order of Knighthood at the Prelates hands. And so it was long time kept and maintained among the French, as holding it no meane principle of Christian Religion, to fight for the Church, and such as were the holy and reuerend Fathers thereof. Yea, Kings themselues were euer thereto deuoutly affected, as neuer disallowing their graue aduise and counsell, in the most serious affaires concerning their Kingdomes, and for propugnation of their Common-weales.

Examples are numberlesse in this case, and would be ouer-teadious to the Reader, if they should be set downe, according to the testimonie of many learned and ... cious Authors. It shall therefore serue as a sufficient and warrantable proofe, ... our most-Christian Monarches, after they were Sacred and Crowned; receiue the Order of Knighthood at the Prelates hands, which had Sacred and Crowned them. As (in our time) King *Henry* the Great, by *Messire Nicolas de Thou*, Bishop of *Chartres*; and King *Lewes* the thirteenth, now reigning, at the hands of the most Illustrious Cardinall, Deane of the Cardinals, *Frances, Duke of Ioyeuse*, Peere of Fraunce, Archbishop of *Rouen*, and Primate of *Normandie*.

The Order of Saint Michaell, Instituted in the Citie of *Amboise*, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand foure hundred threescore and Nine.

CHAP. V.

The Order of Saint Michaell.



LEWES King of France, Eleuenth of the name, following the designes and will of his Father *Charles* the seauenth, reuiued the Glorious, after the *Order of the Starre* was abolished, instituted the most famous Order of Knights, called *Of Saint Michaell*.

Kingdomes, Prouinces, Cities and Townes, yea, and men perticulerly, haue each one their Tutelarie Angell and Guardian. *Varios custodes Vrbibus tunctis Mens Diuina distribuit: Vt Animæ Nascentibus, ita Populis fatales Genij diuiduntur.* So saith *Simmachius*.

It is the Doctrine of *Mercurius Trismegistus*, and of *Iamblichus, de Mysteriis Ægyptiorum*; conformable to the sacred Scriptures.

In *Daniell* the tenth and twelfth Chapters, the Arch-Angell Saint *Michaell* fought against the Angell-Guardian of the *Persians* Empire. *Princeps Regni persarum resistit mihi vno, & viginti diebus: & ecce Michael vnus de Principibus primis venit in adiutorium meum. The Princes of the Kingdome of Persia withstood me one and twentie dayes: but loe, Michaell one of the chiefe Princes came to helpe me.* That which the Prophet spake there, concerning the Princes of the *Persians* and *Grecians*; is vnderstood of the Angels-Guardians and Tutelaries of the two Monarchies.

Dan. 10. 13. Dan. 12. 2.

We reade in *Iosephus, Agesippus*, and other Ecclesiasticall Writers, that (some indifferent while) before the Emperours *Vespasian* and *Titus*, Father and Sonne, besiedged and tooke the holy Citie of *Ierusalem*; there were heard in the Temple thereof, the plaine and articulate voyces of Angels-Guardians thereof, saying, *Let us depart from hence.*

Voyces in the Temple of *Ierusalem*.

The Romaines were of the selfe same beliefe. So that with solemne Sacrifices, they celebrated daily the memory of the Tutelarie God of their Citie of Rome, whom they stiled by the name of *Romanessus*. Which name they accounted to be so sacred, as it was prohibited to pronounce or discouer it, vnder paine of death. In this respect was it, that a Romaine Knight had death inflicted on him; because (by mischance, or some other light meanes) he had vttered the name of this their Tutelarie God, as it is obserued by *Alexander ab Alexandro*, in his *Geniall Dayes*. And the Romaines prohibited this the more rigorously, as fearing least the name of their *Genius*, being made knowne to such Nations as were their enemies; he might be called away, and drawne to their Citie, which would haue bin the losse and vtter ruine of their State. For, in besiedging a Citie of their enemy, the Romaines (by certaine Sacrifices and Enchantments) called to the *Genius* or Demon-Guardian thereof, entreating and coniuring him, that if he would come thence to Rome; he should there haue a much more stately and magnificent Temple, and be a thousand times much more honored, then he could be in that poore besiedged Citie. As verily beleeuing, that by such Ceremonies, those *Penates* and *Dij Patrij*, would forsake their former abiding Cities, and goe with them to Rome.

Romanessus the Tutelarie God of Rome

The reason why the Romans feared to haue the name of their Tutelary God knowne.

Excessere omnes adytis, aris{que} relictis
Dij quibus imperium hoc steterat.

So effectually speaketh the Latine Poet.

The

The *Tyrians* being beſiedged, would needes enchaine *Hercules* (their Tutelarie God) with Chaines of Gold, for feare leaſt he ſhould leaue them, ſo obſerueth *Plutarch.* And vpon this Subiect Nations of the Gentiles Pagans, adorned (in their Temples, thoſe Idols which were their pretended Guardian-Gods: to whom, (on a certaine day yearely) they performed diuers Sacrifices, with humble and deuout prayers; to the end, that they would continue firme and immouable in their Cities and Townes. Others inuoked (in generall) all the Tutelarie Gods, and would not haue any in particular: becauſe they would not be at the pe- rill, either to make them faſt, or looſe them, by being called thence, and coniured to ſome other place.

Nations moſt barbarous, and furtheſt off from our knowledge, haue done the ſame. For the *Yngas* of *Peru*, in their Royall Citie of *Cuſco*, had a goodly and magnificent Temple, built after the faſhion of the Romaines *Pantheon*: in this Temple did the Weſt Indian Kings, place the Gods of ſuch Nations and Pro- uinces, as were by them Conquered and ſubdued: being thereby confirmed perſwaded, that they ſhould keepe thoſe Prouinces vnder tearmes of duetie and obedience; becauſe they held (as Hoſtages) their Tutelarie Gods, and Protectors. As is written by *Ioſephus Acoſta*, in his naturall Hiſtorie of the Indies.

S. Michael the Tutelarie Angell of France.

Saint *Michael*, the moſt excellent of the *Order of Angels*, hath beene honoured by the French, as being the Tutelarie Angell and Guardian of all France, the moſt noble Monarchie of the World, and therefore he is called *Princeps Imperij Francorum*. A title which this Angell tooke, when (vnder the Reigne of *Childebert*, King of France, called the *Iuſt*, and third of the name) he appeared in the yeare Seuen hundred and nine) to *Aubert*, Biſhop of *Auranches*; commanding him to prepare and build a Church, vpon a Rocke in his Dioceſſe, called the *Tombe*, otherwiſe named *Tombe-Helene*, and *The Perill of the Sea*, as *Sigibert* writeth in his Chronicles *Childeberto Monarchium Regni Francorum tenente, Archangelus Michael apparens Auberto Abrincatenſi Epiſcopo, monuit eum ſemel, & iterum, vt in loco Maris, qui propter eminentiam ſui* Tumba *vocatur, fundaret Eccleſiam in ſui memoriam.* And ſince that time the Mount Saint *Michael* hath beene frequented with Pilgrimages, which are yearely made thither, from all the parts and quarters of France.

The Feaſt day of *S. Michael* in France.

Alſo ſince that time, the French haue honoured yearely (with a ſolemne Feaſt and reſt from all labour) this Apparition on the ſame day as it was done, namely the nine and twentie of *September*: a day dedicated to the Arch-Angell Saint *Michael*, in remembrance of his Apparition on the Rocke *Tombelaine*. Commanded to be kept moſt ſtrictly, with thoſe which are ſpecified by our King and Emperour *Charlemaigne*, in the ſecond Booke of his *Capitularies*, at the three and thirtieth Title, *De Feſtiuitatibus Anni.*

Feſtos dies in Anno celebrare ſancimus, hoc eſt, Diem Dominicum Paſcha, cum omni honore, & ſobrietate venerari: ſimili modo totam hebdomadam illam obſeruare decreuimus. Diem Aſcenſionis Domini pleniter celebrare. Pentecoſten ſimiliter vt die Paſche. In natali Apoſtolorum Petri, & Pauli diem vnum. Natiuitatem Sancti Ioannis Baptiſtæ. Aſſumptionem Sanctæ Mariæ. Dedicationem Sancti Michaelis. *Natalem Sancti Iohannis, Sancti Martini, Sancti Andreæ. In Natali Domini dies quatuor. Octabas Natalis Domini. Epiphaniam Domini. Purificationem Sanctæ* Mariæ. *Et illas feſtiuitates Martyrum, vel Confeſſorum obſeruare decreuimus, quorum in vnaquaque Parrochia Sanctæ Corpora requieſcunt.* We vnderſtand by this Capitularie and Ordinance, that the yeares of the Auncient French, began at the Feaſt of *Easter*, the Feaſt whereof continued the whole weeke; and the like at Pentecoſte. For *Chriſtmas* had foure Feaſt daies only: which we haue obſerued to this day.

The yeares beginning with the Auncient French.

Now although the Celeſtiall Hierarchie, diuided into nine Orders, containe an innumerable number of Angels, as is written by the great *S. Denys Areopagita*, firſt Biſhop of our Citie of Paris: yet notwithſtanding, the Church being alwaies illuminated by the Holy-Ghoſt, receiueth no more but three names of thoſe moſt bleſſed Spirits: *Michaell, Gabriell*, and *Raphaell*. All thoſe whereof an addition is made, are the ſuppoſed names of Deuils, and not of Angels: which was determined in the

the Romaine Councell, held vnder Pope *Zacharie*, in the cauſe of *Adebert* and *Clement*, accuſed of Witchcraft. *Cumque per ordinem legeretur, peruenit ad locum, vbi dicit. Precor vos, & coniuro vos, & ſupplico me ad vos Angele Vriel, Angele Raguel, Angele Tubuel, Angele* Michael, *Angele Adimis, Angele Tubuas, Angele Sabaoth, Angele Simiel. Dum verò hæc oratio ſacrilega vſque ad finem perlecta fuiſſet, Quid aliud agendum eſt, niſi vt omnia quæ coram nobis lecta ſunt igne concrementur? Octo enim nomina Angelorum quæ in ſua oratione Adebertus inuocauit, non Angelorum,* Præter Michaelis, *ſed magis Dæmonum nomina ſunt. Nos autem, vt à veſtro Sancto Apoſtolatu edocemur, & Diuina tradit auctoritas, non plus quam trium Angelorum nomina agnoſcimus, id eſt, Michael, Gabriel, Raphael.*

The decree determined in the Romaine Councell.

Wherefore our King and Emperour *Charlemaigne*, conformably to this, which had (long time before) beene determined in the Councell of *Laodicea*, prohibited by his Ordinance, the introducing into the Churches of France, any other inuocation and names of Angels, but the three aboue named: In the firſt Booke of his *Capitularies*, at the ſixteenth Title, *De ignotis Angelorum nominibus.*

In eodem Conſilio præcipitur, vt ignota Angelorum nomina nec fingantur, nec nuncupentur, niſi illorum quos habemus in auctoritate; hi ſunt Michael, Gabriel, Raphael.

Among thoſe moſt bleſſed Spirits, Saint *Michael* is numbred the firſt and chiefe, honoured from all times (as we haue ſaid) for the Tutelarie Angell and Guardian of France: in the protection whereof, he hath alwaies ſhewne himſelfe ſuccourable, euen in the very greateſt ſtormes and torments, that could be threatned againſt it. Wee will only make obſeruation of two memorable examples, happening in two the moſt miſerable Ages, when this flouriſhing Monarchie was (almoſt) within two fingers bredth of her vtter ruine.

Of the two ſeuerall deliuerances of France.

The firſt example concerning the Engliſh in France.

While the Engliſhmen marched thorow all the quarters of France, euen as chaſing out which way they pleaſed to take, by the daungerous and diſmall faction of the houſe of *Bourgongne*: they beſiedged (with all their power) the auncient Citie of *Orleans*, then thought moſt dreadfull to the French, in the Month of *October*, One thouſand foure hundred twentie and eight. The Engliſhmen being perſwaded in their owne conceit, that they (by a generall aſſault) ſhould ſurprize it, and ſo become Maſters thereof: the Arch-Angell Saint *Michael*, appeared viſibly vpon the Bridge of the Citie, fighting againſt the Engliſhmen, and ouerthrowing their Standards, Banners, and Penons, looking Red with Leopards and Dragonned Lions, according as is ſaid by *Monſtrelet*. So that the French (thus holpen by Diuine aſſiſtance) beat backe the Engliſh, foiled and conſtrained them to raiſe their Siedge, with a notable loſſe of their men. A moſt worthie victorie, whereof was then ſaid (by way of thankſgiuing) as in the twelfth of the *Apocalypſe*. *Factum eſt prælium magnum in Cœlo; Michael, & Angeli eius, præliabantur cum Draconе: & Draco pugnabat, & Angeli eius, & non valuerunt, neque locus eorum inuentus eſt amplius.* And there was warre in Heauen, *Michael*, and his Angels fought againſt the Dragon, and the Dragon fought and his Angels, *And preuailed not*, neither was their place found any more in Heauen. For to ſpeake truly, this ouerthrow was the beginning of the ruine of the Engliſh in France, and, that King *Charles* the ſeuenth wonne to himſelfe the title of Victorious.

The Engliſh driuen from their beſieging *Orleans*.

Our other memorie is that happy day, Teuſday, the two and twentieth of *March*, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred foure ſcore and foureteene, when that furious and bloudie monſter of the *League*, was beaten downe to the earth by our Gauliſh *Hercules*, in reducing the Citie of Paris, to the acknowledgement and ſeruice of her Monarche, the valiant and wiſe Pilot of his Ship, *Henry the Great, fourth of that name, of eternall memorie*. On the day of his entrance thereinto, this great Prince, rendering thankes to God for this reduction, peaceably vpon his knees, in the Quire of our Lady Church: there was viſibly ſeene by all then preſent (being an vnſpeakable number) neere vnto his Maieſtie, *S. Michael the Archangel Guardian of his France* (in the ſhape and forme of a young childe, aged about ſixe or ſeuen yeares, moſt gracious for excellencie in beautie; and cloathed all in white, according as Painters doe ordinarily figure Angels) who during all the time of Ceremonie, ſtood on the right ſide of the King, and it being finiſhed, he vaniſhed

The ſecond example, the vtter ouerthrow of the bloudy League and recouerie of Paris.

shed immediatly, before any could perceiue how, or which way he went. The King who had fixedly noted all the Masse time this strange apparition; had such a rapture of ioy and gladnesse in his soule, with further hope of subduing the rest of his enemies: that with a loud voice (so audibly as all the assistants might heare him) he said: *Our enemies must needes be foiled, when God sends his Angels to assist vs.*

The ioyfull words of King Henry the fourth.

After the Apparition of the Arch-Angell Saint *Michael*, on the Bridge of *Orleans*; King *Charles*, seuenth of the name, and in whose Reigne this miracle happened, tooke for his *Ori-flambe*, the Image of the Arch-Angell Saint *Michael*, with these two deuises, deriued from the Prophecies of *Daniel*. *Ecce Michael vnus de Principibus venit in adiutorium meum.*

And the other:

Nemo est adiutor meus in omnibus, nisi Michael *Princeps noster.*

The Vow made by King *Charles* the seuenth in honor of *S. Michael.*

And euen then he made a vow, that being at peace and quiet in his Kingdome, he would create a new Order of Militarie Discipline and Knighthood, in honour of the said Angell-Guardian of the Kingdome of France, whose Image he would beare alwaies in his Great Standard: ouer and beside the Banner of France, *Parsemee de Fleurs de Lys sans nombre; euermore caried before our Kings, when in Person they marched to any Warre.*

Berry, King of Armes, describing the entrance of the said King *Charles* the seuenth into his Citie of Paris, reduced vnder his obedience on Fryday after *Easter*, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred thirtie and sixe (in memorie whereof on the like day yearely, the Court of Parlement, Chamber of Accounts, Court of Aydes, and Towne House, or Guilde-Haule of the Citie of Paris, goe to heare Masse in the Cathedrall Church) informeth vs; that this entrance was made on the Monday, being the day of *S. Martin*, the twelfth of *Nouember*, One thousand foure hundred thirtie seuen. And that before the King marched eight hundred Archers, well appointed and Armed, conducted by the Count of *Engoulesme*, a Prince of the Bloud, and descended of the House of *Orleans*.

The Royall entrance of King *Charles* the seuenth into the Citie of Paris.

The King went alone, wholy Armed with gilt Armour, the Helmet excepted; in stead whereof he wore a pointed Cappe or Bonnet of white Beauer, doubled and lined with Carnation Veluet, the Band of rich precious Stones, and on the knot of the Band, a massie tuft of Gold. Vpon his Cuirasse he wore a rich Coat of Armes, of Carnation Veluet, crossed with Gold and Siluer, and thickly embrodered with Pearles and precious Stones. His Horse was couered with a Foot-cloth of Veluet, of blew Celestiall coullour, dangling downe to the ground, all curiously ouer-spread with great *Floures de Luces* of Gold. The Chanfraine or Front-stall of fine Steele, and aloft on the Horses head a rich Plume of Austridge Feathers.

Before him, and next to his Person, went *Pothon de Saintré Treille*, who vpon a Truncheon, (painted with Azure, and thickly powdered with Golden *Floures de Luces*, aduanced on his right thigh) carried the Kings Helmet, Crowned with a rich Crowne, made close with a double *Floure de Luce*. The Horse of the said *Pothon* (led by *Iohn d'Olon* Gentleman, going on foot) was couered with fine white Cloth, charged with Goldsmiths worke of flying Hearts. Before him rode the King of Armes *Mon-Ioye*, attired in his Coat of Violet Veluet, hauing thereon three *Floures de Luces* of Gold, and embrodered with great goodly Pearles.

After his Maiestie rode *Monsieur le Daulphine*, Armed with Armes (in all respects) like vnto the King his Father.

After him followed the Pages of the Kings Chamber, as also those belonging to his Sonne the *Daulphine*: the said Pages and their Horses cloathed in the Liueries of their Masters, richly embrodered with Gold-Smiths worke.

Before *Pothon* rode the Constable of France, and the Countes of *Vendosme* and *Tancarville*.

After

After the *Daulphine*, rode the Lord *Charles* of *Anion*, his Vncle, on the right hand, with the Countes *De la Marche*, and *de Perdiac* on the left.

And after followed the Bastard of *Orleans*, himselfe Armed at all points, and his Horse courred with Gold-Smithes worke, and a ribh Chaine of Gold, trailing long the Horses backe, made like great Oaken leaues, each weighing fiftie Marcks. Then man conducted the Kings Batalion, consisting of a thousand Launces, Armed all points, and their Horses barbed.

The Standard of Saint *Michael* the Arch-Angell.

Behinde him rode a Querrie of the Stable, who carried a Vermillion coloured launce in his hand, painted with Stars of fine Gold: and on the top thereof a Standard, of Crimosine Silke, thickly powdred with Starres of Gold, and in the midst, the Image of my Lord Saint *Michael* the Arch-Angell.

King *Charles* his entrance into *Rouen*.

The same King *Charles* the seuenth, after he had conquered *Normandie*, and driuen the English-men thence; he made his entrance into the Citie of *Roucn* (at large described by *Enguerran de Monstrelet*, Continuer of the Historie of M. *Iohn Froissard*) on Monday, being the Vigile of Saint *Martin*, the tenth of *Nouember*, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fortie and nine.

Behinde and after the Victorious King (saith *Monstrelet*) rode the Lord *De Culant*, Maister of the King his Household, and with him *Rogerin Blosset*, chiefe Querrie of the Kings Stable: *Who caried the Standard Royall of Crimosine Sattine, with an Image of S. Michael in the midst of the Standard, thickly flourished all along with Flowers of fine Gold.* And after followed *Iohn de Scamuille*, called *Hauard*, Bayliffe of *Dreux*, in Scarlet Caruer to the King: who carried the Penon, *which was of Azured Veluet* (that is Celestiall Blew) *with three Floures de Luces of Gold, embrodered with Gold, and the same Floures de Luces, likewise embrodered with great Pearles.*

The Kings perticuler deuotion to *S. Michael.*

King *Charles* the seuenth had a perticular deuotion to this Arch-Angell Saint *Michael*, so that we reade in the Historie of his Reigne, and in the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and foureteene, the twelfth day of *Ianuarie*; Queene *Isabell* of *Bauaria*, his Wife (sirnamed *Le Grand Gorre*, for her pride and pompe) lying in Child-bed, and deliuered of a goodly Daughter, he caused her to be named *Michaelle*. And the King also commanded, *that the Gate of Paris, whereby we passe to the Charter-House Monkes, to Vannes, and many other Villages*, formerly called *the Gate of Hell*; should be named, *Saint Michaels Gate*, causing it to be enlarged, and made a great deale *wider then it was before*.

The Kings daughter named *Michaele.*

The Streete and Gate of *Hell*, the name of them altered by the King.

This Street of *Hell* became so named, in regard that none durst passe thorow it, by reason of wicked Spirits, which were conioyned in the Palace of *Vauuerd*, a place of pleasure, built in the time of King *Robert*, as well as *Nostre Dame des Champs*, and giuen to the Charter-House Monkes by the King *S. Lewes*, to chase the Deuill out of *Vauuerd*. A Prouerbe which (to this day) is attributed by the *Parisians*, to wicked vnthrifts, not hauing the feare of God before their eyes, nor any discipline whatsoeuer. By order also giuen from the same King *Charles* the seuenth, the Image of *S. Michael* was placed on the Pinacle, of the Church of *Nostre Dame des Champs*: as yet it is there to be seene at this day.

Whatsoeuer King *Charles* the seuenth could not effect, and bring to passe; King *Lewes* the eleuenth, being his Sonne, brought to perfection, conformably to the will of his Father, executing his designes, and instituting *The Order of Saint Michael the Arch-Angell*, of which Order, we haue thought good to set downe the Statutes, thus following.

The

The Orders appointed by King Lewes the Eleuenth : For the Institution of the Order of Saint *Michael.*

CHAP. VI.

A Copie of the Letters Patents.

LEWES, *by the Grace of God, King of France : To all present, and to come, Greeting. Wee make knowne, that for the most perfect and sincere loue, which wee beare to the Noble Order and estate of Knighthood, whereof (in most ardent affection) wee desire the honour and encrease, that according to Our heartie wish, the Holy Catholique Faith, the blessed condition of Our Holy Mother the Church, and Posteritie of the publique weale, might bee kept and maintained as they ought to be : Wee, to the glory and praise of God, Our Almightie Creatour, and reuerence due to the glorious Virgine Marie, as also in the honour and reuerence of Saint* Michael, *the prime and chiefe Knight, who (in Gods quarell) fought against the auncient enemie of Mankinde, and made him fall from Heauen ; who hath likewise alwaies kept his place, preserued and defended his Oratorie, named the Mount Saint* Michael, *without suffering it at any time to be taken, subdued, or brought into the hands of this Kingdomes auncient enemies : And to the end, that all good, high and Noble courages should be incited, and moued the more to vertuous actions.*

The first day of *August*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand foure hundred three score and nine, and of our Reigne the ninth, in our Castle of *Amboise*. Wee constitute, create, and ordaine, and by these presents doe constitute, create, and ordaine, an Order of Brother-hood, or louing Companie of certaine number of Knights, which Wee will, shall be named, *The Order of my Lord Saint Michael the Arch-Angell*, in and vnder the Forme, Conditions, Statutes, Orders, and Articles, as hereafter are set downe.

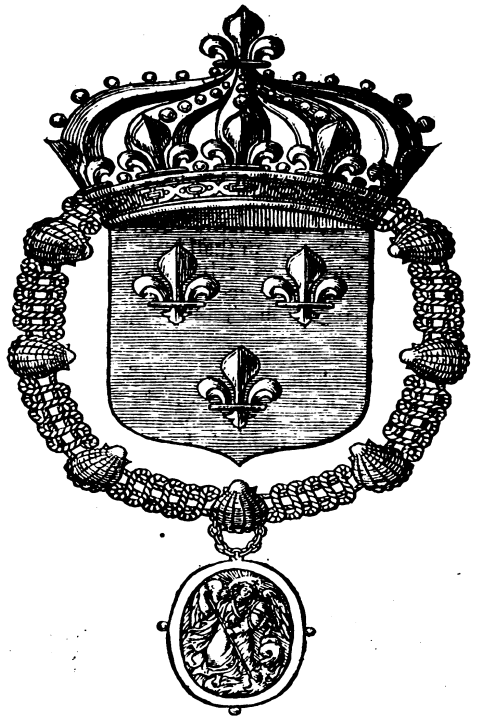
Heere follow the Satutes and Constitutions of the Order.

The number of Knights 36. the King the chiefe.

1. FIrst of all We haue ordained, and doe ordaine, that in this present Order there shall be sixe and thirtie Knights, Gentlemen of name, and of Armes, without reproach : whereof Our Selfe will be one, the chiefe and Soueraigne, during Our life, and after Vs Our Successours Kings of France. The Brethren and Companions of the Order, shall be bound to leaue and forsake all other Orders, at their entrance into this, if they be of any other, be he a Prince or otherwise : except such Brethren shall be Emperours, Kings, or Dukes, who (with this Order) may beare that whereof they are chiefe ; hauing the accord and consent of Vs and Our Successours, and Our Bretheren of the said Order. In like manner, We and Our Successours, Soueraignes of this Order, may (if it shall so please Vs) take the Order of any the said Emperours, Kings or Dukes, with Our owne, for the better demonstration of loue one to another, and hope of future good to ensue thereby.

2. And

2. And becauſe We deſire nothing more, then that in this preſent Order, there ſhould be the beſt, moſt renowned, vertuous and Noble Knights, whereof Wee can receiue knowledge, as well in them of Our owne Bloud and Lignage, as of any other Kingdome from Ours : Wee, being well and duly informed of the good Parts, Valour, Wiſedome, Vertues, and other commendable qualities, in the Knights which are heere-under named, and verily perſwading Our Selfe, of their ſound loyaltie, hope of continuance therein, with abſolute perſeuerance in all honorable and worthie works: haue named, and doe name Our Bretheren and Companions of this Order, whereof We and Our Succeſſours, Kings of France will bee Soueraignes, as before is ſaid. To wit :



Our moſt deare and intirely affected Brother, *Charles*, Duke of *Guienne*.

Our moſt deare and beloued Brother and Couſine, *Iohn*, Duke of Bourbonnois and *Auuergne*.

Our beloued Brother and Couſine, *Lewes* of *Luxembourg*, Count of Saint *Paule*, and Conſtable of France.

Andrew de Laual, Lord of *Loheac*, and Marſhall of France.

Iohn, Count of *Sancerre*, Lord of *Bucil*.

Lewes de Beaumont, Lord *De la Foreſt*, and *Du Pleſſis*.

Meſsire Lewes d' Eſtoute-Ville, and Lord *de Torcy*.

Lewes de Laual, Lord *de Chaſtillon*.

Matheiue, Baſtard of Bourbon, Count *de Rouſſillon*, Admirall of France.

Anthonie de Chabannes, Count *de Dammartin*, Great Maſter of the Houſhold of France.

Iohn, Baſtard *D' Armaignac*, Count of *Comminges*, Marſhall of France, and Gouernour of *Daulphine*.

George de la Trimouille, Lord of *Craon*.

Gilbert de Chabannes, Lord of Curton, and Seneſchall of *Guienne*.

Charles, Lord of Curſol, Seneſchall or Steward of *Poictou*.

Tanneguy du Chaſtel, Gouernour of *Rouſsillon* and *Cerdaigne*.

And the reſt, ſeruing to perfect and make vp the number of ſixe and thirtie ; we reſerue to be placed by election of Vs, and of Our ſaid Bretheren, at the firſt Chapter and Conuention : according as by Vs, and them aboue named (or the moſt part of them) ſhall be aduiſed in following Conuentions and Chapters.

The Coller of the Order giuen by the King and how to be worne.

3. For better knowledge of this Order, and the Knights honoured therewith; We will (for once only) giue to each of the ſaid Knights, *A Coller of Gold*, made of

lops, enterlaced one within another, and doubly banded, fastened on small Chaines or Mailes of Gold. At the midst of the said Coller, vpon a Rocke shall be an Image of my Lord S. *Michael*, which must hang downe vpon the breast. Which Coller, we and our Successours Soueraignes, and each Knight of the said Order, shall be bound to weare daily, and openly about his necke: on paine of causing a Masse to be said, and to giue (for Gods sake) to the summe of seauen *Sols* and five *Deniers Tournois*: which must(in conscience)be done by the defailant, at all times, and as often as he shall misse of wearing it. Onely in Armies excepted, where it shall suffice to weare the Image of S. *Michael*, hanging at a small chaine of Gold,or at a riband of Silke, which himselfe pleaseth.

How &when wearing the great Coller is to be excused.

4 And likewise, when the Soueraigne, or any of the said Knights shall iourney thorow the Countrey, or shall be in their houses among their priuate Familie, a hunting and other places, where they shall not haue any company, or assemblie of men or people of degree: then he or they shall not be so neerely constrained to weare the great Coller; but onely the said Image, and in such manner as hath bin said.

Of what weight in gold the Coller ought to be.

5 And when it shall so happen, that the Coller hath neede of some repairing; he may not put it into the Goldsmiths hands, except the Knight to whom the Coller belongeth, is not to pay any thing for the amending. Or if he vndertake some long voyage; Or must leaue the Coller for securitie of his person. Which Coller must containe the weight of *Two hundred Crownes of Gold*, and not vnder, without being enriched with precious Stones, or any thing else. And the Knight may not engage it, nor alienate it vpon any necessitie,for any cause, or in any manner whatsoeuer: but it must alwaies appertaine,and remaine intirely to the said Order.

For propagation of loue & amitie in the Order.

6 At the entrance whereinto, all Knights thereof shall promise, to abide in loyall loue to vs, the Heads and Soueraignes of the said Order, as also one towards another. And we to them will procure and encrease their honour and benefit, for the auoiding of dishonour and damage to any of the Order. If any one heare such matter published, as may redound to the preiudice and detriment of any of the Order: he standeth obliged, to excuse the same in the best manner he can. And if the defamer perseuere still in the publication of those words; then, by the Oath which he hath taken concerning the said Order, he is bound to reueale them to his Breth en and Fellowes, what soeuer was heard spoken against their honour and benefit. And after the said Remonstrance, if the euill speaker persist still in the same, they must signifie those speeches to the Knight,against whom the scandalous words were so openly published.

Against iniurious offending Militarie attempts vpon honorable occasions.

7 Moreouer, if any practise to offend, hinder or endamage vs, or our Successours Soueraignes and Heads of the Order, or our Kingdome, vassailes and Subiects; when we,and our Successiue Heads and Soueraignes of the Order, attempt some enterprise in Armes, for defence of the Christian Faith, Reestablishment, or libertie of the Church of God, maintenance of the Crowne of France, the publique good of our Kingdome, and against our auncient enemies, or any other iust quarrell: In such cases, the said Knights of the Order shall be bound to serue personally, if they be able to doe it. And such as are impuissant or vnable, shall send reasonable and competent wages;except a lawfull excuse,& euident impeachment, doe pleade on their behalfe to the Soueraigne of the Order.

8 We in like manner,to expresse the great affection we haue, and doe intend to our Brethren and Companions of the Order, and for the better and more firme preseruing them in a perfect vnion: doe promise, as the like shall our Successours, Chiefes and Soueraignes of the Order, to keepe, defend, support and maintaine all the said Knights, Officers and Supporters of the Order, and euery one of them; in all their Estates, Dignities, Preheminences, Prerogatiues, Countries, Lands, Seigneuries, and other rights. To defend them likewise against all such, as would attempt any thing against them,and to preserue them as our own proper right by our power;yea,and so long,as by right we and they may doe it,like good Heads, Brethren,Companions and Officers of the Order.

No warres or danger to be vndertaken without aduise of the knights.

9 Moreouer, we will not vndertake any wars, or any high and dangerous businesse; without making it knowne to the greater part of our fellow Knights: As willing herein to haue, and vse their best aduise and counsell. Prouided and excepted neuertheless, all hastie matters, and such as require celeritie, the reueiling whereof may be preiudiciall to the said enterprises. And the Knights and Brethren of the Order shall promise and sweare, not to disclose the enterprises of their Soueraigne, nor any thing which shall be deliuered in counsell before them: in acknowledgement of the obligation and faithfulnesse, for the grace and fauour done them by the Soueraign,in not vndertaking,or presuming on any occasion of weight and consequence, without their counsell.

A limitation for vndertaking warres or long voyages by any of the Knights.

10 In like manner, the Knights our faithfull Subiects and seruants, shall not include themselues into any wars, or long voyages, without our leaue and licence, or of our Successours Soueraignes of the Order. Not that we will, or intend to hinder or restraine our Knights; but that in Lands which they hold of others,they may enter into warre and seruice, in like manner as they had done, before the erection of this Order. And likewise,such as are not our Subiects,nor to our Successers,Soueraignes of the Order; may serue in Armes,and make voyages at their owne pleasure, without making it knowne to vs before; if possibly they may doe so, without the preiudice of our seruice and affaires.

In case of difference or discontent betweene any of the Knights.

11 If any debate or contention shall happen betweene any the Knights,and Officers of the Order,in regard of their persons onely,whereby some doubt may arise, what way is best to be taken therein: The case comming to the knowledge of the Soueraigne, he shall prohibite (by his Letters to the parties) all meanes and matter of fact. And at the next Chapter,those debates shall be discided by the Soueraign, and his Brethren Knights; the parties being heard what they can say,as well on the one side,as other. Which parties shall stand bound to make their apparance (or aduocates for them) to obey such an appointment as thereon is made,giuen by the Soueraigne and the Knights: Reseruing all right of our high Iustice,and Authority Royall, of vs and our Successours. And if any shall presume to outrage, or iniurie the bodies of our Knights, or Officers of the Order: all the rest (then present, or which may come to the wrong) shall succour, relieue, and remedie him or them, so neere as their power will extend.

For iniurie or offence offerd to any knight or Officer.

12 Moreouer, if any one (being no Vassaile nor Subiect to the Soueraigne of the Order) shall offer grieuance, iniurie or violence to euery,or any Knight or Officer of the Order, and subiect to the Soueraigne, whereof he cannot haue any reparation by Iustice, and yet the Knight or Officer so wronged, will submit himselfe to the ordenance of the Soueraigne, and the other partie maketh refusall: In this case, the Soueraigne and Companions of the Order, doe stand bound, to vse all their power and assistance to their Brother & Companion.And on the behalfe of strange Knights, as shall submit themselues, and the other partie make refusall; the Soueraigne and Companions must giue them such assistance, as in reason and equitie they ought to doe.

For mouing warr against any Knight of the Order.

13 If either at this present, or in time to come, there happen to be Brethren of the Order, not Subiects to vs, or to our Successours, Soueraignes, and it may so come to passe, that we, or our Successours shall be moued to raise or make warre, against a naturall Lord and Brother of the Order, or against their or his Country: In this case wee openly declare, that such a Knight or such Knights,

being no Subiects to the Soueraigne; may lawfully defend their naturall Lord and Countrey, without incurring blame, taxation of their honour, or any misprision against their chiefe Soueraigne. But if their naturall Soueraigne, shall raise warre against the Soueraigne of the Order, his Kingdome and Subiects, during the time of Constitution and Brotherhood of the Order; they may excuse themselues from seruice. But if their Lord will constraine them; they may doe it, without any forfeit of their Honour: prouided that the Lord himselfe goe to the warre in person, but not otherwise, and they make the same (before) knowen to the Soueraigne of the Order, vnder their Hand and Seale.

Concerning trauaile, or seruing in War vnder any forreigne Prince.

14. If it shall so happen, that any of the said Knights doe goe vpon some voiage, or seruice in Armes of any Stranger Prince: he is first to aduertise the Soueraigne thereof. And if any of the Brethren or Companions of the Order, chaunce to be taken in Warre or Battaile: he stands bound to performe good and loyall behauiour, for saiuing the life of his Brother and Companion. If he take him with his owne hand, he must frankly quit him on his faith, and so deliuer him: except the Knight be a chiefe Leader in the warre, by him taken Prisoner. And if his Lord will not consent thereto: the Knight cannot (with his honour) take Armes for him, but may forsake his seruice.

Continuance in the Order during life, except in cases of foule crimes.

15. For the rest, the Bretheren and Knights entertained as hath beene said, and on the before remembred conditions: they are to continue so during their liues; except they forfeit, or commit some reproachfull crimes, for which they shall deserue to be deprined and cast off, whereof We purpose to speake more, as hereafter followeth.

In case of error or heresie and treason.

If it happen that any Knight (which Wee wish may neuer come to passe) shall be conuinced or attainted of Heresie, or errour against the Catholique Faith, for which he hath receiued some punishment, or publique penaltie: If he shall be attainted or conuicted of Treason: If he shall depart, or flie on any day of Battaile, be it with his Lord, or with any other, when the Ensignes are displayed, and readie to fall to handie-stroakes: In any of the three before named cases (to the end, that the Order may remaine pure and vndefamed, according as it ought to doe:) We ordaine, that the Knight found to be so charged, attainted or conuinced, of all, of two, or any one of them, shall (by iudgement of the Soueraigne, and Companions of the Order) be deprined and degraded and throwne out of the Order; after he hath first beene heard, what defences he can alleadge in the cases, if he will stand on his owne clearing or purgation, and hath beene thereto required, appealed, and sufficiently summoned. If likewise he doe commit any foule, enormous or disgracefull act; he is to be proceeded against by the Soueraigne and Bretheren of the Order, who shall iudge as before is said; but in any other case, he is not to be deprined or degraded. But if the Soueraigne doe offer wrong or preiudice, to any of the Knights of the Order, for which the partie offended doth admonish the Soueraigne and Bretheren of the Order, to award him reason and iustice in his due attendance, and yet his right is denied him: In this case, and not before (the other Knights, hauing made declaration of the wrong) the offended Knight may surrender his Coller, and depart from the Order, without any blemish or scandall to his honour; and yet notwithstanding, with raison his leaue in as honourable manner, as he can best deuise to doe. Moreouer, other causes, and lawfull reasons; he must be ordered by the aduise, determination and iudgement of the Soueraigne, and Companions of the Order, or greater part of the company.

Sentence to be giuen by the Soueraigne and Companions of the Order.

Or wrong or iniurie by the Soueraigne to any of the Knights.

Concerning precedencie or prioritie of place in the Order.

16. And for taking away of all doubts, errours, scruples and difficulties which may happen concerning prioritie and posterioritie, of Honours, Estates, Dignities and Degrees of the said Knights, Bretheren and Companions of the Order, because true and brotherly loue should haue no respect to such things

We will and ordaine, that as well in going, as comming, sitting in the Church or Chapter, at the Table, naming, speaking and writing, and in all other actions, and things whatsoeuer, depending, regarding, and touching the estate of the present Order; the Bretheren and Companions are to hold both manner, place, and order, according as before, or after they had receiued the Coller of Knighthood. And if many will haue it so, that the most Auncient shall hold the prime place on the instant day; then the rest are to follow in due order. And as for such, who hereafter are to be rancked in the Order, by election of the Soueraigne, and Bretheren of the Order: Wee doe ordaine, that they shall hold place, according to the time as they were accepted into the Order. And if there be many entred vpon one and the same day: they shall hold place according to their yeares and age, as hath beene said, Except he be an Emperour, King, and Duke, who for the greatnesse of their dignitie, are to haue place in this Order, according to the time when they receiued the Order; without other respect of Nobilitie, Lignage, greatnesse of Commaund, Estates, Offices, Riches, and Power.

For such as come into the Order after the prime election.

17. Each Knight (at his entertainment into the Fellowship) shall pay to the Treasurer of the Order, fortie Crownes of Gold, or the value of them: to conuert them into Iewels, Vestements and Ornaments, for Diuine Seruice of the Colledge.

The paiment of euery knight to the Treasurer.

18. Moreouer, euery one of the Order shall stand obliged, to giue vnto the Treasurer, when any Knight deceaseth (and he shall haue tydings of his death) money, for the singing of twentie Masses, and sixe Crownes of Gold, to giue in Almes for the deceased Knights of the Order. Which money the Treasurer shall employ, as is said in the place of the Foundation what is to be done, and in other places beside. And he is to hold the Chapters and Conuentions, according (as by the Soueraigne and Bretheren of the Order) he shall be aduised.

Paiment of money to the decease of any knight.

19 And for the singuler Confidence and Deuotion, which Wee beare to the Lord Saint *Michael*, the first and chiefe Knight, who fought in Gods quarell, and who defendeth alwaies his Place and Oratorie, from being subdued by auncient enemies to the Crowne of France, making it inuincible, and vnder whose name and title, this present Order hath beene founded and instituted: We haue ordained, that all Diuine Seruices, and other Ecclesiasticall Ceremonies, for the well performance of foundations, intended to be done by Vs, and also by our Successours, Soueraignes of the Order, or the Bretheren Knights and Companions thereof; shall be celebrated and perfomed at the place, and in the Church of *Mount Saint Michael*, which We elect and make choice of, as well for effecting the fore-named things, and all other beside, as shall hereafter be declared

For the place and Church of the Mount Saint *Michael*.

20. Be it enacted and ordained, that in the Quier of the Church there shall be Seates, whereon to seat the Soueraigne, and Knights of the Order there assembled. Ouer the Seates, fixed to the Wall, shall (first of all, aboue the Soueraignes seat) be placed the Escutcheon of his Armes, with his Helmet and Creast. And consequently, of each of the other Knights, keeping the order of preference, hereof before We haue made mention.

Seates in the Church for the Soueraigne and Knights.

21. For the benefit, honour and exaltation of the Order, We ordaine to haue a Chancellour. And because the Office is great, and requireth the attendance of some notable person: We will and ordaine, that no one shall execute the place, except he haue beene first constituted in the Ecclesiasticall Prelacie. As Arch-Bishop, Bishop, or some notable dignitie in a Cathedrall or Colledgiate Church: At the least a Doctour in Diuinitie, or decreed to be one, or (not failing) to be a Licentiate in one of the said Faculties.

The Chauncellour of the Order, and what he must be.

The seale of the Order to be kept by the Chancellour.

22. The Chancellour is to haue the keeping of the Seale, which shall be made and appointed for the Order: wherewith the Chancellour shall not Seale any Letters, concerning the honor of any Knight, without the expresse ordenation of the Soueraigne, and fixe Companions of the Order, who must be present, and subscribe to the signing of the Letters. And the Chancellour shall haue charge to propound, and deliuer the speeches, at well as Chapters, as in other places, of matters touching the Order, the benefit and augmentation thereof, at all times as neede shall require, and the Soueraigne shall please to appoint.

Of the absence of Knights from meetings and Chapters.

23. It shall also be the Chancellours charge, to enquire at the Chapters, of such Knights as are there, the order, estate and gouernement of each of them, being absent from the said Chapter. The opinions and depositions of the Knights shall be recited, being reuealed as matter of fact, and to take conclusion at the same Chapter. Which is so ordered, as tending to the end of praise and commendation, or correction, paine and punishment, which the Chancellour shall speake and pronounce, on the Knight whom the case shall touch and concerne.

Concerning the Register of the Order, and the Bookes by him to be kept

24. Of the Order there must be a Register or Pregnotarie, who is to keepe two Bookes of Parchment, in each whereof must be set downe and engrossed, the foundation of this present Order, with the Statutes, Causes and Ordenances therein contained. In the beginning of which Bookes, shall be inserted an Historie, concerning the representation of the Soueraigne, and of the fifteene Knights, first elected, named and called to be of the Order. Those Bookes are to be chained; vnto, and in the Quiere of the said Church, wherein shall be the Foundation; and the other in the Chapter-House, before the Seate of the Soueraigne. But the Bookes must be fast lockt vp in two Coffers for the purpose, whereof the Treasurer of the Order shall keepe the Keyes. Nor are they to be opened or seene, but at the Chapters and Assemblies, or by appointment of the Soueraigne, as neede shall require. And the Register shall be bound to set downe in writing, the honorable actions, and commendable performances in prowesse, as well of the Soueraigne, as of the Knights; whereof he is to be informed by the Herauld of the Order. Moreouer, the Register must be bound, to shew and report the draughts of those writings, at the following Chapters: to be seene, corrected, and after engrossed, as also read with the prime Copie of the subsequent worke.

Another Booke appertaining to the Order.

25. Moreouer, the Register shall write in another Booke, the Iniunctions, Conclusions and Acts of the ordenary Chapters; the faults committed by the Knights of the Order, for which they are to be blamed and reproued in the Chapter. Also what corrections, punishments and paines hath bin ordained and enioyned them: Their contumacies and defaults, when they haue not appeared, obeyed, or duely made knowne their essoines and excuses.

A Treasurer of the Order, and the charges belonging to his Office.

26. We will moreouer, and constantly ordaine, that there shall be a Treasurer in the said Order, who shall haue the keeping of the Charters, Priuiledges, Letters, Commands, Writings and Enstructions concerning the foundation, appurtenances and dependances of the said Order. He shall likewise haue the custodie of all the Iewels, Reliques, Ornaments and Vestements of the Church, the Tapistries and Librarie belonging to the Order. Also, hee is to keepe the Mantles and Cloakes of the Knights, seruing for the State and Ceremonie: which (at the Chapters and Assemblies) he shall deliuer to the Knights, and afterward receiue and keep them, vntill another Chapter. But the habits of the Officers, shall continue and remaine with them, to vse at their owne will.

Order concerning any Knight deceased or depriued.

27. After the death or priuation of any of the said Knights, the Treasurer shall cause to be taken thence, the Shield of Armes, Helmet and Crest of the Knight deceased, or displaced from the roome which he held, to put them in some other place of the Church. Whereinto likewise hee shall conuaye all the Escutcheons of Armes

Armes and Helmets of the said Knights dead or depriued, in this manner: the deceased on the one side, and the depriued on another, and lay therewith the causes of their depriuation: to make knowne in liuing memory perpetually, both their names and their deedes. And when another Knight shall be appointed for the place of the deceased or depriued: his Shield, Helmet and Crest shall be hung and seated in the said Church beneath, and directly before the Seate which was appointed for the new chosen Knight, there to be seene, and so ordained.

Concerning the Endowments & other benefits belonging to the Order.

28. It shall be for the Treasurer, to make a Receipt of the Foundation and Endowments of the said Order, as also the emoluments and beneficiall gifts thereto belonging: He shall pay the Buildings, Pensions, and ordenarie charges, according as was ordained from the foundation. He is likewise to dispose all the missions, all conuenable and necessary payments, for businesse of the Order; by command of the Soueraigne, or his Committees: And of all he is to render a good and faithfull account yearely, at the ordenarie Chapter, before the Soueraigne, his Committies, or such as he shall please to depute, or whosoeuer shall sit as Chancellour of the Order. And of all Gifts, Legacies, Augmentations and Benefits, which haue bin giuen and bestowed on the Order: The Treasurer shall cause a Booke to be made, wherein he shall write (with the Inuentorie of Iewels, Ornaments and Reliques) a further manifestation (for publique ostension) by Inuentorie at euery Chapter, and shall set downe by name or Sir-name, such as haue bin the Doners of any thing. Whereof he must make declaration at the Chapters, in memorie of the Benefactors, to the end, that prayer may be made to God for them, and for giuing daily example of the like well doing, on behalfe of the Order. Moreouer, the Treasurer shall cause to be made two Bookes of the Charters, Priuiledges, Foundations, Acquests, Augmentations, Letters and Enstructions of the said Order; which are to be colationed and examined by the Originals; that recourse may be made to them, if the other should be lost, or any way else miscarie.

Bookes of Charters, Priuiledges, &c.

The Herauld and King of Armes of the Order called Mont. S. Michael.

29. In the Order there shall be another Officer, named the Herauld, King of Armes, called *Mont S. Michaell*, who must be a man wise, and of good fame, skilfull and expert for the Office; to whom must be giuen a rich embroidered Coate, to serue for the said Order, which he is to weare during his life time. And he being dead, his heires shall stand obliged, to render the same to the Treasurer of the Order: except it shall happen to be lost in any Voyage, or honorable action, in which cases, his heires shall stand clearely acquitted. But if the Herauld doe returne home aliue; the Soueraigne of the Order shall then cause another to be made for him, euery way answerable to the other. And the said Herauld, King of Armes, shall haue One thousand and two hundred pounds Pension, which is to be paid him yearely, and euery one of the Knights shall giue him halfe a Marke of Siluer, at euery Chapter ordenarily. And the said Herauld, King of Armes, shall be charged to carrie, or cause to be carried, the Letters of the Soueraigne to the Brethren of the Order, at their Elections, when choise shall be made of them, as also to returne their answeres; and generally to performe all necessary messages and meete seruices, which by the Soueraigne and Officers of the Order shall be ordained. He stands bound also, to enquire of the prowesse, high-deedes and honorable actions, as well of the Soueraigne, as the other Knights of the Order; whereof he shall make true report to the Register, to haue them duely set downe, according as formerly hath bin said.

The yearely pension and allowance to be paid to the Herauld or King of Armes of the Order.

Concerning the foure especiall Officers of the Order.

30. These foure Officers of the Order, as namely the Chancellour, Pregnotary or Register, Treasurer, and Herauld, their persons, goods and liuelihoods, their Seruants and Families, must and shall remaine (in regard of their said Offices) so long as they liue, and their Successours in the said Offices perpetually, in the protection and safeguard of the Soueraigne of the Order. And if any iniury, force, violence and shame be offered to them, either that it hath apparantly bin done by the

the Soueraigne, or any Knight of the Order, or other Subiect: And they will submit themselues to the Soueraigne; he and the Companions of the Order may receiue and doe reason to them. But if the Partie will not consent: In this case, the Soueraigne and Companions doe stand engaged, to beare out, and fauour the said Officers; so long as they can doe it, for the better keeping of right and equitie.

An Order for especiall obseruing the Festiuall day of *S. Michael.*

31. Moreouer we doe ordaine, that the day of Saint *Michael*, which is the last day in the Moneth of September; shall be held as a solemne Festiuall, with the Chapter and generall Assembly of our Soueraigne, as also the Brethren and Companions, Knights of the Order. And that from thence forward, the Assembly shall be made yearely: except there shall happen any other great or important affaires in the Kingdome, for which (according to the aduise and opinion of the Soueraigne, with the greater part of the Knights) it shall be thought fit, to prolong and delay the Chapter, for one or two yeares after, or otherwise, according as the time and place shall be aduised for the best. At which Feasts, Assemblies and Chapters, the Soueraigne is to make knowne vnto them, the time, and place conuenient in limitation, and they all shall stand obliged to appeare there. But we further ordaine, that if by reason of sickenesse, imprisonment, perill in warre, dangers on the wayes, or other reasonable causes, the said Soueraigne, or any of the Brethren Knights, cannot come thither in person, and appeare at the Chapter, Feast or Assembly: He or they (then) are to send (by an honest Attourney) his excuse, according to the condition of his person, to know, whether the Soueraigne, or a Deputie doe sit there for him, and the Brethren in his assistance. There shall hee tell the causes of their excuse and absence, and performe such other Offices, as the Soueraigne and Brethren should doe, if they were there in person present.

For altering or deferring the dayes of meeting.

Offices to be done on the Vigile or Eue of *S. Michael* by the Brethren.

32. Vpon the Vigile of the Feast of *S. Michael*, all the Knights of the Order being come to the place appointed for Assembly, shall goe and present themselues to the Soueraigne in his Pallace or House of being, before the houres of Euensong; where he is to welcome them kindely and honorably, as to such a meeting appertaineth. On which day of the Vigile, the Soueraigne and Brethren of the Order, shall depart together from the Pallace, or lodging of the Soueraigne, apparelled in their Cloakes of white Damaske, hanging downe so low as to the ground, their Capes or Collers, and round about embroidered with pure Gold: bordered also with Scallops of Gold, bestowed richly in Lacets vpon the same embroidery, their Cloakes likewise being furred with Ermines. On their heads, or about their neckes (which is best liking to them) they shall weare Chaperons of Crimosine Veluet all along the Cornet, and of the same fashion and length. Which Cloakes and Chapperons, the Soueraigne & Knights are to make at their owne cost and charge: And in this manner they shall goe to the Church in order, two and two together, the Soueraigne going alone by himselfe, and last of all. Each man shall betake himselfe to his Seate, and hauing heard Diuine Seruice, must returne againe to the Soueraignes Pallace, in the same order as before is said: the Officers of the Order going formost before the Knights, according to their estate and degrees. Which Officers are to be attired in long Robes of Chamlet, or white Silke Furred with Mineuer, and Hoods of Scarlet; and on the morrow, with Roabes and Hoods of the same.

The manner of their wearing habits for going to the Church.

The Ceremonie to be vsed on the Feast day of *S. Michael.*

33. On the morrow (being the Feast day of *S. Michael*) in the morning, the Soueraigne and Companions of the Order, in such habiliments and cloathing as before hath bin said, shall goe to the Church, and at the Offertorie of high Masse (solemnely celebrated) shall by the Soueraigne, and each of the said Brethren, or Deputies for them in their absence, be offered a piece of Gold; in forme and value answerable to the deuotion of the Knight the Offerer. The Seruice being accomplished, they are to returne to the Pallace of the Soue-

raigne in the same Order; where he is to welcome them to his Table, and feast them honorably, or else cause them to be so entertained, by his Commissioners thereto deputed.

Office for the day at Euening Prayer, and the next day following.

34. This day, at the houre of Euening Prayer, the Soueraigne and Companions of the Order, shall depart from the Pallace of the Soueraigne, attired in their Cloakes of blacke Cloth, and Hoods of the same (except that belonging to the Soueraigne, which is to be of Scarlet or Violet) and goe to heare Euen song for the dead. And on the morrow after the Feast, Masse for the dead, attired in the same manner: At the Offering whereof, the Soueraigne and Knights there present (as also the deputies for the absent) shall offer a great Waxe-Candle, containing a pound of Waxe in weight, adorned with the Armes belonging to the Offerer. And during the time of this Offertorie, shall be read by the Register, a Roule of the names and Sir-names, as also the titles of the Soueraignes and Knights deceased of the said Order: for the soules of whom, and for others likewise departed, he which celebrateth the Masse, shall say at the ending of the Offering, *De Profundis*, and Prayers for the dead.

The Offering of great Waxe Candles.

What is to be done on the morrow after the Feast day.

35. On the next day after the Feast, the Soueraigne and Knights of the Order, attired in such garments as best pleaseth themselues, shall goe to the Church, to heare the Masse celebrated of our Lady; and the same day, the Soueraigne and Brethren of the Order, may begin their Chapter, in such place as shall be by their Soueraigne appointed. But the Elections and Collections, are to be done at the Chapter-house in the Church, where the Seruice hath bin performed, if there shall be such a conuenient Assembly or Chapter. If not, in such place as shall be liking to the Soueraigne, and where the Knights must haue their white Cloakes or Mantles; and where it shall be enioyned (by the Chancellour of the Ordenance) to all the Knights present, and Atturnies or Deputies for the absent, as also the Officers of the Order; to keepe the Councels of the Chapter secret, especially, the corrections imposed on the Brethren of the Order, without disclosing or reuealing any thing; but what the Deputies of the absent may report and deliuer to their Masters, which onely may touch or appertaine vnto them.

The Office of the Chancellour at the Chapter.

36. In the said Chapter, the Chancellour may relate in generall, what he thinketh fitting should be made knowne; and he is also to perswade, either for correction, or extirpation of vices, and perseuerance for the encreasing of vertues, in all them that are of the Order: to the end, that they may labour, and giue example of good and commendable life, to all other Knights and Noble-men, which shall attaine to the knowledge of them. By the same Chancellour is to be enioyned (in name of the Order) to the last man seated, that he is to depart from the Chapter, and giue attendance without the roome, vntill such time as he shall be called for entrance. In the meane while, the Soueraigne, or his Deputie, or else the Chancellour (in name of the Soueraigne) shall demand (by way of Faith and Oath solemnely) of all the Brethren, and namely of the Soueraigne himselfe, and then of euery one perticularly, beginning at the last to the first: whether they doe know, or haue heard reported by any person worthy of beliefe, that their said Brother and Companion, dismissed from the Chapter, hath done, spoken, or committed any thing, which may be censured contrary to the Statutes, Points, Perticulers and Ordenances of the Order, by meanes whereof, the said Order might be defamed, or any way mispriſed and reproued.

For any such as shall offend against the Rules of the Order.

37. And if it doe appeare, by report of the Bretheren of the Order, that the said partie hath committed any vicious act or offence, contrary to the honour, deuoire and estate of Nobilitie and Knighthood, or some other case, that may import and challenge depriuation; the same shall be related to him by the Soueraigne or his Deputie, or by the Chancellour, from point to point effectually, admonishing a due correction of such imperfections, and such manner of life; that those blames

blames, imputations. and defamatorie language, ill agreeing and suting with a man of so great and Noble condition, may for euer cease, and that thence forward, the Companions of the Order may heare better report of him. As concerning the punishments and inflictions; the Soueraigne and Brethren are to iudge of them, according as they shall deeme necessary and conuenient: whereunto the said partie must be obedient, and endure those paines and punishments appointed for him: As (in like manner) is to be exercised and inflicted on any of the Knights present, or Deputies for the absent, being offenders, euen so farre forth, as to the Chiefe and Soueraigne of the said Order.

For auoiding partialitie or fauourable respect either in Prince or Peers

38. Ouer and beside, for diuers reasons before specified, and to the end, that the said louing Companie and Fraternitie, may be the better kept and maintained in equalitie, because reason requireth, that from them which are greatest, should proceede the best example: It is our will, that the issue and examen may as well be made of the Soueraigne, as any of the other, and that paine and punishment may likewise follow, by aduise of the Brethren of the Order, if it doe so come to passe.

Encouragement to the yonger Brother of the Order.

39. And if the Knight which stood dismissed from the rest, be found (by testimonie of the Brethren) to be of good and commendable life, bending his care and endeauour, to high actions of Chiualrie and Nobilitie; recitall must be made thereof (according to the Soueraignes aduise, assisted with the Companions) by the Chancellour, for the more honour of his vertue, with further exhortation, and encouragement, for his continuall perseuerance therein, the more worthily to attaine the due recompence of his praise-full paines. Because it may serue as a good example to other, for their well doing in like manner: the same hauing bin formerly done by the other Knights, of whom remaineth the like good and commendable report.

Concerning complaint of some crime committed, reuealed in the Chapter-time

40. If in the Chapter time, the Soueraigne shall be enformed, that any of the Brethren hath committed some such crime, as may deserue priuation, according to the Statutes of the Order: If the Knight be there present, the Soueraigne shall cause the case to be propounded, with relation of the crime in question; to heare the parties defences, and what he can say for himselfe, for his excuse and discharge, whereupon, right is to be done him by the Soueraigne and Brethren, or else by the greater part of them. And if there be no Chapter kept for sitting, then the Soueraigne is to be aduertised, that he may make it knowne by Letters fast closed, or Patents sealed with the Seale of the Order, which he is to send by the Herald *Mont S. Michael* (or some other) to the Knight meriting blame, and charged with the case. Enioyning him, to appeare in person at the next Chapter, to be proceeded withall in the matter according to reason. And if the time, for the said Chapter be short in regard of the distance of place, and the dwelling of the Knight thus charged, the assignation must be deferred till the Chapter following; and then (whether the Knight come or no) he is to be proceeded against, notwithstanding his absence.

For auoiding of scandale to the Order, after deprivation.

41 And if it be found, that the Knight hath committed an ignominious offence, and worthy depriuation of the Order: By the Soueraigne & Brethren of the Order, or by the greater part of them; he shall be taken, depriued and expelled, as before hath bin said. And to auoide all scandale, blame and obloquie to the Order, by reason of his transgression: He shall be prohibited, neuer more to weare the Coller of the said Order, nor any other like thereto. Moreouer, he shall be enioyned, vpon the Oathes by him taken; to deliuer the said Coller into the hands of the Soueraign, or else to the Treasurer of the Order. And if (vpon the sentence) the Knight were not present; Letters Patents shall be sent vnto him, sealed with the Seale of the Order: Containing the priuation, sentence, condemnation, interdiction, inhibitions, commandments, and matters aboue named. And if the Knight being so sufficiently summoned, shall refuse to render, or send back the Coller; the Soueraign (if the party be his Subiect) may compell him thereto by the course of Iustice. And being not his Subiect; yet he may proceede according to reason, & as he shall think it most conuenient, by the aduise & counsel of his Brethren, who are Cõpanions of the said Order.

For sending back the Coller of a deceased Knight.

42 When any one of the Brethren of the Order, shall decease & depart out of this life; his Heires shall stand obliged (within three moneths at the furthest) to send the Coller

Coller of the deceased Knight to the Treasurer of the Order. Which Heires receiuing the Scedule and acquittance of the said Treasurer; shall thereby be acquitted and discharged, but not otherwise.

Losse of the Coller in any honorable action, and in the contrary.

43 And if any of the Companions, either in war, or such a like honorable action, or in pursuite of some noble occasion, shall be taken prisoner, & (by that meanes) the Coller be taken from him: The Soueraigne of the Order (in such a case) stands obliged to bestow another on him. But if otherwise the Knight shall chance to loose it; he must be bound, to cause another to be made at his owne cost and charge, and so weare it within three Months after, or sooner, if possibly it can be done.

For choice of a new Brother when a place is vacant.

44. When a place is vacant, by decease of any Brother of the Order, or otherwise; election is to be made of another Knight (endued with those conditions before remembred) by the greater number of voices, both of the Soueraigne and Brethren of the Order. Who must giue in their Scedules fast closed, and which are to be receiued by the Chancellour at the Chapter, in a Basin of Siluer. In which Election and all other things, conclusions, and deliberations concerning the said Order) the voyce of the Soueraigne must haue place, and shall stand accounted for two, but no more. Except there are two to be elected, who must haue so many voyces the one as the other. In which case, the Chancellour, hauing collected the voyces by Billets or Tickets, from the Electours in equall number; shall declare to the Soueraigne that equalitie of Suffrages. And then the Soueraigne (out of his owne absolute authoritie) may pronounce and giue his third voice, to which of the two him seemeth best. Or if this way like him not, he may renounce the Election, and then must be giuen in new Scedules as before, to the end, that the Election may be the more iust, and least scrupulous, the Scedules of the absent being (neuertheless) in full force. Whereupon, and in this respect, the Soueraigne and Brethren of the Order, for their more iust proceeding in the businesse, shall sweare, entring into the Chapter; to make this Election, without any regard to loue, hatred, fauour, friendship, kinred, or any other occasion, that may remoue the iudgement of men, from loyall and true aduise or counsell, and to be free from suspition in the Election. Which Oath shall be made on the Soueraignes hand, by all the Knights one after another, beginning at the lowest to the highest.

For proceeding in the act of new Election.

45 And for proceeding in the act of Election, after that the Herauld of *Mont S. Michael* shall haue signified to the Soueraigne, the decease of any of the Knights of the Order, according as by his Office he standeth bounden to doe: the Soueraigne to signifie the same to all his Companions. Aduising them, that they must all appeare at the next Chapter, with full disposition and preparation, for election of another Knight, in place of him that is deceased. And if the time shall seeme too short, in the iudgement and opinion of the Soueraigne; the said Election may be deferred and respited to another following. And if by accident, or reasonable excuse, some of the Knights sent for, cannot be there present; they may (for that time) haue entertainment and acceptation by their deputies, bringing their elective Scedules, closed and sealed with their Seales.

Another seruice before performance of the Election

46 Be it knowne likewise, that before proceeding to the Election (which is to be done in due time, and place of the ordenary Chapter, and not otherwise) by the Clearke or Register of the Order, must be publiquely read, such matter as he formerly reported by the Herauld, concerning the high deedes & deseruings of the Knight deceased, according to his true commendation and praise.

The order obserued in the Election.

47 All the Scedules and voices receiued, and comparison made of them by the Chancellor; he is then to pronounce the number of them. Then the Soueraign or his Deputie or Committee, shall take the most voices, and name him of whom they haue made choice, saying. Thus, by greater part of voices of the Electours, being now present in this Chapter, and by the Scedules of such as are absent: Our Brother and Companion *N.* is elected into this Order. Which Election so made, shall be Registred and set downe by the Register, in a Booke seruing expresly for that purpose.

48. If the Knight made choice of by this Election be not then and there present: the Soueraigne writes his Letters to him, sealed with the Seale of the Order; sending them by the Herauld King of Armes, or else some other, signifying to him this

What is done, if the Knight made coyce of is absent at the Election.

this his Election. Requiring him louingly, to accept and receiue graciously, his calling and entrance into the Order: the Statutes and Ordinances whereof, together with the said Letters, shall be sent him double, that thereon he may take aduise, for making it better knowne to him, whether the said Election and association in the Order, may be acceptable to him, or no. Which prouing so, he is to come to the Soueraigne, at the day contained and assigned in the said Letters, to take his Oathes, and receiue the Order and Coller, with other things thereto appertaining. Moreouer, the said Knight thus elected, must hereupon make knowne his meaning and intent to the bringer, and make certificate also accordingly, to the Soueraigne by his Letters.

Concerning the qualitie of the person elected, and his vocations.

49. If it shall so happen, that the Knight thus made choice of, be a Potent Lord, or such a person in degree, as may haue, or hath great businesses, affaires, or farre-off voyages, which may be his hinderance and impeachment, for appearing in person before the Soueraigne, at such limited time as he is required and appointed to doe. In such a case, if it seeme expedient to the Soueraigne, he may giue to the Herauld, or him that carrieth the Letters of the Orders-Ordinances; a Coller of the same Order, that, after such time as the Knight elected, shall haue accepted the Election (and not before) he may deliuer it as from the Soueraigne, that the Knight may returne his Letters of acceptation of the Coller, to the bringer thereof, who is to deliuer them to the Soueraigne. In, and by which Letters, the Knight must make promise, to come (if possibly he may) to the next Chapter, or some other subsequent, to the Soueraigne, to sweare the points and constitutions of the Order, and performe all such duties as he standeth bound to doe, according as his other Brethren and Companions of the said Order haue done.

50 This Knight elected, being come before the Soueraigne; at his comming and presentation, he shall deliuer these, or the like speeches.

The words to be vsed by the Knight at his apparance before the Soueraigne.

Sir, or, My most gracious Lord (if he be of the Blood) *I haue obserued by these Letters, that of Royall Grace in you, and Loue in the most honorable Brethren and Companions, of the worthy and Noble Order of my Lord Saint Michael; I haue bin, and am elected into that Order and Companie, whereby I hold my selfe to be very highly honored. I haue receiued, and made acceptation thereof, and doe most hartily thanke you, yea, so much as in me possibly remaineth for so great Grace and fauour: tendering mine obedience, and seruice-able duetie in the said Order, so much as in me lyeth to doe.*

The forme of the Soueraigns answere.

Whereto shall be answered by the Soueraigne; that the renowne of his vertues, incited both him, and the Brethren of the Order, to receiue and embrace him as their Companion: not doubting, but that he will perseuere in his vertues, and augment the honor of God, to the praise and commendation of the Order; taking the Oath as followeth.

The forme of the Oath giuen to the Knight.

YOu shall sweare, that to your loyall power, you shall assist, guard, maintaine and defend the eminencie, rights and greatnesse of the Crowne of France; of the Maiestie Royall and authoritie of the Soueraigne, and of his successiue Soueraignes, so long as you liue, and shall be of the said Order, you shall imploy your selfe to your vttermost power, to maintaine the said Order, and Honour thereof; taking what paines you can, to augment it without suffering it to decay or diminish, so long as your strength may remedie and support it.

Articles within compasse of the Oath.

51. *And if it shall so come to passe (which God forefend) that in you there shall be found some such fault, whereby (according to the Statues of the Order) you are to be deprined, summoned and required, to redeliuer backe the Coller: in such case, you must send it to the Soueraigne, or the Treasurer of the Order, without euer-more (after the said Summoning) wearing the said Coller. And all penalties, paines and corrections, which (in meaner matters*

may be censured and appointed to you: you are to vndergoe and beare patiently, without rancour, spleene or hatred (for, or in that respect) in you, either against the Soueraigne, Brethren, or any Officers of the said Order.

52 *You must, ouer and beside all this, duely appeare at the Chapters and Assemblies of the Order: Or else you must send thither (according to the Statutes and Ordenances thereof) your sufficient Deputie or Atturney. As testifying thereby, your obedience to the Soueraigne, and to his Deputies or Committees, in all things reasonable, concerning the dutie and affaires of the Order; and your owne loyall power, for accomplishing all the Statutes, Points, Articles and Ordenances, which you haue seene and read in writing, and shall hereafter heare read vnto you. To them you shall promise and sweare, as well generally, as perticularly, and to each Point you are to take an especiall Oath. All these things, as you are a Knight of the Order, you must sweare and promise on the Soueraignes hand: by your Faith, Oath and Honor, and on the Crosse and holy Gospels of our Lord.*

53 This being done, the elected Knight shall kneele reuerently before the Soueraigne, who shall take the Coller of the Order, and put it about his necke, vttering these or the like words, or causing them to be spoken by some other.

The words of the King, to the Knight.

The Order receiueth you as a louing Companion, and in signe thereof, giueth you this Coller. God grant that you may long weare it, to his praise and seruice, and exaltation of his holy Church, encrease and honour of the Order, and your owne well deseruings and good fame: In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Holy Ghost. Whereto the Knight shall answere: *So be it, Amen; And God giue me his Grace to doe it.*

The new Knights presenting to the Soueraigne.

Afterward, the Knight of the first Seate, he being then present; shall leade or conduct the new made Knight to the Soueraigne, sitting in his Seate. Who shall kisse him in token of perpetuall loue; and so doe all the Knights there present, euery one following another in place and order.

Of refusing the Election.

54 But if the Knight shall excuse himselfe from accepting the Election: the Soueraigne is to make it knowne to the Brethren of the Order: sending them command and order, to make themselues ready in due preparation, for the election of another, at such time, and in such manner as thereto belongeth.

55 The Knights heretofore named, and all other entring into the Order; shall take their Oathes in the forme and manner formerly set downe.

For vacancie of the Chancellors Office.

56 And when the Office of the Chancellor of the Order shal happen to be vacant; Election is to be made by the Soueraigne and Brethren of the Order, in manner before related, concerning a noate-worthie man, and of such condition and qualitie as hath bin obserued. And if the new-chosen Chancellour (after Election) shall excuse himselfe from it; it is to be committed to another, vntill such time, as the Soueraigne and Brethren shall be otherwise prouided, according to reason, and by the wayes before remembred.

57 The Chancellour elected, who hath made acceptation of the Office; shall on the Soueraignes hand, or his Deputie or Committee, take his Oath, part whereof followeth.

The Oath of the Chancellor

That he shall appeare in person, at all Chapters and Assemblies or meetings of the Order. If hee chance to be sicke, or some allowable cause be his hinderance; hee is (in such a case) by his Letters bounden to aduertise the Soueraigne thereof, who in his absence (for that time) may commit the discharge of the Office, to some Noble and worthie man, such as himselfe shall please to make choice of.

For sealing with the Seale of the Order.

58 *That he shall not seale (with the Seale of the Order) any Letters, touching the Honour of the Knights, but by the command of the Soueraigne, and then being present, sixe Knights of the Order, at the least. And aboue all, not to Seale any Letters, for summoning any Knight to deliuer vp his Coller; without the Soueraignes expresse command, & knowledge of the Companions of the Order. Nor so neither, except the conclusion be agreed on in a full Chapter, and generall assembly of the Order.*

59 *That neither for loue, feare, hatred, fauour or affection, hee shall forbeare to speake any thing, and deliuer faithfully (yea euen to his vttermost power) what hee is to*

propound in the said Chapters and Assemblies. But all those things to bee vttered loyally whereof hee hath receiued charge from the Soueraigne. And those conclusions agreed in the Chapter, concerning penalties and corrections of the Knights, or otherwise, he shall deliuer as thereto appertaineth, and as it is ordained for him, in the Chapter of the Order euery yeare. Hee is also (if possibly hee may) as formerly hath beene said, to be present at hearing the accounts of the Treasurer: And to keepe secret the Counsels of the Order; and (in briefe) to exercise his Office well and truely.

Vacancie of the Registers Office, & election of another

60. And when the Office of the Register or Pregnotarie of the Order shall bee vacant: then by the Soueraigne in person, and eight Knights of the Order, at the least, shall another Register bee elected, of such condition as formerly is expressed. The Election of him is to bee made at the Chapter, or any other day at the Soueraigns pleasure: vpon whose hand, or of his Deputie, the Register shall take his Oath, in forme following.

The Oath of the Register.

That truely and diligently (to his vttermost power) hee shall set downe in writing, and Register the high and commendable actions of the Knights of the Order, according as he shall be instructed by the Herauld: And shall faithfully obserue in writing, the paines, penalties and corrections, appointed to Knights delinquents in the Chapters; the Acts whereof are to remaine registred. Performing his duty loyally in his writings, and keeping the Counsels of the Order as he ought to doe.

61. Election is to bee made of a Treasurer, when the Office shall fall vacant, according as of the Register: and the Treasurer is to bee sworne in manner following.

The Oath of the Treasurer.

That he shall faithfully keepe, construe and gouerne (to his vttermost power) the Iewels, Mouables, Rents, Reuennues, and all the goods of the Order, as they shall come to his hands, without distribution of any thing, except to such vses as they are to be applyed, and by appointment of the Soueraigne. That he shall faithfully distribute to men of the Church, such things as are allowed to them for diuine Seruice. Also to Officers for exercise of their charges, and to other persons, according as the Soueraigne shall ordaine. And in these negotiations, he must vse all diligence, without omitting any thing, trifling or delaying; rendring a good and faithfull account, as well of the rents and reuennues belonging to the Order, as of the Gifts, Legacies, and Largesses that haue beene bestowed, without retaining or concealing any thing; exercising (in all these particularities) his Office duely, truely, and so much as in him lieth.

62 Concerning the proceeding, commanded to be vsed in the Election of the Herauld, named *Mont-Saint-Michael*; it shall be done in the same manner, as is formerly related of the Register and Treasurer; And his Oath is after this manner.

The Oath of the Herauld *Mont S. Michael.*

That he shall diligently enquire, of the high deedes and valiancies, of the Knights of the Order; and, without fauour, hatred, loue, iniurie, profit, or any other affection, make true report to the Register, of them, that they may be set downe in a Chronicle and Register, as he ought to doe. Any Knight deceasing, he shall make it knowne speedily to the Soueraigne, duely deliuering such messages as he shall be charged withall. He shall be obedient to the Soueraigne, Brethren and Officers of the Order, in all reasonable matters and occasions: And shall keepe secret what soeuer ought to be concealed in the Order. And in briefe; in all things what soeuer, he shall faithfully and diligently doe his duetie, to his vttermost power.

63 When it shall so happen, that by the death of the Soueraigne, his Successour shall be in minoritie and vnder age, and thereby vncapable of managing, disposing and ordering the affaires of the Order: We doe ordaine, that in such cases, the Brethren and Companions of the Order shall make a meeting. At which time, by opinion of the greater part and number of voyces; they shall elect one among them, to preside, order and manage the affaires of the Order, in stead and place of the others minoritie, and at his charges; vntill he shall be of yeares to receiue Knighthood. And to that elected person, we will and ordaine, that (during the said time) obedience shall be giuen, in those things concerning the Orders affaires, in like manner as to the Soueraigne.

64 And in regard that this present Order is a Fraternitie, Brotherhood and louing Companie, whereunto the Brethren submit themselues freely, promising and sweating to hold and keepe inuiolably, all the Lawes and Constitutions thereof: Wee doe ordaine, establish and determine, that the said Order shall take know-

ledge, and be as a Court Soueraigne, in cases which concerne, and may touch the Brethren, Companions and Officers thereto belonging. And that all Summons, Seines, Corrections, Punishments, Priuations, Appointments, Sentences, Iudgements, Arrests, matters past, done and decreed by the said Order, in causes which may or shall concerne any of the Brethren, Knights, and Officers thereto belonging, shall be executorie, auaileable, and as absolutely allowed, as in a Court Soueraigne; without any hinderance or impeachment, or hauing recourse elsewhere) by Complaint, Supplication or Appeale, or otherwise in any kinde whatsoeuer.

The Kings absolute confirmation of the Order, and all Articles therein contained.

65 All the said Points, Conditions, Articles, Ordenances, Constitutions and Cases before remembred, and euery one of them: Wee, for Vs, our Heires and Successours, Kings of France, Heads and Soueraignes of this our present Order, and louing Companie of my Lord Saint *Michael*, doe promise to hold, keepe and entirely accomplish inuiolably, euen to the vttermost of our power, from this instant houre, and for euer. But alwayes reseruing to our selfe, and to our Successours, Heads and Soueraignes of the Order; that if in the said Articles, there shall appeare any difficultie, obscuritie or doubt: To vs, and our Successours shall appertaine the Declaration, Solution, Determination, Interpretation and clearing thereof. And it shall remaine in Vs, to adde thereto, resolue clearely, diminish or change any of them, with the aduise and counsell of our Brethren, according as we shall thinke good.

An especiall exception, and other of like nature, to particuler Articles

66 Excepting this, concerning the Articles of the number, and conditions of the Knights, allowed to be of the Order.

67 That such as are accepted into this Order; shall not be capable of receiuing any other.

68 That of the amitie, which the Soueraigne and his Companions ought to haue to each other.

69 That concerning the seruice, which the Knights are obliged to yeelde to the Soueraigne.

70 And that, wherein the Soueraigne promiseth, to defend and keepe the Companions and Officers of the Order, in their Estates, Dignities and Seigneuries.

71 The Article of the Order, for going, comming, seating, and other things concerning the Precedencie of the Knights.

72 That of new Election, when any place shall happen to be voide; where the Soueraigne shall haue his two voyces.

73 The Article of receiuing the Knight elected, and other, making mention of the Oathes, which the Knights and Officers are to take, in the cases before related.

The finall act of full ratification.

74 Which Articles formerly excepted; we will haue to remaine firme and intire: Without, either by vs, or our Successours Soueraignes of the Order, making any variation, restriction, or any alteration.

And wee will, that the examination of these presents, giuen vnder our Royall Seale, and Seale of the Order: credence shall be giuen thereto, as to the Originall.

And to the end, that it remaine a matter firme and stable for euer: We haue caused our Seale to be put to these presents.

Giuen in our Castell of Amboise, the first day of August, One thousand foure hundred threescore and nine: And of our Reigne the ninth.

The great and lesser Seales.

The great Seale of this Order, hath engrauen on it, the figure of S. *Michael*; as in the Quale forme, which hangeth at the great Coller: And the lesse Seale hath three *Flures de Luces* entoured with the Order.

Of the great Coller of the Order.

The great Coller of the Order, is composed of double Scallop-shels of Gold (as in that of the Order of the *Shippe*) fastened with round Points of blacke Silke, hauing long Tagges of Gold, enterwouen in the forme of Loue-knots. At the end of this Coller, hangeth vpon the brest, an Quale of Gold, hauing a small rising hillocke curiously enamelled in it; whereon standeth the Image of S. *Michael*, treading the Dragon vnder his feete.

Alterarion of the points into twisted Cordons of Gold.

King *Frances* first of the name, at the first Chapter of the said Order, which he held after his Sacring, in September, One thousand fiue hundred and sixteene, did change those Points into double Cordeliers of Gold: As well in regard of himselfe, being named *Frances*; as to conserue the memorie of Queene *Anne* of Bretaigne, Mother to his wife Queene *Claudia*, who had thereto earnestly moued and entreated him.

Alteration of the Cloaks by King *Henry* the second.

King *Henry* the second, their Sonne, being come to the Crowne; at the first Chapter of the said Order of Saint *Michael*, which he held in the Citie of *Lyons*, wherein he made his entrance, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred fortie and eight, ordained: That the Knights of this Order should alwayes after, weare Cloakes of Cloth of Siluer, embrodered about with his deuise; to wit, three Crescents of Siluer, enter-wouen with Trophees, Quiuers and Turkish Bowes, semed, and cantonned with Tongues and flames of Fire. The Mantelet or Chapperon was of Crimosine Veluet, couered with the same embroderie, and the Order of S. Michael aboue.

Other habits by him likwise appointed.

He appointed also, that the Chancellour of the Order, should weare his Cloake of White Veluet, and the Chapperon of Crimosine Veluet. The Prouost and Maister of the Ceremonies; the Treasurer, Register and Vsher, or King of Armes belonging to the said Order: are to haue their Cloakes of White Sattin, and their Chapperons of Crimosine Sattin, and thereon a chaine of Gold, at the end whereof, vpon the breast, hangeth a Scallop of Gold onely. And in this manner, was the solemnitie performed of the Order, in the Cathedrall Church of Saint *Iohn* in *Lyons*, on the Eeuen and day of Saint *Michael* at Eeuensong, and at high Masse. The King of Armes, Herauld or Vsher of this Order, is called by the name of *Mont-Saint-Michael*.

I haue seene many of those great Cloakes of Cloth of Siluer, appertaining to that Order. And namely two, in the Chappell of the Dukes of *Bourgongne*, at *Dijon*, which those Gentlemen of the Noble House of *Vienna* in *Bourgongne*, gaue therefrely, to serue for Coapes in the Church, & whereon are the Armes of the said House, *De Gueulles a l'Aigle d'Or, ou d'Argent*.

To make relation here, of the Chapters, Names, Sirnames, Armes and qualities of the Knights of the said Order; would require the containdure of an whole Volume; from the yeare of the Institution vnto this present, it being yet still on foote. Wherefore, as in the first Chapter, is fully and largely contained the maine maximes, by the Statutes of the Order: So will wee finish this our discourse with the last Chapter, solemnely held and celebrated by King *Charles* ninth of the name, in the Church of *Paris*, on the Eeuen and day of Saint *Michael*, in September. Anno One thousand fiue hundred threescore and twelue.

The solemne holding of the Order, in the Church of Paris, *by King* Charles, *ninth of the name. Anno* 1572.

The forme of their sitting.

ALL the preparations being fully effected, the King being come into the Quire of the Church; tooke his place on the right hand, vnder a goodly State of Cloath of Gold Frized. Two paces beneath, and on the same side, were seated *Monsieur Henry Alexander of France*, Duke of *Anion*, Brother to the King and his Successour for the Crowne. The Duke of *Montpensier*, The Duke of *Nemours*, The Duke of *Guize*, The Marshall *de Tauanes*, The Prince *Daulphine*, *La Chapelle aux Vrsins*, *Rubempre*, And *Villequier* the yonger.

A second State

At the other side of the Quire, and on the left hand, was another Canopie of State of Cloath of Gold, vnder which sate not any person, but onely were placed Tables of Armes.

Of Kings of Spaine, *Of Denmarke*, And *Of Sweden*.

And beneath the Chaires reserued for them, as Knights and fellow Brethren of the Order, were seated, The King of *Nauarre*, afterward King of *France*, *Henry* the fourth

fourth of the name. *Monsieur Frances Hercules de France*, brother to the King, Duke of *Brabant* and of *Alencon*, *The Duke of d'Vsez*. *The Prince of Conde*. *De Sanfac*. *De Losses*. *De Chauigny*. *De Rets*. And *De Villequier* the elder.

Their Habits.

The King, Princes and Lords of the said Order, were cloathed in white Sattin, the great Cloakes of Siluer, with long traines drailing on the ground; their Chapperons of Crimosine Veluet, vpon which hung the great Collers.

Before the Kings Seate was a long Forme or Bench, couered with Cloth of Gold, whereon were seated in one ranke, *The Chancellour*, *Treasurer*, *Register*, *Maister of the Ceremonies*.

And before them, on two Stooles, couered with Cloath of Gold, sate *Mont Saint Michael*, *King of Armes*; And *Vsher of the Order*:

All cloathed with long Mantles of white Sattin, and Chapperons of Crimosine Sattin; as had bin ordained by King *Henry* the second.

Funerall memorie.

At Celebration of the *Vigile*, and Masse for the Knights deceased; the King did then weare a great Cloake and Chapperon of Violet colour cloath: And the other wore great Cloakes and Chapperons of blacke Serge, yet had the great Order vpon their seuerall Chapperons.

The Offering.

To the Offering, the King went foremost, preceded by the Officers of the Order, according to their ranke. His Maiestie held in his hand a Candle of white Waxe, containing a pound in weight: being followed by *Monsieur* the Duke of *Anion*, his brother, who presented his Offering.

The King being conducted backe to his Seate, *Monsieur d'Anion*, preceded likewise by the Officers of the Order, was guided to the Offering.

Next to him, the King of *Nauarre*.

Followed by the other Princes and Lords, according to their Order, from the right side to the left.

There is yet (to this present) to be seene, the most of the Tables, with the Escutcheons of the Knights of the said Order, called or present at this solemne Chapter, in the Quire of the Church at *Paris*: in which regard I omit their Blazons, and because the more part of them may be obserued, in the *Great Order of the Holy-Ghost*.

This of *S. Michael* hath bin continued, and the memorie thereof remaineth to this day: because it is worne by the Princes and Lords, retained and named from Chapter to Chapter, for receiuing that of the *Holy-Ghost*. And this is the reason, why we behold it rounded with the Armes of the Princes of the house of *Lorraine*, of *Nevers* and of *Nemours*.

And our Kings do yet honor therewith Princes Strangers. I saw it giuen by King *Henry* the great (of endlesse memorie) to the Duke of *Moldauia*, and to the Prince his Sonne, depriued of their dignities by the Turkes forces, & withdrawne thence to *Paris*, where the King gaue them entertainement. The Prince deceasing there in the life time of his Father, his seruice was performed at Saint *Nicholas des Champs*; the Funerall Girdle of the Church being charged with his Armes, which were thus blazoned.

De Gueulles a vne Teste de Taureau d'Or, somme d'vne Estoile de mesme, Coronne d'vn Bonnet Ducal d'Or releue pour Cimier d'vne Aigrette, & facon de Houppe d'Argent, entour de l'Ordre Sainct Michel.

The moſt excellent and famous Order of the HOLY-GHOST, inſtituted at *Paris* in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand fiue hundred threeſcore and nineteene: By the Moſt-Chriſtian King of *France*, and of *Poland*, HENRY, Third of that name.

CHAP. VII.

The moſt excellent and famous Order of the Holy-Ghoſt.

The worth and dignity of the Order.

OF all the Orders of *France*, yea, euen of all Chriſtendome, there is not any one more Illuſtrious or of greater Excellencie (as well in regard of the ſubiects dignitie, as magnificence and Ceremonies) then that of the *Holy-Ghoſt*. Inſtituted, ordained and eſtabliſhed in the Church and Monaſtery of the *Auguſtine* Friers Heremites at *Paris*: In the yeare of Grace, One thouſand fiue hundred threeſcore and nineteene, by the moſt Chriſtian King of France and Polonia, *Henry*, Third of that name, of eternall and ſacred memorie.

The reaſon of the Orders Inſtitution.

This good King, the honour and mirrour to all Princes of his time, in meere deuotion towards God, loue and liberalitie to men, and in remembrance of the day of his Birth, happening on the Feſtiuall day of Pentecoaſt, or Whit-Sunday, in the yeare one thouſand fiue hundred and fiftie; and his election to the Kingdome of Poland, as on the ſame day of Solemnitie of Pentecoaſt, One thouſand fiue hundred threeſcore and thirteene. Alſo on the very ſame day (the yeare following) he came to the Crowne of France. In dutifull acknowledgement, of ſo many fauours and perticuler great graces, receiued from God, by aſſiſtance of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, he inſtituted and ordained this new Order of Knighthood, by the name, and in honour of the *Holy-Ghoſt*. Whereof he declared himſelfe to be the chiefe and Soueraigne great Maiſter, he and his ſucceſſours the Kings of France. This is eſpecially remarked and carractred, in the firſt Glaſſe-window of the Quire, at the Grey Friers Church, and behinde the high Altar, vnder the deſcent of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, vpon the bleſſed Virgin and the Diſciples, contained in theſe ſixe Verſes.

Hocce die, quo almus Cœlo deſcendit ab alto
Spiritus, inflammans pectora Apoſtolica,
Erricus Franco ter maximus ortus in orbe eſt;
Electus Populi Rex quoque Sarmatici:
Et Rex Francorum Carlo ſucceſsit amori,
Ipſe amor, & Franci Delicia Populi.

The firſt Seſſion and Ceremonie of the Order.

The firſt ſitting and Ceremonie whereof, was held at *Paris*, on the Eeuen and firſt day of the yeare, One thouſand fiue hundred threeſcore and nineteene, in the Church of the *Auguſtines*. In memorie whereof, behinde the high Altar, betweene the two great Glaſſe-windowes, in the Quire of the ſaid Church, was placed a large Table, whereon his Maieſtie was figured to the life; deliuering his Order to Princes and Lords of his Court, all kneeling before him. In like manner was (naturally) there repreſented at the Pedeſtale of this Table, theſe words written in Letters of Gold.

Fortiſſimis & prudentiſſimis vtriuſque militiæ Equitibus, priſcæ nobilitatis, bello & pace de Republicâ optimè meritis, Henricus Tertius *Galliæ & Poloniæ Rex Auguſtus, Diuini Spiritus apud Chriſtianos Symbolum pro Equeſtri ſtemmate eſſe voluit, iuſſit, decreuit, plaudente,*

laudante, acclamante, venerante populo, & vota pro Salute Principis nuncupante, ob ſingularem ipſius pietatem. Lutetiæ Pariſiorum Kal. Ianua. Anno Domini CIↃ.ICLXXIX.

This Table was taken thence in the Feaſt time of Chriſtmas, foureſcore & eight, by harking Souldiours of the bloudie League, madde and enraged with furie of their zeale, and termed the *Zealous men of Paris*. Of whoſe naturall diſpoſition, and Tragicall actions, a true deſcription is made (in their liuely coullers) by the Hebrew Hiſtorian *Ioſephus*, in his Fourth Booke of the Iewiſh Warres, the nineteene, twenſie, and two and twentie Chapters, and ſo onward, ſpeaking of the *Zealous*, meernly imitated in their pilferies and robberies, by theſe *Zealateurs* of *Paris*. Thoſe men, to take away the memorie of this good Prince, and the noates or markes of his Royall power, to the end that an Anarchie might be brought in, inſtead thereof; did euery where deface his Figures, and carried away that royall Table; in place whereof they left a memoriall of our Lords Supper, as is there to be ſeene at this preſent.

The mercileſſe trouble cauſed by the League in Paris.

A Deſcription of the great Coller of the Order.

The great Coller of this Order, is compoſed of Floures de Luces of Gold, Cannonned or cornered with flames of Fire, tearmed *Flammes de Or Eſmaillees de Rouge*, enter-wouen with three Ciphers, and diuers Monogrammes of Gold likewiſe, *Eſmaillez de Blanck*. The firſt Cipher or Figure is the Letter H. and a Lamba Λ. and both double, which might be read aboue and beneath. They are the firſt Letters, belonging to the names, of the ſaid King, Founder and Inſtitutour of the Order; and of the Queene his wife, Madam *Louiſa de Lorraine*. The other two were reſerued in the Kings owne minde, of ſome perſons his fauourites. Now followeth the Kings Letters Patents, for confirmation of the Order.

The Kings Letters Patents.

HENRY, by the Grace of God, King of France and of Poland: To all preſent, and to come, Greeting. As in all things created, the omnipotent power of God doth acknowledge and manifeſt it ſelfe: euen ſo is it in the diſpoſition, courſe and conduct of them, which at full auoucheth his holy and eternall prouidence, whereon entirely dependeth all our felicitie. And there is not any thing in this lower world, that doth not thence receiue all happineſſe, and true meanes of well ordering and gouerning it ſelfe. So that if the meaneſt Creatures, cannot withdraw themſelues from his Prouidence: the very greateſt, and ſuch as are conſtituted to higheſt authoritie, cannot ſo well proſper and order themſelues, without his eſpeciall grace and prouidence.

In this regard, from our yongeſt yeares, hauing alwayes thus knowne and beleeued: We haue addreſſed our vowes, and affixed our principall and intire confidence, onely in his diuine goodneſſe. And acknowledging, that thence We haue and hold the beſt felicitie of our life; it is no more then reaſon requireth, that (hauing theſe things euer in our memorie) We ſhould ſtriue to our vttermoſt, in rendring him moſt hartie and eternall thankes, and teſtifie to our poſteritie, his great benefits beſtowed on vs. Eſpecially in this, becauſe it hath pleaſed him (among ſo many diuers and contrary opinions, which haue exerciſed their very greateſt powers in our times) to preſerue vs in the confeſſion of his holy Name, and in vnion of the onely Catholique and Apoſtolique Church, wherein we purpoſe (by his gracious aſſiſtance) both to liue and dye.

His Election to be King of Poland, and returne to France.

Moreouer, becauſe it hath pleaſed him, by the inſpiration of his bleſſed Spirit, on the day and feaſt of Pentecoaſt; to vnite all the hearts and wils of the Noble *Polanders*, ranking likewiſe therewith all the Eſtates of this potent and renowned Kingdome, and great Dukedome of *Lituania*; to elect vs as their King and Soueraigne. Afterward, vpon the ſame Feſtiuall day; to call vs to the rule and gouernment of this Moſt-Chriſtian Crowne, onely by his will, and right of our Succeſſion.

Care and regard of Knighthoods honor and ſupport.

In regard whereof, as well for a Commemoration of theſe things before rehearſed, as for continuall fortefying and maintaining (to the full) our Faith and Catholique Religion: Alſo, to decorate and honor (more and more) the Order and degree

gree of Nobilitie in this our Kingdome, and reduce it into her auncient dignitie and ſplendour, as that whereto we haue (by naturall inclination and reaſon of kinde euermore borne moſt intimate loue and affection, as well, becauſe therein conſiſteth our chiefeſt ſtrength and Royall authoritie, as hauing heretofore, and ſince our comming to the Crowne, made proofe in many great, hazardous and memorable victories, of our auncient and ſinguler loyaltie, generoſitie and valour, which hath made it ſelfe famous and commendable among ſtrange Nations:) We hauing also owe (next vnder God) our principall and intire band of dutie; the Princes of our Blood, and other Princes and Officers of our Crowne, and Lords of our Councell neere vnto vs, to performe as followeth.

Erection of the Order of the Holy-Ghoſt.

To erect a Military Order in this our Kingdome (ouer and beſide that of my Lord Saint *Michael*, which our will and meaning is, ſhall remaine in full force and vigour, and be obſerued, euen as alwayes it hath bin from firſt Inſtitution thereof, to this preſent.) Which Order we create and inſtitute, in honor, and vnder the name and title of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, by inſpiration whereof, as it hath pleaſed God (heretofore) to direct our beſt and happieſt actions: So we moſt humbly beſeech him to grant vs grace, that we may ſee our Subiects reunited in Faith and Catholique Religion, and alwayes hereafter to liue in loue and agreement together; vnder due obſeruation of our Lawes, and obedience to vs and our Succeſſours Kings, to his honour and glory, commendation of the good, and confuſion of the bad: which is the maine end, whereto all our thoughts and actions bend their aime, as to the height of our greateſt happineſſe and felicitie.

This being generally publiſhed and made knowne, his Maieſtie (afterward) diſpoſed himſelfe, to haue the Statutes and Ordenances of the Order ſet downe, and to be as amply expreſſed and ſignified.

Here followeth the Statutes and Ordenances *concerned in the Order of the* Holy-Ghoſt.

The Soueraign or great Maiſter of the Order.

FIrſt, that in this Order, there ſhall be a Soueraigne, chiefe and great Maiſter of the Order: who ſhall haue full (and abſolute authoritie, ouer all the Brethren, Commanders and Officers thereto belonging. To him onely (and to no other) ſhall appertaine the reception of them that are to be embraced into the Order: all direction and power of making Statutes, and to diſpence with them, which ſhall (for certaine diſpenceable caſes) take exception againſt ſome Articles hereafter ſpecified. Otherwiſe, for what cauſe or occaſion ſoeuer, that may offer it ſelfe; he ſhall neuer grant any diſpenſation. Which to doe, he is to take his Oath, and make ſolemne vowe at his entrance, when he ſhall be receiued as great Maiſter of the Order; with all ſuch faculties and powers, as ſhall be found appertaining thereto by right or priuiledge; euen as if they were ſet downe in more ample manner, and at large ſpecified.

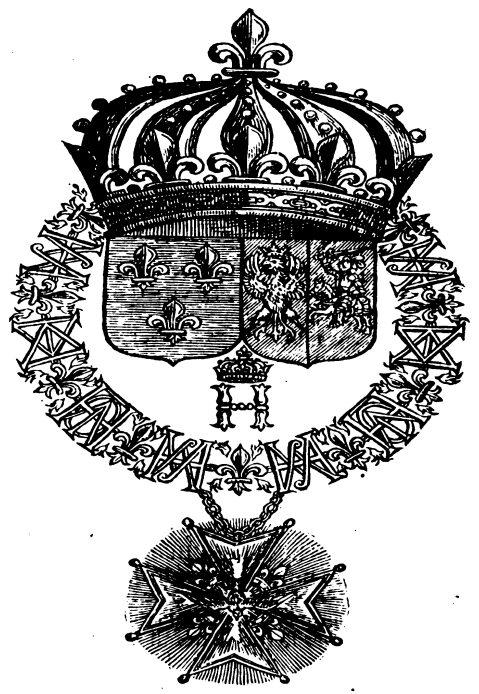
The great Maiſters title vnited to the Crowne of France.

2 That we ſhall (for euer) be the Chiefe and Soeeraigne great Maiſter of the ſaid Order, held and named to be the firſt Founder thereof. Which great and Soueraigne Maiſterſhip, we haue, and doe (from this preſent) vnite and incorporate to the Crowne of France: without any power or meanes of ſeperating it from it, either by vs, or any of our Succeſſors, for what cauſes or conſiderations ſoeuer which may be offered, or any way pretended.

No power before Coronation.

3 That the ſaid Kings our Succeſſours, are not to diſpoſe of the Order (in any manner whatſoeuer) or the Monies thereunto appertaining, neither to conferre any Commander, although a place be voide: vntill he haue firſt bin Sacred, and receiued his Coronation.

4 Vpon which day, they are to be required by the Archbiſhop of *Rheimes* (or he that ſhall repreſent his place and Office at the ſaid Sacring) in the aſſembly and preſence of the twelue Peeres, and Officers of the Crowne therein to be imployed: to ſweare the obſeruation and keeping of the Statutes of the Order, according to



to the forme hereafter following. Which they ſhall ſtand obliged to doe, without any power of diſpenſing withall, for any cauſe whatſoeuer. And on the morrow after the ſaid Sacring, the King *ſhall receiue the Habit and Collar of the Order*, from the hands of him that gaue him Conſecration: he being aſſiſted therein by the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the ſaid Order, who are for that purpoſe to be ſummoned thither, and bound to be there preſent.

5 To this end We haue and doe ordaine, that the forme of the ſaid Oath, ſhall be tranſcribed and inſerted in a Booke of the Sacring: with the other Oathes, which the Kings muſt be bound to take, before they are to be Crowned; without at any time afterward, the Act and Oath to be omitted.

6 And foraſmuch as (alreadie) We haue, by the grace of God, receiued the ſaid Sacring and Crowning: yet We intend and purpoſe to take the ſame Oath againe, by the hands of the Arch-Biſhop of *Rheimes*, or ſome ſuch other Biſhop, as We ſhall pleaſe to appoint in his ſted, at the firſt meeting or Aſſembly, which We ſhall hold of the Order: in the preſence of the Princes and Officers of Our Crowne, with ſuch Lords alſo as ſhall be called thereto, in the Church where the Celebration thereof is to be performed, laying Our hands on the true holy Croſſe, and the ſacred Euangeliſts. Which ſolemne Oath being by vs ſo taken: an Act ſhall be made and paſſed thereof, which ſhall be regiſtred in the ſaid Booke, to ſerue as a Teſtimonie in times hereafter, that We did truly take ſuch an Oath.

The Oath and Vowe made by the King.

The Arch-biſhop or his deputie holdeth the Booke for receiuing the Oach.

7. *Wee* Henry, *by the Grace of God, King of France and of Poland, doe ſolemnely ſweare and vowe on this Booke in our hands, to God the Creator, to liue and dye in the Holy, Catholique and Apoſtolique Faith and Religion, as to euery good and Moſt-Chriſtian King it belongeth, and rather to die then faile at any time-thereon. Wee ſweare alſo, to maintaine for euer,* The Order of the Holy Ghoſt, *founded and inſtituted by Vs: without ſuffering it to ſhrinke, fall or diminiſh, ſo long as it remaineth in Our power to helpe it. To obſerue the Statutes and Ordenances of the ſaid Order, truely and intirely, according to their tenure and forme. And to cauſe them be kept exactly, by all ſuch as are, and ſhall be receiued into the ſaid Order hereafter. Moreouer, neuer to contradict, nor diſpence, or attempt to alter and change the irreuocable Statutes thereof: perticulerly theſe which are herementioned.*

8 Namely, in the firſt place, the Statute, ſpeaking, of vniting the Great Maiſterſhip to the Crowne of France.

Secondly,

Secondly, that containing the number of Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers.

Thirdly, that for not transferring the prouiſion of Commands, either in whole, or any part, to any other vnder coullour of inheritance, Appennage or conceſſion whatſoeuer.

Fourthly, that whereby We Our Selfe ſtand bound (ſo much as in Vs lieth) that We ſhall not (at any time) diſpenſe with the Commanders and Officers receiued into the Order: From Communicating and receiuing the precious Body of Our Lord Ieſus Chriſt, at ſuch daies as are appointed; which are the firſt day of the yeare, and that of Pentecoſte.

Fiftly, that wherein is expreſſed, that We and all Our Commanders and Officers, muſt be Catholiques, and Gentlemen of three paternall races, as euery one muſt and ought to be.

Sixtly, that whereby all power is taken from Vs, of imploying about any other occaſions whatſoeuer, may be vrged or pretended; the monies due and belonging to the reuenewes and maintaining the ſaid Commanders and Officers: Nor to admit any Strangers into the Order, except they be naturalized, and inhabitants of Our owne Kingdome.

Seuenthly and laſtly, that wherein is contained the forme of the Vowes, and the bounden dutie, for daily wearing the Croſſe (with ordenarie garments) and that of God hanging about the necke, faſtened to a Ribband of Blew Silke: And the other habit, on the daies thereto appointed.

All theſe doe we ſweare, vow, and promiſe to performe, vpon the Holy Croſſe, and laying our hand vpon the Sacred Euangeliſts.

What Cleargy men were conſtituted to be of the Order, and what belonged to their charge and office.

9 Hauing principally made and created this Order, in the honour of God: We doe ordaine and appoint, that there ſhall be (as Bretheren thereof) foure Cardinals, and foure Arch-Biſhops, Biſhops or Prelates, who are to be choſen among the very greateſt, and moſt vertuous men of the Cleargie, throughout all our Kingdome. Who are to be Commanders in the ſaid Order, to make proofe of the eaſe of Nobilitie, in ſuch forme as hereafter is ordained. They ſhall haue entrance, ſeates, and deliberatiue voices in the generall Chapters, Aſſemblies, and meetings, which are to be held for affaires of the Order; in the ſame manner as the other Commanders haue. Moreouer, they ſhall haue charge, to informe of the Religion, life, manners and ages of Princes, Lords, Gentlemen, and Officers, that ſhall enter into the Order. And to giue Vs knowledge (with ample remonſtrance) in the ſaid Chapters, of ſuch faults and abuſes, as ſhall be committed by any of the Order, or in the caſe concerning Religion.

The Great Almoner a chiefe Commaunder.

10 Moreouer, beſide thoſe foure Cardinals, and foure Prelates: We haue, and doe at this preſent incorporate, and vnite (for all times hereafter) in the Order, vnder title of a Commander: Our Great Almoner, and his Succeſſours in the ſame degree, who notwithſtanding, ſhall not ſtand obliged, to make proofe of his Nobilitie.

For election of the Cardinals, Arch-biſhops, &c.

11 The ſaid Cardinals, Arch-Biſhops, Biſhops or Prelates, ſhall be by Vs elected and choſen, at the Chapters and Aſſemblies of the Order: and ſhall receiue (ſigned with our owne hand) the Croſſe of the Order, in the Church appointed for thoſe daies, and to that effect; but not otherwiſe: As our Great Almoner is to doe, the like. Which Croſſe the ſaid Cardinals muſt be bound to weare daily hanging about their neckes, with a faire Silke Riband of Blew coullor. And the fiue Prelates, beſides that which they weare about their neckes, as the Cardinals doe; muſt be bound to weare another, ſowed or made faſt vpon their Roabes or Cloakes: wholly in the ſame forme and manner, as the other Commaunders doe.

Neceſſarie duties to be performed by the Cleargie men.

They ſhall ſtand obliged, to aſſiſt at the Feaſts and Ceremonies, which are to be celebrated for the Order. For their better vnderſtanding, the Cardinals are to weare their great rich Coapes; and the Biſhops or Prelates their long looſe Caſſocks of Violet coullor, and a Mantelet of the ſame coullor, whereon the Croſſe of the Order is to be ſowne, or embrodered, with their Rochets and Hoodes. And on the daies, when Seruice is to be celebrated for the dead; the Cardinals are to weare

their Violet Coapes, and the Prelates cloathed in Blacke, after the ſame forme and fashion. Which Prelates (each after other) ſhall ſay Maſſe, and celebrate Diuine Seruice on the daies of Ceremonie. Obſeruing and keeping among them (as well for celebration of the Diuine Seruice, as in all things elſe, which ſhall depend vpon their ſitting in the Church and Aſſembly of the Order only) the rancke which hath beene accuſtomed to be obſerued, among the Eccleſiaſticall perſons of our Kingdome. But if the ſaid Ceremonie ſhall be celebrated in the Dioceſſe belonging to any one among them: then he in whoſe Dioceſſe it ſhall happen to be, is to precede and goe before the other.

Concerning the Great Almoner.

Now, concerning our Great Almoner; he is to remaine in the Church neere about Our Perſon, according as his eſtate and dignitie requireth: except when he is to performe and celebrate Diuine Seruice, which then he is to celebrate in his rancke, as the other. The Cardinals and Prelates, at their receiuing into the Orders by the hand of the Soueraigne, are to take this Oath following.

The Oath to be taken by the Cardinals and Prelates; at their reception and admittance into the Order.

11 *I ſweare in the preſence of God, and promiſe to you Sir, that I will be loyall and faithfull to you all my life time: I will acknowledge, honour, and ſerue you as my Soueraigne of the Order of the Commanders of the* Holy-Ghoſt, *wherewith it is your high pleaſure at this preſent to honour me. I will keepe and obſerue the Lawes, Statutes and Ordenances of the ſaid Order, without contradicting them in any thing. I will weare the Croſſes or markes thereof: And I will daily ſay the Seruice thereto belonging, as an Eccleſiaſticall perſon, and one of my qualitie ought to doe. I will make my perſonall appearance on the daies of Solemnities, if there be not any lawfull occaſion that may be my hinderance, whereof I will giue aduertiſement to your Maieſtie. And I will neuer reueale diſcloſe any thing, which ſhall be treated or concluded in the Chapters thereof. I will procure, councell and procure, whatſoeuer ſhall ſeeme in my conſcience, appertaining to the maintenance, greatneſſe, and augmentation of the Order. I will daily pray to God for the health, as well of your Maieſtie, as alſo the Commanders and Supporters thereof, liuing and dying. So God be my helpe, and by his holy Euangeliſts.*

The intent of the Orders inſtitution.

12 And as we inſtitute this preſent Order in the honour of God, and more and more to excite and vnite our Subiects, to perſeuer in the Holy Catholique and Apoſtolique Religion: Alſo particularly to illuſtrate the eſtate of Nobilitie in our Kingdome; We haue ſaid, enacted and ordained, doe ſay, enact and ordaine.

Care of ſincerite in Religion.

13 Firſt, that no man ſhall be made a Commander, and receiue the habit of the Order: if he haue not publiquely made profeſſion, of the ſaid Catholique and Apoſtolique Religion, and haue not proteſted to liue and die therein.

Gentilitie of three deſcents.

14 Secondly, that he muſt be a Gentleman of name, and of Armes, by three deſcents at the leaſt: without being taxed with any reproachfull accuſation, or proued before a Bench of Iuſtice. And being Princes, to haue compleated fiue and twentie yeares of age: And fiue and thirtie, if he be otherwiſe.

The Kings only prerogatiue.

15 We only, and after Vs, the Kings our Succeſſours, Great Maiſters of the Order, ſhall propoſe and make choice of ſuch as We thinke meete to enter into the ſaid Order. And it ſhall not be lawfull for any perſon whatſoeuer, to make purſuit or requeſt thereof, either for himſelfe, or any other. Declaring ſuch at the ſame inſtant, vnworthie for euer to attaine it, by deſiring it, or cauſing it to be requeſted for him. Only to this end, that this degree of Honour, which We intend to be beſtowne and diſtributed by Grace and merit; may neuer be made ſubiect to monopolizing and briberie.

17 And in regard We hope, that God will ſo aſſiſt Vs with his Grace, and Our Succeſſours after Vs, by the inſpiration of his bleſſed Spirit, whoſe helpe We implore (to that end) in Our preſent intention, that We may not propoſe, or make choice of any one to be our aſſociate in the Order who ſhall not be adorned with the forenamed qualities: Yet notwithſtanding, becauſe We would auoide all ſurpriſes,

A Royall prouidence for ejecting Brethren in the Order.

priſes, and render our choice free from all reproach, ſo much as poſſibly we may. It is our will, that yearely there ſhall be held a Chapter, on the laſt day of December in the morning, and after dinner, if neede ſhall ſo require, wherein ſhall all the Cardinals, Prelates and Commanders, with the Officers of the Order, them we will propound and name the men, whom we are aduiſed to make choice for the Order. And we entreate our ſaid Aſſiſtants, to make enquiry what language or report paſſeth of them: to the end that they may giue vs faithfull informa at the Chapter (which for that purpoſe) ſhall bee held on the firſt day of the ye before Euenſong.

Information to be giuen to the King.

18. At which Chapter the Cardinalls, Prelates and Commanders, that gaue th aſſiſtance at our propoſition; ſhall be bound to bee there perſonally preſent. Whe they ſhall declare to vs (vpon their conſciences) their full and intire aduice, for w ceiuing them, by vs propounded. In which caſe at their entring into the ſaid Ch ter, they ſhall ſweare by the liuing God and vpon their honour (the Oath being uen by the Chancellor of the Order) to tell vs the truth, and nothing but the truth.

Commiſsions for firme intelligence of the Parties nominated.

19. If it ſo come to paſſe, that the propoſition formerly made by vs ſhall be app ued, and that the men by vs propounded, ſhall bee found and adiudged worthy receiue the Order; they are to giue vs true aduertiſement thereof. And then aft ſhal be deliuered, or ſent to each of them particularly, Commiſſions, which are need full for them; for firme verification, as well of their Religion, Age, life and manner as of their nobility and extraction. By which Commiſſions, they are at full to b aduertiſed in the forme which they ought to obſerue, for verifying their iniqu proues. Together with the names of the Commiſſaries, that were Committees Deputies in the Chapter: into whoſe hands they are to deliuer all the contract Titles, which they would produce, as alſo in what time they ought to performe the To the end, that the parties elected and choſen, may obſerue in, and by all meanes whatſoeuer they are enioyned or appoynted by the Statutes of the Order, for ſ as deſire to enter and be there aſſociates, for ample verifying their proues.

In what manner the proues are to be made for Religion, &c.

20. And thoſe proues ſhall alwayes be made (in regard of Religion, life and ma ners, and likewiſe for yeares of Age) by the Arch-biſhop, or Biſhop of the Dioc where the parties propoſed and named, ſhall make their abiding. To whom (for t purpoſe) ſhall be directed Commiſsion, ſealed with the *Seale of the Order*: by w whereof, hee ſhall ſend to be diligently informed, concerning the Religion, life manners of the ſaid named partie. Which information is to bee ſent cloſe ſealed deliuered into the hands of the Chancellour of the Order, a moneth before the day of the yeare. Ouer and beſide which information, wee doe further ordaine, the partie named for entring into the Order, ſhall ſtand bound (before power be gi ted for his reception) to make profeſsion of his faith, according to the forme pre bed by the Church, on the Booke, held by our great Almoner, or one of the Prel incorporated into the Order, being our Subiect: and this to be certified in the Boo containing the ſaid Profeſsion, amongſt the reſt.

Concerning proues of Nobility, & how they are to be made.

21. The proofes of Nobility, is to bee made by Contracts of Marriages, Pa Teſtaments, Donations, Tranſactions, Auouchings, Inuentories of goods or L homages, or Extractions of Foundations by Fathers, Grand-fathers, and great Gra fathers, the names of whom muſt bee exhibited into the hands of the Commiſſ who were named for the verifying of their proofes, ſixe monthes after they haue b aduertiſed of their Election, from the Originalls. And if the named parties c compaſſe attaining of the ſaid Originalls; then the Commiſſaries muſt goe thither commodiouſly they may doe it) where any patts or parcels of the Originalls ar maining, that in their preſence, and of our Officers and Aduocates of thoſe places tracts of them may bee made. And if it ſo happen, that they cannot goe thither are obliged to informe his maieſtie, concerning the names of ſome Lords in thoſe P uinces, in whoſe preſence the named perſons may cauſe the ſaid extracts to be and read, and an Act of them to bee made for the Pretendant, which ſhall ward bee deliuered into the hands of the Chancellor of the Order; who there ſhall cauſe a Commiſsion to bee diſpatched by the Regiſter of the Order, ſent to the Gentlemen deleagud by the ſaid Commiſſaries, to call (with them)

How, and to whom the Commiſsions for Nobility are to be directed.

ficers & Aduocates of the places before the, to be preſent at the examind Copies.
The Commiſsions for verifying the ſaid proues of Nobility, ſhall alwayes bee di-
ted to two Commanders of the Order, who ſhall be choſe (by vs) in the Chapter:
call our Officers and Aduocates of the places (if need require) before them, to be
ligently informed, and by good witneſſes (who muſt be choſen men of Office, and
t produced by the named perſons, but authenticall Acts;) whether the ſaid named
ſons, for entring into the Order, be Gentlemen of three races by the Fathers ſide,
no: And whether the ſir-names and Armes which they carry, were carried by
eir Fathers, Grand-fathers, and great Grand-fathers, or no. And of what Lands &
igneuries they were then poſſeſſed & took the title. Whether the matters containd
thoſe proues, which were deliuered to their hands, be true or no. And whether the
med perſons haue not beene attainted and conuicted of crimes and caſes, directly
poſite againſt Nobility and honor.

What is to be done after the Chancellour hath receiued the Verball Anſwere.

Of all theſe they are to prepare a verball anſwer, with an extract thereof in writing;
hich they muſt ſend a month before the ſaid firſt day of the yeare, vnto the Chan-
llour, cloſe and faſt ſealed with their ſeales of Armes, affirmed vpon their faith &
nour, & ſigned by their hands with titles, contracts, & particulars produced by the
med perſons. His Maieſtie expreſsly forbidding the Chancellor to receiue the, ex-
pt they were or be preſented to him, a month before the ſaid firſt day of the yeare.

23. The Chancellour hauing receiued the ſaid verball Anſwer, is to aduertiſe the
ing thereof: who ſhall (yearely) meete himſelfe in perſon, ten dayes before the
nding of the moneth December, or ſooner; with the Cardinalls, Prelates, Com-
anders and Officers, in his Court. By whoſe aduice, he is to elect and depute to
e number of eight of the Commanders: in whoſe preſence, the Chancellour muſt
pen the verball anſwer. And then the titles of the ſaid named parties are to be ſur-
yed, that report of them may be giuen at the next Chapter, which ſhall be held the
ſt day of December. In the number of which ſaid eight Commanders; there muſt
e alwayes one of the Cardinalls, two Prelates, two of the Commiſſaries, which
uerred & examined the proues, & three other Commanders, choſen as before hath
eene ſaid. And if the Commiſſaries ſhall happen to be abſent; two other Comman-
ers are to be ſubrogated in their ſtead. And (continually) the ſaid verball Anſwer is
be ſent by the ſaid Cõmiſſaries, & carefully kept by the Regiſter of the Order, for
reſent ſeruice when need ſhall require. And in caſe that all, or part of them be iudged
orthy by vs, & two thirds of the Aſſembly: We and our Succeſſors, as great Mai-
ers and Soueraignes of the Order, ſhall make choyce and election of him, or them,
s we thinke beſt; who at the ſame time ſhall be called to the Chapter, by the He-
uld King of Armes belonging to the Order, to bee aduertiſed by vs of their aſſocia-
ion in the Order, and then to receiue the appointment what they are to doe.

Relation of military ſeruices done for theo King.

24. The Chancellour in relating the verball anſwer, ſhall alſo repreſent and make
nowne to vs in the ſaid Aſſembly; the charges and degrees wherewith the Preten-
ants haue beene honoured, and the places where they haue ſerued vs in our Camps
nd Armies, according to the memories which haue beene deliuered of them: to the
nd that their receiuing into the Order may appeare the more honourable.

Concerning the receiuing of ſtrangers into the Order.

25. And although Strangers, Inhabitants and naturalizd in our Kingdome, to
hom we permit (by preſent inſtitution) entrance into the ſaid Order, in like manner
our Subiects, by ſubmitting themſelues to the Rules and Statutes therof, cannot wel
ccompliſh (in all & euery part) thoſe things which we haue ordained to be obſerued
the ſaid proues: It ſhall ſuffice, that they exhibite and deliuer into the hands of the
Chancellour, the Originalls of Contracts of Marriage, Teſtaments or Inueſtitures of
eir Fathers, Grand-fathers, and great Grand-fathers, or of Acts extracted out of the
owles and publike places in the Townes or Cities, concerning the extraction and
riginall of their houſes: or Copies of Contracts, and Inſtruments forenamed, duly
ade out of the ſaid extracts, by vertue of a Commiſſion which ſhall be ſent by ap-
intment of the Soueraigne, & ſealed with the Seale of the Order, directed to ſome
erſons, who (to that end) ſhall be named in the Chapter, without binding them to
ake any more ample proues.

26 We ordaine alſo, that the Sonnes, Brethren, Nephewes, and Couſins Germaine

Of Commanders Sonnes and Kindred of the Order.

maine of a Commander in the same Order, bearing the same names and Armes, [illegible] being of the same extraction, hauing beene named by vs for entring into the Order shall not stand bound to produce (concerning their Nobility) any other proues [illegible] those which their said Fathers, Brothers, Vncles, or Cousins haue formerly made. But they are to be further constrained, in those Articles concerning their Religion, Life Manners and Ages, as the other.

For appearing in the formall habits of the Order.

27 And to the end that such as shall be honoured with the Order, may appear at Feasts and Ceremonies thereto belonging, in the formall habits of the Order, as we haue ordained that they shall doe, and without any constraint of borrowing. We giue them further to know and vnderstand, that they are to pay fiue hundred Crownes to the Treasurer of the Order, to be imployed in making of the said habits before they can be thereinto admitted.

28. Which habits, and Coller of the Order, may neuer be vsed for wearing, & giuen by vs or our Successors: but on the last day of December after Euensong, & in the Church where the same is solemnly performed, in such forme as hereafter followeth.

The manner and forme of deliuering the Habites and Coller of the Order.

29. Such as are accepted and to be receiued into the Order; must repaire on the said day after dinner, to the place where the Cardinalls, Prelates, Commanders and Officers meete together with vs, to goe to Church to heare the Euening Seruice. Thither they are conducted, walking asunder each after other, or going two and two together, if there be many, according as they were, and are called by their Election, betweene the Chancellour of the Order, and the Commander: their Doublets and Hose being of Cloth of Siluer, and the most honourablest that can be had.

What behauiour is vsed in the Church, to a new chosen person.

30. Being come to the Church, there they humble themselues on their knees, by the seates, which (for that purpose) are appointed in the Quire, on the contrary side to them for the Officers: Euening Seruice being sung, we depart from our seate, and goe towards the Altar, the Officers walking before vs; and being seated in the Seate there prepared for vs, the Prouost and Maister of the Ceremonies of the Order, the Herauld and Vsher going before him: goe to aduertise the two Dukes last receiued into the Order, if the said new elected person, and to be receiued, bee a Duke: but if hee be not a Duke, then the aduertisement passeth by the two Commanders, late receiued and entertained) to go take the first of the elected persons, whom they shall guide and leade betweene them (the Prouost going before) vntill they come where wee are seated. No sooner is he there, but being prostrate on his knees, to him is then giuen (by vs) the Cloake and Coller of the Order, wherein the Officers giue their assistance each one in his Office, as followeth.

The Chancellour Office.

31. First of all the Chancellour, to present and hold the Booke of the holy Euangelists: whereon the Gentleman laying both his hands, he maketh his vow and Oath in due forme.

The Register.

32. Next after him the Register, who shall giue the Gentleman the forme of the vowes and Oath which he is to make, fairely written in Parchment, which hee himselfe is to read with a loud voyce: and next to signe the Scedule with his hand, and then to present it to vs. The Scedule must (afterward) be enrowled by the Register of the Order; to serue as a testimonie of the day of his entertaining. And the Originall thereof, is to be deliuered by the Chancellour, into the Treasury of the Charters belonging to the Order, there to be kept very respectiuely.

The Maister of the Ceremonies. The Kings words in putting on the Cloake and Mantle.

33 The Prouost and Maister of the Ceremonies, is to present vs with the Cloake and Mantle of the Order; which we must put on him in vsing these words.

The Order doth reuest and couer you with the Cloake of this amiable company, & Brotherly vnion, for the exaltation of our faith and Catholicke Religion: In the name of the Father, of the Sonne, and of the Holy-Ghost, making the signe of the Crosse.

The Kings words at the deliuery of the Coller.

34. Afterward commeth the high Treasurer of the Order, who presenteth vs with the Coller thereof: Which we put about the Commanders necke saying.

Receiue from our hand the Coller of our Order of the Holy Ghost: whereinto We (as Soueraigne Great Maister thereof doe receiue you. Keepe in perpetuall remembrance, the death and passion of our Lord and Redeemer Iesus Christ: In signe whereof, we appoint you to weare the Crosse (for euer) vpon your outward garments. And God giue you grace, that you may neuer goe against the Vowes and Oath, which you this day haue

come hither to take, but that they may remaine perpetually in your heart. For be you well assured, that if you doe contradict them in any sort: you shall be depriued and excluded out of this Companie, and incurre those paines and penalties, which are appointed by the Statutes of the Order. In the name of the Father, of the Sonne; and of the Holy-Ghost, Amen.

35 Whereunto the said Commander is to returne this Answere.

The Commanders Answer to the King.

IF, God endue me with his Grace, and grant, that I may rather dye, then faile in any Article of duetie belonging to me. And most humbly I thanke your Maiestie for the Honor and happinesse which it hath pleased you to bestow vpon me. In signe whereof, I kisse your Royall hand loyally.

The Vowe & Oath taken by the Commanders.

36 *I sweare and vowe to God, in the face of his Church, and promise to you Sir, vpon my Faith and Honor: that I will liue and dye in the Faith and Religion Catholique, without euer departing from it, or the vnion of our holy Mother the Church Apostolique. 1. That I will beare to your Maiestie, intire and perfect Obedience; without failing in any part of duetie, as a good and loyall Subiect ought to doe. 2. That I will keepe, defend and maintaine (to my vttermost power) the honor, the quarrels, and rights of your Royall Maiestie; and against all whatsoeuer. 3. That in times of Warre, I will; yeelde my selfe to follow you, in the furnishment or equipage of Horses and Armes: as I am bound to doe by the Statutes of this Order. 4. In the times of Peace, when any occasion of importance shall present it selfe, at all times, and as often as you shall please to command me: I will doe you seruice, against any person that can liue and dye, without exception of any, and euen to death it selfe. 5. That in such occasions, I will neuer leaue or abandon your person, or the place where you haue appointed me to doe you seruice; without your expresse leaue and licence, or command, signed with your owne hand, or of him whom you shall ordaine me to obey; standing free from all other exceptions, but vpon iust and lawfull occasion. 6. That I will neuer goe forth of your Kingdome, especially, to goe in the seruice of any strange Prince; without your command. And I will neuer take pension, wages or benefit of any other King, Prince, Potentate, or Lord whatsoeuer: nor binde my selfe to the seruice of any other person liuing, but to your Maiestie onely; except it be by your expresse permission. 7. That I will faithfully reueale to you, whatsoeuer I shall know hereafter: to import your seruice, the estate and conseruation of this present Order of the Holy-Ghost, wherewith it hath pleased your Maiestie to honor me. 8 That I will neuer consent, nor euer permit (so much as in me lyeth) that any thing shall be innouated or attempted against the seruice of God; nor against your Royall authoritie; or to the preiudice of this Order, which I will labour to my vttermost power, to augment and maintaine. 9. I will keepe and obserue most Religiously, all the Statutes and Ordenances thereof. 10. I will continually weare the Crosse vpon my vppermost garments, and that of Gold about my necke; as I am enioyned by the said Statutes. 11. And I will be personally present, at all the Assemblies and generall Chapters of the Order, so often as you shall please to command me; or else acquaint you with my iust excuses: which I shall neuer hold for good or lawfull, except they be approued and authorized by your Maiestie, with the aduise of most part of the Commanders, which shall be conuerest to take knowledge of them: Signed with your Royall hand, and sealed with the Seale of the Order, whereof I am to haue an Act. All these things I vowe and sweare, so helpe me God, and on this Booke of his blessed Euangelists.*

Concerning Seruice to a foraign Prince by any of the Commanders.

37 And in regard, that by this Oath, it is expressely ordered, that the Commanders cannot binde themselues to the seruice of any stranger Prince; which cannot well be obserued, by such as are subiect to others then our selfe: We publish & declare, that no Strangers, if they be not reall Inhabitants, and naturallized in this our Kingdome, can enter into this Order, by any meanes whatsoeuer; neither our owne Seruice Subiects, which are already of any other Order. Excepting neuertheless, that of my Lord S. *Michael*, which we desire to hold and maintaine in the prime splendour: We will and ordaine, that it may lawfully be worne with this, by such as shall be honored both with the one and other.

The Order of S. *Michael* and the *Holy-Ghost* allowed together.

38 Excepting also from the said exclusion, Cardinals of the Sacred Seate, Archbishops & Bishops: And likewise our Subiects, who either by permission of vs, or of the Kings our Predecessours, haue beene, or shall be hereafter, receiued into the

Orders of the *Golden Fleece*, and that of the *Garter*; in regard of propinquity, &
peace and amity, which is betweene vs, and the Chiefes and Soueraignes of the
Orders. All which wee meane may enter into the Order, as well as the other, ob
uing the formes and rules, prescribed to them by this present Institution.

A summe of money disbursed for the maintenance of the Order.

39. For the maintenance of this Order, and for giuing meanes to Cardin
Prelates and Commanders, to maintaine themselues in honourable condition, as
very conuenient, and to doe vs seruice, in such occasions as shall present themsel
There must be a good round stocke of money leuied, which is to be diuided for p
ment in a full Chapter, and in our presence, according to such an estate, as shall be
vs thought fit and set downe. And concerning the said moneyes, in any nam
whatsoeuer, neither by vs or our Successors hereafter; they are to be taken, imploy
ed, distrained or challenged to any other vse; but for maintaining & paying the pe
sions of the said Commanders, & according to such partition as shal be made of the

Of what number of persons the Order is to consist.

40. We will and ordaine that this present Order shall be composed, and consi
of the number of an hundred persons, besides him that is the Soueraigne, and Gre
Maister. In which number are to be comprehended foure Cardinalls, fiue Prelate
the Chancellour, Prouost, Maister of the Ceremonies, the high Treasurer, and th
Register, who are Commanders. Vpon any cause or motion whatsoeuer ensueth, may
not the said number be augmented. And when any vacation shall happen, in any on
of the places of the Cardinalls, Prelates, or Officers: those places are not to be filled
or supplyed, but only with such persons as are to serue in the same quality.

No pension to be diminished.

41. Nor shall it be permitted to the great Maister and Soueraigne of the Order,
to encrease the pension of any of the Commanders, by diminishing any of the other.

Absolute prouision of all Commandes.

42. To vs only, and to the Kings our Successors, as Soueraignes and great Ma
sters of the Order, shall appertaine the Collation and prouision of all Commands
without permission in vs at any time, to giue way, or transport our right to any per
son whatsoeuer, either in all, or in part, vnder any pretence of gift, gracious conces
sion, dowrie, inheritance, younger Brothers portion, or aduancement of Heiredome
in any manner whatsoeuer it be.

Vpon vacancie of a Commaunderie.

43. Moreouer we will haue to be very strictly obserued, that when any Com
mandery happeneth to be vacant, it shall not bee prouided by vs; but at General
Chapters, and in the forme before appointed, without power in vs (for any occasion
whatsoeuer) either to prolong or anticipate the time.

The Chancellours ordinary stipend.

44. There shall be a Chancellour of the Order, who shall make the vowes and
proues of Nobility, in the same manner as the Commanders, neither more nor lesse.
He shall haue a thousand Crownes of the Sunne for ordenarie wages and his main
tenance, and shall weare the Crosse as a Commander. Hee is alwayes to bee taken
and chosen from amongst the most learned, notable, worthy, and honestest persons
ges in our Kingdome: to the end, that the said charge and Office may bee admini
stred, so much the more worthily and honourably.

The Seale to be kept by the Chancellour.

45. The said Chancellour is to keepe the seale, which is to be made and appoin
ted for the Order. Therewith hee shall seale all Expeditions, Prouisions and Man
dates concerning the said Order, which shall be commanded by vs and our Succes
sors in generall Assemblies of the Cardinalls, Prelates, Commanders and Officers,
and not otherwise. And in the Signature of the said Letters, shall bee alwayes w
der-written these wordes.

By the King, Chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maister, sitting in the Generall Assembly of the Commanders of the Sacred Order of the Holy Ghost.

Duties appertaining to the Chancellours charge.

46. Also the said Chancellour must stand bound, to bee present at all generall
Chapters which are to be held; wherein he shall haue charge, to propound all such
matters, as are Commanded him by his Soueraigne. Hee is also to make faithfull
report of Informations, and verball Answeres, which haue beene made and sent by
the Cardinalls, Prelates, Commanders, or other Committees in the businesse, for the
receiuing of Gentlemen, that shall be named for entrance into the Order. Where
in hee must haue especiall care, that hee vse not any abuse, fraud and conniuencie.
Hee must be iust in his carriage, to the end, that the Statutes and Ordinances
of the Order; may bee exactly obserued, and kept by the Commanders and Offi-

cers. He is also to aduertise the Soueraigne and Assembly, of such as breake or
contradict them; for further proceeding to correction and punishment of them. He
shall likewise receiue the complaints and grieuances of the said Commanders and
Officers. Hee shall haue the Superintendencie ouer managing the moneyes of the
Order: and alwayes be an Assistant; for the reddition or rendring accounts to the
Treasurer. And the said Chancellor shall sweare and promise at his entertaining, to
obserue and fulfill all these things, without fayling in any one of them.

The Office of the Maister of the Ceremonies, and his stipend.

47. And to the end that the Statutes, Ordenances and Ceremonies of the Order,
may be kept, maintained and obserued, as they ought to be: wee haue created, ere-
cted, and instituted an Office, of Prouost and Maister of the Ceremonies: who shall
allow and approue Nobility, in the same manner as the Commanders. He shall haue
fiuen hundred and fifty Crownes of the Sunne, as his yearely stipend or wages. He
shall bee carefull that the Statutes, ordinances, and Constitutions of the order, be not
in any way infringed by the Commanders and Officers of the Order; but shall diligent-
ly and secretly informe himselfe, concerning such as doe not obserue them. If the
offences be light, or of little moment; himselfe is mildly to aduertise the delinquents,
to the end they may correct such errors in themselues. If otherwise; to cause them be
set downe by the Register of the Order; that report of them may be made at the next
Chapter held.

His charge on the dayes of celebrating the Order in the Church.

48 He must haue a care also, that on the Festiuall dayes of Celebrating the Order;
all things may be readily prouided in the Church, and as they ought to be; as well
for the adorning thereof, as for the seates and rancke of Chaires and Benches for the
Soueraigne, Cardinalls, Prelates, Commanders, and Officers of the Order. Also for
Ambassadors from Kings and Princes, and others, that are and ought to assist in the
said Ceremonie. That the Coates of Armes belonging to the Soueraigne and the
Commanders, may be orderly rancked and placed aboue the seates, whereon they
are to sit. And for the better performance hereof, the said Prouost must be bound
to be personally present where wee are, or shall bee, eight dayes (at the least) before
the Feast day, without any fayling.

His charge on the death of any of the Order.

49. When any of the Cardinalls, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order,
shall happen to depart out of this life: the Prouost standeth obliged, to haue true cer-
tification of their sicknesse and death, the day, month and yeare: whether by any in-
conuenience naturall, or other accident, and the condition of their finall departing. To
the end, that Funerall seruice for the dead may bee performed in such due manner as
thereto appertaineth; and afterwards to cause it be set downe by the Register.

His charge for contentions and quarrels, &c.

50. The said Prouost must take paines also, to enquire and haue knowledge, when
there shall happen any debate, contention or quarrell betweene any of the Comman-
ders and Officers; for informing vs thereof immediately: To the end, that wee may
redresse the same, and hinder it from proceeding any further. At his receiuing into the
Order, he shall sollemnly sweare to obserue and effect all these things diligently.

The Fees and rights belonging to the Maister of the Ceremonies.

51. All Cardinalls, Prelates and Commanders, that shall bee receiued into the Or-
der at the time of their entertainment, are to giue to the said Prouost, as fees and rights
belonging to his Office, these things hereafter following

1. *Euery Carainall is to giue him tenthe Elles of Crimson Velvet.*
2. *Euery Prelate ten elles of violet velvet.*
3. *And euery Commander twelue Elles of blacke velvet.*
4. *It is our expresse will, that if any of them shall deferre or delay to make satisfaction of these dues: As much money shall be detained (as may amount thereto) on the accounts of the Command, to be paid and giuen by the Treasurer to the said Prouost.*

The Treasurer of the Order.

52. There shall be likewise a Treasurer of the said Order: who shall be called high
Treasurer of the Order; who is to make proofe and vow of his Religion, and shall re-
ceiue seauen hundred Crownes of the Sunne, as his ordinary Wages.

Such matters as belong to the Treasurers Office.

53. He shall haue in keeping, all Charters, Priuiledges, Letters, Mandates, Com-
mands, Writings, Registers and Enstructions, concerning the foundation of the Or-
der, with all their appurtenances and dependances. Hee shall receiue, manage, pay
and distribute the pensions, wages charges, and all kindes and natures of moneyes
brought in & imployed for charges, and maintaining the Order. And as occasion requi-

reth, he shall haue the keeping of the Church-Ornaments appertaining to the C... As also the Cloakes and Mantles of the Commanders, seruing for the Entry & C... remony of the Order. Which he shall stand bound to yeeld & deliuer to the C... manders, at the Chapters & Conuentions which are to be held. And after wa... receiue them again, and keep them very respectiuely, vntil some other such Cha...

For making the Collers of the Order.

54 It is his charge likewise, to cause the Collers to be made, which we shall ... to the Commanders; of what weight and fashion they are appointed, and w... time of their entertainment, hee is to present them to vs in the Church. And w... the death or depriuation of any one shall happen; it is his bounden duty, to re... taine them into his possession from the Heyres. And if any of them shall make ... fusall, or be ouer-tardy in sending or re-deliuering them into his hands at a time l... ted; a Commission shall be decreed at the Treasurers suite, and directed to such ... our Iudges and Officers, as the case requireth, to proceed in making seizure and ... of the best goods and moueables left by the deceased, so farre as to concurrence ... the Collers true valuation. And this payment shall bee preferred before all oth... debts, morgages or priuiledges whatsoeuer they be.

The Treasurers yearly account to bee giuen at generall Chapters.

55. The said high Treasurer must bee bound to render a good and faithfull ... count euery yeare at the Generall Chapters (and not elsewhere) of all receipts a... expences made and laid out of the Orders moneyes: which account shall be ... and examined by the Chancellour, and fiue Commanders of the Order, thereto ... puted at the Chapter. Wherein it is our further pleasure, that there shall bee assist... one of the Presidents of our Chamber of Accounts, or Exchequer at Paris, or the I... tendant of our Finances, or some such other of our Officers, as it shall please vs ... appoint. And all the accounts and fines agreed on, and signed by them; shall b... brought into the Treasury of the Orders Chartres: whereof a Copie is to bee de... uered into the hands of the High Treasurer, well and diligently examined, in p... sence of the Chancellour, Commanders, and him that (as hath beene said) shall b... by vs chosen and appointed. Which shall serue to him as a full discharge of ma... ging the said monies. And those fiue Commanders, Committees, as Auditours ... the same accounts, shall bee changed yearely, because they may not assist two yeare... together, in the reddition and locking them vp. And concerning the President ... Intendant, or other person; by vs chosen; hee shall haue foure hundred Crowns ... as yearely wages by vs, which shall bee paid to him by the high Treasurer, out ... those moneyes appointed to him for that purpose; with inioying the same Pri... ledges, Franchises, Immunities, and Exemptions, as the Cardinalls, Prelates, Co... manders, and Officers of the Order doe, whereof wee will send to him speedy Le... ters, signed by the Register of the Order.

A Booke for all Donatiues to the Order.

56 We will also, that the Treasurer shall stand bounden, to cause a Booke ... be made, containing all the Gifts, Legacies, Augmentations, and Liberalit... which shall be granted, made and giuen to the Order; as well by vs and o... Successours; as by the Cardinals, Prelates, and Commanders. Wherein sh... be written the Name, Sirname, and the Gift which euery one hath giuen: to t... end, that a perpetuall remembrance may remaine of the Benefactours, and pr... er made to God for them. The Treasurer, at his acceptation into the Order, sh... solemnely sweare, to obserue and keepe faithfully, all the matters before recount... without failing in any one of them.

The Register of the Order his stipend.

57 In like manner, there shall be an Officer of the Order, called *The Register of the Order*: who must make vowe of his Religion, and shall receiue fiue hundr... Crownes of the Sunne for his ordenarie Wages. He must stand bounden, to ha... two Bookes made of Parchment, in each whereof shall be set downe, the fou... tion of this Order, the Statutes, Causes, and Ordenances thereof. At the begi... ning of which Bookes, shall be liuely figured or painted a Historie, with re... sentation of the Soueraigne, his sitting in State with the Cardinals, Prela... Commanders and Officers, on the solemne day of the Ceremonie. Those Boo... shall be fastened with Chaines, in the Quire of the Church, where began the Fou... dation: but loket vp fast in a Chest, whereof the high Treasurer shall keepe the ... Key, and the other shall alwayes be brought and presented to the Soueraigne, ...

the Register of the Order, at the Chapters and Conuentions, as they are seuerally and yearely made; to haue his recourse to them for his own helpe and seruice, whensoeuer neede shall require.

Duties of seruice belonging to the Registers charge.

58 The said Register shall receiue, set downe in writing, and keepe a perfect Register well and faithfully, of all the Prouisions, Appointments, Conclusions and Ordenances, which shall be made at the Chapters. Hee shall make and signe all Commissions, Letters, Commands and Expeditions, which shall be needefull touching and concerning the said Order: declaring a *Nullitie*, and to be of no effect or value, all those which shall hereafter be signed by any other then himselfe. He is also to inhibite and forbid, the signing or expediting of any other, for what cause, or vpon what occasion soeuer they may be pretended: as being neuer purposed, concluded and appointed by the Soueraigne, sitting in the generall Chapter of the Order; whereof he is bound to keepe a certaine Register, which he must bring and present at euery Chapter.

Another Register Book for Informations, &c.

59 He shall keepe another Register also, apart by it selfe, for Informations, verball Answeres and Scedules, which are to be reported at the Chapters, of them that haue bin receiued into the Order: for rendering true testimonie of the prooues they haue made, of their Religion and Nobilitie, as also of the day of their entertainment. Hee is to Register likewise, such memories as shall be deliuered to him by the Prouost of the Order, as well of errors and delicts committed by the Commanders and Officers, to be read and reported to vs at the Chapters: As also of the decease of them, when any one shall happen. And hee shall promise and sweare at his entrance, to execute, keepe and performe all these seuerall things, without failing in any one of them.

The four chief Officers.

60 All these foure Officers, shall be Commanders; weare the Crosse vpon their vppermost Garments, and another of Gold about their neckes, as the other Commanders doe.

The Herauld or King of Armes of the Order.

61 Moreouer, there shall be in the Order another Officer, called an Herauld, King of Armes, *Of the Order of the Holy-Ghost*; who shall be chosen (hauing made proofe of his Catholique Religion) to be a man of good fame, and expert in such a charge as he is to vndergoe. He shall haue foure hundred Crownes of the Sunne for his ordenary stipend. *Portera vne croix d'Or de l'Ordre pendue au Col à deux petites Chainettes d'Or auec son Esmail.* He shall stand bound to keepe a Booke, wherein must be depicted to the life, the Armes, Crests and Supporters of all the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers, which shall be receiued into the Order. And vnder euery one of those Armes, shall be set downe in writing, their Names, Sirnames, Seigneuries and Qualities. And for the doing hereof, each of the said Cardinals, Prelates and Commanders, shall be obliged to giue him a Marke of money, at his reception.

62 When neede shall require, to make any Signification, Command or Denomination, to any one of the Commanders and Officers: the said Herauld must haue the charge thereof, and shall report to the Soueraigne (in full Chapter) the Answere which hath bin made vnto him; or whatsoeuer hee hath learned or vnderstood in his iourney, concerning the good, honor and seruice, of the Order of the *Holy-Ghost*.

The Gentleman Vsher of the Order.

63 Wee ordaine and appoint also, that there shall be an Vsher of the Order, who is to assist in the Ceremonie of the Order, and to beare a Mace vpon his shoulder, which is to be expressely made for seruice of the Order. Hee shall haue three hundred and twelue Crownes of the Sunne for his ordenarie wages; which shall be paid vnto him (in manner as to all the other Officers) by the high Treasurer. The said Vsher shall be chosen, making proofe of his Catholique Religion: and shall stand bound, to be present at all the Chapters to be held, for keeping the doore, and performance of whatsoeuer else shall depend vpon his Charge.

Election of Officers by the Soueraigne.

64 When the death of any of the said Officers shall happen, the Election of him that is to succeede, must be made by the Soueraigne. In whose presence he shall make his Vowes, and at his hand receiue the Habits and Crosse, according as the other Commanders. Except the Herauld and Vsher, who are to take their Oaths, and

and receiue their Chaines and Crosses, at the hand of the Chancellour, but in presence of the Soueraigne.

Of Pensions and Wages.

65 The pensions of the Cardinals, Prelates and Commanders, and Wages of the forenamed Officers, may not be pawned or morgaged, or seisure made on them for any occasion whatsoeuer: except it be to buy Armes and Horses. Moreouer, it must be done by permission, signed vnder the hand of the great Maister, and Sealed with the Seale of the Order.

66 It is our will and meaning, that the said Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order, shall hereafter stand exempted, from contributing to the *Ban*, and *Arriereban* of our Kingdome; and from paying to vs any Redemptions, Lots, Alienations, Quints and Requints, as well of Lands which they shall sell, as those which they shall buye and purchase, relying vpon vs. Except by occasion of Customes of our Kingdome, importing, that the buyer is bound to pay the fift Pennie in the price of selling the Fiefe, where something may be quarrelled or demanded, of the said Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order, and likewise of them that haue made the same acquisitions.

The Court of Requestsin the Pallace at *Paris*.

67 Moreouer we will, that the said Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order, hauing their causes committed to the Court of Requests, of our Pallace at *Paris*; may there haue and enioy all and semblable Priueledges, as doe our domesticke Officers and Seruants in ordenarie. Of which Priuiledges, we will cause our Letters and Declarations to be dispatched, for being made publique and Registred, as well in our Courts of Parliament, Chamber of Accounts, and Court of our Aydes; as euery where else, where it may appertaine, in regard of their seruice and esteeme.

68 Each one of the said Cardinals, Prelates & Commanders, as also the Officers, shall stand bound, to take Letters of prouision, sealed with the great Seale of the Order, and Signed by the Register thereof: to serue him as a testimonie, concerning the day of when he was associated into the Order.

Allowance of Acts made in the Chapters.

69 All Deliberations, Commands and Ordenances, which shall be made in the generall Chapters of the Order; can no way be auaileable, except they be made and approued, by aduise of two third parts of the Commanders, which shall be there assembled, accounting the Soueraignes voyce for two. And the said Chapters are not to be held; except there be eighteene Commanders present, beside the Officers.

Genealogies or Pedegrees for proofe of their Nobility.

70 And because in times to come, euery one may take knowledge truely, concerning the Nobilitie, Vertues and Merits, of all such as we shall call and associate into the said Order. We will, that euery one of the Commanders, after his admission into the Order; shall cause to be made in Parchment, a Tree of his Genealogie or descent, which he shall cause to be signed and verified, by them that shall be appointed as Committees, to testifie and report his prooues. Which certificate must containe the day, when they make their report in the Chapter, and how they haue seene and iustified the same, very exactly by their prooues. Commanding further, that the said Genealogie or Pedegree, shall be written and enrouled by the Register of the Order. And the Register likewise must certifie, how the Commanders and Commissaries haue made their report in our presence: that recourse may be made thereto (when occasion requireth) that it is a true Act, and whereto faith may be vndoubtedly giuen, for euer.

The certaine day of celebrating the Order in the Church.

71 Euery yeare, the Feast of the Order shall be celebrated the first day of Ianuarie, in the Church of the *Augustines*, in our good Citie of *Paris*; which is the place chosen and destenied by vs for the same effect. And if some publique affaires of our Kingdome, will not permit vs to be in our Citie of *Paris* on the same day: that the Feast is to be celebrated where soeuer we are, and in the most spacious Church neere adioyning. Where our will and pleasure is, that all the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers shall be present with their assistance; if they haue not other Command from vs to the contrary. Hereupon, and for this purpose, they are to come themselues in person (where soeuer we shall chance to be) two dayes before the Euen of the first day of the yeare, to giue their assistance in the Ceremonie Which

Which is to begin the Eeue of the said day, at Euensong; where the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers are to accompanie the Soueraigne of the Order, from his Pallace to the Church, in such manner as is here set downe.

In what manner the Soueraigne or great Maister, and his Knights of the Order of the Holy-Ghost, goe on the Day of Solemnitie to the Church.

72 FIrst, the *Gentleman-Vsher* goeth foremost.

The *Herauld* followeth next.

The *Prouost*, *High Treasurer* and *Register* goe together: but the *Prouost* in the midst betweene them.

After followeth the *Chancellour* alone.

Then come the *Commanders*, walking two and two together, according to their ranke, as shall be hereafter related.

After them followeth the *Soueraigne* or *Great Maister*.

Next to him follow the *Cardinals* and *Prelates* that are of the Order.

The *Great Maister* and *Commanders* are cloathed in long Cloakes, made of the same fashion that are worne on the day of Saint *Michael*; being of blacke Veluet, embrodered round about with Gold and Siluer. The embroderie consisteth of *Floures de Luces*, and Knots of Gold, betweene three sundry Ciphers of Siluer. And aboue the *Floures de Luces*, Knots and Floures of Gold; are thickly semed or powdered Flames of Fire, but made of Gold.

The great Cloake is garnished with a Mantelet of Cloath of Siluer, couered with embroderie, made after the same fashion as is the Great Cloake; reserued onely, that in stead of the Ciphers, are wrought faire Doues of Siluer.

The Cloakes and Mantles are double-lined with Sattin of Orange-tawnie color.

And they weare the Cloakes turnd vp on the left shoulder, the opening being on the right side; according to the patterne which we haue caused to be made.

They weare Doublets and Hose of White or Orange-colour; the fashion according to the discretion of the Commander: A blacke Hat, a white Plume.

Vpon the said Cloakes, are openly worne the great Collers of the Order, which were giuen to them at their first admission.

Concerning the Officers.

The *Chancellour* is habited in all respects like to the *Commanders*: yet he hath not the great Coller, but a Crosse onely embrodered before on his Cloake; and that of Gold hanging about his necke.

The *Prouost*, *High Treasurer* and *Register*, haue likewise Cloakes of blacke Veluet, and the Mantelet of Greene cloath of Siluer; but they are embrodered about with some Golden flames onely, wearing also the Crosse of Gold of the Order, and that of Gold about their neckes.

The *Herauld* and *Prouost* weare cloakes of blacke Sattin, and their Mantelets of Greene Veluet; embrodered with flames, like to the other Officers. Onely the *Herauld* weareth his *Esmail* hanging about his necke, and the *Vsher* a Crosse of the Order; but much lesse then the other Officers.

After returne from Euen-song, the Commanders and Officers may not faile to goe to Confession.

73 On the morrow in the morning, the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers, shall accompanie the Soueraigne againe, in the same Order and Garments as before, to the Church to heare Masse. At the Offering, We our selfe will offer as many Crownes of the Sunne, as We are yeares old. And each of the Commanders is to offer a Crowne of the Sunne; which at the instant we haue ordered, to be giuen for the nourishing and maintaining the Religious Nouices of the said *Augustines*. The Commanders shall goe together to the Offering, yet notwithstanding, one after another, according to their ranke and place. Masse being ended, the Commanders and Officers shall (in our presence) receiue the blessed Sacrament of our Lords body: exhorting the Cardinals, Bishops and Prelates, to communicate

cate alſo the ſame day, either before comming to the Ceremonie, or after, according as themſelues doe thinke fitteſt.

The Kings royall dinner to his Knights, &c.

74 After Maſſe, they are to reconduct the Great Maiſter home to his Pallace; where the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Chancellour of the Order, are to ſit downe, and dine at the Table, at the coſt and charge of the great Maiſter, in token of loue and amitie. At which Pallace, and in a place a part, ſhall be prepared a Table; where muſt dine the Prouoſt, High Treaſurer, Regiſter, Herauld and Vſher.

Their manner of going to Euen-ſong.

75 At the houre of Eeuening Prayer, the Soueraigne, Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers, in order as hath bin ſaid, wearing Cloakes and Mantelets of Blacke cloath (except the habite of the Soueraigne, which may be darke Scarlet, or ſad Murrie) vpon which Cloakes ſhall be alwayes the Croſſe of the Order wrought, as on the other. In this Church they are then to heare Euening Seruice for the deceaſed, and the next day in the morning, to heare Maſſe and Seruice: At the Offering in which Maſſe, the Soueraigne and Commanders ſhall offer (each of them) a Waxe Candle, weighing a pound of Waxe. And being at the Offering, the Regiſter ſhall report the names of ſuch Soueraignes, Cardinals, Prelates and Commanders, as are deceaſed of the Order, and ſince performance of the laſt Ceremonie: For whoſe ſoules, he that celebrateth the Maſſe, is to ſay (ouer and beſide the reſt) at the Offerings concluſion, a *De Profundis*, and a Prayer for the dead. At departing home from the Maſſe, they are all to dine at the Soueraignes charge againe, as the day before.

Mourning Seruice for them of the Order deceaſed.

76 Vpon theſe dayes, and in the ſaid Church, muſt be prepared Garlands or Chaplets of Floures, thickly ſet about with Waxe-lights; and in the middeſt of them, the Eſcutchons of Armes belonging to the deceaſed parties. Beneath, or rather ſomewhat behinde thoſe Garlands, ſhall be placed a Bench or Seate, couered with blacke cloath, whereon muſt be laid the Collers of the deceaſed Commanders. And behinde that Bench muſt be placed another, whereon are to ſit the Heires of the deceaſed, or thoſe that make repreſentation of them, cloathed in mourning, during the time of Seruice for the Deceaſed. Which being ended, the Collers are to be brought and preſented to vs; and (in our preſence) deliuered and receiued by the high Treaſurer.

A generall Chapter to be held after Dinner.

77 After Dinner, a generall Councell and Chapter is to be held of the Order, wherein we are to be aſſiſted by all the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers; but not any other, of what qualitie or degree ſoeuer they be. And before any thing ſhall be ſpoken, or called in queſtion; ſolemne Oath is to be giuen by Vs, and the Aſſiſtance, for not diſcouering or reueaſing to any perſon liuing, whatſoeuer ſhall be ſaid, treated and concluded in the ſaid Aſſembly; vpon paine to be depriued of the Order, and proclaimed for Traitours and infamous perſons. The Oath being made, which is preſently to be ſet downe by the Regiſter: then is to be propounded from the mouth of the Chancellour, all that he knoweth and thinketh meete to be deliuered, neceſſary for the honor, benefit, encreaſe and conſeruation of the ſaid Order.

For errors and offences committed by Commanders.

78 And if it be knowne, that any of the Commanders haue failed or forfeited in their Honor, or committed any Act vnworthy of their profeſſion, and contrary to their dutie: As, if he be attainted and conuinced of the crime of Hereſie, Treaſon, flight from Battaile in the Field, Sacriledge, Robberie, detention of goods Eccleſiaſticall, and other actions, vnfitting for Gentlemen, that make profeſſion of Honour and Vertue; and theſe to be auouched by good and ſufficient prooues. In this caſe we will, that he, or they ſhall be depriued and degraded of the Order, and aduiſe giuen in the Chapter, for correction and puniſhment of ſuch offences, according as the caſe ſhall require.

79 And to the end, that memorie may alwayes remaine, concerning the Election we haue made of the Church belonging to the Couent of the *Auguſtines*, in our good Citie of *Paris*, for celebrating there the Feaſts of the Ceremonie of the Order: We haue ordained and doe ordaine to the ſaid Religious Conuent, the ſum of three hundred thirtie three Crownes, a third part of yearely rent, whereof ſhall be

diſpatched and paſſed the contracts, for ſuch neceſſaries as are to be vſed. With charge alſo, that they ſhall be bound to ſay euery day in the yeare, two Maſſes; the one aloude, for the proſperitie and health of the Soueraigne, Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order; and the other ſtill and ſoft, for the dead. Whereof we will our great Almoner to haue eſpeciall care: to the end, that our intent may be fulfilled, and the Seruice performed as it ought to be.

For auoiding contention & querrel in their publique going.

80 Now, in regard that this Order of ours, is inſtituted to the honor of God, and of his bleſſed Spirit the *Holy-Ghoſt*, who euermore liketh and alloweth the humbleſt hearts: We ordaine, that in the Orders walking or going to Church, or otherwiſe, as alſo in their Seates; there ſhall not be any diſpute, or contention for ranke or place; but euery one to goe according to the Antiquitie of his receiuing into the Order, thus.

First our Sonnes and Brethren, and the Princes of our Blood.

Then, the Princes iſſued of our Soueraigne Houſe, which be Dukes.

Next, the Princes which are not Dukes.

And after them the Dukes, who are but Gentlemen, in keeping the Order and rancke: yet this attribution is granted to them, by creation of their Duchies or Dukedomes.

After them, the Commanders, according to their Antiquitie of receiuing into the Order.

Onely exception is made on behalfe of them, that haue bin choſen and elected by vs, for entring into this preſent Order, and from the firſt Inſtitution thereof: who ſhall keepe the Ranke of their receiuing into the *Order of S. Michael*, although they receiued the habite of this Order after the other.

Concerning ſuch Knights are of both the Orders.

81 It is our will and meaning, that the Commanders haue and hold (afterward) all places, ſuch Ranke, Seate, Authorities and Prerogatiues; as the Knights of the *Order of Saint Michael* ſhould haue. Declaring furthermore, that ſuch as are and ſhall be Knights of the *Order of Saint Michael*, and Commanders in that of the *Holy-Ghoſt*; ſhall precede them that haue but the *Order of Saint Michael* onely, becauſe they be honored with both together. Neuertheleſſe, this Article hath no further meaning, but for Lords and Gentlemen onely; who haue no other Ranke or ſedence, then that which they haue won by the Order.

Colour of the Croſſes to be worne.

82 All the Prelates, Commanders and Officers, ſhall alwayes weare their Croſſes of Yellow, or Orange coloured Veluet, wrought on the left ſide of their Cloakes, Robes and other Garments vp on high. We onely and our Succeſſors, ſhall weare it beneath on our garments, on the middeſt of the breſt, when it ſeemeth good to vs, and that aloft on the left ſide, of the ſame bigneſſe as the Commanders are. Thoſe Croſſes which are wrought on the Garments and Cloakes, becauſe they are Prelates, Commanders and Officers, ſhall alwayes be of Yellow, or Orenge-coloured Veluet: except in actions of Armes, where our permiſſion is, that ſuch Commanders and Officers as ſhall be preſent there; may weare them of Cloath of Siluer, or white Veluet, made in the forme of a Croſſe of *Malta*, in the midſt whereof ſhall be a Doue figured, in embroderie of Siluer, and at the corners, Beames and Flours de Luces of Siluer, of ſuch bigneſſe, and according to the portraict, which we haue cauſed to be made.

Croſſes formed according to them of *Malta*.

83 The Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers, ſhall likewiſe weare a Croſſe of the Order, faſtened about their neckes with a faire blew ſilke Riband: the Croſſe being made according to the forme of that of *Malta*, wholly of Gold, enammelled with White about the ſides; but the midſt without any enammelling. Within the angles or corners ſhall be a Floure de Luce, and in the midſt, ſuch as the Knights of the *Order of Saint Michael*; ſhall beare the noate of that Order on the one ſide, and on the other the figure of a Doue; which ſhall be worne on both ſides, by Cardinals, Prelates and them that be of the *Order of Saint Michael*.

84 For a marke or cogniſance of the Order, and the Commanders thereto belonging: We will giue to each Commander, a Coller of Gold, made with Floures de Luces, and three ſundry Ciphers, interlaced like knots, in the faſhion of the Cloakes

Cloakes embroderie. Which Coller ſhall alwayes containe the weight of three hundred Crownes of Gold, without enriching with Stones, or any other things. And the Commanders may not ſell, engage or alienate them, for any cauſe or neceſſitie, or in any manner whatſoeuer: but they muſt continue and appertaine to the ſaid Order. And the Heires of ſuch Commanders as ſhall deceaſe, muſt ſtand bound, to bring in, and deliuer them to the hands of the high Treaſurer of the Order, three moneths after the parties death, or later; in which caſe, the Treaſurer is to giue them a Receipt, for their diſcharge.

The Habites of the Order to remaine in the High Treaſurers keeping.

85 The Roabes and Garments of the Order, are to remaine in the cuſtodie of the high Treaſurer, for beſt and ſafeſt conſeruation of them. And if any of the Commanders ſhall happen to dye; the heires of him or them, may not pretend any right to the Garments: which are to remaine to the Order, for ſeruice of him that ſhall next ſucceede in the place. Who muſt ſtand bound, to pay to the Heires of the defunct, the monies appertaining to the firſt yeare of his Command, with the value of the great Cloake and Mantelet, if he be ſo pleaſed, the eſtimation being made by the Chancellour, calling to him the aſſiſtance and aduiſe of the Officers of the Order.

A due to the Treaſurer for the Auguſtines.

86 All the Cardinals, Prelates, and Commanders of the Order, muſt be engaged, at their entertainment into the Aſſociation; to pay and deliuer to the hands of the high Treaſurer, the ſumme of ten Crownes of Gold of the Sunne. Which ten Crownes we haue granted (inſtantly) as an Almes, belonging to the Conuent of the *Auguſtines*.

The Kings care for his Knights daily holy exerciſes.

86 And becauſe it is no more then reaſonable, that ſuch as principally doe dedicate themſelues to God, and couet to make it knowne by extriour ſignes; are more tyed to deuout prayers and ſpirituall exerciſes, then others: We exhort and entreate (ſo much as in vs lieth) that all them of the Order, ſhould giue their daily attendance in deuotion, at the holy Sacrifice of the Maſſe, if they haue the meanes and leiſure, and on the Feaſt dayes, at the Celebration of diuine Seruice. Albeit we know, that they are bound to ſay daily, their Roſarie Garland or Beades of Tennes, which ordenarily they carrie about them; and the *Houres of the Holy-Ghoſt*; with the Hymnes and Prayers contained in a Booke which we will giue them at their entertainement: Or elſe the ſeauen Penitentiall Pſalmes, with Prayers made vpon each of the Pſalmes, and the Letanie following the ordenarie Prayers, being all contained together in the ſame Booke. And which any one ſhall be found to faile in any of the forenamed duties; he ſhall be bound to giue a liberall Almes to the Poore.

Moreouer, we enioyne them, not to faile (twiſe euery yeare) to be confeſſed, by ſuch Fathers of the Church as are thereto authoriſed, and to receiue the bleſſed Body of our Lord Ieſus Chriſt; namely, on the firſt day of Ianuarie, and the Feaſt day of Pentecoaſt. Ordaining alſo, that on thoſe dayes, and all other, when (in deuotion) they ſhall communicate, at any place where themſelues thinke beſt: that during the time of Maſſe, and that of the Communion, they ſhall weare the Coller of the Order; vpon paine and penaltie, that ſuch as doe faile to Communicate on thoſe appointed dayes in the ſaid yeare, and ſo adorned, ſhall forfeit and looſe the reuennue of their Command, for that whole yeare.

For wilfull obſtinacie from the Cõmunion.

87 And if it ſhall ſo happen, that any of the ſaid Commanders & Officers, do perſeuere, and continue three yeares each after other, and not Communicate on the appointed dayes: In this caſe, the Croſſe and Habits of the Order ſhall be taken from them, and for ſuch wilfull obſtinacie, they ſhall likewiſe be depriued of the Order. But if any one doe faile but one of thoſe two appointed dayes in the yeare, diſtreſſe and reſtraint ſhall be made in the fruits of his Command, euen the fift part of his Annuall reuennue, which we giue and grant, as an immediate Almes to the ſaid *Auguſtines*. And therefore the Cardinals and Prelates are to be ſworne yearely at the Chapter, vpon their holy Orders, and the Commanders and Officers vpon the holy Euangeliſts; to receiue the Communion on thoſe two Feſtiuall dayes.

88 We, and the Cardinals ſhall vſe to weare the great Coller of the Order

on the foure Feſtiuall dayes, in the yeare, when we goe to heare Maſſe, in generall Proceſſions, and at other publique Acts, which are to be done in the Churches, and our entring into Cities of our Kingdome, wherein we hold a Court of Parliament: And likewiſe at all other times, when it ſhall be commanded by the Soueraigne of the Order. *For wearing the Great Coller of the Order.*

89 This Order being Inſtituted, for the defence of our Faith and Religion, as alſo of our perſon and Eſtate: All the Commanders ſhall ſtand obliged, to come and aſſiſte vs, at all times when they ſhall there to be commanded: accompanied and attended, according to their degrees and qualities; paying for all things in their paſſage willingly, and liberally, without iniuring or abuſing our people, on paine of being degraded and depriued of the Order. *For attendance on the Soueraigne.*

90 And this being a Companie or Societie, inſtituted for the honor of God; we command and enioyne you all, to vſe and exerciſe all Brotherly dilection and kindneſſe one towards another. We doe ordaine and enioyne our Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order, to treade vnderfoote (from hence forward) all enuie, hatred and rancour, which may be pretended one againſt another, either now, or at any time hereafter: liuing together alwayes in true, perfect amitie, concord and vnitie. Euen as we ſhall and will declare Our ſelfe, and on Our owne behalfe, louing to you all, in ſuſtaining, defending, honoring and gratifying your kindneſſes towards Vs: according as your qualities and vertues ſhall iuſtly merit, and anſwerable to the bond of Brotherhood, wherewith Wee haue honored you all.

Auoiding of contentions and quarrels.

91 And if any debate or contention, ſhall happen hereafter among our Commanders or Officers of the Order, whereof true appearance may ariſe, to doubt what thereof will enſue: We proteſt and promiſe, that the matter comming to our knowledge, we will immediately (by our Letters) prohibite all meanes and matter of fact, and the ſaid cauſe or quarrell ſhall be (by vs) heard and determined, with aduiſe of the fellow Brethren and Commanders neereſt about vs, ſo ſoone as poſſibly it may be done; where the parties ſhal be indifferently heard, what they can ſay each againſt the other. And they ſhall be bound (for the ſame purpoſe) to appeare, or Atturneyes for them, to obey ſuch end and order, as by vs & the ſaid Commanders ſhall be concluded. Euermore excepted, the right, and high Iuſtice of Ours, and the Authoritie and Prerogatiue Royall, of Vs, and of Our Succeſſors.

Intelligence of contentions.

92 We ordaine and appoint alſo to the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders & Officers: that if there happen to their knowledge, any quarrell, debate or contention, betweene two, or more Brethren of the Order; to aduertiſe Vs thereof with all diligence, to the end, that We may prouide for the euaſion.

93 Now, hauing thus eſtated and eſtabliſhed this Order, in thoſe things which we ſuppoſed moſt important & neceſſary: We hold it a matter hard and vneaſie for Vs, to facilitate all executions and expediences thereto appertaining, and which day by day (God enabling vs) experience will further tutour and enſtruct vs, what interpretion and addition ſhall be elſe required. In regard whereof, we reſerue to our Selfe, and to our Succeſſors, full power, of making and eſtabliſhing all Lawes, Statutes and Ordenances, which ſhall be thought facred and reaſonable, for their incorporating to the Booke of our Order. Prouided neuertheleſſe, that the ſaid Ordenances doe not alter, change or diminiſh in any thing, thoſe Articles by Vs already eſtabliſhed and ordained, and that they ſhall be read, publiſhed and Regiſtred in the generall Aſſemblies of the Order, as they are yearely made, and approued by two third parts of the Commanders, which ſhall be there preſent.

The Kings ſolemne proteſtation.

We promiſe for Vs, & our Succeſſors Kings of France, Heads, Soueraignes, Great Maiſters of the *Order of the Holy-Ghoſt*; To keepe and accompliſh (to our power) the ſaid Points, Articles, Ordenances and Conſtitutions, wholly, inuiolably, and always; According to the Vowe and Oath, which wee haue ſolemnely made and taken.

In Witneſſe whereof, and to the end, that it may be a matter firme and ſtable for euer: We haue Signed theſe preſents with our owne Hand, and haue affixed thereto our Seale.

Giuen at Paris *in the Moneth of December, the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred, seauentie and eight: And of our Reigne the Fift.*

Thus Signed: Henry.

And on the foulde in the bottome:

By the King; *De Neufuille.*

And beneath *Viſa.*

Sealed with the Great Seale of Greene Waxe, hanging at ſtrings of Silke Greene and Red.

The Commiſſion for Information, concerning the *Nobilitie of the Knight nominated.*

HEnry, by the Grace of God, King of *France* and of *Poland*, Chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maiſter of the *Order of the Holy-Ghoſt*: To our louing and faithfull and Commanders of our ſaid *Order of the Holy-Ghoſt*. As at our Chapter and aſſembly Generall, of Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order: Wee haue (for many good and great conſiderations) Elected, named, added, called and aſſociated into our ſaid Order, our louing and loyall

in being ſatisfied by him, concerning the prooues requiſite and neceſſarie to come from him or them, whom wee call to be ſo honored, as well in that which toucheth Religion, Age, Life and Mannners; as for the Nobilitie and Extraction of the houſe, from whence he is deſcended. We, for theſe cauſes, with the aduiſe of our Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers, being preſent at the ſaid Chapter; haue to you committed, ordained and deputed, doe commit, ordaine and deputte theſe perſons by theſe preſents, to viſite, ſee & examine very exactly and faithfully, the Contracts of Marriage or Partages, Teſtaments, Donations, Tranſactions, Auouchings, Catalogue of names, Hommages, or Extracts of Foundations, from the Father, Grand-father, and Great-Grandfather of you the ſaid

The which Contracts We doe appoint you to haue ſet downe written, within ſixe Moneths, beginning at the day and date of theſe preſents. Calling to you our Atturney or Aduocate, and Officers of the place, if neede doe ſo require: to be informed diligently by witneſſes and teſtemonies, choſen by your ſelfe, and by Authenticall Acts; whether the ſaid Lord

be a Gentleman of Name and Armes, and of three Paternall Races at the leaſt, or no. Alſo, whether the Sir-name, and the Armes which he beareth haue bin borne by his Father, Grand-father and Great-Grandfather, and what Lands and Seigneuries they were poſſeſſed, and tooke their titles of; and whether they be contained in the prooues by you exhibited for truth, or no. And moreouer, if hee haue not bin attainted and conuinced of caſes and crimes, contradictorie to Nobilitie.

All which, following and being according to the Statutes and Ordenances of our ſaid Order; We will that concerning the truth thereof, you make good and ample verball Anſwere of: which you ſhall ſend cloſe and faſt Sealed, with abſolute affirmation, vnder your Faith and Honor, as alſo all the Titles and Contracts which haue bin deliuered to your hands by the ſaid Lord

before the laſt day of Nouember next enſuing, ſending them to the hands of our moſt deare and faithfull Chancellour of our Order, to be preſented to vs open, and read in the next Aſſembly and Chapter which we ſhall hold, with our Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers, there to be aduiſed in the ſaid Aſſembly, whether we ſhall proceede to the receiuing of the ſaid Lord

or no.

And if he cannot recouer, or come by thoſe Originals of Titles, and Contracts before mentioned, and are expedient for them, which we call for entrance; & to make our Aſſociate in our ſaid Order: He muſt then reſort to you, & craue your aduiſe, concerning the neceſſity, of reexamining the ſaid Titles, Extracts and Enſtructions

our will and pleaſure then is, that you requeſt the aduiſe of ſome Lords and Gentlemen in thoſe Prouinces, where the Copie and Originals were firſt made: and in their preſence, as alſo our Aduocates and Officers in thoſe parts, and examination may be otherwiſe made, concerning thoſe Titles & Contracts, by teſtimony of the ſaid Lords and Gentlemen. Which to effect, we will direct our Letters of Commiſſion to them, ſealed with our Seale of the Order, as in ſuch caſes is neceſſarily required.

We further will and command you, that you make knowne to the ſaid Lord that he is to bring and exhibite before you, good and warrantable teſtemonies, of the Charges and Degrees, wherewith hee hath (before that inſtant time) bin honored, and atteſtations of the places; where hee hath ſerued in our Campes and Armies. Thoſe affirmations are to be ſigned by our Lieutenants Generals in thoſe Armies, vnder whom hee ſerued vs, if they be liuing: if not, by the chiefeſt Lords and Knights that were then preſent. Nor doe wee allow thoſe atteſtations to be by you receiued: except they be ſigned by foure, three or two of theſe chiefe Lords and Knights at the leaſt; to be likewiſe ſent with your Verball Anſwere, to the hands of our ſaid Chauncellour.

For the performance of all which, we haue giuen, and doe giue to you full Power, Might, Authoritie, Commiſſion and eſpecial Command by theſe preſents: Charging, willing and commanding all our Iuſtices, Officers and Subiects, to be obedient & aſſiſting to you in the doing hereof. And likewiſe to all our Vſhers and Sergeants, to make all Exploits and Commands, which herein ſhall be needefull; without making any difficultie, or demanding *Placet*, *Viſa*, or Iniunction. Becauſe, ſuch is our pleaſure.

Giuen at *Vnder the Seale of our Order.*

Signed

By the King, Chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maiſter, ſitting in the generall Aſſembly, with the Commanders of the Order of the Holy-Ghoſt. And Sealed with the Great Seale, and white Waxe vpon the Labell.

The Commiſſion to bee informed, concerning the Life, *Manners and Religion of the Knight nominated.*

HEnry, by the Grace of God, King of *France* and of *Poland*, Chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maiſter of the *Order of the Holy Ghoſt*. To our louing and loyall all and one of the Prelates and Commanders of our ſaid Order. Whereas by the Statutes and Ordenances of Our Order, it is expreſſly appointed, that there ſhall be diligent Information, concerning the Religion, life, Manners and Age, of ſuch as are by vs to be named, elected and choſen, for aſſociation in the ſaid Order, and by the Archbiſhop or Biſhop of the Dioceſſe, where he abideth, that is ſo choſen, and to be receiued into the ſaid Order; or elſe by his great Vicare. Wee, vpon theſe cauſes, by the aduiſe of the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order: haue committed, ordained and deputed you, doe depute, ordaine and commit you, to be diligently informed, and by witneſſes that ſhall be named to you; concerning the good Life, Manners, Age & Catholique Religion, of our louing and loyall Subiect.

And the ſaid Information being well and duely made, and certified vnder your ſeal; to ſend, betweene this and the ending of the Moneth of Nouember next, cloſe ſealed, and affirmed vpon your Faith and Honor; to the hands of our deare and loyall Chancellour of the Order. To be preſented to vs, and read at the next Chapter & Aſſembly, which ſhall be held for our Order, to the end, that it may ſerue, and be allowable in the receipt.

Which to accompliſh and performe, We giue & grant you full power, might, authority, cómiſſion & eſpeciall command by theſe preſents: willing & commanding alſo all our

our Iustices, Officers and Subiects, to be helpefull and obedient to you in the execution hereof: For such is our pleasure.

Giuen, at *Vnder the Seale of our Order.*

Signed, *By the King.* *Chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maister, sitting in the generall Assembly with the Commanders of the Order of the Holy-Ghost.* De l'Aubespine.

And sealed by the Great Seale of the said Order, with whitewaxe upon the plaine Label.

Enstructions for the Knight nominated, to be receiued into the Order and Militarie Discipline of the Holy-Ghost.

IT behoueth the Knight nominated, for receipt into the Order and Militarie discipline of the *Holy-Ghost*, to procure from *Monsieur de Verderonne*, Register of the said Order, two Commissions: both of them Signed by him, and afterward to be Sealed with the Seale of the Order.

Two Commissions from the Register.

One of those Commissions, must be directed to the Lord Bishop of the place, where the Knight was borne, or to the Bishop of the Prouince, where he maketh his abiding principally. The contents whereof must extend; that he is to haue Information, concerning the life, Manners and Catholique Religion of the said Lord Knight; or else from the Lord Great Almoner, who is Bishop of the Court: causing ten witnesses to be produced at the least, most of them Gentlemen, and the other, persons of qualitie, for making proofe of his receiuing the Communion.

Contents of the first.

The other Commission, is to be directed to two Knights of the *Order of the Holy-Ghost*, whereby they are commanded; to see the titles of the Lord Knight nominated, whereby he is to make proofe of his Name, and of his Armes, & of what Father he is the Son: who were his Grandfather, and Great-grandfather; what Armes they did beare, & whether they be answerable to those which the said Knight beareth or no; of what Lands they were possessed, and what titles they caried.

The second Commission.

Concerning those Titles; they are Contracts of Mariages, Partages, Testaments, Donations, Transactions with his Brethren, or other Heires; Auouchments, Catalogue of Names, Hommages, Reliefe of Fiefes, Foundations, and other titles of his Ancestors.

Import of the Titles.

And by those Titles, the Knight is to make proofe of his Nobilitie, and who were his Father, Grandfather and Great-grandfather, to hold by three Generations & Paternall Races; all these being most expedient and necessarie proues.

Proof of Nobilitie by three descents.

Whatsoeuer he can shew more, so much the more it is for his honor, but the foresaid proues of three Generations, are most requisite for him, and make all the rest the more honorable.

Likewise he is to procure Copies of Epitaphes, from the Graue-stones, Tombes and Monuments of his Ancestors, concerning their Coates of Armes; which are be had in Churches, Glasse windowes, Belts, Bauldricks, and other things: As also Castles, Mansions and Houses, which haue appertained to the parties Predecessours in times past, or at the present.

Epitaphes and Monuments.

He is also to make an Information, and Enquest of Office, concerning all the forenamed matters; before the Iudges, Bayliffes and Officers in the places of his Birth, and Houses whence he is descended.

Enquest of Office.

He must deliuer all those Informations, Titles and Enquests, into the hands of them or him; who hath the Office and charge of making Genealogies and Pedegrees, and who is also to make the said Knights.

The Office of Armes.

Moreouer, the Knight is to produce a Memoriall, concerning the places where he hath bin imployed in the Kings seruices, what charge he hath there borne, no man can better performe then himself. Which memorial is to be deliuered to them, or him that

A Memoriall of seruices

er draweth the said Pedegree or Genealogie; for further addition thereto, as shall e thought necessary.

The Certificate from the Commissaries, deputed and Authorized, for verifying the Nobilitie of the Knight nominated.

WEE, And Commissaries Deputed by Letters Patents from his Maiestie, Sealed with the Great Seale of the Order, for auouching and verifying the Titles of Nobilitie of c Lord doe certifie to all them to whom may appertaine: That by vertue of the said Commission, we haue seene, read, examined, and verified the Titles of Nobilitie of the said eing exhibited to vs, some in their Originals, and others in their true Copies, due- and authentically questioned and cleared, and coated on the Tree of Genealoie, which by them was ordered and prepared, and likewise to vs formally presend. And we haue found the Titles very auncient and warrantable, of the said Lord that he is a Gentleman of Name, and of rmes, by many Generations, and beareth the same Armes of his Auncestors. In ithfulwitnesse whereof, we haue directed this present Certificate, in forme of a eiball Answere: Which we haue signed with our hands, and thereunto affixed the eales of our Armes, the day and yeare aboue written.

Enstructions for those Knights, that are to receiue the Order of the Holy-Ghost.

THE Knight nominated, to receiue the *Order of the Holy-Ghost*, must make proofe: That he is a Gentleman of Name, and of Armes, by three Paternall Races at the least. And that the Sirname, and Armes which he beareth; as borne by his Father, Grand-father and Great-Grand-father. Also, of the Lands nd Seigneuries which he and they enioyed, & how they bore the titles of them.

The proofes of his Nobilitie, must be made by Contracts of Marriage, Partages r deuisions, Donations, Testaments, Transactions, Catalogue of names, Hommages, nd other Titles, which may proue the Affiliation or Adoption, & Prouidence of the ather, Grand-father and Great-grandfather, and by extracts of their Foundations, also the titles and qualities which they enioyed.

He must stand obliged, to exhibite the Originals of those Titles, to the hands of e Commissaries, which shal be deputed for the verifying of those prooues, six Moeths after he hath receiued aduertisement of his Election: or whether he can exibite the Originals, or examined Copies of them, according to the XXXV. rticle in the Statutes of the said Order, and answerable to the tenure of the Comission directed to the Commissaries. Also hee is to procure Extracts from the raue-stones, Tombes and Monnuments of his Ancestours: And cause to be made Information of the Blazon of Armes belonging to his Father, Grand-father and reat-Grandfather, as they bare them, to shew, whether he beareth the same, or o. Those Extractions he may haue from their Tombs, Glass-windows in Churches, Paintings within them and without them, and their Houses, together with other rmes of theirs, in Wood, Stone, or Painted places.

Which Information must be made by Iudges of those places, by request from e Chancellour, or his Attorney; and thereto must be called many witnesses, who e to certifie, how those Armes were carried by the Auncestors of the said Knight: nd he must likewise extract the Copie of the Inscriptions, on the Monuments of his Auncestours.

And because his entertainment may be the more honorable; he must cause a sumarie discourse to be made, concerning the charges and degrees wherewith hath bin honored, and those places where hee hath serued the Kings in their

Camps and Armies. Then to deliuer them to the hands of the Lord Chancellour of the Order, to make report thereof at the Chapter for the Order, which shall be held by the King, the day before the Ceremonie for receiuing the said Knight.

Concerning the Seale belonging to the Order of the Holy-Ghoſt.

OVt of Edicts, Statutes and Commiſſions, appertaining to the *Order of the Holy-Ghoſt*, it is to be ſeene, that the Seale of the Order was, and is of white Waxe; and not Yellow, Redde or Greene. In the Chanceries of France Yellow Waxe is vſed for all kindes of Letters: except, Charters, Priuiledges and Pardons, which are expedited and Sealed with Greene Waxe, on Strings of Silke Red and Greene. But on Good-Friday, after Noone, there is no Sealing in the Great or high Chancerie, except with Greene Waxe, for caſes held to be vnpardonable, and are tearmed Pardons of Mercy, which our Monarches on the ſaid day, haue vſed, and doe vſe, to prefer to rigour. Deriuing their Example from the King of Kings, & Lord of Lords, who (as on that day) was exalted vpon the Tree of the Croſſe, to redeeme vs from that death eternall, which we had moſt iuſtly deſerued.

How the Kings of the firſt and ſecond Ligne ſealed.

We haue heretofore declared, that our Kings of the firſt and ſecond Ligne, Sealed with White Waxe, hauing their Image engrauen on the Stampe in true proportion, ſitting on the Bench or Throane of Iuſtice. A Cuſtome put in practiſe by the Kings of the third Ligne; and perticulerly for Letters of importance, and ſuch as principally concerned their Honor and Sacred Maieſtie; and vſually Expeditions, Mandates and Commiſſions, for Orders of Knighthood, inſtituted by themſelues, as we haue already ſaid.

Sealing with white Waxe by priuiledges granted.

So that it was not permitted to a Prince, although he was of the Sacred Kingdome of France; to ſeale with white waxe, except he had Letters of Grant and Permiſſion from the King, and by an eſpeciall Priuiledge of honour. The Lords of *Albret* (into whoſe houſe the Crowne of France fell by lawfull ſucceſſion) by the Priuiledge which King *Charles*, ſixth of the name, granted them, of quartering Armes with *France*: had (by the ſame meanes) that of ſealing with white waxe. Priuiledges likewiſe granted to the Duke of *Millaine*, and Count *de Vertus*, by the ſame King *Charles*, dated the third day of *Ianuary*, *Anno*, one thouſand three hundred foureſcore and fourteene; and to *Nicholas de Ferrara*, by King *Charles*, ſeaueneth of the name, by his Letters bearing date the tenth of *May*, one thouſand, foure hundred, thirty two, and to *Pedro de Medicis* of *Florence*, by King *Lewis* the eleuenth, by his Letters dated in the Moneth of *May*, one thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and fiue.

None but the King and his eldeſt Sonne ſealed with white Waxe.

All theſe Princes, I ſay, hauing had the honour, to diaper their Armes with the ſacred Lillies of France; had Commiſſion alſo thereby, to ſeale with white waxe, which otherwiſe was not permitted but to the King, and to his eldeſt Son, apparant Succeſſor vnto the Crowne of *France*. For the other Princes of the Bloud, they had not any power to ſeale with white waxe; although they carried naturally the Flower-deluces, in their Armes. For example, we are inſtructed by the Regiſters of the Court, that King *Lewis* the eleuenth, (a Prince as troubleſome & hard to be indured, as euer was any) as an vnſpeakable fauour, permitted *Rene* King of *Sicilie*, and Duke of *Anion*, and his Heyres in the direct Line, to ſeale with white waxe, for the Kingdoms of *Ieruſalem* and *Sicilie*, and for the Dukedomes of *Aniou*, and other Siegneuries, as well in *France*, as elſewhere: by his Letters Patents, bearing date the eight and twentieth day of the Moneth of *Ianuary*, one thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and eight; and other Letters of expreſſe command at the Parliament of *Paris*, (which had refuſed to auouch and admit the former) dated in the Moneth of *May*, one thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and nine.

The deſcription of the Great Seale of the Order.

The Great Seale belonging to the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, is of the ſame greatneſſe as that appertaining to the High Chancerie of *France*; but of a different impreſſion and figure. For that of the Order, inſtituted by the late King *Henry* (of bleſſed memory)

memorie) his Maieſtie is thereon preſented in perſon, ſitting in his Chaire of ate, hauing on his right hand the Chancellour of the Order, *Meſſire Philippe ault, Counte de Cheuerny*, holding the Booke of the Holy Euangeliſts: On his ft hand the Regiſter of the ſaid Order, *Meſſire Claude de l'Aubeſpine*, ſtanding bright likewiſe, and reading the Oath which the Commanders ought to take. n his knees, and before his Maieſtie, kneeleth *Frances de Bourbon*, Prince of *Contey*, Prince of the Blood, receiued as firſt Commander of the Order, holding his hand the holy Euangeliſts. All theſe Portraitures are there figured to the life, and e Perſonages cloathed with their Cloakes, Mantelets and Collers of the Order, reſcribed by the Statutes thereto belonging. Aloft, and on the toppe of the eale, out of a luminous and bright ſhining Heauen, appeareth the repreſentati- n of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, in the forme of a Doue or white Pidgeon, deſcending on the King. All the vpper part elſe of the Seale, is cirkled with radiant ames of the Sunne, thickely powdred with Tongues of flames of Fire. And ound about the Circkle of the Seale, theſe words are engrauen as the Le- end.

Henry, third of that name, by the grace of God, King of France, and of Poland: Authour, Chiefe and Soueraigne of the Order of the Knights of the Holy-Ghoſt.

The contrary ſide of the Seale.

Now, as concerning the Counter-Seale, it is an Eſcutcheon or Shield, charged ith three Floures de Luces, Cantonned with foure Flames, as is on the Great Col- r of the Order. The Eſcutcheon is held and ſupported by two Angels, after the onted manner. Aboue on the Shield, inſtead of a Crowne, is a Doue deſcen- ing, circkled (as all the reſt of the Shield is) with golden Sun-beames, intermingled ith Flames of Fire. And becauſe the great Table, which hung in the *Auguſtines* f *Paris* (taken thence by the Authors of the mad and furious League, to deface the emorie of good King *Henry* the third) had the ſame repreſentation, as is contained n the great Seale of the Order: Here you may behold the true figure thereof.

The

The Order of Christian Charitie, Instituted by the same Most-Christian King of France and of Poland *Henry*, the Third.

CHAP. VIII.

The Order of Christian Charitie.



L'Ordre de la Charité Chrestienne.

THE same King *Henry*, of happie memorie, was the Institutour of another Order, tearmed of *Christian Charitie*; for the maintenance of poore Captaines and Souldiours, maimed of their Limbes in Warre. To whom hee assigned Rents and Reuennues, for their Diet and Garments, from the Spittle-Houses and Hospitales of France. And for their lodging, a House very sufficient, scituated in *La Rue des Cordeliers Sainct Marcel lez Paris*, called *The House of Christian Charitie.*

The Habite appointed for the Order.

He ordained, that such as were to be receiued into this Charitable Order, should weare vpon the left side of their Cloaks, an Anchored Crosse, embrodered on white Sattin or Taffata, with an *Orle* and *Bordure* of blew Silke. *Au mitan de ladite Croix y ha l'Escusson de Satin Bleu Celeste chargee d'vne Fleur de Lys d'Or en broderie.* This Crosse was cinkled, to expresse the kinde of the Order, with a Legend containing these words, embrodered with Letters of Gold; *For hauing serued faithfully.* But King

Pour auoir bien deseruy.

King *Henry* the third, could not perfect his intent according to his desire, being hindered by the bloudy factions of the disordered League: Wherefore King *Henry* the Great (of eternall memory) fourth of the name, and his Successor in the Kingdome, in singular loue to the deceased, and pietie to the world, endeuoured to bring it to the point of perfection. And performed it in such sort, that, in times to come, men of martiall Profession, shall haue meanes for their contentment, and to finish the remainder of their liues in quietnes. Hauing by an Edict set downe to the Kings his Successors, for establishment of a Chamber of Iustice, at the Monastery of Saint *Iean de la Bretonnerie a Paris.* This Chamber is composed of the Constable, Marshals and Colonels of *France*, with the number of ancient Knights of the Order, Maisters of Requests, and Substitutes to the Attourney Generall, to iudge without any further appeale.

Establishment of the Order.

Returne wee now againe to the Order of the *Holy-Ghost.*

In the Statutes of the Order of the *Holy-Ghost*, the seauentie and ninth Article, it is set downe, that to preserue alwaies the memory, for electing the Conuent of the *Augustines*, in the good Citie of *Paris*, there to celebrate the Festiuals of the Ceremonie of the Order; the King appointed to the said religious Brethren, the summe of three hundred thirty three Crownes, a third part of Rent euery yeare. Whereupon, Contracts should bee dispatched for the necessaries, with charge, that they must be bound to say euery day in the yeare two Masses; one aloud, for the prosperity and health of the Soueraigne, Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order; and the other softly and stilly, for the deceased. Hereof the great Almoner to take charge, to the end, that the intention of the Founder may be followed, and the said Seruice performed and celebrated as it ought to be.

A remembrance of the 79. Article.

In the execution of this Article, the Reuered Father in God, *Messire Iacques Amiot*, Bishop of *Auxerre*, Great Almoner of *France*, (to whose learned labours we are to giue due honour, for conuerting the workes of *Plutarth* (so sprightly) into our actiue *French* Language, and as exactly to be read as in *Plutarch* himselfe. And before made another Maister-piece of Art, which neuer will perish, mounting so high a flight, as the traduction of that admirable Romant, composed in Greeke by a Bishop named *Heliodorus*, reporting the chaste and modest Loues of *Theagines* and *Cariclea*) made a Contract with the Religious men, the Prior and Conuent of the *Augustines* of *Paris*. And the Lord *Amiot*, by vertue of the Procuration or Letter of Attourney passed to him (before two Notaries *Du Chastelet de Paris*) by the late deceased King *Henry*, third of that name, as also the *Augustines* assembled in their Chapter and Dispetorie, for the two Masses appointed to be said each day in the yeare; to bee payd the summe of three hundred thirty three Crownes, and one third part of a Crowne of the Sunne euery yeare; without comprehending the Rights, for entrance of the Knights of the said Order, Offerings and waxe-Lights, as well for the Knights deceased, as the sollemne Feast-dayes of the Order. This Contract was in the Moneth of *December*, *Anno*, one thousand, fiue hundred, threescore and eighteene.

Hee that traduced *Plutarch* out of Greeke into French, and *Heliodorus.*

According to which Contract, the *Augustines* haue since the third day of *Ianuary*, the thousand, fiue hundred, threescore and nineteene; continued to this day, saying and celebrating dayly, an high Masse of the *Holy-Ghost*, called, *The Kings Masse*, at the high Altar; and at the ninth houre in the morning: And the lower Masse, for the Kings, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order, at the tenth houre precisely.

In elder dayes, the low Masse was said at the Altar of Saint *Augustine*, in the body of the Church, as wee behold written in a small Table fastened to the place where the Gospell was read in the said Chappell, containing these words.

In this Chappell is said and celebrated euery day in the yeare a low Masse, at ten of the clocke in the morning: founded to perpetuity, in honour of the Order and Military discipline of the Holy-Ghost; created and instituted by the most Christian King of France, and of Poland, Henry third of that name, Chiefe Soueraigne, Great Maister, and first Founder of the said Order: To pray for the Soules of the deceased Kings, Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order.

The Contents of the Table.

But within some few yeares afterward, the said low Masse was said and celebrated

ted in the Chappell Royall, belonging to the Order of the *Holy-Ghost*, placed in the
The Armes of *Philip de Commines*. right wing of the Quire, behind that of our French *Saluſt*, *Meſſire Philip de Comines*
Lord of *Argenton*, (of whom and of his Wife is to bee ſeene the Figures on their
knees, vpon the Monument, and that of his Daughter, wife to the Count *de Penthyeure*, in the ſaid Royall Chappell, againſt the incloſure of the Quire. The ſaid Phi-
lip *de Comines Portoit de Gueules au Cheuron d'Or et trois Coquilles d'Argent.*) which
Three goodly Tables. Chappell is richly fretted and gilded with Doues, and the Croſſe of the Order. On
the Goſpel-ſide are three great Tables, in the firſt whereof is the repreſentation ac-
cording to life, of good King *Henry* the Third, of bleſſed memory, Author and
Founder of the Order. In the ſecond, the figure of King *Henry* the Great. And in
the laſt, that of our preſent King, *Lewes Auguſtus*, Thirteenth of that name.

The beautifying of the Chappel. Vpon the Altar is a faire Table, containing the Baptiſme of our Sauiour and Re-
deemer Ieſus Chriſt, by Saint *Iohn Baptiſt*, and the *Holy-Ghoſt* deſcending on him in
the forme of a Doue. Aboue that Table on the frontiſpice, is exalted another Ta-
ble, of the height and wideneſſe of the Chappell, and very curiouſly painted, con-
taining the deſcent of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, vpon the Apoſtles and Diſciples, on the day
of *Pentecoſte*, and in fiery Tongues. On the two ſides of this Table, are the repre-
ſentations (on their knees) of the two Chancellours of the Order, very liuely figured.
On the Goſpell-ſide is that of *Meſſire Philippe Hurault*, Count *de Cheuerny*, firſt
The Chancellors Article reformed by the King. Chancellour of the Order, attired in the Cloake belonging thereto, and on the
Mantlet, the Great Order of Commander (For the late King *Henry*, Third of the
name, reformed the Article concerning the Chancellour of the Order, permitting
him and the Chancellours his Succeſſors, to weare the Great Coller of the Order.)
Before him are his Armes, *D'or a la Croix d'Azur, Cantonee de quatre Soleils de Gueules.*
On the Epiſtle ſide, is that of *Meſſire Guillaume de l'Aubeſpine, Baron de Chaſteauneuf*,
Second Chancellour of the Order. Who bare *D'Azur au Saultoir pery d'or Canto-
nee de quatre Billettes, de meſme, Eſcartele de Gueules a Trois Roſes d'Argent.*

On the Doore of the ſaid Chappell Royall, in a Table of Marble, is this In-
ſcription.

The Inſcription on the marble Table. *En ceſte Chappelle, ſe celebre la Meſſe pour le Roy, et les Cheualiers, et Commandeurs de
l'Ordre du Saint Eſprit, fonde par Henry Troiſieſme du Nom, Roy de France, et de Pologne
l'an Mil Cinq Cents Soixante et Dix neuf.*

*In this Chappell is celebrated Maſſe for the King, and the Knights and Commanders of
the Order of the Holy-Ghoſt; founded by Henry, Third of that name, King of France and of
Poland; in the yeare, one thouſand, fiue hundred, threeſcore and nineteene.*

High Maſſe is daily celebrated at nine of the clocke in the morning, at the high-
Altar, wholly new made and enriched with foure Colombs of blacke marble, and
ſixe goodly Angels of Braſſe: the Table hanging thereon, containeth the adoration
of the three Kings. This high Altar is adorned on the day of Pentecoſte, and ſo-
lemne Feſtiuals of the Order, with a Cloth of State, Coapes, Chaſubles & Tuniques
of Cloth of Siluer, the ground greene, powdered with flames of Gold in embroyde-
rie, hardly any place wanting or voyd, with diuers Figures, expreſſing the miſteries
of our Redemption, and the Armes of the King that was the Founder, in moſt ex-
cellent imbroderie, not to be equalled. The ſaid Ornaments, Coapes, Chaſubles
and Tuniques are lined with Orange colour Taffata; And the Chappell beautified
with veſſels of Gold and Siluer, of moſt ineſtimable value, and truely worth the
Greatneſſe of a King of *France*, eſpecially King *Henry*, Third of the name, Great in
all his actions, and the moſt bountifull Prince of his time.

The Kings intent for inſtituting another new Order of Knighthood. This Great Prince was once minded, to inſtitute a new Order of Knight-hood,
farre beyond all them that had carried renowne, through all the Kingdomes on the
Earth. His Fauorites counſelled him, that as he was the Phœnix of all Kings in the
world: euen ſo he ſhould take that Bird, (the onely creature of his kinde, and with-
out any Paragon) for the ſubiect of his new Order. But this Prince, reiecting ſuch
A Kingly Anſwere. counſel, ſauouring of nothing but flattery, returned them this Anſwer. *That he had no
other* Phœnix *but the Holy-Ghoſt, for whoſe aſſiſtance hee humbly prayed daily, to be his
director and guide in all his actions.*

And yet there was ſome apparance, that hee did not altogether diſtaſt their
opinion;

ion; becauſe the *Phœnix* is the King of Birds, and the only wonder of the
rld.

The generall opinion of the *Phœnix*. All our Ancients tooke knowledge thereof, Poets, Hiſtorians and Naturaliſts of
t note; *Ouid*, in the fifteenth Booke of his Metamorphoſis, ſaith.

Vna eſt, quæ reparet ſeque-ipſa reſeminet Ales:
Aſſyrii Phœnica *vocant: nec fruge, nec herbis,*
Sed Thuris lachrymis, & ſucco viuit Amomi.
Hæc vbi quinque ſua compleuit ſæcula vitæ
Illicus in ramis, tremulæque cacumine Palmæ,
Vnguibus, & duro nidum ſibi conſtruit ore.
Quo ſimul ac Caſias, & Nardi lenis ariſtas
Quaſſaque cum fuluâ ſubſtrauit Cinnama Mirrhâ,
Se ſuper imponit, finitque in odoribus æuum.
Inde ferunt totidem, qui viuere debeat annos
Corpore de patrio paruum Phœnica *renaſci.*
Cum dedit huic ætas vires, onerique ferendo eſt,
Ponderibus nidi ramos leuat arboris altæ
Fertque Pius, cunaſque ſuas, Patrium Sepulchrum,
Perque leues auras Hyperionis Vrbe potitus,
Ante fores ſacras Hyperionis æde reponit.

There is one Bird that euermore, doth new it ſelfe beget,
By the Aſſyrians to this Foule, the Phœnix *name is ſet.*
Like other Birds, not Corne or Herbes, this Phœnix *liueth by;*
But the ſweet iuyce of Frankinſence, and Gum of Amony.
When of his liefe fiue hundred yeares, are well neere ſpent and gone,
The Holme-tree or the Palme-tree then he gladly mounteth on.
Where with his Tallants and his Beake, he builds himſelfe a Neſt,
Beſtrewing it with Caſſia *ſweet, and* Nardus *of the beſt,*
Myrrhe, Gummes and Cinamon, with other Odours elſe,
As if it were a Bridall Bed, compos'd of pureſt ſmelles.
Then ſits he downe vpon his Neſt, and in thoſe ſpices dies,
And of his Fathers Corps (men ſay) doth very ſoone ariſe
A faire young Phœnix, *which muſt liue as many yeares againe*
As did his Sire. But when he doth both age and ſtrength obtaine,
Fit for the loade, the heauy Neſt he beareth from the Tree,
(His Fathers Graue, his Cradle-Nurſe, Labours of Pietie)
And ſo he flieth through the Ayre to bright Hyperions Towne,
And fore Hyperions Temple Gate, he ſets his burthen downe.

Hyperiad, the Greeke name of the Sunne. Poets doe vnderſtand the Sunne, by the Greeke name *Hyperion*, to whom they
crificed the ſwifteſt-running Horſes, as wee haue heretofore declared. And that
hich they termed the Towne or City of the Sunne, is the very ſame which anci-
nt Geographers vſually called *Peluſium*, where *Nilus* empt ieth it ſelfe into the Me-
diterranean Sea. It hath beene ſince then (as now at this day it is) called *Damieta* in
Egypt, on the bankes of *Nile*, anciently called *Heliopolis, Ciuitas Solis*. And it is the
more remarkable, by the ſurprizall which our King S. *Lewes* made of it, at his firſt
Voyage ouer the Seas: moſt exactly deſcribed by *Iohn*, Lord of *Ioinuille*, Steward
of *Champaigne*, in his learned Hiſtory.

A Towne on the edges of *Egypt*.

At what time the *Phœnix* was ſeene in *Egypt*. This Bird was ſeene in the ſame City of *Egypt* at the time of the Emperour *Tibe-
rius* (vnder whoſe Raigne, the *Phœnix* of the world, our Sauiour and Redeemer
ſuffered death and Paſſion, to bring vs to the hauen of eternall Life) In the yeare of
the Foundation of *Rome*, ſeauen hundred foureſcore and ſeauen, as it is obſerued by
the noble Hiſtorian of *Rome*, *Cornelius Tacitus*, in the ſixt Booke of his Annals, and
his Text, well worthy to be regarded.

Cornel. Tacit. in Annal. lib. 6 *Paulo Fabio, L. Vitellio Coſſ. poſt longum Seculorum ambitum* Auis Phœnix, *in*
Egyp-

Egyptum venit *præbuit quæ materiam doctissimis indigenarum, & Græcorum, quibus* eo miraculo differendi; de quibus congruunt ; & plura ambigua, sed cognita non *proponere libet.* Sacrum Soli Animal, *& ore, ac distinctu pennarum à ceteris auibus* uersum, consentiunt, qui formam eius definiere. De numero Annorum *varia tra*tur, maximè vulgatum, Quingentorum *spatium Sunt qui adseuerent* Mille Quin gentos Sexaginta vnum *interstitij, prioresque Alites Sesostride primùm, post* side dominantibus, de in Ptolomæo, qui ex Macedonibus tertius regnauit; in Ciuitate cui Heliopolis *nomen, aduolauisse, multo ceterarum volucrum comitatu, nouam faciem* rantum. *Sed Antiquitas quidem obscura. Inter Ptolomæum, ac Tiberium minus* Ducenti quinquaginta Anni Fluxerunt: *Vnde nonnulli falsum hunc* Phœnicem, *neque de* bum è terris credidere, nihilque usurpauisse ex his, quæ vetus memoria firmauit. Cæ quippe annorum numero, *vbi mors propinquet, suis in terris struere nidum, eique vim* nitalem adfundere: ex quâ fœtum oriri, *& primam adulto curam sepeliendi Patris.* Nec id temerè, *sed sublato Murhæ pondere, tentatoque per longum iter, vbi par oneri, par* tui sit, *subire patrium corpus, interque* Solis Aram *perferre, atque adolere.* Hæc incerta, *& fabulosis aucta.* Ceterum. Adspici. Aliquando. In. Ægypto. Eam. Volucrem. Non. Ambigitur.

At such time as *Paulus Fabius*, and *Lucius Vitellius* were Consuls, after the passage of diuers Ages, the Bird named the *Phoenix* came into *Egypt*, and gaue occasion of much matter to the most learned men of that Countrey, as also to the *Grecians*, for discussing many things concerning this miracle. Whereof I finde it not much amisse, that I should set downe some particularities of their agreement, with others questionably doubtfull, yet (neuertheless) deseruing to bee all knowne. That the Bird is consecrated to the Sunne, and varieth in the forme of his Beake, being different also in his Feathers from other Fowles; all they doe consent, that haue made description of his forme and proportion: but concerning the multiplicity and number of his yeares, they are variable in their reports. The vulgar coniecture affirmeth, that hee liueth fiue hundred yeares, whereas some other doe hold, that hee liueth one thousand, foure hundred, threescore and one yeare. The first of these Birdes flew to the Citie, called *Heliopolis*, and a great number of other Fowles with him, as admiring or wondring at his new-kinde of shape, in the time of *Sesostris*. After that in the Raigne of *Amasis* and *Ptolomie*, who was the third King of the *Macedonians*, gouerning *Egypt*. But Antiquity is obscure and darke, for betweene the Raignes of *Ptolomie* and *Tiberius*, were scarcely two hundred and fifty yeares. In which regard, some haue imagined, that this was no true *Phoenix*, neither euer came from the Countrey of *Arabia*, or had any part of that which Antiquity hath attributed, yea, and confirmed to remaine in that kinde. For hauing well neere perfitted the number of his yeares, and his end neere approching, he buildeth a Nest in his Countrey, & throweth therein the seed of generation, out of which a young one doth spring or arise. Whose first care and prouidence is (being growne to ripenes) to bury the old. Yet not rash or vnaduisedly, but taking vp a quantity in weight of the stone *Murha*, & making tryall of carrying it in a long iourney: when he findeth himselfe able to holde out, & beare so heauie a burthen, fit for accomplishing the iourney; he taketh vp his Fathers Body, and beareth it to the *Altar of the Sunne*, where hee doth burne and sacrifice it. These things may be vncertaine, and fabulously enlarged. But concerning that which is sometimes seene in *Egypt*, it is not to be doubted.

A Stone of diuers colours yet cleare as Christall, bearing purple & white spottes.

Plin. in Hist. Nat. Lib. 10.

The Naturalist *Plinie*, in the tenth Booke and second Chapter of his naturall History, saith; *Ethiopes atque Indi discolores maximè, & inenarrabiles ferunt Aues, & ante omnes* Nobilem Arabia Phœnicem. *Haud scio an fabulosè*, vnum in toto Orbe, *visum mirabiliter.* Aquile *narratur magnitudinem, Auri fulgore circa colla, cetera Purpureus, Coerulam Roseis caudam pennis distinguentibus, faciem, caputque plumeo apice cristatum. De eo prodidit Manilius extitisse neminem quæ vescentem viderit.* Sacrum in Arabia Soli esse. *Viuere annis* DCLX. *Senescentem Cassia, Thuriisque seruulis construere nidum, ipsum replere odoribus, & super emori. Ex ossibus deinde, & medullis eius nasci primò* Vermiculum, *inde fieri* Pullum; *Principioque instar funeris priori rite dare, & totum deferre nidum prope Panchaiam in Solis Vrbem, & in ara ibi deponere.*

Very

Ethiopia *and the* Indiaes *doe yeelde and produce vnspeakeable Foules and Birds, of strange colours, and aboue all the rest,* The Noble Arabian Phœnix. *Nor know whether it be fabulous, or no,* That the whole World containeth but onely one of *them, nor is he vsually, or oftentimes seene. It resembleth the Eagle in greatnesse: A golden radiance cirkleth round his necke, all his body else of Purple colour: yet his traine is distinguished by Rosie-hewde Feathers; his face and head thickened with a plumie crest.* Maninilus *auouch not, that the aldest men liuing haue seene of them.* In Arabia He is Sacred to the Sunne, and there to be liuing sixe hundred and threescore yeares. *Being old, with Cassia, Frankinsence and other Perfumes, he buildeth him a Nest, which when he hath filled with those sweete Odours, Hee dieth vpon them. First of his bones and marrow a Worme is bred, which soone after groweth to be a young one. Last Hee is in furnishing his Procreators Funerals, conueighing his whole Nest neere to the Citie of the Sunne in Panchaya: And there he leaueth it vpon the Altar.*

Petrus Belonius of *Mans*, in the end of his tenth Booke of the Nature of Birds, speaketh wonders of the *Phoenix*.

Our *French Lucretius Du Bartas*, hath exactly well translated into our Language, all which the fore-alleadged Authors haue written in theirs. In the fift Day of his first Weeke.

Le Coeleste Phœnix *commença son ouurage*
Parle Phœnix *Terrestre, ornant d'vn tel plumage*
Ses membres reuiuants, que l'annuel flambeau
De Cairan, iusques en Fez ne void rien de plus beau.
Il fit briller ses yeux, il luy planta pour creste
Vn astre flamboyant au sommet de sa teste:
Il couurit son col d'Or, d'Escarlate son dos,
Et sa queue d'Azur, puis voulut qu'Atropos
Luy seruist de Venus, & qu'vne Mort feconde
Rendist son aage égal au long aage du Monde.
Car ayant veu glisser dessous vn Ciel diuers
Et cent fois dix Estez, & cent fois dix Hyuers
Des Siecles abatu, il luy prend vne enuie
De laisser en depost à la flamme sa Vie,
De mourir pour renaistre, & d'entrer au Tombeau,
Pour apres en sortir cent mille fois plus beau.
Lors perché sur les bras d'vne Palme il entasse
Le Baume sur le Nard dessus la Casse:
Et sur le poinct du iour de leurs branches, bastit
Son Vrne, son Berceau, son Sepulcre, son Nid,
Cependant qu'il attend qu'vne flammeche esprise
A l'odorant buscher ses os sacrez reduise
En genitale poudre, & que ces bois ardans
Finissent non sa Vie, ains ses caduques Ans.
L'Eschanson Phrygien d'vne prodigue aiguiere
Ne verse sur les Champs Riuiere apres Riuiere
Les froidureux Trions ne couurent de verglas
Les Bois Phœniciens, l'Autan ne daigne pas
Passer le bord Lybique, & l'Antre Hyperboree
Retient dans ses prisons captif le froid Boree
Car adonc la Nature encontre tout effort,
Soigneuse tient la main à sa viuante Mort,
Ses funebres apprests, sa Naissance, ses Couches.
Mesmes le clair Soleil sur son lict doux-flairant
Iette vn de ses Cheueux, qui tout soudain s'esprend
Aux rameaux de Sabee, & peu à peu consume
De l'Immortel Phœnix *& la Chair, & la Plume.*

Presqu'en mesme moment de ce cendreux, monceau
Naist vn Ver, puis vn Oeuf, & puis vn autre Oyseau:
Ainçois le mesme Oyseau, qui nay de sa semence
Deux cents Lustres nouue aux trespassant recommence,
Au milieu du brasier sa belle Ame reprend,
Infiny par sa fin dans la tombe se rend,
De soy-mesme se fait par vne Mort prospere,
Nourrice, Nourrisson, Hoir, Fils, & Pere, & Mere:
Nous monstrant qu'il nous faut, & de Corps, & d'Esprit
Mourir tous en Adam, *puis pour renaistre en* Christ.

The Heauen-borne Phœnix *did begin to frame*
Our Earthly-Phœnix, *and so plumde the same*
With such reuiuing members, that the Sunnes *eye*
(From Cayre *to* Fez*) no fairer thing can spye.*
For Forme, for Feathers, Fate and all beside:
Nature *n'ere shapt a worke of Statelier pride.*
Eyes sparkling Fire, and planted on his Creſt
A flaming Starre, to grace his Head the beſt.
His necke is couered with bright glittering Gold;
Scarlet his backe, his traine doth Azure fold.
Instead of Venus *ioyes,* Death *is his doome;*
And for his Bride-Bed fits him with a Tombe.
Yet fruitfull is his death, and makes his Age
Equall in length to the worlds Pilgrimage.
For, hauing wandred thorow diuers Climes,
A thousand Winters, and as many Primes;
O'respent with yeares, and earneſt in deſire,
To end his life in sparkling flames of fire,
(Yet to reuiue againe) enters his Graue,
A fairer State an hundred times to haue.
Pearcht on the Palme, *his Pile is there prepar'd*
Of Balme, Myrrhe, Caſſia, *precious* Nard.
By Day-breake builds he on the branches high;
His Vrne, *Neſt, Cradle and his Tombe to dye.*
There he awaites some little sparkling Spriſe
To fire this perfumde Pile, and Sacrifice.
His holy bones into such seeding Cenders;
As (for old Age) yong Life to him surrenders.
The Phrygian Fill-Cup, *with his* Ewer of Showres,
Forbeares the Fields, and none vpon them powres.
The friezing Trions couer not with Froſt
[a] Phœniciæ *Forreſts. The* South-Winde *lies as loſt,*
Not daring to paſſe [b] Lybia. *The* Northerne Denne
Keepes in cold Boreas *Priſoner. For then*
Nature *with care and ſtrength became a friend;*
And by her hand (in Death) new Life doth lend.
The Funerall's *prepar'd: His Birth, his Bed,*
Bright Phoebus with his Beames doth ouer-ſpred;
Darting one flaring Locke, which inſtantly
Fier'd the Sabean Branches. By and by,
Of the Immortall Phœnix, *Fleſh and Plume,*
To Aſhes (in a moment) doth conſume.
Thoſe Aſhes breedes a Worme, *and then an* Egge,
And afterward a Bird, *with wings full fleg:*
Euen the ſame Bird, *as borne out of his* Seede
Which his new Life more glorious now did breede

[a] *Phœnicia* is a Country in Syria, next to *Iudea*.
[b] *Lybia* is *Affrica*, named so of *Lybis*, daughter to *Epaphaum*, *Iupiters* Sonne.

In mieſt of the hot embers: A faire ſoule wun,
Made endleſſe, by thus ending, in his Tombe.
This hippie death, ſhould Life elſe take elſewhere
Nurſe, Nurſling, Heire, Father and Mother.
Inſtructing vs, that all are borne to Dye
In Adams *fall, to riſe with* Chriſt *on High.*

Thus is the Concluſion of that Author, very properly deriued from the naturall ſpoſition of this Celeſtiall Bird. Whereof, that bright ſplendour of the Church int *Hierome* maketh vſe, to infer from him a Paralell of Virginitie, for the *Queene Heauen*, deliuering theſe remarkeable words, vpon the Expoſition of the Creede. *Quid mirum videtur ſi Virgo conceperit, cum Orientis Auem quem* Phœnicem *vocat, tantum ſine coniuge naſci, vel renaſci conſtet? vt ſemper vna ſit, & ſemper ſibi ipſa ſuccendo, vel renaſcendo ſucedat? what wonder is it to ſee, if a Virgin ſhall conceiue; en the Bird of the Eaſt, which is called the* Phœnix, *is ſuch, as to be borne without a ke-fellow or mate, and afterward to be borne againe? That alwayes it is one, and euer-re is borne to and of it ſelfe, or ſucceedeth it ſelfe by reuiuing?*

The ſame Doctor of Doctors, writing *Ad Præſidiam*, delighteth himſelfe, in ſcribing this admirable birth. *Phœnix Auis eſt in India, & per Quingentos Annos, de huno implet ſe Aromatibus, & ſic nidificat, & indicat Sacerdoti Heliopolitano in Menſe ymenoth, ſiue Farmuth. Implet Aram Sacerdos ſarmentis, & ibi confert Phœnix A-mata, & Electrum Aræ imponit. Et primo Solis ortu Phœnix quidem mouet pennas, is vero calore accenditur Electrum, & ſic exuruntur Aromata, & ipſa Phœnix incen-ur. Craſtino die De Cinere Gignitur Vermis. Secundo pennas adſert. Tertio ad anti-am redit naturam, & ſic ad ſua loco reuertitur.* The Phœnix *is a Bird in* India, *and ſiue hundred yeares of age, he loadeth himſelfe from Lybanus with Aromaticall Spices, d ſo buildeth his Neſt, and ſheweth it to the Heliopolitane Prieſt in the Moneth* Farme-th, *or* Farmuth. *The Prieſt filleth the Altar with branches, and thither doth the* Phœ-x *bring diuers Drugges, Amber and ſweete Spices, laying them vpon the Altar. And e firſt day, at the riſing of the Sunne, the* Phœnix *flattereth his Feathers ouer them. e heate and warmth of the Sunne, kindleth and fiereth the Amber and Drugs, ſo the ues burne, and therein the* Phœnix *burneth himſelfe. On the next morrow.* Of the nes is a Worme engendered. *The ſecond day he hath Feathers. And on the third day, recouereth his auncient nature, and ſo returneth to his wonted place.*

Saint *Ambroſe* in his *Hexameron*, ſaith. Phœnix *in locis* Arabiæ *perhibetur degere tam, atque eam vſque ad Annos Quingentos longæuâ ætate procedere. Quæ cum ſibi ſe-m Vitæ adeſſe aduerterit, facit ſibi thecam de Thure, & Myrrha, & ceteris odoribus, quam, impleto vitæ ſuæ tempore intrat alarum remigia, atque in ſuperioris auis ſpeci-formamque reparatur.* The Phœnix *is a Bird reported to lead his life in the parts* Arabia, *and attaineth thereto ſuch length of yeares, as amount to fiue hundred. When ng aduertiſed in himſelfe, that his life draweth neere ending; hee buildeth himſelfe a of Myrrhe, Frankinſence, and other ſweete Odours: whereinto (hauing fulfilled the ted time of his life) he entreth, and there dieth. Of the moiſture of his fleſh A Worme red and ariſeth, in ſhort while after it attaineth to growth, and in proceſſe of time put-h on wings for flight.; becomming wholly, in forme and kinde, like to the other Bird.*

Hereupon was it, that the Pope Saint *Clement*, firſt of that name, in his Apoſtoli-ll Conſtitutions: Saint *Cyprian* in his *Creede*: and the learned Antiquarie *Tertul-n*, in the Treatiſe which he wrote *De Reſurrectione Mortuorum*, deriued example on the *Phœnix*, to proue the *Reſurrection of the Dead*.

Reſurrection of the dead proued by the example of the *Phœnix*.

Chapters, Names, Sir-names, Qualities and Armes: Of the Cardinals, Prelates, Commanders, and Officers of the Order of the *Holy-Ghost*. From the first institution thereof, vntill this present yeare; One Thousand, Sixe hundred and Nineteene.

CHAP. 9.

THE First Chapter for the Order of the *Holy-Ghost*, so much famed & renowned through all parts of the World: was held at the *Augustines* in *Paris*, the last day of the yeare, One thousand, fiue hundred, threescore and eighteene; and the first and second dayes of the yeare following, in regard that the Ceremonies of the said Order, continued three whole dayes together.

The most Christian King of *France*, and of *Poland*, *Henry*, Third of the name, of blessed memorie: receiued the Cloake and Great Coller, likewise the lesser Cloake and paire of Beads; at the hands of the Lord Cardinall of *Bourbon*.

Here is to be obserued once for all) that the Crosse of the said Order, it hath on the one side, and in the midst thereof, *Vne Colombe Esmaillee de Blanc, comme l'Orle de ladict Croix*; and on the other side is the Image of Saint *Michael*. So that the Commanders beare their Armes, circled or entoured with both the Orders: Of Saint *Michael*, and of the *Holy-Ghost*.

King *Henry* carried for his Armes two Escutcheons Collared or Banded, yet sundred & diuided each from other at the point. The first was of *France*, and the other of *Poland*, which was *De Gueles à vne Aigle d'Argent, Couronnée, & Membre d'Or. Parti de Lituania, qui est de Gueulles, au Caualier arme d'Argent, au Bouclier d'Azur, à vne Croix Patriarchale d'Or.* About the two Escutcheons, were both the Great Collars belonging to the two Orders formerly named, & the Imperiall Crowne of *France*: within the Bases whereof was the Deuice of the deuout and holy King, Author of the Order, which was three Crownes. The Soule and Legend speaking: *Manet Vltima Coelo.*

The Tenants & Supporters for the Armes of *France*, were two Angels.

The representation and true figure (according to the life) of this Great Prince, is to be seene at the *Augustines* of *Paris*, in the Chappell appointed for the Order: At the Grey Friers, in the second Glasse-window of the Quire: And in the Cloyster of the Iacobins, as you see it figured on the great Seale.

Heere now you may behold the ranke of the Cardinals, Prelates & Commanders, who were first honored with the Order by the Royall King *Henry*, and at the first Chapter.

Of Cardinals and Prelates.

Charles de Bourbon, Prince of the Bloud, Cardinal, Legate of *Auignon*, Archbishop of *Rouen*, Primate of *Normandy*, and Prime of the associated Prelates: *Portoit France, au Baston de Gueuldes Perry en Bande.*

Lewes de Lorraine, Cardinal de Guise, Archbishop and Duke of *Rheimes*, First Peere of *France*, Primate of *Normandy*, and Legge Borne of the Seate Apostolicke. *Portoit Hongrie, Party de Sicilie, Tierce de Hierusalem & le Quart d'Arragon. Soustenus d'Anioy, Gueldres, de Flandres, & de Bar. Sur le Tout Lorraine, au Lambeau de Gueulles en Chef.*

Rene de Birague, Cardinall, Chancellour of *France. Portoit d'Argent, Contre Bretesses de Gueules chacune chargee de Quatre Treffles d'Or.*

Philippe de Lenoncourt, Bishop and Count of *Chaalons*, Peere of *France*; afterward Cardinall. *Portoit d'Argent, à la Croix Engreslee de Gueules, Escartele de l'Eglise de Chaalons, qui porte d'Azur, à vne Croix de Gueules, Cantonnee de France.*

Peter de Gondy, Bishop of *Paris*, (afterward Cardinall) Councellour of Estate, and Chancellour to *Elisabeth*, Queene of *Austria*, Dowager of *France*. *Portoit d'Or, a deux Fasces de Gueules, au Lyon d'Or. Escartele d'Or, à vne Face de trois pieces de Sable; Party de sa Marck. Tierce d'Artois; & le Quart de Flandres. Cleues porte de Gueulles au Raiz Pommette, & Fleuronne d'Or, de Huict pieces parcé d'Argent: La Marck porte d'Or, à la Face Eschiquettée d'Argent, & de Gueulles de Trois traicts. Artois, est seme de France au Lambeau de Gueulles, de quatre pieces, charge de douze Chasteaux d'Or. Flandres porte d'Or, au Lyon de Sable Ces Quatre Chefs sont soustenus de Trois en Poincte, à scauoir de Neuers, qui est Bourgongne moderne, à scauoir de France, à la Bordure Camponnee d'Argent & de Gueulles; Party de Retheil, qui est de Gueulles à Trois Rasteaux sans manches, d'Argent. 2. 1. Tierce d'Orual, qui est de France, Escarte d'Albret, à la Bordure Engreslee d'Argent. Le Quatriesme Quartier est composé de Trois en Chef, Soustenus de pareil nombre en Poincte. Le Premier est de l'Empire d'Alemaigne, d'Or, à l'Aigle esploye de Sable; Party de Hierusalem; & Tierce d'Aragon; Soustenus de Saxe Moderne, Face de Sable & d'Or, à la Coronne de Rue de Synople brochant en Bande sur le Tout; Party de Bar, qui est d'Azur seme de Croix Recroisettees au Pied fiche d'Or, à deux Bars, ou Barbeaux adossez de mesme, & Tierce de la Ville de Constantinople, qui est de Gueulles à la Croix plaine d'Or, Cantonnee de Quatre Fuzils adossez de mesme. Sur le Tout de ce Quatriesme Quartier, de Saluces, qui est d'Argent, au Chef de Gueulles. Sur le Tout de Tout, d'Alencon qui est de France, à la Bordure de Gueulles chargee de Huict Bezans d'Argent.*

For his Creſt, on a Crowne and Dukes Chapeau, the Mount Olympus, on the toppe whereof is raised or exalted an Altar, with this word *Fides*. And at the foote of the said Mountain, this other word in Greeke Carracters ΟΛΥΜΠΟΣ.

The Supporters or vpholders, *Vn Aigle de Sable*, And *Vn Cigne d'Argent.*

Philippe Emanuel de Lorraine, Duke *de Mercœur*, and *De Pont-Teure*, Peere of France; Marqueſſe *de Nomeny*, Prince of the Sacred Empire, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances (Afterward Gouernour of Bretaigne) *Portoit de Lorraine* (in the ſame manner as the Cardinall *de Guiſe*, before remembred) *Au Lambel, En Face d'Azur.*

The Creſt, A Blacke Eagle, *Aigle de Sable.*

The Supporters, *Deux Aigles de meſme.* This is the Creſt and Supporters for all them that are of the Houſe of *Lorraine.*

d Armes de Sable passees en Saultoir, liées de Gueules, par embas.

Charles d'Escars, Bishop and Duke of *Langres*, Peere of *France*, and Counsellour of Estate. *Portoit de Gueules, au palVairé, Escartele de l'Eglise de Langres, qui porte d'Azur, au Saultoir de Gueules, Cantonné de Quatre Fleurs de Lys d'Or.*

Rene de Daillon, Abbot des Chasteliers (afterward Bishop of *Bayeux*) and Councellor of Estate. *Portoit Escartelee, au Premier, & Quatriesme d'Azur, à vne Croix Engreslee d'Argent. Au Deuxiesme Escartelé d'Or, & d'Azur. Au Troisiesme de Laual, au Canton droict d'Azur, semé de Fleurs de Lys d'Or, au Lyon de mesme. Sur le Tout, d'Or, à six Annelets de Gueules, 3. 2. 1. Qui est de la Maison d'Illiers, au Pais Chartrain.*

Iames Amyot, Bishop of *Auxerre*, Great Almoner of *France*, and Councellour of Estate. *Portoit d'Azur, au Cheuron d'Or. Deux Trefles en Chef, & vne Estoile en Pointe de mesme.*

The Pictures and Portraits of all these Prelates formerly named, are to bee seene in the Glasse-windowes of the Quire, in the Gray-Fryers Church at *Paris*.

Of those Commanders that were *associates, at the first* Chapter.

Monsieur le Prince de Conty, Frances de Bourbon, Prince of the Bloud, was entertained and named to be the first Commander of the Order. But his Sickneſſe did so much hinder him, that he could not be made Knight vntill the second Chapter: And the chiefe or prime Commander, was

Lydouic de Gonzagua, Duke of *Neuers*, Peere of France, Prince of *Mantua*, Councellour of Estate, Captain of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Champaigne*. This is the same Man, that on the great Seale of the Order, is presented on his knees before King *Henry*, holding his hand on the holy Euangelists, and taking the Oath belonging to the Order.

Il portoit. Au Premier Quartier de Mantoue, qui est d'Argent, à vne Croix Pattee de Gueulles, Cantonnee de Quatre Aigles de Sable, Membrez de Gueulles. Sur le Tout, de Gueulles, au Lyon d'Or. Escartele d'Or, à vne

Iames de Cruſſall, Duke *Vſez*, Peere of France Baron *de Leuy*, Lord *d'Aſſier*, Councellour of Eſtate, ann Captaine of an hundred Men of the Ordenances. *Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier, & Quatrieſme Face de ſix pieces d'Or, & de Synople; Party d'Or, à Trois Cheurons de Sable. Au Deuxieſme: & Troiſieſme, Eſcartele d'Azur, à Trois Eſtoiles d'Or, peries en Pal, & d'Or, à vne Bande, de Trois pieces de Gueulles. Sur le Tout des grands Quartiers, de Gueulles, à vne Bande de Trois pieces d'Or.*

The Creſt, A Vnicorne of Siluer.

The Supporters, Two golden Lyons.

Charles de Lorraine, Duke *d'Aumale*, Peere, and Great Huntſman of France, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Lorraine, au Lambeau de Gueulles, Eſcartele de Bourbon.*

The Creſt, a d

The Supporters of *Lorraine.*

Honorat de Sauoye, Marqueſſe *de Villars*, Count *de Tende & de Sommerine*, Admirall of France, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hund ed men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Sauoye, qui eſt de Gueulles, à la Croix plaine d'Argent: Eſcartelle de Tende, qui eſt de l'Empire de Conſtantinople, de Gueulles, à l'Aigle eſploye d'Or, Contre-Eſcartelle de Gueulles au Chef d'Or.*

The Creſt, a Golden Eagle ſpread.

The Supporters, two Lyons Siluer. This is the Creſt and Supporters for them of the houſe of *Sauoye.*

Arthur de Coſſe, Lord of *Gonnor*, Count *de Secondigne*, Marſhall, and Great Pantler of France, Councellor of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred men of the Ordenances. *Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier, & Quatrieſme, de Coſſé, qui eſt de Sable à Trois Fuelles de Scie, autrement dicte Trois Faces d'Or, denchées par embas. Le Seconde de Sable, au Lyon d'Argent, Coronne, Lampaſſe, & Arme de Gueulles, d'autres, diſent d'Or. Le Troiſieſme Gouffier, qui eſt d'Or, à trois Iumelles de Sable. Sur le Tout, de Montmorency.*

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing of Siluer.

The Supporters, Two Siluer Lyons.

Frances Gouffier, Lord of *Creue. Caur*, Councellor of Eſtate, Captain of fiftie Men of Arms of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Picardie. Portoit d'Or, à trois Iumelles de Sable, Eſcartelle de Montmorency.*

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing, of Siluer.

The Supporter, Two Sauages of fleſhie colour naturally.

Frances D'Eſcars, Lord of the ſaid place, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Arms of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Gueules au Pal de Vair.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters, Two Harts of Gold.

Charles de Halwin, Lord of *Piennes*, Marqueſſe of *Meguelay*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Metz. Portoit d'Argent à trois Lyons, de Sable Lam, paſſez de Gueulles, Armez & Coronnez d'Or. 2. i.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Charles de la Roche-Foucauld, Lord of *Barbezieux*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, Gouernour of *Champaigne* and *Brie. Portoit Eſcartelle. Au Premier, & Quatrieſme, Barele d'Argent, & d'Azur de Dix pieces, à trois Cheurons Brochants ſur le Tout de Gueulles. Le Second & Troiſieſme d'Or, à vn Eſcuſſon d'Azur, Sur le Tout d'Or, à deux Vaches de Gueulles, Acornées, & Clarinées d'Azur.*

The Creſt, A naked Maide, holding with both her Hands, exalted aboue her Head, a Counts Crowne.

The Supporters, Two naked Sauages.

John D'Eſcars, Lord *de la Vau-Guyon*, Prince *de Carency*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Eſcars, à la Bordure Engreſlee d'Argent. Eſcartelle de Bourbon.* I have ſeene them to be ſo: yet others doe ſay, that this Quarter ſhould be *De Vendoſme, qui eſt de France, au Baſton brochant ſur le Tout de Gueulles, charge de Trois Leonceaux d'Argent.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters, Thoſe *D'Eſcars*, before noated.

Chriſtopher des Vrſins, Lord *de la Chapelle*, Baron *de Treinell*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit Bande d'Argent, & Gueulles de ſixe pieces. Au Chef d'Argent, charge d'vne Roze de Gueulles, Sonſtenue d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Frances le Roy, Count *de Clinchamp*, Lord *de Chauigny*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an Hundred Gentlemen of the Kings houſe. *Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier, & Quatrieſme, d'Argent, à la Bande de Gueulles. Au Deuxieſme & Troiſieſme Eſchiequete d'Or, & d'Azur, à la Bordure de Gueulles.*

The

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Scipio de Fieſque, Count *de Lauagne*, & *de Veſſyre*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Knight of the honor of the Queene Mother, *Catharine de Florence. Portoit Bande d'Azur, & d'Argent de ſix Pieces.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Anthony Lord of *Tons*, Count *de Marepnes*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captain of an hundred Gentlemen of the Kings Houſe. *Portoit d'Argent, à la Face Bandée d'Or, & de Gueulles, de ſix pieces.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iames Lord *de Humieres*, Marqueſſe *d'Anre*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Montdidier*, *Peronne* and *Roye. Portoit d'Argent, Frette de Sable de ſixe pieces.*

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing *de Gueulles*, Accoaſted with a Lure *d'Argent, Frette de Sable.*

The Supporters, Lyons *de Gueulles.*

John Lord *d'Aumont*, Count *de Chaſte in Raul* (*De Caſtro Radulphi*) Marſhall of France, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Argent, au Cheuron de Gueulles, à Sept Merlettes de meſme, Deux à chaque coſte de Cheuron, & trois en Triangle deſſous.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

John de Chourſes, Lord of *Malicorne* (afterward Gouernour of *Poictu*) Captaine of fiftie Men of the Ordenances, and Councellour of Eſtate. *Portoit d'Argent, à vne Face de Cinq pieces de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Albert de Gondy, Count *de Rets*, Marqueſſe *de Belle-Iſle*, Counceller of Eſtate, chiefe Gentleman of the Kings Chamber, and Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances: Afterward made Duke of *Rets*, Peere, Marſhall, & Generall of the Gallies of France. Beareth the ſame as *Peter de Gondy*, Biſhop of Paris, and his Brother doth.

The Creſt

The Supporters.

Rene de Villequier, the yonger, called *le Gros*, Baron *d'Aubigny*, and *d'Iury*, Councellour of Eſtate, Prime Gentleman of the Kings Chamber, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, Gouernour of *Paris*, and *Iſle de France. Portoit de Gueulles à la Croix fleurencee, ou Fleur delyſee d'Or, Cantonnee de Douze Billettes de meſme. Eſcartele de la Roche Chouard, qui eſt de Gueulles à trois Faces Viurees, ou Entees d'Argent: la Premiere Brizee d'vne Belete de Sable. Sur le Tout Pale d'Or, & de Gueulles de ſix pieces.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

John de Bloſſet, Lord and Baron of *Torcy*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, Gouernour of *Paris* and *Iſle de France. Portoit Eſcartele. Le Premier, & quatrieſme Pale d'Or, & de Synople, de ſix pieces; au Chef d'Argent, charge de trois Cheurons de Gueulles. Les Deuxieſme & Troiſieſme d'Argent, à vne Face de quatre pieces de Gueulles, à vn Lyon de Sable Brochant ſur le Tout.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Claude de Villequier, the elder, Lord and Baron of the ſaid place; Vicount *de la Guerche*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes. *Portoit de Gueulles, à la Croix Fleurdelyſee d'Or, Cantonnee de Douze Billettes de meſme.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Anthony D'Eſtrees, Prime Baron, and Seneſchall of *Boulonnois*, Lord *de Coeuures*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captain of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances: And afterward Great Maiſter of the Artillerie of France, Gouernour of *Paris*, and *Iſle de France. Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier, & Quatrieſme, d'Argent, Frette de Sable, au Chef d'Or, charge de trois Merlettes de Sable. Au Deuxieſme de France, à deux Baſtons, l'vn de Gueulles, & l'autre d'Argent, paſſez en Saultoir. Au Troiſieſme d'Or, au Lyon d'Azur, Coronne, Lampaſſe, & Arme de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Charles de la Mark, Count *de Mauleurier*, Lord of *Rignac*, *Colonges* and *Villomer*; Vicount *de Huyſſay*; Baron *de Pont-Arcy*, Captaine of the hundred *Switzers* of the Kings Guard, and Councellour of Eſtate. *Portoit de la Mark, qui eſt d'Or, à la Face Eſchecquee d'Argent, & de Gueulles de trois Traicts, au Lyon naiſſant de Gueulles. Eſcartelle de Breze, qui eſt d'Azur, à l'Eſcuſſon d'Argent, à vne Orle d'Or, accompagnee de Huict Croiſettes d'Or, trois en Chef, Deux en Flanc, & Trois en Pointe.*

The Creſt, A Blacke Eagle.

The

The Supporters. Two Griffons Gold.

Philebert de la Guiche, Lord of the ſaid place Councellour of Eſtate, Gouernour of *Bourbonnois*; and afterward Great Maiſter of the Artillery of France, Gouernor of *Lyons*, &c. *Portoit de Synople, au Saultoir d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Philippe Strozzy, Councellour of Eſtate, and Colonell Generall of the French Infanterie. *Portoit d'Or à la Face de Gueulles, chargee de trois Croiſſants tournez d'Argent.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

The Names of Officers accepted into the Order.

PHilippe Hurault, Councellour of Eſtate, Count *de Chiuerny*, and *de Limoux*, Gouernour of *Orleans*, *Pays Chartrain*, *Blaiſois* and *Loudunois*, Chancellour to the Duke of *Anion* (King of France and of Poland, *Henry*, Third of that name) Afterward Keeper of the Seales, and Chancellour of France, and of both the Kings Orders, figured ſtanding vpright in the Great Seale of the Order, on the Kings right hand, holding the Booke of the Holy Euangeliſts. *Portoit d'Or, à la Croix plaine d'Azur, Cantonnee de quatre Ombres de Soleils de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

William Pet, Lord of *Rhodes*, and of *Chemaux*, Knight, Prouoſt of the Order, and Great Maiſter of the Ceremonies, chiefe Eſquire Caruer, and Bugle-Bearer to the King. *Portoit d'Or, à la Face d'Azur, au Lambeau de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The ſupporters.

Nicholas de Neuf-Ville, Lord of *Ville-Roy*, Councellour and Secretarie of Eſtate, and Great Treaſurer of the Order. *Portoit d'Azur, au Cheurõ d'Or, à trois Croix Anchrees de meſme.*

Claude de Laubeſpine, Lord of *Verderonne*, Councellour to the King, and Regiſter of the Order, preſented in the great Seale of the Order, ſtanding on the Kings left hand, reading the Oathe, which the Knights of the Order are to pronounce. *Portoit de Gueulles, à trois Quinte-feuilles d'Argent. 2. 1. Eſcartele d'Azur, au Heaume abaiſſe, ſans Lambrequins, d'Argent. Sur le Tout, d'Azur, au Saultoir d'Or, accompagne de quatre Billettes de meſme, à la Bordure d'Or.*

Mathurin Morin, Lord of the *Planchette in Brie*, Herauld, and King of Armes of the Order. *Portoit d'Azur, à vn Aigle d'Or, à trois Croix Anchrees de meſme en Chef.*

Philippe de Nambu, Vſher of the Kings Chamber, and of the Order. *Portoit Eſcartelle quette d'Or, & d'Azur, au Canton droict d'Hermines.*

At the Second Chapter, held in the *Auguſtines* at *Paris*, the laſt day of the yeare, One thouſand, fiue hundred threeſcore and nineteene, were Created theſe Knights following.

FRances de Bourbon, Marqueſſe de Conſtey, Prince of the Blood. *Portoit de Bourbon, Eſcartele de l'Alencon.*

The Creſt, A double *Floure de Luce*, Gold.

The Supporters, One or two Angelles, which are the Creſt and Supporters for the moſt-Chriſtian Kings, and Princes of the Blood, of the Sacred Lillies of France.

Frances de Bourbon, Prince *Daulphin d'Auuergne*, Duke *de Sainct Fergeau*, Prince of the Blood, Peere of France, and Lord *du Payſe Puiſaye*, and Captaine of an hundred Men of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Bourbon; Eſcartele du Daulphine d'Auuergne, d'Or, au Daulphine d'Azur.*

The Creſt, Of France.

The Supporters, Two Greyhounds Siluer, Collared *Gueulles*; the Border and Nailes, Gold.

Henry de Lorraine, Duke of *Guiſe*, Peere and Great Maiſter *d'Hoſtel de France*, Prince *de Ioinuille*, Gouernour of *Brie* and *Champagne*. *Portoit, de Lorraine, au Lambeau de Gueulles en Chef.*

The Creſt, and the

Supporters, as before is ſhewne.

Lewes de Luzignan, called of *Sainct Gelais*, Baron *de la Mothe Saincte Eraye*, Lord of *Lanſac*, and *de Preſſy*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Knight of the honor of the Queene Mother, *Katharine* of Florence, *Portoit Cinq Pumets d'Axur, Equipolez a Quatre d'Argent Eſcartele de Luzignan, qui eſt Burele d'Argent, & d'Azur, au Lyon de Gueulles, Coronne d'Or brochant ſur le Tout.*

The Creſt, An open Tub or Vart of Gold, wherein is *Melluſina*, halfe a woman, and halfe a Serpent, bathing, viewing and trimming her ſelfe.

Which is the ordinary Creſt for the Houſe of *Luzignan*.

The Supporters, Two Griffons Gold.

John D'Ebrard, Lord and Baron of *Saincte Maulpice*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Argent, au Lyon de Sable, Iſſant d'Ombres de Croix, de meſme. Eſcartele d'Or, à la Bande de Gueulles. Sur le Tout, d'Argent, Party de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iames de Matignon, Lord of the ſaid place, Count of *Torigny*, Councellor of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances (afterward Lieutenant Generall at *Bourdeaux*, and in the Gouernement of *Guyenne*, and Marſhall of France) *Portoit d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueulles, Coronne, & Arme d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Bertrand de Salignac, Lord *de la Mothe-Fenelon*, Vicount *de Sainct Iulian*, Baron of *Loubert*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Or, à la Bande de Trois peces de Synople.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

At the third Chapter, held in the *Auguſtines* at *Paris*; the laſt day of the yeare, One thouſand fiue hundred and foureſcore, were made Knights theſe following.

FRances de Luxembourg, Duke of *Pigney*, Peere of France. Prince of *Tingry*, Count *de Rouſſy*, & *de Ligny*, &c. Captaine of an hundred men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueulles, la Queue nouee, & paſſee en Saultoir, Coronne, & Armé, ou Ongle d'Or, au Lambeau de Gueulles en Chef.*

The Creſt. *Melluſina*, as before.

The Supporters, Golden Griffons.

Charles de Bryquet, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes, Beareth as the Cardinall and Chancellour of France, of the ſame Name, at the firſt Chapter.

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

John de Leguimont, Lord of *Puy-Gaillard*, Councellour of Eſtate, high Marſhall of the Field for his Maieſties Armies, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Azur, à vn Faulcon à Vol eſtendu Perche, & Lie d'Argent, Grillete de meſme.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Rene de Roche-Chouard, Baron *de Mortemar* and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Gueulles à Trois Peces Viurees, ou Entees d'Argent, la Premiere Viuree d'vne Belete de Sable.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Henry de Lenon Court, Lord of the ſaid place and of *Coupemay*, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Marſhall of the Campe. *Portoit d'Argent, à la Croix Engreſlee de Gueulles*; as the Cardinall, and Biſhop of *Chaalons* doth.

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Nicholas D'Angennes, Lord of *Rambouillet*, *Vidame du Mans*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Mets*, *Portoit de Sable, au Saultoire d'Argent.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

At the fourth Chapter, held in the *Auguſtines* at *Paris*; the laſt day of the yeare, One thouſand fiue hundred foureſcore and one, were theſe following Knights made.

CHarles de Lorraine, Duke *d'Elbœuf*, Peere of France, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Lorraine, au Lambel, & Bordure de Gueulles.*

The Creſt and Supporters, are of *Lorraine*

Armand de Gontault, Baron of *Biron*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Marſhall of France. *Portoit Eſcartele d'Or, & de Gueulles en Bannière.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Guy de Daillon, Count *de Lude*, and *de Pont-Gibauld*, Baron *d'Illiers*, *du Cheſne*, *Dene*, and *de Magne*. Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Poictou*. *Portoit, &c.* He beareth as the

the Abbot *des Chasteliers* his Brother doth, in the first Chapter.

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Frances de la Baulme, Count *de Suze*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Or, à Trois Cheurons de Sable; le Chef d'Azur, au Lyon naiſſant d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Anthony de Leuis, Count *de Quelus*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, Gouernour and Seneſchall *de Rouergne. Portoit de Leuy, qui eſt d'Or à Trois Cheurons de Sable.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iohn de Teuille, Lord of the ſaid place, of *Autre*, *Bouille*, and of *Creans*, Councellor of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernor of *Mets. Portoit de Or, à Trois Annelets de Sable. 2.1.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Lewes D'Angennes, Baron *de Meſle*, Lord of *Maintenon*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Angennes* (as already hath bin ſaid, at the ending of the third Chapter) *au Lambeau de Gueulles en Chef.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

At the fift Chapter, held in the *Auguſtines* at *Paris*, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred, foureſcore and two, were made theſe Knights.

Harles de Lorraine, Duke *de Maienne*, Peere and Great Chamberlaine of France, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Bourgongne. Portoit de Lorraine, au Lambeau de Gueulles: Eſcartelle de Ferrara; qui eſt de France, à la Bordure Denchee d'Or, & de Gueulles: Party de Ferrara, qui eſt d'Azur, à vn Aigle d'Argent, Coronne, & Ongle d'Or. Ceſt Eſcart ſouſtenu de France, ſans Briſure.*

The Creſt, and Supporters } of *Lorraine.*

Anne, Duke *de Ioyeuſe*, Peere and Admirall of France, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, Chiefe Gendeman of the King Chamber. *Portoit de Ioyeuſe, qui eſt Pale d'Or, & d'Azur de ſix pieces, au Chef de Gueulles, chargé de trois Hydres accoſtez d'Or. Eſcartelé d'Azur au Lyon d'Argent, à la Bordure de Gueulles, chargé de Huit Fleurs de Lys d'Or. Qui eſt de Sainct Didier.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iohn Louis de Nogaret, Duke *d'Eſperno*, Peere of France, Prime Gentleman of the Kings Chamber. Afterward Admirall of France, and Colonell Generall of the French Infanterie, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Gouernor of *Metz*, *Pais Meſſin*, *Boulonnois*, *Angoulmois* and *Xaintonge. Party d'Argent au Noyer de Synople: Party de Gueulles, à vne demye-Croix Pommettee d'Or, au Chef de Gueulles, charge d'vne Croix Potencee d'Argent. Sur le Tout d'Argent, à la Cloche d'Argent, Battaillee de Sable.*

The Creſt, A Leopard Muzzle Tawnie.

The Supporters, Two Lyons Tawny Langued Gueulles, and Ongled Siluer.

Tanneguy le Veneur, Count *de Tilliers*, Lord of *Carronges*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Lieutenant for the King in Normandie. *Portoit d'Argent, à la Bande d'Azur, chargee de Trois Saultoirs d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iohn de Moi, Lord of the *Mailleraye*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, Vice-Admirall of France, and one of the Gouernors for the King in Normandie. *Portoit de Gueulles, Frette d'Or de ſix pieces; Eſcartelé d'Argent, Ville, qui eſt Burelé d'Argent, & de Gueulles, au Lyon de Sable, Coronné d'Or. Sur le Tout Dreux, qui eſt Eſchiquier d'Or, & d'Azur, à la Bordure de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Philippe de Volluire, Marqueſſe of [illegible], Lord of Saint *Brice*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of [illegible]. *Portoit Face d'Or, & de Gueulles, de Huit Pieces. Eſcartelé, de Gueulles, à Neuf Macles d'Or, au Lambeau de Quatre pieces de Argent. Sur le Tout Pale d'Or, & de Gueulles, de ſix pieces.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Frances de Maudelot, Lord of *Paſſy-Lerne*, Vicount *de Chalon*, Councellor of Eſtate, and Gouernour of *Lyonnais Beaujolois*, and *Foreſts. Portoit d'Argent, à vne Face d'Azur.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Triſtram de Roſtain, Baron of *Bron*, Lord of *Huiſſy le Sec*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captain of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Azur, à vne Face en Deuiſe d'Or, à Vne Roue de Auict Raix en Poinct, de meſme.*

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing Tawnie.

The Supporters, Two Sauages Tawnie, with their Clubbes exalted.

Iohn Iacques de Suſanes, Count *de Serny*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Sable, à Trois Annelets d'Argent. 2.1.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

The ſixt Chapter, was held in the *Auguſtines* at *Paris*; the laſt day of the yeare, One thouſand fiue hundred foureſcore and three. And therein were made theſe Knights, *Prelates and Commanders.*

Prelates of the Order.

Charles de Lorraine, Cardinal *de Vaudemont*, Biſhop and Count of *Toull* (Brother to the Queene *Louiſa de Lorraine*: Princeſſe (without her Peere) for vertue and Sanctitie of life, and the worthie Wife to King *Henry*, third of the name, the Mirrour of good Princes, was aſſociated into the Order, by the deceaſe of the Cardinall *de Bi[illegible]*. *Portoit de Lorraine, au Lambeau mis en Chef d'Azur.*

Commanders created of *the Order.*

Honorat de Bueil, Baron *de Fontaines*, Councellor of Eſtate, Captaine of fifty Men of Armes of the Ordenances, Vice-Admirall, and Gouernour of Bretaigne. *Portoit au Pre-mier & Quatreiſme, de Bueil, qui eſt d'Azur, Croiſſant montant d'Argent, accompagne de ſix Croiſettes, Retroiſettees au Pied fiche d'Or. Eſcartelé de Gueulles, à vne Croix Anchree d'Or. Sur le Tout Eſcartelé de Daulphine, & de Champaigne Aux Deuxieſme & Troiſieſme Grands Quartiers, de Gueulles, à vn Aigle d'Or. Sur le Tout deſdicts Grands Quartiers, Eſcartelé d'Azur à vn Lyon d'Or; & d'Or, à vn Lyon d'Azur.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Rene de Rochefort, Lord of the ſaid place, Baron *des Iroles*, *la Croiſete*, *Vaſſy*, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Dunois*, *Blaiſbis*, and *Chaſteau d'Amboiſe. Portoit d'Azur, Seme de Billetes d'Or; au Chef d'Argent, charge d'vn Lyon Paſſant de Gueulles; à la Bordure Engreſlee d'Argent, & de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iohn de Vieuonne, Marqueſſe *de Piſany*, Lord of Saint *Gonard*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Ermines, au Chef de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Lewes de Chaſtaignier, Lord *d'Abin*, and *de la Roche-Pozay*, Baron of *Maleual*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Or, au Lyon paſſant de Synople, au Lambeau de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Bernard de Nogaret, Lord *de la Valette*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances. Afterward Admirall of France, and Gouernour of Prouence, hauing formerly bin Gouernour beyond the Mountaines. *Portoit de Gueulles, à la Croix Potencee d'Argent, Sonſtenu de Nogaret; Party de Gueulles, à Vne-Demy-Croix Pommettee d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Henry de Ioyeuſe, Count *de Bouchage*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of Ordenances, and Maiſter of the Kings Warderobe. Afterward Duke *de Ioyeuſe*, and Gouernour in *Languedocke*. Beareth as the Admirall *de Ioyeuſe* his Brother doth. *Eſcartele de Sainct Didier: Sur le Tout, Eſcartele d'Or, & d'Azur, qui eſt de Batarnay.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Nicholas

Nicholas de Grimouille, Lord *de Larchant, d'Autueil, & de la Boulaye*, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, Captain of an hundred Men of Armes of the Kings Guard. *Portoit de Gueulles, à Trois Eſtoiles d'Argent. 2.1. Eſcartele d'Azur, au Lyon d'Or, tenant entre ſes Pattes vne Maſſe perie en Pal de meſme.*

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing Gold.
The Supporters, Two Lyons of the ſame.

Lewes D'Amboiſe, Count *de Aubigeoux*, Baron *de Chaſteau Neuf*. &c. Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Amboiſe, qui eſt Pale d'Or, & de Gueulles, de ſix pieces.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Frances de la Valette, Lord of *Cornuſſon*, and of *Paſchor*, &c. Councellor of Eſtate, Gouernour and Seneſchall of *Toloſa*. *Portoit de Gueulles, au Perroquet d'Argent, à la Patte-Droict leuee; Party de Gueulles, au Lyon d'Or.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Frances de Cazillac, Lord and Baron of the ſaid place, *de Ceſſac*, and *de Noailles* Councellour of Eſtate, &c. *Portoit d'Or, à Deux Lyons paſſants de Gueulles, à la Bordure de Synople, chargee de Huict Bezans d'Argent.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Ioachim de Tinte-Ville, Lord of the ſaid place, and *de Fougeroles*, Baron *de Mery*, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. Gouernour in *Champaigne* and *Brie*. *Portoit de Sable, à Deux Leopards d'Or.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Ioachim de Chaſteau-Vieux, Lord of *Verſon*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of the hundred Archers of the *Scottiſh* Guard: Afterward Knight of the honor of Queene *Mary* of *Florence*, and Gouernour of the Caſtell and *Baſtille* at *Paris*. *Portoit d'Azur, à Trois Faces Ondees d'Or. Eſcartele d'Azur, à vne Fleur de Lys d'Or.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters

Charles de Balſac, Lord of *Clermont d'Entragues*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Balſac, Eſcartele de Humieres* (obſerued before in the firſt Chapter) *Sur le Tout de Milan, qui eſt d'Argent, à la Giure, ou Byſſe d'Azur, Lyſſante de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Charles du Pleſſeis, Lord of *Liencourt*, Councellour of Eſtate, Gentleman in Ordenary of the Kings Chamber, and Prime Quierie of the leſſer Stable or Eſcuyrie. But afterward Marqueſſe of *Guerche-Ville*, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of the Citie of *Paris*. *Portoit d'Argent, à la Croix Engreſlee de Gueulles, chargee de Cinq Cocquilles d'Argent, au Lambeau d'Azur.* Hee hath thereunto added ſince, vn Eſcart *d'Argent, à vn Lyon de Gueulles, Coronné & Ongle d'Or.*

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing, *Gueulles.*
The Supporters, Two Lyons of the ſame.

Frances de Chabannes, Marqueſſe of *Cuſtrin*, Count of *Rochefort*, and Vicount *de la Roche-Maſſelin*, Councellour of Eſtate and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Gueulles, au Lyon d'Ermines Coronné, Lampaſſé, & Arme d'Or. Eſcartele de la Tour, qui eſt d'Azur, ſeme de France, à vne Tour d'Argent, Maſſonnee de Sable; & de Bologne, qui eſt d'Or, au Gonfannon de Gueulles, Frange de Synople. Sur le Tout d'Eſcart, d'Or, à Trois Tourteaux de Gueulles. 2.1.* Which is of the Prime Lords and Counts of *Bologne* on the Sea.

The Creſt.
The Supporters, Two Greyhounds Siluer.

Robert de Combault, Lord *d'Arciere ſur Aube*, Councellour of Eſtate, and chiefe Maiſter *d'Hoſtel du Roy. Portoit d'Argent à la Lunette paſſante de Sable.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Frances de Sennetere, Lord of the ſaid place, and *De la Ferte-Nabert*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Azur, à Cinq Fuzees d'Argent, en Face.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

At the ſeauenth Chapter, held in the *Auguſtins* at *Paris*, the laſt day of the *yeare, One thouſand fiue hundred* foureſcore and foure, were theſe *Knights then made.*

John de Sainct Lary, and *de Belle Garde*, Baron of *Termes*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes

Armes of the Ordenances, Marſhall of the Field, and Gouernour of *Mets*. *Portoit au premier Quartier. d'Azur, au Lyon d'Or. Au Deuxieſme Pale d'Or, & de Gueulles, de ſix pieces. Au Troiſieſme de Gueulles, à vn Vaze d'Or. Le Quatrieſme d'Azur, à Trois demy-Fuzees d'Argent. Sur le Tout, d'Azur, à la Cloche d'Argent, Battuë de Sable.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Lewes Adhemar de Monteil, Count of *Grignan*, and Baron *d'Entre-Chaſteaux*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit au Premier Quartier, d'Or, à Trois Bande, d'Azur. Au Deuxieſme, de Gueulles, au Chaſteau ſomme de Trois Tours d'Argent. Au Troiſieſme de Gueulles, au Lyon d'Argent, au Canton de Bretaigne. Et le Quatrieſme de Gueulles, à la Croix Coupee d'Or, Cantonnee de Quatre Quintefueilles de meſme.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

The Eight Chapter, was held at the AVGVSTINES in PARIS, the laſt day of the yeare, One *thouſand fiue hundred* foure-ſcore and fiue, at which *time were made theſe Knights.*

Charles de Bourbon, Count *de Soiſſons*, Prince of the Blood, Peere, and Great Maiſter of France. *Portoit de Bourbon, en Baſton, & Bordure de Gueulles.*

The Creſt, and Supporters } of France.

Iohn Grongnet de Vaſſe, Lord and Baron of the ſaid place, and likewiſe *De la Roche-Maillet*, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Or, à Trois Faces d'Azur.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Adrian de Tiercelin, Lord of *Broſſe*, and of *Sarcus*, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Mouzon*. *Portoit d'Argent, Deux Tierces d'Azur, miſes en Saultoir, Cantonnees, & Accompagnees de Quatre Marlettes de Sable.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Frances Chabot, Lord of *Brion*, Marqueſſe *de Mire-beau*, Lord of *Fontaine-Francoiſe*, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Or, à Trois Chabots de Gueulles, mis en Paulx. 2.1. au Premier Quartier. Au Deuxieſme de Luxembourg, qui eſt d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueulles Coronne, & Arme d'Or à la Queue paſſee, & fourchee en Saultoir. Le Troiſieſme des Baulx, c'eſt de Gueulles, à vne Eſtoile de Seize Raiz d'Argent. Et le Quatrieſme de Long-Vy, qui eſt d'Azur, à vne Bande d'Or.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Gilles de Souuray, Lord of the ſaid place, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Touraine*. And afterward, Gouernour of King *Lewes*, thirteenth of the name, Marqueſſe *de Courtennaulx*, and Marſhall of France. *Portoit d'Azur, à vne Cottice d'Or, de Cinq pieces.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Frances d'O, Lord of *Freſne*, and of *Maille-Bois*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. Afterward Gouernour of *Paris*, and the Iſle of France, as alſo intendant Generall of the Finances of France. *Portoit d'Ermines, au Chef, Eudenchee vers la Pointe, de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Claude de la Chaſtre, Baron *de la Maiſon Fort*, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordernances, and Gouernour of *Berry*; and afterward Marſhall of France. *Portoit de Gueulles à vne Croix Anchree de Vair, Eſcartele de Gueulles à Trois Teſtes de Loup, arrachees d'Argent.*

The Creſt.
The Supporters.

Girauld de Mauleon, Lord of *Gourdan*, Councellor of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Couernour of *Calais.*

Calais. Portoit de Gueulles, au Lyon d'Or [illegible] not Siluer, for so haue I seene it i[n] the Cathedrall Church of *Sainct Bertrand de Commenges*; in the Abbey of *Bonnefons*: At *Gourdan*, at *Francon*, *Eſtancarbon*, and diuers other places in *Gaſcoigne*.

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iames de Loubens, Lord of the ſaid place, and of *Verdales*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Gueulles à vn Loup rampant d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Lewes de Breton, Lord of *Grillon*, and Baron of *Sainct Iohn de Varies*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Maiſter of the Campe for Regiment of the Kings Guards. *Portoit d'Or, à vn Cottice d'Azur de Cinque pieces.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Iohn Dangennes, Lord of *Poigny*, Councellor of Eſtate, and Captain of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Angennes* (two ſeuerall times formerly obſerued) *à la Bordure d'Azur.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Frances de la Iugie, de Puy, Count of *Sault*, Lord of *Lauall*, and of *Montaubon*. Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit au Premier Quartier d'Or, a vn Loup. Arme, & Lampaſſe d'Azur. Au Deauxieſme d'Azur à Trois Tours d'Or. 2. 1. Au Troiſieſme, de Gueulles, à vn Pal d'Argent de Trois pieces, au Chef d'Azur. Et le Quatrieſme, d'Or, à Deux Lyons d'Azur.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Mery de Barbeſiers, Lord *de la Roche-Cheme-rault*, & *Du Bois le* Vicountie, &c. Councellour of Eſtate, and Great Marſhall *des Logis. Portoit d'Argent, à vne Face Fuzelee de Gueulles de Cinq pieces au Premier Quartier. Au Deuxieſme, d'Azur, à vne Croix Couppee, & Denchee d'Argent. Au Troiſieſme, d'Ermines, au Chef de Gueulles Et le Quatrieſme d'Or, à vn Aigle Eſploye de Gueulles, Coronne, & Arme de Synople.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Frances du Pleſſis, Lord *de Riche-Lieu*, Councellour of Eſtate, and great Prouost [illegible] *Portoit d'Argent, à Chaſteau de Trois Gueulles.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Gabriel Non-Par de Caulmont, Count of *Lanzun*, Lord of *Toutabeuf*. Count of *Monthas*, Baron *de Puy-Guillem*, [illegible] and *De la Brouillye*. Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of the Ordenances. *Portoit, Tierce en Bande, d'Or, de Gueules & d'Azur.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

The Houſe of the Sir-name of *Caulmont*, very famous, and much renowned in *Guienne* and *Gaſcoigne*; tooke for the firſt Sir-name, that of *Non-Par*, by reaſon of an vnequall Duell or Combate, performed there a long time ſince by one of their Great-Great-Grandfathers, named *Richard de Caulmont*, againſt two Giants that were Sarrazins, called *Murgalet*, and *Golias*, whom he ſlew with his own hand. Neuertheleſſe, this Houſe hath different Armes, as you may noate by them formerly emblazoned. For this *Richard de Caulmont*, which fought with *Golias* and *Murgalet*: *Portoit de Gueulles, à Deux Leopards d'Or, l'vn ſur l'autre, à la Bordure d'Argent.* At this day, the Heire of *Caulmont*; *Madame de Franſa Paſſage ſur la Dordogne* (the Caſtell whereof was built by our King *Chrtlemaigne*, in the yeare of Grace, ſeauen hundred threeſcore and nine, awaiting the Commiſſaries that hee had ſent to *Lupus*, Duke of *Gaſcoignie*, who had retired to him *Hunn*[illegible] of *Bourdeaux*, who ſtiled himſelfe King of *Aquitaine*. *Rex, donec Legati, quas miſerat reuerterentur, Caſtellum, iuxta Dordonam Fluuium, nomine Francicum Aedificat*, thus ſpeaketh our Annaliſt the Monke of *Laurſheim*, vnder the ſaid yeare) a Seigneurie erected by the late King *Henry* the Great of famous memorie, into a Dukedome and Peeredome of France, in fauour of the Heire, the Lady of *Fronſac*, *Anne de Caulmont*, wife to *Frances* of *Orleans*, Count of Sainct *Paul*, Prince of the Houſe of *Longue-Ville*: the ſaid Heire (I ſay) *Portoit Bandé d'Azur, à Trois Leopards, d'Or, l'vn ſur l'autre.*

Now returne we to our Knights.

Hector de Pardaillan, Lord and Baron of *Gondrin*, and of *Monteſpan*, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Or, Chaſteau de Gueulles, à Trois Teſtes de Mores Sable en Chef. Eſcartelé d'Argent, à Trois Fa-Sable en Chef. Eſcartelé d'Argent, à Trois Fa-Ondees d'Azur. Sur le Tout, d'Argent, à Lyon de Gueulles, à l'Orle de Sept Eſtuſſons de meſme.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Lewes de Champaigne, Count *de la Suze*, Lord *de la Chappelle Rinſouin*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Sable, Frette d'Argent, au Chef d'Argent charge d'vn Lyon Nayſſant de Gueulles, Arme, & Lampaſſe d'Azur. Eſcartele de Lauall. Sur le Tout, de Champaigne, Parti d'Azur, à vn Lyon d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Rene de Bouile, Lord of the ſaid place, Count *de Creance*, and *des Chaſtelenies de Chanteloup*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Perigueux. Portoit d'Argent à la Face de Gueulles, Frette de Sable, Accompaignee de Deux Faces en Deuiſe, l'vne deſſus, l'autre deſſous de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Lewes du Bois, Lord *des Arpentis* Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Gouernour of *Touraine. Portoit d'Or, à l'Eſcuſſon de Gueulles en Abiſme, à l'Orle de ſix Coquilles de meſme.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iohn d'O, Lord of *Manou*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of the Guard for his Maieſties Body. Beareth, as before hath bin ſaid, *a Lambeau d'Argent.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Henry de Silly, Count *de la Roche-Guyon*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Ermines, à la Face Ondee ou Viuree de Gueulles, à Trois Tourteaux de Gueulles en Chef, entre les Ermines. Eſcartele de la Roche-Guyon, qui eſt d'Or, à Trois Bandes d'Azur, à la Bordure de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Anthony de Vienne, called *De Bauffremont*, Lord of *Lyſtenais*, Marqueſſe *d'Arc en Barrois*. Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Bauffremont, qui eſt Vaire, & de Gueulles. Eſcartele de Vienne; qui eſt de Gueulles à vn Aigle d'Or. Sur le Tout de Sable, à Trois Teſtes de Leopards d'Argent. 2. 1.*

The Creſt, A Dogge riſing.

The Supporters, Two Greyhounds Siluer, Collared *Gueulles*, and the Border Gold.

Iohn du Chaſtelay, Baron of the ſaid place, Soueraigne *de Chaſtillon*, Lord of *Thou*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Or, à la Bande de Gueulles, chargee de Trois Flours de Lys d'Argent.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Frances Deſcoublean, Lord of *Sourdis*, and *De Iouy en Iozas*, and afterward Marqueſſe *d'Alluye*. Councellour of Eſtate, Gouernour of *Chartres*, chiefe Squire to the King, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit Party d'Azur, & de Gueulles, à vne Bande d'Or, Brochante ſur le Tout.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Charles D'Ogries, Count *de Chaulne*, Lord *de la Hargerie*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Synople, à vn Face d'Ermines; Eſcartele d'Or, à Trois Cheurons de Sable, qui eſt de Raſſe, ou Race*: In regard of *Anthoinetta de Raſſe*, daughter to the Lord of the *Hargerie*.

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Dauid Bouchard, Vicount *D'Aubeterre*, Lord and Baron of *Pauleon*, Gouernour of *Perigord*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Gueulles à Trois Leopards d'Or, mis l'vn ſur l'autre. Eſcartele de Lozenges d'Or & d'Azur, au Chef de Gueulles.*

The Creſt.

The ſupporters.

Officers of the Order.

Iohn du Gue, Lord of the ſaid place, Herauld and King of Armes of both the Kings Orders. *Portoit d'Azur, au Cheual deſtie d'Or, au Chef de meſme, charge vne Treſle de Gueulles.*

At the ninth Chapter, held in the Augustines at Paris; in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred foure-scoare and sixe, were these Knights made.

RENE de Villequier, Vicount de la Guerche, Councellour of Estate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit de Villequier, Tout plein, & sans Escart.*

The Crest.

The Supporters.

Iames de Moi, Lord of *Pierre* Court, Councellour of Estate, & Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit au Premier & Quatriesme Quartier de Gueulles, Frette d'Or de six pieces. Escartele de Burele d'Argent, & de Gueulles de Dix pieces, au Lyon de Sable, Coronne d'Or. Le Troisiesme Eschiequete d'Or, & d'Azur, à la Bordure de Gueulles.*

The Crest.

The Supporters.

Charles de Vitonne, Lord *de la Chastaigneraye*, Councellour of Estate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. Beareth as formerly hath bin said.

The Crest.

The Supporters.

Iames le Veneur, Count *de Tilliers*, Councellour of Estate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of Ordenances. Beareth as formerly hath bin said.

The Crest.

The Supporters.

These are the Chapters, of the Order of the Holy-Ghost, which were held by King Henry, *Third of the Name, of Sacred memory. By whose ouer-vntimely death, happening on Tuesday, being the First Day of August, One thousand fiue hundred fourescore and nine, without any Heire Masle begotten by his Body*

the Crowne of the Holy and Sacred Lillies of France, by the Salique Law, fundamentall of the Kingdome; fell to his neerest Heire in the Collaterall Ligne, Prime Prince of the Blood

Henry of Bourbon (*King of Nauarre, Duke of Vendosme, of Armignac, and of Albret, Count de Foix, and de Begorre, Soueraigne of Bearn, &c. and as hers iust right*) *became King of France, Fourth of that Name. Vnder whom was held*

The Tenth Chapter, at Dernetail, the King then being at the Siedge of Rouen, the last Day of the yeare, One thousand fiue hundred fourescore and ten. Whereat was accepted into the Order,

One Prelate.

FRances de Foix, de Candale, Bishop of Aire in Guienne, Councellour to the King in his Councels of Estate, and priuate; he being Associated into the Order. *Portoit de Foix, qui est d'Or à Trois Paulx de Gueulles Escartele de Bearn, qui est d'Or à Deux Vaches de Gueulles, Acornees, Acollees & Clarinees d'Azur.* This House of *Candale* did anciently beare *D'Or, à Trois Paulx de Synople.* And by Alliance they quartered in the second and third Quarters, with *Foix* and *Bearn.*

The Eleauenth Chapter was held in the Citie of *Mantes*, the last *Day of the yeare, One thousand fiue* hundred fourescore and twelue: Whereat were Associated, *and made Knights these following.*

Prelates of the Order.

REginald de Beaulne, Archbishop and Patriarch of *Bourges*, Primate of Aquitaine, Great Almoner of France, Councellour of Estate, and afterward Archbishop of *Sens. Portoit de Gueulles, au Cheuron d'Argent, accompagnee de Trois Besans d'Or. 2. 1.*

Commanders of the Order.

CHarles de Gontault, Baron de Biron, Afterward Duke de Biron, Peere of France, Admirall and Marshall of France, Councellour of Estate, Captaine of an hundred Men at Armes of the Ordenances, and Marshall in the Field for the Armies of the King. Beareth as his Father did, formerly related.

The Crest.

The Supporters.

Officers of the Order.

MArtin Ruze, Lord of *Beau-Lieu*, & of *Vaulx-himeau*, Knight, Councellour to the King

in his Councels of Estate, and priuate, Secretarie for his Commandements, Superintendant Generall of the Mines and Minerals of France, and high Treasurer of the Order. *Portoit de Gueulles, au Cheuron Onde d'Argent, & d'Azur, accompagne de Trois Lyons d'Or.*

The Crest.

The Supporters.

The Twelfth Chapter, was held in the Citie of *Chartres*, Monday being the eight and twentieth Day of February, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred fourescore and foureteene.

THe first Sunday in Lent, being the seauen and twentieth day of *February*, in the said yeare; King *Henry the Great* (of glorious memory) was Sacred and Crowned in the Cathedrall Church of our Lady at *Chartres*, by the Bishop of the said place, *Mesire Nicholas de Thou.*

And on the Morrow, his Maiestie being willing to receiue the *Order of the Holy-Ghost*, departed from the Bishops Pallace, about three houres after Mid-day, and came to the Church of our Lady. There he heard the Euen-song of the *Holy-Ghost* (Sung by them of the Kings Chappell, and Musicall Voices ioyned with Instruments) and assisted by the Associates, Prelates, Commanders and Officers of the Order, attired in their great Cloaks and Collers of the Order.

At *Magnificat*, the Bishop of *Chartres*, Officiant in Pontificalibus (after he had Encensed the high-Altar) presented the Encense to his Maiestie, sitting vnder his Cloath of State in the first Chaire of the Quire, entring on the right hand.

After the Prayer of *Sanctus Spiritus*, said at the end of the *Magnificat*, and the Episcopall Benediction; his Maiestie went to the Altar, where presenting himselfe on his knees, hee tooke and signed the Oath, as Head and Soueraigne of the Order, vpon the true Crosse (as they say) lying on a square Cushion of Cloath of Gold, fairely fringed with Red, held by two Priests, and on the Booke of the Holy Euangelists, then held by *Phillip Hurault* Count *de Chiuerny*, and *de Limoux*, Chancellour of France, and of the two Orders of the King. Behold here the tenure of the Oath.

Le Serment du Roy.

NOus Henry, par la Grace de Dieu, Roy de France, & de Nauar, *Iurons & Vouons solennellement en vos mains à Dieu le Createur, de viure & Mourir en la Saincte Foy, & Religion Catholique, Apostolique, & Romaine*, Comme a vn bon Roy Treschrestien appertient, *& plustost mourir que d'y faillir.* De maintenir a Iamais L'Ordre du S. Esprit, *sans Iamais le laisser decheoir, amoindrir & diminuer, tant qu'il sera à nostre Pouuoir. Obseruer les Statuts, & Ordonnances dudit Ordre entierement selon leur forme, & teneur, & les faire exactement obseruer par Tout Ceux qui sont & seront cy apres receux audict Ordre*: Et par Expres *ne contreuenir Iamais, ny dispenser, ny essayer de changer, ou innouer les Statuts irreuocables d'Iceluy.* Ainsy *le iurons, vouons, & promettons sur la Saincte vraye Croix, & le Saincte Euangile*

Signe Henry

The Oath of the King.

WE Henry, by the Grace of God, King of France and of Nauarre, *doe Sweare and Vowe solemnely in your hands, to God the Creator, to Liue and Dye in the Holy Faith and Religion Catholique, Apostolique, and Romaine*; As to a good and Most-Christian King it appertaineth, *and rather to dye, then faile therein.* To maintaine (*for euer*) The Order of the Holy Ghost, *without euer suffering it to decay, lessen, and diminish, so long as it shall consist within our power. To obserue the Statutes and Ordenances of the said Order intirely, according to their forme and tenure; and to cause them to be exactly obserued, by All Such as are, and shall be hereafter receiued into the said Order.* And more expresly, *not to contrary at any time, nor dispense, nor essaye to change, or innouate the irreuocable Statutes thereof. This doe we Sweare, Vowe and promise on the Holy true Crosse, and the Holy Euangiles.*

Signed Henry

The King hauing made and signed the Oathe, the Lord of *Rhodes*, Great Maister of the Ceremonies of France, and Great Prouost of the Order; cloathed his Maiestie with the great Cloake of the

Order. Vpon the Mantelet whereof, the Lord Bishop of *Chartres* (being the Officiant) placed the great Collier thereof, making the signe of the Crosse, and saying: *In the Name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Holy-Ghost.*

The Lord *de Beau-Lieu-Ruze*, high Treasurer of the Order, deliuered into the Bishops hand, the Crosse of the Order, fastened at a faire Riband of Celestiall Blew Colour, to put about his necke, and a paire of Beades of Pennes, to present them to his Maiestie: who hauing receiued them from the Bishop, gaue them to the Lord *de Rocque-Laure* to keepe.

These Ceremonies being ended, his Maiesty was conducted backe to the Chaire, where the Prelates Associates, Commanders, and Officers of the Order, went to him, and kissed his hand with all humble reuerence. And Compline being finished, his Maiestie returned to the Bishops Pallace; with the same Pompe, Traine and Magnificence, as he had when he went to the Church.

The Thirteenth Chapter, was held in the *Augustines* at *Paris*, on Saturday, *being the seauenth day of Ianuary*, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred foure-*score and fifteene.*

ABout three houres after Noone, his Maiestie departed from the *Hostell*, Sir-named of *Hercules*, in regard that his imaginarie Labours (reported by Poets) are very ingeniously there figured both within and without it. But yet belonging to the house of *Nantouillet*, at which *Hostell*, euermore hath bin made the meeting of the Knights of the *Holy-Ghost*, from the first Institution thereof, and as often as the Ceremonie hath bin celebrated at *Paris*. And thence he went to heare the Euening Seruice at the *Augustines*, according to the accustomed obserued Order.

After the singing of *Magnificat*, and the Prayer to the Blessed-Spirit: His Maiestie, assisted with the Great *Almoner*, and Officers of the Order, went and sate somewhat neere to the high Altar. And at this Session, were made Knights and Associates of the Order, as followeth.

Prelates of the Order.

PHilip *du Bec*, Archbishop, and Duke of *Rheimes*, Peere of France, Bishop of *Nantes*, and Councellour of Estate. *Portoit dix Pieces, Vn premier & Quatriesme Quartiers Fascelé d'Argent & de Gueulles. Aux Deuxiesme & Troisiesme d'Argent, à Deux Faces de Synople, à trois Merlettes de Gueulles. Sur le Tout, Escartelé, Gueulles, à la Bande d'Or. Le Deuxiesme de Gueulles à la Croix d'Argent. Le Troisiesme Bande d'Or & d'Azur, à la Bordure de Gueulles. au Quatriesme d'Argent, à Deux Faces de Gueulles. Sur le Tout du Tout, à six Annelets d'Argent. 3, 2. 1.*

Henry Descoubleau, Bishop *de Malesoys*, Councellour of Estate. Beareth as before hath bin declared.

Commanders of the Order.

H*Enry de Bourbon*, Prince of the Blood, Duke *de Montpensier*, Peere of France, &c. and Gouernour of Normandie. *Portoit de France, au Baston de Gueulles, Brizé au Hault d'vn Daulphine d'Argent, & d'Autres y chet mis en Croissant montant d'Argent.*

The Crest, A Floure de Luce double.

The Supporters, Two Greyhounds white.

Henry d'Orleans, Duke of *Longue-Ville*, Peere of France, Soueraigne *de Neuf-Chastell*, Count of *Dunois*, and of *Tancaruille*, Councellour of Estate, and Gouernour of *Picardie*. *Portoit de France, au Baston, & Lambeau d'Argent, que l'on dict de Longue-Ville.*

The Crest, A double Floure de Luce.

Supporters, One Angell or two.

Frances d'Orleans, Count of Saint *Pol*, Councellour of Estate, and Captaine of a hundred Men of Armes of the Ordenances (Afterward Duke *de Fronsac*, Peere of France, in regard of his wife, Madame *Anne*, Inheritrixe of the House of *Caulmont* in *Guienne*.) *Portoit de Longue-Ville, Escartelé de Bourbon.*

Crest, A double Floure de Luce.

Supporters, One Angell or two.

Anthony de Brichanteau, Lord of *Beaumanoir, Nangis*, Councellour of Estate, and Captaine of fiftie Men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit d'Azur, à six Bezans d'Argent. 3. 2. 1.*

The Crest.

The supporters.

Iohn de Beau-Manoir, Lord and Baron of *Lauardin*, and of *Tuffé, Asse*, &c. Count of *Negrepelice*; Councellour of Estate, and Captaine of fifty Men of Armes of the Ordenances. Afterward Marshall of France, and Gouernour of *Maine, Lauall* and *Le Perche*. *Portoit d'Azur, Vnze Billetes d'Argent. 4. 3. 4.*

The Crest.

The Supporters.

Frances Despinay, Lord of Saint *Luke*, Baron of *Creue-Coeur*, and *Daruert*, Peere and *Castillan* of *Cambresis*, Councellor of Estate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordenances, Gouernor of *Brouage*, and of the Isles of *Xaintonge*, and Lieutenant Generall for his Maiesty in Bretaigne. Afterward Great Maister of the Artillerie of France. *Portoit Escartelle, Au Premier d'Argent, au Cheuron d'Azur, charge d'Vnze Bezants d'Or. Au Deuxiesme Escartele. Au Premier de Gueules, à la Face d'Or, au Chef Eschiequete de Trois Traicts d'Argent, & d'Azur. Au Deuxiesme d'Ermines, à la Croix de Gueules, chargee de Cinq Quintefuilles d'Or. Au Troisiesme de Gueules, a Deux Bars Adossez d'Or, seme de Treffles de mesme. Au Troisiesme Grand Quartier de Gueules, a Trois Faces d'Or. Au Quatriesme et Dernier Grand Quartier, d'Azur, Frette d'Or.*

Crest, A Moores head Black, Banded with Siluer.

Supporters, Two Vnicornes Siluer.

Roger de Belle-Garde, Marquesse *de Versoy*, Lord and Baron of *Termes*, Councellour of Estate, Great Esquire of France, Prime Gentleman of the Kings Chamber, and afterwardes Gouernour of *Bourgongne*: beareth as before hath beene said.

Crest.

Supporters.

Henry d'Albret, Count of *Marempnee*, Baron of *Miossens*, of *Coaraze* in *Bearn*, and of the Isle of *Oleron*; Councellor of Estate, and Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit Escartele, au Premier de France, Escartele d'Albret, qui est de Gueules sans Brizure. Au Deuxiesme d'Azur, a Deux Leopards d'Or. Au Troisiesme de Bourbon. Et le Dernier Escartele de Foix, et de Bearn.*

Crest.

Supporters.

Anthony de Rocquelaure, Lord of the sayde place, of *Biran*, &c. Councellor of Estate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordenances, Maister of the Kings Wardrobe. Afterward Marshall of France, and Lieutenant in the Gouernment of *Guienne*. *Portoit d'Azur, a Deux Vaches de Gueules, Acornees Acollees, & Clarinees d'Azur; au Chef d'Azur, chargee de Trois Estoilez d'Or. Sur le Tout, d'Azur, à vn Lyon d'Or.*

Crest.

Supporters.

Charles, Sire de Humieres, Marquesse *d'Encre*, Councellor of Estate, Captaine of Fiftie men of Armes of the Ordenances, and Lieutenant Generall in Picardie. *Portois d'Argent, Frette de Sable.*

Crest.

Supporters.

William de Hault-Mer, Lord of *Feruaques*, Count *de Grancey*, Baron of *Maulney*, Councellor of Estate, Captain of Fiftie men of Armes of the Ordenances, Lieutenant Generall in Normandie, Marshall of the Campe, and afterward Marshall of France. *Portoit Escartele, au premier, d'Or, a Trois Faces Ondees d'Azur: au Second d'Or, a la Bande Viuree d'Azur: au Troisiesme de Gueules, a trois Bandes d'Argent. Et le Quatriesme & Dernier d'Azur au Lion d'Or, seme de Billettes de mesme.*

Crest.

Supporters.

Frances de Cugnac, Lorde of *Dampierre*, Councellour of Estate, Captaine of fifty men of Armes of the Ordenances. *Portoit Gyronne d'Argent, & de Gueules de Huict pieeces.*

Crest, The necke of an Ostridge.

Supporters, Two Sauages.

Anthony de Sylly, Count *de la Roche-Pot*, Baron of *Montmirall*, Soueraigne *Danuille, Damoiseau de Commerchis*, Councellour of Estate, and Captaine of an Hundred men of Armes, of the Ordinances. *Portoit Escartele, Aux Premier & Quatriesme Quartiers de Silly, & de la Roche Guyon. Aux Deuxiesme & Troisiesme Escartele de Laual & d'Eureux. Sur le Tout de Sarebruche, qui est d'Azur au Lyon d'Argent seme de Croix, Recroisetees au Pied fiche de mesme:* As you may behold formerly emblazoned.

Crest.

Supporters.

Odet de Matignon, Count of *Torigny*, Councellour of Estate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, Marshall of the Field, and Lieutenant for the King in Normandie. Beareth as before is said.

Crest.

Supporters.

Frances de la Grange, Lord of *Montigny*, and of *Sery*, Baron *des Ais-d'Angillon*, Councellour of Estate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, Gouernour of Paris. Afterward Marshall of France, and Lieutenant Generall in the Countries, *Blessois, Dunois, Vendosmois*, and County of *Gien. Portoit d'Azur, à Trois, Ranchers d'Or, Escartele de la Roche-Chouard.*

Crest.

Supporters.

Charles de Balsac, Lord and Baron of *Dunes*, Coun-

Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances. Beareth as before hath beene ſaid. *Et ſur le Tout de Grauille, qui eſt de Gueulles, à Trois Fermaulx d'Or; Party de Milan.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Charles de Coſſe, Count of *Briſac*, Councellour of Eſtate and Captaine of Fifty men of Armes, of the Ordinances, Marſhall and Great Pantler of France, and Lieutenant Generall in *Bretaigne. Portoit de Sable, à Trois Faces Denchees d'Or.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Peter de Mornay, Lord of *Buhy*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances: One of the foure Marſhals of the Field, & Gouernour of Paris. *Portoit Face d'Argent, & de Gueulles de Huict Pieces, au Lyon brochant ſur le Tout, de Sable Coronne d'Or.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Frances de la Magdelaine, Marqueſſe *de Ragny*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Gouernour for his Maieſtie in the Countrey of *Niuernois. Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier d'Ermines, à Trois Bandes de Gueulles, chargee d'Vnze Coquilles d'Or. Au Seconde d'Or, à Vne Croix Ancbree de Gueules. Au Troiſieſme de Gueules à Trois Bandes d'Argent. Le Quatrieſme de Bourgongne ancien.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Claude de L'iſle, Lord of *Marinault*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordenances, Gouernour of *Laon* and Lieutenant Generall in the Iſle of France. *Portoit de Gueulles à la Face d'Argent, & Sept Merletes de meſme, Quattre en Chef, & Trois en poincte.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Charles de Choiſeull, Lord of *Praſlin*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an Hundred Archers, Guards attending on the Kings Body, and Gouernour and Bayliffe of *Troyes* in *Champaigne. Portoit d'Azur à la Croix d'Or, accompagnee de Dixhuict Billettes de meſme, Dix aux deux Quartiers d'enhault & Huict aux Deux de deſſoubs. Eſcartele de Gueules, au Lyon d'Or, Coronne de meſme. Sur le Tout de Sable, à Deux Faces d'Argent, Eſcartele d'Argent, au Lyon de Sable.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Humbert de Marcilly, Lord of *Cipierre*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Marſhall of the Field. *Portoit de Sable, à Trois Faces d'Or, à la Bordure de Gueulles. Eſcartele d'Argent, à Trois Lyons de Sable, Armez & Cormaez d'Or, 2. 1.*

The Creſt.

Supporters.

Gilbert de Chazeron, Lord of the ſaid place, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, Gouernour and Lieutenant General in *Bourbonnois. Portoit à Or, au Chef Emmanche de Trois pieces d'Azur.*

The Creſt.

Supporters.

Rene Viau, Lord of *Chanliuaut*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, & Gouernour *de l'Auxerrois. Portoit de Gueulles, à la Bande d'Or, accompagnee de Six Merlettes de meſme, Trois en Chef, & pareil nombre en Poincte.*

The Creſt.

Supporters.

Claude Gruell, Lord *de la Frette, de la Ver-trouſe*, and of *Pouillet*, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Councellour of Eſtate. *Portoit d'Argent, à Trois Fuſes de Sable.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

George Babou, Lord *de la Bourdaiſiere*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred Gentlemen of the Kings Houſe. *Portoit d'Argent au Lyon de Gueulles, Sortant d'Vn Nuage d'Azur Tenant Vne Poignee, de Veſſe en Rameau de Trois pieces de Synople. Eſcartele de Synople, au Pal d'Argent: Party de Gueulles, au Pal d'Argent.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Henry, Duke of *Montmorencie*, Peere and Conſtable of France, and Gouernour of *Languedock. Portoit de Montmorency, qui eſt d'Or, à la Croix de Gueulles, Cantonnee de Seize Alerions d'Azur.*

The Creſt, A Dogge, the Simbole of Fidelity. And for the Soule of this Deuice, the ancient French Motto ΑΠΛΑΟΣ without fraud, and without error.

The Supporters, Two Angels, for Eſquirie.

Here wee are to note and know, that Hil-

...us, Abbot of S. *Denis* in France, writeth, to ...e read the acts of the Life & Martyrdome ... S. *Denis* the *Areopagite*, firſt Biſhop of *Pa-*..., and of his fellowes, compoſed in Latine by ...*ibius*, ſonne to a Pariſian Gentleman, called ...*ibius*, Lord of *Montmorency*. This *Lisbius*, ...ch *Hildvin*, was the firſt that receiued Saint ...*nis* into the Precincts of *Paris*, and the firſt ...at Saint *Denis* baptiſed. This was alſo the ...ne *Lisbius*, that gaue the place and meanes ...nuenient for building an Oratorie, on the ...mbe of Saint *Denis* and his fellowes, and ...o cauſed Saint *Rieul* (Diſciple to the Great ...*eopagite*, to ſee sacred the firſt Biſhop of ...*ris*, by him) with the vertuous Lady *Catul-...a*, whom ſome haue written to bee Siſter to ...s *Lisbius*, Lord of *Montmorency*.

Now although there are Sixe Baronies, all ...biect to the Biſhop of *Paris*, the Lords ...ereof ought to cary the Canopie ouer him ...on the day of his ioyfull entrance, as name-... *Montmorency*, *Chereuſe*, *Luzarches*, *Maſſy*, ...nt-Iay, with the *Queux in Brie*, and each of ...ſe Barons may take the Title of Baron, of ...nce, as anciently they haue done: yet it is ...notwithſtanding, that the Sonnes and de-...ndants of this *Lisbius*, *Lord of Montmorency*, ...n eſpeciall note of excellencie and prece-...cie before the other, haue ſo conſerued ...mſelues (euen to this very day) in that ho-...urable Title of *Prime Baron of France*, and ...y for their warre-Crye: *Dieu Ayde au Pre-...r Chreſtien*. Witneſſed by the Dogge for ...reſt and Embleme, as the marke or note of ...elity, and by the Soule of the Deuice, this ...ient French word ΑΠΛΑΝΟΣ, *Exempt ...reur*. Giuing all men to vnderſtand, that ...hey haue beene the firſt that receiued and ...braced the faith of Ieſus Chriſt. So in like ...ner they haue neuer been tainted or ſoyled ...any hereſy whatſoeuer, but haue cõtinu-...faithfull & cõſtant in the true beleefe of the ...urch: & that is the reaſon, why the Armes of ...houſe are vpheld & ſupported by Angels.

Hercules de Rohan, Duke of *Monthazon*, ...e of France, Count of *Roche-fort*, Coun-...our of Eſtate, Captain of an hundred men ...mes of the Ordinances, Great Huntſman ...rance, and Gouernour of the Biſhoprick, ...County of *Nantes*. *Portoit Eſcartele. Aux ...ier & Quatrieſme de Rohan, qui eſt de Gu-...s à Neuf Macles d'Or, 3. 3. 3. Au Deuxieſ-...e Nauarre, & au Troiſieſme d'Eureux, qui ...e Erance, au Baſton Componne de Gueulles & ...rgent, Sur le Tout de Milan.*

Creſt.

Supporters. } As before.

Charles de Mont-Morency, Lord of *Damuille*, Count of *Secondigny*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred men of Armes, of the Ordinances, and Admirall of *France*. *Portoit de Mont-morency, à vne Croix d'Argent en Abiſme, vn en Cœur, ſur celle-la de Gueules.*

Creſt. } As before.

Supporters. }

Alphonſo d'Ornano, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an Hundred men of Armes, of the Ordinances, Gouernour of *Daulphine*, afterwards of *Gnienne*, and Marſhall of *France*, *Portoit de Gueulles, à la Tour Donieonnee & Crenele d'Or, Maſſonnee de Sable. Eſcartele d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueulles, au Chef d'Azur, charge d'vne Fleur de Lys d'Or.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Vrbane de Lauall, Lord of *Bois-Daulphine*, Marqueſſe *de Sable*, Vicount *de Breteau*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Marſhall of France. *Portoit de Mont-morency, la Croix chargee de cinq Cocquilles d'Argent.* The ancient Houſe of *Laual*, before it was worne into that of *Mont-morency*, with reſeruation of the Sirname of *Laual*. *Portoit de Gueulles, à Cinq Cocquilles d'Argent. 3. 2.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Charles de Luxembourg, Count of *Brienne*, and of *Ligny*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of an hundred men of Armes of the Ordinances. *Portoit d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules Coronne d'Or.*

Creſt, *Melluſina.*

Supporters, Two Griffons Gold.

Gilbert de la Tremouille, Marqueſſe of *Royan*, Count of *Benon*, and Baron *Delbonne & D'Apremont*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred Gentlemen of the Kings Houſe, and Seneſchall of *Poictou*. *Portoit Couppe de Huict pieces, Quatre en Chef, Sonſtonus de pareil nombre en Poincte. Le Premier de Orleans; Seconde de Milan; Tierce de Bourbon; & le Quart de Bretaigne: à la Bordure de Gueulles. Le Cinquieſme (qui eſt le Premier de Soustenu) eſt d'Apremont*, and not of *Sauoy*, be not deceiued thereih. *Le Sixieſme de Luzignan. Le Septieſme de Coitiuy, & le Huictieſme Mont-Morency-Laual: Sur le Tout, de la Tremouille, qui eſt d'Or, au Cheuron de Gueulles, accompagne de Trois Aigles, d'Azur, Deux en Chef, & Vne en Poincte.*

Lunall is formerly obſerued.

Luſig-

Lusignan. Burele d'Argent, & d'Azur, au Lyon de Gueulles, Arme Lampasse & Coronne d'Or, iusques à Huict & Bure, le doibt estre de Dix pieces: herein then is the difference.

And as for the Armes of *Apremont*, or of *Aspremont*, an Earles or Counts House originally of *Lorraine*, wherein the County of *Apremont* is seated. *Elle porte de Gueules à la Croix plaine d'Argent.*

For the Timber or Creſt, An Imperiall Mantle or Cloake of Purple, with Taſſels or Cordons of Crimſon Silke, and the Taſſels couered with fine Caules of Gold.

This Mantle ſeruеth for Supporters, and enuelopeth the Eſcutchion. From forth the necke of the Mantle, iſſueth a Blacke Eagles head, crowned with Gold.

The Eldeſt Sonnes of this Houſe, are Lords of *Sorre*, *Vendy*, and of *Nantueill* in *Retelois*, on the Riuer of *Aysne*. In the Yeare, One Thouſand, Fiue Hundred and Foure-Score. *Iohn de Sorcy* as chiefe of the Name and Armes of the Houſe of *Aſpremont*, obtained in the Imperiall Chamber at *Spire*: Iudgement and Sentence of Reſtoration to the County of *Aſpremont*, againſt his Highnes of *Lorraine*. And ſince that time, hee hath ſtiled himſelfe *Iohn* Count of *Apremont*, Baron of *Dun*, of Saint *Remy*, of *Sorcy*, &c. Being deceaſed without Iſſue by his Wife *Claudia de Coucy*; the Name, Armes and Rights of the Earledome of *Apremont*, went to the Sons of his Brother *Charles*, Baron of *Apremont*, Lord of *Nantueill*: who in his firſt Marriage eſpouſed *Lucie, de Villes*, by whom he had three Sonnes yet liuing, but not married. His ſecond Wife was *Suſan de Harange*, of the Houſe of *Lorraine*, Widdow to the Lord *de Harancourt*, and Mother to the Lord *de Harancourt*, at this preſent Gouernour of the City of *Nancy*. Of this ſecond Marriage are iſſued two Sonnes, the eldeſt whereof is *Abſolon*, Baron of *Aſpremont*, Lord of *Nantueill*, and Captaine *du Vol du Milan pour le Roy*, Husband to *Claudia d'Ey*, Daughter and ſole Inheretrix to the late Lord of *Nouion* the County, neere to *Pere* in *Picardy*, and of a Daughter of the Houſe of *Gramont*.

This Houſe of *Gramont*, originally of the Counts of *Bourgongne*: *Porte d'Azur à trois Teſtes de Roynes Coronnes d'Or.* 2.1. In honourable memory, that one of this houſe, combated & ouercame in ſingle fight a Giant who made war againſt three Siſters, Daughters to a King of Scotland. There are of this Houſe dwelling in *Therarche*. Of this Marriage between *Abſolon* of *Apremont*, and *Claudia d'Ey* is iſſued a Sonne, aged (at this preſent) about Seauen yeares old, and named *Charles*, in whoſe perſon ought to be the chiefe Name, Armes and Rights, of the County of *Aſpremont*, which the Duke of *Lorraine* keepeth frō this Family.

The Branche of the Eldeſt thereof, ended in the perſon of the late *Iohn d'Aſpremont*, Prince *d'Ambliſe* Lord of *Lumes*, and of *Rozancie*, who dyed in the yeare One Thouſand Fiue Hundred and Forty, if I am not deceiued. Who left no Iſſue, but only a Daughter named *Iaquelina d'Aſpremont*, Wife to *Affricano d'Angbure* Lord of *Burlaimont*, to whom ſhee brought (in Marriage) the Principality of *Ambliſe*, the Seigneury of *Bezancy*, and other Lands belonging to that eldeſt branch of *Aſpremont*, giuen by the Dukes of *Lorraine*, in exchange of certaine Rights, which the *Aſpremonts* of *Ambliſe* held in the City of *Sathenay*, (*vulgarly called Stenay*) and other neighbouring places, poſſeſſed by the Dukes of *Lorraine*.

By this Marriage of *Affricano d'Angbure* and *Iacquelina d'Apremont*, was begotten a younger Sonne, named *Affricano d'Angure*, Lord of *Burlaimont*, Prince of *Ambliſe*, Generall of the Army of the Duke of *Lorraine*, deceaſed: But the ſaid Generall *Ambliſe* was ſlaine in the ouerthrow of the ſame Armie, at the Siege of the Towne of *Beamont in Argonne*, in the yeare One Thouſand, Fiue Hundred Four-Score and Twelue. Returne wee now againe to our Knights of the moſt noble Order of the Holy *Ghoſt*.

Iames Chabot, Mraqueſſe of *Mirebeau*, Counſellour of Eſtate, Campe-Maiſter of the Regiment of *Champaigne*, and Lieutenant in *Bourgongné*. *Portoit d'Or à Trois Chabots de Gueules mis en Paulx.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Iohn Sire de Bucill, Count of *Sancerre*, of *Maran*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Great Cup taſter of France. *Portoit d'Azur au Croiſſant montant d'Argent, à ſix Croiſettes, au Pied fiche de meſme, Eſcartelé de Gueulles, à la Croix Anchree d'Or. Sur le Tout Daulphine, Eſcartele de Champaigne*; As before hath been auouched.

Creſt.

Supporters.

William de Gadagne, Lord of *Bornay*, of *Verdun*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Gouernour in *Lyonois*. *Portoit de Gueules la Croix Engreſlee d'Or.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Lewes de l'Hoſpital, Baron of *Vitry*, Counſellour of Eſtate, Captaine of the Guards, attending on his Maieſties body, Lieutenant generall in *Brie*, and Gouernour of *Meaux*. *Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier de Naples & de Sicile. Le Second d'Arragon. Le Troiſieſme de Gueules, à Deux Leopards d'Or. Le Quatrieſme de Gueules, à Deux Fleur de Lys d'Or. Le Cinquieſme d'Azur, à vne Croix Potencée d'Argent. Le Sixieſme de Gueules au Coq d'Argent, Creſté, Barbé, Membré & Membrée d'Or, tenant de ſon pied dextre vne Eſpee d'Argent, Montée d'vne Fleur de Lys d'Or. Sur le tout de l'vne ſceene in the ſaid Armes one Quarter Gueules, à vne Croix Anchree d'Argent Vairee de Pots d'Azur.* And ſo you may ſee them blazoned at the *Minimes de la Place Royale Paris*, where he lyeth buried.

Creſt.

Supporters.

Pons de Lauzieres, Baron of *Themines*, and *Cardaillac*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, Seneſchall & Gouernour of *Quercy*, & afterwards Marſhall of France. *Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier d'Argent, à vn Ozier de Synople. Au Deuxieſme de Gueulles à Deux Cheures paſſantes d'Argent. Au Troiſieſme de Gueules, au Lyon d'Argent, Orlé de Bezans de meſme. Le Quatrieſme, Faſcé d'Or & de Sable, de Six pieces au Chef d'Ermines.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Lewes d'Ognies, Count of *Chaulne*, Baron of *Quintz*, Councellour of Eſtate Captaine of fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Gouernour of *Mont-Didier*, *Peronne* and *Roy*. Beareth as before is ſaid.

Creſt.

Supporters.

Adame de Malin, Baron of *Luz*, Councellor of Eſtate, Captaine of fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Gouernour in *Bourgongne*. *Portoit d'Azur, à vn Sauuage tenant Maſſe leuee d'Or, Party d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueulles.*

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing, Red.

The Supporters, Two Sauages, Gold.

Anthony D'Aumont, Count of *Chaſteauneuf*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances. Beareth as already hath beene ſhowne.

Creſt.

Supporters.

Lewis de la Chaſtre, Baron of *Muſſy-Forn*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances. Beareth as his Father ſpoken of before.

Creſt.

Supporters.

Iohn de Durfort, Lord of *Born*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Lieutenant Generall of the Artillery of France. *Portoit de Gueules à la Bande & Bordure d'Or.*

The Creſt.

Supporters.

Lewes de Bueill, Lord of *Racan*, Councellour of Eſtate, & Captaine of Fifty men of Armes, of the Ordinances. *Portoit Eſcartele, Au Premier, Eſcartele de Bueill*, which, is (as wee haue formerly ſaid) *d'Azur, au Croiſſant montant d'Argent, accompagnee de Six Croix Recroiſettees au Pied fiche de meſme, Eſcartele de Gueulles à la Croix Anchree d'Or. Au Deuxieſme d'Azur, vn Aigle d'Or. Au Troiſieſme d'Agent, à Trois Cheurons de Gueules, à la Face d'Azur, ſeme de France, au Lyon d'Argent Coronné d'Or.*

The Creſt.

Supporters.

Claude de Harville, Lord of *Paiſaiſeau*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Gouernour of *Compeigne*. *Portoit de Gueulles, à la Croix d'Argent, chargee de Cinq Coquilles de Sable.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Euſtace de Conflans, Vicount *d'Auchy*, Lord *de Breoy le Buiſſon*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes, of the Ordinances, Great Marſhall of his Maieſties Lodgings, and Gouernour of the Towne of Saint *Quintins*. *Portoit d'Azur ſeme de Billetes d'Or, au Lyon de meſme.*

The Creſt.

Supporters.

Lewes de Grimouille, Lord of *Earbant*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, and Gouernour of *Eureux*. Beareth as before.

The Creſt, A Braches Head, Siluer.

The Supporters, Two Greyhounds, Siluer.

Charles de Neufuille, Baron of *Alingcourt*, Counceller of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of the Ordinances. Great Marſhall of the Lodgings. Afterward Marqueſſe of *Ville-Roy*, and Gouernour of *Lyonnois*, *Beaudenois*, and the Forreſts. Beareth as his Father *Nicholas de Neu-*

Neufuille, Great Treasurer of the Order, at the first Chapter.

The Creſt, An Vnicorne ſpringing, Silver.

The Supporters, Two Vnicornes, the ſame.

The Fourteenth Chapter was held in the Church of the *Auguſtines*, at Rouen, *where were aſſembled the very* Nobleſt Eſtates of the Kingdome; the laſt Day of the Yeare, One Thouſand, *Fiue Hundred, Foure Score and Sixteene.*

ON this Chapter, King *Henry* the Great (of glorious memory) tooke from the Great Collers of the Order, the Cyphers or Characters of the deceaſed King *Henry* the Third, of famous Remembrance, his Predeceſſor in the Place. And in ſtead of them, he cauſed to be there fixed Trophees of Armes, enterlaced with the Letters *H.* Crowned: And in the ſaid Chapter were made theſe Knights following.

Anne de Leuy, Duke of *Ventadour*, Peere of France, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of an hundred men Armes of the Ordinances, and Lieutenant Generall in the Gouernment of *Languedock. Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier de Gueules, à Trois Bandes d'Or; ou de Gueules à la Bande d'Or de Trois pieces. Au Deuxieſme de Leuy, qui eſt d'Or, à Trois Cheurons, ou vn Cheuron de Sable, de Trois pieces*, according as you pleaſe to haue it blazoned. *Au Troiſieſme de Gueules, à Trois Eſtoiles d'Or. 2. 1. Et le Quatrieſme d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueules. Sur le Tout Eſchiquier d'Or & de Gueules.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Iames Mitte, Count of *Miollons*, Lord of *Cheuriers*, and of Saint *Chaumont* in *Lyonnois*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Capaine of an hundred men of Armes of the Ordinances. *Portoit aux Premier & Quatrieſme au Saultoir de Gueules, à l'Orle de Sable, chargee de Huict Fleurs de Lys d'Or. Au Deuxieſme, Bande d'Or & de Gueules de Six pieces. Au Troiſieſme d'Or, à la Bande de Gueules. Eſcartele d'Or au Cheuron de Sable. Sur le Tout d'Argent, à la Face de Gueules, Party d'Azur.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Frances Dauerſon, Lord of *Bellin*, and of *Sevillac*, Baron of *Mille*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes, Ordinances, and Gouernour *Han. Portoit Eſcartele. Au Premier & Quatrieſme de Gueules à Trois Iumelles d'Argent. Deuxieſme & Troiſieſme d'Azur, à la Croix d'Or ty d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueules.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Bertrand de Baillieux, Lord and Baron *Poyane*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of ty men of the Ordinances, Gouernour of Towne and Caſtle of *Acqs*, and Seneſhall the Lands of *Bourdeaux. Portoit d'Or, au Lier Rampnat de Gueules Accolle d'Argent. tele d'Azur, à Trois Canuetes d'Argent.* If be not Beaked and Ongled, they were tlets.

Creſt.

Supporters.

Rene de Rieux, Lord of *Sourdeac*, Marque *d'Oyzant*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captain Fifty men of Armes of the Ordinances, Gouernour of *Ereſt* in *Bretaigne*, *Portoit Rieux, qui eſt d'Azur, à Dix Bezans d'Or 3. 3. 1. Eſcartele de Bretaigne. Sur le Tout de Hermi Qui eſt de Gueules à Deux Faces, ou vne Fa d'Or, de Deux pieces.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Brandelis de Champaigne, Marqueſſe de *lenes*, Councellour of Eſtate, and Captain Fifty men of Armes of the Ordenances. *toit Frette d'Argent & de Sable, au Chef d gent, charge d'vn Lyon Naiſſant, de Gueules cartele de Laual. Sur le Tout de Champaigne, ty d'Azur, ſeme de France d'Or, au Lyon de me.* See before in *Lewes de Champaigne.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Iames de L'Hoſpitall, Count of *Chiſy*, Ba of *Montigny*, Councellour of Eſtate, and C taine of Fifty men of Armes of the Ordin ces. *Porte Eſcartele. Au Premier de Regle Deuxieſme d'Eſcoſſe. Au Troiſieſme de Hun Party d'Arragon. Au Quatrieſme Eſcartele Tour, & de Bologne. Sur le Tout de l'Hoſpitall eſt de Gueules, au Cocq d'Argent, Creſte, Becque & de Membre d'Or.*

The Creſt.

The Supporters.

Robert de la Vieuville, Lord and Baron *Rugles*, and of *Arſeilliers*, Councellour of ſtate, Captaine of Fifty men of Armes of Ordinances, Great Faulconer de France, Gouernour of *Meſieres*, of *Rheimes*, the Co

and Duchie of Retelois. Portoit d'Argent, à Trueilles de Cheſne, ou de Hon. 3. 2. 1.

Creſt.

Supporters.

Charles de Matignon, Count of *Torigny*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fiftie Men Armes of the Ordenances, and Lieutenant the lower *Normandie*. Beareth as before is

Creſt.

Supporters.

Anthony des Vrſins, Lord *de la Chapelle*, and *Dou*, Marqueſſe of *Treinell*, and Baron of *ly*, Councellour of Eſtate, Captaine of fifMen of Armes of the Ordenances, and arſhall of the Campe for his Maieſties Arſies. Beareth of the *Vrſins*, emblazoned in first Chapter, for *Chriſtopher des Vr-*

Creſt.

Supporters.

After the ſaid Chapter, the King pleaſed to Aſſiate into the Order:

Prelates.

mes Dauy, Cardinall of *Perronne*, Councelour to the King in his Councels of Eſtate, d Priuate, Archbiſhop of *Sens*, and Great moner of France, by the deceaſe of *Regild de Beaulne. Portoit d'Azur, au Cheuron Argent, à Trois Harpes d'Or, Deux en Chef, & e en Poincte.*

And his Maieſtie ſent the Collar of his Orr into *Italie*, to two Lords, that were made ights thereof.

Commanders of the Order.

DOm *John Anthony Vrſin*, Duke of *Sancto Gemini*, Prince of *Scandriglia*, Count of *&c. Portoit les Vrſins*, as before hath bin ated.

The Creſt.

Supporters.

Dom Alexander, Counte Sforzza, Duke of *gna*, Prince of *Valmontana*, Count of *Sun-Fiora*, Marqueſſe of *Proſpero, &c. Portoit Argent, au Lyon de Gueulles, tenant entre Pattes vne Fleur de Soucy, fueillee de Sy-ple.*

Creſt.

Supporters.

Officers of the Order.

John du Gue, King of Armes of the Order. *Portoit d'Azur, au Cheual effraye d'Or, au Chef de meſme, charge d'vne Treſle de Gueulles.* After him ſucceeded in the ſame Office.

Mathurin Martineau, Lord of *Pont. Portoit d'Azur, au Demy-Vol d'Azur; Au Chef d'Or, charge d'vn Croiſſant montant de Sable, Coſtoye de Deux Eſtoiles de meſme.*

Mathurin Lambert, Vſher of the Order. *Portoit d'Argent au Cheuron d'Azur, charge de Cinq Eſtoiles d'Or, Accompagnee de Trois Rozes de Gueulles, ſouſtenues de Synople.* In the ſame Office ſucceeded him, his Sonne in Law.

Peter de Hanicque, called of *Beniamin*, Baron of *Cheny* and of *Pre. Porte Eſcartele. Au Premier & Quatrieſme Eſchiequete d'Argent & d'Azur; Couppe de Gueulles, au Rameau Couche d'Or. Au Deuxieſme & Troiſieſme d'Argent, Face en Deuize de Sable, ſouſtenant vn Lyon paſſant de meſme.*

The Fifteeneth Chapter was held in the Great Church of our *Lady at* Reimes, *in the yeare One thouſand* ſixe hundred and ten, on Monday, being the eighteenth Day of *October*. By

HEnry, thirteenth of that Name, King of France and of Nauarre, on the Morrow after his Sacring, hauing ſucceeded in the ſaid Kingdomes, by the vntimely death of his Royall Father, *Henry the Great* (of glorious memorie) who dyed at *Paris* on Friday, being the foureteenth day of May, in the ſaid yeare, One thouſand ſixe hundred and tenne.

His Maieſtie hauing bin Sacred on Sunday, being the Seauenteenth of October, by the Illuſtrious *Frances*, Duke and Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe*, Archbiſhoppe of *Rouen*, Primate of *Normandie*, and Deane of the Cardinals: would likewiſe receiue (by his hand) *The Order of the Holy-Ghoſt.* Which was accompliſhed at the ending of Euenſong, the King hauing taken the accuſtomed Oath, at the hands of the ſaid Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe.* Then he gaue the Order to his Couſine onely, and to no other.

Commanders of the Order.

HEnry *de Bourbon*, prime Prince of the Blood and firſt Peere of France, Prince of *Conde*, Duke of *Anguien*, & of *Chaſteau-Raoul*, Count

of *Clermont* in *Beauuaſis*, and of *Soiſſons*,&c. Councellour of Eſtate, Captaing of an hundre men of Armes of the Ordinances, & Gouernour of *Guienne*, the firſt Gouerment of France. *Porte de France au Baſton de Gueules pery en Bande.*

Prelates of the Order,

BY the death of the Cardinall *du Perron*, happening at the end of the Yeare, One Thouſand, Sixe Hundred and Eighteene.

Frances, Cardinal *de la Roche Foucauld*, Biſhop of *Senlis*, Councellour in the Councels of Eſtate, and priuate; was made Great Almoner of France, & aſſociated into the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*. *Portoit Burele d'Azur, & d'Argent, de Dix pieces*, (which were the Armes of the firſt Counts of *Luſignan*, and *de la Marche*) *à vne Cheuron de Gueules de Trois pieces, brochant & portant ſur le Tout.*

In this preſent Yeare, One Thouſand, Sixe Hundred and Nineteene, when wee finiſhed this long labour, which had well neere worne vs out of breath: His moſt Chriſtian Maieſty, in the deuotion which he beareth to the holy Sepulchre of our Sauiour in Ieruſalem, and to preſerue the memory of his Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, in thoſe Marches beyond the Seas, cauſed to be made (for ſending to the ſaid holy Sepulcher) the Ornaments and deckings neceſſary for the performance of diuine Seruice there. As namely.

The Adornement for the lower part of the Altar, of Cloth of Siluer, thickly ſemed with Flowers de Luces of Gold, very highly embоſſed, and a Great Croſſe of the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt* of Gold, couched and beautified with the Armes of France and *Nauarre*, with the Orders of S. *Michaell*, and of the *Holy-Ghoſt* embroydered round about it.

The Chaſuble, two Tuniques, three Coapes, The Miter for the Guardian; the Vaile & Corporall, two Stoles, three Fannes or Manip

The Arras for the Goſpell of fine Cloth Siluer, and all couered with Golden Flowe de Luces, very highly embоſſed. The whole releuated with embroydery of Gold, and Si uer, Flowers and Characters of the King, namely, the Letter L. croſſed in *Saultoire*, Hand of Iuſtice, and a Scepter, interchange bly wrought with the Queenes Characte double A. and all the deckings adorned w Doues, curiouſly formed in moſt rich ſumptuous embroydery, couched and qu red with the Armes of France and of *Nauar* according as an Altars furniſhment ſhould I my ſelfe did ſee theſe admirable Ado ments, the laſt Lent, in the houſe of *Alexa der Paynet*, Embroyderer to the King, Queen and *Monſieur*, neere to Saint *Honorius*.

Officers entertained into the Order,

THe ſame Yeare, by the Reſignation, pro formed by the Lord of *Rhodes*, which w done the Three and Twentieth day of March and deliuered into his Maieſties hands: it ple ſed him to make Election of that Noble Gen tleman

Henry Auguſtus de Lomenia, Lord *de la Ba auclers*, Counſellour to the King in hi Councels of Eſtate and priuate, and Secreta of his Commands: hee was honoured wi the Charge and Office of Prouoſt, & Maiſt of the Ceremonies of the Orders of France.

Il Porte Eſcartele. Aux Premier & Dern Quartiers d'Or, à la Arbre de Synople, aux Ba nes de meſme, dans leſquelles eſt vn Tourteau de Sable. Le Chef d'Azur, Charge de Trois Ba zanges d'Argent, Aux Deux, Troiſieſme d'Azu à vne Face de Trois pieces d'Or.

The Creſt, A Lyon riſing or ſpringi Gold.

The Supporters, Two Lyons, Gold.

HEere thinke we good to breath a while, with concluding this moſt famous Order of the Holy-Ghoſt, ſo much renowned through the Chriſtian world, and (in it ſelfe) ori Royall, although it hath proued fatall and vnfortunate. Firſt in the Founder, Henry Third of the Name, King of France and of Poland, murdered by a Iacobine Frier. An then in his Succeſſor, Henry the Fourth, worthily deſeruing the Title of Great, as i deed all his actions and deſignes were: yet murdered baſely by another Villaine, of whe wee ſhall haue more meete place to ſpeake hereafter, and according as occaſion ſerueth.

FINIS,

The Orders of *Mount-Carmell*, and of *Saint Lazarus*: The one reuiued or renewed againe at *Paris*, by the holy King Saint *Lewes*, in the Yeare One Thouſand, Two Hundred Fifty Foure: And the other there alſo, by King *Henry* the Fourth, Sir-named the Great, in the Yeare, One Thouſand, Sixe Hundred and Eight.

CHAP. XI.

L'Ordre du Saint Lazare.

HE Knights of the Order of *Saint Lazarus* (euen as the reſt were) being expelled and driuen out of the holy City of Ieruſalem, and likewiſe from the ſtrong City of *Acres*: were enforced to ſeeke for their ſafety in Europe. Whereupon, the good King S. *Lewes*, returning from his Voyage into thoſe parts, beyond the Seas, which was in the Yeare, One Thouſand, Fiue Hundred Fifty and Foure, in the Moneth of March: he brought with him along from thence a troope of thoſe Knights. To whom he gaue great benefits throughout all the Prouinces of his Kingdome, eſpecially in Townes, Borroughes, & Villages. And ſo much the rather, becauſe they addicted themſelues, to the curing of diſeaſed perſons, namely ſuch as were infected with Leaproſie, Meazelrie, and the like, whereby they were ſegregated from the ſociety & companying with any body.

The cruelty of the Turkes & Sarazens to Chriſtians in the Holy-Land.

The bounty of King Lewes to the Knights of S. Lazarus.



He gaue vnto them *Borigny*, neere to *Orleans*, which place thoſe Knights of Saint *Lazarus*, eſtabliſhed the Seate and abiding for their Great Maiſter on whom depended all the Commanders of the ſaid Order, which remained then in Italy, Germany and England. For, by the ſurprizall of *Acres*, which happened in the Yeare One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Seauen; they were enforced to leaue the Eaſt Parts, to ſeeke their fortune elſewhere. They held their Generall Chapter euery ſeauenth yeare, which was obſerued ſollemnly among them, enioying very great Reuennues: in regard they poſſeſſed all the houſes of diſeaſed perſons, as Spittles, Lazar-Hoſpitals, and the like, throughout all the Prouinces that were in Europe.

The cauſe of this Orders ſubuerſion.

In proceſſe of time, theſe Knights of *Saint Lazarus* became married men, & addicting their whole care for the maintenance of their Wiues & Children: began to miſuſe & neglect their wonted charitable prouidence, for the curing and recouery of ſuch impotent people. Wherupon, thoſe Princes and Great Lords vnder whom they liued, perceiuing their courſes to be more popular and licentious, then either their profeſſion allowed, or humane reaſon permitted: they tooke into their own power, and ſeized on their Commands, Hoſpitals, and Spittles, reſeruing the moſt part to themſelues, and giuing the remainder to the Knights of S. *Iohn* of Ieruſalem, now named of *Malta*, but in thoſe dayes of *Rhodes*.

Hugh Goodfellow, Pope of Rome.

In the Pontificality of Pope *Gregory*, the Thirteenth of that Name, (called before *Hugo Bon-Compagnio, Qui Portoit de Gueules au Dragon naiſſant d'Or*) *Emanuel Philibert*, Duke of *Sauoy*, was choſen chiefe and Great Maiſter of the ſaid Order of *S. Lazarus*, by Buls directed from the ſame Pope. Who cutting large thongs out of other mens Leather; gaue them all the Commanderies, and Spittles for Leaperous people in France, Germanie, Italy and Spaine.

Oppoſition made by the K. of France.

Now concerning France, oppoſition was made againſt this Grant, by the King of France & Poland, *Henry* Third of the Name, of bleſſed memory: becauſe the chiefe of the ſaid Order remaining in his Kingdome, the great Maiſters Office therof in meere right & equity appertained to him, rather then to any other Prince of Chriſtendome.

the Great Maisters Office thereof, in meere right and equity appertained, to
rather then to any other Prince in Christendome.

The Knights of *Malta* enioyed all of S. *Lazarus*.

The Knights of *Malta*, an inuincible band of Souldiers for Iesus Christe and
Bu'warke of Christendome, enioyed and possessed the greater part of the Hospi
and *Lazar-houses*, belonging to them of *Saint Lazarus*. Beside an infinite numbe
notable Priuiledges, with full and free exemption, from all Tenths and Contri
tions; yea, and vniting to their Mansion the Great Maistership of the said Order
Saint Lazarus. Vntill in our time, when Fryer *Aymar* of *Chates*, Knight of *Mal*
and Gouernour of *Diepe* in Normandy (renowned for his House, and for his ma
singular Seruices, which he performed to our lateſt Kings) forsooke the Title
Great Maister of the Order of *Saint Lazarus*.

Concerning the Order of the Virgin *Mary* of *Mount-Carmel*.

A new Order of Knighthood, of an Hundred French Gentlemen.

KIng *Henry* the Great, Fourth of the Name, of eternall Memory, by the exam
of the Dukes of *Bourbon*, and of *Vendosme*, his most famous Grand-fathers,
uing in his life time alwayes particular trust and confidence, in the succour
prayers of the Sacred Virgin: instituted a new Order, in honour of the Virgin
ry of *Mount-Carmell*. And composed it of an hundred Gentlemen, all Frenchme
of remarkable Houses, to wait and attend about his Person in following times,
occasion should call him to any warre: as a small Battalion of choyce men, and wo
deseruing to be trusted. To this Order hee destenied and appointed all Comma
deries, & Hospitals: to the end that these Knights of our Lady and of *Saint Lazar*
might haue the better meanes to giue their attendance in all necessities.

Pope *Paul* the Fifth, sitting at that time in the Sacred Seate, confirmed this Institu
tion, by his Bulle giuen at Rome in the Lateran Pallace, the Fourteenth of the Ca
lends of March, One Thousand, Sixe Hundred and Seauen. And therein, after he
hath extolled the deuotion and Pietie of the most Christian King: by good rig
he calleth him the Eldest Sonne of the Church, and prescribeth (conformably to th
intention of his most Christian Maiesty) the Statutes and the Forme which th
Knights of the Order should hold afterward.

The Statutes and Ordinances appointed by the King, to be obserued by the Order.

1. THat they shall establish the Chiefe Residencie of their Order, in any City o
Towne either by Land or Sea, where it shall please the Maiestie of the mo
Christian King.

2. That no one shall be receiued into the Order, if he be not a French Gentlema
Noble by foure R ces, as well by the Fathers as Mothers side.

3. That the Knights of the said Order shall haue for their Patron, the Sacre
Virgin, called of *Mount Carmell*, whose Feast they are to celebrate yearely, the Six
teenth day of the Moneth Iuly.

4. That they shall abstaine from eating Flesh on Wednesday in euery weeke: an
dayly say the Office of the Virgin *Mary*, or (at least) their Chaplet of Beades.

5. They shall weare on their Cloakes, and on the left side, a Crosse of Tawn
Veluet or Sattin, *Anchree à l' Orle a' Argent*. In the middest whereof, and in a rou
dell, shall bee the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, entoured with Beames of Gold,
wrought by embroyderie. About their neckes they shall weare an Ancred Crosse
Gold, and in the middest thereof (both on the one side and other) the Image of th
Virgin *Mary*, enamelled, hanging at a Riband of Tawny Silke.

The Husband of three wiues.

6. They may be married twice in their life time, but no more, and one of the
must be to a woman that is a widdow onely, and not to be a *Trigamus*: They sha
keep coniugall chastitie, and make a vow to doe it.

7. They are not to be admitted into the said Order, except they be borne in
and loyall Wedlock, and whereof they are to make good proofe. And they may no
be admitted into the Profession, vntill they haue fully compleated Eighteene year
of Age. And before their entrance, they are to receiue deuoutly the Sacrament
the Body and Bloud of our Lord Iesus Christ.

8. Ne

8 Neuertheleſſe, the Great Maister of the Order, may giue and conferre it vpon
y young Gentlemen, being aboue seauen yeares old, to bee as Pages to the said
Maister.

9. The said Knights are to fight for maintenance of the Catholique and Apo-
olique Faith: & at all times, and as often as they shall bee commanded by the Pope,
e Sacred Apostolicall Seare; the most Christian King, and their Great Maister;
ider whose charge they are to march in Armes, but not otherwise.

10. The said Great Maister shall stand obliged, three Monethes after his no-
ination by the most Christian King, to procure his confirmation from the holy
eate, before hee meddle in the Gouernment of the said Great Maistership.

11. The nomination of the Great Maisters, as well for the present, as in times to
ome: shall appertaine to the most Christian Kings, Soueraignes, and Founders of
e said Order.

In fauour of whom, the said Pope *Paulus Quintus*, at the instance and suite of the
ost Christian King, hath permitted to the Great Maisters of the Order, to haue
ne Thousand Fiue Hundred Duckats from the Chamber, (that is to say, Sixe
housand Pounds) and to the Knights and Commanders, Fiue Hundred Duckats,
which are Two Thousand Pounds) in Pensions one or more, which are to be deri-
ed and leuyed on all the Benefices in France, as well Reguler as Seculer, Arch-
ishopricks, Bishopricks, Abbeyes, as Deaneries, Priories, and Cures.

Reckoning of the pounds after the French Rates.

Moreouer, hee granted plenary Remission of their sinnes, both *a poena & culpa*, on
e day of their entring into the Profession; & in the Article of death, being confes-
d, and repentant for their sins, expressing the same as well with the heart as mouth.

This Order thus instituted and approued by the Pope, his Maiesty named for the
rst Great Maister of the Order of Our Lady, of *Mount-Carmel*, and of Saint *Laza-*
s in Ierusalem, *Messire Phillibert de Nereſtamg*, a worthy Lord, and famous by his
ruices performed to the Crowne.

The first Great Maister of both the Orders.

And this nomination happened in the Moneth of *Aprill*, One Thousand, Sixe
undred and Eight. And the Thirtieth day of October, in the said yeare, the same
ord of *Nereſtamg*, at *Fountaine-Bleaud*, before his Maiesty in the presence of my
ord the Prince *de Conty*, the Duke of *Aquillon*, and other great Lords present in the
Court; tooke the Oath as Great Maister of the said Order, swore Fidelity, Obedi-
nce and Seruice to the King, and his Successors Kings of France, towards all, and a-
inst all, without any exception, to keepe and obserue inuiolably the Statutes of
e Order, and to seeke the aduancing and conseruation thereof.

The manner of his creation by the King.

Which being done, the King did put about his Necke the Crosse of Gold fasten-
d to a Riband of Tawney Silke, and then cloathed him with the Cloake & Crosse
f the Order: granting him full power & authority to raise the number of an hun-
red Knights, without any further augmenting or increasing the number, at any
me after. According to which Concession, the said Great Maister gaue the Order
diuers Gentlemen and Pages, in the Church and Monastery of Saint *Lazarus*, sea-
ed in the Skirts and Suburbs of *Paris*.

The Great Seal of the Order.

Now concerning the Great Seale of the said Order, for sealing all Letters and de-
sions for the Knights and Officers (it being made of Tinne and Lead) on the re-
erse side, is to be seene a Knight Armed at all points, and his Horse Barded, a shield
fore him, and a naked drawne Sword in his hand. Round about it as the Legend,
e these words engrauen. *Sigillum Ordinis, & Militiæ Beatæ Mariæ Virginis de Mon-
Carmeli, & S. Lazari in Hierusalem.*

And on the other side, the Armes of the Lord of *Nereſtamg*, *Qui sont Quatre ou
ing Bandes à Trois Eſtoilles sur l'vne d'icelles*. The Armes are engirt with the Order
Saint *Michaell*, and for the deuise or Legend, twice about is: *Philibertus de Ne-
ſtamg, Magnus Magister Ordinis, & Militiæ Beatæ Mariæ Virginis de Monte Carmeli,
Sancti Lazari in Hierusalem*, with the Date, One Thousand, Sixe Hundred
nd Eight.

The Order of Orleans, called, Of the Porcupine: Instituted by Monsieur *Lewes* of France Duke of Orleans: In the Yeare, One Thousand Three Hundred, Foure Score and Thirteene.

CHAP. II.

L'Ordre d'Orleans, dit du Porc. Espic.

HE Originall of the House of *Orleans*, tooke beginning in the person of *Mounsieur Philip* of France, Fourth Sonne of *Philip de Valois*, Sixt of that Name, the Line of whom had direct continuance, vntill King *Charles* Eight of the name, King of France, Ierusalem, Naples, and Sicily; who deceasing without Heyres, the Crowne of France (by that meanes) fell to the House of *Orleans*, in the person of *Lewes* the Twelfth. The foresaid *Philip* of France, married Madam *Blanch*, the *Posthumus*-Daughter to King *Charles le Bel*, and *Queene Iane* or *Ioane* of France, the Daughter to *Lewes* of France; Count *D'Eureux*. The said Duke of *Orleans*, had no Issue, and *Portoit de France sans nombre au Lambeau de Gueulles.*

How the Crowne of France came to the House of Orleans.

The Second (and Subiect of this Discourse) had Originall in the person of *Mounsieur Lewes* of France, the Second Sonne to King *Charles* the Fifth, named the Wise, borne the Thirteenth Day of March, in the Yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Threescore and Eleuen: His Godfather was *Lewes*, Count *d'Estampes*.

The Title of Lewes of France, his Armes and Descendants.

He had for his Appennage or Portion, the Dukedome of *Touraine*, which became changed afterward for that of *Orleans*: *Il Porte seme de France au Lambeau d'Argent*, but not of *Gueulles*, as his Predecessor did. Hee had likewise the County of *Valois*, but hee tooke not the Sir-name thereof, neither the Armes, which were *Seme de France, a la Bordure de Gueulles*, and here you may behold the Titles which he tooke: *Lewes*, Sonne to the King of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, Count of *Valois*, of *Blois*, and of *Beaumont*, Lord of *Coucy*, *Chasteau-Thierry*, &c. Hee had for his Creast the double *Fleur de Lys*, as a Prince of the Bloud, and (in that respect) his Supporter was an Angell. He had for his Descendants also such as were Dukes of *Valois*, vnto King *Lewes*, Twelfth of the Name, who being come to the Crowne, gaue away liberally, and as a Royall Gift, the Countie of *Valois* to his Cousin *Frances* of *Angoulesme*, and afterward his Sonne in Law.

An errour in Annalists, about the name of Valois.

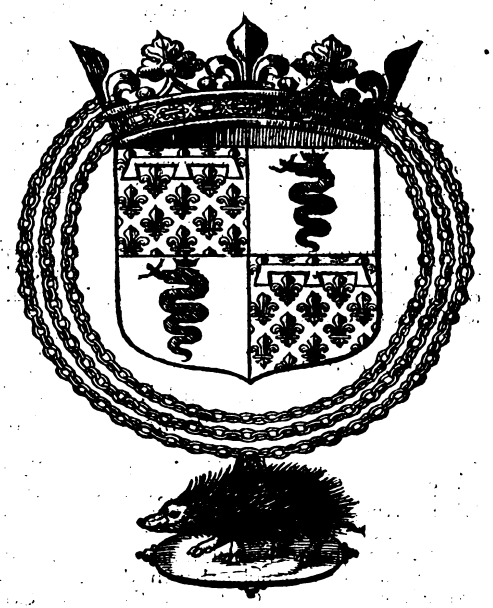
And this hath lien as a stumbling-blocke, in the way of many Annalists of France, who haue giuen the Sir-name of *Valois* to King *Frances* the First, and to the Kings his Successors, euen to *Henry*, Third of the Name, King of France and of Poland of sacred memory; For it is a popular errour, and cannot passe for currant, in regard that the said King *Frances* the First, was descended of *Mounsieur Lewes* of France Duke of *Orleans*, and so (by consequent) his Sonnes and Descendants bare the Sir-name and Armes, vntill King *Frances* the First: who carried the Sir-name of *Angoulesme*, his Partage, and the Armes of *Orleans*; yet with Brisure, the points pendents of the Labell were charged with *Trois Croissants de Gueules*.

Kings comming to their Crownes, lose their Sir-names.

Moreouer it is another popular errour, to giue the Sir-name of *Valois* to the Descendants of King *Philip de Valois*: because when Kings come to the Crowne, they doe lose the Sir-name and Armes of their Portion, Appennage and Patrimony: their Descendants (not being Kings) take that of the Patrimony which their Father giueth them: for Kings haue no Sir-names, & therfore it is no good language, to say *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Thirteenth of the name King of *France*, & of *Nauarre*; *Don Philippe Austria*,

Philip, third of the name, King of Spaine, or *Iames Stewart*, first of the name, King of Great Brettaigne, and the like of other Kings and Princes on the Earth. The same also is to be vnderstood of their daughters, who ought to beare name of the place of their Extraction; as *Mary* of Florence, *Anne* of Spaine, &c. and not *Mary de Medicis*, *Anne* of Austria, Queenes of France. This is spoken (in this passe) but by way of aduise.

Lewes of France his wife and issue.



1. His Sonnes were *Charles* of *Orleans* (Sonnes issuing of Sonnes of France, doe not carrie the Title of *Monsieur*, nor the Sir-name of France, but onely that of their Fathers allowance) Father of King *Lewes*, called the Twelfth.

2. *Phillip* of *Orleans*, Count of *Vertus*, who tooke to wife *Katherine* of *Bourgongne*, daughter to *John*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, tearmed *le Baddé*, and this Man had not any issue.

3. *John* of *Orleans*, Count of *Engoulesme*, and of *Perigueux*.

Of *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, eldest Son to *Lewes* of France.

Charles, Duke of *Orleans*, eldest Sonne to *Monsieur Lewes* of France, had three Wiues, but the two first had not any issue. At his returne out of *England* (where he had remained euer since the Battaile of *Azincourt*) he had in his third Marriage (as we shall shew hereafter) *Marie* of *Cleues*, Niece to Duke *Phillip* of Bourgongne, second of the name, daughter to *Adolph*, second of the name, first Duke of *Cleues*, and to his honorable Lady and wife *Mary*, daughter to *John* of Bourgongne Count *d'Estampes*, but afterward of *Neuers*, and of *Rhetheil*, Brother to the said Duke of Bourgongne. In which marriage was borne the good King *Lewes*, twelfth of the name, called *The Father of his People*, and two daughters: *Mary* of *Orleans*, wife to *John de Foix*, Vicount of *Narbonna*, and of this marriage issued the valiant and generous Prince, *Gaston de Foix*, Duke of *Nemours*, slaine at the Battaile of *Ravenna*; and *Germania de Foix*, second wife to King *Ferdinand* of Arragon, Vsurper of the Kingdome of Nauarre. The other Daughter was *Anne* of *Orleans*, Lady Abbesse of *Font-Euraud*.

Valentina of Millaine seeketh reuenge for the murder of her husband.

John of *Orleans* Count of *Engoulesme*, third Sonne of the said *Monsieur Lewes* of France; was famous for his Sanctitie of life, and whom we will speake of, albeit briefely. His Father being vnfortunately murdred by *John*, Duke of Bourgongne, surnamed the Bad or Wicked (as we shall hereafter relate more at large) *Valentina* of *Millaine*, to be reuenged on this Assassinate: made her recourse to the King of *England*, who sent her an Armie, conducted by the Count of *Clarence*. He made shew, as if he would worke wonders, and got assurance for the charges of his voy-

age,

age, which amounted to the summe of two hundred thousand Crownes, for the re-
paiment whereof, Madame *Valentina* gaue in hostage the said *Iohn* of *Engoulesme* her
Sonne, then aged no more then nine yeares. Conueyed hee was into England,
Anno foure hundred and thirteene, and there he remained two and thirtie yeares,
euen vntill One thousand foure hundred fortie fiue, when hee returned home into
France, after hee had paied the summe for which he stood engaged: as well by the
sale of his moueables, as by the Countie of *Perigort*, bought by the Vicount of *Li-
moges*, *Iohn* of Bretaigne.

The Distichs passing vnder *Cates* name written by *Iohn* of *Orleans* here in England.

During the time of his Adolescencie in England, he wrote (with his owne hand)
the Distickes of Morall life, acknowledged vnder the name of *Cato*. Although some
other doe auouch, that they were reduced into some better forme, by that great
Light of the Church Saint *Hierome*, yea, and thought to be made by him in his ten-
der youth, writing Commentaries vpon them, drawne out of diuers Authors of
his owne reading. At his returne into France, he put them into the Sacristie or
Vestrie of Saint *Peter* at *Angoulesme*, at the surprizall whereof by the enemies, they
were consumed to ashes.

The ordenarie residing of this Prince, was at the said place of *Angoulesme*, vpon
the top of an high Mountaine, the foote whereof is laued by the Riuer of *Charente*,
which doth as much at *Coignacke* (in the Dioceese of *Xaintes*) the place of the birth
of King *Frances* the first; and from thence trauersing thorow *Xaintonge*, goeth, and
looseth it selfe in the Ocean Sea.

A few memorable Obseruations, concerning the Holy and Deuout Life and Death of this worthy Prince Iohn of Orleance.

A good direction to Seruants.

THe first Rule enioyned by him to the Officers of his Court, was to abstaine from
Swearing, and blaspheming the Sacred name of God; nor once to name the
Diuell in their mouthes. If any happened to faile herein; their wages being paid,
they were banished from his Court, and caused afterward to be punished by Iustice,
according to the qualitie of their blasphemie: yea, oftentimes, himselfe would sit
on the Iudgement Bench; that the distribution might be with all equitie, according
to the Lawes, and the Customes vsed in that Countrey.

His daily charitie to the Poore.

Daily he repaired to the Church, wearing a long gowne, and, for examples sake,
to his Subiects; on the solemne Feast dayes of the yeare, he receiued by his Curate
his Creator, in presence of the people, hearing two or three Masses euery day:
And at the ending of them, himselfe distributed to the Poore, such moneyes as he
kept expresly (for the purpose) in his Almes Purses, and neuer went abroad with-
out them.

His Fasting.

On Wednesday he abstained from eating of flesh, and on Fridayes would feede
on nothing but Fruites, Hearbes or Pulses: Fasting alwayes on the Eeue of the
Purification of our Lady, called Candlemasse, with Bread and Water; as also in
Lent, and the foure especiall times of the yeare. He would exhort and preach to
his Houshold people; to Fast three dayes in the Weeke, during the holy time
of Lent.

His Musicall delight.

He much delighted in the discourses of the Bishop of *Angoulesme*, Maister
bert de Montbrun, and of an *Augustine* Fryer, named *George*, Learned and skil-
men in Diuinitie, hauing alwayes their company about his person. After his dai
repasts, he caused one to play vpon the Harpe before him, hauing taken a feeling
therein while he liued in England, where that Instrument is much more common
and familiar, then it is in France.

His apparell and admired to his subiects.

He went very meanely garmented, of plaine common Cloath, and of Ashes co
lour: except on good and solemne Feast dayes, when (for honour and decencie)
he wore them of Cassocke fashion, composed of Sattin, and other long Roabes of
Silke. Nor would he suffer his Subiects and followers, to be excessiue in costlines
on their habits, with Laces of Siluer or Gold: except such as were renowned for
valiancie,

Valiancie, or honoured with the Order of Knighthood. At his Table, he was
not superfluous in Viandes: hee did eate but little, and tempered his Wine ve-
ry much.

The making of his Will and Death.

In the Moneth of May, One thousand foure hundred threescore and seauen,
iudging in his owne Soule, that his ending approached neere: He made his Te-
stament, giuing good Legacies to Churches, and to his Houshold Seruants, leauing
to his Sonnes the care of discharging them, and to his Wife, his Lands and pur-
chases. He dyed in the yeare following, Threescore and eight, the last day of A-
prill (the Feast day of Saint *Eutropius*, the Apostle of *Xaintonge*) at the Castell of
Cognack. He dyed in his Garments, and vpon the Couerlet of his Bed, for hee
would not depart the World betweene Sheetes. Fryer *George* alwayes thus sung
in his eare: *Iohn, you must dye, and therefore remember, that Iesus Christ dyed for you.*
His Soule tooke her flight to the Celestiall Kingdome, saying his ordenary Prayer
of the houres of the Crosse. *Domine Iesu Christe Fili Dei viui, pone Passionem, & mor-
tem tuam inter iudicium, &c.*

His Buriall in Saint *Peters* Church of *Angoulesme*.

His Buriall was in the Cathedrall Church of Saint *Peter* of *Angoulesme*, where
his Widdow and Sonnes erected a Marble Tombe for him; which was hewne
downe in pieces, when the enemies tooke the Citie, in Anno One thousand fiue
hundred threescore and two, and threescore and eight. But thirtie yearesafter, the
Canons causing Stones to be taken forth of the Vaults in the Quire, which were
beaten downe by the enemies: found in the same Caue part of the Princes Body,
without any iniurie done thereto, or any putrifaction whatsoeuer. An hundred
yeares after it had bin buried, it was put into a Chest of Lead, and is there kept
(to this day) among the monuments of the Church; whereto (in elder times) were
many Pilgrimages performed from all parts of France, and an infinite number of
people receiued there helpe, as well for Feauers as other diseases, at the Tombe or
Sepulcher of this deuout Prince, as is reported.

Information giuen by the Bishop of *Angoulesme*.

In the yeare One thousand fiue hundred and eighteene, at the request of King
Frances, his yongest Sonne, during the time of Pope *Eugenius*, fourth of that name,
Messire Anthony d'Estain, Bishop of *Angoulesme*, made information of the Life and
death of this holy Prince, as also of his famous Miracles, by the depositions of
an hundred and twentie eight Witnesses, aged threescore and eight yeares at the
least. And by whom it appeared, that from the time of his being in *England*, the
renowne of his deuotion and singuler pietie was so great; that at the Counsell of *Ba-
sile*, it was propounded to haue him chosen Pope.

Concerning his marriage and issue.

But God reseruing him, to be the Original and fourse of so many Kings of France;
to wit, *Frances* the first, *Henry* the second, and his Children: At his returne from
England, he tooke to wife *Margaret de Rohan*, in the yeare foure hundred fortie
and nine, by whom he had two Sonnes and a Daughter; *Iane* of *Orleans*, wife to
Charles de Cottiuy, Lord of *Talleborg*, who had but one onely Daughter, wife to the
Prince of *Taillemont*, eldest Sonne to the Lord of *Trimouille*.

Charles, Sonne and Successor to *Iohn* the Religious, and the issue descending of him.

His Sonnes were *Leures* (held at the Font of Baptisme, by King *Charles* the sea-
enth) who dyed yong, and was enterred at *Bote-Ville* in *Angoulmois*. And *Charles*,
who was his Successour in the Countie of *Angoulesme*, and had to wife *Louisa de
Sauoye*, daughter to *Philibert*, Duke of *Sauoye*: by whom he had a Sonne and a
daughter, *Margaret* of *Angoulesme*, wife (in first Marriage) to *Charles*, the last
Duke of *Alanson*, and last Prince of the branch of *Valois*, because he had no linage.
And in second Marriage, she espoused *Henry*, second of the name, King of *Nauarre*,
Sonne to King *Iohn d'Albert*, and Queene *Katherine* of *Nauarre*, from whom the
King of *Arragon*, *Ferdinand*, vniustly vsurped the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, in the
Moneth of Iuly, One thousand fiue hundred and thirteene. Of this marriage was
borne their onely daughter, Madame *Iane* or *Ioane* of *Nauarre*, ioyned at the age of
nine yeares (by King *Francis* the first, his Vncle) with the Duke of *Cleues* and *Gulich*,
William, onely masle childe to *Iohn*, first of the name, and married to *Monsieur* the
Prince, *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, fift Prince of the Blood. Of which
marriage issued a Sonne and a daughter, Madame *Katherine* of *Bourbon*, Princesse of
Nauarre, Wife to *Monsieur Henry* of *Lorraine*, Marquesse *du Pont*, afterward Duke
of

of *Lorraine*, and of *Bar*, who dyed without any iſſue: And *Henry* of *Bourbon*, fourth of the name, King of France, and of Nauarre the third called the Great, of eternall memorie: Let vs now take againe the Branch of *Orleans*.

Iohn the Baſtard of *Orleans*.

Monſieur *Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, beſide his legitimate Children formerly named, had by the Lady of *Canny*, wife to *Meſsire Aubert de Canny*, a Knight of *Picardie*, a Sonne named *Iohn*, tearmed the Baſtard of *Orleans*, who was Count of *Dunois*, and of *Lougue-Ville*. *Porta d'Orleans au Filet de Gueulles, brochant ſur le tout, tirant de la droitte à la gauche*, which ſignifieth Baſtardiſe. His deſcent hath continued the ſaid Armes of *Orleans*, *Au Filet d'Argent, de la gauche à la droitte*, for a ſignale of legittimate birth. This Count of *Dunois* was ſo hardie and courageous in Warre, that his Militarie exploits hath made his memorie honorable for euer. For, next to *Ioane d'Arc de Dompremy*, Sir named *The Pucelle of Orleans*: He was the principall inſtrument, for expelling the Engliſh forth of France, and deſerued the name of *Cheualier Sans Reproche, & de L'Eſcu des Francois*. So that, to make acknowledgement of the worthy Seruices by him performed, King *Charles* the ſeauenth, made him *Great Chamberlaine*, a dignitie continuing to his Poſteritie, the Dukes of *Longue Ville*, with the Sir-name and Armes of *Orleans*, vntill the Reigne of yong King *Francis*, who was the ſecond of that name.

The Knight without blame and ſhield of the French.

Great Chamberlaine of France.

At the Sacring of the ſaid King, the Duke of *Longue-Ville* that then was, being vnwilling to ſtand taxed with nouell matters of Religion (ſo ſpeaketh the Preſident of the Place in his memories) the Office of Great Chamberlaine of France, came to the Houſe of *Guiſe*, with the Sir-name and Armes of *Lorraine*: in the perſon of *Francis de Lorraine*, Duke of *Guiſe*, vnto whoſe deſcendants, this Office of the Crowne is yet remaining to this day.

The ranke or place of this Great Chamberlaine, is to lye couched at the Kings feete, when he ſitteth on his Throane of Iuſtice, and at his Sacring: but at his entring into Townes and Cities, he followeth the very neereſt perſon behinde his Maieſtie.

Lewes of *Bourbon*, ſecond of the name (called the Good) Duke of *Bourbonnois* and of *Auuergne*, held it a great honour, to be the Great Chamberlaine of France, ſo it is ſaid to vs in his Chronicle. King *Charles*, fift of the name, departing out of this life, to another much better, the yeare of Grace One thouſand three hundred fourſcore and eight, the Princes of the Blood Royall, the Dukes of *Berry*, of *Bourgongne*, and of *Bourbon*, conducted the yong King, *Charles* the ſixt, to be Sacred and Crowned at *Rheimes*. To honor the King there, there wanted no Chiualrie, nor Royall Feaſting, fit for the time.

Out of the Records of France a noate to be obſerued.

After the Sacred Vnction, the King was ſeated at an high Table of Honour, and the Duke of Bourbon, who was Peere and Chamberlaine of France, gaue him Three of his Knights; one whereof ſtood at his right ſide, and the other on his left, and the third behinde at his backe, beſide an Eſquire at his feete (Obſerue I pray you the auncient Ceremonie) *The three Knights were Meſsire Guichard Dauphin; Meſsire Guy le Veneux, and Meſsire Iohn de Laye. And the Squire that was vnder the Table, where the King did ſet his feete, was Iohn de Caſtelmorant; in this manner was the King ſeated.* Her by wee may remember, what hath bin noated by our illuminated Romaines, that our Kings being at the Table, or ſeated on their Throane: an Eſquire lyeth couched at the Kings feete, vpon whoſe hands or breaſt, are the Kings feete placed.

At the entrance of King *Charles* the ſeauenth into his Citie of *Paris*, the morrow after Saint *Martins* day in Winter, One thouſand foure hundred thirty ſeauen, the Equipage of this Count of *Dunois*, is thus deſcribed by *Alanus Chartierus*.

The furniſhment of the Baſtard of *Orleans*.

Behinde followed the Baſtard of *Orleans*, Armed at all points, he and his Horſe couered with Goldſmiths worke, and a rich Chaine of Gold, trailing behinde on the backe of his Horſe, made like great Oaken Leaues, each Leafe weighing fiftie Marks. This was the man, that conducted the Kings Battalion, conſiſting of a thouſand Lances, Armed at all points, and their Horſes barded.

King *Charles* gaue him this dignitie, not ſo much for acknowledgement of Seruices done by him to the Crowne; as to take away iealoſie in the Princes of the Blood, who

who then were a great number (which was the ſtrength of the Kingdome) of making him march as a Peere with them. Hereafter we will ſet downe the Genealogie of this Count of *Dunois*, which continueth yet to this day. Hereupon this place was giuen him, by meanes whereof, and without enuie, he might appeare with the chiefeſt and neereſt about the King: being compelled by his place, to lye at his feete when he ſate on his Throane, and to come behinde his Horſe, when he road abroad in Royall manner.

The cruell murder of *Lewes* Duke of *Orleans*.

The ſaid *Monſieur Lewes* Duke of *Orleans*, was (thorow enuie of gouernement) cruelly murdered at *Paris*, in the Streete *Barbette*, with Axes, by eighteene murderers, the conducters whereof was a Norman, named *Rollet d'Auctouille*, *William* and *Scaz de Courte-heuze*, Brethren (*Scaz* being a Groome of the Chamber to the ſaid Duke of *Orleans*, Natiues of the Countie of *Guienne*) and *Iohn de la Mothe*, houſhold ſeruant to *Iohn*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, Author and procurer of this execrable murder, committed on the perſon of the onely Brother to the King, and of his Couſine Germaine, on Wedneſday, being Saint *Clements* day, the two and twentieth of Nouember, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred and ſeauen, about the houre of eight in the night time. This poore Prince with the firſt ſtroake of an Axe, had his right hand cut off, and his head quartered in ſuch manner, as his braines were ſcattered on the pauement, he dying preſently in the place. With him was ſlaine a Germaine Squire, who had bin his Page, and ſeeing his Maiſter ſmitten downe, fell vpon him to ſaue his life, and receiued the blowes meant to his Maiſter.

An auncient Order of Begging Friers in *Paris*.

About halfe an houre after the murder committed, the people belonging to the Duke of *Orleans*, tooke vp his Body, and carried it to the Houſe of *Meſsire Peter de Rieux*, of Bretaigne, Marſhall of France, neere to the place of the murder, and hauing wrapped it in a faire white Sheete, they bare it thence to the *Blancs-Manteaux*, then called *Guillemins*, neighbouring to the *Hoſtel de Rieux*. The Body was afterward laid in a Coffin of Lead, and on Thurſday in the morning after the murder: his right hand was found by his followers, and with ſuch part of the braines as were left, put likewiſe into the Leaden Coffin. Soone after, all the Princes being then in *Paris* (except the King and *Meſsieurs* his Sonnes) went to the *Blancs-Manteaux*, as namely; King *Lewes* of *Sicilie*, the Dukes of *Berry*, *Bourgongne*, and *Bourbon*; the Marqueſſe *du Pont*, the Counts of *Neuers* of *Clermont*, of *Vendoſme*, of Saint *Paul*, and of *Dampmartin*; *Charles d'Albert*, Count of *Dreux*, Lord of *Craon*, and of *Silly*. Conſtable of France, with all the Lords and Gentlemen of the Court.

The Order of bearing the dead Body to the *Celeſtines*.

Thither likewiſe came all the Cleargie, of the Pariſhes and Monaſteries in *Paris*, and in manner of Proceſſion, filled with griefe and lamentations, brought the Body from the Church of the *Guillemins*, and carried it to the Church of the *Celeſtines*, the Eſquires of the deceaſed Duke carrying lighted Torches all the way before the Body. The foure corners of the Pall being borne vp by the King of *Sicilie*, and the Dukes of *Berry*, of *Bourgongne*, and of *Bourbon*, Princes of the Blood, Vnckles and Couſines Germaine to the dead Duke. After that Seruice was ſolemnely performed at the *Celeſtines*, the Body was enterred in the Chappell of *Orleans*, which hee had cauſed to be builded, and appointed for the place of his buriall, and his kinſmen to ſaue his.

Princes of the Houſe of *Orleans*.

Beneath on the Windowes in this Chappell, are repreſented (according to the life) the Pictures of the Princes of the Houſe of *Orleans*: beginning at King *Charles* firſt of the name, Father to *Charles* the ſixt, and to the ſaid Duke of *Orleans*; vntill the Duke of *Alanſon*, *Monſieur Frances* of France, the laſt Sonne to King *Henry* the ſecond.

At what age the Duke was murdered.

The Portraiture of the ſaid Duke *Lewes*, beſide that in the Windowes, and on his Tombe of Alablaſter, is ſeene depicted in Oyle (after the life) on a doore of Wood, on the right ſide of the Altar in the ſame Chappell. He is figured of the ſame Age, when he was murdered (ſixe and thirtie yeares old or thereabout) Antiquely habited, according as the times then were. A long Red Caſſocke or Gowne, furred with

with Ermines, as worne ouer his Hose and Doublet, the sleeues of the Gowne being wide and large, as our Roabes are at the Pallace, not hauing any opening at the necke, to passe the head out at, which opening about the necke aloft, is garnished with adornings of Ermines. and thereupon a Coller of Stones. Before, vpon the right shoulder, is painted a Starre in Gold, to shew, that hee was *Knight of the Starre*, it being then the Order in France, and his Cassocke guirded with a Girdle fastened with a Buckle and Tongue. Before him is the figure of Death, very stearne and dreadfully made, holding in his hand a Dart or Iauelin, wherewith hee endeuoureth to strike the Duke, who to guard and defend himselfe, offereth his hand in resistance. Betweene them standeth a faire Fruite Tree, well laden with Apples, some whereof appeare to be ripe, but others not, the true Symbole of humaine life, and about it is his Deuise: *Iuuenes, & Senes Rapio.* On the Dukes head is written, *Lewes Duc D'Orleans Ayeul du Roy Louis Douxiesme du Nom. Lewes Duke of Orleans, Grand Father to King Lewes, Twelfth of the name.*

Yong and old I snatch away

This disastrous death of the Duke of *Orleans*, affrighted all the Princes and Lords of France. Queene *Isabell* of *Bauaria* (who was then tearmed *La Grand Gorre*, for her brauery in habits after the Germaine fashion, instead of attyring her selfe according as the French Ladies did) lying then in Childe-bed, was speedily transported to the *Hostel Sanct Pol*, and lodged close to the Chamber of King *Charles* the first her Husband, who was so terrified with this vntimely death, that hee fell into his wonted distraction of minde. All the Bourgesses and Cittizens of *Paris* Armed themselues, guarding the Streetes night and day, for the space of fifteene dayes and nights. Likewise suddenly entred into Armes the Counts of *Sainct Paul*, of *Dampmartin*, and others beside, watching and warding the *Hostel* of Saint *Paul*, as fearing least worser accidents shall happen.

What terrour ensued on the murder of the Duke.

Iohn, Duke of *Berry*, already stept farre into yeares (for he was aboue threescore and twelue) was so affrighted with the death of his Nephew *Lewes*, thus happening in the floure of his time; that he had death daily before his eyes, as he said himselfe beholding him on his one side, and his Nephew on the other. And yet he liued ten yeares after, dying in the yeare foure hundred and seauenteene, aged then fourscore and fiue yeares.

The perplexitie and death of *Iohn* Duke of *Berry*.

In memorie of this his Nephewes vntimely death, he caused to be figured on the Meridionall Gate of Saint *Innocents* Church (where is the great Churchyard belonging to the Citie of *Paris*) the Historie of three Deathes, that appeared to three liuing Gallants hunting in a Forrest. The three Deaths were pictured in their hideous deformitie of bare Skellitons, and the three Iouiall youths standing gastly amazed, with the sight and apprehension of three such gastly shapes: that they forsooke their pleasures and braueries of the Court, yea, and the delights of this miserable world, onely to prepare themselues for death. Which is nothing else but a sweet slumber, to such as liue after the will of God: but to the wicked, the gate and entrance into endlesse torments.

A Looking-Glasse for vaine Gallants

The Latine Verses made vpon this Meditation, are these following: Those of the Gallants, are to be obserued by themselues.

Aspice florentes humano in corpore vultus,
Aspice Fortunæ prospera fata Deæ:
Delicias (dum fata sinunt) ludosque, iocosque
Suminus, & toto gaudia mille sinu.

But vpon this conference, the three Deaths presenting themselues vnexpected answered them.

Viximus, sed multo quondam resplenduit ætas
Ornatu, sed nunc nil nisi puluis adest:
Aspice quam fragilis viuas in putre cadamer,
Tempore sic fies vermibus esca breui.

The remonstrances or admonitions, both of the one and other, are couched Fre

French Verses, answerable to those times, carued in faire large Stones, vnder the engraiuing of those figures; are on the vpper part of the Frieze, these other French Verses.

En l'An Mil-Quatre Cents Huict,
Iean Duc de Berry Trespuissant,
En toutes vertus bien instruict,
Et Prince en France florissant,
Par humain cours lors cognissant,
Qu'il conuient toute creature,
Ainsi que Nature consent
Mourir, & tendre à pourriture;
Fist tailler icy la Sculpture,
Des trois Vifs aussi des trois Morts,
Et de ses derniers la facture,
En paya par iustes accords,
Pour monstrer que tout humaine corps,
Tant ayt biens, ou grande Cite,
Ne peut euiter les discords,
De la mortelle aduersitie.
Donc pour auoir fælicite,
Ayons de la Mort souuenir:
Afin qu'apres perplexite,
Puissions aux saincts Cieux paruenir.

The *French* Verses conuerted into *English*, line by line.

In th'yeare One thousand foure hundred eight,
Iohn, Duke of Berry, potently liuing,
Enstructed in all vertues, firme and strait,
A Prince in France right fairely flourishing,
By humaine course well vnderstanding
That euery creature (by iniunction,
As Nature hath giuen her consenting)
Must dye, and yeelde vnto corruption:
Here caused to be made this Monument,
Of three aliue, and of as many dead;
And as the three last doe their shape present,
So must Lifes paiment be accomplished.
To shew vs what all humaine bodies are
Though storde with goods, Townes, greatest potency;
Yet cannot shun those discords that make square,
And waite vpon mortall aduersitie.
Then, that we may enioy Felicitie,
Let vs remember still; That we must dye,
So, after this fraile Lifes perplexitie;
Our Soules will to the holy Heauens flye.

In the voide places about these Verses, are the Armes of the said Duke of *Berry*, which are *Seme de France sans nombre, à la bordure simple de Gueulles*, like vnto those of Anion and *Anion*. Wherein there is a fault, because the Bordure ought to be Engrailed *Gueulles, pour Brizure*; as those be at the holy Chappell of *Bourges*, builded & founded by this Duke and his wife, who are buried within the Quire thereof.

The place of the Duke of *Berry* his buriall.

The Funerals being performed, diligent search was made for the Authors of this murder, and on the very same day the Prouost of *Paris, William de Tignonville*, made seizure on the person of *Messire Aubert le Canny*, suspected of this murder, in regard his wife, gouerned by the deceased Duke: but he was found innocent, and set at liberty.

liberty. So that to make an exact inquisition for the Authors thereof, the Gates of *Paris* were kept lockt vp fast; two onely excepted, S. *Iames* and S. *Denys*, with strong Guards, to see what they were that issued forth.

Tignouille had discouered, that at the same instant as the Duke was massacred, a Water-Bearer to the Duke of *Bourgougne*, had beene knowne among the eighteene, who had let fire on a House (neere to the place where the murderers were hid) & whose then hung for a Signe, the Image of our Lady, neere to the Gate *Barbette*. For the Assassinates (to saue themselues after the murder (from being discouered) had set the said House on fire, crying out aloud themselues, *Fire, Fire*; onely to amaze the people of *Paris*. But they were withdrawne directly to the *Hostel d'Artois*, next adioyning to that of *Bourgongne*; and in their flight, had throwne Calthrops (made of Iron) in the Streets, to hinder the people from following after them.

A notable policie of murderers to conceale themselues.

On Friday, the Princes and Lords went to the *Hostel de S. Paul*, where then the King was lodged, to consult with his Counsell about this murder. *Tignouille* demanded power of the King, to enter the houses of his Seruants, and the *Hostels* belonging to the Princes of his Bloud: which was granted to him, and with francke good will, King *Lewes* of *Sicilie*, and the Dukes of *Berry* and *Bourbon*, gaue him authority to goe and make search in theirs.

The *Bourgongnon*, bitten by the worme of conscience, fearing such a sound and seuere search: tooke *Lewes* King of *Sicilie* (chiefe of the Counsell, during the sickness of the King) aside into a corner of the Counsell Chamber, and *Iohn*, Duke of *Berry*, his Vnckle. To them he freely confessed, that by the instigation of the Diuell, he had caused the murder to be effected, wherof he repented himselfe. At which words the hearts of the two Princes, being ouercome with sorrow and passion: the Counsell was adiourned till the morrow, being Saturday in the morning, and at the *Hostel de Neesle*, called at this present *De Neuers*, appertaining to the said *Monsieur Iohn* of France, Duke of *Ferry*.

The Duke of Bourgongne voluntarily confessed the murder.

Nor did the Duke of *Bourgongne* faile to come thither, accompanied with *Valeran* of *Luxemburg*, Count of S. *Paul*, his Cousine: but the Duke of *Berry* sent him word that he should attend vntill such time as he was sent for. The Duke of *Berry* discouered to the Counsell, the confession of the Duke of *Bourgongne*, his Nephew; whereupon, the Duke of *Bourbon* caused it to passe by plurality of voices, that the person of the *Bourgongnon* should be kept safe. And to seize on his Body, the Count of S. *Paul* was called into the Counsell Chamber. When the *Bourgongnon* perceiued, that he was debarred from entrance thereinto; reuoluing in his minde, the abhomination of his execrable crime, the apprehensions of imprisonment, with pursuite of a violent death, he departed thence suddenly, without speaking any thing, & passing the *Seine*, went to his *Hostel* of *Artois*.

The Duke of Bourgongne his sudden flight.

Mounting on Horsebacke with sixe of his followers, he rode forth at the Gate of S. *Denis*, and neuer left galloping, till he came to *Pont Saint Maixance*, ouer the River of *Oise*, causing Plancks of Wood to be cast after him in the middest of the River, because he would preuent all pursuite. So, without looking behinde him, he stayed no where on the way, till he came to *Bapaumes*, where he slept the quarter of an houres space, going to take his repast in the Citie of *Arras*, & without soiourning there, went to lodge in the Isle of *Flanders*. His flight being discouered, he was speedily followed, by sixe and twentie Men of Armes belonging to the Duke of Orleans; who were enforced to turne backe againe at *Pont Saint Maixance*.

This vnfortunate murder, vnderstood by the Duchesse of *Orleans*, Madam *Valentina* of *Millaine*; she appeared in person at *Paris* the tenth day of December following, accompanied with her yongest Son *Iohn*, Count of *Angoulesme*, & with Madam Isabell of France, daughter to King *Charles* the sixt, Widdow to the King of England *Richard* second of the name, and first wife to *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans*, eldest Son to the deceased.

Madam *Valentina* of Millaine her comming to *Paris*.

Before her went King *Lewes* of *Sicilie*, the Dukes of *Berry* and of *Bourbon*, the Counts of *Clermont*, *Iohn* Sonne to the Duke of *Bourbon*, and of *Vendosme*, both of them of the House of *Bourbon*; *D'Albret*, Constable of France, and all the Lords of the Court, who conducted her to the Hostel of Saint *Paul*, where she, her

and his Lady fell on their knees before the King, requiring Iustice for the death of his Brother. Which he promised to performe, and taking her vp from the ground, kissed her, being both drowned in teares with the iustice of their griefe. Vpon this assurance, the Duchesse went to lodge at the abiding of *Orleans*, neerest to that of *Neesle*: that is, where (at this present) are the Houses of *Gueste*, *du Tillet* and *du Lac*, ioyning to the Port of *Bussy*; containing backward the Court *de Rouen*, *Le Rues de l'Efperon*, and of Saint *Andewe de Laas*, where were the Stable and Offices appertaining to the dwelling of *Orleans*.

The situation of the Duke of *Orleans* his Hostel.

The Duchesse being in her mourning habits, returned againe to the *Hostel* of Saint *Paul*, still there requiring Iustice, and still the same being there promised her. And hauing fully restored to her, the Countie of *Vertus*, with other Lands and Seigneuries for her and her Children, which were held by her Husband; and deliuering to the King the Oath of Fidelitie: shee returned to her Castell of *Blois*, the ordenary dwelling for the Dukes of *Orleans*, vntill the time of King *Lewes* the twelfth.

The Bourgongnon summoned to yeelde himselfe in the Citie of *Amiens*, to make answer to the King of *Sicilie*, *Lewes*, and the Duke of *Berry*, deputed by the King and Counsell, concerning the death of the late Duke of *Orleans*, at the same place to acknowledge his offence. Thither he came, but suited with such company; as (without performing any thing) they returned backe to the Citie of *Paris*; whether the Bourgongnon as speedily followed them in Armes, although the King had expresly commanded him to the contrary.

The Duke of Bourgongne summoned to appeare at *Amiens*.

And being come to *Paris*, to his *Hostel d'Artois*; hee caused himselfe to be engirt with strong *Pallisadoes*; and Barriers of Wood, raising there a new square Tower, making therein an high Chamber, well furnished with murderers, where he meant to lodge, and keepe himselfe in securitie. This is the Tower which wee see behinde the *Hostel* of Bourgongne, at *Logis de l'Abistrade*. Hauing obtained Audience, hee made his defence, not by any Aduocate, that would prophane himselfe, by pleading a case so sinfull and deplorable: but a certaine man, called *Iohn Petit*, a Doctor in Diuinitie, and a Norman by Nation; whose vendible tongue, being altogether mercenary, was infected and worme-eaten with the poyson of Auarice, as we haue beheld too many in these times of ours, that easily are infected with the Oyle of Gold, the yellow colour thereof so highly pleasing them.

He maketh his answer by one called Doctor *Petit*, a bold and ignorant corrupted fellow.

This Doctor, corrupted with infernall and diabolicall Doctrine, excused the *Bourgongnon*, instead of accusing him, writhing the nose of the Sacred Scriptures, according to the manner of Heretiques, and expounding them answerable to his owne foolish and depraued iudgement. Declaring, that he ought to be commended for the murder, by him committed on the person of the late Duke of *Orleans*: not forgetting to alleadge many Histories out of the Holy Scriptures, drawne in constraiedly by the eares, and as badly vnderstood, yet stoutly vouched by this ignorant Doctor. Inducing from thence, that vpon good and iust cause, the Duke of *Orleans* was thus slaine, because he had bin the Motiue and Author, for charging the people with Taxations, Imposts and Subsidies; & that (in this respect onely) the Duke of *Bourgongne* deserued praise, sallarie and recompence. So that it was necessarily needfull, to implore (on his behalfe) the mercy and clemency of the King.

Diuels want no Orators to defend bad actions.

In briefe, he concluded his friuolous Oration, with this hellish Maxime: *That it was lawfull for any Subiect, according to the Lawes Morall, Naturall and Diuine, to kill, or cause to kill a Tyrant, without waiting for the command of Iustice. And not onely Lawfull, but honorable and meritorious; especially, where the parties are so strong and powerfull, that Iustice cannot well be performed by the Soueraigne.*

A Lesson neuer taught but in the Diuels Schoole.

Against which allegation, the Abbot of Saint *Fiacres*, of the *Order of S. Benedict*, in the name, and on the behalfe of *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, his Mother and his Brethren, boldly defended the innocency of the late Duke *Lewes*: manifesting the impertinent insinuations of the Norman Doctor, and the wickednesse of the Bourgongnon, quite ouerthrowing the diuellish Maxime, for the murdring of Kings and Princes. Approuing withall, that the Bourgongnon, Author and procurer of this massacre, was a true *Caine*, against whom, the blood of his Brother cryed to heauen for vengeance, as it is said in the fourth Chapter of *Genesis*. *Vox sanguinis Fratris*

tui clamat ad me de terrâ: The voyce of thy Brothers bloud cryeth vnto from the ground.

No man may presume vpon the life of his equall, much lesse vpon his better.

And that it was not permitted to the Bourgongnon, more then to any other particular man whatsoeuer: to attempt vpon the life of his equall; by farre greater reason then, not vpon one much greater, without the authoritie of Iustice to warrant him.

And therefore all the Doctors of the Church haue, and doe hold, that *Moyses* sinned against God, by killing the *Aegyptian*, in the second of *Exodus*; because he had no power or authoritie to doe it: notwithstanding the pretext and apparant excuse which he had, for sauing the life of his neighbour, against the iniurie of a stranger. In like manner, the Sauiour of the World iustly reproued S. *Peter*, in laying hand on his weapon, to defend him from death. It is the opinion of S. *Augustine*, seconded by all the rest of the Doctors, who interpreting the murder of the Prince of the Tribe of *Simeon*, named *Zimbrie* (in the Book of *Numbers*, the 25. Chapter) slain by *Phinees*, Son to *Eleazar*, who was the Son of *Aaron* the High-Priest; they do say, that *Phinees* had power to doe it, as being Son to the High-Priest, so affirmeth S. *Thomas Aquinas*. But addeth withall, that in the old & ancient Law, many things were then permitted: which in the Law of Grace (wherein now wee liue) haue bin forbidden.

The old Law abolished by the Law of Grace.

It is a case much to be lamented, that Princes are rather murdred & massacred by their owne Subiects, then by Strangers. The Readings of *Suetonius*, and of *Cornelius Tacitus* doe affirme the proofe thereof, in most part of the Roman Emperors. *Quintus Curtius*, in his sixt Booke of the life of *Alexander* the Great, saith. *Latus à Deo fis hostibus munì, hos si submoueas; nihil ab externo metuas.* The same Authour in his ninth Booke auoucheth *Regum exitus si perpenderimus, & reputauerimus, plures à suis, quam ab hostibus interemptos reperiemus.* *Alexander* the Great would not pardon *Philotas*, because very impudently he told him: *That it was daily in the power of Princes to commit and act treason, but not in his power to punish for it. And it is the ordinary misfortune of Princes, that attentates and coniurations against their liues, cannot be credited, till after their death*, so (very effectually) speaketh *Suetonius*, in the life of *Domitian*.

A bold saying of *Philotas*.

We haue seene these mis-haps, performed on the persons of our two latest Kings *Henry* the third, the best King that hath reigned in France for an hundred yeares space, kild in the midst of his Armie by a diuelliſh Monke: And *Henry* the Great, fourth of the name, miserably murdred in his chiefest Citie, euen in the armes of his familiars, by an incarnate diuell. There is not any pardon for him, that attempteth on the life of his Prince. *Quis extendit manum suum in Christum Domini, & innocens erit?* So saith the Royall Prophet in the first Booke of the Kings the 26. Chapter. *Who can stretch forth his hand against the Lords annointed, and be guiltlesse?* He spake of *Saul*, King of Israel, whom God had reproued for his wickednesse.

The hard fate of the two last Kings of France.

In the yeare foure hundred and thirteene, the Bishop of *Paris*, at the request of the Vniuersitie, sent to the Duke of *Bourgongne*, being then in the Citie of *Arras*, to vnderstand from himselfe, whether he did allow and auouch those Articles of M. *Iohn Petit*, which he had formerly proposed at his request, maintaining the murder by him committed on the person of his Cousine Germaine, *Lewes* Duke of *Orleans*. The Bourgongnon hauing returned his answer, that he did not auouch them, but in that which was no more then right and reason: the Bishop of *Paris*, and the Inquisitor of the Faith, sent the Proposition of the said M. *Iohn Petit*, to the Sorbon of *Paris*, according to the Decree in the Court of Parliament, to know whether it was good & warrātable, or no. Behold here the very words, sent by the Bishop to the *Sorbonnists*.

The Message to the Duke of Bourgongne, & his answer.

The Bishop of *Paris* his Letter to the Doctors of *Sorbonne*,

The French Missiue.

MAistres Reuerends, on vous fait à scauoir, & vous enuoye-on la Scedule contenant aucunes Assertions, auec leurs Reprobations: parquoy nous vous requerons sur peine de Droict, que vous donniez publiquement vostre deliberation par escrit. Si ceste Assertion de laquelle est venu notairement scandale, est erronnee & à condamner, ou

non que nous puisions consequemment proceder, si comme ordre de Droict le requiert, à ce que vous ayez à vous assembler dans le Mercredy Vingtiesme iour de ce Mois de December.

The same in English.

REuerend Maisters, we giue you to know, and send you the Scedule, containing certaine Assertions, with their Reproofes. Wherefore we require you, vpon the penalty of Law, that you giue publiquely your deliberation in writing, whether this Assertion, whereof ariseth notorious scandale, be erroneous, and to be condemned, or no, to the end that we may consequently proceede, according as the order of Law requireth. Wherfore you are to assemble your selues, betweene this and Wednesday, the Twentieth of this Month of December.

The Proposition (as we haue formerly obserued) was this.

Quilibet Tyrannus potest, & debet licite, & meritorie occidi à quocumque suo Vassallo, & Subdito, & per quemcumque modum, maxime per insidias, & per adulationes, non stante quocumque iuramento, aut confœderatione factâ apud eum, non expectando Sententiam, aut Mandatum Iudicis cuiuscumque.

The damnable Proposition.

Any Tyrant may be, and ought to be, lawfully and meritoriously murdred, by his owne Vassaile and Subiect, in any sort or manner, whereby he can be intrapped: and especially by secret ambushes, and flatteries. Notwithstanding any Oath of Allegeance made to him, or of confederacie contracted with him. And this is to be done, without attending for any Sentence, or command from a Iudge whatsoeuer he be.

The *Sorbonnists* met together, to the number of fourescore Doctors, and of Bachelers in Diuinitie threescore and one. After the Masse of the *Holy-Ghost*, being sung according to the manner in such cases requisite and accustomed; the thirteenth day of September, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred and thirteene, they condemned this execrable Proposition by their Censure, whereof here follow-eth the Tenure.

The meeting of the Sorbonnists.

The Censure of the Sorbonnists *vpon the Proposition.*

HAc Assertio generaliter posita, & secundum acceptionem huius vocabuli, Tyrannus, est error in nostra fide, & doctrina bonorum morum, & est contra Præceptum Dei; Non Occides (*Glossa*) *propriâ auctoritate. Et contra hoc quod dicit Dominus noster Matthæi Vicesimo Sexto*: Omnes qui Gladium acceperint (*Glossa intelligit propriâ auctoritate*) Gladio peribunt.

Item hæc Assertio vergit in subuersionem totius Reipublicæ, & Vniuscuiusque Regis, aut Principis.

Item dat Viam, & Licentiam apperit ad pura alia mala, & ad fraudes, & ad violationem Fidei, & Iuramenti: & ad proditiones, & generaliter ad omnem inobedientiam subiecti ad Dominum suum, & ad omnem infidelitatem, & diffidentiam vnius ad alterum consequenter ad æternam damnationem.

Item dat Viam, & Licentiam apperit ad plura alia mala, & ad fraudes, & ad violationem Fidei, & Iuramenti: & ad proditiones, & generaliter ad omnem inobedientiam subiecti ad Dominum suum, & ad omnem infidelitatem, & diffidentiam vnius ad alterum consequenter ad æternam damnationem.

Item, ille qui affirmat talem errorem obstinate, & alios qui inde sequuntur, est Hæreticus, & tanquam Hæreticus debet puniri, etiam post suam mortem, vt notatur in Decretis Vicesimo Tertia, quæstione Quinta Decretorum.

Actum Parisius *Anno Millesimo, Quadringentesimo Decimo Tertio, die Mercurij Decimo Tertio Decembris.*

All these thus Englished.

Concerning the word, Tyrant.

THis Affirmatiue, thus put a generall Maxime, and according to the true signification of the word, Tyrant, is erronious in our Faith, and in the Doctrine of good manners. It is against the expresse Commandement of God: Thou shalt not kill: *The Glosse saith, thine owne priuate authoritie. And it is against that, which our Lord saith in Saint Matthew the fixe and twentieth Chapter*: All they that take the Sword (*the Glosse vnderstandeth, of their owne priuate authoritie, and without the command of Iustice*) shall perish by the Sword.

This Maxime tendeth to the subuersion and ruine of all Kingdomes and Common-weales, and of euery King and Prince.

It openeth the doore, and sheweth the way to all other euils; as to deceipts, breach of Faith, and the Oath of Fidelity sworne to his Prince: To Treasons, and (generally) to all disobedience of the Vassale and Subiect towards his Prince and Lord: To all infidelitie, perfidie and all distrust in one man to another. And by consequent, it leadeth men to eternall damnation.

Item, he that (out of obstinate mallice) maintaineth this diabolicall proposition, and others that depend thereon; is an Heretique, *and (as an Heretique) ought to be punished, yea, euen after death: As it is auouched in the Bookes of the Decretales Twentie three, and first Question.*

Resolued at Paris, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred and thirteene, on Wednesday, being the thirteenth day of December.

According to the Resolution of the Facultie of *Sorbonne*, this diuelliſh propoſition was condemned, as hereticall againſt the Faith. And further ordained, that the Pleading made by the ſaid *Iohn Petit*, ſhould be brought and burned before the Church of *Paris*. Alſo, that the bones of *Iohn Petit*, buried at *Heſdin*, ſhould be taken vp out of the ground, and burnt publiquely as an Heretique.

The Plea, Propoſition, and *Petits* bones burnt.

This was thus executed, both the Pleading and the Infernall Propoſition, publiquely burned by Order of Parliament, the nine and twentieth day of February, in the ſaid yeare foure hundred and thirteene; all the Cleargie being aſſembled at this execution, before the Church of *Paris*.

Nor was it without cauſe, that this Propoſition, toſſed and agitated *In vtramque partem*, euen as problematicall, to be put in effect as a maxime moſt aſſured, for the death of ſo great a Prince, ſuch as the Duke of *Orleans* was: ſhould be publiſhed for Hereticall, and they that propoſed and defended it, both puniſhable with materiall fire in this world, and in the other to come, with eternall and vnquenchable.

Concerning *Petrus Waldonius* a Merchãt of Lyons.

Petrus Waldonius, a rich Marchant of *Lyons*, was infected with the Hereſie of *Vigilantius*, condemned of the Church, as Saint *Auguſtine* writeth in his Booke of Hereſies, and Saint *Hierome* in his Epiſtle *Ad Ripuarium*, where they doe ſay. *Sola Gallia monſtra non habuit, ſed viris ſemper fortiſſimis, & eloquentiſſimis abundauit.* And purſuing the Hereſie of *Vigilantius*, addeth. *Exortus eſt ſubito Vigilantius, ſed potius Dormitantius, Campo Calagurritanus* (for he was a Natiue of *Calahorra* in Spaine) *Qui immundo Spiritu contra Chriſti Spiritum, & Martyrum neget Sepulchra veneranda, damnandas dicat eſſe Vigilias, Continentiam, Hereſim, Pudicitiam, libidinis Seminarium, &c.* So this *Peter Waldon* began to appeare in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred threeſcore and ten, and by the meanes of his wealth, drew vnto him a troupe or rabble of wretched, penurious and miſerable needy people, whom he gaue reliefe vnto, and expounded the Scriptures before them, according to his owne fancie; ſo ſaith *Guido Carmelita*, in his Tract of Hereſies.

The poore people of Lyons, Albigenſes, or Waldenſes.

Theſe Sectaries cauſed themſelues (at the beginning) to be called the *Poore people of Lyons*; afterward the *Albigeois*, or *Albigenſes*, becauſe they had made themſelues ſtrong with their opinionated Doctrine, in the Towne of *Alby*, ten Leagues from *Toloſa*, but more commonly were tearmed *Waldenſes*, by the name of their elected Prophet. At the firſt they went wandring from Towne to Towne, without hauing any lodging, or ſetled dwelling, carrying along with them a great traine of women, with whom they had indifferent aſſociation, without diſtinguiſhing degrees of conſanguinitie. They were charged to giue themſelues to the Diuell, followers of Sabaoths, and addicted to Sorceries, flights of Birds, Dreames and Sneezings. Among other opinions they held theſe

What the opinions of theſe Sectaries were.

1. Firſt, that the Pope was Antechriſt, and no more to be eſteemed then the meaneſt Prieſt.

That Prayers for the Dead are altogether vnprofitable.

That Purgatory was a Fable, inuented by the Prieſts; and ſo was Auricular Confeſſion.

That it was Idolatry to worſhip Images, and the Reliques of Saints; and ſo was Prayer to the Virgin *Mary*.

That Vigiles and Faſts were mens inuentions.

That to liue within the compaſſe of Continency and Single life, as Prieſts and Religious perſons did, was Hereſie.

That to make the vowe of Virginitie and Chaſtitie, was a Cloake for Religious men and women, whereby to couer their immodeſtie: and that, notwithſtanding their vowes, they might marrie.

They are further charged to hold.

That Kings and Magiſtrates, hauing committed any Sinne; were no longer Kings nor Magiſtrates, but euen as the meaneſt of the People, and priuate perſons: And that it was permitted, to maſſacre and kill them, without any figure or forme of Iuſtice.

Some doe doubt, that in theſe they are wronged.

But all Hereſies of ſuch dangerous and vnchriſtian qualitie, were condemned in the *Laterane* Councill, and in the Prouinciall, held at *Paris*, vnder King *Lewes*, eight of his name, Father of Saint *Lewes*. Likewiſe in the generall Counſell of *Conſtans*, held in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred and fifteene. At which Counſell preſided Pope *Iohn*, and preſent there the Emperour *Sigiſmund*; foure Patriarches; nine and twentie Cardinals; ſeauen and fortie Archbiſhops; two hundred threeſcore and ten Biſhops, fiue hundred threeſcore and foure Abbots and Doctors; among whom was the learned Maiſter *Iohn Gerſon*, Chancellour of the Vniuerſitie of *Paris*, Canon of the ſaid Church, and Curate of Saint *Iohn en Greue*, Ambaſſadour from King *Charles* the fift, as we haue ſaid in our former Booke; all Aſſiſtants to the ſaid Counſell of *Conſtans*, which is the ſixteenth Generall. There the Fathers condemned the Hereſies renewed in *Bohemia*, approuing and confirming the Decree and Cenſure of *Sorbonne*, againſt the Maxime of that idle-headed Doctor *Iohn Petit*; as it is recorded in the fifteenth Seſſion, whereof theſe are the very words.

The generall Councill held at Conſtans.

The Decree of the Counſell.

SAcro-Sancta Synodus præcipuâ ſollicitudine volens ad extirpationem errorum, & Hæreſeon in diuerſis Mundi partibus inualeſcentium prouidère, ſicut tenetur, & ad quam collecta eſt, nuper accepit quod nonnulle Aſſertiones erroneæ in Fide & bonis moribus, multiplicitèr ſcandaloſè, totiuſque Reipublicæ ſtatum, & ordinem ſubuertere molientes emanatæ ſunt, inter quas hæc Aſſertio delata eſt.

Quilibet Tyranus poteſt, & debet licitè, & meritoriè occidi per quemcumque Vaſſallum ſuum, vel Subditum, etiam per clanculares inſidias, & ſubtiles blanditias, vel aduliones, non obſtante quocumque præſtito iuramento, ſeu confœderatione facta cum eo, non expectatâ Sententia, vel Mandato Iudicis cuiuſcumque.

Aduerſus hunc errorem ſatagens hæc Sancta Synodus *inſurgere, & ipſum funditus tollere, prahabitâ deliberatione maturâ declarat, decernit, & diffinit huiuſmodi doctrinam eſſe in Fide, & in moribus, ipſam que tanquam* Hæreticam, *ſcandaloſam, & ad multas deceptiones, mendacia, proditiones, & periuria vias dantem, reprobat, & condemnat. Declarat inſuper, decernit, & diffinit quod pertinaciter doctrinam pernitioſiſſimam hanc aſſertentes ſunt Hæretici, tanquam tales iuxta Canonicas Sanctiones puniendi.*

Acta Conſtantiæ Anno Milleſimo Quadringenteſimo Decimo-Quinto, Pridie Nonas Iulij.

The ſame in Engliſh.

THe Holy and Sacred Counſell, being willing to imploy all their care and diligence, to extirpate thoſe Errours and Hereſies, which bud and ſhoote vp in diuers parts of the world: are thus aſſembled and called togeather for the ſame effect. Being newly informed, of certaine propoſitions, contrary to Faith and good Manners, extreamely ſcandalous, and which tend to the ſubuerſion of all order, and the Eſtate of euery Common-wealth: haue bin very ſtrangely taught and publiſhed. Among which Propoſitions, this.

The dangerous publiſhing of nouell propoſitions.

That euery Tyrant may lawfully and meritoriouſly be kilde, murdred and maſſacred by his

A diuelliſh Maxime.

by his Vaſſaile or Subiect, in any manner whatſoeuer it bee: eſpecially, by ſecret ambuſhes, inſinuations and flatteries. Notwithſtanding any Oath of Fidelity and Allegeance made and giuen to him; any Faith and promiſe ſworne vnto him; without awaiting the Sentence or Command of any Iudge.

The generall voyce of the whole Councell.

The Holy Councell willingly oppoſing themſelues againſt this error, and wholly to plucke it vp by the roote. After their mature Conſultation thereof, and what might beſt bee done in this buſines; haue declared, decreed and defined: That ſuch Doctrine being erroneous in faith, and contrary to all good manners, is reproued and condemned as hereticall, ſcandalous, and ſhewing the way to miſchiefes, falſhoods, Treaſons and fractions of Faith. Moreouer they haue decreed, reſolued, and declared, that ſuch as with wilfull obſtinacie, and purpoſed deliberation doe hold and maintaine this Propoſition; are Heretiques, and ſo ought to bee puniſhed, according as it is concluded by the Holy Canons.

Done at Conſtans, *in the yeare, One Thouſand, Foure Hundred, and Fifteene, the Sixteenth day of Iuly.*

The Cenſure of the Councell againſt the Duke of *Bourgongne.*

Iohn, the bad Duke of *Bourgongne*, more then halfe madded, becauſe in this Councell, his Ambaſſadour was put from his place and Seate, by him of Spaine (as heretofore wee haue related) and that by reſolution of the ſaid Councell, the murther of *Mounſieur Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, and the Propoſition by him maintained, had beene declared as hereticall. Moreouer, that vpon conſequence of the Cenſure iudicially and religiouſly deliuered by the Vniuerſity and Sacred faculty of Diuines at *Paris*, hee had beene areſted by the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, in the Yeare, One Thouſand, Foure Hundred and Fourteene, the Seauen and Twentieth day of December. It was ſent from the ſaid Councell of *Conſtans*, and publiſhed throughout all the Kingdomes of Chriſtendome; that hee was guilty of high-Treaſon, hauing iuſtly forfeited both body and goods. And the Propoſition of *Iohn Paruis*, or *Iohn Petite*, was as iuſtly condemned by the Biſhop of *Paris*.

Hereupon, *Iohn*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, ſent *Iohn de Mount-Leon* his Almoner to *Paris*, to raiſe and awaken his old acquaintances, partakers in the bloudy League, with Letters of credence from his Maiſter, to put all in trouble & cõfuſion, by diſtributing *Muotons a la grand Laine*, and *Saluts*, to Robbers and Boot-halers for them; as euermore it happeneth, when inciuill warres are raiſed and proſecuted by ſtrange enemies, that buy and purchaſe men at any price whatſoeuer. Saint *Gregory* of *Tours* hath well obſerued it, to bee put in practice by all Eſtates in the world, by Princes that would make themſelues Great with the goods of their neighbours. His paſſage is moſt remarkable to vs, that haue made too much proofe thereof within theſe hundred yeares laſt paſt, by diuers accidents. It is in the Eight Booke and Twenty Eighth Chapter of his Hiſtory of France, where hee ſetteth downe and figureth to the life thoſe miſchiefes, which haue happened to vs.

Certains pieces of Gold in France ſo named.

The *Wiſigothes* practices againſt King *Gonthran.*

Saint Gontran, King of France, perceiuing the Leagues and practiſes carried by the Kings of the *Vuiſigothes* of Spaine his neighbours, who corrupted his Subiects euen ſo farre as to them of his owne Cabinet; reſolued to make warre vpon them. His *de cauſis commotus* Gunthramnus Rex, *exercitum in Hiſpanias deſtinat. Dum autem hic exercitus moueretur*, Indiculum *à neſcio quibusdam hominibus Ruſticis eſt reperta quod &* Gunthramno *Regi legendum miſerunt, hoc modo quaſi Leuuichildus* (then King of Spaine) *ad Fredegundem* (Queene Mother to *Clothaire* the Great, King of France) Sonne to King *Chilpericke*, trayterouſly murdered) *ſcriberet vt quocunque ingenio exercitum illuc* (againſt the Spaniards) *ire prohiberet, dicens. Inimicos noſtros velociter intrimite, & cum Rege* Gunthramno *pacem inite, quam proemijs multis coemite.* Et. Si. Vobis. Minus. Eſt. Fortaſſis. Pecuniæ. Nos. Clam. Mittimus. Tantum. Vt. Quo. Petimus. Impleatis. Cum. Autem. De. Inimicis. Noſtris. Vlti. Fuerimus. Tunc. A. melio. Epiſcopo. Et. Leubæ. Matronæ. Bona. Tribuite, *per quos* Miſſis Noſtris, *vos accedendi aditus, Leuba enim Socrus eſt Bladaſti Ducis.*

The vow of King *Gnothran* to bee reuenged.

The ſame King *Gonthran*, hauing diſcouered theſe practiſes, and the execrable Aſſaſſinates of the Kings his Predeceſſors: ſware to be reuenged on the Author and Complices of them, euen vnto the ninth Generation. So proceedeth on Saint *Gregory* of *Tours*, in his Seauenth Booke, and One and Twentieth Chapter. *Iuraut. Omnibus. Optimatibus. Quod. Non. Modo. Ipſum. Verumetiam. Progeniem.*

In. Nouam. Generationem. Deleret. Vt. Per. Eorum. Necem. Conſuetudo. Auferretur. Iniqua. Ne. Reges. Amplius. Interficerentur.

The wretched condition of this latter Age.

And yet notwithſtanding, the Diuell is ſo vnchained, that hee finds and meets with Soules in ſuch ſort corrupted with falſe Doctrine: as the maſſacring and murthering of Princes, are their onely delights. *Oh the goodnes of God! in what an Age liue we:* when the death of a Prince, is but equall with that of a Monke?

On behalfe of the ſaid Duke of *Bourgongne*, *Iohn* the wicked, there wanted no mercenary Pennes to imitate Heretiques, that is to ſay: To withſtand and wreſt the true ſenſe of Sacred Scriptures, to cloud and darken the Maximes of their factious and confuſed dealing.

The holy and Sacred Councell of *Conſtans*, excommunicated all the Dogmatiſts, Aſſaſſines, Complices, and Fauourers of his. And here you may behold their Iuſt Reſolution, ſent to the Vniuerſity of *Paris*, by Maiſter *Iohn de Iarſon*.

Cedula Miſſa a Conſtantia, *per Magiſtrum Iohannem de Iarſone* Pariſius, *contra Ducem Burgundiæ, & eius fautores, Menſe Auguſto. Anno M. CCCC. XV.*

Reſtans ſcienter impedimentum, commiſſiue, vel omiſſiue; concilio, & auxilio, ne Dux Burgundiæ recognoſcat publicè, & abſolutè, quod peccauit in fide, & bonis moribus, iuſtificandè, & iuſtificari faciendo notorie, & ſcandaliſe interfectionem Ludouici *quondam Ducis Aurelianenſis, & circumſtantiam necis illius*, Omnis Talis Eſt Inimicus *dicti Ducis Burgundiæ, & ſalutis ſuæ, &* Peccat Adeo Taliter: *quòd ſi in hoc ſit pertinax, condemnandus eſt* Vt Fautor Hæreticæ Prauitatis. *Redditurus eſt inſuper rationem de omnibus damnis, tam Spiritualibus, quam Temporalibus inde prouenientibus, quam futuris.* Regiret Idcirco Quilibet Siue Doctor, Siue Prælatus, Aut Alius, *quemadmodum diffidauit in hac materiâ, vel diſſimulabit*, Fauore, vel Timore, Vel Negligentia, *prout libet ſcit, aut ſcire debet, qualiter obligatur ad Correctionem Fraternam, vel Doctrinalem, vel Iudicialem*, Præcipue Summus Pontifex, Cum Sacro Cardinalium Collegio, & Etiam Generali Concilio. *Attento, quod euidentia patrati ſceleris, clamore indiget Accuſantis. Denique talis, qualis prædictus*, Eſt Cencendus Impeditor Iuris.

The liues and lands of Princes put to the Popes arbitrement.

In that which hath beene ſet downe, is moſt remarkable againſt the Doctrine of Romiſh men, as (through a blindfold obedience) doe appoint the Life and State of Princes and Common-wealths, to the Iudgement and Arbitrement of the Pope, againſt the determination of Generall Counſels, yea, and the wiſedome diuine, who by his owne mouth hath appointed Temporall Kingdomes, the States and Perſons of Secular Princes, with the power of his Church.

Three Ante-Popes depoſed by the Councell of *Conſtans.*

In this Councell of *Conſtans*, confirmed by Pope *Martin* the Fifth, the three Ante-Popes, *Gregory* the Twelfth, *Benedict*, the Thirteenth, and *Iohn*, the Three and Twentieth depoſed: by the Fathers of the ſaid Councell was elected Pope *Martin*, the Fifth of the name, who reſtored peace to the Church, which being troubled by the three Ante-Popes; *France* was in the ſame condition, through the Treacheries and Ambitions of the *Bourgongnon*, who hauing brought the Engliſh into France, hee was the onely motiue and cauſe of the ruine thereof, and the death of many great Lords of the Kingdome.

The notorious cruelties of the Duke of *Bourgongne.*

For the *Bourgongnon* making himſelfe Maiſter of *Paris*, and getting into his power the King and the Queene; by one named *Cappeluche*, the Hangman of *Paris*, hee performed the very ſtrangeſt cruelties, that euer could be imagined. For in one day he cauſed to bee brought before him, Sixteene Hundred Lords of note, among whom was *Bernard*, Count of *Armaignac*, Conſtable of France, *Henry de Marle*, Chancellour, the Biſhops of *Conſtans*, *Bayeux*, *Eureux*, *Senlis* and *Xaintes*; the Abbot of Saint *Cornille de Compeigne*, the Count *de Grand-prè*, and other Lords of the Iuſtice Councell and Requeſts; all inhumanely maſſacred before his owne eyes. Hauing ſworne peace with the Daulphine *Charles*, at *Pouilly le Fort*, neere to *Melun*, he promiſed to withdraw the Engliſh out of France. Which promiſe being not kept, but

but perſiſting ſtill in his rebellions and treacheries: for a full expiation of ſo many miſchiefes, on *Le Pont de Montereau*, or *Fault-Yonne*, on Sunday, it being the Feaſt of September, in the Yeare One Thouſand, Foure Hundred and Nineteene, bee was kild and maſſacred before the Daulphine *Charles*, who reproached him with his perfidious dealings, with blowes of Axes, : euen as Twelue yeares before, hee had caused *Lewes* Duke of *Orleans*, to bee bloodily butchered, To verefie the Oracle pronounced by the mouth of him that is Truth it ſelfe: *Qui gladio perimit, gladio peribit:* For as *Ouid* ſaith.

The deſerued death of the Duke of *Bourgongne.*

——— Nec enim Lex æquior vlla.
Quam necis artifices arte perire ſua.

This *John* of *Bourgongne*, had eſpouſed *Margaret*, Daughter to *Albert* of Bauaria Siſter to *William* of *Bauaria*, Count of *Henault*, and of *Holland*, and of her he begot one onely Sonne, *Philip*, Second of the Name, Third Duke of *Bourgongne*, who to reuenge the death of his Father, raiſed the Engliſh againe to ruinate France. And having ſeized the Perſons of the King & Queene, then remaining at *Troyes* in Champaigne, he there managed the marriage of Madame *Katherine* of France, laſt Daughter to King *Charles* the Sixth, with the King of England, *Henry*, Fifth of the name, the very Capitall Enemy of France. A Marriage of Siniſter preſage, celebrated at *Troyes*, according to the Treaty of Marriage contracted and accorded the One and Twentieth day of May, One Thouſand, Foure Hundred and Twenty. By which Treaty, King *Charles the Sixt* being then ſicke in his ſenſes (by the Counſaile of the ſaid Duke of *Bourgongne*) inſtituted his future Sonne in Law, *Henry* the Fifth, King of France: diſinheriting vniuſtly *Charles* the Daulphine of France, lawfull Heyre of the Crowne, forcing and violating the fundamentall Law of the Kingdome. The which made this Treaty of Marriage, were as void of iudgement and reaſon, as the King, being corrupted with gifts and promiſes; by the *Bourgongnon*, as in our time wee haue almoſt ſeene the like, by the mediation and working of ſome vnnaturall Frenchmen, corrupted with forraigne-Countrey Gold. But in thoſe times then, as ours likewiſe: God (the continuall Conſeruer of this Monarchie) hath kept the Right to the lawfull Heyres thereof, and hath reeſtabliſhed them in their Patern Inheritance, to the ſhame and confuſion of their enemies.

Philip, Duke of *Bourgongne* reuenged his Fathers death.

Henry the Fift King of England, married Madam *Katherine* of France.

This *Monſieur Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, was the Inſtituter of the Order of *the Porcupine*, (and not *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, his Eldeſt Sonne, as it is written by *Paradine*, and others that haue taken vpon them to warrant it) for ioy of the Birth and Baptizing of his Firſt Sonne *Charles* of *Orleans*, borne (according to *Du Tillet* in the Yeare One Thouſand, Three Hundred, Twenty and Three.

The Inſtitution of the Order of *the Porcupine*, by *Monſieur Lewes* of *France, Duke of Orleans, in the yeare One Thouſand, Three Hundred Foure Score and Thirteene.*

In Chron. Iuuenal des Vrſins.

THe Imprinted Chronicle of *Meſſire Iuuenall des Vrſins*, vnder the Yeare, One Thouſand Three Hundred, Foure Score, and Fourteene, noteth this Birth of the Firſt Sonne of *Orleans*, in theſe words. *In the ſaid yeare, the Dutcheſſe of Orleans had a Sonne, named Charles. And at his Baptizing there was great Solemnity.* Thus you ſee what hee ſaith in ſumme.

But I haue ſeene a ſmall Manuſcript French Chronicle, compoſed by an Herauld of *Orleans*, named, *Hennotin de Cleriaux*, a Natiue of *Blois*, who liued in the time of this Chriſtening, and whereat hee was preſent in his Coate of Office, and hee inſtructeth me in this manner.

The words of *Hennotin de Cleriaulx*, Herauld of *Orleans.*

For the Solemnity of the ſaid Baptiſme, Monſieut Lewes *of France made a new Order of Knighthood, very excellent, and of great renowme, termed*, The Order of the Porcupine: *which hee had choſen for his Deuice, in fauour, and for the high hope which he had of his firſt Borne Sonne.* For at that time, there were ſome hard meaſures betweene the Nephewe and Vncle of *Bourgongne*, *Monſieur Philip* gouerning the King and Queene at his owne pleaſure. A little after, hee ſetteth downe (particularly) the

rancke and degree, the names of the Princes, Lords and Gentlemen, his faithfull Confederates; to whom the ſaid Duke of *Orleans* gaue his Order of the Porcupine, of whom I haue loſt the remembrance, and my Chronicle the ſight.

The Dukes of *Orleans* and of *Bourgongne* reconciled and made friends.

The ſame King of Armes of *Orleans*, reporteth, that in the Yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Foure Hundred, and Seauen, on Sunday, it being the Twentieth day of September, the Lord of *Berry* cauſed the Dukes of *Orleans* and of *Bourgongne*, to meet together in his *Hoſtel de Neeſle* at *Paris*, to make a louing and kinde agreement betweene the ſaid Princes: which hee did, and in ſuch ſort, as the three Princes went and heard Maſſe together at the *Auguſtines*, where the ſaid Dukes of *Orleans* and of *Bourgongne*, receiued the Sacrament together, after then had ſollemnly ſworne mutuall loue and Brotherhood. For aſſurance whereof, at the ending of Dinner in the *Hoſtel de Neeſle*, the Duke of *Bourgongne* receiued the Order of the *Porcupine*, at the hands of the Duke of *Orleans*, who did put it about his necke, each kindly kiſſing the other, the Lord of *Berry* melting into teares of ioy, by beholding it.

In Chron. Iuuenal des Vrſins.

The very ſame is recorded in the Chronicle of *Meſſire Iuuenall des Vrſites*, vnder the ſaid Yeare, One Thouſand, Foure Hundred and Seauen, and vnder that of One Thouſand, Foure Hundred, and Nineteene, in theſe words. *To the Duke of* Orleans, *a little before hee had cauſed him to bee ſlaine, in manner before related; the ſaid* John *of* Bourgongne, *made ſollemne Oath vpon the Sacred Body of our Lord, to bee his true and loyall Kinſman. And promiſed to bee his Brother in Armes, wore his Order, and gaue gracious behauiour, and they dined together.*

The Habite of the Order.

This Order was compoſed of Fiue and Twenty Knights, comprehending himſelfe as chiefe Gouernour thereof. They wore long looſe Caſſocks of fine Scarlet Murrey, (which is violet) and ouer them Cloakes of watchet coloured veluet, lined (as the Mantelet and Chapperon) with Carnation Sattin. And thereupon the Collar of the Order, formed as a wreath of Chaines of Gold, at the end whereof hanging vpon the Breaſt a *Porcupine*, of pure Gold, vpon a riſing Hill of greene Graſſe and Flowers.

Concerning two kinds of *Porcupines* in *Affrica* & the *Indies.*

The *Porcupine* is called by the Latines *Hyſtrix*, and are two familiar kinds of them, that is to ſay, which are oftner ſeene (more then elſe-where) in *Affrica*, and in the *Indies*. Both of them are called Hogges or Swine, in regard of comming ſo neere to the reſemblance of that domeſticke Creature amongſt vs, inured to wallowing in the mire, particular by it ſelfe, and the other wild or Sauage, which is reckoned a wild Boare, the hunting whereof is pleaſant. And wee haue an ancient French Prouerb to this purpoſe: *Au Cerf la biere, au Sanglier le Barbier.* The *Porcupine* is a kind of *Hedge-hogge* as well as the Vrchin; for hee is wholly armed with ſtrong Scales, like vnto them of the *Tortoiſe*, and perceiuing hard purſuit made after him, ſhuts himſelfe vp faſt lockt vp, within his Scales, And the *Porcupine* is likewiſe reſembled to the *Hedge hogge*, both being armed with ſharpe pricking points: but thoſe of the *Porcupine* are much longer then the other. This Animall, ſeeing himſelfe narrowly preſſed with Dogges, ſtretcheth himſelfe forth, and bindeth his Skinne with ſuch might, that he darteth and letteth flye his prickles like Arrowes at their muzzles, which forceth them to giue ouer their hold, and follow him no further. As we learne of *Pliny*, in the Eight Booke and Thirty Fiue Chapter of his Naturall Hiſtory, and next to him, our French *Lucretius*, *Du Bartas.*

These beaſts hardly laid to, lay as hardily about them.

——— De ſon Dos il fait Bruire
Vne foreſt de Dards, fier qui ſans corde tire
Mille traicts en vn coup, de qui les rudes flancs
Sont couuerts d'Aiguillons, armez d'aſpres Serancs,
Heriſſez de Poinçons qui touſiours reiectonnent.

Du Bartas, en ſon Sixieme Premier Semaine.

——— His back doth beare
A Forreſt of Darts, no Bow-ſtring needeth there,
To ſhoote a thouſand at once, his brawny ſides,
Are couered with ſharpe bodkins, their force glides
With thorny points, which duely he lets flye.

Marcus

Marc. Paul. Venet. in lib. de Tartar. 1. Chap 33.

Marcus Paulus of *Venice*, in the First Booke, and Three and Thirtieth Chap. his *Tartaria*, writeth that in the Countrey of *Seassem*, there is found great store of *Porcupines*; but the hunting of them is extreamly dangerous, in regard that (as he saith) they wound with their sharpe piercing quilles, all men and hounds that come neere them. *Sunt in Regione illa multi Sues Spinosi, qui quum capiuntur à venatoribus, suis sæpe Homines, & Canes lædunt. Nam Canes à Venatoribus in Porcos provocati, eos irritant, & commouent feras illas, vt simul concurrentes terga sua, quibus Spinæ innascuntur, vehementer commoueant, atque stimulos ipsos vehementia quadam excutiant, & in viciniores Homines, & Canes euibrent.*

The Porcupines of *Seassem* in *Tartaria*.

The Viper & Vrchin alike in producing their young.

Moreouer, the Vrchin or Hedge-hogge is subiect to the same mischance, as is reported to bee common to the Viper, to bring forth her young ones so late as she can. In the same manner the Vrchin, feeling in her wombe the sharpe quilles of her younglings, forbeareth so long to produce them: that their keene points increasing by those long delayes, doe pierce through her entrailes and belly, that cause her death in recompence of her long delaying. And this was the reason why the Egyptians vsed this Creature, as a Symbole or Hieroglyphicke of Indiscretion: *Procrastinationis damnum*, deriued from the doctrine of the Hebrewes. To which the Prophet *Hieremy* threatned, that the wicked, hardened in their sinnes, should be punished in a strange fashion: that is to say, that they should not leaue any Line behind them, which might conserue the memory of them: And that their women trauelling with Child, should haue the same labour as the Vrchin or *Porcupine*. *Omnibus Labores* Ericij. *Vidi impium exaltatum super Cedros Libani transiui, & ecce non erat.* So saith the Royall Psalmist.

The Porcupine the Hieroglyphicke of indiscretion.

The reason why he tooke this deuice.

Monsieur Lewes of *Orleans*, tooke this Animall for the Deuice and Subiect of his Order, to make knowne thereby to *Iohn* of *Bourgongne*, his mortall enemie, that he would reuenge himselfe, for his brauadoes against him; and breake the wicked and bloody purposes, which *Iohn* of *Bourgongne* had conceiued and engendred, in the hollow pits of malediction and cruelty: whereinto himselfe would fall, and the House of *Bourgongne* perish to the third Generation; as it happened to *Charles*, the last Duke of *Bourgongne*, youngest Sonne to this *Iohn* the Cruell. And yet neuertheless, as all hatreds ought to bee mortall, and liue but for a time in euery Noble and Generous Soule: so after the death of the said *Iohn* of *Bourgongne*, who had for his Successor *Philip* the Second Duke of *Bourgongne*, they became Countrey friends together.

Heauy enemies made louing friends.

For in the Yeare, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, and Forty, *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, (Eldest Sonne to *Monsieur Lewes* of France) deliuered out of England (where hee had remained euer since the Battell of *Azingcourt*, lost by the French, *Anno*, One Thousand, Foure Hundred and Fifteene) by the mediation of the said *Philip* of *Bourgongne*: these two Princes made a peace betweene themselues, vnited by Marriage of *Mary* of *Cleues*, Daughter to the Sister of the said Duke of *Bourgongne*, with the same Duke of *Orleans*, sollemnized in the Abbey of Saint *Bertin*, in the Towne of Saint *Omer*, on Saturday before Saint *Andrewes* day, in the Yeare, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, and Forty.

Particular deuises in honor of the Marriage.

Among which particular Iouiall delights to honour this Marriage, on the Sonday following, there was performed, a Masquerado, or Mummery of a Virgin richly parcelled, like to a Nymphe; leading in her right hand a *Porcupine*, darting vp into the Ayre his Quilles, or Arrowes, very artificially. In her left hand shee conducted a goodly white Swanne, hauing about her necke a rich Collar of the *Order of the Golden-Fleece*. These were particular deuises and Emblazons, concerning the Houses of *Orleans*, of *Cleues*, and of *Bourgongne*, the markes or notes of Alliances, of the two Houses of *Orleans*, and of *Cleues*: whereof are yet to bee seene (at this present in the *Louure*) rich Tapestries of high and vnualluable price, made of Gold and Silke, in the parted Armes of *Orleans* and of *Cleues*.

The Order of *Bourgongne* of the *Golden-Fleece*.

The manner of their Habits.

On the Tuesday after the Nuptialls, the Duke of *Bourgongne* began to celebrate the Feast of his Order, of the *Golden-Fleece* (whereof wee shall speake more at large in the Fourth Booke) with his Brethren Knights, who (with their Soueraigne) went to heare Euensong, wearing their Cloakes semed with Flames of Gold, the ...

...broydered with Fusils and Stones, which appeared to sparkle like fires, all embroidered most sumptuously, and their Chapperons with their round rich wreathes, as they were wont to be worne in elder times. According to their ranke and degree, they had their Chaires placed in the Quire; and directly ouer their heads, the Tables of their Armes and Emblazons.

The manner of their habits.

After the establishment of this Order, fiue Knights were deceased, whose places were likewise vacant, and without Escutchions. On Wednesday, which was the first day of Saint *Andrew*, the Knights went to heare Masse in as magnificent manner as the day before. At returne from Church, the Duke sate at the Table in the middest of the Knights, all wearing the Order of the *Golden-Fleece*, made of Fusils of Gold, and betweene euery two of them were the shapes of Flint stones, which (as we haue elsewhere said) were the Armes of the first Dukes of *Bourgongnes*, Sons and Descendants from great King *Clouis*, richly enammeled with fiery sparkles, and hanging vnderneath a Fliece of Gold, hanging directly on the breast. These Knights were placed at the Table, all on the one side, according as Monks vse to sit in their diuing Hall: and after Dinner was ended, they departed thence two and two together, as Monkes vse to doe, but they who were the ancientest Knights, went last, and the younger went formost.

The Armes of the first Dukes of *Bourgongne*.

On Thursday, they were summoned for entrance, and to hold their Chapter, to the end that they might proceed to the Election of new Knights in their places that were deceased. In this Chapter, they made choyce of *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans*, to be of their Order and Brotherhood, and to vnderstand from himselfe, whether hee would like of this election or no, they sent vnto him the Bishop of *Tournay*, and the Chancellour of *Bourgongne*, Maister *Nicholas Raulin* (he which caused to be builded the Hospitall of *Beaune*, the most magnificent in all Christendome, to whom the Duke of *Orleans* made answere, that most willingly he did embrace the Order, to honour his Brother in Law and Cousin the Duke of *Bourgongne*.

Charles Duke of *Orleans* chosen to the Order of the *Golden-Fleece*.

Hereupon, they entred the great Hall immediately, towhich place came the Duke with all his Brethren Knights, returning from their Chapter. The King of Armes named *Toison d'Or*, the Heraulds and Pursеuants marching before in Order: the King of Armes carrying on his left Arme, a Cloake & Chaperon of the said Order. *Messire Hugh de Launoy*, who was appointed to beare the word; approaching neere *Monsieur* the Duke of *Orleans*, spake to him in these, or the like words.

Golden-Fleece King of Armes.

Most Excellent Most puissant, and Most redoubted Lord, my Lord the Duke of Orleans; behold here in your presence my Lord the Duke of Bourgongne, & my Lords his Brethren the Order of the Golden Fliece, who haue aduised & concluded altogether in the Chapter in regard of the most high renowne, valiancie & wisedome remaining in your most noble person; to present you a Collar of the Order. Entreating you most humbly that you would be pleased to receiue and weare it; to the end, that the Brotherly loue which is betweene you and your most honoured Lord, may be the better maintained and preserued.

The Speech deliuered to the Duke of *Orleans*.

Then my Lord the Duke of *Orleans* made Answere, that hee would doe it very gladly. Whereuppon the Duke of *Bourgongne* (who had a Collar there ready of his Order) stept forward, and put it about the Necke of my Lord the Duke of *Orleans*, making these words. *In the Name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Holy-Ghost*; after kissing him in signe of Brotherly affection.

In like manner, and at the same instant, did the Duke of *Orleans* as kindly require the Duke of *Bourgongne*, requesting, that hee would likewise bee pleased to receiue and weare his Order; whereto hee kindly condiscended: when instantly the Duke of *Orleans*, drew forth of his sleeue a Collar of his Order, and put about the Duke of *Bourgongne* his necke: conducting him afterward to the Chapter (when hee had first put on the Cloake and Chapperon, of the *Order of the Golden-Fleece*) to take the Oathes in such cases required, and to giue assurance, in the Election of foure other Knights, to fulfill the places of them that were dead.

A mutuall enterchange of Loue & Honour betweene the 2. Dukes.

This was kept secret amongst them, but yet notwithstanding within few dayes after it was so published; that they would needs send to the Dukes of *Bretaigne* and *Alanson*, each of them a Collar of the *Order of the Golden-Fliece*. And thither likewise

The Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Alanson* accepted into the Order.

wise was sent the King of Armes, *Toison d'Or*, to beare them to the said two Princ and to deliuer them Letters for that effect, sent from the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Bur gongne*, and the Knights of the said Order. The Dukes of *Alanson* and *Bretaigne* cepted the Collars very-thankfully, bestowing rich guifts on the King of Armes This is that which *Paradine* speaketh concerning this Marriage, and the whole Co tents of this Chapter, in his History of *Bourgongne*.

Chambre Doree.

The *Porcupine* kept still in continued memory.

King *Lewes* the Twelfth being come to the Crown of the Noble Flower de Lu retained the *Porcupine* for his Deuice; as is to be seene in the Gilded Chamber, the Glasse-windowes and Barres, and on the Bench and Throane of Iustice, wh is so beautified when our Kings come thither in Magnificence, at their Maiori Regency, and other sollemne performances: yea, the Cloth of State, & corne quarters of the same Seate, *Semez de France*, are enterlaced on the Gold-wor with Crimson Veluet, and the Letter *L.* after the ancient fashion Crowned, a with *Porcupines* Crowned. The like is to be discerned on the great Table in Chamber of Accounts, and fore-front thereof, built in the life time of the Father his People, where his Picture standeth very Royally in the middest of the Cardi Vertues, Fortitude, Prudence, Temperance, and Iustice; and euery where *Semé France, ou Porc-Espic Couronné*. And the same is to be seene on all the Buildings re sed in his Raigne.

The Armes of *Orleans* quartered with *Millaine*.

Wee haue obserued that this Royall Race of *Orleans*, *Portoit de France au Lamb de Trois pieces d'Argent*; let vs now see in the same traine, why the said Armes quartered with *Millaine*, *D'Argent à la Bysse ou Giure d'Azur lissante de Gueules*. Th Marriage made of Monsieur *Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, with *Valentina Millaine*, Daughter to *John Galeas*, Duke of *Millaine*, Sirnamed of the Vicounts, a to Madame *Isabell* of France, Daughter to King *Iohn*; it was stipulated or Couen ted by expresse termes, that the said *John* deceasing without Heyres Males, the Du dome of *Millaine*, with the County of *Ast*, should appertaine to Monsieur *Lewes* France, and to his Heyres. To cleare this right of the Dukedome of *Millaine*, quired to the Crowne of France, by *Lewes* the Twelfth: I hold it nothing de ring from our purpose, to obserue the Originall and Progresse of the Vicounts, a of the Dukedome of *Millaine*.

An expresse stipulation & agreement for the Dukedom of *Millaine*.

The History of the Dukedome of *Millaine*, acquired to the Crowne of *France*.

The ancient situation of the *Lombards*.

THe noble Romane Historian *Cornelius Tacitus*, and all they that haue especi remarked the Antiquity of the Romane Empire, doe agree with one consen That the Lombards were (in elder dayes) placed on the bounds and Confines *Allemaigne* or *Germany*, neere to *Pannonia*, and that vpon the declining of the E pire, (as we learne by *Iohn* the Deacon, and *Sigebert*) they passed into that part *Italy* (heretofore obserued by *Cæsar*, in the First Booke of his Memories of the Ga wars) which held a portion of the *Gaules*, acknowledged by the Appellation of *lia Togata*, & that the Germane People held Possession there in Title of a Kingdo which our King *Charlemaigne* abolished, by bringing Italy vnder his obey-sance.

Saint *Ambrose* Bishop of *Millaine*.

The chiefe or Capitall City of Lombardy is *Millaine*, honoured by that bri Beacon of the Church, Saint *Ambrose*, Bishop thereof, by whom it is called *Meth num*: in regard that the *Gaules* of *Bourges*, and of *Autun*, first founders thereof, in ing the foundation, did find there a wild Sow or Boare, halfe couered with S and the other halfe with Wooll. So saith the same S. *Ambrose*, agreeing with T *Liuius*, in the Fift Booke of his Romane History: whervpon said the Poet *Claud*

Ad moenia Gallus,
Condita lanigeræ Suis ostendentia pellem.

The peopling of Italy by the *Gaules*.

Her Foundation is recorded (after the opinion of *Titus Liuius*) vnder the Re of *Tarquinius Priscus*, at such time as one part of the *Gaules*, to the number of T Hundred Thousand, went to people Italy, vnder Conduct of their Leader *Bel zus*, one of the Nephewes to *Ambigat*, King of the *Gaules*, as we haue formerly serued. *Ausonius* placeth this City, in the number of them best worthy of no for the fertility of her grounds and Soyle.

Et Mediolani mira omnia copia rerum,
Innumera cultaque domus, facunda virorum
Ingenia, antiqui mores.

Procopius, in his second Booke of the *Gothes* warres, nameth it, next to Rome, the chiefest of Cities vnder the Westerne Empire: And wherein the Emperors pleased to make their soiourning, which made it to grow rich, and wonderfully potent.

Gouernors appointed for *Millaine* and *Lombardie*.

After the Conquest of *Italie*, and the Kingdome of *Lombardie* ruined, by the subiugall of *Didier* their last King, confined at *Lyons*, but some say at *Mont-Didier* in *Picardie*, in the yeare of Grace seauen hundred threescore and sixeteene: *Charlemaigne* established for Gouernour at *Millaine*, and the Iurisdiction of *Lombardie*, a Iudge and Seneschall or Steward. These Iudges and Seneschals were in (elder times) named *Vice-Comites*, Viscounts, and to the number of twelue vnder the Counts; who represented Gouernors, vnder the Lieutenants Generals of the great Prouinces, that were called Dukes. And those Vicounts had Lieutenants vnder them, whom they enabled *Vicarios*, Vicars, & by another name, common in *Gascoigne*, *Languedock*, and *Prouence*, *Viguiers*: as we haue said in the Tracts of the Officers of the Crown of France. Italie in generall, and the Prouinces in perticuler, bounding on *Pharos*, and the straites of *Messina* in Sicilie, were by *Charlemaigne* annexed to the Crowne of France, and rendred as Fiefes thereof, vntill the vnhappy partition made by the debonnaire. After him, the *Berengars* cantonned themselues in Italie, and there stiled themselues to be Kings.

The descent of the *Berengars* and their rule in Italie.

These *Berengars* were descended of *Boson*, made and created King of *Prouence*, by Ier King of France *Charles* the Bauld. So *Berengarius*, first of the name, commanded as Maister ouer Italie foure yeares: And *Berengarius* the second, seauen yeares. *Hugh* Duke of *Bourgongne*, Prince of the Bloud of France, sent him roundly thence, and Regented Italie ten yeares: *Lotharius* his Sonne, two yeares onely. This man hauing giuen his daughter *Alix* in marriage to *Berengarius* the third, possessed himselfe of Italie, against his Father in Law, & committed his wife *Alix* of Bourgongne to liue as a prisoner.

Otho of Saxonie his voyage into Italy against *Berengarius*.

Against him went into Italie *Otho* of Saxonie, whom the Germaines sirnamed the Great; & who vanquished *Berengarius* in a ranged Battaile neere to *Pauia*, deliuered *Alix* out of prison, made her his wife, and brought her with him into Germanie. During the time of his absence, *Berengarius* bestirred himselfe to recouer his losse, and compelled *Otho* to passe againe into Italie the second time, in the yeare of Grace nine hundred fiftie and seauen; when he stiled himselfe not onely King of Germanie, but likewise Emperor of the Romans. *A Title which should appertaine to none, but only to the Kings of France.*

Pope *Stephen* the eight, a friend to *Otho* in his attempt.

Otho was fauoured in this his enterprise by Pope *Stephen*, eight of the name a Germaine by Nation, and his neere Kinseman, against the vnanimate consent of the people of Italie: as is written by *Palmerius Florentinus* in his Chronicle, vnder the yeare nine hundred fiftie fiue, by these words. *Post Arnulphum* (this *Arnoule* was the Bastard of *Carloman*, the Bastard Sonne of *Lewes* the Stammerer, Emperour and King of France, second of the name) *Imperium confunditur, dolentibus Romanis, atque diuersis Italiæ Populis, quod* A Francia in Germaniam *translatum esset. Quamobrem à Romanis, Pontificeque insignibus sunt Trans-Alpini Imperatores, vsque ad primum Bonem; & in Italia quidem Berengarij Imperium per id temporis vsurparunt.*

The last Emperour of the bloud of France

After the death of *Lewes* the Fourth, who was the last Emperour of the Bloud of France, Sonne to the Bastard *Arnoule*: *Conrard* Duke of Franconia, made vsurpation of Germanie (then being deceased without children *Henry*, sirnamed the Birdcher, Duke of Saxonie) continuing his wandrings, which were brought to end by his Sonne *Otho*, who (at a sudden) vsurped ouer Germanie, which had bin a fee to the Crowne of France euer since Great *Clouis*, who subdued it in the yeare hundred after the Battle of *Tolbiac*, as we haue before declared in the second Booke. This is that deliuered by *Beatus Rhenanus*, writing vpon *Cornelius Tacitus*, his *Germania*, in these words. *Post ingentem illam cladem ad Tolbiacum Vicum Vbiorum* (neere Cologne one the *Rhine*) *acceptam, ita pressêre nos* Franci, *vt respirare non valuerit, donec*

nec exoletâ stirpe Veterum Francorum, *auspiciis primum Othonis Saxonis* Ducis, Conrardi *Osto-Franci, atque Henrici Saxonis, mox magni illius Othonis, qui inter Imperatores Germanicos primum obtinet locum, in pristinam libertatem, nos ipsi vindicauimus.*

Pope *Stephen* his Crowning *Otho* for Emperour.

Pope *Stephen* hauing (long before) caused *Otho* to come to Rome, he crowned him himselfe Emperour, so saith *Palmerius*. *Otho à Romanis Ecclesiæ Patribus, Vrbisque Principibus euocatus, Romam proficiscitur, in quâ Vrbe amplissimis honoribus vsus, Coronam suscepit. Et fuit primus qui post translatum in Germaniam Imperium, Imperiales titulos rite susciperet; quod postea obseruatum est, vsque in præsens tempus.*

This was consented vnto by the Romanes, because they had so sollemnly sworne vnder paine of eternall curse *(Sub Anathemate Maranatha)* to our *Charlemaigne* when hee was crowned Emperour by Pope *Leo*, Thirteenth of the Name, in the Yeare of Grace, Eight Hundred and One, incurring by their violated faiths, the fulminatory Censures, sent out by this Pope against the Romanes, and People of the West, who would not acknowledge any other for Emperours, but onely the Kings of France, to whom alone the Title of Emperour appertained by successiue right without either consent of the Romane people, or the Crowning of Popes, though necessary or requisite thereto, these being not of the essence of the Imperiall dignity, nor depending thereon. For, concerning the matter of Coronation, the Emperour *Maximilian* the first, spake very well to the Popes Legate, and to the States of the Empire, assembled at the Dyet, held at Constance in the Yeare, One Thousand, Fiue Hundred and Seauen. *That it was but a Ceremony, to take and receiue the Imperiall Crowne at the Popes hand: In regard* (quoth he) *that the dignity and power of the Emperour, depended vpon none, but on the Estates of the Empire.*

The words of *Maximilian* Emperour, to the Popes Legate at *Constance.*

And as for that which respecteth or concerneth consent of the Romane People which *Palmerius* would haue to bee an essentiall cause: they neuer had any such right or authority, either of voyces or suffrages, although he would arrogate it to their power. And therefore the Emperour *Fredericke*, First of the name, Sirnamed *Barba Rossa*, making his entrance into the City of *Rome*, brauely answered to the principall persons among them that came forth to meete him, and thought highly to content him, by saying in their Oration. *That the Empire was come to the Almaignes or Germaines, by the concession of Popes, and consent of the Romane people: And consequently, that he was greatly beholding to them.* But the Emperour presently replyed. *Ego Romanum Imperium Maiorum meorum Francorum sanguine emptum, eisdem quibus accepi manibus, tueri conabor. Sic vanam Italorum contudit arrogantiam. That the right of the Empire was come to him by the Kings of France, his most noble Grand-fathers, and not by the Italians, whose arrogancie he made a mockery of.* So saith *Otho*, Bishop of *Frisinghen*, and the Poet *Ligurine*, in the Life of this noble and famous Emperour.

The Emperors bold & worthy Answere.

The Emperour *Frederick Barba-Rossa*, his entrance into Rome.

Italy, then vnder *Charlemaigne* (which he wan with his blood) was gouerned by Counts and Vicounts. But the negligence of his Sonnes & Descendants gaue way and leysure to these Gouernours to impatronize themselues of their Gouernments and Benches of Iustice, and to become Lords domineering ouer their Countries Vicounties: the right of *Baise le maine*, only reserued to the Emperours, with some few small Rights for their Inuestiture.

The right of kissing the Hand.

Among these then were the Vicounts of *Millaine*, bearing the Sirname of *Agnata* (which is a small little Towne in the Estate of *Millaine*, from whence those Vicounts were issued and descended) who maintained themselues in the Possession of their Gouernment of *Lombardy*, very neere the continuance of Fiue Hundred years and vntill the time of *Philip Maria*, Brother to *Valentina* of *Millaine*, Dutchesse of Orleans, ouer whom the *Sforzaes* vsurped by power.

The place of the Vicounts descent.

A Catalogue or briefe Chronicle of the Vicounts of Millaine.

Facius d'*Angleria*, Father to *Heriprand.*

1. THe First of these Vicounts of *Millaine*, obserued by the Historians of Italy was *Heriprand*, sonne to *Facius* of *Angleria*) who by his valiancy, made himselfe Lord of *Lombardy* and of *Millaine* in the Yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Twenty Three. *Conrard*, Second of the name, Emperour of Germany, passed into Italy, besieged him, to bring him to the tearmes of Duty and obedience. The contention, consisting on nothing else but homage, was to be determined by a

le Duello or Combate, of a Duke of *Bauaria*, for the Emperour, against *Heriprand*: whom the Victory inclined by the death of his Contrary. And according to the ompact and couenants of this Combate, *Conrard* was compelled to leaue *Heriand* in quiet; who enioyed his vsurpation the space of Two and Twenty Yeares, nd left it to his Sonne and Successor,

2. *Otho*, called the Vicount, First of that name, who (in deuotion) made one in he Voyage beyond the Seas, for Conquest of the Holy Land, with *Godfrey* of *Bone*, the First King of *Ierusalem*. At the Seige whereof, this *Otho* fought in single uello with a *Sarazen* Admirall, named *Voulx*, who defied & challenged the Chriians to fight against him man to man. *Otho* slew him in the Field, & as a note of his ictory, had for despoyles his Armes, and his Salade or Helmet of pure Gold, on he Creast whereof was exalted (as a Trophee) a Serpent and Viper: *Viuree en pal ouurant vn Enfant*. To conserue the memory of this Combate to posterity: *Otho* oke for him, and those of his Descent and Linage, Vicounts of *Millaine*, *D'Argent la Bysse ondé de Gueules*, or speaking more grossely, *L'Escu d'Argent à vn Serpent entortille de Bleu Celeste qui engloutit, vn Enfant de Coleur Rogue, ou Sang.* According the testimony of *Georgius Merula*; of *Paulus Iouius*, in the liues these Vicounts of the Ciuill-Lawyer *Alciate*, a native of *Millaine*, in his Emlems, and in the Tract which he wrote of Duels, the Three and Fortieth Chapter. or, concerning that which is written by *Petrarche*, and *Gabriel Symeony*, in his vulr description of the Princes of *Millaine*; they are meere *Chimeraes*. Before this xploit was performed in the Holy Land; they of the House of *Angleria*; *Portoit Argent à Sept Coronnes de Gueules.*

Otho, the Vicount, a valiant Champion in the Holy-Land.

Alciate the Emblematist borne in *Millaine.*

3. Next after this *Otho* the First, succeeded his Sonne *Andrew*, the Vicount, Father of *Gauia*, otherwise called *Galtagne* or *Gualuin*, against whom the Emperour *Frederick* the First, Sir-named *Barbarossa*, waged strong warre, & vpon this occasion.

Andrew the Vicount.

4. The Wife of this Emperor, being called *Beatrix*, the Countesse Palatine of *Bourgon*, was desirous to see the City of *Millaine*, & being entred thereinto, the Inhabitants tooke this Princesse, and to reuenge the quarell of the Vicounts against the mperours: did set her vpon a Mule backward, with her face turned towards the le, which they gaue her to hold in her hand instead of a Bridle, and in this manr, threw her forth of the City, with many iniurious scoffes and taunts. *Barba-rossa* illy offended at this Act of folly, soon after besieged the City of *Millain*, & so narwly pressed it with Famine; that the Inhabitants were constrained to yeeld, vpon rms of discretion. Yet notwithstanding in such sort, that they who would haue ir liues saued, should with their teeth, & without the help of any hand, draw a Fig t of the secret parts of a Mule: And the same was performed, by such as were lling to saue their liues. And hence grew the mocking by-word, when men were posed to scorne the *Millanoises*: they would shew them two Fingers ioyned toher Ouall-wise, saying: *Ecco la Fico, Voyla la Figue.*

The Emperours reuenge on the *Millanoises.*

Look on your Figge.

Millaine was razed downe to the ground, in the Yeare, One Thousand, One Hund, Threescore and Two, the Plough passing ouer it, and Salt sowed thereon, in ne of a malediction. *Gaulain* was led Prisoner into Germany, by *Barba-Rossa*, ere he was many dayes whipt and beaten with Roddes, miserably hurried from place to another, fed with scraps and morsels cast vnder the Table by *Frederick* his wife, being tyed in a Chaine like a Dogge, hee continued in this miserable iction the space of Eight Yeares, and vntill the Yeare, One Thousand, One Hund, Three Score and Tenne; when he found the meanes to depart thence, and eturne againe to *Millaine*, which he began to rebuild; and dyed there without y Heyres begotten of his body, in the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Foure ore and Two.

The miserable condition of *Gualuin.*

After his death, the *Millanoises* expelled the Noble men out of their City, crying *berty, Liberty*, and gouerned themselues in forme of a Common-wealth, making yce of Senatours, among the principall Families of the People. And as chiefe amongst them, they elected successiuely *Iohn*, *Martin*, *Philip* and *Napoleon*, all named *De la Tour*: who (from Father to the Sonne) commanded in *Millaine*, euer e the Yeare Foure-score and Two, vntill the Yeare, One Thousand, Two Hun-

The gouernment of *Millaine* quite altered to Senatours. Of the Tower

dred, Threescore and Seauen; when this *Napoleon* was vanquished in a ranged Ba-
taile, by *Otho* the Vicount, Second of the name, Arch-bishop of *Millaine*, Sonne to
Vbertine the Vicount, Sirnamed of *Angleria*.

John de la Tour.

5. Vnder this *John de la Tour*, First Captaine Generall and Standard-Bearer
of *Millaines* Common-wealth, began the Factions (which ruinated *Italy*) of the
Guelphes, and the *Gibellines*, by deuision betweene two Brethren, Germaine Cap-
taines of the Army of *Fredericke Barbarossa*, at the Siege of the City of *Parma*, vic-
ped by the Pope, whose partakers were called *Guelphes*, that is to say in the Germane
Language, *Rauenous Wolues*: And those on the Emperours side, were termed *Gibel-
lines*, that is to say, *Faithfull and good Friends*.

The Factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibellines* in *Italy*.

Vbertine of *Angleria*, and his Issue.

This *Vbertine* of *Angleria*, was Brother to *Gauluin* the afflicted. He left two Sons,
namely *Otho*, Second of the name, made Archbishop of *Millaine*, by Pope *Vrban* his
Cousin; and *Andreoccio*, Father to *Thibault*, the Vicount, who contending to re-
enter *Millaine*, was ouercome neere to *Angleria*, by *Napoleon*, who caused his head
to bee smitten off at *Galarato*. *Thibault* left two Sonnes, *John* and *Mathew*, called
the Great, in regard of his huge corpulence and stature; whom the Archbishop *Otho*
his Vncle left peaceably as Gouernour of *Millaine*, himselfe being retired to *Cla-
uaux* in *Bourgongne*, where hee ended his dayes in a Monasticall Habit, in the Yeare
One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Fifteene, in the Moneth of Au-
gust, he being aged Foure Score and Seauen Yeares at his death.

Guy de la Tour Gouernour of *Millaine*.

6. Against this *Mathew*, rose vp *Guy de la Tour*, the Sonne of *Napoleon*, and pos-
sessed himselfe of the Gouernment of *Millaine*. *Mathew* made his recourse to the
Emperour *Henry* the Seauenth; whose part hee vndertooke to maintaine, *Guy de la
Tour* being a *Guelphe*. *Henry* came into Italy, and caused himselfe to bee crowned at
Millaine, with the Crowne circled with Iron, in imitation of our Emperour *Charle-
maigne*. *Guy* conspired and practised against the life of the Emperour *Henry*: but
his designes were discouered by *Mathew*, who as his deserued recompence, was in-
uested with the State of *Millaine*, being entituled, Vicar of the Empire, with the
red Scarlet Cloake, Furred with Ermines, and the Vicars Bonnet of Scarlet, exalted
Mortier-fashion, Furred likewise on both sides with Ermines, but bordered about
and below with Cloth of Gold. This Inuestiture was made by the same Empe-
rour *Henry* of *Luxembourg*, hee creating *Millaine* a Vicariate, and ordenary Cham-
ber of the Empire, in the Yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred and Twelue.

Mathew made Vicar of the Empire.

The Issue of *Mathew*.

This *Mathew* left Fiue Sonnes, to wit; *Galeas*, First of the name, *Marke*, Sirnamed
Balacion, *Luchin*, *John* Arch-bishop of *Millaine*; and the Fift Sonne was *Stephen*.
Next to *Mathew* succeeded his Eldest.

Galeas Knight of the Starre.

7. *Galeas*, First of the name, nourished in France, in the Court of King *Charles*
Bell, Fourth of the name, who made him Knight of the *Order of the Starre*. The Em-
perour *Lewes* of *Bauaria*, Fift of the name, hauing taken the Crowne of Iron at *Mil-
laine*; *Marke Balacion* accused before the Emperour his Eldest Brother *Galeas*, be-
cause hee had surcharged the *Millanoises* with Taxations & Subsidies, without lea-
& permission of the Emperour his Soueraigne Lord. Being conuicted of this crime
Lewes sent him Prisoner to the Castle of *Modece*, with his Children and his two Bro-
thren *John* and *Luchin*. from whence within a while after they were deliuered. *Ga-
leas* dyed of a burning Feauer, after the surprizall of *Pistoyia*, By *Beatrix* of *Sardig-
na* his Wife. Hee left two Sonnes, *Azzo*, otherwise called *Actius*, and *Marke*; who
hauing attempted against the life of his Brother, was strangled with a Table-napki
by his command.

He left Issue.

8. *Azzo* succeeded in the Vicariate of *Millaine*, wherein he was inuested by the
Emperour *Lewes* of *Bauaria*, who (with the Inuestiture) gaue him the Title of Prince
of the Empire, in the Yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Twenty and One,
paying the Summe of an Hundred Thousand Pounds, for the said Right of Inue-
ture: hee had to Wife *Katherine* of *Sauoy*, and by her hee had no Children; so di-
chancing to dye at the Age of Eight and Thirty Yeares, in the Moneth of Aug
One Thousand, Three Hundred, and Twenty Eight.

9. *Luchin* and *John* the Arch-bishop gouerned the Estate of *Millaine*, the one the
Spirituall, and the other the Temporall. *Luchin* had married *Isabell* of Fra

in the Citie of *Geneway*, and being poysoned by her, died in the yeare One thou-
sand three hundred fortie and sixe, in the Month of *June*.

10 By his death was aduanced *John* the Archbishop, who gouerned *Myllaine*
alone, and without any Companion. He caused to returne from *Flanders*, his Ne-
phewes *Galeas* and *Barnabie*, who withdrew themselues thither for warrant of safe-
ty, being accused about the death of their Vncle *Luchin*, whose wife was entertai-
ned by *Galeas*, according as her selfe had made knowne. *John* the Archbishop dyed
of a lingring Feauer, in September One thousand three hundred fiftie and two, and
by his last Will and Testament, he instituted (as his Heires) his three Nephewes,
Mathew, *Galeas*, second of the name, and *Barnabie*, Sonnes to his yongest Brother
Stephen the Vicount; but with this charge, that the Seigneuries of *Millayne* and
Geneway should be Gouerned in common, and vnder one sole Potestate, established
by them all three. And as for the other Cities and Townes, they should be parted
and deuided in three Lots, by the Senators of *Geneway* and *Millayne*, among whom
the parties did conclude, that the Lots should be drawne out of the Scrutinie, by
Mathew, wherewith the Bretheren contented themselues, and should enioy their
Lots in proper Heritage, which accordingly was executed. *Mathew* being dull,
and of cowardly courage, dyed two yeares after the Archbishop his Vncle, being
poysonned (according to common opinion) in a Supper, whereto his two Brothers
had inuited him.

John the Archbishop or Gouernor of *Millaine*.

Concerning the three Sons of *Stephen* the Vicount.

11 *Galeas*, second of the name, and *Barnabie*, they deuided in twaine the Estate
and Gouernement of *Millaine*, yea, and the Citie it selfe was parted betweene them,
each of them building a Castell there for his dwelling. To *Galeas* fell the Lot of
enioying *Pauia* and *Geneweye*; and to *Barnabie* fell by Lot the coasts of *Bo-
gna*, *Placentia*, *Laudz*, and *Baude* in the Vallie of the *Appenines*, which
had bin the Lot of *Mathew* their elder Brother. This *Galeas* the second, and *Barna-
bie* his Brother, were Inuested into the Estate of *Millayne*, by the Emperour *Charles*
of *Luxembourg* fourth of the name, King of *Bohemia*; who gaue them the title of
perpetuall Vicares of the holy Empire, paying the summe of threescore thousand
Florins. *Galeas* the second, at his being in *Flanders*, fought in single Combat with
a Gentleman, who bare for his deuise a Taper lighted at both the ends, & in the mid-
dest hung two Buckets of Water. It was held by the said *Galeas*, and his Successors,
Dukes of *Millayne*, vntill the times of the Emperour *Charles* the fift. This *Galeas*
died in the yeare One thousand three hundred threescore and eight, in the Moneth
of July, leauing for his Successour his Sonne.

Galeas & *Barnabie* deuided the Gouernement betweene them.

12 *John Galeas*, third of the name, who espoused Madam *Isabell* of France, daugh-
ter to King *John*, and Sister to King *Charles* the fift, called the *Wise*: by whom he
had three Children, to wit, *John Maria*, *Phillip Maria*, and *Valentina* of *Millayne*. By
marriage of the said Madam *Isabell* of France, this *John Galeas* was made (by King
John his Father in Law) Count of *Vertus* in *Champaigne*; and created by the Empe-
rour *Fredericke*, third of the name, the first Duke of *Millaine*, and Vicar of the ho-
ly Empire, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred fourescore and sea-
ten; paying to the said *Fredericke* the summe of an hu dred thousand Florins. Being
aduertised, that his Vncle *Barnabie* conspired against him: he made himselfe Maister
of *Millaine*, and of his enemie; whom he caused to dye in prison, and poisoned his
Sonnes, remaining sole Lord of *Millaigne*, of *Geneweye*, and of their Iurisdictions.

John Galeas the first Duke of *Millaine*, and Vicar of the holy Empire.

He ioyned in marriage his daughter *Valentina* of *Millayne*, with *Monsieur Lewes*
of France, the onely Brother to King *Charles* the sixt: she being sent into France, in
the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and eight. In fauour of this mar-
riage, he gaue to the said *Valentina*, the Counties of *Ast* in *Piedmont*, and that of
Vertus in *Champaine*, foure thousand Florines of Gold, and foure thousand sixe hun-
dred sixtie and seauen Markes of Siluer in Plate, Iemmes and Iewels. Moreouer, it
was promised and stipulated by the same contract of marriage, that vpon the de-
cease of the Sonnes of the said *John Galeas*, namely *John* and *Phillip Maria*, without
heires masles, begotten of their bodies in lawfull matrimonie: that in this case, the
said *Valentina* of *Millayne*, she and her Children should be Dukes of *Millaine*, with
excluding the daughters of the said *John* and *Phillip Maria*. To this *John Galeas*,

The marriage of *Monsieur Lewes* of France with *Valentina* of Millaine.

Count

dred, Threescore and Seauen; when this *Napoleon* was vanquished in a ranged Battaile, by *Otho* the Vicount, Second of the name, Arch-bishop of *Millaine*, Sonne to *Vbertine* the Vicount, Sirnamed of *Angleria*.

John de la Tour.

5. Vnder this *John de la Tour*, First Captaine Generall and Standard-Bearer of *Millaines* Common-wealth, began the Factions (which ruinated *Italy*) of the *Guelphes*, and the *Gibellines*, by deuision betweene two Brethren, Germaine Captaines of the Army of *Fredericke Barbaroſſa*, at the Siege of the City of *Parma*, vſurped by the Pope, whoſe partakers were called *Guelphes*, that is to say in the Germaine Language, *Rauenous wolues*: And thoſe on the Emperours ſide, were termed *Gibellines*, that is to say, *Faithfull and good Friends*.

The Factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibellines* in *Italy*.

Vbertine of *Angleria*, and his Iſſue.

This *Vbertine* of *Angleria*, was Brother to *Gauluin* the afflicted. He left two Sons, namely *Otho*, Second of the name, made Archbiſhop of *Millaine*, by Pope *Vrban*, his Couſin; and *Andreccio*, Father to *Thibault*, the Vicount, who contending to reenter *Millaine*, was ouercome neere to *Angleria*, by *Napoleon*, who cauſed his head to bee ſmitten off at *Galarate*. *Thibault* left two Sonnes, *John* and *Mathew*, called the Great, in regard of his huge corpulence and ſtature; whom the Archbiſhop *Otho*, his Vncle left peaceably as Gouernour of *Millaine*, himſelfe being retired to *Clernaux* in *Bourgongne*, where hee ended his dayes in a Monaſticall Habit, in the Yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Fifteene, in the Moneth of Auguſt, he being aged Foure Score and Seauen Yeares at his death.

Guy de la Tour Gouernour of *Millaine*

6. Againſt this *Mathew*, roſe vp *Guy de la Tour*, the Sonne of *Napoleon*, and poſſeſſed himſelfe of the Gouernment of *Millaine*. *Mathew* made his recourſe to the Emperour *Henry* the ſeauenth; whoſe part hee vndertooke to maintaine, *Guy de la Tour* being a *Guelphe*. *Henry* came into Italy, and cauſed himſelfe to bee crowned at *Millaine*, with the Crowne circled with Iron, in imitation of our Emperour *Charlemaigne*. *Guy* conſpired and practiſed againſt the life of the Emperour *Henry*: but his deſignes were diſcouered by *Mathew*, who as his deſerued recompence, was inueſted with the State of *Millaine*, being entituled, Vicar of the Empire, with the red Scarlet Cloake, Furred with Ermines, and the Vicars Bonnet of Scarlet, exalted Mortier-fathion, Ferred likewiſe on both ſides with Ermines, but bordered aboue and below with Cloth of Gold. This Inueſtiture was made by the ſame Emperour *Henry* of *Luxemburg*, hee creating *Millaine* a Vicariate, and ordenary Chamber of the Empire, in the Yeare, One Thouſand, Three Hundred and Twelue.

Mathew made Vicar of the Empire.

The Iſſue of *Mathew*.

This *Mathew* left Fiue Sonnes, to wit; *Galeas*, Firſt of the name, *Marke*, Sirnamed *Baluaion*, *Luchin*, *John* Arch-biſhop of *Millaine*; and the Fift Sonne was *Stephen*. Next to *Mathew* ſucceeded his Eldeſt.

Galeas Knight of the Starre

7. *Galeas*, Firſt of the name, nourriſhed in France, in the Court of King *Charles le Bell*, Fourth of the name, who made him Knight of the *Order of the Starre*. The Emperour *Lewes* of *Bauaria*, Fift of the name, hauing taken the Crowne of Iron at *Millaine*, *Mark Galeas* accuſed before the Emperour his Eldeſt Brother *Galeas*, becauſe hee had ſurcharged the *Millaneſes* with Taxations & Subſidies, without leaue & permiſſion of the Emperour his Soueraigne Lord. Being conuicted of this crime, *Lewes* ſent him Priſoner to the Caſtle of *Modece*, with his Children and his two Brethren *John* and *Luchen*, from whence within a while after they were deliuered. *Galeas* dyed of a burning Feauer, after the ſurprizall of *Piſtoya*, By *Beatrix* of *Sardaignis* his Wife. Hee left two Sonnes, *Azzo*, otherwiſe called *Actius*, and *Marke*; who hauing attempted againſt the life of his Brother, was ſtrangled with a Table-napkin, by his command.

8. *Azzo* ſucceeded in the Vicariate of *Millaine*, wherein he was inueſted by the Emperour *Lewes* of *Bauaria*; who (with the Inueſtiture) gaue him the Title of Prince of the Empire, in the Yeare, One Thouſand, Three Hundred, Twenty and One, paying the Summe of an Hundred Thouſand Pounds, for the ſaid Right of Inueſtiture: hee had to Wife *Katherine* of *Sauoy*, and by her hee had no Children; ſo that chancing to dye at the Age of Eight and Thirty Yeares, in the Moneth of Auguſt, One Thouſand, Three Hundred, and Twenty Eight.

9. *Luchin* and *John* the Arch-biſhop gouerned the Eſtate of *Millaine*, the one the Spirituall, and the other the Temporall. *Luchin* had married *Iſabell* of *Peſce*, in

the Citie of *Geneway*, and being poyſoned by her, died in the yeare One thouſand three hundred fortie and ſixe, in the Month of *Iune*.

John the Archbiſhop or Gouernor of *Millaine*.

10 By his death was aduanced *John* the Archbiſhop, who gouerned *Millaine* alone, and without any Companion. He cauſed to returne from *Flanders*, his Nephewes *Galeas* and *Barnabie*, who withdrew themſelues thither for warrant of ſafety, being accuſed about the death of their Vncle *Luchin*, whoſe wife was entertained by *Galeas*, according as her ſelfe had made knowne. *John* the Archbiſhop dyed of a lingring Feauer, in September One thouſand three hundred fiftie and two, and by his laſt Will and Teſtament, he inſtituted (as his Heires) his three Nephewes, *Mathew*, *Galeas*, ſecond of the name, and *Barnabie*, Sonnes to his yongeſt Brother *Stephen* the Vicount; but with this charge, that the Seigneuries of *Millayne* and *Geneway* ſhould be Gouerned in common, and vnder one ſole Poteſtate, eſtabliſhed by them all three. And as for the other Cities and Townes, they ſhould be parted and deuided in three Lots, by the Senators of *Geneway* and *Millayne*, among whom the parties did conclude, that the Lots ſhould be drawne out of the Scrutinie, by *Mathew*, wherewith the Bretheren contented themſelues, and ſhould enioy their Lots in proper Heritage, which accordingly was executed. *Mathew* being dull, and of cowardly courage, dyed two yeares after the Archbiſhop his Vncle, being poyſonned (according to common opinion) in a Supper, whereto his two Brothers had inuited him.

Concerning the three Sons of *Stephen* the Vicount.

Galeas & *Barnabie* deuided the Gouernement betweene them.

11 *Galeas*, ſecond of the name, and *Barnabie*, they deuided in twaine the Eſtate and Gouernement of *Millaine*, yea, and the Citie it ſelfe was parted betweene them, each of them building a Caſtell there for his dwelling. To *Galeas* fell the Lot of enioying *Pauia* and *Geneuaye*; and to *Barnabie* fell by Lot the coaſts of *Bologna*, *Placentia*, *Laudz*, and *Baude* in the Vallie of the *Appenines*, which had bin the Lot of *Mathew* their elder Brother. This *Galeas* the ſecond, and *Barnabie* his Brother, were Inueſted into the Eſtate of *Millayne*, by the Emperour *Charles* of *Luxembourg* fourth of the name, King of *Bohemia*; who gaue them the title of perpetuall Vicares of the holy Empire, paying the ſumme of threeſcore thouſand Florins. *Galeas* the ſecond, at his being in *Flanders*, fought in ſingle Combat with a Gentleman, who bare for his deuiſe a Taper lighted at both the ends, & in the middeſt hung two Buckets of Water. It was held by the ſaid *Galeas*, and his Succeſſors, Dukes of *Millayne*, vntill the times of the Emperour *Charles* the fift. This *Galeas* died in the yeare One thouſand three hundred threeſcore and eight, in the Moneth of May, leauing for his Succeſſour his Sonne.

John Galeas the firſt Duke of *Millaine*, and Vicar of the holy Empire.

12 *John Galeas*, third of the name, who eſpouſed Madam *Iſabell* of France, daughter to King *John*, and Siſter to King *Charles* the fift, called the wiſe: by whom he had three Children, to wit, *John Maria*, *Phillip Maria*, and *Valentina* of *Millayne*. By marriage of the ſaid Madam *Iſabell* of France, this *John Galeas* was made (by King *John* his Father in Law) Count of *Vertus* in *Champaigne*; and created by the Emperour *Fredericke*, third of the name, the firſt Duke of *Millaine*, and Vicar of the holy Empire, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and ſeauen; paying to the ſaid *Fredericke* the ſumme of an hundred thouſand Florins. Being aduertiſed, that his Vncle *Barnabie* conſpired againſt him: he made himſelfe Maiſter of *Millaine*, and of his enemie; whom he cauſed to dye in priſon, and poiſoned his Sonnes, remaining ſole Lord of *Millaigne*, of *Geneway*, and of their Iuriſdictions.

The marriage of *Monſieur Lewes* of France with *Valentina* of Millaine.

He ioyned in marriage his daughter *Valentina* of *Millayne*, with *Monſieur Lewes* of France, the onely Brother to King *Charles* the ſixt: ſhe being ſent into France, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and eight. In fauour of this marriage, he gaue to the ſaid *Valentina*, the Counties of *Aſt* in *Piedmont*, and that of *Vertus* in *Champaine*, foure thouſand Florines of Gold, and foure thouſand ſixe hundred ſixtie and ſeauen Markes of Siluer in Plate, Iemmes and Iewels. Moreouer, it was promiſed and ſtipulated by the ſame contract of marriage, that vpon the deceaſe of the Sonnes of the ſaid *John Galeas*, namely *John* and *Phillip Maria*, without heires maſles, begotten of their bodies in lawfull matrimonie: that in this caſe, the ſaid *Valentina* of *Millayne*, ſhe and her Children ſhould be Dukes of *Millaine*, with excluding the daughters of the ſaid *John* and *Phillip Maria*. To this *John Galeas*, Count

Count of *Vertus*, and Duke of *Millaine*; and to his heires, King *Charles*, sixt of the name, gaue permission *De porter de France* (in the first quarter, which we call the right side) *sans nombre, escartele de Milan*. The Charters are dated the nine and twenteth day of Ianuarie, in the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and foureteene, as I finde recorded.

Concerning the Issue of *Barnabie* the Vicount.

The Lord of *Argentre*, writeth in his Historie of Bretaigne, that *Barnabie* the Vicount, imprisoned by his Nephew *Galeas* the third; left fiue masle children, *Charles* or *Marke*, *Rodolphe*, *Lodowicke*, *Maffin* and *Carlo*, and that the most part of his Children were poysoned, except *Charles* the eldest Son of *Barnabie*: who was made Lord of *Parma*, *Cremona* and *Santa Donna*; he married *Beatrix*, Sister to *Iames* and *Bernard*, Counts of *Armagnac*. That this *Beatrix*, being gone into France, to be succoured by her Brother *Bernard* against *Iohn Galeas*: she lay in there, and was deliuered of *Bonne* of *Millaine*, who was married to *William*, Lord of *Montauban*, and of *Laubale* in Bretaigne.

The issue of *William* of *Montauban*.

That of this marriage issued two Sonnes and a Daughter, to wit, *Messire Iohn de Montauban*, Admirall of France, called by *Ferron*, *Iohn de Rohan*; And *Arthur*, Archbishop of *Lyons* and of *Bourdeaux*, dying in October, Anno One thousand fiue hundred: these two Archbishopricks comming to *Frances de Rohan*, Sonne to the Lord *de Gie*, Marshall of France.

Mary of *Montauban*, wife to *Iohn de Graville*.

The Daughter was named *Mary* of *Montauban*, married to *Messire Iohn de Graville*, Father to *Messire Lewes de Graville*, Lord of *Marcoussis*, Admirall of France vnder *Charles* the eight and *Lewes* the twelfth: whereby it ensueth, that they of the House of *Belfie*, Lords of *Marcoussis*, *Portent sur le tour de leurs Armes, celles de Graville, qui sont de sinoples à trois Fermaillets d'Or, party de Milan.*

Ioan of *Montauban* (Sonne to *William* and this *Bonna* of *Millaine*) tooke to wife *Anne de Kaersmais*, and of this marriage issued their onely daughter, married to *Lewes de Rohan*, Lord of *Guemene*, yongest of the house of *Rohan*, who quartereth his Armes, which are *De Gueulles à neuf Macles d'Or*, and those of *Millaine*, according as the Princes of France, that are of the House of *Orleans*, in regard of his Wifes Grandmother. Of whom *Argentre* reporteth a Requeſt, presented to the Virgin *Ioane* of *Orleans*, to refeate her in the Dukedome of *Millaine*. A Requeſt brought forth of the Titles of Charters, belonging to the House of *Guemene*, which will serue for the clearing of this Genealogie, forgotten in the Historie of *Italy*.

La Pucelle Ieanne d'Orleans.

Supplication a la Pucelle Ieanne *d'Orleans.*

A Tres-haute, & Tres-deuote Pucelle Ieanne, *enuoyee du Roy des Cieux pour la reparation, & l'extirpation des Anglois tyrannisans la France; Bonne Viscomte expose que son Ayeul Messire Barnabe de Viscomtes eut vn Frere* (il y a faute mettant Frere pour Neueu) *appelle Messire Galeas, lequel prit par trahison ledit Messire Barnabe, Lewis, & Raoul ses Fils, les fit mourir en prison, & pilla ses tresors, ou il y auoit Six Cents Mille Ducats* (les Histoires d'Italie disent sept Chariots d'Argent massif en oeuure, & grand nombre de deniers monnoyez) *Que dudit Barnabe demeurerent deux Enfants legitimes, scauoir est Messire Lancie, & Messire Maffin le puisne, decede sans Hoirs. Que dudit Charles issirent trois Enfants, scauoir Messire Ieanne, la Suppliante, & vne Fille qui mourut ieune, comme aussi ledit Messire Iean. Et partant dudit Messire Barnabe ladite Bonne estant seule Heritiere pour le tout, supplie la Pucelle de luy rendre son Heritage iniustement vsurpé par ledit Galeas.*

A Petition to the Virgin *Ioane* of Orleans.

Most-Honored and most-Deuout Virgin Ioane, sent from the King of Heauen, for the repairing, and extirpating of the English, tyrannizing in France: Bonna, Viscontesse expresseth, that her Grandfather Barnabie of the Viconntes, had a Brother (here is a fault, setting downe Brother for Nephew) *called Messire Galeas, who surprized* (by treason)

the said Messire Barnabie, Lewes and Raoul his Sonnes, causing them to dye in prison, and robbed his Treasures, where he had fixe hundred thousand Ducats (the Histories of Italie doe say, seuen Chariots of Siluer wrought in Plate, &c. and a great number of coyned monies.) *That the said Barnabie left two legitimate Children, the one was Messire Charles the eldest, and Messire Maffin the yongest, deceasing without Heires. That of the said Charles issued three children, to wit; Messire Iohn; the Supplicantesse, and a Daughter that dyed yong, as also the said Messire John. And therefore of the said Messire Barnabie, Bonna being the sole Inheretrixe left off all: beseecheth the Virgin, to restore her heritage, vniustly vsurped by the said Galeas.*

Isabel of Bauaria wife to King *Charles* the sixt.

He addeth moreouer, that this *Bonna* was nourished in the Court of *Isabell* of Bauaria, wife to *Charles* the sixt, to whom she appertained, in regard of her Aunt by the Fathers side, Madam *Thadea* the Vicountesse, Mother to the said *Isabel*. Who in this contemplation, marrying this *Bonna* to the Lord of *Montauban*, gaue him thirtie thousand Frances, to be leuyed on the Garners of Salt, and the Aydes of *Chasteau Thierry*.

Now this *Iohn*, called *Galeas*, third of the name, and first Duke of *Millaine*, dying in September, One thousand foure hundred and two; his eldest Sonne

John Maria the cruell Duke of Millaine.

13 *John Maria*, called the Cruell, succeeded him, and Reigned nine yeares. Hee tooke great delight in the nourishing of huge Mastiue Dogges, whom hee would cause to deuoure aliue as well such as hee hated, as them that were innocent. Wherefore, hee was slaine and massacred by the people, going to heare Masse in the Church of Saint *Godard*, the fifteenth day of May, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred and Eleauen. *Iohn* thus dying without Children, his Brother

Phillip Maria third Duke of *Millaine*.

14 *Phillip Maria* succeeded him, and had two Wiues. The first was *Beatrix de Tenda*; whom he commanded to be beheaded, being detected of Adulterie, committed with one of his Musitions. His second wife was daughter to *Amades*, Count of *Sauoye*, retreated to *Ripaille*, not hauing any issue by either of these Wiues: but dyed of a Fluxe in his Bellie, the twelfth day of August, One thousand foure hundred fortie and eight. Sixe yeares before, he had married his Bastard *Blanch Maria* to *Frances Sforza*; and in fauour of this Marriage, gaue *Cremona*, and the Territorie thereof, with the Castell of *Petrenelle*. He had this Bastard daughter by a Courtezane that he affected, *Agnes de Mania*; from which House came the Ciuile Lawyer *Iason de Mania*. By the death of this *Phillip Maria*, deceasing without Heires masle begotten in lawfull marriage: the Duchie of *Millaine* came to the House of *Orleans*, in regard of *Valentina* of *Millaine*, as was couenanted by the Marriage contract; yet notwithstanding there ensued some preiudice.

Blanch Maria married to *Frances Sforza*.

Frances Sforza the vsurper of Milain against the house of Orleans.

15 *Frances Sforza*, a simple Souldiour by fortune, Sonne to *Sforza Attendula*, a Shoomaker in a small Village called *Cotignoles*; possessed himselfe by vsurpation of the Estate of *Millayne*, the Forces whereof remained in his owne power. He maintained his vsurped authoritie against the House of *Orleans*, by the meanes of *Lewes* the eleauenth, to whom (being *Daulphine*, and absent from France) he gaue yearely a great pension. In acknowledgement whereof, *Lewes* being come to the Crowne; caused *Galeas Maria*, eldest Sonne of *Frances Sforza*, to marrie *Bonna* of *Sauoye*, yongest Sister to *Charlote*, the second Wife to *Lewes* the eleauenth. *Frances* dyed in the Moneth of March, One thousand foure hundred threescore and sixe.

The issue of *Frances Sforza* by his wife *Blanch Maria*.

By his Wife *Blanch Maria*, Bastard daughter to *Phillip*, he left sixe Sonnes and two daughters. The Sonnes were named *Galeas*, *Iohn*, *Phillip*, *Ascanio*, *Cardinall*, *Lodowicke Sforza*, and *Octauius*, all Sirnamed *Maria*. The two daughters were *Hippolita Maria*, wife of *Alphonso*, eldest Sonne to *Ferdinando*, Count *de Medina del Campo*, Bastard Sonne to *Alphonso*, King of *Arragon*, of *Naples* and of *Sicilie*, vsurped vpon the House of *Aniou*. The other was *Elizabeth Maria*, married to the Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

16 *Galeas Maria*, eldest Sonne to *Frances Sforza*, receiued tydings of his Fathers death in the Court of France, where he was educated by *Lewes* the eleauenth, his Father in Law; who gaue him a sufficient Companie, to enstaule him in the Duke-

Dukedome of *Millaine*. For which (euen as his Father before had done) hee refuſed the Inueſtiture of the Emperour *Fredericke* the third, who hoped (thereby) to draw a good Summe of money from him. The reaſon in this caſe yeelded by theſe two laſt Dukes, was, that they had conquered the Eſtate by force of their owne Armies; and not by any fauour or ſuccour, by them receiued from the Emperor *Fredericke*, to whom (by conſequent) they acknowledged not any duetie.

The wicked life of *Galeas*, and his death.

This *Galeas Maria* addicted himſelfe to all lubricitie and whoredomes, taking (by force and violence) the daughters and wiues of his Subiects, to appeaſe his inordinate luſt and incontinencie; whereby he won ſuch contempt and hatred, that vpon S. *Stephens* day in Chriſtmaſſe, Anno One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and ſeauenteene; they murdred him in the Church of S. *Stephen*, by the meanes of *Iohn Andrea Lampugnano*, and three other Complices, euen in the middeſt of his kinred, friends, and before the peoples face.

The Iſſue of *Galeas Maria*.

He left by *Bonna* of *Sauoye* his Wife, two Sonnes and one daughter, named *Blanch Maria*, married to the Emperour *Maximilian*, and to whom ſhe was affianced, euen when her Father was ſlaine. On this marriage grew the ground and ſubiect of the Warres of France and of Caſtile, for the Dukedome of *Millaine*, vniuſtly vſurped, and worſe detained from the Crowne of France. The Sonnes were *Iohn* & *Hermes*, or *Mercurie Maria*.

Iohn Maria Duke in his minority, and thereby diuers inconueniences happening.

17 *Iohn Maria*, the firſt Duke of *Millaine*, ſucceeded in the ſaid Dukedome, being onely aged nine yeares; remaining in the Tutelage of his Mother, and of his Vnckles *Lodowicke*, *Aſcanio* and *Octauian*. The State affaires were ordered and managed, by one named *Cico de Calabria*, a man trained vp in the Houſe of *Frances Sforza*. But ſuch was his nature, as being vnable to endure ſo many Companions, and winning the fauour of *Bonna* of *Sauoye*: *Lodowicke* and *Aſcanio* (by this meanes) were baniſhed from the State of *Millaine*, the two other yonger Bretheren put to death, and the plots and deuiſes of all ſuch preuented, as could make any head againſt him.

The folly of great Ladies being emptied of modeſty.

With this *Calabrian* was admitted in gouerning the Eſtate, and diſpoſing of the Finances, a man of *Ferrara*, named *Antonio Theſino*: who had ſome priuate gouernement of his Miſtreſſe, caried before her, lodged neere to her Chamber, and carried her mounted behinde him thorow the Citie. This Lady gouerned her ſelfe with him moſt impudently, enriching her Minnion or Carpet-Squire with immenſe gifts; which this ill-aduiſed Ducheſſe beſtowed on him, both in the ſight and knowledge of her people.

The traine of enuy in villany.

The *Calabrian* likewiſe ſtood ſuſpected, to ſhare ſome part, in the fauours and greatnes of his Miſtreſſe, and he being couetous, deſiring to enioy her alone to himſelfe: found the meanes, to capitulate with *Lodowicke Sforza*, and *Robert de S. Seuerino*, who being promiſed mountaines and meruailes, he ſeekes to repeale them from baniſhment. No ſooner were they returned to *Millaine*, but within three daies after; they tooke the *Calabrian*, put him into a Tunne, and hauing dragde him moſt infamouſly through all the Cities Streets; they lockt him vp priſoner in the Caſtell of *Pauia*, where (within ſhort while after) they ſmote off his head. *Theſino* eſcaped ſecretly, being made wiſe by his fellowes example.

The *Calabrian* beheaded at *Pauia*.

Now concerning the Ducheſſe, about fiue or ſixe Moneths after their returne, *Lodowicke* and *S. Seuerino* tooke her two Sonnes from her, whom they ſent to *Pauia*, vnder good protection and ſufficient guard: cauſing her to renounce the Tutelage of her Children, and giue her voyce to *Lodowicke*, who was elected Guardian of his Nephewes, the yongeſt whereof dyed very ſoone after. Moreouer, they cauſed her to yeelde an account of the Dukedomes Treaſure, which was then eſteemed the very greateſt in Chriſtendome: commanding three Keyes to be made, for *Lodowicke*, *S. Seuerino* and the Ducheſſe; to wom (for honors ſake) they gaue one, but themſelues had the locking of it ſafe vp.

The Ducall Treaſure called in queſtion.

And as it is a matter impoſſible, that two great Lords (aduanced to one and the ſame dignitie) ſhould any long time agree and endure together: euen ſo *Lodowicke*, aſpiring to the Dukedome, ſupplanted S. *Seuerino*, who was conſtrained to take part with the *Venetians*. Thus *Lodowicke*, ſeeing himſelfe Gouernour alone, and furniſhed

niſhed with Treaſure: got poſſeſſion of the Rocke or Cittadell of *Millaine*, which he fortefied with greater ſtrength then euer it had bin before: and ſtamped Money, bearing his owne Image on the one ſide, and that of Duke *Iohn* his Nephew on the other.

Blanch Maria married to the Emperor *Maximillian*.

He had married this Duke *Iohn* with *Iſabel* of *Naples*, daughter to *Alphonſo*, the vſurper of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, by whom he had a Sonne named *Frances Sforza*, and two daughters. *Blanch Maria* his Siſter, was married to the Emperour *Maximilian*, to whom ſhe brought in marriage, the ſumme of foure hundred thouſand Ducats in ready Coyne, and threeſcore thouſand for Iemmes and Iewels: the marriage being celebrated at *Iſpourg*, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred, foureſcore and foureteene, not any childe iſſuing of this marriage. *Alphonſo* King of *Naples* threatned *Lodowick* to make warre vpon him, if he would not leaue the Dukedome of *Millaine* to his Sonne in Law.

Lodowicke his pollicie with King *Charles* the eight.

18 *Lodowicke*, to make his part preuaileable againſt the *Neapolitane*, compaſſed the meanes, to reconcile himſelfe againe with *Robert* of S. *Seuerino*: whoſe Sons he had ſent into France with the Count of *Gaiaſſe*, to King *Charles* the eight, making apparant remonſtrance to him; what right they had to the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, the Conqueſt of them being very eaſie, binding himſelfe to prepare the way for him, and to aſſiſt in the voyage with men and money.

The death of Duke *Iohn* at *Pania*.

Hauing thus mannaged, and made ſure the ſupport of France; he poyſoned Duke *Iohn* his Nephew, with a gentle lingering poiſon, appointed to a certaine time. King *Charles* the eight, being gone into *Italie*, to feede vpon the viands of vanitie: by the way, viſited the poore ſickly Duke, lying on his death-bed. From *Pauia* he went to *Placentia*, where he receiued the newes in Letters, concerning the death of the Duke his kinſman deceaſing at the Age of ſixe and twentie yeares, leauing his Son fiue yeares old. *Lodowicke* taking leaue of King *Charles*, ranne in all poſſible haſte to *Millaine*, and there poſſeſſed himſelfe of the Dukedome.

Lodowicke the Moore, Duke of *Millaine*.

This *Lodowicke* Sirnamed the *Moore*, in regard of his blackiſh ſwarthie complexion, and who tooke the blacke Mulberrie Tree for his deuiſe, being in poſſeſſion of the Soueraigntie; obtained full confirmation therein by the Emperour *Maximillian*, firſt of the name, not onely for himſelfe, but his heires likewiſe, paying the ſumme of foure hundred thouſand Duckats, which he deriued from this Inueſtiture. He had taken to wife the daughter to the Duke of *Ferrara*, and by her had two Sons, *Maximillian* and *Frances*; who was the laſt Duke of *Millaine*, as we ſhall perceiue by the thred and courſe of this Hiſtorie.

Millaine taken by the French.

19 *Lewes* the twelfth, ſeeing himſelfe peaceably ſeated in his Kingdome; reſolued to get againe his Dukedome of *Millaine*, which appertained to him, in regard of his Grandmother *Valentina*, purpoſing to expell *Lodowicke* thence. Hereupon, and to effect what he intended, he cauſed a potent Armie to paſſe the Mountaines, conducted by the Lord D'*Aubigny*, *Robert Stuart*, an honorable Scot, Marſhall of France, called the good Father of Chiualrie, and *Iohn Iacques de Triuulce*, a Millaynois (afterward Marſhall of France) who at their firſt approach, tooke *Noma* and *Rocque*, laid *Alexandria* in the duſt; the ſpoyle whereof ſerued for recompence to the Souldiours. *Pauia* fearing to runne the ſame riot; yeelded it ſelfe freely to the Freneh: ſo that within the compaſſe of fifteene dayes, they conquered the Dukedome of *Millaine*. All this while was *Lodowicke* within the Citie, who growing diſtruſtfull of the people; got ſecretly thence with his two Sonnes, eſcaping by the Lake of *Coma*, and fled toward *Maximillian*, King of the Romaines, to deriue ſome ſuccour from him. By his departure, *Millaine* was taken by the French, the fourth day of September, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and nineteene; the Caſtell ſtill holding out for *Lodowicke* the Moore.

King *Lewes* his entrance into *Millaine*.

Lewes the twelfth receiued tydings at *Lyons*, concerning the ſurprizal of *Millaine*; whether he went with all diligence, and made his entrance into it. The Captaine of the *Rocquet* or Cittadell, who could well haue held it two yeares ſpace at the leaſt, ſo ſtrongly it was furniſhed with all things neceſſary; did yet neuertheles yeeld it vnto the Kings hands, to haue the moitie of the goods & riches that were in it.

Lodowicke

Lodowicke, assisted by the forces of *Maximillian*, preuailed on so farre, that he got entrance into *Millaine*, by intelligence and reuolt of the Inhabitants; this was done the third day of Ianuarie, in the said yeare foure hundred foureſcore and nineteene, the French yet keeping still the Castell, which *Lodowicke* could not get by friendship nor force.

The yeare of Iubilie at Rome.

The Iubilie for the Seculer yeare One thousand fiue hundred, being open at Rome (the Eeuen of Christmasse, in the said yeare foure hundred and nineteene, on which day the Romaines begin their yeare) by Pope *Alexander* the sixt: great concourse of the people (of all Nations) flocked into *Italie*, namely of the French, whose deuotion was much troubled by the bad dealing of *Lodowicke*, who did set their liues at open sale, giuing a Ducate for euery head brought him: so that in all the Innes and Hosteries throughout Italie, vpon the high roade wayes conducting to Rome, French Pilgrimes throates were cut most cruelly. Which was no sooner discouered, but the French Armie, remaining in the parts about *Millaine*, made warre (without any pittie) on them of *Millaine*, and so fast as any of them could be taken; blood for blood serued to expiate and appease the ghosts of the French. And for example to the Hosteries and Innes, all crimson-tincturde with their blood: diuers were burned with their Maisters, Wiues, Maide-seruants and Men-seruants, without sparing so much as their Cats, which serued as no meane terror & affright to others.

The bloody cruelty of *Lodowicke* to the French, and their reuenge.

The first voyage of King *Charles* beyond the *Alpes*.

Now, that which gaue subiect to the *Millaynoises* (by their owne confession) to reuolt from *Lewes* the twelfth, was this extreame bad behauiour in the French. At the first voyage which King *Charles* the eight made beyond the Mountaines; the Italians (so speaketh our French *Salust Phillip de Commines*) adored the French, reputing them to be Saints, and saying, that they had not their like for goodnesse, Faith, mildenesse and discretion. But this good opinion of them lasted not long, for our French misgouerned Libertines, by their riots and robberies, declared the quite contrary: and gaue apparant subiect of being accused, for taking mens wiues perforce from them, and goods from the people, whersoeuer they could finde them by night or day.

The best proceedings are ouerthrowne by bad carriage

Concerning the women, it may be that they lied not, and for the rest, doubtlesse somwhat was done; for the French could not finde any thing too hot, or too heauie; a disease (neuerlesse) as common to the Italians, Germaines, Spaniards, and other Nations, as to the French. But this was it that confounded the Kings affaires, which otherwise had carried themselues formally: but being conducted without any order, and the French Souldiours transported with pilferies; this was the reason, of alienating the Italians from their former affection to the French, to the great griefe and discontentment of honest mindes, for the extraordinarie honour and renowne, which the French nation might haue won to themselues in this voyage.

The naturall disposition of the Italians.

And such bad behauiours, are meanes vtterly contrary for attaining to any great Conquest, in what part soeuer it is (but especially in Italie) and to keepe it long: because the Italians are the most iealous and couetous Nation, beyond all other in the world. Wherefore, whosoeuer would make himselfe a Potentate in Italie; he must hold it for an infallible Maxime, to be very modest and retent in all his actions; but especially towards women, and to lay no oppression vpon the people.

Diffidence is the mother of assurance.

The Italians are inconstant, and desire nothing more then change; they contemne the facilitie of the French, and hate the rigour of the Dutch, a Nation diuers wayes proud and tyrannicall, yet can better conserue their Conquests, then we: who of all our voyages to *Piedmont*, *Millaine*, *Naples*, and *Sicilie*, haue not reserued one inch of ground. Diffidence is the Mother of Assurance, and to make our owne best beginning, it behoueth vs first to conquer our selues.

Maxima cunctarum victoria, victa voluptas.

The Epitaph on the Tombe of great *Scipio*.

A graue Verse, well seruing for an Epitaph on the Tombe of Great *Scipio* the African: who abstained from all force and violence towards men and their goods. Moreouer, to containe the people subiected to dutie, by a moderated gouernment betweene mildenesse and power: is to stand vpon good guard night and day, and not to trust ought elsse, but in good behauiour towards the Italians, with whom to communicate, and be the least familiar, is the best and safest.

Now

King Lewes raiseth another Armie against *Lodowicke*.

Now the men of *Millaine*, being thus reduced vnder the obedience of Lord *Lodowicke*; the King was constrained once more, to bring an Armie into the Field, which he committed to the conduct of *Mesſire Lewes de la Trimouille*, Viscount of *Thouars*: who hauing made an agreement betweene the Lords of *Aubign*) & of *Trimoille*, all three ioyned together, and gaue such order and direction to the Armie, that *Lodowicke* standing in feare thereof, was enforced againe to forsake *Millaine*, with an hundred Horse onely, and so with-drew himselfe to *Nouara*, where was his Armie and Artillerie. As speedily was he followed by the French Armie, whereto a *Bourgongnon* Captain, named *Des Tottieres*, yeelded himselfe, being come forth of the said Towne of *Nouara*, wherein (at that time) for *Lodowicke* were foure thousand *Swizzers*, eight thousand *Landſ-kenets*, about sixe or seauen thousand *Lombardes*, and eight hundred *Bourgongnons*, who with the said Captaine *Des Tottieres*, ioyned themselues to the French Armie on the one side, and the foure thousand *Swizzers*, won by the Bailiffe of *Dijon*, on the other side.

The Armie of *Lodewicke* fleeth him in the Field

Lodowicke came forth into the Field, and presented Battaile to the French, which they accepted very willingly, & *Lodowicks* Armie comming to handy-blowes; they submitted to the French, without striking one stroake: because the *Swizzers* and *Landſ-kenets* being not paid their Wages, they would not by any meanes fight. Such misfortunes as this, doe often happen to Princes, that make vse of strangers seruice, who when neede requireth; will be sure to hold their hands, making three or foure demands for money, before the Battaile, when they well knew it is not to be had. Let a Prince therefore prouide his Armie of his owne Subiects, of whom he shall be better and more profitably serued: for strangers soules are meerely mercenary, and they affect not Princes, but in regard of the benefit they can deriue from them; They are for their seruice that will giue them most, and their loue is poized in the Ballance with their wages, but no otherwise. *Lodowicke* being thus betraied, disguised himselfe in the habit of a Gray-Frier, as hoping so to saue himselfe. But the Lord of *Trimoutlle*, causing a passage to be made betweene two Pikes crossed, for all them of the enemies Armie, departing with their liues and goods saued, one after another: *Lodowicke* being knowne, was taken, and sent prisoner to *Chasteau de Pierre-Enciſe* at *Lyons*, from whence he was (not long after) transported to the great Tower of *Bourges*, and there he finished his dayes.

A very worthy adu se giuen to Princes.

Lodowick taken & sent prisoner into France

The Towne of *Nouara* by this meanes yeelded it selfe to the King, who had for his part of the victory (won on the thursday before Palme-Sunday, in the same yeare foure score and nineteene) *Lodowicke*, and all his Artillery, with the Town of *Nouara*, very rich and mighty in goods.

Ascanio Sforza brother to *Lodowicke*.

The Cardinall *Ascanio Sforza*, left Gouernour at *Millaine* by his Brother, hauing heard the tydings of his surprizall: departed thence, accompanied with sixe hundred Horse, belonging to the richest Inhabitants, and some pieces of *Artillerie*, taking his way towards *Bologna*. On the way he was met by a *Venetian* Captaine, that came with his troupe to ioyne with the Armie Royall. This Captaine was named *Simons Bransono*, who crying out aloud *France* and Saint *Marke*; set vpon the Cardinals company, conducted by Count *John*, Brother to the Marquesse of *Mantua*, to whom he gaue charge, to pursue him fighting to *Chasteau de Rivolles*, where the Cardinall was as soone inuested by the *Venetian*, who had prisoner in his power Count *John* of *Mantua*, of whom he had a great ransome. With him was taken the Abbot of *Sanzeles*, foure of the Viscounts, Captaine *Bardo*, and an hundred thousand Ducates in ready money, with all the Iewels of the Cardinall *Ascanio*, who likewise was contented to yeelde, onely his life saued. He was deliuered into the hands of *Stephen de Vers*, Seneschall of *Beaucaire*, the Lord of *Montoison*, and the Iudge *Mage* of *Prouence*: who brought him safely to *Chasteau de Pierre-Enciſe* at *Lyons*, euen where before his Brother was imprisoned.

The lamentable condition of the *Millaneſe*, vpon loſſ of their Duke & his Brother.

The Inhabitants of *Millaine* much daunted at the surprizall of their Duke, his Brother also, & the discomfiture of their Armie, by that of the Kings which had inuested them; sent their Deputies to the Cardinall *George d'Amboiſe*, who by the King was stablished Lieutenant generall ouer the *Millainers*; entreating him to take compassion of them, to saue their Citie from pillage, and to make his entrance into it, crauing

moſt humbly pardon of him, for their offence committed, by admitting Lord *Lodowicke* into their Citie. The Cardinall made it manifeſt to them, by Maiſter *Michael de Ris*, Doctor of the Lawes, and Councellour in the Parliament of *Bourgongne*, that the enormitie of their rebellion was puniſhable with death: becauſe (without any ſubiect) they had withdrawne themſelues from obedience to their King and Soueraigne Lord, who had ſo mildely and mercifully dealt with them. And that the ſum of a Million of Pounds, which they payed yearely to *Lodowicke* in taxes and tallages, he had moderated it to the ſum of ſix hundred and two and twentie thouſand pounds: here is to be noated, that the Dukedome of *Millaine* valued yearely fifteene hundred thouſand Dukates) which gentle and milde vſage in the French; they had neuertheleſſe vtterly forgot.

The Dukdom of *Millaines* yearly valuation.

All which notwithſtanding, hee declared to them in the Kings name, that hee would ſpare the liues of the Inhabitants, and exempt their Citie from pillage, and all the people from death, which they had iuſtly deſerued, vpon condition: that they would yeelde and deliuer to him, the principall Authours of the rebellion, to be iuſtly puniſhed, and themſelues (for euer after) continue faithfull to the King, and to his Succeſſours the Kings of France, their Dukes and Soueraigne Lords. Moreouer, to defraye the charges of this laſt warre, the Citie of *Millaine* ſhould (for an honorable amends) pay three hundred thouſand Ducates; to wit, fiftie thouſand in the preſent Moneth of *Aprill*, One thouſand fiue hundred and fiftie thouſand the firſt day of *May* next following; and the other two hundred thouſand at the end of the ſame yeare, except the King would be pleaſed in clemencie, to prolong them a further time for the laſt paiment.

The Cardinall *d'Amboiſe* his entrance into *Millaine*.

Which being agreed vnto, the Cardinall *d'Amboiſe* entred into *Millaine* vpon Good-Friday, it being the ſeauenteenth day of *Aprill*: accompanied with *Iohn Iacques de Triuulce* (Marſhall of France in the time of King *Frances*) the Biſhop of *Lucon*, Chancellour of *Millaine*, the Lord of *Neuf-Chaſtel*, with other Lords and Captaines of the Armie. Hee went to lodge at the Hoſtell called *La Cour-Vieille*, the Pallace belonging to the firſt Viſcounts of *Millaine*, whether the three Eſtates thereof went in ſolemne proceſſion, bearing the Crucifixe and Banner of the Virgin *Mary*; after which followed all the Children of the Citie, Sonnes and Daughters, cloathed all in white, and in this manner the Cardinall welcommed them in the Court of his Pallace, ſitting aloft vpon a Theater, and round about him his French Lords and Captaines. For the Inhabitants, the man moſt famous among their Aduocates, named Maiſter *Michael Touſe*, made the Oration, deſiring grace and mercie on their behalfe. The Councellour *de Ris* returned a kinde and mercifull anſwere, more then the inconſtant people deſerued: which being concluded, all the yong Children (innocent in the guilt of their Fathers) paſſed two and two together before the French Lords, crying with loud voices, *France*, *France*, *Mercie*, *Mercie*.

The Cardinals mercie to the Citizens.

The *Swizzers*, being raiſed and prouoked thereto by Pope *Iulius*, had brought into *Millaine Maximilian Sforza*, Sonne to *Lodowicke Sforza*, who died in France, and which *Maximillian* (as we haue formerly ſaid) had bin ſaued in Germanie, by his Vnckle the Cardinall *Aſcanio*.

Lewes the twelfth retained as yet in his power, the Rocke or Cittadell of *Millaine*, the Caſtell of *Cremona*, and ſome other places. The *Swizzers*, who had enſtaulled in the Eſtate of *Millaine* the young *Maximillian*, and hee being taken into their protection; after they had vanquiſhed *Lewes de la Trimouille*, Lieutenant Generall for the King at *Nouara*, and conſtrained him to forſake Italie; they purſued the ſaid Lord *de la Trimouille* to *Dijon* in *Bourgongne*, to the number of fifteene thouſand, ſupported by the forces of Pope *Iulius*, and of the elected Emperour *Maximillian* (Sonne in Lawe to *Charles*, the laſt Duke of *Bourgongne*) and them of *La Franche Comte*, as alſo ſome *Germaines*, conducted by *Huldrich*, the Duke of *wittemberg*. There they beſiedged him in this weake and ill-fortefied Citie, before which (neuerleſſe) they remained ſixe weekes, at the end whereof, being required to ſhew the occaſions, why they thus bandied themſelues againſt the French, the Lord of *Trimouille* receiued this for anſwere.

Yong *Maximillian Sforza* eſtated in the dignity of *Millaine*.

anſwere. That ſince the time of King *Lewes* the eleuenth (with whom they had contracted and ſworne alliance) there remained due debt vnto them, foure hundred thouſand Crownes of their Penſion: whereof being ſatisfied, they would be louing friends to the Crown of France, and maintaine their cauſe to and againſt all Princes liuing or dying. To content them, they had aſſurance for their debt, and pay of ſome preſent money downe, but what ſum I know not.

The anſwere returned by the Swizzers.

Theſe men thus pacified, *Lewes* the twelfth diſpoſed himſelfe, to muſter his troups, and to haue them paſſe ouer the Alpes. He publiſhed for his Lieutenant generall in Italie, his Couſine *Charles de Monpenſier*, Duke of *Bourbon*, leuying in Germany betweene fifteene and ſixteene thouſand *Landſ-kenets*, determining to haue on foote (at Spring time following) the moſt potent Armie, that, in the memory of men, had euer bin ſeene in Italie. But ſudden death brake off his deſignes, and cut in twaine the thred of his life, the firſt day of *Ianuary*, about the mid-time of night, in the yeare of our Saluation, One thouſand fiue hundred and foureteene.

The great preparation made by King *Lewes* the twelth, but fore-ſtalled by his death.

A Prince, whoſe intire loue towards his Subiects, honored him with the memory of this Title, *Father of the People*, & who all his life time, had eaſed them of taxes and Subſidies. Being endued with magnanimous courage, he purpoſed to purſue the Conqueſts of *Charles* the eight in Italie; and (aboue all) to make firme the Dukedome of *Millaine* to the Crowne of France, which appertained thereto by ſucceſſiue and lawfull right.

After this Prince ſucceeded *Frances* of *Engouleſme*, his Son in law, husband to Madam *Claudia* of France; but not in regard of his wife; becauſe daughters are excluded from the Crown of France, according to the fundamentall Law of the Kingdome.

Women excluded from ſucceeding in the the Crown of France.

Succeſſor Imperij Francorum, Maſculus eſto.

But by his chiefe right and prerogatiue, & no otherwiſe, as being the prime Prince of the blood, moſt neereſt, & beſt able to ſucceede the deceaſed King, departing this life without any heire maſle.

At the beginning of his Reigne, Prince *Charles* of *Auſtria*, ſent as Ambaſſador to his Maieſtie, the Count of *Naſſau*; who (in the name of his Maiſter) performed faith and homage, for the Counties of *Flanders*, *Artois*, *Charolois*, and other Lands held and depending on the Crowne of France.

Which being thus done, the King iournied to *Lyons*, from whence he paſſed into Italie, to recouer his Dukedome of *Millaine*. The *Swizzers* being introduced, & won by the perſwaſions and boundleſſe promiſes of the Cardinall of *Syon*, would needs breake their faith engaged to the King; and were ouerthrowne at *Marignano*, on thurſday, being the foureteenth day of *September*, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and fifteene, there lying in the field of Battaile, fifteene thouſand and fiue hundred of them ſlaine. The vanquiſhing of theſe bold warriors, procured the reddition of *Millaine*, of *Pauia*, and of *Cremona*. In the end, the Caſtell of *Millaine* was conſtrained to yeeld it ſelfe to the French, by the arteficiall cunning of *Pedro de Nauarre*, a great Ingener. He had this Sir-name, not as being a natiue of *Nauarre*, but by being in ſeruice of King *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, he was taken in the Battaile at *Rauenna*, and led thence into France, where he was detained as a priſoner, vntill the time of King *Frances* the firſt, who hauing ſet him at full libertie; made good proofe of his valiancie in Italie and elſewhere, and ſerued very faithfully to the Crowne of France.

The iourney of King *Frances* the firſt, into Italy to recouer *Millaine*.

A great ouerthrow of the *Swizzers* at *Marignano*.

By this ſurprizing the Caſtell of *Millaine*, and the Duke *Maximillian Sforza*, led priſoner into France, where he finiſhed his life; King *Francis* the firſt remained ſome ſpace of time, a peaceable poſſeſſour of the Eſtate of *Millaine*. Where he left Gouernor and Lieutenant generall, *Charles*, Duke of *Bourbon*, Conſtable of France, who but badly entreated the Mother to King *Frances* the firſt, Madam *Louiſa* of *Sauoye*; looſing both honor and life in a ſtrange Countrey, to the coſt of France.

Charles Duke of *Bourbon*, Lieutenant generall and gouernour of *Millaine*.

We haue already obſerued the Genealogie of *Monſieur Louis* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, on the legitimate ſide: Let vs now take a view of that which deſcended (and endureth yet to this day) of his naturall Sonne *Iohn*, Count of *Dunois*.

The Chronicle of *Iuuenal des Vrſins* doth enſtruct vs, that after the murder of *Monſieur*

Monſieur Lewes of France, Duke of *Orleans*; his Children were taken from the hands and gouernement of their Mother, the Ducheſſe *Valentina*, of *Millaine*: *Le Quatrieſme Iour de December audict An. 1408. mourut de chagrenez, & de Dueil, la Ducheſſe d'Orleans, Fille du Duc de Milan, & de la Fille du Roy Iean. Et eſtoit grande pitie, d'ouir auant ſa Mort, ſes regrets, & complaincts. Et pitoyement regrettoit ſes Enfants, & vn Baſtard nomme Iean, lequel elle veoit volontiers, en diſant qu'il luy auoit Eſté Enible, & Qu'il N'y Auoit a peine des Enfants, qui fuſt ſi bien Taille de Venger la mort de ſon Pere, Qu'il eſtoit. The fourth day of December, in the ſaid yeare 1408. ſhee died with anger and griefe, the Ducheſſe of Orleans, daughter to the Duke of Millaine, and ſi the daughter of King* Iohn. *And it was great pittie, to heare before her Death, her mournings and complaints. And pittifully ſhe mourned for her Children, and a Baſtard, named* Iohn, *whom ſhe willingly beheld, in ſaying, that he was enabled, and that he had hardly any of his Sonnes, that was ſo well ſhaped and formed, for the reuenge of his Fathers death, as he was.*

Iohn the Baſtard of *Dunois* his admirable ſeruices.

This Propheticall kinde of ſpeech (as it were) was verified vnder King *Charles*, ſeauenth of the name, called the *Victorious*, and well ſerued: when this *Iohn* the Baſtard of *Dunois*, performed wonders againſt the *Bourgongnons* and *Engliſhmen*, to whom (all his life time) he was a capitall enemie, and a Butcher of them; reuenging the expence of his Fathers Blood, with ſluicing forth that of twelue thouſand *Engliſh* and *Bourgongnons*, in diuers encounters, and vnder his conduct, making a miſerable maſſacre of them.

And for the great ſeruices which hee had done to France, and which may remaine as a module, example and patterne, for all them concerned in his qualitie of Birth, to apply themſelues in well doing, and not to teare the bowels of their Mother France, by factions, reuolts and partialities: Hee was by full conſent of the generall Eſtates, held vnder *Charles* the ſeauenth, made *The Legitimate Sonne of Orleans. And to his Armes, the Fiſet de Gueulles à Ganche* (which is ſaid in deuiſe to deſigne Baſtardie) *altered and changed into that d'Argent, en Bande de la main Ganche à la Droitte. And that his Heires and Deſcendants of them ſhould hold (for euer after) the ranck and title of French Princes, and goe immediately after the Princes of the Blood Royall, and before all the Princes iſſued and deſcended of the Soueraigne Houſe habituate in France.*

Iohn of *Dunois* made the legitim ate Son of *Orleans*.

The Marriage of the Counte of *Dunois* to *Iane Louuet*.

This *Iohn* Count of *Dunois* and of *Longue-Ville*, eſpouſed *Iane Louuet*, the onely daughter to *Meſſire Iohn Louuet*, Preſident of *Prouence*, wonderfully wealthie: in reward he had gouerned the Reuennues of France, vnder the miſerable Reigne of *Charles* the ſixt, and had receiued his part of the Treaſures and Cheuances, gathered in many Monaſteries of the Kingdome, for Queene *Iſabel* of *Bauaria*, who made her Mittines of the Kings Treaſure, to fill the Boudgets of her owne Countrey, although France paied dearely for it. The faction of *Phillip*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, ſecond of the name, alwayes dammageable to France, diſmounted the ſaid Preſident of *Prouence*. *And when the Preſident perceiued, that the Queene of Sicilie, Mother to the Queene of France, was not contented, that the Preſident ſhould gouerne the King and his Hoſtell: he departed from France, and tooke with him the Baſtard of Orleans, who had married his Daughter, and went ſo farre as to* Auignion: So ſpeaketh the Chronicle of *Iuuenall des Vrſins*, vnder the yeare One thouſand foure hundred twentie foure. By contract of this marriage, the Preſident *Louuet* inſtituted his Heire, the ſaid *Iohn* the Baſtard of *Orleans*, whether he had children by the ſaid *Iane* his daughter, or whether ſhe died without iſſue, as it hapned ſhe did.

The ſecond marriage of the Baſtard of *Orleans*.

So that *Iohn* the Baſtard of *Orleans* eſpouſed in ſecond marriage, *Mary de Harcour*, daughter to *William de Harcour*, Count of *Tancar-Ville*, and to *Ioane*, the Vicounteſſe of *Meaux*.

For the great ſeruices that this *Iohn* had performed to his Bretheren, *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans*, remaining fiue and twentie yeares priſoner in *England* (and to *Iohn*, Count of *Engoulesme*, who continued there alſo priſoner eight and twentie yeares) the ſaid *Charles*, being returned into France, gaue the Countie of *Dunois* to the Baſtard his Brother, ſo that he was the firſt Count thereof. The Letters of this Donation are dated in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred thirtie nine, confirmed by other Letters from the ſame Duke of *Orleans*, in Anno One thouſand foure hundred fortie and one. King *Charles* the ſeauenth acknowledging the great and faithfull ſeruices, which this *Iohn* the Baſtard of *Orleans* had done for him: ouer and beſide his legitimation, hee gaue him faire Seigneuries, as thoſe of *Parthenay*, *Vmans*, *Mermans*, the Principalitie of *Chaſtelaillon*, and many other, throughout all the Prouinces of France: And this donation is dated in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred fiftie and eight.

The iſſue of *Iohn* and *Mary*, & of them that deſcended of them.

Of this *Iohn*, Count of *Dunois*, and *Mary de Harcour*, Counteſſe of *Tancar-Ville*: was borne a Sonne and a Daughter; *Frances* and *Katharine*, maried to the Count of *Ruſſy*.

Frances of *Orleans*, Count of *Dunois* and of *Longue-Ville*, firſt of the name, had to wife *Agnes de Sauoye*, ſiſter to Queene *Charlote* of *Sauoye*, ſecond wife to King *Lewes* the eleauenth, daughters to *Lewes*, Duke of *Sauoye*, and *Anne* of *Cyprus*. And of this marriage was borne three Sonnes, as namely *Frances*, *Lewes*, and

Iohn, who was a Cardinall, Biſhop of *Orleans*, and Archbiſhop of *Toloſa*.

The Countie of *Longue-Ville* made a Dukedome & Peeredome.

Frances of *Orleans*, ſecond of the name, followed the part of King *Lewes* the twelfth, not being (as yet) Duke of *Orleans*, and ranne his fortune at the Battaile of Saint *Aubin* in Britaigne. In fauour of him, King *Lewes* the twelfth, being come to the Crowne; aduanced the Countie of *Longue-Ville* to be a Dukedome and Peeredome of France. The ſaid Duke *Frances* eſpouſed *Frances* of *Alanſon*, daughter to *Rene*, Duke of *Alanſon*, and to *Margaret* of *Lorraine*. And of this marriage iſſued

Renee, their onely daughter, who died an Infant, immediately after Duke *Frances* her Father: by the death of whom, the Dukedome of *Longue-Ville*, and the Earledome of *Dunois*, came to

The Dukdome of *Longue-Ville* commeth to *Lewes* of *Orleans*.

Lewes of *Orleans*, firſt of the name, who married *Iane* of *Hochberg*, Daughter to *Phillip*, Marqueſſe of *Hochberg*, and of *Rothelin*, Count of *Neuf-Chaſtell* (and of other great Seigneuries in *Briſgaun*, and in *Bourgongne*, where this Marqueſſe made his ordenarie abiding, and was high Marſhall) and of *Mary* of *Sauoye*. Theſe Marqueſſes of *Hochberg*, and thoſe of *Baden*, are iſſued of the ſame ſtocke, and the very ſame name and Armes. *Rodolphe*, Marqueſſe of *Hochberg* and of *Rothelin*, Count of *Neuf-Chaſtell* by the Lake, and Lord of *Suſenbourg*, had to wife *Mary* of *Vienna*: and of this marriage was borne *Phillip*, the laſt Marqueſſe of *Hochberg* and of *Rothelin*, who by *Mary* of *Sauoye* his wife, had but one onely daughter; *Ioane* of *Hochberg*, wife to the ſaid *Lewes* of *Orleans*. By death of this *Phillip*, the laſt heire Maſle of the Family of *Hochberg*, and of *Rothelin*: the Marqueſſe of *Baden*, named *Chriſtopher*, his Couſine farre enough off, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and three, poſſeſſed himſelfe in the Marquiſates of *Hochberg* and *Rothelin*, as alſo the Seigneuries of *Suſenbourg*, and *Badenuilliers*. So that to the onely daughter of *Phillip*, there remained but the Countie of *Neuf-Chaſtel*, and the Seigneuries being in France.

By this marriage of *Lewes* of *Orleans*, and *Iane* of *Hochberg*, were borne three Sonnes and one daughter, to wit; *Claudius*, *Lewes*, *Frances*, And

Phillip of *Sauoye* Count of *Geneua*.

Charlote, wife to *Phillip* of *Sauoye*, Count of *Geneua*, and of the *Geneuayes*: And of this Marriage is deſcended the Houſe of *Nemoux*, becauſe therein were borne

Iames of *Sauoye*, Duke of *Nemoux*, and

Iane of *Sauoye*, ſecond wife to *Nicholas de Lorraine* Count of *Vaudemont*, Father to Queene *Louiſa*, wife to the King of France and Poland, *Henry*, third of the name, of famous memory.

Claudius was Duke of *Longue-Ville*, who deceaſed without any Heires.

Claudius of *Lorraine* Duke of *Guiſe*.

Lewes, ſecond of the name, tooke to wife *Mary* of *Lorraine*, daughter to *Claudius* of *Lorraine*, Duke of *Guiſe*, and in this marriage was borne their onely Sonne

Frances, third of the name, Duke of *Longue-Ville*, who dyed without linage.

Frances, Marqueſſe of *Rothelin*, third of the name, Sonne to *Lewes*, firſt of the name, and *Iane* Lady Marqueſſe of *Hochberg*; had to wife *Iaquelina de Rohan*, daughter to the Lord of *Gnye*, and of this Marriage was deſcended.

Leonardo; And

Frances of *Orleans*, married to *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Prince of *Conde*; and in this marriage was borne *Charles*, Count of *Soissons*: *Lewes*, and *Beniamin*.

Duke of *Longue Ville*, and Count of *Dunois*.

Leonardo of *Orleans*, Duke of *Longue-Ville*, and Count of *Dunois*, by the Succession of *Frances*, third of the name, his Cousine Germaine, dying without any issue: tooke to wife *Mary* of *Bourbon*, daughter vnto *Frances* of *Bourbon*, Duke *d'Estoute-Ville*, and Count of Saint *Paul*, and of *Adriana d'Estoute-Ville*. Of this marriage were issued two Sonnes, foure daughters, *Henry*, *Frances*, *Margaret*, *Katharine*, *Antoinetta*, and *Leonora*.

Katherine de Gonzagua of Cleues

Henry, first of the name, espoused *Katharine de Gonzagua* of *Cleues*, daughter to *Lodowicke de Gonzagua*, Duke of *Neuers*, and of *Retheil*, and of this marriage is issued.

Henry, second of the name, of *Orleans*, Duke of *Longue-Ville*, *d'Estoute-Ville*, Count of *Neuf-Chastell*: who tooke to wife *Louisa de Bourbon*, daughter to *Charles de Bourbon*, Count of *Soissons*, and to *Anne* Countesse of *Montasier*.

Caumont and *Fronsac* a Dukedome & Peeredome newly made.

Frances of *Orleans*, Count of Saint *Paul*, Husband to the Inheritrixe of *Caumont*, and of *Fronsac*: newly erected into a Dukedome and Peeredome of France, for the said *Frances* of *Orleans*, and his Sonne.

In fauour of this Illustrious House of *Longue-Ville*, of the Armes and Sir-name of *Orleans*: our Monarches (from time to time) haue made their Declarations for their Rancke and Sedence, immediately after the Princes of the Bloud; the last whereof is by King *Charles* the ninth, the tenure whereof thus followeth.

The Declaration of King *Charles* the Ninth, for the *Precedencie and Rancke, which ought to be held* by the Princes of the House of Longue-Ville.

CHarles, *by the Grace of God, King of France: To all present, and to come, Greeting. Our intention hath alwayes bin, in imitation and example of the deceassed Kings our Predecessours, to maintaine, cause to be kept and conserued to the Princes of our Bloud, and other Lords being in this our Kingdome; the Place, Rancke and Degree which to them belongeth. And although it is a matter to euery one sufficiently apparant, and knowne, that our most deare and best beloued Cousine the Duke of Longue Ville, is extracted and issued from the Illustrious Bloud of the House of Orleans, for such a one knowne and auouched, bearing the House and Sir-name of Orleans, and that by occasion of this rancke and degree, which hath bin by the Kings our Predecessours giuen and attributed to him and his, and which they haue to this day held, and therefore ought not any way to be called in doubt, or committed to controuersie; yet notwithstanding, to cease all disputes that may hereon ensue: we are willing to declare and make knowne our purpose and meaning.*

For these causes, after we had taken the aduise of the Queene our most-Honorable Mother; of our most deare and louing Brethren, the Dukes of Anion, our Lieutenant Generall, representing our person throughout all our Kingdome, Countries, Lands and Seigneuries vnder our obedience; and of Alanson; *and of our most-deare and beloued Cousine the Cardinall of* Bourbon: *wee haue said and declared, doe say and declare, that wee doe hold and repute our said Cousine* Leonardo of Orleans, Duke of Longue-Ville, *to be a Prince of our Bloud, and our intent and will is (as euermore it hath bin) that hee, his Sonnes and Successours, in the direct line, shall be held and acknowledged to be such, as we doe hold and acknowledge them to be, and so will haue them to be knowne, alwayes to be issued and descended of the said House of* Orleans.

And in this Degree, as well about vs, as in all other places, where hee, his Sons and Successours shall be: to haue the prime place, next to the Princes of our Bloud, and shall enioye all other Honors, Authorities, Preheminences, Rights, Ranckes, and Prerogatiues,

like, and in the same manner as his Predecessors haue done, according as reason requireth to haue it so. And that he our said Cousin, for his great and most commendable Seruices, hath very worthily deserued of this Crowne and State, although that this place and Ranke which by vs is confirmed to him by these Presents, should bee questioned by any dispute or altercation: willing, if any such should happen, to haue them ceased, and likewise all other contrary hinderances. For such is our pleasure, hauing for the much greater approbation and testimony of this our will; Signed these Presents with our owne hand, which wee will to bee sufficient to serue any where, or where need shall require. And to the end, that this may bee an Act firme and stable alwayes: Wee haue hereunto set our Seale.

Giuen at *Dureſtall*, in the Moneth of *December*, the Yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Three Score and Eleauen.

Signed. *Charles.*

And on the Fold in the bottome.

De Neufuille.

And Sealed with Greene waxe on Strings of Silke, Red and Greene.

The Order of Bourbon, called of the *Thistle*, and of our *Lady*: Instituted at *Moulins*, in *Bourbonnois*: In the Yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Three Score and Ten.

CHAP. XII.

L'Ordre de Bourbon dit de Chardon, & de nostre Dame.

THE Royall House of *Bourbon*, at this instant Reigning happily in France, took his beginning in the Person of *Monsieur Robert* of France, Count of *Clermont* in *Beauuoisis*, Sonne to the Great King Saint *Lewes*, Ninth of the Name.

Robert married the rich Heyre and Inheritrix of *Bourbon*, named *Beatrix* of *Bourgongne*, Daughter to *Iohn of Bourgongne*, second Sonne of *Hugh*, Fourth of the name, Duke of *Bourgongne*, and to *Agnes de Bourbon*, Daughter to *Messire Archambauld de Bourbon*, called the Young, Seauenth of the name.

Lewes of *Clermont* created the First Duke of *Bourgongne*.

Of this Marriage issued *Lewes de Clermont*, tearmed the Great, created the First Duke of *Bourgongne*, by King *Philip de Valois*, Sixt and Last of the name, in the Yeare One Thousand, Three Hundred, Twenty and Nine. By the meanes of this erection, hee quitted the Sirname of *Clermont*, and tooke that of *Bourbon*; which they of that Royall House (as well the youngest as eldest) haue to this day still retained.

The Armes of *Bourbon*.

Monsieur Robert of France, *Porta Seme de France sans nombre au Baston de Gueules brochant sur le tout.* Armes which *Lewes* the First Duke of *Bourbon* held, with the Sirname of the Seigneurie belonging to his mother, of which Seigneurie (neuertheless) hee forsooke the Armes of the *Archambaulx*, which were *D'Or au Lyon Rampant de Gueules, à l'Orle seme de Coquilles d'Azur.* Because, since the Voyages which the King Saint *Lewes* made beyond the Seas, the Crowne of France was so much famed

famed & renowned throughout the whole world, that the Princes which afterward descended thereof, whom wee call Princes of the Blood, carried the plaine Armes of France, distinguished by *Brizures*. Contenting not themselues, to beare the colour and mettall, as formerly had done the Princes of the Bloud, of the Houses of *Bourbon, Dreux* and *de Courtnay*, who ioyning in Marriage with the rich Inheritrixes of them, tooke likewise their Armes and Sirnames.

Houses of *Bourbo, Dreux* and *Courtnay*.

Lewes, First Duke of *Bourbon*, and of that name, tooke to wife *Mary*, Sister to the Count of *Henault*, and had by her three Male Children (wee will passe the Daughters in silence, & the Sonnes also, because they minister no matter to our Discourse) *Peter*, First of the name, Second Duke of *Bourbon*, whose Line is long since quite extinct and perished in the Distaffe.

The House of *Bourbon* that as yet continueth.

Iames the Second Sonne, of the Sirname and Armes of *Bourbon*, was Count of *Charolois*, and Constable of France. Of this man the Royall Descent continueth euen to this day, and (God assisting) shall doe to infinite Ages, to hold the Scepter and Crowne of the noble Flower de Luce, which being founded on the Salique Law, called him to command, as the very neerest Prince issued of the Bloud Royall, from *Lance* to *Lance*, although hee stood in the Thousand degree off; yet by the right of Bloud, and perpetuall custome of the Kingdome, which the Ciuill Lawyer *Baldus* on the first Law *De Senatoribus*, at the *Clode* and elsewhere, aptly termeth *Ius Contium Gallorum*. By which right, the Illustrious House of *Bourbon* descended of the youngest from Saint *Lewes*, by infinite representation, came to the Crowne of France, in the Yeare, One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Foure Score and Nine. After that that Stocke of the eldest Race from the said Saint *Lewes* (which had reigned Three Hundred and Nineteene yeares) was quite ended, and sincke in the Female Sexe.

Accordingly is it prophesied of the Princes of the House of France, that they shall endure for euer. *Lilium Francorum erit tanquam lignum quod plantatum est secus decursus aquarum, quod fructum suum dabit in tempore suo*, in the first Psalme. *The Lilly of the French shall be like a Tree planted by the riuers of waters, that will bring forth her fruite in due season.* As meaning, that this *Flower de Luce*, exalted vp to Heauen, shall neuer fayle in producing Leaues and Fruits, that is to say: Princes succeeding one after another, to sustaine the Scepter of the French. This is the goodly Golden branch foretold by *Sibylla*.

Psal. 1. 3.

——— ——— Vno auulso non deficit alter
Aureus, & simili frondescit Virga metallo.

The Leaues of the Sacred Lilles of France, shall neuer want: *Folium eius non defluet*: So speaketh the Psalmist and Royall Prophet. Returne wee now to the eldest of *Lewes* the First Duke of *Bourbon*.

Peter, Second Duke of *Bourbon*, and Count of *Clermont*, tooke to Wife *Isabell de Valois*, and had by her two Sonnes and Seauen Daughters. The The youngest Sonne was *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la March*, who was slaine with *Peter* of *Bourbon* his Sonne at the encounter at *Brignais*, three miles from *Lyons*, in *Anno*, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Threescore and One, the Third Day of *April*. The Eldest Sonne

Lewes, Second of the name, Third Duke of *Bourbon*, and Count of *Clermont*, in *Beaumont*, of *Forests* and *Beaujoulois*, had to Wife *Anne*, Daughter to *Beraud*, Dauphin of *Auuergne*, called the Count *Camus*, and to *Iane* Countesse *de Forests*. And in this Marriage was borne *Iohn*, First of the name, Fourth Duke of *Bourbon*: who tooke to Wife the Daughter of *Monsieur Iohn* of France, Duke of *Berry* and of *Auuergne*.

Lewes the Second was (for his rare vertues) called *The good Duke*. Hauing beene seauen yeares in England with King *Iohn*, hee returned to his Dukedome of *Bourbonnois*, in the Yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Three Score and Three, being then Aged Eight and Twenty Yeares. In the same Yeare, the first Day of *Ianuary*, the memorable time of giuing Newyeares-Gifts: hee called together the very chiefest Lords of his Lands, in the City of *Moulins* in *Bourbonnois*, and Instituted the Order of the *Golden-Shield*. These are the very tearmes of the Chro-

Chronicle, concerning this great Prince, made by a *Picard*, named *Iohn d'Orronuille*, called *Cabaret*, at the request of *Charles* Count of *Clermont*, eldest Sonne to *Iohn* Duke of *Bourbon*, and *d'Auuergne*, Count *de Forrests*, and Lord of *Beau-ieu*, the onely Sonne to *Lewes* the Second, of whom the Chronicle was made by the said *Cabaret*, on Tuesday, the Nine and Twentieth day of March, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, Twenty and Nine, after Easter.

The Chronicle of *Iohn Cabaret* of *Orronuille*.

In the Second Chapter are set downe these words. *For the good hope that I haue in you, next vnder God* (said the good Duke to his Barons) *from this time forward, I will beare for my Deuice* a Girdle, *whereon shall bee written in ioyfull words*, Esperance, *or Hope.*

The Dukes words to his Barons.

In the Third Chapter, the First Day of the Yeare, early in the Morning, arose the gentle Duke, to gather his Knights and Noblemen together, to go to the Church of our Lady at *Moulins*. But before the Duke departed from his Chamber, hee honselled them with Newyeares Gifts of a worthy Order by him deuised, which he called, *The Golden-Shield*. *And in the Shield of Gold was a Bende of Pearles, whereon he had written: Allen.*

The First Lords honoured with this Order of *The Golden-Shield*, were these following.

1. *Messires Henry de Montagu, Lord de la Tour, Sonne to Messire Gilleselin.*
2. *Guichard Daulphine.*
3. *Griffon de Montagu.*
4. *Hugues de Chastellus.*
5. *The Eldest of Chastelmorant.*
6. *The Lord de Chastel de Montaign.*
7. *The Eldest de la Palisse.*
8. *Guillaume de Vichi, Lord de Baisseels.*
9. *Philippes des Serpens, or Desserpeins.*
10. *Lourdin de Saligny.*
11. *The Lord de Chontemerles.*
12. *Regnauld de Basserne.*
13. *The Lord of Champroux.*
14. *The Lord of Veausse.*
15. *The Lord of Blot.*
16. *Guillaume de la Motte.*
17. *Pierre de Fontenay, in the Countrey of Berry.*

The Order of the *Golden-Shield*, and the first Knights thereof.

And many other, who receiued the said *Order of the Golden-Shield*, or rather Deuice. In the giuing whereof, the Duke said to the Knights, that hee desired, that all they which should receiue the Order hereafter, and they that now had receiued it: should bee all as Brethren, to liue and dye one with another, if need should so vrge it. To performe and accomplish all those good Actions, which all Knights of Honour, and Noble Gentlemen in duty ought to doe. To abstaine from Swearing, & blaspheming the name of God. Aboue all things else, hee enioyned and commanded them, to honour Ladies and Gentlewomen, not permitting or suffering, to beare them slandered or euill spoken of: because, next vnto God, from them commeth part of the honour which men doe receiue. So that to blame or abuse Ladies, who haue not any meanes for reuenging themselues, by reason of their Sexes frailty; is to loose all Honour; yea, and for a man to villanize and shame himselfe. That they should be no backbiters or ill speakers, one of another: because it is the foulest vice, wherewith a Nobleman can bee taxed. For a finall Conclusion, hee exhorted them all to keep Faith and Loyalty, to beare respect and honour each to other, as it becommeth Knights of Praise and Vertue.

The Dukes desire concerning those of his Order, & Articles enioyned them.

A vice too common in all Ages.

Hee told them within a while after, that ouerthwart his *Golden Shield*, hee had caused a *Bende* to bee painted, containing in it this *Bourbonnois*, word or Motto, *Allen*; as if hee intended to say, *Allons tous ensemble au seruice de Dieu, & soyons tous vnis en la defence de nos Pais, & la ou nous pourrons trouuir à conquerir Honneur par faict de Cheualerie. Let vs goe all together to the Seruice of God, and let vs all bee vnited in the defence of our Countrey, and there where we can finde meanes to conquer Honour by Acts of Cheualrie.* And it was his will, that all his Knights should sweare (himselfe beginning first of all) to promise and keepe the Articles formerly set downe.

The meaning of the Motto in the *Bende*.

Which hauing performed on his part, on the Faith of a Prince, and Knight of Honour: All the other Knights fell on their knees before the Duke, and tooke the Oath betweene his hands. This being done, *Messire Phillip des Serpents*, a Knight *Bourbonnois*, and one of the most valiant in the Realme, deliuering the word for all

The Knights thankfull acceptation of the Order.

all the rest; most humbly thanked the Duke that it had pleased him to honour them with his Order, offering him their Seruice, Goods and Liues, for which the Duke thanked them with a chearefull heart.

The *Golden-Shield* no Order, but a Deuice.

This *Golden-Shield* with the *Bende d'Allen*, was properly but a Deuice, and no Order: as wee see Princes and Great Lords to haue in Blazons and Deuices, ouer and beside their owne Armes and Orders of Knighthood. For the Duke of *Bourbon* had his Standards with the *Golden-Shield*, and with his Order of the *Blew Belt*, or *Girdle*, distinct and separate one from the other.

The Siege of *Belle-Perche* in *Bourbonnois*

At the Siege of *Belle-Perche* in *Bourbonnois*, surprized by the English, where the Dutchesse his Mother kept her whole Familie, it being her dwelling or abiding: the Duke of *Bourbon*, Author of this Discourse; *Brought forth of his Armory, the Standard with the Golden-Shield, attended by Fifty compleat men of Armes, beside Fifty other with Crosse-bowes, and made a Sally vpon the English, killing (at the first affront) Two and Thirty Persons.*

Now, concerning that of his Order of the *Belt* or *Girdle of Hope*, his Chronicle, in the Three Score and Eighteenth Chapter, speaking of the Siege at a City of *Affrica* in *Barbary*, which some tearmed *Thunis*, and others *Algier*, attempted by the said good Duke of *Bourbon*. At that time the Duke of *Bourbon* first of all, and then his Lords and Captaines, each man according to his place and rancke, ordered their Bands of Soldiers, & Crosse-bowes of *Genewayes*, wounding amongst the *Sarazens*, and running through the rankes, cut the cords of the Tents, and set fire on the Lodgings of straw. But the Duke of *Bourbon* continued with his *Standard of the Golden Girdle, an houre and more in the middest of the Sarazens Tents.* The rest of this Siege is very remarkable. Thus you see what was this *Order of Hope.*

The Duke of *Bourbon* at the Siege of *Thunis.*

The bounty of *Alexander* to his Souldiers. How our graue Elders preferred Hope, and what they vnderstood thereby.

Alexander the Great, at the age of Twenty yeares, vndertooke the Conquest of the *Indians*, and departing from *Macedon*, gaue all his goods, and whatsoeuer else hee enioyed to the Souldiers, which enrowled themselues to doe him Seruice, Reseruing nothing for himselfe but Hope onely, to make himselfe a Monarch of the Persians: which succeeded to him, according as formerly in his hope hee had proposed; howbeit, oftentimes wee see that expectations doe fall out quite contrary. Whereupon, it was not without great and good iudgement, that our graue wise Ancestors represented *Hope* in the Figure of a Woman, cloathed in Greene, Crowned with a Garland and Wreathe of Flowers, holding a Whippe in the one Hand, and in the other a fragrant Red Rose, as also a Crowe placed at her Feete: Thus meaning, that while wee liue in hope of to Morrow, and then the next Morrow, as times to come, vnderstood and implyed by the Crowes Language, not hauing capacity of any other word but *Cras, Cras: Pascimus ventos* (so saith holy *Iob*) *Wee feede our selues with the windes.* The better part of our Age flyeth away like a shadow or Dreame, passeth, withereth, and consumeth it selfe, like to the Rose and other Flowers: Death entrappeth and betrayeth vs, and dyeth his Whippe bloudred in the vanity of our Hopes.

The religious Hope & perswasion of the good Duke.

The good Duke had not planted his Hope in or on the world, but in God chiefly, as a vertuous Prince ought to do, and on those heauenly expectations, which such a Hope yeeldeth. The Diuine Wisedome instructeth vs, *That the nature of a good Tree is to bring forth good Fruite.* All this Royall House of *Bourbon*, issued of Saint *Lewes*, made it selfe famous for Deuotion, and namely, to the *Lilly of the Valleyes*, the Sacred Virgin, Mother to the Sonne of God, tearmed by a Title of Excellencie & Honour: *Lilium Conuallium.* In her this good Prince placed part of his Hope, and next to her, in the Apostle of the French, Saint *Denis*, the *Areopagite*; so speaketh his Chronicle, Chapter 96. and others following.

His workes of Piety and Deuotion

In honour of her, hee founded a Colledge (to perpetuity) of twelue Chanons, at *Nostre Dame de Moulins.* In that of Chartres, the most ancient of Christendome, (dedicated by the wise *Druides*, Priests and Soueraigne Iudges of the ancient *Gaules*, *Virgini Pariturae, To the Virgin that should bring forth the Fruite of Life*) Fiue Hundred Yeares before her Natiuity) a perpetuall Masse. In that at *Paris* another, and two Obits for the dead. At *Nostre Dame d'Orcinall in Auuergne*, where hee offered his Pennon, after his taking *La Roche Sennadoir* another. At *Clugny, Tolosa, Poictiers, Tours,*

Tours; at *Mans*, *Chasteau-Chinon*, and at *Moulins* others. Hee was the Bounder of *Vichy*, and *Souuigny*, where repose the Cinders of the good Duke, dying in his Towne of *Mont-Lucon*; after our Lady day in *August*, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, and Nineteene, hee being Aged Three Score and Thirteene Yeares.

The death & buriall-place of the Duke.

In remembrance then of the succour and hope hee reposed in the prayers of the Queene of Angels: hee tooke for his Warre-Crye, *Nostre Dame, Nostre Dame, Bourbon, Bourbon*, so saith his Chronicle. And vpon the same subiect, hee established in the honour of God, and of the blessed Virgin, his immaculate Mother: *The Order of Knights of our Lady, otherwise called Of the Thistle.*

The Dukes Marriage to the Daulphins Daughter of *Auuergne.*

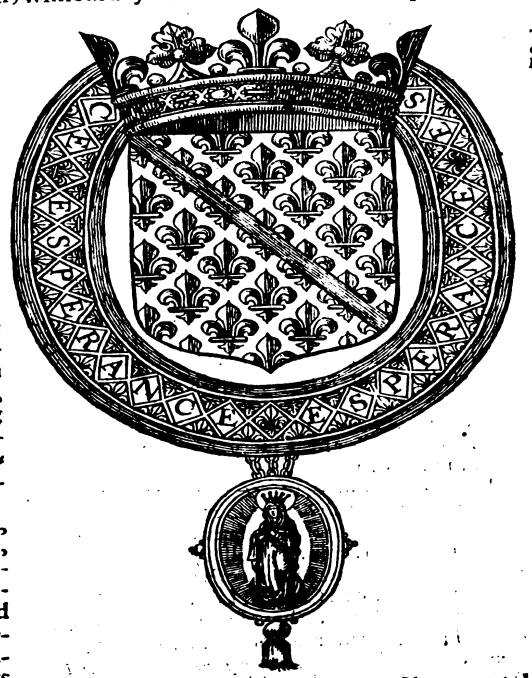
This Institution was made in the Moneth of *Ianuary*, the Yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Three Score and Ten; when he espoused *Anne*, Daughter to the Count Daulphine of *Auuergne* and of *Forests Berauld*, called the *Camus*, in the Towne of *Arde*, belonging to the Daulphine of *Auuergne.* But the first Solemnity was performed at *Nostre Dame de Moulins*, or (according to others) at *Clermont*, vpon Candlemasse day in the same Yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Three Score and Ten.

The time when the Duke Instituted his Order of *Knighthood.*

The number of Knights.

He composed this Order to consist of Sixe and Twenty Knights, (hee and his Successors, Dukes of *Bourbonnois*, comprehended as Chiefes and Soueraignes of the said Order) without any detection of blame or reproch, renowned for Nobility and Valiancy. Dayly they vsed to weare the *Belt* or *Girdle*, being made of Watchet-coloured Velure, lined with Crimson Sattin, bordered with embroydery of Gold, and curiously wrought in the middest of the embroyderie, the word, *Esperance.* It was lockt and made fast with a Buckle and Thong of pure Gold, bearded & checquered with Greene enammeling, like to the head of a Thistle. The Knights of *Bourbõnois* were knowne by the *Girdle*, and distinguished from the French Knights of the *Starre*: Because, in those times then, and a long while after, the Orders of *Bourgongne*, of *Orleans*, and of *Anion* were not thought on, nor Instituted.

The *Belt* or *Girdle* of Knighthood.



By our cõmon account the Eight Day of December.

On sollemne Festiuall dayes, and namely that of the Order, it being the Day of the Conception of our Lady in December: whereon the Duke held this great Hospitality, with open Tables, free for all commers: Then were the Knights cloathed with Cassocks of Carnation Damaske, hauing wide large Sleeues, and girded with the *Blew-Girdle*, before described. The great Mantle or Cloake of Blew

Blew Celestiall-coloured Dammaske, with broad welts of Gold embroydered on the deepe Collar, lined with Red Satin, and the Chapperon or Mantlet of Greene Veluet, whereon they did weare the Great Collar of the Order of pure Gold, the weight of Tenne Markes, fastened with a Buckle and a Tongue of Gold (behind) in the same manner as the Girdle. It was composed of whole Lozanges, and halfe a double Orle, enammeled with Greene, opened like Netting, and there filled with Flower de Luces of Gold, and the Motto or word, *ESPERANCE*, in Antique Capitall Letters, and in each of them a Lozange enammeled with Red. At the bottome of the Collar hung directly on the breast, an Ouall, the Circle enammeled with Greene and Red, wherein was the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, entoured with a Golden Sunne, Crowned with Twelue Siluer Starres, a Crescent of the same vnder her feete, enammeled with Purple and Skye-colour. And at the end of the Ouall, was the head of a Thistle, enammeled with Greene, but bearded with White.

The Great Collar of the Order.

The Bonnet of the Order.

The Hat or Bonnet for the Head, was made of Greene Veluet, at the point of the Band hung a faire Tassell of Crimson Silke and Threeds of Gold, the lining or turning vp was (after the Antique manner) of Crimson Silke, whereon was embroydered the *Golden-Shield*, with the deuised word *Allen*.

Such as are Maisters and Doctors, in the noble Science of Armes and Blazons, doe represent or figure the vertue *Esperance*, or Hope (which the Scripture calleth, *Vltimam post Naufragium tabulam*) with Synople, which is the colour Greene, and by the Stone called an Emerauld, dedicated (if wee will giue credit to Poets) to beautifull *Venus*, the Marke or Symbole of Loue, and of Generation: designed in Armory, by the Element of Water, and by Flowers, Hearbs, and Fruits, Emblazoned ordinarily with Synople, to the Mettals of the Sunne, or of the Moone. For Armes emblazoned otherwise, then naturally they beare, are false, and vncapable of exception for enquiry. The Collar Greene, destinated to the Amorous, was ancientlie called the Hearb-colour, as *Martiall* witnesseth.

The Emerauld dedicated to the Goddesse *Venus*.

Herbarum fueras indutus Basse, colores.

Martiall in Epig.

It was the Liuery of the said Duke of *Bourbon*, wherein hee tooke delight aboue all other, as wearing those Emeraulds in Rings. So that oftentimes dayly and ordenarily at good Feasts, *He would weare a goodly greene Garland on his Head*, his Chronicle telleth vs so. In like manner this Colour is the note of an open heart, of a free Courage, of Gladnesse, Courtesie, and of Gentility. Among all the Stones which Nature affordeth from her fruitfull wombe in the Riuers of the Westerne Indies; there is no one more fitting, or correspondent with the Eye-sight, then the Emerauld, which to make knowne his excellencie and vertue; tarnisheth, yea meerely breaketh of it selfe, being worne by an immodest woman. This is witnessed by *Pliny*, *Theophrastus*, *Albertus Magnus*, and all the other Naturalists. It awaketh and recollecteth the visuall Spirits, which the Diamond and White Colour dispersed and resolued: so are wee taught by the learned Captaine *Xenophon*, in the expedition of *Cyrus*. It was no wonder then if this Duke of *Bourbon*, obserued for the most gentle and courteous Prince, amongst all the rest of his time; made choyce of this Greene Colour for his Liuery, and whereof also were his Banner, Guidon, Pennon, yea and his Cornet.

Commendations attributed to the Greene Colour, but chiefly to the Emerauld, and the vertue thereof.

This Duke caused to bee builded and perfected the Chappell and Hostell of *Bourbon*, neere to the *Louure*, in the Citie of *Paris*. At the top of the principall Pauilion thereof, which looketh ouer the Riuer of *Seine*; is yet at this present to be seene, a little Corridor, or small Gallery, aduanced whollie without the worke. The Balesters and Supporters whereof are of carued Stone, shaped like Lozanges; enterlaced with Antique Capitall Letters, which collected by sense, doe forme the word *Esperance*; and this is the true fashion of the Great Collar of the Order of the *Thistle*. This Corridor is couered with lead, on the top whereof, are exalted the Armes of *Bourbon*, *De France sans nombre au Baston de Gueules Brochant sur le tout*. As is more plainly to bee seene in the Glasse-windowes of the Chappell of *Bourbon*, borne vp and supported by Angels. These Armes on the said Corridor, are couched

The Hostell, and Chappell of *Bourbon* in Paris.

The Armes of *Bourbon*.

couched on the right side, *Et Tymbrees au Mezail Tarre de front*, according as appertaineth to and high an puissant Prince.

Ioyning to the principall body of this Hostel & Pauilion, is a very long Galery, in former times gilded, and enriched with exquisite Paintings: wherfore it was called *The Golden Gallerie*, wherein the Dukes of *Bourbon* vsed ordinarily to walke. At one of the ends vnderneath it, is the great Gate of the Court, belonging to this Hostell of *Bourbon*, which yet to this day is fastened with Battants, nailed with great Nayles of guilded Brasse.

The Duke of *Bourbons* Golden Gallery.

In the middest of those Battants, is to be seene the forme of that ordinary Girdle, which was worne by those Knights of the *Order of the Thistle*: to wit, a large embroydered Girdle, locking or made fast like vnto a Belt or Girthe, with a Buckle and Tongue, bearded and cheequered with Thistle-heads, and vpon both those Girdles in old fashioned Letters or Characters, was embossed the word *Esperance*.

The fashion of the ancient Girdle.

The Steeple likewise of the Chappell of *Bourbon*, is circled and entoured with gilded Lead, formed in the fashion of a Dukes Crowne with *Fourers de Luces*, cheequered with head of Thistles.

And the same ordinary Girdle of the Order of *Bourbon*, is yet apparantly to bee seene, in a Tapestrie belonging to the *Louure*, which long time since I haue seene hung vp on euery *Corpus Christi* day, and in winter, before the dore of the Kings great Chamber.

The ordinary Girdle of *Bourbon*.

It is made in Quarters, as wee vse to say in Armes *Escartelees*. *Le Premier & Quatriesme Quartier sont partis de* Bourbon, & de France. *Le Deux & le Troisiesme de Rouge, chargez chacun de deux Lettres Capitales Cleschees à l'Antique P. & A. & de Tiges & Branches, Entrelassees de Chardons Verds, à la Teste Blanche.* With Blew Girdles lined with red at the Hasps or Buckles, and the ends Cheequie, in the manner of Thistles, with the word *Esperance*.

The Armes described in the Arras.

These Letters *P.* and *A.* and the Armes of *Bourbon* diuided with France, *Sans Brisure*, do make knowne that this Tapestry was made in the time of *Peter*, Second of the name, Duke of *Bourbon*, and Lord of *Beaujeu*, and of his Wife Madame *Anne* of France, Eldest Daughter to King *Lewes* the Eleuenth. Of which Marriage issued the Lady *Susanna de Bourbon*, their only Daughter married to *Charles*, Second of the name, afterwards Duke of *Bourbon* and Constable of *France*, of which Marriage ensued no Children: and the Males of the Eleest Dukes, and of the Counts of *Montpenser* being failed; *Les plaines Armes de Bourbon*, *The plaine Armes of Bourbon*, came to the youngest Counts of *Vendosme*; and the Dutchies and Seigneuries of *Bourbonnois*, *Forez*, *Beaujolois* and others, reunited to the Crowne of France, by the Ciuill death of the said *Charles*, the last Duke of *Bourbon*.

The Antiquety of the Tapestry.

The Order of Bourbon, was sought for, and requested (in regard of honour) by Lords Strangers, who desired to receiue it at the hands of this good Duke *Lewes*, the most valiant and magnanimous Prince of his time. I will heere relate two or three examples, drawne from an infinite number of other.

The loue and respect made of the Order of *Bourbon*.

Bertrand de Guesclin, called *Claiquin* a *Bretone*, Constable of France vnder the Raigne of King *Charles* the Fift, tearmed the *Wise*, (at whose feete this Constable, in regard of the great Seruices hee performed for France, lyeth enterred with the Marshall of *Sancerre*) going to the Siege of *Chastel-naud Randon* in *Gevaudan* (where hee dyed) came to salute the good Duke of *Bourbon*, who gaue him a goodly drinking Cuppe of Gold, enammeled with his Armes: wherein the Duke entreated him that hee would drinke dayly for his sake. Hee gaue him also a *Faire Golden Girdle, very rich, of his Order D'Esperance, which he did put about his necke.* For which the Constable most humbly thanked him, and receiued it very ioyfully, this his Chronicle telleth vs.

Concerning the Constable of France, *Bertrand de Guesclin*.

At the Siege of *Vertueil* (a place held to bee impregnable, considering the seating thereof, being built vpon a most high Rocke, which made it free from all scaling, & brauely defended by a troope of Englishmen, of whom here was the last retreate in the Prouince of *Poictou*,) the Duke of *Bourbon* to become Maister thereof, and to vn-

vnneastle the English thence, was driuen to vndermine it: within which Mine, the Duke himselfe was the formost in Armes against the Squire of the Castle, whom hee heard to bee called aloud, *Regnauld de Montferrand*. Both of them meeting at handy-blowes with their Swords, fiue stroakes one after another, and some among them hearing the blowes, could not containe themselues, but cryed out, *Bourbon, Bourbon, Nostre Dame*, whereat the Squire, *Regnauld de Montferrand* became much amazed, and withdrawing himselfe backward, said. How is this Gentlemen? Is my Lord the Duke of *Bourbon* heere? Yes truely, answered the *Borgne de Veausse*, hee is here himselfe in person.

A Souldier that had but one eye being in the Mine

Hereupon replyed *Regnauld de Montferrand*, saying. I am bound to praise God, who hath this day afforded mee so great grace and honour, to meete heere in Armes with a Prince so valiant. And you *Borgne de Veausse*, tell him, that I desire hee would be so well pleased, as, in this honourable place where he is: *That hee would make mee Knight with his owne hand, for I can neuer haue it giuen mee more Honorably. And for the Valour and honour I haue found in him, I am ready to yeelde him this place.*

Heereon the *Borgne* conferred with the Duke of *Bourbon*, who well perceiuing that all these matters tended to his very great honour; made answer, that hee was well contented to doe it, prouided that *Montferrand* should bring him the keyes to the dore of the Mine. Whereto *Montferrand* condiscended, who gaue them to him, and the keyes being deliuered; *Euen there the Duke himselfe made him Knight.* And *Montferrand* requested of him, that at his departure, he would be pleased to giue him the Prisoners, that had been in the Skirmish, or dyed at *Marueil*. Wherewith the Duke of *Bourbon* was well pleased, and it was appointed that *Montferrand* should surrender vp the Castle the next morning. Moreour it was appointed, that the Knights and Squires which were there with the Duke of *Bourbon*, should (on the Morrow) performe actions of Armes in the Mine, with them of the Castle (one against another) which *Messire Iohn de Laye*, Marshall, kept, to the end, that each man might be pleased with fighting in the Mine.

Regnauld de Montferrand made Knight by the Duke of *Bourbon* in a Mine vnder the ground.

The names of the Knights which went thither for *Bourbon*.

The names of the Squires.

The Knights and Squires which were in Armes with them of the Castle, were the Lord of *Partenay*, the Lord *Cousan*, *Messire Regnauld de Roye*, *Messire Iohn de Chastelmorant*, the *Borgne de Veausse*, the Lord of *Torsaye*, *Messire Guillaume de la Forrest*, *Messire Blain Loup*, Marshall of *Bourbonnois*, *Messire l'Hermite de la Faye*, *Messire Iohn de S. Friet*, called the little Marshall, *Messire Boucicault*. And the Squires were, *Michaille Lagalle*, *Perrin Dussell*, *Blitberis Loup*, *Tachon de Glenier*, *Guicchard le Brun*, and others.

Nor could they performe any other Armes but with their Swords, because the dore and passage was but a foot and an halfe in squareneſſe; yet each man did well execute his duty, one after another, according to the straightnesse of the place, and darke obscurity of the night, when all the Companions returned to their Tents againe.

On the morrow morning the Duke of *Bourbon* sent one of his Marshals, *Messire Iohn de Laye*, to the Castle to *Montferrand*, Lieutenant to *Bartholomew de Montprinat*, who (as yet) was not minded to returne for England, to summon him to surrender the Castle, which hee did yeeld vp according as hee had promised, sallying forth with all his men armed, and very brauely mounted. And comming before the Duke of *Bourbons* Pauilion, where hee was well accompanied with Knights; *Regnauld de Montferrand* alighted, and kneeling before the Duke, said. My most redouted Lord, I doe giue you thankes most humbly, for the goodnesse and honour you haue done vnto me, in being made Knight by the hand of so high and valiant a Prince, as you are. It is an honour done to me, and to all my Linage for euer hereafter.

The Castle of *Partenay* surrendred into the Duke of *Bourbons* hand.

Immediately the Duke thus answered. *Messire Regnauld*, Knighthood is worthily bestowed vpon you, for you are a valiant man, and of good descent. Forthwith the Duke sent for a goodly Courser, which as readily was brought to him, and he bestowed him on *Montferrand*.

The bounty of the Duke to *Montferrand*.

After-

Afterward, *He caused to be brought him, by Messire Guillaume de la Pierre, his Chamberlaine, a Great Golden Girdle, weighing tenne Markes of Siluer*, which hee also gaue to him. For which, *Messire Regnault de Montferrand* returned most hearty thankes, accounting himselfe to be very highly honoured, and said before them all; That hee would neuer arme himselfe, or serue in any place against the Duke of *Bourbon*.

A third History concerning the same Duke of *Bourbon*, and his worthy proceedings in *Sardaigna*.

At returne from the Siege of *Affrica* in *Barbary*, neere to *Thunis*, the Duke and his Caualery went on shoare in *Sardaignia*, where there was a strong Castle, called *Castlle* or *Castlery*, held by the *Sarazens*, which victualled all the Kingdome of *Thunis*. At their arriuall, all the Shippes being in the Hauen, were taken, and (by degrees afterward) the low Towne belonging to the Port or Hauen: and on the morrow the Castle yeelded it selfe, which the Duke gaue in guard to the *Genewayes*. From thence the Duke went to doe as much at *Languillastre*, another well fortified place, where the *Sarazens* victualled themselues; and yet it was likewise giuen in charge to the *Sarazens*. Afterward, by a sodaine guske of winde, tempest, and rough storme, the Duke was transported thence with his Army, and carried into the Ile of *Sicilie*, to *Messina*, a City appertaining to a great Baron of the Countrey, named *Messire Mainfroy*, Lord of *Clermont*. There the Duke remained Eight dayes, to refresh his people, and prepare his Shippes in due and fitting order.

The Lord and authority of *Mainfroy*, Lord of *Clermont*, and his entertainment giuen to the Duke.

This Lord of *Clermont* (ouer & beside *Messina*) had power also ouer *Trapes* (*Derpanum*) distant three Leagues from *Messina* (*Messana*) and ouer *Palermo*, (*Panormus*, and more beside) then halfe the Ile of *Sicily*. Hee was much troubled with the Gout, and hardly could permit himselfe to be conueyed, for receiuing and welcomming the Duke, whom hee caused to be serued by his household attendants, and defrayed all the charges during eight dayes space, so long as hee continued there, with extraordinary great cheare for the Lord Duke himselfe, together with the Lord of *Coucy*, the Count *d'Eu*, and the Count *Daulphine d'Auuergne*. And when the Duke of *Bourbon* was to depart from *Sicilie*, the Lord of *Clermont* requested of him: *That hee would be pleased to make him a Knight*; For a more valiant Prince there could not be; whereupon, the Duke finding himselfe very highly beholding to him, *made him Knight*, for which kindnesse, the Lord of *Clermont* returned him infinite thankes.

The bounty of Lord *Mainfroy*.

At their parting, hee gaue the Duke two goodly Coursers, of the breeding of *Clermont*, neere to *Palermo*. To the Lord of *Coucy* one; to the Counte *Daulphine* one, and to the Count *d'Eu* an other. Also, to the Gallies & Shippes of the *Genewayes*, Wines, Biskets, Salted Flesh & other prouisions, commanding that nothing should bee deare, for furnishing their other vessells, & it was instantly done vpon his commande. When the Duke of *Bourbon* perceiued such acceptable Seruices, performed to him in so remote a Countrey: he tooke them very thankfully at the Lord of *Clermonts* hands. And at his departing, *hee gaue him a Golden Girdle, with the Deuice of his Knighthood, of Esperance.*

A *Golden Girdle* giuen to the Lord of *Clermont*.

I could not compasse the meanes, to get the Names and Qualities of the Knights of the Order of *Bourbon*, and the seuerall Chapters held of them: so much hath goodly and venerable Antiquity (in her wrincles of Age) bin contemned and despised, euen as it is at this present day (like to a woman out of date and service.

Laudamus veteres, sed nostris vtimur annis.

And yet notwithstanding it is a rare Treasure, which ought to be carefully sought for, by such as are true louers of that Science. Wherefore, wee will finish this Discourse, with the Genealogie of the Royall House of *Bourbon*, which hath serued vs for the Frontispice and Subiect of the same.

The Genealogie or Pedigree of the Royall House of *Bourbon*.

Of Monſieur *Robert* of France, and *Beatrix* of *Bourgongne*.

WE haue already ſaid, that of *Monſieur Robert* of France, Count of *Clermont* in *Beauuoiſis*, and of *Beatrix* of *Bourgongne*, there came three Sonnes and as many Daughters. The eldeſt Son was *Lewes* of *Clermont*, called the Great, Firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, *Iohn* of *Clermont*, Baron of *Charolois* in *Bourgongne*, and Lord of Saint *Iuſt* in *Champaigne*, who eſpouſed *Ioane*, Heyre to the Count of *Sanſoins*, & of this Marriage iſſued but one Daughter, *Iane* of *Clermont*, Wife to *Iohn* of *Bologne*, and likewiſe of *Auuergne*: And

Peter of *Clermont*, Great Arch-deacon of the Church of *Paris*. The Daughters were:

Blanche, Wife to *Robert*, the Great Count of *Bologne*, and of *Auuergne*.

Margaret, Wife to *Iohn* of *Flanders*, Count of *Namur*, Sonne to *Guy*, Count of *Flanders*: And

Mary, who became a Nun, at *Poiſſy*.

Son, Brother Vncle & Father of Kings, and yet himſelfe no King.

Monſieur Robert of France, dyed the Seauenth day of *February*, One Thouſand, Three Hundred, and Seauenteene, & lyeth buried at the *Iacobines* of *Paris*.

The firſt Duke of *Bourbon*.

Lewes of *Clermont*, ſtearmed the Great, Firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, tooke to Wife *Mary* of *Henault*, Siſter to the Count of *Henault*, by whom he had three Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

The Eldeſt Sonne was

1. *Peter*, Firſt of the Name, Second Duke of *Bourbon* in Succeſſion.

2. *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Firſt Count of *Charolois*, and *Count de la March*, and of *Penthieu*, Conſtable of France, ſlaine at the Battell of *Poictiers*.

3. *Philip* of *Bourbon*, Lord of *Beaujeu*, deceaſing without any Children.

The Daughters were

1. *Iane* or *Ioane* of *Bourbon*, Wife to *Iohn*, the Eldeſt Sonne of *Iohn*, Count *de Harcourt*.

2. *Mary*, giuen in her firſt Marriage, to *Monſieur Guy* of *Cyprus*, the eldeſt Sonne to *Hugh*, King of *Cyprus*, and of *Hieruſalem*. In this Marriage was borne *Hugh* of *Luſignan*, Prince of *Galilee*. In Second Marriage ſhee was eſpouſed to *Robert*, Prince of *Tarentum*, in the Kingdome of *Naples*, who entituled himſelfe Emperour of *Conſtantinople*. In regard that *Katherine* of *Valois*, Empreſſe of *Conſtantinople*, Second Wife to *Monſieur Philip* of Sicily, Prince of *Tarentum*, and Father of the ſaid *Robert*, had giuen to the ſame *Philip* her Husband, the Right which belonged to her in the Empire of *Greece*, and whereof ſhee had not any enioying.

The laſt Daughter was

3. *Beatrix*, Wife to *Philip*, Eldeſt Sonne to the ſaid *Monſieur Philip* of *Sicily*, Prince of *Tarentum*, the youngeſt Sonne to the Second *Charles* King of *Sicilie*.

Lewes, Firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, dyed the Two and Twentieth day of *Ianuary*, in the Yeare, One Thouſand, Three Hundred, Forty and One; hee alſo lyeth buried at the *Iacobines* of *Paris*.

II. *Peter*, Firſt of the Name, Second Duke of *Bourbon*, tooke to Wife *Iſabell* of *Valois*, Daughter to *Monſieur Charles* of France, Count of *Valois*, Sonne, Brother, Vncle and Father to Kings of France, and yet himſelfe not being a King. In this Marriage hee had one only Sonne, the maine Subiect of this Diſcourſe; & Seauen Daughters, whereof the firſt was.

1. *Ioane* or *Iane* of *Bourbon*, endued with admirable beauty, Wife to King *Charles*, Fift of the Name; of him and of his Wife, the Portraicts (according to the life) are to bee ſeene on the Portall in the Conuent of the Celeſtines at *Paris*.

2. *Blanch*, Wife to the King of *Caſtile*, *Dom Pedro* the Cruell, who made his Wife a Priſoner, and kept Concubines in the liberty of his Conſcience. But death reuenged her wrongs, by meanes of the French, who expelled him out of his Kingdome, and enſtauled in his place *Dom Henry*, Second of the Name.

The Third Daughter was

3. *Bonna*, Wife to *Amades*, Count of *Sauoye*, Sirnamed the Green, in the Chronicle of our Duke *Lewes* the Second.

4. *Katherine*, Wife to *Iohn*, Count of *Harcour*.

5. *Mary*, Wife to *Godfrey*, Sonne to the Duke of *Brabant*.

6. *Margaret*, two ſeuerall times married. Firſt to *Iohn*, the Sonne of *Henry*, Lord of *Suilly*: Laſt to *Arnauld Amanieu*, Lord of *Albret*.

7 Another *Mary*, a profeſſed Nunne at *Poiſſy*.

This *Peter* the firſt, ſecond Duke of *Bourbon*, died in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred fiftie and ſixe, the nineteenth day of September, in the Battaile of *Poictiers*, loſt by King *Iohn*, againſt *Edward* of England, third of the name, and he likewiſe lieth buried at the *Iacobines* of *Paris*.

III. *Lewes*, ſecond of the name, third Duke of *Bourbon* ſtearmed the Good, Author of this diſcourſe, by *Anne* Daulphine his wife, had two Sons, and two Daughters. The Sonnes were *Iohn*, who was Duke after his Father: and *Lewes*, who died yong in the Hoſtell of *Bourbon* at *Paris*. *Iohn* Duke of *Berry* loued this man dearely, for hee was a goodly ſweet Youth, towardly, and of a cheareſull diſpoſition. In regard of this intimate affection towards him, the Duke of *Berry* departed from his Caſtell of *Neſle*, and paſſing the Riuer of *Seine*, entred into *Bourbon*, the Hoſtell of Duke *Lewes*, to comfort him, and when the Duke of *Bourbon* knew that the Duke of *Berry* was there: he well vnderſtood the cauſe of his comming, for then the ſickneſſe of his Sonne began to grow worſe and worſe. And yet although it did ſo, he could not forbeare ſeeing him, as he thought it an article of duetie in him, for the Duke of *Berry* was his great Vncle, and this viſitation of his, was in hope to free him from his ſickneſſe.

But when the Duke of *Berry* ſaw the Duke of *Bourbon*, his heart began to tremble, paſſion preuailing, and his eyes ſtreaming forth teares, that he was not able to vtter one word. Whereupon Duke *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, cauſing him to goe foremoſt, went vp with him into an vpper Chamber, where were many people, & then thus he ſpake to the Duke of *Berry*. My Lord, I thanke you for this louing viſitation, and your compaſſion on my Sonne *Lewes*, who is now gon to God. Well I know, that you are come hither to me, to ſhew me the certainty of your affection; a much meaner Lord had ſuffiſed in this caſe: *But good Bloud neuer is vnmindefull of the naturall loue, which ought to be in one towards another*. Wherfore I tell you my Lord, that this paſſible life, is lodged but as in a Inne or Hoſterie: but the life to come, firme, ſtable, & the dwelling houſe of the Immortall Soule, is the ready way of flying vp to God. For truely my Lord, in mine opinion, the end of liuing is very good, becauſe a man hath found thoughts intire reaſon, and his naturall vnderſtanding ſetled and certaine, for thoſe Offices appertaining to the life of man. And you know my Lord, that Nature, the Mother of all things, hath giuen to vs men habitations, wherein we may dwell together: but ſhe hath giuen vs no houſe for a perpetuall abiding. Wherefore my Lord, ſeeing God hath taken hence my Sonne; it was his pleaſure ſo to doe, for he did but lend him me, he hath made him fit for him, & bleſſed be his name therfore. No doubt he is in better caſe then all his kinred; but Fortune, who bringeth the loftie low, and exalteth the humble, tooke him away ſomewhat too ſoone.

The Duke of *Berry*'s words deliuered by the Duke of *Bourbon*.

The Duke of *Berry*, and all the reſt, hearing theſe words deliuered by the Duke of *Bourbon*, could not abſtaine from teares. But the Duke of *Berry* going down the ſtairs, went with many noble Gentlemen in his company, to the Chamber where the dead Body lay (ready for carrying to the earth) whereto he did a ſeemely honour. And when Duke *Lewes* of *Bourbon* (who was in the Gallerie) beheld the Proceſſions parting from his Houſe, furniſhed with a world of lighted Torches, and the body of his Son lying on the Biere; his tender heart was ready to rift in twaine, and fatherly affection ſtreamed forth at his eyes. Immediately he entred into his Chappel, where he called for his Confeſſor M. *Peter de Chantelle*, a good Diuine, & other Chaplains, who performed the Office for the youth ſo lately departed; all the Knights & Officers of the Hoſtel, admiring at the conſtancie & patience of the Duke their Lord & Maſter.

The Daughters were

Beatrix of *Bourbon*, twiſe maried: Firſt to *Iohn*, the Duke of *Luxembourg*, King of *Bohemia*, & of *Hungaria*, or *Polonia*. And in ſecond Nuptials, to *Eudes*, Lord of *Grancey*.

The ſaid *Lewes*, the good Duke, dyed (as we haue already ſaid) at *Mont-Luſon*, and his Body enterred at *Souuigny*. Hee was once determined, to finiſh his dayes at the *Celeſtines* of *Vichy*, by him founded.

The death of the good Duke of *Bourbon*.

founded: if hee had returned in health from the Voyage of France, which hee vndertooke, comming to helpe his Nephewes the Sonnes of *Orleans*, against *Iohn* of *Bourgongne*, the murtherer of their Father. But he died on the way beginning his iourney.

IIII. *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, First of the name, Fourth Duke of *Bourbon*, tooke to Wife *Mary de Berry*, Daughter to *Monsieur Iohn* of France, Duke of *Berry*, and of *Auuergne*, Count of *Poictou*, and to *Iane*, Daughter to the Count of *Armaignac*. Of this Marriage there issued three Sonnes.

The First Sonne was.

1. *Charles*, First of the name, Duke of *Bourbon*.

2. *Lewes*, Count of *Montpensier*: And

3. *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Bishop of *Puy*, (in Latine *Aucium* in *Auuergne*) and Abbot of *Clugny*.

The said *Iohn*, First of the name, was taken in the Battell at *Azyngcourt*, fought betweene *Hesdin* and *Therouane*, and lost by the French, the Fiue and Twentieth day of October, One Thousand, Foure Hundred and Fifteene. Hee was nineteene yeares prisoner at London in England, where he dyed in the yeare one thousand, foure hūdred, thirty foure.

Next succeeded his Sonne

V. *Charles*, First of the Name, Fift Duke of *Bourbon*, who won the Battell of *Rauge* in *Anion*, against the Duke of *Clarence*, slaine in the Field the Ninth Day of Aprill, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, & Twenty: And in the yeare, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, Twenty Sixe; the said *Charles* espoused *Agnes de Bourgongne*, daughter to *Iohn* the Bad, and Sister to the Duke of *Bourgongne*, *Philip* the Second. In this Marriage were borne Sixe Sonnes, & Fiue Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Iohn*, Second of the name.

2. *Lewes*, dying young vnmarried, albeit betrothed to the Daughter of the King of *Cyprus*.

3. *Peter*, Lord of *Beaujeu*.

4. *Charles*, Cardinall of *Bourbon*, and Archbishop of *Lyons*.

5. *Lewes*, Bishop of *Liege*: And

6. *Iames* of *Bourbon*, dying young at *Bruges*.

The Daughters were

1. *Iane* of *Bourbon*, Wife to the Prince of *Orenge*.

2. *Katherine*, Wife to *Adolph*, Duke of *Gueldres*.

3. *Margaret*, Wife to *Philip* of *Sauoye*, Count *de Breſſe*, and *de Baugie*, afterward Duke of *Sauoye*, Father and Mother to *Louisa* of *Sauoye*, who was the Mother of King *Frances* the First.

4. *Isabel*, who was Wife to the last *Charles*, Duke of *Bourgongne*: And

5. *Mary* of *Bourbon*, who was twice married. First, to *Iohn* Duke of *Calabria*, Sonne to *Rene*, King of *Sicilie*, Duke of *Anion*; The Second time to *Gaſton*, who was Sonne to the Count of *Foix*.

Which *Charles*, First of the Name, was High Chamberlaine of France, and dyed in the Yeare, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, Fifty and Sixe.

After whom succeeded his Eldest Sonne.

VI. *Iohn*, Second of the Name, Sixt Duke of *Bourbon*. In his young yeares hee won the day at *Fourmigny*, against the Englisſh. He was three seuerall times married: First to Madam *Ioane* of *France*, daughter to King *Charles* the Seauenth, Sirnamed the Victorious. His Second Wife was *Katherine* of *Armaignac*, Daughter to *Iames* of *Armaignac*, Duke of *Nemoux*. And his Third Wife was *Iane* of *Bourbon*, daughter to *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Vendoſme*.

The said *Iohn* the Second, Great Chamberlaine of France, dyed, without leauing any Heyres of his Body; so that his Succeſſor was his Third Brother, the Lord of *Beaujeu*.

VII. *Peter*, Second of the Name, Seauenth Duke of *Bourbon*, who tooke to Wife Madame *Anne* of France, Eldest Daughter to King *Lewes* the Eleuenth of the Name, Regent of France, vnder King *Charles* the Eight his Brother. In this Mariage was borne their only Daughter *Suſanna* of *Bourbon*, in whom ended the Ligne of the Males, being the eldest Dukes of *Bourbon*, and Counts of *Montpenſier*, of whom the Appennage was *Clermont* in *Beauuoiſis*, remaining in the houſe of the ſaid Dukes of *Bourbon*, vnto *Peter* the Second, of whom we ſpeake at this preſent.

The

The Second Branch of Bourbon, called of Montpenſier.

§. 2.

VVE haue formerly ſeene and obſerued, that *Iohn*, first of the name, fourth Duke of *Bourbon*, and Count of *Clermont*, had by *Mary* of *Berry* his wife, three Sons, *Charles*, *Lewes* & *Iohn*, Bishop of *Puy*. The Duke of *Berry* being deceaſed without heires maſles, the Dukedome of *Berry* and of *Poictou*, returned to the Crown by the Law of Reuerſion. *Mary* of *Berry* his daughter, inherited the Countie of *Montpenſier*, which Duke *Iohn* of *Bourbon* gaue for an inheritance to his second Son.

1. *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, tearmed of *Montpenſier*, a title taken by his deſcent & linage. This Donation of the ſaid Countie of *Montpenſier*, was confirmed to this *Lewes*, by King *Charles*, ſeauenth of the name, One thouſand foure hundred twentie ſix. *Il porta de Bourbon, comme ſon Pere, mais à la Bordure, de Gueulles pour Brizure*: which are the proper Armes of the ancient houſe of *Montpenſier*. He had two wiues, the first of them was *Ioane* or *Iane Daulphine*, daughter to *Berauld* the yonger *Daulphine* of *Auuergne*; and of a Sister to *Bertrand de la Tour*, Count of *Bologne* and of *Auuergne*, but by her had not any iſſue.

In second marriage hee eſpouſed *Gabriella de la Tour*, by whom he had one only Son, *Gilbert* of *Bourbon*; but diuers daughters, among whom were

Gabriella de Bourbon, wife to *Meſsire Lewes*, Lord *de la Trimouille*: And

Charlotta de Bourbon, wife to the Count *de Bouchain*, *Wolfangus de Bourſelles*.

II. *Gilbert* of *Bourbon*, second Count of *Montpenſier* that conducted the Auant-guard, of the puiſſant Armie of *Charles* the eight, for conquering his Kingdome of *Naples*, whereof hee was the first *Vice-Roye*.

Hetooke to wife *Clare de Gonzagua*, daughter to *Fredericke*, Marqueſſe of *Montferrat*, by whom he had three Sons and two daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Lewes*.

2. *Charles*. And

3. *Frances* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Chaſtelleraud*, slain at the Battaile of *Marignano*, on the day of *Holy-Roode* in September, One thouſand fiue hundred and fifteene, fighting valiantly against the *Swizzers*, who thought to ſurprize King *Frances* the first, and his money.

The Daughters were

1. *Louisa* of *Bourbon*, who was twiſe martied. First to *Andrew de Chauuigny*, by whom ſhe had no iſſue. Her ſecond Husband was *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Prince *de la Roche-ſur-Yon*, whoſe deſcent hereafter will be very remarkeable.

The other Daughter was

2. *Renea* of *Bourbon*, wife to *Anthony* of *Lorraine*, called the good Duke.

The Father of the foreſaid Children, *Gilbert* of *Montpenſier*, being not ſuccoured in due time by *Charles* the eight, with men and monie: was enforced (by the League of Pope *Alexander* the ſixt, the *Venetians* and Potentates of *Italie*) to forſake & leaue the Citie of *Naples* and *Atella*, to *Ferdinand* the second. Vpon condition, that he ſhold furniſh the Gallies, for conueighing him and his men into France. But falſifying his word, hee compelled him to ſtay in a moiſt ſeaſon at *Baies* (a peſtilent place) where he died, & was enterred at *Pouzzoli*. Where likewiſe (within ſome few years after) vpon the Sepulcher of his Father, died *Lewes* his eldeſt Sonne, in extremity of paſſion, ſighes & teares, and lieth buried by his Father: thus we are told by *Guichardine*.

So that by the death of *Lewes* the eldeſt *Charles* of *Bourbon*, the ſecond Sonne, was Count of *Montpenſier*, Conſtable of France, and Duke of *Bourbon*.

He eſpouſed *Suſanna* of *Bourbon*, the onely Daughter and ſole heire of *Peter*, ſecond of the name, laſt Duke of *Bourbon*; And in right of the ſaid *Suſanna* his wife he was Duke of *Bourbon*, but ſhee dyed without any Children.

Afterward, the ſaid *Charles* was moued againe to marriage, with Madam *Louiſa* of *Sauoye*, Mother to King *Frances* the first: who being refuſed (according to the naturall diſpoſition of her ſexe) ſplit all in pieces to compaſſe her will: *Flectere ſi nequeo Superos, Acherōt a mouebo*

All his goods being brought to compromiſe, & afterward ſentenced by decree; this poore Prince became deboſhed, & feeding on the promiſes of a Soueraigne power: tooke part with the coniured enemie of France, who to be rid of him: in meere charitie, ſent him before Rome, to finiſh both his honor and life by the ſhot of an Harquebuze, diſcharged by a follower of his owne, the

ſixt

sixt day of May, One thousand fiue hundred twentie seauen. His body was carried to *Chasteau de Gaycte*, where he had this Spanish Epitaph for al his recõpence.

Franzis me dio la Luce,
Spagna fuerca, y Ventura,
Roma me dio la Muerte,
Gaete la Sepoltura.

By this aduenture, the goods of the said *Charles* of *Bourbon* became confiscated, to serue (euen to this day) for assurance of Dowries to the Queenes of France. Before that time, the Princes of this royall House, speaking to the King, or in writing, said *Monsieur*, and couered themselues in his presence: But since then, they haue vsed the name of *Sir*, as well as others, and stand bare headed.

In this *Charles*, the last Duke of *Bourbon*, the Ligne failed of the eldest of *Bourbon*, in the Sir-name of *Clermont* in *Beauuoisis*, the Appennage of *Monsieur Robert* of France, Sonne to the King Saint *Lewes*. So that we must now needes reascend, and take the Ligne of *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la March*, second Son to *Lewes* of *Clermont*, called the Great, first Duke of *Burbon*, Sonne to the said *Monsieur Robert* of France.

The Third Branch of Bourbon, called *Of Vendosme.*

§. 3.

I*Ames* of *Bourbon*, second Son to *Lewes* the Great, first Duke of *Bourbon*; was Count *de la March*, of *Ponthieu*, and of *Charolois*, as also Constable of France. He had to wife *Ione*, or *Ioane* of Saint *Paule*, of the House, name and Armes of *Luxembourg*: by whom hee had three Sons, and two Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Peter.*
2. *Iohn.* And
3. *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Lord of *Preaux*, and of *Vebaine*, who died at *Rochell*, kilde with the fall of a Plancher of the Chamber, where King *Charles* the seauenth held his Counsell, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred twentie two. This *Iames* left foure Sons; *Lewes*, slaine at the Battaile of *Azincourt*, one thousand foure hundred and fifteene: *Peter*, *Iames* and *Charles* of *Bourbõ*, who had not any issue.

The Daughters were

1. *Katharine*, wife to *Bouchard*, second of the name, Count of *Vendosme*. And
2. *Isabel*, Wife to *Lewes*, Viscount of *Beaumont*.

Iames of *Bourbon* before named, and *Peter* his eldest Sonne, were slaine on the skirmish day of *Brignaies*, three Leagues from *Lyons*, by the gathered troupes of French and English, Malecontents of the Countrey, who vnder the name of *Tard-Venus*, to the number of fifteene or sixeteene thousand, intended to forrage all ouer France, the third day of Aprill, in the yeare One thousand three hundred threescore and one.

So that the Succession fell to the Second Sonne.

II. *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la Marche*, who espoused *Katharine*, Heire of the House of *Vendosme*. In which marriage was borne three Sonnes, and two Daughters, the first whereof was

1. *Anne*, that twise ioyned in marriage. First with *Iohn de Berry*, Count of *Montpensier*, Sonne to *Monsieur Iohn* of France, Duke of *Berry*: And in second marriage, with *Lewes*, Count *Palatin* of the *Rhine*, Duke in *Bauaria*.

The other Daughter was

2. *Mary*, wife to *Messire Iohn de Beym* Lord of *Croix*.

The Sonnes were

1. *Iames.*
2. *Lewes.* And
3. *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Lord *de l'Esclusc* neere *Dowaye*, *Carency*, *Busquoy* and *Duysant* in *Artois*. Hee married *Katharine* of *Artois*, Daughter to *Robert* of *Artois*, third of the name, Count of *Beaumont*. By whom hee had foure Sonnes, and one Daughter.

The Sonnes were

1. *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Lord of *Esclusc*, who deceased, not being married.
2. *Peter*, who espoused Madam *Philip de Plaine*, and by her had not any issue.
3. *Iames.* And
4. *Phillip* of *Bourbon.* The Daughter *Mary* of *Bourbon*, wife to *Messire Iohn de Croy.*
5. *Phillip*, last Sonne of *Iohn*, was Lord of *Duysant*, and married twise. First to *Ioane de l'Alain*, Daughter to *Saulx de l'Alain*, Lord of *Roberset*, and

and by her he had a Son and a Daughter.

The Sonne was named

Anthony of *Bourbon*, husband to *Iane de Habarch*, of which marriage came *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, dying before hee was married.

The Daughter was

Ioane or *Iane* of *Bourbon*, wife to *Messire Frances Roulin*, Lord *Beauchamp*.

The other wife to the said *Phillip* of *Bourbon*, was *Iane de Chauuigny*, Lady of Saint *Germain des Fossez sur Allier*, hauing no issue

3. *Iames* the third Sonne, was Lord of *Aubigny* and of *Rochefort*, he tooke to wife *Anthonnetta de la Tour*, Widdow to the Lord of *Monteil*. Of this marriage issued *Charles* of *Bourbon*, Lord of *Carency*, & *Iohn* Lord of *Aubigny*, dying without children.

Charles of *Bourbon* tooke to wife *Katharine d'Allegre*, Daughter to *Bertrand d'Allegre*, Baron of *Puy-agur*.

Of this marriage came *Bertrand*, and *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Father to *Isabel* of *Bourbon*, wife to *Messire Frances d'Esturs*, Lord *de la Veu-Guyon*, of whom came no linage.

Bertrand left not any issue. So that the descent of the said *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, last and third Son of *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la Marche*, and of *Katharine*, Countesse of *Vendosme*, is ended in Daughters.

Let vs now returne to his eldest Son.

III. *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la Marche* (second Son of the name of this Branch) and of *Castres*; was the very goodliest Prince among them all of his time. Whereupon, he was earnestly desired in mariage by *Ianella* or *Ianetta*, second of the name, Queene of *Naples*: from whom hee seperated himselfe, by reason of her incontinent and dishonest life, not hauing any issue by her. In second marriage he espoused Madam *Bertrix* of *Nauarre*, Daughter to King *Charles* the Noble, third of the name, and by her hee had Daughters, one of them named

Eleanor of *Burbon*, was married to *Bernard* of *Armaignac*, Count of *Perdriac*.

This King *Iames*, for so was hee named, deceasing without heires masle; the right of Primogeniture went to his yongest Brother

IIII. *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Vendosme*, by the right of his Mother. *Il porta de Bourbon au Bastion de Gueulles, charge de Vendosme, qui estoit de Gueulles à trois Lyons rampants d'Argent.* He had two wiues, the first whereof was *Ioane de Rotussy*, Daughter to *Rodolphe*, Count of *Montfort*, and *Anne de Montmorency*, but by her he had no childe. The second was *Iane*, Daughter to *Cuye*, Count of *Guare* (there is a *Guare* in *Normandie*, and a *Guare* in *Gascoignie*, betweene *Auch* and *Tolosa*, the Capitall Citie whereof is *Gimont*, seated on the River of *Gimona*) and to *Mary*, daughter of *Enguerran*, Lord of *Coucy*. And by this second wife he had

Lewes, second of the name, Count of *Vendosme* after his Father.

In the Church of *Chartres*, built (as it is) by the learned Bishop *Fulbert*, Chauncellar of France to King *Robert* the *Deuout*, Sonne of *Hugh Capet*, very fairely without: in the South-side of the body thereof, is to be seene the Chappell of *Vendosme*, called the *Annuntiation of our Lady*, becausc vpon the Altar, is the Image of the *Annuntiation*. Before which, against the wall, is the Statue raised in embossed worke of Stone, of the said *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Vendosme*, first of the name, and Founder thereof, standing in a long Red Roabe and Chapperon, Furred about the neckc, as are the Presidents *du Mortier* in the Parliament of *Paris*: For so (in elder times) were habited the Princes and great Lords of France. By him is the figure of his Wife, cloathed after the Antique manner. In the Glasse window of the said Chappell, are the Portraitures of this *Lewes*, Count of *Vendosme*, and of his Wife, with their Sons and yonger Sons, with their Wiues and descendants; distinguished by their Armes each from other.

The Charter for the foundation of this Chappell, being in the Treasurie of the Church, beareth date the second day of Iune, One thousand foure hundred and thirteene. And therein is declared, that the Vigile of the *Ascention*, being the last day of the Moneth of May in the same yeare, when the discreete and venerable men of the Chapter and Colledge, belonging to the Church of *Chartres*, made their ordenary and accustomed Procession: the most Noble and potent Princes, the Lord

Lewes

Lewes, Count of *Vendosme*, Lord of *Espernon* and *Mondoubleau*, meeting the said Procession without *La Porte des Espars*, alighted from his Horse, he and his followers, and holpe to conuey the Procession by the Churches of Saint *Sernin*, and Saint *Forth*, euen into the Cathedrall, where the same day he heard the whole diuine Seruice.

Our Lady of *Chartres*.

And on the morrow, early in the morning, being the Feast of the *Ascention*, at the ending of Mattines, the deuout Prince, to accomplish the vowe of his Pilgrimage, by him made to *Nostre-Dame de Chartres*; went starke naked to the said Church. And so soone as he came to *Porte Royale*, he fell on his knees before the Sacred Virgin, holding in his hand a great Waxe Candle, weighing fiftie pounds or there about. And hauing ended his Prayers, hee addressed his speeches to the Chapter of the Church, being come before him: desiring them, that they would giue praise and thankes to the most Sacred Virgin, the Soueraign Lady of *Chartres*, by whose especiall fauour and contemplation, hee had receiued many great graces and benefits, in deliuering him from his aduersaries and enemies, who had detained him prisoner nine or tenne moneths space, compelling him to forgoe his goods and riches. But on the day and Festiuall of the Annuntiation of the said Virgin, without any spot or blemish; *Adoring and seruing her, in her Church of Chartres, where he deuoutly vowed himselfe to her, and implored her ayde and succour*; contrarie to all hope or helpe in men, hee was deliuered, and his goods restored againe vnto him.

Whereupon he did both acknowledge and auouch freely, that he held his deliuerance onely by her, and was reestablished into his goods and meanes, by grace and fauour of that most Sacred Virgin. Wherefore, in eternall memory thereof, he declared before God, and our Lady of *Chartres*, that he both then did, and for euer would dedicate himselfe in person, *A man Subiect and Vassaile to the glorious Virgin Mary, and also to her Church of Chartres*.

Hereupon the Chapter made answere, that they commended him, and humbly thanked the glorious Virgin, for the exceeding great Graces shee had extended to him. And conducting the Prince before the Image of the Virgin, they then sung this Hymne, which the Prince told them (in a perticuler deuotion) he had alwayes ready in his minde. *O quam glorifica luce coruscas*, and namely to this Verse; *Quem cunctus veneratus Orbis adorat*. Which Prayer being sung by the Chapter, and the deuout Prince hauing finished his Meditations: hee offred the great Waxe Taper, which hee held in his hands, and an hundred other Tapers, held by the Knights, Esquires and Seruants of his House. And so departed the Chapter and the Prince.

The very same day, somewhat before high-Masse, the said Prince of *Vendosme*, hauing caused the Chapter to be assembled; he made vnto them a most ample relation, of the fauours and benefits he had receiued from the Virgin *Mary*; for which he would be thankfull according to his possibility, and leaue testimony thereof to future posteritie: which to effect answerably to his desire, most affectionately he entreated the same Chapter, that both in his life time, and afterward to perpetuitie: the morrow after the fiue Festiuals of the Virgin *Mary*, to wit, *The Assumption, Natuitie, Conception, Purification* and *Annuntiation*, they would performe most solemne Services, namely, *A Masse, Procession, with Copes Organes, Loude Instruments & Singing*, euen as it was done on the same dayes of the Feasts.

That there might be likewise good store of Lights about the Altar and the Hearse, and at High-Masse, to say a perticuler Prayer for him: *Deus qui iustificas impium* during his life time, and after his death, the Prayer said at the end of the Procession. And when the said Chapter should come by the Chappell of the *Annuntiation*, there to say and sing *De profundis*, with the Prayer *Inclina Domine*, and cast holy water vpon his Tombe, especially where his heart did lye.

For performing and celebrating these Seruices, hee promised, and thereto bound himselfe, to assesse and assigne to the said Church of *Chartres*, as a yearely paiment to perpetuitie, the sum of threescore & fiue pounds *Tournois* of Rent, in monies comming freely as a quit Rent, thirteen pounds *Tournois* at each of the said annual feasts.

More-

Moreouer, he founded one solemne Masse yearely in the said Church, to be celebrated in honor of the Sacred Virgin, the last Saturday before Aduent, so long as he liued. And after his death, the said Masse should be changed into an *Obit*, and Seruice for the dead, the same day as the same Prince of *Vendosme* should decease. For the Foundation of this Masse and *Obit*; hee bound himselfe to pay yearely on the same day eight pounds. Which the Chapter accepted, seconding the deuotion of this great Prince; to be a true imitator of S. *Lewes*, and of the good Duke of *Bourbon Lewes*, Second of the name, his most famous Grandfathers.

Beside the said Foundations of *Lewes*, Duke of *Bourbon*, Count of *Vendosme*; his Successours haue continued fatherly deuotion towards the holy Virgin, honored perticularly in her Church of *Chartres*. Wherein the Counts and Lords of *Vendosme*, principall Parishioners and Diocessanes there: haue (for the spirituall direction of their *Vendosinois* Countrie) an Archdeacon, stiled of *Vendosme*.

V. *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Vendosme*, Great Maister of France, espoused *Ioane* of *Laual*; and had by her one onely Sonne, named

John of *Bourbon*, the Father of whom died (in the time of *Lewes* the twelfth) aged foureseo e yeares and aboue, the fifteenth day of March, One thousand fiue hundred and three.

VI. *John* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Vendosme*, espoused *Ione de Beauuau*, daughter to the Lord of *Precigny*: by whom he had two Sons, and fixe daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Frances* of *Bourbon*: And
2. *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Prince *de la Roche sur-Yon*, who deuided in twaine this Branch of *Vendosme*.

The Daughters were

1. *Ione* of *Bourbon*, who was three seuerall times maried. First, to *John*, Duke of *Bourbon*, second of the name. The second husband was *John*, Count of *Bologne* and of *Auuergne*, Baron *de la Tour*. And in her third Nuptials, to *Messire Frances de la Fausse*, Baron *de la Garde*, *de Font*, Lord of *Chasselles*.
2. *Katharine*, wife to *Messire Gilbert de Chabannes*, Lord of *Roche-fort*. Another
3. *Ioane*, wife to *Messire Lewes de Ioyeuse*.
4. *Charlotta*, wife to *Engilbert de Cleues* Count *de Neuers*.
5. *Renea*, first Abbesse of *Xainctes*, and afterward of *Font-Euraud*: And
6. *Isabell* of *Bourbon*, Abbesse of *Caen*.

John of *Bourbon* died immediately after his Father, a Prince that liued a very long Age.

VII. *Frances* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Vendosme*, married *Mary* of *Luxembourg*, of whom he begot foure sons, and two Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Charles*.
2. *James* of *Bourbon*, who died an Infant.
3. *Lewes* Cardinall of *Bourbon*: And
4. *Frances* of *Bourbon*, Duke *d'Estoute-Ville*, Count of Saint *Paule*: who tooke to wife *Adriana*, the heire of *Estoute-Ville* by whom he had one Sonne

Frances of *Bourbon*, dying before hee was maried, and a Daughter

Mary of *Bourbon*, who was thrise married. First to *John* of *Bourbon*, Lord *d'Anguien*. Secondly, to *Frances*, Duke of *Neuers*, and of these came not any issue. In third mariage she espoused *Oleonor*, Duke of *Longue-Ville*, by whom she had a Son and a Daughter.

The Daughters of *Frances* of *Bourbon*, and of *Mary* of *Luxembourg*, were

1. *Anthoinetta de Bourbon*, wife to *Claudius* of *Lorraine*, first Duke of *Guise*. And
2. *Louisa de Bourbon*, Abbesse of *Font-Euraud*. The said *Frances* died at *Vercelles* (returning from the voyage of *Naples*, with *Charles* the eight) the second day of July, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred nintie nine.

We haue already told you, that the children of *John* of *Bourbon*, deuided in twaine the branch of *Vendosme*. Let vs first passe with the yongest, and afterward speake more at large of the eldest.

Lewes of *Bourbon*, Prince *de la Roche sur-Yon*, had to wife *Louisa de Bourbon*, eldest Daughter to *Gilbert* of *Bourbon*, Count *de Mont-pensier*: And by the meanes of this marriage, *Mont-pensier* came to the third Branch of *Bourbon*. Of this marriage issued two Sonnes, and a Daughter.

The Sonnes were

1. *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, first Duke of *Mont-*

Mont-penſier: And

2. *Charles*, Prince *de la Roche ſur-Yon*.

The Daughter, was

Suſanna of *Bourbon*, wife to the Lord of *Rieux*.

Lewes of *Bourbon*, firſt Duke of *Mont-penſier*, tooke to wife *Iaquelina de Long-Vy*, and by her had a Sonne.

Frances of *Bourbon*: and fiue daughters, the moſt part of them Nunnes, to wit:

1. *Frances*, wife to *Henry Robert de la Marke*, Duke of *Bouillon*, and Lord of *Sedan*.

2. *Anne*, wife to *Henry de Cleues*, Duke of *Neuers*.

3. *Charlotta*, Lady Abbeſſe of *Iouerre*.

4. *Ione*; And

5. *Louiſa*, Nuns, and afterward Lady Abbeſſes at *Font-Euraud*.

Frances of *Bourbon*, ſecond Duke of *Mont-penſier*, Prince *Daulphine d'Auuergne* (the Armes of this *Daulphine d'Auuergne*, are like to thoſe of the *Daulphine* of *Viennois*, *D'Or au Daulphine Paſme pers*) eſpouſed the Heire *de Meſiere*, named *Mary*, by whom hee had a Sonne.

Henry of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Mont-penſier*, *de S. Fargeau*, and *de Chaſtelerand*, Soueraigne of *Dombes*, *Daulphine d'Auuergne*, Prince *de la Roche ſur-yon*, &c. who tooke to wife *Katharina Henrietta de Ioyenſe*, onely Heire to the rich houſe of *Ioyenſe*, Daughter to *Henry*, Duke *de Ioyenſe*, Count *de Bouchage*, &c. And of this marriage enſued no iſſue, but a Daughter, the very richeſt Heire of France.

Mary of *Bourbon*, aſſured in the life time of her Father, to *Monſieur d'Orleans* ſecond Sonne to King *Henry* the Great, fourth of the name, of famous memorie.

By the death of the ſaid *Henry* of *Bourbon*, the third & laſt Duke of *Mont-penſier*, happening the eight and twentieth day of February, in the yeare One thouſand ſixe hundred and eight, this houſe of *Mont-penſier* fell the ſecond time to the Female Ligne. Let vs now ſuruay that *De la Roche ſur-Yon*.

Charles of *Bourbon*, Prince *de la Roche ſur-Yon*, yongeſt Brother to *Lewes* firſt Duke of *Mont-penſier*; had to wife *Philip de Monteſpedon*, by whom hee had a Sonne and a Daughter.

Henry: And

Ioane of *Bourbon*, both of them dying yong. Come we now to the eldeſt.

VIII. *Charles* of *Bourbon* (eldeſt Sonne to *Frances* of *Bourbon*, and *Mary* of *Luxembourg*) firſt Duke of *Vendoſme*.

Hee eſpouſed *Frances d'Alanſon*, Daughter to *Rene*, Duke of *Alanſon*, Siſter to *Charles* the laſt Duke of *Alanſon*, deſcended from Father to Sonne, of *Charles de Valois*, Count *d'Alanſon*, ſecond Sonne to *Monſieur Charles* of France.

This *Charles de Valois*, and his deſcendants of *Alanſon*, *Porterent de France, à la Bordure de Gueulles, chargee de Huict Bezans d'Argent*. And this *Charles*, laſt Duke of *Alanſon*, was the firſt Husband to Madame *Margaret de Valois*, Siſter to King *Frances*, firſt of the name: who in ſecond Nuptials married *Henry d'Albret* King of *Nauarre*, ſecond of the name.

In this marriage of *Charles*, firſt Duke of *Vendoſme*, with *Frances d'Alanſon*, were borne ſeauen Sonnes and ſixe Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Lewes*, who died yong.

2. *Anthony*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and King of *Nauarre*.

3. *Frances*, Lord of *Anguien*, dying yong.

4. *Lewes* dying yong.

5. *Charles*, Cardinall of *Bourbon*, and Archbiſhop of *Rouen*.

6. *Iohn*, Lord of *Anguien*; who married with *Mary* of *Bourbon*, Ducheſſe *de Eſloute-Ville*, dying without iſſue at the Battaile of Saint *Quentins*. And

7. *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Prince of *Conde*.

The Daughters were

1. *Mary*, deceaſed vnmaried, albeit twiſe aſſured.

2. *Margaret*, wife to *Frances* of *Cleues*, Duke of *Neuers*.

3. *Katherine*, Lady Abbeſſe of *Soiſſons*.

4. *Magdalen*, Abbeſſe of Saint *Croix* at *Poictiers*.

5. *Renea*, Abbeſſe of *Chelles*: And

6. *Eleanor*, Abbeſſe of *Font-Euraud*.

Lewes of *Bourbon*, Prince of *Conde*, the laſt Sonne, was twiſe married. Firſt, to the Counteſſe *de Roucy*, *Eleanor de Roye*: & by

by her he had foure Sonnes, and three Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Henry*, Marqueſſe of *Conty*, afterward Prince of *Conde*.

2. *Frances*, Marqueſſe, after Prince of *Conde*.

3. *Charles*, Cardinall of *Vendoſme*, afterward of *Bourbon*, called the yonger (for difference from *Charles* the Cardinall, his Vncle) Archbiſhop of *Rouen*: And

4. *Lewes*, a twin-Brother with *Charles* that died yong.

The Daughters were

1. *Katharine*.

2. *Margaret*. And

3. *Magdalen*.

In ſecond marriage hee had *Frances of Orleans*, the Daughter of *Longue-Ville*; by whom hee had three Sonnes.

1. *Charles* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Suiſſons*.

2. *Lewes*. And

3. *Beniamin*, all of them dying yong.

Henry, Prince of *Conde*, eldeſt Sonne to *Lewes*, had likewiſe two Wiues. The firſt, *Mary* of *Cleues*, Lady Marqueſſe of the Iſles, Daughter to *Frances* of *Neuers*, by whom he had but one Daughter

Katharine of *Bourbon*.

Deceaſing before ſhe was married, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred fourefcore and ſixteene.

In ſecond Wedlocke he married *Katharine Charlotta de la Trimouille*, by whom hee had a Sonne and a Daughter.

The Daughter was named

Eleanor of *Bourbon*, who in the month of February, One thouſand ſix hundred and foure, married with *Philibert* of *Naſſau*, Prince *d'Orenge*.

The Sonne was

Henry of *Bourbon*, firſt Prince of the Bloud, and firſt Peere of France, Prince of *Conde*, Duke *d Anguien* and *de Chaſteau-Raoull*, Count of *Clermont* in *Beauuaiſis*, &c. Borne at S. *Iohn d'Angely* after the death of his Father, the firſt day of September, One thouſand fiue hundred and nine, he eſpouſed *Margaret Charlotta de Montmorency*, Daughter to *Meſsire Henry de Montmorency*, Conſtable of France.

Frances, of *Bourbon*, Prince of *Conty*, had two Wiues. The firſt was Widdow to the Count of *Montaffier*, by whom hee had no childe. In ſecond marriage hee eſpouſed *Katharine* of *Lorraine*, Daughter to *Henry*, Duke of *Guiſe*: by whom hee had a Daughter, which liued but eight dayes. He dyed in the Abbatiall Hoſtell of Sant *Germaine des Prex lez Paris*, on Sunday, being the third of *Auguſt*, One thouſand ſixe hundred and foureteene.

Charles of *Bourbon*, Count *de Soiſſons*, and Great Maiſter of France, Sonne of the laſt bed to *Lewes*, Prince of *Conde*, and of *Frances d'Orleans*, maried the heire Counteſſe of *Montafier*, by whom he had one onely Sonne

Lewes of *Bourbon*, Count of *Soiſſons*, a Prince of great hope by his good breeding.

And three Daughters.

The ſaid *Charles* died on the day of All-Saints, One thouſand ſixe hundred and twelue, in his Caſtell of *Blandy*, neere to *Fontaine-Bleud*. Now goe wee to the eldeſt Branch of *Vendoſme*.

Anthony of *Bourbon*, firſt Prince of the Bloud, and Prime Peere of France, Duke of *Vendoſme*; eſpouſed *Ione* or *Ioane* of *Nauarre*, the onely Daughter to *Henry*, King of *Nauarre*, ſecond of the name, Soueraigne of *Bearne*, Duke *d'Albret*, Count of *Foix* and of *Begorre*: and of *Margaret de Valois*, Siſter to King *Frances* the firſt. Which Quéene of *Nauarre*, *Margaret* dyed of a Pleureſie, at the ſmall Caſtell of *Audas*, neere to *Tarbes* in *Begor*, in December, One thouſand fiue hundred forty nine. By her death, the Duchie of *Alanſon* and *Berry*, which ſhe held by the liberalitie of King *Frances* her Brother, returned to the Crowne of France, the Countie of *Armaignac* remaining impropriate to the Heire of *Nauarre*.

In this marriage was borne fiue Children, to wit

1. *Henry*, Duke *de Beaumont*, who liued but three and twentie Moneths.

2. *Henry*, Count of *Armaignac*, afterward King of France, and of *Na-*

uarre, Fourth of the name, *Henry* the Great.

3. *Katharine* wife to *Henry* of *Lorraine* Duke *de Bar*, who died without any liuinage at *Nancy*, in the moneth of March, fixe hundred and foure.

4. *Lewes Charles*, who died in his swadling cloathes. And

5. A Daughter, that died before Baptisme.

King *Henry* his Grandfather being deceased at his place of *Agetman* in *Bearne*, the fiue and twentieth day of May, One thousand fiue hundred fiftie and fiue: *Iane* his onely Daughter, and *Anthony* of *Bourbon* her Husband, succeeded in the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, taking both the Armes and Title thereof.

King *Anthony* was slain at the Siedge of *Rouen* with an Harquebuze, the One and twentieth day of October, One thousand fiue hundred threescore and two: And Queene *Iane* died at *Paris*, the tenth day of Iune, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred threescore and twelue.

Henry of *Bourbon*, King of France, fourth of the name, and of *Nauarre*, third of the name; was twise maried. First to Madam *Margaret* of France, Duchesse of *Valois*, Countesse of *Auuergne*, of *Lauregais*, &c. Daughter to the King of France, *Henry*, second of the name: from whom hee was seperated by the Buls of Pope *Clement*, eight of the name, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred, the fift day of October. He espoused in second marriage Madam *Mary* of *Florence*, Daughter to *Francis de Medicis*, the Great Duke of *Tuscane*: And in this marriage was borne three Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

1. *Lewes*, *Daulphine* of *Viennois*.

2. *N.* Duke of *Orleans*, dying yong.

3. *Gaston Iohn Baptista* of France, Duke of *Anion*, of *Valois*, Count of *Auuergne*, *Lauregais*, &c.

The Daughters were these Ladies.

1. Madam *Elizabeth* of France, wife to *Phillip* the fourth, Prince of Spaine, eldest Son to the King of Spaine, *Dom Phillip*, third of the name.

2. *Christina*.

3. *N.* A third Daughter.

King *Henry* the fourth, called the Great, dyed at *Paris* on Friday, being the foureteenth day of May, in the yeare One thousand fixe hundred and tenne; After whom succeeded his eldest Sonne

Lewes, King of France the thirteenth, and of *Nauarre* second of the name, who married in the Moneth of October, One thousand fixe hundred and fifteene, in the Citie of *Bourdeaux* Madam *Anne* of Spaine, eldest Daughter to the King of Spaine *Dom Phillip*, third of the name. To which *Lewes* our King, God giue long and happy life, *Vita & Victoria*.

The

The Order of Aniou, called of the Crescent or Halfe-Moone, Instituted in the Citie of *Angiers*, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred threescore and foure.

CHAP. XII.

L'Ordre D'Anjou Dit Du Croissant.

Oncerning the first Branch of *Aniou*, the vsuall or ordenary stile and title, which is giuen to the third Sonne of the most-Christian Kings, was begun by *Monsieur Charles* of France, the fift Sonne of King *Lewes*, Eight of the name, Sir-named of *Mont-Pensier*, Father to the good King Saint *Lewes*, and to *Blanch* of *Castile*, daughter to *Alphonso*, eight of the name, King of *Castile*, and Queene *Eleanor*, daughter to *Henry* the second, King of *England*.

Monsieur Charles of France, had for his portion or Appennage, the Counties of *Anion*, and of *Maine*, and in the right of *Beatrix* his wife by his first marriage, fourth daughter to *Raimond*, Count of *Prouence*, and to *Beatrix*, daughter to the Count of *Sauoye*, he was Count of *Prouence*. And by Pope *Vrbane*, Fourth of that name, he was inuested with the Kingdomes of *Naples*, and of *Sicilie*. Nor is this first Branch any otherwise the subiect of this discourse: but onely to serue as a preamble and direction, for speaking the better and more aptly, in the true vnderstanding of the auncient rights and prerogatiues of the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, appertaining or belonging to the house of *Aniou*.

The first Duke of Anion and Count of Maine.

The second Branch whereof, deriued their stemme or originall and roote from *Monsieur Lewes* of France, second and onely Sonne to King *Iohn*, and Madam *Bonna* of *Behemia* (whom our auncient Chroniclers doe call *Behaigne*) daughter to the King of *Behemia*, and was made the first Duke of *Aniou*, and Count of *Maine*, Seigneuries which he had for his portion and inheritance. He bare the same Coate of Armes, as *Charles* of France did, Author of the first Branch of *Aniou*, which was *de France L'Orle & Bordure de Gueulles*, and the same are the Armes of the Branch of *Valois*, which did hold the Crowne of France, euer since *Phillip de Valois*, vnto King *Henry*, third of the name, of famous memorie.

Lewes the adopted Sonne to Iane the Queen of Naples & Sicille.

Monsieur Lewes of France, was adopted Sonne of *Iane* or *Ioane*, Queene of *Naples* and of *Sicilie*, and was inuested with the said Kingdomes in *Auignion*, in the Countie of *Vensse*, by Pope *Clement*, sixt of the name. Hee tooke to wife *Mary*, daughter to *Charles de Blois*, and to *Iane* of *Bretaigne*, called *La Clope*, that is to say, *The Lame*, or *The Cripple* (for in the old French Language, *Clopin* is tearmed Halting, Limping, or going Lamely, *Inde Club-footed*, as when one legge is shorter then the other.) By her he had a daughter, *Yoland*, first wife to *Francis*, first of the name, Duke of Bretaigne, and afterward two Sonnes. The yongest was *Monsieur Charles* of France, Prince of *Tarentum*. The said *Lewes* of France, King of Naples and of Sicilie, lieth at *Bisegle*, in the Kingdome of Naples, deceasing the twentieth day of September, in the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and foure, and after him succeeded his eldest Sonne.

Lewes of France King of Naples and Sicilie.

Lewes, second of the name, King of *Naples* and of *Sicilie*, who had to wife *Yoland*, daughter to *Dom Iohn*, King of *Arragon*, first of the name, and to *Yoland de Bar*, daughter to King *Charles*, called the *Wise*. Of this marriage issued three Sonnes, and one daughter, which was *Mary* of Sicilie, wife to our King *Charles* the seauenth, tearmed the *Victorious*. The said King *Lewes* the second, died in his Citie of *Angiers*, where he lieth enterred in the Cathedrall Church, in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred and sixeteene: After whom succeeded his eldest Sonne

Lewes,

Lewes King of Sicilie.

Lewes, third of the name, King of *Sicilie*, who tooke to wife *Mary*, daughter to the Count of *Sauoye*, of whom hee left no issue: deceasing at *Cosence* in the Kingdome of *Naples*, One thousand foure hundred thirtie foure, and there succeeded him his second Brother

Iohn Duke of Calabria.

Rene, King of Sicilie and Duke of *Anion*, who had to wife in his first marriage *Isabel*, Ducheſſe of *Lorraine* and of *Bar*, and in this marriage was borne *Iohn*, Duke of *Calabria*, deceasing in the life time of his Father: leauing (neuertheleſſe) by *Mary* of *Bourbon* his wife, one Sonne and two Daughters, the yongeſt whereof was *Margaret* of *Sicilie*, married to *Henry*, King of England, Sixt of the name. And *Yoland* his eldeſt daughter, was wife to *Rene* of *Lorraine*, Count of *Vaudemont*, and Duke of *Lorrain* ſoon after. The Son was *Nicholas*, Marqueſſe *du Pont*, deceasing before he was maried.

In ſecond marriage King *Rene* eſpouſed *Iane*, daughter to the Count of *Lanall*, and *Iſabell* of Bretaigne; but by her he had no linage.

Coūt of *Main* and *Mortaigne*

Charles of *Anion*, laſt Sonne to King *Lewes* the ſecond, was Count of *Maine* and of *Mortaigne*: he tooke to wife *Iſabel* of *Luxembourg*, by whom he had a Sonne and a daughter. The Sonne was *Charles*, Count of *Prouence*, who died without any childe in his Fathers life time. The Daughter was *Louiſa* of *Anion*, wife vnto *Iames* of *Armagnac*, Duke of *Nemours*. So ended in daughters (falling to the Diſtaffe) this Second Branch of *Anion*.

King *Lewes* the eleauenth heire to *Charls* of *Anion*.

Charles, after the death of good King *Rene* his Brother (who had adopted him for his Sonne, and inſtituted him his ſole heire) tooke the Title of King of *Sicilie*. And ſeeing himſelfe deſtitute of Maſle iſſue; inſtituted as his heire vniuerſall, in the ſaid Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, as alſo the Countie of *Prouence*; King *Lewes* eleauenth of the name: who in regard of his Mother *Mary* of *Anion* (Sir-named of *Sicilie*) had right to the Kingdome of *Arragon*, and Counties of *Cathalogna* and *Cerdaigna*, of an hundred thouſand Florins of Gold, the Coyne of *Arragon*, aſſigned in Dowrie by *Iohn*, King of *Arragon*, to his Daughter *Yoland* of *Arragon*, wife to *Lewes* of *Anion*, ſecond of the name, King of *Sicilie*. Of which marriage was iſſued the ſaid *Mary* of *Anion*, Mother to King *Lewes* the eleauenth, as alſo appertained to the ſaid *Lewes* the eleauenth, on the behalfe of his Mother, the Seigneuries of *Corſentania*, *Maghalon*, *Borgia*, and many other, being in the Kingdomes of *Arragon* & *Valentia*, and Principalities of *Cathalogna* & *Cerdargnia*, aſſigned in Dowrie to *Yoland de Bar*, wife to the ſaid *Iohn*, King of *Arragon*. By the death of whom (without iſſue maſle) *Martin* his Brother had ſucceeded in the ſaid Kingdomes and Principalities: and ſo conſequently ſtood bound in the obligations, contracted by the late King his Brother, and his deedes and promiſes.

Yoland widdow to *Iohn* King of *Arragon*.

The donation of *Yoland de Bar*, Widdow to King *Iohn* of *Arragon*, made to the Queene of *Sicilie*, *Mary* of *Anion*, her Daughter, was dated in the Towne of *Beaucaire* the third day of May, One thouſand foure hundred thirtie two. Signed *Yoland*, Queene of *Arragon*, Donnareſſe, and *Yoland*, Queene of *Hieruſalem* & of *Sicilie*, Donatarie, and by the Notaries: in the preſence of *Frances de Verly*, Vice-Caſtillian, and Poteſtate Royall of *Beaucaire*.

The teſtification of the Queens Donation.

The Donation of the aboue named things, by the ſaid *Yoland* of *Arragon*, Queene of *Ieruſalem* and of *Sicilie*, made to her Daughter *Mary* of *Anion*, wife to King *Charles* the ſeauenth, and to their Sonne the *Daulphine Lewes*, eleaneth of the name: is receiued by *Henry de Freſnoy*, Notarie Apoſtolicall at *Tours*, paſſed in the Towne of *Saulmur*, in the Hoſtell of *Stephen Bernard*, otherwiſe called *Moreau*; *Peter de Breze*, Lord of *Sairant*, Knights: of Maiſter *Gilles*, Iudge of the Royaltie of *Anion*; *Robert des Roches*, Maiſter of the Kings Accounts; *Iohn de la Poiſſonniere*, Lieutenant to the Captaine of *Angiers*; And *Alain Criceux*, Preſident of the Accounts for the King of *Sicilie*, and dated the ſixteenth day of February, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred thirtie and nine.

The inueſting of *Lewes* in the kingdome of *Ieruſalem*, *Naples*, and *Sicilie*.

Monſieur Lewes of France, was inueſted in the Kingdomes of *Hieruſalem*, *Naples* and *Sicilie*, by Pope *Clement* the ſixt, and Buls giuen in *Auignion*, in the yeare One thouſand foure ſcore and two: vnder ſigned by the ſaid Pope, and by ſeauen Cardinalles. But it is neceſſarie to obſrue, as ſummarily as wee can deuiſe to doe,

doe (becauſe the whole diſcourſe would riſe to a large volume) the ſubiect of the Armes, as alſo the Titles of the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, *Naples* and *Sicilie*, happening to the two Houſes of *Aniou*.

A brieſe Relation of the Armes and Titles belonging to the two Houſes of *Aniou*.

Neuſtria, now tearmed *Normandie*.

Raoul being come from *Denmarke*, vnder the declining of the ſecond Ligne of our Kings, and being made a Chriſtian of an Idolater, as formerly hee was; inueſted with *Neuſtria*, at this preſent called *Normandie*: was the Father to *William*, Father of *Richard*, Father of *William* and of *Richard*; who by a Concubine had three Sonnes, *Richard*, *Raoull* (that is *Robert*) and *William*.

Richard of *Normandie*, was Father to *Tancred*, who finding himſelfe charged with ſixe Maſle Children; encouraged them to runne the courſe of their fortune, with fraight and furniſhment of a Nauie. They ſailed into *Italie*, vnder conduct of their eldeſt Brother *Guiſcardo* of *Normandie*; who had for his Armes *De Gueulles à la Bande Eſchiquetée d'Argent & d'Azur de Deux Traicts*, the firſt Armes of *Sicilie*. This enterpriſe is counted vnder the yeare One thouſand foureſcore and eight; and yet neuertheleſſe, there is vncertainty of the yeares.

William with the Iron-Armie

Guiſcardo, or *Robert*, with his Bretheren *Reger* and *William*, called *Fierabras*, or *Bras de Fer*, for his valiancie, expelled the *Sarrazins* out of both the *Sicilies*: in the time of Pope *Nicholas* the ſecond, who created the ſaid *Guiſcardo* the firſt Duke of *Apuglia*, and *Roger* Duke of *Sicilie*, in the yeare One thouſand one hundred and one.

Rogero, Sonne to *Roger*, ſucceeded in the Dukedome of *Apuglia*, after the death of his Vncle *Guiſcardo*, and created him King of *Sicilie*, in the yeare One thouſand one hundred twentie nine, a moſt remarkeable date of this Inueſtiture.

The great ſeruices of *Robert* to the ſacred Seate.

But others are of opinion, that *Robert* before his death, performed great Seruices to the holy Seate, and that hee deliuered Pope *Gregory*, ſeauenth of the name, beſiedged in the Citie of *Lyons* (by *Henry* the Emperour of *Germanie*) and conducted the ſaid Pope in ſafetie to *Salerno* in *Sicilie*. That hee burned and ſacked the Citie of Rome, being reuolted againſt the Pope, and that in acknowledgement of ſo many famous Seruices receiued from this *Robert*: he infeoffed him in the Lands which he had conquered in *Italie*, as namely all *Sicilie*, *Calabria* and *Campagnia* of Rome; beſtowing on him the Title of a King, vnder certaine dues and debts, yearely payable to the Sacred Seate. And that after this Inueſtiture, the ſame *Robert* went to war vpon the *Sarrazins* in *Greece*, from whom he conquered *Achaia*, *Durax*, & part of *Dalmatia*. And that hauing receiued command from Pope *Victor*, the third (to: mented by the Emperor *Henry*) to come ſuccour him: he found that the ſaid Pope had bin poiſonned, and ſeeking to haue ſatisfaction in the caſe; he died of a burning Feauer, leauing behinde him two Sonnes.

His conqueſt of *Achaia*, *Durax*, and *Dalmatia* from the *Sarrazins*.

Boemond and *Rogero*. This *Boemond* being gone into *Greece*; his yonger Brother poſſeſſed himſelfe of the Succeſſion to his Father, which remained to him; in regard that *Boemond* affected rather to warre vpon the *Sarrazins*, and to follow *Godfrey* of *Boulogne* to the Conqueſt of *Hieruſalem*; then to returne backe againe into *Sicilie*.

The holy wars of *Godfrey* of *Boulogne*.

This *Rogero* had two Sonnes, *William* and *Rogero*, the eldeſt being dead in the Holy-Land: *Rogero*, without the conſent of Pope *Innocent* the ſecond, hauing ſtiled himſelfe King of *Sicilie*, was beſiedged by the Armie of the Church within *Galuce*, the Siedge being raiſed by *William* Duke of *Calabria* his Sonne. The Pope being taken priſoner, and conſtrained (for his deliuerance) to Crowne *Rogero*: he grew to agreement with him, onely to draw him to his ſeruice. It was this *Rogero*, that paſſed into *Greece*, to be a ſafe conduct to the King of *France*, *Lewes*, ſeauenth of the name, called the *Pittifull*, returning from the Holy-Land, ill entreated by the Emperor of *Greece*, *Emanuel*, who, in fauor of the *Sarrazins*, had wrought the death of a great number of the *French*, by mingling a poiſoned plaſter among the Meale which was

The paſſage of *Rogero* into Greece.

sent to the Christian Armie. In reuenge of which detestable iniurie, *Rogero* proclaimed warre against him.

William succeeded after his Father *Rogere*.

After *Rogero*, succeeded his Sonne *William*, who made warre vpon Pope *Alexander* the third, and from whom he tooke many places, belonging to the demeanes of the Church: in regard that he would nor Crown him King, which he was compelled to doe within a while after.

The last King of *Sicilie* of the Norman race.

Next to him succeeded his Sonne, named *William* likewise, a valiant and courageous Prince, who warred very powerfully in fauour of the Church, vpon the Emperour of Germanie, *Fredericke* the first, and on him of *Constantinople*, conquering from him the Citie of *Sidonia*. He was called *The good King William*, and deceased without issue; being the last King of *Sicilie*, descending from the Stocke of the Dukes of *Normandie*. And by his death, the Kingdome of *Sicilie* returned to the Seate Apostolicall.

And yet notwithstanding, *Tancred*, a Bastard Sonne to *William*, Father of the last King, contemning the holy Seate, possessed himselfe of *Sicilie*. But to resist against him, Pope *Celestine* called the Emperour of *Germanie*, *Henry* the sixt, Sonne to the Emperour *Fredericke Barba-Rossa*, sworne enemie to the Popes of his time, and tooke out of the Monasterie of Saint *Clare* at *Palermo* in *Sicilie*, *Constance*, Sister to the last King *William* (albeit she was a professed Nunne, and aged fiftie yeares) yet he vn-nailed her, and gaue her as wife to the said Emperour *Henry*, sixt of the name, with the Inuestiture in the Kingdome of *Sicilie*. This Emperour being of the house of the Dukes of *Suaba*, *Portort d'Argent à Trois Leopards de Sable, l'vne sur l'autre*: and carried not them of *Sicilie*, borne by the *Normans*; howbeit, in right of *Constance* his wife, he was the fift King of the said Kingdome.

Of this marriage issued their onely Sonne, bearing the name of his Father *Fredericke* of *Suaba*, sixt King of *Sicilie*, who afterward was Emperour of *Germanie*, second of the name; a great enemie to the Popes, for the dispensation granted by them to his Mother *Constance*, in putting off her holy habite, forsaking Religion, and returning to the vanities of the world.

Yoland of Ierusalem married to *Fredericke* the second.

This *Fredericke* the second had three Wiues; *Yoland* of *Ierusalem*, in which marriage, some make to be borne *Henry*, King of *Ierusalem*, in regard of his Mother, and (soone after) elected Emperour of *Germanie*, seauenth of the name, whom the *Germaine* Chronicles auouch to be elected against his Father, causing him to be betraied, and to die in prison, hauing reigned eight yeares. But others doe hold, that in this marriage was borne *Conrarde* (which is the more certaine opinion) who was after the death of *Fredericke* his Father, King of *Sicilie*, and of *Ierusalem*.

Iohn de Brenne King of Ierusalem.

Now, marriage thus made with the said *Yoland*, it was couenanted by *Iohn de Brenne*, King of *Ierusalem*, on the behalfe, or with consent of *Mary* of *Ierusalem* his wife, Mother to this *Yoland*; that the said *Fredericke* the second, should haue with his wife the Kingdome of *Ierusalem*, with this condition, that so soone as possibly he could, he should Arme himselfe for the Conquest thereof, which should remaine to him and his Children, descendant Kings of *Naples* and *Sicilie*. And hence it came, that the Kings holding and pretending right to the Realmes of *Naples* and *Ierusalem*, stiled themselues likewise Kings of *Ierusalem*, and bare their Armes for Enquirie: *D'Argent à la Croix Potence, Cantonnee de quatre Croisettes d'Or.* And for our better vnderstanding the Genealogie of the Kings of *Ierusalem*; it is very necessary for vs, to begin in this manner.

How the Kings of *Naples* and *Sicilie* tooke the Kings of Ierusalem.

The Pedegree or Genealogie of the Kings of *Ierusalem*.

1. *Godfrey* of *Boulegne* (Sonne to *Eustace* of *Boulogne*) a French Prince, chosen chiefe in that most famous enterprise, for the recouery of *Ierusalem*: was the first Latine King of *Ierusalem*, hauing conquered it from the *Sarazins* the fifteenth day of July, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred and nineteene. He Reigned but one yeare, and had for Successour.

2. *Baldwine*

2. *Bauldwine* of *Boulogne* his Brother, Second King of Ierusalem; who raigned Eighteene yeares and then Succeeded after him

3. *Bauldwine*, Second of the name, Count of *Rethell*, or of *Monts*, who raigned Thirteene yeares leauing behind him but one Daughter

4. *Margaret*, married to *Foulques* Count of *Aniou*, in right of his Wife, he being the Fourth King of *Ierusalem*. And hauing raigned Eleuen yeares left the Kingdome to his Sonne

5. *Bauldwine*, Third of the name, who raigned Twenty yeares, and left the Kingdome to his Sonne

6. *Amaury*, whose Raigne continued eleuen yeares. Hee had for Sonne and Successor

Bauldwine, Sirnamed the Leaper.

7. *Bauldwine*, Fourth of the name, Sirnamed the *Meazeled* or *Leaprous*, because hee was a *Lazar*, and raigned but Three yeares, leauing the Kingdome of Ierusalem to his Nephew, the Sonne of his eldest Sister *Sybilla*.

8. *Bauldwine*, Fifth of the name, who raigned but Eight Monethes, and dyed at the Age of Two Yeares. And by his death, the Crowne of Ierusalem came to

9. *Isabell*, Sister to *Bauldwine* the *Leaper*, who had fiue Husbands.

The Noble & Royall House of *Lusignan*.

The Third whereof was *Conrard*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, and in this Marriage was borne a Daughter named *Mary*. The Fourth Husband was *Henry de Champagne*, and the Fifth *Amaury de Lusignan*, in which Marriage were borne *Hugh* and *Iohn*. Of whom and of their Descendants, wee will speake (by Gods assistance) in the Tract of the *Order of the Sword*: Instituted by that ancient and Royall House of *Lusignan*.

Iohn de Brenne, espoused *Mary* of *Montferrat*, in the right of whom, hee entituled himselfe King of Ierusalem, and by her hee had two Daughters, to wit; *Yoland*, married to *Henry* the Second, the Subiect of this digression: And the other Daughter named *Martha*, was married to *Bauldwine de Courtenay*, tearmed of *Auxerre*, Fift and last Emperour of *Constantinople* of the Latine name: who tooke the Title and Armes of King of *Ierusalem*, according as did the Kings of *Cyprus*, Sirnamed of *Lusignan*.

Conrard, First of the Name King of Ierusalem.

After *Fredericke* Succeeded his Sonne *Conrard*, First of the name, King of Ierusalem, Naples, and Sicilie; who was poysoned by *Mainfroy*, Bastard Sonne to the said *Frederick*. He was likewise stifled or smothered by the same *Mainfroy*, in hatred and despight, that he had instituted the said *Conrard* his Sonne to be his sole Heyre.

Mainfroy vsurped Naples and Sicilie.

Against this *Conrard* arose *Mainfroy*, and possessed himselfe of the Kingdomes of Naples and of Sicilie: but in opposition of him, the Popes (according to their wonted manner) made their recourse to the house of *France*. *Mainfroy* was excommunicated for his vsurpation ouer the Fiefe of the Church: As it is written at the Chapter, *Ad Apostolicæ de Re Iudic.* and dying so, was cast forth vpon prophane ground, without any other Buriall.

Pope *Vrbane* inuested with the said Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, *Monsieur Charles* of France, Count of *Anion* and of *Maine* by Appennage, and in Right of his Wife *Beatrix*, Fourth Daughter to *Raymond* of *Prouence*, and *Beatrix* of *Sauoye* Count of *Prouence*.

Ierusalem, Naples, and *Sicilie* enfeoffed to the House of *Aniou*.

After the decease of this Pope *Vrbane*, Fourth of the Name, Pope *Clement* the Fourth his Successor, continued the appointment of his Predecessor: infeoffing the said Kingdomes of *Ierusalem*, *Naples*, and *Sicilie*, to the same *Charles* of *Anion*, Brother to the good King Saint *Lewes*, perpetually for him and his Successors, Heyres Females as well as Males, which should descend in the direct Ligne of Marriage. And through want or defect of them, hee willed and ordained, that the Children of France should Succeed in them, as appeareth by the Bull of the said Inuestiture giuen at *Perugia*, the Fourth of the Calends of March, and in the First Yeare of the Pontificality of the same Pope *Clement*. Of which Bull, mention is made by *Iohannes Andreas* in the nouell addition to the former alleadged Chapter, *Ad Apostolicæ*. Notwithstanding this Inuestiture made to *Monsieur Charles* of France, Count of *Anion*, there were some Prelates, who fauouring the part of *Mainfroy*, were degraded,

ded and depriued of their Prelatures and Dignities, by the same Pope *Clement*: as it is obserued by the Speculatour at the Chapter *de Accusationib. Deponitur autem quis.*

Charles crowned King with his Queene in Rome.

Saint *Lewes*, by the aduise of his Counsell, gaue a puissant Armie to *Monsieur Charles* of *Aniou*, his Brother, who accompanied with *Beatrix* of *Prouence* his wife, went into Italie: where he was welcommed, and Crowned (with his wife) King of *Ierusalem*, and of both the *Sicilies*, the one beyond the *Pharos* of *Messina*, which is properly *Sicilie*, and the other on this side, being otherwise more vsually tearmed the Kingdome of *Naples*.

A matter well worthy the obseruation.

It appeareth to me, that there hath bin some fatalitie, or matter so appointed by destenie (if we may be allowed to speake so) depending on the Sonnes of France, and of the Sir-name of *Aniou*: to be called to rule and beare swaie in straage and remote Kingdomes. For this *Monsieur Charles* of France, Count of *Anion*, Brother to the said King Saint *Lewes*, was called to this Kingdome of *Sicilie*. And his Ligne being fallen to the Distaffe, another *Monsieur Charles* of France, first Duke of *Anion*, Brother to our King *Charles* the fift, was called to the same Kingdomes. And, in our time, *Monsieur Henry* of France, Duke of *Aniou*, Brother to King *Charles* the ninth, was called to the Kingdome of *Poland*. Here then we are truely giuen to vnderstand, that all their Conquests haue bin to little or none effect, and whereof France neuer receiued any aduantage or benefit, though it hath made profuse expence of her monies, and buried them in the appointments of warre farre enough off. Yet not through any lacke of valiancie, but rather of wise Councell, and prouident foresight for keeping our Conquests; wherein I hold it for an assured maxime, that the whole glorie and honour of a Prince doth consist. For, if in meane things

Non minor est Virtus, quàm quærere parta tueri:

By farre greater reason then, ought State affaires to be held in admiration. Distance of places, are no warrantable essoines or excuses, but by cowardise. Our neighbours (since those times) haue possessed the inheritances of the Lillies, and brought vnknown people vnder their obedience; while in deuisions, and nice points of honor (the imaginary subiect of our fights and Duelles:) we make our selues contemptible to Strange Nations. *Serua Lilium.*

The victory obtained by *Charles* at *Beneuentum*

Charles then, after the Inuestiture of his new Kingdome, marched against his enemie *Mainfroy*; whom he ouercame, and slew in a ranged Battaile neere to *Beneuentum*, in the Moneth of February, the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred threescore and sixe. As wee learne by these riming Verses, formed according to the times then, reported in the Manuscript Chronicle of *Simon de Montfort*.

Carolus Athleta Christi, prout ante Cometa
Hæc præsignauit, Manfredum suppeditauit.
Plus Decies Centum quater iuxta Beneuentum
Victor prostrauit. Hic Ecclesiam releuauit.
Sunt anni Christi Victoria cum datur isti,
Mille Ducentenus Sexagenus quoque Senus,
Belli sit finis, Februi lux tertia finit.

Conradine vanquished by the French Armie, by the *Charles* of *Aniou*.

The same Pope *Clement* made the said *Charles* of *Aniou*, Lord of *Tuscanie*; And gaue him the titles of Vicare of the Empire, Gouernour of Rome, and chiefe Standard bearer of the Church.

This Victorie thus wonne against *Mainfroy*, was seconded with another: For, after the death of *Mainfroy* in the said Battaile, his wife and children clapt vp in prison, whereto *Charles* had confined them: *Conradine*, within some few yeares after (solliciter thereto by certaine of the *Gibelines*) went to *Italie* with an Armie of *Germanie*, supplied with the Italian *Gibelines*, where neere vnto *Arezzo* hee vanquished the French Armie. But in another Battaile, whereat *Charles* was himselfe in person, *Conradine* was foiled, neere to the Citie of *Alba*, and *Lancia Fuscina*, in the Field called (to this day) *The Field of Lillies*. In a disguised habite, seeking to shift for

for himselfe, hee was taken, and conducted thence to *Naples*: Which Victorie happened in the yeare One thousand two hundred threescore and seauen.

About two yeares after, by the meanes of bad Councellours, *Charles* was procured, to soyle his hands in the Bloud of *Conradine* and his friends. Vpon this perswasion: *Mors Conradini Vita Caroli.* Whereupon, *Charles* caused *Conradines* head to be smitten off; as also *Fredericke* of *Austria* his Cousine, and many other great Lords, that tooke part with *Conradine*, this being done with detestable cruelty: but *Henry* Bother to *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, he was still detained prisoner.

The death of *Conradine*, his securitie of life to *Charles*.

By this Victory, King *Charles* of *Anion* saw himselfe (for some time) in peaceable possession of his Estates of *Naples* and *Sicilie*: but this repose became the cause of following warre. For the French gaue themselues to all kindes of insolencies and youthfull vanities, especially in the Ile of *Sicilie*, where they made it a matter of triumph, to corrupt the Chastity of Wiues and Maides, and namely such as were of the very best Houses, perswading themselues, that all this lubricity and dissolution, was lawfull in them, and without impunity.

Ease and Idlenes are the causes of all euils.

The Wife to the Physitian of King *Mainfroy*, hauing beene one of this abused number: her Husband being a man of courage well aduised, and a great Lord in *Sicilie*, could not digest such a foule offence; which a man of honour can hardly endure, without reuenging his wrong at what rate soeuer it bee. This Physition called himselfe *Iohn de Prochida*, a Native of the City of *Salerne*, in *Sicilie*, (sometimes renowned for a Schoole of Physicke, according as *Montpellier* in France) but originally of the Ile of *Prochida*, neere to *Naples*. Hee resolued with himselfe to root out the French from *Sicilie*, which he brought to effect.

Iohn of Prochida, Physition to King *Mainfroy*, an enemy to the French in *Sicilie*.

Hee compassed the meanes to set saile for *Arragon*, his Voyage being intended to the King *Dom Pedro*, Third of the Name, who had marryed *Constance* of *Suaba*, Daughter to King *Mainfroy*, ouercome and slaine in Battell. Hee solicited him to make preparation for the Conquest of *Sicilie*, where hee should bee fauoured and respected by all the Inhabitants, who could no longer support the Insolencies of the French. The King of *Arragon* had not the reines strong enough in his owne Hand, to vndertake such an enterprise out of his owne Countrey: For hee should need a powerfull Nauall Armie, and bottomlesse bagges of money, to fit and furnish such an expedition.

Dom Pedro the Third King of *Arragon*, sollicited for the Conquest of *Sicilie*.

Prochida disguised in the Habit of a begging Fryer, made his passe to *Constantinople*, where hee compassed to haue speech with the Emperour, *Michael Paleologus*, a Captaill Enemy to the French; hee perceiued (albeit very enuiously) the prosperous successe of King *Charles* of *Anion*, whose neere neighbourhood was nothing welcome to him. Of him he obtained fauourable respect, and money to discharge a potent Nauall Army, on the behalfe of *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*. In briefe, *Prochida* went to Rome, and conferred with *Pope Nicholas*, Third of the Name, borne in the City of Rome, a deadly enemy to the French; who gaue him assurance to inuest the said King of *Arragon* in the Realme of *Sicilie*; whither the same *Prochida* still iourneyed like a Gray Fryer, and prepared all the affaires fitting to King *Pedroes* minde, and according to his owne purposed reuenge. These goings and comings were performed within the compasse of two yeares.

Michael Paleologus, Emperour of *Constantinople*, ta-uoureth *Prochidaes* effect.

But during these entercourses, Pope *Nicholas* dyed, after whom succeeded in the Pontificall dignity, Pope *Martin*, Fourth of the name, a great friend and fauourer of the French.

To sound the bottome of his Soule, King *Pedro* sent to his Holinesse *Hugo de Mataplana*, (borne in *Cathalogna*) as his Ambassadour, and in outward appearance (to cover his intended Voyage) to request the Canonization of Fryer *Raymond* of *Pegnafort* Inquisitor of *Arragon* and *Cathalogna*, against the *Albigeois*, Heretiques of his Prouinces. For hee dyed with great renowne of sanctity of life, and was Author of the Monasticall Order *de la Merced*, for the Redemption of Captiues, detained by the Moores of *Affrica*. The men of this Order went cloathed all in white, wearing on their breast a Crowne of Red Cloth, or of Siluer gilded ouer, with the Armes of *Arragon*: *Au Chef de Gueules à la Croix partie d'Argent.* They are to be seene at *Paris*, in the Chappell *de Braque*, before the Hostell *de Guise*.

Hugo de Mataplana, Ambassadour to Pope *Martin* the Fourth, from King *Pedro*.

This

Saint Augustine, Bishop of Hippo.

This Fleete departed from *Tortosa* in *Spaine*, to saile all along the Coast of Africa, and to take in fresh water at *Bonna*, heretofore called *Hippo*, or *Hippona*, famous by S. *Augustine*, that worthy Light in Gods Church, and Bishop thereof; and then to take Port in the Ile of *Corsegua*, in expectation of tydings from *Sicilie*, from whence King *Charles* was absent in *Tuscany*.

Bon iour, Bonn Comere.

Prochida got possession of the Shippes and Vessels belonging to King *Charles*, which were in the Ports of *Messina* and *Palermo*. And on the sollemne day of Easter, One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Two, at fiue of the Clocke in the Euening (*A good Day*, *A good Deeede*) through all the Cities, Townes, Bourgades, and Villages of *Sicilie*: all the French had their throats cut, were massacred, and murdered, without distinction either of Age or Sexe. All the Women which were thought to bee conceiued with Childe by the French, had their wombes ript vp, and their fruite dashed against the walles; all the Streets ran with bloud through all *Sicilie*.

A bloudy Sicilian Euen-song to the French vpon Easter day, 1282.

At sound of the Bell to this *Sicilian* Euen-song, *Dom Pedro* King of *Arragon* landed in the Port of *Palermo*, where he was welcommed by the *Sicilians*, (with extraordinary reioycing) as their Prince, and they caused him to bee crowned King of *Sicilie*, in the said Citie of *Palermo*, the Tenth of May, in the same yeare, One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Two.

Vpon receipt of these sad newes, King *Charles* (in all haste) made his recourse to the Holy Father *Martin* the Fourth; who detesting the perfidious dealing of *Pedro* of *Arragon*, and the *Sicilians*: excommunicated them, according to the forme practised by the Church. *Pedro* of *Arragon* contemned these Censures; but the *Sicilians* within some few yeares after, sent their Ambassadors to the Pope, to plead their excuse by the extraordinary insolencies of the French, and to require their absolution, albeit in a remarkable manner.

Pedro of Arragon and the Sicilians excommunicated.

For they being arriued at Rome, and presented to the Pope, fell on their knees at his feete, vling this Prayer to him, which appertaineth to none but God only. *Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccata Mundi, miserere nobis. Lambe of God, which takest away the sinnes of the World, haue mercy vpon vs:* repeating the same three seuerall times, and at the fourth, said; *Da nobis pacem: Grant vs peace.* Which the Pope did, remitting their offence; although the cruelty of the crime, deserued an exemplary punishment and correction.

Abhominable blasphemy.

Charles, to recouer *Sicilie* againe, went and besieged *Messina*; but to no purpose or effect. And *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*, taking good order for this his new Conquest, left to gouerne in *Sicilie*, Queene Constance his Wife and his three Children. Hee established also a Councell of State in the Iland, wherein gouerned (by title of highest Iustice) *Adamus Leontinus*, *John Procheda*, Author of the *Sicilian* Euen-song, *Willelmus Galferanus*, a *Cathelane*, and *Rogerus de Loria*, his Admirall, to whose charge hee left a Fleete of Fiue and Twenty Gallies, in each whereof, was appointed two Captaines, one a *Cathelane*, and the other an Italian. The Soldiers all *Cathelanes*, the Marriners *Italians* and *Cathelanes*, the Gally Slaues all *Italians*; which being thus done, *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon* passed into Spaine.

The foure supreame Magistrates of Sicilie vnder the Queene and her Children.

Pope *Martin*, hauing excommunicated the Realmes of *Arragon* and *Valentia*, and the Counties of *Catalogna* and *Cerdaignia*, to *Monsieur Charles* of France, Count of *Valois*, youngest Sonne to the King of France, *Philip the Hardie*, Third of the name. For and against the thunder of this Excommunication, there were riming Verses of those times made, which flew through all the corners of Christendome. Concerning them of the Pope which touched his power, and passed vnder his name, these were they.

The Kingdomes of Arragon and Valencia excommunicated.

Vassalli praui Petri, *qui fraude sua vi,*
Non sine cade graui, Petri patrimonia, Clani
Noxius & Naui rapuit, delicta notaui.
Hunc in Conclaui Fratrum Bis *primo citaui,*
Ac expectaui satis: hinc Anathemate straui:
Post condemnaui, Regnisque suis spoliaui:

His

His aque fidele Andegauia genus infoedauit:
Adsis ergo bonis Fidei Rex Christe *Colonis,*
Pro venia donis, quibus ara parabat agonis,
Huius & Arragonis pugnati vitæ coloni
Iuribus, & terris per Iudicium rationis,
Res cum Personis, spernentis te Regionis
Iussibus alti-tonis Francis *tibi subjice pronis,*
Qui res disponis placitæ tibi conditionis.

In Defence of the King of *Arragon*, against the Censures of the Pope; these went abroad vnder the Kings fauour and name.

Non me iustifico, sed forte reum te dico,
Sed pro Catholico me iudico Legis amico,
Cur ita pro modico me damnas illico, dico,
Præsul Apostolico contempto ritu pudico,
Ac Euangelico mage indulgens Frederico,
Quondam Scismatico Fidei quamuis inimico,
Nequiter obliquo me iure grauas, & iniquo,
Adscribo sceleri magno, debebatque videri
Omnibus hoc fieri, qui censeor exul haberi
Passu tam celeri, meaque volo iura tueri.
Iudicis austeri sententia nescia veri
Est tua, qui mihi debes potius misereri,
Nec Fidei, Cleri, Populs vis damna vereri,
Vt me deleri videas, vel morte teneri.

This *Pedro* of *Arragon*, to auoid the iust Armes of King *Charles*, which throughout all his Prouinces of *Anion*, of *Maine*, *Prouence*, and in *Italy* hee had leuyed, to make vp a potent Armie, bethought himselfe of a Warre-subtilty, disloyall and perfidious.

Stratagems of policy in War are reputed lawfull.

Dolus an virtus, quis in hoste requirat?

Hee caused it to bee made knowne to King *Charles*, that, to make spare of mens bloud, is the best beseeming part in Christian Princes, and expedient to decide the matter betweene them, either man to man, or an hundred to an hundred of their house and Court: the quarrell for the Kingdome of *Sicilie*, should remaine at the charge of him that proued the Victor, as the Prize and Trophe of the Victory; without (at any time after) the vanquished should retaine Armes, nor name of King of *Sicilie*, or pretend right so much as to an handfull of Land in all the Ile. *Charles* accepted this Combate, which was appointed before the City of *Bourdeaux*, then held vnder the homage of France, by the King of England, the Seauen and Twentieth Day of May, One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Three.

A Combate intended for the Kingdome of *Sicilie*.

Pope *Martin* did all that possibly lay in him, to hinder and breake off this Combate, which was vtterly forbidden by the Church. And so much the rather, because the Kingdome of *Sicilie* depended vpon the Sacred Seate, by the Donation which was made thereof by King *Charlemaigne*. In which respect, neither could *Pedro* King of *Arragon* lawfully offer this combate at extremity of life, nor *Charles* accept it. Because the maine point of this difference, depended on the onely knowledge and allowance of the Pope, and the Kingdome ought to remaine in his power and prerogatiue, to giue it with open hand, to him whom the Pope should iudge best worthy of it.

A Prerogatiue of strange and large allowance.

Hereupon there was found out a Decretall of this Pope *Martin* the Fourth, sent to King *Charles*, and beginning with these words. *Carolo Regi Siciliæ Illustri. His quas sinceræ charitatis zelus afficit, &c.* Finishing with these that follow. *Nulli tamen* The words of the Popes Decretall. *deroga turo in eiusdem Sedis priuilegio, vel indulto cuiuscunque tenoris, vel expressionis existant, quo ad id omnino viribus vacuantes.* By this hee manifested to him, *That all*

Duells

The Popes vtter disallowance of Duelloes & Combates.

Duells and Combates are prohibited. That *Sicilie* depended vpon the holy Seate, and being so, the Duell for strife about this Iland, could neither bee challenged, nor accepted. That Combates were Diabolicall, and the Kings of *Arragon* had not any right in *Sicilie*, nor could the Kingdome bee put to compromise. Moreouer, that it was an infallible note of fayling in courage, to fight in single Combate; for hee denied all grace and pardon to such as fought after Duells, opposing himselfe plainly against the parties, proclaiming, that such people were Anathematized, Excommunicated, and meerly accursed to all eternity.

The reading of this Decretall is very remarkable, and therefore wee will speake more at large thereof; in the Chapter concerning Duels; as well to stop the mouths of some ill-instructed in Faith, who are not ashamed to write, that this Combate was authorized by the Pope, a thing vnbefitting a Christian High Priest, these are the very words: as also to make a true representation, concerning the vniust vsurpation of the Kingdome of *Sicilie*, done by this *Pedro* of *Arragon*, and his Successors against the Princes of France, to whom it was giuen by the Apostolicke Seate, with that of *Naples*, paying an Annuall Quit-rent of Eight Thousand Ounces of Gold, which make fourescore thousand Crowns of French money, with a white Hackney beside. This Quit-rent was paid before the Sacke or Surprisall of Rome, done by the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, who drew from Pope *Clement* and his Cardinals Prisoners with him in the Castle of Saint *Angelo*, the abolishing of this yearely payment, and all the arrearages which were due, amounting so high, as *Charles* the Fifth was not able to pay. Moreouer, hee procured from the same Pope, that (alwayes afterward) both he & his Successors Kings of *Naples*, should not pay to the Popes for all debts and duties, yea, and yearely Quit-rents, any thing but the white Hackney only. Beside, he exacted from the said Pope *Clement* and Cardinalls (to set them at liberty) the summe of foure hundred thousand Duckats in Siluer, and all the fairest priuiledges, belonging to the Patrimony of Saint *Peter*.

Sicilie & Naples giuen by the Holy Sea to the Princes of France, and afterward recouered by *Charles* the Fift, Emperor.

Heereby wee may perceiue (as a matter most notorious) that the Kingdomes of *Naples* and of *Sicilie*, had beene vniustly vsurped from the House of France, lawfully inuested in them: becausé the Princes of France had conquered them from Infidels and other Nations, enemies to the holy Seate, as wee said in the beginning of this Tract. And yet notwithstanding, the learned Cardinall *Cæsar Baronius*, hauing some few yeares past made a Discourse, concerning the vsurpation of *Sicilie* by the Kings of *Arragon*, against the Seate Apostolicall: *Dom Philip*, Third of the name, at this present King of *Spaine*, caused the said Booke to bee burned, throughout all the Townes of *Sicily*, with prohibition, vnder paine of life, to all them of his Realmes, Countryes and Seigneuries vnder his obedience, to read or keepe them.

Sicily & Naples conquered from Infidell Nations by the French.

Pope *Leo de Medicis*, Eleauenth of the name.

In like manner, after the death of Pope *Leo de Medicis*, Eleauenth of the name, the same Cardinall *Baronius*, hauing had the voyces of many Cardinalls to preferre it to the Sacred Seate: the Cardinall *d'Auila*, principall Agent for *Spaine* at *Rome*, stirred vp all ancient acknowledgements, and hindred it to his vtmost power, as not allowing any vsurpation of the Kingdome of *Sicilie*.

Now notwithstanding this Decretall of Pope *Martin*, King *Charles*, who from Italy, was passed into France; fayled not to appeare at the Day before the City of *Bourdeaux*, with an hundred Knights, all of them very well prepared. Long time he attended there for his enemy, who appeared not, vntill fiue daies after, when he well vnderstood the retreat of *Charles*. For then it was when *Pedro* of *Arragon*, being come from Spayne in a disguised habite, came and presented himselfe in the Field for Battell, brauing his enemy, that he durst not looke him in the face. Hauing thus made his presentment like a Foxe, protesting in the absence of King *Charles* to *Iohn de Greaille, Captan de Buch*, Gouernour of *Bourdeaux*, and Seneshall of *Guienne*, for the King of England: that he would leaue his Armes for the Combate with him, as his wages and due, to wit his Helmet, Shield, Lance and Sword. And so returned in haste to *Arragon*, with two of his people, who accompanied him, in sted of an hundred men at Armes, according to the former agreement.

The manner of the Combate proposed by *Pedro* of *Arragon*.

Roger de Loria Admirall for *Arragon*.

During the Voyage of King *Charles* into France, the Admirall *Rogero de Loria*, a Calabrian, on the behalfe of *Arragon*, put a Fleete to the Sea, consisting of Fiue and Forty

of fiue and forty Gallies, which hee vnmoored from *Sicily*, and rifled all the Coasts of *Naples*; continuing some space before it, to draw forth to fight the Prince of *Salerne Charles*, called the Cripple, only Sonne to the King. This young Prince ill conducted, and forgetting the command of his Father, who had charged him not to leaue the City, would needs with fixe and thirty Gallies, aduenture to pursue his Enemy, who was very expert and skilfull in Nauall affaires. Hee inuested the Prince, tooke him Prisoner with a great number of Princes and Lords, as also nine Gallies, which hee tooke with him to *Messina*: where the Prisoners, some had their heads smitten off, others kept in Prison, and slaine within a few dayes after. The Prince of *Salerne* was sent Prisoner into *Cathalogna*, where euery day he stood on the point of beheading.

The Cripple Prince of *Salerno* taken Prisoner.

King *Charles* leuyed an Army in *Prouence*, where hee heard the sad tydings of his Sonnes surprizall, in so fondly aduenturing at *Naples*, hee being ready to dye with conceit of greefe, as soone after hee did the Seauenth day of *Ianuary*, in the yeare of Grace One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Foure, and lyeth buried in the Cathedrall Church of *Naples*. By reason of his death, the Gouernment of the Kingdome, and Children to the Prince of *Salerne*, detained prisoner; was giuen to *Robert*, Count of *Artois*, who very faithfully performed his charge.

The death of King *Charles* of *Anion*.

King *Philip* the *Hardie* prepared an Armie both by Sea and Land, intending to conquer the Kingdome of *Arragon*, and other Seigneuries beside, giuen by the Pope to *Monsieur Charles* of France, Count of *Valois* his Second Sonne. The Nauall Army was conducted by *Enguerran de Bailleul*, Lord of *Coucy*, First Admirall of France by title of Office.

The first Admirall of France.

The Land Armie was led by the King in person, accompanied with *Philip le Bell*, his Eldest Sonne, as also by *John Cholet*, Cardinall of Saint *Cecilie* (Legate to the Pope) Founder of the Colledge *Des Cholets* at *Paris*: by *Raoule de Neesle* Constable, and *John de Harcour*, Marshall of France, and likewise the greatest that were in the Kingdome.

From *Narbonna* the Land Armie marched directly to *Perpignan*, which appertained to *Dom Iames* of *Arragon* King of *Maiorica*, Brother to *Dom Pedro*, King of *Arragon*.

The Land and Nauall Armies prepared against *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*.

And the Sea Forces Anchored at the *Port des Roses d'Ampuries*, & *de Collioure*: from whence they sailed with a full winde before the City of *Geneway la Superba*, which was surprized in the assault, the Inhabitants being put to the edge of the Sword, as excommunicated persons, for fauouring the part of *Pedro* of *Arragon*. At the taking whereof they had some prisoners, the principall of them being the Bastard of *Roussillon*.

From *Perpignan* the French Army passed *Le Pertuch*, descending thence to *Ioncquiere*; *Higuieres* was taken in the assault by *Philip le Bell*, Sonne to the King, and *Gironna* besiedged: the Towne and City very strongly Seated, so that they sustained the fury of the French with most valiant courage, during the space of two Moneths, and vntil the death of *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*, when they yeelded themselues to the French: who much sooner had beene Maisters of them, but by the treason of the Bastard of *Roussillon*, prisoner with the French.

The proceedings of the French Army

The Vigill or Euening of mid-August, during the Siedge of *Gironna*, a Towne and Cathedrall City of *Cathalogna*; *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*, being aduertised of a Conuoy of victuals and money to pay the wages of the French Army: put himselfe into an Ambuscado, with Fiue Hundred Horse, and Two Thousand Fantassins, to make sure thereof, so soone as they should descend from the Gallies of France, which made the Conuoy from *Narbonna*, to the *Port des Roses*, and from thence by Land to *Gironna*.

Soldiours on foote.

Raule de Neesle, Constable of France, *Iohn de Harcour*, Marshall, and the Count *de la March*, tooke Fiue Hundred French Horse, and by the breake of day, threw themselues on *Pedro* of *Arragon*, cut in pieces the most part of his Troopes; yea, and wounded him in such sort, that hee dyed within three dayes after at *Villefranque*, inthe Moneth of August, One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Fiue.

The death of *Pedro* of *Arragon* at *Villafranca*.

Charles the Cripple, Second of the name, Foure yeares after his surprizall, paid for

The fortunes of *Charles* the Cripple, son to *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*.

for his Ranſome the Summe of Twenty Thouſand Markes, to *Alphonſo* King of *Arragon*; the Brother of whom (named *Iames*) publiſhed himſelfe King of *Sicily*, by the death of *Pedro* of *Arragon* their Father. After his deliuerance, *Charles* went into France, where hauing gathered an Army, conducted by *Amarie* of *Narbonna* (of whom is ſaid to deſcend the Vicounts of S. *Girons*, neere to S. *Lize*, a City of *Cazarans* in *Comenges*) hee returned into *Italy*, was Crowned King at Rome of both the *Sicilies*, by Pope *Nicholas* Fourth of the name, in the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Nine. Hee tooke for Armes the ſaid Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, as alſo of *Ieruſalem*; *Party de France ſans nombre au Lambeau de Gueules*, and *Iames* terming himſelfe King of *Sicilie*, retained as his Armes thoſe of *Arragon*, which were, *D Or à Quatre Paulx de Gueules Flanquees de celles de Mainfroy, le Baſtard*, who bare *D'Argent à deux Aigles de Sable*, the Armes of *Sicily*, which they of *Arragon* haue euer ſince retained.

Iames ſtiling himſelfe King of *Sicilie* his Armes.

The Iſſue of *Charles* the *Second*, hauing nine Sonnes.

Charles the Second had Nine Sonnes, and Fiue Daughters, by *Mary* Daughter to *Stephen* King of *Hungaria*.

The Eldeſt Sonne was *Charles*, Sirnamed *Martell*, Crowned King of *Hungary* after the death of King *Stephen* his Grand-father, he dyed in the life time of his father and Mother.

The Second Sonne was *Lewes* of *Sicilie*, a Gray Fryer, Biſhop of *Toloſa*, deceaſing the Nineteenth day of *Auguſt*, in the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Seauenteene. His Body lyeth buried at the Gray Fryers of *Marſeilles*, Canonized by the Pope *Iohn* the Two and Twentieth.

The Third Sonne was *Robert* Duke of *Calabria*, and King of *Naples* and *Sicilie* after his father.

Philip, Prince of *Tarentum* was the Fourth, Father to *Charles* Prince of *Morea*, ſlaine on the day at *Montcatin*: and to *Philip* of *Tarentum*, Husband to *Beatrix* of *Bourbon*, Daughter to *Lewes* the firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, and of this Marriage iſſued three Sonnes, *Robert*, *Lewes* and *Philip*, all three dying without Children.

The Fift Sonne was *Iohn*, Duke of *Duras*, Prince of *Morea*, dying young likewiſe.

The Sixt was *Triſtram*, borne in *Cathalogna*, during the impriſonment of his Father.

The Seauenth was *Raymond Berengarius*, Regent of the Vicariat.

The Eight, was *Lewes*, who was Duke of *Duras*: And the laſt was *Peter* of *Sicilie*, Sirnamed the *Tempeſtuous*, Duke of *Grauina*.

He had likewiſe nine Daughters.

The Daughters were, *Margaret*, Firſt Wife to *Monſieur Charles* of France, Count of *Valois*, who had in Marriage with her (as we haue already ſaid) the Counties of *Anion*, and of *Maine*. The Second was *Blanche*, Wife to *Iames*, King of *Arragon*. The Third *Eleanor*, Wife to *Frederick*, tearming himſelfe King of *Sicily*. The Fourth *Mary*, Wife to *Iames*, King of *Maiorca*. And the laſt was *Beatrix* of *Sicily*, Wife to *Azzo*, Marqueſſe *d'Eſte*, and Lord of *Ferrara*.

Charles Martell King of Hungaria.

Charles Martell, the Eldeſt Sonne, Crowned King of *Hungary*, had to Wife *Clementia*, Daughter to the Emperour *Rodolphe*, or *Raoul*, called the *Red*; and of her hee begot a Sonne and a Daughter; *Clementia* of *Hungary*, Wife to *Lewes Hutin*, Second of the name, King of France and of *Nauarre*.

Charles Robert Charobert.

The Sonne was *Charles Robert*, called by abbreuiation *Charobert*; who had three Sonnes, to wit, *Lewes*, King of *Hungary*, *Andrew*, King of *Sicily* by his Wife, the firſt *Ioane*, Queene of *Sicilie*; and the laſt was *Stephen* of *Hungary*. Theſe two latter named dyed, without hauing any Iſſue. The Eldeſt

Stephen, Marquis of Brandenbourg.

Lewes, King of *Hungary*, left but a Daughter, *Mary* Queene of *Hungary*; Wife to *Stephen*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, Sonne to the Emperour *Charles*, Fourth of the name, King of *Bohemia*, who was Emperour after his Father, and King of *Bohemia*, and of *Hungary*, by his Wife.

And thus this Branch came to the Houſe of France, holding the Crowne of *Hungary* (entred by the Wife) into the Houſe of *Luxembourg*, iſſued of *Luſignan*, and comming in like manner of France.

Robert, Third Sonne to *Charles* the Second, and the Cripple, held the Realme of *Sicilie* by Sentence of Pope *Clement* the Fift: who preferred to that Kingdome this

this *Robert* Vncle to *Charobert* of *Hungary*, his Nephew, according to the contained of the Decretall, inſerted at the *Clementines*. He had to Wife *Donna Conſtance* of *Arragon*, Daughter to *Dom Pedro*, Fourth of the name, King of *Arragon*, and of *Mary* the Infanta of *Nauarre*, by whom he had one Sonne named *Charles* of *Sicilie*, who was Duke of *Calabria*, and who eſpouſed *Mary* of *Valois*, Daughter to *Monſieur Charles* of France, Count of *Valois*, by whom hee had no Iinage. By his Second Wife hee had three Daughters, and the ſaid *Charles* dyed Duke of *Calabria*, in the life time of King *Robert* his father.

Of *Ioane*, the firſt Queene of *Sicily*, and her foure Husbands.

The Eldeſt of the Daughters (the other are no way pertinent to this Diſcourſe) was *Ioane* Queene of *Sicilie*, Firſt of the name, who had foure Husbands. The firſt was *Andrew* of *Hungaria*, as we haue formerly ſaid, but him ſhe cauſed to be ſtrangled. The ſecond was *Lewes* of *Tarentum*, Sonne to *Philip* of *Sicilie*, Prince of *Tarentum*, Brother to the King of *Sicilie*, *Robert*.

This *Lewes* was (by his Wife) ſtiled King of *Naples* and of *Sicilie*, and among other benefits, him he had by her the Seigneurie and Vicounty of *Keilhane* in *Prouence*, which ſhe gaue in the yeare, One Thouſand, Three Hundred, Forty and Nine; ſold by him to the Lord of *Darcigny*, from whom alſo this Seigneurie paſſed to them of the houſe of *Boliers*. In her third Marriage ſhe eſpouſed *Iames* of *Tarraſcon*, Sonne to the King of *Maiorca*, whom ſhe called nothing but Duke of *Calabria*: And her fourth Husband was *Otho*, Duke of *Brunſwicke*. Yet by ſo many Husbands ſhe had not any Iſſue, ſhe being a Princeſſe, that, in regard of her vnchaſte and incontinent life; was depriued of the Kingdome, by Sentence of Pope *Vrbane*, Sixt of the Name, who inueſted therein *Charles* of *Duras*, Sonne to *Lewes* of *Duras*, Brother to King *Robert*. The ſaid King *Charles* of *Duras*, cauſed *Ioane* the firſt to be ſtrangled; according as ſhe had dealt with his Couſin, and her Husband *Andrew* of *Hungary*.

Her vnchaſte life deſtroied her of the Kingdome.

King *Charles* of *Sicily*, Third of the name, tooke to wife *Margaret*, Daughter to the Siſter of the before-named *Ioane*, Queene of *Sicily*, and by her hee had a Sonne named *Ladiſlaus* (whom we call *Lancelot* in French) of *Sicily*; and a Daughter, *Ioane* of *Sicily*. After the death of *Charles* the Third, his Sonne

Pope *Vrbane* giueth the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicily* to *Ladiſlaus*.

Ladiſlaus was by the ſame Pope *Vrbane*, inueſted with the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*. Hee had two Wiues, the firſt was Daughter to *Mainfroy* of *Clermont* in *Sicilie*, a Houſe deſcended from that of *Neeſſle* in France. His ſecond Wife was a Widdow, formerly Dutcheſſe of *Tarentum*, and by her he had no Children: So that dying without any Heyre by him begotten, Madame

The two Adoptiõs made by Queene *Ioane* the ſecond.

Ioane of *Sicily* his Siſter, was Queene of *Naples* and of *Sicily*, Second of the name. She had two Husbands, but no Iſſue by them. The firſt was Duke of *Eſterlic*, and the ſecond was *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Counte *de la March*, who all his life time was called King *Iames*. Queene *Ioane* ſeeing her ſelfe fruſtrated of Linage, did firſt adopt for her Sonne *Alphonſo* of *Arragon*, of whom being neither beloued, nor ſuccoured in her neceſſities: ſhe adopted afterward *Rene*, Duke of *Anion*.

Reaſons yeelded concerning the Adoptions and Marriages of the two Queenes.

But for our better obſeruing the particularities of theſe Adoptions, and ſundry Marriages of theſe two Queenes, both bearing the name of *Ioane*: wee are to vnderſtand, that the firſt was married by her Father, to Prince *Andrew* of *Hungary*, and vpon this Subiect. *Charles*, Second of the name, called the Cripple, being vpon the finiſhing of his daies, by his Will and Teſtament inſtituted (as his vniuerſall Heyre) in the Kingdomes of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the Counties of *Prouence*, *Forcalquier*, and Lands adiacent, his third Sonne named *Robert*, excluding *Charobert*, Sonne to his eldeſt Sonne *Charles Martell* of *Hungary*, dead in the life time of his Father, as you haue heard before, and this Teſtamentarie diſpoſition was confirmed by Pope *Clement* the Fift. In the ſame Teſtament was contained a notable clauſe for Succeſſion in the Counties of *Prouence*, *Forcalquier* and the adiacent Lands, that after the death of *Robert* his third Sonne, his Male Children ſhould ſucced in the ſaid Kingdomes & Counties, *The Order of Primogenoture alwayes to be kept*. But if there ſhould be want of Heyres Males, and that the Kingdome muſt fall from the Lance to the diſtaffe; then he willed & ordained that his Daughters ſhould be called thereto, but neuer to the County of *Prouence*, frõ which he would haue his Daughters excluded, not only in the direct Ligne, but likewiſe in the *Tranſuerſary Ligne*; ſo that the Sons of

The firſt born are alwaies to be preferred before the younger.

of Brothers should excluded the Daughters, *The Order of Primogeniture still preserued & kept*, with expresse prohibition of all Detraction, or of Fourth *Trebellianick* addition. These are the very words of the Testament made by the said King *Charles* Second of the name, reported (word for word) by *Messire Accurse Maynier*, Third President in the Parliament of *Tolosa*, who, from his youngest yeares, followed the Seruice of the last Dukes of *Aniou*, Kings of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, and Counts of *Prouence*, and had beene Chiefe Iusticer of *Prouence*: in a Treatise made by him, and sent to King *Frances* the First, *Of the Rights which the Kings of France haue to the Realmes of Naples, Sicilie, and Count de Prouence.*

Charles the Second departed out of this life, in the yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred and Twenty, and then succeeded his Sonne *Robert*: against whom arose *Charobert* of *Hungary* his Nephew, being disinherited by the Testament of his Grandfather, who married *Ioane* of *Calabria*, eldest Daughter to his Sonne *Charles* of *Sicilie*, Prince of *Hungary*. *Andrew*, youngest Sonne of *Charobert*, to paeifie the warre made on him by *Lewes* of *Hungary*, and the said *Andrew*, who in right of Primogeniture, and representation of their Father, maintained that the Kingdome of *Naples* appertained to them, and not to King *Robert* their Vncle, who dyed in the yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred Thirty Eight. *Ioane* by force of Armes kept and defended *Prouence*, against the expresse clause, contained in the Testament of King *Charles* her Grandfather. Only through iealousie, shee caused her Husband to bee strangled, a most abhominable murder and Assassinate, which yet (in the end) cost her her owne life.

The clause in the will controuerted against by Warre.

Lewes of Hungary his reuenge for his brothers death.

For *Lewes*, King of *Hungary*, being aduertised of his Brothers death, made warre vpon *Ioane* of *Sicile*, his Cousin; but in such powerfull and cruell manner, as shee was enforced to forsake the Kingdome of *Naples*, and seeke for her owne safety in *Prouence*. During the absence of *Lewes* in *Italy*, the *Hungars* made diuers reuolts and commotions against him: whereby he was compelled to giue ouer his enterprise, and returne backe againe into *Hungary*. In this time of his absence, Queene *Ioane* made her repaire to *Naples*, and to bee deliuered from the Excommunication which the Pope thundred against her, for the murdering of her Husband, and to be elected of some arrerages in regard of the Kingdome of *Naples*, due to the Sacred Seate, vnder a feigned engagement, & a dissembled Summe of Forty Thousand Crownes shee acquainted to the holy Chaire the City of *Auignion*, wherein, the moity belonging to the Crowne of France, had beene giuen by the King Saint *Lewes*, to *Monsieur Charles* of France, Count of *Aniou* and of *Prouence*, his Brother.

Vnder-hand dealing betweene Queen *Ioane* and the Pope.

From hence it is, that the holy Seate holdeth the Patrimony and City of *Auignon*, so farre as to the Riuer of *Rhosne*, which the Prouincialls call the *Roze*. For the Riuer appertaineth intirely to the Crowne of France, and so it was adiudged to King *Lewes* the Eleauenth, by decree of Parliament at *Tolosa*, contradictorily giuen against the Pope then sitting, and the said *Lewes* the Eleauenth, in the Moneth of One Thousand Foure Hundred.

The Riuer of *Rhosne* belonging to the Crowne of France.

And concerning the County of *Venisse*, which containeth the Dioceses of *Carpentras*, *Cauaillon*, and *Vaizon*; it came to the holy Seate by Confiscation, made on the old Count of *Tolosa*, *Raymond* of *Turaine*, said to bee an *Albigeois* Heretique.

Charles of *Duras* marries *Queen Ioane*.

Ioane liued a very long time in peace, and vntill it chanced, that her repose was troubled by *Charles* of *Duras*, Sonne to *Charles* the Second, and Brother to *Robert*, Grandfather to the said Queene *Ioane*, who had nourished him from his young yeares, as her Nephew and Heyre to come.

But beholding himselfe now aged, and that his Aunt liued too long a time for his liking: hee trauelled towards *Lewes* King of *Hungary*, his Vncle, with whom he complotted reuenge for the murder, committed on the person of King *Andrew*. And to conceale his Armes, hee tooke grant and transport of those Rights, which he pretended to the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, as also in the Countries of *Prouence*. So, being assisted with forces from *Hungary*, hee went and besieged his Aunt, whom he tooke prisoner: while she expected succour from the Prouincialls, too slow and tardy in their comming.

Ioane

Ioane, seeing her selfe a prisoner, and considering the harsh entertainment, and great ingratitude in *Charles* of *Duras* her Nephew, whom shee had nourished vp to renderly remembred her selfe, that (from Father to Sonne, & in the direct Ligne) she was descended of the House of France, and of the Stocke of *Aniou*.

Queene *Ioane* descended of the ancient Race of *Aniou*.

Wherevpon, by her Testament and Ordinance of her latest Will; shee instituted for her Heyre in the Realme of *Naples*, *Sicilie*, Counties of *Prouence*, and other Seigneuries, *Lewes*, First Duke of *Aniou*, Second Sonne to King *Iohn*, and Brother to King *Charles* the Fift, Sirnamed the *Wise*. She adopted (as her Sonne) the said *Monsieur Lewes* of France, Chiefe and head of the second Branch of *Aniou*. And he substituted his Sonne *Lewes* the Second, and after him his Male Children; *The Order of Primogeniture still kept*, with charge and condition: *That the said Kingdomes and Counties should neuer part from the Crowne of France, but hold from Lance to Lance, without falling to the Distaffe.* Which Testaments, Adoptions, and Substitutions, for that which concerned the Realmes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, were approued and ratified by the Apostolicall Seat, effectuated in the person of the said *Monsieur Lewes* of France, Duke of *Aniou*, and Count *du Maine*, Crowned King of the said Realmes in the City of *Auignion*, by Pope *Clement* the Seauenth, according as it is written in the Chapter, *Licet, de for. compet.* Which Inuestiture was in the yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred, and Foure Score: And Queene *Ioane* dyed, strangled in Prison, by the commande of her kinsman *Charles* of *Duras*.

Lewes of France originall of the second branch of *Aniou*.

Lewes crowned King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, in *Auignon* by the Pope.

Against whom the Duke of *Aniou* marched into *Italy* with a powerfull Armie, fitted both for Sea and Land, which shrewdly shooke *Italy* at the beginning. But through bad counsell, it yeelded and made more noyse, then benefite, so saith the President *Maynier*: by the sorry intelligence of King *Lewes* with the Lords of *Italy*, whom he made his enemies, by contemning and ill respecting them.

Charles of *Duras*, a wary and well aduised Prince, educated from his Infancie, answerably to the ayre of *Italy*, perceiuing the fault and lacke of good and wise Counsellours (whereof *Lewes* stood in greatest need) and the humour of the French, who were without wit and Conduct: concluded, to arme himselfe rather with good councell, then with strength and power. Hee planted Garrisons of Horse and Foote, in all Cities and Townes through the Kingdome of *Naples*, and burned all the *Champaigne* Countrey, Granges and Villages, which could serue his enemy but for Trophees of Straw and Bonfires.

The discreet prouidence of *Charles* of *Duras*.

By this meanes, King *Lewes* was compelled during the heates of Summer (which are so great in *Italy* as they can no way be endured) to keepe his Army in the Field. And the French, disordred in their eating & drinking, ouercharged their stomacks with the strong wines of *Italy*, which so warmed them, and with the violent season of the Summer; that they became filled with diuers diseases, and especially King *Lewes*, who dyed at *Bisegle* in the Kingdome of *Naples*, the Twentieth day of September, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Foure Score and Foure. And by his death the French Army grew scattered.

The death of King *Lewes* in the Realme of *Naples*.

By this prouident and wise Conduct in Warre, *Charles* of *Duras* subsisted for a time, and reconquered suddenly, that which *Monsieur Lewes* of France had won from him in the Kingdome of *Naples*. And hee seeing himselfe setled in a peacefull Conquest, hearing newes of the death of his Vncle *Lewes* King of Hungary: resolued to iourney thither, as hee did, and to possesse himselfe of that Kingdome, against the Daughter to the said *Lewes*, Inheritrixe thereto by the death of her Father.

Charles, at the beginning was so well entertained by the Lords of Hungary; that they Crowned him, scorning the Empire and Command of a Woman, according to the custome of Warlike Nations, who at all times haue contemned *Gineratie*. *Mary*, the onely Daughter to deceased *Lewes* King of Hungary, fearing least *Charles* of *Duras* her Cousin would put her to death, as formerly he had done Queene *Ioane* her Aunt; preuented him, and procured him to be poysoned (a kind of death ordinary to Princes there) in the yeare, One thousand, Foure Hundred, and Tenne: leauing a Sonne, named *Ladislaus*, that is *Lancelot*, and a Daughter, named *Ioane*, afterward called *Ioanella*, to distinguish the History, from

The gouernment of women.

The Death of *Charles* of *Duras*.

that of her Aunt Queene *Ioane* of *Sicilie*, First of the name, strangled in Prison, by this *Charles* of *Duras*.

The proceedings of yong *Lewes* of *Aniou*.

Lewes of *Anion*, Sonne and Successor to *Monsieur Lewes* of France, being come to the yeares of reason, and fauoured by Pope *Alexander* the Fift: vndertooke to Conquer the Kingdome of *Naples*, which *Ladislaus*, Sirnamed of *Sicilie*, Sonne to *Charles* of *Duras* vsurped. He forced him to forsake the City of *Naples*, and all the ther he was retreated. This is the same *Ladislaus*, which engaged *Nice* (a dependance on the County of *Prouence*) to the Count of *Sauoye Amades*, Seauenth of the name, for a supply of Sixe Thousand men, which he receiued from *Amades*, against *Lewes* of *Aniou*.

The Marriage of King *Lewes* to *Yolande* of *Arragon*.

Lewes, Second King of *Naples* and of *Sicilie*, espoused *Yoland*, the onely Daughter to King *Iohn* of *Arragon*, by right of whom, it was indubitably, that the Kingdome of *Arragon* appertained to him: because the Kingdomes of *Spayne* are held by Women, in the defect of Heyres Males, and they are called to the Crownes of them. And yet notwithstanding, *Martin* of *Arragon*, Brother to the said deceased King *Iohn*, possessed himselfe of the Realmes and Siegneuries of his Brother, without giuing to his Neece the Dowry couenanted for her Marriage, as we haue already said before.

The Death of King *Lewes* the Second in *Angiers*.

Lewes the Second, deceased in the City of *Angiers*, in the yeare, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, and Sixteen, and lyeth buried in the Cathedrall Church there. By *Yoland* of *Arragon* his Wife, Daughter to the said King *Iohn* of *Arragon*, and Queene *Yoland de Bar*, Daughter to the Duke *de Bar*, and Madame *Mary* of France, Sister to *Charles* the Fift, King of France; he had the Children before remembred. This *Lewes* the Second (before he dyed) made his Testament, whereby he instituted his vniuersall Heyre, *Monsieur Lewes* of *Sicilie* his eldest Sonne, and his Heyres Males. And through defect of them, he substituted *Rene* his Second Sonne, & his Heyres Males, After whom hee substituted his last Sonne *Charles*, and his Heyres Males; and and their Male descendants of the name and Armes; *Primogenitura ordine seruato*, with the clause, *Ex legitimo Matrimonio procreati*; and their Daughters excluded in these Successions. By the Contract of Marriage of the said *Lewes* the Second, and *Yoland* of *Arragon*, which passed in the yeare, One Thousand, Three Hundred, Foure-Score and Ten, in the presence of Pope *Clement* the Seauenth: Afterwards ratified by the King of *Arragon*, *Martin*, Brother to the said King *Iohn*, the Twentieth day of the Moneth September, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, vnder-signed *Iohn*, *Charles de S. Amand*, and *Bernard Caplana*, and by the said King *Lewes* the Second, on Monday the Ninth of *August* before, in the same Yeare One Thousand, Foure-Hundred; *Lewes* the Second had these Titles. *Lewes, by the Grace of God, King of Ierusalem and of Sicilie; Duke of Apuglia; Prince of Capua, Duke of Aniou; Count of Prouence, of Folcalquier, Maine, Piedmont and of Roussy.*

The Heyres Males still to succeed, but Daughters excluded.

The Titles giuen to *Lewes* the Second.

Now in regard that the Children of the said King of *Sicilie*, *Lewes* the Second, were in their minority of yeares, and in France: *Lancelot*, Sonne to *Charles* of *Duras*, very easily possessed himselfe of the Kingdome of *Sicilie*, that is to say, of *Naples*, comprehended vnder the same name.) And yet not satisfied therewith, vndertooke the Voyage for *Hungary*, as well to reuenge the death of his Father *Charles* of *Duras*, as to conquer the Kingdome at the Swords point. As hee was proceeding in these affaires, he heard tydings, that *Lewes* of *Aniou*, Third of the Name, prepared for the Kingdome of *Naples*, to make himselfe Maister thereof. *Lancelot*, to compasse his owne intention, and to counter-check his aduersary: sold the Dukedomes of *Duras*, of *Achaya*, and of *Dalmatia*, whereby he raised a great summe of money, paying a very potent Armie therewith, and so made war vpon the Pope (who fauored, and tooke part with the House of *Aniou*) compelling him to flye *Rome*, which he pilled, and went to besiedge the City of Florence. But in pursuing the course of his prosperities, he dyed a very exemplary death, which may well serue as a cleare looking Glasse to Kings and Princes, for a President of diuine Iustice, on Princes lustfully addicted to whoredomes, to be punished (soone or late) with a miserable and tragicall end.

Ladislaus of *Lancelot* vsurpeth vpon *Sicilie* & *Naples*, and his proceedings.

The Pope driuen out of Rome.

Lancelot

The tragicall relation of the wretched end of *Lancelot*.

Lancelot had a Physition, that had bin a follower of his Father, who hauing a Daughter of pleasing beautie; *Lancelot* grew earnestly amarous of her, and to enioy the floure of her fairest honor; hee made his meanes to the Physitian himselfe, to vse him as a Broker in so base a businesse. His Fatherly and honest excuses, had no power to quench the fierie heate of immodest loue in his lustfull Prince: but, in stead of milde and commendable answers, hee receiued nothing but rude threatnings and frowning countenances. The Physition, although hee vtterly abhorred this detestable desire in his Prince; yet (vpon a further intent) his labour slacked not to his Daughter, to haue her satisfie his deuillish appetite, yea, and commanded her not to delay it.

An impoisoned Ointment giuen by the Father to his Daughter.

Hereupon, he gaue her an Vnguent, whereof he made copious declaration to her, of many imaginarie vertues to consist therein; and at such time as the King would endure no longer deniall, but she must needes yeelde to loose her Virgin modestie: she should annoint her brest and bellie therewith, which would so settle his enflamed affection, to her onely; that he would not delight in other changes (as daily he was wont to doe) but solely keepe himselfe to her. The faire maide was obedient to her Father, and now you shall see the effect of the Vnguent. So soone as *Lancelot* was in the heate of his amorous embraces, triumphing in the rape and spoyle of her honour: the Vnguent (being a strong and violent poison) did instantly so fierily knit and combine their bodies together; that immediately they both dyed, being vtterly vncapable of any helpe or remedie. The Physition hauing beheld with his owne eyes, iust vengeance inflicted on the lustfull King, for thus wronging both his and his Daughters honor: being fully satisfied and well contented, desired to liue no longer, but dyed likewise by poysoning himselfe. Princes and great Lords, that (bearing your selues on the wings of your power and greatnesse) presume all ill courses to be lawfully allowed in you: noate well this example, not any way for you to imitate; but rather to moderate such frantique passions, and by quenching such irregular affections, with immortall glory to triumph ouer your selues.

The death of the Physitian after the King & his daughter.

Maxima cunctarum Victoria, victa Voluptas.

To conquer Lust in the greatest of all other victories.

This was the excellent Epitaph, engrauen on the Tombe of *Scipio Affricanus*, the mirrour of Continencie. If you would follow *Dauid* in the sinne of adultrie; imitate him in the long repentance, which he performed all his life time after. If you would liue with fame and renowne, pursue this generous act of *Charles*, eight of the name, King of France and of Sicilie. This great Prince, at the age of twentie yeares, attempted the Conquest of his Kingdome of Naples; and it returned to his honour, notwithstanding all the hinderances laboured by the Potentates of Italie, whom he trampled on at *Fornoua*. *Ferron*, about the ending of this Princes life, informeth vs, that returning to Naples, which felt the rigours of warre, and of a victorious Souldiour, insolent and cruell both to men and women, in being put to the edge of the Sword, or their (best fauour) to passe vpon ransome, and yet exposed to the violence of their chastitie, *The greatest griefe that can happen to the vanquished.*

A notable Historie deserting to be duly considered.

Among the rest in this sacked Citie, was taken an affianced Gentlewoman, of admirable beautie, who being falne into the hands of certaine Souldiours that would dishonor her: had no other meanes of helpe or refuge in this perplexitie, but onely teares, entreates and earnest imprecations, whereto the rude Souldiours lent but a deafe eare. At length (by good hap) she got free from them, and sought for safety in the Kings Tent, where falling prostrate before his feete, for a while, shee was secured by his Royall presence. But at length, the King aduisedly contemplating the rare beautie of the yong Gentlewoman, began to grow amorously passionate, and vrged on by loue (whom the Poets paint blinde, and starke naked, describing thereby, that he is robd of all modestie, feare or shame) resolued to enioy the issue of his lustfull desire. And as he went about the sinfull act, once more she threw her selfe at his feete, and casting her eyes (almost blinded with teares) round about his Tent; espied the picture of the Virgin *Mary*, with her sweete Sonne in her armes, hanging on the wall by his Beds side. She made feete of her knees, and thereon followed him

him about his Chamber, humbly entreating him, to looke vpon it, and for her sake, a Mother, yet a chaste Virgin, to shield and saue her honour from violation. The King, suddenly looking vpon the Picture; lost all apprehension of his former frenzie, and found his royall iudgement so sollidly setled, that, not onely he became ashamed of his folly, in being hurried away with such wanton distemperature: but also deliuered the Virgin safely to her betrothed husband, hee being a prisoner in the Campe. He set them both at libertie, and gaue with the vertuous Gentlewoman (by way of Dowrie to her future Husband) the summe of fiue hundred Crownes of Gold; beside life and freedome, to all that concerned the Gentlewoman in parentage or affinitie. *Intactam Virginem Sponso captiuo liberato reddidit, duc constituta de suo Quingentorum nummum Aureorum, liberatis vnà Sponsa omnibus proximis, & affinibus.*

Ioanella, Sister to *Ladislaus*, that dyed without issue, was Queene of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, and seeing her selfe not likely to haue Children; carried with the same considerations, as Queene *Ioane* her Aunt was; adopted for her Sonne *Monsieur Lewes* of *Sicilie*, Duke of *Anion*, Count of *Maine*, and of *Prouence*. But he returned her answere, that without any adoption; he was Legitimate Successour to his Grandfather and Father, King of *Sicilie*, and of her, she being but an vsurpresse of his Paternall inheritance. And coupling effects with words, made warre in such sort vpon her: that she was enforced to implore the ayde of the King of *Arragon*, *Alphonso*, first of the name, who then made warre vpon the *Genewayes* in the Isle of *Corse*, with a mightie Nauall Armie.

The answere of *Lewes* of Sicily to Queen *Ioanella*.

This *Ioanella* or *Ioane* the second, being the Widdow of the Duke *d'Esterlic*, fell in loue (contrary to her honor and her qualitie of being a Queene) with a *Neapolitan* Knight, named *Pandolfello Alope*, reputed to be one of the goodliest Gentlemen in his time. Yet to conceale and palliate this dishoneſt kinde of life, she espoused in second marriage *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la March*, Prince of the Bloud, and the onely comely Gentleman in France. *Iames* getting intelligence of the secret loue, betweene his wife and the *Neapolitane Pandolfello*; caused him closely to be slaine; and tooke away the Gouernement from his wife, sharply reprouing her for her incontinencie, not offering any other violence to her. Within a while after, she recouered the Gouernement againe, and, to reuenge the death of her Adulterer, commanded the Count her Husband to prison: but he being thence deliuered, by the command of Pope *Martin* the Sixt, who sat then at Rome, returned backe into France, and there requited the kindnesse of his wife; whom Pope *Martin* proclaimed vncapable of reigning, inuesting in the Realmes of *Naples* and *Sicilie* *Lewes* of *Anion*, third of the name, who in his enterprize for *Naples*, was assisted by the *Genewayes* with thirteene Gallies, which were conducted by *Baptista Fregosa*.

The marriage of *Ioane* the second with *Iames* of Bourbon.

Ioanella seeing her selfe so pursued by *Lewes* of *Anion*; sent her Ambassadour *Antonio Caraffa* to *Alphonso*, King of *Arragon*, who at his first arriuall, refused to accept the offers of *Ioanella*: because he knew well enough, that this *Lewes* of *Anion* could pretend claime to the Realmes of *Arragon*, *Valentia*, and Principalitie of *Cathalogna*, in regard of Queene *Yolland* his Mother. Wherefore, he desired rather to make him his friend, then his enemie, fearing still the French, who had so many times enfranchised the *Pyrenean*s, and laid their hands on the Prouinces of Spaine. Hereupon, he aduertised him, concerning the intentions of *Ioanella*, making a plaine demonstration to him, that if he would grant and set ouer to him, the rights which he pretended to *Arragon* and elsewhere, by meanes of his Mother: he would lend him such assistance, as should make him Maister of the whole Estate of *Naples*. Which *Lewes* hauing refused, by the instigation of his Mother: *Alphonso* tooke *Ioanella* at her word, sent her a succour of eighteene Gallies, and foureteene Galliots, conducted by his Ambassadours *Raymond de Perillos*, *Bernard de Centillas*, and *Dom Iuan de Moncada*, who in the name of the King their Maister, receiued the *Chasteaux Neuf*, and *de l'Oeuf* at *Naples*, and tooke possession of the Dukdome of *Calabria*, the Title & Seigneurie of eldest Sons, and likeliest heires to the Kingdome of *Naples*.

The King of *Arragon* sendeth succour to *Ioanella* against *Lewes* of *Anion*.

But this constrained, and not naturall amitie, betweene this Adopted Sonne and putatiue Mother, was not of any long continuance, for the maske or vizzard being put

put off: *Alphonso* of *Arragon* sought to despoile *Ioanella* of her gouernment, and tormented her in such sort, that she was besiedged in the Citie of *Naples*, and indangered to finish her dayes in prison, as her Aunt did. But for the succour sent her by *Lewes* of *Anion*, third of the name, which came very conueniently for her deliuerance, conducted by the braue Captaine *Sforza*, who was then at *Beneuentum*, compelling him of *Arragon* to leaue his prize behinde him, being enforced to make for Spaine.

Alphonso of Arragon dealeth murtherously with *Ioanella*.

Ioanella, in acknowledgement of this worthy Seruice of *Lewes*, caused him to come to the Citie of *Auerzo*, where as then she was, and reuoaked the Adoption of *Alphonso*, for the intollerable wrongs he had done her: Adopting as her Sonne and sole heire in the Kingdome of *Naples* and other Seigneuries, the said *Lewes* the third. Who deceased in the Realme of *Naples* at *Cosenza*, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred thirtie foure, and the said *Ioanella* immediately after.

Lewes adopted by *Ioanella*.

Rene of *Sicilie*, Brother and Successour to the said *Lewes* the third, deceasing without issue, was then (at the death of his Brother) prisoner at *Dijon*, being in the power of *Philip* the second, Duke of *Bourgongne*, as we shall declare more at large in the Tract of the *Golden Fleece*. This *Rene* had in first marriage espoused *Isabell* of *Lorraine*, Duchesse of *Lorraine* and of *Bar*, and by her he had *Iohn*, Duke of *Calabria*, deceasing in the life time of his Father, and leauing by his wife *Mary* of *Bourbon*, *Nicholas*, Marquesse *du Pont* (who dyed without Children while his Father liued) and two Daughters, the eldest whereof was named *Yolland*, married to the Count of *Vaudemont*, *Rene* of *Lorraine*, to whom shee brought the Duchies of *Lorraine* and *Bar*: And the other was wife to the King England *Henry*, Sixt of the name.

Successour to *Lewes* the third was *Rene* of *Sicilie*, then prisoner at *Dijon*.

Now, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred thirtie and eight, Pope *Eugenius* then sitting in the holy Seate: sent an Armie to *Naples*, conducted by a Patriarch, to expell the *Arragonians* out of the Kingdome. But the Patriarch ill acquitting him selfe in his charge, by bad intelligence which he had with the partakers of *Alphonso* of *Arragon*: the Pope commanded to seize his body, which as the Captaines of the Armie would haue done, the Patriarch being a Cardinall, was slaine.

Pope *Eugenius* sent an Armie to *Naples*, conducted by a Patriarch.

Rene compounding with the Duke of *Bourgongne* for his deliuerance, went to *Florence*, where he was Crowned King of *Naples* by Pope *Eugenius*. Hauing peaceably reigned in his Kingdome for some time. He lost the Citie of *Naples* by the treacherie of a Mason, who gaue aduise about a Gutter of the Citie, through which himselfe had diuers times passed, and whereby the *Arragonians* surprized the Citie of *Naples*, and afterward the Castels belonging thereto; So that *Rene* was enforced to forsake Italie, and returne backe againe into *Prouence*.

Rene crowned King of *Naples* by Pope *Eugenius*.

Alphonso of *Arragon* gaue the Kingdome of *Naples* to his Bastard Sonne *Ferdinand*, against whom *Iohn*, Duke of *Calabria* passed into Italie, prouing at the beginning very reasonably successefull. But refusing to marry, and take to wife *Hippolita*, daughter to *Frances* Duke of *Millaine*: the Duke tooke part with *Ferdinand* the Bastard, to whose Sonne named *Alphonso*, he married the said *Hippolita* his Daughter, and preuailed so well by money with Pope *Pius* the second, a mortall enemie to the French: that *Ferdinand* (albeit a Bastard and his Sonne) was inuested in the said Kingdome of *Naples*, to the preiudice of the House of *Anion*. The Ambassadors of France made opposition against this Inuestiture: yet notwithstanding all that they could doe, the Pope gaue not ouer pursuing the point.

Ferdinand the Bastard Sonne to *Alphonso* of *Arragon*.

The *Arragonians* and *Cathalanians*, reuolting against *Iohn* of *Arragon* their King; *Iohn* of *Sicilie* was sent to be inuested in *Arragon* and *Cathalogna*, and in this pursuite dyed at *Barcellona*, in the life time of King *Rene* his Father, as also did *Nicholas* his Sonne, his Grandfather still surviuing, who perceiuing that his heires masles, procreated and issued of his body were dead and gone: Adopted for his Sonne, heire and Successour his Nephew *Charles*, Sonne to *Charles* his Brother. In his life time, he caused his Nephew to be receiued as Count of *Prouence*, & Lord of all his other goods, whereof he made him to take homage during his life. To his two Daughters, the Duchesse *Yolland*, and Queene *Margaret* he gaue what he pleased; prohibiting

The death of *Iohn* of Sicilie at *Barcellona*.

ting them expreſly, to trouble the Duke of *Calabria* his Nephew, in the poſſeſſion of thoſe goods which he had giuen him.

The Kings of France onely ſeale with white Waxe, and no other.

Of all the Monarches and Soueraigne Princes of Chriſtendome, there is not any one, but the Kings of France onely, that doe Seale with white Waxe for excellencie and honor: the other Potentates Seale with Waxe Greene, Red, Yellow or Blacke. King *Lewes* the eleauenth gaue Priuiledge to the good King *Rene* of *Anion*, and to his heires in the direct Ligne, to Seale with White Waxe, in the Kingdomes of *Ieruſalem*, *Sicilie* and other Seigneuries, as well within the Realme of France, as out of it. The two Priuiledges are dated the eight and twentieth day of Ianuarie, One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and eight, and the Moneth of May, One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and nine.

The titles of *Charles* adopted ſonne to King *Rene* of *Naples*.

After the death of King *Rene*, the ſaid *Charles* his adopted Sonne, tooke the titles of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, and the Count of *Prouence*, with other territories, and ſent for his Ambaſſadours to Rome, his Couſine *Frances* of *Luxembourg*, the Biſhop of *Digne*, and his Chancellour *Monſieur Iohn Gerento*, to kiſſe the foote of Pope *Sixtus Quartus*, of whom he demanded Inueſtiture in the forenamed Kingdomes of *Sicelie* and *Naples*.

Contention about the Coũtie of *Prouence*

Now, without regarding the Teſtament of the laſt *Rene*, King of *Sicilie*, *Yolande* his Daughter, and his Sonne *Rene* of *Lorraine*, would needes contend for the Countie of *Prouence*, againſt *Charles* their Couſine. *Rene* of *Lorraine* had bin nourished from his infancie in *Prouence*, in the Court of King *Rene* his Grandfather, which made him particularly affected of the *Prouenceals*. Whereupon raiſing vp his auncient acquaintance, he made commotion in *Prouence* againſt *Charles*, and numbring vp his men of Warre; paſſed to the ſaid Countie, in name of the Ducheſſe *Yolande*, who (after the deceaſe of her Father) ſtiled her ſelfe Queene of *Ieruſalem* and of *Sicilie*, Counteſſe of *Prouence*, Ducheſſe of *Anion*, *Lorraine*, *Bar* and other Seigneuries, and tooke the Armes of her Father (whom the *Prouenceals* called the *Good King Rene*) as they are emblazoned in his Chappell at *Dijon*, and which are yet to be ſeene (at this preſent) in the *Celeſtines*, and at Saint *Clare* of *Auignion*, founded by him, at *Aixe* in *Prouence*, at the great *Roze* of the Pallace which anſwereth vpon the great place, and in all the Churches and Monaſteries throughout *Prouence*.

The Prouenceals commotions appeaſed by King *Lewes* the eleauenth.

Theſe mutinies of the *Prouenceals*, in fauour of the Houſe of *Lorraine*, were qualified by the ſuccour of King *Lewes*, eleauenth of the name: ſo that King *Charles* of *Sicilie* enioyed peaceably (all the reſt of his life time) the Countie of *Prouence*. And by his Teſtament made at *Marſeilles*, in the Moneth of December, One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and one, he Legacied (for ſundry worthy ſeruices receiued) to his Couſine *Frances* of *Luxembourg*, the Viſcountie of *Martigues* (in Latine *Vicecomitatus Martici*) with the appurtenances and dependances, high, meane and lower Iuſtice; yea, and named for his Heire vniuerſall the moſt Chriſtian King *Lewes* the eleauenth: to whom he ſubſtituted *Charles Daulphine* his Sonne, and after him willed, that the Countie of *Prouence*, and Lands adiacent, ſhould be annexed, and inſeperably reunited to the Crowne of France. In memorie of which reuniting, the Citie of *Aix* (the chiefeſt of *Prouence*) tooke for her Armes and Banner, which yet at this preſent is carried in all Proceſſions (as I haue ſeene in my time) the auncient Armes of *Prouence*: *Qui ſont d'Arragon, au Chef de France ſans nombre.*

The Teſtament of King *Charles* of *Sicelie*.

The poſſeſſion taken by King *Lewes* the eleauenth.

King *Charles* of *Sicilie* being deceaſed, King *Lewes* the eleauenth (his vniuerſall Heire) tooke reall poſſeſſion of the Counties of *Prouence*, *Forcalquier*, and the Lands adiacent: he receiued of the people of the ſaid Countie, as well in generall as particuler, Faith and Homage in the accuſtomed manner, by *Meſsire Palamedes Forbin*, Knight, Lord of *Soliers*, whom he delegated wholly and expreſly, to be his Gouernour and Lieutenant Generall in *Prouence*. Beſide the ſaid Countie, the Duchie of *Bar*, an auncient Fiefe to the Crowne of France, returned (by the death of the Ducheſſe *Yolande*, Daughter to King *Rene* of *Sicilie*) to King *Lewes* the eleauenth, and he reünited to the Crowne the ſaid Duchie of *Bar*, by decree of the Court of Parliament at *Paris*. Grounded vpon this, that *Rene*, Duke of *Lorraine*, Sonne to *Yolande*, was

was not a naturalized Frenchman, and therefore could not hold any Seigneuries: but ſuch as were permitted to him in his Lands of the French, to be there held as heritages if they were not naturalized in *Lorraine*.

The ancient acquiſition of *Sicilie*, *Naples* and *Italie* to *France*.

By the death of *Lewes* the eleauenth, King *Charles* the eight his Sonne and Succeſſour, huuing aſſembled his eſtates Generall in the Citie of *Tours*, at his new comming: receiued Faith and Homage of the *Prouenceals*, by their Deputies ſent to the ſaid Eſtates, confirming their Priuiledges, and prouiding for vacant Offices. So that it appeareth plainely, that from the time of our King and Emperour of the French, *Charlemaine*; *Sicilie*, *Naples* and *Italie*, had bin acquired to the Crowne of France, poſſeſſed by diuers Branches, and Houſes of Princes iſſued thereof: Firſt, by the ſame *Charlemaigne*, *Pepin* his Sonne and his Succeſſours, from Father to Sonne, for the ſpace of an hundred and thirtie yeares: yea, euen to the very inuaſion, which was made for thoſe Seigneuries, by the *Berengars*, deſcended of the *Lombardes*, expelled out of *Italie*, by the ſaid *Charlemaigne*.

The firſt and ſecond branches of *Anion*.

Secondly by *William*, Sonne to *Tancred*, Duke of *Normandie* and his Succeſſours, Princes of the Houſe of France: vnto *Conſtance*, Sonne of *William* the fourth, laſt King of *Sicilie*, of this Branch of *Normandie*, for two hundred yeares wholly, and the Sons of *Conſtance*, vnto the Baſtard *Mainfroy*, about fortie yeares.

Thirdly, by the firſt Ligne of *Anion*, beginning at *Monſieur Charles* of France, Brother to Saint *Lewes*; vntill *Iohn*, ſonne to *Charles*, ſonne of *Robert* and *Ioane*, Daughter to *Charles* of *Duras*, Siſter to *Lancelot*. And by *Lewes*, firſt Duke of *Anion*, ſonne to King *Iohn*, ſecond Branch of *Anion* of the Houſe of France, euen vntill King *Rene*, ouer whom *Alphonſo* of *Arragon* vniuſtly vſurped the Kingdomes of *Sicilie* and *Naples*, whereof he ſeized his Baſtard (as wee haue already ſaid) againſt whoſe Succeſſours:

At what time Kings may beſt vndertake warre.

King *Charles*, eight of the name, vndertooke to recouer his Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, ſeeing himſelfe in the floure of his age (for he had compleated but twenty yeares) and France in quietneſſe; a moſt remarkeable conſideration, to vndergoe any great enterpriſe: but he ſhould haue had a bottomleſſe Bagge of Treaſures, as (in our time) King *Henry* the Great, of eternall memorie, had, and then is a King beſt enabled for warre.

The Prince of *Salerne* eſcaped from *Alphonſo* into France, and other friends with him.

Alphonſo at that time poſſeſſed (quietly enough) the ſaid Kingdomes; but Auarice, ordenarily attended on by Cruelty, cauſed commotions among the States of the Realme. Among them of Nobilitie, the Prince of *Salerne*, and the Sonnes to the Prince of *Bizignan*, eſcaped the Maſſacres of *Alphonſo*, and *Ferdinand* his Sonne, Duke of *Calabria*, who came into France with their friends, and faithfull confederates. Who hauing wonne the fauour and eare of the Lady of *Beaujeu*, Madam *Anne* of France, Siſter to the ſaid King *Charles* the eight (wife to *Peter*, Duke of *Bourbon*, and Lord of *Beaujeu*) of *William Briſſonnet*, then Intendant Generall for the Reuennues, afterward Biſhop of Saint *Malo*, and Cardinall, and of the Seneſchall of *Beaucaire*, *Stephen Vers*, then prime Preſident of the Accounts at *Paris*, who onely gouerned the King: they put into his head, to vndertake this Voyage, making the conqueſt of *Naples* ſo eaſie for him to compaſſe; that his Harbingers might meerely chalke him the way with their hands thither.

The Prophecies of Fryer *Samanarold*.

Whereto were added the offers and perſwaſions of *Lodowicke Sforza*, called the *Moore*; who had proiected, how to poſſeſſe himſelfe of the Dukedome of *Millaine*, as he did, againſt *Iohn Galeas* his Pupill: with the Predications and Propheſies of Fryer *Iermmo Sauanarola* of *Ferrara*, publiſhed throughout all *Italie*. *That the French ſhould leaue their victorious Armes to Naples: That they ſhould conquer it without a ſtroake: And that at their returne, willing or nilling all the Potentates of Italie, the Noble King of France ſhould trample them vnder his feete.*

The purpoſes of an ambitious woman.

But that which moſt of all aduantaged and furthered this buſineſſe, was the Lady of *Beaujeu*, who, by the abſence of the King her Brother, promiſed her ſelfe the Regency of the Kingdome: by meanes whereof, the Crownes Reuennues ſhould paſſe thorow her hands, wherewith ſhe would fill her owne Bouldges, to cut and ſhaue all the State affaires after her will.

Iames, King of *Maiorica* had bin deſpoyled of his Kingdome, by the King of *Arragon*

gon his Couſine, and was enforced to flye for refuge into France, to the Court of King *Iohn*, and of *Humbert Daulphine* of *Viennois* his Brother in Law. To ſupply the charges neceſſarily required in warre, *Iames* ſold the Viſcountie of *Montpellier* to King *Iohn*, paying the price of Sixe hundred thouſand Florines of Gold, and within a while after, the Countie of *Rouſſillion*, at the ſame rate: prouided neuertheleſſe, that he repaying backe theſe ſummes; he, and his Succeſſours, Kings of *Maiorca* in the direct Ligne, and of his Stocke (but not any other) might reenter vpon the Countie of *Rouſſillion*, and Citie of *Perpignan*. Conditionally likewiſe, that the ſaid *Iames*, King of *Maiorica* (during his life time) ſhould haue and enioy the title and qualitie of Count of *Rouſſillion*, as indeede afterward he did.

Humbert Daulphine of Viennois.

Iames King of *Maiorica.*

And the ſaid *Iames* happening to dye without Children, as alſo the Prince *Daulphine* of *Viennois*, and Count of *Valentinois* and *Diois*, and his wife, Siſter to the ſaid *Iames* King of *Maiorica*, with two Sonnes which he had, the one ſlaine in the Iſle of *Maiorica*, where King *Iames* his Vnckle, and the *Daulphine* his Father had for three yeares ſpace maintained the warre; the other Sonne was drowned in the Riuer of *Rhoſne*: By conſent of the ſaid *Humbert Daulphine*, and of his wife, the ſaid *Iames* granted, gaue and tranſported all rights appertaining to him in the Kingdome of *Maiorica*, and the Lands of his Patrimonie in *Arragon* and *Valentia*, *Cathalogna* and *Cerdaigna*, to the ſaid *Iohn*, King of France, his Heires and Succeſſours in the Crowne of France.

The *Daulphins* two Sons, the one ſlaine, the other drowned.

Now *Iohn*, King of *Arragon*, ſecond of the name, in his firſt marriage had to wife *Blanch*, Queene of *Nauarre*, the Daughter to the King of *Nauarre*, *Charles*, third of the name, called the *Noble*, and by her he had *Charles* Prince of *Nauarre*, legitimate heire of *Nauarre*. And in ſecond marriage *Iane*, Daughter to *Frederigo Henriques*, Admirall of *Caſtille*, who to aduance his Sonne *Ferdinando*, ſecond of the name, King of *Arragon* (vſurper of the Realme of *Arragon*, againſt the Kings *Iohn d'Albret*, and *Katharine* his wife) ſuppoſed the crime of Fellonie againſt the ſaid King *Iohn* her Husband, by Prince *Charles* his Sonne in Law, impriſoned by King *Iohn* his Father, in *L' Alla-Feria* of *Sarragoſſa*.

Charles the lawfull Prince of *Nauarre.*

This impriſonment cauſed a generall reuolt of the people of *Arragon* and *Cathalogna*, who compelled *Iohn* of *Arragon*, to ſet his Sonne at libertie. But before his releaſe out of priſon, the Phyſition to *Iane Henriques*, his Stepmother, gaue him a Iulep, whereof he dyed (within a ſhort while after) in the Citie of *Barcelions*, on Wedneſday the three and twentieth of September, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and one, being aged fortie yeares, three Moneths and foure and twentie dayes.

Prince *Charles* poyſoned by *Iane* his Stepmother.

To reuenge his death, the people roſe in Commotion, vnder conduct of the Count *de Paillars*, iſſued of the Houſe of *Arragon*, marched in ranged Battaile, beſiedged the Towne and Citie of *Gironna*; where then *Iane Henriques* reſided, with *Ferdinando*, Duke of *Monblanck* her Sonne.

Iohn of *Arragon* mediated by contract with King *Lewes*, eleauenth of the name, Father to *Charles* the eight, the free enioying the Countie of *Rouſſillon*, ſold to his great Grandfather, as we haue ſaid before. With promiſe, that for the ouer-plus of the ſaid ſaile, he ſhould giue and pay vnto him in ready money, the ſumme of Three hundred thouſand Crownes of Gold, in Coine of France: Hee ſhould aide him alſo with two thouſand fiue hundred Souldiours on Horſebacke, ſeauen hundred whereof ſhould be compleate Lances. Here you may reade the very words of the Bonds, which were made by the ſaid *Iohn* King of *Arragon*, to King *Lewes* the eleauenth.

The Countie of *Rouſſillon* obtained in King *Lewes* the eleauenths.

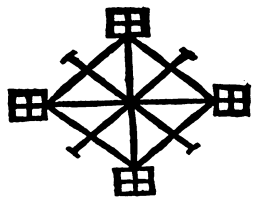
The Couenants and Contracts, which were paſſed ſubſtantially betweene the two Kings.

PAteat vniuerſis quod nos Ioannes, Dei gratiâ Rex Aragonum, Nauarræ, Scicilię, Valentiæ, Maioricarum, & Sardiniæ, & Corſicæ, Comes Barcinonæ, Ducæ Athenarum, & Neopatriæ, ac etiam Comes Ruſcinionis, & Ceretaniæ, attendentes & conſiderantes

rantes vos Illuſtriſſimum & Chriſtianiſſimum Principem Ludouicum eadem gratia Francorum Regem conſanguineum & Confœderatum tanquam fratrem noſtrum chariſſimum, eum ſuperioribus diebus Celſitudo veſtra in Villa Saluatierra Comitatus Benarni, nos autem in loco ſancti Pelagij (Sainct Palais Capitale de la baſſe Nauarre, ou eſt l'Audience Royale & la Monnoie) Regni noſtri Nauarræ adeſſet, & adeſſemus, propter ſincerum affectum, & beneuolentiam præcipuam quam erga nos, & noſtrum honorem geritis obtuliſſe nobis ſuccurſum contra inobedientes & aduerſantes nobis in Cataloniæ principatu, hoc videlicet modo quod mitteritis ad nos ad eundem Cataloniæ principatum Septingentas lanceas munitas ſagittarys vel alys gentibus de tractu, cum peditatu competenti, artillerys, & alys munitionibus iuxta formam, & modum Regni veſtri Franciæ, veſtriſque propriis ſumptibus & expenſis, & in ſeruitio noſtro manebunt vſque quod ipſi Catalani inobedientes deuenerint, & reducti fuerint ad noſtram veram obedientiam, & ſimiliter ſi à vobis dicto Sereniſſimo Francorum rege habere voluerimus ex dictis gentibus veſtris pro ſeruiendo nobis in guerra in Regnis Aragoniæ, & Valentiæ, vel in altero eorumdem regnorum inittetis Quadringentas Lanceas duntaxat munitas, modo, & forma prædictis, veſtris pariter ſumptibus & expenſis, & quidquid iuſtum fore cenſentes & conſonum rationi, vt pro maximis ſumptibus & expenſis quos & quas pro ſtipendijs dictarum gentium ſerenitatem veſtram agere oportebit condecens per nos eadem fiat ſatisfactio, & emenda. Idcirco tenore preſentis deliberationis, ac de noſtra certa ſcientia conuenimus, & paciſcimur vobiſcum dicto Illuſtriſſimo Francorum Rege: atque promittimus & nos obligamus Celſitudini veſtræ perfornam, & validam ſtipulationem, quod in primo caſu quo ad nos miſeritis ad dictum Cataloniæ principatum dictas ſeptingentas lanceas munitas ſagittarijs vel alys gentibus de tractu cum peditatu competenti, artillerijs & alys munitionibus iuxta formam & modum dicti Regni veſtri Franciæ, vt eſt dictum, & in noſtro ſeruitio veſtris ſumptibus & expenſis manſerint vſque quo dicti Catalani inobedientes nobis, deuenerint, & reducti fuerint ad noſtram veram & completam obedientiam, dabimus, & trademus vobis, aut cui, ſeu quibus volueritis loco veſtri realiter & de facto Ducentos Mille Scutos aureos veteres monetæ Regni veſtri prædicti Franciæ, (Les Vieux Eſcuts faiſoient Soixante & Quatre au Marc, le Poids de Huict Onces au Marc, & dalloy a Vingt-quatre Carats, vn Quart de Carat de Remede) *vel valorem eorumdem, ita videlicet modo quod ſoluemus, aut ſolui faciemus vobis, aut cuicunque, ſeu quibuſcunque à vobis legitimam poteſtatem habentibus Centum Mille Scutos intra vnum Annum computandum, eo tempore quo dicti Catalani inobedientes, deuenerunt, & reducti fuerunt ad noſtram veram, & completam obedientiam; & alios Centum Mille ſcutos veteres vel verum valorem eorumdem ſoluemus ſeu ſolui faciemus vobis, aut cui volueritis & mandabitis nomine veſtro intra tempus alterius Anni computandi à fine termini primæ ſolutionis faciendæ de dictis prioribus Centum mille ſcutis. In ſecundo autem caſu quo ex dictis Septingentis lanceis de quibus ſupra mentio habetur quo ad Cataloniæ principatum à Celſitudine veſtra habere voluerimus quadringentas lanceas munitas modo & forma prælibatis, & illas cum effectu mittetis veſtris propriis ſumptibus & expenſis pro ſeruiendo nobis in guerra in regnis Aragoniæ & Valentiæ, vel in altero eorumdem regnorum, & ibi quantum opus fuerit permanſerint dabimus, & trademus vobis, aut cui, ſeu quibus volueritis, & mandabitis loco veſtri, realiter & de facto* Trecentos Mille ſcutos auri veteris monetæ dicti veſtri Regni Franciæ, *in hunc videlicet modum: Quod ſoluemus aut ſolui faciemus vobis, aut cuicumque, ſeu quibuſcumque à vobis ſufficientem poteſtatem habentibus Centum Mille ſcutos infra Annum vnum, computandum à tempore quo dicti Catalani inobedientes deuenerint & reducti fuerint ad noſtram veram & completam obedientiam; & alios Centum Mille ſcutos vetere, vel eorum verum ſoluemus ſeu ſolui faciemus vobis, aut cui volueritis & mandabitis nomine veſtro, intra tempus alterius Anni computandi à fine termini primæ ſolutionis faciendæ de dictis prioribus centum Mille ſcutis. Reliquos autem Centum mille ſcutos ad complementum trecentorum mille ſcutorum ſuo caſu ſoluemus. ſeu ſolui faciemus vobis aut cui volueritis, & mandabitis nomine veſtro intra tempus alterius Anni computandi à fine termini ſecundæ ſolutionis faciendæ de alijs Centum Mille ſcutis. Promittentes vobis dicto Sereniſſimo Francorum regi Conſanguineo, & Confœderato, tanquam fratri noſtro chariſſimo, alijs, Prothonotario, & Notario infraſcripto tanquam publicæ, & authenticæ perſonæ quorum modo pro omnibus intereſt aut intereſſe poterit quomodo libet in futurum legit imo ſtipulanti*

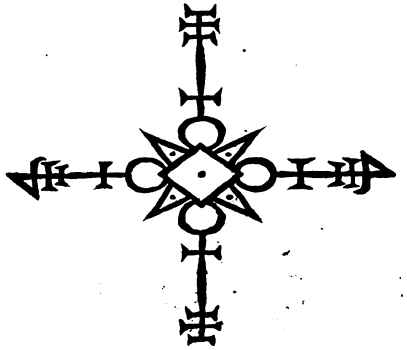
stipulanti in nostra bona fide, & verbo regio quod eosdem Ducentos Mille scutos cas... trecentos mille scutos in suo singula singulis referendo soluemus, seu solui faciemus, & ma... dabimus vobis, seu cui, aut quibus volueritis, & mandabitis nomine vestro iuxta modum seu formam superius mentionatam, atque tandiu, & terminis supra designatis & statutis quibusuis vlterioribus dilationibus, subterfugys, ac exceptionibus reseratis & penitus procul pulsis, & adeo omnia & singula prout per nos supra, & infra promissa & obligata sunt tenendum, complendum & inuiolabiliter obseruandum omni cum effectu obligamur vobis dicto serenissimo Francorum Regi; generaliter omnes redditus, & introitus, iura, & emolumenta quorumlibet Regnorum & terrarum nostrarum, omniaque bona nostra mobilia & stabilia quæcumque & vbicumque reperientur habita, & habenda: Et specialiter & expresse obligamus vobis, quoscumque redditus, introitus, iura, & emolumenta quæ nos habemus, si tamen aliquæ sint factæ gratiæ, vel assignationes super iuribus, & redditibus dictorum Comitatuum Rossilionis, & Ceretaniæ vltra ordinarios quod decedentibus illis qui eas recipiunt, vos dictus illustrissimus Francorum Rex habeatis, & recipiatis, & habere debeatis cum omni iuris plenitudine, & integritate, isto videlicet, modo quod pro quam quantitates præmentionatæ Serenitati vestræ debitæ fuerunt, & quæ dicto crãno non fuerint exsolutæ modis, & formis superius memoratis, eadem Celsitudo vestra introitus, iura, & emolumenta dictorum Comitatuum Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ deductis omnibus modo quo supra dictum est habeat & recipiat per manus magnifici ac dilecti Consiliarij nostri Caroli de Vlmis Militis Procuratoris regij in eisdem Comitatibus Rossilionis, & Ceretaniæ, vel alterius successoris sui in officio supradicto. Ita quidem quod huiusmodi redditus recipiendi non computentur in sortem principalem dictorum ducentorum mille, aut trecentorum mille scutorum singula singulis referendo. Et nihilominus ad maiorem & vberiorem vestri tuitionem, & securitatem conuenimus, pacisscimur, & nos obligamus quod faciemus, & operam dabimus efficacem, quod dictus Carolus de Vlmis ideneam faciet obligationem quod aduenientibus casibus supradictis in quibus iura, redditus, introitus, & emolumenta dictorum Comitatuum Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ vigore huiusmodi conuentionis, pacti, & obligationis, ad vos pertinebunt, de illis respondebit Sublimitati vestræ vel cui volueritis, & mandabit iuxta formam superius mentionatam, & quod quicumque successus suus in dicto officio Procuratoris regij, suo loco, & tempore consimilem obligationem quam fecerit super his Carolus de Vlmis procurator regius, qui nunc est in dictis Comitatibus Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ. Et insuper cupientes vos eundem Serenissimum Francorum Regem, & super præmissis reddere tutiorum cum hac eadem conuenimus, pacisscimur, & nos obligamus quod illustris Ioannes de Aragonia filius noster charissimus, Administrator perpetuus Ecclesiæ Cæsar-Augustanæ, Nobiles Petrus Durea frater Bernardus Vgonis de Rupebertino Commendator Montissoni Ordinis sancti Ioannis Hierosolymitani, Petrus de Peralta, & Ferrarius de Lannes Iustitia Regni Aragonum milites Consiliarij nostri idoneam faciant obligationem: quod si dictus Carolus de Vlmis Procurator regni, aut eius successor in eodem officio deficeret in solutione redditum, & iurium dictorum Comitatuum Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ quandiu quantitas dictorum Ducentorum mille scutorum in suo casu vobis non soluetur, ipsi, & quilibet eorum in solidum tenebitur, & tenebuntur quoad solutionem duxat iurium, & redditum dictorum Comitatuum Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ quæ annis singulis, deductis omnibus modo prædicto soluenda erunt vobis quousque Celsitudini vestræ quantitas dictorum Ducentorum Mille scutorum suo casu, & Trecentorum Mille scutorum in suo, vel valoris ipsorum soluta fuerit cum effectu. Nos eam pro maiori omnibus & singulorum supra & infra scriptorum fortificatione & corroboratione renunciamus, quod quicumque, iure Canonico, & Ciuili, foris, constitutionibus, vsaticis, legibus, & alijs iuribus, & auxilio Iuris, vel facti, qui, & quæ ad ista nobis prodesse, aut vobis dicto Illustrissimo Francorum Regi nocere, aut obesse possent quouismodo, ratione, seu causa qui & quæ dici, scribi, & allegari valerent, etiam in fauorem Regum, Principum introductis. In quorum omnium, & singulorum testimonium presens publicum instrumentum confici iussimus per Prothonotarium nostrum, & Notarium publicum infra scriptum. Quod fuit datum, & actum in Palatio Archiepiscopali Ciuitatis Cæsar-Augustæ die Vigesimo tertio mensis Madij, Anno a Natiuitate Domini Millesimo Quadringentesimo Sexagesimo secundo, Regnique nostri Nauarræ Vigesimo septimo, aliorum vero Regnorum nostrorum Quinto.

Signum



Signum Ioannis, Dei Gratia Regis Aragonum, Nauarræ, Sciciliæ, Valentiæ, Maioricarum, Sardiniæ, & Corsicæ: Comitis Barcinonæ, Ducis Athenarum, & Neopatriæ, ac etiam Comitis Rossilionis, & Ceretaniæ prædicta concedimus, & firmamus, huicque publico instrumento Sigillum nostrum apponi iussimus impendenti.

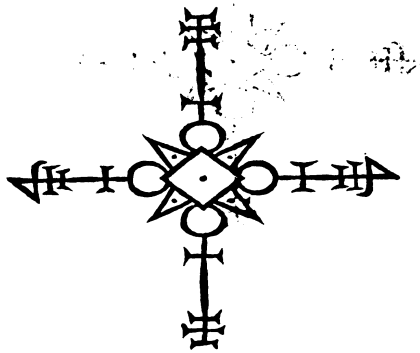
Testes sunt qui ad prædicta præsentes fuerunt magnifici, Martinus de Lannes Baiulus generalis Regni Aragonum Miles, Ludouicus de sancto Angelo iurisperitus Fisci Aduocatus Consiliarij, & Ferdinandus de Vaquedano Secretarius dicti Domini Regis Aragonum.



Signum mei Antonij Nogueres serenissimi Domini Regis Aragonum Prothonotarij, ciusque authoritate per vniuersam ipsius ditionem publici Notarij, qui prædictis vna cum prænominatis testibus interfui, eaque per alium scribi feci, & clausi. Signatum supra plicam B. ita Est. Sealed with Red Waxe.

Et nos Ioannes de Aragonia filius prælibati serenissimi Domini Regis Aragonum, ac Dei, & Apostolicæ sedis gratia Administrator perpetuus Ecclesiæ Cæsar-Augustanæ. Petrus Durea Gubernator Regni Valentiæ, Frater Bernardus Hugonis de Rupebertino Preceptor siue Commendator Montessoni Camerlingi. Petrus de Peralta Magister Hospitij, & Ferrerius de Lannes Iustitia Regni Aragonum prælibati Domini Regis consiliarij, qui præsentes fuimus, & vterque nostrum in solidum conuenimus, & nos obligamus vobis Serenissimo ac Christianissimo Principi & Domino Domino Ludouico, Dei Gratia Francorum Regi, in præsentia Prothonotarij ac Notarij infra scripti tanquam publicæ & authenticæ personæ recipientis, & legitime stipulantis, quod si prælibatus Carolus de Vlmis procurator regni in Comitatibus Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ, aut eius successor quicumque in eodem officio deficient in solutione redditum & iurium dictorum Comitatuum Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ quandiu quantitas dictorum Ducentorum Mille scutorum suo casu, & dictorum Trecentorum Mille scutorum in suo, singula singulis referendo vobis dicto Serenissimo Domino Francorum Regi debita fuerit, & Maiestati vestræ non soluetur iuxta formam obligationis

desuper factam per dictum illustrissimum Dominum nostrum Regem Aragonum, nos & quilibet nostrum ex nostris certis scientys tenebimur, & tenebitur Serenitati vestra quo ad solutionem dumtaxat iurium & reddituum dictorum Comitatuum Rossilionis & Ceretaniæ, quæ omnia singulis deductis oneribus modo sorte ita dicta Regis obligatione soluenda cessarunt Maiestati vestræ, quousque sibi quamvis de dictorum Ducentorum Mille Scutorum sua casu, & Trecentorum Mille scutorum vel in suo vel valor ipsorum soluta fuerit cum effectu, quemadmodum in dicto publico instrumento obligationis prædictum Dominum nostrum Regem Aragonum facto dicitur, & continetur, atque omnia, & singula prout supra dictum est, & ad nos attinet & spectat tenendum, complendum & inuiolabiliter obseruandum, nos, & vterque nostrum simul & in solidum obligamus personas, & omnia bona nostra & vniuscuiusque nostrum; & immobilia habita & habenda vbicunque & renuntiamus quo ad hæc nostris iudicibus ordinarys & localibus, & iudicio eorumdem submittimus nos & vtrumque nostrum Iurisdictioni, coërtioni, & compulsu cuiusuis Iudicis Ecclesiastici vel Secularis, coram quo nos simul vel diuisim conuenire malueritis, & nihilominus renuntiamus legi Iurisperitorum, quæ dicit quod fideiussor conueniri non potest nisi prius bona principalia discutiantur, & alicuius iuri canonico & ciuili, foris, constitutionibus, vsatico legibus, & alys iuribus, & auxilio iuris vel facti qui & quo quoad hæc quæ ad nos attinent, Maiestati vestræ nocere aut obesse possent: in quorum omnium & singulorum testimonium presens publicum instrumentum confici Volumus ad indemnitatem vestri Serenissimi Domini Regis Francorum, Prothonotarium, & Notarium publicum infra scriptum, præsentibus testibus ad ea vocatis, & rogatis dictis Martino de Lannes Baiulo generali regni Aragonum Mittte, Ludouico de sancto Angelo Iurisperito, Fisci Aduocato, Consiliarys, & Ferdinando de Vaquedano Secretario dicti Serenissimi Domini Regis Aragonum. Quod actum fuit in dicto Palatio Archiepiscopali Ciuitatis Cæsar-Augustæ, dicto Vicesimo tertio die Mensis Madij, anno à Natiuitate Domini Millesimo Quadringentesimo Sexagesimo Secundo.



Signum mei Antonij Nogueriy, Serenissimi Domini Regis Aragonum Prothonotarij, sinsque auctoritate per vniuersam ipsius ditionem publici Notarij, qui prædictis vna cum prænominatis testibus interfui, easque per alium scribi feci, & clusi.

Signatum supra plicam. B. Ita Est.

And Sealed with Red Waxe.

King *Lewes* the Eleauenth was not satisfied and contented with these Obligations, but would needs haue intire enioyment of the things which were obliged to him; so that the said *Iohn*, King of *Arragon*, sold, gaue, quitted and transported to the said King *Lewes* the eleauenth, & to his Successors Kings of France to perpetuitie, the said Countie of *Roussillon*, and that of *Cerdaignia* for euer, with all Iurisdiction & Souraigntie. And King *Lewes* the eleauenth was put in reall & actuall possession; & (for him) *Messire Tanneguy du Castell* was made Gouernor in the said Cosities of *Roussillon* & *Cerdaignia*. The Conducter of the French Army was *Gaston*, Count of *Foix* & Lord of

Bearn. The Contract of this Engagement, Grant and Sale was dated the fiue and twentieth day of Iune, in An. One thousand foure hundred threescore & two, at the Archbishops Pallace of *Sarragossa*. Signed by the said King, and answered by Notaries and Witnesses, with their hands and Seales.

The Counties enioyed by the sonne after his Father.

And thus King *Lewes* the eleauenth enioyed those Seigneuries sold vnto him, and placed Gouernours in them: And after him King *Charles* the eight his Son, conformably to the Couenant made with *Iohn* of *Arragon*. After whom succeeded King *Ferdinand*, second of the name, who was his Sonne.

Two great dishonors done to France by the Lady of *Beaujeu*.

But Madam *de Beaujeu*, who then gouerned France, vnder the name of King *Charles* the eight her Brother, plaied two slippery parts at once, not much to be commended. One was, taking & tearing the Registers, belonging to the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, especially the Decree concerning the Reuniting to the Crowne of France, of the Duchie of *Barrois*, on *Rene* Duke of *Lorraine*, who was not Naturalized in France.

A businesse of great importance palled away ouerlightly.

The other was rendering to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, the Coine and Cloath for the Counties of *Roussillion* and *Cerdaignia*, without vntying the purse, charges repaied, or any agreement whatsoeuer. The Mediators of this Merchandise were the Generall *Brissonnet*, the Seneschall of *Beaucaire*, & two holy Fathers Gray Friers, *Oliuer Maillard*, & *Iohn Mauleony*. The two last named men, gouerned the Kings conscience, and the other disposed of the rest. Merchandise deliuered in exchange of a promise, made on the behalfe of *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, not to hinder the King in his voyage of Italie; a shadow or smoake, an imaginarie exchange, & oath for an handfull of feathers cast vp in the open Aire, concerning the part of *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*.

The Articles agreed on in the Treatie.

The treatie of this Restitution, without repaiment of one penny, made in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fourescore & thirteene, the nineteenth day of Ianuary, betweene King *Charles* & *Ferdinand* & *Isabell*, Kings of *Arragon* and *Castile*, bare these contents. That the said *Ferdinand* & *Isabel* doe make perpetuall peace with the King, League offensiue and defensiue against euery Prince liuing and dying, without excepting any. And that the said *Ferdinand* and *Isabell*, shall not contract any alliance with the Kings of England, and the Archduke of *Austria Ferdinand*, Count of *Flanders*, & other Princes whatsoeuer they be; without the expresse consent & agreement of the King. There were named in the said Treatie, the Children of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, to wit, *Dom Michele* eldest Infant of Spaine, & *Iohn*, Prince of the *Asturies*; who with their Father & Mother sware this Treatie on the holy Euangelists laid vpon the Altar. And by the same Oath thus solemnely sworn, the said *Ferdinand* & *Isabel*, and likewise their Sons, renounced all such rights, as they could haue and pretend to the Kingdome of *Naples*, in any sort or manner whatsoeuer, which might ensue to them: they acquitted, gaue, granted and transported them to the said King *Charles*, and his Successors Kings of France, to al perpetuity. Conditionally, that the said King *Charles* without the Counsell of the Princes of his Bloud, & Officers of the Crowne, & contrary to all Remonstrances in the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, many times repeated and reiterated; acquitted and released the fiue hundred thousand Crownes of Gold, contained in the Bond of King *Iohn* of *Arragon*.

The two Sons of *Iohn Ferdinand* & *Isabel*.

Concerning Ecclesiasticall Benefices and liuings.

And hereupon it was further conuenanted, that the Ecclesiasticall persons, prouided of Benefices & Liuings in diuers places, giuen, granted & put ouer by the King, to the said *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, held as well by *Frenchmen*, as Naturals of the Countrey, since the Kings of France had enioyed the Lands and Seigneuries sold: should peaceably hold and possesse their said Benefices.

Reentrie vpon Breach of former concluded couenants

But if it should so happen, that the King enioyed not freely the Kingdome of *Naples*, which appertained to him: in this case, the King and his Successours Kings of France, might reenter on the proprietie of *Perpignan*, and the Counties of *Roussillon* and *Cerdaignia*, and that within a Month after, the said *Ferdinand* and his Successors had bin thereto required by the King, and his Successours, being come to the Crown of France. And thorow defect of not performing this; the King, and his said Successours, Kings of France, might reenter on the proprieties of the said Seigneuries giuen and engaged: by force of Armes, without any other neede of summons, or forme of Iustice.

In the execution of this Treatie, the King decreed and deliuered his Letters Patents, in forme of Commission, to the Count of *Montpensier*, and to *Lebo*, Bishop of *Alby*, to giue possession of the Seigneuries (very vnaduisedly) released to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*; notwithstanding the protestations of the Parliament of *Paris*, Conseruatour of the Maiestie of our Kings, and of their Sacred Patrimonie & demeanes (which cannot be alienated, but by Engagement and condition of perpetuall Redemption.) Thus were matters carried, by the Lady of *Beaujeu*, *Brissonnet*, and *Des Vers*, at the deare cost of France.

The borrowing of monies to supply vnaduised wants.

Now beginning to make spare, when all was spent to the bottome, the next recourse was to Borrowing; yet not of the people of France, whom the King would not oppresse: but of Strangers, and at the caution of the French Nobilitie. The *Banck de Soly* of *Gennes* furnished an hundred thousand Franckes, which cost foureteene thousand pounds Interest for foure Moneths. The Duchie of *Sauoye* lent his Iewels, which wee engaged for twelue thousand Ducates. As much did the Marquisate of *Montferrat*: And *Lodowicke Sforza*, vsurper on the State of *Millaine*, offred for the passage, fiue hundred men at Armes, waged with his money, and the lending of two hundred thousand Ducates.

The furnishment of the Armie appointed for the Land.

With such small meanes did King *Charles* (yet neuertheless) set on foote a goodly Armie for the Land, and another for the Sea. In that for Land-Seruice, there were sixeteene thousand Men of Armes, two Archers for one Lance: Sixe thousand Archers on foote, and sixe thousand Crosse-bowes: eight thousand Harquebusiers, and men that carried two handed Swords: twelue hundred pieces of Canon, as well of Iron as Braße: two hundred Canonniers: eleauen hundred men to cast Bals of Artillerie, and to make Coales, Cords and Cables: eight thousand Horses of Artillery: foure thousand Carters to driue them: six thousand two hundred Pionners; sixe hundred Maisters Carpenters, and three hundred Masons.

The Armie for Sea seruice.

The Naual or Sea Armie, consisted of eighteene Gallies, sixe Gallions, and nine great Ships. *Lewes*, Duke of *Orleans*, a yong and valiant Prince, was Lieutenant Generall of the Fleete. And the Lord *Honoreo d'Vrse*, the Maister of the Horse, prouided this Armie at the Port of *Genewaye*, a Common-wealth (at that time) subiect to the State of *Millaine*.

Attendants on the King in this Warlike expedition.

Such as followed the King in this expedition, were the Count of *Angoulesme*, Father to King *Frances* the first; *Gilbert de Bourbon*, Count of *Montpensier*; the Prince of *Orenge*; the Duke of *Nemoux' Iohn de Foix* (formerly Viscount of *Narbonne*) the Counts of *Neuers*, of *Ligny*, of *Boulogne* and of *Bresse*: The Lord *Alain d'Albret*, Father to the King of *Nauarre*, *Iohn d'Albret*; *Lewes de la Trimouille*, Viscount of *Thouars*: The Marshals *de Gie*, *de Baudricourt* and *de Rieux*: The Lords of *Crussol*, of *Tournon*, of *Piennes*, of *Suilly*, of *Aubigny*, of *Guise*, of *Chandenier*, of *Maulem*, of *Prie*, of *Montezon*, of *Alegre*, of *Bonneuall*, of *Genouillac*, of *Chastillon*, *de la Pulice*, *de Fraunezeles*, *de Chaumont*, *de Vergy*, *de l'Hospitall*, *de Beaumont*; the Bastards *Mathew* of *Bourbon*, and hee of *Bourgongne*, with many other Lords of noate.

The setting forward of the Armie.

In this braue furnishment, *Charles* departed from *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, to make for the Citie of *Ast*, belonging to the Duke of *Orleans*, the three and twentieth day of August, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fourescore and thirteene, leauing for Regent in France *Peter*, Duke of *Bourbon*, his Brother in Law.

Charles had (before) made furrender of the Counties of *Rousillion* and *Cerdaigne* to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, who, in the doing thereof, had promised to the King, to giue no succour, aide or fauour any way, to the Kings of *Naples* and of *Sicille* his Cousines and Brother in Law, and so did he solemnely sweare vpon the Crosse and holy Euangelists in the Citie of *Barcellona*: An Oath immediately after violated by himselfe, when he saw that he was quietly seated in the surrendred Lands. For, perceiuing that it was fully couenanted, that the King should passe himselfe in person into Italie, for Conquering the Kingdome of *Naples*: he sent his Ambassadour *Antonia Fonsequa*, to protest, that he would aide (with his best meanes) the Kings of *Naples*, if so be the King would attempt vpon their Estate. He met with the

the King at *Velitres* beyond Rome, to whom hee deliuered his Ambassage: whereto hee receiued not any answere; so much did the King hold in detestation, the perfidious disloyaltie of the *Arragonian*, without either Faith or Conscience.

King *Charles* his Royall entertainment in the Cities of Italy.

The King continuing on his way for *Ast*, was magnificently welcommed into the good Cities of Italie, as at *Rauia*, *Placentia*, *Lucka*, *Pisa* and *Florence*: Afterward at *Viterbo*, *Viennа* and at *Rome*, where he made his entrance into it like an Emperour (borne, and being the eldest Sonne of the Church) on the last day of the Moneth of December, in the same yeare One thousand foure hundred fourescore and thirteene, his whole Armie in Battaile arraye, and the Artillerie appointed about the Pallace of Saint *Marke*, where the King lodged. Pope *Alexander* the sixt (a natiue of *Valentia* in *Arragon*, and a partaker with *Alphonso* and *Ferdinand*) affrighted at such a Martiall entrance; locke vp himselfe in the Castell of Saint *Angelo*. But at the same time, a great part of the same Castell wall being miraculously falne to the ground; the Pope was glad to submit himselfe to the Kings kindnesse, by the meanes and mediation of *Iohn de Foix*, Duke of *Nemoux* (hee had that Dukedome of the King, in counter-change for the Viscountie of *Narbonna*) the Counts of *Bresse*, and *de Ligny*, as also the Marshall of *Gie*, and the Bishop of *Angiers*, Maister *Iohn de Rely*.

The Pope affrighted at the Kings entrance.

These two Princes being thus reconciled together, the Pope keeping Chappell at the High Altar of Saint *Peter* in Rome, the Twentieth day of Ianuary, in the said yeare the King was Crowned Emperour of the East, and of *Constantinople* by the Pope; he being assisted with Fiue and Twenty Cardinals, Thirty Arch-bishops, Forty Bishops, and an infinite number of Prelates. Then was made Cardinall *Briçonnet* of Saint *Maslo*, principall motiue of this Voyage, with the Seneshall of *Beaucaire*. And the same day the King handled the diseased of the Euill, who were instantly cured, the Italians admiring at such wonderfull power.

King *Charles* crowned Emperour of the East and of *Constantinople* by the Pope in Rome.

The power & authority of King *Charles* in Rome.

In the said City of Rome, where the King soiourned Eight and Twenty dayes, were great places appointed and prepared for Iustice, and there erected Iibbets, Strappadoes in the Kings name: some were beheaded, others hanged, some beaten, their eares cut off, and diuers drowned as Theeues and Malefactors; especially in the great Market place, called *Campo Fiore*. Whereby the Italians might vnderstand, that as the Most Christian King, Eldest Sonne of the Church, whereto the Noble Kings of France (his Predicessors) had giuen the Riches and Seigneuries which she possessed: hee had in Rome all power in those three kindes of Iustice, tearmed high, meane and middle Iustice, and all Right of Soueraignty; euen as in the City of *Paris*, and other Cities of France. Contrary to the opinion of such, as, forging an imaginary Donation of *Constantine*, granted to the Pope S. *Syluester*: make the Popes to be absolute Princes, and Soueraigne Lords of *Rome*.

The departure of King *Charles* from *Rome* toward *Naples*, & his good successe.

From whence *Charles* being departed the Eight and Twentieth day of Ianuary, to shape his course directly for *Naples*: the Castels of *Montfortin*, & of *Mont Saint Iohn*, the very strongest places in the *Neopolitane* Estate, were ouercome by assault; yet *Alphonso* had lien seauen yeares before the last of these Castles, and could not surprize it by force; which the French performed in lesse then Eight dayes, entring thereinto by a Breach, cutting the throats of Nine Hundred Fifty and Fiue men of Armes, for hauing so audaciously refused to render the place, the King then being before it himselfe in Person.

Ferdinando & his Father get away out of *Naples*, and make for *Sicille*.

Ferdinand, Duke of *Calabria*, Sonne to *Alphonso* of *Naples*, was at Saint *Germaines*, a place well fortified with three good strong Castles, as being the Key for entring into the Kingdome of *Naples*: but hauing heard the newes, that *Mont Saint Iohn* was surprized, where hee hoped that the French Army would bee vtterly defeated; hee forsooke that Towne to retreate himselfe to *Naples*. And thence also hee departed with his Father, directing their course toward *Sicily*, for plainly they perceiued, that (perforce) they must giue way to the victorious Armes of King *Charles*, whom God euen guided by the hand, to conquer *Italy*.

Capua yeelded her Keyes to the King.

The King hauing brought Saint *Germaines* vnder his power, the men of *Capua* went and deliuered vp their City Keyes: whether hee went to lodge, and made his

his entrance on the Eighteenth day of February. And the Twentieth day of the same Moneth, his Maiesty being lodged in the Towne of *Auerza*: the Deputies of *Naples* came and offered the Keyes of the Citie, and aduertised him withall, that *Alphonso* and his Sonne *Ferdinand* had quitted the place, being fled secretly by Sea into *Sicily*.

The Citie of *Naples* surrendred to King *Charles*.

Into the City of *Naples* the King made his entrance in pompe and magnificence; on Sunday, the Eight and Twentieth day of February. Afterward both by Land and Sea he caused the Cittadell to be assayled, and the two Castels *Neuf* and *l'Oeuf*. The Cittadell was taken in the assault, and the *Spanyards*, *Italians* and others which were within it, hauing burned the houses which stood round about it, got themselues into the Castell *Neuf*, where being pressed by a furious batterie, they yeelded vpon composition, to haue their liues and goods saued. Which place being taken, the whole Armie inuested the Castell *de l'Oeuf*, the batterie beginning on Wednesday the fourth day of March, and continued very violently vntill Thursday, the twelfth day of the same Moneth, when the resistants were then constrained to yeelde. So the King hauing conquered all the strong places of the Citie, he determined to make his entrance againe thereinto, as Emperour of the Romaines, King of France, of Naples, of Sicilie and of Ierusalem, on Tuesday the twelfth day of May, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fourescore and foureteene.

The Cittadel, Castels and all the strong places won, & the Kings entrance

At this his entrance, he tooke the title of *Charles Cæsar Augustus*, being clothed in a great Cloake or Mantle of Scarlet, Furred with Ermines, the Imperiall Crowne on his head, the round Ball in his right hand, and a Scepter in the left, mounted on a Horse most richly harnessed. Ouer his head was carried a Canopie of rich Cloath of Gold, embrodered all ouer with Pearles, raised on sixteene Pillers or Staues, and supported by sixteene of the very worthiest Lords in all the Kingdome of *Naples*. About his person waited his Footemen, attired all in massie Cloath of Gold; the Preuost of the Hostell, and the Archers of his Guard. Before him went the Seneschall *de Beaucaire*, Gouernour of *Gayetta* (which was taken by force) representing the Constable of the Kingdome, and *Monsieur Gilbert de Bourbon*, Count of *Montpensier*, Vice-Roy and Lieutenant Generall of the Realme. After the King followed the Prince of *Salerne*, who was became *French*; with the great Lords of *France*, Kinsemen to the King: then the Knights of his Order, all of them wearing long Cloakes of Scarlet, like vnto that of the Kings, and according to the fashion of the auncient Romaine Senators, Assistants and Councellors to the King, as those that formerly had bin to the Emperours of Rome.

The fortune & order of the Maiesticall pompe.

The Officers of State, & others according to their rank & places.

At dinner & Supper this day, the great Seneschall or Steward of *Naples*, cloathed all in white, and mounted on a white Courser, serued in all the meates before the King: who that day (with his owne hand) made many Lords Knights, and other Gentlemen of the City of *Naples*. In which Kingdome hauing left for Gouernour and Viceroy, *Gilbert* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Montpensier*: hee resolued to returne for France, and departed from the said City of *Naples* the One and Twentieth day of the same Moneth of May.

The Seneschall or Steward of Naples.

But before hee had set downe this firme resolution, hee had a purpose for the Conquest of *Constantinople*, and for his better effecting the same, hee had constrained the Pope to deliuer into his hands *Zizime*, Brother to the Great Turke *Baiazeth* the Second: who standing in feare of the Christians; paid yearely to the Pope Forty Thousand Duckats, because hee should not see him at liberty. The Popes vrging necessity, of deliuering him to King *Charles*, and loosing so much yearely money, made him to poyson him; so that hee liued but fifteene dayes at the most. Moreouer, the same Pope (in all hast) gaue aduertisement to *Baiazeth* by a *Bonaer* of *Geneua*, concerning the precedent purpose of King *Charles*.

King *Charles* hasteneth for the conquest of *Constantinople*.

And the same Pope named *Alexander* the Sixt, an *Arragonian* by Nation, and (in that quality) partaker with the House of *Arragon*; practised a League against the King, of the Emperour, the *Castilian*, the *Venetians*, *Florentines*, Duke of *Millaine*, and other Potentates of *Italy*, who fearing the Conquests of the French, had no desire at all to deale with them. For notwithstanding all faire outward apparances, they

hey hated the Dominion of the French; and in no better manner affected the Spaniards; but reputed them both proud and arrogant, not to be endured.

The fortunes of Duke *Lewes* of *Orleans*, Lieutenant of the Nauall Armie.

Since the beginning of the Kings passage on his Iourney, Duke *Lewes* of *Orleans*, his Lieutenant Generall in the Nauall Army, on the Sea had vanquished *Fredericke* of *Arragon*, Vncle to *Ferdinand*, whom *Alphonso* the Father (before hee forsooke the City of *Naples*) had caused to bee published abroad, yea, and proclaimed King of *Naples* and of *Sicily*. The same Duke of *Orleans* perceiuing, that *Lodowicke Sforza* had vniustly vsurped the Dukedome of *Millaine* against his Nephewes, whom hee had put to death by poyson, & that the said Duke was entred League with the Pope and other Potentates of *Italy*, to enclose the King at his returne; possessed himselfe of the City of *Nouara* in the Estate of *Millaine*, which (as indeed it was true) belonged to him, in regard of his Grandmother *Valentina*. On the contrary side, *Lodowicke Sforza* maintained himselfe in his vsurpation, and (in counterchange) laboured to surprize the Towne of *Ast*, appertaining to the said Duke of *Orleans*, thinking to finde nobody there to defend it; as hee might haue done, if hee had sooner thought on it: for the Marquesse of *Saluces* had sent thither Fiue Hundred men, and other troupes of well appointed Soldiers, which the Duke of *Bourbon* (Regent) had sent out of France to assist the King. But these Forces came very conueniently to coape with the men of *Millaine*, conducted by Count *Galeazzo* of S. *Seuerino*. So the Towne of *Ast* continued in obedience to *Lewes*, Duke of *Orleans*, who being possessed also of the City of *Nouara* (which is ten miles from *Millaine*) and the Castle thereof; was immediately after assailed by the said *Lodowicke Sforza*.

Lodowicke Sforza his hope for the surprizall of *Ast*.

Now, the King being parted from *Naples*, came backe by *Auerso* to Rome (from whence the Pope was gone) and won the Estate of the *Venetians*, *Sienna* and *Pisa*, (which hee tooke into his protection against the *Florentines*, and gaue the Gouernment to *Lewes* of *Luxembourg*, Count of *Ligny* his Cousin) with *Luca* & *Petra Sancta*, where is the passage of the Alpes. And from thence he went to *Scura*, *Serezana*, and *Pontremo*, the entrance of the Alpes mountaines, where the *Germaines* by maine strength passed all the great Artillery.

The returne of King *Charles* the Eight from *Naples*, & his fortunes by the way.

From *Pontremo*, the King came to lodge at *Fornoua*, the foote of the Alpie Mountaine: neere to which Borrough the *Italians* were encäped, to giue the King Battaile. The Marquesse of *Mantua* was Captaine Generall of the *Venetians*, & for the Duke of *Millaine* was the Count of *Gayazza*, who hauing forsaken the French side, tooke part with *Lodowicke Sforza*, to whom hee was then Lieutenant Generall. This Army of the Enemy consisted of very neere Forty Thousand men, all in good furnishments; and the Kings amounted not to the fourth part of them.

On Monday the Sixt day of *July*, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, Foure Score and Fifteene, was fought this memorable Battell of *Fornoua*; the honour whereof remained to King *Charles* the Eight. The Marshall of *Gie* conducted the Auant-garde, wherein, next vnder God, the King had placed all his hope. The King was in this Battaile armed at all points, his Armour most richly engrauen and gilded. Vpon his Cuirasse he ware a Cassocke of Cloth of Siluer, Dammasked with Red, (for his Liueries were Carnation and white) semed in embroyderie of Gold with the Crosse of Ierusalem. The Helmet on his head was of pure Gold, couered with a most rich Crowne, and hee was mounted on a goodly Courser, blacke haired, and named Blacke *Sauoy*, because *Charles*. Duke of *Sauoy* had sent the Horse to him as a present, richly barded, with the Chanfraine of great value, whereon was exalted a braue plume of Feathers, Carnation and White, the Caparisons and other furniture being answerable to the Coate of Armes, semed with the Crosse of *Ierusalem*.

The memorable Battaile fought at *Fornoua*, in *Anno* 1495.

The Royall presence of the King in his Army.

In this Royall equipage and manner mounted, this Prince (aged but Foure and Twenty, or Fiue and Twenty yeares) appeared farre otherwise then his nature carried, or his stature, or complexion: for the horse shewed him, to bee great, and his countenance had a cheerefull couloure, his words likewise discreet and bold. For all these respects was his person particularly obserued by his enemies, who purposed to beset him soundly; but neere to him was the Bastard of *Bourbon*, *Mathew*, who that day performed wonders, to saue and guard the person of the King.

A braue King is an eye-sore to his enemies.

The

The beginning and prosecution of the Battaile.

The Enemies (who were ten to one) began the fight, close ioyning to the Valley of *Tarro* at a place called *Vergera*, two miles from *Fornoua*, and foure miles from *Parma*: but the fire and fury thereof was about the Kings person, who acted maruailes in his fighting, being brauely seconded by *Mathew* of *Bourbon*, *Lewes de la Trimouille*, and *Iohn Iaques de Triuulce*, a *Millanois*, expulsed the City of *Naples* by *Alphonso* and *Ferdinand*. Since which time of his disgrace, he tooke part with King *Charles*, whom he serued both profitably and very faithfully, as being a very valiant and wise Captaine.

The enemies Armie felt (as yet) more feare then harme, for part of them being falne vpon the baggage, to make prey thereof, seemed to minde nothing more: but the French, making no account of so poore a losse, and perceiuing that the person of the King was safe; fell with such fury vpon the *Italians*, that they who were most valiant in the Army, began to flye in a most strange confusion, as appearing to haue neither manly feare nor shame.

The small French Army relieued almost by miracle.

A small Riuer which they had formerly passed, to come & enclose the Kings person, had so enlarged it selfe in a moment, by meanes of a storme of Raine, Thunder and Lightening, which happened while they were at fierce handy stroakes (God fighting for the noble King of France, whom he guided by the hand) that such as aduentured to passe it againe (which was no small number) neuer thinking on the perill they ranne into, were all furiously carried away and drowned in the water, and the greater part of the Infantery slaine in the field, but the Lords of worth were taken. Of the French there was slaine Seauen Hundred in all, and among them onely Ten Gentlemen of note.

The Army of the Italians foyled & put to flight.

The Bastard of *Bourbon*, by pursuing the runnawayes ouerfar, without being seconded, was take prisoner by the enemies, who sent to the King the next morning, to craue fauour for carrying away their dead, to giue them buriall. Which he would not permit, but as a signal of the victory, which God had bestowed on him, contrary to all humane hope: lodged that night in the Field of Battaile, and remained there on the morrow till towards the Euening, when hee went to lodge two miles thence, at an appointed place, named *Magdelane*, whither the Artillery was brought from the Field, and placed about the Kings Pauilion.

The Artillery placed about the Kings royall Pauilion.

On hee iourneyed in the despight of his enemies, and came to *Nouara* in good time for the Duke of *Orleans*, besiedged there by them of *Millaine*: who were compelled to raise their Siedge, and get them gone to *Millaine* againe. From *Nouara* the King went to the City of *Ast*, and thence to *Vercellis*, where dyed the Count of *Vendosme*, (a worthy Prince of the House of *Bourbon*) to the no little griefe of the French. His death happened on *Friday*, the Second day of *October*, in the said yeare, Foure Hundred, Foure Score and Fifteene: his Obsequies were celebrated in the principall Church of *Vercelles*, but his dead body was carried to *Vendosme*.

The reuolt of *Neapolitanes* so soone as King *Charles* was gone thence, & the extremity of the French.

Charles at his returne to France, addicted himselfe to Iusts and Tournaments, and to bee familiar with Ladies; without much remembring them whom hee had left in *Italy*, scarsly well entreated by the *Neapolitanes*; who reuolted (in fauour of *Ferdinand*) so soone as the King was departed. And in such manner, that the Count of *Montpensier* was constrained to withdraw himselfe to *Salerne* with the Prince thereof, who still continued honestly French.

In *Calabria* was the Lord of *Aubigny*; in *Brescia* the Lord *Gratian des Guerres*; *Georges de Suilly* at *Tarentum*, all of them in miserable case and brought to extreame necessity, through want of Victuals and money, hauing remained a yeare and an halfe without any succour or money sent from France. So that the French were enforced to yeeld themselues to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, who (as then) stiled himselfe King of *Naples* and of *Sicilie* boldly.

The Count of *Montpensier* poysoned by the *Neapolitane*.

Charles being aduertised of these bad newes, and likewise of the death of the Lord *de Montpensier* (impoysoned by the *Neapolitane*) which brought along with it more then hope for reddition of the City of *Gayetta*, the sole entrance for regaining the State of *Naples*: resolued to set another puissant Armie on foote, and repasse it againe to *Naples*; hauing named for his Lieutenant Generall the Duke of *Orleans*. But he refused that charge, alleadging one while one excuse, and then againe another. Now indeed

indeed the truth was, that being well informed of the Kings condition, to be so weake and impotent of nature, as presaged no long continuance for him; hee would not leaue France, the Crowne whereof appertained to him, because the King had not any Sonnes.

The sudden death of King *Charles* the Eight.

In regard of these refusals, the King determined to goe himselfe in person thither, which he could not doe, in being preuented by sudden death, as hee was looking out of his Gallery window, at his Castle *d'Amboise*, (which hee caused to bee newly re-builded euen as now it is at this day) beholding the Princes and Lords of his Court, playing at Tennis. Hee dyed the Seauenth day of Aprill, the end of the yeare Foure Score and Seauenteene, before Easter, at which day sollemnly begin the yeares in France. In *Guienne* they begin on the day of the Incarnation of our Lord, which is the Fiue and Twentieth day of *March*.

The Kings vow before his death.

This Prince some while before his death, made a vow to God, no more to commit any mortall sinne: he withdrew himselfe from the worldly vanities of his Court, forsooke the loue of Ladies, and liued chastly wth his wife Queene *Anne*, a beautifull and wise Princesse.

The age of the King at his death.

At the houre of his death, hee entred into the Flower of his Age, hauing finished but Seauen and Twenty yeares. Of his owne naturall disposition, he was humble and courteous to euery one, bountifull and magnificent, a good Catholique, without hypocrisie, faithfull, an vpright Iusticer without dissimulation, and well beloued of his people. Of whom, and of all strangers hee won the reputation, to be the most valiant and couragious Prince of his person, that had beene seene in an hundred yeares before. From *Amboise* his body was carried to *Paris*, and from thence to Saint *Denis*, in France, where his Figure is to bee seene in Brasse, kneeling on his knees, and his hands closed, but aduanced towards heauen, with this Epitaph, as a testimony of his valiancie.

His body carried from *Amboise* and buried at *S Denis*.

The Epitaph hanging in a goodly Table by his Tombe.

Hic Octaue iaces Francorum Carole Regum,
Cui victa est forti Britonis ora manu.
Parthenope illustrem tribuit captiua triumphum,
Claraque Fornouio pugna peracta solo.
Coepit et Henricus regno depulsus auito,
Bellare auspicijs sceptra Britanna tuis.
O plures longinquc dies si fata dedissent,
Te nullus toto maior in Orbe foret.

His deformity recompenced with greater blessings.

Hee was deformed in face and body, but in recompence thereof, God had giuen him a faire minde, susceptible and capable of haughty enterprises: which (without all question to the contrary) would haue beene executed, if his life had lasted longer time.

The Cardinals in opposition against the Pope.

The Conquests of *Charles* the Eight in *Italy*, were trauersed by the King of *Castile*, *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, contrary to former promise, and by Pope *Alexander* the Sixt, pertaker with the House of *Arragon*, a coniurd Enemy against our *Charles*, from whom (in violence of passion) hee laboured to take the name of most Christian King, for transferring it to the said *Ferdinand* of *Castile*. But the Cardinals opposed themselues couragiously against him, so that this Pope deuised another name or title, giuing to the said *Ferdinand* & his Wife the Sirname of Catholique Kings; a name which hath euer since remained to them, for hauing brought to end the warres of *Granado*.

Preparation to recouer *Millaine*.

King *Lewes* hauing succeeded in the Crowne, repudiated Madame *Iane* of France, whom hee had espoused perforce, and tooke to Wife Madame *Anne* of *Bretaigne*, widdow to King *Charles* the Eight. After this Marriage, he made his preparations for recouering his Dukedome of *Millaine*, (which belonged to him, in the right of *Valentina* of *Millaine*, his Grandmother, as wee haue formerly related in the Order of *Orleans*) and for the expulsion of *Lodowicke*.

Here-

Hereupon, and to effect what hee intended, he caused a potent Army to passe the mountaines, conducted by the Lord *d'Aubigny*, *Robert Stuart*, an honourable Scot, Marshall of France, called the good Father of Cheualrie, & *Iohn Iacques de Trimoüille*, a *Millanois* (afterward Marshall of France) who at their first approach, tooke *Nouara* and *Rocque*, land *Alexandria* in the dust, the spoyle whereof serued for recompence to the Souldiours. *Pauia* fearing to runne the same fate, yeelded it selfe freely to the French: so that within the compasse of fifteene dayes, they conquered the Dukedome of *Millaine*. All this while was *Lodowicke* within the City, who growing distrustfull of the people; got secretly thence with his two Sonnes, escaping by the Lake of *Coma*, and fled toward *Maximilian*, King of the Romaines, to derive some succour from him. By his departure, *Millaine* was taken by the French, the fourth day of September, in the yeare, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, Foure Score and Nineteene; the Castell still holding out for *Lodowicke* the Moore.

Millaine taken by the French.

Lewes the Twelfth receiued tidings at *Lyons*, concerning the surprizall of *Millaine*; whether hee went with all diligence, and made his entrance into it. The Captaine of the *Rocquet* or Cittadell, who could well haue held it two yeares space at the least, so strongly it was furnished with all things necessary; did yet neuertheless yeeld it into the Kings hand, to haue the moity of the goods and riches that were in it.

King *Lewes* his entrance into *Millaine*.

Lodowicke, assisted by the forces of *Maximilian*, preuailed on so farre, that hee got entrance into *Millaine*, by intelligence and reuolt of the Inhabitants, this was done the third day of Ianuary, in the said yeare foure hundred fourescore & Nineteene; the French yet keeping still the Castell, which *Lodowicke* could not get by friendship nor force.

The Iubilie for the Seculer yeare, One thousand fiue hundred, being open at Rome (the Eeuen of Christmasse, in the said yeare foure score and nineteene, on which day the Romaines begin their yeare) by Pope *Alexander* the Sixt: great concourse of the people (of all Nations) flocked into *Italy*, namely of the French, whose deuotion was much troubled by the bad dealing of *Lodowicke*, who did set their liues at open sale, giuing a Duckate for euery head brought him: so that in all the Innes and Hosteries throughout *Italy*, vpon the high roade wayes conducting to Rome, French Pilgrimes throats were cut most cruelly. Which was no sooner discouered, but the French Army, remaining in the parts about *Millaine*, made warre (without any pity) on them of *Millaine*, and so fast as any of them could be taken, blood for blood (and more to expiate and appease the Ghosts of the French. And for example to the Hosteries and Innes (all crimson tinctured with their blood:) diuers were burned with their Masters, Wiues, Maid-seruants and Men-seruants, without sparing sparing so much as their Cats, which serued as no meane terror an affright to others.

The yeare of Iubilie at Rome.

The bloodie cruelties of the French against the Italians.

Now, that which gaue subiect to the *Millanoises* (by their owne confession) to reuolt from *Lewes* the twelfth, was this extreame bad behauiour in the French. At the first Voyage which King *Charles* the Eight made beyond the Mountaines; the Italians (so speaketh our French *Saluſt Philip de Commines*) adored the French, reputing them to bee Saints, and saying, that they had not their like for goodnesse, Faith, mildnesse and discretion. But this good opinion of them lasted not long, for our French misgouerned Libertines, by their riots and robberies, declared the quite contrary: and gaue apparant subiect of being accused, for taking mens wiues perforce from them, and goods from the people, whersoeuer they could find them by night or day.

The first Voyage of King *Charles* the Eight into Italy.

Concerning the women, it may be that they lied not; and for the rest, doubtlesse somwhat was done; for the French could not finde any thing too hot, or too heauie, a disease neuertheless) as common to the Italians, Germaines, Spaniards, and other Nations, as to the French. But this was it that confounded the Kings affaires, which otherwise had carried themselues formally: but being conducted without any order, and the French Souldiers transported with pilferies; this was the reason, of alienating the Italians from their former affection to the French, to the great griefe and

and discontentment of honest mindes, for the extraordinary honour and renowne, which the French nation might haue won to themselues in this Voyage.

And such bad behauiours, are meanes vtterly contrary for attaining to any great Conquest, in what part soeuer it is (but especially in Italy) and to keepe it long: because the Italians are the most ielous and couetous Nation, beyond all other in the world. Wherefore, whosoeuer would make him selfe a Potentate in Italy; hee must hold it for an infallible Maxime, to be very modest and retent in all his actions; but especially towards women; and to lay no oppression vpon the people.

The natural disposition of the Italians.

The Italians are inconstant, and desire nothing more then change, they contemne the facility of the French, and hate the rigor of the Dutch, a Nation diuers wayes proud and tyrannicall, yet can better conserue their Conquests, then we: who of all our Voyages to *Piedmont*, *Millaine*, *Naples*, and *Sicilie*, haue not reserued one inch of ground. Diffidence is the Mother of Assurance, and to make our owne best beginning, it behoueth vs first to conquer our selues.

Distrust is the mother of assurance.

Maxima cunctarum Victoria, victa voluptas.

A graue Verse, well seruing for an Epitaph on the Tombe of Great *Scipio* the African: who abstained from all force and violence towards men and their goods. Moreouer, to containe the people subiected to duty, by a moderated gouernment betweene mildnesse and power: is to stand vpon good guard night and day, and not to trust ought else, but in good behauiour towards the Italians, with whom to communicate and be the least familiar, is the best and safest.

The Epitaph on the tombe of great *Scipio*

Now the men of *Millaine* being thus reduced vnder the obedience of Lord *Lodowicke*; the King was constrained once more, to bring an Army into the Field; which he committed to the conduct of *Messire Lewes de la Trimouille*, Viscount of *Thouars*: who hauing made an agreement betweene the Lords of *Aubigny* and of *Trimoüille*; all three ioyned together, and gaue such order and direction to the Army, that *Lodowicke* standing in feare thereof, was inforced againe to forsake *Millaine*, with an hundred horse onely, and so withdrew himselfe to *Nouara*, where was his Army and Artillery. As speedily was he followed by the French Army, whereto a *Bourgongnon* Captain, named *Des Tottieres*, yeelded himselfe, being come forth of the said Towne of *Nouara*, wherein (at that time) for *Ledowicke* were foure thousand *Swizzers*, eight thousand *Lanſ-kenets*, about sixe or seauen thousand *Lombards*, and eight hundred *Bourgongnons*, who with the said Captaine *Des Tottieres*, ioyned themselues to the French Army on the one side, and the foure thousand *Swizzers*, won by the Bailiffe of *Dijon*, on the other side.

King *Lewes* raiseth another Army against *Lodowicke*.

Lodowicke came forth into the Field, and presented Battaile to the French, which they accepted very willingly, and *Lodowicks* Army comming to handy blowes; they submitted to the French without striking one stroake: because the *Swizzers* and *Lanſ-kenets* being not paid their Wages, they would not by any meanes fight. Such misfortunes as this, doe often happen to Princes, that make vse of Strangers seruice, who when need requireth; will bee sure to hold their hands, making three or foure demands for money before the Battaile, when they well know it is not to be had. Let a Prince therefore prouide his Army of his owne Subiects, of whom he shall bee better and more profitably serued: for strangers soules are meerely mercenary, and they affect not Princes, but in regard of the benefit they can deriue from them. They are for their seruice that will giue them most, and their loue is poysed in the Ballance with their wages, but no otherwise. *Lodowicke* being thus betrayed, disguised himselfe in the habite of a Gray-Frier, as hoping so to saue himselfe. But the Lord of *Trimouille*, causing a passage to be made betweene two Pikes crossed, for all them of the enemies Army, departing with their liues and goods saued, one after another: *Lodowicke* being knowne, was taken, and sent Prisoner to *Chasteau de Pierre Encise* at *Lyons*, from whence he was (not long after) transported to the great Tower of *Bourges*, and there he finished his dayes.

The Army of *Lodowicke* faileth him in the Field.

A very worthy aduice giuen to Princes.

Lodowicke taken and sent Prisoner into France.

The Towne of *Nouara* by this meanes yeelded it selfe to the King, who had for his part of the victory (won on the thursday before Palme-Sunday in the same yeare fourescore and nineteen) *Lodowicke*, and all his Artilery, with the Towne of *Nouara*, very rich and mighty in goods.

Ascanio Sforza brother to *Lodowicke*.

The Cardinall *Ascanio Sforza*, left Gouernour at *Millaine* by his Brother, hauing heard the tidings of his surprizall: departed thence, accompanied with three hundred Horse, belonging to the richest Inhabitants, and some pieces of Artillery, taking his way towards *Bologna*. On the way hee was met by a *Venetian* Captaine, that came with his troupe to ioyne with the Armie Royall. This Captaine was named *Soncino Bianſono*, who crying out aloud *France* and Saint *Marke*, ſet vpon the Cardinalls Company, conducted by Count *John*, Brother to the Marqueſſe of *Mantua*, to whom hee gaue charge, to purſue him fighting to *Chaſteau de Rinolles*, where the Cardinall was as ſoone inueſted by the *Venetian*, who had priſoner in his power Count *John* of *Mantua*, of whom hee had a great ranſome. With him was taken the Abbot of *Sanzeles*, foure of the Viſcounts, Captaine *Bardo*, & an hundred thouſand Duckats in ready money, with all the Iewels of the Cardinall *Aſcanio*, who likewiſe was contented to yeeld, onely his life ſaued. Hee was deliuered into the hands of *Stephen de Vers*, Seneſchall of *Beaucaire*, Lord of *Montoiſon*, and the Iudge *Mage* of *Prouence*: who brought him ſafely to *Chaſteau de Pierre-Enciſe* at *Lyons*, euen where before his Brother was impriſoned.

The Iamentable condition of the *Millanoiſes* vpō loſſe of their Duke & his Brother.

The Inhabitants of *Millaine* much daunted at the ſurprizall of their Duke, his Brother alſo, and the diſcomfiture of their Armie, by that of the Kings which had inueſted them; ſent their Deputies to the Cardinall *George d'Amboiſe*, who by the King was eſtabliſhed Lieutenant Generall ouer the *Millainers*; entreating him to take compaſſion of them, to ſaue their City from pillage, and to make his entrance into it, cruing moſt humbly pardon of him, for their offence committed, by admitting Lord *Lodowicke* into their City. The Cardinall made it manifeſt to them, by Maſter *Michaell de Ris*, Doctor of the Lawes, and Councellour in the Parliament of *Bourgongne*, that the enormity of their rebellion was puniſhable with death: becauſe (without any ſubiect) they had withdrawne themſelues from obedience to their King and Souraigne Lord, who had ſo mildly and mercifully dealt with them. And that the ſumme of a million of Pounds which they paid yearly to *Lodowicke* in taxes and tallages, hee had moderated it to the ſumme of ſixe hundred and two & twenty thouſand pounds (here is to be noted, that the Dukedome of *Millaine* valued yearely fifteene hundred thouſand Duckats) which gentle and mild vſage in the French, they had neuertheleſſe vtterly forgot.

The Dukedome of *Millaines* yearely valuation.

All which notwithſtanding, hee declared to them in the Kings name, that hee would ſpare the liues of the Inhabitants, and exempt their City from pillage, and all the people from death, which they had iuſtly deſerued, vpon condition: that they would yeeld and deliuer to him, the principall Authours of the rebellion, to bee iuſtly puniſhed, and themſelues (for euer after) continue faithfull to the King, and to his Succeſſours the Kings of France, their Dukes and Souereigne Lords.

Moreouer, to defray the charges of this laſt warre, the City of *Millaine* ſhould (for an honourable amends) pay three hundred thouſand Ducates; to wit, fifty thouſand in the preſent Moneth of *Aprill*, One thouſand, fiue hundred and fifty thouſand the firſt day of *May* next followng; and the other two hundred thouſand at the end of the ſame yeare, except the King would be pleaſed in clemencie, to prolong them a further time for the laſt payment.

The Cardinall *d'Amboiſe* his entrance into *Millaine*.

Which being agreed vnto, the Cardinall *d'Amboiſe* entred into *Millaine* vpon Good Friday, it being the ſeauenteenth day of *Aprill*: accompanied wih *Meſſire Iacques de Triuulce* (Marſhall of France in the time of King *Frances*) the Biſhop of *Lucon*, Chancellour of *Millaine*, the Lord of *Neuf-Chaſtell*, with other Lords and Captaines of the Armie. Hee went to lodge at the Hoſtell called *La Cour-Viſcha*, the Pallace belonging to the firſt Viſcounts of *Millaine*, whether the three Eſtates thereof went in ſolemne proceſſion, bearing the Crucifixe and Banner of the Virgin *Mary*; after which followed all the Children of the City, Sonnes and Daughters, cloathed all in white, and in this manner the Cardinall welcomed them in the Court of his Pallace, ſitting aloft vpon a Theater, and round about him his French Lords and Captaines. For the Inhabitants, the man moſt famous among their Aduocates, named Maiſter *Michael Touſe*, made the Oration, deſiring grace and mercy on their

The Cardinals mercy to the Citizens.

their behalfe. The Councellour *de Ris* returned a kinde and mercifull anſwere, whose then the inconſtant people deſerued: which being concluded, all the young Children (innocent in the guilt of their Fathers) paſſed two and two together before the French Lords, crying with lowd voyces, *France*, *France*, *Mercy*, *Mercy*.

Now King *Lewes* the Twelfth, hauing recouered his Dukedome of *Millaine*, wherein he eſtabliſhed as his Lieutenant Generall *Iohn Iacques de Triuulce*, Marſhall of France, a Lord naturally affected of the Countrey, and moſt faithfull to the Crowne of France) with the Seigneuries of *Geneway*, where gouerned (for his Maiſty) the Prince *Philip* of *Cleues*, Lord of *Rauaſtaine*, his Couſin by the Mothers ſide: hee reſolued to conquer the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicily*. To effect his intention, he cauſed to paſſe into *Italy* his Lieutenant Generall *Lewes* of *Armaignac*, Duke of *Nemoux*, and *Meſſire Robert Stuart*, a valiant Scottiſhman, Lord of *Aubigny*, Knight of his Order, and Marſhall of France, worthily called, *The Father of Chiualrie*, who (in ſhort time) reconquered the City and Kingdome of *Naples*, againſt *Dom Frederick* of *Naples*, who after the death of *Dom Ferainand* his Nephew, had poſſeſſed himſelfe thereof.

The Kings purpoſe to conquer *Naples* & *Sicily*.

His reſiſtance was but of ſmall continuance, being compelled to yeeld himſelfe to the Lord of *Aubigny*, who ſent him into France, whither (within few dayes after) his Wife and Children, excepting the Eldeſt *Dom Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, Duke of *Calabria*, who had fortified himſelfe in the City of *Tuceatum*) followed him. So came the Kingdome of *Naples* againe to her legitimate and naturall Lord the Kings of France, in the yeare of our Saluation, One Thouſand, Fiue Hundred and Two.

Dom Frederick conquered & ſent into *France*.

Ferdinand of *Arragon* King of *Caſtile* (to whom the French gaue the name of *Iohn Gippon*) was moſt highly offended at theſe Conqueſts of the French in Italie, and practiſed all meanes hee could deuiſe, to turne the winde a contrary way. Particularly he dealt with the *Venetians* (at all times held and knowne to be wiſe & well aduiſed worldlings) to aſſiſt theſe partakers of *Arragen*, for the kingdome of *Naples*; as they did within a while after. He (for his owne part) making an outward ſhew of being well pleaſed, at the ſucceſſefull fortunes of the French, gaue charge to his Sonne in Law *Philip*, Arch-duke of *Auſtria* (Father vnto *Charles* the Fift) that, at his returning into the Netherlands or Low-Countries, hee ſhould reſolue on a brotherly amity, in him towards King *Lewes*, who as then ſoiourned at *Lyons*, as being neereſt to him of his Eſtates, that were in Italy.

The Conqueſts of the French in *Italie* enuied by *Ferainand* of *Arragon*.

Philip being there well entertained, performed to the King Liedge homage for the County of Flanders, a Peeredome of France: ſo practiſed and done in fauour of King *Ferdinand* his Father in Law, when they made this agreement; to wit. That the ſaid *Ferdinand* ſhould enioy the Realme of *Sicily*, and beare the title, renouncing for the King, all right which he had or could pretend; and her yeelding it to the ſaid *Ferdinand* and his Succeſſors; moreouer and beſide the Countries of *Apuglia* and *Calabria*, neighbours to *Sicilie*. As *Ferdinand* (for his part) acquitted and releaſed to the King, and to his Succeſſors Kings of France, the Title of King of *Naples*, and of Ieruſalem, with all that hee could pretend thereto, without any time after ward, either he or his Succeſſors ſhould take the titles, or vſe the Armes. And that vnto the Kings of France ſhould remaine *Abbruzzo* and *Terra di Laucuro* (wherein is the City of *Naples*) which Lands of *Abbruzzo* and *di Laucuro*, aſſigned to the French with the ſaid Titles and Armes of Kings of *Naples* and of *Ieruſalem*, & thoſe of *Calabria* and *Apuglia*, aſſigned to the *Arragonnois*, ſhould bee a conquered and wonne by theſe two Kings each at his owne coſt and by power, without any damage or diſturbance enſuing by the one to the other.

The County of *Flanders* a Peeredome of France.

The accord betweene *Ferdinand* and the Kings of France.

This Partition or diuiſion was approued by Pope *Alexander* the Sixt, and peace ſworne betweene theſe two great Princes, *Lewes* the Twelfth, and *Ferdinand* the Firſt, King of *Spaine*, called th Catholique. Wherein were comprehended *Maximilian* King of the Romanes, and his Sonne *Philip*, Arch-duke of *Auſtria*: publiſhed and proclaimed in the City of *Lyons*, the Fourth day of *Aprill*, after Eaſter, in the yeare, One thouſand, fiue hundred and three.

The peace ſworne betweene France and Spaine.

Fredericke of Naples dies in *France* in the City of *Tours.*

Lewes had vsed (very fauourably) *Fredericke* of *Naples*, to whom, and to his Wife and Children hee had assigned in *Aniou* the principall Cities and Townes for their Estate, to the value of Thirty Thousand Crownes of Rents, which hee enioyed till his deceasse, and which hapned in the City of *Tours*. Hee had beene foure yeares King of *Naples*, hauing succeeded his Nephew *Dom Ferdinand*, Successor to his Father *Dom Alphonso*: euen he who (pressed by the victorious Armes of King *Charles*, after hee had made knowne for King his said Sonne *Ferdinand*) fled into *Sicilie*, where hee dyed a Monke; who was Sonne and Successour in the same Kingdome to *Ferdinand*, the Bastard Sonne to *Don Alphonso* of *Arragon*, Adopted by the Second *Ioane* Queene of *Naples*, as wee haue formerly reported to you.

Gonsale Ferdinandes de Cordoua sent into the Kingdome of *Naples*

Ferdinand, to the preiudice of the accord and peace, which had beene sworne to *Lewes* the Twelfth, sent into the kingdom of *Naples Dom Gonsalo Ferdinandes de Cordua*, to whom the Spaniards had giuen the Sirname of a great and valiant Captaine, who receiued secret command, that possessing himselfe of *Apuglia* and *Calabria*: he should find some apt and conuenient means, wherby to expell the French out of the Kingdome of *Naples*: which Realm is diuided into sixe principall Prouinces, as namely,

The Prouinces of *Naples*.

Terra di Lauoro, *La Principalita*, *La Basilicata*, *Calabria*, *Apuglia* and *Abruzzia*. *Puilla* or *Apuglia* is subdiuided in three parts: the Land of *Otranto*, that of *Bari*, and the *Capitanate* ioyned to *Abruzzo*, and separated from *Apuglia*, by the Riuer of *Ofanta*; so that the *Capitanate* had beene at all times esteemed and ceenzed ioyned to *Abruzzo*.

This is the most fertile Countrey of *Italy*, as well for all manner of Corne, as feeding of Cattell: so that the Custome thereof valueth (at the least) Fo[illegible] Score Thousand Duckats yearly, and comprized with the Partage of the French.

The naturall disposition of braue Leaders & Captaines.

Gonsale neuertheleesse, according to the disposition of a Commander, whose naturall inclination is, alwayes to preferre the enlarging of their estate before the feare of God, and faith sworne & promised with most exquisite solemnity; laying claime to the *Capitanate*, possessed himselfe thereof perforce, alleadging, that it belonged to his partage, as ioyning to *Apuglia*, which it could not doe.

But this Captaine hath beene said in all his actions and course of life, to bea man faithlesse and without feare of God, and was euermore wont to say. *That a Souldiour who desireth to make himselfe famous to Posterity, should build his fortune according to those occurrences, wherely hee findeth the best meanes to doe it, and to warpe the cloath of his honour with a grosse woofe: without caring what men may iudge concerning the right or wrong of his Armes; prouided, that hee doe aduance the affaires of his Master.*

Warrelike dexterity of the Italians in their malice or wrong.

And now the French are to seene in Armes, standing on their Guard against their enemies, appearing at their first arriuall milde as Lambes, loath to be moued: Afterward like Lyons, against such as would take their Pasturage from them. In all occasions elsse, men of Warre, of long foresight and prouidence, in managing and conseruing their Conquests, the honour and the profit of them.

A second agreement and pacification.

The French being succoured, regained the *Capitanate*, and shut vp *Gonsalo* in *Barletta*; who aided likewise by his men, had his reuenge. Hee made a second agreement and pacification, notwithstanding which, albeit sworne againe by the King, and *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*: yet *Gonsalo* left not the pursuit of his intent. And by surprizing the Lord of *Aubigny*, by the death the Vice-Roy of *Naples*, *Lewes* of *Armagnac*; the Spaniards became Maisters of that which we held there, and namely of the City of *Naples*, whereof the said *Ferdinand Gonsalo de Cordoua*, possessed himselfe the Thirteenth day of May, in the yeare Fiue Hundred and Three.

The Pope and the Venetians make a confederacie against the King of France.

This surprizall happened by default in the *Venetians*, who had promised succour to the King: but they performed it not: which made him conclude to giue them battaile at *Agnadell*, which was won by the French, the King being there in person, on Friday the eighteenth day of *May*, One thousand, fiue hūdred & nine After which Pope *Iulius* the Second (turning his back on the King, who had cōquered & rendred those Townes which the *Venetians* held of the Churches Patrimony) inuested in the Kingdome of *Naples*, One thousand, fiue hūdred & ten *Ferdinand* of *Arragon* paying Eight

Eight thousand Ounces of Gold, payable yearely on the day of the Prince of the Apostles, and from three yeares to three yeares, a white Hackney, Fifty thousand Crownes of Siluer in ready money, and the wages of three hundred men of Armes, at all times, and as often, as hee should bee summoned thereto, on behalfe of the Sacred Seate.

The famous Battaile of *Rauenna* fought on Easter day.

Against this Pope and his pertakers, was won the Battaile of *Rauenna*, by the Gentle and Couragious Prince *Gaston de Foix*, Duke of *Nemoux*, Counte *de Estampes*, Nephew to the King, and his Lieutenant Generall in Italie, by the death of *Charles de Amboise*. The victory of this Battaile, wonne vpon the sollemne day of Easter, being the Eleuenth day of April, 1beginning the yeare one Thousand, fiue hundred and twelue; was on the French side, albeit they lost their chiefest Leader there.

This good Pope *Iulius* the Second, brought troubles quite throughout all Italie, onely to expell the French nation thence. He excommunicated King *Lewes* the Twelfth; *Maximilian*, King of the Romanes, and other pertakers with the French. The Bull of the said excommunication, was giuen at Saints *Peters* the foureteenth of the Calends of *August*, One thousand, fiue hundred and eleauen, and of his Pontificalitie the eight Subsigned *Iulius Ecclesiæ Catholica Episcopus*; which fulminations was declared to be of none effect or vertue, by the *Galicane* Church. It was also the same Pope, who seconding the desseignes of *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, whom he had inuested in the Kingdome of *Naples*; gaue him a secret Bull of dispensation, to possesse himselfe of the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, against *Iohn de Albret*, and Queene *Katharine* his wife, for being allied and of kinred, and taking part with King *Lewes* the Twelfth. This Bull beareth date the Eighteenth day of *Febrary*, in the yeare for Inuesting the said *Ferdinand* in the Kingdome of *Naples*, One Thousand fiue hundred and tenne, the seauenth of his Pontificalitie, at the Pallace of *Laterane*.

The King of France excommunicated by Pope *Iulius* the second.

Vrbanus Reuersus, Chanon and Chaunter of the Citty of *Sens*, and Doctour in Diuinitie, in his Booke of the liues of the Archbishops of *Sens* writeth, that after the Battaile at *Rauenna*, won on the sollemne feast day of Easter, beginning the yeare fiue hundred and twelue against Pope *Iulius* the Second, the elected Emperour *Maximillian*, and the *Venetians*; the said Pope *Iulius*, ouer and beside his fury against the *French*, and King *Lewes* the twelfth, King of *Naples*, Duke of *Millaine* and Lord of *Geneway*; composed three verses and small Prayers, in honour of the Virgin *Mary*, to expell the *French* out of *Italie*. And he ordained, that they should be said thorow all the lands vnder his obedience, and of his Allies and Confederates euery day, at Morning and Euening, at towling the Bell for *Aue Maria*; with great Pardons and Indulgences to all such as said them. To meete equally with this kinde affection in Pope *Iulius*, (a Martialliste and warriour) good King *Lewes* the twelfth, father of his people, obtained of the Prelates and Cleargy of *France*; that euery day, in all Churches Cathedrall, Collegiall, Conuentuall and Parochiall, at the eleuation of the body of our Lord in the Masse, this Versicle should be sung,

Concerning three Verses; composed by the Pope in honor of the Virgin *Mary*.

O Salutaris Hostia
Quæ Coeli pandis ostium,
Bella premunt hostilia.
Da robur, fer auxilium.

Verses made to answer the kindenesse of Pope *Iulius*.

But in the Oratorie and Chappell of the King, the Chaunters in that place, instead of *Fer auxilium*, vsed to say.

Da robur, Serua Lilium.

Which was afterward was put in practise, by all the Cathedrall & Parish Churches thorow *France*.

King *Frances* the first his comming to the Crowne.

But the good King *Lewes* the twelfth, being deceased in his hostell *Des Tournelles* at *Paris*, the first day of *Ianuary*, one thousand foure hundred & foureteene, King *Frances* the first, his cousine, the very neerest to succeed him, came to the Crown of *France*, & to the pretensions of *Ierusalem*, *Naples* & *Sicilie*, as also of *Millayne*, Countie of Ast. &c.

Et ad hunc spes duras Auorum.

The Armes of the Norman Princes.

The Armes of them that were Kings of *Sicilie* and of *Naples*, haue beene changed diuerſly, according to the mutations of Families and Houſes: becauſe the Norman Princes, ſo many wayes and times allied to the moſt Sacred Crowne of France, *Porterent de Gueules à la Bande Eſchiquetee d'Argent & d'Azur de deux Traicts*, Which was continued vntill the death of the laſt King of *Sicily*, *William* the Good, who deceaſed without any iſſue, as we haue already related.

Conſtance, Siſter to this laſt *William*, was married to the Emperour *Henry*, Sixt of the name, who being of the Houſe of *Suauba*; *Porta d'Argent à Trois Leopards de Sable, paſſants l'vn ſur l'autre*: Armes likewiſe borne by her Deſcent, and to the Baſtard *Mainfroy*, *Qui porta d'Argent à deux Aigles de Sable*.

The Kings of *Arragon*, Succeſſours to this Baſtard in his Vſurpation, of the ſaid Kingdomes of *Sicily* and *Naples*, againſt the Houſes of *Anion*, haue euen to this preſent, *Porte d'Arragon, qui eſt d'Or, à Quatre Paulx de Gueules Flanquees* with thoſe of the Baſtard *Mainfroy*, which they tearme of *Sicilie*.

The beginning of the two Houſes of Anion.

Of the two Houſes of *Anion*, the firſt began in the perſon of *Monſieur Charles* of France, Brother to the King Saint *Lewes*, *Porta ſeme de France ſans nombre au Lambel de Gueules mouuant de Chef*, as haue done, and doe all the deſcendants.

The Second began with *Monſieur Lewes* of France, Sonne to King *John*. *Porta de Ieruſalem; party de Sicilie, qui eſt de France ſans nombre au Lambel de Gueules en Chef: Tierce d'Aniou, qui eſt de France ſans nombre, à la Bordure de Gueules.*

Yoland of Arragon, onely Daughter to Don Pedro.

Lewes, Third of the name, King of *Sicily*, and Duke of *Aniou*, Eldeſt Sonne to King *Lewes* the Second, and *Yoland* of *Arragon*, onely Daughter to the King of *Arragon*, *Dom Pedro* Firſt of the name, to whom appertained without any difficulty the Kingdome of *Arragon* vſurped, (according as many other Seigneuries were) by the Brother to the ſaid King *John*, *Dom Martin* of *Arragon* againſt his Niece. The ſame King *Lewes* the Third, *Porta d'Arragon ſur le Tout de ſes Armes*, according as did his Brother and Succeſſour.

The Armes of Charles Martell.

Rene, King of *Sicily*, called the *Good*, who varied his Armes of Alliances of his Predeceſſours Dukes of *Aniou*, and Kings of *Sicily*: becauſe that he, *Porta d'Hongrie*, in regard of *Charles Martell*, (Sonne to *Charles*, Second of the name, King of *Sicily* and of *Naples*) Crowned King of *Hungary*, *Party de Sicilie*, (as did *Monſieur Lewes* of France) *Et Tierce de Ieruſalem: en Chef ſouſtenu des Duchez d'Aniou, & de Bar: Sur le Tout d'Arragon*. Wee may ſee theſe carried in moſt part of the Armes, belonging to the Illuſtrious Houſe of *Lorraine*, deſcended of the Houſe of *Aniou*, in the perſon of Madame *Yoland* of *Sicilie* and of *Anieu*, Daughter to the good King *Rene*.

And the difference in Armes of the ſaid King, maketh it ſelfe eaſily knowne, by the Eſcutcheons of the Princes of this Houſe, Knights of the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, whereof we haue formerly ſpoken.

The Deuice for the Armes of Duke Godfrey of Bullen.

They haue placed *Arragon* in the fourth part of the Chiefe, & parted the Armes of *Gueldres* betweene that of *Aniou* and of *Bar*, and aboue all, for them of *Lorraine*, *La Deuize bien Blazonnee*, of the Firſt King of *Ieruſalem*, of the Latine name, *Godfroy de Bologne, Duc de Lorraine, & de Bouillon*. This Deuice is richly Blazonned, *D'Or à la bande de Gueules chargee de Trois Allerions d'Argent*. Thoſe of *Bologne* were, *D'Or au Gonfanon de Gueules frange de Synople*. And them of *Lorraine* (before the ſaid *Godfrey* of *Bologne*) were *D'Argent au Cerf paſſant de Gueules, ſomme d'Or ſans nombre*.

The good King *Rene* Blazoned his Armes, as in like manner did his Father, and of the faſhion deſcribed in his Armes by his Herauld, and King of Armes of his Order called *Croiſſant d'Or*.

De Trois puiſſants Royaumes ſous Tymbre coronné
Porte en Chef en ſes Armes le Noble Roy Rene
Hongrie, & Sicile, Hieruſalem auſſi
Ainſi que voir pouuez en ceſt Eſcrit icy.
D'Anion, & Bar en Pieds, Duchez de Grand renom,
Et vn Royal Eſcu ſur le Tout d'Arragon.

Sieſt l'Excellent Prince Chenalereux Courtois
Pour vray Roy, Fils de Roy, Frere, & Oncle de Roys:
Il crie Mont-Ioye-Anion, cartel eſt ſon plaiſir.
Pour Deuiſe, Chauffettes, porte D'Ardant Deſir.
Et par deuotion amoureuſe ſans blaſme,
Les Patenoſtres porte pour l'amour deſa Dame.

The ſame thus Engliſhed.

Of three great Realmes, vnder a Crowned Creſt,
Noble King Rene *beares, as Chiefe and beſt*
Hungaria, Sicilie, and Ieruſalem,
As here you may behold the Royall ſtemme.
Aniou, and Bar en Pieds, Duchies of Renowne,
And aboue all Great Arragons rich Crowne.
Theſe Honors to this Knightly Prince Fame brings;
A King, Kings Sonne, Vncle and Brothering Kings.
His crie, Mont-Ioye-Aniou, *ſuch his flames-fire.*
Chafing-Diſhes his Deuiſe, in Ardent Deſire.
In Amorous deuotion, blameleſſe as may be,
Pure Pater-noſters to his louely Lady.

Concerning the related Deuiſe of King Rene.

Which is thus ſpoken for enquirie, and to make it known, that like as all the Princes, iſſued of the Noble and Sacred Lillies, doe beare Armes with the Creſt and Supporters of France; ſo in like manner doe they beare the *Warre-Crye*. And as concerning the Deuiſe of the ſaid King *Rene*, in the lifetime of Queene *Iſabel* (Ducheſſe of *Lorraine*) his firſt wife. He carried *Warming-Pannes*, or *Chafing-Diſhes* full of fire, and for the Soule or ſpeaking part of this Deuiſe *D'Ardant Deſir*, *Enflamed Deſire*. He placed it within a Chaplet or wreath of *Pater-noſters* or Beades, and in the middeſt thereof this Legend in *Italian* Letters, *Deuot Luy Suis*; *I am deuoted to her.* I haue ſeene the Armes of this Prince in the Churches of *Auignion* and *Prouence*, entoured with Cappelets, inſtead of *Collar*, of the Order: which giueth ſufficiently to be vnderſtood, that they were made before the Inſtitution of the *Order of the Creſcent*, whereof we are to ſpeake hereafter. And I do not remember to haue read, that the Illuſtrious Houſe of *Lorraine* had any Order, or Collar about the Armes; but onely a Chappelet of *Pater-noſters*.

The death of Queene Iſabel Ducheſſe of Lorraine, and a new Deuiſe

Deſbander l'Arc, ne guarit la playe.

After the death of the ſaid Queene *Iſabel*, Ducheſſe of *Lorraigne*, happening in the end of the Moneth of February, One thouſand foure hundred fiftie three: hee left this firſt Deuiſe, and tooke for a ſecond; *A Turkiſh Bowe, the String whereof was broken*, and had for the Motto or word, this Italian Legend.

Arco perlentare piaga non ſana,
To vnbend the Bowe, cureth not the wound.

Which deuiſe he cauſed to be painted in many places of the Citie of *Angiers*. He ſeemed to expreſſe and ſignifie thereby, that the death of the Queene his Wife (to whom he was ſo intimately affected) had not the power, to make him looſe the remembrance of her, and that

Qui bien ayme, tard oublie.
Who truely loues forgets not haſtily.

The firſt Houſe of *Aniou* conſerued (ſo long as it endured) *The Order of the Double Deſcent*; Inſtituted by the King Saint *Lewes*, according as we haue formerly obſerued.

Vnder the ſecond Ligne, this good King *Rene* ſet on foote, and Inſtituted that *Order of the Creſcent*, to the end, that the memory of the firſt might be preſerued, which was abolliſhed in *Sicilie* by the *Arragonians*, and ſo likely to haue run into vtter oblivion, which he could no way like or allow of.

The

The Order of Aniou, or of the Creſcent or Halfe-Moone: Inſtituted in the Citie of *Angiers* by the good King *Rene*, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and foure.

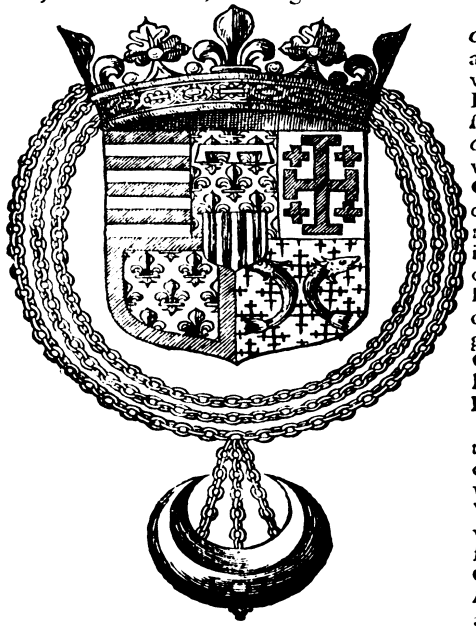
CHAP. XIIII.

L'Ordre Du Croiſſant.

HIS good and worthy King, being loath to let ſlip his Age in ſilence, and not performe ſome act worthy of eternall memorie; his thoughts likewiſe meditating among themſelues, that euery good and Noble Courage, in ductie ought to attempt, and bend his whole aime at all Actions Generous and Magnanimious, proceeding from vertue to vertue, and alwayes to encreaſe in well doing, as well in mildeneſſe and courteſie, as in valiancie and glorious deedes of Armes; to the end that his renowne might ſtill goe on by encreaſing, and neuer taſte of diminiſhing: For this cauſe, and in the honor of God, ſupport and maintention of the Church, as alſo the exaltation of Knighthood; in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and foure, the ſaid good King *Rene* deuiſed and erected a new Order of Knighthood, tearmed *Of the Creſcent, or Halfe-Moone*, whereof he declared himſelfe to the the Chiefe and Soueraigne; and after him his Succeſſors, Dukes of *Aniou*, and Kings of *Sicilie*.

The reaſons of the Orders Inſtitution.

The armes of the Duke of the Order.



Hoc eſt Puiſſant Prince Rene D' Aniou, Roy de Hieruſalem, de Scicilie, d' Arragon, de Valence,

The Symbole of this Order, was a *Creſcent of Gold*, whereon was aptly and conueniently engrauen, as likewiſe expreſſed by red enamelled Letters, this word, *Loz*, which would ſignifie; *Praiſe* by *Encreaſing*; *Loz En Croiſſant*, which the Knights did weare on the right ſide of their Cloakes or Gownes. At this Creſcent was tyed and made faſt as many ſmall Staues of Gold, faſhioned in Collomnes or like Tags of Points, of Gold enamelled with red: as the Knights of this Order, had bin ſeene or preſent in Battailes, Mines vnder ground, or Siedges of Townes and Cities; which made due acknowledgement of their Valour and Proweſſe.

I haue read, that the Knights of the ſaid *Order of Anion* (compoſed of ſixe and thirtie in number) did weare Cloakes of Red or Crimoſine Veluet, and the Mantelet of White, with the lining and Caſſocke of the ſame. At the firſt Chapter of this Order were made Knights, King *Rene*, founder therof, whoſe qualities are here thus remembred.

Valence, Sardeigne, Maillorque, & de Corſogne, Duc d' Aniou, & de Bar; Comte de Prouence, de Forqualquier, & de Piedmont: Chef de L'Ordre.

The High and Potent Prince Rene of Aniou, King of Ieruſalem, of Sicilie, of Arragon, of Valentia, Sardaignia, Maiorica, and of Corſica; Duke of Aniou, and of Bar: Count of Prouence, of Forcalquier, and of Piedmont; Chiefe of the Order. The Titles appertaining to King *Rene*.

Monſieur Iohn of *Aniou*, his Sonne, Duke of *Lorraigne*: *Monſieur*, the Vicount of Saint *Ballory*.

Monſieur Saladine d' Angleure, Viſcount *d'Eſtanges*, Lord of *Nogent*.

Monſieur Bertrand de Beauuay, Lord of *Precigue, de Sille le Guillaume*, and of *Brian-*, Preſident in the Chamber for the Kings accounts at *Paris*, and Great Maiſter of the Hoſtell for the King of *Sicilie*, and Captaine of the Caſtell of *Angiers*.

Of whom are yet to be ſeene (for the moſt part) the names and Armes in the Church of Saint *Maurice* of *Angiers*, in the Chappell, which (in regard of them) was called *The Chappell of Knights*. The Chappel of Knights at *Angiers*.

Here you may reade, what is ſaid, concerning this Order, by *Meſsire Iohn Bourdigne*, in his Hiſtorie of *Aniou*, the ſeauenteenth Chapter of the third Part; without repreſenting the ſaid Coates of Armes, and names of the Knights, made after the ſame before remembred.

By the fauour of *Monſieur Chapelle*, Councellour to the King, and Maiſter in his Chamber of Accounts at *Paris*, a man ſtudious and learned (*Il porte d'Or au Bœuf de Gueulles Acerne, & Ongle d' Azur, au Chef de Gueulles, charge de Trois Annelets d'Or*) haue ſeene the Armes of eighteene Knights of this *Order of the Creſcent*, and the moſt part of their Names (for there are Armes which are not noated or named at all) *Of Monſieur Laſnier*, Councellour to the King, and Lieutenant Generall in the Duchie of *Aniou*: *Qui porte d'Argent à Trois Teſtes de Laſnier de Sable, Deux en Chef, & Pautre en Pointe, au Cheuron d'Azur, charge de Trois Aigles d'Or*. This houſe of the *Aſniers* is the moſt remarkeable of *Aniou*, and from thence haue deſcended a great number of worthy perſons, both for learning and knowledge.

Meſsire Iohn Bourdigne, deſcribing the entrance of King *Frances* the firſt, into his Citie of *Angiers*, in the Moneth of Iune, One thouſand fiue hundred and eighteene, maketh in this manner. The entrance of King *Frances* the firſt into *Angiers*.

A la premiere Porte, appellee la Herce, eſtoient les Venerables Recteur, Scholaſtique, Docteurs, Procureurs, Bourgeois, & autres Officiers de l'Vniuerſite, leurs Bedeaux deuant eux, en eſtat Dix ou Douze en nombre, auec leurs groſſes Maſſes d'Argent, aux Armes de Nations & Facultez de ladite Vniuerſite. Et pour accompagner les Recteur, & Docteurs eſtoient pluſieurs Gens Lettrez, Eſcoliers Bacheliers, & Licenciez qu'il faiſoit treſ-bon ouir. Le Roy ou ils eſtoient arriue, luy fut faict par iceux Recteur, Docteurs, & Scolaſtiques treſhumble reuerence. Et le Roy de treſ-bon cœur, & ioyeuſe chere leur Salut leur rendit, ſe arreſtant la par quelque eſpace de temps à eſcouter vne Oraiſon Que le Treſdocte, & Renomme Docteur Francois Laſnier Angeuin Luy fit, *de laquelle le Roy fut treſcontent, & bien edifie, & promit de l'Vniuerſite d'Angiers garder les Droicts, & Priuileges garder. L'Ordre de ſes Armes eſt tel.*

The ſame in Engliſh.

AT the firſt Gate, called the Port Cullis, were the Reuerend, the Rector, Scholaſticks, Doctours, Atturneys or Aduocates, Bourgeſſes and other Officers of the Vniuerſitie, their Beadles before them, which were Ten or Twelue in number, with their great Maces of Siluer, bearing Armes of the Nations and Faculties of the ſaid Vniuerſitie. And to accompanie the Rector and Doctors, there were many learned men Schollers, Bachelers and Licentiates, which made a goodly ſight to behold. The King, *being come to the place where they were; reuerence was done vnto him by them, the Rector, Doctours and Scholaſticks in moſt humble manner.* And the King, *with a moſt kinde heart and chearefull countenance rendring them ſaire ſalutations, there ſtaying himſelfe for ſome ſpace of time, to heare an Oration,* which the moſt learned and renowned Doctour Frances Laſhier, an Angeuin by birth, made to him: *Whereby the King was very highly contented, and well edified, and promiſed* Or Harrow-Gate.

promised to the Vniuersities of Angiers, that he would keepe the Rights and Priuiledges thereof.

The Armes thereof are thus.

1. There is not any name at all: But the Armes is *Face d'Or, & d'Azur in Pointes, chacune de Quatre pieces.*

2. Aloft aboue the Armes, is written in old *Gothish* Characters, *Senateur en l'An Quatre Cents Cinquante Deux.* And beneath in new Italian Bastard Letters, *Bertrand de Beaunau, Cadet.* And beneath or vnder that Line, is an Escutcheon *D'Argent à Quatre Lyons de Gueulles, non Armez, ny Lampassez, & en Abisme vne Estoile d'Azur de Six Raiz.* On either side of the Escutcheon is written in *Gothish* Letters, *Preeminence au Sieur*, and below in new *Italian* Letters; *Gouverneur du Chasteau d'Angiers, & Seneschal d'Anjou, enterre aux Augustines.*

2. Whereby it appeareth, that in the yeare foure hundred fiftie two, *Bertrand de Beaunau, a yonger Brother, was there Senatour. And that he was Gouernour of the Castell of Angiers, and Steward of Aniou, buried at the Augustines.*

3. There is likewise not any name, but onely a Shield *D'Azur, à Trois Cheurons d'Or.*

4. Without any name, a Shield *Fretté d'Argent, & de Sable, au Chef d'Argent, charge d'vn Lyon naissant de Gueulles.* On both the sides of this Armes, is this Deuise repeated. *Sta ferme. Sta ferme.*

5. *Iohn du Plessys*, called *Le Lergne*, Esquire, Lord of *Pinnay, D'Azur au Lyon d'Or, Coronne, Lampasse & Arme de Gueulles.* On both sides this deuise: *A Iamais-Celle. She for euer and euer.*

6. *Guiscardo de Montcheron*, Lord of *Mortaigne. L'Escu Face d'Argent & de Sable de Six pieces: Escartele de Gueulles à Deux Bars adossez d'Or, seme de Trefles de mesme.*

7. *Andrew de Haracourt*, Lord of *Brandembourch* and of *Delletff. D'Or, à la Croix plaine de Gueulles, au Quartier d'Honneur d'Argent, au Lyon de Sable.*

8. *Iohn* Count *de Salme de Gueulles à Deux Bars adossez d'Argent, seme de Croix recroisettes au pied fiche d'Or.* Aboue, there is on the one side, the Letter I and an M. on the other.

9. Aboue the Shield is written; In the yeare One thousand foure hundred and fiftie. Betweene this word *Cussy*, *Est l'Escu d'Argent à Trois Bandes d'Azur, au Chef de Gueulles à vne Chausse d'Or en Pal au mitan, à la Bordure engreslee de Or.*

10. Without name, *D'Or à Trois Vires de Gueulles, à la Bordure Componnee d'Argent & de Sable.* Vnderneath is written in new Italicke Letters: *Breze, Mastille, Cadet.*

11. Without name. *D'Or, à vn Leonard rempant de Sable.*

12. Aloft aboue the Shield is written. In the yeare One thousand foure hundred fortie and eight. *De Laual, au Quartier d Honneur de Beaumont, qui est d'Azur, seme de France, au Lyon d'Or.* Vnderneth is written *Laual, Lane; Premier Quartier de Beaumont.*

13. Is written. *Of the said King of Sicile*, Senatour in the yeare One thousand foure hundred: The Shield, *De Hongrie, Party de Scicile* (which is of France without number *Au Lambel de Gueulles*) *Tierce de Hierusalem; Sustenants, Anjou Bar, & Lorraine.*

14. According as the seauenth, which is *D'Or à la Croix plaine de Gueulles, au Canton d'Honneur d'Argent, au Lyon de Sable.* Vnderneth is written, *Messire Iacques De Passetis.*

15. *Le Premiere Senatour en l'An* Vnder that name, such a man it appeareth, was Senatour in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fortie and two. *The Shield is the same as the thirteenth*, and in the one part and the other written in *Gothish* Carracters, *Anjou Roy.*

16. For the Count of *Bandemont* Senatour in the yeare One thousand three hundred, the Shield *D'Or, à la Bande de de Gueulles, chargee de Trois Allerions d'Argent.*

17. Without writing, *L'Escu Bar.* Vnderneth is written *De Barts, Lorraine.*

18. Which is *De Cossa*, formerly obserued. And this Shield is standed with these two words, *Gossequed Cossa.*

These are all that I could compasse concerning this Order, contrary to the promise of good store of persons, which were liberall in protestation of many more: the Learned (no doubt) will supply what is wanting herein. *Monsieur Perez*, Councellour in the Parliament of *Prouence*, promised vs his *Recherches*, and the Iousts and Tournaments of this good King *Rene*, with the particularities of his Orders, and others beside, which hath made vs come short of a much larger measure.

In magnis voluisse sat est.
.. ..
Non omnia possumus Omnes.

Rene of Anjou was a very deuout Prince, among all them of his time and Reign; he was liberall & magnificent towards men of the Church, and other persons of knowledge and Studie. He was well practisde and expert in the Noble Art of Painting; which I haue seene many Tables of his owne handie worke in *Prouence*, and elsewhere, which haue made good proofe of his skill and knowledge. Painting and the Mathematickes haue bin (at all times) thought expedient, and to be commended in Princes: because they are beneficiall to them, either in the times of Peace or Warre. His King tooke great delight in Iusts and Tourneyes, as *Bourdigne* telleth vs in his Chronicle, vnder the yeare One thousand foure hundred threescore and nine.

Painting and the Mathematicks commendable in Princes.

Le Roy Louis (Vnziesme du nom) estant en sa Ville de Tours, le Roy de Scicile, & la Royne Marie de Laual son Espouse par deuers luy se transporterent; lesquels le Roy à grand ioye receut, & fit venir plusieurs Princes & Princesses, Seigneurs & Dames pour les festoyer. Et pour leur bien-venuë fit faire Iousts, Tournois, Mommeries, & tels Esbattemens, pource Quil scauoit que le Roy de Sicile les aimoit.

The same in English.

King Lewes (eleauenth of the name) being in his Citie of Tours, the King of Sicilie, and Marie of Lauall his Wife, came thither to visite him: whom the King welcommed with great ioye, and caused the appearance of many Princes and Princesses, Lords and Ladies, for their feasting. And for their better entertainement, he procured to be performed Iusts, Tourneys, Mummeries and such like sports; because he knew and saw, that the King of Sicilie affected them.

This is the same King *Rene* of *Sicilie*, to whom King *Lewes* the eleauenth gaue the priuiledge to Seale with White Waxe, for an especiall grace and fauour, as we haue said in the second Booke of these *Recherches*, and elsewhere. He was present with the Generall Estates, held at *Tours* in the great Haule of the Archbishops Pallace, by King *Lewes* the eleauenth of the name, the sixt day of Aprill, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred threescore and seauen, before Easter, and other dayes following, vntill the foureteenth day of the same Moneth included.

The Generall Estates appearance at *Tours*.

In the first Parquet (for there were three, the second for Lords of the Bloud, the Constable, Chancellours and Prelates in midst of the Hall; and the third for Noblemen, Counts, Barons, such as were of the Kings Counsell, and Deputies of great Cities) *was seated the King in an high Chaire, whereto he was to ascend by three degrees in height, which Chaire was couered with Blew Veluet, powdered with Floures de Luces of gold. Ouer him were foure golden Lances, the Canopie and Vallans being also answerable to the same. The King was attired in a long Roabe of White Damaske, thickly stitched with fine Gold very neere together, and Buttond before with Golden Buttons, Furred with Sable Martines: hauing a little blacke Cappe vpon his head, with a Feather of fine Gold Wiers in it. On either side of the King there were Chaires, distant (backward from his) some seauen or eight foote space, the one on the right hand, and the other on the left, but both of them couered with rich cloath of Gold vpon Crimosine Veluet. In these Chayres, as that on the right hand, was seated the Cardinall of Saint Susanna, Bishop of Angiers, cloathed in a sumptuous Cardinals Cappe. And in that on the left hand sate* The King of Ierusalem and of Sicilie, Duke of Aniou, *hauing on an Ashe-coloured Veluet Roabe or Gowne, Furred with Martens.*

Courts or Seats of Dignitie.

Thus much haue we learned, concerning the *Order of the Crescent, or halfe Moone*; attending for more ample memories, as well as of others, and whereof we are desirous to haue certaine knowledge. What we haue to this purpose now spoken, is from *Frances de l'Alouette*, who in the first Booke of his Genealogie of *Coucy*, alleadgeth vnto

vnto vs: *That many Princes and great Lords of Fraunce, haue made Orders of their Deuises, which they had for themselues.*

Orders made of Deuises.

The ancient Lords of *Bourbon*, had that of the Golden Shield.

The Lords of *Luxembourg* made theirs, *A Parke round Paled with Woode.*

The Counts of *Foix* (whereto should be added Lords of *Bearne*) of *Comte.*

The Lords of *Coucy*; *Of a Lyon*, to perpetuate the memory of the same Lyon which *Enguerran de Coucy*, first of the name, tearmed the Great, fought with and killed in his Forrests: where afterward he caused to be builded the Abbey of *Premonstre*, Chiefe of the *Order*, in the Reigne of King *Lewes*, called the *Deuout.*

Hereto he might haue added.

Bouchard Lord of *Montmorency.*

The Lords of *Montmorency*, who carried for Deuise, *The Dogge*, the Symbole of faithfulnesse; with the common saying, that *Bouchard de Montmorency* (by others called of *Mont-Remy*) came to offer his seruice, with all his followers, to King *Philip*, first of the name, and who (as the same man auoucheth) that *Bouchard* and his followers, *Portoient au Col vne Chaine d'Or, composee de Testes & Cimiers de Cerfs, & depuis sur l'Estomach vn Chien. Did weare about his necke a Chaine of Gold, composed of Crests and Heads of Harts, and vpon the Breast a Dogge.*

Such Princes and great Lords, might both make and maintaine the Order of their Deuises, in regard of their Greatnesse, and wealthinesse of their Houses. But we haue since then seene, in time of the Generall Estates of the Kingdomes being at *Paris*, a meane Gentleman, to be the *Instituter of a new Order of the Crescent, called of saint Magdalen.* Of which Order here is to be seene the Crosse, with the Statutes beginning and ending thereof.

L'Ordre de la Sainte Magdelaine.

The Order of Saint Magdalen, Instituted at *Paris* in the yeare of Grace, One thousand sixe hundred and foureteene, by a Noble Gentleman, named *Messire* IOHN CHESNEL.

CHAP. XV.

The time of the Orders Institution.

DVring the time as the Generall Estates of France, were present at *Paris*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand sixe hundred and fourteene; a *Breton* Gentleman, issued of a Noble House, renowned both for valiancy and Nobility, as well in *Bretaigne* as *Anjou*, beside other Prouinces of the Kingdome: being returned from the East and *Normandie*, moued by deuotion, and partly a zealous passion, to see (against Gods Commandements, and Sacred Ordenances of the King) such Diuelles, rude Encounters and Garboiles, as daily happened among such, as, standing on tearmes of Honour, grounded on an ill kinde of goodnesse, as taking the wall, or a word scarsely well spoken, but farre worse vnderstood, or taken with a wrong Bias, the subiect being about a Strumpet (the commonest quality of all other) cut the throates of one another, euen as Butchers serue Swine, loosing both bodies and soules for euer in the pit of eternall fires, which they would not do for defence of the Catholique Faith, and seruice for the King. Vpon these considerations, hauing collected together some few good and memorable noates; he presented them to the Nobilities Chamber, for the stablishing of a new Order Military, erected on the foremer

Quarrels of light and friuolous occasions.

ner ground. The principall vow whereof was, to abiure Duels, Fights and Frayes, with all other kindes of quarelling: but onely to regard the honor of God, the seruice of his Maiestie, and conseruation of the Kingdome.

Honest intentions can haue no bad ends.

The King looking vpon the Papers, declared by his gracious behauiour, that the Gentlemans purpose was pleasing to him; and so much the rather, because he plainely perceiued, that Charitie vrged him meerely thereto: without seeking after his perticular profit, priuate fauours, rewards, Wages or Pensions.



He prouided the Order, and Crosse belonging thereto, according to his owne minde and meaning, which onely tended to this end, to entreat his Maiesties liking and consent; that this nouell Institution of French Knights, might be vnder the inuocation on Saint *Magdalen*, the Mirrour of Penitence and Repentance. Within compasse whereof, such Noble *Frenchmen* (ill borne, and worse bred) making account and profession of swearing, blaspheming the holy name of God, and of the blessed Virgin his Mother, fordging ill grounded quarrels, and thereon murdering one another like bruite beasts: might returne to better vnderstanding, by example of that sinfull Woman, who as of a Sinke, filled with all vice and abhomination; by meanes of her true and vnfeigned repentance, became a Vessell full of precious balme and all perfection.

Concerning the Circle of the Order.

The Crosse of this Order, which serued for wearing about the necke, and on the Cloake; finished with Floures de Luces at three Branches; for reuiuing againe the memory of the *Order of the Lillie*, which was of *Nauarre*; and the foote stood, or began in a *Croissant*. The Order was Baptized with that name by *Rene*, Duke of *Anjou*, outwardly cantonned with small Palmes, made aptly in a roundure, as a noate for signale of the voyage to the holy Land, made by the Institutour of the said Order, according to the example of the auncient *French Paladines*, who were called by the name of *Palmers*, returning from the Holy Land; as at their going thither, they were tearmed *Croisiers*. The shape of *Magdalen* her selfe, was presented Ouall-wise in the midst, as giuing name to the Order, the Crosse whereof is Cantonned with Floures de Luces, glittering out of Sunnie-beames, as shewing the Excellency of the Kingdome, the most famous of Christendome.

How Trauailer came at the first to be called Palmers

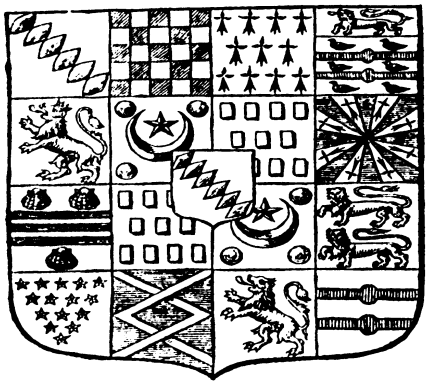
The Inuenter of this *Order*, was named *Messire Iohn Chesnell* (whose Grandfathers were renowned (for their valour) in the Hiſtory of *Bretaigne*, vnder the name of *Chesnel*, Lord of *Chappronnaye*) who describing the habite, Crosse and Collar, with the Statutes of the Order (which follow after) presented them and himselfe to the King. He made him Knight, putting vpon him the Cloake of the Order, & the Collar with a Crosse of Gold about his necke. And euer since that time, they tooke the title of Knight of Saint *Magdalen*, being so named, as well in the Court, as elsewhere. The Escutcheon or Shield of his Armes is composed of sixteene Quarters, 4.4.4.4. & one ouer all, which are in this manner Emblazoned.

Messire Iohn Chesnell Instituter of the Order.

The Emblazon of the Armes of *Messire Iohn Chesnell.*

Au premier, & sur le Tout de sa Maison De Sable à vne Bande Fuzelee d'Or de Six pieces. Au Deuxiesme Eschiquete d'Argent, & de Gueulles; Au Troisiesme de Bretaigne. Au Quatriesme d'Or à Deux Fesses nouees de Gueulles à l'Orle de Six Merlettes de Sable, au Chef de Gules au Lyon passant d'Or. Au Cinquiesme de Gueulles à vn Lyon d'Argent Corõne mesme. Au Sixiesme de Sable à vn Croissant d'Argent, supportant vne Estoile de mesme.

Cantonne



Cantonne de Quatre Besans d'or gent. Au Septieſme d'Azur à Billettes d'Argent, qui eſt de Beaume noir 4. 3. 4. Au Huictieſme Gyron de Gueulles & d'Ermines de Seize pieces: Au Neufuiſme de Sable à Tryon Pieces d'Argent, accompagnees de Trois Coquilles de meſme. L'Vnzieſme comme le Sixieſme. Au Douzieſme de Gueulles à Deux Leopards d'Or mis l'vn ſur l'autre. Au Treizieſme d'Azur Fretted Argent. Au Quatorzieſme d'Azur à vn Lyon d'Argent. Le Quinzieſme d'Azur à trois Lyon d'Argent. Et au Seizieſme d'Argent à Deux Faces nouees de Gueulles.

The Shield or Eſcutcheon is adorned and entoured with the Order, *Heaume tarre de front*: hauing for Creſt an Eagle with her Wings diſplayed *De Sable, L'Eſtomach briſe d'vne Croix dudit Ordre*. With this Deuiſe in two pendants, thus.

The loue of God is peaceable.

L'Amour De Dieu.
Eſt Pacifique.

Rules and Statutes to be obſerued by the Knights of the Order of Saint *Magdalen*.

CHAP. XVI.

The Kings prerogatiue in the Order to appoint a Prince &c.

I. HE King is to continue alwayes (if he be ſo pleaſed) *Chiefe of this Order*: as well for his Honour, as for the good of his Seruice. And he may commit or allow a Prince, to be the Generall, and as his Lieutenant (vnder his owne good pleaſure) ouer the whole Order. To whom the Knights ſhall ſtand obliged to be obedient, next vnto the King. The ſame Prince ſhall haue power and authority, to conduct the Knights of this Order to Warres, and elſewhere; according to the command of his Maieſtie, during the time of his charge, but no longer.

Great Maiſter of the Order & his charge. & Hebergs Royall.

II. Vnder the ſaid Prince, ſhall be the Great Maiſter of the Order, whom the Knights ſhall make election of from three yeeres to three yeares. He ſhall haue the care and charge, of all the Reuennues belonging to the Order, and to whom all the Knights ſhall render their obedience. During the yeares of his charge and Office he is to make his continuall reſidence in the principal Academy of the Order, which ſhall be named *The Royall Lodging*; whereon ſhall depend all the other Academies of the Kingdome.

For admiſſion into the Order

III. Such as ſhall be admitted and receiued into this Order, ſhall be Noble by three Races or Deſcents. They ſhall not be tyed or engaged to Iuſtice. They ſhall be well enſtructed in the Catholique and Apoſtolique Religion: They muſt be ſound, healthfull, and well diſpoſed of body, without any diformitie either Corporall or Spirituall, whereof may be receiued any apprehenſion. And

Corporall or Spirituall, whereof may be receiued any apprehenſion. And thereof they muſt be bound to bring true atteſtation from their Biſhop (eſpecially) for matter of Religion: from three worthy and well knowne Gentlemen, concerning their Nobilitie: and from a skilfull Phyſition, for their health.

At any Knights receiuing into the Order.

IIII. On the day of entertaining or receiuing any Knight, either by the King, Prince Committee, or Great Maiſter of the Order; hee is to make a ſolemne Vowe and profeſſion, to renounce all doubtfull and hazardous Play or Gaming. Not to blaſpheme the name of God, nor to commit any act that ſhall be vicious, and vnbefitting a Chriſtian Knight. He ſhall not reade prohibited and vnlawfull Bookes, without the permiſſion of his Superiours in the Order, and the Ordenaries of the places, whereſoeuer the Academies are ſeated. Hee is to ſhunne the reading of Bookes that are of wicked Doctrine, which corrupt good manners; and diſſolute Songs, ſcurulous talke, and diſhoneſt companies of euill fame.

Concerning the Habite and Collar.

V. The Habite of the Knights on the day of their reception, muſt be of Skie-Colour, and the Collar of the Order, of the Letter M. doubled with *Lambda*, and the Letter A. repreſenting the names of Saint *Mary Magdalen*; of *Lewes* and of *Anne*, King and Queene of France; enterlaced and enchained with double Harts, ſtraiuerſed and wounded with Darts of Gold Croſſed, and the ſaid Ciphers or Letters enamelled with the Colours and Liueries of his Maieſtie, Carnation, White and Blew. The Cordon or Riband muſt be Red or Crimoſine, whereon to hang the Croſſe of Gold enamelled with Red, with an Ouale in the middeſt, wherein muſt be (on the one ſide) repreſented or figured, the Image of the holy penitent Saint *Mary Magdalen*, and S. *Lewes* on the other. And on the Mantle or Cloake, the Croſſe of Red or Crimoſine Sattin, embroidered with Gold and Siluer, hauing the like Ouale as is ſaid before, and a *Magdalen*. And for the deuiſe round about it, theſe words; *L'Amour De Dieu Eſt Pacifique.*

The Houſe for the Knights.

VI. Theſe Knights are to haue a Houſe neere to *Paris*, which his Maieſty may beſtow vpon them, if he be ſo pleaſed, wherein there muſt be a Chappell, and wherein alſo the Knights are to be entertained. There ſhall ordenarily attend ſixe Religious Prieſts (who are to weare the Croſſe as the Knights doe) there, to ſay daily diuine Seruice, and to aſſemble (in the ſame Chappell) the Knights of the Order, who are there to be receiued at their preſentment, vpon the conditions before ſpecified. At which Reception, and at the end of the Maſſe, ſhall be ſaid by thoſe Religious Prieſts the *Veni Creator*; the Letanies of the Sacred Virgin, and the Prayers of Saint *Mary Magdalen*, and likewiſe of Saint *Lewes*. Which being done, the Knights muſt take the Oathe before the King, or the Prince his Committee, or the Great Maiſter of the Order. From whom he is to receiue the Sword hallowed, the Habite for Knighthood, the Great Order, the Croſſe and Cordon. Afterward is to be ſung the *Te Deum*, and the Pſalme *Laudate Dominum omnes Gentes*; at the end whereof, the Knights Aſſiſtants muſt goe and embrace the new Knight; giuing him the kiſſe of Peace, Vnion and Concord, euery man in his Ranke, according to the order as they haue bin entertained.

The taking of the Oath, and receiuing of the Knightly dues.

The time for probation of the Knights.

VII. Concerning the Houſe, which the Knights are to haue neere to *Paris*; it muſt be called and named *The Royall Lodging*, wherein muſt ordenarily be fiue hundred Knights: all bound to abide therein, during the time of two yeares Probation, beginning at the day of entertainement, and yet they may abide there longer, if themſelues thinke it good. At the ending of thoſe two yeares for their Probation, they ſhall take the ſolemne Oathe of the Order (in preſence of the Religious Prieſts of *The Lodging Royall*) Of Charitie, Obedience and Coniugall Chaſtitie; and to weare the Collar and Croſſe of the ſaid Order, during all their life time.

What they ought to renounce.

VIII. In like manner, they are to renounce and abiure all Duelles or Combats, all rude Encounters and Aſſaſſinates, yea, and all quarrels out of the Kings Seruice: except ſuch wherein they ſhall be taxed, in which caſes, they may lawfully defend

defend themselues by Armes, which they are to weare by their profession. In the Oath is likewise included, that they are to liue and dye in the Kings seruice; without adhering or ioyning themselues to any Leagues or Parties whatsoeuer, vnder what cause, pretence or subiect that can be alleadged. For this perfect knowledge ought to be engraued in the depth of their soules, that the very greatest seruice which they can render to God; is, first to serue him, then their King, and lastly their Countrey, for exaltation of the truely Catholique Faith, and honour of the Kingdome.

Appearance once yearely at the Royall Lodging.

IX. Euery Knight of the said Order, after their Approbation, shall stand bound to appeare in person at the *Lodging Royall*, euery yeare once, on the day and Feast of Saint *Mary Magdalen*, Patronesse of the said Order. To the end, that they may Communicate together, and render an account of their actions to the Great Master, and to twelue Knights more, elected and chosen as his Assessours and Counsellours: who are to iudge of all their differences, and the transgression of their Vowes, which are to be kept inuiolably; vnder paine of being cashcerd, & degraded of the Order, if their recidiuation extend to the third time.

For them dwelling in the House.

X. The Knights abiding and dwelling in the Lodging, must stand obliged, to be assistant on Sundayes and Feastiuall dayes at Diuine Seruice, celebrated by the Priests of the Order; and to receiue the holy Communion euery first Sunday of the Moneth, at the least. To say daily the Letanies of the Sacred Virgin, with the Prayers of S. *Mary Magdalen*, and of S. *Lewes*, their Chappelet and *Salue Regina*.

Of Exercises for the Knights

XI. The Exercises of the Knights, are to be ruled according to the houres of the day, for auoiding Idlenesse, the Fountaine or well-spring of all vices. And for this effect, in the Lodging Royall, and elsewhere, there must be maintained Esquires, Maisters in actions of Armes, Learned Mathematicians, and some number of well experimented Souldiours, to enstruct Military agilities, and exercises fit for Horse and Foote For other houres of Recreation after these Exercises, there shall be a Tennis Court, Stoole-Baule-Play, and other pastimes, fit for maintaining a knight in the expertnesse of Armes, for better disposition of the body. And from the Knights lodgings or chambers shall be banished (as hatefull and detestable for euer) all play at Dice, Cards or such like.

For maintenance of the Priests and House Officers

XII. For nourishment and maintenance of the sixe Keligious Priests, the King is most humbly to be petitioned; for the annexing and ioyning to the House, some good and especiall Benefice, for the better continuance of Diuine Seruice. And for maintaining the Officers of the Lodging, each Knight that shall enter into the said Order, must be engaged to giue a thousand Francks at his entrance, for the first yeare, and an hundred Pistolets for the second yeare, by way of Pension, which is to be paied to the Reiuer of the Order, established by the Great Maister: as well for himselfe, as for two Seruants and two Horses, which must be his furnishment; vntill there shall be some better meanes established. Which is to be awaited, either by the charitable gifts of Princes or Great Lords, or by Conquests made by the Knights themselues, on such as are enemies to the Church; or by the stocke moued to his Maiesty for his owne memoriall, which was presented to him in the Moneth of Iuly, One thousand sixe hundred and foureteene, when it shall be graciously granted and Signed.

For married mens entring into the Order

XIII. Concerning maried Gentlemen, such as would enter into this Order, they are to be obliged; ouer and beside the attestation of their Nobility, Catholique Religion, and good habitude and disposition of body: to bring with them the full consent of their Sonnes, for making their two yeares probation, to be admitted and receiued as Knights, which otherwise they cannot be. And such as be formerly entertained Knights, and vnmaried: may lawfully marry after their Probation, if themselues do so thinke it good; considering, that the Order bindeth nor restraineth, but for the Vow of coniugall chastity.

XIIII. And in regard of them, which (at all times) haue had the habitude of vertue, and are knowne for such by common reputation, perfected in their Exercises by maturity of their yeares, more capable to enstruct others, then to be enstructed, and being tied to the duties of Mariage, and cares attending on a Familie, and

yet (neuertheless) desirous of admittance into the said Order: they may be receiued, with charge of the precedent proues, and onely fifteene dayes of exercise, necessary for a Knight. Which time being past, they shall notwithstanding be engaged, to assist on Feast dayes and Sundayes at Diuine Seruice, in the Lodging of the Order; except there be some sufficient essoine or excuse. And submit themselues, to receiue direction in their Conscience; that their Spirits may be the more strongly enabled, and fit for maintenance of all vertues, among the vicious thornes and briers of this wicked world, and to chastise and correct themselues for such imperfections and behauiours; as they had contracted before their receiuing into the Profession of the Order. They shall likewise stand obliged, to be personally present at all Assemblies of the Knights, and one day in the weeke (by allowed discretion) to continue the exercises necessary for a Knight, the space of two yeares: yet neuertheless, without binding them to a continuall abiding, whereto are tied those Knights which be not married. And they must be such as are rich, of good degree and quality: because they will be engaged, to maintaine the exercises of the Order, and such poore Gentlemen, that haue no meanes for entrance, that they may the better satisfie the Vow of Charity.

For such as are of ripe yeares and well enstructed, comming into the Order.

Concerning farre distance frō the Schools & Academies

XV. Married Gentlemen, which haue deuotion to the Order, and yet notwithstanding, are far off from the places where the Academies be, and haue not meanes to maintaine their Family in the neerest Townes to them; may yet receiue the golden Crosse of the Order, at the hands of the Great Maister, euen as well as Knights of Honour. Alwayes prouided, that they first haue made proofe of their Catholique Religion and Nobilitie; obliging themselues to the Prayers of the Order, and yeelding fauour and assistance to the Knights of the Order, like friends in affaires of importance, whereto they shall be required, and in so doing, they become partakers of the Orders Prayers. Yet they may not enioy any Commanderies, nor aspire to the charges and dignities of the Order; nor weare the Crosse on the Cloake; but (as Friends) may be holpen by Knights of the Order, when any such neede shall be.

Priuiledges appertaining to the Knights.

XVI. These Knights may not be compelled by their bodies, for the paiment of ciuile debts: and their equipage or furnishment shall stand exempt from all executions. They can but oblige the benefit of their patrimony; because they are not to be impeached from following the Kings Seruice, at what time soeuer they shall be thereto commanded. And these Knights may also make choice (at once for all other) of some one of the Parliaments in France; whereto they may be called, there to be iudged and sentenced definitiuely.

Consideration for poore Gentlemen.

XVII. If there shall be in the Lodging more money, then is required to pay the Officers thereto belonging; the ouer-plus may serue, for entertaining poore Gentlemen to the Exercises, that haue no meanes for their learning, for satisfying the Vow of Charity.

The Kings daily visitation by the Order.

XVIII. And to the end, that there may be alwayes about the King, some of those Knights for his seruice: there shall daily goe to visite him, fourescore or an hundred of these Knights (the number of fiue hundred remaining ordenarily compleat in the Lodging) departing from the Order vnder conduct of some one of them thereto appointed by the Great Maister, each Company going on his day in the weeke, while the rest stay at home about their exercises.

For Seruants that be of the best condition called *Brethren-Seruants*.

XIX. Such as are Brethren Seruants, shall be had from the most honorable Families in Townes and Cities, next to the Nobility: who shall be bound to bring attestation of three races, and that their Grandfathers and Fathers haue alwayes liued honorably, without any roate of infamie, and in the faithfull beleefe of the Catholique Church. They shall be bound to the same Vowes and Offices as the Knights. They shall weare as a noate on their Cloakes, a Scarlet Crosse, purfled with Siluer, and a Siluer Crosse of the same fashion, as that of Gold worne by the Knights, which is to hang at a round Cordon of Crimosine silke. For entring into the Lodging, and Exercises, vsed among the Knights, they shall pay to the Receiuer of the Order at his entrance an hundred Crownes, and two hundred pounds of Pension the yeares following; as well

well for himselfe, as maintenance of a Horse to performe his seruice on. And that
Bretheren Seruants may be admitted to Military charges, as members of the Kings
Companies going to Warre. And if they attaine to the performance of some wor-
thy Act of Armes, and for the Kings seruice, they are to be ennobled, that they may
the more lawfully aspire to that honorable quality. And they may establish
Stocke or Bancke of money, for maintaining them of their owne condition
that lacke the meanes for entring into the said Exercises, and Order of Brethren Se-
uants, by the Charities conferred on them, by those of their condition, and by the Te-
staments of such, as shall be deuoted to this holy Order.

For Seruants of the meaner qualitie.

XX. The Groomes or meaner Seruants attending on these Knights, shall be c
the most honest Families of Mechanicall Artezans; who shall bring testimony o
their good life and manners, by two or three of the principall men of the Parish, an
and of the Curate. Their Garment shall be of Blew Cloath, with a Gallonne Lace
of Crimosine Silke: And they must be skilfull in one Trade or other, for their bet-
ter seruice in the Lodging, and for the Knights that are to make vse of them. Eue
ning and Morning they must attend the Knights seruice, as is appointed them by the
Great Maister: but the rest of the day, they are to trauaile faithfully for the com-
mon benefit, euery one in his Art and profession, as they shall be employed by
Maisters experimented in them. They must be bound to the same Vowes and Pray-
ers as their Maisters, for auoiding all vicious example in so holy a Company. And
for attaining to this happinesse, they are to bring no thing but their proues appoin-
ted, and must remaine in the Lodging all their life time: if so themselues thinke it
expedient, or may withdraw themselues thence (if they will) after the tru
yeares of their Probation. All their life long, they shall be priuiledged by
some fauours of the Order; in recompence of such good seruices, as they shall per-
forme thereto.

This intention came to no purpose.

These were the Articles deliuered to his Maiesty by the said Lord of *Chappro-
naye*; which sorted not to any effect, by reason of many impossibilities, as well a
bout the Lodging, as the Stocke and Banke, with other difficulties beside. So th
this Order tooke both birth and death, in the person of the same *Chappronnaye*, wh
hauing lost all hope, of seeing the execution of these his good intentions; left all hi
goods to his friends, retreating himselfe from the World, and liued confined to a
Hermitage (by him erected) neere to *Valuin* in *Gastinois*, at the end of the Forrest o
Bierre, or of *Fontaine-bleaud*, vpon a Rock, which discouereth the course of the good
ly Riuer of *Seine*. He remaineth in this place, knowne to the Countrey neighbour
and at *Paris*, by the name of *L'Hermite Pacifique de la Magdelaine*; *The Peaceb
Hermite of S. Mary Magdalen.*

The Order of Bretaigne; called of the Her-
mine, and of the Eares of Corne; Instituted by *Fran-
ces*, Duke of *Bretaigne*, Sonne to *Iohn* the sixt, Sirna-
med the Conquerour: In the yeare of Grace On
thousand foure hundred and fifty.

CHAP. XVII.

L'Ordre de Bretaigne ou de L'Hermine & de L'Espy.

RAnces, Duke of *Bretaigne*, last of the name, yongest Sonne (but not i
fortune) to *Iohn*, sixt of the name, called the *Conquerour*, by imitatio
the steps of the Princes of the Bloud of France, his Cousines, and
whom he was most Nobly descended: Instituted the Order of Knigh
hood, tearmed *Of the Hermine*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand fou
hundre

dredth and fifty. Which order was otherwise called, Of *Eares of Corne* in regard, The forme of the Great Collar.
that the Great Collar thereof, was composed of Gold, in the true forme of Eares of
Corne, enterlaced like to a Saultour, and bound both aboue and beneath, with two
ries and circles of Gold.

A Beast called Ermine or Hermine.

At the end of this Collar, hunge by two or three small Chaines of Gold, a little
Beast, white as Snow, vulgarely called an *Ermine*; but in writing it more truely, it is
tearmed an *Hermine*, appeating to passe or runne ouer a word or motto, vnder a
Bancke or faire Tuste of greene grasse, diapred with goodly flowres. Beneath which,
was the deuise of the said Duke *Iohn* the Conquerour, Three wordes, to expresse the
soule or sense thereof, to witt, *A. MA. VIE.* Whereby he would make knowen For my Life.
to the world, that the greatnesse and hieghst of his courage was such, as rather then to
stayle in his honour, he would expose himselfe to a thousand and thousand deaths.

Concerning the naturall disposition of the Hermine.

The meaning of this deuice, conueigheth it selfe perticularly to this creature the
Hermine, whose nature and kinde is such (according to the testimony of the best
naturallists) that when he is pursued, in regard of the excellencie & raritie of his furre:
he will suffer himselfe to be taken, rather then to runne or thwarte thorow any boggy,
soule or filthy passage, so proudly doth he stand on the pureness of his coat or skinne.
For hunteesmen, well acquainted with his naturall inclination, to take him; will soile
his hauntes and trackes with mud, mire and dirte. In like manner, hee is as earnestly
coueted and sought after for his whitenesse, euen (as in elder times) was the *Genett* for
his blacke furre, speckled or spotted with red, and which (in those times) for excel-
lency, was called, The Richest Furre. These two Animalls, the *Genett* and *Hermine*, The Hermine compared with the Genet.
haue serued for Subiect to two seuerall Orders of Knighthood, in *France* and *Bretayne*:
as the *Hedge Hogge* or *Porcupine*, and the Weather or Sheepe, to them of *Orleance* and
of *Bourgongue*, called at this present *Flanders*.

The Hermine furre for Princes in life and death.

The *Hermine*, for his excellent whitenesse, is the very richest furre, sought for and
put in vse by Princes, at their highest and chiefest Feasts, and dayes of greatest Sollem-
nity, worne in their Gownes, Robes, Cloathes, mantelets and Surcoates, as the fayrest
furre to grace their life time. And after their death, their Palles and Coates Ar-
mours are furred therewith, being layed vpon them; and vsed beside in their Obse-
quies and Funeralles.

For purity and excellency, it goeth farre beyond the *Lettice*, next vnto which is
accounted the *Menu-Vair*. In a worde, it is white as milke, and thereupon (in former
times) it was the occasion of the Auncient *French* name of *Lettice*, by way of *Antono-
masia*, farre aboue all other white furres, whereof there are many kindes.

Plinie maketh mention of the diuersity of these Beasts, whereof the *Romanes* made
great reckning in those times then, and describeth their nature in his eight Booke and
seauen and thirty chapter. *Conuntur Hyemc, et Pontici Mures, bi dumtaxat* Albi, *quo-
rum palatum ingustu sagacissimum est. Hac cute expoliuntur Vestes.* That the Rattes of
Pontus (for so are the *Hermines* called, by comming from those parts in great abun-
dance) and namely the Whites, which all the length of Winters time, keepes in their
holes or dennes. That this creature hath a wonderfull capacity and vnderstanding,
for discouery of any Game that may serue for his nourishment. With skinnes of this
Beaste, the *Romane* Senatours had their robes furred. But merchants for lucre and Men that traded in the sale of Furres.
gaine, which they made by the sale of these exquisite Furres, procured many fraudes
and deceites: so that the Emperours and Senate had dayly their patience much dis-
turbed, by continuall complaintes against those Regraters and Monopolizers. Where-
unto also may be added, that these *Hermines* haue some kinde of notion and future
knowledge, as is obserued by *Aelianus*, in the first Booke of his various Historys,
where he tearmeth these Animalles in this manner, *Mures futurorum prascios.*

Beautiful black Lambes of *Lombardie.*

For addition of a further grace to this rich Furre, and to make it appeare much
whiter then it is, by the luster and beauty of his contrary: the Furriers or Skinners,
as matter belonging to their arte and skill, doe spot or speckle it with little quantities
or morsels, of Lambes skinnes of Lombardy, famous and much commended for their
Blacke shining splendour. For the *Hermine* is a little creature, wholly white, of the
likenesse and bignesse of a Rat, the nose or snoute pointed and sharpened. The Fur-
riers or Skinners doe make vse of this beasts tayle, to grace *Aumusses*, which are worne
by

by Bishopes, and Chanons of great reuenewes. But oftentimes (which is not to much knowen) they deale like the Regraters spoken of by *Plinie*, they deliuer *Meges Vaire* or *Lettice*, in stead of *Hermines*, as Martines of Foxes, and Cattes of *Speyne* for *Gennets*.

Chaunge of the ancient Armes of Bretaigne.

The Dukes of *Bretaigne*, which followed after the Conquerour, in such sort affected the whitenesse of this little beast: that they chaunged their auncient Armes, to take *De Sable seme d'Hermines d'Argent, sans nombre*. And yet notwithstanding, ignorant Painters haue emblazoned *Bretaigne* contrary to trueth, and the Rules of the Noble Art of Painting: according to which course, we may make naturally, or after the life, Roses of *Gueulles on d'Argent*, because Nature produceth them Redde and White. Lillies are (of their owne nature White and Yellow, as the *Paullet*: to figure and present them with *Gueulles*, like to them of *Florence*; is not for Enquirie, but rather ignorance in Armes, howsoeuer the art and cunning of man, may make variation of naturall colours, as in the Scripture, the spotted Ewes to deceiue *Laban*. In all things Nature ought to be imitated. Ignorant Painters haue scarsely so much vnderstanding to informe them, that the Colour and Mettall of *Bretaigne* are *Sable* and *Argent*. The Crosse in her Banners and Cornets, is alwayes made with white; and that the Armes of the later Dukes of *Bretaigne*, were *De Sable, seme d'Hermines d'Argent*. Such as are Maisters in Blazons, doe note these Armes by this onely word: *Il porte de Bretaigne*, for breuities sake; As *De France, de Nauarre, Daulphine, d'Orleans, d'Aniou, d'Alanson*, or *de Valois* for *France*. For Kingdomes of *England, Scotland, Leon, Castile, Arragon, Portugall, Hungaria, Bohemia, Polonia, Denmarke* and *Sweden*, without emblazoning them any otherwise: because these being the principles and grounds of the Art, he who maketh profession thereof, ought not (by any meanes) to be ignorant therein.

Nature should be followed in all things.

Emblazons for the Kingdomes.

Duke *Frances* the first, caused his Castell of the *Hermine* to be newly builded, in memory and honor of the said Order; which he composed of fiue & twenty Knights, without taxation of blame or reproach. They were garmented with Cloakes of white Damaske, lined with Carnation, the Mantelet or Chaperon of the same; whereon was worne the Great Collor of the Order, composed of *Eares of Corne*, accordingly as before you see the same figured.

The number of the Orders Knights, and their Habite.

The Subiect for these Eares of Corne, is (by some) reported, and referred to the cure of Agriculture or Husbandrie, which the Kings, Dukes and Counts of *Bretaigne* alwayes had, to the end, that their Prouince might be the more fertile and aboundant.

The reason for the Eare of Corne.

Poets, in their wonted humour of gracefull fiction, haue feigned, that the Gods being assembled on a day, for their recreation in *Euboea*, in the Island of *Bœotia*: *Iupiter* their Chiefe and Great Maister, commanded them to speake their mindes in some thing, which was the best and most profitable for the life of men. *Vulcane* said, that it was Fire; *Neptune* Water; *Mercurie* a House to dwell in; *Ceres* Corne; and *Minerua* the Oxe.

In the Sea called *Aegeum*.

These opinions were diuersly bandied among them, each of the Gods and Goddesses maintaining what themselues thought best. Some preferred Fire, to be as the Spiracle or infuser of life. Others auouched, that men might liue without Fire, and many Nations there were, that had no knowledge in the vse thereof. Others affirming, that both the one and other were altogether necessary for the life of Man, according to the saying of *Pindarus*.

Opinions debated among the Gods.

Water is the best Element,
And Gold as the Fire resplendent,
Shineth aboue all other substances.

Mercurie the guide and directer of Societie among men, fearing to be preuented in his opinion; defended dwelling in an house, affirming, that the forenamed Elements were necessary for man, who yet remained left and exposed to the Ayres iniuries, and the violence of furious Beasts, wilde, saluage and cruell, without the inuention of buildings, which make Townes and villages by multiplicity. *Ceres* and *Minerua* being ioyned together, hoping to winne the day from the other Gods, said, that they had

Mercurie said to be the reformer of humaine society.

had better considered on the case, For men haue (indeed) like lodging, dwelling and feeding as the Beasts haue.

Silua domus erat, Cibus Herba, Cubilia Frondes.

But yet *Ceres* had thought on a better distinguishing for nourishment, and giuen man Corne, in stead of wilde Acornes.

Prima Ceres ferro mortales vertere Terram
Instituit, cum iam glandes, atque arbuta sera
Deficerent siluæ, & victum Dodona negaret.

Then, that the Oxe was the most necessary creature for the seruice of men, as being the Symbole of Rest, and of Husbandry. Hereupon *Iupiter*, who alwayes was a well willer to Ladies, according to his wounted behauiour, and for whose sakes he had so often times disguised himselfe; adiudged the victory to *Ceres* and *Minerua*. Adding moreouer (for reason in a Iudge) that Tillage, Husbandry, the Countrey and Fieldes was the most perfect, most innocent and iust, beyond all other kindes of life that men could make election of. Husbandry is the absolute Elixar (without any compounding) that maketh a man satisfied and contented, euen as if hee possessed a Kingdome.

Read *Ouid* for the wanton disguises of *Iupiter*.

Post aliquot mea regna videns mirabor aristas.

Others haue held and maintained, that the Auncient Kings, Dukes and Countes of *Bretaigne*, caried the Standard and Banner of the great Prince *Gomer*, who was sonne to the Patriarche *Iaphet*, first peopler of the plenteous *Gaules*, which was *L'Escu d'Azur au Lyon rampant d'Or*. Armes afterward changed *De Gueules en Macles d'Or*, by a certaine King named *Macliauus*, who reigned in the time of our King *Clouis*; Armes still held by the Lords of *Rohan*, descended of this auncient Stocke and Linage.

Gomers Banner borne by the Kings of *Bretaigne*.

But others are of the minde, that the proper and naturall Armes of *Bretaigne*, were *D'Azur a Trois Gerbes de Bled liees d'Or*, retained by the Lords of *Ponthieure*, *Escar delles de Bretaigne Moderne*. And

That a certayne Duke of *Bretaigne*, hauing seene in heauen an Image of the Sacred Virgin, clothed in a mantle of *Hermines*; he forsooke *Les Espics et Gerbes de Bled d'Argent en champ d'Azur*, and tooke *De Sable seme d'Hermines d'Argent*. This is the opinion of *Richard de Vassebourg*, and other reporters of nouelties, to such as they would haue to credit them.

The opinion of *Richard de Vassebourg*.

It is a matter most certaine, that the Prouince of *Armorica* (called at this present *Bretaigne*) was first of all inhabited by the *Gaules*. Wee learne in the tenth Chapter of *Genesis*, that *Iaphet* (whom the *Rabbines* make to bee the eldest sonne of the Patriarche *Noah*, *Cham* the second, and *Sem* the third) in the deuision of the world, made three hundred and so many yeares after the Flood: had in his lot and partage, the Septentrionall or Northerne partes of *Asia*, *Europe* and their Ilands, which his seauen children deuided among them.

Armorica now called *Bretaigne*.

Gomer, the Eldest sonne of *Iaphet*, first exposed himself vpon the liequid or moist element, that is to say, to saile on the Ocean-sea: and that he made or Carpented Gallies, shippes and vesselles, by the module or patterne of the Arke, formed by his Grandfather *Noah*. And being followed by his Brethren with their Families, peopled the firme land and the Isles; according, as *Iosephus* informeth vs in the first of his Antiquities, the fift and sixt Chapters.

Iosephus in Historiar. Iudaic. Lib. 2. Cap. 5. 6.

Zonaras, in his first booke and fourth history, writeth, that *Gomer* and his Brethren parting from the mountaines of *Taurus* and *Amanus*; shaped their course ouerthwarte *Asia* towards the *North*, and came to the riuer *Tanais*, which rowling from the *North* to the *South*, runneth on to ioyne with the marishe *Moetides*, which crossing *Scythia*, seperateth *Asia* from *Europe*. And then soiourning in the *North*, sought for shelter in *Europe*, proceeding on so farre as *Cades*, a straight at this instant called *Gibraltar*, but beforenamed of *Gomer* or *Hercules*. And coasting along the land, the brethren of *Gomer* tooke vp their dwelling, some heere, some there; but *Gomer* went vp to the *Armoricane* Ocean, that is the coaste of *Bretaigne*, a Prouince first inhabited by the *Gaules*: and of this *Gomer*, the *Gaules* were called by the *Greekes Galates*, and by the *Hebrewes Gomerites*, this is related to vs by *Iosephus*, in the place before alleadged.

Zonaras in Lib. 1. Hist. 4.

The *Gaules* called *Galates* and *Gomerites*.

Lucian

vnto vs: *That many Princes and great Lords of Fraunce, haue made Orders of their Deuises, which they had for themselues.*

Orders made of Deuises.

The ancient Lords of *Bourbon*, had that of the *Golden Shield.*

The Lords of *Luxembourg* made theirs, *A Parke round Paled with Woode.*

The Counts of *Foix* (whereto should be added Lords of *Bearne*) of *Comte.*

The Lords of *Coucy*; *Of a Lyon*, to perpetuate the memory of the same Lyon which *Enguerran de Coucy*, first of the name, tearmed the Great, fought with and killed in his Forrests: where afterward he caused to be builded the Abbey of *Premonstre*, Chiefe of the *Order*, in the Reigne of King *Lewes*, called the *Deuout.*

Hereto he might haue added.

Bouchard Lord of *Montmorency.*

The Lords of *Montmorency*, who carried for Deuise, *The Dogge*, the Symbole of faithfulnesse; with the common saying, that *Bouchard de Montmorency* (by other called of *Mont-Remy*) came to offer his seruice, with all his followers, to King *Philip*, first of the name, and who (as the same man auoucheth) that *Bouchard* and his followers, *Portoient au Col vne Chaine d'Or, composee de Testes & Cimiers de Cerfs, & de sus l'Estomach vn Chien. Did weare about his necke a Chaine of Gold, composed of Crests Heads of Harts, and vpon the Breast a Dogge.*

Such Princes and great Lords, might both make and maintaine the Order of their Deuises, in regard of their Greatnesse, and wealthinesse of their Houses. But we haue since then seene, in time of the Generall Estates of the Kingdomes being at *Paris*, a meane Gentleman, to be the *Instituter of a new Order of the Crescent, called of Saint Magdalen.* Of which Order here is to be seene the Crosse, with the Statutes beginning and ending thereof.

The Order of Saint Magdalen, Instituted at *Paris* in the yeare of Grace, One thousand sixe hundred and foureteene, by a Noble Gentleman, named *Mesire* IOHN CHESNEL.

L'Ordre de nr Sainste Magdelaine.

CHAP. XV.

The time of this Orders Institution.

DVring the time as the Generall Estates of France, were present at *Paris*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand sixe hundred and foureteene; a *Breton* Gentleman, issued of a Noble House, renowned both for valiancy and Nobility, as well in *Bretaigne* as *Aniou*, beside other Prouinces of the Kingdome: being returned from the East and *Asie*, moued by deuotion, and partly a zealous passion to see (against Gods Commandements, and Sacred Ordenances of the King) such Diuelles, rude Encounters and Garboiles, as daily happened among such, as, standing on tearmes of Honour, grounded on an ill kinde of goodnesse, as taking the wall, or a word fearsly well spoken, but farre worse vnderstood, or taken with a wrong Bias, the subiect being about a Strumpet (the commonest quality of all other) cut the throates of one another, euen as Butchers serue Swine, loosing both bodies and soules for euer in the pit of eternall fires, which they would not do for defence of the Catholique Faith, and seruice for the King. Vpon these considerations, hauing collected together some few good and memorable noates; he presented them to the Nobilities Chamber, for the stablishing of a new Order Military, erected on the former

Quarrels for euery light occasion.

ground. The principall vow whereof was, to abiure Duels, Fights and Frayes, with all other kindes of quarelling: but onely to regard the honor of God, the seruice of his Maiestie, and conseruation of the Kingdome.

Honest intentions can haue no bad actions

The King looking vpon the Papers, declared by his gracious behauiour, that the gentlemans purpose was pleasing to him; and so much the rather, because he plainely perceiued, that Charitie vrged him meerely thereto: without seeking after his particular profit, priuate fauours, rewards, Wages or Pensions.



He prouided the Order, and Crosse belonging thereto, according to his owne minde and meaning, which onely tended to this end, to entreat his Maiesties liking and consent; that this nouell Institution of French Knights, might be vnder the inuocation on Saint *Magdalen*, the Mirrour of Penitence and Repentance. Within compasse whereof, such Noble *Frenchmen* (ill borne, and worse bred) making account and profession of swearing, blaspheming the holy name of God, and of the blessed Virgin his Mother, fordging ill grounded quarrels, and thereon murdering one another like bruite beasts: might returne to better vnderstanding, by example of that sinfull Woman, who as of a Sinke; filled with all vice and abhomination; by meanes of her true and vnfeigned repentance, became a Vessell full of precious balme and all perfection.

Concerning the Crosse of the Order.

The Crosse of this Order, which serued for wearing about the necke, and on the Cloake; finished with Floures de Luces at three Branches; for reuiuing againe the memory of the *Order of the Lillie*, which was of *Nauarre*; and the foote stood, or began in a *Croissant*. The Order was Baptized with that name by *Rene*, Duke of *Anjou*, outwardly cantonned with small Palmes, made aptly in a roundure, as a noate or signale of the voyage to the holy Land, made by the Institutour of the said Order, according to the example of the auncient *French Paladines*, who were called by the name of *Palmers*, returning from the Holy Land; as at their going thither, they were tearmed *Croisiers*. The shape of *Magdalen* her selfe, was presented Ouall-wise in the midst, as giuing name to the Order, the Crosse whereof is Cantonned with Floures de Luces, glittering out of Sunnie-beames, as shewing the Excellency of the Kingdome, the most famous of Christendome.

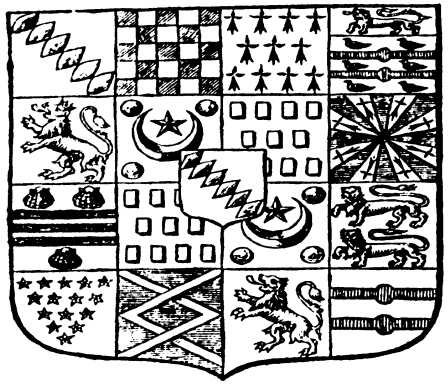
How Trauailers came at the first to be called Palmers

The Inuenter of this *Order*, was named *Mesire Iohn Chesnell* (whose Grandfathers were renowned (for their valour) in the Histori of *Bretaigne*, vnder the name of *Chesnel*, Lord of *Chappronnaye*) who describing the habite, Crosse and Collar, with the Statutes of the Order (which follow after) presented them and himselfe to the King. He made him Knight, putting vpon him the Cloake of the Order, & the Collar with a Crosse of Gold about his necke. And euer since that time, thee tooke the title of Knight of Saint *Magdalen*, being so named, as well in the Court, as elsewhere. The Scutcheon or Shield of his Armes is composed of sixteene Quarters, 4.4.4.4. & one ouer all, which are in this manner Emblazoned.

Mesire Iohn Chesnell Institutour of the Order.

The Emblazon of the Armes of *Mesire Iohn Chesnell.*

Au premier, & sur le Tout de sa Maison De Sable à vne Bande Fuzelee d'Or de Six pieces. Au Deuxiesme Eschiquete d'Argent, & de Gueulles; Au Troisiesme de Bretaigne. Au Quatriesme d'Or à Deux Fesses nouees de Gueulles à l'Orle de Six Merlettes de Sable, au Chef de Gules au Lyon passant d'Or. Au Cinquiesme de Gueulles à vn Lyon d'Argent Corõne mesme. Au Sixiesme de Sable à vn Croissant d'Argent, supportant vne Estoile de mesme.



Cantonne de Quatre Besans d' *gent. Au Septiesme d'Azur à* *Billettes d'Argent, qui est de Be* *noir 4. 3. 4. Au Huictiesme Cy* *de Gueulles & d'Ermines de Seize* *ces: Au Neufuiſme de Sable à Trois* *ces d'Argent, accompagnees de Tr* *Coquilles de meſme. L'Vnziesme* *le Sixiesme. Au Douziesme de Gue* *à Deux Leopards d'Or mis l'vn ſur l'* *autre. Au Treiziesme d'Azur Fretté d'* *gent. Au Quatorziesme d'Azur à vn Ly* *d'Argent. Le Quinziesme d'Azur à* *Lyon d'Argent. Et au Seiziesme d'* *gent à Deux Faces nouees de Gueulles.*

The Shield or Escutcheon is ador- ned and entoured with the Order, *Heaume tarre de front*: hauing for Creſt an Eagle with her Wings displayed *De Sable, L'Eſtomach briſe d'vne Croix dudit Ordre.* With this Deuiſe in two pendants, thus.

The Ioue of God is peaceable.

L'Amour De Dieu.
Eſt Pacifique.

Rules and Statutes to be obſerued by the Knights of the Order of Saint *Magdalen.*

CHAP. XVI.

The Kings prerogatiue in the Order to appoint a Prince &c.

I. HE King is to continue alwayes (if he be ſo pleaſed) *Cheefe of this Order*: as well for his Honour, as for the good of his Seruice. And he may commit or allow a Prince, to be the Generall, and as his Lieutenant (vnder his owne good pleaſure) ouer the whole Order. To whom the Knights ſhall ſtand obliged to be obedient, next vnto the King. The ſame Prince ſhall haue power and authority, to conduct the Knights of this Order to Warres, and elſewhere; according to the command of his Maieſtie, during the time of his charge, but no longer.

Great Maiſter of the Order & his charge. *L'Hebergé Royale.*

II. Vnder the ſaid Prince, ſhall be the Great Maiſter of the Order, whom the Knights ſhall make election of from three yeeres to three yeares. He ſhall haue the care and charge, of all the Reuennues belonging to the Order, and to whom all the Knights ſhall render their obedience. During the yeares of his charge and Office he is to make his continuall reſidence in the principal Academy of the Order, which ſhall be named *The Royall Lodging*; whereon ſhall depend all the other Academies of the Kingdome.

For admiſſion into the Order

III. Such as ſhall be admitted and receiued into this Order, ſhall be Noble by three Races or Deſcents. They ſhall not be tyed or engaged to Iuſtice. They ſhall be well enſtructed in the Catholique and Apoſtolique Religion: They muſt be found, healthfull, and well diſpoſed of body, without any difformitie either Corporall or Spirituall, whereof may be receiued any apprehenſion. And

Corporall or Spirituall, whereof may be receiued any apprehenſion. And of they muſt be bound to bring true atteſtation from their Biſhop (eſpecially) for matter of Religion: from three worthy and well knowne Gentlemen, concerning their Nobilitie: and from a skilfull Phyſition, for their health.

At any Knights receiuing into the Order.

IIII. On the day of entertaining or receiuing any Knight, either by the King, Prince Committee, or Great Maiſter of the Order; hee is to make a ſolemne Vowe and profeſſion, to renounce all doubtfull and hazardous Play or Gaming. Not to blaſpheme the name of God, nor to commit any act that ſhall be vicious, and vnbefitting a Chriſtian Knight. He ſhall not reade prohibited and vnlawfull Bookes, without the permiſſion of his Superiours in the Order, and the Ordenaries of the places, whereſoeuer the Academies are ſeated. Hee is to ſhunne the reading of Bookes that are of wicked Doctrine, which corrupt good manners; and diſſolute Songs, ſcrulous talke, and diſhoneſt companies of euill fame.

Concerning the Habite and Collar.

V. The Habite of the Knights on the day of their reception, muſt be of Skie-Colour, and the Collar of the Order, of the Letter M. doubled with *Lambda*, and the Letter A. repreſenting the names of Saint *Mary Magdalen*; of *Lewes* and of *Anne*, King and Queene of France; enterlaced and enchained with double Harts, ſtraucrſed and wounded with Darts of Gold Croſſed, and the ſaid Ciphers or Letters enamelled with the Colours and Liueries of his Maieſtie, Carnation, White and Blew. The Cordon or Riband muſt be Red or Crimoſine, whereon to hang the Croſſe of Gold enamelled with Red, with an Ouale in the middeſt, wherein muſt be (on the one ſide) repreſented or figured, the Image of the holy penitent Saint *Mary Magdalen*, and S. *Lewes* on the other. And on the Mantle or Cloake, the Croſſe of Red or Crimoſine Sattin, embroidered with Gold and Siluer, hauing the like Ouale as is ſaid before, and a *Magdalen*. And for the deuiſe round about it, theſe words;

L'Amour De Dieu Eſt Pacifique.

The House for the Knights.

VI. Theſe Knights are to haue a Houſe neere to *Paris*, which his Maieſty may bestow vpon them, if he be ſo pleaſed, wherein there muſt be a Chappell, and wherein alſo the Knights are to be entertained. There ſhall ordenarily attend ſixe Religious Prieſts (who are to weare the Croſſe as the Knights doe) there, to ſay daily diuine Seruice, and to aſſemble (in the ſame Chappell) the Knights of the Order, who are there to be receiued at their preſentment, vpon the conditions before ſpecified. At which Reception, and at the end of the Maſſe, ſhall be ſaid by thoſe Religious Prieſts the *Veni Creator*; the Letanies of the Sacred Virgin, and the Prayers of Saint *Mary Magdalen*, and likewiſe of Saint *Lewes*. Which being done, the Knights muſt take the Oathe before the King, or the Prince his Committee, or the Great Maiſter of the Order. From whom he is to receiue the Sword hallowed, the Habite for Knighthood, the Great Order, the Croſſe and Cordon. Afterward is to be ſung the *Te Deum*, and the Pſalme *Laudate Dominum omnes Gentes*; at the end whereof, the Knights Aſſiſtants muſt goe and embrace the new Knight; giuing him the kiſſe of Peace, Vnion and Concord, euery man in his Ranke, according to the order as they haue bin entertained.

The taking of the Oath, and receiuing of the Knightly dues.

The time for probation of the Knights.

VII. Concerning the Houſe, which the Knights are to haue neere to *Paris*; it muſt be called and named *The Royall Lodging*, wherein muſt ordenarily be fiue hundred Knights: all bound to abide therein, during the time of two yeares Probation, beginning at the day of entertainement, and yet they may abide there longer, if themſelues thinke it good. At the ending of thoſe two yeares for their Probation, they ſhall take the ſolemne Oathe of the Order (in preſence of the Religious Prieſts of *The Lodging Royall*) Of Charitie, Obedience and Coniugall Chaſtitie; and to weare the Collar and Croſſe of the ſaid Order, during all their life time.

What they ought to renounce.

VIII. In like manner, they are to renounce and abiure all Duelles or Combats, all rude Encounters and Aſſaſſinates, yea, and all quarrels out of the Kings Seruice: except ſuch wherein they ſhall be taxed, in which caſes, they may lawfully defend

defend themselues by Armes, which they are to weare by their profession. In
Oath is likewise included, that they are to liue and dye in the Kings seruice; with
out adhering or ioyning themselues to any Leagues or Parties whatsoeuer, vnd
what cause, pretence or subiect that can be alleadged. For this perfect knowled
ought to be engrauen in the depth of their soules, that the very greatest seruic
which they can render to God; is, first to serue him, then their King, and lastly
their Countrey, for exaltation of the truely Catholique Faith, and honour of th
Kingdome.

Appearance once yearely at the Royall Lodging.

IX. Euery Knight of the said Order, after their Approbation, shall stand bound to appeare in person at the *Lodging Royall*, euery yeare once, on the day and Feast of Saint *Mary Magdalen*, Patronesse of the said Order. To the end, that they may Communicate together, and render an account of their actions to the Great Master, and to twelue Knights more, elected and chosen as his Assessours and Counsellours: who are to iudge of all their differences, and the transgression of their Vowes, which are to be kept inuiolably; vnder paine of being cashеerd, & degraded of the Order, if their recidiuation extend to the third time.

For them dwelling in the House.

X. The Knights abiding and dwelling in the Lodging, must stand obliged, to be assistant on Sundayes and Feastiuall dayes at Diuine Seruice, celebrated by the Priests of the Order; and to receiue the holy Communion euery first Sunday of the Moneth, at the least. To say daily the Letanies of the Sacred Virgin, with the Prayers of S. *Mary Magdalen*, and of S. *Lewes*; their Chappelet and *Salue Regina*.

Of Exercises for the Knights

XI. The Exercises of the Knights, are to be ruled according to the houres of the day, for auoiding Idlenesse, the Fountaine or well-spring of all vices. And for this effect, in the Lodging Royall, and elsewhere, there must be maintained Esquires, Maisters in actions of Armes, Learned Mathematicians, and some number of well experimented Souldiours, to enstruct Military agilities, and exercises fit for Horse and Foote For other houres of Recreation after these Exercises, there shall be a Tennis Court, Stoole-Baule-Play, and other pastimes, fit for maintaining a knight in the expertnesse of Armes, for better disposition of the body. And from the Knights lodgings or chambers shall be banished (as hatefull and detestable for euer) all play at Dice, Cards or such like.

For maintenance of the Priests and House Officers

XII. For nourishment and maintenance of the sixe Keligious Priests, the King is most humbly to be petitioned; for the annexing and ioyning to the House, some good and especiall Benefice, for the better continuance of Diuine Seruice. And for maintaining the Officers of the Lodging, each Knight that shall enter into the said Order, must be engaged to giue a thousand Francks at his entrance, for the first yeare, and an hundred Pistolets for the second yeare, by way of Pension, which is to be paied to the Reiuer of the Order, established by the Great Maister: as well for himselfe, as for two Seruants and two Horses, which must be his furnishments; vntill there shall be some better meanes established. Which is to be awaited, either by the charitable gifts of Princes or Great Lords, or by Conquests made by the Knights themselues, on such as are enemies to the Church; or by the stocke moued to his Maiesty for his owne memoriall, which was presented to him in the Moneth of Iuly, One thousand sixe hundred and foureteene, when it shall be graciously granted and Signed.

For maried mens entring into the Order

XIII. Concerning maried Gentlemen, such as would enter into this Order, they are to be obliged; ouer and beside the attestation of their Nobility, Catholique Religion, and good habitude and disposition of body: to bring with them the full consent of their Sonnes, for making their two yeares probation, to be admitted and receiued as Knights, which otherwise they cannot be. And such as be formerly entertained Knights, and vnmaried: may lawfully marry after their Probation, if themselues do so thinke it good; considering, that the Order bindeth nor restraineth, but for the Vow of coniugall chastity.

XIIII. And in regard of them, which (at all times) haue had the habitude of vertue, and are knowne for such by common reputation, perfected in their Exercises by maturity of their yeares, more capable to enstruct others, then to be enstructed, and being tied to the duties of Mariage, and cares attending on a Familie, and

yet (neuertheleſſe) desirous of admittance into the said Order: they may be re-
ined, with charge of the precedent proues, and onely fifteene dayes of exercise,
ecessary for a Knight. Which time being past, they shall notwithstanding be en-
ged, to assist on Feast dayes and Sundayes at Diuine Seruice, in the Lodging of
e Order; except there be some sufficient essoine or excuse. And submit them-
elues, to receiue direction in their Conscience; that their Spirits may be the more
rongly enabled, and fit for maintenance of all vertues, among the vicious thornes
nd briers of this wicked world, and to chastise and correct themselues for such im-
erfections and behauiours; as they had contracted before their receiuing into the
rofession of the Order. They shall likewise stand obliged, to be personally pre-
nt at all Assemblies of the Knights, and one day in the weeke (by allowed
iscretion) to continue the exercises necessary for a Knight, the space of two
eares: yet neuertheleſſe, without binding them to a continuall abiding, whereto
e tied those Knights which be not married. And they must be such as are rich, of
ood degree and quality: because they will be engaged, to maintaine the exercises
f the Order, and such poore Gentlemen, that haue no meanes for entrance; that they
ay the better satisfie the Vow of Charity.

For such as are of ripe yeares and well enstructed, coming into the Order.

Concerning farre distance frō the Schools & Academies

XV. Married Gentlemen, which haue deuotion to the Order, and yet notwith-
anding, are far off from the places where the Academies be, and haue not meanes
o maintaine their Family in the neereſt Townes to them; may yet receiue the gol-
en Crosse of the Order, at the hands of the Great Maister, euen as well as Knights
f Honour. Alwayes prouided, that they first haue made proofe of their Catho-
ique Religion and Nobilitie; obliging themselues to the Prayers of the Order, and
ecelding fauour and assistance to the Knights of the Order, like friends in affaires
f importance, whereto they shall be required, and in so doing, they become par-
akers of the Orders Prayers. Yet they may not enioy any Commanderies, nor a-
ise to the charges and dignities of the Order; nor weare the Crosse on the Cloake;
our (as Friends) may be holpen by Knights of the Order, when any such neede
hall be.

Priuiledges appertaining to the Knights.

XVI. These Knights may not be compelled by their bodies, for the paiment
f ciuile debts: and their equipage or furnishment shall stand exempt from all ex-
cutions. They can but oblige the benefit of their patrimony; because they are not
o be impeached from following the Kings Seruice, at what time soeuer they shall
e thereto commanded. And these Knights may also make choice (at once for all o-
her) of some one of the Parliaments in France; whereto they may be called, there
o be iudged and sentenced definitiuely.

Consideration for poore Gentlemen.

XVII. If there shall be in the Lodging more money, then is required to pay
he Officers thereto belonging; the ouer-plus may serue, for entertaining poore Gen-
lemen to the Exercises, that haue no meanes for their learning, for satisfying the
ow of Charity.

The Kings daily visitation by the Order.

XVIII. And to the end, that there may be alwayes about the King, some of
hose Knights for his seruice: there shall daily goe to visite him, fourescore or an
undred of these Knights (the number of fiue hundred remaining ordenarily com-
eat in the Lodging) departing from the Order vnder conduct of some one of them
hereto appointed by the Great Maister, each Company going on his day in the
eeke, while the rest stay at home about their exercises.

For Seruants that be of the best condition called *Brethren Seruants*.

XIX. Such as are Brethren Seruants, shall be had from the most honorable Fa-
ilies in Townes and Cities, next to the Nobility: who shall be bound to
ring attestation of three races, and that their Grandfathers and Fathers haue
lwayes liued honorably, without any roate of infamie, and in the faithfull be-
efe of the Catholique Church. They shall be bound to the same Vowes and
ffices as the Knights. They shall weare as a noate on their Cloakes, a Scar-
et Crosse, purfled with Siluer, and a Siluer Crosse of the same fashion, as that of
old worne by the Knights, which is to hang at a round Cordon of Crimosine
ilke. For entring into the Lodging, and Exercises, vsed among the Knights,
ey shall pay to the Receiuer of the Order at his entrance an hundred
rownes, and two hundred pounds of Pension the yeares following; as

well

well for himselfe, as maintenance of a Horse to performe his seruice vnto And their Brethren Seruants may be admitted to Military charges, as members of the King Companies going to Warre. And if they attaine to the performance of some wor thy Act of Armes; and for the Kings seruice, they are to be ennobled, that they the more lawfully aspire to that honorable quality. And they may establish Stocke or Bancke of money, for maintaining them of their owne condition that lacke the meanes for entring into the said Exercises, and Order of Brethren Se uants; by the Charities conferred on them, by those of their condition, and by the Te staments of such, as shall be deuoted to this holy Order.

For seruants of the meaner qualitie.

XX. The Groomes or meaner Seruants attending on these Knights, shall be of the most honest Families of Mechanicall Artezans; who shall bring testimony of their good life and manners, by two or three of the principall men of the Parish, and of the Curate. Their Garment shall be of Blew Cloath, with a Gallloune Lace of Crimosine Silke: And they must be skilfull in one Trade or other, for their bet ter seruice in the Lodging, and for the Knights that are to make vse of them. Eue ning and Morning they must attend the Knights seruice, as is appointed them by the Great Maister: but the rest of the day, they are to trauaile faithfully for the com mon benefit, euery one in his Art and profession, as they shall be employed by Maisters experimented in them. They must be bound to the same Vowes and Pray ers as their Maisters, for auoiding all vicious example in so holy a Company. And for attaining to this happinesse, they are to bring no thing but their proues appoin ted, and must remaine in the Lodging all their life time: if so themselues think it expedient, or may withdraw themselues thence (if they will) after the nine yeares of their Probation. All their life long, they shall be priuiledged by some fauours of the Order; in recompence of such good seruices, as they shall per forme thereto.

This intention came to no purpose.

These were the Articles deliuered to his Maiesty by the said Lord of *Chappronaye*; which sorted not to any effect, by reason of many impossibilities, as well a bout the Lodging, as the Stocke and Banke, with other difficulties beside. So this Order tooke both birth and death, in the person of the same *Chappronnaye*, who hauing lost all hope, of seeing the execution of these his good intentions; left all his goods to his friends, retreating himselfe from the World, and liued confined to Hermitage (by him erected) neere to *Valuin* in *Gastinois*, at the end of the Forrest of *Bierre*, or of *Fontaine-bleaud*, vpon a Rock, which discouereth the course of the goodly Riuer of *Seine*. He remaineth in this place, knowne to the Countrey neighbours and at *Paris*, by the name of *L'Hermite Pacifique de la Magdelaine*; *The Peaceable Hermite of S. Mary Magdalen.*

The Order of Bretaigne; called of the Hermine, and of the Eares of Corne; Instituted by *Frances*, Duke of *Bretaigne*, Sonne to *Iohn* the sixt, Sirnamed the Conquerour: In the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred and fifty.

CHAP. XVII.

L'Ordre de Bretaigne ou de l'Hermine & de l'Espy.

Frances, Duke of *Bretaigne*, last of the name, yongest Sonne (but not in fortune) to *Iohn*, sixt of the name, called the *Conquerour*, by imitation the steps of the Princes of the Bloud of France, his Cousines, and whom he was most Nobly descended: Instituted the Order of Knighthood, tearmed *Of the Hermine*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand four hundred

and fifty. Which order was otherwise called, Of *Eares of Corne* in regard, The forme of the Great Collar. the Great Collar thereof, was composed of Gold, in the true forme of Eares of Corne, enterlaced like to a Saultour, and bound both aboue and beneath, with two ties and circles of Gold.

A Beast called Ermine or Hermine.

At the end of this Collar, hunge by two or three small Chaines of Gold, a little beast, white as Snow, vulgarely called an *Ermine*; but in writing it more truely, it is stiled an *Hermine*, appearing to passe or runne ouer a word or motto, vnder a Bancke or faire Tuste of greene grasse, diapred with goodly flowres. Beneath which, was the deuise of the said Duke *Iohn* the Conquerour, Three wordes, to expresse the soule or sense thereof, to witt, *A. MA. VIE.* Whereby he would make knowen to the world, that the greatnesse and highst of his courage was such, as rather then to staple in his honour, he would expose himselfe to a thousand and thousand deaths. For my Life.

Concerning the naturall disposition of the Hermine.

The meaning of this deuice, conueigheth it selfe perticularly to this creature the *Hermine*, whose nature and kinde is such (according to the testimony of the best naturallists) that when he is pursued, in regard of the excellencie & raritie of his furre: he will suffer himselfe to be taken, rather then to runne or thwarte thorow any boggy, foule or filthy passage, so proudly doth he stand on the pureness of his coat or skinne. For huntesmen, well acquainted with his naturall inclination, to take him; will foile his haunches and trackes with mud, mire and dirte. In like manner, hee is as earnestly coueted and sought after for his whitenesse, euen (as in elder times) was the *Genett* for his blacke furre, speckled or spotted with red, and which (in those times) for excellency, was called, The Richest Furre. These two Animalls, the *Genett* and *Hermine*, true serued for Subiest to two seuerall Orders of Knighthood, in *France* and *Bretayne*: as the *Hedge Hogge* or *Porcupine*, and the Weather or Sheepe, to them of *Orleance* and of *Bourgongne*, called at this present *Flanders*.

The Hermine compared with the Genet.

The *Hermine*, for his excellent whitenesse, is the very richest furre, sought for and put in vse by Princes, at their highest and chiefest Feasts, and dayes of greatest Sollemnity, worne in their Gownes, Robes, Cloathes, mantelets and Surcoates, as the fayrest furre to grace their life time. And after their death, their Pulles and Coates Armours are furred therewith, being layed vpon them; and vsed beside in their Obsequies and Funeralles.

The Hermine furre for Princes in life and death.

For purity and excellency, it goeth farre beyond the *Lettice*, next vnto which is accounted the *Menu-Vair*. In a worde, it is white as milke, and thereupon (in former times) it was the occasion of the Auncient *French* name of *Lettice*, by way of *Antonomasia*, farre aboue all other white furres, whereof there are many kindes.

Plinie maketh mention of the diuersity of these Beasts, whereof the *Romanes* made great reckning in those times then, and describeth their nature in his eight Booke and seauen and thirty chapter. *Conuntur Hyemc, et Pontici Mures, hi dumtaxat* Albi, *quorum palatum ingustu sagacissimum est. Hac cute expoliuntur Vestes.* That the Rattes of *Pontus* (for so are the *Hermines* called, by comming from those parts in great abundance) and namely the Whites, which all the length of Winters time, keepes in their holes or dennes. That this creature hath a wonderfull capacity and vnderstanding, for discouery of any Game that may serue for his nourishment. With skinnes of this Beaste, the *Romane* Senatours had their robes furred. But merchants for lucre and gaine, which they made by the sale of these exquisite Furres, procured many fraudes and deceites: so that the Emperours and Senate had dayly their patience much disturbed, by continuall complaintes against those Regraters and Monopolizers. Whereunto also may be added, that these *Hermines* haue some kinde of notion and future knowledge, as is obserued by *Alianus*, in the first Booke of his various Historie, where he tearmeth these Animalles in this manner, *Mures futurorum prescios.*

Men that traded in the sale of Furres.

For addition of a further grace to this rich Furre, and to make it appeare much whiter then it is, by the luster and beauty of his contrary: the Furriers or Skinners, as matter belonging to their arte and skill, doe spot or speckle it with little quantities or morsels, of Lambes skinnes of Lombardy, famous and much commended for their Blacke shining splendour. For the *Hermine* is a little creature, wholly white, of the Beautifull black Lambes of *Lombardie.*

likenesse and bignesse of a Rat, the nose or snoute pointed and sharpened. The Furriers or Skinners doe make vse of this beasts tayle, to grace *Aumusses*, which are worne by

by Bishopes, and Chanons of great reuenewes. But oftentimes (which is not to much knowen) they deale like the Regraters spoken of by *Plinie*, they deliuer *Menu Vaire* or *Lettice*, in stead of *Hermines*, as Martines of Foxes, and Cattes of *Spayne* for *Gennets*.

Chaunge of the ancient Armes of Bretaigne.

The Dukes of *Bretaigne*, which followed after the Conquerour, in such sort affected the whitenesse of this little beast: that they chaunged their auncient Armes, to take *De Sable seme d'Hermines d'Argent, sans nombre*. And yet notwithstanding ignorant Painters haue emblazoned *Bretaigne* contrary to trueth, and the Rules of the Noble Art of Painting: according to which course, we may make naturally, or after the life, Roses of *Gueulles on d'Argent*, because Nature produceth them Redde and White. Lillies are (of their owne nature White and Yellow, as the *Paullet*: to figure and present them with *Gueulles*, like to them of *Florence*; is not for Enquirie, but rather ignorance in Armes, howsoeuer the art and cunning of man, may make variation of naturall colours, as in the Scripture, the spotted Ewes to deceiue *Laban*. In all things Nature ought to be imitated. Ignorant Painters haue scarsely so much vnderstanding to informe them, that the Colour and Mettall of *Bretaigne* are *Sable* and *Argent*. The Crosse in her Banners and Cornets, is alwayes made with white, and that the Armes of the later Dukes of *Bretaigne*, were *De Sable, seme d'Hermines d'Argent*. Such as are Maisters in Blazons, doe note these Armes by this onely word: *Il porte de Bretaigne*, for breuities sake; As *De France, de Nauarre, Daulphine, d'Orleans, d'Aniou, d'Alanson*, or *de Valois* for *France*. For Kingdomes of *England, Scotland, Leon, Castile, Arragon, Portugall, Hungaria, Bohemia, Polonia, Denmarke* and *Sweden*, without emblazoning them any otherwise: because these being the principles and grounds of the Art, he who maketh profession thereof, ought not (by any meanes) to be ignorant therein.

Nature should be followed in all things.

Emblazons for the Kingdomes.

The number of the Orders Knights, and their Habite.

Duke *Frances* the first, caused his Castell of the *Hermine* to be newly builded, in memory and honor of the said Order; which he composed of fiue & twenty Knights, without taxation of blame or reproach. They were garmented with Cloakes of white Damaske, lined with Carnation, the Mantelet or Chaperon of the same; whereon was worne the Great Collor of the Order, composed of *Eares of Corne*, accordingly as before you see the same figured.

The reason for the Eares of Corne.

The Subiect for these Eares of Corne, is (by some) reported, and referred to the care of Agriculture or Husbandrie, which the Kings, Dukes and Counts of *Bretaigne* alwayes had, to the end, that their Prouince might be the more fertile and aboundant.

In the Sea called *AEgeum*.

Poets, in their wonted humour of gracefull fiction, haue feigned, that the Gods being assembled on a day, for their recreation in *Euboea*, in the Island of *Bœotia*: *Iupiter* their Chiefe and Great Maister, commanded them to speake their mindes in some thing, which was the best and most profitable for the life of men. *Vulcane* said, that it was Fire; *Neptune* Water; *Mercurie* a House to dwell in; *Ceres* Corne; and *Minerua* the Oxe.

Opinions debated among the Gods.

These opinions were diuersly bandied among them, each of the Gods and Goddesses maintaining what themselues thought best. Some preferred Fire, to be as the Spiracle or infuser of life. Others auouched, that men might liue without Fire, and many Nations there were, that had no knowledge in the vse thereof. Others affirming, that both the one and other were altogether necessary for the life of Man, according to the saying of *Pindarus*.

Water is the best Element,
And Gold as the Fire resplendent,
Shineth aboue all other substances.

Mercurie said to be the preseruer of humaine society.

Mercurie the guide and directer of Societie among men, fearing to be preuented in his opinion; defended dwelling in an house, affirming, that the forenamed Elements were necessary for man, who yet remained left and exposed to the Ayres iniuries, and the violence of furious Beasts, wilde, saluage and cruell, without the inuention of buildings, which make Townes and villages by multiplicity. *Ceres* and *Minerua* being ioyned together, hoping to winne the day from the other Gods, said, that they had

had better considered on the case, For men haue (indeed) like lodging, dwelling and feeding as the Beasts haue.

Silua domus erat, Cibus Herba, Cubilia Frondes.

But yet *Ceres* had thought on a better distinguishing for nourishment, and giuen man Corne, in stead of wilde Acornes.

Prima Ceres ferro mortales vertere Terram
Instituit, cum iam glandes, atque arbuta særa
Deficerent siluæ, & victum Dodona negaret.

Then, that the Oxe was the most necessary creature for the seruice of men, as being the Symbole of Rest, and of Husbandry. Hereupon *Iupiter*, who alwayes was a well willer to Ladies, according to his wounted behauiour, and for whose sakes he had so often times disguised himselfe; adiudged the victory to *Ceres* and *Minerua*. Moreouer (for reason in a Iudge) that Tillage, Husbandry, the Countrey and Fieldes life was the most perfect, most innocent and iust, beyond all other kindes of life that men could make election of. Husbandry is the absolute Elixar (without any compounding) that maketh a man satisfied and contented, euen as if hee possessed a Kingdome.

Read *Ouid* for the wanton disguises of *Iupiter*.

Post aliquot mea regna videns mirabor aristas.

Others haue held and maintained, that the Auncient Kings, Dukes and Countes of *Bretaigne*, caried the Standard and Banner of the great Prince *Gomer*, who was sonne to the Patriarche *Iaphet*, first peopler of the plenteous *Gaules*, which was *L'Escu d'Azur au Lyon rempant d'Or*. Armes afterward changed *De Gueules en Macles d'Or*, by a certaine King named *Maclianus*, who reigned in the time of our King *Clouis*; Armes still held by the Lords of *Rohan*, descended of this auncient Stocke and Linage.

Gomers Banner borne by the Kings of *Bretaigne*.

But others are of the minde, that the proper and naturall Armes of *Bretaigne*, were *D'Azur a Trois Gerbes de Bled liees d'Or*, retained by the Lords of *Ponthieure*, *Escar belles de Bretaigne Moderne*. And

The opinion of *Richard de Vassebourg*.

That a certayne Duke of *Bretaigne*, hauing seene in heauen an Image of the Sacred Virgin, clothed in a mantle of *Hermines*; he forsooke *Les Espics et Gerbes de Bled d'Argent en champ d'Azur*, and tooke *De Sable seme d'Hermines d'Argent*. This is the opinion of *Richard de Vassebourg*, and other reporters of nouelties, to such as they would haue to credit them.

Armorica now called *Bretaigne*.

It is a matter most certaine, that the Prouince of *Armorica* (called at this present *Bretaigne*) was first of all inhabited by the *Gaules*. Wee learne in the tenth Chapter of *Genesis*, that *Iaphet* (whom the *Rabbines* make to bee the eldest sonne of the Patriarche *Noah*, *Cham* the second, and *Sem* the third) in the deuision of the world, made three hundred and so many yeares after the Flood: had in his lot and partage, the Septentrionall or Northerne partes of *Asia*, *Europe* and their Ilands, which his seauen children deuided among them.

Iosephus in fine Antiquit. Iudaic. Lib. 2. Cap. 5. 6.

Gomer, the Eldest sonne of *Iaphet*, first exposed himself vpon the licquid or moist element, that is to say, to saile on the Ocean-sea: and that he made or Carpented Gallies, Shippes and vesselles, by the module or patterne of the Arke, formed by his Grandfather *Noah*. And being followed by his Brethren with their Families, peopled the firme land and the Iles; according, as *Iosephus* informeth vs in the first of his Antiquities, the fift and sixt Chapters.

Zonaras in Lib. 1. Hist. 4.

Zonaras, in his first booke and fourth history, writeth, that *Gomer* and his Brethren parting from the mountaines of *Taurus* and *Amanus*; shaped their course ouerthwarte *Asia* towards the *North*, and came to the riuer *Tanais*, which rowling from the *North* to the *South*, runneth on to ioyne with the marishe *Moetides*, which crossing *Scythia*, seperateth *Asia* from *Europe*. And then soiourning in the *North*, sought for shelter in *Europe*, proceeding on so farre as *Cades*, a straight at this instant called *Gibraltar*, but beforenamed of *Gomer* or *Hercules*. And coasting along the land, the brethren of *Gomer* tooke vp their dwelling, some heere, some there; but *Gomer* went vp to the *Armoricane* Ocean, that is the coaste of *Bretaigne*, a Prouince first inhabited by the *Gaules*: and of this *Gomer*, the *Gaules* were called by the *Greekes Galates*, and by the *Hebrewes Gomerites*, this is related to vs by *Iosephus*, in the place before alleadged.

The *Gaules* called *Galates* and *Gomerites*.

Lucian

Lucian a Greeke Author, in his *Gauliſh Hercules* reporteth, that the wiſe *Druides*, Prieſts and Soueraigne Iudges of the *Gaules*, called their firſt Founder Ogmius, which ſignifieth in their mother tongue (improperly called *Greeke*, ſaith he, for it was *Gauliſh*) *Father of Wiſedome*, and of *Eloquence*. That they figured and preſented him in the ſhape of an old Man, wrinckled, blacke, ſwarthie and Sun-burnt, like to an auncient Mariner, with ſmall ſtore of haire, or rather like a Balde-headed man; his body wrapt in a Lyons skinne, holding his Clubbe in his right hand, and a bended Bowe in his left, his backe charged with a Quiuer, which was well furniſhed with Arrowes. From his tongue were extended forth ſmall Chainets of Gold, wherewith were tied and bound by the eares, an infinite number of men, with ſmiling countenances.

The picture of the Gauliſh *Hercules*.

The morall interpretation of the figure.

Theſe Diuine *Druides* gaue hereby to vnderſtand (ſo ſaith the ſame *Lucian*) that their Prince *Gomer*, hauing aduentured himſelfe vpon the vnknowne Seas; came to inhabite and people the flouriſhing *Gaules*, and had firſt (before all men elſe) tamed and ouercome that fierce ſtearne Element the Ocean, repreſented by the Lyon, an vnconquerable creature. Alſo, that by his Eloquence or well ſpeaking, he had (in ſo perillous an enterpriſe) attracted all the way along with him, Men, who had followed him on their owne meere good will, with glad hearts and pleaſing lookes; hauing pollicied and gouerned them in all vertues and Sciences, compared to Gold. That hee brought theſe faire deſignes of his to paſſe, by wiſedome and prouidence, by pregnant arguments and reaſons, whereby he pierced thorow their eares, & penetrated to the very depth of their hearts that heard him. From hence it is, that the *Greekes* inuented their *Hercules*, to be a queller and tamer of Monſters, & celebrated the memory of *Iaphet*, Father to *Gomer*, vnder the name of *Iapetus*; to whom they gaue the title, *To be the firſt Diſcouerer of vnknowne Lands and Countries.*

The Greekes *Hercules* a tamer of Monſters.

Audax Iapeti genus primum: ſe credere tranſtris.

How & from whence the Gaules name is deriued.

From this firſt kinde of Nauigation, the *Gaules* deriued their appellation. The name of *Gallus* is *Syriac* and *Chaldean*, *Gallin*, which ſignifieth diſpoſed to floate vpon Waters, Brookes and Riuers. And thence is deriued the word *Gallerin*, which properly in *Hebrew* and other Eaſterne Languages, ſignifieth ſo much as a Shippe, Arke, Boate, Ferry Boate, Wherrie, Cocke-Boake, Gondeloe and Barcke for paſſage, made by craft of Carpenters, to paſſe freely ouer Floods and Waters. As we haue made repetition of in the matter of Marine or Sea buſineſſe, by the names now in vſe of Gallies, Gallotes, Galliottes, Galleaſſes and Gallions; eſpecially lightly and arteficially made by Ioyners and Carpenters skill; by meanes whereof men may paſſe the Seas at pleaſure. And by this obſeruation, our *Gauliſh Hercules* was named *Gomerius Gallus*, becauſe, by aduenturing himſelfe vpon the Seas; he had warranted and defended his followers from Shipwracke, onely in ſuch Veſſels made of Wood. Hence was it alſo, that Forreſts were (in times paſt) called *Gaules* in generall, and a Wood perticulerly was named *Gaull*: A Tree alone, high and ſtraine, fairely exalted, *Gaule*, a word whereof we make vſe yet to this preſent, whereby to denoate and ſignifie a Beame or Pearch. The *Romant* of *Reynard* of *Montauban*, compoſed in the time of *Phillip Auguſtus*, hath theſe relations, according to the auncient French in thoſe dayes.

The Gauliſh *Hercules* named *Gomerius Gallus*.

* *Eins Carpentier en* ᵇ *Bos*, ᶜ *Sot ſi charpenter*
Ne mena telle noiſe en ᵈ *parfond* Gaul *rame.*

* Tamait.
ᵇ Boit
ᶜ Scent.
ᵈ Profond.

The Romant of *Aye d'Auignion* made in the ſelfe ſame Reigne, forming a Periphraſis concerning the end of the Spring time, whereunto Summer ſucceedeth.

* Bos: facile
ᶜ Lein tempeſtueux.
ᵍ Gaillard & ſerin.

Ce fu apres la Paſque, que Ver met à declin,
Que floriſſent Cil Pré, & Cil Gaul *ſont foueilly*
Que chantent cil oyſel haut, & clair, & ᵍ ſery
Lors change folle Dame & l'Amor de ſon Mary.

And this is the reaſon why the *Bretons*, the moſt ancient people of the *Gaules*, haue retained (euen to this very day) the name of *Goy* for a Wood & Forreſt. And among vs, the ordenary Oath of honeſt plaine meaning Country men, is by *Ver-goy*, as if they would ſay, *By the Greene-Wood.* And let me tell you, that (from all Antiquitie) people liuing

liuing & dwelling in the fieldes, were called *Bagaudes*, or *Bagaudæ*, whereof mention is made by *Eutropius*, & *Paulus Oroſius*. Theſe were of the *Gaules* Chriſtians, that had retreted themſelues into the woods, during the perſecutions of cruell *Dioclesian*, only to liue in their owne Religion. Since which time, this name or word hath bin taken in the worſt ſenſe, and referred to ſuch, as hide themſelues lurkingly in Woodes and Forreſts, only to prey vpon, and rob all paſſengers, and ſo, by corruption of Letters, are tearmed high-way-men, Theeues & robbers, of whom we ceaſſe to ſpeake any further, and returne againe to our *Bretons*.

Bagaudes or Bagaudæ.

The countrey of *Bretaigne* hauing bin firſt of all inhabited by *Gomer* and his followers (who afterward peopled the reſt of the *Gaules*, *Spayne*, *Allemaigne* or *Germanie*, *Italie* and *Greece*) the *Druides* made there their principall abiding, from whence afterward they diſperſed themſelues into the neighbouring Prouinces. And although it was ſo, that their Prince, high Prieſt and preſident of the *Gaules*, held the Seate of his Principality at *Dreux*, *In finibus Carnutum*, as *Cæſar* ſaith in his Commentaries: yet notwithſtanding, the chiefeſt Colledge of thoſe *Drudes*, was in the *Gauliſh Bretaigne* whereof we now diſcouſe, euen the very ſame; and not in *England*, ſo ought the ſame paſſage in the ſixt Booke of *Cæſars* Commentaries to be vnderſtood.

Bretaigne firſt peopled by *Gomer* and his followers.

Diſciplina Druidarum in *Britannia reperta eſt, atque inde in Galliam tranſlata:* which is meant of *Bretaigne Armorica*. And thither it was that the Noblemen of the *Gaules* ſent their ſonnes, to learne thoſe Sciences whereof the *Druides* made profeſſion, as the ſame *Cæſar* reporteth in the place before alleadged,

Bretaigne Armorica, not *England*

England, which is now named Great *Bretaigne*, was peopled by the *Gauliſh Bretons*, who gaue it their name, as heere you may ſee for further aſſurance, by the Noble Romaine Hiſtorian *Cornelius Tacitus*, in the life of his Father in Law *Iulius Agricola*. *In uniuerſum æſtimanti, Gallos Vicinum ſolum* (of *England*) *occupaſſe credibile eſt. Eorum ſacra deprehendas: Sermo haud multum diuerſus, in deposcendis periculis eadem audacia.* *Strabo* maketh a perticuler deſcription of the *Breton Gaules* paſſage into *England*, whether they caried their Religion, Diſcipline, Language and boldneſſe in Fights, which it ſeemeth he hath borrowed of *Cæſar* in his fift Booke, where he ſpeaketh in this manner.

Britannicæ maritimæ pars ab iis incolitur qui prædæ, & belli inferendi cauſa Ex Armoricis *tranſierunt; qui omnes fere iis nominibus Ciuitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex Ciuitatibus eo peruenerint, & bello illato ibi remanſerunt, atque agros colere coeperunt.*

Venerable Beda, an *Engliſhmen* by nation, in the firſt Booke and firſt Chapter of his Eccleſiaſticall hiſtory of *England*, ſpeaketh thus. *Britannia Oceani inſula cui quondam Albionomen fuit, inter Septentrionem; (& Occidentem locata eſt. In primis hæc Inſula* Britones *ſolum, a quibus nomen accepit, Incolas habuit qui* De Tractu Armorica (*vt fertur*) *Britanniam aduecti, Auſtrales ſibi partes illius vindicarunt.*

So is it very certaine, that the maritime Coaſtes of *England*, inhabited by the *Gauliſh Bretons*, had their Townes and Villages called (as *Cæſar*, telleth vs) by the names of thoſe of *Bretaigne Armorica*, which cauſeth the ſame *Cæſar* ſpeaking of them of *Walles* which he tearmeth *Cantium*, to ſay: That in Manners and faſhion of behauiour, they differed not much from the *Gaules*. *Qui Cantium incolunt, non multum differunt a conſuetudine Gallorum.* Who by the meanes of Nauigation (whereto they were made aptly prepared, more then any other people) caried into that Iſle of *Albion*, their faſhions, Manner of life, their Language and their Religion: For they had learned it of the *Druides*, as *Tacitus* writeth in the fourteenth Booke of his *Annales*.

We are creedily informed, that at *Lions*, *Authun*, *Neuers*, with other places in the Prouinces of *France*, there had bin *Druides*, and namely in *Normandie*, *Auſonius* the *Bourdelois*, ſpeaking of Profeſſours famous and renowned in his time: maketh mention of one *Patera*, a nation of *Bayeux* in *Normandy*, Sexton of the Temple of *Apollo* called *Belenus*.

Tu Baiocaſſis ſtirpe Druidarum *ſatus*
Si fama non fallit fidem.

But yet, that he was extracted of the race moſt Noble of the *Druides* of *Bretaigne Armorica*, the Sourſe and Fountaine of the Auncient *Druides*, whoſe Learning and Diuine

diuine Science, as well as their language, was knowne and renowned through all parts of the habitable world.

Du Bartas in Seconde sepmaine.

Auant le Nom Latin, & que les Romulides
Euſſent le champ d'Euandre en pointes aiguiſe,
Le parler Docte-Sainct des Bardes & Druides
En Grece, en Italie en Memphe eſtoit priſe.

Before the Latine name, and the Romulides
Were by Euander ſharpened in ſuch ſort,
The learned-holy ſpeech of Bards and Druides
In Greece, in Italy and Memphis held report.

So effectually ſpeaketh our excellent *Du Bartas.*

Nec reticebo ſenem
Nominis Phœbicium,
Qui Beleni Aditiuus
Stirpe ſatus Druidum
Gentis Aremoricæ.

Learnedly deliuered by *Auſonius.*

Theeues of Robbers on the high-wayes.

Bretaine had heeretofore the Title of *Armorica*, as wee haue ſeene by the precedent obſerued paſſages, and may alſo read in *Æghinard*, Secretary of State, or Chancellour to our King *Charlemaigne*; ſpeaking of the onſet in the *Pyrenean* Mountaines made by the Bandouliers of the Countrey, vpon the Baggage of the French Army; where there were ſlaine ſome of ours, and but three onely of any note. *In quibus* (ſaith hee) *Eutlandus Prefectus litoris Armorici*, betweene which was *Roland Amirall des Coſtes de la Bretagne Armorique.* For it is to be eſpecially obſerued, that the ancient *Gaules* called by this name of *Armorique & Morique*, the Countries, ſtrands and ſhoares engirt with the Sea, and likewiſe ſuch Townes and Villages as were ſeated on the Coaſts thereof. *Ciuitates quæ ipſorum Gallorum conſuetudine Armoricæ appellantur.* And the ſame is obſerued by *Cæſar: Armorica ripa, vel Ciuitas dicitur, quæ ſuper mare ſita eſt.*

The *Piccards* and *Flemmings* ſeated on the Coaſts of the Ocean Sea, are by the ſame Authors called *Morini Populi*, as meaning *Maritimi*: & from thence hath been deriued our name *D'Amarall*, a Gouernour on the Sea. From the ancient *Gauliſh* Language *Ari* which ſignifieth before or after, & *More*, which ſignifieth the Sea. Or elſe *Als-More, Haute-Mer, High-Sea* (& not *Mer-Salee*, ſuch an Epithite were ouermuch) changed into *Almeras*, ſo ſay the *Engliſh*, *Ammirante* in *Spaniſh*, & by *Cæſar* in *Armorica*, to deck or cloath (as with a Romane habite) this ancient *Gauliſh* Diction as very boldly hee hath done the proper names of our Cities, Townes, Riuers and Mountaines, reueſted, turned and returned in diſguiſed habits, according to his owne fancie, and imitated afterward by ſtrange Geographers, who haue made a miſton or Gallimaufry of vs.

The deriuation of the name Admirall.

Salt Sea.

An errour committed by *Cæſar.*

Bretaigne ſometimes gouerned by Kings.

Now, concerning *Bretaigne* (as wel as many other beſide) it hath heretofore been gouerned by Kings. Within ſome while after by Dukes and Counts, who were Liegemen to the Crowne of France, from the time of our firſt Chriſtian King *Clouis*, who ſubdued this Prouince of *Bretaigne Armorica*: according as it is written by our auncient Annaliſt, Saint *Gregory Victor*, Archbiſhop of *Tours*, in his Hiſtory of France, the fourth Booke and fourth Chapter. *Semper Britanni ſub Francorum poteſtate poſt obitum Regis Clodouæi fuerunt, & Comites non Reges appellati ſunt.*

Charles the Simple, King of France, to reſtraine the rude courſes of Normane Pyrates, who ſpoyled and rauaged France: made alliance, by the mariiage of his Daughter to *Rollo*, who hauing embraced the Chriſtian Catholique Religion, was (by the ſaid Simple) made hereditary and patrimoniall Duke of *Neuſtria* (afterward called *Normandie*) of which Prouince *Bretaigne Armorica* bearing the title of a County onely, was giuen in *Arriere Fief* or *Meſne Fief* to the Dukes of *Normandy*, to

Gouernours of Normandy first named Dukes of Normandy.

whom the Counts of *Bretaigne* were as Seruants and Vaſſailes, vntill the time of *Philip Auguſtus*, called the Conquerour and *Gods Gift*, King of France, ſecond of that name, who by the death of *Richard* King of *England*, his mortall enemy, happening at the Siedge of *Chaluz* in *Limoſine*, the ſixt of the Ides of Aprill, One thouſand, one hundred foureſcore and nineteene; inueſted in the Countie of *Bretaigne* yong *Arthur*, Nephew to the ſaid King of *England*. So that this yong *Arthur* comming (an Infant) with his Mother into the Citie of *Mans*, where then King *Phillip* was: he did him Liedge Homage, as well for the ſaid Countie of *Bretaigne*, as alſo for that of *Anion*, whereof this yong Prince was ſeized by force, after the death of the ſaid King *Richard* his Vnckle.

Yong *Arthur* of England Count of *Bretaign* & *Anion*

By the Treatie of peace, made betweene the ſaid *Phillip* and *John*, King of England, Brother to the deceaſed King *Richard*, who died without Children; the ſame peace was made and ſworne betweene *Vernueil* and the Iſle of *Andely*, in the yeare one thouſand two hundred, in the Moneth of May, and on Aſcenſion day. On the behalfe of the ſaid King *Phillip*, it was namely ſtipulated and couenanted, that *Rex Anglia recipiet* Arturum *in hominem, ita vt Arturus Britanniam tenebit de eo*. And on the part of King *John without Land. De Arturo ſic erit quod nos non amouebimus eum, & minuemus, neque de feudo, neque de dominio Britanniæ citra mare, niſi per rectum indicium Curiæ noſtræ.* This *Arthur* was Sonne to *Geoffrey*, Count of *Bretaigne*, Sonne to *Henry*, King of *England*, who being come to *Paris* to ſee *Philip Auguſtus*, that dearely affected him; he fell ſicke and died the foureteenth of the Calends of September, One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and fiue, and was buried in the Quire of the Church of *Paris*, before the high Altar; The King being aſſiſtant at the Conuoye in perſon, followed by *Thibault*, Count of *Champaigne* and *Brie*, Seneſchall (that is to ſay, Great Maiſter) of France, with Count *Henry* his Brother, the Counteſſe of *Champaigne* their Mother, and Lady *Margaret* of France, Siſter to *Phillip Auguſtus*, Widdow to the King of *England*, *Henry* the yonger, married to *Bela*, King of *Hungaria*, *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*. Within ſome few daies, the ſame King *Phillip*; *Quatuor Sacerdotes in Eccleſiâ beatæ Mariæ Pariſius, in qua Comes ſepultus fuerat, pro ſeipſo, & pro anima piiſſimi patris ſui Ludouici, & pro anima dilecti ſui* Gaufridi Comitis Britanniæ *perpetuo inſtituit.* This we learne from *Rigordus*, in the life of the Emperour *Auguſtus*, vnder the yeare before remembred.

Couenants paſt betweene the two Kings of France and England.

Now, the ſame yeare of the Peace, accorded (as before) betweene King *Phillip Auguſtus*, and *John* King of *England*, Succeſſour to King *Richard*, who dyed at the Siedge of *Chalux* (to get a maſſie Treaſure of the Emperour *Lewes the Debonaire*, his Wife *Ermingard*, their three Sonnes Kings, *Lothaire*, *Lewes* and *Pepin*, as alſo their wiues, all made ſitting at a Table, which was compoſed of the pureſt Gold) the Count of *Bretaigne Arthur*, was made Knight *Of the Starre*, in the Towne of *Guerney* in *Normandie*; and affianced to Madam *Agnes*, or *Mary* of France, Daughter to the ſaid King *Phillip Auguſtus*, and *Agnes* of *Morauia*. Which Daughter of France, and *Phillip* of France her Brother, were made Legitimate by Pope *Innocent*, Third of the name: And here you may reade the very words of that Marriage contract.

King *Richard* ſlaine at the Siedge of *Ialuz.*

Arthur made Knight of the Starre.

The Popes diſpenſation for the Contract of Marriage.

Philippus Dei Gratia Francorum Rex. Notum ſit omnibus præſentibus & futuris, Quod nos conceſſimus dilecto noſtro Arturo Comiti Britanniæ, quod nos trademus ei Mariam filiam noſtram in Vxorem, quando id poterimus facere de iure ſecundum conſuetudinem Eccleſiæ; & modo fecimus ea, quæ facere poſſumus ei de iure, de ſecuritate dicti futuri matrimonij, & hoc fecimus ei iurari ſicut prædictum eſt de parte noſtrâ. Et ipſe iurauit nobis quod ipſe accipiet eam in Vxorem, cum ipſa ad ætatem debitam peruenerit, & numquam vita

vitâ Comite, dimittet eam aliquo modo. Actum Parisius Anno Domini Millesimo Duce-
tesimo Secundo, Mense Aprili.

Indirect dealing in King *Iohn* to king *Philip. Augustus.*

But vpon the bad and indirect dealing, which King *Iohn* of *England* vsed toward him; he inuested himselfe in the Countie of *Bretaigne*. *Qui iure hæreditario ad eum pertinebat*, this is affirmed to vs by *Rigordus*. *Adijciens Comitatum Pictauensium, Aneidegauensium, quos armorum iure sibi acquireret. Quâ de causa Rex Arthurum perpetuo in hominem ligium accepit, & acceptâ à Rege licentia, mense Iulio recessit.* And here is the Charter of the Homage, and of the Inuestiture of the said *Arthur* Count of *Bretaigne*, in the Counties of *Bretaigne, Anion, Maine, Touraine* and *Poictou*.

A Copie of the Charter.

PHILIPPVS DEI GRATIA FRANCORVM REX. Notum, &c. Quod nos recipimus Arturum Comitem Britannia in Hominem Ligium contra omnes qui possunt viuere, vel mori, nemine dempto, de suis Britanniæ, Andegauiæ, Cenomaniæ, & Turoniæ, quando, Domino volente, vel nos vel ipse ea acquisierimus saluis omnibus tenementis de quibus nos vel homines nostri vicinentes eramus co dit, quo diffiduciauimus Ioannem Regem Angliæ *pro intercepti nimis quos nobis fecerat de hac vltima guerra, de qua nos obsedimus* Botauant, *tali modo. Quod quando recipiet hommagia de Andegauia, Cenomania, atque Turonia, ipse recipiet homagia illa, saluis conuentionibus inter nos, & ipsum factis. Ita quod si Arturus resiliret conuentionibus inter nos, & ipsum factis, ipsi cum feodis suis ad nos veniet, & nos iuuabunt contra ipsum. In super autem de* Dominio Pictauiæ, *recipimus eundem* Arturum *in Hominem Ligium, si Dominus dederit quod nos, vel ipse eam quocumque modo acquisierimus. Barones vero* Pictauiæ *qui imperij nostri sunt, & alij quos voluerimus, facient nobis hommagium ligium contra omnes qui possunt viuere, vel mori de terris suis, & de præcepto nostro facient ei hommagium ligium, salua fide nostra.* Si autem *Charissimus Frater, & amicus noster Rex Castellæ in terra aliquid iuris clamauerit, per iudicium Curiæ nostræ definetur, si ipsos de assensu vtriusque non poterimus pacificare.* De Normannia *vero fierit, quod nos id quod acquisiuimus, & de eo quod Dominus nobis concedet acquirere, ad opus nostrum retinebimus, quandiu nobis placuerit: & hominibus nostris, qui pro nobis terras suas amiserunt, dabimus id quod nobis placuerit de terra* Normannie. Actum *apud* Gornacum *Anno Domini Millesimo Ducentesimo Secundo, Mense Iulio.*

This peace broken by King *Iohn*.

This Peace of *Andely* or of *Gournay*, was broken by the occasion of *Iohn*, King of *England*, who refused to performe Liedge Homage, for the Counties of *Poictiers, Anion*, and the Duchie of *Aquitaine*, which he then held and possessed in France of the Crowne, and violating his Oath, was entred into Armes against his Soueraigne. This *Iohn*, tearmed as well without Faith, as without Land, hauing got possession of his Nephew *Arthurs* person, had caused him to be strangled in prison, and had taken into his custodie also *Eleanor*, eldest Daughter to *Geoffrey* Count of *Britaigne*, deceasing at *Paris*, as we haue formerly said, and Sister to the same *Arthur*, being both of them Children of *Geoffrey*, the elder Brother to *Iohn* without Land, whom hee had closely shut vp in a strong prison in *England*, as fearing, least she should driue him forth of the Realme of *England*, which appertained to her, in the right of her Father *Geoffrey* of *England*.

King *Iohn* executed by the hew to the King *Arthur*

Whereupon, and for this cause, King *Iohn* of *England*, was by Decree of the Court of Peeres, in the Parliament of February One thousand two hundred and thirteene, attainted and conuinced in the crime of high Treason, for the death of his Nephew *Arthur*, who was Liedgeman to the King, in regard of the Counties of *Bretaigne, Anion* and *Poictou*, Fiefes which he held of the Crowne of France, acquired and confiscated to the King. Who moreouer leuied a great Naual Army, for the Conquest of *England*, which (as he presumed) did belong to him, as being the neerest Heire, and ablest

ableſt to ſucceede in the Crowne, *Cauſæ quæ Philippum Regem magnanimum mouerunt ad hoc, vt vellet in Angliam transfretare, hæ fuerunt, vt Episcopos qui diu à sedibus suis eiecti, in Regno suo exulabant, suis Ecclesijs restitueret: vt diuinum Seruitium quod iam per septennium in tota Anglia cessauerat, faceret renouari: Et vt ipsum Ioannem Regem, qui Nepotem suum* Arturum *occiderat, pœnæ condignæ subijceret.* So ſpeaketh *Rigordus*, and vnder the ſame yeare before ſet downe.

Alice ſiſter to yong *Arthur* by the ſame mother, married to *Peter de Dreux*.

Now, this *Arthur* dying in this manner by violence, and without iſſue, *Alix* his ſiſter, by one and the ſame Mother, Daughter to *Guyon* Viſcount of *Thouars*, and to *Constance*, Counteſſe of *Bretaigne* (Widdow in her firſt marriage to *Geoffrey* of *England*, of whom we haue ſpoken before) Daughter and ſole heire to *Conan* the yonger, Count of *Bretaigne*: *Alix*, I ſay, was married to *Peter* of *Dreux*, and by marriage was couenanted to him the Countie of *Bretaine*, wherein hee was inueſted by *Phillip Auguſtus*, in the ſame yeare One thouſand two hundred and thirteene, as *Rigordus* informeth vs concerning the ſaid yeare. *Petrus filius Roberti primogeniti Roberti Drocarum Comitis cognati Philippi Regis magnanimo, duxerat in vxorem filiam Isabellis de Toartio sororem vterinam Arturi, ex parte matris suæ Cimitisse Britanniæ: quam cum acceperat à Philippo Rege magnanimo totum Comitatum Britanniæ minoris.*

The Homage performed by this *Peter* of *Dreux* to *Phillip Auguſtus*, is ſet downe in the yeare One thouſand two hundred and thirteene at *Paris*: and not in the time of Saint *Lewes*, yongeſt Sonne to *Phillip Auguſtus*, as is vainely reported by the Pennes of ſome Hiſtorians, that write more liberally, then wit or gouernment are able to warrant.

An Order begun by this *Geoffrey*, and called the Cuſtome of *Bretaigne*.

This *Geoffrey* of *England*, fauourite of *Phillip Auguſtus*, Count of *Richmont*, and ſo by his wife *Constance* made Count of *Bretaigne*; was Authour of the Aſſiſe and Order, for the intire Feodale ſucceſſion to eldeſt Brothers or Siſters, without any partage or deuiſion made to the yongeſt: & likewiſe, concerning the yonger, to whom was giuen Money at their marriage; and to the yongeſt of all, a Nagge and Armes for all their portion. This Aſſiſe or Aſſeſſement was heretofore called *The Cuſtome of Bretaigne* (whereof we ſhall ſpeake more hereafter) and ſaid to be done in the yeare One thouſand one hundred and foureſcore, publiſhed by the Eſtates of the Countrey, to ſerue (in following times) for a firme, ordained and ſetled Law. But concerning *Peter* of *Dreux*, Husband to *Alix* of *Thouars*, Counteſſe of *Bretaigne*: he was of the Houſe of France, and in this manner (as wee vnderſtand) his Originall.

The GENEALOGIE *and Originall of the* Counts of *Dreux.*

KIng *Lewes le Gros*, ſixt of the name, and *Alix* of *Sauoye* his wife, had ſixe maſle children, the fourth whereof was *Monſieur Robert* of France, Count of *Dreux*, as alſo of *Perche* and *Brenne*, Lord of *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, of *Bray* (called by his name) Count *Robert* of *Troſy* in *Brie*, and of *Chaille* in *Bierre*. This *Monſieur Robert* had to wife *Agnes*, Counteſſe of *Breme*, and of this marriage iſſued a Daughter and fiue Sonnes, the eldeſt whereof was *Robert*, called the yonger, ſecond of the name, Count of *Dreux*, who tooke to wife *Yoland*, eldeſt Daughter to *Raoull*, Lord of *Coucy*: by whom hee had fixe Daughters, and foure Sonnes, the fourth and laſt whereof was

1. *Peter* of *Dreux*, Husband to *Alix*, Counteſſe of *Bretaine*, and of this marriage iſſued a Sonne and a Daughter, which was

Yoland of *Bretaigne*, and was wife to *Hugh* of *Luſignan*, called the *Browne*, Count *de la March*, and of *Engouleſme*.

The Sonne was

II. *Iohn* of *Bretaigne*, Sirnamed the *Red Count* (in regard of his Haire) firſt of the name. He eſpouſed *Blanch*, daughter to *Thibault*, ſixt of the name. Count Palatine of *Champaigne* and *Brie*, and King of *Nauarre*, firſt of the name: of whom came two Daughters, and ſixe Sonnes, as namely

1. *Iohn.*
2. *Peter*, who dyed yong, buried at the

the Gray-Friers in *Paris*.

3. *Thibault* the eldeſt.
4. *Thibaulte* the yonger.
5. *Nicholas*. And
6. *Robert*.

The Daughters were

1. *Alix* of *Bretaigne*, who was twiſe married: Firſt to *John de Chaſtillon*, Count of *Blois* and of *Chartres*, And in ſecond mariage to *Bouchard*, Count of *Vendoſme*.

2. *Eleanor* the ſecond Daughter died yong.

III. *John*, ſecond of the name, eldeſt Sonne to *John* the firſt was made Count and Duke of *Bretaigne*. He tooke to wife Madam *Beatrix* of *England*, daughter to *Henry*, King of *England*, third of the name: And of this Alliance proceeded three Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Arthur*.
2. *John*, Count of *Richmond* in *England*. And
3. *Peter*.

The Daughters were

1. *Blanch*, wife to *Phillip* of *Artois*, eldeſt Sonne to the ſecond *Robert*, Count of *Artois*.

2. *Mary*, wife to *Guy de Chaſtillon*, Count of Saint *Paule*, Brother to *Huon*, Count of *Blois*. And

3. *Anne*, a profeſſed Nunne at *Font-Eurauld*.

The ſaid *John* of *Bretaigne* died at *Lyons*, at the Crowning of Pope *Clement* the fift, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and fiue: And then ſucceeded his Sonne

IIII. *Arthur*, Duke of *Bretaigne*, who was twiſe married. Firſt to *Beatrix*, Viſcounteſſe of *Limoges*, and by her he had three Sonnes, to wit

1. *John* the third.
2. *Guy*, Count of *Pointieure*, who eſpouſed the onely Daughter to *Henry*, Baron *d'Auaugour*: and by her he had one onely Daughter, named *Ioane* the Cripple, wife to *Charles* of *Blois*. And
3. *Peter*, who died yong.

In ſecond marriage he tooke to wife Queen *Yoland*, widow to *Alexander*, King of *Scotland*, Counteſſe *de Montfort l'Amaury*, ſiſter to *John* the ſecond, Count of *Dreux*, and by her he had one Sonne

John, tearmed of *Brenon*, who was Count of *Montfort*: And foure daughters, *to wit*.

1. *Iane*, wife to *Robert* of *Flanders*, Lord of *Caſſel*, *Alluye* and *Montmirall*, yongeſt Son to *Robert*, Count of *Flanders*.

2. *Alix*, wife to the Count of *Vendoſme*.

3. *Beatrix*, wife to *Guy*, Lord of *Laual*.

4. *Mary*, a Religious ſiſter at *Paſſy*.

V. *John*, third of the name, Duke of *Bretaigne*, who was maried three times. His firſt wife was *Iſabel* of *Valois*, daughter to *Monſieur Charles* of France, Count of *Valois*, without iſſue. The ſecond was Madam *Iſabell* of *Caſtille*, Daughter to the King of *Caſtille Sancio*, fourth of the name, without iſſue likewiſe. And in third marriage he had *Ioane* of *Sauoy*, Daughter to *Guy*, Count of *Sauoye*, iſſueleſſe alſo. So that by his death, the Succeſſion grew to be queſtioned, between

Charles of *Blois*, yongeſt Sonne to *Lewes*, Count of *Blois*, and *Margaret* of *Valois*: husband to *Ioane* of *Bretaigne* the Cripple, Niece to the party deaſed, And

John of *Brenne*, Count of *Montfort l'Amaury*, Vnckle to the ſame Cripple.

By a Decree (the King ſitting in his Parliament, well furniſhed with Peeres) dated at *Conflans* the ſeauenth day of September, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred fortie and one, *The Duchie of Bretaigne* was adiudged to the ſaid Count of *Blois* and his wife. And yet notwithſtanding

VI. *John de Brenne* of *Montfort*, fourth of the name, being aſſiſted by the *Engliſh*; maintained himſelfe in the Duchie of *Bretaigne*, ſo that a Battaile was fought in Bretaigne the nine and twentieth day of September, One thouſand three hundred threeſcore & foure, where the ſaid *Charles de Blois* was ſlaine; and (within a while after) Canonized by the Pope *Vrbane*. To reſiſt againſt *John de Brenne*, King *Charles* the fift ſent his Brother the Duke of *Anion*, and the Lord of *Cliſſon* to make warre vpon him. So that *John* the fift, Sonne to *John* the fourth, was conſtrained to agree with the Widdow and Children of *Charles de Blois*, in giuing to them the Countie

Countie of *Pointieure*, and to come and receiue homage to the King, for the ſaid Duchie of *Bretaigne*, and Countie of *Montfort l'Amaury*, Lands of *Niuernois* and of *Rethelois*, deliuered into the Kings hands. And which were reſtored againe by a Treatie, made betweene the ſaid Charles and Duke, the fifteenth day of January, One thouſand three hundred and foureſcore, ratified by the ſame Duke at *Guerrande* the tenth day of Aprill, in the ſame yeare One thouſand three hundred and foureſcore. He tooke to wife *Margaret*, daughter to *Lewes* eldeſt Sonne to *Robert* Count of *Flanders*, third of the name: and of this mariage came

VII. *John*, fift of the name, Duke of *Bretaigne*, who was twiſe married. Firſt eſpouſed Madam *Mary* of *England*, daughter to King *Edward*, third of the name; but had no iſſue by her. His ſecond wife was Madam *Jane* of *Nauarre*, daughter to *Charles* the Bad, King of *Nauarre*, ſecond of the name: And by her hee had three Sonnes and foure daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *John* the ſixt, to whom his Mother gaue the Countie of *Richmont*, with all her moueables, gaines and winnings.
2. *Arthur*, Conſtable of France, And
3. *Richard*, Count *d'Eſtampes*, Lord of *Cliſſon*; who tooke to wife *Margaret* of *Orleans*, daughter to *Monſieur Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, and Madam *Valentina* of *Millaine*. Which *Margaret* of *Orleans* brought to the ſaid *Richard* (in marriage) the Countie of *Vertus*. In this mariage was borne two ſons and three daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Frances* of *Bretaine*, Count *d'Eſtampes* and *Vertus*.
2. *Lewes*, who deceaſed very yong.

The daughters were

1. *Katharine* of *Bretaigne*, wife to *William de Chalon*, Prince of *Orenge*.
2. *Margaret*, Lady Abbeſſe of *Font-Eurauld*: And
3. *Iſabel* who dyed yong.

The foure daughters of Duke *John* the Fift, the eldeſt was

1. *Mary*, wife to *Alain*, Viſcount *de Rohan*.
2. *Mary* wife to *John*, firſt of the name who was Duke of *Alanſon*.
3. *Blanch*, wife to *John*, Count of *Armiagnac*: And
4. *Bonna*, wife to the Viſcount of *Lomagne*, eldeſt Son to the ſaid *John*, Count of *Armaignac*.

VIII. *John*, Sixt of the name, and fift Duke of *Bretaigne*, had to wife Madam *Jane* of France, ſecond daughter to King *Charles* the ſixt; and by her he had borne to him three Sonnes and two daughters.

The eldeſt Sonne was

1. *Francis*, the firſt.
2. *Peter*, Husband to *Frances d'Amboiſe*, only daughter to *Lewes d'Amboiſe*, Viſcounte of *Thouars*. And
3. *Gilles*, Husband to *Frances de Dinan*, Lady of *Chaſteau-Briand*, *Monta-Eſland*, and of *Beaumanior*.

Peter and *Gilles*, not hauing any iſſue.

The Daughters were

1. *Iſabell*, wife to *Guy*, Counte of *Laual*; And
2. *Margaret*, who died young.

IX. *Frances*, firſt of the name, Duke of *Bretaigne* (the Authour of this ſubiect) had two Wiues. The firſt was Madam *Yoland* of *Cicilie* daughter to *Lewes*, firſt of the name, King of *Cicilie*, and Duke of *Anion* of the Second Ligne; but by her hee had not any children. His Second Wife was madam *Iſabell* of *Scotland*, daughter to the King of *Sotland*, *Iames*, firſt of the name; Siſter to Madame *Margaret* of *Scotland*, firſt wife to King *Lewes* the Eleuenth. And by her he had three Daughters.

The firſt daughter was,

1. *Margaret* of *Bretaigne*, wife to *Frances* of *Bretaigne*, Counte *d'Eſtampes*, eldeſt Sonne to *Richard* Counte *d'Eſtampes*, Lord of *Cliſſon*, and Brother to Duke *John*, Sixt of the name.
2. *Katherine*, wife to *John*, Lord of *Roham*, Viſcounte of *Lyons*, Sonne to *Alain* Viſcounte of *Rohan*; And
3. *Frances*, Wife to *John d'Albret*, Eldeſt Sonne to *Charles d'Albret*, Second of the name.

Frances the firſt being deceaſed without any heire male, not one of his daughters ſucceeded in the Duchie of *Bretaigne*, but *Peter*, Second Brother to the ſaid *Frances* the firſt. Becauſe, by a Treatie made at *Guerrand* the Twelfth day of *Aprill*, in the yeare of Grace One Thouſand,

No daughters ſucceeded in in the Duchie of *Bretaigne*.

sand, Three hundred, Threescore and foure, betweene *Iohn*, Duke of *Bretaigne*, Fifth of the name, and *Iane* of *Bretaigne* Countesse of *Pointhieure*, it was couenanted: That thenceforward, Females should not succeed in the Duchie of *Bretaigne*, all the while, and so long as heire Males should be found, issued of the Ligne of *Bretaigne*. So that, according to these Conuentions and Agreements made and sworne:

X. *Peter* succeeded in the Duchie of *Bretaigne*; but he deceasing without any Issue, the said Duchie of *Bretaigne* fell to the second Sonne of *Iohn* the Fift.

XI. *Arthur* of *Bretaigne*, Constable of *France*, Second of the name, was thrise maried. His first Wife was the eldest Daughter to *Iohn*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, widdowe to *Monsieur Lewes* of *France*, *Daulphine* of *Viennois*, and Duke of *Guienne*, Sonne to King *Charles* the Sixt. His second wife was the daughter to the Lord *d'Albret*. And the third wife was *Katherine* of *Luxembourg*, daughter to the Counte of Saint *Paule*: but by these hee had not any children. So that the Duchie of *Bretaigne* came to [illegible]

XII. *Frances*, Second of the Name, Eldest Son of *Richard* of *Bretaigne*, Brother to the said *Arthur* the second, according to the Treaty held at *Guerrand*. By his wife *Margaret*, Sister to the Counte of *Foix*, he had two Daughters, the Eldest whereof succeeded in the said Duchie, through defect of heires males, issued and descended of the true Ligne of *Bretaigne*.

The daughters names were

1. Anne: And
2. *Isabell*, who died young.

In the life time of the said *Frances* the second, deceassed King *Lewes*, Eleuenth of the name, the last day of *August*, in the yeare one Thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and three. After whom succeeded his Son *Charles*, Eight of the name; who being as yet in yeares of Minority, and not able to gouerne his Kingdome: his Eldest Sister Madam *Anne* of *France*, wife to *Peter*, Duke of *Bourbon*, Second of the name, Lord of *Beaujeu*, was proclaimed Regentesse, according to the will of deceased King *Lewes* the Eleuenth. Shee being sole Gouernesse, and hauing in her possession the person of the King her brother, disposed of the whole State, Offices and Reuennues of the Kingdome, euen according to her owne mind. She estranged from the Kings seruice, first all the Auncient Officers of the Crowne; and within a while after, the Princes of the Bloud, and other Princes that were strangers.

Madam *Anne* of *France* Regentesse of the King and state.

Lewes, Duke of *Orleans*, prime Prince of the Bloud, who afterward was King of *France*, Twelfth of the name, had formerly pretended, that the guarding of the Kings person, and Regencie of the Realme, appertained to him. But he not being (as yet) of competent age to gouerne himselfe, the Estates Generall of *France*, being assembled at *Tours* after the death of King *Lewes* the eleuenth; adiudged that prerogatiue to the Lady of *Beaujeu*, a Princesse of a proud surlie minde, and one that had very high aspiring humours. *Lewes* playing one day at the Tennis, neere to the Court of *Paris*, there happened a stroke to grow in question and difference; which the Lady of *Beaujeu* (being then and there present) iudged against the Duke of *Orleans*. He wexing offended at her peremptory forwardnesse, replied out aloude: That hee was badly sentenced, and the Iudge had lied.

The Duke of *Orleans* his opposition against the Regentesse.

The Lady of *Beaujeu*, hardly enduring to put vp the lye, caused the Councell to be assembled, where, by consultation passing among them, it was thought conuenient, that the Duke of *Orleans* should be committed to safe custody. But he being aduertized thereof by a Gentleman, named *Iohn de Louuaine*; suddenly escaped from *Paris*, accompanied with his Cousin the Counte of *Dunois*, *Frances* of *Orleans*, *Messire Guy Pot*, and *Louuaine* that had bin his Intelligencer. He rode directly towards *Pontoise*, from whence departing to *Vernueill* and *Alanson*; he stayed there for some time with the Duke, whom he perswaded to take part with him, and the greatest Lords of the Kingdome, only to disturbe the peace thereof: vnder the ordenary and common couller of them, that couet to fisshe in troubled waters, for Reformation of the Realme; Contrary to the Law of God, which forbiddeth a Subiect to rise against his Prince, what specions pretence soeuer may be alleadged for it.

The Duke of *Orleans* escapeth from *Paris* priuilie.

When these newes were come to the Court, all the Princes and Lords were disappointed, and all their Companies quashed from their former meaning; which hauing in great measure incensed and displeased them, they made great musterings and Leuies

leuies of men throughout all their Prouinces, as the King did the like for his owne parte. On either side happened sharpe bickerings and encounters, and in this busie time of turmoile; *Peter de Rohan*, Lord of *Gie*, Marshall of *France*, and the Lord of *Graville*, mediated to pacifie the Duke of *Orleans*. Conditionally, that he should come to the Court, there to hold the rancke and qualitie of his place, as was fitting for the prime Prince of the Bloud. And that the Counte of *Dunois*, *Frances* of *Orleans*, his Cousine (who was reputed to bee the matche, tinder and fire of these commotions:) should absent himselfe from the Realme for some space of time, withdrawing into the Countie of *Ast*, which belonged to the Duke of *Orleans*.

Labour to winne the Duke of *Orleans*, and ceasle the disturbance.

And so by this accord (which was but of very shorte continuance) all men (on either side) layde downe their Armes, to the great discontentment of martiall minded men, cheated and deceiued in their chiefest hopes, of speeding best in strifes and garboiles, as is ordenarily noated in all Ciuill dissentions. This dawbed agreement with the Duke of *Orleans*, was concluded at *Boisgency*, in the yeare of Grace One Thousand, Foure hundered, Fourescore and fiue.

Troubled waters are best fishings for Souldiours

No long tarying made the Counte of *Dunois* at *Ast*, but, without licence from the King, returned backe into *France*, and fortified himselfe in his Castle of *Parthenay* in *Poictou*. The Lady of *Beaujeu*, seruing still as Sentinell to these contrary courses, and suspecting this returne of his; aduertised the King thereof, who, to cleare himselfe in this businesse; by councell of the Regentesse, sent to the Duke of *Orleans*, who then made his abode in his Citty of *Orleans*) to come speedily, and yield himselfe to him.

The Counte of *Dunois* his sudden returne into *France*.

The Duke (well informed of these charitable and kinde offices, which the Lady of *Beaujeu* perfourmed to him, and quite against the haire:) assured the Marshall *de Gie*, that he would be as soone at the Courte, as he. And on the morrow, being the Fift day of *Ianuary*, in the yeare fourescore and sixe, he departed from *Orleans*, and came to *Blois*, from whence he went with his Houndes and Haukes, as if he intended to goe see Flight. Withall possible diligence hee went to *Nantes* in *Bretaigne*, where hee was kindly welcommed by Duke *Frances*, Second of the name: who Shipte himselfe in his cause and quarrell, with all them of his first intelligence.

His queint escaping to the Duke of *Bretaigne*.

Their names that tooke part with the Duke of *Orleans*.

Which were *Charles*, Counte of *Engoulesme*, Lord of *Espernay*, of *Fere* and of *Rouarantin*; *Iohn*, Duke of *Bourbon*, Second of the name; Madam *Magdalen* of *France*, Mother to the King, and Queene of *Nauarre*; the Cardinall of *Foix*; the Duke of *Nieuers*; *Francis*, Second of the name Duke of *Bretaigne*, Counte of *Montfort*, *Richemont*, *d'Estampes* and *de Vertus*; *Alain*, Lord *d'Albret*, Counte of *Dreux*, *Gaure*, *Pointieure* and of *Perigort*, Viscounte of *Limoges* and Lord of *Auesnes*; the Counte of *Comenges*, *Rene* Duke of *Lorraine* and *de Bar*, Counte *de Vaudemont* and *de Harcour*; *Maximilliam*, King of the *Romanes*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Duke of *Lothier*, *Brabant*, *Lembourg*, *Luxembourg* and *Gueldres*, Counte of *Flanders*, *Artois* and *Bourgongne*, Palatine of *Henault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Zutphen*, *Frizeland* and *Malines*; *Iohn de Chalon*, Prince of *Orenge*, Nephew to the Duke of *Bretaigne*; *Frances* of *Orleans*, Counte *de Dunois* and of *Longue-Ville*, Lord of *Parthenay*, Great Chamberlaine of *France*; *Frances de Dinan*, Countesse of *Laual*, Lady of *Chasteau-Briand*; *Iohn de Rieux*, Lord of *Rieux* and *Ancenis*, Counte *d'Aumale*, Viscounte of *Donges*, and Marshall of *Bretaigne*; the Bishops of *Alby*, and of *Montauban*; the Lords of *Miolants*, of the Isle, of *Boutchage*, of *Grauuant*, and many other great Lords beside, who tooke for their Chieftaine and Guide in this action *Lewes*, Duke of *Orleans*, who stiled himselfe Duke of *Orleans*, *Millaine* and *Valois*, Counte of *Blois*, *Pauia* and *Beaumont*, Lord of *Ast* and *Coucy*.

Thorow all *France* (by Poastes and Courriers) they declared and proclaimed, the manifest reason of their entring into Armes, and the agreement of their Sealed League, bearing this Title.

The reasons published of their entring into Armes.

A Briefe of the Leagues Proclamations.

SEaled and confirmed by the Confederated Princes, for seruice of the King, Reformation of the Kingdomes Pollicie, and his Royall Court (where open sale is made of all things) for ease of the people, and maintenance of those Orders agreed on by the Estates

Estates in Parliament. For gouerning his brginesse Reuennues, and reestablishment of the Officers of the Crowne: Against disturbers of the weale publique; Breakers of the Ordenances, done in the generall Assemblie of the States, and who (according to their owne willes) possessed and ruled the King in his minority; hauing expelled and thrust away from about his Royall person, the Princes of his Bloud, and chiefe Officers of the Crowne.

These Proclamations are dated the tenth day of *February*, in the yeare One Thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and six, at *Cognac*, at *La Flesche*, at *Nantes*, and sundry other places beside.

The Kings proceedings against his reuolted subiects

When the King had intelligence of these rebellious proceedings; forthwith he sent an Army into *Poictou*, and besieged *Parthenay*, which was taken and raced downe to the ground. As much he caused to bee done in *Guienne*, on the Lands and Castles of the Counte of *Comenges*, and other pertakers with *Orleans*, who (for the greater part) were retreated into *Bretaigne*.

The Kings army in *Bretaigne*.

The King summoned the Duke of *Bretaigne*, to restore him his Subiects, of whom he made vse in this his reuolt. Vpon his refusall, he dealt with the Noble men of the Countrey, of whom hee withdrew the most part, to fight against their owne Duke. And in the meane while, hee entred a puissant Army into *Bretaigne*, where ioyning with the *Bretons* of his intelligence; he wonne *Redon*, *Ploermell* and other places, for beginning the yeare Fourescore and Seauen. In which yeare also, they of *Vannes* yielded themselues to the *French*: who afterward went valianly and besieged *Nantes* in the moneth of *Iune*, surprising *Moncontour*, *Ancenis* and *Chasteau-Briand*.

A mariage intended for the Lord *Iohn d'Albret*.

At the beginning of the yeare fourescore and eight, the *French* Armie tooke *Fougeres*, and Saint *Aubin du Cormier* on the one side; while the King (on the other) tooke into his hands, all the goods of the Lord of *Albret*, as returning to his Crowne. The Confederated Princes, to draw to their faction the said Lord *d'Albret* (a very riche and powerfull Lord) Father to *Iohn d'Albret*, King of *Nauarre*, Great Grandfather to *Lewes* the Thirteenth of the name, King of *France* and *Nauarre*, at this present reigning) in *Bretaigne* and *Guienne*: had propounded a mariage to him, of *Anne* of *Bretaigne*, eldest daughter to the said Duke *Frances* the second; who, imitating the last Duke of *Bourgongne Charles*, promised his daughter in mariage to all the Princes, from whom hee hoped to deriue any aduantage and seruice, helpefull for his owne affaires and occasions,

Anne of *Bretaigne* diuers times promised in Mariage and all disapointed.

For she was first promised to the Prince of *Wales*, Eldest Sonne to the King of *England*, *Edward*, Fourth of the name; Afterward to this *Alain d'Albret*; then to *Maximilian* of *Austria*, King of the *Romaines*, widdowed of *Mary* of *Bourgongne*, daughter to the last Duke Charles: And secretly (but in good earnest) promised to *Lewes* Duke of *Orleans*, who was resolued to diuorce Madam *Iane* of *France*, a wise and vertuous Princesse, but somewhat mishapen of body, and whom he had espoused against his will, to obey King *Lewes* the Eleuenth, a Prince difficult to be endured, and whom he durst not deny in any matter whatsoeuer. Neuertheless, not one of these purposed mariages sorted to any effect, God hauing otherwise disposed for the good of *France*; as we shall see by the successe, and the pretendants leste all deceiued.

The voyage of *Alain d'Albret* into *Spayne* to King *Ferdinand*

Alain d'Albret feeding vpon these new promises of Loue: beside his owne forces, and those of his friends, drawne by him into this quarell; made a voyage into *Spayne*, to King *Ferdinand* and Queene *Isabell* of *Castile* (vsurpers of the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, against the King *Iohn d'Albret*) enemies to *Lewes* the eleuenth. Hauing visited them at *Valentia*, hee obtained of them the assistance of a thousand men of warre, conducted by their Grand Maister *d'Hostell Iuan Graile*, a Cathalognian: with whom *Alain d Albret* being embarqued at the Port of Saint *Sebastian* in *Biscaye*, he arriued safely in *Bretaigne* the third day of *Maye*, One thousand foure hundred, twenty and eight.

Lewes de la Trimouille Generall of the Kings Armie.

In the meane time, the King soiourning in his City of *Angiers*, gaue order to his Army, whereof (in absence of *Gilbert de Bourbon*, Count of *Montpensier*) hee gaue the conduct to *Lewes*, Lord *de la Trimouille*: albeit young in yeares, yet a wise Captaine, and of high attempting, also (of his time) he wonne the faire title of *Cheualier sans Reproche*, A Knight without detection.

The

The Army of the Leagued Princes, enlarged with the succour of England, Spaine and Eight hundred Germaines, sent by *Maximilian* of *Austria*; was fully determined to set vpon the French. On they proceeded to handy blowes, neere to Saint *Aubin du Cormier*, on Monday being the Eight and Twentieth day of Iuly, in the said yeare Foure Score and Eight: the honour and benefit whereof remained to the French, through the wise carriage of the Lo.d *de la Trimouille*, who was Lieutenant Generall thereof.

The Battell fought neere to *S. Aubin* 1488.

The Lord *d'Albret* and the Marshall *de Rieux* saued themselues (with the first) by trusting to their Spurres. The Count *d Escales* and *Claudius de Montfort* English-men, were slaine in the Field of Battaile, with Three Hundred English, to whom, and to Twelue hundred Bretons (ioyned with them, and bearing badges of the red Crosse) fell vtter ruine and slaughter, and not a man saued. The Duke of *Orleans* was arrested Prisoner among the Germaines, whom the Generall put to passe the Pikes.

The Duke of *Orleans* and Prince of *Orenge* taken Prisoners.

The Prince of *Orange* perceiuing all to be in disorder; rent his Blacke Crosse (the Enfigne of *Bretaigne*) and threw himselfe on the ground among the dead: but being known to be liuing, was taken prisoner, as the like was *Iuan Graille*, *Maiordome* to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*. Of the Bretons Army Sixe Thousand lay slaine in the field, and of the French but Twelue Hundred.

Duke *Lewes* sent to the Tower of *Bourges*.

Which Victory thus won by the French, brought to them also the Conquest of *Dinan*, Saint *Malo*, and other Townes beside, which yeelded themselues to the victorious Generall. After the Battaile, *Lewes* Duke of *Orleans*, was sent Prisoner to the strong Towne of *Bourges*, where hee remained two whole yeares in one of those Cages, which yet are to be seene at this day: in danger to haue continued there a farre longer time, but for the teares and entreates of Madame *Iane* of France his Wife. The Prince of *Orenge* was sent with a sure Guard, to the Castell of *Font de See*, to verefie the ancient Oracle, which neuer fayled to speake the truth; that

Celuy: qui contre son Prince.
Esleue le front trop hault
Et qui trouble sa Prouince
En fin trebuche d'vn sault.
Et sent la Iuste Iustice
De ce grand Dieu punissant,
De son foudre rougissant
L'horreur & tel malefice.

Thus conuerted into English.

He that against his Prince
Exalts his head too hye,
And troubleth his Countries peace,
At length full low may lye.
And feele the iudgement iust,
Of that offended God:
Who punisheth such horrid sinnes
With his reuenging Rod.

The death of the Duke of *Bretaigne*.

The losse of this Battaile afflicted the Duke of *Bretaigne* in such sort; that he died on Tuesday being the Ninth of September, in the same yeare Foure Score & Eight. His death was followed with that of his last Daughter, Madame *Isabell* of *Bretaigne*, His Eldest Sister

Anne, the young Duchesse of *Bretaigne*.

XIII. *Anne*, Duchesse of *Bretaigne*, was by the Testament of the last Duke *Frances* the Second her Father, left in the Guard and Tutelage of the Lord *de Rieux*, Marshall of *Bretaigne*, and of the Lady *de Loual*, Step-Sister to the Lord *Allaine d'Albret*; in regard that the said *Anne* was then but twelue yeares old, being borne in the yeare; One Thousand, Foure Hundred, Three Score and Sixteene.

It

It was the meaning of the Marshall & Lady of *Lauall*, to espouse her to the Lord *Alaine d'Albret:* but he being ouer-farre stept into yeares, the young Princesse made it appeare plainly, that she would not haue him. The Count of *Commenges* and *Philip* of *Montauban*, Chancellour and Gouernour of *Bretaigne* (during the minority of *Anne*, by the Testament of her Father) being both together otherwise minded, began to grow offended with their Lady, at her refusing the Lord *d'Albret*: who displeased also therewith; by the meanes of *Peter* of *Bourbon*, Lord of *Beaujeu*, husband to Maddam *Anne* of France; yeelded himselfe to the Kings Seruice, who (within a while after) released all his Seigneuries to him.

The Lord *d'Albret* submitteth to the Kings Seruice.

By this businesse concerning the Duchesse of *Bretaigne*, this Prince brought such benefit to France; that he deliuered vp to the French, both the City and Castell of *Nantes*, which being surrendred in the end of March, Foure Score and Ten: The King came speedily thither, & made his entrance the Fourth day of April following. And there he kept the Feast of Easter, vntill the Eleauenth day of the same Moneth of Aprill, beginning the yeare Foure Score and Eleauen, when hee resolued to goe and besiedge *Rennes*, whereunto the Duchesse had retreated her selfe, and (by that meanes) at one aduenture to subdue *Bretaigne*, & so annexe it for euer to the Crowne of France.

A Marriage purposed for the Duchesse of *Bretaigne*.

The taking in of *Guincamp* by the French, began this Instant yeare, and ended with the hopefull happy Marriage of the young Duchesse to the said King *Charles* the Eight: to the no small benefit of that poore Duchy, miserably ruined by wars of the French and English. For the young Duchesse being badly succoured by the King of the Romaines, her pretended Husband; could not expect any great matter of defence from him, nor from his Germaines, whose weapons hung heauy by their sides, and therefore made them march the slower.

Both the higher and lower *Bretaigne* (*Rennes* reserued and very few other places) were reduced vnder the French Command, and it had beene no meane dishonour to them, to leaue the rest for *Maximilian*. And King *Charles* hauing set at liberty the Duke of *Orleans*, through the instant intreaties of his Sister, Madame *Iane* of France, Wife to the said Duke of *Orleans*, and granted the same grace to the Prince of *Orenge*: his side became very strongly fortefied, as well by those two Princes, as also the Lord *d'Albret*, the Count of *Dunois*, and the Viscount *de Rohan*, a potent Lord in *Bretaigne*, as now it was an easie matter for him, to make himselfe absolute Lord of the Dutchy.

The Kings part very greatly strengthened.

On the other side, the Dutchesse (perswaded by her faithfull followers, who made plaine demonstration to her of her misery, and the calamity of a poore Princesse, despoyled of her goods, and now driuen to such distresse, as, either to see her selfe exiled, or else confined to some Monastery (began to lend an eare, of faire agreement with King *Charles*. And the meanes for attaining thereto, was onely but by one way, namely Marriage; she being then aged fifteene yeares, and the King Twenty, wherein there was little inequality.

The King receiued into *Rennes*.

For full-resolution in this case, his Maiesty hauing won the Suburbs of *Rennes*, was (within three dayes after) receiued into the Towne with all magnificence, in the Moneth of *Nouember*, and the same yeare Foure Score and Eleauen. The Marriage being concluded on, he sent his promised *Margaret* of *Austria*, to her Father *Maximilian*, King of the Romanes, who had declared himselfe an enemie to him, making war against him, in fauor of the confederated Princes. Albeit, in the life time of King *Lewes*, the Eleauenth, his Daughter had beene granted to the Prince Daulphine *Charles*, and sent into France, where she was nourished some yeares, attending due age for the performance of Marriage.

The King married to *Anne* Duchesse of *Bretaigne*.

The Nuptialls of the King and *Anne* Duchesse of *Bretaigne*, were sollemnized at *Langeois* in *Touraine*, the Sixt day of December, in the same yeare Foure Score and Eleauen: in the presence of *Lewes* Duke of *Orleans*, *Charles*, Count of *Engoulesme*, *Peter* Lord of *Beaujeu*, both before and then Duke of *Bourbon*, and *Frances*, Count of *Vendesme*, Princes of the Bloud; there were also present *John* Vicount of *Narbonn*, *Guy* of *Rochfort*, Chancellour of France, *Messire Lewes d'Amboise*, Bishop of *Alby*, and *Messire John de Rely*, Doctour in Diuinity, Bishop of *Angiers*, and Ordinary Con-

fessary to the King, all these were on the Kings behalfe. And with the Duchesse came *John de Chalon*, the Prince of *Orenge*, *Philip* of *Montauban*, Chancellour of *Bretaigne*, the Lord of *Guemene*, and diuers other great Lords, as well French as Britons.

In this Marriage was borne three Male Children, all dying in the life time of their Father; who hauing reigned fourteene yeares and somwhat more, deceased (without Issue) in the City of *Amboise*, the Seauenth day of April, ending the yeare yeare Foure Score and Seauenteene, before Easter, and the Seauen and Twentiedi of his age. A Prince deformed of face and Body, but in recompence thereof, God had endued him with a capable spirit, very susceptible of lofty enterprises; which doubtlesse he would haue effected, if heauen had spared him longer life time, being educated (from his tender yeares) in the feare of God, works of piety and deuotion; and these were his onely direction.

The death of King *Charles* in the City of *Amboise*.

In Second Marriage, Queene *Anne* of *Bretaigne* matched with *Lewes* the Twelfth, King of France, by the decease of *Charles* the Eight his Cousin. Which *Lewes* the Twelfth (called Father of the People) after his Sacring performed at *Rheimes*, the Seauenteenth day of May, Foure Score & Eighteene; caused himselfe to be separated from Madame *Ioane* or *Iane* of France, whom he had espoused and perforce, without giuing his will and consent thereto.

The second Marriage of Queene *Anne* of *Bretaigne* to King *Lewes* the Twelfth.

This was done by Sentence deliuered from these Cardinalls, as namely *Philip*, bearing title of Saint *Peter Ad Vincula*, named of *Sauonna*; *Marcellinus*, Cardinall of *Luxembourg*, and Bishop of *Mans*; *Lewes*, Cardinall *D'Amboise*, and Bishop of *Alby*, and *Ferdinand*, Bishop of *Scepta*, all of them Iudges delegated by Pope *Alexander* the Sixt.

Both the parties being in single condition, as they were before Marriage; King *Lewes* tooke to wife the said Queene *Anne* of *Bretaigne* (whom hee had dearely affected from the time before remembred) in the Moneth of *Ianuary*, *Anno*, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, Foure Score and Eighteene.

Of this Marriage issued, two Sonnes, deceasing young, and as many daughters: to wit,

The Issue of King *Charles* the twelfth.

Madame *Claudia* of France, married to King *Frances*, First of the Name: And,

Renes of France, Wife to *Hercules d'Este*, Duke of *Ferrara*; of whom King *Lewes* the Twelfth vndertooke the protection, against the violences of Pope *Iulius* the Second.

This Queene *Anne* dyed at *Chasteau de Blois*, the Nineteenth Day of Ianuary, the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, and Thirteene, Her body lieth buried at Saint *Denis* in France, in the Sepulcher of King *Lewes* the Twelfth her last husband, without the Quire on the left hand.

The death of Queene *Anne* of *Bretaigne*.

When this Queene was widdow to King *Charles* the Eight, shee engirt her Armies with a Band or *Cordeliere* of Siluer, which she had inuented, like to an Order of Knight-hood: to the end that the Armes of Queenes, Princesses and Ladies of high degree (being Widdowes) might bee in the like manner beautified. Shee wore, as a Girdle, a Cordeliere of white threed, and gaue the like to alll the Widdowed Ladyes of her Court, to weare vpon their mourning garments in her imitation.

The gift of Queene *Anne* to widdowed Ladies.

And when shee made or built any Shippes in *Bretaigne*, Shee called them by the name of *Cordelieres*; especially the principall Ship of them, which wee tearme Royall.

Madame *Claudia* of France, her Eldest Sister, Wife to King *Frances* the First, gaue to the King her Husband the Duchy of *Bretaigne*, with other Lands beside, which shee held in succession both from Father and Mother, as heere you may behold the Contract of the Donation.

A Copie of the Queenes Letters Patents, for the Duch of *Bretaigne*, and other Lands.

CLaudia, by the Grace of God, Queene of France and Ducheſſe of Bretaigne &c. To all such as ſhall ſee or read theſe our preſent Letters, Greeting. We make publikely known that as on the Two and Twentieth day of Aprill laſt paſt, in the City of Paris, wee gaue granted to our moſt deare and louing Lord the King our Husband, the Duchie of Bretaigne Counties of Nantes, Blois, Montfort l'Amaury, and the Siegneury of Couey, for cauſes full related in thoſe Letters Patents, made and paſt before Iohn du Pre, and Iohn Dam, Notaries to our Prouoſt of Paris, by vſing the Priuiledge of Right, wherein Queenes are ſubiected to Conſtitutions and Cuſtomes, whereby thoſe Donations made by Wiues to their Husbands during their Marriage, may be ſaid to be innalidate and of no worth, but for the enioying during her life time only. Since when, conſidering, that the ſaid Donation was granted for life onely, wherein we haue not ſatisfied our owne will and true meaning, which was, and is, to giue them to him to all perpetuity, if in caſe hee ſhall ſuruiue vs, without Children deſcending of our Marriage, or to our Children. Hauing regard to the Clauſes contained in the ſaid Donation, and likewiſe to the charges, coſts and expences, which he muſt needs bee at, for conquering of our Duchie of Millaine, the paines and trauailes which hee taketh continually to recouer it; yea, the great and (well neere) infinite Summes of money, which hee hath beene at for many yeares, as well in the life time of our moſt louing Lord and Father, King Lewes (whom God abſolue) as ſince then, ſent from the Realme of France, as well for conquering it ſundry times, as to conſerue and keepe it ſtill ours.

And conſidering withall, that many Princes of our Blood, & other great Lords, Subiects, & Seruants to our Kingdome, haue expoſed their goods and perſons in the Conqueſt, recouery and keeping thereof: And that being iſſued and extracted of the Houſe of France, whereof (with all our heart) wee deſire the proſperity and augmentation.

And, that if our ſaid Duchy of Bretaigne and County of Nantes, ſhould happen to the hands of ſome ſtrange Prince or Lord (which God forbid) it would proue the cauſe of many warres, diuiſions and debates, to the great preiudice of the ſaid Kingdome and Duchie of Bretaigne, as heretofore wee haue knowne by our deare experience: And for the intire Loue wee beare to the good and loyall Subiects of our ſaid Duchie of Bretaigne, and County of Nantes, the reſt quiet and tranquility whereof wee heartily wiſh, and make no doubt but it may attaine vnto (by Gods aſſiſtance) ſo long as the Duchy and County ſhall appertaine to the Crowne of France.

For theſe cauſes and conſiderations, with others which haue much moued vs, and are at large ſet downe in the Letters of donation made at Paris, vſing the Priuiledge of Queenes as before is mentioned; with our certaine knowledge, good counſell, and aduice, pure, franke and free goodwill, ſo much as in vs lyeth, or reaſon can require: wee haue giuen, granted and transferred, doe giue, grant and transferre by donation irreuocable, to our ſaid Lord and husband, at this preſent accepted and couenanted, our ſaid Duchie of Bretaigne, Counties of Nantes, Blois, Montfort l'Amaury, and Siegneury of Couey, without reſeruing any part or parcell of them, but going ſo farre forth as they can and doe extend in the Duchie, Counties and Seigneuries, giuen and granted to our ſaid Lord and Husband perpetually, if hee ſhall ſuruiue vs without Heyres deſcending by our Marriage, or after the death of ſuch deſcendants, if hee doe ſuruiue them after our deceaſe, euen as his owne proper and peculiar inheritance.

And wee promiſe on the ſound faith and word of a Queene, to keepe and obſerue all things before remembred, and neuer to gainſay or contradict any thing, for any cauſe, reaſon or meanes whatſoeuer, either directly or indirectly.

And wee promiſe, to warrant and defend (towards all, and againſt all) and to pay all Intereſts and damages, that may happen to my Lord the King, if the ſaid Donation ſhould not take entire and full effect; and that vnder the engagement and Obligation of all and euery part of our goods, and namely the ſaid Duchy, Counties and Seigneurie.

And

And we renounce all exceptions, as well of Right as of Fact, and will that any ſuch caſes happening: hee ſhall take poſſeſſion at all times, and as often as himſelfe ſhall thinke good. In teſtimony whereof, &c. Beneath the Originall of the ſaid Contract of Donation, is written in this manner.

Die Vigeſima Octaua Menſis Iunij, Anno Domini Milleſimo Quingenteſimo Decimo Quinto, Donatio ſupradicta facta eſt præſente Domino noſtro Rege acceptante; Domino Cancellario, Magiſtris Florimondo Robertet, Roberto Guydoyen, & nobis Notarijs ſubſignatu.

T. Paſtille. *I. de Monthennault.*

And thus the Duchie of *Bretaigne*, ſundred for euer from the Crowne of France, was inſeperably reunited thereunto, by the ſaid Queene *Claudia*, and King *Henry* the Second her Sonne; as well by the fore-recited Donation, as at the requeſt, and by the aduiſe of the States of *Bretaigne*, the Fourth day of *Auguſt*, in the yeare, One Thouſand, Fiue Hundred, Thirty and Two. The full reuniting of *Bretaigne* to the Crowne of France.

We haue heretofore ſpoken ſomwhat, concerning the cuſtome of *Bretaigne*, called *Aſſiſe*, made for Feodale Succeſſion, adiudged by aduice of the States to Eldeſt Brothers and Siſters, and what kinde grace remained to the youngeſt. Before this Count deceaſed: which was corrected by *Geoffery* of England, Count of *Richmond*, firſt Husband to *Conſtance*, Ducheſſe of *Bretaigne* his wife, and here you may read the nouell Aſſiſe. The diuiſion of *Bretaigne* before this Law.

The new Law or Aſsiſe for *Bretaigne*.

CVm in Britannia ſuper terris inter fratres diuidendis detrimentum plurimum temerè ſoleat euenire, Ego Gofridus *Henrici Regis filius, Dux Britaniæ, & Comes Richemontu, vtilitati noſtræ prouidere deſiderans petitioni Epiſcoporum, & Baronum omnium Britanniæ ſatis faciens, communi aſſenſu* Aſſiſiam *feci, & conceſſi quod in Baronijs, & feodis Militum, vlterius non fierent diuiſiones; Sed Maior natu integrum obtineret Dominatum, & minoribus ſuis prouideret, & iuuarent iuxta poſſeſſionem. Ea Vero quæ iuniores poſſidebant in Terris, ſiue Denarijs, tenerent quandiu viuerent. Hæredes eadem terras tenentium poſſidebunt illas in perpetuum: Denarios autem habentium hæredes poſt Patres non haberent. Item ſi terra Minorum deuenerit in Balliuiam, Frater maior poſt eum Balliam habebit; quod ſi fratrem non habuerit, ille Amitis Balliam habebit cui decedens cum aſſenſu Domini ſui eam commendabit. In Filiabus vero qui Maiorem habebit, terram habeat, & Minores maritabit de terra ipſa ad Conſilium Domini, & Propinquorum generis. Si etiam in terra Maioris Maritagium aliquod accidere contingit quod Iuniori placeat, illud habebit, nec alii Maior conferre poteſt, dum minor velit habere: quod ſi habere noluerit, & alibi inuenerit, Maior frater ei de rebus, & caballis ſuis dando perquirat pro poſſe ſuo, cum conſilio Propinquorum, amicorumque. Item ſi Maior minori terram dederit, de quâ eum recipiat in hominem, & ſine hærede obierit, alicui de propinquis ſuis cui voluerit eam dabit, ita quod ad principalem Dominum non redibit. Si autem eum non receperit in hominem, ad Maiorem fratrem hæreditas reuertet.* Hanc Aſſiſiam ego *Gofridus Dux Britanniæ, & Conſtantia vxor mea, & omnes Britanniæ Barones iurauimus, & tenere decernimus vt neceſſarium, & vt Maiores natu, & Minores inde valeant, nec amplius in Terris, vel in Denarijs partem habituri ſint. Hanc Aſſiſiam, ſine inſtitutionem nominatim* Alano de Rohan, *& eius hæredibus per totam terram illam conceſſimus per manſuram. Vt igitur hoc ratum, & ſtabile maneat, appoſitione Sigilli mei, & Conſtantiæ vxoris meæ voluimus roborari, teſtibus adhibitis. N. Redonenſi. Petro Macloulenſi, Guichar. Dollenſi Epiſcopis; Mauritaniæ, Nannouodii, Red. & aliis pluribus Baronibus, Anno Domini, Milleſimo, Centeſimo, Octuageſimo.*

Now, after theſe homages were thus performed to the Kings of France by the Dukes and Counts of *Bretaigne*; it was permitted to the French, being actuall Inhabitants, to cauſe the *Bretons* to be called to the Royall Seats of France, on ſimple aſſignations & defaults, vntil the time of *Philip le Bel*, King of France & *Nauarre*, but he by

And some few words after. *Quia vero magna quia sit Metropolitanæ [illegible] contentio est, nulliusquam teneat memoria, vos in vestra regione, [illegible] lim Ecclesiam, tamen si libet, postquam Deus omnipotens pacem [illegible] nostrum KAROLVM Regem gloriosum* (This was *Charlemain* [illegible] the Kings of *Bretaigne Armorica*) *constituerit facilè hoc potestis ad[illegible] adeo contensiosius agere creditis, ad Apostolatum destinare contendite, quantum vestro bramine, quæ sit apud vos antiquitus Archiepiscopalis Ecclesia, luce clarius [illegible] deinceps omni ambiguitate recisa, quam sequi Episcopi vestri debeant, [illegible] noscant.*

Notwithstanding this Rescript, the petty Kings and Counts of *Bretaigne* did [illegible] cease, to exempt themselues from acknowledging the right and Iurisdiction of [illegible] Archbishop of *Tours*, and maintained the Bishop of *Doll* to bee their Metropolit[illegible] because their Subiects and Seruants should not go forth of *Bretaigne*, for causes [illegible] cerning Iustice and Ecclesiastiall Discipline. Vntill it happened in the time [illegible] King *Philip Augustus*, a great and most magnanimous Prince, called the Good, [illegible] (by iust right) The Conquerour; that Pope *Lucius*, Third of the Name, [illegible] with the *Pallium* of Archbishop and Metropolitane, the Bishop of *Doll* [illegible] then.

Which tidings comming to the eares of *Augustus*, hee then wrote backe [illegible] to the same Pope, concerning this ouer-rash enterprise of his; shewing him that, [illegible] ought not to haue done it, without his permission.

The Answere returned by *Augustus* to the Pope.

NVmquid obliuisci poterit Mater Filiorum veri sui? Et ECCLESIA ROMANA REGNI FRANCORVM? cum vterque de Natura sit impossibile, iure difficile, & de facto enorme. Quid enim vltra facere debuimus MATRI NOSTRAE ECCLESIAE ROMANAE, & non fecimus ei vsque in hodiernum [illegible] es cum Patribus nostris? Cum ipsa gaudente gauisi sumus, & cum flente fleuimus vtrumque Calicem passionis, & latitiæ, sine dissimulationis dolo, conbibentes. Persecutiones ipsius, quæ frequentes acciderunt, Patres nostri REGES FRANCORVM, & roborabant humeris, & extentis brachijs defendebant. Exempla promere, est beneficium tractare, quorum debetis in quem collata sunt, non qui contulit, meminisse. Hæc sunt beneficia meritorum REGNI FRANCORVM? Hæ retributiones, & gratiarum actiones Deuotionis, & Fidei quam ECCLESIAE ROMANAE Patres nostri semper exhibuerunt, in omni persecutione vestra, pro Ecclesia Domini, & suis, fideliter imperare, & resistere viriliter alienis?

To race out this fault and errour, Pope *Innocent* the Third, in the yeare of Grace before mentioned, and the Second of his Pontificiality; determined this cause to the benefit of the Church of *Tours*. And as hee was a very learned man; so was hee likewise bold and couragious, in the expressing of his owne intentions.

So pronouncing the definitiue Sentence, which hee caused to bee executed vnder paine of Excommunication; in taking away the *Pallium* from the Bishop of *Doll*, beginneth with these words.

Innocentius, Seruus Seruorum Dei. Doleat Dolensis & gaudeat Turonensis Ecclesia, &c.

Of other Knights, stiled by diuers Names; as Knights of Battaile; Knights of the Siedge; Knights of Mines vnder the Ground; And Knights of the Accolade or Embrace.

CHAP. XVIII.

A power peculier to Martialists.

OVer and beside these Orders of France, which doe beare their perticular Titles; Kings, Lieutenants Generals of Armies, and Captaines of maine Battalions, were wont to giue the name of Knight, to such as had carried themselues valiantly in Battailes, rough Encounters, Mines vnder ground, Assaults, and Siedges laid to Cities, Townes and well fortefied places. Moreoeuer, in times of Peace, Kings vsed to make Knights, by colling or embracing them, who were vulgarly called *Knights of Grace and Fauour*, which are the meanest of all the rest; and yet notwithstanding, this Grace cannot be giuen but by the King one-[illegible], euen no more then the degree of Nobilitie. As for the other Titles, I meane Knights of Battaile, Knights of the Mine vnder ground, and Knights of the Siedge laid to Cities; Lieutenants Generals haue that power from the King, granted in the [illegible] of their charge.

Knights of fauour made onely by Kings

Before, or after the Battaile, such Knights are made, and in such forme and man-[illegible], as we haue obserued to you in our second Booke.

The making Knights of Battaile.

Of *Bertrand du Guesclin*, Constable of France, after the Encounter made at *Coche-[illegible]*, famous by the surprizall of Sir *John Chandois*, chiefe of the *English* Armie, [illegible] totlly disrouted; made Knights of Battaile, to wit, *Messire Iacques le Mercier*, Lord and Patron of Saint *Quentin des Isles*, a Village neere to *Bernay*, in *Norman-[illegible]die*; and the Sonne in Law of the said *Mercier*, named *Bertauld de Gastell*, Lord and Patron of the Village called *Vitray le Gastel*, neere to *L'Aigle* in *Normandie*. Moreouer, at *Paris* there are three Bretheren, descendants from the Familie [illegible] the same *Bertauld*, bearing the same Sir-name and Armes of *Gastel*, which are *D'Argent à Deux Cheurons de Sable*: the eldest of which three Brethren, is Mai-[illegible] *Frances Gastel*, Councellour to the King, and Generall in his Court of [illegible]ydes.

Knights of Mines vnder ground.

Concerning Knights of Mines vnder ground, before, in the Order of *Bour-[illegible]*, Page 492. We haue there declared, that *Renaud* of *Montferrand* was made Knight in the Mine of the Castell of *Vertueil* in *Poicton*, by the good Duke of *Bourbon*. Whereto we may adde and annexe, that which is said in the Chroni-[illegible] of the *Vrsins*, vnder the yeare One thousand foure hundred and twentie, dis-[illegible]coursing on the Siedge of *Melun*, maintained by the Lord of *Barbazan* for the French, against the *English* and *Bourgongnons*. The *English* hauing found by proofe, that he gaue them hot worke in their assaulting; made their recouse to [illegible]ndermining; which was perceiued by the besiedged, who counter-mined also against them.

Et pour-ce qu'on disoit *qu'en Mines se faisoient de vaillantes Armes, on sit sçauoir [illegible]ues s'il y auoit personne qui vouluſt faire Armes, qu'il vint. Dont LOVIS IVVENAL DES VRSINS requit audit Reigneur de Barbasan, qu'il luy donnaſt congié d'en faire. Ce qui luy fut octroyé, mais qu'il trouuaſt Partie, laquelle il trouua assez aysément. Et estoit vn bien Gentil-homme Anglois d'Angleterre. Heure fut assignee, à laquelle ils comparurent, & y auoit Torches, & Lumiere. Et combattirent l'vn contre l'autre vne grosse demie-heure, & n'y eut celuy qui ne perdist de son sang, & de ceux qui auoyent*

auoyent les Gardes furent retraicts. Et n'y auoit guere Heure au iour, qu'il n'y eut [illegible] la Mine des faicts d'Armes. Entre les autres, Raymond de Lore, qui estoit vn vaillant [illegible] cuyer entreprit d'Armes Deux contre Deux, & fut pour Deux [illegible] Et combattirent contre Deux Anglois, bien, & vaillamment, & ne [illegible] ne pouuoit-on prendre l'vn l'autre, car il y auoit vn gros Chemin en Trauers de la Mine, haut iusques à la Poictrine, & estoit defendu que nul ne passast par Dessus, ny Dessous.

Le Roy d'Angleterre, & le Duc de Bourgongne firent plusieurs Chemises [illegible] Seigneurs, lesquels vaillamment s'esloient portez au faict des Armes, qui auoient [illegible] faicts en la Mine. Et sonnoient Trompettes, & Menestriers en leurs Seiges, & faisoient [illegible] grand Ioye.

Le Seigneur de Barbasan dict aussi qu'il en vouloit faire, & enuoya querir [illegible] Louis des Vrsins, & Gilles d'Escheuiller (Bailly de Chartres) & les fit Cheualiers [illegible] aussi sonner ce qu'il y auoit de Trompettes, & sonner les Cloches de la Ville.

And because it is said, that in Mines vnder-ground valiant actions of Armes are [illegible] formed; it was made knowne, that if there were any man, that would [illegible] Armes; he should come to doe it. Whereupon, Lewes Iuuenall des Vrsins, [illegible] of the said Lord of Barbazan, that he would giue him leaue to make proofe of his [illegible] which was granted to him; but hee must finde a partie to coape withall, and it was [illegible] a very worthy Gentleman of England. The houre was appointed, and Torches and Lights [illegible] there readily prepared. And they fought each against the other a large halfe-[illegible] space, and neither of them escaped, without expence of his blood, till by them which [illegible] the Guards, they were retreated. And there was not any houre in the day, but stout deeds [illegible] of Armes were acted in the Mine. Among the rest, Raymond de Lore, who was a [illegible] liant Esquire, vndertooke to fight two against two, and accepted (as his Second) the [illegible] Lewes des Vrsins. And they fought against two Englishmen, brauely and valiantly, [illegible] had the honor, and yet could not one take another: because there was a great Spar or Beame [illegible] uerthwart the Mine, reaching so high as to the Breast; and it was prohibited, that they should not passe either aboue, or beneath it.

The King of England and the Duke of Bourgongne made many Knights and great Lords, that carried themselues valiantly in actions of Armes, and they had bin Knighted in the Mine. And Trompets were sounded, and other Musicks in their Siedges, making great delight and ioy.

The Lord of Barbazan said likewise, that he would make some Knights, and sent for the said Lewes des Vrsines, and Giles d'Escheuiller (Bayliffe of Chartres) and hee made them Knights, causing it to be done with the sounding of Trompets, and ringing the Bels of the Citie.

Knights of Besiedgings of Townes or Cities.

Now as concerning the besiedging of Townes and Cities, *John Bourdigne*, in his Historie of *Aniou*, vnder the yeare One thousand foure hundred fiftie and two, in the Moneth of Iune, speaking of the Siedge of *Fronsac* (called in Latine *Francicum Castrum*, the Founder whereof is made to be our King *Charlemaigne*. The Chronicle of *Bouchard*, Monke of *Laureshеim*, an Abbey of the Order of Saint *Benedict*, in the *Messine* Countrey, vnder the yeare Seauen hundred threescore and nine: *Rex dom[illegible] Legati, quos miserat, reuerterentur, Castrum iuxta Dornoniam* (that is *Dordogne*) *[illegible] nomine, Francicum ædificet*) hath written, that at the same Siedge were made Knights *Peter des Barres*, and *John de la Haye*, with many other valiant Squires, that had there performed faire deedes of Armes. All our French Historians are full of Examples concerning these Knights of Battailes, Mines vnder-ground, and hot Siedges.

Knights of the Embrace or Accollade.

The last are those of the Embrace and Accollade, which the King vouchsafeth and giueth to ennoble them. Such as are of best aduise among them, doe take their Letters of Nobilitie, and of their Knighthood coniointly together, for otherwise they are put to double expences; whereof we say at *Paris*, as a common Prouerbe, and by way of mockerie. *Il en ha belles Lettres sans les Seaux: He hath goodly Letters, but without their Seales.* And here you may behold the forme of them.

The Copy of the Kings Letters Patents.

LOVIS par la Grace de Dieu Roy de France, & de Nauarre. A tous presents & [illegible] Salut. Sçauoir faisons, que desirants à l'Exemple, & Imitation des Roys nos [illegible] predecesseurs, recognoistre par les effects, & les grades d'Honneur entre ceux de nos Subiects qui [illegible] par leur fidele Seruice, que cy-deuant nous auons recognu par les Liures Re[illegible] des Roys nos Deuanciers sur l'Ennoblissement de N. en datte de Mil Six Cents [illegible] Sept, & pour les causes y contenues, par lesquelles il luy seroit permis à luy, & [illegible] escrite naiz, & à naistre en loyal Mariage, de porter telles Armes, & quand bon luy seroit, requerir & demander l'Ordre de Cheualerie. Pour ces causes, & autres à ce nous meuuans, & pour inciter de plus en plus nostredict Amé, & Feal N. Seigneur de N. & par[illegible] ticulierement pour tels & tels signalez seruices, tant par luy que tels & tels ses [illegible] Oncles, rendus en tels, & tels lieux, & en telles Années. Auons faict & cree, faisons & creons Cheualier en l'Accolant ainsi qu'en cas semblable il est accoustume. Et en consequence dequoy nous luy auons donne, & confirme, donnons, & confirmons le tiltre, & de[illegible] re de Cheualerie, Droicts, Honneurs, Priuileges, Prerogatiues, & Preeminences lesquelles les Roys nos Predecesseurs. Si donnons en Mandement à nos Amez & Feaux Conseillers les Gents de nos Comptes, Generaux des Aydes, Gouuerneurs de nos Prouinces, Bailliages, & Seneschaucees, Iuges, ou leurs Lieutenants, & tous nos autres Iusticiers, & Officiers qu'il appartiendra, que ledict N. ils facent souffrent, & laissent chacun endroict soy, iouir, & vsplainement & paisiblement desdicts droicts de Cheualerie, Honneurs, Priuileges, Prerogatiues, & Preeminences, lesquels y appartiennent. Car tel est nostre plaisir. Et afin que [illegible] soit chose ferme & stable à tousiours nous auons fait mettre nostre Seel à ces dictes presentes. Sauf en toutes autres choses nostre droict, & l'autruy. Donne à Paris au Mois d'Auril [illegible] l'An de Grace, Mil Six Cents Dixhuict, & de nostre Regne le Huictiesme.

Signe

De Lomenie.

Et sur le Reply. Par le Roy. Visa. Duval. Et scelle sur Laqs de Soye de Cire Verde.

The same in English.

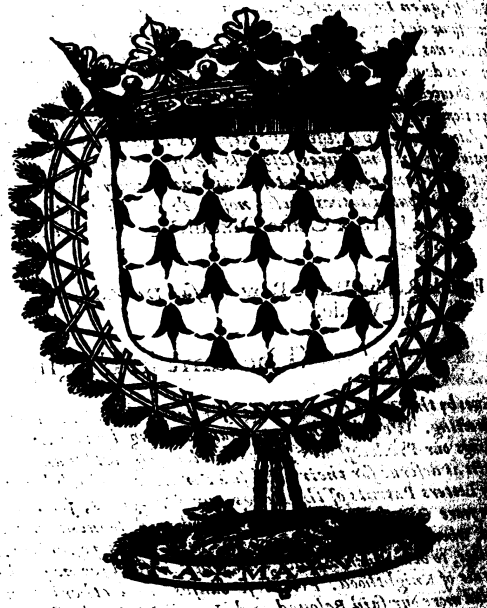
LEwes by the Grace of God, King of France and of Nauarre. To all present and to come, Greeting. We make knowne, that desiring by the Example, and in the Imitation of the Kings our Predecessours, to acknowledge by titles and degrees of Honour, such of our Subiects as deserue for their faithfull Seruices, which heretofore haue bin made knowne to vs, by Letters Patents of the Kings our fore-goers, for the ennobling of N. bearing date in the yeare One thousand sixe hundred and seauenteene, and for the causes therein contained, whereby is permitted to him, and his posteritie, begotten and borne in loyall Marriage, to beare such Armes, and when it shall seeme good to him, to require and demand the Order of Knighthood. For these causes, and others thereto mouing vs, and to incite more and more our said Beloued and Loyall N. Lord of N. and perticularly for such and such worthy Seruices, as well by him, as such and such his Grandfathers, Father and Vncles, performed in such and such places, and in such yeares. We haue made and Created him a Knight in Colling and Embracing him, as in the like cases hath bin accustommed. And in consequence whereof, we haue giuen and confirmed, doe giue and confirme the title and degree of Knighthood, by these presents signed with our hand. For the said Title and degree of Knighthood, the Rights, Honours, Priuiledges and Preheminences, which are [illegible] the said N. as well in Warre, Court and publique Assembly of our Nobilitie, as in iudgement and otherwise euery where, he shall thinke fit, in the forme, and as hath bin vsed to make vse and enioy the same by as other Knights of the Embracing or Colling, created by our hand, and the Kings our Predecessours.

ceſſours Euen ſo doe we giue in command to our beloued and faithfull [illegible] Officers of our Actournies, Generals of Aydes, [illegible] Stewardſhips, Iudges, or their Lieutenants, and to all our other Iuſtices whom it may appertaine: that the ſaid N. they doe ſuffer and haue each [illegible] anicy and vſe plainly and peaceably the ſaid Rights of Knighthood, Honours Prerogatiues, and Preheminences which are thereto belonging. For ſuch [illegible] And to the end that this may be a matter firme and ſtable for euer, we haue [illegible] ſet our Seale. Reſeruing in all other things our right, and what elſe [illegible] Moneth of Aprill, and yeare of Grace One thouſand ſixe hundred and eight [illegible] Reigne the eight.

Signed De Lomenie.

And on the Folde. By the King. *Viſa. Du Vair*: And Sealed with Greene Waxe on Strings of Silke.

And heere wee thinke fit (with this concluſion) to place the Piece of the Hermine, *being the Order of* Bretaigne.



The End of the Third Booke and firſt Tome.

THE ORDERS OF FLANDERS, AND Of the Low-Countries: Otherwiſe CALLED THE NETHERLANDS.

The II. Tome.

The Order of the Golden Fleece: Inſtituted in the City of Bruges: & Anno One thouſand, foure hundred, twenty nine.

The Fourth Booke.

CHAP. I.

THE *Bourguignons*, or *Bourgongnons*, People of *Almaigne* or *Germany*, ſeated beyond the Rhine, paſſed that great Bloody riuer the Conſulſhip of *Lactanius*, and of *Herculianus*, the Yeare of Graee, Foure Hundred and Thirteene, where they poſſeſſed themſelues of one part belonging to the *Gaules*, and where (at this inſtant) are the Cantons of our Allied Confederates, *Berne*, *Fribourg* and *Soleurre*, with limitrophing Countries, ſometime called by the name of the leſſer *Bourgongne*. In following time, they preſſed on further into the Country, poſſeſſing part of *Sauoy*, *Dauphine*, *Lyon*-

L'Ordre de la Toiſon D'or.

The Cantons of the Suiſſers.

and the Durchie and County of *Bourgongne*.

In the yeare Foure Hundred and Fourteene, *Gondencus* ſucceeded after King *Gondiok* his Vncle, vnder whoſe Reigne the *Bourgongnons* paſſed the Rhine. After *Gondiocus* or *Gondencus*, ſucceeded next in order *Gibius*, *Gothomarus*, *Giſlahurus*, *Theuricus* and *Gombauld*. Theſe Kings of the *Bourgongnons* were allied, and Kinſmen to them of the *Vuiſigothes*, who likewiſe had ſeized on, and poſſeſſed another part belonging to the *Gaules*, as we haue already declared in the ſecond Booke.

Kings of the Bourgongnons allied to the Vuiſigothes.

Gombauld (Authour of the Law *Gombetta*, whereby the *Bourgongnons* were ruled and policied) had three other Brethren, named *Gundegiſilus*, *Chilperichus* and *Gothomarus*, in fauour of whom the Realme of the *Bourgongnons* (being then of great extent) became diuided into foure portions: the principall whereof was that, which they

Bourgongne diuided into foure partitions.

they properly called the Dutchy of *Bourgongne*, adiudged to the [illegible]

Or *Clotilda*. [illegible]

Soissons.

These men, after the death of King *Clouis* their Father, were incen[illegible]
ther *Clotilda*, to passe into *Bourgongne*, to reuenge the death of *Cl*[illegible]
Father, on the descendants to the King of *Bourgongne* [illegible]
the *Godomarus* his Sonnes, vanquished by the three Br[illegible]thren Kings
mans (in some space of time after) recouered *Bourgo*[illegible]which
in the Voyage which was made by *Childebert* and *Clothaire*, the yea[illegible]
Fiue Hundred Thirty Two. Where finished the first Kings o[illegible]
death of *Godomarus*, fled into *Affrica*.

Sigismond and *Godomarus* Sonnes to *Gombauld*.

As for *Sigismond*, his Wife and Children were throwne into a Well (in
mire King of *Orleans*) neere to the City of *Orleans*, in a piece of ground
corrupt Language *S. Sigismond* (Founder of the Church of Saint *Maurice*
whereupon he was Cannonized, and his memory celebrated in the Church
day of May.

The Martyrologe of the famous Cardinal *Cæsar Baronius*, on the first day of
Seduni in Gallia passio sancti Sigismundi Regis Burgundionum, qui in posterum
cubuit ac postea miraculis claruit.

The first King of all France.

Clothaire, First of the name, King of all France, (Founder of the Abbey
Mard of *Soissons*, where he is enterred) by his Second Wife, named
fiue Sonnes, the last whereof was *Sigebert* King of *Austrasia*, who
his wife, second Daughter to *Athanegilde*, King of the *Wisigoths* of
Sonne called *Childebert*, who (in his Fathers right) succeeding in the
strasia, inherited the kingdom of *Bourgogne*, by the decease of his Vncle

Brunechilde or *Brunehault* a wicked Queene.

This King of *Austrasia* was Cannonized, and his Feast celebrated in
ap Churches of France and Germany. *Brunechilde*, otherwise named
wife, for her wicked & abhominable life, was dragd at the tailes of vnr
by decree of a generall Parliament of France, held vnder King *Clothaire*
in April 1623. to the Crosse *du Trayor* at Paris, & buried in the Church
d'Autun wherof she was supposed to be the Foundresse: and so much
cause (in her time) was leuied the great taxation (for womens wea
which was called *Brunehaulte*, according to her name.

Childebert, King of *Bourgongne* and *Austrasia* (Realms
tie were *Orleans* and *Metz*) by *Faileuba* his wife, left
The Son was named *Theodobert*, Second of the name
without Issue; and by his death

Sigibert, *Corbo*, *Childebert* & *Merouens*, naturall Sonnes to *Thierry*.

Théodoricke, or *Thierry*, Second of the name his naturall Brother
gongne and *Austrasia*. Hee (by his Concubines) left four
Corbo, *Childebert*, and *Merouens*, whom *Clothaire* the Great
of *Chilpericke* and *Fredegond*) both held and named
Merouens had a Sonne named *Garnier*, or *Warnier*, a
carriage, which he made publikely knowne both in *Austrasia* and
meanes whereof, *Clothaire*, Second of the name, was a
said two Prouinces, and Kingdomes. In acknowledgement
faithfull Seruices, *Clothaire* made the said *Garnier* Maior of the
strasia, and Senatour, as much to say as Gouernour & Maior of the
gongne. Granting for Armes to him & his Descendants, The Banner
colour of France, *Mis en Bandes de Six pieces*, that is to say, *Bandé*
Which Armes and Banner haue of long time beene seene deposited

La Banniere des Metal & colour de France.

of S. *Arnoul de Metz*, on the Tombe of the said *Garnier* or *Warnier*
wife a Lady of *Austrasia*, named *Geslina*.

By her he had two Sonnes, the eldest whereof named *Godin*,
to all kindes of vices, who was beaten downe and slaine by his

brother *Goudouald*, fearing to be vexed with his brothers brutishnesse, shielded
[illegible] the people's fury, in the towne of *Metz*, where three of heroes Counsell. This
[illegible] to wife *Theudas*, daughter of *Theodine*, who was Maire of the Pallace of
[illegible] He had as sonne and successour in the said Country of *Austrey*, *Drohin*, who
[illegible] possessed the heire of *Roussillion* (I meane not the *Roussillon* of Spaine) named *Alstrue*,
[illegible] of whom descended their sonne *Gerard*, first stiled of *Roussillion*, in regard of
[illegible] mother's and afterward he became Counte of *Autun*, as being the owne land in
[illegible] proprietie. This is the man, whom the fabulous Romancers terme *Gerard de Rous-*
[illegible], and make him a doniured enemie to Great King *Charlemaigne*, to whom (as
[illegible] say) hee gaue many Battailes. This *Gerard*, liuing to be full of yeares, died, and
buried at *Vezelay*, which he had builded and richely endowed.

Ebraine Maire of the Pallace.

The old History of Sir *Gerard* of *Rousillon*.

He maried *Frenanda*, Daughter to the Duke of *Aquitane Gaulfier*, or *Walfaire*,
hom King *Pepin* ouercame: And by her he had three sonnes, *Sampson* whom *Char-*
maigne affected, making him Duke of *Bourgongne*, Counte of *Autun* and *Rousillion*,
(if we may credite the *Romancers*, against the trueth of Historie) hee died at *Ren-*
nes, and his body was carried into the Great Church of *Arles*, and enterred in the
Cloister, among the auncient Kinge of *Bourgongne*.

Ranulph Duke of *Aquitaine*.

The second sonne was *Ranulphe*, whom the said *Charlemaigne* made Duke and Go-
uernour of *Aquitaine*, a Prouince which till then, had beene commaunded by her
owne Kings, and was soone after (vntill such time as *Eubles*, Counte of *Poicton*, had the
said *Aquitaine*) in title of a Duchie proprietarie, and pattimoniall.

The third Brother to *Sampson*, and Sonne of the said *Gerard*, was *Albane*, to whom
Charlemaigne gaue the Counte of *Poicton*, in title of fauour and benefit, but not in pro-
perty: for in his time, such benefits were not giuen but for certaine yeares, and (at the
most) for life, according to the qualitie of the services receiued.

The beginning of the Counts of *Poicton*.

And at such time as *Charlemaigne* caused to bee buried, the bodies of them slaine at
Roncevaux, in the Abbey of *Sordre*, neere to the Towne of *Argis* in *Gascoigne*, and at
the foote of the *Pyrenean* mountaines: in the Letters for foundation of the said Abbey,
made by *Charlemaigne*, the forenamed *Ranulphe* and *Albane* Bretheren, were presented,
and *Charlemaigne* called them brothers of his good kinseman *Sampson*. Of the last of
these two brethren, are issued and descended the Counties of *Poicton*.

Sampson, by the fauour of King *Pepin*, tooke to wife a Lady of great birth in *Anion*;
which is not noated, and by her he had two sonnes.

The first Counte Officer of *Auuergne*.

The eldest, who was named *Thierry*, simply entitled himselfe Counte of *Autun*:
the other was *William*, tearmed the Deuout, who was first Counte Officer of *Au-*
uergne, and by the death of his vncle *Ranulph*, or *Raoull* (dying without children)
of *Aquitaine*, inuested by the fauour and benefit of King *Charlemaigne*. This
gaue great gifts to the Abbey of *Cluny*, where he lieth buried. In the Chapter-
of the said Abbey, was (not long since) his Image and representation, hauing

The Banner belonging to *Aquitaine*.

Banners. The one *D'Azure à Trois Bandes D'Or à la Bordure de Gueules, Escar-*
delées de Gueules et d'Or. Whereby we vnderstand, that the *Lozange* was
Banner belonging to the countrey of *Aquitaine*, whereof he had the charge. And
same Banner was borne by the first Counte of *Angoulesme*, Sirnamed *Taille-Fer*.

The Banner of *Austrasia*.

The other Banner which the sayd *William* the deuoute carried, was that of his owne
Stocke and Linage: differing (neuertheless) from them of the Auncient house
Austrasia, and of *Bourgongne*. Because that of *Austrasia* was *De Bandes d'Or et*
Azur de six pieces, beginning by the mettall. That of *Bourgongne* was likewise *De*
Azur Dorees, et Azurees de six Pieces. But it had moreouer *La Bordure de Gueules*.
And that of *William* the deuout, beganne by the Coulter because hee bare *D'Azur A*
six Bandes d'Or, which made *L'Escu de Sept Bandes, ou Sept pieces a la Bordure De*
Gueules.

And for the Banner of *Albane*, and of his Successours the Counties of *Poicton*: It was
D'Azur A Trois Bandes d'Azur, A la Bordure De Gueules.

The first King of *Bourgongne*.

And concerning the first Kings of *Bourgongne*, vanquished by the sonnes of *Clouis*,
they bare *La Banniere D'Argent A La Giure Tortillee De Synople, A la Gueule Beante De*
Gueules. That is to say, a Serpent writhed or wrung together, with any open mouth.

So

Of *Clotilda*: So it is the easier knowne, that the Armes of *Clotilda*, Wife to King *Clouis*, are bad lye emblazoned on the first Portall of Saint *Geneniefe du Mon vt à Paris*, which are *D'Or & d'Azur*: whereas they rather should be *D'Argent à la Giure de Symple*. That first Kings of *Bourgongne*, hauing conquered that part from the *Gaules*; which (to this very day) retaineth the name of *Bourgongne*, the higher and lower, and seeing the Banner of the *Gaules*, was *D'Azur au Lyon remptant d'Or*; they added to their Armes a spoyle or prey, that is to say the skin of a Lyon, which supplyed the blanke place of their Armes. And such bare *Vernaire* Maior of the Pallace of *Austrasia*, and Senatour of *Bourgongne*, both the one and other in deuise, but not in Armes.

The higher & lower *Bourgongne*.

CHAP. II.

Of the first Dukes of Bourgongne.

Robert the strong, Marquesse and Count of *Anjou*.

VNder the Reigne of *Lotharius* the Emperour, eldest Sonne to *Lewes* the Debonnaire, was made Duke & Gouernour of *Bourgongne Thierry*, his Cousin Germaine, Sonne to *Robert* the Strong, Marquesse and Count of *Aniou*, as wee haue formerly said elsewhere.

Within a while after, *Charles* the Bauld, King of France, and Emperour, made King of *Bourgongne Bozon*, Count of *Ardenne*, a Kingdome which the Descendants of the said *Bozon* enioyed sometime, euen vntill one named *Raoull*, became the vtter spoyle thereof. For the higher *Bourgongne* was vsurped by the Empire. *Berard* of *Saxony* possessed himselfe of *Sauoy*: *Gignes* the Fat, of *Daulphine*, and one *Hugues* made his seizure on *Prouence*; the Descendants of *Thierry* retaining still the Dutchy of *Bourgongne*.

Berard of *Saxony*.

The said *Thierry* had espoused the Daughter of *Theodoricke* (eldest Son of *Sampson*, the first Duke of *Bourgongne*.) And of this marriage were borne *Richard* and *Gilbert*, who tooke the Sirname and the Armes of *Bourgongne*, *Bande D'Or & d'Azur de Six pieces A la Bordure de Gueules*.

Of *Richard* the Iusticer.

Richard, called the Iusticer, or the Iust Duke of *Bourgongne*, married *Othina*, Daughter to a King of England, of whom was borne *Raoull* or *Rodolph*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, and King of France, after *Eudes* and *Robert* his Paternall Cousins.

Gisleberta, Sister to the Emperour *Otho*.

Gilbert of *Bourgongne*, Brother to *Richard*, in like manner held the said Dutchy. Hee had to Wife *Gisleberta*, Sister to the Emperour *Otho*, first of that name, and to *Gerberga*, Wife to *Lewes* beyond the Seas, King of France. And of this Marriage there issued but one Daughter named *Berthaire*, Dutchesse of *Bourgongne*, married to *Otho*, Brother to the King *Hugh Capet*.

Otho and *Berthaire* seeing themselues to be without Issue; adopted for their Son *Henry*, Brother to the said *Otho*, and to *Hugh Capet*.

Gerberga, Countesse of *Dijon*.

The same *Henry* tooke to Wife *Gerberga*, Countesse of *Dijon*, Widdow to the Count of *Mascon* (descended of the Linage of *Theodoricke*, Sonne to *Sampson* of *Bourgongne*) named *Richard*, by whom he had a Sonne named *Otho-Guillaume*, adopted likewise by the said *Henry* and *Gerberga*, who had no Children at all. So that he was Duke of *Bourgongne*, and lyeth buried in the Abbey of Saint *Benigne*, at *Dijon*.

By the death of this *Otho-Guillaume*, deceasing without issue: *Robert* the deuout King of France, gaue the Dutchy of *Bourgongne* to the second of his Sonnes, *Monsieur Henry* of France. Who being crowned King of France, after the death of his Father *Robert*: gaue (in way of Appennage) the Dutchie of *Bourgongne* to his Brother *Monsieur Robert* of France.

Monsieur Robert of France.

Hee, to shew himselfe conformable to the Lords of the Countrey, tooke the Banner and Armes of *Sampson* the first Duke of *Bourgongne*. Now you shall see the Family and Descent of the said *Monsieur Robert* of France.

CHAP. III.

Of such as were second Dukes of Bourgongne; but of the House of France.

MOnsieur *Robert* of France, Duke of *Bourgongne*, tearmed the *Aged*, because he had liued a long & goodly time, had to wife *Amegarda*; and in this marriage were borne two Sonnes.

Henry, And

Hugh of *Bourgongne*.

Henry dyed in the life time of his Father, leauing two Sonnes,

Hugh, And

Eudes of *Bourgongne*.

1. *Hugh*, Eldest Son of *Henry*, succeeded in the Dutchy of *Bourgongne*, after the death of *Monsieur Robert* of France, his Grandfather, dying in the yeare, 1075. buried at *Semur* in *l'Auxois*. The said *Hugh* dyed without Issue by his Wife *Yolanda*, in the yeare, 1097. And was buried at *Clugny*, where he became a Monke, after the decease of his Wife and made profession thereof in his latest sickenesse. And by his death

2. *Eudes* (first of the name) his Brother, inherited the Dutchy of *Bourgongne*, he founded the Abbey of the *Cisteaux* Friers, in the yeare 1098. and dyed in the Voyage of *Ierusalem*, the yeare of Grace, 1102. He left behind him two Sonnes

Hugh, And

Henry of *Bourgongne*.

4. *Hugh*, Second of that name, received the Dutchy of *Bourgongne*, of Duke *Eudes* his Father, at his going in the Voyage to the Holy-land, and held it till his decease (happening in the yeare of Grace 1133.) of the Duchesse *Mahauld* his Wife. He likewise left two Sonnes

Eudes, And

Alexander of *Bourgongne*.

5. *Eudes*, Second of the name, Duke of *Bourgongne*, deceased in the yeare of Grace, 1164. leauing by *Mary* his Wife one only Sonne

6. *Hugh*, Third of the name, Duke of *Bourgongne*, who had two Wiues. The first whereof was *Alix* of *Lorraine*, and by her he had two Sonnes.

Eudes, And

Alexander of *Bourgongne*.

The other Wife was *Beatrix*, Daughter to the *Daulphine* of *Viennois*, Count of *Henry*, by whom he had not Issue. Hee made two Voyages to *Ierusalem*, the first in the yeare 1165. and at his then returning, hee founded the holy Chappell at *Dijon*. And in the yeare 79. hee gaue the County of *Langres* to the Bishop of the said place *Gaultier*, being his Vncle; with the consent of *Henry* Count *de Bar*, who pretended some Title thereto. At his second Voyage ouer the Seas, when King *Philip Augustus* tooke the strong City of *Acres* from the Sultane *Saladine*, the said *Hugh* the Third dyed in the yeare 1192. the eight day of August. His body was brought thence, and buried at the *Cisteaux*. And by his death succeeded in the Duchy of *Bourgongne* his Eldest Sonne

7. *Eudes*, Third of the name, who had 2. wiues. The first was daughter to *Thibault*, the great Count of *Blois*, & in this marriage was born one Son, named *John* (who died in his Fathers life time, without Children) and 3. Daughters.

Mary, wife to the Count *de la Marche*.

Mahauld, Wife to *Raoull* King of *Germany*; & these 2. daughters left no Issue.

The Third was *Alix*, married to the Lord of *Chalon*, *Seigneur John Brichemell*; & in this mariage were born many children, among whom was *John de Chalon*, Bishop of *Langres*, & *Hugh de Chalon*, Father to *John de Chalon*, Lord of *Arlay*.

The other wife of Duke *Eudes* the third was *Alix de Vergy*. He died in the yeare 1218. and was enterd at the *Cisteaux*. By his second wife he had one only Son.

8. *Hugh*, Fourth of the name, Duke of *Bourgongne*. He acquitted the County of *Chalon* by exchange, to *John* Count of *Bourgongne*, & of *Chalon* his Kinsman, the Son of *Stephen*, Count of *Bourgogne*, Lord of *Salins*. His Mother & he founded the *Iacobines* at *Dijon*, in the yeare 1230.

The said *Hugh* had two wiues. The first was *Yolande* of *Dreux*, and of her hee begot three Sonnes & two Daughters.

Hugh,

John, And

Robert of *Bourgongne*.

The Daughters were

Alix, wife to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, &

Mary, wife to *Guy*, Viscount of *Limoges*.

The second wife of the said *Hugh* the fourth, was *Beatrix*; by whom he had one Son and foure Daughters.

Hugh of *Bourgongne*, Lord of *Avalon*, *Chanaghes*, *Montreal*, *Montbar*, and other Seigneuries in *Bourgongne*, which his Father left him.

The Daughters were.

Beatrix, wife to *Hugh le Brun*, Counte *de la Marche*, and of *Angoulesme*.

Isabell, wife to *Peter* of *Brabant*.

Margaret, wife to *Iohn de Chalon* Counte of *Burgongne*, Lord of *Salins*. And

Ioane, who became a Nunne.

The said *Hugh* the Fourth died in the yeare 1273. and was buried at the *Cisteaux*. His two eldest Sonnes of the first Bed, *Hugh* and *Iohn*, deceased before himselfe, both of them leauing no issue but Daughters. For.

Hugh by his Wife *Mahauld*, eldest Daughter to *Archambauld* of *Bourbon* the yonger, Countesse of *Neuers*, d'*Auxerre*, and of *Tonnerre*, had foure daughters.

Yoland, Countesse of *Neuers*, who was maried twise, First to *Monsieur Trist and de France*, Sonne to the King *S. Lewes*, dying at *Thunis* (without issue) with the King his Father. In second mariage she had *Robert* of *Flanders*, Eldest Sonne to *Guye*, Counte of *Flanders*.

Margaret, Countesse of *Tonnerre*, Lady of *Montmirall* in *Perche*; Second wife to *Monsieur Charles de France* (Brother of S. *Lewes*) King of *Scicilie*.

Alix, Countesse of *Auxerre*, Lady of Saint *Aignan* in *Berry*; Wife to *Iohn de Chalon*, Lord of *Roche-fort* in *Bourgongne*: And the fourth daughter was.

Ioane or *Iane* of *Bourgongne*, deceassing very young.

Iohn of *Bourgongne*, Second Sonne to *Hugh* the Fourth, had to wife *Agnes*, Second Daughter to *Archambauld* of *Bourbon* the younger. Shee had as her partage or diuident, the Seigneurie of *Bourbon*; and of this mariage was borne a daughter onely, *Beatrix* of *Bourgongne*, Lady of *Bourbon*, sole heire to her Father and Mother; and maried to *Monsieur Robert* of *France*; Counte of *Clermount* in *Beauoisis*, Sonne of the King S. *Lewes*. And of this mariage is issued the Royall house of *Bourbon*, which hath succeeded to the Crowne of *France*, the most Illustrous of all Christendome.

Hugh the Fourth, by his Testament left the Duchie of *Burgongne*, to his third Sonne 9. *Robert*, Second of the name, which Duchie was confirmed to him by the King S. *Lewes*, against all the pretences of the Counte of *Flanders*, Second Husband of *Yoland* of *Bourgongne*, Eldest daughter to *Hugh* of *Bourgongne* the Eldest sonne of *Hugh* the Fourth. Of which second mariage proceeded diuers children, which were excluded from the said Duchie, becausse being borne and descended of Daughters, they are (by the Law of the Kingdome) excluded from inheritances.

The said *Robert* Duke of *Bourgongne* tooke to wife Madame *Agnes* of *France* daughter to the King S. *Lewes*: And of this Mariage issued many Children namely fiue Sonnes, and foure Daughters. The Sonnes were

Hugh,

Eudes,

Robert, Count of *Tonnerre*, dying without any issue.

Iohn, And

Lewes of *Burgongne*, deceasing also without Children. The daughters were

Margaret of *Bourgongne*, first wife to *Lewes Hutin*, Tenth of the name, King of *France*, and of *Nauarre* first of the name.

Ioane, wife to *Phillip de Valois*, Sixt and last of this name, King of *France*.

Blanche, Wife of *Edward*, Eldest Son to the Counte of *Sauoy*: and an other

Blanche, wife to *N.* Counte *de Bar*.

The said *Robert* the Second deceased the yeare of Grace, 1309. After whom succeeded in the Duchie of *Bourgongne* his Eldest Sonne 10. *Hugh*, fift of the name, who dying without Children the yeare 1315 (and buried at the *Cisteaux*) left for Successour in the Duchie of *Bourgongne*, his Brother

11. *Eudes*, Fourth of the name. He had to wife Madame *Ioane* or *Iane* of *France* Eldest daughter to *Phillip le Long*, fift of the name, King of *France* & *Nauarre*, by right whereof, the said *Eudes* the Fourth, was Counte *Palatine* of *Bourgongne* and of *Artois*.

Of this Mariage was borne two Sonnes

Philip, And

Iohn of *Bourgongne*.

The said *Eudes* was Founder of the Conuent of the *Chartreuse* Monkes in the Towne of *Beaune*, the yeare of Grace 1332. and died in the yeare 1349. two Sonnes died in his life time, to wit *Phillip*

Phillip in the yeare 1346. he had espoused Madam *Ioane* of *Bologne*, afterward Queene of France in regard of King *Iohn* her Husband. Of this marriage, the said *Phillip* of *Bourgongne* left one Sonne and a Daughter: The Sonne was

12. *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, after the death of his Grandfather *Eudes*, the fourth, and his Grandmother. So that he was both Duke and Count of *Bourgongne*, and of *Artois*. He had to wife *Margaret* of *Flanders*, onely Daughter to *Lewes*, Count of *Flanders*. He deceased without issue, the fiue and twentieth day of Nouember 1362.

Iohn of *Bourgongne*, dyed before his Brother, in such manner and fashion, as by the death of the last Duke *Phillip*, the Duchie of *Bourgongne* came to

Iohn King of France, second of the name, by meanes whereof, the said Duchie of *Bourgongne* returned to the Crowne of France by right of reuersion, through the defect of a masle childe. And in the person of the said *Phillip*, ended the first ligne of Princes of the Bloud of France, Dukes of *Bourgongne*.

CHAP. IIII.

The second and last Ligne of Dukes of Bourgongne, issued of the House of France.

THE last House of *Bourgongne* (the Subiect of this discourse) tooke beginning in the person of *Phillip* of France, Sonne of King *Iohn* and Brother to the Dolphin *Charles*, after King *Iohn* his Father, and of *Bonne* Daughter to the Duke of *Bohemia*. This *Phillip* was borne in the yeare 1342. and was Duke of *Touraine* and Earle of *Poictiers*. He had to wife Madame *Marguerite* Daughter to *Lewes* Count of *Flanders*, and of *Iane* Countesse of *Rethel*. Of this mariage was borne a Daughter onely, *Marguerite* of *Flanders*, who was maried to *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, Sonne to King *Edward* the third of England, and died without issue. The said *Phillip* died in the yeare 1375. and was buried at the Abbay of *Royaumont*.

Iohn Duke of *Berry*, Earle of *Poictiers*, Counte of *Auuergne*, and of *Montpensier*, Lord of *Mehun* sur *Yeure*, and of *Concressault*, Sonne of King *Iohn* and Brother to the Dolphin *Charles*, after King *Iohn* his Father, and of *Bonne* Daughter to the Duke of *Bohemia*. He had to wife Madame *Ioane* Daughter to the Counte of *Auuergne* and *Boulogne*, and of *Ioane* Countesse of *Auuergne* and *Boulogne*. Of this mariage was borne a Daughter onely, *Marie* of *Berry*, who was maried to *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Counte of *Ponthieu*, Sonne of *Peter* Duke of *Bourbon*, and of *Isabell* of *Valois*. The said *Iohn* Duke of *Berry* died in the yeare 1416. and was buried at the Abbay of *Bourges*.

Phillip of France, Sonne of King *Iohn* and Brother to the Dolphin *Charles*, after King *Iohn* his Father, and of *Bonne* Daughter to the Duke of *Bohemia*. He had to wife Madame *Marguerite* Daughter to the Counte of *Auuergne* and *Boulogne*, and of *Ioane* Countesse of *Auuergne* and *Boulogne*. Of this mariage was borne a Daughter onely, *Ioane* of *Bourbon*, who was maried to *Charles* Dolphin of *Viennois*, Sonne of *Guyes* Dolphin of *Viennois*, and of *Beatrix* of *Hungarie*. The said *Phillip* died in the yeare 1397. and was buried at the Abbay of *Royaumont*.

Phillip of France, Sonne of King *Iohn* and Brother to the Dolphin *Charles*, after King *Iohn* his Father, and of *Bonne* Daughter to the Duke of *Bohemia*. He had to wife Madame *Marie* Daughter to the Duke of *Bourbon*, and of *Anne* Countesse of *Auuergne*. Of this mariage was borne a Daughter onely, *Bonne* of *Berry*, who was maried to *Iohn* Earle of *Armignac*, Sonne of *Bernard* Earle of *Armignac*, and of *Beatrix* of *Bourbon*. The said *Phillip* died in the yeare 1424. and was buried at the Abbay of *Royaumont*.

Phillip of France, firnamed the Hardy for his valiancie.

King *Charles* the fift, was married by his Father, his Grandfather *Iohn* & *Phillip* of *Valois*, to *Iane* of *Bourbon*, a beautifull wise Princesse, Daughter to *Peter*, first of that name, second Duke of *Bourbon*, in the yeare 1349. Wherein hath appeared the arguing ignorance of *Haillan*, who (very vnaduisedly) hath written in his History of France, that the said King *Charles* the fift, preferred the beautie of *Iane* of *Bourbon*, before his own perticuler pleasures, or the greatest goods of France, and the Estate, which he encreased and augmented greatly, by accession of the Counties of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the Low Countries, and the course of so many warres, as France was then molested withall, & which it might haue auoided: if the said King *Charles* the fift, had married the rich Heire of all those Countries Madam *Margaret* of *Flanders*, instead of espousing her to his yonger Brother, *Phillip* the Hardie, as he did the twelfth day of Aprill, An. 1369.

Iane of *Bourbon* a wise and beautifull Princesse.

Madam *Margaret* of *Flanders*, called the Rich Heire.

The very date of these Mariages are sufficient to confute *Haillan*, and to shew him, that at such time as King *Charles* the fift was married, the said *Margaret*, daughter to *Lewes de Malines*, Count of *Flanders*, was not as yet borne. And she was no more but eleauen yeares old, when she remained Widdow to *Phillip* the last Duke of *Bourgongne*, he deceasing at the age of foureteene yeares, at *Rounray* neere *Dijon*, the moneth and yeare before obserued. Also, the said *Margaret* continued a Widdow eight yeares, and vntill the yeare 1369. the twelfth day of Aprill, when King *Charles* the fift caused her marriage to his Brother *Monsieur Phillip* of France, Duke of *Bourgongne*. And the King, *Charles* the fift, had espoused *Iane* of *Bourbon*, in the yeare 1349.

Phillip the last Duke of *Bourgongne*.

Now

Charles the second King of *Nauarre*.

Now after the death of the said *Phillip* the last Duke of *Bourgongne*, the King of *Nauarre*, *Charles*, second of the name, prepared himselfe by way of opposition, against *Iohn* King of France, who reunited to his Crowne the said Duchie of *Bourgongne*: because he pretended, that by the death of the last Duke *Phillip*, he ought to inherite the said Duchie of *Bourgongne*, in regard of his Grandmother *Margaret* of *Bourgongne*, wife to King *Lewes Hutin*, Father of Madam *Ioane* of France, onely Daughter to the said *Margaret* of *Bourgongne*, eldest Daughter to *Robert*, third of that name, Duke of *Bourgongne*.

The Duchie of *Bourgongne* a great Fiefe of France.

But the said King of *Nauarre* was disappointed in his ends and conclusions, by Order of Parlement at *Paris*; because the Duchie of *Bourgongne* is an Appennage and great Fiefe of the Crowne of France, whereunto it returneth, through defect of male children, issued and borne in loyall Marriage.

Duke *Charles* the Warriour.

The same Reuersion was practised after the death of *Charles* the Warriour, last Duke of *Bourgongne*, of this last Ligne, deceasing without Heire Masle, hauing left but one Daughter, *Mary* of *Bourgongne*, from whom (after the death of her Father) King *Lewes* the eleauenth, tooke into his power the Duchie of *Bourgongne*, which hee reunited inseparably to the Crowne of France, conformably to the tearmes of donation of the said Duchie, made to *Monsieur Phillip* of France, called the Hardie, by King *Iohn* his Father. Behold here the Teneure of the said Donation.

A Copie of the Kings Letters Patents.

IOannes Dei Gratia Rex Francorum. &c. Notum, &c. Quod nos *ad humilem supplicationem Subditorum nostrorum dicti Ducatus Burgundiæ, prædictum Ducatum Burgundiæ, in* Pariatu, *& quidquid Iurium, possessiones, & proprietatis habemus, & habere possumus, & debemus in eodem; nec non & in Comitatu Burgundiæ, dicto Filio nostro Philippo donauimus, & concedimus tenore præsentium, de nostris speciali gratia, certa Scientia, auctoritate Regiâ, & nostræ Regiæ potestatis plenitudine, præmissa in eum transferimus tenenda, & possidenda*, Per Eum, & Hæredes suos Masculos, In Matrimonio, ex proprio Corpore Procreandos, *perpetuo hereditario iure pacifice, & quiete ponentes; ipsum que Filium nostrum Ducem*, Primum Que Franciæ Parem *facimus, & creamus*. Quod *si prædictus Filius noster, vel sua Posteritas, vt prædicitur procreanda decesserint, quod absit, absque Prole Masculc, ex proprio corpore succedente, in dictis Ducatu, & Comitatu præmissa vniuersa, & singula sic donata, pleno iure integraliter reuertentur ad Nos, & Successores nostros Reges qui pro tempore fuerint, nostræ Coronæ, & Domanio applicanda*. Datum *Nongenti supra Maternam Die Sextâ Septembris, Anno Domini Millesimo Trecentesimo Sexagesimo Tertio.*

Per Regem,

Two.

Sealed with Greene Waxe, on Strings of Silke.

A further ratification of the Kings grant.

The *Ratification* of King *Charles* the fift, whereby, ouer and beside what aboue is said, he gaue to the said *Phillip* Duke of *Bourgongne* his Brother; the auncient Seate of the Dukes of *Bourgongne*, it is of the yeare 1364. the Moneth of Iune. Besides many other, *it beareth these words. Domum Burgundiæ Sitam in monte Sancte Genouefe, quæ à longis temporibus citra Ducum Burgundiæ fuit, eidem Fratri nostro pro se, & hæredibus suis Masculis in lineâ directâ ex proprio corpore, ex legitimo matrimonia procreandis donauimus, perpetuoque donamus.* Datum *in Castro nostro Luparæ iuxta Parisius, Anno Domini Millesimo Tricentesimo Sexagesimo Quarto, Die secundâ Iunij.*

Sic signatum supra plicam.

Per Regem,

Two.

And Sealed with Greene Waxe, vpon Labels of Silke.

Of

Of the Marriage betweene the said *Phillip* first Duke of *Bourgongne*, and *Margaret* of *Flanders*, were borne three Sonnes and foure Daughters.

Mary of *Bourgongne*, wife to *Amadis*, Duke of *Sauoye*.

Katharine, Wife to *Leopolde* of *Austria*.

Margaret, Married foure times. And *Bonna*, dying young. The Sons were,

Iohn,

Anthony, Duke of *Brabant* and of *Lemburg*: And

Phillip Counte of *Neuers* and of *Reuell*.

The said *Monsieur Phillip* of *France*, died in the Moneth of *Aprill*, the yeare of Grace one thousand Foure hundred and Foure, he was founder of the Charterhouse at *Dijon*, and in the Quire thereof is to be seene, the goodly Sepulchre of the said *Phillip* the hardy, in blacke Marble. His Figure or effigie lyeth in white Marble, hauing on his head the Ducall bonnet of guilded Brasse, holding in his right hand a long Staffe, finishing in the forme of a Scepter, of guilded Brasse likewise, and the iust length of his Figure, which is there alone by it selfe. On the sides by his head, are two Angels of white Marble, bearing the armes of *Bourgongne*. About the Tombe is a mourning of white Marble, containing the Figures of diuers personages, the very best carued and shaped, of all the Tombes that euer I haue seene. The Duchesse his wife was enterred at the Isle in *Flanders*, in the Church of Saint *Peter*, neere to her Father; for she furnished her husband about the space of a yeare, and died in the Citty of *Arras*, the chiefest in the Counte of *Artois*, the Moneth of *March*, One thousand foure huundred and fiue, After his *Phillip* succeeded his Eldest Sonne.

2. *Iohn*, Second Duke of *Bourgongne*, surnamed the *Bad*. He had to wife *Margaret* of *Bauaria*, daughter to *Albert* of *Bauaria*, and Sister to *William* of *Bauaria*, Counte of *Henault*, and of *Holland*. And of this marriage issued one Sonne, and three Daughters, namely

Margaret of *Bourgongne*, Wife in first Nuptialles to *Monsieur Lewes* of *France*, Duke of *Guienne*, and afterward Daulphine, Second sonne to King *Charles* the sixt. Shee was remaried to the Counte of *Richmond*, *Arthur* of *Bretaigne*, Constable of *France*. The said *Margaret* was buried in the *Carmes* at *Paris*.

Katherine, Wife to *Phillip* of *Orleans*, Counte *de Vertus* in *Champaigne*; sonne to *Monsieur Lewes* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, whom this *Iohn* of *Bourgongne* caused to be murdred at *Paris*, at the Porte *Barbette*, as we haue already related.

Mary, Wife to *Adolphe*, Duke of *Cleues*.

Isabell, Wife to the Counte of *Ponthieure*. They of this house, *Portent de Bretaigne Escarlela d'Azur a trois Gerbes de Bled liees* D'Or.

Anne, Wife to the Duke of *Bedford*, of whom the Tombe is to bee seene in the *Celestines* at *Paris*, neere to the Chappell of *Orleans*: And

Agnes of *Bourgongne*, wife to *Charles* Duke of *Bourbon*.

And like as this *Iohn* of *Bourgongne*, had caused by the blowes of Axes, the Duke of *Orleans* his Cousine, to be mercilesly massacred, and his braines dispersed on the ground: his owne were dealte withall in the same manner, and his body cut with Axes, on the Bridge of *Montereau*, or *Fourche yonne*, on Sunday the tenth of *September*, 1419. at fiue of the clocke in the euening. Long while after, his body was caried to the Charterhouse neere *Dijon*, and laid in a vaulte before his Father; where yet is the Skelleton and head of this Duke to be seene, with the markes and cutts of the Axes. Aboue this vaulte is a Tombe of blacke Marble, like vnto that of his Fathers, on the Table whereof in white Alablaster, lieth the figures of the said *Iohn* of *Bourgongne*, and *Margaret* of *Bauaria* his wife. At the head of her portraiture, is (answerable to that of her husband) an Angell, bearing an Escutcheon of Armes, parted with *Bourgongne* on the right side, and *Bauaria* on the other. Which is *Lozange d'Argent et d'Azur en Bandes, Escartele de Haynau, qui est d'*Or *au Lyon de Sable, contrescartele d'*Or *au Lyon de Gueules*. Their only Sonne, sole Authour of these rich Tombes, was

Bloud reuenged with blood in one and the same manner.

3. *Phillip*, Second of the name, Third Duke of *Bourgongne*, surnamed the good by his owne people (for hee was the scourge, and the most cruell enemy of *France*; leauing as heire of his goods, and malicious rancour, *Charles*, called the Warriour, last Duke of *Bourgongne*, capitall enemy thereto.)

The good Duke of *Bourgongne Phillip* so called by his owne people.

This

This *Phillip* had three wiues. The first whereof was Madam *Michaele* of *France* Daughter to King *Charles* the Sixt.

The second was *Bonna* of *Artois*, widdow to *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, Counte of *Neuers* and *Retheil*: But by these two Princesses he had no children.

Dom Pedro the vsurper of *Portugall.*

And therefore in his third Marriage, he espoused Madam *Isabell* of *Portugall* Daughter to the King of *Portugall Dom Iohn*, first of the Name, Bastard of *Dom Pedro* King of *Portugall*, and of Madame *Thereza Gallega*. This is the same *Dom Pedro*, who vsurped the kingdome of *Portugall*, against the King of *Castille Dom Iohn*, first of the name, and Madam *Beatrix* of *Portugall* his wife, and lawfull heire to *Dom Ferdinand*, King of *Portugall*, Legitimate sonne to *Dom Pedro*, first of the name.

The Lady *Phillip* of *Lancaster.*

This *Dom Iohn* of *Portugall*, tooke to wife an English Princesse, named *Phillip* of *Lancaster*, by whom he had a plenteous issue, and among other, *Dom Pedro* Duke of *Coimbre*, who had to wife Madam *Isabell* of *Aragon*, of whom he begate sixe Children: the second whereof was *Dom Iohn* of *Portugall*, who espoused the last legitimate Queene of *Cyprus*, according as we haue said elsewhere. This *Iohn* stiled himselfe Prince of *Antioche*, in the Table of the Knights of *Bourgongne.*

Isabell of Portugall, Third wife to *Phillip* Second Duke of *Bourgongne*, was brought in to *Flanders* by her Brother *Dom Henry* of *Portugall*, Duke of *Viseo*. At her receiuing into the City of *Bruges*, there was a famous sound of Trumpets, being an hundred, sixty and foure seuerall Trumpets: a number very difficultly seene, at one time together, in the Courte of any other Prince. The Nuptialles were celebrated with all Magnificence in the said Citty of *Bruges*, the ninth day of *Ianuary*, one Thousand foure hundred twentie nine.

A famous sound of Trumpets the like seldome seene.

Phillip of *Bourgongne* so dearely affected this third wife, as he made a vow, neuer to haue any other: howbeit, hee was greatly subiect to short stockings (which we vse in our common language, to tearme fittes of Amourous nature) and vsually to couet after change; which caused this Dutchesse to bee very suspitious of keeping his oathe. Yee neuertheless, in fauour of her, he tooke for his deuise these few words; *I will haue none other so long as I liue.* A deuice which hee caused to bee carued and painted on all his Buildings, Glasse windowes, Tapistries, and moueables of houshold whatsoeuer. For yet is to be seene on the cupborde in the great hatule at Dijon (wholly worme-eaten) the very same deuise; which is more amply to be obserued in many other places, hauing these words expressed at large: *I will haue none other all my life time but Dame Isabell.* Which is also to bee seene on the Coapes and vestiments of his order, in the Holy chappell, and in the Charter house at *Dijon*.

Of this last marriage issued three Sonnes, as namely,

Anthony, borne at *Bruxelles*, the last day of *September*, one thousand foure hundred and thirty.

Iosses, borne in the City of *Gaunte*, the fourteenth day of *Aprill*, one thousand foure hundred thirty two. And these two children died in their young yeares.

Charles, borne at *Dijon*, on the morrow after S. *Martines* day in winter, one thousand foure hundred thirty three. And at his Baptizing was stiled Counte of *Charalois*.

The said *Phillip* the second died in the City of *Bruges*, the sixt day of *Iuly*, in the yeare of grace, one thousand foure hundred sixty seauen, And his body was carried to the Charter-house at *Dijon*, where he lieth with his three wiues, in a great Sepulchree of blacke Marble, without any figures thereon, or mourning about, it not being finished. So that on sollemne Feast dayes, the Monkes couer the said tombe with a great hearse-cloth of gold, frindged round about; with the armes of the said Duke. After whom succeeded

4. *Charles* the fourth and last Duke of *Bourgongne*, sirnamed the Warriour, who had three wiues. The first whereof was Madam *Katherine* of *France*, daughter to King *Charles* the seauenth, called the victorious; whom hee espoused, being (as yet) but ten yeares olde, in the Towne of Saint *Omer*, in the yeare one thousand foure hundred thirty nine, And died at *Bruxelles* (where she was buried) Anno. one thousand foure hundred fourty sixe, without any issue.

The second was *Isabell* of *Bourbon*, daughter to *Charles* (first of the name) Duke

of *Bourbon*, and of *Agnes* of *Bourgongne*. This marriage was sollemnized at the Isle in *Flanders*, on All-Saints day in the yeare of Grace 1454. And of this marriage was borne their onely Daughter

Mary of *Bourgongne*, wife to *Maximillian* of *Austria*, King of the Romans.

The third wife (and by whom he had no issue) was Madam *Margaret* of *England*, Sister to the King of England, *Edward*, fourth of the name.

Madam *Margaret* of England.

The said *Charles*, last Duke of *Bourgongne*, was slaine at the siedge of *Nancy* in *Lorraine*, on Sunday, being the Euen to the Feast of the Kings 1466. Hee was enterred in the Church of S. *George* at *Nancy*; but afterward, at the request of *Charles* the fift, Emperour; deliuered by the Duke of *Lorraine*, and transported into the great Church of *Luxembourg*.

Foure Dukes of the last branch of *Bourgongne.*

In this manner, this last branch of *Bourgongne*, had but foure Dukes; *Phillip*, *Iohn*, *Phillip* the second, and *Charles*, whose portraicts (after the life) are to be seene in many places of this Realme, and namely in the great Glasse-Window of S. *Iohn* at *Dijon*, and in the great Haule of the *Cisteaux* Abbey, where the Dukes are garmented and attired, according to the manner of the Presidents, with their Bonnets in the Parlements of France, which they tearme *Cotanes*, with great Hoods and Cloakes of Scarlet, furred with Ermines. Each of these Dukes had his perticuler Motto or Deuise written by him: *Phillip* the Hardy, *Moult me tarde*: *Iohn* the Bad, *Ie le tiens*: *Phillip* the Good, *L'ay Empris*: and *Charles* the Warriour, *Ainsi ie frappe.*

The manner of the auncient Worthies beards.

The body of *Charles*, being knowne after the day of fight, was carried to the Church, where the Duke of *Lorraine Rener*, hauing a Beard of Gold, according to the manner of the Auncient Worthies; caused Holy Water to be sprinkled on him: To very good purpose, thus speaketh *Paradine* in his History.

Longest expectations conuerted to vexations.

It is a very remarkeable meditation, concerning the death of this great Prince, and the Order of the *Golden-Fleece*, instituted in this House of *Bourgongne*, how (ordenarily) it commeth to passe: that such things as we couet with most feruour; yea, seeke and pursue with our greatest dilligence; in the conclusion, the enioying of them, and the pleasure we take in them, bringeth vs much more damage and losse, then all the contentment we conceiued in them. This famous House of *Bourgongne*, that might haue walked equall with the very greatest Princes of Christendome: fell in an instant, hauing continued no longer then an hundred and seauen yeares in all. *Phillip* the second was the richest Prince of Christendome; by his inheritable portion, Duke of *Bourgongne*, by succession, Count of *Flanders*, *Artois* and *Charolois*; Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Luxembourg*, by acquisition, Count of *Namures*; and by treatie with *Iacquetta* of *Bauaria*, his Neece, Count of *Haynau*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, Lord of *Frizeland*, and of other great Lands, from whence he deriued yearely vnspeakeable summes of money, ensuing by the trafficke and vent of Wools and Fleeces, which were fatall to this House of *Bourgongne*, in the person of *Charles* the Warriour; who being ouerlightly wedded to the quarrell of the Count of *Romont*, warred on by the *Swizzers*, from whom he had taken some Waggons, laden with Sheepes-skinnes; to little or no purpose, he iniuried that Nation, being then obscure, and without any renowne, and from whom he could winne but their extreame pouertie. Yet *Charles* fighting against them; lost his Riches at *Granſſon*; his men at *Morath*; and his life at *Nancy*, according to this Disticke, made after the *Germaine* manner.

Wools & Fleeces fatall to the house of *Bourgongne.*

In rebus Granſſen, grege Murthen, corpore Nanſſen.

The Duchie of *Bourgongne* returning to the Crowne of France.

So the Duchie of *Bourgongne* returned to the Crowne of France, by the death of this *Charles* the last Duke, deceasing without any Heire Masle; conforme to the words, expresly set downe in the Donation and Inuestiture of him. And this was the reason, why King *Lewes* the eleauenth, for the ease of his Subiects of *Bourgongne*, who (in cases Royall) came to pleade in the Parlement of *Paris*: established in *Bourgongne* a Soueraigne Parlement at *Dijon*, by his Letters Patents, whereof here followeth the tenour.

A Copie of the Kings Letters Patents, for holding a Soueraigne Court of Parlement, at *Dijon* in *Bourgongne*.

LEwes, by the Grace of God King of France. *To all them to whom these pre-sent Letters shall come: Greeting. So soone, after the decease of our late Cou-sine* Charles *(in his life time, and not long since Duke of* Bourgongne*) our dearest and well affected Subiects, men of the Church, Nobles, and those of the Common estate in our Countrey and Duchie of* Bourgongne*, Countie of* Charolois*, Lands de* Noyers*, and other included in them, comming to vs, as being our owne by the said decease, desiring to remaine, and liue and dye vnder, and in our obedience; haue thereby most liberally, & with extraordinarie good will, rendered and deliuered vp into our hands and obeysance, themselues freely, by acknowledging vs to be their Naturall and Soueraigne Lord; for which cause, we (as in such cases customarily is required) haue deliuered our Oath, to some of our Officers, and especiall Seruants, by vs deputed and sent into those Countries.*

Since when, the three Estates, or Principall persons among them, in good and sufficient number, haue come to vs, most humbly entreating vs, that it might stand with our pleasure (for the good, securitie, safe conduct and maintenance of Iustice, by our authoritie and right in the Countrey, Duchie and Countie, and for the support and ease of our Subiects and dwellers in them:) To ordaine and establish in our said Duchie of Bourgongne*, Countie of* Charolois*, Baronnie of Noyers, and* Lands included within the said Duchie*, A Soueraigne Court, that may be tearmed and stiled, A Court of Parlement, Founded and furnished with Presidents, twelue Councellers, and other Officers, notable persons, conuenient and necessary for the exercise and maintenance of the said Soueraigne Court, and in such number of Councellers, as hath bin at the Parlement of* Beaune*, and that they may name to them* The Great Dayes of the Duchie of Bourgongne. *Also, that it may be of such preheminence and authoritie, touching the power of Iudgement and Soueraigne Iurisdiction; as our Court of Parlement sitting at Paris,* Wherein the said Great Dayes haue their due course. *Moreouer, we are further entreated, that we would maintain the Parlement of* Dole*, and of Saint* Laurence*, for the Counties of* Bourgongne*, Auxonne, and other Lands beyond* Saone*, where (from all Antiquitie) they haue euer had a Soueraigne Court, to exercise therein the same forme and manner, as hath bin accustomed in times past.*

We make knowne, *that we haue hereon considered, especially, the great affection and desire, which the said three Estates haue shewne by effect, to liue and continue alwayes vnder vs, and in our power and seruice, obedient in all things, as good, true and loyall Subiects. Considering also, that the said Duchie and forenamed Lands, are of great extendure and farre off from our good Citie of Paris, whereto they haue (from all Antiquitie) resorted, for all right of Soueraigntie. Whereby, our Subiects, dwelling in the said Duchie and adiacent Countries, shall be ouer-much trauailed and hindered, by repairing hither, there to seeke for purchase, send for, and procure the prouisions and remedies in this last helpe and power of Soueraigntie.*

For these Causes, *and other serious considerations vs mouing thereunto: wee haue of our especiall grace, full power and royall authoritie, by these presents created, instituted, ordained and established in the said Duchie and forenamed adiacent Countries,* A Court and Iurisdiction Soueraigne, *to be there hence-forward held, and alwayes called, named or stiled,* A Parlement and Soueraigne Court, *hauing all right of Power and Soueraigntie in the said place for the said Great dayes. And herewith we haue ordained, that the said Parlements of* Dole*, and of Saint* Laurence*, shall henceforth be maintained as Soueraigne, according as heretofore they haue bin from all antiquitie, and the said Parlements are to be held, according to the manner declared in our other Letters Patents, formerly granted to the said Estates. And our will is, that all causes of Appeales, and whereof the Court and Soueraigne Iurisdiction may and ought to take knowledge in the last Resort, and otherwise, which haue bin moued and suscitated, betweene our Subiects and habitants in the said Countrey, Duchie, Countie and Lands adiacent: shall be there ded-*

led, determined and brought to due end, according as in other Soueraigne Courts of our Kingdome: without admitting the Sentences, definitiue decrees, and prolongings, which there shall be giuen and pronounced, to be prouoked, appealled and reclaimed into any other Soueraigne Courte of our Kingdome, for any causes whatsoeuer.

To exhibite the action of the said Iustice and Soueraigne Iurisdiction, and for maintaying and supporting the Preheminences, Prerogatiues, Authority and Right Royall of Vs and the said Court: Wee haue Ordained, and doe Ordaine, *by these presents, that henceforward there shall bee in the said Court with our President, two Knights, twelue Councellours in Our accustomed manner, two Aduocates, and one Proctour or Atturney to the high Iusticer, and one Pregnotarie or chiefe Register in eche of the said Parlements, and fiue Ordenarie Vshers, appointed in chiefe Office, who shall make vp the body as well in especiall, as being members of the said Soueraigne Courte, and such & such stipends, as by our other Letters Patents for them are taxed and ordained. To whom also we haue giuen, and hereby giue power to exercise in the same Courte, and elsewhere throughout the limits of the said Countrey, Duchie and County, all actions, executions and exploites of Soueraigne Iurisdiction.*

And becaus defect of cleare expression, and ample declaration to the Countrey and limits, (not vnderstanding their reporte to the said Parlement) may mooue an occasion hereafter day by day, of many losses, debates and controuersies among our Subiects, as well of our said Duchie and County, as other Countreyes of our Kingdome, neighbouring and bordering on the said Duchie of Bourgongne: Wee haue willed and Ordained, Doe will and Ordaine, *as already is declared, that all our said Countreyes, Duchie and Countie of Bourgongne, Countie of Charolois, Lands of Noyers, and other Countries and Territories, which at the death of our late Cousine* Charles *of Bourgongne, resorted to the Great Dayes of Beaune and Saint Laurence, and all our other Subiects and Inhabitants in them, shall appeare directly by Appeale (or otherwise) in our said Court of Parlement, for Bourgongne, and not elsewhere.*

We also will and Commaund *by these presents, our Louing and faithfull Councellours, such as are of our Courte of Parliament at Paris, the Gouernours of our said Countries and Duchie, and all other our Iustices and Officers, or their Lieutenants present or to come, and euery one of them: that our instant Creation, Institution and Establishment, with all contained in these present Letters, be entertained and kept, cause to be maintained and kept from point to point, according to their forme and tenure. Causing also these presents to be published, entertained and Registred in our Courts of Audience and other Iurisdictions (if need be) to the end, that no excuse or ignorance may be pretended, for such is our especiall will and pleasure.*

In witnesse whereof, we haue affixed our Seale to these presents. Giuen in our Citty of Arras, the Eighteenth day of March, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand Foure hund sixty fiue, And of Our Reigne the Sixteenth. So signed by the King; Monsieur the Cardinall of Bourbon; the Counte of Beauieu; the Counte of Marle, Marshall of Bourgongne, and others present.

L. Tendo.

The Institution of the Order of the Golden-Fleece: The number of the Chapters, and Knights thereof.

CHAP. V.

POets haue feigned, that *Phrixus* and *Helle*, the Sonne and Daughter to *Athamas*, King of *Thebes*, to auoid the daunger of death; exposed themselues to passe the Sea of *Pontus*, being mounted on a Ramme. They say also, that the maid *Helle*, Sister to *Phrixus*, being fearefull; fell into the waues, and that (of her) the Sea was named the *Helle-spont*, now the Straite of *Galipolis*, or Saint *Georges* Arme, on the Shoares whereof, are the two Castelles

He was Son to *Eolus*, and maried *Nephrles. &c.*

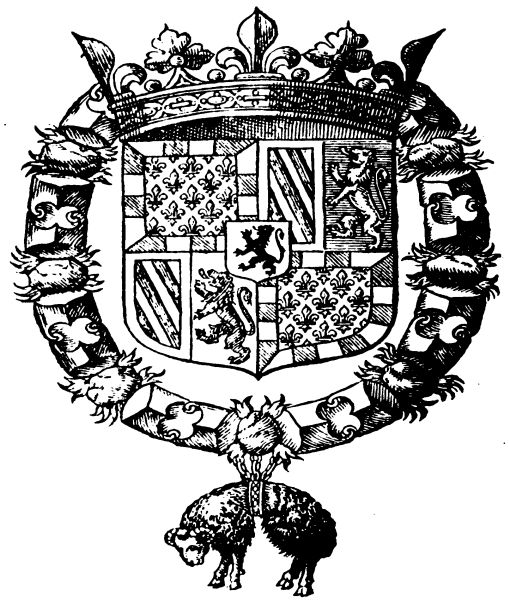
How the *Hellespont* came to be so named.

A famous Poet in the time of *Orpheus*.

ſtles of *Seſtos* and *Abydos*, renowmed in their Poeticall fictions, by reaſon of the clandeſtine loue of *Hero* and *Leander*, whom the Poet *Muſeus* hath named The *bright ſhining Starres of theſe two auncient Townes* (which make the Separation of *Europe* and *Aſia*) and are at this day, two Bulwarkes of the Turkiſh Empire, and of *Conſtantinople*. Moreouer, *Phrixus* being preſerued from death in this dangerous paſſage, the Ramme (for his good ſeruice) was enriched with a Golden Fleece, and

Sonne to *Aeſon* by *Polymela*.

tranſported into the Prouince of *Cholcos*, where it was carefully kept, vntill the Voyage of the *Argonautes Paladines*, conducted thither by their worthy Captaine *Iaſon*.



The reaſon of chuſing the Fleece for the Order.

This Fable ſerued as a Subiect (ſo ſay diuers Hiſtorians) to Duke *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, to Inſtitute the Order of the Golden Fleece, in memorie of the great reuenues which hee raiſed by trafficque and merchandiſing of Woolles with the Low-Countries, full of excellent paſtures, for the breede and nouriſhing of Beaſts bearing Woll.

A Couch, ſuch as Ladies lye on.

Others ſay, that the ſaid Duke *Phillip*, keeping (very priuately) a Lady of *Bruges*, endued with beauty beyond all compare, entering one Morning into her Chamber: hee founde vpon her Toilet, a Fleece of the Low-Countries, whereby this vnadviſed Lady, gaue occaſion of laughter, to diuers Gentlemen attending on the ſaid Duke. He, to cloude and couer the miſtery, ſollemnly vowed: that ſuch as made a mockery of the Wolly Fleece, ſhould neuer haue the Honour, to weare a Collar of an Order of the Fleece, which hee intended to eſtabliſh, for the loue of that Lady.

A Third and the likeliest reation.

Yet there is an other oppinion (of more apparance then both the reſt) that this Duke, altogether couetous and deſirous of honour: inſtituted this Order, in memory of valiant *Gedeon*, who with three hundred men, fought againſt an infinite Army of the *Madianites*, and deliuered the people of *Iſrael*. Heere you may read the Letters Patents of this inſtitution.

Phillip, by the Grace of God, Duke of Bourgongne, *Lothreic, Brabant and Lemborg, Count of Artois, Palatine of Bourgongne and of Namure, Marqueſſe of the Holy Empire, And Lord of Salines and Malines, maketh knowne to all preſent and to come.* That for the Great *and perfect loue, which we beare to the Noble Eſtate of Knighthood, the honour whereof we intend to aduance and encreaſe: in regard, that by the order of Knighthood, the true Catholique Faith, the eſtate of our Mother the Holy Church, the eaſe and tranquility of the publique good, may be defended and maintained: To the praiſe of our Lord, and in Honour of our Lord Saint Andrew our Patrone, Apoſtle and Martyr of Ieſus Chriſt our Sauiour, for promoting the Holy Faith, ſeruice of the Catholique Church, and exhorting all men to liue well and Vertuouſly.* The tenth day of the moneth of *Ianuary*, And in the yeare of Grace, or of our Lord, One thouſand foure hundred twenty nine, *Which was the day of ſollemne Mariage, betweene vs and our moſt deare Spouſe, Iſabell of Portugall, in our City of Bruges; where we haue ordained, receiued, created; we ordaine, receiue and create, the Order and Brotherhood of Knights in a certaine number, whom we will*

haue to be called and named Of the Golden Fleece, *vnder ſuch forme, condition, Statutes and manner as heere followeth.*

The Statutes and Charters of the Order.

IN the firſt place, we will that there ſhall be Thirty Knights, all Gentlemen of name and Armes, without any touch or reprehenſion: of which number our ſelfe will bee the Chiefe, during our life, and our Succeſſors after vs.

The Articles of this Ordenaunce, doe amount to Foureſcore and fourteene: which we paſſe ouer in ſilence, to bee imprinted and further knowne.

He created foure Officers of the Order, namely the Chauncellor, Treaſorer, Atturney, and King of Armes, tearmed and named *Golden Fleece*.

The Great Coller of the ſaid Order, is compoſed of double Fuſilles, enterwouen with Stones and Flints, ſparckling flames of fire; at the end whereof hangeth (on the breſt) a Fleece, wholly of Gold, enammelled according to Arte. Theſe Fuſilles are ioyned two and two together, repreſenting, as if they were double Letters of B. which ſignifieth *Bourgongne*, intermingled with Flint ſtones, to noate the Armes of the Auncient Kings of *Bourgongne*, of the Noble blood of *France*. The ſe Flints are engirt with ſparkes and flames of fire, which is the deuice of the ſaid Duke of *Bourgongne*: and the ſoule or ſpeaker for all, *Ante Ferit, Quam Flamma Micet*, ſo with *Paradine* in his Heroicall deuiſes. The great Cloakes or Mantles, had the hoodes of the ſame embrodery of Gould. In the Church of *Paris* on the day of All Saints, are to be ſeene the Ornaments on the High Altar, as alſo the Coapes and veſtiments, giuen by the worthy Cardinall of *Gondy* deceaſſed.

The firſt Chapter of the ſaid Order, was held at the Iſle in *Flanders*, in the yeare, One thouſand foure hundred and thirty, where were made Knights theſe following.

1. *Guillaume de Vienna*, *Sieur de S. George.*
2. *Rene Pot*, Lord *de le Roche.*
3. *John*, Lord of *Romboiz.*
4. *Rowland* of *Vtreich*, Lord of *Enode.*
5. *Anthony de Vergy*, Lord of *Champlite.*
6. *Dauid de Brimeu*, Lord of *Ligny.*
7. *Hugh de Launoy*, Lord of *Santes.*
8. *John*, Lord of *Comines.*
9. *Anthony de Tolongeon*, Lord of *Tranes.*
10. *Peter* of *Luxembourg*, Count of S. *Paule.*
11. *John de la Trimouille*, Lord of *Iouuille.*
12. *Gilbert de Launoy*, Lord of *Willeruall.*
13. *Iohn* of *Luxembourg*, Lord of the *Iſle-Adam.*
14. *Iohn de Villiers*, Count of *Ligny.*
15. *Anthony*, Lord of *Croy* and *Renty.*
16. *Florimond de Brimeu*, Lord of *Mazincourt.*
17. *Robert*, Lord of *Malines.*
18. *Iames de Brimeu*, Lord of *Grigni.*
19. *Baldwine de Launoy*, called the Stammerer, Lord of *Molembais.*
20. *Peter de Baufremont*, Lord of *Charny.*
21. *Phillip*, Lord of *Ternant*, and *de la Mothe.*
22. *John de Croy*, Lord of the Tower on *Marne.*
23. *John*, Lord of *Crequy.* And
24. *John* of *New-Caſtell* Lord of *Montagut.*

The yeare One Thouſand foure Hundred thirty one, Was held the ſecond Chapter at the Iſle, where were made Knights.

1. *Andrewe de Tolongeau*, And
2. *John de Melun*, Lord of *Antoing.*

The yeare, One thouſand foure hundred thirty two, the Chapter of the Order was held at *Bruges*, where were made Knights.

1. *Frederick* Count of *Moers*, And
2. *Simon d'Ailaine*, Lord of *Haures.*

The yeare, One thouſand foure hundred and thirty three, the Chapter of the Order was held at *Bruges*, where were made Knights.

1. *Iames*, Lord of *Creue-coeur.*
2. *John de Vergy.*
3. *Guy de Pontalier*, Lord of *Talmer.*
4. *Baldwine de Noyelle*, Lord of *Chaſterelle.*
5. *John Baſtard* of *Luxembourg*, Lord of *Haubourdin.*
6. *Charles* of *Bourgongne*, Counte *de Charolois.* And

7. *Robert*, Count of *Vernebourg*. And
8. *Thibault*, Lord of *Newe-Caſtle*.

The yeare, One thouſand foure hundred thirty fiue, was held at *Bruxelles* the Chapter of the Order: wherat there was not any perſon elected, becauſe there was not any one of the company deceaſſed.

The yeare, One thouſand foure hundred and fourty, was held the Chapter at Saint *Omer*, where were elected Knights theſe Princes.

1. *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans* and of *Millaine*.
2. *John*, Duke of *Bretaigne*.
3. *John*, Duke of *Alanzon*, And
4. *Mathew de Foix*, Counte of *Comenges*.

The yeare, One Thouſand Foure hundred fourty fiue, the Order was held at *Gaunte*, and then were made Knights.

1. *Alphonſus*, King of *Arragon*.
2. *Francion de Borſelle*, Count of *Oſternant*.
3. *Reignold*, Lord of *Brederode*.
4. *Rubborſle*, Lord *de la Vere*.
5. *John*, Lord *d' Auchy*, And
6. *Adrian*, Lord *de Humieres*.

The yeare, One Thouſand foure hundred fifty one, the Chapter of the Order was held at *Monts* in *Henault*, and then were made Knights.

1. *John*, Duke of *Cleues*, And the Lords
2. *John de Gueuara*, Count of *Arienne*.
3. *Peter de Cardonna*, Count of *Goliſonne*.
4. *John*, Lord of *Launoy*.
5. *Iames de Lallaine*, Lord of *Montigny*, And
6. *John* of *New-Caſtell*, Lord of *Montagut*.

The yeare, One Thouſand foure hundred fifty ſixe, the Chapter of the Order was held at the *Hage* in *Holland*, where were made Knights theſe Princes.

1. *John* of *Bourgongne*, Count of *Neuers*.
2. *Anthony*, Baſtard of *Bourgongne*.
3. *Adolphe* of *Cleues*, Lord of *Rauaſtein*, And
4. *John Lyonnell* of *Luxembourg*, Regent of the Kingdome of *Cypres*.

The yeare, One Thouſand foure Hundred ſixtie and one, the Chapter was celebrated at Saint *Omer*, where were made Knights.

1. *John*, King of *Arragon*...
2. *Adolph*, Duke of *Gueldres*, And Lords.
3. *Thibault*, Lord of *New Caſtell*.
4. *Phillip Pott*, Lord *de la Rochepot*, And
5. *Guye*, Lord of *Reye*.

The yeare, One Thouſand foure hundred ſixty ſeauen, *Phillip* the good Duke being deceaſſed, *Charles* Duke of *Bourgongne* his Sonne, Chiefe of the Order, held his firſt Chapter at *Bruges*, where were elected Knights,

1. *Edward*, King of *England*, And Lords
2. *Lewes de Chaalon*, Lord of the Caſtell
3. *John de Damas*, Lord of *Cleſſy*.
4. *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la Marche*
5. *Iames* of *Luxembourg*, Lord of *Fienbourg*.
6. *Phillip de Sauoye*, Count of *Blanc*.
7. *Phillip de Creue-coeur*, Lord *Dyſquerdes*: And
8. *Claudius de Montagut*, Lord of *Couches*.

The yeare, One thouſand foure hundred ſeauenty and three, was renewed the ſecond Chapter at *Valenciennes*, where were Elected Knights

1. *Ferdinand*, K. of *Arragon* and *Caſtile*
2. *Ferdinand*, King of *Naples* and *Sicilie*. And Lords,
3. *John*, Lord of *Bieure*.
4. *Phillip de Croy*, Count of *Chimay*.
5. *John* of *Luxembourg*, Count *de Marle*
6. *Guy de Brimeu*, Count of *Megle*: And
7. *Engilbert*, Count of *Naſſau*.

Maximilian, elect King of the Romans of the houſe of *Auſtria*, after the death of *Charles* the laſt Duke of *Bourgongne*, espouſed his onely Daughter, Madame *Mary* of *Bourgongne*, whereby hee was Count of *Flanders*, and Lord of the Low-Countries, vnder homage and Authority of the Crowne of *France*. In the right of his Wife, hee held the chief Soueraignty of the *Order of the Golden Fleece*. And the yeare, 1478. hee celebrated his firſt Chapter in the City of *Bruges*; where were Elected Knights.

1. *William*, Lord of *Egmont*.
2. *Vlfard*, Lord of *Borſelle*, Counte of *Grand pre*.
3. *Ioſſe de Lallaine*, Lord of *Montigny*.
4. *Peter* of *Luxembourg*, Count of *Saint Paule*.
5. *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, Count of *Buren*.
6. *Iames* of *Luxembourg*, L. *de Fiennes*
7. *Iames de Sauoye*, Count of *Romont*
8. *Bartholmew*, Lord of *Lithestaine*.
9. *John*, Baron of *Ligne*.
10. *Claudius*, Lord of *Tolongeon*.
11. *Peter*, Lord of *Boſſu*, And
12. *Baldwine*, Lord of *Molembais*.

The yeare One Thouſand foure hundred eighty and one, the ſecond Chapter was held by the ſaid Elect *Maximillian*, in the Towne of *Boſle* Duke, where were made Knights.

1. *William de la Baume*, Lord of *Arlant*.
2. *John de Berge*, Lord of *Walacux*.
3. *Martin*, Lord of *Polhaime*: And
4. *Phillip* of *Auſtria*, Counte *de Charolois*. Prince.

Maximillian of *Auſtria* being dead, *Phillip* of *Auſtria* his ſonne, husband to *Joane*, heire of *Leon*, *Arragon* and *Caſtille*, held the firſt Chapter of his Order in the Towne of *Malines*, *Anno*, One thouſand foure hundred ninety and one, And there were elected Knights.

1. *Frederick* of *Auſtria*, Emperour.
2. *Henry* of *England*.
3. *Albert*, Duke of *Saxonie*.

And others, to the number of foureteene, whoſe names wee doe omit; for being the moſt part of them *Germaines* or *Flemings*, and fewe or none of the *Frenche*.

The Second Chapter of the ſaid Order, was holde by the ſame *Phillip* of *Auſtria*, and celebrated at *Bruxelles*, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and one, whereat ſeauen Knights were made, the laſt whereof was

Charles of *Auſtria*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, Eldeſt Sonne to the ſaid Archduke *Phillip*.

The yeare One Thouſand fiue Hundred and fiue, was celebrated the ſaid Order in the Towne of *Middleborough* in *Zeland*, and giuen to ten Knights, the firſt whereof was.

Henry, King of *England*.

After the death of *Phillip* Archduke of *Auſtria*, his ſonne *Charles* held his firſt Chapter in the Citty of *Bruxelles*, *Anno*, One Thouſand fiue Hundred and ſixteene, Hee encreaſed the number of Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, vp to fifty, with charge and condition, that whatſoeuer places of precedencie ſhould remaine voide, to fill them vp with names and Armes of Soueraigne Princes of his Alliance and kinred, according as occurrences happened. The Knights elected in the firſt Chapter, were fiue and twenty in number, and the chiefeſt of them, were

1. The moſt Chriſtian King of *France*, *Frances*, Firſt of the name, followed by
2. *Lewes*, King of *Hungaria*.
3. *Emmanuell*, King of *Portugall*. Princes.
4. *Ferdinand*, Infant of *Spayne*, Brother to *Charles*.
5. *Frederick*, Count *Palatine* of *Rheine*, And
6. *John*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*.

The yeare, One Thouſand Fiue hundred and nineteene, the Chapter was held in the Citty of *Barcelonna* in *Arragon*; where were elected Fifteene Knights, the chiefeſt for honor, were

1. *Chriſtierne*, King of *Denmarke* and *Sweden*.
2. *Sigiſmond*, King of *Poland*, and Great Duke of *Lituania*.

The yeare, One Thouſand fiue hundred thirty and one, was held an other Chapter at *Tourney*, whereat were elected Foure and twentie Knights: among whom were many Soueraigne Princes, as namely

1. *John*, King of *Portugall*.
2. *Iames*, King of *Scotland*.
3. *Phillip*, Duke of *Bauaria*, Electour.
4. *George*, Duke of *Saxonie*, Electour.
5. *Anarewe Doria*, Prince of *Melphe*.
6. *Phillip* Infant of *Spayne*, Sonne to *Charles* the Emperour, King of *Spayne*.
7. *Ferdinando de Gonzaga*: And
8. *Nicholas*, Marqueſle of *Saluces*.

The yeare, One thouſand fiue hundred fourty ſixe, the Chapter was held in the Towne of *Vltrect*, where were elected two and twenty Knights, the principall of them being

1. *Maximillian*, King of *Bohemia*.
2. *Coſimo de Madicis*, Duke of *Florence*.
3. *Albert*, Duke of *Bauaria*. And
4. *Emmanuell Philebert*, Duke of *Sauoye*.

Phillip, Second of the name, King of *Spayne*, after that *Charles* the Fifte his Father, had giuen ouer his Eſtates and Seigneuries to him, that hee might retreate himſelfe to liue at reſt in *Spayne*: Hee helde the Firſt Chapter of his Order in the Citty of *Antwerpe*, *Anno*.

Anno One thousand fiue hundred fiftie foure, where were choſen nineteene Knights, the moſt apparant of them being theſe Princes:

1. *Henry*, Duke of *Brunzwicke*.
2. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*.
3. *Charles*, Infant of Spaine, Sonne to the ſaid King *Phillip* the ſecond, who held his ſecond Chapter in the Citie of *Gaunt*, Anno One thouſand fiue hundred fiftie nine, where were made many Knights, the principall being theſe.

1. The moſt Chriſtian King of France, *Frances*, ſecond of the name: And
2. *Guibard de Medicis*, Duke of *Florence*.

After the death of the Emperour *Charles* the fift his Father, happening in Spaine, at the Monaſtery of the *Hieronymites* of *S. Iuſtus de la Vera de Placentia*, in the moneth of September, One thouſand fiue hundred fiftie eight, the ſaid *Phillip* of Spaine returned out of *Flanders* to *Caſtille*, where he remained all his life time in peace and quietneſſe, euen till his deceaſe, happening in the moneth of September, One thouſand fiue hundred ninetie eight. We will let paſſe vnder ſilence, the other Chapters of the ſaid Order, and the names and qualities of ſuch as were honored therewith, by the ſaid King *Phillip* the ſecond, and his onely Sonne *Phillip* the third, now reigning, Chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maiſter thereof, to whom appertaineth onely the giuing of the ſaid Order. Whereof hath amply written, *Iames Meiera Elemmingus*, *Paradine* in his Hiſtory of *Bourgongne*. *S. Iulian*, on the ſame Hiſtorie; the *Sequanois* Memories of *Meſſire Iohn Golut*, imprinted at *Bezanſon*; the old Romant of the *Golden Fleece*, imprinted in two Volumes, of the old impreſſion, and *Meſſire Oliuer de la Marche*, in his Hiſtory of *Flanders*.

The returne of *Phillip* of Spaine out of *Flanders* to *Caſtille*.

Phillip, the Inſtitutour of this Order, appointed, that the Knights thereof, at three dayes of the ſollemnitie (*S. Andrew* being Patron thereof) ſhould weare three different habites. The firſt day Scarlet, to let them thereby vnderſtand, that heauen cannot be obtained, but by effuſion of Blood and Martyrdome. The ſecond day Black, repreſenting griefe and mourning for the dead. The third and laſt habite was of white Damaske, in ſigne of the Soules puritie, as euery Knight ought to be carefull of, in all the actions of his life and behauiour. The Emperour *Charles* the fift, willed and ordained, that the Knights of the ſaid Order, at ſolemne Feaſts, and when the Chapters were held, ſhould weare their long Caſſockes of Cloath of Siluer, vnder the Cloake of Crimoſine Veluet, and the Mantellet or Chapperon of Violet Veluet, and ouer them the Great Coller of Gold: For on other dayes, they vſed to weare but a Ribband, and light Crimoſine Taffataes, with the honor of the *Golden Fleece*.

The three Habits worne by the Knights, & their ſignification.

The Knights, at receiuing the ſaid Order, make Oath & ſolemne promiſe, before the ſoueraigne Head and great Maiſter thereof; to be faithfull to him, towards all, & againſt all, without any exception, and to maintaine the Statues thereof. And hauing thus ſworne, the Soueraigne kiſſeth them, and putting the Collars about their necks, ſaith: *In the name of the Father, the Sonne and Holy Ghoſt*.

The Oath taken by the Knights.

Of the marriage betweene *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, and *Iſabel* of *Portugal*, three Sonnes were borne. *Anthony*, borne at *Bruxelles* nine months after the marriage, the laſt day of September, One thouſand foure hundred and thirtie. And *Ioſſe*, borne at *Gaunt*, the foureteenth day of Aprill, One thouſand foure hundred thirtie two. Theſe two Princes dyed in their infancie: but the third and laſt, named *Charles*, was borne at *Dijon*, on the morrow after Saint *Martins* day in winter, One thouſand foure hundred thirtie three. His Godfather that gaue him his name, was *Charles* of *Bourgongne*, Count of *Neuers*, and with him the Lord of *Croy*, Minſon and Fauourite to Duke *Phillip*. This yong Prince *Charles*, had the title of Count of *Charlois* by his Father, as he himſelfe had it, by Duke *Iohn* his Father.

The iſſue of *Phillip* and his wife.

Prince *Charles* Count of *Charlois*.

Paradine writeth in his Hiſtory of *Bourgongne*, that the Knights of the *Fleece* elected this yong Prince from his birth, to be of their Brotherhood, and of the Order celebrated that yeare in the holy Chappell of *Dyon*: where (ſaith he) were ſeene the Tables, Titles, Armes and Blazons of the ſaid Knights, on the Chaires in the Quire of the Church, as yet to this day they are. But *Paradine* is miſtaken in the latter of theſe two opinions.

For, concerning the Count of *Charolois*, at an age ſo tender, to be ranckt among Knights,

knights, as formerly is ſaid: he neuertheleſſe being vncapable, to receiue the Order of Knighthood, an act moſt ſolemne, that any Gentleman can receiue in his life time, and for the expences whereof, his Subiects are takable. It is ſuch an honor, as cannot be conferred, but on a perſon capable of iudgement and reaſon, to receiue his creation, and vnderſtand the tearmes of the Oath, which he muſt make to the Soueraigne of the Order, a point moſt importing the Title of Knighthood, and namely in France. For there, at all times, the Nobility kept the Oath of Fidelity made to their Prince, as no perill of life could enforce the infringing. Otherwiſe, it was ſuch an opprobrious ſhame and ſcandall, as all the water in the world would not ſuffice to waſh off. So are we enſtructed by Saint *Bernard*, in his two hundred and fineteenth Epiſtle. *Probro Incitur apud Francigenas iuramentum ſoluere. Rideo* (ſaith he, writing to foure Biſhops of the Court of *Rome*, for defence of King *Lewes* the longer, ſeauenth of the name) *an excuſare aliquatenus eum poſſit. Ira, ætas, Maieſtas*; Maieſty, Anger, Age, no, nor the King himſelfe hath any power, to diſpence with the Vaſſaile or Subiect, for the Oath which he hath made to his Lord.

Obiections againſt the opinion of *Paradine*.

As touching the opinion of *Paradine*, about the Armes which are in the holy Chappell at *Dyon*; there is not any likelihood, that they were placed there, the yeare when the Count of *Charolois* was borne; becauſe it was not the ſame yeare, when the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Alanſon*, Princes of the Blood of France, were made Knights of the ſame Order, and whoſe Armes are to be ſeene in the ſaid Quire. Which was in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred and forty, at the Chapter for the ſaid Order held at Saint *Omer*, according as before hath bin obſerued. It was for in the Chapter held at *Dijon*; neuertheleſſe, in the body of the ſaid holy Chappell, there are the Eſcutcheons of foure & twenty Knights, who (happily) might be ſome of thoſe Knights that were at *Dyon*, at the birth of *Charles* Count of *Charolois*. Thoſe Shields or Eſcutcheons are (for the moſt part) ruined, and pearched ſo high, as nothing can be knowne by them: And all the Chaires of the Quire are filled with Armes, as we haue particularly noated on their places, and will againe mention; after wee haue ſpoken a word or two, concerning the Church where they are.

Concerning the Armes in the holy Chappell at *Dijon*.

The Church of the holy Chappell at *Dijon*, is properly called, *The Chappell of Dukes*, becauſe it ioyneth to the Pallace of the ſaid Dukes of *Bourgongne*, where (at this preſent) the Gouernours of the Prouince doe lodge. This Hoſtell is called *The Houſe of the King*, and at one of the corners, is a great ſquare Tower, called the Tower of *Bar*: becauſe *Rene*, Duke of *Lorraine* and *Bar*, King of *Ieruſalem* and *Sicile*, Count of *Prouence*, was ſometime there priſoner to Duke *Phillip* the ſecond (Authour of the Order now in queſtion) who had giuen ſuccour to the Count of *Vaudemont*, *Anthony* of *Lorraigne*, againſt this Duke *de Bar*, beſiedging *Vaudemont*, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred thirty one. Which ſiedge was raiſed by *Toulongeon*, Marſhall of *Bourgongne*; who tooke the ſaid Duke priſoner, leading him to *Dyon*. There he built a Chappell on the right ſide of the Quire of that holy Chappell; in the Glaſſe-windowes whereof, are the Armes of the ſaid *de Bar En Eſcange, Compoſees & blazonnees de Six quartiers ou Cantons*. The firſt is of *Hungaria, Party de Ieruſalem, tierce de Sicilie*: theſe three are ſuſtained by *Anion, Bar* and moderne *Lorraine*, which is *D'Or a la bande de Gueulles chargee de trois Alleryons D'Argent*. On the other ſide of the Quire, to the South, is the Chappell of *Trimouille*, at this preſent, one of the moſt Illuſtrious Houſes of France. In the Glaſſe-windowes of this Chappell, are their Armes repreſented and blazoned *D'Or, Au Cheuron de Gueulles, Et trois Aigles d'Azur, portees d'vne grand Aigle*: As we ſee the Ducates of Spaine, marqued with the Armes of *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, and *Iſabel* of *Caſtile*.

The Chappell of Dukes at *Dijon*.

Trimouille one of the moſt famous houſes of France

As for the Founder of this holy Chappell, which we haue already noated before in the ſecond Chapter; the Menologie beareth, that euery yeare, the fift day of May, there is a Seruice duely ſaid for him. *Hac die celebratur Anniuerſarium recolendæ memoriæ Domini Hugonis Ducis Burgundiæ preſentis Eccleſiæ fundatoris, in quo ſeruiunt Domini Canonici, prout in feſtis quadruplicibus, & manualiter diſtribuuntur ſex libræ Turonenſes*

nenses per Grenetarium, & Gubernatorem Cause Ecclesiæ. This distribution is made of money extraordinary, by him who hath the charge to receiue the Wine affected by the Chanons, whom they call the Landlord of the Church.

The Brotherhood of our Ladies Charity.

At *Paris*, it is a thing knowne to all the world, of the miracle which happened to the holy sacrificing Hoast, in the house of a Iew burned aliue, to be cut and pierced through with stabbes of a Knife, in the same place where is builded the Oratory and the Church *Domini Bullientis*, belonging to the Brotherhood *De la Chevalerie nostre Dame*; vulgarly called, *Of the Billettes*, by a French word corrupted of Latine. *Phillip* the second gaue the very like Hoast in this Church at *Dijon*. I did very distinctly obserue the stabbes of the Knife, or where the Knifes point had pierced, stained and vermillion coloured, as if that day they had bin giuen. The Hoast is of meane greatnesse, and the figure represented thereon, is the Sauiour of the world, seated on his Throane, and the Raine-bowe of Heauen vnder his feete, but of admirable whitenesse. This is the Sanctuary and Tutelary assurance, for this Capitall Citie of *Bourgongne*, as is remarkeable by this Verse, being in the Chappell of the said holy Hoste, ioyning to the Quire on the South-side.

Sanguinis hic guttas Christi *de carne fluentes,*
Diuso, præsidium Patriæ reuerenter adorat.

It is enchased in a small Circle of Gold, on both sides couered with Christall, locked in a Chest of Siluer guilded, in forme foure square, couered with blew Veluet, and kept in a Tabernacle or Chappell, fast engirt with barres of Brasse. It is shewne to the People on the high Altar, all the first Sundayes of the Moneths, after the Masse for the Order of the *Fleece*: and on Good-Friday after *Tenebres*, and the Friday for the foure Seasons of the yeare, after Compline or Euensong. It is carried with great Ceremony from it owne Chappell, to the high Altar, the Cleargy singing interchangeably in sweete Musique *Vexilla Regis prodeunt*, to the versicle *O salutaris Hostia*, that Officiant Channon exalting it, and shewing it to the people two seuerall times. Afeerward is sung *De profundis* for the dead, and in the end the Collect, when the Priest Officiant turneth himselfe to the people, and saith with a loud voice *God hath the Soule of the Admirall Chabot, Founder. Amen* This is he which founded this Salutation, hauing held great Reuenues in *Bourgongne*, possessed (at this day) by the Marquesse of *Mirebeau*, foure miles from *Dijon*, of his Sirname and Armes. The Admirall is enterred with the *Celestines* at *Paris*, in the Chappell of *Orleans*. The Masses and Canonicall houres for the said Order, which are daily celebrated in the said holy Chappell, betweene the houres of seauen and eight; were founded by the two last Dukes of *Bourgongne*, at a thousand and fifty pounds *Tournois* of rent, assigned on the Demeanes of *Salins*, for the Countie of *Bourgongne*.

Chabot the famous Admirall of France.

In the same Chappell is a Saint *Andrewes* head, of Siluer doubly guilded, and in it a bone of the said Apostle, which I haue seene and handled. The house of *Bourgongne* tooke him for Patron of this Order, because (as the *Bourguignons* say) in the Church of Saint *Victor* of *Marseilles* in *Prouence*, there is to be seene the Crosse of the said Apostle, whereon he was crucified at *Patras in Achaia*. But the Crosse is not in such fashion, as ignorant Painters picture it, in forme of a Saultour, like to the Character X of the *Greekes*.

Saint *Victor* martyred at *Patras* in *Achaia*.

This Apostle, eldest Brother of Saint *Peter*, went to Preach the holy Gospell to the *Scythians*, *Sogdians*, and *Æthiopians*, in the Prouinces of *Greece*, and namely in *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Bithynia*, *Pontus Euxinus*, in *Macedonia*, and in *Achaya*: where being arriued in the Citie of *Patras*, he was apprehended by *Ægeas* the Proconsul there, for the Emperour *Nero*, because he Preached *Iesus Christ* crucified. He was crucified himselfe, and tyed fast about an Oliue-tree, where he continued three dayes without dying, Catechising and confirming new-become Christians, in the Law of Saluation and Life. S. *Petrus Chrysologus*, in his hundred thirty and third Sermon of S. *Andrew*. *Petrus namque Crucem, sed Arborem conscendit Andreas. Hypp*[illegible] *tus* the *Greeke* Martyr, in his small Commentary: *Crucifixus est Andreas Patra Achaiæ ad Arborem Oliuæ rectus.* Hee suffered Martyrdome the last day of No[uember]

Acete Proconsull for Nero in Patras.

mber, in the yeare of Grace fourescore and thirteene. Returning againe to the rosse of Saint *Andrew*, which Painters fashion according to their owne fancies: it holdeth no way with the Motto of *Bourgongne*, neither is proper to this biect. It is well enough knowne, that the Inuestiture, and taking possession of e auncient Realme of *Bourgongne*, was done by tradition of the Launce of Saint *aurice*; and kept carefully by the first Kings of *Bourgongne*, descended of the *Van-*

les.

Grosse ignorance in some Painters.

And yet notwithstanding, common ignorance hath so farre preuailed, as to call a *aultour*, a *Bourguignon Crosse*, and to represent the Apostle Saint *Andrew*, bearing a Crosse before him, blazonned for a *Saultour* in *Scotland* and *Bourgongne*. oreouer, it was so authorised for future time, to serue as a noate of obseruation, in the Standards and Ensignes of the *Spanyards* and *Flemings*, acknowledged in rance, vnder the name of *Bourgongnons*. In the treatie at *Arras*, made betweene ing *Charles*, seauenth of the name, King of France, called the Victorious, and the id Duke *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, Sirnamed the Good, the One and thirtieth day of eptember, Anno One thousand foure hundred thirty fiue, it is said; *That the said ord of Bourgongne, and all his faithfull Subiects, and others, who haue heretofore carried Armes the Ensigne of the said Lord, that is to say,* The Crosse of Saint Andrew: *ll not be compelled to take other Ensignes, vnder any command, or in any Armie, which ll be in this Realme or without; be it in presence of the Duke, or of his Constables, either hu paye, wages, or otherwise, &c.*

Concerning the Armes belonging to *Bourgongne*.

Wee come now againe to the Armes of the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, which this present are to be seene on the Chaires, in the Quire of the Chappell of Dukes *Dyon*. On the right hand at entring into the said Quire, on the first Chaire, ore highly exalted then any other; is the Table of Armes of the Institution of the rder.

1. Vnder the Helmet is written in Letters of Gold, this Deuise; *Autre N'aray*; *will haue none other*. In the midst are the Armes of the Duke, *Desquels le premier artier est de Bourgongne, qui est de France sans nombre à la bordure componnee d'Argent, & de Gueulles, escartele de l'Ancienne Bourgongne, qui est Bande d'Or & d'Azur fix pieces à l'Orle de Gueulles; party de Brabant, qui est de Sable au Lyon rempant Or.* The third Quarter, *party de l'Ancienne Bourgongne, & d'Argent au Lyon rempant de Gueulles*, which is of *Luxembourg*. And the fourth of moderne *Bourgongne*, boue all of *Flanders*, which is *D'Or au Lyon rempant de Sable*. And about the aid Escutcheon is the Order, vnder which in old Letters of Gold, are written these ords: *Phillip Duke of Bourgongne* and of *Brabant*: these Armes are on the Frontisiece of this modell *Le Mezail est tarre de front* (there is none but this there, all the est are simple and beside) *& pour Cimier vne double fleur de Lys d'Or sur le Bourrelet*, f the Collours of *Bourgongne*, which are *d'Argent & de Gueulles*. It hath neither Tenants nor Supporters: And three Chaires there are empty, but on the fourth, on the aid right hand

The Dukes Armes emblazonned.

2. Is the Shield of *Arragon*. *D'Or à quatre Paux de Gueulles*; the *Mezail* turned right; the *Bourrelet* of the Liueries of *Bourgongne* (Carnation and White, *Componnces à Bourgongne moderne*) euen as to all the other. The Creast a little White Crosse, and thereon *Vn Dragon yssant d'Or*. Beneath and vnder the Shield, as in he other Tables, is written in Letters of Gold after the auncient manner, and like mo the rest: *Alphonso, by the Grace of God, King of Arragon, &c.* The Order is round bout.

White & Carnation the Liueries of *Bourgongne*.

3. The third Table, *Porte de France au Lambeau d'Argent. Pour Cimier sur le Tymbre vne double Fleur de Lys d'Or.* And for the Legend: *Charles Duke of Orleans, of Valois and of Millayne.* This was the eldest Sonne to *Monsieur Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, murdered by *Iohn* the *Bad*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, as we haue obserued in the precedent Booke.

Iohn the Bad Duke of *Bourgongne*.

4. The fourth *D'Argent à trois Faces de Gueulles, escartele d'Argent à trois Haches de Gueulles. Cimier, vn Vol*, that is to say, *Deux Aisles d'Argent, chargees d'vne Hache de Gueulles.* In the midst *vn Leurier de Sable, au Collier de Gueulles, bordé & cloué d'Or.* The word, *Anthony Lord of Croy, & de Renty.*

5. *Vaire*

5. *Vair d'Or & de Gueules, escartele de Gueules, à trois Quinte-Fueilles d'Or. Cimier deux Cornes d'Or:* in the middeſt, *Vne Pomme de Gueulles, mirouette d'Or.* Peter de Beaufermont Count of *Charny.*

Peter de Beaufermont, Count of Charny.

6. *Iohn de Croy,* Lord of *Tours,* Armed as the Fourth: aboue all *D'Or à Neuf Lozanges de Gueules, escartele de Flandres. Cimier de meſme.*

7. *Iohn de Mideun,* Lord of *Antoing, D'Azur à Sept Bezans d'Or, au Chef de meſme: Cimier Vn Boeuf yſſant d'Or.*

8. *Iohn de Vergy,* Lord of *Fouuens. De Gueules a trois Quinte fueilles d'Or. Cimier, Vn Vol d'Argent.* In the midſt, *Vn Canard de Synople, au Bec D'Or.*

9. *Baudot de Neuelles,* Lord of *Chaton. De Gueules à trois Iumelles, & Lambeau d'Argent, Cimier Vn Chien d'Argent, au Collier de Gueules borde, & cloue d'Or.*

10. *Charles de Bourgongne,* Count *de Charolois,* the very ſame of his Father.

11. *Don Pedro de Cardonna,* Count of *Goblene, D'Or à deux Paux de Gueles,* party *de France ſans nombre: Eſcartele de Gueules à trois Chardons fueillez d'Or.* The third the ſame. And the Fourth *d'Argent au Lyon rempant de Sable,* party *de Gueules à vne Eſpee d'Argent in Pal croiſee d'Or, tenue par vne main d'Argent, le bras couuert d'vn demy vol d'Or. Cimier: Vne Cheſne de Synople.*

12. *Iohn de Neuf Chaſtel,* Lord of *Monteſcy,* and of *Rigney: De Gueules à la Bande d'Argent. Cimier Chappeau d'Or au Vol party d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

13. *Drieu* (that is *Dreux* in Latine *Drogo*) Lord of *Humieres* and of *Becquencourt, D'Argent frette de Sable. Cimier Vn Lyon naiſſant de Gueules, cottoye d'vn Vol d'Argent, frette de Sable.*

14. *Dom Iohn de Guenara,* Count of *Ariana. De Gueules à Cinq Treſles d'Or en Sautour, Eſcartele d'Or à Cinq Bandes de Bretaigne. Cimier Vne patte d'Ours renuerſee d'Or, Armee de Gueules.*

The Prince of Antioch and Ieruſalem.

15. *Iohn de Portugall,* Prince of *Antioch* and *Ieruſalem: Party de Portugal,* contre-*eſcartele d'Angleterre.* The third Quarter of *Cyprus,* and the fourth of *Armenie;* but aboue all of *Luzignan. Cimier, Coronne au Dragon yſſant d'Or. Faute, il y falloit vn Melluſine.*

16. *Hugh de Launoy,* Lord of *Santes. D'Argent à trois Lyons rempants de Sable, Coronne d'Or, & lampaſſez de Gueules, à la Bordure Engreſlee de Gueules. Cimier: Coronne à la Licorne yſſant d'Argent.* Thus you ſee the right ſide of the Chappell diſcouered.

On the left ſide, the ignorant Painter hath made all the Helmets turned to the left hand, as to behold the high Altar, and eſpecially diuers of the Armes, which is Baſtardie. There are fiue Chayres empty, and on the Sixt

17. *Guilbert de Launoy,* Lord of *Willeruall:* like vnto the precedent; but only that he hath *vne Lambel de Sable. C. Idem.*

18. *Iohn,* Duke of *Alanſin,* and Count of *Perche. De France à la Bordure d'Alanſin. Cimier: Vne double Fleur de Lys d'Or.*

19. *Regue de Launoy,* Lord of *Molembais:* Like to the former of his race, but aboue all, *D'Argent à quatre faces d'Azur. Cimier, Idem.*

20. *Iohn,* Lord of *Crequy. D'Or à vn Crequier de Gueules. Cimier: Deux cols & teſtes de Cygnes d'Argent, becquez de Gueules, tenants enſemble vn Anneau d'Or.* In the the midſt *Vne Pomme de Gueules.*

21. *Simon de l'Allain,* Lord of *Hantes. De Gueules à dix Lozanges d'Argent, Trois de face, & vne en Pointe. La troiſieſme du Chef chargee d'vn Lyon rempant tourne de Sable, Cimier:* As of *Vergy.*

22. *Thibault,* Lord of *Neuf-Chaſtell. De Gueules à la Bande d'Argent, mal tournee. Cimier Coronne au Vol, tourne de Gueules à la Bande d'Argent.*

23. The *Baſtard* of *S. Faul,* Lord of *Haut-Bourdin. De Luxembourg tournè: Cimier, Baſſinet antique au Dragon tourné d'Argent.*

24. *Francon de Borſelle,* Count of *Oſtrenan. De Gueules à trois Anilles d'Argent: eſcartelé d'Azur à la faiſſe d'Argent. Cimier Coronne, vn Boeuf yſſant d'Argent acorne d'Or.*

25. *Regnaud de Brederode,* Lord of the ſaid place, and of *Vienna, D'Argent au Lyon rempant tourne de Gueules, la queue paſſee en Sautour: eſcartele d'Or au Lyon tourne de Gueules Lampaſſe, & Arme de Sable. Cimier Coronne à deux Bras, l'vn d'Argent, & l'autre d'Or, chaſque main tenant vn Os de Treſpaſſe d'Argent.*

26. *Henry de Leurſelle,* Lord *de la Vere* and of *Soudeliers. D'Azur à la faiſſe d'Argent. Cimier, Vn mortier,* as much to ſay, as *Chappeau Royall à l'Antique d'Azur, au gent. Cimier, Vn mortier, Cordon d'Or charge d'vne face d'Argent.*

27. *Iohn,* Lord & Baron *d'Auxi, Eſcheque D'Or & de Gueules. Cimier Coronne: Demy Maire de Gueules, le Collet d'Or, le Viaire de Sable, Bouche de Gueules, yeux d'Argent, Pruelle d'Or, au Bandeau & Turbant trainant à la Perſienne d'Argent.*

28. *Iohn,* Duke of *Cleues, & de la Mark. De la Mark,* party *de Cleues. Cimier; faſte de la Mark, à deux Cornes eſleuees d'Or.*

29. *Iohn,* Lord of *Launoy:* As of his race: *Sans Briſure, Aiſneſſe. Cimier Chien de Sable cantonne d'vn vol d'Argent.*

30. *Anthony,* Baſtard of *Bourgongne,* Lord of *Beure.* Turned wholly from *Bourgongne,* becauſe he beginneth with *Brabant, &c. Au filet de Gueules en Baſtardiſe brochant ſur tout. Cimier: Chathuant de Sable.*

31. The laſt is *Adolph de Cleues,* Lord of *Rauenſtein de la Mark, eſcartele de Cleues. Sur tout de Bourgongne Ancienne & moderne, ſurcharge de Flandres tourné. Cimier: Teſte d'Ours de Gueules, bouclee d'vn Anneau d'Or, les yeux d'Argent, aux Prunelles d'Or. Coronne d'vn Mortier à l'Antique, Blaſonné de la Mark ſomme de Deux Cornes.*

Beſide the ſaid Chayres, againſt one of the Pillers of the Ducheſſes Chappell, newly painted with Gold and Azure, is a great Table after the faſhion of the reſt: *Charge de Gueules à trois Faiſſes ondees d'Or, Eſcartele de Gueules à trois Iumelles d'Argent. Cimier: Vn Leurier yſſant d'Argent au Collier de Gueules, borde & cloue d'Or.* Aboue is written, *Anthony de Thoulongeon.* And vnderneath the Order: Here lieth the noble and puiſſant Lord Sir *Anthony* of *Thoulongeon,* Knight, ſomtime Lord of *Fraſne, & de la Bathe,* Marſhall, Guardian, Gouernour and Captaine Generall of *Bourgongne.* Who deceaſed at *Dyon* on the day of Saint *Michael,* being the thirtieth of *September,* in the yeare 1432. God hath his Soule.

Marſhall Guardian, Gouernour, and Captaine Generall of *Bourgongne.*

Enguerran de Monſtrelet writeth, in the yeare of Grace, 1406. that *Monſieur Lewis* of France, Duke of *Orleans* (againſt whom *Iohn* Duke of *Bourgongne* quarelled for the Gouernment of the Realme, through the indiſpoſition or diſhability of King *Charles* the Sixt) gaue the firſt day of the ſaid yeare, as Newyeares gifts to his friends and familiars, Small, new and knagged Staues fairely gilded, which he had taken for his Deuice: And the Legend or Motto thereof was, *Ie Lenuis,* to make publikely knowne, that hee did and would hold the foreſaid Superiority, and Lord.

Iohn of *Bourgongne,* being an oppoſite to the Duke of *Orleans,* tooke a Ioyners plaine for his Deuice, and the Motto theſe two words in Dutch, *Hic Houd,* which ſignifie in French, * *Ie le Tiens.* To let the Duke his Nephew know, that his new plaine ſhould euen and make ſmooth his knotted Staues, As meaning, that hee would maintaine himſelfe in his authority, neere to the perſon of the King, and chiefly by power. From thence forward, the ſaid *Iohn* of *Bourgongne* (Sirnamed Peter, the *Bad* obſerued for his Deuice, as well on his Coynes as Enſignes and Banners, two new Staues croſſed as a Saultour, and in the midſt of them a Plaine. His Decall Cloake, on his Tombe at the Charterhouſe neere *Dijon,* is ordered with the ſame Deuice; which the Archdukes, Counts of *Flanders,* to this very day haue retained in their monyes of Gold and Siluer.

* I will hold & maintaine it.

The Chronicle of Signieur *Iuuenall de Vrſins,* ſpeaking of the yeare 1411. ſaith. It ſhall ſuffiſe to kill a notable Burgeſſe in robbing and rifling him, to ſay by any one in way of hatred: *Behold an Armaignac.* And take the Enſigne of (*Iohn*) the Duke of *Bourgongne,* or his Deuice: *Which was a Saultour, by them called the Croſſe of Saint Andrew, And one Floure de Luce in the midſt.* And there they had written, *God ſaue the King,* and euery one tooke it to bee ſo, yea, Women and young Children. A little after: *And they made knowne to the people, and expreſly wrote to good Cities and Townes: that they would create a new King, and depriue his Children of the Crowne.* This was the Originall of the Leagues, which afterward were made in France.

A Saultour called the Croſſe of S. Andrew.

John of *Bourgongne* was the firſt of all his Predeceſſors(heads of the ſame part)that was Inuenter of *Ceſle Croix Bretechee,& paſſee en Sautour*. Before that time it was vnknowne in France: as we learne by the ſame Chronicle of *Vrſins*, in the ſaid yeare 1411. And it is to be aduertiſed,that all things were done in the name of the King, and of *Monſieur* the *Daulphine*. *But they left the direct white Croſſe, which was the true Enſigne of the King:* And tooke the Croſſe of Saint *Andrew*, and the Deuice of the Duke of *Bourgongne*, the Saultoure; and ſuch as they called *Armaignacks*, *Portoient la Bande*. That is to ſay, wore a white Scarfe, the Liuery of France, as red is of Spayne.

The Order of the Croſſe of *Bourgongne*.

Of this Deuice of *John* of *Bourgongne* his youngeſt Sonne, the Emperour *Charles*, called the Fift, King of Spaine, made a new Order, named *The Order of the Croſſe of Bourgongne*, at the Kingdome of *Thunis* in *Affrica*: *Charles* the Fift hauing expulſed thence that famous Rouer or Pyrate *Aryadene*, Sirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, and placed in poſſeſſion of his ancient Inheritance, *Muley Mulcaſſes*. Hee made his entrance at *Thunis*,on Monday,being S. *Mary Magdalens* day the two and twentieth of *July*, *An.* 1535. At his entrance, the Emperour wore a Coate of Armes of Cloth of Gold, hauing on the breaſt and backe embroydered on Crimſon Silke: *The Croſſe of Bourgongne, and the Plaine in the midſt*. To preſerue the memory of this entrance, and the victory which hee obtained againſt the Turke and his Pirate; the ſaid Emperour, in acknowledgement of their valour, who had aſſiſted him in a Conqueſt ſo ſignall: inſtituted the ſaid Order of the Croſſe of *Bourgongne*, and gaue Collars to the principall perſons of his Court,compoſed of two Staues in Saultour,and direct-ly on the b eſt,a Plaine, hauing this word about it: *Barbaria*.

The Pirate *Aryadene* or *Barbaroſſa*.

Kings of Spaine only giue the Order of the *Golden Fleece*.

Now although the Emperours of *Germany* are deſcended of *Philip*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Count of *Flanders*, and of the Low Countries: yet notwithſtanding, they haue not the power and permiſſion, to conferre the *Order of the Golden Fleece*. The Kings of Spaine declared themſelues to bee chiefe of the ſaid Order, and retained the right ſolely to themſelues, for conferring and granting the ſame.

The King *Don Philip* the Second,by the Contract of Marriage of the *Infanta* his Daughter,to the Archduke *Albert* of *Auſtria*; howſoeuer in fauour of this Alliance, hee gaue them the Low-Countries: yet it is abſolutely ordered, that the ſaid Arch-Duke cannot take any Title of Chiefe of the ſaid Order,nor can conferre it to any perſon. That honour is reſerued to the Kings of Spaine, and to her ſucceeding Kings.

Within ſome few yeares,a Treaty was made betweene the Emperour *Rodolph* the Second and laſt deceaſed,and a Lord of *Hungaria*; among which Articles, this is one. *That the Emperour ſhall procure to and with the King of Spaine: ſo that the ſaid Lord may bee made Knight of the Golden Fleece*. In acknowledgement whereof,he hath embraced the Emperours part againſt the Turke.

CHAP. VI.

Homages done and rendred to the moſt Chriſtian Kings of France by the Counts of *Flanders*, of *Henault*, &c.

THoſe Predeceſſors,which were Counts of *Flanders*,*Henault*, *Artois*,&c. haue euermore beene Liege-men to the Crowne of France: which was continued by the deſcendant Heyres to *Mary* of *Bourgongne*,as well in quality of the ſaid Lords Counts,as the Peeres of France.

Baldwine Count of *Flanders* and *Henault*,&c.

In the Regiſters of the Court of Parliament, the Homage is yeelded to King *Philip Auguſtus*, called the Conqueror, Second of the name, by *Bauldwine*, Count of *Flanders*, *Hainault*,&c. In the City of *Compeigne*, the Moneth of *June* 1196. In the preſence of *William de Champaigne*, Cardinall and Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*; Madame *Mary* of France, Counteſſe of *Champaigne*, Siſter to the ſaid King *Philip*;

Philip; and other Princes and Lords, Peeres of *France*. According as it written by *Rigordus*, and *William* the *Bretone* in the life of the ſaid *Phillip Auguſtus*.

Ferrand of Portugall, Succeſſour to the ſaid *Baldwine* in the Counties before named, by the meanes of his wife: did Homage as a Liege-man to the ſame King *Phillip Auguſtus*, at *Bois de Vincennes*, in the moneth of *Ianuarie*, the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand two hundred and eleuen. As heere you may behold the Tenure.

Ego Ferrandus, Comes Flandriæ et Hannoniæ, Notum facio vniuerſis ad quos hæ preſentes litteræ peruenerint; Quod Ego ſum Homo Ligius *Domini mei Illuſtriſſimi* Francorum Regis Philippi *contra omnes Homines et Fœminas qui poſſunt viuere et mori. Et iuraui eidem quod ego faciam ei bonum ſeruitium, et fidele; neque ab eo deficiam quandiu mihi voluerit facere rectum in* Curia Sua. *Si autem de bono et fideli ſeruitio ei deficiam; volo, et concedo, quod omnes Homines mei tam Barones, quam Milites, et omnes Communia, et Communitates Villarum, et Burgorum Terræ meæ contra me ſint eidem Domino meo Regi in auxilium, et mihi ſint innocumentum ad poſſe ſuum, vſque dum ſit Domino meo Regi emendatum ad gratum ſuum. Et volo et præcipio, quod prædicti tam Barones, quam Milites, et alij hanc Dominio meo Regi iurent, et faciant ſecuritatem. Si autem aliquis eſſet qui nollet hoc iurare, omne malum quod poſſem faciam ei nec Pacem, nec Treugam cum illo nunquam haberem, niſi per voluntatem, et beneplacitum Domini mei Regis eſſet. Quod vt non poſſit obliuione deleri, et vt Prædicta perpetuam obtineant firmitatem et ſecuritatem, præſentes litteras, Sigilli noſtri munimine,et teſtimonio corroborari fecemus* Actum Vincennis, *An. Domini Milleſimo Ducenteſimo Vndecimo, Menſe Ianuarij die Quinta.*

In the ſame Regiſters of Court, is the ſentence of the *Throne of Iuſtice*, holde by *Lewes Hutin* King of *France* & *Nauarre* Tenth and Firſt of this name, againſt the Count of *Flanders Robert*; and he, and his Dutchmen Fauourers and adherers, declared guilty of high treaſon, and for their Fellonie condemned to looſe their liues, and their goods ſeized and confiſcated to the King. This ſentence of Iuſtice, the King then ſitting in his Parlement at *Paris*, is dated the fourteenth of *July*, and in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand three hundred and Thirteene.

The moſt remarkable of all the Homages rendered to our Kings, by the ſaid Count of *Flanders*; is that of *Phillip*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Sonne to *Maximillian*, elected King of the Romaines, and Madame *Mary* of *Bourgongne*, Father of *Charles* the Fift, and of *Ferdinand*, Emperours, Kings of *Spaine*, *Bohemia* and *Hungaria*, in the ſaid Court of Parlement at *Paris*, where(in caſes Royall) it was Iuſtifiable, that the ſaid Counties of *Flanders*, *Henault*, *Artois*, and others Lands; were their Vaſſailes and Subiects. Heere is the Verball Proceſſe of the ſayd Homage.

The Proceſſe of Homage.

John Amy, Notarie and Secretarie to our Lord the King. Seeing it hath pleaſed the noble and puiſſant Lord *Guy de Rochefort*, Knight, Lord of *Pluuot* and of *Labergement* Lord Chancellor of *France*, ſo much of his Grace to preferre me, as to ordaine and command the Letters, for receiuing the Homage made to our Lord the King from his hand: By the moſt high and mightie Prince *Monſieur Philip*, Son to the King of the Romaines, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Count of *Flanders*, *Artois* and *Charolois*, the fift day of this inſtant moneth of *July*, 1499. My ſaid Lord the Chancellour being in the Cittie of *Arras*, and in the Biſhops houſe; ſuch worthy actions and great Ceremonies, as were there then obſerued and done, to the exaltation, honor and benefit of the King, *And of his Crowne*, deſeruing to liue in perpetuall memorie: I am ſo bold as to ſet downe in writing, concerning what I both heard and ſaw, touching the preſent acte and matter; eſpecially, from the laſt day of *Iune* now paſt,vntill the fift day of *July*. And for our entrance into the matter, it is moſt certaine and an vndoubted tracth;

The departure of the Lord Chancellor to goe for *Arras*.

That my Lord the Chancellor, departed the ſaid laſt day of *Iune* (after dinner) from the Towne of *Dourlens* in *Picardie*, to iourney for the Citty of *Arras*, where he arriued the ſame day. Being alwayes accompanied with the Lords of *Rauenſteine* and of *Gruture*, the Lord *Charles de la Vernade*, Knight and Lord of the ſame place, as alſo Sir *Chriſtopher de Cremona*, Councellors and Maiſters of the Requeſts in the Kings Houſe: *Meſſire Rioull de Launoy* Bayliffe of *Amiens*; *Meſſire Frances d'Eſtain*; *Hugh de Meghe*,

Meghe; *Amaury de Quinquinille*; *Nicholas de Foix*; *Phillip d'Eſtas*; *Richard Nephew*, and *Peter de la Vernade*, Councellers in Ordinarie, *Macè Touſtaene*, Atturney Generall to the ſaid Lord in his Great Councell, *John Burdelot*, Atturney Generall in the Court of Parlement at *Paris*; *Anthony le Viſte*, Speaker in the Chancerie of *France*, *Dreux Bude*, *John de Ville-Breſme*, *Raoull Guiot*, *Phillip Maillart*, Notaries and Secretaries to our ſaid Lord the King; and my ſelfe.

The Chancellours first entrie at his comming to *Arras*.

As the Lord Chancellour and all his Companie were riding in god order, within a mile and an halfe of the City of *Arras*, hauing the Vſher of the Great Councell before him, bearing his Mace openly diſcouered, Armed with the King Armes, and following after the ſaid Vſher the Chafe-wax, ſided by two Kings of Armes to our Lord the King, clothed in their Coates of Armes: as namely, *Mon-Ioye*, Principall King of Armes of *France*, and the King of Armes, *Normandie*: there arriued and came before the ſaid Lord Chancellour, the Biſhop of *Cambray*, the Lord *Thomas de Pleures*, Knight Chancellour to the Lord Archduke *Monſieur* the Count of *Naſſau*, the Lord of *Fiennes*, with other, as well Knights as Squires, yet addmitted of Councell to the ſaid Archduke. The Lord *Thomas de Pleures* preparing to ſalute the Lord Chancellour, came vnto him, ſaying, that the Lords in his company and himſelfe, were ſent from their Lord and Maiſter the Archduke, to tell him: *That the Archduke was very ioyfull for his arriuall, and the others Lords which were with him, affirming them all to be moſt hartily welcome.* With much other faire and gentle language, euery one in the traine did the like (on behalfe of the Archduke) doing great reuerences and honor to the Lord Chancellour, not any of the Lords fayling in the like. For which kindneſſes, the Lord Chancellour vſed them very honorably, embracing the Lords, euen as if this fauour had bin done to the Archduke himſelfe, perſonally there preſent.

Salutation declared by the Chancellor.

Soone after, they ordered them on either ſide, for their more formall ryding into the Citie, and when the whole Companie was neere entring into the Suburbes: the Lord Chancellour was met by the Lord Archduke, who to receiue and welcome him, had purpoſely come on horſſeback from the Abbey of *Saint Vaaſt* in the Cittie of *Arras*, and ridden quite therow the Cittie to ſee him come, and meete him.

The meeting of the Archduke and the Chancellour.

Thus the Lord Archduke, accompanied with a great number, as well Knights of his Order, as Squires, and other Officers of his Houſe, being rancked on either ſide, to make way and giue place to the Lord Chancellour: he was no ſooner come neere, but both the Archduke and they put off their Bonnets, ſhewing themſelues ſubmiſſiuely bare, and he put on his Mule, to be cloſe to the Chancellor. *Him he embraced very humbly, being alwayes bare-headed before him, bidding him moſt heartely welcome*; ſpeaking further to him in this manner. *How fareth my Lord the King?* Whereto the Lord Chancellour anſwered; *That he was well and in good health*, with more ample ſpeeches in honor of his Mueſty. The Archduke gaue gracious welcome to the Lords of *Rauſtein* and *Gruture*, ſaluting alſo honourably the Maiſters of the Requeſts, and other Councellers to the King. After many gracious paſſages in ſpeeches, and amiable countenances of the Archduke, to the Chancellour and *Rauſtein*: he all this while held his hatt in his hand, and would neuer be couered, but when the Lord Chancellour did the like.

The entrance into the Cittie of *Arras*.

The Archduke and the Chancellour rode on together, to make their entrance into the Cittie, the Chancellour alwayes keeping the right hand; and before them rode the Vſher of the Great Councell, bearing his Mace aloſte and open. The Chafe-waxe carying the Kings Seale on his backe, *As it is the cuſtome there, when the Lord Chancellour rideth throw the Kingdome; and the two Kings of Armes in their Order.* A thing neuer any other comming betweene the Archduke and the Chancellour. A thing which was well noated and obſerued, as heedfully by the Archdukes people and Officers, as by the common people: whereof there was a mighty aſſembly, both without the Cittie and within, comming purpoſely to ſee this Entrance.

The Chancellours comming to the Kings Lodging.

Still all along (in conference) did the Archduke guide and conduct the Lord Chancellour, being alwayes vncouered to him; except when the Chancellour put on, then did he ſo likewiſe: euen to the entrance of the Cloyſter of the Great Church, the Archduke ſtill ſtriuing to bring the Chancellour to the Biſhops Place (where he alwayes vſed to be lodged) but that he was hindred therin, by the earneſt intreates and importunities of the Chancellour, who ſhewed himſelfe ſufficiently ſatisfied with that which he had then done in honour of the King. Wherupon, in kind language he departed from the Lord Chancellour, returning into the Cittie of *Arras*, to his owne lodging at *Saint Vaaſt*, the Chancellour remayning in the Biſhops Houſe, accompanied with the Counte of *Naſſau*, and other great perſons belonging to the ſaid Lord Archduke. Afterward, the Lords and Gentlemen on either ſide, repaired to ſuch lodgings, were in due order appointed for them.

After diuers entercourſes of courteſie, performed by the ſaid Lords, *Thomas de Pleures*, the Counte of *Naſſau*, the Lord of *Molembais*, and other Officers attending on the Archduke, during Monday, Tueſday, Wedneſday and Thurday following, being the firſt, ſecond, third and fourth of this inſtant moneth *July*; many treaties paſſed before the Lord Chancellour in his Lodging, for concluding on matters, points and articles propounded by the Kings Atturney Generall, in his Parlement at *Paris*.

Requeſt made for Reception of the Homage.

And thoſe matters being ended, vpon Thurſday, requeſts was made by the Archdukes Officers to the Lord Chancellour; that he would diſpoſe himſelfe, for receiuing the Homage, which the ſaid Archduke was to performe to the King, in regard of his *Peerdome and Counties of Flanders*, and likewiſe for the Counties of *Artois*, *Charolus*, with other Lands helde by him, belonging to our Lord the King and his Crowne. For the doing whereof, day and houre was to be aſſigned to the Archduke, to the end he might come and *Do his Duety*.

Appointment for the ſitting of it.

Whereto the Lord Chancellour made anſwere, that the morrow, being Friday, and fitte of the ſaid Moneth; betweene the houres of nine and ten in the morning, he would be ready to receiue it, which day and time was accepted by the Officers to the Archduke.

For this purpoſe, the Lord Chancellour appointed, that the place ſhould be the ſecond Haule of his Lodging, which was hanged with rich Tapeſtrie, and a Stare exalted two or three degrees, and thereon placed *A ſumptuous Chaire, couered all ouer with Floures de Luces*, wherein himſelfe was to ſit during the reception, and ſuch words as ſhould be deliuered, concerning the Homage that was done.

The Chancellours ſeuerall ſeuts to Lord *Thomas de Pleures*.

Friday being come, about ten a clocke in the morning, the Lord Chancellour benig in his Chamber, accompanied with Lords, Maiſters of the Requeſts, and other of the Councell before named, as alſo the Bayliffe of *Amiens*: worde was brought him by *Thomas de Pleures*, and other Officers, that the Archduke was departed from his Lodging: and comming towards him, to performe the Homage, if he would diſpoſe himſelfe to receiue it. Whereto the Chancellour made anſwere, that *So ſoone as his Lordſhould be come into the place appointed for Homage; he would be readie there in perſon.*

Officers came two other ſeuerall times, as well Gentlemen of the Chamber, as alſo the Secretaries to the Archduke; ſignifying to the Lord Chancellour; that the Archduke was entred the firſt Haule, which ioyned to the ſecond: And yet the Chancellour would not ſtirre.

At the third time, becauſe the Officers affirmed, that the Archduke was entred the ſecond Haule (as indeed it was true) and likewiſe that the Lord *de la Gruture*, *Robert Framezelles*, Chamberlaine to the King, and the Lord of *Rauſtein* (who had accompanied the Archduke from his Lodging, into the ſecond Haule) came alſo to tell the Chancellour, that the Archduke was in the ſecond Haule, and in the very place appointed for the Homage.

The manner of the Chancellours comming to receiue the Homage.

Then the Lord Chancellour, attired in a rich Roabe of Crimoſine veluet, and his Hat on his head, came from his Chamber, which ioyned to the ſaid Haule, in manner following.

Before him went the Vſher of the Great Councell, bearing his Mace open and aloſte, who with aloude voyce cried and ſaid, ſo ſoone as he was come forth of the Chamber, and entring into the ſecond Haule (becauſe there were aſſembled a great multitude of people, as well Gentlemen and Officers to the Archduke, as others, ſo that hardly a man could turne himſelfe) theſe words three or foure times: *On before there, make way and, giue roome.* After the ſaid Vſher followed the two Kings of Armes; then came the Lord Chancellour, and after him the Lords of the Requeſts, be-

being of the Great Councell, and the Kings Notaries and Secretaries, with whom I my selfe went. And because the Lord Chancellour had appointed me (before his departing from his Chamber) to take such a conuenient place, where I might be present at the Homage, to heare both his owne wordes, the answeres of the Archduke, and what else should be past betweene them, according as his Letters formerly had directed me; I endeauoured my selfe not to faile therein.

The Archduke speaketh words to the Lord Chancellour.

Here is to be obserued, that as the Lord Chancellour approched neare the Chaire, wherein he was to sit, the Lord Archduke, who all this while had attended there his comming: immediately tooke off his Hat, and spake to the Chancellour these words; *My Lord, God giue you a good day*, in speaking which words, he humbled his head very low. But the Lord Chancellour, without vsing any action of courtesie, or vttering one word, only lifted his hand to his Hatt on his head, touching it, but not otherwise stirring it; sat down in the Chaire. When presently one of the Kings of Armes, according as formerly the Chancellour had directed him, cried three times with a loud voyce; *Keepe Silence.*

Which being done, the Archduke presented himselfe bare headed before the Lord Chancellour, to doe his Homage, saying. *My Lord, I am come hither before you, to performe the Homage which I owe to the King, concerning my Peerdome, and Countries of Flanders, Artois and Charolois, which I holde of My Lord the King, and of his Crowne*

He offereth to doe the Homage and to performe it.

Then the Lord Chancellour, sitting so in his Chaire, and couered both with his Hat and hoode, demanded: *If he had either Girdle, Dagger, or any other Weapon about him?* Whereto the Archduke (*Lifting vp his Garment, which was without a Girdle*) *Answered No.* Heereupon the Lord Chancellour *Tooke his two hands betweene his owne, and holding them so ioyned, the Lord Archduke began to bow, shewing apparance of falling on his knee. But the Lord Chancellour would not suffer it, but raising him vp with his hands as he held him, he vsed these words to him: your good will is sufficient, and we are pleased.* Then the Lord Chancellour proceeded in this manner, holding still the Archdukes hands betweene his owne, and he bare headed, off ring alwayes his knee to the ground. *You shall continue a man to your Soueraigne Lord, bearing him Faith and Liege Hommage, in regard of the Peeredome and Counties of Flanders, as also the Counties of Artois, Charolois, and all others Lands which you hold of the King and his Crowne. You shall promise to serue him till death inclusiuely, to and against all that can liue and dye, without reseruing any: To procure his good, and preuent his harme, and to acquit and carry your selfe towards him, as to your Soueraigne Lord and King.*

The Lord Chancellour receiueth the Archdukes hands betweene his owne.

The Archduke answereth to the Chancellour.

Whereunto the Archduke answered: *By my Faith so I promise, and so I will doe.* When he had so spoken, the Chancellour vsed these words. *And I receiue you,* (*the Kings right reserued in other things, and of others in all concerning them.*) *Then holding forth his cheeke the Lord Chancellour kissed it.* Afterward, the Archduke demanded of the Chancellour, *Letters for receiuing the said Homage:* which he commanded me to make, for his more speedy dispatch.

The Archduke desireth Letters for receiuing the Homage.

Now arose the Chancellour out of the Chaire, and putting off his Hat and Hood, made low reuerence to the Archduke, and vttered these words. *My Lord, I perseuered yer-while the Office of a King, by representation of his person. But now I am Guy de Rochefort, your most humble seruant, alwayes ready to doe you any seruice, to the King my Soueraigne Lord and Maister, in whatsoeuer it shall please you to commande me.* For which the Lord Archduke thanked him, returning these speeches. *I thanke you my Lord Chancellour, & desire you in all my affaires to my Lord the King, that I may haue your helpe and furtherance.*

The Chancellour commendeth the Archduke.

Witnesse my Seale manuell set heereunto, the first day of *August*, An. 1499.

This Liedge Homage was made to King *Lewes* the Twelfth, to whom was giuen that excellent *Elogium* and Title of honor; *Father of his People.* After whom succeeded King *Frances* the first: who was graced with the stile of *The Father of good Letters.* At his comming to the Crowne of *France*, *Charles* of *Spayne*, Sonne to the Archduke *Phillip* of *Austria*, whose Homage we haue so lately reported, sent as Ambassadour to his Sacred Maiesty, the Counte of *Nassau*, who (in the name of his Maister) gaue Faith and Liedge Homage, for the Counties of *Flanders*, *Henault*, *Artois*, *Charolois*, and other Lands held of the Crowne of *France*, in the yeare One Thousand Fiue Hundred and Fifteene.

King *Lewes* the Twelfth, Father of his People.

Con-

CHAP. VII.

Concerning the Prouinces and Seigneuries of the Lowe Countries.



Eyer, and (next to him) *Marchant*, both Chroniclers, in their Historie of *Flanders*, composed in the time of *Charles* the fift, Emperour, to foment and cherish the warres, betweene the two famous Crownes of *France* & *Spayne*; would seeme to begin the Low Countries frō the *Riuer* of *Somme*, comprehending therein the Counties of *Bolongne* and *Saint Paule*, & make them Homageable to the Count of *Flanders*. And for their better attayning therto, they noate downe, that vnder the yeare Nine Hundred thirtie and one (when our Kings of the Second Ligne leaned towards their declination) that *Arnoull*, the Great Counte of *Flanders*, possessed himselfe by force of Armes, of the Cittie of *Arras*, and the Abbeis of *Artois*, and afterwarde of the Townes of *Bolongne* on the Sea, *Aire*, *Doway*, *Teroanne*, and other places beside. And that the Counties of *Boulogne* and Saint *Paule*, were then belonging to the Counte of *Flanders*. *Vterque Comitatus, erat in clientelâ Comitum Flandriæ.*

Historians opinions concerning the Nether-Lands

But these good Historians should haue turned ouer the Leafe, where is apparantly discerned, that *Lotharre* King of *France*, after the death of *Arnoull*, recouered those vsurped Lands, and inuested therein the eldest of the Sonnes to *William* Counte of *Ponthieu*, of the Countie of *Boulogne*, and the youngest in the Countie of Saint *Paule*, in *Arriere* Fiefe to that of *Boulogne*, and not the Counties of *Flanders*, nor *Artois*.

A contradiction of those Historians.

And for manifestation to the Dutche, that (at all times) the Counties of *Boulongne*, Saint *Paule*, and other limitrophing Seigneuries, haue bin vnder Homage to the Crowne of France: we will heere insert a sollemne Arrest or decree, giuen in the Generall Parlement, held a *Ville-Neufue le Roy*, neere to *Sens*, the yeare of Grace, One Thousand Two Hundred and Nine. in the moneth of *Maye*, vnder the raigne of *Phillip Augustus*.

A sufficient proofe for auouching the contrarie.

A decree seruing as a generall Rule, for the Homages of the Duchie of *Burgongne*, Counties of *Neuers*, *Boulogne*, Saint *Paule*, the Seigneurie of *Dompierre*, and other greate Fiefs, nakedly arising from the Crowne of *France*, for their Arriere Fiefs, and dependances of them.

The Parlement Decree according to the Courte Roule.

PHilipus *Dei gratia Francorum Rex, Nouerint omnes Præsentes, pariter et Futuri; Quod Odo, Dux Burgundiæ*, Herueus, *Comes Niuernensis*; Radulphus, *Comes Bolonia*; Guido, *Comes Sancti Pauli*; Guido, *de Domna Petrâ, & plures alij Magnates de Regno Franciæ vnanimiter conuenerunt, & assensu publico firmauerunt, vt* Primo Die Maij in Posterum, *ita sit de Feodalibus tenementes. Quidquid tenetur de Domino Ligio, vel alio modo, si contigerit per Successionem Hæredum, vel quoquo alio modo diuisionem inde fieri, quoquomodo fiat, omnes qui de illo Feudo tenebunt, de Domino Feodi, principaliter, & nullo medio, tenebunt, sicut vnus antea tenebat, priusquam diuisio facta esset: Et quandocumque contigerit, pro illo totali Feodo seruitium Domino fieri, quis libet eorum, secundum quod de Feodo tenebit, seruitium tenebit exhibere, & illi Domino deseruire, & reddere racaptum, & omnem Iustitiam. Quidquid autem antea factum est, et vsitatum vsque ad Primum diem Maij, maneat sicut est factum, sed de cetero fiat, sicut est supradictum. Quod ne possit obliuione deleri, & in posterum irritari, præsens scriptum Sigillorum nostrorum munimine fecimus roborari.* Actum in Parlemento nostro apud Villam nouam Regiam iuxta Senonas congregato, Anno ab Incarnationem Domini, Millesimo Ducentesimo nono, Mense Maio.

King *Lewes* Eight of the name, firnamed of *Montpensier*, Sonne to the said *Phillip Augustus*, and Father of Saint *Lewes*, proportioned to his Brother *Monsieur Phillip* of

The proportioned allowance of King *Lewes* the Eight.

France, the Counties of *Bologne* and Saint *Paul*, with other Lands, vnder charge of Homage, and they to returne againe to the Crowne, by defect of Heyres Male, borne in loyall Marriage. This Appennage inserted in the Registers of the Court, is dated in the Moneth of Ferbruary, One Thousand, Two Hundred, Twenty Three.

The acknowledgement of Monsieur Philip of Flanders.

The said *Monsieur Philip* of France in the Moneth of December, One Thousand, Two Hundred, Twenty Sixe, acknowledged to the King Saint *Lewes* his Nephew; that he held of him and the Crowne, the Fortresses of *Mortaign* and of *Liste-Lonne*, and the Homage of the County of Saint *Paul*, he held that of *Bologne* (these are the very words of the acknowledgement, inserted in the Court of Parliament Registers) with charge of their returning to the Crowne of France, by the defaylance of Heyres Male. These Counties then are not, nor euer haue beene of the Low-Countries.

The diuision of the Low-Countries of Netherlands.

Which are at this present diuided into Seauenteene Prouinces, whereof some haue made it an Estate and Common-wealth, a part by it selfe. Others of them haue acknowledged their Dukes, and the rest confesse themselues Heyres to *Mary* of *Bourgongne*.

The Duchie of *Brabant*, and her contenance in Townes and Cities.

The first is the Duchie of *Brabant*, which hath two and twenty Leagues or Miles in length, and twenty in breadth, making Foure Score Miles in Circuit. The principall Cities and Townes are *Louuaine*, *Bruzelles*, *Antwerpe* & *Bosle-Duke*. And thereon dependeth the Duchie of *Arfeet*, the Marquisate of *Berghes*, the Counties of *Hoostrate* and *Megue*; The Seigneuries of *Breda* & *Kaueslein*; the Duchie of *Lemlourg*; the Estates of *Mastrich* & of *Valquembourg*; the Countie of *Dalen*, and nineteene Baronies.

Malines.

Malines maketh an Estate by it selfe, not subiect to the Duchie of *Brabant*: although it be iustly seated in the middest of three principall Townes thereof.

Gueldre.

Gueldres or *Gelres*, a Duchy sometime inhabited by the Auncient *Francs*, named *Sicambrians*, and by the *Menapians*. This Duchy containeth vnder it, the County of *Zutphen*: And the principall Townes are *Nimegen*, *Ruremonde*, *Zutphen* and *Arnam*.

Ouure-Issell.

Depending or belonging thereto is the Estate of *Ouure-Issell*, *Trans-Iselana*, seated both beyond, and on this side the Riuer or Flood of *Issell*. It is diuided into three other Estates; *Iland*, *Drent*, and *Tuend*. Her best Townes are *Deuenter*, *Zuell*, *Campen*, and *Vollenhone*: but *Deuenter* is the chiefest of all.

Frizeland.

The *Frese* or *Friezeland* hath heretofore carried the title of a Kingdome. This Prouince is diuided into the East part, and the principall Towne is called *Linguen* seated on the Riuer of *Visurgis*, and is subiect to the King of Denmarke. The Westerne part is watred with the Riuer of *Emis*, in Latine *Amasis*, and *Amasius*.

Holland.

Holland, tearmed *Batauia*, and the Inhabitants *Batani*, is but a *Peninsula* or halfe Iland, watered by the *Rhine* and the *Meuze*, threescore miles in Circuit, and but three houres of ground walke onely in breadth. Her best Cities and Townes are *Dordrech*, *Hardam*, *Delpht*, *Leyden* (*Lugdunum Batauorum*, a famous Vniuersity) *Gonde*, *Amsterdam*, the best, richest, and most peopled of all. And the *Hage*, a County in Latine *Haga Comitis*, which yet is not engirt with Walles.

Vtrecht.

Vtrecht is an Estate apart by it selfe (*Vltraiectum*) the principall Towne whereof beareth the same name; and it is seperated from that of *Holland*.

Zeland.

Zeland is likewise an Estate apart, sometime (heretofore) bearing the Title of a County, according as *Holland* did. Her chiefest Townes are *Meidelbourg*, and next to it *Zierrizee*; howbeit more Ancient then the other.

Flanders.

Flanders a County, hath thirty Leagues in length (which are but three dayes iourney of way) and twenty in breadth. Her principall Cities and Townes are at this present, *Gaunt*, *Bruges*, *Ypre*, *The Isle*, *Douay*, and *Tournay*. It hath two Principalities, *Gaure*, and that of *Vsbing*: Foure good Portes of the Sea, *Newport*, the *Escluse*, *Dengueque*, or *Donkerke* and *Ostend*, made famous in our time, for enduring a besieging of three yeares and an halfe. In this County the Inhabitants speake partly Dutch, and partly French, which they doe tearme *Flandre Gallicante*.

Artois.

Artois, as wee haue already said, hath for her good Cities and Townes, *Arras*, Saint *Omer*, *Bethune*, *Aire* and *Bapaulme*: *Therouane* and *Hesdin*, were spoyled in the time

time of King *Henry* the Second, and *Charles* the Fift Emperour. By the Treaty made at *Chasteau Cambresis*, betweene King *Henry* the Second, and *Dom Philip* the Second, King of Spaine, *An.* One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Fifty Eight, it was agreed by the said two Kings, that the Bishops Sea of *Therouane* (then ruined) should be transferred to *Bologne* on the Sea for the King; and to Saint *Omer* for the King of Spayne, which was done by consent of the Archbishop of *Rheimes*, Metropolitane. And equall diuision to be made of the Rents, on the Table, as well those Episcopall as Capitulary, and of all goods in generall appertaining to the Bishopricke, Church and Chapter of *Therouane*, with the Rights of Collation and other. Then to Attribute the one moity to the Bishopricke of *Bolongne*, the Country of the most Christian King: and the other moity to the Bishopricke of S. *Omer*, for the King Catholique.

Artois.

The people and Inhabitants of *Artois*, speake the French Language.

Henault.

Hanault, a County inhabited by the *Neruians*, touching or bordering on the County of *Namure*, and the Bishopricke of *Liege*. Her chiefest Townes are *Monts*, *Valenciennes*, *Quesnoy*, *Landrecy*, *Marienbourg* and *Maubeuge*.

Ostreuant.

Betweene *Artois* and *Henault*, is the Countrey of *Ostreuant*, where is the Monastery builded heretofore, by King *Charles* of France, Sir-named the *Bauld*. Of this Monastery speaketh *Meyer* in his Chronicle of *Flanders*, saying. That *Charles* the *Bald*, by his Letters Patents giuen at the Pallace of *Crecy*, the fift of the Ides of July, Indiction Eleuen, after the Romane account, and the yeare of Grace, Eight Hundred, Three Score and Eighteene, the Eight and Thirtieth yeare of his Reigne, and Second of his Empire: Gaue to the Conuent of the deuout Sisters (where was Abbesse *Hermintrude* his Daughter, Sister to *Iudith*, Wife of *Bauldwine Bras de Fer*) many Lands and Possessions.

The Monastery builded by King *Charles* the *Bauld* and his bounty thereto.

Carlus Rex Comobio Hasnonensi sito super Fluuium Scarbum in Comitatu Attrebatensi, pago Ostrebanto, vbi Hermentrudis filia eius, Vxoris ferrei Comitis Soror, Sacris praesidet Virginibus, multa contulit, eorumque bona ac Priuilegia confirmauit. Adiecit eidem Asmundsiper Scaldum, in Ostrobanto Vuerocinium: in Comitatu Tarauanensi Aucia-cum super Fluuium Vuelludam.

Monkes placed in sted of the Sisters or Nunnes.

In place of the Sisters or Nunnes, afterward there were appointed to bee blacke Monkes, and an Abbot. One of them vnder the Reigne of *Philip le Bell*, King of France and Nauarre, hauing receiued some wrongs from *John*, Count of *Henault*, who was very molestuous, in outraging the Monkes of this Abbey of *Henault*, and more particularly in abasing the Sergeants, which had informed against him confraendly vnder the Kings owne hand. He made his complaint to the Parliament, whereby a Decree (inserted at large in the Registers of the Court) The said *John* Count of *Henault*, was condemned to make an honourable amends naked, in his Shirt, with a halter about his necke, to desire pardon of God, and mercy of the King and Iustice, beside other greater amends and reparations. But vpon the earnest prayers and supplications of the said Count, the Halter was changed into Ribands of Silke; but the rest of the Decree remained in full force and vertue; only the place for this honourable amends excepted, which was performed at Saint *Quintins*.

Count *John* of *Henault* his Censure in the Parliament.

Out of the Chronicle of Flanders.

Here you may read what is set downe in the Ancient Chronicle of *Flanders*. *The Abbot of* Henault *pleaded a long time in Parliament against the Count* Iohn of Henault, *and at the length, by the large Priuiledges which were giuen him by the Kings of France, who had founded and supported the said Monastery: the Abbot obtained iudgement for his cause, by remaining in the especiall guardance of the Kings; for long time before they had beene Guardians to the place. To the said Monistery and diuers Sergeants of the Kings, the Count of* Henault *and his people, had offered many outrages and acts of disobedience. Proceeding so farre therein, that King* Philip *sent* Monsieur de Valois *his Brother, and a great power of Men to constraine Count* Iohn *of* Henault, *to beare himselfe more obediently. And at last it was ordered at Saint* Quintins, *whither the Count came and made amends according to the Kings will.* A note of most worthy obseruation for great Lords that dare rebell against Iustice, and the Officers thereof.

Luxembourg.

Luxembourg, a Duchy (heretofore wonne by *Monsieur Lewes* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, and whereof (by power against him) *Iohn* Duke of *Bourgongne* possessed him-

himselfe, where began the effects of the *Ioyners Plaine, and the mortall hatred which these two Princes bare to each other (as *Enguerran de Monstrelet* affirmeth to vs) hath three score and ten miles in circuit and compasse, being planted in the *Ardenes*. The Townes thereof are *Luxembourg*, *Arlon*, *Audemare*, *Thionuille* (the ordinary abiding of our Kings and Monarches of the Second Ligne, for the Royall sport of hunting, it being called in our Annales *Theodonis-Villa*, ruined by King *Henry* the Second) *Vireton*, *Montmedy*, *Tuoy*, *Neuf-Chastell*, and *Danuilliers*.

*Before spoken of in his Armes and Deuice.

In this Duchy of *Luxembourg* (where a very goodly Pyramides is to bee seene) there are Seauen Counties, and the small Towne of Saint *Hubert*, called the Towne of Contention, in regard it is seated on the Confines and limits of *Luxembourg*, & likewise of *Liege*, which hath many times beene the occasion of quarrels & debates, betweene the Inhabitants of these two Prouinces.

Namure.

Betweene the forenamed *Liege*, *Brabant* and *Henault*, is planted the County of *Namure*, washed with the Riuers of *Mosselle*, and of the *Sambre*, the first seate of our ancient French. It containeth foure Townes, as namely these, *Namure*, *Bouuines*, *Charlemont*, and *Valencour*. In all these Parts the French Language is spoken.

Within the space of thirty or forty yeares, or thereabout, they of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and the round neighbouring people, professing the Religion of *Luther*, *Caluine*, and others beside (called by some, Disturbers of the Romish Church, and her quietnesse) haue made a Common-wealth a part by themselues, vnder the name of Estates of the vnited Prouinces. Who (by force of Armes) haue freed themselues from subiection and homage to the Kings of Spaine, the Heyres to *Mary* of *Bourgongne*, and acknowledge themselues to bee a free people, by the Truce made betweene the King of Spayne *Dom Philip* the Third, and them: in the City of *Antwerpe*, the ninth day of *April* in *An.* One Thousand, Sixe Hundred and Eight.

The End of the Fourth Booke.

The

THE ORDER OF ENGLAND,

CALLED

Of the Blew Garter: Instituted in the yeare One thousand three hundred fortie seauen.

The Fift Booke.

CHAP. I.

England, sometime called *Albion*, and Great *Bretaigne*, which title it beareth at this present, vnder the famous King *Iames*, first of the name of *England*, and of *Scotland* the sixt: is an auncient Kingdome, wherein by the Lawes and Customes thereof, doe succeede the Females, as well as Masles; as is obserued by the Noble *Roman* Historian *Tacitus*, in the life of *Iulius Agricola*, who wholly made that great Iland subiect to the Roman Empire, as were the *Gaules* *Germanie* and *Spaine*.

This Isle of *Albion* was peopled (according to common report) by *Brute* and his followers, they being acknowledged by the name of *Bretons*, in the yeare of the World two thousand eight hundred and fiftie: And a thousand sixe hundred yeares before the Birth of our Sauiour and Redeemer Iesus Christ.

To this *Brute*, first Prince thereof, and from whom it receiued the Sirname of *Bretaign*, was giuen for his Armes: *D'Or au Lyon rampant de Gueulles, escartelé d'Azur, à trois Coronnes d'Or mises*



Peopled by *Brute* and his followers.

d Or miſes en Pal. Armes which haue bin oftentimes changed, as we ſhall perceiue in the purſuite of this Diſcourſe.

The permiſſion of *Conſtantine* the Great to the Kings of England.

For the Authors of the *Engliſh* Hiſtories doe write, that *Gurguintus* their two and twentieth King, carried for Armes in his Banner *D'Azur à trois Coronnes d'Or en Pal* without other quartering. And the ſame Hiſtorians write, that *Conſtantine* the Great Emperour gaue permiſſion to the Kings of *England*, to beare the Crowne Royall, cloſe and ſimme aboue, after the Imperiall manner, by a perticuler priuiledge of honor; whereas other Kings of thoſe times, had no other then a ſimple *Bonnet* or *Chappeau*. But the queſtion is to know, whether the Iſle of *England* had bin wholly conquered in the time of *Conſtantine*, & that very long time before, the *Romaines* did leaue Kings there; rather then in *Germany*, in *Spaine* and among the *Gaules*; conſidering, that whenſoeuer they ſubdued any Prouince vnder their obedience, they vſed to take away the noate of any other power, then their own, ſending ſuch Gouernors thither, as were of their owne naturall *Romaine* language.

The inſolence of the *Romans* in their Conqueſt.

We will forbeare to meddle with the reports of thoſe *Engliſh Romancers*, who before the conqueſt of their Iſle made by the *Romaines*, vnder the Emperor *Seuerus*, ſet downe threeſcore and three Kings, ſucceeding after *Brute* (who was their firſt King) to the time of *Lucius*, after whoſe death, they write, that the Emperor *Seuerus* paſſed into Great *Bretaigne*, with mighty *Romaine* troupes, poſſeſſing himſelfe thereof, and ended his dayes in the Citie of *Yorke*, the yeare of Grace two hundred and eleauen.

The Roman Emperour *Severus* dyed in Yorke.

They make theſe threeſcore & three Kings to ſucceede man by man, without any woman. And yet neuerthe leſſe, it is a caſe conſtant, that the right of this Iſle, *Iure gentium Dotis nomine*, the Caſtome of the Kingdome admitteth, and receiueth women in their ſucceſſion. We haue the fundamentall Law reported in the life of *Iulius Agricola*, by *Tacitus*, deciphering the Cuſtomes of the auncient *Bretons*, and the ſcituation of their Iſland. *Britanni hos atque talibus in ſtinctì Voadicea generis Reggi fœmina (Nec. enim Sexum in Imperijs diſcernunt) ſumpſere vniuerſi bellum.* This *Voadicea* or *Vadicea*, in thoſe times was Queene of Great *Bretaigne*, in which Kingdome (euen to this nation both Maſles and Females doe ſucceede; *Lancea ad fuſum tranſit.*

Sigibert, continuer of the Chronologie of *Euſebius*, and of S. *Hierome*, doe ſtruſt vs, that the inhabitants of this Iſland, for the ſpace of almoſt foureſcore yeares, were wholly expoſed to the ſpoyles and rauages of the *Scots* and *Piets*. In ſuch ſort, that being forſaken of the *Romains* ſuccour, by counſell of the Biſhop of *London*, they went into *Bretaigne Armorica* from whence their Anceſtours deriued their firſt originall and birth, as we are taught by venerable *Bede*) whereof was then King, one named *Conſtantin*, who gaue them his Brother, called *Conſtantine*, elected King of Great *Bretaigne*, in the yeare foure hundred and thirteene. He left three Children, the laſt whereof was *Vterpendragon*, who, as Son and Succeſſour had *Arthur*, King of Great *Bretaigne*, ſirnamed *The Great*.

Conſtantine the Conqueſt, or at leaſt King *Arthur*.

The ſame *Sigibert*, in the yeare of Grace foure hundred forty fiue, will haue this this *Arthur* to reigne in Great *Bretaigne*, and would haue vs to beleeue, that he was a braue and valiant Prince. But where ſhould he (in thoſe times) conquer thirteene Kingdomes, and performe ſuch admirable actions of Armes, as thoſe fabulous *Romancers* doe make him the Author of? They make him King of *Bretaigne Armorick*, which then was gouerned by her owne Princes.

In theſe times (as *Sigibert* telleth vs) the King of *Albion Vortigerne*, by aduiſe of the wiſeſt Barons of his Kingdome; aſſembled the moſt excellent Architects throughout the land, to build a Caſtell of Royall ſtructure, to ſerue as his retreate of aſſurance and faſety. But as the workeman (being many) laboured for ſeating the foundation thereof, the earth being vncertaine & quagging; all their paines proued in vaine. Then aduiſe was giuen him, to ſeeke for a man borne without a Father, and to ciment the bones of the Caſtell (which he would haue to be made) with his blood, by which meanes the foundation thereof would be firme and ſtable. A yong man was found, named *Merlin*, who was brought with his Mother before the King, and there *Merlin's* Mother confeſſed, that ſhe conceiued him by an *Incubus*, vnder the phantaſticke forme of a man. *Merlin* reuealed many hidden things to the King, and which ſhould happen afterward in the ſucceſſe of diuers yeares. He diſcouered alſo to the King, that

that vnder the foundation of the Caſtell which he intended to build, there was a Lake, and vnder it a Grotte or Denne, whereto two horrible Dragons reſorted, the one Red, which deſigned the *Bretons* his Subiects, whoſe Haire and Beards were Red; and the other White, which figured the *Anglo-Saxons*, dwelling in a Prouince of *Saxonie* in *Germany*. By a fight of theſe two Beaſts, which he cauſed to be performed in preſence of the King, the White Dragon had the victory ouer the other; to ſhew thereby, that the White ſkinned *Saxons*, ſhould one day ouercome this Iſle of *Bretaigne*, and make themſelues Lords thereof.

Merlins interpretation of the two Dragons fight.

He foretold, that *Aurelius Ambroſius* ſhould vanquiſh *Hengiſtus* in a field of battaile; that *Vortigerne* (to whom he ſpake) ſhould be taken and burned by the *Piets*; that after his death, this *Ambroſius* ſhould be King, and haue to his ſucceſſour *Vterpendragon* his Brother, and both the one and other ſhould be poiſoned. After them ſhould reigne the *Beare of Cornewall*, *Arthur the Great*, who ſhould be the ſupport and Protector of the Church. That he ſhould conquer the Weſterne Iſlands in the Ocean Sea; poſſeſſe the Prouinces of the *Gaules*; and make himſelfe dreadfull to the *Romane* power, but he ſhould haue a ſad and diſaſtrous end.

Arthur foretold to be a ſupporter of the Church.

He Propheſied mo couer, that the Metropolitane See of *London*, the Capitall Citie of the Kingdome, ſhould be transferred to that of *Canterbury*, ſometimes called *Dorderma*: And that the Archbiſhop of *Yorke* Saint *Sampſon*, with ſeauen other Biſhops, ſhould paſſe from Great *Bretaigne*, into the leſſer, called *Armorica*. That the *Anglo-Saxons* being become Maſters of Great *Bretaigne*, ſhould change the name thereof, and call it *Angle-land*. Alſo, that the *Engliſh* ſhould be conquered and ſubdued by the *Normans*, and many other things he propheſied beſide, yet all the aſſurance thereof he receiued from the ſpirit of lying. Theſe are extracts of fabulous *Romancers*, who neuer ſpeake a word of truth.

Angle-land, ſo called by the *Anglo-Saxons*.

Theſe *Romancers* of *England*, doe make this *Arthur*, *Author of the Knights of the Round Table*. A Table erected in a place of Fayerie-land, by the admirable cunning of the Prophet *Aterlin*. In my yonger dayes I read thoſe *Romances* of *Merlin*, and of the ſaid Round Table: Since when, I haue alſo ſeene a manuſcript Booke, beautified with many figures, wherein likewiſe was repreſented the Prophet *Merlin*, and his Round Table, with theſe Verſes in *French*.

Knights of the Round Table founded by King *Arthur*.

I.

MERLIN, ladis de ſon art & pratique,
Moult bien vſant ſelon l'ancien aage,
Edifia par chef d'œuure authentique,
LA TABLE RONDE en triomphant ouurage,
Et ſe monſtra ſi expert, & ſi ſage
En ſon ſcauoir, que ſon œuure hautaine,
Sans vice aucun eſtoit perfaicte, & pleine
D'honneur exquis, & Royale ornature.
Car de beauté eſtoit reſplendiſſante,
Et des ouuriers dicte en iudicature,
LA TA BLE RONDE en honneur triomphante.

II.

La Table eſtoit d'vn ouurage myſtique,
Bien prattique d'excellent aduentage,
Par Cheualiers en eſtat magnifique
La fit garder, & preſeruer d'outrage,
Qui tous eſtoient remplis de grand courage,
Bien reclamez en ceſte baſſe plaine,
En la gardant ſouffrirent maintes peines,
Pour l'approuuer par raiſon, & droicture,
Sur tout ouurage eſtre la plus plaiſante
Et demourer ſans quelque forfaicture
La TABLE RONDE en honneur triomphante.

III.

Vn Seige eſtoit en ceſte TABLE antique,

Bien

Bien ordonné d'œuure de haut parage,
Que Mesdisans ont iuge fantastique,
Plus dangereux que tempeste ou orage:
Mais tels Menteurs pleins de mauuais langage,
Furent confus, car la place tant saine,
Promise estoit par la Cour Souueraine,
A Galaad sur toute creature, &c.

The Verses thus Englished:

I.

MErlin *long since by his great Art and skill,*
Well fitted to that graue and auncient Age,
Erected an authentique Maister-piece:
The Table Round, *excelling all workes else.*
He shewed himselfe so expert and so wise
In depth of knowledge, that his worthy worke
Was perfect without errour, and truely full
Of Honor exquisite, and royall beautie,
Because therein it was resplendishing.
And tearm'd by workemen of greatest iudgement
The Table Round, *in Honor triumphant.*

Collected out of an ancient French Manuscript Chronicle.

II.

The Table was of Misticke workmanship,
Well practised for excellent aduantage,
By Knights of most magnificent degree;
Who kept it Nobly from scandale and outrage,
For all of them were of highest courage,
Well gouernde in their meanest actions.
To keepe it famous, they endurde great paines,
Approuing alwayes by reason and iustice,
Their deedes to be aboue all common reach,
And so continued without any impeach;
The Table Round *in Honor triumphant.*

III.

One seate there was at this auncient Table,
Appointed for deedes of highest eminence,
Which detractours iudged to be fantasticke,
More dangerous then rudest stormes and tempest,
But such Lyers full of all ill language
were confuted: for that Seate safe and sound,
Was promised by the Court Soueraigne
To Galaad, from any other creature, &c.

Concerning the *Incubi* and *Succubi* according to Antonius de Tuderano.

It is a matter vndoubtable and certaine, euen by the interrogatories of Witches and Sorcerers themselues, that in their Sabbats, deuilles are distinguished by *Incubi* and *Succubi*. Saint *Augustine*, the light of the Church, in the three and twentieth Booke, Chapter foure-score and eight of his Cittie of God, and S. *Thomas*, in his first Tome the three-score and first Question, the third Article, and other more beside, doe hold this commixing of deuils with men and women, for a matter no way to be doubted. The Doctor of Doctors, Saint *Hierome*, on the sixt Chapter of the Epistle of Saint *Paul* to the *Ephesians*, & after him Saint *Iustine* the Martyr, haue left vs in one word, that which may moue doubt of the mingling of Sathan and his minions, with any of the indifferent sexes. *Dæmones seruiunt prauis amoribus: & ex seminibus aliunde sumptis*, conuert into *Incubes* on the behalfe of Sorcerers. But whether of this damnable coition, a reasonable soule may be engendered, or no, the discourse would be too wearisome and tedious. The women of the ancient *Gothes*, as some

some Historians haue obserued, & the Daughters in *Turkie* haue made proofe. Wherto, without repetition of infinite examples, we may adde the vulgar oppinion, that of a *Iewishe* Maide, woed by an Incubus, Antechriste should be borne. Thus much hath bin said, varying somewhat from our former purpose.

The Women of the olde *Gothes*, and Maides of *Turkie*.

But returning againe to *Merlin*, he was in those times (as was verily credited) the Prince of Magitians, renowned to all ages after him, for a notable Iugler, Enchaunter and Magitian, and whose fame remained, and liueth yet in request, especially in the Countrey of our *Bretaigne*, vnder our two Kings *Charles* the Fifte and *Charles* the sixt, Father and Sonne. For the Chronicle of the good Duke of *Bourbon*, *Lewes*, second of that name (Authour of the Order of the *Thistle*, obserued before) informeth vs in the three-score and ninthe Chapter, that the Constable of *France*, *Messire Oliuer de Clisson*, in name of King *Charles* the Sixt his maister, defending the County of *Pointhieure*, against the Duke of *Bretaigne*; tooke the Towne of Saint *Brieu*, and the Bishops Castell, belonging to the said place. *A House, which was very neere to the Crosse of* Malthast, *where* Merlin *wrought his wonders.*

Merlin a man made very famous.

In the Chronicle of the Duke of *Bourbon Lewes* the Second.

The olde *Romancers* called such men Fayries, as were Magitians and Sorcerers, renowned and famous in their times, and who performed such actions, as exceeded the Order of Nature, and was indeed altogether impossible. As those men, of whom *Saxo Grammaticus* speaketh in his History of *Denmarke*, the Archbishops of *Vpsala*, Primats of *Gothia*, *Ioannes* and *Olaus Magnus*, Vncle and Nephew, in their Historics of the *North*: And the Spanish Monke *Torre-Quemada*, in the last Booke of his *Hexameron*. What this *Merlin* was, all the Historians of *England* do speake wonders of him, and either begin or finish (alwayes) their Narrations and serious discourses, with some one or other of his pretended Prophecies.

English Historians speaking of *Merlin*.

Iannes Leslæus, Bishop of *Rosse*, in his *Scottishe* History, Page an Hundred forty one, saith *Cæterum Vortigernus Scotorum scelerum Pœnas acerrimas postea luebat: Siquidem Aurelius Ambrosius Constantini Regis filius, eum vxorum Anhaicam Hengisti filiam, & Horos in turrim compulsos Igni subiecto miserrime consumpsit: id quod* Merlinus *Vates ex Nobili Fœmina (vt dicitur) Ab Incubo susceptus illi prædixerat.* The *Romancers* write, that this pretended Prophet was charmed by his Loouer or faire Friende, and transported into Fayrie-land, the Kingdome of King *Oberon*, and *Vrganda* the *Vnknowne*, where being placed in a Garden of pleasure, he there sleepes, and so still shall sleepe vntill the day of Iudgement. But returne we now to King *Arthur*.

Merlin his falling in to loue with the Lady of the *Lake*.

Sigebert, speaking of him, according to the History of *England*, in his time traduced out of Brittish into Latine, writeth, that he was successour to his Father *Vterpendragon*, the yeare of Grace foure hundred and seauenty. *Mortuo Vterpenaragon Rege, Substituitur in Regno filius eius* Arturus, *cuius mirabiles actus etiam linguæ personant Popularum, licet plura esse fabulosa videantur.*// It is said, that he fought with the *Sesnes* or *Saxons*, and subdued them, the *Scots* and *Picts*: he conquered *Ireland*, and made the Kings of the *Orcades* and of *Gothland* his vassailes and tributaries. And on further successe, made himselfe Master of *Denmarke* and *Norway*, whence he went and skirted in the *Gaules*, vanquishing in Combate the Gouernours of them for the *Romaine* Emperours. In such sorte, that by their saying (meere Fables) at *Paris* he helde his Seate and Throne Royall Nine whole yeares, at the end whereof, he returned againe into great *Bretaigne*, and after he had long time reigned there, he died in a Battaile, which he had against his Nephewe *Monredon*, in the yeare fiue hundred Forty two, (the fable of his long age.) That in all his Conquests, hee had the seruice of one Sworde or Courtle-Axe, called *Calsbourne*; a Launce named *Ron*; a Head-picce and Creast of fine golde, made in shape of a Dragons throate, and a Shielde, whereon was figured an Image of the *Sacred Virgin*, so *Sigebert* telleth vs. And now beholde what *Leslæus* saith in his *Scottish* History, Page an hundred fourty fiue, vnder the Reigne of the King of Scotland *Eugenius* the third.

Arthur held his Royall Throne at *Paris* for the space of nine yeares.

Or *Mordred*.

The Knightly furniture of King *Arthur*.

Scribunt Arthurum *Regem per hæc tempora Scotiam, Hiberniam, Islandiam, Finmarriam, Orcades insulas, Daniam, Suetiam, Liuoniam, Lituaniam, Prussiam, Pomeraniam, Gothiam, Hollandiam, Zelandiam, Brabantiam, Flandriam, Morinum, Armoricam Britanniam, totam denique Galliam vi expugnasse; Incolas, Gentiumque Duces Vectigales fecisse. Inde (vt Græcorum, Persarum, Medorum, aliorumque Reges ab eo victos præteream)*

ream) Lucium Romanorum Imperatorem sub iugum mississe. Multa me in eam sententiam inducunt, vt putem Hæc potius in Anilibus, Quam Analibus numerenda. *Verum (vt vt res sit) fuit Rex Arthurus animo inuicto, summaque virtute, & verum gestarum gloriæ insignis.*

Concerning the Knights of the Rounde Table.

And see also what the same Authour reporteth, Of the Knights of the round Table, whom he saith to haue seene in his time. *Hunc Arthurum Scribunt Quatuor supra Viginti Athletas Equestris Ordinis (quod rei bellicæ gloria præstabant) Insignibus Nobilitasse, ac rei militaris scientia, gloriaque magnitudine pares, pari omnes amore complexum fuisse. Cum omnes simul accumberent, nequis forte se primo in loco constitutum gloriose prædicaret, aut ad infimum locum deturbatum inuide cogitaret,* Mensam Rotundam ad Coronæ formam effingendam durauit. *Locum in quo omnes accumbere solebant* Rotundam Arthuri Tabulam, *& Nostrates, & Britanni appellant. Eandem ego mensam (Si Accolæ falsa quadam Maiorum superstitione conflictati, non errent) in Winthonien si Castro, ad æternam rei memoriam solemniter conseruatam, Militumque Equestrium nominibus vndique nota tam, non ita pridem aspexi.*

His words of the death of *Arthur*, & his Queene *Guenora*.

The same Authour, speaking of the death of the said *Arthur*, King of Great *Britaigne*, writeth, that he was slaine by the *Scottes* and *Picts*, on the Riuer of *Humber* in the Battaile which was giuen against him by *Eugenius*, third King of that name of the *Scottes*. And that his wife, named *Guenora*, was fast shut vp in a Tower, in a place called *Angusa*; where she remained all the rest of her life time, and that there her Sepulture was seene.

How *Arthur* & his Knights were seated at the Table.

This was deuised by the rare witt and inuention, of the *Romancers* of this *Round Table*, to make it equal in sitting for foure and twenty Knights, because when the King banquetted with them (as they say) the Precedency of the Knights was knowne to be in them, which were neerest seated to the person of the King. And concerning the rounde forme of this Table, euery one knoweth, that the *Romaines* had theirs made halfe rounde, and the rest wholly right as others for seruice, and because those Tables were tearmed by the Greeke Letter *Sigma* Martiall saith.

Septem Sigma *capit, Sex sumus, adde Lupum.*

The Tables of the *Gaules*.

But as for them of the *Gaules*, they were Rounde, and with diuers corners; as many such like are yet to be seene in *Paris*, and elsewhere, especially in the Chamber of Accountes at *Paris*. This is thus obserued by *Athenæus*, in the Fourth Booke of his *Dypnosophists*, in the Title *De Coena Celtarum*.

The Armes of King *Arthur*.

Diuers Armes are giuen to this *Arthur*. I haue seene an olde Booke of Blazon limned, which giueth him *D'Azur à Treize Coronnes d'Or*. Others of *Synople*, in the first and fourth Quarter *Vne Croix d'Argent, la premier Canton charge d'vn Soleil d'Or ayant l'image de la Vierge Marie au Mitan: le Deux & Troisiesme quartiers de Gueules trois Coronnes d'Or mises in Pal.*

The olde Coffin of King *Arthur* found.

Matthew Paris writeth, that in the yeare A thousand one hundred ninety and one the bones of the said *Arthur* were found at *Glasco*, enclosed within an olde Coffin neere vnto which were raised two auncient Pyramides, engraued with inscriptions but the Letters were so olde and ill formed, as nothing could bee knowen by them. This Tombe was found, as a ditche or trenche was made, for the enterment of a Religious man; for the earth being raised, they espied an olde Chest, whereon was a Crosse of Lead, with this Epitaphe. *Hic iacet inclytus Britonum Rex Arthurus in Insula Analonis Sepultus.* The place was sometime wholly enclosed with a M[ound] in the ground, and was named the Isle of *Avalon*, as much to say, as the Isle of Apples.

After *Arthur* succeeded *Constantius, Aurelius, Caretticus, Ethelbert*, who made his abyding at *Canterbury*. In his time Pope *Gregorie* sent Orthodox Preachers, to purdge Great *Bretaigne* of grosse heresies. After *Ethelbert* reigned successiuely

The Kingdom of *Canterbury* won by the *Saxons*.

Cadwan, Athelstane, Echenwald, Sygobert, Ecbert, Lotharius, Ceolrit, Baird, vnder whom the *Saxons* ouercame the Kingdome of *Canterbury*, and held it in possession sometime.

Sigibert, with diuers other Historians and Chroniclers doe tell vs, that they of Great *Bretaigne* were subdued by the *Saxons*, in the yeare of Grace Foure hundred fourescore and twelue. Others affirme it to bee in the yeare foure hundred foure fourescore and twelue. And others in the yeare Sixe hundred fourescore and six. And that the *Englishe*

Englishe and *Saxons* deuided the Isle of Great *Bretaigne* into Seauen Principalities and *Toparchies*, each of which were distinguished and knowne by different Armes.

Great *Bretaigne* deuided into seauen iurisdictions.

The Principall Kingdome was that of the *Saxons*, otherwise tearmed of the *Northumbrers*, or *Northumbers*, to the King whereof the auncient Romancers doe attribute for Armes, *D'Azur a la Croix Feurencee d'Or, cantonnee de quatre Merlettes, et vne en pointe de mesme.* It is said, that to King *Ardulf* the same Armes were giuen by King *Charlemaigne*, reseating him in his Kingdome, according as the Chronicle of *Laureshem* sheweth, in the yeare Eight hundred and eight. *Interea Rex Nordumbrorum de Britannia insula nomine Ardulf, Regno, et Patria pulsus, ad Imperatorem dum adhuc Noniomagi moraretur* (that is to *Noyon* in the Isle of *France*, or in *Picardie*, whereas the said Emperour *Charlemaigne* was exalted King of *France*) *venit et patefacto aduentus sui negotio,* Romam *proficiscitur, Romaynerad iens, per Legatos Romani Pontificis, et Domini Imperatoris in Regnum suum reducitur. Præerat ea tempestate Ecclesiæ Romanæ* Leo *Tertius, cuius Legatus ad Britanniam directus est Adolphus Diaconus de ipsa Britannis Saxo. &c.*

The principall Kingdome of the *Saxons*.

Armes giuen by *Charlemaigne* to King *Ardulphe*

The same Chronicler, in the yeare Eight hundred and nine. *Postquam Ardulphus Rex Nordumbrorum reductus est in Regnum suum, et Legati Imperatoris atque Pontificis reuersi sunt, &c.* The Armes giuen by *Charlemaigne* to the said *Ardulphe*, were (as is affirmed) conserued by the Kings of *England* his Successours, euen vntill the Reigne of *William the Conquerour*, who abolished them, to make his owne Royall Stemme there.

The *Saxons*, possession of Great *Bretaigne*.

The *English* and *Saxons* issuing out of *Germanie*, dwelt in the Countreyes of *Scandinauia*, and part of *Saxonie*, and of *Thuringe*, who being possessed of Great *Bretaigne*, made themselues famous, vnder diuers names according to the Climate, and scituation of the lands by them conquered, where they made their partitions East, West, North and South. And according to the testimony of *Mathew Paris*, a Monke of the Abbey of Saint *Albane* in *England*, the first King of the *West-Saxons* was named *Cerdicius*, of whom the descent and Ligne (sometimes allied to the most Illustrious Crowne of *France*) continued fiue hundred, threescore and eleuen yeares, without interruption (some Kings of *Denmarke* reserued, who held *England*) and euen till the death of *Edward* Sonne to King *Etheldred*) happening in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, threescore and sixe on the Eeue of the three Kings.

When the *Danes* were in *England*.

For the Succession of whom, because hee deceassed without issue, there happened contention, the Barons of *England* fauouring *Harold*, a Prince of their Nation. Yet so it followed neuertheless, that *William* Duke of *Normandie*, by the assistance of the King of *France*, *Phillip* first of that name, made himselfe Lord and Master of *England*.

The promise of *Harold* to Duke *William* of *Normandie*.

This *Harold* being cast vpon the Sea coaste of *Ponthieu*, by a stormie tempest of Winde, as he sayled on the *English* Seas, was brought to *William* then Duke of *Normandie*, and to free himselfe out of his power, hee promised to keepe and perserue for him, the right which he pretended to haue to the Crowne of *England*, by the deceasse of *Edward* without issue. And moreouer, was affianced to one of the said Dukes daughters, named *Alizon*. But seeing himselfe aduanced to the Royaltie, by fauour of the *English* Barons; he falsified the Oathes made by him, & kept not any one of them.

Honors alter manners.

Now this *William* was auouched to be a Bastard, by *Robert* Duke of *Normandie*, begotten by him in his amourous pursuites, on one named *Hellen*, daughter to a Groome of the Chamber (of the said *Robert*) named *Foubert*, who was the sonne of a Skinner.

The right of Duke *William* to the Crowne of *England*.

By two meanes hee had right to the Crowne of *England*. The first, because his Great Grandfather *Richard*, Second Duke of *Normandie*, had giuen his Sister *Emma* or *Emina* in mariage to the King of *England Ethelred*, and of that mariage was issued the said King *Edward*. Who seeing himselfe without children, and acknowledging the good kindnesses, which hee had receiued in *Normandie* of the said *William*, during the time of his banishment from *England*: He instituted (as his Heire and Successour in the Kingdome) the said Duke *William*; this we deliuer from the Auncient *English* Historians.

William receiued from Pope *Alexander*, an hallowed Banner of the said Dukes

Armes, who caried *De Gueules a Trois Leopards d'Or, L'un ſur L'autre*; And hauing with him a great number of Frenche Noblemen, dwelling in *England*, as deriued from the greateſt houſes thereof, euen to this very day: tooke Shipping from the Porte of Saint *Valery*, and landed in *England* at that of *Haſtingues*, in the Moneth of *Auguſt*, *Anno* One Thouſand Sixty and ſeauen. Neere to which Towne of *Haſtingues* was the battaile fought, wherein *William* the Baſtard had the victory, famous by the death of his contrary *Harold*, ſlaine by the ſhot of an arrow, fighting valiantly in the mideſt of his people. In this manner the Kingdome of *England* came to the Dukes of *Normandie*, by the winning of the Battaile, fought on the day of Saint *Calixtus* Pope, before the Ides of *October*. And of the Conqueſt of the ſaid Kingdome, *William* the Baſtard was ſirnamed the *Conquerour*. This change was preſaged by a great Comet, in memorie whereof this Diſtick was made, as it is reported by *Mathew Paris* in his Hiſtory of *England*.

The 20 day of October Duke *William* came into *England*, and the Battaile was fought with *Harold*.

Anno Milleno Sexageno quoque Seno,
Anglorum metæ flammas ſenſere Cometæ.

William the Conquerour had to wife *Mahauld* or *Mathilde*, daughter to the Count of *Flanders*, *Baudouin de L'Iſle*, by whom he had fiue daughters, and foure ſonnes.

The Iſſue of King *William* the Conqueſtour.

As namely *Cecile*, his eldeſt daughter, *Abbeſſe* of *Caen* in *Normandie*.

Conſtance, wife to *Alain Fergand*, Duke of *Bretaigne*.

Aliſon, affianced to King *Harold*, who neuer would eſpouſe her, but died vnmaried.

Alix, who had to her husband the Count of *Blois Stephen*, after whoſe death, ſhe entred into Religion at *Marſigny* among the Nunnes.

The youngeſt died in her infancie.

His Sonnes were *Robert* the eldeſt.

Richard; theſe two were borne in *Normandie*.

William, ſirnamed the Red.

And *Henry*.

The Genealogie is collected by Matthew Paris.

This Genealogie is thus ſet downe in the Regiſters the Courte, but it is otherwiſe in *Mathew Paris*, who vnder the yeare One thouſand, Sixty eight, nameth the birth of *Henry* in *England*, ſaying that his Elder Sonne *William* the Red, and *Robert* the ſecond, were borne in *Normandie*. And that in the ſaid yeare, *Robert* his ſecond Sonne, whom he had made Earle of *Northumberland*, was ſlaine by the people of the ſaid Countrey. And yet notwithſtanding, hee contradicteth himſelfe ſoone after, declaring the Genealogie in theſe tearmes. *Ex Regina Mathilda Liberos multos procreauit, Robertum ſicleicet, Ricardum, Willelmum & Henricum: quorum Primogenitus Robertus, ad hæc patre viuente, Normanniam negari molleſte ferens, in Italiam abijt ira ſuccenſus; vt ſibi Bonifacij Marchionis in Vxorem ducta, patri, affinibus adiutus, bellum moueret. Sed hac petitione fruſtratus, Philippum Francorum Regem, contra patrem ſuum excitauit. Quare benedictione et hæreditate paterna orbatus, in Anglia Regnum poſt mortem patris ſui non ſucceſsit, Ducatum Normanniæ autem vix retinuit.* And the ſame Author, ſpeaking of the death of the ſaid King of *England William* the Conquerour, happening at *Rouen* One Thouſand, Foureſcore and eight, the eight of the Ides of *September*, ſaith that *Normanniam filio ſuo Roberto* Anglian, *poſſeſſionem maternas, cum theſauris Willelmo Ruffo legauit.* By his teſtament he leagued *Normandie* to *Robert* his eldeſt Sonne; but in fauour of *William* the Red, all his Treaſures, goods and poſſeſſions, as alſo the riches of his Mother Queene *Mahauld*, and the Kingdome of *England* he left to him.

The death of *William* the Conquerour.

William Rufus his comming to the Crowne.

In this manner *William* the *Red*, ſecond of that name, came to the Crowne of *England*. *Robert* his Brother, going in the voyage to the Holy land (in imitation of the Frenche Paladines) the yeare of Grace One thouſand foureſcore and ſixteene, Hee pawned the Dutchie of *Normandie*, for the ſumme of *Ten thouſand poundes of Money*. The Red hauing reigned *Thirteene yeares*, was ſlaine with an Arrowe, (ſhot at a Hart ſwiftly purſued) by one of the ordenary attendants on the ſaid King, named *Walter Tyrell*, of the Kings Chamber, vnwittinly, and not on any pretended purpoſe, on the next

The death of *William Rufus*.

next day after Saint *Peter ad Vincula*, the ſecond of *Auguſt*, in the ſecular yeare One thouſand, an hundred. His death is notably deſcribed by the Monke *Mathew Paris*.

By his vnbemoaned death, *Henry* his Brother, firſt of that name, and laſt of the Sonnes to *William* the Baſtard, came to enioy the Crowne of *England*, on the day of our Lady in Auguſt, and the ſame yeere. By his firſt wife *Mathilde* or *Mahauld*, daughter to *Malcolme* King of *Scottes*, and of Saint *Margaret* his Queene, hee had a Sonne and a daughter.

Henry Beauclarc firſt King of the name.

The Sonne was *William*, Duke of *Normandie*.

The daughter was *Mahauld*, married in the yeare, One Thouſand, one hundred and nine, to the Emperour *Henry*, Fift of that name. And *Mahauld* the Queene of *Scottes* dying in the yeare One Thouſand one Hundred and Eighteene, the ſaid King *Henry*, making haſte to a ſecond mariage; in the yeare one thouſand, one hundred, twenty one, tooke to wife *Adela*, Daughter to *Geoffrey*, Counte of *Louuaine*, who left him no children.

The drowning of King *Henries* children.

The yeare before, *William*, the eldeſt Sonne to King *Henry*, was drowned in the Sea, paſſing from *Normandie* towardes *England*, with his Brothers and Siſters Baſtardes, and a great number of chiefe Officers of *England*: ſo that there remained to the ſaid King *Henry*, but his only daughter *Mahauld* for heire, and the Emperour *Henry* her husband being dead, in the yeare, One thouſand, one hundred, twentie ſixe, ſhee returned into *England*, where ſhe was acknowledged as Queene, after the deceaſſe of her Father. And the yeare following, *Foulques* Counte of *Anion*, hauing beene at the voyage of *Ieruſalem*, eſpouſed there the Eldeſt Daughter of King *Baldwine* the ſecond, with promiſe to ſucceede him in the Kingdome of *Ieruſalem*, as he did. So that the Countie of *Anion*, being lefte remayning to *Godfrey*, ſirnamed *Planta-Geneſt*; becauſe he tooke delight in that branch or ſtalke (as is auouched by *S. Lewes*) the ſaid Widdow *Mahauld* maried with him: And by this mariage three Sonnes were borne.

Mahauld the Empreſſe maried *Godfrey Plantagenet*, and their iſſue.

Henry, borne in the yeare One thouſand, one hundred, thirty two.

Geffory, in the yeare One thouſand, one hundred, thirty foure, hee dying without iſſue.

And *William*, who was Earle of *Mortaing* by his owne ſtock, and by that of his Wife *Comes Varennarum*, the only daughter to *William* the third Earle *Warren*, who dyed in the voyage beyond the Seas, where he followed King *Lewes* the younger. We gather all the Genealogies of the famous houſes of *France*, out of the Regiſters of the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, where they are inſerted altogether equally.

Now, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand, one hundred, thirty ſiue, the firſt day of December, died in *Normandie* the King of *England Henry*, firſt of that name, who in his life time had receiued the Empreſſe *Mahauld* his heire and onely daughter, Queene of *England*, and ducheſſe of *Normandie*.

The death of King *Henry* the firſt in *France*.

Yet it chaunced neuertheleſſe, that *Stephen* Counte of *Bologne*, Sonne to *Stephen* Counte of *Bologne* (Brother to *Thibauld* Counte of *Blois*) and of *Adela*, fourth daughter of *William the Baſtard*, firſt King of that name of *England* (by conſequent Nephewe on the mothers ſide) to deceaſſed *Henry* the firſt, notwithſtanding their Oath; was receiued by the States of the Kingdome, and crowned King of *England* at *London*, two and twenty dayes after the deceaſe of his vnckle. *Mahauld* being payed with this Coyne. *Fore nimis turpe ſi tot Nobiles fœminæ ſubderentur*, ſo ſaith *Mathew Paris*.

Stephen crowned King of *England*.

The Count of *Anion* was as ſpeedily in *Normandie*, as his wife in *England*, where, in a foughten Battaile, ſhe vanquiſhed King *Stephen* her Couſine, tooke and led him priſoner on Candlemas day, in the yeare One thouſand, one hundred and forty. But deliuered againe the ſame yeare, in exchange of Counte *Robert*, Brother to *Mahauld* the Empreſſe. Ten yeares after, *Henry* was receiued *Duke of Normandie*, for which he did Liege Homage to King *Lewes*, Seauenth of that name.

King *Stephen* ouercome by *Maude* the Empreſſe.

In the yeare, One thouſand, one hundred and fifty, died the ſaid Counte of *Anion Geoffrey Plantageneſt*, in the Caſtell of *Loir*, the ſeauenth of the Ides of December. The King of *France*, Seuenth of the name, being returned from his voyage beyond the Seas, was ſeparated from *Alianor* of *Aquitaine* his wife, for her impudicity. Obſerue here what is ſaid by *Mathew Paris*. *Eodem anno celebratum eſt* Diuortium *inter. Ludo-*

The death of *Geoffrey Plantagenet* Counte of *Anion*.

Ludouicum Regem Francorum, & Alienor Reginam vxorem suam, propterea quod diffamata esset de adulterio, Etiam cum Infideli, *& qui de genere fuit Diaboli.* Let vs deliuer his wo des more clearely.

Guy, Duk of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictou*, had by *Adelaida* of *Nauarre* (of o. thers named *Ermesinda*) Daughter to *Don Garcia*, Sixt of that name, King of *Nauarre*, two Children, to wit, *William* and *Mary* who was Lady of *Melle*, and of *Lusignan* in *Poictou*, of which Seigneuries shee was called *Mellusina*, and married with *Raymond de Crotsic*, Count *de Foresl* in *Bretaigne*, which is in the Ile *de Ruis* (sometime called *The firme Iland*) where is an Abbey which beareth the same name, whereof *Peter Abaylard Breton* (Founder of that of *Paraclet*, betweene *Noyant* on *Seyne*, and *Troyes* in *Champaigne*) was Abbot sometime, and managed it in such sort, as himselfe describeth in his owne life.

Peter Abaylard Founder of the Abbey called *Paracletum.*

William Duke of *Aquitaine* the Fourth, and Third Count of *Poictou* of that name, by his Wife *Gisle*, Daughter to *William* Duke of *Normandy*, had a Sonne (bearing the same name as his Father and Grandfather did) Fift of the name, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Fourth Count of *Poictou*. Who by *Ioane*, Daughter to a King of *Scotland*, had two Daughters: *Alianor*, Wife to King *Lewes* the Seauenth, called the *Deuout*, and *Peronella*, married to the Count of *Vermandois Raoull* the younger, Sonne to the Elder Sonne of *Monsieur Hugues de France*, tearmed the Great, Brother to King *Philip* the First.

This *William*, at the beginning of his gouerning, was a cruell and vnruly Prince, robbing Churches, and contemning the Ministers of them. But being exhorted by Saint *Bernard*, Founder of *Clerueaux* (a Monke of holy life) hee tooke better course, repenting and making satisfaction for his offences; hee went the Voyages of our Lady of *Mont-Serrat*, Saint *Iames* in Spayne, and to Ierusalem.

Saint *Bernard* Founder of *Clerueaux.*

At his returne from them, after hee had visited the places of deuotion at Rome, hee, and three of his Seruants, withdrew into *Toscane*, the Territory of *Sienna*, neere to *Chastillon*, a place very Desert and solitary (sometime called *Stabulum Rhodis*, and at this instant *Male-Val*) where the said *William*, Founder of the Religious *Guillemins*, after his owne name (called *White Cloakes at Paris*) happily departed out of this life, about the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, One Hundred and Forty, but according to some, Fifty Sixe.

The *Guillemins* founded by this repentant *William.*

King *Lewes* the *Deuout* and Pittifull, being Crossed in the Councell of *Vezelay*, for the Voyage ouer the Seas; tooke his Wife Queene *Alianor* in company with him. Shee affecting change, complained among her Houshold People, that shee was married to a Monke: I alledge the words of *Mathew Paris*, throughout the History of England in his time, and not any other. Shee became enamoured of a Prince of the *Sarazens*, named *Saladine*, who was famed to bee a braue and valiant Knight, in the Barriers belonging to the Goddesse of Loue, and Letters hauing flowne from either side (pretending matter of other subiect) an enteruiew was made between the Kings & Christian Princes, with consent of *Saladine*, at *Melande*, where hauing seene Queen *Alianor* at his pleasure, he became so wounded; that the sore (hauing long time festered) gaue further instruction for recuring, and (in time) succeeded to the rest. *Nulla tam occlusa fores, quin pateat aditus Feli, & Adultero*, so say the Greekes as a common Prouerbe.

Queene *Alianor* grew enamoured of *Saladine.*

Saladine burnt vifull in his Tombe 1193 Yeers.

All such Christian Prisoners, as shee desired to haue of the said Prince *Saladine*, were speedily sent her well cloathed, and without any ransome. These familiarities were the cause, that the King her Husband, and the Christian Princes (there assembled for the good of Christendome) would haue had her made some assignation & rendeuous to the said *Saladine*, for the surprizing of him by an Ambuscado: which shee would neuer yeeld to doe, but contrariwise, gaue him aduertisement thereof, resoluing to make her selfe banquerout, both of God, her honor and husband, to follow *Saladine*.

Which caused the said Deuout King to returne home into France, where hee assembled the Prelates and Lords of his Parliament at *Baugency* on *Loire*, by whose Decree, hee separated himselfe from his Wife, alleadging the Orders prohibited by the Church, to Contract Marriage, and laying some blame on himselfe, only

only to couer the honour of the said *Alianor*, by whom hee had two Daughters married to two Brothers.

Mary to *Henry le Large*, Count Palatine of *Champaigne*, and *Brie*.

Alix, to *Thibauld*, Fourth of the name, Count of *Blois*.

But hee was reproued by his Councell, vpon good and iust cause, in regard hee gaue her liberty, to withdraw freely into her owne Lands, which were of very great extendure, and (by the meanes of this Diuorce) were very vnaduisedly disunited from the Crowne of France. Because in such occurrences he ought (imitating the Kings his Predecessors) to haue limited her to some place of assurance, and there haue giuen her leysure (during the remainder of her life time) to acknowledge her offence.

She married againe with *Henry* the Sonne to *Geoffery* of *Anion.*

Alianor was not long without company: For the yeare after her separation, to wit, the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, One Hundred, Fifty One, shee espoused *Henry* (Eldest Sonne to *Geoffery* of *Anion*, and the Empresse *Mathauld* of England) Duke of *Normandy* and Count of *Anion*, *Touraine* and *Maine*, by his owne right, and by the iust Title of the said *Alianor* his Wife, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictou*; by meanes of which accessions, hee was one of the greatest and most potent Princes in the Kingdome of France. So that in the Yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Fifty Two, *Henry* of *Anion* crossed from *Normandy* into England, with a Fleete of two and thirty Shippes, well furnished with good Soldiours and prouision for Warre, where hee began rough encounters against King *Stephen*, who the same yeare, and on the day of Saint *Laurence*, lost his Sonne *Eustace* of *Bologne*, by a sodaine and vnexpected death.

The death of *Eustace*, Sonne to King *Stephen.*

In the yeare Fifty and Three, the Prelates and Barons of England, endeuored to make peace betweene King *Stephen* and Duke *Henry* of *Anion*, vpon these conditions: That the King should adopt, and accept (as his Sonne and Successour) the said *Henry* of *Anion* in the Realme of England, yet the King himselfe to enioy his Royall right, all the rest of his life time.

Which being thus agreed on, and the States of England hauing sworn obeysance to *Henry*, and acknowledging him for their Prince, after the Kings decease: it fortuned that hee liued not long after, because he dyed the yeare following, the eight of the Calends of *Nouember*. So by his death, *Henry* of *Anion*, Second of the name, in the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Fifty Foure, the Sunday before Christmasse, the fourteenth of the Calends of *Ianuary*, was solemnly crowned King of England at Westminster, by *Thibauld* Archbishop of Canterbury. This *Henry* was called *Short-Mantle*, because hee delighted to goe cloathed in short Garments.

Henry of *Anion* Surnamed *Short-Mantle*, crowned King of England.

In the Yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Fifty Two, Queene *Alianor* was deliuered in Childbed of her first Sonne, whom our Histories call *Henry*, & *Mathew Paris William. Eodem Anno natus est Dux Henrico ex Alienore vxore sua Filius, & vocatus est Willielmus, quod proprium nomen est Dux Aquitanorum & Comitibus Andegauensium.* But this childe (according to the said *Paris*) died the yeare an Hundred, Fifty Sixe.

The same Author maketh this *Henry*, Second Sonne, of whom he appointeth the birth to bee in the yeare an Hundred, Fifty Fiue, & in the City of *London* the chiefe City of England. *Natus est Londonijs pridie Calendas Martij, Henrico nono Anglorum Rege, ex Regina Alienore Filius legitimus, & vocatus est Henricus.*

The Conquest of Ireland intended by the King.

In the same yeare, the said second King *Henry* resolued on the Conquest of Ireland, whereof he demanded the title, and permission to conquer it, of Pope *Adrian*, paying yearely for euery house, one penny of an hundred, into the Treasury of Saint *Peter*, which was granted vnto him.

The yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Fifty and Seauen, was borne *Richard*, third Sonne of King *Henry* & Queene *Alianor*, in the City of *Oxford* in England. And the yeare following, the said *Alianor* lay in of a fourth Sonne, who was named *Geoffrey*. And the Chancellour of England *Thomas Becket*, went on the behalfe of the King his Maister, to demand in Marriage Madame *Margaret* of France, Daughter to King *Lewes* the younger, and of Queene *Constance*, Daughter to *Alphonso*

A Marriage for the young Prince of England *Henry*.

Alphonso, seauenth King of *Castile*, for the Prince of England *Henry*, then aged but three or foure yeares onely, which was granted to him.

King *Lewes* of France Sirnamed the Lyon.

In the yeare One Thousand, One Hundred, Sixty Two, Queene *Alianor* was deliuered of a Daughter at *Rouen*, who had the name of her Mother *Alianor*, and who in the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Sixty Nine, was Wife to *Alphonso*, Eight of the name, King of *Castile*. And of this Marriage was borne, the wife and vertuous Queene *Blanche*, Wife to King *Lewes*, Eight of the name (Sirnamed the Lyon, for his inuincible courage, and of *Mont-pensier*, because that after the taking the City of *Auignion* from the *Albigeois* Heretiques, where hee was imprisoned, and returning into France, hee dyed at *Montpensier* in *Auuergne*) and of this Marriage was borne the King *S. Lewes*, and many other children.

Mahauld, or *Maud* another Daughter married to the Duke of *Saxony*.

Formerly, this *Alianor*, Wife to *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, had another Daughter named *Mahauld* (as wee vnderstand by the said *Mathew Paris*) who was married to the Duke of *Saxony Henry*, Father to the Emperour *Otho*, fourth of the name, (of whom we haue spoken in our Second Booke) who, in the right of his Mother contended (but to no purpose or benefit) for the Kingdome of England, after the death of his Vncles, & the murders committed on the persons of *Arthur* and *Alianor* of *Bretaigne* (children to the Prince *Geoffrey* of *Bretaigne*) by the meanes and in the right of *Constance* his Wife, & of *Richmond* his chiefe claime, by King *John without-Land*, their Paternall Vncle.

Of this Alliance of *Mahauld* of England, and *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, *Mathew Paris*, saith. *Anno Dominj, M. C LXV. Reginaldus Colonienſis Archiepiſcopus venit à Weſt-monaſterium ad Regem Henricum, accepturus in coniugem Matildem Filiam Regis Primogenitam Henrico Saxoniæ Duci.*

Raymond, Count of *Tolosa* buried by the Priests without Christian burrall.

In the same yeare Queene *Alianor* had another Daughter, who was called *Ioane*, Wife in first Marriage to *William* King of *Sicilie*. In her second Marriage, shee espoused *Raymond de Saint Gilles*, Count of *Tolosa*, fourth of the name, Protectour of the *Albigeois* Heretiques. For this reason in my Manuscript Chronicle, concerning the life of this Count of *Tholosa*, and of *Simon de Mont-fort* his aduersary, I tearme it *Peſſime Hereſe*, according to the language of the time. And for this cause, *Raymond* the younger his Sonne, and last Count of *Tholosa*, could neuer obtaine power and permission of the Church, to bury the body of the said old Count *Raymond* his Father, in any hallowed ground, or to take it out of the prophane place, where yet his Graue is to be seene in the Garden of the Commandery of Saint *Iohn* of *Ieruſalem*, neere to the *Dealeade*.

The birth of King *John* Sirnamed *Without Land*.

In the yeare, an Hundred, Sixty Sixe, the said Queene *Alianor* was deliuered of a Sonne, who had to name *John*, and was Sirnamed (by his Father) *Without Land*.

Now the Count of *Bretaigne Conan* being dead, in the Yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Sixty Eight, *Constance*, Daughter and Sister to the Kings of Scotland; left by his Wife but one Daughter (bearing the name of her Mother) as his onely Heyre, whom the King of England caused to be espoused to his third Son *Geoffrey*, whom the King of England caused to be espoused to his third Sonne *Geoffry*, who was Count of *Bretaigne*, in the right of his Wife *Constance*, as we haue already said in the Tract of the *Ermine*.

King *Henry* caused his Sonne to bee Crowned King of England in his owne time.

In the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, and Seauenty, the fourth of the Calends of *July*, King *Henry* the Second caused his Eldest Sonne *Henry* to be crowned King of England (then aged about fifteene yeares) by *Roger*, Archbishop of yorke, and the Bishops Suffragans to the Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

The death of *Becket* Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

In the yeare after the said Coronation, *Thomas Becket* (whose Genealogie wee haue set downe in our History of *Nauarre*) Archbishop of Canterbury and Primate of England, was slaine in his Church, on a Tuesday morning in the feast of Christmas, One Thousand, One Hundred, Seauenty One. Hee was the yeare following Canonized, and ranked among the Saints Martyrs, his Graue reported to bee night and day full of Miracles: The foure Murderers which had slaine him, and the King of *England Henry* (reputed to bee Author of the Murder) were excommunicated by the Pope. And during that yeare, the Primatiall Church, being without diuine Seruice in it, had the Altars vnpaued, and the whole Church likewise, as left

left naked, and the Belles vn-hung, in signe of sorrow and sadnesse, vntill the Day of Saint *Thomas* the Apostle, when by authority from the Pope, the Church was pu-rified, and diuine Seruice againe restored, by *Bartholmew* the Bishop of *Oxford*, who, there celebrated Masse, and made a Sermon beginning with these words: *Secundum multitudinem dolorum meorum in corde meo, conſolationes tuæ lætificant animam meam.*

King *Henry* absolued by the Pope, and tyed to first conditions both Father and Sonne.

And the yeare following, King *Henry* the Father had his Absolution from the Pope, with many conditions and satisfactions, as well to the Church of *Canterbury* as to the Kindred and friends of the reputed Martyr Saint *Thomas* of *Canterbury*, despoyled of their goods, and banished out of England; with charge also to send (at his owne cost) Two Hundred men of Armes for one whole yeare, ouer the Seas, to fight with the *Sarrazins* in the Holy Land.

This was done in *Normandy*, and the Kings, both Father and Sonne, promised & sware to fulfill the Conditions in euery poynt, according as they were prescribed by *Albert* and *Theodore*, Cardinalls and Legates to Pope *Alexander*, Third of that name.

The young King comming into England with his new-married Queene.

This being done, the young King returned into England, leading with him his newly espoused Wife, Madame *Margaret* of France, crowned Queene by *Retrou*, Archbishop of *Rouen*, assisted with the Suffragans, belonging to the Primacy of *Canterbury*, the Second of the Calends of *September*, in the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Seauenty Two.

The young King *Henry* in Armes against his Father.

The next yeare ensuing, the young King *Henry* tooke Armes against his Father, in such sort, as all England was (in an instant) filled with partialities, taking and re-taking Townes and places, with robberies, slaughters and murders; as was prophe-sied before by the Martyre Saint *Thomas*, and before his death. The young King withdrawing himselfe out of England, went into France, to King *Lewes* the younger, his Father in Law, with him were ioyned his Brethren, *Richard* Duke of *Aquitaine*, and *Geoffrey*, Count of *Bretaigne*, by the aduice and councell of *Alianor* their Mother. So the Kings Father was punished for *Beckets* death, by the fruit of his owne loynes, who still pursued him (saith *Mathew Paris*) euen to death. But by mediation of King *Lewes* the Seauenth, peace was made betweene the Father and his Sonnes, who (according to their duty) desired pardon of him, because they had risen and rebelled in Armes against him.

Queene *Elianor* reconcileth the Sonnes to their Father.

It fortuned in the yeare One Thousand, One Hundred, Foure Score & Three that the King Father would compell his Sonnes, *Richard* Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictou*, by his Mother, and *Geoffrey* the Count of *Bretaigne*, in right of his Wife *Constance*, to doe homage for their Lands to their Elder Brother King *Henry* the younger. Against which they opposed themselues, saying: *That they were men, and faithfull Subiects to the King of France, their Soueraigne Lord*, and so were they not to him of England.

The death of King *Henry* the younger in France.

This refusall was the cause that the Father leuied an Army, which hee committed to the Conduct of his Sonne King *Henry*, to make them obey him. But while the busines went forward, *Henry* the young King dyed in the Flower of his age (being aged eight and twenty yeares) on Saint *Barnabies* day, in the same yeare, Foure Score and Three, and was buried before the High Altar in the chiefe Church of *Rouen*.

His Queene buried in the City of *Acres*.

Queene *Margaret*, his Widdow, was afterward remarried to *Bela* King of *Hungary*; after whose death, shee spent the rest of her life in the Holy-Land, and was buried in the City of *Acres*. The forenamed King *Henry* the younger deceased without issue, in the Castell of *Martell*, in the Vicounty of *Turen*, thus writeth *Mathew Paris*. *In flore iuuentutis ſuæ, cum annum ætatis Vigeſimum Octauum compleuiſſet, intra Gasconiam, in illotractu terra, quæ* Torroina *dicitur, apud Caſtellum* Martel, *in feſto Sancti Barnabæ Apoſtoli, Rex iunior è medio ſubſtractus eſt.*

The death of *Geoffry* Count of *Bretaigne*.

This death was followed with that of his Third Brother, *Geoffrey* Count of *Bretaigne*, hee deceasing at *Paris*, as we haue obserued in the Third Booke, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, One Hundred, Foure Score and Sixe. *Eodem anno* Gaufridus *Comes Britanniæ, & Regis Angliæ Filius diem clauſit ſupremum, Decimo Quarto Kalen-*

Kalendas Septembris, & ſepultus eſt Pariſijs, in Eccleſia beatæ Mariæ *in choro Canonicorum. Reliquit autem duas filias, quas genuerat ex Conſtantia vxore eius filia, videlicet Comitis Britannia, quæ etiam tempore quo vir eius obijt grauida fuit, quæ poſtea peperit Arthurum illum vocauit.*

The death of King *Henry* the ſecond at *Chinon* in France.

Two yeares after, the King of France *Phillip Auguſtus*, by force of Armes conſtrained the ſaid King *Henry* the ſecond, to make peace with his Sonne *Richard*, and as well to reſigne to him the Kingdome of *England*, as alſo whatſoeuer he poſſeſſed in France by his Fathers inheritance. Which being done at *Tours*, he came to *Chinon*, where (in griefe) he tooke his bed, and three dayes after this agreement, he dyed at the ſaid place of *Chinon*, in the yeare One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and eight, the Octaues of Saint *Peter* in Iune. As they carried his body to be interred in the Monaſtery of *Font-Euraud*, Royally cloathed, the Crowne of Gold on his head, rich Gloues on his hands, Buskins of cloath of gold on his legges, guilt Spurres on his heeles, his great Seale on his finger, the Scepter in his hand, and Sword by his ſide; hauing his face bare and vncouered: *Richard* his Sonne, came running to the conuoye, and preſenting himſelfe before the corps, ſuddenly blood ſtarted forth at the noſe of the dead King, and ran out extreamely boyling. *Conſtitim erupit ſanguis ex naribus Regis mortui, ac ſi indignaretur ſpiritus in aduentu eius, qui eiuſdem mortis cauſa eſſe credebatur, vt videretur ſanguis clamare ad Deum*: So ſaith *Mathew Paris*. Such ſights are ordinarily ſeene, at the approachings and confrontings of murderers of the murdered. And this accident was followed by the death of *Mabaulá*, wife to the Duke of *Saxon*, Daughter to the ſaid King *Henry* the ſecond, ſhee being come into *England*, and grieuing for the deceaſe of her Father.

The dead Kings body bled at the preſence of his Sonne *Richard*.

In his eſtate and dignities ſucceeded *Richard*, firſt of the name, and for the firſt act of his reigne, he ſet at libertie Queene *Elianor* his Mother, whom the King her husband had kept in ſtrict impriſonment. Fifteene yeares he had continued in *England*, in the Ides of *Auguſt*, and after he was abſolued by the Archbiſhops of *Canterburie*, of *Rouen* and of *Treues*, becauſe he had borne Armes, and made warre ſo many times againſt his Father: he proceeded to his Sacring and Coronation, which is particularly deſcribed by *Mathew Paris*, becauſe the Crowne of *England*, being falne into the houſe of the Counts of *Anion*; many ceremonies were therein vſed, belonging to that of the moſt Chriſtian Kings of France, to whom they were allied.

The Sacring & Crowning of King *Richard* the firſt.

The meeting appointed to be at *Weſtminſter*, and not at *London*, the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, the Clergie in order went foremoſt with the Croſſe, holy Water and perfuming Cenſors, cloathed in their goodlieſt Coapes, followed by Archbiſhops, Biſhops and Abbots in their Pontificall habits. So went they on to the doore of Duke *Richards* Chamber, whence they conducted him into the Church and royall Chappell of *Weſtminſter*, and before the high Altar thereof, in a ſolemne Proceſſion. In the midſt of the Biſhops and Cleargie, went foure Barons, each bearing a rich Candleſticke, with waxe tapers lighted in them, being followed by two Earles, the firſt whereof carried the Scepter Royall, on the top whereof was a ſigne or marke of Gold (*Mathew Paris* doth not expreſſe it, *Sceptrum Regale, in cuius ſummitate ſignum erat aureum*) and the other a royall Rod, hauing a Doue on the end thereof. After them went two other Earles, and one in the midſt of them, who carried three Swords in faire guilded Scabards. Next followed ſixe Earles and Barons, bearing an Exchecker (*portantes Scacarium vnum*) whereon were the Royall ornaments, after which followed the Earle of *Exceſter* alone, bearing aloft the Crowne Royall, enriched with infinite precious Stones, and then went the King betweene two Biſhops, ouer whoſe head foure Barons carried a goodly Canopie or Heauen of State, on foure golden Lances.

The manner of the Royall pompe in performance.

Being come to the Altar, before the people and Cleargie, the King ſware vpon the Euangeliſts, and many Reliques of Saints, to giue (all his life time) due honour and reuerence to God, to his holy Church, and to the Paſtours thereof; he ſwore and promiſed alſo, to render good Iuſtice to the people, whom God had committed to his charge; to aboliſh all euill Lawes and bad cuſtomes, and to ordaine ſuch

as are good. Which words being ſpoken, the Biſhops and Chamberlaines attending on him, tooke off his ordenary garments, except his Breeches and Shirt, which was made open and vnſowne vpon his ſhoulders. And then *Baldwine*, Archbiſhop of *Canterburie*, conſecrated and annointed him with holy Oyle in *Foure parts*, on his Head, his Shoulders, and his right Arme: All which while, the Quire ſung the vſuall Prayers, which commonly are exerciſed in ſuch Ceremonies, couering his head with a hallowed Cappe of fine Linnen, and putting alſo a Bonnet thereon. *Poſito deinde ſuper caput eius panno lineo ſacrato, pileum deſuper poſuit*. And after they had put on his Sandales, tiſſued and wrought with Gold, then they brought him his Royall Ornaments, namely the *Tunick* and *Dalmaticke*, and then the Archbiſhop gaue the Sword into his hand, for the puniſhment of ſuch as ſhould doe euill to the Church.

The Kings body annointed in foure ſeuerall places.

This being done, two Earles did put on his Spurres, and cloathed him with the royall Cloak (of crimoſine Veluet, thick powdred with golden Leopards) the Archbiſhop gaue him expreſſe charge, in the high name of God Almighty, to publiſh openly and aloud, whether he was reſolued to obſerue and keepe intirely, all thoſe things whereto he was ſworne, or no. Whereto the King anſwered, that (by the helpe of God) he would faithfully keepe whatſoeuer hee had promiſed, without fraud or falſe meaning. And then the King went to take the Crowne on the Altar, which he deliuered into the hands of the Archbiſhop, who hauing crowned the King therewith, put the Scepter Royall into his right hand, and the Rod of Iuſtice into the left, and with theſe adornements he was conducted to his Throane, by the Biſhops and Barons, the Croſſe, Candleſticks and three Swords being borne before him in ſuch manner as formerly hath bin related.

The ſame was done at the Offering, at the *Agnus Dei*, at kiſſing the Paxe, and at the Proceſſion after high Maſſe. Returning into the Quire againe, the King was deueſted of his Royall Ornaments, for putting on other more light, and going all in order to the Royall Dinner, the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, being ſeated in the moſt eminent place of the Table, on the right hand of the King, the other Archbiſhops, Biſhops, Earles and Barons, according to their rancke and dignitie, were ſeated in order, and then followed the people and Cleargie. This Coronation was performed on Sunday, the third of the Nones of September, in the ſaid yeare, one thouſand one hundred foureſcore and eight, & on the morrow, he receiued the Homages of the Lords of the Kingdome.

This *Richard*, ſirnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, for his valiancie, went in the voyage beyond the Seas, with King *Phillip Auguſtus*, in the yeare One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and tenne. Which voyage is amply deſcribed by *Mathew Paris*, but maketh no matter to our diſcourſe, wherefore we will let paſſe in ſilence, the particularities remarked by the ſaid *Mathew Paris*. Both the Kings tooke Shipping at *Marſeilles*, where they deuided themſelues, King *Phillip* ſhaping his courſe for *Geneway*, and the King of *England* ſayling to *Meſſina* in *Sicilie*.

King *Richard* Sirnamed *Cœur de Lyon* for his valiancie, and his voyage to the Holy-Land.

Richard (at his returne) endured ten thouſand afflictions, whereof briefely behold the ſubiect. In the yeare One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and twelue, *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria* came into the holy Land, to beare Armes there, as other Chriſtian Princes did. At his Arriuall, the Marſhall of his Campe, hauing marked out a Lodging for the Duke his Maiſter, planted downe his Tent and his Enſigne on it. A Norman, being a follower to King *Richard*, maintained, that the lodging place belonged to him. From words they fell to blowes, and *Richard*, without vnderſtanding the reaſons of the parties, cauſed the Duke of *Auſtriaes* Tent and Enſigne to be pul'd downe, and hurl'd (vpon a heape) into a ditch of mire. The Duke made complaint to *Richard*, to haue reparation of this offence, but he payed him with deriſion: whereupon, the Duke ſeeing he was deſpiſed, deſired God, to doe reaſon for him, and then he would remit the iniurie.

The briefe Hiſtory of his returning home and many miſeries by the Duke of *Auſtria*.

Richard, after he had done wonderfull deedes in the Holy-Land, was aduertiſed, that his Brother *John without Land*, ſought to poſſeſſe himſelfe of the Kingdome of *England*, which made him reſolue of returning home. And being on the Sea, with the Queene *Berengaria* of *Nauarre* his wife, and *Ioan* of *Sicilie* her Siſter, he ſo continued

The firſt occaſion of the quarrell.

nued seauen weekes together, suffering infinite miseries, and lastly was cast on the coast of *Barbarie*, from whence (within the space of three dayes) he might haue bin at *Marseilleis*. But fearing the Count of S. *Gilles* and of *Prouince*, with whom he had dealte but hollowlie in the Holy-land: he determined to shape his course thorow *Germanie*, and from thence passe for *England*, without aduenturing into *France*, where *Phillip Augustus* kept a choaking Peare in store for him, to quench his thirst.

King *Richard* returne I thorow *Germanie*

Hereupon he put to Sea againe, accompanied with three men only, to wit *Baldwine* of *Bethon*, Maister *Phillip* his Clearke, and *Anselme* his Chaplaine, and some Brethren *Templers*, who for their owne preseruation, went to the Land on coasts of *Sclauonia*, from the Port of *Gazara*, whether *Richard* sent one of his people, to the neerest Castle, for a Pasport from the Lord thereof, that he might trauaile thorow his Lands in safetie. The Lord of this Prouince was Nephew to the Marquesse of *Mont-ferat*, slaine by an Assassine some while before, by intelligence of the said *Richard*, as some reported. *Richard* being in his iourney, had bought of a Ieweller of *Pisa* three Rubies, valuing the sum of nine hundred Bezans, and had caused them to be beautified with curious workemanship. One of them he sent to the Lord of the Prouince, who desired to know of the messenger, what he was, that should send him such a present. Answere was made, that they were Voyagers, returning from the Holy-Land, the chiefe wherof was named *Baldwine* of *Bethon*, with his associate, & a Merchant, named *Hugo*, who sent him that Iewell. The Lord looking aduisedly on it, said to the messenger: That Merchant is King *Richard*, I know it by this King. And although I haue sworne a sollemne oath, to stay all Pilgrimes returning from the Holy-land, without taking any thing of, or from them: yet notwithstanding, for the beautie of this present, and dignitie of him that sent it; I return him backe his Ring, and licence to passe freely through my countries.

Three costly Iewelles bought by King *Richard*.

The honourable minde of the Lord.

The messenger reported to King *Richard* what had hapned, and being much affraid of stay in his enemies countries, *Richard* and his followers, being furnished with hired horsses, departed secretly from the Porte. They were (neuertheless) pursued on the Lords behalfe, by Spies, that had giuen intelligence to his Brother (who was an other Lord of the same Prouince) in hope of taking *Richard*, if he passed thorow his lands. *Richard* arriuing (vnluckilie) in the Cittie where the same Lord dwelt, vpon aduertisement of his Brother, he commanded a man, whom he held to be most faithfull of all his followers, (named *Roger*, a *Norman* by nation, and borne in *Argentane*, who had continued twentie yeares in his seruice, and enioyed his Niece in marrige) to visite and search exactly all the Innes in the Cittie, wherof he would giue him the halfe in propritie, if he could discouer the King of *England*.

Great wait & search laid for King *Richard*.

Roger discouered him, making himselfe knowne to be a *Norman*, giuing him aduertisment, what search was made for him, and aduising him withall (for his good) to dislodge thence so soone as he could, sending him a very good Horsse. Now, while *Richard* was prouiding for his escape, *Roger* fed his Lord with nothing but lies and fables: that it was a man named *Baldwine* of *Bethon* (and not King *Richard*) and companions of his returning home from the Holy-land. But the Lord not satisfied with this answere, made stay of all of them in the Innes.

The honest dealing of *Roger* the *Norman* with King *Richard*.

Richard saued himselfe by a more prosperous wind, with one named *Guillaume de l'Estang*, and a Boy, that vnderstood the *Germaine* tongne, trauayling three dayes and nights, without receiuing any sustenance, or tarying in any place. But hunger pressing them extreamely, they came to lodge in a Towne, being neere to the Riuer of *Danubie*, named *Gynatia* in *Austria*, as saith *Mathew Paris*, but according to the Histories of *Germanie* (which I haue read) it is called *Erdbourg*, where then remained *Leopold*, Duke of *Austria*, to welcome *Richard* thither, like him falne out of a Feauer, into a farre worse disease. Being come to his Inne, he sent his Boy to make prouision for him in the Market, where the Boy shewing his purse to be full of Bezans, and buying very exquisite victuals: he was stayed by the inhabitants of the Towne, to vnderstand further of his condition. Hauing certefied them, that he belonged to a wealthie Merchant, who would arriue there within three dayes; they permitted him to depart. *Richard* being heerof aduertised, and much distasted in his health, by so many hard sufferances on the Seas, and perillous passages on the wayes: concluded, to repose there some

Leopold Duke of *Austria* narrowlie watching for King *Richard*.

some few dayes in the Towne. During which time the Boy alwayes made their prouision of food. But by ill accident, on the day of Saint *Thomas* the Apostle, the Boy being in the Market, chaunced (through neglect) to haue King *Richards* Gloues tuckt vnder his Girdle. The Magistrate of the Towne ol seruing it, tooke the Boy, and gaue him torment, to make him confesse whose Gloues they were. The power of punishment, and threates, to haue his tongue cut out of his head, compelled him to tell the truth. So in short while after, the Duke of *Austria* hearing the tydings, engirt the Inne where *Richard* was (with a band of armed men, and *Richard*) with his Sword in his hand yielded himselfe to the Duke, which kept him strongly enuironed with well armed Souldiours, who watched him night and day, with their Swords readie drawne. This is the affirmation of *Mathew Paris*, concerning the surprizall of *King Richard*.

King *Richard* taken by the Duke of *Austria*, and his hard vsage to him.

But I haue read an ancient Manuscript of old Poesies, written about those very times, which reporteth this Historie otherwise. Saying, that *Richard* being in his Inne, disguised himselfe like a seruant Cooke, larding his meate, broching it, and then turning it at the fire himselfe. In which time, one of the Duke of *Austrieas* followers, being then in the Inne, came (accidentally) into the Kitchin, who tooke knowledge of this Royall Cooke, not by his face, which he had purposely diffigured with the soyling of the Kitchin; but by a Ring of Gold, which (very vnaduisedly) he wore on his finger. This man, ran immediatly and aduertised the Duke his Maister, that the King of *England* was within the compasse of his power, and vpon this aduertisement *Richard* was arrested.

The History related another way.

In the yeare following, namely, One thousand one hundred fourescore & thirteen the Duke sold King *Richard* to the Emperor *Henry*, for the sum of threescore thousand pounds of Siluer, the pounds answering the weight & order obserued at *Cologne*. With which sum *Leopold* towred the wals of the Citie of *Vienna* in *Austria*, & bought the Duchie of *Styria*, *Neopurg*, and the Counties of *Lins* and *Wels*, of the Bishops of *Passau* and of *Wirtspourg*. So speaketh the Latin Chronicle of *Otho* of *Austria*, Bishop of *Frisinghen*, for these perticularities were forgotten by *Mathew Paris*, who further saith: That in the same yeere of fourescore and thirteene, the third holy day after Palme-Sunday, *Leopold* led *Richard* prisoner to the Emperor, who sent him vnder sure guard to the *Tribales*. *Retrudi eum praecepit in Triballis, à quo carcere nullus ante dies illos exiuit, qui ibidem intrauit: de quo Aristoteles Libro Quinto. Bonum est mactare Patrem in Triballis; & alibi,*

The Duke of *Austria* sold King *Richard* to the Emperor

Sunt loca, sunt gentes, quibus est mactare parentes.

The *Englishmen* were more then a whole yeare, without hearing any tydings of their King, or in what place he was kept prisoner. He had trained vp in his Court a Rimer or Minstrill, called *Blondell de Nesle*, who (so saith the Manuscript of old Poesies, and an auncient Manuscript French Chronicle) being so long without the sight of his Lord, his life seemed wearisome to him, and he became much confounded with melancholy. Knowne it was, that he came backe from the Holy Land, but none could tell in what Countrey he arriued. Whereupon this *Blondel*, resoluing to make search for him in many Countries, but he would heare some newes of him; after expence of diuers dayes in trauaile, he came to a Towne (by good hap) neere to the Castell where his Maister King *Richard* was kept. Of his Host he demanded, to whom the Castell appertained, and the Host told him, that it belonged to the Duke of *Austria*. Then he enquired, whether any prisoners were therein detained, or no; for alwayes he made such secret questionings, wheresoeuer he came; and the Hoste gaue answer, that there was one onely Prisoner, but he knew not what he was, and yet he had bin retained there more then the space of a yeare. When *Blondel* heard this, he wrought such meanes, that he became acquainted with them of the Castell, as Minstrels doe easily win acquaintance any where; but see the King he could not, neither vnderstād what it was he. One day he sat directly before a window of the Castell, where King *Richard* was kept prisoner, and began to sing a Song in French, which King *Richard* and *Blondel* had sometime composed together. When King *Richard* heard the Song, he knew it was *Blondel* that sung it, & when *Blondel* paused at halfe of the Song, the King entreated him to sing the rest. Thus *Blondel* won knowledge of the King his Maister,

A pretty History concerning the finding of King *Richard* by a Minstrell.

Blondel singeth a French Song, made by his Lord and himselfe.

Maister, and returning home into *England*, made the Barons of the Countrie acquainted where the King was.

The Pope offended at the hard vsage of Pilgrims, and detayning of King *Richard*.

Otho Frisinghensis reporteth, that Pope *Leo* then ruling the Church, excommunicated the said *Leopold*, because by the like imprisoning, the Pilgrimes returning from the Holy-Land, were greatly wronged, the voyage intermitted & impeached, to the great preiudice and hinderance of the Latines of the East. And that the Emperour *Henry* preuailed by money, to get into his power the King of *England* (as he did) and kept him vnder sure guard, strongly giued and fettered in the Citie of *Wormes*, where the Emperor then remained, who made cõposition for the said Princes ransome, raising therby a great sum of monie. *Mathew Paris* speaketh nothing of this fulmination.

Onely he saith, by the pursuite and dilligence of *Hugh*, Abbot of *Cluny*, and *William*, Chancellour of *England*, the Emperour held a Diet in *Germanie*, whereat were assembled the Bishops, Dukes and Counts of the Empire, whether he brought King *Richard*, and charged him with many infamous actions.

Imputations laid vpon King *Richard* by the Emperour at the *Diet*.

1. First of all, that by his counsel and meanes, he had lost the Kingdome of *Apu*[lia] & that of *Sicilie*, which belonged to him by hereditary right, after the death of King *William*, and for the recouery whereof, he had spent vnspeakable sums of monie, and brought a puissant Armie thither to none effect, wherein King *Richard* promised his assistance faithfully, & to mediate with *Tancred*, to restore the said Kingdomes to him.

2. Concerning the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, that in pride and brauery, he had preiudiced thereon, which appertained to his kinsman and allie, whom he had vniustly, and without any grounded reason despoiled, and put in prison rigorously, inuading his Treasures and Realme, and selling it to a stranger Prince.

3. With the death of the valiant Marquesse of *Montferrat*, heire to the said Emperor, whom he had traiterously pursued, and so wrought with the *Arsacides*, that inhumanely they murdered him.

4. That on the like occasion, he had sent the *Arsacides*, to massacre the King of France his Soueraigne Lord *Phillip Augustus*, by an insigne trechery, against the oath and homage which he had sworne vnto him.

5. And that by an act of ouer-weening pride and rashnesse, to wrong the Princes which went to the Holy-land in his time, he had pul'd downe the Standard of his Cousine the Duke of *Austria*, & threw it into a Ditch at the Port of *Iaph*, vsing words of arrogancie and iniurie, against the *Germaine* Natton.

King *Richard* defended himselfe worthily, washing his hands by the best meanes he could deuise; & yet neuertheless, to get out of the Emperors fingers, he was constrained to compound and pay to the said Emperor, an hundred and fortie thousand Markes of money (according to the poize of *Cologne*) for his ransome, whereof he paied part ready downe, and gaue sufficient Hostages for the rest.

King *Richard* compounded with the Emperor for his ransome.

During the imprisonment of King *Richard*, Earle *John without Land* his Brother beleeuing he should neuer come home againe; laboured to possesse himselfe of the Kingdome of *England*, and of the Seigneuries belonging to the Crowne of France.

Prince *John* his proceedings against his Brother.

In this designe he was fauoured by the King *Phillip Augustus*, in hatred of the which King *Richard* had said vnto him, being in *Sicilie*, that *Alix* his Sister, whom he had long time fianced, should neuer haue any thing of him. So saith *Rigordus* for an especiall obseruation, and that this was the true fourse, whence sprung the mallice between these two great Princes, in their voyage to the Holy-land. Which neuertheless, *Mathew Paris* hath not spared to touch, to impose the blame on *Phillip Augustus*, whom he taxeth at euery word, to discharge his owne King *Richard*, who (by his returne) disappointed his so forward Brother.

King *Richard* complaineth against the Duke of *Austria*.

In the yeare One thousand one hundred fourescore and fifteene, King *Richard* sent his Ambassadors to the Holy See, & to the Pope, to complain & craue iustice, for the outrages he receiued by *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, who had staied him as a prisoner returning from his perillous voyage of the Holy-land, and vsed him otherwise, then a Prince of his qualitie ought to be; that he had sold him to the Emperor, as if he had been a Lion an Oxe or an Asse (these are the very words of *Mathew Paris*) and that both of them together, intended to ruinate his Kingdome, by the excessiue value of his ransome. That both these Princes (although they were Christians) had worse dea[lt] wi[th]

with him, then *Saladine* could haue done, a vowed enemy to the Christians, if by hazard of the Warre, he should haue fallen into his hands, against which *Saladine* the said *Richard* was come to fight, from one of the corners of the World, to the other, abandoning his Kingdome wherein he was but newly seated, his deare Countrey, Kindred and friends. That therefore the Pope should command the said *Leopold* and others, to send him the Hostages, which he and they kept for the rest of his ransome, restoring that againe vnto him, which they had vniustly extorted from him, with all his expences, damages, & interests, as well to him as his people, whom they had abused.

The Duke of *Austria* excommunicated by Pope *Celestine* and his Lands interdicted.

Pope *Celestine* the Third, after hee had three seuerall times summoned the Duke of *Austria Leopold*; by the aduise of his Cardinals, he excommunicated particularly and namely the said *Leopold*, and generally all them that had ill entreated King *Richard* and his followers. Hee sent an interdiction on all the Lands of the said Duke, giuing charge and command to the Bishop of *Veronna*, to publish the Excommunication three seuerall Sundayes in all the Seigneuries belonging to the said Duke: who should still stand excommunicated, if hee did not restore to King *Richard* his Hostages, & the monies which he had exacted of him, with the expences, damages, and interests, for his so long time of detention.

Heauen reuenged the wrongs of King *Richard*.

The Duke lending a deafe eare to all this, *Austria* became afflicted with an vniuersall Pestilence and famine, the great Riuer of *Danubie*, mounting out of her bed and ordinary current, drowned and deuasted a great part thereof, and tenne thousand persons. The Duke managing his Horse vpon Saint *Stephens* day, brake one of his legges, whereinto the *Gangrena* falling, hee was glad to haue it quite cut off: but the disease extending vp into his thigh, the fire thereof so embraced the body of this miserable Duke; that acknowledging his fault, hee promised to satisfie the Popes Command. Whereupon, the Bishops of the Countrey, gaue him absolution of the Excommunication, which he had incurred, & ministred vnto him the Communion of the faithfull, and so hee dyed cruelly. His body remained a long time without burial, full of wormes crawling in it, because his Sons made no account of satisfying King *Richard*; to whom at length they sent his Hostages, so saith *Mathew Paris*.

The death of the Duke of *Austria*.

But *Otho* of *Austria*, Bishop of *Frisinghen*, affirmeth, that the Pope excommunicated *Leopold*, and relateth his death in another manner. That falling (on a day) from his Horse, he brake his leg, and the affliction thereof causing him to detest the vanities of the world: hee became a Hermite of S. *Augustines* Order, leauing his Seigneuries to his Sonnes *Leopold* and *Fredericke*, And that hee died in the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Foure Score and Foureteene.

King *Richard* his Warre against the *Poictouins*, and vnfortunate death.

The said King *Richard* in the last yeare of his Reigne, which was 1199. made war against the *Poictouins*, who were become rebels vnto him, putting all to fire & sword. Finally, he came into *Limosine*, laid Siege before the Castle of *Chaluz*, where he was wounded with an arrow, & empoysoned Quarrell, shot from the said Castle by one named *Peter Bazile*; the seauenth of the Calends of *Aprill*. He liued twelue daies after, in which time the Castle was yeelded. The poyson reaching to the heart, King *Richard* dyed on Tuesday the eighteenth of the Ides of *Aprill*. Hee commanded his Entrailes and Bowels to be carried to *Poictiers*, his Heart to *Rouen*, and his Body to *Font-Euraud* (for reasons alleadged by *Mathew Paris*) to be buried at the feet of his Father. *Mathew* relateth not the subiect of this besieging the Castle of *Chaluz*, and of *Cabrit*, because he would not taxe his Prince of Couetousnesse.

The reasons of King *Richard's* warre alleadged by *Rigordus* the Monke of Saint *Denis*.

But the Monke of S. *Denis* in France *Rigordus*, who liued at the same time, enstructeth vs that there was a rich Treasury, for the pictures of the Emperor *Charlemaigne*, or of *Lewes* the debonnaire, his wiues & Children, Sons & Daughters, were seated at a Table made all of fine Gold. Thus you heare what he saith, and as it followeth.

Anno Domini M. C. XCIX. Sexta Idus Aprilis, Ricardus Rex, Angliæ iuxta Lemouicum Ciuitatem grauiter vulneratus occubuit. Obsederat enim Castrum quoddam quod Caldum lucum (de Capreolo Lemouicenses vocant) hebdomada Passionis Dominicæ occasione cuiusdam thesauri, à quoddam Milite ibidem inuenti, quod ex nimia ambitione à Vicecomite Lemouicensi instantissime sibi reddi petebat: Miles enim qui thesaurum inuenerat, ad ipsum

ipſum Vicecomitem confugerat. Dum vero Rex in obſidione Caſtri moram faceret, & per ſingulos dies ipſum Caſtrum viriliter impugnaret, Baliſtarius quidam ex improuiſo, quarello tranſmiſſo, Regi Angliæ lethale vulnus intulit, & paucis reuolutis diebus, viam vniuerſæ carnis ingreſſus eſt. Sepultus vero quieſcit apud Fontem Ebrardi, in quadam Abbatia Monialium, inxta Patrem ſuum. Theſaurus autem prædictus, vt ferebatur, ſuerat Imperator quidam de Auro puriſſimo cum vxore & Filys, & Filiabus ad menſam auream reſidentibus, qui Poſteris, quo tempore fuerant, certam dabant memoriam. To the ſaid King *Richard* the Firſt, dying without Iſſue, and who (as we haue noted before) inſtituted for his Heyre and Succeſſor his Nephew *Arthur*, Count of *Bretaigne*; ſucceeded (by force of Armes) his laſt Brother

King *John* ſucceeded after his Brother *Richard*, and was crowned at *Rouen* firſt.

John Without-Land, Earle of *Mortaigne*, who cauſed himſelfe to bee crowned at *Rouen*, with the Ducall Circle of *Normandy*. *Comes Iohannes Rotomagum veniens, in octauis Paſchæ, Gladio Ducatus Normanniæ accinctus eſt, in matrice Eccleſia, per miniſterium Walteri Rotomagenſis Archiepiſcopi, vbi Archiepiſcopus memoratus, ante maiu Altare, in capite eius poſuit* Circulum Aureum, Habentem in ſummitate per Gyrum Roſulas Aureas *artificialiter fabricatas*. Behold how wee repreſent the Ducall Wreath or Garland, which *Mathew Paris* calleth *Circulum*, the Circle, which is properly meant for Earles or Counts. His Sacring and Coronation performed at *Weſtminſter* and at *London*, in the Cathedrall Church of Saint *Paul*, on the Aſſenſion day, the Sixt of the Calends of *June*, in the ſaid yeare, One Thouſand, One Hundred, Foure Score and Nineteene, and the Oration of the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury Hubert*, reported by *Mathew Paris*; were preſages of the misfortunes happening in England in his time, the Kingdome not appertaining to him, but to *Arthur*, the Count of *Bretaigne*. For ſo ſoone as hee heard of his Brothers death, hee made great diligence (by meanes of the old Queene his Mother *Alianor*, and her partakers) to entrap the Children of *Geoffrey* of *Bretaigne*, his Brother, in ſuch ſort; that *Conſtance*, Mother to *Arthur*, the lawfull Heyre to deceaſed King *Richard*, ſpeedily came to *Paris*, as into a place of aſſurance.

His Coronation at *Weſtminſter*.

But within a while after, one *Guillaume des Roches*, to whom King *Philip Auguſtus* had giuen the gouernment of *Mans*, found meanes to perſwade the ſaid young Count *Arthur*, to make agreement with his Vncle *John Without-Land*, promiſing him Mountaines and Vallyes, which were but words, only to bee poſſeſſed of him, which cauſed him to returne the ſooner to *Paris*.

King *John* (in the life time of King *Richard* his Brother) had eſpouſed * *Hauiſi*, Daughter to the Count of *Gloceſter Robert*, Baſtard to the King of England *Henry*, Firſt of that name, a rich Heyre, yet *John* diuorced her, in the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred. The reaſon of this Diuorce was thus grounded, becauſe they were Kinne in the third Degree; in ſtead of whom hee tooke *Iſabell*, only Daughter to the Count of *Angouleſme*, whom the Earle of March, *Hugh* of *Luſignan*, Sirnamed the Browne, had formerly eſpouſed; ſo ſaith *Mathew Paris*. *Duxit idem Rex Iſabellam filiam Comitis Engouleſmi, quam prius ſuſceperat in ſuam Hugo cognomento Brunus, Comes Marchiæ, & Dominica prima ante feſtum Sancti Dionyſy apud Weſtmonaſterium conſecratur in Reginam, quæ copula poſtmodum Regi, & Regno Angliæ magno detrimento fuit. Du Tillet* ſaith, that this Queene *Iſabell*, being Widdow to the ſaid King *John*, did marry againe with *Hugh le Brun*, by whom ſhee had many Children.

* Her name was not *Hauiſa* but *Iſabell*, and ſhee was third daughter, and one of the Heyres of *William* Earle of *Gloceſter*, Sonne of *Robert* Earle of *Gloceſter*, naturall Sonne of King *Henry* the Firſt.

The opinion of the Monke *Rigordus* in this caſe.

To agree theſe two opinions, it is expedient to take that of *Rigordus*, Hiſtriographer to King *Philip Auguſtus*, who (in his life) telleth vs, that this King conueyed away the Wife of the ſaid Earle of *March*, becauſe the ſaid *Hugh le Brun*, the Vicount of *Thouars*, and *Geoffrey* of *Luſignan* (who were Vaſſailes to the King of England) withdrew themſelues from his obeyſance, (to his no little griefe and diſcontentment) & gaue themſelues in ſeruice to King *Philip Auguſtus*. *Sed quia Iohannes uxorem ſuam Hugonis Bruno in dolo abſtulerat, filiam ſcilicet Comitis Engouliſmenſis, a fidelitate eius receſſerunt, & Regi Francorum, datis obſidibus, confœderati ſunt.* But after the death of King *John*, ſhee came againe to liue with her Huſband.

In the ſame yeare, the Kings of France and England came to an enterueiw at *Vernon*, where Count *Arthur* did Homage to his Vncle King *John*, for the Counties of *Bretaigne*, which (as wee haue elſewhere ſaid) was the *Meſne-Fief* of the Duchie of *Normandy*. But the ſaid *Arthur*, fearing treaſon in his Vncle, continued in the Guard of the King of France, and what King *John* could not compaſſe at two ſeuerall enterniewes; he executed two yeares after, to wit, in the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred and Two, being in the Caſtell of *Falaize*. By faire promiſes & flatteries, he won the ſaid *Arthur* thither, whom hee ſent ſoone after to *New-Caſtle* at *Rouen*, whither he followed him, and murdered him with his owne hands, and cauſed his body to bee caſt into the Sea, ſo that it was neuer ſeene afterward. Hee compaſſed the meanes alſo, to get into his power the Siſter of *Arthur*, whom he ſent Priſoner into England, where ſhe dyed.

An enterniew betweene the Kings of England and France.

King *John* murdered Prince *Arthur* with his owne hands.

The death of Count *Arthur*, lawfull Heyre to the Crowne of England, being diſcouered, King *Philip Auguſtus* ſet on foote a potent Army, to poſſeſſe himſelfe of *Normandie* and other Seigneuries, which the ſaid *John Without-Land* held in the Realme of France, declaring him alſo to bee guilty of high Treaſon, a Traytor diſloyall, and a fellon to his owne blood, by Decree of the Court of Parliament, furniſhed with the Peeres, the King ſitting in his Throane of Iuſtice, in the Hall of the Biſhop of *Paris*, in mid-Lent, One Thouſand, Two Hundred and Three, as it is reported by *Mathew Paris*. *Prima præpoſitio fuit in præſentia Domini Papæ* (at Rome before Pope *Innocent* the Third) *quod Arthurum Nepotem ſuum propriis manibus per proditionem interfecit, peſſime Mortis genere, quod Angli Murder vocant. Pro facto idem Rex condemnatus fuit ad mortem in* Curia Regis Francorum per Iudicium Pariſiorum ſuorum. Conſuetudo enim eſt in Regno Francorum, Quod Rex habet omnimodo iuriſdictionem in Homines ligies ſuos, & Rex Angliæ erat ſuus homo ligius tanquam Comes, & Dux. *Ergo licet alios Rex iniunctus, tamen tanquam Comes & Dux, erat de Iuriſdictione Domini Regis Francorum. Sed ſi Comes & Dux in Regno Francorum delinqueret, poſſet, & deberet iudicari ad mortem per* Pares ſuos. *Imo, ſi non eſſet Dux vel Comes, vel Homo ligius Regis Franciæ, & deliquiſſet in Regno Franciæ, ratione delicti in Regno Franciæ perpetrati, potuerunt cum Barones iudicare ad mortem. Alioquin, ſi Rex Angliæ quia Rex erat iniunctus, non poſſet iudicari ad mortem, impunè poſſet intrare Regnum Franciæ, & interficere Barones Franciæ, ſicut interfecerat Arthurum.* Such courſes haue likewiſe paſt in diuers other Kingdomes, which (notwithſtanding are not to bee produced as a warrantable ground or example for any other State to imitate.

An Armie prepared for *Normandie*.

At the ſame time, as this ſentence was giuen againſt King *John*, the Barons and great Lords of England, that were with him at *Caen* in *Normandie*; left him, forſooke his Seruice, and withdrew themſelues into England; whither the King followed them, extorting of all his Noblemen, and of the Conuentuall and Pariſh Churches, the ſeauenth part of all their mouables, which begot him farre more ill will then before. As much he did in the yeare Two Hundred and Fiue, which hee continued the whole time of his Reigne.

King *John* much diſtaſted by his Subiects.

In the yeare, Two Hundred and Seauen, on the day of Saint *Remigius*, Queene *Iſabell* of England was deliuered of her Eldeſt Sonne *Henry*, by the name of the King his Grandfather.

His colourable dealing with the Pope.

King *John*, for his robberies vſed againſt Churches, his Nobles, and them of the third Eſtate of England, was long time excommunicated by Pope *Innocent* the Third, who ſent his Legate *Pandolph*, with the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, and many other Biſhops expelled out of England, to him, to ſet him in the way of ſaluation, whereof hee made an outward appearance, and by faire promiſes, rendred to the Popes Legate the Crowne of England, which he receiued ſoone after at his hands, as if he held it of the holy Sea of Rome, whereto hee acknowledged himſelfe Feudatory and Tributary, of *a Thouſand markes of money yearely*. But his deuotion and repentance was of no long continuance, becauſe, when hee ſaw himſelfe abſolued of the Cenſures thundered againſt him (which hee ſhould haue feared, in regard of the place whence they came) hee grew worſe and worſe, and laboured to ſurcharge his Subiects with impoſts and Subſidies. Which made them to alienate themſelues from their obedience, and from the affection which they had ſworne to him,

Heauie oppreſſion of the People.

Then beholding *Thomas* and *Raoul* with dreadfull lookes, and passing before them, he said: That they should come no more into his presence, and that their eyes should no more see his face; because the renowne, or rather infamy of their Apostate Master (meerely mad) did infect his sences with a stincking savour.

A description of *Robert* of *London*.

The Ambassadours preparing to depart with their shorts shame, the *Ammirant* began to observe *Robert* of *London*, Priest to King *John*, who was a little man and of blackish hayrie skinne, hauing one of his armes longer then the other, his fingers wrong placed, hauing two thumbes together on one hand, & his face like to a Iew or Tawnie More. He considered with him selfe, what misshapen men the King of *England* had made his choyce of, to be Ambassadours to him, vncapable to manage a matter of such importance, and especially his Sir Priest *Robert*, so ill formed as he was. Neuertheless he remembred, that in a deformed body, there might be enclosed an apprehensiue spirit, and he proone to be a crafty companion: for, beholding the crowne of his head to be shauen, he thought him thereby to be a Priest. He caused him to be called alone by himselfe, for the two other hauing onely spoken before him, the Priest kept the silent Clocke all the while.

The *Ammirant* priuately conferring with *Robert* of *London*,

Hauing thus made stay of him, and sent the two other thence in some disgrace, the *Ammirant* began to talke and conferre with him priuately, enquiring earnestly of him; if King *John* his Master had any vertue in him, whereby to make himselfe commendable; if he had any generous children, of fayre expectation and hope; and whether he were powerfull in the acte of generation, or no: adding withall, that if *Robert* gaue him tales in stead of currant payment, hee would neuer after credit a Christian Priest. *Robert* hauing made oathe, by the faith of a Christian, and of a Priest; promised the *Ammirant* to tell him the trueth, in whatsoeuer he demaunded of him:

Robert his answeree to the *Ammirant*, concerning King *John*.

First of all he assured him, that King *John* was rather a Tyrant, then a King, rather a subuerter of his State, then a Gouernour; oppressing and treading downe his Subiects, to loue, cherish and aduance Strangers. To his people he was terrible, and as rigorous as a Lyon; but to Strangers and Rebells a meere Sheepe. By his sloth and negligence, he had lost many Lands and Seigneuries, and had no other thirst or desire, but to lose and destroy the Kingdome of *England*. That he was insatiably couetous, dreaming on nothing night and day but to pill and poule his Subiects, to feather his owne neast, and p ff fle himselfe of others goods and possessions. As for the children begotten by him, hee had but few, and none that yeelded hope of worth in any thing, but euen like to their father. That he had maried a wife which hated him to the death, and he her in the same manner. A woman incestuous, a whore and adulteresse and Sorceresse (read the life of Saint *Lewes*, written by *Sire de Ionuille*, there you shall see the effects) conuinced many times of these vices, and that King *John* had often strangled his strumpets, on the very bed of his said wife. This King (for his owne part) made it a triumphall sport, to violate wiues, and the Daughters of his Noblemen: And as for his Religion, there was none other in him, but he a meere Atheist in his actions and discourse.

The *Ammirant* further demaundes.

The *Ammirant* hauing heard *Robert*, detested the naturall disposition of his Prince, and demaunded, why the English would so long endure him: for either they were truely women, or else of very seruile soules. Whereto *Robert* answered, that the English were naturally suffering, vntill they should bee prickt to the blood: but then they imitated and resembled the Elephant & Lyon, who feeling themselues wounded, mount vp in choller, and shake off the yoke of seruitude. Whereto the *Ammirant* replied, that the English were ouer-long patient and fearefull. Many times, *Robert* conferred familiarly with the *Ammirant*, who gaue him great gifts of precious Stones, Gold, Siluer, Pearles and Silkes, granting his licence of departure; but the other two Ambassadors, he would neuer more see them.

Robert made Keeper of the Abbey of Saint *Albans*.

King *John* vnderstanding by the Ambassadors, how contemptibly and dishonourably the *Ammirant* of *Marocco* esteemed of him; grew very chollericke against him. *Robert* presented him with part of the gifts which had bin giuen him; in recompence whereof the King his Master gaue him the keeping of the rich Abbey of Saint *Albans*, the first Martyr of *England*; albeit it was without vacancie; for *John* Albot *de le Cele* was yet liuing.

Now

London Receiued in the Barons.

Now in the yeare One thousand, two hundred and fifteene, towards the Feast of Easter, the Noblemen of *England* assembled in Armes at *Stamforde*, summoning the King, to maintaine the liberties of the Kingdom, graunted by the Kings Saint *Edward*, and *Henry* first of the name, according as he had promised two Moneths before. Vpon his refusall, the Citty of *London*, chiefe of *England*, which began the daunce of Rebellion; opened her gates to the Nobles, who became Maisters thereof, and of diuers Castelles: so that the King, fearing a generall reuolt, was constrained to confirme the liberties and customes of the Realme, by his Letters Patents, dated the fifteenth day of *June*, in the said yeare Two hundred and fifteene. But he well declared within the yeare, that what he had done, was but to make a separation of his enemies, who were farre aboue him in strength.

his recourse to the Pope.

Then he made his recourse to Pope *Innocent* the third, as holding the Kingdome of *England* of him, because hee would bee assisted bothwith spirituall and temporall Armes.

The *Dauphine* of *France* elected by the Barons to be King.

The Nobles seeing their part to be the weakest, implored the succour of *Phillip Augustus*, King of *France*, a most Magnanimous and generous Prince, and being assembled in Councell at the Citty of *London*, with an vniuersall consent of them all: *They elected for their King of England, the eldest Sonne of the said* Phillip Augustus, *named Monsieur* Lewes *of France, sirnamed the Lyon*. Because hee was the neerest to succeed to the Crowne of *England*, by reason and right of his wife Madam *Blanche* of *Castille*, Daughter to *Alphonso* the eight of the name, King of *Castille*, and of Madame *Alianor* of *England*, daughter to King *Henry* the Second, and sister to the Kings *Richard* and *John Without-Land*.

The Ambassadors sent into *France*.

The Nobles hauing made this election, sent into *France* as their Ambassadours, *Simon* Earle of *Winchester*, and *Robert*, Sonne to *William* High Marshall of *England*, who brought to King *Phillip Augustus* and *Lewes* his Sonne, the signed Letters of his Election, sealed also by the Nobles of *England*, instantly entreating them to accept her seruice, with the Crowne. The King made answere to the Ambassadours, that he would not suffer his Son so to passe into *England*, without good Hostages, for seeurite of his person.

Foure and twenty Hostages.

Hee demaunded foure and twenty Hostages, of the Principall Lords of *England*; whereof the Ambassadours hauing immediatly giuen intelligence in *England*; the Barons sent into *France* with all diligence, the said foure and twenty Hostages to *Phillip Augustus*, who sent them vnder good and sure guard to the City of *Compeigne* (in Latine *Compendium*, and by the name of King *Charles* the Bauld Emperour, who rebuilded it, *Karnopolis*.

The Daulphines parting from his Father.

While the Kings were preparing a powerfull Fleete, they sent before to succour the Barons of *England*, the Castillian of Saint *Omer*, the Castilian of *Arras*, *Hugues Chacun*, *Eustache Neuuille*, *Baudouin de Bretaile*, *Guillaume de Guines*, *Gilles de Melun*, *Guillaume de Beaumont*, *Gilles de Hersey* and *Bizet de Fargis*, all braue and valiant *French* Knights, with a great number of other Commanders and Sergeants, who mounting vpon the *Thames*, arriued at *London*, where they were welcommed with all ioy and gladnesse, the third of the Calends of *March*.

What Lords of *France* were with King *Lewes*.

Lewes hauing taken his leaue, and receiued the blessing of his Father King *Phillip Augustus*, who then was at *Melun*; departed thence on Saint *Markes* day, and coming to *Callice*, found there his Fleete readily prouided, consisting of Sixe hundred Shippes, and Fourescore great Galions and Caracks, which he had prepared, armed and well furnished with Armour and prouision for warre: his Admirall being *Eustace* the Monke, an English Pyrate.

With King *Lewes* were the very greatest and most valiant Lords of *France*, to wit, *Henry* Count of *Neuers*, with an hundred Knights: *Enguerran de Bailleu*, Lord of *Coucy*, *Marle* and *Crecy* in *Laonois* second of that name, with fifty Knights. This Lord of *Coucy Portoit de Coucy, qui est Vaire de Gueules et d'Argent, Escarlete de France*. Because that his mother was youngest daughter to King *Lewes le Gros* and *Alix de Dreux*. *Robert de Dreux* had thirty Knights. *Iohn de Mont Mirell* had twenty Knights. The Counte *de Roussy* had tenne Knights: The Counte of *Holland* had thirty Knights: *Arnoul* Counte of *Guines*, had fiftcene Knights. The Counte *Perche*; the Counte of

of *Mont-fort*; the Counte of *Mont-Belliard*, with an infinite number of braue men, the floure of Chiualrie, who being arriued at *Calice*, put their Sayles to the winde, and safely coasted on *England*, landing in the Isle of *Tenet*, at a place called *Stanchore*, the twelfth of the Calends of *Iune*. King *Iohn* was then in the Porte of *Douer* with his Army of Strangers, but being not strong enough to Fight with *Lewes*; he fled thence toward *Winchester*, so that *Lewes* (at his owne ease) landed his Army at *Sandwich*, and at his first arriuing, possessed himselfe of all places on the Coasts of *England*, except *Douer*, and so came straight to *London*, where he was magnificently receiued by the Barons of the Land, of whom, (together with the Citizens of *London*) he receiued their Homages, and liedge oathe of fidelity: As on his part, he sware vpon the Holy Euangelists, that he would make good Lawes to them all, and recouer their lost inheritances, vsurped in the name of King *Iohn Without Land*.

His comming to *London*.

Immediatly he laboured to cleanse the Countrey, of wandring Dutch Soldiours, which depended on King *Iohn*, and tooke the homages of the King of Scots *Alexander*, for that which he possessed from the Crowne of *England*, and of the Earles, *William de Warren*, *William* Earle of *Arundell*, *William* Earle of *Salisbury*, *William Marshall* the younger, and an infinite number of others, who abandoned and forsooke King *Iohns* part, to Honour the rising Sunne; who receiued for his Lord Chauncellour, *Simon de Langton*, an Englishman.

King *Iohns* Dutch Soldiours sent out of the land.

While matters thus proceeded, King *Iohn* chaunced to dye in the Castell of *Newarke*, on Saint *Lukes* day in *October*, the said yeare, One thousand, Two hundred and sixteene.

The death of King *Iohn* in the Castell of *Newarke*.

After his death, they of the Clergie and Nobilitie, (who had maintained his cause) met together at *Gloucester*, where they crowned King of *England*, *His eldest Sonne Henry, called the Third of that name*, being then but ten yeares olde: And the voyage which *Monsieur* King *Lewes* made backe into *France*, gaue way to the Barons of *England*, to do their seruice now to the rising Sun, But the said *Monsieur Lewes* of *France*, in his Crowning King of *England*, tooke for Armes, *De France Escartele d'Angleterre*, which he held all his life time, with the title of King of *France* and *England*, &c. And the memorie thereof is conserued to this day in the Rituall of Ceremonies, obserued at the Sacring and Crowning the most Christians Kings.

The comming of King *Henry* the Third to the Crowne, and his marriage.

Henry, third of the name, eldest Sonne to *Iohn Without Land*, and *Isabell* of *Angoulesme*, tooke to wife *Ælianor* of *Prouence*, Sister to *Margaret* the Queene of *France*, wife to the King S. *Lewes*, daughter to *Raimond*, Counte of *Prouence*, and by this mariage were borne fiue Sonnes, and three Daughters, the Sonnes were

Edward, after King of *England* by the name of King *Edward* the Fift.

Edmund, Earle of *Lancaster*.

William died young, and was buried at the new Temple *London*.

Iohn died young, and *Richard* who died also young. The daughters were

Margaret, Wife to *Alexander* King of *Scots*.

Beatrix, maried to *Iohn* Duke of *Bretaigne*, and

Catharine, who died young.

The two marriages of *Edward* the first, and Issue.

Edward, First of that name, eldest Son of King *Henry* the Third, was married twise. First he espoused Madam *Elianor*, daughter to *Ferdinand*, third of that name, King of *Castille*, and of Queene *Iane*, daughter to the Count of *Ponthieu*, Of this mariage were borne foure sonnes and fiue daughters.

Iohn.

Henry.

Alphonsius, all dying without issue in the life time of their Father: And the last was

Edward, Second of that name, King of *England* after his Father: The daughters were.

Elianor, wife to *Henry* Duke of *Bar.*

Iane, commonly called *Ioane* of *Acres*, maried to *Gilbert*, Earle of *Gloucester*, and after to *Raphe Monthermer*, Earle of *Gloucester*.

Margaret, Wife to *Iohn* Duke of *Brabant*.

Isabell or *Elizabeth*, giuen in second mariage to *Humfry de Bohun* Earle of *Hereford* and *Essex*. And

Mary entred Religion as a Nunne at *Ambresbury*.

In second mariage, *Edward* tooke to wife Madame *Margaret* of *France*, Sister to King *Phillip le Bel*, and of her he begate two Sonnes and one daughter, named *Elianor*. The Sonnes were

Thomas, surnamed of *Brotherton* Earle of *Norfolke*. and *Edmond* called *Edmond of Woodstock*, Earle of *Kent*, who died leauing one onely Daughter, named *Ioane*, surnamed the *Faire Maide of Kent*, maried thrise. First, to *William Montacute* Earle of *Salisbury*, from whom being diuorced she was after maried to Sir *Thomas Holland* Earle of *Kent*, by whom she had two Sonnes, *Thomas* Earle of *Kent*, *Iohn de Holland* Earle of *Huntington*. Her third Husband was *Edward* Prince of *Walles*, eldest Sonne to King *Edward*, third of that name, King of *England*.

Edward, Second of that name, King of *England*, fourth Sonne to King *Edward* the first, had to wife Madame *Isabell* of *France*, daughter to *Phillip le Bel*, King of *France* and of *Nauarre*. (This *Isabell* was the leuen of the last warres, betweene the Crowne of *France*, and that of *England*) And of this mariage came two Sonnes, and as many daughters, namely

Elianor, dying in her infancy, And

Iane, Wife to *Dauid*, King of *Scots*: His Sonnes were

Edward, King in his Fathers life time, And

Iohn, Earle of *Cornewall*, dying young.

Edward, third of that name, had to wife *Phillip*, Daughter to *William*, Counte of *Henault*, And of this mariage issued seauen Sonnes, and three Daughters.

1. *Mary*, Wife to *Iohn de Montfort* Duke of *Bretaigne*, first of that name.
2. *Isabell*, maried to the Earle of *Bedford*, And
3. *Margaret*, wife to the Earle of *Penbroke*: His Sonnes were
1. *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, deceassing in his Fathers life time.
2. *William*, dying in his infancy.
3. *Lyonnell*, Duke of *Clarence*.
4. *Iohn* (tearmed of *Gaunte*, because he was borne there) Duke of *Lancaster*.
5. *Edmund*, Earle of *Cambridge*, and afterward Duke of *Yorke*.
6. *Thomas*, Earle of *Buckingham*, afterward Duke of *Gloucester*; And
7. *William* of *England*, dying an infant.

Edward Prince of *Wales*, dying in the life time of his Father, *Edward* third of the name, had to wife *Ioane* or *Iane*, daughter to *Edmond* Earle of *Kent*, And of this mariage were borne two Sonnes.

Edward dying in his infancy, And

Richard, who was King of *England*, after the death of his Grandfather King *Edward* the third.

Lyonnell of *England*, Duke of *Clarence*, third Sonne to King *Edward* the third, was maried two seuerall times. First to the heire of *Clarence Elizabeth*, the daughter of *William de Burgh*, Earle of *Vlster*, and in this mariage they had one onely daughter.

Phillip of *Clarence*, Wife to *Edmond de Mortimer* Earle of *Marche*, of whom came a Sonne and a Daughter.

Elizabeth de Mortimer, Wife to *Henry de Percy*, eldest sonne of the Earle of *Northumberland*. The Sonne was

Roger de Mortimer, Father of

Anne.

Edmond.

Roger and of

Elianor: These three last children deceased without any issue.

Anne was married to *Richard*, Earle of *Cambridge*, youngest Sonne of *Edmond* of *England*, Earle of *Cambridge*, and Duke of *Yorke*, to whom he was heire, *Edward* his elder Brother being dead without issue.

Of this *Richard* Earle of Cambridge, and of *Anne de Mortimer*, was borne *Richard*, sirnamed *Planta-Genest*, who by *Cecilie* his wife had

The birth of *Edward* the fourth.

Edward King of *England*, fourth of that name.

The second wife to *Lyonell* of *England*, was

Yoland, Sister to *Iohn Galeas*, Duke of *Millaine*.

Iohn of *Gaunte* was likewise twise married. First to *Blanche*, the onely daughter to *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster*, and of her he begat one Sonne, and two daughters, namely

Phillip of *Lancaster*, the wife to *Iohn* King of *Portugall*. The other was

Iane, Countesse of *Westmerland*, Grandmother to *Edward*, Fourth of that name, King of *England*. The Sonne was

Iohn, Earle of *Sommerset*, Father of *Iohn* Duke of *Sommerset*, Father of *Margaret* of *Sommerset*, wife to *Edmond*, Earle of *Richemond*.

The second Wife of Lord *Iohn* of *Gaunte*, was Madame *Constance of Castille*, Second Daughter to the King of *Castille Dom Peter*. And of this second mariage was borne one Daughter only. *Katha-*

Katharine, Wife to *Henry* of *Portugall*, the Sonne to *Iohn* of *Portugall*.

Edmond of *England*, Earle of *Cambridge*, and afterward Duke of *Yorke*, had to wife Madame *Isabell* of *Castille*, daughter to *Peter*, King of *Castille*.

Thomas of *England*, Earle of *Buckingham*, and afterward Duke of *Gloceſter*, was ſlaine by the commaunde of King *Richard* the ſecond, his Vnckle.

And this was that *Edward*, third of the name, who (to ſmall purpoſe) in the right of Madame *Isabell* of *France*, conteſted for the Crowne of *France*, againſt *Phillip de Valois*, the Sixt and laſt of that name, moued thereto by *Iaquemart d'Arteuelle* of *Gaunt*, and *Robert* of *Artois*, Counte of *Beaumont*, refuged in *England* (by reaſon of the Arreſt or Decree *d'Aſniers* giuen, concerning the County of *Artois*. This *Edward* tooke the Armes and Title of King of *France* and of *England*, as before him did *Monſieur Lewes* of *France*, Eight of the name, called and Crowned King of *England*, as wee haue formerly declared.

He quartered the Armes of *France* with *England*.

Of this Title, and the Armes of *France*, the pertakers of King *Edward* of *England*, made theſe verſes in thoſe times.

Rex ſum Regnorum bina ratione Duorum,
Anglorum *Regno Rex ſum ego iure Paterno:*
Matris iure quidem Francorum nuncuper idem.
Hinc eſt Armorum Variatio facta meorum

Whereto the *Frenche* anſwered ſcornefully in verſes of the ſame temper, but ſomewhat touching *Edward* with ill grounded vanity, pretending right to the Crowne of *France*, by Queene *Iſabell* his mother: before whom (if Daughters ſhould ſucceed in the *Sacred Lillies of France*) her eldeſt Siſter muſt march, *Madam Margaret of France*, wife to *Ferdinand*, fourth of the name, King of *Caſtille*.

A ridiculous anſwere returned by the *Frenche*.

Prædo *Regnorum qui diceris eſſe Duorum,*
Francorum Regno priuaberis, atque Paterno.
Matris vbique nullum Ius Proles non habet Vllum,
Iure Mariti carens alia Mulier eſt prior illa.
Succedunt Mares huic Regno, non Mulieres.
Hinc eſt Armorum Variatio ſtulta tuorum.

The ſame *Edward* the third, in the Fiftieth yeare of his age, which happened in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, three hundred, ſixty and one, for the Ceremony of his Iubilie, which the Church celebrated from Fifty to Fiftie yeares, auncientlie from Age to Age, that is to ſay, from an Hundred yeares to an Hundred yeares, and now at euery fiue and twenty yeares) gaue repeale of Curſſe to all his ſubiects, and baniſhed perſons for time or perpetuity: hee deliuered out of priſons, ſuch as were detained for debts, and all kinde of crimes. He was Authour of the Franchiſes and Priueledges, which the *Engliſh* tearmed *The Great Charters*. Ordayning and appointing alwayes after, that his Succeſſours the Kings of *England*, ſhould practiſe and doe the like, in the Fiftieth yeare of their age. And the ſame yeare he ordayned, that all Expeditions of Iuſtice, Decrees, Sentences, Iudgements and Contracts, ſhould thenceforforward be made in the Engliſh-Saxon tongue. For vntill this yeare, ſince the Conqueſt of *England* made by *William* the Baſtard, Duke of *Normandy*, Liegeman to the facred Kings of *France*: all thoſe Expeditions were concealed in the *French* language.

The Royall Iubilie of King *Edward* the Third.

Richard, Second of that name, Sonne to *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, deceaſing while his Father liued: came to the Crowne of *England*, after the death of his Grand-father *Edward* the third, in the Moneth of Iuly, One thouſand, three hundred, ſeauenty ſeauen. Hee was twiſe maried.

The comming of King *Richard* the ſecond to the Crowne.

Firſt to Madame *Anne*, Siſter to the Emperour *Wenceſlaus*; but by her hee had no iſſue.

His ſecond wife was Madame *Iſabell* of *France*, daughter to King *Charles* the Sixt, being eight yeares of age when ſhee paſſed into *England*. Shee had no iſſue neither, becauſe King *Richard* was made a priſoner, and afterward ſlaine, by commaund of *Henry* of *Lancaſter*, Earle of *Derbie*, Sonne to *Iohn* of *Gaunte*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, whom the ſaid *Richard* had baniſhed from *England*. So that *Henry* hauing ſafety in *France*, obtayning ſuccour, came

againe into *England*, where he was made King. The faction of the White Roſe againſt the Red (ſuch as wee haue formerly touched) began againe at this time, becauſe by the death of *Richard*, Lyonnell of *England*, Duke of *Clarence* of the White Roſe, was the elder Sonne of *Edward* the Third, and ought to precede *Iohn* of *Gaunte*; from whoſe Sonne neerthel-eſſe, this *Henry* Earle of *Derby*, (taking part with the Red Roſe) caried the Crowne by might, and contrary to reaſon. *Richard* reigned twenty two yeares, and died without any iſſue; his Succeſſour in the Kingdome, was

Henry of *Lancaſter*, fourth of the name, Crowned the laſt day of September, in the yeare One thouſand, three hundred, fourtelcore and nineteene; hee was maried twiſe, firſt to *Mary*, daughter and one of the heires to *Humfrey de Bohun*, Earle of *Hereforde*, *Eſſex* & *Northampton*, & by her he had foure Sons, & two daughters.

Henry, who was King, fift of that name.

Thomas, Duke of *Clarence*.

Iohn, Duke of *Bedforde*; And

Humphrey, Duke of *Gloceſter*. His Daughters were

Blanche, wife to *Lodowick*, Sonne to the Duke of *Bauaria*: And

Phillip, married to *Iohn* King of *Denmake*.

Thomas Duke of *Clarence*, was ſlaine in an encounter of the *French*, & left noiſſue

Iohn Duke of *Bedforde* was three times maried. His firſt wife was *Anne*, daughter to *Phillip* the good Duke of *Bourgongne*: her graue is to bee ſeene in the Celeſtines at *Paris*.

The ſecond wife was *Katherine* of And by whom hee had *Henry*, Biſhop of *Winchеſter*, and Cardinall of *England*. The laſt was

Iacquetta, daughter to *Peter* of *Luxemburg*, Earle of Saint *Paule*.

Humphrey Duke of *Gloceſter*, tooke away perforce *Iacquetta* of *Bauaria*, wife to *Iohn* Duke of *Brabant*; to whom ſhe came againe, after the death of *Humphrey*, deceaſſing without iſſue.

The ſecond wife of *Henry* the fourth, *Ioane*, Widdow to *Iohn de Mont-fort*, Duke of *Bretaigne*, and by her he had no childe. Hauing reigned almoſt foureteene yeares, hee died the twentieth day of *March*, in the yeare One thouſand, foure hondred & twelue, leauing for Succeſſor to the Crowne of *England*, his eldeſt Son

Henry fift of that name, who through the bad faction of *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, (whom his owne wel-willers tearmed the good Duke) eſpouſed Madam *Katherine* of *France*, daughter to King *Charles* the Sixt. The mariage was celebrated in the Citty of *Troyes* in *Champagne*, whereby iſſued their only Sonne

Henry, ſixt of that name, who was King of *England* by the death of his Father, happening the laſt day of *Auguſt*, in the yeare one thouſand, foure hundred, twenty & two, hauing reigned nine yeares. He had to wife *Margaret* of *Cicilie*, daughter to good King *Rene* of *Cicilie*, Duke of *Anion*, and of this mariage came their only Sonne *Edward*.

The faction of the White Roſe preuailed againſt the Red, becauſe *Richard* duke of *Yorke*, chiefe of the White Roſe, gaue two Battailes to the ſaid King *Henry* the Sixt, detained priſoner. In both of them, *Margaret* of *Sicilie*, a moſt couragious Princeſſe, went into *France* for ſuccour, and (by meanes therof) paſſed againe into *England*, and wunne the bataile, wherin was ſlaine the Duke of *Yorke*, head of that part, as alſo the Earle of *Rutland*, and ſet her husband at liberty.

After his deliuerance, *Edward*, ſonne to *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, gaue him two battailes, which the ſaid King *Henry* loſt, ſo that he was conſtrained to flye into *Scotland*, from whence he returned in the habite of a Greye Frier: but being diſcouered, he was commited to priſon, wherein he remained ten yeares. At the end wherof, he was deliuered by *Richard* Duke of *Warwick*, and the Duke of *Clarence*.

Edward of *Yorke*, Earle of *Marche*, was enforced to eſcape out of *England*, and to ſecure himſelf in *Flanders*, with his Father in Law *Charles* Duke of *Bourgongne*, of whom hauing ſuccour, he came againe into *England*, tooke, and cauſed King *Henry* the Sixt to be ſlaine, and his Son *Edward*, detayning Queene *Margaret* priſoner, and appointing her ranſome at fifty thouſand Crownes, which King *Lewes* the eleuenth payed for her deliuerance. The ſaid King *Henry* reigned almoſt thirty nine yeares, and by his death, his enemy

Edward, called fourth of the name, Son to *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, and *Cicelie* his Wife, Daughter to *Ioane* Counteſſe of *Weſtmerland*, daughter to *Iohn* of *Gaunte*.

daughter of *Iames* the fift, King of *Scots*, Husband to *Mary* of *Lorraine*, daughter to *Claudius*, Duke of *Guise*. The said *Iames* the fift, was Sonne to *Iames* the fourth, king of *Scotts*, Husband to Madame *Margaret* of *England*, daughter to king *Henry* the Seauenth, and eldest Sister to king *Henry* the Eight.

The said *Iames*, king of *England* and *Scotland*, intituled him *King of Great Britaine*, for reuniting the two kingdomes in his owne person. By his wife and Queene, *Anne* of *Denmarke*, daughter to *Frederick*, second of that name, and king of *Denmarke*, hee had two Sonnes and three daughters.

Henry, Prince of *Wales*, died aged about nineteene yeares, in the Moneth of *November* Sixe hundred and twelue.

Charles, Duke of *Yorke*, and now Prince of *Wales*, borne in the Moneth of *November*, One thousand, Sixe hundred.

His daughters, were named

Elizabeth, borne in the Moneth of *August*, One thousand, fiue hundred, fourescore and sixteene: Married in the yeare Sixe hundred and twelue, to the Counte *Palatine* of the *Rhine Frederick*, Prince Elector of the Empire.

Mary, borne in *December* One thousand, fiue hundred fourtscore & eighteene.

And *Sophia*, dying young.

THE INSTITVTION OF THE ORDERS OF ENGLAND.

CHAP. II.

Fashion of Royall Garments in England.

Mathew Paris (one of the most Auncient Historians of *England*, next to *Venerable Bede* and *Gyldas*) describing the liues of the first Kings of *England*, Successours to *William* the Conquerour, writeth, that the said Kings brought into *England*, the fashion of Royall Garments and ornaments, the Ceremonies obserued and vsed, as well at the Sacring of the most Christian Kings of *France*; as also the forme of creating of Knights vsually in *France*. He speaketh it to this purpose, because king *Henry*, third of that name, made knights of his Brethren by the mothers side, the Sonnes of *Hugh le Brun*, Earle of *Marche*, and of Queene *Isabell* of *Angoulesme*, Mother to the said king *Henry*, who made those knights, *Secundum Regum Francorum consuetudinem*, after Fasting, Watching and Bathing. Wee haue set downe the auncient formes vsed at those Creations, in the Tracte of the Order of the *Star*, to speake any more thereof, ferueth but to say the same againe.

Knights made by King *Henry* the Third.

We may onely say, that in *England*, there hath not bin any Ordes, bearing a peculier name; before that of the *Blewe Garter*, instituted by king *Edward*, Third of that name.

At all times, as some affirme there haue beene knights of the Bath, so named, because, before they were honoured with guilded Spurres, (which is the marke or note of knighthood) they washed and bathed themselues, watched in the Church, made Confession of their sinnes, to be more cleane and pure both in Soule and Body, to receiue the degree and Honour of knighthood, the acte most importing their whole life.

Sir *John Froissard* writeth, that the king of *England Henry*, Second of that name, hauing conquered the Realme of *Ireland*, and brought vnder his obedience the foure petty kings thereof: the said *Richard* made them all foure knights, on Thursday, being the feast of our Lady in March, in the Cathedrall Church of Saint *Peter* in *London*, wherein they had watched on Wednesday all the whole night.

Before

Before the Coronation of the King of England, *Henry* of *Lancaster*, Fourth of that name, he made Sixe and Forty Esquires Knights of the *Bath*, who had their Chambers each man seuerall to himselfe in the Tower or Castell of London, watching and bathing themselues on Saturday night, and on Sunday at High Masse, the King himselfe made them Knights, giuing them long Grey Cassocks or Coates, with strait Manches or sleeues, furred with Minniuer, each hauing on his left shoulder, a double Corden of White Silke, with Tassells and Fringes hanging at the same.

It is held that there were no Knights of the *Bath*, before this Kings time

At the Coronation of *Mary*, Queene of England, Daughter to King *Henry* the Eight, the like number of Knights of the Bath were made.

An ancient custome obserued in England, of Knighting before crowning

And this hath anciently beene obserued in England, that Kings (before their crowning) made a certaine number of Esquires, Knights of the Bath, to be serued by them at their Sacring and Coronation, as *Mathew Paris* noteth in many places of his History. And we learne of him, as also of *Ingulphus*, *Iohannes Salisburiensis*, of *Matheus Florilegus*, of *William Camden*, and other Historians of England, the Ceremonies which the Kings exercised in the Creation of Knights of the *Bath*, others were called Knights of the *Crownes*, because, to distinguish them from Esquires, they wore vpon their left shoulders an Escutchion of Azure Silke, with three Crownes of Gold embroydered thereon.

Knights of the *Bath* called Knights of the Crownes, and the reason why.

The Esquires that were chosen to be made Knights; in the Euening before the Ceremony, were cloathed with Ash-coloured Gray-Cloth, after the manner of Hermites, with the Hood or Capuch, a small woollen Cappe on the head, and Gamathes of the same Cloth on the legges. And in this manner they went two & two together in the Euening, to shew by this Ceremony, that they consecrated their liues to *Iesus Christ*, and in defence of his faith to spend their dayes in warre, euen to the last drop of their blood.

Their Habite before Knighting, and Ceremonies obserued.

At returne from the Church, these Batchelors went and supt all together, each Bachellor hauing two Esquires to serue and attend on him. After supper euery man returned to his Chamber, where his Bed was fairely Curtaind with Red Silke, before which was fixed the Shield of Armes, and Blazons of the Bachelor, and neere to the Bed stood a Bathing-Tubbe, with necessary Linnens thereto belonging. Prayers being ended, they bathed themselues, curlled their locks of hayre, and their Squires afterward did the like.

On the next Morrow, about the break of day, they were awaked with the sound of Instruments, summoned and called to arise, by the noise of Drums and Trumpets. Cloathed againe in their Hermites Habites, as they were the day before; the Constable and Marshall of England called these Bachelors by order, causing them to sweare and promise: *To loue God aboue all things*; *to defend the Church*; *to honour the King*; *and maintaine his royall Rights*; *to protect and succour Widdowes, Maides and Orphants to their vtmost power*. Which the Bachelors hauing promised, and sworn vpon the holy Euangelists to doe, they were then conducted (two and two together) to Matins and Masse, being preceded or Vsherd by the Instruments of Musique, Trumpets, Fifes and Drummes, the Heraulds and Kings of Armes. And after Matins, they were (in the same manner) guided backe to their Chambers, there despoyled of their Hermites Habites, and cloathed with rich Garments of Carnation Silke, the Cassocke and Surcote, and the great Mantle or Cloake of fine Scarlet in Graine, as they tearme it in England. A white Hat or Bonnet, and a Linnen Nightcap on the head, white Gloues on the hands, fastened to the Cloake, tuckt vp on the left shoulder, with long tasselled Cordons of white Silke.

The Oath giuen to the young Bachellors.

The Knights in their rich Habites and furniture.

This being thus done, euery Bachelor mounteth on his Horse or Courser, being a choyse Horse for Seruice, well saddled and harnised with White and Blacke, and on the Chanfrane or Front-stal, the *Signe of the Crosse* in Embroydery; each man hauing his Page before him on horseback, who beareth the Bachelors Sword by the point of the Scabbard, the hilt fairely gilded aloft, whereto are fastened the gilded Spurres, and on either side of this Page on horseback, the two Esquires belonging to the Bachellor.

According to ancient custome.

In this equipage the Bachelors goe to the Court, or Castell of the King, guided with

delle si qu'il ne s'en sçauoit conseiller, & n'y faisoit que penser tousiours, cõbien que le Comte de Salebery fust le plus priué de tout son Conseil, & l'vn de ceux d'Angleterre qui plus loyaument l'auoit serui. Si aduint que pour l'Amour de ladite Dame, & pour le grand desir qu'il auoit de la voir, il auoit faict crier vne grand Feste de Iousles à la My-Aoust, à estre en la bonne Cité de Londres. Et commanda expressement au Comte de Salebery qu'il ne laissast nullement que Madamoiselle sa femme n'y feust, & qui elle amenast toutes ses Dames & Damoiselles qu'elle pouuoit auoir entour elle. Aelix la Comtesse y vint le plus simplement Atournee qu'elle peust, &c.

In another Chapter he writeth, that the same King *did so ardently loue the faire and Noble Lady Madame Alix Countesse of Salisbury, as he could not abstaine. For Loue admonished him night and day, representing her beauty so fresh and gracious, as he could do nothing but dayly thinke on her. Howbeit the Earle of Salisbury was one of the most priuate of his Councell, and one of them of England that had most loyally done him seruice. So as it came to passe, that for loue of the said Lady, and for the longing desire hee had to see her; hee caused to bee proclaimed a sollemne Feast of Iousting, in mid-August, to bee held in the good City of London. Expressly he commanded the Earle of Salisbury, that he should be no hinderance to his Lady and Wifes being there, & that she should bring with her all the Ladies and Gentlewomen, as shee could haue about her. Alix the Countesse of Salisbury came thither, the very simplest attired that could be, &c.*

Concerning the Orders first Institution, and vpon what occasion

We haue written in the Eight Booke of the Historie of *Nauarre*, Page 469. that the Order of the Kingdome of England, tearmed of the *Blew Garter*, was established (according to the the testimony of *Polidore Virgill*, in his Historie of England) by King *Edward*, Third of the name, Sonne to *Edward* the Second, and Madame *Isabell* of France (the flaming Firebrand of France) in the yeare One Thousand, Three Hundred, Forty and Seauen. That this Order had *S. George* for the Gouernour or Patron; Loue for the Subiect, and the Deuice French. Forasmuch as King *Edward* being wounded with loue of faire *Alix*, the Countesse of *Salisbury*, one day as hee was deuising with her, the left Garter (of Blew Silke) of this Lady, hung loosely down vpon her shooe. King *Edward*, ready at the Ladies Seruice, and to take vp the Garter; by little and little lifted her cloathes so high, that the Courtiers had some sight of her white Smock, & could not refraine from smiling. The Lady reprehended the King for this publike fault before his own people (who carried good lookes, but bad thoughts, and pleased their owne opinion so much, that they made an Idoll of their vaine conceits:) King *Edward* therefore, to couer his owne honour, stopt all their mouthes with these few French words; *Honny Soit Qui Maly Pense:* (*Honny* signifieth in the old French Language *To reproach*, to *Speake ill*, and to *Dishonour*) and made instantly a like or the same vow, as that was of the Duke of *Bourgongne Philip* the Second, noted heretofore: *That such was the mockery of this Garter, as it should be held a great Honn to weare the like.*

The French words embroydered on the Garter.

The number of Knights to bee of the Order, & manner of their Habits.

That effects might follow wordes, hereon arose the Knights of the Order of the *Blew Garter*, which hee composed of Fiue and Twenty Knights, and no more.

Euery one of them, according to the first Institution, must be cloathed with a long Cassocke of Carnation Sattin or Damaske: the large Cloake or Mantle of Violet Veluet, lined with White Damaske, and the Chapperon had a faire large round hood of Crimosine Veluet, worne on the right shoulder, tyed before with two great Cordons of White Silke, trayling downe to the ground, with two great Tassels of Silke. Nor are these Cloakes turned vp on the left shoulder, because thereon is Embroydered, *Vn Escu d'Argent, charge d'vne Croix dreitte de Gueules Liure d'Angleterre, & a l'entour, dudit Escu la Deuise de L'ordre, Honny Soit Qui Maly Pense.* The Buskins or Gamashes worne by the said Knights, are likewise of Carnation Veluet, and beneath the knee on the left legge, a Garter or small Girdle, Blew, Embroydered with Gold and Precious Stones, fastened with a Buckle & Tongue of pure gold about the Legge.

Collar of the Great Order of the Order.

The Great Collar of the Order (whereof some make Author King *Henry* Fift of that Name, as wee vnderstand by *William Camden* King of Armes in England, by the name of *Clarenceaux*, in his Historie of England) was of Gold, composed of White Roses, and Red Roses, enterlaced and knit in manner of True-loue Knots. At

At this present, in stead of those knots, are combined the Thistles of *Scotlands* Order, since King *Iames* came to the Crowne of *England*; to the end, that the two Orders might be ioyned together, according as the Kingdomes are. At the point of the said Caller (directly on the Breast) hangeth the figure of Saint *George* on Horseback, hauing a Dragon at his feete, which is not made in Ouall forme. The lesser *Order* which these Knights doe daily weare about their neckes, is a Blew Cordon or Ribband, and a *George* depending thereat. I haue seene of these Collars at *Paris*, when the Duke of *Lennox* was there, in the yeare One thousand sixe hundred and foure. Here you shall see who were the first Knights, and other of the same Order, from King to King vnto this present.

Vnion of the two Orders of England and Scotland.

Edward, the third King of *England* and of France, &c. *Supreme or Gouernor of the Order of the Garter, and with him the fiue and twentie first Founders thereof, which number they neuer exceede.*

Henry Duke of Lancaster.
Peter Captaine Bouche.
William Montacute, Earle of Salisburie.
John, Lord of the Iland, otherwise called L'Isle.
John Beauchampe, knight.
Hugh Courtney, knight.
John Grey of Codnor, knight.
Atiles Stapleton, knight.
Hugh Wrotesly, knight.
John Chandos, knight Banneret.
Otho Holland, knight.
Sanchio Dampredecourt knight.
Edward Prince of Wales, King *Edward* his eldest Sonne.
Thomas Beauchampe, Earle of Warwicke.
Raffe Stafford, Earle of Stafford.
Roger Mortimer, Earle of March.
Bartholmew of Burgherst, knight.
John, Lord Mohun, Baron.
Thomas Holland, knight.
Richard Fitz-Simon, knight.
Thomas Wale, knight.
Neele Lorenge, knight.
Iames Audeley, knight.
Henry Esme, knight.
Walter Pawley, knight.

Now note what *Froissard* saith in his first Volume of this Order, which he calleth *The Fellowship or Brotherhood of Saint George.*

En ce temps vint en propos, & en voulente au Roy Edouard d'Angleterre qu'il feroit faire, & redifier le grand Chastel de Windesore, que le Roy Artus fit iadis faire, & fonder lieu premierement fut commencte, & esleuee la Noble Table Ronde dont tant de lens & vaillants Hommes, & Cheualiers estoint, & y sirent & trauaillerent en Armes, & en prosesse par tout le Monde. Et feroit ledit Roy vne Ordonnance de Cheualiers, de Luy, & de ses Enfants, & des plus Preux de sa Terre, & en seroient en somme Quarante: & les nommeroit on les CHEVALIERS DV BLEV IARTIER, & la feste à durer d'An en An, & de la solemniser à Windesore le Iour Sainct George (qui est le Vingt-Troisiesme d'Auril. *Et pour ceste fesse commencer, le Roy assembla de tout son Pais Comtes, Barons, Cheualiers & leur dist son intention. Et ils luy accorderent ioyeusement pource qu'il leur sembloit vne chose moult honorable en tout Amour se nourriroit. Adonc furent esleus Quarante Cheualiers* (Froissart s'est mesprise, car cest Ordre n'estoit composé que de Vingt-cinq Cheualiers, & du Roy Chef de l'Ordre non compte au nombre des Vingt-cinq) *par aduis, & par renommee les plus Preux de tous les autres, lesquels seellerent & iurerent à pourfuir, & tenir la Feste, & les Ordennances telles qu'elles estoient la dessus, & fit le Roy fonder, & edifier vne Chappelle de Sainct George au Chastel de Windesore, & y establit Chanoines pour Dieu seruir, & les renta moult grandement. Puis enuoya le Roy publier la feste par ses Heraulx en France, en Escosse, en Bourgongne, en Haynau, en Flandres, en Braban, & en l'Empire d'Alemagne. Et si donnoit à tous Cheualiers, & Escuyers qui venir y voudroient, Quinze Iours de Sauf conduict apres la Feste. Et deuoit estre ceste Feste le Iour de Sainct George ensuiuant* L'an Mil Trois Cents Quarante Quatre *au Chastel de Windesore. Et deuoit estre accõpagnee la Royne d'Angleterre de Trois Cents Dames, & Damoiselles toutes Nobles & Gentil-Dames, & parees richement de parements semblables.*

John Froissard in the first Tombe of his Chronicle.

At this time it came into the purpose and will of King Edward *of England, that he would reedifie and make the great Castell of* Windesore, *which King* Arthur *had formerly (long since)*

Thomas Baron *Camois.*
John Baron *Clifford.*
Robert Baron *Willoughby.*
William Phillip, Baron *Bardolfe.*
Henry, Baron *Fitz-Hugh.*
Loves Robsart, Baron *Bourchier.*
Hugh Stafford, Baron *Bourchier.*
Walter, Baron *Hungerford.*
Simon Felbridge, knight.
John Graye of *Eyton*, knight.
John Dabridgecourt, knight.
John Robsart, knight.
Frank van Clux, a *German* Lord.
William Harrington, knight.
John Blount, knight.

Henry, *sixt of that name, King of England*, chose these in his time to be companions of that Order.

Albert, Duke of *Austria*, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, and afterward Emperour.
Frederick Duke of *Austria*, Emperor, and *Albertus* his Brother.
Edward, King of *Portugall.*
Alphonso, King of *Arragon.*
Cazimir, King of *Polonia.*
Edward Prince of *Wales*, eldest sonne to King *Henry* the sixt.
Peter of *Portugall*: Duke of *Coimbria*, Son to *John* King of *Portugall.*
Henry of *Portugall*, Duke of *Viseo*, son to *John*, King of *Portugall.*
Conrard, Duke of *Brunzwicke.*
Richard, Duke of *Yorke*, father to the King of *England*, *Edward* the fourth of that name.
John Beaufort, Earle, and afterward Duke of *Somerset.*
Edmond Beaufort, Earle *Moriton*, afterward Marquesse, and at last Duke of *Somerset.*
Iasper Earle of *Penbroke*, and afterward Duke of *Bedford.*
John Mowbray, Duke of *Norfolke.*
Humfrey, Earle of *Stafford*, and afterward Duke of *Buckingham.*
Gaston de Foix, *Captal de Buk*, Earle of *Longue-Ville.*
John de Foix, Earle of *Candalia.*
Aluarez D'almeida Earle of *Auerence.*
John Fitz-Alan, Earle of *Arundel.*
Richard Neuil, Earle of *Warwicke.*
John Lord *Talbot*, afterward Earle of *Shrewsbury.*
John, Lord *Talbot*, Earle of *Shrewsbury* his Sonne.
James Butler, Earle of *Wiltshire* and *Ormond.*
William Neuil, Lord *Fauconbridge*, afterward Earle of *Kent.*
Richard Wooduile, Earle of *Riuers.*
Henry, Viscount *Bourchier*, after Earle of *Essex.*
John Beaumont, Vicount *Beaumont.*
John Sutton, Baron *Dudley.*
Thomas Baron *Scales.*
John Baron *Greye* of *Ruthin.*
Rafe, Baron *Butler* of *Sudeley.*
Lionell, Baron *Welles.*
John Bourchier, Baron of *Berners.*
Thomas Baron *Stanley.*
William Baron *Bonuile.*
John Baron *Wenlocke.*
John Beauchampe of *Powicke.*
Thomas Baron *Hoo.*
John Ratcliffe, knight.
John Fastolf, knight.
Thomas Kiriel, knight.
Edward Hall, knight.

Edward *fourth of that name, King of* England, nominated these Noble Knights in his Reigne.

Ferdinand, the Bastard Son to *Alphonso* King of *Arragon.*
John King of *Portugall.*
Edward Prince of *Wales.*
Charles Duke of *Bourgongne.*
Frances Sforza, Duke of *Millan.*
Fredericke, Duke of *Vrbine.*
Hercules d'Este, Duke of *Ferrara.*
Richard, Duke of *Yorke*, son to the King of England.
Richard, Duke of *Glocester*, who afterward vsurped the Kingdome.
John Mowbray, Duke of *Norfolke.*
John Baron *Howard*, afterward Duke of *Norfolke.*
John de la Poole, Duke of *Suffolke.*
Henry Stafford, Duke of *Buckingham.*
John Neuil, Marquesse *Mont-acute.*
Thomas Grey, Marquesse *Dorset.*
Iames Douglas, Earle *Douglas* in *Scotland.*
William Fitz-Allan, Earle of *Arundell.*
Thomas, Baron *Maltrauers*, the sonne to *William*, and afterward Earle of *Arundel.*

Anthony Wooduile, Lord *Scales*, afterward Earle *Riuers.*
William Baron *Herbert*, afterward created Earle of *Pembroke.*
John Stafford, Earle of *Wiltshire.*
Henry Percy Earle of *Northumberland.*
John Tiptoft, Earle of *Worcester.*
Galliard Duras, Lord *Duras.*
John Baron *Scroope* of *Bolton.*
Walter Deuereux, Baron *Ferrers* of *Chartley.*
Gualtier Blount, Baron of *Montioy.*
William, Baron *Hastings*, the Kings Chamberlaine.
John Astley, Knight.
William Chamberlaine, Knight.
William Parre, Knight.
Robert Harecourt.
Thomas Mont-gomery.

Edward, *fift of that name, King of England*, and *France*, &c. Supreame Gouernour of the Order of the Garter, vnder whom was no election of new Knights of that Order. For as he had all the places filled with Knights by his Father, whilest he yet liued euen so he left them. Excepting onely the seates of the Prince, and of *John* King of Portugall.

Richard, the third of that name, King of *England* and *France*, &c. Chiefe of the Order of the Garter, & the Fellowes chosen into that Order, during the time of his Reigne.

Thomas Howard, Earle of *Surrey*, and Duke of *Norfolke.*
Thomas, Baron *Stanley*, afterward Earle of *Derby.*
Francis, Vicount *Louel.*
John Coniers, knight.
Richard Radcliffe, knight.
Thomas Burgh, knight.
Richard Tunstall, knight.

Henry, the seauenth of that name, King of *England* and *France*, &c. in his time elected these.

Maximillian, King of the Romans, & afterward Emperour chosen, his Father *Frederick* Emperor then liuing.
John, King of *Portingall.*
John, King of *Denmarke.*
Philip, King of *Castile*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Son to *Maximillian* the Emperour.
Alphonsius, Duke of *Calabria* and *Naples*, King of *Sicilie* and *Ierusalem.*
Arthur, Prince of Wales, the Kings eldest Sonne.
Henry, Duke of *Yorke*, & Prince of *Wales* his Brother *Arthur* being dead, and he the same afterward King of *England.*
Vbald, Earle of *Montferrat*, and Duke of *Vrbin*, and of *Pesseran.*
Edward Stafford, Duke of *Buckingham.*
Thomas Grey, Marquesse *Dorset.*
John Vere Earle of *Oxford.*
Henry Percy, Earle of *Northumberland.*
George Talbot, Earle of *Shrewsbury.*
Henry Bourchier, Earle of *Essex.*
Richard Grey, Earle of *Kent.*
Edward Courtney, Earle of *Deuonshire.*
Henry, Baron *Stanley*, afterward Earle of *Wiltshire.*
Edmund de la Poole, Earle of *Suffolke.*
Charles Somerset, Knight Banaret, and afterward created Earle of *Worcester.*
Gerard Fitz-gerald, Earle of *Kildare.*
John Wels Vicount *Wels.*
George Stanley, Baron *Strange.*
William Stanley, Chamberlaine to the King.
John Baron *Dynham.*
Robert Willoughby, Baron *Brook*, Steward of the Kings house.
Giles d'Aubeny.
Edward Poynings, knight.
Edward Wideuil, knight.
Gilbert Talbot, knight.
John Cheney, knight.
Richard Guilford, knight.
Thomas Louel, knight.
Thomas Brandon, knight.
Reynold Bray, knight.
Ryce ap Thomas of *Wales.*
John Sauage, knight.
Richard Poole, knight.

Henry, *eight of the name, King of England, France, &c.* in his reigne nominated and elected these into the noble fellowship of the Garter.

Charles of *Spaine*, Emperor, fift of the name, King of *Spaine.*

Ferdinand, King of *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, brother to *Charles* the fift, Emperour.
Francis, King of *France*, *Naples*, *Sicilie* and *Ierusalem*, Duke of *Millaine*, Lord of *Geneway*, &c.
Emanuel, King of *Portugall*.
James, fift of that name, King of *Scots*.
Henry of *England*, Sonne to King *Henry* the eight, called *Fitz-Roy*, which is in Engliſh, Son of the King, Earle of *Richmond* and of *Sommerſet*.
Iulian de Medicis, Brother to Pope *Leo* the tenth.
Edward Seymor, Earle of *Hertford*, and afterward Duke of *Sommerſet*.
Thomas Howard, Earle of *Surrey*, and afterward Duke of *Norfolke*.
Charles Brandon, Maiſter of the Horſe to the King, and afterward Duke of *Suffolke*.
Iohn Sutton, called *Dudley*, Vicount *de L'Iſle*, afterward Earle of *Warwicke*, and finally Duke of *Northumberland*.
Anne, Duke of *Montmorency*.
Henry Courtney, Earle of *Deuonſhire*, and afterward Marqueſſe of *Exceſter*.
William Parre of *Kendal*, Earle of *Eſſex*, and afterward Marqueſſe of *Northampton*.
William Pawlet, Baron Saint *Iohn*, of *Baſing*, afterward Earle of *Wiltſhire*, and Marqueſſe of *Winchester*.
Henry, Earle of *Surrey*, Sonne to *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolke*.
Thomas Bullen, Treaſurer of the Kings Houſhold, Viſcount *Rocheford*, and afterward Earle of *Wiltſhire*, and *Ormond*.
William Fitz-Alan Earle of *Arundel*.
Iohn Vere, Earle of *Oxenford*.
Henry Percy was Earle of *Northumberland*.
Rafe Neuil, Earle of *Weſtmerland*.
Francis Talbot Earle of *Shrewsbury*.
Philip Chabot, Earle of *Burenſais*, *de Charny*, *de Neublane*, &c. Lord Admirall of France.
Henry Fitz-Alan, Son to *William*, Earle of *Arundell*.
Thomas Manners, Baron *Roos*, who was afterward Earle of *Rutland*.
Robert Radcliffe, Viſcount *Fitz-Walters*, and afterward Earle of *Suſſex*.
Henry Clifford Earle of *Cumberland*.

William Fitz-William, Treaſurer of the Kings Houſhold, afterward Earle of *Southampton*.
Thomas Baron *Cromwel*, afterward Earle of *Eſſex*.
Iohn, Baron *Ruſſel*, afterward Earle of *Bedford*.
Thomas, Baron *Wriotheſly*, afterward created Earle of *Southampton*.
Arthur Plantagenet, Viſcount *Liſle*, Baſtard ſonne to King *Edward* the fourth.
Walter Deuereux, Baron *Ferrers* of *Chartley*, and afterward made Earle of *Hertford*.
Edward Howard, Admirall of *England*, who died in *Bretaigne*.
George Neuil, Baron *Aburgaueny*.
Thomas weſt, Baron *de la Ware*.
Thomas, Baron *Dacres* of *Gilleſland*.
Thomas, Baron *Darcy* of the North.
Edward Sutton, Baron *Dudley*.
William Blount, Baron *Montioy*.
Edward Stanley, Baron *Monteagle*.
William Baron *Sands*.
Henry Baron *Marney*.
Thomas Baron *Audley* of *Walden*, Lord Chancellor of *England*.
Iohn Gage, knight, Controller of the kings Houſe.
Henry Guilford, Knight, Maiſter of the Horſe, and after Controller of the Houſe.
Nicholas Carew, Knight, Maiſter of the Horſe.
Thomas Cheney, Knight, Warden of the Cinque-Ports.
Richard Wingfield, Knight, Chancellor of the Dutchy of *Lancaſter*.
Anthony Wingfield, Knight, Vice-Chamberlaine to the King, Captaine of the Guard, and after Controller of the Kings Houſe.
Anthony Saint-Leger, Knight, Vice-Roy of *Ireland*.
Iohn Wallop, Knight, Captaine of Guynes in *France*.

Edward *the ſixt*, *King of* England, France *and* Ireland, *Supreame Lord of the Garter: by him theſe men following were admitted into the ſaid Order.*

HEnry *the ſecond*, King of *France*.
Henry Grey, Marqueſſe *Dorſet*, after Duke of *Suffolke*.
Henry Neuile, Earle of *Weſtmerland*.
Edward Stanley, Earle of *Derby*.
Frances Haſtings Earle of *Huntingdon*.
William Herbert, Earle of *Pembroke*.
Thomas Seymour Baron of *Sudeley*.
Thomas Weſt Baron *de la Ware*.
George Brooke, Baron *Cobham*.
Edward Baron *Clinton*, Lord Admirall of *England*, and afterward Earle of *Lincolne*.
William Paget, Baron of *Beau-Deſert*.
Thomas Darcie, Baron of *Chiche*.
Andrew Sutton (alias *Dudley*) Knight.

Mary, *Queen of England*, *France and* Ireland, and Supreame Lady of the Order of the Garter, theſe men (for orders ſake) the other Knights being dead, were preferred into their places.

PHillip, King of *Spaine*, Husband to the Queene.
Emanuel Philebert, Duke of *Sauoy*.
Henry Radcliff, Sonne of *Henry* Earle of *Suſſex*.
Anthony Browne, Vicount *Mount-acute*.
William Howard, Baron of *Effingham*.
William Gray Baron of *Wilton*.
Edward Haſtings, Maſter of the Horſe, after Baron *Haſtings* of *Loughborow*, and Chamberlaine to the Queene.
Robert Rocheſter, Knight, dyed before the enſtalement.

Elizabeth *of famous memory*, *Queene* of England, France and Ireland, Supreame Lady of the moſt noble Order of the Garter, choſe into that Order, theſe men following.

MAximillian Emperour, King of *Bohemia* and *Hungaria*, in the yeare 1568
Charles the ninth, King of *France*. 1564
Henry the third, King of *France*. 1584
Fredericke King of *Denmarke*. 1582
Adolph, Duke of *Halſatia*. 1560
Iohn Caſimere, Count-Palatine of *Rhine* and Duke of *Bauaria*. 1579
Frances Montmorency, Duke of *Montmorency*. 1572
Thomas Howard, Duke of *Norfolke*. 1556

Fredericke Duke of *Wittenberge* 1597. He was not receiued, till vnder the reigne of the King of Great Bretaigne, *Iames*, firſt of that name, in the yeare 1604
William Parre, Marqueſſe of *Northampton*. 1559
Thomas Percie Earle of *Northumberland*. 1563.
George Talbot, Earle of *Shrewsburie*. 1561
Henry Stanley, Earle of *Derby*. 1574
William Sommerſet, Earle of *Worceſter*. 1570
Henry Manners, Earle of *Rutland*. 1559
Henry Haſtings Earle of *Huntington*. 1572
Ambroſe Sutton (alias *Dudley*) Earle of *Warwicke*. 1563
Francis Ruſſell, Earle of *Bedford*. 1564
Henry Herbert, Earle of *Pembroke*. 1574
Robert Sutton (alias *Dualey*) Earle of *Leiceſter*. 1559
Walter Deuereux Earle of *Eſſex*. 1572
Edward Mannors Earle of *Rutland*. 1584
Henry Radcliffe, Earle of *Suſſex*. 1586
Robert Deuereux, Earle of *Eſſex*. 1588
Gilbert Talbot, Earle of *Shrewsbury*. 1592
George Clifford, Earle of *Cumberland*. 1592
Henry Percie Earle of *Northumberland*. 1593
Edward Sommerſet, Earle of *Worceſter*. 1593
Robert Radcliffe, Earle of *Suſſex*. 1599
William Stanley, Earle of *Darby*. 1601
Arthur Grey, Baron of *Wilton*. 1572
Charles Howard, Baron of *Effingham*, and Lord Admirall of *England*, 1575. after Earle of *Nottingham*.
Edmund Burges, Baron *Chandoys*. 1572
Henry Cary, Baron of *Hunſdon*. 1561
William Cecil, Baron of *Burghley*. 1572
William Brooke Baron of *Cobham*. 1584
Henry Scroope, Baron of *Bolton*. 1584
Thomas Sackuile, Baron of *Buckhurſt*, after Earle of *Dorſet*, and Lord High-Treaſurer of England. 1593
Thomas, Baron *de Burgh*. 1593
Edmund, Baron *Sheffeild*. 1593
Thomas Howard, Baron *Howard* of *Walden*, 1597. after Earle of *Suffolke*, and Lord Chamberlaine to the Kings Maieſty, alſo Lord High-Treaſurer of England.
George Cary, Baron of *Hunſdon*, and Lord Chāberlain to Queen *Elizabeth*. 1597

Charles Blount, Baron *Mountioy*, 1597. after Earle of *Deuonshire*.
Henry Brooke, Baron *Cobham*. 1599
Thomas Cecil, Baron of *Burghly*. 1601
Henry Sidney, Knight, President of the Marches of *Wales*. 1588
Christopher Hatton, Knight, Lord Chauncellor of England. 1588
Francis Knoles, Knight, Treasurer of the Queenes house. 1593
Henry Lea, knight, Keeper of the Armory 1597

These foure last were of the long Roabe and they whom we call Knights of Letters (who may be of Armes) the *English*, *Germaines*, *Italians*, & other Nations, do tearme *Cheualiers Dorez*, *Equites Auratos*. Because in regard of their long & faithfull seruice, they haue Letters from their Prince, for the title of Earles & Knights, with power to beare the Circle on their Armes, a Chaine of Gold about their necks, the Sword and guilded Spurres, as we haue said in the first Booke, and first Chapter.

Iames, the first of Great Brittaine, *France, and Ireland, King, Supreame Lord of the Garter: by him these men following, were admitted into the said Order.*

Christierne, fourth of the name, King of *Denmarke*. 1603
Henry of *England*, Prince of *Wales*, and of Great *Bretaign*, eldest Sonne to the King. 1603
Charles Duke of *Yorke*, second Son to the King, Prince of Great *Bretaigne* and *Wales*. 1611
Fredericke, Prince Elector, Palatine of the *Rhine*. 1613
Graue Maurice, after Prince of *Orenge*. 1613
Frederick Duke of *Wittemberge*, elected in the yeare 1597. but not enstalled till 1604.
Lewes Duke of *Lenox*, Cousine to the King. 1603
Henry Wriothesly, Earle of *Southampton*. 1603
John Ereskin, Earle of *Marre*. 1603
William Herbert, Earle of *Penbrok*. 1603
Hulricke, Duke of *Holsatia*. 1605
Henry Howard, Earle of *Northampto* 1605
Robert Cecil, Earle of *Salisbury*, after Lord high-Treasurer of England. 1605
Thomas Howard, Viscount *Bindon*. 1605
George Hume Earle of *Dunbarre*. 1605
Phillip Herbert, Earle of *Montgomery*. 1605
Thomas Howard, Earle of *Arundel*. 1611
Thomas Ereskin Viscount *Penton*. 1615
Robert Carre, Vicount *Rochester*, afterward Earle of *Sommerset*. 1613
William Baron *Knoles* of *Grayes*, Treasuror of the Kings house, after Viscount *Wallingford*. 1615
Francis, Earle of *Rutland*. 1616
George Villers, after Viscount *Villers*, Earl and Marquesse of *Buckingham*. 1616
Robert Sidney, Viscount *Lysle*, after Earle of *Leicester*. 1616
James Hamilton, Marquesse *Hamilton* and Earle of *Cambridge*, enstalled 1623

For the rest, we haue sufficiently discourssed the Armes, Crests & Supporters of the said Order of the Garter, which may be seene in an infinite number of imprinted Bookes and Manuscripts, remaining yet in mine owne hands, with the figure of the vnion of the Roses White and Red, printed & cut in Copper at *London*, by *Iodocus Hondius*, An. 1589.

We will finish this Order, by the Blazons and Supporters of the Armes of *England*, and with the Kings, Heralds and Pursuiuants of Armes of the said Kingdome.

The Armes are *De France*, *Escartelé D'Angleterre*.

The Supporters: On the right side a Leopard, and on the other a Griffon.

There are three Kings of Armes.

Garter, who is first; for honour of the Order, but not for Antiquity, because his Institution was but by King *Henry* the Fift.

Clarenceux: And
Norroy.

Both of them Instituted by King *Edward* third of that name; And these two Kings are called Kings of Prouinces.

There are sixe Heralds; namely,

2. *Sommerset*.
6. *Chester*.
3. *Windsore*.
5. *Richmond*.
4. *Lancaster*.
1. *Yorke*. *

Who haue foure Pourssuiuants vnder them; to wit,

3. *Rougedragon*.
1. *Portcullis*. Which we tearme *Harro*,

* The Officers of Armes doe giue their attendance according to their antiquity in creation.

Harroy, that the King of England, *Henry*, eight of the name, tooke for his Deuise.

2. *Blew-Mantle*.
4. *Rouge Crosse*.

All these Officers are immediately allowed by the owne hand of the Kings of *England*, or in their absence or impeachment, by the Constable or Earle Marshall of the Kingdome, who giuing them their Crownes and Collars, createth the Pursuiuants and granteth Coates to the Heralds and Pursuiuants. They haue a House or Colledge for their meeting together, perticularly appointed for them in the Citie of *London*, and their Pensions or Wages are iustly payed them from the Kings Exchequer.

Gabrer King of Armes, hath charge of all such matters as concerne the Order, to carry mandates and all instruments necessary, as well to the Knights as Bachelers, elected and named for the said Order.

Clarenceaux King of Armes, hath for his deuision all the Prouinces and Countries of *England*, which are in the East, West and South sides, from the Riuer of *Trent*.

Norroy is King of Armes, of those parts extendind beyong the said Riuer, into the North.

The charge and exercise of these two Kings of Armes, is to command the Heralds and Pursuiuants, to view and visite in the Prouinces of their diuisions, all Noble Houses; to obserue, make and describe their Pedegrees; distinguish and blazon the Armes of yonger Brothers from the elder; to ouerthrow and deface in publique Market places, those which are vsurped by Yeomen, Villaines, or their Sons; and to cut off the Spurs of those vsurpers, who counterfeit themselues as descended from Nobles, Knights and Esquires. Also to giue Armes to such Yeomen, whom the Kings will haue ennobled: And to order the Blacks, Obsequies and Funerals for Princes, Gouernors, Knights, and Nobles in their partitions.

In *England* there is perticularly a Chamber of Iustice, to iudge causes concerning the facts of Knights of the *Garter*, as well for things touching their goods, as those that respect their honor and person. And this Chamber is named *The Court for Knights*. Therin is deliuered all Commissions, Exploits and Assignations, necessary in matters ciuile and criminall: the signification whereof belongeth to the King of Armes *Garter*, who imployeth in them (according to the importance and occurrences of the fact) the other Kings of Armes, or Heralds.

The End of the Orders of *England*.

The Order of Scotland, called of Saint *Andrew*, or of the *Thistle*, and the *Rew*.

CHAP. III.

L'Ordre d'Escosse, dit de Saint Andrieu ou du Chardon & de la Rue.

Edenborough the cheife Citie of Scotland.

Scotland, a part of Great *Bretaigne*, is an auncient State or Kingdome alone, and seperated from *England* by two Riuers, the one comming from the East, and called *Tueda*, and the other from the West, named *Solueo*, all the rest of the Iland is engirt with the Sea, tearmed the Ocean. *Edenborough* is the Capitall Citie of the Kingdome (where the Kings of *Scots*, predecessours to *Iames* the sixt, now reigning, and King of all Great *Bretaigne*) haue made their ordenarie residing.

Setting aside the auncient Originall of the *Scots*, and the Warres which they haue had against the *Picts*, the old *English* and *Saxons* their neighbours, and which the curious Reader may see in the Histories of *Marianus Scotus*; of *Ioannes Lesleus*, Bishop of *Rosse*, imprinted at *Rome*, *In ædibus populi Romani*, Anno 1568. of *George Buchanan*, and other Scottish Historians; wee will come to their Kings, the first of whom (by their saying) was *Fergus*, who they make to be the Son of *Ferquhard*, King of *Hibernia* or *Ireland*. *Fergusius fausiis omnium acclamationibus*, Fatali Cathedræ *insidens, primus Scotorum Rex in Albione dictus est*. Three hundred and thirty yeares before the Incarnation of our Sauiour and Redeemer *Iesu Christ*.

Fergus the first King of *Scotland*.

King *Hiber* that came from *Egypt*, & brought the Mable Stone.

The *Scots* say, that their King, named *Hiber*, who came from *Ægypt* to inhabite on the coasts of *Spaine*, and from thence into *Ireland*, so called of his name; brought along with him a Stone of Marble, made in the fashion of a Chaire, wherein hee made it his vse to sit. And this Chaire, which they called *Fatale*, the Kings of *Scots* were seated in, at their election to the Kingdome. A custome which was continued by the Kings, descending of *Fergus*, first of that name, vnto the King *John Balioll*, ouercome by the King of England *Edward*, first of that name, who caused the Marble Chayre to be brought from *Scone* in *Scotland*, where it was kept; to his Pallace at *Westminster* neere *London*, where at this day it is to be seene. Which *Edward* was incited to doe, because by an ancient credited saying, it was verily beleeued, that the Kingdome of *Scotland* should change from thence, to follow the fortune of him, who was to become Maister thereof, according as two verses, engrauen on the fatall Marble, doe report.

The Mable chaire brought into *England*.

Ni fallat fatum, Scoti quocumque locatum
Inuenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.

The Armes of King *Fergus*.

This *Fergus*, by the magnanimity of his courage, tooke for his Armes and deuise, the creature accounted the Symboll of valiancy and generositie, to witt *D'Or, Au Lyon rempant de Gueules* (which the Kings of *Scotland* haue retained, without changing, euen to this present) *Au Mezail tarre de front, et coronne, et pour Cimier vn Sceptre au coste droict, et vne Espee nuë a l'autre.*

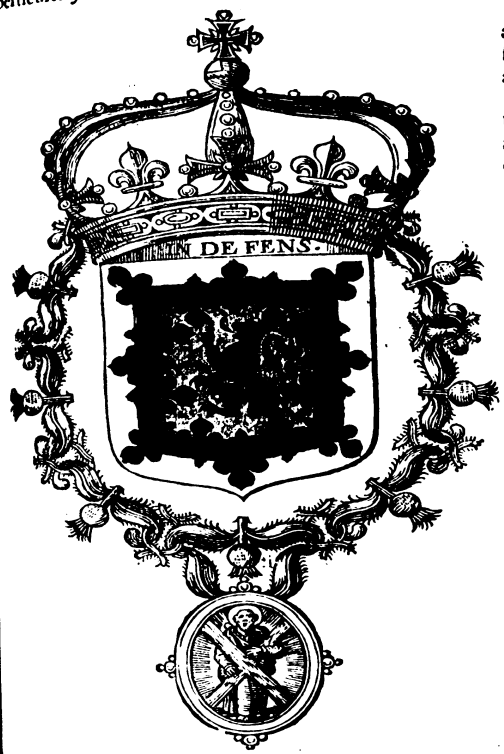
Donald the first Christian King of *Scotland*.

After the said *Fergus*, the *Scots* accounte fiue and twenty Kings Idolaters, vnto *Donalaus*, first of that name, who was their first Christian King, by the meanes of *Pope Victor*, first of the name, who sent them Priests, by whose preaching and miracles wrought, the said King of *Scotland*, the Nobility and people, embraced and receiued the Catholique Religion, in the yeare of *Iesus Christ*, two hundred and three, and from the establishment of the said Kingdome, fiue hundred, thirty and three.

After the said Christian King *Donalde* the first, vntill King *Achaius*, there are rancked seauen and thirty Kings successiuely.

This *Achaius*, made League and Alliance offensiue and defensiue, towards all and against all Kings and Princes, not excepting any; with King *Charlemaigne* and the most Chri-

Christians Kings of *France* his Successours to perpetuity, in the yeare of Grace, Eight hundred and nine. The Conuentions and agreements of this League spake particularly.



The Articles of the League concluded on.

That to Perpetuity, Alliance and Confederation, should be betweene the *Scotts* and *Frenche*.

That in the warres which the *English* made, the said *Scots* and *French* should giue succour mutually and reciprocally, the one to the other.

That if it happened the said *English*, should make warre in *France*; the *Scotts* must then giue them succour with men of warre, who should be waged and maintained at the expences of the *French*.

The same should they likewise doe, furnishing the expences with their money, if the said *Scotts* should be warred on by the *English*.

That for following time, neither the *Scotts* nor *French*, should fauour the parte of the *English*, either with money, councell, Armes or victualles, vnder paine of being declared guilty of High Treason.

That the *French* should make no Peace or Truce with the *English*; except the King of *Scots* were comprised and named therein.

That the Couenants and Conditions aboue named, should be confirmed from King to King, and at euch change of them, and their Pragmaticall Sanctions to bee sealed and confirmed reciprocally on both sides.

The ioy for this confederated alliance.

The *Scots* ioyfull of this Alliance, accepted it for their aduantage and benefit, as the very greatest and most famous of Christendome, and deleagued for their Ambassadours, *William*, Brother to *Achaius* their king, assisted with the councell of foure persons more, renowned for learning, named *Clemens*, *Iohn*, *Rabanus* and *Alcuinus*, accompanied with foure thousand men of warre, sent to the succour of king *Charlemaigne*. Of those foure Doctours and vtterers of knowledge, king *Charlemaigne* kept two, the one as Regent and Gouernour of the Vniuersitie of *Paris*, and the other for that of *Pauia*, which he had founded and erected, to instruct in learning the *French*, *Lombardes*, and the nations of *Italie*, which hee had reduced vnder his obedience. The two worthy Doctours, so stayed by king *Charlemaigne* at *Paris* and *Pauia*, were *Iohn*, sirnamed *Scotus*, a *Scottish* man both by nation and Sir-name, and *Claudius Clemens*.

Two learned Doctours aduanced by King *Charlemaigne*, *Iohannes Scotus* & *Claudius Clemens*.

To preserue the memory of this Alliance to posterity, the *Scotts* report, that *Charlemaigne* gaue permission to the said *Achaius*, king of *Scotland*, and to his Successours in the said kingdome, to Honour and enclose *Le Lyon de leur Armes D'vn double Essonier et Tresceheur Fleuré, Contrefleure De France de Gueules, & de porter la Coronne esleuee, et clescheé a l'Imperiale, le Chappeau decoré de quatre Fleures de Lys esleuee entre pareil nombre de Croix pattees.* Which the kings of *England*

The Armes of *Scotland* Enlarged.

Scotland haue conserued in Armes, And Crowned to this very day.

Æguinard, Secretary to the State, nourished (from his tender youth) in the Court of *France*, decribing the life of the said King *Charlemaigne*, maketh a denumeration of strange Princes, who sought for, and embraced the amity of that puissant Monarch. First of all, the Emperours of *Constantinople*, *Nicephorus*, *Michaell* and *Leo*: *Aaron* King of the *Persians*, Ruler of the greatest part of the *East*, the *Indiaes* excepted: *Alphonso* King of *Gallicica* and of the *Asturies*, with the Kings of *Scotland*, of whom he speaketh thus. *Scotorum quoque Reges sic habuit ad suam voluntatem per suam munificentiam inclinatos, Vt eum nunquam aliter quam Dominum, seque subditos ac seruos eius pronuntiarent. Extant Epistolæ ab eis ad eum missæ, quibus huiusmodi affectuum erga illum indicatur.*

Such as sought the friendship of King *Charlemaigne*.

This Alliance of the two Crownes of *France* and *Scotland*, hath continued (as the *Scots* themselues say) for the reignes of one and Forty Kings of *France*, and sixe and Forty of Kings *Scotland*, contayning the space of Eight hundred and twenty yeares.

The continuance of this lincked amity, and the succours giuen by the *Scots* to *France*.

In vertue of which Alliance or Confederation, many remarkable succours haue bin giuen by the *Scots* to *France*. The forenamed *Achaius* assisted King *Charlemaigne*, with foure thousand *Scots*, conducted by his Brother *Guillaum*, who did profitable seruice in tho warres, in *Italie*, *Saxonie*, *Hungaria* and *Spayne*.

Malcome, Third of that name, King of *Scotland*, sent two thousand men of his to *Monsieur Hugues de France*, called the Great, Counte of *Vermandois*, Brother to *Philip*, first of that name, to ioyne in the Voyage of the Holy Land, for the Conquest of *Ierusalem*, vnder the Conduct of the valliant Prince, *Godfrey of Bullen*.

Alexander, second of that name, sent Three thousand *Scots*, to the succour of the Great King Saint *Lewes*, Conducted by *Patach* of *Dunbar*, Earle of *Marche*, for his voyage into the *East*.

Alexander, third of that name, sent to the same Saint *Lewes*, for his Voyage into *Affrica*, other two thousand *Scots*, Conducted by the Earles of *Caerrct*, and of *Athol*.

Dauid la Bruce, sent three thousand *Scots* to King *Iohn*, Conducted by *William* Earle of *Douglas*, who were slaine on the day of *Poictiers*.

Robert Stuart Lord Gouernour of Scotland.

Robert de Stuart, Gouernour of *Scotland*, and vncle to King *Iames*, First of that name, sent seauen thousand *Scots* to *Monsieur Charles* of *France*, the *Dauphine* of *Viennois*, Conducted and commaunded by his Sonne the Earle of *Bouquhan*, and *Archembald Douglas*, Earle of *Wigton*, and Brother in Law to the Earle of *Boucquhan*, who won the Battaile at *Baugency*.

His Sonne *Murdaque*, also Gouernour of *Scotland*, sent ten thousand *Scots* to the same *Charles*, being King, Fifte of that name, Conducted by his Brother the said Earle of *Boucquhane*, and *Archembald Douglas*, and the one eyed Earle of *Douglas*, Father to the Earle of *Wigton*, Godfather to the Earle of *Boucquhane*; who perished (for the most part) at the Battaile of *Vernueill*. *Anno*, 1424.

Iohn Stuart, Constable of *Scotland*.

Iohn Stuart, Constable of *Scotland*, in the yeare One thousand, foure hundred twenty fiue, brought foure thousand *Scots* to King *Charles* the Seauenth, with many other Companies, commaunded by *Dauid le Pitulot*.

Since those times, the *Scots* haue alwayes continued, and giuen to *France* very worthy seruices; vnder the charge of *Robert Bernard*; an other *Robert* and *Iohn Stuart*, Lord of *Aubignie*; *Alexander* Duke of *Albaine*, and *Iohn* his Sonne; Earle of *Boucquhane*; during the Reignes of *Lewes* the Eleuenth, *Charles* the Eight, *Lewes* the Twelfth, *Frances* the First, and *Henry* the Second.

The *French* against the *Scots*.

The said *Scots*, not satisfied to haue assisted with their powers *France*, whensoeuer it had neede, to diuert the auncient enemies thereof from warring thereon; drew them against themselues into *Scotland*: so that vpon the same subiect, the *English* (at all times enemies of *France* and *Scotland*) entred into their Kingdome, foare wounded, and tooke prisoner *Dauid le Bruce*, of whom we spake before, and with him ten thousand *Scots* slaine, at the Battaile of *Dunham*.

Iames the Fourth, vpon the same subiect, had warre against his Father in Law the King of *England Henry*, Eight of that name: was slaine in the Battaile of *Flodden*, with him the most part of the Nobility, and well neere foureteene thousand *Scots*.

Iames the Fift, his Son, had also the same *Henry* the (Eight being his Vncle) pressing vpon

vpon him, because hee had made warre in fauour of the King of France, *Frances* the First, his Father in Law. This Warre succeeded ill to him, he dyed with griefe & discontent, eight dayes after an vnkinde crosse of Fortune, by the ouerthrow of his Army, conducted by *Oliuer de Sainct-Clere*, his Fauourite.

The death of King *Iames* the Fift.

Mary Stuart, Queene of *Scotland*, his Daughter and onely Heyre, was by the three Estates of the Realme, promised in Marriage to Prince *Edward* of England, Sonne to the said King *Henry* the Eight, in the Life time of his Father. But he being dead, the said Estates of *Scotland* finding this Alliance not liking to them, married their Queene, sending her into France, to the French Daulphine, Second Son to King *Henry*, Second of that name. *Edward* being angry at this Marriage, sent an Army into Scotland, conducted by his Vncle the Duke of *Somerset*, who wonne the Battaile of *Puique*, wherein dyed Fifteene Thousand *Scots*.

King *Edward* disappointed of his Marriage.

Beside these succours and signall Seruices, rendred so many times by the Scots to France, heereto may bee added, that since King *Iames*, Sixt of that name, King of Scotland, came to the Crown of England, by the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *Henry* the Eight: the States of England made many requests to the Scots, that seeing they were now ioyned together, as being one people, vnder the obedience of one King onely, and their Kingdomes compriſed vnder the name of Great *Bretagne*; it was very requisite and good reason, that (thenceforward) there should be no other Alliance, Confederation or other Gouernment, but that of the English, labouring by this meanes, to diuert the Scots from the ancient Alliance of France, whereto the Scots would not listen by any meanes.

Motion made for altering the Alliance.

Because (from time to time) there had beene Alliance and Affinity betweene the French and Scots, from King to King, and Kingdome to Kingdome, and their Affinity renewed by diuers Marriages. For *Iewes* the Eleauenth being Daulphin, had to Wife in his first Nuptialls, Madame *Margaret* of Scotland, Daughter to King *Iames* First of that name, at which time, the blood of the two Nations of France & Scotland were conioyned and mingled all together. In regard that there were an Hundred and Forty, as well Scottish Ladies as Gentlewomen, married into France, of which number, were the two Sisters to the Queene Daulphine, the one whereof espoused the Duke of *Bretaigne*, and the other the Earle of *Flanders*.

Alliance contracted from time to time.

Alexander Duke of *Albany*, Brother to the King of Scots, Third of the name, espoused the Counteſſe of *Bologne*: And running at Tilt against Monsieur *Lewes*, Duke of *Orleance*, was wounded with a splinter of a Launce, of which hurt he died immediately, leauing off this Marriage.

The Issue by this Marriage.

Iohn Stuart, Duke of *Albany*, Count of *Bologne*, and Gouernour of Scotland, during the Minority of *Iames* the Fift: who married in his first espousals Madame *Magdalen* of France, eldest Daughter to King *Frances*, First of that name. And in second Marriage, the said King *Iames* tooke to Wife *Mary* of *Lorraine*, Dowager of *Longue-Ville*, Sister to the Duke of *Guise*; And of this Marriage was borne only one Daughter.

Mary Stuart, Queene of Scotland, Wife to the Daulphine *Frances*, Second of that name, King of Scotland.

The Kings of France incited by the fidelity of the Scots, of succours and Seruices so many times receiued from them, and of losses and damages suffered by them, in being alwayes of their part and Alliance: haue recompenced their principall charges, from the great Fiefs and fees of their Crowne.

Iohn Stuart, Constable of France.

Charles, Seauenth of the name, gaue the Office of *Constable of France*, the first of the Kingdome, to Lord *Iohn Stuart*, Earle of *Boucquhane*. He was made by the same King, Count *d'Eureux*, an ancient Appennage belonging to the Princes of the blood of France, Kings of *Nauarre*, and hee gaue him the Siegneury of *Concressault*. He deserued for his great and worthy Seruices, to beare for honor in the first Quarter of his Armes, *De France à la Bordure de Gueules, à huict fermailets d'Or*.

The Earle of *Douglas* was honoured with the Duchie of *Touraine*, which *Charles* the Seauenth, and his Brethren, Eldest Sonnes of France, held for their Appennage or Portion.

The said *Douglas* enioyed the said Duchie, hee, his Sonne, and youngest Sonne, vnder

Priuiledges granted to Scottish Merchant.

These Priuiledges of the Scots, were confirmed by King *Henry* the Great, Fourth of that name, in the yeare One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Foure Score and Nineteene. According as the same was formerly done by King *Charles* the Ninth, who in *Anno* One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Three Score and Seauen, confirmed the Priuiledges granted by the Kings his Predecessors to Scottish Merchants, Priuiledges of Exemption from all kinds of Impositions laid vpon their Merchandises. Priuiledges not onely verified in the Court of Parliament at *Paris*; but also confirmed by Arrests in the Yeares, One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Foure Score and One, and One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Foure Score and Foure.

The Captaines of the Scottish Guards, who had the places of Honour wherevnto they were called: As those of the first Men of Armes; of ordenary excuses, the Marshall of the Lodging; the keepers of the keyes, & of the Quire in the Church, were naturall Scots. And vntill the disastrous death of King *Henry*, Second of that name, slaine by a Lance in the Iousts of Paris, by the Count *de Montgommery*, naturall Scots. By whose death and absence, those Charges were conferred on the Lords and French Gentlemen, admitted in like manner into the Companies of the Scottish Guards, with the naturall Scots. But returne wee now againe to King *Achaius*, the subiect of this our digression.

King *Athelstane* against *Hungus* King of the *Picts*.

Hungus, King of the Picts, pressed by the powers of *Athelstane*, King of the East *Saxons*, made his recourse to the said *Achaius*, who with his Army of ten thousand Scots, entred on the Marches and Frontiers of *Northumberland*, where hee gaue hot welcome to *Hungus* at his returne; yet he was surprized by the Army of *Athelstane*, with all his forces, as hee resolued (neuertheless) to giue the Enemy Battaile. And being in the night time on their knees at prayer, the Scottish men beheld in Heauen the Crosse of Saint *Andrew* the Apostle, their Patron, by vertue and encouragement of which sight, by breake of day the next morning, they had the victory ouer the King their enemy, who was there slaine, and the place hath euer since retained his name, being called *Athelstanes Foord*, abruptly tearmed *Austans Foord*. The Scots write, that about the yeare of Grace, Three Hundred, Three Score and Nine, Saint *Regulus* came forth of *Greece* into *Scotland*, bringing with him the Reliques of Saint *Andrew* the Apostle, whom they held for their Tutelary Saint and Patrone. And his Crosse *En Saultoir* (vnhansomly fashioned) for Colonel in their Penons, Standards and Banners.

A Vision of the Crosse of Saint *Andrew*.

Athelstanes or *Austans* Ford

After this *Achaius*, the Scots account twenty Kings in Succession, euen vnto *Malcolme*, Third of that name, who began to reigne in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Three Score and One. Of his Wife Saint *Margaret*, Sister to *Edgar*, he begat sixe Sonnes, and two Daughters.

Saint *Margaret* Wife to King *Malcolme*

Edward, slaine with his Father.
Etheldred, dying young.
Edgar.
Alexander.
Dauid: And
Edmond, who became a Monke.
The Daughters were

Mathilde, or *Mahauld* of Scotland, Wife to the King of England *Henry*, First of that name, called *Beauclarke*. And of this Marriage descended the Kings of England, Successors to the said *Henry*. The other Daughter, was

Mary of Scotland, Wife to *Eustace* Count of *Bologne*, Brother to *Godfrey* of *Bologne* the First King of *Ierusalem*.

Donald, Brother to King *Malcolme*.

By a Concubine, before his Marriage, hee had a Bastard Sonne named *Duncane*, who was King of Scotland, Second of the name after *Donald*, Brother to *Malcolme* the Third, who, with his eldest Sonne was slaine on the Marches of Scotland, by the King of England *William*, Sirnamed *Rous*, or *Rufus*, Sonne to *William* the Conqueror, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Foure Score and Seauenteene, the Sixe and Thirtieth yeare of his Reigne, the Queene Saint *Margaret* deceasing with sorrow foure dayes after him. In his time was made the Conquest of *Normandy*, by *Willam* the Bastard. And the Illustrious Family of the *Stuarts*, which holdeth

Originall of the Royall Family of *Stuart*

deth the Crownes of Great *Bretaigne* at this present, tooke stemme and foundation from *Walter* (Sonne of *Fleance*) Great Seneschall or Steward of Scotland. After King *Malcolme* succeeded

Donald, Sixt of the name, his Brother, in regard of the young yeares of his Nephewes; transported them into England, vndet the Guard of King *Edgar*, their Vncle by the Mothers side. The reigne of this man was of no long continuance, because

Duncane, Bastard of him dead, being assisted by a puissant Armie, which was sent him from *William Rufus*, vnder whom hee had martially serued: expelled *Donald* out of *Scotland*; who reigned no more then eighteene Moneths, but fled into the Ilands *Hebrides*. *Duncane* was slaine within a while after, by the cunning traines of *Donald*; who came againe into Scotland, where he ill-intreated the Nobility, the chiefest whereof resolued to call home

Edgar conducted into *Scotland* by an English Army, and the First King there annointed.

Edgar, the Third Sonne of *Malcolme*. From England he was conducted into Scotland (by an Army of Englishmen, sent from *William Rufus*) where he was receiued and installed in the fatall Chayre at *Scone*, and *Donald* shut vp in Prison, where hee dyed with griefe, in the fourth yeare of his Reigne.

Edgar was the first of the Kings of Scotland, Annointed and Sacred with Holy Oyle, by the Bishop of Saint *Andrewes*, named *Godric*, which hath euer since beene obserued at the Coronation of the Kings of Scotland. Saint *Margaret*, Mother to the said *Edgar* obtained this Priuiledge of Pope *Vrbane* the Second, who at that time presided in the Holy Seate.

This King liued peaceably in his Kingdome about the space of nine yeares, and dyed without Issue, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, One Hundred and Nine, and after him succeeded his Brother

Alexander, First of that name, called the Strong, who dyed also without Issue, after he had reigned Seauenteene yeares, in *Anno*, One Thousand, One Hundred, Twenty Sixe, leauing for his Successour his Brother

English Earldomes comming to the Crowne of Scotland.

Dauid, First of that name, who in the life time, and with the consent of his Father *Alexander*, tooke to Wife *Mahauld*, Daughter and sole Heyre to the Earle of *Cumberland*, *Northumberland* and *Huntingdon*, Earledomes, which by meanes of this Alliance came to the Crowne of Scotland, vnder the homage of that of England. Of this Marriage was borne their onely Sonne

Henry, who dyed in his Fathers life time.

Hee had espoused *Adama*, Daughter to the Earle of *Warren*, and by her hee had three Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

Malcolme,
William: And
Dauid.
The Daughters were
Adama,
Margaret: And
Mahauld.

Moreouer, hee had by the Widdow of *Gualtier*, Knight of the *Thistle*, a Bastard Sonne, named *Gualtier*, a Monke of holy life, Confessour and Councellour to his Brother *Malcolme*.

Dauid, First of that name dyed, hauing reigned nine and twenty yeares, in the yeare, One Thousand, Fiue Hundred, Fifty One.

Malcolme, Sirnamed The Virgin-Man.

Malcolme, Fourth of that name, teamed the Virgin-Man, eldest Sonne to the Prince of Scotland *Henry*, scceeded in the Kingdome, after the death of *Dauid* the First his Grandfather. He liued chastly, and not being married, gouerned by his naturall Brother, formerly named, and dyed after hee had reigned thirteene yeares.

An. 1163. he had for his Successour his Second Brother

William, Sirnamed the Lyon, who left by his Wife *Hermingard*, Daughter to the Earle of *Beaumont*, youngest Daughter to *William* the Conquerour, one Sonne, named

Alexander, and three Daughters, all married into England, to wit

and other Authors who liued at that time, say all with one consent, this of her. *Magnam post Abaelardi coniugis mortem ei in assiduis precibus fidem seruasse, Corpusque eius de loco vbi obierat, ad prædictum Paracleti Monasterium transtulisse.*

Shee dyed the Sixteenth of the Calends of *Iune*, *An.* One Thousand, One Hundred, Threescore and Three. And at her entering, the Celestiall and Diuine Loue of these faithfull Louers appeared by Miracle. *Helouisa, being at the end of her life, ordained and desired to bee carried to the Sepulchre or Tombe of* Abaylard *her Husband. After her death she was brought thither, and (a miraculous thing) her Husband, who twenty yeares before had lien in his Graue, lifted vp his arme on high, receiued the body of his Wife, and after hee had embraced it, held it fast to him.*

An other testimony of true and cordiall affection.

Heloisa in agritudine posita præcepit, vt mortua intra Mariti tumulum poneretur. Et sic eadem defuncta ad tumulum deportata, Maritus eius qui multis diebus ante eam defunctus fuerat, eleuatis in brachijs illam recepit, & ita eam amplexatu, brachia sua restrinxit.

To the end, that like as this modest Dame (during her Marriage) had singularly affected and honoured her Husband; so after the dissolution thereof, and his life, she loued him more entirely, with loue wholly diuine and Celestiall, and liued all the rest of her life in continuall Chastity, & in obseruance of the Monasticall Rules, which the said *Abaylard* had prescribed to her, and followed him in the same Graue, to liue with him in eternall glory. These are the words of *Peter* of *Clugny*, writing the newes of her Husbands death, to the said *Helouisa*. *Hunc ergo venerabilis & charissima in Domino Soror, cui post carnalem copulam tanto validiore quanto melius diuinæ charitatis vinculo adhæsisti, cum quo, & sub quo diu Domino deseruisti; hunc inquam, loco tuo, vel vt te alteram in gremio suo confouet & in aduentu Domini, in voce Archangeli; & in tubâ Dei descendentis de Cœlo, tibi per ipsius gratiam restituendum reseruat.* Returne wee now againe to the Kings of Scotland.

Alexander the Third (of whom we discourst before this digression) dyed in *An.* One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score, and Three, hauing reigned thirty foure yeares.

Being dead without Issue, and hauing declared (by his Testament) his Successor in the Kingdome: there grew contention betweene *Iohn Baliol*, and *Robert Bruce*, Princes issued of the Scottish Blood, to which of them the Crowne should come, because they were both descended of *Dauid*, Brother to King *William*; *Robert*, of *Isabel* of Scotland, the youngest Daughter, and *Iohn*, of *Margarete* of Scotland, eldest Daughter to the said *Dauid*. To vnderstand clearely this Genealogie, let vs tell you.

The variance happening betweene *Iohn Baliell* and *Robert Bruce*.

Dauid, First of that name, King of Scotland, Brother to King *Alexander* the First, had a Sonne.

Henry of Scotland, Father of three Sonnes, namely of *Malcolme*, Fourth of that name, King of Scotland, deceasing without Issue, as we haue said, of

William, King of Scotland, of whom the Line fayled in the person of King *Alexander* the Third, the Subiect of this digression. And of

Dauid of Scotland, Earle of *Huntingdon*, who left but two Daughters; to wit

Margaret: And

Isabell of *Huntingdon*.

Of *Margaret*, eldest Daughter to *Dauid* of *Huntington*, descended one onely Daughter

Dernogilde, Wife to *Iohn Balioll*, Father and Mother of this *Iohn Balliol*, who contended for the Crowne.

Isabell, youngest Daughter to *Dauid* of *Huntingdon*, wife to *Robert Bruce*, had a Son *Robert Bruce*, Father of this *Robert Bruce*, who pretended his precedency to the Kingdome, before his Cousin *Iohn Balioll*, who maintained the contrary. To make agreement betweene them, *Edward* the First, King of England, Sirnamed *Long-shanks*, was made Arbitratour, who adiudged the Crowne to *Iohn Balioll*, sitting in the Fatall Chayre, according to the ancient Customes. This *Iohn* and his Sonne *Edward*, were taken and ouerthrowne in Battaile, by the said King *Edward* the First, and then hee transported the Fatall Chayre, as we haue formerly declared.

Robert Bruce came to the Crowne of *Scotland*, which he defended valiantly against the *English*, surmounting them in great store of Encounters; so that he purged *Scotland* of the *English*, after a furious and Blody Battaile, wherein he had the victory, the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred and foureteene, the feast day of S. *Iohn*: This *Robert* had two wiues. By the first, named *Elizabeth*, Sister to the Earle of *Marre*, he had but one daughter, named *Margery*.

The other wife, was Sister to the Earle of *Hulleſten*, and by her he had one Sonne and two daughters, namely

Dauid.

Margaret: And

Mahauld.

At the generall Parliament of *Scotland*, holde in the yeare before remembred, it was ordained, that for following time, the Kingdome of *Scotland* should appertaine to *Dauid*, the Sonne of *Robert*. And if he chaunced to dye without heires Males; to *Edward*, Brother of the said *Robert*, and to his Male children; who deceasing without heires Masculine: the Crowne of *Scotland* should then come to *Margerie*, eldest daughter to King *Robert*, and to her descendants, as well Males as Females.

An Order agreed on in the Court of Parliament.

There was a Treatie of Peace, betweene the *Scots* and *English*, by meanes of the Mariage of *Ioane*, daughter to *Edward*, the Third of that name, King of *England*, with *Dauid* of *Scotland*, Sonne to the said King *Robert*, who died the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred twenty and nine, and the foure and twentieth of his Reigne. Somewhile before his death, hee had made a vow to crosse ouer the Seas, to make warre vpon the *Sarrazins*: which hauing not done, hee appointed by his Testament, that his heart should be buried at the Holy Sepulchre of *Ierusalem*, which was performed by *Iames Douglas* his faithfull Knight, who (at his returne) came to dwell in *Spayne*, where he died in the seruice of the King of *Arragon*, in a Fight giuen against the Moores.

Peace treated on betweene the *English* and *Scots*.

Dauid, Second of the name, succeeded in the Kingdome of *Scotland*, by the death of King *Robert* his Father. His repose was so troubled by *Edward* of *England*, that this young King was constrained to forsake his Kingdome, and shelter himselfe in *France*, in the Courte of King *Phillip de Valois*, the Sixte and last of that name, who gaue the Conduct of a puissant Army to *William Douglas*, and hee expelled the *English* out of *Scotland*, where he reseated his Master King *Dauid*: who hauing reigned nine and thirty yeares, more in warre then peace, more in afflictions and miseries, then any pleasure or contentment: died in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred twenty, without hauing any issue by his two wiues, *Ioane* the Daughter of *England*, or *Margaret*, daughter to the Knight *Iohn Logy*: So that by his death, according to the Decree of Parliament Generall, related before, the Crowne of *Scotland* came to the Eldest sister.

The *English* expulsed out of *Scotland*.

Margerie, who married *Walter Stuart*, and of this Mariage descended the Kings of *Scotland*, that reigne to this day. Behold heere the Sourse of that Illustrious Family.

The Originall of the Illustrious Family of Stuart.

Banquho, Thane of Loquhabir, that is to say, President and Gouernour of such a Prouince in *Scotland*, with his Sonne *Fleance*, caried themselues so vertuously in their charges, that they attained to great credit in *Scotland*. This was the reason, why King *Mackbeth* (immediate Predecessour of King *Malcolme* the third) was very enuious of their vertue, practising by wicked stratagems to murther them both. The father was slaine in the place.

Fleance escaped, and saued himselfe in *England*, trauayling to the Gouernour of the Prouince of *Wales*. This *Fleance* and his Father caried for their Armes *D'or a la Fesse Eschiquettee D'Argent & de Sable de quatre Traicts*, Which are the Auncient Armes of the *Stuarts*. This *Fleance* espoused the Daughter to the Gouernour of *Wales*, and of this mariage was borne.

The Armes caried by *Fleance* and his Father.

Walter, surnamed *Banquho* (according as his Father was) who returning into *Scotland*, fought valiantly for his King, against the Ilands Rebells, and the Sauages of *Scotland*. In recompence of his extraordinary vertue, he was made Great

There can no truth be expected from the father of lies.

ment, or as there is a common Prouerbe at *Paris*: He is a Foole that so trusts. On the morow after this crowning the Earle of *Atholl*, he was fastened to the taile of a Horse, being led so thorow all the quarters and streets of the Citty. On the third day he was drawne with foure Horses, his hart and bowells rent forth of his body, which finally was deuided into foure quarters, the head and they being sent through all the Prouinces and Townes of the Kingdome, and affixed to the principall places of them.

The rest of his complices.

The Complices in this execrable Parricide, were pinched, with burning Pincers, quartered, and cast vpon Wheeles, so to finish the rest of their miserable liues.

Prouidence to auoide confusion, and good successe ensuing on it.

James, Second of the name, the only Male childe left, succeeded in the Kingdome of *Scotland*, being then but sixe yeares of age: And this young condition of the Prince, gaue subiect to the Malcontents, to remoue all things out of order. To cleanse *Scotland* of these enormities, the Gouernour and Chauncellour of the Realme, assembled the three Estates in the Royall Citty, where the mutiners appeared, and were there ouer-reached at the end of a Feaste, made in the Kings Castell. The Table cloths being taken away, on the Table where the mutiners sate, was placed a Bulles head which (long before had bin the noate among the *Scots*, of condemnation to death.) They were instantly manacled and bound with cordes, and by their execution, *Scotland* reduced to perfect quietnes.

Ad præfinitam diem omnes sese sistunt. Publice coitur, disseritur varie de rebus variis; Prandetur simul. Douglacio Comiti, Dauidi eius fratri, ac Malcolmo Flemingo Cammaldeo, in Castello Edimburgensi, subito remota mensa, Caput Tauri (*quod Scotis tunc temporis signum fuit in reos capitalis sententiæ latæ*) Apponitur. *In mensa vinculis constringuntur: post capite mensam multantur: quo facto res Scotica pacata fuit.*

The said *James* had to wife *Mary*, Daughter to the Duke of *Gueldres*, and of this mariage issued three Sonnes and two Daughters.

James, afterward King, Third of the name.
Alexander, Duke of *Albanie*; And
John, Earle of *Marre*. The Daughters were
Mary, Wife to *Iames Hamilton*, Earle of *Arane*: And
Margaret.

This *James* was slaine by the slice or piece of a Faulckon, breking at the siedge of *Roxborough*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand foure hundred and ninety, hauing reigned foure and twentie yeares, leauing for his Successour his eldest Sonne

James, Third of the name, aged then only seauen yeares, who espoused *Margan*, Daughter to *Christierne*, First of that name, King of *Denmarke*, *Sueden* and *Norway*, by whom he had three Sonnes, and one Daughter.

James, afterward King, Fourth of the name.
Alexander, Duke of *Rothsaye*: And
John, Earle of *Marre*.
The Daughter is not named -------

King *James* being (in his olde dayes) addicted to all couetous courses, and gouerned by councell of men of meane qualitie; all the Nobles of *Scotland* bandied themselues against him, elected Prince *James* his eldest Son, aged then but sixteene yeares, for their King, and vnder his conduct, marched in rancked Battaile against the Father, who was there slaine the eleuenth day of *Iune*, *Anno*, 1488. being the eight and twentieth of his Reigne, leauing for Successour in the Kingdome, his eldest Sonne.

James, Fourth of the name, who at the beginning of his Reigne, found the Realme full of troubles and seditions, The Earle of *Lennox*, the Lord of the *Isle*, and an infinite number of Barons, arose against him, to take the Crowne from him, and to reuenge (as they said) the murder by him committed on the person of his Father King *James*, whose bloody Shirt they caried openly, through the Townes and Prouinces of *Scotland*, thereby to procure a generall reuolt. Yet it came to passe (notwithstanding) that the mutiners were vanquished in a fought Battaile, to make it knowne to Subiects: that it belongeth not to them, to raise Armes against their Prince, or to Canton themselues in his Townes, vnder whatsoeuer pretence or appearance.

Such are still apt to oppose their lawfull King, can neuer prosper.

Notwithstanding this victory, K. *James*, was long time afflicted with disturbances, hauing euermore before his face, the countenance of his father, of whose death he had bin the

occasion. And he was verily perswaded, that at euery step he trode; the shadow of his Father followed him at his heeles.

Omnibus vmbra locis adero; dabis improbe pœnas.

He called also to his memory, diuers passages of the sacred Scriptures, *That the sinne which bandieth himselfe against his Father, and speaketh euill of his Mother, shall be accursed in heauen and on earth: And all the people shall say, Amen.* The same is said also of disobedient children, as passe out of the world into eternall darknesse. *Qui maledixit Patri suo, & Matri, extinguetur Lucerna eius in medijs tenebris:* So it is said in the twentieth of the *Prouerbs*. And if the life of the disobedient childe, shall be alwayes fatall and vnfortunate; then must his death be altogether extraordinary, the Rauens of the Torrents, accustomed to Carrion, shall picke out his eyes, and his body shall serue for foode to the yong Rauens; in the last of the *Prouerbs*. *Oculum qui subsannat Patrem, & qui despicit Matrem, effodiant eum Corui de Torrentibus, & comedant eum filij Aquilæ. Heauen and Earth shall passe, but the Word of God remaineth for euer.*

For this reason the said King *James*, obtained an absolution from the Pope, *Alexander* the sixt then sitting, as the *Scottish* Histories relate in these words. *Alexander Sextus, Pontifex Maximus, cum intellexisset Regem incredibili quodam dolore penè consectum, quod eorum factioni, qui manus Patri inferendas coniurabant, se adiunxerat. Formunum primum suum Amanuensem (quem Protbonotarium vocant) abeum mittit, qui illum suo nomine bono esse animo iuberet, &c.* This was done in the yeare of Grace, One thousand foure hundred ninetie one.

King *Henry* the seuenth his Daughter *Margaret* married to King *James* the fourth of *Scotland*.

This *James* tooke to wife the eldest Daughter of King *Henry* of *England*, seauenth of the name, named *Margaret*, in right of whom, *James*, sixt of the name, King of *Scotland*, succeeded to the Crowne of *England* after the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, as we haue alreadie showne in our precedent discourse. And of this marriage were many children born, which were not long liued: so that there remained but two Sons: *James*, fift of the name, King of *Scotland*, borne in the yeare, One thousand fiue hundred and twelue, the fifteenth day of *Aprill*: And *Alexander*, Duke of *Rothsay*, who died an infant, One thousand fiue hundred and sixteene.

Now notwithstanding this Alliance and kinred, King *Henry* of *England* the eight, brought his Armie into *Scotland*, against his Brother in Law, who was ouercome in the Battaile at the foote of the Mountaine by *Flodden*, foure houres after midday, the ninth day of September, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred and thirteene, the fiue and twentieth yeare of his Reigne, and nine and thirtieth of his age. After the Battaile, the Body of the King could not be found among the dead, nor remaining with the liuing. The *English* said, that the morrow after the Battaile, by the breake of day, they found the body of the King of *Scotland*, stretched out at length, and wholly dead, and that they caused it to be carried, first to *Warwicke*, and afterward to *Richmond*. The *Scots* on the contrary did maintaine, that the body transported by them into *England*, was that of the Lord of *Bonhard*, and not of the King, who the night after the Battaile, was seene safe and well at *Kelsoy*, and that from thence (grieuing for the Battailes losse) he went to finish his dayes at the holy Sepulcher of *Ierusalem*, and the deuout places of the holy Land, in prayer and teares, as performing penance for the death of his Father. *Iudicia Domini abyssus multa.*

Doubt and question about the Kings body.

James the fift, came to the Crowne of *Scotland*, being then but two yeares old. He was hurried among the troubles and seditions of the time, which neuer faile to giue their attendance, especially at such times as Kings are in their minoritie, according as the diuine written Word hath giuen vs assurance: *Væ Regno, cuius Rex puer est*, in whatsoeuer sence it can be turned.

He married two Wiues, the first Madam *Magdalen* of France, Daughter to King *Francis* the first. This mariage was solemnized (the said *James* being present) in the Church of *Paris*, the first day of January, One thousand fiue hundred thirty seauen. She died of a Feuer in *Scotland*, the sixt of the Ides of Iuly, in the same yeare.

In second Nuptials he espoused (by Ambassadours in *France*) the Earle of *Murray*, and *David de Betoun* Cardinall, Bishop of *Mirepoix* in *Languedocke*) *Mary* of *Lorraine*,

Lorraine, Daughter to the Duke of *Guise*, *Claudius* of *Lorraine*, Widdow to the Duke of *Longueuille*. Of this marriage in Anno One thousand fiue hundred and thirtie, was borne

James, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred thirtie eight.

Arthur in Anno One thousand fiue hundred and fortie, both of them dyed in one day.

Mary, who was Queene of *Scotland*, borne in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred fortie and two, the seauenth of the Ides of December.

James the fift, dyed soone after, *to wit*, the nineteenth day of the Calends of Ianuary, One thousand fiue hundred fortie two. Appointing his buriall to be neere to his wife, in the Church of Holy Crosse in *Edenborough*.

Mary, his onely Daughter, came to the Crowne of *Scotland*, the seauenth day of her birth, Crowned at *Striueling*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred fortie three. And promised the same yeare to the Prince of *Wales*, *Edward* of *England*, Sonne to King *Henry* the eight, a marriage which was neuer performed. After the death of King *Henry* the eight, his Sonne *Edward* the sixt did what he could, to haue this Royall Princesse into *England*, against which, the Great Lords of *Scotland* made their opposition. Vpon this refusall, the *English* entred the Kingdome with a potent Armie, whereby the *Scots* were vanquished in a pitched Battaile. So that the States of the Realme thought it most conuenient, to send the yong Queene into France, and marie her there to the French Prince *Daulphine Francis*, afterward King of France, second of the name. The *English* endeauoured to surprize her on the Sea, but notwithstanding all their ambushes, she arriued safe and well there, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred fortie seauen. And the espousals of the said Queene *Mary*, and the Prince *Daulphine* were celebrated in the Church of *Paris*, the foure and twentieth day of Aprill, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred and fiftie eight, after Easter. Of this mariage came no issue, and by the death of the said King *Francis* the second, happening in the Citie of *Orleance*, the the fift day of December, One thousand fiue hundred and sixtie. Queene *Mary* Dowager of *France*, returned the yeare following into her Realme of *Scotland*, and in some time after, she tooke as her second Husband, *Henry Stuart*, Duke of *Albany*, and Lord *D'Arnley*. And of this marriage issued their onely Sonne (called *James* the sixt) King of *Scotland*; by the vntimely and much to be moaned death of so great a Princesse, happening in *England* in the yeare, One thousand fiue hundred eighty eight.

We haue spoken formerly, that the Illustrious house of the *Stuarts*, tooke Originall and descent from *Banquho*, *Thane* of *Loquhaber*. And now say, concerning the appellation of the word *Thane*: *Stuartorum familia (vt rem à capite arcessam) à Banquhone Regio in Loquhabriâ Thano; id est (vt Latine loquitur) Præside.* This is all that is spoken by the Bishop *Lesleus*, in the seauenth Booke of his Historie, Page 257. without explicating more vnderstandingly, the source of this strange name, being an auncient *Saxon* word. For in the old Lawes of the *English Saxons* (commonly called *Anglo-Saxons*) mention is made of this word *Thaynus* and *Sub-Thaynus*, in many places.

Of the words *Thaynus* and *Sub-Thaynus*.

Among the auncient *Anglo-Saxons*, their estate of Nobilitie was deuided by certaine degrees of honour and preheminence. In the first place were the Earles, and next, the Barons, who were called *Thanes*. After them marched the Castillians, who they vsed to call *Sub-Thanes*, and the simple Gentlemen of the Field.

Degrees of Nobilitie among the *Anglo-Saxons*.

If the Fielden or Countrey Gentleman, had so well husbanded his affaires, as in value he were worth fiue Hides in Arpents of Land (*Hyda* in the *Saxon* Law and *Norman*, contained foure Roddes, and each Rod comprehended foure and twentie Acres of ground, as yet they speake in *Normandy* and *Bretaigne*) a Parish Church, an Abbey, Priorie or founded Hospitall, a House with a Tower, in manner of a Clock-house, with Battlements, murdring loop-holes, and a draw-Bridge: if he haue also some charge of office in the Kings House: Then he may goe equall and fellow like with the Baron called *Thane*, and may purchase the title also by the Princes

Of equall rank the Gentlemen of a *Thane*.

Letters, paying for rights of reliefe but fiue times an hundred shillings, of currant money.

If this *Thane* of new creation, finde himselfe so aduanced in the Court of his King and Prince, as he becommeth his Table familiar, feedeth freely in Court with good lookes, no distaste, and gaineth imployment by command in some Embassie; And shall haue likewise with him a *Thane*, who is also possessed of fiue Hydes of Land, intirely of his owne, and some Office in Court, and hath three times deliuered Messages to the King, on the behalfe of his Maister: He may likewise be a *Sub-Thane*, and represent the person of his *Thane*, hauing first sworne to him all fidelity, and shall be his Castellaine.

Bouche a Court Barberaze Pied ferre.

Of a *Sub-Thane*.

If this *Thane* doe so aduantageously follow his fortune, as to compasse the reuenues of an Earle, he shall obtaine the rancke and title of an Earle, and shall Marche equall with the new Earles.

Of a *Thane* becomming an Earle.

As concerning Merchants and Cittizens of walled Cities or Townes, if they haue made three voyages on the Ocean Sea, and won so much by their industrie, as to liue thereon, without meddling any more with Traffick: they shall be ennobled, and haue the name and qualitie of *Thanes*.

Concerning Cittizens and Merchants becomming *Thanes*.

If any one be so addicted to Studie, as he meriteth to haue some Order in Holy Church, for the seruice of *Iesus Christ*: he shall hold rancke with Noblemen, be exempt and discharged of all taxations and Subsidies, all therewhile as he liueth an Ecclesiasticall person. The knowledge of these auncient Lawes of the *Anglo-Saxons*, which made themselues Maisters of Great *Bretaigne*, doth serue exceedingly well to vnderstand the auncient Historians of *England*, and namely *Mathew Paris*, who through the whole course of his Historie, layeth stumbling-blockes in the way of strange Readers, for vnderstanding the auncient vocables of the *Saxon* Nation.

Benefit of Students and Schollers.

Apud Anglo-Saxones legibus ritibusque suis honores imperticbantur, vt quinis è Populo prudentiâ, sagacitate, diuitijsque anteiret.

Comes.
Thaynus.
Sub-Thaynus: *Atque*
Colonus.

Si Colonus ita rem auxisset, vt habuerit quinque Hydas propriæ Terræ, Ædem sacram, Equinam, Campanile, & Portam, locum autem, & peculiare munus in aula Regiâ; Tunc erat deinceps habitus par dignitate Thayno.

Si Thaynus ita prouectus erat vt Regi seruierit, & Nuncius eius esset, & equitauerit cum familia: Si tunc etiam Thaynum sibi famulantem habuerit, qui ad Regiam expeditionem Quinque Hydas habuerit, eique in Regia aula Domino seruiens erit, terque eius Nuncius ad Regem venerit, hic deinceps data fidelitate, Domini personam sustinere poterit, si ius fuisset.

Quod si Thaynus ille ita prouectus erat, vt Comes curserit, pari erat deinceps Comite dignitate.

Si Mercator ita rem fecisset, vt ter, vastum Mare sua peritia traiecerit, pari tunc erat dignitate Thayno.

Quod si Literarum studiosus talem in Literis progressum fecisset, vt Ordines habuerit, & Christo militauerit, erat deinde venerandus, & immunis, nisi ita excidisset, vt suo muneri vti non potuisset.

We will leaue these Recherches of Antiquities to the learned, and come now to the Militarie Order of *Scotland*.

The Militarie Order of *Scotland*.

THe Historians of that Nation, doe ordinarily call it, *The Order of Saint Andrew*. *Lesleus* in his ninth Booke, Pag. 193. writeth, that *Iames*, Fift of the name, King of *Scotland*, in Anno One thousand fiue hundred thirtie foure, receiued the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, from *Charles* the fift, Emperour: That of Saint *Michael*, from King

Orders of Knights sent to King *Iames* the fift.

Galindes of the Hillocke, *d'Argent, à vne Merlette de Sable.*

Margoudes, *de Gueulles, à trois Iumelles en Bandes d'Or.*

Kerdius, *de Gueulles, à la Faulx d'Or, emmanchee de Sable.*

Nabon, *d'Argent, à trois Fuzees de Gueulles miſes en Fal.*

Chalamor the well wiſher, *de Synople, à la Merlette d'Argent.*

Alibel the Forſaken, *de Synople, ſeme de Ruſtres, & de poincts d'Argent. Party de Ermines.*

Dalides, *d'Argent, a deux Bars adoſſez de Sable.*

Haran of the Pine, *de Synople, à trois Pommes de Pin d'Or.*

Arganor the Rich, *de Sable à vn Homme arme d'Or, à la Halebarde de Synople, le Manche & le Eſpee de Gueules, au bout d'Or.*

Melios, *Burele, Contreburele d'Argent, & de Synople de huict pieces.*

Meliadus the white Knight, *de Sable à la Croix pattee d'Or.*

The auncient Knight of the hollow Deepes, *de Gueulles à trois Armets, & Salades de Argent.*

Malaquin the Groſſe, *de Gueulles à la Bande d'Argent, chargee de trois Lyons de Gueulles.*

At the Seauenth Chapter were made Knights.

ARgahaſt the bold Britaigne, *d'Or au Bœuf de Gueulles, accorne & ongle d'Azur.*

Normains the Pilgrime, *de Sable ſeme de Coquilles d'Or.*

Haruin the vnweldie, *d'Or à quatre Iumelles d'Azur.*

Thoſcans the Romaine, *d'Or à vne main de Sable, tenant vne Eſpee de Gueulles en Pal.*

Ferandon the Poore, *d'Or à trois Iumelles de Synople.*

Randon the light or nimble, *Bande, Contrebande d'Or, & d'Azur.*

The Strong alwayes found, *d'Argent, au Sanglier paſſant de Sable.*

The Fortunate Knight of the Iſles, *de Gueulles à vn Elephant d'Or, ongle d'Azure.*

The loſt Blacke Knight, *d'Argent au Lyon paſſant de Sable.*

Dirant of the Rocke, *de Gueulles au Chien paſſant d'Or.*

The Fayrie for Ladies, *de Sable à trois Billettes d'Argent.*

The Foreſter, *d'Or à vne Touffe de Bois de Synople, au Huchet, & Trompe d'Argent, y attachee à vne Chaine d'Or.*

The Huntſman, *d'Or a ſix Ermines de Synople.*

The Man of Ireland, *de Gueulles à la Cloche d'Argent.*

The Brown without Ioye, *de Gueulles, party de Synople, ſeme de Larmes d'Or.*

Geffrey the Stoute, *de Gueulles à la Tour d'Or, Breteſchee, & Maſonne de Sable.*

Randon, otherwiſe called the Petcie, *de Sable a vne Chappelle d'Argent.*

Foyadus the Gallant, *d'Or à la Poinct de Gueulles.*

At the Eight and laſt Capter, were made Knights.

ROuſteline of the high Mountaine, *d'Or au Sauuage de Sable, tenant vne Maſſe de Gueulles.*

Courant of the hard Rocke, *de Sable à trois Connils d'Argent.*

Armont of the Greene Serpent, *d'Or au Griffon de Synople, membre d'Argent.*

Ferrant of the Hill, *de Gueulles au Pont ce au d'Or.*

Corli the Sonne of Ares, *d'Azur ſeme de Croiſſants de Or.*

Buſterine the Great, *d'Or, au Treſſ de Sable, à la Bordure componee d'Argent, & de Gueulles de Vingt & quatre pieces.*

Lydeux the Strong, *d'Argent à la Chimere de diuerſes Couleurs.*

Soline of the Woodde, *d'Argent au Cerf de Gueulles, Arme de Sable.*

The Knight of the ſeauen wayes, *de Gueulles a vn Pont d'Or, Maſonne de Sable, a vne Arche ou decoule vne Riuiere d'Argent en Poinct.*

Broadas, *de Sable a vne Eſcreuiſſe d'Or en Pal.*

The

The Knight attired in *Scarlet, de Gueules au Nauire d'Or, habillee d'Argent.*

The Huntſman beyond the *Marches, de Gueules a vne Teſte de Boeuf d'Argent, accornee d'Azur, & Coronnee d'une Coronne Vallaire, en Paliſſade d'Or.*

Heſcalon the Hardie, *d'Argent a trois Fuſts de Gueules.*

Marandon of the Riuer, *de Sable au Moulin a Vent a pied, d'Or.*

Sacanarbin, de Sable au Sagittaire d'Or, l'Arc et la Fleſche d'Azur, a la Corde de Gueules.

Dezier the *Fierce, d'Argent a vne Hydre a Sept Teſtes de Gueules, Armee et Langue de Synople.*

Abilem of the Deſert, *de Sable a l'Eſcarboncle percee, Pommetee, et Fleuronnee d'Or de Huict Raiz.*

Foelix the fortunate Searcher, *de Synople au Cerf vollant d'Or, Langue et Ongle de Sable.*

The End of the Fift Booke.

i 3 THE

That which at this day is called *Pampelona* (founded by *Pompeye*, in the yeare Sixe hundred, fourescore & two of the foundation of *Rome*, and about Three-score before the birth of our Sauiour and Redeemer Iesus Christ) is now the Citty that hath the Bishops See, which, vnder our first Kings of *Nauarre*, acknowledged for *Metropolitane* the Archbishop of *Auch*, in the County of *Armaignac* in *Gascoignie*, and which (from Antiquity) had nine Dioceses and Gouernments, which confessed it to be Metropolitane. For this cause the Archbishoprick of *Auch*, with her large extendure, was called *Nouempopulana*, *a Nouem Populis sibi contributis*. At this day, the Bishop of *Pampelona* is subiect to the Archbishoprick of *Saragossa*, as the other Bishops of *Nauarre* in like manner are.

Of new People contributing thereto.

Concerning the auncient extendure of *Nauarre* cited euery way.

The Auncient extendure of the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, began towards the East, at the Towne of *Atapuerca*, neere to *Burgos*, the Capitall Citty of olde *Castille*, and the very greatest part of the Mountaine of *Idubeda*. To the *North* it possesseth the Prouince of *Alaua*, the Countrey all about the shoares of *Sadorra*, the lands of *Losa*, and the two parts of *Biscaye*, namely of *Alaua* and *Guipuscoa*. On the South side, it containeth the greater part of *Arragon*, the *Pyrenean* Mountaines, and those of *Moncayo*, with the territories of *Calahorra*, *Terrassona* and of *Agreda*. It runneth cutting on all sides, by the bad neighbouring of the Kings of *Arragon* and *Castille*, which haue sliced it into quarters. For vnder the last Kings, it was noated, as reduced only to sixe *Merindadaes*, (that is to say Gouernements: for in *Nauarre Merin* signifieth the Gouernour or Consull of a Citty) as it is at this day.

What *Merindadaes* are according to the meaning.

New *Nauarre* is bounded with the *Pyrenean* Mountaines on the East side: On the *North*, with the Prouince of *Biscaye* called *Guipuscoa*, and part of that of *Alaua*: The West containeth that of *La Rioia*, along the riuer of *Ebro*: And on the South, it hath the Kingdome of *Arragon*. And yet neuertheless, *Nauarre* is the most Noble, and the very auncientest Kingdome of *Spayne*, as it is acknowledged by *Mariana*, in the place before alleaged. *Hanc Prouinciam quamuis angustis regionibus circumscriptam, in Præcipuis Hispaniæ partibus poni placuit.* And the reading of this Inuentory instructeth vs, that the Kingdomes of *Ouiedo*, *Leon*, *Arragon*, *Castille*, *Galicia*, *Portugall* and other, in number equall to the Prouinces of *Spayne*; had not any beginning before, but long after this of *Nauarre*. And that which is most worthy, famous & remarkable, is; that the most part of these forenamed kingdoms, haue bin erected by Kings of *Nauar.*

The bounds of new *Nauarre*.

The wordes of *Mariana*.

Most of the Kingdomes erected by Kings of *Nauarre*.

The first *Merindada* of which Kingdome, is that of *Pampelona*, the Capitall Citty, a Citty engirte with good walles, and with an olde strong Castell, the auncient abyding of the Kings of *Nauarre*. Beyond which, on the other side of the Citty, the *Spanyards* haue builded a new one, to maintaine their auncient holding against the *French*.

Concerning the seuerall *Merindadaes* how they are in themselues. The Prince of *Viana*.

The second *Merindada* is the Dioceese *D'Estella*, within which is included the Principality of *Viana*, a title belonging to the eldest Sonnes of the Kings of *Nauarre*: As in *France*, the eldest beareth the title of *Daulphine* of *Viennois*; in *England*, the Prince of *Wales*; and (heertofore) in *Arragon*, the Prince of *Gironna*; and in *Castille*, the Prince of the *Asturies*.

The third is *Tudela*, sometime called *Cantabria*, as we haue already said.

The fourth is *Sangnessa*.

The fifte is *Olita*, the ordinary dwelling of King *Charles* the Noble, Third of the name. These fiue *Merindadaes* are in the higher *Nauarre*, on the side of *Spayne*, beyonde the *Pyrenean* Mountaines. And the Sixt

Lower *Nauarre Vltra Portos*.

Is the lower *Nauarre*, on the side of *France*, called by the *Spanyards*, *Vltra Puertos*, that is to say, Beyonde the *Portes*. For they tearme Ports, the straites, whereby a man may very vneasily passe ouer the *Pyrenean* Mountaines, when we goe from *France* into *Spayne*. This lower *Nauar* is deuided from the higher, by the small Bridge of *Arrequy*, betweene the *Abbey* of *Roncenaux*, and Saint *Iohn pied-de-puerto*. The first Towne and strongest place thereof, on the higher side, is that of Saint *Palais*, (in Latine *Sanctus Pelagius*) wherein is the Chancery, and the money Minte of *Nauarre*. The sole Prouince, of the great body of this Kingdome, remained to the heires and descendants of the Kings, *Katharine de Nauarre*, & *Iohn d' Albret* her husband: vnworthily despoyled of their paternall inheritance, by *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, Three hundred and thirteene, And in the Moneth of *July* the same yeare. The

CHAP. II.

The Genealogie of the Kings of Nauarre, *and a Summary Chronologie of their Reignes.*

1. *Garcia Ximenes*, Count of *Bigorre*, and of those Lands which (at this present) are called, *The lower Nauarre*, was, according to the ancient fashion vsed among the French, exalted on a Shield or Escutcheon of Armes, King of *Sobrarbre* or *Nauarre*, by Sixe Hundred French Gentlemen, the third day of *May*, when the Church celebrateth the Inuention of the Holy Crosse, in the yeare of Grace Seauen Hundred Sixteene, and of *Here Cæsar Augustus*, Seauen Hundred Fifty Foure, two yeares after the *Affrican Arabes*, made themselues Maisters and Lords of Spaine: from whom King *Garcia Ximenes* conquered the *Bourgades* or Village of *Aysa*, *Amescua*, *Abrarsusa*, and the little Towne of *Iaca*, which hee made the Capitall of his new Conquest. He caused to be newly builded the Hermitage of Saint *Iohn Baptist de la Pegna*, that is to say, *de la Roche d'Orouell*, where hee was exalted King, and neere thereunto a Castell, which serued him, & the Kings his Successors a very long time, as a Pallace and ordinary dwelling.

Hee dyed full of glory and honour, for hauing beene the first, that fought against the *Moores*, and so consequently, the first Christian King of Spaine: in the yeare of Grace, Seauen Hundred Fifty Eight, the Three Score and Tenth yeare of his Age, and the Two and Fortieth of his Reigne; hee lieth buried at *Saint Iohn de la Pegna*. By his Wife *Inigo*, Daughter to the Count of *Commenges*, hee had his onely Sonne and Successor

2. *Garcia Inigo* (bearing the names both of his Father and Mother) Second King of *Nauarre* or *Sobrarbre*, and Second of the name. Hee extended the bounds or limits of his Kingdome, so farre as to the City of *Alaua*, one of the three *Merindades* of *Biscay*, which hee conquered from the Moores. Hee reigned Forty and Foure yeares, and dyed the yeare of Grace, Eight Hundred and Two. By *Estesiana* of *Carcassona*, his Wife, he had a Sonne and Successour.

3. *Fortunio Garcia*, who reigned thirteene yeares, and dyed in the yeare of Grace, Eight Hundred and Fifteene. By *Theoda* of *Arragon* his wife, Daughter to *Galindo*, Count of *Arragon*; hee had a Sonne who was his Successour.

4. *Sanctio Garcia*, First of that name. The Spaniards pronounce it in their Language, *Sancho Garces*: but I conuert these strange words into our more sweet and gentle passage. In the Latine Phrase, this name of *Sancho* is tearmed *Sanctus*, and *Sanctius*, which in *Gascoigne* (where the name is very common) they call *Sainct Sans*.

The Reigne of him was Seauenteene yeares, and he died the yeare of Grace, Eight Hundred, Thirty Two; hauing by his Wife *Estesiana*, Daughter to the Count of *Narbonna*, for his Successour in the Kingdome

5. *Ximenes Inigo*, who reigned but Eight yeares.

And heere the Noble and Generous minded Reader, if hee please, may obserue once for altogether, that in Spaine speaking of Kings: they set downe before their proper names, this title of honour for abbreuiation, *Dom* or *Don*. And speaking of Queenes and Princesses, *Donnes* or *Dognacs*, which commeth of the Latine, *Dominus* and *Domina*, and by abbreuiation, *Domnus* and *Domna*: *Dom Philip* the Third, and *Donna N.* of *Austria* his Wife. The Knights of *Spaine* doe likewise carry this Title, according as the very fame is in *Italy*. In *Gascoigne* the Sonnes neuer speak of their Father, without this Epithite, *Seigne Pay*, and of their Mother, *Done May*, which is as they vsually say at *Paris*, My Lord, my Father, Madame, or my Lady, my Mother.

The addition of *Dom* or *Don* to men, & *Dona* or *Dogna* to women in Spaine.

All these manners of speaking were deriued from the Ancient French, who talking of their own Kings and Queens, haue alwayes placed these qualities of honour before; *Domnum Childericum*, *Damnam Fredegundam*; as wee haue obserued in the History of *Nauarre*, by the testimony of Saint *Gregory* of *Tours*, the most learned and ancient of all our Historians.

The additions in France.

In

Iniga, Lady of *Biſcay*, who eſpouſed a Gentleman of the Countrey called *Zuria*, Sirnamed the *Faire*, who by the death of his Wife (ſhee deceaſing without Children) held the Seigneurie of *Biſcay*, whereof hee became Lord in the yeare Eight Hundred, Three Score and Ten.

In ſecond Marriage, he eſpouſed *Dona Dalda*, Daughter to *Don Sancco Eſteguis Hortunes*, Lord of *Tauira de Durango*. And of this Marriage are iſſued, the Lords of *Biſcay*.

The ſaid *Zuria* was Sonne to a Knight named *Lopez*, a very rich Lord in *Biſcay*, deſcended of *Bermond Laygnes*, Sonne to *Layn Caluo*, Iudge of *Caſtile*.

The Dukes of *Aquitaine* carried the ancient Armes of the *Gothes*, *D'Argent au Lyon de Sable*; from whom they were iſſued and deſcended.

Zuria neuertheleſſe, forſaking the Armes of his Houſe, tooke them of *Sobrarbre*, in honour of ſo great an Alliance: that is to ſay, *D'Argent au Lyon de Synople*.

The Spaniards, who are alwayes contrary to the French, doe ſay, that this Count tooke theſe Armes to preſerue the memory of the *Biſcaines*, who exalted the Armes of their Lord or Prince; aloft on the Tree of *Garnica*, where they m de their Aſſemblies, as well of Councell, as delight.

Howſoeuer it was, this *Zuria* tooke and carried ſuch Armes, leauing them belonging to his Father, who carried his owne, which ſpake and anſwered to his name, as wee ſay.

Lopez in Spaniſh ſignifieth a Wolfe, and thereupon, *Il portoit d'Argent au Loup Ceruier de Sable*, which is altogether from any apparance, inaſmuch as the Spaniſh Hiſtorians ſay, that the firſt who carried Wolues in Armes, was *Dom Diego Lopez de Haro*, on the day, *Des Naues de Toloſa*: whereof wee will obſerue the particularities at the end of this Diſcourſe, purpoſely for the Armes of *Nauarre*.

Of the Marriage of *Zuria* and *Dalda* of *Tauira*, was borne their Sonne

Manſo Lopez, Second Lord of *Biſcay*: And of *Tauira de Durango* and him, came

Inigo, Third Lord of *Biſcay*, Sirnamed the *Left-handed*; becauſe hee had gotten a bad cuſtome, to ſerue himſelfe alwayes with the left hand, and not with the right. He had for his Sonne and Succeſſour

Lopez Diaz, Count, and Fourth Lord of *Biſcay*. This was the man, who before any other of his Predeceſſors, tooke for his Armes (as correſponding to his name) *D'Argent Vn Loup de Sable*. Hee left (beſide a Baſtard, called *Inigo* the *Left-handed*) for his Sonne and Succeſſour

Sanceo Lopez, Fift Count of *Biſcay*, who had two Sonnes

Inigo Sanchez: And

Garcia Sanchez.

The eldeſt was ſlaine by his owne people, in ſeeking to appeaſe a quarrell, and left his Children very young: ſo that the *Biſcaines* tooke for their Lord, his Baſtard Brother

Inigo the *Left-handed*, Sixt Lord of *Biſcay*, who imparted to his Couſins ſome Lands and Seigneuries: from whence came the Lords of *Lodio* and *D'Horoſco* in *Biſcay*. The Sonne of this left handed *Lopez*, was

Lopez Dias, Sirnamed the *Red*, Seuenth Lord and Husband of *Dona Tella*, by whom he had

Diego Lopez, called the *Faire*, Eight Count of *Biſcay*, who had to Wife a French Lady, named Madame *Almiana*, or *Almicia*, Daughter to the Lord of Saint *John Pied-de Port*, in the lower *Nauarre*. And of this Marriage was borne their Sonne & Succeſſour in the Countie of *Biſcay*, *Lopez Dias*; whoſe Father carried for Armes, *D'Argent a deux Loups de Sable*.

Lopez Dias, Ninth Lord of *Biſcay*, was Sirnamed of *Naiera*, a Towne of ancient demaine in *Nauarre*, which the King of *Caſtile*, *Alphonſo* Eight of the name, gaue him, to draw him to his part, and ſoone after, the Towne of *Haro*, whereof he had the Title and Sirname, which ſtill continned to his Linage. He tooke to Wife (according to *Garibay*) *Mencia*, Daughter to the Count *Arias*, and by her he had three Sonnes, & one Daughter.

Diego Lopez de Haro Lord of *Biſcay*.

Lopez Dias de Haro, Biſhop of *Segobia*.

Martin Lopez de Haro; And

Dogna Vrraca Lopez, Wife to the King of *Leon*, *Ferdinand* Second of the name. Some doe grant him to haue another Daughter, named *Gaufreda*, Wife to the King of *Nauarre*, *Garcia* ſeauenth of the Name; but it is contrary to truth.

Diego Lopez de Haro, Sirnamed the *Good*, Tenth Lord of *Biſcay*, had to wife *Maria Diaz de Lara*, Daughter to Count *Nugno Manrique de Lara*, in his firſt Marriage. And in the Second, hee had *Toda Perez*, Daughter to *Dom Pedro Roderiguez D'Azagra*, and by her he had two Daughters, both of them married to the Counts of *Lara*, *Aluarez* and *Gonſaluez*.

Diego Lopez de Haro, Eleauenth Lord of *Biſcay*, tooke for Armes, *D'Argent à l'Arbre de Garnica de Synople, à deux Loups de Sable, trauerſez au pied de l'eſt Arbre, c'eſt adire l'vn deuant, & l'autre derriere l'Arbre, laquelle eſt entre ces deux Loups à l'Ordre de Gueules, charge de Huict Croix en Sautoir d'Or*. As a Signall and memory, that hee had aſſiſted at the ſurprizall of the Towne of *Baeſa*, from the Moores of *Andalouzia*. For hee was (in his time) renowned, to be as valiant in Armes, as a wiſe and prudent Counſellour: whereby hee obtained the Sirname of *Cabeca brana*, that is to ſay, *A good Head, furniſhed with good Iudgement*. Hee had to Wife *Dogna Vrraqua Aphonſa*, Daughter to the King of *Leon Dom Alphonſo*, and of *Igna de Mendoce*; and by her hee had foure Sonnes.

Diego Lopez de Haro, Twelfth Lord of *Biſcay*.

Sanceo Lopez.

Lopez the Dwarfe: And

Alphonſo Lopez, Father to *John Alphonſo de Haro*, called the *Old*. We will let paſſe the reſt of this Genealogie in ſilence; becauſe it is not incident to our Diſcourſe.

King *Inigo Ximenes Ariſta*, had by *Toda* of *Biſcay*, Daughter to Count *Zeno*, his Sonne and Succeſſour

7. *Garcia Inigo*, Third of the name, the Reigne of whom was eighteene yeeres; deceaſing in the yeare Eight Hundred, Foure Score and ſeauen, or (according to ſome, who make him to reigne ſeauen and twenty yeares) Foure Score and Fifteene. By *Dogna Vrraca*, Daughter and ſole Heire to the Count of *Arragon*, *Dom Fortunio Ximenes*, hee had two Sonnes and one Daughter. The Sonnes were

Fortunio.

Sanceo, Sirnamed *Abarca*: And the Daughter

Sancia, Third Wife to the King of *Leon*, *Dom Ordogne*.

8. *Fortunio*, Second of the name, King of *Nauarre*, and Count of *Arragon*, (in regard of his Mother) reigned no more but Sixe yeares, without being married. Hee gaue ouer the World and his Kingdome, to ſerue the King of Kings in the Monaſtery of Saint *Sauieur de Leyra*, where he profeſſed himſelfe a Monke, in the yeare Nine Hundred and One: After whom ſucceeded in the Kingdome his Brother

9. *Sanceo*, Second of the name, Sirnamed *Abarca*, becauſe hee affected to weare Gamaches and Buskins of Leather on his Legges, and Galoches of wood and blacke Leather on his feete, which in Spaniſh they tearme *Abarcas*. In this regard, ſuch as were deſcended of his Ligne, retained the Sirname of *Abarca* and bare in their Armes, *D'Or à deux Galoches de Sable Eſchiquettees d'Or*.

By *Toda* his Wife, Daughter to the Count of *Pigorre*, or of *Carcaſſona*, hee had foure Sonnes and fiue Daughters: his Sonnes were.

Garcia Sanceo, his eldeſt.

Ramiro.

Gonſaluez: And

Ferdinando. The Daughters were

Vrraca Ximenia, Wife to the King of *Leon*, *Alphonſo*, Fourth of the name.

Maria, Wife to *Sigefroy* the Fift, Count of *Barcelona*.

Thereza, married to the King of *Leon*, *Dom Ramiro*, Second of the name.

Sancia, Second Wife to *Ferdinando Gonſales* of *Caſtile*; And

Blanche Valeſca, Wife to the Count of *Biſcay*, *Sanceo*.

Sanceo reigned nineteene yeares, or (according to *Dom Rodericke* of *Toledo*, who ſets downe the yeares of the reigne of *Dom Fortunio* his Brother, with his) fiue and twenty yeares; And dyed in the yeare of Grace, Nine Hundred and Twenty. After him ſucceeded his Eldeſt Sonne

10. *Garcia Sanceo*, Fourth of the name, Tenth King of *Nauarre*, and Count of *Arragon*: who by his Wife *Thereſe* of *Biſcay*, had two Sonnes, & three Daughters. The Sonnes Were

Sanceo Garcia: And

Ramiro

Ramiro.
The Daughters were
Vrraca.
Ermesinda: And
Ximena.

His Reigne continued forty and nine yeares, and hee dyed in the yeare of Grace, Nine Hundred, Three Score, and Nine. Hee had for Succeſſours in the Kingdome, his two Sonnes

Sancio Garcia: And

11. *Ramiro.*

Who raigned together in loue and Concord, contrary to the Maxims of State: *That the world cannot endure two Sunnes*, nor one Kingdome two kings.

Omniſcque potestas
Impatiens conſortis erit.

Ramiro reigned ten yeares, without being married, and by the death of his elder Brother, remained ſole King of *Nauarre* and Count of *Arragon* Seauenteene whole yeares. Hee had to Wife *Vrraca de Bigorre*, and by her hee had three Sonnes;

Garcia. *Ramiro.* *Gonſales.* } Father of { *Sancco*, and *Ramiro.*

Sancio Garcia reigned Twentie and Seauen yeares alone, and with his Brother: And died in the yeare of Grace, Nine Hundred, Foure Score and Thirteene. After whom ſucceeded his Eldeſt Sonne

12. *Garcia*, Fift of the name, Sirnamed *Trembling*, or the *Trembler*, becauſe hee would ſhiuer and ſhrug (as couetous of eaſe) at all times when he ſhould mount on Horſeback, for riding to warre. By *Ximena* of *Barcelona* his wife, he had one only Sonne, named *Sancco*. Hee Reigned but ſeauen yeares, and dyed the yeare of Grace One Thouſand and Three, leauing for Succeſſour

13. *Sancco*, Fourth of the name, called *The Great*, who had to wife *Elua la Nigra*, that is to ſay, *The Little*, Daughter to the Count of *Caſtile Don Sancco*, and by her he had three Sonne,

Garcia, King of *Nauarre.*
Ferdinand, Firſt King of *Caſtile:* And
Gonſales, King of *Sobrarbre*, and of *Ribagorſa.*

By the Damoſell *D'Aynar, Digna Cast*, his Loue-Miſtreſſe, he had a Baſtard, named

Ramiro, Firſt King of *Arragon.*

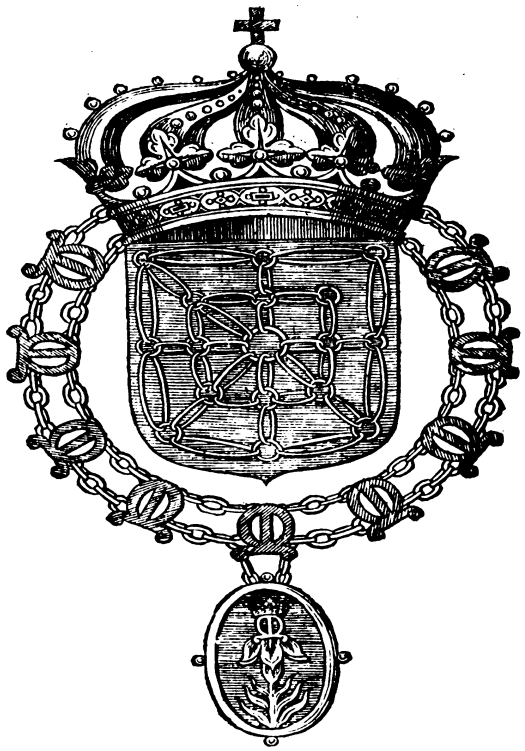
This King *Sancco* was Sirnamed the Great, as well in regard of manifold vertues ſhining in him; as alſo, becauſe hee was (in his time) the very greateſt Chriſtian Prince of Spayne. Who, as other Kings of Chriſtendome did the like, fought the friendſhip of King *Robert* the *Deuout*, Sonne to *Hugh Capet*. *Glaber Rodolph*, in the tenth Booke of his Hiſtory of France, and Second Chapter, after hee hath ſet downe the particularities of the enterview, between the King and the Emperour of *Germany Henry*, on the Riuer of *Meuſe*, the Frontire of the Kingdome and Empire, ſaith, that hee wonne the amity of all the Kings his neighbours, and particularly the King of *Nauarre, Dom Sancco* the Great. *Fuit ibi pax cum Regibus in cyro Regni ſui poſitis, Maxime cum ſupradicto Imperatore Henrico: Ab aliis quoque Regibus gratificè ſuis ſemper habitus ab Alrado ſcilicet Rege Anglorum, & Rodolpho Rege Auſtraſiorum, nec non &* Sanctio Rege Nauarriæ & Hiſpaniarum, *mittebantque ei munera, & ab eo petebant auxilia.* This King *Sancio* was called the Great, becauſe hee poſſeſſed *Nauarre, Arragon, Caſtile, Sobrarbre* and *Ribagorſa*. This was hee that made Kingdomes of *Arragon* and *Caſtile*, as we ſhall ſpeake more at large elſewhere. He dyed the eighteenth day of *October*, in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Thirty Fiue, and the eight and thirtie of his Reigne; leauing the Kingdome of *Nauarre* to his eldeſt Sonne

14. *Garcia*, Sixt of the name, and Sirnamed of *Naiera*, becauſe (from his tender youth) he had been nouriſhed in the City, where King *Sancco* the Great his Father, made his Royall abiding. In imitation of the King of France, *Robert* the *Deuout*, who inſtituted the Order of the *Starre*, in honor of the Virgin *Mary*; the ſaid *Garcia*, before all other the Kings of *Spayne*, erected in honour of the ſame Virgin, an Order of Knighthood, which hee called: *Of our Lady of the Lilly.*

The

The Order of the *Lilly*, Or of *Nauarre.*

THE Subiect of Inſtituting this Order of the *Lilly*, was, that this Prince hauing beene very ſicke; in the extremity thereof, ſent to Saint *Sauiour de Leyra*, and other places of deuotion, that Prayers and interceſſions might bee made for his recouery and health. In the ſame time of his ſickneſſe, was diſcouered in the City of *Nagera* (where ordinarily hee kept his Court) an Image of the Virgin *Mary*, iſſuing forth of a *Lilly*, and holding her Sonne betweene her armes.



Vpon the Inuention or finding of this Image, the King very ſodainly recouered his health, beſide infinite other Miracles performed there, on all kindes of diſeaſed perſons, by the admirable Vertues, ſuppoſed of the Virgin Mother, whom the Scripture tearmeth, *The Lilly of the Vallies*, *Lillium conuallium*. In honour of whom, in the ſame place where this Image was found, King *Garcia* cauſed to bee builded a Church and Monaſtery of Royall ſtructure, wherein he placed the Monks of *Clugny*, and the Church was called *Sancta Maria Reale de Nagera*, in memory of the occaſion and place.

Moreouer, to perpetuate his deuotion to the Virgin *Mary*, ſaid to bee Queene of Heauen, and Lady of the Angels; hee inſtituted in his Kingdome, the ſaid Order *of Knights of Saint* Mary. *of the* Lilly, whereof he would bee Founder and Soueraigne Great Maiſter, and after him, the Kings of *Nauarr* his Succeſſours. He compoſed this Order of Eight and Thirty Knights, the chiefeſt Gentlemen of Ancient Families in *Nauarre*, *Biſcay*, and old *Caſtile*, who at receiuing the ſaid Order, muſt vow and ſollemnly ſweare in preſence of the King, to expoſe their goods and perſons, for conſeruation of the Crowne of *Nauarre*, and expulſion of the Moores. Each of theſe Knights weareth on his Breſt a *Lilly*, embroydered in Siluer, and on ſollemne Feaſt daies, a double chaine of gold enterlaced with Letters *M.* after the manner of the Ancient *Gothiſh*. At the end of this Chaine, hangeth in a wattled Ouall, *Vn Lys d'Or Eſmaille de Blanc Sortant d'vne Terrace, portant & vne d'Or Coronnee*; as it is figured in the Frontiſpice of this Diſcourſe.

Theſe Knights were ſtrictly charged and obliged, to ſay ouer fiue times their Beads, compoſed of fiue round Lincks, with other Seruice & Prayers, which were ordained and preſcribed to them by the Monks of Saint *Mary la Reale de Nagera*, with

with the Rule of the said Order, touching the dayes when they should goe to Confession and the Communion. The Institution of this Order was in the yeare 1048. since when it was long time conserued in honor by the Kings of *Nauarre*, Successors to *Garcia*, whose Effigies are yet to be seene with this Order about their necks, as well in the said Church of S. *Mary* at *Nagera*, S. *Sauiour de Leyra*, S. *Mary la Reale* of *Pampelona*: as also in the Church at *Roncesuaux*, and at S. *Iohn de la Pegna*.

Garcia in the life time of his Father, married *Estesuanetta*, or *Stephanetta*, Daughter to *Roger* Count of *Carcassonna*, and of *Beziers*: And of this Marriage issued foure Sonnes, and as many Daughters: The Sonnes were

Sanceo Garcia, his Successour in the Kingdome.

Ramiro, Lord of *Calahorra*, *Calaguris* in Latine (a strong City and potent, conquered from the Moores by the said *Garcia de Nagera*) of *Toresillas*, *de los Cameros*, *de Ribafresca*, *de Lea*, *Billoria de Trebeiano*, and other places.

Ferdinando, Lord of *Iubera*, *Laguniella*, &c.

Raymond, who had for his partage the Lands of *Murillo*, *Agoncillo* and others. The Daughters were

Ermesinda, Lady of *Villa Mediana*, & of *Martos*.

Ximenia, Lady of *Carcueros*, *Hornos* and other places.

Maiora, Lady *D'Yangas*: And

Vrraca, Lady of *Aluerita*, *Lardero*, and *Muerones*, Wife to a Count, named *Dom Garcia*. But our *Garcia* of whom we now speake, was slaine in the Battaile of *Atapuerca*, about foure miles from *Burgos*, won by King *Ferdinand* of *Castile* his Brother, the yeare of Grace 1054. hauing reigned twenty yeares. His body was laid by his Wiues (deceasing before him) at *Santta Maria la Reale*, *de Nauarre*. His Eldest Sonne succeeded him

15. *Sanceo Garcia*, Fift of the name: By *Pleasincea* his Wife, hee left three Male Children,

Ramiro Sanceo.

Garcia, First: And

Garcia, Second.

These two were after the death of King *Sanceo* their Father, nourished in the Court of *Alphonso*, King of *Castile*, First of the name, who for their maintenance gaue them diuers Lands; for they neuer had any issue in *Nauarre*.

King *Sanceo* was slaine by his last Brother *Raymond*, Lord of *Murillo*, in a certaine *Ambuscado*, which hee had purposely prepared for him, the yeare of Grace, 1066. hauing reigned two and twenty yeares, or thereabout.

Ramiro Sanceo, Infant of *Nauarre*, and naturall Heyre to the Kingdome, by the death of his Father; tooke to Wife *Degna Eluira*, Second Daughter to *Cid Ruis Dias de Biuaro*, and by her hee left two Sonnes, and one Daughter.

Garcia Ramiro, who was King of *Nauarre*.

Sanceo Ramiro: And the Daughter *Eluira*.

Now, because this *Cid Ruis Dias de Biuaro*, was the most renowned Captain and Knight of *Spaine*, & of whom diuers Romancers haue sung and written wonders; in regard also that by the Marriage of the Prince of *Nauarre*, and *Eluira* his Daughter, the Kings of *Nauarre* are descended to this instant, euen to the Sacred Maiesty of *Leires* the Second of the name, King of *Nauarre* now reigning: I will summarily set downe heere in this place, the Originall and descent of this Great Captaine.

Nugno Belides or *Belcides*, a Gentleman of Germany, and a Natiue of *Celogne*, being desirous to fight against the Moores, went in the Voyage for Spaine, where becomming well knowne by his valiancie, he espoused *Degna Sola*, Daughter to *Don Diego Porcello*, a rich and mighty Lord, who dwelt at *Burgos* in *Castile*: Of this Marriage was borne their Sonne

Nugno Nugnez Rasura, who was Iudge of *Castile*, and had by his Wife a Sonne and a Daughter.

Gonsalez Nugnez: And

Teresa, who was Wife to *Layn Calua*, likewise Iudge of *Castile*

Gonsalez Nugnez, had to Wife *Madona Ximena Fernandez*, Daughter to Count *Dom Nugno Fernandez*, Sonne to the King *Dom Bermond*, First of the name, and Father to *Fernand Gonsalez*.

Teresa tooke to Husband *Layn Calua*, Iudge of *Castile*, who had by her foure Sonnes

Fernan Laynez.

Bermudo Laynez.

Layn Laynez; And

Diego

Diego Laynez.

Fernan Laynez, the eldest Sonne, was Father of

Layn Fernandez, Father of

Antomo Laynez, who by his Wife *Ella*, or *Berta* had a Sonne

Layn Nugnez, Father of { *Diego Laynez.* And *Ferdinand Laynez.*

Who married with *Dogna Ximena Nugnez*, Daughter to the Count *Dom Nugno Aluarez d'Amaya*. And by her he had the Count *Dom Aluaro Fagnez Minjo*.

Diego Laynez eldest Sonne of *Layn Laynez*, espoused the Daughter of *Dom Roderigo Aluarez*, Count and Gouernor of the *Asturies*: And of this marriage was borne

The Cid, Ruis Dias de Biuaro.

The same *Diego Laynez*, had by a Countrey Damosel a Bastard, or naturall Sonne, called *Fernando Diaz Laynez*: And hee tooke to wife the Daughter of *Anthony Antolinez*, a very worthy Knight of *Burgos*. Of this marriage were borne

Martin Antolinez.

Pero Bermudez.

Melendo Fernandez.

Fernan Alphonso: And

Ordogno, Knights highly renowned by the Romancers of *Spaine*, for performing actions of wonder, with the *Cid* their Vnckle.

Ruy Diaz, called the *Cid*, by the *Moores* of *Spaine* (which in the *Affricane* & *Morisco* tongue, signifieth a King & Lord) tooke to wife *Ximena Gomez*, Daughter to the Count *Dom Gomez*, Lord of *Gormaz*, neere Kinsman to the King of *Leon*. By this marriage he had a Son and two Daughters

Diego Rodriguez, who dyed in the Battaile of *Consuegra*, fought against the *Moores*, and left no issue. The Daughters were

Sola, wife to the Infant *Dom Pedro*, Sonne and heire to *Dom Pedro*, King of *Arragon*; but by him he had no childe. The other Daughter was

Eluira, who married with the Infant of *Nauarre*, *Ramiro Sanceo*, eldest Sonne to King *Sanceo Garcia*; but the issue of this mariage we haue already related.

The *Cid* bare in Armes, *De Gueulles à la Bande de Synople bordee d'Or*: retained by them of *Mendoza*, and the *Antolinez*. These last *Portent du Cid*, *A l'Orle & Bordure de Gueulles à huict Saultours d'Or*.

Martin Antolinez, and *Pero Bermudez*, Bretheren, with *Nugno Gustios de Lincuella*, were (during their life time) three famous Knights, renowned for their valour beyond all other. In the presence of the King *Dom Alphonso*, who soiourned there in the Towne of *Carion*; they Combatted against the Lords of *Carion*, *Fernand* and *Diego*, Sonnes to Count *Gonzalo Gonzalez*, Lord of *Carion*, and *Suero Gonzales* their Vnckle, for an offence done to the Daughters of *Cid Ruy Diaz*. And in this Combate (fought to the vtmost extremity) the Counts of *Carion* were foiled and vanquished

Martin Antolinez fought against *Fernand*, and in this Combate hee had one of the Swords belonging to the *Cid*, so famously spoken of by the Romancers, for excellency of the temper. They called this Sword *Colida*, on the Blade whereof, and on the one side, were engraued these two words (deriued from the Gospell, *Sermo vester sit, Sic, Sic, Non Non; Si, Si*. And on the other side, *No, No*. The *Cid* wonne this Sword from the Count of *Barcelona*, in the Battaile which he gaue to the King *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*.

Pero Bermudez had likewise in this Combate, another Sword of the *Cids*, called *Tysona* (wonne by the *Cid*, on the day when he fought against *Alfaear* the *Moore*, King of *Thunis*) and wherewith he slew his enemy *Diego*. These two Swords of the *Cids*, are to be seene in the Haule Royall of Armes at *Madrid*.

To continue the memorie of this Combate, fought in presence of the King, and the Lists engirt with Chains, wherein the Knights acted their Chiualrie: *Pero Bermudez*, and his descent, carried in their Escutcheon of Armes, *Escheequete d'Or & de Sable de Quinze pieces de Cinq traicts, à l'Orle d'Or chargee d'vne Chaine d'Azur*. And of this Linage of the *Antolinez*, there are to be found in *Portugal* (euen to this present) knowne by these Armes.

The *Cid* and the *Antolinez* are interred

Church of the said chiefe Citie of *Nauarre*. Leauing for Successour his eldest Sonne

23. *Thibault*, second of the name, King of *Nauarre*, who reigned eighteene yeares. By his Wife Madam *Isabel* of France, Daughter to the King S. *Lewes*, hee had no childe. By a Concubine, which long time hee secretly maintained, called *Marquisia Lopa de Rada*, Daughter to *Giles de Rada*, a Knight of *Nauarre*, hee had a naturall Daughter, bearing the same name of her Mother

Marquisa, who was married to *Dom Pedro Fernandez d'Ixar*, Lord of *Aicibia*, naturall Sonne to the King of *Arragon*, *Iames*, first of the name, and of the Lady of his affection, *Donna Thereza de Vidaure*.

The said *Thibauld* the second dyed at *Trappes* in *Sicile*, in his returne from the voyage of *Thunis* (made with the King Saint *Lewes*) the fift day of December, Anno One thousand two hundred three score and tenne. The Hearts of the said King and Queene, are at the *Iacobines* of *Pervence*, before the high Alter, in a Coffin (purposely made) of Brasse, doubly guilded, and round in forme: Their Bodies lye at S. *Stephens* of *Troyes* in *Champaigne*. *Thibault* left his Kingdome and goods to his Brother

24. *Henry*, King of *Nauarre*, first of that name, called the Grosse, exalted and Sacred at *Pampelona*, on Monday the foure and twentieth day of May, One thousand two hundred seauentie one. He had to wife *Blanch* of *Artois*, daughter to *Monsieur Robert* of France, Count of *Artois*: By her he had

Thibault, who dyed at a yeare old, it being the same of Sacring his Father: And

Ioane, or *Ione*, who was Queene of *Nauarre*, and wife to the King of France *Phillip le Bel*.

Before his marriage, he had amorously embraced a beautifull yong Gentlewoman, of the house of *Lacarra*, by whom hee had a naturall Sonne, named

Henry, who was Lord of *Ablitas*, and high Steward of *Nauarre*, chiefe of the Noble Familie, sirnamed the *Henries* in *Nauarre*.

King *Henry* died with fatnesse, which stifled him, in the Bishops Pallace of *Pampelona*, the one and twentieth day of Iuly, Anno One thousand two hundred seauentie foure. And lyeth in the Quire Church of *Sancta Maria la Real* of *Pampelona*. After him succeeded his only daughter *Ioane* of *Nauarre*, wife to *Philip*

25. *Phillip*, sirnamed *Le Bel*, King of *Nauarre*, first of that name, and of *Fraunce* fourth of the name of his owne descent, yongest Sonne to the King Saint *Lewes*. And of this marriage were borne foure Sons, and three Daughters

Lewes, called *Hutin*.

Phillip, sirnamed the *Long*.

Charles, tearmed *Le Bel*. And

Robert, who died at eleauen yeares old. The Daughters were

Margaret, wife to *Ferdinand* fourth of the name, King of *Castile*, Sonne of *Sancco le Brane*, fourth of the name, yongest Song Sonne to *Alphonso* the Tenth, all Kings of *Castile*.

Isabel, wife to the King of *England*, *Edward*, second of the name: And

Blanche, who died yong.

Phillip le Bel deceased in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred and foureteene, on the Eeuen of Saint *Andrew*, in the Deserts of *Fontaine Blaudy* where he was borne. And Queene *Ioane*, of *Nauarre*, died ten yeares before him, to wit, in the yeare, One thousand three hundred and foure, the second day of Aprill, at *Bois de Vincennes*. Her Tombe might haue bin seene in the Gray Fryers, before the burning of the Church of this great Monastery, which was vnfortunately set on fire at ten of the Clock in the night, on Saturday the nineteenth of Nouember, One thousand fiue hundred and fourescore. The said Queene *Ioane* reigned neere one and thirtie yeares, and the portraits of *Phillip le Bel*, & *Ioane* of *Nauarre* (drawne to the life) may be seene on the North gate of the Church in *Paris*, and on the fore-front of the Royall Colledge of *Champaigne*, called Royall Colledge of *Champaigne*, founded by the King and Queene at *Mont de Pari*, beneath the Butcherie of *Sainct Geneuiefue*.

Lewes, Sirnamed *Hutin*, that is to say *Mutenous*, or Tempestuous, their eldest Sonne, was King of *Nauarre*, first of that name; in regard of his Mother, and of *France* (by the Fathers side) tenth of the

name, who caused the Parliament of *France* to be alwayes sedentary at *Paris*. He was Sacred and Crowned of *Nauarre* at *Pampelona*, the first day of *October*, in the yeare, One thousand, three hundred and seauen, and reigned tenne yeares (or there about) in *Nauarre*, hee had two wiues; the first whereof was *Margaret*, daughter to *Robert* the Second, Duke of *Bourgongne*: And in this Marriage was borne but one only Daughter.

Madam *Ioane* or *Ione* of *France*, Queene of *Nauarre*, by death of the Kings of *Nauarre* and *France*, *Phillip le Long*, & *Charles le Bel*, who both deceased without issue.

The second wife of *Lewes Hutin*, was the Que ne *Clemencia* of *Hungaria*, daughter of *Charles Martell*, and Sister to *Robert* (that is to say *Charles Robert*) Kings of *Hungaria*; of whom was borne their only Sonne a *Posthumus*, after his fathers death

27. *John*, King of *France* and *Nauarre*, first of the name; whose life and reigne, continued but eight dayes. By the death of him, and his Father also *Lewis Hutin*, happening in this manner, his Father dying the fifte day of *June*, and the Sonne in the moneth of *Nouember* following, *An.* One Thousand Three hundred and Sixtene.

28. *Phillip* Sirnamed the Long, or Great, was King of *Nauarre* Second, and of *France* first of the name. By *Ioane*, Countesse of *Bourgongne* and *Artois*, his Wife, Daughter to *Otho*, Count of *Bourgongne*, and *Mahauld* Countesse of *Artois*, he had one Sonne, and foure daughters.

Monsieur Lewes of *France* and of *Nauarre*, who died very young: The daughters were

Madame *Ioane* of *France* and of *Nauarre*, Wife to the Duke of *Bourgongne*, fourth of the name. She had in mariage the Counties of *Artois* and *Bourgongne*, Counties, that by the deceasse (without issue) of *Phillip* the last Duke of *Bourgongne*, who was of the ligne of *Hugh Capet*; fell to Madame *Margaret* of *France*, wife to *Lewes* Counte of *Flanders*, Father and Mother of *Margaret*, Heire of *Flanders*, Wife to *Monsieur Phillip* of *France*, called the Hardy, Duke of *Bourgongne*, First of the name of the last ligne.

Madame *Margaret* of *France* and *Nauarre*, Wife to *Lewes* Count of *Flanders* aboue-named: to whom she brought in Marriage the said Counties of *Artois* and *Bourgongne*.

Madame *Isabell* of *France* and *Nauarre*, Wife to *Guyon*, Counte *d'Albon*, Sonne of *John*, Daulphine of *Viennois*. And

Blanch, a Religious Nunne, professed at *Long-Champ*, neere to *Paris*, where her Tombe is to be seene, at the Yron Grate.

Phillip le Long died at *Bois de Vincennes*, vpon Thursday, being the fift of *June*, One thousand three hundred and twenty, hauing reigned fiue yeares in *Nauarre* and *France*. His Brother

29. *Charles le Bel* succeeded him in the Kingdomes of *Nauarre* and *France*, being First of the name in *Nauarre*, and Fourth in *France*. Hee had three Wiues. The first was *Blanch* of *Bourgongne*, yongest Daughter to *Otho*, Counte of *Bourgongne*, and *Mahauld*, Countesse of *Artois*; but by her hee had no Child. By the second, named Madame *Mary* of *Luxembourg*, Daughter to *Lewes* of *Luxembourg*, Emperour, and Sister to *John* of *Luxembourg*, King of *Bohemia*; he had a Sonne, borne before his time, and of this Childbed died the said Queene *Mary*, being buried with the *Iacobines* at *Montargis*.

His third Wife was *Jane d'Eureux*, Daughter to *Monsieur Lewes* of *France*: Counte *d'Eureux*: and by her he had three Daughters.

N. Deceased very young.

Mary died likewise in her infancie: And

Madame *Blanche* of *France*, a *Posthumus*, Wife to *Monsieur Phillip* of *France*, first Duke of *Orleance*, who left no issue.

Charles le Bel reigned but fiue seauen, to the eight yeare, and died at *Bois de Vincennes*, the first day of the moneth of *Febr uary*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred twenty seauen, These three last Kings of *France* and of *Nauarre*, being deceased without heires Male, and *Phillip de Valois*, Sixte and last of the name, comming to the Crowne of *France*, who could not pretend any title to the Crowne of *Nauarre*; held vp his hand to

Jane of *France*, Queene of *Nauarre* by her birth Wife to

30. *Phillip*, Third of the name, called the Good, Counte *d'Eureux*, Eldest Sonne to *Monsieur Lewes* of *France*, Sonne to King *Phillip* the hardy, Third of the name, Sonne

Sonne of Saint *Lewes*. The said *Lewes*, Counte *d'Eureux Porte de France fans nombre, au Baſton componne d'Argent, et de Gueules*: Armes which the King of *Nauarre Phillip d'Eureux*, Third of the name, King of *Nauarre* cauſed to bee quartered; which yet the Kings of *Nauarre* haue retained in their Armes, and to this preſent in their money, which is ſtamped in the lower *Nauarre* and *Bearne*.

Of this Mariage enſued a plenteous lignage, to witt, three Sonnes and foure Daughters.

Charles, who was King of *Nauarre*.

Phillip, Counte of *Longue-Ville*, ſlaine in *Normandie* by *Bertrand du Gleſquin*, in the yeare, One thouſand three hundred ſixty foure, he lieth buried at *Eureux*, and died without leauing any iſſue.

Lewes of *Nauarre*, Count *de Beaumont le Roger* in *Normandie*, who eſpouſed the eldeſt Daughter to the Duke of *Duraz*, & *Mary*, Daughter to the K. of *Cicilie* iſſued of the houſe of *Anion*: in regard whereof, he ſtiled himſelfe Duke of *Duraz*, a Citty in *Greece*, heeretofore called *Dyrrachium*. And of this mariage was borne

Charles de Beaumont, Married in *Nauarre* to the Daughter of the Viſcounte of *Manleon*. The ſaid *Beaumont* was made *Alfier* Maior of *Nauarre*, by King *Charles* the ſecond his Vnckle, and of him are deſcended thoſe of the houſe of *Beaumont*, Counte of *Lerin*, Conſtables and Marſhalles in the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, Agents and inſtruments of the loſſe and vſurpation therof, againſt their lawfull Kings. The Daughters were

Ioane of *Nauarre*, wife to the Viſcounte of *Rohan* in *Bretaigne*, and of this mariage iſſued many children, who (to this day) beare the Armes of *Nauarre* and *d'Eureux* quartered, with their *Maſcles*, according as we haue formerly obſerued, in the Catalogue of the Knights of the *Holy Ghoſt*, vnder the name there ſet downe of *Montbazon*.

Mary, Wife to the King of *Arragon Peter*, Fourth of the name.

Blanche, Wife in ſecond Marriage to King *Phillip de Valois* And

Agnes, Wife to *Gaſton*, Sirnamed *Phœbus*, for his goodly curled locks of haire Counte of *Foix*, and Lord of *Bearne*.

King *Phillip d'Eureux* was ſlaine at the ſiedge of *Algazire* in *Granado* (poſſeſſed by the Moores) the ſixteenth day of *September*, *Anno*, One thouſand three hundred forty and three, his body was enterred at *Sancta Maria le Reale in Pampelona*, but his heart was caried to Queene *Ioane* of *Nauarre* his Wife, who kept it (during her life) in her Oratory. Shee ſuruiued her Husband ſixe yeares, or there about, and died at *Chaſteau de Conflans* beneath *Charanton*, where the Riuer of *Marne* loſeth her name in *Seine*, on Tueſday the ſeth of *October*, *Anno* One thouſand three hundred forty and nine, her body lieth buried at Saint *Denis* in *France*, at the feete of King *Lewes Hutin* her Father: But her heart is buried with her Husbands, before the high Altar of the *Iacobins* at *Paris*, where yet their Monument is to bee ſeene. The ſaid Queene liued one and twenty yeares, next whom ſucceeded her eldeſt Sonne

31. *Charles*, Second of the name, commonly called *The Bad*, for his depraued life, whoſe Reigne continued ſeauen and thirty yeares, but died miſerably: *Such Life, Such Death*. The ſcourdge of *France*, although he was the prime Prince of the blood thereof. Hee had to Wife Madame *Iane* or *Ioane* of *France*, Second Daughter to King *Iohn*: Of which Mariage came three Sonnes, and as many Daughters, as namely

Charles, King of *Nauarre* by his fathers death.

Phillip, who was both borne, and died at *Pampelona*, very young And

Peter of *Nauarre*, Count of *Mortaign* in *Normandie*, who tooke to Wife *Katharine d'Alanſon*, Daughter to *Peter*, Count of *Alanſon*, Sonne to *Charles*, Count of *Alanſon*, Brother to King *Phillip de Valois*. The ſaid *Peter* of *Nauarre* (whom the *French* then called *Monſiegn Pierres*, as the *Gaſcoignes* vſe to ſpeake) and his wife lye buried at the Charterhouſe of *Paris*, on the right ſide of the high Altar, where you may ſee their Tombe and Pictures in white and blacke Marble, without any inſcription. Hee was a Prince (in his life time) perticulerly affected to the ſaid Monaſtery of the Charterhouſe, where hee founded foure Celles of Monkes, which at this day are to bee ſeene quoated with theſe foure Letters *C. D. F. G.* The Religious men thereof, are called *The Monkes of the Prince of Nauarre*. The Foundation heereof was in the yeare, One

thouſand three hundred ninety one, allowing then foure thouſand Crownes of Gold (then called Francks, there were Francks on Hoſbacke, and on foote) with which ſumme of Money, the Charterhouſe of *Paris* bought the land and Seigneurie of *Vile-Neufue le Roy*, foure miles from *Paris*. Moreouer, the Prince gaue them many Ornaments and Decking for their Altars; eſpecially for Feſtiual dayes, and other ſolemne Feaſt dayes in the yeare, when the Copes and Veſtiments are publikely to bee ſeene on the Prieſts, at the ſaid Charterhouſe Monaſterie in *Paris*, very coſtly imbrodered with Gold, charged with the *Armes* of *Nauarre* and *d'Eureux*. In acknowledgement of ſo many great and gracious fauours, the ſaid Charterhouſe Monkes ſtood bound to ſay for him (during his life) two Conuentuall Maſſes, the one *De Feſta*, and the other for the dead, and on the day of his death, *Monachatum vnum*: that is to ſay, by the whole Monaſtery of the Charterhouſe, in what place ſoeuer of the Land they were, eche Prieſt ſought to ſay Sixe Maſſes. The profeſſed (no Prieſt) two Pſalters, and the Laye brethren, a certaine number of their Beades or Chappelets, for the ſoule of the deceaſſed. After his death, the ſaid two Maſſes were chaunged into an Aniuerſarie, which ſhould bee euery yeare ſaid, on the Feaſte of the Aſcention. He died of a Fluxe in his belly, at the Seidge of *Bourges*, with *Gilles*, Brother to the Duke of Bretaigne, in the yeare, One thouſand foure hundred and Fyue (ſix, according to the Chronicle of the *Vrſins*. The Tombe of the ſaid *Peter* of *Nauarre*, and his wife, is made of white and blacke Marble: On their heades are the Crownes belonging to Counteſſes, of double guilded Braſſe, and their Collars of the ſame, anſiwerable to the Honorable Order obſerued in thoſe dayes.

Peter is Armed with *Nauarre*, Quartered (no purpoſe) with *Bourbon*, in ſted of *d'Eureux*, hauing the *Baſton Compone*, as before, which the Kings of *Nauarre* haue alwayes caried, ſince King *Phillip d'Eureux*, euen to this preſent. Of this *Peter* of *Nauarre* cum *Dom Peter*, Lord of *Peralta*, Conſtable of *Nauarre*, of whom are deſcended the Marqueſſes *de Falces*, Lords of *Peralta*. This famous family is ſtill to the Female ligne, in the perſon of the Lady Marqueſſe *de Falces*, who I ſaw at *Peralta*, in my laſt voyage into *Spayne*, in the yeare foureſcore and eleuen. The daughters were theſe Ladies.

Madame *Mary* of *Nauarre*, wife to *Alphonſo* of *Arragon*, Counte of *Denia* (in Latine *Dianum*) at this day a Marqueſſe.

Blanche, who died at *Olita*, being then aged about thirteene yeares And

Ioane of *Nauarre*, maried twiſe. Firſt to *Iohn de Montfort*, Duke of *Bretaigne*: in ſecond mariage ſhe had *Henry* of *Lancaſter*, King of *England*.

Hee had moreouer a naturell Sonne, named *Lionell* of *Nauarre*, the ſtemme of the Marqueſſes *de Cortez*, Marſhalles of *Nauarre*.

Queene *Ioane* died at *Eureux*, where ſhe made her abiding, in the end of the Moneth of *November*, *Anno*, One thouſand three hundred ſeauenty three, Her heart was buried in the Church of *Pampelona*, but her body enterred at *Eureux*. *Charles* the Bad her husband, outliued her thirteene yeares, and died at *Pampelona*, on Tueſday the firſt of *Ianuary*, *Anno*, One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and Sixe, the ſeauen and thirtieth of his Reigne, and of his age the Fiue and fiftieth. His heart was caried to *Sancta Maria d'Vxel*, his Bowells to *Roncenaux*; but his body buried in the great Church of *Pampelona*, by the heart of his wife; he finiſhed his life in a very ſtrange manner. In regard of his age, being benummed with much colde, a diuiſe was giuen, that he ſhould be wraptē in a cloth well wet and ſteeped in *Aqua Vitæ*, and ſo ſowne vp therein, till the cloth being growne drie, it ſhould then be wet againe with *Aqua Vitæ*. He which ſowed him vp in the cloth, had a waxe Candle lighted ſtanding before him, and to breake off the thred, he tooke the waxe candle to burne it in ſunder: but it ſo chaunced, that the enflamed thread ran on to the cloth, ſetting it both on fire and flame, without any remedy to redreſſe it. So he liued three dayes, crying and ſhricking moſt lamentably, with the extreame agonies which he endured, and in that maner ended his life: which was reputed (by many) a iuſt and diuine puniſhment inflicted on him, in regard of his wicked and lewde life. Thus you heare what the Chronicle of the *Vrſins* ſpeaketh of him, in the yeare, One thou-

Sonne of Saint *Lewes*. The said *Lewes*, Counte *d'Eureux Porte de France fans nombre,au Baſton componne d'Argent,et de Gueules*: Armes which the King of *Nauarre Phillip d'Eureux*, Third of the name, King of *Nauarre* cauſed to bee quartered; which yet the Kings of *Nauarre* haue retained in their Armes, and to this preſent in their money, which is ſtamped in the lower *Nauarre* and *Bearne*.

Of this Mariage enſued a plenteous lignage, to witt, three Sonnes and foure Daughters.

Charles, who was King of *Nauarre*.

Phillip, Counte of *Longue-Ville*, ſlaine in *Normandie* by *Bertrand du Gleſquin*, in the yeare, One thouſand three hundred ſixty foure, he lieth buried at *Eureux*, and died without leauing any iſſue.

Lewes of *Nauarre*, Count *de Beaumont le Roger* in *Normandie*, who eſpouſed the eldeſt Daughter to the Duke of *Duraz*, & *Mary*, Daughter to the K. of *Cicilie* iſſued of the houſe of *Anion*: in regard whereof, he ſtiled himſelfe Duke of *Duraz*, a Citty in *Greece*, heeretofore called *Dyrrachium*. And of this mariage was borne

Charles de Beaumont, Married in *Nauarre* to the Daughter of the Viſcounte of *Mauleon*. The ſaid *Beaumont* was made *Alfier* Maior of *Nauarre*, by King *Charles* the ſecond his Vnckle, and of him are deſcended thoſe of the houſe of *Beaumont*, Countes of *Lerin*, Conſtables and Marſhalles in the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, Agents and inſtruments of the loſſe and vſurpation therof, againſt their lawfull Kings. The Daughters were

Ioane of *Nauarre*, wife to the Viſcounte of *Rohan* in *Bretaigne*, and of this mariage iſſued many children, who (to this day) beare the Armes of *Nauarre* and *d'Eureux* quartered, with their *Maſcles*, according as we haue formerly obſerued, in the Catalogue of the Knights of the *Holy Ghoſt*, vnder the name there ſet downe of *Montbazon*.

Mary, Wife to the King of *Arragon Peter*, Fourth of the name.

Blanche, Wife in ſecond Marriage to King *Phillip de Valois* And

Agnes, Wife to *Gaſton*, Sirnamed *Phœbus*, for his goodly curled locks of haire Counte of *Foix*, and Lord of *Bearne*.

King *Phillip d'Eureux* was ſlaine at the ſiedge of *Algazire* in *Granado* (poſſeſſed by the Moores) the ſixteenth day of *September*, *Anno*, One thouſand three hundred forty and three, his body was cauſed at *Sancta Maria le Reale in Pampelona*, but his heart was caried to Queene *Ioane* of *Nauarre* his Wife, who kept it (during her life) in her Oratory. Shee ſuruiued her Husband ſixe yeares, or there about, and died at *Chaſteau de Conflans* beneath *Charanton*, where the Riuer of *Marne* loſeth her name in *Seine*, on Tueſday the ſeth of *October*, *Anno* One thouſand three hundred forty and nine, her body lieth buried at Saint *Denis* in *France*, at the feete of King *Lewes Hutin* her Father: But her heart is buried with her Husbands, before the high Altar of the *Iacobins* at *Paris*, where yet their Monument is to bee ſeene. The ſaid Queene liued one and twenty yeares, next whom ſucceeded her eldeſt Sonne

31. *Charles*, Second of the name, commonly called *The Bad*, for his depraued life, whoſe Reigne continued ſeauen and thirty yeares, but died miſerably: *Such Life, Such Death.* The ſcourdge of *France*, although he was the prime Prince of the blood thereof. Hee had to Wife Madame *Ione* or *Ioane* of *France*, Second Daughter to King *John*: Of which Mariage came three Sonnes, and as many Daughters, as namely

Charles, King of *Nauarre* by his fathers death.

Phillip, who was both borne, and died at *Pampelona*, very young And

Peter of *Nauarre*, Count of *Mortaigne* in *Normandie*, who tooke to Wife *Katharine d'Alanſon*, Daughter to *Peter*, Count of *Alanſon*, Sonne to *Charles*, Count of *Alanſon*, Brother to King *Phillip de Valois*. The ſaid *Peter* of *Nauarre* (whom the *French* then called *Monſiegn Pierres*, as the *Gaſcoignes* vſe to ſpeake) and his wife lye buried at the Charterhouſe of *Paris*, on the right ſide of the high Altar, where you may ſee their Tombe and Pictures in white and blacke Marble, without any inſcription. Hee was a Prince (in his life time) perticulerly affected to the ſaid Monaſtery of the Charterhouſe, where hee founded foure Celles of Monkes, which at this day are to bee ſeene quoated with theſe foure Letters *C. D. F. G.* The Religious men thereof, are called *The Monkes of the Prince of Nauarre*. The Foundation heereof was in the yeare, One

thouſand three hundred ninety one, allowing then foure thouſand Crownes of Gold (then called Francks, there were Francks on Hoſ backe, and on foote) with which ſumme of Money, the Charterhouſe of *Paris* bought the land and Seigneurie of *Ville-Neufue le Roy*, foure miles from *Paris*. Moreouer, the Prince gaue them many Ornaments and Decorings for their Altars; eſpecially for Feaſt dayes, and other ſolemne Feaſt dayes in the yeare, when the Coapes and Veſtiments are publikely to bee ſeene on the Prieſts, at the ſaid Charterhouſe Monaſterie in *Paris*, very coſtly imbrodered with Gold, charged with the *Armes* of *Nauarre* and *d'Eureux*. In acknowledgement of ſo many great and gracious fauours, the ſaid Charterhouſe Monkes ſtood bound to ſay for him (during his life) two Conuentuall Maſſes, the one *Defunctis*, and the other for the dead, and on the day of his death, *Monachatum vnum*: that is to ſay, by the whole Monaſtery of the Charterhouſe, in what place ſoeuer of the Land they were, eche Prieſt ought to ſay Sixe Maſſes. The profeſſed (no Prieſt) two Pſalters, and the Laye Brethren, a certaine number of their Beades or Chappelets, for the ſoule of the deceaſſed. After his death, the ſaid two Maſſes were changed into an Aniuerſarie, which ſhould bee euery yeare ſaid, on the Feaſte of the Aſcention. He died of a Flexe in his belly, at the Seidge of *Bourges*, with *Ieane*, Brother to the Duke of Bretaigne, in the yeare, One thouſand foure hundred and Twelue, according to the Chronicle of the *Vrſins*. The Tombe of the ſaid Prince of *Nauarre*, and his wife, is made of white and blacke Marble: On their Images are the Crownes belonging to Counteſſes, of double guilded Braſſe, and their Collins of the ſame, anſwerable to the Honorable Order obſerued in thoſe dayes.

Peter is Armed with *Nauarre*, Quarterred (to no purpoſe) with *Burbon*, in ſted of *Eureux*, hauing the *Baſton Compone*, as before, which the Kings of *Nauarre* haue alwayes carried, ſince King *Phillip d'Eureux*, vnto this preſent. Of this *Peter* of *Nauarre* came *Dom Peter*, Lord of *Peralta*, Conſtable of *Nauarre*, of whom are deſcended the Marqueſſes *de Falces*, Lords of *Peralta*. This famous family is Extinct in the Female ligne, in the perſon of the Lady Marqueſſe *de Falces*, who I ſaw at *Peralta*, in my laſt voyage into *Spayne*, in the yeare fourteſcore and eleuen. The daughters were theſe Ladies.

Madame *Mary* of *Nauarre*, wife to *Alphonſo* of *Arragon*, Counte of *Denza* (in Latine *Dianium*) at this day a Marquiſate.

Blanche, who died at *Olita*, being then aged about thirteene yeares And

Ioane of *Nauarre*, maried twiſe. Firſt to *Iohn de Montfort*, Duke of *Bretaigne*: in ſecond mariage ſhe had *Henry* of *Lancaſter*, King of *England*.

Hee had moreouer a naturell Sonne, named *Lionell* of *Nauarre*, the ſtemme of the Marqueſſes *de Cortez*, Marſhalles of *Nauarre*.

Queene *Ioane* died at *Eureux*, where ſhe made her abiding, in the end of the Moneth of *November*, *Anno*, One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and Sixe, the ſeuen and thirtieth of his Reigne, and of his age the Fiue and fiftieth. His heart was caried to *Sancta Maria d'Vxel*, his Bowells to *Pomeraux*; but his body buried in the great Church of *Pampelona*, by the heart of his wife; he finiſhed his life in a very ſtrange manner. In regard of his age, being benummed with much colde, a diuiſe was giuen, that he ſhould be wraped in a cloth well wet and ſteeped in *Aqua Vitæ*, and ſo ſowne vp therein, till the Cloth being growne drie, it ſhould then be wet againe with *Aqua Vitæ*. He which ſowed him vp in the cloth, had a waxe Candle lighted ſtanding before him, and to breake off the thred, he tooke the waxe candle to burne it in ſunder: but it to chaunced, that the enflamed thred ran on to the cloth, ſetting it both on fire and flame, without any remedy to redreſſe it. So he liued three dayes, crying and ſhricking moſt lamentably, with three extreame agonies which he endured, and in that maner ended his life: which was reputed (by many) a iuſt and diuine puniſhment inflicted on him, in regard of his wicked and lewde life. Thus you heare what the Chronicle of the *Vrſins* ſpeaketh of him, in the yeare, One thou-

thousand three hundred foureſcore and ſixe, Hee had for Succeſſour in the Kingdome, his Eldeſt Sonne

32. *Charles*, Third of the name, called *The Noble*, who reigned nine and thirty yeares. He eſpouſed in the life time of his Father, Madame *Eleanor* of *Caſtille*, Daughter to *Henry*, King of *Caſtille*, and *Jane* of *Caſtille* his Wife, Daughter to *Emanuell* King of *Caſtille*: And of this marriage were borne two Sonnes, and fiue Daughters.

Charles and *Lewes* } dying young.

Ioane, Maried to *John*, Eldeſt Sonne to *Archambauld*, Fourth of thy name, Count of *Foix*, by whom no iſſue remained.

Mary, ſhe died young at *Pampelona*.

Blanch, who while her Father liued, maried with *Martin*, King of *Cicile*, Eldeſt Sonne to *Martin*, King of *Arragon*, but by her hee had no child. In ſecond mariage Shee had the Duke of *Bauaria*, *Lewes*, Brother to Queene *Iſabell* Wife to *Charles* the Sixt. She was married alſo the third time, to *John* Infant of *Arragon*, Duke of *Peguaſiell* in the Kingome of *Caſtille*.

Beatrix, Married to *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la Marche*, called King *Iames* of *Naples*: And

Iſabell, deceaſing at nine yeares olde.

During the abſence of his wife in *Caſtille*, he had by his Loone-Miſtriſſe a Sonne and a Daughter: The Sonne was

Godfrey of *Nauarre*, Marqueſſe *de Cortez*, Marſhall of the Kingdome: The Daughter was

Ioane of *Nauarre*, Maried to *Dom Inigo d'Ortis d'Iſtruga*, Sonne to *Dom Diego Lopez d'Eſtenuga*, a rich and powerfull Lord in *Nauarre*. *Charles* the Noble died a ſudden death at *Olita*, on *Saturday* in *September*, being the Nativity of our Lady, the yeare of Grace, One thouſand Foure hundred eighty and fiue, Hee lieth in the Great Church of *Pampelona*, which he cauſed to be newly rebuilded, as at this day is to be ſeene. By his death, his Eldeſt Daughter

Blanche, And

33. *Ioan* of *Arragon* her husband, were King and Queene of *Nauarre*; and of this Mariage were borne

Charles, Prince of *Nauarre*, poyſonned by his Stepmother, at the age of one and forty yeares, without being Married.

Blanche, Married to the King of *Caſtille*, *Dom Henry*, ſirnamed the Weake or Impotent: And

Leonora, Wife to *Gaſton*, Counte of *Foix*, and afterward Queene of *Nauarre*.

Queene *Blanche* died at *Nieuas* in *Caſtille*, the firſt day of *Aprill*, about the ending of the yeare, One Thouſand Foure hundred forty and one. His Body lieth at the Gray Fryers of *Tudele* in *Nauarre*. By his deceaſſe, the Kingdom of *Nauarre* appertained to the Prince *Dom Charles*, from whom King *John* of *Arragon* his Father kept it, vntill the yeare, One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and two, when

34. *Eleanor*, the laſt Daughter, was enſtalled Goverineſſe in the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, for the ſaid King *John* her Father, the Eſtates of the Realme declaring her Princeſſe of *Viana*, and Regent of *Nauarre*, with the Count *Gaſton* her Husband. Vnder this King *John* of *Arragon*, began the factions in *Nauarre*, of them of *Beaumont*, partakers with Prince *Charles*, and them of *Gramont*, who tooke part with King *John*. By theſe factions enſued the Kingdomes loſſ, from the legitimate and naturall Lords thereof. In this mariage of the ſaid *Eleanor*, and *Gaſton*, Fourth of the name her husband, were borne foure Sonnes, and fiue daughters.

Gaſton, Prince of *Viana*, the Eldeſt Son, who tooke to wife Madame *Magdalen* of *France*, Siſter to King *Lewes* the Eleuenth: And of this mariage enſued a Sonne and a Daughter.

Frances, ſirnamed *Phebus*, King of *Nauarre*: And

Katharine, Queene of *Nauarre*, by the death of her Brother.

The ſaid *Gaſton* was ſlaine by the ſpliter of a Launce, in a Tourney held at *Linorne* neere to *Bourdeaux*, on *Friday* the two and twentieth of *Nouember*, One Thouſand foure hundred Threeſcore and nine, the ſixe and twentieth yeare of his age: His Body lieth at Saint *Andrew* of *Bourdeaux*. The ſecond Sonne was

John, Viſcounte of *Narbona*, who had to Wife *Mary* of *Orleans*: the Father and Mother of that Thunderbolte of Warre, *Gaſton de Foix*, Duke of *Nemoux*, ſlaine in the Battaile of *Rauenna*.

Peter, Cardinall, and Biſhop of *Ayre* in *Guienne*: And

Iames,

Iames, who died at the age of thirtie yeares, without being Married. The Daughters were

Mary, Wife to *William*, Marqueſſe of *Montferrat*.

Ioane, Married to the Counte of *Armignac*.

Margaret, Wife to *Frances*, the laſt Duke of *Bretaigne*: And of this marriage was borne Madame *Anne*, twiſe Queene of *France*.

Katharine, Maried to the Count *de Candalles*, Captaine *de Buch*. Of which mariage iſſued two Sonnes, the one, Counte of *Candalles* and Captaine *de Buch*, the other Archbiſhop of *Bourdeaux*: And a Daughter, *Anne de Foix*, Wife to *Ladiſlaue*, King of *Bohemia* and *Hungaria*, Sonne to *Cazimir*, King of *Poland*. And of this Marriage came *Lewes*, King of *Bohemia* and *Hungaria*, who eſpouſed *Mary* of *Caſtille*, Siſter to the Emperour *Charles* the Fifte; and *Anne* of *Hungaria*, who Married with *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, Brother to the ſaid *Charles* the Fift, after whom, he was the Emperour: And of this Marriage was borne the Emperour *Maximillian*, and other children.

The laſt daughter was *Leonora de Foix*, who died in her infancy.

By the death of *John* of *Arragon*, happening on *Tueſday* the nineteenth of *January*, One thouſand foure hundred ſeauenty eight, at *Barcelona*:

Eleanor was crowned Queene of *Nauarre* in the great Church of *Tudela*. She reigned but three weekes after her Coronation, and died at *Tudela*, in the end of the Moneth of *Aprill*, and beginning of the yeare, One thouſand foure hundred ſeauenty nine, the ninth of her Widdowhood. Her body was enterred in the Monaſtery of the Graye Friers, in the Suburbs of the Towne of *Taffala* in *Nauarre*, according to her owne appointment. By her death her youngeſt Sonne

35. *Frances*, ſirnamed *Phœbus*, came to the Crowne of *Nauarre*, and to the Seigneuries and Counties of *Bearn*, of *Foix* and *Bigorre*. His Reigne was of ſmall continuance, becauſe hee died (fifteene Moneths after his Cronation in *Nauarre*) the nine and twentieth day of *January*, the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and three, the ſixeteenth of his age, without being maried. He died at *Pau* in *Bearn*, and his Body was caried to Saint *Maries*, the Cathedrall of *Leſcar*. After him

36. *Katharine*, And

John d'Albret her Husband, Second of the name, were King and Queene of *Nauarre*, Sacred and Crowned at *Pampelona*, on Sunday the tenth of *January*, One thouſand foure hundred ninety foure,

Of this Marriage enſued many children, whereof fiue died very young. The Sonnes were

Andrewe Phœbus, who died at *Pampelona*.

John died before his elder Brother.

Henry, who was borne in the Citty of *Sangueſſa* in *Nauarre* (three dayes after the death of his Elder Brother) the eighteenth day of *Aprill*, One thouſand fiue hundred and three, And

Charles Frances, who dyed in the voyage made to the Kingdome of *Naples*, with the Lord of *Lautrec*, The daughters were

Katharine.

Anne, who died affianced to the Count of *Luſtrac*, Sonne to the Count of *Candalles*.

Quiteria.

Magdalen, And

Iſabell, Wife to the Count of *Rohan* in *Bretagne*: And of this Marriage were borne

Henry, Viſcounte *de Rohan*, And *John de Rohan*, Lord of *Fontenay*, Both dying without Iſſue.

N. Deceaſed younge.

Rene, who was heire of all by the Fathers ſide.

Peter died younge.

Lewes, Lord of *Gien*, died younge: And

Frances, Ducheſſe of *Leon*, of the *Ganache*, and of *Beauuoir* on the Sea. Of the Muſle children of this auncient houſe of *Rohan*

Rene had to Wife the Heire of *Parthenay*, of the Royall houſe of *Luxignan*, Daughter to *John* of *Luxignan*, called the Archbiſhop, Lord of *Soubize*. Of this mariage were borne.

Henry, Viſcounte *de Rohan*.

N. Who died young.

Beniamin, Lord of *Soubize*.

Henriet.

Katharine: And

Anne.

This Genealogie sheweth aparantly, in what neerenesse of Alliance the house of *Rohan* is to the most Christian Kings of *France* and *Nauarre*: And for this consideration, King *Henry* the Great, of eternall memory, gaue the title of Duchie and Peer-dome to the Eldest Sonne of *Rohan*.

Against King *John d'Albret*, and *Katharine* his Wife, the Kingdome of *Nauarre* was vsurped by *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, as we haue both heere, and elsewhere formerly declared. *John a'Albret* died in the Castell of *Moning* in *Bearn*, the seauenteenth day of *June*, One thousand fiue hundred and sixteene, His Body lieth in the Cathedrall Church at *Lescar*. Queene *Katharine* suruiued her Husband a yeare, or there about, because she died at *Mont de Morsan* on Tuesday the twelfth of *February*, One thousand fiue hundred and seauenteene, the seauen and fortieth of her age, and nine and twentieth of her Reigne. Her Body was likewise caried into the Church of *Lescar*, and laid by her Husband.

37. *Henry* their Eldest Sonne, was King of *Nauarre*, Second of the name, who by *Margaret d'Engoulesme*, Sister to King *Frances* the First (Widdowe of *Charles* the last Duke of *Alanson*) his Wife, had

Ioane, Queene of *Nauarre* after h Father.

Iohn, who died being two Mon olde.

And two other Daughters, who bei borne before their time, neuer saw light of this world.

King *Henry* died at a place called *getman* in *Bearn*, the fiue and twenti day of *May*, aged three and fifty year His Body was caried to the Church *Lescar*: And then succeeded him

38. *Ioane*, and her Husband, *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, D of *Vendosme*, First Prince of the Blo of the Sacred and Holy Lillies of Fran Wee haue in the Tract of the Order *Bourbon*, formerly discourfed and obs ued, the death and Linage of the said K and Queene, to whom next succeeded

39. *Henry*, King of *Nauarre*, Third and of *France* Fourth of the name, calle *The Great*, Father of

40. *Lewes*, King of *Nauarre*, Second and of *France* Thirteenth of the name To whom God giue (of his Grace) wise and vnderstanding Councell, wi an intelligible spirit to effect the bel long life, victory ouer his enemies, a to gouerne his people with mildnesse a Iustice.

Wee haue heeretofore remembred, that the Kings of *Nauarre* haue caried vari Armes, and chaunged diuers times.

Armes by paternall inheritance.

Those of *Garcia Ximenes*, who was First King of *Nauarre*, and Count of *Bigor* by his paternall inheritance, caried but *L'Escu de Gueules*, without any other ornament Armes retained by the auncient Lords of *Labrit*, since then called *Albret*, to whom King *Charles* Sixt of the name, gaue permission to beare *Seme de France au Quartier d'Honneur*, and the other to retaine those of the auncient Kings of *Nauarre*, a Countes *Bigorre*, the Stemme of the house of *Albret*:

The Prouinces of Spayne inuaded by the Moores of Affrica.

The fame *Garcia Ximenes*, being come into the Hermitage of Saint *Iohn de la Pegna*, neere to *Iaca*, in the territorie of *Nauarre*, to giue his furtherance in the Fun rralles of *Iohn l'Archimandrite* or Abbot of the same place, who was departed out this wretched and transitory life, into glory eternall and without ending, the yeare Grace seauen hundred and sixteene, two yeares after the inuading of all the Prouinces of *Spayne* by the *Moores* of *Affrica*; thus it happened to him. After the said Funeralls being at Prayer in the night season, he and all his People saw a Shield in Heauen shining like Gold, wherein appeared a great Oake, greene and fairely flourishing wi leaues, hauing on the top thereof a Crosse Red as blood, Which serued them as good presage, of happy encountring with the *Moores* in fight. *Ximenes* being chose chiefe of this holy enterprise; he left the auncient Armes of his house, and tooke *D'Or au Chesne de Synople, au Chef d'Or a la Croix pommetee de Gueules*. Of this vision, and

This vision or miracle may be credited to farre as men please.

the newe-made Conquest of the said *Garcia Ximenes*, both he and his descendants were honoured with the title of The Kingdome of *Sobrarbre*, *Regnum Subarbori*, and *Subrarbre* by abbreuiation, and the Lords of this large extended Countrey, called Kings of *Sobrarbre*, and *Sobrarbre* by the Spanyards. Who enuying the glory and

renowne, of the First Kings of this first Christian Kingdome, haue reiected this miracle: writing, that the extendure of the Kingdome of *Sobrarbre*, was so named for the proximitie or neerenesse thereof, to the *Serres* and Mountaine of *Arbe*, which seperateth and deuideth *Sobrarbre*, from the plaine and Champayne-ground, which extendeth it selfe from the Flood of *Cinga*, so farre as to the Riuer of *Ebro*.

These Armes were chaunged the second time, by the Sixte King of *Nauarre Inigo Ximenes*, sirnamed *Arista*, who beside his deuise formerly related, tooke for Armes of the Kingdome, *L'Escu d'Azur a la Croix Pommettee ou patte d'Argent*, long time retained by the Kings of *Nauarre* and *Arragon*. The subiect of this second Armes, ensued thus. The said *Ximenes Arista*, being one night in prayer at Saint *Sauiour de Leyra*, there appeared an Angell to him, who gaue him courage to warre against the *Moores* of *Spayne*, with *Vne Estendard de Soye Bleue*, *charge d'Vne Croix Blanche pommettee*. So that *Arista*, wholly animated with valour and newe receiued strength, by bearing this Celestiall Banner; descended downe the Mountaines, where the Kings his Predecessours had made their abyding, and conquered on the plaine, the Cities of *Pampelona* and of *Alaua* from the *Moores*.

Another vision on the cause of an other alteration.

The Third Armes of the Kings of *Nauarre*, which haue remained with them till this instant; were taken by King *Sancio* the Strong, Eight of the name. As a signale memorie of the Battaile *Des Naues de Tolosa*, wun against the *Moores* by his good conduct. We will therefore set downe the particularities of that memorable ouerthrow.

A True, but brisfe Discourse of the famous Battaile *called* Des Naues de Tolosa, *fought betweene the Christians and* Moores, *In* Anno, *One Thousand two Hundred and Eleuen.*

CHAP. IIII.

After the Battaile of *Alarcos*, lost by the rashnesse of the King of *Leon Dom Alphonso*, Ninth of the name (hauing despised the succours of the Kings of *Nauarre* and *Arragon*, because the onely honour of victory might be arrogated to himselfe) on *Wednesday* the seuen and twentieth of *July*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred fourescore and fifteene, the *Moores* thirstily pursuing their victory; razed *Alarcos*, forraging on (euen as themselues pleased) so farre as to the Portes *D'Vbenes*, about sixe miles from *Toledo*, wherein was shut vp *Dom Alphonso*, grieuously wounded on the day at *Alarcos*, which he besieged tenne dayes together, without the least preuayling or doing any thing, and then was compelled to discampe, by the braue resistance of the besiedged and defendants. The *Moores* returned to encampe there the second time, so that he was forced in flight to *Leonois*, to finde *Iosceph Mahamet*, the *Miramomelin* of *Affrica*, either for Peace, or (at the least) for a Truce of Nine yeares continuance.

Iosse of the Battaile at *Alarcos*.

During which time, *Aben-Iosep Muhamet* died at *Marocco*, leauing for Successour his Sonne (or Brother) *Aben Mahamet*, Sirnamed *The Greene*, because ordinarily he wore his Robe and Tolibant Greene, to shewe, that he was descended of the Stocke of the false Prophet *Mahomet*, as indeed he was, comming of *Aben-Alauecy*, of great renowne among the *Affricanes* and *Arabes*, to haue his originall deriued of the Queene *Fatima*, Daughter to *Mahomet*, Wife to the King and *Caliphe Hosman*.

The death of *Aben Iosseph Muhamet* at *Marocco*.

The Truce being vpon the point of expyring, *Aben-Mahamet*, hoping and purposing the conquest of all *Spayne*; departed from *Marocco* into *Spayne*, with a very great number of *Affricanes*, who being ioyned with his other forces in *Spayne*, made a dreadfull Army, consisting of aboue three Hundred Thousand Men.

This

The huge Armie of *Aben-Mahamet* against the Christians.

This horrible deluge, made an assembly of all the Christian Kings and Princes of *Spayne*, who armed themselues on all sides in this common cause. *Ferdinand*, Sonne to the King of *Leon Alphonso*, Ninth of the name, conducted the troupes of his Father *Dom Alphonso*, and made a Caualcado or out-ranging vpon the Moores of *Baesa* & *Anduyar* and of *Iaen*, where he tooke some Castles, burnt and spoyled all, and (laden with the spoyles) returned to *Toledo*. This he did in *Andalousia*, in the yeare, One thousand two hundred and eleuen, where likewise (on the other side) the King of *Arragon* aduentured on the Moores of *Valencia*, out of whose seruility he deliuered *Adamuzo*, and some other strong places: while (in the meane time) *Aben-Mahamet*, by three moneths siedge, tooke the strong Towne of *Saluatierra*, where he put all the inhabitants to the edge of the Sword. This surprizall happpened in the Moneth of *December*, One thousand two hundred and eleuen.

Saluatierra taken and all put to the Sword.

Alphonso, King of *Leon*, being then at *Talauera*, heard the sad tydings of this strong Townes surprising, and despayring (by present power) to resist against so potent an Army, as that of the Moores was: obtayned of the Pope, sitting then in his holy Chaire, a Croisade, or expedition of Christians out of diuers Countries, by his Ambassador *Roderick Ximenes*, Archbishop of *Toledo*, causing it to be published among the States of the Christian Princes, to whom he sent his Ambassadours, to signifie the great multitudes of the Moores, which passed out of *Affrica* into *Spayne* dayly, to make themselues Lords and Maisters thereof. Among them were thirty Kings, and the Army consisted of an hundred and threescore thousand horse, and an innumerable multitude of foote Soldiours.

Roderick Ximenes Archbishop of *Toledo*.

The Armie of the Christians.

Vpon the publication of this Holy Croisade, an vnspeakeable number of *French*, *Germanes*, *English*, *Dutch*, & other went into *Spayne*, and there ioyning with the natiues of the Country, made their Armies bodyes to consist of an hundred thousand Foote, and threescore thousand Horse. To traine the baggadge of the Christian Army, there were threescore thousand Chariots. Eche Horseman hauing dayly paide him a *Maruedis* of Golde; euery Footeman the fourth parte thereof, and eche Soldiours Boye the fourth part of a Footeman: which wadges was furnished by all the Princes of *Spayne*; excepting him of *Portugall*, who would not yield any contribution.

This Army was assembled on the plaines of *Toledo*, in the Moneth of *Iune*, One thousand two hundred and Twelue, from whence they departed to meete with the *Moores*. *Alphonso* of *Leon* was the conducter of the Arriere-garde; he of *Arragon*, the maine Battaile; and the Counte *Diego Lopez de Haro*, Lord of *Biscaye* (who was one of the first that fled on the day at *Alarcos*) led the vangard. The Christian Army thus Marshalled into three diuisions, went and besiedged *Malago*, foureteene miles from *Toledo*, a very good place, and which they wonne by force, the three and twentieth day of the said Moneth of *Iune*, where the Christians (as an acceptable Sacrifice to God) put all the inhabitants to the sword, as their enemies formerly had dealt with the Christians at *Saluatierra*: and the sacke or spoyle of this so strong a place, was giuen to the Straungers, who had very valiantly fought for it. From hence the Christian Army went to *Guadiana*, one of the greatest riuers in *Spayne*, and to *Calatraua*, winning it from the Moores that were therein, by way of composition, (Liues and Iewelles saued, and conducted to a place of security, by the Counte of *Haro*) against the opposition of all the forraine succour, who coueted nothing more, then the vtter extermination of that wicked race. The place was rendered to the Knights (bearing name thereof, Knights of *Calatraua*) who possessed it before; but the pillage was giuen to the Strangers.

A Counsell for the bloody diuision of *Saluatierra*.

The spoyle of *Calatraua*.

Aben-Mahamet had wonne againe *Iaen* from the Christians, where hee continued supinely, expecting the route and rupture of the Christian Army, weakened in the greater parte of the Straungers, being constrained (through want of victualles) to returne among them. Which highly exalted the courage of the *Moores*, and gaue them vndoubted hope, to furnish their affaires in better order, which was greatly disioynted by so many enemies, with whom they were yet to meddle withall.

The Christians Armie displayed in Campaine at *Alarcos*.

From *Calatraua* the Christian Army came againe to *Alarcos*, died red yet with the large effusion of blood, but blanched & made white soone after with the *Moores* bones.

Where

where the Christians soiourned certaine dayes. This was the place where the King of *Nauarre Sancio* the Strong, Eight and last of the name, brauely shewed himselfe, with a choice troupe of his best Horse and Foote, Soldiours of good and sound approbation. At his arriuall the Christian Army recouered a new face of ioy and alacrity, expressed by the honourable welcomming of this Great Commander, whom they entertained in a ranged Battaile.

With the King of *Nauarre* were many great Lords and Gentlemen of France, *Champaigne*, and other places. *Gonsalo Gomez Garcia d'Agonciello*, carried the Royall Standard of *Nauarre*, which was of Blew Silke, *A la Croix Blanche Pommettee*, as we haue already said.

The great Lords of Nauarre present at the Army.

About this Colonel were the Lords of *Nauarre*, as namely, *Garcia Almorauid*; *Pero Martinez de Leet*; *Pero Garces d'Aronis*; *Sanceo Fernandez de Montagut*, Brother to *Dom Pedro de Montagut*, Great Maister of the Templers, to whom the King of *Arragon* had giuen the City of *Tortosa*: *Pero Martin de Subica*; *Martin de Milagro*, *Garcia Ximenez d Oiellctta*; *Ximenez d'Ayuar*, *Pero Velez de Gueuara*; *Mauleon de Casconte*; *Raymond de Peralta*; *Ximenez de Bastan*; *Iuan Garcia de Bidaurra*; *Pero Gonsales de Marrano*; *Arnauld de Leet*; *Inigo de Oteyca*, *Fortunio Ximenez*; *Nugno Sanchez*, Brother to the Archbishop of *Toledo Dom Roderigo Ximenez*; *Inigo de Kada*; *Miguell de Rada*; *Ximenez Iniguez*; *Inigo Destunica*; *Diego Iniguez* his Sonne; *Fremin d'Aguiniga*, *Monsen Iuan de Arcillano*; *Ochoa Fortunez*; *Lope Fortunez*; *Roderigo de Arazuri*, and many other, with the Inhabitants of the Borough of Sainct *Sernin* of *Pampelona*, who made their comming well knowne to the Enemy, by the surprizall of many places, which serued as a leuelling for the approaches to and from *Saluatierra*, possessed by *Aben-Mahamet*.

This Towne is seated at the foote of the intangling Mountaines, which the Romaines called *Montes Marianos*, at this present *La Sierra Morena*, the most detestable Countrey to bee seene in all Europe, and a retreate for no honest people.

Montes Marianos now called *La Sierra Morena*.

The King of *Nauarre* being thus ioyned with the Kings of *Arragon* and *Leon*, the Christian Army departed from *Alarcos*, to encampe neerer on the Skirts of *Saluatierra*.

On the Sunday following, the Army being in Battaile array, the Generall Muster was made; and on the next day, they came to lodge at *Trescasas*, and three dayes after, neere to the foote of the Mountaine *Muradall*, by the Riuer called *Guadalquiuir*.

Mahamet (in the meane while) had planted his troupes all along the Mountaines about *Iaen*, where hee attended the Christians comming resolutely, to giue them a Charge vpon their Retreate.

False suggestions in the Christian Army.

But hauing vnderstood by some Traytors in the Christian Army, what great necessity of Victuals was among them, in regard whereof the Strangers were all withdrawne: hee changed his former resolution to another, and in stead of attending for them, discamped, to get before them to *Baesa*, from whence hee sent part of his troupes to *Mues de Tolosa*, to hinder the passage of our men, and seize them first on the high Mountaines. Wherein hee was foreseene by Count *Diego Lopez de Haro*, who sent his Sonne *Dom Diego* and two of his Nephewes, *Sanceo Ferdinand*, and *Martin Nugnez*, to get first possession of them. There was the Fight sharpe and cruell, because they found the *Arabes* on the toppe of the pointed Rockes, neere to the Castell of *Ferrall*, from whence they were to driue them by force of Armes (as they did) and planted downe there their Tents and Pauilions.

The Castle of *Ferrall* taken from the *Moores*.

On the Thursday, about the ninth houre, all the Army came and lodged at the foote of the Mountaines, where part of them ascended, and the rest encamped on the bankes of *Guadalhaiara*. On the morrow, the three Kings of *Nauarre*, *Arragon* and *Leon*, ascended the Mountaines, and lodged themselues betweene those two that were beneath the Castell of *Ferrall*, which (the same day) they tooke from the *Moores*.

To come to the place where the enemies Army was encamped, there was but one passage so strait and vneasie, as one man alone could defend it against a whole Army;

bridle, to saue himselfe in the Towne of *Baesa*, or that of *Iaen*, followed with no more but foure Horse onely.

By his example his chiefest Commanders, shifte for themselues through the wide fields: God knoweth how the rest (pitifully affrighted) serued for a Butte or ayme to the Christians, who made no meane Massacre of the Moores, although they were twenty men to one Christian. So that vpon the account made, there remained slaine in the field Thirty Fiue Thousand Horsemen, and an Hundred and Threescore Thousand Foot-Soldiers, as it is written by *Dom Rodericke* of *Toledo*.

The wonderfull slaughter of the Moores, and paucity of the Christians.

Of the Christians were slaine but an Hundred and Fifteene men; among whom was not any of note, but three only, *Dom Dalmau de Crexell*, whom the Kings caused to bee buried in the Church of *Toledo*; *Dom Alphonso Fernandez de Valladares*, Commander of the Barre of the Order of Saint *Iames*; And *F. Pedro Gomez D'Alueyda*, Commander *Dez Cazez de Toledo*, Cornet of the Order of *Calatraua*. The Christians pursued the Moores so farre as to *Vilches*, hewing and cutting them still in pieces.

Considerations on this rare Victory.

This Victory was miraculous by all the circumstances. First, by the small number of Christians slaine in the Battaile, in regard and comparison of the Moores. Secondly, by the strange passage which the Heardsman shewed them. Thirdly, by a Crosse, which appeared in Heauen ouer the Christian Army (which Crosse was Red, finishing with foure Flower de luces, after the manner of the Order of *Calatraua.*) Fourthly, by the seuerall goings and returnings of the Chanon and Cabilcoll of *Toledo*, *Dominicke Paschall*, who bearing (according to the ancient custome of Primates) the Crosse of the Archbishop of *Toledo*, *Roderigo Ximenes*, a native of *Nauarre* (and such as obserued the particularities of this Battaile, wherein hee was with many Spanish and French Bishops) passed diuers times thwart the *Sarazin* Army, without receiuing any stroake or wound, albeit the staffe of the Crosse was shot full of Arrowes.

The diuers and arrowes shot at the Christians.

I haue seene in my time at *Toledo*, in the Chappell of Saint *Lucie* of the great Church, the Pictures drawne to the life of that *Chanon Paschall*, and of the Heardsmen, that shewed the passage to the Christians. The number of Lances and Arrowes darted at the Christians, was so great, that in two dayes of the Christian Armies reposing there; they had no other wood for Kitchin-seruice; beside, making great heapes and bundles of the remainder, in memory of a Battaile so worthy and famous.

During the two dayes, while the Army tarried in the Field of Battaile, *Dom Diego Lopez de Haro*, by consent of the three Kings, deuided the spoyles of the enemies Army.

Diuision made of the enemies spoyles among the best deserters.

To King *Sanchio* of *Nauarre* was giuen (without enuy) the honour of the Battaile, and to his Partakers the Chaines of the Palisado, by them so brauely forced, which hee caused to be brought to *Pampelona*, where one part of them is to bee seene in the Cathedrall Church, and at *Sancta Maria de Roncesuaux*. With these Chaines hee had the Tent and Pauilion of the *Miramomelin*.

The Riches of Gold and Siluer, as also the precious Stones, goodly Horses, rich Clothes of Silke and Gold; were diuided betweene the two Kings, and to all their Companies.

The Colonell of this Christian Army, was a Banner of Crimosine Silke, *charged d'vne Croix potencee de Ierusalem*, which *Gonfanon* or *Pennon* was blessed by the Pope, and deliuered to the Archbishop of *Toledo*, who carried it on the day of Battaile: After which fight, this Banner was fastened aloft in the Cathedrall Church, stretching from one side to the other.

The *Miramomelins* great Banner.

The great Banner of *Miramomelin*, was of Greene Silke, *A vne demy Lune ou Croissant, renuersee d'Argent, entoure de Cinque Estoiles d'Or.* And in the Orle or Border was this Deuice in Arabian Letters of Gold: *Allahil Alla Mehemet Ressule*, which is a Prayer of the Turkes: *God is God, and Mahomet his Great Prophet.*

The Men of the Borough of Saint *Sernin de Pampelona*, to note their valiant

behauiour, carried for Armes of their Citie, *Vne Escu de Synople au Croissant versé d'Argent à cinq Estoiles d'Or.* And the most auncient houses of *Pampelona*, haue retained them still to this day: to shew, that they deriued their descent from them, who won that Banner from the *Moores*.

The words of the Count of *Lanfarote*.

Sanchio the Strong, forsooke his auncient Banner, *Et por auer rompido in esta Batalla el Rey de Nauarra el Palenque de las Cadenas, tomo por Armas las Cadenas de oro en vneuesadas en campo de Sangre. And to preserue to posteritie, the memorie of the Battaile of* Tolosa, *wherein he brake the enchained Palissado of the Miramomelin*: Hee tooke *en Treillis compesé de Croix, Saultoire, Pauz, Fesses & Orle de Chaines d'Or en champ de Gueulles.*

King *Sanchio* gaue part of his Chaines, to his *Nauarre* Knights, and other Spanish Knights of his Battalion, who since that time, gaue ouer their auncient Armes, or else quartered them with Chaines: As yet to this day may be seene in the best houses of *Nauarre*, and the Prouinces in the Kingdomes of *Spaine*, all enriched with these Chaines, which serue for Enquirie.

Armes giuen and ordered according to this honorable victory, and carried afterward in memory thereof.

We will obserue some few, deriued from an infinite number of other, according as they are set downe by the Count of *Lanfarote*. *A imitation del Rey Dom Sancho de Nauarre, muchos de los Caualleros que se hallaran in la Batalla de Tolosa, vsaron por Armas la Deuisa de las Cadenas. De las quales se precian muchos linages. That in imitation, and by example of the King of Nauarre Dom Sanchio, many of the Knights, who were present at the Battaile de Nauas de Tolosa, tooke for Armes and Deuise, those Chaines; Armes, which in many most Noble Linages and Families in Spaine, doe hold as great Honour to them, and beare them to this present day.* Here follow a few, collected from an infinite number of other.

Don Garzia Romeu of *Arragon*, who before this Battaile, *Portoit d'Argent à vn Aigle de Sable*: tooke *De Gueulles à trois Pieux en Paux esleuez de dessus trois motes en poincte, & enchainez d'vne Chaine d'Or in Fesse.* The *Spanyards* call those Stakes or Piles of the *Palissado Estacas.*

Inigo de Mendoza Porta tranche de Gueulles à la Bande de Synople bordee d'Or, flanque de Gueulles a Vingt Pancilles d' Argent, & sur le tout en Saultoir & en Orle de Chaines d'Or. Armes retained by the *Mendozaes* and the *Hurtados* of *Mendoza.*

The *Mendozaes* of *Baesa Portent de Gueulles à la mesme Bande que dessus à l'Orle & Chaines d'Or.*

Inigo de Stuniga, and those of his descent, *Portent à la Bande de Sable, à l'Orle chargee d'vne Chaine componee de huict Chainons d'Or.*

They of *Mugnos* at *Baesa*, *Portent d'Or à la Croix de Calatraua de Gueulles, Escartelé d'Or à trois Fesses de Gueulles, à l'Orle de Gueulles chargee d'vne Chaine d'Or.*

Raymond de Peralta: De Gueulles au Griffon d'Or, à l'Orle de Gueulles à vne Chaine d'Or.

Alphonso Telles de Menesez, who before this Battaile bare but *Vne Escu d'Or*: afterward, *Le chargea d'vne Chaine en Bande d'Azur.*

Pedro Masa, descended of *Fortunio Masa*, a *Gascoigne* by originall, and who in the Battaile of *Alcoraz*, giuen against the *Moores*, in Anno One thousand foure score and sixteene, brought to the King of *Arragon* three hundred *Gascoignes*, armed with Battaile-Axes, to succour him, and whence that Noble Familie dwelling in *Arragon* tooke Sirname: *Pour Armes de Gueulles à vne Masse d'Armes mise en Pal, & adroussa deux Chesnes d'Or en Pal, & la Masse au mitan.*

Those of the Linage of *Abarca in Arragon* and *Nauarre*; *Portent d'Or à l'Orle, & la Bande de Chesnes d'Azur, à deux Galoches Eschiquettees d'Or & de Sable, l'vne in Chef au dernier Canton, & l'autre au Canton de la Poincte.*

They of *Villaseca*, *Portent de Synople à vne Muraille d'Argent, Bretessee de Sable en Pointe, au Bras armé d'Argent, tenant vne Banderole d'Or à l'Orle d'Or chargee de Tronçons de Chesnons rompus & attachez de deux en deux d'Azur.*

Those of the Ligne of *Otaco*, *Portent d'Or à vne Chaine de Sable mise en Bande.*

Those of *Arracaual*, or *Iracaual*, *Portent d'Azur à vne Chaine d'Or mise en Bande, à deux Coquilles de mesme; l'vne en Chef, & l'autre en poincte.* And

They of *Velma*, issued of the house of *Dom Diego Lopez de Haro*, Count of *Biscaye*; *Portent*

Portent de Haro, which is, as we haue formerly said, *D'Argent à vn Arbre de Sable, à Deux Loups trauerſez de Sable agueulez de deux Moutons de Gueulles, à la Bordure de Gueulles, chargee d'vne Chaine de huict Chainons d'Or.*

The Banner of the *Miramamolin* borne in many Coates of Armes.

In memory of the ſame Battaile, you may ſee in *Spaine* and *Nauarre*, an infinitie of Noble houſes, which beare in their Armes the Banner of the great *Miramamolin*, *A la Lune renuerſée d'Argent, & aux Eſtoiles d'Or*; and others full of Croſſes of diuers colours, and the moſt part of them finiſhing in Floures *de Luces*, by reaſon of that which appeared in Heauen, ouer the Chriſtian Armie the day of Battaile. And there are many Families, eſpecially in *Nauarre* and other places of *Spaine*, which beare in their Armes of diuers Mettals and Colours, *Floures de Luces* in *Croſſe*, in *Saultoir* and in *Orles*.

In *Nauarre*, they of *Naruaez*, iſſued from S. *Iohn Pied de Port*: *D'Argent Cinq Fleures de Lys d'Or en Saultoire.*

They of *Arze*, Lords of *Villarias*, *d'Or à cinq Fleures de Lys d'Azur en Saultoir, à l'Orle de deux Traicts Eſchiquetez d'Or & de Gueulles.*

They of *Maldonados*, *de Gueulles à Cinque Fleurs de Lys d'Or.*

They of *Flores*, *d'Azur à Cinq Fleurs de Lys d'Or.*

Thoſe of *Chirino*, the ſame; and other of the ſame Family in diuers places, *De Gueulles à Cinq Fleurs de Lys d'Or.*

For the *Spaniards* doe acknowledge, that the moſt famous houſes of Chriſtendome, are honored by the Armes of the Houſe of *France*, namely the *Floures de Luces*, Armes the moſt Authentique, that are renowned in Hiſtories. *La Deuiſa de la Flordelis tan fameſa, y eſtimada en la Chriſtiandad, es vna de las mas antiguas Deuiſes, de que tenemos noticia por Hiſtoria por auer vſado della Caſa Real de* Francia, *deſde los primeros Reys Chriſtianos que en ella vuo.*

The fauours and recompence giuen to the Prince Heardſman *Martin Alhaya.*

We will finiſh this Diſcourſe of *Nauarre*, with the recompence giuen to the Heardſman, that enſtructed the aſſured way to ſurprize thē *Moores*. He was named *Martin Alhaya*, who hauing giuen the vndoubted aſſurance, and direction for paſſing without any perill or danger, to the Lords *Diego Lopez de Haro*, and *Garcia Romu*, deputies for the Chriſtian Armie; found the Carkaſſe and head of a Cowe, deuoured but lately before by Woolues. The paſſage was therefore called *The Cowes Head*, in memorie whereof, King *Alphonſo* of *Leon* the ninth, Sirnamed the *Noble*, gaue the title of Nobilitie to this Heardſman *Martin*, whom he alſo ſirnamed *Cabeza de Vaca*, *The Cowes Head*. For Armes *Eſchiequette de Gueulles & d'Or de ſept pieces à la Bordure d'Azur, chargee de Six Teſtes de Vaches d'Argent.* Store of Lands were likewiſe giuen him, about *Baeſa* and *Iaen*. Of him are deſcended the Knights renowned for valiancie in the Hiſtories of *Spaine*, and namely *Dom Fernand Ruyz Cabeza de Vaca*, a Knight of high courage and aduentures, and who performed actions of admiration, in the ſuccour which he gaue to the King of *Caſtile Dom Ferdinand*, called the *Sainct*, for the ſurprizall and Conqueſt of *Cordoua*, wonne from the *Moores* of *Spaine*, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred thirtie ſixe, foure & twenty yeares after the Battaile of *Toloſa*.

The Cowes Head *Cabeza de Vaca.*

The

The Order of Saint Iames, tearmed of the *Sword*.

CHAP. V.

A Brieſe Hiſtorie of Prince Pelagius, *with the Race and Genealogie of him and his deſcending.*



Elagius, neere kinſman to the laſt King of the *Gothes Dom Roderigo*, drowned in the *Guadaleta*, after the Battaile wonne by the *Moores* at *Xeres de Medina Sidonia*, on Saint *Martins* day in Nouember, the yeare of Grace ſeauen hundred and foureteene, and of *Here de Ceſar Auguſtus* ſeauen hundred fiftie two: Saued himſelfe by better fortune, at the Mountaines of the *Aſtures*, where lying cloſe and ſecretly for ſome time; he auoided the firſt furie of the Ammirant *Muſa*, as alſo of Captaine *Tariffa*, who were Conquerors of *Spaine*.

Thoſe which remained of the naturall inhabitants of the *Aſtures*, were compelled (by the law of Warre) to obey the victorious *Arabes*, and to liue vnder their controle, vpon ſuch conditions as they would preſcribe to the vanquiſhed. *Pelagius* being an ingenious Prince, ſought to winne the amitie of *Mugnuſa*, naturally a *Spanyard*, but was made a Renegado, and ſo became Gouernour of *Gigion* in the *Aſtures*, for the Captaine *Tariffa*. This *Mugnuſa* well liking the ſeruices of *Pelagius*; made imployment of him in the charges belonging to the Prouince, during the ſpace of fiue whole yeares: at the end whereof, he was ſent to *Tariffa*, who remained then at *Cardon* or *Corduba*.

Pelagius wiſe and worthy Prince ſeeketh fauour with *Mugnuſa*.

During the abſence of *Pelagius*, *Mugnuſo* became enamoured of the Siſter to *Pelagius*, whom he tooke from her abiding, and conueighed to *Gigion*, vſing her there as his Loues Miſtreſſe. At his returne from *Corduba*, *Pelagius* impatiently offended for the rape of his Siſter; began to quicken his memory, with the practiſes and courſes of Count *Iulian*, to reuenge himſelfe by the like affront. Wherein hee tooke himſelfe to be much better grounded, then Count *Iulian* was: conſidering the contrariety of Religion, and vſurpation of the Lands in *Spaine* by Infidell *Moores*.

Pelagius offended at his Siſters wrong.

On the other ſide, although he had no ſubiect for vengeance, ſaue this onely vice (not proper to any, but a ſeruile deiected ſoule, vtter enemy to any vertuous act of courage: yet the Conqueſts of Prince *Garcia Ximenes*, King of *Nauarre*, ſerued him as a modell and cleare Looking glaſſe, for exciting him to ſome generous act of valour, whereby his Countrey be deliuered. Beſide, the right of Hoſpitality being direly conſidered, we ſtand obliged to keepe it ciuilly, eſpecially on their behalfe, which entertaine vs humainely in our aduerſities, were they Turkes, Pagans or Canibals, being vanquiſhed by the right of Religion, and the Charity which naturally we owe to our Country. All theſe conſiderations together, made Prince *Pelagius* reſolue, to declare himſelfe an enemy to the *Arabes*.

Former good examples are eſpecially encouragement.

So that hauing collected from the Towne of *Cangas*, and other round neighbouring parts of the *Aſtures*, a troupe of a thouſand fighting men: he was choſen to be their Captaine and Leader, in the yeare of Grace Seauen hundred and nineteene. Firſt he ouercame *Alchaman*, the *Affricane* Captaine, and twenty thouſand *Moores* (ſo ſay the Chroniclers of *Spaine*.) And not long after, to wit, in the yeare Seauen hundred twenty two: he conquered the Citie of *Leon*, called by the Romans *Legio Gemina*, builded by the Emperor *Traiane*.

The Conqueſts & fortunes of Prince *Pelagius*.

This Conqueſt of *Leon*, by Spaniſh Hiſtorians of good noate, is not attributed to *Pelagius*; who carried no other title, but *Prince d'Ouiedo*, called in Latine *Onetum*, and

and by a word of further time, *The Citie of Bishops*: becauſe after the ouerthrow of King *Rodericke*, the Biſhops of *Spaine* (with their goods and Shrines) repaired to this Citie, being of difficult acceſſe in the Mountaines of the *Aſtures*. The Succeſſours of *Pelagius* continued the ſame title of Princes *D'Ouiedo*, vntill the time of *Ordogne*, ſecond of the name, who hauing wonne the Citie of *Leon* from the *Moores*, tranſferred thither his Seate, ſtiling himſelfe King of *Leon*, where he cauſed to be builded the great Church of *Sancta Maria Maiore*. *Le Lyon rempant de Gueulles, en de Sable, en Champ d' Argent*, which is giuen to the Kings of *Leon* for Armes; belonged not to *Pelagius*, who is not knowne to haue any: as we are informed by *Ambroſius Morales*, and other good Spaniſh Authors. Wherein the Biſhop of *Burgos* confeſſeth his fault, who writeth, *Que el Rey Dom Pelago gagno à Leon, y vſo deſtas Armas: Pues qu'el Rey Dom Pelago, nunca fue Rey de Leon, ſino de Gixon, ni ſe ſabe de Armas que aye vſado en ſus Eſcudos.* *That the King* Dom Pelagius *wonne the Citie of Leon, whereof he tooke the Armes, is to ſmall purpoſe*, ſo ſaith *Morales*. *Becauſe the King* Dom Pelagius *was neuer King of Leon, but onely of Gigion*, and it is not knowne what Armes this King *Pelagius* bare in his Eſcutcheon: This *Molina* telleth vs, in the life of *Dom Henry* the third. And that they of *Gigion, Portoient en Armes d'Argent à Cinq Lions rempants de Gueulles en Saultoir, à l'Orle de Gueulles chargee de huict Saultoirs* (which the Spaniards call *Aſpas*) *d'Or*. Very true it is, that the Kings and Princes of *Gothia*, carried in Armes the Lyon rampant, as I haue ſeene a thouſand times in the Workes of *Olaus Magnus*, Vnckle and Nephew, both of them Biſhops of *Vpſala*, and Primates of *Gothia*. *Botherius* writeth likewiſe, that the firſt Kings of the *Gothes*, which paſſed into *Spaine*; *Portoient d'Argent au Lyon rempant de Sable*: And that one of the ſame is yet to be ſeene, on the Tombe of *Aſtolpho*, which is at *Barcelona*. There is great obſcurity in all theſe monuments, ſo that we neede the thred of *Theſeus*, to be diuided in ſeuerall Clewes, to guide vs out of theſe mazing Labyrinths. For, if we will credit *Ambroſe Morales*, he plainely tels vs, that the firſt Armes of the Kings of *Leon*, was *vne Croix Ancree d'Or, richement elabouree, ayant au nitan vn Ruby gros comme vne Chaſtaigne*. And that this Croſſe was brought by the Angels of Heauen, to the King of *Leon Dom Alphonſo* the Chaſte, in the yeare of Grace Eight hundred twentie ſixe. And the ſaid *Alphonſo* gaue that Croſſe to the Church of *Ouiedo*, where it is yet to this day. Alſo, that he tooke it for Armes, as, long time after him, did his Succeſſours in the Kingdome of *Leon*, who bare *D'Argent à ceſte Croix Ancree d'Or*; which is for further enquirie. But returne we now to

Pelagius called Prince D'Ouiedo.

The Armes of Pelagius not certainely knowne.

Richly wrought hauing a Rubie in the midſt, as great as a Cheſtnut.

The Hiſtorie proceeding on from Prince *Pelagius*.

1. *Pelagius*, who hauing reigned ſeauenteene yeares, died in the yeare of Grace, Seauen hundred thirtie ſixe: leauing a Sonne and a Daughter.

2. *Fafila*, who reigned but two years, and dyed, not hauing any iſſue: His Daughter was

3. *Ormeſinda*, wife to *Alphonſo*, firſt of the name, King of *Gigion*, and *Ouiedo*, Sonne to *Peter*, Count and Gouernour of part of *Biſcaye*, iſſued from *Recarede*, the firſt Orthodoxall or ſound beleeuing King of *Spaine*. Of this *Ormeſinda* enſued the cuſtome held in *Spaine*, that Daughters ſucceeded in the Crowne, through defect of male Children. Of this marriage of *Alphonſo* the firſt with *Ormeſinda*, came three Sonnes and one Daughter.

The firſt Orthodoxall Kings of Spaine.

Froila,
Vimarano, ſtabd by his Brother *Froila*. *Fraterno primi mæduerunt ſanguine mani.*
Aurelio. And
Odeſinda, wife to *Silo*.
Alphonſo had by a Concubine, a naturall Sonne, named
Mauregatho.

Alphonſon the firſt reigned nineteene yeares, and dyed in Anno Seauen hundred fiftie ſixe: Leauing for Succeſſour in the Kingdome his eldeſt Sonne

4. *Froila*, whoſe Reigne continued eleauen yeares and a halfe. By *Momerana* his wife, Daughter to *Eudes*, Duke of *Aquitaine*, he left two Sonnes, and one Daughter.

Alphonſo.
Bermundo: And
Ximena, Mother to *Bernardo del Carpio*. *Froila* died in the yeere, Seuen hundred, threeſcore, and eight, whereby his Brother

5. *Aurelio* ſucceeded in the Kingdome, by reaſon of his Brothers childrens minority in yeeres. He raigned but ſix yeeres, and dying without Iſſue, in Anno, Seuen hundred, threeſcore, and foureteene; he had for Succeſſour in the Kingdome of *Ouiedo*.

6. *Silo*, Husband to *Odeſinda*, Daughter to King *Alphonſo* the firſt. His Raigne was nine yeeres, and died without Iſſue: by his death, the Baſtard, or naturall Son

7. *Mauregatho* vſurped the Kingdome, which he held but fiue yeeres and a halfe, and died without any child, in the yeere, Seuen hundred, foureſcore and nine. This was he, who for the maintenance of his vſurpation, made himſelfe tributary to the Moores, of an hundred Maidens yeerely tribute, to wit, fifty of noble extraction, and the like number of meaner mens Daughters: Ambition to raigne, had throwne him into ſuch baſe and diſhoneſt bargaines. After him, raigned together

8. *Bermundo*, And *Alphonſo*. } Brethren, Sonnes of *Froila*.

Bermundo raigned two yeeres alone, and foure with his Brother. By *Imilona* his wife, hee left two Sonnes, very yonng in yeeres.

Ramiro: And
Garcia.

By the death of *Bermundo*, happening in the yeere, Seuen hundred, foureſcore, and fifteene; his Brother.

9. *Alphonſo*, called the Chaſte, ſecond of the name, raigned nine and twenty yeeres. He liued chaſtely with his wife *Bertha*, of whom hee neuer had carnall company. And this was the man, to whō the Angels brought the Croſſe, whereof before wee haue made mention. He deceaſed in the yeere of Grace, Eight hundred, twenty, foure: And had for his Succeſſours

10. *Ramiro*, And *Garcia*, } Sonnes to the King *Dom Bermundo*.

Ramiro out-liued his Brother ſix yeers in the Kingdome, and by *Vrraca* of *Caſtile* his wife, he had two Sonnes.

Fortunio, And
Garcia.

Ramiro died in the yeere eight hundred, thirty, and one, leauing for Succeſſour in the Kingdome, his eldeſt ſonne.

11. *Fortunio*, or *Ordogne*.

Who by *Mugna* his wife, had fiue Sonnes, and one Daughter.

Alphonſo,
Bermondo,
Nugno,
Odoacre: And
Froila.

As for the Daughter, ſhe is not named.

Ordogne Fortunio, dyed in the yeere eight hundred, forty, one, hauing raigned ten yeeres, leauing the Kingdome to his eldeſt Sonne.

12. *Alphonſo*, third of the name, whoſe Raigne continued forty ſixe yeeres: by *Ximenia* his wife, he left foure ſonnes.

Garcia,
Ordogne Fortunio,
Froila: And
Gonſales, the Arch-deacon.

By the death of *Alphonſo* the third, happening in the yeere eight hundred, foureſcore, and ſixe, his eldeſt Sonne.

13. *Garcia* ſucceeded in the Kingdome, who raigned but three yeeres, and hauing no Iſſue by his wife, the daughter to *Nugno Fernandez* of *Caſtile*, the Kingdome came to his Brother

14. *Ordogne Fortunio*, ſecond of the name, who raigned eight yeeres, and died in *Anno*, Eight hundred, foureſcore, and ſeuenteene. He had three wiues: By the firſt, named *Eluira*, hee had foure ſonnes, and one daughter.

Sancio,
Alphonſo, fourth King of the name.
Ramiro, ſecond King of the name.
Garcia: The Daughter was
Ximenia.

His ſecond wife, *Ragonda* of *Galicia*, was by him repudiated: and in third mariage, he eſpouſed *Sancia* of *Nauarre*. By theſe two wiues he left not any Iſſue, and by his death

15: *Froila*, ſecond of the name, ſonne to *Alphonſo* the third, vſurped the Kingdome, being ſirnamed the Cruell, who raigned but one yeere and a halfe: By *Mugna* his wife he left three Sonnes.

Alphonſo, King.
Ordogne Fortunio: And
Ramiro.

He had a Baſtard beſide, called by his owne name, Father to *Pelagius*, who was a Deacon.

16. *Alphonſo*, fourth of the name, ſecond

Sonne of *Ordogne* the ſecond, was King of *Ouiedo* and of *Leon*, who reigned ſixe yeares. By *Vrraca Ximena* of *Nauarre*, his wife, he left but one Sonne,

Ordogne Fortunio, Sirnamed the *Bad*.

By the death of *Alphonſo* the fourth, happening in the yeare nine hundred and foure, ſucceeded his Brother

17. *Ramiro*, ſecond of the name, who reigned twentie yeares. By *Thereza* of *Nauarre*, his wife, he had three Sonnes and a Daughter.

Bermondo.
Ordogne, King.
Sancio: And
Eluira, who was ſhorne a Nunne.

By the death of this *Ramiro* the ſecond, which was in the yeare of Grace Nine hundred twentie foure, the Kingdome came to his ſecond Sonne

18. *Ordogne*, third of the name, who reigned but fiue yeares. Hee had two Wiues, the firſt of them being called *Vrraca*, Daughter to *Ferdinando Gonſales*, Count of *Caſtile*, was diuorced.

By *Eluira* his ſecond wife, he had a Son named

Bermondo, ſecond King of his name.

19. *Sancio* ſucceeded in the Kingdome, after the death of King *Ordogne* the third his Father. He was ſirnamed the Groſſe, and his reigne endured but twelue yeares: for he died in the yeare, Nine hundred fortie one, leauing the Kingdome to his onely Son, which he had by his wife *Thereza*, named

20. *Ramiro*, third of the name, who reigned foure and twenty yeares. By his wife *Vrraca* he had no iſſue, and by his death, happening in the yeare Nine hundred threeſcore and fiue, the Kingdome came to

21. *Bermondo*, ſecond of the name, Sonne to King *Ordogne* the third, his reigne continuing ſeauenteene yeares. He had two Wiues, the firſt whereof was named *Velaſquita*, who was Mother to *Chriſtina* the wife of *Dom Ordogne* the Blinde. And of this marriage enſued a plentifull Linage, which may ſerue to vnderſtand the generall Hiſtorie of *Spaine*.

Alphonſe.
Ordogne.
Pelagius, and a Daughter named *Donna Adonca Ordognez*, wife to *Dom Pelagius*, ſirnamed the Deacon, Sonne of *Froila*, Baſtard Sonne to King *Froila* ſecond of the name. And by the marriage of this *Adoncia*, or *Aloncetta* of *Leon*, and *Pelagius* of *Leon*, were borne three Sonnes and one Daughter.

Pedro Ordogne.
Pelagius.
Nugno: And the Daughter
Thereſa, Mother to the Count of *Caſtile Dom Suero de Caſtro.*

The other wife of King *Bermondo*, ſecond of the name, was *Donna Eluira*, Mother of

Alphonſo the fift King: And of
Thereza, a religious Nunne.

He had moreouer a Son and a Daughter, by one or two Concubines.

Ordogno: And
Eluira.

Bermondo the ſecond dyed in the yeare of Grace, Nine hundred foureſcore and two: Leauing for Succeſſour his Sonne

22. *Alphonſo*, fift of the name, who reigned ſixe and forty yeares: And by his wife *Eluira*, Daughter to *Menlendo Gonſalez*, enſued a Sonne and a Daughter.

Bermondo: And
Sancia, wife to *Ferdinand* of *Nauarre*, the firſt King of *Caſtile.*

By the death of *Alphonſo* the fift, happening in the yeare of Grace One thouſand twenty eight, ſucceeded in the Kingdome his Sonne

23. *Bermondo*, third of the name, who reigned nine yeares: And by his wife *Thereza*, Daughter to *Sancio*, Count of *Caſtile*, he had but one Sonne

Alphonſo, who died very yong.

So that by the death of *Bermondo* the third, which was in the yeare One thouſand thirtie ſeauen, and leauing no iſſue; the Kingdome of *Leon* came to his Siſter

24. { *Sancia*, Wife to *Ferdinand.*

Firſt of the name, King of *Caſtile* (ſecond Sonne to the King of *Nauarre*, *Sancio* the Great) who created the County of *Caſtile* to be a Kingdome, as we haue elſewhere ſaid. By this marriage of *Sancia*, and *Ferdinand* firſt of the name, called the Saint, were borne in the life-time of *Bermondo* the third.

Vrraca.

Sancio,

Sancio, King of *Caſtile*, firſt of the name: And
Eluira.

After the death of King *Bermondo*, and in the ſame marriage, were borne

Alphonſo, King of *Leon*, ſixt of the name: And
Garcia.

The eldeſt of theſe two Brethren,

25. *Alphonſo*, ſixt of the name, was the fiue & twentith King of *Leon*, in the yeare One thouſand ſixtie ſeauen. He reigned one and fortie yeares in the ſaid Kingdome of *Leon*, and came to the Crown of *Caſtile*: Hauing had foure wiues; by the firſt whereof enſued

26. *Vrraca*, Queene of *Leon* and *Caſtile.*

She was twiſe married; firſt to *Raymond* of *Bourgongne*, of the Houſe of the Counts of *Bourgongne*, iſſuing from that of *France*. And this was the reaſon, why the ſaid *Raymond* bare, *D'Azur à trois fleurs de lys d'Or*, as the Counte of *Lanzarote* writeth in his Hiſtorie of *Andelouzia*, the firſt Booke, and hundred Chapter. The ſaid *Raymond* was made Count of *Galicia*: And of this marriage was borne

Alphonſo Raymond, King.

In ſecond marriage ſhee had to Huſband, *Alphonſo*, called ſeauenth of the name, King of *Leon*; of *Nauarre* by vſurpation, and of *Arragon* in his own right. With her he had but bad ſucceſſe, and no iſſue. The Sonne of the firſt marriage, was

Raymond.

27. *Alphonſo* of *Galicia*, eight of the name, exalted to be King of *Leon* (for the diſordered life of his Mother, before ſhe died) in the yeare One thouſand one hundred twentie two. Whoſe reigne laſted thirty fiue yeares. By his wife *Donna Berenguela*, daughter to the Count of *Barzelona*, he had many children, in number whereof was

28. *Ferdinand*, ſecond of the name, who in the right of his Mother, came to the Kingdome of *Leon*, the yeare of grace One thouſand one hundred fiftie ſeauen, and reigned thirtie one yeares. He married three wiues. By the firſt, *Vrraca*, *Infanta* of *Portugall*, he had

Alphonſo, King.

In ſecond marriage he eſpouſed *Thereza*, of the Houſe of *Lara*, deſcended from *Don Pedro de Lara*, one of the firſt Counts and Iudges of *Caſtile*: but by her he had no Childe.

His third wife was *Vrraca Lopez*: By whom he had two Sonnes.

Sancio Fernandez: And
Garcia.

29: *Alphonſo*, ninth of the name, eldeſt Son to *Ferdinand* the ſecond, was King of *Leon* by the death of his Father, happening in the yeare One thouſand one hundred eightie eight. The ſaid *Alphonſo* reigned two and fortie yeares, and in his reigne was fought the memorable Battaile of *Muradal*, otherwiſe called of *Toloſa*, whereof we haue related the particularities in the former diſcourſe. By his wife *Thereſa* of *Portugall*, he had one Son and two Daughters.

Ferdinando.
Sancia: And
Dulcina.

By his ſecond wife *Berenguela* of *Caſtile*, he had two Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

Ferdinando, King.
Alphonſo, Lord of *Molina.*
Conſtance, a Nunne. And
Berenguela, wife to the Count of *Brenne*, King of *Ieruſalem.*

And by a Concubine he had a Baſtard, named *Roderigo Alphonſo* of *Leon.*

30. *Ferdinand*, third of the name, was King of *Leon* by the death of his Father, which happened in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred and thirty. This was the ſame *Ferdinand*, who by aduiſe and counſell of his Mother, vſurped the Kingdome of *Caſtile*, which belonged to his eldeſt ſiſter Madam *Blanch* of *Caſtile*, Queene of *France*, Mother to the King Saint *Lewes*. For, by the marriage of *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtile*, called the Noble, fourth of the name, and *Elianor*, Daughter to *Henry*, ſecond of the name, King of *England*, were borne nine Children.

Blanche, Queene of *France*, Mother to Saint *Lewes* the ninth.
Berenguela, Queene of *Leon*, Mother *Ferdinand* the third.
Sancio, dying in his Infancie.
Vrraca, Queene of *Portugall.*
Ferdinand deceaſed yong.
Malſada, dying in her youth.
Conſtance a Nunne.
Leonora, Queene of *Arragon.*
Henry, firſt of the name, King of *Caſtile*,

ſtile, who reigned but three yeares, without hauing any iſſue by *Malfada* of *Portugal* his wife: from whom he was ſeperated by iudgement of the Church, Pope *Innocent* the third then ſitting in his holy Seate, becauſe they were married in the fourth degree of conſanguinitie.

Two Daughters more, dying in infancie.

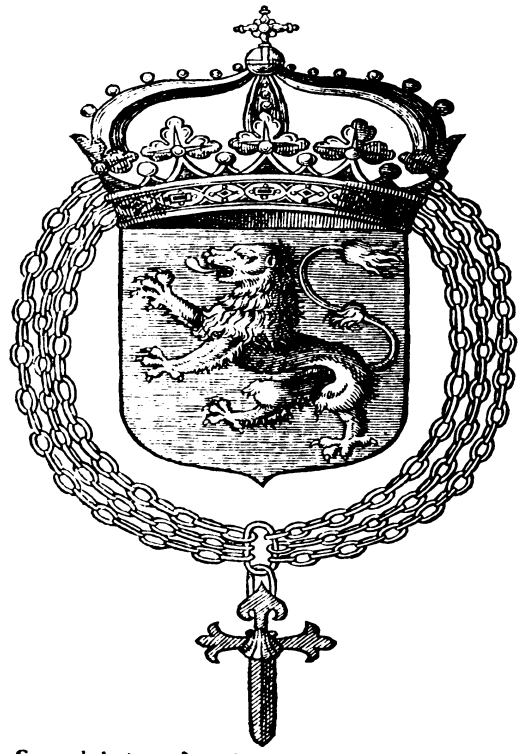
By the death of *Henry*, firſt of the name, King of *Caſtile*, *Ferdinand* King of *Leon* vſurped the Kingdome of *Caſtile*, againſt the Houſe of *France*. And in this *Ferdinand*, the Kingdomes of *Leon* and *Caſtile* remained conioyned and annexed together, without being any more deuided.

The reſt of the ſucceſſion and Genealogie of the Kings of *Leon*, is to be ſeene in that of *Caſtile*, in larger relation.

The Order of Saint Iames, called of the *Sword*; Inſtituted in the yeare One thouſand *One hundred fiftie and eight.*

L'Ordre de S. Iacques dit de L'Eſpee.

THe Count of *Lanſarote*, in the firſt Booke of his Hiſtorie of *Andalouzia* (Imprinted during my firſt voyage into *Spayne*, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred eighty eight) in the two and thirtieth Chapter, ſpeaking of the Inſtitution of Knights, of the Militarie Order of *Saint Iames* (the onely ſubiect of this Diſcourſe) auoucheth the beginning thereof to be, vnder the Reignes of *Alphonſo*, ninth of the name, King of *Caſtile*, and of *Ferdinand*, King of *Leon*. *El primer Lugar en eſta Hiſtoria tiene la de Sanctiago Patron de Eſpagna Cuyo principio de Religion, y Orden de Cauelleria fue ſiendo primer Maeſtre della Don Perez Fernandez Natural de Fuente Encalada, lugar del Obiſpado de Aſtorga, en tiempo de los Reyes Dom Alonſo el Noueno de Caſtilla, y Dom Fernando ſu Tio Rey de Leon. Siendo ſumo Pontifice Alexandro Tercero, que fue electo en el Anno de 1158.*



The words of the Count de Lanſarote.

The Order of Saint Iames, *Patron of Spaine, had for the firſt Great Maiſter thereof, Dom Perez Fernandez, a Native of Fuente Encalada, the place of the Countries bounds, and the Diocceſſe of Aſtergua: In the times of the Kings Dom Alphonſo the ninth of Caſtile, and of Ferdinand of Leon. And ſitting then in the Holy Seate at Rome, Pope* Alexander *third of the name, elected in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred fiftie eight.*

The make or noate of this Order, is the repreſentation of a Sword, being of Red Sattin imbrodered, and a Scallop-ſhell of the ſame vpon the

the ſaid Sword, which the Knights of this Order doe weare on their breſts, and on the left ſide. Now, why the ſaid Order is called *Of the Sword*, (tearmed in vulgar *Spaniſh Lagarto*) *Dom Roderick Ximenes* of *Nauarre*, Archbiſhop of *Toledo*, and Primate of *Spayne*, in the Seuenteenth Booke of his Chronicle, deliuereth the reaſon, concerning this deuiſe of Saint *Iames of the Sword*, & why it is of Red coulter, rather then any other.

Concerning the marke or noate of the Order.

Rubet Enſis Sanguine Arabum.

The Eſcutcheon of this Order, is *D'Or a l'Eſpee de Gueules, et la Coquille au mit.m de meſme.* And as for the Banner of Saint *Iames* in *Galicia*, it is in like manner *D'Or a la Croix Fleurdelizee de Gueules, Cantonnee de Quatre Coquilles, & d'vne au mitan de la diſte Croix, de Gueules.*

The Eſcutcheon of the Order.

Las Armas y Eſcudos de la miſma Orden, ſon la miſma Eſpada Roxa, con vna Venera in medio della, y el Campo de Oro: aunque en el Pendon las traen diferentes, que traen la Cruz Roja de Calatraua con cinque Veneras in Campo de Oro. Las Veneras ſon inſignias del Apoſtol, que vſan los peregrinos en los Sombreros en el Sancto Viage, quando lloganda a ſu Sancto Sepulchro las cogen en las orillas de el mar en teſtimonio de ſu Romeria. Aſsi como quando quan a Hieruſalem, trayan Palmas, de donde ſe Viniero a llamar Palmeros los Peregrinos.

The Armes and Eſcucheons of the ſame Order, are the ſame Red Sword, with a Scallop ſhell in the midſt, in a Field of Golde. It differs (neuertheleſſe) from the Banner of Saint Iames, *Which is* D Or, a la Croix de Calatraua de Gueules a Cinq Coquilles de meſmes. *Thoſe Scallops or Cockles are the Enſeignes and the markes of the Apoſtle Saint* Iames, *whereof Pilgrimes make vſe, in their Holy Voyage to the Sepulchre of the ſaid Apoſtle. They gather them on the Sea ſhoares, and faſten them in their Hattes or Hoodes, as a marke of their Pilgrimage, Like vnto them, that goe the great Voyage to* Ieruſalem, *and at their returning thence, doe bring Palmes with them. And this is the reaſon, why (in elder times) ſuch Pilgrimes were called Palmers, only in regard of their Palmes.*

Concerning the Great Maſters of Militarie Orders in *Spayne*.

Heere let it ſerue for a generall aduertiſement, that all the Great Maiſters of the Military Orders in *Spayne*, haue alwayes neere or about them, into any parts whereſoeuer they goe, be it in Peace or warre: Thirteene Knights Commanders, for their ayde and ſeruice, as alſo to aſſiſt them in Councell, being called *Los Trezes*. Which will well ſerue to vnderſtand the Hiſtories of *Spayne*, in deſcribing the Battailes and Encounters, wherein haue bin perſonally preſent, the Great Maiſters of the Orders, either of *Leon*, *Galicia*, Portugall or *Andalouzia*, Prouinces which were long time vnder the Hommage and authority of the Kingdome of *Leon*, ſending euermore thoſe Thirteene (as occaſions ſerued) to the ſaid Great Maiſters. In the deſcription of the Knights of the vanguarde, conducted by *Diego Lopez de Haro*, in the Battaile of *Muradall*, *Dom Pedro Arias*, Maiſter of Saint *Iames*, with the Knights of his Order. Among whom were *Garcia Gonſales de Candomio, Comendador Mayor de Leon. y Treze: Dom Fernan Perez Comendador y Treze: Ruy Gonſales de Manſilla, Comendador de l'Hoſpital de Toledo y Treze: y Fernan Garcia de Lerma Comendador de las Tiendas y Treze: y Dom Fernan Eſteuan de Villarruuia y Treze: Ruy Gutierrez de Villa Garcia Comendador de Montreall y Treze, &c.* All Knights of the Order of Saint *Iames*: which will guide any Gentleman, reading the Hiſtories of the Militarie Orders of *Spayne*, deſcribed by *Morales*, and *Radez d'Andrada*.

Diego Lopez de Haro in the Battaile of *Muradall*.

The Order of the Knights of *Saint Iames of the Sword*, tooke beginning in the Kingdome of *Galicia*, vnder the Homage of *Leon*, to ſecond the Monkes of Saint *Helie*, in the ſame Kingdome.

The Monkes of Saint *Helie* in *Galicia*, and their care of poore Pilgrimes.

Thoſe Monkes of Saint *Helie* in *Galicia*, perceiuing the great affluence of people, which dayly reſorted to Saint *Iames* of *Compoſtella* on Pilgrimage, and that the high wayes were impeached by the *Moores*, by which meanes, the poore Pilgrimes ſuſtained a thouſand miſeries: They builded Hoſpitalles, which might ſerue for houſe-roome and lodgings to the ſaid Pilgrimes of Saint *Iames*, to releeue, helpe and heale them, in the caſe of ſickneſſe or other diſtreſſes. The firſt Hoſpital which they builded, was that of S. *Marke* the Euangeliſt, in the Suburbs of the Citty of *Leon*. The ſecond, in the marches and limits of *Caſtille*, ſirnamed *De las Tiendas*: and afterward many other, on the great high way of S. *Iames*, which to this day is called *The Frenche Way*.

Buylding of Hoſpitalles.

Thirteene Gentlemen, mooued with zeale, and in meere Charity to the Monkes of Saint *Helie* of *Galicia*, who had done so much for the poore Pilgrimes of Saint *Iames* (taking this Apostle of *Spayne* to be their Patrone:) made sollemne vowes, to guarde the passages of the said *Frenche Way*, against the *Moores* and Robbers of *Spayne*. They communicated their purpose to the Monkes of Saint *Helie*, and fell to agreement, to make one *Corps du garde* among themselues.

The ioyning of thirteene Gentlemen with the Monkes.

The Monkes and their Priour should exercise all actions of Iustice, in Spirituall occasions, as well on the Knights, as Priests and Clearkes, admitted into the seruice of the said Order. But concerning the Knights, they had a Gouernour and Commander, a Great Maister, who had good knowledge in all Temporall occurrences, by whom was payed the Tenthes and other Rights, to the Monkes of Saint *Marke*. At the beginning of this Order, these Knights were not maried: but afterward, they had such permission graunted them.

The first Hospitall which these Knights of Saint *Iames* erected, was in the Suburbs of *Leon*, ioyning that there of Saint *Marke*, to the Monkes of Saint *Helie*, who gaue them the foundation whereon to build theirs. And the first Great Maister of this Order, was *Dom Pedro Fernandez de Puente-Encalada*, a braue and valiant Knight. Their habit was a Gowne and Hood white, on the breast a Crosse of Red cloth, finishing like the Blade of a Sworde, the Hilte therof Crosletted, and fashioned after the Auncient manner, with a Scallop of the same, on the closing of the Sword to the hilte: And thereupon they were called the Knights of Saint *Iames of the Sworde*. At the beginning they had their haire on their heads cut close, and their crownes shauen bare, like to the Monkes of Saint *Helie*: with whom they liued in common, & made their vowes of Chastity, Pouerty and Obedience; but they maried foone after, as hath bin said, and had their benefites seperate by themselues, the right of Tenths reserued for the Monks. Both the one and other kept & obserued the Rule of S. *Augustine*, in their profession.

Dom Pedro Fernandez, de Puente-Encalada the first Great Maister of S. *Iames*, & their *Habite*.

The First Great Maister of this Order *Dom Pedro*, accompanied with the number of his Knights, went to *Rome*, and presented himself before Pope *Alexander* the Third: who confirmed their Rule, in *Anno* 1175. the third of the Nones of *Inly*, approuing also what had bin disposed by Cardinall *Hyacinthe*, his Legat in *Spayne*.

The Great Maisters going to *Rome*,

These Knights came (soone after) into bad agreement with *Dom Ferdinand* King of *Leon*: who suspected them, to fauour the King of *Castille* his aduersary. So that they forsooke their Conuent of Saint *Marke* at *Leon*, and withdrew into *Castille*, where they were well entertained. *Dom Alphonso* gaue them the Towne and Castell of *Veles*, in Latine called *Vrcesia*, where they builded a Conuent; which they made the Chiefe of the Order. And because they would not loose the possession of S. *Marke* at *Leon*; they sent thither (from Chapter to Chapter) the Brethren of their Order (after the death of the King of *Leon Ferdinand*) to maintaine themselues in the possession therof. Neuertheless, at the charges of the Knights of *Leon*, and with prouiso, that they should acknowledge alwayes them of *Veles*, to be the chiefe men of the Order, as accordingly it was done for some time.

Prouident care for losse of no benefits.

But afterwards, they of Saint *Marke* at *Leon*, would no longer acknowledge them of *Veles* in *Castille* to be their Superiours; but made their faction apart, encreasing greatly in goods in *Extremadura*, a riche Prouince, conquered from the *Moores* by the Kings of *Leon*.

Two seuerall Houses, fallen factious,

This order of S. *Iames*, was established likewise in *Portugall*, where it attained to many Commanderies, confessing *Veles* to be chiefe of the Order: vntill the time of the King of *Portugall Dom Denys*, who would haue a Great Maister and Chiefe of the Order alone in his owne Kingdome, without any subiection to that of *Castill*.

The ability and power of these Knights.

These Knights of Saint *Iames* became wonderfull rich and plenteous: so that they could bring to the Field a Thousand compleate Launces, of *Veles* and *Leon*.

The Great Masters were chosen by the Thirteene Knights, Commanders of the said Order, and Gouernours thereof; who deposed them likewise, if occasion serued.

This Order hath more riches alone by it selfe, then all the rest in *Spayne* together: An infinity of dignities, Conuents, Monasteries, Hospitalles, Commanderies and Vicaredges. For, First of all.

The two Heads of the Order, are they of *Veles* and *Leon*.

Foure

Foure Hermitages, as namely
S. *Saluador des Monstiers*, neere to *Alme[sca]*.
S. *Maria de Cagnamanes*, in the field of *Momiell*.
S. *Maria de la Pegna*, neere to the Towne of *Segura*, on the Mountaines:
And
S. *Anthony de l'Alhambra*.
Two Colledges in the Vniuersity of *Salamanca*, and rich ones.
Sixe Monasteries of Nunnes, in title of Commanderies, where the first is.
Of the *Holy-Ghost* at *Salamanca*.
Of S. *Faith* at *Toledo*.
Of S. *Crosse* at *Vailledolid*.
Of S. *Iames* at *Granada*.
Of S. *Ollalia* at *Merida*:
And
Of S. *Iames* at *Iunquera* of *Barcenas*.

Fiue Hospitalles.

The First Saint *Iames* of *Toledo*, pertinulerly ordained for such, as haue the disease of *Naples*, brought by the *Spanyards* into *Italy*. They had taken it before, from the Negroes of *Pamphila* of *Narua*, which brought it into *Spayne*, from the Conquest of the West *Indiaes*, according to the testimony of *Spanish* Authors, in the *Indian* History.
The Second. S. *Iames* at *Cuenca*.
La Tiendas, in Olde *Castille*.
The Hospitall of S. *Marke* at *Leon*:
And
The Great Hospitall of *Veles*.
The Commaunderies are a very great number, Sometimes bound to furnish all Warres, which were made against the *Moores*, with Three hundred Threescore and Eight compleate Launces.
The Commanderies belonging to the Great Mastership of *Veles*, are
1. The Maior Commaunderie of *Castille*.
2. Secondly, that of *Paracuellos*.
3. *Monthernand*.
4. *Mora*.
5. *Los Barrios*.
6. *Montreal*.
7. *Horcaio*.
8. *El Corral de Almagner*.
9. *El Campo de Critana*.
10. *Alhambra*.
11. *Membrilla*.
12. *Montison*.
13. *Bedmar*.
14. *Vacas*.
15. *Segura de la Sierra*, the best Commaundery in all *Spaine*.
16. *Yeste*.
17. *Moratalla*.
18. *Caranaca*.
19. *Aledo*.
20. *Ricote*.
21. *Biedma*.
22. *Ciesa*.
23. *Soconos*.
24. *Torres*.
25. *Cagnamares*.
26. *Montiell*.
27. *Carrizosa*.
28. *Vilhermosa*.
29. *Villanueua de la Fuente*.
30. *Bastimens del Campo de Montiell*.
31. *Sacucellamos*.
32. *Villa-maior*.
33. *Villa-Escusa de Haro*.
34. *Bastimens de la Mancha*.
35. *The Riuer of Tayo*.
36. *Huelamo*.
37. *Oreia*.
38. *Estremera*.
39. *Sancta Croix de la Sarsa*.
40. *Villoria*.
41. *Villa Rania*.
42. *Alpages*.
43. The Priorie of *Veles*.
44. The Chamber of Priuiledges of the Order:
And
45. *Alorqui*.

Those which acknowledge the Iurisdiction of Saint *Marke* of *Leon*, are

1. The Maior Commanderie.
2. *Aquilareio*.
3. *Calcadilla*.
4. *La Puebla de Sancho Peres*.
5. *Los Santos*.
6. *Villa franca*.
7. *La fuente del Maëstre*.
8. *Almendralegio*.
9. *Lobon*.
10. *Montijo*.
11. *Merin*.
12. *Alcuescar*.
13. *Riuera*.
14. *Azebucha*.
15. *Hallame*.
16. *Elletiua*.
17. *Palomas*.
18. *Ornachos*.

19. *Reyna*

19. *Regna Hinoiosa.*
20. *Medina de las Torres.*
21. *Valentia del Ventoso.*
22. *Monasterio.*
23. *Montemolino.*
24. *Vsagra.*
25. *Azuaga.*
26. *Guadalcanal.*
27. *Mures.*
28. *Benacuza.*
29. *Estepa.*
30. *Las Casas de Corduba.*
31. *Les Bastiments de la Province de Leon.*
32. The Priorie of the Conuent of *Leon*.
33. *Villa-nueua d'Alisear.*
34. *Venamext:* And
35. *La preuoste de Bienuenida.*

In Olde *Castile* are

1. *Pegna.*
2. *Vsenda.*
3. *Estriana:* And
4. *Castrotorana.*

Beside which are the Commenderies

5. *De la Torre d'Ocagne.*
6. *Sarca.*
7. *Meranall.*
8. *Castelleia de la Cuesta.*
9. *Barra:* And
10. *Castrouerde.*

In the Kingdome of *Valentia* are the Commanders of

1. *Museros.*
2. *Enguerra.*
3. *Orcheta.*
4. *Sagra.*
5. *Zenet:* And
6. *Tradelle.*

The Knights and other beside of the Order.

This Order (without accounting the Kingdome of *Portugall*) hath more then Sixe hundred Knights, Which weare the habite of Saint *Iames*; beside the Commanderi s and Dignities: More then two hundred Brethren, Clearkes at Masse, and others, which haue actuall residence in the Conuents, Vicaredges and other Benefices of the said Order. There are many Great Lords of *Spayne*, who hold it great Honour to them, to weare the habite of Saint *Iames*, although without any Commaunderies. The Emperour *Charles* the Fift, to acknowledge the great seruices, which hee had receiued by the braue Knight *Dom Ferdinando Cortes* Marqueese of *Val*, who Conquered the great Citty of *Mexico*, and her rich Prince *Motecumacin*: Had this habite of Saint *Iames* presented him, which he refused, except he had a Commanderie of the said Order.

The Emperour *Charles* the Fifte did weare the habite of this Order.

Which was instituted, to make Warres vpon the *Moores*, who (in those times) ouer awed *Spayne*: but now since they are vtterly dislodged thence, the subiect of this Institution wanteth and ceaseth. Pope *Adrian* the Sixt incorporated the Great Maistership of this Order to the Crowne of *Castille*, by the death of the last Great Maister *Alphonso de Cardegna*. This annexion was made in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred ninety and three, So that since then, the Kings of *Spayne* haue bin perpetuall Administratours of the said order of *Saint Iames of the Sword*, and so continue.

The Order annexed to the Crowne as other were.

This Order encreased as well in *Portugall*, as in *Leon* and *Castille*. *Sancio*, First of the name, and Second King of *Portugall*, imparted to them the bootie, which he had conquered from the *Moores*, and gaue them of his owne demaines. The head bootie of the Order of Knights, belonging to Saint *Iames* of the *Sworde* in *Portugall*, was lands giuen by the said *Sancio* the First, as namely, *Alcazar de Sal*, *Palmela* and *Almada*, which neuerthelesse were but simple Commanderies, and acknowledged for Great Maister and Chiefe of the Order, him of *Veles* in *Castille*: which was so continued, vntill the reigne of *Dom Denys*, the Sixt, King of *Portugall* (Institutour of the Order of *Christus*) who exempted the Knights of Saint *Iames* of *Portugall*, from obedience and subiection to the Great Maister of *Castille*, and would needes ordaine, that *Alcazar de Sal*, (for alwayes after) should bee Chiefe of the Order; which yet notwithstanding, was (since then) transferred from *Alcazar* to *Palmela*.

King *Sancio* his bounty to this Order.

Iacques de Vitry, in the sixe and twenty Chapter of his Occidentall History, writeth that the auncient Seale, belonging to the Counsell and Chapter of this Order, was composed with a Sword in the midst, hauing on the right side a Sunne, and a Creseent on the other, and for the Legend: *Sello de la Cauallcria de Sanct Iago*: But that

Of the Seale belonging to the Counsell and Chapter of this Order.

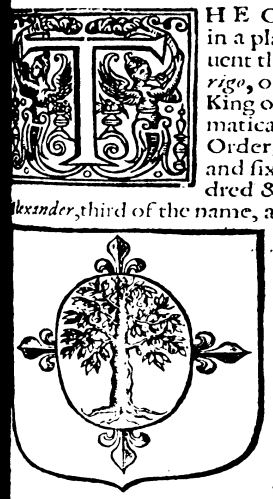
that of the Moderne, had a Crosse Fleurdlized in Sealing and counter-sealing, which I neuer read in any of the Histories of *Spaine*. The Count of *Lansarote* indeede maketh mention, of the Conquest of the Castell of *Vilches*, performed against the *Moores* in a day and a night, immediately after the Battaile of *Vbeda*, wonne by the three Kings of *Nauarre*, *Leon* and *Arragon*. Which place was held to be impregnable, and therefore the three Kings went thither with the Christian Armie. Although it was seated on an inaccessible Rocke, free from Sealing or vndermining; yet it was wonne by an *Hidalgo*, belonging to the Great Maister of *Calatrana*, *Dom Roderigo de Ast*, who was the first that mounted on the Wall, and fixed downe there the Standard of *Castile*. To whom, for hauing so valiantly besiedged the place, and for becomming Master thereof in a night and a day: the King gaue him for Armes *L'Escu d'Azur a vn Soleil d'Or entoure d'Estoiles de mesme: Et dans le Rond dudict Soleil, de Castille, party de Leon.* Armes retained by the descendants of that *Hidalgo*; which yet maketh nothing to this purpose.

A *Hidalgo* belonging to the Great Master of *Calatrana*, first mounted on the Wall.

The Order of Saint Iulian, called of the *Peare-Tree*; Instituted in the Kingdome of *Leon*, in the yeare One thousand one hundred threescore and seauenteene.

CHAP. V.

THE Order of Saint *Iulian* of the *Peare-Tree*, was Instituted in a place called *Pereiro*, the principall Monastery and Conuent thereof, seated foure Spanish miles from *Ciudad Rodorigo*, on the Riuer of *Coa*. *Ferdinand*, second of the name, King of *Leon*, and of *Galicia*, by his Ordonance and Pragmatical Sanction, made himselfe Patron or Protector of this Order, in the yeare One thousand one hundred threescore and sixteene. The yeere following, One thousand one hundred & seauenteene. The said Order was approued by Pope *Alexander*, third of the name, at the request and supplication of *Dom Gomez Fernandez*, who was the first great Maister of the said Order, calling himselfe Priour. Pope *Lucius* the third, confirmed it likewise, in the yeare One thousand one hundred fourescore and three, and exempted it from subiection to the Bishopricks Diocesse. The second Great Maister of this Order, was *Benoit Suarez*, who obtained a new confirmation of Pope *Innocent* the third, dated in the yeare, One thousand two hundred and fiue. The first Armes of this Order was *L'Escu d'Or, à la Croix Fleurdelisee de Synople, chargee en Cœur d'vn Escu d'Or au Poirier de Synople.* The Knights of this Order, kept both the name and the Armes of the *Peare-Tree*; vntill they went to dwell in a place called *Alcantara*, as wee intend presently further to shew you.



L'Ordre de S. Iulian Du Poirier.

The Citie of *Roderigo*.

Ferdinand King of *Leon* Protector of the Order.

The

The Order of Alcantara; Instituted in the Kingdome of *Leon*, and in the yeare One thousand two hundred and foureteene.

L'Ordre D'Alcantara.

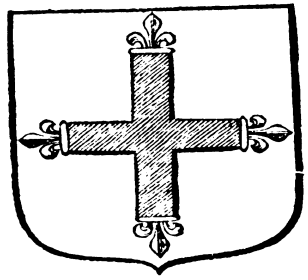
CHAP. VI.

Alcantara beſieged by King *Alphonſo* the ninth.

AFter the Battaile of *Muradall*, wonne against the *Moores* (as we haue formerly declared, when we ended the diſcourſe concerning the Order of *Nauarre*) *Alphonſo* the ninth, King of *Leon*, went to beſiedge the Citie of *Alcantara*, famouſly renowned for her goodly Bridge, erected ouer the Riuer of *Tayo* (in Latine called *Tagus*) vpon the marches of *Portugall* and *Leon*. He became Maiſter thereof, hauing conquered the Moores, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred and thirteene: And gaue the guard thereof to *Dom Martin Fernandez de Quintana*, who was the twelfth Great Maiſter of the Order of *Calatraua*.

About fiue yeares after, this place was giuen by them of *Calatraua*, to *Nugno Fernandez*, third Great Maiſter *Of the Order of Saint Iulian of the Peare-Tree*, and to the Knights his Bretheren and Companions: who by the reaſon of this change, forſooke their auncient appellation, and ſtiled themſelues *Knights of Alcantara*, whereto from the beginning they were vnder obedience and ſubiection. At the firſt they were vſed to weare a kinde of Scarfe, or Band of Red Colour, containing about three or foure fingers in breadth, vpon their white Scapularie. And within a while after, *A Greene Croſſe Flourdeluced*; but corrected and diſallowed by the Maiſters of *Calatraua*.

The Knights of S. *Iulian* became Knights of *Alcantara*.



The firſt Great Maiſter of *Alcantara*.

He that firſt tooke the name of *Alcantara*, was Don *Diego Sancio*, fourth Great Maiſter *De Perrero*, in the time of Pope *Lucius*, ſecond of the name, and in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred and eleauen. They exempted themſelues from obedience to them of *Calatraua*, forſaking their firſt Armes of the *Peare-Tree*; and wore the *Greene Croſſe Flourdeluced* vpon their breſts, towards the left ſhoulder, and vpon their Scapularie, according to the rule of the *Ciſteaux*, whereof they made profeſſion, but liued vnder the Order of Saint *Benedict*. As yet, euen to this day, the Nouices of this Order, on the dayes when they obſerue their Feaſt of Eaſter; they weare the Scapularie, and long Hood of White Tamine. At the firſt they made profeſſion of Chaſtitie, vntill the Pontificalitie of Pope *Paule* the fourth: who permitted them to marrie, as they did of *Calatraua*.

Here may you ſee the very words of the profeſſion of thoſe Nouices, that are of this Order.

The profeſſion made by the Nouices of this Order.

Domine Frater N. Ego N. Miles Ordinis Alcantaræ facio Deo, & Domino Magiſtro, &
Vobis qui estis nomine hic iſtis, & promitto vobis Obedientiam, Caſtitatem coniugalem, &
Conuerſionem morum meorum de bene in melius, omni tempore vitæ meæ vſque ad
tem, ſecundum regulam Sancti Benedicti, & modum viuendi conceſſum huic Ordini
Alcantara.

Maiſter and Brother N. I. N. Knight of the Order of Alcantara, make to God, and
you Maiſter, and to you that are here in his name; to you all, I promiſe Obedience, Conuer
Chaſtitie.

ſion of mine owne manners, from good to better, all my life time, euen till death: Accor-
to the Rule of Saint Benedict.

Of this Order maketh mention the Count of *Lanſarote*. *Deſpues el Anno* 1218.

The Count of Lanſarote's relation.

nio tra[n]ſadada à la Villa de Alcantara, que les dio la Orden de Calatraua y ſu Maeſtre
Don Martin Fernandez à los Freyles d'ella y à ſu Maeſtre Don Nunno Fernandez, con tal
dicion, que ſu Orden fueſſe viſitada, y corregida por el Maeſtre de Calatraua, y Sus
ceſſores para ſiempre, y ſellamo de Alcantara, y traxeron la Cruz Floreteada Verde,
Quel ſoron por Armas en Campo de Oro.

Don Iuan d'Eſtauana.

eſter the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred and Eighteene, when the Order of Cala-
aua was tranſlated to the City of Alcantara, *then was Maiſter of the Brethren Don*
Martin Ferdinandez. And afterward became Maiſter Dom Nunno Fernandez, *with*
ſh condition, that the Order ſhould be viſited and corrected by the Maiſter of Calatraua,
his Succeſſours for euer, being at Alcantara, and ſhall weare the Greene Croſſe Flour-
deluced (which they ſhall vſe for Armes) in a Field Gold.

Don Iuan of Auſtria Great Maiſter of Calatraua.

The laſt Great Maiſter of *Alcantara*, was *Dom Iuan d'Eſtauana*, made Archbiſhop and Cardinall, and working his promotion to ſuch dignities: hee diuiſted him ſelfe from the Great Maiſterſhip of this Order, which had betweene fortie and fifty thouſand Ducates of Rents. And by this diſmiſſion made in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and fifteene; Pope *Alexander*, ſixt of the name, *Spaniard* borne in *Valentia* in the Kingdome of *Arragon*, vnited and annexed this great Maiſterſhip to the Crowne of *Caſtile*, in fauour of King *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, and Queene *Iſabel* his wife. And euer ſince that time, the Kings of *Spaine* haue enioyed the Reuennewes of the Commanderies, belonging to the *Order of Saint Iames of the Sword*, of *Calatraua* and *Alcantara*, whereof they are entitled, and named *Perpetuall Adminiſtratours*.

The Order of Calatraua, Inſtituted in the Kingdome of *Caſtile*, in the yeare One thouſand one hundred fiftie eight.

L'Ordre de Calatraua.

CHAP. VII.

The Originall of the Kingdome of Caſtile.

Caſtile and *Leon* ioyned at firſt by Ingeſt Counts.

Caſtile is a Prouince, which in former times was ſubiected to the auncient Kings of *Leon*; and which being enlarged or augmented by them of *Portugall* and *Galicia*, ſoone after became erected into Kingdomes. Both the one & the other were gouerned by Iudges at the firſt; and the firſt of them of *Caſtile*, had the name of Counts, who are no other then Iudges. *Nugno Belchides*, or *Belides*, a *Germaine* Gentleman, and a Native of *Cologne*, deſirous to fight againſt the Moores (as hath bin reported to vs) made his voyage to *Spaine*; where he eſpouſed *Donna Sola*, Daughter to the Count and Iudge *Diego Porcelos*, about the yeare of Grace, eight hundred foureſcore and foure.



Concerning the firſt Count of *Burgos*.

It is the opinion and perſwaſion of the *Spaniards*, that this *Diego Porcelos*, was deſcended from *Begorre*, and that they which went to the Conqueſt of *Nauar*, with the King *Dom Garcia Ximenes*: in time alſo afterward conquered the Citie of *Burgos*, in the elder *Caſtile*. In memory whereof, the Predeceſſours of the ſaid *Dom Diego Porcelos*, *Porterent de Sebrarbre, qui*
d'Or au Cheſne de Synople, à la Croix pommettee de Gueulles en Chef, & en pointe vne
aye, ou Truye de Sable (firſt Armes of this Noble Houſe) *ſur vne motte de Synople.*

In

Looke in the Tract of *Nauarre*.

In this Marriage of *Nugno Belchides*, with *Donna Sola*, were borne the Childr formerly remembred, as namely of *Cid Ruis*; who in like manner was Iudge of C *ſtile*, as had beene before him his Predeceſſors *Nugno Nugnez Raſura*, & *Laun Ca* great Lords renowned in the Chronicles of Spaine. Which report, that for t

Leon Froila a Tirant,

cruelty of *Leon Froila*, Second of the name, the Inhabitants of old *Caſtile* reuol from their obedience to him, and eſtabliſhed Iudges to rule ouer them, in the ye Eight Hundred, Foure Score and Sixteene, after a Battaile wonne by the *Moors* the *Val de Iunquera*, againſt the Chriſtians in the ſame yeare. And that the two

The two firſt Iudges of *Caſtile*.

Iudges of *Caſtile*, were

Nugno Raſurez: And

Layn Caluo.

Bat the laſt man of theſe named, gouerned the Martiall and Warre-affaires; the other exerciſed the occaſions of Iuſtice.

The firſt Count of *Caſtile*.

It is a matter certaine and aſſured, that *Dom Alphonſo*, Sixt of the name, King *Leon*, married *Donna Vrraca* his Daughter, to *Raymond* of *Bourgongne*, of the Roy Houſe of France, whom hee eſtabliſhed the firſt Gouernour and Count of *Caſ* So ſaith one, approuing him to beare the ſaid Title of Count, and bare alſo (as haue ſaid) *D'Azur à Trois Fleurs de Lys d'Or*. Which is beſt without number, cauſe the Shield or Eſcutcheon of the Sacred and holy Kingdome of France, neuer reduced to this Ternary or true number; but at the ending of the Reigne King *Charles*, Fift of the Name, called the *Wiſe*, or the beginning of his Sonne Reigne *Charles* the Sixt.

In this Marriage of this *Raymond* of *Bourgongne*, and *Donna Vrraca*, the *Infanta Leon*, was borne their Sonne

Alphonſo Raymond, King of *Leon* and of *Caſtile*, as it is affirmed.

Dom Vela, Second Count of *Caſtile*.

The Second Count of *Caſtile*, eſtabliſhed by the ſaid *Dom Alphonſo* the Sixt; w the Count *Dom Vela*, who peopled *Salamanca*, and who by being iſſued of the hou of *Barcellona*, *Portoit d'Or à Quatre Paulx de Gueules, à l'Orle & la Bordure d'Az Chargee de Huict Croix de Hieruſalem*. Becauſe hee made one in the Voyage to Holy Land: And of this *Dom Vela*, deſcended in Spaine, the Families and Linag of the *Roderigoes*.

The Third Count, *Dom Suero de Caſtro*.

Dom Suero de Caſtro was the Third Count, being deſcended of the Ligne of *Nug Belchides*, by *Dom Diego Lainez*, who peopled *Pegnafiell* in *Caſtile*, one of the Seigni nies belonging to the Crowne of *Nauarre*. This *Suero de Caſtro*, *Portoit d'Argen Six Tourteaus d'Azur mis en Paulx*.

Dom Oſorio de Campos, fourth Count.

The Fourth Count was *Dom Oſorio de Campos*, of whom are deſcended the Fam lies of *Villalobos*, and the *Oſorios*. This Count *Portoit d'Or à deux Loups, ayants les yeu creuez de Gueules*.

The Fift Count.

Dom Roderigo Ruy Gonſales Giron was the Fift Count who peopled *Valladolid*, be iſſued of the Family of the *Oſneros*, of whom deſcended the *Girons*. His Armes *D'Or à trois Girons, endenchez de Gueulles en Pal, à la Bordure Eſchequee d'Or & Gueules de deux Traicts*.

The Sixt Count.

The Sixt was the Count *Dom Pedro de Lara*; *Qui Portoit de Gueules à deux Chan eres faſſees d'Or & de Sable, & à chacun des ances huict teſtes de Serpents de Sym* This *de Lara* was elected Iudge of *Caſtile*, about the yeare, One Thouſand, One H dred.

The Antiquity of the Houſe of *Lara*.

This Ligne of the firſt Iudges or Counts of *Caſtile*, is very much intricated, a that which now wee haue ſpoken of, is drawne from the Hiſtory of the Count *Lanſarote*, a very diligent Antiquary. *Qui Portoit en Armes de Gueules à la Cro* *vairee, au Cimier d'vne Tour d'Argent Maſonnee de Sable ſommee d'vn Cauallier Sainct Iacques de l'Eſpee, tenant ſon Coutelas d'Argent, à la Garde doree de la main dro & de l'autre vn Teſte de More de Sable*.

Authors of beſt credit are to be followed in the Hiſtory of Spaine.

The Chronicles of Spain, which they call a Generall Hiſtory, are full of repo and Diſcourſes (for the moſt part) without any heedfull reſpect. The diligent ſe ches for matters of truth, are to be found in the Roules & Treaſuries of the Crow Royall, Audiences, and Monaſteries of ancient Foundation. *Stephen Garibay*, *breſe de Morales*, *Ieronimo Surita*, *Argoto de Molina*, and the like Authors, of we quali

ualified and good temper, flye in another Ayre, and with a fairer wing ur by following the common high road way, what can be ſaid of ſuch dire ion?

The Countie of *Caſtile*, being rendered Soueraigne; *Gonſalés Nugnes* Iudge of *Ca ile*, eſpouſed *Donna Ximenia*, Daughter to Count *Nugno Fernandes*, ſlaine by the ing *Dom Ordogne*: Of which marriage was borne *Gonſalues*, firſt Count proprieta or owner of *Caſtile*. *Sancio*, firſt of the name, the nineteenth King of *Leon*, made generall aſſembly at *Leon*, to intrap there (cunningly) ſuch as had combuſted his ate, while he was gone to take better order for *Cordoua*. *Fernand Gonſales* (for whom e plot was perticularly prepared) went thither ſo well accompanied, as *Sancio* was ompelled to ſtrike faile. Among other things which *Gonſales* had, was a Horſe of oodly ſhape and pace, and likewiſe a Hauke, which all *Spaine* could not yeelde other of fairer flight. *Sancio* grew deſirous to haue theſe two creatures, at any price paiment whatſoeuer, but was no way willing to haue them by gift, becauſe he ould not ſtand beholding to their Maiſter. The King and he concluded on ſale the Gennet and Hauke at a certaine price, payable within ſuch a time as they d agreed on. Which being paſt with want of paiment, the couenanted ſumme ould then double euery day, vntill the time of actuall paiment. His Treaſurers gleſting to diſcharge the dues, the Count (a long while after the tearme was ex red) demanded his money, and the vſance agreed on. The account of the prin pall being ſummed vp, and the daily profit thereon depending; the whole ac unt amounted to ſo high a rate, as all the Treaſures of the King of *Leon* were t ſufficient to make full paiment. Which when King *Sancio* had well conſidered , to auoide further prolonging, and to be acquitted of his whole debt to the ount: he left *Caſtile* to him in free proprietie, and diſcharged him likewiſe for llowing times, of all Hommage, Prerogatiue and Iuriſdiction, any way claime le by the Crowne of *Leon*, but ſtood fully releaſed thereof before-hand. And from nce tooke beginning the Soueraignty of *Caſtile*, which happened in the yeare of race, Nine hundred threeſcore and five.

A traine prouided for *Ferdinand Gonſales*.

Caſtile fully acquitted and ſurrendred to the Count.

We haue obſerued in the Treatiſe of *Nauarre*, that King *Sancio* the Great, who led himſelfe Emperour of the *Spaines*, had to wife *Donna Nugna*, Daughter to ncio Garcia, ſecond Sonne to *Garcia Fernandez*, Sonne to *Ferdinand Gonſales*, ſt Count proprietarie of *Caſtile*. This *Donna Nugna*, by the death of *Garcia* her rother (ſlaine in the Citie of *Leon*, and neuer married) was Counteſſe of *Caſtile*: hich *Sancio* the Great created to be a Kingdome, and gaue it as an Appennage and ortion to their ſecond Sonne.

Sancio the Great, Emperour of the *Spaines*.

Ferdinand the firſt King of *Caſtile*.

I. *Ferdinand*, firſt King of *Caſtile*, the yeare of Grace, One thouſand irtie foure. Hee was likewiſe King *Leon*, in regard of his wife *Donna San* , Siſter to the King of *Leon Dom Ber nd*, third of the name. And in this arriage were borne (according as we ee haue noated in the Genealogie of *eon*)

Vrraca.

Sancio Fernandez, King of *Caſtile*.

Elmira.

Alphonſo, King of *Leon*, ſixt of the ame: And

Garcia.

II. *Sancio Fernandez* was the ſecond ing of *Caſtile*, ſecond of the name, hau g reſpect to the Count proprietarie *Caſtile Sancio Garcia*, his Great randfather. Hee reigned no more then ſixe yeares, or thereabout, and by his death (happening without iſſue) his Brother

III. *Alphonſo*, King of *Leon*, was the third King of *Caſtile*, firſt of the name, and ſixt of *Leon*: who reigned thirtie fiue yeares, lacking three or foure moneths. He was married ſixe ſe uerall times. By his firſt wife *Agnes*, he had not any iſſue. By his ſecond wife *Conſtance*, he had

Vrraca, Queene of *Caſtile*, wife to *Raymond* of *Bourgongne*, her firſt Huſ band, by whom ſhee had a Sonne and a Daughter.

Alphonſo Raymond, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*: And

Sancia.

His third Wife was lame, named *Mary*, a Moore by Nation, by whom he had

had a Son named
Sancio.
His Fourth Wife was *Bertha*, an *Italian*, by whom he had not any Issue.
His Fift Wife was *Isabell* a Spanish Lady, by whom hee had two Daughters
Sancia; And
Eluira, Queene of *Naples.*
His Sixt Wife was *Beatrix*, a Natiue of France, and by her hee had not any Childe.
Hee had also two Concubines, the last whereof is not named; but the first was called *Ximenia Nugnez de Guzman*, and by her he had two Daughters.
Eluira, Countesse of *Tolosa*; And
Theresa, First Countesse of *Portugall.*
By the death of this *Alphonso*, happening in the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, and Eight, or thereabout.
IIII. *Vrraca*, his Eldest Daughter was Queene of *Leon* and *Castile*, and in right of her, her Second Husband
Alhonso, King of *Castile*, Second of the Name, and of *Leon* the Seauenth, Vsurper of the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, as we haue formerly said, who deceased without Issue.
The Castilians expulsed the said Queene *Vrraca*, for her wicked life, and elected for their King her Sonne
V. *Alphonso Raymond*, (Sonne to *Raymond* of *Bourgongne*) Third of the name, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, Eight of the name, who began to reigne in the yeare One Thousand, One Hundred, Twenty and Two. By *Berenguela* his first Wife, Daughter to *Dom Raymond Arnauld*, Count of *Barcelona*, he had
Sancio, King of *Castile.*
Ferdinand, King of *Leon.*
Constance, Queene of *France.*
Sancia, Queene of *Nauarre:* And
Garcia.
By his Second Wife *Rica*, of the House of *Suaba* in *Germany*, he had one Daugher
Sancia, Queene of *Arragon.*
By *Mary* his Concubine, he had
Esteuaneta, Wife to *Ferdinand Roderigues*: And of this Marriage was borne *Pero Fernandez de Castro*, First Knight Of the Order of the *Bande.*
By an other Concubine, *Gontruda*, Sister to *Diego d'Apricio*, he had
Vrraca, who was Queene of *Nauarre.*
By the death of the said *Alphonso Raymond*, happening in the yeare, One Thousand, One Hundred, Fifty Seauen his Eldest Sonne
VI. *Sancio* was the Sixt King of *Castile*, Second of the name; who by *Blanche* of *Nauarre* his Wife, had one only Sonne
VII. *Alphonso*, King of *Castile*, Fourth of the name (by the death of his Father who reigned but two yeares) his Reigne extended to Fiue and Fifty yeares. And by *Eleanor*, Daughter to the King of England *Henry*, Second of the name, he had
Blanche, Queene of France, Mother to Saint *Lewes*, Heyre of *Castile.*
Berenguela, Queene of *Leon.*
Sancio, died an Infant.
Vrraca, Queene of *Portugall.*
Malfada, died a Nunne.
Constance, a Nunne.
Eleanor, Queene of *Arragon.*
Henry, King of *Castile*; And
Two Daughters that died in their Infancie.
This *Alphonso* dyed in the yeare One Thousand, Two Hundred & Fourteene and after him succeeded his Son
VIII. *Henry*, First of the name, who reigned but three yeares. By *Malfada* his *Portugall* his wife, hee left not any Issue by his death, *Berenguela* the Second daughter possessed himselfe of the Kingdome of *Castile*, wherein she enthroned her Sonne
IX. *Ferdinand*, Sonne to the King *Leon Alphonso*, Ninth of the name Vsurper of the Kingdome of *Castile*, against the King Saint *Lewes*, reigning his vsurpation Thirty Fiue yeares. *Ferdinand*, Second of the name, by *atrix* (daughter to the Emperour his first Wife had these Children.
Alphonso.
Fredericke.
Ferdinand.
Henry.
Philip.
Sancio.
Emanuel.
Leonora, who dyed vnmarried; And
Berenguela, a religious Sister.
In Second Marriage hee espoused *lix of Poitiers*, a French Lady, & by her he had two Sons and a Daughter.

Ferdinand.
Lewes: And
Leonora.
In the person of the said *Ferdinand*, the Kingdomes of *Leon* and of *Castile*, became annexed and vnited together, without being (any more afterward) separated or diuided one from another. Hee began to reigne in the yeare, One Thousand, Two Hundred and Seauenteene: and dyed in the yeare, One Thousand, Two Hundred Fifty Two. After him succeeded in the Kingdomes of *Leon* and *Castile*, his eldest Sonne
X. *Alphonso*, King of *Castile*, Fift of the name, called the *Wise*, in regard of his Astrologie. By *Violanta* of *Arragon*, his Wife, he had a plenteous Progeny, to wit, Fiue Sonnes and Foure Daughters.
The Sonnes were
Ferdinand, tearmed, *de la Cerda.*
Sancio.
Pedro.
John: And
James.
The Daughters were
Berenguela.
Beatrix.
Isabell: And
Leonora.
By a Concubine *Margerita de Guzman*, he had
Beatrix, Queene of *Portugall.*
Ferdinand de la Cerda, his Eldest Son, had to wife Madame *Blanche* of France, Daughter to the King Saint *Lewes*, by whom he had two Sonnes;
Alphonse; And
Ferdinand.
Alphonso marrying in France, tooke to Wife *Malfada* (a Lady of *Lunell* in *Languedock*, betweene *Montpelier* and *Vsmes*) Daughter to the Viscount of *Narbonna*, by whom hee had two Sonnes;
Lewes Count of *Clermont*; And
John Charles, Constable of France.
Lewes, Count of *Clermont*, tooke to Wife *Leonora de Guzman*, by whom hee had
Lewes, Count of *Clermont*,
John de la Cerda; And
Isabell de la Cerda, Wife to *Bernard*, Bastard of *Foix*, of whom are descended the Dukes of *Medina de Cœli:*
Ferdinand, Second Sonne to *Ferdinand de la Cerda*, Eldest Sonne to *Alphonso* the *Wise*, had to Wife *Ioane* or *Iane de Lara*, by whom he had a Sonne and a Daughter.
Isabell de la Cerda, Wife to *John Manuell*, Father to *Iane*, Queene of *Castile*, Wife to *Henry* the Bastard King of *Castile*; And
John cald *de Lara*, Heire to his Mother.
John, Fourth Sonne to *Alphonso* the *Wise*, tooke to Wife *Mary Lopez Diaz*, Heyre of *Biscay*: And in this Marriage was borne *John*, called *with one Eye*, Father of *Isabell*, Wife to *John Nugnez de Lara*; *Alphonso* the King yet liuing.
XI. *Sancio* his Second Sonne, possessed himselfe of the Kingdomes of *Leon* and of *Castile*, (which belonged to the Children of his deceased Elder Brother *Ferdinand de la Cerda*) in the yeare Two Hundred, Foure Score and Foure, and reigned Eleuen yeares. The said *Sancio*, Third of the Name, by his Wife *Mary* of *Castile*, Daughter to *Alphonso*, Lord of *Molina*, had foure Sonnes and two Daughters.
The Daughters were
Isabell, Dutchesse of *Bretaigne*; And
Beatrix.
The Sonnes were
Ferdinand.
Alphonso-Philippo.
Henry; And
Pedro.
The said *Sancio* the Third, dyed in the yeare, One Thousand, Two Hundred, Foure Score and Fifteene, After whom succeeded his Sonne.
XII. *Ferdinand*, Third of the name in *Castile*, of whom the Reigne continued Seauenteene yeares: And by *Constance* of *Portugall* his Wife, were borne a Sonne and a Daughter,
Alphonso; And
Leonora.
XIII. *Alphonso*, Sixt of the name, King of *Castile*, the Eleuenth and last of *Leon*, Authour of the Order of the *Band*, succeeded in the said Kingdomes, by the death of *Ferdinand* the Third his Father, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred & twelue: who by *Mary* of *Portugall* his Wife, had two Sonnes.
Ferdinand, who died very young; And
Pedro, King of *Leon* and of *Castile.*
By *Leonora Guzman* his Concubine,

and Lady in Amorous embraces, hee had a great lift or traine of Baſtards, or naturall Children.

Pedro, *Sancio*, *Henry*. } By one wombe.

And *Fredericke*, *Ferdinand*, *Iohn*; And *Ioane* of *Caſtile*, Wife to *Ferdinand de Caſtro*.

Let there bee no miſconſtruing the name of *Guzman*.

Wee haue in this Genealogie very often times made mention, concerning the name of *Guzman*, ſo many wayes allied to the Royall Houſe of *Caſtile*: But you muſt obſerue withall, that there are in Spaine, many Families of the Simame of *Guzman*, very famous and much renowned.

The Ancient *Guzmans*, are
Them of *Baeſa*,
Of *Torall*,
Of *Nieble* the Firſt,
Of *Nieble* the Second,
Of the *Algua*; And
The *Guzmans* of *Hardales*.

The Armes of the ancient *Guzmans*.

The Ancient *Guzmans* dwelling in the Kingdome of *Baeca* or *Baeſa*, who bare *D'Argent à Cinque Ermines, à l'Orle & Bordure de Gueules chargee de Huict Saultours d'Or*: It is a very long time ſince that race was quite extinct. For they which beare the ſame name (at this day) in *Andalouzia*, haue deriued their deſcent from the houſe of the *Garcias*, iſſued of the Great Maiſter of the Order of *Calatraua*, Don *Lewes Gonſales de Guzman*, Lord of the City of *Anduiar* in the Territory and Kingdome of *Iaen*. For the ancient *Guzmans* were Lords of the Caſtell *D'Auiados*, about foure miles from the Royall City of *Leon*.

The chiefe Seate of the ancient houſe.

Wee haue found that about the yeare Nine Hundred and Fifty, the Chiefe place of this Ancient Houſe, was *Can de Roa*, the dwelling of the Count *Nugno Nunez de Guzman*: who was the firſt Lord, iſſued and deſcended of the firſt Iudges and Counts of *Caſtile*, and (who in the end) came to be Kings.

Nugno Fernandez de Guzman.

In the yeare Nine Hundred, Foureſcore and Ten, the King of *Leon Bermond* or *Bermund*, Second of the name, cauſed to bee giuen to *Nugno Fernandez de Guzman*, the grounds and Paſturages of *Sora*, for the good Seruices which hee had done to him.

And in the yeare One Thouſand Three Score and Eight, did liue *Aluaro Diaz de Guzman*, Firſt of the name, Lord of the Tower of *Guzman*, in the *Merindads* of *Cerrato*.

Aluarez Ruyz de Guzman.

In the yeare One thouſand one hundred and foureſcore, or thereabout, there is found in the Hiſtories of *Spaine*, remembrance of another, named *Aluarez Ruyz de Guzman*, in the time of the Emperour *Dom Alphonſo* of *Spaine*, vnder whom, the Count *Dom Pedro* was the firſt ſtemme or branch of the Familie of the *Guzmans*. And that he eſpouſed *Vrraca Ruys de Caſtro*, Siſter to *Dom Ferdinand Ruyz de Caſtro*.

Pero Ruyz de Guzman.

And of this marriage was born *Pero Ruyz de Guzman*, who was maried to the ſiſter of the Count *Dom Gomez de Manſanado*, called *Eluira Gomez de Manſanado*: of whom iſſued two Sonnes, *Nugno Perez de Guzman*, and *Guillen Perez de Guzman*, who were both preſent in perſon at the Battaile of *Muradal*, otherwiſe called *Des Naues de Tolſa*, and *D'Vbeda*.

Ruy Diego Lope de Haro.

This *Guillen Perez* tooke to wife *Eluira Rodriguez*, Daughter to *Ruy Dias*, Lord of *Los Cameros*, and to the Counteſſe *Vrraca Diaz de Haro*, Daughter to *Dom Diego Lopez de Haro*, tearmed the Good, Lord of *Biſcaye*, of whom we haue formerly ſet downe the deſcent, and who in her firſt marriage eſpouſed Count *Aluar Nugnez de Lara*. By the ſecond Bed ſhe had *Pero Nugnez de Guzman*, and other maſle children, with one Daughter, called *Mayora Guillen de Guzman*.

Pero Nugnez de Guzman.

Concerning this *Pero Nugnez de Guzman*, hee was Great Adelantado of *Caſtile*, and one of the very worthieſt Knights of King *Ferdinand*, called the Saint, at the Conqueſt of *Seuille*. Hee married the Siſter to the King of *Leon Dom Alphonſe*, named *Vrraca*. And at the partition of the Lands of *Seuille*, conquered from the Moores

Moores, and done in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred fiftie and three mention is made, that this *Pero Nugnez* had there ſo large a proportion, (euen as according to a great Lord. He was Father to *Alphonſo de Guzman*, tearmed the Good, a Knight much renowned in the Kingdomes of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, and throughout all the frontiers of the Moores; onely for his valour and expertneſſe in Armes.

The deſcent of this Family out of Bretaigne.

In *Spaine* they hold, that this Noble Family is iſſued of a Brother to the Count of *Bretaigne*, who being thence ſent in martiall affaires to *Leon*; was there married to *Ramires* of *Leon*, and that to conſerue the memory of their extraction; theſe *Guzmans* retained the Armes of *Bretaigne* with the *Ermines*. It is further ſaid, that this Brother was alſo a kinſman of *Agricol* or *Agrior le beau Iouuent*, iſſued likewiſe from the Houſe of *Bretaigne*, but dwelling in *England*, and one of the Knights of the *Round Table*, in the time of King *Arthur*. Which *Agricoll* bare likewiſe of *Bretaigne*, according as we haue obſerued in the ſixt Chapter.

Proofe for their deſcent from Bretaigne.

But it is a matter moſt certaine, that the Houſe of the *Guzmans* was deſcended from *Bretaigne*, and that an infinite number of Princes Sons, and other great Lords of *France*, did heretofore paſſe into *Spaine*, to fight againſt the Moores, and there continued their dwelling. Among whom was one named *Guillaume*, *William*, Brother to a Count of *Bretaigne*, who tooke alliance with the Houſe of Count *D. Nugnez*, Lord of *Ast*; and that in his deſcent, the bloud of *Guzman* made a commixion with his of *Bretaigne*. In teſtimony whereof, the greater part of the *Guzmans* were, and are called *Guillaumes*, which in *Caſtile* they call *Guillen*, by common kinde of ſpeaking.

Concerning the ſirname of *Guzman*.

Some there are who ſay that the Sir name of *Guzman* is a Germaine or Almaigne word, compounded of theſe two dictions, *Guz-Man*, *Good-Man*, *Honeſt-Man*: As *North* or *Nor-Man*, by being iſſued from the North; *Hot-Man*, a *Rich-Man* in Mines of Gold and Siluer, and an infinite number more, of the like compoſition.

The Armes of the *Guzmans*.

There is found likewiſe, the Armes of the ſaid *Guzmans*, *Qui ſont d'Azur à deux Chaudrons feſſez en Eſcheiquetez d Or & d'Azur aux Anes contournez de meſme, à douze Teſtes d. Serpens de Synople aux deux Oreilles, à l'Orle variee de meſme, chargee de quatre autres Chaudrons de meſme*. Armes which are common to the very greateſt Houſes of *Spaine* and of *Caſtile*: As to them of *Lara*, *Pacheco*, *Aſa*, *Daſa*, *Fuente Almexir*, *Herrera*, *Biedma*, and to infinite other beſide.

Guzmans of diuers places.

The *Guzmans* of *Toral* haue for Armes *D'Azur, aux deux Chaudieres d'Or feſſees, trees & crenelees* (as we haue ſaid) *flanque d'Argent à huict Ermines en Croix de Sable*.

The Marqueſſe of *Algaua*, and thoſe of *Hardales*; *Les deux Chaudieres à l'Orle d'Argent de huict Ermines de Sable*.

For them of *Florez*, and of *Flores* (which is but one and the ſame Family) *D'Azur au Chaſteau ſomme de trois Tours d'Or, à l'Orle d'Argent, chargee de huict Ermines de Sable*.

Thoſe of *Cifuentes*, and thoſe of *Almanſa*; *Portent d'Argent à cinq Ermines de Sable, à l'Orle, & Bordure de Gueulles à huict Saultours d'Or*: which were the firſt Armes of the auncient *Guzmans de Baeſa*.

Three Noble Ladies that yeelded Kings to *Spaine*.

In this Illuſtrious Family, there hath bin three Ladies, that haue yeelded Kings to *Spaine*.

The firſt was *Ximenia Nugnez de Guzman*, Mother to *Dogna Thereſe*, Daughter to the King of *Leon Dom Alphonſo* the ſixt; who had to her Dowrie the Kingdome of *Portugall*, married to the Count *Henry*, a French Prince, iſſued of the Houſe of *Bogne* and *Lorraine*.

The ſecond was *Dogne Mayora Guillen de Guzman*, Mother to Queene *Beatrix*, and Daughter to the King *Alphonſo* the Wiſe: who had in marriage the Kingdome of *Algues*, married to the fift King of *Portugall Alphonſo*, third of the name.

The laſt was *Donna Leonora de Guzman*, Daughter to *Pedro Nugnez de Guzman*: by whom *Alphonſo*, King of *Leon* and *Caſtile* (eleauenth and laſt of the name) had King *Henry*, ſecond of the name.

Saint *Dominick Guzmand* deſcended of the ſame Family.

But that which hath bin the greateſt glory to this Family, and made it ſhine throughout all Chriſtendome; was that (from thence) iſſued the faire ſplendour of the Church, *Sainct Dominicke Guzman* (Sonne to *Dom Fœlix de Guzman*, and

Donna Ieanne d' Aſa, being natiues in the Towne of *Caleruega*, the dwelling place of the Noble Familie of *Aſa*) Founder and firſt Inſtitutour of the Order of Saint *Dominicke*, which we call the *Iacobines* at *Paris*, and elſewhere. An Order, out of which haue come ſo many Popes, Cardinals, Biſhops and Doctors, famous for their ſeruice in the Church; and in ſuch plenty, as there is not any other Order of Religion, which may be compared with that of Saint *Dominicke*. From whence the Kings of *Spaine* (euen to this day) doe deriue the principall excellencie of their Blood and Genealogie; accordingas is moſt curiouſly figured in delicate Copper plates, deſcribed by Frier *Fernando del Caſtillo*, Prior of the Monaſtery of Saint *Mary D'Atbocan*, in his Hiſtorie of the Order of Saint *Dominicke*.

Concerning the Armes of the Order.

At the laſt Generall Chapter of this Order, held in the great Conuent at *Paris*, in the yeare One thouſand ſixe hundred and ten, being the Feaſt of Pentecoaſt, I ſaw the Armes of that illuſtrious Religion renowned in all parts of the inhabited world. One, *D'Argent au Giron d'vne piece de Sable*: Another of diuerſitie of deuiſe; but both badly faſhioned. As I ſhewed to the reuerend Father *Seraphim Banquy*, nominated Biſhop of *Engoulesme*, Reuiuer or reſtorer of the Schooles of S. *Thomas* of *Aquin* in the ſaid Conuent, a man of ſinguler integritie of life, and with whom I haue had very great acquaintance, and who (within a while after the ſaid Generall Chapter) forſooke *France*, and returned backe to *Florence*.

The true Armes of the Societie

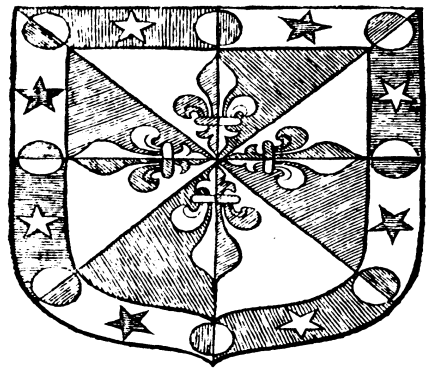
But it is neceſſary for them of that Company to vnderſtand, that here they may learne the true Armes of their Religion, which. is: *Vn Guyron ou Giron de Huict pieces d'Argent & de Sable, & ſur icelluy vne Croix Fleur de lizee, partie de l'vn en l'autre de meſme* (that is to ſay, of Sable ou Siluer, and Siluer ou Sable) *à la Bordure compoſee de Huict pieces de meſme, de Sable & d'Argent à Huict Eſtoiles de l'vn en l'autre de meſme, à Huict Bezans, & Tourteaux parcellement partiz d Argent & de Sable*. The figure thereof is here repreſented, according to the truth of Hiſtory.

Croix de l. Ordre des Cheualiers, & de la Religion de S. Dominique.

The Croſſe of the Order, concerning the Knights: And them of the Religion of S. *Dominicke*.

CHAP. VIII.

THis Excellent Patriarch was Founder of the Military Order of Knights of Ieſus Chriſt: Inſtituted to warre againſt the *Albigeois* Heretiques, which were ſcattered and diſperſed ouer all *Languedock*, *Gaſcoignie*, *Prouence*, *Dauphine Sauoye* and *Lombardy*; a fight performed to the very vttermoſt, by the Prelates and Gentlemen of France: As you may read in the Hiſtory of *Simon de Montfort*, and the warres conducted by our Kings, *Lewes* the Eight, Saint *Lewes* his Sonne, and the Kings their Succeſſors, againſt obſtinate impugners of the Faith.



The diuiſion of the Croſſe of the Order of Dominicke, worne by the Knights.

And this may ſerue to giue publike knowledge, what manner of Croſſe was carried and worne by thoſe Prelates, Princes, and Lords, with others beſide that Croſſed themſelues againſt thoſe obſtinicie.

Great difference there was betweene them that were croſſed for beyond the Seas, for defence and Conqueſt of the Holy Land, and them that were of this Order. For they which voyaged ouer the Seas, eſpecially if they were of the French Nation, tooke for their kinde of Croſſing

Croſſing on the Breaſt, the Croſſe of *Ieruſalem* (which was *Potence & Cantonnee de Quatre Croiſettes*) the Colour being Red, the *Engliſh* White, the *Germaines* Blacke, the *Flemmings* Greene, and the *Italians* Yellow. And the Croſſe Merchahes, that went againſt the *Albigeois*, wore vpon their Breaſts, the Croſſe of Saint *Dominicke*, in the ſaid forme as you behold it here figured, *Blacke* and *White*, as it is obſerued by *Pere Fernando del Caſtillo*, all along his Hiſtorie, the firſt Booke, and nine and fortieth Chapter.

The Countries ſeueral colors.

Vſo por Deuiſa eſta ſanéta Religion la Cruz Floreteada de Los Colores de ſu Habito, Que ſon Blancho y Negro, *que tambien lo fueron de la Caualeria Militar, que eſtituyo* Sanéto Domingo *inſtituta in Francia, y Lombardia por el Papa Honorio, contra los Rebeldes de la Igleſia. This Holy Religion vſed for their Deuiſe*, The Croſſe Floureded, with the colours of their Habits, which were White and Blacke. *And ſo were they likewiſe of the Knights Militarie, which the ſame Saint Dominicke Inſtituted in France and Lombardie, confirmed by the Pope Honorius, for ſuch as rebelled againſt the Church.* But returne we now againe to the Genealogie of the Kings of *Caſtile*.

CHAP. IX.

A further proceeding in the Pedegree or Genealogie of the Caſtile Kings.

BY the death of *Alphonſo* the Wiſe, happening in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and fiftie, after he had reigned eight and thirty yeares; then his Legitimate Sonne *Dom Pedro*, firnamed the Cruell, Reigned eighteene yeeres in cruelrie and Tyrannie. For the whole time of his Gouernement was full of murders, maſſacres, euen of ſuch as were deareſt and neereſt to him. So that all the Children of *Leonora de Guzman*, were compelled to ſeeke for their owne ſafetie, ſome in *France*, others in *Arragon* and *Portugall*, and their Mother bloodily maſſacred at *Talauera* by the Queene. He put to death alſo all her Children, which he could get into his hands, and in her preſence he cauſed a Monke to be burned, of the Order of Saint *Dominicke*, who had foretold; that himſelfe (ſhould be ſlaine by the hand of *Henry* of *Caſtile* (who was Count of *Tranſtamare*) his Baſtard Brother, in reuenge of his other Brethren, whom he had cauſed to be murdered.

The cruel and tyrannicall reigne of King *Pedro*.

He had to wife lawfully, *Blanch* of *Bourbon*, ſiſter to the Queene *Iane* of *Bourbon*, wife to *Charles* the fift, called the Wiſe, Daughters to *Peter* Duke of *Bourbon*, a Prince of the Illuſtrious Blond of France. Three dayes after this marriage, he ſent her priſoner to *Toledo*, and from thence to *Cuenca*. Finally, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred threeſcore and one, he cauſed her to be poyſoned in the Priſon of *Medina Sidonia*. Her body was receiued by the French, who carried it along with them, and made enterement of it at *Tudela* in *Nauarre*.

Blanch of *Bourbon* wife to King *Pedro* the cruell, and her death.

To reuenge the death of this worthy Princeſſe, the French proclaimed Warre againſt this *Pedro* the Cruell, and ioyned themſelues with the Count *de Tranſtamare* *Henry* of *Caſtile*, Baſtard Sonne of *Alphonſo* the eleauenth. The Generall of the French Armie (conſiſting of tenne thouſand Horſe, and twentie thouſand men on foote) was *Bertrand de Gueſclin*, a Gentleman of *Bretaigne*, the very worthieſt Captaine among all them of his time, and who (for his many vertues) was made Conſtable of France. Vnder him marched in this Armie, *John* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la March*, Couſine to the deceaſed Queene *Blanch* of *Bourbon*; *Anthony*, Lord of *Beauieu*; *Arnuld d'Endreghen*, Marſhall of *France*) *Le Begne de Villenes*; *Euſtace d'Embritecourt*, *Hugh Caueleé*; *Gaultier Huſſe*, *Mathew de Gournay*; *Perducas d'Albret*, and an infinite number of other great Lords of the Kingdome, who in the ſpace of fiue and twenty dayes, conquered the greater part of the Kingdome of *Leon* and *Caſtile*, whereof was Crowned King the Count of *Tranſtamare*, *Henry* of *Caſtile*, called ſecond of the name: which was done at *Toledo*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred threeſcore and ſixe.

Reuenge ſought by the French for the death of Queene *Blanch*.

Henry Crowned King of *Leon* and *Caſtile*.

Pedro the Cruell, made recourſe with his Treaſures to the *Engliſh*, who reſeated him againe in part of his Kingdome; by the ouerthrow of King *Henry*, who was diſarmed

armed sooner then he should haue bin, and *Pedro* gouerned his Kingdome in like manner as before.

His Contrary, being relieued once more by the French, and they conducted by the same *Bertrand du Guesclin*: it was the hope of *Dom Pedro* the Cruell, to raise the Siedge from *Toledo* with sixe hundred Lances: but he was surprized at *Montiel*, and Poniarded or Stabd by King *Henry* his Brother, according to the Propheſie of the *Iacobine* of Saint *Dominicke de la Calcade*, the three and twentieth day of March, in the yeare of Grace One thousand three hundred threescore and eight: And thus ended King *Pedro*, and his cruelty together.

The death of *Dom Pedro* the Cruell.

Bertrand du Guesclin, whom the *Spanish* Histories doe tearme *Beltran de Claquin*, Constable of France, receiued great recompences in the Kingdomes of *Castile* and *Leon*, as also in *Andaluzia*, and namely in the Citie of *Molina*, but not *Medina*, according as it is written in the denumeration of the Constables belonging to France.

With him went in this iourney for *Castile*, and to the seruice of King *Henry* the second against King *Pedro* the Cruell, great store of French Gentlemen; where they began to make their dwelling, and were the Stockes or Plants of many great Houses, renowned in those parts to this very day. And those *Spanyards* that are of the best temper, will truely acknowledge, that all the Histories of the world haue spoken of the *French*, to be famous for their valiancie, aboue all other Nations ouer the Earth. *Ninguno de los Autores en general, y en particular à est en dido tanto la pluma, que de Francia non aya siempre mucho mas, que dezir. Not any Authours in generall or particuler, but haue extended their Pens, much more for the French, and speaking alwayes largely of them.* So saith the Count of *Lansarote*, in the second Booke of his Historie, the foureſcore and fift Chapter; according to the testimonie of whom, was

Many great Houses in *Spaine* deriued of the *French*.

Bernard de Bearne, Bastard Son of *Gaston Phabus*, Count of *Foix*, and Lord of *Bearn*. This *Bernard* tooke Alliance in the House *De la Cerda*, issued of the Bloud Royall of *Castile*: and of them are descended the Dukes of *Medina Celi*, whose Armes are *De Castile, & Leon Escartelees de France*.

Gaston Phabus de Foix and his Sonne.

Remond Gutierres passed out of *Gascoigne* into *Spaine*, Father to *Pedro Gutierres*, Lord *D'Acugna*, the Originall or Sourse of the Dukes of *Ossona*, by the Sirname of *Giron* in *Andaluzia*; of the Marquesses of *Villena* being Dukes of *Escalona*, by the Sirname of *Pacheco*: of the Marquisate *de Ville-Neufue du Fresna*, by Sirname of *Portocarrero*; of the Counts *de la Puebla de Montalban*, by the Sirname of *Pacheco* and of *Girona*; of the Marquesse of *Moya*, by the Sirname of *Cabrera*, and of the Marquesse *d'Alcala*, by Sirname of *Portocarrero*. The Armes of this *Pedro Gutierres* Lord of *Acugna* are *D'Or, à Neuf Coins, ou Triangles d'Azur, de trois en trois en Fesses, à l'Orle d'Argent, chargee de Cinq Escus des secondes Armes de Portugal*.

Pedro Gutierres Lord of *Acugna* and other families.

Arnould de Solier, the Daughter of whom was married to *John de Velasco*, Great Chamberlaine to the said King *Henry* the second of *Castile*; and the said *Arnould Solier* was Lord of *Villalpando*. Of this marriage are descended the *Velascoes*, Constables of *Castile*, who bare for Armes, *D'Argent à la Croix Fleurdelizee d'Azur, flechee en Croix couppee d'Argent, à l'Orle, endenchee d'Azur*.

Of *Arnold de Solier* Lord of *Villalpando*.

John Nugno, Father of *Pedro Nugno*, Count of *Buelna*, and Lord of *Cigales* a French Knight, issued of the House of France, whose descent is renowned in *Granado*, and at *Valladolid*. The principall Succession whereof is falne to *Donna Blanche Nugno de Herrera*, and of *Portugall*, Countesse of *Buelna*, Lady of *Cigales*, of *Pedrasa de la Serra*, of *Arroyo del puerto*, and of others Seigneuries: wife to *Bernardino de Velasco*, Constable of *Castile*. The Armes of this Familie are *D Or à Sept Fleurs de Lys d'Azur*, which is of *Thouars* in *Poicton*.

Pedro Nugno Count of Buelna.

Messire Henry Rubin (that is *Robert*) *de Braquemont* (great Vncle to *Robert de Braquemont*, who vnder *Charles* the sixt was Admirall of *France*) married in *Castile* with *Dogna Ignez de Mendosa*, daughter to *Don Pero Gonsalez de Mendosa*, and to *Dogna Aldonce d'Arala*, Daughter to the Predecessours that were Lords of the House *De l'Infantadgo*, and of this marriage are descended the Lords of *Pegnaranda*. The Armes of this *Bracquemont* are *De Sable au Cheuron d'Argent*. And for Deuise, *il*

Robert de Braquemont Admirall of *France*

portoit d'Argent a vn Maillet, et vne Esquierre de Sable. The *Spanyards* call a *Maillet Maso*, and an *Esquierre Cabrio*. Vpon this deuise hath rimed a *Spanish* Authour, named *Gracia Dei*, & sheweth, that he bare himselfe valiantly against the *English* as well for the loue of *Charles* the fift his king, as for the Maides sake whom he maried.

Con su Cabrio, et con su Maso
De Argen en la prieta Sierra
Bracamonte con su Braso
Desbarat o gran pedaso
De gente de Inglaterra,
Por su Rey, par la Poncela,
Y meior Vincio la tela
Mossen Enrique Rubin
Con Don Beltran de Claquin.
En la fraterna pelea.

Of *Messire Monet da Viegas*, a *Gascoigne* Captaine, is descended the house of *Coello*, much renowned in the Kingdome of *Castille*, & elsewhere in the Prouinces of *Spayne*, in *Portugall* and in *Andalouzia*: as is obserued by the Counte of *Lansarote*, in his Second Booke of the Life of King *Henry* of *Castille*, Third of the name, the hundred fifty and three, and two hundred twenty three Chapters. *Il portoit pour Armes d'Argent au Lyon rempant de Gueules, charge le Col et le Corps d'vne bande d'Azur Eschiquette d'Or et de Gueules de deux traicts, Coronne Lampasse, et Arme d'Or, a l'Orle d'Azur chargee de Huict Croix Fleurdelisee de Gueules.*

The descent of the House of *Coello*.

Arnauld de Fontaine, Authour of the house of *Fontaines* in *Andalouzia*, whose Sepulcher is yet to bee seene at entring into the Church of S. *Marke* at *Seuille* with his Shield, which is *D'Or Cinq Fleurs de Lys d'Azur en Saulteur*, Which Seigneurie of the *Fountaines* is falne into the house of the *Guzmans*, in the person of *Aluaro de Guzman et de Fontaine*. His descendands haue therto added *L'Orle de Gueules a Huict Chaudrons Eschiequettez d'Or, et de Sable.*

The House of the Fountaines in *Andaluzia*.

Robert de Betancour, Second Son to the Lord of the said place, and of *Longue-Ville* in *Normandie*, who dwelt likewise in *Castille*. One of his descent and ligne, named *John de Betancour*, was first King of the *Canarie* Ilands. *Stephen de Gariuay* or *Garibay*, in the ninth Chapter of this sixteenth Booke, writeth, that in the yeare of Grace, 1417. Queene *Constance*, Regentesse of *Castille* for her Sonne King *Iohn* Second of the name, gaue in free gift to the said *Messire John de Betancour*, the Ilandes of the *Canaries*, with the title of King: Which she did at the requeſt and entreaty of *Robert de Braquemount*, Admirall of *France*, to whom this *Betancour* was a neere kinseman, who conquered the said Ilands, and builded his first Castell in that part of *Lansarote*, which hee made the chiefe seate of his new Kingdome. This was the man, that first sented and collected the windes for the East *Indiaes*, and there made his memories. In this voyage he was assisted by good store of the Nobility of *France* & *Gascoignie*, namely of two *Gascoigne* Captaines, the one called *Salles*, and the other *Maulon*, very expert both in the Arte of Nauigation; because they were the first *Adelantadoes* and Discouerers of the *Newe Worlde*. This *Betancour Portoit d'Argent au Lyon rempant de Gueules*; *Mauleon Portoit de Gueules au Lyon rempant a'Or, et de Sable, Portoit de Gueules a Quatre Aigles d'Argent.* there are diuers other houses and Linages in *Spayne* and *Gascoignie*, which beare these Sirnames, and Armes also.

The first King of the *Canaries*.

Betancour conquered the Ilandes of the *Canaries*.

The first Discouerers of the *New World*.

Iohn de Betancour gaue the *Canaries* to his Eldest Sonne *Messire Maciote de Betancour*: of whom are descended many famous houses in *Portugall* and *Castille*. This Isle of *Lansarote* is falne to *Dogna Constance de Herrera*, who stiled her selfe Lady of *Roia*, and of *Betancour*, Countesse of *Lansarote*.

It may be esteemed then a presumptuous errour, to make *Christopher Columbus* the first discouerer of the *New World*, attributing to him onely all the honour, which was due to the Auncient *French* Captaines: of whose memories hee might easily possesse himselfe, and all the Cardes of their Nauigations, so much tardied and neglected by the miserable estate and condition of *France*, vnder the long Reigne of King *Charles* the Sixt. And yet notwithstanding, all the glory is giuen to *Christopher Columbus*, whom the *Spaniards* cal *Christouall Colon primer Conquistador de el nueuo Mondo de las Indias:*

Christopher Columbus a Genoese not the first Discouerer of the *New World*.

of

The Armes of *Columbus*.

of whose Ligne descended the Dukes of *Veragua*. *Il portoit l'Escu en Manteau, le premier de Gueules au Coſteau d'Or, et l'autre d'Argent au Lyon rempant de Gueules: le pointcte d'Argent vnde d'Azur, a Cinq Iſles d'Or, a vn Monde de meſme, et pour Deuiſe ceſte Legende a l'Entour.*

A Caſtilla, y a Leon
Mundo nueuo dio Colon.

Thereby to declare, that this *New Worlde* was diſcouered by him, vnder the Reigne, and at the charges of *Iſabella*, Queene of *Caſtille* and *Leon*, Wife to King *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, vſurper of the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, Returne we now againe to our Ancient *French Paladines*, that made their habitation in *Spayne*, when they went thither with the Conſtable *Du Gueſclin*.

Guillaume Lord of *Limoges*, Cousin to *Guillemde las Caſas*.

Meſsire Guillaume, Sonne and Brother to the Viſcountes of *Limoges*, Lord of *Cazaulx* (Couſine to them of *Betancour*, King of the *Canaries*) of whom deſcended *Guillen Signor delas Caſas*, Great *Alcay* of *Seuille*: In the great Church whereof is to be ſeene their Sepulcher and Monument, and their Armes, which are *D'Or a Cinq Rocqs en Saultoir de Sable, a l'Orle d'Azur chargee de Huict Aigles d'Or.*

The Familie of *Lando*.

Iohn de Lando, of whoſe Ligne are deſcended many braue Gallants in *Caſtille*, that beare the Sir name and Armes of *Lando*: which are *De Gueules au Saultoir d'Or, a l'Orle d'Argent, chargee de Dix Lyonceaux de Gueules.*

The Familes of *Montiſon* and *Bernal*.

George de Montiſon Bernard, and of him deſcended the Families of *Montiſon*, and of *Bernal*. The Armes of the ſaid *George* were *De Sable a vn Chaſteau ſomme de trois Tours d'Or, Eſcartele d'Azur au Bras arme de Argent, tenant vn Flambeau d'Or en Pal, allume de Gueules.*

The Familie of *Segarra*.

Arnauld de Geguiers, tearmed in *Spaniſhe Segarra*, a Knight of *Bourgongne*, famous for valiancie: of whom deſcended the Noble Knights of *Seuille*, of the name and Sir name of their Founder, and alſo of his Armes. *Qui ſont d'Or a Trois Bandes d'Azur, a l'Orle de Gueules*, which is of *Bourgongne*.

The Iſſue of *Bertrand du Gueſclin*.

Now concerning *Meſsire Bertrand de Gueſclin* or *Gleſquin*, Lord of *Tours* in *Touraine*; he was Lord of *Molina*, and of many great Landes in *Caſtille* and *Andalouzia*. Of the Lady of *Saria* his Wife, he begot two braue Sonnes, to whom he gaue the Sir name and Armes of *Tours*, but not of *Gueſclin*, who caried *D'Argent a l'Aigle eſploye de Sable, Lampaſſe, et Arme de Gueules, au Baſton de meſmes brochant ſur le tout*. Whereas ſuch are iſſued of his Ligne, *Portent d'Azur a Cinq Tours en Saultoir d'Argent maſonnees de Sable*. One of thoſe two Sonnes, named *Bertrand de Tours*, and in *Spaniſh Beltran de Torres*, was Commaunder of *Mondela*, of the Order of *Calatraua*, as *Rades d'Andrada* hath obſerued in his *Tract* of that Order, the Three and Thirtieth Chapter. The other held the ſucceſſion of his Mother *De Soria*, and of him are deſcended diuers great perſonages, among whom was *Dom Garcia de Torrez*, Biſhop of *Burgos*. Behold ſummarily the Liſt and numeration of the principall Houſes, iſſued of the *French Paladins*, which paſſed into *Spaine* for the Seruice of

Of his two Sonnes.

An obſeruation of the *French* paſſages into *Spayne*.

Henry, Second of the name, King of *Leon* and *Caſtille*. For from the time of his Father

Alphonſo the laſt, Eleuenth of the name, and the Sonne of the ſaid *Henry* the Second

Iohn, Firſt of the name, and his Sonne and Succeſſour

Henry the Third, And

Iohn the Second, his Sonne:

Many braue *Frenche* Knights paſſed hence to ſuccour them in *Spayne*, who made their dwelling there: and (euen to this inſtant day) we ſee many worthy Families noated by their Armes, ſowne among the *Floures de Luces* of *France*.

The Battle of *Salado* wunne by the Kings of *Caſtille* and *Portugall*.

At the Battaile of *Salado*, wunne by the Kings of *Caſtille Alphonſo*, Eleuenth and Laſt of that name, and *Alphonſo* of *Portugall*, Seauenth of the name, againſt the Kings of *Marocco Albohacen*, and him of *Granado*, named *Ioſeph*, on Monday the Eight and Twentieth day of *October*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, three hundred and Forty, the Banner of the holy *Croiſſade*, bleſt in *Anignion* by the Pope then ſitting, and by him giuen to the Archbiſhop of *Tolledo Dom Gil Carrillo d'Alborno*, was deliuered, (by conſent of both the Chriſtian Kings of *Caſtille* and *Potugall*) to bee caried by *Meſſire*

ſire Hugh de Gleſquin, that is *Gueſclin* (Great vnckle by the Fathers ſide to the Conſtable of *France Bertrand du Gueſclin*) a worthy braue *Frenche* Knight, very valiant of his perſon, and Zealous in the ſeruice of God.

The wordes of the Chronicle ſet down by the Author.

El Rey de Caſtillo mando que el Pendon de la Santta Cruzada (que el Papa auia imbiado) fuesſe iunto al pendon Real, y entre lo a Dom Hugo Caualiero Frances, *que moraua en la Ciudad de Vbeda que era buen Chriſtiano, y Hombre de buen Vida: y antes d'Eſto el Rey auia Armado Cauallero, y caſada en aquella Ciudad.*

The King of Caſtille gaue commaunde, by whom he would haue the Gonfanon, and the Banner of the Holy Croiſſade (which the Pope had ſent vnto him) ſhould be caried with the Colonelle, and that it ſhould be deliuered to Meſſire Hugh, *a French Knight, dwelling in the City of* Vbeda, *Who was a man man without reproche of life, and whom the King had (before) Armed and made a Knight, and married him in the ſame place of* Vbeda. *And heere you may ſee the Genealogie of this Alfier Maior of the Holy Croiſſade of* Salado.

The Martiall Expedition for *Arragon* againſt the *Moores* of *Valentia*.

In the yeare One Thouſand, Three hundred and Twelue, many *French* Gentlemen went for *Arragon*, to the ſeruice of King *Iames*, in the Expedition of Armes, and warring on the *Moores* of *Valencia*. Among whom were *Hugh Bertrand*, *Frances Bertrand* and *Raymond Bertrand*, being Brethren, with many other Gentlemen *Poſſeuines*, and of the ſame Parentage. Albeit theſe *Bertrands* were originally, of the laſt Countes of *Toloſa*, and of Saint *Gilles* in *Prouence*. The moſt part of them became dwellers in *Arragon* and *Cathalogna*, but ſome other of them in *Caſtille*, among whom was *Hugh Bertrand*, the firſt Sonne to this *Hugh Bertrand*, to whom the King of *Caſtille Alphonſo* the laſt, cauſed to be giuen in mariage, the heire of the houſe of *Cueua*, rich and abounding in goods, both in and about the Citty of *Vbeda*. And from thence are deſcended them of the houſe of *Cueua*, which haue retayned the proper names of *Hugh* and *Bertrand*.

Dom Bertrand de la Cana, and his deſcente.

The Authour of the Chronicle of *Dom Michaell Lucas*, Conſtable of *Caſtille*, writeth, that *Dom Bertrand de la Ceua*, was Son to *Diego de la Cana*, and he youngeſt Sonne to *Gilles Martin de la Cana*, Regent of the Citty of *Vbeda*; iſſued of *Hugh* the *French* Knight, who was Alfier Maior of the Banner Collonell of the Croiſade, in the Battaile at *Salado*, who paſſed from *France* into *Spayne* to Warre againſt the Moores, with *Raymond Bertrand* his Sonne, and many other Croſſed Gentelmen. *Dom Beltran ſue hijo de Diego de la Cueua, et nieto de Gil Martinez de la Cueua, Regidor de Vbeda, deſcendente de Dom Hugo Cauallero Francez, que fue por Alpherez del Pendon de la Cruzada en la Batalla del Salado, y paſſo de Francia a Eſpagna a la guerra de los Moros con Dom Remon Baltran ſu primo, y con otros Cruzados, que paſſaron del Reyno de Francia,*

Raymond Bertrand de Perillos.

This *Raymond Bertrand*, Brother to *Hugh*, tooke the Sirname of *Perillos* (of the Seigneurie of *Perillac in Quercy*, or *Cahourry*, neere to *Toloſa*) and dwelt in the Kingdome of *Valencia*: where he was Father to *Frances de Perillos*, Viſcounte of *Roda* in *Cathalogna*, and Brother to *Bertrand de Gueſclin*, if we may giue credite to the Chronicles of *Spayne*.

Chiefe Standard-Bearer.

Hugh Alfier Maior, Husband to the rich Heire of *La Cueua*: *Porta de France Eſcartele des Armes de ſa Femme* (which are thoſe of *Cueua*) *d'Or a deux paulx de Gueules, ente en pointe d'Argent, au Serpent Dragonne, comme ſortant d'vne Caue de Synople a l'Orle de Gueules, chargee de Huict Saultoires d'Or.* Armes retained by the heire to the Houſe of *Dogna Iſabella de la Cueua*, Counteſſe of Saint *Stephano*, and Lady of *Solera*.

Of two worthy Knights of *France* named *Ponces*.

Betweene *Toloſa* and *Carcaſſonna*, renowned Cities in *Languedock*, paſſing by the Mountaines, to proceed on by *Rec de Mineruez*, for deſcending to *Haute-riuer*: In the time of *Alphonſo*, King of *Leon* and *Caſtille*, Sirnamed the Emperour; paſſed into *Spayne* to warre vpon the *Moores*, two *French* Knights, both of them being named *Ponces* (a name common in *Languedock* and *Prouence*, in regard of Saint *Pons de Tomiéres*, the Biſhops See for *Recs de Carcaſſonna*) the one Lord of *Cabrieres*, in the Countie of *Veniſſe*, and the other of *Rec de Mineruez*, and ſo by reaſon of him, called *Ponce de Mineruez* (hee retofore iſſued of the Counts and Gouernours of *Toloſa Ponce*, both the Father *Remond* and his Sonne) who had to wife *Elmira*, Daughter to the King *Dom Alphonſo* the Sixte: by whom he was made Seneſchall, Great Maiſter, and his *Alfier Maior*, about the yeare of Grace One Thouſand, One Hundred and Forty.

Of

The Counte Dom Vela Ponce.

Of this mariage came the Counte *Dom Vela Ponce*, who by *Eluira*, Daughter to Counte *Fernandez de Traua*, had the Counte *Dom Ponce de Viegas*, Husband to another *Eluira*, Father and Mother to Count *Pero Ponce*, the Husband of *Aldonsa Alphonso*, the naturall and bastard Daughter to the King of *Leon Dom Alphonso*, and to *Aldonsa de Sylua*, his Loue Lady, daughter to *Martin Gomez de Sylua*, and *Vrraca Velas*. In regard of this Alliance, they of this house bare the Armes of *Leon*, whereof they tooke the title and Sirname, which likewise are the Armes *De la Sylua*. In this Mariage were borne three Sonnes: *Iohn Perez Ponce*, *Ferdinand Perez Ponce*, and *Ruy Perez Ponce*, who was Maister of *Calatraua*.

The great honour of Ferdinand Perez Ponce.

Pernan, or *Ferdinand Perez Ponce*, was one of the very greatest Lords of the Kingdome, and so subscribed himselfe to the Priueledges of *Seuille*, confirmed by *Alphonso* the *Wise*, in the yeare One Thousand, Two Hundred, Threescore and Eight. He had to Wife *Dogna Vrraca Gutierrez de Meneses*, Daughter to *Gutierrez Suarez de Meneses*, and to *Eluira de Sosa*, Daughter to *Iohn Garcia de Sosa*, and *Vrraca Fernandez*. Of this Mariage issued two Sonnes, *Pero Ponce de Leon*, and *Fernan Perez Ponce*. The eldest whereof tooke to Wife *Sancia Gilles Braganssona*, of the linage of *Pereira*, daughter to *Gill de Nugnez de Bragantia*, and *Mary Perez*. And of this Marriage was borne one Sonne, and three Daughters: *Roderigo Ponce*: *Isabella*, *Iana* and *Vrraca*.

The Gouernour of the Asturies.

Roderigo Ponce, Gouernour of the *Asturies*, was tearmed the *Chaste*; because his Wife *Isabella de la Cerda*, and he liued chastely together. So that he leauing not any issue; *Fernan Perez Ponce* came to the inheritance of his Nephewe. And the Daughters were

Isabella, who had to Husband *Pero Fernandez de Castro*, Sirnamed the Warlike, Father and Mother to *Ferdinand do Castro* and *Iana Ponce of Leon*, Queene of *Castile*, the Wife to the King *Dom Pedro*.

A Iuarez Perez de Guzman.

Iana espoused *Iohn Alphonso*, Bastard Sonne to *Dionisius* King of *Portugall*. And of this Mariage issued *Vrraca*, Wife to *Aluarez Perez de Guzman*, Father and Mother of *Theresa Aluarez*, Wife to *Gutierrez d'Aquilar*. And the last Daughter was

Vrraca, Wife to *Enrique Enriquez*, youngest Sonne to the Infant *Dom Enrique*.

Fernand Perez Ponce, Vncle to *Roderigo* the Chaste, was Husband to *Isabella de Guzman*, Daughter of *Alphonso Perez de Guzman*, called the *Good*, and *Mary Alphonso Cornella*: By her he was Lord of *Marchena*, and had also two Sonnes; *Pero Ponce de Leon*, and *Fernan Perez Ponce*, Maister of *Alcantara*.

Rozero de Lauria Admirall of Sicile.

Pero Ponce of *Leon*, Lord of *Marchena*, tooke to Wife *Beatrix de Cherica*, Daughter to *Dom Iaymes*, Lord of *Cherica*; and *Beatrix de Lauria*, Daughter to *Rogero de Lauria* (Admirall of *Sicilie* for the King of *Arragon*, vsurper of that Kingdome against the House of *Anion*, after the *Sicilian* Euensong) and to *Saurina*, Daughter of *Berenguer d'Entensa*, Sonne to the Infant *Dom Iaymes*, and *Elfa d'Albarrazin*, youngest Sonne to King *Iames* of *Arragon*; and *Thereza Gilletta* of *Bidaure*. In regarde of this Alliance with the House of *Arragon*, the said Lord of *Marchena*, and his descendants, deuided their Armes of *Leon*, with them of *Arragon*: *A l'Orle de Gueules chargee de Huict Escussons d'Or, a la Fesse d'Azur*, which is of *Bidaure*, one of the twelue principall Houses of *Nauarre*.

Bidaure one of the twelue principall Houses of Nauarre.

Of this Marriage was borne *Iohn Ponce of Leon*, whom the King of Castille *Dom Pedro* the Cruell (subiect of this digression) caused to bee slaine vpon no occasion, and died without issue, leauing the Succession to his Brother.

Pedro Ponce of *Leon*, Brother of *Mary*, Wife to *Fernand* Lord of *Ledesma*, Brother to King *Henry* the Second, of whom we spake, and died without any Heire: and of *Leonor*, Wife to *Lewes*, Sonne of *Alphonso de Cerda*, Father and Mother to *Iohn de la Cerda* (slaine by the commande of King *Pedro* the Cruell) and of *Isabella de la Cerda*, Wife to *Roderigo Aluarez Ponce*.

Pero Ponce of *Leon*, had the succession of the Lord of *Marchena* his Father. By his Wife *Sancia de Baesa*, Daughter to *Iohn Ruys de Baesa*, and *Theresa de Haro*, he had *Pero Ponce*, Successour in the Sates and Seigneuries of his Father, and *Iohn Ponce*, slaine by the *Moores* of *Granado*. The descent of the Elder, continueth to this present in the Family of *Roderigo Ponce* of *Leon*, Counte of *Medellin*, Lord of *Marchena*, who espoused *Dogna Maria d'Aiala*, Daughter to *Pero Lopez d'Aiala*, Great Chancellour of *Castille*. Of this Marriage issued three Sonne and two Daughters, *Iohn Ponce de*

de Leon, *Lewes Ponce de Leon*, Lord of *Villa-garcia*, and *Fernand Ponce de Leon*. The Daughters were *Sancia*, Wife to *Alphonso Perez de Guzman*, Lord of *Orgaz*, and *Dogna Eluira*, Wife to *Alphonso Fernandez de Cordoua*, Lord of *Alcaudetes*, *Iohn Ponce de Leon*, Count of *Arcos*, and Lord of *Marchena*, was Father to *Roderigo Ponce de Leon*, Marqueese of *Cadiz*, and *Manuell Ponce de Leon*, with other Sonnes and Daughters beside. *Roderigo Ponce*, Second Count of *Baylen*, had to Wife *Yrlanda de Sandobalk* and *de Guzman*, Daughter to the Lord of *Fuentes*; of whom came foure Sonnes: *Manuell*, *Fernand* Bishop of *Leon*; *Roderigo Ponce*, and *Iohn Ponce de Leon*, of the habite of Saint *Iames*. *Dom Manuell*, Count of *Baylen*, espoused *Katharina de Cordoua* Daughter to *Frances Pacheco*, youngest Sonne of *Alphonso d'Aquilar*: and by her he had *Dom Roderigo Ponce de Leon*, Count of *Baylen*, a Knight renowmed in the City of *Oran*, for fighting against the Moores of *Barbarie*.

The Armes of the Counte of Baylen.

Now, to shew that this principall and very greatest Ligne of *Spaine*, is descended from *France* (the fruitfull Nurserie of the whole worlds Nobility) the auncient Armes of this first Count *Ponce* Lord *de la Minerue* in *Languedock*, were *Eschiquettees de Trois Traits de Azur, a Cinq Aigles d'Or en Saultoir* (to witt, two in Chief, one in the hart, & two in Pointe) *et de Gueules a quatre Huchetz, ou Trompes de Chasse, et Cors d'Argent, l'vnen Chef entre deux Aigles, deux en Fesse, l'Aigle entre-deux, et vne en Pointe entre deux Aigles.*

The Moores preuailed against the Spaniards.

I should neuer make an end, if I would obserue all the Families issued of the Noble *Frenche*, passing hence into all the Prouinces and Kingdomes of *Spayne*, only to fight against the Moores, who had vsurped the most part thereof, and so finall a number of naturall *Spanyards* there left: as well it might haue bin without all hope of resource or recouery, for being deliuered from those infidell dogges; but by the succour of the Noble *Frenche*. Come we now to our Kings of *Castille*.

A Briefe Genealogie of the Kings of *Castille*.

XV. *Henry*, Second of the name (the peaceable King of *Castille*, by meanes and succour of the *French*, by *Iane Manuell* his Wife, had a Sonne and a daughter.

Iohn, King of *Castille*; And
Leonora, Queene of *Nauarre*.

By *Beatrix Leonora Ponce* his Concubine, he had
Frederick Duke of *Beneuentum*.

By *Eluira Iniguez*, an other Concubine;
Ioane, Wife to *Alphonso*, Sonne to the Marqueese *de Villena Dom Alphonso*.

By two other Concubines;
Alphonse, Count of *Gigion*; And
Violanta, Wife to *Pedro*, an other Son to the Marqueese *de Villena*.

Henry, died in the Eleuenth yeare of his Reigne, and of Grace One Thousand, Three Hundred Threescore and Nineteene, and then succeeded his Legitimate Sonne

XVI. *Iohn*, whose Reigne likewise extended to Eleuen yeares, being twise married. By his first Wife *Leonora* of *Arragon*, he had two Sonnes, and a Daughter, that died in her young yeares.

His Sonnes were
Henry, King; And
Ferdinand.

Hee had not any Children by *Beatrix* of *Portugall* his Second wife: And he deceased in the yeare One Thousand, Three Hundred, Fourescore and Tenne, leauing the Kingdome to his Eldest Sonne.

XVII. *Henry*, Third of the name, who Reigned Sixteene yeares. By *Constance* of *Lancaster* his wife, he had two Daughters, and a Sonne:
Mary, Queene of *Arragon*,
Iohn, King of *Castille*; And
Constance.

By the death of *Henry*, happening in the yeare of Grace One thousand, foure hundred and sixe, the Crowne of *Castille* came to his only Sonne

XVIII. *Iohn*, Second of the name; but by reason of his minoritie, Queene *Constance* his Mother gouerned the Kingdome. This is the same woman, that gaue the Islandes of the *Canaries* to *Iohn* of *Betancour*, a *Frenche* Knight, whereof hee made the Conquest for her, as we haue already said. The said King *Iohn* of *Castille* espoused *Mary* of *Arragon*, Daughter to his vnckle *Ferdinand*, and by her he had two Daughters, and a Sonne *Constance* died young.

Leonora; And
Henry, King of *Castille*.

By his Second Wife *Isabella* of *Portugall*, Daughter to the Infant of *Portugall Dom Iohn*, Maister of Saint *Iames*, he had a Daughter and a Sonne.

Isabella, Queene of *Castille*; And
Alphonso.

The Reigne of this King *Iohn* the Second, continued Forty Eight yeares: And by his death, happening in the yeare of Grace, 1454, succeeded in the Kingdome his eldest Sonne

XIX. *Henry*, Fourth of the name, Sirnamed the Impotent, who Reigned One and twentie yeares. In his first mariage hee espoused Madame *Blanche* of *Nauarre*, whom he repudiated without any occasion, or hauing any knowledge of her, himselfe not being naturally a man. Hee became amourous of *Iane* of *Portugall*, who was his Second wife: to whom (without regard of his owne impotency) he graunted permission, to haue a Minion to lye with her, by whom shee had a Daughter

Iane, nourished as if shee had bin the Kings Daughter.

By the death of this King *Henry* the Impotent, happening in the yeare, 1475, his Sister by the second bed

XX. *Isabella* was Queene of *Castille*, and of *Leon*, who tooke to be her Husband *Ferdinand*, King of *Arragon* & of *Cicilie*, by whom she had two Sons and three daughters.

Michaell, who died young.
Iohn, dying young also.
Iane, Queene of *Spayne*,
Mary, Queene of *Portugall*; And
Katharine, the occasion of the misbapps of *England*.

The Moores driuen out of *Granada*.

Vnder the Reigne of these Kings the *Moors* of *Granado*, were exterminated, by the surprizall of *Granado*, their chiefe and capitall Citty. In memorie whereof, the said Kings entred at the point of their Armes, *D'Or a la Grenade de Gueules fuellee de Synople*. The name of Catholique King, was giuen to the Kings of *Spayne* after this Conquest: And *Christopher Columbus* began the Conquest of the *Newe World*. The said Queene *Isabella* reigned Nine and Twenty yeares, and died in the yeare of Grace, 1504. By her death her Eldest Daughter,

XXI. *Iane*, was Queene of *Castile*, *Leon* and *Granado*; Wife to *Phillip*, Arch-duke of *Austria*, Count of *Flanders* and the *Nether-Lands*. And

By this Marriage were borne
Leonora Queene of *Portugall*, and afterward of *France*.
Charles, called the Fifte, Emperour, King of *Spayne*.
Isabella, Queene of *Denmarke*.
Ferdinand, Emperour by the demission of *Charles* his Brother.
Mary; And
Katharine.

After the death of *Phillip* the Arch-Duke, happening before his Wife; Shee became some-what troubled in iudgment.

XXII. *Charles*, in the life time of his Mother, tooke the Gouernment of the Kingdomes of *Spayne*, and reigned Two and Fortie yeares. By *Isabell* his Wife, Daughter to the King of *Portugall*, he had Foure Children:

Phillip, King of all the Prouinces of *Spayne*, and of the *Indies*, and Lord of the *Lowe-Countries*:
Mary, Empresse.
Iane, Married in *Portugall*; And
Ferainand, who died young.

By two Concubines hee had a Sonne and a Daughter:

Margaret, Dutchesse of *Parma* and *Placentia*, sometime Gouernesse of the *Low-Countries*; And
Dom John d'Austria, dying without children; Famous for the Battaile of *Lepanto*. By the renunciation of *Charles* the Fift to the Empire, and to the Estates of *Spayne*, his Eldest Sonne

XXIII. *Phillip*, Second of the name, came to the Crowne of *Spayne*, during the life time of his Father, in the yeare One thousand, fiue hundred fifty and eight, and Reigned fifty yeares. He had foure wiues.

By the first Wife, *Mary* of *Portugall*, he had
Charles, who died vnmaried.

By his Second Wife *Mary*, Queene of *England*, he had not any issue.

By his Third Wife Madame *Elizabeth* of *France* (who died great with child) she had two Daughters.

Isabella Clara Eugenia, Lady of the *Lowe-Countries*, liuing yet at this present, Wife to *Albertus* of *Austria*, formerly a Cardinall, but without issue; And

Katharine, Wife to *Charles Emanuell*, Duke of *Sauoye*, who hath a plenteous progenie.

In Fourth Marriage hee espoused his Niece, *Anne* of *Austria*, and by her he had Fiue Children.

Charles, deceasing young.
Laurens-Ferdinand, dying young also.
Diego (that is *Iames*) likewise dying young;
phillip, King; And
N. A Daughter dying young.

By the death of King *Phillip* the Second, happening in September, One thousand, fiue hundred fourescore and eighteene, his onely Sonne

XXIIII. *Phillip*, Third of the name (reigning at this present) came to the Kingdomes of the *Spaynes* & *Indiaes*. By his Wife *Margaret* of *Austria* (deceasing in Childebed Sixe Hundred and Thirteene) he had Three Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

Anne, Married to *Lewes* the Most-Christian King of *France* and of *Nauarre*, Thirteenth of the name, now Reigning.
Phillip, Husband to Madame *Elizabeth* of *France*, Sister to the said Most Christian King.
Mary, who is vnmarried.
Ferdinand,
Laurens
And a Daughter, dying after her Mother.

Now, as concerning the Armes of *Castille*, euery one knoweth, that they are *De Gueules au Chasteau fomme de Trois Tours D'Or*: As is to bee seene in the Glasse windowes of the Holy Chappell Royall, in the Pallace at *Paris*, which Armes of *Castille*, are those of the Queene of *France*, *Blanche* of *Castille*, Mother to Saint *Lewes*. But as we haue said concerning the Armes of *Leon*; the same diuersitie is there touching them of *Castille*. For *Floriano d'Ocampo*, a *Spanish* writer, and the Doctour *Perez Antonio Bentiero* write, that the King of *Castille* and *Leon Alphonso*, Ninth of the name tooke for Armes after the Battaile of *Vbeda*, *De Naues de Tolosa*, in memory of the Castell of *Ferrall*, or the Tent or Pauillion of *Miramomelin*, ouercome by the Christians in the yeare One Thousand, Two Hundred and Twelue. And that before this Battaile, the Kings of *Castille* had no other Seale, but their owne Figure on Horseback, and likewise had no other Armes.

Concerning the Armes of *Castille*.

Miramomelin vanquished by the Christians

In iustification of their saying, they further write, that *Dom Alphonso Raymond*, Fift King of *Castille* (who began to Reigne in the yeare of Grace One Thousand, One Hundred Twentie and Two) carried no other Armes (during his life time) but *L'Escu de France*, such as had bin brought into *Spayne* by *Raymond* of *Bourgongne* his Father, and *Guy* of *Bourgongne* Archbishop of *Vienna*, who afterward was Pope, named *Calixte* the Second. Which the Count of *Lanferote* holdeth for a matter most certaine and assured, speaking concerning the Priuiledges of the Auncient Monasteries of *Spayne*.

The Armes of *Don Alphonso Raymond*, Fift King of *Castille*

En los Priuilegios de los Monoies de Sahagun de los Reyes que le signen no se hallan Armas sino vn Rey a Cauallo. Cosa aueri gada, e llana es que Dom Remon nerno del Sancto Rey Ferdinand Casado con Donna Vrraca fa Hija, que era dela Casa Real de Francia, hermano del Conde de Borgonna, y de Guido Arcobispo de Viena tuuo Armas de Francia, succediendo en el Reyno de Castillia Dom Alonso hijo del mismo Dom Remon, que se llamo Emperador de las Espannas temia l'Escudo de las mismas Armas.

The allegation of Count *de Lanferote*.

Others doe holde, that *Nugno Belchides*, *an Allemaigne* Gentleman dwelling at *Burgos* in *Castille*, brought thither those Armes, and made such apparance thereof by his owne high deseruings, as the tongue of scandale or disgrace, could no way blast his reputation. But for my selfe, I am of the minde, that it hath beene at all times (and vnder the first Iudges) a knowne certaintie; that these Armes were in frequent vse; yea Armes very easie to take from the name of the Countrey, without the inuention of any other. For, as the same Counte (formerly alleadged) saith. *El origen de Toman Castella por Armas fue, por alluision del mismo Reyno de Castilla.* And thereupon he produceth the figure of the Auncient Seale, belonging to the Councell of *Castille*; within the Roundure or Circle whereof was depicted an high mountaine, where in was planted a Castell, charged with three imbattailed Towers: and within another Circle, which made the engirting of the Seale, this Legend written in old *Gothishe* Letters.

The Seale appertaining to the Councell of *Castille*.

✠ *Sel : Del : Concell : De Caſtiella.*

Gariuay concerning King *Alphonſo* the Ninthe.

ET *Gariuay eſcrit, Chapitre Trente Quatre, du Liure Douzieſme, qu'Alphonce Neufuieſme vſoit diſdictes Armes auparauant la Bataile de* Muradal *gagnee l'An* Mille Deux Cents Douze: *comme nous auons dit, & le preuue par l'Original des Priuileges eſcrits en Parchemin en Langue Latine, aux Seaux pendants en Lacs de Soye de diuerſes couleurs, dans leſquels Seaux, d'vn coſte eſt vn Roy a Cheual, & de l'autre vn Chaſteau, leſdicts Priuileges donnez en la Cite de Sainct Dominique de la Calcade es Annees* Mille Cent Quatre-Vingts Sept: et Mille Deux Cents et Sept. *Paſſons aux Ordres Militaires du Royaume de Caſtille.*

And *Gariuay*, or *Garibay*, in the Foure and Thirtieth Chapter of his Twelfth Booke writeth, that *Alphonſo* the Ninth, vſed the ſame Armes before the Battaile of *Muradall*, wunne in the yeare One Thouſand, Two Hundred and Twelue, as we haue already ſaid, He approueth it by the Originall of Priueledges, written in Velam in the Latine tongue, with Seales hanging on Strings of Silke faſtened to them, of diuers coullers, On which Seales, vpon the one ſide was a King mounted on Horſebacke; and on the other ſide a Caſtell, Which Priueledges were giuen and graunted it the Citty of Saint *Dominicke de le Calcade*, in the yeares One Thouſand, Two Hundred and Seauen.

Proceede we now to other Orders, in the Kingdome of *Caſtille*.

The Order of *Calatraua*, Inſtituted in the yeare One Thouſand, One Hundred Fiftie and Eight.

CHAP X.

Of *Calatraua* in elder times.

THe firſt Military Order of *Caſtille*, was that of *Calatraua* (heeretofore a frontire place of *Caſtille* and *Tolledo*, *Oretum Germanarum* by *Ptolomie*, in the dioceſſe of *Calatraua*, ſeated vpon the *Guadiana*, on of the Principalleſt Riuers in *Spayne*, in Latine called *Ana*) which tooke birth and Originall in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, One Hundred Fifty and Eight, according to the leſte teſtimony of *Spaniſhe* Chroniclers, as heere you may reade their owne words.

La Orden De Calatraua, *comenco en el* Anno *de* 1158. *en tiempo del Rey don Sancho de Caſtilla, tomando nombre del Caſtillo de* Calatraua. *El qual ſiendo de la Orden de los Templarios, y no hallandoſe poderoſos para defender lo contra la fuerca de los Moros, lo dieron al Rey Don Sancho, Y Ofreciendoſe Raymundo Natural de Burueua Abad del Monaſterio de Sancta* Maria De Fitero, que es el re yno de nau arra *de la Orden de Ciſtel, y Frey Diego Velaſquez de la miſma Orden (que antes auia ſido gran Caualliero en Armas) y otros Caualleros, y Hermanos d'eſta Orden a ſu defenſa. El Rey ſe la dio,* Yde Aqui tvvo Principio Eſta Orden Y Caualleria *cuya inſignia es la Cruz Roxa* Floreteada, *que tomaron por Deuiſa en los pechos a imitacion de los Caualleros Franceſes de la Sancta Cruzada, que por eſtos tiempos paſſauan a la guerra de vltra Mar. Sus Armas ſon la miſma Cruz en campo de Oro, y a los lados d'ella dos Trauas Azules, para inſignion del Caſtillo de Calatraua, de donde tuuo ſu Principio.*

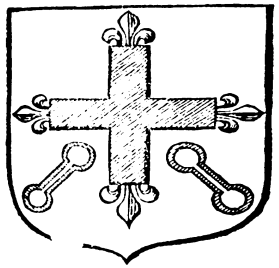
And as the Authour hath made it Spaniſhe, ſo is it thus Engliſhed.

The Order of Calatraua *tooke her beginning in the yeare One Thouſand, One Hundred, Fifty and Eight, Vnder the Reigne of* Sancio, *Third of the name, he being Sirnamed the* Deſired, El Deſſeado, *Sixte King of* Caſtille, (*Sonne to* Alphonſo Raymond, *King of* Caſtille, *Sonne to* Raymond *of* Bourgongne, *Husband of* Vrraca, *Daughter to* Ferdinand *the Saint*) *and tooke his appellation of the Caſtell of* Calatraua, *which is an* Arabick *worde, properly ſignifying a Caſtell, a diction retained*

retained yet to this day, in the names of Calataiud, Calacanaſor, Calahorra, Calazeit *and* Cala, *in the territorie of* Seuille: *that is as much to ſay, as the Caſtels of* Taiud, Canaſor, de Horra, *and of* Zeit. *So this name of* Calatraua *is compounded of the Arabicke* Cala, *and of the Spaniſh* Trauas, *which ſignifieth* Entarues, *and* Menotes, *Mancles, Gines or Trons, to faſten about the feete and wriſts of Priſoners. This Caſtle hauing bin wonne from the Moores of* Andalouzia, *and wherein they lockt vp Chriſtians very ſtrictly; was giuen to the Knights Templers, onely to guard and defend it. But they vpon tydings, that the Moores leuyed a puiſſant Armie for regayning the ſame Caſtle; began to quake timerouſly, and ſcratch their heads for further conſideration; being vtterly diſtruſtfull of their owne Forces, and ſo rendered vp the Caſtle to King* Sancio *of* Caſtille.

The compoſition of the name *Calatraua*.

Before whom *Dom Raymond*, a natiue of *Burcua*, Abbot of the Monaſterie of *Santa Maria de Hytero*, preſented himſelfe (they being places ſcituated in the Kingdome of *Nauarre*) and he being of the Order of the *Ciſteaux*; with him alſo was Fryer *Diego Velaſquez*, of the ſame Order. He hauing ſeene ſome courſes of the world, had bin a Knight of great renowne, famous for his proweſſe and valiancie, and ſome other Brethren of the ſaid Order, and diuers other Knights beſide, who offred themſelues to keepe this frontierd Caſtell, whereto the King very gladly condeſcended: And from hence aroſe the Order of *Calatraua*.



The manner of their Croſſe and enblazon thereof.

The Armes and Noates, *Is a Red Croſſe Floureedeluced*, which the Knights of this Order tooke for their Deuiſe, and weare vpon their breaſts, by the modell of the *French* Knights of the Holy Croiſade, at ſuch time as they went to conquer and guard the Holy-Land. The Shield of their Armes was *D'Or à la meſme Croix de Gueulles, & en pointe aux deux coſtes d'icelle Deux Entraues & Menettes d'Azur*: So affirmeth the Count of *Lanſerote*. This Abbey of *Hytero* is in the Dioceſſe of *Palenca* in *Caſtile*, ſeated vpon the Riuer of *Piſuerga*.

The Nobilitie aſſiſted bountifully ſo good a beginning.

After that the King of *Caſtile* had giuen the place to theſe Monkes, they were quickly aſſiſted by the Nobilitie of *Caſtile* and *Tolledo*, who furniſhed them with Money, Armes, Horſes, munition and victuals, neceſſary for keeping a Caſtle, that was to expect a long beſiedging. And the more to animate and encourage them in well doing, the ſame King *Sancio* made a preſent to God, the Virgin *Mary*, and to the Abbot *Raymond*, his Monkes and Congregation of the Order of the *Ciſteaux*; of ſundry liberall gifts both preſent, and alwayes after to perpetuitie; with the ſaid Caſtle of *Calatraua*, all the confines, Mountaines, Lands, Riuers, Medowes, Paſturegrounds, Rights, Nominations, Reaſons, and Actions, appertaining any way thereinto the Kings of *Caſtile*, which he ratified by his Letters Patents, and were giuen in the yeare before dated.

The Kings liberality to the Order of *Calatraua*.

The Abbot *Dom Raymond*, (hauing taken poſſeſſion and ſeizure of the place) planted his Monkes therein, and went backe to his Monaſterie. And there (in the neighbouring parts round about it) he aſſembled together a great number of people, amounting (well neere) to twentie thouſand me; who with their Goods, Houſhold-ſtuffe, Families and Cattell, came and peopled in and about *Calatraua*, ſo that the Moores durſt neuer be ſo bold, as once aduenture to beſiedge it.

The diſcreete prouidence of Abbot *Raymond*.

Now, in the time of *Alphonſo*, fourth of the name, King of *Caſtile*, and called the Noble; a great number of Noble Caſtillians, hauing vndertaken the Rule & Cloathing of this Order of *Calatraua*: it fortuned that the Order augmented and encreaſed wondrouſly. And now (of themſelues) they grew deſirous, to be vnder the Gouernment of a great Maiſter, that might make them ap", and leade them forth to Warre. In imitation of other Militarie Orders of Knights, as of the *Sepulcher*, the *Temple*, Saint *Lazarus*, Saint *John*, and other *Orders of Paleſtine*. The Great Maiſter had his Counſell, conſiſting of thirteene Commanders, and Officers of Receipts.

The first Great Maister of this Order, was *Dom Garcia Redon.*
After whom succeeded *Dom Martin Perez* of *Syon.*

The Battaile of *Alarcos.* And next to him was Successor *Dom Nugno Perez de Quignones*, who was slaine in the Battaile of *Alarcos*, wonne by the *Miramomelin* (this *Arabicke* word signifieth *The Prince of beleeuers*) *Ioseph Macemud* passing out of *Affrica* to *Seuile*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred foureſcore and fifteene. The King *Alphonſo* of *Leon*, was brought ſore wounded out of the Battaile, which was loſt by him, and wherein dyed *Sancio Fernandez de Lemos*, Great Maiſter of the *Order of Saint Iames of the Sword*; *Dom Ruy Velaſco*, Commander Maior of the ſaid Order; *Iohn Arias de Monteroſo*, Knight of *Galicia*, and thirteenth man of the ſaid Order: *Dom Ruy Gonſales Giron*, a wealthie Burgeſſe of *Caſtile*; and *Dom Sancio Garcia de Salzedo*, a mightie rich man, Lord *de la Caſa d' Aiala*, and an infinite number of Chriſtians beſide.

Such as periſhed in the Battaile.

The fourth Great Maiſter was *Dom Martin Martinez.*

The Knights of this Order had their firſt Conuent at *Calatraua*, and then afterward at *Ciruelos*, at *Buxeda*, at *Corcoles*, and at the Caſtle of *Saluatierre*, and vnder their twelfth Great Maiſter *Dom Nugno Hernandez*: Their chiefe place of Order was eſtabliſhed at *Couos*, where it remaineth yet at this preſent. This Order hath bin in ſuch manner enriched by the Kings of *Leon* and *Caſtile*, that at the warres againſt the Moores, they alwayes furniſhed three hundred Lances compleate; which is the ordenarie furniture for the *Gendarmerie* or Compleate Horſe, belonging to the Commanderies of the ſaid Order. And here you may ſee what number there are of them in *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Galicia*, *Andalouzia*, with other Prouinces and Kingdomes of *Spaine.*

The chiefe place of the Order at this preſent.

A Catalogue or Calender of the *Commanderies*, belonging to the Order of Knights of *Calatraua.*

1. *The Maior Commanderie.*
2. *Clauerra.*
3. *Obreria.*
4. *Argamaſilla.*
5. *The Commanderies of Malagon.*
6. *Manſanares.*
7. *Almagro.*
8. *Montanxeulos.*
9. *Daymiel.*
10. *Villarunia.*
11. *Val de Pegna.*
12. *El Viſo.*
13. *Sancta Cruz.*
14. *Fuente el Moral.*
15. *Les Caſas de Ciudad-Real.*
16. *Caſtellanos.*
17. *Almodauar del Campo.*
18. *Puerto-llano.*
19. *Corral de Caracuel.*
20. *Piedra-buena.*
21. *Herrera.*
22. *Fuente del Imperador.*
23. *Carrion.*
24. *Guadalerza.*
25. *Meſtanſa.*
26. *Caſtilſeras.*
27. *Baleſteros.*
28. *Alcolea.*
29. *Poſſuelo.*
30. *Torroua.*
31. *Bolagnos.*
32. *Moral.*
33. *Almiradiel.*
34. *Hauanilla.*
35. *Las Caſas de Seuille.*
36. *Les Caſes de Cordua.*
37. *Belmer.*
38. *Villa-franca.*
39. *Lopera.*
40. *Canaueral.*
41. *Ximena.*
42. *Recena.*
43. *Pegna de Martos.*
44. *Biuoras.*
45. *Moratalaz.*
46. *Torres.*
47. *Canena.*
48. *Valaga.*
49. *Almoguera.*
50. *Carita.*
51. *Auignon.*
52. *Verniches.*
53. *Las Caſas de Talauera.*
54. *Las Caſas de Toledo.*
55. *Huerta.*
56. *Val de Caruanes.*
57. *Las Caſas de Plaiſance.*
58. *Ateca.*
59. *Cerezuela.*
60. *Ottos.*
61. *Calatraua la Vieille.*

Com-

Commanderies that are in Aragon.

1. *Alcaniz.*
2. *Monroijo.*
3. *Pegna Roija.*
4. *Fraxaneda.*
5. *Ralſas.*
6. *Caſtelſeras.*
7. *Laguna rotta.*
8. *Et Molinos.*

Chiefe Priories in *Caſtile.*

In *Valentia* there are many places belonging to this Order, whereof the moſt principall Priories are in *Caſtile*; as namely thoſe of *Seuille*, *Granado*, *Iaen*, *Alhama*, *Fuenſeliente*, *Porcuna*, *Suqueſa*, and *Villatoro.*

Approbation and confirmation by Popes.

This Order was approued by Pope *Alexander*, third of the name, who tooke it into the eſpeciall protection and ſafegard of the Apoſtolicall Seate, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand one hundred threeſcore and foure: And confirmed by Pope *Innocent*, third of the name, One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and nineteene.

The firſt habite.

At the beginning, theſe Knights did weare their Roabes and Scapularies of white colour, as formerly did the *Ciſteaux* Monkes. Pope *Benedict*, third of the name, diſpenſed with them for that habite Monaſticall: And Pope *Paule* the third gaue them permiſſion to marrie once in their life time; but not to haue any benefit of a ſecond mariage.

Diſpenſation for mariage.

The laſt Great Maiſter of this Order, was *Dom Garcia Lopez de Padilla*, who dyed in the yeare of Grace One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and nine; when *Ferdinand* of *Arragon* and his wife *Iſabella*, King and Queene of *Leon* and *Caſtile*, found the meanes to ioyne and annexe the Great Maiſterſhip of *Calatraua* to the Crowne of *Caſtile*: which reunion happened by permiſſion of Pope *Innocent*, eight of the ſame, in the ſame yeare before obſerued. So that (in time) the three Great Maiſterſhips of the *Orders of Saint Iames of the Sword*, *Of Calatraua*, and of *Alcantara*, were annexed to the Crowne of *Spaine*, in fauour of Prince *Charles*, afterward King of the *Spaines*, and Emperour, fift of the name: By the Buls of the Popes, *Alexander* the ſixt, *Leo* the tenth, and *Adrian* the ſixt. By whoſe meanes, the Kings of *Spaine* enioy the Reuennues of theſe three Great Maiſterſhips, whereof they beare the titles, and qualifie perpetuall Adminiſtrators.

The Great Maiſterſhip ioyned to the Crowne of *Caſtile.*

The Order of the Band, or of the red Scarfe, Inſtituted in *Caſtile*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand three hundred and thirtie: By the King of *Leon* and *Caſtile*, *Dom Alphonſo*, eleauenth and laſt of the name.

CHAP. XI.

L'Ordre de la Bande, & de l'Eſcharpe Rouge.

THE firſt perticuler Order, eſtabliſhed by the Kings of *Caſtile*, to honor their Nobilitie (being not reſtrained vnder any Monaſticall Rule) was that *Of the Band*, or *of the Redde Scarfe*: in regard that the Knights of this Order, did weare a Band or Riband of redde Silke, containing the bredth of foure fingers, and in the forme or faſhion of a Scarfe, from the top of the left ſhoulder, deſcending vnder the right arme. It was Inſtituted by the King of *Caſtile* and *Leon* *Dom Alphonſo*, eleauenth and laſt of the name, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and thirtie; according to the teſtimony of *Dom Antonio de Gueuara*, Biſhop of *Mondognedo*, in the Epiſtle which he wrote to the Count of *Benenentum* *Dom*

The time of the Inſtitution

Dom Pedro Pimentello, inserted among his *Golden Epistles*; but he nameth this Institution to be done in the Citie of *Palencea*.

None but yonger Brothers, and meane Gentlemen, of poore and slender sufficiency, were receiued into this Order of the *Band*. And yet they must haue followed the Court the space of ten years (or fought three times at the least) against the *Moores*. And here we haue set downe the Rules and Obseruations, which the Knights of this Order receiued in their Colling or Embracing, & were sworne to keepe inuiolably.

The Knights to be entertained

The Articles and Constitutions for the Knights of the Band.

1. THat the Knight of the *Band* stood obliged, to speake to the King, for the defence of his Countrey, and good of the Common-wealth.

2. That he must speake to the King nothing but pure truth, without lying or flatterie, and must reueale whatsoeuer he hath heard spoken, either against his person, or the State.

3. A Knight once conuicted of Lying, shall walke a moneths space, without wearing a Sword.

4. He is not to keepe companie, but with Martiall men and Souldiers, or such as are aduanced to charges and dignities of his owne qualitie: but not with Mechanicall Artizans, and men of base or vile condition.

5. He must keepe his faith and promise inuiolably, to and with all men, of what estate or qualitie soeuer they be.

6. He must be prouided of Armes and of a Horse well appointed, vnder paine of loosing the title of his Knighthood.

7. And on the same perill he standeth, if he be seene mounted on his Mule, without his *Band*, and Sword.

8. He is not to make any complaint of wounds by him receiued in war: neither is tov aunt of his valour and manhood.

9. He is not to make any account, if he be mockt, scorned or railed on by any body: but to haue all his carriage discreete and graue, and wholly measured by the leuell of honestie.

10. He is not to vse any Gaming at Cards or Dice: and must not pawne or engage his Habits, Armes or Horse.

11. He must be courteous towards Ladies and Gentlewomen, to whom he shall performe honor and seruice, to his vttermost power.

12. If any quarrell happen between him and another Knight of the *Band*, he standeth bound, to commit it to the Arbitrement of other Knights of the *Band*, such as shall be appointed thereto.

13. Any Knight that vsurpeth to weare the *Band*, without hauing receiued it from the Kings hand; shall stand engaged, to defend himselfe against two Knights of the *Order of the Band*. And if it so happen, that he haue the victorie; he may lawfully keep and maintaine it: but if he be vanquished, he shall be banished from the Court.

14. Euery strange Knight, that winneth the prize either in Iousts, Tourneyes, or other Actions of Armes, against the Knights of the *Band*; shall be receiued and admitted into the Order.

15. Any Knight of the *Band*, that setteth hand to his Sword against another Knight of the same *Order*; shall be banished the Court for two Moneths space, and during the time of two other Moneths after; he shall weare but an halfe *Band*. But if he wound his Companion; he shall remaine imprisoned halfe a yeare, and is to be banished the Count for another halfe yeare.

16. The King onely is to be Iudge for the Knights of the *Band*.

17. All the Knights of the *Band* stand obliged to accompany the King, at all times, and as he shall goe to warres.

18. The Knights of the said Order shall weare the *Band*, when they march in warre against the Moores onely: but if their seruice shall be required any where else, there they are to abstaine from wearing it.

19. All Knights of the *Band*, are to meete together three seuerall times in this yeare,

ere, that they may speake to the King, for those things which necessarily con-rne the Order; when it is to bee appointed by the King, that they shall bee all ell mounted and armed. And those Assemblies or meetings are to bee in the onthes of April, September, and at Christmasse.

20. They are to exercise Iousts, *Ioco de Canna* and Pikes, also to mannage their orses, on such dayes as are ordained for them.

21. No Knight shall remaine in the Court, without seruing some Lady or Gent-woman; to enioy her in Marriage, or otherwise in honor.

22. All Knights of the Band, are bound to be present at such Tourneyes; as shall performed within Ten Miles of the Court.

23. If it so happen, that a Knight of the *Bande*, doe marry within Twenty iles distance from the Court; the other Knights are to keepe him company, and onour his Spouse with Presents, yea, and to performe actions of Armes, as it be-ommeth Knights to doe.

24. All the first Sundayes of euery Moneth, the Knights are to bee present at e Pallace, and in the Great Hall Royall, to exercise all kindes of Armes before e King: yet without any malice, spleene or heate of choler, but onely in louing anner to exercise their Armes.

25. Any Knight sickning, or being neere to death, is to be visited, exorted d comforted by his Companions: And after his decease, the said Companions are to bee assisting at his Funeralls, and to weare mourning the space of Moneth, in which Moneth they are to abstaine from Iousts and sports of rmes.

26. The Band of the Knight deceased, shall bee deliuered to the King by the o-er Knights, who must intercede and moue his Maiesty, that one of the deceased nights Sonnes may be receiued into their Order, or to obtaine of him some gift d recompence to his Widow, for her more honourable maintenance in the de-ee of Nobility, or for Marriage of her Daughters.

The First Knights of the Order, and the First Chapter.

This Order the first Chapter whereof was held in the City of *Bourgos*, and the eare of the Institution) was obserued by the same King of *Castile*, last of the name: ho gaue it (within a while after) to his foure Sonnes, and to fifteene other Knights nly, to make vp the number of Twenty persons.

His Sonnes were

Dom Pedro, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, Sirnamed the *Cruell*.

Dom Henry.

Dom Ferdinand; And

Dom Tello.

Of the Fifteene, the first man was *Dom Pero Fernandez de Castro*, Great Maister f the Hostell to the King *Alphonso*, and Knight of Saint *Iames*, the most valiant ord that was then in all Spaine: who was the man that put on the Kings ght Spurre; (I meane the King *Alphonso*) when he was made Knight of the *Bande*. And the other was *Dom Lewes de la Cerda*, who was Sonne to the Infant of *Castile* that did put on the left Spurre. According as it is obserued by the Count of *Lanzarote* in the first Booke of his Nobility, the Hundred and Eleauenth Chapter, nd these are his wordes.

Despues en el Anno de 1330. quando el Rey Don Alanso instituyo la Orden de la Vanda, fue armado Cauallero en la Iglesia de Sanct Iago en Bourgos: la calcaron las Espuelas Dom ero de Castro, y Dom Luys de la Cerda hijo de l'Infante Dom Alanso. Y quando el Rey rmo Caualleros a los ricos hombres, el Primero fue Dom Pero Fernandez de Castro. El qual uego que recebio la Orden de Vanda, la dio y armo a otros catorze Caualleros. And heere ollow the Fifteene Knights.

t the First Chapter were made these Fifteene Knights.

- Ero Fernandez de Castro.
- Iean Nugnez.
- mry Henriquez.
- Alphonce Fernand Cornel.
- Lopez Dias d'l Amasan.
- Ferdinand Perez Porto Carrero.
- Charles de Gueuara.
- Ferdinand Henriquez.
- Aluarez Garcia d'Albornoz.

Garcia

Garcia Ioffrey Tenorio.
Iean Eſteuanes.
Diego Garcia de Toledo.
Martin Alphonce de Cardone.
Concales Ruy de la Vegua, &
Iean Alphonce de Benauides.

At the Second Chapter were made theſe twenty Knights.

Garcia Laſo de la Vega.
Ferdinand Garcia Duque.
Garcia Fernandez Tello.
Pero Goncal d' Aguero.
Iean Alphonce Cariello.
Inigo Lopez Horoſco.
Garcia Guttierres de Carnaiall.
Guttierre Fernandez de Toledo.
Diego Fernandez de Caſtiello.
Pero Ruys de Villegas.
Alphonce Fernandez Iueze.
Ruy Gonçalez de Caſtagneda.
Ruy Ramirez de Guziman.
Sance Martinez de Leyua.
Iean Gonçalez de Bacan.
Pero Trillo.
Suero Perez de Quignones.
Goncalo Mexia.
Ferdinand Cariello, &
Iean de Roias.

At the Third Chapter, theſe Seauenteene Knights.

Pero Aluarez Oſorio.
Pero Perez de Padilla.
Gil de Quintagna.
Iean Roderiguez de Villagas.
Diego Perez Sarmiento.
Mendo Rodriguez de Viezma.
Iean Fernandez Cornell.
Iean de Cerueçela.
Iean Roderiguez de Ciſneroz:
Orcion de Liebana.
Iean Fernandez Delgadillo.
Gomez Capiello.
Beltran de Gueuara.
Iean Tenorio.
Obierto de Tordeſillas.
Iean Fernandez de Bahamon; &
Alphonce Tenorio.

At the Inſtitution of this Order, there were none receiued or entertained, but men of the moſt noble and Famous Families of Spaine, the greater part whereof are gone and expired. But the reſt haue conſerued themſelues in Honour and great wealth, euen to this inſtant. As the *Velaſques, Manriques, Pimentels, Mendoſaes, de Cordua, Pacheco, d'Eſtuniga, Faiardos, Aurellanos, Tendillas, Cueuas, Andradas, Fonſecas, Luna, Villandrado, Stomayores,* and others at this preſent illuſtrious in *Spaine*, whom they tearme *Grandes:* who haue permiſſion to couer their heads in the Chamber of the King of *Spaine.*

Two noble Families yet remaine of this Order.

This Order was continued by the Succeſſors, Sonnes and Deſcendants of the ſaid *Alphonſo*, King of *Leon* and *Caſtile*, laſt of the name. For vnder the Reigne of King *Iohn*, Firſt of the name, the Emperour *Sigiſmond* hauing made a Voyage into *Spaine*, to the end of mediating the quietneſſe of the Church, then troubled with a Schiſme betweene the Kings of *Arragon, Portugall* and *Caſtile:* the ſame King gaue this Order to ſome Princes and Lords, attending in the traine of the ſaid Emperour *Sigiſmond*, as *Garibay* hath related in his Hiſtory.

The Emperor *Sigiſmonds* comming into Spayne.

And concerning this Order of the *Bande*, the memories thereof are to bee found in moſt part of the noble Houſes of *Spaine*, as well in *Caſtile* and *Leon*, as in *Portugall, Arragon* and *Nauarre*, in the Armes charged with Bandes, ſome of *Gueules* or of *Synople*, and the Mettals & Cólours retained in the noble Science of Herauldry: the moſt part of which Armes haue the *Bande* held and ſupported by two Leopards mouthes, which they tearme *Dragantes*.

The

The Order of the Doue, or of the Holy-Ghoſt: Inſtitutee in *Segobia* in *Caſtile*, in the Yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Three Hundred, Threeſcore and Nineteene: By *Iohn* the Firſt, Sixteenth King of the Name, of *Caſtile*.

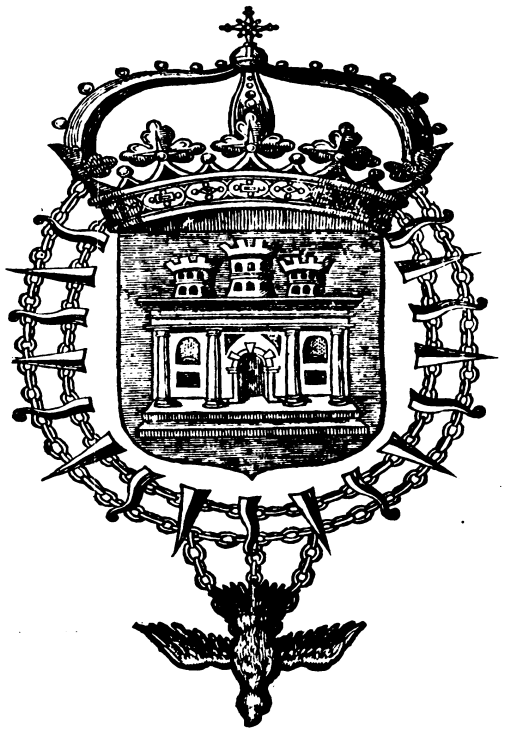
CHAP. XII.

Iohn, Firſt of the name, the Sixteenth King of *Caſtile*, was Author of the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, otherwiſe tearmed of the *Pidgeon* or *Doue*. Inſtituted in the City of *Segobia*, in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Three Hundred, Three Score and Nineteene.

L'Ordre de la Colombe ou du Sainct Eſprit.

But there are ſome Spaniſh authors, who doe report and referre this Inſtitution to King *Henry*, being his Sonne, the Third of the name.

But bee it referred either to the Father or his Sonne; one of them cauſed the number of Collars to bee made, linked or chained with *Rayons* or ſplendant beames of the Sunne, *Ondoyant* or wauing and pointed, whereat hung a Doue of Gold enamelled with White, the Bee and Beake or Bill being Gueules or Red, comming of the Breſt, euen as if it flew, and deſcended downe from heauen to the Earth.



The Collar of the Order.

He adorned himſelfe with his Collar, on the Feaſt-day of *Pentecoſte*, in the yeare before ſpecified, and diſtributed the other Collars to his moſt intimate Fauourites: giuing to each of them a faire named Booke, containing the Statutes and Ordinances thereof, which hee would haue them to obſerue and keepe.

The diſtribution of his Collers.

But this Order was of ſmall continuance, by reaſon of the Inſtitutours death, which happened in the very ſame yeare of his Inſtitution: it being leftwithout any reſource and memory, to the Kings his deſcendants in *Caſtile*.

Laudamus Veteres, ſed noſtris vtimur Annis.

The Order of Saint Sauiour of Montreall, called the Order of *Arragon*: Instituted in the Kingdome of *Arragon*, in the Yeare, One Thousand, One hundred and Twenty, by *Alphonso*, Eighteenth of the Name, King of *Nauarre* and *Arragon*.

CHAP. XIII.

The Originall and beginning of the Kingdome of Arragon.

L'Ordre de S. Sauueur de Montreall.

THe First King of the *Gothes*, that from the plenteous and abounding *Gaules*, attempted the Conquest of *Spaine* (saith *Augustino Cranata*, a Spanish and Romane Antiquary) and made his people to dwell in the Prouinces seated in the steepie descending Vallies, amongst those high aspiring Mountaines, called *Pyrenean*, and namely in the Countries of *Rousillion*, *Cerdaignia*, *and Cathalegna*, so called by the *Gothes* and *Alains*, was King *Vallia*, as wee haue formerly said in the Second Booke Page 194. in the yeare of Grace, Foure hundred and Twenty. For they are but dreames and idle imaginations, to referre their beginning and first entrance, to the Kings *Athanaricus* and *Alaricus*, who neuer saw Spaine, except it were in painting, whereat the most iudicious Writers of *Spaine* make a meere mockery, as a thing imagined, and farre from any certainty; so speaketh (and very aduisedly) the Count de *Lansarote* in his *Andalouzia*. *Yo no signo estas Antiguedades y principios, por tenerlos por sin fundamento, sino las cosas mas communes y llanas segun la sensillez de aquellos primeros tiempos, onde no tenian noticia de Las Armas de los Reyes Godos, ni aun de las Historias dellos. I follow not the Principles of those Antiquaries, to hold them fundamentall, except in matters that are most common, and according to the most sensible of those precedent times, wherein no notice was taken, concerning the Armies of the Gothish Kings, nor any of their Histories.*

Contradiction in diuers of the Spanish Writers.

Rodericke last King of the *Gothes* in *Spaine*.

It is a matter most certaine and assured, that after the death of *Roderick*, the last King of the *Gothes* in Spaine; the Moores possessed themselues of the foremmed Prouinces, and had the enioying of them still: vntill the time of *Charles Martell*, Duke of the French, who gaue charge to his Kinsman *Odilon*, Duke of *Aquitaria* to conquer them, as indeed hee did.

Barcellona surrendred to King *Charlemagne* by a Spanish Moore named *Zatun*.

But by reason of his death, the Moores reconquered those places formerly taken from them, and namely the City of *Barcelona*, which they possessed till the time of our King *Charlemagne*, to whom a Spanish Moore surrendred it, making himselfe his Liedgeman, Subiect, and Tributary, as is obserued by all the ancient Annalists of those times, both Spanish and French, *Barcinona Hispaniæ Ciuitas quæ iam pridem à Francis defecerat, per* Zatun *Saracenum Præfectum eius, Carlo reddita est*. But as the Saracens make Trophees, of infringing and violating the faith which they gaue to Christians: so this *Zatun* (by little and little) turned his coate and credit, and being taken by the French, was banished perpetually. And the Gouernment of that good City (with the neighbouring Prouinces) giuen by *Charlemaigne* to a Count of his owne House, named *Bera*, which happened in the yeare of Grace, Eight Hundred and One.

Bera Eighteenth Vicount of *Barcellona* [illegible]

This *Bera* (to little or no purpose at all called *Bernard*) was accused of Felony and Treason, so that hee was enforced to fight himselfe in single Combate, and in an enclosed Field against him that had accused him, and threw downe his Gauntlet as Wager of Battaile. By want of witnesses to auerre the Fact, hauing beene vanquished, and knowne for a false lyer by his owne confession: King *Lewes* the Debonnaire, Sonne and Successour to *Charlemaigne*, banished him to the City of *Reus*, in [illegible]

the yeare Eight Hundred and Twenty. In whose place and office he established as Gouernour in all those Prouinces, a neere Kinsman of his owne named *Bernard*, who brought the Moores of the Countrey to tearmes of duty and obedience. But being accused (through enuy) of some priuate familiarity with the Empresse, Wife to *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*: he was remoued, so that an *Alemaigne* or *Germaine* Lord or Count, named *Geoffrey d' Aria*, was appointed in his place, he being the most forward and actiue man at Armes, amongst all them of his time, and hee had the Gouernment.

Bernard displaced, and another appointed.

This Count had to his Wife a French Lady, named *Almira*, of whom hee begot a Sonne called

Geoffrey, Sirnamed *The Hairy*, to whom our King and Emperour of the Romanes *Charles*, called the *Baulde*, gaue for his Armes his *Escu d'Or, charge de Quatre Paulx de Gueules*. by reason of foure fingers all bloodied, which the said *Geoffrey* the *Hairy* returning from a charge vpon the *Moores*, had laid on his Shield by the said *Charles* the *Baulde*.

The Spaniards are all of this consent, that from thence came the Armes to the Count of *Barcellona*, and to the Kingdome of *Arragon*, euen to this present.

The Armes of the Count of *Barcellona* & *Arragon*.

The Count of *Lansarote* writeth, that in the Battaile so famously renowned, called *Los Naues de Tolosa*, the King *Dom Pedro* of *Arragon*, had not any particular Standard and Banner: because (saith hee) long time before that, the Kings of *Arragon had forsaken the Armes of that Kingdome* (which were *D' Azur à la Croix pattee au pied fiché d'Argent au Quartier d'Honneur*) *and receiued them of the Count of* Barcellona, *which* Buchurere, *D Or à Quatre Paulx de Gueules, Armes, which according to the testimony of* Antonio Beuthero, *were won by the same occasion, and by* Geoffrey *of the* Allemaigne *Nation, to whom the Emperour* Charlemaigne *gaue to Wife, one of his owne Kinswomen, called Almira.*

Of Count *Geoffrey*, and his Sonne Surnamed the *Hairy*.

This *Geoffrey* was Lord of the Castle *d'Aria*, in the County of *Rousillon*, and afterward Count of *Barcellona*. Hee had a Sonne named the *Hairy*, Successour in the said County of *Barcellona*, who being with his *Barcellonians* present in the Army of the Emperour *Lewes* the *Debonnaire* (wee must read his Sonne *Charles* the *Baulde*) in the Battaile which hee gaue against the *Normans*: at the issue thereof, all couered with blood, which ran out of his wounds, the Emperour perceiuing the Count to haue a Golden Shield, gaue him those *Quartre Paulx de Gueules*, for Armes to him and his Descendants. And the Kings of *Arragon*, euen to this day, doe hold them for their Armes Royall.

The Armes of Spaniards.

Iosfre el Velloso hallandose coulos Barcellonescses en auiuda del Emperador Ludouico, en la Batalla, que tuuo con los Normandos, saliendo della tinto en sangue de heridas que recibio, leuando en el Armes el escudo darado sin deuisas, el Emperador Vnto quatre dedo de sumano en la sangre del Conde, y lopasso de alto à Banca por el Scudo diziendole. Estas Seran, Conde, Vuestras Armas *de las quales vsaronsus Descendientes, y vsa la casa Real de Arragon.*

Part of the Countie of *Arragon* giuen to *Geoffrey* the *Hairy* to hold of the Crown of France.

To the same *Geoffrey* the *Hairy*, *Charles* the *Bauld* gaue likewise part of the Countie of *Arragon*, newly conquered by the French from the Moores: to hold with that of *Barcellona*, and the Lands of *Rousillion* and *Cerdaignia* in full propriety, hee and his Descendants, vnder Liedge Homage and authority of the Crowne of France, whom the Counts and Kings of *Arragon* long time acknowledged for their Soueraignes, setting downe at the beginning of their publique Acts, the name and yeare of the Reigne of the most Christian Kings of France; vntill the time which we haue formerly obserued in the Second Booke of these Recherches.

Aznar the first Count of *Arragon*.

Wee haue heeretofore declared, that *Aznar*, youngest Sonne to Duke *Eudes*, despoiled of *Aquitaine* by the French Armies; made his retreat into *Nauarre*, where he had a Sonne named likewise *Aznar*, First Count of *Arragon*, who was the Father of

Galindo; And of

Ximenes Garcia.

Galindo was inueſted by the King of *Nauarre Garcia Inigo*, in the ſmall City of *Iaca*, the firſt Conqueſt of *Garcia Ximenes* made vpon the Moores, and ſome other places elſe thereabout, with title of Count of *Arragon*, vnder Authority and liedge homage to the Crowne of *Arragon*. This extendure of the Countrey, watered by the ſmall Riuers of *Arga*, and of *Arragon*, hath taken name of the ſaid Riuer of *Arragon*, which falleth into the great Flood of *Iberus*.

How the Countrey firſt tooke name.

The principall City of this Kingdome is *Sarragoſſa* (ſeated on the ſaid Flood of *Iberus*) named by *Pliny* in the Third Book and Third Chapter of his naturall Hiſtory *Salduba*, placed or ranked by *Paulinus*, among the very faireſt Cities of *Spaine*.

And indeed it is ſo, for I my ſelfe being there a whole Lent time, in the yeare Foure Score and Eight, am able to auouch it for truth.

The Count of *Arando* Vice-Roy of *Arragon*.

At that time the Count of *Arando* made his entrance thereinto, according to the quality of a Vice-Roy, and Gouernour of *Arragon*, to whom the King of Spaine (within a while after) ſhewed but ſlender kindneſſe, becauſe he had medled a little too farre, in the buſineſſe of the Secretary of State *Dom Antonio Perez*, who dyed at *Paris*, ſome few yeares ſince.

The Counts of *Arando* had their firſt dwelling on the Riuer of *Duero*, where was their Houſe *Arando de Ducro*, hauing diuerſity of Armes belonging to this Houſe.

The Armes of the Counts of *Arando*.

For ſome carried *De Leon party de Gueules à vn Chaſteau plante ſur vn Pont d'Argent maſonne de Sable à vne Riuiere Ondee d'Argent & d'Azur*. And others carried ſimply *De Gueules audict Chaſteau & Pont à Trois Arches d'Argent & Six Ondes d'Azur, & d'Argent à la Bordure d'Or, chargee de Huict Arreſts de Lance*, which in Spaine they call *Arandelas, d'Azur*. Returne we now to the firſt Count of *Arragon*.

The Genealogie of the Counts of *Arragon*, and proceeding from Dom Galindo, *on to the whole Succeſſion*.

DOm *Galindo* left three Children: *Toda*, Wife to the King of *Nauarre Fortunio Garceez*, Sonne to *Garcia Inigo*.

Ximenez Aznar; And

Endregot Sirnamed *de Galindo*.

The Eldeſt of theſe two Sonnes was Count of *Arragon*, who dyed without Iſſue, as his Brother likewiſe did: And then the County of *Arragon* came to the Brother of *Galindo*.

Ximenez Garcia, who was Father to

Garcia Aznarez, Count of *Aragon*, Father to

Fortunio Ximenez, Fift Count of *Arragon*, who died without Children: So that the Countie fell to

Endregot de Galindo, who left but one Daughter that was named

Vraca, Wife to the King of *Nauarre Garcia Inigo*, Third of the name, and Seauenth King of *Nauarre*.

By this Alliance, the Countie of *Arragon* was ioyned and annexed to the Crowne of *Nauarre*. Vntill the time of King *Sancio* the Great, Fourth of the name, who in fauour of *Ramiro* his Baſtard, the Sonne of *Dogna Caia*, Lady of *Ayuar*, his Concubine, aduanced the County of *Arragon* to bee a Kingdome which hee gaue to the ſaid

I. *Ramiro*, Firſt King of *Arragon* in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Thirty and Foure, and his reigne was Two and Forty yeares.

Hee took to Wife *Ermeſinda*, Daughter to *Rogero*, Count of *Bigorre*, by whom hee had two Sonnes, and the like number of Daughters.

The Sonnes were

Sancio Ramirez; And

Garcia, Biſhop of *Iaca*.

The Daughters were

Sancia, Counteſſe of *Toloſa*; And

Thereſa, Counteſſe of *Prouence*.

By a Concubine hee had a Baſtard Sonne named

Sancio, whom hee made Lord of *Ayuar*, *Atares*, and of *Xauierra*;

By the death of King *Ramiro*, happening in the yeare, One Thouſand, Threeſcore and Sixteene: after him ſucceeded in the Kingdome his Eldeſt Sonne

II. *Sancio*

II. *Sancio Ramiro*, Firſt of the name, who reigned Eighteene yeares. This was the man that vſurped the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, as we haue already related vnto you.

By *Felicia* his Wife, Daughter to the Count of *Vrgell*, he had

Pedro, King.

Alphonſo, King of *Arragon*, and of *Nauarre* by Vſurpation: And

Ramiro, a profeſſed Monke at Saint *Pons de Tomieres* in *Languedocke*, King of *Arragon* likewiſe.

By a Concubine the ſaid *Sancio* left a Baſtard Sonne named

Garcia, who was Biſhop of *Iaca*, after the death of his Vncle.

Sancio dyed in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand, Foureſcore and Foure, after whom ſucceeded his Eldeſt Sonne, named

III. *Pedro*, Firſt of the name, who reigned Fourteene yeares. By his Wife *Agatha*, a *Florentine*, hee had a Sonne and Daughter.

The Sonne was

Pedro, dying in his Fathers life time.

Iſabella, the Daughter, who likewiſe died before her Father. And hee himſelfe dying without any other Children, the yeare of Grace, One thouſand, One Hundred, and Eight, left the Kingdome to his Brother.

IIII. *Alphonſo*, Firſt of the name, vniper of the Kingdome of *Nauarre*, who reigned Eighteene yeares. Hee tooke to Wife *Vraca*, Queene of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, Widdow to the Count of *Galicia*, Raymond of *Burgongne*, by whom hee had no Iſſue. So that by his death happening the yeare, One Thouſand, one Hundred, Thirty and Foure, his youngeſt & laſt Brother

V. *Ramiro*, Second of the name, a Profeſſed Monke, in the Abbey of S. *Pons de Tomieres*, was the Fift King of *Arragon*.

The Kingdome of *Nauarre* was reduced into her firſt Stemme Royall, in the perſon of *Garcia Ramiro*, the Nineteenth King of *Nauarre*, as wee haue already ſaid. This Monke King tooke to Wife *Agnes*, Siſter to *William*, Count of *Poictiers*, by whom hee had one onely Daughter

Petronilla, or by her wife called *Petronilla* Queene of *Raymond Berengarius*, Count of *Barcellona*: who for the cruelty and careleſneſſe of his Father in Law the Monke King, was made Regent in the Kingdome of *Arragon*.

By his wife he had

Raymond Alphonſo, King of *Arragon*.

Pedro.

Sancio.

Adoncia, Wife to the King of *Portugall*: And

N. Wife to the Count *D'Vrcell*.

By the death of this Monke-King, happening in the yeare of Grace One Thouſand, One Hundred, Threeſcore and Two: the Eldeſt Sonne of his Wife *Peronella Raymond*, who cauſed himſelfe to be named

VI. *Alphonſo*, Second of the name, was the Sixt King of *Arragon*, and Count of *Barcelona*, a County vnited and anexed to the Crowne of *Arragon*. Hee had by his Wife *Sancia*, Daughter to *Alphonſo Raymond*, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*,

Pedro King of *Arragon*.

Alphonſo, Count of *Prouence*.

Ferdinand a Religious Fryer.

Conſtance, Queene of *Hungarie*, and Empreſſe.

Leonora, Counteſſe of *Toloſa*: And

Dulcia, a Religious Nunne.

Alphonſo, Count of *Prouence*, ſecond Sonne to the ſaid King *Alphonſo*, had to wife *Mary*, Counteſſe of *Folcaquier*: And this marriage was borne

Raymond Berengarius, Husband of *Beatrix*, Daughter to *Thomas*, Count of *Morienna* (which is *Sauoye*.) And in this marriage was borne foure Daughters, all of them Queenes, as namely

Margaret, Queene of *France*, wife to Saint *Lewes*.

Leonora, Queene of *England*. Or *Elianor*.

Sancia, Queene of *England* likewiſe, and Empreſſe: And

Beatrix, Queene of *Naples* and of *Sicily*, alſo Counteſſe of *Prouence*.

King *Alphonſo* reigned almoſt Foure and Thirty yeares, and dyed in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Foureſcore and Sixteene, leauing his Eldeſt Sonne

VII. *Pedro*, Second of the name, to enioy the Crowne of *Arragon*, which he held Eighteene yeares, hee being twice married. Firſt to *Beatrix*, Siſter to *Mary*, Coun-

Counteſſe of *Folcaquier*, by whom hee had

Raymond Berengarius.

By his Second Wife, Daughter to the Count of *Montpelier*, VViddow to the Count of *Commenges*, hee had

James or *Iaimes*, afterward King.

By a Concubine, hee had a Baſtard Daughter

Conſtance, Wife to *Guillem Raymond de Moncado*, Seneſhall and Gouernour of *Cathalogna.*

King *Pedro* dyed in the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred and Thirteene, after the Battaile of *Muradall*; After whom ſucceeded his youngeſt Sonne

VIII. *Iames* or *Iaimes*, Firſt of the name, whoſe time of Reigne continued Threeſcore and Three yeares. He had two Wiues; the Firſt was *Leonora* of *Caſtile*, Daughter to King *Alphonſo* the Ninth, by whom hee had a Sonne named

Alphonſo, that dyed in his Fathers life time.

In Second Marriage hee eſpouſed *Yolande*, Daughter to the King of *Hungary*, by whom he had a plenteous Iſſue.

Pedro, King of *Arragon.*
Iames, King of *Maiorica.*
Sancio, Archbiſhop of *Toledo.*
Iſabella, Queene of *France.*
Ferdinand.
Yolande, Queene of *Caſtile.*
Conſtance,
Sancia,
Mary.

Ouer and beſide theſe his legitimate Children, hee had by three Concubines;

1. *Thereſa Gil de Bidaurae*,
Pedro, Lord of *Ayerbes*; And
Iames, Lord of *Xerica.*
2. *Berenguela Fernandez*, he had
Pero Fernandez, Lord of *Ixar.*
3. *Sancia*, Daughter to *Sanceo, d'Antilla.*
Ferdinand Sancco.

Iames, King of *Maiorica*, his Third Sonne, tooke to Wife *Eſcleremonde de Foix*, and in this Marriage were borne.

Iames, a religious Frier.
Sanceo, King of *Maiorica.*
Ferdinand.
Philip; And
Sancia.
Ferdinand, Fourth Sonne to the ſaid King *Iames* the Firſt, had two Wiues: The firſt was Madame *Iſabella*, Princeſſe of *Morea*, by whom he had
Iames, King of *Maiorica*; And
Fredericke.

By his Second Wife of the Houſe of *Ciprus*, he had
Ferdinand.
Iames, Eldeſt Sonne of *Ferdinand* and the Princeſſe of *Morea*, tooke to Wife *Conſtance* of *Arragon*, and of this Marriage iſſued
Iſabella, Marchioneſſe of *Monferrat*; And
Iames, Heyre of *Maiorica.*

King *Iames* the Firſt, dyed in the yeare One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Threeſcore and Sixteene: And had for Succeſſour his Sonne

IX. *Pedro*, Third of the name, who reigned nine yeares: By his Wife *Conſtance*, Daughter to *Mainfroy* Baſtard Son to the Emperour *Fredericke*, Second of the name, he had Sixe Children.

Alphonſo, King of *Arragon.*
Iames, King of *Sicilie*, (by Vſurpation after the Sicilian Euenſong) and afterward of *Arragon.*
Fredericke, King of *Sicilie.*
Pedro.
Iſabella, Queene of *Portugall*; And
Conſtance Yolande, Queene of *Naples.*

By three Concubines, hee had three Baſtard Sonnes

By *Mary Nicoloſa.*
Iames Perez.
By *Agnez Sapata.*
Ferdinand. And by another nameleſſe,
Sancio.

This *Pedro* the Third, dyed in the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Foureſcore and Fiue, after whom ſucceeded his Eldeſt Sonne.

X. *Alphonſo*, Third of the name, who in the Sixt yeare of his reigne died without Iſſue: And by his death, the Kingdome of *Arragon* came to his Second Brother

XI. *Iames*, Second of the name, who reigned Sixe and Thirty yeares. He had by his firſt Wife *Blanche*, Daughter to *Charles*, called the Cripple King of *Naples*, Tenne Children.

Iames,

Iames, a Religious Frier.
Alphonſo, afterward King.
Pedro, Count *D'Ampurias.*
Raymond Berengarius, Count *de* [illegible]*ages.*
Iohn, Archbiſhop of *Tolledo.*
Conſtance.
Mary, wife to the King of *Caſtile.*
Blanch, a Religious Nunne.
Yoland, Princeſſe of *Tarentum*; And
Iſabella, Empreſſe, wife to *Fredericke* [illegible] third. His other wife was *Mary* [illegible] *Cyprus*, by whom he left no iſſue, [illegible]o more then by *Eſclariſenda* his fourth, [illegible]amed of *Moncado*; or by his firſt *I-* [illegible]*bella* Daughter to *Sancio*, King of *Caſtile*, [illegible]om whom he was ſeperated by iudge- [illegible]ent of the Church.

By a Concubine he had a Baſtard Son [illegible]amed

Iames, made Count of *Luna.*

King *Iames*, ſecond of the name, died [illegible] the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three [illegible]undred twenty and eight; and then ſuc- [illegible]ceeded his Sonne

XII. *Alphonſo*, fourth of the name, [illegible]ho reigned eight yeeres. By his firſt [illegible]ife *Theresa*, Counteſſe and Heire [illegible] *Pegill*, hee had fiue Children, two [illegible]hereof died in their Infancie, the other [illegible]ere

Pedro, afterward King.
Iames, Count of *Pegell*: And
Conſtance, Queene of *Maiorica.*

In ſecond Marriage he had *Elianora* of [illegible]*ſtile*, by whom he had two Sons

Ferdinand, Marqueſſe of *Tortoſa*: And
Iohn.

The ſaid *Alphonſo* dyed in the yeare [illegible]One thouſand two hundred thirtie and [illegible]ne, leauing for Succeſſour his eldeſt [illegible]Sonne

XIII. *Pedro*, fourth of the name, [illegible]hoſe Reigne continued One and fiftie [illegible]eares. Hee eſpouſed *Mary*, ſecond [illegible]Daughter to *Philip*, third of the name, [illegible]King of *Nauarre*; And by her hee [illegible]ad

Conſtance, Queene of *Sicilie.*
Iane or *Ioane*, Counteſſe *d'Ampu-* [illegible]*rias.*
Mary: And
Alphonſo, who died yong.

By *Leonora Eluira* of *Portugall* his ſecond wife, he had no Children. His third wife was *Conſtance* of *Sicilie*, by whom he had

Iohn, afterward King.
Alphonſo.
Martin, who was King.
Leonora, Queene of *Caſtile.*

In fourth Marriage he eſpouſed *Sybylla de Fortia*, Widdow to *Artall de Foſſes*, and by her he had but one Daughter, named

Iſabel, Counteſſe of *Vrgell.*

This *Pedro* dyed in the yeare One thouſand three hundred fourſcore and ſeauen. And after him ſucceeded his Sonne

XIV. *Iohn*, firſt of the name, who reigned but eight yeares, and who had two Wiues. His firſt was *Mathea*, daughter to the Count of *Armaignack*, by whom were borne

Iames, who dyed yong; And
Ioane, wife to *Mathew* of *Caſtelbon*, who was Count of *Foix.*

In ſecond mariage he eſpouſed *Yoland*, Daughter to the Duke of *Bar*: And in this marriage were borne

Ferdinand, who liued but eight dayes: And
Yoland of *Arragon*, wife to *Lewes*, Duke of *Anieu*, & King of *Sicilie.* From which marriage iſſued

Lewes.
Rene; And
Charles, Count *du Maine.* Already we haue obſerued the Genealogie of the ſaid Houſe of *Anieu*, in the due and beſt beſeeming place.

XV. *Martin*, firſt of the name, Brother to King *Iohn*, deceaſed without heire Maſle; forcibly vſurped the Kingdome of *Arragon*, and Seigneuries thereon depending, notwithſtanding the Couenants and Conditions agreed on in the Contract of Marriage, of the Infanta of *Arragon Dogna Iuna* or *Iane*, with the Count of *Foix*, whereby it was namely and eſpecially couenanted, that if the ſaid King *Iohn* chanced to dye without an heire maſle, begotten and borne by his owne body in lawfull marriage; the ſaid *Infanta Ioane* or *Iane*, and the Count of *Foix* her Husband, and their Children and deſcendants ſhould come to the Crown of *Arragon.* A Contract agreed on, and ſigned by the ſaid *Martin*, with the Eſtates of the Kingdome, aſſembled then at *Valencia*, tearmed the Great.

This *Martin*, before his comming to the Crowne, had married *Mary*, Countesse of *Luna*, and by her he had

Martin, who was King of *Sicilie*, and dyed before his Father without issue. In second marriage the said King of *Arragon* espoused *Margaret* of *Prades*, by whom he had not any children. And the same *Martin* dyed in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred & twelue.

Here endeth the Latine Historie of *Arragon*, written by *Hieronimo Surita*: And next succeeded in the Kingdome of *Arragon*

XVI. *Ferdinand*, first of the name, Brother to King *Henry*, third of the name, King of *Castile*, who reigned but foure yeares. And by *Leonora d'Albuquerque*, a Princesse descended of the bloud of *Castile* his wife: he had seauen Children.

Alphonso, King of *Arragon*.

Iohn, King of *Nauarre* in right of his wife, and of *Arragon* in his owne right.

Henry, Maister of the *Order of Saint Iames of the Sword*, in *Castile*.

Sancio, Maister of the *Order of Alcantara*.

Pedro.

Mary, Queene of *Castile*; And

Leonora, Queene of *Portugall*.

This *Ferdinand*, first of the name dyed in the yeare of Grace, One thousand foure hundred and sixteene, leauing for Successour his eldest Sonne

XVII. *Alphonso*, fift of the name, who reigned two and fortie yeares. He dyed without issue by *Mary* of *Castile*, his lawfull Wife; but left (by diuers Concubines)

Ferdinand, King of *Naples*.

Mary, Lady Marquesse of *Ferrara*.

Leonora, Princesse of *Rossano*.

XVIII. *Iohn*, second of the name, was Successour to his Brother *Alphonso*, in the Kingdome of *Arragon*, of *Naples*, *Sicilie* and other Seigneuries, in the year of Grace, One thousand foure hundred fiftie eight. In first marriage he espoused *Blanch*, Queene of *Nauarre*, in right of whom hee was King of the said Kingdome; And by her hee had three Children.

Charles, Prince of *Nauarre* and of *Arragon*, &c.

Blanch, wife to *Henry* the Impotent, King of *Castile*. And

Leonora, Qeeene of *Nauarre*.

This Prince *Charles*, dyed in the life-time of his Father, Aged as hath bin formerly obserued in the Genealogie of *Nauarre*, leauing two Sons and a Bastard Daughter.

Phillip, Maister of the *Order of Montesa*.

Iohn, Bishop of *Huesca*: And

Anne, Ducheesse of *Medina Celi*.

In second mariage, the said *Iohn* the second, espoused *Ioane* or *Iane*, Daughter to *Fredericke Henrique*, Admirall of *Castile*. And in this marriage was borne

Ferdinand, tearmed by the Spaniards *L'Infant le Fortune*, Duke of *Monblanc*, and afterward King: And

Ioane, Queene of *Naples*.

By sundry Concubines he had

Alphonso, Count *De Villahermosa*.

Iohn, Archbishop of *Sarragossa*, named in the Obligation of Fiue hundred thousand Crownes, due by the said Kings Father, to the most-Christian King, *Lewis* eleauenth of the name.

Leonora, wife to the Count of *Lerin*, Constable, and Authour of loosing the Kingdome of *Nauarre*.

Ferdinand: And

Mary.

By the death of the said *Iohn* of *Arragon*, happening in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred threescore and nineteene, his Sonne

XIX. *Ferdinand*, second of the name, King of *Arragon*, *Nauarre*, *Sicilie*, *Maiorca*, *Sardinia*, and others of his Stemme, of *Castile* and of *Leon* by Madam *Isabella* his wife, and of *Nauarre* by practises and vsurpation. We haue obserued the Linage of the said *Ferdinand*, and of *Isabel* his first wife, in that of *Castile*. In second marriage, he espoused *Germana de Foix*, and by her he had a Sonne

Iohn, who dyed in his infancie.

He had diuers Bastards by diuers Concubines; for of the Vicounteesse of *Ebol*, was borne

Alphonso of *Arragon*, Archbishop of *Sarragossa*: And

Iane or *Ioane* of *Arragon*, wife to the Constable *Bernardino de Velasco*.

By *Toda de Bilbao*, a *Biscaine* his Concubine, he had

Mary of *Arragon*, a Religious Nunne;

By *Boucetta de Pereira*, a *Portugues*: Another

Mary of *Arragon*, a Religious Nun also.

The

The said King *Ferdinand* reigned seauen and thirtie yeares, and by his death, all the Kingdomes and Prouinces of *Spaine* (*Portugal* excepted) were reunited into one Body and sole Monarchie, meeting in the person of the Emperour. *Charles* the fift, Father of

Phillip the second, who made himselfe Maister of the Kingdome of *Portugall*; And

Phillip the third, reigning at this present.

Wee haue formerly seene, that the Kingdome of *Arragon* had two kindes of Armes, and that the first were wholly suppressed, and the second remained; which we behold magnificently painted, on the great Gate of the Bridge at *Sarragossa*, on the side towards *Nauarre*. In the Haule along the Arch of Saint *Iohn Baptist*, and other publique places of the said Citie.

The Battaile of *Alarcos*, gainst foure Kings *Moores*.

It hath had a third Armes, to wit; *L'Escu d'Argent à vne Croix de Gueulles* (which is that of Saint *George de Montesa*) *Cantonnee de Quatre Testes de Roys Mores de mesme au Bandeau Royal*. In memorie of the Battaile of *Alarcos*, wonne from foure Kings *Moores*, at the Siedge of *Huesca* by the third King of *Arragon*, *Pedro* first of the name, One thousand fourescore and sixteene; As is reported by *Ieronimo Surita*, in his first Booke, and two and thirtieth Chapter of his *Annales* of *Arragon*.

Dom Pedro Primero deste nombre, Tercero Rey d'Aragon, auiendo vencido en el Anno 1096. cerca de Huesca grandes exercitos de Moros con muchas muertes de los Enemigos en la Batalla, que dizen d Alcoraz. Y siendo hallados entre ellos quatro Principes Moros con insignias Reales, y riquissimas tocas en las Cabeças, las tomo por Deuisa en memoria desta victoria pintadas de color roxo en Escudo a quarteles en campo de Plata, y en medio, d'el Escudo vna Cruz roxa como la de san Iorge de Montesa, que diuide las quatro Cabeças.

But these Armes were not of any long continuance; because they were forsaken vnder the Monke King *Ramiro*, who tooke the auncient Armes of *Geoffrey* the *Hayre*.

Let vs now come to the Militarie Orders, Instituted in the said Kingdome of *Arragon*.

CHAP. XIIII.

The Institution of the Order of Saint *Sauiour* of *Montreall*, or *The Order of Arragon*.

Alphonso, the eighteenth King of *Nauarre* by vsurpation, onely by that name, and first of *Arragon*, was (for his great Warres, which he made all his life time against the *Moores* of *Spaine*) named *The warriour*, and Emperour of the *Spaines*; because he saw himselfe King of all the Realmes, that is to say, the Christian Prouinces of *Spaine*, in the yeare One thousand one hundred and eight. For, of his owne chiefe Stocke and Stemme, he was King of *Arragon* and *Nauarre* by vsurpation. And by his wife *Donna Vrraca* of *Castile*, he was King of *Leon*, *Castile* and of *Tolledo*; yet by her he had not any issue, but expelled her from his company, for her lubricious and dishoneſt life.

The Warriour and Emperour of the *Spaines*.

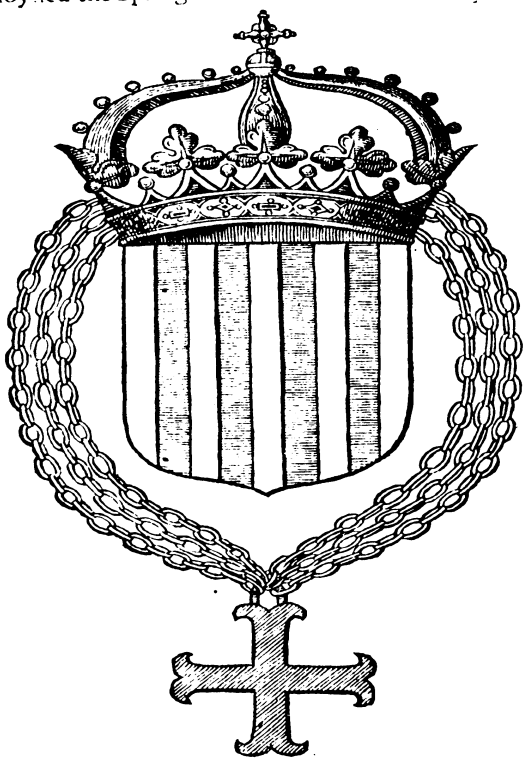
He made very strong warres vpon the Moores of *Arragon*; from whom he conquered *Sarragossa*, called by the *Romaines Salduba*, which he made the Capitall Citie of the Kingdome of *Arragon*, hauing wonne it by force in the Moneth of December, Anno, One thousand one hundred and eighteene.

He caused his Armie to take rest all the Winter time, in the parts about *Sarragossa*, at a place called *Xelsa*, sometimes a very good Towne, a Colonie of the *Romans*, and by them named *Iulia Celsa*.

When the Spring began to appeare, and lend the world her gladsome smiles; he entred into the Field againe, and besiedged *Taraſſona*, formerly belonging to the Crowne of *Nauarre*: against which also hee preuailed, and added it to the Kingdome of *Arragon*. In the end, he threw his forces on the Moores neighbouring about *Sarragossa*, from whom, in the yeare One thousand one hundred and twenty, he

he tooke perforce *Turiaſo*, *Alauona*, *Epila* (which was credited to haue bin the ancient [a] *Saguit*, built by the *Carthaginians*) *Cala-Taiud* (a Citie built neere to *Augusta Bilbilis*, by a Moore King, named *Taiud*) *Harica* and *Daroca*, very neere whereto ioyned the Spring of the Fountaine of *Xalon*, in a goodly ſtrong place, naturally ſeated. And this *Alphonſo* the Battailer or Warriour, for a Trophee of his Conqueſts; cauſed a Citie to be built (for bridleling and curbing the Moores of *Valencia*, which he named *Montreall*.

[a] A Citie in Catalonia beyond Ebrus.



Saint Bernard Abbot of Clairuaux.

An Order of begging Friers.

At this time was very famouſly renowned (for ſanctitie of life) Saint *Bernard*, Abbot of *Clarruaux*, a *French* Gentleman, Lord of *Fontaines*, a Village and Caſtle diſtant about halfe a mile from *Dijon*, on the ſide of *Talan*. This Caſtle is (at this preſent) poſſeſſed by Monkes *Fucillatines*, who haue cauſed a Chappell to be erected, in the ſame place where Saint *Bernard* was borne. And this Abbot gaue and preſcribed to the *Knights Templers*, what Rule they ought to keep & obſerue: but he obtained of this *Alphonſo*, the ſame place of *Montreall*, giuen to the ſaid *Templers*, with charge to warre inceſſantly againſt the Moores. King *Alphonſo* granted his requeſt, and for their further encouragigin warre and well doing: he granted them the fift part of all the Conqueſts, which ſhould be made vpon the Moores, beſide many great Reuennues, which he granted them, out of his demeanes and Court of *Arragon*.

But thoſe *Templers* hauing bin exterminated and defaced in the Councill of *Vienna* (as we ſhall declare vnto you in more fitting place) Anno, One thouſand three hundred and ſeauen: he inſtituted other Knights in the ſame place of *Montreall*, denamed from the beſt Houſes in the Kingdome of *Arragon*. They retained the name as the Knights *Templers* had done, being called *Knights of Saint Sauiour*; wore a White Roabe, and on the Breaſt an Ankred Croſſe Red: And their Rule was ſomewhat conformable with that of the *Templers*, but onely that they had power to marrie. The Kings of *Arragon* were Soueraignes of the ſaid Order, whereinto were entertained ſuch Gentlemen of *Arragon*, as ſhewed their beſt deuoire in the warres againſt the Moores. It had many rich Commanderies, the moſt part whereof are grounded on the demeanes of the Kings of *Arragon*; the like happening to this Order, as did to the Great Maiſterſhips of *Saint Iames of the Sword*, of *Alcantara*, and of *Calatraua*, reunited to the Crowne of *Spaine*, as hath bin ſaid.

The ſame Ceremonies obſerued in *France*, for giuing the Order of Knighthood, to any Lord or Gentleman; were practiſed throughout all the *Spaines*. To bathe on the Eeue of the Ceremonie; to haue the Sword hallowed; as we haue noated in the *Order of the Band*, giuen to King *Alphonſo*, the Inſtitutour of this, as *Iuricita Surita*

Surita, obſerueth in his Annales of *Aragon*, in the life of *Ferdinand*, ſecond of the name, King of *Arragon*, made Knight in the Citie of *Sarragoſſa* by the Duke of *Gandia*, the euening before his Coronation.

The ſame *Surita*, ſpeaketh of the Crowning of *Alphonſo*, fourth of the name, King of *Arragon*, performed on Eaſter day, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred twentie and eight, by the Archbiſhop of *Sarragoſſa*, *Dom Pedro de Luna*. After which Coronation, the King made two hundred Knights, the principall whereof were theſe

Iames de Xerica.
Pedro d' Arborea.
Raymond Folke, Count of *Cardanna.*
Arnand Rogiero, Count of *Paillars.*
Lopez de Luna.
Alphonſo Fernandez d'Ixera.
Iohn Ximenes d'Vrrea.
Pedro Cornello.
William de Ceruillona.
Otho de Moncado: And
Anthonio de Foix.

Who after they were made Knights by the Kings owne hand, deuided the reſt among them, to whom they guirded on their Swords, and put on their guilded Spurres: after they had performed the Eeues watch, and other Ceremonies in ſuch caſes required.

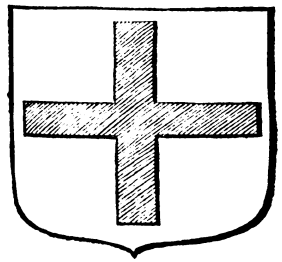
The Order of our Lady of Monteſa; otherwiſe tearmed the Order of *Valencia*: Inſtituted in the Kingdome of *Valencia*, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and ſeauenteene.

CHAP. XV.

L'Ordre de Montela, dit de Valencia.

IN the yeare One thouſand three hundred and renne, at a generall Counſell, aſſembled in the Metropolitaine Citie of *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, by Pope *Clement*, fift of the name: the Religion of the *Knights Templers*, was wholly aboliſhed and defaced throughout Chriſtendome; for ſuch cauſes as we ſhall declare, when we come to ſpeake concerning *The Orders of the Eaſt*. Two yeares before, the *Knights of Saint Iohn of Ieruſalem*, expelled (as the other Orders and Chriſtians were) out of *Paleſtine*, were enſtalled in poſſeſſion of the goodly *Iſle of Rhodes*, by a Bull granted from the ſaid Pope *Clement* the fift.

The Chriſtians driuen out of *Paleſtine*.



The *Templers* being thus wholly exterminated, in *Arragon*, vnder the Reigne of *Dom Iames*, King of *Arragon*, ſecond of the name, was inſtituted a new Order of Knights, called *Of our Lady of Monteſa*, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and ſeauenteene, at *Monteſa*, in the Kingdome of *Valencia*. The Statutes of which Order, were altogether anſwerable to that of *Calatraua*, vnder the Rule of the *Ciſteaux*. And thoſe Statutes were confirmed by Pope *Iohn* the two and twentieth, Succeſſour vnto Pope *Clement* the fift. They had great goods and reuennues, as well in *Arragon*, as in *Valentia* and *Cathalogna*.

The Inſtitution of the Order.

The firſt Great Maiſter of this Order, was *Dom William d'Errillo*, who tooke the white habite of *Calatraua*, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and nineteene, at the Monaſterie of Saint *Croſſe*, by the hands of the Commander *D'Alcaniz*. Theſe Knights were afterward diſpenſed withall, to weare the cloathing of the *Ciſteaux*, in

The Habite of the Order, and diſpenſation afterward.

in the due place whereof (for the noate or badge of their Knighthood) they vsed to weare a full Red Crosse vpon the breast, by a priuiledge granted them by Pope Benedict the thirteenth, confirmed soone after by Pope *Martin*, fift of the name. And for the Shield or Escutcheon of their Armes, it was *D'Or à la dite, Croix de Gueules*, tearmed *The Crosse of the Knight Saint George*, Patron of the Kingdomes of *Arragon* and *Arragon*.

The Shield of Armes.

Soone after was Great Maister of the said Order, the Infant *Dom Iames* of *Arragon*, eldest Sonne to *Iames*, King of *Arragon*, second of the name. This Prince, Successour of the Kingdome, to please King *Iames* his Father, had espoused *Donna Leonora Infanta* of *Castile*. Neuertheless, when the Estates met at *Arragon*, and held their Session there, I meane at *Tarragona*, in the yeare One thousand three hundred and twentie, this Prince being vpon the point of marrying the Princesse (by whom he might haue succeeded in the Kingdome of *Castile*) forsooke there his wife, declaring to King *Iames* his Father: that (long time before) he had made a vowe to God, neuer to marrie, nor to succeede in the Kingdome of *Arragon*. So that, notwithstanding all the speeches, both of his Father, and the States of *Arragon* and *Valencia*, he gaue ouer his right of eldership, to his yonger Brother *Dom Alphonso*, who was King of *Arragon*, second of the name, causing the King his Father to enfranchise him. By vertue of which enfranchisement, he released the Generall States from the Oath of fidelitie, which they had taken to him, when he was sworne Prince of *Arragon, Valencia* and *Cathalogna*.

A vowe made against marriage and succeeding in the Kingdome of *Arragon*.

The Prince entred into the Order of S. *Iohn* of *Ierusalem*.

He receiued the habite of the Order of Knighthood, belonging to the *Knights of Saint Iohn of Ierusalem*, at the hands of *Dom Bernard Solter*, Commander of the said Order, in the presence of his Brother *Dom Iohn* of *Arragon*, Archbishop of *Tolledo*, *Dom Simon de Luna*, Archbishop of *Tarragona*; *Dom Berengarius*, Bishop of *Vic*, and *Dom Raymond d'Ampurias*, Prior of Saint *Iohn* in *Cathalogna*. But afterward he gaue ouer that Order, and tooke the same of *Montesa*, whereof he was made Great Maister.

The vnion of *Arragon, Valencia* and *Cathalogna*.

In the same Session of the States held at *Tarragona*, was made the perpetuall vnion of the Kingdomes of *Arragon* and of *Valencia*, as also the Principalitie of *Cathalogna*; without any power of dis vniting, or seperation in sunder vpon any subiect or occasion whatsoeuer should ensue.

Valencia won from the *Moors* and lost again.

This Kingdome of *Valencia*, tooke name of the chiefe or Capitall Citie, seated along on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea of *Spaine*. Her auncient Inhabitants were called *Contestanes*, seperated by the Mount of *Orospeda*, from the *Bastetanes*, dwellers in *Murcia*. *Valencia* was conquered from the *Moores*, by that great *Spanish* Captaine called *Le Cid Ruys Diaz de Biuaro*, against the Moore *Aben Iaph*. But wonne againe by the same Moores, after the death of the said *Cid*; and so held vntill the yeare One thousand two hundred thirtie and fiue.

Dom Iames (in *Spanish Iagues*) King of *Arragon*, first of the name, being resolued to vn-nestle them: aided himselfe by the deuision, which happened among the factions of *Zeit*, *Aben-zeit*, and of *Aben-zaen*, who strouе which of them should rule and command. *Zeit* made himselfe subiect to the King *Dom Iames*, embraced the Christian Faith and Religion, being named at the Font of Baptisme *Dom Vincent de Bellas*: and married with a Christian Lady of the Citie of *Sarragossa*, named *Dominica Lopez*. By fauour and friendship of this *Dom Vincent*; King *Iames* possessed himselfe of the most parts and places in the Kingdome of *Valencia*, and besiedged the principall Citie, being especially assisted by *Bernard* Count of *Foix*, *Pedro Amalh*, Archbishop of *Narbona*, and many French Gentlemen beside. By whose valiant carriage, it was surrendered to him against *Aben-zaen*, the eighteenth day of September, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred thirtie and eigh.

The Composition was, that *Zaen* should withdraw himselfe to *Denia* (*Dianium* in Latine) with his Iemmes and Iewels, and the Inhabitant Moores, being to the number of fiftie thousand men. In this manner was this great Citie left vnpeopled, and to fill the same againe, were sent thither many Colonies of naturall *Cathalanes* and *Arragonians*, to whom was quartered the emptied Citie, and the Fields round about

ut were distributed, by direction from the Foure Commanders, deputed and apnted for the businesse of *Dom Iames* of *Arragon*, as namely *Dom Berengarius Pabla*, Bishop of *Barcellona*; *Dom Vidalio Canelis*, Bishop of *Huesca*; *Dom Pedro Hernder d'Apagra*, and *Dom Simon d'Vrrea*, Knights of *Arragon*, Three Hundred and urescore heades of Families peopled this Citty and conquested Lands, deriued from Nobility of *Arragon* and of *Cathalogna*, and of the olde Souldiours in their seuerall ndes, that were imployed at this Siedge, and other enterprises against the Moors: to om power was giuen and priueledge, to be (afterward in times to come) gouerned judged, according to the Lawes, Rights, Stile and Forme of *Arragon*. To whom re restrained the Christian Families, which were found in the said *Citty*, who notstanding the Moores, kept and vsed the Christian Catholique Religion, in the urch of Saint *Sepulcher*, called at this present, of the blessed Saint and Apostle nt *Bartholmewe*.

The Foure chiefe Commanders that ordered the especiall affaires.

The forme of Gouernement

The Bishops See was reseated in this Citty, the principall *Mosco* or Temple where- was dedicated to God, and cleane purged of *Mahometisme*: the first Bishop where- was *Dom Frederigo Martinez*, being made Suffragane to the Archbishoprick of *rragona*. Albeit in the time of the *Gothishe* Kings, the Church of *Valencia* acowledged for her Metropolitane, the Archbishop of *Tolledo*.

The first Christian Bishop there.

The first Vice-Roye of *Valencia* (at this present called the Great) established by *m Iames*: was named *Dom Roderigo Lizana*.

The Order of the Looking-Glasse of the Blessed Virgin *Mary*. Instituted by *Ferdinand*, the Infant of *Castill*, in the Yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Foure Hundred and Tenne.

CHAP. XVI.

Ferdinand, the Infant of *Castille*, Duke of *Pegnafiell*, Sirnamed *The Infant of Antequera*, because hee had conquered that strong place from the Moores, after a mighty Battaile wherin the Moores lost Fifteene Thousand men, all lying together slaine in the Field of Battaile, in the yeare of Grace, 1410, In honor wherof, he Instituted a new Order of Knighthood, tearmed in *Spanish: L'Orden dell Iarre de Santta Maria*.

Fifteene thousand Moores slaine in one Battaile

Which Order was composed of such Potts, as wee vse to call *Bough-Potts*, with their mouthes full of *Lillies*, enterced with *Griffons*; to preserue the memory of the Conquest of the Citty and Castell *Antequera*, reputed to bee impregnable. The Institution thereof was in the said are Foure hundred and tenne, though others speake of the yeare One Thousand ure hundred and thirteene.

Bough Pottes for *Flowres*.

At the first Chapter, holde in the Church of Saint *Mary de Medina del Campo*, at nat time (after the *Bathe* and *Watching solemnely on the Eeue*, according to the routed anner) the Infant of *Castille Ferdinand*, elect King of *Arragon*, after the death of ing *Martin*, as being the very neerest, by reason of *Leonora* of *Arragon* his Mother, ister to the two last Kings of *Arragon*, in the Moneth of *Iune* Foure Hundred and velue, and Crowned (the yeare following at *Sarragossa*) was first of all Honored uh this Order: And after him

The first Chapter of the Order.

Ruy Lopez d'Aualos, Constable of *Castille*.
Diego Fernandez de Quignones, Gouernour of the *Astures*.
Alvaro Perez de Guzman.

What Knights followed the King in the Order.

Iohn

Iohn Hurtado de Mendosa.
Martino Vasquez.
Ferdinand Perez d'Aiala, Gouernour of *Guipuscoa.*
Raymond de Guzman.
Garcia Fernand Manriquez.
Charles d'Arcillano de los Cameros.
Roderigo de Naruaez.
Gutierro de Torres: And
Sancio Gonsalez Gherino.

This Order was transported from *Castille* into *Arragon*; where it continued (according to the testimony of *Surita*) vnder the Sonnes of the said King *Ferdinand.*

The Order of Iesus Christ, Called De Christus. Instituted in the Kingdome of *Portugall* in the Yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Three Hundred, and Twenty. By *Dom Denis* or *Dionisius* the Sixte, King of *Portugall.*

CHAP. XVII.

The Originall and Beginning of the Kingdome of Portugall.

L'Ordre de Iesu Christ dit de Christus.

THe Historians of *Spayne* doe all write with one consent, that the Kingdome of *France* is, and hath beene (from all times) the fruitfull Orchard, or liuely Nursery of Princes, renowned for valiancie thorow out all Regions and Prouinces of the World, And that at one and the same time, hath beene noated to issue from the Royall House of *France*, Foure Princes, which gaue source and Originall to as many Kingdomes, or became Masters of them. *En vn mismo tiempo salieron quatro Caualleros de su Reyno, que occuparoy quatro Coronas de mayores de la Christiandad.*

William duke of Normandie.

William, of the house of *Normandie* was the First, who hauing vanquished (in foughten Battaile) *Harold*, King of *England*: was Crowned King thereof in the City of *London*, the yeare of Grace One thousand, threescore and seauen.

Raymond of Bourgongne.

Raymond of the House of *Bourgongne* was the Second, who went into *Castille* to fight against the Moores, perfourming there such admirable actions of Armes: that he espoused *Dogna Vrraca*, the Infanta of *Castille*, and legitimate Daughter to King *Alphonso*, Sixt of the name, Conquerour of *Tolledo*: By whom he had a Sonne, Emperour of the *Spaynes*, *Dom Alphonso Raymond*, Seauenth of the name, King of *Leon* and *Castille*. This passage of *Raymond* of *Bourgongne*, is by the *Spanish* writers themselues said to be in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fourescore and eight.

Henry of the House of Bezanson.

In the third place is *Henry*, of the House of *Bezanson*, who in the same yeare One thousand fourescore and eight, tooke to Wife *Dogna Theresa*, naturall Daughter to the same King *Dom Alphonso* the Sixt, and *Dogna Ximena Nugnez de Guzman*; by whom he had in marriage the Kingdome of *Portugall.*

Godfrey of Bullen.

Godfreye, of the House of *Bouillon* and *Lorrain* was the last: who hauing conquered the Kingdome and Holy *Citty* of *Ierusalem*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand fourescore and nineteene, he was there Crowned the First King.

And heere I must confesse, that the *Spanish* Historians haue bin negligent enough in seeking after the Genealogie of this *Henry* (whom they tearme of *Bologne*; First Count of *Portugall*, and whom also they make naturall and originally, of the Citty of *Bezanson* (without the County of *Bourgongne*) called in Latine *Visontio*, a word which

Spanyards and *Portugalles* haue much mistaken, to be *Bisantium*, and from thence haue drawne the originall and descent of this Count *Henry*, euen from the Imperiall City of *Constantinople*, grosse errours helde by *Vasselus* and *Garinay*.

The Archdeacon of *Verdune*, in the Booke which he wrote of the Bishops of the said Church, setteth downe, that this Count *Henry*, Sirnamed of *Lorraine*, issued of the Royall House of *France*, who passed into *Castille*: was made Lord of *Portugall*, he being younger Brother to *Thierry*, Duke of *Lorraine*, and to *Godfrey*, Baron of *Ionuille*. He affirmeth withall, that these three Brethren were Sonnes to the Count of *Bologne*, Sonne to *Eustace* Counte of *Bologne*, of the Royall house of *France*; As also of *Ida*, Duchesse of *Lorraine* and *Bouillon*, issued and descended of the same Royall House of *France*; And that in this Marriage were borne *Eustace*, *Godfrey* and *Baudwine*, who was King of *Ierusalem* after *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* his Brother, who conquered the Holy Citty. This is the Archdeacons Gibberish in Iangling, concerning the Table Genealogie of the Illustrious Ducall House of *Lorraine*, whereof there can bee now no question vrdged: but onely that of *Bologne*, which is otherwise recorded in the Registers of the Courte of Parliament, where all the Pedegrees and Genealogies are to be seene, issued and descended of the Sacred Crowne of *France*.

Count *Henry* made Lord of *Portugall* by the Archdeacons misconstruction.

Bologne of *France*, and Saint *Paul* were erected and aduaunced into Counties, vnder Homage to the Crowne of *France*; in fauour of *Adolphe* of *Flanders* (youngest Sonne to *Baldwine* the Baulde, Second of the name, Count of *Flanders*, who had the said two Counties to his lott and partage: but being deceased without Issue, the said two Counties returned to his elder Brother *Arnoull*, Counte of *Flanders*. *Arnoull*, second of the name, Counte of *Flanders*, hauing committed a fellonious offence against *Lothaire*, King of *France*: these two Counties were falne into his hand, who inuested therein two Sonnes of *William*, Counte of *Ponthieu*, *Arnoull* or *Arnoulle* the Eldest Sonne, had the County *Bolongne* in Fiefe, and the youngest had Saint *Paule* in *Arriere Fiefe*, vnder Homage and Authority of the Crowne of *France*: as we haue already shewne in the discourse of the *Golden Fleece.*

Bologne and Saint *Paul* made Counties.

The two Counties fell to the King.

The Genealogie of the Countes of *Bologne*, according to the Records.

I. *Arnoull*, Count of *Bologne*, had one onely Daughter named *Mahauld* (in Latine *Mathildis*) Counteesse of *Bologne*, Wife to *Adolphe*, First of the name, Count of *Guines*, *Comes Guinarum.* Of this Marriage came

II. *Raoull*, Counte of *Bologne*, and of *Guines*, who had to Wife *Rosella*, Daughter to the Counte of Saint *Paul*, by whom he had two Sonnes:

Eustace, First of the name, Count of *Bologne* And

Geoffery, Bishop of *Paris*, High Chauncellour of *France.*

III. *Eustace*, First of the name, Count of *Bologne*, tooke to Wife *Ida*, Sister to *Godfrey*, or *Gozelon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, Sirnamed the Crump-shouldred. And in this Mariage three Sons were borne.

IIII. *Godfrey* of *Bologne*, Lord of *Bouillon*, who was the First King of *Ierusalem*, and Counte of *Bologne*;

V. *Baldwine*, King of *Ierusalem* after his Brother, and Count of *Bologne*; And

VI. *Eustace*, Second of the name, who was Count of *Bologne*, and who had but one only Daughter, named

VII. *Cohalda*, Counteesse of *Bologne*, Wife to

Stephen, Counte of *Bologne*, King (during his life) of *England*, as we haue before reported to you, in the discourse of the *Blewe Garter.* In this Mariage were borne two Sonnes and a Daughter.

The Sonnes were

Eustace, Third of the name, Count of *Bologne* And

William of *Bologne*: But both these Brethren died without any issue, and the Daughter their Sister

VIII. *Mary* was a Religious Nunne, and an Abbesse in *England.*

Such was the Genealogie of the First House of the Countes of *Bologne.* Wherein the Archdeacon of *Verdune*, could not meete with Count *Henry*, the first hereditarie Counte of *Portugall*, who cannot be found to bee issued of the House of *Bologne*, and who (according to *Iohn le Feron*, in his Catalogue of the Chauncellours of *France*)

Portoit d'Azur a Cinque Bastons d'Or, au Chef de Gueules, charge de Trois Coquilles d'Argent. And the house of *Lorraine* (before *Godfrey* of *Bologne*, first Latine King of the Holy City of *Ierusalem*, according to the same *Feron* in his Constables) *Portoit d'Argent au Cerf de Gueules, somme d'Or sans nombre.* Contrarie to the opinion of the Archdeacon of *Verdune* (formerly alleadged and very subiect to caution) who giues vnto for Armes to this Illustarious house, *D'Argent a la Croix de Gueules ancrée d'Escarboncle d'Or Pommete et Fleuronne de huict pieces.* Setting aside then the Genealogie of this Counte *Henry* of *Portugall*, the Histories of *Spayne* doe tell vs; that in the former dated yeare, One thousand fourescore and eight.

Went into *Spayne* many *Frenche* Knights and Gentlemen, to maintaine the cause of the King *Dom Alphonso*, Sixt of the name; Among whom were *Raymond*, of the House of *Bourgongne*; *Henry* of *Lembourg*, a Flemming; and *Raymond*, Counte of *Tolosa* (who are written by some to bee Cousines and neere Kinsmen) to make head against the *Miramomelin Haly Abenacha*, the chiefe of the *Musulmans* of *Affrica* and *Spayne*. And to acknowledge truely the vertues of these three *French* Princes, according to the degree of their valour and merit; they were all maried to three Sisters giuing the legitimate Daughter *Vrraca* to Prince *Raymond* of *Bourgongne*, Sirnamed of *Bezanson*, who was made Counte Hereditarie of *Galicia*: To Counte *Henry* of *Lembourg*, the Bastard Daughter *Theresa*, with the Lands of *Portugall* conquered from the Moores, and those which his Sonne in Lawe and hee could conquer afterward, in title of an hereditary County to him and his descendants: And to Count *Raymond* of *Tolosa*, the other naturall Daughter *Elvira*: Which mariages are recorded vnder the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, fourescore and foureteene.

The three French Princes married to three Sisters.

With Prince *Henry*, First Lord of *Portugall*, passed into this Prouince of newe Conquest (the Frontiers and Limitrophing Lands of the *Mariscoes*) and them comprehended within the enclosure and bournes of the Riuers of *Duero* and *du Mino*, *Porta*, *Braga*, and of *Guymaraines*) many Gentlemen both *French* and *Flemmishe*. *En este mismo tiempo passaron a Castilla con estos dos Principes Dom Remon, et Dom Henrique muchos Caualleros Franceses de los Reynos de Francia, y Estates a ellos suietos.* Among them of highest worth and valiancie, were *Robert de la Corne*, and *William* his Brother, *Alcaydes* and Lords of *Atognia*, Authours of a Noble Familie, bearing the same Sirname: and *Rolin Gonsales*, *Alcayde* and Lord *d'Azambuya*, Chiefe of the House of the same Sirname; and these of the Sirname, and Seigneuries of *Almada d'Arruda*, *de Castagrera*, *de Lourinhano*, *de Ville Franche*, and *de Ville-Verde*, all great Houses in *Portugall* (descended from the Conquerours of the City of *Lisbona*, Chiefe in the Kingdome of *Portugall*.

Of this Marrige, of Prince *Henry*, Counte of *Portugall*, and *Dogna Theresa*, issued a Sonne, and two Daughters.

The Sonne was

Alphonso Henriquez, First King of *Portugall*.

The Daughters were

Theresa Henriquez; And

Aldonsa Henriquez.

By the death of *Henry* of *Lembourg*, first Count of *Portugall*, happening in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, one hundred and twelue; his only Sonne

I. *Alphonso Henriquez* tooke the title of King of *Portugall*, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand one hundred thirtie and nine: And his Reigne (with the yeares when hee was Count) are reckoned to be Threescore and Twelue yeares. Hee had to wife *Malfada Henriquez de Lara*, Daughter to the Counte *Manriquez de Lara*, Lord of *Molina*, a great Commaunder in *Castille*, by whom hee had a Sonne and three Daughters.

The Sonne was

Sancio, afterward King.

The Daughters were

Vrraca, Queene of *Castille*.

Theresa, Counte of *Flanders*; And

Malfada.

By a Concubine he had a Bastard Son.

Pedro Alphonso.

II. *Sancio*, First of the name, by the death of his Father, happening in the yeare, One thousand one hundred fourescore and foure; was the Second King of *Portugall*, who by his wife *Aldonca*, or *Dolcina*, Daughter to *Raymond Berengarius*, Counte of *Barcellona*, had foure Sons and fiue Daughters.

The Sonnes were

Alphonso, afterward King.

Ferdinand

Ferdinand (whom we call *Ferrand*) of *Portugall*, Count of *Flanders* by his Wife, prisoner to King *Phillip Augustus*.

Pedro, Counte of *Vrgell* in *Arragon*; And

Henry:

The Daughters were

Theresa, Wife to the King of *Leon* Dom *Alphonso*.

Malfada, Queene of *Castille*.

Sancia, a Religious Nunne.

Blanche; And

Berengeula.

By two Concubines he had diuers naturall Children; by the first, named *Maria Arias*, he had a Daughter

Vrraca; And a Sonne called

Martin.

By his Second Concubine named *Maria Perez de Ribera*, hee had these naturall Children.

Theresa Sancia.

Gil. Sancio.

Constance Sancia; And

Ruy Sancio.

Sancio the First Reigned Eight and twenty yeares, and by his death, happening in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred and twelue; his eldest Son.

III. *Alphonso*, Second of the name, was the Third King of *Portugall*, who reigned no more then eleuen yeares. By his Wife *Vrraka* of *Castille*, Daughter to *Alphonso* the Noble, King of *Castille*, hee had three Sonnes, and one Daughter.

The Sonnes were

Sancio, fierward King.

Alphonso.

Ferdinand; And the Daughter was

Leonora, Queene of *Denmarke*.

By a Moore his Concubine, he had a naturall Sonne

Alphonso Martinez.

IV. *Sancio*, Second of the name, Sirnamed *Capello*, succeeded in the Kingdom of *Portugall*, by the death of his Father, happening in the yeare, One thousand two hundred, twenty and three. He had no issue by *Mencia Lopez* his Wife: And for his inexperience of Gouerning the State, they made Regent his Brother

V. *Alphonso*, Third of the name, who was King by the death of his Brother, happening in the yeare of Grace, 1257. and reigned two and twenty yeares. By *Mahauld*, Countesse of *Bologne* his Wife, he had two Sonne,

Ferdinand; And

Alphonso.

He repudiated his lawfull Wife without any cause, to espouse the Bastard Daughter of *Alphonso* the Astrologer, and of *Maria de Guzman Beatrix*, by whom he had

Denys or *Dionysius*, after King.

Alphonso.

Blanche, a Religious Nunne; And

Constance.

By two Concubines, he had

Leonora; And

Ferdinand Alphonso.

This diuorce and repudiation, done without cause, was the meanes of blemishing wholly *Portugall*, by the notorious nesse of the fact, yea, euen extending to Children borne in loyall and lawfull mariage. And from thence proceeded the pretention, which the late Queene Mother *Katharine de Medicis* (issued of the House of *Bologne*) made to the Crowne of *Portugall*, after the death of the last King of *Portugall*, *Dom Sebastian*.

VI. *Dionisius*, or *Denys*, First of the name, was the Sixt King of *Portugall*, by the death of his Father *Alphonso*, in the yeare, One thousand two hundred threescore and nineteene, and his Reigne continued Sixe and Fortie yeares. By his Wife *Isabella* of *Arragon*, Daughter to King *Pedro*, hee had two Daughters, and one Sonne, named

Alphonso, who was King after him.

The Daughters were

Isabella; And

Constance, Queene of *Castille*.

By diuers Concubines, he had

Pedro, Counte of *Portalegro*, a man that was very singularly learned.

Alphonso Sancio, Count *d'Albuquerque*.

John.

Ferdinand.

Maria, Wife to *Dom John de la Cerda*; And

Beatrix a Religious Nunne.

VII. *Alphonso*, Third of the name, succeeded in the Kingdome of *Portugall*, by the death of his Father, who deceased in the yeare One thousand three hundred twentie and fiue, and Reigned two and thirtie yeares. By *Beatrix* of *Castille* his Wife, he had Sixe Children.

Pedro, afterward King

Maria.

Alphonso.

Denys or *Dionisius*.
John; And
Eleanor, Queene of *Arragon*.

After the death of the said *Alphonso*, happening in the yeare One Thousand, three hundred fifty and seauen, his eldest Sonne

VIII. *Pedro*, only of that name, came the Crowne of *Portugall*, wherein hee reigned tenne yeares. Hee diuorced his first Wife *Blanche*, Daughter to King *Pedro* of *Castille*, and tooke *Constance*, the Daughter to *Iohn Manuell*, by whom hee had foure Children.

Lewes, dying in his Infancy,
Ferdinand, who was King,
Maria, Wife to *Ferdinand*, King of *Arragon*; And
Beatrix, that died in her Infancy.

By two Concubines, the first whereof was *Agnes de Castro*, he had

Alphonso,
Denys; And
Beatrix, Countesse *d'Albuquerque*.

By the other, called *Theresa Gallega*, he had

Iohn, who was Maister of the Order *D'Auis*, and King of *Portugall*.

IX. *Ferdinand*, Eldest and Legitimate Sonne to King *Pedro* the First, was King of *Portugall*, and his Reigne lasted seauenteene yeares. By *Leonora Telles de Menesez* his Wife, he had one only daughter

Beatrix, Queene of *Castille*.

By a Concubine he had

Isabella, Countesse of *Gijon*.

X. *Iohn*, the naturall Sonne to King *Pedro* the First, vsurped the Kingdome of *Portugall*, and therin maintained himselfe by force, against the King of *Castille*, and *Beatrix* of *Portugall* his wife, the lawfull heire, and reigned nine and forty yeares: From the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and fiue, to the yeare One thousand foure hundred thirty three. By *Phillip* of *Lancaster*, an *English* Lady and his wife, he had eight Children.

Blanche,
Alphonso
Edward, who was King,
Pedro, Duke of *Coimbre*,
Henry, Duke of *Viseo*,
Isabella, last wife to the Duke of *Bourgongne Phillip*, called the Good.
Iohn, Maister of Saint *Iames*, Father to *Isabella*, Queene of *Castille*; And
Ferdinand, Master of the Order *D'Auis*.

By a Concubine, named *Agnes*, he had

Beatrix, Countesse of *Arondell*; And
Alphonso, Duke of *Bragancia*, Conte d'*Oren*, and of *Barcellos*.
Pedro, Duke of *Coimbre*, tooke to wife *Isabella* of *Arragon*, by whom he had foure Children.
Pedro, Constable of *Arragon*,
Iohn, King of *Cyprus*, in regard of his Wife,
Isabella, Queene of *Portugall*,
Phillip, a Religious Nunne,
Iames, Cardinall; And
Beatrix, Wife to the said Lord de *Ueestain*.

XI. *Edward*, Sonne to King *Iohn* the First, came to the Crowne of *Portugall* by the death of his Father, happening in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred thirty and three, and reigned but fiue yeares. By *Leonora* of *Arragon* his wife, Daughter to the King of *Arragon Ferdinand* the First; he had Sixe Children.

Alphonso, afterward King,
Ferdinand, Duke of *Viseo*,
Phillip, a Daughter,
Leonora, Wife to the Emperour *Frederick*, Third of the name,
Katharine; And
Ioane or *Iane*, Queene of *Castille*.

Ferdinand, Duke of *Viseo* had to Wife *Beatrix*, Daughter to his Vnckle *Iohn* of *Portugall*, Maister of Saint *Iames*, by whom he had foure Children.

Leonora, after Queene,
Dominico,
Emanuell, Great Maister of *Christus*, and afterward King of *Portugall*,
Isabella, Duchesse of *Bragancia*.

XII. *Alphonso*, Fift of the name, King of *Portugall* by the death of his Father, which happened in the yeare, One thousand, foure hundred, thirtie and eight, came to the Crowne, and Reigned three and fortie yeares. By *Isabella* his Wife, Daughter to his vnckle *Pedro*, Duke of *Coimbre*, he had foure Children.

Iohn, who had but a short time of life.
Iane,
Ferdinand; And
Henry.

By the death of the said *Alphonso*, happening in the yeare, One Thousand foure Hundred, Fourescore and One, came to the Crowne the Sonne of his Sonne *Ferdinand*.

XIII. *Iohn*, second of the name, whose reigne continued foureteen years. By *Leonora* his wife, Daughter to his Vnckle *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Viseo*, he had but one Sonne

Alphonso, dying in his Fathers life time.

By *Anne* of *Mendosa*, his Concubine, he had

George, Maister of Saint *Iames*, and d'*Auis*.

By the death of *Iohn* the second, chanching in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred fourescore and fifteene, the Crowne of *Portugall* came by proximity of Bloud, to the Sonne of *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Viseo*.

XIV. *Emanuel*, who reigned sixe and twenty yeares. By *Isabella* of *Castile* his first Wife, eldest Daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, Kings of *Castile*, *Leon*, and *Arragon*, he had one Sonne

Michael, who lined very few dayes.

In second Marriage he espoused *Maria* of *Castile*, Sister to his first Wife, of whom were borne ten children

Iohn, afterward King.
Isabella, Queene of *Castile*, and Empresse.
Beatrix, Duchesse of *Sauoye*.
Lewes, Father to *Dom Antonio*, the elected King of *Portugall*.
Henry, Cardinall.
Alphonso, Cardinall.
Katharina.
Ferdinand.
Edward: And
Antonio, who dyed so soone as he was borne.

In third Marriage he had *Leonora* of *Castile*, Daughter to *Phillip*, Archduke of *Austria*, sister to the Emperour *Charles* the fift, by whom he had two Children

Charles, who dyed in his Infancy.
Maria, deceasing at *Lisbone*, being aged sixe and fifty yeares.

By the death of the said *Emanuel*, which was in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred twenty and one, his Son

XV. *Iohn*, third of the name, succeeded in the Kingdome of *Portugall*, of whom the reigne was sixe and thirty yeares. By *Katharine* of *Spaine* his Wife, sister to the Emperour *Charles* the fift, he had eight children.

Alphonso.
Maria, Princesse of *Castile*.
Katharina.
Beatrix.
Emanuel.
Phillip.
Iohn, Father to King *Sebastian*; And
Antonio.

Which *Iohn* the third, dyed in the yeare, One thousand fiue hundred fifty and seauen, leauing the Kingdome to his yongest Sonne

XVI. *Sebastian*, who reigned One and twenty yeares. By *Ioane* or *Iane* of *Spaine*, Daughter to the Emperour *Charles* the fift, he left not any issue: but dyed in the warre of *Affrica*, the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred threescore and eighteene. And by his death succeeded next in the Kingdome of *Portugall*, his Vnckle the Cardinall, named

XVII. *Henry*, Archbishop of *Euora*, Sonne to the King *Emanuel*, who reigned but one yeare and an halfe, or thereabout. And by his death, the Kingdome of *Portugal* and the East *Indaes* were reunited to the Crowne of *Spain*, in the person of

XVIII. *Phillip*, second of the name, King of all the Prouinces, Father to

XIX. *Phillip* the third, reigning at this present.

Concerning the first King of *Portugall*, *Alphonso Henriques*.

IN the description of the surprizall and Conquest of the potent Citie of *Cordoua* and *Baesa*, from the Moores of *Andalouzia*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand one hundred fortie and seauen; it is said that *Alphonso*, King of *Leon*, *Castile* and *Toledo*, Sirnamed the Emperour, was assisted by the forces of *Nauarre*, conducted by their King *Garcia Ramirez*, who was there in person, and that Armie on the Sea, by the Prince of *Arragon*, *Dom Raymond Berengarius*, Count of *Barcellona*, absent.

Two reasons for not naming *Alphonso Henriquez*.

There is not a word spoken of the succour, nor forces of the first King of *Portugall Alphonso Henriquez*, and that for two reasons. The first, because hee was in distaste with the said *Alphonso*, King of *Castile*, in regard he had declared himselfe to be King of *Portugall* (which relied on homage to the Kingdome of *Leon*) without his consent, he being a Subiect and Liedge-man to him. The other, in regard that this new King was then impeached at the Moores Warres of *Estremadura*, which he led on with such violence: that he tooke from them the Citie of Saint *Iren*, on the day of Saint *Michael*, in the yeare One thousand one hundred fortie seauen. And afterward, the Castle of *Mafra* (where he made Gouernour *Ferdinand de Monteiro*, who was the first Maister of the Order of *Euora*, tearmed *D'Auis*, vnder the Rule of Saint *Benedict*) with that of *Cintra*, and the puissant Citie of *Lisbona* (after a Siedge of fiue Moneths) valiantly taken, the fiue and twentieth day of October, in the said yeare One thousand one hundred fortie seauen, as before we haue spoken.

And without giuing the Moores any leasure to take knowledge of him, he conquered & wan from them *Atanquer*, *Obidos*, *Torresuedras* and other places, by the surprizall whereof, he vn-nestled the Moores of *Estremadura*, whom he pursued beyond *Tayo* (one of the most renowned Riuers of *Spain*, called by the Latines *Tagus*, where he became Maister of *Alcazar de Sal*, of the Cities of *Euora*, and *d'Yelues*, *de Mora*, *Serpa* and *de Veia*, where the Moores were all put to the edge of the Sword. From *Coimbre*, the Seate and Royall abiding of the Kings of *Portugall*, was transferred by this King, vnto the Citie of *Lisbona*, the very goodliest, and best stored with Merchants, in all the Prouinces of *Spaine*.

* Which deuideth *Castile* from *Portugal*, where gold is found like Gold.

The Crosse and Armes of the Order, called *D'Auis*; Instituted also in the Kingdome of *Portugall* vnder the Reigne of the first King of *Portugall*, *Alphonso Henriquez*; And in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred forty seauen.

CHAP. XVIII.

Croix & Armes de l'Ordre d'Auis.



During the Reigne of the first King of *Portugall*, *Alphonso Henriquez*, was Instituted the *Militarie Order*, called *D'Auis*, and vnder the Rule of Saint *Benedict*, Father of Religion throughout the West, as Saint *Bazile* was in the East: *Basilius in Oriente*, *Benedictus in Occidente*. For like as all the Knights of the East, deriued and squared all their Orders, by the Monasticall rule of that great Doctor Saint *Bazile*: euen so did the Monkes of the West, draw their Originall from that of Saint *Benedict*, reputed (by that bright Beacon in the Holy Church Saint *Augustine*) to be Authour of all the Orders of Chanons Reguler in Christendome, yea, and Secular also, as is to be seene in the Church of *Paris*, and in most part of Cathedrall Churches of *France*.

Orders of the East & West, and their Fundators.

Alphonso Henriques, first King of *Portugall*, hauing conquered from the Moores the Citie of *Euora*, in the yeare before obserued, One thousand one hundred fortie seauen; confessed and acknowledged, to hold it of God, and of the Virgin *Mary*. And to maintaine it against the Moores, he placed there a Garison or number of braue spirited Knights: who offred to yeelde him a due account of their Seruices, and to defend the Citie against the Moores. The Knights of this Assembly, made themselues knowne vnder the name *Of Fellow Brethren of Saint Mary of Euora*, giuing themselues the name of *Bretheren*, and the place of their abiding was tearmed a *Fra-*

A Garison of Souldiers giuen by *Alphonso* to the Knights of *Euora*.

ternitie, or *Brotherhood*, which was their first dwelling, and without the said Citie of *Euora*, where yet is to be seene the ruines, prints and steps of their old Castell, flancked with goodly Towers, and engirt with strong Wals. Their principall Church and Chappell, was dedicated to the Prince of Intelligences, the Archangell Saint *Michael*.

Now, concerning the three first Great Maisters of this *Order of Bretheren of Euora*, they were these.

The three first Great Maisters of the Order.

I. *Ferdinand de Montereiro*, to whom the King gaue (as we haue already said) the Gouernment of the Castell of *Mafra*.

II. *Gonsales de Viegas*: And

III. *Fernand de Yannes*, to whom the same King of *Portugall Alphonso Henriquez*, gaue the strong Castle *D'Auis*, by him conquered from the Moores, on the frontiers and confines of his new Kingdome: And thereby the Knights of this Order were named *The Bretheren D'Auis*, who went thither from *Euora*, which was their first Mannor and dwelling. And of this Castle *D'Auis*, they conserued the memory in their Shield of *Armes*, which they tooke thus.

The Orders, Escutcheon of Armes.

D'Or à la Croix Fleurdelisée de Synople, & en pointe Deux Oiseaux, ainsi que des Corbeaux, de Sable. Le Orden de Auis tuuo su principio en el Anno de 1147. *en tiempo del Rey Dom Alfonso primero Rey du Portugal. L'lamose al principio la Caualleria de Ebora, porque tuuo su Conuento en la Ciudad d'este nombre. Su primer Maestre fellamo Dom Fernando Monteiro; despues sucedio en el Maestrado Dom Fernand Yannez, à qui el Rey Dom Alonso de Portugal dio el Castillo de* Auis *Anno* 1161. *y siendo allirans la dado el Conuento primero, se llamo* De Auis. *Vsó por segnal vna Cruz como la de Alcantara, y por Armas la misma Cruz en Campo d'Oro, y al pie della dos Aues negras por alusion del nombre de* Auis.

Thus you see what is said by *Damiano à Goes*, a Portugall Knight, in his History of Portugall; *Radez de Andrada*, in his History of the Knights of *Calatraua*; and the Count of *Lansarote*, in his Nobility of *Andolouzia*.

This Military Order of *Portugall* was confirmed by Pope Innocent, third of the name, in the fourth yeare of his Pontificalitie, and of Grace, One thousand two hundred and foure, then reigning in *Portugall*, *Sancio*, first of the name, Sonne and Successour to *Alphonso Henriques*. This King *Sancio* gaue to the said Order *D'Auis*, these places and Seigneuries of

The bounty of King *Sancio* to the Order.

Valerdas,
Alcanebe,
Geromegna,
Alcantade,
Alpedrino, and others in the Kingdome of the *Algarues*, in recompence of the Knights seruice of this new rising Order, who had performed little lesse then wonders at the surprizall of *Sylues*, the principall Citie of the *Algarues*, which hee had conquered from the Moores, by aide and succour of some number of *English* and *French* Ships, wherein were many Knights of *France* (at their passage ouer the Seas, with the Kings of *France* and *England*, *Phillip Augustus*, and *Richard*) who being beaten with a storme, and sundered from the Fleete by tempestuous windes, in the straite of *Gibraltar*; by a better fauouring gale, saued themselues in the Roade and Hauen of *Lisbona*.

The taking in of *Sylues* in the *Algarues*.

In following time, and in the yeare One thousand two hundred and thirteene, the *Order of Calatraua*, and the seauenth Great Maister therof *Dom Roderigo Garcez de Asa*, gaue to the Great Maister and Bretheren Knights *D'Auis*, that which they had and possessed in the Kingdome of *Portugall*. In acknowledgement whereof, the Knights and Great Maister of the said Order *D'Auis*, submitted themselues to the Order of *Calatraua*, being wholly subiected to their Rule, Statutes, visiting and Coertion, according to them of *Alcantara*, who did thelike. Neuertheless this chanced to be altered, by reason of the Warres, moued betweene the Kings of *Portugall* and *Castile*, and in the time of *Iohn* of *Portugall*, seauenth Great Maister *D'Auis*) natural Sonne to the King of *Portugall Pedro*, onely of that name, and who possessed himselfe of the Kingdome against his lawfull brethren) when the Order *D'Auis* would no longer acknowledge that of *Calatraua*.

The Knights *D'Auis* submit to the Order of *Calatraua*.

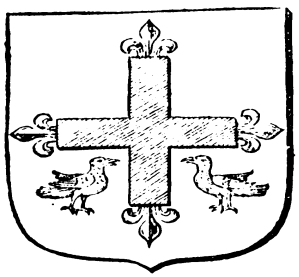
A

A briefe Noate concerning the Order of *Christus* and of *Portugall.*

At whatime the Order of *Christus* was inſtituted.

NOw, as concerning the *Order of Chriſtus*, or of *Portugall*: It was Inſtituted by the ſixt King of *Portugall Dom Denys* or *Dionyſius*, in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and eighteene. And willed, that the Knights of this Order ſhould goe cloathed in Blacke, and weare vpon their Breaſt a *Croſſe pattee* of Red Silke, and another full White Croſſe ouer the Red, ſo that they appeared as two Croſſes together. And the Shield of Armes belonging to this Religion, was *D'Argent à croſſe double Croix.*

The confirmation of the Order.



This Order was confirmed in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and twentie, by Pope *Iohn* the two and twentieth, who preſcribed and gaue them the Rule of Saint *Benedict*. Pope *Alexander* the ſixt gaue them permiſſion to marrie, as well as other Militarie Orders of *Spaine*. The firſt great Maiſter of *Chriſtus*, was *Dom Gil Martinez*, who before had bin of the Order *D'Auis*; and their firſt Conuent was at *Caſtro-marin*, but afterward tranſlated into the Citie of *Tomar*; more neerely neighbouring on the Moores of *Andaluzia*, and of the *Eſtremadura*.

The Commanderies belonging to the Order.

This Order had Commanderies, not onely in *Portugall* and the *Algarues*, but in *Affrica* and the *Indies*, and eſpecially in *Braſile*; which made the Maiſterſhip thereof ſeeme ſo wealthie, that it amounted to the yearely Rent of an hundred thouſand Ducates. And this was the reaſon, why it was annexed inſeperably (as well as that *D'Auis*) to the Crowne of *Portugall*; the Kings whereof hauing taken the title of perpetuall Adminiſtratours of the Orders *D'Auis* and of *Chriſtus*.

The Croſſe, Collar and Armes of the Order.

The Croſſe and Collar of this Order, is to be ſeene in the Quire of the Gray Friers at *Paris*, on the Chaires at the left ſide, and wreathed about the Armes of ſome *Portugall* Lords, refuged in *France*, with the King *Dom Anthonio* their Maiſter, who dyed at *Paris*, and whoſe Hart is, at the *Aue Marie*, but his Body remaining in the ſaid Gray Friers at *Paris* (as yet vnburied) in the Chappell *de Gondye*: where vnder the Seate Canopie; may be ſeene the Armes of *Portugall*, the Croſſe and Order of *Chriſtus*, and an earthly Spheare, which ſerued as a Deuiſe to the laſt Kings of *Portugall*.

The reaſon of adding the Spheare to the Armes of *Portugall*.

Concerning this Deuiſe of the Spheare, it was taken by *Emanuel*, the foureteenth King of *Portugall*, by aduiſe and perſwaſion of *Iohn*, King of *Portugall*, firſt of the name. Who counceiled him ſo to doe when he was a yong man, to adde a deuiſe to his Armes, and carrie a Spheare, wherein might be portraied the Celeſtiall Circles: as ſeeming to foretell thereby, that vnder this *Emanuel* (who he thought ſhould be his Succeſſor in the Kingdome) the *Portugals* would diſcouer to their great gaine and perpetuall renowne) a new Heauen, and Countries as farre remoated from vs, as the *Indiaes* Eaſt and Weſt. As indeede it came ſo to paſſe, vnder conduct of that great *Portuguize* Captaine *Vaſco de Gama*, who embarqued himſelfe at the Port of *Lisbone* the ninth day of Iuly, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred and ſeauenteene, doubling the Cape of *Bona Speranza* in *Athiopia*, becauſe from thence the Ships ſailed into *Arabia*, and to the *Indiaes*, as alſo into many other parts of the world, from whence they brought infinite Merchandiſes to the ſaid Port.

Father de Gama the famous Portuguize diſcouerer.

Calicut the richeſt Port of the Indies.

Moreouer in thoſe coaſts was the Prouince of *Zophala*, richly abounding in Mines of Gold, from *Mozambiqa Gama* ſailed into the Ile of *Mombaza*; and from thence to the rich Kingdome of *Melinda*; and the two and twentieth day of May, foureſcore and eighteene, *Gama* tooke landing at *Calicut*, the very richeſt Port of the *Indies* for Spiceries. Such was the firſt diſcouery of the Eaſtern *Indiaes*, which did ſo highly enrich the Kingdome of *Portugall*: whether *Vaſco de Gama* returned well and ſafe, to the Por:

port of *Lisbone*, about the beginning of the Moneth of Iune, One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and nineteene.

The Armes of Portugall altered & changed.

Now, as concerning the Armes of *Portugall*, they haue bin diuers, by the ſaying and teſtimony of the *Spanyards*; who haue let ſlip (vnder ſilence) thoſe borne by Henry of *Bezanſin* or of *Lorrain*, firſt Hereditary Count of *Portugall*. For, if he was of the Houſe of *Lorraine*, the auncient Armes of the Kingdome of *Auſtraſia*, were wholly like to them of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, which are *De Gueulles à vne Feſſe d'Argent*; as *Guydo Cocquillus* obſerueth in his Hiſtorie of *Neuers*, the two hundred and one and thirty Page.

The Armes of Henry de Bezanſon

If he was of the Houſe of the Counts of *Bourgongne* (as there is more apparance that he was, rather then otherwiſe) he had caried of the County, which is *D'Azur à Lyon rempant d'Or, Lampaſſé & Armé de Gueulles, ſeme de Billettes d'Or.*

And yet notwithſtand, very true it is, that the ſaid *Henry* of *Bourgongne* did beare either the one or other, but rather to make knowne to the *Spanyards*, that he was deſcended of the Houſe of *France*: he did the very ſame, as his Couſine *Raymond* of *Bourgongne* did, who vpon the ſame ſubiect, neither bare of *Bourgongne* the Duchie or Countie; but of *France ſans nombre*, as we haue before declared more at large: By his example, *Henry de Bezanſon Porta d'Or à Trois Feſſes d'Azur ſemees de France ſans nombre, à la Bordure de Gueulles.* Armes long time retained by the Kings of *Portugall*, after the death of the ſaid *Henry* of *Bezanſon*. For the ſame Hiſtorian *Guydo Cocquillus*, in the two hundred ninetie and eight Page of his Hiſtorie writeth; that he had ſeene in the Chamber of Accounts at *Neuers*, a Charter of the yeare one thouſand two hundred ſortie and two of *Mathilda*, Counteſſe of *Bologne*, wife to *Alphonſe*, Sonne to King *Alphonſo* of *Portugall*, ſecond of the name. On the Great Seale whereof are the Armes of the ſaid *Alphonſo* of *Portugall*: *A faces ſemees de fleurs de Lys* (he forgot the Field of the Eſcutcheon) *Le Centre Seal* (which is the priuie Signet) *party de Fleurs de Lys ſans nombre, & de faces à vn bord rond.* The words ingraued about it, are theſe. *Mathildis Comitiſſa, Bononie, Moretanie* (that is *Morayne*) *Clarmontis* (that is *Clairmont* in *Auuergne*.) Thus ſpeaketh *Cocquillus*, by intelligence whereof is to be noated, that whatſoeuer was ſpoken before, concerning the Armes of *Henry* of *Bezanſon*, Count of *Portugall*; *Cocquillus* forgot to emblazon. Or elſe it was the Printers fault, who ordinarily paſſeth too ſlightly ouer moſt important words of the Hiſtorie. As in the Impreſſion of this Worke, which would require a very great Errata, onely thorow their negligence that were imployed therein.

Mathildathe Counteſſe of Bolgne.

The Authours excuſe vpon the words of his French Impreſſion.

This *Alphonſo*, Husband to the Counteſſe of *Bologne Mathilda*, was the ſame man, whom we haue obſerued, to be made Regent for the firſt King of *Portugall*, third of that name, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred fiftie and ſeauen. Who had by his lawfull Wife the ſaid *Mathilda* Counteſſe of *Bologne*, by whom he had the children formerly mentioned, and who (to maintaine himſelfe in his vſurpation) left her, without any cauſe, and eſpouſed *Beatrix*, naturall Daughter to the King of *Caſtile*, *Alphonſo* the Aſtrologer.

The Regent of *Portugall*, that afterward became the vſurper.

The priuie Sealed Charter a more exact aſſurance.

Which is much more iuſtified by the priuie Sealed Charter, formerly ſpoken of, affirming, that at the ſame time, the Houſe of *Bologne Portoit de France ſans nombre*, in regard of Monſieur *Phillip* of France, Legitimate Sonne to King *Phillip Auguſtus*, called the Conqueroer (for thoſe reaſons heretofore alleadged:) for the ſaid Monſieur *Phillip* of France married *Mahauld* of *Bologne*, Counteſſe of *Bologne*, and of *Dom-Martin*, or *Damp-Martin*, which is but all one (Daughter to *Iean*, Counteſſe of *Bologne*, and to *Renaud*, Count *de Damp-Martin*) and of this marriage was borne their onely Daughter, *Iane* of *Bologne*, Wife to *Gaucher de Chaſtillon*.

Armes giuen by King *Phillip Auguſtus* to his Sonne.

Marriage thus made betweene Monſieur *Phillip* of *France*, and the ſaid *Mahauld* Counteſſe of *Bologne*: King *Phillip Auguſtus* his Father, gaue him *L'Eſcu de France, ſans nombre, au Lambeau de Gueulles.* And for Appanage or portion, the Countie of *Clermont* in *Auuergne*: *Du Tillet* writeth, that it was the Countie of *Beauuais*.

The ſecond marriage of *Mahauld* or *Mathilda*.

In ſecond Marriage the ſaid Counteſſe of *Bologne*. *Mahauld*, by command of the King

King Saint *Loues*, and of Queene *Blanch* of *Castile* her Mother, espoused vnto [illegible] *Alphonso* of *Portugall*, whereon ensued the Children before remembred: but the said Prince of *Portugall* vsed his wife vnkindely, as wee haue already told you. Returne we now to the Armes of *Portugall*, according to the *Spanyards* owne relation, who say, that

The first King of the said Kingdome *Dom Alphonso Henriquez*, hauing vanquished fiue Kings of the Moores in a fought Battaile, and wonne away their Banners from them, in that famous encounter made at *Ourique*, and in the yeare One thousand one hundred thirtie and nine: He tooke for Armes *L'Escu d'Argent charge de Cinq Escussons d'Azur mis en Croix, & rangez en Saultour*. Which deuise the King tooke in honour of the fiue wounds of our Sauiour and Redeemer *Iesus Christ* (and which he beheld in Heauen on the day of Battaile at *Ourique*) and with a ioyfull heart, for so happy and glorious a victory.

Diuersitie of opinions concerning his Armes, and the reason of taking them.

Others doe write, that he gaue himselfe those Armes, in memory of the Thirtie Pence, which the *Iewes* gaue to the Traitour *Iudas*, for the sale and deliuery of his Lord and Maister, our Sauior and Redeemer *Iesus Christ*, that they might spend their rage and furie, vpon the onely Lambe of innocence. For the fiue Escutcheons, charged with fiue and twentie Pence, ordered in forme of a Crosse; represented the Bed of bitternesse and sorrow, whereon our Lord *Iesus Christ* endured Martyrdome, to redeeme vs by his Bloud (of ineffable merit) from eternall death, and the throne of Hell.

An addition to the Armes by *Alphonso* the third.

Some others doe hold, that in the same Battaile before remembred, King *Alphonso* won sixe Penons and Banners, belonging to as many Princes of the Moores. In memorie whereof, *Il y prit l'Escu d'Argent, charge de Cinq Quines d'Azur*, which being ioyned altogether, make vp the Senarie number. And that *Alphonso*, third of the name, fift King of *Portugall*, of whom wee haue formerly spoken, added to those Armes *L'Orle de Gueulles, chargee de Sept Chasteaux d'Or*, in fauour of the Royall House of *Castile*; from whence he tooke to wife *Dogna Beatrix*, naturall Daughter to the King of *Castile Alphonso* the Wise, and to *Dogna Maiore Guillen de Guzman*: By which Marriage the Kingdome *d'Algarue* came to the Crowne of *Portugall*.

The End of the Sixt Booke.

Of

Of those Orders of Knighthood, which (from time to time) haue beene created and Instituted in *Allemaigne*, or *Germany*:

The Seauenth Booke.

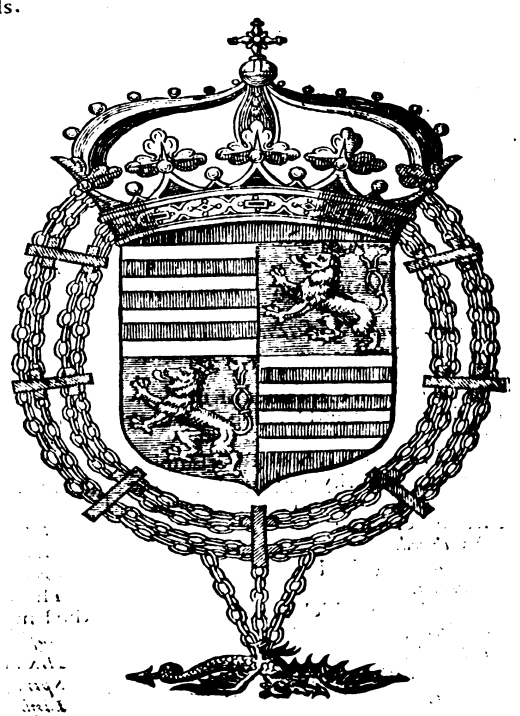
The Order of the *Dragon* Ouerthrowne, or turned vpside downward: Or of *Hungaria*. Instituted in *Germany* and *Bohemia*, by the Emperour *Sigismond*, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Foure Hundred and Eighteene.

CHAP. I.

L'Ordre de Dragon Renuersé.

We haue in some of our former Discourses, obserued the particularities of the Generall Councell of *Constans*, held in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Foure Hundred, and Fifteene, against the erroneous and depraued Doctrine of diuers, amongst whom were reckoned *John Husse*, and *Hierome* of *Prague*, said to be reuiuers of the *Albigeois* Religion, reputed Heresie in those times, condemned by the precedent Councells.

And in that of *Constans*, the [illegible] deemed Prophets, *Iohn* [illegible]*sse*, and *Hierome* of *Prague* [illegible]re burned: because they [illegible]ould not abiure the Religion [illegible]*Wicklisse*, wherewith those [illegible]o Preachers had instructed [illegible]e Kingdomes of *Hungaria* & [illegible]*hemia*, with other Seigneu[illegible]s of *Germanie*, appertaining [illegible] the Emperour *Sigismond*, [illegible]ho laboured with his vtmost [illegible]deauour to plant peace in the [illegible]urch, making no spare of [illegible]s toyle and trauaile, into En[illegible]and, France and Spaine, for [illegible]uration of those Princes, to [illegible]rrespond and ioyne with [illegible]m in so holy an enterprise: [illegible]hich hee brought to passe by [illegible]eanes of the Councell of [illegible]*stans*; determined in the [illegible]eare Foure Hundred and [illegible]ghteene. For ioy whereof, [illegible]e established the Order of [illegible]e *Dragon* ouerturned, fa[illegible]ously renowned (for long [illegible]me) throughout all *Germany*, [illegible]and in *Italy*: in regard that [illegible]e Emperours, who were Suc[illegible]ssors to the said *Sigismond*, [illegible]onoured the Princes and Vs[illegible]rs of the Empire with this Order.



The care of the Emperour *Sigismond* for the good of the Church.

The Institution of the Order.

The

The Crosse and Habite of the Knights.

The Knights whereof did dayly weare a Crosse Flower-deluced with Greene, in their ordinary noate or Emblemes; but on Sollemne and Festiuall dayes, they vsed to weare a Scarlet Cloake, and on the Mantlet of Greene Silke, a Tortis of double Chaine of Gold, at the ende whereof hung a Dragon ouerthrowne, her wings seeming broken, enamelled with diuers coulours, according as the Diuell and his Arch-Ministers and Darlings, doe vary and disguise their cunning practises, thereby to deceiue and seduce poore ignorant people.

The Emperours Deſcent.

This Emperour *Sigismond*, King of *Bohemia* and *Hungaria*, was of the Illustrious House of *Luxembourg*, Sonne to the Emperour *Charles*, Fourth of the name, nourished and educated in the Court of the King of France *Philip de Valois*, Sixt and last of the name, whose Coutt was most magnificently maintained, beyond all the Princes of Christendome.

Princes Electors of the Empire, and the Officers thereto belonging.

Charles the Fourth was Author of the Golden-Bull, for Establishing the Electors of the Empire, and the Officers thereof directed by the *Quaternian* number of Foures: as for example,

Foure Dukes, which are
Brunswicke,
Bauaria,
Suauba; And
Lorraine.

Foure Landesgraues, which are
Thuringe,
Hessen,
Luttotemberg; And
Halsatia.

Foure Marquesses, which are
Of *Misnia*,
Brandenbourge,
Morauia; And of
Bada the lower, otherwise called *Baden*.

Foure Bourgraues or Captaines, which are
Of *Maidenbourg*,
Nuremberg,
Reneck; And of
Strombourg.

Foure Earles or Counts, which are
Of *Gleues*,
Schnartzembourg in *Cilie*,
Saxonie; And
Sauoye.

Foure Counts Captaines of the Empire, for conduct and leading their men of warre.

Flanders, which is not of the Empire; but vnder Authority and homage to the Crowne of France, and therefore it beareth another name

As *Tyroll*,
Aldenbourg; And
Ferrara.

Foure Lords, which are of
Millaine,
L'Escale,
La Mirandola: And
Padua.

Foure principall Abbots, which are of
Fulda,
Kempten,
Wissembourg; And
Murbach.

The Foure Mountaines of the Empire, which are
Of *Munnerberg*,
Friberg, or *Fribourg*,
Heidelberg; And
Nurenberg.

The Foure Burroughes of the Empire, which are
Aldenbourg,
Meidenbourg,
Rotenbourg; And
Meckelbourg.

The Foure Great-Marshalls of the Empire, which are the Lords of
Bappenheines,
Iuliers or *Gulich*
Missia; And
Vistinge.

The foure Barons of the Empire, which are the Lords of
Limbourg in Franconia,
Tockembourg,
Westerbourg; And
Andelnualden.

The Foure Knights of the Empire, which are the Lords of
Andelaw,
Meldinghen,
Strondecke; And
Fronberg.

The foure Metropolitane Cities of the Empire; which are of
Ausbourg,
Aix la Chappelle,
Spire(And
Linberck.

The

The foure Villages of the Empire; which are
Bamberg,
Vlme,
Higuennaw; And
Seleſtad.

The foure Rusticks of the Empire, which are
Cologne,
Ratisbone,
Constance; And
Saltzbourg.

The foure Possessions of the Empire, which are
Ingelhim,
Altdorff
Liechtenaw; And
Denckendorff.

The foure great Rangers or Huntsmen of the Empire, are the Lords of
Hurn,
Vrach,
Scombourg; And of
Metsth, neere to *Kur* at the *Grisons*.

The foure Officers Hereditary of *Suaba* in the Empire, are these

The Esquire Caruer of *Vualpourg*,

The Cup-Bearer or Taster of *Radach*.

The Marshall of *Mardorff*; And

The Chamberlaine of *Kemnat*.

The Foure Esquires and Valets of the Empire, are the Lordes of
Waldeck.
Hirten de Fulchen,
Arnsperg; And
Rabnaw.

Antiquities are alwayes subiect to alterations.

But the most part of those Ancient Seigneuries, are changed at this present, and the goods or benefits belonging to them, are past into the greatest Houses, erected now into Dukedomes, and other Titles of Honour, according as times alter and change all things, and the willes of the Emperours, who exalted and mounted to d grees of honour and excellencie, such as themselues pleased, and deiected others.

Because there is nothing more certaine and constant in this mutable world; then vncertainty and inconstancie it selfe.

Institution of the Princes by some opinions.

Now, as concerning the number of the Princes Electours, as now at this present it is, and consisting of Seauen; some haue referred their Institution to Pope *Gregory*, the Fifth of that name, a Saxon by nation, at such time as hee Crowned for Emperour *Otho* the Third. To whom (say they) hee gaue the Empire of *Germany*, with charge and condition, that the Emperours his Successors, should bee elected of the *Germaine* Nation: And

Whosoeuer hee was that should bee elected by those Electors, must beare Title of Elect Emperour, and King of the Romaines; vntill hee should be Crowned by the Pope, after which Coronation, hee should then be stiled *Augustus*, and Emperour of the Romaines.

But this opinion can haue no subsistence. To small purpose would the Popes intrude themselues, to transferre the Empire of the West, won by the French, and with the deare expence of their blood.

A common error in some great men of these times.

But Princes are oftentimes forgetfull of great Seruices, which they cannot recompence to the very least step of merit; rather growing crosse and vnkinde to them, to whom (indeed) they stand most obliged.

Rome gouerned by Lieutenant to the Emperours.

And so hath it fared with the French, by whom the Popes are in possession of the Exarcate of *Rauenna*, and all that which else they enioy in *Italy*: For the pretended Donation or gift of *Constantine*, is but a meere Fable and *Chimera*. Rome hath alwaies bin ruled and gouerned by Lieutenants to the Emperours; witnesse *Sigebert*, speaking of the Emperours *Constans* the Second, and *Constantine Ponogat*. *Charlemaigne* established a Parliament at Rome, for the gouerning of *Italy*, and here vpon it was, that the Emperour *Fredericke Barbarossa*, at making his entrance into *Rome*, made a mockery of the Romaines behauiour, who in a vaine friuolous, and long premeditated Oration, would haue made him beleeue, that the Empire was giuen to the Germaines by the Popes. But hee shut vp their mouthes with these few words. *Romanorum Imperium maiorum meorum Francorum sanguine emptum, eisdem quibus accepi manibus, tueri conabor.*

The Emperours answere to the Romaines.

Those

Thoſe Authours which liued in the time of the ſaid Pope *Gregory*, haue left no thing written, concerning this Inſtitution of the Electours; no more did they which traced the life of the Emperour *Otho*.

The iudgement of *Onuphrius* about the Princes Electors.

Onuphrius the Great Antiquary, in his Chronicle, and in his Treatiſe of the Imperiall Aſſemblies, giueth vs to know, that Election of the Emperours by Seuen Electors, was the Inſtitution of Pope *Gregory*, who was Tenth of the name, about the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Threeſcore and Twelue.

There is a great Interuall and length of time, betweene this Pope, and *Gregory* the Fift, who ſate in the Chaire of Saint *Peter*, in the yeare Nine Hundred, Foureſcore and Fifteene: whereas *Gregory* the Tenth began to ſit in the yeare One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Threeſcore and Eleauen. He iumpes well, that can mount one, almoſt Two Hundred and Foureſcore yeares at one leape.

In the Regiſters of the Parliament, is ſet downe the Alliance and confederacie, fought and made by the King of the Romanes *Philip* (elected Emperour) with *Philip Auguſtus*, King of France; againſt King *Richard* of England, elected alſo King of *Germany*, by the ill willers to the King of *Germany*. In which Confederacie, there is not one word ſpoken of the Electors, but onely of the Princes of the Empire.

Confœderatio Imperatoris & Domini Regis.

PHILIPPVS G. Romanorum Rex ſemper Auguſtus, Notum, &c. Quod propter dilectionem quam mutuo habuerunt erga Dominum Philippum Regem Francorum genitor noſter Fredericus & Henricus Frater noſter (piæ recordationis) Romanorum Imperatores, hanc Confœderationem propter bonum pacis, & publicam vtilitatem cum chariſſimo amico noſtro Philippo illuſtri Rege Francorum duximus ineundam, in hunc modum. Quod nos eidem adiutores erimus nominatim contra Ricaraum Regem Angliæ, & Comitem Othonem nepotem ipſius, & Baulduinum Comitem Flandriæ, & Hayulfum Archiepiſcopum Coloniæ, & contra omnes alios inimicos eius, vbicunque cum honore noſtro id facere potuerimus, bona fide & ſine malo ingenio, quando locum & tempus id faciendi habebimus. Si aliquis de imperio noſtro eidem Philippo Regi Francorum malum, vel ipſius regno, ſi ille quæ deliquiſſet, non emendaret, hoc per Nos, vel per nuntios noſtros, per pacem, vel per rectum in Marchia competenti infra quadraginta dies poſtquam id ſciuerimus per præfatum Regem Francorum ſi fuerimus citra montes; vel Epiſcopus Metenſis hoc ſciuerit ſi fuerimus vltra montes, Dominus Rex Francorum poterit ſe vindicare de eo ſine interruptione, & nos inuabimus eum bona fide. Nos non retinebimus in Imperio noſtro aliquem hominem de Regno Franciæ ſiue Clericum, ſiue Laicum contra voluntatem chariſſimi amici noſtri prædicti Regis Franciæ. Prædictus Rex Franciæ quandocunque voluerit poterit ſe vindicare de Comite Flandriæ, de terra quam idem Comes habet in Imperio tam in Feodo quam in Dominio, & hoc ſine interceptione. Nos bona fide promittimus, quod ſi ſciremus, quod aliquis quæret malum Philippi Regis Francorum Illuſtris, vel eius Regno, nos bona fide id diſturbaremus, & ſi non poſſemus diſturbare, id nuntiaremus eidem Regi. Et quando, Domino volente, coronati fuerimus in Imperatorem, has conuentiones eidem illuſtri Regi Francorum renouabimus, & ſigillo noſtro confirmabimus. Nos autem in manu Nouelonis venerabilis Sueſſionenſis Epiſcopi fiduciauimus, quod omnia prædicta bona fide obſeruabimus. Id etiam de mandato noſtro dilecti Principis noſtri Conratus Vuirteburgenſis, B. Mettenſis. Chiethelmus Conſtantienſis Epiſcopi. Theodoricus quoque de Greuch, Fredericus de Ceolre, Hartemanus de Kareberch, Godefridus de Vchingre, Euerhardus de Eureſten Comites; & de latere noſtro Truſardus Camerarius noſter. Warnerus de Roſſeuuch, Warnerus de Bollands, Warnerus de Ceangue milites iurauerunt, quod bona fide ſtudebunt, quod hæc à nobis obſeruentur & teneantur. Id quoque adhuc vnum Archiepiſcopum, & vnum Epiſcopum iurare faciemus.

Datum Wannaci *Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis Milleſimo Centeſimo XC. Octauo, Regni Tertio Kalendas Iulij, noſtri prima. Per manum Conradi Imperialis Aulæ Protonotarij.*

In the yeare One Thouſand, Two Hundred Fifty and Seauen, *Richard* of England, Earle of *Cornewall*, Brother to the King of England *Henry*, Third of the name, was elected King of *Germany*, after the death of *William* Count of *Holland*. At that time then, the number of the Electours were not limited or reſtrained to Seauen. For heere you may read the Text of *Mathew Paris*, who reporteth the Catalogue and number of the Princes of *Germany*, with their Order of Precedencie, who had right and Electiue Voyces.

The Princes of *Germany* that had their Voyces in caſe of Election.

HI ſunt maximi in Alemania, ad quorum nutum pendet electio ipſius regni, quod eſt quaſi area Imperij Romanorum: Archiepiſcopus Coloniæ, cuius titulus eſt ſacri Imperij Proto-Cancellarius poſt honorem Archipræſulatus: Archiepiſcopus Maguntinus, Archiepiſcopus Trenerenſis, Rex Bohemiæ, Comes Palatinus de Rheno, Dux Auſtriæ, Dux Suauiæ, Dux & Comes Bauariæ, Dux Poloniæ, Marchiſius de Miſne, Marquitius de Brandeberg, Dux Saxoniæ, Dux de Brunſuic, Dux de Carentene, Dux de Melai, Dux Brabantiæ, qui Dux Louaniæ, Landegrauius, Turingiæ, Marchio Mixiæ. Inter omnes hos Magnates ſuperminens eſt Archiepiſcopus Colonienſis, qui coronare tenetur Regem Alemanniæ apud Aquiſgranum, ab antiqua, & approbata conſuetudine.

The Inſtitution of the Popes Conclaue.

Now like as, or according to the ſame manner, as when Pope *Gregory* the Tenth in the Councell held at *Lyons*, vnder the Reigne of *Philip* the *Hardy*, Sonne and ſucceſſour to the good King Saint *Lewes*, in the yeares, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Threeſcore and Twelue, and Thirteene) made the Decree, that whenſoeuer the death of a Pope happened, the Cardinalls ſhould be lockt vp, vntill they were all come to one agreement, and had giuen their nomination of another. Euen ſo, confuſion happening in Election of the Emperours, by plurality of them that had their electiue Voyces and Suffrages; the ſame Pope *Gregory* the Tenth ſent to pray, requeſt, and entreate the Princes of *Germany*, to finiſh the *Interregnum* which laſted in his time, to the great hurt and preiudice of Chriſtendome, and to prouide remedie for the like happening afterward.

Which accordingly they did, electing for Emperour *Rodolph* Count of *Haſpourg*. Whereby wee are to vnderſtand, that the Popes motion and requeſt had exceeded all reaſon, if the Seauen Electours had at that time beene inſtituted. But moſt true and certaine it is, that the reducing the Electors to the number of Seauen, is a moderne matter, attributed (according to *Munſter* and other *Germaines*) to the Emperour *Charles* of *Luxembourg*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, Fourth of the name, who had beene nouriſhed the moſt part of his youngeſt yeares in the Court of France, vnder the King *Philip le Bell*, his Sonnes and Succeſſours.

The ordaining of the Seauen Electors a moderne matter.

Others write, that Pope *Clement*, Fourth of the name, a *Narbonnois* by Nation, and Predeceſſour to Pope *Gregory* the Tenth; was Author of thoſe Seauen Electors, and that his Inſtitution was confirmed by the Bull of the Emperour *Charles* the Fourth.

Another opinion concerning Pope *Clement*.

But this opinion is out of all apparance, and the dates of the times are thereto contrary and repugnant.

So that the moſt likely opinion, is of them that ranke it in the yeare, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, Threeſcore and Twelue: For *John Carion*, followed by *Melanthon*, in the Fourth Booke of their Chronicles, write, that before the Emperour *Fredericke Barbaroſſa*, Firſt of the name, who died in the yeare, One Thouſand, One Hundred, Foureſcore and Nine, in the City of *Seleucia* beyond the Seas; there was no ſpeech at all of the Electours.

No great certainty of the Seauen Electors Originall.

Otho of *Auſtria*, Biſhop of *Friſinghen*, *Luitprandus*, *Schafnaburgenſis*, and other ancient Hiſtorians of thoſe times haue left, neither found any thing written thereof. *Sabellicus* in the ninth Booke of his *Æneids*, *Auentinus* and others ſing the ſame Song.

When the Emperour keepeth open Court, and walketh in ceremoniall manner, the Archbiſhop of *Treuers* is placed before him; he of *Mentz* or *Magunce* is on the

The Emperours Order in Court.

the Emperours right hand, and hee of *Cologne* on the left. The King of Bohemia holdeth ranke next to the Archbishop of *Maguncе*, hauing next to him the Count Palatine of the *Rhine*; and neereſt to him is the Duke of *Saxony*, and the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*.

At riding or going in Proceſſions, &c.

In Proceſſions and generall Entrances into Cities or Townes, the Archbiſhop of *Treuers* rideth or goeth alone before the Emperour, who following next, rideth in the midſt of the Archbiſhop of *Maguncе*, that taketh place on his right hand, and he of *Cologne* on his left. Behinde them come the other foure Electors all a-front, they two of *Bohemia* and *Saxonie* in the midſt, and the other two goe on either ſide of them.

A Modell of the Perſian Empire.

Some haue written that this number Seauen of the Electors of the Empire, was deriued from the patterne and modell of the Court of the Perſian Kings; who had neereſt to them ſeauen Great Lords of the Kingdome, whereof the Great *Sarona* (that is to ſay, the High Prieſt) was the Chiefe, by Councell of which ſeauen Lords the whole Empire of *Perſia* was gouerned.

Heſt. 1. 1. 4.

And thoſe ſeauen Great Lords were called, by Title of Excellencie and Honour, Princes, as wee learne in the Hiſtory of *Heſter*, the firſt Chapter, by theſe wordes, *Septem Duces Perſarum atque Medorum, qui videbant faciem Regis, & primi poſt eum reſidere ſoliti erant. The ſeauen Princes of Perſia and Media, which ſaw the Kings face, and which ſate the firſt in the Kingdome.* And their names were *Carſhena*, *Sherhar*, *Admatha*, *Tarſhis*, *Meres*, *Marſena* and *Memucan*, a preſident of very ſingular example.

The names of the Seauen Princes.

Now heere you may behold the dignities of theſe Seauen Electours of the Empire, the three firſt whereof are Eccleſiaſticall perſons, and the other foure Secular.

The Dignities and Offices of the Seauen Princes Electors.

1. The Archbiſhop of *Maguncе*, Primate of the *Germanies*, prime Prince Elector, and Arch-Chancellour of *Allemaigne* or *Germanie*.
2. The Archbiſhop of *Treuers* Arch-Chancellour of *Italy*.
3. The Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, Arch-Chancellour of the *Gaules*.
4. The Duke of *Saxony*, Great or High Marſhall of the Empire, who beareth the Imperiall Sword, which Office and place we in France call the Conſtable.
5. The Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, Great Chamberlaine of the Empire.
6. The Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, Lord High Steward of the Empire.
7. The Duke of *Bohemia*, Great Cup-Bearer or Taſter of the Empire.

Which dignities and Offices are figured and repreſented in theſe fiue rimiug Verſes following.

Moguntinenſis, Treuerenſis, & Colonienſis,
Quilibet Imperij ſit Cancellarius horum.
Et Palatinus Dapifer: Dux Portitor enſis:
Marchio Præpoſitus Cameræ: Pincerna Boemus.
Hi ſtatuunt Dominum cunctis per ſæcula ſummum.

Concerning *Hungary*, and her ancient Inhabitant.

Hungaria (which heretofore was called *Pannonia* the Lower, and the ancient Inhabitants *Peonians*, afterwards *Panonians*) tooke that name of the *Scythian* Nation, (and were acknowledged by the ſame Title) who in the yeare of Grace Foure Hundred and One, leauing the ſourſe or Spring of *Tana*, in Latine called *Tanais*, went to poſſeſſe themſelues of the higher and lower *Pannoniaes*.

Cadaris, the firſt King of the *Hungarians*.

Their firſt King after this ſeizure made, was named *Cadaris*, after whom ſucceeded the cruell *Attila*, ouerthrowne in a Battaile fought on the Plaines, and in the fields of *Sologne*, betweene *Orleans* and *Bourges*, as wee haue formerly related to you in the Second Booke of theſe Antiquities.

His Reigne continued foure and forty yeares, after whoſe death his Sonnes and thoſe of *Bleda*, his Brother whom hee had cauſed to bee put to death) ſucceeded, euen to the time of our King *Charlemaigne*, who made himſelfe Lord and Maiſter of both the *Pannoniaes*, and made the Prince of *Hungaria* that then gouerned, his Tributary (as *Æginard* telleth vs) who was called *Doxis*. *Charlemaigne* ſowed there ſome ſeedes of the Chriſtian faith, receiued and embraced by ſome of the Inhabitants: but fully planted and grounded by the Sonne of *Doxis*.

The firſt embracing.

The

The Genealogie of the Kings of *Hungaria*.

Geyſa, firſt Chriſtian King of *Hungarie*, at the requeſt and earneſt prayers of our King *Charles* the Bauld.

Kadaris, & *Attila*, Kings of *Hungaria*, in deſpight of the Romaine Emperours that liued in their time, to *A de Affliction to the vanquiſhed* (according to the ancient Prouerbe of the *Gaules*) forſooke their auncient Armes *De Sable au Loup paſſant d'Argent*; and tooke *D'Argent à Aigle eſploye de Synople*: Armes retained by the Princes of *Hungarie*, vntill the firſt Chriſtian King *Geyſa*, who tooke *D'Argent à Trois mottes de Terre de Synople, à la Croix Archiepiſcopale, ou Patriarchale de Gueulles*, to preſerue the memorie of the Church of *Strigonia*, begun to be build'd by the ſaid King *Geyſa*, and finiſhed by his Sonne and Succeſſor.

II. Saint *Stephen*, the ſecond Chriſtian King of *Hungarie*, who there ordained Archbiſhops or Metropolitaine See, which happened in the yeare of Grace, nine hundred foureſcore and ſeauenteen. And from thence it proceeded, that the Kings of *Hungaria* haue retained to this preſent, the double Croſſe or Deuiſe. But they did take other Armes, to wit, *Bureſle d'Argent, & de Gueulles de huict pieces*. The foure veſſes of Siluer, doe repreſent the foure principall Riuers which water *Hungarie*, namely *Danubie*, *Sauo*, *Neſſa*, and *Drava*: which waſh and water all the Lands of *Hungarie*, making them fertile and rich in Mines. Saint *Stephen* tooke to wife *Giſela*, Siſter to the Emperour Saint *Henry*, & by her he had many Children; among whom was Saint *Emerie*. By reaſon of this death, *Sarola* his Siſter had a Sonne named

III. *Peter*, who inherited the Crown of *Hungarie*, but his Subiects pluckt out his eyes; for his tyrannicall and diſorderly life. And by his death, the Crowne came to the Sonnes of *Michael*, Brother to King *Geyſa*, they both being the Sonnes of *Doxis*. This *Michael* left three Sons, namely

Camutus.
Ladiſlaus, that is *Lancelot*; And
Vazulius.

Ladiſlaus was Father to three Children, to wit

D'Andreas, afterward King.
Leuenta: And
Bela, afterward King.

IIII. *Andreas* was the fourth Chriſtian King of *Hungarie*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand ſeauen hundred, who left three children,

Salomon.
Adelarda: And
Dauid.

After the death of *Andreas*, *Salomon* his eldeſt Sonne came to the Crowne: but it was vſurped againſt him by his Vncle

V. *Bela*, who held the Kingdome three years: And by his death his Nephew

VI. *Salomon*, enioyed the Crown of *Hungarie*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand threeſcore and three.

Bela, left three Sons, namely

Lambert.
Geyſa, afterward King: And
S. Ladiſlaus, King likewiſe.

Salomon made an agreement with theſe two laſt named, to reigne during his life time: but thirteene yeares after, the Ball of diuiſion was thrown between theſe two Princes, which was the cauſe that

VII. *Geyſa*, ſecond of the name, & his Brother *Ladiſlaus* expelled *Salomon* out of the Kingdome, whereof they poſſeſſed themſelues, and the ſaid *Geyſa* was King three yeares onely, when by his death

VIII. *Ladiſlaus*, a man of ſanctified life, a great Iuſticer, & who liued chaſtely all his life time with *Giſella* his wife, Siſter to *Zelomira*, King of *Dalmaſia*, who had eſpouſed the Siſter of the ſaid King *Ladiſlaus*, to whom by his Teſtament (if he chanced to die without iſſue) *Zelomira* ſhould leaue *Dalmaſia* & *Croatia*, with eſpeciall charge and condition, that they ſhould remaine inſeperably vnited to the Crowne of *Hungarie*, as afterward it came to paſſe. In his time King *Salomon* forſooke the world, and became an Hermite in the woods of *Iſtria*, where he liued ſolitarily in all perfection and holineſſe of life. *Ladiſlaus* reigned nineteene yeares, and dyed bleſſedly (his dead body working many famous miracles) in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foureſcore and fifteene. He left two Sonnes

Coloman; And
Almo, whom King *Ladiſlaus* had (by his Will and Teſtament) preferred to the Kingdome, although he was the yonger Brother, as well in regard of his milde and gentle manners; as becauſe *Coloman* the elder was miſshapen, one eyed and halting, being beſide of a very cruell and wicked diſpoſition. Neuertheleſſe, ſoone after his Fathers death;

IX. *Coloman* poſſeſſed himſelfe of the Kingdome, and made warre vpon his Brother, when he ſurprized by treaſon, with his Sonne *Bela*, cauſing both their eyes to be pluckt forth of their heads, and to be ſhut vp in a Monaſtery. He reigned One and twenty yeares, and died in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred and foureteene, leauing behinde him three Sons, to wit

Stephen.
Ladiſlaus, dying yong: And
Nicholas, a naturall Sonne.

X. *Stephen*, ſecond of the name, by the death of his Father came to the Crowne of *Hungarie*, albeit he was but eight yeares old, and reigned eighteene. In regard he had not any Children, he adopted for his Sonne and Succeſſour in the Kingdome, his Couſine *Bela*, whoſe eyes his Father had cauſed to be puld out, and ſhut vp in a Monaſtery.

XI. *Bela*, ſecond of the name, reigned nine yeares, and dyed of a Dropſie, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand one hundred forty & one. He left foure Sons

Ladiſlaus, King ſixe Months.
Geyſa, afterward King; And
Almo.

XII. *Geyſa*, third of the name, ſucceeded in the Kingdome by the death of his Father. His Reigne laſted twenty yeares, and he had two Sons, as namely

Stephen, afterward King; And
Bela, King alſo.

By the death of *Geyſa* (a Prince endued with moſt ſweete and affable nature) happening in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred threeſcore and one, his eldeſt Sonne

XIII. *Stephen*, third of the name, ſucceeded him, againſt whom his Vnckle *Ladiſlaus* ſought to vſurpe the Crowne, which he held the ſpace of ſix Moneths, and (by his death) his Brother *Stephen* likewiſe vſurped the Kingdome. But he was vanquiſhed in a fought Battaile by the ſaid *Stephen*; who dyed the ſame yeare as the Battaile was giuen, being the yeare of Grace One thouſand one hundred threeſcore and thirteene, leauing for Succeſſour in the Kingdome after him, his Brother

XIV. *Bela*, third of the name, the reigne of whom laſted but a ſhort time. He left two Sonnes,

Aymery; And
Andrew.

By the death of *Bela*, ranked among the number of the Saints, for his holines of life, ſucceeded him in the Kingdome his eldeſt Sonne.

XV. *Aymery*, whoſe reigne continued eight yeares, and he deceaſing in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred, left the Crowne to his Son

XVI. *Ladiſlaus*, ſecond of the name, who reigned but ſixe Moneths, leauing the Crowne to his Vnckle

XVII. *Andrew* or *Andreu*, ſecond of the name, who reigned foure & thirty yeares. He made one in the Croiſſade, and went in the voyage to the Holy Land, giuing the care and keeping of his wife *Gertrude*, to a Lord of the Countrie named *Baucban*, who had to his wife one of the very faireſt Ladies in *Hungarie*, that alwayes kept company with the Queene. This Queene had a Brother, who grew very earneſtly amorous of that beautifull Lady, and obtained his pleaſure of her, by the baſe brokage and cloſe contriuing of the Queene, who compaſſed the meanes, to cauſe her Brother lye with the Lady, vnder the name of her Husband *Baucban*, to whom his wife (much diſtaſted with ſo vile a deed) diſcloſed the ſecret. Hereupon he fell into ſuch a frenzie & iealouſie, that he had ſlaine the Queenes Brother, but onely he preuented it by flight; neuerleſſe, he gaue the Queene ſo many ſtabs with his Pony yard, as ſhe expected hourly the ending of her life.

The King being returned from his holy voyage, called before publique Iuſtice *Baucban*, whom he had left Gouernor of his Kingdome, to vnderſtand the reaſon, why he had committed this violence on the perſon of the Queen his wife. When he had heard the whole matter at large related to him; with his owne mouth he gaue the ſentence of abſolution to *Baucban*, & condemned the Queen to be burned

aliue, which accordingly was executed; that both men and women might take example, for medling in ſuch wicked buſines. *Andrew* by his firſt wife *Gertrude* had three Sons and a Daughter.

Bela, afterward King.
Coloman. And
Andrew.
The Daughter was
Saint *Elizabeth*, wife to *Lewes Landſgraue* of *Thuringe*,

By another wife he had one Son
Stephen, Father of *Andrew*, who was afterward King.

This King *Andrew*, being a valiant Prince, and a great Iuſticer, died in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred thirty and fiue, leauing the Crowne to his eldeſt Sonne

XVIII. *Bela*, fourth of the name, who reigned forty yeares, and dyed in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred threeſcore and fifteene. He had two Sonnes:

Bela, dying in his Fathers life time. And

XIX. *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, fourth of the name, whoſe reigne continued foure and twenty yeares. He was traiterouſly ſlaine by one of his Minnions or Fauourites, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand two hundred foureſcore and nineteene: He left a Son and a daughter.

XX. *Ladiſlaus*, King of *Hungarie* (third of the name) by the death of his Father.

The Daughter was
Mary, wife to *Charles*, King of *Sicilie*. And in this marriage were borne many Children, to wit

Charles, ſirnamed *Martell*, Father of { *Charles*, King. *Clemencia*. And *Iane* of *Sicilie*.

S. *Lewes* a Gray Fryer, Biſhop of *Tolledo*.
Robert Charles, otherwiſe called *Carobert*.
Phillip-Lewes.
Raymond.
Berenguela.
Eleonora; And
Blanch.
Ladiſlaus being deceaſed without iſſue

XXI. *Andrew*, third of the name, Son to *Stephen*, yongeſt Sonne to *Andrew* of *Beyond the Seas*, called the Iuſticer, ſecond of the name, was Ki. of *Hungarie*. Which *Andrew* the third dyed without iſſue in the yeare of Grace One thouſand three hundred and one, but in his life time, *Charles Martell* of *Sicilie* layed claime to the Kingdome of *Hungary*, in the right of his Mother Queene *Mary*, and with him *Charles* his eldeſt Sonne, being ſupported by ſome Lords of the ſaid Kingdome of *Hungarie*.

After the death of the ſaid *Andrew* the third, the *Hungares* (being deuided among themſelues) elected for their King *Wenceſlaus*, who was of *Bohemia*. Others gaue their voyces to *Otho*, Duke of *Bauaria*, who made his entrance into *Hungary*; but ſlunke away ſuddenly after his entrance. Theſe deuiſions were (at the length) determined, in a generall Aſſembly of the Eſtates of the Kingdome, who (with one conſent) adiudged, & gaue the Crown to

Variance among the *Hungars* for election of their King.

XXII. *Charles* of *Sicilie*, Sonne to *Charles Martel*, and the Queene of *Sicilie Mary* of *Hungarie*; Crowned King in the yeare One thouſand three hundred and ten, who left behind him three Sons

Lewes.
Stephen; And
Andrew, Father of *Charles*, King of *Sicilie*.

XXIII. *Lewes*, by the death of his Father, was King of *Hungarie*, who ſought to reuenge the death of his Brother *Andrew*, Husband to *Iane* Queene of *Sicilie*; from whom he laboured to vſurpe the Kingdome of *Sicilie*. He died in the year of Grace, One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and two, he being aged threeſcore and ſixe yeares old: Leauing behinde him but two Daughters by *Margaret*, ſiſter to *Cazimire*, King of *Poland*, deceaſing without iſſue.

The Daughters were
Heduelga; And
Mary, wife to *Sigiſmond* of *Bohemia*, Brother to *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, Sons to *Charles* of *Luxembourge*, Kings of *Bohemia*, and Emperours of the *Romaines*, the one after the other.

Predictions ſuppoſed concerning this Order of the Dragon.

This *Sigiſmond* was Author of the Order of the *Dragon* Ouerthrowne; the only ſubiect of this diſcourſe. The *Germaines*, Agents and followers of *Martin Luther*, a Succeeder in the Doctrine of *John Huſſe*, and *Hierome* of *Prage*, condemned and burned at the Councill of *Conſtans*; had made ſome publique declaration, againſt the Inſtitution of this Order. Seeming to blaze abroad, that in former times, vnder the Emperors of *Germanie*, the *Dragon* had bin the Signale of the Empires faire fortunes and felicitie,

felicitie, euen as it was in the times of the first *Romaine* Emperours. Whereto was added, that *Charles* of *Luxembourge*, King of *Bohemia*, Emperour, fourth of the name, and his Sonnes, Successours in the Empire and Kingdome of *Bohemia*, had bin the subiect and motiue cause (thorow their extreame couetousnesse) of loosing not onely *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, but generally the whole Estate of the Empire in *Germanie* and *Italie*, hauing (for certaine prices and summes of money) sold the Cities and Countries subiected to the Empire, displuming the Eagle, like to the Crowe of *Horace*, & brought it to a bare honorable title, without profit, power or any subsistance, but onely by the subuentions and helpes of the *Germaine* States, which are but Arbitrary, and according as the necessities of the Turkish wars doe presse them.

The Triumphall entrances of the Emperours into Rome

Now, it is a matter most sure and constant (according to the testimony of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, in the life of *Iulian* the Apostata, his sixt Booke) that the *Romaine* Emperours, making their entrances in Triumphall pompe: had borne before them on Pikes and long Statues, artificiall Dragons, made of light materials, and hollow within, their mouthes and throates wide gaping, onely to receiue in the ayre, by meanes whereof they hissed and whistled like Serpents: their Tayles couered with Crimosine Taffetie, floated with the windes, like to shining writhing Adders. According as it was obserued by the Poet *Claudian In Ruffinum.*

.. .. Spiritsque remissis
Manfuescunt varij vento cessante DRACONES.

And at the sixt Pan gyricke;

Hi volucres tollunt Aquilas: hi picta DRACONVM,
Colla leuant, multusque tumens per nubila Serpens:
Ipsius flexanimante Noto, vimque receptis
Fluctibus, & vario mentitur sibila tractu.

A Dragon carried as Colonell of the Armie.

In like manner the Emperours of *Germanie*, when they marched in a ranked Battaile, they caused a Dragon to be carried, planted vpon a Waggon or Chariot appointed for War, engirt and guarded with the best Souldiours in all the Armie. Our auncient Historians, in describing the Battaile wonne by *Phillip Augustus*, called the Conqueror, King of *France* (second of the name, against the rebellious Flemmings, and their Count *Ferrand* of *Portugall*; *Reynand* Count of *Monstroeil*, *Bologne* and of *Dampmartin*; the King of *England* *Iohn*; and the Emperor of *Germanie* *Otho*, fourth of the name; doe say, that the *French* conquered the Dragon, which the said Emperour *Otho* caused to be carried vpon a great Armed Chariot. This was at the Battaile of *Bouuines*, wonne by King *Phillip Augustus*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred and fifteene, in the Moneth of *Augustu*, but the day I haue not remembred.

The Battaile of *Bouuines*.

Rigordus, in the life of *Phillip Augustus*, *Ab opposita parte stabat Otho in medio agminis constitutus, qui sibi pro vexillo erexerat* Aquilam deauratum super Draconem, pendentem in pertica oblonga erecta in Quadriga. And a little after *Et ita Imperator ostendit militibus nostris dorsum, & à campo recessit Aquila, & Draco cum Carro dimissus, & prede expositus: Et ibidem capti sunt duo Comites cum Bernardo, & Girardo*: Carrus discerpitur, Draco Francitur, Aquila alis cuulsis, & Confractis ad ipsum Regem deferrur.

William the *Breton*, at the beginning of the fift Booke of his *Phillipides*, that is to say; *Of the life of King Phillip Augustus*; speaketh thus

Mox Otho Imperij declarans signa, volensque
Iam quasi promeriti rem praelibare trophei
STANDARDVM ædificat, miroque insignit honore,
Imperij vt fasces tanto illustrante paratu
Se Dominatorem totius disputet Orbis,
ERIGIT IN CARRO PALVM, PALOQVE DRACONEM
Implicat, vt possit procul hinc atque inde videri,
Hauriat & ventos, cauda tumefactus, & alis,
Dentibus horrescens, victusque patentis hiatu,
Quem super aurata volucer Iouis imminet ala
Tota superficies cuius nitet aurea Solis
Aemula, quo iactat plus se splendoris habere.

And

And at the beginning of his twelfth Booke.

CARRVS quo reprobus erexerat Otho DRACONEM,
Quem super auratis Aquilam suspenderat alis,
Cogitur innumeras in se sentire secures,
Fragminibusque dolet ignis cibus esse minutis,
Nec saltem vt superent fastus vestigia tanti,
Cumque suis pereat damnata superbia Pompis.

But come we now againe to *Sigismond*. It was in the time of his Reigne, when the Battaile at *Nicopolis* was lost from the Christians, and won by the Great Turke *Baiazeth*, in the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and sixteene, on Monday before the day of Saint *Michael* in September.

A Briefe Relation of the Battaile fought at *Nicopolis*, betweene the *Christians*, and Baiazeth *the Turkish Emperour.*

Sigismond had obtained of the most Christian King, *Charles* the sixt, the succour of a thousand Knights, and as many Esquires, the most valiant Gentlemen in his Kingdome, with such troupes of braue disposed Souldiours, as amounted well neere to twelue thousand. Of them was chiefe Leader and Commander *Iohn* of *Bourgongne*, who was Count of *Neuers* (Eldest Sonne to *Phillip* the *Hardie*, Duke of *Bourgongne*) conducted by *Phillip* of *Artois*, Count *d'Eu*, and Constable of France: The Counts of *March*, *Henry* and *Phillip de Bar*; *Frances Enguerran*, Lord of *Coucy* and Count of *Soissons*; *Guy de la Trimouille*, Lord of *Sucilly*; *William* his Brother; *Iohn* of *Vienna*, Admirall of France; *Iohn de Maingre*, called *Boucicault*, afterward Marshall of France; *Renauld* Lord of *Roye*; the Lords of Saint *Paule*, of *Montorell*, and of *S. Py*; the *Hazele* of *Flanders*; the Lord *de la Riuiere Montquell*, and many other Lords, of very great experience in the managing of Armes.

The succour of Knights and Squires in France.

Baiazeth, to raise the Siedge of *Nicopolis* in *Bithinia*, came thither with two hundred thousand men. Twentie thousand Turkes were vanquished (in an Ambuscado) by the Lord of *Coucy*, accompanied onely with fiue hundred Horse; which bred choller and anger in the Counts of *Neuers* and *Eu*, who enuied the glory of this valiant Captaine.

The power of *Baiazeth* to raise the Siedge of *Nicopolis*.

Sigismond was of the minde, that the *Hungars* should haue the first place of preferment on the day of Battaile; because they were fashioned, inured and made apt to fight with the Turkes, and that the *French* should be in the grand Battalion of the Armie. The Lord of *Coucy* (who dyed prisoner at *Byrsa*) was of the same opinion; yet contraried by the Lord *de la Trimouille*, who alleadged for his reasons, that this was an vndoubted signe of cowardise and feare. But *Coucy* auouched, that it was the safest and most assured counseil; For in occurrences of Warre (quoth he) men must suffer themselues to be guided by reason, and not by contempt or misprising the enemies forces. Moreouer, he would place the tayle of his Horse, where *Trimouille* durst not set his Horses head.

A consideration for at pointing the Order of the Battaile.

Thus good counsell was interpreted to the worst, and onely for the sinnes of the *French*; who with the *Germaines*, *English* and *Flemings*, to the number of twenty thousand men; were round engirt with the Infidels Armie, and instantly slaine in the Field: But of the Turkes to the number of threescore thousand men: The *Hungars* and the Emperour saued themselues, without so much as looking on the enemy, leauing the Strangers in the crowdes.

Quarrell and Contention deafe to all good aduise.

Foure hundred of reserued Prisoners, on the morrow had their throates cut before the Pauillion of *Othoman*: but certaine *French* Lords, to the number of sixe and twentie, were spared, and ransommed at two hundred thousand Florines.

The bloudy issue of the Battaile.

Iohn de Neuers, euen at the point of perishing by the Sword; One *Deruis* hauing seene his countenance; stayed *Baiazeth* from putting him to death. Assuring him, that he would be the subiect and cause, for the effusion and expence of more Christian

A man so named, or his Office.

Christian bloud; then *Othoman*, and all them of his Law, were able to doe with all their power.

Buriall denied the Christians

The Turkes buried their dead, but left the Christians lying in the Field of Battaile, without admitting them any buriall, becauſe they ſhould be foode for the Foules of the Ayre, and ſaluage beaſts of ſlaughter. But contrary to their hope or expectation, there they remained thirteene Moneths, as white as Snowe, and without any attaint: which euidently declared, that their death equalled Martyrdome, dying in defence of their Faith. The Count *D'Eu*, and *Guy de la Trimouille* dying priſoners, without ſeeing any more their Countrey of *France*.

Sigiſmond, dyed in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred thirtie ſeauen, being the threeſcore and tenth of his Age; and of his Reigne ouer the *Romaines* ſeauen and twenty; the ſeauenteenth of *Bohemia*; the fifteenth ouer the *Hungares*; and fift of his Empire. He was the Father of

XXV. *Elizabeth*, wife to *Albert*, Duke of *Auſtria*, Kings of *Hungaria* and of *Bohemia*; and Emperour of the *Romaines*, who dyed of a diſſenterie, by hauing fed too much on Melons, One thouſand foure hundred thirtie and nine. And by his death, the Lords of *Hungarie* (awaiting for the Poſthumous fruite of Queene *Elizabeth*, left great with childe) elected for their King

XVI. *Ladiſlaus*, fourth of the name, Duke of *Lithuania*, Brother to *Cazimir*, King of *Poland*; whoſe reigne was of very ſmall continuance, being ſlaine in the Battaile of *Varne*, wonne againſt the Chriſtians, by the Turke. During his Reigne

XXVII. *Ladiſlaus*, fift of the name (the Poſthumous Son to *Albert* of *Auſtria*, and Queene *Elizabeth* his Mother) was Crowned King of *Hungarie* at the age of foure Moneths: the Realme being Gouerned (during his minoritie) by the great and renowned Captaine *Iohn Huniades*. The ſaid *Ladiſlaus* was affianced to Madam *Magdalen* of *France*, fift Daughter to King *Charles* the ſeauenth, called the *Victorious*, and dyed (hauing neuer ſeene her) in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred fiftie and eight, it being the nineteenth of his age. After his death, the Lords of *Hungarie* elected for their Soueraigne and King

XXVIII. *Mathias Coruinus*, Sonne to the great Captaine *Huniades*, Crowned King of *Hungarie* by the Emperour *Fredericke*, with the Crowne of Saint *Stephen*, the ſixt yeare of his Reigne, and of Grace One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and foure. His Reigne continued ſeauen and thirtie yeares, and dying without iſſue, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and fifteene; the Crowne of *Hungarie* fell to

XXIX. *Ladiſlaus*, ſixt of the name (Sonne of *Wenceſlaus*, Brother to *Cazimire* King of *Poland*, and *Elizabeth*, Queene of *Hungarie*) who had for Succeſſour in the Kingdome

XXX. *Lewes* his Sonne, who reigned but a little time, and by his death happening in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred twenty and ſixe, the Crown of *Hungarie* came to his Siſter

XXXI. *Anne*, Wife to *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, in the Royall Houſe whereof, the Kingdome of *Hungarie* remaineth euen to this preſent, in the perſons of the Emperour.

XXXII. *Maximillian* of *Auſtria*, Father to the Emperours

XXXIII. *Rodolphe*, Second; And

XXXIV. *Mathias*, ſecond of the name.

CHAP. II.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Kings of Bohemia.

Prage the chief Citie of Bohemia.

Bohemia is a Prouince of *Almaigne* or *Germanie* (on all ſides encloſed with the Forreſt of *Hircynia*) waſhed or watered with two great Riuers, of the Elue and of *Multauia*, whereon is ſeated the Citie of *Prage*, it being the Capitall or chiefe of the Kingdome. It was (at the firſt) gouerned by Dukes, but afterward vnder the reigne of the Emperour *Fredericke Barbaroſſa*, firſt of the name, *Bohemia* grew

At what time it became a Kingdome.

w erected to a Kingdome by the ſaid *Frederick*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and eighteene. This great Prouince was firſt inhabited cording to the teſtimony of *Tacitus* in his *Germania*) by the *Boui bonnois* people of *le*, as well as *Bauaria*, and from it enued, that ſhe hath ſtill retain d her Auncient me of *Boia*, and of *Boemia* or *Bohemia*; *A Boys Gallia Populis*: Afterward chaſed and Retayning ſtill her Auncient name. ulſed thence by the *Vandales*, who (by *Tatitus*) are called *Marcomans*; which by *Countreys* name were tearmed *Bohemians*, or *Bohem-Mans*, and not *Marcomans*, *Vandales*.

Borſinus the firſt Chriſtian Prince of *Bohemia*.

The Faſt Chriſtian Prince of this Prouince (which was in elder times vnder the mage and Iuriſdiction of the King of *Morauia*, which at this preſent is but a Marqui- and *Bohemia* a Kingdome) was named *Borſinus*, who died in the yeare nine hun- d, or there about, the tenth Duke of *Bohemia*: Father to *Radiſlaus* Duke; Father Duke *Boriſlaus*: Father to Duke *Boleſlaus*, Second of the name; Father to Duke *Iſlaus*, Third of the name; Father to *Iamires*, Duke; Vncle to *Briſetiſlaus*, Duke, o died in the yeare of Grace one thouſand fifty and two.

Iutha a Nunne taken out of a Monaſtery.

This man tooke out of a Monaſtery of Nunnes, erected at *Ratisbonna* (a village of *uaria*, called in the Coſmographicall *Itinerarium* of *Ethicus*, *Auguſta Tibery*, and af- ward in vulgar ſpeech *Reginoburgum*, *Reganesbourg* in the Chronicle of *Laureſheim*, d *Regensbourg*, where the Monaſtery of Saint *Hemerian* is, and wherein was ſhorne onke *Childerick*, laſt King of *France* of the deſcendants of *Clouis*, the yeare of Grace uen hundred and fifty) the Daughter to the Emperour *Otho*, Second of the name, led *Iutha*; whoſe father purſuing this rape and outrage, entred into *Bohemia* Rage and Reuenge purſuing the rape. h a potent Army, reſolued to put all to Fire and Sword. The two Armies being on the point of ioyning, *Iutha* fell on her knees proſtrate before her Father, obtay- g pardon of him for her reape. But becauſe the Emperour had made a ſolemne we and Oathe, to eſtabliſh his Throane Royall in the very middeſt of *Bohemia*: by agreement made betweene the Father in Law, and his new abſolued Sonne, hee The Imperiall Seate erected in *Bohemia* by *Otho*. ſed to be built a Royall Seate of Free Stone (high and Stately) in the Countrey of *eſlauia*, which is the middeſt and nauill of *Bohemia*, in memorie of this perpetuall a- ement. And the Emperour permitted his new Sonne in Lawe, and his ſucceſſours Lords and Dukes of *Bohemia*, to beare of the Empire, that is to ſay *De Gueules Aigle eſploye d'Or Eſchiquete de Sable*. Armes retained yet to this d y by the Mar- eſſe of *Morauia*, and by the deſcendants of this *Briſlaus*, who by his Wife *Iutha* d fiue Children.

The iſſue of *Briſlaus* and *Iutha*.

Spitignio, Duke by the death of his Father.

Vratiſlaus, Duke by the death of his Brother, and Proclaimed King of *Bohemia* the Emperour *Henry* the Fourth, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hun- d foureſcore and ſixe.

Conrard, who vſurped the Dukedome (but he tooke not on him the name of King) ainſt his Brothers Children, and Reigned no longer then Seauen Moneths.

Vratiſlaus, Firſt King of *Bohemia*, had many Sonnes, whereof none ſucceeded him the Kingdome, becauſe

I. *Ladiſlaus*, the Sonne of *Conrard*, made himſelfe to bee inueſted in the Kingdome, the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, ſo to continue to him and his Succeſſours, in yeare before remembred. He had for his Succeſſour in this newe ſpringing Kingme, his Sonne

II. *Frederick*, God-ſonne to the Emperour *Barbaroſſa*, who had for Succeſſour

III. *Primiſlaus*, Father to *Wenceſlaus*; And

IIII. *Ottocarus*, otherwiſe called *Primiſlaus* the Second, inueſted in the Kingdome *Bohemia* by the Emperour *Phillip*, Sonne to the Emperour *Frederick*. This *Otto-* *Hubrick* or *Huldrick* Duke of *Carinthia*. *arus* acquitted to the Duke of *Carinthia Huldrick* (ſeeing himſelfe without Children) *rinthia*, *Carniola*, the Marquiſate of *Sclauonia*, and many other Lands beſide, as wee ll haue occaſion to ſpeake of heereafter.

Now concerning this *Ottocarus* (whom the *Italians* called *Odoacres*) hee had for eat Maiſter of his Pallace *Rodolphe*, Counte of *Habſpourg*, who being come to the perialll dignitie; ſent to ſummon *Ottocarus*, to render vp to him the Dukedome of *Auſtria*,

Austria, whereof hee had possessed himselfe in the vacancie of the Empire, after the death of *Richard* of *England*: And yet *Ottocarus* had Married *Margaret*, Sister to *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, but deceassing without issue, and *Ottocarus* himselfe had not any Sonne. Whereupon the said *Rodolphe* alleaged, that the Dukedome of *Austria* was a Masculine or Male Fiefe of the Empire, from which (according to the *Salique* Law) Daughters were excluded, and so the sirright ceassing, he was the very next heire of the house of *Austria*, in regard of his Mother. Furthermore, he would haue restored to him the Dukedomes of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Carnia*, the Marquisate of *Sclauonia*, and other lands, by him acquitted to Duke *Huldrick*, which he had no power to alienate, without permission of the Emperour first obtained. but *Ottocarus* contemning the Emperour, because hee had formerly bin at his seruice; sent absolute refusall both of the one and other.

Austria a maasle Fiefe of the Empire.

Now both prepared to stand vpon their guard, the Emperour to reduce *Ottocarus* to reason, and *Ottocarus* to defend and maintaine his Conquest. Yet to auoyde the inconueniences, which ordenarily doe attend on warrs; an agreement was laboured betweene the two Princes, whereby *Ottocarus* rendered to the Emperour the Dukedome of *Austria*. But in regard of the other Lands demaunded, there was a treaty about a double alliance, of the Emperours Sonne, named *Rodolphe*, with *Agnes* Daughter to *Ottocarus*, and a Sonne in Lawe of *Ottocarus*, with a Daughter of the Emperours. Young *Rodolph* had no long time of life, yet of this mariage he left a Sonne, named *Iohn*, who slew the Emperour *Albert* his Vnckle.

An accord made betweene *Ottocarus* and the Emperour.

After this agreement, *Rodolphe* hauing recouered the Dukedome of *Austria*, sent another summons to *Ottocarus*, to doe him homage for the Lands acquired from *Huldrick*; which *Ottocarus* flatly refused to doe. Vpon this deniall, both parties were vp in Armes, and the Armies ready to encounter, being not a mile distant eche from other, but that of the Emperour farre the greater. *Ottocarus* sent his Ambassadours to mediate some agreement with the Emperour, offering him such Homage as he required: prouided, that it might bee done in perticuler (for preseruation of Royall dignitie) and within the Emperours Tente or Pauillion, which being graunted, the Emperour caused his Pauillion to bee erected in the very highest parte of the Army, and vnder it a lofty Throne Royall and Canopy of State, ascending vp Ten or Twelue degrees; to the end, that this Homage might be seene of the whole Armie, yea and of the King of *Bohemia*es too.

Ottocarus vndertaken in doing his homage.

When hee was entred into the Pauillion Royall, he ascended (in all reuerence) so high as to the Emperours Seate, at the foote whereof hee prostrated himselfe, and tooke the accustomed Oath vpon his knees. As the Emperour held his hands according to Order; instantly the whole Pauillion opened in foure parts, and sunck downe to the ground: by meanes whereof, *Ottocarus* was publiquely seene on his knees before the Emperour, by both the Armies, which formerly he had so highly disdayned. The wife of *Ottocarus* hearing tydings of this homage; sent so many despightfull messages to her Husband: that he left his Army in the Field, and defied the Emperour, who presently prepared to meete with his enemy.

Ottocarus slaine in the Battaile.

The Battaile was fought in *Austria*, betweene the Riuer of *Danubie*, and the Towne of *Laba*: where *Ottocarus* was buried, being slaine by a Noble man of *Styria*, and with him Foureteene Thousand *Bohemians*, beside a great number of prisoners taken. This Battaile happened in the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred threescore and nineteene, according to the *Germaine* Chronicles: or after *Martinus Cromerus*, One thousand two hundred and fourescore. To verifie the auncient Prouerbe, which saith: *Que se pense reparer sa Honte, Qui l'accroist, et l'augmente: He that so seeketh to repaire his shame, doeth rather augment and encrease it.*

A Chronologicall prosecution of the Royall Pedigree of *Bohemia*.

After this *Ottocarus* the First, succeeded his Sonne

V. *Othocarus*, Second of the name, King of *Bohemia* Father of

VI. *Wenceslaus*, who being in yeares espoused *Iutha*, Daughter to the Emperour *Rodolphe* of *Habspourg*, First of that name, whose death happening not long after, the Princes of *Germany* offered the Empire to the said *Wenceslaus*, in regard of

his manifold great vertues. But hee refused so weighty a Charge, thankefully and modestly returning them answere. *That he had care and paine enough, to gouerne the Kingdome and Seigneuries left him by his Father.* Some haue further obserued, that this Prince was of great integrity and holinesse of life: Hee reigned but fixe yeares, and left the Kingdome to his Sonne

VII. *Wenceslaus*, Second of the name, Prince as vicious, as his Father had bin vertuous, and for his whoredomes, hee was wounded to death by a *Thuringian*, whose wife he had dishonored; dying (at the age of eighteen yeares) in the Citty of *Olmuch*, the Cathedrall of the Marquisate of *Morauia*, and leauing no Children

VIII. *Henry* of *Carinthia*, Husband to *Anne* of *Bohemia*, Sister to the said *Wenceslaus*, possessed himselfe of the Kingdome: from which hee was expulsed by the Emperour *Albert*, who gaue the Kingdome of *Bohemia* to *Raoull*, or *Rodolph* his Sonne, to whom he entended to haue espoused *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Wenceslaus* the Saint. But while they were treating about this mariage, the Emperour *Albert* was slaine by his Nephew, and *Henry* of *Luxembourg* was chosen Emperour: who caused the Princesse *Elizabeth* to be brought to his Court, aged about Eighteene yeares, where he espoused her to his Sonne (who then was but foure yeares olde) to whom the Citty of *Prage* was deliuered: and since that time, the Kingdome of *Bohemia* continued in the House of *Luxembourg*, to the time of the Emperour *Sigismond*, during the space of an hundred, twenty and sixe yeares, and vntill the time of the Emperour *Sigismond*, the subiect of this our present discourse. For

IX. { Of *Elizabeth* of *Bohemia*, and her Husband *Iohn* of *Luxembourg*, King of *Bohemia*, } who reigned more then threescore yeares, were borne two Sonne:

Iohn, Prince of *Morauia*; And

X. *Charles*, King of *Bohemia*, and Emperour by the name of *Henry* the fourth, Authour of the Golden *Bull*, flourished (as wee haue already said) in the magnificent, Court of our King *Philip* of *Valois*, the most famous among all Princes of Christendome: he was the Father of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and of

Sigismond, King of *Hungarie*, both of them Emperours, and Kings of *Bohemia* each after other.

XI. *Wenceslaus*, Third of the name, was King of *Bohemia* at two yeares of age. At Fifteene hee began to gouerne the Estate: and in the same yeare he was elected King of the *Romanes*: dying when hee was aged Seauen and Fifty yeares; and then succeeded him his Brother

XII. *Sigismond*, King of *Bohemia*, but formerly of *Hungaria*; and in this marriage was borne their one and onely Daughter, named

XIII. { *Marie Elizabeth*, wife to *Albert* of *Austria*, kings of *Bohemia* and *Hungarie*, } and in this marige were borne

XIV. *Ladislaus*, Second of the name of *Hungaria* and of *Bohemia*, dying before hee was Married; And

Elizabeth, Wife to *Wenceslaus*, Brother to *Casimir* King of *Poland*; in which mariage was borne

XV. *Ladislaus*, Third of the name, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, after the death of *George ae Pogiebrach*, and *Martin Coruinus*, to whom appertained not the Kingdomes of *Hungarie* nor *Bohemia*. The said *Ladislaus* being dead, did leaue two Children:

XVI. *Lewes*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, who died at the Battaile of *Varno* (wonne by the Turke) and left no issue. So that by his death, the Kingdomes of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia* came to his Sister

XVII. { *Anne*, Wife to *Ferdinand* of *Spayne*, Archduke of *Austria*, } and Emperour by the dismission of his eldest Brother *Charles* the Fift. Since which time, the said Kingdomes of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, haue remained to the House of *Austria*, in the Royall persons of

{ *Maximillian*, Father to *Rodolphe*, Brother to *Mathias* reigning at this present } { Emperours and Kings of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*. }

Austria, whereof hee had possessed himselfe in the vacancie of the Empire, after the death of *Richard* of *England*: And yet *Ottocarus* had Married *Margaret*, Sister to *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, but deceassing without issue, and *Ottocarus* himselfe had not any Sonne. Whereupon the said *Rodolphe* alleaged, that the Dukedome of *Austria* was a Masculine or Male Fiefe of the Empire, from which (according to the *Salique* Law) Daughters were excluded, and so the firright ceassing, he was the very neerest heire of the house of *Austria*, in regard of his Mother. Furthermore, he would haue restored to him the Dukedomes of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Carnia*, the Marquisate of *Sclauonia*, and other lands, by him acquitted to Duke *Huldrick*, which he had no power to alienate, without permission of the Emperour first obtained. but *Ottocarus* contemning the Emperour, because hee had formerly bin at his seruice; sent absolute refusall both of the one and other.

Austria a maale Fiefe of the Empire.

Now both prepared to stand vpon their guard, the Emperour to reduce *Ottocarus* to reason, and *Ottocarus* to defend and maintaine his Conquest. Yet to auoyde those inconueniences, which ordenarily doe attend on warrs; an agreement was laboured betweene the two Princes, whereby *Ottocarus* rendered to the Emperour the Dukedome of *Austria*. But in regard of the other Lands demaunded, there was a treatie about a double alliance, of the Emperours Sonne, named *Rodolphe*, with *Agnes*, Daughter to *Ottocarus*, and a Sonne in Lawe of *Ottocarus*, with a Daughter of the Emperours. Young *Rodolph* had no long time of life, yet of this mariage he left a Sonne, named *Iohn*, who slew the Emperour *Albert* his Vnckle.

An accord made betweene *Ottocarus* and the Emperour.

After this agreement, *Rodolphe* hauing recouered the Dukedome of *Austria*, sent an other summons to *Ottocarus*, to doe him homage for the Lands acquired from *Huldrick*; which *Ottocaru.* flatly refused to doe. Vpon this denial, both parties were vp in Armes, and the Armies ready to encounter, being not a mile distant eche from other, but that of the Emperour farre the greater. *Ottocarus* sent his Ambassadours, to mediate some agreement with the Emperour, offering him such Homage as he required: prouided, that it might bee done in perticuler (for preseruation of Royall dignitie) and within the Emperours Tente or Pauillion, which being graunted, the Emperour caused his Pauillion to bee erected in the very highest parte of the Army, and vnder it a lofty Throne Royall and Canopy of State, ascending vp Ten or Twelue degrees; to the end, that this Homage might be seene of the whole Armie, yea and of the King of *Bohemia* too.

When hee was entred into the Pauillion Royall, he ascended (in all reuerence) so high as to the Emperours Seate, at the foote whereof hee prostrated himselfe, and tooke the accustomed Oath vpon his knees. As the Emperour held his hands according to Order; instantly the whole Pauillion opened in foure parts, and suncke so downe to the ground: by meanes whereof, *Ottocarus* was publiquely seene on his knees before the Emperour, by both the Armies, which formerly he had so highly disdayned. The wife of *Ottocarus* hearing tydings of this homage; sent so many despightfull messiges to her Husband: that he left his Army in the Field, and defied the Emperour, who presently prepared to meete with his enemy.

Ottocarus ouertaken in doing his homage.

The Battaile was fought in *Austria*, betweene the River of *Danubie*, and the Towne of *Laha*: where *Ottocarus* was buried, being slaine by a Noble man of *Styria*, and with him Foureteene Thousand *Bohemians*, beside a great number of prisoners taken. This Battaile happened in the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred three score and nineteene, according to the *Germaine* Chronicles: or after *Martinus Cromerus*, One thousand two hundred and fourescore. To verifie the auncient Prouerbe, which saith: *Que se penſe reparer ſa Honte, Qui l'accroiſt, et l'augmente*: *He that so seeketh to repaire his shame, doeth rather augment and encrease it.*

Ottocarus slaine in the Battaile.

A Chronologicall prosecution of the Royall Pedigree of *Bohemia*.

After this *Ottocarus* the First, succeeded his Sonne

V. *Othocarus*, Second of the name, King of *Bohemia* Father of

VI. *Wenceslaus*, who being in yeares, espoused *Iutha*, Daughter to the Emperour *Rodolphe* of *Habspourg*, First of the name, whose death happening not long after, the Princes of *Germany* offered the Empire to the said *Wenceslaus*, in regard of his manifold great vertues. But hee refused so weighty a Charge, thankefully and modestly returning them answere. *That he had care and paine enough, to gouerne the Kingdome and Seigneuries left him by his Father.* Some haue further obserued, that this Prince was of great integrity and holinesse of life: Hee reigned but sixe yeares, and left the Kingdome to his Sonne

VII. *Wenceslaus*, Second of the name, a Prince as vicious, as his Father had bin vertuous, and for his whoredomes, hee was wounded to death by a *Thuringian*, whose wife he had dishonored; dying (at the age of eighteen yeares) in the Citty of *Olmach*, the Cathedrall of the Marquisate of *Moranza*, and leauing no Children

VIII. *Henry* of *Carinthia*, Husband to *Anne* of *Bohemia*, Sister to the said *Wenceslaus*, possessed himselfe of the Kingdome: from which hee was expulsed by the Emperour *Albert*, who gaue the Kingdome of *Bohemia* to *Raoull*, or *Rodolph* his Sonne, to whom he entended to haue espoused *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Wenceslaus* the Saint. But while they were treating about this mariage, the Emperour *Albert* was slaine by his Nephew, and *Henry* of *Luxembourg* was chosen Emperour: who caused the Princesse *Elizabeth* to be brought to his Court, aged about Eighteene yeares, where he espoused her to his Sonne (who then was but foure yeares olde) to whom the Citty of *Prage* was deliuered: and since that time, the Kingdome of *Bohemia* continued in the House of *Luxembourg*, to the time of the Emperour *Sigismond*, during the space of an hundred, twenty and sixe yeares, and vntill the time of the Emperour *Sigismond*, the subiect of this our present discourse. For

IX. { Of *Elizabeth* of *Bohemia*, and her Husband *Iohn* of *Luxembourg*, King of *Bohemia*, } who reigned more then threescore yeares, were borne two Sonne:

Iohn, Prince of *Moravia*; And

X. *Charles*, King of *Bohemia*, and Emperour by the name of *Henry* the Fourth, Authour of the Golden *Bull*, nourished (as wee haue already said) in the magnificent, Court of our King *Philip* of *Valois*, the most famous among all Princes of Christendome: he was the Father of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and of

Sigismond, King of *Hungarie*, both of them Emperours, and Kings of *Bohemia* each after other.

XI. *Wenceslaus*, Third of the name, was King of *Bohemia* at two yeares of age. At Fifteene hee began to gouerne the Estate: and in the same yeare he was elected King of the *Romanes*: dying when hee was aged Seauen and Fifty yeares; and then succeeded him his Brother

XII. *Sigismond*, King of *Bohemia*, but formerly of *Hungaria*; and in this mariage was borne their one and onely Daughter, named

XIII. { *Marie Elizabeth*, wife to *Albert* of *Austria*, Kings of *Bohemia* and *Hungarie*, } and in this marige were borne

XIV. *Ladislaus*, Second of the name of *Hungaria* and of *Bohemia*, dying before hee was Married; And

Elizabeth, Wife to *Wenceslaus*, Brother to *Casimir* King of *Poland*; in which mariage was borne

XV. *Ladislaus*, Third of the name, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, after the death of *George ae Pogiebrach*, and *Martin Coruinus*, to whom appertained not the Kingdomes of *Hungarie* nor *Bohemia*. The said *Ladislaus* being dead, did leaue two Children:

XVI. *Lewes*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, who died at the Battaile of *Varno* (wonne by the Turke) and left no issue. So that by his death, the Kingdomes of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia* came to his Sister

XVII. { *Anne*, Wife to *Ferdinand* of *Spayne*, Archduke of *Austria*, } and Emperour by the dismission of his eldest Brother *Charles* the Fift. Since which time, the said Kingdomes of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, haue remained to the House of *Austria*, in the Royall persons of

{ *Maximillian*, Father to *Rodolphe*, Brother to *Mathias* reigning at this present } { Emperours and Kings of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*. }

Kings of the famous House of *Austria*.

Iohn of *Luxembourg* being King of *Bohemia*, tooke not the Armes of *Moravia*, but kept his owne, which are *D'Argent au Lyon rempant de Gueules Coronne d'Or*; retained to this present, by Kings of the most Illustrious House of *Austria*. *Qui Portent de Hongrie Escartele de Boeme, et sur le tout d'Austriche, qui est de Gueules a la Fesse d'Argent, party de Bourgongne Ancienne*: In regard of the Alliance made by the House of *Austria*, with *Charles* the last Duke of *Bourgongne*.

An Order of Knighthood in Bohemia called the *Tusin*.

From the time of *Sigismond* of *Luxembourg*, and his Sonne in Law *Albert* of *Austria*, Emperours and Kings of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, the *Order of the ouer throwne Dragon* was in high esteeme, throughout all the Countreys of *Germanie*, and in the Kingdome of *Hungarie*. But in the Realme of *Bohemia*, there was an other perticuler Order by it selfe (so saith *Hieronimus Romanus*, and some other Historians) called *The Order of the Tusin*; whereof I could neuer read nor vnderstand the Originall, forme or meaning, which maketh me therefore rather affect to say nothing thereof, then to speake Ignorantly.

Order of the Disciplines of *Austria*.

Hieronimus Romanus maketh mention of a *Spanish* Captaine, being a *Castileano* or *Leonois*, named *Dom Diego de Valera*, who was by the Emperour *Albert* of *Austria*, (Sonne in Law to *Sigismond*) made Knight of the *Order of the Dragon*, as King of *Hungarie*, and Emperour of *Germanie*: And of the *Order of the Tusin*, as King of *Bohemia*; and of the *Discplines*, as Duke of *Austria*. But he hath not let fall from his penne, any meanes of enstructing vs, what the Orders of the *Tusin* of *Bohemia*, and the *Disciplines* of *Austria* were

Yet very sure and certaine it is, that in the Kingdomes of *Leon* and *Castille*, there are very Noble Families, bearing the Sirname of *Valera*, who carie in Armes *D'Azur au Lyon rempant d'Or, Escartele d'Or a Quatre Croissants joincts ensemble en forme de Annelet; d'Azur, a la Bordure de Gueules, chargee de Huict Saultoires d'Or, Los de l'Apellide de* Valera *traen por Armas Escudo de aquartell: En el primero, y vltimo Leon de Oro en campo Azul: y en los otros, en cada vno vn Lunel en campo de Oro: y por Orla ocho Aspas de Oro en campo Roxo*; So saith the Count of *Lansarote* in his Nobilitie.

The Order of Austria, And of Carinthia, Called of Saint *George*. Instituted by the Emperour *Frederick*, Third of the name, and First Arch-Duke of *Austria*: In the yeare of Grace, 1470.

CHAP. III.

Concerning the Genealogie and Originall of the House of Austria.

L'Orde d'Austrie et de Carinthie dict de Saincte George.

THE Originall of the House of *Austria*, the First, and most Famous of Christendome (next to that of *France*) descended from the Kings of *France* of the first Ligne; if we may credite *Valdezio* and *Augustino Cranato* the *Romaine*. They both agree together, to trouble the quietnesse of *France*, in case of precedency of *Spayne* before the other, and both haue written in their owne Language; *That the House of Austria descended in the true ligne of Pharamond*. But these men haue no other warrant or authority, then their owne braine.

The Counties of Habspourg, Landtgraue of Alsatia, and Lora of Strasbourg, issued of the auncient Princes of Allemaigne, descended by the Genealogie of the French, Sucedien diendo enel Imperio Rodolpho Segundo Conde Habspurg Lantgraue de Alsacia, y Segnor de Argentina de los antiquos Principes de Alemania de la generation de los Francones. There is not any Prince in Christendome, but holdes it a glory to him, to deriue his descent from the Ancient *French*, and to be allied to the most famous Floure *de Luce*. But the Count could haue proceeded on further, and obserued these Princes of *Allemaigne* or *Germanie*, till he had come to approue the tract of *Rodolphe*; he left off in too faire away.

Such as seeme to haue interpreted themselues more clearely, are of Opinion; that the Countes of *Habspourg* (the fourse and spring of the House of *Austria*) are descended of *Thebert*, otherwise called *Theodobert*, Second of the name, King of *Austrasia* (whereof the Duchie of *Lorraine* made part) Son to *Childebert* Second of the name, King of *Orleans*, that is to say of *Bourgongne* and of *Austrasia*. In which censure and conceite, both the one and other haue much mistaken themselues.

For Saint *Gregorie* of *Tours*, the prime man of our Auncient Annalists, and all our Chroniclers whatsoeuer, sing all in one key and noate: That this *Theodobert* was vanquished by his Brother *Thierry* (Second of the name, King of *Orleans*) in two fought Battailes, the first giuen neere to *Toull* in *Lorraine*, and the other before the Citty of *Colegne*. In both which, the said *Theadobert* hauing saued himselfe, was yet slaine by treason (so saith *Ado Viennensis*) and his head caried to his Brother *Thierry*, who

who, by his death, made himselfe King of *Austrasia*: which happened in the yeare of Grace sixe hundred and seuenteene.

The Issue of *Theodobert*.

This *Thiebert* or *Theodobert* had two Sonnes and one Daughter, by the Queene *Theudichilda* his Wife, as namely

Sigebert, bearing the name of his Grandfather,
Meroueus was the other Sonne, And
Berthoara, a Lady absolutely perfect in beauty

These children were deliuered to their Vncle *Thierry*, who sent them to the Citty of *Mentz*, whether Queene *Brunhault* or *Brunechild*, their Grandmother was come before them. This Queene was more cruell then a Tyger of *Hircania*: She caused *Sigibert* and *Meroueus* to be murdered, but kept their Sister neere her selfe. We learne by *Aimonyus* the Monke, in the Third Booke of his History of *France*, the fourescore and seauenth Chapter, these are his owne words. *Theodoricus compositis de sententia rebus, inde cum multis spolijs progressus; secum abduxit filios fratris sui, cum filia quæ specie intebat decora. Dum Metos aduenisset, respexit Ariam suam Brunichildam tanto obuiam sibi venisse, Quæ arreptis Theodoberti filijs, eos sine mora nec tradidit* (Shee caused the eldest to be strangled) *et minorem quidem natu, Meroueum nomine, lapidi illisum innocentem coëgit exalare spiritum*; the younger had his head flat quashed with a stone. But the Daughter was afterward assured to Prince *Adaluado*, Sonne to *Agilalphus*, King of the *Lombards*.

The words of the Monke *Aimonius*.

Brunechilde or *Brunehaulte* was Daughter to *Athanagilde*, King of the *Vuisigothes* of *Spayne*, a Princesse so contrary to the Bloud of the Kings and Princes of the most illustrious Bloud of *France*; as She caused Tenne of them to dye in diuers kindes. She was wife to *Sigibert* King of *Austrasia*, Sonne to King *Clothaire* the First. Of her and the said *Sigibert* came *Childebert* King of *Austria*, Second of the name by hi Father, and after the death of *Gunthran* his Vncle, was King of *Orleans*. The said *Childebert* the Second espoused *Sedeluba*, by whom he had a Sonne and a Daughter, *Thierry*, and *Theudelinda*; and by a Concubine he had *Theodobert*, of whom they would deriue the House of *Austria*.

Brunehaulte the cruell and bloudie Queene of *France*.

Brunechilde for her bloudy cruelties, was first relegated or banished at *Rouen*, by the said *Theodobert*, King of *Austrasia*; but returning thither againe, She caused *Childebert* and his wife to bee poysoned the very same day: procuring afterward *Thierry*, King of *Orleans* and *Austrasia*, to be poysoned in the same manner. But being conuicted of so many murders, *Clothaire* the Great, Second of the name, King of *France*, and the Generall Estates called a Parliament, by decree whereof in the City of *Auxbun*, the moneth of May Sixe hundred twenty three: She was condemned to be drawne and dismembred by foure vntamed Horses. After which execution, She was buried at Saint *Martin d'Athun*, where at this present her Tombe is to be seene.

The sentence giuen against Queene *Brunehault*, and her death.

As for *Thierry*, he was kilde with a clap of Thunder, leauing foure naturall Children or Bastards: the first second and third whereof named *Sigibert*, *Corbo* and *Merewes*, were slaine by the commaund of *Garnier*, Maire of the Pallace to the said *Thierry*, and the last Son *Childebert* was slaine afterward. How can there then be any appearance of reason, why those *Spanish* writers, should draw the sourse and Originall of the Illustrious House of *Austria*, from these three Bastards, slaine, and not hauing any issue.

The proofe auouched by the Counte of *Lansarote* for the Archdukes of *Austria*.

The Count of *Lansarote*, in the Foure and fiftieth Chapter of his first Booke of Nobility, saith. *That the Archdukes of Austria descended of Rodolphe, Second Counte of Habspourg, Landtgraue of Halsatia, and Lora of Strasbourg, issued of the auncient Princes of Allemaign, descended by the Genealogie of the Frenche, Sucedien diendo enel Imperio Rodolpho Segundo Conde Habspurg Lantgraue de Alsacia, y Segnor de Argentina de los antiquos Principes de Alemania de la generation de los Francones.* There is not any Prince in Christendome, but holdes it a glory to him, to deriue his descent from the Ancient *French*, and to be allied to the most famous Floure *de Luce*. But the Count could haue proceeded on further, and obserued these Princes of *Allemaigne* or *Germanie*, till he had come to approue the tract of *Rodolphe*; he left off in too faire away.

The House of *Austria* is descended from the Countes of *Habspourg*.

Most sure and infallible it is, that the House of *Austria* is descended of the Lords and Countes of *Habspourg*, a Castell and Bourgade builded in *Swetia*, by the first Lords of the said place, named *Radpot* and his Brother *Garnierus*, or *Warnierus*, Bishop of *Strasbourg*, about the yeare of Grace, One thousand threescore and tenne. And the

Histories of *Germanie* doe tell vs, that the said *Garnier*, being prouided of the Bishoprick of *Strasbourg* (one of the very richiest of *Germanie*, and whereon dependeth the *Landsgrauiat* of *Halsatia*, who beareth for Armes *De Gueules a la Bande Fleurronnee d Argent*) aduanced his Brother *Radpot*, and layd the first foundation of the Houſe of *Habſpourg*.

In elder times they were Iudges of Bishops temporall Iurisdictions.

Radpot was Father to *Garnier*, Father of *Otho*; Father of *Garnier*; Father of *Albert*, who was made *Landsgraue* of *Halsatia* for the Church of *Strasbourg*: as we haue in *France Vidames* of Cathedrall Churches; of *Chartres*, of *Mans*, of *Amiens*, of *Beauuais*, of *Mascow*, and other more beside.

The first Count of *Habſpourg*.

This *Albert* was likewise Captaine Generall of *Strasbourg* which office in *Italie* they tearme *Gonfalonniero*, and (for his great seruices) he was made *The first Counte of Habſpourg*, by the Emperour *Phillip*, Sonne to *Frederik* Barbarossa. The same *Albert* tooke to wife *Heduuica*, Daughter to *Herman*, Count of *Kybourg*, and of this mariage was borne one Sonne, named

Rodolphe, Second Count of *Habſpourg*, who followed the Courte of the Emperour *Frederick*, Second of the name; and after his death, he Courted it with *Othocarus*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, to whom he was Great Maister of the Pallace, as we haue already said. After the death of *Frederick* the second, and his Sonnes *Henry* and *Conrad* Emperours: *Henry*, *Landsgraue* of *Hessen*; *William*, who was Count of *Holland* and *Zealand*; and *Richard* of *England* were chosen Emperours. After whom, there grewe a difference about the Election; because the Marquesse of *Brandenbourg* fauoured the King of *Bohemia Othocarus*: the other Princes of *Germanie* leaned to the contrary. So that, either in a brauado, or else by way of happinesse, this *Rodolphe*, Count of *Habſpourg*, was declared King of the *Romanes*, and Crowned Emperour (first of the name) at *Aix la Chappelle*, in the yeare of Grace, 1273.

Rodolph Count of *Habſpourg* made King of the Romanes and Emperour.

This *Rodolphe* tooke to wife *Anne*, Countesse of *Hohemberg*, and of her were borne three Sonnes, and seauen Daughters; whom I must let passe vnder silence, to bee the briefer in discourse. Only I meane to speake of,

The Issue of this *Rodolphe*

Iutha, that is *Iudith*, Wife to *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, Sonne and Successour to *Othocarus*.

The Sonnes we may not omit;

Herman, who neuer had any issue, but dyed drowned in the Riuer of *Rhine*, the Ice hauing broken his Bardge, on the day of Saint *Thomas*, One thousand two hundred and fourescore, in the life time of his Father. *Hartmanno fue abogado en el Rin*: The *Spanyards* appoint this man to the first place, being followed next by

The first taking the name and Armes of *Austria* by the Sonnes of *Rodolphe*.

Albert, whom the Emperour his Father made Duke of *Austria*, in a diet which he held in the Citty of *Ausbourg*: in regard of which Duchie, his Sonnes and descendants forsooke the Sirname of *Habſpourg*, and tooke the name and Armes of *Austria*, as we learne by *Martinus Cromerus*, in the tenth Booke of his History of *Poland*, in these words. *Ab eoden Alberto origenem duxerunt illi, qui deinceps illis Regionibus* (speaking of the higher *Pannonia*, which is *Austria*) *præfuere vsque ad nostra tempora, et Karolum Quintum Imperatorem Hispaniarum, &c. Regem.*

We haue formerly related, that the Duchie of *Austria* was falne to the Distaffe or female kinde, by the death of *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, Brother to *Margaret*, Wife to the King of *Bohemia Othocarus*, who possessed himselfe thereof in the right of her: but seeming, the Empire being then vacant, by the death of *Richard* of *England*. And

The Spanyards do owne vnder colour of Othocarus.

the *Spanyards* speaking of this *Othocarus* say thus. *y. auiendose rebelado con este Estado de Austria Othocaro Rey de Bohemia, le vencio Rudolpho Cæsar, y dio el Estado de Austria contitulo de Dugue a su hijo* Alberto *agno* 1285. *de quien traen Origen lo Archiduques.*

The Third Sonne was

Rodolphe, Duke of *Sueuia*, and King of *Bohemia* (by reason of the Queene his Wife *Agnes* of *Bohemia*, Daughter to the King *Othocarus*, and sister to *Wenceslaus*) who had one Sonne by the same Wife, named *Iohn*; who slew his Vncle *Albert*, Duke of *Austria*, neere to the Castell of *Habſpourg* and died prisoner in *Italie*. And as for the Emperour *Rodolph* the Father, after he had well enriched his Children: he died in the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred fourescore and eleuen, in the threescore and thirteenth yeare of his age, and eighteenth of his Reigne.

A

An Orderly proceeding in the Descent of *Austria*, *being thus deduced from the Originall.*

After the death of the Emperour *Adolphe* of *Nassau*:

I. *Albert*, Duke of *Austria*, eldest Sonne to *Rodolphe* of *Habſpourge* was elected Emperour; who by his wife *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Maynard*, Count of *Tiroll*, and of *Goritia*, had sixe Sonnes and foure Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Fredericke*, elected King of the *Romaines*, but he had as his Competitour and Contrary *Lewes*, Prince *Palatine*, (Sonne to his Aunt, by the Mothers side, *Atshuld* of *Habſpourge*, third Daughter of *Rod. Iphe*) elected likewise King of the *Romaines*, who vanquished him in a fought Battaile, the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred and thirtie.
2. *Otho* the *Hardy*, Father of *Frederick*, who dyed in the yeare One thousand three hundred forty and foure.
3. *Leopolde*, that dyed One thousand three hundred forty and sixe.
4. *Albert* who dyed One thousand three hundred and eight.
5. *Henry*, who dyed in the yeare One thousand three hundred forty and two.

Rodolphe, Duke of *Sueuia*, Brother to *Albert*, had left by *Agnes* of *Bohemia* his wife, a Sonne in yong yeares, named *Iohn* of *Habſpourge*, or of *Sueuia*. The Emperour *Albert* his Vncle, had published himselfe Tutour to his said Nephew, and in that quality seized on his person, and kept him (for some time) at *Vienna* in *Austria*. In the meane while, he exalted his owne Sonne *Rodolphe* to the Kingdome of *Bohemia*, which appertained to his said Nephew *Iohn*, in regard of his Mother by fauour of mariage, wherein with *Rodolphe*, Sonne to the Emperour *Rodolphe*, it was namely and formally couenanted and contracted, that the death of *Othocarus*, King of *Bohemia* happening: *Agnes* his Daughter, *Rodolphe* her Husband, or such as descended of them, should inherit the Crowne of *Bohemia*. *Iohn* compassing the meanes to escape from *Vienna*, and knowing that he was not only bereft of the Kingdome of *Bohemia*, but likewise of the Duchie of *Sueuia*: being desperately transported, he slew his Vncle *Albert*, neere to the Castle of *Habſpurge* where he was walking. And by this murder, he dyed miserably at *Pisa* in *Tuscanie*, in the Conuent of the *Augustines*, where he was kept in perpetuall prison.

The Pope gaue away the Kingdome of France, but could not deliuer it.

Of all the Sonnes of this Emperour *Albert* of *Austria* (this was the man, to whom Pope *Boniface* the eight, had giuen the Kingdome of *France*, and which he could not deliuer, from *Phillip le Bel*, King of *France* and *Nauarre*) there remained but *Albert*, his fourth Sonne, all the rest hauing not left any issue. This

II. *Albert*, second of the name of *Austria*, had bin Subdeacon of a Church, and a Chanon in the Cathedrall Church of *Passaw*. Where hearing the death of all his Brethren, he obtained a dispensation, and tooke to wife *Ioane*, Daughter to the last Count of *Peirt*, named *Huldrick*, deceasing without any heire masle in the yeare, One thousand three hundred twenty and foure. By meanes of this marriage, the County of *Sungoia* came to the Houſe of *Austria*. Of this *Ioane* he begat three Sons and as many Daughters.

The Sonnes were

1. *Leopold*.
2. *Rodolphe*. And
3. *Albert*.

III. *Leopold*, the third Duke of *Austria*, ioyned to the said Duchie the Countie of *Hogemberg* in *Sueuia*, hauing bought it of the Lord owner, in the yeare One thousand three hundred threescore and eleauen, and seeking to subiect the *Switzers*; he was slaine by them in a fought Battaile at *Sempach*, the twentieth day of July, in the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and seauen. He left foure Sonnes by his wife, a beautifull Lady, and Daughter to King *Iohn* of *Arragon*.

1. *Fredericke*, who hauing conueighed *Iohn* the Antipope from the Councill of *Constans*; was excommunicated by the same Councill, and the Lands which he had in *Sueuia* or *Suetia*, and the neighbouring parts, confiscated by the Empe-

rour *Sigismond*, whereof the *Switzers* possessed themselues. And therefore he had a nick-name giuen him in scorne, being called *Fredericke with the emptie Wallet*. He had a Sonne named *Sigismond* (that left not any issue) who engaged the Lands which he had in *Sungoia*, and the *Landsgraviat* of *Halsatia*, to the last Duke of *Bourgongne Charles*. And from thence grew the *Switzers* wars against the said Duke *Charles: who lost his riches at Granzon, his men at Mourath, and his life at Nancy*.

The second Son of *Leopold*, was

2. *William*, nourished in the Court of the King of *Hungary*, and destenied to be King of *Poland*, in regard of his wife; but he was denied and reiected by the *Polonians*.

3. *Ernestus*: And

4. *Leopold*, who seeking to reuenge the death of his Father (whose name he bare) slaine by the *Switzers* at *Sempach*; was likewise slaine himselfe by the *Switzers*, belonging to the Canton of *Glaris*.

Rodolphe, second Sonne to *Albert* the Subdeacon, espoused *Margaret*, Daughter to the King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Carinthia*, the onely heire to the Countie of *Tyroll*, annexed by this meanes to the Duchie of *Austria*. This *Rodolphe* dyed by poyson at *Millaine*, in the yeare One thousand three hundred threescore and fiue, and his body buried in the Church of Saint *Stephen* at *Vienna*. He left no issue.

IV. *Albert* of *Austria*, third of the name, yongest and last Sonne to the Subdeacon, Duke of *Austria*, was twise married. First to the Daughter of *Charles* of *Luxembourg* Emperour, fourth of the name (Author of the Golden Bull) King of *Bohemia*. And in second marriage he had *Beatrix*, Daughter to the *Burgraue* of *Nuremberg*. He dyed poysoned by a Physition, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred fourescore and fifteene. By *Beatrix* his wife he had one onely Sonne, named

V. *Albert*, fourth of the name, Duke of *Austria*, Sirnamed the *Mathematitian*, and by the *Spanyards El Sabio*, who making warre against *Iosso*, Marquesse of *Moraui*, dyed of a dissenterie. By one of the Daughters to the Count of *Holland* his Wife, hee had one onely Sonne

VI. *Albert*, fift of the name, who in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred thirty eight, was elected King of the Romaines. Hee tooke to wife the Daughter to the Emperour *Sigismond*, and by this Alliance hee was King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*; dying, he left her conceiued with a Posthumous, and when the childe was borne, they called it

VII. *Ladislaus*, King of *Hungary*, assured for marriage to Madam *Magdalen* of *France*, Sister to King *Lewis* the eleauenth, but he dyed before hee had sight of her. And this Princesse was married to *Gaston* of *Nauarre*, Prince of *Viana*, slaine at *Libournia* neere to *Bourdeaux*, with the splinter of a Lance in a Tourney. It behoueth therefore to take the Ligne of *Leopold*, eldest Sonne to *Albert*, second of the name, fourth Sonne to the Emperour *Albert* of *Austria*. Of *Leopolds* foure Sonnes, not any had issue, but

Ernestus of *Austria*, that stiled himselfe Duke of *Carinthia*, who hauing espoused *Cymburga*, Daughter to the Duke of *Massouia* in *Poland* (*William* his Brother thought to be King of *Polonia*, but being reiected by the *Polonians*, he went from the Court of *Hungaria*, and on meere dispight, passed into *Italie*, married himselfe in *Apuglia*, and left no issue) by whom he had foure children, to wit

Albert, who contended for the Empire

Katharine.

Margaret: And

Fredericke.

Albert the eldest Sonne dyed without issue, as the like did *Sigismond*, Sonne to *Fredericke* with the emptie Wallet: So that all the Seigneuries fell to the yongest Sonne of *Ernestus*

VIII. *Fredericke*, Duke of *Austria*, *Carinthia*, and *Styria*, Count of *Carnia*, *Carniola*, *Sclauonia*, *Cilia*, *Gorittia*, *Istria* and *Tyroll*, Marquesse of *Burgaw* of *Hohemberg*, *Veldkirk*, *Sungaw*, *Brisgaw* and *Landsgraue* of *Halsatia*.

This *Fredericke* deuided all those Seigneuries into two estates; the one called of *Viena*, & the other of *Ænipont* the second

Vienna had in her Iurisdiction & Authority, *Austria*, *Carinthia*, *Styria*, *Carnia*, *Cilia*, *Gorittia* and *Istria*.

Ænipont had in her prerogatiue, the Lands which the House of *Austria*, possessed

sessed in *Sueuia*, the Countie of *Veldkirk*, and the Seigneuries of *Sungaw*, *Brisgawe*, all that *Halsatia* neighbouring on *Strasbourg*, and likewise the County of *Tirol*.

Fredericke seeing himselfe Emperour, and enriched with so many Seigneuries, as were already reduced vnder his power: *Tooke the title of Archduke of Austria*, and since that time, all they of the House of *Austria*, as well the *Eldest* as *yongest*, *Direct*, as *Collatrals*, carried the title of *Archdukes of Austria*, were they of *Viennois*, or of *Ænipont*. Which Seigneurie of *Austria* hath had diuers Titles; for it carried that of the Marquisate, vntill in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred fifty and one, when the Emperour *Fredericke Barbarossa* gaue the title of Kingdome to the Duchie of *Bohemia*, and to *Bauaria* the Title of a Duchie, in fauour of *Guelpho* his Partaker (whence grew the siding and factions, betweene the Imperiall *Guelphes*, and the *Gibelines*, pertakers with the Popes.) And also the Title of Duke, to the Marquesse of *Austria*, which so continued, vntill the time of this *Fredericke*, whereof now is the occasion of our present discourse.

He, after the death of his Cousine *Albert*, was elected King of the *Romaines*, third of the name (for *Fredericke*, eldest Son of *Leopolde*, Competitor with *Lewes* of *Bauaria*, is not accounted among the Emperours) in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred and forty, notwithstanding the close vnder-handing of his elder Brother *Albert*. And this is the same Emperour *Frederick* the third, who was Author of the *Order of S. George*, whereof we shall speake more hereafter.

10. The last Emperour *Albert* dying, left his wife great with childe, by meanes whereof, the Lords of *Hungary* named for Tutour of the fruite in the wombe, and their Queene the Widdow, the said Emperour *Fredericke* the third; with this charge and condition, that if she chanced to be deliuered of a Son, he should be his Guardian, and haue the Wardship of him, vntill he came to the yeares of commanding; but if it proued to be a Daughter, then they would elect and take him for their King. She was deliuered of *Ladislaus*, as we haue formerly said, and he comming to the age of gouernment: *Fredericke* would not listen to any resignation, but following the naturall disposition of such honest Tutours, refused to loose what he had kept so long. *Iohn Huniades*, a very valiant and generous Captaine, vndertooke the matter for King *Ladislaus* against this *Fredericke*, whom he constrained to yeelde the King his right, and the places he held in *Hungarie* from him.

The same *Fredericke* passed into *Italie*, where he caused himselfe to be crowned Emperour. He had to wife *Leonora*, Daughter to the King of *Portugall Edward*, and the Nuptials were celebrated in the Citie of *Naples* by the King *Alphonso*. He dyed in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fourescore and thirteene. By his wife *Leonora* of *Portugall* he had three children:

Christopher, who dyed yong.

Kunegonda a Daughter; And

IX. *Maximillian* of *Austria*, who (at the age of eighteene yeares) was conducted to the Citie of *Vienna* in *Flanders*, where he espoused *Mary* of *Bourgongne*, the onely Daughter to *Charles* last Duke of *Bourgongne*, the very richest heire of Christendome. And by meanes of this marriage, ioyning with the House of *Spaine*: that of *Austria* is mounted to that height of greatnesse, as now we behold it at this day. This *Maximillian* (in the life time of his Father) was elected King of the *Romaines*, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fourescore and sixe. *Mary* of *Bourgongne* dyed in the sixt yeare after her marriage, & *Maximillian* in the moneth of Ianuary, One thousand fiue hundred and eighteene. He left three Sons and one Daughter, named

Margaret of *Austria*, conducted into France, and affianced to *Monsieur* the *Daulphine Charles*, afterward King, eight of the name, who comming to the Crowne, sent her backe into *Flanders*, and tooke to wife *Anne*, Duchesse of *Bretaigne*, a Prouince reunited to the Crown of *France*, the Originall whereof, was as we haue said in the *Order of the Hermine*.

The Sonnes were

Phillip. }
Frances. } dying in their Infancie.
And }
George. }

X. *Phillip* of *Austria* espoused *Dogna Iane* of *Arragon*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, and *Isabell* of *Castile*, which

which *Iane* by the death of her Father and Mother, was heire to the Kingdomes of *Leon*, *Castile*, *Arragon*, *Valencia*, *Granado Tolledo*, *Maiorica*: and by vsurpation of *Nauarre*, *Naples* and *Sicilie*. In this marriage were borne

Eleanor, wife to the King of *Portugall*, *Emanuell*: and in second marriage, to King *Frances* the first.

Charles, King of *Spaine*, and afterward Emperour, fift of the name, borne in the Citie of *Gaunte* in *Flanders*, on the day of Saint *Mathias*, being the foure and twentieth day of February, in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred fourescore and nineteene.

Isabel, wife to *Christierne*, King of *Denmarke*; And

Ferdinand, borne in the Citie of *Alcala de Henarez* in *Spaine*, Anno One thousand fiue hundred and three: we haue before (in the Tracts of the Orders of *Spaine*) obserued this Genealogie. *Phillip* of *Austria* being gon out of *Flanders* to *Spaine*, with Queene *Iane* his wife, to haue her Crowned there: dyed in the Citie of *Burgos* in September One thousand fiue hundred and sixe. He was Sirnamed the Great, not for any great viuacity of Spirit, or in regard of his ambition: but for the great and large extendure of those Seigneuries, whereof he was possessed before his death.

Margaret his onely sister, left by *Chares* the eight, was married in *Spaine* to *Dom Iehn*, Sonne to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, and *Isabel* of *Castile*: who being deceased without issue, she was remarried to the Duke of *Sauoye Philebert*, after the death of whom (not hauing any children) she returned into *Flanders* the second time, and was (during some space of time) Gouernesse for her Nephew *Charles* the fift, elected King of the *Romaines* at the age of twenty yeares; succeeding in the Empire after *Maximillian* his Grandfather, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred and nineteene. Formerly we haue remembred the marriage and descent of the said *Charles* of *Austria* whose Brother

XI. *Ferdinand* of *Austria* tooke to wife Madam *Anne* Queene of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Sister to King *Lewes*, Sonne of King *Ladislaus*, by whom he had diuers Children, both Sonnes and Daughters.

XII. *Maximillian*, second of the name, Emperour, King of *Bohemia* and *Hungarie*, Archduke of *Austria*.

Ferdinand; And

Charles.

Maximillian tooke to wife *Mary* of *Spaine*, Daughter to the Emperor *Charles* the fift, and by her he had many Children.

XIII. *Rodolphe* second of the name, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Emperor, Archduke of *Austria*, who deceased without any issue.

XIIII. *Mathias*, second of the name, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, Emperour, who reigneth at this present.

Ernestus died without children.

Andrew, Cardinall.

Albertus, Cardinall, afterward secularized, and Husband to the Infant of *Spaine*, *Isabella Clara Eugenia*, Heire of the Low-Conntries, vnder obedience to the King of *Spaine*, without issue.

Leopo'd, Bishop of *Passaw*, and Gouernour of the Kingdome of *Bohemia*.

Elizabeth, wife to King *Charles*, ninth of the name.

Anne, last wife to the King of *Spaine*, *Dom Phillip* the second, and many other Children.

Partage de la Prouince entre freres.

Charles the fift, and *Ferdinand* Emperours, Sonnes to *Phillip* of *Austria* and *Iane* of *Spaine*, deuided betweene them the Estates and Seigneuries both by Father and Mother. Neuertheless an vnequall portion, and which (among vs) to this day, passeth as a common Prouerbe. *The deuision of Spaine, all goes on one side, and nothing on the other.* Because *Charles* the fift tooke for his share, all *Spaine*, the Kingdome of *Naples*, *Sicilie*, *Sardaignia* and *Maiorica*, with all the Low Countries of the House of *Bourgongne*: Giuing (when all was done) to his Brother *Ferdinand*, the Patrimonie of *Austria*, filled with Titles of Kingdomes and Seigneuries, making a goodly show (but very little benefit, the greater part of them being possessed by the Turke) as are the Kingdomes of *Croacia*, *Dalmasia*, *Rascia*, the Archduke of *Austria*, the Duchies of *Styria*, *Carinthia*, *Carnia*, *Carniola*, and the Countie of *Tyroll*: which Realmes and Seigneuries summed vp altogether, value not the reuennues of the Duchie of *Normandie*. Beside all which, the Archdukes of *Austria*, want not the addition (according the custome of Spaine) of a long list, or bedroule of Titles, both of Duchies and Counties, where they haue not any thing to raise.

The Duke-dome of Normandy of great reuen-tiues.

Now, as concerning the Arch-Duchie of *Austria*, which is the higher *Pannonia*, our ancient Annalists report, that our King *Charlemaigne* reduced and comprehended vnder his power, the whole girdling and circuit of those Countries, obserued by his Secretary of State *Eghinard*. *Ipse per bella memorata Italiam totam, quæ ab Augusta Prætoria, vsque in Calabriam inferiorem, in qua Grecorum atque Beneuentanorum consistit esse confinia, Decies Centum, & eo amplius passuum millibus longitudine porrigitur. Tum Saxoniam, quæ quidem Germaniæ pars non modica est. Post eam vtramq; Pannoniam, & oppositam in altera Danubij ripa Daciam, Histriam quoque, Liburniam, atque Dalmatiam sui iuris effecit, atque perdomuit.* Hee might very well say, *Vtramque Pannoniam*, because as wee haue said already, there is the higher and lower *Pannonia*.

The Countries related by *Eghinard*.

Austria is the higher, whereof *Vienna* is the Capitall Citie: and the lower is the Kingdome of *Hungary*, whereof *Buda* (possessed by the Turke) was heretofore the principall City.

Austria is the higher *Pannonia*, and *Hungaria* the lower.

Charlemagne changed the name of the higher *Pannonia*, into that of *Austria*, and afterward (by addition of Letters) it was tearmed *Austriche*: as wee learne by *Aventine* in the fourth Booke of his History of *Bauaria*.

Carolus incolumi milite, nemine resistente, vsque ad Arabonem, & ad confluentem eius, & Danubij, cum triplici exercitu Castra mouet. Ibi aliquot dies statiua habet, & cum non essent qui vincerentur, eam regionem quam Marte cæpit, præsidiis validis firmat. Hostes vallis fixis congestis aggeribus excludit. Deinde Boiorum colonias Geroldum Boiariæ Præsidem deducere iubet, Templa extrui imperat (for vntill this time the *Hungars* had followed Paganisme) *agros, prata, vineas, inter Præfectos, Equites, Monachorum Magistros Pontificesque Boiariæ, sicut vetera testantur Diplomata distribuit*, Ea que Regio Austria hæc est, *Orientalis Boiariæ limes tum vocata, adhuc nomen retinet.*

La Marche d'Austriche.

And after *Charlemaigne*, the higher *Pannonia* was called *The Marches of Austria*, peopled with Colonies taken from the *Bauarians*, conducted and gouerned by this President of *Bauaria*.

Concerning the Presidents of *Bauaria*, and Marquesses of *Austria*.

1. *Girauld*, first Marquesse of *Austria*, to whom succeeded by Order.
2. *Theodoricke*, that is to say *Thierry*.
3. *Gotfrid*, that is *Godefrey*, or *Geoffroy*.
4. *Girauld*, Second race of the name.
5. *Baldericke*, that is *Bauldry*.
6. *Sigenard*.
7. *Leopold*.
8. *Arnulphe*.
9. *Gebelhard*.
10. *Eger*.
11. *Engelricke*; And
12. *Conrard*, who being deceased without an Heyre Male, about the yeare of Grace, Nine Hundred and Fourescore: then began the Second of the Marquesses of *Austria*, in the person of

1. *Albert*, Count of *Bamberg*, called the Cripple, descended of the Dukes of *Sueuia*, or *Suaba*, inuested with the Marquisate, by the Emperour Saint *Henry*, Second of the name. *Albert* had for his Successor his Sonne

2. *Leopold*, who dyed in the Pallace of *Ingelheim*, at the Marriage of the Emperour *Henry*, Third of the name. *Otho*, Bishop of *Frisinghen*, descended of the second Marquesses of *Austria*, writeth in his Sixt Booke and Fifteenth Chapter; that this *Albert* had his head smitten off, and that *Leopolde* was the first Marquesse of *Austria*, of the Second Ligne, wherein he is argued of ignorance by *Auentine*, according to the words formerly reported. Whereby it appeareth, that *Gerold* or *Girauld*, was the first Gouernour on the Frontiers of *Bauaria*. And the Gouernours of those Frontiers were (in those times) both before, and afterward acknowledged, vnder the Title of Marquesses: *Marchiones Finium, & limitum Rectores.*

Otho Frisinghen condemned by *Auentine*.

Lupolde

Lupolde, (thus ſpeaketh the ſame Biſhop of *Friſinghen* (being as yet in his youth) was preſent alone on hunting with the Emperour *Otho*, Second of the name, and wounded a wilde foaming Boare, which the Emperour purſued very cloſely.

Theſe Marches of *Auſtria* growing to bee vacant; *Otho* eſtabliſhed (as Gouernour) *Leopold*, who held it by way of Benefice, and after him his Sonne

3. *Henry*, Father of
Erneſtus Duke of *Sueuia*: And of
4. *Albert*, Marqueſſe of *Auſtria*, Father of
Leopolde, who deceaſed in the life time of his Father, leauing (neuertheleſſe) two Children, to wit
5. *Leopold*, dying without Iſſue; And
6. *Erneſtus*, Father of
7. *Leopold*, Second of the name, Marqueſſe of *Auſtria*, Father to
8. *Leopolde* the Saint; And to
Pape, Archbiſhop of *Treuers*.

Saint *Leopolde* was the Father of fiue Children, as namely of
1. *Conrard*, Biſhop of *Paſſaw*, and then afterward of *Saltzbourg*.
2. *Otho*, Biſhop of *Friſinghen*, whoſe learned writings are remaining with vs.
3. *Leopolde*.
4. *Albert*; And of
5. *Henry*, made firſt Duke of *Auſtria* by the Emperour *Fredericke Barbaroſſa*, Firſt of the name, after whom ſucceeded his Sonne
6. *Leopolde*, called the *Vertuous*, Brother to
Fredericke, deceaſing without Iſſue.

This is that *Leopolde*, Second Duke of *Auſtria*, who went in the Voyage to the Holy Land, when our King the Conquerour *Philip Auguſtus*, Second of the name, and *Richard* of England paſſed thither alſo.

Leopolde that dealt ſo diſhonourably with King *Richard* of England.

The ſtrong City of *Acres*, anciently called *Ptolomais*, and *Acon* were beſiedged during the ſpace of two whole yeares, and finally conquered and taken (by faire force) from *Saladine*, King of thoſe Marches beyond the Seas, whereof he became Maiſter againe foure yeares after. Which repriſall happened in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, One Hundred, Foureſcore and Thirteene. In which Seruice *Leopolde* carried himſelfe there ſo valiantly, that with the firſt of his *Allemaignes* or *Germaignes*; hee wonne a Tower for entring the City, whereon hee planted his Armes and Pennons. In regard whereof wee will ſay and affirme

The Armes of the firſt Dukes of *Auſtria*.

That the firſt Marqueſſes of *Auſtria*, and the two Dukes which ſucceeded them, carried the ſame Armes, as namely, *D'Azur à Cinq Alouettes d'Or en Saultoir*. And the like number is ſeene *En pointe*, in thoſe of the Archduke *Mathias* (who ruleth at this preſent) before he was Emperour. But now concerning the Antiquity of theſe Armes, it is firſt to be conſidered:

The Romaines defending the Frontiers of *Danubius*.

That the Romaines, for guard and defence of the Marches and Frontiers of *Danubius*, held a ſtrong Garriſon in the City of *Vienna*, called *Fauienna* or *Famina*. The Emperour *Traian* hauing warred on *Decebalus*, left for Gouernour at *Vienna Marcus Aurelius*, with a Legion of old Soldiers called in French *L'Alouette*, but in the Latine Tongue *Legio Decima*, and by his Sirname *Alauda*; to ſhew that this Legion was *Gauliſh*, and drawne from the Frontiers of the *Rhine*. For the word *Alouette* is preciſely *Guliſh*. So is it reported in the Germaine Hiſtories, yea, and the Spaniards themſelues, in theſe words.

The Latine.

Eran ſus Antiquas Armas cinco Abubillas de Oro en Eſcudo Azul. De cuya Deuiſa hazе memoria Ciceron en la Epiſtola à Attica, alli dize, que la Region que Caſar leuanto in Francia traia el Abubilla, y por eſto fue llamada Alaudata. *por lla marſe eſtas Aues aſsi en Latin.* But the ſame Spaniards are diſcontented, when it is ſaid that, *El Marques Leopoldo quinto deſte nombre por conſentimiento del Imperio puſo por Armas en Eſcudo Roxo la Faxa Argentada.* For in one and the ſame caſe, they ought to render a reaſon.

The change of the ancient Armes of *Auſtria* to moderne.

Diuers opinions there are concerning the changing of the ancient Armes of *Auſtria*, to moderne; which are *De Gueules à vne Feſſe d'Argent*. Some haue taken them for a *Deuice to repreſent the breake of Day, and the Sunnes riſing in the Eaſte*. And concerning what the Spaniards ſay, that the moderne Armes were taken by Duke *Leopolde*; they learne from the Hiſtory of *Hungary*, written by *Bonfinius*, in his Fourth Booke and Fourth Decade, as alſo by *Auentine* and others, that haue diſcourſed thereon. But obſerue what is ſaid by *Oliuer de la March*, Firſt Maiſter of the Hoſtell to *Philip* Archduke of *Auſtria*, King of *Spayne*, Firſt of the name, in the firſt Booke written by him of Memories.

Ie ne puis paſſer par raiſon, que ie ne deuiſe aucune choſe, pour quoy les Armes de ſi Noble Seigneurie ſont en deux manieres differentes les vnes des autres. Car les anciennes, & eſleues Armes d'Auſtriche, ſont, & ſe blaſonnent d'Azur à cinq Alouettes d'Or: & les nouuelles que l'on dict les Armes de la neufue Auſtriche ſe blaſonnent de Gueules à vne face d'Argent.

I cannot reaſonably let it ſo paſſe, in regard I doe not deuiſe any thing, becauſe the Armes of ſo noble a Seignenrie, are in two manners different the one from the other. For the ancient and old Armes of Auſtria, *are and emblazon themſelues* D'Azur a cinque Alloueates D'Or. *And the new, which are ſaid to be the Armes of new* Auſtria, *are emblazoned* De Gueules a vne face d'Argent.

There is ſome iniury done by this Authour in his narration, for hee calleth *Leopolde Iaſpar*, making him without Children, and that it was his Brother *Fredericke*, which changed thoſe Armes; contrary to the opinion of all Hiſtorians. He proceedeth afterward, ſaying.

Que les chreſtiens mal menez des Meſcreans, ce Iaſpar fut à propos ſecouru par ſon Frere moyne (that is younger) *Frederic, lequel auoit vne blanche parure ſur ſon harnois* (hee would haue ſaid a white Coate of Armes) *pour eſtre cogneu entre ſes Hommes, & print aſſa lance dextre vn grand Volet de blanche Soye* (hee would ſay a Scarfe) *& parce qu'il trouua toutes les Bannieres de ſon Seigneur & Frere, & les Siennes abbattues, & perdues, il prit le Volet blanc en ſa main, & plongea ledit Volet au ſang des Morts, tellement qu'il fut tout teinct en Rouge couleur, excepte le milieu du Volet, qu'il tenoit dans ſa main, qui demeura blanc. De ce fit vne nouelle Banniere, & s'eſcria.* Auſtriche, Seruiteur de Ieſu Chriſt, *& ſe ferit ſi merueilleuſement, & de tel courage parmy les Sarraſins, qu'tant en occit, abbatit, & meſhaigna à la bonne ſuitte qu'il eut qu'il redreſſa la Battaille, & furent Sarraſins deſconfits, & fut le bon Frederic tellement bleſſe, naure ſur ſon corps en auerſes parties, que la blanche parure, dont ſes Armes furent couuertes, & dont l'ay deuant touche, fut toute teinte, & rougie de ſon ſang, excepte que ce qui eſtoit ſous la teinture de ſon Eſpee, demeura blanc: & comme le blanc demeura en la poignee du Volet, & fit Face parmy* Le Vermeil *ſang du Noble Prince, pour la deffence de noſtre Foy: Et la Battaille gaignee par le vaillant Frederic, il fut ſi bien penſe, medecine, & ſecouru de ſes bleſſures, qu'en bref temps il fut guary: & pour memoire de la Victoire, ledit Frederic par le Conſeil de ſa Nobleſſe, changea de la en auant les ſecondes Armes, telles que ie les ay deuiſees cy-deſſus.*

The Chriſtians being badly dealt withall by the Miſcreants, this Iaſper *was very conuenently aſſiſted by his meaner Brother (he would haue ſaid the younger) who had a white decking or ornament vpon his harneſſe (he would haue ſaid a white Coate of Armes) to be knowne among his men, and wore a great cloth of white ſilke on his right arme (hee would haue ſaid a Scarfe.) And becauſe he found all the Banners of his Lord and Brother, and his owne likewiſe to bee beaten downe and loſt, hee tooke the white cloth in his hand, and plunged the ſaid Cloth in the bloud of the ſlaine, ſo that it became wholly tincturd of a Red colour; except the midſt of the Cloath which he held in his hand, and remained white. Of this hee made a new Banner, and then he cried:* Auſtria, the Seruant of Ieſus Chriſt. *Then hee carried himſelfe ſo wonderfully, and with ſuch courage among the Sarrazins, beating downe and killing ſo many, as alſo maiming and ſpoyling them, by the meanes of his quick and ready followers; that hee repayred the Battaile, and the Sarrazins were diſcomfited. Beſide, the good* Frederick *was ſo hurt and wounded in diuers parts of his Body; that the white decking or ornament wherewith his Armes had beene couered, and whereof I haue ſpoken before, was all dyed and made Red with his owne Bloud: except that which was vnder the handling of his Sword, which continued white. And as the white remained in the handfull of the Cloth: ſo it made a Feſſe amidſt the* Vermilion *Boud of the Noble Prince for the defence of our Faith. And the Battaile being wonne by the valiant* Frederick, *hee was ſo well applyed with medicines, and cured of his wounds, that in a ſhort time he was fully healed.*

And for a memory of his Victory, the ſaid Frederick *(by councell and aduice of his Nobility)*

bility) changed from thence forward, the ſecond Armes, in ſuch manner as I haue before declared to you.

Thus you ſee what is ſaid by *Oliuer de la March.*

Concerning the ſoile or earth naturally of *Auſtria.*

The Hiſtories of *Germanie* doe deduce the ſubiect of theſe Armes, from the nature and quality of the earth, or ground of *Auſtria. Which being Red,* and thwarted *with the great Siluerie Riuer of Danubius, euen as with a Girdle:* hath her ſecond Armes thereby ſo blazoned, without any other Art or cunning. Returne we now againe to ſpeake of Duke *Leopolde.*

It was the very ſame man, that ſo long time kept King *Richard* of England Priſoner, whoſe dangerous and hard aduentures wee haue already ſpoken of, at his returne from the Holy Land, in the Tract concerning the Orders of England, in the Second Tome of this great Labour, and the Fortie and Seauenth Page.

The death of *Leopolde* Duke of *Auſtria.*

This *Leopolde* on a day falling from his Horſe, chanced to breake one of his Legs, the affliction whereof cauſing him to deteſt the vanities of the world; hee became an Hermite of Saint *Auguſtines* Order, leauing his Seigneuries to his two Sonnes *Leopolde* and *Fredericke.* And dyed in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, One Hundred, Foureſcore and Foureteene. Concerning his two Sonnes:

Fredericke the youngeſt dyed in the Holy Land (when the Emperour *Henry* the Sixt made his Voyage thither) at the Siege of *Damieta*, in the yeare, One Thouſand, One Hundred, Foureſcore and Eighteene. And as for his Eldeſt Brother

Leopolde, Second of the name, Third Duke of *Auſtria*, hee dyed in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, Two Hundred, and One, leauing three Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

Leopolde the younger his Iſſue.

Henry,
Leopolde; And } All three deceaſing without Iſſue.
Fredericke.

The Daughters were

Margaret, Wife to *Ladiſlaus*, Marqueſſe of *Morauia.*

Gertrude, Wife to *Henry*, Duke of *Sueuia* in firſt Marriage, and in ſecond to the King of *Bohemia Othocarus.*

Agnes, Wife to *Herman*, Duke of *Carinthia*, and in this Marriage was borne *Maynard*, who was Counte of *Tyroll*, Father of one only Daughter, named *Haduuiga*, that is *Auoia*, who was Mother to *Rodolphe*, Counte of *Habſpourg*, and ſole heire of the Houſe of *Auſtria.*

Quarrell and debate for the ſucceſsion of *Auſtria.*

By the death of *Frederick*, laſt Sonne to *Leopolde*, Second of the name, there grewe great debate about the Succeſſion of *Auſtria*, betweene the three Brethren in lawe, and *Herman*, Marqueſſe of *Bada*, Husband to *Gertrude*, Siſter to *Henry* Firſt Duke of *Auſtria*, who maintained, that his Wife ought to be preferred before the Daughters of *Leopolde.*

But the King of *Bohemia Othocarus*, without liſtening to any of thoſe pretenſions; poſſeſſed himſelfe of *Vienna*, the Capitall Citty of *Auſtria*, where he builded a Caſtell, and enioyed the Dukedome foureteene yeares, in the right of his Wife *Gertrude*, whom he cauſed to be poyſoned, to Marrie the Daughter to the King of *Hungarie.* At the end of the foureteene yeares, he was deſpoyled of the ſaid Dukedom, by the Emperour *Rodolphe*, Firſt of the name, as we haue already ſaid. And thus came the Dukedome of *Auſtria* to the houſe of the Countes of *Habſpourg*, who poſſeſſe it to this day. Such then is the Genealogie of the Marqueſſes, Dukes and Archdukes of *Auſtria.* Come we now to the Order of Knighthood.

Diuers contend, and a contrary enioyeth.

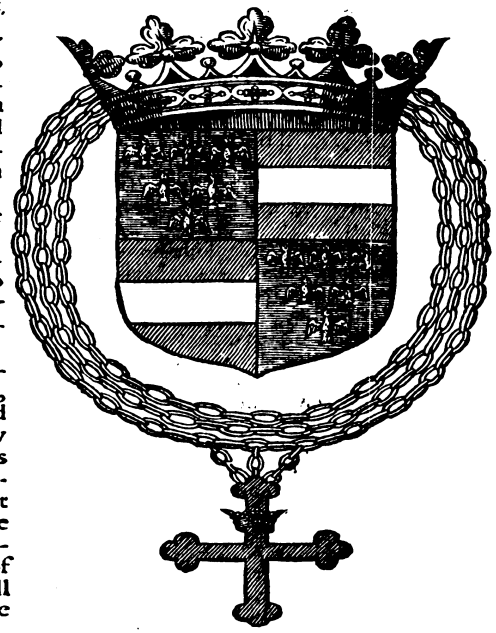
The

The Order of Knighthood, belonging to *Auſtria* and *Carinthia*; And called *Of Saint George.*

The time of the Orders Inſtitution, and the cauſe.

THE Emperour *Fredericke*, third of the name, and firſt Archduke of *Auſtria*, was Authour of *The Order of Knights of Saint George*; ſo ſaith *Wolfangus Lazius*, in the third Booke of his Hiſtorie of *Auſtria.* Which Inſtitution is ſet downe to be in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and ten, expreſly ordained, to guard the Frontiers of *Germanie*, *Hungarie*, *Auſtria*, *Styria*, *Carinthia*, and to hold head againſt the Turkes, by whoſe ordenary courſes and inuaſions, the Marches were very miſerably waſted.

A White Coat of Armes, and a plaine Red Croſſe.



The Knights of this Order of Saint *George. Portoient la Cotte d' Armes Blanche, & la Croix plaine Rouge.* The Emperour granted to the firſt Great Maiſter of this Order, the title and qualitie of a Prince, and for the ſoiourning and abiding of him and his deſcendants, *Mileſtad*, a ſtrong place in the Dukedome of *Carinthia*, adorned with a Caſtle of defẽce, where was erected a Colledge of Chanons, vnder the Rule of Saint *Auguſtine*, with a Biſhop, who was to be choſen and elected of their body, for direction in ſpirituall occaſions.

The Empetors largeſſe to this Order.

Beſide *Mileſtad*, the ſaid Emperour *Fredericke* gaue to the Order, Lands and Iuriſdictions reuolued to the Seigneurie of *Auſtria*; by death (without heires) of the Lords of *Cranichberg*, Lords of *Trantmanſdorf*, of *Skarfenek*, and of Saint *Pernelle.* At the beginning, the Knights of this Order caried themſelues very well, for reſiſtance of the Turkes; but in the end (as all things elſe decline) ſo they became reduced to nothing.

Intent for readuancement of the Order.

The Emperor *Maximillian*, laſt of the name, would haue replanted and reeſtabliſhed the ſaid Order, by changing the Red Croſſe to another, entoured with a Ducall Crown and wholly of Gold: but vnciuill wars (about diuerſity of Religion) happning *in Germanie*, quite ſmothered thoſe diuine ſeedes: for Chriſtian Religion is the onely ſure and ſafeſt Foundation, out of which Church there is no ſaluation.

By reading *Wolfangus Lazius*, in his Hiſtory of *Auſtria* & *Vienna*, is proued the perſons of the Marqueſſe *Leopolde*, vnder the year One thouſand one hundred & foure: Of *Othocarus*, elected Duke of *Styria*, in ſtead of Marqueſſe, in Anno 1180. Of *Fredericke*, Duke of *Auſtria* and *Styria* in the yeare One thouſand two hundred twenty fiue. And the ſame *Lazius* writeth, that in the yeare One thouſand two hundred forty fiue, *Fredericke*, Duke of *Auſtria*, on the Feſtiuall day of Saint *George* (Patron of the moſt part of the Militarie Orders of Chriſtendome) made an hundred and forty Knights of his owne Lands & Seigneuries, in the Citie of *Vienna* in *Auſtria*, *Anno Domini Milleſimo Ducenteſimo Quadrageſimo Quinto*, Fredericus *Dux Auſtriæ plenus, & Argento, in* Feſto Sancti Georgij *Centum Quadraginta Iuuenes de terra ſua Nobiles, apud Viennam honorifice* Gladio & Cingulo Militari *Donauit.*

Order of Poland; called, The Order of the *White Eagle.*

CHAP. IIII.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Kings of Poland.

How the Country grew to be so named at the first.



Polonia, a great and spacious Prouince, became so called of the word *Pole*, which in the *Sclauonian* tongue signifieth *A Field* or leuell *Plaine of Ground, apt and proper for the exercise of Hunting*, whereto the Inhabitants being extraordinarily addicted: they were therefore called *Polacks*, and *Polanders*, and their Countrey *Poland*. But by *Froissard*, and them of his straine *Poulaine*, as *Bohemia Behaigne*. By the *Romaines*, the whole extendure of the Countrey of *Poland*, *Lithuania*, *Tartaria*, and so farre as to the Lands in the North; was called *Sarmatia*, and the Inhabitants *Sarmates*, a name perticuler, according as that of *Scythia* was in generall.

Of the two Brethren *Leko* and *Cieko*, & their people.

About the yeare of Grace Fiue hundred and fiftie, two Bretheren, named *Leko* and *Cieko*, departing out of *Croatia*, which made part of *Sclauonia* (called by the Latines *Illyria*) with a great number of People, enclosed in too narrow a straite: went to seeke their fortune, for larger liberty, and liuing more at ease. They all betooke themselues towards the North and West Summer parts, and after they had trauersed many Woods and Mountaines, to winne the higher gounds of *Pannonia*, and to vn-intangle themselues from the Forrest *Hyrcynia*; they made their setled stay in *Bohemia*, where *Cieko* was the first Duke thereof.

Cieko the first Duke of Bohemia.

As for his Brother *Leko*, hauing got himselfe free from that great Forrest, which *Plinie* calleth *Syluam incompertæ magnitudinis*, according as we haue elsewhere said: He tooke the North-Starre for his guide and conduct, and found himselfe (at length) to be in the Champaine Fields of *Polonia*, where hee stucke downe his Staffe (as we vse to say in a common Prouerbe) establishing his principall abiding in a Marthie ground, seated very difficult for any accesse, about sixe miles from the Riuer of *Vuarta*. Laying the foundation of his purposed dwelling place, at the first stroake of the Pikaxe or Mattocke; was discouered *A Nest of yong Eagles, with fine white downie feathers*. And of this Nest, which in the *Polish* language is called *Gnisdo*, he would haue the Towne to be built, so named. But in time (which eateth and deuoureth all things) the word was corrupted into that of *Guesno*, turned by the Latines to that of *Guesna*.

Strange finding a Nest of yong Eagles.

By valour and force of his Armes, he conquered part of *Vandalia*, as also of *Sarmatia*, and caused to be builded a second Towne or Citie, vpon the borders or banks of *Visurgis*: to which Citie he gaue the name of *Brisemia*, but afterward called *Bresmia*. And to preserue the memorie of his first aboade and dwelling, in the forenamed place of *Guasda*, he tooke for Armes *L'Escu du Gueulles à vn Aigle d'Argent*.

Two Cities built by *Leko* in memory of his first Labrding.

It is a matter especially noated by the Naturalists, that Foules or Birds of blacke plumage (such are Eagles and Rauens) being come to their perfection, are all white at their new disclosing. And that Eagles expose their yong ones against the beames of the Sunne, to looke stedfastly vpon his light: and vnderstand by those meanes, whether they be their owne yong, or of other supposed Birds. In the same manner, the Rauens doe forsake and leaue their yong ones, for the space of nine dayes, to try whether they will be vnlike them or no. During which tearme of nine dayes, that these yong creatures are thus abandoned both by Father and Mother: God (who hath care of all his creatures) sendeth them Flies, which flying into their gaping mouthes, doth nourish and sustaine them, vntill their white

A speciall obseruation of the Naturalists.

white downie Feathers be changed, and turned blacke, and then they become acknowledged and nourished by their Parents.

This is the Doctrine of the *Rabbines*, deriued from the eight and thirty Chapter of *Iob*, King of *Edom*, and mirrour of patience. *Quis præparat Coruo escam suam, quando pulli eius clamant ad Deum, vagantes, eo quod non habeant cibos? Who prouideth for the Rauen his foode? when his yong ones cryeth vnto God, they wander for lacke of meate.* Whereunto the Royall Psalmist giuing good respect, in his hundred forty and seauenth Psalme, saith, that the Diuine Prouidence *Dat iumentis escam ipsorum; & Pullis Coruorum inuocantibus eum. He giueth to the Beast his foode; and to the yong Rauens that cry.* Of this *Leko*, the *Polonians* were (for very long time) knowne by the name of *Lekites*; and *Poland* called the Prouince and Kingdome of the *Lekites*, yea, euen now at this day in *Greece*, *Tartaria*, *Russia*, and diuers other neighbouring Countries.

Poland called the Kingdome of the *Lekites*.

By the death of *Leko*, Father of twelue Sonnes, the *Polonians*, being not growne to agreement, which of them they should take for their Prince and Captaine solely by himselfe: liued vnder the command of those twelue, whom (in a full Assembly of their States, held at *Guesna*, they tooke for their chiefe Lords, and gaue them the name of *Voiuodes*, vulgarly called *Vaiuodes*, that is to say, Captaine of the Warre, and Conducters of Troupes: yet remaining with the *Vaiuodes* of *Walachia*, *Transylvania*, *Moldauia* and others: but at this day it is changed in *Poland*, to that of *Palatine*.

Leko his twelue Sonnes.

These *Vaiuodes* of *Leko*, to the number of twelue, gouerned *Polonia*, about two hundred yeares, when this Family, being quite ended: the *Polanders* would no longer haue so many Maisters to please and content. And therefore, about the yeare of Grace Seauen hundred, they elected for their Duke and Prince, one of their owne Nation, named

Crao, who hauing accepted the charge, established his dwelling at a place of his owne Paternall inheritance, a Castle, very highly exalted on the point of a Rocke, called *Vetuell*: And at the foote was erected a small Towne or Citie, vpon the banke of the Riuer *Vistula*, giuing also this new built Citie his owne name, calling it *Crauia*, at this day the Capitall Citie in the great Kingdome of *Poland*. Within the hollow wombe and bowels of the Rocke *Vetuell* was the haunt and repaire of a huge and dreadfull Dragon (as to this denne) which deuoured all the men and beasts he could lay hold on. Vntill such time as the said *Crao* (valiantly resolued) to send daily into the mouth of the Caue three fleane Beasts, whose bellies he had caused to stuffed with a good quantitie of Pitch, Sulphure and small minced straw. So that within some conuenient time, these combustible matter taking fire in the Dragons entrailes, he dyed not very long after.

The first Duke of Poland after the *Vaiuodes*.

Duke *Crao* of whom the Citie of *Crauia* tooke name.

After this *Crao* succeeded his yongest Sonne *Lech*, second of the name, third Duke of *Poland*, slaine by his eldest Brother as hee rode on Hunting, to possesse himselfe of the Dignitie; from which he was expelled, and the Principalitie giuen to

Leko the second, murdered by his elder brother.

Venda, Daughter to Duke *Crao*, and Sister to *Leko* the second: the *Polish* word *Venda*, signifieth a Hooke for a Fisher. This Princesse, shunning and flying from marriage, and thinking to bestow an acceptable gift on her Gods: threw her selfe headlong into the Riuer of *Vistula*, and by her death, the *Polanders* elected againe for their Commanders

Twelue *Vaiuodes*, in manner as before, whose Gouernment being wholly extinguished by the *Polanders*, as altogether tyrannicall and insupportable: In the yeare of Grace, Seauen hundred and threescore, they chose for their Prince and Lord, one of the worthiest among them, famous for valiancy, named

Vaiuodes elected againe as Gouernours.

Premislaus, otherwise called *Leko*, third of the name, who being deceased without any issue, they elected for his Successour

Lech, fourth of the name, hauing out-run others in the race, wonne a limit prepared to obtaine the *Polish* Principalitie, whereto hauing attained; he gouerned very happily vntill his death, which happened in the yeare of Grace, Eight hundred and fiue. For he was slaine by *Charles*, Sonne to our King *Charlemaigne*, sent by his Father into *Bohemia* and *Poland*, to make head against, and to represse the Nations

Charles Son to King *Charlemaigne* slew *Leko* the fourth

descending into *Saxonie*, which was conquered by the said *Charlemaign*. After which *Leko* succeeded his Sonne

Leko, the fift of that name, who (before his death) ordained Successour his eldest Sonne

Popiellus, called the Auncient, who vsed for his common Oath, and swore continually; *That Rats might and should eate him*. He liued but a short time, and left for his Successour his Sonne (being very yong)

Popiellus, second of the name, who was left in the Tutelage and Wardship of one of his Vncles by the Fathers side. But when he came to the yeares of capacity to Reigne, he caused them all to dye by poison, with the very chiefest Lords of *Poland*, which outrage and cruelty was reuenged by the hand of Heauen, in very strange and wonderfull manner. For, out of the dead empoysoned bodies; issued such a huge number of Rats; as violently intruded themselues into the Dukes Pallace, especially (contrary to their nature) by swimming ouer a great Meere or Pond of Water, in the very midst whereof *Popiellus* the Auncient had caused to be builded a goodly Castell and Dongeon, by him named *Cruswicke*. They fed vpon him, and deuoured him aliue, with his Children and Wife, by whose wicked counsell, he had put so to death the Lords of *Poland*.

A wonderfull iudgement of God inflicted on a cruell and bloudy Duke.

By this exemplarie death of him, happening in the yeare of Grace, Eight hundred twenty three; there was some time of *Interregnum*, which lasted so long, as till (by common consent) the *Polacks* elected for their Prince a poore man, named

Poore *Piastus* & his decent Dukes of *Poland* for many yeares.

Piastus, whose descent gouerned *Poland* a long extendure of yeares, euen vntill the time of *Casimire* the second, Sirnamed the Great. This *Piastus* liued sixtcore yeares, and Reigned (almost) threescore of them, leauing for Successour his onely Sonne

Ziemouitius, who Reigned One and thirtie yeares, and left the State to his Sonn:

Leko, sixt of the name, Father of his Sonne and Successour.

Zemomislaus, Father of

The *Polacks* were Idolaters before their first Christian Duke *Miecislaus*.

Miecislaus, the first Christian Duke of *Poland*. Before whose Reigne, the *Polacks* had for their Gods the Sunne and the Moone, a Tree, a Serpent, or any thing whereupon they first fixed liking. But this man hauing espoused *Dambrowca*, Daughter to *Boleslaus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, who was a Christian: embraced Christianity in the yeare of Grace Nine hundred threescore and fiue. He established in his principality nine Bishopricks, two whereof were raised to be Metropolitane Sees and Archbishopricks, as namely *Guesna* and *Cracouia*. The first Archbishop of *Cracouia*, named *Lambert*, was sent to Pope *Benedict*, seauenth of the name, to render him due obedience, as vniuersall Father of the Christians, Successour to Saint *Peter*, and said to be chiefe Vicare to our Sauiour and Redeemer Iesus Christ on earth: And withall, to entreate his Holinesse, that he would bestow on *Miecislaus*, the name and title of King. But during the time of this voyage or embassie, the said Prince *Miecislaus*, chanced to dye, hauing reigned fiue and thirty yeares, in Anno Nine hundred fourescore and nineteene.

The first Archbishop of *Cracouia*.

Vnder this Duke, the *Polish* Nobilitie hauing embraced Christianitie, began the Custome, long time afterward exercised in *Poland*, to vn-sheath their Swords, and hold them aloft with their points vpward, when the Priest went to sing the Gospell, and put them vp againe into their Scabbards, after they had heard *Gloria tibi Domine*. This was thus done as a signe or token, that they were all readily prepared to fight, and spend their Blood to the very lateſt drop, for defence of the Christian Faith. Next after this Duke *Miecesiaus*, succeeded his Sonne.

A Custome long time practised in *Poland*, for defence of Christian Faith.

The

The Chronologicall Succession of *Poland*, in the title of Kings; after the embracing of *Christian Religion*.

CHAP. V.

I. *Boleslaus*, first of the name, to whom the Emperour *Otho*, third of the name, and Sirnamed the Red (being gon on Pilgrimage to *Guesna*, to the Sepulcher of the Martire Saint *Albert*, Martyred in *Prussia*) gaue the Crowne Royall, as well for himselfe, as also his Successours and descendants. So that he was the first Crowned King of *Poland*, in the Cathedrall Church of *Guesna*, the yeare of Grace One thousand and one. *Martinus Cromerus* and other Historians haue written, that with the Royall title of King, the said Emperour gaue *Boleslaus* the first King: *The Lance of the Knight and Martire Saint Mauritius*, reserued and kept yet to this day, in the Cathedrall Church of *Craconia*. This *Boleslaus* deceasing in the yeare of Grace One thousand twenty and foure, succeeded his Son

II. *Mieceslaus*, the second Crowned King of *Poland* at *Guesna*, who dyed bereft of his vnderstanding, and vtterly disappointed of iudgement and reason; in the ninth yeare of his Reigne; Of Grace One thousand thirtie foure; and the foure and fortieth of his Age. After his death, there was an *Interreguum*, thorow the contending and vnderhanding of Pretenders to the Kingdome. And *Casimire*, Sonne to the King expulsed from *Poland*, for his madnesse, went priuately to studie at *Paris*, from whence he retired himselfe into the Abbey of *Clugny*, where he became a professed Monke and Deacon. The *Polanders*, after an agreement made among themselues together; withdrew him from *Clugny*, by permission of the Pope then sitting in the holy Chayre. But the condition was, to pay a pennie for euery head or Commander of a Familie in *Poland*, as an yearely Patrimonie to Saint *Peter*: And so

III. *Casimire*, Sonne to the Franticke *Mieceslaus*, was Crowned King of *Poland* at *Guesna*. He died in the yeare One thousand fiftie & eight, leauing for Successour his eldest Sonne

IIII. *Boleslaus*, second of the name, Sirnamed the Cruell, who for his bloudy and tyrannicall behauiour, was (after a full Consultation, held in the Generall Tearme time for *Poland*) dispossessed of the Kingdome. Among other of his notorious Assassinates and murders, was that of Saint *Stanislaus*, Archbishop of *Craconia*, Successour to *Lambert*. *Boleslaus*, despoyled of all his goods, was constrained to make his retreate into *Hungarie*, where he slew himselfe, and his body was giuen burial in the Churchyard of the Monasterie of *Osoy* in *Carinthia*; where yet is to be seene his Tomb, and on it the representation of a Horse, couered with a Foote cloath, and for a Legend round about it, these words. *Rex Poloniæ Boleslaus, Occisor Sancti Stanislai Episcopi Craconiensis*. After *Boleslaus* (expulsed from the Kingdome) in the yeare One thousand threescore & nineteene; succeeded next his Brother

V. *Ladislaus*, first of the name, in the yeare One thousand fourescore and two (who would not take on him the title of King, during the life time of his Brother) but stiled him Prince, *Heire of Poland*. By Prayers which he caused to be made in the Church of Saint *Giles* (whose body was buried in *Languedocke*, in the Citie bearing sometime name of a Countie, but to this day the title of that holy Hermite, a Native of *Athens*) he obtained a Sonne by *Iudith* his wife, Daughter to *Ratislaus*, Duke of *Bohemia*. He dyed in the yeare of Grace One thousand one hundred and two, leauing a legittimate Sonne, named

Boleslaus and a Bastard, called *Sbigneo*, to whom he gaue *Massonia*, the higher *Polonia*, *Pomeranica* and *Prussia*: This was the first deuision made of the Kingdome of *Poland*.

VI. *Boleslaus*, third of the name, tooke the Title of Prince of *Poland*, as his Father

ther before him had done. *Sbigneo* his Baſtard Brother, would needes exalt himſelfe againſt him; but he brought him to tearmes of ductie and obedience, leauing him but the Dukedome of *Maſſouia*, taking into his owne hands the higher *Poland*, *Pomerania* and *Pruſsia*. The Emperour *Henry* the fourth would haue made *Poland* tributarie to the Empire; but hee was ouerthrowne in a fought battaile: ſo that the Emperour was compelled to come to agreement, and to treate on Peace with the *Polonians*, which was combined by a double Alliance, as namely *Adela* the Emperours ſiſter, to marrie with *Boleſlaus*, a Widdower of his firſt Wife; and *Chriſtina*, Daughter to the ſaid Emperour, with *Ladiſlaus*, Sonne to the ſame *Boleſlaus*. Hee dyed in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred thirty nine. By his firſt wife he had but one Sonne, named

VII. *Ladiſlaus*, ſecond of the name, to whom the Father gaue for his lot and portion the Soueraignty of *Poland*, with the Seigneuries of *Cracouia*, *Siradia*, *Lancitia*, *Sileſia* and *Pomerania*. By his ſecond wife, *Adela*, he left

Boleſlaus the *Friſian*, who had the Lands of *Maſſouia*, *Dobrizin*, *Cuiauia* and *Culma*.

Miceiſlaus, who was Lord of *Gneſna*, *Poſnania* and of *Calaſsia*: He was Sirnamed the Auncient, for his wiſedome and cunning.

Henry, Lord of *Sandomiria*, and of *Lublina*: And

Cazimire, in ſwadling cloathes at his Fathers death, but he gaue charge to his Bretheren, to make him an equall part of their goods, when he ſhould come to yeares of gouerning his Eſtate. Thus were portioned the Sonnes of the ſecond Bed to *Boleſlaus*, after whoſe death *Ladiſlaus* his eldeſt Sonne, not well contented with thoſe proportions; following the counſell of his wife (a woman of a high and mounting ſpirit, by being Daughter and Siſter to Emperours:) made warre vpon his other Bretheren, who holding all louingly together, vanquiſhed his Armie, enforcing him to forſake *Poland*, as the like they did to his Wife and Children, who retreated themſelues to *Conrad*, King of the *Romaines*. So that in the yeare One thouſand one hundred fortie and ſixe, by conſent of the Brethren, and aduiſe taken at the Generall Tearmes.

VIII. *Boleſlaus*, fourth of the name, (called the *Friſian*, in regard his Haire was frizeled or curled) was elected Soueraigne of *Poland*: who after the death of *Ladiſlaus*, expelled from *Poland*, vſed courteſie towards the Sonnes that were his Nephewes.

Boleſlaus, Sirnamed the Haughtie.
Miceciſlaus; And
Conrad, Sirnamed the Lame or Cripple.

Whom he cauſed to returne from *Germanie* into *Poland*, where he gaue them *Sileſia* for their maintenance. This *Boleſlaus* the *Friſian* was a valiant Prince, and in the yeare One thouſand one hundred threeſcore and foure, he compelled them of *Pruſsia* to burne their Idols, and to receiue the Faith of Ieſus Chriſt. But ſoone after they returned to their vomit againe, and ouerthrew the Army of *Boleſlaus*, whoſe Brother *Henry* was ſlaine in the Field, and deceaſing ſo without Children; his portion fell to *Cazimire*. *Boleſlaus* dyed in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred threeſcore and thirteene, leauing one onely Son, named

Leko.

After the death of *Boleſlaus*, his Bretheren and the Princes their Nephewes of *Sileſia*, with the Generall Tearmes aſſembled together, elected for Soueraign Prince of *Poland*

IX. *Miceſlaus*, ſecond of the name, Sonne of *Ladiſlaus* the ſecond, and Brother to him dead; whoſe trackes and vertues he followed not, ſhining moſt gloriouſly in ſo good a Prince; becauſe he addicted himſelfe to all tyrannie, for which he was depoſed from his Principality at the General Tearmes, and in his place was aduanced his yonger Brother

X. *Cazimire*, ſecond of the name, who dyed by an impoyſoned drinke or amourous potion, which was giuen him by a Woman, of whom he would haue had his pleaſure, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and twelue. By *Helena* his wife he left two Sonnes,

Leko. And

Conrad, Duke of *Maſſouia* and of *Cuiauia*.

The Generall Tearmes being held at *Cracouia*, they there elected for Soueraigne of *Poland*, the eldeſt Sonne of *Cazimire*

XI. *Leko*, ſixt of the name, Sirnamed the *White* and the *Faire*, by reaſon of his goodly Haire. He was ſlaine by *Swantopolus*, whom he had made Captaine of *Pomerania*, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred twenty & ſeauen. By his death

XII. *Conrad*, Duke of *Maſſouia*, Brother to him deceaſed, vſurped *Poland*, and got to himſelfe the Treaſures and perſon of

XIII. *Boleſlaus*, called the *Chaſte* (Sonne to *Leko* the ſixt) fift of the name, who during the warre of the *Tartares*, found meanes to ſhield himſelfe from the guard of his Vnckle *Conrad*, and withdrawing to his Caſtles of *Sandomiria*, was receiued into the Caſtell of *Cracouia*. And therefore his Vnckle *Conrad* made ſharpe Warre vpon him, wherein he died, the yeare of Grace One thouſand two hundred forty ſeauen: And *Boleſlaus* gouerned the Kingdome of *Poland* the ſpace of thirty ſeauen yeares.

He was Sirnamed the *Chaſte*, becauſe he liued ſanctimoniouſly with his Wife *Kungenda*, Daughter to *Bela* King of *Hungarie*, a moſt deuout and Religious Princeſſe: but her Husband being deceaſed without iſſue, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred threeſcore and foureteene, the Gouernment of *Poland* came to

XIV. *Henry*, Sirnamed the *Bearded* man, deſcended of the Dukes of *Vratiſlauia*, who had for Succeſſour

XV. *Leko*, ſeauenth of the name, Sirnamed the Blacke, Sonne of *Cazimire*, eldeſt Son to *Conrad*, Duke of *Maſſouia*, who left foure Sonnes

Cazimire.
Boleſlaus.
Miceſlaus; And
Zemouido.

Cazimire eldeſt Sonne, was Father to

Zemouido, Duke of *Guiauia*, and to
Ladiſlaus, Duke of *Poland*.

Zemouido, Duke of *Guyauia*, was Father to

Leko; to
Primiſlaus, afterward King; And to
Cazimire.

Now, concerning *Ladiſlaus*, Duke of *Poland*, he was Father of

Elizabeth, Queen of *Hungarie*: And of
Cazimire, King of *Poland*.

Come we now againe to *Leko*, or *Lesko* the Blacke, who being dead in the yeare One thouſand two hundred foureſcore and nine:

XV. *Boleſlaus* his Brother, Duke of *Maſſouia*, ſixt of the name, ſucceeded him, being choſen to that charge at the Generall Tearmes. But bearing himſelfe (euen from the beginning) with ouer-head-ſtrong violence; he was depoſed and diſplaced from the dignitie, in which reſpect, he is not reckoned to hold degree in rancke, but his Predeceſſour and he are accounted but as one man. And then the Office was generally giuen to

XVI. *Henry*, Duke of *Sileſia*, ſirnamed the *Honeſt-man*. He dyed poyſonned by them of *Sileſia*, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred foureſcore and tenne. After whoſe death there was *Interregnum* fiue yeares in *Poland*: And then at the Generall Tearmes was elected by common voyce

XVII. *Primiſlaus*, ſecond of the name, formerly Duke of *Pomerania*, & of the higher *Poland*, who was Sacred and Crowned King of *Poland*, by *Iames Sumca*, Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, in the Metropolitane Church of the ſaid place, in the Moneth of Iune One thouſand two hundred foureſcore and fifteene. His Reigne laſted no longer then ſeauen Months and eleauen daies, being on a day (in the Lent ſeaſon) ſurprized at his Table by the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg* and his own Nephewes, who brooked it enuiouſly, that the ſaid *Primiſlaus* had bin ſo preferred. After his death, at the Generall Tearmes was choſen to be their King

XVIII. *Ladiſlaus*, fift of the name, and Sirnamed *Locktek*, Brother to *Lesko* the *Blacke*, a Prince of faire hope: but ſeeing himſelfe exalted to the Royall Dignitie, he abuſed it greatly, wallowing in all kindes of vices, ſo that at the Generall Teames, aſſembled and held at *Cracouia*; the ſaid *Ladiſlaus*, was depoſed, who had Reigned no longer then three yeares, but not Crowned, neither

neither had any other Title, then Heire to the Kingdome. And in his place, Anno, One thousand three hundred:

XIX. *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia* was elected King of *Poland*, Sacred and Crowned at *Guesna*. He espoused *Rixa*, onely Daughter (to King *Primislaus*, slaine by his Nephewes, as you haue heard) and consequently Heire to the Kingdome of *Poland*. After they were returned backe to *Bohemia*, the deposed *Ladislaus* entred againe into *Poland*, and made himselfe Maister of some Castles there. As he purposed on further triall of his fortune, *Wenceslaus* chanced to dye in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred and fiue, whose death serued him for a great aduantage, to make him Maister of *Craconia*. So that, as well in regard of his valiancie, as some good hope conceiued by the *Polacks*, of correcting his former depraued manners, the said

XX. *Ladislaus* was reseated in the Kingdome, and by the consent of Pope *Iohn* the two and twentieth, sitting then in *Auignion*; at the Generall Tearmes held at *Craconia* the twentieth day of Ianuarie, in the yeare One thousand three hundred and twenty: He was Sacred and Crowned King of *Poland* in the great Church of *Craconia*, where the Ornaments Royall, to wit, the Crowne, Sword, Scepter and Apple or Ball of Gold, were brought thither from *Guesna*. And after that time, the preferrence for Sacring and Crowning the Kings of *Poland*, was translated from *Guesna* to *Craconia*. This *Ladislaus* had a Sonne and a Daughter:

Elizabeth, who was Queene of *Hungarie*; And

Cazimire.

Who being come to the age of sixeteene yeares, was married by his Father in Anno One thousand three hundred twenty and fiue to the Daughter of *Gedemin*, Duke of *Lithuania*, an Idolatrous Princesse. But after she had bin Cathechised and enstructed in the Christian Faith, by the Bishop of *Craconia*; she was Baptized, and named *Anne*. By the death of *Ladislaus*, happening in the Moneth of March, One thousand three hundred thirty and three, his Sonne

XXI. *Cazimire*, third of the name, called the Great, was Sacred and Crowned King of *Poland*, with his wife in the Church of *Craconia*, the fiue and twentieth day of Aprill, in the yeare before exprimed. His Reigne was seauen and thirty yeares, during which time, he heaped on *Poland* all wealth & happinesse, he made the Church of Royall structure; the Cities, Townes and strong places of the Land, notably witnessed the Greatnesse of this Prince, who neuer had his equall in *Poland*: and therefore after his death, he was (vpon good and iust cause) Sirnamed *Cazimire* the Great. He dyed in the moneth of Nouember, the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred threescore and ten, the sixtieth of his Age, and seauen and thirtieth of his Reigne: not leauing any masle childe begotten in lawfull mariage; nor had he but three Daughters, to wit

Heduiga, that is, *Auoye*

Elizabeth: And

Anne.

Wherefore, after his death, the *Polanders* were bandied and deuided into many factions a part. For some fauoured *Lewes* King of *Hungarie*, Sonne of *Elizabeth*, Sister to the late deceased King *Cazimire*. And this Faction finding themselues to be the strongest; hee was brought into *Poland*, whereof he was Crowned King, the very same yeare as Great *Cazimire* died.

Others tooke part with *Voladislaus*, Cousine in the third degree to King *Cazimire* that was dead, as is written by *Martinus Cromerus*, in the thirteenth Booke of his Historie, whom we follow in these our abbreuiations. And therefore it is necessary to obserue the Originall of this *Voladislaus*.

Cazimire, Father to *Lesko* the blacke, Duke of *Poland*, and to

Zemouido, Duke of *Guiania*; And to

Ladislaus Locktek, fift of the name, King of *Poland*.

Zemouido, Duke of *Guiania* had three Children.

Lesko.

Primislaus: And

Cazimire, Duke of *Guyania* and of *Massouia*, who was Father to *Voladislaus*, Sirnamed the *white Duke*: And to

Elizabeth.

This

This is the same *Voladislaus* the *White*, with whom tooke part some Princes and Lords of *Poland*.

Now *Cazimire* the Great, seeing that he had none but Daughters, and that by the Law of the Kingdome of *Poland*, Daughters were excluded from it, and the neerest Prince masle (able to succeede in the Crowne of *Poland*) was this *Voladislaus* the *white* his Cousine: He bent himselfe directly against him, and deprined him of the Dukedomes belonging to his Father. So that this poore Prince was compelled to forsake *Poland*, and to seeke for shelter in *Germanie*. Where yet not finding himselfe in safety, he came into *France*, there to awaite the death of *Cazimire* his mortall enemy. But his long life, and very vrgent necessities, forced *Voladislaus* to become a Monke in the Abbey of the *Cisteaux*, in the Dioceese of *Chalon*, about three miles from *Dijon*, where he submitted himselfe, and was professt. But being vnable to endure the austerity of this Order, he was entertained among the Religious Conuerts, in the Abbey of Saint *Benigne* at *Dijon*. After the death of *Cazimire* the Great, the Lords of *Poland* sent to giue aduertisement at *Dijon*, concerning the death of his enemy, and that he was desired in *Poland*, whether he should come with all the speede he could possibly make.

The hard and dissastrous fortunes, whereto the Prince was driuen.

Voladislaus obtained of Pope *Clement* (being then in *Auignion*) a dispensation for his profession, and to be re-enabled, for holding rule in the Kingdome of *Poland*, whereunto he was trauailing the second time. But he dyed at *Strasbourge* in *Germanie*, and appointed by his testament, that his body should be carried to Saint *Benigne* at *Dijon*, where, in the midst of the goodly body of the Church, is to be seene the Monument of this Prince Monke. It is a great Tombe of Stone onely, exalted from the ground about three fingers in height, whereon is engrauen the Picture of this Prince, habited according to the manner of the blacke Monkes of *Clugny*, the Order of Saint *Benedict*, holding the very same of Saint *Benigne*. On his head is placed a Dukes Crowne, and on either side are the Escutcheons of his Armes: *Qui sont ne Aigle party d'vn Lyon rempant*, without any other Blazons. About the Tombe is engrauen this Epitaphe.

When hope had attained to the heighth, death disappointed all.

The Epitaph on the Tombe of *Voladislaus*.

Hic iacet vir illustris & deuotus Dominus Voladislaus *quondam Dux Albus Poloniæ, Monachus huius Monasterij per plures annos existens: postmodum dispensatus per Papam, pro successione Regni Poloniæ, obyt in ciuitate Argentinâ hic eligens sepeliri. Anno Domini Millesimo Trecentesimo Octuagesimo Octauo. 1. Kalend. Marty. Anima requiescat in pace. Amen.*

In the person of this *Voladislaus* ended the Ligne of *Piastus*, which had held the Crowne of *Poland*, for the space of fiue hundred and fifty yeares. And for better vnderstanding the hard aduentures of this miserable Prince: the reading of the Bull for his dispensation, will giue the best intelligence.

The Copie of the Bull of Dispensation, granted by Pope Clement *to the Prince* Voladislaus.

CLEMENS EPISCOPVS SERVVS SERVORVM DEI, dilecto filio Ladislao vocato Voladislao quondam Casimiri Ducis Cuyauiensis nato Militi, Voladislauo de Diocesi, salutem & Apostolicam benedictionem. Sedes Apostolica pia mater animarum, salutem desideranter affectans, personis sibi deuotis generosi sanguinis claritate fulgentibus, libenter fauet benignitatis gratiam impertitur, in illis præsertim per quas salus humana creditur promouenda. Sane petitio propter tuâ nobis nuper exhibita continebat, quod in Regno Poloniæ de antiquâ, & approbatâ, & hactenus pacificè obseruatâ consuetudine est obtentum, quod aliqua mulier non succedit in eo, idque fuit ibidem pacificè obseruatum à tempore cuius contrary memoria non existit; quodque tu clara memoriæ Casimiro Regi Poloniæ, tertio consanguinitatis gradu per lineam masculinam coniunctus, & proximior Masculus per huiusmodi existebas: & quod idem Rex qui nullum superstitem filium, sed filias tantum habebat, attendens quod sibi propterea in dicto Regno deberes succedere,

succedere, dictæque filiæ excluderentur ab illo, cœpit te persequi odio capitali, regnæ dubium Ducatibus quos in eodem Regno pacifice possidebas, nequiter spoliauit, torquè insidias vitæ tuæ posuit, quod te oportuit de partibus illis recedere. Et cum in Alemaniâ te non reputares securum, ad Regnum FRANCIÆ *transiuisti. Quia non habebas vnde posterio Cistercienji Cabillonensis Diocæsis habitares, sed Abbas dicti Monasterij qui tunc erat, recipere te nolebat, nisi promitteres quod in Cistercienſi ordine perpetuo remaneres; & quamus regularis ordinis totaliter inexpertus existeres, tamen repente regularem professionem in eo fecisti. Post medium autem Annum, vel circiter, cum ipsius ordinis asperitatem pati non posses, ad Monasterium sancti Benigni de Diuione ordinis sancti Benedicti Lingonensis Diocæsis de licentia prædicti Abbatis accedens, in eo tanquam Conuersus per annos aliquos moram traxisti. Tandem vero prædicto Casimiro Rege sublato de medio, cum dictum Regnum tibi legitime deberetur, ac ipsius Habitatores, & Incolæ te affectarent in eorum Regem habere, & Lodouicus Rex Hungariæ Regnum ipsum contra Iustitiam occupasset guerram sibi mouisti. Sed demum dubitans eius potentiam, & quod te interficeret, metu Mortis, & necessitate cogente, de consilio aliquorum parentum, & amicorum tuorum ad dictum Monasterium sancti Benigni redysti, & ibidem per aliquos annos vt Conuersus remansisti, nulla inibi per te regulari professione emissa.* QVARE *pro parte tua nobis fuit humiliter supplicatum, vt cum nunquam firmum propositum habueris in aliquo regulari ordine remanere, ac præfati Habitatores & Incolæ te in eorum Regem habere desiderent, si & in quantum indiges, a quacumque regulari obseruantia te absoluere, tibique concedere quod Comitatus, Ducatus, & quæcumque alia temporalia dominia, ac ipsum Regnum obtinere, & regere valeas, de benignitate Apostolica dignaremur,* NOS *igitur attendentes sinceræ deuotionis affectum quo* NOS, *& Romanam Ecclesiam reuereris, ac sperantes quod illius per quem Reges regnant, & Principes dominantur, tibi suffragante Clementia predictos Habitatores & Incolas qui Ludouico prædicto fauentes, contra Nos, & Romanam Ecclesiam in schismatis damnum dammabiliter sunt collapsi, ad viam salutis & Iustitiæ reuocabit, ac considerantes quod olim præfatus Lodouicus fœlicis recordationis Gregorio Papa Vndecimo prædecessori nostro super hoc humiliter supplicauit, præmissis & aliis rationabilibus causis in ti, huiusmodi tuis in hac parte supplicationibus inclinati, te a quacumque regulari obseruantia ad quam ex Professione prædicta aut mora quam in præfato Monasterio vt præmittitur fecisse dignosceris, quomodolibet adstrictus existis, ex Apostolicæ potestatis plenitudine per præsentes absoluimus, tibi nihilominus concedentes, quod Comitatus, Ducatus, & quæcumque alia temporalia dominia quæ ex successione, vel alias iusto titulo contingent, & pertinebunt in posterum, ac Regnum ipsum si tibi legitime debeatur, recipere, obtinere, regere, ac etiam gubernare perinde libere & licite valeas, ac si in dicto Cistercienſi ordine Professionem regularem minime emisisses, nullamque in eisdem Monasteriis, vel eorum altero moram traxisses, constitutionibus Apostolicis, nec non statutis, consuetudinibus. Monasteriorum, & ordinum prædictorum iuramento, confirmatione Apostolica, vel quacumque firmitate alia roboratis contrariis non obstantibus quibuscumque. Nulli ergo omnino Hominum liceat hanc paginam nostræ absolutionis, & concessionis infringere, vel ei ausu temerario contraire. Si quis autem hoc attentare præsumpserit, indignationem Omnipotentis Dei, & beatorum Petri, & Pauli Apostolorum eius se nouerit incursurum.* DATVM AVENIONI *Decimo sepimo Kalendas Octobris, Pontificatus nostri Anno Quarto.*

C.
C.
C.
C.

Crescentius.

N. GILBERTIN. N

Behold heere the Princes obedience, to yield himselfe in *Auignion*, and make a scond voyage into *Poland*.

CLEMENS *Episcopus Seruus Seruorum Dei. Dilecto filio Voladislao de Polonia Monacho Monasterij sancti Benigni de Diuione Ordinis sancti Benedicti Lingonensis Diocæsis, Salutem, & Apostolicam Benedictionem. Cum pro nonnullis nostris, & Romanæ Ecclesiæ negotys tua presentia sit nobis plurimum oportuna, presentium tibi tenore mandamus quatinus receptis præsentibus ad præsentiam nostram personaliter te trasferre procures, etiam si electus filius Abbas Monasterij sancti Benigni de Diuione Ordinis sancti Benedicti Lingonensis Diocæsis, aut aliquis alius Superior tuus licentiam super hoc tibi duxerit denegandam.* DATVM *Auenioni secundo Nonas Iulij, Pontificatus nostri Anno Quarto.*

Sealed in Lead, on Strings of Silke Yellow and Red.

B. DE CVRIA CALVETI.

The Hiſtory of this Prince, is (as other of the ſame nature are) a Mirrour or depicted Table of humaine inconſtancie: whereto Great men are a thouſand times more ſubiect, then thoſe that are made of meaner temper, that climbe not, but walke contentedly on plaine ground.

After the death of *Cazimire* the Great:

XXII. *Lewis* King of *Hungarie*, his Nephew, by reaſon of Queene *Elizabeth*, Siſter to the ſaid *Cazimire*, was Sacred King of *Poland* in the Cathedrall Church of *Craconia*, the ſame yeare as *Cazimire* the Great, his Vnckle died, the Seauenteenth day of Nouember, by the Archbiſhop of *Gueſna*. Hee reigned Twelue yeares, and died in *Anno* One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and two, leauing behinde him but two Daughters:

Maria; And
Haduiga.

After his death, there happened *Interregnum* in *Poland*, the *Polonian* Barons being deuided into three ſeuerall heads by themſelues: the firſt whereof fauoured the cauſe of *Voladiſlaus* the *White* (as wee haue already ſaid) but that ſide found it ſelfe to bee the weakeſt. An other ſide would needs mount to the Kingdome *Sigiſmond*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*; who had eſpouſed *Mary* of *Poland* and *Hungarie*, Eldeſt Daughter to King *Lewes*. And the Lords of the third ſide, were affected to the youngeſt Daughter *Heduiga*, whom the ſaid King *Lewes* had promiſed in mariage to *William*, (Sonne to *Leopolde*, Duke of *Auſtria*, as we haue formerly related to you) whom he had deſigned for King of *Polonia*, and entreated the *Palatines* of *Polonia* Kingdome, to receiue him as their King. Which they would not doe, as fearing not to finde ſufficient ſupporte from his houſe, to ſhield and defend them from their enemies. Neuertheleſſe, it fell out, that this third part preuailed; becauſe the *Palatines* (aſſembled at *Siradia*) reſolued to take for their Queene

Heduiga, for whom they ſent (within a while after) into *Hungarie*, to demaund her of the Queene her mother. According to this reſolution at the Generall Tearmes, the Princes was conducted to *Poland* by *Demetrius*, Archbiſhop of *Strigonia*, and Cardinall with the title of foure Crownes; by *John* Archbiſhop of *Chanadia*, and many other great Lords of *Hungaria*: Shee was Sacred and Crowned at *Craconia* in the Moneth of October, One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and foure, by the Archbiſhop of *Gueſna Bozenta*, and gouerned (for ſome time) the Kingdome of *Poland* her ſelfe alone. King *Lewes* her Father had aſſured her to *William* of *Auſtria* to whom ſhe bare great affection: but the *Polonians* did not thinke well of the matche, and began to contemne the Gouernement of their Princeſſe: becauſe all men (euen by naturall inſtinct as it were) doe ill endure the commaund of a woman. For, they will be commaunded by their like, and not by a woman; whom all Lawes, both diuine and humaine, haue ſubiected to Man.

In the time of this diſcontent, *Iaiellon*, the great Duke of *Lithuania*, ſent his Brethren as Ambaſſadours into *Poland*, to preſent and offer himſelfe and his eſtates to the *Polanders* and their Queene; with Couenants and Conditions, to abiure Idolatry, and hee and his people to embrace the Chriſtian Religion, vniting alſo inſeparably (for euer after) to the Crowne of *Poland*, the great Dukedome of *Lithuania*, and the neighbouring Prouinces vnder his obedience.

Lithuania, is a Prouince of very long and large extendure, which hath limittes and confines *Maſſouia*, *Pruſſia* and *Samogitia*: On the Eaſt ſide it is bounded with

with *Moscouia*, and on the South with *Roxolania*: her Capitall and Metropolitane Citty is *Vilna*, the Bishops See. All the Regions are seated vnder the North Starre, which is the Pole Artick. We formerly spake, concerning the mariage of the King of *Poland Cazimire* the Great, to the Daughter of *Gedimin*, the Great Duke of *Lithuania*, who left Seauen Children, the Eldest whereof named

Olgerdo, was Father to
Iagellon,
Skirgello,
Koribut,
Vigunt; And
Borziſoh.

Who were Ambassadours for their Eldest Brother *Iagellon*, to the *Polonians* & their Queene *Anna*, to whom they came at *Craconia*, where being instructed and Catechised; he was with his Brethren Baptized in the Cathedrall Church of *Cracouia*, the Foureteenth day of February, *Anno*, One thousand three hundred foureſcore and sixe, by the Archbishop of *Gneſna Bozenta*, and held at the Font by *John* Bishop of *Cracouia*, the mariage being sollemnized the same day. *Iagellon* at his Baptisme was named *Ladiſlaus*, and his three Brethren Baptized with him, called in their Idolatry *Skirgello*, *Koribut* and *Vigunt*, were Christened, and named at the Font of Baptisme *Boleſlaus*, *Cazimire* and *Alexander*. In this manner were Kings of *Poland*

XXIII. *Ladiſlaus*, Sixt of the name, Sirnamed *Iagellon*, and his Queene & Wife *Heduiga*, or *Auoya*.

Who in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred foureſcore and Seauen, causſed the *Lithuanians* to be Baptized, and built the Cathedrall Church of *Vilna*, in the very same place, where the Idolatrous *Lithuanians* maintained and worshipped the Fire, which they called Sacred. Queene *Heduiga* dying in Childebed, *Ladiſlaus* tooke in second mariage, *Anne*, Daughter to *William* Count of *Cilia*, and the youngeſt Daughter of *Cazimire* the Great, King of *Poland*: which mariage was celebrated at *Cracouia* in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred. And the same yeare he Instituted the *Vniuerſity* of *Cracouia*, causing Professours and Doctours Regents to come thither, from that of Prage in *Bohemia*.

By his second Wife he had a Daughter, named

Heduiga, Wife to *Frederick*, Eldest Son to *Frederick*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, Burgraue of *Nuremberg*.

Ladiſlaus in third mariage espouſed *Elizabeth*, Daughter to a *Palatine* of *Poland*, by whom he had no issue: but being maried the fourth time, he had Sophia, Daughter to *Andrewe* of *Kiouia*, whom he maried in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred twenty two, and in this mariage had three Sonnes.

Ladiſlaus, after King,
Cazimire, dying an Infant; And an other
Cazimire, Gouernour of *Lithuania*.

Ladiſlaus died full of yeares, in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred thirty and foure, hauing reigned Two and fifty yeares. He deuided the Armes of *Poland* with them of *Lithuania*, which are *De Gueules au Chevalier armé d'Argent, a la rondele d'Azur chargé d'vn Croix Patriarchale d'Or*: Which the Kings of *Poland* haue retained to this present.

XXIIII. *Ladiſlaus*, Seauenth of the name, came to the Crowne of *Poland* by the death of his Father *Ladiſlaus Iagellon*: he was likewise elected King of *Hungarie*. Hauing assembled a puissant Army, he would make warre vpon the Turke, and passing *Romania*, he came into *Macedon*, where he fought a furious Battaile against the Turke, whereof he had the honour and victory, returning laden with many spoyles, In the tenth yeare of his Reigne, he would aduenture vpon the Turke againe, and went to besiedge *Nicopolis*, called *Schilltath*, the Metropolitane Citty of *Bulgaria*, where he met with the Turke (who had foure times more men then he) at *Varna*: but was ouerthrowne by the Turkes in the yeare of Grace, 1444, in the one and thirtieth yeare of his Age, the Fourth of his Reigne in *Hungarie*, and tenth in the Kingdome of *Poland*.

After the Battaile hee could not be found either dead or a liue, for some haue written, that both his Horse and He were swallowed vp together in the Sea. But others say, that sauing himselfe by the helpe of his Spurres, hee went to spend

spend the rest of his dayes disguised like a Pilgrim, wandring thorow the World: and that hee dyed at *Ieruſalem*, or else at Saint *James* of *Compoſtella*. But howsoeuer it was, hee dyed without Children: so that his Brother

XXV. *Cazimire*, Fourth of the Name, Gouernour of *Lithuania*, was King of *Poland*, Crowned in the yeere of Grace, 1447. the 25. day of June. In the yeere 1453. he tooke to Wife *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Albert*, King of the *Romans*, of *Bohemia*, and *Hungarie*, Archduke of *Austria*: by whom hee had sixe Sonnes, and seuen Daughters.

The Sonnes were,

Ladiſlaus, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, Husband to Madame *Anne* of *France*.
John Albert,
Alexander,
Sigismond, sur named the Great, } All three Kings of *Poland*.
Cazimire, deceasing young; and
Frederick, Archbishop of *Gneſna*, Bishop of *Cracouia*, and Cardinal of *Poland*.

Concerning the Daughters, the eldest, named

Heduiga, was married to *George*, Duke of *Bauaria*.

Sophia was Wife to *Frederick*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*.

Anne, wife to *Bogeſlaus*, Duke of *Stetina*.

Barbara, Wife to *George*, Marqueſſe of *Misnia*.

Elizabeth, wife to the Duke of *Leginis*.

Iane
And } Both dying vnmaried.
Margaret

King *Cazimire* died of the Tisick, in the yeare of Grace, 1492. the 46. of his Reigne, and 81. of his Age.

His Second Sonne

XXVI. *John Albert* succeeded him in the Kingdome of *Poland*, Crowned the 27. day of *August*, in the yeare of his Fathers deceasse, and Reigning but nine yeares, died of an *Apoplexi*, in the yeare, 1501. He had for succeſſour his brother

XXVII. *Alexander*, Sacred & Crowned King of *Poland* by the Cardinall *Frederick* his Brother the 12. of December in the said yeare 501. His Reigne was of short continuance, and full of affliction to him, by reason he was falne into a long, lingring and incurable disease, and died without issue at *Vilna* in *Lithuania* the 19. day of August 506. the fift yeare of his Reigne; And then succeeded after him the Duke of *Glogonia*, his Brother

XXVIII. *Sigiſmond*, called the *Great*, elected King of *Poland* the Eighth day of December, in the said yeare, 506. Sacred and Crowned the 24. day of Ianuary following. He was sirnamed the *Great*, because he was endued with all those vertues, which make a Prince affected of his Subiects. He was married two seuerall times, his first wife was *Barbara*, Daughter to Count *Stephen*, Palatine of *Transſiluania*, and in this mariage was borne their only Daughter

Heduiga, wife to the Electour *Ioachim*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*.

In second Mariage he espouſed *Bonna* of *Millayne*, Daughter to *John Galeazzo Sforza*, Duke of *Millayne*, and *Isabell* of *Arragon*, with whom hee liued Thirty yeares, and by her had foure Daughters, and one Sonne.

The Daughters were

Elizabeth, Wife to *John* or *Ianuſius*, King of *Hungarie*.
Sophia,
Anne, Wife to *John*, King of *Sweden*: and in this Marriage, was borne *Sigiſmond*, Third of the Name, King of *Poland*. And
Katherine.

The Sonne was named

Sigiſmond, King of *Poland*, Second of the Name.

Sigiſmond the Great died aged foureſcore and two yeeres (hauing reigned fortie and two) in the yeere of Grace, 1548. the first day of Aprill: after whom succeeded his oncly Sonne.

XXIX. *Sigiſmond Auguſtus*, the nine and twentieth King of *Poland*, being aged tenne yeeres, and so Sacred, and Crowned in the life time of his Father; with whom hee reigned eighteene yeeres; and alone, foure and twentie yeeres. Hee had three Wiues: as namely, *Elizabeth* of *Auſtria*, eldest Daughter to the Emperour *Ferdinand*, King of *Hungarie* and of *Bohemia*, Brother to the Emperour *Charles* the Fift. The Second, was *Barbara de Radzille*, Daughter to a Count Palatine of *Poland*. And the last, was *Katherine* of *Auſtria*, Sister of his first Wife: but by them all three, hee had not any Issue. Hee died the seuenth day of July, 1572.

His sickenesse hauing beene of very long continuance, and iudged incurable, King *Charles* the ninth, and the Queene mother *Katharine de Medicis*, sent into *Poland*, *Iohn Iacques de Monluc*, Lord of *Balagny* (made Marshall of *France* in the yeare foureſcore and fourteene) to sound the Lords of *Poland*, and to worke so in the matter of Election, that fauour might be afforded for *Monsieur Alexander* of *France*, Duke of *Anion*, and brother to the King. There were many Princes, that aspired to this Election, as namely:

Princes that aspired to the Election of *Poland*.

Monsieur, Brother to the King.

The Archduke *Ernestus* (Sonne to the Emperour *Maximilian*) aged twelue or Thirteene yeares.

Sigismond, Sonne to *Iohn*, King of *Sweden*, and *Anne*, Daughter of *Poland*, aged but eight yeeres onely.

Basilius Ioannida, Great Duke of *Moscouia*.

The Duke of *Saxonie*.

The Duke of *Prussia*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourge*.

And the *Waynode* of *Transyluania*.

Ambaſſadors sent into *Poland* from the Chriſtian Princes and the Turke.

At the Assembly held of the Generall Tearmes, begun first at *Varsouia* the tenth day of Aprill, and afterward continued at *Plosko*; the Princes of Christendome, and the Great Turke also, sent thither their Ambassadours. Pope *Gregorie* the thirteenth then sitting, sent thither as his Ambassadour the Cardinall *Commendon*: He that came from the Emperour, was *Dom Guillaume des Vrsins*, Lord of *Reemsbergue*: The King sent thither *Iohn de Monluc*, Bishop of *Valencia*, and *Guy de Sainct Gelais*, Lord of *Lanſac*, Knight of the Order, and Knight of Honor to the Queene Mother. The King of *Spaine*, *Dom Philip* the second, had there for his Ambassadour *Dom Pedro Fazardo*, Marqueſſe *de Veles*: And the Great Turke sent thither one of his *Chaus*, with his Chiefe Physician: who were heard alone in the Assembly of the *Polanders*, to whom they said, that the Great Turke their Maister sent to let them know, that of the Pretenders to their Kingdome, there was not any one, whom he thought worthier to be accepted, then the Prince of France.

At the beginning of the Assembly at *Varsouia*, the Ambassador for *Spaine* demanded Precedency for the King his Master, against him for *France*, as wel in the Church as in the publique (as we haue shown in our second Booke, fol. 293.) And that to these ends he had audience before them from the Pope and the Emperour, & before them for *France*. The Lords of *Poland* adiudged yet the Precedency to the King, so that his Ambassadors had audience next to them from the Pope, & the Emperor *Maximilian* the second, and he from *Spaine*, who was admitted to speake next after them for *France*, not brooking any rebuke before so notable an Assembly of the Princes of Christendome, left off his Ambassage, and returned backe from *Poland*.

Consideration of the Ambaſſadors condition.

The qualities of these Ambassadors were commendable; as well in regard of their Masters, the most Illustrious Princes of Christendome; as of their own Houses in particuler. That of the *Vrsines* is knowne as well in *France*, as in *Germanie* and *Italie*, of whence they are originally descended, both of *Naples* & of *Rome du Mont Iourdain*. As for them of *France*, they were brought thither by one of their Vnckles, *Messire Neapolin des Vrsins*, Bishop of *Mentz*. The first was *Peter Iuuenall des Vrsins*, Father to

Concerning the defect of the *Vrſines*.

Iohn Iuuenall des Vrsins, Aduocate in the Parliament, and *Garde de la Preuoste des Marchans*, for King *Charles* the sixt; afterward Attorney Generall in the Parliament of *Paris*, and Chancellour to the *Dauphine Charles* the seauenth. Which *Iohn Iuuenal* was Father to *Messire Iohn Iuuenall des Vrsins*, first Councellor, & Maister of the Requests to the said *Dauphine Charles* the seauenth, afterward King; and afterward Attorney Generall in the Parliament of *Paris* transferred to *Poictiers*; next Bishop of *Beauuais*, of *Laon*, & finally Archbishop of *Rheimes*, prime Peere of *France*: And of *Peter Iuuenall des Vrsins*, Patriarch of *Antioch*: Of *William Iuuenall des Vrsins*, Baron of *Trainel* in *Champaigne*, Chancellor of *France*. In the Church of *Paris*, in the Chappell of the *Vrsins*, is to be seene the Genealogie of the said *Vrsines*, on a great Table, fastened to the wall on the right hand, with those Armes which we haue obserued in the *Order of the Holy Ghost*. Armes which *Volateranus* in his *Philologia* writeth, to haue bin giuen by the Senate and people of *Rome*, to *Primienus* and *Vrsinus*, Sons of *Caius Vrsinus*, Captain of *Spoletum*.

Now,

Now, as concerning the House of *Monluc*, which commeth from *Condomois* in *Gascogne*; it hath produced a great number of valliant Captaines and learned Prelates: among whom was *Iohn de Monluc*, Bishop of *Valencia*, the best speaking man of all the Prelates in his time. He was brother to *Blaise de Monluc*, who hath sufficiently described himselfe (and in most liuely coullers) in his succinct and sweete Commentaries, written with his owne hand, euen as if he had fought like to an other *Cæsar*. He was also (for his valiancy) made Knight of the Order, and Marshall of *France* by King *Henry* the Third, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred threeſcore and foureteene, at his returne from *Poland*.

Of the Family of *Monluc*.

The Armes of this House are *D'Azur a vn Loup rampant d'Or, Eſcartele d'Or a vn Tourteau de Gueules*: as I haue seene at Saint *Peters* of Condome, in the Funerall hearding of the Church, for buriying the said Bishop of *Valencia*, and Marshall *Monluc*. Which *Blaise de Monluc* in the last quarter of his Armes, in stead of a dogge or a three-Wolfe, placed a Birch or three-Wolfe of Gold, which are the Armes of the Citty of *Siena*, and which the people thereof tooke, to keepe in memorie the braue defence of the Siedge, which the Emperour *Charles* the Fift had laid thereto, engirding it with all his forces. All those of his defence, haue still retained the said Birch-Wolfe in the last quarter of their Armes. *Iames de Monluc*, Lord of *Balagny*, Prince of *Carbonay*, made Marshall of *France* by King *Henry* the Great, bare aboue all his Armes (such as *Blaise de Monluc* his Vnckle did) those of *Cambray*, which are *D'Or a trois Lyons leans paſſants d'Azur coronnez de meſme, euglez & Linguez de Gueules*. This was the same Lord of *Balagny*, that began the negotiation of *Poland*, for *Monsieur Alexander Henry* of *France*.

The Armes of *Monluc*.

The Armes of *Siena* in *Italie*.

The House of Saint *Gelais*, is issued of the Auncient and Illustrious House of *Lusignan*, the roote and stock of so many Emperours and Kings of *Ierusalem*, *Cypres* and of *Armenie*, as also of Constables of *France*. *Ils portent Eſcartele Le Premier & Quatrieſme de Cinq pointz d'Azur, equipolez a Quatre d'Argent. Au Second & Troiſieſme d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules, coronne d'Or. Pour tenants et ſupports deux Griffons d'Or, & pour Cimier pellaſina*: as wee haue formerly noated, in the Taste of the *Knights of the Order of the Holy-Ghost*.

Concerning the Famous House of *Lusignan*.

As concerning that of *Fazardo*, it is very highly renowned in *Spayne*, in the Kingdome of *Murcia*. The first dwelling of them of that Sirname, was in the Kingdome of *Galicia*, in the City of *Sancta Maria de Hertigueira*, that is to say of *Hortia*. And therefore they tooke Armes speaking thereof, and answering to the place of their auncient Mannour, to wit. *Trois tiges de Hortie de Synople en Champ d'Or, chaqueige ayant ſept fueilles, plantees en eſtiences ſur trois Roches en mottes de Terre, ſortans de ſix ondes d'Argent, & d'Azur en pointe*.

The descent of the House of *Fazardo*.

The first of this Linage was the Counte *Dom Roderigo de Romaes*, Lord of *Monterroſo* and *Gallicia*, who trauayling in the world, brought out of *England* a Princesse of the Royall House of *England*, with whom he came to dwell at *Sancta Maria de la Hortis*, the Princesse being named *Milia*. This Coun *Dom Roderigo* was Sonne to the Counte *Dom Raimond*, Son to the King of *Leon Froila*. Of this mariage of *Roderigo* and *Milia*, descended Houses and Families bearing sundry Sirnames, as of *Fazardo*, *Zuera*, *Bahamon de Gallego*, *Monterroſo*, *Xutico*, *Segnorino*, and of *Lugo*, all which beare the Armes of the *Hertiaes* formerly emblazoned; except the *Bahamondes*, who to conſerue the memory of their Mother Princesse of *England*: *Portorent d'Azur à vne M. d'Or, Coronne de meſme, a la Bordure de Gueules, Orlee d'Or, charge de ſept Perſſons d'Argent*.

Dom Roderigo de Romaes and his armes.

Houses descended of the said *Roderigo* and *Milia*.

After the Battaile *Des Naues de Tolsa*, the most part of these Families changed their Armes, to make knowne, that they were present at a day of so great Honour. Those of *Gallego*, retained still the *Hertiaes* Armes, and (in time) tooke againe the Sirname of *Fazardo*, as being that of the eldest House. Because *Don Diego Perez de Gallego*, Husband to *Eſtenaueta de Bahabon*, had a Sonne named

Most of these Noble Families presēt at the Battaile of *Tolsa*.

Suarez Dias Gallego, Husband to *Degna Ignes Garcia de Sanabria*, and of this mariage was borne *Pedro Garcia de Gallego*, Who had to Wife *Degna Therese Ignez de Maldonado*, Daughter to *Nugno Perez de Maldonado*, and *Degna*

Aldara Fernandez de Chuchukrano: And of this Marriage, issued three Sonnes and foure Daughters: *Iohn de Gallego*, slaine in the Kingdome of *Naples*, at the Battaile giuen by the King of *Sicily*, *Charles* of *Aniou*, against the Infant of *Castile*, *Dom Henry*. The second Sonne, was *Dom Fernand Perez de Gallego*, Great Master of the Order of *Alcantara*: And the third, was *Stephen Perez de Gallego*. The Daughters were, *Ieane Perez de Gallego*, Wife to *Periagnez de Redonda*: *Maiora Perez de Gallego*, Wife to *Ferdinand Arias de Mera*: the third, *Theresa de Gallego* (Wife to *Pero Fernandez de Valuerdo*) who hauing no Issue by him, shee was the second time married to *Gonsalo Lopez de Ribera*. The fourth Daughter, was *Esteueneta Perez de Gallego*, Wife to *Adam Fernandez*, one of the most renowned Knights of *Gallicia*. In this Marriage, was borne *Dom Gonsalo Perez*, Great Master of *Alcantara*, issued from the Count *Dom Pero Fernandez de Traua*, Lord of *Trastamaro*.

The Battaile fought in the Kingdome of *Naples*.

Iohn Gallego (Sonne to *Pero Garcia de Gallego*) slaine, as wee haue said, in the Kingdome of *Naples*, the yeere of Grace, One thousand, two hundred, threescore, and eight, left but one Sonne, aged then but foure yeeres, named *Pero de Gallego*, surnamed *Faiardo*, brought vp by his Vncle *Fernando Perez*, Great Master of *Alcantara*. After whose death, hee made his abiding with his Cousin *Dom Gonsalo Perez*, Great Master of the said Order, who died in the yeere One thousand, three hundred, and twelue.

Pero Gallego, surnamed *Faiardo*.

This *Pero Gallego Faiardo* had to Wife *Dogna Blanche d'Aldana*. And in this Marriage was borne *Iohn Faiardo*: who departing out of *Gallicia*, went into the Realme of *Murcia*, with the Count of *Carrion*, *Dom Iohn Sanchez Emanuel*, when he tooke possession thereof, after the death of the King *Dom Pedro*. Which *Iohn Faiardo* made himselfe famous by the death of fiue *Moores*, whom he slew himselfe with his owne hand, when they fought to hinder his drinking at a Spring, or Fountaine: as also, by the death of a Captaine *Moore*, whom hee ran thorow with his Lance, as hee had layd an ambush for him in a Wood. So, that in true acknowledgement of his Valour and Prowesse, the Count of *Carrion* gaue him the Citie of *Labriche*, and diuers other Lands in *Murcia*. Hee had a Sonne,

The Honourable and Knightly Valour of *Iohn Faiardo*.

Dom Alonso Iuannes Faiardo, who was *Adelantado* of the Kingdome of *Murcia* (vnder the Count *Dom Iohn Sanchez Emanuel*, Generall and Great *Adelantado*) and there hee performed Actions of Wonder, to defend the Lands of his Gouernment against the *Moores* of *Granada*, whom hee vanquished in a fought Battraile at *Lorca*. Hee was Father to *Alphonso Iuannes Faiardo*, and of *Iohn Faiardo*, Source and originall of the Lords of *Lepe* and *Vandonia*, of *Dogna Beatrix*, Wife to *Dom Iohn Martinez de Sumaior*, Commander of *Arauaca*; and of *Pedro Lopez Faiardo*, Commander of *Cuuaca*.

Dom Iohn Sanchez Emanuel, Great *Adelantado* of *Murcia*.

Alphonso Iuannez Faiardo, Sonne to the *Adelantado*, tooke to Wife *Dogna Maria de Quesada*, Daughter to *Pero Viaz de Quesada*, Lord of *Garcies*: of which Marriage, was borne *Iohn Faiardo*, slaine by the *Moores*; and *Pedro Faiardo*, Knight, in the Seruice of the King *Dom Iohn*, Second of that Name, who made him great *Adelantado* of the said Kingdome of *Murcia*; Husband to *Donna Leonora Manriquez*, Daughter of *Dom Roderigo Manriquez*, Great Master of the Order of Saint *Iames*. Of this Marriage issued a Daughter, named *Louisa Faiardo*, married by the Kings Catholique, *Dom Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, and *Isabel* of *Castile*, to *Dom Iohn Chacon*, Great Treasurer of *Castile*, Sonne to *Gonzalo Chacon*, Fauourite of the said Kings. This *Iohn Chacon* made an exchange with the said Kings Catholique, of the Citie of *Carthagena*, for the Lands and Seigneurie of *Velez*. And in this Marriage, was borne *Dom Pedro Faiardo*, the first Marquesse of *Velez*: In the Dignitie whereof, succeeded the Embassadour of *Spaine* (subiect of this Discourse) *Dom Pedro Faiardo*, Marquesse of *Velez*, and of *Molena*, Great *Adelantado* in the Kingdome of *Murcia*, Great Commander of *Leon*, and Great Master *d'Hostel* to the Queene of *Spaine*, Councellor of Estate to King *Philip* the Second, in his Councell of Warre, and held for one of the best iudgement, among all the men of his time.

Iohn Faiardo slaine by the *Moores*.

Dom Pedro Faiardo, first Marquesse of *Velez*.

Returne wee now againe to the Generall Tearmes of *Poland*: whereat, vpon the Day of Pentecost, in the yeere One thousand, fiue hundred, threescore, and thirteene, was elected and proclaymed for their King, *Mounsieur*, the Duke of *Anion*,

XXX. *Henry*,

XXX. *Henry*, Second of the name. On the morrow after this Election, the Posstes departed from *Poland*, who brought these tydings to King *Charles* the Ninth. Which was the cause of raising the Siedge at *Rochell*, and Peace graunted to the Protestants of *France*. Hauing left *Rochell*, and come to *Paris*, in expectation of the Lords from *Poland*: he made his entrance thereinto as King of *Poland*, at the Gate of Saint *Anthony*, about the midst of *September*, in the said yeare Threescore and thirteene. From Saint *Anthonies* Gate, vnder a Canopy of Clothe of Gold, he was conducted to the Church of *Paris*, and from thence to the Castell of the *Louure*, where magnificent Triumphes and Reuelles were prepared. At his entrance were erected many Triumphall Arches, but that which appeared of the best inuention, was a great goodly Shippe (which is the Armes of the Royall Citty of *Paris*, the richest in the World) erected in the midst of Saint *Anthonies* Streete, it being made of admirable greatnesse, Armed with Culuerines, fitted and furnished with Mastes, Sayles, Cables, Tackles and Marriners, Master, Mate and other Officers; as also with many Banners, Streamers, Pennons and Banderoles; made glorious with the Armes of *France* and *Poland*. But those thereto belonging (I meane of *Poland*) emblazoned *D'Argent aux Aigle & Canalier de Sable*, by grosse ignorance in the Herauldes and Kings of Armes, and the Painters of those times: were found to be much misliked, and of very sinister presage by the Lords of *Poland*, the most iudicious among them presaging thereby, that this Royalty would afford them but slender fruite. The outward shape of the Shippe was all of Siluer, and from the Poupe and Prow issued two Fountaines or Conduite pipes of White and Claret wine, with which licquors the *Polanders* and others well pleased themselues. From vnderneath the Shippe, as out of a flowing Sea (as his Maiesty passed along) arose a youth attired like a Maremaide, singing most sweetly, and with an amirable voyce extolling the prowesse of the King of *Poland*, in sundry Sonnets, Roundelayes and Vitelayes, all composed to his Honour, afterward turned into Latine by that learned Poet M. *Iohn d'Aurat*, and imprinted at *Paris*, with all the Ceremonies of the said entrance, In the Moneth of October following, the King of *Poland* departed from *Paris*; being conducted (so farre as to the Citty of *Mentz*) by the King his Brother, the Queene his Wife, Queene Mother, *Monsieur* the Duke of *Alanson*, and the King of *Nauarre*.

Henry of *France* chosen King of *Poland*.

His entrance into *Paris* as King of *Poland*.

A goodly ship and her sumptuous furniture.

CHAP. VI.

Names, Sirnames, Armes and Qualities of Ambassadours from the Kingdome of Poland, *which came to Paris, to guide and conduct thence* Monsieur Alexander *of* France *Duke of* Anion, *elected King of* Poland, *and afterward King of* France, *by the name of King* Henry *the Third.*

Dam Conarky, Bishop of *Posnania*. *Il portoit au premier canton, de Gueules à la Viure d'Argent perie en face. Le second de Gueules à vn Banc (à s'asseoir à l'antique) d'Or, aux acoudoirs de mesme. Le tiers, d'Azur au Donion sommé de trois Tours crenelees d'Or, massonnees de Sable. Et le quart d'Azur au Croissant d'Argent, & dessus vne Estoile de mesme. Sur l'Escu, Mitre d'Argent, & Crosse d'Or.*

Albert Lasky, Palatine of *Siradie*, free Baron of *Liez marck*, *de Gueules au Nauire, & son Mast desarme d'Or, les Proue, & Poupe finissants en Mufles de Lyon de mesme. Tous les Mezals sont tarrez de front.*

Cimier. Nauire & Mast desarmez de mesmes.

Nicolas Firley, *Capitaine* of *Casmirie*. *D'Azur, au Leopard rempant d'Or, coronné de mesme.*

Cimier. Lyon naissant d'Or.

Iohn Herbort, *Castillian* of *Sanocia*, and Captaine of *Primislauia*. *De Gueules a trois testes d'Argent, aux Gardes d'Or, plantees en T Grec, & mouuantes dessous du Chef, & outre de la Pointe, & fichees dedans vne Rondache d'Or mise en Abysme.*

Sans Cimer.

Stanislan Crisky, Castillian of *Racisnia*, and Captaine of *Ebrin*. *D'Azur au Lyon naissant d'Or; couppé d'vne muraille crenelee de cinq pieces de Gueules, massonnee d'Argent.*

Cimier. Vn Lyon naissant, & yssant d'Or.

John Counte of *Thenzin*, Castillean of *Voscime*, Captaine of *Lublin*, and of *Parcomenie D'Argent à l'Aigle esploye de Sable; escartele de Gueules, à la Hache Danoise, que nous disons Manchemal tallee d'Argent. Et sur le tout d'Azur au Lyon Rempant d'Or. Deux Mezauls confrontez. Cimier du premier l'Aigle esploye de Sable; & l'autre als Manche mal tallee d'Argent.*

Iohn Sarro Zamolsky, *Capitaine* of *Belsen*, and *General* of *Zamescrinie*. *De Gueules a trois Lances d'Or, ferrees d'Argent, deux en Sautour, les Poignees en pointe, & la Troisiesme en Pal, la poignee en Chef.*

Cimier. Vn Beuf d'Argent.

John Zboreu, Capitaine of *Eslanerie*. *De Gueules au Fer de Cheual d'Argent, clou de Sable, a la Croix pattee d'Argent en Abysme.*

Cimier. Vne Canne tenant en sin bec vne Ouale d'Or.

Iohn de Tomice Castillian of *Gnesna*.

Nicolas de Tomice.

Andre de Tomice Count of *Porca*, Castilian *de Medierete*, *Capitaine* of *Gnesna*, and of *Valencia*.

Pierre de Tomice. Ces Quatre portent de Gueules, au Banc à l'Antique d'Or, like vnto the Bishop of *Posnia*.

Et sans Cimier.

Alexandre Vrinsky. D'Azur, au Causlier d'Argent, tenant sur le poing droit vn Gerfaut, ou Faucon, de mesmes. Le Second Canton de Gueules, au Lyon rempant d'Or; le Troisiesme de Gueules à la fleur de Lys d'Argent, & le Quart d'Azur à la Teste de Busle, ou de Taureau bouclé d'Or.

Cimier. Le premier Quartier. Et

Nicolas Christophle Radzuil Duke *Dolica de Nesues*, Marshall and Generall of *Lituania*. *Ces Six portent d'Or, à l'Aigle de Sable, Armé, & Langué d'Or: charge sur son premier Canton* (which wee teare of honour) *de trois Cors d'Or Enguichez de Gueules. Le Second de Gueules au Dauphin pasmé tourné d'Azur, & au mitan en d'Argent. Au Tiers, de Gueules au Croissant tourné d'Argent, a vne Croix pattee de mesmes vn Quartier d'Honneur. Et le Quart d'Azur semé de Croix pattees d'Argent, au Manche mal tallee de mesmes.*

Vn Mareschal, celuy du milieu Tarre de sient. Cimier, L'Aigle de Sable.

Le Second, vn Lyon naissant d'Or, Lyon & l'autre tournez; & l'autre pour Cimier L'Aigle naissant d'Or.

The Chancellour of *Poland*, whom we spake of before, among the others aspirers and pretenders to the Kingdome, *Portoit de Synople a Trois fasses perles d'Or en Chef, & vn autre au premier Canton; le Second de Gueules au Manche mal-tale. Le troisiesme de Gueules à la Croix pattee d'Argent au Chef d'Honneur, & demy-fer de Cheual, tout du Chef. Le Quatriesme Pomelé d'Argent clous de Sable; & le Quatriesme & dernier de Synople au Sautoir retrait & Armé d'Or, Poupe & Proue de mesme que dessus.* [illegible]

On the day and Feaste of Pentecoste the yeare following One thousand five hundred, three score and foureteene, King *Charles* the ninth passed out of this life into an other much better, at his Castell *Du Bois de Vincennes*. Newes of his death was carried to the King of *Poland Henry*, by the Counte of *Chemerault*, who departing from *Paris* on the day of Pentecoste, at the ninth houre in the Euening: made such diligent haste, that in riding Post Thirteene dayes, he arriued at *Cracouia*. From whence the King departed secretly, and getting into the Emperours Countries, he trauelled *Vrnolle*, making his magnificent entrance into *Venise*, from whence he went to *Padua*.

By reason of his absence (without any hope of returne, nor any apparance of changing *Dionedes* and *Glaucus*) the Generall Tearmes were called, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand five hundred threescore and fifteene, and Election of a new King to be considered on. Some opinions passed in fauour of the Emperour *Maximillian*,

Second of the name, but others stood for *Stephen Battory*, *Vaiuode* of *Transyluania*. The *Polanders* being disioynted in opinion, became vnited together by the death of *Maximillian*, happening in the yeare fiue hundred threescore and sixteene, so that the Kingdome of *Poland* remained peaceably to the Prince of *Transiluania*. *Stephen Battory* King of *Poland*.

XXXI. *Stephen Bottory*, who espoused the Sister to King *Sigismond Augustus*, the Princesse *Anne* of *Poland*, by whom he had no issue. Afterward, by the death of King *Stephen*, chancing in the yeare Fiue hundred fourescore and seauen, there were many Princes that presented themselues, to be elected King of *Poland*, as namely *The death of Stephen Battory.*

Rodolphe, second of the name Emperour, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*.
The *Vaiuode* of *Transyluania*.
The Cardinall *Bottorie*.
The Duke of *Ferrara*.
The Duke of *Parma*.
The *Palatine Zamolsky*, high Chancellour of *Poland*.
Sigismond of *Sweden*, Sonne to *John*, King of *Sweden*, and the Queene *Anne* of *Poland*, Sister to King *Sigismond Augustus*: And
Maximillian, Archduke of *Austria*, Brother to the Emperour.

The first fiue nominated were put by, and the two last stood for Election; but the contrary part to *Maximillian* preuailed, so that

XXXII. *Sigismond* of *Sweden*, third of the name, was crowned King of *Poland* at *Cracouia*, the seauen and twentieth day of December, in the yeare Fiue hundred fourescore and seauen. And the fiue and twentieth day of Ianuary following, the Archduke *Maximillian* lost the Battaile, wherein he was surprized by the said King *Sigismond*; to whom he was compelled to release and acquit all his pretences to the Kingdome of *Poland*. By a Treatie of Peace, King *Sigismond* tooke to wife *Anne* of *Austria*, Cousine-germaine to the said *Maximillian*. *Sigismond* of Sweden Crowned King of *Poland*.

At what time the Order of *Poland* and of the *White Eagle* was Instituted, and by whom.

L'Ordre de Pologne dict de l'Aigle blanch

NOw, as concerning the *Order of Polonia*, otherwise called *Of the White Eagle*: It was Instituted by the King *La Iettues*, first of the name, Sirnamed *Iokro*; at the marriage of his Sonne *Cazimire* the Great, with *Anne* the Daughter of *Gedimin*, Duke of *Lithuania*, in the Moneth of February, the yeare of Grace One thousand three hundred twenty and fiue.

And because all Kings, Heralds and Pursuiuants of Armes, ought (of meere necessitie, and as an especiall Article of their abilitie) to know the nature of all Creatures, Trees, Plants and Floures, yea and of all things belonging to Nature, and concerned in Armes, from the Royall Eagle, so low as to the Ante, from the huge *Leuiathan* or Whale of the Sea, to the blinde Moale, and from the Ceders of *Lybanus*, to the humble Hisope, that they may yeelde the better answere to Kings and Princes, for emblazoning of apt Armes to newly ennobled Gentlemen. It cannot vary much from our purpose, to touch (as we walke on) the nature and properties of the Eagle. Whereunto we are the more willingly induced, in regard that the Armes of the Dames our Auncestours, Lords *de la Mly-voye in Vermandois* of their owne Race; and our Lady *Rod Audlay*; and of the *Montils* in *Gastinois*, by Alliance of *Genouefue de Lisle* (Daughter to *Raymond de L'Isle*, *Qui portoit d'Argent à deux Lyons passants l'vn sur l'autre de Sable*; And of *Lane le Sommelier*, Lady *de la Chappelle d'Arablay*, *& des Montils*, *Qui portoit d'Or Escartele de Gueulles*) next vnto our Great Grandfather *Conrard Vrne*, a *Germaine* Gentleman, borne in the Citie of *Treuers* (who came to be Hoathold Seruant to King *Lewes*, eleauenth of the name, being then *Daulphine*, after the Battaile of *Busile*, wonne by him against the *Switzers* in the Moneth of August, the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred forty foure) whose Armes are

D Or

Duties incident to concerning all Officers of Armes.

D'Or, à la Croix d'Azur, chargee en Cœur d'vn Croiſſant d'Argent, & Cantonnee de quatre Aigles droicts, & tournez de Sable, Coronnez, Armez, & Lampaſſez de Gueulles, Deux Sauuages pour Supports & Tenants; & pour Cimier, l'Aigle de Sable Coronne, Armé, & Lampaſſé de Gueulles.

It was an auncient Prouerbe vſed among the *Grecians. That the Eagles flight is quite contrary to that of the Partridge; And the Hauke is ſharper ſighted then the Ant.* Likewiſe the *Romaines* held it for an vndoubted Maxime, that

Non generant Aquilæ Columbam.

The excellency of the Aegle beate all other Foules.

The *Greekes* and *Romaines* made vſe of theſe Prouerbs, thereby to expreſſe the excellencie of the Eagle. And the Poet *Euripides*, hath left vs in writing; *That all Birds in generall are Heraulds and Meſſengers of the Gods: but the Eagle is the King, the Truchman and Interpreter of the great God Iupiter.* In like manner, he participateth of the Diuinitie, according to the teſtimony of *Ariſtotle*, in the ſubtiltie of his ſight, beholding the Sunne fixedly; in the ſtrength of his Wings and Tallons; as alſo in diuturnitie of life, by a long and large time of yeares.

Aquilæ maximo honos, maxima & vis.

The blacke Eagle is beyond all other Colours.

And like as among the ſixe ſorts of Eagles, the moſt excellent is that which is the blackeſt in colour: euen ſo the Kings of Armes doe imploy in Armes this Sunnie Creature, with two Mettals, and foure colours, but the richeſt of all other in Blazon is *L'Eſcu d'Or à l'Aigle de Sable*: For the blacke Eagle is aboue all other kindes. He is called by the *Greekes, Meneletos*, and by the *Romaines, Valeria*, of leſſe corpulence then all the other, but endued with valiancie aboue the reſt, and ſinguler pietie towards his yong ones, becauſe he nouriſheth them carefully; being moreouer a Bird altogether truely Royall, peacefull, and without noyſe. *Minima magnitudine, viribus Præcipua, colore nigricans. Sola Aquilarum fœtus ſuos alit; cætera fugant, ſola ſim clangore, ſine murmuratione, conuerſatur in montibus.* Others chaſe away their yong ones, delighting to liue in lowe and waterie places, hunting after Fiſh, and feeding on Carrion. The black Eagle euermore maketh his abiding in the height of Mountaines, where he may come neereſt to the bright beames of the Sunne.

The Eagles proofe of his yong birds.

Our auncient *French* made triall of their Wiues honeſtie, by caſting their yong Infants vpon the Riuer of *Rhine:* the reuenger of a ſoyled marriage bed, as we haue already elſewhere ſaid. Euen ſo in like manner the Royall and Kingly Eagle, approueth his yong Birds by the Sunnes beames, to gaze vpon them with a fixed eye, which if they doe, he nouriſheth them kindely and carefully: but if they turne their heads aſide, then he reieɔteth them, and diſauoweth them to be his. *Pullos ſuos etiamnum implumes percutiens ſubinde cogit aduerſos intueri Solis radios: & ſi conniuentem, & flentem animaduerterit, præcipitat è nido velut adulterinum, & degenerem. Illum cum acies firma contra ſteterit, educat.*

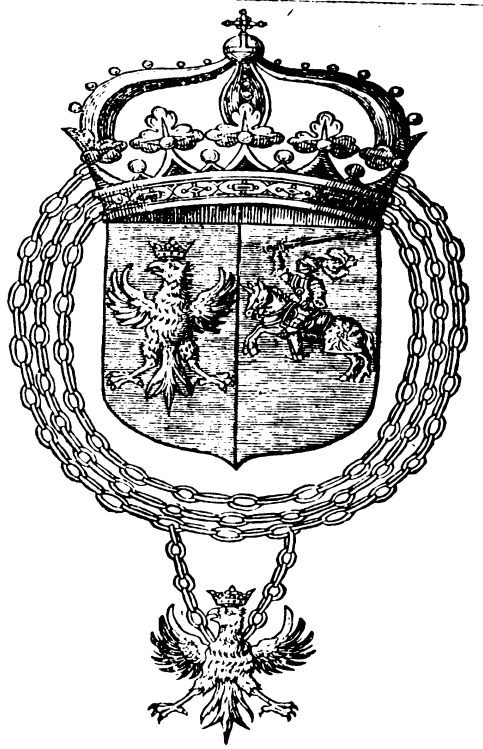
An Eagles knowledge wonderfull.

If a yong Eagle may chance to be ſtolne out of the Neſt, it is no meane matter of wonder, to thinke of the knowledge, which he taketh of him that was his nurſe and foſterer, and which he will be ſure to recompence by hunting, or otherwiſe, as I haue ſeene the proofe thereof by experience, in one brought vp in the Biſhops Houſe of *Menda* in *Geuaudar*. *Homer* writeth of his *Vliſſes*, that being twenty yeares ſpace abſent from his owne Houſe; he could not be knowne, but by his Nurſe and his Dogge. But an Eagle knoweth his nurſing and foſter Father, among an infinite multitude of men: either by his voyce, whereof he taketh notice in ſome ſtrange manner, or by his walking, which he will be ſure to obſerue. This creature is endued with very ſinguler vnderſtanding, and admirable affection towards his Maiſter; being no way inferiour to the Dogge, the Symbole of faithfulneſſe.

A ſtrange Hiſtory of the Eagle of *Seſtos*.

Plinie, in the ſecond Booke and fift Chapter of his Naturall Hiſtory, reporteth meruailes concerning the Eagle of *Seſtos*, nouriſhed from his Neſt by a yong Maide, that kept him to ſport abroad on hunting. This faire Maide deceaſing, was brought to the pile of wood to be burnt, according to the auncient cuſtome obſerued by the *Greekes* and *Romaines*, in the manner of their Funerall Obſequies. The dead Maides body was attired all in white Linnen, ſoft, ſweete and delicate, her Head crowned with a goodly Chaplet of Floures, and her body thickly ſtrewed with Floures of all kindes. The Prieſts and the Inhabitants were cloathed in fine white Linnen Albes, tucked

tucked vp vnder their girdles vpon their hippes, their Heads likewiſe crowned with Floures, bearing branches of Palme & other greene trees in their hands. The body being laid vpon the flaming Pile, perfumed with the pureſt *Arabian* Spices, the Eagle (hauing bin touring aloft all this while, houering and ſinning his faire Wingges ouer the Corps, euen as if he performed ſome Ayne Ceremonie thereto:) At length he deſcended gently downward, and lighted directly on the Damoſels Breſt, where he ſuffered himſelf to be burnt and conſumed, as bearing her faithfull company in death, euen as before he had done in life. *Per celebris eſt apud Seſton urbem Aquilæ gloria. Educatum à virgine retuliſſe gratiam, Aues priùs, mox deinde venatus aggerentem. Defuncta poſtremo in rogum: acceſſum eius miccaſſe ſeſe, & ſimul inſtigraſſe.* Our *French Lucretius* delighteth himſelfe vpon this admirable Hiſtorie (which deſerueth to be painted, after the auncient manner, on the Royall high wayes of the King) in the fift day of his firſt Weeke. Saying, that the Maide being brought to the Pile:



The words of *Plinie* as they are in his Hiſtorie.

.. .. L'Aigle de loing la ſuit
Et t'raſſant par l'air ſes ſanglantes entrailles,
Honore d'vn Conuoy deux triſtes funerailles.
Le funebre Vulcan n'a ſi toſt entamé
A flots s'entreſuiuants le corps de l'Aigle aimé,
Qu'elle iette le ſien, qui tout en ſang diſtille
Plus viſtement qu'vn traict ſur la bruſlante pile:
Et bien qu'il ſoit cent fois, & cent fois repouſſé
Par le baſton ſacré du Preſtre courroucé,
Il cherche toutefois la plus eſpoiſſe flame,
Et chantant doucement vn obſeque à ſa Dame,
Il ſe bruſle ſoy-meſme, & meſle heureuſement
Ses os auec les os aimez ſi cherement.

The Engliſh.

.. .. Farre-off the Eagle followes;
And tearing forth in th'Ayre his bloudy entrailes,
With Conuoye honoreth two ſad Funerals.
No ſooner had his Vulcande-beake made way
For flowing bloudy ſtreames; And euery Spraye
Flaming about the Corps: But the louing Foule
(Lauiſh in blouds expence, life to controule;)
Moſt ſwiftly lights vpon the flaming Pile.
And though th'offended Prieſt ſtriues all this while

To

To beate him thence; yet to the thick'st hot fire
Boldly he gets, and singing his desire
To his lou'd Lady, to fill vp the Quire
There burnes himselfe, and blendeth happily
His bones with hers, that lou'd him tenderly.

Famine sooner killeth Eagles then age.

Plinie in the former alleadged passage hath written; *That Eagles doe sooner dye by famine, then they can by age.* Mens liues are growne to be very short, for their vnthankefulnesse, and lacke of knowing God aright, who hath giuen them their being: for, instead of following his Commandements, they doe the quite contrary, addicting themselues to all vices, so that he which liueth least time in the world, doth commit the lesse offences. Beasts and other Creatures, vncapable of reason, haue longer time of life, with meanes to conserue themselues as long therein, as the price and guerdon of their naturall innocency, so doth *Hesiodus* informe vs in this manner:

Neuf Hommes vid la Corneille criarde,
Le Cerf autant quatre fois vif se garde,
Le Corbeau noir si longuement vieillit
Que de trois Cerfs les vies il emplit;
Et le Phœnix de neuf Corbeaux egale
Les iours.

The same in English.

To nine mens liues attaines the bawling Crowe,
To foure as many liues the Hart doth grow.
The blacke bevde Rauen wins as long a date,
As these Harts fulfill in vtmost fate.
Nine Rauens liues the Phœnix *equalleth*
In length of dayes, &c.

Naturall properties in the Eagle.

The Eagle is likewise of very long life, as approaching neerest to the proprietie of the Phœnix, which reuiueth it selfe, and gaineth new being and subsistance, within the limits of a iust appointed Age; as we haue more at large discourst in our third Booke, in the Tract *Of the memorable Order of the Holy Ghost.* For Saint *Augustine*, (without equall in knowledge and learning) doth instruct vs, that from ten yeares to ten yeares the Eagle reuiueth himselfe, getting new Feathers, bathing himselfe diuers dayes in the Sea, or else in some Spring or Fountaine, onely to humect and moisten his body, to cast his inwards and old feathers, to be newly bedewed and sprinkled with fresh blood, warmed with the ardent heate of the Sunne, the Father and conseruer of naturall heate. So saith the Prophet *Esay*, speaking of good men, tormented in the tepestuous Sea of the world, yet reposing all their trust in God. *Qui sperant in Domino mutabunt fortitudinem, assumerit pennas sicut Aquilæ.*

That which is most discommodious and hurtfull to the Eagle, is the vpper part of his Beake, which so crooketh and intricateth it selfe ouer the nether iawe, as he cannot take in any ordenary sustenance. And that is the reason, why he knocketh, beateth and breaketh this excrescence of his Beake or Hawke like nose, with many strokes and blowes, redoubled against a hard Rocke, as beaten on an Anuile, thereby making it to be new and yong againe. For so say the *Rabbines* and *Masserets*, expounding the 102. Verse of the hundred and third Psalme, speaking of the man that putteth his trust in God. *Renouabitur, sicut Aquilæ, Iuuentus Iusti; Making the* [illegible] *and hope as an Eagle.* His age shall be more greene and flourishing, then the Spring time of him, that placeth his confidence in the decepts of the world

[illegible]

Hereby we may perceiue, how the Eagle helpeth and reuengeth himselfe, and after long Age, when he hath no more strength, to breake the vpper part of his re[illegible] Beake: *Superiore in tantum accrescente rostro, vt aduncitas aperiri non queat, ejus tantum non fame, nec ægritudine, sed fame*, so saith *Aristotle* and *Plinius secundus*. Beside all that hath bin said, this Foule is neuer smitten with thunder and lightning, whereto other Animals are subiect, according to the Naturalists: *Negant enim* [illegible]

Solum hanc alitem fulmine exanimatam. And this was the reason why (according to the Diuiners and Soothsayers of *Tuscanie*) the *Romaines* had the Eagle for their Colonell Ensigne and Cornet, which they carried alone in Warre. The other Standards and Banners of the *Wolfe*, the *Minotaure*, *Horse* and *Boare*, defending the *Corps du Garde* of the *Romaine* Legions; followed the appointment of *Caius Martius*, so saith the same *Plinie*, in the fourth Chapter of his tenth Booke.

The Colonell Ensigne of the Romaines.

God, speaking of himselfe, in a comparison which he made, rather taketh the Eagle, then he would doe any other Bird, promising to the people of *Israel*, that if they would walke in the paths of vertue: *He would couer and beare them to Heauen, as on the wings of an Eagle*, as you may reade in the nineteenth Chapter of *Exodus. Vidistis vos ipsi quæ fecerim Ægyptijs, quomodo portauerim vos super alas Aquilarum, & assumpserim mihi.* So that if there be any one similitude or comparison of excellency, throughout the whole Sacred Scripture: it is most plainely seene, that the Eagle beareth in it, the chiefe and eminent rancke of honour.

The Order of Denmarke, called of the *Elephant*.

CHAP. VII.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Kings of Denmarke.

The reason for the Countries name.

THE great extendure of this Country, which to this present is called *Denmarke*, in regard of *Dan* the first Prince thereof; was by auncient Geographers designed vnder the name of *Chersonesus Cimbrica*, a Peninsula or halfe Island, engirt (for the most part) with *Mare Britannicum* the *Brittish Sea*, and that of *Germanie*, and with the limitrophing firme Land of *Saxonie*. From thence it was that the *Cimbrians* came, with dreadfull multitudes of people, who after they had forradged the fruitfull *Gaules*, and concluding [illegible] performe as much in *Italie*; were ouerthrowne and vanquished by *Caius Marius* the *Romaine* Captaine, neere to *Aix* in *Prouence*. These are the same people, which the Poets name *Cimerians*, and feigne, that their auncient dwelling or biding, was veiled or couered with a darke and obscure night, not being at any time illumined with the Sunne, the worlds bright eye, by being seated vnder the North-Starre, where the Nights are sixe Months wholly, more or lesse, according to the approach or absence of the Sunne. And from thence came the fictions of *Plutoes* Mannour house, and the *Cimerian* Night, more obscure then that of *Ægypt*.

The people called the *Cimbrians*.

Illis Sol nunquam Phaeton sua lumina sparsit
Perpetua super Nox semper tenditur istis.

Diuersitie of names attributed to this Island, and peopling of it.

Some others haue called this halfe Island *Scania*, *Scandinauia*, *Baltica* and *Basilia*, which according to the testimonie of *Ptolomie*) was sometime inhabited by seauen seuerall kindes of People, as namely the *Gothes*, *Lombards*, *Vandales*, *Danes*, *Aroerians* and *Tamans*. Of all which, and the perticularities of these Northerne peoples dwelling, ample discription is made by *Ioannes* and *Olaus Magnus*, Vncle and Nephew, Archbishops of *Vpsala*, and Primates of the Realme of *Gothia*, tearmed *Scandia* in the Histories of the Northerne Regions: As also by *Saxo Grammaticus*, *Albertus Krantzius*, and others in the Historie and Description of the Kingdome of *Denmarke*. A part or parcell whereof is *Iseland*, which some haue taken to be the Ile of *Thyle* or *Thule*, and the same thought by the *Spanish* Poet *Seneca*, to

Iudgement and opinion of Historians.

to be the last, or vtmost of the World: prophetizing in his *Medea*, that which happened in the life time of our Fathers, and hath continued to vs, and so doth dayly, in the discouerie of a new World, and new Lands, farre beyond that of this Isle.

Venient Annis Sæcula seris
Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum laxet
Et ingens pateat tellus
Typhisque nouos detegat Orbes
Nec sit Terris vltima THYLE.

Denmark long time gouerned by Kings.

It is long time since this spacious Prouince hath beene gouerned by Kings, in regard that the most ancient of our Annalists, Saint *Gregorie* of *Tours*, in the third Booke and third Chapter of his Historie of *France* writeth: That a King of the *Danes*, named *Cochilaicus*, about the yeere of Grace, fiue hundred and nineteene, vnder the Reigne of the Sonnes of *Clouis*, our first Christian King, came with a mightie Nauall Armie, and Pyrated on the Coasts of *Austrasia's* Kingdome, robbing there a rich Towne, putting the Inhabitants into slauerie: And that *Theodorick*, vpon the reports of these Tidings, dispatched away presently Prince *Theodobert* his Sonne, who ouercame this Armie, as well by Sea as by Land, tooke and recouered back againe the Bootie, and the Captiues, slew *Cochilaicus* in the field, and put most part of his People to the edge of the Sword: nor had they afterward any desire to forrage the *Gaules*.

Cochilaicus King of *Denmarke* by the Prince *Theodobert*.

His itaque gestis Dani *cum Rege suo nomine* Cochilaico *enecto Nauali per Mare Gallias appetunt, egressique ad Terras, Pagum vnum de Regno Theodorici deuastant, atque captiuant; oneratisque Nauibus tàm de Captiuis, quàm de reliquis spoliis, ad Patriam reuerti cupiunt, sed Rex eorum in litus residebat, donec Naues altum Mare comprehenderent, ipse deinceps sequuturus. Quod cum Theodorico renunciatum fuisset, quod subito Regio eius fuerit ab Exteris deuastata, Theodebertum filium suum in illas partes cum validò Exercitu, ac magno Armorum apparatu direxit; qui interfecto Rege, Hostes Nauali prælio superatos opprimit, omnemque rapinam Terræ restituit.*

Marriages of *France* with *Denmarke*.

Our most Christian Kings haue many times contracted Alliance with them of *Denmarke*. That of King *Philip Augustus*, Second of the Name, called the Conqueror, and Gods-Gift, is very remarkable for the Antiquitie. This great King tooke to his second Wife *Engelberga*, Sister to *Canutus*, King of *Denmarke*, whom he espoused in the Church of *Amiens*, where shee was Crowned by the Cardinall with the faire Hands, *William*, Archbishop of Rheimes, in the yeere of Grace, One thousand, one hundred, fourescore, and thirteene. This illustrious Princesse patiently and sanctimoniously endured an infinite number of bitter griefes and anguishes, at such time as shee was diuorced by our *Augustus*, who yet afterward tooke her againe, at *Soissons*.

The words contained in this Sentence of Diuorce, doe import, that the King was diuorced from her, because shee was his Kinswoman, in the Degree prohibited by the Church for Contract of Marriage: Which sheweth, and plainely approoueth that (before this time) there had been Alliance and Affinitie of Kindred between the Kings of *France* and *Denmarke*, beside Alliances after renewed, according to the Occurrences.

Proofe of long continued Alliances.

I finde, that vnder the Reigne of the most happie, and mirror of Princes in Christendome, Saint *Lewes*, the King of *Denmarke* made him offer, to accompanie him with his Nobilitie, Crossed with the Red-Crosse (after the manner of the *French*) in his Voyage to the Holy Land. Whereupon the King gaue him Safe-conduct, Passport and Defray, for him and his Troupes, thorow the Lands of his obedience: as it is obserued by the Monke *Matthew Paris*, in his Historie of *England*.

To set downe here the Catalogue and List of the Kings of *Denmarke*, would aske a discourse for one of the longest breath to reade. We will therefore satisfie our selues to obserue onely the last Line, which reigneth now at this instant: and that shall be the subiect of our Relation.

The Catalogue of the Kings of *Denmarke*, beginning with the Second Ligne, and continuing *to this present.*

BY the death of *Christopher* Duke of *Bauaria*, King of *Denmarke*, *Sweden* and *Norway*, happening in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred forty and eight.

I. *Christierne*, Count of *Aldembourg* and of *Dalmenhorst*, was crowned King of the said Realmes. He was Sirnamed the *Riche*, as well in regard of many vertues clearely shining in him, as also by the meanes hee had, not onely of his Stocke and Ligne, but likewise the accession of his Kingdomes. His Reigne continued foure and thirty yeares, and he died in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred fourescore and one. By *Dorothie* his wife, daughter to a Prince of *Russia*, he left three Sonnes and one Daughter

Olaus, that is *Olaus*, who died yong.

Iohn, Elected and Crowned King of *Denmarke*: And

Fredericke, Duke of *Schleswicke*, and of *Halstatia*:

The Daughter was

Margaret, wife to the King of *Scotland*, *James* third of the name.

Christierne the *Riche*, in his owne life-time caused to be Crowned King of *Denmarke*, his eldest Sonne

II. *Iohn*, to whom he espoused *Christiana*, Daughter to *Ernestus*, Duke of *Saxone*, Prince Electour of the Empire, in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred fourescore and eighteene, and in this marriage was borne a Sonne, named

III. *Christierne*, second of the name, who tooke to wife *Isabel* of *Castile*, Sister to the Emperour *Charles* the fift. For his tyranny he was deprined of those Kingdomes, which his Grandfather and Father had held, and himselfe expulsed out of *Denmarke* by his Brother

IIII. *Fredericke*, formerly Duke of *Schleswicke* and *Halstatia*, who was Crowned King of *Denmarke*, and caused to be put to death in prison at *Sundebourg* in *Halstatia* his Brother King *Christierne* the second; who by his wife *Isabel* of *Castile* had two Daughters, to wit:

Dorothie, wife to *Fredericke* Duke of *Bauaria*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*; And

Christiana, wife to *Anthony*, Duke of *Lorraine*.

Now *Fredericke* being dead in the yeare of Grace One thousand fiue hundred thirty and three, *Fredericke* Duke of *Bauaria*, pretending that the Kingdome of *Denmarke* belonged to him, in the right of *Dorothie* his wife, eldest Daughter to *Christierne* the second, and being ayded by the Emperour *Charles* the fift, Brother to the Mother of the said *Dorothie*; powerfully entred into *Denmarke*, but was thence expelled and driuen by the Lords of the Countrie, who elected for their King the very yongest Sonne of King *Fredericke*, who neuertheless could not be Crowned, because he was hindered therein by his eldest Brother

V. *Christierne*, third of the name, who being assisted by *Gustane*, King of *Sweden*, obtained the Kingdome of *Denmarke*. He had to wife *Dorothie*, Daughter to *Magnus*, Duke of the lower *Saxonie*, and by her he had

VI. *Fredericke*, second of the name, Father to *Anne*, Queene of *Great Bretaigne*: And to

VII. *Christierne*, fourth of the name, who Royally reigneth at this present.

But returne we now againe to *Christierne*, first of the name, called the *Rich*.

Valdemar, King of *Denmark*, deceasing in the yeare One thousand three hundred threescore and fifteene: the Kingdome of *Denmarke* fell to the Female kinde, in the person of

Margaret, the onely Daughter of *Valdemar*, who tooke to be her Husband *Aquine*, King of *Norway*; by whom she had one onely Sonne named *Olaus*, who dyed (without Children) in the life time of his Mother, the yeare of Grace One thousand three hundred fourescore and seauen. This Woman (during her life time) Gouerned the Realms of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, a Kingdome which shee had conquered (perforce) from the

Son to *Albert* Duke of *Mekelbourg*, whom she vanquished in a foughten Battaile, and made him her war prisoner for the space of seauen years; vntill such time as he redeemed himselfe, by paying a great summe of money for his ransome. This couragious Queen, seeing her selfe to be without any issue, adopted as her Son

Ericke or *Edricke*, Duke of *Pomerania*, Crowned King of *Denmarke*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, according to the will of his putatiue Mother. He dying without Children, the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred thirtie and nine; his Nephew, Son to his Sister:

Christopher, Duke of *Bauaria*, was Crowned King of *Denmarke*, as already we haue said. And by his death in the yeare formerly noated, not leauing any issue by *Dorothie* his wife, Daughter to *Iohn*, Marquesse of *Brandenbourge*; the Crowne of *Denmarke* changed againe, to a new race or Familie.

Iohn Count of *Aldemborg* and *Dalmenhorst*, had a Sonne named *Fredericke*, who held those two Counties by the death of his Father. *Fredericke* left *Theodoricke*, who espoused *Margaret*, the sole & onely heire to *Adolphe*, Duke of *Schlesswicke* and *Halsatia*, and of this marriage was borne

Christierne, first of the name, called the *Rich*, who carried these titles and qualities. *Christierne, par la grace de Dieu, Roy de Dannemarc, de Suede, Nordwege, & de Gothie: Duke de Schlesswick, d'Holsace, de Stormar, & de Ditmarson, Comte d'Aldembourg & de Dalmenhorst. Christierne, by the Grace of God King of Denmarke, of Sweden, Norway and Gothia; Duke of Schlesswicke, of Halsacia, of Stormar, and of Ditmarson, Count of Aldemburg, and of Dalmenhorst*: Titles which the King his Successors, and descended of his Lign, haue still retained.

L'Ordre de Dannemarke Dict de l'Elephant.

The Institution of the Order of *Denmarke*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred *threescore and eighteene, by* Christierne, *first* of the name, King of *Denmarke, Norway* and *Sweden, &c.*

CHAP. VIII.

HAuing so good occasion, to speake againe of this worthy Prince *Christierne*, first of the name; let me entreate you to take notice, that this is the same man, who Instituted *The Order of Denmarke*, called *Of the Elephant*, vnder inuocation of the Virgin *Mary*, the Mother of God; in regard that among the Knights of this *Order*, none could be admitted, but such as were Senators of the Kingdome. Each man wore about his necke a faire Collar or Chaine of Gold, at the end whereof (directly on the breast) hung an Elephant of Gold, enamelled with white; his backe couered with a Castle of Siluer, Masonned blacke, & the Elephant standing on a greene Hillocke, composed of Floures of sundry colours.

None but Senators of the Kingdome admitted into the Order.

The first Chapter of this *Order of Denmarke*, was celebrated in the Metropolitane Church of *Lunde*, the Capitall Citie of the Kingdome, and at the Mariage of *Iohn* Sonne to the said King *Christierne*, with the Daughter of *Ernestus*, Duke of *Saxonie*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred threescore and eighteene. And since that time, this Order hath bin conferred by the Kings of *Denmarke*, Successors to *Christierne* the first; on diuers Princes, and Senators of the Kingdome, vpon the dayes of their Coronation.

The reason of the first Chapters Celebration

We haue in a precedent Chapter, as matter ministred occasion, obserued some properties of the Elephant; as his deuotion, piety & equity, with a further remembrance that (among the *Aegyptians*) he was the Symbole and Hieroglyphicke of Iustice. Whereto we may adde his prouidence and wisedome, because by hauing his blood cold and melancholly; he is held to be the very wisest of all other Beasts. According to the ordenary Aphorisme, which affirmeth *Drought* and *Coldnesse, to be the causes of a good spirit*. In the *Indiaes*, where Elephants goe in troupes together, they

they haue this discretion and prouidence; that they giue the conduct of all the rest, to the most auncient among them, and he that is the oldest next to him, commeth in the rere, or lagge of all, as we vse to say; to firme and close vp the whole troupe. *Elephanti gregatim ingrediuntur, ducit agmen maximus natu.* Of the Elephants in *Media*.



Of the Elephant addicted to Loue.

This Beast is also a Symbole of Loue, whereto he is meruailously subiect: witnesse the Hearbe-woman or Nosegay-maker of *Alexandria*; the *Mesmirian* of *Sarragossa* in *Scilie*; and the Perfumeresse, whereof *Plinie* maketh mention in the fift Chapter in the eight Booke of his Naturall Historie. It is a Creature very capable of any instruction, and when generall wonder was made at *Paris*, to see the lauish expences bestowne on such as taught Horses to Dance, after the cadence of tunes distinguished by Trompets; yet I could neuer sufficiently admire the readinesse of Elephants, dauncing in the *Romaine* Theaters, whereof *Plutarch* maketh ample relation, in a Treatise which hee wrote, concerning what Creatures were the most aduised and considerate; those of the Land, or them of the Water. He is also the noate of valiantie and Militarie aptnesse, and therefore the *Romaines* prohibited the people of *Greece* and *Asia*, vnder their obedience; from making any Nauall Armies, and preparing Elephants to Warre. *Natos habere, & Elephantos alere Romani deuicti populis prohibeant*: So saith the same *Plinie*.

Now, as concerning the Armes of the Kings of *Denmarke*, they haue alwayes carried *D'Or seme de Cœurs de Gueulles à trois Leopards de Synople*. Armes common to the most part of the Polarie and Septentrionall Nations. For the *Normans* which came out of *Norway*, and ioyned (in one body) a Nauall Armie with the *Danes*, to scoure the Coasts and Maritime Townes of the *Gaules*: they bare likewise *De Gueulles à trois Leopards d'Or*, Armes yet retained to this present, by the Kings of *England*. The Armes of the Kings of *Denmarke*.

The Order of Swveden, called of the Name of *Iesus*, or of the *Seraphins*: Instituted in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred thirty & foure; by *Magnus* King of *Sweden*, fourth of the name.

L'Ordre de Suede Dict du Nom de Iesus Ou des Seraphins.

CHAP. IX.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Kings of Sweden.



Sweden, in Latine called *Suetia*, and *Suessia*, but by some *Svevia*, a Kingdome seated vnder the *Arctick Pole*, maketh part of *Scandinauia*, and containeth three seuerall Realmes; which caused the Kings of this leuell continent, to take for Armes *D'Azur à trois Coronnes d'Or*. The first of the said Realms or Kingdoms, is *Sweden* it selfe, the auncient Armes whereof were *Couppe en Bande de Gueulles, & d'Azur à vne Gerbe d'Or, sur le tout*, for her fertility in Corne & Graine. The second is the Kingdome of *Gothia*, deuided into *Gvestregothia*, and *Vuistgothia*. This Kingdome carried *D'Argent à trois Ondes d'Azur en Bande au Lyon rempant de Sable sur le tout*. And the third is that of *Finlandia*, whereto are ioyned *Gronlandia*, *Laponia*, with other frontiering and neighbouring Isles: as likewise are the Prouinces of *Lappia*, *Finmarkia*, *Scrifinia*, *Pilapia*, the high and low *Biarmia*, and other Regions, which are directly seated vnder the North Star, where the dayes and nights are of sixe Moneths durance, fiue, foure, three, two and one, according as hath bin Summarily obserued by *Pedro de Mexia*, in his *Diuersitie of Readings*, and in the *Hexameron* of *Antonio de Torre-quemada*, both of them *Spanish* Gentlemen, who haue abridged what was written by the Archbishops of *Vpsala*, in two great Volumes in Folio, and closely printed.

Three Kingdomes & the Armes belonging anciently to them.

Stockolme the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome

The *Balticke* Sea neighbouring and coasting part of the said Realme of *Sweden*, with the rich port of *Angona*, maketh the King thereof to enrich himselfe, by strange Merchandises. The chiefe and Capitall Citie is *Stockolme*, where the King keepeth his ordenarie abiding, seated within the Sea, according as *Venice* is; and the Metropolitaine is *Vpsala*, the Archbishops See of the Kingdome, which embraced Christian Religion about the yeare of Grace, One thousand, in the time of the Emperour *Henry*, by the often Preaching of the good Bishop *Anscecharus*; and about the yeare One thousand one hundred, *Vpsala* was become a Metropolitaine Church, and the Temple of the *Fayries* (whereof *Saxo Grammaticus*, and the two Archbishops of *Vpsala* doe relate no meane merualles) was dedicated and consecrated to God, in the time of King *Stinkellus*.

Kings succeeded Magnus of Sweden & Gothia

In the yeare One thousand two hundred and fiftie, *Birgerus*, first of the name, was King of *Sweden* and *Gothia*, Father to *Valdemar*, first of the name, and likewise to *Magnus*, who possessed himselfe of those Kingdomes, while his Brother *Valdemar* was in his voyage at *Ierusalem*. *Magnus* was Father to *Birgerus*, second of the name, Father to *Magnus*, second of the name, Father to *Euicus* or *Edvicus*; Father to *Magnus* third of the name: successiuely Kings of *Sweden* and *Gothia*. This *Magnus* the third, was likewise King of *Norway*, who dying in the yeare One thousand three hundred twentie and sixe; left these three Kingdomes to his Sonne *Magnus* fourth of the name, who had a Sister called *Euphemia*, wife to *Albert*, Duke of *Meckelbourg*.

Magnus was the Father to *Aquine*, King of *Norway*, and affianced to the Sister of the Count of *Halsatia*. But this Princesse being on the way to go marrie with her Husband in *Swedē*, was taken prisoner by the King of *Denmark Valdemar*, last of the name, who caused his onely Daughter and sole heire *Margaret*, to marrie with the same *Aquine*. *Magnus* not misliking the marriage of his Sonne in *Denmarke*, the men of *Swede*

Sweden (instigated thereto by the Count of *Halsatia*) rebelled against him, calling to Commaund and Rule the Kingdome of *Sweden*.

Albert, Sonne to *Albert*, Duke of *Meckelbourg*, Husband to *Euthemia*, who helde (for some time) the Kingdome of *Sweden*; vntill he was ouerthrowne in a foughten Battaile by Queene *Margaret*, wife to *Aquine* King of *Norway*, and Mother to *Olaus*. By this her taking of *Aquine*, whom shee kept as her warre prize and prisoner the space of seauen yeares, as we haue before related: She held the Kingdome of *Sweden* all her life time. At the end of those seauen yeares, *Albert* and his Sonne *Ericus* (both prisoners) were set at liberty: conditionally, to pay for ransome within three yeeres tearme, Threescore thousand Markes of Siluer; or else to deliuer vp to the Queene, the Citty and Castell of *Stockolme*. But by not satisfiyng the one or other of these conditions; he should submit himselfe prisoner againe, and remaine in the power of Queene *Margaret*. By whose death, the Kingdome of *Norwaye* continued still ioyned and annexed to the Kingdome of *Denmarke*.

King *Aquine* kept prisoner seuen yeares and released at last vpon strict conditions.

But concerning that of *Sweden*, it had her perticuler Kings, of whom wee will heere set downe a briefe Reporte, and how they succeeded eche after other.

Of such Kings as followed successiuely in the Kingdome of *Sweden*.

Engelbert, a Lord of the Countrey, reuolted against *Ericus* of *Pomerania*, he adopted Sonne to Queene *Margaret*, and her Successour in the three Kingdomes of *Denmarke*, *Norway* and *Sweden*. After whom succeeded in the said three Kingdomes, *Christopher* Duke of *Bauaria*, and Prince *Palatine*. But he dying, they of *Sweden* elected for their King, a Lord of the same Countrey, named

Charles Canutus, who reigned but Seauen yeares, and was constrained to flye for his owne safety from the kingdome; because the Lords reuolted from him, and chose for their King, him of *Denmarke* and *Norwaye*, named

Christierne, against whom in like manner the Lords of *Sweden* reuolted, when he had reigned about the space of seauen yeares ouer them.

Iohn, his Sonne helde some time of rest and repose in the Kingdome of *Sweden*: And after him was successour his Son

Christierne, Second of the name, King of *Sweden* in Title only, for the Kingdome was (in effect) gouerned by a Constable, called *Steuo*, a Natiue of the Land, who would neuer accept the name of King. After whose death, *Christierne* possessed himselfe of the Royall Citty of *Holme*, where he caused to be executed by Iustice, the very greatest Lords of the Kingdome, Bishops, Noblemen and the wealthiest *Bourgesses*, filling all places with blood and slaughter, the Citty pilde and powled, the Citizens put to the edge of the Sword, without sparing Maides and young Infants, murdered in their Cradles, and the body of *Steuo* the Gouernour left vnburied, yea, throwne vpon a common dunghill or Laystall, to serue as foode for Rauens, among other dead bodies. Within a while after these barbarous cruelties committed in *Sweden*:

Gostauo (Sonne to *Ericus*, issued of the blood Royall, and giuen for Hostage to *Christierne* by the Inhabitants of *Stockolme*) found meanes to get away from *Denmarke* in a disguised habite, and came into *Sweden*: whereof hee proclaimed himselfe to be Protectour, and expelled the *Danes* out of the Kingdome. Wherupon, by full consent of all the Estates, he was auouched to be King of *Sweden*, in the yeare of Grace, 1540. he gouerned the Kingdome long time in peace and tranquility, replanting Nauigation and traffick of Merchandises. After this *Gostauo*, succeeeded his eldest Sonne

Henry, who being deceassed without issue, left for his Successour in the Kingdome of *Sweden*, his Brother

Iohn, who taking to Wife *Katharine*, Daughter to *Sigismond*, King of *Poland*, gouerned with great Wisedome, Loue and Honour. This *Iohn* died in the yeare, Fiue Hundred Fourescore and Ten, or Twelue: and then succeeded his only Sonne

Sigismond, King of *Sweden* by Paternall succession, and of *Poland* by Election: against whom his Vnckle *Charles* made intrusion, and possessed the greater part of the Kingdome; wherein (by force of Armes) he maintaineth himselfe to this instant.

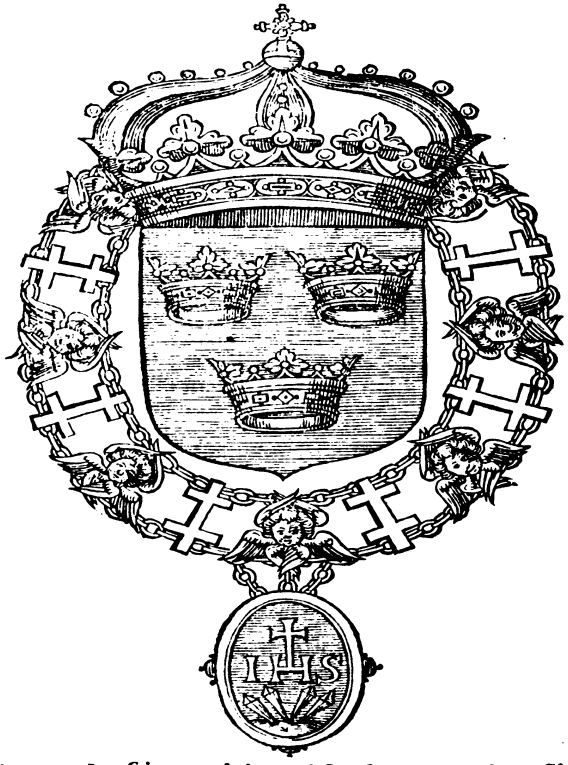
CHAP. X.

Concerning the Institution of the Order of Sweden, *called Of the* Cherubins.

The Collar or Cheine of the Order.

Magnus, King of *Sweden*, Fourth of the name, in the yeare of Grace One thousand three hundred thirty and foure; Instituted *The Order of the Cherubins*, otherwise Sirnamed *Of Iesus*. The Coller of this Order was composed of *Cherubins* (so saith *Zieglius*) and Patriarchall Crosses, in memory of the Siedge laid to the Metropolitane Citty of *Vpsala*; the *Cherubins* of Gold, enammelled with Red, and the Crosse of Gold without any enammelling. At the end of the Collar hung an Quall of the same, enammelled with Azure, bearing these three Letters combined together *IHS.* the name of *Iesus*, without enammeling, and placed *en Fesse*, and *en pointe* Foure Nailes, enammelled White and black, to declare the Passion of our Sauiour and Redeemer Iesus Christe, crucified and fastened to the tree of the Crosse with foure Nailes.

Of the Nailes wherewith Christ was Crucified.



For it is a popular errour, to figure or represent this incomprehensible misterie of our Redemption, and the Triumphe of the Sonne of Man, ouer death and Hell; by a crosse without an vnderfooting, or foot-stay, and the Quaternarie number of Nailes. *One of which Nailes wee haue at Saint Denys in France*, the *Mausolus* or buriall place for our Monarches of the Lillies. An other of them is at *Rome*, in the Church of Saint *John Laterane*, kept in the *Sanctã Sanctorum*. Which two nailes I haue seene, that at *Rome* is very like to that at Saint *Denys*, in length aboue halfe a foote, the point flatted, filed and made hallow: the head shap d like a vice, but more long and square. The third Naile is in the Church of *Trcuers* in *Germanie*: *And is the Naile of the right foote.* The Fourth was throwne by the Empresse *Helena*, mother of *Constantine* the Great, into the Gulffe of *Sathalia*, a very dangerous passage, formerly sirnamed the Dragon or Lyon of the Sea, being betweene *Ierusalem*, and the Gulffe of *Cyprus*, where Shippes ran alwayes in perill of wracking, but since then, it hath bin more milde and calme. This we vnderstand by S. *Gregorie* of *Tours*, in the sixt Chapter of his *Gloria Martyrum*. *Clauorum Dominicorum quod quatuor fuerint hæc est ratio. Duo sunt affixi in palmis, & duo in plantis.* Afterward, he yieldeth a reason of three Nailes which were kept by Saint *Helena*, applied to the Horses Bridle, and the Creast or Helmet of *Constantine* her Sonne, that famous Emperour.

Now

Now, concerning the vnderfooting stay, it is a matter without all question to the contrarie, that the *Romaines* obserued it as a custome, to crucifie Malefactours with foure Nailes, on Crosses made after the same manner: contayning fifteene foote in height, with a Title alofte, comprehending the names and crimes of those malefactours, fastened on the height of the Crosse, and at their feete a stay to support them, whereon their feete were seperately nailed fast: and not one foote vpon the other, as hath bin perfourmed by ignorant Caruers and Painters. The two theeues were crucified after the same manner, as the Lambe without spot or blemishe: otherwise it had bin easie for Saint *Helena*, to haue discerned the Crosse of the Worlds Sauiour, the Table of Innocency, from those of the Theeues. So then it may be said, that the Crosse was composed of foure pieces of different wooddes: as Saint *Gregorie* telleth vs in the passage before alleaged. *In stipite erecto foramen factum manifestum est Pes quoque paruæ tabulæ in hoc foramen insertus est: super hanc vero tabulam, tanquam stantis hominis, Sacræ affixæ sunt Plantæ.* And Pope *Innocent* in his first Sermon of Martyrdome. *Fuerunt in Cruce Dominicâ ligna quatuor, stipes erectus, & lignum transuersum, truncus suppositus, & titulus superpositus.*

Of the Crosses on which the *Romains* vsed to crucifie their malefactours.

In the Church of *Paris* yearelie on the first Fryday in the Moneth of *August*, is celebrated the Feaste for susception of the most Holy Crosse, and sollemne Procession made about the Church, and vnder a Canopy is caried the true Crosse. It was sent to the Church of *Paris* by *Anselme*, a Natiue of the Citty, and Clearke of the said Church, who bare such zeale and affection to the voyage for the Holy land, that he went along with *Godfrey* of *Bologne*, in the time of Pope *Vrbane*, Second of the name, and King *Phillip* the First. The Holy Citty being conquered by the Christians, this *Anselme* was made Chaunter in the Church of the Holy Sepulcher, where he found this Crosse, which he sent (as a most rare and precious gifte) to the Church of *Paris*, where it is kept at this present in all deuout reuerence. It is written, that it is made *Ex Suppedaneo Veuificæ Crucis.*

No man is bound to beleeue all this except he list.

Concerning the Title on the Crosse of our Lord, written in three Languages: I haue seene it (with other Reliques) in the Church of *Sancta Croce* of *Ierusalem*, at *Rome*: It was made fast with three small Nailes to the top of the Crosse, when it was exalted alofte. *Saint Cyprian* in his Treatise *De Montibus Sina, & Sion. Pontius Pilatus impulsa mente à Deo accepit Tabulam, & Titulum scripsit tribus linguis: & in capite ligni clauis tribus Tabulam cum nomine Regis Iudæorum confixit.* In the like manner, titles were fixed to the Crosses of the two Theeues. The highest and last of the Thirteene Hermitages, which are on the Mountaine of Our Lady of *Montserrat* in *Catalogna*: is that of the good Thiefe, called Saint *Dismas*. The other was named *Gestas*, as our Auncients haue credited by these riming verses.

Of the inscription or title on the Crosse of Christ.

Imparibus meritis pendent tria corpora ramis
Dismas & Gestas, in medio sedet ima potestas.
Gestas damnatur, Dismas ad astra leuatur.

And these verses written on a small piece of Parchment, being well dried, and scraped, bruised small in a Morter, then mingled with Wine or *Aqua-uitæ*, and giuen to such men as are condemned to torture or torments, maketh them insensible of any paine, seruing them as a charme of silence.

I neuer knew any that made proofe of this Charme.

As they crucified all malefactors with foure Nailes; so without all doubt, when they threwe lotts for his garments, they did it with foure dice, and not two or three, as ignorant Painters haue pleased to depict them.

Iace quatuor Talos.

So saith *Plautus* in an infinite number of places. And thus haue I caused it to be done (according to Antiquity and truth of History) in the Table of our blessed Lords Passion, on the Altar of *Ierusalem* in the Graye Friers at *Paris*, performed by the hand of a most excellent Painter (then liuing in *Paris*) named *Ieronimo Franco*, a Flemishe Gentleman by birth, whose auncient Predecessours were of the first Countes of *Flanders*, and gaue for their Coate of Armes: *L'Escu d'Or au Lyon rempant de Sable Arme & Lampasse de Gueules, à vne des pattes de deuant couppee, et iettee en pointe à Cinq gouttes de Sang; Au Lyon naissant pour Cimier.*

The

The Order of Cleue, Or Cleueland, Tearmed of the Swanne.

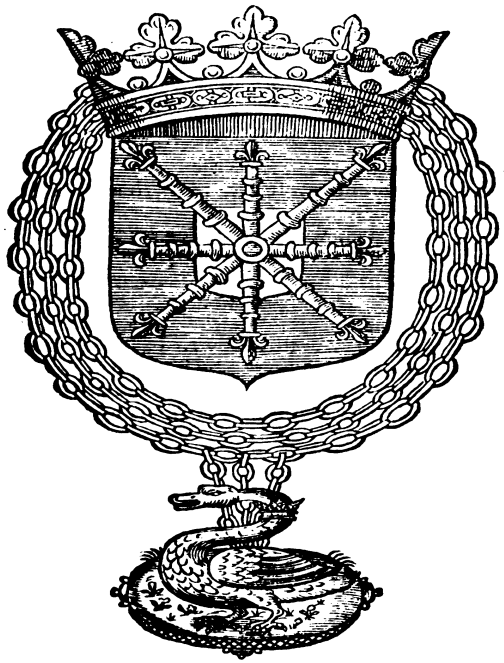
CHAP. XI.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Houſe of Cleues, *or* Cleue.

L'Ordre de Cleues, dict du Cygne.

THis Illuſtrious Houſe in *Germanie*, deriued Originall and Birth from a *Romaine* Senatour, named *Curtius*, the deſcendants of whom were inueſted with the Prouince of *Cleue*, aunciently called *Sicambria* in the time of *Cæſar*, and the auncient dwelling or abiding of the *French*, neere neighbours to the *Menapians*, whoſe Prouince at this preſent day is called *Gueldres*, or *Guelderland*.

Cleue called *Sicambria* in *Cæſars* time.



Theoderick or *Thierry*, Gouernour of *Cleue*.

Now, if wee pleaſe to take for currant payment, that which ſome Romancers haue written, reſembling rather of a fabulous diſcourſe, then otherwiſe: wee are tolde, that in the yeare of Grace, Seauen Hundred and Eleuen, according to the Authours of the Genealogie of this Houſe of *Cleue*; *Iuſtinian*, Second of the name, being Emperour; *Childerick* King of *France*, and *Pepin Heriſtell* Lord, Duke or Gouernour of *Brabant*, then was Lord ouer the ſaid Countrey of *Cleue*, one named *Theodorick*, vulgarly called *Thierry*, who deceasing, left (for Heire) his onely Daughter *Beatrix*, that made her ordenary abyding in a Caſtell called *Neufbourg*, neere to the Bourrough or Towne of *Nimegen*. After the death of her Father, the great Lords that were her neighbours; ſought how to poſſeſſe themſelues of her lands, ſhe being quite deſtitute of all humaine helpe.

Beatrix daily gazing at her Caſtell Windowe and whit ſight the ſame.

While ſhe was in this perplexitie and diſtreſſe, ſtanding (on a day) at a window of her Caſtle, full of heauines, & ſadly bemoaning her many miſaduentures; ſhe eſpyed floating on the Riuer of *Rhine*, a goodly Ship, vnder full Sayle, and on the Orelop or Hatches therof a comely young Knight, armed at all points, a faire Helmet on his Head, ſhadowed with Plumes and Feathers of foure ſeuerall Colours, Yellow, White, Greene, and Red; and vpon the Creſt of his Helmet was a white Swan, hauing her Head exalted and Crowned, with a Horne about her Necke, after hunting manner, bearing on her left Wing, *Vn large Eſcu de Gueules, charge d'vn autre Eſcu d'Argent, ayant vn Tourteau de Synople, duquel departoient Huict Sceptres Pommettez, & fleuronnez d'Or, remplissans tout l'Eſcu, comme en forme de raix*: And in her right Foot ſhee held a Sword of pure Gold.

The

The Ship came ſoftly accoaſting neere the Caſtle foot of *Nimegen*: which cauſed *Beatrix* inſtantly to deſcend, as well remembring, that ſhee had (ſome few dayes before) beheld in a Dreame ſuch another Knight, comming cloſe vpon her Land, and in the ſelfe-ſame furniſhment. Hee courteouſly ſtouped and kiſſed her Hand, offering her his ſeruice againſt her Enemies, making himſelfe knowne to her, vnder name of *the Knight of the Swan*. The Lady found the Knight to her liking, ſufficient both in yeeres and ſtrength to right her againſt her Enemies; and therefore in Marriage made him her Husband.

Cleualier au Cygne.

Afterward, hee obtained of the Emperour *Theodoſius*, the Inueſtiture in the Seigneurie of *Cleue*, vnder the Title of Counte, both for himſelfe and his Succeſſors. But at that time, and long before, the *Roman* Emperours had nothing more in the *Gaules*, but what the *French* had reduced vnder their obedience, as well as *Cleue*, *Guelares*, *Guelich*, and other neighbouring Prouinces: ſo that the beginning of this Genealogie is ſtuffe with Poeticall Fables, and Geſts of *Romants*. Further they ſay, that this Knight of the Swan named himſelfe *Helias*, originally deſcended from a farre remote Countrey, called *Greaſt*, like to a Terreſtriall Paradiſe; the entrance in, and returning backe againe whereof, were by chance and hazard.

Fabulous reports are not to be credited.

A Proceeding in the Lineall Deſcent of HELIAS, Knight of the Swan, and Madame *Beatrix* of *Cleue*, his Wife.

OF this Marriage, betweene the fore-named *Helias*, and *Beatrix* of *Cleue* (ſo ſurnamed of a Caſtle, which ſhee had cauſed to be built) iſſued three male Children: the eldeſt whereof, was named *Thierry*, to whom hee gaue the *Shield of his Armes, and his Golden Sword*. The ſecond was *Godfrey*, to whom hee gaue the Horne (others ſay, it was a Trumpet) and made him Counte of *Lotier*: and the laſt was *Conrade*, to whom hee gaue his Ring: but by Marriage, hee had the Landſgraviate of *Heſſen*. *Helias* hauing reigned one and twentie yeeres, with Madame *Beatrix* his Wife (*Qui portoit d'Argent à vne Teſte de Bœuf de Gueules Accornee de Sable, au muſſle boucle d'Argent*) left for Succeſſour his eldeſt Sonne.

II. *Thierry*, firſt of the Name, ſecond Counte of *Cleue*, in the yeere ſeuen hundred thirtie and one. Hee tooke to Wife the Daughter of the Counte of *Henault*: *Qui portoit d'Or au Lyon rempant de Sable, qui eſt Flandres, Eſcartele d'Or au Lyon rempant de Gueules, & ſur le Tout d'Argent à Trois Cheurons de Gueules.* Hee reigned fiue and twentie yeeres, and left his Sonne and Succeſſor

III. *Renauld*, firſt of the Name, in the yeere ſeuen hundred fiftie and eight. He eſpouſed the Daughter to the Counte of *Ardenne*: *Qui portoit de Gueules au Lyon rempant d'Or.* Hee reigned but eleuen yeeres, and then ſucceeded his Sonne

IV. *Loët*, or *Lewes*, firſt of the Name, who reigned the ſpace of twentie yeeres, and tooke to Wife the Daughter of *Sigibert* of *Guienne*, who was of the ſame Ligne as the Princes of *Holland* are deſcended of originally. The ſaid *Sigebert* bare *de Gueules à deux Leopards d'Or*: *Loët* began to reigne in the yeere ſeuen hundred threeſcore and eight, leauing for Succeſſor his Sonne

V. *Iohn*, firſt of the Name, the yeere ſeuen hundred foureſcore and eight. Hee had married the Siſter to the Emperour *Michael*, who was the laſt Emperour of the *Romans* in the Eaſt, before the Empire was transferred into the Houſe of *France*. This *Infanta* of the Emperour *Michael*, is ſaid to beare *d'Or au Loup tourne de Sable*. And this *Iohn*, Counte of *Cleue*, reigned but eight yeeres: after whom, ſucceeded his Sonne

The laſt Eaſterne Emperour.

VI. *Robert*, firſt of the Name, in the yeere ſeuen hundred foureſcore and ſixe, who reigned but eight yeeres. He tooke to Wife the Daughter of the Duke of *Lorraine*, whom they make to beare *d'Or à la Bande de Gueules, chargee de Trois Alerions d'Argent*. Yet it is ſuppoſed (for all this) that the Dukes or Lords of *Lorraine*

raine Portoient d'Argent au Cerf de Gueules ſomme d'Or. And the *Sur-tout* or Ouer-all of *Lorraine*, at that time, was but the ſole Deuice of *Godfrey* of *Bologne*, Lord of *Mentz* and *Bouillon*, firſt King of *Ieruſalem*, in the yeere One thouſand, one hundred, as wee ſhall declare to you elſe-where.

VII. *Baldwin*, firſt of the Name, ſucceeded after Counte *Robert* his Father, in the yeere Eight hundred and foure. Hee married the Daughter of Prince *Lewes* of *Prouence*, who is ſaid to beare *Seme de France ſans nombre, eſcartele d'Or, contre eſcartele de Gueules à la bordure engreſlee d'Argent.* This *Lewes* of *Prouence* is made to deſcend of a Sonne of *France*, in regard, that his Father was the fourth Sonne of King *Charlemaigne*, and of *Hildegarde*, his firſt Wife: So that the Emperour *Lewes* the *Debonaire* was his Vncle, and great Vncle to this Counteſſe of *Cleue*. By whom, *Baldwin* her Husband begate three Sonnes: *Lewes*, who was Counte of *Cleue* after his Father: *Euerard*, likewiſe Counte of *Cleue* after his Brother; and *Robert*, who was Counte of *Theyſterbant*, a Countrey which at this preſent is called *Bommelrewert*, and the Countrey of *Hueſden*, and of *Artenack*. This Count of *Theyſterbant* changed the ancient Armes of *Cleue*, *Et porta d'Azur, à Huict Sceptres fleuronnez d'Or.* The firſt Lord of *Hueſden* had a Brother, Lord of *Theyſterbant*, and of a Caſtle and Village, called *Hueſden*, with the round neighbouring places; and nominated by the courſe of Time, *The Seigneurie of Hueſden.*

The firſt Lord of *Artenack*, was Brother to him of *Theyſterbant*, being ſo named of his Caſtle of *Artenack*: Which Land and Seigneurie belonged (as well as thoſe of *Hueſden* and *Theyſterbant*) to the ſaid Countes of *Cleue*, and which they held in Fiefe of the Biſhops and Chapter of *Vtrecht*, two hundred yeeres before the Seigneurie of *Gueldres* or *Ghelres* was erected into a Countie. And yet notwithſtanding, the Countie of *Theyſterbant* was not of any long continuance; becauſe in the yeere Nine hundred foureſcore and foureteene, *Infundus*, the eighteenth Biſhop of *Vtrecht* (who formerly had been Counte of *Theyſterbant*) brought this Countie into *Mortmaine*, by the Foundations which hee had graunted to his Church, and other Monaſteries, whereof hee was Founder, and Benefactor.

VIII. *Lewes*, ſecond of the Name, Sonne to Count *Baldwin*, ſucceeded him in the yeere Eight hundred and twentie. Hee reigned but foure yeeres, and dyed before he was married, leauing the Countie of *Cleue* to his Brother

IX. *Euerard*, or *Edward*, the yeere Eight hundred twentie foure, and reigned the ſpace of nine yeeres. Hee eſpouſed the Daughter to the Duke of *Bauaria*: *Qui portoit Lozengie d'Argent & d'Azur en Bande.* And by her he had two Sonnes, *Luthard* his Succeſſor, and *Berengarius*, who was Biſhop of *Toul.*

X. *Luthard* was Counte of *Cleue* in the yeere eight hundred thirtie and three, and reigned foure and fortie yeeres. Hee tooke to Wife *Bertha*, Daughter to the Emperour *Arnoul*, *Qui portoit de Franc ſans nombre, party d'Or a Quatre Chevrons de Sable*; becauſe this *Arnoul* was deſcended of the Houſe of *France*, both by his great Grandfather, & Grandfather *Lewes* of *France*, King of *Germanie.* In this Marriage, two Sonnes were borne: the firſt whereof, was named *Baldwine*; and the other, *Richefordus*, Biſhop of *Vtrecht. Luthard* and his Wife founded two Canonicall Churches: the one at *Vuiſcel*, or *Weſele*, in the County of *Cleue*; and the other at *Nuiſſe*, a Fiefe of the Houſe of *Cleue*, in the yeere Eight hundred thirtie and eight.

XI. *Baldwine*, ſecond of the Name, was Succeſſor to his Father *Luthard*, in the yeere Eight hundred threeſcore and ſixteene, reigning ſeuen and thirty yeeres. Hee eſpouſed the Daughter to the Count of *Saxonie*, *Qui portoit Burele d'Or & de Sable a la Coronne de Rue de Synople pierr en Bande.* And after him ſucceeded his Sonne

XII. *Arnoul*, firſt of the Name, in the yeere Nine hundred and thirteene, and reigned fiue and fortie yeeres. Hee tooke to Wife the Daughter to the Counte of *Zutphen*, *Qui portoit d'Argent party de Deux Lyons rempants, l'vn tourne de Gueules, & l'autre de Sable, aux queuës noüees en Sautour.*

XIII. *Vichinan*, Sonne to *Arnoul*, was the thirteenth Counte of *Cleue*, in the yeere Nine hundred fiftie and eight, reigning ſix and thirtie yeeres. Hee married the Daughter to the Landſgraue of *Thu-*
inge, who bare *d'Azur au Lyon rempant Argent.* After him, ſucceeded his Sonne

XIIII. *Conrad*, firſt of the Name, the yeere Nine hundred foureſcore and foureteene. Hee reigned one and fortie yeeres: and his Wife was Daughter to the Counte *Zeim*; but it is to be diuined, whereof hee was Lord. *Et portoit de Gueules au Lyon rempant d'Argent.*

XV. *Thierry*, ſecond of the Name, Sonne and Succeſſor to *Conrad*, was Counte of *Cleue* in the yeere of Grace, One thouſand, thirtie fiue. Hee reigned three and fortie yeeres, and eſpouſed the Daughter to the Counte of *Scombergh*, *Qui portoit d'Or au Coq de Sable.* His Sonne, and Succeſſor, was

XVI. *Thierry*, or *Dietherick*, third of the Name, in the yeere One thouſand, threeſcore, and eighteene, reigning nine and thirtie yeeres. His Wife was Daughter to the Counte of *Hennenberg*: *Qui portoit a la Bordure d'Argent endenchee au chef, & aux Flancs de Quatre pieces.* Next him, ſucceeded his Sonne

XVII. *Arnoul*, ſecond of the Name, in the yeere of Grace, One thouſand, one hundred and eight, and reigned ſeuenteene yeeres. His Wife was Daughter to the Duke of *Zubanes*, *Qui portoit d'Azur au Leopard d'Or, a la queue paſſee en Sautour.* Hee had for his Sonne and Succeſſor,

XVIII. *Thierry*, fourth of the Name, in the yeere One thouſand, one hundred, fiftie, and fiue. His Wife was Daughter to the Duke of *Bauaria*, who bare as before hath beene declared. After him ſucceeded his Sonne

XIX. *Arnoul*, third of the Name, in the yeere One thouſand, one hundred, foureſcore, and foureteene, and reigned but tenne yeeres. He married *Margaret*, Daughter to *Florent*, Counte of *Holland*: who bare *d'Azur au Lyon rempant de Gueules, Eſcartele d'Argent au Lyon rempant de Sable.*

XX. *Arnoul* the Fourth, his Sonne, ſucceeded him in the yeere, One thouſand, two hundred, and three. He reigned thirteene yeeres, and tooke to Wife the Daughter of *Adolphe*, Counte of *Monts*: *Qui portoit a'Argent a Trois Chevrons de Gueules.* He had for his Sonne and Succeſſor

XXI. *Thierry* the Fift, in the yeere One thouſand, two hundred, and ſixteene. Hee reigned eleuen yeeres, and ioyned to his Countie of *Cleue* the Seigneurie of *Diſlaquen*, by meanes of his Wife, the onely Daughter to the Lord of *Diſlaquen*: *Qui portoit de Gueules a Cinq Feſſes demy-vivrees d'Argent.* Next him ſucceeded his Sonne

XXII. *Thierry* the Sixt, the yeere One thouſand, two hundred, twentie, and ſeuen, and reigned eighteene yeeres. His Wife was *Iſabel*, Daughter to *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*: *Qui portoit de Braban, qui eſt de Sable au Lyon rempant d'Or, Eſcartele de France ſans nombre*; becauſe her Mother was Daughter to *Philip Auguſtus*, King of *France*: Wherein this Chronologie deceiueth it ſelfe, becauſe Madame *Mary* of *France* was but twice married: firſt, to *Philip*, Counte of *Namur*, Brother to the Emperour of *Greece*, *Baldwine*, Counte of *Flanders*: and laſtly, to *Henry*, Duke of *Lorraine*; but not to *Henry*, Duke of *Louaine*, which is *Brabant.*

XXIII. *Thierry* the Seuenth was Counte of *Cleue*, by the death of *Thierry* the Sixt, his Father, in the yeere One thouſand, two hundred, fortie fiue, reigning ſixteene yeeres. Hee married the Daughter of *Otho*, the ſeuenth Counte of *Gueldres*: *Qui portoit d'Azur au Lyon rempant tourne d'Or, party d'Or au Lyon rempant de Sable.* By her hee had *Thierry* the Eight, his Succeſſor, and *Iſabel*, who was Wife to *Gerard*, Counte of *Gulich*: And of this Marriage iſſued two Sonnes, *William*, Counte of *Gulich*, and *Valeran*, or *Walran*, Archbiſhop of *Cologne.*

XXIIII. *Thierry* the Eight began to reigne in the yeere One thouſand, two hundred, threeſcore, and one, reigning fifteene yeeres. Hee had to Wife the Daughter of the Counte of *Luxembourg*: *Qui portoit d'Argent, au Lyon rempant de Gueules.* Hee had for Sonne and Succeſſor

XXV. *Thierry* the Ninth, in the yeere One thouſand, two hundred, threeſcore, and ſixteene, reigning ſeuen and thirtie yeeres. Hee tooke to Wife the Daughter to the Duke of *Auſtria*, of *Habſpourg*, whom they make to beare *d'Argent a la Feſſe de Gueules*: but that is a falſe emblazon, in regard that the moderne Armes of *Auſtria*

Austria are *de Gueules a la Fesse d'Argent*, as we haue before made apparant to you. Of this Marriage, issued three Sonnes, all Countes of *Cleue*, each after other: and a Daughter named *Elizabeth*, Wife to the Lord of *Perwis*: And of that Marriage descended many great Houses.

XXVI. *Otho*, first of the Name, succeeded after *Thierry* the Ninth, his Father, in the yeere of Grace One thousand three hundred and thirteene, reigning sixteene yeeres. He had to Wife *Adeleida*, that is, *Alix*, Daughter to *Engilbert*, the eight Counte *de la Mark*: *Qui portoit d'Or a la Fesse Eschecquee d'Argent & de Gueules de Trois Traicts*.

Of this Marriage was borne one onely Daughter, called by the Name of her Mother, married to *John*, Lord of *Arquel*, of whom came *Otho*, Lord of *Arquel*, and many Daughters which had no Issue, and one named *Ioane*.

Otho, Lord of *Arquel*, left his Sonne *John*, Father to *William*, a young Gallant of *Arquel*: who dwelling in the Land of *Gorchen*, had to Wife the Daughter of the Lady of *Gimonde*; of whom, was borne *Arnoul*, Duke of *Gueldres*, and *William de Gimonde*.

Of *Ioane*, Daughter to the Lord of *Arquel*, Lady of *Leana* (this Genealogie is in this partie much hudled, and very ill distinguished) descended the Lords of *Geneppe*, of *Heynsberg*, of *Brederodde*, *de la Vere*, of *Groeninge*, of *Drongelem*, of *Merunie*, of *Vlet*, of *Ostende*, and many other in the Netherlands, in regard that this Lady had many Daughters.

Now, because by the Inuestiture made of the Countie of *Cleue* to the Knight of the *Swanne*, this County was made a fiefe of the Empire, and subiected to the *Salique* Law of the *French*; by the course whereof, Daughters were excluded from succession in the said Countie: the onely Daughter to Counte *Otho* the First, could not inherite the Countie of *Cleue*, by the death of her Father; but after him succeeded the second Brother

XXVII. *Thierry*, Tenth of the Name, who reigned eighteene yeeres, and had to Wife *Mary*, Daughter to the Counte *Regnauld* of Sister to the first Duke of *Qui portoit d'Azur, au Leopard passant d'Argent.* And of this Marriage issued but their onely Daughter, named who was Wife to *Adolphe* the Ninth, Counte *de la Mark*, whereby descended three Sonnes, as namely *Engilbert*, Counte *de la Mark*, who was Lord *de la Mark*; *Adolphe*, who was Bishop, Archbishop, and afterward Counte of *Cleue*, and *de la Mark*. Lastly, *Thierry*, a young Gentleman (as meaning a younger Brother) *de la Mark*, who was Lord *de la Mark*, and Lord of *Eslaque*, not hauing any legitimate Children, no more then *Engilbert* his eldest Brother.

But of the second Sonne *Adolphe* descended many Children, as wee shall see hereafter. And *Thierry* the Tenth dying without heire male, his yongest Brother

XXVIII. *John*, second of the Name, was Counte of *Cleue*, and held the said Countie fifteene yeeres. Hee tooke to Wife *Margaret*, eldest Daughter to *Reynauld* the first, Duke of *Qui portoit d'Azur, au Lyon rampant d'Or.* But of this Marriage came not any Issue.

Contention for the Countie of *Cleue*.

So that by the death of this *John* the Second, contention grew about Succession in the said Countie of *Cleue*, which (by right of Reuersion) returned to the Empire, whereof it was a Fiefe, according to the words of his Inuestiture, made to the Knight of the *Swanne*. For the Lord of *Perwueis* maintained, That although *Elizabeth* of *Cleue* (his Mother) was departed out of this life, yet notwithstanding, by representing his Mother (Sister to the three last Countes of *Cleue*) he ought to be preferred before any other. And ioyning deedes to words, by force of Armes he possessed himselfe of *Cranenbourg*, and of other places in the Countie of *Cleue*.

The Armes were made by the Counte *de la Marke*.

Engilbert, Counte *de la Mark*, defended against him, That the Countie of *Cleue* should (in right) belong to him, because his Mother liued still, who was the onely Daughter of Counte *Thierry*, and so (by consequent) much neerer then *Elizabeth* of *Cleue*, were she as yet liuing. Moreouer, that by the Lawes of the Empire (in cases of Successions) the Sonnes of Brothers ought to precede the Sonnes of Sisters. And hereupon he imployed his best endeuour, to make himselfe Master of the Countie of *Cleue*, as indeed he did, by being assisted with mighty forces, which his Brother *Adolphe*, Archbishop of *Cologne*, brought him, beside the powers of the Bishop of *Munstere*.

The third pretender to the said Countie of *Cleue*, was *Otho*, Lord of *Arquel*, in regard that his Mother (albeit then dead also) was the onely Daughter to *Otho*, Count of *Cleue*, Niece to *John* the last Count. And yet notwithstanding, most part of the Nobilitie, and the best Cities in *Cleueland*, would not accept any one of these three Pretendents; but rather desired to haue for their Count and Lord *Adolphe*, Archbishop elected of *Cologne*, enclining all to his side, because he was not yet restrained by the Churches Orders, being yong also, and very dexterious in Armes. Hereupon, *Engilbert*, Count *de la Mark* his Brother, and the Lord of *Arquel*, ioyned themselues with this *Adolphe*, to expell thence the Lord of *Peruueys*, which they did, & Prince *Adolphe* became Lord of the Countie of *Cleue*: resigning his Bishopricks (with consent of the Pope and the holy Seate) to *Messire Engilbert de la Mark* his Vnckle, then Bishop of *Luge*, and to the halfe-brother of the Lord of *Arquel*, who tooke part with him. He caused himselfe to be Inuested in the said Countie of *Cleue*, by the Emperour *Charles* of *Bohemia*: And so

All the three Pretenders refused and a fourth man chosen.

XXIX. *Adolphe* was Count of *Cleue* by a new Inuestiture, made in the yeare One thousand three hundred fiftie and seauen, & by Succession to his Brother *Engilbert* (deceasing without issue) he became likewise Lord *de la Marke*. And thereupon he tooke *De Cleues party de la Mark*. He reigned the space of two and twenty yeares, espousing *Margaret* Daughter to *Gerard*, Count of *Monts*: *Qui portoit d'Argent à trois Cheurons de Gueulles*; And by her hee had a plenteous linage, seauen Sonnes, and nine daughters.

The Sonnes were

Adolphe, Successour to his Father.

Gerard, Count *de la Marke*, third Sonne, and others.

The Daughters were

Margaret, wife to *Albert* Duke of *Bauaria*, and Count of *Holland*, Sonne to *Lewes* the Emperour, and other.

XXX. *Adolphe*, second of the name, was the thirtieth Count of *Cleue*, and the twelfth *de la Mark*, who reigned foure and fifty yeares, beginning in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred & seauenteene. At the Councill of *Constans* this Countie of *Cleue* was erected to be a Duchie, by the Emperour *Sigismond*, in the person of *Adolphe* the second, who was the first Duke of *Cleue*, An. One thousand foure hundred and seauenteene, as by the Record appeareth:

Adolphe the first Duke of *Cleueland*.

He had two wiues, the first whereof was *Agnes*, Daughter to *Robert*, Duke of *Bauaria*, by whom he had no issue.

The second wife was *Mary*, Daughter to *John* Duke of *Bourgongne*: *Qui portoit de Bourgongne Moderne, Escartele de la Vieille, & sur le tout de Flandre* And by her he had three Sonnes and seauen Daughters. The eldest Sonne bare the name of *John* of *Bourgongne*; the second carried the name of his Father, and was Lord of *Rauestaine*, who tooke to wife the Daughter to the Duke of *Coimbre*, Brother to the King of *Portugall*, of which marriage issued a Son and a Daughter, *Phillip* and *Louisa de Rauestein*. The third Son was *Engilbert*, who dyed yong.

The issue of *Adolphe* by his two wiues.

The first of the Daughters was named *Margaret*, wife to *William*, Duke of *Bauaria*, in first mariage; and in the second, to the Lord of *Wittemberg*: The second was *Katharine*, wife to *Arnoul*, Duke of *Gueldres*. The third *Isabel*, wife to the Count of *Zuuartenbroch*: the fourth *Agnes*, who is said to be wife to a Prince, the eldest Sonne of *Navarre* and *Arragon*, whereof he bare the Armes, but quartered without any specifying: The fift *Helena*, wife to the Duke of *Brunswicke*; *Qui portoit de Gueulles à Deux Leopards d'Or*: The sixt *Mary*, wife to *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans*, to whom the ignorant Painter hath given *De France sans Lambell*. And the seauenth Daughter dyed yong, about seauen yeares of age.

The seauen Daughters, & their mariages

John, third of the name, Sonne of *Adolphe*, was the second Duke of *Cleue*, and Count *de la Marke*, who reigned fiue and thirty yeares. Hee married the Daughter to *John*, Count *de Neuers*, *d'Estampes* and *de Rethell*: whom (very simply) they make to bee *De France de Trois Fleurs, & la Bordure componee d'Argent & de Gueulles*. Hee had by her one Sonne, and fiue Daughters: But the eldest Sonne of *John* the third, was

Descent of the Dukes of *Cleue*

Iohn, the fourth Duke of *Cleue*, and Count *de la Mark*, who reigned forty yeares. He tooke to wife *Mathilda*, Daughter to the *Landsgraue* of *Hessen*: *Qui portoit d'Azur au Lyon rempant d'Argent, tenant vne Hache de mesme.* He had for Successour in the Seigneuries of *Cleue* and *de la Mark*, his Sonne

Iohn the fift, who espoused *Mary*, the onely Daughter to *William*, Duke of *Gulich* and of *Monts*; by meanes of which marriage, he enioyed the said Countries and Seigneuries, and charged his Armes with them. *Portant de Cleues party de Iulliers, qui est d'Or au Lyon de Sable party d'Argent au Lyon de Gueulles, tranchez, ou soustenus de la Mark, & de Monts.* Of this Marriage issued three Daughters, the eldest whereof was named *Sibilla*, wife to *Fredericke* Duke of *Saxonie*; and of this marriage is descended the Duke of *Saxon*, reigning at this present. The other Daughters are no way materiall to this our Chronologicall discourse.

The House of *Saxon* at this present.

William, onely Sonne to *Iohn* the fift, was Successour to his Father. He had to wife *Mary*, Daughter to *Ferdinand*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, King of the *Romaines*, yongest Brother to the Emperour *Charles* the fift. *Portoit de Hongrie, Escartelé de Boëme, sur le tout party d'Austriche, & de Bourgongne ancienne.* This *William* held the forenamed Seigneuries in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred and fiftie, where the Genealogie of the Counts of *Cleue* ceaseth, and proceedeth on no further: yet beginneth againe at *Engelbert* of *Cleue*, allied in the House of *Bourgongne* by *Iohn*, Duke of *Neuers*. But we will supply this defect, and finish the Ligne.

The Authors supplement where the Genealogy failed

This *William* of *Cleue* and of *Gulich*, was sometimes in seruice to King *Frances* the first, who to make him vnited to the Crowne of *France* by an vndissolueable bond: did then affiance vnto him *Iane d'Albret*, being then Princesse, and afterward Queene of *Nauarre*, Grandmother to our King at this instant reigning. But this inconstant Prince, intruded himselfe into pertaking with *Charles* the fift, who caused him to marrie his Niece, the Daughter to his Brother *Ferdinand*, as we haue already said. By this marriage the Emperour *Charles* compelled him to part with the Duchie of *Gueldres*, whereof he was before possessed. And by meanes of his wife *Mary* of *Hungarie*, the Principalities of *Cleue*, *Gulich* and *Berghes* were left to him, with the Counties *de la Mark* and of *Rauenspourge* in *Algaw*: the Duchie of *Gueldres* remaining annexed to the *Nether-Lands*, by the said Emperour *Charles* the fift; who auouched and maintained, that *Charles* the last Duke of *Bourgongne* had possessed, and annexed it to the *Nether Lands*.

The Duchie of *Gueldres* parted withal.

By *Mary* of *Hungarie* his wife, this *William* Duke of *Cleue* had a Sonne, bearing the names of his Grandfather and Father together; and foure Daughters beside, as namely *Mary Elenora*, *Anne*, *Magdalen* and *Sybilla*.

The issue of *William* Duke of *Cleue*.

Iohn William, the onely heire masse by the death of his Father, he was Duke of *Cleue* of *Gulich* and of *Monts*, Count *de la Mark*, and of *Rauenspourg*. Hee had to wife the Daughter of *Lorraine*, but no issue by her, he dying of a Feuer as he returned from Hunting, the fiue and twentieth day of March, One thousand fixe hundred & nine:

For Succession (after him) happened the like contention, as did after the death of Count *Iohn*, second of the name. For it was pretended, and laid claime to, as well by the descendants of *Sybilla*, Daughter to *Iohn* the fift, as by the Sisters to *Iohn William*, and others farre further off in this Succession: In regard that *Charles de Gonzaga* of *Cleue*, Duke of *Niuernois* & of *Rethelois* made his pretence; that the Countie of *Cleue* appertained to him, because he bare the Armes and Sirname of *Cleue*.

Another accident of contention happening about Succession in *Cleue*.

The Count of *Maulenrier*, his pretence was to the Countie *de la Mark*: because (of his owne naturall and legittimate Stocke) he carried the full Armes, and also the Sirname *de la Mark*.

The Duke of *Saxonie*, Son to *Fredericke* the *Saxon* Duke, and *Sybilla* of *Cleue*, eldest Sonne of *Iohn* the fift, pretended, that he had double right thereto, for his owne part. First of all, because he was descended of the said *Sybilla*, married to the *Saxon* Duke his Father, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred twenty and sixe, by which contract of Marriage it was namely couenanted and concluded, that the said *Iohn* Duke of *Cleue* and *Gulich*, his children and descendants, happening to dye without heires masse; the said *Sybilla* should then be sole heire to the said Seigneuries, by exclusion of her other two Suters, whose Mariages were endowed with Money, and not Lands.

A double right of pretence pleaded by the Duke of *Saxonie*.

Secondly,

Secondly, that although the Contract of this had not bin set downe in expresse words, and made so cleare as the Sun at midday: yet he had another right, accumulating one vpon the other, to wit; That these Principalities were acquired by grant and donation of them, made to the Duke of *Saxonie Fredericke* his Father, and to his Grandfather, by the Emperours, if the Lords of them could chance to dye without heires Masles.

Against these Pretendants, came much neerer Heires to the defunct *Iohn William*, to wit, his Sisters and their Children. *Mary Elenora* the eldest Sister, had maried with the Duke of *Prussia*, Marquesse of *Brandenbourg*, Electour of the Empire: And of this mariage were descended many Daughters, the eldest whereof was married to *Iohn Sigismond* Marquesse of *Brandenbourg*, Elector, who in the right of his Mother (although deceased) pretended, that by the representation of his Mother, the Succession after the dead party, belonged to him onely.

On the contrary, *Anne*, the second Daughter, who was yet liuing, widdow to *Philip Lodowicke*, Count *Palatine* of *Neufbourg*, Father and Mother to *Wolfang William*, Count *Palatine* of *Neufbourg*, maintained, that this succession appertained to her; as being a much neerer heire, then the Childrens Children of her elder Sister, who was not of this world. Moreouer, that the Inuestiture of the Seigneuries in question, made by the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, King of *Bohemia*, in the yeare One thousand three hundred fiftie and seauen, to Count *Adolphe*, first of the name; the Inuestiture was made (for perpetuitie) to him & his heires, as well Females as Masles, *Ordine seruato viuentium*. And therefore, she was to be preferred before the Childrens Children of her Sister; as it was by the law of Nature due to her third Sister

Anne the second Daughter mis-pleaded against the childrens children of her eldest Sister.

Magdalen, widdow to *Iohn* Duke *des deux Ponts* Count *Palatine*, &c. & to her sister *Sibilla*, wife to the Marquesse of *Burgaw*.

The Emperour *Rodolphe*, second of the name, he stept in to be a party also, & pretended; that the said Duchies and Counties belonged to him, as being masculine Fiefes of the Empire, which neuer could fall to Females, or the distaffe: And therefore inuested in them one of his owne Brethren, named *Lupold*, or *Leopold*, Bishop of *Strasbourg* and of *Passaw* (which Bishopricke, called *Episcopatus Patauiensis*, is seated in the Duchie of *Bauaria*, neere to the frontiers of *Austria*, the Cathedrall Towne or Citie whereof, is named *Patauia inter Danubium, Rhenumque sita*) who stiled himselfe Archduke of *Oenipont*, and taking Poastage in a disguised habite, roade secretly from *Prage* to *Gulich*, whereof he possessed himselfe by Intelligence with the Gouernour, and so prepared with all dilligence, for gathering and leuying troupes of men, to obtaine all the rest, by vertue of his Imperiall command.

Rodolphe the Emperour a competitor in plea likewise.

The Count *Palatine* of *Neufbourg*, from the beginning of Aprill kept himselfe in field, to make head with an Armie, and vpon the meeting of the States of *Cleue* and *Gulich* held at *Duisseldorpe*, he accorded with the Elector Marquesse of *Brandenbourg*, and both of them were acknowledged in that meeting, to be the lawfull heires of their Vncle *William*; so that they made themselues Maisters of those Seigneuries, which appertained to the defunct, seated beyond the *Rhine*.

Two lawfull heires acknowledged in an open Assembly

Because on the hither side, where *Gulich* is placed; all that part swarmed with Armed forces, belonging to the Archduke *Leopolde*.

And thus became all *Germanie* moued and deuided, in fauouring and defending the right and quarrell of these pretending Princes. For the Emperour holding those parkings to be the worst, which had bin done without him; stood vpon his Imperiall Edicts and Commands, against the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, and the *Palatine* of *Neufburg*: who likewise maintained against him, that these Estates thus standing in quarell and contention, could be no Masculine Fiefes of the Empire, *The Salicke Law being no where in force or effect* (say they) *but onely in the Kingdome of France*.

Brandenbourg and the Palatine against the Emperor.

And to speake vprightly, this was the more iust and equall side, but that of the Emperors was the strongest; carrying along with him the whole House of *Austria* in generall, with all their well-willers, as well in *Germanie* and *Italie*, as elsewhere. Beside all these, the Princes of the House of *Saxonie* (though they pretended to haue a share lyke at the maine stake) yet they tooke part with the Emperour.

Now concerning the part of the Marquesse and Palatine, in outward apparance, it could

could beare no body or subsistance, against so potent a part as the Emperors, being put into the Ballance, and compromising the merit of their cause, as (indeede) good right hath neede of as good helpe. Wherefore these Princes made their recourse to the Crown of France, who being the Chiefe, most potent and redoubted Monarch of Christendome (*Henry* of *Bourbon*, fourth of the name, King of *France* and *Nauarre*, the meere respect of his authority, might serue as an Adamant, to attract to him all the Iron or Steele of *Germanie*, and of any place else.

Succor sought for to the King of *France*

A great stocke of money, well spared by good Husbandrie, and strongly Coffred vp in the Bastile: An Arsenall of Armes and Artillerie, able to win passage through the best defenced places; A Thunderbolt of Warre, borne and bred vp in the very midst of Armies for fiftie and so many yeares: was more then sufficient, to shake with trembling, and to ballance the Iudgement of *Europes* Princes, to make them take part whersoeuer he pretended. Because the inuincible power of *France*, led and conducted by her Prince, was able to beare along with it a motion, though the contrary Orbes were opposed against it.

The Electors had their recourse to the King, to maintaine the iust merit of their cause. He welcommed their Ambassadours, in the Moneth of September, sixe hundred and nine, promising their Maisters all assistance and fauour. But yet with such conditions, that the States of *Cleue* and *Gulich* should conserue the free exercise of Christian Religion; because some disputes and arguings were then called in question, that might grow on to greater danger. Which being faithfully promised; the King gaue them assurance of his best meanes, and to be with them in person at the Spring time following sixe hundred and ten.

Ambassadors sent to the King and his acceptance of their cause.

Hereupon was prepared a puissant Armie of threescore thousand men, and the like number of Artillery, already gon vpon the Frontiers, awaiting onely for their Prince. But oh the misfortune of *France*! her sinnes, and the greedy desires of some, couting to fish in troubled waters: caused that good King to be murdered by a damnable villaine, long time incited on to this tragicall act, who killed him with three stabbes of his Knife: he being in his Carroche, in the sight and armes of the greatest Lords of the Kingdome, and in the very midst of the Citie of *Paris*, on Friday the foureteenth day of May, in the yeare One thousand sixe hundred and ten, betweene three and foure of the Clocke in the after noone. And thus was the Sunne of *France* Eclipsed

The businesse hindered by the Kings vntimely death.

QVo Mo Do per Ie tler Ia LILII.

This his disastrous death, so vnhappy to *France*, was yet no impediment, for sending to the said Princes the succour of twelue thousand men, conducted by *Claude de la Chastre*, Marshall of *France*, to the Siedge of *Gulich*, begun by the Count *Maurice*, about the ending of the Moneth of August. But the Towne being surprized by the Archduke of *Occipent Leopolde*, was yet so narrowly engirt, beaten and vnderminde; that they which held it, were enforced to yeelde vpon composition. Which was agreed on by a Treatie, containing thirteene Articles, the first whereof was in these words:

Ayant cy-deuant esté promis par Mesieurs les Princes au feu Roy de loüable memoire l'Inuincible Henry le Grand IIII. *du nom Roy de France, & de Nauarre, qu'és Pais de Iuliers, Cleues, Berg, & autres appartenants, & possedez par lesdicts Sieurs Princes, qu'il ne se feroit aucun changement en l'exercice de la Religion Chrestienne, ains que ledit exercice fut permis à toutes personnes esdicts Pais: Lesdicts Princes promettent le faire ainsi garder, & obseruer. Seront toutes personnes Ecclesiastiques conseruez, & maintenus en leurs Priuileges, & Immunitez, & en la iouissance de leurs biens, rentes, & reuenus.*

Hauing heretofore made promise be my Lords the Princes, to the late King of famous memory, Henry the Great, *fourth of the name, King of* France *and* Nauarre, *that the Countreyes of Gulich, Cleue, Bergh, with others appertaining and possessed by the said Lords Princes, should not make any change or alteration in the exercise of Christian Religion; but the same exercise shall be still permitted to all persons in the said Countries: The same Princes doe promise to haue it still kept and conserued. And that all Ecclesiasticall persons shall be kept and maintained in their Priuiledges and Immunities, and in the enioying of their goods, rents and reuennues.*

The other Articles doe concerne and respect the perticulers of the besiedged.

The Princes issued and descended of the House of *Cleue*, to preserue the memorie of the *Knight of the Swanne*: doe beare (to this day) the *Swanne* for their Order, Deuise, Crest and Supporters of their Armes; as we haue declared in the Tract of *Orleans*, and *Knights of the Holy-Ghost*.

The Crosse of the Teutonicall, Allemaigne or *Germaine* Order, called of *Prusia*; and *Of the Table of Honour*: Instituted in the *Holy-Land*, in the yeare One thousand one hundred fourescore and eleauen, and in the Moneth of Nouember.

Croix de l'Ordre Theutonique, Dict de Prusse, & de la Table d'Honneur.

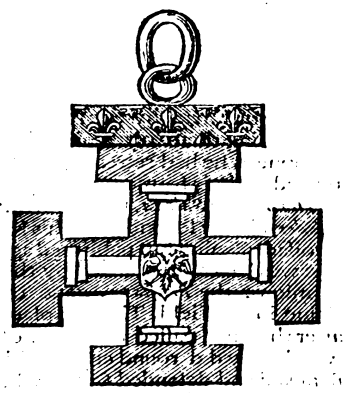
CHAP. XII.

The Originall of the Order called of the Allemaignes Teutones *or* Germaines, *and of* Prusia, *and also of the Table of Honor.*

THis Order tooke beginning, during the Conquest of the Holy-Land, wherein an *Allemaigne* Gentleman (moued with deuotion) retired himselfe to *Ierusalem*, with his Wife and Familie, where he set downe his resolution, to entertaine, lodge and nourish, such as were of his owne Nation. For this effect and purpose, with his owne Moneyes he caused a small Hospitall to be built, and close ioyning thereto (by permission of the Patriarch) he procured an Oratorie to be erected, dedicated to the honour of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, the Mother of God according to his Manhood. This worthy *Allemaigne* ioyned with diuers Gentlemen more of the same Nation, who contributing their goods and persons, to such a godly and charitable worke; imployed their care and paines there, to nourish and cure such *Allemaigne* Souldiours, as voyaged ouer the Seas, when hauing fully recouered and cured them, they were conducted to *Ioppa*, and their passage setled.

Teutones were people of Germanie called *Alemaignes*.

In the yeare One thousand one hundred fourescore and eleauen, the Moneth of Nouember, certaine good Citizens of *Bresme* and *Lubecke* in *Allemaigne*, very rich and abounding in goods, collecting a common purse together: ioyned themselues with them of this Hospitall of the Virgin *Mary*, and builded in the Citie of *Acres* (possessed then by the Christians) a magnificent Hospitall, and all of them together took the title, of knights *Teutones* or *Almaignes*, of the *Hospitall of the Virgin Mary*, of the House of the *Teutones* in *Ierusalem*, and the Rule of Saint *Augustine*, with the Roabe and Cloake white, and on the breast a plaine blacke Crosse, doubly *potencee* or *batune*. And afterward they had for Armes, *D'Argent aus dites deux Croix vne sur lautre*, whereunto the good King Saint *Loüis*, being then beyond the Seas, *A diousta le chef de France*, according as is obserued by *Funccius*.



Knights called *Teutons* or *Alemaignes*.

The habite & Armes of the Order.

They made profession, and vowed Pouertie, Obedience and Chastitie, before the Patriarch of *Ierusalem Heraclius*. They composed their Rule by the modell and externe of the Knights of Saint *Iohn* of *Ierusalem*, who healed the diseased? and likewise

likewise by the *Templers*, who kept the high-wayes, to fight against the Sarrazens. This *Almaigne* Order of the *Teutones*, was confirmed by Pope *Celestine* the third, in the yeare of Grace One thousand one hundred foureſcore and fifteene: who gaue them charge to ſay daily two hundred *Pater noſters* and *Aue Mariaes*, with the Symbole or Creede of the Apoſtles, and as many euery night. Enioyning th m moreouer, to ſuffer their Beards to grow great, after the faſhion of Saint *Auguſtines* Hermites: Ordaining withall, that no man might be receiued into this Order; if he were not a Gentleman of race, and a native of the *Almaigne* Nation.

The Order confirmed by Pope *Celeſtine* the third.

The *Almaigne* Knights elected for their Gouernor a Great Maiſter, the firſt whereof was *Henry de Valpot*, a braue and valiant Knight, vnder whom was builded the Great Hoſpitall of *Acres*. He gouerned the ſaid Order the ſpace of twenty yeares, and died in the yeare One thouſand two hundred and ten, and had for his Succeſſour

The firſt Great Maiſter of the Order.

Otho de Kerpen, who Gouerned after him ſixe and twenty yeares: and after him

Herman Bart foure and twenty yeares. Theſe three Great Maiſters were buried in the Citie of *Acres*, which was taken from the Chriſtians in the yeare One thouſand two hundred foureſcore and eleauen, then being the fourth Great Maiſter

The Citie of *Acres* wonne from the Chriſtians.

Herman de Saltza, who Gouerned the ſaid Order the ſpace of eight and thirty yeares.

After the ſurprizall of *Acres*, the Great Maiſter and the reſt of the Knights *Teutones*, departed thence into *Almaigne* or *Germanie*, where the Emperour *Fredericke* the ſecond, returning from his voyage beyond the Seas, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred twenty and nine; had brought home with him ſome Knights of this Order. To them he gaue the Prouince of *Boruſsia*, afterward called *Pruſia*, the Inhabitants whereof were as yet Idolaters, and oftentimes rauaged *Saxonie*. *Herman de Saltza* practiſed by ſtrong hand to conquer it.

Now we are here to obſerue, that in the yeare One thouſand of our Saluation. *Adelbert* (that is *Albert*) Biſhop of *Prage* in *Bohemia*, a man of wonderfull holy life, reſolued to conuert thoſe poore Infidels of *Pruſia*, to the Faith of Ieſus Chriſt. And becauſe he had not ſo much as one pennie to proceede in this intent by way of Battaile; the *Pruſian* Idolaters gaue ſo many blowes with Staues to this good Biſhop, as had well-neere expired his life. Yet *Albert* deſiſted not from preaching ſtill to thoſe Idolaters, to diuert them from worſhipping the foure Elements, whereto they lent a deafened eare, and ſeeing him to be inueſted of a place on the Sea-ſhoare, neere to the Towne of *Feſhauff*: wounded his body with ſeauen gaſhes of an *Aſagaye*, and hung him vp vpon a Tree. *Boleſlaus*, Duke of *Poland*, hauing bin conuerted to the Faith by this good Biſhop; bought his body of them, which he cauſed to be honourably buried in the Church of *Gneſna*. *Valdemar* the ſecond, King of *Denmarke*, was the firſt that (by Sea) made warre on the *Pruſians*, onely for their Idolatry, compelling them to promiſe, that they would receiue the Faith of Ieſus Chriſt: but ſo ſoone as he had retreated his Armie from *Pruſia* into *Pomerania*, the *Pruſians* returned to their former Idolatry againe.

Albert a Chriſtian Biſhop of *Pruſia* martyred by the Idolatrous *Pruſians*.

Herman de Saltza, to whom this Prouince of *Pruſia* was giuen by the Emperour *Fredericke* the ſecond; ſent his Knights thither to make Conqueſt thereof. And the Croiſade hauing bin publiſhed againſt them throughout all *Germanie*, a puiſſant Armie was leuied, conducted by the *Burgraue* of *Meidenbourg*; who meeting with the Armie of the *Pruſians*, gaue them Battaile, and fiftie thouſand *Pruſians* were ſlaine in the Field. The firſt place which theſe Knights got poſſeſſion of in *Pruſia*, after they had paſſed the Riuer of *Viſtula*, was at an old goodly branched Oake, which they d d round engirt with good and ſtrong Bulwarkes; in forme of a well fl ncked and defended Caſtle, wherein they planted a powerfull Garriſon, by meanes whereof they became Maiſters of the Riuer, and ſo from thence began to ouerrunne and rauage *Pruſia*, vanquiſhing and ſubduing moſt part of the people, who were all vp in Armes, to Conquer the Rampierde Oake, and to ouercome their enemies.

Fiftie hundred *Pruſians* ſlaine in the field.

But

But they being ſuccoured by a number of Gentlemen, & very wealthy *Almaigne* Merchants: in ſhort time after builded a rich and mighty Citie round about the Oake, and erected there a magnificent Church, in honour of the euer bleſſed Virgin *Marie*, whoſe name alſo they gaue to their new Citie, calling it *Mariebourge*, which (ſince that time) was the chiefe place of their Order, and the principall Seate for the Great Maiſters thereof, who by force of Armes conquered all *Pruſia*, *Liuonia*, part of *Lithuania*, and the neighbouring Countries of *Poland* and *Moſcouia*, where they continued warre almoſt the ſpace of two hundred yeares. After *Herman de Saltza* the fourth Great Maiſter: ſucceeded the fift

Their firſt braue Citie called *Mariebourg*.

Conrad Landgraue, Brother of *Lewes*, Husband to Saint *Elizabeth*, whom they buried in the Church of *Martſpourg*, the Citie of his Order, whereunto he brought all his Fathers goods, and moſt great reuennues. The Princes of *Germanie* ſeconding the Knights of this Order, made a great Armie to march againſt the *Pruſians*, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred fiftie foure. The forces of this Armie belonged to *Odoacrus*, King of *Bohemia*, *Otho*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourge*, the Duke of *Auſtria*, the Marqueſſe of *Morauia*, the Archbiſhops of *Cologne*, and of *Olmuntz*, all of them marching perſonally in this Croiſſade, and entring about the ſtart of winter into *Pruſia*, ſurprized the people, whom perforce they cauſed to be baptized; And, to hold the ſtricter hand on theſe new compelled Chriſtians: *Odoacrus* King of *Bohemia*, and the other Princes of the Croiſſade, built a ſtrong Fortreſſe on the top of the Mountaine called *Samogitia*, and about it a faire and ſpacious Citie, where (at this preſent) is the ordenarie abiding of the Prince of *Pruſia*. This Fortreſſe was by the King of *Bohemia* called *Kunisberg*, which ſignifieth *Montreall*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred fiftie fiue; the Citie being built in the time of the ſixt Great Maiſter of the Order.

The Princes ioyne with the Knights of the Order.

Boppo d'Oſterne, who being with his Knights at the Conqueſt of *Curon*; the *Pruſians* rebelled againſt him, and at a certaine appointed day, abiured the Chriſtian Religion, burned the Churches, ſlew and maſſacred the Prieſts, and expelled ſuch as were Chriſtians out of *Pruſia*, beſiedging alſo the three ſtrongeſt Caſtles of the Order, *Kuniſberg*, *Cruitzberg* and *Bartenſtein*. This Great Maiſter was ſuccoured and aſſiſted by the Princes of *Germanie*, the Kings of *France*, and the Duke of *Gulich*, who in the yeare Two hundred threeſcore and twelue, ſent thither a puiſſant Armie, to warre vpon the Idolaters of *Pruſia*, one while vanquiſhed, and afterward victorious. At the length notwithſtanding, they were enforced to giue Hoſtages to the Great Maiſter, for continuing faithfull afterward.

The *Pruſians* rebellion abiure Chriſtian Religion.

But the madding furious people, without care or remembrance of their Hoſtages, kild and maſſacred (cloſely) ſo many of the Knights *Teutones* as they entrap or betray. Which being diſcouered, two paire of Gallowes or Iibbets were ſet vp before the Caſtle of *Kunisberg*, whereon thirty of the Hoſtages were hanged. Which moued the *Pruſians* to ſuch rage and furie, that they brought an Armie into the Field, ſlaying as many Chriſtians as they could finde or come by: forty of the Bretheren, the Great Maiſter, and the high Marſhall of the Order, which was then in ſuch extremitie, as the vtter ruine thereof was hourely to be expected. For the *Pruſians* had wonne the ſuccour and aſſiſtance (both in forces and munition) of *Swandepolch*, Duke of *Pomerania*, who, although hee had bin baptized, renounced Chriſtianitie, and fell againe to Idolatrie with the *Pruſians*; yet notwithſtanding, towards the ending of his dayes, hee became a Chriſtian againe, and one of his Sonnes, named *Warteſlaus*, entred into the Order of the *Almaigne Teutones*; as taking it to his high honour and credit, to make ſome part of amends for his Fathers wrongs to them, notwithſtanding his after conuerſion. And his Brother *Sumbor* gaue all his goods to the ſame Order, that he might remain among them all his life time.

Thirty Hoſtages of the *Pruſians* hanged.

Hanno de Sangerſhuſen was the ſeauenth Great Maiſter, who being deceaſed in the yeare One thouſand two hundred threeſcore and fifteen, had for Succeſſour

Herman de Heldringen, dying in the

the yeare One thousand two hundred foureſcore and two.

Burckard de Schuenden was the ninth Great Maiſter, who being made Knight of *Rhodes*, had for his Succeſſour

Conrad de Fenſchawang. In the time of this Great Maiſter was the ſtrong Citie of *Acres* wonne from the Chriſtians; ſo that the Templers withdrew themſelues into *France*, where they had great ſtore of goods. The Knights of Saint *John* of *Ieruſalem*, they went thence into *Cyprus*, & afterward to the Iſle of *Rhodes*, which they conquered. And the *Allemaigne Teutoned* returned to *Venice*, where they continued for ſome time, and from *Venice* to *Martsbourg*.

Geofrey, Count of *Holenbeck*, was the eleauenth Great Maiſter; after whom ſucceeded

Siegfroy de Feuchtwrig, who transferred the principall Seate of the Order from *Martsbourg* to *Martelbourg*. By his death, happening in the yeare of Grace One thouſand three hundred twentie two.

Charles Beffart of *Treuers*, was the thirteenth Great Maiſter, who cauſed to be built the impregnable Fortreſſe of *Chriſtmimmell*, on the banke of the Riuer called *Mimmell*, to courbe in the ouer-headſtrong *Lithuanians*, and hinder their inroades. He had for Succeſſour

Vernhier de Orſels, ſlaine with the cut of a Sword, by a Brother of his Order, and then ſucceeded him

Ludolphe of *Brunſwicke*, who cauſed to be built the Citie of *Nembourg*. By his death, happening in the yeare One thouſand three hundred thirtie two

Theodoricke, Count of *Aldembourg*, was the ſixteenth Great Maiſter, who built the Towne at the foote of the Caſtle of *Bartenſtein*. After him ſucceeded

Ludolph, Sirnamed the King. And after him

Henry de Tuſemer: And next to him

Winrich de Knippenrodt. I his tim e wasvanquiſhed (in a fought Battaile) the King of *Lithuania Kinſtut*, ſixe moneths detained priſoner at *Mariebourg*: from whence he eſcaped in the night time to *Maſouia*. The twentieth Great Maiſter was

Conrad Zolner of *Rotenſtein*: next him ſucceeded

Conrad de Wallenrod: And after him

Conrad de Iungingen, ſlaine in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred and tenne, in the warre which he had againſt the King of *Poland Ladiſlaus*, Father to *Cazimir*, who wonne the Battaile, and the greater part of *Pruſia*: yet notwithſtanding, by the meanes of the Emperour *Sigiſmond*, the King of *Poland* was contented with a ſumme of money, to defraye the charges of his Armie, and ſurrendred *Pruſia* to the Bretheren *Teutones*, who elected for their foure and twentieth Great Maiſter

Henry Count of *Plaen*, depoſed by the generall Chapter, and kept priſoner at *Gdan*, and in his place was choſen

Michael Knichen: After whom ſucceeded

Paul of *Ruſſe-dorffe*: And next to him

Conrad of *Ellerichshauſon*, in whoſe time moſt part of the Townes in *Pruſia*, would needs withdraw themſelues from obedience to the *Allemaigne* Knights *Teutones*, being ſecretly fauoured by the King of *Poland Cazimir*. To whom the Great Maiſter made his complaint, of his intruding vpon his Conqueſt, to the preiudice of the perpetuall peace ſworne to his Predeceſſour. And yet notwithſtanding this complaint, *Cazimir* entred into *Pruſia* with a potent Armie, the Cities and Townes reuolting (to the number of fiue and fiftie) and yeelded themſelues to his obedience. He beſiedged *Mariebourg*, but the Great Maiſter, aided with ſuccour from the Emperour *Fredericke* (ſilently, and without making any noiſe) entred into the Campe of *Cazimire*, where he and his followers did cut the throates of three thouſand Souldiours; tooke an hundred and thirty ſixe Gentlemen priſoners, threw downe to the ground the Tents and Pauillions, and carried away the Horſes, Bagadge and Prouiſion for the Campe, ſo that the King was conſtrained to ſaue himſelfe by flight with two hundred Horſe. This Victory hapned in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred fiftie fiue, in the ſequell whereof, the Great Maiſter recouered againe the Townes and Holds that had bin taken from him, and namely the foure principall Townes, to wit *Kniſperg*, *Thorn*, *Elbourg* and *Gdan*, otherwiſe called *Dantzike*.

Now, notwithſtanding this worthy Conqueſt,

Conqueſt, the Captaines of the Caſtell of *Mariebourg* (corruptted by money) yeelded it to King *Cazimire*. After many loſſes and ſpoyles ſuſtained on either ſide, an agreement was made betweene the King of *Poland* and the Great Maiſter, whereby it was couenanted, that King *Cazimire* ſhould haue for his part, the *Pomerehe*, with all the Townes, Caſtelles and Holdes, as alſo *Elbourg* and *Mariebourg*. And the Great Maiſter ſhould haue for his ſhare, *Sannogitia*, *Kuuiſperg*, and the other places and Townes which he held; This accord or agreement was ſworne by both the parties, in the yeare, One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and ſixe. The nine and twentieth Great Maiſter was

Henry Ruſſe: next whom ſucceeded

Henry de Richtenburg, who died in the yeare, One Thouſand Foure Hundred Threeſcore and Seauenteene, and had for his Succeſſour

Martin Truchſeſſe: And by his death happening in the yeare, One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and nine, was choſen for Great Maiſter

Iohn de Tieffen, who died in the ſecular yeare, One thouſand fiue hundred. He had for Succeſſour

Frederick, Duke of *Saxonie*, and Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*: But by his death, happening in the yeare, One Thouſand Fiue Hundred and Tenne, was elected

Albert, Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*. Againſt which laſt Great Maiſter of *Pruſia*, the King of *Poland Sigiſmond*, Firſt of the name, made ſuch mighty warre: that he was conſtrained to requeſt a Truce for Foure yeares ſpace. But that time being expired, without any further hope of reſiſting againſt the *Polonians*: this Great Maiſter *Albert* ſubmitted himſelfe forthwith to the Crowne of *Poland*, vpon theſe couenants and conditions.

The Articles and Couenants, which paſſed betweenene Sigiſmond, *King of* Poland, *and* Albert, *the laſt Great Maiſter of* Pruſia.

Que de là en auant la Grand Maiſtriſe de Pruſſe ne ſeroit plus Electiue, mais Hereditaire en la perſonne dudict grand Maiſtre Albert, & aux Siens Maſles, qui tiendroient la Pruſſe, en Hommage lige de la Coronne de Pologne.

Que ledict Albert, & ſes Freres Georges, Caſimir, & Iean ſeroient receus par ledit Roy Sigiſmond comme Vaſſaux, & Seigneurs hereditaires dudict Pais de Pruſſe, par le preſent accord, erigee en Duchè.

Que ſi ledict Albert, & ſes Freres venoient à decceder ſans Hoirs Maſles, ledict Duché de Pruſſe, ſes appartenances, & dependances viendroient à la Coronne de Pologne, & y ſeroit vnie ſans en pouuoir eſtre puis apres ſeparee, à la charge toutesfois que le Roy de Pologne, lors regnant, marieroit les Filles dudict Duc de Pruſſe, ſelon la dignitè Ducale, & leur rang, &

Que la Pruſſe ſeroit regie, & gouuernee par vn Aleman Naturel, & non par vn Polonois.

1. *That from this time forward, the Great Maiſters Office of* Pruſia *ſhall be no longer Electiue: but remaine hereditarie in the perſon of the ſaid Great Maiſter* Albert, *and to the Maſles of him deſcending; Who were to hold* Pruſia *in Liedge Homage, only of the Crowne of* Poland.

2. *That the ſaid* Albert *and his Brethren*, George, Cazimire *and* Iohn *ſhould be receiued by King* Sigiſmond *as his Subiectes, and Lords Hereditary to the Countrey of* Pruſia: *it being by this preſent agreement aduaunced to be a Dukedome.* *Pruſia aduanced to be a Dukedome.*

3. *Thirdly that the ſaid* Albert *and his Brethren, chaunting to dye without Heires Maſles, that then the Dukedome of* Pruſia, *with the appurtenances and dependances, ſhall come to the Crowne of* Poland, *and ſhall be thereto vnited, without any power of ſeparation afterward. Neuertheleſſe with this condition, that the King of* Poland *then reigning, ſhould marrie the Daughters to the ſaid Duke of* Pruſia, *according to Ducall dignity, and as their ranck required.*

4. *And that* Pruſia *ſhall be Ruled and gouerned by a naturall Allemaigne borne, and not by a Polonian.*

This accorde being thus concluded on, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hnudred twenty fiue, *Albert* renounced and abiured the Order of Knighthood of the *Allemagnes* or *Teutones*, with other of the ſame Religion. And by the meanes of this renun- *Albert renounced his Order of Knighthood.*

renuntiation was inuested in the Dukedome of *Prusia*: And heere followeth the forme of the Inuestiture.

The Forme and Manner of Inuesting Albert *in the Dukedome of* Prusia.

Sigismond, King of *Poland*, being seated on his Throane Royall, in his chiefe City of *Cracouia*; *Albert*, cloathed in the garment, belonging to the Great Maister of the *Teutonicall* Order, and mounted on his Horse for Battaile, was in this equipage conducted by his Brethren and their traine before the Throane Royall, where being alighted from his Horse, and on his knees despoyled of his Knightly habites: He was attired with the Great Ducall Cloake of Crimson Veluet, Furred with *Martins Zublines*, and in that habite he perfourmed his Liedge Homage before the King, for the Dukedome of *Prusia*, taking the Oathe of Allegeance and fidelitie to the said *Sigismond*, and to his Successours the Kings of *Poland*: whom he promised to honor, serue and defend, to and against all, without any exception. Which being done, king *Sigismond* placed the Ducall Floury Wreathe on the head of *Albert*, and in his right hand the Banner of *Prusia*. *It being of White Taffatie, charged with the Armes, Which* Sigismond *gaue to the same* Albert, *for him and his Successours, Dukes of* Prusia, as namely *Vne Aigle esployee de Synople, brizee en l'estomach d'vne Lettre S. d'Or* (which designed the name of King *Sigismond*, Brother to the Mother of *Albert* and his Brethren) *Coronnee, Lampassee & Armee de Gueules.*

A Dukes Crowne.

The Banner of *Prusia*, and the Armes.

He gaue him likewise *L'Escu d'Argent a la dicte Aigle esployee*, and Blazonned as before is said And the prime place on his left hand, at the Teames and Assemblies Generall of *Poland*.

A testimony of hereditarie Succesion in Place and Office.

While these Ceremonies of Inuestiture were thus performing, the Brethren to the said *Albert*, *George Cazimire* and *Iohn*, did set to their hands, as helping to support the Banner with their Brother *Albert*. Instructing thereby (as a testemoniall noate or signe) that their Brother *Albert* chauncing to dye without an heire masle, they were (in right) next called to Succesion in the Dukedome of *Prusia*. *Albert* espoused *Dorothea*, Daughter to the King of *Denmarke Frederick*, First of that name: And in this Mariage was borne *Frederick*, inuested in the Dukedome by King *Sigismond Augustus*, who put about his neck the Collar of the Order of *Poland*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred threescore and eight.

An other Great Maister chosen of the same Order.

After this Acte of Inuestiture, the Brethren *Teutones* or *Allemaignes* elected for their Great Maister, an other *Allemaigne* Lord, named *Albert de wolfang*: who was constrained (with the Brethren of his Order) to depart out of *Prusia*, and withdrew themselues into *Allemaigne* or *Germanie*, where they enioyed such goods, as the Knights of the same Order doe yet possesse to this present. *Maximilian* of *Austria*, being now Great Maister of the same Order, bearing in Armes *Le l'Empire, Escartele d'Austriche, & sur le tout la double Croix dudit Ordre*, With whom are admitted and receiued, the youngest Sonnes of the Princes of *Germanie*, into the same Order.

The Great Maister at this present.

While the Greatnesse and Magnificence of this *Teutonicall* or *Prussian* Order continued; the Soueraignes, (that were Great Maisters therof) to acknowledge them that were of their Band and Company, who warred valiantly on their nighbouring Idolatrous enemies the *Prusians*, *Liuonians* and *Tartares*: established a prize of perticuler Honor and praise. For they instituted *A Table of Honour*, which they so named, after a former president *Of the Round Table in England*. At this Table were seated with the Great Maister, such as had made themselues famous by deeds of Prowesse and Valour, were they Strangers, or Brethren of the Order, for the seruice of Religion. Which maketh it selfe much more apparantly knowne, by the words contained in the Chronicle of the good Duke of *Bourbon Lewes*, Second of the name, yet Third Duke of *Bourbon*, the Three and Twentieth Chapter of the same Chronicle.

Declaration of the Table of Honour.

The Chronicle that speaketh of the Table of Honour.

Such as tooke leaue of the Duke of Bourbon, *being at* Chambery *in* Sauoye, *to goe for* Prusia, *and to warre against the Infidelles there, were these.*

Iohn de Chastelmorant.
Messire Aymar de Marcilly.

Messire

Messire Oudin de Roullat.
Messire Oudray de la Foreſt.
Messire Iohn de Sainct Priet.
Messire Pierre de la Bussiere.
Sainct Porque.
Perrin du Pel.
Guyon Gouffier; And
Iohn Gondelin a Breton.

These were Knights of the Order of *Bourbon*.

These worthy Gentlemen and friendly Companions, tooke leaue of the Duke their Maister, who charged them, that, as they tendred and feared his displeasure: they should returne againe to him soone after Easter (it being the Feaste of *All Saints* when they departed.) And at their going, the Countesse of *Sauoye*, Sister to the Duke of *Bourbon*, gaue to each of these Gentelmen (bound for *Prusia*) a Diamond, which they accepted thankfully, because Ladies gifts were welcome to them.

The Queene of *Bohemia*, Aunte to the Duke of *Bourbon*.

From *Sauoye* departed these Companions, passing thorowe *Lorraine* and *Germanie*, and riding to *Prage* in *Bohemia*, where they saw the Queene of *Bohemia*, who was Aunte to the Duke of *Bourbon*, and who welcommed them graciously, bestowed great gifts on them. And in the Citty of *Prage* were many Knights, belonging to the Court of the King of *France* (*Charles* the Fifte, called the *Wise*) who were very ioyfull of their comming; because they iourneyed likewise to *Prusia*. The chiefest of them were

Messire Hutin de Vermilles.
The *Borgne de la Heuze.*
The *Bastard d'Aussy*, with others

On they so long iourneyed, till they entred among the frozen Ices in the Paluds and Marshes of *Prusia*. And so holding on still in the yces (as is the custome here) they came at length to *Mariembourg*, the *Grand Hostell* of the knights of *Prusia*, where the High or Great Maister of the Order entertained them kindly. And there the Seruants to the Duke of *Bourbon*, met with

Formerly called *Marienbourg*.

Messire Iohn de Roye.
Messire Patrouillart de Renty.
Messire Robert de Chalus.

Messire Iohn de Maingre, called *Boucicault*, who by his *Chiualrie* was afterward made Marshall of *France*, and (for his singular vnderstanding) Gouernour of the Citty of *Geneuaye*.

Messire Iohn Bonnebaut
Messire Gaucher de Passach.
Messire l'Hermite de la Faye.

And many more beside, of Nations which I konw not how to name, who met all together there, and so conueniently, that their arriuall seemed almost admirable.

The Pagan King *Letho*, called King of *Lithuania*.

For the King of *Letho* (that was *Kinstut*, named King of *Lithuania*, of whom we haue formerly spoken) a *Sarrazin* with which name of *Sarrazin*, they tearmed all Idolaters and Paganes of *Liuonia*, *Tartaria*, *Lithuania*, and the Prouinces placed vnder the North-Starre) had much laboured, to vanquish and conquer the Order of *Prusia*, and, to make his part the stronger, had ioyned himselfe with the King of *Wingales* (he would haue said *Norway*) who towards the Seacoaste warred on the Maister of *Nifeland*, defender of the Religion, and Protectour of *Prusia*, which is all one.

The Great Maister assisted with many nations.

The High Maister of *Prusia*, by helpe of the Knights, and Noble Gentlemen of sundry Nations, which were then in his companie, caried himselfe so valiantly; that he conquered from them the Castell of *Endrach*, and chased them from the great Forrests of *Prusia*, which containe in length aboue eight dayes iourney. And therein are the Beasts called *Hermines*, *Letices*, *Gray* and *Martins Zubelines*, whose rich Furres are transported throughout the World.

In such successfull manner prospered the Christians; that the *Sarrazins* were vanquished and Constrained, to get them gone thence to their owne Countrey. Vpon such

such Order made, that the *Sarrazins* of *Lethonna* and *Norgales*, should robbe no more Churches in Christendome, nor burne them. In like manner, the Christian Knights of the Religion, as well of *Prussia*, as of *Niffeland* in their Countrey of *Letho*, or the bordering Maches, should not burne or desire the *Holy Woodes*, for so they called the Pine Trees, where they burned their dead bodies, and made their Sacrifices.

Conditions betweene the Christians and *Sarrazins*.

And the High or Great Maister of *Prussia*, beholding that all affaires had succeeded so well, and to his no meane Honour: On the Feast day of our Lady, commonly called Candlemasse, he feasted all his braue *Caualerie* very triumphantly, and for greater Honor of the day, diuine Seruice was accomplished in his Hostell of *Marienbourg*. Where he caused the *Table of Honour* to be couered, and commaunded to be seated at that Table, *Twelue Knights* of sundry Kingdomes.

Knights seated at the Table of Honor.

For the Kingdome of France were seated aboue at the Table.

Messire Hutin de Vermaisles; And

Messire Tristram des Marguellers, whom they all allowed for very good Knights.

Of other Countreys Two and Two were seated, according to the Great Maisters appointment, to make compleate the number of Twelue. And they were serued according to the dignity of the Day, and as vnto their worth belonged.

Thankes being giuen to God, and the Twelue sitting deuising on the Table of Honour, *and how it became established: One of the Brethren Knights of the Religion, gaue to each of them a Motto, written in Golden Letters vpon their Shoulders:* Honor ouercommeth all things, *And on the morrow, the Knights tooke their leaue of the Great Maister, returning euery man home to his Countrey.*

A large fabulous History deuised on this Christian Warre in *Prussia*.

Vpon this voyage of the *French* Knights, in fauour of the Order of *Prussia*, was formed that fabulous conceit of the *Romancers*, by *Iohn de Saintre*. Yet remarkable in this, that he giueth Names and Armes to sundry Houses, Famous for valiance and Nobility, in the time of the said King *Charles* the Fift, all Noblemen, and of Three Thousand Archers: yet without naming those Lords, who (at their own charge) compleated aboue Two Hundred Launces, with men bearing Bowes. So that there was aboue Sixe Thousand *Frenche* at this *Croisade*.

Out of Twelue Prouinces and Gouernements in the Kingdomes of *France*, was chosen a certaine number of Lords, all of them bearing Banners, as namely.

Of the Region or Marche of the Isle of France.

THe Lord of *Montmorency*, *Qui porte d'Or à la Croix de Gueules, & Seize Aiglettes (Allelyons) d'Azur.* And his crie of Warre, *Dieu aide au Premier Chrestien.*

The Lord of *Trie qui porte d'Or a vne Bande d'Azur*, and his warre *crie Bologne.*

The Lord of *Rosny*, *d'Or a Deux Fesses de Gueules*, and his warre *crie Rosny.*

The Lord *de la Foreſt*, *de Gueules a Six Merlettes d'Argent.*

The Lord of *Viels pont*, *qui porte d'Argent seme d'Anneaux de Gueules.*

The *Vidame de Chartres*, *d'Or a Trois Faisses de Sable, a vne Orle de Six Merlettes de meſme*, and his *crie Merlo.*

The Lord *de Beaumont*, *Gyronne de Douze pieces d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

The Lord of *Sainct Brisson*, *d'Azur seme de fleurs de Lys d'Argent.*

The *Bouteiller de Senlis*, *Escartele d'Or & de Gueules*, and his *crie les Granges.*

The Lord of *Marolles*, *Bande de Six pieces d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

Those of *Beauuoisin*, of the said *Marche* of *France.*

THe Count of *Clermont*, *de Gueules Deux Bars adoſſez d'Or a Croiſette au pied fiche de meſmes*, and his *crie Clermont.*

The Lord *d'Offemont*, the same *Clermont*, *au Lambeau d'Or de Trois pieces* and his *crie Offemont.*

The Lord of *Gaucourt*, *ſeme d'Ermines a Deux Bars*, *adoſſez de Gueules*, and his *crie Gaucourt.*

The Lord *d'Espineuſe d'Erminois*, *a Escuſſon de Gueules*, and many other Knights *Cheuallers, & Escuyers* of the *Marche de Beauuoisin.*

Those *de la Marche de Champagne.*

MOnſieur *Iean de Champagne*, *d'Azur a vne Bande d'Argent a Deux Cotices potencees & contrepotencees de Trois pieces* [illegible]

ces d'Or au Lambeau de Trois pieces de gueules, and his *crie Passe-auant.*

The Count of *Rethel*, *De Gueules a Trois ſteaux deſmanchez de Six dents d'Or*, and his *crie Rethel.*

The Count of *Brienne*, *d'Azur au Lyon d'Or, Billete de meſme.*

The Vicount of *Roſnay*, *Barre d'Or & Azur a Deux Faisses de Gueules.*

The Lord of *Caſtillon*, *de Gueules a Trois Paux Vairez au Chef d'Or*, & his crie *Caſtillon.*

The Lord of *Conflans*, *d'Azur au Lyon d'Or a Biletes, & vn baſton de meſmes.*

The Lord of *Rouſſy de Caſtillon*, *d'Argent a vn Aigle de Sable ſur le Chef*, & his crie *Caſtillon.*

The Lord of *Marueil en Brie*, *de Gueules a Trois Bezans d'Or*, & his *crie Marueil.*

The Lord of *Ioinville*, *pale contre Pale d'Argent, & de Gueules*, & his *crie Ioinville.* Beſide many other Knights and Esquires in the ſaid *Marche de Champagne.*

Thoſe of the *Marche* of *Flanders.*

THe Lord of *Gaure*, *qui portoit de Flandres au Lambeau de Gueules*, & his crie *Flanders.*

Meſſire Henry de Flanders. De Flandres au Buſton componne d'Argent & de Gueules, & his *crie Flandres au Couplet.*

Meſſire Iean du Gaure porta les plaines armes du Gaure, qui eſtoint de Gueules a Trois Bouces d'Argent Armez d'Or, & *cried Gaure.*

The Lord of *Rodes qui portoit d'Azur a Lyon d'Or Langue de Gueules*, & *Armé d'Argent*, & his crie *Rodes.*

The Lord of *Giſtelle d'Or au Lyon d'Azur.*

The Lord of *Commines*, *d'Or a l'Eſcuſſon de Sable Diapre a vn Orle de Roſes de Gueules*, & his crie *Commines.*

The Lord of *Haluin*, *d'Argent a Trois Lyons de Sable, ecronnez, languez & armez d'Or*, & his crie *Haluin.* With many other Knights and Eſquires of *Flandres.*

Thoſe of the *Marche of Aquitaine.*

THe Count of *Perigort*, *qui porte d'Argent au Fer de Moulin de Synople a vne Bande de Gueules*, & his crie *Perigort.*

The Counte of *Bigorre*, *qui portoit d'Or Deux Lyons paſſants de Gueules, coronnez d'Argent*, & his crie *Bigorre.*

The Count of *Vontadour*, *qui portoit Eſchiquete d'Or, & de Gueules*, & his crie *Vontadour.*

The Vicount of *Cahors*, *qui portoit de Sable a Trois Lyons d'Argent*, & his crie *Cahors.*

The Vicount of *Limoges*, *qui portoit d'Ermines a la Bordure de Gueules*, & his crie *Limoges.*

Le Sire d'Albret, *qui portoit de Gueules*, *& cried Labrit.*

The Lord of *Comborne*, *qui portoit d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules coronne d'Azur, langue, & arme de Sable.*

The Lord of *Leſparre*, *Lozenge d'Or*, *& de Gueules*, *&* his crie *Leſparre.*

The Lord of *Villars*, *Eſcartele d'Or*, *& de Gueules*, *&* his crie *Villars.*

The Lord of *Herpedenne de Belle-Ville*, *qui portoit Gyronne de Vair*, *& de Gueules de dix pieces.*

The Lord of *Cardillac*, *de Gueules au Lyon d'Argent*, *a l'Orle de Bezans de meſmes.*

The Lord of *Barbazan.*

The Lord of *Montmiral*, *qui portoit Burele d'Argent & de Sable a vn Lyon de Gueules.* & his crie *Montmiral.*

The Lord of *la Trimouille*, *d'Or a Trois Aigles d'Azur a vn Cheuron de Gueules.*

The Lord of *la Salle*, *Ondoye d'Argent & Gueules de huict pieces*, & his crie *Mars.* And many other Knights and Esquires of *Guienne, Francois.*

Ceux qui y furent de ladite Marche, tenans le party des Anglois, & pour eſtre a ceſte treſ ſaincte Iournee vouldrent honorer, & paſſer ſous la Banniere du Roy de France qui a l'aller, & le Iour de la Battaille fut portee par le Seigneur de Chaſtel-Fromond Cheualier Angeuin, & au Retour pour ſes bleſſeures par le Seigneur de Mauleurier Angeuin.

THe Lord of *Bearn*, *qui portoit d'Or a Deux Vaches de Gueules, accollees, accornees*, & *clarinees d'Azur*, & his crie *Bearn.*

The Captall of *Buch*, *d'Or a vne Croix de Sable, a Cinq Coquilles d'Argent.*

Le Loup de Foix, *qui portoit de Gueules a vn Loup d'Or Langue, Ongle, & Dente d'Argent.*

The Lord of *Montferrant*, *d'Or a quatre Paux de Gueules, a la Bordure de Sable*, *&* his crie *Montferrant.*

The Lord of *Duraz*, *qui portoit d'Or a vn Lyon d'Azur à la Bande d'Argent*, *&* his crie *Duras.* With many other Knights and Esquires of the ſame *Parte* and *Marches* of *Aquitaine.*

Thoſe of the *Marche* of *Anjou, Touraine, & le Maine.*

THe Vicount of *Beaumont, qui portoit de France au Lyon naiſſant d'Argent Langue & Arme de Gueules*, and his crie *Beaumont.*

Meſſire Hue de Craon, Lozenge d'Or, & de Gueules, a la Bordure d'Argent, and his crie *Craon.*

The Lord of *Mauleurier, d'Or au Chef de Gueules,* & his crie *Maulcurier.*

The Lord of *Mathefelon, qui portoit de Gueules a Six Eſcuſſons d'Or*, & his crie *Mathefelon.*

The Lord *Dauoir*, *d'Argent au Lyon d'Azur au Lambeau de meſmes*, & his crie *Dauoir.*

The Lord of *Chaſtel-fromont, qui porta la Banniere de France, & portoit de Gueules a la Croix ancre d'Or.*

The Lord of *Bueil*, *d'Azur à Sept Croiſettes, recroiſettes au pied ficqe d'Or*, & his crie *Bueil.*

The Lord of *Monte-Iean, d'Or frette de Gueules, en Chef vn Lyon naiſſant de meſmes, coronne d'Azur*, & his crie *Monte-Iean*

The Lord of *Beauuau, d'Argent a Quatre Lyonceaux de Gueules coronnez d'Azur, languez & armez d'Or.* And many other Knights and Eſquires of *Anjou.*

Thoſe which were of the *Marche* and of *Touraine.*

THe Lord *d'Amboiſe*, *qui portoit Palle de Six pieces, d'Or, & de Gueules,* & his crie *Amboiſe.*

The Lord of *Mailly. Ondeye d'Or, & de Gueules*, & his crie *Mailly.*

The Lord of *Preſigny, qui portoit Palle contre Palle a Deux Quantons Gironnez, Faiſſe, contre-Faiſſe d'Or & d'Azur a l'Eſcuſſon d'Argent, au milieu.* Theſe Armes in my corrected Manuſcript are thus Emblazoned.

D'Or & d'Azur au pied party
Au Chef Palle, Faiſſe contre-Faiſſe
A Deux Quantons Gyronnez, & vn Eſcu d'Argent
Parmy, ſont les Armes de Preſigny.

His Warre crie *Preſigny.*

The Lord of *L'Iſle-Bouchart, de Gueules a Deux Leopards d'Argent Languez, & Armez d'Azur*, & his crie *L'Iſle-Bouchart.*

The Lord of *Mont-Bazon, qui portoit de Gueules au Lyon d'Or* & his crie *Mont-Bazon.*

The Lord of *Saincte-More*, qui port... *d'Argent a la Feſſe de Gueules*, & ... *Saincte-More*

The Lord of *Marmande*, d'Or a Deu... *Feſſes de Sable*, & his crie *Marmande.*

The Lord of *Saintre*, qui portoit de Gu... *eules a la Bande d'Or*, au Lambeau de Tro... *pieces de meſme*, his crie *Saintre.* And ma... ny other Knights and Eſquires of the ſa... *Marche* and *Duchie* of *Touraine* and ... *Anjou.*

That were of the Countie of *Maine.*

THe Lord of *la Val*, who was th... made Knight, *qui portoit d'Or a ... Croix de Gueules, a Cinq Cocquilles d'Ar... & Quatre Aiglettes* (wee ſhould ſay ... *heryons) de meſme ſur chaque quartier*, ... his crie *Laual.*

The Lord of *Tuſſe, qui portoit de Sa... a Quatre Feſſes Iumelles d'Argent*, & h... crie *Tuſſe.*

The Lord of *Sarcel. De Synople au L... on d'Argent.*

The Lord of *Cormes*, *d'Argent a Tro... Feſſes Iumellees de Sable.*

The Lord of *Eſchelles*, *qui portoit ... Gueules a Trois Feſſes d'Argent.*

The Lord of *la Foreſt, qui portoit d'A... gent au Chef-Endente de Sable.*

The Lord of *Beauchamp, qui portoit d'Or a vne Deuſſe de Gueules en Chef, a l'Orle ... Six Merlettes de meſmes.*

The Lord of *Mont-fort*, *de Gueule... Deux Leopards*, *d'Or*, *Armes d'Argent.* With many other Knights and Eſquires of the ſame Countie *du Maine, & Ma...* of *Anjou.*

Thoſe of the *Marche* of *Ponthieu*, whi... ſome tearme of *Oye.*

THe Vicounte of *Queſnes*, *qui porto... d'Argent a vne Croix de Gueules Fre... tee d'Or.*

The Lord of *Rembures*, *d'Or a Tro... Feſſes de Gueules.*

The Lord of *Brimeu*, *d'Argent a Tro... Aigles de Gueules membrees d'Azur.*

The Lord of *Picquegny, qui portoit Fe... d'Or*, & *de Gueules contre-Feſſe d'Argen... & d'Azur*, & his crie *Pequigny.*

The Lord of *Dambronne*, *Feſſe de Hui... pieces d'Or, & de Gueules.*

The Lord of *Creſquy*, *d'Or a vn Cre... quier de Gueules*, & his crie *Creſquy.*

The Lord of *Vicamie, de Gueules a Deux Bars adoſſez d'Or, aux Croix Recroiſettes au pied fichê de meſmes.*

The

The Lord of *Linieres*, *d'Argent a la ... de Gueules*, & his crie *Linieres.* With many other Knights and Squires of the ſame *Marche.*

Of the *Marche* of *Vermandois.*

THe Lord of *Hangeſt, qui portoit d'Or a la Croix de Gueules*, & his crie *Hangeſt.*

The Lord of *Ioully*, *d'Argent a vne Croix de Gueules chargee de Cinq Cocquilles d'Or.*

The Lord of *Moi*, *de Gueules frette Or*, & his crie *Cercelles.*

The Lord of *Flauy*, *d'Ermines a la Croix de Gueules a Cinq Cocquilles d'Or*, & his crie *Flauy.*

The Lord of *Roye, de Gueules a la Bande Argent*, his crie *Roye.* And many other Knights and Squires of the ſaid *Marche.*

Thoſe of the *Marche* of *Corby* that were there.

The Lord of *Saucourt*, *qui portoit ... d'Argent Frette de Gueules*, & his ... crie *Saucourt.*

The Lord of *Herily, qui porte de Gueu... a la Bande d'Or*, & his crie *Herily.*

The Lord of *Mailly, d'Or a Trois Mail... de Synople*, & his crie *Mailly.*

The Lord of *Rubempre*, *d'Argent a ... Feſſes Iumellees de Gueules*, & his ... crie *Rubempre.*

The Lord of *Miraulmont d'Argent a ... Tourteaux de Gueules*, & his crie ... *Miraulmont.*

The Lord of *Aubigny*, *d'Argent a ... Feſſe de Gueules*, & his crie *Aubigny.* With diuers other Knights and Squires of the ſame *Marche.*

Thoſe of the *Marche* of *Normandie.*

The Lord of *Chaſtel-Gontier*, Sonne to the Counte *du Perche*, *qui portoit Argent a Deux Cheurons de Gueules*, & his crie *Perche.*

The Lord of *Yury*, *qui portoit d'Or a Trois Cheurons de Gueules*, & his crie *Yury.*

The Lord of *Manny, de Sable a la Croix fleſchee d'Argent*, & his crie *Manny.*

The Lord of *Grauille*, *qui portoit Azur a la Feſſe d'Argent*, *a Croiſettes Or*, & his crie *de Grauille.*

The Lord of *Forges*, *portoit d'Azur a ... Bezans d'Or*, & his crie *Forges.*

The Lord of *la Haye*, *d'Argent a Trois ... uſſons de Gueules*, & his crie *Haye.*

The Lord of *Bracquemont*, *de Sable a vn Cheuron d'Argent*

The Lord of *Trouuille, qui portoit d'Argent a Deux Bandes de Gueules, a l'Orle de Cocquilles de meſmes.*

The Lord of *Ferrieres de Gueules a vn Eſcuſſon d'Ermines a la Feſſe de Gueules, l'Eſcu Orle de Fers de Cheual d'Or* his crie *Ferrieres.*

The Lord of *Gamaches*, *d'Argent au Chef d'Azur a vn Baſton de Gueules*, & his crie *Gamaches.* And many other Knights and Squires of *Normandie.*

Thoſe of the *Marches* of *Berry, Bourbonnis*, and of *Auuergne.*

THe Count of *Sancerre, qui portoit de Champagne a la Bordure de Gueules*, & his crie *Paſſe auant:* On Afore.

The Viſcounte of *Villenoir, qui portoit d'Argent au Lyon d'Azur* his crie *la Belle.* At the Faireſt.

Monſieur Philip of *Bourbon, qui portoit d'Or au Lyon de Gueules a l'Orle de Cocquilles d'Azur* (Theſe are the Armes of the *Archambaulds* Lords of *Bourbon*) & his crie *Bourbon.*

The Lord of *Chaſtel-Morant, de Gueules a Trois Lyons d'Argent*, *coronnez & armez d'Or* & his crie *Chaſtel-Morant.*

The Lord *des Barres, d'Or a la Croix de Synople*, & his crie *Les Barres.*

The Lord of *la Tour d'Auuergne*, *qui portoit ſeme de France a vne Tour d'Argent maſſonnee de Sable*, & his cry *La Tour*

The Lord of *Montagu*, *qui portoit de Gueules a vn Lyon d'Ermines*, & his crie *Montagu.*

The Lord of *Chalenſon, qui portoit de Gueules a trois Teſtes Arrachees de Lyons d'Or*, & his crie *Chalenſon.* And many other Knights and Squires of the ſaid *Marche.*

Thoſe of the *Marche* of *Bretagne*, and were there.

THe Counte of *l'Iſle*, *qui portoit de Gueules a la Croix yuidee, clechee, & pommettee d'Or* & his crie *l'Iſle.*

The Vicount of *Lesbeliere*, *qui portoit Eſcartele d'Argent*, & *de Gueules*, his crie *La Beſliere.*

The Lord of *Chaſtel-Briant*, *de Gueules ſeme de Fleurs de Lys d'Or*, his crie *Chaſteau Briant.*

The Lord *de Raiz*, *qui portoit d'Or à vne Croix de Sable*, and cried *Raiz.*

The Lord *de Maleſtroict*, *de Gueules a Bezans d'Or*, & cried *Maleſtroict.* With

many other Knights and Squires of that *Marche*.

Thoſe of the *March* of *Artois* who went thither.

Meſsire Lewes *d'Artois, qui portoit d'Artois, c'eſt de Gueules au Lyon d'Or, Arme d'Azur, &* cried *Artois.*

The Count of *Sainct* Paul, who was made Knight before Battaile giuen to the Miſcreants. *Il portoit d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules paſſee & nouee en Soultour, coronne & arme d'Or.*

The Lord of *Freſnes, qui portoit d'Argent au Lyon de Sable, &* cried *Freſnes.*

The Lord of *Betunes, qui portoit d'Argent a la Feſſe de Gueules, &* cried *Betune.*

The Lord of *Renty, de Gueules a Trois Dolouers d'Argent &* cried *Renty.*

The Lord of *Creſques, d'Azur a Trois Feſſes Iumellees d'Or, &* cried *Bourgongne.*

The Lord of *Bailleul, qui portoit Trois Faiſſes Vairees d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

The Lord *d'Inchy Faiſſe d'Or, & de Sable de Six pieces, &* cried *Inchy.*

The Lord of *Humiers, qui portoit d'Argent Frette de Sable au Lambel de Gueules.* And many other Knights and Squires of the ſame *Marche.*

Of the *Marche* for the *Duchie &* Countie of *Bourgongne.*

THe Lord of *Chaſtillon, qui portoit d'Azur au Lyon d'Or, &* cried *Chaſtillon.*

The Counte *d'Auxerre, qui portoit de Gueules, a la Bande d'Or, &* cried *Auxerre.*

The Lord of *Montagu.....*

The Lord of *Vergy, de Gueules a Trois Quinte fuilles d'Or, (alias d'Argent) &* cried *Vergy.*

The Lord of *Sainct George, de Gueules à la Croix d'Or.*

The Lord of *Charny, de Gueules a Trois Eſcuſſons d'Argent, &* cried *Charny.*

The Lord of *Chaſſeumoy, de Gueules a la Feſſe d'Or.*

The Lord *d'Auſsigny, de Sable a Deux Bars adeſſez d'Or, ſeme de Croiſettes recroiſettees de meſme, &* cried *Auſsigny.* And many other Knights and Squires of the ſame *Marche.*

Thoſe of *Barrois, &* of *Lorraine.*

THe Lord of *Pantamouſſon, qui portoit de Bar,* that is to ſay *d'Azur ſeme de Croix Recroiſettees au pied fiche d'Or, a deux Bars adoſſez de meſmes, au Lambeau d'Argent.* And cried *le Pont.*

The Lord of *Pierrefort, portoit de Bar, a la Bordure de Gueules, &* cried *Pierrefort.*

The Lord of *Dun, qui portoit de Gueules a la Bordure d'Ermines, &* cried *Dun.*

Meſsire Ferry de Vaudemont, Burele d'Argent & de Sable, and cried *Vaudemont.*

The Lord of *Baufremont, qui portoit Vaire d'Or, & de Gueules, &* cried *Baufremont.*

The Lord *d'Aſpremont, de Gueules a la Croix d'Argent, &* cried *d'Aſpremont.*

The Lord of *Toullon, qui portoit de Vaudemont au Baſton de Gueules.*

The Lord of *Kuppes, qui portoit de Baufremont, au Baſton d'Azur.*

The Lord *des Armoiſes, qui portoit Gyronne de douze pieces d'Or, & d'Azur.* With many other Squires Knights and Gentlemen.

Thoſe of *Lorraine,* and *of Barr* altogether.

Monſieur Nicolas de Lorraine, qui portoit de Lorraine a vne Lordure endentee d'Azur, & cried *Prigny.*

The Counte of *Chiny, Burele d'Or & de Gueules au Lyon de Sable, &* cried *Chiny.*

The Count of *Clermont en Baſsigny, qui portoit de Gueules a vn Cerf d'Argent.*

The Count de *Grand-pre, Burele d'Or & de Gueules.*

The Lord of *Grancy, qui portoit d'Argent au Chef de Gueules.*

The Lord of *Brey, Eſchiquete d'Or & de Sable à la Bande d'Argent a deux Cottices de meſme.* With many other Knights and Squires of the *Marches* of *Germany* which they call *Ruyers.*

Thoſe which were there of *Daulphine* together.

THe Lord of *Clermont, qui portoit de Gueules a deux Clefs d'Argent en Saultoir,* and cried *Clermont.*

The Lord of *Vaubonnois .....*

The Lord of *Saſſenaige, Burele d'Argent & d'Azur au Lyon de Gueules couronne d'Or, &* cried *Saſſenaige.*

The Lord of *Manbech, qui portoit Gueules a trois Leopards d'Or, armez d'Argent, &* cried *Manbech.*

The Lord of *Chaſteau neuf, d'Argent au Chef de Gueules, &* cried *Chaſteau-neuf.*

The Lord of *Bellecombe, qui portoit d'Or a la Bande de Sable, &* cried *Bellecombe.*

The Lord of *Menlor, au Lyon de Vair.*

The Lord of *Chaſteau-vilain, Gyronne d'Argent & de Sable de huict pieces.*

The Lord of *Groye, de Vair au Chef de Gueules au Lyon naiſſant d'Or.*

And many other Knights and Squires, to ſerue the King vnder his Banner in the Battaile; where were more then an Hundred and threeſcore Banners, beſide thoſe which were caried on the day of Battaile giuen to the *Sarrazins.* All that ſerued both on Horſe and Foote, were cloathed in Scarlet Coates of Armes, with White Croſſes.

At this voyage to *Pruſia*, there ioyned with the *French*, Eight Lords of *England*, as namely

The Earle of *Marche: Qui portoit d'Azur a Trois Feſſes d'Or a l'Eſcuſſon d'Argent ſur le Chef.* And his crie was *La Marche.*

The Earle of *Northampton: qui portoit d'Azur a la Bande d'Argent, chargee de Trois Merlettes de Gueules.* Eight Lords of England ioyned in the Expedition.

The Earle of *Suffolke: Qui portoit de Sable a la Croix d'Or;* And cried *Suffolke.*

The Lord of *Cobehurſt: qui portoit de Gueules au Chiuron d'Or a trois Lyons de Sable, & croiſt Haſton.*

The Lord of *Clifford, qui portoit Eſchiquete d'Or, & d'Azur a la Bande d'Ermines, & cried Clifford.*

The Lord *L'Iſle: qui portoit d'Or a deux Chaurons de Sable;* And cried *L'Iſle.*

The Lord of *Moulins, qui portoit de Sable au Chef d'Argent chargé de trois Lozenges de Gueules;* And cried *Moulins.*

The Lord of *Rocqueby* or *Rugby: qui portoit d'Argent au Sautoire de Sable.*

At the departure of this Royall Armie from the Citty of *Paris*, to ſet on for *Pruſia*, thus was the appointment.

The Royall Armies Marche towards Pruſia.

FIrſt of all went the Purſuiuants of Armes, Two and Two together, carying their Coates of Armes vpon their armes, the fore-part backward.

After them followed the Heraukles, wearing the Coates of Armes belonging to their Lords, in direct manner, as it ought to be, riding two and two together.

After them followed the Trumpets in great numbers, two and two together.

Next them came the Kings of Armes, of the Marches and Prouinces of *France*, wearing their Coates of Armes in right manner, two and two together.

Then came *Montioye*, King of Armes for *France*, ryding in his Coate Royall of Armes, and alone by himſelfe.

After theſe followed the Lord of *Chaſtel freumont*, who bare the Banner of the King: riding in the midſt betweene my Lords the Dukes of *Anieu*, and *Berry*.

Then came my Lord of *Bourgongne*, riding on the right hand, and *Saintre*, Generall of the Armie, on the left.

Next after *Saintre*, followed the three Chiefe Banners (and moſt auncienctly caried) by appointment from the King, according to relations made by the auncienteſt Bookes of the *Montioyes*, Kings of Armes in *France*, who from all times of Antiquity, were wont to take knowledge (by their viſitations in the Marches and Prouinces of the Kingdome) in ſuch caſes being accompanied with the other Kings of Armes of the Prouinces; for the keeping and maintaining Honour, as it eſpecially behoued; to auoide alſo iniuries, clamours, and idle conceites, deuiſed by wanton Ladies and Lords.

After thoſe three Banners, came the Lords to whom they appertained. And then The other Banners, and the Lords of them marching in order, Three and three together, according to Antiquity, and as the ſaid Banners were wount to be caried.

In *Pruſia*, the Royall Army met with that from the Emperour; whereof the Duke of *Brunſwick* caried the Banner: *Qui eſtoit d'Or, a vn Aigle eſploye de Sable.* The meeting of the whole Armie together in *Pruſia.*

That from the King of *Hungary*, whereof the Duke of *Morauia* caried the Banner. *Qui eſtoit Faiſſe de Huict pieces de Gueules, & d'Argent.*

The King of *Behaigne* (that is *Bohemia*, was there in person: *Qui portoit de Gueulx a vn Lyon d'Argent, la queue nouee, fourchee, & Croisee, Coronne & Arme d'Or.* And with him were the Duke of *Saxonie* (that is *Saxon* himselfe) the Marquesse of *Brandenbeurg*, the Count *Palatine*, with the Grands, Lords and Prelates of *Germanie*, to witt, of *Gologne*, *Treuers*, *Magnuce*, *Passaw* and *Liege*.

Saintre made Knight by the King of *Behemia* before the Battaile.

When the day of Battaile was come, after Masse had beene said in the Campe by the Archbishop of *Cologne*, and the Benediction giuen by the Cardinall of *Hostia*, Legate of the Croisade against the miscreants: *Saintre* mounted vpon his Horse for seruice, and riding to the King of *Bohemia*, there drawing forth his Sword; in the name of God, our Lady, and my Lord Saint *Denys*, required of him the Order of Knighthood.

An auncient Ceremony concerning Banners in Battailes.

The good King (who affected *Saintre* and all the *Frenche*) very ioyfully gaue him the Accollade and Order: desiring God to giue him therwith ioy and honour, such as his owne heart could wish for. And so thence forward he was called by them all, the Lord of *Saintre*.

At the time when hee was made Knight, hee aduanced his Banner: *Both his and many Banners more beside were there raised, and cut with tailes, as the Pennes were.*

This Auncient Ceremonie, was (to good purpose) obserued by the *Angenin Romancer*. For it is generally knowne, that the Enseigne for a company of Souldiours on Horseback, finisheth at the pointe with two tailes, as we vse to teatme them. The Gaidon likewise finisheth in Poincte, and hath but one taile only: But the Cornette is square, according as the Banner of *France* is, and those of the Barons and Knights *Bannerets*. And those Barons, which desire to haue the name and ranck of Knights *Bannerets* on dayes of Battaile: ought to present their Enfignes to the Generall of the Armie; who cutting the ends and points of them, maketh them square, which we call Banners. Whence came the common Prouerbe, giuen (by way of mockerie) to a poore Knight *Banneret*. *The Knight with the Squared Flagge or Banner.*

An example made good before the Duke of *Bourgongne*.

Oliuer de la Marche, in his History of *Flanders*, noateth this auncient fashion of bearing Banners, and saith: That the King of Armes presented to the Duke of *Bourgongne* (in a certaine expedition of warre) the Lord of *Sains*, who held the Penon of his plaine Armes on the end of his Launce, and said

Monseigneur Veez cy le Seigneur de Sains, qui est yssu d'Ancienne Banniere a vous subiecte; la Seigneurie principale est es mains de son Aisne, la Seigneurie de Sains est tenu de Banniere d'Ancienneté, il vous supplie le faire Banneret, et le releuer en Banniere, il vous presente son Penon, accompagne de Vingt Cinq Hommes d'Armes. Le Roy d'Armes bailla vn Coulteau au Duc, le Duc prit au tour de sa Main la queue du Penon, & de l'autre Main coupa ladicte queue auec le Coulteau, & demeura quarre en Banniere, qui auparauant estoit estendu a la pointe en queue.

My Lord, behold heere the Lord of Sains, Who is descended of an Auncient Mannr subiect to you; the principall Lordship is in the hands of his Eldest Brother, the Seigneurie of Sains is Banner Land from Antiquitie. Hee humbly entreateth you to make him a Banneret, and to raise it to a Banner; he presenteth you his Penon, accompanied with fiue and Twenty men of Armes. The King of Armes deliuered a Knife to the Duke, and the Duke tooke into his hand the tayle of the Penon, and by the strength of the other hand, cut the tayle with the Knife, and it remained a square Banner, which before was extended to the pointe in taile.

The

The Crosse of the Order of Liuonia; called of the Bretheren *Sword-Bearers*: Instituted in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred and three.

Croix de l'Ordre de Liuome, dict de Freres Porte-Glaiues.

CHAP. XIII.

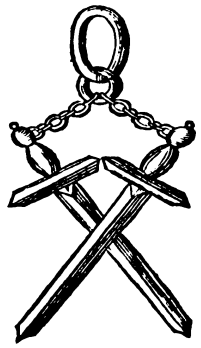
The Institution of the Order of Liuonia: *Called of the Bretheren* Sword-Bearers.

The situation of *Liuonia*, & Paganisme of the people.

Iuonia is a Prouince seated very farre Northerly, shut vp on the one side with the *Balthicke* Sea: And pressed on the other by them of *Prusia*, *Russia*, *Lithuania*, *Moscouia* and *Tartaria*. The Inhabitants thereof had long time liued in Paganisme, and yet to this present, in those parts far remote from good Townes of the Countrey: they doe liue like bruite beasts, without any apprehension or knowledge of God, some of them adoring the Sunne and the Moone, and the other any Tree, that hath his head or top highest exalted. Some likewise honor the glorious Starres, as they voyage and passe from one Countrey to another: Others a Serpent, or the first creature they can meete withall after comming forth of their Cottages. In briefe, they are a very miserable and abiect kinde of people.

The Merchants of *Breme* ioyned traffick with the *Liuonians*.

In the time of Pope *Alexander* the third, and of the Emperour *Barbarossa*, it forrunned, that the Merchants of *Breme* were carried by a gale of winde, vpon the coasts of the *Liuonian* Sea: and there with the dwellers in the Iland, they made a contract of amitie, for further assurance of traffick, which they desired to haue afterward with them. These Merchants had some Priests among them, who, neere to that part of the Riuer *Dune*, where it swallowoweth it selfe in the maine Sea: they erected a little Oratorie therein to celebrate Diuine Seruice, so long as they should make their abiding there. And from that time forward, there was open Traffick betweene the *Germaines* and the Inhabitants of *Liuonia*.



Maynard the first Bishop of *Liuonia*.

In the yeare One thousand one hundred threescore and twelue, the Merchants of *Lubek* made a voyage thither, taking along with them in their company, a good and deuout Monke of the Abbey of *Segeberge*, named *Maynard*, a man of holy life, who mounted on the wings of zealous deuotion, and accompanied with one Seruant; concluded to learne the Countries language, to the end, that he might bestow his best endeauour, for conuerting those poore Infidels, to the diuine worship of one onely God. With Fagot-sticks they erected a poore Fielden Lodging, and ioyned likewise thereto a small Oratorie, in honour of the blessed Virgin, and there began to enstruct the Countrey Inhabitants. Within a while after, this good man *Maynard* was (by the Archbishop of *Breme*) Sacred the first Bishop of *Liuonia*.

He had for his Successour *Bertholde*, a Monke of Saint *Paule* in the Citie of *Breme*, and of the *Cisteaux* Order, who willingly imployed his paines, and laboured very industriously to winne the conuersion of those Idolaters. But perceiuing that milde and gentle courses sorted to no effect; he preached for a Croisade throughout *Germanie* against them, and marched himselfe the foremost man in the Christian Armie, carrying a Crosse very highly aduanced. But his Horse happening to be vnbrideled,

vnbridled, ran with him mainely in among the enemies, who massacred and hewed him in numberlesse pieces. This vnfortunate death of his chanced in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred fourescore and seauenteene, but proued to be the occasion of a generall Crosssade. *Berthold* had for Successour

Albert, a Monke of *Breme* likewise, to whom repaired two of his Kinsmen, *Engelbert* and *Theorie* of *Tissench*, with some other rich Merchants, men of good and sanctimonious life, who being Religiously moued and incited, to fight against the Infidels of *Liuonia*: renounced the world, with all his bewitching vanities, taking the Oath and Vowe of Obedience and Chastitie, in presence of the Bishop *Albert*. He prescribed them the Rule and Cloathing of the *Cisteaux*, a long white Cassocke, with a blacke Hood, hauing on the left side (neere to the shoulder) a Red Sword, with the Crosse Black. And directly on the breast two such Swords, made *en Sautoir*, with the points hanging downward, whereupon they were called: *The Brotheren Sword Bearers*.

The beginning and Forme of the Order.

Les Freres Porte-Glaiues

This Order was approued and confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third: And the profession of this Military and Monasticall Order, became fully Instituted in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred & three: the first Great Maister whereof was *Vinno*, who was traiterously slaine by the *Russians*: He had for Successour *Volquin*, in whose time of Maistership, *Albert* caused a Towne to be builded, named *Riga*, and engirt it round with Walles. It was seated on the Riuer of *Duno*, in the very same place, where the good Bishop *Maynard* had erected his little Oratorie.

The first Great Maister of the Order.

After Bishop *Albert* succeeded *Nicholas*; and after *Nicholas* another *Albert*, who was made Archbishop of *Riga* the Episcopall See; which had formerly acknowledged for Metropolitane, the Archbishop of *Lunde* in *Denmarke*. By erection of *Riga* into an Archbishoprick; he had giuen him for Suffraganes and Dioceseanes, *Curon*, *Sarbat* and *Oxilien*.

The first Archbishop of *Liuonia*.

Volquin, second Great Maister of *Liuonia*, being basely slaine by them of *Lithuania*; the Brotheren of the said Order (being assembled together in their Generall Chapter, perceiued apparantly, that they were not in strength sufficiently seated and enabled, to resist against so many enemies, as lay heauily vpon them; as namely; those of *Liuonia*, the *Lithuanians*, *Aescouites* and *Russians*. Wherefore they ioyned themselues with the *Almaygns* or *Teutones* Knights, whose Rule & habite they tooke, knitting themselues into one Body with them, in the yeare One thousand two hundred thirtie and Seauen. So that by the meanes of this Vnion, the foure Bishoprickes of *Prussia* acknowledged for Metropolitane, the Archbishop of *Riga*: And the vnitie was made in the time of the Great Maister of the *Teutones Herman de Saltza*, who had for his Lieutenant in *Prussia*

Two Orders of Knighthood ioyned in one.

Herman de Valckion, made first Maister of *Liuonia* of the *Order of the Teutones*, in the same yeare before obserued. This Order was thus coniointly held by the *Brotheren Teutones*, vntill the time of the Great Maister *Gaultier de Pletemberg*, who by his valiant carriage brought all his neighbouring enemies to tearmes of duties: But more especially the Duke of *Moscouia*, enforced to purchase a Truce for fiue yeares.

The Duke of *Moscouia* purchaseth a truce

In his time the Great Maister of *Prussia*, *Albert*, Marquesse of *Brandenbourg*, embracing no longer the *Romish* Religion, but cleauing to that of the Reformed Church, in the very same yeare before remembred: the said *Gaultier* seperated the *Order of Liuonia*, from obedience and subiection to *Albert*, Duke of *Prussia*, paying therefore a summe of money.

By vertue of this disiunction, *Gaultier* was Great Maister of *Liuonia*, and made Prince of the Empire, possessing that charge, vntill the yeare One thousand fiue hundred thirty and fiue. And others after him (as is noated by *Functius*) haue held the Principalitie, and title of Great Maister of *Liuonia*, with great and full power: vntill the time of the Great Maister *William de Fustemberg*, vanquished in Battaile, and detained prisoner by the Duke of *Moscouia*, who seruing his owne turne with partialities and deuisions, moued betweene the Principals of this Order, and the Archbishoppe of *Riga William* of *Brandenbourg*, Brother to the last Great Maister

Two men of Great valour and Iudgement.

Maister of *Prussia Albert*: ouer-ran and rauaged (at his owne pleasure) all *Liuonia* and the neighbouring Prouinces, breaking (by this meanes) the Truce concluded with *Gaultier* of *Pletemberg*.

Finally, this Order of *Liuonia* (euen as the rest) hath bin forced to kisse the ground, vnder the last Great Maister thereof *Gothard de Ketler*, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred threescore and one, when he became one of the reformed Church, yeelding himselfe Subiect and Liedgeman to the Crowne of *Poland*, in the presence of King *Sigismond Augustus*; who made him Duke of *Curlandia*, and other Seigneuries beside, reunited to the Crowne of *Poland*, according as the rights were belonging to the Archbishop of *Riga*.

Liuonia ouer-run by the Duke of *Moscouia*.

The auncient custome of the people of *Liuonia* (before they were illuminated with the Faith of Iesus Christ) was, to make merry banqueting among their dead, and drinking as well to them, as the liuing, throwing Goblets full of their Brennage vpon the Biere. Afterward, they would put them into the Pit or Graue, furnishing them with Meate and Drinke, and a Hatchet to make his Cabane withall: as also a piece of Coyne, for paying his passage into the other World, saying thus to him. *Go, get thee into the other world, where thou maist command ouer the Teutones, as they did to thee in this World here.*

A custome among the *Liuonians* before they were Christians.

The Order of the Beare, called of Saint *Gall* in *Switzerland* or *Swetia*: Instituted by the Emperour *Fredericke*, second of the name: In the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred and thirteene.

L'Ordre de l'Ours dict de Sainct Gal, en Suisse.

CHAP. XIV.

THis Order was Instituted by the Emperour *Fredericke*, second of the name, and in the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred and thirteene, when (moued by deuotion) he came on Pilgrimage to the Abbey of Saint *Gall*. In fauour of whom, and of his Abbot, as also the Noble men of the Countrey; he gaue thereto great Priuiledges, in acknowledgement of what kindenesse he had receiued from them, in exalting him to the Empire, by deposition of the Emperour *Otho*, fourth of the name. Whereupon he Instituted *The Order of the Beare*, giuing vnto the chiefest Lords thereof, Collers and Chaines of Gold, at the end whereof hung the Figure of a Beare of Gold, enamelled with Blacke.

It was his will and meaning, that this Order should be conferred and giuen, by the succeeding Abbots of Saint *Gall*. According to the Golden Bull of this Institution, the Knights ought to meete yearely (except some lawfull and iust excuse were the hinderance) in the Abbey of Saint *Gall*, at the solemnitie vsed for this Apostle of the *Germanes*, which is alwayes celebrated the sixteenth day of October, vpon which day, such Knights as were thereto appointed, should receiue this Order by the hands of the Abbot; as we learne by *Walafridus Strabo*, in his Ecclesiasticall History, and from the Monke of Saint *Gall*. *Hoc die mos est, vt nocte præcedenti, Vigilys facis, gladys super manus Altare positis, & benedictis, post Vigilias, & Balneas, noui Milites ab Abbate, militari Cingulo, & Vrsi Torque Aureo decorentur, post obsequium Monasterio nostro & Abbati præstitum.*

This Order always to be giuen by the Abbot of Saint *Gall*.

This *Order of the Beare*, was Instituted in the honour and memorie of Saint *Vrsus*, of the Legion of the *Thebes*, Martyred before the Temple, or Tower of the Sunne at

at *Soleurre*; where the body resteth, vnder the high Altar of the Collegiate Church, in the same place: built by the Queene of *France Bertha*, with the great foote, wife to our King *Charlemaigne*. The Epitaphe for the Martyre hath these words

Conditur hoc Tumulo Sanctus Thebaidus Vrsus.

The reason of this Orders cessation.

And this Order held long time in full estimation, throughout all the Cantons of the *Switzers*, before they were deliuered from obedience to the House of *Austria*. But after their Common-wealth grew to be free, and the Castles and strong places of the Lords and Gentlemen of the Countrey, were raced and ruined: the memory thereof became altogether lost.

How they became so named.

The *Switzers* (called by *Cæsar Heluctians*) one of the most powerfull people among the *Gaules*; did take their name of *Suits*, one of the very least of the thirteene Cantons. And to vnderstand summarily, the estate and condition of this common-wealth (the onely warlike people of Christendome:) it is to be obserued, that they are deuided and distinguished in three seuerall parts.

The first is of thirteene Cantons allied together, which are numbred and counted in this manner.

The thirteene Cantons.

1. *Zurich.*	7. *Zug.*
2. *Berne.*	8. *Glaris.*
3. *Lucerne.*	9. *Basile.*
4. *Vri.*	10. *Fribourg.*
5. *Smits.*	11. *Soleurre,*
6. *Vnderuall.*	12. *Schaffaushe.*

13. And *Appentzell.*

Allies and Confederates

The second is of the Allies and Confederates to these thirteene Cantons. First of all. The Abbot of Saint *Gall*, a Prince Soueraigne: And the Citie of Saint *Gall*: The *Grisons*; The Bishop of *Syon*, a Prince Soueraigne, Spirituall and Temporall, of the higher and lower *Valois*: *Mulhouse* and *Schaffaushe-Bienne*.

Bailiwickes.

The last containeth the Bailiwicks gouerned, in common by the thirteene Cantons, to wit; *Turgaw*, *Bada*, *Rhintall* (that is to say Mountaines washed by the *Rhine*, and those Mountaines are called *Rheguscos*) *Sargans*, the Free Prouince, the Inhabitants of *Lugano*, *Locarna*, *Mendrisi*, and the *Val-Madia*. To which Bailiwickes are also annexed those of *Bellizona*, subiects to three small Cantons.

Cities and Townes.

The Cities and Townes of these three parts, are *Zurich*, *Berne*, *Lucerna*, *Zug*, *Basile*, *Fribourg*, *Soleurre*, *Schaffouse*, *Sainct Gall*, *Cours* (chiefest of the leagued *Grisons*) *Syon*, chiefest of *Valois*: *Rotuille*, *Mulhouse* and *Brenne*; the rest are big Boroughes and great Villages.

Situation of the Allies and Confederates

Basile is not in *Swetia* or *Switzerland*, but a Quarter apart by it selfe, the Inhabitants whereof haue bin (from all times) called *Rauraques*. *Schaffouze* is in *Germanie* beyond the *Rhine*. Those of *Glarys* and of *Vri*, doe hold of *Italie*, gently touching the Alpes and *Grisons*. In like manner the other Allies (Saint *Gall* excepted) are out of *Swetia*. For the *Grisons*, called *Retians*, and their chiefe Citie *Curia Retorum*; and those of *Valois*, sometimes called *Veragri*, and afterward *Viberini*, and *Sedunenses*, and their Capitall dwelling *Sedunum Veragrorum*, are within the Alpes. *Rotuille* is of *Germanie*; and *Mulhouse* a March of the *Franche* County. They of *Rhintall* and of *Sargans*, are *Grisons*: As *Lugano*, *Locarna*, *Mendriza*. *Bellizona*; and the *Val-Madia*, are *Italians*, both by language and Originall. The other Allies and Bailiwickes are in *Swetia*.

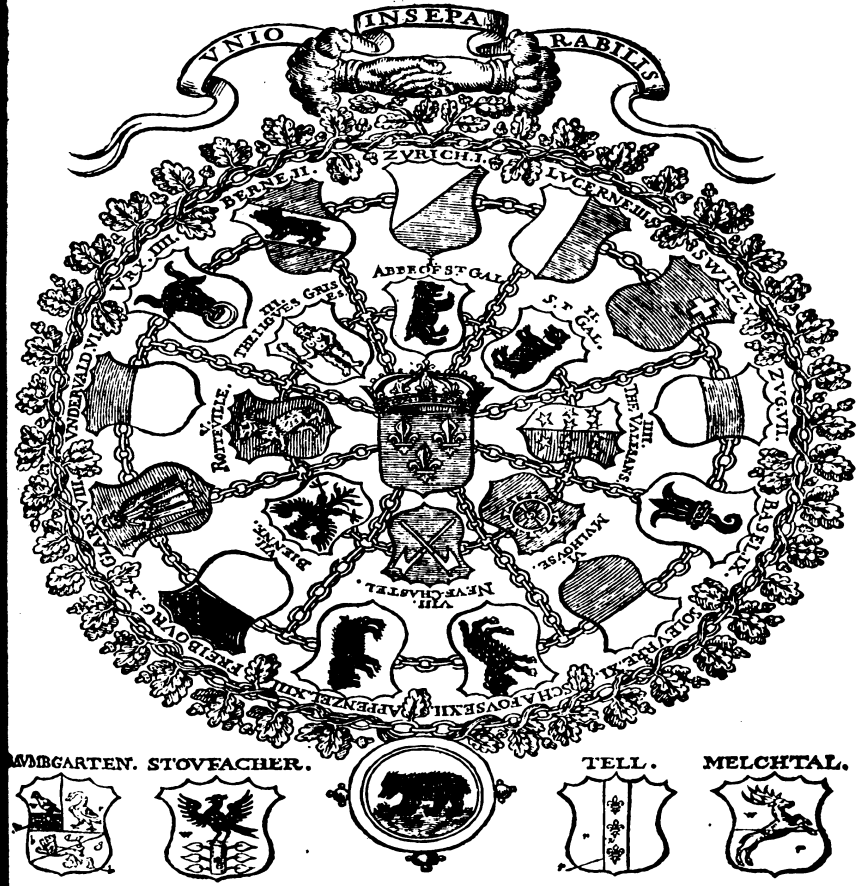
The *Switzers* naturally Soldiours and Martialists.

The auncient Annales of the *Switzers* doe declare, that our Kings *Pepin* and *Charlemaigne*, going to exterminate the *Gothes* and *Lombardes* of *Italie*; did make very beneficiall vse of the seruice of this people Mountainneeres, naturally Martiall and Warriours: gouerned and conducted by a *French* Lord, called *Guy Marqueste*, that is to say, Gouernour of the Frontiers of *Italie*. And that in consideration of their valiancie, *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, Sonne to the said *Charlemaigne*, gaue them very great Priuiledges. But most certaine it is, and the *Germaines* themselues doe confesse as much, that our first Christian King *Clouis*, had all those Prouinces vnder his obedience. And as certaine also it is, that *Charlemaigne* gaue the Gouernment of the

higher and lower *Walais* (in the yeare eight hundred and fiue) to Saint *Theodore*, Bishop of *Syon*. But those Bishops (as all else vse to doe) following the times courses, of plaine Gouernors, made themselues Lords Soueraignes.

Concerning *Zurich* originall.

Zurich, called in Latine *Turegum*, and *Tigurum*, was an Abbey of Sisters, founded and built by our King *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, in fauour of his Daughter *Luitguarda*,



who was there the first Lady Abbesse. The same King gaue in gift to the said Abbey, and to the Patroness thereof Saint *Fælix* and Saint *Regulus*, the Village of *Vry* (sometimes the dwelling of the Antuatiques of our Geographers) with her Churches appurtenances and dependances, Buildings, Innes, free Children, Masles and Females, Lands tilled and vntilled, Glades, Woods, Meadowes, Ponds and Riuers, according as is obserued by *Iosias Simlerus*, in his Annales of *Switzerland*.

The Kings bounty to the Abbey.

Saint *Gall* (in Latine *Sanctus Gallus*) a Gentleman of *Scotland*, Scholler to Saint *Columbaine*, the Tutelarie Patron of *Swetia*, after he had crossed *France* and *Bourgongne*, went into *Germanie*, and dwelt sometime neere to the Lake of *Constance*.

A briefe History of Saint *Gall*.

From

From whence, to shunne the worlds frequencie, he made his retreate to the Defert Mountaines; where yet (to this present) is to be seene the Abbey, and the Citie, honorized with the name of this holy man, who departed out of this life into the other, in the yeare of Grace Sixe hundred and fiftie.

Ten yeares before, our King *Dagobert*, (the Restorer of Saint *Denys* in *France*) in fauour of Saint *Gall*, and those which liued with him, sequestred from the Worlds vanities: caused a Lodging or goodly Farme House to be builded, for their liuing and maintenance, which was called *Abbatis cella*, and afterward (by corruption) *Appenzel*, now at this present one of the Cantons of the *Switzers*. The like was done by *Sigebert*, and other Princes of *France*, that the Hermitage of Saint *Gal* became changed into a rich and opulent Abbey: round about which (from the very beginning) were builded small Houses and Cottages, and so (in time) these pettie additions grew to make vp a great peopled Citie.

After the death of Saint *Gall*, the Religious Bretheren of this Monasterie, requested Count *Bertrand*, Gouernour of the Countrey, to giue them an Abbot; who sent to them a good Priest, named *Audomarus*, that is *Omer*; or *Aymar*, brought vp in the Colledge of *Coire*, who was the first Abbot of that place, vnder the Rule and profession of Saint *Benedict*, quite giuing ouer the name of Hermites. So is it auouched by the same *Simlerus*; who yet setteth downe confusedly, the dates of the seuerall Foundations.

The first Abbot of Saint *Gall*.

Soleurre, heretofore knowne vnder the names of *Salaturum*, *Vicus Solodori*, *Solaturum*, that is to say, *Solis Turris*; being no other heretofore, then a Tower, on the top whereof was niched *The Idole of the Sunne* (figured and presented, as we haue already declared in our second Booke of the first Tome) which was long time worshipped by the Countrey Inhabitants: & yet is to be seene that auncient Tower, *in the midst* of the Towne of *Soleurre*. Queene *Bertha* of *France* (sirnamed with the great Foote) wife to *Charlemaigne*, caused to be built in the same place, the great Collegiall Church, and the Castell thereof: since when, the fielden and solitarie grounds thereabout, are encreased to the greatnesse as now we behold them. Which may serue to shew, that (from all Antiquitie) this Countrey was subiect, and depending on the Crowne of *France*.

Soleurre, of *Solis Turris*.

But vpon the declining of the House of *Charlemaigne*, *Iames*, Duke and Gouernor of the Countrey, being become absolute Maister and Commander in his Gouernement: vsed the Inhabitants thereof ouer rudely, which caused their recourse to the neighbouring Princes, and namely to the Count of *Habspourge Rodolphe*, Authour of the House of *Austria*; to whom the dwellers in *Zurich*, *Vri* and *Switz*, (by the Geographers tearmed *Antuatici*, and those of the Countie of *Aelen*, *Antuates*) gaue some yearely engagement, as to their Protectour and defender, making Alliance, offensiue and defensiue with him, for maintaining them in their freedome and liberte. By the example of these men, the Inhabitants of *Basile* and of *Strasbourg* did the very same, and *Rodolphe* being established by all the Gouernours; came twise or thrice thither yearely, and surueighed all the Gouernments to render Iustice, and to terminate causes of suite, intended by the Inhabitants and against another.

The first beginning of oppressing the people.

Albert of *Austria*, Sonne to the said *Rodolphe*, would needes make himselfe absolute Maister of these defended Lands, and for his more mildely attaining thereto, he became Lord, as well by exchange and acquisition, as otherwise, of the Seigneuries of *Glarys*, *Lucerne*, *Switz* and of *Vnderuald*, of *Murbach*, the Hermitage, *Interlach*, *Dizents* and of other places, resoluing to haue all the rest by force.

He establ'ished then for Gouernour at *Swits* and *Vri*, a Knight named *Grisler*: and at *Vnderuald* another, called *Pelerin Landberg*, both of them remaining resident in their Gouernements, with good and strong Garrisons. *Landberg* sent one of his Seruants, to bring away a Yoake of Oxen, from one of the richest men of *Vnderuald*, called *Henry de Melchtall*; whose Sonne, named *Arnold* (offended at the fellowes saucie behauior) made him sure enough from any such further presumption, and sought for safety among his friends. Thorow want of answering the matter in the Court of Iustice, *Landberg* possessed himselfe of the Fathers person: whose eyes

eyes he caused to be pluckt out of his head, and made confiscation of all his goods.

The Lieutenant or Deputie to the same Gouernour, enflamed with the beauty and good graces of the wife to an Inhabitant of *Alzelen*, named *Conrade de Bonwrthen*, and hauing found her about some Housewifely businesse in the field: commanded her to prepare a Bathe for him, which she did. And pressing her earnestly, to come into the Bathe to him; the modest Woman shutied for her honours safetie, and met her Husband returning from the Forrest; who slew the Lieutenant with his Hatchet, iustly thereby chastising his lasciuious incontinencie.

As for the Gouernour *Grisler*, to cut off all duetie from the Prince; before his owne Castell, called *Altorffe*, the place of his daily abiding, he caused to be erected a Pole, and on the top thereof placed one of his oldest Hats: whereto he commanded that all passengers should performe the like reuerence, as if himselfe had bin there in person, vpon cruell penalties and impositions, for such as durst denie his goodly appointment.

An old Hat to haue reuerence done to it.

And the same Gouernour making his iourney to *Swits*, saw there a House very finely built, belonging to a Gentleman of worth, named *Warnheir Stouffacher*, one of the wealthiest men in *Swits*: which he threatned to pull downe and vtterly deface, because it had bin built without his permission.

At *Vri* dwelt a Gentleman, named *William Tell*, who passing by the Gouernours Hat on the Pale; made no great account of yeelding any reuerence to it. He was accused before the Gouernour, who knowing, that this Gentleman was one of the very best Archers of the Countrey: sent for one of the youngest Sonnes of the Gentleman, that was about fiue yeares old (very dearely affected of his Father) and commanding *him to be fast* bound to a Tree, placed an Apple on his bare head, which he charged the Father (standing on an indifferent distance off) to cleaue in twaine with an Arrow, or otherwise to haue his head smitten off. The Father refused to draw his Bowe, offering much rather his head to the Gouernour, who with cruell threatnings enforced him thereto: whereupon, his hand being directed (doubtlesse) by power of the Omnipotent; he clefe the Apple, and touched not one haire of the Childes head, to the great contentment of all the beholders.

An Imposition of a meere Tyrannie.

The Hat is the Prince, to whom we owe honour (saith *Lipsius*.)

But the Gouernour hauing espied another Arrow, taken forth of the Quiuer, and hidden behinde vnder *Tells* doublet, pressed him very hardly to tell him, what he meant to doe with that other Arrow, whereto he bo'dly replyed. *I meant to haue pierced thy heart with this Shaft, if I had wounded my Sonne with the other.* Hereupon, the Gouernour caused him instantly to be fast bound and manacled, and put into a Barke or Boate, for passage ouer the Lake of *Vri*, and confining him a perpetuall prisoner in the Castle of *Cusnach*: The Gouernour with his Officers, and the manacked prisoner, being in the midst of the Lake: suddenly arose such a violent tempest, as the Gouernours people (being vtterly vnable to gouerne the Barke) and in despaire of their liues, were enforced to entreate *Tell* very kindely, for bringing them safely to shore by his helpe.

Tell hauing his hands at liberty, tooke charge of the Rudder, shaping his course directly towards *Switz*, and saued the Barke from wracking, by conducting it wisely vnder the Lee, neere to the shore. He being well acquainted with all the reaches of the Lake, and hauing possession of his Bow and Quiuer of Arrowes; suddenly leapt out of the Barke vpon the side of a Rocke, which (to this day) is called *The Rocke of Tell*, setting his feete and strength so mainely against the Barke, that the rough windes carryed it againe into the midst of the Lake. But as all extremities must haue an ending at last, so the Gouernour and his followers got safely to the Land, somewhat neere to the place where *Tell* had escaped from them, and couertly still watched what successe would betide them. *Tell* knowing all the tracks & passages which the Gouernor must take for bringing him to *Cusnach*; had ambushed himselfe in a place very conuenient, where directing his aime at the cruell Gouernor, he sent an Arrow from his Bow with such successe, that there immediately he fell downe dead; whence escaping by vnfrequented nookes and passages to *Switz*, he went to the abiding of *Garnser Stouffacher*, who likewise running the same

Where heauen fauoureth, there enmity cannot hurte.

The tyrannous Gouernour slaine by *Tell*.

perill of life, was not a little ioyfull, to meete with ſo honeſt a companion in miſery. There comforting and encouraging one another, they began to conſider with themſelues, how to get free from the inſolence and oppreſſion of theſe *Auſtrian* Gouernours: calling into their friendly aſſociation *Arnoul de Meſchtall*, Sonne to *Henry de Meſchtall*, who had his eyes pluckt out by the Gouernour.

The three Authours of the *Switzers* liberty.



These three men, ſending vp their ſolemne Vowes with ſighes to Heauen, and ſwearing Faith mutually each to other; were the firſt Authors of the *Switzers* freedome and liberties; who changing their auncient appellation of *Helueti*ans, tooke name of the Canton of *Swits*, in memorie of *Garnier Stouffacher*, the firſt mouer of ſo faire a buſines. This firſt Alliance of the three Cantons *Vry*, *Switz* and *Vnderuald*, was ſworn at a place called *Grutly*, neere to *Vry*, the ſeuenteenth day of October, the yeare of Grace One thouſand three hundred and ſeauen.

Poſſeſſion taken of the Gouernors Caſtles

It began to be put in execution in the Moneth of Ianuary following, when the men of *Vnderuald* poſſeſſed themſelues of the ſtrong Fortreſſes of *Sarne* and *Rotzberg*: by making an outward ſhew of bringing Newyeares gifts (the firſt day of that Moneth) to the Gouernours of them, according to the auncient cuſtome at all times vſed among the *Gaules*. Thoſe two Fortreſſes or Caſtles were raced downe to the ground, and the very ſame day *Stouffacher* of *Switz* did the like to that of *Lucerts*, built by the Lake, and the other at *Vri*, erected by *Griſler*, all laid leuell with the ground.

Remembrance of this freedome kept to future poſterity.

To continue (for euer) to poſterity, the memory of ſo famous an enterpriſe, and becauſe on the morrow after this expedition in common, the Inhabitants of the three Townes, *Vry*, *Vnderuald* and *Switz* made an Alliance together for ten yeares, ſworn and proteſted by the moſt ſolemne ceremonies and oathes that could be imagined) there were Anticke Medales made for the three Cantons, whereon, vpon the one ſide were ſtamped and figured the three Authors of the *Switzers* liberty, truely ſhaped

ſhaped according to life, hauing their hands plighted and ioyned together, in ſigne of Alliance, both with their names and the Cantons alſo as a Legend. And on the other ſide, as a noate of confederacy, were two hands vnited and cloſed together, and for the ſpeaking part of this deuiſe, theſe words

Vnio Inſeperabilis.

In this manner among the *Romaines*, were two right hands ioyned together, as being the marke and Symbole of vnion and Alliance.

The noate of vnitie and Alliance.

Iungantur in fœdera Dextræ.

And by denying or refuſing the right hand to any one, was a ſigne of ill will, hatred and contempt.

.. .. *Cur Dextra iungere Dextram*
Non datur ?

In the firſt and fourth Bookes of the *Æneidos*.

Nec te noſter Amor, nec te data Dextera quondam,
Nec moritura tenet crudeli funere Dido.

The reproach of an inconſtant and faithleſſe louer. And the *Romaines* likewiſe had this cuſtome, to offer the right hand at meeting with any one; as a teſtimonie of good will, and true friendſhip without diſſembling.

A cuſtome obſerued among the *Romaines*.

The Emperours, when they tooke the Oath of Allegeance of the *Romaine* Legions, they began the Ceremonie with the Sacrifice of Beaſts, whereon the Captaines and chiefe Commanders laid their right hands, to the end of binding them, to keepe the Oathe ſo ſolemnely proteſted vpon the hallowed Offrings & Oblations. Which was begun in the time of *Numa Pompilius*, who ordained, that thoſe hands which were ſacrificed to Faith, ſhould be folded or enueloped to the fingers ends. And the right hand was held as the Symbole of Faith, as the left was of Iuſtice, as well among the *Ægyptians* as *Perſians*, and people of the Eaſt.

Cuſtome among the *Scythians*.

The *Scythians*, in their Swearing, vſed a Vowe and a Sword, as noates of Life and Death, contracting Alliances and confederacies, by conioyning their right hands, which they drew thorow Bloud; dipping therein a flake of Wooll, wherewith they bathed ſeauen Stones, vſing inuocations vpon *Oratall* and *Alilat*, whom they accounted as their Tutelarie Gods; taking them for witneſſes of their Alliances, and as ſeuere Reuengers: if they failed and infringed.

Concerning the *Perſians* and *Medes*.

Among the *Medes* and *Perſians*, and (to be briefe) thorow out the Eaſt parts, they contracted Alliances and Confederacies, by vniting and ioyning one right hand in another. *Ioſephus* in his *Iewiſh* Antiquities; *Xenophon* and *Cornelius Tacitus*, in the ſeauenth Booke of his Annales, ſpeaking of King *Tiridates* (who) *Viſo Corbulone prior quo deſilyt, nec non contactus Corbulo, ſed pedes arreptque* Dexteras Miſcuere.

* A King of *Armenia*.

The *Gaules* our Anceſtors, contracting Alliance, would ſtrip their right hand and arme ſtarke naked. Their very greateſt enemy *Cæſar*, in his ſeauenth Booke ſaith. *Hæc vti ab latere Noſtris aperto, & ſimilitudine Armorum vehementer noſtros perterruerant, ac tametſi* Dextris Exertis *animaduertebantur*, Quod apud eos Inſigne Pacis eſſe, Conſuetum, *tamen id ipſum, ſui fallendi cauſa, Militesab Hoſtibus factum exiſtimabant.* A paſſage confirmed by the Noble Writer *Tacitus*, ſpeaking of them of *Langres*, in the firſt Booke of his Hiſtories. *Miſerat Ciuitas Lingonum*, Vetere Inſtituto *dona Legionibus Dexteras Hoſpitij Inſigne*. And it was from thence, that the *Romaine* Legions had borrowed their manner of marking and ſtamping Pieces of Money, which carried for Deuiſe *Two right Hands ioyned together*; and gaue them as New yeares-gifts one to another, when they renewed the Militarie Oath.

The *Gaules* peopled *Greece*

Moreouer the ſame *Gaules* that peopled *Greece*, left there the print of this ancient Cuſtome. For the *Greekes* contracting confederacie with their enemies, gaue them their right arme and hand ſtript naked. And ſo did they of *Lacedemon* towards the *Athenians*, as it is obſerued by *Thucidides*, in the fourth Booke of his *Grecian* Hiſtorie. And the *Gaules* (our Anceſtours) neuer fought with their enemies; but with the right hand and right arme ſtarke naked, to ſhew their valiancie: And that with the ſame hand, which they vſed in actions of Armes, without any dread of wounding; they offered franckly and freely to their enemies, Alliance and Peace nakedly,

 without

without any dissembling. And their whole intent was, to vse as much courtesie to such as they would make friendly proofe of; as rigour or extremity, to them that they did shun and auoide.

Parcere Subiectis, & debellare Superbos.

Custome among the Hebrewes.

The *Hebrewes* contracting Alliances, Confederacies and Couenants with their Friends: the Act and Instrument of this Alliance, was called *Berith*, deriued of the word *Barath*, which signifieth *Deuided and Seperated in twaine*. Because to answere this agreement, the parties thus contracting; offered certaine creatures, and deuided them equally in pieces, to make two distinct parts of them; leauing in the midst betweene them, a way or path, whereby the parties might passe to and fro. Ceremonies taken from the fifteenth Chapter of *Genesis*, where God making an eternall League with his Seruant *Abraham*; eleauen beasts were offered and deuided in two parts, a path being betweene them.

Applica coram me tres Vitulos, & tres Capras, & tres Arietes, & Turturem, & Filium Columbæ. Abraham obtulit coram eo omnia hæc, & diuisit ea æqualiter. Et posuit diuisionem vnam quamque è regione alterius. Aues vero non diuisit: Et descenderunt Aues super partes diuisas, abegitque eas Abraham. Et factum est cum Sol occumberet, somnus ingressit Abraham, factaque caligo, & ecce Clibanus Fumans, Et Lampas Ignis quæ Transibat per Diuisiones Illas: In Die Illa Ferijt Dominus Fœdus cum Abraham.

Bring before me an Heifer of three yeares old, and a shee-Goate of three yeares old, and a Ramme of three yeares old, and a Turtle Doue, and a yong Pigeon. And he tooke vnto him all these, and deuided them in the middest, and laied each piece one against another, but the Birds deuided not he. And when the Foules came downe vpon the carkeises; Abraham droue them away. And when the Sunne was going downe, a deepe sleepe fell vpon Abraham, and loe an horror of great darkenesse fell vpon him. And behold a smoking Furnace, and a burning Lampe that passed betweene those pieces. In the same day the Lord made a Couenant with *Abraham*.

The Prophet *Ieremie*, in his foure and thirtieth Chapter, speaking in the name of God, saith. *Dabo viros qui præuaricantur fœdus meum, & non obseruauerunt verba fœderis quibus assensi sunt in conspectu meo, Vitulum quem conciderunt in duas partes, & transierunt inter diuisiones eius. Principes Iuda, & Principes Hierusalem, Eunuchi, & Sacerdotes, & omnis Populus Terræ,* Qui transierunt inter Diuisiones eius, &c.

I will giue the men that haue transgressed my couenant, which haue not performed the words of the couenant, which they had made before me, when they cut the Calfe in twaine, and passed betweene the parts thereof. The Princes of Iudah, and the Princes of Ierusalem, the Eunuches and the Priests, and all the people of the Land, which passed betweene the parts of the Calfe, &c.

A custome among the Hebrew Kings.

When the *Hebrew* Kings would make a Muster or meeting of their People, for Marching vnanimately in Battaile against their enemies; they made a deuision of certaine creatures, as was put in practise by *Saul*, as we reade in the first Booke of the *Kings*, the eleauenth Chapter. When he would goe to fight against *Naash*, King of the *Ammonites*: *He tooke a yoake of Oxen, and hewed them in pieces, and sent them throw out all the coasts of Israel.*

Another custome among the Scythians.

Among the *Scythians* the manner was (into what parts soeuer they were retected) wholly common, and like to that of the *Iewes*. Because when they sought to contract confederacie with their neighbours; they would kill an Oxe or a Bull, taking and fleying off the skinne, which they cut into thongs and slips, distributing them to such as entred Alliance with them; as *Lucian* hath noated in his *Toxaris*, or Dialogue of Friendship. Which maketh vs to iudge (and vpon some good reason) that this Custome came from the Auncient *Gaules*, who vsed it in the same manner; and so saith the same *Lucian*, in describing our *Gauliish Hercules*.

The Hebrewes contracting Alliance with their enemies.

But concerning those Alliances, which the *Hebrews* contracted with their enemies, they carried themselues according to the quality of the persons. When the Patriarch *Abraham* gaue assurance to the King of *Sodome*, for passing thorow his Land, without doing him any iniurie; he did not then giue the right hand into his, being quite contrary to him in manners and beliefe. But he lifted his right hand vp to Heauen, as calling

calling to his witnesse the God of truth, in *Genesis* the foureteenth Chapter. *Leuo ego manum meam ad Dominum Deum Excelsum, Possessorem Cœli, & Terræ, quod à filo subtegminis, vsque ad corrigiam caligæ non accipiam de omnibus quæ tua sunt, &c. I haue lifted vp my hand vnto the Lord, the most high God, the Possessour of Heauen and Earth; That I will not take from a thred, euen to a shooe lachet, and that I will not take any thing that is thine, &c.*

A custome among the meaner people to their superiors

Inferiour persons, seeking the good will and friendship of the worlds *Grands*, kissed their right hand, and laid it on the Thigh of such as they sued vnto, swearing vassailage and fidelitie. Seruants sware and promised something to their Maisters, kindly kissing the right hand (yet not laying it on the Thigh) but lower, in signe of submission and humilitie. In *Genesis* the foure and twentieth Chapter, the Patriarch *Abraham*, speaking to the most auncient and faithfull of his Seruants, said. *Pone manum tuam subter femur meum, vt adiurem te per Dominum Deum Cœli, & Terræ, vt non accipias Vxorem Filio meo de filiabus Chananæorum inter quos habito. Put I pray thee, thy hand vnder my thigh: And I will make thee sweare by the Lord the God of Heauen, and the God of Earth; that thou shalt not take a wife vnto my Sonne, of the Daughters of the Cananites, amongst whom I dwell.* Which the Seruant hauing promised to doe, did put his hand vnder the Thigh of his Maister. *Posuit Seruus manum suam* (in Scripture this is alwayes vnderstood of the right hand, and the same Thigh) *sub femore Abrahæ Domini sui, & iurauit illi super sermone hoc. And the Seruant put his hand vnder the Thigh of* Abraham *his Maister, and sware to him concerning that matter.*

Courtesie of embracing the knee

Among the *Greekes* and *Romaines* was no such submission made, neither aboue or beneath the Thigh; but embracing the Knée: As we reade in an infinitie of passages in *Homer*, and in *Virgils Æneidos* the third Booke.

Dixerat, & Genua amplexus, Genibusque volutans
Herebat.

In the Antiquarie *Plautus. Milite glorioso.*

Si pol me ducere volet Vxorem, Genua amplectar
Atque obsecrabo aliquo modo.

The originall of the Switzers liberty.

Returning now againe to the Alliance of the *Switzers*, it appeareth; that the expulsion of their Gouernours, was the onely originall and beginning of their libertie, and of the hatred which they conceiued against the House of *Austria*. The Emperour *Albert*, Sonne to *Rodolphe*, was slaine in the pursuite of this quarrell. *Leopold* his Sonne, Duke of *Austria*, in the same manner terminated the honour of his conquests, by being ouerthrowne in a fought Battaile at *Morgarten*, the sixteene day of Nouember, An. One thousand three hundred and fifteene. And so (very aptly) speaketh our *French Salust Phillip de Commines*. That God hath giuen to euery one his opposite or contrary, to restraine him as with a Bridle, and serue as a Spur in his sides: in his hundred and eight Chapter.

De tout temps la Maison d'Austriche, & celle de Bauieres sont contraires. Celle d'Austriche en particulier a les Suysses. Et ne fut le commencement de leur diuision qu'vn Village appelle SVITS qui ne scauroit faire Six Cents Hommes, dont les autres portent le Nom, qui se sont tant multipliez, que Deux des meilleures Villes qu'eut la Maison d'Austriche en sont, comme Zurich, & Fribourg, & ont gaigne de grandes Batailles, esquelles ils ont tue des Ducs d'Austriche.

Austria alwaies contrary to the Switzers.

At all times the House of Austria *and that of* Bauaria *are contraries. That of* Austria *in particuler to the* Switzers. *And there was no other beginning of their deuision, but about a Village called* Switz, *which could not make sixe hundred men, whereof the rest beare the name: who are so greatly multiplied, as two of the best Townes (belonging to the House of* Austria) *haue in them, as Zurich and Fribourg, and haue won great Battailes, wherein Dukes of* Austria *haue bin slaine.*

At what time the Switzers were first seen in France.

The first of them that was seene in *France*, was at that time, when *Charles* the last Duke of *Bourgongne* (being then Count of *Charolois*) ioyned himselfe with *Monsieur Berle*, of *France*, and other French Princes and great Lords, armed and clouded with the faire seeming Cloake, of *Louers of the weale publique*, for making warre against King *Lewes* the eleauenth, his Liedge Lord. With this Count of *Charolois*, Chiefe in the faction of the reuolted Princes, was *Iohn*, Duke of *Calabria*, onely Son

to the good King *Rene* of *Sicilie*, who brought nine hundred Horſe, and ſome Souldiours, among whom were fiue hundred *Switzers*; *qui furent les Premiers qui veid en ce Royaume*, cc dit Commines, *& ont eſte ceux qui ont donne le bruit à ceux qui ſont venus depuis: Car ils ſe gouuernerent treſ-vaillamment en tous les lieux, ou ils ſe trouuerent. Who were the firſt (ſaith* Commines) *that euer had bin ſeene in this Kingdome, and were thoſe that gaue fame to ſuch as came afterward: For they Gouerned themſelues moſt valiantly, in all ſuch places as they came to.* And this was the reaſon, why (after that time) the iudicious King *Lewes* the eleauenth, admiring their valiancy, bare affection to them. And the ſame *Charles* of *Bourgongne*, hauing, to ſmall purpoſe, awaked this warlike Nation (with whom, by reaſon of the Countries pouerty wherein they dwelt, nothing was to be had but blowes and wounds) loſt there his Riches, men and life.

The firſt alliãce of the French with the *Switzers*.

Neuertheleſſe, the firſt of our Kings, that made league or Alliance with them, was *Charles* the ſeauenth, & it beareth date the fourth day of Aprill, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand foure hundred fifty and three: made with the Communalties of *Zerich*, *Berne*, *Soleure*, *Lucerne*, *Vri*, *Switz*, *Vnderuald*, *Zug* and *Glarys*.

That of *Lewes* the eleauenth, his Sonne and Succeſſour, and with the ſame Cantons, was made in *Ableuille*, the ſeauen and twentieth day of Nouember, One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and three, and the third of his Reigne. Which Alliance was renewed at *Pleſſis lez Tours*, the three and twentieth day of September, An. One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and ten: made perticularly againſt the laſt Duke of *Bourgongne Charles*, their common hated enemie.

An annuall penſion paid to the *Switzers* by the *French*.

Another Conuention and League offenſiue, was made by the ſame King and Cantons, againſt the ſaid Duke of *Bourgongne* (proclaimed guilty of high Treaſon) paying a yearely Penſion of twenty thouſand pounds *Tournois*, and paiable at foure tearmes in the Citie of *Lyons*. Conditionally, that the ſaid King *Lewes* might at all times, when himſelfe thought good, leuey fixe thouſand *Switzers*, to March with him to and againſt all: the holy Seate, the Emperour, and the confederated Allies of thoſe Cantons excepted. And in this Leuey, euery *Switzer* was to be wadged with foure Florins and an halfe, each Moneth.

This declaration beareth date the fixe and twentieth day of October, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore and foureteene. Augmented with another more perticuler, which importeth: That the Agent and Conſuls of *Berne*, in name of the ſaid Cantons, ſtand obliged to certifie his Maieſtie with time and place, for the ſuccour of forces againſt the ſaid Duke of *Bourgongne*, or others whom he would warre on. And when his Maieſtie ſhall be diuerted or impeached elſewhere, without power of ſuccour of men; that then in this caſe, he ſhall be bound to furniſh them, with twenty thouſand *Florins du Rhin*, quarterly in the Citie of *Lyons*, beſide the former Penſion agreed on, of twenty thouſand Pounds *Tournois* euery yeare.

The often renewing of the Confederacies.

King *Charles* the eight, his Sonne and Succeſſour, renewed this Alliance, with the ſame couenants and conditions before expreſſed, according to the declaration of the ſaid Cantons, dated the fourth of Auguſt, One thouſand foure hundred fourteſcore and foure, confirmed by his Maieſtie at *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, the foure & twentieth day of Nouember the yeare following. He made beneficiall vſe of them, in his warre with *Bretaigne*; And afterward in his iourney to and from *Italie*, namely on the day at *Fornoue*, the very ſtrongeſt part of the vantguard for the King, conſiſting but of *Three hundred and fiftie Horſe, and three thouſand Switzers, who were all the Hope of the Hoaſt*, ſo ſaith *Phillip de Commines*.

Continuation of this League from time to time.

There was a continuation of the ſaid Confederacie, betweene his Maieſtie and the Cantons of *Zurick*, *Berne*, *Vri*, *Vnderuald*, *Zug*, *Glarys*, *Fribourg* and *Soleure*; Giuen at *Lyons* the eight day of February One thouſand foure hundred and ſixteene: confirmed by an other of the ſame afterward, dated on the day and feaſt of all Saints, or elſe three Moneths before.

King *Lewes* the twelfth, *Father of his people*, renewed this League, ſworne for ten yeares. He made good vſe of the Cantons leagued ſeruice, for recouering his Dukedome of *Millaine*, after which, Pope *Iulius* the ſecond (a Prince more Martiall) and

and Warrelike, then Religious or Deuout) capitall enemy to the *French*: made a breach of this vnion (by meanes of the Cardinall Biſhop of *Syon*) to maintaine the *Sforzes*, who vſurped the Eſtate of *Millaine* againſt the Houſe of *Orleans*, and expelled the *French* out of *Italie*. This League of the Pope with the *Switzers*, was made by the ſaid Cardinall, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and tenne.

A Souldiers like Pope.

Vnder King *Frances* the firſt, *The Father of Learning and good Letters*, the *Switzers* renewed the auncient Alliance, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and ſixteene, which continued during his Maieſties life time, and a yeare after. All the Cantons of the *Switzers* (*Zurich* excepted) entred into this League; whereof here you may reade the principall Articles, according as they are ſet downe in the Record.

A Breuiate out of the Record, of the chiefe Articles of the League betweene King *Frances* the firſt, and Cantons of the *Switzers*.

Que toutes inimitiez, diſſentions, guerres, & differends generaux demeureroient eſteints & aſſoppis, & quant aux particuliers qui n'ont rien de commun auecques les affaires de la Guerre, qu'ils ſeroient compoſez & terminez à l'amiable par Gens à ce deputez par ſa Maieſté Treſ Chreſtienne, & des Confederez.

Que tous Priſonniers, en quelque lieu qu'ils fuſſent deceuus, ſeroient mis promptement en toute Liberté, ſans payer aucune rançon.

Que ſi quelques Gendarmes Suyſſes ont procez contre ſa Maieſte, non à cauſe de Guerre, pourront pourſuiure, & plaider contre icelle pour en auoir raiſon.

Que ceux qui apres l'Alliance renouuellee auec le feu Roy LOVIS XII. & les Cantons ſont alliez auec eux, & ont eſte receuz au nombre de leurs Bourgeois, ſeront compris en ce traicté pour leur au benefice d'iceluy, exceptez ceux qui ſont hors des limites de Suyſſes, ne parlent point Alemand, & ne ſont ſuiects auſdits Cantons.

Que tous les Priuileges, Franchiſes, & Libertez octroyez par les Roys de France ſes Predeceſſeurs aux Marchands & Suiects de Suyſſe demeureront confirmez.

A fin que les Suyſſes ſe ſentent de la Bien-veillance, & Liberalite du Roy, qu'il leur ſera deliurer vne Somme d'Argent raiſonnable de Penſion pour les frais du Siege de Dyon, & voyage d'Italie.

A fin que la Paix ſoit fermement entretenue de part & d'autre, & que l'Amitie encommencee demeure perpetuelle, s'il s'eſmeut different, l'vn ny l'autre Party ne prendra les armes, a fin de pourſuiure ſon Droict par icelles, ains ſuiuant le Formulaire ſuſ-mentionne, en demandera raiſon en Iuſtice.

Les vns ne donneront Paſſage ne Logis aux Ennemis des autres, & ne ſouffriront que leurs Suiects aillent en Guerre pour les Princes, & Republiques Ennemies de France, ou de Suyſſe. Que ceux qui feront le contraire ſeront r'appellez au Pais, & chaſtiez ſelon leurs Demerites.

Tous Marchands, Pelerins, & Suiects Francois, & Suyſſes pourront traffiquer, voyager, aller, & venir librement en France, & en Suyſſe, ſans eſtre outragez, ny greuez de nouueaux ſubſides, & peages.

Que le Roy donnera tous les Ans à chaque Canton la Somme de Deux Mille Liures Tournois: autant aux Valaiſans; &

Aux Griſons ce que leur auoit accorde le Roy LOVIS XII. auec la ſomme de Vingt Mile Liures Tournois.

A l'Abbe de Sainct Gal, ſes Suiects, & à ceux de Tokkembourg la ſomme de ſix Cents Liures Tournois.

A la Ville de Sainct Gal Quatre Cents.

A Mulhouſe quatre Cents.

A ceuz de la Comte de Gruyere ſix Cents Liures Tournois.

Que les Anciens Priuileges, dont les Habitans de Bellizone, Lugano, Lucarne, & de la Val-Madie auoient iouy iuſques alors au Duche de Milan, ſeroient continuez & confirmez de nouueau.

Que

Que le Roy donne le choix aux Suysses de declarer dans vn an, s'ils tiendront ou non ceux de la Val-Teline, & de la Comte de Clauenne auront leur part a ceste somme, autant que l'vn des dicts Cantons. Et

Moyennant ce, bonne Paix, Alliance, & Amitie demeurera perpetuelle & inuiolable entre le Royaume de France, & les Cantons. Demeureront compris en icelle de la part de sa Maieste Tres-Chrestienne, nostre Sainct Pere le Pape Leon Dixiesme, & le Sainct Siege, & l'Empire Romain, les Roys d'Espagne, d'Angleterre, d'Escosse, de Nauarre, & de Dannemark, les Ducs de Lorraine, de Sauoye, & de Gueldres, le Duc, & Republique de Venise, Laurens de Medicis, la Maison de Medicis, & la Republique de Florence, l'Euesque de Liege, & tous autres ses Alliez, & Confederez. Et de la part des Cantons, le Pape Leon, le Sainct Siege, l'Empire, l'Empereur, & la Maison d'Austriche, les Ducs de Sauoye, & de Vuittemberg, la Famille & Laurens de Medicis, la Republique de Florence, le Mareschal de Bourgongne, les Anciennes Alliances, & tous leurs Alliez, & Combourgeois. Ce fut faict, iure, & accordé en la Ville de Fribourg le Iour Sainct Andre au Mois de Nouembre, Mille Cinq Cents & Seize.

THat all enmities, dissentions, warres and differences generally, shall remaine quenched and smothered: but concerning them in perticuler, which haue nothing in common with the affaires of warre; they shall bee compounded and termined loouingly, by persons thereto appointed by his Moste Christian Maiestie, and likewise the Confederates.

That all Prisoners, in what place soeuer they are kept or detained; shall speedily be set at libertie, without paying any ransome.

That if any one bearing Armes, haue processe or suite against his Maiestie, not for cause of warre: he may follow it, and plead against him, to be righted.

That such as, after the League renewed with the late King Lewes the Twelfth, and the Cantons allied with them and haue bin receiued into number of their Bourgesses: shall be comprehended within this Treatie, to enioy the benefit thereof. Only such excepted, as are without the limits of the Switzers, not speaking the Germaine language, and are not subiects to the Cantons.

That all Priuiledges, Franchises and Liberties, graunted by the Kings of France and their Predecessours, to Merchantes and Subiects of the Switzers, shall remaine fully confirmed.

To the end that the Switzers, may tast the fauour and liberality of the King: he shall cause to be deliuered them a reasonable Summe of money, as Pension for the charges at the Siedge of Dijon, and voyage of Italie.

To the end, that Peace may firmely be maintained on either parte, and the Friendship begun may continue perpetually; if any difference chaunce to be mooued on either side: whether the one or other shall take Armes, as seeking to haue any right thereby: but following the example formerly mentioned, shall require right by Iustice.

No one shall graunt passage or lodging to the others enemy, nor suffer their Subiects to go in Warre, for Princes or Common-Weales, that are enemies to France or the Switzers. But such as shall doe the contrary, must be called home to the Countrey, and punished according to their deserts.

All Merchants, Pilgrimes and Subiects French and Switzers, may voyage, traffick, go and come freely, both in France and Switzerland: without any outrage, or greuance by any new imposed subsidies or toules.

That the King shall giue yearely to each Canton, the summe of Two Thousand Poundes Tournois: As much to the Valasians, And

To the Grisons, that which was graunted by King Lewes the Twelfth, with the summe of Twenty Thousand Poundes Tournois.

To the Abbot of Saint Gall, his Subiects, and to them of Tokkembourg, the summe of Sixe Hundred Poundes Tournois.

To the Towne of Saint Gall Foure Hundred.

To Mulhouse Foure Hundred.

To them of the Countrey of Gruyere Sixe Hundred Poundes Tournois.

That

That the Auncient Priueledges, which the Inhabitants of Bellizona, Lugano, Locarna, and the Val-Madia had enioyed till then in the Dukedome of Millayne, should be continued and newly confirmed: to publish within a yeares space.

The King is to giue the choyce to the Switzers, whether they had rather keepe the Countrey and Castelles of Lugano, Locarna and the Val-Madia: or else release them to him for the summe of Thirty Thousand Crownes of Golde of the Sunne. And if they doe accept the said summe; the Grisons, those of the Vale-Telina, and of the Countie of Clauenna, are to haue their shares in this summe, as much as one of the Cantons. And

In doing this, good peace, Alliance and Amitie shall continue perpetuall and inuiolable, betweene the Kingdome of France and the Cantons. Therein shall remaine comprehended, on the part of his Moste-Christian Maiestie; Our Holy Father Pope Leo the Tenth; the Holy Seate, and the Romaine Empire; the Kings of Spayne, England, Scotland, Nauarre, and of Denmarke; the Dukes of Lorraine, Sauoye and of Gueldres; the Duke and Common-wealth of Venice, Laurens de Medicis, the House of Medicis, and the Common-wealth of Florence; the Bishop of Liege, and all other his Allies and Confederates. And on the part of the Cantons, Pope Leo; the Holy Seate; the Empire, Emperour and the House of Austria; the Dukes of Sauoye and of Wittemberg; the Familie and Laurens de Medicis; the Common-wealth of Florence; the Marshall of Bourgongne; the Auncient Alliances, with all their Allies and Fellow Bourgesses. This was agreed and sworne in the Towne of Fribourg, on Saint Andrewes day in the Moneth of Nouember, One Thousand, Fiue Hundred and Sixteene.

This Alliance was renewed by the same King Frances, in the yeare, One thousand fiue hundred twenty and one, by a Second agreement passed at Lucerne: wherby all the Cantons (Zurich excepted) and all their Confederates, were vnited with his Maiestie, and concluded.

Que si quelqu'vn, tel qu'il soit, fait la Guerre dans le Royaume de France, Duche de Milan, ou autre Pais appartenant a la Coronne de France deca & dela les Monts, sa Maieste pourra faire vne leuee de Suysses, selon, & quand bon luy semblera, a scauoir Six Mille pour le moins, & Seize Mille pour le plus, si non que les Seigneurs des Ligues le permettent

Pourra choisir de tous les Cantons, & Confederez tels Colonels, & Capitaines que bon luy semblera, pourueu qu'ils soient gens de bonne renommee.

Les Seigneurs des Ligues ne donneront aucun empeschement ausdits Colonels, Capitaines, & Soldats; ne delayeront & ne mettront rien en aduant pour retarder leur acheminement, ains dedans Dix Iours apres la premiere iournee que le Roy aura requis secours, leur sera permis de marcher.

Demeureront au seruice du Roy, iusques a la fin de la Guerre, si bon luy semble, sans qu'ils puissent estre r'appellez par leurs Seigneurs. Le Roy aussi leur payera a tous les gages accoustumez. Et neantmoins cas aduenant que la Guerre fust en Suysse, & que pour ceste raison les Cantons ne peussent secourir le Roy, en ce cas ils seront quittes de leur promesse, & pourront soudainement contremander leurs gens, ausquels le Roy sera tenu donner congé.

Si le Roy veut faire Guerre a ses Ennemis, il pourra faire la mesme leuee de Six Mille Suysses pour le moins, & de Seize Mille pour le plus, choisissant des Colonels, & Capitaines gens de bien & de bonne renommee, qui seront Suysses, ou de leurs Alliez.

Le Roy ne pourra partir l'Armee des Suysses, ne la mettre par trouppes deuisees en Garnison en diuerses places, & ne s'en seruira sur Mer, ains sur Terre.

Pour la Solde de la Gendarmerie est accorde, que le Roy payera par Mois a chaque Soldat Suysse Quatre Florins & demy du Rhin. Que leurs gages commenceront au Iour qu'ils sortiront de leurs Maisons, & alors leur sera deu la paye de Trois Mois, encores que le Roy ne se serue si longuement d'eux, & auant que sortir du Pais de Suysse, ils toucheront la Paye du Premier Mois, & le reste pour les Deux autres Mois, en lieux propres, selon qu'ils en auront besoin.

Si apres les Trois Mois passez le Roy veut retenir les Suysses, il leur payera la mesme Solde tous les Mois, iusques au temps qu'ils se pourront commodement retirer en leurs Maisons.

Les Colonels, Capitaines, Enseignes, Ambassadeurs, & autres ayants charge es trouppes, seront payez en la maniere accoustumee, & selon que les Predecesseurs Roys de France ont faict parcy-deuant.

Si

Si quelqu'vn faict la Guerre aux Suysses, le Roy sera tenu de les secourir à ses despens, & leur enuoyer Deux Cents Hommes d'Armes, & Douze pieces d'Artillerie auec leur equipage, assuts, & hault le pied, à scauoir Six pieces de batterie, & Six Canons. Fournira aussi pour les fraiz de la Guerre: & si les Suysses l'ayment mieux, au lieu de Deux Cents Hommes d'Armes, le Roy leur donnera tous les Trois Mois la somme de Deux Mille Escus.

S'il aduient que par le moyen de la Guerre esmeue ca ou la les Suysses ne peuuent recouurer du Sel, ils en pourront acheter en France, & le fair emmener en leur Pais.

Si l'vne des deux Parties faict Guerre contre ses Ennemis, elle ne fera Paix que l'autre n'y soit comprise, & sera en la liberte de l'autre d'y consentir, ou non; si elle refuse la Paix, non obstant ce, pourra poursuiure la negociation d'icelle.

L'Vne des Parties ne pourra receuoir en sa Protection, ny donner Bourgeoisie *aux Subiects de l'autre: ny loger, secourir, ou deffendre les Bannis, ou Ennemis de l'autre, ains suiuant les Articles de Paix les chassera, & empeschera.*

Sa Majeste voulant faire paroistre son Amour, & Bien-veillance enuers les Suysses, outre les Vingt-Mille Francs qu'il leur promet payer par le Traicte de Paix, Promet payer tous les Ans à chacun des Cantons, tant que ceste Alliance durera, la Somme de Mille Liures Tournois; payera pareillement aux Confederez la moitié de la Pension qu'ils auoient auparauant.

That if any one (whatsoeuer he be) make warre in the Kingdome of France, *Duchie of* Millaine, *or any other Countrey appertayning to the Crowne of* France, *either on this side, or beyond the Mountaines: His Maiestie may make a leueye of* Switzers, *according as himselfe shall thinke conuenient, to witt, Six Thousand at the least, and Sixteene Thousand at the most; except the Lords of the Leagues doe permit it.*

He may also make choyce in all the Cantons and Confederates, of such Colonells and Captaines as he shall thinke meete: prouided, that they be men of honest and good fame.

The Lords of the Leagues shall be no occasion of hinderance to those Collonelles, Captaines and Soldiours, neither delay or vse any fore matters, whereby to tardy their going one: but within Tenne dayes after the first day, that the King sent warning for such succour, they shall be suffered to March away.

And they shall continue in the Kings seruice, vntill the ending of the warre if it be his liking, without any calling home by their Lords: the King likewise paying them their accustomed wages. And yet notwithstanding, if Warres happen in Swetia, *and that (in regard thereof) the Cantons cannot assist the King: in this case, they are to stand discharged of their promise, and may giue sudden countermaund to their people, and the King is bound to giue them leaue.*

If the King would make warre with his enemies; he may make the same leueye of Sixe Thousand Switzers *at the least, and of Sixeteene Thousand at the most: chusing Colonelles and Captaines, men of faire and good fame, which shall be* Switzers, *or of their Allies.*

The King may not sunder the Army of Switzers, *nor place it by deuided troupes for Garrison in diuers places, and they shall not so serue, either by Sea, or on Land.*

For the wages of the Gendarmerie, or Seruitours on Horseback, it is couenanted, that the King shall pay by the Moneth to eche Switz *Soldiour, Foure Florins and an halfe of the Rhine. That their wadges shall begin on the day when they part out of their Houses, and then shall be due their Paye for three Moneths, although the King haue not so long bin serued by them. And before they go from the Countrey of* Switzerland, *they shall handle the first Moneths paye, and the rest for two other Moneths, at apte or meete places, according as they shall haue neede.*

If after the Three Moneths be past, the King would still retaine the Switzers: *he shall pay them the same hire euery Moneth, vntill such time as they may conueniently return home to their Houses.*

The Colonels, Captaines, Enseignes, Ambassadours and others, hauing charge in the Troupes: shall be payed in the wounted manner, and according as the Predecessours, Kings of France *haue formerly payed.*

If any Warre be made vpon the Switzers, *the King shall stand engaged, to succour them at*

at his owne charges, and to send them two hundred men of Armes, and twelue pieces of Artillerie, with their furniture and carriages for quickest speede: to wit, sixe Pieces for batterie, and sixe Canons. Moreouer he shall furnish the Switzers *from three moneths to three moneths in the Citie of* Lyons, *with a certaine summe of money, for charges of the warre. And if the* Switzers *thinke it better; instead of two hundred men of Armes, the King shall giue them all the three Moneths, the summe of two thousand Crownes.*

If it so happen, that by reason the Warre (moued here or there) the Switzers *become destitute of salt: they may buy it in* France, *and cause it to be brought into their owne Country.*

If either of the two Parties make Warre against his enemy; there shall be no peace concluded, except the other be therein comprehended, and it shall be in the free will of the other, to consent thereto, or no: if peace be refused, yet notwithstanding, the negotiation thereof may be followed.

One of the Parties may not receiue into his protection, nor giue Bourgeship to any Subiects of the other: Nor lodge, succour or defend the Banished, or enemies of the other: but according to the Articles of Peace, shall expell and hinder them.

His Maiestie, desiring to make his loue and good will knowne and appeare to the Switzers; *ouer and beside the twenty thousand Francs, which he promised by the Treatie of Peace to pay them: maketh a further promise, that so long as this Alliance shall endure, he will pay yearely to each of the Cantons, the summe of a thousand pound Tournois. He will pay also to the Confederates, the moitie of the Pension, which they had before.*

In this second League and Alliance, more strict and perticuler then the first; the King comprehended the same Princes, Estates and Common-weales before remembred: and the *Switzers* in like manner, with charge and condition, that if any of the Comprehendants make Warre against one of the Parties, either on this side or beyond the Mountaines: the other Partie shall giue succour without exception of person, according to the tenure of this Alliance, which ought to continue during the life time of King *Frances* the first, and three yeares afterward. The latter Alliance stronger then the first.

King *Henry*, second of the name, his Sonne and Successour, renewed this League with the Cantons, vpon the same conditions as his Father before had done, for continuance of his life, and fiue yeares after. It was couenanted at *Soleurre* by the Cantons, and their Allies (except *Zurich* and *Berne*, and their Confederates) in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred fortie and nine. To this Alliance were these Articles added.

Addition of Articles to the last League.

QVe l'Estat de Milan, & autres Terres vsurpees en Italie sur la Coronne de France du temps du Roy Francois Premier, pourroient estre recouurees par le Roy, sans que les Suysses fussent tenuz de luy donner Secours pour ce faire. Mais s'il les reconqueste à l'aide d'vne autre Armee, que pour la conseruation d'icelles, lesdicts Cantons luy fourniroient Gens selon sa volonte.

Si le Roy se veut trouuer en personne en quelque Guerre, il pourra choisir à son plaisir des Capitaines Suysses, & faire vne leuee de Six Mille hommes pour le moins.

Ne pourra desioindre & separer l'Armee des Suysses lors qu'il faudra donner Bataille, mais hors d'icelle, il pourra les mettre en Garnison par les Villes, & places fortes.

A ce que les Traictez d'Aliance des Annees Mil Cinq Cents Seize, *& Vingt & vn demeurent fermes & perdurables, quant aux gages non payez, y a este pourueu comme ensuit. Le Demandeur aduertira du faict son Magistrat, auquel si la cause semble estre recitable, il s'adressera aux Ambassadeurs de sa Maieste, qui lors seront en Suysse: s'ils sont absents ledict Magistrat escrira au Roy, & requerra sa Maieste qu'il satisface à la Partie. Si le Roy se met à la raison, le Demandeur s'en deura contenter, mais s'il refusoit de payer selon l'Equite, le Demandeur pourra lors prier qu'on commette des Iuges & Arbitres deuant lesquels il debattra sa cause.*

Si le Roy ne commet des Iuges de sa part, ceux de Suysse passeront outre en la cognoissance du faict, & ce quils ordonneront sera tenu pour ferme & valable par chacune des Parties, comme si les Iuges de part, & d'autre y auoient assiste.

Les Marchands Francois, & Suisses ne seront greuez d'aucuns Ports, Passages, ou Passages nouueaux. Sil s'esmeut Procez entre les Subiects de part, & d'autre, le Demandeur plaidera deuant le Iuge du lieu, ou demeure le Deffendeur.

THat the State of Millaine, and other Lands vsurped in Italie, against the Crowne of France, from the time of King Francis *the first: may be recouered by the King,* with out the Switzers *binding to giue him aide in the doing thereof. But if he shall recouer them by the helpe of another Armie: then for the conseruation of them, the Cantons are to furnish him with men according to his owne minde.*

If the King please to be personally present in any warre, he shall make choice (at his pleasure) of the Switzers *Captaines, and make a leuy of sixe thousand men at the least.*

No disioyning or seperation may be made of the Armie of Switzers *when they are to giue Battaile: but out of it, they may plant them in Garrisons for Townes and strong places.*

Because the Treaties of Alliance in the yeares One thousand fiue hundred and sixteene, and twentie one, continue firme and lasting, although wages were vnpayed: it is prouided as followeth. The Demander shall (in this case) aduertise the Magistrate, to whom if the case seeme to carrie equitie: He shall shape his course to the Ambassadours for his Maiestie, that then are in Swetia. *But if they be absent, the Magistrate shall write to the King, and require his Maiestie to satisfie the partie. If the King doe yeelde to reason, the Demander is to rest contented; but if he refuse to pay according to equity: the Demander may then pray, to haue the case committed to Iudges and Arbitrators, before whom he may debate his cause.*

If the King doe not commit his part to Iudges, the Switzers *themselues may proceede to take knowledge of the fact, and that which they ordaine and appoint, shall be held for firme and valuable by either of the parties, as if Iudges (on the one side and other) had giuen assistance therein.*

French Merchants and Switzers, shall not be iniuried at any Ports, by new Toules or Passes. If Suite be moued in Law betweene Subiects of either side: the Plaintife or Demandant shall Pleade before the Iudge of the place, where the Defendant dwelleth.

King *Charles* the ninth renewed this League vpon the same conditions as before is expressed, for the time of his Reigne, and of his Successour King *Henry* the third, of happy memory.

King *Henry* the Great, renewed it likewise, for the time of his Reigne, and of *Monsieur* the *Daulphine*, reigning at this present, and for sixe yeares after his death. It was determined and concluded at *Soleurre*, on Monday being the eleauenth of September, One thousand sixe hundred and one. And to see it sworne to the said King *Henry* the Great of endlesse memory. Two and fortie Deputies of the Cantons, Leagued *Grisons*, and other Allies, came to *Paris* the Moneth of October following. And the twentieth day of the same Moneth, this League was there sworne by his Maiestie, in the Church of *Paris*.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Names and Armes of the thirteene Cantons of Switzerland; *and also of their Allies.*

Vrich, in Latine *Tigurum*, and *Turegum*, first and chiefe of the Switzer Cantons. *Porte d'Argent taille d'Azur.* These Armes are held and supported by a Lyon standing vpright, holding a Bowle or Roundure of the world, with his left Pawe forward, and with the other a Sword.

2. *Berne*, in Latine *Ciuitas Vrsi*, *The Citie of the Beare. Porte de Gueulles à la Beare d'Or*

d'Or, chargee d'vn Ours rempant de Sable. *Ber* in the *Almaigne* Language signifieth a *Beare*. The Supporter is a Beare standing vpright, hauing on his Thigh a Sword girded.

3. *Lucerne*, in Latine *Luciaria*, in regarde of a *Pharos* and high Tower, wheron a fire is made in the night time, for the conduct of such as sayle vpon the Lake. *Porte d'Argent, party d'Azur.* The Supporter a naked *Switzer*, his head and naturall parts couered with Oaken branches, and holding in his right hand a Bough of the same.

4. *Vri*, in the *Allemaigne* or *Germaine* tongue, signifieth a *Wilde* or *Saluage Bull*. And that is the reason why this *Canton Porte d'Or a vne Teste de Bufle de Sable, acorne & boucle ou emboucle de Gueules*: The Inhabitants of this *Canton* were sometimes named *Taurisci*, for the reason before related. The Supporter, a *Switzer* armed with a Sword and a Pomarde.

5. *Switz*, vnder which name are all the *Cantons* comprehended: *Porte de Gueules a la croisette de Argent au Quartier Gauche.* The Supporter a *Switzer* Armed, bearing a plaine Crosse vpon the Breast-plate, and a Banner of the same.

6. *Vndervald*, *de Gueules, couppe d'Argent*: The Supporter a *Griffon*.

7. *Zug*, *D'Argent, a la Face d'Azur*: The Supporter an Armed *Switzer*, bearing a Launce in his left hand.

8. *Glarys*, in Latine *Glarona*: *De Gueules au Sainct Iacques d'Argent a son Bourdon d'Or.* The Supporter, an Angell.

9. *Bisile*, tearmed the Moderne, in Latine *Basilea*, and Olde *Augusta*; *Augusta Rauracorum*, and the Inhabitants *Rauraci*, who were in former times past deuided into two Leagues and partialities. The one side fauouring the Bishop of the Citty, and tried for their Ensigne, and for Armes, *D'Argent au Perroquet de Sinople.* And the other side maintained the parte of *Rodolphe*, Counte of *Habspourg*, and the Abbot of Saint *Gall*: *Portoient de Gueules a vne Estoile de Seize Raiz d'Or. Basle porte d'Argent a l'Estuy de Crosse d'Euesque de Sable.* The Supporter a Dragon winged, with two griffons Feete.

10. *Freienbourg*, *Francorum Burgum* in Latine, *Bourrough* of the *Frenche*, or *Villefranche*: *De Sable, couppe d'Argent.* The Supporter, a Seruant *Switzer*, without any other Armes then a Sword.

11. *Soleurre*, in Latine *Solis Turris*, *Solodori Vicus*, *Soloturum*, *et Soloturnum*. *D'Argent, couppe de Gueules.* The Supporter a *Switzer* Armed, bearing a Banner of the Canton.

12. *Schaffhause*, In the *Germaine* tongue *Schaff* signifieth a Sheepe. And from hence it commeth, that this *Canton* beareth in Armes *D'Or à vn Belier Sautant de Sable Accorne d'Argent.* The Supporter a Ramme. The last is

13. *Appenzell*, in Latine *Abbatis Cella*. An Abbey built by the Children of *Dagobert* the Great, King of *France*, the Restorer of Saint *Denys* in *France*. This last Canton beareth *D'Argent a l'Ours debout de Sable.* The Supporter a Beare standing vpright, with his throate fuming or smoaking.

The Allies and Confederates of the Cantons.

THe Abbot of Saint *Gall*: *Porte d'Argent a l'Ours tourne debout de Sable.*

2. The Towne of Saint *Gall*. *D'Or à l'Ours debout de Sable, accolé d'Or.*

3. The Leagued *Grisons*. *D'Argent, Party d'Or au Sauuage peint en Incarnation, la Masse leuee d'Or.*

4. The *Valaisans*, *d'Argent à Cinq Estoilles de Gueules, Party de Gueules a Cinq Estoilles d'Argent.* 2. 2. 1. *que l'on dit de l'vn a l'autre.*

5. *Rottuille*, *d'Argent au Bouc debout de Sable, accorne de mesme.*

6. *Mulhouse*, *De Gueules a la Roue de [illegible] Raiz d'Argent.*

7. *Bienne*, *D'Argent a l'Aigle de Sable.*

8. *Neuf-Chastell*, *De Gueules a deux Coignees d'Argent passees en Saultoir.*

The Order of the Beare (wherewith, for the most part, the Armes of the Cantons,

The most part of the Cantons Armes charged with the *Beare*.

as alſo of their Confederates are charged) Inſtituted by the ſaid Emperour *Frederick* the Second, and in the yeare before remembred: was not compoſed but with one Chaine of Golde, and an Ouall at the end thereof, charged with a Beare enamelled with Black, mounted on an Hillock enamelled with Synople.

Memory of the beginners of the *Switzers* liberty.

In memory and acknowledgement of thoſe three men, who were the chiefe Founders of the *Switzers* liberty; the Chaine was round engirte with an other Chaine, compoſed arteficially of Oaken leaues, to declare thereby; that they had bin the Conſeruers of the Honour, liues and goods of their Fellow-Cittizens. The ſucceſſe of following times, and according to the chauncing occurrences; the other Cantons of the *Switzers*, and their neighbours (moued thereto by the common cauſe) became aſſociated, vnited and lincked together. *Lambendo*, after the faſhion of a Beare, who maketh her miſhapen and formeleſſe fruite perfect, by licking and poliſhing it, ſo reducing it to right ſhape: if we may credit *Ariſtotle*, *Ælianus* and *Plinie* in the Eight Booke of his naturall Hiſtory, the Sixe and Thirty Chapter. *Hi ſunt candida informiſque caro, paulo Muribus Maior, ſine oculis, ſine pilo. Vngues tantum prominent; hanc* Lambendo *paulatim figurant.*

The *Switzers* acknowledged by the *Beare*.

And this Beaſte is ſo tenderly louing to her young-ones, that *Plutarch*, in his Treatiſe of the Loue of Fathers towards their Children; hath deriued thence diuers compariſons and ſimilitudes. In a word, this warre-like Nation of the *Switzers*, hath bin noted and obſerued by the *Beare*, as the *Millainers* by the Adder, and the *Frenche* by the *Salamander* (the deuiſe of King *Frances*) and the Imperialles by the Eagle.

Vrſus atrox, Aquilaque leues, & tortilis Anguis
Ceſſerunt flammæ iam Salamandra tuæ.

The End of the Seauenth Booke.

ORDER

ORDERS OF

ſuch as haue bin Inſtituted in the Kingdome of ITALIE.

The eight Booke.

CHAP. I.

Concerning the Orders Militarie, which haue bin Inſtituted by the Popes of Rome.

The Pope Lord of Saint Peters Patrimonie.

VR purpoſe was not, to vſe any diſcourſe of Monaſticall Orders, but onely ſuch as were Militarie. Our moſt Holy Fathers the Popes, Soueraigne Princes Temporall, concerning the Patrimonie of Saint *Peter*, and the dependances thereon, to honour Princes and Lords their Subiects, in the extendure of the State, and their Ordenarie attending Officers: haue at ſundry times eſtabliſhed diuers Orders of Knights. The firſt whereof were them

Order of Ieſus Chriſt.

Of Ieſus Chriſt, Inſtituted in *Auignion*, by Pope *Iohn*, two and twentieth of the name, he being a Natiue of *Cahors* in *Cahourcy*, Anno One thouſand three hundred and twentie, the fourth yeare of his Pontificalitie. They did weare a Croſſe of Gold plaine, enamelled with Red, ſhut vp or encloſed within another Croſſe *Pattee d'Or*, of the ſame faſhion; but the enamelling differed from that order of *Chriſtus* in *Portugall*.

Of the Holy Ghoſt.

Of the Holy Ghoſt, acknowledged at *Rome* vnder the name of *Bretheren of the Hoſpitall of the Holy Ghoſt*; which was Inſtituted by Pope *Paul*, ſecond of the name, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand foure hundred threeſcore & eight, the fift of his Pontificalitie. And theſe Knights ware a Croſſe *formie* or *pattee*, White.

Of S. *George*.

Of Saint George, Inſtituted by Pope *Alexander*, ſixt of the name, in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and eighteene, the ninth of his Pontificalitie. They did carrie a Croſſe of Gold, entowred with a wreath made in forme of a Crowne, of the ſame

Of S. *Peter*.

Of Saint Peter, to warre and fight againſt the *Turkes*, and to guard and defend their courſes on the Sea-coaſts, for the State of the Church. It was Inſtituted by Pope *Pius*, tenth of the name, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and twenty, the ſixt of his Pontificalitie. They did weare (within an Ouale of Gold) the Image of Saint *Peter*, at the end of a Tortis of Chaines of Gold. There haue bin ſeene foure hundred Knights of this Order, at one and the ſame time.

Of S. *Paul*.

Of Saint Paul, eſtabliſhed by Pope *Paul*, third of the name, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand fiue hundred and fortie, the thirteenth of his Pontificalitie. He made two hundred Knights during the reſt of his time of keeping the State.

Of the *Pies*.

The Pies, ordained by Pope *Pius*, fourth of the name, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and threeſcore the firſt of his Pontificalitie, which continued but ſixe

yeares onely. During which time, he made to the number of fiue hundred and thirtie fiue Knights. At *Rome*, or in any place whereſoeuer he was in perſon; he would haue them to goe before the Knights of the Empire, and of *Malta*. And they had the charge of carrying the Pope; at ſuch time as he roade abroade in publique.

Of *Laurctum*, or *Lauretto*, Inſtituted by the Pope *Sixtus Quintus*, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred foureſcore and ſeauen, the ſecond of his Pontificalitie; for whom he erected the Church of our Lady at *Loretta*, to be a Cathedrall and Biſhops Church. He made (during his time of keeping the Chaire) two hundred and threeſcore Knights.

All which (as well as the reſt) are called *Cheualiers Dorez*, hauing permiſſion to beare Armes, *Au Tymbre tarre de front*, the Sword and guilt Spurres: Honors which the Popes conferred a well to them there of the Sword, as of the long Robe, known: by the name of Counts Palatines, all being at Wadges and Penſions of the Popes, that granted their degrees of Knighthood. Giuing them alſo priuiledge, to create and aduance Doctors in all Faculties, of Scribes and publique Notaries, yea, and to Legitimate Baſtards, as the Emperours did.

The power and authority of theſe knights

At *Rome* likewiſe there are *Knights Hoſpitaliers of Saint Anthony*, and the moſt part of them *French*, who albeit they are of the Church; yet notwithſtanding, they ſtile themſelues *Knights of Saint Anthony*, the Chiefe of this Order is at *Vienna* in *Dauphine*. The Generall of this Order beareth the title of Abbot of Saint *Anthony* of *Vienna*, who hath vnder his obedience a great number of hoſpitals and Preceptories, beſide great goods in *France*, which are in the guard and protection of our Kings, whereof I haue ſeene the confirmatiue Patents from King to King, from *Charles* fift of the name, vnto King *Lewes* the thirteenth, now reigning; whoſe Patents beare date the third day of Iuly, in the yeare One thouſand ſixe hundred and eighteene, verified in Parliament in the moneth of September following, the ſame yeare.

The Hoſpitable Knights of S. *Anthony*.

By which Patents, our Kings carrie the qualitie of *Daulphines* of *Viennois*, of *Valentinois* and *Diois*. The Principals of this Order doe weare on their Gownes, Cloakes and blacke Caſſockes a double Saint *Anthonies* Croſſe, that is to ſay, two letters T. T. the one vpon the other, of Blew Sattin, whereby is ſignified *Thanatos*, *Thanatos*, *Mors*, *Mors*, the meaneſt perſons weare onely but one. The Holy *Anchorites*, liuing in the Deſarts of *Thebes* in *Aegypt*, and vnder the Rules of the Fathers of Hermites Saint *Paul* and Saint *Anthony*, went cloathed in Greene, that is to ſay, garments wouen of Palme tree leaues, the habites of Slaues and miſerable perſons; wearing on the breaſt the Croſſe of Saint *Anthony*, to declare, that they were dead to the World. The *Greeke Calloyers*, of the Order of Saint *Baſile*, were cloathed after the Friers *Minimes*, very obſcurely, and vpon their breaſt they wore the double Croſſe of Saint *Anthony*, the vppermoſt whereof was Red, and that vnderneath wholly Blacke; as we learne in the *Grecian* Eccleſiaſticall Hiſtory, and by *Nicephorus Gregoras*, in the life of the Emperour *Andronicus*, who was ſhorne a Monke. And heretofore, Abbots, carried no other Croſſe then a Staffe, the top whereof began in ſhape like to Saint *Anthonies* Croſſe.

Titles giuen to the Kings of *France* by Patents.

The Anchorite Hermits of *Aegypt*.

In like manner, there are in ſome Cities of *Italie*, as at *Bologna*, *Modena*, & elſewhere, *Knights of the Virgin Mary*. The learned *Carolus Sigonius*, in his Booke *De Regno Italiæ*, maketh mention of this Order of Knights, *Of the Virgin Mary*, in obſeruing the firſt Founder thereof, and ſuch as were enrouled with him. In the yeare One thouſand two hundred thirty three, Brother *Bartholmew*, Biſhop of *Vicenca*, of the Order of the Friers Preachers, Inſtituted this Order, and cauſed it to be confirmed by Pope *Vrbane*, fourth of the name, in the yeare One thouſand two hundred threeſcore and two. The Knights of this Order followed the Rule of Saint *Dominicke*, wearing *A white Caſſocke*, and vpon the breaſt *Vne Croix pattee Rouge, à Deux Eſtoiles en Chef de meſme*, and ouer the Caſſocke, a Cloake of Aſhes Gray colour.

Knights of the Virgin *Mary*.

The intention profeſſed by this Order.

Their profeſſion was, to take perticular care of Widowes and Orphanes. And vnderſtanding of any houſhold variance, to happen betweene the Husband and his wife, about ſome perticular rancor or quarell: they endeauoured (ſo much as poſſibly they could) to plant peace & reconcilement, which is a work of charity, & by S. *Paul* often commended. They had neither Conuent nor Monaſtery, to liue there, but each dwelt

an dwelt in his owne houſe, with his wife and Familie: and therefore (by way of hockerie) they were called *The Bretheren of Ioye*. They acknowledged to haue ouer them a Great Maiſter, to whom they were obedient.

The Order of Knights of the moſt Glorious Virgin *Mary*: Inſtituted in the Citie of *Rome* in the yeare One thouſand ſixe hundred and eighteene, in the Moneth of Iuly.

L'Ordre des Irethenreuſe Vierge Marie Mere de Dieu.

CHAP. II.



The Inuenters of the Order.

About ſome fiue yeares ſince, three Gentlemen that were Bretheren, of *Spella* in *Italie*, named *Pedro*, *Iohn Baptiſta* and *Bernardo*, ſirnamed *Petrignanoes*, inuented a new Order Militarie of Knighthood, in the honour, and vnder the name of *The moſt glorious Virgin Mary*, called the *Mother of God*, and vnder the Rule of Saint *Frances d'Aſſiſe*. The memories thereof were by them preſented to our Holy Father Pope *Paul*, fift of the name, at his preſent ſitting in the Chaire of Saint *Peter*: who cauſed them to be ſeene in a full Conclaue of the illuſtrious Cardinals, and there they were found to be very reaſonable. So that in the Moneth of Iuly, One thouſand ſixe hundred and eighteene, his Holineſſe approued the ſaid Order: whereof his Holineſſe and his Succeſſors in the Sacred Seate, are to be the Great Maiſters.

The Authours opinion concerning the proofe of this Order.

This Order (then which, none wil be more famous thorow out all Chriſtendome) ſhould haue for Great Maiſter, ſome great Soueraigne Prince, that is endued with power and meanes, to maintaine it. His Holineſſe gaue to the ſaid Order, the Palace of Saint *Iohn de Laterano*, the beſt built, and the moſt ſpacious, and in the ſweeteſt ayre of all the Citie of *Rome*, there to haue their Conuent and ordenary abiding. And, to make their *Arſenall* of Gallies, the ſmall Citie and Port of *Ciuita Vecchia*, anciently called *Centum Cellæ*, ſeated on the Mediterranean Sea, which the Knights may fortefie. But it hath this diſcommoditie, that *Cælo ſubiacet inimico*, againſt which it is difficult to vſe any remedy. He gaue them likewiſe an Iſland, adiacent to the Port of *Ciuita Vecchia*, and the Gouernment of his Gallies.

The Popes bounty to this Order.

After that this Order had bin thus approued by the Pope, the Inſtitutours thereof came to the Court of *France*, & procured the Articles to be ſeene by the Moſt Chriſtian King *Lewes*, thirteenth of the name, who made them promiſe of his vtmoſt fauour. From thence they went to the Court of the Emperour *Mathias*, whence they made account to returne for *Italie*, and to hold within two yeares (at the leaſt) the firſt Chapter of the Order, in the Citie of *Rome*, there and then to elect a Great Maiſter. At this inſtant they haue aboue two Millions of promiſes for new Knights, whom they haue enrouled from all the Prouinces of Chriſtendome; namely, from *France*. And here you may behold the Articles of this new Order, to the number of ſeauen and thirtie.

The firſt Chapter to be held in *Rome*.

The Articles of the new Order of the Virgin Mary.

The cauſes of this Orders inſtitution.

1. THis Order, called *The Order of the Virgin Mary*, is Inſtituted for defence of the Chriſtian Faith, exaltation of the Catholique and Apoſtolique Church: and (perticularly) to repreſſe the audacious boldneſſe of the *Turkes*, who run ordenarily

narily roauing on the coasts of the Mediterranean Sea, carrying away an vnspeakable number of poore Christians, whom they kill cruelly, or keepe them in perpetuall slauery, and in a condition, more miserable a thousand times then death, to the disgrace and shame of Christendome.

II. There is contained in it three kindes of Knights. The first is of Gentlemen *Layicks*, who are called, *Knights of Iustice*. Because, before their admittion and receiuing into the said Order, it is expedient for them, to make an exact search, and good proofe of their Nobilitie. In the second place *Knights Gentlemen Priests*, and Beneficed.

Knights of Iustice Laye-men

Next, *Knights Chaplaines*. For succour and seruice of which three Orders of Knights, are *Seruants of Armes*

Seruants of Armes.

III. The *Knights Laye Gentlemen*, are to make proofe of their Father and Mother, Grandfather and Grandmother, both Paternall and Maternall; that they are issued and descended of Noble Houses, capable and worthy to beare the charge and degree of Nobilitie: and in proceeding to the information of their life and manners, as also their extraction; to make mention, what dignities and degrees haue bin held by the Grandfathers and Fathers, as well by knowledge as authenticall Titles. Likewise, that they are bred and borne in lawfull Mariage: that they are not Bastards to Princes and Great Lords, in which case, they are to be priuiledged.

Of Nobilitie by descent.

IIII. That their Predecessours haue alwayes liued Nobly, without vsing or exercising any Mechanicall Trade or Occupation, vnworthy the title of Nobilitie. And concerning such Noble men, that meddle in Trafficke and Merchandise, as doe the Gentlemen of *Florence*, *Geneway*, *Sienna* and *Luca*: the Sonnes of such Gentlemen may be receiued among the *Knights Gentlemen of Iustice*; prouided, that they themselues haue not exercised the Trafficke of their Fathers, and can make publique appearance, of their good life and behauiour, and that they and their Ancestours are cleare from any noate of infamie, and were neuer called in question before any Seate of Iustice.

meddling in Trafficke and Merchandise, and Sons descended of the.

Moreouer, to iustifie the Nobilitie of their extraction, they stand obliged to make apparant proofe, concerning the Armes of their Houses, both by Father and Mother, which they are to emblazon by their Mettals and Colours, in the Booke and Register of Genealogies, approued by Knights of the Order, to be kept and remaine in the Treasurie of the Order. Whereinto shall none be admitted, that are issued or descended of *Iewes*, *Moores* or *Sarrazens*. The same proues, and in the same nature, is to be made by them that are *Knights Gentlemen Priests* and *Beneficed* persons.

V. And as for *Knights Gentlemen Chaplaines*, and *Bretheren Seruants of Armes*: they are to make proofe, that their Father and Mother are Noble by extraction, and haue liued Nobly, without the least infamous taxation.

Knight Priests Knights Chaplains and Seruants of Armes

VI. The *Knights of Iustice* and *Seruants of Armes* may be admitted and receiued into the Order, at what age soeuer: alwayes before hand prouided, that they be actiuely able, well formed of body, for managing Armes in the defence of Religion, and haue such meanes to maintaine them, according as the dignitie of a Knight requireth.

VII. *Knights of Iustice*, and *Knights Priests* and *Beneficed*, are bound to weare about their necks a Riband of Blew Silke, and a Crosse of Gold enamelled with Blew; in memory & respect of the Garment, worne by the most glorious Virgin *Mary*, which was of Blew Celestiall colour. And vpon the Cloake (on the left side) a Crosse of Blew Sattin, embrodered and curiously wrought with Siluer.

The Riband and Crosse.

VIII. *Knights Priests Chaplaines*, and the *Bretheren Seruants of Armes*: are to weare the Crosse of Blew Sattin (formerly spoken of) on the left side of their Cloaks, but may not weare it about their necke.

Varietie of wearing the Crosse.

IX. *Knights of Iustice* shall weare the Roabe of White double Taffatie, trayling along vpon the ground, with great sleeues, a long traine, Cordons, decked and garnished with Blew Silke; & on the Breast the Crosse of Blew Sattin before described.

X. *Knights Priests* and *Beneficed*, shall weare the like Roabe; onely it must be shorter

shorter then that of the other Knights of the great Crosse.

XI. And as for those *Knights Chaplaines*, and the *Bretheren Seruants of Armes*: they must weare Roabes of White Serge, with strait sleeues and long, hanging downe to the ground. And the Crosse on the left side, with deckings, Cordons and garnishments of Blew Silke.

XII. The *Knights of Iustice*, who after the proofe of their Nobilitie, haue obtained the great Crosse: shall stand bound each man, to pay to the Religion a thousand Crownes for their entrance, and fiue and twenty Crownes for the expedition of their Letters.

Knights of Iustice their payment at entrance.

XIII. Each Knight of the great Crosse, entring into the Foundation of this Order; may freely grant the habite of a Knight of Iustice (and as freely also) to such a person as he shall name: Prouided, that he be a man of such qualitie, as is fit to enter the said Order, and can, or hath made proofe of his Nobilitie, in the manner before declared, of his foure Predecessors inclusiuely. In the doing whereof, he shall not pay any right for entrance; but onely fiue and twenty Crownes for the expedition of his Letters, and shall enioy all the Priuiledges, giuen and granted to the Order.

XIV. The *Knights of Iustice*, and *Knights Priests Beneficed*, shall pay to the Religion for their entrance, each man two hundred Crowns, and fiue and twenty Crowns for the expedition of their Letters.

Other payments at entrance.

XV. *Knights Priests Chaplaines*, and *Bretheren Seruants of Armes*, shall pay each man for his entrance an hundred Crownes, and twenty Crownes for the expedition of his Letters.

XVI. All these Knights of the Order (the Priests excepted) shall stand bound to pay to the Religion, each man twelue Crownes, for buying a paire of Armes, which shall be placed in the Arsenall of the said Religion.

XVII. All Knights of the Order, hauing receiued the habite, shall be bound to make their *Caraueues*, that is to say; to abide eighteene Moneths in the Gallies belonging to the Religion, and as many more in the Conuent thereof, which must be established in *Rome*. From which (neuertheless) Priests and Clearkes stand exempted, by making foure Moneths residence at *Rome*, during which time, they shall be lodged and maintained in the Conuent, at the expences of the Religion.

Duties to be performed by the Knights.

XVIII. *Knights of Iustice*, and *Bretheren Seruants of Armes*, being desirous to learne the Exercises, as managing Armes, riding great Horses, and vnderstanding the Mathematicks; shall learne them in the Conuent, at charge of the Religion, where (for the same purpose) shall be maintained good and skilfull Maisters. And they may continue in the Conuent, during the space of eighteene Moneths, for the apprehension of the said Exercises, being there lodged and nourished in the Conuent.

Exercises enstructed by the Religion.

XIX. *Knights Layicks* of this Order, may be married men, and may likewise marrie Widdowes, as well as Maides. And by the death of their first wiues, may be admitted to ioyne againe in second mariage, according as the holy Church hath ordained.

Liberty of Marriage.

XX. Which Knights, although they be married, yea, twise married; may yet haue and hold pensions on all kindes of Benefices, without being bound and restrained, from wearing the Clearkes habite, or any other, but that belonging to the Religion.

XXI. These Knights and their Seruants may weare all kindes of Armes; as Knights and Bretheren Seruants, of other Religions and Militarie Orders doe.

Wearing of Armes.

XXII. All sorts of Nations may enter into the Foundation of this Order; according to the Rules and conditions, which are formerly inserted.

XXIII. *Knights Layicks* are to make three vowes; as namely of Charitie to his neighbour, coniugall Chastity: and obedience to the Great Maister and his Successours.

Of Vowes.

XXIV. Priests shall vowe Charitie to Neighbours, and obedience to the Great Maister: And all them of the Order, shall liue conformably to the Statutes and Ordenances of the Religion.

XXV. Euery Knight shall stand obliged, to pay to the Priest Knight, that hath giuen him the habite of the Religion, two Crownes of Gold, three pounds of white Waxe, and a pound of Incense to serue in the Church.

XXVI. The

XXVI. The election of the first Great Maister, shall depend on the will of our holy Father the Pope.

XXVII. And for proceeding (afterward) to the election of the Great Maister; his Holinesse, and his Successours in the Holy Seate, shall nominate Three Knights of each Nation, whereof there are Knights in the Order, Knights of the Great Crosse, or of Iustice; and the Councell shall make choyce of one among them three.

XXVIII. All the Great Maisters, beginning with the very First, shall be bound (immediatly after their Election) to take the Oathe of Obedience, and of Fidelitie to the Holy Father then sitting, and to the Apostolike Seate.

Power & authority of the Great Maister

XXIX. The Great Maister of the said Order, priuatiuely, and before all other Iudges elsse, shall haue the knowledge of all causes ciuile, criminall, reall, personall and mixed, concerning all the Knights of the Order, of what nature or condition soeuer they be.

XXX. There shall be in euery Prouince, a Knight of the Great Crosse deputed, for administration of Iustice in all the foresaid cases, vpon the first instance: whose Office and Authority shall last but three yeares.

Concerning the Generall of the Army and his Title.

XXXI. The Generall of the Armie of the said Religion, shall be nominated and elected by our Holy Father the Pope, and his Successours in the Holy Seate, and taken from among the number of Knights of the Great Crosse: who shall haue and beare the Title of Marshall of the Religion.

XXXII. The charges and Offices of the said Religion, and of the Gallies thereto belonging, are to bee giuen and deuided to Knights of the Order, according to the rancke of their receiuing thereinto, as also their experience and capacitie in the Exercises.

Bondes and assurances due to the Order.

XXXIII. The Obligations of such as would enter into the said Religion, for assurance of their rights of entrance, and Armes and Learning belonging to the Order: shall be set downe in authenticall tearmes, and according to the forme, stile and custome of the place where they are to be placed. And the future Knights must be bound, by an expresse and perticuler clause, promising and couenanting on their behalfe, to make tender and payment of their dues, vpon commaund of one of the Lords *Petrignanoes*, Inuenters of the said Order.

Imployment of moneys for entrances.

XXXIV. Such summes of money, as shall arise by entrances of Knights and Seruants of the Order, shall be imployed in the acquisition of immoueable goods, which shall serue in the Prouinces, whence the monies doe come for such entrances, and not elsewhere, to serue as a foundation and endowment for Commanderies of the Order, whereto shall arriue Knights of the same Prouinces, according to the ranck of their reception. The Thirdes of the said Commanderies, Reuennues, reserued to the Religion.

XXXV. With the said moneys shall likewise be founded other Commaunderies, of lesser reuennues then those of the Great Crosse; for the *Knights of Iustice, Priests Beneficed, Chaplaines, and Brethren Seruants of Armes*, according to the ranck of their entertainement.

For receiuing the Orders Habite at *Rome*.

XXXVI. After deposte is made of the summes of money, promised by such as are nominated and retained, for entring into the said Order: the Knights shall receiue their habites at *Rome*, from the hands of him, as shall be thereto deputed and allowed by our Holy Father the Pope. And in the Principall Cities of euery Prouince, shall be deputed from the Holy Seate, some person (famous for dignitie) who shall deliuer the Habites to the new Knights: and who (vpon good and lawfull excuses) shall be dispenced withall from going to *Rome*, paying (for the Knight) to him that deliuereth the Habite, according as before is expressed.

The first Generall Chapter to be holde at *Rome*.

XXXVII. All which Knights, hauing receiued the habite of the Religion: the first Generall Chapter thereof shall be held in the Citty of *Rome*, by appointment of the Great Maister. At which Chapter, the *Knights Laycks, Priests Beneficed, Chaplaines*, & *Brethren Seruants of Armes*, shall stand bound to be personally present, vpon penalty of their Habites priuation. Except such as are vnder Eight yeares of age, or detayned by some lawfull cause or excuse; which must be made known to the Great Maister, and signed by such testimonie, as may be without reproofe.

Of

At this First Chapter shall be made and published, all the ordinances, Rules and Statutes, concernig the said Order.

Number of Knights at *Rome* and *Loretto*.

Of Knights of the Order, there shal alwaies remaine resident at *Rome* in the Court of the holy Father, fiue and twenty, hauing twenty Ducates by the Moneth, and the like number at our Lady of *Loretto*.

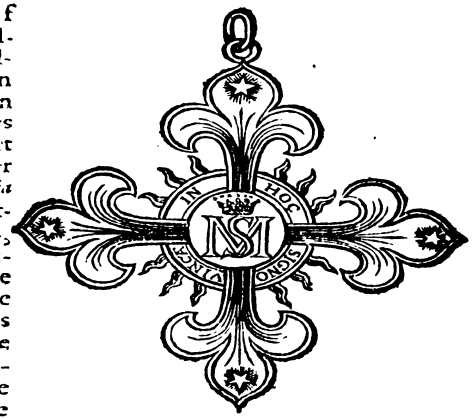
The Popes Armes.

Our Holy Father *Paul*, fift of the name, of the Familie of the *Bourgheses*, Soueraigne Great Maister, and Protectour of this Order: *Porte d'Azur au Dragon ou Serpent aile d'Or, au Chef d'Or, chargee d'vne Aigle, simple de Sable.*

The Inuenters Armes.

The Bretheren *Petrignanoes*, Institutours of this Order: *Portent d'Azur au Lyon d'Argent estiue de dessus Trois Monts, ou Montagnetes d'Or, au Mezail Tarre de front, sans Cimier, & Supposts: Et sous le Tout de ces Armes, les beuts de la Croix dudit Ordre.*

The moe all meant in the Orders Stile according to the perticulers declared.



Which (as we haue already said) is of Blew Celestiall colored Sattin, wholly couered and embrodered with Siluer, and without a Border of Gold. In the middest is a round Circle, wherein is composed like Cyphers, the Letters M. and S. Crowned with a Chaplet of Floures, and a Starre of Gold ouer the Cypher, as seeming to say *Sancta Maria*. Round about which is written this Deuise. *In hoc Signo Vincam.*, and all that is releuated vpon the Sattin, is of Siluer Imbrodery. About the which Roundure, beside the foure Branches, which make the Crosse (as we will shew hereafter) are twelue Rayes or beames of Siluer, three tending to each side, as representing the twelue Apostles. Each Branch of the Crosse is composed of nine Tracts, which denoate or demonstrate the nine Orders of Angels. The finishing of the Branches, are fashioned as if they were Floures de Luces; yet not after the *French*, but in a strange manner, as testifying, that this Order is Instituted in the honor and inuocation on *The Sacred Virgin, the true Lilie of the Vallies*. At the ends of the Crosse, in Flourets are foure Starres, round engirt with beames, as figuring the foure Euangelists, who (with one hand) guided by the spirit of truth, haue described the Misteries of our Saluation, and the Genealogie of the Queene of Angels.

A further relation of the ninth Article.

For our better vnderstanding the ninth Article, it is to be obserued, that the Cloaks of honor, which we call of the Order, are tied vpon one of the sholders, as we see in *France*, and the other before, as in *Italie* and elsewhere. The Cordons being fastned before by diuers and sundry strings, are throwne vp afterward vpon the Knights shoulders; to the end that they may traine farre enough off behinde them, like to the Dalmaticks and Coapes of our Priests, which serue for Deacons & Subdeacons, without comparing any diuine things with humaine, *Absit miscere Sacra Prophanis*. And the Cordons of this Order are composed of white Silke, hauing the knots and Tassels of White and Blew Silke.

Of

CHAP. III.

Of those Orders of Knighthood, which are in diuers Cities and Common-wealths of Italie.

The Order of S. Marke in the Citie of Venice.

OConcerning that of *Venice*, the most auncient and famous of Christendome, after that the Body of Saint *Marke* the Euangelist, was transported from forth of *Alexandria* in *Agypt*, into this rich Citie, the Queene of the Sea, and taken by her for her Tutelarie Angell and Guardian: was forthwith instituted, *The Order of Knights of Saint Marke*, figured and represented in their Armes, Banners and White Flagges, *Par vn Lyon Aisle de Gueulles*: And for the Legend or deuise *Pax tibi Marce Euangelista meus*. The Duke and the Seigneurie doe neuer grant this Order, but to such a person, as hath performed some famous Seruices for the Common-wealth. And the granting thereof carieth along with it, the title of Bourgesship, and a priuiledge withall, to beare for Crest ouer his Armes, *Vn Musle de Lyon*, in honour of Saint *Marke*. A priuiledge which they esteeme and hold in such honor: that (in former times) there were none but Princes their neighbors, that could haue the happinesse to enioy it.

Another Order for the yong Nobility of *Venice*.

To forme and fashion their yong Noble Gentlemen the same Common-wealth established another Order, called *Della Galza*, hauing the same Rules and Statutes, as that of the *Band* in *Castile*. But that there was deuised for directing yong *Spanish* Noble men, in well managing an Horse, and other Lands exercises: whereas this of *Galza*, was to fashion Noble men both by Sea and Land. This Order was renewed by the Duke and the Common-wealth, in the yeare One thousand fiue hundred threescore and two.

I could here set downe the names and Armes of two hundred and fiftie Lords, issued from Illustrious Families in the State of *Venice*, all *Knights of Saint Marke*: but I passe them ouer in silence, to shorten this discourse, and come

The Seigneuryof *Geneway* hath the Order of Saint *George* Kights.

To the *Seigneurie* of *Geneway*. It hath also an Order of Knighthood, called *Knights of Saint George*, who, with a Chaine of Gold, doe weare a plaine Crosse, enamelled with Redde: and (vpon their Cloakes) one in embroderie, but of the same colour.

This Common-wealth was highly renowned for Riches and great possessions, at such time as warres were in the Holy-Land, where it enioyed very large Seigneuries. It hath likewise (a long time) held by force vnder awfull obedience the Kingdome of *Cyprus*. And hath bin a fruitfull Garden plot, for yeelding men, as dexterious in Armes, as for Nauigation on the Seas. It was so plentifully peopled with Noble men, whose blouds were high and boyling for Armes, and (consequently) the more capable, of altering and troubling a calme State: that this Seigneurie was constrained in the yeare of Grace Fiue hundred twentie and eight (according to the testimonie of *Augustino Iustiniano*, in his Historie of *Italie*) to reduce all the Noble Families (for ease and quiet of the State) to eight and twentie onely, the most Illustrious of that Common-wealth. Ordaining withall, that the rest of the said Noble Families, should put themselues vnder the name and Armes of the elected, eight and twentie, so made choice of, onely for their Antiquitie. And here you may behold their proceeding in this matter.

The enforcement of *Geneway* about her plenty of Nobilitie.

The Order and Rancke of the eight and twentie Houses or Families of *Geneway*.

1. THat of Doria, he bore for his Armes, *Couppee d'Or & d'Argent à vn Aigle coronne de Sable, lampasse, & arme de Gueulles.*

2. Fiesca, *Bande d'Azur, & d'Argent de six pieces.*

3. Grimolda, *Lozenge d'Argent & de Gueulles.*

4. Centuriona, *D'Or à la Bande Eschiquettee d'Argent & de Gueulles de trois traicts.*

5. Calua, *Eschiquette de Sable, & d'Argent.*

6. Lomelina, *Couppe en Arc de Gueulles, & d'Or.*

7. Marina, *d'Argent à trois Bandes Onees & Viurees de Sable.*

8. Negrona, *D'Or à trois Paulx de Sable.*

9. Negra, *d'Argent à trois Fleurs de lys d'Azur: 2. 1. au Chef endenche vers la pointe de cinq pieces de Gueulles.*

10. Franquis, *De Gueulles à trois Coronnes Royales d'Or, au Chef de Malte.*

11. Gentil, *D'Azur a quatre pieces d'Eschiquier d'Or.*

12. Imperial, *d'Argent, au Pal d'Or, charge d'vn Aigle Coronne de Sable, Lampasse, & Arme de Gueulles.*

13. Grilla, *de Gueulles à vne Bande d'Or, chargee d'vn Grillon de Sable.*

14. Pinela, *De Gueulles à trois Pommes de Pin d'Or. 3. 2. 1.*

14. Spinola, *d'Or à la Face Eschiquette d'Argent, & de Gueulles de Trois traicts, & en icelle vne Fleur de Lys de Gueulles.* I haue seene the Armes of the Marquesse Spinola, wherein is a Thorne pointed with Red or Gueulles, instead of a Floure de Luce.

16. Vzodimare, *de Gueulles à Quatre Fesses ondees d'Argent.*

17. Cibo, *de Gueulles à la Bande Eschiquettee d'Azur, & d'Argent de Trois traicts, au Chef de Malte.*

18. Formara, *Cheuronne de Gueulles & d'Argent de Six pieces.*

19. Iustiniana, *de Gueulles, au Chasteau d'Argent, maconne de Sable, au Chef d'Or, charge d'vn Aigle Naissant de Sable, Coronnee, & Lampasse de Gueulles.*

20. Cattagna, *d'Or à l'Aigle naissante de Sable, Lampasse, & Coronne de Gueulles, Couppe d'Argent à Trois Faisses d'Azur.*

21. Viualda, *de Gueulles party d'Or, au Chef d'Argent à l'Aigle naissant de Sable.*

22. Saluaga, *d'Or, à vn Tourteau de Sable, Charge d'vn Lyon rempant d'Argent.*

23. Palauicina, *d'Or à Quatre pieces d'Eschiquier d'Azur, au Chef d'Or à vne Croix recroisettee par les deux costez de Sable.*

24. Lercara, *Face de Gueulles, & d'Or de Sept pieces.*

25. Salua, *d'Argent à vn Aigle de Gueules aux Pieds d'Azur.*

26. Cigala, *de Gueulles à vn Aigle d'Argent, Coronne d'Or.*

27. Prementoria, *de Gueulles couppe de Sable à la Fesse de Cinq Lozenges d'Argent.* The last House is

28. Interiana. Laquelle *porte de Sable, au Lyon rampant d'Argent Coronne d'Or, Arme, & Lampasse de Gueulles.*

But in the yeare of my birth, which was One thousand fiue hundred threescore and sixe (when the Ordenance was made by King *Charles* the ninth, for the yeares beginning the first day of Ianuarie, which began to be put in practise the first day of Ianuarie following, when they accounted threescore and seauen) the auncient subiected Families, thorow want of meanes of ioyning themselues with those eight and twentie; declared to the Seigneurie, that it was vnbeseeming, yea, very vnseasonable and against all equitie, to make them loose the honor and memory of Families, which in elder times had appeared in all Prouinces of the world and were allied to Emperours of *Greece*, Kings and Princes of Christendome. Whereupon it pleased the Seigneurie, to ordaine, that euery Family, were it poore or rich, should still hold and retaine the name and Armes of their Noble Ancestors. Becausse riches and possessions passed from one House to another, and such as to day are poore and naked of meanes, to morrow may be wealthie and abounding in goods.

Alteration of the yeare to begin the first day of Ianuary.

Riches are flitting from one to another.

Multa renascentur quæ nunc cecidere, cadentque.
One hundred yeares a Banner bearer, Another hundred yeares a Banner-driuer.

Nor doth pouertie abate courage and desire in doing well, but contrariwise we see, that rich men are mounted vp to dignities, first by money, but no merit, hauing alwayes a vile minde, scraping in the earth, and sauouring rightly of the place of their extraction. It was then a most execrable transgression, to deface the memory of so great a number of Families, famous by the vertuous actions of their Noble Ancestours, such as were the *Adornes*, the *Pisagnos*, the *Zacharias* and *Bocanegras*, Dukes of *Geneway*, and Princes of the Seas, of whom some tender Slips and yong Plants, were

Pouerty can be no preiudice to vertue.

were yet to be seene in *Geneway*, and elsewhere. Vpon these Remonstrances the Seig-neurie appointed, that the establishment of the twentie eight Families, ordained in the yeare Fiue hundred twentie and eight, should continue still in force and vertue: and yet notwithstanding, the other should retaine and keepe their auncient names and Armes, as making Houses of themselues, and of great Honor.

The final conclusion of the Seigneurie.

The *Adornes*, *Portent d'Or à la Bande Eschiquetee d'Argent & de Sable, de Trois Traicts.*

The *Pisagnos*, *D'Azur à Cinq Fleurs de Lys d'Or en Saultoir, Couppe en Pointe à Trois Fesses ondees d'Azur.*

The *Zacharias* (A Branch of the House of *Fiesca*, and whereof was descended Pope *Innocent*, fift of the name) *Portoient d'Or Escartelie de Gueulles*: And

The *Bocanegras D'Argent, flancque de Gueulles, au Chef d'Or à vne Croix entiere de Sable.*

We haue bin the more willing to remember these Families, because mention of them is made in our Histories: And in regard that this State had our Most Christian Kings to be their Lords.

The Order of Sauoye, called, Of the *Annuntiation*: Instituted by *Amadis*, Fift of the name, Count of *Sauoye*: And in the yeare of Grace One thousand three hundred fiftie and fiue.

CHAP. IIII.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Dukes of Sauoye.

L'Ordre de Sauoye, dict de L'Annonciade.

IN the sinking and declining of our Kings descended of *Charlemaigne*, Heires to his Goods, but not his Vertues; the great body of the *French* Empire was dismembred (as we haue said) yea, torne in pieces: the Gouernours whereof possessed themselues (by right of conueniencie, or as lying fittest for their turne) some of *Italie*, others of *Germanie* and *Bourgongne*, and euen of those parts that were in *France*.

The Armes of the auncient Saxo Gouernours.

Henry, first of the name, sirnamed the Bird-catcher (Son to *Otho*, Duke of *Saxonie*) possessed himselfe of the Empire, about the yeare of Grace Nine hundred thirtie seauen. The auncient Gouernours of *Saxonie*, during the time of their Idolatrie, *Portoient d'Argent au Poulaingay de Sable*, and after by force and faire meanes, our King *Charlemaigne* had caused them to embrace Christianitie, in the yeare Eight hundred and twenty; they tooke *De Gueulles au Poulain gay tenant d'Argent*. Since which time, this House being falne into diuers Families; beside those auncient Armes, began to take moderne, which are *Face d'Or, & de Sable de six pieces à la Coronne de Rue perie en Bande de Synople*. This Emperour *Henry* had many Children by his Wife *Mechtilda*, as namely

Bruno, Archbishop of *Cologne*.

Mechtilda, Lady Abbesse in *Quendelimbourg*.

The Armes of the Bauarians.

Henry, Duke of *Saxonie* by the Fathers side, and of *Bauaria* in right of his wife *Intith*, Daughter to Duke *Arnold*. The Armes of the *Bauarians* are *Lozenges d'Argent & d'Azur & en bande sans nombre.*

Armes of Lorraine.

Gerberga, wife in first marriage to *Gilbert*, Duke of *Lorraine*. They of this Prouince did auncienly beare *D'Argent au Chef passant de Gueulles sommé d'Or*. After the Voyage to *Ierusalem*, they did take *D'Or à la Bande de Gueulles chargee de trois Alerions d'Argent*. In Second Mariage she espoused our King *Lewes* of *Beyond the Seas*.

Alinda, Wife to *Hugh* the Great, Count of *Paris*; and in this mariage was borne *Hugh Capet*, King of *France*, Authour and originall of those Kings, which afterward Sixe hundred yeares (pace) held the most famous Crowne of the Sacred Lillies of *France*.

The birth of *Hugh Capet*.

Otho, (Sirnamed the Great) First of the name, who by his first wife *Editha*, daughter to the King of *England*, had two Sonnes, to witt.

Lutolphe, Duke of *Saxonie* by his wife *Iutha*, Daughter to *Herman*, Duke of *Germanie*; And

William, Archbishop of *Maguntia*.

In second Mariage he had to Wife *Adelaida*, Daughter to *Rodolphe*, King of the higher *Bourgongne*: The Kings whereof *Portoient d'Or au Chat effarouche de Sable*, In this mariage were borne Foure Children.

Armes of *Bourgongne* the higher.

Henry.

Bruno.

Luitgarda, Wife to *Conrad*, Duke of *Suauba*, and of *Franconia*: And

Otho Emperour, Second of the name, who had two Wiues. The first whereof was *Sixta*, Daughter to the Marquesse of *Austria*: *Qui Portoit d'Azur à Cinq Cailles d'Or*, but others say Six, 3. 2. 1. and others noate *Sans nombre*. His other wife was *Sophia*, Daughter to the Emperour of *Greece*. *Qui portoit de Gueules à l'Aigle esployé d'Or prise sur l'estomach de Constantinople, qui est de Gueules à la Croix d'Or Cantonnee de quatre Fusils, ou B. tournez de mesme.* Of these two mariages he had,

Otho Emperour, Third of the name, who tooke to wife *Mary* of *Arragon*: And

Hugh, Duke of *Saxonie*, who by *Iutha* of *Bauaria* his Wife, lefte

Frederick, Duke of *Saxonie*

Huldrick: And as followeth.

Heere we enter into Sauoye.

BErauld, or *Berolde* of *Saxonie*, made by the King of *Bourgongne* (*Rodolphe* his kinseman) Gouernour and Vice Roy of *Arles*, *Sauoye*, and of the valley *Augusta*, which Gouernement continued to him by the King of *Bourgongne Bozon*. By *Ricarda* his Wife, Daughter to the Marquesse of *Vithin* *Qui portoit d'Or a deux faces viurees, d'Azur, et l'autre de Sable.* He left but one Sonne,

II. *Humbert*, first of all Gouernour of his Fathers Estates, by his death happening about the yeare of Grace, 1027; and afterward made Counte of *Maurienna*. By his Wife *Adelaida*, Daughter to the Marquesse of *Susa* (*Qui portoit Parti d'Argent et de Gueules en chacun vne tour de l'vn en l'autre*) he had

Elizabeth, wife to a Counte of *Mascon*, who bare in Armes *D'Argent à l'Aigle esployé d'Azur.*

Eudes.

Aymon: And for eldest Sonne

III. *Ame*, or *Amadis*, who by the death of his Father, happening in the yeare, One thousand, forty and eight, was Counte of *Morienna*. He had to Wife *Iane*, Daughter to *William*, Counte *Bourgongne*: *Qui portoit d'Azur seme de Billettes d'Or au Lyon de mesme.* And in this mariage was borne,

Constance, First Wife to *William* the Aged, Fourth Marquesse of *Montferrat*. The Lords of Which Marquisate *Portent d'Argent au Chef de Gueules*: Armes retained by the Marquesse of *Saluces*: And

IV. *Humbert*, Second of the name, Count of *Morienna*, by the death of his Father, happening 1078. By his Wife *Laurentia*, Daughter to the Count of *Carpentras* (who bare *D'Argent Escartele de Gueules à deux paux d'Or*) he had Sixe Children. And heere the Reader may please to obserue, that to auoyde long repetitions of names, we vse to set downe the Eldest last of all.

William.

Humbert.

Renauld.

Alix, Wife to *Lewes le Gros*, King of *France* Sixt of the name.

Ioane, Wife to the Count of *Flanders*: And

V. *Amadis*, second of the name, Count of

of *Morienna* the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, one hundred and three, who according to *Pigonius*, and other *Germaine* Writers, had two Wiues: the first, of the House of *Lorraine*, and the other of that of *Auuergne*. If she were of *Lorraine*, she ought to beare *D'Or à la Bande de Gueules, chargee de Trois Alleryons d'Argent*: And she of *Auuergne* should beare *D'Or au Griffon de Gueules Couppe de Synople*, which is of *Auuergne*. The *Sauoyans* doe giue him but one wife, whom they name *Guygonia*, Daughter to *Albane*, whom some make to be Counte *de Forrests*; others, *Daulphine d'Auuergne*; and some other *Daulphine* of *Viennois*. The *Daulphines* of *Viennois* and of *Auuergne*, doe beare Armes alike, *D'Or au Daulphine pasme pers* (that is *Azur*) *Forrests porte de Gueules au Daulphine pasme pers d'Argent*. Of this *Guygonia* he begate a fruitfull Ligne.

Alex, Wife to the Viscount of *Mallayne*; An other

Alix, Wife to a Lord of *Beauieulois* in *France*, the Lords whereof doe beare *D'Or au Lyon rempant de Sable, au Lambel de Gueules.*

John.

Peter; And

Humbert, Count of *Sauoye.*

The Auncestours and Predecessors of *Amadis* the Second, did carry no other title then Countes of *Morienna*: But this man tooke title of Count of *Sauoye*, and Vicare of the Empire; which was giuen him by the Emperour *Henry*, Fift of the name: So say the *Annalists* of *Sauoy*, and that hee made one in the Croissade in the voyage ouer the Seas, with our King *Lewes* the younger, Seauenth of the name, and died in the Isle of *Cyprus*, in the Courte of *Guye* of *Lusignan*, King of *Cyprus*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, one hundred, forty and nine, according to the *Germaine* Chronicle. But they of *Sauoye* doe accounte his death, vnder the yeare, One Thousand, one Hundred, Fifty and Foure.

VI. *Humbert*, Third of the name, Second Counte of *Sauoy*, who by his Third wife *Peronella*, Daughter to the Counte of *Bourgongne*, had one only Sonne,

Thomas, Counte of *Sauoy* by the departure and death of his Father, chanceing in the yeare, One thousand, two hundred and one, or according to the *Germaine* Chronicle, One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and eighteene. And two Daughters,

Agnes, Wife to a King of *England*, who is not named by the *Germaine* Chronicle; And

Ælianor, who was twise maried. First to the Count of *Vingte-Mille* (*Qui porte de Gueules à l'Aigle esploye d'Or, qui est à l'Empire de Grece, escartele de Tenne, qui est de Gueules au Chef d'Or.* In second mariage she espoused the Marqueste of *Montferrat.*

VII. *Thomas* had in mariage *Beatrix*, Daughter to *Guye*, Count of *Geneua*, who bare in Armes *Vne Eschiquier composé de Cinq Poincts d'Or, equipolez à Quatre d'Azur.* In this mariage were borne nine Sonnes, and Three Daughters.

VIII. *Amadis*, Third of the name, Counte of *Sauoy*, and Duke of *Chablais*, One thousand, two hundred, thirty and three.

Humbert, who was of the Church.

Thomas, Counte of *Maurienna* and of *Flanders*; And also Prience of *Piedmont* by Alliance.

Aymon.

William.

Amadis, Bishop of *Maurienna.*

IX. *Peter*, Counte of *Sauoye*, Duke of *Chablais* and of *Augusta*, the yeare of Grace One thousand, two hundred, threescore and three.

Boniface, Archbishop of *Canterbury.*

X. *Phillip*, Count of *Sauoy* and of *Bourgongne*, the yeare One thousand, two hundred, threescore and eight.

The Daughters were

Ælianor, Wife to the Counte of *Maurania*, who bare *D'Azur à l'Aigle esticquee d'Or et de Gueules, languee, membree de meesme.*

Margaret, Wife to the Counte of *Quibourg, Qui portoit d'Or à Trois Faces de Gueules.*

Beatrix of *Sauoy*, Wife to the Counte of *Prouence Raymond Berengarius*: And of this marriage came Foure Daughters Queenes, as namely

Margaret, Wife to Saint *Lewes*, King of *France*, Ninth of the name.

Elianor, Wife to *Henry*, Third of the

name, King of *England.*

Sancia, Wife to *Richard* of *England*, Earle of *Cornewall*, and afterward Empe-rour: And

Beatrix, Countesse of *Prouence*, Wife to *Monsieur Charles* of *France* Brother to Saint *Lewes*) Counte of *Anjou* and *du Maine*, King of *Naples* and *Sicilie.*

XI. *Amadis*, Third of the name, who had to Wife *Cecilie*, Daughter to *Raymond*, Count of *Prouence*, These Counts of *Prouence*, in those times, *Portent de Gueules à la moitie d'vne Croix Clechee d'Or, party de mesme à vne demye Estoile à Six Raiz de Gueules.* In this Marriage was borne a Sonne

XII. *Boniface*, Counte of *Sauoye*, One thousand, two hundred, fiftie foure. Hee was Sirnamed *Rowland*, for his strength and valiancy: yet died prisoner to Counte *Peter* his Vnckle, in the towne of *Ast*, *Anno*, One thousand, two hundred, fifty sixe, and was not maried.

The Daughters were

Beatrix; Wife to the Marqueste of *Mountferrat*, and afterward Duke of *Suaba.*

Margaret, Wife to the Marqueste of *Montferrat.*

Beatrix the yonger, maried to a Prince in *Germanie.*

Constance, Queene of *Castille*: And *Elianor*, maried in *Germanie.*

XIII. *Peter*, Counte of *Spayne*, Duke of *Chablais* and of *Augusta*: By an *Infanta* of *Arragon*, his Wife, hee had but one Daughter.

Beatrix, Wife in First mariage to the *Daulphine* of *Viennois*. And in second mariage shee espoused the Counte of *Ver*. By the death of *Peter*, deceasing without Heire masle, the Countie of *Sauoye* fell to his Brother.

XIV. *Phillip*, Counte Palatine of *Bourgongne*, by his Wife *Alix*, the only Daughter to *Otho*. Who seeing himselfe without Linage; declared the Children of his Brother *Thomas*, Counte of *Maurienna*, and Prince of *Piedmont* to be his Heires. The said *Thomas* had espoused *Beatrix* of *Fiesca*, a *Geneways* (whose Armes and Familie wee haue before obserued) and by her he had three Sonnes, and one Daughter.

Thomas Prince of *Piedmont*, who tooke to Wife the Heire of the County of *Bourgongne.*

Amadis, Counte of *Sauoye.*

Lewes, Baron of *Vaux*, a Seigneurie whereof he bare the Armes, *D'Argent à vne Montagne de Sable.*

The Daughter was

Leonora, Wife to the Lord of *Beauieu* in *Beauieulois.*

By the death of Counte *Phillip*, deceasing without issue, One thousand, two hundred, fourescore and foure, his Nephew,

XV. *Amadis*, Fourth of the name, called the Great, was Counte of *Sauoye*, inuested therein by his Vnckle, and in his life time *By the King of Saint Maurice.* Hee was likewise Duke of *Chablais* and of *Augusta*: he had also three Wiues. The Ring of Saint Maurice

The first was *Sybilla*, Countesse of *Baugey*, and Lady of *Brescia*, which Seigneuries (by this Alliance) fell and came to the House of *Sauoye*. The Armes of which Seigneuries are *De Gueules au Lyon rampant d'Ermines.* The Second Wife was Daughter to the *Daulphin* of *Viennois*. And the Third was of the House of *Henaulte*. By which Wiues he had three Sonnes, and nine Daughters.

Bonna, Wife to the *Daulphine* of *Viennois*, and afterward Counte of *Bourgongne.*

Beatrix, Wife to the Duke of *Suaba, Qui porte d'Argent à Trois Leopards de Sable.*

Ælianor, Wife to the Counte *de Forests.*

Margaret, Wife to the Marqueste of Mountferrat.

Agnes, Wife to the Counte *de Geneuois.*

Mary, Wife to the *Daulphine* of *Viennois* Prince of *Maiorica.*

Katharine, Wife to the Duke of *Austria.*

Blanche, married to the Duke of *Millaine.* And

Jane, Wife to one tearmed of *Silesia.*

The Sonnes were,

John, *Aymon*, *Edward* } Countes of *Sauoye.*

Amadis the Great hauing assisted with his forces, purse and person the Knights

of the *Rhodes*, against the powers of the Turke; was entreated by those Knights, to take for his Armes those of their Religion. And this was the reason, why he he forsooke the Auncient Armes of the Countes of *Sauoye*, who caried (after *Hugh* of *Saxonie*) *D'Argent à l'Aigle esploye de Sable charge en l'Estomach de Gueules au Cheual gay tourne d'Argent; party de faisce d'Or & de Sable de Six pieces à la Coronne de Rue de Synople, perie en Bande*: And tooke the Armes of the Religion of *Rhodes*, which are *De Gueules a la plaine Croix d'Argent*. The youngest Sonnes of *Sauoye* tooke (with the same Crosse) *vne Bande Componnee d'Or et de Sable*. With the said Crosse *Amadis* tooke this word, as a deuise, *F E R T*, euery Letter supplying the place of an intire word, to say *Fortitudo Eius Rhodum Tenuit*: His *Power Supported Rhodes*. He died in *Auignion*, whether was then transferred the Holy Seate, in the yeare, One thousand, three hundred, twenty and three: leauing for Successour his Eldest Sonne.

The Armes of *Rhodes* taken by *Amadis*, and his worde added.

XVI. *Edward*, Counte of *Sauoye*, Duke of *Chablais* and of *Augusta*. By Mary, Daughter to the Duke of *Bourgongne*; *Qui portoit Bande d'Or & d'Azur de Six pieces a la bordure de Gueules*: He left but one Daughter

Ioane or *Iane*, Wife to the Duke of *Bretaigne*.

So that by death of the said *Edward*, happening in the yeare, One thousand, three hundred, twenty nine, his second Brother

XVII. *Aymon* was Counte of *Sauoye*, Duke of *Chablays* and of *Augusta*: Who by his Wife *Yoland* of *Montferrat*, had two Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

Blanche, Wife to the Duke of *Millayne*:
And
Katharine.
The Sonnes were
John: And

XVIII. *Amadis*, Fifte of the name, called the *Greene Counte of Sauoye*, was Duke of *Chablais* and of *Augusta* by the death of his Father, happening in *Anno*, One Thousand, three Hundred, forty and three. By his First Wife *Margaret* of *Cyprus*, hee had no issue. By *Bonna* of *Bourbon*, Sister to the Duke of *Bourbon*, Authour of the *Order of the Thistle*, *Lewes*, he had two Sonnes

Lewes: And
Amadis the Sixt.

Amadis the Fift took delight to go alwayes attired in Greene, a couller best becomming amourous persons, and whereof he was sirnamed. This man was the Authour of the *Order of the Annuntiation*, Whereof we shall haue occasion to speake more heereafter. He died in the yeare, One thousand, three hundred, fourescore and three, leauing the Succession to his Sonne

XIX. *Amadis*, called the *Red*, Sixt of the name. It was to this man, that the Counte of *Prouence* engaged the County of *Nice*, which the Dukes of *Sauoye* haue kept to this present. The Armes of the Countie of *Nice* are *D'Argent à vne Montagne de Sable à l'Aigle de Gueules esleue dessus*. He tooke to Wife *Bonna de Berry* (*Qui portoit de France à la Bordure engreslee de Gueules*) Second daughter to *Monsieur Iohn* of *France*, Duke of *Berry* and of *Auuergne*, Brother to King *Charles* the Fift, & *Iane*, Daughter to the Count of *Armaignack*: and in this mariage was borne one Sonne and two Daughters.

Bonna, Wife to the Prince of *Piedmont* of *Achaia*, and of *Morea*, *Qui portoit de Gueules à la croix plasne d'Argent à la Bande d'Azur*: And

Iane, Wife to the Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

The Sonne was

Amadis, Scauenth of the name, Count of *Sauoye* by the death of his Father, which happened on the day of All Saints, *Anno*, One thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and thirteene. He had to Wife *Margaret* of *Bourgongne*, Eldest Daughter to *Monsieur Phillip* of *France*, Duke of *Bourgongne*, called the *Hardie*, *Qui Portoit Seme de France à la Bordure de Gueules, Escartele de l'Ancienne Bourgongne, qui estoit Bande d'Or & d'Azur de Six pieces à la Bordure de Gueules*.

Of Counte, as formerly he was, he was made the First Duke of *Sauoye* by the Emperour *Sigismond*, who would needes make this erection in the Citty of *Lyons*, and on our King Land, who acknowledged none but God only for their Soueraigne in this Kingdome: but the Officers of his Maiestie, con-

strained the said Emperour *Sigismond*, to goe and vse his authority out of *France*, as we haue said elsewhere. This erection of the County of *Sauoye* into a Dukedome, was done in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, foure hundred, and seauenteene.

At the age of sixe and fifty yeares, he lost his Wife, by whom he had foure Daughters, and fiue Sonnes.

Mary, Wife to the Duke of *Millayne*.

Margaret, who was not married. Another

Margaret, thrise married. First to the King of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, of the House of *Anion*. Secondly to the Duke of *Bauaris*: And lastly to the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, who haue *D'Or a Trois Cornes de Cerf perie en Fesses de Sable*.

Bonna, maried to the Count of *Montfort*. *Qui portoit plasnement de Bretaigne*, that is to say *D'Hermines*.

The Sonnes were

Amadis, Prince of *Piedmont*.

Phillip, Counte *de Genenois*, *Comes Genennarum*, without any issue

Anthony the First, without issue.

Anthony the Second, issue-lesse also:
And
Lewes, Duke.

Hauing thus lost his Wife, and seeing himselfe charged with Children, being now aged sixe and fifty yeares: he resolued to forsake the World, and therwithall, to surrender his Estates and Seigneuries, to the Gouernement of *Lewis* his Eldest Sonne, in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred, thirty and nine. He made his retreate to *Ripaille*, a solitarie place, a Priorie of the Order of Saint *Maurice*, formerly founded by his Predecessours, and by him rebuilte vpon the Lake of *Geneua*, about halfe a mile from the Towne of *Tholon*. It was the same Duke *Amadis* the Seauenth, that tooke the habite and cloathing of an Hermite, of the Order of Saint *Maurice*, as we will further relate, vsing the plaine wordes of *Enguerran de Monstrelet*, in his History of *France*.

Grise Robbe, long Mantel, & Chapperon Gru, courte Cornette d'vn pied ou enuiron, & vn Bonnet Vermeil: la Robbe ceinte de Ceinture doree, & par dessus le Mantel Vne Croix D'Or *pareille à celle que portoient les Empereurs d'Alemagne. Pour le seruice de sa Personne, & de quelques Seigneurs qui s'estoient confinez auec luy, il retint Vingt de ses Seruiteurs, qui le traictoient mon de racines, & de claire eau de fontaine, viandes & breuuage des anciens Hermites; mais de viandes exquises, & de vins delicieux.*

A Graye gowne, long Cloake, and Gray Hood or Chapperon, a short Cornet of a foote long, or thereabout and a Redd Bonnet. The Gowne was guirded with a Golden Girdle, and aboue on the Cloake was A Crosse of Golde, *like to that which was worne by the Emperours of* Germanie. *For the seruice of his person, and of some Lords that were there confined with him, he kept twenty of his Seruants; who fed not on Rootes, and cleare water from the Fountaine, meate and drinke of Auncient Hermites: but on exquisite Viandes, and delicious Wines.*

Vpon the life of this Duke Hermite, our Ancestours raised a Prouerbe, very frequent and common among vs *Faire Ripaille*, *Ripaille Fare or Diet*, to speake more plaine:

Such a Life as Gluttons desire,
To feede on good Fare, & haue a good fire.
Vie de Goulu,
Faire Gaude-chere, et beau Feu.

This *Amadis* was elected Pope at the Councill of *Basile*, (after the deposition of *Eugenius* the Fourth) and named *Foelix* the Fift, and maintained himselfe in that title for Nine yeares, Sixe Moneths and Seauen dayes; till forced by the Princes, vnited and assembled, to stifle the *Hydra* of the Three and Twentieth Schisme: he quitted the Papall dignitie to Pope *Nicholas* the Fifte, Canonically elected for the peace of the Church, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, foure hundred, forty and seauen. And this *Amadis* contented himselfe with the title of Cardinall, Bishop of *Sabina*, and Legation during his life in *Sauoye*, and with this Condition, that the Cardinalles made by him, should remaine in that dignity. For this Session, was all Christendome very ioyfull, and in memorie thereof was made this Antique Rithme.

The Duke of Sauoye chosen Pope.

Lux fulsit Mundo, cessit Foelix Nicolao.

Hee died aged Threescore and Nine yeares, and in the yeare of Grace One thousand, foure hundred, fifty and two.

XIX. *Lewes*, Second of the name, Duke of *Sauoye*, of *Chablais* and *Augusta*, began to Reigne in the life time of his

Father, One thousand foure hundred thirty nine. He had espoused in the City of *Chambery* (where his Father had established the Senate of *Sauoye*) *Anne*, the only Daughter to *Iohn* of *Lusignan*, King of *Ierusalem*, *Armenia* and *Cyprus*. And in this Mariage were borne Nine Sonnes, and Seauen Daughters, with whom we will beginne.

Anne, neuer Maried.

Charlote, Queene of *France*, Second Wife to King *Lewes* the Eleauenth: of whom the Portraites (made according to life) are to be seene in the Glasse windowe ouer the high Altar in the Church of the Sisters of *Aue Maria* at *Paris*.

Margaret, Wife to the Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

Bonna, Wife to the Duke of *Millayne*.

Agnes

Mary: And

Iane.

The Sonnes were

Amadis the Eight, Duke.

Lewes, King of *Cyprus*, by reason of Queene *Charlote* his Wife.

Iohn, Counte *de Geneuois*.

Iames, Count of *Rhomont* and of *Vaux*.

Phillip, Count of *Brescia* and of *Baugis*, afterward Duke: *Il portoit de Sauoye, party de Baugie*.

Aymon.

Peter, Bishop of *Geneua*.

Iohn Lewes, Bishop of *Geneua* after his Brother: And

Frances, Archbishop of *Auch* in *Gascoignie*, Count of *Armagnack*.

The Duke of *Sauoye Lewes* established a Senate at *Turine* (in Latine *Augusta Taurinorum*) for the Lands of *Pied-mont* *Anno*, One Thousand, foure hundred, fifty and nine. He dyed at *Lyons*, he being come thither to visite King *Lewes* the Eleuenth his Sonne in Law, in the yeare, One Thousand, foure hundred, threescore and sixe, leauing for successour his Eldest Sonne.

XX. *Amadis*, called the *Vertuous*, Eight of the name, who tooke to Wife *Yolande* of *France*, Second Daughter to King *Charles* the Seauenth: And in this Mariage were borne Sixe Sonnes, and Three Daughters.

Anne, Wife to the Prince of *Arragon*: *Qui portoit d'Arragon au Lambeau de Trois pieces d'Azur*. Others say the Count of *Pallars*.

Mary: And

Louisa, Maried in the house of *Sauoye de Chalon*.

The Sonnes were

Charles

Philebert, Duke.

Bernarde,

Charles, Duke.

Iames Lewes, Counte *De Geneuois*: And

Claudius Galeas, or *Galeazzo*.

Amadis the Eight died of a Dysenterie in the Citty of *Orleans*, in the Moneth of Iune, One Thousand, foure hundred, threescore and eleauen: After whom succeeded his Sonne

XXI. *Phillebert*, Duke of *Sauoye*, of *Chablais* and of *Augusta*: *Dux Sabaudiæ, Chablasij & Augustæ*. By his wife *Blanch Maria*, Daughter to *Galeazzo*, Duke of *Millayne*, he left not any Issue. So that by his death, happening at *Lyons* in the yeare, One thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and two, the sixteenth of his Age; his Brother

XXII. *Charles* came to the Dukedomes of *Sauoye*, *Chablais* and *Augusta*. He died at *Pigneroll*, in the Moneth of Marche, One thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and tenne, and at the age of two and twenty yeares: By his Wife *Blanche*, daughter to *William*, Marquesse *Montferrat*, he had and left a Sonne and a Daughter.

Louisa-Yolanda, wife to her owne Cousine, of the same name and Armes: And

XXIII. *Charles*, *Iohn*, *Amadis*, second of the name, Duke of *Sauoye*, and other estates of his Father, which were left him at the age of two yeares, vnder the Regency of *Blanche*, his Mother, and the Tutelage of his Vnckle by the Fathers side. He liued but eight yeares, so that by his death, chauncing in *Anne*, 1496, the Estates of *Sauoye*, *Chablais* and *Augusta* fell to the great Vnckle by the Fathers side.

XXIV. *Phillip*, Second of the name, called the *Faire*, Count of *Brescia* and of *Baugie* (*Brixiæ, & Baugiaci Comes*) Sonne of *Lewes*, Brother to *Amadis* the *Vertuous*, Eight of the name, Duke of *Sauoye*. This was a valiant and magnanimous Prince, and so good a Frenchman; that he was made Duke of *Nemours*, Knight of the Order of Saint *Michaell*, and Gouernour of *Dauiphine*. He

He married two wiues, and by the first, named *Margaret* of *Bourbon*, Daughter to *Charles*, Duke of *Bourbon*, were borne

Louisa de Sauoye, wife to *Charles*, Count of *Engoulesme*, Sirnamed of *Orleans*; Father and Mother to the great King *Frances* the first. To this Count of *Engoulesme* hath bin giuen for Armes: *D'Orleans au Lambeau charge de Trois Croissants de Gueulles, Escartele de Millan*: And

Phillebert, Duke.

In second Marriage he espoused *Claudia*, Daughter to the Count of *Ponthieure*. *Qui portoit d'Azur à Trois Gerbes liees d'Or, Escartele de Bretaigne*. And in this second Marriage were borne *Charles*, Duke.

Lewes.

Phillip, Duke of *Nemours*, and Count *de Geneuois*: *Dux Nemorosis, & Comes Gebennarum*.

Philiberta, wife to *Laurentio*, or *Lorenzo de Medicis*, Brother to Pope *Leo* the tenth.

Absalon: And

Iohn Amadis.

Phillip the second had (beside) a naturall Sonne

Rene, who made his fortunes in *France*, where he was Great Maister, Knight of the *Order of Saint Michael*, Gouernour of *Prouence* vnder King *Frances* the first, Count of *Beaufort* and of *Villars*. Of this Bastard Sonne of *Sauoye*, are descended the Houses of the Counts of *Tendes*, and Marquesse *de Villars*. *Il portoit de Sauoye* (which is of *Malta*) *Escartele de Constantinople, qui est de Gueulles à l'Aigle esploye d'Or, Contre-Escartele de Tendes, qui est de Gueulles au Chef d'Or* (in regard of *Anne de Lascaris* his wife, Counteesse of *Tendes*, descended from the last Christian Emperors of *Constantinople*) *à la Bande en Cotice d'Azur brochant sur le tout*. Before him there was dwelling in *France*

Phillip of *Sauoye*, Duke *de Nemours*, and Prince *de Geneuois*: who tooke to wife *Charlote* of *Orleans*, daughter to *Lewes* of *Orleans*, Duke of *Longueuille*: And of this mariage issued

Iames, Duke *de Geneuois*, and *de Nemours*: And

Iane or *Ioane*, wife to *Nicholas* of *Lorraine*, who was Count of *Vaudemont*; Marquesse of *Nomeny*, &c.

And of this Marriage came

Louisa, Queene of *France*, wife to *Henry* the third, King of *France*, and of *Poland* of sacred memory.

Phillip Emanuel of *Lorraine*, Duke *de Mercoeury*, and of *Pont-Teure*, Peere of *France*, Marquesse of *Nomeny*, Knight of the Kings two Orders, and Lord Gouernour of *Bretaigne*.

N. wife in first mariage to *Anne*, Duke *de Ioyeuse*, Peere and Admirall of *France*: And in second Nuptials to *Frances* of *Luxembourg*, Duke *de Pigney*, and Peere of *France*.

Charles of *Lorraine*, Cardinall *de Vaudemont*, Bishop of *Toul*.

N. Count of *Chaligny*, &c.

Iames of *Sauoye*, Duke of *Nemours*, of *Montagut*, &c. Prince *de Geneuois*, and Knight of the Order of Saint *Michael*, caused the Hostell of *Nemours* to be builded, and the Streete paued on the Key or Port of the *Augustines* at *Paris*: on the great Gate wherof are the Armes, which were born by the same *Iames*, and *Phillip* his Father, such as are borne by the same Dukes of *Sauoye*, except *Sur le Tout, qui est de Malta*, there is a *Bordure d'Azur*.

Pour Cimier il y à Deux Heaumes affrontez de Coste, chacun charge de Deux Colomnes dorees & Argentees, ou sont depeints les Quartiers des Armes de Sauoye: Sur le Heaume du mitan tarre de front, est vn mussle de Lyon Coronne d'vn Chappeau d'Or.

Pour Tenants & Support Deux Lyons Argentez; which are the Supporters of *Sauoye*, the *Order of Saint Michael* round about the Shield.

Hee had to wife *Anne* of *Ferrara*, daughter to *Hercules d'Este*, Duke of *Ferrara*, *Rhegium* and *Modena*, and Madam *Renea* of *France*, Daughter to King *Lewes* the twelth, *Father of the Pope*, and of Madame *Anne*, Ducheesse of *Bretaigne*, two seuerall times Queen of *France*. The said *Anne* of *Ferrara*, Ducheesse of *Montargis*, Vicounteesse of *Chartres*, &c. had espoused in her first Mariage *Frances* of *Lorraine*, Duke of *Guise*: And in this first marriage was born *Henry*, Duke of *Guise*, Great Maister of *France*; *Charles*, Duke *de Mayenne* and *d'Aiguillon*; and *Lewes*, Cardinall *de Guise*, and Archbishop of *Rheimes*.

In the second Mariage were borne *Henry*, Marquesse of Saint *Sorlin*, of this

this present Duke *de Nemours*, Prince *de Geneuois, &c.* Hauing to wife *Anne* of *Lorraine*, Daughter and sole heire to *Charles* of *Lorraine* duke *d'Aumale*, Peere and great Hunteſman of *France*, who beareth for Armes *De Lorraine au Lambell de Gueulles, Eſcartele de Bourbon.*

Anne of *Ferrara*, Mother to the ſaid *Henry*, Duke *de Nemours*; *Portoit de Ferrara, qui eſt de France à la Bordure endenchee d'Or, party d'Azur a vn Aigle d'Argent Arme, & Coronne d'Or: Couppe de France ſans Brizure*, as we ſee on the Portall of the Hoſtell *de Guiſe* (auncientlly called of *Cliſſon*, and of *Miſerecordia* or *Mercie.*) And on the Gates of the Hoſtell *de Nemours*. Come wee now againe to the Duke of *Sauoye*;

XXIV. *Phillip*, ſecond of the name, who dyed at *Chamberg*, the ſeauenth day of Nouember, One thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and ſeauenteene. He had for Succeſſour his Sonne

XXV. *Phillebert*, ſecond of the name, and ſtiled likewiſe the *Fayre*, nouriſhed in the Court of *France*, by King *Charles* the eight his Couſine; with whom he was at the Conqueſt of the Kingdome of *Naples*; and at that of the Dukedome of *Millaine*, with King *Lewes* the twelfth. He left no iſſue by *Margaret* of *Auſtria* his wife, Daughter to the Emperour *Maximillian*: And by his death, happening in September, Anno One thouſand fiue hundred and foure, after him ſucceeded his Brother

XXVI. *Charles*, third of the name, called the *Good*, who had to wife Madam *Beatrix* of *Portugall*, Daughter to the King of *Portugall Dom Emanuell*. And in this Marriage were borne tenne Children, as namely, to count them by order.

Hadrian.
John Emanuel.
Lewes.
Emanuel Phillebert, Duke.
Katharine.
Mary.
Iſabell.
Emanuel the firſt.
Emanuel the ſecond: And
Iohn Maria.

In the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and ſixteene, King *Frances* the firſt began to warre in *Sauoye*, and the Lands of *Piedmont*, which he auouched to belong to him, in the right of Madame *Louiſa* of *Sauoye* his Mother, who being of the firſt Bed, ought to ſucceede in the ſaid Seigneuries, by the death of Duke *Phillebert* his Brother, and to precede *Charles* the third, who was deſpoyled of the moſt part of the pretended Lands, and dyed at *Vercellis*, aged threeſcore and ſeauen yeares, Anno One thouſand fiue hundred fiftie and foure, leauing for Succeſſour (by the death of his Bretheren) his eldeſt Sonne

XXVII. *Emanuel Phillebert*, nouriſhed (during his yonger yeares) in the Court of the Emperour *Charles* the fift, King of *Spaine*.

By the vnhappie Treatie of Peace, made betweene King *Henry* the ſecond, and *Dom Phillip* the ſecond, King of *Spain* at *Chaſteau-Chambreſis*, the third day of Aprill, One thouſand fiue hundred fiftie and nine, after the Feaſt of Eaſter: the King acquitted, rendered and releaſed to the King of *Spaine*, theſe places, Townes and Caſtels of *Thionuille* (*Theodonis Villa*) *Marienbourg*; *Yuoy*; *Danuilliers*; *Mommedy*; *Heſdin* and her Bailiwicke; the Countie of *Charolois* in the Duchie of *Bourgongne*, of the Homage and Iuriſdiction of the Crowne of *France*; the Citie of *Valentia* in the Dukedome of *Millayne*: with all the Fortifications which our Kings had made for *Millaine*, at vncredible expences. And the King of *Spaine* rendered to vs but Saint *Quentins*, *Le Catelet* and *Hames*.

To the Duke of *Mantua*, all the Marquiſate of *Montferrat*.

To the Duke of *Florence*, the Valley of *Montalſin*, and thoſe places which the King held in *Tuſcanie*, and in the Eſtate of *Sienna*.

By this miſerable Treatie, hurtfull to *France*, the King receiued into Grace, thoſe of *Geneway*, his mortall enemies, who had rebelled ſo oftentimes, and yet brought ſtill vnder our Kings obedience. Surrendring alſo to them, all the places which he held in the Iſle of *Corſica*, without demoliſhing any thing there.

Euery one well knoweth, that the Marquiſate of *Saluces* hath alwayes reſted on *Daulphine*, which belongeth to the Monarches of the Lillies, and is the title of their firſt borne Sons: and that to

to Madam *Louiſa*, Great Mother to the ſaid King *Henry* the ſecond, appertained the Dukedome of *Sauoye* and *Piedmont*, wherof King *Frances* the firſt made himſelfe Maiſter, and the Poſſeſſion ſtill continued by the ſame King *Henry* the ſecond. But yet, thorow bad counſell, and notwithſtanding the proteſtations and remonſtrances of the Courts of Parliament; of the very greateſt Lords and Captaines of *France*; of the Gouernors of the places, as *Montferrat*, *Tuſcanie*, *Millayne*, *Geneway*, *Piedmont*, *Saluces*: *Breſſia* and *Sauoye* (which in thoſe times then were places of Honour, where the Nobilitie of *France* exerciſed their deſire of doing well, to faſhion and make themſelues apt for Armes) and which was then thought neceſſary (for the good of *France*) to yeelde recompence to the Duke of *Sauoye*, with Lands and Seigneuries ſeated in the midſt of *France*. Notwithſtanding all theſe Remonſtrances and proteſtations, the King (in a raſh and ruinating prodigalitie, and hurtfull for euer to *France*) ſurrendered to the ſaid Duke *Emanuell Phillebert*, three hundred as well Townes, as Caſtles & ſtrongeſt places in the Dukedome of *Sauoye*; the Counties of *Breſcia* and of *Baugie*; of *Moriana*, *Tarentaiſa*; the Vicariat of *Barcelonetta*; the Principalitie of *Piedmont*, and the Countie of *Aſt*, the auncient Patrimonie of the Houſe of *Orleans*. Nothing remaining to the Crowne of *France*, of all her famous Conqueſts in *Italie*, but onely fiue poore places, as namely, the Townes and Caſtles of *Turine*, *Quiers*, *Pigneroll*, and *Ville-Neufue d'Aſt*, with their Commands.

By which vnfortunate Treatie, the ſaid Duke *Emanuel Phillebert* tooke to wife Madam *Margaret* of *France*, onely Siſter to King *Henry* the ſecond; to whom was giuen for maintenance (during her life) the Duchie of *Berry*, and three hundred thouſand Crownes of ready Money at her Marriage; wherein was borne their onely Sonne

Charles Emanuel, Duke.

Phillip Emanuel dyed at *Turine* the thirtieth day of Auguſt, Anno One thouſand fiue hundred & foureſcore, leauing for Succeſſour his onely Son

XXVIII. *Charles Emanuel*, fourth of the name, a Martiall Prince and a Warriour, who in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred foureſcore and fiue, tooke to wife the Infanta of *Spaine*, *Katharine*, Daughter to the King of *Spaine Dom Phillip* the ſecond, and Madam *Iſabella* of *France*, Daughter to King *Henry* the ſecond. And of this marriage are iſſued and deſcended nine Children

Phillip Emanuel.
Victor Amadis.
Phillebert.
Maurice Emanuel, Cardinall of *Sauoye.*
Thomas.
Margaret, wife to *Frances Gonzaga*, Prince of *Mantua.*
Mary.
Iſabel. And
Katharine.

The ſame Duke of *Sauoye*, in the yeare foureſcore and eight, when *France* (by the practiſes of a furious madded League) ſaw it ſelfe on all ſides ſwarming with Soudiours, by an intelligence of the conſpiring purſuers, well wadged with *Spaniſh* Piſtoles, poſſeſſed themſelues of the Marquiſate of *Saluces* againſt the Crowne of *France*, with purpoſe to proceede for conquering *Prouence*, and make ſeizure on *Daulphine*. The eaſineſſe of inuading *Saluces*, made him ſtampe Moneyes of Ducates, with a new figure and Legend, on the one ſide his picture, and for a Legend round about, his name, titles and the yeare. On the other ſide was a Centaure, trampling his feete vpon a Crowne, with this word *Oportune.* When the troubles of the League ouerawed *France*.

King *Henry* the third, of holy memory, and Mirrour of good Princes, ſunke vnder the burden of ſo bloudy a conſpiracie, executed vpon his State & life, his Reigne full of troubles, and ſo was his Succeſſour King *Henry* the Great: all which gaue way and time to the Duke, both to maintaine and conſerue his Conqueſt. Vntill the Treatie of *Veruines* in *Piccardie*, made betweene his moſt Chriſtian Maieſtie, and the Catholique King, wherein the Duke entreated to be comprehended. Which Treatie beareth date the eight day of Iune, One thouſand fiue hundred foureſcore and eighteene, wherein was namely ſignified by the ninth Article. The Treatie at *Veruins* in Anno 1598.

Que pour la reſtitution du Marquiſate de Saluces, & autres differends entre le Roy, & le Duc; ils s'en remettoient au iugement & arbitrage de noſtre Sainct Pere le Pape Clement

Clement Huictieſme, pour les iuger & decider dans vn An.

That for the reſtitution of the Marquiſate of Saluces, and other differences betweene the King and Duke: they ſhould commit them to the arbitrage and iudgement of the Holy Father the Pope, Clement *the eight, to deſcide and iudge them within a yeare ſpace.*

The Duke perſwading himſelfe, that he ſhould ſooner (and better) facilitate his affaires in perſon, came to the Court of *France* the thirteenth day of December, ending the yeare foureſcore and nineteene, and was lodged in the Hoſtell of *Nemours* at *Paris*, where he remained vntill the firſt day of March, being Aſhwednesday in the yeare One thouſand ſixe hundred. The Duke at his departure promiſed the King, that in exchange for the Marquiſate of *Saluces*, he would giue him the Counties of *Breſcia* and *Baugie*. Which being not executed within compaſſe of the time prefixed; in the Moneth of *Auguſt* following, the King iourned to *Breſcia*, and into *Sauoye*, whereof he poſſeſſed himſelfe within leſſe then ſixe weekes, not meeting with any to make reſiſtance. And perforce the Duke was conſtrained, by mediation of the Pope, and of his Legate in *Sauoye* the Cardinall *Aldobrandine*, to come to an agreement. And thereupon a Treatie was made betweene the King and Duke, in the Citie of *Lyons* the tenth day of *Ianuarie*, in the yeare One thouſand ſixe hundred and one; Where the Duke yeelded and tranſported to the moſt Chriſtian King, and to his Succeſſours the Kings of *France*, in manner and forme following.

The Duke of *Sauoye* his comming to *Paris*.

The Kings ſucceſſe in *Sauoy*.

A Breuiate of the Treatie at *Lyons*, betweene the King of *France*, *Henry* the Great, and the Duke of *Sauoye*.

TOus les Pais & Seigneuries de Breſſe, Baugie & Veromey, & generalement tout ce qui luy pouuoit appartenir iuſques à la Riuiere du Roſne, icelle compriſe; de ſorte que toute ladite Riuiere du Roſne, des la ſortie de Geneue, ſeroit du Royaume de France, & appartiendroit audit Sieur Roy, & ſes Succeſſeurs. Leſdits Pais cedez, ainſi que deſſus, auec toutes leurs appartenances & deſpendances, tant en Souueraineté, Iuſtice, Seigneurie, Vaſſaux, & Suiects, & tous Droicts, Noms, Raiſons, & Actions quelconques, ſans y rien reſeruer, demolir, ny retenir.

Delaiſſé pareillement ledit Duc à ſa Maieſté, & ſes Succeſſeurs la Baronnie & Bailliage de Gex, auec toutes ſes appartenances & dependances; & au de-la du Roſne les lieux, Terres, & Villages, Dayre, Chauſsy, Pont-Darle, Seyſſel, Annully, Chaua, & Pont-Chaſtel, auec leurs Souuerainetez, Iuſtice, Seigneurie, & tous Droicts qu'il peut auoir en tous les lieux cedez, & ſur les Habitants d'iceux; Tous leſquels lieux cedez ſeront & demeureront vnis & incorporez à la Coronne de France, ſeront reputez Domaine, & Patrimoine d'icelle, de laquelle ils ne pourront eſtre ſeparez pour quelque occaſion & ſuiect que ce ſoit.

Reſtituera ledit Duc à ſa Maieſté le Lieu, Valeur, & Chaſtelenie de Chaſteau-Dauphin, auec la Tour du Pont, & ce qui eſt occuppé par ledit Duc, & les Siens, dependans du Dauphine, ſans y rien deſmolir, affoiblir, ny endommager en aucune ſorte, & delaiſſera toute l'Artillerie, Poudres, Boulets, & autres munitions de Guerre eſtants dedans les lieux & places cedees.

Rendra la Citadelle de Bourg en Breſſe, auec toutes les pieces & munitions, ſans en oſter, demolir & endommager aucune choſe: fera deſmolir le fort de Beche-Dauphin. Et que pour la commodité du paſſage du Pont de Grezin reſerué par le Duc, ledit Duc payeroit à ſa Maieſté dans ſa Ville de Lyon la ſomme de Cent Mille Eſcus, de trois Francs piece, monnoye de France, ou la valeur.

Moyennant ceſdites Ceſſions & Tranſports, & toute l'Artillerie, Poudres, & Munitions conquiſes, qui demeureront entierement à ſa Maieſté, ledit Sieur Roy ſe contente pour le bien de la Paix, delaiſſer & tranſporter au Sieur Duc, luy cede & tranſporte à luy ſes Heritiers & Succeſſeurs tous les Droicts, Noms, Raiſons, & Actions, & generalement tout ce qui peut eſtre pretendu par les Roys & Dauphins de France, à cauſe du Marquiſat de Saluces, ſes appartenances & dependances, enſemble ſur les places de Cental, de Mont, & Rocque-Sparuiere,

uiere, ſans en rien retenir & reſeruer. Et a ledit Sieur Roy quitte & remis audit Sieur Duc toute l'Artellerie & Munitions qui furent trouuees eſdites places du Marquiſat de Saluces en l'Annee Mille Cinq Cents Quatre Vingts & Huict.

Sa Maieſté remet pareillement audit Sieur Duc les Places & Chaſteaux de Mommelian, & de Chambery, & tout ce qui a eſte pris ſur ledit Duc, depuis ladite Annee Quatre-Vingts & Huict, & en ce dernier Voyage par ſa Maieſté.

ALL the Countreyes and Seigneuries of Breſcia, Baugie and Veromey, and generally all that which appertaineth to him, ſo farre as to the Riuer of Roſne, and it ſelfe therein comprised: So that all the ſaid Riuer of Roſne, from the iſſuing forth of Geneua, ſhall be to the Kingdome of France, and belong to our Lord the King, and to his Succeſſours. The ſaid Countries are yeelded as aboue named, with all their appurtenances and dependances, as well in Soueraignty, Iuſtice, Seigneurie, Vaſſailes and Subiects; as alſo all rights, Names, Reaſons and Actions whatſoeuer, without reſeruing any thing, demoliſhing or retaining.

The ſaid Duke likewiſe relinquiſhed to his Maieſtie, and to his Succeſſours, the Baronnie and Baylinwicke of Gex, with all the appurtenances and dependances; and ouer and beyond the Roſne, the places, Lands and Villages Dayrie, Chauſſy, Pont-Darle, Seyſſell, Annully, Chaua, and Pont-Chaſtell, with their Soueraignties, Iuſtice, Seigneurie, and all Rights which he may or might haue in all thoſe yeelded places, and ouer the dwellers in them. All which ſurrendred places, ſhall be and remaine united and incorporated to the Crowne of France, they ſhall be reputed as Demaine and Patrimonie thereof; from which they ſhall not be ſeperated, by any occaſion or ſuggeſtion whatſoeuer.

The ſaid Duke ſhall reſtore to his Maieſtie the place, Worth and Caſtle-wicke of Chaſteau Daulphine, with the Tower du Pont, and that which is vſurped by the ſaid Duke and his people, dependants vpon Daulphine; without demolliſhing any thing, weakening or endamaging them in any ſort: and ſhall relinquiſh all the Artillerie, Powder, Bullets, and other munitions of warre, being within the places ſurrendred.

He ſhall deliuer the Cittadell of Bourg in Breſcia, with all the Pieces and munitions, without taking, demolliſhing and endamaging any thing: he ſhall cauſe to be demolliſhed the Fort of Beche-Daulphine. And that for commoditie of the paſſage from Pont de Grezin, reſerued by the Duke; the ſaid Duke ſhall pay to his Maieſtie within the Citie of Lyons, the ſumme of an hundred thouſand Crownes, of three Francs a piece, money of France, or the value of them.

Immediating theſe grants and tranſports, and all the Artillerie, Powder and conquerred Munitions, which ſhall remaine intirely to his Maeſty: the ſaid King contenteth himſelfe, for the good of Peace, to leaue and tranſport to the Lord Duke, he yeeldeth and tranſporteth to him, his heires and Succeſſours, all the Rights, Names, Reaſons and Actions, and generally all that may be pretended by the Kings and Daulphines of France, in regard of the Marquiſate of Saluces, her appurtenances and dependances; together with the places of Cental, de Mont, and Rocque-Sparuiere, without detaining or reſeruing any thing. And to our Lord the King is acquitted and releaſed by the ſaid Lord Duke, all the Artillerie and Munitions, which were found in the places of the Marquiſate of Saluces, in the yeare One thouſand ſiue hundred foureſcore and eight.

His Maieſtie alſo remitteth to the ſame Lord Duke, the places of Mommelian, and of Chambery, with all that which is taken from the Duke, ſince the yeare foureſcore and eight, and in this laſt Voyage by his Maieſtie.

This Treatie was ratified by the Duke at *Lyons*, in the beginning of the Moneth of March, in the ſame yeare ſixe hundred and one, and afterward at *Turine* by the ſame Duke, in the Moneth of September following: And by his Maieſtie in the Church of the *Celeſtines* at *Paris*, on Monday the ſecond of December, in the ſame yeare ſixe hundred and one. Since which ratification, our Kings and the Duke haue continued peaceable Lords and poſſeſſours of their enterchanges.

Confirmation of this Treaty on either ſide.

The King hauing in ſo ſhort a while conquered *Sauoye*, cauſed Coine to be ſtampt of Gold and Siluer: on the one ſide was his Image, name, titles and yeare for the Legend. And on the other a *Hercules*, trampling a Centaure vnder his feete, and exalting a Crowne with one of his hands: and for the ſoule of this deuiſe *Opportunius*,

tunius, in exchange of that, forged and ſtamped by the Duke, in the yeare foure-ſcore and eight.

CHAP. V.

The Inſtitution of the Order of the Annuntiation.

Loue-lookes or Loue-bands

WE haue formerly made knowne to you, that *Amadæus*, fift of the name, called the *Greene*, Count of *Sauoye*, Inſtituted the Millitarie Order of *the Sparres of Loue* (afterward called of the *Annuntiation*) in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred fiftie and fiue. This Count hauing receiued of his Lady the fauour of a Bracelet, made of the treſſes of her Haire, and knit in Loue knots: eſtabliſhed thereon this Order of Knighthood. To celebrate the firſt Chapter on the Feaſt day of Saint *Maurice* (Patron of *Sauoye*) which fell the two and twentieth day of September, the ſame yeare of this Inſtitution, and ſo ſtill continually doth:

He compoſed it to conſiſt of fifteene Knights, comprehending himſelfe as chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maiſter, and his Succeſſours the Counts of *Sauoye* after him. The firſt Knights thereof were

The firſt Knights of the Order.

Amadis, Founder of the ſaid Order.
Amadis, Count of *Geneua*.
Anthony, Lord of *Beaujeu*.
Hugh de Chalon, Lord of *Arlay*.
Amadis of *Geneua*.
John of *Vienna*, Admirall of *France*.
William de Grandzon.
William de Chalamon.
Rowland de Veyſſy a Bourbonnois.
Stephen, Baſtard of *La Baume*.
Caſpard de Monmeur.
Earle du Foras.
Thennard de Menthen.
Amadis Bennard. And
Richard Muſard, an Engliſhman.

The compoſure of the Collar for the Order.

The Collar of this Order was compoſed of Roſes of Gold, enamelled with Red and White, ioyned togeather by Ties and Knots of Loue of Haire colour Silke, all theſe Colours and Deuiſes being dedicated to Madam *Venus*. Within theſe Loue-knots were enterlaced foure Letters F. E. R. T. a deuiſe and noate neceſſary for the Champions of *Mars* and *Venus*, whom the Painters (to this effect) haue coupled togeather, couered with ſoft and delicate Loue-knots, and in that manner expoſed to the view of the Gods.

The meaning of the foure Letters.

F. E. R. T. *Frapez, Entrez, Rompez, Tout*. But more honeſtly, this deuiſe is, and may well be vnderſtood, concerning the deuoire of a braue Knight, fighting in the Barriers, or in a Tournament, which our auncient *French* vſed to call *Iouſts*. At the end of the Collar, vpon the Breſt hung an Ouall of Gold, enamelled likewiſe with the Colours Redde and White; and in the Ouall, the Knight Saint *Maurice* on Horſeback.

Eſtabliſhed there-

Saint *Eucherius*, Biſhop of *Lyons* enſtructeth vs, that *Maximianus*, hauing bin aſſociated in the Empire by *Diocleſian*, came into the *Gaules* with a powerfull Armie, to reduce to termes of dutie and obedience the *Gaules*, called *Bagaudes*, people of the Woods, which had rebelled againſt the *Romaine* Empire, vnder the conduct of *Amandus* and *Aelianus*. Their principall Fortreſſe was in the place, which at this preſent is called Saint *Mor des Foſſez*, about two miles from *Paris*, a Monaſtery built vnder the Reigne of King *Clouis* the ſecond, on the auncient ruines of the Caſtle called *Caſtrum Bagaudarum*.

With the Armie of *Maximianus* was the Legion of *Thebes*, a Citie in *Aegypt*, conſtant

conſtant and compoſed (as well as the reſt) of Sixe thouſand ſixe hundred threeſcore and ſixe Souldiers, ouer whom was Campe-Maiſter *Mauritius*, a braue and valiant Knight, and for *Corps d'Eſquadre* or Corporals *Exuperius, Candidus, Victor, Innocentius* and *Vidalius*, giuen for Councellours to *Mauritius*. This Legion was Chriſtian, and in that Faith confirmed by Pope *Marcellus*.

Maurice and his Legion leaue all the reſt.



The Romaine Armie hauing paſt the Citie of *Lyons*, and the Countrey of *Valois*, *Maximianus* cauſed a generall Muſter to be made, and after that, a generall Sacrifice to his pretended gods: Which being heard by Saint *Maurice*, and his Legion: they withdrew themſelues thence ſpeedily, higher vpon the Marches of *Gaule*, to the place called *Agaunum*.

The Countrey of *Valois* is about foure daies iourney in length, from the Weſt to the Eaſt, beginning from *Mont de la Fourche*, ſo farre as to Saint *Maurice* in *Chablais*. This generall Muſter of the *Romain* Armie was made on the Plaines of *Syon*, ſome few miles from whence, is the Bourrough Town of [a] *Octodurum*: whereat is a Caſtle with a Bridge made of Stone, vnder which runneth the Riuer of *Roſne*. In this place it is, where the Countrey of *Valois* encloſeth and ſhutteth vp it ſelfe, by meanes of the Gate of the Bridge, which hath no more but one Arche onely. Without which, the high-way forketh it ſelfe in twaine, the one Northward, leading to the Countie of *Aelen*, gouerned by the Canton of *Bearne*, and of which Countie the Inhabitants were heretofore knowne by the name of [b] *Antuates*. The other high-way conducteth onward on the left hand, and goeth directly into the Duchie of *Chablois*, the people whereof were in elder times named [c] *Allobroges*, whom we tearme *Sauoyars*.

[a] The Citie of *Martinach* in lower *Valois*.

[b] *Antuates* were people of *Vaud* in *Sauoye*.

[c] People of *Prouence*, containing *Sauoy* & *Dauphine* & in the nether *Valois*.

At the deſcending from this ſmall Stone Bridge, is the territorie and Lands of *Agaunum*, auncietly called the Bourrough of the *Veragrians*, [d] *Vicus Veragrorum*: And about a Stones caſt from thence, is the place where the Legion of *Thebes* endured Martyrdome, Saint *Maurice* and his Companions (chiefe Commanders of the Bands) being firſt decimated among the Tennes, and then to haue their heads ſmitten off, by the command of *Mazimianus*; who beholding their conſtancie in the Faith of Chriſt Ieſus, cauſed the whole Legion to taſte the edge of the Sword, by the groſſe multitude of his Idolatrous Armie. Which Martyrdome happened in the yeare of Grace Three hundred and fiue, the fiue and twentie day of September. The Riuer of *Roſne*, for the length of fiue or ſixe miles, and the Snowes on the Alpie Mountaines, were dyed and coloured Redde, with the Crimoſine Blood of thoſe glorious Martyres: And the Songs of ioy and reioycing vſed among them, in animating one another to endure death with inuincible courage; ſweetely reſounding from the hollowes of the Mountaines, aſcended vp as ſacred Incenſe to heauen.

[d] *Vicus Veragrorum* and all his Legion.

Hortantes ſe clade ſuâ ſic ire ſub Aſtra.
Alter in alterius cæde natauit Heros.

Audiuit rapidas Rhodani fons ſanguinis vndas,
Tinxit & Alpinas ira cruenta niues.

So ſaith the Biſhop of *Poictiers Fortunatus*, in his ſecond Booke and fifteenth Poeme *De Sanctis Agaunenſibus*. The King of *Bourgongne Sigiſmond*, cauſed to be cut and hewen within the Rocke, the Monaſterie called Saint *Maurice*, ſince then augmented by our Kings, and the Biſhops of *France*. But come we now to the Order of Saint *Maurice*. The Honor and the Statutes of this Order, were augmented and encreaſed by the firſt Duke of *Sauoye Amadis*, ſeauenth of the name, which was Pope *Fælix*: who inſtead of the name of the *Order of Loue-Knots*, would haue it to be called *The Order of the Annuntiation of the bleſſed Virgin Mary*, whoſe figure he fixed at the end of the Collar, in place of the Image of Saint *Maurice*. He changed likewiſe the Loue-Ties of Silke, into Chainets of Gold, charged with foure Letters, F.E.R.T. and gaue them the Interpretation, according to the Deuiſe of *Amadis* the Great, *Fortitudo eius Rhodum tenuit*. This alteration changed in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred thirtie and foure.

The Monaſterie of S. *Maurice* cut in a Rocke.

How the Order came to be ſo called.

There are two Collars belonging to this Order. This Collar is worne on high Feſtiuals, and dayes of Ceremonies: But the common ſeruice for daily wearing. I haue ſeene them of my Lords the Dukes of *Nemours* and *d'Aumale*, and before his returne from *Sauoye*, thoſe of the Lord *Iames Chabont*, Count of Saint *Maurice*, Ambaſſadour of *Sauoye*, Knight of the ſaid Order: *Qui portoit d'Azur à Trois Fleurs de Lys d'Argent 2 & 1. au Chef d'Argent au Lyon naiſſant de Sable.*

Concerning the great Chaine or Collar of the Order.

The great Collar of the Order, containeth in weight two hundred and fiftie Crownes of Gold, or thereabout, in bredth two fingers and an halfe, compoſed with Roſes of Gold, ſome enamelled with Redde, and others with White. Among them are the Loue-knots of Gold, without enamelling, and all Cleched (for the Roſes are full and maſſie) and betweene the Loue-knots are enterlaced the Deuiſe F E R T. in olde Rubricke Capitall Letters, Cleched alſo, one enamelled with White, and the other Redde, as here you may behold the forme of them FERT.

The deſcription of Quall hanging at the Collar.

At the end of the Roſe, hanging directly vpon the Breaſt, are fattened three Chaines of Gold, carying an Quall Cleched in Knots of Loue, enamelled with White, and within the Quall is the Salutation of the Angell, holding a Scepter, and ſtanding vpright; but the Virgin kneeling and leaning on her Oratorie. Aloft in the Quall houereth a Doue, enamelled with White: but the two other Images are enamelled with all Colours.

The leſſer Collar is like a Gordget or Neck-piece, containing two fingers in bredth, of pure fine Gold, of the weight of an hundred Crownes, or thereabout, whereon in ſmall Letters (of the old faſhion) neere one another, is the ſame word, but not in Capitall Letters fert, releuated with White enammilling, but betweene each word is the Letter S. made firme likewiſe with white enammell, and vpon the Breaſt an Quall, like to that of the Great Collar of the Order. It is faſtened about the neck with a Claſpe and Pin of Gold

Now, as concerning the Armes of *Sauoye*, they are to be ſeene at *Paris*, on the great Gate of the Hoſtall of *Nemours*, the firſt and fourth whereof are altogether alike, as thus: *De Gueulles au Cheual Gay tourne d'Argent, party de face d'Or & de Sable de ſix pieces à vne Coronne de Rue perye en Bande de Synople* (which are the auncient and Moderne Armes of the *Saxon* Dukes) *Ente en poincte d'Argent à Trois tuyts de fourreaux d'Eſpee de Gueulles 2 & 1.* The ſecond Quarter of *Chablais*; which is *D'Argent ſeme de Billettes de Sable au Lyon de meſme.* The third of *Auguſta*, which is *De Sable au Lyon d'Argent langue & arme de Gueulles, & ſur le Tout de Malta.*

I haue ſeene ſome other much more charged, as that of the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, of *Piedmont*, *Suze* and *Saluces* (and of Counties & Seigneuries, exchanged by the Treatie of Sixe hundred and one, for the Marquiſate of *Saluces*) to wit

De Breſſe, qui eſt d'Argent à la Bande d'Azur, à Deux Lyons rampants de meſme, l'vn en Chef, & l'autre en pointe.

De Baugie, qui eſt de Gueulles au Lyon d'Ermines Coronne & Arme d'Or.

De

De Veromey, pale d'Argent & d'Azur au Lyon de Gueulles Coronne, Lampaſſe & Arme d'Or.

Bailliage de Gex, Qui ſont d'Azur à ſix Morailles d'Or liees d'Argent, au Chef d'Argent à Lyon naiſſant de Gueulles.

Which foure Counties and Seigneuries, are at this preſent of the Crowne of *France*, ſo conſequently are the Armes of them cut from the Eſcutcheon of *Sauoye*, the Creſt and Supporters, are the ſame borne by the Dukes of *Nemours*, formerly deſcribed.

The Croſſes of the Orders of Saint Maurice and of Saint *Lazarus* in *Sauoye*.

CHAP. VI.

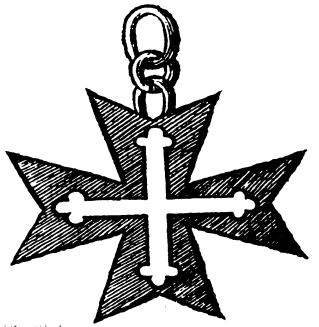
The Inſtitution of the Orders of Saint Maurice *and of Saint* Lazarus *in* Sauoye.

Croix des Ordres de Sainct Morice & de Sainct Lazare en Sauoye.

VEr and beſide the Order of the *Annuntiation*, which is the Great & Principall of State in *Sauoye*, there hath yet bin known Knights of Saint *Maurice* and of Saint *Lazarus*, who carrie both the Croſſes together; and ſome other beſide, that weare their Croſſe ſeperate, and diſtinguiſhed by it ſelfe.

At what time the Order of Saint *Maurice* began.

As for them of Saint *Maurice*, their beginning was in the yeare One thouſand foure hundred and fortie, when the firſt Duke of *Sauoye Amadis*, ſeauenth of the name (afterward Pope *Fælix*) hauing made his retreate into the Deſart of *Ripaille*, heretofore obſerued; Inſtituted *The Order of Hermites of Saint Maurice*, as well to preſerue the memory of that valiant and couragious Knight (inuincible for Ieſus Chriſt and Tutelarie Patron of the Eſtate of *Sauoye*:) As of the *Lance* and *Ring* of the ſame Saint, the eſſentiall Roates of Knighthood; paſſing from hand to hand by the Kings of *Bourgongne*, in the Illuſtrious Houſe of the Princes of *Sauoye*.



The Habite worne by theſe Knights of S. *Maurice*.

The Knights of this Order were habited in the manner formerly obſerued. *A Gray Gowne & Chapperon, a Caſſocke of the ſame, guirded with a golden Girdle, Sleeues and Sleeues of Red Chamlet, and on the Cloake or Breaſt, a Croſſe Pommettee of Taffatie or white Cloath, but the Generals was of Gold, or elſe in Embroderie.* Such a kinde of Habite was giuen by the ſame *Amadis* to the Knights of his Court, that were retreated with him to the ſaid place of *Ripaile*, dedicated to the bleſſed Knight Saint *Maurice*, vnder the Rule of the Father of Religion Saint *Auguſtine*, a famous Doctour of the Church. And from that time forward, thoſe Hermites were acknowledged by the name, *Of Knights of Saint Maurice*; but the certaine number of them depended on the Chiefe of the Order.

Of the Order of Saint *Lazarus*, and antiquitie therof.

Now, concerning the Order of Saint *Lazarus*, it is of a very auncient Inſtitution. And that whereof ſpeech is vſed in *Sauoye*, was onely but renewed, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred threeſcore & fiue, during the Pontificality of Pope *Pius*, fourth of the name. For he being a *Millainois*, made Great Maiſter of this Order of Saint *Lazarus*, a Gentleman of *Millaine* (one of his kinſmen very well deriued, and endued with vertue, and of the Houſe, honored by Pope *Celeſtine*, fourth of the name;

by two Cardinals, fiue Biſhops very famous Doctors, beſide Abbots, Commanders and Preſidents in the Senate of *Millaine*. Lords of *Chaſtillon ſur Orona*) of whom we ſhall ſpeake hereafter. The ſaid Houſe is ſo much the more renowned, by being built in a pleaſant place, and by the great and worthy Captaine *Stilico*, which Towne hath euer ſince conſerued the name of *Caſtrum Stiliconis*, very neerely ſeated to *Angleria*, renowned alſo by hauing Sourſe and Originall from thoſe auncient Lords of *Millaine*. This auncient Family of *Chaſtillon*, *Porte de Gueulles au Lyon d'Argent portant de ſes pattes de deuant vn Chaſteau d'Or*. Very Noble Armes, howſoeuer they ſpeake of the Sirname. For it is not alwayes an infallible rule, that Armes ſhould correſpond with the name; as *Leon*, *Caſtile*, *Granada*, *Galicia* and others in *Spain*, which are Armes f Kingdomes.

Armes of the Family of *Chaſtillon*.

Chaſteau-Pers, *Chaſteau Roux*, and a thouſand others in like manner of very Noble Families, are found as well in *France*, *Italie*, *Germanie* and elſewhere, all Armes very Noble, and richly emblazoned.

The ſame Pope *Pius*, fourth of the name, made (as we haue ſaid) Great Maiſter of the Order of Saint *Lazarus* in *Italie*:

Iannot de Chaſtillon, to whom, and to the Knights of the ſame Order, he granted all the auncient Priuiledges, which had formerly bin granted by the holy Fathers his Predeceſſours, to all the Militarie Orders, as well in the Holy-Land, as in Chriſtendome.

Priuiledges granted to the Order.

What Priuiledges were further granted by the Pope Pius Quartus, *to the ſame Order.*

THat all Benefices ſimple, being in Patronage, either by Foundation or Donation, they might make them Cõmanderies, & enioy them, without leauing their Habit.

That euery Knight of the Order, although he were married, might hold (with the Habite of the Order) a Penſion of fiue hundred Crownes of Gold of the Sun, or the fruites amounting to the like value. And

They were permitted, to retreate the places belonging to their Religion, into any part of Chriſtendome where they would be, amounting to more then a thouſand Hoſpitals, and to become Maiſters of them.

That into this Order no man might be receiued, except he were Noble by the Father and Mothers ſide, in two Races at the leaſt, begotten & borne in lawfull Matrimony, and deſcended of auncient Chriſtians, and not of Turkes or Renegad Apoſtates, nouell Chriſtians, whoſe beliefe was (commonly) wauering and doubtfull.

That he ſhould make proofe of his Nobilitie in the Country of his Birth, or of his Father and Mother, Grandfather and Grandmother Paternall & Maternall: that he is a Gentleman of name, Armes, and of honorable charge.

That he had two hundred Crownes in Rents at the leaſt, & liued Nobly, without medling in Merchandiſe or Yeomanrie, and that both his Predeceſſors and himſelfe are cleere from any noate of infamie.

That he married according to his qualitie, with a Daughter deſcended of a Noble Houſe, and not a widdowed woman.

That he ſhall neither be in his owne houſe, nor walke abroad in publique; without wearing on his Breaſt *The Ancred Croſſe of Greene Taffatie or Sattin, worne with eight Points*.

That he ſhall ſweare to the Great Maiſter *Coniugall Chaſtitie* and *Monogamie*.

That he ſhall haue eſpeciall care of Leaprous diſeaſed people, the point and principall ſubiect of his Order.

That he ſhall daily ſay a *Roſarie* in *Honor of the Sacred Virgin, with fiue and twenti Pater-Noſters, and as many Aue-Maries*.

That he ſhall abſtaine from eating fleſh on euery Wedneſday weekely: And Shall Faſt on the Friday or Saturday, as beſt himſelfe pleaſeth.

These Rules and Statutes were preſcribed by the Pope *Pius Quartus*, to thoſe Knights of Saint *Lazarus*, being now newly reeſtabliſhed. And their Great Maiſter *Dom Iouannot de Chaſtillion* being deceaſed at *Vercellis*, as he was trauailling to aſſiſt and found the building of his Order, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand fiue hundred

The death of the Great Maiſter.

hundred threeſcore and twelue; the ſame yeare preſided in the Sacred Seate;

Gregorie, thirteenth of the name, who (before his election) was called *Hugo Boncompagno*, a Gentleman of *Bologna*, who bare in Armes *De Gueulles au Dragon naiſſant d'Or*. This Pope, being willing to maintaine this Order, by Inſtituting a Great Maiſter of the principall Houſe: gaue the Maiſterſhip to the Duke of *Sauoye*, *Phillebert Emanuel*, and to his Succeſſours the Dukes of his Stocke and Ligne, by his Buls bearing date in September One thouſand fiue hundred threeſcore and thirteene. In which yeare, and in the Moneth of Aprill, the ſaid *Phillebert Emanuel*, Duke of *Sauoye*, cauſed all the Knights of this Order of Saint *Lazarus*, to appeare at one meeting in the Citie of *Nice* in *Prouence*, where he made himſelfe knowne to be the Great Maiſter, taking the Oath of intire Obedience, and to keepe inuiolably the Rule of the *Ciſteaux*, which Pope *Gregorie* the thirteenth had preſcribed to this Order.

The Duke of Sauoye made Great Maiſter by the Pope.

He reformed the Statutes of the ſame Order or Religion, whereunto he gaue two Gallies, and diuers Brigandines, for clearing the Coaſts of *Italie*, being much peſtered with Rouers and Pirates. The Dukes two principall Conuents and Houſes of the Order, are at *Nice*, and at *Thurine*, the Capitall Citie for the State of *Piedmont*, and where the Prince maketh his ordenary abiding. Hauing alwayes for ſeruice of his perſon, the Knights of Saint *Lazarus*, as his Pages of Honor, Gentlemen of his Chamber, Eſquiers Caruers, Groomes or Quirries of his Stable, Maiſters of the Houſhold, Captaines, Colonels, and prime Officers of his State.

The two chief Houſes of the Order.

The ſame Duke of *Sauoye* obtained of Pope *Gregorie* the thirteenth, the vniting of the Religion of Saint *Lazarus* (vnder the Order of the *Ciſteaux*) with that of Saint *Maurice*. So that after this Reunion, both the one and other were acknowledged vnder the name, *Of Knights of Saint Maurice* and of Saint *Lazarus* together.

Vniting of the two Orders together.

And yet notwithſtanding, I haue ſeene in *Piedmont* and *Sauoye*, yea, and at *Paris*, when the peace of *Vervins* was ſworne, in Anno foureſcore and eighteene, and in the Secular yeare ſixe hundred, that *Monſieur de Sauoye* was there, and many Knights *Sauoyans*, who did weare on their breaſt and left ſide, the Great White Croſſe *Pommettee* of Saint *Maurice* alone, but without any noate of that of Saint *Lazarus*, whereof they carried not the name.

As for them of Saint *Lazarus*, vnited with that of Saint *Maurice*, inſtead of wearing (as they were wont) the Greene Croſſe, according to the faſhion of *Malta*: after this vnion, they charged in the hart or midſts thereof, another Croſſe *pommettee white*, to ſhow, that they were *Knights of Saint Lazarus*, and of Saint *Maurice* together. But then it is to be vnderſtood, that in *Sauoye*, the Greene Croſſe of Saint *Lazarus* had an *Orle Blanche*, inſtead of that of Saint *Lazarus* in *France* (before the Inſtitution of the Order of *Mont Carmell*, made by King *Henry* the Great of glorious memory) which was of Greene Taffatie or Sattin, in the ſame manner as that of *Malta à vn Orle de Paſſement d'Or*.

The Cloakes or Mantles of the Knights of *Sauoye* (otherwiſe tearmed of Saint *Maurice* and Saint *Lazarus*) are of Carnation Taffatie, lined with White Taffatie, and a Cordon with the Taſſell of White & Greene. And the Caſſock or Coate of Armes of Carnation Damaske, or Raſhe of *Spaine*, died of Scarlet colour, with the Croſſe of the ſaid Orders before and behinde.

The Habites belonging to the Order.

They are diſpenced withall, for eating fleſh on Wedneſdayes, and faſting on Saturdayes, and from daily ſaying the Chappelet of fiue and twenty *Pater Noſters*, and as many *Aue Maries*: For the Duke (inſtead thereof) hath giuen them an abridged Pſalter (like to that of the Order of *Feſcamp*, as we ſay in *France*) to ſay at euery Canonicall Houre an Antiphonall or Anteme, a Pſalme and a Prayer made for the purpoſe.

Diſpenſation from Faſting.

For direction and Gouernement of theſe Orders, there is a Counſell compoſed of eight auncient Knights, honored with the Titles of Greatneſſe: As Lieutenant Generall to his Highneſſe; High Admirall; Lord Great Chancellour of the Order; Great Conſeruator; and Great Treaſurer, who did all weare the great Croſſe, twiſe fare greater then the common: And the moſt part of theſe Great Commanders, might

might be Marqueſſes, Counts and Vicounts. In generall, all theſe Knights carried the title of *Dom*, inſtead of Brother, which they of *Malta* ſtill retained. Vnder the Great Treaſurer are thoſe perticular perſons, which keepe receipts of the Leaper and Lazar Houſes, in the Eſtates of *Italie* and *Spaine*. For Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, ordained by his Buls, that all the Commanderies of the Order of Saint *Lazarus*, being vnder the Eſtates of all Chriſtan Princes; ſhould be left freely by them to the ſaid *Emmanuel Phillebert*, and his Succeſſors the Dukes of *Sauoye*, whom he eſtabliſhed chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maiſters of this Order.

The Ordination of Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth.

According to this Bull, the ſame Duke *Emanuel* had the Inueſtiture and the Collation of the Commanderies of the ſame qualitie in *Spaine*, in the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, in the Eſtate of *Millaine*, &c. held by the King of *Spaine*, and the Eſtates and Common-wealths of *Italie*. But the Duke thinking to doe as much ouer them in the Kingdome of *France*; King *Henry* the third, of famous memorie hindered the effecting of it. Becauſe the Chiefe Seate of the ſaid Order being in his Kingdome, the Great Maiſterſhip thereof (in right and equitie) appertained to him, rather then to any other Prince of Chriſtendome, as we haue already formerly approued.

The Interpoſition of the King of *France*

Now concerning the Vowe of Profeſſion, which was made by the Knights of Saint *Maurice* and Saint *Lazarus*, in preſence of the Great Maiſter, vpon the Euangeliſts and Canon of the Maſſe: Here followeth the forme in *French*, and afterward turned into *Engliſh*.

A forme of the Vowe.

I E. *N. promets à vous Monſeigneur le Sereniſſime Charles Emmanuel Duc de Sauoye, Prince de Piedmont, Grand Maiſtre de la Religion de Sainct Morice, & Sainct Lazare, & à vos Sereniſſimes Succeſſeurs, que le plus deuotement qu'il me ſera poſſible, ie diray tous les iours en l'honneur de Ieſus Chriſt noſtre Redempteur, de la Glorieuſe Vierge Marie, de Sainct Mauriee, & de Sainct Lazare, & de toute la Cour Celeſte de Paradis, le Pſautier abregé, qui m'a eſte ordonne de dire; de ieuſner le Vendredy, ou Samedy, de garder Chaſteté coniugale: Charité, & Hoſpitalité enuers les pauures Lepreux; & tous les Statuts, & Ordonnances faictes & à faire de la Religion: que ie vous ſeray fidele & obeiſſant, & à voſdicts Succeſſeurs: Que ie n'alieneray aucuns biens appartenants aux Commanderies que ie poſſederay, tant par droict de Patronat, qu'autrement: Que ie ne les engageray, ne bailleray en Emphiteoſe, ou autre long-temps, ſans l'expreſſe permiſsion de voſtre Alteſſe, ou d'autre Sereniſsime Grand Maiſtre qui pourra eſtre apres vous, & du Conuent. Ainſi Dieu me ſoit en aide, & ſes Sacrez Euangiles.* Amen.

I. *N. promiſe to you my Lord the moſt Noble Prince* Charles Emanuell, *Duke of Sauoy, Prince of Piedmont, Great Maiſter of the Religion of Saint* Maurice, *and of Saint* Lazarus, *and to your Gracious Succeſſours, that the moſt deuoutly as is poſſible for me to performe: I will daily ſay (in honour of Ieſus Chriſt our Redeemer; of the glorious Virgin Mary; of Saint* Maurice; *of Saint* Lazarus; *and of the whole Celeſtiall Court of Paradiſe) the Pſalter abridged, which is appointed for me to ſay. That I will faſt on the Friday & Saturday; to keepe Coniugall Chaſtitie, Charitie and Hoſpitality for all poore Leapers; with all the Statutes and Ordenances made, and to be made of the Religion. That I will be faithfull and obedient to you, and to your Succeſſours. That I will not alienate any goods belonging to the Commanderies which I ſhall poſſeſſe, as well by right of Patronage, as otherwiſe. That I will not engadge them, nor giue them vpon improuement, or for any long time, without the expreſſe permiſsion of your Highneſſe, or ſuch Honourable Great Maiſter, that ſhall come after you, and of the Conuent: So God be my helpe, and his Holy Euangeliſts.* Amen.

The

The Order of Saint Stephen, Pope, called: The Order of *Florence*, Inſtituted in the yeare of Grace, One Thouſand, fiue hundred threeſcore and One: By *Coſimo de Medicis*, the firſt Duke of *Florence*.

L'Ordre de Sainct Eſtienne, Pape, dict de Florence.

CHAP. VII.

A Briefe Diſcourſe, concerning the Originall and Genealogie, of the Dukes of Florence.

The Armes of *Florence*.

THe Great Dukes of *Tuſcanie*, whereof *Florence* is the Capitall Citty, and which beareth for Armes *D'Argent à la Fleur de Lys eſpanouie, & ouuerte de Gueules*: had their birth and beginning (according to *Neſtor* and *Machiauell*, with other *Florentine* Hiſtorians) from *Eurardo de Medicis*, a *French*, Kinght and ordenarie Chamberlaine to our Emperour *Charlemaigne*, whom he followed into *Italie*, to vn-neſt the *Lombardes* and other Strangers, that ouermuch commaunded at *Baguetta*. This *French* Knight was entreated by the Citizens of *Florence*, to deliuer them from the tyranny of a fierce and proud Giant, named *Mugellus*, whoſe bloody and cruell neighbourhood, made waſte and deſerte all the Countrey. The memorie of this Giant remaineth yet to this preſent, in a ſmall Territorie, ſeated neere to *Florence*; where the Great Dukes haue a goodly place of pleaſure, called *Mugello*.

Eurardo de Medicis a *French* Knight of whom came the *Florentines*.

Mugellus a cruell Giant ſlaine by *Eurard* of *France* in ſingle Combate.

This Giant caried vſually a great heauie Club of yron, whereat hung fiue or ſixe huge Balles of the ſame mettall, wherewith he ſmote downe all paſſengers, without extending any pitty: vntill he was manfully defied, and ſlaine in a ſingle Combate, by *Eurard* the *French* Knight, who, to conſerue the remembrance of his good ſucceſſe, obtained of the Emperour *Charlemaigne* (by an eſpeciall priueledge) *L'Eſcu d'Or à Cinq Tourteaux de Gueules*, 2. 2. 1. to ſignalize the Balles or Bowles of the Giants yron Club, all freſhly tincturde with his Blood: And from hence it is, that they are ſtill conſerued for Armes to the Illuſtrious Houſe of *Medicis*.

Some ſay *Attila*.

Some haue written, that this citty of *Florence* was builded by the Emperour *Charlemaigne*, which is contrary to all truth. For it was ruined vtterly by *Totila*, King of the *Hunnes* and *Gothes*, and deſerted by the *Lombardes*, vntill the time of *Charlemaigne*, who in the yeare of Grace Eight hundred and two, cauſed it to be engirt with Walls and Towers, and newly re peopled it. Thereto alſo he gaue the Armes formerly emblazoned; as yet is to bee ſeene in the Churches there builded by him, in Honour of Saint *Marie*, Sirnamed *Del Campo*, Saint *Pedro del Eſcaragio*, and others.

Stephanus Pighius, in his *Hercules Prodicius*, ſpeaking of the walling, and houſes of *Florence*, built vpon the Riuer of *Arno*, ſaith. *Eas magna ex parte deiecit Totyla Rex Gothorum, Ciuibuſque magnopere incommodauit, deinceps verò à Barbaris aliis, & à Feſulanis admodum exagitata fuit, vt eam Habitatores dereliquerint: quo in ſtatu permanſit, vſque ad noſtræ ſalutis annos Octogintà duos, quo tempore* Karolus Magnus *Alpes tranſmittit, & eius ambitum cum amplificaſſet, muros eam auxit, in quibus Centum quinquaginta turres, in altitudine centum cubitorum extollebantur, inſtitque vt denuo reſtitueretur: & exinde ſemper euentibus rerum fœliciores experta eſt.*

This Citty was named *Fluentia*, vntill ſuch time as *Charlemaigne* cauſed it to be re-builded and newe peopled. For then he aboliſhed the memory of her auncient appellation, and ordered, that it ſhould be called *Florence*, afterward tearmed the

Florenza la Bella.

Fayre,

Fayre, by the goodly ſtructure of the houſes and Pallace. Goe we now againe to *Eurard de* Medicis, whoſe deſcente made their dwelling at *Florence*.

After the ſaid *Eurardo* ſucceeded *Alemano de Medicis*, Father to *Siluestro* the Gon-*fannoniero*, that is to ſay, the Captaine Generall of *Florence*; Father to *Vieri*, Father of *Giacomo*; Father of *Bernardino*; Father of *Giouanni*, who conquered *Luca* from them of *Piſa*; Father of *Chariſſimo*; Father of *Eurardo de Medicis*, Second of the name, called the *Deuoute*, Standard-Bearer of *Florence* in the yeare of Grace One Thouſand, foure hundred, twenty and three. This man left two Sonnes, that branched this houſe into two ſeuerall Stemmes.

Gonfalonniero de Fiorenza.

Coſimo; And
Lorenzo.

Coſimo was called the *Great* for his vertues, and deſerued the title of *Father of his Countrey*: who gouerned the Common wealth of *Florence* during the ſpace of One and thirty yeares, after he had bin repealed from baniſhment. He liued threeſcore and fifteene yeares, and died in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and foure, hauing laid the foundation of the Greatneſſe of his houſe: After whom ſucceeded his Sonne, the true imitatour of his vertues.

When the Houſe of *de Medicis* began to be Great

Pedro de Medicis, who deceaſſed in the yeare One thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and twelue. By *Lucretia* his wife of *Turnabony*, he left two Sonnes:

Lorenzo, Sirnamed the *Magnifico*; And
Iuliano, murdered in the Church of Saint *Reſtitutus*, euen in Maſſe time at the Elevation, in the yeare One thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and eighteene, partly contriued againſt him, by the factions of the Lords of *Pazzy*, *Saluiaty* and *Bandini*, the Principalles of the Eſtate of *Florence*.

This *Iuliano* was Father to *Iulio de Medicis*, Cardinall and afterward Pope, by the name of *Clement* the Seauenth, after the death of his Couſine Pope *Leo*, Tenth of the name.

Lorenzo the *Magnifico*, Eldeſt Sonne to *Pedro de Medicis*, by his Wife *Clarissima Vrſini*, had three Sonnes.

Pedro.
Giouanni, Cardinall, and afterward Pope *Leo*, Tenth of the name; And
Iuliano de Medicis, Sirnamed the *Magnifico.*

The Father of theſe Sonnes was called *Father of the Muſes*, in regard of his intimate loue to Learning, and ſuch as made profeſſion thereof. He collected together an vnſpeakeable number of *Greeke* Bookes, from all the partes of *Aſia*, to his incredible coſt and expences. He died in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, foureſcore and twelue, leauing the Gouernement of *Florence* to his Eldeſt Sonne

A Louer of Learning and learned men.

Pedro, Second of the name, who followed King *Charles*, Eight of the name, in courſe of his fortunes, going with him to the Conqueſt of his Kingdome of *Naples*. After his death, he tooke part with King *Lewes* the Twelfth, who in acknowledgement of the Loue which he bare to the ſaid *Pedro*, would needes haue him to beare in the Chiefe of his Shield of Armes, *Vn Tourteau d'Azur, à Trois Flaurs de Lys d'Or* 2. 1. and not one and two, as they are repreſented by ignorant Painters and Engrauers. He and his Brethren were ſo deadly hated and deſpighted by the *Florentines*, that their heads were ſet at Port-ſale, their houſes, Goods and Libraries robbed and ſpoyled, which cauſed them to forſake the Citty of *Florence*. This *Pedro* died at the mouth of the Riuer *Garillano*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, fiue hundred and three, leauing by his wife *Alſoncina de Vrſini* a Poſthumus Sonne, who was named,

The Armes giuen to *Pedro* by King *Lewes* the Twelfth.

Lorenzo. And as for the Brother to this *Pedro* the Second, named *Iuliano*, he was brought againe into *Florence*, by the cunning practiſes and policies of Pope *Leo* the Tenth, his Brother. He was called the *Manifico*, in regard of his liberality, and the Magnificent buildings which he raiſed in *Florence*. By *Philiberta* of *Sauoye*, Daughter to *Philobert*, Duke of *Sauoye*, and of *Nemours*, he left one only iſſue: But had a naturall Sonne, named *Hippolito de Medicis*, who was made Cardinall, and Archbiſhop of *Auignion*.

How he came to be called the *Magnifico.*

Lorenzo, the only, and *Poſthumus* Sonne of *Pedro*, Second of the name, was created Duke of *Vrbin* by Pope *Leo* the Tenth, his vncle by the Fathers ſide; yet it was but in name only, and died in the yeare One thouſand, fiue hundred and nineteene. He tooke to Wife *Magdalena*, Second Daughter to *Iohn* of *Bologne*, and *De la Tour*, Count of *Auuergne* and of *Lauregais*, and of *Iane* of *Bourbon*, Siſter to the Count of *Vendoſme*.

Lorenzo duke of *Vrbin.*

This Houſe of *Bologne* caried the Sirname and Armes of *De la Tour*, which are *Teme de France à la Tour d'Argent maſſonnee de Sable.* And the Sirname of *Bologne*, was deriued from one of the Brothers of *Godfrey* (Sonne to *Euſtace*, Count of *Bologne*) the Firſt King of *Ieruſalem*. This Brother being Standard-Bearer in the Army of his Brother, tooke, and his deſcent after him, *L'Eſcu d'Or au Gonfanon de Gueules de Trois pendants ou Fanons, à la Bordure frangee de Synople.* King *Lewes* the Eleuenth bought of *Bertrand de la Tour*, Second of the name, the County of *Bologne* on the Sea in *Piccardie*, in ſted whereof, he gaue him (by way of exchange) that of *Lauregais*, vnder authority of the Parliament of *Toloſa*. And the ſame King *Lewes* the Eleuenth made homage of the ſaid Countie of *Bologne* to the Virgin *Mary*; to whom he gaue alſo (as a preſent) a Hart of Gold, weighing two thouſand Crownes.

The Armes of *De la Tour.*

A preſent giuen to the Virgin *Mary.*

By the Mariage of *Lorenzo de Medicis*, Duke of *Vrbin*, with *Magdalena de la Torre*, was borne their only Daughter

Catharina de Medicis, Heire to the Counties of *Auuergne* and *Lauregais*, with the Seigneuries *de la Tour, de la Chaire*, &c. which fell to her by the death of her Aunte, *Anne de la Tour* (Siſter to her Mother) Wife to *Iohn* of *Scotland*, the Duke of *Albanie*, by whom ſhe had no iſſue, *Catharine* had the happineſſe, to be allied to the Crowne of *France*, and maried by Pope *Clement* the Seauenth, to *Monſieur Henry* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, afterward King of *France*, Second of the name. The contract of this mariage was determined at *Marſeilles*, at the enteruiewe of Pope *Clement*, and King *Frances* the Firſt, the ſeauen and twentieth day of October, *Anno* One thouſand, fiue hundred, thirty three, in preſence of the Cardinalles of *Bourbon*, *Lorraine*, and *De Medicis*, and receiued by *Thomas*, Elect Biſhop of *Vaiſou*, in the County of *Veniſſe*, *Datarie* of the Popes Bulles, *Iohn Le Breton* and *Gilbert Bayard*, Notaries and Secretaries to the King. The Sacrament of Mariage was celebrated by the ſame Pope *Clement*, and conſummated by the Duke of *Orleans*, then aged ſixteene yeares. And from them deſcended

The mariage of *Katharine de Medicis* at *Marſeilles.*

Frances the Second,
Charles the Ninth,
Henry the Third.
} Kings of *France*, deceaſing all without any iſſue.

The iſſue of *Henry* of *Orleans* and *Katharine de Medicis.*

Frances, Duke of *Anion* and of *Brabant*, dying before he was maried.
Elizabeth, Queene of *Spayne*, Who left two daughters, the one maried to the Duke of *Sauoye*, *Charles Emanuell*; and the other Ducheſſe of *Brabant*.
Claudia, Ducheſſe of *Lorrayne*, Mother to the Duke gouerning at this preſent, with other children. And
Margaret, Queene of *Nauarre* (forſaken) Ducheſſe of *Valois*, Counteſſe of *Auuergne*, of *Lauregais*, &c. by her Mothers ſide Queene *Katharine*: *Qui portoit au premier & Quatrieſme Quartier De Medicis*; *Eſcartele de la Tour, Contreſcartele de Bologne, & ſur le Tout d'Or à Trois Tourteaux de Gueules.*, Auncient Armes of the Houſe of *Bologne*.

The Armes of Queene *Katharine de Medicis.*

The ſame Duke of *Vrbin*, Father to Queene *Katharine*, left a naturall Sonne, named *Aleſſandro de Medicis*, made Prince and Lord of *Florence* by the Emperour *Charles* the Fift: by ioyning in mariage with him, his naturall Daughter *Margaret* of *Auſtris*. The erection of the Principalitie of *Florence* from a Seigneurie, was the Fift day of Iuly, One thouſand, fiue hundred, thirty and one. Which *Aleſſandro*, the Firſt Prince of *Florence*, reigned but fiue yeares, being murdred by his Couſine *Iuliano de Medicis* (Husband to *Phileberta* of *Sauoye*) returned to *Florence*, the ſixt day of Ianuary, One thouſand, fiue hundred, thirty ſixe, *Iuliano* becomming a fugitiue to *Venice*, died there without iſſue. And ſo by his death finiſhed the Maſculine Ligne (falling to the Feminine in the perſon of Queene *Katharine de Medicis*) deſcended

The Seigneurie of *Florence* aduanced to a Principality.

cended of *Cosimo* the Great, Eldest Sonne to *Lewes* the *Deuoute*: whereby we must returne, and take the younger

Lorenzo de Medicis (youngest Sonne to *Lewes* the *Deuoute*, Standard-Bearer of *Florence*) Father of

Pedro Francesco; Father of *Giouanni*; Father of an other *Iohn*, Sirnamed *The Inuincible*; Father of

This is the man, who the Emperour made Duke of *Florence*.

Cosimo de Medicis, who liuing priuately, and without any Charge in his Pallace at *Mugello*; vpon tydings of the Assassinate, committed on the person of the Prince *Alessandro*: collected suddenly together friends of his auncient acquaintance, sleeling them secretly into *Florence*, and inuested the Pallace where the Senate was assembled, to the end, that they might proceede to the election of a Lord and Prince of the Common-wealth. So that, either by loue or power, he was named Grand *Gonfaloniero* of *Florence*, the Ninth day of Ianuary, One thousand, fiue hundred, thirty and sixe. He encreased the Estate of *Florence*, by the taking and conquest of the Cities of *Pisa*, *Sienna*, and the Isle *D'Albe*, which made it mighty and much feared both by land and Sea. And heereupon it was that the Emperour gaue him the title of Duke of *Florence*.

The great Priueledge of the House of *Toledo*.

He made also the mariage betweene him, and *Dogna Eleanora* of *Toledo*, Daughter to the Vice-Roy of *Naples*. This house of *Toledo* is of the *Grandes*, as they tearme them in *Spayne*, the descendants whereof (by antiquity of their Nobility) haue this prerogatiue: To stand with their heads couered in the Kings Chamber, if they be not speaking to him, The Duke of *Alua* could not attaine thereto, not withstanding all his great Seruices, performed in so many places for the Crowne of *Spayne*, which made him deserue other things, and to out-run the Court Prouerbe: That he had good legges to keepe him vpright, and his head well furnished with larum watches; as much to say as Coughes; giuing thereby to vnderstand, that he hath a weake or sickly head, whom the King suffereth to be couered in his presence.

Dom Roderick King of the *Gothes* in *Spayne*.

Since the time as *Dom Roderick*, King of the *Gothes* of *Spayne*, lost *Toledo*, vntill it was recouered by the King *Dom Alphonso* the Sixt (which *Interuallum* and distance of time was foure hundred yeares, or therabout) the *Gothes* remayning at *Toledo*, continued in the Christian Faith, so reporte the Histories of *Spayne*, and wherein they were as well maintained, as in their degrees and titles of *Nobility*, by the Moore Kings, to whom they payed yearely certaine duties. Among the Noble Lineages and Families of the *Gothes* continuing still at *Toledo*, vnder the State of the *Affricans* Moores, keeping possession in *Spayne*; there were eight principally, the most Illustrious and renowned for their Antiquity, and of whom are issued those that beare name of *Tolledo*: As *de Palomequa*; *de Puerto-Carrero*; *de Gudielo*; *de Cernatos*; *de Roelas*; and *des Armildes*: Families which managed the reduction of this City (the principall of *Spayne*) in obedience to *Alphonso* the Sixt.

Eight auncient Honorable Families of the *Gothes*.

Mozarabes Mixtes Arabes

The Archbishop *Dom Roderigo Ximenes*, in his History of *Spayne*, the third Booke, and One and twentieth Chapter, calleth them of these Families, *Mozarabes*, *Mixtes Arabes*, to whom the Moores left in *Tolledo* the Churches of Saint *Marke*, Saint *Luke*, Saint *Sebastian*, Saint *Torquatus*, Saint *Iustus*, and of Saint *Eulalia* of *Merida*, wherein to this day they celebrate Diuine Seruice, according to the Office of Saint *Isidore*, called the *Gothishe* and *Mozarabe* Office, on the Feaste dayes of the Patrones of the said Churches, which is still continued in the great Church of *Tolledo*, in the Chappell of the blessed Sacrament of the Altare, builded and founded by the good Archbishop of *Tolledo*, Fryer *Frances Ximenes* of *Cisneros*, a Graye Fryer, and Cardinall of *Spayne*, who caused the strongest Townes and places in the Kingdome of *Navarre* to be dismanteled. The same *Gothishe* Seruice is likewise perfourmed in other Churches of *Spayne*.

The *Gothishe* Seruice in many Churches of *Spayne*.

Let it not seeme then any matter of strangenesse, that these Families should conserue themselues, during the space of foure hundred yeares in puritie of the Christian Faith, and the degree of Nobility, among the impurity and barbarisme of Infidell Moores: considering it is apparant to all *Spayne*, that long time after, vnder the Reigne of the King *Dom Iohn* the First, there passed from *Affrica* into *Castille*, Christian Families called the *Farfanes*, Who (by a succession of Ages) had kept their Nobility

Nobility and Christian Faith, and many times endured Martyrdome for it in the midst of *Affrica*.

The famous Families of *Tolledo*.

The most Illustrious then of these Eight Auncient Families, is that of *Tolledo*, which beare for Armes: *Escheque d'Argent et d'Azur de Seize Poincts*.

There are of this Sirname of *Tolledo*, of *Quesada*; *Qui portent de Gueules à Quatre faulx d'Argent charges de Vingt et Quatre Ermines, surchaque Pal Six. 2. 1. 2. 1.*

The *Polomeques*; *Portent d'Azur à vne Tourterelle, & Palombe d'Argent* (Armes speaking, but yet good) *à la bordure de Gueules, chargee de Huict Saultoirs d'Or.*

There are also of this Sirname and Familie, which beare *D'Azur au Lyon d'Or, a la bordure de Gueules, chargee de Cinq Palombes d'Argent.* And of these Armes there is made a *Spanish* Roundelaye.

De Palomegues memoria,
Lignage de San Benito,
Del Rey Alphonso Bendito,
En Toledana Victoria.
Solar insignia notoria
De los Quatro Toledanos
Palomas Cinco que à manos
Al Leon Dan leal gloria.

Alliance to the House of *Tolledo*.

There is likewise of them (both in Sirname and Familie of *Tolledo*) who by Alliance with this House; *Portent d'Argent à Six Polombes d'Azur aux bec, et pieds de Gueules. 2. 2. 2.* There are also of *Palomeques*: *Qui portent d'Argent à Deux Palombes, l'vne sur d'autre d'Azur, a la Bordure de Gueules, chargee de Huict Saultoirs d'Or.*

They of *Iliano*, do beare *D'Or à Trois Fesses de Gueules, à la Bordure Eschequee d'Or et Azur de deux Traicts.*

De Puerto. Carrero portent Escheque de Huict Poincts d'Or, Equipolez a Sept d'Azur.

De Gudielo, they are like to them of *Tolledo de Guesada*: likewise they are Sirnamed of *Tolledo* by Alliance, that is to say, by mariage.

They of *Cernatos*, *Portent d'Azur à Deux Cerfs d'Or l'vn sur l'autre.* Some of this Familie haue added heereunto *vne Bordure de Gueules à Huict Saultoirs d'Or.*

De Roelas. De Gueules a Six Bezans d'Argent, chacun charge de Trois Faisses d'Azur. les Bezans Deux en Deux. This family is founded on that of *Fuen-Salida*, which are joyned to that of *Ayala*, the most renowned of *Spayne*, and which beareth *D'Argent Deux Loups de Sable l'vn sur l'autre, à l'Orle de Gueules, chargee de Huict Saultoirs d'Or.* And on these also is founded the great House of *Salzedo*: *Qui portoit d'Argent à vn Saule de Synople, sur lequel est en Abysme vn Escu d'Or a Cinq Ponceles de Synople en Saultoir.*

Cosimo the First Duke of *Florence*.

The *Armildes*, whose auncient Armes were *Escheque de Huict Poincts d'Argent, Equipolez à Sept de Gueules.* And after the Battaile of *Tolosa*, they caried *D'Or, a la Croix Fleurdeli see de Gueules, a la Bordure componnee d'Argent et de Gueules de Seize poincts.* Goe we now to *Cosimo*, the First Duke of *Florence*,

By *Eleanora* of *Tolledo* his wife, he had three Sonnes, and two Daughters.

Francesco;
And } Both Dukes.
Ferdinando.
Pedro Garcia.
Isabella; And
Eleanora.

Two Dukes) contend for priority of Greatnesse.

Cosimo could not content himselfe, to haue the bare Title of Duke of *Florence*, because (in that quality) he had no other noat, nor any other ranck and sitting, but after Dukes of more auncient creation then he was. Whereupon he laboured the Court of *Rome* very seriously, to obtaine the Title of Great Duke of *Tuscaine*. Wherein he was opposed by the Duke of *Ferrara*, *Alphonso d'Este*, who maintained, that his predecessours had bin honoured with that Ducall dignity, before all the Princes and Potentates of *Italie*, the Dukes of *Venice* only excepted. For

First *Dorso*, Marquesse of *Ferrara*, was made Duke of *Modena*, and of *Reggio* (in Latine *Mutina*, *et Regium Lepidi*) and Prince of the Holy Empire by *Frederick* the Third,

The allegations of the Duke of Ferrara.

Third, in the Great *Piazza* of *Ferrara*, the Fifteenth day of May, One Thousand foure hundred, fifty and One, And in the yeare following, the foureteenth of April, the same *Borso* (being then at *Rome*) was proclaimed Great Duke of Ferrara by Pope *Paul*, Second of the name. And the Emperour *Frederick* gaue for Armes to the said *Borso*, *D'Azure à l'Aigle d'Argent, Coronne et Arme d'Or.*

After this *Borso* succeeded
Hercules D'Este; Father of
Of *Alphonso*; Father of
Hercules the Second; Father of

The Answers of Duke *Cosimo.*

Alphonso the Second, deceasing without issue in the yeare of Grace One thousand, fiue hundred, fourescore and seauenteene: This *Alphonso* debated and questioned the case of precedencie and Title, with this Great Duke *Cosimo de Medicis*. Who made him this Answere: That all the extendure possessed by the Dukes of *Ferrara*, was brought to a small footes breadth, and without Soueraignty, in regard that the Estate of *Ferrara*, was a meere Fiefe of the Church (by the donation of *Pepin* and *Charlemaigne*, Kings of *France*) and as for the Duchies of *Modena* and *Reggio*, they relied vpon the Empire.

The extendure of the Dukedome of *Florence.*

Contrariwise, that *Cosimo* himselfe, was an absolute Prince of his owne estate, whose lands extended aboue Two hundred miles in length, and Fifty miles in breadth in the narrowest passages. And concerning Citties, and townes, there was *Florence*, the very fairest of all *Italie*; *Pisa*; *Pistoya*; *Volterra*; *Arezzo*; the Bourrough of Saint *Sepulcher*; *Cortonna*, *Mont pulciano*; *Sienna*; *Montalcino*; *Grossetto*; *Saona Pienca*; *Massa* and *Ligorne*: beside many other places, Bourgades and Fortresses of no meane fame, with the *Isle d'Elbe.*

The Duke of *Florence* winneth the victorie.

Vpon these differences, Pope *Pius*, Fift of the name, declared by his Bull, that there was difference betweene Dukes of Citties and Townes, and those of Prouinces, to whom the Precedency ought (by right) to belong. And according to this Bull, *Cosimo de Medicis* was published *Great Duke of Tuscane*, and (in that qualitie) Crowned by the said Pope *Pius Quintus* with a wreath of Gold, with Floures and precious Stones most richlie embellished, to the value of Sixescore thousand Crownes of Gold; in the yeare fiue hundred, threescore and nine. In this Ring or Roundure of this Ducall Crowne, was grauen and enchased these words.

PIVS. V. PONT. MAX. OB. EXIMIAM. DILECTIONEM. ET. CATHOLICAE. RELIGIONIS. ZELVM. PRAECIPVVMQVE. IVSTITIAE. STVDIVM. DONAVIT.

Alphonso the last Duke of *Ferrara.*

The Duke of *Ferrara* made his recourse to the Emperour *Ferdinand*, against this Bull of the Pope: by vertue whereof (neuertheless) *Cosimo* kept still the Title of *Great Duke*. And to strengthen him the more, within some fewe yeares after, Alliance was wrought betweene these two Dukes: *Alphonso* maried one of the daughters to *Cosimo*, and dying (without issue) the last Duke of *Ferrara*; the Great Duke of *Tuscane Ferdinand*, is left peaceable possessour in the title of Precedencie, aboue all the Princes of *Italie.*

Cosimo the Great, made sure the Porte of the *Isle d'Elbe*, and built a goodly City called *Cosmopolis*, after his owne name, *The Citty of Cosimo*, guarded by two Castles thought to be impregnable. And in the City of *Pisa* he erected a magnificent Arsenall. He was thought to be the very richest Prince of his time, and who at the day of his death (which happened in the yeare, One thousand, fiue hundred, three score and foureteene) left in his Treasury Tenne Millions of Gold in ready Coine, and Two Millions in Precious Stones. He had for Successour his Eldest Sonne,

The death of Duke *Cosimo*, the richest Prince of his time.

Frances, who by his wife *Iane* or *Ioane*, the Infanta of *Austria*, Daughter to the Emperour *Ferdinand*, Brother to the Emperour *Charles* the Fift, had two Daughters.

Eleanora, Wife to *Vincentio*, Duke of *Mantua* and of *Monferrat*: And

Mary, Queene of *France*, Wife to King *Henry* the Great; which Queene is Mother to our King now Reigning, and beareth *De Florence, Escartele d'Austriche Moderne.*

This Duke *Frances* being dead without any Heire Masle, in *Anno*, 1598, the Great Dukedome of *Tuscanie* came to his Brother,

Ferdinand,

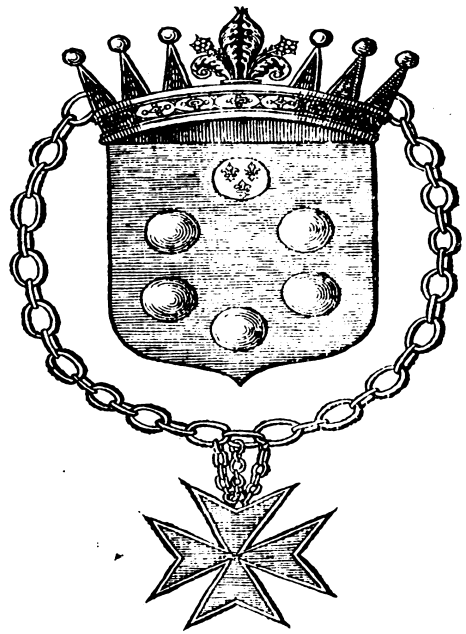
Ferdinand, who before was a Cardinall; but released and resigned to the Pope *Pius Quintus*, his dignity of Cardinall, by a sollemne Acte, celebrated in the Conclaue, the eight and twentieth day of Nouember, in the same yeare Fourescore and eighteene, by his Aduocates (done and grounded on especiall procuration) *Nicholas de Tournabony*, Bishop of the Borough of Saint *Sepulcher*, and *John Nicholas.* By his Wife *Christina*, Daughter to *Charles*, Duke of *Lorraine*, he left *Cosimo*, Second of the name, Husband to *Mary* of *Austria*, who Gouerneth at this present.

A Cardinalle dignity resigned for a Dukedome.

The Institution of the Order of Saint Stephen, *for the Honour of* Florence.

The time of the Orders Institution.

Cosimo, the first Duke of *Florence*, was Authour and Institutor of the Order of Saint *Stephen*, Pope, Ninth of the name, Tutelarie and Patrone of the Citty of *Florence*, which he Instituted in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, fiue hundred, threescore and one, confirmed by the Popes, both of one name *Pius*, fourth and Fift, by their Bulles, wherein were couched the Statutes, which ought to be kept and obserued, by the Knights of the same Order of Saint *Stephen*, vnder the Rule of Saint *Benedict*. By Confirmation of those Popes, they had the same Priueledges as belonged to them of *Malta.*



A Breuiate of the Articles.

NO man is to be admitted, and receiued into this Order, if he haue not first made proofe of his Nobility by Stock by Father and Mother, and borne in lawfull Mariage, and to be of the Christian Catholicke Religion, without any noate of infamy. Blasphemers, Concubinaries or Bastards, Players, Gamesters, Bouffones and Easters, are quite excluded out of this Society. And if any such happen to be entertained, before the discouery of their vices, they shall be very sucarely chastised.

They shall take the Oath of Charity, and Obedience towards their Soueraignes and Superiours, and also of coniugall chastity in the case of Mariage. Out of which estate, if they haue any issue by Concubines: they haue power to institute their Bastard Heires, both in their moueables and immouables, the Fourth part being reserued to the Order. Whereinto also may be receiued Bigamies, who (as well as they that haue bin but once maried) may hold two hundred Crownes Rent, on Benefices belonging to the State of *Florence*; as we haue said concerning them of Saint *Lazarus* in *France* and in *Sauoye.*

Of Pensions for Seruice.

These Pensions are giuen and graunted to such, as haue made their three yeares of Caravell approbation: that is to say, such as haue actually so long serued in the Galies of *Florence*, to cleare the Seas of Turkes and Pirates.

Each Knight is bound to say dayly an Hundred *Pater Nosters*, and an Hundred *Aue Mariaes*, but to double them on sollemne Feastiuall's, and the Rosarie at the death of a Brother of the Order, and the Office for the dead.

Seruice by Land and Sea

They stand obliged to serue so long on the Land, as on the Sea, at all times, and as often as it shall please the Soueraigne Great Maister, who is the Duke of *Florence*. To whom they are to take the same Oath, as they of Saint *Lazarus* doe to the Duke of *Sauoye*.

The Habite and Crosse of the Order.

They weare a long Gowne of White Chamblet, beautified with Red furniture; On sollemne Feast dayes, and on the left part of the Breast, a Crosse (like to that of *Malta*) of Red or Crimson Sattin, and on the *Orle* a Pasement Lace of Gold. Priests weare the Crosse of Red Taffatie, without *Orle*; and the Brethren Seruants the Crosse of Saint *Anthony* only, not hauing any thing aloft. The same Crosse is worne by the Knights dayly on their Cloakes, and about their necks at a Black Ribband or Cordon, or at a Chaine of Gold on Feastiuall dayes. In times of warre they weare the Crosse of the Order, vpon their Coates of Armes of Damaske, or of White Chamblet.

The principall Conuent of this Order is at *Pisa*, a pleasant Citty, with fayre plaine Fields, lined with the Riuer of *Arno*, about Eight miles from the Sea, adorned with a famous Vniuersity, and a goodly Arsenall.

Ordre du precieux Sang de nostre Sauueur et Redempteur Iesu Christ dict l'Ordre de Mantue.

The Order of the Precious Bloud of our Sauiour and Redeemer *Iesus Christ*: Other-wise called The Order of *Mantua*. Instituted by *Vincentio de Gonzaga*, Fourth Duke of *Mantua*, and Second of *Montferrat*: in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, Sixe Hundred and Eight.

CHAP. VIII.

The Genealogie of the Dukes of Mantua; *And of* Montferrat.

THat Passage of Father *Ieronimo Capugnano*, of the Order of the Preaching Fryers at *Bologna la Grassa*, in his description concerning the Citty of *Mantua*, enstructeth vs in the knowledge and foundation of this new Military Order. *In pulcherrimo templo Sancti Andreæ Sanguis est Domini Nostri miraculosus, & Longini Martyris ossa.* In the fayre and magnificent Church of Saint *Andrew* at *Mantua*, there is of our Lords Bloud, which worketh miracles dayly, and of the Bones of Saint *Longinus* the Knight, Martyred in the Citty of *Cæsarea* in *Cappadocia*. The most part of his Bones are in the Church of Saint *Augustine* at *Rome*, and some one or two of them in Saint *Andrewes* at *Mantua*. Among the rest, in the Shrine or Reliquarie which containeth the Relicks, are three drops of the Bloud of our Sauiour *Iesus Christ*, with a part or piece of the Spunge wherewith they gaue him Vineger and Gaule to Drinke on the tree of the Crosse. And this *Longinus* is said by some, to be the Centurion, that pierced with his Launce the side of our Sauiour.

This is said to be the blinde Knight that thrust his Launce into our Sauiours side.

The Institution of the Order.

In Honour of his Bloud, of such inestimable price, *Vincentio de Gonzaga*, Fourth Duke of *Mantua*, and Second of *Montferrat*; Instituted *The Order of the precious Bloud of our Sauiour and Redeemer Iesus Christ*: Of which Order he declared himselfe the Chiefe and Soueraigne to be Great Maister, and after him, the Dukes of *Mantua* and

The Duke himselfe Great Maister.

and *Montferrat* his Successours: And this Order is confirmed by Pope *Paul*, Fift of that name, sitting in the Holy Church at this present.

The first Ceremony of this Order, was performed on the day of Pentecost, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, sixe hundred and eight, in the Dukes Chappell of the Palace: where the Cardinall of *Mantua Ferdinand*, Second sonne to the Duke, girded on his Fathers Sword, and put about his necke the Collar of the Order: *In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the holy Ghost*. Which being done;

The first solemnity of the Order.

Vincentio, Duke of *Mantua* and of *Montferrat*, Founder and Soueraigne Great Maister of the Order; With great Ceremonie, in the Church of Saint *Andrew* in *Mantua*, made and created Fifteene Knights, namely;

Francis, Prince of *Mantua* and of *Montferrat*, his Eldest Sonne, newly maried to *Margaret* of *Sauoy*.

Iulius Cæsar de Gonzaga, Prince of the Holy Empire, and of *Bozzolo*, Marquesse *de Sonsino*, and Counte of *Pamponasso*.

Andrea de Gonzaga, Prince of the Holy Empire.

William d'Adorno, Marquesse of *Pallauosin*, and Counte of *Syludano*.

Iordain de Gonzaga, Marquesse, Prince of the Holy Empire, and Counte of *Fogni*.

Alexander de Benilaqua, Counte

Charles de Rosse, Lieutenant Generall to the State of *Mantua*.

Galeazzo, Counte *de Caneosso*, Marquesse of *Cagliano*.

Frederick de Gonzaga, Marquesse and Prince of the Holy Empire.

Frances de Bonsignato, Count.

Latino de Orsini, Duke.

Pyrrhus Maria de Gonzaga, Marquesse and Prince of the Holy Empire.

Ludouico de Gonzaga, Marquesse of *Palazzolo*.

The first Knighting of the Order made by the Duke.

The Collar of this Order is composed of Oualles of Gold, some extended in length, and other in breadth, enterlaced together by cleched Annelets of the same mettall. On the Oualles in length (enterchangeably) is raised in white enamelling these two words, *Domini Probasti*. On the other which are, *En Pyramide en Poincte*, are Flames of Fire enameled with Red, and vpon a Trimet, enameled with Blacke, a Chamblet or Goldsmiths melting or firing pot, enamelled Graye, full of small Rodus of Gold, without enamelling. At the end of the Collar within an Ouall, are two Angells standing vpright, wrought and enamelled according to life, holding a Chalice and Pixe Crowned, on the Table whereof, are three drops of Blood enamelled with Red, and about the Ouall this Legend *Nihil. Esto. Triste. Recepto.*

Concerning the Collar of the Order, and description thereof.

Nihil. Hoc. Triste. Recepto

The deuise of this Order, *Domine Probasti*, is taken out of the Hundred thirty eight Psalme, written by the Royall Prophet *Dauid*, which he speaketh and attributeth particularly

perticulerly to our Redeemer, and not to wreched, fraile and mortall men, vessels full of iniquity.

And Golde, like to the flaming Fire,
Shineth aboue all other riches.

Such as Gold Finers melte their Gold and Siluer in.

Saith *Pindarus*, becauſe Gold hath this gifte as perfect, and by prerogatiue aboue the other Sixe Mettalles; that it commeth forth of the Crurible or refyning Pot, more pure, neate and glittering, then when it was put into it:

Sic fuluum ſpectatur in Ignibus Aurum.

And the very iuſteſt man, ought to feare the refining veſſell of the wrath and Iudgement of God, which reſpecting; let him then boldly ſay the two laſt verſes of the ſame Pſalme. *Proba me Deus, & ſcito cor meum: interroga me, & cognoſce ſemitas meas. Et vide ſi via iniquitatis in me eſt: & deduc me in via æterna.* *Trie me O God, and ſeeke the ground of my heart: proone me, and examine my thoughts. Looke wether there be any way of wickednes in me: and leade me in the way euerlaſting.*

Let vs now proceede on to the Genealogie of the founder of this Order: whereof (to this day) I could neuer obtaine the Statutes and perticularities.

H Citty in Ciſalpina Gallia.

The ſituation of the Citty.

Mantua, of immortall renowne, and the birth-place of the famous Poet *Virgil*, one of the goodlieſt Cittie in *Italie*; is built vpon the Lake and Mariſh of *Benacus*, from whence iſſueth the Riuer *Mincius*, which with the *Po* watereth the *Mantuan* Countrey *Inter Padum Mincumque ſitam*: And theſe are the two Riuers, which the Prince of Poets reporteth to be famous in all parts of the World.

Fortunate ſenex hic inter flumina nota
Et fontes ſacros frigus captabis opacum.

And the ſame Poet obſerueth (to very good purpoſe) the ſoyle of the Citty, Marſhie on the one ſide, and entourred with Mountainets on the other.

..... quamuis lapis omnia nudus
Limoſoque palus obducat paſcua iunco.

A paſſage which hath made Maiſters of Arte to toyle and ſweate, becauſe they neuer came neere the places.

Monſferrat not ſo well ſeated as Mantua.

Monſferrat is one way as great as *Mantua*; but vneuen, rugged and drie, by reaſon of the Mountaines.

Vnder the Empires declynation, conquered by our *Charlemaigne*, the moſt part of the Gouernours of the Citties and Prouinces, poſſeſſed themſelues of their Gouernments, and became Maiſters (as we haue ſaid) of *Saxonie*, of *Sauoye*, and of the Duchy of *Millayne* vnder the Order of *Orleans*; the ſelfe ſame fortune befell the Eſtate of *Mantua*. For I finde that the Emperour *Otho*, Second of the name, made there Gouernour (in hereditarie Fiefe) *Thetaldo*, Count of *Canoſſa*, whoſe Ligne continued ſo long, as to the yeare One thouſand, two hundred and twenty, when *Ezzelino* of *Padua*, was expulſed by the Viſcounte of *Goita*, from whoſe race the *Bonacoſſy* got poſſeſſion of *Mantua*, and held it vntill the yeare One thouſand, three hundred and nineteene, when *Paſſarino Bonacoſſy* was deſpoyled of this Eſtate by *Guido de Gonzaga*, Lord of *Lombardie*.

Thetaldo Count of Canoſſa.

And heere we will begin, and ſo proceede on with the Genealogie of the Lords of Mantua.

THis *Guido de Gonzaga*, Lord of *Lombardie*, had a Sonne named

1. *Ludouico de Gonzaga*, who tooke the Title of Lord of *Mantua*, in the in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, three hundred, twentie and eight: And by his death

2. *Guido* his ſonne was Lord of *Mantua*. In this Genealogie we follow *Guydo Coquillus*, Lord of *Romenay*, who forgot to obſerue the Alliances or Mariages of the Princes of *Mantua*, one of the moſt eſſentiall perticularities belonging to an Hiſtorie: which we will labour to make amends for in our Second Impreſſion, if God vouchſafe life and health. *Guido* deceaſſed in the yeare One thouſand, three hundred, threeſcore and nine, leauing for ſucceſſour

3. *Ludouico* (whom we call *Lewes* in *Frenche*) Second of the name, and who died in the yeare One thouſand, three hundred, foureſcore and two, leauing the Seigneury of *Mantua* to his Son

4 *Fran-*

4. *Franceſco*. In whoſe time *Coquillus* ſpeaketh of a Famous Duello or Combate, betweene *Galeoto de Gonzaga*, a man of of Giant-like ſtature, and *Bouchicault*, of very meane forme and making, who being vanquiſhed, made a vowe, neuer to weare any Cuirats in warre or fight, but to be armed only with his Coate of Armes. This is the ſame *Geoffrey Bouchicault*, Sirnamed the *Leane*, the moſt wiſe and worthieſt Knight of his time, who was Gouernour of *Geneway* for the Kings *Charles* the Fift and Sixt; who had the Victory againſt *Galeoto de Gonzaga* in ſingle Combate, ſo ſaith *John le Feron*, who giueth him for Armes *D'Argent a l'Aigle eſploye de Gueules, Armé & Lampaſſé d'Azur, briſé en l'Eſtomach d'vne Fleur de Lys d'Or.* He was Marſhall of *France*, and in thoſe times then, there were but two Offices, the very greateſt of *France*, which were not giuen, but to perſons of great Seruice, and men of honeſtie, and not to ſtrangers, Cowardes and Cullions. The Sirname of *Leane* giuen to the ſaid Marſhall *Bouchicault*, approueth, that he was of meane Stature, and not Giant-like, and giuen him truely by *Coquillus*. By the death of *Franceſco*, happening the eight day of March One thouſand, foure hundred and ſeauen; his Sonne

5. *John Franceſco* ſucceeded him. He was created the firſt hereditary Marqueſſe of *Mantua*, and perpetuall Vicare of the Holy Empire, by the Emperour *Sigiſmond*, the two and Twentieth day of September, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, thirty and three, in the Grand *Piazza* of *Mantua*, before the Cathedrall Church of Saint *Peter*. And for a noate of this Inueſtiture, he aboliſhed the auncient Armes of the *Gonzagues*, *Qui portions de Sable a Trois Moutons d'Argent accornez & vnlrinez d'Or, Et leur donna d'Argent, a la Croix patee de Gueules, Cantonnee de Quatre Aigles de Sable, Armez & Lampaſſez de Gueules.* They haue added thereunto *Vn Eſcu en Abiſme de Gueules a vn Lyon d'Or, a Trois Feſſes de Sable.* And conſequently, a mixture of Armes by Mariages, in ſtead of Armes Ieſſe charged, which alwayes are the beſt and faireſt. For when Armes paſſe Eight Quarters, and Foure in the bottome are Twelue, and come to Sixeteene, to Thirtie two (I haue ſeene to farre as to Threeſcore and Foure) this is diſorder, and foule confuſion. *John* the Firſt Marqueſſe of *Mantua* died the Three and twentieth day of September, One thouſand, foure hundred, forty and foure, leauing Foure Children,

6. *Ludouico*, Third of the name, Hereditarie in the Marquiſate of *Mantua*.

Charles, Lord of *Bozzolo* and of *Gazuolo*.

Alexander, Lord of *Canedo*, and of *Rondodiſco*; And

John, Lord of *Rodigo*, and of *Capriana*.

Ludouico the Third died the twelfth day of Iune, in the yeare One thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and eighteene leauing Fiue Children,

Frederico, Marqueſſe,

Franceſco. / *John Franceſco* } Partaged at one Lot, with charge to ſucceed one another.

Rodolpho; / *Ludouico* } And Portioned as the two other, and with the ſame conditions.

7. *Frederico*, Marqueſſe of *Mantua*, tooke to Wife *Margaret*, Daughter to the Duke of *Bauaria*, *Qui porte de Bauieres qui eſt Lozange d'Argent & d'Azur en Bande, Eſcartele du Palatinat, qui eſt de Sable au Lyon d'Or Coronne, Armé & Lampaſſé de Gueules, & ſur le Tout de Gueules à vn Monde Croiſé d'Or.* Of this Marriage deſcended three Sonnes.

Franceſco.

Sigiſmondo, Cardinall: And

John.

Frederigo, Standard-Bearer for the Church againſt the *Venetians*, vnder the Pope *Sixtus Quartus*, deceaſſed the Third day of Iuly, One thouſand, foure hundred, foureſcore and foure, and left for Succeſſour in the Eſtate of *Mantua*, his Eldeſt Sonne

8. *Franceſco*, Second of the name, who eſpouſed *Iſabella*, Daughter to *Hercules d'Eſte*, Second Duke of *Ferrara*: we haue already obſerued the Armes of this Family *d'Eſte* (*Ateſtenſium Familia*) by whom hee had three Sonnes and a Daughter;

Frederico.

Herculeo, Cardinall of *Mantua.*

Ferdinando: And

Eleanora, Wife to *Francesco Maria de la Rouere*, Duke of *Vrbin*., Lord of *Pezaro*, who bare in Armes *D'Azur a vn Rouure, ou Chesne fourche d'Or*.

Francesco was elected *Gonfalonniero* of *Venice*, that is to say, Captaine Generall for the Army of Potentates in *Italie*, against King *Charles* the Eight, returning to his Kingdome of *Naples*: who in the Battaile at *Fornoue*; trode the Honour of this Leagued Armie in the dust. Afterward, he was at the seruice of King *Lewes* the Twelfth, who (according to the testimony of *Guichardine*, in the Seuenth Booke of his Historie) did him the Honour, to beare the Standard of the Order of Saint *Michaell*, in the yeare, One thousand, fiue hundred and seauen, which no man had caried since the Reigne of King *Lewes* the Eleuenth. He died the nine and twentieth day of March, One thousand, fiue hundred, and nineteene, and then succeeded his Eldest Sonne,

9. *Frederico*, Second of the name, who tooke to Wife *Margaret*, Daughter to *William Paleologus*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*. *Qui portoit de Constantinople, qui est de Gueules à la Croix plaine d'Or, Cantonnee de quatre B. que nous disons Fuzils adossez de mesme, Escartele de Montferrat.* And in this marriage were borne Foure Sonnes and One Daughter.

Francesco. *Gulielmo.* } Dukes.

Ludouico, Duke of *Neuers*, and of *Rethelois*, maried in *France* to Madame *Henrietta de Cleues*: And of this marriage issued *Charles de Gonzaga*, Duke of *Neuers* and of *Rethelois*.

Frederico: And

Isabella, Wife to *Ferdinand Daualos*, Marquesse of *Pescara*. They of the House of *Daualos*, are descended of an Infant of *Nauarre*, Lords of Saint *Foelix de Daualos*, who bare first *Escartele d'Or, & de Gueules*: And afterward *D'Azur au Chasteau d'Or, à la Bordure componnee d'Or & de Gueules*. After *Don Ruy Lopez Daualos*, to whom the King of *Castile Henry* the Third, gaue the Castell of Gold for Armes, by making him Lord High Constable of *Castile*.

Frederico the Second, of Marquesse, was made the first Duke of *Mantua*, by the Emperour *Charles* the Fift, after One Thousand, Fiue Hundred and Forty, And after him succeeded his eldest Sonne,

10. *Francesco*, Third of name, Second Duke of *Mantua*; who by *Katherina*, Daughter to the Emperour *Ferdinand*, had not any issue, and drowned himselfe in the Riuer of *Menzo*, in the yeare One thousand, fiue hundred and fifty. By his death, his Brother

11. *Gulielmo* was third Duke of *Mantua*, and by the death of *Margaret Paleologus* his Mother, Marquesse of *Montferrat*: for which contestation was made by the Duke of *Sauoye Emanuell Phillebert*, who maintained before the Emperour *Charles* the Fift, that the Marquisate of *Montferrat* appertained to to him by three meanes.

First, that *Charles*, First of the name, Duke of *Sauoye*, espoused *Blanche*, Daughter to *William Paleologus*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*. And it was couenanted by the contract of this mariage, that if the Masculine Ligne of *Paleologus*, should fall to the Feminine or distaffe; that the Marquisate of *Montferrat* should then come to the House of *Sauoye*, and to the Heires of the said *Blanche Paleologus*.

The second meane, that by the same contract of mariage, this clause was expressely set downe: That if the dowry of an Hundred Thousand Crownes (promised in mariage with this *Blanche*) were not payed to the said Duke *Charles* at the time appointed; in case of such defayllance, the Marquisate should be deliuered to him.

Now, the third and last, that the Marquesse being bereft of his Marquisate by the Duke of *Millayne*, vpon whom he made warre; the said *Charles* of *Sauoye* (his Sonne in Law) raysed an Army, by meanes whereof, he re-seated the Marquesse his Father in Law in his inheritance. And to pay the wadges of this Army, he had furnished him with great summes of money, whereof he neuer had any repayment, being alwaies fed with hope of future enioying the Marquisate of *Montferrat*.

Not-

Notwithstanding all these reasons, *Charles* the fift adiudged the *Marquisate* to the Duke of *Mantua*, in fauour of whom, he had erected the *Marquisate* into a Dukedome. To conclude, this Duke *Gulielmo* marryed *Leonora*, daughter to the King of *Romaines Ferdinand*, Brother to *Charles* the fift. This *Ferdinand Portoit au premier et quatriesme d'Austriche Moderne, au De xiesme de Bourgongne ancienne party de Moderne, et le Troisiesme de Boeme*. And in this marriage was borne their only Son

Vincentio, Duke of *Mantua* and of *Montferrat*, who in first marriage espoused *Margareta Ferneze*, daughter to *Alexander Ferneze*, Duke of *Parma*. The *Fernezes* carryed first in Armes, *D'Or à Six Fleurs de Lys d'Azur 3. 2. 1.* And after that they of this house were made Dukes of *Parma*, and *Placentia*, and became allied to the Bastard daughter of the Emperor *Charles* the fift. the Dukes of *Parma* then *Porte l'Escu party en Trois. Au premier d'Or à Six Fleurs de Lys* (disposed as we haue already said) *Couppe d'Austriche moderne, party de Bourgongne ancienne, Le Troisiesme d'Austriche moderne, Party de Bourgongne ancien, couppe de Farneze, deserte que les Premier et Troisiesme parts sont Escartelez.* And that in the midst *De Gueules à vne lance d'Or sommee d'vn Ombelle et Pauillon d'Azur frange d'Or à deux Clefs d'Argent passees en Saulteir sur la Lance.*

In second marriage he had *Eleanora* daughter to *Frances* the Great Duke of *Tuscanie*: and of this marriage are issued.

Francesco, who by *Margaret* of *Sauoy* his wife, hath left but one daughter. and it was for the marriage of this *Frances* and *Margaret*, that the Duke *Vincentio* instituted the *Order of the Blood of Iesu Christ*.

Ferdinando, first Knight of *Malta*, Prior of *Barleta*, and Cardinall, and at this present Duke of *Mantua*, and of *Montferrat*, by the death of his father, and of *Francesco*, dying in the life time of the Duke his father: And

N. Wife to *Henry*, Duke of *Lorraine*, and *de Bar*, Father and mother of one onely daughter.

Let vs now come to the house of *Montferrat*, which hath beene one of the most Illustrious and auncient in Christendome, and which tooke Source and Originall in the person of:

The Originall and Genealogie of the House of Montferrat.

Vigebert, who was Duke of *Saxonie* in the yeare of Grace, eight hundred and fortie. Heere may the Noble minded Reader, (at one motion, without making any more) obserue, that there is a High and Low *Saxonie*. Those of the higher *Portoient de Gueules au Cheual gay tourne d'Argent, party de Face d'Or, et de Sable de Six pieces à la Coronne de Rue, perie en Bande de Synople*, as we haue many time said already. And the Armes of the lower *Saxonie* are *D'Or, seme de Cœurs de Gueules au Lyon rempant d'Azur*.

Vigebert had two Sonnes, as namely *Ludolphe* Duke of *Saxonie*, father to *Otho* Duke of *Saxonie*; father to *Henry* the Birder, Emperour; father to *Otho* the first Emperour; father to *Otho* the second, &c. as wee haue declared in the Genealogie of *Sauoy*. The other Sonne of *Vigebert* was

Valbert, Duke of *Angria*, father to *Vindo*, Duke of *Angria*; Father of *William*, Duke of *Angria*, Father of

1. *Aledramo*, made and created first Marquesse of *Montferrat*, of *Saluces*; of *Clues*; of *Sauona*; of *Turee*; of *Finall*; and of *Thurine* by the Emperour *Otho*, second of the name, making marriages of *Adelaida* his daughter, with this *Aledramo*, to whom hee gaue for Armes *De Gueules an Chef d'Argent*. which hapned in the yeare of Grace nine hundred, threescore and eighteene. Of *Aledramo* and *Adelaida* of *Saxonie* his wife, were borne. The first Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

II. *Boniface*, second Marquesse of *Montferrat* by the death of his father, and dying vnmarryed in the yeare, nine hundred, foure score and fifteene, his Brother

III. *William* was third Marquesse of *Montferrat*, who tooke to wife (if wee may beleeue *Coquillus*) *Helan*, daughter to the Duke of *Glocester* in *England*, who was brother to *Richard*, King of *England*. Wherein the good man is grossely mistaken, because *William the* Bastard conquered not the Realme of *England*, vntill the yeare of Grace, one thousand

thousand threescore and seauen, in the time of *King Philip*, first of the name, as we haue before shewen vnder the Order of *England*, Page 40. of the second Volume, and at the time of this *William*, Maquesse of *Montferrat*, *Gloucester* was but a Countie, and the Kings of *England* after *Adulphe*, vntill the time of *William* the Bastard, bare in Armes *D' Azur à la Croix Fleurdelisee d'Or, Cantonnee de Quatre Merlettes, et vn en Poincte de mesme*, as wee haue said in the place before alleadged. In this marriage was borne

IV. *Boniface*, second of the name, Marquesse of *Montferrat* by the death of his Father, hapning in the yeare of Grace, one thousand, fiftie and three. *Coquillus* giueth him to Wife, *Mary*, daughter to King *Philip* the first, wherin hee is deceiued; because that King had but two children by Queene *Bertha* his wife, daughter to *Florent*, Counte of *Frieze* and of *Holland*, to wit

King *Lewes la Gros*, sixt of the name:
And

Madam *Constance* of *France*, twice marryed, first to *Hugh*, the Count of *Champagne*; And secondly, to *Bæmond*, Prince of *Antioch*, eldest Sonne to *Robert Guiscard*, the Prince of *Salerne*, issued of the Dukes of *Normandie*.

The same King *Philip*, hauing (without any cause) diuorced his, Queene & entertained (to very euill example) *Bertrada*, the dissolute wife of *Foulques Rechin*, Count of *Aniou*, and in this Concubinage he had by her two Sons, *Phillip* and *Henry*, who had both bad ending; and one onely daughter named *Cecilie*, twice marryed. First to *Tancred* (Nephew to *Bæmond*, Sonne in Law to the same King *Philip*) Gouernour of the Principalitie, which is called in the Kingdome of *Naples*, and designed vnder the Order of *Aniou*. And in second marriage she espoused *Pontius* of *Tripoly*, Sonne to *Bertrand*, Count of *Tripoly*, issued from the Auncient Countes of *Tolosa*. Here are all the Children of *Phillip*, vnder whose Reigne was attempted that memorable Conquest of the holy-Land, by the *French* Princes. Without further contending, what, or who the wife of *Boniface* the second was; he is recorded to be the Father of three Sonnes, as namely of

William, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.
Arditius, Father of another *Arditius*, dying without any issue; And of
Henry, Father of *Bernard*, deceasing likewise without issue.

V. *William*, second of the name, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, marryed *Maria*, daughter to the Emperour *Lotharie*, second of the name; so saith *Coquillus*, who is therein mistaken. Because the Emperor *Lothaire* had but one onely daughter named *Gertrude*, wife to *Henry*, Duke of *Bauaria*, to whom she brought in marriage the Duchie of *Saxonie*. This *William* deceasing in the yeare of Grace, one thousand, threescore and fourteene, left for heire and Successour in the Marquisate of *Montferrat*:

VI. *Raynier*, who by *Bonna* of *Sauoy* his wife (her Armes are before often-times remembred) had

VII. *William*, third of the name, called the *Aged*, to distinguish him from other children bearing the same name: who was Marquesse of *Montferrat* by the death of his Father, which hapned in the yeare, one thousand, one hundred twenty and seauen. He had two wiues and no more; the first was *Othina*, daughter to the Emperour *Fredericke*, first of the name, surnamed *Barbarossa*, but by her he had no issue. The second was *Iulia*, otherwise called *Iudith*, who was wife to the Marquesse of *Austria Leopolde*. She bare in Armes *D'Azur seme de Cailles d'Or sans nombre*: for hee had ten in the moitie of his Armes, and it is accounted and said to be *Sans nombre*, when they exceede 16. By this 2. marriage he had an Illustrious and goodly issue, to wit, 4. Sons, and three daughters, which were

Iourdana, who was Empresse.
Agnes, wife to the Lord of *Mirandola* in *Italie*: And *Alexia*.

The Sonnes in order were
Conrad.
William.
Raynier: And
Boniface.

Conrad, King of Ierusalem, in regard that as the Marquesse *William* the third, was one among the Principals in the Armie of the Christian Princes, which passed in the voiage ouer the Seas, when the Emperour of *Greece Emanuell*, poysoned the Meale which he furnished, to make the aduenture of the Latine Christians

Rians fruitlesse: euen so in the voyage attempted by the same Latine Christian Princes, for the holy Land, changed from Conquest of the Grecian Empire, (described at large by the Seneschall of *Champaigne*, *Geoffrey de Villeharduin*) *Conrad* of *Montferrat* and his Brethren went in the Croisiade of this remarkeable voyage. This *Conrad* was first Duke of *Ascalon* in *Palestine*, and afterward King of *Ierusalem*, in the right of his wife *Isibel*, sister to King *Bauldwine* the Meazeled or Leper, Fourth of the name, as we haue noted in our first Tome, and in the Order of *Aniou*, Page. 509. And in this marriage was borne their onely daughter

Mary of *Montferrat*, wife to *John de Brenne*, a French man, the most valiant and aduenturous Knight in his time. Which *Conrad* bare for Armes *De Ierusalem Escartele de Montferrat*. Hee was murdered in the Cittie of *Acres*, by one of the Schollers of *Le Vieil de la Montagne*; Of *Mary* of *Montferrat*, and *John de Brenne*, wee haue formerly obserued the descent of two daughters, which the curteous Readers may see in the Page fore-mentioned, and them following.

VIII. *William*, Fift of the name, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, Sirnamed *Long-Sword*, who performed wonders beyond the Seas: he tooke to wife *Sybilla*, eldest Sister to *Bauldwine* the meazeled, in which marriage was borne

Baldwine, King of *Ierusalem*, (Fift of the name) by the death of his Vncle: yet he reigned but eight Moneths, and dyed at the age of two yeares.

Raynier the third Sonne, espoused *Laure Maria*, daughter to *Emanuell*, and Sister to *Alexis* and *Isaack*, Emperors of *Constantinople*: Which Empire was wun by the *French* and *Venetians*, ioyned together for this common Conquest, the twelfth day of *Aprill*, One thousand two hundred and foure. By his wiues right he was King of *Thessalie*; and shee bare the Armes of the East, which are *De Gueules a l'Aigle esploye d'Or, Brisé sur l'Estomach de Constantinople*. Hee dyed without issue.

IX *Boniface*, Third of the name, and Fourth Sonne to *William* the third (*Coquillus* giueth him a fift Sonne, whom he nameth *Otho* the Cardinall, but I cannot finde him in the *Germaine* Chronicle, which mee thinkes should bee more certaine, then his iudgement) who after the Conquest of *Constantinople*, was made Duke of *Candy*, which Isle he sold to the *Venetians*. After the death of his Brother *Raynier*, hee styled himselfe King of *Thessalie*, and succeeded (by the death of his Father) in the Marquisate of *Montferrat*, and was the ninth Marquesse.

He espoused *Margaret*, daughter to the King of *Hungary* in second marriage (for by his first wife, youngest Sister to the Emperours *Alexis* and *Isaack*, hee had not any children) but in this marriage, he had two Sons and a daughter.

1. *William*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.
2. *Demetrius*, King of *Thessalonia*, who by the daughter to the *Dauphine* of *Viennois* his wife, had no children.
3. *Alexina*, wife to *Mainefroy*, a Bastard, vsurper ouer *Sicily*. Their mother *Margaret Portoit de Hongrie, qui est Face d'Argent et de Gueules de Huict pieces*.

X *William*, Fift of the name, tenth Marquesse of *Montferrat*, tooke to wife, *Mary* daughter to *Boniface*, Marquesse of *Saluces*. By his wife, *Qui Portoit de Gueules au Chef d'Argent*, he had one Sonne.

XI. *Boniface*, Fourth of the name, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, Sirnamed the Giant, for his great stature: who by *Agnes* of Sauoye his wife, daughter to *Amadis*, Count of *Sauoy*, first of the name, had one Sonne and two daughters.

Beatrix, marryed foure seuerall times. The first was to the *Daulphine* of *Viennois*: The second to the Lord of *Baugie*: The third to the Lord of *Geneua*: And in fourth marriage to the Lord of *Retheliu*.

Alexina, who was neuer marryed.
The Sonne was

XII. *William*, Sixt of the name, who had two wiues. The 1. was *Isabel*, daughter to the Duke of *Yorke*, *Qui Portoit d'Angleterre à la Bordure engreslee d'Argent*, but by her he had no child. In secõd marriage he espoused *Beatrix*, daughter to *Alphonso*, King of *Castille*, tenth of the name, called the *Wise*: And in this marriage was borne

Margaret, daughter to *Dom Iohn de la Cerda*, last Son to the Infant of *Spayne*, *Dom Ferdinando de la Cerda*, eldest Son to *Alphonso*, called the *Wise*, King of *Castille* and *Leon*,

XIII. *Iohn*

John, sirnamed the *Iust*, last Marquesse of *Montferrat* of the masculine ligne, descended of *Aledramo*, the first Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

Alexina, married in the House of the *Vrsini*.

Yoland, called by the *Greekes*, *Irene*, Princesse of Peace, wife to the Emperour of *Greece Andronicus Paleologus*, to whom she brought in marriage the title of the Kingdome of *Thessalie*, and of whom, the race held very long time the Marquisate of *Montferrat*.

XIII. *John*, last Marquesse of *Montferrat* of the masculine descent, espoused *Margaret*, Daughter to *Amadis*, fourth of the name, Count of *Sauoye*, Duke of *Chablais* and of *Augusta*. He dyed without issue, in the yeare, one thousand foure hundred fourescore and twelue; ordaining by his will, and naming for his Heires in the Marquisate of *Montferrat*, and the appurtenances thereto, his Sister, the Empresse of *Greece*, and her Children. For whom he substituted *Alexina* his Sister, and the *Vrsini* her Children. And in defect of them, he called for his Heires the Children of his Sister *Margaret*, wife to the Infant of *Castile*, and their Children. All which failing, he called to this substitution *Mainfroy* of *Saluces*, descended of *Boniface*, Marquesse of *Saluces*, his Cousine by name and Armes. To which *Mainfroy* hee left the Gouernment of *Montferrat*, in the name of the Empresse his Sister, and for her Children.

In the Mariage of *Andronicus Paleologus*, Emperour of *Constantinople*, and the Empresse *Yoland* of *Montferrat* were borne many Children, among whom was

The race of *Paleologus* in the Marquisate of *Montferrat*.

XIIII. *Theodosius Paleologus*, who in the right of his Mother, was the thirteenth Marquesse of *Montferrat*. *Porta de l'Empire d'Orient Brisé de Constantinople, Escartelé de Montferrat*. In which House he hath left the Armes of the Empire of *Greece*, retained by them which are of her name and descent in the Sirname of *Mantua*. He passed from *Greece* to *Montferrat*, in the yeare One thousand three hundred and fiue, vnder charge and conduct of one of the principall Lords of *Geneway*, named *Opicino Spinola*, with whose Daughter *Argentina* hee married (the Armes of *Spinola* we haue before emblazoned.) And in this mariage were borne

Yoland of *Montferrat*, wife to *Aymon*, Count of *Geneway*. And

XV. *John*, second of the name, Marquesse of *Montferrat* by the death of his Father: which was in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred thirtie and eight. By his first wife *Cecilie*, Countesse *d'Estrac*, Daughter to the Count of *Commenges* (*Qui portoit de Gueulles à Trois Oostelles d'Argent en Saultoir.*) He left no issue. In second marriage he tooke to wife *Dogna Isabella*, Daughter to *Dom Iaymes* King of *Arragon*, sister to the King of *Maiorica*, named *Dom Iaymes*.

And in this mariage were borne three Children, successiuely Marquesses of *Montferrat*:

The Armes of *Maiorica* are those of *Arragon*; *A la Bande de Synople brochant sur le Tout*. The first Sonne of this mariage was

XVI. *Secondotus*, who left no issue by *Yoland*, Daughter to the Vicount *Galeazzo*, Duke of *Millaine*, and *Blanch* of *Sauoye*.

XVII. *John*, third of the name, deceasing in the yeare, One thousand three hundred threescore and eighteene: And

XVIII. *Theodorus Paleologus*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, who was by the Emperour *Sigismona* (in the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and one) established and ordained Vicar of the Empire. He had no issue by *Margaret*, Daughter to *Lewes*, Prince of *Achaya*. By his other wife *Iane*, daughter to *Robert* Duke *de Bar*, *Qui portoit d'Azur aux Croix recroisettees au pied fiche d'Or à deux Bars* (or *Barbeaux*) *adossez de mesme*; he had

Sophia, wife to the Emperor of *Greece*, *John Paleologus*: And

XIX. *Iames John*, who by his wife *Iane*, Daughter to the Count of *Sauoye Amadis*, Sonne of *Aymon*, had foure Sons and two Daughters.

John, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

William, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

Theodorus, created Cardinall by Pope *Paul*, second of the name.

Boniface, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

The two Daughters were

Isabel wife to *Lewes*, Marquesse of *Saluces*: And

Amadea, who married with *John*, King of *Ierusalem*, *Armenia*, and *Cyprus*.

XX. *John Paleologus*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, fourth of the name, by Margaret, Daughter to *Lewes* Duke of *Sauoye*, he had no childe: And by his death, happening in the yeare, One thousand foure hundred threescore and foure

XXI. *William*, seauenth of the name, his Brother, was Marquesse of *Montferrat* who in first mariage had to wife Madam *Mary* of *Nauarre*, daughter to *Gaston*, who was Prince of *Nauarre*, Soueraigne of *Bearn*, Count of *Begorre*, and of *Foix*, &c. In this mariage was borne one onely Daughter, named

Iane Paleologus, married to the Marquesse of *Saluces Lewes*, and by this contract of mariage it was couenanted namely, that she and hers should succeede in the Marquisate of *Montferrat*, if that *Boniface Paleologus*, her Vnckle, deceased without issue.

In second marriage, the said *William* the Marquesse espoused *Elizabeth*, Daughter to the Duke of *Millaine*, *Frances Sforza*, and by her he had a Daughter

Blanch, married to the Duke of *Sauoye*, *Charles*, as we haue before declared.

XXII. *Boniface* fift of the name, was Marquesse of *Montferrat* by the death of his Brother *William*, deceasing without Heire masle. He was twise married; first to *Mary*, daughter to *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, by whom he had one Sonne

William Paleologus, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

In second marriage hee had *Felicia*, Daughter to *George Castriot*, called *Scanderberg*, King of *Albania*, *Despot* of *Seruia*. *Qui portoit de Gueulles au Pal d'Azur (pour enquerir) charge de trois Chasteaux d'Or, Maçonnees de Sable l'vn sur l'autre, le dit Pal Cantonné de quatre Pals d'argent sur fond de Rouge.* And to this Marriage was borne

John George, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

XXIII. *William*, eight of the name, was Marquesse of *Montferrat* by the death of his Father, which happned in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fourescore and thirteene. Hee had to wife *Anne*, Daughter to *Rhene* Duke of *Alanson*, *Qui portoit de France à la Bordure de Gueulles chargee de Huict Bezans d'Argent*. And in this marriage was borne a Sonne and a Daughter

Boniface, Marquesse of *Montferrat*.

Margaret Paleologus, Lady Marquesse of *Montferrat*, wife to *Fredericke*, second of the name, first Duke of *Mantua*. By the death of *William*, eight of the name, succeeded in the Marquisate of *Montferrat*, his Sonne

XXIV. *Boniface*, sixt of the name, who being at a Tournement, was beaten from off his Horse, and his body so grieuously buised thereby, that he died, being neuer married, and left the Marquisate to his Vnckle

XXV. *John George*, who deceasing likewise vnmarried, the Marquisate of *Montferrat* fell to his Niece, Sister to *Boniface* the sixt

XXVI. *Margaret Paleologus*, and by her the said Marquisate is melted into the Ducall House of *Mantua*, as we haue elsewhere said. The Capitall Citie of this Marquisate is *Casilinum*, a strong Towne, garnished with good Wals, and well accoasted.

The End of the Eight Booke.

The

A Briefe Historicall Relation,

Concerning the sundry Orders of the *Holy-Land*: And likewise of the East and West *Indiaes*.

The Ninth Booke.

CHAP. I.

A Summarie Discourse, Reporting the severall Voyages made into the East parts, by the Princes and Paladines of France.

The errours and false reports of some *French* Chroniclers.

THE *Martinian* Chronicles, stuffed with lyes and old wives tales (which the good honest man *Nicholas Gyles*, one of our Moderne Annalists, hath taken for currant Siluer, and money of the best allaye) doe recount vnto vs, that our first Christian King the Great *Clouis*, was in *Ierusalem*; and that (by his example) our King *Clotis*, second of the name (Sonne to *Dagobert*, Restorer of Saint *Denys* in *France*) made the same Voyage, for conquering the Holy Land, where he remained seauen yeares; during which time, he became Maister of the Holy Citie. Of the same temper as those *Martinian* Chroniclers, is the fabulous Romancer *Turpin*, Archbishop of *Rheimes*, perswaded by the same *Nicholas Gyles*, with a false and imagined Voyage beyond the Seas, of our King and Emperour *Charlemaigne*, who being misse-led in a Forrest of two dayes Iourney long, was holpen and brought into the direct roade-way, by Birds which spake *French*, like to the Parrat of *Persia*, that was wont (in the *Greeke* language) to salute the *Romaine* Emperour. These are meere trifling Tales, and we haue obserued in some one place of these Noble Recherches, that a passage of Saint *Gregory* of *Tours* (ill pointed, and worse vnderstood) yeelded subiect to all these idle bablings.

Turpin Archbishop of *Rheimes*.

Our Kings of the first and second Lignes, were neuer in the Holy-Land. S. *Gregorie* of *Tours*, his Continuer, the Monke *Aimonius*, and other Authours of those times, would not haue failed to noate it, as being one of the most important points in an History, not to forget Voyages of Princes, forth of their Estates & Kingdomes, which they would be sure neuer to vndertake, but vpon some especiall and signale subiect. *Eginhard*, who at large hath described the life of our King *Charlemaigne*, with all the circumstances and perticularities, maketh no mention of any such Voyage, no more then the other Historians haue done.

The Kings of *France* of the first and second ligne neuer went to the Holy Land.

The Monke of *Aimonius*, in his fourth Booke of the History of *France*, the seauen and fifth Chapter, following the continuer of Saint *Gregorie* of *Tours*, saith; That the Pope Saint *Gregorie*, sent to *Charles Martell*, Prince and Duke of the *French* (by a sollemne Ambassadour) *The Keyes of the Holy Sepulcher*, and some Linkes of the bonds and Chaines of Saint *Peter*, Prince of the Apostles, which happened in the yeare of

The Keyes of the Holy Sepulcher sent to Charles Martel.

of Grace seauen hundred thirty and fiue, as in the same history is more at large discoursed.

Moreouer, that in the yeare seauen hundred, foureſcore and nineteene, *Thomas* the Patriarch of Ierusalem, sent one of his Monkes to our Emperour *Charlemaigne* with many Reliques. And the yeare following, a little before hee was Crowned Emperour at *Rome*; *Zachary*, Chiefe Chaplaine of his Chappell, returned from the holy Land; for hee had carryed his Almes thither, as it is written in the fourth Booke of his Capitularies; among those memories which this Emperour wrote in his writing Tables, of things that he intended to doe (as well in publike as particularly) all the whole yeare.

Thomas the Patriarch of Ierusalem.

Among which memories, is to bee seene this which followeth in the fiue and thirtieth Article. *De Eleemosyne mitten da in Hierusalem propter Ecclesias Dei restaurandas, in Proximo Natali Domini.* According to which Article, hee had sent the said *Zachary* his chiefe Almoner, who at his returne from *Ierusalem*, came to meete him at *Rome*, accompanied with two Monkes of beyond the Seas, the one named *Georg*, Abbot of Mount *Oliuet* in *Ierusalem*, an *Almaine* Gentleman, and called *Engelband* before his profession; and the other was called *Felix*, Abbot of Saint *Sabba* in *Bethelem*. These two men sent from the Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, brought with them to *Charlemaigne* a part of the true Crosse, the Keyes of the holy Sepulcher, pieces of the Rockes and Mountaines of *Oliuet* and *Caluarie*, with the *Gonfannon* of *Ierusalem* (which was a Banner or foure square Flagge of Sendale, that is to say of white Silke, *Tissue à vne Croix pattee, Cantannee de Quatre Croisettes plaines de Soye Rouge, pareillement Tissue*, representing the fiue wounds of the worlds Sauiour) with a most ample declaration, how the Patriarch and Christians in the holy Land, both acknowledged, and tooke him to be their Prince, Protectour and Benefactor, to whom they heartily wished all honour, health and victorie.

Almes sent to Ierusalem by the Empreour *Charlemaigne*.

The *Gonfannon* of Ierusalem.

With those Abbots came *Abdella*, Ambassadour and *Chiotes* from *Aaron*, King of *Persia* (the Chronicle of *Laureshеim* Abbey in the Diocesse of *Mentz*, calleth him *Amarumlus*, and recordeth this to be done vnder the yeare eight hundred and one; but that of Saint *Cibar* in *Engoulesme*, speaketh of the yeare eight hundred and seauen) a *Sarracen* descended of the race of *Homar*, Nephew to the false Prophet *Mahumet*. This *Aaron* King of *Persia* and *Ierusalem*, hearing the renowne of one *Charlemaigne*, desired to haue his fauour and friendship, and for mediation thereof, hee sent this *Chaous* with diuers presents, to witte; an Elephant, which they called *Abulabas*, sent by *Charlemaigne* to be kept in his City of *Aix La Chapelle*, where this beast was liuing in the yeare eight hundred and tenne. He sent also costly Spices, Perfumes and sweete smelling Sauours, with sundry Silkes, a rich Pauillion of *Gaza*, beside Tents and Cabinets of vnspeakeable value, two Candlesticks of Massie Gold, and a Clocke of admirable Arte and workemanship, because the twelue houres of the night and day, were smitten by as many Bullets of Brasse, descending vpon the Clocke-Bell before the houres were smitten, giuing passage to twelue Armed Knights out at twelue windows, which by a kind of pleasing motion (after the houre was smitten) closed the windowes againe whereat they issued forth.

Presents sent to the Empereour *Charlemaigne* from the king of Persia.

With this *Abdella* came a Iewe, named *Isaack*, sent by the same *Charlemaigne* (foure yeares before) to the said *Aaron*, King of *Persia*, and to *Abrahim*, the great *Miramomelin* of *Affrica*, to obtaine of them more milde and gentle vsage of the poore Christians, dwelling in the Countries vnder their obedience, to whom this great Prince had sent very liberall Almes, for repayring the Churches, hallowed places, and relieuing their necessities.

Abrahim, the Miramomolin of Affrica.

About this time, to witte, in the yeare eight hundred and two, the Empresse of *Constantinople Irene*, sent to the same *Charlemaigne*, *Leo*, her Grand *Spatharie*, to confirme the peace betweene the *French* and *Greekes*, who (saith the Chronicle of *Laureshеim*) feared least *Charlemaigne* would intrude vpon those Lands in *Italie*, which were vnder their obedience. This *Irene* being a Widdow, and acquainted certainely with the death of *Hildegarde*, wife to *Charlemaigne* (who dyed and was buried at *Tours*, in the yeare eight hundred:) practised vnder hand (as wee vse to say) to ioyne in marriage with *Charlemaigne*. Hereupon she sent vnto him very rare

Irene the Empresse of *Constantinople* seeketh to warre with *Charlemaigne*.

presents, to witte, *One of the foure Nayles*, wherewith the Sauiour of the world was fastened to the Tree of the Crosse. The same Smocke, which the Blessed Virgine did weare, at such time as she conceiued the fruite of Life, after the Saluration deliuered by the Angell. One of the armes of Saint *Simeon*, who receiued our Sauiour in his Armes on the day of his Circumcision. The Cuppe wherein King *Salomon* vsed to drinke, and diuers other pretious Reliques, which *Charlemaigne* caused to be kept in his Chappell at *Aix* in *Germany*, from whence they were afterward taken and transported into *France*, by the Emperour *Charles* the Bauld, who hauing made choice of his buriall place at S. *Denys* in *France* (where yet it is to bee seene fairely raised of Brasse, within the Monkes Quire) there he gaue the Nayle, the Arme of S. *Simeon*, the drinking Cup of *Salomon*, and the rest of the Reliques, and there they remaine in the same Church to this day.

Diuers pretious Reliques sent to King *Charlemaigne* by the Empresse.

But concerning the Smocke of the Blessed Virgin, the said Emperour made a gift thereof to the Church of *Chartres*, the first that euer had beene builded in honour of the Virgin, by the wise *Druides*, fiue hundred yeares before the time of her birth. The second Church is that of *Tentouze*, at the Mount *Libanus*, so saith the Lord of *Ioinuille*, in the Life of the good King S. *Lewes*, and other Authours beside, who since then haue written on the obseruations in the Holy Land of *Palestine*.

Charlemaigne, to sweare peace with the Empereesse *Irene*, and to thanke her for so many rare gifts; send for his Ambassadours *Iesse*, Bishop of *Amiens*, and the Count *Helgande*. After which fore-noted time, our ancient Annalists make no mention, of any voyages to the holy Land, as well in regard of the troubles hapning in *France*, thorow the remissenes and negligence of *Charlemaignes* descendants; as also the warr then made in the East, which much molested and hindered the passage.

The gratitude of *Charlemaigne* to *Irene*.

For in the yeare of Grace, One thousand and twelue; vnder the Reigne of *Hugh Capet*, an accursed race of people, wilde, saluage, and cruell, knowne by the name of Turkes, issued from forth the deepes of *Scythia*, after they had embraced the doctrine of impious *Mahomet*, making their fury and barbarous nature felt in *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and other places of *Asia*, where they put all to fire and Sword, no meeting with any one, that dared to make head against them: vntill such time as the *Sarrazins*, as awaked out of a deepe lethargie or found sleepe, vnder conduct of the *Caliphe* of *Damas*, and succoured also by the *Tartares*: expulsed thence these vpstart new commers, and made them retire into a corner of *Asia*, as it is recorded by *Haytonius* the *Armenian*, in his description of *Tartaria*.

The first knowledge of the cruell and barbarous Turkes.

In the yeare of grace, one thousand, forty eight, *Daher*, Sonne to the *Caliphe* of Ægypt, hauing made a Truce with the Emperour of the Easte *Argipopillus*; *Nicephorus*, Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, and the poore Christians, resting from the fury and cruelties of the *Turkes*, who had ruinated the sacred places: caused the holy Sepulcher to be newly built, as is written by the Chancellor of the kingdome of *Ierusalem William*, Archbishop of *Tyre*, in his first Booke of the warres in the holy Land, the fift an sixt Chapters.

The holy Sepulcher newly built by the poore Christians.

Fifteene yeares after, to witte, in *Anno*, One thousand threescore and three, *Benezer Calyphe* of Egypt, gaue the fourth part of the holy City, to the Patriarch and Christians of *Ierusalem*, to be inhabited separately by themselues; for (before) they liued mingled *peste meste* among the *Sarazins*. This fourth part was afterward assigned to the Prerogatiue and Iurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, who had for Armes of his Patriarchie, *L'Escu d'Argent a la Croix Patriarchale de Gueules, Cantonce de Quatre Estoiles de mesme, et vne en Poincte*: As the Armes of the Patriarchs of new *Rome*, *Constantinople*, were *D'Azur à vne Croix Patriarchale d'Or, à Deux Estoiles de mesme en Chef, et vn Croissant d'Argent en Poincte*. By this donation of part of the City of *Ierusalem*, the Patriarches thereof came to bee acknowledged as Prince of the Christians, and from thence ensued, that the Military Orders (whereof we shall speake hereafter) confessed them for their Superiours from the beginning, and vntil such time, as they established Great Maisters ouer them.

The Patriarches Armes of Ierusalem, and Constantinople.

Fiue yeare after, to witte, in one thousand, three score and eight, the Turkes hauing vndertaken new forces, by sloathfulnesse of the Easterne Emperours *Diogenes* and *Michaell Parapinacius*: threw themselues vpon *Asia* the second time, ra[vaging]

on so farre as to the gates of *Constantinople*, got possession of *Ierusalem* and *Palestine*, exercising vpon the poore Christians, all the most barbarous cruelties that could be imagined. Which violence they continued for the space of thirtie yeares, and vntill the first passage of our *French Palladines*, vnder the Reigne of *Philip*, first of the name, King of *France*. After which time, very few yeares past, but the *French* and other Nations, (the *Spaniards* excepted, who had worke enough to doe, in fighting against the Moores) made voyages still to the holy Land for conqueste thereof, till at an instant it was vtterly lost.

Another cruell insulting of the *Turkes*.

In the Reigne then of King *Philip* the first, who succeeded in the Kingdome of *France*, by the death of King *Henry*, first of the name, his Father, which happened in the yeare, One thousand threescore and one, this remarkeable voyage beyond the Seas fell into deliberation: in regard of the tyranicall vsage, wherewith the Turkes oppressed the Christians of *Palestine*, and such Pilgrimes as came to visite the holy Sepulcher.

The voyage vndertaken for reliefe of the Christians

Peter the Hermite Priest, a Gentleman and natiue of *Amiens*, who bare in Armes *D'Azur à Trois Gerbes de Bled d'Or.* 2. 1. (I know not whether *Tristram* the Hermite, Great Prouost of the Hostell to King *Lewes* the eleuenth, were of the same Race: but he bare *D'Azure a ces Trois Gerbes d'Or, Escartele d'Argent à vne Teste de Cerf de Sable, Sommé d'Or*) hauing visited the holy places beyond the Seas; was entreated by the Christians dwelling in *Ierusalem*, *Antioch*, and other Cities of *Asia*, miserably subiected to the insupportable thraldome and slauery of those Infidels and Miscreants; to declare to the holy Father of *Rome*, and to the Christian Princes, the miseries and afflictions which they were constrained and enforced to endure. The Hermite being an eye-witnesse thereof, faithfully discharged the trust then reposed in him, he came to *Rome*, deliuered his Ambassage to the holy Father *Vrban*, 2. of the name, and at ful declared to him the iust grieuances of *Simeon*, who was then Patriarch of *Ierusalem*. The same R[emon]strances he made also to the Kings & Princes of Christendome, iourneying fr[om] one Kingdome and Prouince to another.

Peter the hermite reporteth the afflictions of the Christians.

The Pope, who, as his Predecessours in the Sacred Seate had done, thought hee should gaine no greater support in this holy enterprize, then in *France*; trauelled suddenly thither, and assembled a Councill at *Clermont* in *Auuergne*, published the Croisade against the Infidels and summoned there all Christian Princes, who were to bee as quickly in the field from *France*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and *England* (onely *Spaine* was exempted, by being sufficiently impeached, in warring on the *Africane* Mores, swarming ouer plentifully in her owne bowels.) But *France*, among all other Christian nations, was she that had the honour of this holy enterprise, because she alone contributed thereto as many Princes and Souldiours, as all the rest together.

The Croisade intended for the Holy-Land, and summoned by the Pope.

Matthew Paris, in his history of *England* enformeth vs, that the Croisade (for this subiect) was in diuers coullers, as we haue formerly said in the Tract of S. *Dominick*; wherwith were Crossed the Princes, Prelates, and men of Warre, going against the *Albigeois* heretiques of *France*, and *Lombardie*. It was called *Croisade*, because such as were enrouled therein, for the voyage beyond the Seas, tooke and receiued from the hands of Bishops and Prelates, a Crosse of *Ierusalem*, made of Cloth or of Taffatie, which was sowed on their Garments on the left side, right against the hart. The *Frẽch* did weare it Red; the *English* White; the *Flemings* and those of the *Low Countries* Greene; the *Germaines* Blacke; and the *Italians* Yellow, so saith the same *Paris*.

Varietie of the Crosses Coullers, according to the Nations.

Monsieur Hugh of *France*, called the Great (Brother to King *Philip*) Count of *Vermandois*, was the first of all the Christian Princes, that took the *Croisade* & Enfigne of this long Pilgrimage. He was in the Armie of this *Croisade*, published in the yeare of grace, One thousand, fourescore and sixteene, to bee aged one and forty yeares, *Portoit Eschiquettee d'Or, et d'Azur*, Mettall and Couller of *France*, and therewith the Armes of the Countie of *Vermandois*, of which hee had espoused the heire. Next to him Crossed himselfe.

The names the worthy men in the Croisade, for recouery of the Holy-Land.

Godfrey of *Bologne* (Son to *Eustace*, Count of *Bologne* on the Sea) Duke of *Lorraine* and of *Bouillon*, by adoption of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorraine*, deceassed without issue. *Qui Portoit de Lorraine d'Argent au Cerf de Gueules, Sommee d'Or sans nombre.*

Eustace of *Bologne*; *Qui portoit de Bologne d'Or à Trois Tourteaux de Gueules.*

Bauldwine, of *Bologne*: *Qui portoit Pale d'Argent & de Sable de Six pieces.* But afterward hee bare *De Bologne, Escartele du Gonfanon*, of the Christian Army in the Holy Land, that is to say, *D'Or au Gonfanon de Trois pendants de Gueules, frangez de Synople.* *Eustace* and *Bauldwine* were Brethren to *Godfrey* of *Bologne*.

Robert the *Frizon*, Count of *Flanders*, the naturall Sonne to the King of England, and Duke of Normandie. This *Robert* bare *Eschequette de Gueulles & d'Or.*

Stephen de Chastillon Count of *Blois* and of *Chartres*, who bare then in this Voyage *D'Or au Lyon de Gueules Arme, & Coronne d'Azur.* But afterward, he and his Descendants, Sirnamed of *Chastillon* and *Crecy*, caried *De Gueules a trois Paulx de Vair au Chef d'Or.* The younger charged (in time) the Chiefe with Foure Martlets *Gueules*, with Mullets and Lyons Sable, and other Brisures according to their owne fancies.

Aymary of *Poictiers*, Bishop of *Puy* in *Velay*: *Qui portoit de Poictiers d'Azur a Six Bezans d'Argent. 3. 2. 1. au Chef d'Or.*

William of *Mascon* Bishop of *Orenge*: *Qui portoit de Mascon, d'Argent a l'Aigle de Synople.*

Hugh Aymon, Count of *Tolosa* Sonne to *William*, Third of the name, and *Iane* Daughter and heire to *Raymond*, Second of the name, Count of *Tolosa*, who because he would make one in this Voyage; engaged his County of *Tolosa*, to his Cousin *Raymond* Count of Saint *Giles*: *Portoit de Gueules au Mouton d'Argent a corne d'Or, party de Gueules a la Croix clechee & Pomettee d'Or.* He was made Duke and Prince of *Antioch*, where hee dyed very aged, and by his death the County of *Tolosa* remained to the Countes of Saint *Giles*.

Hugh Aymon dyed Duke & Prince of *Antioche.*

Raymond, Count of Saint *Giles*, and of *Tolosa*, *Qui portoit de Gueules a Six Chasteaux ouuerts d'Or. 3. 2 1.* Armes of the last Counts of *Tolosa.*

Boemond, Duke of *Apuglia*, *Portoit de Gueules a la Bande Eschiquettee d'Argent, & d'Azur de deux Traicts.*

Bauldwine, Count of *Henault*; who bare at his going in the Voyage, *D'Argent a Trois Cheurons de Gueules*: And at his returne from thence, he tooke *De Flandres au Baston de Gueules brochant sur le Lyon de Sable: Escartele de Hollande qui est d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules.*

Bauldwine, Count of *Rethell*; *Qui portoit de Gueules a Trois Rasteaux, sans manche d'Or endentez de mesme.*

Garnier, Count of *Grez De Sable au Chef d'Argent.*

Herpin, Count of *Bourges*, *De Gueules au Mouton d'Argent a la Teste plumettee, & moncettee de Sable.*

Yssart, Count of *Dic*: *Eschiquette d'Argent & de Gueules.*

Stephen, Count *d Aumale*: *De Gueules a deux faces d'Or.*

Rainbauld, Count of *Orenge*: *De Gueules a vne Bande d'Or, Escartele d'Argent party de Gueules au Croissant defconfon l'Autre.*

William Count *de Foreests*: *De Gueules au Daulphine passme d'Or.*

Hugh, Count of Saint *Paul*. At his going forth in this Voyage, hee bare *D'Azur a vne Gerbe d'Auoyne d'Or, lice de mesme.* And afterward his Descendants carried *D'Argent au Lyon de Gueules, a la queue nouee & passe en Saultoir.*

Arnoull, Count of *Guines*: *Portoit Barre d'Or & d'Azur*, when he went in the Voyage: but his Descendants afterward carried *Vaire, Contre Vair d'Or, & d'Azur.*

Rotrou, Count of *Perche*: *Escartele d'Or & d'Azur*, going in the Voyage; but his Descendants afterward carried *D'Azur a Quatre Lyons d'Or, Deux en Chef, & Deux en Pointe.*

Aymar, Count of *Soisons*, who carried in the Voyage *Burele d'Argent, & d'Azur de dix pieces.* And his Descendants tooke *D'Or, au Lyon passant de Gueules à la Bordure engreslee de mesme.*

Eurard of *Ponthieu*, *D'Or, a Trois Bandes d'Azure à la Bordure de Gueules.*

Robert D'Aspremont de Gueules, à la Croix plaine d'Argent.

Bauldwine de Piquigny. *Face d'Argent, et d'Azure de Six pieces à la Bordure de Gueules.*

Matthew de Beaumont vpon *Oise*. *De Gueules à l'Aigle d'Argent semé de Fers de Lances Ermines, faconnez en Chausse Trappes*, which we call properly *Guette-Villes.*

Thomas

Thomas de Coucy.
Bers de Marle;
Valter de Vervyn.
And Brethren.

Who carryed *de Senlis*, otherwise of *Denmarke*; *D'Or à Trois Leopards de Synople l'vn sur l'autre.*

Ordinarily in Armes, Lyons are rampant, and shew but one of their eyes. Leopards beare their heads forward, and shew both their eyes, and ought to bee passant. If Lyons and Leopards are of any other posture; it ought to be declared, otherwise it is ignorance: as in vnskilfull Painters, that know not emblazoning by the words *Lyon rampant*, *Leopard passant*, which are the Principles in the Noble Science of Armes, and whosoeuer is ignorant in them, ought to goe to Schoole.

Instructions for such as are vnskilfull in the Noble science of Emblazon.

..... Procul hinc este Prophani,
Totoque absistete Luco.....

For on the Frontispice of the Temple of Glory, is engraven this goodly deuise.

Odi. Prophanum. Vulgus. Et. Arceo.

That which hath mooued vs to obserue here the changes of Armes, by these Crossed Princes in this first voyage; is an important point in the Antiquitie of our Histories, for notice and knowledge of so many Illustrious Families of this most Christian kingdome: whereof some are yet on foote, and the rest plundged in the gulfe of oblition, being fallen to the distaffe, without any hope of reuiuing, except by titlee and contracts of marriage, which we tearme Alliance and Substitution; in which cases, the Armes and Names of famous Families conserue themselues.

A reason for obseruing these changes of Armes.

And it is of this first voyage, and them following, wherein our Annalists haue set downe; that Dukes, Countes and high Barons tooke so many Lyons in Armes, of diuers Coullers and Mettalls.

Of taking the Lion in Armes at this Voyage to the Holy Land.

Flandres D'Or au Lyon de Sable Arme & Lampasse de Gueules.
Brabant. De Sable au Lyon d'Or arme & lampasse de Gueules.
Hollande. D'Or au Lyon de Gueules coronne, arme, & lampasse de Sable.
Zelande. D'Or à la face ondoyee d'Argent & d'Azur de quatre traicts au Lyon naissant de Gueules.
Zutphen. D'Argent au Lyon de Gueules coronne, arme, & lampasse d'Or.
Lembourg. D'Argent au Lyon de Gueules à la queue nouee & doublee en Sautoir, coronne, arme, & lampasse d'Or.
Namur. D'Or au Lyon de Sable, brise d'vn Baston de Gueules.
Haynau. Escartele de Flandres, & de Hollande.
Gueldres. D'Azur au Lyon tourne d'Or.
Iuilliers. D'Or au Lyon de Sable, arme, & lampasse de Gueules.
Luxemburg. Face d'Argent & d'Azur de trois pieces au Lyon de Gueules rampant sur le Tout, coronne, lampasse, & arme d'Or.
Sainct Pol. D'Argent au Lyon de Gueules à la queue nouee, & fourchee en Sautoir.
Frize. D'Azur à deux Lyons passants d'Or, seme de Billettes de Argent.
Bourgongne. Comte. D'Azur au Lyon d'Or, seme de Billettes de mesme.
Beaumont sur Oise. Comte. De Gueules au Lyon d'Argent.
Charolois in the *Duchie* of *Bourgongne*. *De Gueules au Lyon d'Or à la Teste tournee a main gauche.*
Mons or *Berghes* in *Henault*. *D'Argent au Lyon de Gueules.*
Malines, which is the Seate of Parliament for *Flanders*, and *Salins*, appertaining to the house of *Flanders*, changed not their ancient Armes.
Malines porte Pale, contrepale d'Or & de Gueules, &
Salins. De Gueules a la Bande d'Or.
Many renowned houses in *France*, marching in this first voyage, did likewise take the Lyon in their Armes, as them of
Beaujeu-loir. D'Or au Lyon de Sable au Lambeau de Gueules.
Bourbon. D'Or au Lyon de Gueules, a l'Orle chargee de Huict Coquilles d'Azur.

Roussy. D'Or au Lyon d'Azur arme & lampasse de Gueules, & coronne d'Argent.

And infinite other, which we let passe vnder silence.

The same was put in practise by the Princes of *Germany*, that marched along i the same voyage; who changing their first Armes, toooke Lyons of diuers colours The first and chiefest were them of *Suauba*, who tooke *d'Argent à trois Lyons ou Le pards passans l'vn sur l'autre de Sable.*

Boëme. De Gueules au Lyon d'Argent.

Brunsuick. De Gueules à deux Lyons leopardez passants l'vn sur l'autre d'Or.

Carinthie. D'Argent à trois Lyons passants l'vn sur l'autre de Sable.

Limebourg. D'Argent au Lyon d'Azur, coronné, arme, & langue d'Or, seme de Cœurs d Gueules.

Le Palatinat du Rhin. De Sable au Lyon d'Or, coronne, lampasse, & arme d Gueules.

Zuimberg. D'Or au Lyon de Gueules, tenant vne Hache d'Armes de mesme, coronne, ar me, & lampasse d'Argent.

And a countlesse number of Princes and Lords of *Germany*, whose Armes are emblazoned with greater store of Lyons, then Eagles, which are notes of the Em pire.

In *France*, such Lords as had Lyons in their Armes at this first voyage, forsook them for contrary, as the

Of changing Armes and Sirnames after the first voyage.

Countes of *Blois*, and of *Chartres*, by the Sirname of *Chastillon* on *Marne*, and o *Crecie* in *Brie*, who tooke *De Gueules à Trois Paulx vairez au Chef d'Or.* Others o this Sirname in *Nuernois*, *Portoient d'Or au Lyon de Gueules*: who after the 1. voyage changed both Armes and Sirname, forsaking that of *Chastillon*, and taking anothe called *Amas*, of the Prouince *Amasia*, which they conquered at this first voyage in to the East, and bare *D'Or a vne Croix de Gueules.* The three Princes Brethren o the house of

Couey, bearing the Sirname of *Baylleull*, who tooke *Vaire, à Trois faces de Gueu les.*

But two Furres allowed in Armes.

In Armes there are but two Skinnes or Furres, *Hermines* and *Vaire*, yet both o them represented in a Siluer Field; the first of Sable, the other of Azure. If they be composed with other Mettalls and Coullers, they must be emblazoned, because they exceede the common Rule and Order. Otherwise it sufficeth to say: *Il porte d'Ermi nes*, or *Il porte Vaire, ou de Vair.* Returne we now againe to our Palladines of beyond the Seas.

How men fitted themselues for so long a voyage.

They made vp an Armie of an hundred thousand men on horsebacke, and six hundred thousand foot Souldiours. To accommodate and furnish themselues at all points, according as so long a voyage required: Such a one sold his Dukedome Countie, Viscountie or Baronnie: Such a one his Lands, Meadowes, Milles, and Forrests, or else engaged them, vpon their returning euer or neuer.

Hugh Aymon engadged the County of *Tolossa*, to the Count of Saint *Gylles.*

Godfrey of *Bologne* sold the Dukedome of *Bouillon*, to the Bishop of *Liege*, and the City of *Mentz* to the Inhabitants thereof.

Robert engadged his Dukedome of *Normandy*, to his Brother *William*, King o *England.*

Herpin sold the Countie of *Berry*, to King *Philip* the First: And these were fol lowed by an infinite number more, that made money of all they had. Which Sale v as much more honorable to the sellers, then to the buyers: who were counted but as home-bred sluggards, white liuered and corageles droans, and to whom such as were Crossed for the voyage, sent Distaues and Spindles, in mockerie of thei Cowardise.

The parting of the Christian Armie.

At the departure of the Christian Armie, Pope *Vrban*, second of the name, gau them his blessing, Remission of their sinnes, and for the Watch word and Cry o Battaile. *Dieu. Le Veult.* God will haue it so.

By vniuersall consent of all the Princes and Lords, *Godfrey* of *Bologne* was cho sen Generall of the whole Armie, for his experience and good carriage, and they se onward the first day of *Aprill*, *Anno*, One thousand foure score and seauenteen setting

setting Sayle for *Constantinople*, where being ariued, the Christians marched on into the lesser *Asia*, called *Natolia*, besiedged and tooke *Nicomedia*, and afterward *Nicea* of *Bythinia*, a very strong and powerfull Citty, which endured the Siedge the whole space of two and twenty dayes, at the end whereof, it was taken by Assault.

Their arriuall at Constantinople and great victories

This exploite was seconded by the surprizall of *Heraclea*, *Lycaonia*, *Cylicia*, *Cappadocia*, *paphlagonia*, *Syria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Comagena*, and other famous Townes and Cities, which our Palladines conquered in three yeares space from the *Sultan Soliman*, then Generall of the Turkes; who at the same time also, saw himselfe despoyled of the Citty of *Antioch* (Seate of the Patriarchall Church, and sometime of that of the Prince of the Apostles Saint *Peter*, before his arriuing at *Rome*, where he suffered Martyrdome. *Tripoly* of *Syria* was afterward taken, with the neighbouring Cities and Townes, which plained and hilde euen the way of *Iudea*, to make their victorious Armes shine before the holy City of Ierusalem (the maine eye and aime of this Religious enterprize) which they inuested, with firme and constant beliefe, to vnnestle the miscreants, that had so often prophaned, and dyed it with the Crimosine blood of poore Christians.

The Christian Armies comming before *Ierusalem* and surprizal therof.

For the space of eight and thirty dayes, the Siedge continued, at the end whereof the Cittie was taken the fifteenth day of *July*, at nine of the Clocke in the Euening, *Anno*, One thousand fourescore and nineteene: which date is made more remarkeable, by these foure Ryming verses, formed according to those times.

Virginis à partu Domini qui claruit ortu
Anno Millesimo Centeno qui minus vno
Quindecies Iulio, iam Phœbi lumine tecto,
Hierusalem Franci capiunt virtute potenti.

Godfrey crowned King of *Ierusalem.*

Now, as by common consent of the Christian Princes, *Godfrey* was named, and made Generall of the Armie: so in like manner, after surprizall of the holy Cittie, he was elected King of *Ierusalem*, and cloathed with the Royall Ornaments; onely the Crowne of Gold excepted, which he refused to take, and place vpon his head in the same City, where the Sauiour of the world had worne a Crowne of pricking thornes.

And because the Armes of the City of Ierusalem, and the *Gonfanon* or Banner thereof was white, and the Shield *D'Argent à la Croix Potencee, accompagnee de quatre Croisettes de Gueules*, the marke and Symbole of the fiue wounds of our Sauiour and Redeemer, and (as we haue already said) the Crosses were Red, which *Godfrey*, and all speaking *French* in the Christian Armie did weare: Euen so the Princes and great Lords appointed, that *Godfrey* and his Successours, Kings of *Ierusalem*, should beare the Armes of *Ierusalem*, but otherwise emblazoned then they were, to witte: *D'Argent à la Croix potencee d'Or, Cantonnee de Quatre Croisettes de mesme* (which is Mettall vpon Mettall, and falsitie in Armes, as is Coullervpon Couller, contrary to the ordinary Rule of Blazons.) Those Armes were so deuised, altogether for Enquiry, for a signe and note of his valiancy, and greatnesse of courage. For as much, as those Armes that are for enquiry, doe moouevs to make request and search, for some speciall Priuiledge therero belonging, or theron depending. My Manuscript of Blazons speaking in this manner.

The Armes for the succeeding Kings of *Ierusalem.*

Generalement toutes Armes qui sont de Metal sur Metal, ou de Couleur sur Couleur sont fausses. Exceptees celles du Roy de Hierusalem qui sont de Metal sur Metal, c'est à scauoir d' Argent à vne Croix potencee, & quatre Croisettes d'Or. Et toutefois ne sont elles pas fausses. Et la raison est. Car quand Godefroy de Billon eut tresfvictorieusement acquise la Terre Saincte, fut auise, & ordonne par les Vaillants, & Preux Princes qui en sa compagnie estoient, qu'en memoire, & recordation d'icelle victoire excellente, luy seroient donnees Armes differentes du commun cours des autres, afinque quand aucun les verroit, cuidant que fussent fausses, fust esmeu à soy enquerir pourquoy vn si noble Roy porte telles Armes. Et par ainst peust estre informe de ladite Conqueste.

A reason for the King of *Ierusalems* Armes

Generally, all Armes which are of Mettall vpon Mettall, or Couller vpon Couller, are false. Except those of the King of Ierusalem, which are of Mettall vpon Mettall,

tall, that is to say D'Argent a vne Croix potencee, & Quatre Croisettes d'Or. And yet notwithstanding they are not false: And the reason is, Because when Godfrey *of* Bullen *had most valiantly wun the* Holy-Land; *it was aduised and ordained by the Valiant and Courageous Princes, which were in his company, that in recordation and memory of the same excellent victory: he should haue giuen to him Armes, differing from the common course of other. To the end, that when any should see them, thinking them to be false: they might be moued thereby to make enquirie, wherefore so Noble a King should beare those armes. And by that meanes, be further informed of the said Conquest.*

Somewhat in Honour of the Armes.

But let vs say something which is not common, in Honour of these Illustrious Armes (seeing that we beare them) and the emblazoning: as it it appeareth to purpose, by the thirteenth verse of the Threescore and eighth Psalme of *Dauid*. *Si dormiatis inter medios cleros: Penna Columbæ deargentatæ, & posteriora dorsi eius in pallore Auri. Though yet haue lien among the potts, yet shall yee be as the wings of a Doue, that is couered with siluer wings, and her feathers like Golde.*

The Armes of *Ierusalem* the Armes of the Church.

The Armes of *Ierusalem* are (to speake properly) *The Armes of the Catholique Church.* The Doue is the Symbole of the Church, and of her best beloued Children, as in the threescore and thirteenth Psalme, and in the Canticles of *Salomon*. *Veni amica mea, & Columba mea, Veni coronaberis.* The Doue is without spot or blemishe, and was imployed in the sacrifices of the olde Lawe, as the expiation for sinners. And afterward in the new Testament, afflicted with Torments and Martyrdomes, this Doue beholde her selfe as dead & entranced, her heart transpierced with the Sword of bitternesse, among the Scullienly potts, spits and dripping panns, of Indian and Turkish Infidels, soyled in the Furnaces of persecutions, in the Synagogues of Heretiques, smoaked and darkened with infernall doctrine. This Doue lay swouning *Inter sortes Malignantium, inter medios cacabos, inter medias lebetes, inter medias ollas.*

Nigrante sque casas, & tecta mapalia fumo.

The glorious appearing of the Church.

But suddenly and in an instant, you saw her come forth as white as Snowe. Her forefront and downe to the bottome of her brest, the Shield of power, and the Buckler of Strength. *Scutum Fortitudinis, & Clypeus Fortium*, is of fayre polished Siluer. Her passions, her woundes, and her Crosse appeares no more bloody: this Shield sets her forth with glory and magnificence, by the King of Mettalls, the perfect creature of Natures workes

Golde, like the fire flaming,
Aboue all treasure fayre shining.

Or & Azure Gueules, Azur Synople & Sable.

We haue said in our first Booke, that in Armes there be but two Mettalls Gold and Siluer, as also that there are but foure Coullers, *Red, Blewe, Grëene* and *Black*. It were ignorance then to make addition of a fift Couller, named *Purple*, Which is not any Couller, so affirmeth my Manuscripte of Blazons. *For whosoeuer shall mingle an equall portion of the foure fore-named Coullers; that will be Purple, a Coulter compounded,* and not *simple, which ought not to be in armes.* And by the same Pairie of Rules in the Noble Arte of Heraldry, Coulter vpon Coulter are Armes for Enquirie, which appertaineth to none but Princes.

Concerning the Vse of Coulter vpon Coulter.

And although Coulter vpon Coulter in Bordure or Labell bee not so exactly reiected: yet neuertheless, the vse or practise thereof should be so sparingly limitted, as it ought not to be imployed in the Armes of great Princes, who (in regard of their qualitie) are exempte from common rule. For so we see that the first Dukes of *Orleans Portoient le Lambeau de Gueules*, and not *D'Argent*, as they haue done since. And so the Dukes of *Bourbon*, and them of their stocke and descent, beare, and haue borne *Le Baston de Gueules*: They of *Berry, La bordure Engreslee de mesme*: They of *Valois, Anjou* and *Alanson, La Bordure plaine de Gueules*, like them of *Bourgongne*. All Princes of the Bloud, whose Title is the subiect, cause and motiue for Enquiry. And Princes are not wount to graunt Priuiledge to their Seruants and Subiects, to beare one Mettall vpon an other, and one Coulter on an other, in Armes, or in deuise.

In this First voyage to the Holy Land, King *Phillip* the First had inconsiderately made a vowe, to march Armed at all points in the head of the Armie. He was dissuaded, not to leaue his Kingdome depriued of his presence. And yet neuertheless (to

(to acquite himselfe of his vowe) he sent thither one of his Chamberlaines *Eudes* the Maire, Lord of *Chalo* Saint *Mard* (that is *Medard*) Castillian and Captaine of the Royall Castell *D'Estampes*, who performed the said Voyage *Armé de Pied en Cap.* At his returne after the surprisall of *Ierusalem*, he gaue very great priuiledges to the said *Eudes le Maire, Lancelot* his Sonne, and fiue Daughters of his, whose Children he had accepted into his Noble keeping, during the absence of their Father. And they of this Family had enioyed (very neere the space of Fiue hundred yeares) the same Priueledges, which began first to be minced piece meale away, and afterward quite cut off by enuy. There remained no more Honour to them, but *To beare armes for Enquirie, These of Godfrey of Belogne, Quartred with them of the said Eudes le Maire*, which are *De Gueules a la Bordure d'Or, chargee en Abisme d'vn Escusson d'Argent a vne Fuelle de Chesne de Synople.*

The rash vowe of King *Phillip* the first.

What cannot time and enuie doe.

During the Siedge of *Ierusalem, Godfrey* (afterward King) letting flye an Arrowe on the Battelments of the Tower of *Dauid*, at that one shoote killed three Birdes: which serued him for a deuise afterward, and for the Assaylants and defendants, his brethren (as well Masles as Females) in Armes richly emblazoned, *D'Or a la Bande de Gueules, chargee de Trois Alleyons d'Argent*, sole Armes for long time, and afterward, *Sur le Tout* for them of the Illustrious House of *Lorraine*, enriched with their Alliances, to wit, of Foure Kingdomes, *Hungarie, Sicilie, Ierusalem* and *Arragon*; supported with Foure Dukedomes, *Anion, Gueldres, Gulich* and *Barre*.

The Armes of *Godfrey* of *Buden*, and the House of *Lorraine*.

The Second Voyage to the Holy-Land, was made by our King *Lewes* the younger, Seaueth of the name, who Crossed himselfe in the Generall Parliament, held at *Vezelay* in *Bourgongne*: And the King departed from *Paris* with a potent Armie, the Fifteenth day of May One thousand, one hundred, forty and seauen, leauing the Regency of the Kingdome to *Suggerius*, Abbot of Saint *Denys* in *France*; Queene *Alienor*, Wife to the King, followed him in so long a Voyage. They tooke the way of *Germanie* and *Hungarie*, to iourney for *Constantinople*, where they met with the Emperour of the West *Conrad*, Third of the name, who trauayled also to the Holy-Land, with an Army consisting of Threescore Thousand men, *Germanes* and others, passing in company the *Bosphorus* of *Greece* safely and with out perill.

The Second Voyage to the Holy-Land.

But the Voyage of these two Monarches of *France* and *Germanie*, brought little or no benefite at all to the Christians beyond the Seas, being constrained to discampe from the Siedges of *Damas*, and the Citty of *Acres*. Likewise they were basely betrayed by the Emperour of *Greece Manuell*, Brother in Law to the Emperour *Conrad* (for they had Married two Sisters) because they continued a yeare (or thereabout) beyond the Seas, without performing any great businesse, by reason of the mortality in the Christian Army, occasioned by the wickednesse of *Manuell*, and his *Grecques* (deadly enemies to the Latines) who had mingled a kind of Morter or Plaister among the Meale, wherewith they furnished the Christian Armie. So that both these Princes were enforced to returne home to their Kingdomes.

The trechery of *Manuell* Emperour of *Greece*.

This Voyage of the *French* into the Easte, is amplye described by the Archbishop of *Tyre*, in his History of the Holy-Warre: and by the Abbot of Saint *Denis Suggerius*, in the Life of the said King *Lewes* the younger, where he maketh relation of the particularities. Affirming, that this great *Croisade* was made, by the Preaching of the Great Abbot of *Clareuax* Saint *Bernard*, of Noble descent, but much more Noble in Vertue and Holinesse of life. We haue formerly obserued the place of his Birth, and the Armes of his House. And that *Pontius*, the Abbot of *Vezelay*, caused a Church to be builded (famous afterward by multiplicitie of miracles) in the same place, where the meeting was made for the *Croisade*, at the same *Vezelay*.

Saint *Bernard* Abbot of *Clerauax*, of Noble extraction.

He further saith, that the Commons of *Sens*, hauing murdred *Hebert*, Abbot of Saint *Pierre le Vif*: the King (before his departure) caused exemplary Iustice to be executed on the Authors and Complices, being cast headlong downe from the top of an high Tower vpon the pauement, where they had perpetrated and committed the murder, and the rest beheaded at *Paris*. *Rex ad pœnas sceleris vltionem accinctus, portem Homicidæ arumnæ ab altitudine Turris ad Terram præcipitat, & aliorsecus Parisys decollare.*

The Iustice of the King before his going in the Croisade.

At the same *Vezelay*, King *Lewes*, and his Wife Queene *Alienor* of *Aquitaine* Crossed

Crossed themselues. *Rex primus prosiliens, cum magno deuotionis ardore signum sanctæ Crucis assumpsit, & post ipsum Regina Alienordis uxor sua, mouentes per exemplum, ut sic Prælati facerent, & Barones.*

Of such as Crossed themselues, for the Second Voyage to *Jerusalem*, by example of the King and Queene.

Alphonsus, Counte of Saint *Gylles*.
Thierry, Counte of *Flanders*.
Henry de Chastillon, Sonne to *Thibault*, Count of *Blois*.

Guy Count of *Neuers*. } Brethren, who at that time bare of the Coun-
Regnaud, Count of *Tonnere*. } ty of *Bourgongne*, formerly noated.

The Count *Dieu-donne*, (that is to be Diuined.)
Robert, Brother to the King (for excellency he had no other Title) And yet notwithstanding, he was Counte of *Dreux*, as his Appennage or portion, and was not then maried. *Il Portoit d'Or & d'Azur, à la Bordure de Gueules.*
Yues, Count of *Soissons*.
William, Count of *Ponthieu*.
William, Count of *Garance*: *Qui portoit de Gueules à Trois Cheurons d'Argent.*
Archambauld of *Bourbon*.
Enguerran de Coucy.
Geoffrey de Rancone.
Hugh of *Lusignan*.
William de Courtenay: *Qui portoit d'Or à Trois Tourteaux de Gueules*. 2. 1.
Regnaud de Montargis.
Ythier de Torcy.
Euerard de Brestueill.
Dreux de Mouchy.
Manasses de Bugnell.
Lancelot du Treinell.
Guerin his Brother.
William le Bouteillier.
William at *Gilons de Trie*.

With many other high and mighty Lords, and Knights of great renowne, and Noble Houses. *Et plures alij Nobiles, & magni nominis Milites.*

Of Prelates Crossed themselues:
Symon, Bishop of *Noyon*.
Godfrey, Bishop of *Langres*.
Arnoull, Bishop of *Lisieux*.
Herbert, Abbot of Saint *Pierre le Vif* of *Sens*, murdered by his Cittizens before departing.
Thibault, Abbot of Saint *Colombe de Sens*.

With an infinite number of men of the Church, and of the Sword. *Et multi alie personnæ Nobiles, quorum nomina, propter confusionem, censuimus silentio pertransenda*, saith the Abbot of Saint *Denis*.

The Count of *Morienna*, Vncle by the Mothers side to King *Lewes*, tooke the *Croissade* in the Citty of *Mentz*, and a Great number of noble Gentlemen with him, because the King should want no company. *Metis similiter* Crucem *assumpsit*. *Comes Morienne Auunculus Ludouici Regis Francie, multique cum eo Principes & Barones.*

King *Philip Augustus* vndertooke the Third Voyage to the Holy-Land.

The Third Voyage beyond the Seas, was perfourmed by King *Phillip Augustus* Second of the name, called the Conquerour, and Gods *Giste* vpon the same subiect. Notwithstanding the serious affaires in the Holy-Land; yet a Truce was taken between the Christian Princes, and *Saladine* the *Calyphe* of *Egypt* and *Syria*. But it was soone

soone broken, because in the interim of this composition, *Reynaud de Chastillon* made seizure on the Mother of *Saladine*, as she was iourneying to *Damas*. Vpon refusall to render her, and the furniture taken from her, by councell of the Counte of *Tryply*: *Saladine* vanquished in open field the Army of the Christians Princes, which consisted of more then twenty thousand able fighting men, *Salaladine* making such a fierce and cruell assault vpon them, that the most part of them were put to the edge of the Sword. A Truce taken, but quickly broken.

For spoyles of his victory, he had the King of *Ierusalem Guye* of *Lusignan*, who before was Count of *Iaffa*, Husband to the Queene of *Sicilie*, Sister to *Bauldwine* the Meazeled; with the true Crosse, which the Bishop of *Ptolomais* caried in this Battaile. The Christian Army was betrayed by the Counte of *Tripoly*, descended of the Countes of *Tolosa*, who (in sted of fighting) threwe the Royall Standard at his feete, and forsooke his owne side. Which ouerthrow happened the fourth and fift of the Nones of Iuly, in the yeare of Grace One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and seauen. The ouerthrow of the Christian Armie.

Saladine pursuing his victory, sent King *Guye*, the true Crosse, and all his prisoners to *Damas*, and tooke from the Christians the Citties of *Tiberias*, *Ptolomais* and *Ierusalem* the Holy Citty, wherein were Foureteene thousand persons of all sexes. These Cities were thus surprized the Second day of October, One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and seauen: Afterward, he became Maister of the Citties in *Galilee*, and of all the Holy-Land, the Citties of *Antioche*, *Tripolye* and *Tyre*, some fewe Castells and strong places excepted, The Citties conquered by *Saladine*.

Vpon report of these sad tydings in *France*, King *Phillip Augustus* resolued on a Voyage to the Holy-Land, for the recouery thereof once more. But in regard that King *Henry* of *England*, and he wadged sterne warre each against other; an enterviewe was made of these two Princes, and they had conference together betweene *Tue* and *Gisors*: at which place (by miracle, and contrary to all humaine hope) the two Kings made a Truce and a cessation from warre for tenne yeares space. Moreouer, they Crossed themselues both for beyond the Seas, by the hands of *William* of *Champaigne*, Archbishop of *Rheimes*, Vncle to the King, and *William*, afterward Archbishop of *Tyre*, and Chauncellour of the Kingdome of *Ierusalem*, Legate for the Pope in this Holy Croisiade. Truce betweene the Kings of *England* & *France*

The Names of them that went in this Third Voyage to the Holy-Land.

First the King himselfe *Phillip Augustus*.
Otho, Duke of *Bourgongne*.
Richard, Counte of *Poictiers*, King of *England* after *Henry*.
Phillip, Count of *Flanders*.
Henry, Second of the name, Count Palatine of *Champaigne* and *Brie*, afterward King of *Nauarre*, Second of the name.
Thibault, Count of *Blois*.
Stephen, Count of *Sancerre*.
The Count of *Perche*.
William des Barres, Counte of *Rochefort*.
Robert, Count of *Dreux*.
The Count of *Clairmont* in *Beauuoysis*, who caried the *Oriflambe* Ensigne of Saint *Denys*.
The Count of *Beaumont* vpon *Oise*.
The Count of *Soissons*.
The Cont of *Barre*.
Bernard of Saint *Valery*.
Iames d'Auesnes.
The Count of *Neuers*.
Dreux de Mello.

Matthew

Matthew de Montmorency.
William de Merlo, and a great number of Knights beside.

Of Prelates that Crossed themselues at the same place.

Gaultier, Archbishop of *Rouen.*
Bauldwine, Archbishop of *Canterbury* in *England.*
The Bishop of *Beauuais:* And
The Bishop of *Chartres.*

Holy-Field where the Enter-view was made.

The place of this Enter-view was called *Holy-Field. Sanctus Campus*, where was erected a great Crosse of Wood, and the Kings gaue money to build a Chappell there, in honour of the Holy Crosse, whereon suffered the Sauiour of the world, and for foundation of Diuine Seruice, to continue as a memory to posterity. All this was done in the yeare One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and seauen.

In the yeare of Grace One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and eight, the Moneth of March, and during the Lent time, the King held his Generall Parliament in the Bishops Haull of *Paris*, and in that time, a wunderfull number of persons Crossed themselues: Prelates, Barons, Priests, Souldiers, Cittizens and Villagers. In this Generall assembly, the people and Clargie of *France* graunted, that the King should leuey and take the tenth part of their moueable goods, and immoueable fruites of such as Crossed not themselues in this voyage: except Monasteries of Orders of the *Cisteaux*, *Chartreux*, and *Font-Euruald*, and Hospitalls, and Spittle Houses of *France*, in regard of their proprieties. Which moneys graunted to the King, for the Voyage beyond the Seas against *Saladine*, were called by his name *The Tenths for Saladine*, and which were graunted for one yeare only, with conditions recorded by *Rigordus*, which are these that follow.

Saladines Tenths graunted forth Voyage beyond the Seas.

Saladines *Tenthes or Titles graunted to the King for one whole yeare, to maintaine the Warres in the Holy-Land: And their Conditions.*

DE Decimis *hoc constitutum est, quod Omnes* Crucem *non habentes, quicumque sint, Decimam ad minus dabunt hoc Anno, de omnibus Mobilibus suis, & de omnibus Reditibus, exceptis illis qui sunt Cisterciensis Ordinis, Ordinis Carthusiacensis, & Ordinis Fontis-Ebrardi, & exceptis Leprosis quantum ad suum pertinet proprium.*

In *nullus Communias mittet aliquis manum, nisi ille Dominus, cuius ipsa Communia fuerit. Quale autem ius in aliquâ Communiarum habebat prius aliquis tale habebit.*

Qui *alicuius Terræ magnam Iustitiam habet, eiusdem Terræ Decimas habebit.*

Et *sciendum est quod qui Decimas sunt daturi, de toto mobili suo, & reditibus Decimas dabunt, non acceptis inde prius debitis suis: imo, post donationem Decimæ, de residuo poterunt sua debita soluere, Vniuersi Laici tam Milites, quam alij, præstito iuramento sub Anathemate: Clerici verò excommunicatione adstricti sua dabunt Decimas.*

Miles *Crucem non habens, Domino suo habenti eam, cuius erit Homo Ligius, dabit de suo proprio mobili Decimam, & de Feudo quem ipse tenebit. Si autem ab eo nullum tenuerit Feudum, de proprio suo mobili Decimam Domino suo Ligio dabit; Singulis verò à quibus tenebit Decimam de suis Feudis dabit: & si nullam Dominum Ligium habuerit, ei, in cuius Feudo manserit, leuans, & cubans, dabit Decimam de suo proprio mobili.*

Si Quis *Terram propriam Decimans, res alterius, quam illius quam debet Decimare inuenerit in Terra sua, & ille cuius res fuerint, illas esse suas legitimè monstrare poterit, Decimans non poterit eas vllomodo retinere.*

Miles *Crucem habens qui sit Hæres legitimus, Filius, vel Gener Militis Crucem non habentis, vel alicuius Viduæ, habebit Deciman Patris, vel Matris suæ.*

In res *Archiepiscoporum, seu Episcoporum, seu Capitulorum, seu Ecclesiarum quæ ab eis mouent in Capite, non mittet aliquis manum, nisi Archiepiscopi, Episcopi, Capitula, & Ecclesiæ, quæ ab eis mouent.*

Si *Episcopi inde collegerit Decimas, & eas dabunt, quibus dare debuerint.*

Quicunque *Crucem habens, qui dare Talliam, vel Decimam debeat, & eas dare noluerit, ab illo capiatur, cui suam debet Talliam, vel Decimam, vt inde suam faciat Voluntatem. Et qui eum ceperit propter hoc, non poterit excommunicari.*

Qui

Qui denote, & legitime, & sine coactione Decimam suam dederit, à Deo remunerationem accipiet.

COncerning *Tenths or Tithes, it is decreed, that all (which haue not the Crosse, whatsoeuer they be) shall giue this yeare the Tenth at least, of all their moueables, and of all their Reuenewes; Except those which be of the Order of the* Cistercians, Carthusians, *and of* Fonte Eurauld; *Leprous persons also are excepted, so far as to their owne peculiar appertaineth.*

No man shall lay hand vpon any Colledges or Communities, except the Lord, to whom the Colledge belongeth. Also what manner priuiledge any one had (before time) in any of the Colledges, the like priuiledge he shall haue still.

He that hath the great Power and Authority ouer any Countrey, shall haue the Tithes of the same Countrie.

And it is to be noted, that those who are to giue Tenths or Tithes, shall giue them of their whole moueables and reuenewes, not withdrawing first from thence their debtes: but rather the whole Laitie generally, as well Knights and Souldiers, as others, after the free gift of their Tithe, shal pay their debts out of the remainder, by their oath taken vnder a Curse. The Clergy also shall pay their Tithes, vnder the penalty of Excommunication.

A Knight and Souldier, hauing not the Crosse, shall paye Tithe to his Crossed Lord (whose Liege man he is) of the Fee which he shall hold. But if he shall hold no Fee of him, he shall giue Tithe to his Liege Lord of his owne proper Moueables: Yea he shall giue Tithe of his Fees to euery particular Lord, from whom he shall held. And if he hath no Liege Lord, hee shall giue Tithe vnto him, in whose Fee he shall abide vprising, or downe lying.

If any man taking Tithe of his owne land, shall find in his land, as well the goods of another Mans land, as of that which he ought to take Tithe of, and he (whose goods they be) can lawfully proue them to be his; The person Tithing shall haue no power (by any meanes) to retaine them.

A Knight or Souldier, hauing the Crosse, who is lawfull Heire, Sonne, or Sonne in law to a Knight and Souldier (which hath not the Crosse) or to any Widdow, shall haue the Tithe of his Father, or Mother.

No man shall lay hands vpon the goods of Archbishops, Bishops or Chapiters, or of the Churches which hold of them in Chiefe, except they be Archbishops, Bishops, Chapiters, and the Churches which hold from them.

If the Bishops thereof shall gather the Tithes, they shall giue them to whom they ought to giue them.

Whosoeuer, hauing the Crosse, ought to giue Tallage, or Tithe, and will not giue them; let him be apprehended of him, to whom he oweth his Tallage or Tithe, that he may heerein doe what he pleaseth. And that person, who for this cause shall apprehend him, shall not be excommunicated.

He that deuoutly, and lawfully, and without constraint, shall giue his Tithes, shall haue his recompence from God.

Hence it is, according as some haue written, that the impropriations of Tithes or Tenths in *France*, deriued their birth and originall. And of these *Saladines Tenths*, King *Phillip* made a great banck or stock of money, as well for the Holy warre; as that which he had afterward, vpon the Truce broken by *Richard* (King of *England* after *Henry*) against the same *Richard*: who afterward did Homage to King *Phillip*, for Lands which he held of the Crowne, and tooke to wife the said Kings Sister Madame *Alix* of *France*, whom he after repudiated, to marry Madame *Berenguela* of *Nauarre*, as we haue more at large declared in the Tracte speaking of the Order of *England.*

The Truce broken by King *Richard* of *England.*

All they which were Crossed for this Voyage, had Letters of respite and intermission for three yeares space, for payment of their debts, paying the third part yearely at the Feast of All Saints, and to receiue the fruites and reuenues of their Lands. But if they had no Lands or reuenues: they stood bound to giue gadges or payable Cautions to their Creditours, who could not compell them to pay, but at the appointed times, vnder paine of being excommunicated by the Ordenaries and Metropolitanes, vpon complaint only. And such summes as were due, caried no payment of interest, from the day as they tooke the *Croissade*; but beginning on that

The priueledges of such as went in this Holy Croisade.

day, the Crossed persons could not be called before any bench of Iustice, vntill their returne from beyond the Seas, vnder paine of Excommunication, and paying the expences, damages and interests of such suits. In a word, such as were Crossed for the Voyage, had so many exemptions and priueledges: that it was no wonder, if the Armies for beyond the Seas, consisted of Two or three hundred thousand men.

Ordenations for those Voyages.

At the same Generall Parliament also, were registred the Royall Ordenances which should be kept in those Voyages to the Holy-Land, either by Sea or Land. And them I coppied out of the Parliament Register of the same yeare, as they were published in all parts of the Christian Army, at the departure of the same from *Vezelay* in *Bourgongne*, the Moneth of Iuly 1190.

Orders appointed to be obserued in the Christian Army.

Philippus. D. G. *Francorum Rex semper Augustus. Nouerint Vniuersi Christo Domino nostro militaturi, &c.*

1. Qui *Hominem in Naui interfecerit, cum Mortuo ligatus proiiciatur in Mare.*
2. Si *in terra quemquem interfecerit, cum Mortuo in Terram ligatus comfodiatur.*
3. Si *quis conuictus fuerit, quod Cultellum ad alium percutiendum extraxerit, aut quod alium ad sanguinem percusserit, pugnum perdat.*
4. Si *autem palma percusserit, tribus vicibus mergatur in Mari.*
5. Si *quis Socio opprobrium, conuicium, aut odium Dei obiecerit, quot Vicibus ei conuiciatus fuerit, tot Vncias Argenti reddat.*
6. Delato, *& conuicto de Furto, Pix bulliens super Caput eius excuciatur ad cognoscendum eum, & in primam Terram cui Naues applicuerint, proiiciatur.*

So few as they be, yet they are seuere enough.

1. He *that Killeth a man in the Shippe; shall be bound and made fast to the dead body, and so throwne into the Sea.*
2. *If it be done on the land, he shalbe tied fast to the dead body, & so both buried togeth r.*
3. *If any one be conuinced of drawing his Dagger or Knife, to strike an other therewith: or haue wounded any one to the shedding of Blood, his Hand shall be cut off.*
4. *If any one giue a blow on the eare to his fellow; three times he shall be ducked or dipte in the Sea.*
5. If *any one offend his fellow by outragious words and villainous behauiour, or blaspheme the name of God: as many times as he hath done so, as many ounces of Siluer shall he be condemned to paye.*
6. *Such as are accused and conuinced of Theft in the Army; shall haue his head couered with boyling Pitch, to the end, that he may be noated and knowne from the rest, and shall be set on shoare, at the first land the Shippe shall come to.*

The setting forth of the seuerall Fleets to Sea.

Augustus hauing left the Regencie of the Kingdome, to Queene *Alix* of *Champaigne* his Mother, and to his Vnckle, Brother to his Mother, *William* of *Champaigne* Archbishop of *Rheims*, Cardinall and Legate in *France*, called with the *White-Hands*, went to take Shipping at *Geneway*, and King *Richard* of *England* at *Marseilles*. From which Ports the seuerall Fleets set forth, sayling towards *Messina* in *Sicilie*, where they arriued at the Feast of Christmasse after their embarking, and were well entertained by *Tancred*, King of the Prouince.

Some Shipps and vessells there were in the Kings Fleete, that suffered wracking; but to recompence the Princes and Lords of *France*, that had receiued damage there-by, the King gaue to the Duke of *Bourgongne*, a Thousand Markes of Siluer: to the Counte of *Neuers* Sixe hundred Markes: to *William des Barres* Foure hundred Markes: to *William de Marlo* Foure hundred Ounces of Siluer: to the Bishop of *Chartres* Three hundred: to *Mathew de Montmorency*, Three hundred: to *Dreux de Mello* Two hundred: to diuers other Lords Two hundred, and to some other lesse, according to their qualities. And at *Messina* it was, that the bad intelligence began betweene the two Kings of *France* and *England*, about the diuorcement of Madame *Alix* of *France*.

Bounty giuen by the King toward soldiers maintained.

From *Sicilie* the King went to take landing before *Acres*, which the Christians had beseiedged the winter before: And the Citty of *Acres* was taken in the Moneth of Iuly, One thousand, one hundred fourescore and eleauen: after which surprizall, the King fell into a grieuous Sickenesse, and was constrained to prepare for his returne.

Sickenesse the cause of the Kings returne.

He

He tooke but three Gallies, conducted by one of *Geneway*, called *Le Rousseau de la Volte*, who brought him to land in *Apuglia*: from whence the King went to *Rome*, to kisse the Foote of Pope *Celestine*, after whose blessing receiued, he came into *France*, where he kept the Feaste of Christmasse at *Fontaine-blaude*, in the yeare One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and eleauen. He left his Army to the Duke of *Bourgongne* for succour of the Christians, and his Prisoners to exchange and redeeme captiued Christians.

King *Richards* reuenge for *Saladines* periurie.

King *Richard* perceiuing that *Saladine* made no reckoning of satisfying the composition, which was, to render back the true Crosse, and those Christian prisoners, which he had in the parts vnder his obedience: caused to be brought forth of the City Sixe thousand *Sarrazins*, or thereabout, whose heads were all smitten off, and drew great ransoms from some of the better Prisoners.

Now, concerning the fourth Voyage beyond the Seas, and attempted by the *Pallatines* of *France*: it was in the yeare One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and eighteene, in which expedition were Crossed as followeth.

Of the Fourth Voyage to the Holy-Land.

THibault, Count Palatine of *Brie* and of *Champaigne*, Second of the name, Nephew to King *Phillip Augustus*.
Lewes, Count of *Blois* and of *Chartres*.
Stephen, Count of *Perche*.
Simon, Count *Montfort l'Amaury*.
The Marquesse of *Montferrat*.
Renuld de Montmiraill.
Regnier, Bishop of *Troyes* in *Champaigne*.
Neuelon, Bishop of *Soissons*.
The Count of *Bricanne*.
Guy de Coucy.
Bauldwine, Count of *Flanders* and of *Henaulte*.
And *Henry* his Brother.
Thierrie of *Flanders*, their Nephew.

With many other Princes, Lords and Knights, perticulerly named in the Historie of this Voyage, written by the Marshall of *Champaigne Geoffrey de Villehardouyn*, Lord of *Ioinuille* and of *Vaucouleurs*, Gentleman of *Commercys*, who was one of the foremost in this Holy enterprise, According to some, he bare *D'Ermines au Lyon de Gueules*.

The Venetian and French Armies ioyned together.

The *French*, ioyned their Army with that of the *Venetians*, and Shipped themselues at *Venice*, vnder conduct of the Duke of *Venice Henry Dandolo*. In Company together they beseiedged the Citty of *Constantinople*, and became Maisters thereof.

By common consent of the chiefe and principall Lords of the Army, *Bauldwine*, Count of *Flanders* and of *Henault* was elected and Crowned Emperour of *Constantinople*, by the Latine name, in the great Patriarchall Church of Saint *Sophia*. *Constantinople* was Conquered on the Thursday before Palme-Sunday, in February, *Anno* One thousand, two hundred and Foure.

Constantinople conquered by the *French* and *Venetians*.

As for this *Bauldwine*, he reigned no longer then one yeare. For some haue written, that he was taken in Battaile by *Ioanniza*, King of the *Bulgarianes*, a barbarous and most cruell Prince, who hauing kept him some few Moneths in Prison at *Turnobium*; this bloudy *Bulgare* caused his Armes and Leggs to be cut off, and threw the rest of his body in a Valley, where this great Prince remained three whole dayes liuing, to fight with death and rauenous Beasts, which rent him in pieces. But life being expired, he commaunded his head to be cut off, and of the scull or braine-pan he made a Cupp, and dranke therein dayly very sollemnely.

But the Historyes of Times speake farre otherwise, for *Mathew Paris* in his History of *England*, vnder the yeare One thousand, two hundred, twenty foure, reporteth, that the said Emperour *Bauldwine*, after a long and tedious imprisonment, by penitence and wearisome Pilgrimage; returned into his owne Countrey of *Flanders*, where he was knowne (though wholly chaunged in his countenance) by many

of his Subiects and Seruants, who acknowledged him for their Lord, and did him homage,

The vnnaturall dealing of a daughter against her owne Father.

But the Countesse, that had long time held the dignities of her Father, made her complaint to the King of *France* her Soueraigne Lord against this *Bauldwine*, whom she tearmed an Imposture, and not her Father. So that to be briefe, *He was hanged with all shame and ignominie, in the middest betweene two olde filthie stincking Dogges. Procurauitque vt prædictus Pater suus ignominiosè suspenderetur, nam hinc & inde secit duos Canes Veteres, scilicet mirgos suspendi.*

Knighthood the maine matter of a mans life.

I haue seene the Interrogatories concerning this man, made to the Commissioners, deputed by the Parliament Generall of *France*, and part of the Articles; wherto he did not answere much amisse, though to some other ambiguously, and as it were by defect of memory. But when it came to the point, *Who had made him Knight, and in what place it was done?* He knew not then how to answere any thing in such an action, the most sollemne that he had in all his life time; which made him iudged, to be but a false, and a supposed *Bauldwine*.

The History according to the report of *Mathew Paris*

Yet notwithstanding, *Mathew Paris*, who liued no long distance of time, from that which concerneth this History; he maintaineth him to be the true *Bauldwine*, brought to this extremity of affliction, as some say that heard his owne confession (these are the words of *Mathew Maris*) for a most haynous sinne by him committed. For, hauing bin very long time kept in prison, he was deliuered by the pollitick meanes of a young Maide, vpon sollemne promise: that so soone as he should bee landed on any coast belonging to the Latine Christians, he would procure her to be baptized, and then take her as his true and lawfull wife. But being deliuered, and seeing himselfe safe in a Country of assurance: he caused her to be strangled before she was baptized, and thereby heaped three grieuous sinnes one vpon an other, for expiation whereof, the Pope sentenced him with an austere kinde of penance, proportionable to such notorious transgressions. Moreouer, that all such as had bin his assistants in this execrable murder, ended their liues in deserued, but most miserable manner, whereof *Paris* relateth the seuerall examples.

The Battaile *Bouuines* against the *Flemings*.

After the taking of *Bauldwine*, his Brother *Henry* was chosen the second Latine Emperour of *Constantinople*; He tooke to Wife *Agnes*, Daughter to *Boniface*, Marquesse of *Montserrat*, crowned King of *Thessalonica* (as we haue before said in the Genealogie of this House) One thousand, two hundred and sixe. *Henry* reigned but tenne yeares, and died the same day as King *Phillip Augustus* wunne the memorable Battaile of *Bouuines*, against the rebellious *Flemings*, the fiue and twentieth day of Iuly, in the yeare of Grace One thousand, two hundred and fifteene. By *Agnes* of *Montserrat* his wife, he left but one daughter, named

Yolande, Wife to *Peter de Courtenay*, Count of *Auxerre*, a Prince of the Blood of *France*, descended of *Peter* of *France*, Sonne to King *Lewes le Gros*, Sixt of the name, and of *Alix*, Daughter to the Count of *Morienna*, at this present called *Sauoye*.

Peter de Courtenay crowned Emperour of the East at *Rome*.

Peter de Courtenay, proclaimed Third Latine Emperour of *Constantinople*, departed from *France* for iourneying thither. He first went to *Rome*, where he was Crowned Emperour of the East by Pope *Honorius*, Third of the name. From thence he came to *Ottranto*, where he embarked his Wife and *Robert de Courtenay* his Sonne, sending them before to *Constantinople*. But he directed his course toward *Durazzo*, to possesse himselfe of that strong place, whether came *Theodorus Lascaris*, a Prince of *Greece*, and deadly enemie to the Latines. He came to proffer the Emperour *Peter* his seruice, and promised him his assistance, for conducting him safely into *Thessalie*, and to *Thessalonica*, the chiefe City of the Kingdome, held by the Marquesse of *Montserrat*. *Lascaris* Shipt the Emperour and his people in Vessells of deepe bottome, and then guided him thorow such intricate passages; that they which followed, were diuersly dispersed. So that he made seizure on his person, and shut him vp in an obscure prison, where he kept him for the space of two whole yeares: at the end whereof, the poore Emperour left his head to his enemy, in the yeare of Grace One thousand, two hundred and seauenteene.

The treachery of *Lascaris* against the Emperour.

Robert de Courtenay his Son, was Fourth Emperour, who perceiuing his affaires in *Greece* in no good fashion, but holding on from bad to worse: made a voyage into *Europe*

pe for supply and succour, wherewith returning into *Greece*; he died in *Achaia*, and then succeeded his Sonne

The last Emperour of the Latine name.

Bauldwine, Second of the name, Fift and last Emperour of *Greece* of the Latine name. He married *Martha* of *Lusignan*, youngest Daughter to *Iohn de Brenne*, who brought him (in mariage) the imaginarie title of King of *Ierusalem*. A mariage ill made for *Bauldwine*, hauing refused his aduancement, in marying a Wife of the Countrey.

A Citty of *Thrace* built vpon the River *Hebrus*.

The wicked *Alexis*, expelled from *Constantinople* by the *French*, had maried the Daughter to *Theodorus Lascaris* (who wrought the death of *Peter de Courtenay*) retreated to the Citty of *Adrianopolis*, retayning alwayes the Title of Emperour of *Constantinople*. At the same time also, an other *Lascaris* tooke the same title of Emperour of *Constantinople*, establishing his Imperiall Seate at *Trebisonde*, vsurping (for his part) *Cappadocia* and *Cholcis*. And thus the Empire of *Greece* was deuided into *Europe* and *Asia*. *Theodorus* (by his death) left the part of his vsurpation, to his Sonne in Law *Batazis*, after whom succeeded his Sonne *Theodorus*. He of *Trebisonde*, named *Iohn Lascaris*, had one only Daughter, whom her Father offred in mariage to *Bauldwine* the Second: young, and very ill aduised he was, in refusing such an aduantageable party, which would haue made him a peacefull possessour of the Empire; but he would needs marry with *Martha* of *Lusignan*.

Iohn de Brenne *Exarcate* of *Rauenna*, and Generall for the Church.

After the mariage was consummated at *Constantinople*, *Iohn de Brenne* (whom Pope *Gregorie* the Ninth had made *Exarcate* of *Rauenna*, and Captaine Generall of the Church, against the excommunicated Emperour *Fredericke* the Second, and against whom, *Iohn de Brenne* valiantly defended *Romania*) gaue councell to his Sonne in Law *Bauldwine*, to make a step into *France*, aswell to renew his auncient acquaintance, and get succour thence against *Lascaris*: as also to visite those Lands which he possessed in *France*, *Flanders* and elsewhere. So that *Bauldwine* went into *France*, in *Anno* One thousand, two hundred, forty and fiue. Returne we now agayne to the Voyages of the Holy-Land.

Yearely voyages of the *French* beyond the Seas.

It was an ordenary exercise of the *French*, to Crosse themselues euery yeare for beyond the Seas, as well for the great Pardons which they had thereby, honour and reputation; as for the large exemptions, that the Crossed derined from those Voyages. And heercupon, the Officers for the King, the Lords of Fiefs, and others beside, would labour for these *Croisades* on the one side, and the Crossed on the other (willing to extend their franchises longer, then otherwise they could) had their Processe from the Court, and vpon these contestations of the parties, enquirie was made by the Bishops of *Paris* and *Senlis*, Councellors of the Court, & Commissioners nominated by them, for composition of the enquiry. After which, came the decree of the Iudge and Lords of the Enquest, expressing regularly the Exemptions of the Crossed, and establishing them afterward effectually in those cases, wherefore the decree beareth in title the words, which are contained in the Court Registers, for the establishment of the Crossed: as heare you may reade the tearme of the Courts decree, giuen in the Easter Parliament, One thousand, two hundred and foureteene.

Stabilimentum Cruce-signatorum.

PHILIPPVS Dei Gratia Francorum *Rex semper Augustus*. Noueritis *Quod nos per dilectos, & fideles nostros P. Parisiensem, & G. Syluanectensem Episcopos, ex assensu Domini Legati fecimus diligentèr inquiri, qualiter sancta Ecclesia consueuit defendere* Cruce-signatos, & ipsorum Cruce signatorum libertates; *qui facta inquisitione, pro bono Pacis inter* Regnum & Sacredotium *vsque ad instans Consilium Rothomum, ista volumus obseruari.*

Primo *Quod nullus Cruce-signatus Burgensis, vel Rusticus, siue Mercator fuerit, siue non, primo Anno quo Crucem assumpsit, Tallietur; nisi Tallia fuerit imposita prius, quam Crucem assumet: & si primo Anno imposita fuerit, immunis erit secundo Anno, nisi ali-*

quid accipatur pro Exercitu. Tunc autem Talliam esse impositam intelligimus, quando denuntiatum est alicui, vel Domui suæ, quantum debeat soluere, vel ponere in Tallia.

Quia vero constat de Consuetudine hactenus obtenta in Regno Franciæ quod Crucesignati debeant Exercitum, nisi per speciale Priuilegium Domini Regis sint exempti: Dicimus quod in Exercitu quilibet Cruce-signatus de prædictis dare tenetur, siue Cruce signatur ante Citationem, siue post, si tamen debeat Exercitum.

Si Rex viderit expedire quod Villa mittat in Exercitum Seruientes, potius quam illi qui sunt de Villa vadant; poterit Rex accipere de Exercitu de Cruce-signatis competenter: Sed habebunt de cetero Cruce-signati electionem eundi in Exercitum, si voluerint: vel ponendi portionem suam in prisia, pro redemptione Exercitus facta; & si grauati fuerint de prisia, ad Diocesanum Episcopum, vel eius Officialem habebunt recursum.

Si vero Cruce-signatus habeat possessiones quæ debeant Talliam, reddet Talliam quasi non esset Cruce-signatus: & si neget possessiones debere Talliam, probetur coram Diocesano Episcopo, vel eius Officiali.

De Cruce-signatis manentibus in Communijs dicimus, quod si a Communia aliqui accipiant propter Exercitum Regis, vel clausuram Villæ, vel defensionem Villæ ab Inimicis obsessæ, vel Communiæ debitum factum & iuratum reddi, antequam Crucem assumerent; partem suam ponent in prisia, sicut & alij non Cruce-signati: De debito vero contracto a Communia, post Crucis assumptionem, immunis erit Cruce-signatus vsque ad presentem morain, & quandiu erit in Peregrinatione.

Si Bailliui Domini Regis aliquem Cruce-signatum deprehinderint ad præsens forefactum, pro quo debeat membris mutilari, vel Vitam amittere, secundum consuetudinem Curiæ Secularis; Ecclesia non defendet eum, vel res eius. In alijs autem leuioribus, & minoribus forefactis, pro quibus non debeat membris mutilari, vel Vitam amittere, Baillinus non debet corpus Cruce-signati, vel res eius capere, vel captum retinere, quin reddat absolute ipsum, & res suas Ecclesiæ requirenti cum pro iure faciendo.

Si autem in forefacto conuictus fuerit de tali forefacto pro quo debeat iuxta Iudicium Secularium consuetudinem membris mutilari, vel Vitam amittere; Ecclesia nec ipsum, neque res eius amplius defendet. De alijs conuictus, in foro Ecclesiæ, secundum consuetudinem Villæ, emendet Leso.

Quod si Dominus Rex alicui Burgo, vel Ciuitati, vel Castello concesserit immunitatem Exercitus, si petat Rex aliquid de eis pro Exercitu, Cruce signati primo Anno nihil ponent.

De Feodis autem, & Censuis, respondeat Cruse-signatus coram Domino Feodi, vel Censiue, & si grauatus fuerit, retractet se ad Episcopum, vel eius Officialem.

Si vero Cruce-signatus conueniat quemcumque Christianum super debito, vel iniuria corporali sibi illata, vel a Christiano conueniatur super præmissa, electionem habeat conueniendi eum sub Iudice Seculari, vel Ecclesiastico, sub quo maluerit.

Nullus Cruce-signatus tenetur respondere in foro Seculari, sed in Ecclesiastico, exceptis Feodis, & Censuis, de quibus litigabunt coram Dominis Feudorum, & Censuarum.

De possessione quam pacifice tenuerunt per Diem, & Annum, obseruentur prædicta, donec Cruce-signati perfecerint Peregrinationem suam.

Si autem super negotio Cruce-signatorum aliquæ nouæ dubitationes emerserint, ad dictos prædictos Episcopos recurratur.

Ista pro bono Pacis per totum Domanium Domini Regis, de Cruce-signatis pro Terra Hierosolymitana, vsque ad Concilium volumus obseruari, Saluis iure, & Consuetudinibus Regni Francorum, & auctoritate Sacro-sanctæ Romanæ Ecclesiæ per omnia.

Actum Parisijs in Parlamento Anno Domini Millesimo Ducentesimo Decimo Quarto Mense Martio.

An Establishment of the Crossed.

PHILLIP by the Grace of God King of France euer Augustus &c. Know ye that we by our beloued, and faithfull Bishops P. of Paris, and G. of Senlys, with the assent of the Lord Legate, haue caused diligent inquirie to bee made, how the holy Church hath bin accustomed to defend the Crossed, and the liberties of the Crossed; Who for the good of the Peace betweene the Kingdome and Priesthood, doe will these things to be obserued, vntill the next Romain Councell.

First,

First, that no Crossed Burgesse or Husbandman, whether he be Merchant or no, shall bee taxed the first yeare, wherein he hath taken the Crosse, except the Taxe be imposed before he shall take the Crosse: And if it be imposed the first yeare, he shall be free the second (except somewhat be taken for the Armie). We vnderstand a Taxe then to be imposed, when knowledge is giuen to any one, or left at his house, how much he ought to pay, or put on the tallie.

And because it is manifest according to the Custome held in the Realme of France, that the Crossed do owe and are engaged to the Army, except they be exempted by the speciall priuiledge of our Lord the King. We signifie that euery Crossed in the Armie is bound to giue, according to the premises, whether he be Crossed before summons or after, if so be that he owe sth dutie to the Army. Debeant Exercitum.

If the King shall see it expedient, that a Towne or village send forth seruants into the Armie, rather then they of the Towne should goe themselues, the King may take conueniently of the Armie, and of the Crossed: But otherwise the Crossed shall haue their choice of going into the Army (if they will) or of putting their portion in the prisage, made for redemption of the Army; And if they be grieued about the said prisage, they shall haue recourse to the Bishop Diocesan, or to his Officiall.

But if a party Crossed hath possessions which owe Tallage, he shall pay Tallage, as if hee were not Crossed. If he deny his possessions to owe Tallage, let it be tryed before the Bishop Diocesan, or his Officiall.

Concerning those Crossed, that abide in Communities or Colledges: We say, that if any of the Colledge, either for the Kings Army, or for the inclosing of a Towne, or for the defence of a towne besiedged by the enemy, or of a Colledge shall receiue a debt made, and sworne to be repaide, before they did assume the Crosse, they shall lay their part in the prisage, as others that are not Crossed. But concerning a debt contracted of a Colledge, after the taking of the Crosse; the Crossed shall be free for the present time of his staye, and as long as he shall be in his voyage. Communitz.

If the Kings Baylieffs shall take any Crossed for a present offence, or act committed abroad, for the which he ought to haue his members maimed, or to loose his life, according to the custome of the secular Court; The Church shall not defend him nor his goods. But in other lighter and lesse offences, or Acts committed abroad, for the which he ought neither to bee dismembred, nor loose his life, the Bailiffe ought not to take the body, nor goods of the Crossed, nor retaine them being taken; but absolutely restore him and his goods to the Church, requiring him for the doing of Iustice.

But if in the fact, he shall be conuicted of such an offence, for the which hee ought according to the custome of secular Iudges, to be maimed in his limbs, or suffer death; The Church shall no more defend him nor his goods. But being conuicted of other crimes, let him make good the hurt in the Ecclesiasticall Court, according to the custome of the Towne.

If our Lord the King haue granted to any Burrough, Citty, or Towne Freedome of the Army: If the King demand any thing of them for the Army, the Crossed shall lay downe nothing the first yeare. Castello.

Concerning Fees and Fines, let the Crossed answer before the Lord of the Fee or Fine; and if he find himselfe too much burthened, let him repaire to the Bishop, or his Officiall.

If a man Crossed conuent any Christian, vpon a debt or corporall iniury offred vnto him: or by a Christian shall be conuented about the premisses; let him choose whether hee will call him before a secular, or an Ecclesiasticall Iudge, which he will.

No man Crossed is bound to answer in a secular, but in a Court Ecclesiasticall. (Fees and Fines being excepted) concerning which, they shall commence suite before the Lords of the Fees and Fines.

Concerning possession, which they haue peaceably held for a day and a yeare; let the premisse be obserued, vntill the parties Crossed haue accomplished their Pilgrimage.

But if about the affaires of the Crossed, any new doubts doe arise; let them haue recourse to the two foresaid Bishops.

Wee commaund these things to bee obserued, for the good of Peace through all the Dominion of the King, concerning those that are Crossed for the holy Land, (the rites and customes of the Realme of France, and the Authority of the Romaine Church in all things kept vnviolated.

Made in Parliament at Paris in the yeare of our Lord. 1214.

Such

Such were (in those times) the Franchisses, Freedomes, and Exemptions of the Crossed, who after their death, if they were Crossed, that is to say, dyed after they had taken the *Croisade*, and had not gone in the holy Voyage, or after it carryed Palmes: had yet the honour to be carryed to the Graue Armed, and haue *Their Legges Crossed one ouer the other*. In this fashion, and no otherwise were they figured on Tables, Tombes, flatte Graue Stones, or raised by Caruing; as yet is to be seene in the Cloysters of Ancient Monasteries of *France*, *Flanders*, and in diuers other places else.

The Buriall obserued for them of the Croisade.

In the yeare, One thousand, two hundred and sixteene, a great *Croisade* was made in *France* and *Italy*, for going to succour the Christians beyond the Seas. *Saladine*, their Potent enemy was dead at *Damas*, hauing left two Sonnes, the one *Caliphe* of *Ægypt*, and named *Meralit*, and the other of *Syria* and *Ierusalem*, whom they called *Affadine*, who gouerned then, when the Christian Armie (whereof wee now speake) tooke landing in *Palestine*.

The death of *Saladine* at *Damas*.

In this Armie were present, Prelates of *France*; the Bishops of *Paris*, of *Autune*, and of *Lysieux*.

Of *Italy*, the Bishops of *Millayne*, of *Rhegium*, of *Fauenca*, and of *Brescia*, with other Prelates beside, and threescore thousand Souldiours.

At the landing of this great Armie, which shaped her course to besiedge the City of *Damieta* in *Ægypt*; the Sultane *Affadine* desired peace with the Christian Princes, as well for himselfe, as the Sultane of *Ægypt* his Brother. In the doing whereof he promised that he would deliuer to the Princes, the holy Crosse, taken from them by his Father *Saladine*, and yeeld vp the City of *Ierusalem* into their power: Which offers the Christian Princes accepted, as the greatest aduantage that could happen to them: and now so much the better, in regard that it was so freely tendered.

Peace required by *Affadine* of the Christian Princes.

Against which offer, was opposition made in a brauery, by *Pelagius*, a Spaniard by Nation, Legate for the businesse of the Crosse in the Armie, who was possessed with a strange opinion, as many more of his Countrey were beside; concerning a Prophesie then rumoured abroade, fondly noysed, and idlely vnderstood: That at this very time, the Lawe of *Mahomet* should bee quite ouerthrowne by a *Spanyard*, which he supposed to be himselfe, and so sent backe the Sultanes Deputies, without effecting any thing. This deniall was the cause, that the Sultane (in despight of the Christians) raced and spoyled the very godliest places in *Ierusalem*.

Damieta was surprized in the assault by the Christians, in the yeare of Orace, one thousand, two hundred and nineteene, the fifteenth day of *Nouember*.

The Christians take *Damieta* by assault.

This surprizall did so mount the Legate *Spanyards* courage, that contemning Military Order and Discipline; he auanced on the Christian Armie, to besiedge *Grand Cairo*. The Sultane suffered this great Armie, to run it selfe in out of breath, consisting yet of more then threescore thousand men, which (euen in a very short moment of time) saw it selfe famished, and afflicted with diuersitie of deadly diseases: so that more then halfe part of them being dead, and the rest very sickely languishing: he was glad to buy a Retreate, and for it to surrender to the Sultane *Damieta*, which had cost so much in the taking. This reddition was done in *September*, One thousand two hundred, twentie and three. So the Legates glory vanished into smoake, himselfe hated and detested of the Christians; whose misfortune hee had caused, and ruinated the affaires of the Holy-Land.

A grieuous mortalitie in the Christian Armie.

In the meane while, the King of *Ierusalem*, *Iohn de Brenne*, obtained of the Sultane *Affadine*, a Truce for the space of eight yeares, by meanes whereof he had leysure to leaue *Syria*, & passe into *Europe*, to request the succor of the Christian Princes. Going into *Italie*, he married his eldest daughter *Yolande* to *Fredericke*, King of *Sicilie*, afterward Emperour, second of the name: who deceassing without children, the Title and Right in the Kingdome of *Ierusalem*, went to her Sister *Martha*, wife to the Emperour

Truce taken for eight yeares space with the Sultane.

Bauldwine, second of the Latine name, according as we shall now come to relate: for thus was the State of the Kings of *Ierusaleem*.

Concer-

Concerning the Kings of Ierusalem, in their succeeding each after other.

I. *Godfrey* of *Bologne*, chosen the first King of *Ierusalem*, seauen dayes after the holy City was taken: he reigned but one yeare, and leauing no issue, hee had for Successour his Brother

II. *Bauldwine*, whose Reigne continued eighteene yeares: And after him succeeded his Cousine Germaine

III. *Bauldwine*, second of the name, who (before) was Count of the Isle in *Flanders*, and of *Edessa* in the Easte, Sonne to the Count of *Rethell*, who reigned thirteene yeares, or thereabout. He dyed in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, one hundred, thirty and one, and dying, left the kingdome to his Eldest daughter *Millesena*, wife to

IIII. *Foulques*, Count of *Anion*, who in regard of his wife, was the Fourth King of *Ierusalem*. His Reigne lasted eleauen yeares, and dying in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, one hundred forty and two, left for King his eldest Sonne

V. *Bauldwine*, third of the name: who dying in the yeare, One thousand, one hundred, threescore and three, left the Kingdome to his Brother

VI. *Amaury*, who deceassed in the yeare, One thousand, one hundred, threescore and thirteene; and left for Successour his Sonne

VII. *Bauldwine*, Fourth of the name, who reigned but Eight moneths onely: so that by his death, the Crowne of *Ierusalem* came to his Mother

IX. *Sybilla* (Sister to *Bauldwine* the Meazeled, wife to *Guy* of *Lusignan*) Sonne of *Hugh le Brun*, Count of *Lusignan*, and *de la Marche*, Ninth King of *Ierusalem*. Vnder whose reigne *Raymond* descended of the Auncient Countes of *Tolosa*, Count of *Tripoly* (of whom we haue formerly spoken) denyed the Christian Faith, and was Circumcised according to the false Lawe of *Mahomet*, yeelding himselfe to take part with *Saladine*: thereby betraying King *Guy* and the Christian Armie. Which wicked deede, gaue a great checke to the Christian Princes, and no meane hope to the Sultane *Saladine*, to chase them quite out of *Palestine*, and out of al which they possessed there beyond the Seas.

The Count of *Tripoly* denyes his Christian Faith, and the harm s ensuing thereon.

And thereupon, the Truce being broken, as we haue already said, by surprizing the Mother of *Saladine*, and the bad intelligence of *Raymond* of *Tripoly*: *Saladine* ouerthrew a puissant Armie, and besiedged the strong City of *Acres*, otherwise named *Ptolomais*, then held and commanded by the Knights of the *Temple*, and the *Hospitallers* of Saint *Iohn* of *Ierusalem*, to whom the King of *Ierusalem Bauldwine* had giuen it. The Christian Armie was vanquished in a fought Battaile (when the Count of *Tripoly* played the Traytour, as before you haue heard) and tooke prisoner King *Guy*, with the true Crosse, and a great number of spoyles, rich in value.

The City of *Acres* called *Ptolomais*.

By this surprizall of the holy City, the Kingdome of *Ierusalem* ceassed, and tooke ending, when it had beene held by the Latine Christians fourescore and eight yeares. And the descendants of *Saladine*, Sultanes of *Ægypt*, held it three hundred and thirty yeares; when the Great *Turke Selim* (growing mightie in Armes) conquered from the Sultanes of *Ægypt* the City of *Ierusalem*, which the *Turkes* (in the Arabian language) call *Godsbarich*, and by an other name *Cuzumobarech*, which signifieth *A Holy Cittie*, and which they left in such estate, as they conquered it from the *Mammelukes*: not in regard of any deuotion, but for the great taxations and tributes which they had by Christian Pilgrimes, to whom for benefite they granted accesse and entrance.

The ending of the Kingdome of Ierusalem held by the Latine Christians.

Now although King *Philip Augustus*, and his youngest Sonne Saint *Lewes* King of *France*, King *Richard* of *England*, the Infidells terror and affright in his time, and the Emperours of *Germany*, made infinite voyages for recouery of the Holy Land: yet notwithstanding, their attempts haue beene without vigour, for any way helping the holy City, which the Miscreants haue held euer since *Saladine* became Maister thereof, in the yeare, one thousand, one hundred, fourescore and seauen.

All the Christians forces haue failed of recouering Ierusalem.

After the taking of *Guy* of *Lusignan*, last King of *Ierusalem* in effect: the Christians were wholly expelled out of the Holy City, and had not any more command there.

King

King *Guy*, and the Great Maister of the *Templers*, at the end of two yeares, by paying the price of a great ransome, were deliuered out of prison. By the death of Queene *Sybilla* and her children; during the Siedge of *Ptolomais*; the Crowne of *Ierusalem* fell to *Isabell*, who was Sister to Queene *Sybilla*.

IX. *Isabell* had fiue husbands, *Emfroy*, *Conrad*, and in third marriage shee was Wife to

X. *Henry*, Count *Palatine* of *Champaigne* and *Brie*, who was not Crowned King of *Ierusalem*: after whose death, she espoused in fift mariage

The Issue of *Isabell* Queene of *Ierusalem*.

XI. *Amaury* of *Lusignan*, Brother to King *Guy*. Queene *Issabell* deceasing, the Crowne departed from the house of *Lusignan*: By her first Husband *Emfroy*, Counte of *Toron*, she had not any Children: By her second Husband *Conrad*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, she had but one Daughter named *Mary*, Queene of *Ierusalem*: By *Henry* of *Champaigne* her third Husband, she had two daughters; *Alix*, Queene of *Cyprus*, and *Phillip*, Wife to *Ayrard de Brenne*, who contended for the Countie of *Champaigne*, and thereupon ensued the decree which we haue obserued, speaking of the Peeres of *France*. By *Amaury* of *Lusignan* her fift Husband, she had a Sonne that died young, and two Daughters, *Sybilla*, Wife to *Leo*, First King of *Armenia*, and *Melizena*, Wife in second mariage to *Boemond*, third Prince of *Antioche*. After the death of Queene *Isabell*, the Crowne of *Ierusalem* came to her Eldest Daughter

Mary, Wife to *Iohn de Brenne*, and in this mariage were borne two Daughters, *Yoland* and *Martha*.

Yoland was wife to *Frederick*, King of *Sicilie*, who had no Children by his Wife; and yet notwitstanding, his Successours in the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, haue caried the title and Armes of Kings of *Ierusalem*, euen to this day.

The other Daughter was

Martha, Wife to *Bauldwine*, last Latine Emperour of *Constantinople*, as hath beene said already.

Iohn de Brenne was in *France* to craue succour, when King *Phillip Augustus* departed out of this life to the Kingdome of Heauen, in the Citty of *Mante*, the yeare of Grace, One thousand, three hundred twenty and three, in the Ides of Iuly. The Masse for his Obsequies and Funerall, was said and celebrated by *Conrad*; Bishop *Du Port*, Cardinall and Legate to the Sacred Seate, for the warre of the *Abbigenois* Heretiques; with *William*, Archbishop of *Rheimes*, Cardinall of Saint *Sabina*, both singing together, and in one keye or noate, at two Altares one neere the other, to whom answered two Bishops, Priests and Monkes.

The death of King *Phillip Augustus*, in *Anno*, 1223.

Missam exequialem celebrarunt simul Portuensis Episcopus, & Remensis Archiepiscopus Vna Voce *ad duo Altaria propinqua, ceteris Episcopis, cum Clericis & Monachis, quorum aderat multitudo, assistentibus, & eis respondentibus, sicut Vni. Intér quos adfuit, &* Ioannes *Illustris* Rex Hierosolymitanus, *qui in Franciam venerat, pro negotijs, & necessitatibus Terræ Sanctæ*, So saith *Rigordus*.

The liberall bounty of King *Phillip Augustus*.

The said King *Phillip Augustus* (by his will and Testament) Legacied for the affaires in the Holy-Land, Three hundred thousand Parisian Poundes: To the said King *Iohn de Brenne*, One hundred thousand: To the Order of the *Templers*, One hundred thousand: And to that of the *Hospitable* Knights of Saint *Iohn* of *Ierusalem* the like summe of an hundred thousand Pounds of *Paris*.

He attempted a Voyage beyond the Seas, in the time of the King Saint *Lewes*, to re-obtaine the Holy-land; wherein were these Chiefe men.

An other Voyage for the Holy-Land.

THibault, King of *Nauarre*, First of the name, Count *Palatine* of *Brie* and *Champaigne*, Fift of the Name.
Peter Maucler, Duke of *Bretaigne*.
Henry, Count *de Barre*.
Amaury, Count *de Montfort*.
Richard de Chaumont.
Lancelot de l'Isle.

And

And many great Lords of *France*, *Nauarre*, *Germany*, and other places. The King of *Nauarre*, beeing chosen Chiefe, and Captaine Generall of this holy enterprise: left the Gouernment of his Kingdome to Queene *Margaret* of *Bourbon* his wife, and to the Bishop of *Pampelona Dom Pero Ximenes* his Chancellour, and they vndertooke the voyage in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, two hundred, thirty and eight.

The King of *Nauarre* Generall of the Armie.

The Christian Armie desiring to Embarke at *Geneway*, for their more speedy passage into the East; were delayed for a time, and afterward vtterly denyed by the *Geneways*. So that they were enforced to take a further way about, by *Germany*, *Hungary* and *Thrace* to *Constantinople*, and from thence to passe the *Bosphorus*, as also the Straite at Mountaine *Taurus*, where the *Sarrazins* were met together in huge multitudes, to hinder the passage of the Christians. And now to speake the truth of their Armie, after they had sustayned infinite annnoyances, & miserable scarsitie of victuals; it came to *Antioch*, but so rent and shaken, that they which were left remaining, could not performe any great act of Armes in the Holy Land. Onely through bad intelligence of the Christians; diuided among themselues; by the secret practises and plottings of the second Emperour *Fredericke*, a deadly enemy to the *French*, and pertaker with the Infidells.

The Christian voyage vtterly disappointed.

So that King *Thibault*, the Princes, Lords, and Knights which were left of the Armie, cut and squared into two parties: were compelled to take the Seas, and passe home againe into their Countries.

Their returne heme againe.

In the yeare of Grace, One thousand two hundred forty and eight, the King Saint *Lewes* vndertooke a voyage ouer the Seas, to recouer the Holy Land, and succor the poore Christians, ill entreated by the *Sarrazins*.

We haue before reported, that *Bauldwine*, second of the name, Fift and last Emperour of *Constantinople*, made a passage for *France* in the yeare, One thousand, two hundred and forty, onely to obtaine ayde, for better furnishing the occasions, greatly disioynted and out of frame: they of *Lascaris* hauing their ascendant vpon him. *Bauldwine* continued in *France* aboue three yeares, and during his voyage, hee had giuen the Gouernment of his Empire, to the King *Iohn de Brenne* his Father in Law. For succour of the Frontiers or borders, and (in some measure) to defray the charges of his iourney; he engadged to the *Venetians*, all the Reliques in *Constantinople*, which yeelded him great summes of money.

Iohn de Brenne Gouernour of the Empire in the absence of *Bauldwine*.

The King Saint *Lewes* released their engadgement, and caused them to be brought to the Chappell Royall in his Pallace at *Paris*, by him newly builded of admirable structure, vpon the old foundation of the Chappell Royall, belonging to King *Robert*, Sirnamed the *Deuoute*, called *Our Lady of the Starre*. Euery yeare, the last day of September, is celebrated the receiuing of those Reliques in the same holy Chappell, where Diuine Seruice is said on the Eeue and day by the *Mendicants*, and in other Monasteries of *Paris*, and it is reported, that S. *Lewes* sent part of the Crowne of Thornes, and of the true Crosse, to the Cathedrall Churches of *Pampelona* and *Tolledo*.

By the engadgement, or rather forcible carrying away of so many precious Reliques from *Constantinople*, hauing bin there so long time carefully kept; a great rumour arose among the Inhabitants: which was much furthered by the absence of *Bauldwine*, and death of *Iohn de Brenne*, whose wise conduct and vigilancy, held a seuere restraint vpon all insolent presumption. After his death, the *Lescaris* of *Adrianople* and of *Trebisonde* began to appeare, at which sad tydings, *Bauldwine* passed presently into *Greece*, where being arriued, his credit was so lost, and such a sad face set on all affaires for him: that no hope being left of any comfort in this case, he deliuered his Son (but very young in years) to certaine Merchants of *Bruges*, to be sent away for *Flanders*, with all his money and Iewells.

Murmour in *Constantinople* for losse of the Reliques, and troubles ensuing thereon.

The *Lescaris*, Father & Son in Law, dying in the interim of these molestations; *Michael Paleologus*, Tutor to the Sons of young *Theodor Lascaris*, awaked all his Familiars and acquaintance; and by the death of the Children in their minority, he caused himselfe to be nominated for Emperour of *Greece*. In a fought Battaile, he tooke *William*, Prince of *Antioch*, Prisoner, who was enforced (for his redemption) to yeeld him the strong City of *Epidaurus* in *Achaya*.

The rising of *Michael Paleologus* to the Empire.

Paleo-

Paleologus so well managed his victory, that soone hee shewed himselfe before *Constantinople*, where the *French*, beeing vnable to hold that potent Citty by their strength, and the people therein beeing their mortall enemies: *Bauldwine* the Emperour, *Iustinian* the Patriarch of *Constantinople* (with all the Latines) left the City, returning backe againe into *Europe*. So that without striking a stroake, *Paleologus* gaue ending to the Latine Empire, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, two hundred, Fifty and nine, the *French* hauing held *Constantinople* fiue and fifty yeares onely.

The ending of the Latine Empire in *Bauldwine*.

As for the Christians in *Palestine*, they had a litle strength and courage left them, notwithstanding their hard handling by the Sultanes of *Damas* and *Ægypt*. Whereupon the good King Saint *Lewes*, seeing himselfe deliuered from all his enemies, his Kingdome in quiet, hauing a wise mother and a wife that dearely affected him, with a number of godly children, and himselfe in the prime and floure of his age, he determined to crosse the Seas.

He tooke the Croisade, Scrippe and Pilgrimes Staffe, at the hands of the Bishop of *Paris*, his Curate: And with him were Crossed as followeth.

Of the Croisade vndertaken by the King Saint *Lewes*: And of such as went in the Voyage with him. in *Anno*. 1248.

Alphonsius, Count of *Poictiers*.
Charles, Count of *Anion*. } Brethren to the King.
Robert, Count of *Artois*.
Hugh, Duke of *Bourgongne*.
William, Count of *Flanders*.
Guy of *Flaunders*, his Brother, who dyed at *Compeigne* before the Voyage.
Hugh, Count of Saint *Paul*, and of *Blois*.
Gaultier de Castillon, his Nephewe.
Hugh le Brun de Luzignan, Count *de la March*; And his Sonnes.
The Count of *Salebruch*.
Gaubert, Count of *Aspremont*, and his Brethren.
John, Lord of *Ioinuille*, and Seneschall of *Champaigne*, Authour of the life of S. *Lewes*, out of whose writings we haue gathered the particularities of this last voyage, *Il portoit d'Azur, a Trois Broyes en Cheuron d'Or, liees de Annelets d'Argent*.
Peter, Count of *Bretaigne*.
John his Sonne.
Gaultier, Viscount of *Meaux*: *Qui Portoit d'Argent à vne Fesse de Gueules*.
There is a man Sirnamed *Giffard* of *Meaux*, who in this voyage *Portoit de Sable à vne Iumelle d'Argent*: At this returne from thence he tooke *D'Argent à Cinq Chapeaux d'Espines de Sable*. 2.2.1.
Huguemain de Luzarches, Portoit d'Argent à vn Lyon de Gueules.
Huguemain (in Latine *Hugo-magnus*.)
Archambauld de Bourbon, the younger dyed in *Cyprus*.
John de Montfort: *Qui Portoit de Gueules au Lyon d'Argent*.
William de Barres, called *Le Barrois*, who in this voyage carryed *Barre d'Argent & de Sable de Six pieces*. And afterward tooke *D'Or à la Croix Nillee de Sable*.
Stephen de Digoyne, *Qui Portoit vn Eschiquier d'Argent, et de Sable*.
Raoull de Coucy.
And an vnspeakeable number of Lords, Knights, and men of Armes, both on Horse and Foot.

Prelates that Crossed themselues in this Voyage.
Eudes de Chasteau Raoull (*de Castro Radulphi*) who was Chancellour of *Paris*, and afterward Bishop of *Toscanelle*, and Legate of this Croisade, named by Pope *Innocent* the fourth.
Iubell, Archbishop of *Rheimes*.

Philip, Archbishop of *Bourges*.
Robert, Bishop of *Beauuais*.
Garnier, Bishop of *Laon*.
William, Bishop of *Orleans*.
Gilles Gilles, a Natiue of *Saumour* in *Aniou*, and buryed in the Church of our Lady of *Nantilly*, Keeper of the Seales of *France* (forgotten by *Ferron*) and afterward Archbishop of *Tyre*. *Qui Portoit d'Argent à vne Croix Ancree de Gueules, a pied fiche dedans vn Coeur de mesme*.
With a great number of Abbots, and men of the Church.

This Religious King Saint *Lewes* departed from the Citty of *Paris*, to passe away on this voyage beyond the Seas, on Fryday after Pentecoste, In the yeare of Grace, One thousand, two hundred forty, and eight, hauing for Legate in the Christian Armie *Eudes*, the venerable Bishop of *Tuscula*, sent by Pope Innocent the Fourth to *Lyons*, to which place he was withdrawne by his permission, to shun the fury of the Emperour *Frederick* the Second.

The setting on o the Christia Armie.

From *Lyons*, the King went to take Shipping at *Marseilles*, the fiue and twentieth day of the Moneth August, the same yeare, One thousand, two hundred fortie eight. This embarking was not done at *Aiguemortes*, as some great Chroniclers haue written, who haue followed the words of another *William* of *Nangis*, Monke of Saint *Denys*, in the Life of the said King Saint *Lewes*. Wherefore hee is to correct his passage in the foure and twentieth Chapter. *Tandem Rex ad portum Aquarum mortuarum perueniens*, and say, *Portum Massilienſium*. And in the same Chapter, where he speaketh of Saint *Lewes* his arriuall in *Cyprus*. *Rex a portu recedens, & duce Dunuigans die Iouis ante festum Sancti Mathei Apostoli de nocte in Cypro Nimotitum applicuit*. He should say *Nemosium*, a Porte of the Sea, built by *Guy* of *Luzignan*, first King of *Cyprus*, and called at this present *Lemisso*.

The Anny tooke Shipping at *Marseilles*.

Wee haue sayde, that in the Voyage of *Phillip Augustus*, at the taking of the strong Citty of *Acres*, there were two Admiralls Prisoners, the one of them beeing named *Karacux*, by whose councell and aduise (as they beyond the Seas were perswaded) the Sultane *Saladine* had conquered the great Estates which hee possessed. *Phillip* hauing commaunded, that hee should bee brought before him, at the first sight, despised the pouerty of his outward appearance. But hauing vnderstood by the Latine Lords, dwelling there beyond the Seas, what excellency of spirit was in this Miscreant; he entreated and coniured him by his honour, to giue him true and faithfull aduise and councell, in such matters as he would then demand of him.

Karacus, one of the Admirals taken by the Christians.

The *Sarrazin* answered, that there was no neede of praying and supplicating, to cause and winne aduise from him by way of Councell: because quoth hee) the name of Counceller carryeth along with it, an obligation of speaking and Councelling the Truth, and giuing his iudgement in soundnesse of conscience. For the name of Counceller is so sacred of it selfe, as hee that beareth Title thereof: ought to haue his word and fayth inuiolable, and in much greater commendation, then the title of an honest or wise man. And therefore Sir, saide hee, I will freely giue you mine aduise, in such demands as you can vse to mee. Hauing thus spoken, hee caused a Basin of cleane water to bee brought: and after hee had therewith washed his face, hands and feete, according to the Lawe of the Prophet *Mahomet*: hee bowed his body downe towards the ground, adoring Heauen, by exhalting his hands vp thereto. Then the King made this demaund to him.

The *Sarrazins* answere to King *Phillip Augustus*.

What meanes may the Christians vse, whereby to make themselues Maisters of the Holy Land: And to keepe and defend it against the Sarrazins?

The demand of K. *Phillip*.

Karacux much astonished at such a demand, first crying out aloud, returned this answer to our Conquerer.

The Answere of Karacux to the Demaund of King Phillip Augustus: First as it is Recorded in French, and then Englished.

Sachez que ce Iour sera la cause de la ruine totale de nostre Nation; & puis qu'il est impossibile d'Aller contre la Prescience Diuine, & que par icelle ie suis force d'en predire ce qui en aduiendra quelque Iour, Ie vous Dis, *que quand vous auriez acquis cette Terre que vous appellez Saincte, & que l'eussiez entourree d'vne forte muraille de Fer, ou de Diamant, & remplie de Soldats indomptables (comme vous en auez) pour la garde d'icelle, il vous est impossibile de vous y maintenir, sans auoir au prealable acquis, & Conqueste l'Egypte. Vous autres Chrestiens estes les plus fortz sur la Mer, & abondez en Vaisseaux, & Hommes experts au faict de la Marine, il vous est fort facile de vous en rendre Maistres. Toute l'Egypte depend du Nil, c'est sa Murraille, sa Barriere, & sa Mere-nourice: la Mer la borne d'vn coste, rendez-vous en les Maistres, vous n'aurez plus de besoin de mandier les moyens de garder le Royaume de* Hierusalem. *Vos Princes les Premiers Rois d'Iceluy, se rendirent Seigneurs, auecques peu de forces, d'Alexandrie, & de Pelouze; s'ils les eussent gardees, nostre Religion, long temps, a seroit exterminee: Priuez les Egyptiens des Commoditez du Nil, & de la Mer, & leur ostez la Nauigation, la grande Vile du* Caire *& toute l'Egypt vous tendront les Mains. Faictes autant ou plus de'stat d'vne Armee Maritime, que d'vne Terrestre, c'est le plus seur Conseil que ie vous peux donner.*

Know therefore, that this day will be the cause of the totall ruine of our Nation; And seeing it is impossible, to goe against the Prescience or Diuine foreknowledge, and thereby am forced to foretell that which shall one day come to passe: I tell you Sir, that when you haue wun this Land, which you call Holy, and shall haue engirt it with a strong wall of yron, or Diamond, and filled it with vnconquerable Soldiours (as you haue done) for the guard thereof; it is impossible for you to maintaine your selfe here, vntill you haue first of all wunne and conquered Ægypt. You Christians are the strongest on the Seas, and abound in shipping and men expert in the Arte of Naugation: it is very easie for you to become Maisters. The Ægypte dependeth vpon Nilus, that is her wall, her Barricadoe, and her Nursing Mother. The Sea boundeth it on the one side, and maketh you Maisters, you haue no needs to craue any better meanes, for keeping the Kingdome of Ierusalem. Your Princes the first Kings thereof, made themselues Lords (with few forces) of Alexandria, and of Pelouze: If they had kept them, our Religion had beene here long time since quite exterminated. Deprive the Ægyptians of the commodity of Nilus, and of the Sea, and take away their Nauigation: the great Citty of Cayro, with wholly all Ægypt, will shake hand with you. Make as much, or rather more account of a Nauall or Sea Armie, then of a Land; and this is the very sure Councell that I can giue you

Saint *Lewes* could credite this councell giuen to his Grandfather, and departing from *Cyprus*, descended thence to *Damieta*, which the *Sarrazins* forsooke in feare and frightment. He concluded to besiedge *Babylon*, the Capitall City of Ægypt, he ouerthrew his enemies in two foughten Battailes; the first at *Massorre*, where was slaine his Brother *Robert*, Counte of *Artois*; the other at *Rexill*. After which the Pestilence beeing dispersed in the Christian Armie, the King resolued of his returne to *Damieta*. Vpon his retreate, the *Sarrazins* possessed themselues of the passage, and the King beeing sicke, and very soare wounded; was taken prisoner at *Cazell*.

Babylon, the chiefe Citty of Egypt, it is now called *Bayalerk*.

The ransome of his person, was the reddition of the Citie of *Damieta* to the *Sarrazins*: And for his Armies ransome, the summe of foure hundred thousand pounds, which was weighed by Ballances, tenne thousand pounds in the Scale. Word was brought to the King, that tenne thousand pounds were faued in the first payment, by miscounting one Ballance weight to the *Sarrazins*. Whereupon the King commaunded *Phillip de Montfort* (who had the charge of the payments) to render backe the summe miscounted, and not to depart thence, till he saw it payed.

The worthy and Royall minde of the King S. *Lewes*.

Which condemneth their folly and rashnesse, who haue written, that the King gaue in pawne to the *Sarrazins*, the holy Sacramentall Hoast, for want of the pr... mis...

mised payment. And the proofe of the contrary appeared, in that King *Lewes* (after his deliuerance) continued fiue yeares beyond the Seas, where while he soiourned; he caused to be newly engirt with walles, the Citties of *Sidon*, *Iaffa* and *Cæsarea*, which droue the *Sarrazins* to no meane amazement, at the greatnes and Riches of the King, and of the Realme of *France*.

Saint *Lewes*, before his returne into *France*, made a Truce with the Soldane of *Ægypt* and of *Damas* for tennne yeares, and left great store of money with the Christians beyond the Seas, for repayring the Citties of *Tyre*, of *Tripoly*, of *Syria*, and the Citty of *Acres*, which was then the Seate Royall in the Holy Land: And wherein made their residing, the Patriarch of *Ierusalem*; the Great Masters of the *Templars*, *Hospitallers of Saint Iohn*, and other Orders of Religion, ordained in the East.

The City of *Acres* the Seat Royall of the holy Land.

The Truce of tenne yeares being expired, the Soldane of *Babylon* besiedged *Tripoly*, wherinto he entred forcibly, in the yeare one thousand, two hundred, fourscore and nine. Those of *Tyre*, *Sydon* and *Baruth* were taken the yeare before: None remained but the strong Citty of *Acres*, the dongeon and defence of the poore Christians, which were remaining beyond the Seas.

Tripoly and othe Citties wun from the Christians.

Mulech Sapherapes, Sonne to *Helpis*, Soldane of *Babylon*, who had conquered *Tripoly* planted Siedge before this Cittie, in the yeare, One thousand, two hundred, fourescore and Eleauen, and tooke it perforce, putting to the edge of the Sword, Twelue thousand Christians, which he found therein, racing it downe quite to the ground, and transporting the ruines thereof into remote countries, and leauing desolation where it stood.

The woefull Massacre of twelue thousand Christians.

Et Seges est vbi Troia fuit.

In this manner ended the holy Warre, and Conquest of the *Idumean* Lands by our *French* Princes, who had possessed them about two stundred yeares, to wit, from the yeare, One thousand, fourescore and nineteene, vntill the taking of *Acres*: And the holy Citty had no more Patriarches of the Latine name. At such time as *Saladine* became Maister thereof; he permitted all Christians to dwell there (the Latines excepted) according as yet they doe.

No more Patriarchs of the Latine name.

Phillip de Valois, King of *France*, Sixt and last of the name, obtayned of the Soldane of *Babylon Karlatey*, about the yeare of Grace, One thousand, three hundred, thirty Sixe, that the Gray Friers of the Latine Church might be lodged in *Ierusalem*, and preferred with the other Religions, to haue the *Holy Sepulcher* in perticuler keeping, which is obserued to this day. So that from three yeares to three yeares, of the same Family is sent to *Ierusalem*, that is to say, a certaine number of Religious Graye Fryers, of the Latine tongue. The Guardian whereof hath power and Authoritie, to weare the Crosse and Miter; to absolue sins, reserued to the Holy Seate, and to create Knights of the *Order of the Holy Sepulcher*, as sometimes formerly did the Patriarches of the Latine Church there at *Ierusalem*.

Gray Fryers sent euery three yeares to *Ierusalem*.

The Order of Cyprus, and of Luzignan: Called, *Of the Sword*. Instituted in the yeare, One thousand, one hundred, Foureſcore and Fifteene, by *Guye* of *Luzignan*, King of *Ierusalem*, and of *Cyprus*.

L'Ordre de Cypre et de Luzignan, dict de L'espee

CHAP. II.

The Originall and Genealogie of the Kings of Cyprus, and of Armenia.

HE haue heeretofore obserued, in speaking of the voyage made beyond the Seas, by *Phillip Augustus*, King of *France*, and *Richard*, King of *England*; that these two Princes beeing arriued in *Sicilie*, a quarrell and contention grewe betweene them, for the diuorce done by the same *Richard*, to Madame *Alix* of *France*,

Sister to King *Philip*. In ſtead of whom, King *Richard* tooke to Wife Madame *Berenguela*, or *Berengaria* of *Nauarre*, daughter to the King of *Nauarre Sancio*, Seauenth of the name, called the *Wiſe*. Which repudiation (vpon no ſubiect) was the cauſe of great Warres betweene both the Kingdomes, and that the *Engliſh* were diſpoſſeſſed of whatſoeuer they held in *France*.

Berenguela, or *Berengaria* Wife to King *Richard* of *England*.

Philip parted firſt from the Iſle of *Sicilie*, and went to *Ptolomais*. *Richard* celebrated his new Nuptialls in *Sicilie*, where while he ſoiourned; there landed his Sister *Ioane* or *Iane* of *England*, Widdow to *William*, Second of the name, King of *Sicilie*, who was then returned from the Holy Land. She related to him, that the violent Tempeſt hauing throwne her on the coaſte of the Iſle of *Cyprus*, the Duke thereof named *Iſaacke Comnenes*, laboured to make ſeizure of her Shippe, and to carry her away for fulfilling of his luſtfull pleaſure: ſo that ſhe was compelled (for ſafetie of her honour) to aduenture on the Sea againe, notwithſtanding the extremity of the Tempeſt. This Widdow Princeſſe was very beautifull and young, and in her ſecond Marriage, ſhe had Count *Raymond* of *Toloſa*, Father to the laſt Count *Raymond*, Father in Law to *Monſieur Alphonſius* of *France*, Count of *Poictiers*.

Richard of *England*, Sirnamed *Coeur de Lyon* for his valiancy, in ſtead of ſayling towards *Ptolomais*, went and tooke landing in *Cyprus*, where he ſhewed ſuch ſteame behauiour, that ſpoyling and ranſacking the whole Iſland: he lead away thence priſoners in Triumph with him, the Duke *Comnenes*, his Wife, and their onely daughter. And as for the Iſle of *Cyprus*, he ſold it to the Knights *Templers*, paying the ſumme of fiue and twenty thouſand Markes of money. This Sale was done in the yeare, One thouſand, one hundred foureſcore and tenne, according as *Rigordus* hath noated in the life of our King *Philip Auguſtus*. *Richardus Inſulam Cypri quam ipſe in tranſitu ſuo ceperat, Templerij pro viginti quinque Millibus Marcarum Argenti vendidit. Poſt modum vero ab ipſo ablatam* Guidoni *quondam Regi Hieroſolimitano perpetuo habendum ſecundo vendidit*. The *Templers* going to take poſſeſſion, and to enioy the Iſland as their owne: found ſharpe reſiſtance, ſo that after ſome few Battailes, and much expence of blood on either ſide; they would haue no more medling with the *Greeks*, coniured and deadly enemies to the Latins, but redeliuered the Iſle of *Cyprus* into the power of King *Richard* of *England*, who ſolde it the ſecond time to *Guy* of *Luzignan*, for the ſumme of an hundred thouſand Crownes of Gold, forty thouſand payed downe in ready money, and threeſcore thouſand remaining, payable at a certaine time agreed on betwçene them.

King *Richard* his reuenge for his Sisters wrong.

King *Richard* ſold *Cyprus* to the *Templers*, and afterward to *Guy* of *Luſignan*.

This is the ſame *Guy* of *Luzignan*, of whom we ſpake before, that had bin King of *Ieruſalem*, by meanes of his wife *Sybilla*, Sister to *Bauldwine* the Leaper, Queene of *Ieruſalem* after the death of his Sonne *Bauldwine*, Fift of the name. And this *Guy* of *Luzignan* being priſoner to *Saladine*, was redeemed by Queene *Sybilla* his wife; Who dyed of a diſſenterie, with foure children of hers and her husband *Guy*, at the Siedge of *Ptolomais*, taken from *Saladine* by the ſaid *Guy* of *Luzignan*, being aſſiſted by the Kings of *France* and *England*.

A further relation of *Guy* of *Luzignan*.

By meanes of the death of Queene *Sybilla*, the Crowne of *Ieruſalem* fell to her Sister *Iſabell*, the wife of five Husbands. From *Emfroy*, Count of *Thoron*, ſhe cauſed her ſelfe to be ſeperated vpon no occaſion, by the cunning deuiſes of *Conrad* of *Monferrat*, who would needes be a King; whereupon he marryed her, and of this marriage enſued a daughter, obſerued in our precedent diſcourſe. *Emfroy*, wholly tranſported with rage and fury, made a bargaine with two Aſſaſſines, to murder *Conrad*. The buſines being performed, and the promiſed payment deferred: the ſame murderers (in like manner) killed their Merchant. So by the death of *Conrad*, Queene *Iſabel* marryed three other Husbands afterwards, each in their due place, according as wee haue before declared, and all of them bearing the title of Kings of *Ieruſalem*.

Queene *Iſabel* the Wife of five Husbands.

Guy of *Luzignan*, in the yeare, One thouſand, one hundred, foureſcore and twelue, bought the Iſle of *Cyprus* of *Richard*, King of *England*, for the ſumme of money before mentioned: And the yeare following, he landed there, to take poſſeſſion as Lord thereof. He eſtabliſhed his Court in the Citty of *Nicoſia*, which King *Richard* of *England* deſtroyed, and cauſed to be rebuilded the Olde *Lemiſſo* (the very neereſt Port of

of *Cyprus* to the Holy Land, ruined by King *Richard*) and he gaue it the name of *Neapolis*, which the Monke of Saint *Denys* in the life of Saint *Lewes*, calleth by the name of *Nimothium*.

At his comming to *Cyprus*, he brought in Company with him thither his Brother *Aimery*, or *Amaury* of *Luſignan*, Conſtable of *Ieruſalem*, and hee made him the firſt Conſtable of *Cyprus*; alſo he was afterward King of *Ieruſalem*, and of *Cyprus*. He procured the ſaid Iſland to be peopled with fifteen thouſand perſons, brought from the Cities and Townes beyond the Seas, of the Latine Tongue. Among which company were three hundred Knights, and two hundred Eſquires, all Gentlemen of good fame, and of *France*, who had parted from their Countrey at ſundry Croiſiades: Among whom alſo hee diuided the whole Iſland of *Cyprus*, giuing to the Eſquires the Title of Lords, and to the Knights the honour of High Barrons. Among the reſt he proportioned good Lands, where they might addict themſelues to Tillage and Husbandry, by meanes wherof, the Iſland (which before was deſart and barren) began to ſhew a more magnificent countenance.

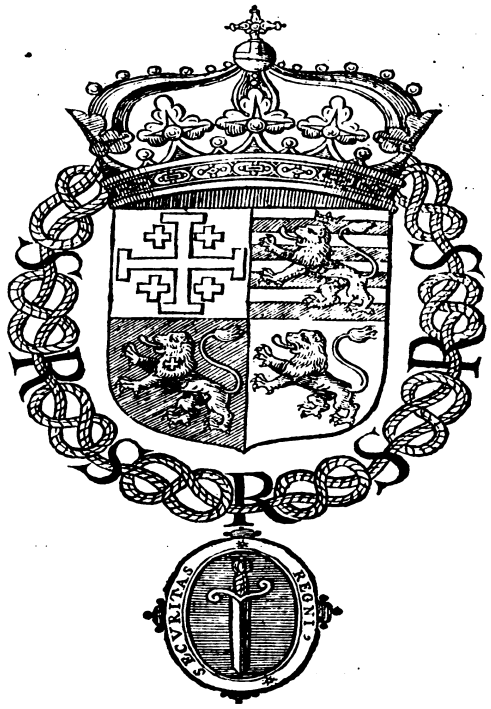
Amaury of *Luzignan*, Conſtable of *Ieruſalem* and the firſt of *Cyprus*, Brother to King *Guye*.

In the yeare, One thouſand, one hundred, foureſcore and fifteene, hee made the Aſſiſes of *Cyprus*: ſo ſaith *Georgius Buſtronius* in his Hiſtory of that Iſland: This he did, for gouerning the people in times to come, according to the Cuſtomes of *France*; which ſome tearme Ordinances or Eſtabliſhments, and are by the Regiſters of *Paris* called *Stabilimenta*.

Lawes and Orders for gouernment of the people.

Godfrey, Duke of *Lorraine*, Firſt King of *Ieruſalem*, ordained and eſtabliſhed theſe Aſſiſes, and appointed, that ſuch as were conquered people, ſhould thence forward be ruled and ordered by Aſſiſes and Benches of Iuſtice, anſwerable to the maners of *France*. The City of *Ieruſalem* was taken by the Sultan *Saladine*, the ſecond day of October, One thouſand, one hundred, foureſcore and ſeauen, from *Guy* of *Luzignan*, laſt King thereof in full effect. And hee deſiring to encreaſe his Kingdome of *Cyprus*, would haue it to be pollicied and ruled by the ſame Ordinances, as *Ieruſalem* was before her ſurprizal, which Aſſiſes were ſtill kept in *Cyprus*, from the yeare, One hundred, foureſcore and fifteene, vntill the yeare, One thouſand, fiue hundred, threeſcore and tenne, when the *Turkes* poſſeſſed themſelues thereof.

The firſt Ordainer of thoſe Aſſiſes.



In the ſame yeare, One thouſand, one hundred, foureſcore and fifteene, the ſame *Guy* of *Luſignan*, King of *Ieruſalem* and of *Cyprus*, tooke ſuch Order: that the ſame Title remained to his Succeſſours in that Kingdome, with addition alſo of the King of *Armenia*, and carrying the Armes of thoſe Kingdomes.

The Titles remaining to him and his Succeſſours.

The Inſtitution of the Order.

Moreouer, the ſame yeare, & in remembrance of ſo happie a beginnning, preſaging all

all fortunate ſucceſſe to follow; He Inſtituted the *Order of the Sword*, the Collar whereof was compoſed of round Cordons of White Silke, wouen and twined into Loue-knots, enterlaced with the Leters S. and R. of the fineſt Gold. In the middeſt hung a cleſched Ouall of Gold, wherein was figured a Sword, the Blade all enamelled with Siluer, and the Hilt Croſſed and Floureddeluced of Gold. About the Ouall was engrauen this Legend in Latine: *Securitas Regni.*

The compoſition of the Collar.

The first Knights made of this Order.

He gaue this *Order* with his owne hand to his Brother *Amaury*, Conſtable of *Ieruſalem* and *Cyprus*, and to three hundred Barons, which hee had eſtabliſhed in his new Kingdome. And the day of Ceremony, was the Feaſt day of the *Aſcenſion*, in the Church of Saint *Sophia*, the Cathedral of *Nicoſia*, and there he made before them this remarkeable Oration in *French.*

Harangue de Guy de Luzignan, Roy de Hieruſalem et de Cypre.

Que tout *Eſtat & Royaume eſtoit comparage au corps humain, dont le* Roy *faiſt la Teſte, la Nobleſſe le Bras droict; la Iuſtice le Gauche & le Tiers Eſtat le reſte. Qu'apres* Dieu *il mettoit l'aſſeurance & conſeruation de ſon nouueau Royaume en la Vaillance de ceſte genereuſe Nobleſſe, qui pour acquerir gloire auoit mis ſoubs les Pieds, le repos & plaiſirs d'vne vie otieuſe en leur Maiſon Paternelle au doux air de la France, pour courir la fortune & perils de la Mer, & viure en tout vn autre Element parmy des Natiõs incognues. Qu'il leur donnoit le Collier de l'Ordre de l'Eſpee, ayant telle eſperance, qu'ils employeroient la leur pour la manutention del'Egliſe Catholique, Apoſtolique & Romaine, le Seruice du Roy, Confort de la Iuſtice, Protection & defence des Veufues & Orphelins, & la Tranquilite du Peuple. C'eſt pourquoy il les exhortoit tous d'eſtre vnis & ioincts enſemble en Amour & Concorde, au nom de celuy qui eſt la meſme Paix, la Pere, le Fils, & le Sainct Eſprit.*

The Oration of Guy of Luzignan, King of Ieruſalem and of Cyprus.

Euerie Eſtate and Kingdome, is aptly compared to the Bodie of Man; Whereof the King is the head, the Nobility the right arme; Iuſtice the left; & the third Eſtate of the people, all the reſt. And next vnder God, I place the aſſurance and conſeruation of this my new Kingdome, in the Valiancie of you my Generous Noblemen, who to winne glorie and renowne, haue trampled vnder your feete, the eaſe and pleaſures of a ſlothfull life, in the Houſes of your Fathers, and the ſweete ayre of France; to run the fortunes and perills of the Seas, and to liue whollie in an other Element, among vnknowne Nations. And I giue you the Collar of this Order of the Sword, as being poſſeſſed with hope, that it will be imployed for maintenance of the Catholique and Apoſtolique Churche, the Seruice of your King; the Comfort of Iuſtice; Protection and defence of Widdowes and Orphanes; as alſo the tranquilitie of the People. Wherefore I exhort and entreate you all, to be united and knit together in loue and concord: In the name of him that is the ſame Peace, the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghoſt.

This was the Oath of the Barons of *Cyprus*, Knights of the ſaid Order; which by the appointment of the ſame King *Guy*, ought to bee giuen by the Conſtable of the Kingdome, or in his abſence, by the moſt Auncient Baron Knight who ſoone after ſent the ſame Oathe to the new made Knight, to bee Regiſtred in the Treaſure Chamber. At giuing the Oath, the ſame Ceremonies were obſerued, as are in *France.*

How the oath of the Order ſhould be giuen.

King *Guy* reigned but 3. yeares in *Cyprus*, and dying without iſſue (becauſe he was not re-marryed) in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand, one hundred, foureſcore and ſixteene, he left for Succeſſour in the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, his Brother *Amaury* of *Luzignan*, formerly Conſtable of *Ieruſalem* and *Cyprus*. But before we enter into the Liſt or Succeſſion of the Kings of *Cyprus*, by the Sirname of *Luzignan*; let vs peruſe ſomewhat concerning the Originall.

The death of King Guy and ſucceeding of his Brother.

Concerning the aduancement of Aquitaine into a Kingdome, by the Emperour Charlemaigne.

We haue obſerued in our ſixt Booke, and in this latter Tombe. Fol. 107. What Offices *Charlemaigne* eſtabliſhed, at ſuch time as he aduanced *Aquitaine* to be a Kingdome, in fauour of his Sonne *Lewes* the *Debonnaire*, the yeare of Grace, ſeauen hundred,

dred, threeſcore and eighteene, when *Seguin* was Count of *Bourdeaux*, *Thier* of *Auuergne*, *Athon* of *Poictou*, and *Turſin* of *Toloſa.*

This *Turſin* was deſcended of the Houſe of *Bourgongne*, which Seigneurie was giuen to *Sampſon*, Couſine to the ſaid *Turſin*, both of them being Minnions and Fauourites of *Charlemaigne*: For, to ſay and title them his kinſemen (as indeed they were) were to commit Treaſon againſt the Maieſty of Kings, who haue none but Gods to their Kinſemen. And yet neuertheleſſe, as the fauours of Princes are not made faſt with Nayles of Diamonds to men whom they affect: ſo *Turſin* was deprined of his charge, giuen to *William* of *Bourgongne*, Brother to *Sampſon*. But after his death, if we may giue credit to ſome:

Turſin of the Houſe of *Bourgongne.*

Iſaurus, Sonne of *Turſin*, was reſeated in the Gouernement of *Toloſa*. And yet notwithſtanding, in the Regiſters of our Courts, where are ſet downe all the Genealogies of the greateſt houſes in *France*, according as *Du Tillet* hath brought them to light: there is not any mention made of this *Iſaurus*, the Sonne of *Turſin* or *Curſon*; but immediatly follow after *William*, *Berengarius*, and *Bernard*, in fauour of whom, *Charles* the *Baulde* adioyned to the County of *Toloſa*; *Carcoſſonna* and *Rodez.*

Iſaurus Sonne to *Turſin*, Gouernour of *Toloſa.*

This *Bernard* by his Wife *Dhuodania*, had *William*, who was Counte of *Toloſa*, after whom ſucceeded *Pontius*, that cauſed to be builded the Abbey of Saint *Poncede Tumieres*, betweene *Pezenas* and *Carcaſſonna*. *Pontius* was Father to *Amery*; Father of *Raymond*; Father of *William* (who entitled himſelfe Count and Duke of *Toloſa*, *Albigeois*, *Quercy*, *Perigort*, *Carcaſſonna*, *Agenois*, *Aſtrac* and *Rodez*) and of *Bertrand*, who was Count of Saint *Gilles*, Father of *Raymond*, Count of Saint *Gilles*, to whom *Hugh Raymond* pawned the County of *Toleſa*, for his going to the Holy Land with *Godfrey* of *Lorrayne*. This Genealogie maketh nothing to this diſcourſe, but only in this, that ſome will haue Brother to this *Bertrand*, Count of Saint *Gilles*, one named *Girard*, who (they ſay) had bin Count of *Poictou*: but that is further to be queſtioned.

William Count and Duke of *Toloſa.*

And the Chronicle of the Abbey of *Monſtier-neuf* in *Poictiers*, holdeth an other manner of relation, and ſaith: That *Charlemaigne*, ſeeking to aduance the Brethren of *Sampſon*, Duke of *Bourgongne*; made *Ranulphe* Duke of *Aquitaine.*

Charlemaigne, his aduancing the Brethren of *Sampſon.*

Albane Count of *Poictou*, Father to *Albane*, Second of the name, Count of *Poictou*: who by *Atilda* (Sirnamed *Manberionna*) his wife, had two Sonnes.

Girard, Count of *Poictou*: And

Arnauld, who eſpouſed *Ioane* or *Jane*, the onely daughter to *Rodolphe*, Lord of *Sanzay* (at this preſent a County, and by making mariages, his deſcent tooke the Sirname and Armes of *Sanzay*, which is *Eſcheeque de Gueules & d'Or.* And by this mariage enſued many Children, the youngeſt whereof was named *Thierry de Sanzay*, who tooke to wife *Ioſſelina*, Daughter and only heire to the Houſe of *Ventadour*, whereof his deſcent tooke the Sirname, and retained *L'Eſchiquier* for their Armes: as yet is to be ſeene at this preſent *Sur le Tout* of thoſe of the Duke of *Ventadour*, a Peere of *France*, named *Lewes*, Knight of the Order of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, of whoſe Armes we haue made obſeruation in the Catalogue of them.

The Noble Houſe of *Ventadour.*

The youngeſt Sonne to the ſame *Thierry de Sanzay*, hauing ioyned in mariage in *Picardie*, neere to *Heſdin*, with *Isquelina d'Auch*, or *Auxi* (for we pronounce the X. for ch, *Aux*, *Auch*, *Auxi*, *Auchy*, as the *Spanyards* doe *Xerez*, *Cherez*, and ſo of other words) *la Caſtell*: the aduenturers in theſe mariages, tooke the Sirname of *Auchy*, and yet kept ſtill the Armes of *Sanzay.*

Girard, Count of *Poictou*, tooke to Wife *Mathilda*, daughter to *Pepin*, King of *Aquitaine*, Brother to King *Charles* the *Bauld*: who made the ſaid *Girard* Duke of *Aquitaine* after the death of *William*, Sonne to *Ranulphe*, Vncle by the Mothers ſide to *Girard*: And in this mariage was borne one only Sonne, named

Mathilda, Daughter to the King of *Aquitaine* Pepin.

Ebles, but ſome ſay *Eudes*, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictou*, who by the commaunde of King *Charles* the *Baulde*, his Vncle, cauſed to be ſhorne Monkes (the olde Chronicle adds thereto the word guelded) his Couſins by the Mothers ſide, *Pepin* and *Charles*, the Sonnes to *Pepin*, King of *Aquitaine*. *Ebles* had in Mariage *Mathilda*, the eldeſt of the foure Daughters to *Henry*, Duke of *Saxonie*, afterward Emperour, Firſt of the name, otherwiſe called the *Birder*. So that ſhe bare *De Gueu-*

leg

les au Cheual tourne d' Argent, and *Mathilda*, Mother to *Ebles*, bare of the Kings of *Aquitaine*, which was as we haue already saide in a more conuenient place, *Fuzele d'Or, & d'Azur*. In this Mariage of *Ebles* of *Poictou*, and *Mathilda* of *Saxonie*, were borne three Children, *Ebles*, *Arnoull*; And

In the first Tome *Chap.* 11. *Fol.* 143.

Thietberga, a Wife and vertuous Princesse, Wife to *Lothaire*, King of *Austrasia*, whom he forsooke, to entertaine *Waldrada*, a bold shameleſſe Strumpet, and both of them dying excommunicated by the Holy-Church.

Arnoull, Castillian of *Touars*, tooke the title of Viscount, and in a brauery (to goe as a peere and equall with the Countes of *Paris* and *Aniou*, Predecessours of *Hugh Capet*) would needes beare *De France*, and tooke *D'Or, seme de Fleurs de Lys d'Azur au Canton (droit) de Gueules*, Armes retained by them of his descente, Viscountes of *Touars*, wasted into the House of *Trimouille*.

The Viscounts of *Touars* consumated into *Trimouille*.

Ebles, Second of the name, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictou*, had to Wife *Adela de Thuringe*: *Qui portoit d' Azur, au Lyon, tournesse d' Argent, & de Gueules*. And in this Mariage was borne,

William Hugh, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictiers*, who by *Bonna* his Wife, Daughter to *Roollo*, Duke of *Normandie* (whose Armes are knowne) had three Sonnes, to witt

William (Sirnamed *Stuste-head*, or *Dull of Vnderstanding*) Second of the name, Successour in the Seigneuries of his Father.

Ebles, Bishop of *Limoges*: And

Hugh, Lord and Count of *Luzignan*; the Subiect of this Genealogie.

The first Lord and Count of *Luzignan*.

William (Stuste-head) Second of the name, had two Wiues: By the first came no issue. His second Wife was *Agnes de Sanzay*, Daughter to *Saldebrueill de Sanzay*, who was the Foundresse of the Monastery of *Nostre Dame de Xainctes*, and of the Priorie of Saint *Nicholas* in *Poictiers*, and left great goods to the Abbey of the *Trinitie* in *Angiers*. In this Marriage was borne *Guy* of *Poictou*, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictiers*: He was father of

William Geoffery, Third of the name, who was maried twise, his first wife was *Gista*, Daughter to the Duke of *Normandy*, by whom she had a Sonne and a Daughter.

Mary of *Poictou*, of whom we shall speake hereafter, who (some say) ioyned in Mariage with the Count of *Auuergne*, which is false. For after *Tthier*, made the first Count of *Auuergne* by our King *Charlemaigne*; the Counts of *Auuergne* are named linealy in their Genealogie, in the Registers of the Parliament Court. So that they are meere fables, to deriue Countes of *Auuergne*, from the race of the Countes of *Poictiers*, descended of *Albane*, Brother to *Sampson*, Duke of *Bourgongne*.

The first Count of *Auuergne* being made by *Charlemaigne*.

The Sonne was *William*, Fourth of the name, Count of *Poictou*, and Duke of *Aquitaine*, Fift of the name.

William Geoffery had in his second mariage *Constance*, by others called *Ioane* or *Iane*, and they make her the only Daughter to *Raymond*, First of the name, Count of *Tolosa*: And of this mariage issued

Raymond first of the name Count of *Tolosa*.

Hugh Aymon (some doe reckon two Brothers, wherein *Du Tillet* is mistaken) Count of *Tolosa*, who engaged his County to the Count of Saint *Gylles* his Cousine, as we haue said in our precedent discourse. The first Counts of *Tolosa* bare in Armes and Banners *De Gueules, au Belier, ou Agnus Dei*. And yet to this present, they of the Citty of *Tolosa* doe beare in Armes, *De Gueules au dict Agnus Dei d'Argent portant vne Croix Clechee et Pommettee d'Or*. Which are Armes borne by the last Countes of *Tolosa*, by the Sirname of Saint *Gilles*, in memory of *Hugh Aymon* Crossed for the Voyage to the Holy-Land: *Escartele de Sainct Gilles de Gueules a Six Chasteaux d'Or Cantonne du Chastel Narbonnois d'vn coste, et del Eglise de Sainct Sernin de l'autre: le tout d'Argent, massonne de Sable, au Chef de France.*

The Armes of the Counts of *Tolosa*.

William, Fourth of the name, Count of *Poictou*, and Duke of *Aquitaine*, Fift of the name; according to the relation of some, had to Wife *Iane*, Daughter to the King of *Scots*, a milde and peaceable Prince at the beginning of his rule: but plunged himselfe

selfe afterward, into the gulfe of all vices, as Luxury, Auarice and Rapine. But principally he tooke delight, in doing iniury to men of the Church, and to Churches themselues, which he robbed and spoyled of their Ornaments and riches. And when Saint *Bernard* (who liued in his time) had many times written to him, to alter him from such vicious courses: He wrote to him againe, that he should correct the abuses of Prelates and men of the Church, as he endeauoured to doe. And much better was it, to imploye the Treasures of the Church, in maintayning Souldiours and men of Armes: then to be wasted vpon Priests, prostituted to all villanies, and who triumphed in nothing more, then consuming the Churches reuennues in Luxurie, rioting, superfluity of Garments, and belly-cheare.

A great abuse of Churches and men of the Church.

This Letter was the subiect of so many exhortations, which this worthy man of God Saint *Bernard* made, for correcting the riotous excesse of Prelates, and caused him to declame in these words.

Famous Saint *Bernard* liued in this mans time.

The Declamation of Saint Bernard.

Miramur, & de Prælatis nostri temporis quærimus, cuius Ordinis sint. In aggregatione Temporalium sese habent vt Laici: in apparatu vt Milites; in Vestitu vt Mulieres. Et tamen non laborant vt Laici; non militant vt Milites; non pariunt vt Mulieres. Ergo cuius Ordinis sunt? Nullius. Et quia nullius ordinis sunt, ibunt in locum vbi nullus ordo, sed sempiternus horror inhabitat,

We wunder, and enquire after the Prelates of our times, of what Order they are. In Temporall occasions they carry themselues like Laye-men: in Gallantrie like Knights, in Garments like Women. And yet notwithstanding, they labour not like Laye-men: they warre-fare not like Knights: neither doe they trauayle like Women. Wherefore, of what Order are they? Of none. And because they are of no Order, they must goe into the place where no order is obserued; but euerlasting and continually horror dwelleth.

The learned Remonstrances of this great Prelate (in his time the Mirrour of Nobility, for vertue and sanctity of life) brought backe this straying Prince of *Aquitaine* into the way of saluation. Immediatly he abandoned and forsooke the world, and went directly to *Clerueaux*, there to take on him the habite of a Monke. But Saint *Bernard* made him deniall of it, aduising him rather, to perfourme some works of true penitencie in his owne Countrey, to the end; that thereby he might giue example to his owne people, in repayring such faults as he had committed, and restoring to the Churches of God, such things as he had vniustly taken from them. This refusall made *William* resolue, to goe in the Croissade beyond the Seas, setting downe his will and Testament, in this manner.

The Prince reclaimed by the exhortations of Saint *Bernard* from his former bad courses of life.

The Will and Testament of William, *Count of* Aniou, *and Duke of* Aquitaine, *before his going to the Holy-Land.*

IN Nomine Sanctæ & indiuiduæ Trinitatis quæ est vna Deitas. Hoc est Testamentum quod ego Vuillelmus Dei gratia Comes Pictauiæ, & Dux Aquitaniæ, cum Domino Vualdino Episcopo, facio in honorem Saluatoris Mundi, & beatorum Martyrum, & omnium Confessorum, & Virginum, & maxime Virginis Mariæ, cogitans de meis innumerabilibus peccatis, quæ, suadente Diabolo, temere perpetraui: & timens tremendi Iudicij diem, videns bona, quæ tenere videmur, sicut fumum in aere, inter manus nostras euanescere; nosmet etiam in hac peregrinatione, sine peccato, vna hora non posse viuere, & satis paruo tempore manere, & omnia, quæ putamus possidere, esse caduca, & suis possessoribus grauamen; Commendo me Deo, quem relictis omnibus sequi volo. Filias meas in Regis Domini mei Ludouici protectione relinquo; Leonoram collocaturam cum Domino Ludouico Regis filio (si Baronibus meis placuerit) cui Aquitaniam, & Pictauiam in dote relinquo. Petronillæ vero filiæ meæ possessiones meas, quas, vt proles Gerardi Ducis Burgundiæ possidet, relinquo. Itaque ne videar degenerare, sed imitari vestigia Parentum meorum in bono opere, & commendare me Deo, & Sanctis eius, & in bonis operibus, societatem Seruorum Dei, & benedictionem accipere merear, Do omnibus Monasteriis Dominationis meæ Mille Libras Terræ distribuendas, prout Baronibus meis placuerit. Et quicumque hoc nostrum Testamentum disrumpere tentauerit, Excommunicatus à Deo, & Hominibus existat: Qui vero in hoc Testamento complendo fuerit Coadiutor, sit in omnibus bonis, & præmijs particeps. Amen. Signum Vuillelmi Ducis. S. Leonore. Sig. Comitis Aruerniæ S. Do-

S. Domini de Thoaricio. S. Richildi Baronis S. T. de Rupe-Cauardi. S. B. Comitis Sancti Pontij.

IN *the name of the Holy and indiuidiall Trinity, which is one Diety. This is the Testament which I* William *Earle of* Poictou *and Duke of* Aquitane, *together with my Lord* Willam, *Bishop doe make, to the Honour of the Sauiour of the World, and of blessed Martyrs, and of all Confessors, and especially of the Virgin* Mary, *poudering mine innumerable sinnes, which vnaduisedly (by the perswasion of the Deuill) I haue committed: and trembling at the fearefull day of Iudgement. Seeing all those goods, which we seeme to inioye, doe vanish away from betweene our hands (as it were smoake in the aire) and that we our selues are not able to liue one hower without sinne in this our Pilgrimage, that we abide heere but a short tyme, and that all things (which we thinke are in our full possession) are fading, and a great burden to the possessors of them; I commend my selfe vnto God, whom (all other things set apart) I desire to seeke. My Daughters I leaue in the tuition of my Lord the King* Lewes. Leonara, *who will bestowe hir selfe with my Lord* Lewes *the Kings Sonne (if my Barons shall thinke it conuenient) on whom I confer* Aquitaine *and* Poictieres *for hir Dowry. But to my Daughter* Petronilla *I leaue my possessions which I enioye, as Offspring to* Gerrard *Duke of* Burgondy. *And also that I may not seeme to degenerate, but to imitate the footesteps of my Parents in this good worke, and to commend my selfe to God and his Saints, and that in good workes I may deserue the fellowship of the Seruants of God, and receiue his blessing: I giue to al Monasteries in my Dominion One thousand pounds land, to be distributed as it shall please my Barons. And whosoeuer shall goe about to breake this my Testament, let him be excommunicated both by God and Man. And let him that shall be an assistant in the ratifying of this my Testament, bee partaker of all good prayers. Amen.*

The Seale of William *Duke, & the Seale of* Leonora, *the Seale of the Counte of* Auuergne, *of the Lord of* Thoarice, *of* Richild *Baron of* T. *of the Rock* Cauerd, *of* B. *Count of* S. Pontius.

This Testament finished, *William* left his two Daughters *Eleanora* and *Peronnella* at *Bourdeaux*, vnder the charge and custody of the Bishops and Barons of the Countrey, and the Tutelage of King *Lewes le Gros*. Afterward, he tooke the way to our Lady of *Mont-Serrat*, and thence to Saint *Iames* in *Galicia*, from whence he passed into the Holy Land: which hauing visited in an vnknowne habite: He returned backe to *Rome*, with three of his auncient Seruants, companions in his wearisome Pilgrimage, who with their Lord and Maister, tooke the habite of Hermites neere to *Castillon* in *Thuscanie*, and in this deuout intention were followed by many worthy persons more.

He becometh an Hermit at *Castillon*

Duke *William* (very farre aduanced into yeares) dyed at the same Hermitage, called *The Inne or Lodging of Rhodes, Stabulum Rhodis*, in the Territory of *Sienna*, afterward tearmed, *Male Vaux, Mala Vallis*: Where is to be seene the place of his buriall, and some part of his Reliques. The most part of his body is in the Church of Saint *Iohn Baptist* at *Castillon*, a Towne distant about three miles from *Male-Vale*. He deceased about the yeare of Grace One Thousand, one hundred, fifty and sixe, or threescore. For his Holynesse of Life and miracles, he is placed in the Catalogue of Saints, and his feast celebrated in *Italie* the tenth day of February, and in *France* the tenth of Ianuary. He was Authour of the Hermites, called *Guillemins* after his name, and at *Paris White-Cloakes*, where is to be seene the Figure of this Holy man bearing a Standard of his Armes, which are *D'Azur a six Bezans d'Argent, 3. 2. 1. au Chef D'Or.*

The death of Duke *William* at *Stabulum Rhodis*.

The Hermits *Guillemines*, or White-Cloakes.

According to the appoinment in the Last Will of Duke *William*, his eldest Daughter *Eleanor* was maried to King *Lewes* the younger, Seauenth of the name. And *Peronella* espoused *Raoull*, who was Count of *Vermandois*, youngest Sonne to *Monsieur Hugh* of *France*, called the great Count of *Vermandois*. In second mariage the said *Peronella* enioyed *Stephen*, King of *England*: We haue obserued their descente, in the Tract of the Orders of *England*.

By the death of *Eleanor* of *Aquitaine*, Queene of *England*, ended the ligne and descente

cent of the Counts of *Poictou*, with their name and Armes of *Bourgongne* and *Poictou*. She gaue for Armes to the Citty of *Poictiers*, *L'Escu d'Or a Trois Bandes d'Azur a la Bordure de Gueules*: Whereunto they of *Poictiers* added *Vn Chef Eschiquete de Chasteaux d'Or, & de Gueules*, to preserue the memorie of their first Armes, which were *De Gueules a Trois Chasteaux d'Or, 2. 1.*

End of the descent of the Counts of Poictou.

Sauary de Mauleon, Gouernour of *Poictiers* and *Poictou* during the warres of King *Phillip Augustus*, against the Princes of the House of *England*; caused the Inhabitants of *Poictiers* to leaue their first Armes, and made them to take *D'Argent au Lyon de Gueules, a la Bordure de Sable chargee de Huict Bezans d'Or.*

Sauary de Mauleon Gouernour of Poictiers.

Very credible it is, that in those times then, they of *Poictiers* caried those Armes in Honour of their Gouernour, or else to gratifie him: because they of this auncient House of *Mauleon*, descended of *Poictou*, and whereof there are of the same name in *Gascoigne*: *Portoient de Gueules au Lyon d'Or.* Armes well emblazoned, howsoeuer they answere to the Sirname *Maulcon*, *Malus Leo.*

The Armes of *Poictou* were (as we haue elsewhere said) answerable to them of *Bourgongne*: a House which the last Duke *William*, in the expresse words of his Testament saith, to be descended from *Girard* of *Bourgongne.*

And as for them of the Duchie of *Aquitaine*, they were different from them of *Poictou*, and the diuersity iustifieth it selfe by the Treaty of Peace, made by our King Saint *Lewes*, with *Henry* King of *England*, who had giuen succour to *Hugh* of *Luzignan*, Sonne to *Hugh* of *Luzignan*, Counte of *Luzignan, de la Marche*, and of *Engoulesme*, and who refused the Homage of his Lands to the Kings Brother.

Peace betweene the Kings *Lewes*, and *Henry* of *England*.

Monsieur Alphonsius of *France*, Count of *Poictiers*, by whom (as *William* of *Nangis*, in the Life of Saint *Lewes*, and the Registers of Parliament doe enstruct vs) the most part of the Homages of the said Duchie were annexed to the Crowne of *France*; and the name of *Aquitaine* quite extinct and abolished, with the auncient Armes thereof, which were *Lozengees de Gueules, & d'Or.* The name of *Guienne* remained in title of a Duchie, composed only of foure Seneschalships, for the Countries of *Agenois, Limosine, Perigort* and *Querey.* And the same King Saint *Lewes* ordained, that the Duchie of *Guienne* should beare for her Armes *De Gueules, au Lyon passant d'Or.* The first Ligne of *Poictou* being thus expedited and runne thorowe; let vs come to the Second, that of *Luzignan.*

The Duchie of *Guienne* & her Armes.

A Briefe Discourse concerning the Second Ligne or Race, namely of Luzignan.

WE haue before told you, that *William Hugh*, Count of *Poictou* and Duke of *Aquitaine*, had three Sonnes, *William* the Second, called (by a nick-name) *William* with the Stuffed head, Count of *Poictou* and Duke of *Aquitaine*;

William Hugh Count of *Poictou* & his three Sonnes.

Ebles, Bishop of *Limoges*; And

Hugh of *Poictou*, made Count of *Luzignan* (about sixe Miles from *Poitiers*) for his portion and parte, in the yeare of Grace Nine hundred, threescore and tenne. And that in the yeare of Grace one thousand, he espoused *Mary*, Lady of *Mesle*, or *Mesles* in *Poictou*: But others say of *Scotland*, and auouch this Lady to be Daughter to the Earle of *Albanie* by Sirname, and by the Armes of *Scotland.* In this Mariage was borne their only Sonne

Hugh, Sirnamed *Bruno*, in regard that his Father caused two names to be giuen him at the Fonte of Baptisme: his owne, which had bin giuen him by *Hugh* the *Great*, Father to the King *Hugh Capet*: and that of Saint *Bruno*, the Founder of *Clugny.* And from hence it is, that some Historians haue deceiued themselues, who, not vnderstanding the Originall of this second name of *Bruno*, and (by abbreuiation) *Brun*; haue made on Sirname of two imaginary Families, and so (consequently) haue feigned fantastick Armes for them.

Saint *Bruno*, Founder of the Abbey of *Clugny*.

Those of this Illustrious and Royall House of *Luzignan*, haue borne (for the most part) conioyntly together these two names *Hugh-Brun.* And as the Counts of *Poictou*, with the eldest Sonnes, did beare the Metalles of *France*, emblazoned with *Bourgongne*, as often times we haue repeated to you: Euen so *Hugh* the First, Count of *Luzignan*, to shew that he was the youngest Sonne, tooke for his Armes,

and

and for them of his Ligne and descent; *Burele d'Argent et d'Azur de Dix pieces*. And the Lyon *de Gueules*, was not added thereto, but long time after, at the Voyage to the Holy-Land, to be discerned from other Families, which bare the same Armes: as we haue more at large declared in the precedent discourse before this.

Of *Hugh le Brun*, the first Count of *Luzignan* and *Mello*.

Hugh le Brun continued an Orphane in young yeares, during which time, he was wisely gouerned by his Mother, a very vertuous Princesse, who wun herselfe great honour by his education: for he was thereby become a Prince (the best enstructed and the most compleate in all perfections) of his time. Of the Seigneurie of *Luzignan*, of Count *Hugh*, First of the name, and of that of *Mello* belonging to his wife, the Romancers haue formed the name of *Meluzina*; whereon they haue wrought wonders, and darkened the glory of the vertuous Princesse *Mary* of *Albanie*, with the title of a Sorceresse and Witche, yea, and haue made her a Sinck of all vncleanenesse. Where in those Romancers, and namely they that haue Romanted of *Meluzina*, and *Geoffrey* with the great Tooth, compacted and filled with lies and fables about the yeares One thousand, three hundred, fourescore and eight, or nine; haue very grossely mistaken themselues, especially in the date of the yeares, as we shall shew heereafter, For the Lady of *Mello* and of *Luzignan*, Mother to *Hugh Brun*, deceassed in the yeare, One thousand, forty and two: And *Geoffrey* Count of *Luzignan*, Sirnamed with the great Toothe (because he had in his vpper iawe a Tooth, which was greater then the rest, and hung somewhat downeward, liued in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, one hundred, foure score and tenne, eleauen, twelue, thirteene, foureteene, and so on.

The Romancers wronging the Lady of *Mello*.

Heereupon it was, that some Historiographers of *Poictou*, baptized with this name of *Meluzina*, or *Meluzina*, not the Mother of *Hugh le Brun* (because they had no apparance for it, by the date of Time:) but *Mary* of *Poictou*, Daughter to *William Geoffrey*, Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Count of *Poictou*, Third of the name, and of *Gista* of *Normandie* his first Wife. They make this *Mary* to haue bin maried, not to the Count of *Auuergne*, because they could not iustifie it: but to a Lord of *Bretaigne*, named *Raymondin du Troisshic*, or *Croisshic* in *Bretaigne*, neere to the mouth of the Riuer of *Loire*, who made his abyding at the same place, called at that time then *Succinio*. Further they say, that this *Raymondin* was Count *de Foreest*; which was the *Firme Island*, at this present called *L'Isle de Ruys*, which the said *Raymondin* and his Wife caused to be enclosed and engirt with walles, and ioyning thereunto this Castell of *Succinio*, they erected there a Monastery, in Honour of the *Trinitie*, wherein they were both buried after their death.

Errour in the Historiographers of *Poictou*.

Raymondin de Troisshic in *Bretaigne*.

Those Historiographers doe adde heereunto, that the world (in those times then) was so ignorant and grossely conceired, that throughout the whole extendure of a very spacious Countrey, were very rarely to be found two or three men, that knew how to write their owne names: So that those dayes afforded very little knowledge among men, and therefore the lesse gouernement and ciuility. Now, whereas (say they) *Meluzina* was most beautifull, vertuously honest, very ciuille, and extraordinarily well learned, appearing (in those times) as an Oracle of the Gods: Their wisedomes and capacities haue further commented thereon, concerning the greatnesse of her house and descent, as being of most Auncient and famous extraction, beside the power and authority of her Husband.

The ignorance and simplicity of elder times alledged.

They make her to be much dreaded and feared of the people, as an admirable creature, farre exceeding vulgar apprehension, yea, meerely wundred at; honoured and sought vnto by the Greatest Grands of those dayes; among whom she tooke delight to let her person be seene, contemning the frequency of people made of meane temper. But *Raymondin* her Husband, he was a man of more earthy and grosser composition, farre inferiour to the exaltation of spirit in his wife; couering his head with a Cappe of Iealousie, and complayning of his wiues too familiare priuacie. Which made him (thorowe his owne muddie imagination) to scratch his head with a Cuckoldes clawes, and to emblazon his Armes with a *Coquelichin*, releuated vpon the Creast of *Acteon*: for he would (though somewhat sparingly) tell his friends and familiars, that he had seene his Wife very conuersant with Serpents.

Wounde full reportes concerning *Meluzina*.

Now,

Now, the ignorant and blockishe vulgare, that neuer knew the auncient manner of Baptizing with the name of Serpents, such as caused the head-ake in a house, by casting in the kernells of *Dioscorides* his Apples: they forthwith imagined, that their Lady and Mistresse was halfe a woman, and halfe a Serpent. A populare errour, which serued as a copious & plentifull argument for fabulous Romancers, to feigne marrers of nouelty and wunder: creating her a *Fayrie*, capable of infinite meruailes, farre aboue the reach of nature, like to them reported by *Saxo Grammaticus*, in his History of *Denmark*.

The vulgare imagination of *Meluzina* in her shape.

And so farre preuayled the credit of those Romants, that (euen to this very day) the Families issued and descended of the Illustrious house of *Luzignan*, doe beare for the Creast of their Armes: *Vne Dame nue dedans vne Baignoire a la facon d'vne Sirene, qui d'vne main peigne et agence ses Cheueux esparpillez sur ses Espaules, et de l'autre elle tient vn Miroir, la moitie du Corps representant celuy-la d'vne Femme d'admirable beaute, et l'autre moitie du Corps faicte en facon de Giure.*

The Creast of the Armes belonging to the House of *Luzignan*.

A Lady naked in a Bathing-tub, after the manner of a Sirene or Maremaide, that with one hand Kembeth and trimmeth her locks of Hayre, dispersed vpon her shoulders: And in her other hand she holdeth a Looking-glasse. Halfe of her body representing a Woman of admirable Beauty, and the other halfe of her body formed like to a Serpent. And so haue I seene it many times painted at the Castell of *Partenay*, where lodged *Monsieur de Malleoms*, Gouernour of *Poicton*: with whom I continued, during the rebellion of the Citty of *Poictiers*, on behalfe of the League.

Moreouer, they giue to this *Meluzina* a great List or traine of Children, whom they make to be all renowned for prowesse and valiancie, she hauing so fashioned and ordered them with her owne hands, and endued them with so many rare perfections: that the meaner sorte of people, verily beleeued them to be Gods and Goddesses, newly descended from Heauen heere vpon earth, to worke many miracles. They auouch them to haue voyaged thorow all the Prouinces of the world, and namely to the Holy-Land, which was the walking Gallery of the *French Paladines*.

The Children of *Meluzina* reputed to be Gods and Goddesses.

They present *Vrian* to be her eldest Sonne, who landing in the Isle of *Cyprus*; found the Princesse of the place to be warred on by her subiects, who delighting to fishe in troubled waters, abused her minority in yeares. He vnder tooke her defence, and reduced them to tearmes of duty and obedience: marying the young Princesse, in the right of whom he became King of *Cyprus*. He ordered matters in such sort, that his Second Brother was King of *Armenia*: and their posterity Kings of *Ierusalem*, of *Cyprus*, *Armenia*, *Candie*, and of diuers other great Kingdomes and Prouinces beside, in painting.

Her eldest Sonne *Vrian* King of *Cyprus*.

They tell vs further, that her third Sonne espoused the Heire of *Luxembourg*: the true Ligne whereof being fayled, their descent hath held the Kingdome of *Bohemia*, and the Empire of *Germanie*.

The Fourth Sonne maried the Heire *de la Marche*, and because he was blacke and swarthie of complexion, he was Sirnamed *Le Brun*. *Risum teneatis Amici.* Are not these braue discourses for our Historians?

Holde on laughter, and spare not, my honest friends.

The Fift Sonne was Lord of *Luzignan*, and had the Sirname, with the great Tooth.

The Sixt was Lord of *Partenay*, tearmed by them of the Countrey.

Where falshood is wrought;
And nothing comes thence, till first it be brought.

It is likewise built vpon a Mountaine cleft in twaine, as many other are in *France*.

The Seauenth was a Religious Fryer at *Mailleſais*, at this present a Bishoprick.

The Eight was of monstrous forme, and Sirnamed the *Horrible*: but he was stifled and smothered by his Mother, and buried in the little Cloister of *Monstier-neuf* at *Poictiers*. I am wearied with these old Wiues Tales: let vs take againe the thred of our History.

Leauing off fables, we returne to our Chronicle.

Hugh Brun, Second of the name, Lord of *Luzignan*, had to wife *Adela*, Daughter to the Count of *Tolosa*, *Raymond*, First of the name, and by her he had three Sonnes: we will begin with the last or youngest.

Rodolphe or *Raoull* of *Luzignan*, Baron of *Yssoudon*, who in the yeare of Grace one thou-

thousand, one hundred and nine, founded a Priorie in honour of Saint *Galais*, Bishop of *Poictiers*: to whom he was so much tendeared in deuotion, that he gaue the Sirname of Saint *Gelaise* to his eldest Sonne *Hugh*. Of him are descended the houses of Saint *Gelais*, Lords of *Lansac* (whom some will haue to descend of *Mahauld* of *Lusignan*) and of Saint *Seuerin* at *Poictiers*.

Saint *Gelasius* Bishop of *Poictiers*.

Iohn of *Luzignan*, Baron of *Couhe*, who had one only Sonne named *Hugh*; that tooke part with the Kings of *France*, against the *Englishmen*, in the yeare one thousand, one hundred, fifty and two: And

Hugh, called the Great, Third of the name, Count of *Luzignan*, and Count *de la Marche* in regard of his Wife: Hauing ended a difference with *William*, Count of *Engoulesme*, who contended with him for the County *de la Marche*: He went in the Voyage beyond the Seas in the yeare One thousand, one hundred and two. He had at his pay and attendance, Eight hundred men on Horseback, with whom he gaue succour to *Baudewine*, King of *Ierusalem*, and the Count of *Tripoly*, his kinsman by the Mothers side. He returned back, and died in *France*, leauing Foure Children, two Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

The Great Count of *Luzignan* and his seruice in the Holy-Land.

Beatrix, Wife to *Ambrose*, Lord of *Viuonna*.

Poncetta, who maried with *Vulgrin*, Second Count of *Engoulesme*.

The Sonnes were

Hugh le Brun; And

Henry, Count of *Luzignan* and *de la Marche*, who caused the strong Castell of *Luzignan* to be built, and namely the great Tower thereof. He died, being neuer maried; And by his death, his Brother

The great Castell and Tower of *Luzignan*.

Hugh le Brun, Fourth of the name, was Count of *Luzignan* and *de la Marche*, who went in the Voyage to the Holy-Land with *Geoffrey Martell*, Sonne to the Count of *Engoulesme William*. He was long time prisoner to *Noradine*, King of the *Sarrazins*: but being deliuered, returned into *France*, and left Sixe Children, to witt

Doubt and question about the certainty of his name.

Gylles, otherwise named *Rodolphe*, and (by some other) *Bertrand*, Count of *Partenay*, and of *Dammartin* on behalfe of his Wife. He was Constable of *France* vnder King *Phillip Augustus*, *Anno* One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and tenne: And *Feron* (very aptly) giueth him *De Luzignan, Burelé d'Azur et d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules, Armé, Lampassé, & Coronné d'Or sur le tout*: But he forgot a Bordure Engrailed with *Gueules*, which the Constable caried for *Brizure* in his Armes. Of him are issued and descended the Families of *Partenay*; of *Soubize* the Archbishop, and of Saint *Vallier*, by the Sirname of *Poictiers*.

Raymond, a Monke professed in the Abbey of *Malesais*, of the Order of Saint *Benedict*.

Geoffrey, Sirnamed with the Great Tooth, vpon the occasion before alleadged, Count of *Luzignan*.

Amaury, King of *Ierusalem* and of *Cyprus*.

Guy, King of *Ierusalem*, and first King of *Cyprus*; And

Hugh, Fift of the name, Count *de la Marche* (by the death of his Father) who tooke to Wife *Isabell*, daughter and heire to the Count of *Engoulesme*. She was caried away by *Iohn Without-Land*, King of *England* (as we haue reported in the Tract of *England*) but after the death of King *Iohn*; she returned and liued with her Husband *Hugh*, by whom she had many Children. All her life time she bare the title of Queene, and of her it is, that the Lord of *Ioinuille* speaketh so often times in the Life of Saint *Lewes*, which was the cause of Warre made by the said King Saint *Lewes*, against the same *Hugh* Count *de la Marche*, who disdained to doe Homage for his Lands, to *Monsieur Alphonsus* of *France*, Count of *Poictiers*.

This *Isabell* was maried to King *Iohn* of *England*.

Mathew Paris in his History of *England*.

It is of this *Isabell*, Countesse of *Engoulesme*, and Queene of *England*, that the fabulous Romant of *Melusina* was composed: which the Monke of *England Mathew Paris* emblazoneth with wunderfull Coullers. The Romancers (to disguise her birth) make her Daughter to the Duke of *Albania*; to cloud and veile her quality of Wife to King *Iohn*, they tearme him King of *Albion*, the auncient title to the Realme of *England*. They haue likewise coullored the name of *Hugh* of *Luzignan* her Husband, vnder the borrowed epethite of *Raymondin*: who was greatly subiect to the head

head sickenesse, yet more in earnest, then in iest. As for her ligne and issue, shee had indeed as many as the Romancers gaue her, which was Nine in number, as we will set them downe in order.

The Issue of *Isabell* Countesse of *Engoulesme*, and Queene of *England*, according to the truth of Chronologie.

Hugh le Brun.

Guy, Baron of *Coignac*, of *Merpin*, and *d'Archiac*, deceasing without any issue.

Geoffery, Baron of *Iarnac*, and of *Chasteau-Neuf*.

Amaury, Baron of *Couhe* and of *Valences*: And afterward Bishop of *Winchester*.

William, Baron of *Montignac*, *Balack*, and of *Champagnall* in the County of *la Marche*, and Lord of *Valences*, Father to *William*; Stemme of the Houses of *Valences* and of *Montignac*.

Agatha, wife to the *Baron* of *Chauigny*.

Isabell, Wife to *Godfrey*, Lord of *Ranon*, of *Paron*, and of *Thillebourg*.

Margaret; *Alix*. And } not Married.

Hugh le Brun, Sixt of the name (Eldest Sonne) was Count *de la Marche* and of *Engoulesme*: likewise Baron of *Fougieres* in *Bretaigne*, by meanes of his Wife *Yoland*, Daughter to *Peter Mauclerc*, Duke of *Bretaigne*. Hee went in the Voyage beyond the Seas with our King Saint *Lewes*, and died aged about Forty yeares, in the yeare of Grace One thousand, two hundred and threescore. He left Fiue Children, and these be they in Order.

Hugh.

Guy, Fift Baron of *Coignac* (by the death of his Vnckle *Guy*) deceasing without issue.

Guy, Second of the name, Sirnamed *de la Marche*, a professed Monke.

Aimary, or *Aymar*, Bishop of *Winchester* in *England*, by the resignation of *Aymar* his Vnckle, and his Godfather.

Ioane, Wife to the Baron *Morteimer* in *England*.

Hugh le Brun, Seauenth of the name, eldest Sonne to the Count *de la Marche*, of *Engoulesme*, and of *Luzignan*, Baron of *Fougieres*, left foure Children.

Hugh le Brun.

Guy, Viscount *de la Roche-Foucand*, *de Rupe Fucaldi*; Land wunne by the Viscount of *Limoges*, Legatarie to his Vnckle *Guy*, Baron of *Coignac*, for an hundred and fifty Markes of Gold, to goe in the Voyage to the *Holy-Land*, when an Army was conducted thither.

Yoland, Wife to *Godfrey*, or *Geoffrey*, Count of *Pons*, And

Mary, Wife to the Count of *Sancerre*.

Hugh le Brun, Eight and last of the name, by the death of his Father, happening in the yeare of Grace One thousand, two hundred, fourescore and two: was Count of *Luzignan*, *de la Marche*, of *Engoulesme*, and Baron of *Fougieres*. By his Wife *Beatrix* of *Bourgongne* hee had not any issue; but died in the yeare of Grace One thousand, three hundred and three, and by his death, his Brother

Guy was the last Count of *Luzignan*, *de la Marche*, and of *Engoulesme*, which Counties he gaue by testament to King *Phillip le Bell*, Fourth of the name, to remaine annexed to the Crowne, and serue as Appanage or portion to the Sonnes of *France* at all times after. Let vs now take the descent of *Hugh le Brun*, Fourth of the name, Fift Count of *Luzignan*, who had Sixe Children: Among whom (as already we haue said) was very famous.

Geoffery, tearmed by his great Tooth, who being somewhat madly distracted, because his Brother *Raymond* (without any consent) was taken to be a professed Monke in the Abbey of *Malesais*: did set it on fire, and consumed it into Ashes, very badly abusing the Monkes: which firing is counted vnder the yeare One Thousand, two Hundred and Thirty. But most certaine it is, that *Geoffery* (recouering more setled sense and stability of minde) made a iourney to *Rome*, to craue absolution, which he obtained. Conditionally, that he should

newly build the said Monastery, where-to he left great goods. I finde also, that this *Geoffery* with the great Tooth had a Sonne, named *Guy* (whose Issue and descente I could neuer obtaine) that on the day day of his Fathers death, made a Legacie to the said Monastery of *Melesais*, the place of his Fathers buriall, and his Legacy was in these words.

In Nomine Domini *Amen*. Ego Guido *de Lisignano Goffridi Filius ex Testamento Patris mei* Do *vobis Abbati, ceterisque in Maleasensi Monasterio Deo seruentibus, vbi corpus Patris mei sepultum est*, Ducentas Libras Terræ *ad Larmenum sitas, vt memoriam nostri habeatis, in supplementum Penitentiæ, ne ira Domini nos supplantet. Hæc autem Carta facta est ea die, qua Pater sepultus est, præsentibus Clero, & Comitatu funebri dicti Patris Goffridi. Signum Guidonis. Sig. Monasterij.*

Heere wee take the Ligne, leading to the Chronologie of the Kings of Cyprus, Ierusalem, *and* Amenia, *beginning with* Guy *of* Luzignan.

Geoffery before named, was long time beyond the Seas, in assistance of the Kings of *Ierusalem*, whether he went in company of his Brothers

1. *Guy*, and *Amaury* of *Luzignan*, which Princes continued there dwelling beyond the Seas, without returning any more to *France*. And *Guy* being first King of *Ierusalem*, and afterward of *Cyprus*, (as wee haue before declared) chaunced to dye without any issue; his Brother

II. *Amaury* was Second King of *Cyprus*, who by his Wife *Ciue d'Iblin*, Daughter to *Bauldwine*, Count of *Rama*, had three Sonnes, and three Daughters, whom we will set downe *Ordine præposlero*.

Louisa or *Alisei* (they are both one) Wife to *Raymond*, Fourth of the name, Count of *Tolossa*.

Bourgongna, Wife to *Gaultier* of *Montpelier*.

Chelius, Wife to *Robinnet*, Prince of *Antioche*.

Guy deceassed without Children.

Iohn, Constable of *Cyprus*, Husband to his Niece *Isabell*, Daughter to King *Hugh*: And in this Mariage was borne *Hugh*, afterward King of *Cyprus*, Third of the name.

Hugh, King of *Cyprus*.

King *Amaury* was the Fift and last Husband to *Isabell*, Queene of *Ierusalem*, whereof likewise he tooke the title, and morcouer had by her three Children, all Daughters.

Amarina, who died in very young yeares.

Sybilla, Wife to *Leo*, First King of *Armenia*.

Melusina, Wife to *Bœmond*, Third of the name; And Prince of *Antioche*.

III. *Hugh*, Third King of *Cyprus*, tooke to Wife *Alix* or *Louisa* of *Ierusalem*, Daughter to her Mother in Lawe *Isabell*, Queene of *Ierusalem*, and *Henry*, Count Palatine of *Champaigne* and *Brie*. In this Mariage were borne three Children, to witt

Marietta, or *Mariana*, Wife to *Gaultier*, Count of *Brenne*.

Isabell, who in her first Nuptialls espoused *Henry*, called the *Norman* Prince of *Brienne*, of *Tarentum*; and of *Antioche*, daughter to *Airard*, Count of *Brenne*, or *Brienne*, and Madame *Phillip*, Sister to the Queene of *Cyprus Louisa* of *Ierusalem*. In second Mariage she had her Vncle *John* of *Luzignan*, Constable of *Cyprus*: And in that Marriage were borne.

Hugh, afterward King of *Ierusalem*; And

Marietta or *Mariana*, Wife to the Prince *de Borgne*, tearmed of *Bourgongne*. The Sonne of *Hugh*, and of *Louisa* of *Ierusalem*, was

IIII. *Henry*, Fourth King of *Cyprus*, Husband to *Placentia d'Iblin*, Sonne to the Prince of *Antioche*, Father and Mother of

V. *Hugh*, Second of the name, King of *Cyprus*, who died at the age of Foureteene yeares, leauing for Successour his Cousine

VI. *Hugh*, Third of the name, Prince of *Antioche*, King of *Cyprus*, Sonne of *Iohn* of *Luzignan*, and *Isabell* of *Cyprus*. By *Anne d'Iblin* his Wife, Daughter to the Prince of *Baruth*; he had a plentifull Ligne of Children, as here you may behold them in order.

1. *Iohn*, King of *Cyprus* and *Ierusalem*. } dying without issue.
2. *Henry* King of *Cyprus* and *Ierusalem*. }

3. *Bœmond*, a Religious Monke, of the Order of the Preaching Fryers, who renounced his Principality of *Galilee*, for the seruice of God.

4. *Camerino*, Constable of *Cyprus*, died without issue.

5. *Guy*, Constable of *Ierusalem*, Husband to *Louisa de Zimblet*: Father and Mother to *Hugh* and *Isabell* of *Cyprus*, Wife to *Iudes de Dampierre*, Constable of *Ierusalem*.

6. *Amaury*, Lord of *Tire* and *Sidon*, Husband to *Isabell*, Sister to the King of *Armenia*: Father and Mother of *Hugh*, King of *Armenia*, First of the Latine name.

7. *Chelius*, Wife to *Theodorus*, King of *Armenia*.

8. *Louisa*, Wife to *Balian d'Iblim*, Prince of *Galilee*.

9. *Mary*, Wife to a King of *Arragon*.

10. *Marietta*, or *Mariana*, Wife to *Hayton*, King of *Armenia*, Brother to *Theodorus*, King of *Armenia*.

During the Reigne of *Hugh* the Third, *Conradine*, calling himselfe King of *Naples* and *Sicelle*, hauing put to death (by commaund of *Monsieur Charles* of *France*, Duke of *Anion*, King of *Naples*) *Hugh*, King of *Cyprus*: caused himselfe to bee Crowned King of *Ierusalem* (in *Cæsaria*) and ordained, that his Successours, Kings of *Cyprus*, at their comming to the Crowne; should first be Crowned Kings of *Cyprus* at *Nicosia*, and Kings of *Ierusalem*, at *Famagusta*, which was afterward kept and continued. By the death of *Hugh* the Third, his two Sons.

VII. *Iohn*. } Were Kings of *Ierusalem* & *Cyprus*, & dying without issue succeeded their Nephew
VIII. *Henry*. }

IX. *Hugh*, Fourth of the Name, King of *Cyprus* and *Ierusalem*: who by his Wife *Louisa*, or *Alex de Zimblet*, had Fiue Sonnes, and Three Daughters.

1. *Peter*. }
2. *James*. } Kings.

3. *Guy*, Constable of *Cyprus*, who had had to Wife *Mary*, Daughter to *Lewes*, First Duke of *Bourbon*, and by her had not any Childe.

4. *Thomas*, who died without issue, and bare the name of Saint *Thomas* of *Aquine*, a bright splendor of the Church, and Prince in the Kingdome of *Naples*: allied to the House of *France*, and the

King of *Cyprus Hugh*, Fourth of the name, to whom he dedicated his Booke *De Regimine Principum*. This man, commonly called *Thomas Aquinas* among Schollers, was of the House of the Dukes of *Atrye*, in the Kingdome of *Naples*, and *Portoit d'Or au Lyon d'Azur*; *Armes, Langue, & membre de Gueules: Party d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules, Coronne d'Or, brise sur l'Espaule d'vn Lambeau d'Azur seme de Fleurs de Lys d'Or sans nombre.* Concerning Saint *Thomas of Aquine*.

Iohn, Prince of *Antioche*, who by *Anne, de Zimblet* his Wife, had two Sonnes; *Hugh*, that died in Hostage at *Geneway*, & *Iames*, that was Count of *Tripoly*, who espoused his Cousine Germaine *Mariana*, Daughter to King *Peter*. In which Marriage were borne foure Children.

Peter, Count of *Tripoly*, who Married his Cousine Germaine *Isabell*, Daughter to King *Iames*, and died without Children: *Iohn*; *Eleanor* and *Ciue*.

The Daughters to *Hugh* the Fourth were

Isabell, dying young.

Ciue, Wife to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, King of *Maiorica*. *Anne* Wife to the Marquesse of *Montferrat Theodor Paleologues*.

Mariana, Wife to *Gaultier de Dampierre*.

X. *Peter*, before Counte of *Tripoly*, was King of *Cyprus* and *Ierusalem* after his Father: whose vertues he followed not, but for his whoredomes and cruelties, was slaine by his subiects. He was long time in *Italie*, Gouernour of the Churches Patrimony, as well as King *Hugh* his Father, and *Petrino* his Sonne, they all three being in *Italie*. He tooke to Wife *Alianora*, Niece to the King of *Arragon*, and by her had three Children, one Sonne, and two Daughters.

XI. *Petrino*, King of *Cyprus* and *Ierusalem* after his Father, and tooke to Wife *Valentina* of *Millaine*, Daughter to *Barnabie* the Viscount, Duke of *Millaine*, and by her he had these Daughters Or little Peter, in regarde of his stature.

Ciue, who was not married: And yet neuertheless, the Histories of *Italie* giue her to Husband *Peter*, Duke of *Bourbon*, Sonne to *Lewes*, First of the name; and say beside, that the descendants of the same House of *Bourbon*; *Porterent Escartele au Premier de Bourbon, la Second de Hierusalem, le Troisiesme de Luzignan, & le Quatriesme de Cypre, qui est d'Argent*

au Lyon de Gueules, with the title of Kings of *Cyprus*. Which Kingdome belonged to them, in regard of *Ciue* of *Luzignan*, their Grand-Mother, to whom, after the death of King *Peter* (called the *Little-man*) her Brother, appertained the Kingdomes of *Cyprus* and *Ierusalem*.

Marietta, or *Mariana*, Wife to *Iames*, Count of *Tripoly*, Sonne to *Iohn*, Prince of *Antioche*. At the Sacring and Crowning of little King *Petrino*, the Ambassadours of *Venice* and *Geneuaye* were present in assistance; and because the Precedency was giuen to the *Venetians*: the *Geneuayes* entred into fury, and to reuenge themselues on *Petrino*, conspired against him, being fauoured therein by the Mother of *Petrino*. The treachery being discouered, all the *Geneuayes* perished by the edge of the Sword. And yet notwithstanding this reuendge, the Mother to King *Petrino*, made the *Geneuayes* Maisters of the City of *Famagosta*, which they ouerawed for the space of Threescore and tenne yeares. And with this Capitall Citty of the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, they had for Hostages the Vncle by the Mother side to *Petrino*, named *Iames*, afterward King of *Cyprus*, and the Sonnes to *Iohn*, Prince of *Antioch*, the eldest whereof died at *Geneuaye*. By the death of *Petrino*, deceassing without issue, and by the Fauour and Forces of the *Geneuayes*:

The *Geneuays* perished in a conspiracy for precedency.

XII. *Iames* of *Luzignan* (their Hostage) was made King of *Cyprus* and of *Ierusalem*: He was likewise King of *Armenia*, by the death of his Nephewe *Leo* of *Luzignan*, King of *Armenia*. By *Ciue de Zimblet* (Daughter to the Prince of *Baruth*) his wife, he had a copious linage.

Ianus of *Geneway* (so named, because he was borne in the Citty of *Geneway* in *Lombardie*, his Father and Mother being prisoners there.)

Hugh, Cardinall of Saint *Andrewe*, Archbishop of *Cyprus*, who died in *Sauoye*.

Phillip, Constable of *Cyprus*.
Eudes, Seneschall of *Cyprus*.
Guy, Constable of *Ierusalem*.
} dying without issue.

Henry, Prince of *Galilee*, Husband to *Louisa de Zimblet*, Lady of *Cerines*, Father and Mother to many Children the most part of them being slaine at the taking of *Cyprus* by the *Turke*, yet some of them dwelling at *Venice*.

The Daughters were

Agnes, who was not maried, although some doe report, that she was Wife to *Lewes*, he being Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*.

Mariana, Wife to *Lancelot*, King of *Naples*, and also of *Hungaria*.

Isabell, Wife to *Peter*, Prince of *Tripoly*, who deceassed without any issue.

Ciue, neuer maried.

XIII. *Ianus* of *Geneway*, so named (as we haue tolde you) by reason of his birth in *Geneway*; succeeded after King *Iames* his Father, Sacred in *Nicosia* King of *Ierusalem* and *Armenia*, and likewise of *Cyprus*, in one and the same day, and same Ceremony: because the *Geneuayes* holde *Famagosta*, the chiefe City of *Cyprus*, where the *Luzignans* were wont to be Crowned Kings of *Ierusalem*. Hee had to Wife *Charlote* of *Bourbon*, Daughter to *Iames* of *Bourbon*, Count *de la Marche*, by whom he had two Sonnes, and as many Daughters.

Anne, Wife to *Lewes*, Duke of *Sauoye*, in which Marriage was borne *Charlote* of *Sauoye*, Second Wife to King *Lewes* the Eleauenth, and Mother to King *Charles* the Eight. This was the man, that made good expression of his true Valour: For hee conquered the Kingdome of *Naples* at twenty yeares of age, and wunne also the memorable Battaile of *Fornoue* or *Forca-Noua*, in *Hetruria*.

Iames, Seneschall of *Cyprus*, dying without issue.

Mary, Wife to *Lewes* of *Bourbon*, Sonne to *Charles* of *Bourbon*.

And

XIIII. *Iohn*, Second of the name, who (after the death of his Father) was King of *Cyprus*, *Ierusalem* and *Armenia*; of which Kingdome the Armes were *d'Or au Lyon de Gueules brize d'vne Croisette d'Or sur l'Espaule gauche*. He was twise maried: in his first Nuptialls. He espoused *Isabell* of *Montferrat*, Daughter to *Iohn Iames Palæologus*, Marquesse of *Montferrat*, and the Sister of *Amadis*, First Duke of *Sauoy*, but by her he had no children.

In second estate of Wedlocke, hee had *Helena Paleologus*, Cousin to his first Wife, and daughter to *Theodorus Paleologus*, *Despote de la Morea*, that is to say, Lord of *Peloponesus*; who was Brother to *Constantine*, the last Emperour of *Constantinople*. And in this Marriage were borne two daughters:

Charlote, Queene; And
Cleopatra, who dyed young.

He had likewise a naturall Sonne, named

Iames, Bishop of *Nicosia*, who vsurped the Kingdome of *Cyprus* against Queene *Charlote*.

XV. *Charlote*, after the death of King *Iohn* her Father, was Queene of *Cyprus*, *Ierusalem*, and of *Armenia* in the life time of her Father. She was marryed to *Iohn* the Infant of *Portugall* (Sonne to *Dom Pedro*, Duke of *Coimbre*, Sonne to the King of *Portugall*, First of the name) Prince of *Antioche*, who deceassed in *Cyprus* without any Children, in the life time of King *Iohn*, his Father in Law.

In second Marriage shee was matched with her Cousine *Lewes*, Count *de Geneuois*, Sonne to *Lewes*, Duke of *Sauoye*, and *Anne* of *Luzignan*. *Charlote* was Crowned (at *Nicosia*) Queene of *Cyprus* and *Ierusalem*; and on the same day of her Coronation, returning from the Cathedrall Church of Saint *Sophia*; the white Palfraye whereon she was mounted, suddenly starting and rising: the Crowne fell from off the Queenes head; which the *Cypriots* tooke for an ominous presage, and signe of some euill towards their Queene. And indeede, within a very short while after, both shee and her husband were expulsed from *Cyprus*, by her Bastard Brother.

XVI. *Iames*, Second of the name, Subdeacon, and afterward Bishop of *Nicosia*, who vsurped the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, foure hundred, threescore and two: beeing assisted in this vsurpation, by the *Venetians*, and the Sultane of *Cayre*, to whom he yeelded himselfe Tributary. He tooke to wife *Katharine Cornari* daughter to *Marino Cornari*, a Gentleman of *Venice*, and in this marriage hee had a Sonne that was a Posthumus.

XVII. *Iames*, Third of the name, who dyed when he was two yeares old, and his Mother Queen *Katharine* retreated her selfe to *Venice*, there to spend the remainder of her life: hauing (before hand) put the *Venetians* in possession of the goodly Isle of *Cyprus*, which freely she gaue them, not taking any recompence for it, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and nine.

Pope *Pius*, Second of the name, gaue a dispensation to *Iames* the Bastard, that he might be marryed: howbeit before, at the earnest poursuite and request of Queene *Charlote*, he had thundered Ecclesiasticall censures against him, and proclaimed him to be both a Tyrant, and vsurper of the Kingdome of *Cyprus*. Queene *Charlote* beeing refuged at *Rome* (where she continued the rest of her life time, and at the Popes pension) adopted for her Sonne the Prince of *Sauoye Amadis*, her Cousine; and Sonne to *Charles*, Duke of *Sauoye*, First of the name; to whom she gaue, granted and transported, the right which she had in the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, and dyed in the yeare, One thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and fiue.

The ending of the Kingdome of *Cyprus*.

And so tooke ending the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, held by the most Illustrious Family of the *Luzignans* three hundred yeares intirely. The Great *Turke Selim*, Second of the name, wunne possession of this Island from the *Venetians*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand, fiue hundred, threescore and ten; and the *Turkes* haue held the possession of it euer since. Now in this traine falleth a very conuenient place, to obserue the Kings of *Armenia*, which were of the same name and Armes of *Luzignan*.

The Kings of Armenia, that carryed the Armes and name of Luzignan, from the beginning.

1. *Armenia* beeing diuided into the Greater and Lesser, the first King thereof was named *Linonius*, otherwise called *Leonus*, who receiued the Crowne Royall from the Emperour of the West, *Henry*, Sixt of the name, by the hands of his Chancellour *Henry d'Hyperbolee*, about the yeare One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and seauenteene. This

Linonius

Liuonius, and his Succeſſours Kings of *Armenia* (vntill ſuch time as the Kingdome fell to the *Luzignans*) *Portoient d'Azure à Trois Teſtes de Roynes d'Argent, Coronnees d'Or. Liuonius* had to wife *Sybilla*, daughter to *Amaury* of *Luzignan*, Second King of *Cyprus*, and to the Queene of *Ieruſalem*, *Iſabell* his Wife, by her he had two daughters.

Iſabell, Wife to *Iohn de Brenne*, King of *Ieruſalem*, deceaſſing immediately after the King her Father. And

Mary, Wife to

II. *Coſtus* (that is to ſay *Conſtantius*) Baron of *Armenia*, and King, in regard of his wife: By whom he had foure Sons and two daughters.

Haitonus, King.

Brabatus } These two reuolted from their eldeſt Brother, who ouercame them in a fought Battaile, made them his priſoners, cauſed their eyes to be pluckt forth, and then ſent them in exile to *Conſtantinople*.
Coſtus. }

Sinebaldus, Conſtable of *Armenia*.

The daughters were

Sybilla, Wife to *Andronicus Commenes*, afterward Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, who kept his two Brethren priſoners ſo long as they liued: And

Iſabell, Wife to *Amaury* of *Luzignan*, Lord of *Tyre* and *Sidon* Sonne to

Hugh, Third of the name, King of *Cyprus* and of *Ieruſalem*, Father and Mother of

Hugh, King of *Armenia*, Firſt of the Latine name.

III. *Haitonus*, eldeſt Sonne to *Coſtus* and *Mary*, King and Queene of *Armenia*, tooke to Wife *Mariana* of *Luzignan* Daughter to *Hugh*, Third of the name, King of *Cyprus* and *Ieruſalem*. In this Marriage were borne

Liuonius, that is *Leo*, King.

Sinebaldus, ſlaine in fighting againſt the Soldane of *Ægypte*, in the yeare One thouſand, two hundred, threeſcore and ſixe.

Theros, that is *Theodorus*, King.

Haitonus, Baron of *Armenia*, who renounced the world, and yeelded himſelfe a Monke of the Order of *Premonſtre*: of which Order we haue ſpoken in the Hiſtory of *Tartaria*, Imprinted with *Nouus Orbis*; but mine is of the Impreſſion at *Baſile*, in the yeare, One thouſand

An Order of Trauelers with white Habites.

fiue hundred, thirty ſeauen. His worke was written in *French*, in the Cittie of *Poictiers*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, three hundred and ſeauen (according as the ſame *Haitonus*, Prince of *Armenia* hath dictated) and by him offered and preſented to Pope *Clement* the Fift, and to the King of *France* and *Nauarre Phillip le Bell*, Fourth of the name, beeing in the Citty of *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, and afterward it was turned into Latine.

IV. *Leo*, 2. of the name, fourth Chriſtian King of *Armenia*, and of a ſtrange language, was Succeſſour to King *Haitonus* his Father, in the yeare One thouſand, two hundred, threeſcore and foure. This man, by the exhortations of his Maternall Vncle *Boëmond* of *Luzignan*, being (when he was of the world) Prince of *Galilee*, and afterward of the Order of the Preaching Fryers: became a Monke of the Order of Saint *Baſile*, and was named *Macharius*; for the ſeruice of God, hee left his Kingdome to his Brother.

V. *Theodorus*, Fift King of *Armenia*, who had two wiues. The firſt was *Erikaton*, Daughter to *Caſſanus*, the *Great Cham of Tartaria*, by whom hee had no iſſue. The *Great Chams* of *Tartaria* carried in Armes *L'Eſcu d'Or, à vn Hibou de Sable*. In memory of their firſt Emperor *Cangis Cham*, ſaued by the meanes of an Owle, as it is reported by the Monke *Haitonus* the *Armenian*, in his Chronicle, which hee entitleth his *Tartaria*, the ſixt Chapter.

In ſecond Marriage he eſpouſed *Chelluis*, Siſter to *Henry*, King of *Cyprus*. *Theodorus* dying in the yeare One thouſand three hundred; left the Kingdome to his onely Sonne

VI. *Leo*, Third of the name, who by his Couſine *Agnes* (Daughter to *Amaury* of *Luzignan*, and *Iſabell*, Siſter to his Father *Theodor*) had three Children, ſlaine with their Father and Mother by the *Grand Cham* of the *Tartares*. So that by his death in this manner, the Kingdome of *Armenia* came to his neereſt heire and Couſine

VII. *Hugh* of *Luzignan*, Sonne to *Amaury*, Lord of *Tyre* and *Sidon*, Brother to the King of *Cyprus Henry*, who was he Firſt Latine King in the Realme of *Armenia*. He had three Sonnes.

Iohn,

Iohn, King.

Amaury, Conſtable of *Armenia*, Father to *Leo*, King of *Armenia*: And

Leo, King.

VIII. *John* of *Luzignan*, Second Latine King of *Armenia*, hauing held the Royall Authority ſometime: abandoned the world to become a Gray Fryer, reſigning his Kingdome to his Nephewe, the Sonne of his Brother *Amaury*.

IX. *Leo*, Fourth of the name, Third Latine King, who maintained his Kingdome valiantly: which (by his death) fell to his Vncle.

X. *Leo*, Fift of the name, and fourth Latine King, who gouerning with ouermuch ſloth and negligence; his Brother King *Iohn* the Gray Fryer, came foorth of his Monaſtery, and rayſed a powerfull Army, which he conducted with King *Leo* his Brother againſt the *Tartares* (who hauing before beene Chriſtians, became plundged againe in the depth of impious *Mahomets* falſe doctrine) that vanquiſhed the Chriſtians, and ſlew both the Kings. So that by their death

XI. *Leo*, Sixt and laſt of the name (ſeeing the Fift Latine King) ſucceeded in the Realme of *Armenia*. He was Son to *Leo* the Fift, and *Irene*, Daughter to *Phillip*, Prince of *Tarentum*, Brother to *Robert*, King of *Naples*, and *Charles*, King of *Hungary*. He reigned but a ſhort time in *Armenia*, which was ſoone inueſted with *Tartares* and *Sarrazins*, who expulſed or martyred all the Chriſtians of *Armenia*, as well in the Greater, as Leſſe. So that King *Leo* was enforced to flye into *Cyprus*, to procure ſuccour from the little King *Petrino* his Kinſeman: who had worke enough to do, to defend himſelfe againſt the *Generayes*, that greatly troubled his Kingdome of *Cyprus*.

From thence hee iourneyed to *Rome*, to *England*, and then into *France* to King *Charles*, ſixt of the name, who entertained him humainely as his Kinſeman, and kept his Court then in the City of *Paris*. There hee dyed with conceit of griefe, hauing made ſo many iourneyes to and fro, to reconcile the Chriſtian Princes: in hope of recouering his Kingdome, loſt in a moment, with his wife and children. Soone after he made his Will and Teſtament, in the yeare One thouſand, three hundred, fourſcore and ten, wherby he elected his buriall place in the Quire of the *Celeſtines* at *Paris*, to whom he left a certaine ſumme of money, for the maintenance of three ſmall Celles of Religious perſons, that they might there pray to God for his Soule, & his Princely Predeceſſours of the Houſe of *Luzignan*. He had Penſions from the Kings of *England*, *France*, *Nauarre*, *Arragon* and *Caſtille*.

His Monument is yet to bee ſeene of White Marble, on the right hand of the *Celeſtines* Quire in *Paris*, with his picture lying along vpon it, of very faire White Marble. In his right hand hee helde a Scepter, which is new broken, and his Gloues in the other hand. Round about the Tombe is engrauen this Epitaphe.

Cy giſt treſnoble & excellent Prince Lyon de Luzignan, *Quint Roy Latin du Royaume d'Armenie, qui rendit l'Ame à Dieu à Paris le Vingt-neufuieſme Iour de Nouembre*, l'an de grace Mille trois Cents Quatre vingts treize. *Priez Dieu pour luy.*

Here lieth the moſt Noble and excellent Prince Lyon of Luzignan, Fift Latine King of the Kingdome of Armenia; who rendered his Soule to God at Paris the Nine and twentieth day of Nouember, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand, three hundred, foureſcore and fourteene. Praye to God for him.

Aloft on the vpholding Arch of this Tombe, are the Armes of the ſaid King of *Armenia*, deuided in three parts. *Le Premier d'Armenie; Party de Hieruſalem, et Tierce de Luzignan de Chaſteau Neuf.*

Yeares and Reignes of the Kings of Cyprus.

1. GVy, Firſt King of *Cyprus*, Reigned three yeare in *Cyprus*.
2. *Amaury* his Brother, Reigned thirteene yeares.
3. *Hugh*, thirteene yeares.
4. *Henry*, that receiued the King Saint *Lewes* into *Cyprus*; Reigned three and thirty yeares.
5. *Hugh* the Second, tenne yeares.
6. *Hugh* the Third, ſeauenteene yeares.
7. *Iohn*, one yeare.

8. *Henry*,

8. *Henry* three and thirty yeares.
9. *Hugh* the Fourth, fixe and thirty yeares.
10. *Peter*, called the Great, Reigned eighteene yeares, and was slaine by his owne people for his cruelties.
11. *Petrino*, called the Little fat man, eleauen yeares.
12. *Iames*, twenty yeares.
13. *Iames* of *Geneway*, so called, because he was borne at *Geneway*, during the imprisonment of his Father, Reigned thirty yeares.
14. *John* the Second, eight and twenty yeares.
15. *Charlote*, Reigned alone one yeare, and with
16. *Lewes* of *Sauoye* her Husband two yeares.
17. *Iames* the Second, a Bastard, Reigned two yeares in warre against his Sister; and tenne yeares peaceably, after the expulsion of Queene *Charlote*.
18. *Iames* the Third, two yeares.
19. *Katharine*, Reigned alone fourteene yeares.

Names and Armes of the Families issued and descended of the most Illustrious House of *Luzignan*.

CHAP. III.

THe first Countes of *Poictiers*, *Portoient de Gueules, à Cinq Tours d'Or en Saultoir, à la Porte de Sable.*

The first Countes of *Luzignan*, and *de la Marche*; *Portoient Burele d'Azur et d'Argent de Dix pieces.*

De la Roche-Foucauld, Burele de Luzignan, sur le Tout Trois Cheurons de Gueules.

Of Saint *Gelais* is Quartered. The first and fourth *De Cinq points d'Azur, equipolez à quatre d'Argent* (this is no Crosse, as ignorant Painters make it.) The second and third *D'Argent, au Lyon de Gueules Coronne d'Or.*

De Lansac. Idem.

De Sainct Seuerin de Poictiers. Idem.

Partenay, Burele d'Azur et d'Argent de Dix pieces, à la Bande de Gueules Brochant sur le Tout. Instead of an Helmet, the Lords of *Partenay* beare a Miter, and the Sirname of Archbishop. Because that one of this house, being Archbishop of *Tours*, was dispenced withall to be marryed: with this charge and condition, that he and his descent should beare the Sirname of Archbishop, and a Miter ouer their Armes.

Of *Soubise.* Idem.

Of Saint *Valier* of *Poictiers*, *D'Azur à Cinq Besants d'Argent. 2. 2. 1. au Chef d'Or.*

Of the *Luzignans*, Countes of *Angoulesme. Burele d'Azur, et d'Argent de Dix pieces, Party d'Or à Neuf Lozenges de Gueules. 3. 3. 3.*

Of the *Luzignans* of *Coignac Burele de Luzignan, au Lambell de Gueules,*

Of the *Luzignans* of *Chasteau-Neuf. De Luzignan, Burele au Lyon de Gueules, Coronné d'Or sur le Tout.*

Of the *Luzignans* of *Valencia*, and of *Couhe*, *Burele de Luzignan. Les faces d'Argent, chargees de Dix Faulcons de Gueules. 3. 3. 3. 1.*

Of the *Luzignans* that were Kings of *Ierusalem*, of *Armenia*, and of *Cyprus.* Quartered. *Au Premier de Hierusalem: Le Seconde Luzignan de Chasteau-Neuf: Le Troisiesme d'Armenie, et le Quatriesme de Cypre.*

The

The Crosse of the Order of the Knights of the *Holy Sepulcher of Ierusalem.* Instituted in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, one hundred and three: By *Baldwine*, First of the name, Second King of *Ierusalem*, and Brother to the famous Prince *Godfrey* of *Bullen.*

Croix de L'Ordre du Sainct Sepulchre de Hierusalem.

CHAP. IIII.

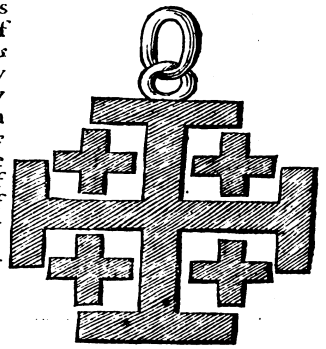
THE *Order of the Holy Sepulcher*, is the first and most Auncient of all them in *Palestine* and the Holy-Land. For the Citty of *Ierusalem*, having beene conquered from the Emperours of *Greece* by the *Sarrazins*: the keeping of the *Holy Sepulcher*, and the *Mount of Caluarie*, were left by the same *Sarrazins*, to a certaine number of Chanons Reguler, of the Order and Cloathing of Saint *Augustine*, gouerned by the Patriarch; Bishop of the same place.

The keeping of the Sepulcher and the Mount of *Caluarie.*

Godfrey of *Bologne*, First King of *Ierusalem* of the *French* Nation, gaue great goods to those Chanons Reguler, and to their Patriarche; especially by his last Will and Testament, whereby he ordained and appointed: That both himselfe and his Successours Kings of *Ierusalem*, should bee buryed in their Cathedrall Church, which was ioyning to the *Holy Sepulcher*. And that the Patriarche should be the man, by whom his Successours the Kings of *Ierusalem*, must bee Sacred and Crowned.

Buriall for the Kings of *Ierusalem.*

Baudarme, First of the name, Successour to his Brother *Godfrey*, made those Chanons Reguler (of being Monkes before) Men of Armes, and *Knights of the Holy Sepulcher*. Ordayning withall, that they should still retaine their White Habite, wheron they must weare vpon the breast (fastened with a Gordon and Blacke Riband) *Vne Croix potencee, et Cantonnee de Croissettes de mesme, sans aucun esmaill.* Such as the Kings of *Ierusalem* bare in their Armes, as a noate of excellency and prerogatiue. And a like Crosse of yellow embroderie, sowed or made fast on the left side of their White Roabe or Cloake. He appointed for their Chiefe and Great Maister, the Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, to whom hee granted power, for conferring the said Order, and receiuing the Vowe made by the Knights; which was of Obedience, Chastity, and Poverty, not hauing any thing in proper or perticuler, but liuing in common.



Knights of the Holy Sepulcher and their Crosse.

The Patriarch Great Maister

He gaue also perticulerly to the Patriarch, Priuiledge to seale all Expeditions and Letters of the said Order, and with White Waxe, as King *Godfrey*, *Bauldwine* and their Successours had done, and did. For the Knights *Templers* sealed with Red Waxe: The *Hospitallers* of *Saint Iohn of Ierusalem*, with Blacke Waxe: They of the *Order of Saint Mary of the Teutones*, in the same manner: Those of Saint *Lazarus* with Green Waxe: Of *Saint Thomas the Apostle*, with Blew Waxe. And those of *Saint Katharine* of *Mount Sinay*, with Red Waxe.

Prerogatiue for Sealing.

Is it not then any matter of meruayle, that those Monkes should manage Armes, in stead of their Breuiarie, because in that season, and so long as the Voyages beyond the

The valiant disposition of the Churchmen in those times.

the Seas continued; men of the Church which trauayled thither, of what degree or dignity soeuer they were, mooued and prouoked with zealous deuotion, to warre vpon those wicked Miscreants: enstructed and tutoured their owne hands, in as actiue manner, as they that made profession of Armes. As is to bee seene in the Histories of the Holy-Lands Warres, written by *Guillaume de Saumur*, Archbishop of *Tyre*; *John de Villehardouin*, Lord of *Ioinuille*, in the Life of *Laint Lewes*, and other Historians.

The forced departure frō the holy Land.

These Knights of the *Holy Sepulcher* encreased (in an instant) both in Number, Honour and Wealth, as well as any of the other Orders: vntill such time as by the Conquest of the Holy-Land, and namely of the Holy Citty, by the *Caliphe* and *Saltane Saladine*, in the yeare before remembred; thy were enforced to leaue *Palestine*, and passe into *Italy*, where they made choice of their dwelling (for some time) at *Perugia*, enriched with great store of booties, not only in *Italy*, but likewise in *France*, in *Spayne* and in *Sicilie*,

Two Societies of Knights vnited into one, but soone dissoynted.

Pope *Innocent*, Eight of the name, by his Bull bearing Date, Anno, One thousand foure hundred, fourescore and foure, the first of his Pontificalitie, vnited and incorporated these Knights of the *Holy Sepulcher*, with the Knights and *Hospitallers of Saint John of Ierusalem*, remaining then in the Isle of *Rhodes*, as being of one and the same Vowe and Rule; he gaue them the goods also of the Knights of the *Holy Sepulcher*, by consent of the Christian Princes. But this vnion was not of any long continuance, because the Knights hauing breathed a while on liberty, changed their vowes, to a Wife and her traine, which are Children and House-keeping.

Whereupon Pope *Alexander*, Sixt of the name, in the fourth yeare of his Pontificalitie, and of Grace One thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and sixteene, transported to the Holy Seate and himselfe, all power of conferring this Order of the *Holy Sepulcher*, publishing himselfe and his Successours Popes, to bee Chiefe and Soueraigne Great Maisters thereof. Giuing power to his Vicar Generall, the Guardian of the *Holy Sepulcher* (who is alwayes of the Rule of Saint *Frances de Assise*) to conferre this Order vpon Pilgrimes and voyagers to the Holy-Land, marryed or vnmarryed: prouided, that they take their Oath vpon the *Holy Sepulcher*, to be Noble by extraction, or vocation, and to haue sufficiency of goods for their maintenance, without dealing or medling in traffique and merchandise, for the raysing of shamefull and dishoneſt gaine. Likewise, to goe in Armes to the Holy-Land, or wadge a man sufficient for it at their expences, when the Christian Princes shall bring an Armie into the Field, for their recouery of the Holy-Land.

The Guardians power that keepeth the Holy Sepulcher.

But it hath come to passe, through the necessitie of the Family of Gray Fryers, belonging to the *Holy Sepulcher*, that the Guardian conferreth and bestowesh this Order, on whomsoeuer doth require it; without any exact enquest, or authenticall testimony of Nobility in him then present, paying thirty *Sequins* of Gold, which is giuen to the Conuent. So that the most part of these Knights of the *Holy Sepulcher* now are Yeomen and Merchants, which begin their Knighthood with a falle Oath through lacke of vnderstanding Latine, and that the Guardian maketh not their Enquest in *French*; for I speake of none, but such as are made Knights thus of out Nation.

The Knights of the Sepulcher in these times.

And here I thought good to set downe the Ceremonies, which are there obserued to this present day, & obserued in the writings and voyages of our *French* Pilgrim *Bartholmewe de Salignac*, of *Lorraine*; *Anthony Regnault*, a *Parisian*, and *Iames de Villamont*, a Gentleman *Breton*. If the Pilgrime which presenteth himselfe to be made Knight, haue a Sword (which happeneth very rarely; because the *Turkes* permit not any Christian Trauailer to carry any Sword, in the Lands vnder their obedience) then the Guardian blesseth it in this following manner, vpon the *Holy Sepulcher* of our Lord.

Hallowing or blessing the Sworde vpon the Holy Sepulcher, and Creation of a Knight.

Adiutorium nostrum in nomine Domini.

Qui fecit Cœlum & terram.

Oremus.

EXaudi quæsumus Domine preces nostras, & hunc Ensem, quo se Famulus tuus hic cingi desiderat, Maiestatis tuæ dextra dignare benedicere, quatenus possit esse defensor Ecclesiarum, Viduarum, Orphanorum, omniumque Deo seruientium, contra sæuitiam Paganorum, atque sibi insidiantibus sit terror, atque formido, præstans ei equæ persecutionis, & iustæ defensionis effectum. Per Christum Dominum nostrum Amen.

Oremus.

BEnedic Domine Sancte, Pater Omnipotens, æterne Deus, per inuocationem Nominis tui & per Aduentum Christi Filij tui Domini nostri, & per donum Spiritus-Sancti hunc Ensem, vt hic Famulus tuus qui Hodierna die, tua concedente pietate præcingitur, visibiles, & inuisibiles inimicos posternat, & conculcet, Victoriaque potitus maneat semper illæsus. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

Then is sung very low and softly (because the *Turkes* will not suffer the Christians to sing Psalmes with loud voyces, as they do in our Churches) the whole Psalme following, presented heere in part.

BEnedictus Dominus Deus meus, qui docet manus meas ad prælium, & digitos meos ad bellum, &c.

Gloria Patri & Filio, & Spiritui sancto.

Sicut erat in principio, & nunc, &c.

Saluum fac seruum tuum Domine.

Deus meus sperantem in te.

Esto ei Domine Turris Fortitudinis.

A facie inimici.

Domine exaudi orationem meam.

Et clamor meus ad te veniat.

Dominus vobiscum, & cum Spiritu tuo.

Oremus.

DOmine sancte, Pater Omnipotens, Æterne Deus, qui cuncta solùs ordinas, & recte disponis, qui ad coercendā malitiam & malorum improbitatem, & tuendam Iustitiam, ensem Gladij in Terris Hominibus tua salubri dispositione permisisti, & Militarem Ordinem ad Populi protectionem instituì voluisti, quique per bestium Ioannem Militibus ad se in Deserto venientibus, vt neminem conculerent, sed propriꝭ contenti essent stipendiis, dici fecisti: Clementiam tuam supplices exoramus, vt sicut Dauid puero tuo, Goliath superandi largitus es facultatem, & Iudam Machabæum deferitate Gentium nomen tuum non inuocantium triumphare fecisti: ita & huic famulo tuo N. qui nouiter iugo Militiæ colla supponit, pietate cœlesti vires & robur ad Fidei, Spei, & Charitatis augmentum, & tui timorem pariter, & amorem, humilitatem, perseuerantiam, obedientiam, & patientiam, cunctaque in eo recte disponas, vt Neminem cum gladio isto, vel alio iniuste ledat, & omnia cum æquitate, & recta defendat, & sicut ipse de minori gradu, ad nouum Militarem prouehitur honorem, ita veterem Hominem deponens cum actibus suis, nouum induat Hominem, vt te timeat, & recte colat, per fidorum consortia vitet, & suam in Proximum Charitatem extendat, Præposito suo in omnibus recte obediat, & suum in cunctis iuste officium exequatur. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

The manner of the Guardians making a Knight of the Sepulcher.

This is the last Acte of these Ceremonies, saiuing to guirde on the Sword about the Knight, after the Guardian hath giuen him three stroakes with the Sword on the shoulders flat long. And this is the beginning thereof.

After Procession is performed in all the places of deuotion, within the *Holy Sepulcher* at midnight, and High Masse celebrated vpon the Sepulcher of our Sauiour (capable of receiuing fiue or sixe persons at the most) the future Knights, or they that are to be made, after receiuing the Holy Communion, enter into the Sepulcher, and present themselues to the Father Guardian, Vicar Generall to our holy Father the Pope, who (for the performance of this Ceremonie) is cloathed

thed in his Bishops habits, inuoking the grace and assistance of the blessed Spirit, and singeth this Hymne.

VEni *Creator Spiritus.* out at length.
Emitte Spiritum tuum, & creabuntur.
Et renouabis faciem Terræ.
Domine exaudi orationem meam.
Et clamor meus ad te veniat.
Dominus vobiscum, & cum Spiritu tuo.

Oremus.

DEus *qui corda Fidelium Sancti Spiritus illustratione docuisti, &c.*

And the Guardian (questioning the future Knight) demandeth thus of him.

Quid quæris? What seekest thou?

He answereth, humbly being on his knees before the *Holy Sepulcher.*

Quæro effici Miles Sanctissimi Sepulchri Domini nostri Iesu Christi. I desire and seeke to be made a Knight of the most Holy Sepulcher of our Lord Iesus Christ.

To other demaunds the future Knight ought to make answer, according to the forme following.

I. *Cuius conditionis es?* He ought to answer without lying.

R. *Nobilis Genere, & Parentibus generosis natus.*

I. *Habesne vnde honeste manu-tenere possis statum, & Militarem dignitatem, absque mercimonijs, & arte mechanica?*

I. *Habeo Dei gratia bonorum sufficientem copiam.*

R. *Es ne paratus corde, & ore iurare pro virili, Militaria Sacramenta, eaque seruare quæ sequuntur?*

Primo. *Miles Sanctissimi Sepulchri omni die, opportunitate habita, Missam audire debet.*

Secundo. *Cum necesse fuerit bona temporalia, & Vitam exponere debebit, scilicet, quando est bellum vniuersale contra Infideles, & venire in propria persona, vel mittere personam idoneam.*

Tertio. *Est obligatus Sanctam Dei Ecclesiam, & eius Fideles Ministros, ab eorum persecutoribus defendere, & pro viribus liberare.*

Quarto. *Debet iniusta bella, turpia stipendia, & lucra,* Hastilludia, Duella, *& huiusmodi (nisi Militaris exercitij gratia) omnino vitare.*

Quinto. *Debet Pacem, & Concordiam inter Christi Fideles procurare: Rempublicam exornare, & augere: Viduas, & Orphanos protegere: Iuramenta execrabilia, Periuria, Blasphemias, Rapinas, Vsuras, Sacrilegia: Homicidia, Adulteria, Ebrietatem, Loca suspecta, Personas infames, cæteraque Carnis vitia vitare, & tanquam Pestem cauere: & se apud Deum, & Homines irreprehensibilem exhibere, ac etiam verbo, ac facto dignum* Honore Militiæ *se demonstrare, Ecclesias frequentando, & cultum diuinum augmentando.*

The Guardians questions and the Knights answers.

I. *Of what condition art thou?*

R. *Of Noble race or descent, and borne of Gentlemanly parentage.*

I. *Hast thou wherewithall to maintaine honestly the degree and dignity of a Knight; without medling in buying and selling and mechanicall arts?*

R. *I haue (God be thanked for it) store of goods sufficient.*

I. *Art thou prepared in heart, and with thy mouth manly to sweare Sacramentall Warre sare, and to obserue these matters that follow?*

The future Knight is taught and enstructed.

The Articles of the Knights Oath and charge.

First; To heare Masse dayly, except he shall be hindered by some lawfull let or excuse.

Secondly; to expose his meanes, and his owne person, at all times, and so often as any vniuersall warre shall be made against the Infidels and Sarrazins: Or else to wadge and pay a capable and sufficient person, for the doing thereof.

Thirdly; To defend the Church, and Ministers thereof, with all his might and power: And to set them at safe deliuerance, from all such as afflict and persecute them.

Fourthly; To detest and abhorre all vniust Warres; all sordid and dishonest Gaines, Traffiques or Merchandises, vnworthy and vnfitting Noble mindes: All Duelloes, Iousts, Tourneys and Tournaments: If they bee not Exercises Worthy and becomming a Noble nature,

nature, and free from offending his Neighbour.

Fiftly, to procure and worke peace and concord among faithfull Christians, being at harsh or vnbefitting intelligence one with another: To contribute for the adorning and encreasing the State: To sustaine and defend the Widdowe and Orphane: To shunne and detest (as a Plague or Leprosie) all execrable Oathes and Swearing, against the Diuine and Sacred name of God, and the blessed Virgin Mother: To hate all Periuries, Blasphemies, Rapines, Vsurets, Sacrileges, Murders, Adulteries, keeping Concubines, and Drunkennesse: To auoide all suspected places, infameus Persons, as are Panders, Baudes, Drunkards, Tiplers, Tauerners, and Swaggerers, (now tearmed and Sirnamed Academistes) Counterfeites of the Hostell of Bourgongne, and people of the like deplorable liues: To shunne and flye from all such vices, as darken, disgrace and soyle the soule. And (in brieffe) to be such a one in effect (and not in outward appearance) towards God and men, as a Christian ought to be, honoured with this title of Honour, of being a Knight of Iesus Christ, aduancing his Seruice to your vttermost power.

The future Knight hauing promised to keepe and performe all these things, hee sweareth vpon the *Holy Sepulcher,* in this forme and manner.

His Oath vpon the Sepulcher.

Ego N. *profiteor, & promitto Deo* Iesu Christo *&, Beatæ* Virgini Mariæ *hæc omnia pro viribus obseruaturum.*

I. N. *Professe and promise to God, Iesus Christ, and the blessed Virgin Mary, all these things faithfully to obserue.*

The Oath done, the Father Guardian layeth his hand on the head of the future Knight, saying.

Et tu N. *esto fidelis, strenuus, bonus, & robustus Miles Domini nostri Iesu Christi, & Sanctissimi eius Sepulchri, qui te cum Electis suis in gloria sua collocare dignetur. Amen.*

And thou N. *be a faithfull, courragious, good and strong Knight of our Lord Iesus Christ, and of his most Holy Sepulcher, that among his elect, he may worthily call thee into his eternall Glory. Amen.*

The girting on of his Spurs.

Afterward the Guardian causeth his Golden Spurres to be put on his heeles, and deliuereth him the naked Sword into his hand, saying.

Accipe N. *Sanctum gladium in nomine Patris ✠ & Filii ✠ & Spiritus Sancti ✠ Amen: & vtaris eo ad defensionem tuam, & sanctæ Dei Ecclesiæ, ad confusionem Inimicorum Crucis Christi, & Fidei Christianæ: Et quantum imbecillitas humana permiserit, eo nemini iniuste lædas. Quod ipse præstare dignetur qui cum Patre, & Spiritu Sancto regnat Deus per omnia sæcula sæculorum, Amen.*

Delivery of the Sword.

Receiue N. *this Holy Sword, in the name of ✠ the Father, and of the ✠ Sonne, and of the ✠ Holy Ghost ✠ Amen. And vse it in thine owne defence, and for the Holy Church of God: to the confusion of the enemies to the Crosse of Christ, and of the Christian Faith. And in as much as humaine weaknes will permit; hurt nor wound any man therewith vniustly. Which hee vouchsafe to grant, who with the Father and the Blessed Spirit reigneth God, world without end. Amen.*

And then the Sword is guirded about him by the Guardian, who pronounceth these verses of the Prophet *Dauid.*

The guirding it on by the Guardian.

Accingere *gladio tuo* N *super femur tuum potentissime, in nomine Domini nostri Iesu Christi: & attende quod Sancti non in gladio, sed per Fidem vicerunt Regna.*

Guird thee N. *with thy Sword vpon thy thigh, O thou most mighty, in the name of our Lord Iesus Christ: And learne to know, that the Saints, not by the Sword, but by Faith doe winne the kingdome.*

The Knight boweth downe his body, and layeth his head vpon the Sepulcher, and then the Guardian giueth him three stroaks flatlong with the Sword vpon his shoulders, saying.

The maner of his Knighting.

Ego *constituo, & ordino te* N. *Militem sanctissimi Sepulchri Domini nostri Iesu Christi in nomine Patris ✠ et Filii ✠ & Spiritus sancti ✠ Amen.*

I constitute and ordaine thee N. *a Knight of the most Holy Sepulcher of our Lord Iesus Christ: In the name of the ✠ Father, and of the ✠ Sonne, and of the ✠ Holy Ghost, Amen.* Making three times the signe of the Crosse. He kisseth him afterward, and putteth on the Chaine and Crosse of Gold about his neck. Which being done, the Knight, & they with him (if there be any more created) do sing *Te Deum laudamus,* in making a

Procesſion; And the Guardian ſingeth the Hymne of reioycing, which being ended, the Prayers follow.

I. *Speciosè forma præ filiis Hominum.*
R. *Accingere gladio tuo ſuper femur tuum potentiſſime.*
I. *Domine exaudi orationem meam.*
R. *Et clamor meus ad te veniat.*
I. *Dominus vobiſcum.* R. *Et cum ſpiritu tuo.*

Oremus.

DA Eccleſiæ tuæ miſericors Deus, vt Sancto Spiritu congregata, Hoſtili nullatenus incurſione turbetur:

OMnipotens ſempiterne Deus ſuper hunc N. famulum tuum (vel famulos tuos, if there be many to be Knighted) *qui eminenti mucrone Militiæ circumcingi deſiderat, gratiam tuæ benedictionis infunde,* ✠ *eumque Dexteræ tuæ virtute munitum, ſac cunctis aduerſantia cœleſtibus armari præſidiis, quibus in hoc ſeculo nullis bellorum tempeſtatibus exturbetur Per Dominum noſtrum Ieſum Chriſtum qui, tecum viuit & regnat Deus per omnia ſecula ſeculorum. Amen.*

I. *Thou art fairer then the children of men.*
R. *Guird thee with thy ſword vpon thy thigh, O thou moſt mightie.*
I. *O Lord heare our prayer.*
R. *And let our cry come vnto thee.*
I. *The Lord be with you.*
R. *And with thy Spirit.*

The Ceremonies being finiſhed, the Guardian, the Religious Brethren, and the Voyagers thither, doe kiſſe and embrace the new made Knights.

Conclusion of the Ceremonies.

It is reported, that Saint *Lewes* gaue great Exemptions and Priuiledges to the *French* voyagers beyond the Seas, for defence of the Holy Land, which are more at large related by the forenamed *French* Authours. But becauſe I haue found nothing in the Court Regiſters, nor in the Chamber of Accompts, and haue ſeene the great Seale denied, concerning the expeditions for the voyages of *Sens*, and of other places in *France*: I let them paſſe vnder ſilence. And to referre the Originall of thoſe Priuiledges to our Kings *Charlemaigne*, *Lewes* the Seauenth, and *Philip Auguſtus*: I ſhould take it to bee an abuſe. Becauſe (without all queſtion to the contrary) they would be found in the Regiſters of Court, or in the Requeſts of the Kings Houſe, or thoſe of the Franchiſe of *Chalo S. Marã*, where ſuch Commiſſion cauſes and Charters are Regiſtred effectually.

The Authors care for auoiding vnfruitfulnes.

Dom Philip, Second of the name, King of *Spayne*, in the Lands vnder his obedience, and namely in *Flanders*, laboured to ſet on foot againe this *Order of Knights of the Holy Sepulcher of Ieruſalem*, declaring himſelfe to be Great Maiſter thereof. And (indeed) I haue ſeene his Pancarte, dated in the yeare One thouſand, fiue hundred, fiftie and eight: but it prooued to no effect, for ſome reaſons which we ſhall ſhew hereafter.

Seeking to raiſe vp the Order againe

In the yeare, One thouſand, ſixe hundred and fifteene, *Charles de Gonzaga* of *Cleue*, Duke of *Neuers*, and of *Retelois*, Soueraigne of *Charle-Ville*, deſcended of the moſt famous houſe of *Mantua*, would haue giuen life againe to the ſaid Order of *Knights of the Holy Sepulcher of Ieruſalem*, with a new Collar of the Order, whereof I haue ſeene the ſhape or portraite: which I haue not ſet downe in this Booke: becauſe his intent ſorted to no effect, no more then the purpoſe which hee had in the life time of the late King *Henry* the Great (who is with God) for reeſtabliſhing the *Order of the Swan* proper and perticuler to the houſe of *Cleue*.

The Order of the Swanne ought to bee reuiued.

As this Prince purſued theſe diſpatches at *Rome*, and to our Holy Father the Pope *Paulus Quintus*, ſitting at this preſent in the Holy Chayre Apoſtolicall; the Great Maiſter of *Malta Aloſ de Vignacourt* (of the *French* language and a Piccard by Nation) ſent to the moſt Chriſtian King *Lewes* the Thirteenth for Ambaſſadour extraordinary, *Dom Louis Mendez de Vaſconcellos* (of the Spaniſh Language) Baillife *d'Acre*. Hee had audience in the Caſtell of the *Louure* at *Paris*, in the Moneth of June, One thouſand, ſixe hundred and ſixteene, where he declared, that the Great Maiſterſhip of the *Order of the Holy Sepulcher at Ieruſalem*, with al the goods belonging to the ſaid Order, in what place ſoeuer they were in Chriſtendome, had bin, and was reduced and ioyned to that of *Malta*, by the Bull of Pope *Innocent* the eight (as wee haue alreãdy formerly obſerued) dated the eight and twentieth day of March, in the yeare One thouſand, foure hundred, foureſcore and foure.

Knights of the Sepulcher ioyned with them of *Malta*

And that the late King of *Spayne*, *Dom Phillip* the Second, hauing purpoſed to make himſelfe knowne, for Great Maiſter of the ſaid *Order of the Holy Sepulcher of Ieruſalem*: the Great Maiſter which then was in authority, made it euident to his Catholique Maieſtie, that the vnion was paſt of this Ordrr, with the other of *Malta*, and to it was then forborne.

By theſe and other remonſtrances to his moſt Chriſtian Maieſty, it plainely appeared, that as at the requeſt of the ſaid Catholicke King, Pope *Pius*, Fourth of the name, had giuen his Bull confirmatiue, for annexing the Order to that of *Malta*: euen ſo he entreated in the name of the Great Maiſter, and of the Ordrr of *Malta*, to doe the like for the Commanderies and goods, being in the Lands vnder his obedience. Which was granted, and the Bull obtayned of the Pope *Paulus Quintus*, at the purſuite of the *Marquiſſe de Trainell des Voſins*, Knight of the Kings Orders, and Ambaſſadour at *Rome* for his moſt Chriſtian Maieſtie.

The vniting of the two Orders confirmed by the Popes Bulles.

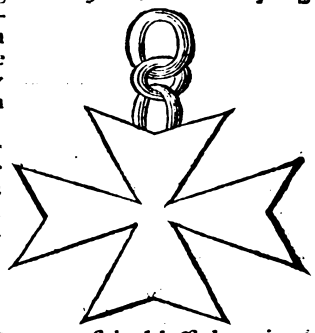
The Croſſe of the Order of Malta, called, *Of the Brethren Hoſpitallers* of Saint *Iohn Baptiſt of Ieruſalem*. Inſtituted in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand, one hundred and foure: By *Baldwine*, Firſt of the name, King of *Ieruſalem*.

Croix de l'Ordre de Malte, dite des Freres Hoſpitaliers de Sainct Iean Baptiſte de Hieruſalem.

CHAP. V.

SOme fewe yeares before the Voyage of our *French Paladines* beyond the Seas, for conqueſt of the Holy Land; there were Italian Merchants of *Malphi* or *Melphi*, in the Kingdome of *Naples*, who viſiting the places of the Holy Citty, honoured with the Sacred Miſteries of our Redemption; obtained of the *Caliphe* of *Ægypt*, paying a yearely Tribute (as the *Turkes* make the Chriſtians to doe, for raiſing their *Cafares*, which they augment (as themſelues thinke good) by infinity of *Vanies*, that is to ſay calomnies and vile ſpeeches, which dayly they impoſe vpon the poore Chriſtians) a little Cote or Lodging, to haue ſome ſhelter in the Holy Citty, as well for themſelues, as thoſe of their Nation which aduentured in the Holy Voyage.

Merchants of *Malphi* firſt beginners of this Brotherhood.



According to this permiſſion, they lodged themſelues directly before the Patriarchall Church of the *Holy Sepulcher*, by erecting there a ſmall houſe, and as ſmall an Oratory, vnder inuocation on the Sacred Virgin, there to celebrate Diuine Seruice in the Latine tongue. Moreouer, they cauſed to come from their Countrey of *Naples*, Religious Hermites, of the Order of Saint *Auguſtine*, conducted thither by an Abbot, who after compaſſing more time, cauſed to be built there a much greater Oratorie, dedicated in honour of the bleſſed penitent woman

woman, Saint *Mary Magdalen*.

The great resort of charitable Pilgrims

The extent of deuotion in this Abbot, and his Religious Brethren, prooued to be the cause, that numberlesse troupes of Pilgrimes of their Nation passed ouer the Seas; by whose Almes and charitable reliefe, they encreased both in multitude of men, and store of wealth. When the Pilgrimes perceiued, what good entertainement was extended to them by these Monkes; such as had liberty and disposition to doe it, tooke the habite of their Religion, offering their willing paines and diligence; to helpe and cure diseased Pilgrimes, so that in regard of their louing Hospitality: they were named and called *Brethren Hospitallers of Saint Iohn Baptist of Ierusalem*. For they had procured a Church to bee builded, in honour of the Precursor or fore-runner of the Sauiour of the World, with an Hospitall close ioyning thereto. Now, ouer and beside their bounteous Hospitalitie, they conducted the Pilgrimes, to keepe and defend the wayes and passages, against the *Sarrazins*.

The reason why they had such a name giuen them.

When the Holy Citty was conquered by our *French* Princes, King *Baudwine*, First of the name, confirmed these *Brethren Hospitallers* in so Holy an Office, and gaue them great goods. Especially he permitted them to manage Armes, according as the *Chanous* Reguler did, that were Gardians of the *Holy Sepulcher*. Whereupon he Instituted them, to be *Knights of Saint Iohn*, to entertaine, lodge, and comfort Pilgrimes that came to the Holy Land, of what Countrey or Nation soeuer they were, to cure and heale them, in all causes of sicknes and distresse: which was the fourth Article of the Vowe they made, beside them of Obedience, Pouerty and Chastity. The Institution of this Order was in the yeare of Grace One thousand, one hundred and foure, in which yeare they made the forenamed Vows, in presence of the Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, whom they acknowledged (at the first) to be their chief Commander and Great Maister.

Their Institution in Knighthood, and the Vowes they made.

For their better distinguishing, from them that were *Knights of the Holy Sepulcher*; they tooke the Blacke Habite of the Hermites of *Saint Augustine*, and aboue on the left side of the Breast, wore a Crosse of the White Cloath, made as Ankred, and with eight points, for representation of eight heauenly Beatitudes. In warre, for appearing the more dreadfull to the Miscreants, they wore a Crimosine or Redde Coate of Armes, with the White Crosse vpon it, as you see it here presented: but in their Monasteries, and on the day of their Profession, they did weare the Blacke Garment onely.

The manner of their Habit and Crosse in Warre and otherwise.

Being multiplyed both in men and reuennues, they elected and chose a Great Maister of their owne Body, and the first was a *French* Gentleman, named *Gerard de Sainct Didier*, a Piccard by Nation: which *Gerard*, beeing of the House and Sirname of *Sainct Didier*, *Portoit d'Azur au Lyon d'Argent*. And his Successors, for their good and faithfull seruices yeelded to the Crowne of *France*, added thereto *La Bordure de Gueules, chargee de huict Fleurs de Lys d'Or*, which is the Quarter of *Ioyeuse*, allied in the Royall House of *Luzignan*, and afterward into that of *Bourbon*, which now ruleth and commandeth.

The first great Maister and his Armes.

After *Gerard de Sainct Didier*, succeeded Brother *Raymond*, of the House of *Poulignac* in *Auuergne*, at this present a Viscountie: the Lords whereof *Portent Fesse d'Argent, et de Gueules de huict Pieces*. Of this Illustrious and Ancient House, was the Lord *Sidonius Apollinaris*, the learned Bishop of *Auuergne*, a *Romaine* Senatour, and Sonne in Lawe to the Emperour *Auitus*. And of this house (the chiefest in *Auuergne*) was issued and descended *Armentaria*, Wife to *Florentius*, Father and Mother to Saint *Gregory*, Bishop of *Tours*, the most Auncient Annalist of *France*: the Armes of which house were *De Gueules à vn Mouton d'Argent*, and so I thinke they are still.

Raymond of Poulignac (second Great Maister).

After the Conquest of *Ierusalem*, performed by *Saladine* (as we haue already declared) vnder the King *Iohn de Brenne*, who was the last Crowned King thereof; the *Knights Hospitallers*, as well as they of the *Holy Sepulcher*, and other, retreated themselues to the strong Cittie of *Acres*, called *Ptolomais*, which was partitioned and deuided among the Christians. For each Prince and Order of Knights, had their Quarter separate by it selfe, where they had their Iustice, Weight, Measure, and

Ptolomais or Acres deuided among the Christians.

and taxations, without subiection one to another. And by the multitude of Courts, and Iurisdictions of so many seuerall people, as would not obey one another: in this great Citty were committed infinite murders, thefts and adultries. For when any one had offended in wicked and abusiue manner in one Iurisdiction, he would flye and shelter himselfe in another, by meanes whereof, many great and grieuous delicts escaped vnpunished.

The seuerall Courts and Iurisdictions, which were in the Great Citty of Acres.

THe First Court was that of the Kings of *Ierusalem*, who were Crowned in this Citty (after the surprizall of *Ierusalem*) held by the Kings of *Cyprus*.

The Second was that of the Kings of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, who bare the name and Armes of Kings of *Ierusalem*, and contested against them of *Cyprus*.

The Third belonged to the Prince of *Antioche*: who bare for Armes *D'Or a vne Croix plaine de Gueules escartele de France*, so saith the Lord of *Ioinuille*.

The Fourth belonged to the Count of *Iaffa*: *Qui portoit d'Or a la Croix pattee de Gueules*, so saith the same Lord of *Ioinuille*.

The Fift appertained to the Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, with his Knights *of the Holy Sepulcher*, of whose Armes we haue before made declaration.

The Sixt was the Court of the Legate for the Pope in the Holy-Land: *Qui portoit de Gueules a deux Chefs d'Or en Saultoir*.

The Seauenth was the Court of the Counts of *Tripoly*, bearing Sirname of *Tolosa*: *Qui portoient de Gueules a la Croix Cleehee, et Pommettee d'Or*.

The Eight appertained to the Princes of *Galilee*: *Qui portoient de Luzignan, Escartele de France a la Bande de Gueules*.

The Ninth belonged to the Great Maister of the *Templers*.

The Tenth belonged to the Great Maister of the *Hospitallers*.

The Eleauenth belonged to the Great Maister of the *Brethren of the Virgin Mary*, of the *Order of the Teutons*.

The Twelfth belonged to the Great Maister of Saint *Lazarus*.

The Thirteenth was the Court of the Common wealth of *Venice*: *Qui porte d'Argent au Lyon de Gueules*.

The Foureteenth was for the Common-wealth of *Geneway*.

The Fifteenth was for the Common wealth of *Pisa*.

The Sixteenth was for the Common-wealth of *Florence*: *D'Argent a vne Fleur de Lys espanouie de Gueules*.

The Seauenteenth was the Court for the King of *Armenia*.

The Eighteenth was the Court for the Prince of *Tarentum* in *Sicilie*: *Qui portoit de France sans nombre, Escartele de Gueules à la Croix plaine d'Or, Cantonne de Quatre Besans d'Argent, chacun charge d'vne Croix de Synople, Sur le Tout vne Cottice d'Argent*.

And the last was that which belonged to the Duke of *Athens*: *Qui portoit Cinq pumets de Gueules, equipolez à Quatre d'Ermines*.

We haue obserued in our former discourse, how this Olde Bulwarke of Christendome, was taken and rescued by Assault from the *Sarrazins*; by the Kings of *France* and *England*, *Phillip Augustus* and *Richard Coeur de Lyon*: noate now heere the reprisall of it againe, by the *Sarrazins*.

The Citty of *Acres* the olde Bulwarke of Christendome

In the yeare One thousand, two hundred and tenne, the Soldane of *Egypt* hauing raised on foote a puissant Army; got into his possession the Citty and County of *Tripoly*, and tooke also from the Christians the Cities of *Sidon*, or *Sidonia*, *Tyre*, *Baruth*, and the whole Principality of *Antioche*, except the strong Citty of *Ptolomais*. Hauing thus swept all the way before him, he concluded a Truce for Fiue yeares with the Christians of *Ptolomais*. This Citty being filled with so many people, the Horsemen of all the fore-remembred Courts, and Foureteene Hundred Horse beside, which Pope *Nicholas* maintained there: dearth and scarsity of Victualls constrained the most part of them to issue forth, to seeke for prouision elsewhere. And

A Truce taken for fiue yeares with the Christians.

namely

namely the Soldiours for the Pope, who came forth of the Citty, to liue in the open Field. The Soldane of *Egypt* named *Helpy*, tooke this for a breach of the Truce, and therefore denounced warre against them of *Ptolomais*: which he besieged foone after with his Army, commaunded by his Lieutenant Generall, the Amirant *Melesat*.

But foure Courts remaining in the Citty.

Soone after, most part of the people forsooke the Citty, so that there remained in it but Foure Courts only, to witt; that for the King of *Cyprus*; that for the *Patriarch*; that for the Great Maister of the *Templers*; and that for the Great Maister of the Knights *Hospitallers*, yet all of them at deuision one with an other, such rancour and spleene was among the Christians.

Ptolmais taken and all the people slaine.

The King of *Cyprus* immediatly left the Citty, to goe for the defence and keeping of his owne *Island*, which *Helpy* threatned to take from him. The Patriarch (within a few dayes after) did as much, and made his retreate to *Cyprus*: so that there remained now none for the defence thereof, but the Knights *Templers* and *Hospitallers*, with Twelue thousand men, the most part of them soare wounded with Arrowes, and languishing with extremity of famine. Whereof the Soldane hauing intelligence, and that the Great Maister of the *Templers* was mortally wounded by an impoysoned Arrowe: he made a generall assault vpon the Citty, whereinto he forcibly entred, and put all the people to the edge of the Sword, vtterly racing all downe to the ground, as elsewhere hath bin related to you.

Rhodes taken by the Knights *Hospitallers*, by a singular stratagem.

As for the *Templers*, they withdrew themselues thence into *Italie*, *Spayne* and *France*, where they had great store of goods. But the Knights *Hospitallers*, they were long time shut vp in their Wodden Townes, that is to say, their vessells and Shipps, floating on the Seas of *Egypt* and *Greece*, Vntill in the yeare One thousand, three hundred and eight, they surprized the Porte and Citty of *Rhodes* (the most famous of the East) by an admirable Stratagem of Warre.

..... Et olim meminisse iuuabit.

The chiefe Leaders of this selected Squadron, garmented and disguised like Sheepheards, shewed themselues at the Porte on the Land-side, with ten or twelue flocks of Sheepe, among which were a number of vndauntable Souldiers, creeping vpon their hands and feete, and couered with the skinnes of Sheepe. Proceeding on, they first got possession of the porte; and afterward of the Citty from the *Sarrazins*, who hoping to secure themselues at their Porte: were inuested with the Sea Army of the *Hospitallers*, who had seized the Porte, and a great number of Shipps ryding therein. In this manner they became Maisters of that goodly and rich Citty, and soone after of the whole Isle of *Rhodes*, with the fiue little Ilands which enguirte it.

Dolus, an Virtus quis in Hoste requirat?

Rhodes one of the most famous Cities of *Greece*.

It was (in elder times) one of the most famous Townes and Cities in *Greece*, wherein was an excellent Accademie of Learning and good Letters, and namely of Philosophie, where *Cicero*, *Cæsar* and the greatest persons of *Rome* had made their studies, as *Cicero* himselfe writeth in many passages. It was likewise much renowned, in regard of an admirable *Colossus* (reckoned among the Seauen Wunders of the World) erected on the Porte of the same Citty of *Rhodes*, in honour of the *Sunne*, who was held for the Tutelary God and Guardian thereof, as we learne of *Petronius Arbiter*;

Est tutela Rhodos beata Solis.

The huge Colossus of *Rhodes*.

This *Colossus* was of very great and dreadfull stature. One of his feete stood fixed on the shoare of the Hauen, and the other vpon the further side of the Peere, so that the very greatest Shipps (with their Sayles openly displayed) sayled and passed betweene his leggs, to enter into the Roade and Porte. His height consisted of threescore and tenne Cubites, being the workemanship of *Chares* the *Lydian*, an excellent Image-maker and Caruer, who in the space of twelue yeares fully effected it: hauing payed vnto him the price of Three hundred Talents, for the making of it, which amounteth to an Hundred and Fourescore thousand Crownes of our money.

A famous Carver, Scholler to *Lysippus*.

In one hand he held a Pike or Iaueline, and in the other a Sword; vpon his Breast was

was fixed a great Mirrour or Looking-Glasse, wherein such as inhabited the Island, were able to discouer (a farre off) what Shipps came to arriue in the Porte. By reason of the huge massinesse and weight of his structure, he continued standing but Fiue and Fifty yeares, being broken to pieces by a sudden trembling and shaking of the earth. The greatest and mightiest man of these times, was not able to embrace the Tombe of this Statue, whose fingers exceeded the height and bignesse of any naturall man.

The *Colossus* broken in pieces by an earthquake.

Some yet are of opinion, that he stood firmely One thousand, three hundred and threescore yeares, and vntill such time as the *Persians* and *Sarrazins*, vnder conduct of their *Grand Mirammolin Azoman*, became Maisters of part of *Affrica*, *Europe*, *Rhodes* and the adiacent Isles. And then they brake into morsells and pieces this *Colossus*, and with the Copper and Brasse, which was imployed to cimment and knit the ioynts and parts thereof together, they loaded Nine Hundred Cammells.

Other opinions of this *Colossus*.

In this Citty of *Rhodes*, they did beate and stampe money of Siluer, in bignesse somewhat neere to an halfe *Teston* of *France*, but yet much thicker, and the figures thereon more embossed then ours are. These pieces of Siluer, are like to the halfe *Sickle* of the *Iewes*, or the *Didrachma* of the *Romaines*; but they be more worth. There is a Tradition, that the *Thirtie Pence*, for which the Saviour of the world was sold, and deliuered to the *Iewes* by the traytour *Iudas*; were of this kinde. And in very deede, in the Church of the *Holy-Crosse of Ierusalem* at *Rome*, is to be seene one of those *Thirtie Pence*, which is wholly like to that in the Church of the *Temple* in the Citty of *Paris*. It is enchased in a Shrine, and is to be seene but thorow a Christall Glasse, and on the side which may be noated, appeareth nothing but a head.

The *Teston* in value *XVIII. d.*

One of the Pence that *Christ* was sold for.

The learned *Gulielmus Budeus*, the Honour of our Citty of *Paris*, and of all *France* (whose descendants both by name and Armes, *Portent d'Argent à trois Grappes de Raisin d'Azur. 2. 1. au Chevron de Gueules*) in the remarkable Tract which he wrote *De Asse*, affirmeth, that he had seene the *Pennie of Siluer in the Temple at Paris*, and that on it was represented a head, as in truth there is. But concerning the other side, neither the learned Cardinall *Baronius*, nor *Budeus* doe speake any thing else, then of the weight of those *Siluer Pence*, which the Euangelists tearme *Argenteos*. One of those *Siluer Pence* of *Rhodes*, I haue, and both the sides thereof, in this manner I shew to you.



The Authours comparing all the three Pence together.

I Haue confronted and compared it, with the sight of that *Pennie* at *Rome*, and the other in the *Temple* at *Paris*, and they are all three alike, both in the visage, and in the Circumfernce. Mine is in weight two Groates, a halfe pennie lesse of Siluer, which commeth to twelue *Sols* and one *Liard*. On the one side it hath the visage of the Sunne, like to the fashion of a young mans face, without a Beard, with long locks of heyre, as heere it is figured, and as Poets haue feigned. On the other side is a *Blowne Rose*, higher & greater then ours are, & which commeth somewhat neere in resemblance to the *Rose* which we tearme of *Iericho*, and which are brought from the Holy-land. Vpon this *Pennie*, the *Rose* hath on eche side a Button, the one wherof beginneth to blome, but not the other. Aboue the *Rose*, on the ring of the piece, is formed in Capitall Greeke Letters POAION, *Rhodion*, which signifieth, and would say, (if it could) *A Rose*: At the foote whereof is this Sillable *Ey*. It is generally knowne, that the Citty of *Rhodes Portoit d'Argent a cette Rose, accompagnee de ses Boutons de Gueules, a la tige de Synople*, and these were the Armes of *Rhodes*.

The Pennie of *Rhodes* in shape and proportion.

In stead of a Legend about it.

So that Thirty Pence of this Money, amounteth not altogether, but to the summe of *Eighteene Poundes, Seauen Shillings* and *Sixe Pence* of our money, and seemeth a very

Acheldemach the Potters Field.

very ſmall ſumme, for buying a piece of Ground or Land, which the Euangeliſts call *Acheldemach*, *The Potters Field*, ſo neere to *Ieruſalem*, peopled with more then a Million of men, ſolde for an offence, and with condition, that it ſhould neuer be redeemed; in regard it was deſtenied for the buriall place of Pilgrimes, which came to *Ieruſalem* at the Solemne Feaſts there held.

In what maner the Iewes made ſale of their inheritances.

And euery one well knoweth, that (amongſt the Iewes) inheritances were ſold more or leſſe, according as the venditions were made, either neere, or further off from the yeare of *Iubilie*, which they feaſted from fifty yeares to fifty yeares; a feaſt ſo ſollemnely obſerued among them, that the ſellers did then reenter into their ſold inheritances which they poſſeſſed againe freely, and without any charge, or paying any arrerages according as it was ordained by their Law, in the fiue and twentieth Chapter of *Leuiticus*.

The Tribe of *Leui* aſſigned to the deuotion of the Iewes.

But it may be, that this *Potters Field* was (in parte) bought with thoſe Thirty pence, and the other part, might be the Almes and gifts of the Proprietaries or owners, both in the Temple of *Ieruſalem*, and publikely, for ſo good a ſubiect, as the buriall of Pilgrimes and poore Strangers. For ouer and beſide the Offerings and Tribute money, which the Iews offered and payed to the Treaſurers in the Temple, for maintaining the Tribe of *Leui* (the deſeruing Miniſters thereof, who at the diſtribution and diuiſion of the Land of Promiſe to the Iewiſh people, had not any lot or partage, but were aſsigned to the Iewes deuotion) Inheritances might be legacied to them, which falling into *Mortmaine:* could not be redeemed by any cuſtome of kinred, whatſoeuer *Iubilie* might be alleadged, or ſelling, or alienating, as it is written in the Seauen and twentieth of *Leuiticus*. And ſuch an *enheritance* was called *Ager Anathematis*; *A Fielde wholly dedicated and conſecrated to God*: And which from thence forward, might fall no more into any ſecular or prophane hand.

The Knights Hoſpitallers become Knights of the *Rhodes*.

After that this Iſle of *Rhodes* was thus in the power of the *Knights Hoſpitallers*; they tooke the Sirname and title of *Knights of the Rhodes*, and bare (as yet they doe to this preſent) for Armes *De Gueules à la Croix plaine d'Argent*. And this is a matter very remarkeable, that (after this time) ſuch of the Nobilitie of *France*, as were accuſed and attainted of any capitall crime, which deſerued death: they were relegated and baniſhed (for time, or perpetuitie) to this Iſle of *Rhodes*, according to the weightineſſe of the offence; to the end, that they might finiſh their dayes there in the ſeruice of God, againſt the Infidells for the ſupport of Religion. In this manner *Anthony de Chabanes*, a worthy and famous Lord, by decree of the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, Anno, One thouſand, foure hundred, threeſcore and three, the twentieth day of *Auguſt*, Signed *H. Aligret*: all his mooueables and immooueables were taken and confiſcated to the King, and himſelfe (for euer) baniſhed to the Citty of *Rhodes*. This houſe hath produced Marſhals of *France*, *Qui portoient de Gueules au Lyon d'Ermines, Armé, Lampaſſé, et Coronné d'Or, Eſcartelé ac face d'Argent, et d'Azur de Six pieces, à la Bordure de Gueules*.

A matter deſeruing obſeruation.

And theſe *Knights Hoſpitallers* poſſeſſed the ſaid Iſle of *Rhodes*, vntill in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, fiue hundred, twenty and three: when the Great *Turke Soliman* tooke it by force, through want of ſuccour from the Chriſtian Princes: For a time they retreated themſelues in *Sicilie*. The beſiedging of the Citty of *Rhodes* was admirable, hindered by a ſmal handfull of inuincible Chriſtian Knights, encouraged and conducted by their Great Maiſter *Phillip de Villiers*, of the *Iſle Adam*, a *French* Gentleman: againſt *Soliman* in perſon, engirt with an Armie of two hundred thouſand men. This famous houſe of *Villiers*, Lords of the Iſle *Adam*, betweene *Paris* and *Rouen*: *Portoit d'Azur au Cheſ d'Or, charge d'vn Dextrochere* (that is to ſay a right arme and hand) *reueſtus et habillez d'Ermines, au fanon de meſmes deſcendant ſur le Tout frange d'Argent: Eſcartele de Clermont* (afterward called *De Neelle, et d'Offemont*, Houſes moulten into that of *Montmorency*, as wel as that of the *Iſle Adam*) *qui eſt de Gueules à deux Bars adoſſez d'Or ſeme de Treſles de meſme*.

The Iſle of *Rhodes* wun by the Turkes from the Knights.

After the loſſe of this Iſle of *Rhodes*, and in this manner wun from the Knights; the Emperour *Charles* the Fift, gaue them that Iſland of *Malta* for their abiding, which in Latine is called *Melita* by the writings of Saint *Paul*, the Doctour of the *Gentiles*,

Gentiles, in deſcribing his voyage of *Rome*, ſeated vpon the Mediterranean Sea, containing Thirty miles in all, or thereabout, to witt, Two and twenty in longitude, and about Twelue in latitude. At that time it was barren, and almoſt vn-inhabited; but at this preſent fruitfull and husbanded, adorned with ſtrong and beautifull places, and furniſhed with couragious and valiant men. So that at this day, it is the Rampiar of *Europe*, to ſhelter *Sicilie*, and guard the coaſts of *Italie*, the dreaded terrour of the *Turkiſhe* Empire.

Melta beſiedged by *Soleman*, and valiantly defended by the Knights to his foyle and ouerthrowe.

It was immediatly beſiedged by the Emperour *Soliman*, in the moneth of May 1563. with a Nauall Armie, conſiſting of an hundred and threeſcore Gallies of *Turkiſh* Souldiours, and an hundred other Veſſells, carying Victualles and Munitions. The Siedge was brauely ſuſtained for the ſpace of Foure whole Moneths together, by the force and valiancy of the Knights of the Order, and the diſcreete conduct of the Great Maiſter *John de Valete* Gentleman. Whereby the enemy was compelled to diſcampe, and leaue (for recompence) Thirty thouſand of his people behind him, as alſo the moſt part of his Artillery, the Eight day of September in the ſame yeare, One thouſand, fiue hundred, threeſcore and three: vpon which day, is yearely made a generall Proceſſion at *Malta*, in thankfull acknowledgement for this deliuerance. The Great Maiſter by the Sirname of *Valete*, called *Pariſot*, of the language of *Prouence*, in the yeare One thouſand, fiue hundred, threeſcore and Sixe, cauſed to be built the new Citty of *Malta*, called by his owne name *Malta Valete*: *Qui portoit de Gueules, au Perroquet, à la Patte droict leuee d'Argent*.

New *Malta* built by the Great Maiſter *Valete*.

This Order was compoſed of eight Nations, tearmed ſo many ſeuerall Tongues or Languages.

The firſt was that of *Prouence*, the prime or Chiefe whereof was called the Great Commandatory: And in this language are accounted the Great Priories of Saint *Gylles*, and of *Toloſſa*.

Auuergne is the ſecond Language: the Chiefe whereof hath the title of *Marſhall of the Order*, who hath the Great Priory of *Auuergne*.

Marſhall of the Order.

France is the third, and the Chiefe hath the title of *Grand-Hoſpitaller of the Order*. In and vnder him are the Great Priories of *France*, *Aquitaine* and *Champaigne*: The Bayliffe Capitularie of *Morea*, and the Bayliffe Capitulary, Generall Treaſurer of the Order.

Great Hoſpitaller.

Italie is the fourth, the Chiefe whereof is *Admirall of the Order*, which containeth the Great Priories of *Rome*; of *Lombardie*, of *Venice*, *Piſa*, *Barletta*, *Meſſina* and *Capua*.

Admirall of the Order.

Arragon is the fift Language, comprehending the Kingdomes of *Nauarre*, *Arragon*, and the Counties of *Cathalogna*, *Rouſſillion* and *Cerdagnia*: The head or Chiefe man whereof hath the title, of Great *Conſeruatour of the Order*. And in that Language is the *Great Caſtillian of Ampueſta*.

Great Conſeruator of the Order.

England is the ſixt Language, the Chiefe whereof is named *Le Grand Turcopolier de l'Ordre*, that is to ſay, *Great Colonell of the Cauallerie*. In him is comprehended the Great Priories of *England*, *Scotland* and *Ireland*.

Great Colonel of the Horſe.

Germanie is the ſeauenth, the Chiefe whereof is named *High Bayliffe of the Order*: And vnder this Language are compriſed the Kingdomes of *Hungarie*, *Bohemia*, *Poland*, *Denmarke*, *Sweden*, and all the Eſtates of *Germanie*.

High Bayliffe of the Order.

Caſtille is the laſt, and the head thereof is tearmed *High Chauncellour of the Order*. And this Language comprehendeth the Kingdomes of *Leon*, *Caſtille*, *Portugall*, the *Algarues*, *Granada*, *Tolledo*, *Gallicia*, and that beſide of *Andalouſia*.

High Chauncellour of the Order.

Admittance and receiuing into this order.

The meanes of admittance and receiuing into this Order, is, by making proofe of Nobility by foure Races, as well by the Fathers Parentage, as the Mothers likewiſe. To be eighteene yeares of age, and borne in lawfull Mariage; except the Baſtards of Kings, Princes, and other Great Lords of Chriſtendome, who for the ſplendour of their houſe, and of whence they be auouched, are not ſubiected to make thoſe prooſes. Likewiſe, they may be receiued as Knights, at eight or nine yeares of age, if they be deſcended of Princes, or Pages to the Great Maiſter: who hath the Title of Prince of *Malta* and of *Gaza*, and weareth the Crowne belonging to a Prince. And thoſe Great Maiſters may be made Cardinalles of the Holy *Romaine* Church, holding

holding the ſame dignity conioyntly with their Great Maiſterſhip.

And this is to be ſufficiently proued, that this Order, from the firſt Inſtitution thereof, hath bin conſerued in renowne and honour; being as a fruitfull Garden or ſeed-plot, for yielding plenty of braue Captaines and valiant Souldiers, Knights for the ſeruice of *Ieſus Chriſt*. Of which Order, at this preſent, the Prince Soueraigne and Great Maiſter is *Aloſ de Vignacourt*, a Gentleman *Picard*, formerly Bayliffe Capitulary and Generall Treaſurer of the ſame Order: *Qui porte d'Argent a Trois Fleurs de Lys au pied nourry de Gueules, au Lambeau de meſmes.* And it is generally to be knowne, that the Armes of the Great Maiſters are thoſe of the Religion, Quartered with them of their houſe, *Vne Coronne a pointe, & le Chapellet de Patenoſtres, & d Aue Maria, d'Argent au lieu d'Ordre.*

The Great Maiſter of the Order at this preſent.

Of thoſe Ceremonies kept and obſerued, in the giuing of this Order.

CHAP. VI.

The maner of preſenting at the Altar.

AFter the proofes of Nobility are made, he which preſenteth himſelfe to be admitted into the Order, and to make profeſſion thereof; commeth before the Altar, clothed with a Caſſock of black Serge, without any Girdle, holding in his hand a weighty Taper of White Waxe, and ſuch a piece of Gold or Siluer as himſelfe pleaſeth, faſtened to the ſaid Candle, receiuing their Holy water, and vſing the accuſtomed prayers. Hauing drawne forth his Sword firſt, he layeth it vpon the Altar: where it is bleſt and hallowed, in ſuch forme and manner as we haue formerly elſewhre obſerued.

The Profeſſours appearing before the Receiuer.

The Receiuant (I meane the man appointed, to make acceptation of this nouell Profeſſour) ſitteth in a Chayre, within the encloſure of the Altare, and after ſolemne Benediction made; he cauſeth the Profeſt to come before him, to vnderſtand what he is to demaund, As, whether he hath receiued the Order of any other Prince, or ſuch perſon as might giue it him? Vpon the anſwere No; the Receiuant ſheweth him, what a good and wholeſome action it is, to be helpfull to the Poore of *Ieſus Chriſt*; to exerciſe the workes of Mercy; to vowe his perſon to Gods diuine Seruice, for the maintenance of the Chriſtian Catholique Faith, and the protection of Widdowes and Orphanes.

How the Order of Knighthood ought to be giuen.

Further he declareth, that the Order of Knighthood hath bin wiſhed, requeſted & demaunded many times, by men of quite oppoſite diſpoſition, and farre vnfit for ſo great a grace. Becauſe it is not to be graunted or giuen but to ſuch as are famous by Nobility of extraction, or ſuch as haue deſerued it by their owne merit, vertues and ſignale Seruices. Wherefore, whoſoeuer preſented himſelfe to that end and intent, hauing made vndoubted proofe of his extraction, his willing inclination to doe well, and to encreaſe in vertue: ſhould receiue the Order, vnder condition of promiſing and performing theſe Clauſes following.

The Articles are in diuers of the precedent Orders.

To auoyde prolixity, and becauſe the Articles haue in other Tracts bin formerly repeated: we make ſpare of them in this place, and after they haue bin preſented to the Profeſt and he making promiſe to performe them; the Receiuant cauſing him to riſe, ſpeaketh thus to him.

Other Ceremonies paſſing betweene the Receiuant and Profeſt, in giuing the Order of Knighthood.

The charge at deliuering the Sword.

TAke this Sword into your hand. By the cleere and bright glittering Blade, it enſtructeth you to ſhine in Faith, and to enflame you with conſtant embracing it, according to the deuiſe of our Order; *Qui porte vne Eſpee nue flamboyant, entouree de flambes de feu, ces trois mots pour legende: Pour La Foy*: The Point denoateth *Hope*, and the Croſſed Hilt *Charitie*. You are to vſe and ſerue your ſelfe therewith, firſt, for your owne defence, next for the Chriſtian Catholique Religion, and laſtly for poore Widdowes and Orphanes: for you neede not feare, to expoſe your life to all perils and dangers, vpon ſo gobd and ſolid ſubiects. Becauſe the famous Order of Knighthood receiued her prime Inſtitution, onely to recompence vertue; to preſerue publique Societie in vnion and concord; to maintaine the Church and Iuſtice; to defend the Orphane and Widdow from all oppreſſion; and for exerciſing the workes of Mercie to all people indifferently. It is that which rectifieth the ſoule to God, and the body to hazards and perils of this world: thorow the zeale of moſt perfect Charitie, wholly tending to the ſeruice of God. Afterward, he commanded the Profeſt, to rub the Sword vpon his arme, for more cleanely putting it vp into the Scabbard, and then ſaid.

The reaſon of the Order of Knighthoods inſtitution.

Like as you returne that Sword neat and cleane into the Sheath; euen ſo haue you an eſpeciall care, for ſoyling and polluting it, by drawing it forth vniuſtly, to offend or ſtrike any one therewith. But onely imploy it for the ſeruice of God; for defence and augmentation of the Chriſtian Catholique Faith; and protecting of Widdowes and Orphanes from wrong. *God giue you the grace to doe what is enioyned you. Amen.*

At putting vp the ſword into the Scabbard.

The Profeſt being all this while vpon his knees, holding the Sword in the Scabbard; the Receiuant guirdeth it to his ſide, ſaying. *I guird you with this Sword, and place it on your ſide, in the name of God All mightie, of the bleſſed Virgin Mary, and of the glorious Saint George, the Patron of Knights: in honour of whom, I will giue you the Order of Knighthood, to the end, that as by his patience and true faith, he was victorious againſt his enemies; euen ſo you may imitate him in all your actions, that he may obtaine for you the grace of well doing.*

At guirding it vpon his ſide.

Afterward, the Receiuant commandeth the Profeſt, to draw the Sword forth againe out of the Scabbard, and to make offer of ſtriking three ſtroakes aloft in the ayre, as if it were to threaten the enemies of the Faith: And then he ſpeaketh theſe words to him.

Of three ſtroak s ſmitten in the ayre.

You haue ſhaken your Sword aloft three ſeuerall times, in the name of the bleſſed Trinitie, thereby defying all the enemies of the Faith; God grant you hope of victory, *Amen.* Then he wipeth it vpon his arme, and the Profeſt putteth it vp againe in the Sheath, which being done, the Receiuant deliuereth to him theſe Enſtructions.

Concerning thoſe perfections which ought to be in a Knight.

THe firſt perfection which ought to be in any Knight, is to be Honeſt, for vpon Honeſtie dependeth foure principall vertues: As namely Prudence, whereby you ſhall know all things, and preſeruing them in memory, which are paſt; you will the better prouide for them preſent, and thoſe that are to come.

Honeſtie begetteth Prudence.

The ſecond is Iuſtice, who is the Princeſſe and Queene of all the other Vertues: It is ſhee that conſerueth all things, in the equall Ballance of Reaſon and Equitie.

Iuſtice.

The third is Fortitude, who will make you wholly animated with Courage and valiancie, againſt all your enemies whatſoeuer. And

Fortitude.

The fourth is Temperance, who will moderate all your actions. You muſt be cloathed with all theſe foure Vertues, to haue them walke alwayes along with you; if you deſire to win the renowne of a braue Knight indeede.

Temperance.

When theſe words are thus ſpoken, the Receiuant taketh the drawne Sword from the Profeſt, and giueth him three ſtroakes therewith vpon the Shoulder, in ſpeaking of theſe words.

I make you a Knight, in the name of God, of the Virgin Mary, and of my Lord Saint John Baptiſt, and in the honour of my Lord S. George; vigilant and peaceſull for the ſeruice of God, and the honor of Knighthood. Which being ſaid, the Receiuant putteth

The auncient manner of Knighting.

vp the Sword, and looking ſtedfaſtly vpon the Profeſt, he giueth him gently a blow on the cheeke, and then ſaith to him.

Rouſe vp your ſpirits, and dreame no longer on the Worldes affayres; but be watchfull in the Faith of Ieſus Chriſt. And diſpoſe of your ſelfe ſo, as if you were euen at the laſt aſſront, and the very lateſt iniury you were to receiue, in marching vnder the Croſſe of our Lord.

The Receiuant proceedeth on, taking the guilded Spurres, and vſeth theſe words to the Profeſt.

Concerning the Guilded Spurres.

You ſee theſe Spurres are Guilded, whereby you are to vnderſtand, that as the Horſe is feareſull of them, becauſe he is Prickt with them, for his better direction on the way: In like manner be you feareſull, for going forth of your rancke, and breaking the rules of your Vow, by committing any diſhoneſt action, or vnfitting for a Knight. And they are alſo (thus guilded) faſtened to your feete, to the end, that you ſhould preſerue Honour before Gold, or all the Riches of the world.

Then are the Spurrs put on the Heeles of the Profeſt, when the Receiuant (rayſing him from his knees) ſendeth him to his place, to heare the Goſpell and the reſt of the Maſſe, ſtill holding the lighted Taper in his hand. But when he goeth to receiue the Sacrament of the Altar, his Spurres and Sword are taken from him.

What is done after the maſſe is ended.

Maſſe being finiſhed, the Profeſt commeth againe, to preſent himſelfe vpon his knees before the Receiuant, alwaies keeping the Taper lighted in his hand, and when he hath put on his long Robe, to whom the Receiuant ſaith.

What demaund you?

The Profeſt anſwereth.

I deſire to be admitted and receiued, into the Company of the Religious Brethren, of the Order of Saint Iohn Baptiſt of Ieruſalem.

Then ſaith the Receiuant.

You deſire that which hath bin denyed to a great many of men, becauſe they were not worthy to be receiued into our Company. But hauing confidence in your Nobleneſſe, as alſo your ſufficiencie and courage: they are motiues to vs for graunting your requeſt. For our hope is firmely perſwaded, that you will exerciſe the workes of mercy with zealous Charity, and that you will wholly imploye your ſelfe, acceptable to the ſeruice of this Religion, and not only to the Holy Seat Apoſtolique; but likewiſe to all the Kings and Princes of Chriſtendome, withall other vertuous perſons beſide.

The meanes of graunting the Knights requeſt.

Our Order hath encreaſed, and bin enriched in goods, Wealth, Honors, Exemptions, Liberties and Great titles, to the end, that all of vs (ſeruing for the Warrefare and Hoſpitality of the Order) ſhould be enflamed with the true fire of Loue, and perfect Charity in our Lord Ieſus Chriſt. And as this burning Taper hath bin deliuered into your hand; you are thereby to learne and vnderſtand, that you ought to be ardently kindled with the Diuine Fire of Charity, which is the true perfection of this wretched and tranſitory life. And this I dare affiure you, that if you will exerciſe a Zealous Spirit, for defence of the Faith of Ieſus Chriſt againſt his enemies; he will call you the more eaſily into his Kingdome.

The meaning of caryng the lighted Taper

And to the end, that you ſhall not excuſe your ſelfe thorow ignorance: I ſtand bound to ſignifie vnto you before this Noble Aſſiſtance, that if you haue a perfect and ſetled will to follow our rule; theſe are your Iniunctions.

Iniunctions deliuered by the Receiuant to the Profeſt.

Depriuation of Will.

FIrſt of all, you muſt prepare your ſelfe from this inſtant houre, to enter into the paines and troubles, which you are to vndergoe in the ſeruice of our Religion. You muſt depriue your ſelfe of your owne will, to reſigne and ſubmit it (this very day) into the hands and power of your Superiours, whoſoeuer they be thereto elected: Commaunding you to obey them, in any faſhion and manner whatſoeuer it be, in regard that you are contented, to rob your ſelfe of your liberty.

And as this Waxe-Candle ſuffereth it ſelfe to be handled, and made into forme, euen ſo muſt you doe.

More-

Moreouer let me tell you, that you will be conſtrained to Faſt, when you haue the greateſt appetite to Feede; to watch, when you would gladly Sleepe; ſuffering and enduring many other paines, contrary to your pleaſures and liberties. Wherefore I doe aduiſe you, that if you haue a full ſetled will, to diſpoſſeſſe your ſelfe thereof, and to reſigne it into the power of the Superiours of our Religion: that you ſpeake it boldly and freely. Whereunto the Profeſt ought to anſwere thus.

Faſting and watching.

Sir, I haue depriued my ſelfe thereof, and doe reſigne it wholly into the hands of my Superiours: I renounce all my pleaſures and liberties, deueſting and deſpoyling my ſelfe of them, with all my heart.

Pleaſures and Liberties.

Whereunto the Receiuant preſently thus replieth.

Seeing you haue ſo freely diſpoſſeſt your ſelfe of your liberty and will, heere in my preſence, and before all theſe Noble Aſſiſtants: I giue you to know and vnderſtand, that being thus heere ſo freely diſpoſſeſſed, I ſummon you to tell me, and freely to confeſſe the trueth, in all ſuch queſtions as I ſhall propound to you, vpon paine of being reputed culpable, and puniſhment inflicted according to your deſeruing in this caſe.

The receiuants demands.

Firſt I demaund of thee, if thou haſt made vow of any other Religion?

If thou haſt not conſummated Mariage, or bin affianced to any woman?

If thou ſtandeſt not bound, to pay ſome ſuch ſumme of mony, as exceedeth thy power, and more than thy beſt faculties can ſupport to ſatiſfie?

If thou art not of ſeruile condition, and of the quality of vulgare Ruſticity?

If thou haſt not bin preuented by Iuſtice?

Whereto the Profeſt ought to anſwere. In all theſe things which you demaund of me. I am not any way faulty. The Receiuant then ſaith.

The receiuants final & dreadfull petition.

Becauſe thou muſt not be deceiued and abuſed, I doe now declare vnto thee, that at all times, and ſo often as it ſhall be diſcouered, that thou art attainted with any of the fornamed matters: thou wilt be inſtantly depriued of our Company, with great ſhame and all ignominie; yea, thou ſhalt be deliuered into the hands of them, who haue power to chaſtiſe thee moſt ſeuerely. Aduiſe thy ſelfe therefore well, that thou art ſo cleane and free, as thou ſaiſt: Whereunto the Profeſt muſt anſwere.

Well Sir, I am ſo: then the Receiuant proceedeth.

Seeing thou ſaiſt and confeſſeſt thy ſelfe to be ſo, and art determined, prouided and reſolued, to be a defender of the Church of Ieſus Chriſt, to ſerue the poore of the Hoſpitall, receiued in by our Religion: we entertaine thee withall our hearts, according to the forme of our eſtabliſhment and Cuſtome, but not otherwiſe. And we will promiſe thee nothing elſe, but onely a pittance of Bread, Water and Salt, poore ſimple Garments, paine and trauaile. Then the receiuant commandeth the *Miſſale* to be brought, and cauſing the Profeſt to lay his hand vpon the Canon, willeth him to pronounce theſe words.

His receiuing into the Order.

The forme of his Vowe and promiſe.

I make my Vowe and promiſe to Almightie God, to the glorious Virgin Mary, and to my Lord Saint Iohn Baptiſt our Patron, that by aſſiſtance of his grace, I vowe and promiſe to obſerue true Obedience, to him that ſhall be commanded me by God and my Religion. I promiſe likewiſe to liue henceforth in paine and trauaile, and to obſerue Chaſtitie, as it behooueth all Catholique and Religious perſons to doe.

After the ſweuring of theſe Vowes, the Receiuant (beholding the Profeſt mildely and louingly in the face) ſaith:

Now we acknowledge and confeſſe thee, to be one of the Defenders of the Catholique Church, and a Seruant to the Poore of the Hoſpitall of Saint Iohn. And to the end that thou muſt begin with Obedience: I command thee to bring hither the Miſſale, to lay it vpon the Altar, to kiſſe the Altar, and then to carrie away the Miſſale. Which the Profeſt hauing accompliſhed, the Receiuant ſheweth him the habite, and firſt of all the Croſſe of White Cloath, hauing eight points; ſaying,

The manner of deliuering the Croſſe and Habite.

This Croſſe was thus ordained *white* to vs, in ſignification of Puritie, which we ought alwayes to haue both within the Heart, and without; free from any ſpot or blemiſh whatſoeuer.

The eight points wherewith this Croſſe is compoſed doe ſignifie; and are

thus made; in remembrance of Eight Beatitudes, which we ought alwayes to haue within vs.

Eight Beatitudes.

Whereof the First is, Spirituall Contentation.
The Second is, to liue simply, without maliciousnes.
The Third, to liue in all humility.
The Fourth, to mourne for thy sinnes and transgressions.
The Fift, to loue Iustice and true dealing.
The Sixt, to be mercifull.
The Seauenth, to be pure and cleane in heart and minde.
And the Eight, to suffer and endure afflictions and persecutions for righteousnes sake.

All which vertues thou must striue to engraue and fixe in thy heart, for the conseruation of thy Soule.

And therefore I commaund thee to weare this Crosse, openly made fast to thy Garment, right against thy heart vpon the left side; to the end that thou mayest be memoratiue, and thy heart alwayes remember the former Eight Beatitudes, and neuer to forsake them. The Receiuant must afterward cause the Profest to kisse that Crosse, and then to put the Cloake vpon his shoulders, saying.

Putting on of the Habite.

Take this Habite, in the name of the Blessed Trinity, in whom thou shalt finde saluation for thy Soule: if thou labour for the augmentation of the Christian Faith, and defence of all Christians; dedicating thy selfe wholly, to the seruice of the Poore of Iesus Christ. And that thou maist doe this:

I place this Crosse heere on the left side, neere to thy heart, that thou maist loue it to thy vtmost power, and defend it with thy right hand: commanding thee neuer to leaue or forsake it, because it is the true Ensigne and Banner of our Religion; and neuer to wander from the association of thy Brethren which beare thee company, whatsoeuer perill or danger may ensue thereon. Otherwise, thou must be debouted from our Society, with great shame and reproch, cast off as a putrified member, and a transgressour of thy vowes and promises, conformably to our establishment.

The signification of the Habite.

This Cloake wherewith we haue cloathed thee, is in remembrance of the Cammells Skinne, wherewith our Patron Saint *Iohn Baptist* was cloathed in the Wildernesse. And because in taking this Garment, thou renouncest all the pleasures, pompes and vanities of this World; I commaund thee, to weare it at all requisite times; and thou must procure and enioyne, that after thy death, thy body may be buried therein, that so thou maist the better remember, to imitate and follow our Patrone Saint *Iohn Baptist*. And thou must fixe all thy hope, to haue remission of thy sinnes, by the death and passion of our Lord and Redeemer *Iesus Christ*.

Who is figured by this Corde thy Girdle, wherewith he was fast bound by the *Iewes*.

The seuerall attributes of fitting him in his Habites.

This is the Crowne of Thornes.
This is the Lance, wherewith his side was pierced.
This is the Spundge, wherewith they gaue him Gaule and Vineger to drinke.
These are the Buffettings, wherewith he was smitten.
This is the Crosse, whereon he was Crucified.

And I lay it vpon thy shoulder, in remembrance of his Passion, vnder which thou shalt finde rest for thy Soule, because his yoake is very pleasant and sweete. Wherefore, I put this Bond & Cord about thy neck, to make thee remember the seruitude, which thou hast vowed and promised. And in the vertue of all these, I make thee pertaker of all the spirituall blessings that are, and belong to the name of our Religion throughout the world, desiring God to comfort and assist thee therein.

His dayly inunctions, and other seruices besides.

Thou standest obliged, to say dayly an Hundred and Fifty *Pater Nosters*; or else the Houres of our Lady, or the *Vigiles* of the dead.

Thou art likewise bound, to say for euery one of thy deceased Brethren, one of the three Seruices thereto especially appointed.

Thou must be alwayes bare-headed, vntill such time as the Great Maister, or his Licutenant shall commaund thee to put on.

Thou

Thou shalt salute and embrace familiarely, all such as thou meetest, wearing the Crosse of our Religion; in token of loue and Brotherly dilection.

If thou wert at *Malta*, thou must fetch thy Bread, Salte and water at thine Inne: Insted whereof, I commaund thee to doe so heere: whatsoeuer commeth beside, thou must accept, because our Order doth promise there nothing else.

And now that thou art receiued into our Company, I will shew thee the Coate of Armes or vpper Garment, which thou art to weare ouer thine Armour, at all such times as thou Marchest in Warre against the enemies to our Faith: to the end, that thou maist neuer abandon thy Brethren, or the Enseignes of our Order, which beare the same noates. And what accident soeuer shall happen, thou must neuer turne thy back vpon thine enemie.

These things being thus ended, were said the wounted Prayers required in such cases, according to the Statutes and Customes of the Order, newly imprinted at *Paris*, and put forth by a Knight of the Order, *Iacques Fumee*, Commaunder of *Castro*, an Auncient Family at *Paris*, that beare in Armes *D'Azur, a deux Faces d'Or, et Six Besans d'Argent. 3. 2. 1.*

The Statutes of the Order lately imprinted.

Such are the Ceremonies, which I saw performed in the Church of the *Temple*, heere in our Citty of *Paris*, on the day of Profession made by *Monsieur*, Knight of *Vendosme*, Naturall Sonne to King *Henry* the Great of Famous memory; who beareth for his Armes

D'Azur, à Six Besants d'Argent. 3. 2. 1.
au Chef de Malte.

The Crosse of the Order of the Knights of the *Temple*: more vsually called *Knights Templers*: VVhich had beginning about the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, One Hundred and Nineteene: Vnder the Reigne of *Bauldwine*, Second of the name, Third King of *Ieruſalem*.

Croix de L'Ordre des Cheualiers du Temple.

CHAP. VII.

THE *Order of the Templers* tooke beginning vnder the Reigne of *Bauldwine*, Second of the name, Third King of *Ieruſalem*, about the yeare of Grace One thouſand, one hundred and nineteene. In which yeare nine Gentlemen, conducted by *Hugues des Payens*, and *Godfrey de Saint Omer* (whoſe Armes it is impoſſible for me to diſcouer, but ſuch as knowe them, ſhall doe me a great pleaſure to enſtruct me in them, for the Second Impreſſion, if God will vouchſafe to let me liue ſo long) vrged thereto by zealous deuotion, paſſed beyond the Seas, and preſented themſelues before the Patriarch of *Ieruſalem*, named *Guarimond*: in whoſe preſence they made ſollemne vowes, to liue Religiouſly, in forme and manner as did the Chanons Reguler, of the Order of Saint *Auguſtine*. Nine whole yeares they liued together in that number, without encreaſing to any more, and King *Bauldwine* gaue them permiſſion, to build a Lodging, within the circuit and encloſure of the *Temple* of *Salomon* in *Ieruſalem*: whereby they became to be acknowledged, and called by the name of *Templers*.

The first men that began the Order.

In the yeare One thouſand, one hundred, twenty and eight, they began to encreaſe, by the affluent reſorte of Pilgrimes from beyond the Seas; ſo that by conſent of the *Patriarche* of *Ieruſalem* (whom they acknowledged to be their Superiour) they imployed their paines, in guarding the high wayes and moſt daungerous paſſages, as being guydes and ſafe conducts for Pilgrimes to the Holy-Land. By theſe charitable actions, they grew acceptable to the Kings of *Ieruſalem*, and to the Princes and Lords of *Europe*, who were very bountefull in Almes-deedes towardes them: becauſe they caried the Title *Of Poore Soldiours of Ieſus Chriſt, and of the Temple of Salomon. Pauperes Commilitones Chriſti, & Templi Salomonis appellabantur.*

The first imployment of the Templers, by fauour of the Patriarche of Ieruſalem.

In the ſame yeare One thouſand, one hundred, twenty eight, there was held a Generall Councill in the Kingdome of *France*, at the Citty of *Troyes* in *Champaigne* (as I haue read in *william* of *Tyre*, in his Twelfth Booke and Seuenth Chapter of the Holy warres, where it is called *Concilium Cretenſe*, thorow the fault of Printers, for it ſhould be read *Concilium Trecenſe*) wherein were preſent

A Generall Councill at Troyes in Champaigne, Concilium Trecenſe.

Mathew, Biſhop of *Albania*, Cardinall and Legate to the Holy Apoſtolicall Seate, and to Pope *Honorius*, Second of the name.

Regnaud, Archbiſhop of *Rheimes*; And
Henry, Archbiſhop of *Sens*.

The Biſhops were.

Ranckedus of *Chartres*.
Goſſelinus, Biſhop of *Soiſſons*.
N. Biſhop of *Paris*.
N. Biſhop of *Troyes*.
N. Biſhop of *Orleans*.
N. Biſhop of *Auxerre*.
N. Biſhop of *Meaux*.
N. Biſhop of *Chaalons*.
N. Biſhop of *Laon*.
N. Biſhop of *Beauuais*:

The Abbots were.

N. Abbot of *Vezelay*, who afterwards was Archbiſhop of *Lyons*, and Legate to the Holy-Seate.
N. Abbot of *Ciſteaux*.
N. Abbot of *Pontigny*.
N. Abbot of *Trois-Fontaines*.
N. Abbot of Saint *Denys* of *Rheims*.
N. Abbot of Saint *Stephen* at *Dijon*.
N. Abbot of *Moleſme*: And

Saint *Bernard*, Abbot of *Cleruaux*, the moſt Learned and deuoute Prelate of all them which that Age affoorded.

With a great number of Princes and Great Lords of *France*, then preſent at this Councill. Among whom were the Count of *Champaigne Thibault*, and the Count of *Neuers*.

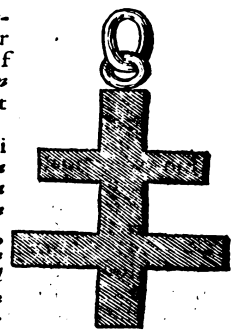
At this Councill it was, where the firſt Great Maiſter *Hugh* preſented himſelfe, being attended on by ſome Brethren of this Order, among whom were by name, Brother *Godfry*; Brother *Payen de Montdidier*, Brother *Goralli*; Brother *Geoffrey Biſoll*; & *Archambald* of Saint *Amand*: who brought to the Councill the Letters of Pope *Honorius*, and of *Steuen* Patriarch of *Ieruſalem*, with ſome Articles and memories of Vowes, concerning the Rules, which were propounded to them to obſerue and follow.

The first great Maiſter of the Templers vrelent at this Councill.

The Fathers in this Holy Councill at *Troyes*, gaue commaund to the Reuerend Abbot Saint *Bernard*, to haue the peruſing of thoſe Rules and Vowes; granting to write them (vnder him) the Scribe of the Councill, named *Ioannes Michaelenſis*. Saint *Bernard* did ſet downe the Rules of this Order in Latine, anſwerable to his owne elegant ſtile, with an exhortation to the ſaid *Hugh*, Knight and Great Maiſter of this Order, which is to be read in the Workes of that worthy man Now, concerning the Rules belonging to the *Templers*, becauſe they were rare and neuer found heretofore Imprinted: I haue ſet them downe at large in the end of this diſcourſe, though not by the due Folios of Pages, or Signature, which ſhould follow in the forme of Printing, yet ſufficiently enough for all men of vnderhanding.

Ioannes Michaelenſis Clearke or Scribe of the Councill.

In preſence of the Patriarch of *Ieruſalem*, they made profeſſion of the Order of Saint *Benedict*, and ſware their vowes of Obedience, Pouertie and Chaſtity, acknowledging him to be their Superiour, and al the Patriarches after him. He granted their habite to be White, and thereupon *Vne Croix Patriarchale*, in the ſame forme as you behold it to be here Figured.



The Templers of S. Benedicts Order.

They encreaſed in numbers of men, and great Riches, becauſe they were ſo couragious as poſsibly men could be; for a ſmall troupe of them, could kill and ouercome an Army of *Sarrazins*. Here you may obſerue what is written by *William* the Archbiſhop of *Tyre*, *Iacques de Vitry*, and all them that haue written concerning the Holy-Warre.

Erant *Templarii Commilitones ita formidabiles* Fidei Chriſti *aduerſariis, quod vnus perſequebatur Mille & Duodecim, Millia Duodecim: Non quot eſſent, ſed magis Vbi eſſent, dum ad Arma clamaretur, interrogantes.* Leones in bello; *Agni manſueti in Domo, in Expeditione Milites aſperi; in Eccleſia velut Heremitæ, & Monachi; inimicis Chriſti duri, & feroces, Chriſtianis autem benigni, & mites Vexillum bipartitum ex Albo, & Nigro, quod nominant* Beau-Seant *quaſi Gallica lingua Bien ſeant præuium habent, eo quod Chriſti amicis candidi ſunt, & benigni, inimicis ſeuo terribiles: atque nigri.*

These Knights of the Temple were ſo dreadfull and terrible, against the aduerſaries of the Faith of Chriſt, the Sarrazins and Miſcreants; that one man alone of them, would fight with a Thouſand, and Twelue would vanquiſh Twelue Thouſand. So that at the inſtant when they marched to the Field; where they purpoſed to fight; the Scoutes and Spies of

These are the very words of the Authors themselues.

of the Sarrazins, would lurke in corners vpon the wayes (as surprized with feare and terry pangs of death) not couting to know what number they were, but to what place they marched. For being Lambes in the Conuent, they were As so many angry Lyons in the Warre: *Inuincible Souldiours in the Fielde affayres, but in the Church Nouices and Hermites: Cruell and Terrible to the enemies of the Faith, but softe, milde and benigne to Christians. They carryed to Warre their Banner, halfe White, and halfe Blacke, which* Fayre-seeming, Well-becomming. *they called* Beau-Seant, which we in French tearme Bien-Seant: *because they were and shewed themselues wholly* White *and fayre towards Christians, but Blacke and Terrible to them that were Miscreants.*

Fifty yeares after the establishment of their Order by the Learned Saint *Bernard*; they met in a Chapter of their Order, to the number of three hundred Gentlemen, & as many Brethren Seruants, most part of them belonging to the Kingdome of *France*. At this Chapter, they began to elect a Great Maister among themselues, by example of the *Knights Hospitalers of S. Iohn of Ierusalem*, & the first Great Maister of the Order, The first great Maister of the Order, chosen among themselues. and chosen at this Chapter held in the Holy-Land, and in the Sacred Citie it selfe, about the yeare of Grace, One thousand, one hundred, fourescore & two; was one named *Richard de Rilefort*, who was slaine at the Siedge of *Acres*, by the Sultane *Saladine*, after that he had gotten possession of *Ierusalem*. By this meanes, they exempted themselues from obedience to the Patriarch of the Holy Citty, and made a Band by themselues. Namely, they changed their Crosse, reiecting the Patriarchall, and taking one Blacke with eight Points; like to that of the *Hospitallers of Saint Iohn*, with an *Vrle and Bordure White*.

The Pride and insolence of the Templers. As Time proceeded on, so these *Templers* grew to be so powerfull and Rich, that they became insupportable, and ouer-arrogant towards the Christians, which resorted thither from beyond the Seas. And as *William*, the Archbishop of *Tyre* writeth: *Conuersi sunt in arcum prauum, et neglecta humilitate, Patriarchæ Hierosolymitano se substraxerunt, Obedientiam ei, quam Prædecessores eidem exhibuerant, denegantes. Sed et Ecclesiis Dei Decimas, et Primitias subtrahentes, vt eorum indebite possessiones turbando, facti sunt valde molesti.* All things were lawfull to them; they commanded at *Bagueta* against Kings and Princes beyond the Seas, by meanes of their Pride and Ambition: And they onely were the cause, that the Christians lost the Holy-Land, hauing ouer-much correspondency with the *Sarrazins*.

Obseruations of the Templers abuses. The Lord of *Ioinuille* obserueth their behauiour, in describing the Voyage of our King Saint *Lewes*, to whom (saith hee) they shewed very bad offices. They hindered (saith the same Authour) the Conuersion of *Le Viel de la Montaigne*, who would haue embraced (with all his people) the Faith of Iesus Christ, if hee might haue beene eased of the Taxes and Tributes, which hee payed to to this Order. Suspected they were, of imploying the Subiects of the same Olde Wizzard, treacherously to reuenge their passions and spleenes, by quarrelling with the Christian Princes abiding in the Easte. *Facti sunt in arcum prauum.* They made themselues by their riots, superfluities, arrogancy and pride) shamefull and contemptible to all creatures. Notoriously were they addicted to drunkennes, for there is a Prouerbe of them, remaining yet fresh among vs; *He drinkes like a Templer.* Sodomie and blacke Magick were their frequent exercises: their Euen-songs and Meditations, were nocturnall Sacrifices to the diuell, whom they adored as their Maister, and sacrificed to him young Infants, borne of their owne seed, and begotten in the incestuous embracings of their very neerest kinred. Like to the *Magi* of the *Persians*, reported by *Catullus* and *Lucane*.

Belike the Templers, were Lustie Drinkers.

Cui fas implere Parentem, quid rear esse nefas?

The Generall Councell at *Vienna* against the Templers. And this was the reason, that beeing attainted and conuinced of so many enormous crimes, and foule offences, they were (iustly and deseruedly) wipte out of the Booke of the liuing, at the fifteenth Generall Councill, assembled at *Vienna* in *Dauphine*, the yeare of Grace One thousand, three hundred and Eleauen, by Pope *Clement*, Fift of the name (a Natiue of the Cittie of *Poictiers*, so report our Great Chronicles) who Presided there, where also were present in person.

Philip le Bell, King of *France*, and of *Nauarre*.
Edward. King of *England*: And *Ferdinand*, King of *Arragon*.
The two Patriarches of *Antioch* and *Alexandria*.

Three hundred as well Archbishops, as Bishops, and a great number of Abbots and Doctours, from all the Prouinces of Christendome. In this Councill, the Religion of the *Templers* was vtterly ouerthrowne and abolished, and the Knights and Brethren thereof executed, yea, burned publikely. Such is the report of our great Chronicles, out of which I coppied this with mine own hand, because I would relate nothing by harr, or heare-say. And so much the rather, in regard there are diuers ignorant writers, who haue blamed the Pope for this condemnation; done (say they) at the inciting of the King of *France*, *Philip le Bell*, only to haue the wealth and goods, which this Order possessed in the Kingdome. The Templers publiquely executed and burnt.

In the yeare of Grace One thousand, three hundred and seauen, *Lewes*, eldest Sonne to the King of *France Philip le Bell*, as King of *Nauarre* was Crowned at *Pompelona*. And this yeare likewise, all the *Templers* in the Kingdome of *France*, by command of the same King *Philip le Bell*, with grant and consent of the Soueraigne Bishop Pope *Clement*, vpon Fryday after the Feast day of Saint *Denys* (euen at the instant of one houre) in regard of their horrible, infamous and damnable crimes; were all taken throughout the Kingdome of *France*, and shut vp close in sundry prisons. All the Templers in *France* imprisoned.

And in the forenamed yeare, the King of *France* departed, to ride towards *Poictiers*, to conferre with the Pope and Cardinalls, where were many things consulted and agreed on by the Pope and King: but (aboue all else) the apprehension of the *Templers*. And the King sent to the Maisters of the Hospitall and of the Temple, who were Soueraignes beyond the Seas: that (expressely) they should make their personall appearance before him, at a certaine time appointed at *Poictiers*. Which command the Maister of the *Temple* performed: but the Maister of the *Hospitall* was hindered therein, by reason of the *Sarrazins* in the Isle of *Rhodes*, so that he could not come at the time appointed: but he sent diuers messengers to pleade in his excuse: yet it came so to passe, that at length, the Isle of *Rhodes* was recouered: and then the Maister of the Hospitall went to *Poictiers*, to speake with the Pope. The chiefe Great Maisters of the Hospitall and Temple summoned to their appearance.

And in the yeare of Grace following, One thousand, three hundred and eight, the King determined his iourny to *Poictiers*, chiefly, *About the busines concerning the Templers*; for there the Pope kept his Court, and there the King sent a summons throughout his Kingdome, that Noblemen, and such as were not Noble, should be present at Easter at *Tours*, whither he brought also a great multitude with him. But when the king was with the Pope, matter of great importance passed betweene them. Afterward, by the Popes command, *The Great Master General of the whole Order of the Templers, came thither*, and with him diuers other, who seemed to bee men of greatest noate in the *Templers Order*.

In the end, it was concluded and fully determined, that each man (by himselfe) should instantly be imprisoned. And then, in name of the Church, and power from the See of *Rome*, it was resolued; that there should be no further proceeding, eyther for their enlarging, deliuerance or punishment in any manner; without the command and appointment of the Apostolicall Seate. But concerning their goods, whereof the King (in right) ought to haue the disposition; they were left to him: yet to supply their necessities competently, vntill the Generall Councill. The Great Maister and his attendants imprisoned.

Also in the same yeare Pope *Clement*, being then at *Poictiers*, by councell and aduise of his Cardinalls, for affaires of the Holy-Land; for reformation of the whole Church, and namely for *The offences of the Templers, which were very enormous and abhominable*: the Councill which should haue beene Generall in the Calends of October at *Poictiers*; was repealed, and from the last of the Calends of December, vntill two yeares precisely ordained. And throughout the Realme of *France*, by his Letters Patentes to Archbishops, Bishops and Inquisitours for heretiques, commaund was straitely giuen, to send their opinion and meaning speedily, how farre and neerely their persons might be touched, wherein they should require the aduise of the most learned and iudicious, that these matters might the better bee brought to end by the said Councill. Notwithstanding all these proceedings, the Generall Great Maister of the Repealing of the Generall Councill intended at *Poictiers* to a further time.

the Order, and some other of the Greatest; were reserued to further time of correction, and examination by the Seate of *Rome*, vpon certaine knowledge in euery point.

In the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred and nine, fiftie and nine *Templers*, and diuers other beside, as well at *Paris*, towards *Moulin a Vent Sainct Antoine*, as also at *Senlis* and other places (after the Prouinciall Councils for these occasions, there celebrated and performed) were burned, and their flesh and boanes consumed into ashes. Fiftie foure of the said *Templers*, vpon the Tuesday after the holy feast day of Saint *Nicholas*, were burned together at the said place of *Moulin a Vent*. But although so many of them were to suffer that punishment; yet in their destruction, they would not acknowledge or confesse any thing: for which, their soules (by generall opinion of the people) were cast into perpetuall damnation, for they drew the meaner people into most great and grieuous errors.

Execution performed on diuers of the *Templers*.

After this exemplarie worke of Iustice; vpon the Eeue of the Ascension of our Lord Iesus Christ, the rest of the *Templers* condemned, were burnt in the same place, and their flesh and bones consumed to ashes: whereof one of them was Almoner to the King of *France*, that had so high an honor in this world, yet would he make no acknowledgement of his grieuous transgressions. And on the Monday following, was burned in the same place, a woman *Templer*, a learned Nunne, named *Margaret Poree*, who had (thorow her too much ouer-weening opinion of her owne iudgement and sufficiencie) wrested and peruerted the diuine Scriptures, and the Articles of the Faith, speaking dangerous and preiudiciall words against the Sacrament of the Altar: for which, by learned and expert Doctors in Diuinitie, she was condemned to that death.

A learned Nun a woman *Templer* burned.

And because the offences of the *Templers* (for which they were condemned vpon good proofes made against them, and confessed by some in the time of their imprisonment) ought not to be hid from the world; these are they that follow.

The Articles confessed and approued by the Templers, for which they suffered death in diuers places.

Making of a new *Templer*.

THe first Article was, that they did not stedfastly beleeue in God, and when they made a new *Templer*, it must not be knowne to any, in what manner they sacred and sanctified him; but it might be seene, when his garments were giuen him.

The second Article, when the new *Templer* was apparelled in the cloathing of the Order; soone after he was led into a darke Chamber, where the new *Templer* (by his hard fortune) denyed God, and trampled vpon the Crosse, spitting vpon the figure hanging thereon.

Worshiping an Idole.

The third. After this was done, he went presently to adore a false Idole, which Idole was in a skinne sweetely embalmed, and daintily polished. On this vile thing must the *Templer* fasten his beliefe, constantly beleeuing in him. In the hollow cauernes of his eyes, were two shining Carbuncles, shewing so cleare as Heauen. And that he might stedfastly beleeue in him; he must tearme him his Soueraigne God, adoring him with all his heart. And this Idole was very monstrously misshapen, hauing halfe a beard on his face, and the other halfe in his backe parts: yet must the new *Templer* honor him as his God, and all this was done in the despight of our Lord and Sauiour Iesus Christ.

Guiltie of Treason.

The fourth. It appeared plainely, that they were acquainted with the Treason against the King Saint *Lewes* in the *Holy Land*, when he was taken and put in prison. And the great Citie of *Acres* was betrayed thorow their misprision.

Buying and selling the Christians.

The fift. That when Christian people came neighbourly and louingly into those parts beyond the Seas: they made such couenants and contracts with the Soldane of Babylon, that the Christians were meerely bought and sold, thorow their perfidious dealing.

Abusing the Kings Treasure.

The sixt. That such riches and treasure as the King had giuen to some particularly, were by them in quite contrary manner disposed and bestowed; which proued very hurtfull and damageable to the kingdome of *France*.

The

Heresie, Hypocrisie and Sodomie.

The seauenth. They acknowledged the sinnes of Heresie and Hypocrisie: They dealt with one another carnally. So that it was thought wonderfull, that God permitted such horrible and shamefull sinnes, to escape so long vnpunished, who (in meere compassion) suffereth much euill, to be done.

Dying in their Idolatrie.

The eight. If a *Templer* chanced to dye in their maintained Idolatrie; they caused his body to be burnt, and the powder of him was giuen in foode to the new Nouiced *Templers*, to confirme them the more strongly in their lewde beliefe and Idolatrie. And vtterly they contemned the true Body of our Lord Iesus Christ.

Addicted to Mahomatisme

The ninth. Not any *Templer*, but must be guirt with a strong Belt of Leather, after the order obserued in *Mahumetrie*: whereby it was the meanes of knowing their heathenish disposition, and that their Faith was wholly affected and enclined that way.

Roasting of Infants.

The tenth. Moreouer, they sinned more grieuously, for an Infant new borne, begotten by a *Templer* on any Damsell or Strumpet; it was boyled and roasted with fire, that the Fat thereof might be gathered, and that Fat being hallowed by them, their Idole was annointed therewith.

No Baptising of Infants.

The eleauenth. That none of their Order ought to baptize an Infant, nor suffer it be brought to the Font of Baptisme; so long as by any meanes they could withstand it But what else they might doe to a woman lying in childebed, is too detestable and shamefull to be spoken, and therefore thought fit to be buried in silence.

For these, and diuers other horrible crimes and offences, whereof all the world (well nee.e) cried shame: they were by the Soueraigne Bishop Pope *Clement*, and many other Bishops, Archbishops and Cardinals condemned.

The boanes of a long buried Templer burned.

And the same yeare, the boanes of a *Templer*, that a great while before had bin buried, he being named *John de Tur*, and found by the Inquisitors, that the said *John* had bin an Heretique in his life time: his boanes (I say) were for that cause burnt into ashes. The same *John* had bin Commander of the *Temple*, and in his life time he caused to be built the Tower of the *Temple* at *Paris*.

A Generall Councill held at *Vienna*.

In the yeare One thousand three hundred and eleauen, a generall Councill was held in the Citie of *Vienna*, and there were assembled an hundred and foureteene Mitred Prelates, beside the rest that were not Mitred, and beside such as made excuse by Procuration. There were two Patriarchs, that is to say, he of *Antioche*, and he of *Alexandria*, for which two Patriarches, were two seuerall Seates made in the midst of all the rest, and before the prime or chiefe Seate, sate the Pope, who, before any of the rest sat downe, enioyned them to say priuate Masses, and to fast three dayes. It began the first of the Octaues of my Lord Saint *Denys*, and the Pope began (as vsually he was wont to doe) with *Veni Creator Spiritus*, and afterward tooke his Theame. *In consilio Iustorum & Congregatione*, that is to say: *In the Counsell and assembly of the Iust, the workes of the Lord are great*. Afterward the Pope propounded three causes, for which he had commanded that Generall Councill. The first was, for the cause of the horrible offences committed by the *Templers*. The second was, for succouring of the Holy-Land. And the third was, for reformation of the vniuersall Church. Then he gaue his blessing to the people, and euery one returned to his place.

Three causes of the generall Councils meeting.

The second sitting of the Councill.

In the yeare One thousand, three hundred and Twelue, on the Munday after Lowe Sunday, or next Sunday after Easter was the second sitting of the Council, in the great Citty of *Vienna* celebrated. And thither came King *Philip le Bell* with his Brethren and Sonne about mid-Lent, attended with a great company of Barons and Noble-men. He sate on the right hand of the Pope, higher then any of the rest, but yet he was much lower then the Pope. And the Pope took his Theame: *Non resurgunt impii in Iuditio*, that is to say: *The wicked shall neuer arise in Iudgement*. Then Pope *Clement*, with the the Generall Councill, the *Order of the Templers*, not by way of definitie sentence, as already fully controuled: but by way of prouision and purueyance from the Sea Apostolicall, for euer altogether disanulled there, *The Order of the Temple*.

And in the yeare One thousand, three hundred and thirteene, in the Moneth of March

The Great Maister of the *Templers* and the Visitour burned.

March or Lent time, the Maister after him in the Order, as one would say the *Visitour*: at *Paris*, in the Isle before the *Augustines*, were burned, and their bones consumed into ashes; but would make no acknowledgement of their offences.

You behold here, what is recorded in our great Chronicles, concerning the behauiour of the *Templers*, executed at *Paris* (and not at *Vienna*, before Pope *Clement*, and King *Phillip le Bell*: whom they summoned before God the same yeare, and throwe downe their Gloue before the King and his Sonne, as gage of Battaile, to maintaine their innocency) a most fabulous and lying discourse, to blemish the memory of the said Pope *Clement*, the vniuersall Councill, and King *Phillip*, a very good and generous Prince, and who was endued with many of the vertues of the Holy King S ant *Lewes* his Grandfather. And our great Chronicles are much more exact and certain, concerning matters among vs: then can be the Histories of *Italy*, *Spayne*, and *England*, which touch the businesse of the *Templers*, in speaking nothing but after others, and meerely by heare-say; whereas our Chronicles are written *de Visu*, and the eye-witnesses.

Iaques de la Maule, last Great Maister of the *Templers*.

The last Great Maister of the *Templers*, executed at *Paris*, was of the Duchie of *Burgongne*, named *Iaques de la Maule*, whose portraiture is yet to be seene in many places at *Paris*. But he hath no other Armes, *Que la Croix Noir Octogone de son Ordre, à l'Orle et Porsi d'Argent* And as for the Maister Visitor, which bare him company in death, he is named by some, Brother *Daulphine*, without any other addition.

Here now followeth the Rules, which the Learned Saint *Bernard* prescribed to the said *Templers*, and other Military Orders (instituted in his life time) and long while after him, in *Italy*, *Spayne*, and other places.

Regula

For the Binders better direction, here place those sheetes which are marked with a Starre.

REGVLA PAVPERVM COMMILITONVM TEMPLI IN Sancta Ciuitate.

CAP. I.

Qualiter Diuinum Officium audiant.

VOS quidem proprijs voluptatibus abrenuntiantes, atq; alij, pro Animarum salute vobiscum ad terminum cum Equis, & Armis Summo Regi militantes, Matutinas, & omne seruitium integrum, secundum Canonicam institutionem, ac Regularium Doctorum Sanctæ Ciuitatis consuetudinem, pio, ac puro affectu audire vniuersaliter studeatis. Idcirco vobis (Venerabiles Fratres) maximè debetur, quia præsentis Vitæ luce despecta, contemptoq; Vestrorum Corporum cruciatu, seuientem Mundum pro Dei amore vilescere perenniter promisistis, Diuino cibo refecti, ac satiati, & Dominicis præceptis eruditi, & firmati, post mysterij Diuini consummationem, Nullus pauescat ad Pugnam, sed paratus sit ad Coronam.

CAP. II.

Quod Orationes Dominicas, si audire nequiuerint, dicant.

CÆterum si aliquis Frater negotio Orientalis Christianitatis fortè remotus, quod sæpius euenisse non dubitamus, & pro tali absentia, Dei seruitium non audierit, pro Matutinis, Tredecim Orationes Dominicas, ac pro singulis horis Septem, sed pro Vesperis, Nouem dicere collaudamus, ac libera Voce vnanimiter affirmamus. Isti enim in salutifero labore ita directi non possunt accurrere hora competenti ad Diuinum Officium: sed si fieri potest, horæ constitutæ non præcreantur ante institutum debitum.

CAP. III.

Quid agendum pro Fratribus defunctis.

QVando vero quilibet Fratrum remanentium, Morti (quæ nulli parcit) impendet, quod est impossibile auferri, Capellanus, ac Clericus vobiscum ad terminum charitatiue Summo Sacerdoti seruientibus, creditum Officium, & Missam solemniter pro eius Anima, Christo animi puritate iubemus offerre. Fratres autem ibi adstantes, & in orationibus pro Fratris defuncti salute pernoctantes, Centum Orationes Dominicas, vsque ad diem Septimum, pro Fratre defuncto perseluant; Ab illo die, quo eis obitus Fratris denuntiatus fuerit, vsque ad diem prædictum, Centenarius numerus perfectionis integritatem, cum Fraterna obseruatione habeat. Adhuc nempe diuina, ac misericordissima charitate deprecamur, atque Pastorali auctoritate iubemus, vt quotidie, sicut Fratri in Viuis agenti debatur, & debetur: ita quod est necessarium sustentationi huius Vitæ in cibo, & potu tantum, cuidam Pauperi ad Quadragesimum diem impendatur. Omnes enim alias oblationes, quas in morte Fratrũ, & in Paschali solemnitate, cæterisq; solemnitatibus Domino pauperum commilitonum Christi spontanea paupertas indiscrete reddere consueuerat, omnino prohibemus.

CAP. IV.

Capellani Victum, & Vestitum tantum habeant.

ALias vero oblationes, & omnia Fleemosynarum genera, quomodo fiant, Capellanis, vel aliis ad tempus manentibus, Vnitati communis Capituli reddere pernigili cura præcipimus. Seruitores itaque Ecclesiæ Victum, & Vestitum secundum auctoritatem tantum habeant, & nihil amplius habere præsumant, nisi Magistri sponte, & charitatiue dederint.

CAP. V.

De Militibus Defunctis qui sunt ad terminum.

SVnt namque Milites in domo Dei, Templique Salomonis, ad terminum misericorditer Vobiscum degentes; vnde ineffabili miseratione vos rogamus, deprecamur, & ad vltimum obnixe iubemus, vt interim tremenda potestas ad vltimum diem aliquem perduxerit, diuino amore, ac fraternâ pietate, Septem dies sustentationis pro Anima eius, quidam Pauper habeat.

CAP. VI.

Vt nullus Frater remanens, oblationem faciat.

DEcreuimus, vt superne dictũ est, quod nullus Fratrum remanentium aliam oblationem agere præsumat; sed Diu, Noctuque mundo corde, in sua professione maneat, vt Sapientissimo

* *Propheta.*

Prophetarum in hoc aquipollere valeat. Calicem salutaris accipiam, & in morte mea mortem Domini imitabor. *Quia sicut Christus pro me Animam suam posuit: ita, & ego pro Fratribus Animam ponere sum paratus. Ecce competentem oblationem, ecce Hostiam viuentem, Deoque placentem.*

CAP. VII.
De immoderata statione.

QVod *autem auribus nostris verissimus testis insonuit, videlicet immoderata statione, & sine mensura stando, Diuinum Officium vos audire, ita fieri non præcipimus, imo vituperamus; sed finito Psalmo* Venite exultemus Domino, *cum Inuitatorio, & Hymno, omnes sedere tam Fortes, quàm Debiles, propter scandalum euitandum, nos iubemus. Vobis vero residentibus vnoquoque Psalmo finito, in recitatione* Gloria Patri *de sedibus vestris ad Altare se humiliando, ob reuerentiam Sanctæ Trinitatis. Sic etiam in recitatione Euangelij, & ad* Te Deum laudamus, *& per totas Laudes, donec finito* Benedicamus Domino *stare adscribimus; Et eandem regulã in Matutinis Sanctæ Mariæ teneri iubemus.*

CAP. VIII.
De Refectione Conuentus.

IN *vno quidem Palatio, sed melius dicitur Refectorio communiter vos cibum accipere credimus: Vbi, quando aliquid necessarium fuerit, pro Signorum ignorantia, leniter, ac priuatim quærere oportet. Si omni tempore, quæ vobis necessaria sunt, desunt; quærenda sunt, cum omni humanitate, & subiectione reuerentiæ potius ad Mensam, cum Apostolus dicat* Panem tuum cum silentio manduca, *& Psalmista vos animare debet, dicens,* Posui ori meo custodiam; *id est, Apud me deliberaui, vt non delinquerem; id est, Lingua; id est, custodiui os meum, ne male loquerer.*

CAP. IX.
De Lectione.

IN *Prandio, & Cœna semper sit sancta Lectio recitata. Si Dominum diligimus, salutifera eius verba, atque præcepta, aure intentissima desiderare, & audire debemus. Lector autem Lectionum, vobis indicat Silentium.*

CAP. X.
De Carnis refectione.

IN *Hebdomada namque, nisi Natalis dies Domini, vel Pascha, vel festum Sanctæ Mariæ, aut Omnium Sanctorum euenerit, Vobis ter refectio Carnis sufficiat, quoniam assueta Carnis refectio, intelligitur honorosa Corporum corruptio. Si vero in die Martis tale ieiunium euenerit, vt esus Carnium retrahatur, in Crastino vobis abundanter impendatur. Die autem Dominico, Militibus remanentibus, necnon Capellanis, duo fercula in honorem Sanctæ Resurrectionis impendi bonum, & idoneum indubitanter videtur. Alij autem, videlicet Armigeri, & Clientes, vno contenti, cum gratiarum actione permaneant.*

CAP. XI.
Qualiter manducare Milites debeant.

DVos *& Duos manducare generaliter oportet, vt soleter Vnus de Altero prouideat, ne asperitas Vitæ, vel furtiua abstinentia in omni Prandio intermisceatur. Hoc autem iustum iudicamus, vt Vnusquisque Miles, aut Frater æqualem, & æquipollentem Vini mensuram pro se solum habeat.*

CAP. XII.
Vt alijs diebus Duo, aut Tria Leguminum fercula sufficiant.

ALijs *diebus, videlicet Secunda, & Quarta Feria, necnon & Sabbatho, Duo, aut Tria Leguminum, aut aliorum ciborum fercula, aut, vt ita dicam, cocta Pulmentaria, Omnibus sufficere credimus, & ita teneri iubemus; vt forte, qui ex vno non poterit edere, ex alio reficiatur.*

CAP. XIII.
Quo cibo Sexta feria reficere oportet.

SExta *autem feria cibum Quadragesimalem, ob reuerentiam Passionis, omni Congregationi, remota Infirmorum imbecillitate, semel sufficere a festo Omnium Sanctorum, vsque in Pascha: nisi Natalis dies Domini, vel festum Sanctæ Mariæ, aut Apostolorum euenerit, collaudamus. Alio vero tempore, nisi generale Ieiunium euenerit, Bis reficiatur.*

CAP. XIV.
Post Refectionem semper Gratias referant.

POst *Prandium vero, & Cœnam, semper in Ecclesia, si propè est; vel si ita non est, in eodem loco, Summo Procuratori nostro, qui* Christus *est, gratias, vt decet, cum humiliato corde, referre stricte præcipimus. Famulis, aut Pauperibus fragmenta (Panibus tamen integris reseruatis) distribuere fraterna charitate debent, & iubetur.*

CAP. XV.
Vt Decimus panis semper Eleemosynario detur.

LIcet *Pauperta tis præmium, quod est Regnum Cœlorum, Pauperibus procul dubio debeatur; Vobis tamen, quod Christiana Fides de illis indubitanter fatetur, Decimum totius panis quotidie Eleemosynario vestro dare iubemus.*

CAP.

CAP. XVI.
Vt Collatio sit in arbitrio Magistri.

CVm *vero Sol Orientalem Regionem deserit, & ad Hibernum descendit, audito Signo, vt est eiusdem Regionis consuetudo, omnes ad Completas oportet incedere vos, ac prius generalem Collationem sumere peroptamus. Hanc autem Collationem in dispositione, & arbitrio Magistri ponimus, vt quando voluerit de Aqua, & quando iubebit, misericorditer ex vino temperato competenter recipiatur. Verum, hoc non ad vitiam satietatem oportet fieri; sed parcius, quia vino apostatare etiam Sapientes videmus.*

CAP. XVII.
Vt finitis Completis Silentium teneatur.

FInitis *itaque Completis ad Stratum ire oportet. Fratribus igitur à Completorijs exeuntibus, nulla sit domo licentia data loqui in Publico, nisi necessitate cogente; Armigero autem suo, quæ dicturus est, leniter dicat. Est vero seruatum, vt in tali interuallo Vobis de Completorijs exeuntibus, maxima necessitate cogente, de Militari negotio, vel de statu domus vestræ, quia dies ad hoc Vobis sufficere non creditur, cum quadam Fratrum parte, Magistrum, vel Illum, cui domus dominium, post Magistrum est debitum, oporteat loqui. Hoc autem ita fieri iubemus; & ideo quia scriptum est,* In multiloquio non effugies peccatum, *& alibi* mors, et vita in manibus linguæ. *In eo colloquio scurrilitatem, & verba otiosa ad risum mouentia omnino prohibemus; & Vobis ad Lectulos euntibus, Dominicam Orationem, si aliquis quid stultum est locutus, cum humilitate, & puritatis deuotione dicere iubemus.*

CAP. XVIII.
Vt Fatigati ad Matutinas non surgant.

FAtigatos *nempe Milites, non ita, vt Vobis est manifestum, surgere ad Matutinas conlaudamus: sed assensu Magistri, vel Illius, cui creditum fuerit à Magistro, eos quiescere, & Tredecim orationes constitutas sic cantare, vt ueens ipsorum voci concordet, iuxta illud Propheta,* Psallite Domino sapienter: *& Illud.* In conspectu Angelorum Psallam tibi; *Vos vnanimes collaudamus. Hoc autem in arbitrio Magistri semper consistere debet.*

CAP. XIX.
Vt Communitas Victus inter Fratres seruetur.

LEgitur *in Diuina pagina* Diuidebatur singulis, prout cuique opus erat. *Ideo non dicimus vt sit Personarum acceptio, sed Infirmitatum debet esse cõsideratio. Vbi autem, qui minus indiget, agat Deo gratias, & non contristetur. Qui vero indiget, humiliter, pro Infirmitate, non extollatur pro* Misericordia, *& ita omnia membra erunt in pace. Hoc autem prohibemus, vt nulle immoderatam abstinentiam amplecti liceat, sed communem vitam instanter teneant.*

CAP. XX.
De qualitate, & modo Vestimenti.

VEstimenta *autem vnius coloris semper esse iubemus, Verbi gratia,* Alba, *vel* Nigra, *vel vt ita dicam* Burella. *Omnibus autem Militibus professis in Hieme, & in Aestate, si fieri potest, Alba vestimenta concedimus: vt, qui tenebrosam vitam postposuerint, per limpidam, & Albam suo Conditori se conciliari cognoscant. Quid enim Alèdo, nisi Castitas integra? Castitas, & Mentis securitas, & Corporis sanitas. Et nisi Miles vnusquisque castus perseuerauerit, ad perpetuam requiem venire, & Deum videre non poterit, testante Paule Apostolo:* Pacem sectamini cum omnibus: & castimoniam, sine qua nemo videbit dominum. *Sed quia huiusmodi indumentum Arrogantiæ, ac Superfluitatis æstimatione carere debet, talia habere omnibus iubemus, vt solus leniter per se vestire, & exuere, calciare, & discalceare valeat. Procurator huius ministerij, peruigili cura, hoc vitare præsumat, ne nimis longa, aut nimis curta, sed mensurata ipsis vtentibus, secundum Vnuscuiusque quantitatem suis Fratribus tribuat. Accipientes itaque Noua, vetera semper reddant in præsenti, reponenda in Camera, vel vbi Frater, cuius est ministerium, decreuerit; propter Armigeros, & Clientes, & quandoque pro Pauperibus.*

CAP. XXI.
Quod Famuli Alba vestimenta, id est, Pallia non habeant.

HOc *nempe quod erat in domo Dei, ac suorum Militum Templi, sine dilectione, ac consilio communis Capituli obnixe contradicimus, & funditus, quasi quoddam vitium peculiare amputare præcipimus. Habebant enim olim Famuli, & Armigeri Alba vestimenta, vnde veniebant damna importabilia. Surrexerunt enim in vltramontanis partibus quidam Pseudofratres, & Coniugati, & alij dicentes se esse de Templo, cum sint de Mundo. Hi nempe tantas contumelias, totque damna Militari ordini adquisiuerunt, & Clientes remanentes plurima scandala oriri inde superbiendo fecerunt. Habeant igitur Nigra, sed si talia non possunt inuenire, habeant qualia inueniri possint in illa Prouincia, qua degũt; aut quod vilius vnius coloris cõparari potest, videlicet* Burella.

CAP. XXII.
Quod Milites remanentes tantum Alba habeant.

NVlli *ergo concessum est Candidas Chlamides deferre, aut Alba Pallia habere, nisi nominatis Militibus Christi.*

CAP. XXIII.
Vt pellibus Agnorum vtantur.

DECREVIMVS *communi Consilio, vt nullus Frater remanens per Hyemem, pelles, aut pelliciam, vel aliquid tale quod ad vsum Corporis pertineat, etiamque Coopertorium, nisi Agnorum, vel Arietum habeat.*

CHAP. XXIV.
Vt vetusta Armigeris dentur.

PROCVRATOR, *vel Dator Pannorum, omni obseruantiâ, Veteres semper Armigeris, & Clientibus; & si Vetustiores, Pauperibus, fideliter, æqualitérque erogare intendat.*

CAP. XXV.
Cupiens optima, Deteriora habeat.

SI *Aliquis Frater remanens, ex debito, aut ex motu Superbiæ, pulchra, vel optima Pallia habere voluerit; ex tali præsumptione, procul dubio, Vilissima merebitur.*

CAP. XXVI.
Vt quantitas, & qualitas Vestimentorum seruetur.

QVantitatem, *secundum Corporum magnitudinem, Largitatémque Vestimentorum obseruare oportet. Dator Pannorum sit in hoc curiosus.*

CAP. XXVII.
Vt Dator Pannorum, in primis æqualitatem seruet.

LOngitudinem, *vt superius dictum est, cum æquali mensurâ, ne vel Susurronum, vel Criminatorum oculus aliquid notare præsumat, Procurator, Fraterno intuitu consideret, & in omnibus supradictis, Dei retributionem humiliter cogitet.*

CAP. XXVIII.
De superfluitate Capillorum.

OMnes *Fratres remanentes principaliter ita tonsos habere Capillos oportet, vt Regulariter, Antè, & Retro, & ordinate considerare possint. Et in Barbâ, & in Genis eadem regula indeclinabiliter obseruetur, ne Superfluitas, aut Facetiæ vitium denotetur.*

CAP. XXIX.
De Rostris, & Laqueis.

DE *Rostris, & Laqueis manifestum est esse scindile: & cum abominabile hoc omnibus agnoscatur, prohibemus, & contradicimus, vt aliquis ea non habeat, imo prorsus careat. Alijs autem ad tempus famulantibus Rostra, & Laquea, & Capillorum superfluitatem, & Vestium immoderatam longitudinem habere non permittimus, sed omnino contradicimus. Seruientibus enim Summo Conditori munditia interius, & exterius valde necessaria est, eo ipso attestante qui ait,* Estote mundi, quia ego mundus sum.

CAP. XXX.
De numero Equorum, & Armigerorum.

VNicuique *vestrorum Militum Tres Equos habere licet, quia domus Dei, Templique Salomonis paupertas eximia non permittit amplius in præsentiarum augere, nisi cum Magistri licentiâ.*

CAP. XXXI.
Nullus Armigerum gratis Seruientem feriat.

SOlum *autem Armigerum singulis Militibus eadem causâ concedimus. Sed si gratis, & charitatiue ille Armiger cuiquam Militi seruierit, non licet eidem eum verberare, nec etiam quilibet culpa percutere.*

CAP. XXXII.
Qualiter ad tempus remanentes recipiantur.

OMnibus *Militibus seruire* Iesu Christo *animi puritate in eadem domo ad terminum cupientibus, Equos in tali negotio quotidie idoneos, & Arma, & quidquid eis necessarium fuerit, emere fideliter iubemus. Deinde vero ex vtraque parte æqualiter seruata, bonum, & vtile appretiari Equos iudicauimus. Habeatur itaque pretium in Scripto, ne tradatur obliuioni. Et quidquid Militi, vel Equis eius, aut Armigero necessarium erit, adiunctis & ferris Equorum secundum facultatem domus, ex eadem domo, Fraterna charitate impendatur. Si vero interim Equos suos in hoc seruitio aliquo euentu Miles amiserit, Magister, & facultas domus hoc exigit, vt alios administret. Aduenientе autem termino Repatriandi, medietatem pretij ipse Miles diuino amore concedat; alteram vero ex Communi Fratrum, si ei placet, recipiat.*

CAP. XXXIII.
Quod Nullus iuxta propriam voluntatem incedat.

CONuenit *his nempe Militibus, qui nihil sibi carius Christo existimant, propter seruitium, secundum quod professi sunt, & propter gloriam summæ Beatitudinis, vel metum Gehennæ, vt Obedientiam indesinenter magistro teneant. Tenenda est itaque, vt mox diximus, vbi aliquid imperatum à magistro fuerit, vel ab illo, cui magister mandatum dederit, sine mora, acsi Diuinitus imperetur, vt moram pati nesciant in faciendo. De talibus enim ipsa Veritas dicit.* Ob auditu auris obediuit mihi.

CAP. XXXIIII.
Si licet ire per Villam sine iussu Magistri.

ERgo *hos tales Milites propriam voluntatem relinquentes, & alios ad terminum seruientes deprecamur, & firmiter eis iubemus, vt sine Magistri licentia, vel cui ereditum hoc fuerit, in Villam ire non præsumant, præterquam* Noctu ad Sepulchrum, & ad Stationes, Quæ intra muros Sanctæ Ciuitatis continentur.

CAP. XXXV.
Si licet cum ambulare solum.

HI *vero ita ambulantes non sine Custode, id est, Milite, aut fratre remanente, nec in Die, nec in Nocte iter inchoare audeant. In Exercitu namque, postquam hospitati fuerint, nullus Miles, vel Armiger, aut Famulus per Atria aliorum Militum, videndi causa, vel cum aliquo loquendi, sine iussu, vt dictum est superius, incedat. Itaque consilio firmamus, vt in tali domo, ordinata à Deo, nullus secundum propriam voluntatem militet, aut quiescat; sed iuxta Magistri imperium totus incumbat, vt illam Domini sententiam imitari valeat, quæ dicit* Non veni Facere voluntatem meam, sed eius qui misit me.

CAP. XXXVI.
Vt Nullus nominatim, quod ei necessarium erit, quærat.

HAnc *propriæ consuetudinem inter cæteras adscribere iubemus, & cum omni consideratione, ob vitium quærendi, teneri præcipimus. Nullus igitur Frater remanens assignatus inter, & nominatim Equum, aut Equitaturam, vel Arma querere debet. Quomodo ergo? Si vero eius Infirmitas, aut Equorum suorum debilitas, vel Armorum suorum grauitas, talis esse agnoscitur, vt sic incedere, sit damnum commune, veniat coram Magistro, vel cui debitum est ministerium post Magistrum, & causam vera fide, & pura, ei demonstret, Inde namque in dispositione Magistri, vel post eum imperantis, vel Procuratoris, res se habeat.*

CAP. XXXVII.
De Frenis et Calcaribus.

NOlumus, *vt omnino Aurum, vel Argentum, quæ sunt diuitiæ particulares, in Frenis, aut Pectoralibus, vel in Calcaribus, vnquam appareat, nec alicui Fratri remanenti emere liceat. Si vero charitatiue talia vetera instrumenta data fuerint, Aurum, vel Argentum: taliter coloretur, ne splendidus color, vel decor cæteris arrogantia videatur. Si noua data fuerit, Magister de talibus, quod voluerit, faciat.*

CAP. XXXVIII.
Tegmen in Hastis, & Clypeis non habeatur.

TEgmen *autem in Clypeis, & Hastis, & Furelli in Lanceis non habeantur. Quia hoc non proficium, imo damnum nobis omnimodis intelligitur.*

CAP. XXXIX.
De licentia Magistri.

LIcet *Magistro cuiquam Equos, vel Arma, vel quamlibet rem cui libet dare.*

CAP. XL.
De Mala, & Sacco.

SAculus, *& Mala cum firmatura non concedantur, nec habeant absque Magistri licentia, vel eius cui post eum domus negotia creduntur. In hoc Capitulo præsenti, Procuratores, & per diuersas Prouincias degentes non continentur, nec ipse Magister intelligitur.*

CHP. XLI.
De Lectione Literarum.

NVllatenus *cuiquam Fratrum literas a Parentibus suis, neque a quoquam Hominum, nec sibi inuicem accipere, vel dare, sine iussu Magistri, vel Procuratoris. Postquam licentiam Frater habuerit, in præsentia Magistri, si ei placet, legantur. Si vero & a Parentibus ei quidquam directum fuerit, non præsumat suscipere illud, nisi prius iudicatum fuerit Magistro. In hoc autem capitulo Magister, & Domus Procuratores non continentur.*

CAP. XLII.
De fabulatione propriarum culparum.

CVm *omne Verbum otiosum generare peccatum agnoscatur, quid ipsi iactantes de propriis culpis ante districtum Iudicem dicturi sunt? Ostendit sanè Propheta; si à bonis eloquijs, propter taciturnitatem, debet interdum taceri. Quanto magis a malis verbis, propter pœnam peccati, debet cessari? Vetamus igitur, & audacter contradicimus ne aliquis Frater remanens fabulationes, vel vt melius dicam stultitias, quas in Sæculo, vel in Militari negotio tam enormiter egit, & Carnis delectationes miserrimarum mulierum, cum Fratre suo, vel aliquo alio, vel de alio, commemorare debeat. Et si fortè talia referentem quemlibet audierit, obmutescere faciat, vel quantocius poterit cito pede Obedientiæ inde discedat, & fabularum Venditori aurem cordis non præbeat.*

CAP.

CAP. XLIII.

De quæstu, & acceptione.

VERVMENIMVERO, *si aliquares sine quæstu cuilibet Fratri data gratis fuerit, deferat Magistro, vel Dapifero. Si vero aliter fuus Amicus, vel Parens nisi ad opus dare voluerit, hoc prorsus non recipiat, donec à suo Magistro licentiam habeat. At cui res data fuerit, non pigeat illum, si alteri datur. Imo pro certo sciat, quia si inde irascitur, contra Deum agit. In hac autem prædicta regula Ministratores non continentur, quibus specialiter hoc ministerium debetur, & conceditur de Malâ, & Sacco.*

CAP. XLIV.

De Manducarijs Equorum.

VTilis *res est cunctis hoc præceptum à nobis constitutum, vt indeclinabiliter amodo teneatur. Nullus autem Frater facere præsumat manducaria linea, vel lanea Idcirco principaliter facta, nec habeat vllus excepto Cofinello.*

CAP. XLV.

Vt cambiare, vel quærere Nullus audeat.

NVnc *aliud restat, vt Nullus præsumat cambiare siue Frater cum Fratre, sine licentia Magistri; & aliquid querere, nisi Frater Fratri, & sit res parua, vilis, non magna.*

CAP. XLVI.

Vt Nullus Auem cum Aue capiat.

QVod *Nullus Auem cum Aue accipere audeat, nos communiter iudicamus; non conuenit enim Religioni, sic cum Mundanis delectationibus inhærere, sed Domini præcepta libenter audire, orationi frequenter incumbere, mala sua cum lachrymis, vel gemitu quotidie in oratione Deo confitere. Cum Homini quidem talia operante cum Accipitre, vel aliâ Aue, Nullus Frater remanens hac principali causâ ire præsumat.*

CAP. XLVII.

Vt Nullus Arcu, vel Balista percutiat.

CVm *omnem Religionem ire deceat simpliciter, & sine risu, humiliter; & non multa verba, sed rationabilia loqui, & non in voce clamosa; specialiter iniungimus, & præcipimus omni Fratri professo, ne in Bosco cum Arcu, & Balistâ iaculari audeat; nec cum illo qui hoc fecerit ideo pergat, nisi gratiâ eum custodiendi à perfido Gentile; nec cum Cane sit ausus clamare, vel garrulare; nec Equm suum; cupiditate accipiendi Feram, pungat.*

CAP. XLVIII.

Vt Leo semper feriatur.

NAm *est certum, quod vobis specialiter creditum est, & debitum pro Fratribus vestris Animam ponere, atque incredulos, qui semper Virginis Filio minitantur, de Terra delere. De Leone nos hoc dicimus, quia ipse circuit quærens quem deuoret, & manus eius contra omnes, omnium que manus contra eum.*

CAP. XLIX.

De omni re super vos quæsita, iudicium audite.

NOuimus *quidem persecutores sanctæ Ecclesiæ innumerabiles esse; & hoc qui contentionem non amant, incessanter, crudeliusque inquietare festinant. In hoc igitur concilii sententia serena consideratione pendeat, vt si aliquis in partibus Orientalis Religionis, in quocunque alio loco super vos quæsierit rem aliquam; vobis per Fideles & veri Amatores Iudices audire iudicium, præcipimus; & quod iustum fuerit indeclinabiliter vobis facere præcipimus.*

CAP. L.

Vt hæc regula in omnibus teneatur.

HAc *eadem regula in omnibus vobis, vobis immerito ablatis, perhumaniter iubemus, vt teneatur.*

CAP. LI.

Quod licet omnibus Militibus professis Terram, & Homines habere.

DIuina, *vt credimus, prouidentiâ, à Veli in sanctis locis sumpsit initium hoc genus nouum Religionis, vt videlicet Religioni Militiam admisceretis, & sic Religio per Militiam armata procedat, & Hostem sine culpâ feriat. Iure igitur iudicamus, cum* Milites Templi *dicamini, vt ipsos ob insigne meritum, & speciale Prebitatis donum, Terram, & Homines habere, & Agricolas possidere, & iustè eos regere. & institutum debitum vobis specialiter debetur impendi.*

CAP. LII.

Vt male habentibus cura peruigil habeatur.

MAle *habentibus Fratribus super omnia adhibenda est cura peruigil, & quasi Christo eis seruiatur, vt illud Euangelium* Infirmus fui, & visitatis me, *memoriter teneatur. Hi etenim diligenter, ac patienter portandi sunt, quia de talibus superna retributio indubitanter adquiritur.*

CAP.

CAP. LIII.

Vt Infirmis necessaria semper dentur.

PRocuratoribus *vero Infirmantium omni obseruantiâ, atque peruigili curâ præcipimus, vt quæcunque sustentationi diuersarum infirmitatum sunt necessaria, fideliter, ac diligenter iuxta dominium facultatem eis administrent, Verbi gratia, Carnem, & Volatilia, & cætera, donec sanitati reddantur.*

CAP. LIV.

Vt Alter Alterum ad Iram non prouocet.

PRæcauendum *nempe non modicum est, ne Aliquis Aliquem commouere ad Iram præsumat, quia Propinquitatis, & diuinæ Fraternitatis tam Pauperes, quàm Potentes summa Clementia æqualiter adstrixit.*

CAP. LV.

Quomodo Fratres coniugati habeantur.

FRatres *autem Coniugatos hoc modo Vobis habere permittimus, vt si Fraternitatis vestræ beneficium, & participationem petunt, Vterque sua substantiæ portionem, & quidquid amplius adquisierint, Vnitati communis Capituli post Mortem concedant; & interim honestam vitam exerceant, & bonum agere Fratribus studeant; sed veste candida, & Chlamyde Alba non incedant. Si vero Maritus antè obierit, patrem suum Fratribus relinquat, & Coniux de altera vita sustamentum habeat & excedat. Hoc enim iniustum consideramus, vt cum Fratribus Deo castitatem promittentibus, Fœminæ eiusmodi in una, eademque domo maneant.*

CAP. LVI.

Vt amplius Sorores non coadunentur Maribus.

SOrores *quidem amplius periculosum est coadunare, quia antiquus hostis fœminco consortio complures expulit à recto tramite Paradisi. Itaq; Fratres charissimi, vt Integritatis flos inter vos semper appareat, hac consuetudine amodò vti non liceat.*

CAP. LVII.

Vt Fratres Templi cum Excommunicatis non participent.

HOc *Fratres, valde cauendum, atque timendum est, ne aliquis ex Christi Militibus Homini excommunicato nominatim ac publicè aliquo modo se iungere, aut res suas accipere præsumat, ne Anathema Maranatha similiter fiat. Si vero Interdictus tantum fuerit cum eo participationem habere, rem suam charitatiuè accipere non immerito licebit.*

CAP. LVIII.

Qualiter Milites Seculares recipiantur.

SI *quis Miles ex magnâ perditionis, vel alter Secularis, Seculo volens renunciare, vestram Communionem, & Vitam velit eligere, non ei statim assentiatur; sed iuxta illud Pauli,* Probate spiritus si ex Deo sunt, *& si ei ingressus concedatur. Legatur igitur Regula in eius præsentiâ, & si ipse præceptis expositæ Regulæ diligenter obtemperauerit, tunc si Magistro, & Fratribus eius recipere placuerit, conuocatis Fratribus, desiderium, & petitionem suam cunctis, animi puritate, patefaciat. Deinde vero terminus probationis in consideratione, & prouidentiâ Magistri, secundum honestatem vitæ Petentis, omnino pendeat.*

CAP. LIX.

Vt omnes Fratres ad secretum consilium non vocentur.

NOn *semper omnes Fratres ad consilium conuocare iubemus, sed quos idoneos, & consilio prouidos Magister esse cognouerit. Cum autem de maioribus tractare voluerit, vt est dare communem Terram; vel de ipso Ordine disceptare; aut Fratrem recipere, tunc omnem congregationem, si Magistro placet, conuocare est competens; auditoque communis Capituli consilio, quod melius, & vtilius Magister considerauerit, illud agatur.*

CAP. LX.

Quod cum silentio orare debeant.

OMnes *Fratres, prout Animi, & Corporis affectus postulauerit, stando, vel sedendo tamen summâ cum reuerentia, simpliciter, & non clamosè, vt Vnus alium non conturbet, communi consilio iubemus.*

CAP. LXI.

Vt Fidem Seruientium accipiant.

AGnouimus *nempe Complures ex diuersis Prouincijs tam Clientes, quam Armigeros pro Animarum salute, animo feruenti, ad terminum cupientes in domo nostrâ mancipari. Vtile est autem, vt Fidem eorum accipiatis, ne forte Veternus Hostis, in Dei seruitio aliquid furtiue, vel indecenter eis intimet, vel à bono proposito repente exterminet.*

CAP. LXII.

Vt Pueri, quamdiu sunt Parui, non accipiantur inter Fratres Templi.

Quamuis

QVamuis *Regula Sanctorum Patrum Pueros in Congregatione permittat habere, nos de talibus non conlaudamus vnquam vos onerare. Qui verò Filium suum vel Propinquum in Militari Religione perhumaniter dare voluerit, vsque ad Annos, quibus viriliter armata manu possit Inimicos Christi de Terra Sancta delere, eum enutriat. Dehinc secundum Regulam, in medio Fratrum, Pater, vel Parentes eum statuant, & suam petitionem vinctis patefaciant. Melius est enim in Pueritia non vouere, quam posteaquam Vir factus fuerit enormiter retrahere.*

CAP. LXIII.

Vt Senes semper venerentur.

SEnes *autem, pia consideratione, secundum virium imbecillitatem, supportare, ac diligenter honorare oportet. Et nullatenus in his, quæ Corporis sunt necessaria, districtè teneantur, salua tamen auctoritate Regulæ.*

CAP. LXIIII.

De Fratribus, qui per diuersas Prouincias proficiscuntur.

FRatres *vero qui per diuersas Prouincias diriguntur, Regulam, in quantum vires expetunt, seruare in Cibo, & Potu, & cæteris studeant, & irreprehensibiliter viuant; Vt ab his qui foris sunt, bonum testimonium habeant. Religionis propositum nec Verbo, nec Actu polluant, sed maxime omnibus, quibus se coniunxerint, Sapientiæ, & bonorum operum condimentum, & exemplum præbeant. Apud quem hospitari decreuerint, fama optima sit decoratus; & si fieri potest, domus Hospitis in illa Nocte, ne careat lumine, ne tenebrosus hostis occasionem aliquam, quod absit, inferat. Vbi autem Milites non excommunicatos congregare audierint, illuc pergere, non considerantes tam temporalem vtilitatem, quam externam Animarum illorum salutem, iubemus. Illis autem Fratribus in vltra Marinis partibus spe subiectionis ita directis, hac conuentione eos, qui Militari Ordini perhumaniter sese iungere voluerint, recipere collaudamus, vt in præsentia Episcopi illius Prouinciæ vterque conueniat, & voluntatem Petentis Præsul audiat: Audita itaque petitione, mittat eum Frater ad Magistrum, & ad Fratres qui sunt in Templo, quod est in Hierusalem, & si vita eius est honesta, talique consortio digna, misericorditer suscipiatur, si Magistro, & Fratribus bonum videtur. Si verò interim obierit pro labore, & fatigatione, quasi vni ex Fratribus totum beneficium, & Fraternitas Pauperum & Commilitonum Christi ei impendatur.*

CAP. LXV.

Vt Victus æqualiter omnibus distribuatur.

ILlud *quoque congrue & rationabiliter mouendum censemus, vt omnibus Fratribus remanentibus victus secundum loci facultatem æqualiter distribuatur, non enim est vtilis Personarum acceptio, sed Infirmitatum necessaria est consideratio.*

CAP. LXVI.

Vt Milites Templi Decimas habeant.

CRedimus *namque relictis affluentibus diuitiis, vos spontaneæ Paupertatis esse subiectos, Vnde Decimas vobis communi Vita viuentibus iuste habere, hoc modo demonstrauimus. Si Episcopus, Ecclesiæ cui decima iure debetur, vobis charitatiue eam dare voluerit, assensu illius Capituli de illis Decimis, quas tunc Ecclesia possidere videtur vobis tribuere debet. Si autem Laicus quilibet adhuc illam ex Patrimonio suo damnabiliter amplectitur, & seipsum in hoc valde redarguens; vobis eandem reliquerit, ad nutum eius qui præest tantum, sine consensu Capituli, id agere potest.*

CAP. LXVII.

De leuibus, & grauibus culpis.

SI *aliquis Frater loquendo, vel Militando, vel aliter aliquid leue deliquerit, ipse vltro delictum suum satisfaciendo Magistro ostendat. De leuibus, si consuetudinem non habeant, leuem penitentiam habeat. Si vero eo tacente per aliquem alium culpa cognita fuerit, maiori, & euidentiori subiaceat disciplinæ, & emendatiori. Si autem graue erit delictum, retrahatur à familiaritate fratrum, nec cum illis simul in eadem Mensa edat, sed solus refectionem sumat; dispensationi & iudicio Magistri totum incumbat, vt saluus in die Iudicij permaneat.*

CAP. LXVIII.

Qua culpa Frater amplius non recipiatur.

ANte *omnia prouidendum est, ne quis Frater Potens, vel Impotens, Fortis aut Debilis volens se exaltare, & paullatim superbire ac culpam suam defendere, indisciplinatus remaneat; sed si emendare voluerit, ei districtior correptio accedat. Quod si pijs admonitionibus, & fusis pro rationibus emendare noluerit, sed in superbia magis ac magis sese erexerit, tunc secundum Apostolum, de pio eradicetur grege: Auferte malum ex vobis; necesse est vt à societate Fratrum fidelium, Ouis moribunda remoueatur. Caterum, Magister, qui Baculum, & Virgam manu tenere debet, Baculum videlicet quo viriam imbecillitates aliorum sustentet; & Virgam, qua vitia delinquentium Rectitudinis Zelo feriat, Concilio Patri-*

archæ, & Spiritali consideratione id agere studeat, ne vt ait Beatus Maximus, aut solutior lenitas cohibentiam Peccantis, aut immoderata seueritas à lapsu non reuocet Delinquentem.

CAP. LXIX.

Vt a Paschali solemnitate, vsque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, vnam Camisiam lineam tantum sumere habeat.

INterea, *Quod nimium ardorem Orientalis Regionis misericorditer consideramus, Vt à Paschali festiuitate, vsque ad Omnium Sanctorum solemnitatem, Vnicuique Vna Camisia linea tantum, non ex debito, sed ex sola gratia detur: Illi dico, qui ea vti voluerit. Alio autem tempore, generaliter omnes Camisias laneas habeat.*

CAP. LXX.

Quot, & quales Panni in Lecto sunt necessarij.

SIngulorum *quidem non aliter per singulos Lectos Dormitorium esse, nisi maxima causa, vel necessitas euenerit, communi consilio cellaudamus. Lectualia, vel Lectisternia, moderata dispensatione Magistri Vnusquisque habeat. Credimus enim prorsus Saccum, Culcitram, & Coopertorium Vnicuique sufficere. Qui vero ex his vno carebit, Carpitam habeat, & in omni tempore tegmine Lineo, id est Veluso frui bene licebit. Vestitu autem Camisijs, & femoralibus semper dormiant. Dormientibus autem Fratribus iugiter vsque Manè, nunquam desit Lucerna.*

CAP. LXXI.

De Vitanda murmuratione.

ÆMulationes, *Inuidias, Liuorem, Murmur, Susurrationem, Detractiones, diuina admonitione vitare, & quasi quandam pestem vobis fugere præcipimus. Studeat igitur Vnusquisque Vestrum, Fratres charissimi, vigilanti animo, ne Fratrem suum clam culpet, aut reprehendat; sed illud Apostoli studiosè secum animaduertat.* Ne sis criminator, ne susurro in Populo. *Cum autem Fratrem liquide aliquid peccasse cognouerit, pacifice, & Fraterna pietate iuncta Domini præceptum, inter se, & illum solum corripiat. Et si eum non audierit, alium Fratrem adhibeat. Quod si Vtrumque contempserit, in Conuentu, publice obiurgetur coram omnibus. Magnæ etenim cæcitatis sunt, qui se a Liuore minimè custodiunt, vnde in antiquam Hostis versuti nequitiam demerguntur.*

Vt omnium Mulierum fugiantur oscula.

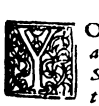
Caput Vltimum.

PEriculosum *esse credimus omni Religioni, Vultum Mulierum nimis attendere: et ideo nec Viduam, nec Virginem, nec Matrem, nec Sororem, nec Amitam, Vllamque Fœminam aliam aliquis Frater oculari præsumat. Fugiat ergo Fœminea oscula Christi Militia, per quæ solent Homines persæpe perclitari; Vt pura conscientia, et Vita secura, in conspectu Domini perenniter valeat conuersari.*

The Order of the poore Fellow-Souldiers of the Temple *in the Holy Citty.*

CHAP. I.

How they are to heare Diuine Seruice.



OV *renouncing your owne pleasures, and others, who for the safety of Soules, are militant with you for the time to the great King with Horses and Armes, are vniuersally to endeauour to heare Mattins with a Godly and pure affection, and all the whole seruice, according to the Canonicall Institution and custome of the Regular Doctors of the holy Citty. And this (venerable Brethren) is the rather to be done by you, because you despising the light of this present life, and contemning the torments of your owne bodies, haue promised perpetually to diseteeme the world for the loue of God: that being refreshed and satiated with the heauenly food, instructed and established with heauenly precepts, after the consumation of the diuine Mystery none might be searefull for the fight) but forward for the Crowne.*

CHAP. II.

That they are to say prayers, if they cannot come to heare them.

BVt *if any Brother chaunce to bee remoued or goe abroad vpon the affayres of Christianity in the Easterne parts (which we make no doubt may often come to passe) and by reason of his absence cannot come to heare diuine seruice, we doe enioyne him with one consent, for Mattins to say ouer thirteene Pater Nosters, and for euery hower seauen, but for the Vespers nine. For they that are imployed in so gracious a worke, cannot keepe their competent howers of comming to diuine seruices but yet so far forth as may, let not the apointed howers be past ouer before the inioyned taske.*

CHAP. III.
What is to be done for the Brethren that are dead.

WHen any of the Brethren that remayne among you draw neere vnto death, which is so impartiall as it spares none, and so impossible as none can escape it, The Chaplaine and Clerke; with those that serue with you for the time vnder the High Priest, we inioyne them to performe their entrusted office, and in the purity of their spirit, solemnely to offer a Masse vnto Christ for his soule. The rest of the Brethren that stand by, to spend the whole night in prayers for him, when he is dead saying, ouer a 100. Pater nosters till the seuenth day. And from that very day wherein his death was aduertised and made knowne to them, till the day prescribed the foresaid number of 100. containing the integrity of perfection, to be had in a Brotherly obseruation. Moreouer we deprecate by the Diuine and most mercifull charity, and recommaund by our pastorall authority, that euery day what was giuen and belonging to that Brother whiles he was aliue, so much as is necessary for the support of life in Meat and Drink, be bestowed vpon some poore man till the fortieth day: altogether forbidding all other oblations, which the voluntary pouerty of the poore fellow-souldiers of Christ was vsually accustomed indiscreetly to bestow at the death of their brethren, and Easter solemnytie, or other feasts.

CHAP. IIII.
The Chaplaines are onely to haue food and rayment.

ALl other oblations and almes of what kind soeuer, we carefully commaund the Chapleynes and others for the time remayning, to render to the vnity of the Common Chapter. The Seruitors therefore of the Church, are only to haue food and rayment according to authority, and let them not presume to take more, vnlesse the Maister doe freely and charitably giue it vnto them.

CHAP. V.
Of the Knights that dye, who are for the time.

THere are Knights in the house of God, and of Salomons Temple, liuing with you for the time vpon meere mercy, wherefore we earnestly entreat you, and beseech you, and finally commaund you, that when the fatreame power shall bring any of them to their last day of life, in loue vnto God and brotherly charity, some poore man may haue seuen dayes of sustentation for his soule.

CHAP. VI.
That none of the Brethren remayning among you, may make an oblation.

WEe haue decreed (as is aforesayd) that none of the Brethren remayning, doe presume to make any other oblation, but day and night that in this he may be like vnto the most wise Prophet. I will take the cup of Saluation, and in my death imitate the death of the Lord. For as Christ laid downe his life for me, so I am ready to lay downe my life for the Brethren. Behold a competent oblation, behold a liuing sacrifice, pleasing vnto God.

CHAP. VII.
Of immoderate standing.

THat which wee haue heard related by a most true witnesse, to witt, that you stand to heare Diuine seruice immoderately, and beyond measure, we haue not so enioyned, nay wee find fault with: but at the end of the Psalme. O come let vs sing vnto the Lord, with the Inuitatory and Hymne, wee commaund all (as well strong as weake) to sitt, for the auoyding of scandall. Thus sitting at the end of euery Psalme, in saying, Glory be to the Father, we commaund you to stand, humbling your selues from your seates towards the Altar, in reuerence of the blessed Trinity. The like is to bee done at the reading of the Gospell, and at We praise thee O God, and in all praises, till the end of Benedicamus Domino. And wee commaund the same order to bee obserued in the Mattins of the blessed Mary.

CHAP. VIII.
Of the repast of the Couent.

IN one Court, or rather in one common Hall, we will you to take your meat together, where whatsoeuer shall be necessary to bee demaanded, if you cannot vnderstand it by signes, you are to aske it very softly and priuately. And at any time, whatsoeuer you want that is necessary, you are to seeke it with all humanity and subiection of reuerence vnto the table, for so much as the Apostle sayes, Eate thy Bread in silence, and the Psalmist ought to encourage that, saying, I haue set a watch before my mouth, that is, I haue deliberated with my selfe, that I would not offend, that is, in my tongue; that is. I haue kept my mouth, that I would not speake euill.

CHAP. IX.
Concerning reading.

CHAP.

AT Dinner and Supper let there alwayes bee some sacred reading. If we loue the Lord, we ought most earnestly to desire and heare his wholesome words and precepts. The Reader he is to inioyne you silence.

CHAP. X.
Concerning the repast of the Body.

THrice in a weeke let it suffice to take repast, vnlesse it bee Christmas, or Easter, or the feast of the blessed Mary, or of all Saints: because the accustomary feeding of the flesh, is the necessary corruption of the body. If such a fast happen vpon the Tuesday, that the eating of flesh is restrained, the morrow you may take it in abundance. But vpon the Sunday we thinke it fitting and expedient, that two Messes be allowed to all the Knights and to the Chaplaines, in honour of the holy Resurrection. The rest, to witt, Esquires and Retayners, let them rest themselues contented with one, with Thanksgiuing.

CHAP. XI.
How the Knights ought to eate.

GEnerally 2. and 2. ought to eat together, that one may carefully haue an eye to the other, least either austerity of life, or stolne abstinence be intermixed in euery meale, And this we iudge iust, that euery Knight or Brother haue an equall and indifferent measure of wine vnto himselfe.

CHAP. XII.
That other dayes 2. or 3. dishes of rootes or Pease shall be sufficient.

VPon other dayes, to witt, Munday and Wensday, & so vpon Saturday, we iudge 2. or 3. dishes of rootes or other meate boyld pottage, or water-gruell, to be enough for all, and so we enioyne it to be obserued, that whosoeuer happely cannot eat of the one, may feed vpon the other.

CHAP. XIII.
What food is be vsed vpon the Friday.

WE commend the Lenten food vpon the Fryday, in reuerence of the passion, to the whole congregation, still excepting them that be weake, and we iudge it to be enough to take it but once a day, from the Feast of all Saints vntill Easter, vnlesse it happen to be Christmasse day, or the Feast of Saint Mary, or of the Apostles, or other times, vnlesse a general Fast fall out, they may feed twice.

CHAP. XIIII.
After repast, they must euer giue thanks.

AFter Dinner and Supper wee peremptorily command, thanks to be alwayes giuen to Christ, who is our Purueyer and prouider, with an humble heart, either in the Church if it be neare, or if it bee not, in the same place: and the fragments to be destributed to the seruants, or to the poore, out of brotherly charity, alwayes excepting and reseruing the whole Loaues.

CAP. XV.
That the Tenth Loafe be alwayes giuen to the Almoner.

ALthough the reward of Powerty, which is the Kingdome of Heauen, be doubtlessely due vnto the Poore, yet we command you; that you dayly distribute the tenth of your bread vnto the Almoner, which Christian faith doth assuredly allow of

CAP. XVI.
That the Collation be at the arbitrement of the Maister.

WHen the Sun leaues the Easterne parts, and descends into the West, at the ringing of the Bell, as is the custome of that Country, you must all goe to the Complyne. But first we wish you to take a generall Collation, which Collation we leaue to the disposition and arbitrement of the Maister, that when he pleaseth, you may haue water, and when he commands, you may haue a competent mixture of wine with your water. But this must not be too too much saticty, but sparingly, because we see wise men to fall away by wine.

CHAP. XVII.
That after Complyne, silence be kept.

THe Complyne being ended, you must to bed. After the Brethren are once departed out of the Hall, there is no liberty giuen to speake in publike, vnlesse it be vpon vrgent necessity. And what he speakes, he must speake it softly, vnto his Esquire. It may chaunce that in that distance, whiles ye are going out of the Hall, vpon some great necessity, the Maister, or he to whom the Gouernment of the house is concredited, next after the Master, may speake of some Military matter, or concerning the state of your House, with some part of the brethren, because the day is not sufficient for you to doe this: This therefore shall be done in this maner, In all such speach, we altogether forbid scurrility and idle words moouing laughter: and this the rather because it is written, In many words, thou shalt not auoyd sin; And in another place, Life and death are in the hands of the Tongue. And when ye goe to bed, if any one haue vttered any foolish word, we enioyne him to repeat the Lords Prayer, with al humilitie and due deuotion.

CHAP. XVIII.
That they that are weary, may not rise to Mattins.

THe wearied Souldiers, we allow not to rise to Mattins, as you must, but they may take their rest with the assent of the Master, or of him to whom the Master will giue credence, and then they must sing Thirteene appointed Prayers, their mind agreeing and going with

their voyce according to that of the Prophet: Sing wisely vnto the Lord, And againe, I will sing vnto thee in the sight of the Angels. But this we leaue to the arbitrement of the Master.

CAP. XIX.

That there be a community of Commons kept among the Brethren.

IT is recorded in the holy writ; There was diuided vnto euery man according as he had neede: therefore we doe not say that there should be acception of persons, but yet there ought to be consideration of infirmities: Where, he that stands lesse in need, let him giue God thanks, and not be grieued, And he that stands in more need, let him be humbled, because of his infirmity, not extolled because of mercy, and so euery member shall bee in peace. But this we forbid, that it shall not bee lawfull vnto any, to giue himselfe to immoderate abstinence, but euermore follow a common life.

CAP. XX.

Concerning the quality and manner of Apparrell.

WE command that the garments bee euer but of one colour, for example, White or Blacke, or as it may be Burrell: especially white for al the Knights in winter & in summer, if it may be: That they who haue laide aside a darke life, may learne to reconcile themselues to their Creator by a white. For what is whitenes but perfect chastity? and chastity both the security of the soule, and the sanity of the body. And except euery Knight continue chaste, he can neither come to perpetuall rest, nor see God, as the Apostle Paul witnesseth, Follow peace with all men, and chastity, without which no man shall see God. But yet that this kind of garment may bee free from the suspicion of arrogancy and superfluity, we command it to be such, that euery man alone by himselfe may cloth or vncloth himselfe, put it on, or put it off. He that is the factor for these affaires, must carefully labour to beware, that it be neither ouer long nor ouer short, but a meete measure with him that vses it, according to euery mans seuerall size. And they that receiue new garments, must alwayes render and restore backe their old, to bee laid vp in the chamber, or where hee shall appoint who hath the office, for the vse of the Esquires and retayners, and sometimes for the poore.

CAP. XXI.

That the Seruants are not to haue White garments, that is Mantles.

THis that was in the house of God, and of his Knights of the Temple, without the discretion and counsell of the common Chapter, we doe vtterly contradict, and earnestly command to cut it off, as a very speciall and peculiar fault. For in times past, the Seruants and Esquires had white garments, from whence grew insupportable losses. For there arose vp certaine false brethren in the parts beyond the Mountaines, and marryed men and others, affirming themselues to bee of the Temple, when they are of the world. These haue brought many contumelyes and great losses vnto the Military Order, and the retainers haue hereupon raysed many scandals by their pride. Let them therefore haue blacke, and if they cannot finde such as are to be found in that Prouince wherin they liue, or some such of one colour as is more base. viz. Burell.

CHAP. XXII.

That the Knights remaining, are onely to haue White.

IT is granted vnto none to weare White habits, or to haue white cloaks, but to the named knights of Christ.

CHAP. XXIII.

That they may vse Lambs Skinnes.

WE haue decreed by a common Counsell, that no brother remaining in winter, haue any other skinnes or hides, or such like belonging to the vse of his body, Cassocke and all, but of the skinnes of lambes or rammes.

CHAP. XIV.

That the old be giuen to the Esquires.

THe prouider or giuer of the Cloth, is with all obseruancy to keepe this custome, to giue the olde alwayes to the Esquiers and retainers, and if they be very old, to the poore, faithfully and indifferently.

CAP. XXV.

He that is ambitious after the best, is to haue the worst.

IF any brother will haue the fairest and best robes, either as of due, or out of pride; by such his presumption, hee shall deserue the very worst.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

That the quantity and quality of garments be obserued.

THere must be obseruation of garments concerning the quantity, according to the proportion and bignesse of the body. He that is the giuer of the cloth, ought to be curious herein.

CHAP. XXVII.

That the giuer of the cloth ought especially to obserue equality.

LEt him that prouides with a brotherly eye, consider the length, as is aforesaid, with equall measure, that neither the eye of the whisperer nor accuser can noate any thing, and in all things aforesaid, let him humbly meditate Gods reward.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Concerning superfluity of hayre.

ALl the brethren ought especially so to cut their haire, that they keepe regularity, and order, both before and behind. And the same is diligently to be obserued both in the beard and cheeke, that there be neither superfluity nor curiosity.

CHAP. XXIX.

De Rostris & Laqueis.

COncerning Rostra and Laquea, it is manifest, that it is a Heathenish thing, and for as much as this is abhominable vnto all men, we forbid it, and contradict it, that no man haue them. Likewise wee permit not others that serue for the time, but absolutely forbid them to haue Rostra and Laquea, and superfluity of haire, and immoderate length of garments. For to them that serue the most high Creator, Cleanlines is necessary both within and without: witnes himselfe saying, Be ye holy, for I am holy.

CHAP. XXX.

Concerning the number of Horses and Esquires.

IT is lawfull for euery Knight to haue three Horses, because the singular pouerty of the house of God, and of the Temple of Salomon, doe not admit for the present to augment, vnlesse it bee by the leaue of the Master.

CHAP. XXXI.

No man may smite an Esquire that serues freely.

FOr the same cause we grant vnto euery Knight one Esquire: but if that Esquire serue any Knight gratis, and vpon charity, it is not lawfull for him to smite him, or strike him for euery cause.

CAP. XXXII.

How that they that remaine for a time are to be receiued.

WE enioyne you faithfully, to buy for all the Knights, seruing Iesus Christ in the purity of their soule in the same house, Horses fitting for such a businesse, and Weapons, and whatsoeuer shall be necessary for them. Moreouer we iudge it good and profitable, to haue the horses prized on both parts equally, which price let it bee kept in writing, least it bee forgotten. And whatsoeuer shall be necessary for the Knight, or his horses, or his Esquire, adding also the furniture of the horses; let it be bestowed in brotherly charity, according to the ability of the house, out of the same house. If in the interim, the Knight by any euent loose his horses in this seruice, the Master and the goods of the house requires this, that he supply others. But the time comming of doing this, the Knight himselfe for Gods loue, is to pay one halfe of the price, the other (if he please) he may receiue from the Community of the brethren.

CHAP. XXXIII.

That none is to walke according to his owne will.

IT is fitting and conuenient for these Knights, who thinke nothing dearer to them then Christ, for the seruice according to which they haue professed, and for the glory of the sacred Trinity, or feare of hell, that they continually yeeld obedience vnto the Master. Therefore it is to be held (as we said before) when any thing is enioyned by the Master, or by him to whom the Master hath giuen command, without delay, as if it were enioyned from heauen, that they will brooke no delay in doing of it. For of such the Truth it selfe sayes. In the hearing of the eare he hath obeyed me.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Whether it bee lawfull to goe through the Towne, without the command of the Master.

There-

THerefore wee desire these like Knights who haue left their owne will, and serue others for a time, and we firmely command them, that they presume not to go into the Town without the leaue of the Maister, or to whom this is concredited, vnlesse it be By night vnto the Sepulchre, and to the Stations, which are contained within the walls of the holy City.

CHAP. XXXV.

Whether it be lawfull to walke alone.

LEt not these men dare to begin a iourney, eyther by day or night, without a kecrer, that is, a Knight or a Brother. For in an Army, after they are intertained, no Knight, or Esquire, or Seruant may walk by the Atrium of other Knights to see them, or to speake with them, without command, as is aforesaid. Therefore we earnestly confirme it, that in such a house ordeined of God, no man warre according to his owne will, or rest, but wholly betake himselfe ta the will of the Maister, that so hee may follow the saying of the Lord, I came not to doe mine owne will, but his which sent me.

CHAP. XXXVI.

That no man may seeke what may be necessary for him by name.

VVE command to write this custome amongst the rest, and we enioyne it to bee obserued with all diligence. No Brother particularly, and by name ought to seeke tforse or Furniture, or Armour. How then? If his owee infirmity, or the weakenes of his Horses, or the Weight of his Armour be knowne to be such, that it is a common losse to goe so; Let him come before the Maister, or to whom the Ministery is assigned after the Master, and let him truely and faithfully demonstrate the cause. For from thenceforth the businesse shall rest at the disposition of the Master, or of him that commands after him, or of the Steward.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Concerning Bridles and Spurres.

VVE will haue no Gold or Siluer, which are particular riches, to be seene at any time in Bridles or Breastplates, or Spurres; neyther may it be lawfull for any Brother to buy such: But if such things be charitably bestowed vpon them, the Gold or Siluer is so to be coloured, as the brauery or beauty may not bee censured arrogancy. If they be giuen new, the Maister may do with them what he will.

CAP. XXXVIII.

No couering to be had vpon Speares or Shields.

THere may bee had no couering vpon Shields and Speares, nor Furelli vpon Launces, because this is not conceiued to be any profit, but losse vnto vs all.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Concerning the power of the Master.

IT is lawfull for the Master, to giue Horse, or Armes, or any thing to any man to whom hee will.

CHAP. XL.

Concerning Male and Budgets.

BVdgets and Males with locke and key, are not granted, neither may they haue them without the Masters licence, or his to whom the businesses of the house are trusted. In this present Chapter, the Stewards, and they that liue in diuerse Prouinces, are not comprehended, nor the Master himselfe.

CHAP. XLI.

Concerning the reading of Letters.

IT is no wayes lawfull to any Brother, eyther to receiue to himselfe Letters from his parents, or from any other, nor to send Letters, without the command of the Master, or Steward. After that the Brother haue leaue, if he please they may bee read in the Masters presence If any thing bee directed to him from his Parents, let him not presume to receiue it, vnlesse it bee first told vnto the Master. But in this Chapter, the Master and the Stewards of the house are not contained.

CHAP. XLII.

Concerning the speaking of their owne faults.

SInce euery idle word is knowne to beget sinne, what can they say for themselues before the strict Iudge, that boast and bragge of their owne faults? The Prophet shewes truely: If wee ought sometimes to hold our tongues from good words for taciturnity, how much more from euill words for the punishment of sinne? Therefore we forbid and boldly prohibite, that no Brother make commemoration what hee hath done amisse in the world, or in Military affaires, either wioh his Brother, or with any other, and what delights of the Flesh he hath had ouer miserable women. And if he chance to heare any other relating such things, he is to make him silent, or at least as soone as he can depart from him, and not lend an eare to him.

CHAP. XLIII.

Concerning gaine and receiuing.

IF any thing be bestowed freely on any brother, without gaine; he is to beare it to the Maister or Steward. If otherwise, his friend, or Parents would giue it, but to vse, he may not receiue it, till he haue leaue from the Maister. But to whomsoeuer it is giuen, let it not grieue him, if it be bestowed on another. Yea let him know assuredly, that if he be angry at it, he striues against God. But in this foresaid Order, ministrators are not contained, to whom this ministerie is specially made ouer and granted, concerning Male and Budget.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Concerning the Bits of Horses.

IT is a profitable thing vnto all, that this precept appointed by vs, be infallibly obserued of all. Let no Brother presume to make Manducaria linea vel lanea. Idcirco principaliter facta, nec habeat vlla, excepto Cofinello.

CHAP. XLV.

That none doe dare to exchange or seeke.

NOw another thing remaines, that none presume to exchange his goods, one Brother with another, without the leaue of the Maister, nor seeke any thing, vnlesse one brother to another, and it be a small base matter, not a great.

CHAP. XLVI.

That none catch one Bird with another.

WE giue our common iudgement, that none should dare to take one Bird with another. For it is not agreeable vnto Religion, to be so addicted vnto worldly delights, but willingly to heare Gods precepts, constantly to frequent Prayer, daily to confesse his sinnes with sighes and teares. Let no Brother presume to goe with such a man, doing such things, either with a Hawke, or with any other Bird.

CHAP. XLVII.

That no man strike with a Bow, or with a Gunne.

FOr as much as it becomes all Religion to goe simply, and without laughter, humbly, and not to speake many words, but reasonable, and not in any loud clamorous tone: we specially command and enioyne euery professed Brother, that he doe not dare to shoote in a Bowe or Gunne, nor goe along with him that shall doe this; vnlesse it be to keepe him from the perfidious heathen, nor that he dare euery with a Dogge, or prase, nor spur his Horse in desire to take the Beast.

CHAP. XLVIII.

That the Lyon is alwaies to be strucken.

FOr it is certaine, that it is specially concredited to you, and due from you, to lay downe your life for your Brethren, and to take from the earth the incredulous, who are euermore menacing the Son of the Virgin. We speake this of the Lyon, because he goes about seeking whom he may deuoure, and his hands are against euery one, and euery ones hands are against him.

CHAP. XLIX.

Heare iudgement of euery thing that is asked of you.

VVE know that the persecutors of the Church be innumerable, and that they labour incessantly and cruelly, to disquiet them that loue not contention: Let this therefore be taken into due consideration, that when any man shall aske any thing of you, concerning Religion in the Easterne parts, or any other place; we command you to heare the iudgement and opinion of it by faithfull iudges, and such as are true louers of truth, and then we enioyne you to doe without partiality, whatsoeuer shall seeme iust vnto you.

CHAP. L.

That this Order be obserued in all things.

VVE courteously command, that this Order be obserued in all things, which are vndeseruedly taken from you.

CHAP. LI.

That it is lawfull for all professed Knights, to haue Lands and Men.

VVE doe beleeue, that this kinde of Religion had its beginning in holy places from you, by diuine prouidence, to wit, that you waxe warfare with religion, and so religion to be defended by warfare, and fight the enemy without sinne. Therefore we rightly adiudge, since you are styled Knights of the Temple, that for your renowned merit, and especiall gift of godlinesse; you haue Lands and Men, and keepe vnder you Husbandmen, and iustly gouerne them, and the appointed duetie to be particularly due vnto you for it.

CHAP. LII.

That there be a watchfull care had of them that be sicke.

ABoue all, there is a watchfull care to be had of the Brethren that be sicke, and that there be seruice done to them, as it were to Christ, that, that of the Gospell be had in memorie, I was sicke, and ye visited me. For these are carefully and patiently to be borne, because of such there is purchased a heauenly recompence.

CHAP. LIII.

That things necessary be alwayes administred to them that be sicke.

VVE command the ouerseers of them that be sick, that with all diligence and watch-

full

full care, whatsoeuer is necessary for their seuerall infirmities, be faithfully and diligently administred to them, according to the abilitie of the houses, V. F. flesh and foules, & such like, till they be restored vnto health.

CHAP. LIIII.
That one prouoke not another vnto wrath.

IT is no small thing to be tooke heede of, that no man presume to prouoke another vnto wrath, because the heauenly clemency hath equally obliged as well the poore, as the rich, in propinquity and holy brotherhood.

CHAP. LV.
How the Coniugated brethren are to be held.

WE permit vnto you, to haue coniugated brethren, in this manner, that if they desire the benefit and participation of your Fraternity, both of them shall giue after their death their portion of substance, and whatsoeuer they get more, to the vnity of the common Chapter: And in the interim, they must exercise an honest life, and labour to doe good to the brethren, but they may not goe in a white garment or habit. If the Husband dye first, he must leaue his portion to the brethren, and the wife to haue her maintenance out of the other. For this wee iudge to be vniust, that such women should abide in one and the same House with the Brethren, that promise Chastity vnto God.

CHAP. LVI.
That Sisters be no more ioyned with Men.

IT is a dangerous thing to assemble or ioyne together Sisters, because the auncient enemy hath drawne many from the right path of Paradise by the company of women. Therefore deare Brethren, that the floure of integrity may alwaies grow among you, it shall not be lawfull to vse this custome any longer.

CHAP. LVII.
That the Brethren of the Temple may not participate with such as be excommunicate.

THis (Brethren) is very much to be auoided and feared, that none of the Souldiers of Christ presume to ioyne himselfe with such as be excommunicate by any meanes, or to receiue their goods, least he be made Anathema Maranetha *in like manner. But if he be interdicted onely to participate with him, it shall not vnworthely be lawfull for him to take of his goods by way of charitie.*

CHAP. LVIII.
How secular Knights are to be receiued.

IF any Knight from out the masse of perdition, or any other secular man, willing to renounce the world, will chuse your kinde of life, and commonion, you may not presently assent vnto him, but according to that of Paul, *Proue the spirits whether they be of God; and if so, you may grant him ingresse. Let the Order therefore be read in his presense, and if he will diligently obey the precepts thereof, then if it please the Maister and Brethren to receiue him, the brethren being called together, let him lay open his desire to them all in the sincerity of his soule. And then the time of probation is altogether to rest in the consideration and prouidence of the Maister, according to the honesty of the life of the petitioner.*

CHAP. LIX.
That all the Brethren are not to be cald to secret Counsell.

WE doe not command to call all the Brethren alwayes vnto Counsell, but whom the Maister knowes prouident and fitting for it. But when he will deale with greater matters, as to giue common land, or to dispute of the Order it selfe, or receiue a Brother, then it is fitting to call together all the congregation, if it please the Maister, that so hearing the counsell of the common Chapter, he may doe that which he iudges to be best and most profitable.

CHAP. LX.
That they ought to pray with silence.

WE command by common Counsell that all the brethren pray with all reuerence, simply, and not clamorously, that one doe not hinder another, whether it be standing or sitting, as the affection of their minde and body requires.

CHAP. LXI.
That they take Faith or Allegiance of their seruants.

WE haue knowne many out of diuers Prouinces as well retainers, as Esquires, most earnestly desiring (for a time) to be admitted into our House, for the saluation of their soules: but it is expedient that you take faith of them, least happily the old enemy suggest something in Gods seruice, by stealth, or otherwayes vnseemely, and so suddenly driue them from their good purpose.

CHAP. LXII.
That children, so long as they be little ones are not to be receiued among the Brethren of the Temple.

THough the order of the holy Fathers permit to haue children in the congregation, yet we will not burden you with any such. But he that will courteously giue his owne sonne or kinsman, to Militarie religion, let him bring him vp till he come to yeares, that he be able manfully, to driue away the enemies of Christ out of the holy Land, with an armed hand. Then according to the Order, the father or parents are to set him in the midst of the brethren, and to open his petition vnto them all. For it is better not to vowe in childehood, then afterward foutely to fall away, when he is grown a man.

CHAP. LXIII.
That old men be alwayes honored.

YOu must piously support old men, according to their weakenesse, and dutifully honour them. And let them not be kept short, in any such things as are necessary for their body, the authority of the Order alwayes preserued.

CHAP. LXIV.
Concerning the brethren which passe through diuers Prouinces.

LEt Brethren which are to passe through diuers Prouinces, obserue order in meate and drinke, and in others things, so farre forth as they haue power, and let them liue vnreprouably, that they may haue good testimonie, euen of them which are without. Let them not pollute their purpose of religion, either in word or deede, but especially let them giue example of wisedome and of good works, to them with whom they are more familiarly conioyned. Let him be a man of the best report with whom they lodge, and if it may be, let not the house be without light for that night, least the darke enemy (which God forefend) finde some opportunitie. But where they shall heare of Knights meeting together, which are not excommunicate, let them haste thither, not so much considering temporall profit, as eternall safety of their soules. And those Brethren which are in the parts beyond the seas, in hope of conueyance directed thither; we wish them to receiue to them at this meeting, whosoeuer will courteously take vpon them the Militarie order: that both of them may meete in the presence of the Bishop of that Prouince, and the Prelate may heare the desire of the petitioner: which petitioner being heard, the Brethren is to send him to the Master, and to the Brethren which are in the Temple that is at Ierusalem. And if his life be honest and worthy such a fellowship, let him be courteously receiued, if it so seeme good to the Maister, and to the Brethren. If in the interim he dye; in recompence of his labour and trauell, the whole benefit and fraternity of the poore and fellow-Souldiers of Christ, is to be bestowed vpon him, as vpon one of the Brethren.

CHAP. LXV.
That foode be equally distributed vnto all.

WE thinke this also to be very fitting and reasonable, that foode be distributed to all the Brethren equally, according to the abilitie of the place. For acception of persons is not profitable, but respect of infirmities is necessary.

CHAP. LXVI.
That the Knights of the Temple haue Tenths.

WE beleeue that you (leauing the wealth of this world) are subiect vnto voluntary pouerty. Wherefore by this meanes it is manifest, that you haue Tenths duely belonging to you. If the Bishop of the Church to whom the Tithe is due, will giue it vnto you by way of charitie, by the assent of that Chapter, he ought to giue it of those Tithes which the Church then enioyeth. But if any Lay-man doe damnably withhold it out of his patrimony: he shall leaue the same to rot at the locke of him who is the Gouernor onely, without the consent of the Chapter.

CHAP. LXVII.
Of light and great faults.

IF any Brother shall offend in any small thing (in speaking or fighting, or otherwise) let him confesse of his owne accord shortly his offence vnto the Maister, by way of satisfaction. If they haue no custome concerning light things, let them haue light penances. But if he holding his peace, any other man make knowne his fault, he is subiect to great, and stricter and seuerer discipline. But if it be a great offence, let him be separated from the familiarity of the Brethren, and not eate with them at the same table, but take his repast alone. The whole matter is at the disposition and discretion of the Maister, that he may be saued in the day of iudgement.

CHAP. LXVIII.
For what fault a Brother may be receiued no more.

BEfore all things it is to bee prouided, that no Brother potent or impotent, strong or weake, willing to exalt himselfe, and by degrees to grow rond and dispond his fault, remaine vnchastened: But if hee will not amend, let him be checked more sharply. If he will not amend by godly admonitios, and harty praiers made for him, but grow greater and greater in pride; then according to the Apostle, let him bee rooted from the flock. Take away euill from you

It is necessary that a dying Sheep be remoued from the society of faithfull brethren. But the Maister, who Ought to hold the staffe and the rod in his hand, *to wit, the staffe to support the infirmities of the weake, and the rod to correct the defaults of delinquents, with the zeale of rectitude: let him labour to doe it with the counsell of the Patriarch, and with spirituall consideration, least, as blessed* Maximus *saith, either loose lenity doe not keepe vnder the sinner, or immoderate seuerity do harden him in his sinne.*

CHAP. LXIX.

That from the solemnity of Easter, till the feast of All Saints, you must haue but one linnen shirt Surplice.

MOreouer, because we pittifully consider the extraordinary heate of the Easterne region, we ordaine that from the festiuity of Easter, til the feast of all Saints, one linnen Surplisse only be giuen vnto euery one, not of debt, but of meere grace, to euery one I say that will make vse of it: but at other times he is generally to haue Surplices all woollen.

CHAP. LXX.

How many and what manner clothes are necessary in bed.

VVEE command by common Counsell, that euery mans sleeping place should be by himselfe, vnlesse there happen some especiall cause to the contrary, or great necessity. Let euery man haue his bed and bedcloathes at the disposé of the Maister. We suppose a Sacke, a Mattresse, and a Couering to be enough for euery one. He that wants one of these, let him haue a Carpet; and it shall be lawful at all times to haue a linnen couering. And they must sleepe alwayes cloathed with shirts and breeches, and sleeping continually til the morning, they must neuer want a candle.

CHAP. LXXI.

To auoide murmuring.

VVE admonish you to auoide emulation, enuie, spite, murmuring, whispering, detractions; and we command you to flye from them as from the plague. Therefore deere Brethren, let euery one of you carefully labour, that he doe not priuily slander his brother, or accuse him, but let him consider that of the Apostle, Be not thou an accuser, or a whisperer among the people. *When he shall manifestly know that his brother hath offended, let him correct him peaceably and louingly, according to his commandement of the Lord, betweene himselfe and him. And if he will not heare him, let him take to him another Brother: if he contemne both, let him publikely be reproued in the assembly before all. For they are much blinded, who cannot keepe themselues from spite, by which they are ensnared in the auncient wickednesse of that subtill aduersary.*

CHAP. LXXII.

That they are to shun all kissing of Women.

VVE hold it dangerous to all Religion, to looke too much on the beauty of women, and therefore let no brother presume to kisse either Widdow or Virgin, or Mother or Sister, or Aunt, or any other woman. Let the warfare of Christ shun feminine kisses, by which men are many times brought into danger; that with a pure conscience and secure life they may walke continually in the sight of God.

The Crosse of Saint *Lazarus*.



The

The Crosse of the Order of Saint Lazarus,

Croix de L'Ordre de Sainct Lazare, &c.

Reduced into the former splendour, vnder the Kings of *Ierusalem*, that were Successours to *Godfrey* of *Bologne*: As *Bauldwine*, *Amaury* and *Bauldwine*, with the Queenes *Theodora* and *Melisinda*, great Benefactours to the Order. But it tooke Establishment at *Boigny* in *France*, vnder King *Lewes*, Sirnamed the *Deuout*: In the yeare of Grace, One Thousand, One Hundred Fiftie Foure.

CHAP. IX.

HEretofore we haue spoken somewhat of this Order, the most Auncient of all Christendome, according to the testimonie of Saint *Gregorie Nazianzene*, who in the Life of the great Doctour Saint *Basile*; attributeth to him the birth and originall thereof. This Order was so much the more famous thorow Christendome, by how much the subiect was mercifull and charitable, as namely; taking care of diseased people, infected with such an vncurable infirmity, as was fled and shunned of all, vnfit for the frequencie of men, and making them seeme as dead to the world. Pope *Damasus*, first of the name, approued this for a good and commendable worke, and commended it to all the Churches of Christendome.

The Originall of this Order.

Iulian the Apostata, sworne enemy to the Christians, possessed himselfe of the Houses, which were assigned and giuen by the Church, for the relieuing of such miserable people. The Emperours, his Successours in power (but not in vaine and idle worshipping of Idols) did reestablish this worke of Charitie, and the Popes tooke a perticular care of it. This Order was brought into her auncient lustre, vnder the Kings of *Ierusalem*, that were Successours to *Godfrey* of *Bologne*. For we finde by the testimonie of *William* of *Tyre*, Chancellour of *Ierusalem*, and other Authors beside, that tooke paines in writing the Voyages and Conquests of our famous *French Paladines*, in those parts beyond the Seas; that the Kings of the holy Citie *Bauldwine*, *Amaury* and *Bauldwine*, as also the Queenes *Theodora* and *Melisinda*, gaue very great gifts to this Order. Which (as all the rest were) was gouerned by a Great Maister; and we obserued heretofore, that this Order had her Court, Iustice and Demeanes perticularly, as well in *Ierusalem*, as in the Citie of *Acres*.

Care for the reestablishing of this Order.

The Order gouerned by a great Maister.

Moreouer, the Knights of this Order, although they had especiall care of diseased Leaprous people; yet were they not negligent likewise, in skilfull handling of their weapons, and going to war against the Miscreants. And their deuotion made them so admired, and fauoured by King *Lewes* the yonger, called the *Deuout*; that at his returne from the Holy-Land, he brought along with him home into *France*, *Twelue Knights of this Order*, whom he appointed to be directors and Gouernors of the Hospitals in his Kingdome.

He established their chiefe Colledge and principall dwelling at *Boigny* in the Diocesse of *Orleans*, where this good King kept his Court most part of the yeare, by the example of King *Lewes le Gros* his Father. These twelue Knights serued as a Seed-plot or fruitfull Orchard, to all the Prouinces of Christendome, for from them Princes deriued Administrators, for exercising the work of Charity on Leaprous people, and it came to passe (by meanes of this Exercise) that all Prouinces acknowledged for

The chiefe Conuent of their abiding at *Boigny*.

Chiefe of the Order, the House of *Boigny*; where at the end of euery three years was held their generall Chapter, by the Priors of *Italie, Sicilie, England, Germany* & *Spain*.

Establishment of the Order at *Boigny*.

The establishing of this *Order of Saint Lazarus* at *Boigny*, vnder King *Lewes* the *Deuout*, is recorded in the Court Registers, in the yeare One thousand one hundred fifty and foure. And as well beyond the Seas, as in *France*, and other places of Christendome, the Bretheren of this Order made profession, of the Rule of Saint *Augustine*.

To slender purpose was it then, that the first originall of this Order should be attributed to certaine *Italian* Gentlemen, who passing into the Marches beyond the Seas; shaped their modell and patterne, by the *Hospitallers of Saint Iohn of Ierusalem*, endeauouring themselues in the curing of diseased Leaprous people, and nourishing them vpon such Almes as were giuen to them.

Concerning certaine *Italian* Gentlemen supposed the founders of this Order.

But it may be, that those Gentlemen *Italians* did reestablish this Charitie, for vsing care to diseased persons, afflicted with this incurable maladie; & that by example of the *Knights Hospitallers*, & them also of the *Holy Sepulcher*, they kept the passage waies, for safe guiding of Christian Pilgrims, to guard & defend them against the *Sarrazins*.

So then, seeing themselues encreased and augmented in number, they submitted to the Order of Saint *Benedict*, and tooke the long blacke Gowne, and (more to despight the *Sarrazins*) *La Croix Verde à Huict pointes, bordee de Blanc*. They made the vowes of Obedience, Pouertie and Chastitie, before the Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, called *William*, vnder the Reigne of *Baldwine*, fift of the name, King of *Ierusalem*, about the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred and fiftie.

Greene the onely delightfull colour of *Mahomet*.

In discoursing on the *Order of the Ship*, we obserued, how the *Turkes* doe hold a firme belief; that their great Prophet *Mahomet* tooke no meane delight, to goe clothed in Greene, and that his descendants, and the *Othomans* onely, might perticularly weare this Colour in the Sultane garments and *Turbants*. Which priuiledge was not permitted to any (whatsoeuer they were) except they could approue themselues of the Stocke of the *Othomans*, or of the race of that famous Imposture. It is the Colonell of the *Turkish* Empire, and Liuerie of the Great *Turke*; who when he will honor his fauourites with any perticular respect, he giueth them a golden Staffe, & a Greene Cornet; notes of absolute command in Iustice, and in the Warres. As did in Anno One thousand sixe hundred and foure, the *Grand Seigneur Hamet*, first of the name, to the *Bascha* of *Hungarie*, named *Hasan Vuzir*.

Great priuiledges giuen to this Order by Popes, and confirmed by other Popes.

The Popes Innocent, third of the name (the most learned Prelate that had bin before his time) *Honorius* the third, *Gregorie* the ninth and *Innocent* the fourth, gaue to this *Order of Saint Lazarus* very great Priueledges, and tooke them into their perticular protection. Which Priuiledges were after confirmed by the Popes *Alexander* the fourth, *Nicholas* the fourth, *Clement* the fourth, *Iohn* the two and twentieth, *Gregorie* the tenth, *Paul* the second, and by their Successours in the Holy Seate. The Buls of these Popes doe testifie the antiquitie of this *Order of Saint Lazarus*. And that vpon this occasion, Pope *Pius*, fift of the name, a native of *Alexandria* in *Lombardie*, by his Buls giuen in the second yeare of his Pontificalitie, and of Grace One thousand fiue hundred three score and twelue, the seauenth of the Calends of February, and third of the Ides of the moneth of August, called it *Antiquissimum Charitatis & Militiæ Christi Ordinem*. The Picture of this Pope is to be seene (very neerely resembling life) in one of the Glasse-windowes of the Vestrie of the *Iacobines* at *Paris*, and his Armes by him, which are *Bande d'Argent, & de Sable à six Pieces*, and vnder them is written. *Pius Quintus Papa, Alexandrinus, Ordinis Fratrum Prædicatorum.*

The Pope testifieth much to this Order.

The wealthie possessions of this Order.

This Order possessed great store of goods in *France*, vnder the Reigns of our most Christian Kings *Phillip Augustus*, Saint *Lewes*, and *Philip* the *Hardie*, Son to S. *Lewes*. And the Kings, *Phillip le Bel*, *Phillip le Long*, *Iohn* the *Vnluckie*, *Charles* the *Wise*, *Charles* the *Victorious*, *Lewes* the eleauenth, *Charles* the eight his Son, King of *France*, *Naples* and *Sicilie*; *Lewes* the twelfth, Father of the People, and King *Frances*, first of the name, all bestowing great gifts on this Order, or confirming those Priuiledges which they had. But in time (which bringeth all things to an end) the Kings of *England*, *Germanie* & of *Spaine*, and likewise the Estates of *Italie*, possessed themselues of the goods belonging to this Order, euery one in his place of power & Iurisdiction: So that the chiefe House thereof, established at *Boigny* by King *Lewes* the eleauenth, saw most

most of her limbs lopped off, & quite pared away, without any hope of reuiuing again.

And as for those goods, which they enioyed & possessed in *France*, they were carried away by the Knights of the *Rhodes*, by vertue of a Bull sent from Pope *Innocent*, eight of the name, in the yeare One thousand foure hundred fourscore & ten. Which Bull ioyned these *Knights of S. Lazarus*, & their Goods (in whatsoeuer parts of Christendome they were seated) to the said *Order of the Knights of Rhodes*, who maintained themselues in *France*, vntill the time of King *Henry* the Great, when Brother *Aymar de Chates*, Knight of *Malta*, and Gouernor of *Diepe* in *Normandie* (*Qui porroit d'Azur, à vne Fleur de Lys d'Or, Escartele de Gueulles à vne Clef d'Argent, au Chef de Malte*) forsooke the Title of great Maister of the *Order of S. Lazarus*, giuen afterward to *Philebert de Nereslang*, as we haue formerly said in the third Booke.

This Order ioyned to that of *Rhodes*.

And therefore I am enforced in this Chapter, to check and reproue what hath bin said in the former cited third Booke, printed in *France*: because the Compositor of that Worke, growing forgetfull both of himselfe and me, transposed many lines in the Pages 700. and 701. where he hath made Saint *Lewes* to be Author of this Order at *Boigny*; insted of his great Grandfather *Lewes* the yonger (tearmed the *Deuout* or *Pittifull*) seauenth of the name.

An Error committed in the *French* Impression.

CHAP. X.

Croix de l'Ordre de Sainct Catherine du Mont de Sinai.

The Crosse of the Order of Saint Catharine *of the Mount of* Sinai.

Saint *Cyprian*, in the Treatise which he wrote *De Montibus Sinai & Sion*, declareth the excellencie of those holy Mountaines, whereof the one is fortified in the holy Citie, honored with the misteries of our Redemption; and the other is planted in the confines of *Ægypt*, & deserts of the Rockie *Arabia*. On the top whereof, God gaue to the Prophet *Moyses*, the Tables of the Law, written by his own finger in Saphire Stone: so say the *Rabbines*, expounding the twentieth Chapter of *Exodus*. This Mount of *Sinai*, was the place where God pleased to speake face to face with *Moyses*, appearing to him in the forme of a burning Bush, or of a fluming Furnace, as it is said in the nineteenth Chapter of *Exodus*. *Totus Mons Sinai fumabat, eo quod descendisset Dominus Deus super eum in Igne, & ascenderet fumus ex eo quasi de fornace, erat que omnis mons terribilis. Mount Sinai was altogether on a smoake, because the Lord God descended vpon it in Fire: And the smoake thereof ascended as the smoake of a furnace, and the whole Mount quaked greatly.*

The Mountain where God conuersed with *Moyses*.

As much is said of the Mountaine *Horeb*, very neere to that of *Sinai*, where God appeared to *Moyses*, keeping the Sheepe of his Father in Law *Raguell*, the Priest of *Madian*. *Venit ad montem Horeb, apparuitque illi Dominus in flamma Ignis de medio Rubi. He came to the Mountaine Horeb, and the Angell of the Lord appeared vnto him, out of the midst of a Bush. Moyses* transported with admiration, to see the Bush wholly flaming, and yet not consuming it selfe by the long continuance; would haue approached neere to it, to vnderstand the cause. But God commanded him to put off his Shooes, and to goe barefoote vpon that Holy ground. *Ne appropinques huc. Solue calceamentum de pedibus tuis: locus enim in quo stas* Terra Sancta est.

Where Saint *Katharine* endured Martyrdome.

Vpon this Mount of *Horeb* it was, where the Angels tooke vp from the Citie of *Alexandria* in *Ægypt*, the Body of the holy Virgin Saint *Katharine*, named by the *Greekes Accatherine*: who had suffered Martyrdome in *Alexandria*, vnder the Empetour *Maximinus*, and not vnder the other Tyrant *Maxentius*.

In honor and reuerence of these holy Mountaines, Pilgrimes were very desirous to see them; after they had visited the holy places in *Ierusalem*, and of the holy-Land. I haue read all the Authors, & seen the Maps or Tables of them, that haue described the condition & estate of these Mountaines, the ground-plot whereof they touch not, but on one side onely, as do diuers *Italians* & *French*, and namely *Petrus Belonius* of *Mans*, in his Obseruations, and *Iacques de Villamont*, Knight of the Order of *Ierusalem*, a *Breton* Gentleman. *Qui porte en Banniere d'Argent au Lyon de Gueulles tenant vne Fleur de Lys de mesme, au Chef de Hierusalem.* I haue a great Manuscript in Folio, and the Maps of the Holy Land, with other Prouinces in those East parts, traced and figured by the hand and penne of my late Vncle by the Mothers side, Brother to my

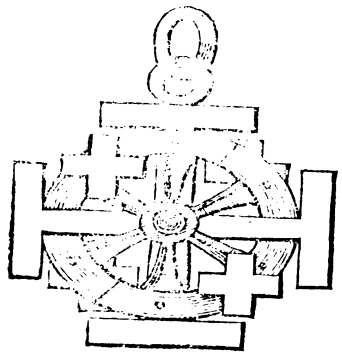
any Mother) and my Godfather Maister *Andrew Gallus, Parisian*, who (in his life time) was Councellour to the King, in his Court of Parliament at *Tolossa* (Deane of the Professours in the Vniuersitie of that place, the chiefest and most renowned of Christendome) the skilfullest and learnedst men of these times. Hee bare *d'Argent à trois Bandes de Gueulles à vn Aigle de Sable, Coronne d'Or pour Cimier sur son Timbre.*

There are represented the two sides of these two Mountaines *Sinai* and *Horeb*, with all the particular Stations made by the Patriarch *Moses*, while hee kept the Sheepe of his Father in Law: and likewise of the Children of *Israel*, after their admirable deliuerance from the bondage of *Ægypt*. The places of deuotion prepared by Christians, after our Sauiour and Redeemer Iesus Christ, are there likewise noated. In that part behinde the Mountaines, are the deserts of *Arabia*, and the Sea *Erithræum*, that is the Red Sea, otherwise called the *Arabian Gulfe*. Betweene the Mount named *Sinai*, and that of *Horeb*, this Sea maketh a Lake, and a Port or Haven of good receite, neere to a small Towne called *Raithu*, inhabited with *Moores, Turkes* and Christians: where sometime stood an hundred and fiftie Houses, with a faire Monasterie, framed by *Calogers* of Mount *Sinai*. There it was, that the Children of Israel found the twelue Wells, and the threescore and ten Palmes, whereof mention is made in the fifteenth Chapter of *Exodus*. At the beginning of the Red Sea, is the Towne and Port of *Suez*, with a strong Castell, built by the Great Turke *Sultan Soliman*, and where he prepared a Fleete, to goe against the *Portugals*, who were become Masters of the Ile of *Ormus*, and of the East *Indiaes*.

Religious men of diuers sorts in the Mountaine of Horeb.

In elder times, the Monasterie of Saint *Katharine* of the Mountaine *Sinai* where reposeth the body of that holy Virgin, behinde, or vnder the high Altar, was stored with a good number of Monkes, whom they called *Caloyers*, after the manner of the *Grecians*: but now at this present (thorow necessitie) it is all, if there be two or three there ordinarly. The Pilgrimes of *Ierusalem*, going to the Mountaine *Sinai*, were entertained by these *Caloyers* of Saint *Katharines* Monasterie, and after Masse, and receiuing the holy Communion, the principall or chiefe *Caloyer*, made them *Knights of the Order of Saint Katharine*, vpon her Sepulcher or Tomb; vsing the same Interrogatories, Demands and Ceremonies, as those performed at the *Holy Sepulchre* in *Ierusalem*, which you haue heard already

The Monasterie of Saint Katherine of Mount Sinai.



The Habite and Cloake worne by these Knights of this Order.

These Knights ought to weare Cloakes, and on the left side, aboue the Crosse of *Ierusalem*, the markes of the Martyrdome of Saint *Katharine*, to wit; *Ambecle pierced with six Spokes of Gueules, mailled with Siluer. Vne Roue percee à Six Rais de Gueulles clouee d'Argent.* Like as it is here figured, by one of the same forme, which heretofore was giuen me by the deceased *Messire Claude Daubray*, who (in his life time) was Knight of both the said Orders, *Of the holy Sepulcher of Ierusalem*, and of Saint *Katharine of Mount Sinai*, Councellour, Notarie and Secretarie to the King, House and Crowne of *France*, Baron *de Bruyeres le Chastean* and Lord Maior of the Citie of *Paris*, a man of much honor and singular experience. With him I haue diuers times conferred, concerning his Voyages and obseruations, as well at *Constantinople*, where he had sojourned very long time, as to other Prouinces in the East parts; and namely in *Aegypt*, which he had past quite thorow, euen from the Port of *Suez*, so farre as to *Ierusalem*. To preserue the memorie of him to posteritie, we will describe his Armes, and the Genealogie of his Children. *Il Portoit d'Argent à Trois Trefles de Sable, deux en Chef, & vn en pointe, & vn Croissant de Gueulles en Abisme.*

A Crosse like vnto that which is worne by the Knights of this Order.

By Madam *Mary l'Alemant* his wife, *Qui portoit de Gueulles au Cheuron d'Or, à Trois Roses d'Argent, Deux en Chef & vne en Pointe*, he hath left two Daughters & one Son.

Peter

Peter Daubray, who (meerely in deuotion) forsooke the World, and Riches of his house, to become a Chartreux Monke, and is Proctour *de Bourfontaine.*

The Daughters are named

Dame Mary Daubray, Wife to *Messire Louis de Cirier*, Lord of *Neufchelles, Du Plessis sur Autueil; de la Ville neufue, Pisselen, Truine, Sainct George*, and *Baron de Bruyeres le Chastean*, by meanes of his Wife. The same *Le Cirier Porte d'Azur à trois Licornes d'Or, Cimier Vne corne naissante d'Or.*

And the other Daughter is

Dame Margaret Daubray, Wife to *Messire Francois Pot*, Lord of *Rhodes*, and of *Chemaux*, Knight and Pronoist of both the Orders, Great Maister of the Ceremonies of *France*, Prime Enquire Carter, and Bugle-Bearer to the King: whom we haue said to beare *Pot de sable Vuide d'azur au Lambeau de Gueulles.* It is impossible, but that a good Tree should bring forth good fruite, and a worthy man, to haue Children that shall follow his stepps.

Beatus ille vir qui non iuit in consilium impiorum, & cum societate Deriſorum non sedit. Sed in lege Domini voluntas eius, & in lege eius Nocte Die que meditabitur. Erit tanquam Arbor quæ plantata est super riuos Aquarum, cuius fructus maturi sent in tempore suo, folia eius non defluant, & omne germen eius quod germinat, grana sert, & proficit. Non sic impij, sed sicut pulueris quem proijcit Ventus. Propterea non consistent impij in die Iudicij neque Peccatores in societate Iustorum. Quoniam manifesta est via Dominus viri Iusti, & Via Impiorum perdet.

Blessed is the man, that hath not walked in the Councell of the vngodly, nor stand in the way of sinners, and hath not sit in the seat of the scornfull. But his delight is in the Law of the Lord, and in his Law will hee exercise himselfe day and night. And he shall be like a tree planted by the waters side: that will bring forth his fruit in due season. His leafe also shall not wither: and looke whatsoeuer he doth, it shall prosper. As for the vngodly it is not so with them: but they are like the chaffe, which the winde scattereth away from the face of the earth. Therefore the vngodly shall not bee able to stand in the iudgement: neither the sinners in the Congregation of the righteous. But the Lord knoweth the way of the righteous, and the way of the vngodly shall perish.

The feare the Blessings, which it pleased God to bestow vpon a good man, and to multiply his race vpon the face of the Earth.

CHAP. XI.

Of other Militarie Orders, that were in the Holy Land.

Autres Ordres Militaires de la Terre-Sainde.

I Finde, that vnder the first Latine Kings of *Ierusalem*, there were many other Orders of Knighthood: which are vtterly lost, as well as the rest, and there remaineth no more but an obscure memory of them. Vnder the Reignes of the second and third Kings, two Castells were built, which caried one and the same name of *Monte-Ioye*. The First was betweene *Ramah* and the Holy-Citty, on the pointe of the Mountaine, from whence the Pilgrimes doe discouer the Citty of *Ierusalem*: And there they dismount from their Horsses, putting off their Hose and Shooes, and descend downe bare footed so farre as to the Conuent of the *Cordeliers*, or Gray Fryers.

Of two Castells in the Holy-Land.

The first Castell.

The other Castell was on the Mountaines of *Iudea*, aboue the Citty of *Dauid*, called *Bathleem*, otherwise named *Ephrata*, neere to the Tower of *Ader*, where the Angell deliuered the tydings of Ioy and Reioycing to the Sheepheards, concerning the Birth of the Worlds Sauiour. At the same place where the Angels appeared, the first Christians erected there an Oratorie, and place of deuotion, which they named *Ad Tres Pastores*: in memory of Three Sheepheards, which went to worship the King of Kings, in a Stable hewen out of a Rocke. You heare what is said by the Learned, Cardinall *Baronius*, in the First Tome of his Ecclesiasticall Annales.

The second Castell.

Is

Knights Warriours against the *Arabes*, nam'd Brethren of *Mont Ioye*. De Monte Gaudio.

In these two Castels were (for defence against the courses of the *Alarbes*) Knights, who had the name of their Garrison, wearing red Cloakes, & on their Breast a white Star with fiue Rayes or beames. This Order was approued by Pope *Alexander*, third of the name, who gaue them the Rule of Saint *Augustine*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred and fourescore.

Names giuen according to the places where they dwelt.

Being driuen out of *Syria* (as well as the other were) they obtained dwelling in diuers Prouinces of *Europe*; and namely in the Kingdomes of *Castile*, and of *Valentia la Grande*, where they were acknowledged vnder diuers appellations, answerable to the places where they dwelt. In *Castile* they were called *The Knights of Monfrac*, by reason that the place so named was giuen them by King *Ferdinand*, tearmed the Saint, in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred twenty and one. In *Castile* likewise they were named *The Knights of Trugillo*, a Citie which was giuen by the King of *Castile*, *Alphonso* the ninth, in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred twentie and eight, with the Lands of *Sancta Cruz*, *Zuferola*, *Cabana*, *Albata*, and other more beside.

Their first name in the Holy-Land.

In *Arragon* and *Valencia* they possessed Lands likewise, but were there called by their auncient denomination: *Los Freyles de Mongoia*; *Brethren of the Mount of Ioye*. In *Spaine* there is a memory of a great Maister of this Order, named the Count *Rodrigo Goncales*. *Maestre de Monfrac de la Orden de Monte-Gaudio*. The *Templers* possessed themselues of those Lands which they had in *Arragon*, and in *Valencia*. In following time, the Brethren of *Monfrac*, ioyned themselues with the Brethren of the Order of *Calatrana*, and they of *Trugillo*, with them of the Order of *Alcantara*, by which meanes the memory of this Order is lost; onely we haue some noates left in the writings of *Hieronymus Romanus*, in his Common-wealth; and by *Franciscum Radez d Andrada*, in his Chronicle of the Order of *Alcantara*. Next to the *Order of Mont-Ioye*, march them of

The Knights of Saint *Iohn* of *Acres*.

Saint *Iohn* of *Acres*, who at the beginning (euen as the other did) imployed their paines in curing diseased Pilgrimes, who, after they had recouered health, they kept them with them, to guard and defend the insultings of the Infidell *Alarbes*. They followed the rule of Saint *Augustine*; had Saint *Iohn* Baptist for their Patron, ware a Black Habite, and a White Crosse *Pattee*. After the taking of *Acres*, they arriued in *Spayne*, in the time of *Alphonso* the Astrologer, who gaue them (for abyding) diuers places in *Castille*. The Learned *Tostatus*, in his Commentaries vpon *Iosuah*, the Sixteene and Nineteene Chapters, obserueth their arriuall, decadence and ending: but concerning the birth and originall of this Order, it is vncertaine and doubtfull.

Knights of the Order of Saint *Thomas*, Instituted by King *Richard* of *England*, the first.

The Order of Saint Thomas, that was Instituted by the King of *England*, *Richard* Sirnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, after the surprisall of *Acres*. And being of the *English* Nation, they held the Rule of Saint *Augustine*, wore a White Habite, and a full Red Crosse, charged in the midst with a White Scallop. They tooke for their Patrone (as I haue heard) the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Metropolitane of *England*, *Thomas Becket*, who suffered Martyrdome (as his fauourours say) vnder the King of *England Henry*, Second of the Name, the Nine and Twentieth day of December, in the yeare of Grace One thousand, one hundred, threescore and fifteene. He bare for Armes *De Sable a vn Lyon d'Argent*, and his successours, dwelling at *Rouen* and at *Paris* (after the taking of *Pontoise* against the *Englinsh*, vnder King *Charles* the Seauenth and Victorious:) caried *D'Azur a Trois Tours d'Or Massonnes de Sable, Deux en Chef, et vne en Pointe*, as we haue said in our Historie of *Nauarre*.

Knights of Sainte *Gerion*.

The Order of Saint Gerion, who suffered Martyrdome at *Cologne* in *Germanie*, with Three hundred and eighteene in his Company, during the Persecution of the Church, excited by the Emperour *Maximianus*. It was Instituted by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*: but others say by *Frederick* the Second, and composed only of Gentlemen of the *Germaine* Nation. The Knights of this Order, held the Rule of Saint *Augustine*; wore a White Habite, and a full Black Crosse.

Knights of Saint *Blaze*.

The Order of Saint Blaze, Bishop of *Armenia*, Martyred vnder the Emperour *Diocletian*. It was at the height, when the Kings of *Armenia*, of the Illustrious House of *Luzignan*, kept their Court and Iurisdiction in the Citty of *Acres*. And the Knights of

of this Order, were Officers and Seruants to the Kings of *Armenia*, knowne to be of their traine and House; by their habite of Skye-Couller, and a Crosse of Gold worne vpon their breasts, which serued as a *Brizure* to the Lyon of *Armenia*, caried by them of *Luzignan*, as we haue said: in stead of the Auncient Shield, belonging to the Kings and Princes of *Armenia*, which was *D'Azur a Trois Testes de Roynes Amazones d'Argent, Coronnees d'Or. 2. et. 1.*

CHAP. XII.

Orders of the East: And likewise of the East and West Indians.

Ordres du Leuant, Indes Orientales, & Occidentales.

THE Lord of *Ioinuille* in *Champaigne*, obserueth in the Three and Thirtieth Chapter, of the life of the Great King Saint *Lewes*, that the Soldane of *Babylon*, and of *Syria*, otherwise called *Syria*; had Knights that were named *De la Halequa*, that is to say, *Knights of the Chamber of Honour*. These were the strength of the Soldanes, as are the *Gemissaires*, or *Gingissqueres* of the Great *Turke*. These were children (issued and descended of Slaues brought from the East, and solde in *Egypt*) whom the Soldanes caused to be nourished and carefully educated, and from their tender youth, to bend Bowes, and shoote in them: And according as they grew and encreased in strength and yeares, so they were inured to stronger Armes. Being in the floure of their time, they were enrouled among the Knights of Honor and admitted to guard the Body and person of the Soldane: and then they were called *Les Baboris du Souldan*, who made them Knights.

Knights of the Chamber of Honour created by the Soldane of *Babylon*.

The *Souldanes* or *Sultanes*, and *Tsultans* (that is to say *Seigneurs*) of *Babylon* and of *Syria*, beare in Armes, *L'Escu d'Or, au Chef de Gueules, a Deux Faces de mesme: La Premiere Bretesse du coste du Chef seu'ement; et Autre Haut et Bas.*

The Armes of the Soldanes.

The Knights *de la Halequa Portoient tous l'Escu d'Or*: But it was distinguished from that of the *Grand Seigneur*, by diuers Charges and Brizures. As namely by Bendes, or by Barres of *Gueules*: Or by Fowles, Roses, Griffons or other Creatures, according as they were deuised.

Concerning the East Indians.

Of the great Kingdome of *China*.

IN the East *Indians* is the mighty Kingdome of *China*, the scituation whereof is very great, vnder the Tropick of *Cancer*, the one side thereof extendeth it selfe to the North-East, and to the South-East, the length of Foure hundred miles. It is limitted or bounded on the Meridionall or Southside, with the Kingdome of *Cochinchina*; On the West or Sunne setting, it hath *Tartaria* and *Persia*. *Ptolomie* acknowledgeth this flourishing Kingdome, vnder the name of *Sinarum Populi*, in imitation of Geographers that went before him. And they more moderne, haue comprehended this Kingdome of *China* (the best pollicied and gouerned in the World) to be properly named the Kingdome of *Mangi*, vnder the name of *Cathay*, common (by ignorance) to *Tartaria*, at such time as the *Chinchis Cham* had in his power and command, the Realmes of *Persia*, and of *Prester Iohn*, wholly exterminated (in his time) from all memory and reuiuing againe. For it is a populare errour, to say that there is such a State in the World, confounding it with the *Great Negus*, Lord of *Athiopia*, where the *Grand-Cham* of *Tartaria* neuer came to set footing.

The Chinchis Cham Gouernour of *Persia*, &c.

The Kingdome of *China*, deuided from *Tataria* by a List or threading of Mountaines, containing Fiue hundred miles in length (the places of accesse and passage being enclosed with walls) and containeth Fifteene Prouinces, as namely *Fuquiem*, *Olam*, *Sinfay*, *Susan*, *Vansay*, *Oquemain*, *Aucheo*, *Huna*, *Quanton*, *Quicheo*, *Chequeam*, *Saxi*, *Aynson*, *Tolanchia*, and *Paquia*. The first Thirteene of these are eche one gouerned by a Vice-Roy, the two beside, they haue no other Gouernour then the King: in regard that these two last Prouinces *Tolanchin* and *Paquin*, are Frontiers to *Tartaria*, the Great *Chams* whereof haue heertofore conquered, yea, and gouerned *China*, in the time of *Tamberlaine*, King of the *Parthians*, and Son in Law to the Great *Cham*.

The fifteene Prouinces of *China*.

The

Knights Warriours against the *Alarbes*, named Brethren of *Mont Ioye De Monte Gaudio*.

In these two Castels were (for defence against the courses of the *Alarbes*) Knights, who had the name of their Garrison, wearing red Cloakes, & on their Breast a white Star with fiue Rayes or beames. This Order was approued by Pope *Alexander*, third of the name, who gaue them the Rule of Saint *Augustine*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred and fourescore.

Names giuen according to the places where they dwelt.

Being driuen out of *Syria* (as well as the other were) they obtained dwelling in diuers Prouinces of *Europe*; and namely in the Kingdomes of *Castile*, and of *Valencia la Grande*, where they were acknowledged vnder diuers appellations, answerable to the places where they dwelt. In *Castile* they were called *The Knights of Monfrac*, by reason that the place so named was giuen them by King *Ferdinand*, tearmed the Saint, in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred twenty and one. In *Castile* likewise they were named *The Knights of Trugillo*, a Citie which was giuen by the King of *Castile*, *Alphonso* the ninth, in the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred twentie and eight, with the Lands of *Sancta Cruz*, *Zuferola*, *Cabana*, *Albata*, and other more beside.

Their first name in the Holy-Land.

In *Arragon* and *Valencia* they possessed Lands likewise, but were there called by their auncient denomination: *Los Freyles de Mongoia*; *Brethren of the Mount of Ioye*. In *Spaine* there is a memory of a great Maister of this Order, named the Count *Rodrigo Goncales*. *Maestre de Monfrac de la Orden de Monte-Gaudio*. The *Templers* possessed themselues of those Lands which they had in *Arragon*, and in *Valencia*. In following time, the Brethren of *Monfrac*, ioyned themselues with the Brethren of the Order of *Calatrana*, and they of *Trugillo*, with them of the Order of *Alcantara*, by which meanes the memory of this Order is lost; onely we haue some noates left in the writings of *Hieronymus Romanus*, in his Common-wealth; and by *Franciscus Radez d Andrada*, in his Chronicle of the Order of *Alcantara*. Next to the *Order of Mont-Ioye*, march them of

The Knights of Saint *Iohn* of *Acres*.

Saint *Iohn* of *Acres*, who at the beginning (euen as the other did) imployed their paines in curing diseased Pilgrimes, who, after they had recouered health, they kept them with them, to guard and defend the insultings of the Infidell *Alarbes*. They followed the rule of Saint *Augustine*; had Saint *Iohn* Baptist for their Patron, ware a Black Habite, and a White Crosse *Fattee*. After the taking of *Acres*, they arriued in *Spayne*, in the time of *Alphonso* the Astrologer, who gaue them (for abyding) diuers places in *Castille*. The Learned *Tostatus*, in his Commentaries vpon *Iosuah*, the Sixteene and Nineteene Chapters, obserueth their arriuall, decadence and ending: but concerning the birth and originall of this Order, it is vncertaine and doubtfull.

Knights of the Order of Saint *Thomas*, Instituted by King *Richard* of *England*, the first.

The Order of Saint Thomas, that was Instituted by the King of *England*, *Richard* Sirnamed *Cocur de Lyon*, after the surprisall of *Acres*. And being of the *English* Nation, they held the Rule of Saint *Augustine*, wore a White Habite, and a full Red Crosse, charged in the midst with a White Scallop. They tooke for their Patrone (as I haue heard) the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Metropolitane of *England*, *Thomas Becket*, who suffered Martyrdome (as his fauourours say) vnder the King of *England Henry*, Second of the Name, the Nine and Twentieth day of December, in the yeare of Grace One thousand, one hundred, threescore and fifteene. He bare for Armes *De Sable a vn Lyon d'Argent*, and his successours, dwelling at *Rouen* and at *Paris* (after the taking of *Pontoise* against the *Englinsh*, vnder King *Charles* the Seauenth and Victorious:) caried *D'Azur a Trois Tours d'Or Massonnes de Sable, Deuxen Chef, et vne en Poinéte*, as we haue said in our Historie of *Nauarre*.

Knights of Sainte *Gerion*.

The Order of Saint Gerion, who suffered Martyrdome at *Cologne* in *Germanie*, with Three hundred and eighteene in his Company, during the Persecution of the Church, excited by the Emperour *Maximianus*. It was Instituted by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*: but others say by *Frederick* the Second, and composed only of Gentlemen of the *Germaine* Nation. The Knights of this Order, held the Rule of Saint *Augustine*; wore a White Habite, and a full Black Crosse.

Knights of Saint *Blaze*.

The Order of Saint Blaze, Bishop of *Armenia*, Martyred vnder the Emperour *Diocletian*. It was at the height, when the Kings of *Armenia*, of the Illustrious House of *Luzignan*, kept their Court and Iurisdiction in the Citty of *Acres*. And the Knights of

of this Order, were Officers and Seruants to the Kings of *Armenia*, knowne to be of their traine and House; by their habite of Skye-Coullor, and a Crosse of Gold worne vpon their breasts, which serued as a *Brizure* to the Lyon of *Armenia*, caried by them of *Luzignan*, as we haue said: in stead of the Auncient Shield, belonging to the Kings and Princes of *Armenia*, which was *D'Azur à Trois Testes de Roynes Amazones d Argent, Coronnees d'Or. 2. et. 1.*

CHAP. XII.

Orders of the East: And likewise of the East and West Indiaes.

Ordres du Leuant, Indes Orientales, & Occidentales.

THe Lord of *Ioinuille* in *Champaigne*, obserueth in the Three and Thirtieth Chapter, of the life of the Great King Saint *Lewes*, that the Soldane of *Babylon*, and of *Suria*, otherwise called *Syria*; had Knights that were named *De la Halequa*, that is to say, *Knights of the Chamber of Honour*. These were the strength of the Soldanes, as are the *Gemissaires*, or *Gingisqueres* of the Great *Turke*. These were children (issued and descended of Slaues brought from the East, and solde in *Egypt*) whom the Soldanes caused to be nourished and carefully educated, and from their tender youth, to bend Bowes, and shoote in them: And according as they grew and encreased in strength and yeares, so they were inured to stronger Armes. Being in the floure of their time, they were enrouled among the Knights of Honor and admitted to guard the Body and person of the Soldane: and then they were called *Les Bahoris du Souldan*, who made them Knights.

Knights of the Chamber of Honour created by the Soldanes of *Babylon*.

The *Souldanes* or *Sultanes*, and *Tsultans* (that is to say *Seigneurs*) of *Babylon* and of *Suria*, beare in Armes, *L'Escu d'Or, au Chef de Gueules, a Deux Faces de mesme: La Premiere Bretesse du coste du Chef seu'ement; et Autre Haut et Bas.*

The Armes of the Soldanes.

The Knights *de la Halequa Portoient tous l'Escu d'Or*: But it was distinguished from that of the *Grand Seigneur*, by diuers Charges and Brizures. As namely by Bendes, or by Barres of *Gueules*: Or by Fowles, Roses, Griffons or other Creatures, according as they were deuised.

Concerning the East Indiaes.

Of the great Kingdome of *China*.

IN the East *Indiaes* is the mighty Kingdome of *China*, the scituation whereof is very great, vnder the Tropick of *Cancer*, the one side thereof extendeth it selfe to the North-East, and to the South-East, the length of Foure hundred miles. It is limitted or bounded on the Meridionall or Southside, with the Kingdome of *Cochinchina*; On the West or Sunne setting, it hath *Tartaria* and *Persia*. *Ptolomie* acknowledgeth this flourishing Kingdome, vnder the name of *Sinarum Populi*, in imitation of Geographers that went before him. And they more moderne, haue comprehended this Kingdome of *China* (the best pollicied and gouerned in the World) to be properly named the Kingdome of *Mangi*, vnder the name of *Cathay*, common (by ignorance) to *Tartaria*, at such time as the *Chinchis Cham* had in his power and command, the Realmes of *Persia*, and of *Prester Iohn*, wholly exterminated (in his time) from all memory and reuiuing againe. For it is a populare errour, to say that there is such a State in the World, confounding it with the *Great Negus*, Lord of *Athiopia*, where the *Grand-Cham* of *Tartaria* never came to set footing.

The Chinchis Cham Gouernour of *Persia*, &c.

The Kingdome of *China*, deuided from *Tataria* by a List or threading of Mountaines, containing Fiue hundred miles in length (the places of accesse and passage being enclosed with walls) and containeth Fifteene Prouinces, as namely *Foquiem*, *Olam*, *Sinfay*, *Susan*, *Vansay*, *Oquemun*, *Aucheo*, *Hona*, *Quanton*, *Quicheo*, *Chequeam*, *Saxi*, *Aynan*, *Tolanchia*, and *Paquia*. The first Thirteene of these are eche one gouerned by a Vice-Roy, the two beside, they haue no other Gouernour then the King: in regard that these two last Prouinces *Tolanchin* and *Paquin*, are Frontiers to *Tartaria*, the Great *Chams* whereof haue heertofore conquered, yea, and gouerned *China*, in the time of *Tamberlaine*, King of the *Parthians*, and Son in Law to the Great *Cham*. The

The fifteene Prouinces of *China*.

The Capitall or chiefe Citty, where the King maketh his ordenary abyding, is in the language of the Countrey) called *Xuntien*, and by two other names *Taybyn*, and *Quinzay*; and by them of *Malabar* and *Iapan*, *Cassagale*, signifying, both in the one and other tongue, *The Citty of Heauen*: becausse the ordenary title, which those people doe attribute to the Kings of *China*, is *Lord of the World*, and *Sonne of Heauen*. And therfore his Armes and Banners are whollie, *D'vn beau Bleu-Celeste, & d'Azur de Roche d'Inde a vn Croissant tourne en C. d'Argent, a vne Estoile d'Or en Face.*

The King of China Lord of th World, and Sonne of Heaue :. His Armes.

And these Armes are to be seene painted on the Gates of the Citties of *China*, which are a great many in number. But concerning the Armes of the Kingdome in generall; they are *D'Argent, a Trois Testes d'Hommes de Sable, au Buz, et haut de la Poictrine de Gueules, Deux en Chef, et vne en Poincte.*

The Armes of the Kingdome.

The Cit y of *Quinzay* contayneth in length, so much ground as a Knight (well mounted) can ride ouer in a day. And the greatnesse thereof is described by *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, in the Threescore and Fourth Chapter of his Second Booke: And by *Ioannes Gonsalez de Mendoza*, and others beside, who haue written on the wonders of this mighty Kingdome. Not forgetting our *Frenche Lucretius*, *William de Saluste*, Lord *du Bartas*, in the ending of the Fourth day of his First *Weeke*.

Celuy qui dans l'enclos des Murs de Cassagale
Foule a sec de ses Pieds la Mer Orientale,
Et qui passe, en suiuant tous ses beaux Carrefours,
Et Douze Mille Ponts, & Douze Mille Tours.

Du Bartas sur la sixiesme Iour de sa Premiere Sepmaine.

Those that surueighing mighty Cassagalle,
within the circuit of her spacious wall,
Doe drie foote dance on th'Orientall Seas,
And passe in all her goodly crossing wayes,
And statelie streetes, fronted with sumptuous Bowers;
Twelue Thousand Bridges and Twelue Thousand Towers.

Becausse this Citty is built vpon a Lake, after the same manner as is *Venice*, and other the like Citties.

Distat ad Vrbe Singui quinque dierum spatio alta Vrbs insignis nomine Quinsai, *quod sonat Ciuitatem Cœli, & est tam magna, vt maior in orbe non putetur. Et ego Marcus* (the Venetian *Marcus Paulus* had seene the whole extendure of *China*, and the Indiaes) *fui in hac Ciuitate, & omnia diligenter inspraui, aduertens Consuetudines eius, & mores populi, & quæ illic viderim breuiter, & fideliter referam. Continet circuitus huius Vrbis in gyro Milliaria circiter Centum: Pontes vero lapideos habet Duodecim Millia, eosque tam altos, vt Naues magnæ, erecto malo, pertransire possint. Vnde autem Ciuitatis est in loco paludoso, fere vt Venetiæ. Distat hæc Vrbs Orientem versus ab Oceano Viginti quinque Milliaribus, ibi in littore Maris sita est Ciuitas* Catsu, *Portus commodissimus, ad quem locum infinitæ Naues conueniunt ex India, & alijs regionibus. A Quinsai vero transit fluuius ad Portum illum, per quem magna vis mercium adducitur.*

Now, becausse Latine is not familiare to euery vnderstanding; as my Authour hath bestowed a *Frenche* version of it, so haue I done the like in *English*.

The words alleadged by *Marcus Paulus Venetus.*

There are Fiue dayes iourney of ground in distance, betweene the Citty of Singuisu, *so farre as to another famous and renowned Citty, which is called* Quinzai, *that is to say, The Citty of Heauen. It is of such great extendure, that men doe verily beleeue, there is not the like of it in this World. I speake it, becausse I haue seene it from the one end to the other, and obserued the behauiour and manner of life of the dwellers therein: Wherefore I will briefely and faithfully make report, of that which I haue knowne. The Circuite or Guirdling thereof,* is an Hundred Thousand paces (*allowing Foure Thousand paces to a Mile, it would be fiue and twenty miles about*) *It hath Twelue Thousand Bridges of goodly Stone, the Arches whereof are mounted so high; that Shippes, doe easily passe vnder them, with full spread Sayles. The Plantation or seating is in a Marish, like to that of* Venice. *From this Citty bending towards the East, there are Fiue and Twenty Thousand paces, so farre as to the Ocean Sea, on the shoare whereof is seated the Citty of* Canton fu (*the names of the Citties of* China, *haue euermore their ending in this Sillable* Fu, *which signifieth a Citty in the Chinoise language*) *garnished with a goodly Porte or Harbour: And therefore*

Shippes

shippes of Persia, Ormus, Goa, Cochin, Cananor, *from the* Phillippies, Iapan, Sian, *and from other places of the East Indiaes, laden with all kinds of goods, doe arriue there in plentifull manner. From* Quinzay *runneth a great Riuer, and commeth to discharge it selfe at this Hauen of* Canton fu: *by meanes whereof, shippes and other Vessells (laden with Merchandises) doe come to* Quinzai.

All the Cities of *China* haue their Vniuersities, flourishing with Learned Professours; who doe teach all the partes of Philosophie and the Mathematicks. And their last Studie is the Lawes and Customes of the Countrey, the best gouerned of any in the world. Mechanicall Artes are there in full perfection; the whole world trauaileth thither, and no idle or slothfull person is to be seene there begging for sustenance, vpon paine of death.

Flourishing Vniuersities in the Cities of *China*.

The degrees of Honor, are the dignity of Doctours and Licentiates, some in Philosophie, and others in the Mathematicks: but the greatest degree of all, is to be Doctour of the Lawes, the most honored in *China*, next after the *Mandarins*.

Concerning degrees of Honor.

The Doctours are named *Loitias*, who sit and are caried in Seates, couered with Veyles and Canopies of Silke, embrodered and wouen with Gold and Siluer. And looke how farre these Doctours haue proceeded in Learning and Knowledge, so much the more are they aduanced in Honour and dignity: For (according to their capacity) they attaine to the Gouernment of the Prouinces, and are made *Manadarins*, that is to say, *Knights to the Lord*.

The dignity of Doctours.

Knights of the Segnorie.

Out of the number of these *Loitias*, the most skillfull of them are commanded to the Court, where the King giueth them the title of Knights, and the noate of *Mandarins* that is appointed Hatt or Bonnet of red silke, faced with rich Hermines or Martins zublins, whereon is fastened a Star of Golde, with six Rayes or Beames, which is the marke and noate of Knight-hood. Vnder this Bonnet is a vaile of crimsen silke broched with Gold and Siluer, which descendeth downe vpon the shoulders, and at the poynt of this Hood or Chaperon of the Knight, is a great Tassell or button of Golde, the longe Robe traileth downe to the foote, being of fine costly Silke, and bordered beneath with *Limbes* of Gold and Siluer: the rest is embrodered with all kindes of Creatures and flowers, shaped according to life. And a great Girdle of Gold, curiously set with precious Stones, which Girdle commeth three times about the body, and (in stead of Stockings) Guilded Buskins.

The Bonnet and Habite of Knighthood.

The King, in giuing his *Order of the Starre* to these *Loitias*, maketh them thereby *Mandarins*, that is to say, Counts, Gouernours and Vice-Royes of Prouinces (beside that of their birth) where they haue their Palace Royall. In the Hall of Presence, is the Image or Picture of the King, before which the *Mandarin* falleth on his Knees, and prostrateth himselfe with all reuerence, and before he presumeth to sit downe in the Seate of Iustice. Such Honor and Reuerence is giuen to these *Loitias* and *Mandarins*; as no man speaketh to any of them, but vpon his knees, and Requests are made to them by writing, as they vsed to doe to the *Romaine* Emperours. When they passe thorow the Streetes, all the people withdraw themselues aside, to make them passage, and humbly fall vpon their knees. Let vs now crosse the Ocean Sea from the Porte of *Cantonfu*, and sayle to the coast of *Malabar*, in the East-Indiaes.

The Kings Order of the Starre to his Loitias and Mandarins.

Malabar extendeth it selfe from *Barcelos*, so farre as to the Cape of *Commorino*, and in this extendure are the Kingdomes of *Cananor*, *Montingue*, *Badara*, *Tananour*, *Cochin*, *Colan*, *Commorino*, and of *Calecut*, which is the principall Kingdome, and the King thereof beareth the title of *Samorin*, that is to say Emperour, in the vsuall language of *Malabar*.

Concerning *Malabar* and her seuerall Kingdomes.

These *Indiaes* are inhabited by three kinds of people; the *Bramenes* (in the Auncient Geographers called *Brachmanes*) which are Priests, of the most Noble and Auncient race in these East *Indies*. They abstaine from the vse of any Wine, and from all things that hath life; sustaining themselues with Fruits, Hearbs and Whitemeates, and drinking nothing but cleare Water. They neuer make alliance or medling with any, but such as are *Bramenes*, and marry not, but once in their life time. They goe habited in cloth of *Cotton*, with White Turbants on their Heades, and weare Red Shoes vpon their Feete.

Three seuerall kinds of people inhabiting these Indiaes.

Of the *Bramenes* or *Brachmanes*.

The

Their distinguishing from other people.

The only marke or noate, which maketh them to be discerned from other people; is a Cordon of three twisted Cotten Threads, which they weare about their naked bodies, like to the Knights of the *Bande* in *Spayne*. This Scarffe or kind of *Bauldrick*, is as an Order, *which is giuen to them in their Temples and Pagodes*, with great expences and solemnity.

Degradation from Nobility.

The greatest despight or iniurie, that can be done to a *Bramene*; is to breake his Scarffe or Cordon, the outward noate of his Nobility. He must then haue an other giuen him, with the selfe same Ceremony as the first was. He being attainted and conuinced of any Crime, punishable with a noate of infamy: is to haue his Scarffe and Cordon taken from him, as degrading him from Nobility; this is first done vnto him, before he be banished from the Company, and declared to be but a Coman or Clowne.

The Male children of these *Bramenes*, hauing attained to the Age of Seauen yeares; are brought to the *Pagode*, where the Chiefe High Priest putteth vpon their naked skinne, a Scarffe or Belt of two fingers breadth, made of the hide of a wilde Asse, which in their Indian and *Malabar* language, they tearme *Cressuamengam*. Before the receiuing of this Ceremony: they are not permitted to feede on [b] *Betell*: And from this time forward, they are knowne to be Sonnes of the *Bramenes*, and then they are enstructed to manage Armes, or to attend on the seruice and worship of their Idolls, because they haue no other imployment, but one of these two vocations, howbeit some haue written, that they addict themselues to Merchandise.

[b] An Indian Sallad herbe resembling the Gilliflowre plant, or hartland Pepper.

How they deale with their young Squires.

The young Squires doe weare this Belt or Scarffe, crossing the body vnder the left Arme, vntill the age of foureteene yeares, and then they are made *Bramenes*, with infinite sounding of Trumpets and Solemnities; taking then from them the Leather Belt, to put on the Scarffe of three Cotten Threads.

Concerning the Samorin.

The *Samorin* is of the *Bramene* race, & weareth this *Cordon*, as Chiefe of this Order, which they hold to be the most Noble in all the World, as also that Race, which hath continued aboue Twelue Thousand yeares, if we please to beleeue their Annales.

Crowes held in great reuerence.

The Kings of *Calecuth* beare for Armes, *L'Escu d'Argent seme sans nombre de Cornilles de Sable* Birdes which they hold in such reuerence (as being the Symbole of very long life) that they are fed and nourished, with the releeses and recisions of the *Samorins* Table (who feedeth on nothing but Fruits) by the hands of the *Bramenes*, who performe this seruice themselues.

Nayres the second sort of people.

The Second condition of the Inhabitants in *Malabar*, are the *Nayres*; all of Noble Extraction, and meddle in no alliance but among themselues. They giue themselues wholly to Armes, and haue not any other exercise: being alwayes imployed in the Kings seruice, neere about his person, or else in his Warres. The Heads and Principall men of these *Nayres*, are honored by the *Samorin*, giuing them a great Bracelet of Gold vpon the right Arme, which is the noate of the Second Order of Knighthood in the East *Indiaes*. They weare their hayre very long, neuer cutting it, but tressed and twined about their heads, because they doe not vse any Turbant.

The second Order of Knighthood.

Poulias and Moneoys the third sort of people.

The last condition is of the common popularity and Mechanicall persons, whom they call *Poulias*, and *Moncoys*, which is no matter of our subiect. Concerning the perticularities formerly spoken of the East *Indiaes*, discouered and possessed by the *Portugalles*: they are taken out of the writings of *Ieronimo Osorius*, Bishop of Sylues in the *Algarues*; And *Edouardo Barboza*, a *Portuguize*; The Nauigations of *Ludouicus Romanus Patritius*; *Hugo de Linscote Hollander*; And (of fresher date) those of *Frances Pyrard de Lauall* in *Bretaine*. Now proceed we to the West *Indies*, possessed by the *Spanyards*.

Concerning the west-Indiaes.

Creation of Knights in the West Indies.

THe *Ingas* Kings of *Perou*, create their Knights with many Ceremonies, on the principall day of their Feast, which they celebrate yearely in December. Vpon which day, the Sonnes of the *Ingas* and *Caciques*, that is to say, the Chiefest and principall men of the Countrey, newly made Knights; doe weare Scarffes of most odoriferous Flowers, stretching from the right Shoulder, vnder the left Arme. They are boared or pierced thorow the Eares, to the end, that they should be manifest and

and remember the day whereon they were created Knights. And the *Papas*, which in the language of the Countrey, is tearmed the High Priest, maketh vpon their foreheads a streake of Bloud, of the Beastes offered in Sacrifice, extending from the right Eare to the left, and causeth them to sweare: that they shall bee (all their life time) *Faythfull and Loyall Knights of the Inga*. As we learne by *Iosephus Acosta*, in the Eight and Twentieth Chapter of the Fift Booke, of his Naturall History of the *Indiaes*.

The Office and Ceremonie of the *Papas* to the new Knights.

Concerning Mexico.

THe Kings of *Mexico*, whose power was quite quayled and exterminated, by the valiant *Spanishe* Captayne *Ferdinando Corteze* (for vertue is to bee honoured where soeuer it is found) had among them diuers Orders of Knighthood: so saith the same *Acosta*, in the Sixe and Twentieth Chapter of his Sixt Booke.

Many Orders among the *Mexicanes*.

The most Honorable was of them, who wore their Haire tied vp like a Crowne (being thereby stiled) with a Red Riband, and on the top thereof a great Plume, the Lambrequins whereof shadowed and couered the shoulders, with Roules or Wreathes of Red Silke in the same manner, and in the fashion of curled locks of Haire: They vsed to weare so many Roules and Lambrequins, as they had bin present in foughten Battailes, and Actions of Warre.

Knights of the Crowne.

The Second Order of Knights, was of them that were tearmed Knights *of the Eagles*.

Knights of the Eagles.

The Third Order was that of *Lyons* and *Typres*, being all valiant and worthy persons, that made themselues knowne and famous by Warre: going Armed and cloathed in the skinnes of *Tygres*, of *Lyons*, and of other wilde Beastes, which serued as a noate of their Armorie.

Knights of *Lyons* and *Tygres*.

The meaneste Order of all, was of them which were called *Graye Knights*, who had their Hayre cut round aboue their Eares, as it were with a dish, as was a great obseruation (in elder times) among Kings and Princes. These men were properly Esquiers, Armed very lightly, only to the Girdling; whereas the other were Armed from head to foote.

Graye Knights

All which Orders of Knights had this aduantage and prieledge, to weare both Gold and Siluer in their apparell and garments; to bee serued at their tables in vessells of Gold and Siluer enamelled; and to weare Stockings of Honour, as namely Red Buskins, thickly powdred with flowers of Gold and Siluer. For the common people, they had no vse at all of Stockings, neither had any other seruice, but in Vessells of Earth, neither might garment themselues, but with *Nequen*, that is to say *Bourras*, course Hempen and Hurden cloth.

Prieledges belonging to these Knights.

Eche Order of these Knights, had their being and lodging at the Pallace Royall, the Portall or principall entrance whereof, was figured with the Armes and Enseignes of the Order.

The Knights Lodgings.

The First, was called *The Hostell of Princes*.
The Second, was of *Eagles*.
The Third, of *Lyons* and *Tygres*: And
The last, *Of Graye Knights*.

In the First Booke of these Noble *Recherches*, wee haue obserued the Armes, which were caried by the *Ingas* of the *West-Indiaes*.

The End of the Ninth Booke.

The Tenth Booke is deuided into seuerall Tracts.

1. Of the Nine VVorthies of the VVorld.
2. Of Duelloes and Single Combats at the Sharpe, and to the vtmost extremitie of Life.
3. Of Iousts, Tourneyes and Tournaments.
4. Of Military Paynes and punishments.
5. Of Degradation of Noblemen.
6. Of Funerall Pompe for Emperours, Kings, Princes, Knights of Order, and meaner Persons.

CHAP. I.

Of those Nine Worthies, Or Faraous Men of the World, which haue bin renowned (by Historie) to all future Ages.

Seneca ad Lucillium.

THE Life of Man, that hath no knowledge in Learniug and Letters, is nothing elſe but an vndoubted death. *Otium ſine Litteris vera Mors eſt, & viui Hominis ſepultura.* So we learne of *Seneca*, writing to *Lucillius* in his Epiſtle.

Homer, Quintus Calaber his *Continuer*; *Euſtatius* their Interpreter, with their purſners and followers, haue written in their Mithalogicall or Morall Fables (which ſerue for Learners) that *Iupiter* made an aſſembly or meeting of the Gods in *Eubœa* (one of the Iſlands of the *Egeum* Sea, in the Countrey and Prouince of *Boetia*) to vnderſtand and conclude: What thing was moſt neceſſary and profitable for the life of Man. Which Propoſition was balotted, according to the ſeuerall iudgements of this extraordinary and wunderfull Aſſembly; ſome ſpeaking after one manner, and others as themſelues beſt pleaſed.

The cauſe why the Gods aſſembled together.

Fire.

Vulcane ſaid, that it was *Fire*, in regard that without this Element; it was impoſſible for man to liue any long time: Fire being one of the Principles of Nature, the principall inſtrument of Generation, and the conſeruation thereof.

Water.

Neptune (the pretended God of *Waters*) ſtood vp, and maintained; that it was the Element of Water without which the World could not be.

Water is the beſt Element.

Tilling and Husbanding of the ground, ſignified by the Oxe.

(Saith *Pindarus*) and moſt part of the Nations in the World, doe liue without the vſe of Fire, rather then the other Element, his contrary.

Ceres, (that good and vertuous Mother) ſhee auouched the *Oxe*, the noate and Symbole of Tillage or Husbandry, which was ſo behouefull and neceſſary for the life of man: that ſhe made no doubt, but to winne the Honor from all the other opinioniſts. Whereunto ſhe added, that of all kinds and manner of liuing: there was none more iuſt and innocent, *Then the Countrey Life.*

Beatus ille qui procul negotijs

Vt priſca gens Mortalium
Paterna rura bobus exercet ſuis.

A House for the Harbour of Man.

Mercurie (the Sophiſter, and gentle Meſſenger of the Gods, with the Golden Beard) defended a *Houſe*, rather then any thing elſe, which gaue harbour and couerture to a man, to exempte and ſhield him from the Ayres iniuries, and furious violences of Beaſtes. He alleadged withall, that in former times, Men liuing altogether in the open fields, had nothing but Woodes for their Houſing; Leaues of Trees for their Bed and Bolſter; and hearbs for their foode and diet.

Sylua Domus erat: Cibus, Herba: Cubilia, Frondes.

Mercurie ſaid to be the Inuenter of Building.

But he had inuented the manner of buylding and Carpenting Houſes, to erect and ioyne them together in number and quantity, which proued to be the fourſe and firſt birth of vnity among Men: whereby this vaunting Doctour promiſed himſelfe, to haue the Honour of the cauſe, and made the reckoning without his Hoaſte. But then ſtept vp.

The Allegations of *Minerua* concerning Man.

Minerua, the Goddeſſe of Sciences, a Virgin engendred in the Braine of *Iupiter*, proclaimed to be King of the Gods and Men: Shee very well liked and allowed, that *Fire*, *Water*, *Husbandry*, *Townes* and *Cities* were (in trueth) neceſſary, conuenient and beneficiall for men. Yet notwithſtanding, alleadged, that the Gods had ſome other aime and end, then the Temporall condition of Man, and for his body only. For, he was made to mounte, and pierce much higher; in regard, that a ſparke of the *Diuinity* was breathed into him, to animate, conduct and mould his ſpirit: *To know what was paſt*: *To guide and order the preſent*: *And to diuine of things to come.* Diuerſity of Times, the knowledge whereof was attained vnto by *Learning* or *Letters*, that is to ſay: *By reading in the Breuiarie of the World*, that is

Concerning the Honor and Maieſty of Hiſtory.

Hiſtorie, the Science of Sciences; the Lanterne to Humaine Life; the faithfull Regiſter of Honour and Blame; the Schoole of good and euill; the Iudge, the Raſor, and the Touchſtone of Kings and Princes, yea, and of men. And, to ſpeake all in one word, the Grauing Inſtrument, that works in the Table of Immortality. This opinion was admired, and much commended in the venerable Conſiſtory of the Gods in generall: And the Precedency adiudged to the Learned *Pallas*.

Exercises beſt beſeeming a Noble or Gentleman.

To you then (*Braue* and *Generous Noblemen*) doth this diſcourſe preſent it ſelfe, that it may enſtruct you, to imploye the moſt part of thoſe Houres, which remaine to you, next after the ſeruice of God, wherewith you are to begin the day:) The offer of your perſons to the King, and the exerciſes of Honour, and to the Reading of Hiſtorie; is that which can only make you capable, of ſeruing and benefitting the Common-wealth. What other Houres are remayning, ſhould be imployed in the reading of Books, which tend to profit, and aime at the end of making you the wiſer. Shunne and deteſt all ſuch Books, as offend or wound the Soule, and may be molleſtuous to the minde: Such as are *Amadis de Gaule*, and other fabulous *Romanciers*. *Hiſtorie appertaineth to a Noble-Man*: It ought to be his principall Study, by example of *Alexander* the Great, who (by the reading thereof, conquered all the World. For which cauſe, Hiſtorie hath rancked him among the Valiant men of the World, whom Fabulous *Romancers* haue called the *Nine Worthies*, giuing to them this Order and Armes.

Compariſon of *Alexander* the Great.

The Firſt Ranck of the Nine Worthies.

Iaſon, the pretended Conquerour of the *Golden-Fleece*. *Qui portoit de Gueules, ſeme de dents, d'ou naiſſent & ſortent des Teſtes d'Hommes armez de Cabaſſet d'Argent, a vne Toiſon d'Or miſe en Pal, a cornee d'Azur.* Before this Voyage. *Il portoit de Gueules à vn Leopard Serpente d'Argent, deuorant vn Sceptre d'Or.* But other *Romancers* ſet downe in the place of this *Iaſon*:

Ioſuah, Iudge of *Iſraell*, whom they make to beare *D'Or, a vne Teſte de Lyon arrachee de Gueules, Languee de meſme.*

Hector of *Troy*, *D'Or à vn Lyon de Gueules, aſſis ſur vne Chaire de Sable* (others ſay *De Pourpre*) *tenant de ſes pattes vne Halebarde d'Argent, au manche d'Azur, le dict Lyon Arme & Lampaſſe de meſme.*

King *Dauid*, to whom they giue *D'Azur, a vne Harpe d'Or, montee de Cordes, d'Argent, à vne Bordure de meſme Diapree de Gueules*: with theſe *Hebrew* words וברוחי

אלחיים וברוחי. *de Sable.* Others giue him *D'Argent, a vne fronde d'Azur, chargee d'vn Caillou d Or.*

Alexander the Great, *D'Or, au Lyon de Gueules, Arme, & Lampasse de Azur.*

Iudas Machabeus, to whom they giue diuers Armes. First *D'Or, a vn Basilic de Sable, membre, & Coronne de Gueules.* And then afterward *D'Or, a vne Roche en Montagne de Sable, chargee d'vne Ancre d'Argent en Pal, & sur la Stangue d'icelle, ce mot Hebreu* רחוח *de Gueules.*

Iulius Cæsar, whom they make to beare *D'Or a vne Aigle esploye* (that is to say, with two *Testes de Sable, aux Diademes, Langues & Armes de Gueules.* Quite against all trueth, because euery one knoweth, that the said *Iulius Cæsar*, and his Successours the Emperours of *Rome*: *Porterent de Gueules a vne seule Aigle d'Or.* *Constantine* the Great, hauing planted his Imperiall Throane at *Bizantium* (which after his name was called *Constantinople*, & new *Rome*) was the first that tooke the Eagle displayed. Therby to shew, that the *Romaine* Empire comprehended both the East and West: Armes still retained by the Emperours his Successours, as well in the East as West.

Constantine gaue first the displayed Eagle, and his meaning thereby.

King *Arthur*, who bare (by their saying) *D'Azur, a Treize Coronnes d'Or.* 4. 4. 4. 1. A meere Fable.

Charlemaigne, King of *France*, and Emperour of the West, to whom they giue for Armes (contrary to trueth) *Party, le Premier d'Or, a vne demy-Aigle esployee de Sable, Languee, Diademee, & Armee de Gueules; le Deuxiesme de France sans nombre.* And such were borne by the *Frenche* Emperours his descendents, vntill such time as they of the *Saxon* House, vsurped the Empire against the *French*: For then they changed the Armes of *Europe*, and tooke the Mettall and Couller, belonging to the Armes of the Emperour *Otho*, whom the *Germaines* called the *Great*, and who (as Duke of *Saxonie*) *Portoit Face d'Or, & de Sable de Six pieces.* And emblazoned them of the Empire *D'Or a l'Aigle Esployé de Sable, Armé, Lampassé, & Coronné d'vn Diademe de Gueules.*

The *Saxon* House altered the Armes of *Europe.*

Godfrey of *Bologne*, First King of *Ierusalem*, Armed (according to Trueth) *D'Argent a la Croix potencee d'Or, & Cantonnee de Quatre Croisettes de mesme.* Heere you see what, and whom those Romancers haue made to be the *Nine-Worthies*, alwayes mingling fabulous Tales, among their most serious writings. For, to place *Iason*, *Hector* of *Troy* and *Arthur* of *Bretaigne*, among the valiant and famous men of the worlde, are meerly follies: But to make a true Historie, you must ranck them in this manner.

The true ranck of the Nine Worthies

Iosuah, Gedeon, Sampson, Dauid, Iudas Machabeus, Aleander the *Great, Iulius Cæsar, Charlemaige*: And *Godfrey* of *Bologne.*

And, not to stand vpon Blazons and Deuises, giuen them by fabulous *Romancers*, and most part of them falsely: eche of them ought to be Armed according to truth, from the foote of their owne braue actions in Armes. And because we know not what were the perticuler Armes of *Iosuah, Gedeon*, and *Sampson*, beside those Generall of the Tribes and Linages, of whence they were issued and descended, which we haue obserued in the first Booke and Chapter of these famous Antiquities: we may lawfully giue them deuises, rather then Armes proper, and (by Example) Armes proper and pertinent to the persons.

See the first Tome and first Chapter.

Iosuah D'Azur, au Soleil d Or. In regard that at his Prayer, *God made the Sunne to stand still in the Firmament*, vntill he had vanquished and ouercome the fiue Kings of *Chanaan*, according as it is written in the Tenth Chapter of *Iosuah.*

Gedeon de Sable, a la Toison d'Argent, au Chef d'Azur, seme de Gouttes d'Eau, ou de Larmes d'Argent: By reason of the Fleece, moistned with the dewe of Heauen, the ground all about it remayning drie; according as we finde written in the Sixt Chapter of the Iudges.

Sampson the Strong, De Gueules au Lyon gisant d'Or, à l'Orle d'Argent, seme d'Abeilles de Sable. Because that in his younger yeares, he had torne a Lyon in pieces, out of whose putrifaction there came a Swarme of Bees.

Mille animas vna necata dedit.

Samp. his Riddle to the Philistines.

And from this accident, *Sampson* deriued this Probleme and Enigma, for matter of diuining to the *Philistines*, *E Forti, Dulcedo*: As it is recorded in the Foureteenth Chapter of the Iudges. Now, concerning

Dauid,

Dauid, the King and Prophet, Hee bare as we haue said in the First Booke and Chapter, according to the Doctrine of *Rabbi Abraham*, in his Historicall *Cabala*, *D'Azur, au Lyon d'Or.* Armes borne by the Kings of *Iuda* and *Israel*, his successours, in their Pennons, Standards and Banners of Warre, and likewise on their moneys, with this deuise and Legend: *Vincet Leo de Tribu Iuda.*

Iudas, Sonne of *Mattathias*, Prince of *Modon*, Sirnamed *Macchabeus*, because in all the Enseignes of Warre, he caried this deuice written in *Hebrue* Letters, *Tu in Dyis, vel Fortibus Domine.* A Sentence taken from the Fifte of *Exodus*, and which being written in Foure Letters, formerly noated in the Staffe of an Anker, the people read (by abreuiation) *Macchabias*, a Sirname which remained to the said *Iudas* of *Modon*, and to his Brethren, as is reported by *Rabbi Isaack Bens-hola.* These Princes of *Modon* carried the Armes of their Family, which were *De Synople, au Maure Arme, & Frette d'Argent*, and their deuise in the Sayles. Armes which were exalted vpon the Tombes and Sepulchers of Prince *Mattathias*; *Iudas* his Sonne and Brethren: as wee learne in the First Booke of the *Macchabees*, and the Thirteenth Chapter.

Originall of the name of *Machabeus*, and their Armes.

Now, concerning the Armes of *Alexander* the Great; we haue said elsewhere, that he bare *D'Argent, au Lyon de Gueules*: As in like manner we haue obserued, speaking of the true Armes of *Iulius Cæsar*, *Charlemaigne* and *Godfrey* of *Bologne*, in such fashion and manner as they seuerally ought to be.

Of Nine Worthy Ladyes: Added to these Nine Famous and Worthy Men of the World.

THe same Romanceers haue added, or coupled with these *Nine worthies*, *Nine other as Worthy and Illustrious Women*, Ladyes of High deseruing, whom the Poets tearme *Women Warriours*, and by the name of *Amazones*; of whom you may heere behold the Armes and Names, according as I find them to be by them recorded.

Marthesia, or *Marpesia*, Who bare, by their saying, *De Gueules à vn Griffon d'Argent, Lampassé & Arme de mesme, à vne Coronne de Laurier d Or.*

Lampedo Portoit Party. Le Premier de Sable à Trois Testes de Roynes, Coronnes a l'Antique d'Or, à la Bordure de mesme. Le Deuxiesme d'Azur a Trois Faces onees d'Or.

Orythia D'Azur, a vne Cigne d'Argent, membre de Gueules: le Quartier d'Hermear, charge d'vn Escusson du premier Party de Lampedo.

Antiopa, full Armes *du premier Party de Lampedo*, which declared, that She ought to March Second among the *Amazons.*

Penthesilea, D'Azur, a la Bande de Sable, chargee du premier Party de Lampedo; a Six Grilets d'Argent. 3. 3.

Minthia, D'Azur, a Trois Chaires & Fautueils d'Or: Deux en Chef, & vne en Pointe.

Hippolita, D'Or, a vn Lyon d'Azur, Arme & Lampassé de Gueules, tenant entre ses Pattes & Griffes de deuant l'Escu d'Antiopa.

Theuca, D'Argent, a vne Aigle de Sable, Lampassé, & Arme de Gueules, brizé sur l'Estomach d'vne Teste de Royne a l'Antique d'Or. They giue her for the last.

Thamaris, whom they make to beare *De Gueules, a Trois Leopards naissans d'Or, Languez & Armez de Synople, Deux en Chef, & l'autre en Pointe: Le reste de l'Escu seme de Tierce-Fueilles percees, & trouees de Argent.*

They should haue placed in rancke among these Famous Ladies, the Queenes so Highly renowned for Prowesse.

Semiramis, of whom we haue emblazoned the Armes, in the First Booke and First Chapter: And

Tomyris. Qui portoit de Synople, au Lyon cuire (as one would say *Sans Vilenie*) *d'Argent. Coronne de Laurier d'Or, a la Bordure Crenelee d Or, & de Gueules, chargee de Huict Trefles d'Argent.*

And infinite other. But to make their Writings more sublime in worth, and likelier to truth: they should haue graced their History with these Ladies of immortall memory, obserued in the Sacred Scriptures, as *Debora*, *Hester*, *Iudith* and such like, whose Heroycall deeds and manlike actions; would haue giuen a much

Ladyes well deseruing to grace an History.

much more luminous Subiect, and engendred a deuise of farre fayrer hope and expectation.

The Curious may heere inserte some Leaues of white Paper, and make an addition of Blazons and Deuises, of such *Heroes* and *Princes*; as serued themselues in person, at the three most memorable attempts of *Asia*.

The three most famous enterprises of *Asia*.

I. The Siedge of *Troye*, described by Diuine *Homer*, *Dyctis Cretensis*, *Dares Phrygius*, and *John le Maire* of *Belgia*, in his most renowned Romancer, concerning the Illustration of the *Gaules*.

II. The Conquest of the *Golden Fleece* by *Iason* and his Associates, obserued by *Apollonius Rhodius*, in his *Argonautes*, and the more then mernaylous performance of all.

III. And the Siedge of *Thebes* with the Hundred Gates, described at large (with all the particularities) by the Sophister *Philostratus* in his painted Plates; *Lucian* and the like Authours, telling as much trueth, as the Romancers did. But now after our *Nine Worthies*, let vs come to discourse of *Duelloes* or Combates: For now adayes, the valiancy and courage of our mad-headed Courtiers, is much sooner seene in the subiect of a common Strumpet; then any Seruice for their King.

CHAP. II.

Of Duelloes, Fights *and Single* Combates, *performed at the Sharpe, and to the extremitie of Life.*

A Combate betweene *Neptune* and *Minerua*.

AFter the building of *Athens*, the most famous and renowned Citty for all Sciences; there was a Challendge and Combate, betweene the God of the Sea and Waters *Neptune*, and the Wise *Minerua*; who should baptize or giue name to this newe Citty. *Neptune*, Armed with his *Trident* or Forke with three Teeth, appeared in the place appointed for Fight, disposed, and ready to Combate within the Railes or Lists, for his owne aduantage.

The appearing of *Minerua* in the Field

Minerua, without making any rash or indiscreete haste, shewed her selfe at the end of the Lists, Armed with a shining and polished Corselet, well nayled, not wanting any Buckle; a Helmet on her head, ouer-shadowed with rich Lambrequins and Plumes of fayre Eastrige Feathers, a Lance in her right hand, and Target in the left, made of fine Siluer, whereon was figured (not the two Citties of Peace and Warre, represented in that of *Achilles*, fabricke by the Armourer *Vulcane*) but a frightfull Head of *Gorgon* and *Meduſa de Sable, a la Gueule ouuerte et Beante de Gueules*; the Trophee of *Minerua*. As expressing, thereby, that Gentlemen which addict themselues to the Study and knowledge of Letters: are more capable to be Captaines, and commaunde in Armies; then such as are badly educated, who call Ignorance Nobility, and Knowledge Husbandry.

Au Poil & a la Plume.

Iupiter would not permit this Combate, rather for sauing the Honor of *Neptune*, God of the Fishes, the Symbole of Ignorance; then any feare he had of his deare *Minerua*, whom he knew to be a Generallist, and fit for any imployment, as apte for the Lance, as the Pen. Answerable to the deuise borne by skilfull Captaines: *Et Marti, et Mineruæ: As prompt for the one, as ready for the other.*

Iupiter compounded the contention.

To compound this difference amiably, and make knowne to men, that he affected not *Duelles* and Fights, howbeit, Honour would thereby haue bin proued in good earnest: he appointed, that which of these two Contendants, by smiting the Earth with their Armes, could make some such thing to issue forth thereof, as should be most necessary for Man; that party should haue the preferment, to impose a name vpon this new Citty.

The Masterpiece of *Neptune*.

Neptune, swelling with rage and fury, smote our common Mother with such violence, that after it had quaked an indifferent while: there bounded forth a furious Horse, snuffling and stamping, the Instrument or Symbole of Warre.

---------- *Bellum, O Terra hospita, portas:*
Bello armantur Equi, Bellum hæc armenta minantur.

This

This is that which *Virgill* saith, speaking of the birth and originall of the Horse, engendred by the *Trident* of *Neptune*.

.. .. *Tuque O, cui prima furentem*
Fudit Equam magno Tellus percussa Tridenti,
Neptune

The trophee and victorie of *Minerua*.

As for the learned Lady and Warrioresse *Minerua*, she, hauing softly toucht the ground with the smaller end of her Lance: immediately rose vp a verdant Oliue-Tree, laden with Leaues and Fruite, for the nourishment and health of Man, and being the Symbole of Peace, declaring, that a man learned, is capable for actions of War, and likewise to manage Peace, when neede requireth.

Oleaque inuentrix Minerua.

The Latine Poet obserueth this debate and contention, at the beginning of his *Georgicks*.

Athens the Citie of debate or strife.

And because Peace, the bountifull and rich gift of Heauen, is highly to be preferred before warre: *Iupiter* adiudged the preferrence to *Minerua*; who baptized with her name the Citie of debate, by naming it *Athenes*.

This *Mythologie* or Morall meaning, shall serue vs for a *Preludium*, and entrance into the Lists of Duelles and Combats, and will sufficiently shew, that it was the Custome of our auncient *French*, to vndertake the hazard of Armes and Combat, to iustifie themselues in an Accusation, fordged against their honour and good fame; and to sustaine the truth of some iust cause, whereof the proofes were doubtfull, yea, wholly hid and concealed.

His entrance for the enfolding of the matter.

The Accuser or Plaintiffe, through defect of Litterall proofes or Testimonials, auouched before the King: that his aduerse Partie was a Traitour, periured and false lyar, offering to iustifie what he said, by Armes and Combat one to one, his owne person against that of the accused, or some other for him, if (by age) he might be dispensed withall from the Combate.

The Plaintifs accusation before the King.

As a Gage for himselfe, he would throw his Gloue down vpon the ground, which the Accused, or some other for him, was to take vp: And the Field of Battaile, the day, and the Armes for the Combattants, were to be assigned by the King; for, without his permission, *Duelloes* or Combates durst not be vndertaken. In absence of the King, the Parliament appointed it; not finding any other meanes of remedy, whereby to agree the Parties.

The Gage cast downe and taken vp.

This manner of deliuering or casting the Gloue as a Gage, seemeth to come from the Orientals or Easterne People, who in the vendition and yeelding vp their Lands, or Paiment of Debts; did giue the Gloue to the Buyers, by forme of confignation, and taking of possession. Which the *Romans* did, by the tradition of a greene Sodde or Tuft of earth. And our auncient *French*, by deliuery of a Rushe or Feskue, *Per Festucam* in our *Salique* Law, and a thousand thousand other places

Originall of giuing the Gage.

We haue an example of deliuering the Gloue, in the Historie of *Ruth*, the fourth Chapter, where it is said, that the auncient Custome obserued in *Israel*, betweene the neerest kinred of one and the same Linage, if any one yeelded or surrendred his right to another: he did put off his Gloue, and gaue it to the purchaser. And this was a testimonie of the yeelding, and transport of buying an inheritance in *Israel*.

An auncient custome obserued in *Israel* Ruth. 4. 9.

Well know I, that the common Translation beareth a *Shoe*, and not a *Gloue*; but the *Chaldean* and *Syriacke* Paraphrase, which serues me better for interpreting some passages of the Sacred Scriptures, beareth the *Gloue*, and not the *Shoe*. *Dixit Redemptor ipsi Boos, in possessionem venito, tibique possideto: Tunc tulit Boasus Thecam Dexteræ illius, & in possessionem venit.*

Comparison of the Shoe and Gloue.

Widdowes were maried by the Brethren to their Husbands, being deceased without issue, to the end, of raising seede to their Brother. And the widdow might then adorne to the gate or doore of the Citie, the neerest kinsman to her dead Husband, to the intent of marrying with him. Vpon his refusall to doe it, she taketh the Shoe from off his right foote, and spetting in his face, saith; *So shall it be done vnto that man, that will not raise seede to the house of his Brother*, according as it is written in the fiue

fiue and twentieth Chapter of *Deutronomie*. This was done by the widdow with the Shooe, in meere contempt.

But if it were a man, that ſummoned or cited another man before the face of Iuſtice, when the *Iewes* ſate at the Citie gates, or in ſome eminent place of their Townes; as an action of honeſtie, they would plucke the *Gloue* from off the right hand, which they deliuered as a Gage of aſſurance, for any thing giuen or granted to ſage of the hundred and eight Pſalme of *Dauid*: *In Idumæam extendam calceamentum meum: I will lying and reduce the people of Edom vnder my power: I will take poſſeſſion, as hauing won it by true and iuſt title.*

The manner of challenging and accepting the Combat among the *French*.

In like manner among our *French*, he that tooke vp the Gloue, ſignified by that action, that he accepted the Combat or Challenge: and, by the ſame kinde of ceremonie, pluckt off his Gloue from the right hand, and threw it on the ground, to be accepted and taken vp by him that had challenged him. Promiſing one to another, to preſent himſelfe in furniſhment, after the manner of Combat; on ſuch a day, and at ſuch a place, as the King, or his Parliament ſhould appoint. If the man accuſed of perfidie and treaſon, preſented himſelfe before the King, and, maintaining his innocence in the crimes oppoſed againſt him; threw downe his Gloue, as offering the Combat againſt his Accuſer, who neither preſented himſelfe in perſon, nor any one for him, to the end that he might take vp the Gage: The Accuſed was accepted, and credited vpon his owne Oathe, that he was innocent of thoſe crimes obiected againſt him. And theſe manners of behauiour was common with the *French*, *Germains*, *Gothes*, *Lombardes*, *Spanyards*, and other people liuing in the weſterne parts.

Of other proues beſide Combat.

All which Nations, ouer and beſide the *Duello* or ſingle Combat, for knowledge of the truth, in matters of vncertaine and doubtfull prooſe: had recourſe to taking an Oathe, vpon the dead bodies of holy Martyres and Confeſſours. And proofe by burning Fire, and Water fiercely boyling, or cold.

Oathe made on dead bodies of Martyres & Confeſſours.

In *France*, ſuch Oathes were ordinarily made by the Accuſed, on the Bodies of Saint *Denys* in *France*, of Saint *Germain des Prez les Paris*; and of Saint *Martin* at *Tours*. Saint *Gregorie* of *Tours*, in his fift Booke, and two and thirtie Chapter; And (after him) the Monke *Aymonius* reporteth in his Hiſtorie of *France*, that a Burgeſſe of *Paris*, being iealous of his wife, accuſed her, to be ſhorter heelde then ſhe ſhould be. The Parents and friends of the Husband and Wife, concluded together, that this difference ſhould be diſcided by Oathe, taken on the Body of Saint *Denys*, Apoſtle of the *Gaules*. They on the Wifes ſide, aſſuring themſelues of her honeſtie, ſware that ſhe was innocent. The Husbands kinred maintained the contrary, ſo that from words, they fell to blowes and effuſion of bloud. Hereupon, Diuine Seruice was transferred to another place, vntill the parties had done Penance, and receiued the holy Communion: when the Church was reconciled by *Ragnemodus*, the twentieth Biſhop of the Citie of *Paris*, and Succeſſor to Saint *Germanes*; the Wife being hanged or ſtrangled, becauſe ſhe had forfeited her faith and honor. This happened within a while after the death of our Great King *Clouis*.

An example happening at *Paris*.

Vnder the Reigne of *Clothaire* the Great (Father to *Dagobert*, firſt of the name, reſtorer of the ſame Church of Saint *Denys* in *France*) *Godin*, Sonne to *Garnier*, who was Maire of the Pallace of *Bourgongne*; made prooſe of his fidelitie (called in queſtion) on the Bodies of Saint *Medard* at *Soiſſons*, of Saint *Germain* at *Paris*, of Saint *Aignan* in the Citie of *Orleance*; and of Saint *Martine* at *Tours*.

Prooſe of *Godin* Sonne to *Garnier*.

Gentlemen receiuing Armes.

Taſſelon, Duke of *Bauaria*, and his principall men of Fiefe (called *Leudes* in our *Salique* Law, and in our Capitularies) after he had taken the Oathe of Vaſſalage and fidelitie, and laid his hand on them of King *Pepin le Bref*, being then at *Compeigne*: was ſent from thence to ſweare the ſaid Liedge Homage to King *Pepin*, and to his Sonnes, vpon the Bodies of Saint *Denys* in *France*, Saint *Germain* at *Paris*, and Saint *Martine* at *Tours*: So ſaith the ſame Monke *Aimonius*, in the fourth Booke of his Hiſtorie of *France*, the threeſcore and fourth Chapter.

Swearing Liedge Homage.

After the death of the ſaid *Pepin le Bref*, the *French* carried ſuch honor and reuerence to his Memorie: that they referred all differences among them (in caſes of vncertaine

vncertaine and doubtfull prooſe) to Oathe made on the *Roabe of the ſame Pepin*. Which when King *Charlemaigne* vnderſtood, he prohibited and forbad the cuſtome, by his Ordonance and Pragmaticall Sanction, Regiſtred among our *French* Lawes, in the Fourth Booke of our Capitularies. *Vt non admittantur teſtimonia Super Veſtitu-ram Domini noſtri Regis Pepini.*

Proofe by burning Iron.

Long time before his Reigne, *The iudgement of God* (ſo ſpeake the auncient *French*) made it ſelfe knowne by prooſe *Of hot or burning Iron*, that is to ſay, *A Plough Share or Coulter*, brightly burning: whereon the Accuſed, or the Teſtimonies for him, walked barefooted, or held it betweene their hands. *Charlemaigne* at the Title *De Homicidys Clericorum*, by him added to the *Salique* Law, the fift Paragraphe, *Si negauerit illum ſe occidiſſe, ad Nouem Vomeres ignitos iudicio Dei examinandus accedat.*

Proofe by boiling Water.

By that of *Hot Boyling Water*, *Per Aquam Feruentem*, wherein the Accuſed or his Witneſſes were to waſh their hands.

By *Colde Water*, in a Pond or running Riuer, whereinto (faſt bound both hands & feete) they were to be throwne, to trie if they would ſincke to the bottome, or not, as ſometimes they made triall of Witches, and Sorcerers. And laſtly;

By the Croſſe.

By the Croſſe, whereon they were ſtrecht forth, faſt bound and mannacled; like to the *Cupid of Troyes* in *Germanie*, ſo much renowned by *Auſonius*, the *Burdelois* Poet: *In Cupidine Crucifixo*. This laſt prooſe was prohibited by our King *Charlemaigne*, in the firſt Booke of our *French* Lawes, the hundred and ſecond Chapter. *Sanctum eſt vt Nullus deinceps quamlibet examinationem* Crucis *facere præſumat, ne* Chriſti Paſſionem *quæ ſpes ſalutis eſt, cuiuſlibet temeritate contemptui habeatur.*

To whom the Iuſtice of Combat appertained.

Noblemen, and ſuch perſons as were of free condition, to whom the vſe and carrying of Armes onely belonged; had this infernall cuſtome, to diſcide their quarrels and other Actions, by Iuſtice of the *Duello* or ſingle Combat, and eſpecially at ſuch time, as the cauſe depended vpon ſome ſucceſſiue right. For we reade in our auncient Annaliſts, vnder the reigne of *Lewes of Beyond the Seas*, King of *France*, there was a Proceſſe or Suite attempted, to know: *If the Nephew ſhould ſucceede after his Vnckle, deceaſing without Children, with his other Vnckles, the Brethren to his dead Father.* If this had bin in *France*, and in the time of our old Cuſtome of *Paris*, not admitting the repreſentation in the collaterall ligne, *Inter Fratres, Fratrumque filios*, this caſe had bin eaſie in the clearing.

A cauſe tried in the King of *Germanes* Court for ſucceſſion.

But the cauſe was pleaded in the Court of the King of *Germanie Lewes*, who, vpon the irreſolution of his Counſell; ordained, that the deciſſion thereof ſhould be committed to the prooſe of Combat betweene two Champions. The Combat being affigned, the Nephew had the honor thereof againſt his Vnckles, or the Champion for them. And ſince that time (as the *Germaines* ſay) it was fully concluded: That Nephewes ſhould pertake and deuide the goods of their deceaſed Vnckles, with them that were liuing, by the repreſentation of their Father.

Abbots, Fryers, Monks & Churchmen.

Men of *Main-morte*, and of ſeruile condition, not hauing the prooſe of Armes, but onely by them of burning Iron, and Waters: theſe trials were perticuler to them, as we learne in our *French* Lawes, and vnder our Capitularies, in the fift Booke, at the third Paragraphe, *De Veneficijs*, where it is ſaid, that ſuch as remaine vnquiſhed, to wit; *Men Free in the Duello, and the other, by their other proues; ſhall be puniſhed with Death.*

A famous triall made for the King of *Germany* by thirtie men.

Yet notwithſtanding this, Noble perſons, yea, Kings and Queenes, diſdained not to ſubmit themſelues to the Iudgement of burning Iron, and boyling Water. *Aimonius*, in the fift Booke of his Hiſtorie of *France*, and the foure and thirtieth Chapter, reporteth, that the King of *Germanie Lewes* (of whom we ſpake ſo lately before) for to maintaine the truth of his owne right, ſent to King *Charles* the *Baulde*, King of *France* and Emperour, his Vnckle: his Ambaſſadours, and with them thirtie men. Tenne of them made prooſe by burning Iron or Plow-ſhares: tenne more of them by hot boyling Water; and the other tenne by being caſt into the colde water, and all of them departed thence, without any harme or offending.

The *Germaines* doe report, that *Chunegonda*, daughter to *Sigefroy*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, made prooſe of her Virginitie (in contempt of a bolde accuſation made againſt

against her) in the presence of the Emperor of *Germanie*, *Henry* the second, her Husband; passing bare-foote ouer twentie Coulters, extraordinarily burning hot.

At the end of our Capitularies, are to be seene the proceedings and prayers, which are vsed at the consecration of those Irons, and the hot and cold waters, as also what perticular Masses were said to that effect. And oftentimes hath euidently beene seene, that lewd persons, haue felt the iustice due to their wickednesse, by the exabats of one man against another; such shames as should haue bin inflicted by Iustice, the Church, and Ordenances of our Kings, haue bin abrogated and repealed by those proues.

Lewdnesse punished by being ouerbold.

Ladies accused, to haue made forfeit of their honor, or else accusing some Knight, to haue immodestly attempted her good fame: might present their Champion of Battaile, either to sustaine their innocencie, or to proue that their accusations were true.

Erioldus King of the *Lombards*, had espoused *Gondeberga*, a *French* Princesse, endued with singular beauty of body, and admirable wisedome. At his seruice attended a *Lombard* Gentleman, who was named *Adalulphus*, a man of good meanes, and comely feature of body, much respected by the Queene, for his seemely parts and faithfull seruice. This glorious Sot, swolne big with the winde, that blowes no where ordenarily but in Court; grew so audacious and ouer-saucie, that he offered her Loue-seruice, and craued amourous acceptance: *Gondeberga*, scorning such presumption; spet in his face, and expelled him out of her Court, according as he iustly deserued. This bold Companion, fearing least these newes should come to the King by the Queene: to preuent her, he went to the *Lombard* King, and told him, that not many dayes since, *Taso*, who was Gouernour of *Tuscanie*, had secret communication with the Queene; to imprison him, possesse himselfe of the Kingdome, and to marrie her afterward.

The Historie of *Gondeberga* Queene of *Lombardie*.

The King beleeuing this accusation ouer-lightly, caused the Queene, (suddenly) to be shut vp close prisoner, and in a very strong Castle of *Italie*, which was then called *Amello*. *Clothaire*, last of the name, King of *France*, to whom the Queene was a neere kinswoman, as being descended from the Kings of *Austrasia*, of the House of *France*: Sent his Ambassadours to the King of *Lombardie*, to tell him plainely, that he had (too rashly) imprisoned the Queene his wife (being a Princesse of the Bloud Royall of *France*) without causing her to be conuinced of the crime, wherewith she was accused.

A great error oftentimes in Princes.

Vpon answer from the King of *Lambardie*, that she had deserued that punishment, and farre greater; *Lancelot*, one of the Ambassadours for *France*, summoned the *Lombard* King, to grant power to some one of the Seruants, belonging to the imprisoned Queene, to appeale in the *Duello* or single Combat, *Adalulphus* that was her Accuser. Which the King allowing to be but iust and reasonable; *Aribert*, Cousine to the imprisoned Queene, offered his Gloue as a Gage of Battaile, to maintaine; *That the Queene was falsely and wickedly accused by Adalulphus*. Who being strictly constrained to take vp the Gage: *Erioldus* the *Lombard* King assigned the day, and the Field for Battaile. Wherein he was vanquished, and hanged by the necke, and the vertuous Queene deliuered, after three yeares of wrong imprisonment. This Historie is reported by the Monke *Aimonius*, in the fourth Booke and tenth Chapter, of his Historie of *France*.

The *French* Ambassadors aduise to the *Lombard* King

The Annals of *Aniou*, written by Maister *John Bourdigne*, doe recount vnder the Reigne of our King *Lewes* the Stammerer, who was Emperour, that a Countesse of *Gastinois*, wife to *Ingelger*, and Godmother to *Engelger*, Count of *Aniou*; was accused by the kinred of her Husband (found dead in the Bed by her) that she had caused his death, and made forfeit of her honor, whereby (consequently) she was capable of no pleading, but ought to be punished with death.

The Historie of the Countesse of *Gastinois*.

Gontran, the very neerest kinsman to the partie deceased, was the Accuser: to whom, and to the Countesse of *Gastinois* accused, *The King assigned a day of Pleading by the Sword*, and at *Chasteau-Landon*.

Pleading by the Sword.

At the day appointed, the Parties appeared cloathed in mourning. The Accuser persisting

persisting in his accusation, maintained it still, and offred his Gage of Battaile, against such a Champion as the Countesse should produce. But she (on the contrary) offred to purge her selfe, and to iustifie her innocencie by Oathe, so farre as any woman could doe.

The King hauing consulted with his Counsel, found the offence to be so great and grieuous, in regard of the Husbands so strange death; that the Countesse must needes furnish her cause with a Champion. But the truth appearing so vncertaine, and the case very much mistrusted; it seemed vtterly impossible for her (among so great a number of friends and seruants, as she thought she had) to finde one for her Champion. So that being thus left forlorne, forsaken, and brought euen to the doore of despaire; shee stood vpon the point, of loosing honor, goods and life altogether. When suddenly *Ingelger*, Count of *Aniou*, her God-Sonne, being aged onely sixteene years, appeared before the King, and offred to Combat with *Gontran*, the most renowned Knight of his time, to whom he threw his Gage of Battaile. It was accepted, and the Combat performed before the King and his Court, at the said *Chasteau-Landon*. *Gontran* had his head smitten off by his enemy, the Countesse of *Gastinois* deliuered from death: And she gaue to the Count *Ingelger* her God-Sonne, the Seigneurie belonging to the Castell of *Landon*, with the Fiefes and moueables thereon depending.

Nothing sooner friends more then miserie, and then they strue to be least seene.

Froissard, in the second Chapter of his third Volume, describeth a Iouste at the Sharpe, or vtmost extremity, that is to say, a *Duello* or Combat, performed at *Paris*, in *La Culture Saincte Catherine*: betweene *John de Carouge*, Knight, Lord of *Argentel* on the Frontiers of *Perche*; and *Iacques le Gris*, Knight also, and both of them of the Court of *Peter*, Count of *Alanson*. At returne from a Voyage beyond the Seas, done by the Lord of *Carouge*; his wife aduertised him, that during the time of his absence: she had bin abused (that is to say, forced) by this *Iacques le Gris*; who denied the fact, and neuer would confesse it, no, not to the death. The deadly Field was ordained by decree of the Court, and the Husband was the Champion for his Wife, against *Iacques le Gris*.

The Champions comming into the Field of death, were armed at all points, and each man seated in his Chaire. The Count of Saint *Paul* gouerned the Lord of *Carouge*: but *Iacques le Gris* was gouerned by people belonging to the Count of *Alanson*. They performed their Armes (according to appointment) in presence of King *Charles* the sixt, and all the Princes of the Bloud, and great Lords as well of *France*, as of the neighbouring Marches, to see this Combat at the Sharpe, which was euery where bruited abroad, and the victory whereof fell to the Lord of *Carouge*. And here you may behold the perticularities of the Combat, as they stand Registred in the Court Record; as being essentiall, and fitting to this discourse of ours.

The Champions comming in the Field.

The performance of the Combat.

Obseruations set downe in the Court Registers, concerning the Combat.

Quand le Cheualier de Carouge deut entrer au Champ de Bataille mortelle, il vint à sa femme qui la estoit en vn Chariot couuert de Noir, & luy dict ainsi: Dame, par vostre information, & sur vostre querelle, ie vois aduanturer ma Vie, & combatre Iacques le Gris, vous sçauez si ma cause est iuste, & loyale. Monseigneur, dict la Dame, il est ainsi, & vous combatez tout seurement, car la cause est bonne. A ces mots le Cheualier baiza la Dame, & la prit par la main, & puis se seigna, & entra au Champ.

La Dame demeura dedans le Char couuert de Noir en grandes Oraisons enuers Dieu, & la Vierge Marie, en priant tres-humblement qu'à ce iour par leur grace, & intercession elle peust auoir victoire selon le droict qu'elle auoit. Et vous dy qu'elle estoit en grande tristesse, & n'estoit pas asseuree de sa Vie: car si la chose tournoit à desconfiture sur son Mary, il estoit sentencié, que sans remede on l'eust arse, & son Mary pendu. Et en suite de quel ques lignes.

Messire Iean de Carouge combatit si vaillamment qu'il enuoya son Aduersaire à Terre, & luy bouta l'Espee dedans le corps, dont il l'occit au Champ, & puis demanda s'il auoit bien

bien faict son deuoir ? On luy respondit qu'Ouy. Si fut Iacques le Gris deliure au Bourreau de Paris, qui le traina à Montfaucon, & la fut pendu. Messire Iean de Carouge remercia le Roy, & les Seigneurs (de ce qu'il luy auoit faict deliurer comptant Mille Francs, & l'auoit retenu de sa Chambre a deux Cents Liures de Pension par An durant sa vie) *& se mit à genoux, puis il vint à sa Femme, & la baisa, & puis ils allerent à l'Eglise Nostre* Dame *faire leur Offrande, & puis retournerent en leur Hostel.*

The English.

When the Knight de Carouge should enter into the Field of deadly Battaile, he went to his Wife, who was there in a Chariot couered with Blacke, and spake vnto her thus. Lady, by your information, and vpon your quarrell, I am come to aduenture my Life, and to fight with Iacques le Gris: *You know if my cause is iust and loyall. My Lord, said the Lady, it is so, and you shall Combat most assuredly, for the cause is good. Vpon these words, the Knight kissed his Lady, and tooke her by the hand, and afterward signed himselfe, and entred into the Field.*

The Lady remained in the Chariot couered with Blacke, vsing deuout Prayers to God and the Virgin Mary, beseeching them most humbly, that that day, and vpon her intercession, she might (by their grace) haue the victorie, according to the right she had. And I tell you, that she was in great heauinesse, & had no assurance of her Life: for if the case turned to the discomfiture of her Husband, sentence was past, that without any remedy; she should be burned, and her Husband hanged. And within a few lines after following;

Sir Iohn de Carouge *Combatted so valiantly, that he laid his Aduersarie vpon the ground, and thrust his Sword into his body, whereby he slew him in the Field; And then he demanded, whether he had performed his duetie, or no? Answere was made, that he had done it. So was* Iacques le Gris *deliuered to the Hangman of* Paris, *who dragged him to* Montfaucon, *and there he was hanged. Sir* Iohn de Carouge *humbly thanked the King, and the Lords* (because his Maiestie had commanded to be giuen him in ready money, a thousand Francks, and accepted him to be of his Chamber, with two Hundred Pounds of yearely Pension, during his life) *for which hee fell on his knees before him. Afterward, comming to his Wife, he kissed her, and then went to the Church of our Lady, to present their Offering, and then returned home to their House.*

The relation of this Combat by another Author.

The Lord *Iuuenall des Vrsins*, in the Historie of *Charles* the sixt, setteth downe this *Duello* or Combat at the Sharpe, auouching it to be fought in the yeare One thousand three hundred fourescore and sixe. And in describing the Historie, he saith, that *Iacques le Gris* fell, and then *Carouge* mounting vpon him with his Sword drawn; requested him now to tell the truth. And hee returned him this answere. *That before God, and vpon perill of the damnation of his soule, hee had neuer committed the act wherewith he was charged.* And yet for all that, *Carouge*, who verily beleeued his Wife; thrust his Sword through his body, and so he dyed: which was much to be pitied.

The words of the Lord *des Vrsins.*

For afterward, it was certainely knowne, that he had neuer committed the offence. But that another had done it, who dying of a grieuous disease in his bed: in the very agonie of death, confessed before diuers people, that he was the man that did it.

Behold the miserable condition of *Duelloes* and Combats, where the danger falleth vpon the innocent, as here is plainely proued to you. And therefore this manner of triall hath bin worthily prohibited, because on which side soeuer this infernall chance falleth: it is alwayes to losse of the Body, and oftentimes of the Soule too, of one or other of the parties. For by the Law of Combats, if the Champion prouided by the partie accused, fall in the Combat: he is to be punished with death, and with him his partaker. So the same lot was afforded to the Accuser, and to his Combatant, if he happened to be surmounted. As *Froissard* obserueth in the Historie formerly reported.

The Law of Duelloes and Combats.

.. .. Nec enim lex æquior vlla est
Quam necis Artifices arte perire sua.

And yet neuertheless, it was a firme beliefe, liuely imprinted in the soules of the auncient *French*: *That Duello or Combat, being permitted by the Prince, was and is the Iudgement of God.* We haue a Tract very remarkeable to this purpose, in the Historie of *France*, written by Saint *Gregory* of *Tours*, in his seauenth Booke and foureteenth Chapter.

A Historie alleadged to the same effect

After the massacre committed on King *Chilpericke*, the Ambassadours sent from King *Childebert* of *Austrasia*, came on behalfe of the King their Maister, to moue and entreate the King of *Bourgongne* and *Orleans Gonthran*, to deliuer them the Queene *Fredegonde*, suspected of this murder, as also the miserable and disastrous death, of most part of the Princes of the Bloud, to the end that Iustice might be executed. In number of the Ambassadours sent from King *Childebert*, were *Gilles* a Bishoppe, *Gonthran Boson*, *Sigisalde* and other faithfull Councellours to King *Childebert*.

King *Gonthran* had a secret malicious spleene against *Gonthran Boson*, whom he accused, to haue fauoured the part of the pretended King *Gombaud* (surprised and dispatched at Saint *Bertrand de Commenge*) whereunto *Boson* made him this answere.

Tu Dominus, & Rex in Regali solio residens, & nullus ad ea quæ loqueris, audens est respondere. Insontem enim me de hac causa profiteor. At si est aliquis similis mihi, qui hoc crimen impingat occulte, veniat nunc palam, & loquatur. Tu O Rex pyssime ponnes hoc in Dei iudicio, vt ille discernat, cum nos in vnius campi planitie viderit dimicare.

Thou (O my Lord and King) sittest on thy Royall Throane, and no man dare be so bold, as to make answere to those things whereof thou speakest. I protest, that I am innocent in this matter. But if there be any, that doth secretly lay this Accusation against me: Let him come forth now in publique, and speake it. Thou (O most Religious King) committest this matter to the Iudgement of God, that he may determine it, when he shall behold vs fighting in the open plaine Field. Duelloes therefore were not permitted, but by Kings.

Combat for windfals in Forrests.

The same Author, in the tenth Booke and tenth Chapter, obserueth the Combat, performed by the command of King *Gonthran*, for the winde-fals of Wood, and of a wilde Bull, by him found in the Forrests of *Vange*; as we said in our Treatise *Of the Offices of the Crowne of France*. It is the first *Duello* that I haue read of, performed vnder our Kings of the first Ligne, but other are to be found in *Aimonius*.

Combats vnder the second Ligne.

Vnder them of the second Ligne, are to be found few enow. Our King and Emperour *Charlemaigne*, hauing reduced vnder his obedience the Cities of *Barcellona*, *Cathalogna*, *Cordagnia* and *Roussillon* from the Moores of *Affrica*, who had possessed themselues of diuers Pouinces in *Spaine*: gaue their gouernment in title of a Counte, to one of his loyall followers, named *Bera* (and not *Bernard*) who in time of the Sonne to *Charlemaigne*, *Lewes* the *Debonnaire* our King and Emperour, was accused before him, to haue intelligence with the *Affricanes* of *Spaine*, and seeking to betray their Soueraigne Prince.

A Combat before King Lewes the Debonnaire.

Vpon this denuntiation, *Bera*, to purge himselfe, went into *Germanie* before the *Debonnaire*, at his place of *Aix la Chapelle*, where the King then held his Parliament. The Accusers threw downe *The Gage of Battaile*. *Bera* tooke it vp, and cast downe his owne, with the Lye in their throate, and that he was neither Traitour, nor perfidious. The Combat was fought on Horseback, and *Bera* being vanquished, was forced to confesse his fault. His Shield with the heeles vpward, was broken into small morsels and pieces: but life was giuen him by the *Debonnaire*, and he confined to *Rouen*, there to spend the remnant of his dayes. Our Annales of times speaketh thus.

Mense Ianuario, DCCCXX. *Aquisgrani* conuentus est habitus, *in quo* Bera *Comes Barcinonæ, qui iam-diu, fraudis, & infidelitatis à vicinis suis Comitibus infimulabatur, cum accusatore suo* equestri pugna *confligere conatus, vincitur. Cumque vt* reus Maiestatis, *sententia damnaretur*, Armis effractis *parsum est ei, misericordiâ Imperatoris, & Rotomagum exilio proscriptus est.*

Aquisgrane in Germanie.

In the Moneth of Ianuarie, Anno DCCCXX. *A Sessions was held at Aquisgranum, wherein Bera, Count of Barcellona, who had long time bin accused by the neighbouring Counts of falsehood and disloyaltie. He attempting to answere his Accuser in a Combat on Horseback; was ouercome and vanquished. And hauing receiued sentence of condemnation, as guiltie of Treason; was pardoned, his Armes of honor were broken, according to Order. And*

(by the mercie of the Emperour) he was proscribed, and sent in exile to Rouen.

Bernard had the goods and gouernments of the vanquished.

The goods and Gouernments of *Bera*, were giuen to *Bernard*, issued of the Bloud Royall, God-sonne and neere kinsman to the *Debonnaire*; as we are informed by *Theganus*, Archbishop of *Treuers*, in the Historie of his time. And in this quality of a Prince, this King the *Debonnaire* made him Great Chamberer or Chamberlaine, of *France* (anciently these were two Soueraign Offices of the Kings House; but that of Great Chamberer hath bin suppressed, as we haue showne in our Treatise of the Crowne Officers.) This Office requiring residency in the Court; enuious enemies to *Bernard* (Authors of a bloudy League, against the *Debonnaire* & his State) accused the Count of *Barcellona Bernard*, to haue ouerfamiliar priuacie with the Empresse *Iudith*, wife to the *Debonnaire*.

A challenge of Combat without acceptance

He holding his Parliament at *Nimegen*, on the Riuer of *Vahall*; *Bernard* there presented himselfe, and maintained that he was falsely accused, threw downe his Glous as Gage of Battaile: which no one (in the troupe of his Accusers) expressed any will or forwardnesse to take vp. So is it obserued by the same *Theganus*, to checke those *Spanish* Authors, who haue not forgot to set downe this calumnie in writing, against the honor and modestie of Queene *Iudith*.

Ludouicus *in palatio Theodonis* (saith Theganus) *erat, cum Filijs suis Lotario, & Ludouico; & Ibi supradictus Bernardus purificauit se, de obiecto stupro, postquam Nullus inuentus est, qui ausus fuisset* cum armis iam dictam rem ei imponere.

Lodowicke *was in the Pallace of Theodon, with his Sonnes* Lotharius *and* Ludouicus: *And there the aboue named* Bernard, *acquitted himselfe of the action obiected maliciously against him. After that there could be none found, that durst (by way of Armes) auouch the said matter laid to his charge.*

And yet notwithstanding, *Duelloes* and Combats at extremitie (which all our Romancers called *The Field of Death*) were quailed and abolished in *France*, by the Testamentarie Ordenance of the Father to the *Debonnaire*, our King *Charlemaigne*, in the yeare of Grace Eight hundred and sixe.

Si Causa, vel intentio controuersiæ talis inter Partes propter terminos, & confinia Regnorum orta fuerit, quæ Hominum testimonio declarari, vel definiri non possit; tunc voluntas vt ad declarationem eius rei dubiæ, iudicio Crucis Dei voluntas, & rerum Veritas inquiratur. Nec vnquam pro tali causa, cuiuslibet generis pugna, vel campus, ad examinationem iudicetur.

If an occasion or intention of such a controuersie shall arise betweene parties, concerning the limits and bounds of Kingdomes, which cannot be made manifest, or defined by the testimonie of men: Then we will, that for the declaration of this doubtfull matter; the will of God, and the truth of things be enquired after, by the doome or sentence of the Crosse. Nor at any time (for such like causes) may Combat or fight of any kinde, or the Field be granted, for searching out of the same.

He rather affected, to leaue the triall to the Crosse, that is to say, *To Racking* and *Tortures*; then to diside such cases by *Duello*, or Combat at the Sharpe. Which the same Emperour would haue to be vtterly suppressed, and admitted the triall of the Crosse, which he had before abolished, as already hath bin said.

Extremitie of euils grow with the times

Vnder the third Ligne of our Kings (which God hath conserued vnto vs, and blessed in infinite Ages, euen to this present, and it (alone) hath endured longer then both the other together) we haue yet noated the aduantage or excesse, of this rage and infernall furie in reuenge and Combat, to take his full course in *France*.

This rauenous Wolfe, fleshed with the bloud of our *French* Nobilitie, made intrusion long time after the changing and succession of the said third Ligne to the Crowne of *France*: had not the happy fortune of *Hugh Capet*; the wisedome of *Robert* his Sonne and Companion; the iudgement of King *Henry* the first; and the peacefull Reigne of *Phillip*, first of the name, preuented it by better order. After long Warres, these Wolues entred boldly into Cities and Townes, to make themselues drunke with humaine bloud, as during all the time of the Warre. The very same courses got footing in *France*, at declyning of the stearne tempests, in the vnfortunate Reigne of *Charlemaines* Sonnes: when all went to confusion, prey and bootie, euery one liuing as themselues listed, without either feare of God, King or

Iustice, and especially in those Prouinces, which were farre off from the Kings abiding.

Great men serued as shadowes, couertures and retreates, for all the wicked rascalitie of the Kingdome, by whose meanes, Counts and Gouernours of Prouinces (cut off from the Kings) were at defiance one with another; to the end, that they might haue some subiect, to reuenge their quarrels by Combat, or in Troupes, pilling and robbing the plaine Countries, and taking Prisoners, euen as in time of open Warres. For, after the word of Challenge or defiance was sent out (which lasted commonly foureteene dayes:) they would runne violently one vpon another, cutting mens throates, as if they had bin bruite beasts, or else surprizing them vpon paiment of ransomes.

Great mens countenance is none of the encouragements.

The *Gallicane* Church sought meanes to hinder the *Duelloes*, Encounters, courses and Robberies of the Nobilitie, done with such extremitie one against another. The Churches arme being not strong enough, to hinder the progression of these disorders: recourse was made to God, by Fasting and Prayer; Spirituall Armes, which worke more effectually, then all the power of earthly Princes can doe.

Spirituall armes exceed those of Princes.

The Bishops of *France* being assembled together, made these Decrees.

Vt Arma quisque non ferret: Directa non repeteret: Sui sanguinis, vel cuiuslibet Proximi minimè vltor existens. Percussoribus cogeretur indulgere. Ieiunium in Pane, & Aquæ omni Sexta Feria seruarent. In Sabbatho à Carne, & Liquamine abstinerent; soloque hoc contenti Ieiunio, in omnium peccatorum remissionem, nullam sibi ferrent aliam subeiendam pœnitentiam, si prædicta seruare sacramento firmarent. Quod qui nollet, *Christianitate priuaretur; & exeuntem de seculo Nullus visitaret*, nec Sepulturæ traderet.

Not any one should beare Armes, or should require to haue them againe, being taken from him, as being (by no meanes) a reuenger either of his owne bloud, or the bloud of any of his kinred. But should euery Friday keepe his Fast with Bread and Water; He should abstaine from Flesh and fat meates vpon the Sabaoth day. And being so satisfied with this Fasting onely, should learne to know; that no other kinde of penance shall be imposed vpon him or them, for the remission of all their sinnes; if they haue bound themselues by the Sacrament, to obserue and keepe all the premises. Which things whosoeuer shall refuse to doe; they are to be depriued of Christianity, and at his departing out of this world, he is not to be visited by any one, nor allowed to haue Christian buriall giuen him.

That euery man for his owne part, should desist from bearing Armes, and surceasse from robbing, spoyling or destroying any thing. Nor should pursue reuenge, to cause any bloud spilt, either for friend or Kinsman: but contrariwise, to pardon his enemies. That they should Fast euery Friday with Bread and Water, and on the Saturdayes should abstaine from feeding on flesh, or on any thing wherein was fatnesse. That performing thus abstinence, without any other penitence; all the sinnes of them were pardoned, that tooke Oathe, to keepe and obserue those things which were ordained by the Church. But whosoeuer dared to doe otherwise, should remaine excommunicated, cut off as a rotten member from the Communion and Prayers of the Church, and chancing to dye so, should be depriued of buriall.

This is thus recorded by *Sigebert* in his Chronicle, vnder the yeare of Grace One thousand thirtie and two.

When fraile hope is weakest, Gods arme is strongest.

This was one inducement, of bringing the poore people to peace, and that the Great men among them, made a cessation from Armes: a cessation, which happened euen as it were by miracle, quite contrarie to all humaine hope. And therefore it was honored with the name of *Treuga Dei, The Truce of God*, confirmed in the yeare of Grace One thousand fortie and one, by an abstaining from Warre, betweene the Kings, Princes and Great Lords, Noblemen and Yeomen: who pardoning all receiued wrongs, with free and chearefull hearts, embraced one another, eate, dranke and conuersed together in securitie; which neuertheless was of no long continuance.

Because, as the same *Sigebert*, and our great Chronicle informeth vs, that the two Counts, named *Raymonds* of *Toloſſa* and of Saint *Gilles*, and the King of *Arragon*, warred stearnely each against other, without any apparance or likelihood

of agreement. But it is said, that our Lord appeared to a poore simple man, named *Durand*, a Carpenter by his trade (which in *Languedocke* they call *Chapuis*) dwelling in the Citie of *Puy* in *Auuergne*. To him he gaue a Letter sealed, and in it was imprinted the figure of the *Sacred Virgin, seated in a Chaire, holding her Sonne vpon her knee*, And as a Legend about the same Seale, was engrauen these words: *Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccata Mundi, dona nobis pacem.*

An apparition to be beleeued as men are thereto affected.

When the newes of this apparition was published abroad; the Counts of *Tolosa* and of Saint *Gilles*, with all the people of the neighbouring Countries, went in order of Procession together and Pilgrimage, to *Nostre Lame du Puy*, vpon the day of Ascension, according to the auncient custome. All the people being assembled, the Bishop of the Citie of *Puy* tooke the same *William Durand*, who was naked, and a poore Carpenter (these are the words of the great Chronicle) and placed him in the midst of all the Congregation, to tell the command giuen him by our Lord.

A relation out of the great Chronicle of France.

When he perceiued, that they were all bent with serious attention to heare him: he began to deliuer his Message, and boldly commanded them from our Lord, that they should make peace among themselues. Then all began to cry, sigh, shed teares, and to praise the pittie and compassion of our Lord. And the two Princes, who before had so sharpely contended in Warre, as no peace could be listned to: did instantly sweare it on the Text of the Euangelists, with chearefull hearts, and conformable wils, promising to our Lord; that they would euer after liue in Loue and Concord one with another. And in signe of a testimonie, of this reconciliation made by them; they caused to be imprinted in Tinne, the Seale belonging to the Scedule, and the whole Image of our Lady, which they caried thence with them, fastened vpon their white Hoods or Chapperons, being shaped after the manner of Scapularies, worne by Religious men in Abbeyes.

A louing reconciliation betweene the two displeased Princes.

And yet a much greater wonder happened, for such as wore those Signes or significations, were thereby so safly secured and warranted, that if it happened by accident, that one man had slaine another, and should meete with him that kild the Brother of him dead, and well knew him to be the deathsman of his Brother; all malice was by him forgotten and forgiuen, he would kindely respect him, enfold him in his armes, yea, kisse him, in signe of Peace and Loue with sighes & teares, take him home to his House, seating meate and drinke before him, and supplying all his other necessities. And this Peace was made in *Puy* by *Durand* the honest simple man, who liued long after: and this is recorded in our Chronicles.

A wonder somewhat difficult to be credited.

And so, for some space of time these *Duelloes* and Combats at the Sharpe ceased. But the Diuell raised them vp againe in fresh forme and fashion, for his owne sporting, vnder the Reignes of *Phillip Augustus*, his Sonne *Lewes* the eight, and the good King Saint *Lewes*. It was a lamentable thing to behold, that Bishops of *France* would themselues permit *Duelloes*, and take (to their owne benefit) the fines and confiscations. In the Registers of our Court of Parliament, is inserted the agreement made, betweene *Richard* King of *England*, in name, and as Count of *Anion* and *Bertholmew*, then Archbishop of *Tours*, and done by consent of our King *Phillip Augustus*, their Soueraigne Lord. Among other Articles is namely couenanted that for the Field of Battaile.

Duelloes and Combats permitted by Bishops, for their owne benefit.

Duella *tam de Marchaio, quàm de Cainone* (de Marchais, & de Chinon) *sunt Archiepiscopi, si fuerint inter Homines suos; & solent fieri in Espaulo apud Cainonem, & Praesentia, & Campus sunt Archiepiscopi, & poterit eos ducere Archiepiscopus quando voluerit. Et si* Duellum *fuerit inter Hominem Comitis, & Hominem Archiepiscopi, tale Duellum fiet apud Cainonem, nec Archiepiscopus, nec Comes tale Duellum extra Castellariam Cainonis faciet fieri. Vterque autem de proprijs Hominibus Duellum faciet fieri vbi voluerit. Verum si Homo Archiepiscopi conquestus fuerit de Homine Comitis, & Duellum adiudicatum fuerit, Duellum erit Comitis: Si vero Homo Comitis conquestus fuerit de Homine Archiepiscopi, & Duellum fuerit adiudicatum,* Duellum similiter erit Archiepiscopi.

Duelloes and Combats, as well concerning the Marchais, as the Chinon, belong to the Archbishops. If they shall happen betweene their men, and are wont to be performed in the Espaulo at the Chinon: both the Presence and the Fields are the Archbishops, and the Archbishop may want and giue them when he will. But if the Combat shall happen betweene

tweene a Counts man, and an Archbishops man: then such a Duello must be done at the Chinon. Nor shall the Archbishop or the Count cause such a Combat to be done, without the Castell of the Chinon: But either of them, concerning their owne seuerall men, shall cause the Combat to be performed where they please. But if the Archbishops man shall be Plaintiffe against the Counts man, and the Combat be granted; then the Combat is to be the Counts. And if the Counts man be Plaintiffe against the Archbishops man, and the Combat adiudged; the Combat in like manner shall be the Archbishops.

At the Prouinciall Councill of *Normandie*, held at *L'Isle-banne* (by permission of the said King *Phillip Augustus*) set downe likewise in the Registers of the Parliament Court; is to be read an Article, wherein is said; *That Priests may not fight in Combats, without the permission of their Bishops.* You see how the Diuell sowed his seedes among some Priests, of medling in the furious exercise of Armes.

Priests allowed to fight in Duelloes and Combats.

Duelloes and Combats had their course likewise, vnder the most happy Reigne of the good King Saint *Lewes*, and especially there was one assigned before him. *Mathew Paris* reporteth in his Historie of *England*, that in the yeare One thousand two hundred fortie and three, the Count *de la March*, *Hugh* of *Luzignan*, called *Le Brun* (whose Armes and Genealogie we haue obserued in the precedent Booke) was accused before the King Saint *Lewes*, and his Brother the Count of *Poictou*, *Monsieur Alphonsus* of *France*) of perfidious dealing, treason, and many other enormous crimes, by a *French* Knight. Whereupon the said Count was arrested prisoner, and committed to safe custodie for further proofe.

A Historie out of Mathew Paris.

Now, although the Count denied it strongly and constantly; yet notwithstanding, the Knight (according to the auncient custome of the *French*) threw downe his Gloue as a Gage of Battaile. *Licet Comes Marchiæ constanter inficiaretur, statim Miles supradictus, More Francorum Chirotecam ei porrexit, se offerens*, and offering to maintaine, that what he had said, was true, by the Combat of his body against the Knights, before the Court, desiring to the same end, that the day might be assigned, and the Field of Battaile, according to the auncient Lawes of the *French*, at all times approued. The Count tooke vp the Gage, and promised to defend his innocencie against the Appellant.

The Knight threw downe his Gloue and the Count tooke it vp

The Sonne to the Count *de la March*, vndertooke the action for his Father, humbly entreating the King, that he might be admitted the Combat for his Father, albeit vnequall in yeares to the Appealant. Which was hindered by the Count of *Poictiers*, who said, that the Count onely was to fight the Combat. Which being so agreed on, and the day of Battaile appointed; the Appealant, and the Appealed withdrew themselues for their owne preparation, and fitting all things necessary for the Combat.

Isabel, wife to the Count *de la Marche* (who formerly had bin wife to *John without Land*, King of *England*, and bare yet the qualitie and title of a Queene) hauing heard of these newes, and that the crimes wherewith her Husband was accused, were his ordenary trickes of behauiour, she fled immediately, to conceale her selfe in a secret Chamber, belonging to the Abbey of *Font-Eurald*. Where yet (neuertheless she was discouered by the *French* and *Poicteuins*, who hated her to the death for her diuers vngracious behauiours; and in regard whereof, the *Poictinins* called her *Iezabell*.

This is the same Lady, in more fitting place before remembred.

And yet notwithstanding, this Combat was delayed and hindered, at the earnest solicitings and entreaties of the Lords of the Court: yet rather in fauour of the children to the Count *de la Marche*, then for any respect to himselfe. And let it be admitted (saith *Mathew Paris*) that the foyle had falne on him; his goods being gone with him, and confiscated (according to the custome of *France*) the Children should haue bin in most miserable condition. So that by the meanes of friends, the choller of the King, and of the Count his Brother was appeased, the Knight Appealant satisfied and contented,, and the Count had his life saued, and his faults couered.

The Combat hindred and neuer performed.

The same King Saint *Lewes*, desiring neuertheless, to ouerthrow the vse of

The words of the Decree.

Duelloes and Combats, made this Ordenance, reported by *Aufrerus*, President of *Tolossa*, in the stile of the same Parliament. *We prohibite (throughout our Kingdome) Battailes, in all causes whatsoeuer: And insted of Battailes, we appoint proofes to be made by Charters and Witnesses.* It's set downe in the Court Regisiters of Parliament at *Paris*, vnder the yeare One thousand two hundred and threescore, and was kept so long as King *Lewes* liued.

Combats often suppressed and as often reuiued.

But vnder the Reigne of *Phillip* the *Hardie*, his Sonne, and third of the name, this infernall & hellish custome of Combats recouered new strength. So that *France* was (on all sides) full of bloud and slaughters of the Nobilitie, who massacred themselues, by cutting the throates of one another, as this furious monster, and the meanest thwarting word, serued sufficiently to cause a Challenge and defiance. Whereupon, he gaue command to *Mesire Phillip de Beaumanoir*, Knight, the very learnedst Ciuile Lawyer (of his time) in *France*, he hauing bin first Bayliffe in the Countie of *Clermont* in *Beauuoisis* (for *Monsieur Robert* of *France*, Count of the said *Clermont*, and Sonne to Saint *Lewes*) and afterward Bayliffe of *Senlis*: He gaue charge (I say) to him, to set downe in writing, the cases which concerned *Duelloes* and Combats. As accordingly he did, writing the Customes obserued in *Beauuoisis*, in threescore and ten Chapters, whereof, the threescore and first Chapter, containeth the matter of Combat. Which Treatise (saith he himselfe) was made in the yeare One thousand two hundred fourescore and three, the third yeare of the Reigne of the said King *Phillip* the *Hardie*.

Here followeth the Chapter Threescore and one, written by Mesire Phillip de Beaumanoir, *Knight: Which discourseth on Appeales: And how a man ought to forme his Appeale: And in what cases he is to Appeale: And with what Armes he is to Combat.*

CHAP. III.

Seuerall arguments obiected by the Author in cases of this nature.

MAny times it commeth so to passe in Laye Courts, that Suites and differences fall vnder the *Gage of Battaile*, wherein it is the purpose of the one, to call the other by name of a Villaine, before the Bench of Iustice. Whereforeit is very expedient, that we should make a Chapter proper and peculiar thereto, which will instruct; in what case a man may Appeale, and how he ought to forme his Appeale; as also the perils betweene such Appeales, and which Lords ought not to suffer. Moreouer, that such as will Appeale, should know, how they ought to maintaine the Plea of Gages: and the end whereto they will arriue, if they fall into such manner of Plaint.

A man may appeale in all cases of crime.

In all cases of Crime, a man may Appeale, or come to Gages, if the Accuser will make the Accusation, according to that which the Appealed must doe. For it is conuenient, that he which is appealed, should defend himselfe, or else he must remaine attainted of the fact. But yet there is another way, then by direct Appeale. For the Appeale may be so made, as he that appealeth will haue it to be. He may deliuer to the Iudge, that the offence was committed, in the view and knowledge of so many worthy persons, as it could no way be concealed. And hereupon, he ought to deale as becommeth a iust Iunge, and to make direct enquirie; in regard that the partie would not be called in question. If he doe finde the offence to be notorious and apparant, he must doe iustice according to the offence. For it were a wicked thing, if a man should kill my neerest kinsman at an open Feast, or before, or in the presence of great store of good people: if I should not enter the Combat in his cause, to haue due reuenge executed for him. Hereupon, and in such cases as are apparant, a man may step forth by way of denomination.

Informations deliuered to the Iudge.

He that will rightly appeale, if the case concerne murder, he ought to deliuer his minde

minde thus to the Iudge. *Sir, I am to speake to you of such a man* (and then he ought to name him) *who hath wickedly and by Treason murdered such a person* (and then hee must name the partie dead:) *who was my Kinsman, and the deede was done by his meanes, and by his act, and by his procurement.* If he doe acknowledge it: *I require you, that you would deale with him as with a Murtherer. If he doe denie it, I will approue it with my body against his; or by a Man that may or shall doe it for me, against him that auoideth it by Excuse. As I will apparantly shew, vpon Time and Place appointed.* If he doe appeale the partie, without any other Auoucher then himselfe: then he is to Combat in his owne person, and afterward can haue no other Auoucher.

The complaint vrged in case of murder.

If the Appeale be made in any other case then Murder, as killing accidently, Manslaughter, or any of the forenamed cases, wherein appeale may be made: he must declare the case whereby he appealeth, and tell the manner of the fact: he must offer to approue it, if it be denied by the other partie, or any other man for him, as before hath bin said

Concerning Manslaughter, &c.

He that is Appealed, ought not to depart from before the Iudge, vntill he haue answered the Appeale. And if he haue any reasons, whereby he can say, that he ought not to be so appealed: he is to propound them, and to demand right vpon euery reason, as if they had bin proposed in their seuerall degrees. Affirming, that if Law doe not allow his reasons to be good, why Gages may not be granted, in such a villainous detection imposed on him: then he may denie the fact wherewith he is charged, and offer defence in his owne person, or by another man to doe it for him; as craning Essoigne, to be further testified at Time and Place. Then the Iudge is to take the Gages of the Appealer, and the Appealed, as satisfied with the reasons of the partie appealed.

Need pawne from the Iudge till the appeale be answered.

If he that Appealeth or is Appealed, would haue a friend or Aduoucher that is to Combat for him: he must shew his Essoigne and excuse, when the Battaile shall be adiudged. And there are many Essoines, whereby, or by some one of them, a man may haue an Aduoucher for him. One of these Excuses is, if he desire to haue an Aduoucher, he must shew, that he is defectiue or wanting in some of his members, by reason whereof, it is euident and apparant, that his body is so much the weaker. A second excuse is, if he exceede the Age of threescore yeares. A third, if he haue any auncient or wonted disease, which happeneth suddenly vpon him: As the ioints-Goute, the *Vertigo* or Dizzinesse in the Braine, the Falling-Sickenesse, and such like. The fourth is, if hee be subiect to a Feauer Quartane or Tertian, or any other disease openly knowne, and without fraude. The fift Essoine is, if a Woman appeale, or is appealed: because a Woman cannot Combate.

Liegers or excuses for an Aduoucher to fight for the partie.

The Excuses allowable in the seuerall degrees.

If a Gentleman doe Appeale a Gentleman, both the one and other being Knighted, they are to Combat on Horseback, armed with all such Weapons as they please; except a sharpe pointed Poniard, and massie-Battaile-Axe. Nor ought any man to haue more then two Swords, and his Lance; but if they be Esquires, they are to haue also two Swords and a Lance.

Concerning such Gentlemen as are Knights.

But if the Knight or Squire Appealeth *Homme de Poeste* (that is to say, a Yeoman or Francklin, *Alienæ potestatis subditus*, whom *Boutillier* calleth a Custommarie man, in his *Somme Rurall*. The Custome of *Bar le Duc*, Articles ten and twelue, *Terre de Poie*, Articles Seauenteene, and the Hundred and Eighteene, *Terre in Roture*, Hee is to Combate on Foote, Armed in the fashion of a Champion, and likewise as a man *De Poeste* or Yeaman. For in regard he abased himselfe, to appeale so base a person; his dignity is reduced (in that case) to such Armours, as hee that is appealed ought to haue by right. For it were a very cruell admittance, that if a Gentleman should appeale a Yeoman or Peazant; to suffer him therefore to haue aduauntage of fighting on Horse back.

Men subiect to the command of others

When men abuse themselues by their Appeales.

But if a Yeoman or Francklin doe appeale a Gentleman, hee is to Combate on Foote, in the manner of a Champion; but the Gentleman on Horseback, Armed with all his Armes. For in the case of defending himselfe, it is very conuenient, that he should vse his owne aduauntage.

If one Yeoman or Francklin, doe appeale an other of the same quality and condition;

Of Yeomen appealing one another.

dition; the Combate is to be performed on Foote. And such is the quality of the Champion to a Gentlewoman, if shee appeale, or be appealed, as before the Law hath deuised.

Priuiledges of the Soueraigne.

The Horse and Armour, of such as come into the Soueraignes Court to Combate, belong to the Soueraigne, whether Peace be made or not: neither can Peace bee made, or quite disclaymed eche of other, without consent of the Soueraigne. But if they fight the Combate, and the Horses be slaine, and the Armes defaced; the Soueraigne can haue no restorement. But hee that is vainquished, looseth his Body, and whatsoeuer he hath, or holdeth of any Lord, the forfeiture comming to eche Lord of whom he holdeth: his moueables, House or Castell also, returne to the Lords vnder whom they are found to belong. In this manner, whosoeuer proueth to be thus condemned, by the same action he looseth his body; his moueables and inheritances are left in such sort. And the Lords which enioy them (by reason of forfeiture) stand not bound to pay any thing; for hee so condemned, hath discharged any such debt.

The lands and goods of the vanquished.

Euery day, when Gentlemen come to the Court for Gadges, or to countermaund dayes, which may bee countermaunded; for the first dayes fine or amends Tenne Shillings must be paid; the second day Twenty; and the third day Forty Shillings. All these dayes must be assigned by Iustice, or prolonged by consent of the Party, for which euery dayes fine is to bee doubled. But the Battaile graunted to a Yeoman, or Francklin; the fine for the first dayes delay is Fiue Shillings; the second Tenne, and the third day Twenty, euermore doubling in that manner.

Fines for prolonging of dayes.

If the Battayle be in Court betweene men of the County, about Moueables and Goods, or for Inheritance of Yeomens Lands: the vanquished party looseth the Quarrell, for which the Gadges were giuen and graunted. And the Fine to the Lord, in whose Court (soeuer) the Battaile was wadged, is Threescore Shillings. But if the Battaile be of Gentlemen; He that is vanquished looseth the Quarell, and the Fine to the Lord is Threescore Poundes.

Battaile for Goods, Lands or Inheritances.

By the Custome of *Clermont*, in Gadges for Goodes or Lands, eche Party haue his Aduoucher or Vndertaker for him, if he doe require it; bee it that hee haue Essoine, or none at all, and the Champion vanquished hath his hand cut off. For were it not in regard of the Maime hee beareth, some by Cousenage and cheating might counterfeite for the recompence, or proclaime himselfe to bee vanquished coullorably. Wherefore his Maister is to beare the Domage and disgrace, and he shall cary away the money: in which respect the iudgement of Maiming is good.

Losse of hand to the vanquished Champion.

It is expedient for him that will Appeale an otherman, or many persons in a case of villainous crime: that he take heede how he doeth appeale them. For if he would appeale two, three or more, and throwe downe Gadges against them: hee should appeale one of them only in person, and haue there ready some such of his Friendes, as may appeale the rest eche man personally. For if hee appeale them all in his owne person, and offer defence against them all: the Law requireth it necessarily, that he alone must fight the Combate, against all them that hee hath appealed. And concerning this Case, you shall see what ensued (not long since) in the Kings Courte.

Of Appealing diuers persons with Gadges.

A Knight appealed three other Knights of a Man-slaughter, done by Treason and wickedly. And if they confessed the fact, he requested, that they might be punished as such offenders deserued. But if they denied it; he offered to approue it by himselfe, or by others, with Gadges of Battaile. Whereunto the other three made answere, that they denyed the fact, and offered to defend themselues against him, who had there instantly appealed them. But because he had said, that hee would proue it by others with him, and they were not named in the Appeale: they would not allow, that he should deliuer Gadges for any other with him; but required, that he, as he had himselfe alone appealed them all Three, and in a case of villainous wrong, which they themselues were there ready to defend and answere: so he might Combate alone in person against them all three, without any other ayde or helpe with him, and heereupon the Law resolued.

Of one knight that appealed three other Knights.

For it was adiudged, that the Knight who had made his Appeale, should Combate

bate in person against them all Three: because no person may be appealed, that is not present. So the day of Battayle was assigned, and before the appointed day came, one of the three Knights died. The other two came into the Court Armed, and he likewise that had appealed them. After the Oathes were taken; in regard there wanted a Party, by meanes whereof they might not goe together: Peace and agreement was made betweene them. By this Iudgement you may perceiue, that when any man will accuse, and offer Gages for diuers persons in a Case of Crime: eche man must bee there present, and named, in regard of the perill thereon ensuing.

Sentences and Iudgements of the Court.

A Caueat for forming the Appeale.

He therefore that will wisely Appeale, and pursue it in discreete manner, if hee will Combate with no more the one man only: when hee perceiueth the Iudges prepared to giue sentence, before they deliuer a word; he is to speake to the Lord that holdeth the Court, in this manner.

Sir, I am to haue heere a Iudgement this day, and I require, that you would cause it to be pronounced by one of these men, as in case of a Iury, and that the Iudgement pronounced by him, you would demaund of the next man following him, and so of eche man by himselfe leasurably: that I may perceiue, if the Iudgement be against me, and who will appeale, that Iudgement may follow.

The forme of discreet and wisely proceeding.

And the Court ought to graunt him this request. And when Iudgement is pronounced by one of the men, and the second man following: he need attend no longer for making his Appeale, but should call to the next Man, and say in this manner to the Iustice.

Sir, I say that this Iudgement which is deliuered against me, and whereunto P. hath condescended, is false, wicked and disloyall, and for such will I make it against the said P. (who is consenting to the Iudgement, by my selfe, or by a Man that may and shall doe it for me, as hee that hath Essoyne, which I will shew in place conuenient, euen in this Court heere, or in an other, Whether Law may bring me, by reason of this Appeale.

When he shall haue so said: he that is Appealed, must make answere, saying.

The Iudgement is good and Loyall, and I offer in Law to approue with him, or an other for him, that may do it in regard of his excuse or Essoine, either in this Court heere, or else where Law shall bring me.

And then he should request, that it may be demaunded of all the men, if they be agreed vpon this Iudgement: because his defence is the fayrer, when they all haue graunted agreement thereunto.

The Iudges to demaund Gadges.

And then is the Iudge to receiue the Gages, and to take good Security of him that Appealed, for the pursuite of his Appeale. But he that followeth the Iudgement, he needeth not to giue any surety: in regard that he is the Man, who if he bring not the Iudgement to good effect; he shall loose the Iudgement, and must pay Threescore Pounds to the Lord. But for him that Appealed, if the Iudgement fall foule on his side: he is to pay Threescore Pounds Fine, and to him against whom he made the Appeale, Threescore Pounds more. And if he Appeale many men, he must make amends to euery man by himselfe, and the amends to each man is Threescore Pounds; in which respect it is very requisite, that he deliuer good Security for pursuing his Appeale.

Of 60 s. and Fines to be paide.

When Gages are giuen in a Case of Crime, or vpon a false Iudgement: the Parties may not make Peace, without the agreement of the Lord.

Thus you see what we haue learned from the Lord of *Beaumanoir*, wherein are many other things well worthy the obseruation, which I let passe vnder silence, to haste the sooner to my iourneyes end. Only let me tell thee Gentle Reader, that from these Gages of Battaile, hath proceeded the custome, of condemning in Fines the Parties Appellant, as well in matters Ciuile, as Criminall, Fines applicable as well to the King, as also to the Parties, according to the nature of the causes, which are mooued by Appeale in the Court of Parliament, and other subalternate Courts, for which (heeretofore) the Apellants stood bound to deliuer Caution: which were no more to be done, if the Appellants be naturall Subiects borne, and dwelling in the Kingdome.

The Custome of condemning in Fines.

Phillip le Bell (Sonne and Successour to King *Phillip* the *Hardy*) King of *France* and *Nauarre*,

Prohibition of Duells and Combates.

Nauarre, by his Ordenance in the yeare One Thousand, Three Hundred and three, prohibited *Duelloes* and Combates to his Subiects, vpon paine of being punished, as in the case of High-Treason.

But about three yeare after, he was constrained to reuoake this Ordenance, and to permit Combates againe, to auoyde worse occasions: with certaine modifications and restraints in those Combates, which the Court permitted in foure cases only, to wit.

Foure Cases for admission of Combats.

First, when the delict propounded against any one, deserued to be punished with death: As Murder, which *Mathew Paris* calleth *Crimen pessimum*, speaking of. *Iohn Without-Land*, who stabde (with his owne hand) his Nephewe *Arthur* of *Bretaigne*.

Second, when an acte was perpetrated and committed so closely and cunningly; as it could not be proued by witnesses, presumptions and other meanes.

Thirdly, when the party accused was called to the Combate, as being suspected to haue committed the Crime, by apparant Indices and presumptions: And

Fourthly, *Quando constabat de Cadaucre*, when it was euidently notorious, that the Crime had bin done and committed.

In these Cases only, the *Duell* and Combate was permitted by the King, and by his Court of Parliament, and not otherwise.

Now heere we will set downe this Ordenance of Combate, in the Foure cases before remembred; with such Ceremonyes as were vsed in those singular Combates, perfourmed in the yeare of Grace One thousand, three hundred and sixe.

The Ordenance consulted and agreed on, concerning Duells and Combates: And the Ceremonies, to bee obserued and Kept, in Combates at the Sharpe and vtmost extremity.

CHAP. IIII.

A Coppy of the Kings Letters Patents.

PHILLIP, *By the Grace of God, King of* France *and of* Nauarre, *to all such as shall see and reade these our Letters Patents, Greeting. We make knowne, that as heeretofore, for the common benefit of our Kingdomes, wee did generally prohibite to all our Subiects, all manner of warres, and all Gadges of Battailes, whereby many malefactors put forward themselues, by strength of their bodies and false engines, to commit Homicides, Treasons and all other offences in great excesse, because when they had done them couertly and closely, they could not be conuinced by witnesses, and so the offence remained as countenanced. Now in regard that what we haue done, is not only for the common profit and good of our Kingdome, but likewise to take away from euill doers, all meanes whereby they may in such manner offend: Wee haue qualified our former prohibition in such sort, that where euident apparance may be discerned, of Homicide, Treason, or other grieuous violences and vile actions (only Theft excepted) whereby paine of death ought to follow, yet the transgressions are so closely carried, that the committing of them, and hee that therein hath offended, cannot be conuinced by Testimonies, or other sufficient meanes. It is Our will, that in such occasions of defaytance, hee, or they, that by Indice or Presumptions neerlie leaning to the trueth, concerning the deede done, vpon such facts suspected, shall bee cited and appealed to the Gage of Battaile, and in such cases, the Gage of Battayle ought to take place. And because in this kinde of Iustice onely, wee purposed our former prohibition, forbidding places and times for such Gages of Battayle: it is not now our meaning, that the same prohibition shall be repealed, nor extend to any cases formerly past, nor after the date of these Our present Letters, whereby condemnations, absolutions or enquiries should bee made: to the end that it may be iudged, absolued or condemned according to the fact, as in such cases is required, and thereto plainely appertaineth.*

In Witnesse whereof, we haue caused our Great Seale to be affixed to these presents.

Giuen at *Paris* on Wednesday ---------- In the yeare of Grace, One thousand, three hundred and sixe, and of Our Reigne the one and twentieth.

Concerning those Foure things. necessarily appertayning to bee done, before the Gage for Battayle may be adiudged.

I. FIrst of all it is Our will and ordenation, that deed the shall be notorious and euidently certaine, that the euill acte hath happened, and the same acte to appeare plainely: whether it be, Murder, Man-slaughter, Treason, or the like offence by euident suspition. Apparance of the deed to be done.

The Second is, whether the case be such, that death ought to follow thereon, or no: The case of Theft onely excepted, wherein no Gage is to be allowed; and the cause to be signified, what payne of death ought to follow thereon. No Gage in case of Theft.

The Third is, that no man is to be otherwise punished, then by way of Gage, and it is to be signified in the case of concealed Treason, if he that hath committed the acte, cannot defend himselfe but by his body. In case of priuy Treason.

The Fourth, that the party which should be appealed, must be defamed of the fact, by apparant signes, or presumptions likely to be true, and then to signifie the cause of those signes and presumptions. Signes and Presumptions.

How the Defendant should come to present himselfe before the Iudge, Without Summons or Warning.

II. WE will that in Gage of Battaile, euery man, (that tearmeth himselfe a true man,) in honesty ought to render & present himselfe, without being cited or summoned, if he know himselfe to be accused. But otherwise, delay may be giuen him, to haue the aduise of his friends: And then if he appeare not without admonition; yet is not this right thereby impaired, or his Honour any iot impeached. Appearing without summons.

That no Gage is to bee graunted for Theft or Robbery.

III. ITem we will and ordayne, according to the text of Our said Letters Patents, that considering, in the case of Theft and Robbery, the payne and penal y of death is due iustly thereto: therefore, in Theft and Robbery, no Gage of Battile is to be allowed, according as it is ordered in the case of Theft. Of Theft and Robbery.

How the Appellant is to propound his Case before the Iudge, against the party Appealed.

IIII. ITem we will and ordaine, that when the Gage of Battayle is propounded, and what paine of death is to follow vpon the deed (the case of Theft excepted, as hath bin said) It shall suffice when the Appellant saith, that the party Appealed hath committed the acte by himselfe, or by some other, suppose that the Appellant is not named heere, nor nameth any. Sufficiency in the Appellant.

Item if the case be supposed in generall tearmes, as to say. *I say this, and will say, maintaine and defend, that such a one hath trayterously slaine, or caused to be slaine such a one*: We will and ordaine, that such a kind of proposition shall not be sufficient, but vnworthy any answere, according to the stile of our Court of *France*. For it behoueth him to declare the place where the wicked deede was done, the time and the day; also the name of the party dead, or of the Treason committed. Notwithstanding, information concerning the offence may be of such condition; as there shall be no need of telling the houre nor the day, because the case may be obscure, and very difficulte to be knowne. Insufficiencie of the Appeale in generall tearmes.

Item we will and Ordaine, that if the Iudge allow the Gage or Combate, contrary

ry

No Iudge to goe against the Letters Patents.

ry to the Customes contained in our said Letters: whatsoeuer shall be done to the contrary, may lawfully be repealed.

Duties of the Appellant to perfourme.

Item we will and ordaine, that the Appellant or demaunder of Iustice, must say, or cause to be said by an Aduocate for him, his minde before vs, or some other competent Iudge for vs: against his aduerse party, he being present. And he is to be very respective, that he doe not vrge any villainous speeches, but what may tend to the quarrell only. Further, he ought to conclude with this request, that if the Appealed Party or defendant, doe confesse the matters by him propounded, to be true: that then he may be condemned, as hauing forfeited and confiscated his Body and goods to vs, and to be punished with answerable paines, as our Lawes, Customs, and the matter requireth.

The Gage to be giuen in presence of the King.

But if the Defendant or appealed Party doe denie it; then the Appellant is to say, that although he cannot proue the matter by Witnesses, or otherwise; yet neuertheless he will auouch it, by his owne body against the others, or by one to auouch it for him: In an *Enclosed Field, as a Gentleman and Honest man ought to do*, in our presence, as their Iudge and Soueraigne Prince. And then he is to cast downe his Gage of Battaile, and afterward to retaine his Counsell, for Armes, Horse and all other things, necessarily belonging to the Gage of Battaile. And then in this case, according to his Nobilitie, or other condition appertaining to him, the protestations following are required. Which *Protestations, Appellations* and *Ordenances, shall be registred downe in our Court of France, and not elsewhere, to iudge if there bee a Gage, or no.*

The Appellants speeches to the King.

And first of all he is to say: *Most Excellent and most Christian Prince, our King and Soueraigne Lord.* But if they be not of our Kingdome, in stead of Soueraigne Lord, he is to say. *Most Excellent and Most-Christian Prince, our competent Iudge, for bringing a finall end to such matters as haue bin spoken and propounded bee mee: I protest and maintaine, that by lawfull Exoine of mine owne Body, I will haue a Gentleman* (instead thereof) *this day to auouch the case for me, in my presence if I can, or else in mine absence, who by the helpe of God, and of our Lady, shall perfourme his Loyall deuoyre, at my perill, costs and charges, as reason requireth, at all, or as many wayes as you please, and likewise with Armes and Horses, as if it were my selfe in person, and according as to such a case belongeth.*

How the Defendant is to make answere in the Kings presence.

We also will and ordaine, that the defendant (if he will) may speake the contrary vpon his perill, and request, that the iniuries spoken against him by the Appellant, may be requited with such amends and punishments, as he ought to suffer in the said case. And that the said Appellant (the Honour of Our Maiesty reserued, or of his competent Iudge) hath falsely and maliciously lyed, and wicked and false he is to speake it. And that in defence of himselfe, by the helpe of God, and of our Lady, with his body, or his auoucher for him, without any Essoyne, if it be said and iudged to be a Gage of Battayle, he will be ready at the day and place, which by the King, as Soueraigne, or his competent Iudge shall bee appointed.

When he is to take vp the Gage.

And then (but not before) he is to take vp the Gage from the ground, and afterward make his protestations in manner before said; as also to request his Auoucher for him, in case of a lawfull excuse or Essoyne. Then he may demaunde, and haue his Councell, Armes, Horse and all other things necessary, answerable to the Gage for Battayle; either according to his Nobility, or whatsoeuer condition he is of else beside, as before is expressed. Which words, protestations, and defences, wee will and commaund to be likewise recorded and registred, to vnderstand, whether he may haue Gage, or no, and for Amends making each to the other, according as Iustice shall ordaine.

Oath for personall appearance at the day, houre and place appointed.

In this case, each of them shall sweare, promise and stand bound, to appeare at the day, houre and place to them assigned, as well on the day, to know if the Gage be there, as on that of Battayle, if Battayle be graunted, according to the information of the Processe; which must be seene and carefully respected, by notable wise and honest Men, Clearkes, Knights and Esquires, without bearing fauour to either party. Which Gage, or no Gage, shall be before them adiudged at the day and place, as hath

hath bin said: on paine of being taken and reputed for a *Recreant* and Conuicted person, in whom the default shall be made. And we further will and commaund, that they shall bee arrested and stayed, if they doe not deliuer good and sufficient Pledges, and not departing without our leaue and licence.

For deliuering Pledges.

What is to bee done on the Kings behalfe, if either of the Parties doe depart without taking leaue.

V. WE will and ordaine, that if any of the Parties doe depart, without leaue and licence of our Court, after the Gages are throwne downe and taken vp: He so departing without our leaue; we will and ordaine, that he shall be taken and proclaimed, to be a Recreant and conuicted villaine.

Of the Appellant and Defendant entring into the Field.

And because it hath bin, and is the custome, that the Appellant and Defendant, entring into the Field, should come in such due forme as Law hath ordained: Wee order and determine, that they must bring with them all the Armes and Weapons, wherewith they intend to offend one another, and for their owne defence. They shall depart from their Houses and Lodgings on Horseback; their Horses couered with Foote clothes, and garnishments of their Armes; the Viser or sight of their Helmets put downe; their Shields about their necks; their Launces in their hands, their Swords and Daggers guirded to them, yea, in all such fashion and manner, as they purpose to fight the Combat, be it on Horseback, or on foote. For, if they cause their Armes and Weapons to be caried by any other, and beare the Visers of their Helmets exalted or open, without our licence, or leaue of the Iudge: it will bee such preiudice to them, as they must bee constrained to Combate in that manner as they entred into the Field, and according to the present custome.

A qualification of the former ordinance.

But because this custome appeareth to vs, to be somewhat iniurious for the Combattants: by our said Letters, and our present Chapters, wee quallifie the same, willing and ordaining; that the Combattants may depart from their Lodgings, mounted and Armed as hath bin said. *The Visers of their Helmets lifted vp, and causing to bee caried before them their Shields, their Launces and other Armes, reasonable and fitt for Combating in such a case.* Moreouer, to make it openly knowne, that they be true Christians, at departing from their Lodgings so leysurely as may bee: *With their right hands they shall Crosse themselues*, or beare a Crucifixe in them, or Litle Banners, whereon shall bee portrayed, our Lord, our Lady, the Angels, he Saints or she Saints by them made choice of, and to whom they are perticulerly deuoted. With which Crosses or Banners they shall not part, vntill they alight within their Pauillions.

Shewes that the Combattants be Christians.

Heere followeth the First of the Three Cries, and the Five Prohibitions, which the King of Armes, or Herauld ought to make, at all Gages of Battayle or Combate.

VI. FIrst of all, the king of Armes, or Herauld ought to come on Horseback, to the Gate or entrance of the Lists, and there hee is to Crye once, before the comming of the Appellant.

Secondly, hee is to Crye an other time, when the Appellant and Defendant shall be entred, and shall haue made their presentations before the Iudge.

And Thirdly, when they shall be returned from making their last Oaths; according to this forme following, and crying with a loud exalted voyce.

OYez, oyez, or oyez Seigneurs, Cheualiers, Escuyers, & toutes manie res de Gens, ce que nostre Sire, le bon Roy de France vous commande & deffend sur peine de perdre Corps, & Biens.

Que Nul ne soit arme, ne porte Espee, ne Dague, ne autre Harnois quel qu'il soit, fice ne sont les Gardes du Champs; & Ceux qui par le Roy, auront congie, & pounoir de ce faire.

Encores le Roy noſtre Sire vous commande, & deffend que Nul de quelque condition qu'il ſoit, durant la Bataille ne ſoit, à Cheual; & ce ſur peine aux Gentils hommes de perdre le Cheual; & aux Seruiteurs de perdre vne Oreille: *Et Ceux qui conduiront les Combateurs, deſcenduz qu'ils ſeront à la porte du Champ, ſeront incontinent tenus d'enuoyer leurs Cheuaux, ſur la peine que dicte eſt.*

Encores le Roy noſtre Sire vous commande, & enioinct à toute Perſonne de quelque condition qu'elle ſoit, qu'il s'aſsiſe ſur Banc, ou par Terre, à ce que Chacun, puiſſe voir les Parties combattre plus à ſon gre, ſur peine d'auoir le Poing coupe.

Encores le Roy noſtre Sire vous commande, & deffend que Nul ne parle; ne face Signe; ne Crache; ne Crie; ne face aucun ſemblant quel qu'il ſoit &, ce ſur peine de perdre Corps, & Biens.

Now heare you, now heare you, now heare Lords, Knights, Eſquires, and all manner of people, that which our Lord the good King of France commandeth and prohibiteth, vpon paine of looſing Body and goods.

None but Guards of the Field to be Armed.

That no man ſhall be Armed, neither weare any Sword or Dagger, or any other Herneſſe or Armour whatſoeuer it be: If they be not Guards of the Field, and ſuch as haue leaue granted by the King, and may doe it.

None to be on Horſebacke in the Field.

Moreouer, the King our Lord commandeth, and expreſly forbiddeth, that no man (of what condition ſoeuer he be) during the time of Battaile or Combat, ſhall dare to be on Horſebacke. And that vpon penaltie to Gentlemen, of looſing their Horſes; And to Seruingmen, of looſing an Eare: And that ſuch as are appointed Guides and Conducters to the Combattants, ſhall diſmount themſelues when they come to the Gate of the Field, and their Horſes to be ſent away immediately from them, vpon the penaltie before declared.

All to ſit downe on bankes or the ground.

Moreouer, the King our Lord commandeth, and enioyneth to all perſons, of what condition or degree ſoeuer they be; that they ſeate themſelues vpon banks, or downe on the ground; to the end, that euery one may behold the parties Combatting the more eaſily; vpon paine to haue a hand cut off.

No noyſe or ſpeaking.

Moreouer, the King our Lord commandeth and forbiddeth, that any man doe ſpeake, make ſigne, ſpie, crie, nor making any ſemblance whatſoeuer: And that vpon paine of looſing body and goods.

How the Appellant ought to come on Horſebacke to the *Field, Armed withall his Armes.*

Houres of appearing in the Field.

VII. AND becauſe that (according to the auncient Cuſtomes of this our Kingdome of *France*) the Appellant ought to preſent himſelfe firſt in the Field, and before the houre of Midday: And the Defendant before the houre of foure of the clocke in the after Noone, and whoſoeuer faileth of theſe houres, is held and adiudged for a Recreant and Conuict, except the mercie of the Iudge be therein extended, which Cuſtomes we willed and commanded, to be ſtill continued and ſtand in full force: Yet notwithſtanding, vpon ſome good reaſons vs mouing thereunto, we haue qualified thoſe Ordenances, and giue our conſent; that either we our ſelfe, or the competent Iudge, may prolong or elſe ſhorten thoſe houres, according to the diſpoſitions of the times, as to all Iudges ſhall ſeeme pleaſing. And taking the Parties into our power to agree them, and to order for the good and honor of them both what may be done: or giuing another day and houre, as well before the Battailes beginning, as in the time of Combatting for finiſhing the Battaile; by bringing them both to one and the ſame point: yet neither of them to excuſe himſelfe, complaine or vſe any proteſtations, but that the ſame was done by their competent Iudges, hauing power and authoritie to doe it.

Of delaying or ſhortning the time of the Combat.

Here enſue the Requeſts and Proteſtations, which both the Parties ſhould make, at their entring into the Field.

VIII. AND to the Conſtable, Marſhals or Marſhall, that attendeth there for the buſineſſe, the Appellant ſhall ſay, or procure to be ſaid by his Aduocate, and

likewiſe to the Iudge, when he is mounted on Horſe backe for entring into the Field, theſe words which follow, but firſt at entring into the Field.

My Moſt-Honorable Lord, my Lord the Conſtable, or my Lord the Marſhall of the Field: I am ſuch a man (or elſe) Behold here ſuch a Man, who before you, as he that is appointed by our Lord the King, commeth to preſent himſelfe Armed, and mounted like a Gentleman, that muſt enter to Combat with ſuch a Gentleman, vpon ſuch a Quarrell, as with a falſe wicked Traitour or Murderer as he is. And hereof I take our Lord, our Lady, and my Lord Saint George *the good Knight to witneſſe, on this day to vs aſſigned by our Lord the King, and for the doing and accompliſhing thereof am come hither. Here I preſent my ſelfe vnto you, to doe my deuoire, requiring you, that you will impart and deliuer to me my portion of the Field, Winde and Sunne, and of all elſe that is needefull for me, conuenable and profitable in ſuch a caſe. Which being by you performed, I will doe my duetie, by the helpe of God, of our Lady, and of my Lord Saint* George *the good Knight.*

Moreouer he muſt proteſt, that he doth require it, and that it may be lawfull for him, to fight the Combat either on Horſebacke, or on foote; as to his Honor it ſhall ſeeme beſt, either Armed, or diſarmed: And to weare thoſe which ſhall like him, to offend or defend at his pleaſure to appoint, before, or in Combatting, if God will vouchſafe him the leaſure to doe it. His offers to the Marſhall.

Then he further requireth, that if the aduerſe Partie ſhall bring to the Field other Armes, then by the conſtitution of *France* he ought to bring; that they may be taken from him, and inſtead of them, he may haue no other, then ſuch as are and ought to be allowed.

Againſt Armes forge by wicked Arts and Charme.

Alſo, that if his enemie bring Armes, fordged by wicked Arts, Charmes, Sorceries or Incantations, by meanes whereof it may be manifeſtly knowne, that the truth and right of his cauſe was hindered before the Combat, or in the time of Combatting, or after he had perfformed his beſt endeauour, and ſo his right, iuſtice and honor hath bin impaired: That the proofe of ſuch wicked dealing appearing euidently, his Aduerſarie may be puniſhed, as an enemy to God, a Traitour and Murderer to him, and according to the condition of the caſe. But whether the Armes be charmed or no, his enemy ought to be ſolemnely ſworne therein.

For granting of another day, the firſt failing.

He is alſo to require and proteſt, that if the pleaſure of God be ſuch, as (before Sunne-ſetting) *He hath not diſcomfited and ſlaine his enemie* (which he purpoſed to haue done, if God had thereto bin ſo pleaſing) that a new day may be granted him, becauſe much time of this day was loſt, in paſſage of the Ceremonies before entring into Combat, according to the auncient Rites and Cuſtomes. For the ſpace of a whole day may thus be neceſſarily required: whereto we conſent, and freely grant it him.

For failing the due appointed houre.

Moreouer, that if his Aduerſarie be not come within the due houre, and aſſigned by our Lord the King: that his Aduerſarie may not afterward be accepted, but held as a Recreant and Conuicted. Yet this requeſt is to remaine within the compaſſe of our freedome and power. Neuertheleſſe, if he make delay without our will & command: it is then our pleaſure, that it ſhall be ſo, as aboue is ſaid.

Daies prouiſion for the Field.

He is further expreſly to demand and proteſt, that he may bring thither with him Bread, Wine and other Viandes, to eate and drinke for the ſpace of a day, if he ſhall be in any ſuch neede; with all things elſe conuenient and requiſite for him and his Horſe, in ſuch a caſe. Which proteſtations and requeſts, as well in generall, as in eſpeciall, he ought to require an Act and Inſtrument of. And the ſame requeſts and proteſtations of the Appellant, we will and ordaine that the Defendant may make likewiſe, and in the ſame forme of the Appellant: except the ſaid requeſts and proteſtations, ſhall be eſpecially and reſpectiuely forbidden by both the parties themſelues. We alſo will and ordaine, that they may Combat on Horſebacke, or on foote, with all Staues and Armours; except ſuch as are forged by wicked engine, Charmes, Enchantments, and Inuocations vpon Diuels, and all other ſuch like things, forbidden by God and his holy Church to all good Chriſtians:

In what manner the Scaffoldes and Liſts of the Field ought to bee ordered and prepared, with the Crucifix, Te Igitur, Tents and Pauillions of the Parties.

For length and breadth of the Liſts.

IX. FVrthermore we will and ordayne, that all Liſts for Gages of Battayle, ſhall containe Sixeſcore paces about, or in circuit, that is to ſay, *Forty paces in wideneſſe, and Foureſcore in Length*: which all our Iudges ſhall ſtand obliged to ſee done, and leaue them ſo to others, that ſhall come after them.

Placing of the Pauillions.

Wee alſo will and Commaund, that the Seate and Pauillion of the Appellant (whatſoeuer he be) ſhall be placed in the Field on our right hand, or of the Iudge: And that of the Defendant, is to be vpon the left hand.

And when both of the Combatants ſhall haue ſpoken, or cauſed to be ſpoken by their Aduocates, the Proteſtations and Requeſts before rehearſed, & before their entring into the Field; they muſt abaſe or ſlip downe the Viſers of their Helmets, and enter ſo with their Viſers abaſed, making the ſigne of the Croſſe, as already hath bin ſaid: And in that manner they ought to come before the Scaffoldes, where their Iudge may command them to raiſe vp their Viſers. If the King bee there preſent, they ought then to ſay. *Moſt Excellent, and Moſt Mighty Prince, and our Soueraigne Lord: I am ſuch a Man, who in your preſence, as to our Iuſt Lord and Soueraigne Iudge.* But if it be to any other then the King, he muſt then ſay. *My Moſt-dreaded Lord, I am ſuch a Man, who in your preſence, as before our competent Iudge, am come this day, and at the Houre by you aſſigned to me, to doe my deuoire againſt ſuch a Man, by reaſon of the Murder, or Treaſon which he hath done. And heereof I take God on my part, and who therein ſhall be my helpe this day.*

Speeches to the King or to the Iudge.

A writing giuen to the Marſhall.

When he hath ſpoken theſe words, or ſo neere as hee can to the ſame effect: by his Councellers a writing is to be giuen him, contayning all the former words which (with his owne hand) he muſt deliuer to the Marſhall, and he ought to receiue it. Which being done, we giue him leaue to diſmounte, and goe into his Pauillion. But if it ſhall appeare, that he hath not ſpoken the former words; then we will and commaund, that they muſt be done by the Office of his Aduocate.

The ſecond Cry.

When all the foreſaid things are doe, the King of Armes, or Herauld ought to mount vpon the Gate of the Liſts, and make his Second Crie, and the Fiue inhibitions, in ſuch manner and forme as formerly you haue heard.

Now follow the Oathes, which are to be taken by them, that will enter and Combate with Gage of Battayle.

In what manner the Appellant taketh his Oath.

X. FIrſt the Appellant is to come (with his Viſer exalted) departing from his Pauillion on foote, Armed with all his Armes, and his *Temicle* thereon. Then by the Guards of the Field, and them of his Councell, he muſt be brought before the Scaffold, erected before the midſt of the Liſts, where our Maieſty ſhall bee placed, or ſome other for vs in our abſence. There the Appellant falleth on his knees, before a Seate and a Table richly adorned, where ſtandeth the true figure of our Lord and Sauiour Ieſus Chriſt, placed on a rich Pillow, with the *Miſſale* lying by it. On the right hand of this Altar is ſeated a Prieſt or Religious Fryer, who ſpeaketh to the Appellant in this manner following.

The Prieſts words to the Appellant.

Ariſe Knight (or Eſquire, or Lord of ſuch a place) *Who art Appellant. You behold heere the moſt true remembrance, of our Lord and Sauiour Ieſus Chriſt, who becauſe hee would dye, deliuered his moſt precious Body to Death, only to ſaue vs. Require you mercy of him, and earneſtly beſeech him, that this day he will aſſiſt you, according to the right you haue, for he is the only Soueraigne Iudge. Thinke on the Oathes which you are to take; for otherwiſe your Soule, your Honor and your ſelfe are in great perill.*

When theſe words are finiſhed, the Marſhall taketh the Appellant by both the hands, with the Gauntlets on, and placing his right hand vpon the Crucifix, and his left vpon the *Te Igitur*: then he cauſeth him to ſpeake after him word by word, thus.

I Such a one, *Appellant, doe ſweare vpon this Remembrance of our Lord and Sauiour Ieſus Chriſt, and on the Holy Euangeliſts which are heere, and on the Faith of a true Chriſtian, and by the ſacred Baptiſme, which I hold of God: that I haue certainely a good, iuſt and*

Holy quarrell, and by good right haue in this Gage of Battayle appealed Such a one, *a falſe and wicked Traytour, Murderer or Periured Villaine* (according as the condition of the Crime is) *and who hath a moſt falſe and wicked quarrell on his part to defend. This will I make good this Day, with my body againſt his, by the helpe of God, of our Lady, and of my Lord Saint* George, *that good and worthy Knight.*

This Oath being thus made, the Appellant riſeth, and returneth into his Pauillion, with them of his Councell, and the Guards that conducted him.

The Oath taken by the Defendant, before the Iudge.

The defendants Oath before the Marſhall.

XI. AFterward, the Guards of the Field goe to the Pauillion of the Defendant, whom they conduct before the Altare, to take his Oath likewiſe in the forme aforeſaid with his Councellers, Armed with all his Armes, and the *Tunicle* or Coate Armour ouer all, as hath beene ſaid. After he hath beene admoniſhed by the Prieſt, the Marſhall taketh him by the hands, with the Gauntlets on, as before he did to the Appellant. And then he ſpeaketh thus. You, *Such a one, or Lord of ſuch a place*, ſay thus after me, and as I doe.

I Such a one, *Defendant, ſweare vpon this Remembrance, of the Paſſion of our Lord and Sauiour Ieſus Chriſt, and on the Sacred Euangeliſts which are heere, and on the Faith of a true Chriſtian, and by the bleſſed Baptiſme which I hold of God: That I haue, and thinke firmely to haue, a good, holy and iuſt quarrell, and good right to defend my ſelfe by this Gage of Battayle, againſt* Such a one, *who falſely and wickedly hath accuſed mee, falſe and wicked man as he is, ſo to appeale me, And this will I make good vpon him this day, with my body againſt his: So helpe me God, our Lady, and my Lord Saint* George, *that good and worthy Knight.*

This Oath likewiſe being made, the defendant ariſeth, and returneth againe to his Pauillion, according as the Appellant did.

The Third Oath, which both the Parties make before the Iudge.

The bringing of them both together, to the third and laſt Oath.

XII. AT the Third Oath, the Guards deuide themſelues equally on either ſide, and comming to the two Parties, guide them accompanied with their Councellers, as hath bin ſaid; who comming ſtep by ſtep, and paired together, when they come before the Croſſe, and the *Te Igitur*: The Marſhall taketh their right hands, and pulling off their Gauntlets, which hee hangeth on the the two Armes of the Croſſe. Then muſt the Prieſt bee there preſent, to remember them of the Paſſion of our Lord Ieſus Chriſt; the perdition of him that ſhall haue the ſhame, both in ſoule and body; the great Oaths they haue taken, and are yet to take; the Sentence of God, who fauoureth nothing but the rightfull cauſe. Aduiſing them further, rather to truſt to the mercy of the King, then to endaunger the wrath of God, and power of the infernall enemy. And this Oath wee appoint to be the laſt of the Three: in regard of the mortall hatred betweene them; eſpecially, when they come to ſee each other, and to ſhake hands together at parting.

Of repentance before taking the laſt Oath.

Then the Marſhall is to demaund firſt of the Appellant, ſaying. *You*, Such a one, *As Appellant will you Sweare?* If he repent, and make conſcience of it, as becommeth a good Chriſtian to doe: we will receiue him into our mercy, or elſe the Iudge ſhall doe it, before whom he ſhould performe the Combate; to giue, or enioyne him penance, or further to appoint our pleaſure. If it fall out to bee ſo, then they are to be brought backe into their Pauillions, and not to depart thence without our commaund, or order from the Iudge before whom they came. But if the Appellant will conſtantly ſweare it to be true; then the Marſhall muſt demaund the like of the Defendant, and then returning to the Appellant, cauſe him to ſpeake thus after him.

The Appellants laſt Oath

I Such a one, *Appellant, doe ſweare vpon this true figure of the Paſſion of our Lord and Sauiour Ieſus Chriſt; and on theſe Holy Euangeliſts heere; on the Faith of Baptiſme as a Chriſtian, which I hold of my true God; on the moſt-ſoueraigne Ioyes of Paradiſe, which I vtterly renounce for the moſt bitter paynes of Hell; vpon my Soule, my Life, and vpon mine*

mine Honor; That I haue a good, holy and iuſt Quarrell, to Combat with this falſe and wicked Traitour, Murderer, Periured Villaine: I meane this vile man here before me. And in this caſe I call God for my true Iudge, our Lady, and my Lord Saint George, that good and worthy Knight. And for this faithfully (by the Oathes which I haue taken) I intend not to beare vpon my ſelfe, nor vpon my Horſe, Words, Stones, Hearbes, Charmes, Sorceries, Drinkes, Carracters, Innocations or Spirits, or any other thing, wherein I might place the leaſt hope of helping me, and to hurt him. Nor haue I any other recourſe, but to God onely, and confidence in my right; by my Body, by my Horſe, and by mine Armes to preuaile. Whereupon, I kiſſe this figure of the Croſſe, and theſe Holy Euangeliſts, and ſo am ſilent.

After the Oath thus taken, the Marſhall goeth to the Defendant, whom he cauſeth to vſe the very ſame words, and in the ſame manner.

The ſpeeches vſed each Party holding the other by the hand.

When the Defendant hath kiſt the Crucifixe, and the *Te Igitur*, for more clearing the right of them both; he taketh the two parties by the right hands, which they giuing each to other; hee commandeth the Appellant to ſpeake thus to his enemie.

O thou, whom I hold by the right hand, by the Oathes that I haue taken, the cauſe for which I haue appealed thee; is a good cauſe, and lawfull for me to appeale thee, wherein this day I will Combat thee. Thou haſt a bad cauſe, and no iuſt quarrell to enter Combat, or to defend thy ſelfe againſt me, and that thou knoweſt full well. Whereupon, I call God, our Lady, and my Lord Saint George that good Knight, to be my true witneſſes: a falſe Traitour, Murderer, and periured Villaine as thou art.

The anſwere to the Oath of the Appellant, made *by the Defendant.*

XIII. After this, the Marſhall ſaith to the Defendant, that he muſt make the ſame proteſtation, as the Appellant did, taking him againe by the hand.

O thou, whom I hold by the right hand, by the Oathes that I haue taken, the Cauſe wherein thou haſt appealed me, is falſe and wicked. Wherefore, I haue good and lawfull reaſon to defend my ſelfe, and to Combat againſt thee this day. For thou haſt a naught ie cauſe, and no quarrell to appeale me, or fight againſt me, and that thou knoweſt full well. And that this is true, I call God, our Lady, and my Lord Saint George that good and worthy Knight, to be my true witneſſes: Falſe and wicked man as thou art.

The Prieſts departure out of the Liſts.

After theſe Oathes thus made, and the ſpeeches ſpoken by either of them; they kiſſe the Crucifixe together, and then (paired with their Councellours and friends) returne to their Pauillions to doe their deuoire. And the Prieſt then taketh the Croſſe and the *Te Igitur*, as alſo the Table whereon they ſtood, which he beareth away with him, and departeth thence. And the King of Armes, after all this is done, and in ſuch forme as hath bin ſaid; he maketh the laſt Crie of the Three.

The Laſt of the three Cries.

XIV. When the King of Armes or Herald is ready to Crie, all the people being ſeated, and ſilence made, not to ſpeake a word, the Parties being likewiſe ready to performe their dutie; then by command of the Marſhall, commeth the King of Armes or Herauld into the midſt of the Liſts, where he crieth three ſeuerall times; *Gentlemen, doe your deuoire.* After which words, the two Combattants leaue their Pauillions, Chaires or Stooles, comming forth to mount vpon their Horſes, which ſtand there readily prepared for them, their Staues and Lances by, wherewith they are to helpe themſelues, and their Councellors walking with them: when ſuddenly their Pauillions are beaten downe, and caſt forth of the Liſts.

The Combattants leauing their Pauillions.

How at the two Combattants iſſuing forth of their Pauillions, vpon the voyce and command of the Marſhall; he throweth downe the Gloue.

XV. After all is done, the Marſhall, who muſt be in the middeſt of the Field, by the Scaffold, carrying the Gloue in his hand; crieth three ſeuerall times; *Let*

them goe together. At which words he caſteth downe the Gloue. Then he that will mounteth on Horſebacke, but he that will not, is left to his owne pleaſure. And then the Councellours to both the Parties, without any longer tarrying, depart, leauing each man his Bottell of Wine, and a Loafe of Bread in a Napkin: And then they doe what they can.

The Combattants left to their deuoire

In what manner the Gage of Battaile ſhould be granted: And how the Conqueror ſhould drag the Vanquiſhed out of the Field.

XVI. We will and command, that the Gage of Battaile ſhall not be granted but in one of theſe two manners, that is to ſay. *When one of the two Parties confeſſeth the fault, and yeeldeth himſelfe.* And the other: *When the one ſhall bring the other forth of the Field, aliue or dead.* And dead or aliue as he is, the body ſhall be deliuered by the Iudge to the Marſhall, to order or doe Iuſtice at our pleaſure. If he be liuing, we appoint, that he ſhall be deliuered to the Heraulds and King of Armes, by whom he ſhall be diſarmed, his Points cut, and his Armour caſt piecemeale in the Liſts, while he lies couched on the ground. But if he be dead, he ſhall be likewiſe diſarmed, and there left to our appointment, either to be pardoned, or ſent to more ſhamefull puniſhment, according as to vs ſhall ſeeme beſt. Neuertheleſſe, the Hoſtages of the vanquiſhed ſhall be arreſted, vntill they ſhall haue made full ſatisfaction to the Partie victorious. And the ouer-plus of the vanquiſheds goods, ſhall be confiſcate to the Prince.

Proceedings with the Parties aliue or dead.

How the Vanquiſher ought to depart out of the Liſts Honorably.

XVII. It is our further will and pleaſure, that the Vanquiſher ſhall depart honorably on Horſebacke out of the Liſts, in the ſame forme as he made his entrance; if he be not hindered by ſome Exoine, or harme happened to his body; carrying the weapon (wherewith he hath conquered his Aduerſarie) in his right hand, hauing his Pledges and Hoſtages freely deliuered to him. And concerning this quarrell, whatſoeuer information can come to the contrary; he is not to make any anſwere, neither ſhall any Iudge compell him thereunto, except himſelfe be ſo pleaſed.

Rights belonging to the Victor.

We alſo will and ordaine, that the Horſe as he is, and Armes of the Vanquiſhed, and all things vpon him, or brought thither for him; doe and ſhall appertaine to the Conſtable, Marſhals or Marſhall of the Field, who in this caſe haue the charge of all.

Rights belonging to the Marſhall.

And we direct our prayers to God, that he will maintaine the right to him that hath it, and that euery good Chriſtian, may keepe himſelfe from falling into ſuch a perill: for, among all other perils that are, this is moſt of all to be feared, none being worſe then the Gage of Battaile. Wherein, many a Noble man hath found himſelfe deceiued, whether right were on his ſide, or no, by being ouer confident in cunning, ſleights and ſtrength, or blinded with pride, Anger and ouer-weening; and ſometime by ſhames of the world giuen, for refuſing peace, in Parties but of equall qualitie; who many times afterward, *For old ſinnes paſt, haue ſuſtained new penances,* in contemning and not caring for the Iudgement of God. *But whoſoeuer complaineth, and findeth not Iuſtice, let him referre his cauſe to God.* If for his owne intereſt (without pride and deſpight) he requireth Battaile in caſe of true right: he needeth not to feare cunning nor force, becauſe our Lord Ieſus Chriſt is a iuſt Iudge for him, ſuch is the common ſaying of the world, whoſe aduiſe yet (in this caſe) is hard to be followed.

How dangerous a thing the Gage of Battaile is.

The Concluſion of the Ordenances for Duelloes and Combats.

These were the true tearmes of the Edict, concerning Duelloes and ſingle Combats, made by *Phillip le Bel*, Fourth of the name, King of *France* and of *Nauarre*; whereby

whereby (at the beginning) he gaue permission to his Iudges, to grant the Field of Battaile. But in regard it was a right, which appertained to a Soueraigne Prince onely; he made a Proclamation in the yeare following, One thousand three hundred and seauen, Registred in the Parliament of *Paris*: whereby he reuoaked that power from all the Iudges of his Kingdome; *Attributing it onely to his Court of France, the Court of Peeres, that is the Parliament of Paris.*

The right of graunting Battaile belongeth to a Soueraign Prince onely.

And to them it belonged to Iudge, whether any Gage of Battaile might be granted, or not: If they did adiudge it, the execution thereof was to be at *Paris* ordenarily (if the absence of the King did not cause the contrary) for all the Prouinces vnder the homage of *France*, how farre off soeuer they were, holding there his Exchecquer, Soueraigne Iustice, extraordinarie Sessions, the *Appeales of Duelloes and Gages of Battaile, should resort to the Parliament of Paris*, honored with the title of Excellencie, and honor *Of the Court of France.*

The reading of these Ordenances, hath caused vs to call to remembrance, many Ceremonies held and obserued in these *Fields of Battaile*: some few things forgotten, or let sleepe in silence, to be the better knowne in these times, because then they were in full execution.

Ceremonies that were obserued in elder times.

The Rod or Warder.

ASsiuing to the King, the Constable or Marshall, that carrieth command in the Field of Battaile, *A Rod or Wand Guilded*: which (like to the *Caduceus* of *Mercurie*) being cast in the midst betweene the Combattants, causeth them to sunder each from other.

To obserue also, that the King of Armes, or the Herauld that maketh the Cries and prohibitions, had (for difference) *A Rod, or Wand Siluered*, as is obserued in the Romant of *Raoul de Cambray.*

With chearefull lookes the Herauld rideth on,
Holds in his hand a pilled Rod or Wand,
And crieth with a loud exalted voyce:
Barons and Gentlemen of France, Attend
The message, that is sent you from the King.
Let no man here make noyse, fight or affray:
On paine to haue his head smit off this day.

Dragging the dead body out of the Lists.

The manner and fashion, of dragging the dead Body out of the Lists, is here forgotten; which we will more at large obserue, in the Chapter concerning Militarie paines and punishments, following hereafter.

But among these Ordenances, may be remembred the auncient Custome, of cutting the Eares of lewd Seruants, refractary to the commands of their Maisters: for it was in *France* an ordenary paine and punishment for bad Seruants, to haue their Eares cut off.

Concerning the punishing of Seruants of the worst kinde.

In our Salique Law, at the Title *de Adulteriis Ancillarum*, and the fourth Paragraph; *Seruus ipse castretur.* For meanest faults, they would haue them stretched out vpon a Bench or Fourme, fast bound by the hands and Feete, their bodies naked, as ready for torture and rigour: And with Wands, containing the bignesse of a mans little Finger, Sixescore stripes (of good account and manuall distribution) was to be giuen with the Wand vpon the Bellie. And throughout the *Salique* Law, at the Title *De Seruo qui de furto fuerit interpellatus*, at the eight Paragraph.

Si autem Seruus de quolibet crimine inculpatus fuerit, & Dominus Serui ipsius præsens adfuit, ab eo qui repetit admoneatur, vt Seruum suum ad iusta supplicia dare non differat: & qui repetit, Virgas paratas habere debet, quæ in similitudinem minimi digiti grossitudinem habeant, & Scamnum paratum habere debet, vt Seruum ipsum tendere possit.

This was the least punishment then ordained, wherewith they chastised their Seruants. At the same Title, and last Paragraph. *Si Ancilla in tali crimine inculpatur de quo*

quo Seruus castrari debuerat, CCXL. Denarios, qui faciunt solidos sex, si conuenit, Dominus reddat, aut Ducentos Quadraginta ictus accipiat.

When better fauour was to be showne to better Seruants, they were to be smitten on the head with Wands of fiue or sixe yeares growth, such as Fagots or Bauins are made of, which are daily growing in our Woods, and tearmed in our *Salique* Law *Amortus*; the *Gascoigne* calleth them *Endortes*, and the Law of the *Baiorians, Gamachis.* Sometimes they would belabour their shoulders with sixescore stripes of such a Wand or Cudgell; or fiftie at the least, which was accounted friendly. *Rumpebatur dorsum eius Quinquaginta Gamachis.*

Punishment of better Seruants.

In our Law, at the Title *De furtis Seruorum.* If a Seruant, from forth the House of his Maister, did steale the value of two Pence: he was to redeeme his shoulders with sixe score Pence, or else to endure so many stripes soundly laid on, and called *d'Amorte. Si quis Seruus foris casa, quod valet duos Denarios furauerit, & inde conuictus fuerit, aut flagellis CXX. ictus accipiat, aut pro dorso suo CXX. Denariorum qui faciunt Solidos III. culpabilis iudicetur.*

Punishment for Theft according to the value.

If he did steale the value of Fortie Pence: He was to redeeme his *Testicles*, as well by restitution of the Principall, whereof he had made the Theft, as also two hundred and fortie Pence, for a penalty; or else he was to be *Castrated.*

Si vero furauerit quod valet Quadraginta Denarios Aut castretur, *aut Ducentos Quadraginta Denarios qui faciunt Solidos Sex reddat. Dominus autem Serui, qui furtum fecerit, capitale in locum restituat.*

If he were like to the Seruant of *Marot*, that could remember nothing said vnto him; for the better quickning of his memorie, he had one Eare cut off, and this kinde of punishment was practised from the time of our first Kings, Saint *Gregorie* of *Tours*, in the first Booke of his Historie of *France*, and the fortie eight Chapter, speaking of *Leudastes. Qui bis, aut tertio reductus à fugæ lapsis: Auris vnius incisione multatur.* And the same Authour, in his fift Booke and eighteenth Chapter, informeth vs, that such as contradicted the Kings commands, had their hands smitten off.

A hard remedie for memorie.

But here is to be obserued, that it was not the right Eare which they vsed to cut off, but the left: because therein is a certaine veine, which answereth to the genitall parts, and which being cut away, maketh a man vncapable of the engendring power. And this was done, to the end, that such a race of people, should not leaue to the world any of their vile and vicious breeding, whereof no doubt there are too many. By this manner of cutting off the Eare, were formerly punished Cutpurses, and Domesticke or House-Theeues, in that small streete or quarter, which we see at the entrance of *Pont-nostre Dame, la Macque, S. Iacques de la Boucherie*, and *La Greue*, where, in former times, was an ascending, like to that of the *Temple*; which was called by cutting off Eares; *Le Carrefour Guigne Oreille*, and in corrupt language *Guillory* by the vulgar. And this cutting off Eares, hath euermore bin held for an ignominious and infamous Act: because such kinde of people (by the Law of the *Medes* and *Persians*) were neuer admitted to the Royaltie. Witnesse false *Smerdis*, obserued by *Zonaras*, in the second Booke of his Historie. Nor to the Priesthood among the Iewes, as is testified by *Iosephus*, in the foureteenth Booke, and fiue and twentieth Chapter of his Iewish Antiquities, speaking of the King, and of the High Priest *Hyrcanus.* Returne we now againe to our *Duelloes*, the Ordenances whereof (before remembred) were obserued in *France*, all the while as *Duelloes* continued.

A strange veine in the left side of a man.

Cutting off the Eare a mark of infamie.

Vnder the Reigne of *Phillip de Valois*, sixt and last of the name, King of *France*, there was a Suite in the Court of Parliament, to haue the Gage of Battaile, for the Castell and Vicountie of *Touraine*: betweene the Lord *de Pons*, Knight, and the Count of *Commenge.* The causes for the Gage of Battaile expresseth it selfe the more familiarly, by the Order and Decree of the said Court; which I haue here set downe verbatim, out of the true Record.

PHilippes *par la Grace de Dieu Roy de France. A tous ceux qui ces presentes Lettres verront, Salut. Scauoir faisons que Comparant à nostre Cour de Parlement à Paris* Regnaud

naud de Pons Cheualier *d'vne part*, & Bernard Comte de Commenge *d'autre part*. *Ledict Cheualier a proposé comme de long temps fust meue question & discord* Entre Geoffroy de Pons *Cheualier, iadis Pere dudict Regnaud, & duquel ledict Regnaud est fils, & heritier Vniuersel, seul, & en tous ses biens d'vne part.* Et Marguerite *iadis* Comtesse de Commenge *d'autre, pour raison du Chasteau, & Vicomte de Turaine, lesquels Chasteau, & Vicomte, chacun desdits* Geofroy, & Comtesse *disoit à soy appartenir. Neanmoins ledict Comte Bernard plein de mauuaise intention, & icelle mettant à effect faucement & malicieusement, a fin de fruistrer dudict Vicomte ledit Regnaud auquel il deuoit appartenir apres le decez de son dict Pere, considerant qu'apres la Mort de ladicte Comtesse, qui est decedee sans Hoirs descendants de son Corps, & qui n'auoit iamais este grosse, & n'auroit eu aucuns Enfants il n'auroit aucune couleur de retenir, & posseder ledict Vicomte qui appartenoit audit Regnaud, & auroit supposé, & faict supposer vn Part faucement, meschamment, & frauduleusement, ladicte Comtesse estant en tel estat qu'elle ne pouuoit euader la Mort, & qu'elle en seroit decedee. Que ledict Comte auoit publie, ou fait publier que le dict Part estoit de ladite Comtesse, combien que faucement il eust este supposé, & que iamais ladicte Comtesse n'eust eu Enfants. Lequel Part ainsi faucement supposé, seroit dedans trois iours apres la Mort de ladicte Comtesse, par* enchantement *disparu du lieu, & s'en seroit alle comme il estoit venu, à tout le moins en estoit incognue la maniere du departement, & par fiction auroit este dict qu'il estoit decede.* Disoit *ledict Regnaud que ledict Comte auoit faict faire, ou faict secrettement ladicte fauce supposition, & que par vne seule personne pouuoit estre faicte ladicte supposition. Et dauantage, proposoit contre ledict Comte, qu'il est notoire que ledict Comte estoit tenu, & oblige a raison de son dict Comte par serment de Fidelite, & d'Hommage au* Roy, Royaume, & Coronne de France, *& qu'apres le decez de deffunct nostre tres-cher Sieur, & Cousin le* Roy Louis *(Hutin) estoit demeuree grosse d'Enfant nostre tres-chere Dame la* Royne Clemence, *& que destors ledict Comte premeditant que sur le Regime, & Gouuernement du Royaume de France pourroit se mouuoir dissention entre nos tres-chers Sieurs & Cousins* Philippes *(le Long)* & Charles *(le Bel)* Freres, peu apres Roys de France, *ou Aultres, pour autant que lors estoit demeure sans Roy ledict Royaume : Preuoyant ainsi que si ladicte Royne Clemence auoit vne Fille, pourroit sourdre question, & querele sur la creation du Roy, ou qui deuoit estre Roy : Et que s'il y auoit vn Fils pourroit y auoir debat sur le Gouuernement d'icelu), considerant le commun Prouerbe par lequel communement on dit Qu'en Eaue trouble faict bon pescher. Combien que par son Serment il fust tenu de garder l'vtilite du Royaume de France, ayant la volonte diminuer les droicts de la Coronne de France, & vsurper le Domaine du Roy, l'acquerir, & applicquer à soy, & se eximer de la subiection, & obeissance en laquelle il est tenu, & par serment oblige au Roy, & à la Coronne de France, auroit faucement, & en trahison, venant contre son serment, & commettant Crime de leze Maieste faict, ou faict faire conspirations, & auroit parle, ou faict parler aux Barons, ou Nobles dudict Pays, & leur auroit tenu, ou faict tenir propos de faire confederation, & ligue auec luy, pour autant qu'ils pouuoient cognoistre l'Estat auquel estoit le Royaume de France, & par ce moyen auroit de Celuy qui seroit Roy tous les Priuileges, en si grand nombre qu'ils voudroient demander, & qu'entre autres Gentils hommes il auoit pacte, & fait remonstrance, ou faict faire audict Regnaud de Pons d'entrer auec luy en ladicte Ligue & Confideration. A quoy ledit Regnauld de Pons cognoissant le grand preiudice, & dommage qui en pourroit venir à la Coronne, & Royaume de France, de sa part comme bon & loyal Subiect ne se seroit voulu consentir. Disoit encores ledict Regnaud, comme bon, & loyal, & pour le serment, & la foy en laquelle il seroit tenu vers nous, que ledict Comte auroit faict & dit, ou faict faire, & dire contre son propre serment les choses susdictes faucement, & en trahison, commettant crime de leze Maieste, lequel Crime est de telle nature, que en Corps, & en Biens il doit estre puny, & encores qu'il fust decede, pourroit estre procede à la Confiscation de ses Biens.* Disant *outre que ledict Comte auroit faict, ou faict faire lesdictes choses, afin qu'il peust acquerir, & tirer à soy telle puissance que le Roy n'osast & ne peust contredire chose qu'il luy requist, & demandast; Requerant ledict Regnaud de Pons que ledict Comte fust pour les choses dessusdictes deument puny s'il les confessoit estre veritables, & s'il les denioit, offroit ledict Regnaud le prouuer suffisamment contre ledict Comte par* Gage de Combat, *baillant, & offrant à nostre dicte Cour son dict* Gage *contre ledict Comte.* De l'autre part *a proposé ledict Comte du Commenge pour ses deffences, & afin que ledict* Gage de Combat *ne fust*

receu, & fust ledict Gage annulle, que ledict Regnaud n'estoit receuable en sadicte demande; Et premierement, pour ce que ledit Regnaud en proposant les choses cy deuant dictes, auoit confesse que ledict Comte auoit faict les Conspirations susdictes apres la Mort dudict Roy Louis *nostre Souuerain Seigneur, & les auoit celees iusques à present, & par ce moyen par ce qu'il estoit Homme Lige du Roy, & luy deuoit sa foy, & toutes fois auoit cele vn tel faict, il estoit periure, infidele, & infame, & à ceste raison n'estoit ledict Regnauld habile à faire ladicte demande, & ne pouuoit accuser le dict Comte.* Auſſi *a proposé ledict Comte, qu'autresfois ledict Regnauld l'auroit faict adiourner* sur Gaige de Combat, *& apres iceluy Regnauld* auroit impetre conge d'accorder *auecques ledict Comte, sans faire aucune mention desdictes conspirations, & ainsi nous auroit menty & failly de sa Foy, & consequemment estoit infame, & ne deuoit estre receu à Appeller ledict Comte. Requerant ledict Comte Droict luy estre faict, & rendu sur les dictes choses. Et dissant que si Droict estoit faict contre luy, il n'estoit possible de respondre à la demande dudict Regnauld, par ce qu'il falloit dire esdictes Accusations, & declarer l'An, le Mois, & le Iour, lesquels on dit les Crimes auoir este commis, que ledict Regnauld a proposez en sa demande. Dauantage a proposé ledict Comte, que ledit Regnauld auoit faict ſi demande alternatiue, disant que ledict Comte auroit supposé, ou faict supposer le Part, et l'Enfant d'un Aultre : Et auroit tenu propos, ou faict tenir audict Regnaud de faire Ligue auec luy, & que telles demandes alternatiues ne vallent pour raison, & ne doiuent estre admises; & supposé qu'elles vallussent, toutesfois ne deuoit ledict Regnaud estre receu par voye de* Gage de Combat, *alleguant ledict Comte les raisons qui s'ensuiuent. Scauoir est que par les Ordonnances Royaux faictes sur les* Duels, & Combats : *Nul ne peut appeller Autruy à Combat : sinon que l'Appele, & Pronoque fust ſuſpect des Crimes proposez contre luy; & que par Indices vrays semblables il apparust, & non cognuſt les Crimes auoir este faicts. Disoit ledict Comte qu'il estoit notoire qu'il n'auoit iamais este ſuſpect, ne d'affame des Crimes proposez contre luy, & n'estoit vray-semblable qu'il euſt commis telles choses, veu que touſiours il s'estoit bien, & fidelement, porte & faict deuoir enuers Nous, & Nos Predeceſſeurs Roys de France en leurs Conſeils & Guerres; & auoit este, & estoit de bonne renommee. Semblablement a proposé ledict Comte, que par les dictes Ordonnances, il falloit que les Crimes dont aucun estoit accuſé, fuſſent tels que la Mort s'en deuſt enſuiuir, & que ſelon Droict, Raiſon, & Couſtume les Crimes proposez par ledict Regnaud contre ledict Comte ne sont tels, que d'iceux il se doiue enſuiure peine Capitale, ſuppoſé que leſdits Crimes fuſſent vrays; Parce que Crime de ſuppoſition de faux Part n'eſt tel, que, qui en ſoit conuaincu, doiue pour cela eſtre condamne a la Mort naturelle; & auſſi que faire Conſpiration, ou Aſſemblee afin de demander libertez, ou franchiſes telles que ledict Regnaud a declare, n'eſt vn tel crime, que punition mortelle s'en doiue ſuiure, par ce que telles choſes ne ſont contre le Prince, ne contre la ſeurete de ſon Peuple, ne contre ſes Membres comme ſont les Conſeillers Royaux. Diſant ledict Comte que l'Intention & la Volonte de l'Appellant & Pronocquant, faiſoit beaucoup à conſiderer, par ce qu'il pouuoit apparoir que ledict Regnaud eſtoit meu non par Iuſtice, ou autre cauſe, mais ſeulement pour auoir ledict Vicomte de Turaine, & non pour autre raiſon. Parquoy diſoit qu'il ne deuoit eſtre admis par la Voye du Combat. Diſoit encores ledict Comte, que ſuppoſe ſans preiudice, que ledict Comte euſt eu volonte de parler audict Regnaud, ou Autre, d'auoir tels Priuileges, ou franchiſes, comme dict eſt, ce n'eſt cauſe raiſonnable par laquelle on puiſſe proſequer à Gage de Combat. Car combien que ledict Comte euſt volonte de requerir leſdicts Priuileges, & franchiſes; Toutesfois il eſtoit en la volonte, & au plaiſir du Roy de les luy concedder; & ne vaudroit la volonte de les requerir, & n'auroit aucun effect, ſinon que de l'Authorite du Roy elles fuſſent concedees, & qu'ainſi clairement pouuoit apparoir qu'en la volonte de requerir Priuileges, & Immunitez n'eſchet, & n'eſt deu Gage de Combat; Et que telle volonte, que ledict Comte n'auoit iamais eue, ainſi qu'il affirmoit, ne regarde, & ne touche cas de Crime, pour lequel il doiue y auoir Combat, meſmes à ce moyen que ledict Regnaud auroit mis en auant, que de telle volonte ſe ſeroit aucun mal enſuiuy. Et outre a dict ledict Comte, que par leſdictes Ordonnances il faut, que le faict ſoit tel que par Teſmoins ne puiſſe eſtre prouue : Mais que les faicts proposez par ledict Regnaud contre ledict Comte, peuuent eſtre verifiez par Teſmoins; parce que ledict Comte offroit faire preuue, que ſa Femme veritablement auoit eſte groſſe, & auoit eu vne Fille, que ledict Regnaud maintient auoir eſte faucement ſuppoſee, prouueroit qu'il auoit tenu ladicte Fille pour ſienne, & comme ſienne l'auoit nourrie, & en ſon Teſtament inſtituee ſon Heritiere; & qu'en cas qu'il peuſt*

peust prouuer lesdicts faicts, que ledict Gage de Combat deuoit cesser. Semblablement a dict que les Conspirations, & Assemblees mises en faict par ledict Regnaud contre ledict Comte, se pouuoient & se peuuent verifier, pour autant que Congregations presupposent multitude de Personnes; mesmement que ledict Regnaud en sa demande auroit exposé que ledict Comte auoit dict paroles semblables à plusieurs Personnes, parquoy combien que chacune desdictes Personnes en parlast par tesmoignage singulier, toutesfois seroit prouue suffisamment telle Conspiration, & Congregation: Et que pour ce, par Tesmoins en pouuoit estre faicte la preuue, & ne deuoit ledict Gage de Combat estre receu. Aussi auroit dict ledict Comte qu'il pouuoit faire clairement apparoir, que lesdictes choses par ledict Regnaud proposées, ne le touchoient aucunement, & n'en estoit charge, & que par Haine, ou Enuie ledict Regnaud auoit prouocque ledict Comte au Combat, & que supposé que ladicte Comtesse fust decedee sans Hoirs descendus de son Corps, ledict Vicomte de Turaine ne fust venu audict Regnaud, pour autant qu'il y auoit Seize autres Personnes, & dauantage, qui seroient plus proches à ladicte Comtesse, lesquelles, & non ledict Regnaud, pourroient heriter audict Vicomte; Et de rechef proposé par ledict Comte, que par lesdictes Ordondances Royaux, qu'il falloit que le Cas dont l'Accusateur accusoit fust aduenu euidemment; Mais qu'il n'apparroissoit point que les faits proposez contre luy par ledict Regnaud, qu'au moyen desdictes Conspirations par luy recitees, il s'en soit ensuiuy aucune fin, ou effect. Alleguant ledict Regnaud plusieurs autres raisons aux fins ausquelles il tendoit; Et disant en ce que touchoit lesdictes Conspirations, & Confederations que comme bon, & loyal vers son Seigneur, il les auroit reuelees à nostre Tres cher Sieur, & Cousin le Roy Philippes; Repliquant encores iceluy ledict Regnaud plusieurs autres raisons. Et ledict Comte au Contraire, Requerant que sur ses raisons, & deffences droict luy fust faict, & rendu par nostredicte Cour, & sans se departir d'icelles a offert ledict Comte se deffendre competamment, sur lesdictes choses proposees par ledict Regnaud à l'en contre de luy par le Gage de Combat, qu'il a baille à nostredicte Cour, contre ledict Regnaud, sauf lesdictes raisons, & deffences proposees, & alleguees, sur lesquelles, auant toute autre chose demandoit ledict Comte luy estre faict droict. Lesdictes Parties diligemment ouyes en nostre Cour, sur les choses dessusdictes, & autres que d'vne part, & d'autres ils ont voulu dire, & proposer, Et etc. ues lesdictes Ordonnances Royaux, par ledict Comte alleguees ne faisants aucune mention de Crime de leze Maieste, & considerees, & examinees toutes choses susdictes, & autres qui pouuoient, & deuoient mouuoir nostredicte Cour, eue sur icelles diligence, & meure deliberation. Par Arrest de nostredicte Cour a este dict que ledict Regnaud estoit habile à proposer contre ledict Comte les choses cy deuant dictes, & que a la demande par ledit Regnaud proposee contre ledict le Comte, se pouuoit, & deuoit respondre. Et quant à ladicte fauce Supposition de Part, & autres choses qui concernent icelle seulement, proposees par ledict Regnaud, contre ledict Comte, sur le dict Arrest a este dict, que ledict Regnaud sur ce qui touche ladicte fauce Supposition, ne seroit receu pour Gage de Combat, & a nostredicte Cour, quant à cela seulement, annulle ledict Gage. Et quant aux autres choses par ledict Regnaud proposees à l'encontre dudict Comte, concernant le Crime de leze Maieste, nostredicte Cour par sondict Arrest a receu ledict Gage de Combat, & iceux Gages adiugez, nonobstant choses proposees, & alleguees sur ce faict par ledict Comte. En tesmoin, &c. Donne a a Paris en nostre Parlement, le Vingt & vniesme Iour de Ianuier, l'An de grace Mille trois Cents Vingthuict. *Signe* Gien.

The Decree of the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, concerning the Gage of Battaile, for the Castell and Vicountie of *Touraine*.

PHillip, *by the Grace of God, King of France; To all such as shall see and read these presents Letters, Greeting. We make knowne, that appearing at our Court of Parliament in* Paris, Regnaud de Pons, *Knight, on the one part, and* Bernard, *Count of* Commenge, *on*

the other part. The said Knight propounded, that long time since, was moued question and discord, betweene Geoffrey de Pons, *Knight, formerly Father to the said* Regnaud, *and to whom the said* Regnaud *is Sonne, and vniuersall Heire alone, and in his goods on the one part: And* Margaret, *sometime Countesse of* Commenge, *on the other part; by reason of the Castell and Vicountie of* Touraine, *which Castell and Vicountie of* Touraine, *each of the said* Geoffrey *and Countesse said to belong to them.*

Notwithstanding, the said Count Bernard, *full of bad meaning, and bringing the same to effect falsely and maliciously; onely to frustrate the said* Regnaud *of the said Vicountie, which ought to belong to him after the decease of his said Father: considering, that after the death of the said Countesse (who is deceased without Heires descending of her body, for she neuer had bin great with childe, neither euer had any children) he had not any colour to retaine or possesse the said Vicountie, which appertained to the said* Regnaud. *But had supposed, and made to be supposed a false Birth, maliciously and fraudulently, the said Countesse being in such estate, as she could not shunne death, and was (indeede) dead. Yet the said Count had published, or caused to be published, that the said Birth was of the said Countesse, albeit he had falsely supposed it, and that the said Countesse neuer had any childe. Which Birth so falsely supposed, was within three dayes after the death of the said Countesse: By Enchantment vanished out of the place, and made to goe away as it came; at least, the manner of the departing could not be knowne, and then (by fiction) it was said to be deceased.*

The said Regnaud *said further, that the said Count had made, or secretly caused to be made, the said false supposition, and by one person onely (it might be) was made that supposition. Moreouer he propounded against the said Count, as a matter most notorious and well knowne, that the said Count was held and obliged, by reason of his said Countie, by Oath of Fidelitie and of Homage, to the King, Kingdome, and Crowne of France, and that after the death of our late most deare Lord and Cosine King* Lewes (Hutin) *our most deare Lady the Queene* Clemencia, *was then left great with childe. And from that time, the said Count premeditating, that on the Rule and Gouernment of the Kingdome of France, he might moue dissention betweene our most deare Lords and Cousines,* Phillip le Long, *and* Charles le Bel, *Bretheren, Soone after Kings of France, or others, because the Realme was then left without a King: Foreseeing also, that if the said Queene* Clemencia *should haue a Daughter, question and quarrell might arise, for creation of the King, or who should be the King. But if she should haue a Sonne; debate would then be moued, about the Gouernement of him: in regard of the common Prouerbe, whereby is vsually said;* That in troubled Waters is alwayes the best Fishing.

And although he stood bound by his Oathe, to preserue the vtilitie and benefit of France: yet, hauing a will and desire, to diminish the Rights of the Crowne of France, and to vsurpe the Demeanes of the King; he got and applied them to himselfe, casting off the subiection and obedience, whereto he stood bound by his Oathe sworne to the King, and to the Crowne of France. For he had falsely, and by way of Treason gon against his Oathe, and committed an act of High Treason: causing to be held diuers conspiracies, and had talked, and caused talke to be held, with Barons and Noblemen of the said Countrey, their talke and conference tending, to the making of a confederacie and League with him, whereby they might attaine to know, to whom the Crowne of France should come. By which meanes, of him that should be King, they would obtaine all Priuiledges, to so great a number as they would request.

Among other Gentlemen, with whom he had thus dealt and compacted; he had made meanes to him the said Regnaud de Pons, *to enter with him and them into this League and confederacie: whereto the said* Regnaud de Pons, *knowing the great damage and detriment, that thereby might come to the Crowne and Kingdome of France (being for his owne part a good and loyall Subiect) by no meanes would yeelde consent. And beside, the said* Regnaud *saith, as a good and loyall Subiect, and auoucheth by the Oathe and Faith wherein he standeth bounden to vs: that the said Count made and spake, and caused to be made and spoken (contrary to his Faith and Oathe) all the matters before alleadged, falsely, traiterously, and in the act of High-Treason: which offence is of such nature, that in body and goods he ought to be punished: And although he were dead, yet Law might proceede to the confiscation of his goods.*

Moreouer he maintained, that the said Count had done, and caused the said things to be done, to the end, that he might draw and procure to himselfe such power, as the King should not dare to gaine say, or contradict whatsoeuer he did request or demand. Whereupon the said Regnaud de Pons *required, that the said Count might for these offences be duely punished, if he confessed them to be true: but if he denied them, the said* Regnaud *offred to proue them sufficiently against the Count, by Gage of Battaile, offring and giuing to our Court his said Gage against the Count.*

On the other side, the said Count of Commenge *presented himselfe, and stood vpon his defences, and in regard that the Gage of Combat was not receiued, but rather vtterly to be disannulled; therefore the said* Regnaud *was not receiueable in his demand. And first of all, because he confessed, that the Count had made the foresaid conspiracies, after the death of the said King* Lewes *our Soueraigne Lord, and had concealed them to this present: in which respect, he being a Liedge man to the King, owing him faith and sealtie, was (neuertheless) periured, faithlesse and infamous, in the concealing of such a fact, and so (by iust reason)* Regnaud *disabled of making any such demand, and therefore could not accuse the Count.*

Further the Count propounded, that Regnaud *had formerly cited and summoned him, vpon Gage of Combat, and yet (afterward) the same* Regnaud *had entreated leaue, to make agreement with the Count, without making any mention of the said conspiracies, and so to vs* He had lied, and failed in his faith, *and consequently, was infamous, and not to be accepted to Appeale the Count; the said Count requesting right to be done him in the case, which being granted to him; he ought not to answere the demands of* Regnaud, *because he should haue set downe in his Accusations,* The yeare, the Moneth, and the Day, *whereon these crimes had bin committed, and them he should haue propounded in his demaund.*

Moreouer the Count alleadged, that Regnaud *had made his demand alternatiuely, saying, that the Count had imagined, or caused to be imagined* The Birth, *and* the Infant of another, *and had held conference, or caused it to be held with the said* Regnaud, *of making a League with him: when such alternatiue demands auaile not for reason, neither ought to be admitted. But suppose that they were valuable, yet notwithstanding,* Regnaud *ought not to be accepted by way of* Gage of Combat; *whereupon the Count alleadged these reasons following.*

That by the Royall Ordenances made, concerning Duelloes and Combats, no man ought appeale another man to the Combat: except the appealed and prouoked were suspected of the crimes proposed against him, and that by very likely indices it appeared, and the crimes were knowne to haue bin committed. The Count alleadged it as a matter notorious, and very manifestly knowne, that he had neuer bin suspected, nor defamed with any such crimes as were proposed against him, neither could it be likely, that he had committed any such things: in regard hee had bin alwayes honest, and carried himselfe faithfully, in discharging his duetie to vs, and to our Predecessours, Kings of France, *in their Councels and Warres, and had bin, and still was of good fame.*

In like manner the Count propounded, that by the fore-recited Ordenances, the crimes wherewith any one was to be accused, must be such, as death ought to ensue thereon. But according to right, reason and custome, the crimes proposed by Regnaud *against the Count, were not any such, as by them any capitall paine ought to follow, suppose that the said crimes were true. For, admit the crime of supposing a false Birth, yet it is not such, that (being conuinced thereof) a man should thereby be condemned to a naturall death. And likewise in making a meeting and conspiracie, to the end of demanding liberties and franchises, such as* Regnaud *had declared; yet is it not any such crime, that punishment of death should ensue thereon, because they are not done against the Prince, nor against the safetie of his people, nor against his members, such as are his Royall Councellours.*

Moreouer the Count affirmed, that in such occasions as these, the intent and will of the Appellant or Prouokant ought to be well considered. Because it might easily appeare, that Regnaud *was not hereto moued by Iustice, or any other cause: but onely to haue the Vicountie of* Touraine, *and not for any other reason, and therefore he ought not to be admitted by way of Combat. And let it be supposed (without preiudice) that the Count had* wil

will to conferre with Regnaud *and others, to haue such Priuiledges and Franchises, as hath bin said: yet were it no reasonable case, that he should therefore be prouoked to the Gage of Combat. For, although he was willing to request those Priuiledges and Franchises: yet notwithstanding, it remained in the will and pleasure of the King to grant them; for the will to request is of no worth, or can sort to any effect; except the authority of the King be thereto consenting. Whereby plainely appeareth, that the wilt of requesting priuiledges and immunities, falleth not to the Gage of Combat. But such a will as the Count had, according as himselfe affirmed, aimed not at any such case of crime, whereby the Combat should be granted: especially in such sort as* Regnaud *had auouched; but rather such a will, as no harme could haue followed thereon.*

And moreouer the Count added, that by the course of those Ordenances it was appointed, that the case must be such, as not to be approued by witnesses: but the facts propounded by the said Regnaud *against the Count, might be verified by witnesses. For the Count offered to make proofe, that his wife was truely great with childe, and had a Daughter, which* Regnaud *maintained to be falsely imagined: yet would he approue the Daughter to be hers, as hers it had bin nourished, and instituted by her will to be her heire, which cases being sufficiently to be proued, the Gage of Combat ought to cease. Likewise he said, that the assemblies and conspiracies alleadged by* Regnaud *against the Count, might lawfully iustifie themselues; because congregations doe presuppose a multitude of persons, because* Regnaud *had exposed in his demand, that the Count had spoken the same words to many persons, whereby, though each of those persons might speake as a singular witnesse, yet notwithstanding, it would sufficiently approue such a congregation and conspiracie, which being by witnesses sufficiently to be proued, the Gage for Combat ought not therefore to be accepted.*

Furthermore the Count auouched, that he could make it euidently appeare, that the matters propounded by Regnaud, *did no way touch him, or was to be laid to his charge, but onely in hatred and mallice,* Regnaud *had prouoked the Count to the Combat. And let it be supposed, that the Counteſſe was deceased, without any heires descended of her body: yet the Vicountie of Touraine could not come to* Regnaud, *because there were sixeteene other persons and more, who were neerer heires to the Counteſſe, then* Regnaud *was or could be. Hereunto the Count added, how, by the Royall Ordenances, the Case wherewith an accuser charged another man, ought to haue happened euidently: but it no way appeared, that the facts proposed against him by* Regnaud, *concerning the conspiracies imputed, that thereon had followed any end or effect.*

Many other reasons were alleadged by the said Regnaud, *and to what end they tended, adding withall, that concerning the confederacies and conspiracies, as a good and loyall Subiect to his Lord, he had reuealed them to our most deare Lord and Cousine King* Phillip, *who receiued of him many other matters beside. As the Count did the like on the contrary side, requesting, that vpon the defences and answers by him made; Iustice might be rendred and done vnto him by our said Court, and before his departure thence, he offred to defend himselfe competently, vpon the matters proposed by the said* Regnaud *against him, by the Gage of Battaile: which he gaue to our Court against* Regnaud; *those reasons and defences by him propounded and alleadged, alwayes reserued, wherein (before any thing else) the Count required to haue right done him.*

Both the said Parties being diligently heard in our Court, vpon the cases before named, and what either side could say or propose: the Royall Ordenances perused ouer, which were alleadged by the Count, without making any mention of the offence of High-Treason, all things being duely and considerately examined, with whatsoeuer else could be moued to the Court, vpon mature and diligent deliberation: By Decree of our said Court it was said, that Regnaud *was able to propound against the Count the things before said, and that to the demands by* Regnaud *against the Count, hee might and ought to make answere. And concerning the supposition of a false Birth, and other things touching the same onely, propounded by* Regnaud *against the Count: by Decree of the same Court; it was said, that* Regnaud *(in the case concerning that false supposition onely) should not receiue the Gage of Combat from our Court, that case onely admitted no Gage. And for the other matters proposed by* Regnaud *against the Count, concerning the crime of High-Treason: our Court, by the same Decree, receiued*

the Gage of Combat, and the Gages were adiudged, notwithstanding the cases alleadged and propounded by the Count.

In witnesse, &c. Giuen at Paris in our Parliament, the One and twentieth day of Ianuarie, in the yeare of Grace One thousand three hundred twentie and eight.

Signed Gien.

A case proued by witnesses alloweth no Gage of Combat.

This Decree is very remarkeable. By the Ordenance of King *Phillip le Bel*, there is no mention made but of the fourth Case, wherein the Gage of Combat is permitted. There is nothing spoken, concerning the Supposition of a Birth, which must and ought to be proued and verified by witnesses. Hereupon it was that the Court (out of their wonted and approued wisdome) would not admit the Gage of Combat. But concerning the crime of high Treason, the proiects whereof are wrought by subtile and cunning meanes, and that the Lord of *Pons*, he alone might haue had communication of the Conspiracie with the Count of *Commenge*: the Court adiudged the Gage of Battaile, as an order for following times, that in the case of Treason, periurie, and breach of Faith against the Soueraigne, the Gage of Combat is not to be refused or denied.

Count *Bernard Portoit de Commenge, qui est de Gueulles, à quatre Otelles, ou Amandes pelee, d'Argent en Saultoir.*

And for *Regnaud*, Lord of *Pons: Il portoit d'Argent, à la Face, Bandee d'Or, & de Gueulles de six Pieces.*

Concerning Plea of the Sword.

There are memorable Arrests and Decrees, both before and after this, concerning Gages of Combat, which in *France* they then called *Placitum Ensis, The Pleas of the Sword.* Wherein they are deceiued, that haue written concerning the Countie of *Eu*, a Peeredome of *France*, that the said Countie should appeale in suite to the Parliament of *Normandie*, because they say, that in the said Countie of *Eu*, there was (sometimes) *Plea of the Sword*, where was neuer practised, but onely in the Prouince of *Normandie*. Among the most memorable decrees, is this, set downe in Latine, but by me turned into *French*, for the ease of them that doe not vnderstand Latine.

Another notable Decree, concerning the Gage of Battaile or Combat.

The Case of *Estouleau* & *Rochefort*, and *Raymond de Buada*.

A Certaine cause had bin attempted in suite, before the Seneschall of *Tolosa*, and by Appeale in our Court of Parliament, where *Estouleau de Rouchefort*, Esquire, did propound that *Raymond de Buada*, Knight, was assigned a certaine day, by meanes of kinde friends to both the Parties: to the end, that a louing agreement might be made, in a matter of difference depending betweene them, vpon which day it was concluded, that they should meete there without any Armes. Neuertheless, *Buada* had by treason concluded, that twenty men should be armed in his House, to the intent of murdring the said *Estouleau* and his vnarmed companie, shut vp in the Church of the place appointed for the meeting. And wickedly and proditoriously, the said *Buada* had procured a man to be slaine, named *William de Bombot*, one of the others household seruants, cloathed with his Liuerie, and had prepared diuers ambushes, to surprize him at his best aduantage. All which he offered to approue, by his Body against the Body of *Buada*, and thereupon threw downe his Gage of Battaile.

On the Knights part was propounded the contrarie, who offred to purge and cleare his innocencie, in the same manner by the Gage of Combat. Vpon both these offers, we caused an Enquest to be impannelled, to vnderstand, if in such cases thus propounded, there might be desert of Gage of Battaile, according to the Royall Ordenances of our Predecessours. The enquirie hauing bin dilligently made by command of the Court; it was found, that this *William* (whom *Estouleau* had intended to be slaine, was liuing in good health, and that by confession of the said *Estouleau*, *Buada* was innocent. And that it was he himselfe with his company, that

that came Armed at the day and Rendeuous agreed on by the Parties, and that *Buada*, with all them of his company, were come thither without any Armes: whereby *Estouleau* was cast in Law, hauing prouided so many Ambushes, to betray and intrap the life of the partie accused.

The Enquest hauing bin thus carefully made, and considered on by the said Court: Iudgement was publiquely pronounced and giuen, that *Buada* was innocent of the crimes imposed vpon him, and that *Estouleau* had rashly and vnaduisedly throwne downe his Gage of Combat, for which the Court could not finde place or allowance. But condemned him to pay to *Buada*, for his dammages, interests, costs and expences, whereat he had bin in prosecution of Iustice, as well before the Seneschall of *Tolosa*, as in the said Court of Parliament. Which interests and expences were taxed to the summe of fiue hundred Pounds *Tournois*, for paiment whereof, *Estouleau* was to be committed to Prison in the *Chastelet* at *Paris*, or any other Prison where *Buada* would appoint. *Inter Inquestus & Processus.* Iudged by the Court of Parliament, in the Octaues of our Lords Natiuitie, the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred and eight.

The sentence giuen against *Estouleau de Rochefort.*

I haue seene the Armes of *Buada* in *Gascoigne*, which were *De Synople, a Trois pieds de Griffon d'Argent, deux en Chef, & vne en Pointe.*

And as for them belonging to *Rochefort*, there are many appearing at the Parliament of *Tolosa*, but indeede their Armes are diuers.

A Case of iniury betweene two Esquires, for Cage of Combat.

Another Decree Registred in Latine, betweene *William de Bois-Boisseau*, and *Iohn Inguet de Piennendrin*, Esquire, and Complainant to the Court, because a quarrel being moued betweene them, they had iniured one another, and vpon those iniuries; the Seculer Iudge to the Bishop of Saint *Brieu* had ordained, that these Squires should determine the cause by Gage of Combat. Contradicting directly the Ordenance of King *Phillip le Bel* (who then reigned) made for the Gages of Battaile, and published throughout all the Prouinces of the Kingdome. For assurance of this Gage of Battaile, the Bishop of Saint *Brieu* had possessed himselfe of the Armes, Horses and Goods of the Complainants, and kept them till such time as (by a Seriant Royall) he was commanded to deliuer them, vpon good and sufficient Caution.

Sentence giuen against the Bishop of *Brieu.*

The Enquest considering on this matter, referring it to the Court to be iudged, and the Parties heard: It was said, that the Bishop of Saint *Brieu* had adiudged the Gage of Battaile, against the Ordenance of the King; whereby his proceedings were frustrated, and disannulled. He was commanded to redeliuer the Armes, Horses and Goods to the Complainants, and their Cautions discharged. Beside, the Bishop was condemned in a fine to the King, and appointed to appeare in person, at the Parliament on the first Friday, being fifteene dayes after Pentecoast. Iudged in the Parliament, in the *Octaues des Brandons*, at *Paris*, the yeare of Grace One thousand three hundred and eleauen, &c.

In matter and case of iniuries, no Gage of Battaile is to be admitted.

The Case of *Daniel de Blide*, & *Guy de Grignan.*

Another Decree Registred in Latine, betweene *Daniel de Blide*, Knight, Demander on the one side, and *Guy de Grignan*, Knight, on the other side. Because the said *Daniel* alleadged, that *Guy* was a Thiefe and periured Traitour, against *Lewes*, Count of *Flanders* and *Henault*, his Liedge Lord, which he offered to approue against the same *Guy*, by Gage of Battaile, and which he threw into the Court. *Guy* made answere in his owne defence, and auouched to declare by Gage of Battaile (which he also offred to the Court) of that he was an honest man, his cause being equally and iudicially heard; maintaining constantly, that no Gage of Battaile could be granted against him. The Parties being heard, and the Case deliuered according to Law: *Daniel* proposed against Knight *Guye*, that he was a Liedge-man, an Houshold Seruant, and Chamberlaine to the Count of *Flanders*, whom he had robbed of great goods and wealth: Hauing likewise committed diuers Sorceries and wicked acts of Witchcraft, to hinder the Count his Maister, from hauing familiar acquaintance with his Wife the Countesse, neither could haue it. Whereupon *Daniel* required, that *Guy* might be punished, if he did auouch and confesse the crimes imposed on him: but if he denied them, he offred to the Court his Gage of Battaile, to maintaine it Body to Body.

Gage of Combat disallowed on either side.

Against this demand, *Guy* defended, that before *Daniel* had accused him of these crimes, he deliuered sufficient clearing of this case, by Parties appointed according to Law: and therefore persisted still in his proofe, that there was no place for Gage of Battaile, neither was *Daniel* receiueable in his new demand, already ordered and ruled in the Court. So the Court by deliberate determination gaue iudgement, that the Gages of Battaile were nothing worth, offered by the said *Daniel* and *Guy*.

Pronounced the seauenth day of May, One thousand three hundred twentie and sixe.

Sorcerie ought to approue it selfe by Witnesses, and not by Indices. And as for Theft, it is the same; neither of the crimes admitting Gage of Battaile, according to the Ordenance of *Duelloes*, which hath bin formerly related.

Another Decree in *French* Registred, the Court adiudging the Gage of Battaile, without telling the cause, which carried these tearmes.

Gage of Battaile without telling the cause.

In the cause of Gage of Combat, *Durfort* moued in the Court, betweene *Arnaud de Montaigue* Appellant on the one part, and *Emery de Durfort*, Appealed and prouoked on the other. The Court by Decree receiued and admitted the Gages giuen by the said Parties, and to them adiudged the Gages.

Done in Parliament fift the day of May, One thousand three hundred and thirtie.

The said *Montaigu Portoit de Gueulles à Trois Testes de Leopards arrachees d'Or, Deux en Chef, & vne en Pointe.*

And the said *Durfort de Gueulles à vne Bande & Bordure d'Or.*

The Case of *Vidale* and *Asperraut*.

Another Decree Registred in Latine, betweene *Vidale de Ville-neufue*, Esquire, Demander and Complainant before the Seneschall of *Tolossa*, against *Iohn d'Asperraut*, Esquire, for the death of his Vnckle, *Olricke de Langlade*, whom he auouched to haue bin slaine and murdred by the said Appellant, and for proofe thereof, demanded Gage of Battaile. The Defendant maintaining the contrary, the Seneschall said, that there was place for Gage of Battaile, for which he was Appealed. Vpon hearing the parties, the Court affirmed, that the case had bin ill iudged by the Seneschall of *Tolossa*, or his Lieutenant: who should haue called the Appellant to mends making, because there was no place or reason for Gage of Battaile. This Decree was Registred in the Court of Parliament, in the Octaues of our Sauiours Natiuitie, One thousand three hundred thirtie and eight.

The Parliament censureth on Combats.

It would rise to an huge Volume, if I should obserue all the Decrees giuen vpon Gage of Battaile: wherefore we will rest satisfied, with the report of these few in diuers occasions, according as they were offred and demanded: Which doe clearely iustifie, that in matter of Combat, in what place soeuer of *France* the Parties doe dwell: the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, it onely taketh knowledge thereof, without any other permission, for fighting in the Duell or Combat.

A Combat in *Limosin*.

The Lord of *Belay*, in the first and eight Bookes of his Memories, maketh mention of a Duell performed in *Limosin*, by the Barons of *Mye*, and of *Leſtanges*, against the Lord of *Peschell*, aged threescore and ten yeares, and full of the Gout, and his Son *Pasiiat*, Baron of *Gimell*, and Viscount *de Chastillon*, who were Conquerours, *Mye* and *Loſtanges* being slaine in the Field. But because he relateth not, whether the Duell was done by Decree of the Court, or of the King; I forbeare to speake of the perticularities, wherewith I was made acquainted at *Bourdeaux*.

Another famous Combat

I let slip also vnder silence (because the discourse is too common and vulgar) the last Combat, fought in the time of our Fathers at Saint *Germaine* in *Laye*, the tenth day of Iuly, One thousand fiue hundred fortie and seauen, before King *Henry* the second, and by his permission: Betweene *Guy Chabot*, Lord of *Iarnac*, and *Frances de Vivonne*, Lord of *Chastaigneraye*, Gentlemen of the Countrie of *Angomois*; whose Armes are obserued at the Title of *Knights of the Order of the Holy-Ghost*.

Of

Of Duelloes and Combates, in what manner they were ordered and managed among the Germaines.

Cities and places ordained for Combates

THe *Allemaignes* or *Germaines*, by example, and in imitation of the *French*, had places, Townes and Cities, destinated likewise for their *Duelloes* and Combates performed at the Sharpe and vtmost extremity of life (as also for their Iousts and Tourneyes, whereon, by Gods assistance, we will discourse in the Tracte next following.) As namely the Townes and Cities of *Wirtzbourg*, in Orientall *France*, *Onolpach*, in the Bunggrauiat of *Nuremberg*: And of *Halleſſon* in *Saxonie*.

The forme of demanding to haue Combate granted

Before the Senates of which places, such Noble men, as pretended their offences; presented themselues, and demaunded to haue Combate in an enclosed Field. The forme of Answere, made by the Senate to such a motion and demaund, carried these tearmes.

We haue receiued your Letters, and are very sorie to see, that your hearts are so moued with rancour and hatred, as it seemeth you beare to one another. In which regard, we pray you, that you would desist from Combate, if it may be; and that you would end your Quarrels by the way of gentleneſſe and gentleneſſe, without the aduenture of Liues, prouocation and without shedding humaine bloud. Consent to our request, and so much the rather, because we entreate you thereto most instantly.

The answere made by the Senate.

If they persiuered in their spleene, continuing still in claiming Combate, and the Field for Battayle: the Senate then vsed this forme of Iudgement.

The forme of iudgement giuen by the Senate.

Seeing that you shall persist in your hatred and challenge, and that the way of gentleneſſe, can haue no course of kindneſſe betweene you: wee doe order and appoynt, that you shall appeare in such a day before vs, to heare the ground and subiect of your Quarrell, wherein we meane to doe you Iuſtice.

The day of Battayle giuen.

At the day assigned, the Parties being hard, and no meanes might preuaile, to end the difference betweene them louingly: the Senate then appointed them a certaine, day for meeting together, and graunting them the Field of Battayle, taking the future Combatants into the protection and safeguard of the Senate.

The Parties being come to the *Rendez-vous*, or place appointed; the Senate caused them to take the Oathes, as in such cases is accustomed and required; the one not to bring with him any greater traine of attendants, then the other, conformable to the auncient Statutes of Combates, established by the Senate.

Prouision made for the Combattants.

Soone after, in the great Market place, or some other found out to be more commodious, is the Field for Combate ordained: which they engirt with Barres or Listes, and couer it with Sand all ouer.

For the two Combatants are erected two Tents or Pauillions, capable of receiuing the men and their traine. In each of them is placed a Biere and Coffin, Foure Candl sticks and Foure Tapers lighted, a Crosse, and Hearse Cloth for the dead, with all things else, fitting for Obsequies and Funerall of the dead. And each of them hath a Priest to be his Confessour, who commeth thither by the Parties owne appointment, with his Godfathers and Councell.

Equality of weapons and Armes.

Like Armes (without any difference) are giuen them to fight and defend themselues withall, as well on Horseback, as on Foote: such as the Parties had agreed on, and were specified at the time of requiring the Combate.

Especiall prohibitions.

The Herauld or King of Armes (on behalfe of the Senate) publisheth by Proclamation the prohibitions to all there present, for crying, speaking, coughing, spetting or making any signe to either of the Combatants: on payne to haue their right hand and left foot cut off, by the Maister of the high workes, that is the Hangman.

Afterward, the Citty Gates are fast lockt vp, the streets Chayned, and the Barres or Lists round enclosed.

Oathes in the Field.

The Combatants are brought before the Iudges of the Field, appointed by the Senate, with their Confessors and Godfathers, where they sweare the accustomed Oaths

Oaths of not hauing or wearing about them, either Hearbes, Charmes or any Carracters. The Herauld proclaimeth three time: *To let the Valiant Combattants goe to the performance of their duty.* The Party Victorious winneth the Honour of the Combate, and the Vanquished Party remaineth infamous all the rest of his life time afterward: being neuer suffered to mount any more on Horsebacke, to carry Armes, or to be present in any publique assembly, but to haue his Beard close shauen. Imployed in Charges and Offices.

Disgraces of the Vanquished.

If he bee slaine in the Field: hee shall haue Honorable buriall; and his death cannot be preiudiciall to them, that are of his descent and Family.

The Third Tracte discourseth on Iusts, Tourneys and Tournaments: their Originall and Continuance from time to time.

CHAP. V.

The errour of some Historians.

SOme Authours haue written, that the inuention of Iousts and Tourneyes came out of *Allemaigne* or *Germanie*, and that they began in the time of *Henry*, Sirnamed the *Birder*, Duke of *Saxonie* and Emperour, First of the name: which is a populare errour, not hauing any subsistance, but only grounded on a meere false opinion and beleefe.

The Histories of *Germanie* doe report, that at returne from the voyage, which the same Emperour made into *Hungarie* against the *Hunnes*, who rauaged and spoyled the frontiers thereof; he sought the meanes, to moulde and harten the *Germaines* mindes, in matters of Military Discipline, and how to manage well a Horse for future seruices. Which vertuous and notable kinde of instruction, he propounded to such Lords and Princes of *Germanie*, as were vnder his obedience, for making themselues apte and ready to Iousts and Tourneyes. But this seemed a harlhe, vnpleasing and impossible proposition, yea, it exceeded the apprehension of the greatest men in his Court: because such Military kindes of exercises, had neuer bin seene, knowne, nor practised in *Germanie*.

The Emperours forwardnes, and his peoples vnaptnesse.

And because this was the ordenarie exercise of the *French* and *English*: *Decreuit idem Imperator gratificaturus Hospitibus suis* Morem Germanis adeum diem insolitum, sed nobilitati Galliæ, Britanniæque vtilatum *inducere*, *solemnibus Legibus* Equestri decursione *certandi*; *inuitatis ad hoc ad certum Diem*, *per Edictum*, *Vicinis*, *Eternisque Principibus*, *Comitibus*, *Nobilibus*, *qui de Virtute propria tantum confiderent*, *vt in conspectu honoratissimo*, *alienam periclitari non pertimescerent*.

The same Emperour decreed, to bring in a Custome of running at the Tilt by solemne ordynances, at that time vnknowne to the Germaines, *but vsuall with the Nobility of* France *and* England, *inuiting thereunto (by Proclamation at a certaine day) those Princes, Earles, and Nobles both far and neere, who did so much stand vpon their owne valour, that they feared not in a most Honorable Assembly, to make triall of other mens.*

The French and English skilfull in these Noble Exercises.

So speaketh *Franciscus Modius* of *Bruges*, in his *Pandectes Triomphales*, a Booke of singular good reading: Printed in Folio a *Franeford* on the *Moein*, by *Sigismond Feyrabeno*, in *Anno* One thousand, fiue hundred, fourescore and sixe.

For obtayning then a knowledge and light, in the Lawes and Ceremonies of these Noble Exercises: he attayned thereto by a Secretary of his commaundes, named *Phillip*, who had long time trauayled into farre distant Countreyes and Prouinces, and namely into the Kingdomes of *France* and *England*, where he had often times seene *Running at the Ring* by Noblemen, who were very skilfull in the first Exercise, of ryding and managing a Horse: And likewise Combatting at the Barriers,

Running at the Ring vsed only in *England*.

riers, with the other braue exercises of Tilting, Iousts and Tourneyes.

Vpon his relation made to the Emperour, he gaue charge to the *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, the Duke of *Bauaria*, and the Duke of *Franconia* (with whom he ioyned as an Assistant, *Phillip* the Secretary of his Commaunds) to set downe in writing such Articles, as were necessary for the establishing of so Noble an Exercise, and according as they were practised in the Kingdomes of *England* and *France*. Vpon their often meetings together, these Articles following were agreed on, and deliuered to *Henry* the *Birder*, and afterward published openly in his Court.

The Commissioners appointed with the Secretary.

The Articles agreed on, by the Commissioners, concerning the most Noble Exercises of Tilting, Iousts and Tourneyes.

The exercise appointed at euery three yeres.

I. FIrst, that in following time, a Custome should be obserued and kept in *Germanie*, and the Countreyes thereto belonging, from Three yeares to Three yeares, (at the least) to celebrate Iousts and Tourneyes for exercise, and to know the Nobility resorting to them. That all Princes, Lords, Barons, and Gentlemen of Noble extraction, being well Armed and Honourably accoustred, should be welcome to them. From these Tourneyes were to be excluded, all such as could be detected of blaspheming the Great and Sacred name of God, the most Holy Trinity, and Christian Catholique Religion. If any such persons, (standing vpon the Nobility of their extraction) durst be so bold, as to present themselues in this Assembly: We ordaine, Will, and it is Our pleasure; that they shall be dismounted, and depriued of their Horses and Launces. And, as a noate of infamy for euer after, so long as the Tourney shall endure: such a one must ride vpon the Barres or Rayles, as a man exposed to the scorne of the whole Assembly.

Wrong against the Emperour.

II. Whatsoeuer person of the Nobility, that shall (aduisedly and wilfully) speake euill of the Emperours person blame or contemne his Ordenances and Commandes, and resist against them in deed or word: he shall bee ignominiously expulsed from the Tourney, loose his Horse, and ride the Rayles.

Preseruation of Womens honor.

III. Any man of the Nobility, that shall outrage or abuse (by word or deed) the honor of a Wife, Maide or Widdow, and shall possesse himselfe (by force and violence) of their goods and possessions, or shall giue ayde and helpe, to such as shall so wrong and abuse them: he shall loose his Horse, and ride the Rayles.

Gentlemen conuicted of crimes.

IIII. From these Tourneyes are likewise excluded, all Gentlemen attainted and conuinced of Crimes, either of Falshood, Periurie, or breach of faith. Whosoeuer being such an offender, shall dare to present himselfe within the Lists: it is the losse of his Horse, and riding the Rayles.

For treachery perfidie and cowardise

V. Whosoeuer hath betrayed his Lord, and by fraude or craft hath forsaken him, either in going, being there, or returning from Warre, or else hath perswaded his Lords seruants to doe so: Whosoeuer hath not assisted and defended his fellow-Citizen, his Seruants or other persons, (that did put themselues into his safegard and protection) from all iniustice and violence, but hath counselled and procured the contrary, and by feare and cowardise, by intelligence and wicked practise, left and forsooke them, when hee ought and might haue protected and defended him or them: For euer he is to be excluded from Iousts and Tourneys. But if hee dare presume to present himselfe at any; as a manifest noate of shame and infamie, he must loose his Horse, and ride the Rayles.

For treason in a man to his Wife, and to his Soueraigne.

VI. Whosoeuer shall haue procured the death of his Wife, or practised and giuen consent thereto. Whosoeuer also hath fauoured, giuen councell, or lodged the murderers of his Soueraigne Lord, either before, or after his death: Hee shall (to all perpetuity) stand banished from these Tourneys, with the losse of his Horse, and riding the Rayles in sted thereof.

Against Sacriledge and robbing widowes and Orphanes

VII. Whosoeuer hath perpetrated or committed Sacriledge, and despoyled sanctified places of their goods and riches: Or hath vsurped by force and violence, those belonging to Widdowes and Orphanes, without making restitution (vices

which

which ought to be reproued, and punished aboue any other, especially in a Gentleman of Honor) He is to be expulsed from these Iousts, after he hath lost his Horse, and ridden the Rayles.

Of vniust pursuing an enemie.

VIII. Whosoeuer shall surprize his enemy by treason, either before hee hath challenged him, or after, and shall pursue him in any other sort, then as is allowed by the lawes of Warre; burning his Houses and Grandges, tearing vp his Vines and Corne, by meanes whereof, dearth of these fruits of the earth, may bring hurt and damage to the Common-Wealth: Whosoeuer also, either by himselfe, or some other by his intelligence, shall lye theeuishly lurking, and waiting on the high-ways for him: *Omnes hi, adempto equo, Septis pro eo, insidere cogantur.*

Against oppression and extortion.

IX. Whosoeuer shall oppresse his Subiects or Seruants, with nouell imposi-ons, Taxes and Subsidies, either by Land or water (without the knowledge and permission of his chiefe Soueraine Lord) for augmenting and encreasing his owne priuate demeanes: And whosoeuer in the lands and Marches vnder his Gouernemen, shall impose any taxation vpon forraigne commodities, by meanes whereof, Strangers shall be robbed and ill entreated, and Traffick and Commerce hindered: *Cum infamiæ nota, adempto, Septis imponatur.*

Against adultrie and lewde life.

X. Whosoeuer (being maried) shall be conuicted of Adultery: If he be a Widdower, and shall maintaine a married Wife, a Religious Sister, or a deuout Woman: If he be shall be a Messenger to the Low-Countries of Women, or of deuoted Sisters, or Nunne s, or forcibly taketh them for his vse: Let him be banished for euer, from the Noble Assembly of Iousts and Tourneys, depriued of his Horse, and sent away in a Shirt of Maile, or set to ride on a Woodden Hobby-Horse.

Against base minded couetousnesse.

XI. If any one of Noble Extraction, being not satisfied with such goods, as came to him by birth, Kinred and Inheritance, or otherwise wonne and conquered, or by Wadges and Pensions from his Prince; but shall make himselfe a Farmer of goods, fruites or commodities of any other, vnder borrowed names, because he dare not himselfe auouch it: : He is (for euer) to bee banished from this Noble Assembly of Iousts and Tourneyes. But if his bouldnesse maketh him to presume thither, and is seene there: *Equo Multatus, Septa cogatur inscendere.*

Of made-Noblemens presuming.

XII. If any man shall present himselfe at a Iousts and Tourneye, vnder shadow and pretence, that he hath bin ennabled by his Prince, and therefore presumeth to Marche equall, and as a Peere with them of Aancient Nobility, and cannot be iustified by his owne Birth in the Fourth degree, by the Fathers Stock, or by the Mothers side at the least: Such a Gentleman of the first Edition ought to be beaten with Roddes and Swiches, his Horse taken from him, and he to ride the Rayles.

Quisquis recentioris sit notæ Nobilis, & non talis vt à stirpe Nobilitatem suam, & originem quatuor saltem generis Auctorum Proximorum Gentilitiis Insignibus, probare possit. Is quoque Ludis his & Decursionibus Equestribus existo. Aut si Vnus, Pluresue emendicatæ huiusmodi Nobilitatis, cum ijs, quibus iuris est decurrendi, sese permiscuerint, Hi talis verberibus multentur, ex hastiludiorum consuetudine plectentur, & vbi de Equo concurrerint, Septis, notae causa incequitare adigantur.

Whatsoeuer Nobleman being but of a late stampe, and not such a one, as can proue his Nobility and beginning, from the first foundation (at least) by foure customary Armes of the last Aduancers of his pedigree: Let him also bee exempted from these pastimes and Tournaments. Or if one or more of this begged-kind of Nobility, shall sort themselues with those, to whom the right of Tilting appertaineth; let such bee punished with stripes, bee kept from frequenting these Tournaments, and whereas they should haue Iousted together on Horseback, let them be forced to ride vpon a Staffe, or the Railes, that they may be noted from the rest.

The first appointed place of meeting at *Magdebourg*.

According to these Artices and Statutes, the first Assembly or meeting was resolued on, and appointed to be at *Magdebourg*, where the Lists and Barres for the Field were prepared; as well for Iousts at the Lance, man to man, and Running at the Ring, as the Barriers and Tournaments of Companies on Horseback. The Scaffoldes, (which our *Romaines* called *Hourds*) for the Emperour (defrayed at the cost of the Assembly) for the Princes and Princesses of the traine; for the Iudges of the Field, whom the *Germaines* named and called Kings *of the Sportes*; for the Se-

natours

natours and Bourgo-Maisters, of the place where the meeting was made, fairely hung with Tapistries, and adorned with the Armes of the Emperour, the Iudges of the Field, and the assigned Citty; with the place and Scaffold for the Kings Heraulds and Pourseuants of Armes, Trompets, Dromes and Fises.

Appointment of the day and place.

The day for perfourmance of these Iousts and Tournaments, was proclaimed by the King of Armes, or Herauld of the Prouince; and the place of the meeting, as well without as within the said Prouince: And said to be in the safegard, protection and defence of the Emperour, or of the Prince that caused the Assembly. With Prohibition vpon paine of death, to all Heretiques, euill members against the Faith, with all Theeues, Banished persons, and such as haue bin detected by Iustice, to come neere be Round by the space of Tenne miles.

Publique Proclamation for committing offences.

Eight dayes before the beginning of the Iousts and Tournements, a generall Proclamation was made, which we tearme *A publique Crye*; whereby was forbidden to any man, of what quality or degree soeuer he were; to commit any trespasse and offence (either by word or deed) vpon the penalty of paying twenty Markes of Money, which pecuniarie punishment was applicable to the Iudges of the Tourney: with the confiscation of Armes and Horses, which appertained to the King, Heraulds and Pourseuants of Armes.

No man was to outrage and defame the Honour of Ladies, Gentlewomen and their Daughters: vpon paine of imprisonment, and Arbitrary amends.

That no Gentleman should presume to the Tourney, or to run at the Ring: if he were not a Gentleman of three descents at the least, as well by the Fathers side, as the Mothers.

Disgraces arising to Noble Gentlemen by bade marriages.

Euery, or any Gentleman of Noble extraction, presenting himselfe at the Tourney; that had maried for couetousnesse, or delight in a Woman of meane condition: was to be switched with wands, like to a Peazant and villaine, despoyled of his Armes and adornements, his Horse and Furniture taken from him, and he to ride the Barres or Rayles, so long as the Assembly lasted. At the ending whereof, he was to be proclaimed by the King or Herauld of Armes, incapable and vnworthy (for euer after) to appeare among Noble men: his Children and descendants borne, and to be borne, so farre as to the third degree; to be declared as Boores and infamous, excluded and prohibited from Noble Assemblies, vpon indicted penalties.

Duty to be done after admission.

That all such as were receiued and admitted into the Assembly, stood bound, to confesse their sinnes to such Priests, as were appointed by the Bishop of the place: After they had presented their Helmets, Armes and deuises to the Iudges of the Assembly: who caused their Admission to be faithfully Registred, with their Names, Armes and Seigneuries; as also the furnishment or Equipage, and traine.

Or presentation to the Iudges.

And to this effect, they which were admitted to be in the Tourney, stood likewise by Oathe obliged, to present themselues to the Iudges, and perticulerly to him of his Iurisdiction and Prouince: to the end, of being matriculated in the Registler of Noblemen of the same Prouince, in the presence & conduct of the King of Armes, or Heraulds thereunto belonging. By whom hee must be forbidden, to furnish himselfe with any vnfitting Horse, which may offend such as are, or shall be neere him: vpon paine of loosing him, as also his Armes and other furnishments.

For hurtfull or offensiue Armes, either for their sharpnesse, or the by standers.

Forbidding bringing into the said Assembly, any Armes offensiue, but only the Club and Sword, custommably vsed by a man on Horseback *Aptata sua Arma habeat, vt Nemini nocere possint, aut extantibus acuminibus, præacutisque extremitatibus quemquam ledere valeant. Talis etiam non alijs vtantur, quam Clavi Equestri, & Gladio. Let him haue his Armes so fitted and prepared, that they may not be hurtfull to themselues, or to any other of the by-standers, in any manner whatsoeuer. Let him vse also no other Weapons, then a Knights Battaile Axe or Club, and a Sword.* They may vse a Lance with a blunted head, to Iouste each against other, that it may not be dangerous or harmefull to either: but not with a sharpened head. And for running at the Ring, the pointe must be rebated.

As for the equipage or furnishment for the day, it is to be prescribed by the Kings of the Tourney, in such manner as it ought to be.

Allowance for presentation at the Tourney in their degrees.

A Count may presēt himselfe there with fiue men on Horsebacke, himselfe making the sixt man, but not to haue any more.
A Baron may haue foure Horses.
A Knight three: And
An Esquire with two.

Except they will entertaine and pay an ouer-plus of Men & Horses at their owne coste and expences: but not to be defrayed by the Prince, that occasioneth the meeting, and by monies from the common Purse; excepting also the Nobilitie of such a Circle or compasse, at whose expences such an assembly is to be, and may be in like manner made.

The Oathe giuen vpon these occasions

Such were the Satutes of these disportfull meetings, where Oath was giuen to all such as came thither: but perticularly they were to depose, to forget and set apart all hatred and rancour, which formerly they had, or instantly bare to one another, vpon any subiect or occasion whatsoeuer. And hereupon it came, that offensiue Armes were prohibited, except the Sword, the ordenarie and vsuall Armes for a Knight and Souldiour.

Of the Knights Club or Battle-Axe.

Now, as concerning the Knights Club or Battaile-Axe, all them that haue written of Iousts and Tourneyes, haue let it sleepe in silence, and what the fashion of it was. We will therefore set downe such a one, as the *French* (from all Antiquitie) carried, according to the testimonie of the Monke of Saint *Gall* in *Swetia*, in the life of our King and Emperour *Charlemaigne*.

Erat Antiquorum ornatus, & paratura Francorum Claua, *& Baculus de arbore* Malo, *nodis paribus admirabilis, rigidus, & terribilis, cuspide manuali ex Auro, vel Argento cum cælaturis insignibus præfixo portabatur in Dextera. Their Club or Battle-Axe was a Staffe of Crab-tree, heauie and very knottie, the haft or handle whereof was garnished with Gold or Siluer, Damasked with diuers Figures and Deuises.*

So that although it was an ordenarie Armes of a *French* Knight; yet neuertheless, it was both to offend and defend; and euermore at these Tourneyes, there would be some one peeuish and froward humorist, with one of these Battle-Axes, as we shall speake of hereafter more at large.

Sport with the Battle-Axe called Changing of Cuffes.

After these Tournements were thus performed in grosse, by the Assistants armed at all points, with their Coates of Armes, worne vppermost of all: then each man might deale with his Companion at the blunted Lance. Or else they would challenge one another, two to two, or else a certaine number of one Circuit or Prouince, smiting at each other with blowes of the Battle-Axe, to lay one another vpon the ground; which in our *Romancers* was tearmed *Changing of Cuffes*. And namely in that of *Merlin* the Prophet, whom they feigne to be Enchanted in a goodly Garden, there to remaine till the worlds ending; by the Lady of *Lauall* in *Bretaigne*, she being his Loue-Mistresse: *Qui portoit de Gueulles, à Cinq Coquilles d'Argent.* 3. 2.

The manly Exercise of fighting at the Barriers.

These Barriers with Battle-Axes, were performed by troupes and multitudes within compasse of the Barres; each man being guided by foure Deputies, to keepe the Champions in their ranke and order. Foure other also beside, guarded the entrance into the Barriers, for directing the Champions to their Tourney, and winning the Barrier from his Contrary, according as they deale in the Bars. Which Barriers were not enclosed fast, but onely with strong Cords, which the Guards vsed to cut in sunder when it was due time, and made the signale of retreate to such, as had sped worst in this manly exercise: whom our *Romancers* tearmed *Faire performers*, but ill *Speeders*, that is to say; *Faire goers on, but foule commers off*; as being astonned with the blowes, or out of breath, some being smitten downe with the Battle-Axe, and others almost stifled in the crowdes. And oftentimes, by being not well mounted on their Horses, were ouer-borne by others better mounted, and trampled vnder-foote. Those to whom such ill successe happened in the Tourney, had their bummes well Sealed vpon the Barre, and afterward were compelled to ride it, bare headed, without Armes, onely his Coate of Armes excepted; to be knowne of all the Assembly, for such a Knight, or such an Esquire, vnskilfull in Armes, or sitting his Horse.

Disgraces happening in the Barriers.

After

After this Sport of Tourney and Barriers, the *Germaines* (for their last exercise in these Tournaments) came to manage the Sword, not for any offence to bloud; but to cut the Leather straps or thongs, and make the Armes of his Contrary fall from him in the Field, for aduauntage and benefit to the Heraulds. For it belonged to them and the Iudges, before the beginning of the Tourney (which ordenarily lasted Fifteene dayes) to visite and reuisite their Armes, and the furnishment of such as were admitted to the Tourney, and making the ignorant or ill Armed, to ride the Barre.

Managing of the Sword, but not to bloud.

This last Exercise being done, they went to Suppe at the generall Banquet, each man to that of his owne Circuite or Prouince: where the Ladies, as well married, as Widdowes, and yonger Gentlewomen, applauded the praises of them, whom the Iudges had commended for fairest performance; & deliuered the Prizes, which were ordained by the Prince that made the Tourney. An Act thereof is made, Signed then, one King of Armes, and two Heraulds (at the least) of euery Prouince.

Supper at the generall Banquet.

The thankfull gratitudes, and Dauncing.

Afterwards, thankes is giuen and returned on all sides, as well to the Prince, that defraied the charges of so solemne an Assembly; as to the Iudges of the Tourney, and them that carried away the Honour, by commendation of well deseruing. Then began the Dances, wherein the Ladies and Gentlewomen extended their gracefull fauours to the Champions: who led them in the Dance, to the end, that Feminine Nobilitie might pertake in the Exercise of Honour, as well as that of Men.

Who were diffenced with for presence at these Tourneys.

From being present in these Iousts and Tourneyes, dispensation was granted to Kings, Princes, Dukes and high Barons. *Regiæ, Ducalis, & Principalis dignitatis persone ab his ludis Equestribus se abstinent, quoniam Reges sui Regni* Corona, *Principes, & Duces* Serto *caput adumbrare contenti, non solent, Perinde vt alij, in his Ludicris pugnis decertare, nec vlli Sodaletati se inserire debent. Persons bearing the Dignity of King, Duke, and Prince, may abstaine from these Tournaments; because Kings being content to adorne their heads with the Crownes of their Kingdomes, Princes and Dukes with a Garland or Wreath; are not wont (as others) to contend in these Tilting sports, nor ought to ioyne themselues to any society.* They ought not expose themselues to such Exercises; but onely take pleasure in beholding them, and to giue presents to them, who are iudged to be best worthy of recompence.

What number of Iousts, Tourneys and Triumphall Tournaments, haue bin held and perfourmed in Germanie, *vpon seuerall dayes and meetings.*

CHAP. VI.

Meidenbourg in Germany.

THe First Assembly or meeting, for these Triumphall Exercises, was held (as we haue already said) by the Emperour *Henry*, Sirnamed the Birder, being First of the name, and Duke of *Saxonie*: On the first Sunday after the Feast of the *Three Kings*, in the yeare of Grace, Nine hundred thirtie eight, and in the Citie of *Magdebourg*.

The Armes of the Citie.

The said Emperour *Henry*, *Portoit de l'Empire*, that is to say, *D'Or, à l'Aigle Esploye de Sable, Brize de Saxe, qui est de Gueulles, au Cheual gay tourne d'Argent.*

Magdebourg, a Citie in the Dukedome of *Saxonie*, called in Latine *Parthenopolis*, and dedicated to *Venus*: *Porte de Gueulles, au Portail d'vn Chasteau Tourele, & Crenele d'Argent, Massonne de Sable, la Porte Hersee de mesme.* Whereon appeareth halfe a Maide or Damosell, cloathed with *Azure*, holding

in her right hand a Chaplet of all kindes of Floures, and the other hand by her side.

We shall heere obserue, by a most exact search; and vnspeakable trauaile, the Armes, Blazons, Tymbres, Lambrequins and Creasts, belonging to the Kings of those Tourneys, and we will deliuer them according to trueth. Because *Modius* in his *Triumphall Pandects*, hath represented nothing but Shields, cut in Wood, and the most part of them wanting, supposing some by other: but without declaring the Blazons and Coullers, which is the matter only most necessary. The noble Reader may be beholding to me for it, and *Modius* corrected by this perfected Exemplaire: *Deus nobis haec otia fecit.*

Kings of the Tourney, Iudges of the Field.

The Foure Kings of this first Tourney, (speaking according to the manner of the *Germaines*, whom we in *France* tearme *Iudges of the Field*) were these Knights following.

Charles, Lord of *Hohenhowen*, of the Circle or Prouince of *Suauba*: *Qui portoit d'Or, Couppe de Sable a vne Estoile d'Argent* (the *Germaines* make all the Starres to haue Sixe Rayes or beames, and the *French* graunt but Fiue) *Mezail, Tarre de front, Cimier vn Proboscide d'Elephant, d'Argent couppe de Sable, de l'vn en l'autre, lié d'vn lacs d'Amour de mesme. Lambrequins d'Or, & les replis de Sable.*

Meinolphe, Lord of *Erbach*, of the Circle of the *Rhine*. *Qui Portoit Couppe de Gueules, & d'Argent, a Trois Estoiles, Deux en Chef d'Argent, & celle de la pointe de Gueules, Escartele* (correcting *Modius*, who nameth there no quartering at all) *d'Argent a deux Faces de Gueules. Mezail, Tarre de fronts Cimier, Deux Trompes* (which wee tearme the Creast of an Elephant, or Trunck of an Elephant) *Couppe de Gueules, & d'Argent a deux Estendards de Gueules en Saultoir: les Lances d'Or, Lambrequins d'Or, & les replis de Gueules.*

George, Lord of *Wolmershausen* (correcting *Modius* both in Sirname and Armes) of the Circle and Prouince of *Bauaria*: *Qui portoit de Gueules, a deux Faces d'Argent, Mezail, Tarre de front, tourne, Cimier, Chappeau pointu a la Persienne, componne d'Argent & de Gueules. Six plumes a la pointe, le rebord du Chappeau de Gueules, Lambrequins d'Argent, doublez de Gueules.*

In *Germanie* there is an Illustrious Familie, bearing the Sirname of *Lauming d'Erbschenckn*: *Qui porte de Geueules, a vne Face de Sable, Bordee, ou Iumelee d'Argent; Escartele de Gueules, au Lyon d'Or, enserre dans vn Treillis d'Argent. Double Mesal Tarrez. Le Premier, a pour Cimier, vn Lyon tourne seant d'Argent, Coronne d'Or, au Pennache de trois plumes d'Argent, Gueules d'Argent. Lambrequins, Argent & Gueules. Le Deuxiesme Mesal Coronne a pour Cimier l'Escart de cest Escu, c'est adire le Lyon enserre, en figure Exagone, a Cinq plumes, trois d'Argent, & deux de Gueules. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules.* Modius hath taken one Sirname for another.

That is to say, the Lyon wounded in a figure Sixcornered.

Ernestus de Grumbach, of the Circle and Dukedome of *Franconia*: *Qui portoit d'Or, a vn Ethiopien tourne de Sable, tenant vne Banquet de mesme, Tymbre tourne, Cimier Vol tourne d'Or. Lambrequins d'Or, double de Sable.*

The Second Tourney.

A countrey of *Germanie*, betweene *Hassia* and *Sweuia*.

WHich was celebrated by Conrad, Duke of *Franconia* (that is Orientall *France*) and at his costly expences; in the Citty of *Rotenbourg*, it being the chiefest in *Franconia*. On the Sunday after the Feasts of the two Saints *Simon* and *Iude*; in the yeare of Grace, Nine hundred, forty and two.

This Conrad (Sonne in Law to the King of *Germanie*, *Henry*, Sirnamed the *Birder*) *Portoit de Franconia, qui est couppe, endenchee d'Argent, de Gueulés en Chef, Mesal Tarre, & Coronne d'vn Chappeau, Cimier deux Cornes d'Elephant, couppe d'Argent, & de Gueules. Lambrequins de mesme.*

The Foure Kings of the said Tourney, were these Knights following.

Frederick, Count of *Helfenstein*, of the Circle of *Suauba*. *Qui portoit Escartelé, le Premier de Gueules, a l'Elephant tourne d'Argent, sur vn Terasse d'Or. Le Quatriesme*

esme a l'Elephant demesme. Le second & Troisiesme d'Or, a vne Barre hochtee de Gueules. Deux Tymbres affrontez. Le Premier a pour Cimier, vne Teste d'Elephant, tournee d'Argent. Les Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules remployez de l'vn en l'autre, selon l'Art. Le Second a pour Cimier vn Col naissant, tourné d'Or, le Col percé d'vne Virole d'Or a deux queues de Paon. Lambrequins d'Or & de Gueules, doublez de l'vn en l'autre. Heere correct *Modius*, who giueth no quartering at all.

Thibelt, Count of *Andechs*, of the Circle of *Bauaria*, *Couppe du Coste du Chef, d'Argent au Lyon passant de Gueules. Et en pointe d'Azur, a l'Aigle tourné d'Or. Tymbre tiré tourné. Cimier Coronné, au Pennache de Cinq plumes. Lambrequins d'Or, & d'Azur.*

Lewes, Count of *Sarwerden*, of the Circle of the *Rhine*. *De Sable, a l'Aigle d'Argent, Armé de Gueules. Mesal Tarre, Cimier, Leurier naissant d'Argent. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Sable.*

Lewes, Count of *Eberstein*, of the Circle of *Franconia*; *d'Argent, a vne Rose de Gueules, Escartele d'Or, au Sanglier tourne de Sable, sur vne Terrasse de Sinople. Deux Mesals affrontez & Coronnez. Le Premier a pour Cimier deux Proboscides d'Argent, tenans de Quatre Lances de Bague chacun de mesme, a vne Rose de Gueules au Mitan. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueules. L'autre a pour Cimier vn Bus d'Euesque tourné, vestu de Gueules, a vne Rose d'Argent, mitré d'Argent, aux fanons de Gueules. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

Lawes Count of Sarwerden his Armes.

Lewes Count of Eberstein his Armes.

Now, concerning the Armes of the Citty of *Rotenbourg*, seated by *Modius* on the Ritter of *Taubr*, called in Latine *Tuber*, giuing it a Castell, or else the Porte and Hauen of a Citty: Correct that, for it is mistaken, setting downe the Armes of *Rotenburg* vpon the Neckre, for those of *Rotenbourg* vpon the *Taubr*. Which are *d'Argent, a vn Aigle de Sable, Brisé d'Argent au Portail, ou Chasteau garny de deux Tours de Sable, Massonné d'Argent.*

The true Armes of the Citty.

The Third Tourney.

WAs held at the charges of *Ludolphe*, Duke of *Suauba*, in the Citty of [b] *Constance*, on the First Sunday after the Feast of *All-Saints*; in the yeare of Grace, Nine hundred, forty and eight.

[b] A Citie in Germany by Austrige.

This *Ludolphe Portoit de Suauba, qui est d'Or, a Trois Leopards de Sable. Mezal Tarre, Coronne de front. Cimier, vn Aigle de Sable, Lambrequins d'Or, & de Sable.*

The Kings of this Tourney were these Knights.

Ernestus, Lord of *Wimnenberg*, of the Circle of the *Rhine*, *De Gueules, au Leurier Gay d'Argent, au Collier de Gueules bordé d'Or. Mezal Tarre de front, Cimier Leurier naissant* (answerable to the Armes. *Lambrequins de Gueules, & d'Argent.*

Henry de Fraunberg, of the Circle of *Bauaria*. *De Gueulez, au Pal d'Argent, Escartelé de Gueules, au Chenall Gay d'Argent. Mezals Tarrez, & Affrontez. Le Premier, a pour Cimier la Tiare Persique de Gueules sommee de vne queue de Paon, le rebord d'Ermines. Lambrequins de Gueules, & d'Argent. L'autre a pour Cimier vn Chenal Gay naissant, trauersé d'vn Trauail d'Or, sommé de deux queues de Paon.* Correct *Modius*, who setteth downe no Quartering.

The Persian Tiaras for the heads of Princes & Priests.

Duch de Redwitz, of the Circle of *Franconia*. *Qui Portoit Face d'Azur, & d'Argent a Sept pieces, a vne Bande Ondee de Gueules. Mesal, Cimier, vne Teste & Col de Licorne d'Argent. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules; Reply de l'vne en l'Autre.*

Frederick de Hirnheim (correcting *Modius* in the Sirname) of the Circle of *Suauba*, *D'Argent, au Massacre de Cerf de Gueules. Mezal Tarre* (the *Germaines* doe hole the most part of their Helmets in the front, but others are turned on the right side, according to the Perspectiue of Armes) *& Coronne. Cimier, Deux Proboscides d'Elephant. L'vne d'Argent, & l'autre de Gueules. Lambrequins. Idem.*

Constans, a Citty seated on the Lake of *Ackron*; beareth *D'Argent, a la Croix plaine de Sable.*

The Armes of Constans.

The Fourth Tourney.

A Citty by Sibus in Germanie.

WAs celebrated by *Ridack*, Marqueſſe of * *Miſnia*, in the Citty of *Mertſpourg*: the Firſt Sunday after the day of Saint *Andrew*, in the yeare of Grace Nine hundred, threeſcore and nine.

This Marqueſſe, or Margraue of *Miſnia*; *Porte d'Or, au Lyon de Sable. Meſal Tarre, & Coronne Cimier, Bus d'vn Sultan a longue Barbe, a la Campanelle Pallee d'Argent, & de Gueules. La Tyare Perſique renuerſee d'Argent finiſſant en queue de Paon. La doubleure, & Rebort d'Argent.*

The Kings of this Tourney, were theſe Knights.

Volpert de Franckenſtein, of the Circle and County of the Palatinat of *Rhine* (alias *Rhein*) *Porte d'Or, a vn Pied de Cordonnier, mis en Barre de Gueules. Heaume Tarre, tourne & Coronne; Cimier Vol Tourne d'Or, charge du Couteau a Pied de Gueules. Lambrequins d'Or, & de Gueules.*

In *Germanie* there are many Illuſtrious Families, which beare the Sirname of *Franckenſtein*; but their Armes are different from them, of whom we ſhall haue occaſion to ſpeake, in their ſeuerall places and degrees.

Franckenſtein, who beareth *D'Azur, a vne Face d'Or. Timbre, tarre de front*, according as all the reſt. *Cimier, Lozange Octogone de Queue de Paon, les Armes dans icelle. Lambrequins, Or, Azur.*

The other *Franckenſtein*: He beareth *De Gueules, a Deux Barres de Sable, a vne Cheure tournee d'Argent, monte ſur vne Terraſſe de meſme. Meſal, Tarre, Cimier. Vol eſployé. Vne Aile charge du Premier, l'autre Party, de Sable, & au Mitan la Cheure naiſſant tourne* as in Armes. *Lambrequins, d'Or, & de Sable.*

Erneſtus de Kunsberg, of the Circle of *Franconia*. *D'Azur, a vne Pointe d'Argent. Meſal, Tarre, Bourlet d'Argent. Cimier*, double *Proboſcide, l'vn d'Argent, l'autre de Gueules. Lambrequins de Gueules, & d'Argent.*

A Leane or Weele tor Fiſhes.

Grunolt de Heſer. Of the Circle of *Bauaria*: *D'Argent, a Trois Cheurons Breteſſez Chacun de Trois pieces de Gueules. Meſal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier, vne Naſſe a Poiſſon, ouuerte par le Mitan, a vne queue de Paon au deſſus. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

Guillaume, or *William* of *Nippenbourg*, Of the Circle of *Suauba*. *D'Azur, a vn Vol* (that is to ſay, two Winges of Siluer) *Eſcartele de Sable a vne Vaſe couuert d'Or* (heerin Correct *Modius*, who admitteth no Quartering at all) *Deux Meſals Tarrez, Coronnez, & affrontez. Le Premier a pour Cimier vn Bus de Fille Coronne D'Or, habillee d'Azur, a Deux Ailes d'Argent. Lambrequins Azur & Argent. L'autre a pour Cimier vn Vaſe d'Or. Lambrequins Or, & Sable.*

The Armes of Mertſpourg.

Now, as concerning the Armes of the Citty of *Mertſpourg*, *Modius* is therein much miſtaken, becauſe he giueth it a Lyon. It beareth *d'Or, a vn Chaſteau en Triangle de Sable, Maſſonne d'Argent.* That of *Martſpourg* beareth *d'Or au Fantaſſin Armé d'Argent, a vne Cornette & Banniere d'Azur, chargee d'vn Lyon d'Or.* This is that which is at the Marquiſate of *Miſnia*, whereof there is now matter in queſtion, as ſaid to beare the name of *Marcomir*, King of the *French*, and Firſt of the name (caried Priſoner in to *Tuſcanie*, as we haue already ſhewne elſewhere) who had built it. That of *Mersbourg*, is in the dioceſſe of *Conſtans*, vpon the Lake *Podamica*, or of *Acron*: built by our King *Dagobert*, and face to face confronting *Conſtans*.

The Fifte Tourney.

THis was celebrated in the Citty of *Brunſchweigh*, by *Ludolph*, Marqueſſe of *Saxonie*, Lord of *Brunſwick*; the Firſt Sunday after the Feaſt of the Three Kings, in the yeare of Grace Nine hundred, foureſcore and ſixteene.

Modius his falſe Emblazon corrected.

Ludolphe beareth (contrary to *Modius*, whoſe falſe Emblazon is thus to be corrected) *Au Premier de Saxe Ancienne*, to witt, *de Gueules au Cheual Gay tourne d'Argent. Le Second eſt d'Azur a vn Aigle Coronne d'Or. Le Troiſieſme eſt d'Argent, a Trois bouts d'Eſpee de Gueules. 2. 1. Le Quatrieſme de Saxe moderne Face d'Or & de Sable de Huict pieces, a vne Coronne de Rue perse en Bande, brochant ſur le Tout de Synople. Et ſur le Tout de Tout, de Gueules a Deux Leopards paſſants l'vn ſur l'autre d'Or. Trois*

Meszels,

Meszels, Deux affrontez, & l'autre Tarre de front, & Coronnez. Le Premier a pour Cimier vn Chapeau (d'Aleman) de Gueules, au Bord releue d'Argent, entre deux Euentaulx de queues de Paon. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules. Le ſecond a pour Cimier vne Pyramide chargee de Saxe Moderne Coronee, & deſſus vne queue de Paon. Lambrequins Or, & Sable. Le Troiſieſme a pour Cimier l'Aigle du ſecond quartier. Lambrequins Or, & Azur.

The Kings of the ſaid *Tourney* were theſe Knights.

Heliopolue de Schonſtein, of the Circle of *Bauaria*, *Qui portoit d'Or au Pal de Sable. Meszal Tarre de front & Coronne, Cimier vne Naſſe d'Ozier ouuerte au mitan, & deſſus vn Paſtoral. Lambrequins Or, & Sable.*

Moreouer there is in *Germanie* an other Family of this Sirname, which beareth *De Gueules Coupe eſchiquete d'Argent & de Gueules de quatre traicts. Meszal Tarre de front. Cimier Chappeau pointu a l'Albanoiſe eſchiquete des Armes, le Rebord leue de Gueules, vne Aigrete a la pointe d'enhaut. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

Frederick de weſterſteton, of the Circle of *Suauba*, *Qui portoit d'Argent, couppe d'Or, party de Gueules, Heaume au Meszal Tarre de front, & Coronne. Cimier Vn Vol de front, l'vn d'Or, l'autre de Gueules. Lambrequins Or, & Gueules.*

Willerm de Waldenſtein, of the Circle of the *Rhine*. *Modius* is miſtaken, in giuing to *Waldenſtein*, the Armes of *Wallenſtein*: *Qui porte Palle d'Argent & de Gueules de huict pieces. Meszal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier, Vn Aigle tourne & Coronne d'Argent. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueules.* But concerning the Family of *Waldenſtein*, they beare *De Gueules, vn Laurier Gry tourne d'Argent. Mezal, Tarre de front, & Coronne. Cimier. Laurier paſſant tourne d'Argent. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueules.* Correct *Modius.*

Conrad de l'eſtenberg, of the Circle of *Franconia*, *De Synople, a vne Face d'Argent. Mezal Tarre. Cimier vne Teſte de Bracque tourne de Synople au Collier d'Argent. Lambrequins de Synople & d'Argent.*

If this had bin *Weſtenberg*: He ſhould haue borne *d'Azur, Eſcheque de Gueules, & d'Argent. Meszal Tarre. Cimier Deux Cornes d'Azur, a Trois Banderoles chacune Eſcheque d'Argent, & de Gueules. Lambrequins Azur, & Argent,*

Braunſchweig, Porte d'Argent, au Lyon de Gueules.

The Armes of Braunſchweig.

At this Tourney was preſent the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg Henry*, ſo named at his Baptiſme: for before, he was a *Pagane* and an Idolarer. Being conuerted to the Faith of Ieſus Chriſt, he tooke for Armes *D'Argent, a vn Aigle de Gueules, au Bec & membres d'Or*, forſaking his Auncient Armes, which were (badly blazoned) *De Sable, a vn Dragon de Gueules.*

The Sixt Tourney.

A Citty in Germanie betwixt Belgia and the River Moſella.

WHich was celebrated at the charges of the Emperour *Conrad*, Second of the name, Duke of *Franconia*, in the Citty of *Treuers* vpon the *Moſella*, his ordenary abyding: on the firſt Sunday after Candlemaſſe day, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand and nineteene.

This Emperour *Conrad Portoit de l'Empire, l'Aigle Erize de Franconia, qui eſt Enaſchee Couppe d'Argent & de Gueulez. Meszal Tarre, Coronne. Cimier Deux Proboſcides d'Elephant d'Argent, Couppez, & Endenchez de Gueules. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueules.*

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Sifrid de Warth (Correct *Modius*) of the Circle of *Bauaria*. *Il portoit d'Argent, a Trois Faces Breteſſees* (alwayes in diminiſhing, 3. 2. 1. *de Gueules*) *Meszal Tarre, et Coronne. Cimier. Vn Vol Tarre, Breteſſe*, as the Armes. *Lambrequins de Gueules, et d'Argent.*

In *Germanie* there are two Families of this Sirname, almoſt like one another: but the one's name is written with a *D.* without H. *Wardt.* The firſt beareth *D'Azur, a vn Aigle tourne d'Or, et couppe en Trois. La poincte d'Or, l'Abiſme d'Argent, et le Chef de Sable. Mezal Tarre. Cimier Teſte de Limier tourne d'Or, le Collier d'Argent. Lambrequins Or et Azur.*

The other Family beareth *D'Azur, Flanqui d'Argent, Mezal Tarre. Cimier de Cornes, l'vne d'Argent, & d'Azur en Cheuron droict; & l'autre en Cheuron renuerse d'Azur, & d'Argent. Lambrequins. Idem.*

William de Cronberg, of the Circle of the *Rhine. Portoit* (Correct *Modius*) *au Premier Quartier de Gueules a vne Coronne d'Or. Le Second & Troisiesme Vaire. Le Quatriesme & dernier de Gueules sans charge. Mezal, Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier vne Pomme de Pin de Sable. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

Rodolphe de Stoffeln (correct Modius) of the Circle of *Suauba, D'Argent au Lyon Coronne tournede Sable. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, Lyon naissant Coronne tourne de Sable. Lambrequins Argent & Sable.*

Kilian de Wolffskeel, of the Circle of *Franconia: d'Or a vn Aethiopien vestu de Sable, au bouquet de mesme. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, Vol d'Argent, Lambrequins d'Or & de Sable. Grumbach* beareth the same: but the *Aethiopian* is tourned, and reuersed

The Armes of Treuers. *Treuers Porte d'Argent a vn Sainct Pierre, vestu d'Azur, Visage, Mains, & Pieds d'Incarnation.*

The Seauenth Tourney.

The first day of May. WHich was held in the Citty of Hall in *Saxonie*, vpon the renowned Riuer of the *Rhine*, by the Emperour *Henry*, Third of the name, Duke of *Saxonie*: the first Sunday after the Feast day of the two Saints: *Phillip* and *Iacob*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, forty and two.

The Emperour *Henry Portoit de l'Empire, l'Aigle Brise des Armes de Saxe*: Obserued in the First and Fourth Quarters of them belonging to the Marquesse of *Saxonie*.

The Kings of this Tourney, were these Knights.

Iacques de Elrichshausen, of the Circle of *Franconie. Qui portoit Bande de Gueules, & d'Argent de Six pieces. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier Bouc naissant Bande de Gueules & d'Argent, aux Cornes d'Or. Lambrequins de Gueules, & d'Argent.*

Michaell de Morsberg, of the Circle of the *Rhine. Qui portoit d'Azur, a Trois Aiglons d'Or, 2. 1.* (Correct *Modius*) *Escartele de Cinq Poincts d'Argent, Equipolez a Quatre de Gueules. Deux Mezals Tarrez, & Coronnez. Cimier du Premier vn Vol de front, charge chacun d'Azur, a Trois Aiglons d'Or. Lambrequins Or & Azur. Cimier de l'autre, vn Bus d'Enfant Poincte d'Argent, & de Gueules, au Bandeau de Gueles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

Diepolde de Reischach, of the Circle of *Suauba, d'Argent, a vne Teste & Col de Sanglier, de Sable. Mezal, Tarre. Cimier de mesme qu'en Armes. Sable, & Argent.*

Wonbold de Cammeraw, of the Circle of *Bauaria. D'Argent, au Cheual Marin naissant de Gueules. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier de mesme qu'en l'Escu. Lambrequins Argent & Gueules.*

The Armes of Hall in Saxonie. *Hall* in *Saxonie* (whereof the question now is) *Porte d'Argent, au Croissant montant de Gueules, a Deux Estoiles, de mesme l'vne en Chef, & l'autre en Poincte.* Correct *Modius*, who hath taken the Armes of the Towne of *Braubach* (which are *d'Azur, au Croissant tourne d'Or, a deux Estoiles de mesme*) in stead of these.

Hall in *Kochar*, otherwise called *Kochentall, Porte d'Argent, a l'Aigle esploye de Gueules, Brise d'vn Escu d'Argent, couppe de Gueules.*

Hall in *Iuthall, Porte de Gueules, a Deux Lyons affrontez, & Coronnez d'Or, tenants vn Tonneau d'Argent entre eux-deux:* And

Hall in *Henegaw* (for there are Foure *Halls* in *Germanie*) *Porte d'Or a vn Chasteau en Triangle de Gueules, ayant en poincte vn Escu de Bauieres; Escartele du Palatinat du Rhein.*

The Eight Tourney.

WAs Celebrated at the cost and expences, and by *Harman*, Duke of *Suauba*, in the Citty of *Ausbourg*, the first Sunday after the Feast day of Saint *Laurence*, in the yeare of Grace One thousand and fourescore.

The

The same Harman *Portoit de Suauba, d'Or, a Trois Leopards, l'vn sur l'autre de Sable. Mezal, Tarre Coronne. Cimier, Aigle de Sable. Lambrequins, d'Or & de Sable.*

The Kings of this Tourney were these Knights.

Rodolphe de Rechberg, of the Circle of *Swaba*. There are three Families in *Germanie* of this Sir-name, and Armes almost alike. *Hohen Rechberg, porte d'Or, a deux Lyons adossez, les queues passees en Sautoir de Gueulles, Mezal Tarre. Cimier vn Dain naissant tourne d'Or. Lambrequins. Or, & Gueulles.*

Another *Rechberg*, without any other difference (which I take to be the man now in question.) *Qui porte d'Argent a deux Lyons adossez de Gueulles aux queues entrenouees & passees en Saultoir. Mezal. Tarre, Cimier. Dain naissant droict de Gueulles, & Argent.*

Another *Rechberg*, likewise without any difference. *Qui porte les Lyons adossez de Gueulles en Champ d'Argent, Escartele d'Argent a vne Dain tourne de Gueulles, rampant sur vn Rocher de Sinople. Mezal, Tarre & Coronne. Cimier Dain naissant tourne de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.*

Ambrose of *Mubberg*, of the Circle of *Bauaria*. There are two Families in *Germany* of this Sir-name, but of different Armes.

The first beareth *D'Argent, a vn Corbeau tourne de Sable, tenant vn Anneau d'Or a son bec. Mezal. Tarre. Cimier. le mesme Corbeau tourne a l'Anneau d'Or. Lambrequins Argent & Or.*

The other which is now in question. *Porte d'Or a quatorze Tourteauz de Sable 4. 4. 3. 2. 1. Mezal Tarre. Cimier. deux Proboscides d'Elephant d'Or, chargez de Douze Tourteaux de Sable. Lambrequins Or & Sable.*

Conrad *de Allendorf*, of the Circle of the *Rhine. D'Or, a vn Poulain a descendre vin en caue, de Gueulles mis en bande. Mezal. Tarre. Cimier. Demy Vol D'Or, audict Poulain de Gueulles en bande. Lambrequins Or, & Gueulles.*

Reinard *de Leonrodt* of the Circle of *Franconia*. Correct *Modius*. *Il portoit d'Argent, a vne Face de Gueulles. Mezal. Tarre. Cimier. Proboscides d'Argent Facez de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.* The Towne of Ausbourg *Porte, Party de Gueulles, & d'Argent, a vn Chapiteau de Colomne, charge d'vne Pomme de Pin. D'Or.*

The Ninth Tourney.

WHich was held by *Ludolphe*, Duke of *Saxonie*, Count of *Supplinbourg*. The first Sunday after the Feast of *All-Saints*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand one hundred and nineteene, in the Towne of *Gotting*.

Ludolphe *portoit de Saxe ancienne, Escartele d'Or, a vn Massacre de Cerf, seme de Tourteaux de Sable. Mezal. Tarre. & Coronne. Cimier, la Pyramide de Saxe moderne, au Cheual gay passant sur icelle d'Argent, le tout dedans deux Faucilles dentees d'Argent au manche d'Or, mis en facon de Vol, entourez de queues de Paon.*

The Kings of the Tourneys were these Knights:

Gothard *de* Andlaw (Correct Modius) of the Circle of *Suauba. Il portoit d'Or, a vne Croix plaine de Gueulles Mezal. Tarre. Cimier. Bus d'vn Roy de front, Coronne, a grands Cheueux, habille d'Ermines. Lambrequins d'Argent.*

Henry *de Torring* (Correct *Modius* both in the Sir-name and Armes) of the Circle of *Bauaria. Il portoit d'Argent, a trois Roses de Gueulles. 2. 1. Escartele d'Or, a trois Lozenges en Bande, de Sable. Sur le Tout de Gueulles, a vne Pincette mise en Bande d'Argent. Trois Heaumes tarrez, celuy du Milan de front, & les deux autres affrontez. Sur le Premier, Thiare Persique d'Ermines, Coronne d'Or, a vne queue de Paon, le Rebord d'Argent, charge de Trois Roses de Gueulles. Lambrequins. D'Argent, & de Gueulles.*

That in the midst *Coronne. Cimier, vne Estoile d'Or. Lambrequins d'Or.*

The third is Crowned likewise, *Cimier vn Paon d'Or. Lambrequins d'Or, & de Sable.*

Kilian *de Wisentaw* (Correct *Modius* in the Sirname and Armes) of the Circle of *Franconia.*

Franconia. Qui portoit d'Or, à vn Pal Lozenge de Gueulles. Mezal. Tarre. Coronne Cimier de Deux Proboſcides de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Or, & de Gueulles.

William de Hundsbuſch, of the Circle of the *Rhine* (Correct *Modius* in the Sir-name) *Il portoit de Gueulles, au Saultoir engreſle d'Argent. Mezal. Tarre. Cimier. Chappeau à l'Alemande de Gueulles, double & rebord d'Argent. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueulles.*

The Armes of the Towne. Gotting *Porte en Armes, de Gueulles, à vne Lettre Capitale G. d'Argent.*

The Tenth Tourney.

IT being celebrated in the time of the Emperour *Fredericke*, Sirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, firſt of the name; By *Guelphon*, fourth of the name, Duke of *Bauaria*, the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Anaren*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand, one hundred threeſcore and fiue, in the Citie of *Zurich*; the Armes, whereof we haue obſerued, vnder *The Order of Saint Gall.*

The Armes of the Dukes of *Bauaria* are *Lozenges d'Azur, & d'Argent en Bande, Eſcartele du Palatinat du Rhin qui eſt de Sable, au Lyon Coronne d'Or. Deux Heaumes au Meſal Tarrè de front, & Coronnez. Cimier. Deux Vols affrontez. Le Premier, charge de Bauiere, & l'autre du Palatinat: Lambrequins, des Metaux, & Couleurs des Armes.*

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Iohn de Leminger, of the Circle of *Bauaria*, *Qui portoit* (Correct *Modius* in Sir-name and Armes) *de Gueulles à vn Vaſe couuert à vne Anſe d'Argent; Eſcartele d'Azur, Party de Gueulles, à vne Face d'Argent. Deux Mezal Tarre & Coronnez. Cimier. Le Premier Deux Proboſcides. Facez de Gueulles & d'Argent, au Vaſe au Mitan d'Argent. L'autre, demy Vol, d'Azur, Party d'Auſtriche Moderne. Lambrequins des Metaux, & Couleurs. Le Premier d'Argent, & de Gueulles, l'autre, de Gueulles, & d'Azur.*

George *de Fuchſen*, of the Circle of *Franconia*. There are three Families in *Germanie*, of this Sir-name and Armes.

The firſt beareth *D'Or, à vn Renard tourne de Gueulles Eſcartele d'Argent, à vne Face d'Azur, au Lyon de Gueulles rampant ſur le tout. Sur le Tout du Tout. Party de Gueulles, en Mantel, à la Pointe d'Azur, Trois Mezal Tarre & Coronnez. Le Premier a pour Cimier vn Renard de Gueulles, tourne, & plante ſur ſon Cul, comme vn Singe. Celuy du Mitan, vn Plain Vol change de ſur le Tout. Et le Troiſieſme vn Lyon naiſſant de Gueulles. Lambrequins. Le Premier d'Or, & de Gueulles. Le Second, de Gueulles, & d'Azur. Le Troiſieſme d'Argent, & de Gueulles.* And this Familie called it ſelfe *Fuchſen de Fuſchberg.*

The other, *Porte d'Or, au Renard tourne de Sable. Meſal. Cimier, & Lambrequins, comme le Premier des Trois, qui n'a point de Coronne, ains ſeulement vn Chappeau à l'Alemande, de Gueulles, au rebord d'Or, ſur lequel Monſieur le Renard eſt aſsu.*

The third *Porte vn Renard droict, Mezal Tarre Cimier Renard droit, & Lambrequins, comme il eſt cy deſſus.*

Wernier *de Greiffenklaw* (Correct *Modius* in the Sirname) *Porteit de Sable, à la Bande d'Argent. Eſcartele d'Azur au Rais d'Eſcarboucle Pommete, & Fleurdelyſe d'Or. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, vn Pied de Griſon d'Or, à la Cuiſſe de Sable. Lambrequins d'Or, & d'Azur.*

Fredericke *de Stauffen*, of the Circle of *Suauba*. There is not any Family in *Germany*, by the Sir-name of *Stauffen*, that beareth ſuch Armes as *Modius* hath giuen them, in regard that

The firſt Family of this Sir-name beareth *De Gueulles, à Trois Calices, couuerts de leurs Volets, d'Or. 2. 1. deux Mezal, Tarre, & Coronnez. Cimier du Premier vne Mitre, à vne queue de Paon deſſus. Lambrequins Gueulles, & Or. L'autre a pour Cimier, Teſte & Col d'Aigle d'Or, Lambrequins Or & Gueulles.*

The other by the Sir-name of *Stauffenberg. Porte d'Argent, au Calice de Gueulles ſur vne Mont queſe à Azur à deux Volets d'Or l'vn ſur l'autre Mezal Tarre de front, & Coronne. Cimier vne Fille naiſſante de deſſus vne Montagnete d'Azur, Habillee d'Argent, ayant ſur l'Eſtomach vn Calice & Volet de Gueulles; au lieu de bras deux Cornes de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.*

The

The Eleauenth Tourney.

WAs Celebrated in the Citie of * *Cologne* (called by the *Romans Agrippina*) at the coſt and expences of *Florent*, Count of *Henault, Holland* and *Zeland*; Lord of *Friezeland*: On the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt of the *Three Kings of Cologne*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand one hundred threeſcore and nineteene.

The ſame Florent, *Portoit de Flandre, Eſcartele de Hollande. Le Troiſieſme de Frize, le Quatrieſme & dernier de Zeelande.* Armes heretofore very remarkeable, in the diſcourſe concerning the Voyages of *Ieruſalem. Mezal, Tarre. Cimier vne queue de Paon. Lambrequins, de Hollande d'Or, & de Gueulles.*

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights following.

Iohn de Helffenſtein (Correct *Modius* in the Sir-name and Armes) of the Circle of the *Palatinate*. I cannot tell where *Modius* fiſhed for the Armes which he hath giuen him, and namely the Floures de Luces: For in *Germany* there are no more then three Families of this Sir-name, and in Armes they be different.

The firſt is written with one F. alone, *Helfenſtein*, who beareth in Armes, *De Gueulles, à vn Elephant tourne, d'Argent ſur vne Terraſſe, & petite Montagne d'Or au Premier quartier; & au Quatrieſme l'Elephant eſt à droict. Le ſecond & troiſieſme eſcartſont d'Or, à vne Barre, ou fueille de Scie des deux coſtez de Gueulles. Deux Mezal. Tarre ſur le premier eſt pour Cimier, la Teſte & Col d'vn Elephant tourne d'Argent, charge d'vne Barre Sciee de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles. L'autre a pour Cimier vne Teſte d'Oye d'Or, le Col perſe de deux Euentails, de plumes de Paon. Lambriquins Or, & Gueulles.*

The ſecond beareth likewiſe but one F. according to the firſt: *& en Armes d'Azur, couppe d'Argent, au Lyon naiſſant tourne de Gueulles* (theſe are they that *Modius* ſhould haue ſet downe) *Mezal. Tarre. Cimier, compoſe d'vn Panache de Cinq plumes de couleurs differentes, à ſcauoir de Gueulles, d'Argent, d'Azur, d'Argent, & de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent & d'Azur.*

The third *Helfentein* with one F. onely, as the two other, hauing in Armes *Bande de Sable, & d Or de quatre pieces, à vn poinct quarre d'Azur en Chef au canton d'Honneur. Mezal, Tarre Cimier vn Elephant naiſſant d'Or, couppe de Sable. Lambrequins, Or, & Sable.*

Sifrid *de Leubelſing*, of the Circle of *Bauaria* (Correct the Armes of *Modius*) *qui portoit d'Argent à deux Faces de Gueulles. Eſcartele de Gueulles, Party d'Argent, à deux Bandes d'Azur. Deux Mezals Terre Cimier du Premier. Vn Chien Braque tourne aſsis d'Argent, au Collier de Gueulles. Lautre Cimier vn Vol entier, l'vn de Gueulles, & l'autre du Party. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles au Premier; & l'autre, Argent, & Azur.*

Otho *Wolffgang de Abſpergk* (Correct *Modius* in the Sir-name) of the Circle of *Franconia. Portoit Party de Gueulles, & d'Azur, à la pointe d'Argent. Mezal Tarre & Coronne. Cimier. Vn Bus d'Enfant tourne, habille de Sable, les cheueux treſſez & cordonnez par derriere d'Or, & de Gueulles, la Teſte couuerte d'vn Chappeau de Gueulles, au rebord d'Argent, vn Panache à la pointe du Chappeau, de trois plumes d'Azur, d'Argent, & de Gueulles. Lambrequins Azur & Argent.*

William *de Landtaw* (Correct *Modius* in the Sir-name) of the Circle of *Suauba. Portoit d'Or, à trois Cores de Chef en Faces, de Sable, Mezal, Tarre Coronne d'vn Bonnet & Mortier d'Or. Et deſſus pour Cimier, vne Queue de Paon. Lambrequins, Or, & Sable.*

There is another Familie in *Germany* of this Sir name of *Landtaw*, and of different Armes *Bande d'Argent, & de Gueulles de quatre pieces. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Deux Proboſcides, Bandez comme les Armes. Lambrequins Argent & Gueulles*

The Citie of *Cologne*, being the Metropolitane. *Porte d'Argent au Chef de Gueulles, à Trois Coronnes d'Or.* The Armes of the Citie.

The Thelfth Tourney.

IT was held in the Imperiall Citie of *Norimberg*, by the Emperour *Henry*, fixt of the name (styling himſelfe King of *Naples* and *Sicilie*) Duke of *Suauba*: the firſt Sunday after Candlemaſſe day, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand one hundred foureſcore and eighteene.

Suauba is obſerued in the third Tourney: But I know not where *Modius* hath bin fiſhing for the *Brizure* of *France*, and the *Marteaux en Barre*.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Wilebold *de Thengen*, of the Circle of *Bauaria* (Correct the Sir-name and Armes of *Modius*) *Qui portoit de Gueulles, a vne Licorne d'Argent Mezal Tarre Cimier, Licorne naiſſante d'Argent. Lambrequins, Gueulles, & Argent.*

Iohn *de Hirnheims*, of the Circle of *Suauba*: His Armes are in the third Tourney.

Ortolphe *de Wilhelmſdorf*, of the Circle of *Franconia. Il portoit d'Azur, Couppe d'Or, à Trois Lozenges de Gueulles, Mezal Tarre Cimier vn Bus de Sarazin tourné, & habillé d'Azur, Chappeau pointu recourbe par deuant de Gueulles, le rebord d'Or, à Trois Lozenges de Gueulles, vn Pennache au bout du Chappeau, compoſé de trois plumes d'Azur, d'Argent, & de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Or, & d'Azur.*

William *de Reiſſenberg* of the Circle of the *Rhine*. If this be the ſame *Reiffenberg* according as *Modius* writeth. *Il portoit de Sable, à vne Bande d'Or Mezal Tarre Cimier. Deux Probeſcides Facez de Sable & de Gueulles. Lambrequins* Idem.

If it be he of *Reſenbach*, *Il portoit Bande d'Argent, & de Gueulles de Neuf pieces, ſans Lambeau. Mezal Tarre Cimier. Chappeau poinctu de Gueulles, rebord d'Argent. Cinq plumes, deux au Cordon du Chappeau d'vn d'autre coſte d'Argent, & trois au ſommet d'Iceluy de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.*

The Armes of Norimberg. Norimberg *Porte Mottie de l'Empire. Party, de Bande de Gueulles, & d'Argent, de Six pieces.*

The Thirteenth Tourney.

WHich was Celebrated in the Citie of *Wormes* vpon the *Rhine*, in the time of the Emperour *Phillip*, Duke of *Suauba*, by the Nobilitie of the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*: The firſt Sunday after Candlemaſſe day, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand two hundred and nine.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Iohn *de Ingelheim*, of the Circle of the *Rhine*. *De Sable, à la Croix pleine, Eſchequee de Gueulles, & d'Argent de deux traicts Mezal Tarre Coronne Cimier Vol, chargé des Armes. Lambrequins Argent, & de Gueulles.*

Erneſtus *de Staffel*, of the Circle of *Suauba*. *D'Or, au Maſſacre de Cerf, en Pal de Sable, au Mitan vn Cloud de meſme Mezal Tarre Coronne. Cimier, Vol d'Argent. Lambrequins, Or, & Sable.*

Sichard *de Leubelfing*, of the Circle of *Bauaria*. See the eleauenth Tourney.

Lewes *de Redwits*, of the Circle of *Franconia*. See the third Tourney.

The Armes of Wormes. Wormes, *Porte de Gueulles, à vne Clef d'Argent, miſe en Barre.*

The Foureteenth Tourney.

THis was performed at the coſt and charges of the Noble Gentlemen of *Franconia* (the Armes of which Circle and Dukedome are formerly obſerued) in the chiefe Citie thereof, called *Wirtzbourg*. The firſt Sunday after the Feaſt of *All-Saints*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand two hundred thirtie and fiue.

The Kings of which Tourney were theſe Knight.

Sigiſmond *d'Eltz*, *Qui portoit d'Argent, Couppe de Gueulles, au Lyon naiſſant, tourné, d'Or. Mezal Tarre Cimier. Chappeau tourne, de Gueulles, au rebord d'Ermines, au Vol entier, l'vn de Gueulles, ſeme de Cœurs d'Argent; & l'autre d'Argent, ſeme de Cœurs de Gueulles. An Lyon naiſſant tourne d'Or, Entre deux. Lambrequins de Gueulles, & d'Argent.*

Wolffgang *de Hirſchhorn*, *d'Argent, au Demy Maſſacre de Cerf de Gueulles. Mezal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier Maſſacre entier de Gueulles. Lambrequins Argent & Gueulles.*

Ernefrid *de Andlaw*. His Armes are in the Ninth Tourney.

Erpffus *de Sickingen*, *De Sable, à Cinq Beſans d'Argent en Saultoir, à la Bordure de Gueulles* (Correct *Modius* who hath forgot him) *Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Oye, naiſſante d'Or, au Col ſeme de Flammes de Gueulles. Lambrequins Sable, & Or.*

Wirtzbourg, *d'Azur à vne Banniere Crenelee d'Argent, Eſcartelee de Gueulles, miſe en Bande.* The Armes of the Citie.

The Fifteenth Tourney.

BEing held and celebrated by the Noble Gentlemen of *Bauaria* (the Armes whereof are before obſerued) the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Michael*, the yeare of Grace One thouſand two hundred foureſcore and foure, in the Citie of *Ratisbonna*, called in the *Germaine* language *Regensbourg*.

The Kings of the ſaid Tourney were theſe Knights.

Conrad *de Schencken*, *de Schweinsberg*, of the Circle of the *Rhine*, *Qui portoit Lozenge de Gueulles, & d'Argent, couppe d'Azur, au Lyon paſſant d'Or: Double Mezal, Tarre. Le Premier a pour Cimier, la Teſte & le Col d'vn Lyon tourne d'Or, à deux plumes, au lieu d'Oreilles, l'vne d'Argent, & l'autre de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles. L'autre, Vol double d'Argent, charge des Armes. Lambrequins Or, & Azur.*

Iohn *de Fraunberg*, of the Circle of *Bauaria*. Looke for his Armes in the Third Tourney.

Sigiſmond *de Richthein*, of the Circle of *Suauba*. *D'Argent, au Cheual tourne gay de Sable. Mezal, Tarre & Coronne. Cimier vn Cheual naiſſant d'Or. Lambrequins Or, & Sable.*

Conrad *de Seckendorf*, of the Circle of *Franconia*, *D'Argent, à vne Couleuree de Nenufar, nouee en double Saultoir, Tige, & Fueilles (huict en nombre) de Gueulles. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Chappeau poinctu de Gueulles, au rebord d'Argent. Lambrequins, Argent, & Gueulles.*

Ratisbonna, *Porte de Gueulles, à deux Clefs paſſees en Saultoir d'Argent, liees d'vn lacs d'Amour de meſme.* The Armes of Ratisbonna.

The Sixteenth Tourney.

IT was Celebrated within the Towne of *Schweinfor* (ſeated on the Riuer of *Moein*) by the Nobilitie of *Franconia*; the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Laurence*.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Theodoric *de Cammer* (Correct *Modius*) of the Circle of *Bauaria*. *Portoit d'Argent, à vn Hache tournee de Gueulles. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Chappeau plat d'Argent, au rebord d'Ermines, à la Hache de Gueulles tournee, fichee deſſus.*

Wolffgang *de Kemmerer*, of the Circle of the *Rhine*. *D'Azur, à Six Fleurs de Lys d'Or. 3. 2. 1. Au Chef endenche d'Or. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Vol, remply des Armes. Lambriquins, Azur, & Or.*

Otho *de Schencken, de Geyren, d'Argent couppe de Sable. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Aigle d'Argent, couppe de Sable. Lambrequins, Argent, & Sable.*

Conrad *de Hirnheim, du Cercle de Suauba*. Whoſe Armes are before duely obſerued.

Schweinfor, *Porte d'Argent à vne Aigle de Sable*. Correct *Modius*, who confoundeth both the Mettals and Colours. The Armes of Schweinfor.

The

The Seauenteenth Tourney.

WAs held in the Citie of *Rauenſpourg*, in *Suauba*, by the Noble Gentlemen of that Circle and Dukedome (the Armes whereof haue bin formerly obſerued) On the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Iohn Baptiſt*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred and eleauen.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Wolffgang *de Frawberg*, of the Circle of *Bauaria. Dictum.*

Iacques *de Bodmaner*, of the Circle of *Suauba. Portoit* (Correct *Modius*) *d'Argent à trois Fueilles de Nenuphar de Synople. 2.1. Eſcartele d'Or, à vn Boue tourne de Sable. Mezal, Tarre, Coronne. Cimier, Chappeau poinctu de paille, au rebord d'Ermines, Coronne d'Or, & en poincte vne queue de Paon. Lambrequins, Or, & Sable.*

Gotſchalck *de Neſſelrodt*, of the Circle of the *Rhine*, *De Gueulles, à vne Face Breteſſee d'Argent. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, vn Chien Bracque naiſſant de Gueulles, charge d'vne Face Crenelee d'Argent. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles.*

Apelies *de Senſheim*, of the Circle of the *Rhine. Il portoit* (Correct *Modius*) *Pale d'Argent, & d'Azur de Six pieces, Eſcartele d'Or, à vn Sanglier Coronne, Sautant de Sable. Double Mezal, Tarre. Le Cimier du Premier eſt vn Bus d'vn Sarazin à grand Barbe tourne, habille de Gueulles, le Chappeau poinctu recourbe par derriere à vne houppe de Gueulles au rebort d'Argent & d'Azur. L'autre Cimier, vn Sanglier Coronne Sautant de Sable. Lambrequins Or, & Sable.*

The Armes of *Rauenſpourg.* Rauenſpourg *Porte d'Argent, à vne Porte de Chaſteau Hercee, à deux Tours d'Azur.*

The Eighteenth Tourney.

BEing celebrated in the Imperiall Citie (the ordenarie Priſon for Noblemen, that make defailance in *Germanie*) by the Nobilitie of the Circle and Countie Palatinate of the *Rhine*: On the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of *All-Saints*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred thirtie and ſeauen. We will ſet downe the Armes appertaining to the

Counts Palatines, Electours of the Empire, who doe beare *En Manteau, de Sable, au Lyon Coronne d'Or; Party de Bauieres. La pointe de Gueulles, à vne Boule du Monde, croiſet d'Or, Heaume Tarre, & Coronne, aux Lambrequins de Gueulles, & d'Or.*

Cimier, deux Proboſcides d'Elephant, Lozengez de Bauiere, & entre deux vn Lyon aſſis de front, de Gueulles, Coronne d'Or.

Tenants, & Supports deux Lyons d'Or.

The Kings of the ſaid Tourney were theſe Knights.

Iohn *Truchſes de Waltbourg* (Correct *Modius*) *Qui portoit d'Or, à trois Leopards tournez de Sable. Mezal, Tarre Cimier. Vn Bonnet Ducal renuerſe de Gueulles, vne queue de Paon ſortant d'iceluy. Pres de ce Bonnet eſt vn Eſtendart charge des Armes de l'Eſcu. Lambrequins Or, & Sable.*

Frederick *de Preyſing* (Correct *Modius*) *Portoit Couppe, Breteſſe d'Argent, & de Gueulles* (*commencez touſiours par la Pointe à blaſonner Armes Couppees, quand les couppures ſont eſgales*) *Mezal, Tarre & Coronne. Cimier deux Proboſcides, le premier de Sable, & l'autre d'Argent, & entre deux, vn Perroquet, blazonne, ſelon l'Art de diuerſes couleurs. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Sable.*

Eraſmus *de Liechtenſtein*. There are foure Families of this Sir-name in *Germany*, of different Armes.

The firſt beareth, *De Gueulles, au Lyon tourne d'Argent; Eſcartele de Sable, au Lyon naiſſant de Gueulles, en Chef d'Argent. Sur le tout d'Azur, à vne poincte renuerſee d'Argent. Trois Mezails tarrez, & Coronnez. Le premier a pour Cimier vn Lyon naiſſant, tourne d'Argent. Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueulles. Celuy du mitan a pour Cimier vn Chappeau poinctu renuerſe d'Azur, au Rebord fendu, d'Argent, au Pennache de Cinq Plumes, deux d'Azur, deux de Gueulles, & celle du mitan d'Argent. Lambrequens, Argent, & Azur. Le Troiſieſme a pour Cimier de Sable, au Lyon naiſſant de Gueulles, acoſte d'vne queue de Paon. Lambrequins Argent & Sable.*

The ſecond *De Gueulles, couppe d'Or. Mezal, Tarre Coronne. Cimier. Vol double, couppe comme l'Eſcu. Lambrequins Or, & Gueulles.*

The third *Party, & couppe Endenche de Gueulles, Eſcartele d'Argent* (this is that of *Modius*) *Mezal Tarre Cimier, deux Proboſcides de Gueulles, entournees au dehors de plumes d'Argent. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles.* And

The fourth, *D'Azur au demy-Vol tourne d'Argent. Mezal Tarre Cimier.* Idem. *Lambrequins, Argent & Azur.*

Adam de Konigſegk. Lozenge d'Or, & de Gueulles en Bande Mezal Tarre Coronne. Cimier. Pennache de cinq plumes, celles du mitan, & des deux bouts d'Or, les deux autres de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Or & de Gueulles. The Citie of

Ingelnheim, Porte vne Muraille d'Argent, Crenelee, & Maſonnee de Sable, couppe d'Argent, à vne Aigle naiſſante de Sable. The Armes of the Citie It is held, that in the Caſtell belonging to this Citie, our King *Charlemaigne* had his Birth and Originall.

The Nineteenth Tourney.

WAs held by the Nobilitie of the Circle of *Franconia*, in the Towne of *Bamberg*, the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt of the Three Kings, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand three hundred threeſcore and two.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

George de Hirſchhorn: whoſe Armes are ſet downe in the fourth Tourney.

Henry de Nothaſt. There are of this Sir-name three Families in *Germany*, but of different Armes.

The firſt, is (that which is noated by *Modius*) *Qui porte d'Or, à la Face d'Azur. Mezal Tarre Cimier, deux Proboſcides chargez des Armes de l'Eſcu. Entre deux vn Chien bracque d'Ermines. Lambrequins, d'Or, & d'Azur.*

The ſecond which is *Nothaſt, de Hohenbourg, Porte de Gueulles, au Vol d'Argent. Mezal Tarre Cimier, Chappeau Poinctu de Gueulles, à l'Agrette de meſme, au Reburd d'Argent, au Mitan d'vn Vol d'Argent. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles.*

The third according to the ſecond, but the Creſt differeth. *Bus d'Enfant habille de Gueulles, Vol d'Argent, au lieu de Bras. Lambrequins, d'Argent & de Gueulles.*

Lewes de Helmſtat, D'Argent au Cocq aux Ailes eſtendues de Sable. Mezal Tarre Coronne. Cimier, Cocq naiſſant de Sable, orne de Plumes d'Or.

George de Voiten, de Rieneck, Qui portoit de Gueulles, au Belier d'Argent. Mezal Tarre Cimier. Chappeau plat, de Gueulles, au Rebord d'Argent, au Belier d'Or, deſſus Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueulles. The Towne of

Bamberg, Porte d'Argent, à vn Homme Arme d'Azur tenant de ſa main droicte vn Eſtendard de Gueulles à la Croix plaine d'Argent, & de l'autre vn Eſcu, aux Armes de l'Empire. The Townes Armes.

The Twentieth Tourney.

IT being celebrated by the Noble Gentlemen, of the Circle & Dukedome of *Suauba*, in the Towne of *Eſlingen*, in the Principalitie of *Wirtenberg*. The firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Martine*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred threeſcore and foureteene.

Iohn de Landſchaden, Qui portoit d'Or, à vne Harpe de Sable. Mezal Tarre Cimier, vne Teſte d'vn Roy Vieillard coronne, dont la grand Barbe ſert de Lambrequins pour couurir, & entourer le Heaume & l'Eſcu.

Fredericke de Preyſing, whoſe Armes are deſcribed in the eighteenth Tourney.

George de Schencken, de Geyren: Looke for his Armes in the Sixeteenth Tourney.

Phillip de Rietheim. See the fifteenth Tourney.
Eſtingen, Porte d'Or. à vn Aigle tourne de Sable.

The One and Twentieth Tourney.

WHich was held by the Noblemen of the Circle and Dukedome of *Suauba*, in the Towne of *Schaffauſen*; The firſt Sunday of the Feaſt of *All-Saints*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and twelue.

The Kings of which Tourney were theſe Knight.

Otho de Bintznaw, D'Or, a vne bande de Sable, a Trois Bezans d'Argent. Mezal Tarre Coronne. Cimier, Licorne naiſſante d'Argent. Lambrequins, Or & Sable.

Reinard de Rhatſamhauſen (Correct *Modius*) *Qui portoit de Gueulles, a vn Eſcu en Abiſme d'Argent, charge d'vne Face de Synople. Mezal Tarre Cimier, vn Bracque naiſſant tourne d'Argent, au Collier d'Or. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles.*

William de Senſheim. His Armes are emblazoned before.

Conrad de Welwart. De Gueulles au Croiſſant montant d'Argent. Mezal Tarre Cimier double Proboſcide, Couppe de Gueulles, & d'Argent de l'vn, en l'autre. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles. Il y a vne autre Famille en Alemagne du Surnom de Wilwart, laquelle porte d'Azur en Mantel a la Poincte d'Argent. Mezal Tarre & Coronne. Cimier vn Pennache de trois Plumes, Azur, Argent, & Azur. Lambrequins d'Argent, & d'Azur. The Towne of

The Townes Armes.

Schaffhauſen, ſeated vpon the Riuer of *Rhine*, *Porte d'Or, au Belier gay de Sable: quelques vns le font naiſtre d'vne Tour d'Argent, Maſonnee, & Crenelee de Sable, ſur vne Montagne de Synople.*

The Two and Twentieth Tourney.

THis Tourney was celebrated by the Nobilitie of the Circle and Dukedome of *Bauaria*, in the Citie of *Ratisbonna*, otherwiſe called *Regenſpourg* (the Armes whereof are formerly obſerued) the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Bartholmew*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand three hundred foureſcore and ſixteene.

The Kings of the ſaid Tourney were theſe Knights.

William de Frawnberg. His Armes are noated before.

Gotthard de Egolfſtein. Portoit d'Argent, a vne Teſte d'Ours, tournee, de Sable. Mezal Tarre Cimier. Teſte d'Ours. Lambrequins Argent & Sable.

In *Germany* there is another Family of the Sir name of *Egolfsheim*, which beareth, *D'Azur a vne Teſte de Lyon ailee d'Or* (which are the Armes of Saint *Marke* of *Venice*, *Qui porte d'Argent à ladite Teſte de Lyon ailee de Gueulles*) *Mezal Tarre Cimier, Demy Lyon aile d'Or. Lambrequins Azur, & Or.*

Iohn de Landſchaden, of whom the Armes are before in due place ſet downe.

Erckinger de Reckenberg. De Gueulles, à vn Raſteau d'Or, mis en Pal. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Double Proboſcide, de Gueulles, & entre deux vn Raſteau d'Or en Pal. Lambrequins, Argent & Gueules.

In *Germany* there is another Family of the ſame Sir-name, but of different Armes; *Qui porte de Gueulles, à vne Teſte de Belier tournee d'Or. Mezal, Tarre & Coronne. Cimier, Belier naiſſant tourne de Sable, aux Cornes d'Or. Lambrequins Gueulles, & Sable.*

The Three and Twentieth Tourney.

IT being held by the Noble Gentlemen of the Circle and Countie of the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, in the Towne of *Darmſtat*, ſeated on the *Rhine*, betweene *Heildelberg* and *Franckford*, the firſt Sunday after Candlemaſſe day, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred and three.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Iohn de Morsberg, whoſe Armes are remarked in the ſeauenth Tourney.

Lewes de Schellenberg. In *Germany* there are three Families of this Sir-name, but differing in their Armes. The

The firſt beareth, *D'Argent à vne Teſte & Hure de Sanglier de Sable, aux defences d'Or. Mezal Tarre Cimier. Teſte de Sanglier. Lambrequins Argent, & Sable.*

The ſecond beareth *Face de Sable & d'Or de Quatre Pieces* (which is ſomewhat neere to that of *Modius*) *Eſcartele d'Argent à vne Teſte de Lyon arrachee de Gueulles. Double Mezal. Le Cimier du Premier eſt vn double Proboſcide, l'vn d'Or, l'autre de Sable. Lambrequins d'Or, & de Sable. L'autre a pour Cimier Teſte, & Col d'vn Lyon de Gueulles. Lambrequins Argent & Gueulles.*

The third Family beareth, *D'Argent, à Trois Roſes de Gueulles. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier neuf Barbeaux des Champs, auec deux Roſeaux d'Or. Lambrequins Argent & Gueulles.*

Iohn Sirnamed *Dore de Zenger* (Correct *Modius*) *Qui portoit d'Or, Couppe de Sable, à vne Tenaille d'Argent, miſe en Face. Double Mezal Tarre, & Coronne. Le Cimier du Premier eſt vn Lyon tourne ſur ſes deux pieds de deuant d'Argent à deux Ailes d'Or, l'autre de Sable. Celle d'Or, Couppee d'Argent ſeme de Gueulles de Nenuphar de Synople, à vne Tenaille tourne de Sable. Lambrequins d'Or & de Sable. L'autre Cimier eſt vn Aigle Coronne d'Or. Lambrequins Sable, & Or.*

Wolffgang de Schenck, de Geyern, whoſe Armes are before remembred. The Towne of

The Townes Armes.

Darmſtat, Porte d'Azur, à vne Fleur de Lys d'Argent en Poincte, & vn Lyon naiſſant tourne de Gueulles en Chef, à vne Face de Sable, chargee en Abiſme d'vn Bezant d'Argent (Correct *Modius.*)

The Foure and Twentieth Tourney.

WHich Tourney was celebrated by the Nobilitie of *Suauba*, in the Towne of *Heilbron*, the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Iames* and Saint *Philip*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred and eight.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Alban de Cloſen. D'Or, à Neuf Tourteaux de Sable, 3. 3. 3. Eſcartele d'Or, à vn Oiſon de Sable (Correct *Modius*) *double Mezal Tarre. Le Premier, Coronne, lequel a pour Cimier, vn double Proboſcide, d'Or, ſemez de Tourteaux de Sable. Lambrequins d'Or, & de Sable. Le Cimier de l'Autre, vn Chappeau à l'Albanoiſe d'Or, ſeme de Tourteaux de Sable, à la Poincte vn Plumard, de trois Plumes d'Or, de Sable, d'Or, le Rebord d'Ermines. Lambrequins d'Or, & de Sable.*

Wolffgang de Sachſenheim. D'Argent, à vn Cimier de Cornes de Bœuf de Gueulles. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Tel que dedans l'Eſcu. Lambrequins Gueulles & Argent.

Adam de Sotern (Correct *Modius* in the Armes) *De Gueulles à vn Z. poinctu, & non Potence d'Argent. Mezal Tarre Cimier, Chappeau plat, de Gueulles, le Rebord d'Hermines dans vn Vol eſtendu de Sable. Lambrequins de Gueulles, & d'Argent.*

Lewes de Stein, d'Altenſtein. De Gueulles, à Trois Marteaux d'Or. 2. 1. Mezal Tarre Cimier de double Proboſcide de Gueulles, enferrez de bouts de traicts empennez d'Argent. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles. The Towne of

Heilbron, Porte d'Argent, à vn Aigle de Sable (Correct *Modius.*)

The Townes Armes.

The Five and Twentieth Tourney.

WHich was held by the Nobilitie of the Circle and Dukedome of *Bauaria*, in the Citie of *Ratisbonna*: the firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Luke*, in the yeare of Grace, One thouſand foure hundred and twelue.

The Kings of the ſaid Tourney were theſe Knights.

Wolffgang de Wittenhorſt, Correct *Modius*, for the Sir-name and the Armes of the Circle of *Bauaria. D'Or à Deux Iumelles de Sable, l'entredeux des Iumelles de Gueulles. Mezal Tarre Cimier vn Chappeau plat de Sable, au Rebord de Gueulles, à deux Fluſtes d'Aleman audict Chappeau enguiſe de Pennache, componnees des Armes de l'Eſcu. Lambrequins. Or, & Sable.*

If this were the Familie of *Weſtendorf*. *Il portoit d'Azur, à vne Grue tournee d'Argent, ſur vne Terrace de meſme. Mezal Tarre Cimier la meſme Grue, Lambrequins d'Argent, & d'Azur.*

George Stein, de Steineck, of the Circle of *Suauba. D'Argent à vne Face viuree de deux pieces d'Azur. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Vol ployé, viuré, de l'Escu. Lambrequins Argent, & Azur.* Correct *Modius,* who giueth him *Trois Racloirs,* or *Ratissoires de Pasques en Pal:* wherein he is deceiued, by taking them instead of the Armes of the House of *Steinecke.* These belong to the Families of *Pflaumer,* of *Stadion, Vom-stein,* of *Gangler,* and of other Illustrious Houses in *Germany.*

William de Pallant of the Circle of the *Rhine. Face d'Or, & de Sable de Six pieces. Mezal, Tarre Coronne. Cimier. Vol estendu d'Argent, & au mitan l'Escu Face. Lambrequins, Or & Sable.* This Pallant is Sirnamed *de Moreames,* For there is a Familie that beareth the Sirname of *Pallant,* without any other addition, who beareth the Armes aboue Emblazoned. *Escartele d'Or, à vne Face endenchee, ou bien Ondee d'Azur. Double Mezal Coronne, le Cimier, & Lambrequins de Moreames du Premier, & quant à l'autre Cimier, vne queue de Paon. Lambrequins Or, & Azur.*

Another *Pallandt, Qui porte Face d'Argent, & de Sable, de Six Pieces. Mezal, Tarr: & coronne. Vol estendu, & dedans les Armes de l'Escu pour Cimier. Lambrequins Argent, & Sable.* And another Family of the Sirname of *Pollandt,* which beareth, *D'Azur, Seme de Tresles d'Or, à vne Roue en abisme d'Argent de cinq raiz, Mezal, Tarre, & Coronne, Cimier la Roue entouree de Tresles d'Or. Cimier, Azur, & Or.*

Lewes de Aussses, of the Circle of *Suauba, d'Azur, à vne Face d'Argent, chargee d'vne Roze de Gueulles en Abisme. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, double Proboscide d'Azur, charge de la Face, & Roze blazonnez en l'Escu, & au mitan vne Plume de Paon d'Or. Lambrequins Azur, & Argent.*

The Sixe and Twentieth Tourney.

WHich was celebrated by *Huldricke,* Count of *Wirtenberg. (Il portoit de Wirtenberg, Escartele de Montbeliard,* formerly obserued) for the day and delight of his Marriage with the Daughter of *Henry,* Duke of *Bauaria,* in the Towne of *Stuttgardt,* the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred thirty and sixe.

The Kings of this Tourney were these Knights following.

Wolffgang de Harf (Correct *Modius*) *D'Argent, Couppe de Gueulles, à vn Lambeau d'Azur. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Chappeau d'Azur, au Rebord d'Ermines. Vol estendu l'vn d'Azur, & l'autre d'Argent. Lambrequins Azur & Argent.*

Iohn de Nothaft (take away *Reinss* in *Modius,* and place there *Nothaft de Hohenbourg,* or of *Frowenberg*) These two Families, *Portent de Gueulles, au Vol d'Argent. Cesteuy Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, vn Bus d'Enfant habille de Gueulles, à deux Ailes d'Argent, au lieu de Bras. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.*

Nothaft de Hohenbourg. Mezal, Tarre. Cimier. Chappeau poinctu de Gueulles, à vne Aigrete au bout, le rebord d'Argent, dedans vn Vol d'Argent. Lambrequins Argent & Gueulles.

Nothaft, without addition, *Porte, d'Or, à vne Face d'Azur. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, double Proboscide, Componne d'Or, & d'Azur, & au mitan vn Chien & Leopard mouchete.*

George de Belderscheim (Correct *Modius* in the Sir-name and Armes) *De Gueulles, seme de Croix Clechees au pied fiche d'Or, à vn Estrier desmonte en Abysme de mesme. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Licorne naissante de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.*

Michael de Lowenstein, De Sable seme de Tresles d'Or, à vn Lyon tourne, & coronne d'Argent (Correct *Modius,* who giueth it *seme de Billettes,* as well as the third Shield) *Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Lyon naissant tourne, & Coronne d'Argent, dedans vn double Proboscide de Sable acoste de Tresles d'Or. Lambrequins, Argent & Sable.*

Another Familie of the Sir-name of *Lowenstein,* but differeth in Armes, who beareth, *Au Premier, & Quatriesme quartier d'Argent, au Lyon coronne de Gueulles. Au second d'Azur, à Trois Roses d'Argent. 2. 1. Couppe d'Or, à vn Aigle naissant de Sable. Au Troisiesme d'Or, à vn Aigle tourne de Gueulles. Sur le tout Lozenge d'Argent, & d'Azur (qui est de Bauieres.) Et en pointe, vn autre Escu forme d'Argent, à vne face de deux pieces de Gueulles. Trois Mizal, Tarre, & Coronnez, le premier & dernier de coronnes d'Or. Celuy du Mitan d'vn Bonnet Carre, Ducal d'Azur double d'Ermines. Cimier, du Premier vn Aigle tourne, & coronne d'Argent. Lambrequins Or, & Azur. Du Mitan vn Lyon assis de front de Gueulles, Coronne d'Or. Lambrequins Or, & Azur. Le Cimier du dernier vn Aigle d'Or, accoste de quatre Estendarts, deux d'Argent & deux de Gueulles. Lambrequins Argent & Gueulles.*

Stuttgardt, Porte d'Or, au Cheual Gay de Sable. The Townes Armes.

The Seauen and twentieth Tourney.

THis Tourney was held in the Towne of *Landshut* in *Bauaria,* vpon the goodly Riuer of *Iser,* by *Lewes,* Sirnamed the Rich, Count Palatine of the *Rhine,* and Duke of both the *Bauarias,* for ioy of his Nuptials, in the yeare of Grace One thousand foure hundred thirtie and nine. We haue already noated the Armes of this Prince Electour, wherein you are to Correct *Modius.* Hard a Route of the Alcbroger, falling into Rhodanus neere to the Hill Cemenus.

The Kings of this Tourney were these Knights.

George de Freyburg. D'Azur, à six Bezans d'Or. 3. 2. 1. (Correct *Modius*) *au Chef d'Argent. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, vn Ours naissant au Col d'Argent, la teste du Corps d'Azur, Seme de Bezans d'Or. 1. 2. 3. à deux Escartaux de queue de Paon. Lambrequins Argent, & Azure.* Correct *Modius,* who giueth but three Bezans.

Michael de Rosenberg. Pale contre Pale de Gueulles, & d'Argent Mezal, Tarre, Cimier deux Cols d'Oye, & testes l'vne de Gueulles, & l'autre d'Argent, à vne Roze de Gueulles, fueillee de Synople au Mitan. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles.

In *Germany* there are many Noble Families of this Sir-name of *Rosenberg,* but differing in Armes.

The first is that of the Sir-name and Armes of the *Vrsins,* obserued in the Discourse of *Polonia.* And this is among the most Illustrious Houses of *Germany,* and graced with Title of Prince.

Il porte des Vrsins, au Mezal Tarre de front, Coronne. Pour Cimier, vne Rose de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.

The other beareth, *D'Argent, à vne Rose de Gueulles fueillee de Synople, de Six pieces. Mezal Tarre Cimier. Branche de Roze, Blazonnee comme l'Escu mais auec vne queue garnie de ses fueilles, outre celles de la Roze. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueulles.*

Iohn de Stauser de Thunau. D'Azur, à vne Pomete d'Argent mouuante du Chef. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Vn Chappeau poinctu d'Azur, coronne d'Or, à vne queue de Paon dessus. Le rebord d'Argent, Lambrequins d'Argent, & d'Azur. Correct *Modius,* who giueth him for Armes *Couppe.*

There is another House famous in *Germanie,* by the Sir-name of *Stapfer,* which beareth, *De Sable à vne Haye d'Or (en Face) & vne planchette de mesme. Mezal, Tarre, Coronne. Cimier Vol double de Sable, à la haye, & planchette d'Or. Lambrequins, Sable & Or.*

Philip de Scharpfenstein. D'Argent, à vne Face de Sable, entre vne Iumelle de mesme (Correct *Modius*) *Mezal, Tarre, Cimier. Vol double d'Argent à la Fasce Iumelee de Sable. Lambrequins Argent & Sable.*

There is another Familie of this Sir name of *Scharpfenstein,* which beareth, *D'Argent à vne Fasce, & demye de Synople. Mezal, Tarre Cimier Vol double d'Argent, charge de la Fasse & demye de Synople. Lambrequins Argent, & Synople.*

Landshut porte d'Argent, à trois Chappeaux quarrez & Coronnez d'Azur. 2. 1. The Townes Armes.

The Eight and Twentieth Tourney.

WHich was celebrated by the Noble Gentlemen of the Circle and Dukedome of *Wirtzburg* in the time of the Emperour *Fredericke,* Third of the name, and in the Citie of *Wirtzbourg* (he Armes whereof are formerly obserued, with them of *Franconia*) on the first Sunday after the Feast of the *Three Kings of Cologne:* the yeare of Grace, One thousand foure hundred threescore and fourteene.

In this Tourney, were renewed the old and auncient Statutes for Iousts and Tourneys, and diuers newly added, to gouerne and order the Furnitures of Noble Gentlemen, that were then present there, and for the times following. Moreouer, that these Tournaments were to be held and celebrated, onely in these foure Cities of *Germanie*.

Bamberg.
Norimberg.
Wertzbourg: And
Mogunt.a, or *Mentz*.

The Kings of this Tourney were these Knights following.

Euerard de Grumbach.
George de Euchsen.
Erckinger de Seinshein.
Sebastian de Seckendorff.
} Whose Armes are all of them obserued in the precedent Tourneys.

The Nine and Twentieth Tourney.

BEing held in the Citie of *Mentz*, by the Nobilitie of the Circle and Palatinate of the *Rhine*, in the time of the saine Emperour *Henry* the Third. The fifth Sunday after the Feast day of Saint *Bartholmew*, in the yeare of Grace, One Thousand foure hundred and fourescore.

The Kings of this Tourney, were these Knights.

William, Count of *Furstenberg*. *Qui portoit d'Or, à vn Aigle de Gueulles, à l'Orle d'Argent, Viuree d'Azur: L'Aigle brize sur l'Estomach d'vn autre Escu Escartele. Le Premier, & Quatriesme de Gueulles à vn Gonfanon d'Or. Les Second, & Troisiesme d'Argent, à vne Bande endenchee de Sable.* (Correct *Medius*, who hath let slip in silence the Brizure of the Eagle.) *Trois Mezails Tarrez, & Coronnez.*

Cimiers. Du Premier vne Mitre d'Euesque, d'Argent, ornee de Rubis de Gueulles. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles.

Cimier du Milan, vn Carreau de Gueulles, houppe d'Or, à vn Van à vaner cliffe d'Argent. Lambrequins Or, & Gueulles.

Cimier du dernier teste & col de Chien Braeque d'Argent, à l'Oreille chargee d'vne Bande endenchee de Sable. Lambrequins Argent, & Sable.

William, Count of *Furstenberg* (Sonne to this *Henry*) about the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred and fortie, in the time of King *Frances* the first, hauing giuen out some speeches, against the honor and reputation of the Lord of *Vasse-Grongnet*, a braue *French* Knight. (They of this Noble House carried this Nickname of *Grongnet*; and for Armes, *D'Or à vne Face d'Azur, de Trois pieces.*) The said Lord *de Vasse* sent him a Challenge by an Herauld, to fight with him in single Combat, thereby to auouch, that he had lied, and as many times more as he toucht the honour of him or his, as many times more he did lye. The Count was content, to keepe these lyes all his life time, without aduenturing into the Field.

In *Germanie* there are others of the name of *Furstenberg*, but varying and differing in their Armes: In regard that they beare *D'Or, à vne Face de deux pieces de Gueulles. Mezal, Tarre & Coronne. Cimier deux faeilles de Chesne d'Or Eschecque, & de Gueulles Lambrequins d'Or, & de Gueulles.*

George de Frawnberg, his Armes are named before.

John de Flersheim. Il portoit Couppe en Trois d'Azur en Chef, & de Gueulles en Pointe, à la Face d'Argent. Mezal, Tarre, Cimier, vn Buz de Fille habillee de Gueulles au Vol, au lieu de bras, Couppe comme l'Escu. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueulles (Correct *Medius* for the Armes.)

Bleickhard de Lanschaden, the Armes of whom haue bin obserued before: The Citie of

Mentz seated where the two Riuers of *Rhine* and the *Moein* doe meete. *Porte de Gueulles, à deux Roues d'Argent, ioinctes ensemble par vne Croix pattee de mesme, en Bande.*

The

The Thirtieth Tourney.

THis Celebration was perfourned by *Phillip*, Prince Electour, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of bothe *Bauariaes*: The first Sunday after the Feast day of Saint *Bartholmewe*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand, foure hundred, fourescore and one in the Citty of

Heidelberg, the Capitall and chiefe Citty of the *Palatinate*, seated vpon the Riuer of *Neckre*: And beareth *De Sable, au Lyon tourne Coronne d'Or.* The Armes of the Citie.

The Kings of this Tourney were these Knights.

Mangmarchalck de Bappenheim, of the Circle of *Bauaria* (Correct *Medius* in the Armes) *Il portoit Couppe d'Argent & de Sable, a deux Especs nues passees en Saultoir, les Gardes croisees de Gueules: Escartele de Vaire-Contre Vaire. Double Mesal, Tarre, le premier Coronne, ayant pour Cimier deux Estendarts en Saultoir, chargez du premier quartier. Lambrequins, Argent, & Sable. Cimier de l'Autre, le buz d'vn Roy ne Coronne, & ses Cheueux tressez & Cordonnez par derriere, d'Or, habille de mesme. Lambrequins Or & Azur.* In *Germanie* there are many Families of this Sirname of *Marchalck*, and as different in the Armes, as some wayes in the Sirnames.

Marchalck d'Ebnet. Face d'Argent & d'Azur de Huict pieces, a vne Barre ondee de Gueules brochante sur le tout. Mesal, Tarre, Cimier Licorne naissante de Gueules. Lambrequins, d'Argent, & Gueules.

Marschalck, de Ollheim, d'Argent a vn Tretteau de Table, percee, vuide, & crenele a l'Antique en Saultoir de Sable, Mesal Tarre, Cimier. Lyon naissant habille de Sable, auec vn Chappeau plat a la Flamande d'Argent, cordonne subs la gorge, de mesme. Lambrequins. Argent, & Sable.

Marschalck, de Gotsmans hausen d'Argent, a Deux Faces de Gueules, mises en Pal, Mesal Tarre, Coronne. Cimier. Double Probescide d'Argent, Couppez d'Gueule de l'vn, en l'autre, accostez de Banderoles d'Argent, & Gueules.

Marschalck, de Beberstein, d'Argent Frette de Gueules, Mesal Tarre, Cimier Double Probescide d'Argent, vne Aigrete de Gueules au Milan, Lambrequins, d'Argent, & de Gueules.

Marschalck, de Stuntzberg. De Gueules, au Cheuron Tourne en Barre d'Argent, Masal Tarre, Cimier. Vol charge du mesme Cheuron, des Couleurs de l'Escu, Lambrequins, Idem.

Marschalck, d'Oberndorf, d'Argent, a Vne Face Bretessee en Chef de quatre pieces d'Azur, celle de la Pointe, Bretessee en Pointe, Mesal Tarre, Cimier. Chappeau pointu charge des Armes, & Coronne, finissant en queue de Paon, le Rebord Bretisse de Gueulles. &

Marschalck, d'Argent, a la Barre Lozengee de Sable. Mesal Tarre, Cimier. Buz d'vn Homme a longue Barbe, au Cocqueluchon, & l'habillement d'Argent, a la Barre Lozengee de Sable, Lambrequins. Argent, Sable. And so others.

Wolffgang de Waldeck of the Circle of *Swauba*, *D'Argent, a vn Aigle naissant, tourne, & Coronne de Gueules, a vn Saultoir pery de Gueules en Pointe. Mesal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier, Aigle entier, tourne, & Coronne d'Or. Lambrequins de Gueules, & d'Argent.*

In *Germanie* there other Families of this Sirname but differing in their Armes. For

The Counts of *Waldeck Portent d'Or, a vne Estoile de Sable, Mezal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier, Vol, d'Or, charge de l'Estoile des Armes. Lambrequins, Or & Sable.*

An other *Waldeck. De Gueules, au Vol d'Argent. Mezal Tarre, Cimier, Buz de Fille habillee de Gueules, au Vol, au lieu de Bras. Lambrequins, Argent, & Gueules.*

An other *Waldeck de Gueules a Trois Haches d'Argent, 2. 1. Mezal Tarre, Cimier. Buz d'vn Vieillard Barbu habille d'Argent, a deux Oreilles d'Asne a la teste, l'vne de Gueules, & l'autre d'Argent, Lambrequins. Gueules, & Argent.*

John de Seckendorff of the Circle of *Franconia*
Bertrand de Neselrod, of the Circle of *Bauaria:*
} Their Armes are knowne.

The

The One and Thirtieth Tourney.

IT was held by the Nobility of the Circle and Dukedome of *Suauba*, in fauour of *Ebrard*, Count of *Wirtenberg*, in the Towne of *Stutigard* (the Armes of the County and Towne are formerly obſerued:) On Wedneſday after the Feaſt day of the Three Kings of *Cologne*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, foure-ſcore and foure.

The Kings of the ſaid Tourney were theſe Knights.

Iohn Iacques de Bodman, of the Circle of *Suauba*.
Sigiſmond de Lerming, of the Circle of *Bauaria*.
Erckinger de Seins of the Circle of *Franconia*.
Adam de Pallants of the Circle of the *Palatinat*.
} The Armes of theſe Men are before noated.

The Two and Thirtieth Tourney.

Ingolſtadium, a Citty of *Norcum* by *Danubius*.

WAs Celebrated by the Nobility of *Bauaria*, in fauour of Prince *George*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of both the *Bauariaes*: In the Citty of *Ingolſtat*, the firſt Sunday of the Feaſt day of Saint *Gyles*, being the firſt day of September. In the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, foureſcore and foure.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Iohn de Woffſtein, D'Or, a deux Lyons Leopardez de Gueules. Double Mezal, le Premier Coronne, a pour Cimier vn Aigle tourne, & Coronne d'Or, le Vol, c'eſt a dire, ſes Ailes ſemees de fueilles de Nenuphar de Synople. Lambrequins d'Or, & de Sable.

L'autre a pour Cimier vn Chien naiſſant de Sable, au Collier d'Or, tenant vn Mouton dans ſa Gueule. Lambrequins, Or, & Gueules.

George de Eyſenbouen (Correct *Modius* in the Sirname) *D'Argent, a Trois Faces de Sable miſes en Bandes. Mezal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier, vn Eſcu des meſmes Armes, & vne Aigrete deſſus. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Sable.*

Iohn de Bruckperg (Correct *Modius* in the Sirname and Armes) *d'Argent, a vne Face d'Azur. Meſal Tarre, Cimier, vn Vol charge de l'Eſcu. Lambrequins, Argent, & Azur.*

Huldrick de Braidenſtein. D'Azur, Couppe d'Argent. Meſal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier. Vol charge de l'Eſcu. Lambrequins, d'Argent, d'Azur. There is likewiſe in *Germanie* other Families, which beare the Sirname of *Breidenſtein* called of *Bredenbech*; *Qui porte d'Argent au Dragon Aile tourne, ayant deux pattes de Gryphon, & la queue de Serpent de Gueules. Meſal Tarre, Cimier le meſme Dragon. Lambrequins, d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

The Armes of the Citie.

Ingolſtat a Citty of *Bauaria*, ſeated on the great Riuer of *Danubius*, *Porte d'Argent, a vn Gryphon ſans Ailes, d'Azur a grandes Oreilles, & iectant par ſa Gueule du ſue de Gueules.*

The Three and Thirtieth Tourney.

WHich was held by the Noble Gentlemen of the Circle and Dukedome of *Franconia*, in fauour of the Prince Electour *Albert*, Marqueſſe of *Brandenburg*, in the Capitall Citty of the *Bourgrauiat* of *Nurnberg*, vulgarly called *Norimberg*, and tearmed alſo *Onoltzbach*: The firſt Sunday after the Feaſt of the *Aſcenſion*, in the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred foureſcore and fiue. The Armes of the ſame.

Albert Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg* are, *Au Premier Quartier d'Argent, a vn Aigle de Gueules: au Second d'Argent, au Griffon Coronne de Gueules. Le Troiſieſme eſt du Burggrauiat de Nurnberg, qui eſt d'Or, au Lyon tourne, & Coronne de Sable, a la Bordure Componnee de Gueules, & d'Argent. Le Quatrieſme Eſcartele d'Argent, & de Sable, qui eſt de Zollern. Et ſur le Tout d'Azur, au Sceptre d'Or, en Pal. Triple Meſal Tarre, dont les deux derniers ſont Coronnez. Cimiers.*

Le Premier, eſt vn Chappeau Ducal de Gueules, au Rebord d'Ermines. Double Proboſcide, Componne de Gueules & d'Argent, & au Mitan le Lyon, qui eſt du Burggrauiat. Lambrequins, d'Argent, & de Gueules.

Le Deuxieſme vn Vol de Sable, parſeme de Cœurs d'Or. Lambrequins, d'Or, & de Sable. Et

Le Dernier, Bonnet Ducal de Gueules, fourre d'Ermines, a vne Queue de Paon. Lambrequins. Or, & Sable.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

Iohn de Fuchſen,
Alexandre Marſchalck de Pappenheim
Conrad d'Auffsees
Adam de Torring.
} The Armes of theſe Men are formerly obſerued.

Onoltzbach, the chiefe City in the *Burggrauiat* of *Nurneberg*, *ſporte, de Gueules, a vne Bande ondee d'Argent, chargee de Trois Poiſſons d'Azur.* The Armes of the Citie.

The Foure and Thirtieth Tourney.

THis Tourney was celebrated by the Nobility of *Franconia*, in the time of the King of the *Romaines Maximilian*, Firſt of the name: The firſt Sunday after the Feaſt and ſollemnity of the Three Kings. In the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, foureſcore and ſixe, in the Citty of *Bamberg*, the Armes whereof are formerly deſcribed.

The King of the *Romaines* beareth, *D'Or à l'Aigle ſimple tourne de Sable au Diademe & Cercle de Gueules: ſur la Brizure duquel ſont les Armes particuliers de l'Eſleu Empereur. Et ceſtuy cy portoit d'Auſtriche Moderne, Party de d'Ancienne Bourgongne.*

The Kings of this Tourney, were theſe Knights.

George de Gumpenberg, De Gueules, a vne Bande d'Argent, chargee de trois bouts d'Eſpee de Synople (Correct *Modius* for the Armes) *Eſcartele, de Gueules, a la Bande d'Argent, chargee de trois fueilles de Nenuphar de Synople. Double Mezal. Le premier a pour Cimier, double Proboſcide d'Elephant d'Ermines. Lambrequins d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

L'autre Mezal coronne tient a Cimier, Vol de Gueules a la Bande, d'Argent, chargee de trois fueilles de Nenuphar de Synople. Lambrequins, d'Argent, & de Gueules.

Philippe d'Alburgk (Correct *Modius*) *D'Azur, a ſix Fleurs de Lys d'Argent. 3. 2. 1. Au Chef endenche d'Or. Meſal Tarre, Coronne Cimier. Vol, charge de l'Eſcu. Lambrequins Azur, & Argent.*

Conrad de Schellenberg. See his Armes in the Three and Twentieth Tourney.

Iohn Truchſes, de Wetzhauſen. D'Or, a deux Faces Eſchequees de Gueules, & d'Argent de deux Traicts. Meſal Tarre, Cimier double Proboſcide d'Elephant, charge de l'Eſcu, & dedans vn Bus de Royne coronnee, ſa Treſſe cordonee par derriere d'Or, habille de Gueules. Lambrequins, d'Or, & de Gueules.

There are diuers Families in *Germanie* of this Sirname of *Truchſes*, with additions and different Armes: which we are content to let ſlip in ſilence, becauſe wee would not breake this diſcourſe of very laborious inquiſition, and haſten to

The Fiue and Thirtieth Tourney.

WHich was held by the Nobility of *Bauaria*, in the Citty of *Ratisbonna*: the Firſt Sunday after Candlemaſſe day. In the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, foureſcore and ſeauen.

The Kings of this Tourney were theſe Knights.

William de Wolffſtein
Phillip de Cronberg
} Whoſe Armes are before remembred.

Henry de Zulnhart, De Gueules, au Bouc naiſſant d'Argent. Meſal Tarre, Cimier, de meſme qu'en l'Eſcu. Lambrequins, d'Argent, & de Gueules.

Hildebrand de Thungen, d'Argent, a la Face de Gueules, charge de trois Paux ondez d'Or, Meſal Tarre, Cimier. Le Bus d'vn Sarrazin a longue Barbe, habille de Gueules, Chappeau poinctu de meſme, au Rebord d'Argent, a trois Aigrettes. Lambrequins d'Argent. & de Gueules.

The

The Sixe and Thirtieth Tourney.

THis was Celebrated by the Noble Gentlemen of the Circle and Countie Palatinate of the *Rhine*, in the Citty of *Wormes*: The firſt Sunday after the Feaſt day of Saint *Bartholmew*: In the yeare of Grace One thouſand, foure hundred, foureſcore and ſeauen.

The Kings of this laſt Tourney were theſe Knights.

Lewes de Rheinac
Chriſtopher de Gammer
Otho de Lichtenſtein,&
Frederic Dalburgk,

} All their Armes are before obſerued.

And this was the laſt Tourney: *After which we haue ſeene* (So ſpeaketh *Sebaſtian Munſter*, in the third Booke of his Coſmographie) *the common degree of the Nobility, to plundge and ſinke themſelus in the puddle of all Vices, yea, in the eye of the whole world. And the ignominie which they receiued publiquely in theſe Tourneys; ſerued as a Cauſſon or headſtall for a Horſes noſe, or Bitt in a young Coltes mouth, to reſtraine our Gentlemen, among them, they became euen proſtituted to all vile abuſes, without obſeruing any pathe or way to goodneſſe.* So farre goeth *Munſter*, ſpeaking nothing but the trueth.

The harme enſuing by want of Noble imployment.

Heere we could repreſent and Figure (euen to the life) the Armes and Blazons of all the Nobility of *Germanie*, both Lords and Ladies, Maried Wiues, Widdowes and Daughters, who (according as *Modius* writeth) haue bin preſent at theſe Tourneys; but the labour and paines would hould mee ouer-long. It ſhall ſatiſfie mee therefore, to expreſſe none but them only, which *Modius* hath declared to vs, and correcting them where they are wanting and defectiue, or ſo badly preſented, that they come very ſhort almoſt of any vnderſtanding. He might haue demonſtrated their Coullers and Mettals at the leaſt, which had bin eaſie enough for him to haue done: if he had knowne, or were skilfull in that admirable vnderſtanding, wherein the *Germaines* (ſo learned and curious in Armes as euer were any) are not meanely experienced, which knowledge our Grauers and Sculptures ought to purſue and imitate. The *Germaines* (I ſay) in preſenting the Armes of a Gentleman, make vſe of certaine Letters, which doe ſerue them as noates or markes, for figuring the Mettalls and Blazons in the Shield or Eſcutcheon, with the Creaſts, Mantles and Supporters.

The Authours ſupplying of *Modius* his great defects.

The Heraldry vſed among the Germaines whereby they make knowne their Mettalls and Coullers.

They make vſe of Two Mettalls, and Foure Coullers, as we doe.

Or, which in their Language they call *Gelb*, and they make it knowne by the Letter G.

Argent, tearmed in the *Germaine* tongue *Weis*, and they make it vnderſtood by a double W.

Azur, among vs is named *Blew*, and that Couller by them is figured with a B.

Gueules, which they tearme *Roth*, they vſe to preſent by the Letter R.

Synople, Which they call *Grun* in their Language, is denoated by a Leafe of *Nenuphar*, as if we meant to ſay by a *Treffoile*, or Three leaued Graſſe.

And *Sable*, which they tearme *Schwartz*, as much to ſay as Black, they expreſſe by the Letter S. Which by the following Table may be the more eaſily comprehended of euery one.

Vn Treffoile	G	*Gelb.*
	W	*Weis.*
	B	*Blow.*
	R	*Roth:*
		Grun.
	S	*Schwartz.*

In

In like manner, we that are *French-men*, can make repreſentation of our Armes by noates and markes, comming neere to the Language of our owne vnderſtanding: As we haue done in the Armes of *Monſieur le Clerc*, Councellor.

Or.	O	By theſe Markes.	*Or.*	O.	The Heraldry vſed among the *French*.
Argent.	A		*Argent.*	A.	
Bleu.	B		*Bleu.*	B.	
Rouge.	G		*Gueules.*	G.	
Verd.	V		*Verd*, and	V.	
Sable.	S		*Sable.*	S.	

But for our better making knowne and diſcerned, the Coullers and Mettals of the *Germaines* Armes; we haue figured them fairely to you, in the Module or Piece that doeth expreſſe the Order of *Saint Gall*. There wee haue preſented the Armes of thoſe Foure Men, that were the Authors or founders of the *Switzers* Liberty. Wherunto ſhould haue bin added the deuiſe of Mantles, Helmes and Creaſts, which we could not expreſſe vpon their Armes, in regard of want of roome and ſpace, fitting and beſeeming ſuch a graceſull Ornament, and therefore we will heere ſpeake them in the due Order of Emblazon.

See the great Piece concerning the *Switzers*.

Conrad de Baumgarten Portoit de Sable a vne Fleur de Lys d'Argent, Couppe d'Argent a vn Chardonneret de Gueules au Premier quartier. Au Second de Gueules, a vn Oyſon d'Argent en Pointe Taille d'Azur & d'Or, au Lyon de l'vn en l'Autre. Triple Mezal, dont les deux Premiers ſont Coronne, & le Dernier non. Cimier de Premier, vne Fleur de Lys d'Argent & ſur icelle vn Chardonneret, Lambrequins d'Argent & de Gueules.

Le Second Cimier eſt vn double Proboſcide entoure de plumes de Paon, ledict Proboſcide d'Or, & dedans vn Lyon de meſme. Lambrequins d'Or & d'Azur.

Le Dernier Cimier eſt vn Quarreau de Gueules, & ſur iceluy vn Oyſon plante d'Argent Lambrequins, Argent & Gueules.

Garnier Stoufacher D'Argent a vn demy Pal branchu & fuellu de Synople, a vn Aigle perce deſſus de Sable. Meſal Tarre, Cimier vn Aigle de Sable. Lambrequine Argent, & Sable.

William Tell. De Gueules, au Pal d'Argent, charge de Trois Fleurs de Lys de Gueules. Meſal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier, Groſſe Aigrete d'Argent a trois Fleurs de Lys eſleuees ſur leur Tige de Gueules. Lambrequins Argent, & Gueules.

Arnoul de Meſchtal. De Gueules, Couppe d'Argent, Au Cerf tourne Rampant de l'vn en l'Autre. Meſal Tarre, & Coronne. Cimier, Cerf naiſſant tourne de Gueules. Lambrequins, Argent, & Gueules. Returne wee now againe to our Iouſts and Tourneys.

A Famous Tourney or Tournament, perfourmed in *Normandie*, in the time of King *Lewes* the Younger, and in the Seauenth yeare of the ſaid Kings Reigne.

CHAP. VII.

FOulque, Count of *Aniou*, *Touraine* and Duke *Maine* and afterward King of *Ieruſalem*, in regard of his Wife, who was Daughter to King *Bauldwine*, Second of the name (as we haue ſaid in the Precedent Booke) maried his Eldeſt Sonne *Geoffery*, Sirnamed *Plantagenet*, to the daughter of the King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandie*, Firſt of the name. This Princeſſe was named *Mahauld*,

The Mariage of *Geoffrey Plantagenet* to *Maude* the Empreſſe.

Mahauld, or *Maude*, Sirnamed the Empresse: becauſe before this Marriage with *Plantagenet*, ſhe had bin Widdow to the Emperour *Henry*, Fift of the name. After the deceaſe of *Foulque* in *Ieruſalem*, *Geoffrey* cauſed a Tourney to be made, on the ſandie ſhoare of *Mount Saint Michael* in *Normandie*, betweene the *Engliſh* and the *Normans*. At this Tournament was preſent on the *Normans* ſide the Count of *Flanders Thibault*, Count of *Blois*, and the Count of *Mortaigne Stephen*, all of them being Nepheewes to the King of *England Henry*, Firſt of the name.

A Tourney betweene the Engliſh and Normans.

The holders and maintainers of this Tourney, were the *Normans* againſt the *Engliſh*, who were farre fewer in number then the *Normans*: And this was the reaſon, that Count *Geoffery*, (with them that were his followers) tooke part with the weaker ſide, I meane the *Engliſh*.

After the Tourney was begun, either ſide entred *Poſle-meſle* together. The whole Campe and the Liſts reſounded with the clattering of Armes, noyſe of Trumpets, muttering of voyces, and neying of Horſes. Yea, the Mount Saint *Michael* ſeemed to ſparkle Fire, with the reuerberating and reflection of the Sunnes bright beames, tranſcending from an infinitie of Shields, Bucklers and Targets of the Aſſaylants and Defendants. The Tournement being well heated on both ſides, the Aſhtree-Launces flew in ſhiuers, and euery man being well warmed in their Armours: came to handy-ſtrokes with their Swords, the keene edges whereof (at euery blow) made deepe entrance into their Armes and Shields. Some of them diſmounting other of their oppoſites, when their Horſes (eſcaping from them, and being disburdened of their Maiſters) ran at free liberty about the field, hauing broken their Reines, and by no meanes were capable of ſtaying.

Such accidents men of Armes are ſubiect to.

Our braue *Plantagenet*, and Royall minded *Geoffery*, more furious then a Lyon, layd ſoundly vpon the *Normans*, without any diſſembling, but in meere honeſt earneſt, and where he eſpied any of his followers to be diſtreſſed: thither he ran ſpeedily, diſmounting many with his Launce, piercing quite through their bodies, and others feeling the ſlices of his Sword, were glad to leaue their rancks, falling downe on the ground without motion or life. So that the *Normanes*, making Retreat their beſt aduantage, were glad to get gon, and forſake the place.

The Normans enforced to the retreat.

Yet madly enraged, to be thus curſtly handled, and by ſuch an vnequall poore troupe: they challenged the *Engliſh*, to Combate at the vtmoſt extremity of life. Vpon the fame ſpread abroad of this Tourney, and to be perfourmed in *Normandie*; among many other that reſorted thither from the parts beyond the Seas, there came a Giant of immeaſurable corpulence, or hugeneſſe of Body, and thought as ſtrong as an other *Sampſon*. Hee appointed himſelfe to take part with the *Normans*, and they (ſecuring themſelues by ſuch an vnexpected ſuccour) ſet downe a ſetled reſolution, to beare away the victory from their *Engliſh* enemies.

A Combate challenged at the vtmoſt extremity.

The Giant ſtood proudely brauing, on an high aduaunced Hillock without the *Normans* Camp, and with a dreadfull aſtoniſhing voyce, dared the *Engliſh* to Combate againſt him: which much daunted and diſmayed the ſmall number of the *Engliſh*, and made them fully perſwaded, that they were no way able, to contend againſt this huge *Coloſſus* and mountaine of fleſh. But Count *Geoffery* perceiuing the *Engliſhmens* diſmay, whom (before) hee beleeued to bee of inuincible courage: forthwith mounted on his Horſe, tooke his Launce, and offered himſelfe ſingly to maintaine the Combate. But the Giant, hauing a Launce that equalled a Weauers beame in bigneſſe, encountred the Count with ſuch fury and Violence, as pierced quite thorow his Shield and Armour, ſo farre as to the effuſion of Bloud. Yet ſate the Count firme and vnſhaken on his Horſe, as a man no way to be dishartened, and welcommed the Giant with ſuch a ſound ſalutation; as made him meaſure his length on the Ground, ſo aſtoniſhed with the fall, that the Count lightly leaping from his Horſe, ſet his foote vpon him, and ſmote off his head: taking his Horſe by the Bridle, to ſerue as a ſpoyle & Triumph of his victory, to the great diſgrace of the *Normans*, thus bereft of the Conqueſt, whereof (before) they made full aſſurance.

The Engliſh diſmayed by the Giant.

The Giant ſlaine by Count Geoffery.

This Tourney and *Duello*, is worthily deſcribed at large by *Joannes Monachus maioris Monaſterij*, in his Firſt Booke, concerning the Life of the ſaid *Geoffery Plantagenet*, and in theſe words.

Ex

SVblimato Patre eius Fulcone *in Hieroſolymitanum Regem. Conſul* Gauffredus *Armorum exercitijs, & laudis adipiſcendæ operam dedit. Nonnullo tempore elapſo in areno a Montis planicie à Britonibus, & Normannis* Torneamenti dies aſſignata eſt. *Conuenerunt ad Normannorum Partis ſubſidia Dominus Comes Flandrenſis, Theobaudus Comes Bleſenſis, & eius frater Stephanus Mauritaniæ Dominus. Hi tres Henrici Regis Anglorum erant Nepotes. Conuenit, & ipſe Conſul cum ſuis, eorum multitudini numerum accreſcens.*

Stabant *ex aduerſo Britannorum acies armis quidem & animis ſtrenuæ, ſed numero pauciores. Videns itaque Conſul Andegauenſis Gauffredus Britannicæ cohortis imparem congreſſum, auulſus à multitudine, ad paucos ſe contulit, ipſis opem laturus: ſit congreſſus, commiſcentur acies, ſit multus Armorum ſtrepitus, ſonant editui, turbæ multiplicis varia vox intonat, dant Dextrales diſſonos hinnitus, à Clypeis aureis Sole relucentibus, mons ipſe Michaeliticus reſplenduit. Animantur Viri ad certamen, franguntur haſtæ fraxineæ, emutilantur enſes, iam pede pes teritur, Vmbone repellitur Vmbo, euacuantur ſellæ, ſupinantur Equites, Equi deiectis Seſſoribus ſuis, ruptis habenis, hinniendo vagantur. Partis aduerſæ ſingularis terror, Gauffredus Aduerſarios impetit, hinc, atque illuc diſcurrens ſuis ſubuenire ſatagit, Lanceâ multos deijcit, Enſe ictus ingeminans innumeros, ità expellit. Sequuntur Britones ſpem Victoriæ Ducem præuium, varia Mortium genera Aduerſarijs inferentes. Inſtat Andegauenſis Leone ferocior, inſtat phalanx Britannica iam de Victoriâ præſumens. Normanni ſiquidem immenſo certamine fatigati, terga dantes fugam arripiunt, & multitudo à paucis confecta, ad Caſtra repedare compellitur. Normanni vero confuſione inopinata deiecti,* Singulare certamen Britonibus proponunt.

A tranſmarinis namque partibus Torneamenti *famâ deducente, Miles Sanſonicus gigantæ magnitudinis aduenerat. In cuius viribus, & audaciâ confidentes, de Victoria præſumebant. De caſtris igitur Normannorum Homo ille humanitatis excedens metas progrediens, ſtans in loco eminentiori, agminibus Britonum improperans, prouocat eos, vt Quilibet eorum* Singulari congreſſu *cum ipſo decertaret.*

Expalluit vultus Audientium, & Fortium robur emarcuit: Quippe verebantur ſinguli cum tantæ enormitatis bellua Singulare *inire* Certamen. *Intuens vero Gener Regis magnanimos à natura Viros ad inuſitationis inuitæ Vocem, tanquam euerues, & ciuilatos diſſolui ſpiritu, & obiecti impatiens improperij, proſiliit in Equum, arma corripit, & ſpectantibus vndequaque cæteruis* Singularem cum Giganteo Milite iniuit congreſſum. *Fit altercatio dura, Vir etenim ille humanæ virtutis modum excedens, Lanceam quaſi liciatorium habens, Andegauenſem impetit, & eius* Scutum, & loricam, *non ſine ſanguinis effuſione perforat. Stat Andegauenſis tanquam Equo radicatus immobilis, & Impetitorem ſuum Lancea tranſuerberans, deiecit, & deiecto deſuper ſtans, Enſe Caput abſcidit. Equum vero Victi, Victrici manu deducens cum Normannorum ignominia, & ſuorum gloria Tropeo potitus, glorioſus Victor abſcedit.*

Taken out of *Joannes Monachus maioris Monaſterii.*

His Father Foulke *being created King of* Ieruſalem, *the Conſull* Geoffrey *gaue himſelfe to the exerciſe of Armes, and purchaſing of renowne. In proceſſe of time, there was a day of Torneament appointed by the* Brittons *and* Normanes, *vpon the Sandy plaine of the Mount. There met for the aide of the* Norman *party the Lord Earle of* Flanders, Theobald, *Earle of* Bloys, *and his brother* Stephen *Lord of* Mortaigne; *theſe three were Nephewes to* Henry *King of England. And the ſaid Conſull likewiſe came thither with his followers, augmenting the number of their Company. Right againſt them ſtood the Engliſh Army, valiant both in armes and courage, but fewer in number. Therefore the Conſull* Geoffrie *of* Angiers *conſidering the vnequall coping of the Engliſh partie; withdrew himſelfe from the multitude, and ioyned himſelfe with the leſſer ſide, ready to giue them aide and aſsiſtance. The encounter is made, the Bands are ioyned together, great is the clattering of Armour, the Trumpets ſound, the diuers noyſes of the diſordered Companies doe thunder in the ayre, the coupled Horſes ſend forth confuſed neyings, the very Mount of Saint* Michael *did glitter with the golden Targets reflecting from the Sunne. The men are animated to the fight, their Aſhen Speares are knapped in peeces, Swords are broken*

in sunder, now one foote driues forward another, one Buckler repulseth another, Saddles are made empty, Horsemen cast on their backes, and the Horses (their Riders being dismounted) doe runne about neying with broken raines. Geoffrey, *the onely terrour of the aduerse part, setteth vpon his Aduersaries, and running hither and thither, is carefully imployed to bring succours to his Souldiers, casting many downe with his Launce, and doubling blowes with his Sword, inforceth a great number to giue vp the Ghost. The English follow their Captaine, breaking way before them, being the very hope of their victory, giuing diuers kindes of death to their Aduersaries.* Geoffrey *of* Angiers, *more courageous then a Lyon, presseth vpon them, the* Brittaine *band rusheth after, presuming now of the victory. The* Normans, *tyred with the great conflict, turning their backes, betake themselues to flight, and the multitude, being wasted by a small number, were enforced to retyre to their Campe. But the* Normans *deiected with this vnlooked for confusion, propound to the* English *a single Combat.*

There was come from the parts beyond the Seas a Sampson-*like Souldiour, of a Gyant-like Stature, brought thither by the report of the Torneament, vpon whose strength and hardinesse they relying, did presume of the Victory. This man therefore (exceeding the ordenary condition of men) issuing out of the* Norman *Campe, stood in an eminent place, and vpbraiding the English troupes, challenged any one of them to cope with him in single Combat.*

The countenances of all that heard him were pale, and the strength of the valiant men failed; for euery one feared to enter Combat hand to hand with a Monster of so great disproportion. But the Kings Sonne in Law beholding those men, who were by nature courageous, to be dishartned, euen as it were Cowards, and Recreants, at the hearing of such vnusuall speech, vttered in their despite; was moued in spirit, and not enduring this disgrace offered, mounted vpon his Horse, snatcheth his Armes, and entreth single fight with this Gyant-like Souldier, their troupes on euery side beholding them. The contention was rigorous. For that man, exceeding the measure of humaine strength, hauing a Speare as it were a Weauers Beame, assayleth Geoffrie *of* Angiers, *and pierceth through his Shield, and Coate of Defence, not without effusion of bloud.* Geoffrie *stands immoueable, euen as it were fast rooted to his Horse, and striking his Assailant thorough with his Launce, bore him downe to the ground, and standing ouer him, smote off his head with his Sword. So hauing obtained the triumph, he led away in his victorious hand the Horse of the vanquished, and went thus away a glorious Conquexour, to the disgrace of the* Normans, *and the glory of his owne followers.*

Count *Geoffrey* Duke of *Normandy.*

Thus you see what was written by this honest Monke, who deliuereth it in good tearmes, and liued vnder the Reigne of King *Lewes*, Seauenth of the name, called *The Pious* or *Pittifull*. And the same Authour informeth vs, that the same Count *Geoffrey*, who was by his wife *Maude* the Empresse Duke of *Normandie*, and his descent Kings of *England*: tooke great delight to visite strange Prouinces and Countries, to be present in person at Iousts and Tourneys.

In confinio Flandrensium, & in longe positis terris cœpit Torneamenta *perquirere, & laudis cupitæ, & bene gestis rebus in dies emolumenta percipere.*

He began to search after Torneaments in the frontiers of Flanders, *and in other farre Countries, and (day by day) to receiue the benefit of desired honour by his noble exploites.*

Iousts and Tourneis with losse of life.

By the narration of this learned Monke, you may vnderstand Gentlemen Readers, that these Iousts and Tournaments were neuer performed, without the losse and effusion of bloud, and some or other made but a sorrie reckoning, of being inuited to so costly a Feast, which extended oftentimes to the extremitie of life. *Lancea multos deijcit, ense tellus ingeminans innumeros Vitâ expellit. Ouerthrew many with his Lance, and doubling blowes with his Sword, enforced a number to giue vp the Ghost.*

And that they which tooke part with the Count of *Anion*, were the deathsmen of a great number of *Normans*: onely through the spleene and mallice, which the one Nation bare euen to the other, whereon ensued the Challenges of Combat, to the extremity of life. And this gaue subiect and occasion to the Princes, the Counts of *Flanders*, of *Blois*, and of *Mortaigne*, to make their complaint to the King their Soueraigne Lord, *Lewes* Seauenth of the name, and Sirnamed the Pittifull; against the

the said Count *Geoffery* of *Anion*: that in pride and arrogancy, and because hee was Sonne in Law to the King of *England Henry*, First of the name, he ioyned himselfe in this Tourney on the *Englishmens* side, who were strangers, and in fauour of them, had ill entreated his vassayles and Subiects, with whose Bloud he had died Red the Lists of the same Tourney.

Complaints made to the King against the Count.

Vpon these Complaints, King *Lewes* the Seauenth tooke order for Iousts and Tourneyes, and by his Ordenance, set downe in the Register of the Court, in Iuly One thousand, one hundred, threescore and three, where it is expressely decreed: That the Barons may assist, and bee present at Iousts and Tourneys, which were held in the Kingdome: *Only to see them*, and to sit as *Iudges*. But if they were either Assaylants or defendants; then they should haue no other Armes then a Corslet and Helmet, a Shield without any bosse and pointe, a blunted Aslien Lance, and a Battle Axe in the same manner, without any head of Steele or of Iron.

The King's Decree for Iousts and Tourneys.

King *Phillip Augustus*, Sonne and Successour to *Lewes* the Seauenth, confirmed the same Ordenance, forbidding any offensiue Armes in Iousts and Tourneys; or the Princes of the Sacred Lillies of *France*, should make themselues any Chiefe men or Commaunders in them, to auoyde and preuent all such perills, as formerly had happened in those Sports and Pastimes, and ordenarily chaunced in such great Assemblyes. And it is recorded in the Court Regisiters, that the same *Augustus*, in the Moneth of May, the yeare of Grace One thousand, two hundred and nine, tooke Oath of the Lords *Lewes*, his eldest Sonne (who succeeded in the Kingdome after him, and was Eight of the name) and of *Phillip* of *France*, Count of *Bologne*, his youngest Sonne) in feare of such perills: that (not without his leaue) they should goe to any Tourneys, in hope of any prize of Honour. But when such Triumphes were held, on after an other; *They might goe to see them, and wearing no other Armes then as Knights, only with a Corslet and Helmet.*

All offensiue Armes prohibited in Iousts and Tourneys.

The King's charge to his Sonnes.

The Monke of Saint *Denys* in *France*, *William de Nangis*, in the Life of King *Phillip* the *Hardy* (Sonne and Successour to the King Saint *Lewes*) Third of the name, writeth in his fiue and twentieth Chapter: That for welcomming to the Court the Prince of *Salerne*, *Charles* of *Anion*, Sonne to the King of *Sicilie Monsieur Charles* of *France*, Duke of *Anion*, Brother to the same King Saint *Lewes*; King *Phillip* the *Hardy* suffered a Tourney to be held, whereat was present one of the prime Princes of the Bloud, who thorow the weightinesse of his Armes, and great number of blowes receiued by the Battle-Axe, expired the fortune of his life. This happened in the yeare One thousand, two hundred, threescore and nineteene.

A Tourney permitted by King Phillip the Hardy.

Mathew Paris, the Monke of Saint *Albanes* in *England*, writeth vnder the yeare, One thousand, one hundred, fourescore and foure [illegible], that the King of *England Richard*, First of the name, appointed certaine places in his Kingdome, for the holding and performing of Iousts and Tournaments, that his Subiects might be made ready to Horsemanship, and fit for Armes, when occasions required.

Iousts and Tourneys in England.

Eodem Anno Rex Ricardus in Angliam transiens, statuit per loca certa Torneamenta *fieri, hac fortasse inductus ratione, vt Milites Regni vtrinque concurrentes, vires suas, flexis in gyrum frænis, experirentur: Vt si bellum aduersus* Crucis *inimicos, vel etiam finitimos mouere decreuerit, agiliores ad prælium, & exercitatiores redderentur.*

The same yeare King Richard passing ouer into England, appointed Torneaments to be held in certaine places, being induced thereunto (peraduenture) for this cause: that the Souldiers of the Realme by iousting syde against syde, might proue their strengths, their raines turned into a carriere. That if he should decree, to make Warres against the enemies of the Crosse, or against the borderers: they might thereby be made more nimble, and better experienced for the warres.

And although these Iousts and Tourneys were performed without offensiue Armes, but only with rebated Lances, Canes and Reeds growing in Marishes, as I haue oftentimes seene in *Spayne*: yet notwithstanding, diuers occasions of disorder and confusion hath ensued thereby, and cost the carcking of some crownes, as wee vse by way of a Prouerbe in *France*, And heereupon the forenamed Monke *Mathew Paris* recordeth, that the Kings of *France* & *England*, *Phillip Augustus* & *Richard* the First, reposing themselues some few dayes at *Messina* in *Sicilie*, before their fur-

ther crossing ouer the Seas: A Iouſt and Tourney was there held with Canes, betweene the *French* and *Engliſh*, where ſome felt themſelues a little too neere touch, and thence grew the beginning, of ſome grudge and diſcontentment betweene theſe two great Princes.

Hoc nimirum inter prædictos Principes diſcordiæ ſeminarium dignoſcitur extitiſſe: A ſauoir le quel de ces deux Princes eſtabliroit vn Roy de Hieruſalem, le Roy fauorit ſont le Marquis de Montferrat, & le Roy d'Angleterre Guy de Luzignan, auquel il vendit l'Iſle de Cypre, comme nous auons dict) *cum tamen hæc diſcordia primo apud Meſſanam Siciliæ primitiua, ſed occulta pullulauerit, & poſtea* per Cannarum Haſtiludium infœlix ſuſcepit paulatim incrementum.

This doubtleſſe is knowne to be the firſt beginning of diſcord betweene the aforeſaid Princes (as namely, which of theſe two Princes ſhould eſtabliſh a King of *Ieruſalem*: King *Phillip* fauouring the Marqueſſe of *Montferrat*, and the King of *England*, Guy of *Luſignan*, to whom he ſold the Iſle of *Cyprus*, as we haue elſewhere ſaid) *When as notwithſtanding, this debate did firſt begin to bud at Meſſana, a Citie of Sicilia, firſt indeede, yet ſcarce perceiued, and after (by little and little) tooke increaſe through that vnfortunate Tilting with theſe Canes.*

Such Coates were called Iacks of the Linnen Armorie.

The ſame Author, ſpeaking of the Tourney which was performed by the *French* in the Citie of *London*, before the Sonne to King *Phillip Auguſtus Monſieur Lewes* of *France*, was receiued thereinto, and Crowned King of *England*, the yeare of Grace One thouſand two hundred and ſixteene, ſaith. That a number of *Engliſh* Knights were diſmounted in the Field, and among other ſpeciall men of marke or noate, was the Count *Geoffrey de Mandeuille*.

Eodem tempore exierunt ab Vrbe Londinenſi Barones, cum Militibus qui de Regno Franciæ nuper adu nerant, ad Equeſtrem Ludum, quod Haſtiludium vel Torneamentum *dicitur, cum haſtis tantum & lineis armaturis* (Lances mornees, plaſtrons, & Gobeſons de toile bien piequee & cordelee, comme les Corps de cottes de femmes a l'Antique) *Cumque Equos curſim agitantes, & ſe mutuo cum Haſtis ludendo percutientes* (de faiſoient au Pauſiſace diſent nos Ancienc Romanciers) *diem aliquantulum protraxiſſent, quidam ex Francigenis, Haſtam quam tenebat ludendo dirigens in Gaufridum de Mandeuille, Comitem ipſum letaliter vulnerauit. At idem Comes Mortem ſuam percuſſori, poſt dies paucos, in dolorem & querimoniam multorum, mouens condonauit.*

The ſame time the Barons, with Knights who were lately come out of the Kingdome of France, went out of the Citie of London, to that Knightly ſport, which is called running at Tilt or Tourney, onely with Speares, and Linnen furniture (with rebated Lances, and Quilted Armours, well plated and thickned all ouer, like ſuch bodies as women vſed to weare in Auncient times.) *And when thus pricking forward their Horſes, to run and ſtrike at one another, by way of paſtime with their Speares, they had ſpent ſome part of the day, a certaine Frenchman, leuelling the Speare which he held ſlightly againſt* Geoffrie, *Earle* Mandeuill, *gaue him a deadly wound. But the ſaid Earle (after a few dayes) departing out of this life, to the great griefe and lamentation of many, did freely pardon the partie that wounded him.*

Exercises of the Round Table.

The principall care and prouidence, of ſuch as met at theſe Iouſts and Tourneys (which *Mathew Paris* calleth *Haſtiludia Menſæ Rotundæ, Exerciſes of the Round Table*) was to ſit well their Horſes, to keepe themſelues faſt in their Saddles and Stirrops. For, if any man fell, and his Horſe vpon him, at theſe encountrings with their Lances: ſlightly worſe did befall him, before he could any way get forth of the Preaſſe. But others came to heauier fortune, their liues expyring in the place, being trod and trampled on by others.

Statutes of the Iouſts and Tourneys.

And yet neuertheleſſe, it was the maine and principall charge of the Iudges, that they ſhould forbid all Noble men, from bringing vp any nouell faſhion or behauiour, exceeding the allowed and common rule: for containing themſelues the more firmely in their Saddles, and keeping their Stirrops. Here you may reade the Statutes of the Tourneys.

Statutes

Statutes made by Royall Authority, Concerning Iouſts and Tourneys.

NEmo *vt* Equo firmius hæreat, *& maiore molimento eo deturbetur, extraordinaria, & inſolita adiumenta circumſpiciat; iiſque fretus in certamen deſcendat; ſed communi modo* Sellæ Equeſtris, & Stapedum *vſu contentus, per omnia, ſit dexteritate magiſtus, quam arte tutus.*

Si quis *contra hæc fecerit, is Omnium incurrat Ordinum odium, & contemptum;* Armiſque. & equo, *cum phaleris & ſtratis eius mulctetur.* The ſame

Ne quis *vt Equo hæreat facilius, inſolita & inuſitata auxilia circumſpiciat, ſed* Sella Equeſtri *communi contentus ſit,* Stapedeſque *habeat ex more aptatos. Qui ſecus fecerit* Equo, Armiſque mulretur.

Let no man (that he may ſit more ſteadfaſtly on his Horſe, and be diſmounted with greater ſtrength) ſeeke for extraordinary and vnuſuall helps, and (relying vpon them) enter into Combate; but being content after the common cuſtome, with the vſe of an Horſemans Saddle and Stirrops; in all things let him defend himſelfe, rather by dexterity then by ſubtilty.

Whoſoeuer ſhall doe contrary to this, let him incurre the hatred and contempt of all the Orders, and be puniſhed with loſſe of Armes, and Horſe, with the Trappings and Furniture.

Let no man (that he may more eaſily keepe his Horſe) ſearch out for vnwonted and vnaccuſtomed helpes; but let him be content with a common Horſemans Saddle, and haue his Stirrops fitted to him according to the manner. Whoſoeuer doth otherwiſe, let him be fined to the loſſe of Horſe and Armour.

It was ſufficient to haue a Saddle and Stirrops for the Genet or Horſe, like to the *Barbarian* and *Turkiſhe* Horſes. The Auncient *Romaines* had not any ſuch vſe of Saddle and Stirrops for their Horſes, according as wee haue. For if wee would but peruſe the Antiquities of *Rome*, with other noates of the Emperours, and *Romaine* Captaines for Horſeback: we ſhall finde no vſe of Saddles at all, neither any to bee put in practiſe, vntill the time of the Emperour *Conſtantine*, Sonne to *Conſtantine* the Great: about the yeare of Grace, Three hundred, forty and one, which we learne of the *Greeke* Hiſtorian *Zonaras*, who (throughout his whole Hiſtorie) maketh not any mention of a Saddle for a Horſe; before ſuch time as *Conſtans*, ſeeking to bereaue his Brother *Conſtantine* of the Empire: made head againſt his Army, and entring into the Squadron where himſelfe was, caſt him beſide the Saddle of his Horſe.

The Romans had no Saddles or Stirrops for their Horſes.

Great *Theodoſius* the Emperour, who began to reigne in the yeare of Grace Three hundred, foureſcore and two, at the twelfth Booke of his *Code*, in the Law. *Quoniam, de curſ. Public. C.* ruleth the prices or expences for Saddles and Petreiles belonging to Horſes, rating them at a certaine ſumme: which if any man exceeded, his Saddle was broken in pieces and the Petrell, and ſurmounting the value of Threeſcore Pounds of Gold; were taken and confiſcated to the Emperour.

Prices and rates ordered for Saddles for Horſes not to be exceeded

The Poet telleth vs, that the Firſt men which tamed the Horſe (a generous Creature, and the Symbole of Warre) with Bitt and Bridle, were the *Pelethronians*, a People dwelling in *Theſſalie*.

Frena Pelethroni Lapitæ, gyroſque debere
Impoſiti Dorſo, atque Equitem docuere ſub Armis
Inſultare Solo, & greſſus glomerare ſuperbos.

The *Lapithes*, that firſt found the vſe of Bits and Bridles.

But of Saddles and Stirrops, for contayning a man faſt on horſeback, there is no other mention made then of the *Margarians*. So ſaith *Plinie* in the Seauenth Booke and Fifty Six Chapter of his Naturall Hiſtory. And they which interpret this verſe of *Horace*. *Ep. 14. Lib. 1.*

Optat Ephippia Bos piger, optat arare Caballus.

This word *Ephippia* is miſtaken Grammatically, as to vnderſtand therby a Saddle for the Horſe: becauſe the word (in the *Greeke* notion and meaning) implieth a man on Horſeback, and not a Saddle.

It was reputed a common and triuiall thing, to deck or adorne a goodly Horſe with a Pettrell (which the Emperour *Theodoſius* baptized with the name of *Auerta*) or ſome Scarlet Cloth, wrought with Gold and Siluer, and Fringed with ſmall Bels of the ſame brauerie, & about his eyes, the Bridle alſo beautified with Roſes of Gold,

and Siluer, or Roundels made of the same mettall, as Mules fot pacing in the Streets are furnished, with flat Lingots of Brasle or Copper, for the seruice of Princes and great Lords: because the Poet sheweth their vse in his Seauenth Booke.

Instratos Ostro Alipedes, pictisque tapetis
Aurea pectoribus demissa monilia pendent.

And it was of those Pettrels and Harnesses for Horses, that the tearmes of the Law. *Quoniam* (before noated) were meant.

As for Stirrops, tearmed in Latine *Stapedes*, and *Stapphiæ*; the auncient *Romans* had neuer any knowledge of them. And such among them in *Rome*, as were called Knights, Noblemen by extraction, and other beside, that made vse of Horses seruice in actions of Warre: they neuer had any Stirrops, whereby to mount vpon their Beasts, but leapt vp lightly vpon their backes, without any helpe or other aduantage.

Stirrops vnknown to the auncient Romans.

Infrenant alij Currus, ac Corpora saltu
Subijciunt in Equos, & strictis Ensibus adsunt.

So speaketh the Poet in his twelfth Booke: And at the same place, discoursing of *Turnus*, he saith

Poscit Equos, atque Arma simul, saltaque superbus
Emicat.

The first and last Alphabet of Exercises, whereunto the *Romaine* Esquires were called, was to mount and leape vp lightly (both on the right and left side) of a Horse, made for the same purpose of Wood: which they vsed to doe before they were made Knights, as we learne by the Captaine *Vegetius*, in his Art Militarie. When they had made themselues apt & ready, for mounting and leaping vp in their Doublets; then they made a further practise thereof, being Armed at all points, according as the courses of time should require, to gallop a liuing Horse with weapons in their hands, at all such aduantages as the enemy should assayle, in the fore, in the rere, on the right hand, or left. For to this purpose and effect, the Esquires and Maisters of Managements (being named *Decursores*, as their Schollers were) made apt their Horses in this exercise, and men to backe and sit them.

The Exercises of the Roman Esquires.

Now, concerning such persons as were well stept into yeares, or else disaduantaged by defect of health, who had neede of helde, and some meanes for mounting on Horsebacke, the Surueyars and Ouerseers for the High-wayes; had it as an especiall Article in their charge, in Pauing the Streetes and publique places; to set Stones vp on end, or to erect steps on either side the way, at the end of euery hundred paces, for the ease and aduantage of them as (by reason of their indisposition) could not mount on the Corde. An inuention found out (according to the saying of *Plutarch*) by *Caius Gracchus*, onely to winne the good opinion of the People, and make himselfe the Torch or Firebrand of a League, furiously enraged against his Faction.

For elder persons and such as were of feeble disposition.

For Shooing the feete of Horses, it is questionlesse an vndoubted maxime, that such men as could subiect and Maister the Beasts mouthes; would be as carefull and prouident for their feete, and haue them well Shod, vpon paine of being fellowes with him, ouer whom they ought to be Maisters, according to our auncient Prouerbe. *Be Maister of thy Horse* (and of thy Wife by priority, priuiledge, and without comparison) *Companion with thy Dogge, and Seruant to thy Hauke.* So (for common people) their Horses were shod with Iron; but those belonging to Emperours, Princes and Queenes, with Gold and Siluer, according to their prodigalitie: As did *Poppæa*, the wife to the Monster in Nature *Nero*; according to the testimony of *Xiphilinus*, and *Plinie*, in the three and thirtieth Booke, and eleauenth Chapter, of his at large described Naturall History. Hauing thus farre wandred out of the way, let vs returne againe to our Tourneys.

For Shooing the feete of Horses.

Horses shod with Gold and Siluer.

The same *Mathew Paris* (whose discourse we haue somewhat swerued from and broken, in regard of our Knight, to giue him a Cariere with his Horse) obserueth vnder the yeare One thousand two hundred forty and seauen, that about the Feast of Saint *Martine*, the King of *England, Henry*, third of the name, in fauour of his Brother by one and the same wombe, *William* of *Lusignan* Count of *Valencia* (whose Armes

A Tourney granted to be performed at *Northampton*.

Armes are formerly obserued) newly created Knight by him: permitted *Robert*, Earle of *Gloecester*, to celebrate a Tourney at *Northampton*, against the said Count *William of Valencia*, and his Associates, newly made Knights. But King *Henry* fearing, least some bad distribution of blowes, would happen to the *Poicteuins*, by the *English*; forbad the effecting and execution.

And the same Author reporteth, that in the year following, the same King *Henry* the Third, suffered a Tourney to be performed at *Nebridge*, where the Knight of *Valentia* before named, would needes be seene in his best and manliest behauiour. But he was ouer-borne with blowes, and beaten to the ground, his Armour battered in pieces, and loosing the most part of it: *And was very well bumbasted, according to the Law of Iousts and Tourneys.*

Another Tourney at *Nebridg*

Willielmus viribus imperfectus, quum impetus Militum durorum, & Martiorum sustinere non præualeret, multa amisit postratus, Et egregie, vt introductiones militiæ initiales addisceret, baculatus est.

William, *being not perfect in strength, when he was not able to beare the strokes of those sterne and warlike Assailants; being quite ouerthrowne, lost much, and was soundly basted, that he might learne the first introductions of Armes and warfare. If then they would make no spare of a Prince, what thinke you should be done to others?*

These new Knight Nouices, were thus well beaten with blowes, to make them remember the rules and maximes of Iousts and Tourneys. As for them of elder standing, and auncients seene at such Exercises; if they sustained any spot or blemish in their renowne: they were dismounted from their Horses, and their Saddles set vpon the Railes or Barres, and there were they to ride, all the time as the Tourney lasted.

Punishments both for new learners and others of more experience

Si quis contra æstimationem suam, Officiumque fecisse conuictus fuerit, cum eo, non de laude, gloriaque, sed de Equo concurratur: eoque adempto, Ipse cum sella Equestri septis imponatur, in eisque ad finem vsque decursionum ita perdurare cogatur.

If any shall be conuicted of doing contrary to their estimation and datie, let not any Ioust with him for honour, and renowne, but for his Horse: which being taken from him, let him be placed vpon the Railes in his Horsemans Saddle, and be inforced to sit there, euen to the end of the Tilting.

Now, because infinite other sinister accidents happened in Iousts and Tourneys, it being a place, which bad disposed persons made as a *Rende-vous*, there to reuenge their particular quarrels (howbeit in the first Oathe taken by the Iudges of the Field, of them that entred into such Assemblies, they should leaue without the Lists all spleene and rancour) and euen as boldly in such Military pastimes, as in *Duelloes* and Combats: These sports were also iustly prohibited and forbidden, as well by Decrees of Fathers of the Church, as Ordenances of our Most Christian Kings.

Iousts and Tournements, prohibited.

William de Nangis, a Monke of Saint *Denys* in *France*, obserueth in the Life of the King Saint *Lewes*, the three and fiftieth Chapter, that vnder the yeare of Grace One thousand two hundred and threescore: this good King (the Mirrour of Princes) caused a meeting to be made at the Citie of *Paris*, on the Sunday after Easter day, of the Generall Estates of his Kingdome, composed of the Prelates and chiefe Barons thereof, concerning matters written to him by the Pope: That the *Tartarres* had intruded themselues into the Lands beyond the Seas, discomfiting the *Sarrazins* in a foughten Battaile, and conquered the Prouinces of *Armenia*, with the Cities of *Antioch*, *Tripoly*, *Damas* and *Aleppo*, threatning to besiedge the strong Citie of *Acres*, with the neighbouring Countries, and quite to expell the Christians out of the East.

A meeting of the Kingdomes Estates at *Paris*.

Hereupon it was ordained, that throughout all the Kingdome, prayers and generall Processions should be made, Blasphemers should be punished. And euery Estate were to reforme their Feasts and Banquetings, as also the excesse and superfluitie vsed in their attire and garments: *And Iousts and Tourneys were prohibited for the space of two whole yeares.* All men being enioyned (during that time) to recreate themselues with no other exercises, then shooting in the Long-Bow and Crosse-Bow, or Tillar.

Punishment of Swearers and blasphemers.

Inhibita etiam fuerunt vsque ad Biennium Torneamenta, *& iniunctum est, quod non vnderetur*

luderetur alijs ludis, nisi quod Homines se exercerent in Arcubus, & Balistis.

Tourneaments also were inhibited for two yeares space: And it was enioyned, that none should play at any other sports, but that men should vse the exercise of Crosse-Bowes and Tellars.

The King of *France* slaine in a Tournament.

But now let vs see, what was ordained by our holy Mother the Church, in regard that Iousts and Tourneys were prosecuted with vnfortunate and Tragicall endings: as it happened at *Paris*, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand fiue hundred fiftie and nine.

Decree of the Church gainst Tournaments

WE forbid hereafter to keepe or hold, those detestable Fayres and Markets, which are called Tourneys, Exercises, wherein the Nobilitie are present in person at dayes appointed, to performe their ostentation of boldnesse, and vttermost meanes of strength, in all their best and richest brauery, assayling one another to their perill and danger, that men should loose both bodies and soules. It is therefore prouided, that if any man (in such Assemblies) shall runne the fortune and ieoperdie of life: howsoeuer he may be penitent for it, and desire to be absolued; yet notwithstanding, he shall be depriued of buriall in hallowed ground, and places of Christian enterment.

The renewing of the former Ordenance.

The Popes *Innocentius* and *Eugenius* made this holy Ordenance, and it was renewed in the Eleauenth Generall Counsell of *Laterane*, held at *Rome* by Pope *Alexander* the Third, the foureteenth of the Calends of Aprill, in the yeare of Grace One thousand one hundred threescore and nineteene, in these very words:

Detestabiles illas Nundinas, vel Ferias, quas vulgo Torneamenta vocant, in quibus Milites, ex condicto, conuenire solent, & ad ostentationem virium suarum, & audacia temere congredi, Vnde Mortes Hominum, & Animarum pericula sæpe proueniunt, fieri prohibemus. Quod si quis eorum, ibi mortuus fuerit, quamuis ei poscenti poenitentia non denegetur, Ecclesiastica tamen careat Sepultura.

We forbid those detestable Faires, and sporting dayes, which they commonly call Tournements to be kept, wherein Gallants (according to appointment made) are wont to meete, and skirmish desperately together, for the ostentation of their valour and hardinesse; from whence (many times) proceede both the death of men, and the danger of their soules. And if any of them shall dye there, although penance be not denied him, requiring it; yet he shall want Ecclesiasticall buriall.

The Counsell of *Vienna* in *Daulphine*.

At the Generall Counsell of *Vienna* in *Daulphine*, Celebrated by Pope *Clement*, fift of the name, in the yeare of Grace, One thousand three hundred & twelue; *Iousts and Tournaments were againe prohibited*; and in the very same tearmes, as were obserued in the former related Counsels.

Now you shall see one speciall Record, which I haue taken out of our great Chronicle, and inserted here.

Enuiron la feste de Monsieur Sainct Denys, le Cardinal Nicolas deffendy tous les Tournoyemens, & tant les Tournoyans, comme les Souffrans, & Aydans, & mesmement les Princes qui en leurs Terres les souffroient il ietta grand Sentence contre Eux, & apres ce, sousmettoit leurs Terres à l'Interdict de l'Eglise. Mais apres ce, le Pape a la Requeste des Fils du Roy, *& de plusieurs autres Nobles, dispensa auec Eux, parce qu'ils estoient nouueaux Cheualiers (*ils auoient este faicts Cheualiers par la *Roy Philippes le Bel leur Pere* en la grande Eglise de *Paris*, a la Feste de la Pentecoste, l'An Mille trois Cents & Treze, auecques les magnificences des Bourgeois, & Mestiers de Paris, descrites tout au long dans lesdictes Chroniques) *pource que par trois Iours deuant Karesme, ils pensent ausdicts Ieux, iouer tant seulement, & non plus.*

About the Feast of my Lord Saint Denys, the Cardinall Nicholas did prohibite and forbid all Tournaments, and as well the Tourneyers, as the Souereignes and Ayders, and specially those Princes, in whose Lands they were permitted, by Interdiction of the Church.

Prohibition of Tourneys and dispensation with them.

But after this, the Pope, at the request of the Kings Sonnes, *and of many other Noble Gentlemen; dispenced with them, because they were newly knighted (*They had bin made Knights by King *Phillip le Bel* their Father, in the great Church of *Paris*, at the Feast of Pentecoast, in the yeare One thousand three hundred and thirteene, with the magnificences of the Bourgesses and Tradesmen of *Paris*, described more at large in the

the Chronicles.) *Because that for three dayes space before Lent, they might then addict themselues to those sports and pastimes, but no longer.*

We will content our selues, with so slender a flourish made vpon this discourse of Iousts and Tournaments, referring a further taske to be taken therein, by such as can better enlarge the Argument, then we haue now done. We will therefore enter into another discourse.

Of Militarie Penalties, Paines and Punishments: And likewise of the Degradation of Noble-Men.

CHAP. VIII.

Homer, the Father of Science and Vertue.

THE Greeke Poet *Homer* (whom diuine *Plato* calleth *The Father of Science*, and *of all Vertue*) feigneth with a comely and pleasing grace: that the Goddesse *Thetis*, being deliuered of her Sonne *Achilles*, did suddenly dip or plunge his naked body into the Riuer of *Styx*, thereby to make him inuulnerable, and not to be hurt by any wound. Afterward, she sollicited *Iupiter*, King of the Gods and Men, to auert and turne from her Son, those destenied harmes or euils, which might threaten death to him in any high enterpise.

The true module of a man for Armes.

Now, to speake more properly, this is the module and carracter of a Knight, or man that addicteth himselfe to Armes and Wars, who euen from his tender youth and yongest yeares, should custome and inure himselfe, to beare and endure all distempers and oppressions, whereto the seasons of the yeare are subiect and harden or make bold his body, to the exercises of paine and trauaile: In imitation of the auncient *French* and *Gaules*, whose naturall disposition is, described by the Latin Poet, in the ninth Booke of his *Æneicds*.

Durum à stirpe genus. Natos ad Flumina primum
Deferimus. sæuoque gelu duramus, & undis
Venatu inuigilant Pueri, Sylusque fatigant,
Fingere ludus Equos, & spicula tendere cursu.

Vertue the only aime of a Gentlemans actions.

And like as for entring into the Temple of *Honor*, a man ought first to passe thorow that of *Vertue*: euen so a yong Gentleman should make *Vertue* the onely obiect, bent and aime of all his actions, to the end, that by meanes thereof, he may attaine to the Temple of *Honor*, for the conseruation whereof, he ought to be a thousand times more carefull, then of his owne life.

Achilles slaine in the Temple by *Paris Alexander*.

When the Goddesse *Thetis* bathed her yong *Paladine* in the Riuer of *Styx*; shee plunged in all his body, onely the soales of his feete excepted, whereby she hee'd him. Onely by that part was he wounded and slaine, in the Temple of the Citie of *Troy*, by an Arrow sent from the Bowe of *Alexander Paris* (the most effeminate Coward, and idle Lazie yongster in all the *Trojane* Armie) as he was deuoutly kneeling vpon his knees, to espouse the faire *Polixena*: of whom he was in such sort enamoured, that (for her sake) he exposed himselfe to the rage and furie of his deadly enemies.

The soale of the foote, is the most tender and daintie part of a mans whole body. Adde hereunto *Polixena*, and dastardly *Paris*, which are the Symboles and the Idoines of voluptuous ease, and a sloathfull negligent eye, that misguide many braue Lords and Souldiours, euen to the height of all misfortunes, and then to a woful end of fatall endings. This is truly fertile as a good Lesson, to you that are braue and valorous *French* Noblemen, to turne your backes on the common high

reade-

roade way of Vice, and to purſue the faire foote-ſteps of *Vertue*, by qualifying in your ſelues all vnruly paſſions, for your ſooner arriuing at the *Theator* of *Honour*. Whereunto you may be conducted, by that great Captaine *Scipio Affricanus*, who foundeth in your eares night and day, euening and morning, yea, and at all houres, this goodly Leſſon in fiue Latine words, more excellent and better then that of King *Lewes* the eleauenth of the name, which he cauſed to be taught to King *Charles* the eight, his Sonne and Succeſſour.

The noble Leſſon of *Scipio* the Affrican.

Maxima cunctarum Victoria, Victa Voluptas.

By this Victory ouer your ſelues, taming and tutoring your owne paſſions, you will ſoone come to honor. Whereas contrariwiſe, if you ſuffer your ſelues to be ſurmounted by wanton pleaſures, like to the Beaſt *Matreas*, that deuoureth her owne ſelfe; you will make a moſt lamentable and vnfortunate ending.

Now, as for the honoring of Noblemen, Kings inuented prizes and recompences of Honor and worth: ſo likewiſe, to bridle & reſtaine them, as breathing them in the wayes of Vertue, they deuiſed and made Militarie Ordenances, to take beginning from the time, when they were enroled for the managing of Armes, for ſeruice of the King, & Sacred Crown of the Lillies, euen to the ending of their liues, by a ciuill death in their own perſons, with ignominie, tranſmittable to their Sons, becauſe they were not onely depriued, of the memory and Honors of their Fathers, tranſcribed in the Red or Bloody Booke: but alſo by confiſcation of their Goods, if they were ſeated and dwelt in Countries ſubiect to confiſcation, in regard that there is a difference betweene thoſe that are ſubiect to confiſcation, and ſuch as are not ſubiect thereto.

The Red and Bloody Booke of Infamie.

Thoſe Countries and Prouinces, which ſtood ſubiected to Confiſcation, were properly them of the Kings demaine, and Lands belonging to the Sacred Crowne of *France*, as dependine thereon immediately, and returning thither againe (as to their head and ſpring) as well by the crime of Fealonie, as other caſes likewiſe, which deſerued an infamous kinde of death. In whatſoeuer part of the Kingdome, thoſe goods af demaine and Royall Patrimony were ſeated, conſiſting of the Crowne, or aduanced into a Peeredome and high Baronnie; if there were no ſubſtitution made, before the Prince had giuen the honor and title of Excellencie and honor, then they were liable thereto.

Countries ſubiected to Confiſcation.

In Prouinces, which neuer (before in times paſt) were immediately of the Royall demaine, as in the Dukedomes and Prouinces of *Bretaigne*, *Aquitaine* and the like, ruled and gouerned by perticular Dukes, and onely with charge and reſeruation of liedge Homage, and caſes thereupon depending. In thoſe Prouinces our moſt Sacred Monarches, by wiſe Counſell and admirable foreſight, admitted no place for confiſcation. Becauſe the Subiects and Seruants of theſe great Fiſes and Baronnies had bin conſtrained (at all times) to follow their Lords and Rulers in Warres, although the warre were made againſt the King, their Prince and Soueraigne Lord. And thence it came that the Court, in ſentences of condemnation of ciuile death, on them conuicted of the crime, be they Nobles, or Yeomen, the tearmes of confiſcation to the King is added thereto, of ſuch inheritances as are in the places of Confiſcation. Which neuertheleſſe might extend it ſelfe, throughout all Lands and Seigneuries vnder obedience to our Kings, if there were not a cuſtome to the contrary, which ought to be held as a certaine and infallible Law, and as a Law tollerated by the Prince, vntill ſuch time, as it ſhall be reformed by his Prerogatiue & Authority.

Prouinces not ſubiect to Confiſcations.

Concerning ſentences of condemnation

In *France* there are Royall Ordenances for the Eſtate Militarie, and preſcibed to the Nobility, whoſe principall function is to follow Armes.

Ordenances Royall for the Military condition.

He that is wanting at his faction, being of the Guard, and is to come ouer late, deſerueth *Le Morrion de Dix en bas*.

If he offend in the ſame againe; he is to be impriſoned three dayes, and perſiſting on ſtill, to be fined according to the exigence of the caſe.

The penalties extend to common Soldiors.

If he commit any Theft in the *Corps du Guard*: to be puniſhed with the *Strappado*, and caſheered from the Company, in the moſt eminent part whereof, he is to receiue this exemplary puniſhment.

If he commit Theft any where elſe, that deſerueth death; he is to be hanged and ſtrangled before the whole Company:

If

If he ſet Houſes on fire, force, or offer violence to any Maides or Women: he is to vndergoe the ſame puniſhment.

If he lay hand on his Sword in the *Corps du Garde*, againſt any Commander, or member of the Company: He is to haue the Strappado, and to be Baſtinadoed through the Campe, and afterward excluded. Theſe are the paines and penalties prouided for Souldiours.

Now, concerning Gouernours, and Captaines of Places and of Companies: If any of them doe ſuffer him elſe to be ſurprized by the enemie, or flye from the Battaile, or ſurrender the place of his Gouernement, by Cowardiſe and negligence of courage, or elſe by intelligence: The greateſt honor that he can hope for, is to looſe his head vpon a publique Scaffold. Or, a paine much more cruell, to let him goe with his life ſaued; after he hath bin degraded of Nobilitie, and proclaimed a Traitour, and he and his poſteritie Peazants.

Penalties appointed for Gouernours and Captains.

According as it forruned to Captaine *Pranget*, Gouernour of *Fontarabie*, which cowardly he ſurrendred to the enemy, in the time of King *Frances* the firſt, the yeare of Grace One theuſand fiue hundred and fourteſcore. Sentence and Iudgement was giuen by the Officers of the Crowne, the Conſtable and Marſhals of *France* in the Citie of *Lyons*. This *Pranget* being brought into the great Market place of the Citie, was mounted vpon a Scaffold, quite diſarmed, his Shield emblazoned with the heeles of the Armes vpward, and then broken by the King of Armes, he publiquely baptized with the name of Traitor, then dragged by the feete, and throwne quite downe from off the high Scaffold: his life ſaued, in regard of his many yeares. But degraded of Nobilitie, he and all his poſteritie publiſhed to be Villaines, and vncapable (for euer after) to beare Armes. Which was done vnto him vpon good and iuſt cauſe, for where negligence and cowardiſe in courage is ſo euident, that it ſtandeth cleare from all apparance of excuſe: it is proofe ſufficient of perfidie, treaſon and villainie, which rightly deſerueth paine and exemplarie puniſhment.

The puniſhment of Captaine *Pranget* for betraying of *Fontarabie*.

Our graue Auncients, the *Gaules* and *French*, exemplarly puniſhed their Souldiours, that by cowardiſe in Couruge, fled from before the enemy, inſtead of ſtanding manfully to the fight. To couer (for euer) their ſhame and turpitude, they drowned them in ſome ſtinking pit of pudled water, hurling clay and filth vpon them. *Ignauos, Imbelles, & Torpore infames, Cœno, ac Palude, iniecta, deſuper Crate, mergunt.* So ſpeaketh *Tacitus* in his *Germania*.

How the *Gaules* puniſhed their Cowards.

And as for them that (by intelligence and treaſon) had conference with the enemie, diſcouering the ſecrets of the Armie, and rancked themſelues with the contrary ſide: if they could be taken, they were branched aloft and below on Trees, ſaith the ſame *Tacitus*. *Proditores, & Transfugas Arboribus ſuſpendunt*.

For Traitours and Intelligencers with the enemy.

If any Captaine betrayed his Countrey, or troubled the peace and tranquilitie thereof, by Factions and Partialities: he was burned aliue, according to the teſtimony of *Iulius Ceſar*, in the firſt Booke of his Memories of the *Gauliſh* warres, ſpeaking of *Orgetorix*. *Moribus ſuis Orgetorigem, ex vinculis cauſam dicere coegerunt, damnatum pœnam ſequi oportebat, Vt Igni Cremaretur* Come we now to ſuch Militarie penalties, paines and puniſhments, as were in practiſe among the *Romans*.

For betraying his Countrey.

The rigour and ſeueritie vſed by them, euen for the ſmalleſt faults among their men of warre: made their State more mightie, and of longer continuance then all the other in the world. Such Souldiours as (by lacke of courage) had left their rancke, their Guard, or place of Sentinell, for feare of looking the enemy in the face: It was their meaneſt infliction (and yet neuertheleſſe full of ſhame and diſgrace) to be let bloud in diuers parts of their bodies, to take thence the crauen cowardly bloud, which had infected the whole maſſe of fleſh, ſo to make them the more courageous and full of ſpirit. And vntill by ſome act of noate and worth, they had redeemed this taxation of rowardiſe; they were left to themſelues in a Quarter a ſide, to be daily gazde on with ſhame and diſgrace. Which blemiſh, if they neuer recouered, and became eſtabliſhed in their ranke of reputation: they neuer had any part or portion whatſoeuer, in the ſpoyles which other Souldiours made on the enemy either in the ſurprizall of Townes and ſtrong places, or in the ranged Battaile.

Of Militarie puniſhments among the *Romains*.

In

The Generals' encouraging of his Souldiours

In which caſe, ſo ſoone as the Generall of the Army had animated his Souldiors, with this forme and manner of ſpeaking; *Gloriæ, Pariterque Prædæ Conſulite:* all was Pillage. Such as bare Armes, paſſed by the edge of the Sword: the common vulgar ſort were ſold as ſlaues (for euer) in open markets; and the reſt were left to the Souldiours diſcretion, Maides and Wiues, all paſt with their loſſe of honour. *Sacra, Prophana ſimul* (without any exception) *Puberibus trucidatis, vmbelle Vulgus ſub Corona venum datum; reliqua præda Victoribus cedebat.* Cowards and Crauens were fruſtrated of this Pilladge.

For ſuch as were ouer deſperate and Hare-brained.

The ſame puniſhment of Bloud-letting, was exerciſed on ſuch Souldiours as were raſh and deſperately light-headed in skirmiſhes, their bloud boyling ouer-hotly: to take away this wilde behauiour from them, it was thought fit to let them bleede; becauſe they did not onely expoſe themſelues to perils and dangers, without any reaſon or iudgement; but likewiſe were the ouer-throw of many other beſide.

Sometimes they had Barley-Bread giuen them, for their beſt prouiſion, like as to the Raſcalitie of Campe-following Boyes: As it is obſerued by *Aulus Gellius*, in the tenth Booke and ſecond Chapter of his *Atticke-Nights*. Or elſe they were commanded out of the Campe; to abide and lodge there, without any couertures or Tents whatſoeuer, but left to the iniuries of all weathers.

The puniſhing of raſh preſumption.

Cornelius Tacitus, in the thirteenth Booke of his Annales, ſpeaking of the Generall *Corbulo*, Gouernour of *Syria*, who had prohibited his Captaine of the Vantguard *Pœtus Orphitus*, to meddle with the enemy: yet notwithſtanding, he fought againſt him to his diſaduantage, againſt all hope or expectation; ſaith he. *Congreſſus cum Hoſte ſunditur. Et damno eius exterriti qui ſubſidium ferre debuerunt, ſua quiſque in Caſtro trepida fuga redire. Quod grauiter Corbulo accepit. Increpitumque Pactium, & Præfectos, Militeſque* Tendere omnes extra Vallum iuſſit. *Inque ea contumelia detenti, nec niſi precibus Vniuerſi Exercitus exſoluti ſunt.*

The penaltie of leauing the Colours and Campe.

Any Soldiour that forſooke the Campe; in going from his Enſigne or Colours, he was to be puniſhed with death, without all hope of mercie or pardon. *Tacitus* in the former obſerued paſſage, ſaith. *Quia durritiam Cœli, Militiæque multi abnuebant, deſerebantque remedium ſeueritate quæſitum eſt. Nec enim, vt in alijs Exercitibus primum alterum-ve delictum venia proſequebatur: Sed Qui Signa Reliquerat, Statim Capite Pœnas Luebat.* Although he lay frozen to the ground, yet it was not permitted to any Souldiour, to abandon or leaue the Campe: neither could he diſpence with himſelfe, to goe a forradging at his owne pleaſure, nor to fetch wood, though he were ready to die with cold. *Annotatuſque Miles qui faſcem lignorum geſtabat, ita præriguiſſe Manus, vt oneri adhærentes, truncis Brachijs decciderent.*

For running from the Field for ſafety of life.

He that for the ſpeedier ſauing himſelfe from the Warre, threw away any part of his Armes on the ground, or engaged or ſold them; was puniſhed with death; So doth the Ciuile Lawyer *Modeſtinus* enforme vs, vnder the Title *De re Militari.*

For theft in the Campe.

He that did ſteale any thing in the Campe or Armie, his right hand was cut off, that had bin the inſtrument in the action: but for the firſt time of offending that way, he had a Veine opened, to bleede. So ſaith *Frontinus* in his Stratagems of Warre, the fourth Booke. *Marcus Cato memoriæ prodidit, in furto comprehenſis, inter Commilitones*, Dextras eſſe Præciſas, *aut ſilentius animaduertere voluiſſent, In principijs Sanguinem miſſum.*

Theft puniſhed vnder the Emperours.

And afterward vnder the *Romaine* Emperours, ſuch Soldiours as were attainted and conuicted of Theft, were beaten naked with Roddes: *Ita vt inter verbera, & fuſtes expirarent.* So ſaith the Ciuile Lawyer *Modeſtinus D. de re Militari.*

The puniſhment of Adultrie.

Such Villaines as forced or violated the Wiues of their Hoſts, were puniſhed and chaſtiſed in a ſtrange manner, worthily anſwering to their wickedneſſe. Two Trees were cleft thorow the midſt, and their tops bended downe to the ground by maine ſtrength of men: then was the Malefactour faſtened thereto by the Feete, and ſo quartered by force and violence of the Trees, in returning vp to their height againe. *Militem, qui Adulterium cum Hoſpitis vxore commiſſerat, ita puniuit, vt duarum Arborum capita inflecteret, quas ad Pedes Militis deligaret, eaſdemque ſubito dimitteret, vt ſciſſus alle, vtrique penderet.* So ſpeaketh *Flauius Vopiſcus*, in the life of the Emperour

Aurelianus. This puniſhment had bin long time put in practiſe by the *Greekes*, and *Plutarch*, in the life of *Alexander* the great, tearmeth this puniſhment by the name of *Diaſphendon.*

The puniſhments of the *French* in their Armies, by precedent examples.

The Ordenances of our Sacred Monarches, puniſhed all furious and violent acts with exemplarie paines and torments: prohibiting the haunt and reſort of Girles and Whoores into their Armies. Whereon followed the Militarie Lawes, which were made for ryding the *Mal-Mouton* (which at this preſent we tearme riding the Canon) as is obſerued by *Nicetas*, in the life of the *Greeke* Emperour *Andronicus Poleologus*, ſpeaking of a bold and ſhameleſſe Wench; *Euphroſina Arieti mœnia percutienti, equitantis inſtar impoſita fuit.* The Auncient *French* cauſed the Noſe to be ſlit, or cut off, and to be led ſtarke naked through all the quarters of the Armie, of all ſuch Souldiours as were found coupled with any of them. *Liguriuus.*

Non erit in noſtris nobiſcum Fœmina Caſtris,
Qui Reus extiterit Spolijs nudatus abibit
Turpiter; & Naſo mutilabitur illa reſecto.

Slitting of Noſes.

And by this ſlitting of their Noſes, they were made knowne to other for example. As much they did in former times to Whoores and Adulterers, being found and apprehended in the act.

Deiphobum vidit lacerum crudeliter ora:
Ora, manuſque ambas, populataque tempora raptis
Auribus, & Truncas, inhoneſto vulnere, Nares.

They vſed to cut off their Noſes and Eares, but perticularly the Noſe, which the Poet (very aptly tearmed *Vulnus inhoneſtum*, becauſe by this cutting away the Noſe, it made ſuch a deformity in the face, as it ſeemed no longer the face of a reaſonable creature.

Among the *Romaines*, thoſe that they called *Filles & Femmes de ioye*, preſented themſelues to the *Pretor*, before they declared, what eſtate and profeſſion of life they had made election of, and then withdrew themſelues to the Act: it being noated downe likewiſe in the *Pretors* Table. After this election made of ſuch a brutiſh and diſſolute kinde of life; they were expreſſely charged and forbidden, to be preſent or ſeene in any publique Aſſemblies, or to ranke themſelues among the *Romaine* Matrons. From whom thoſe Courtezans were diſtinguiſhed, by a Red Locke or dreſſing of a Cowes Haire, which thoſe Miſtreſſes of the common gender were bound to weare; whereas the *Romaine* Ladies ware their dreſſing Blacke.

Strumpets diſtinguiſhed from the *Romaine* Matrons

The honorable name of marriage ſlandered.

And ſo the Latine Poet, giuing this name of Strumpet to *Dido* the Queene of *Carthage*, who to couer her fault (hauing forfeited her honor) with the faire name of Marriage: *Coniugij nomine culpam prætexerat*; ſaith, that ſhee was *Red-Haired.*

Nondum illi Flauum *Proſerpina Vertice* Crinen
Abſtulerat.

And *Iuuenal*, in his ſixt Satyre, deſcribing the goodly prankes of that impudent and immodeſt Empreſſe, the Mother to *Britannicus*, the *Romaines* delicate peece.

.. .. *Titulum mentita Lyciſcæ*
Oſtendit que tuum genero ſe Britannice ventrem:

Affirmeth, that ſhe attired her head with a Periwig of Red Haire, couering therewith her modeſt blacke attire, when (all the night long) ſhe wandred from Stewes to Stewes, to ſatisfie her luſtfull apperite.

Et Nigrum Flauo Crinem abſcondente Galero.

The *Romans* Campe was called Chaſte.

Very rarely was to be found in the *Romaines* Campe, any ſuch wanton darlings, as now we are ſpeaking of. *Caſtra Romanorum ita dicebantur, quaſi Caſta*: they were neuer ſoyled or polluted with any Villainie. But let vs leaue *Venus*, and come to *Mars.*

How the *Perſians* vſed Cowards.

When the Captaines would chaſtiſe gently ſuch Souldiours, as (thorow defect of courage) had plaid the Cowards, forſaking their Rankes and Files of Battaile; they vſed the faſhion of the *Perſians*, which was, to make them walke all the quarters

of the Armie, carying a dead Cow on their Shoulders, and leading a Whore by the hand, naked in their Shirts and Smocks.

Or elſe they were attyred like women, and in that manner led through all the quarters of the Campe and Armie. This was put in practiſe by *Iulian* the Apoſtata, and (before him) by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, according to the teſtimony of the Hiſtorian *Zozimus* in his third Booke. *Amictos veſte Muliebri per Caſtra duxit, ratus Militibus, qui Viri eſſent, eam Pœnam, morte grauiorem futuram.*

The *Greekes* punishing their Cowards.

Which the *Greekes* alſo (before the *Romaines*) exerciſed, vpon ſuch Souldiours as wanted courage: for three ſeuerall dayes together, they would bring them into a publique market place, attired in the garments of Women.

The Law of the *Lacedemonians*.

Among the *Lacedemonians*, they were exiled and baniſhed out of all Companies, being reputed vncapable and vnworthy, to beare any publique charge or Office. And although they were of yeares fitting for mariage, yet through the rigour of the Law ordayned by *Solon*: there could not bee found a woman to marry with any of them, becauſe they hated to haue a Sonne, infected with the Cowardiſe of ſuch a Father.

In what manner they vſed Cowards.

Moreouer, permiſſion was graunted to all commers and goers, to ſmite and beate them as they met them on the wayes, and they not daring to make anſwere, to any iniurious ſpeeches vſed againſt them, or to complaine of any outrages done vnto them; all matter of ſuite & luſtice was vtterly denied them. They went in poore and greazie garment, their beards cloſe ſhauen, and without any Muſtachoe, which was the marke of a valiant Soldiour. This we learne of *Plutarch* in his Liues, and namely in that of *Ageſilaus*.

For leauing Armes and Colours.

Quintus Fabius Maximus, the moſt moderate man of all the Auncient *Romaine* Captaines and Commanders, cauſed the hands of his Souldiours to be cut off, that left their Armes and Colours: This we learne of *Valerius Maximus*, in his Antiquities; of *Appianus Alexandrinus*; and of *Iulius Frontinus* in his Stratagems of Warre, the firſt Chapter of his fourth Booke: *Iulius Celſus*, in the eight Booke of his Memories of the *Gaules* Wars, written by *Iulius Cæſar*, who exerciſed the ſame ſeuerity at the Siedge of *Vxolen* in *Guienne*.

Change or alteration of Military diſciplin

Sometimes change of Military diſcipline was vſed, to Soldiours failing in their Dutie. That is to ſay, Seruitours on Horſe backe, were reduced into the rancks of them that ſ rued on Foote; and the *Fantaſſins* retreated to the degree of *Biſognians* and ſimpleſt Souldiours, which were they that vſed to carry Stones and luggage in the Armies: As it is obſerued by the Lawyer *Modeſtinus*, throughout the title *De re Militare*. And *Valerius Maximus* reporteth an example in the ſecond Booke of his Antiquities, of certaine *Romaine* Soldiours, that ſuffred themſelues to be taken by *Pyrrhus*, King of the *Epirotes*. *Decreuerunt Patres, vt ex ijs qui Equo meruerant, Peditum numero militarent; & qui Pedites fuerant, in Funditorum auxilia tranſcrerentur.* They placed them with the baſe Groomes and Campe-Boyes, that guarded the Baggage, and tended on the Priſoners taken in Warre.

Rigorous Lawes of auncient *Roman* Diſcipline reuiued.

In like manner *Iulian* the Apoſtata (who in his time, would needes reeſtabliſh, and bring againe into practiſe, the rigorous Lawes of Military diſcipline of the Auncient *Romaines*, as well as their Idolatry) *Equites Quartæ Sagittariorum Cohortis omnes contruſit in infimum Militiæ gradum.* So ſpeaketh his Secretary *Ammianus Marcellinus*, in his nine and twentieth Booke. And in his fiue and twentieth Booke: *Tertiarium Equeſtrem numerum, ademptis Signis, Haſtiſque diffractis, inter* Impedimenta, & Sarcinas, & Captiuos *agere iter impoſuit.* The ſame Hiſtorian writeth, that this *Iulian* the Apoſtata condemned ten Soldiours (that inſted of firme fighting on foote, had turned their backes vpon the *Parthians*) to be firſt degraded, and afterward executed to death: *According to the auncient Lawes.*

For loſſe of an Enſigne to the enemy by negligence of chief Officers.

If the Enſigne or Banner of a Company or Legion, was wonne by the enemy, through the negligence and faint-heartedneſſe of the Chiefes, Sergeants and Corporals of the Squadron: thoſe Souldiours were preſently diſarmed, and puniſhed with death before the other Officers: *Titus Liuius* in his ſecond Booke, maketh the Conſull *Appius* to ſpeake in this manner. *Vbi Arma, vbi Signa eſſent ſingulis regitans, inermes Milites, Signo amiſſo, Signiferos, Virgis cæſos, Securi percuſſit.* He cauſed all

all their Heads to be ſmitten off, after they had bin firſt well beaten and whipt naked with Roddes.

For tranſgreſſing the Generals command by a Captaine.

If a Captaine had tranſgreſſed, or contemned the Generals command; it valued his life, as being certaine to looſe his head. *Tacitus*, in the foureteenth Booke of his Annales, ſaith. *Pœnius Poſthumus Præfectus Caſtrorum ſecundæ Legionis, cognitis Quartadecimanorum, Viceſimanorumque Proſperis rebus, quia pari gloriâ Legionem ſuam fraudauerat, admiſeratque contra ritum Militiæ* Iuſſa Ducis, *Seipſum gladio tranſegit.* He killed himſelfe with his owne Sword, to auoide the ſhame of an exemplary death, moſt certaine and aſſured for Captaines of Bands, that were diſobedient to their Generall. So the Conſul *Appius* in *Titus Liuius*, at the paſſage before alleadged, *Centuriones Duplicarioſque qui reliquerant Ordines, ad Palum deligatos, Virgiſque cæſos, Securi percuſſit.*

The manner of beheading among the *Romans*

Before they were put to death, they had their bodies tornes with ſtripes; ſo we learne of *Polybius* in his Politickes. And for cutting off the Head, the cuſtome vſed among the *Romans*, was to make a pit in the ground, whereinto the guiltie offender deſcended, and there was his head ſmitten off, ſtanding vpright, and not kneeling on his knees: as *Tacitus* noateth in the fifteenth Booke of his Annales, ſpeaking concerning the death of the Tribune *Seuerius Flauius*.

For riot or ſedition in the Campe.

Such as were the Authours of any vproare, riot or ſedition in the Campe; were brought before the Generall of the Armie, his Lieutenant, or ſome one of the Tribunes, who aſcending vp on the Tribunall, ſummoned the Soldiours to an Oration; and after the accuſed perſons were heard to ſpeake in their own defences, and found to be faultie: the Tribune ſmote them with the end of his riding Wand, or with a Rod made of the Vine Swiches. Which being thus done, the whole multitude of the Souldiours fell furiouſly on thoſe Mutiners, whom they wounded and ſmote with Stones and Staues, vntill they left them ſtarke dead on the ground. This is auouched by the *Roman*, *Cornelius Tacitus* in his Annales. *Stabant Legiones pro Concione, diſtrictis gladys. Reus in ſuggeſtu per Tribunum oſtendebatur. Si Nocentem adclamauerant, præceps datus trucidebatur; & gaudebat cædibus Miles, tanquam ſemet abſolueret.*

Puniſhment of mutiners in the Campe.

Quintus Curtius, in the Life of *Alexander* the Great, the ſixt Booke; and *Arrianus* vpon the ſame ſubiect, writing of ſuch Mutiners, ſay, that they were beaten down with Staues and Stones. *Omnes à Nichomachanominati, more patrio, datо ſigno, Saxis obruti ſunt.* Such was the cuſtome among the *Greekes*, wherein the *Macedonians* alſo were partakers. And, with the ſame kinde of vengeance the *Greekes* puniſhed Traitours, that fell off, and tooke part with the enemy. *Proditores, Signorumque Deſertores Saxis obruebantur*, ſo ſay the ſame Hiſtorians.

Puniſhment of traiterous ſouldiers.

The Auncient *Romaines* drew them in pieces with foure Horſes, as *Titus Liuius* telleth vs in his Hiſtory, ſpeaking of *Metius Suffetius*; and the Amorous Poet.

Sic doluit Metius, tunc cum in contraria verſos,
Vltores habuit proditionis Equos,

Scipio the *Affrican*, called the Great, hauing ſubdued the Citie of *Carthage*; faſtened all the *Romaine* Soldiours found therein, to Croſſes with foure Nayles. And as for the Latine Auxiliaries, he commanded all their heads to be ſmitten off; becauſe both the one and other, had rancked themſelues with the contrary ſide.

How *Scipio* puniſhed ſuch offenders.

The other *Scipio* commanded ſuch offenders, to haue their bodies torne with Whippes in ſight of the people. And as an ordenary kinde of puniſhment, after they had bin whipt naked with Roddes; they were throwne downe from the *Tarpeian* Rocke. Which kinde of death, the wife *Seneca* gaue a proper name vnto, tearming it, *Militare Supplicium*; in his firſt Booke of Anger, and the ſixt Chapter.

Puniſhment of a cowardly Legion.

If any Cohort or Legion (through cowardiſe of courage) fled from before the enemy, or elſe grew into mutinie, to make it ſelfe a Band apart: the rigour obſerued by the auncient *Romans* was ſuch, that they all periſhed by the Sword. *Legio vniuerſa quæ Rhegium occupauerat, obſeſſa, deditione facta, Securi percuſſa eſt*, ſaith *Titus Liuius* in his fifteenth Booke.

Among the *Romaines*, Soldiours grew fit for enroulement, when they had attained

The enrouling of *Roman* Soldiors.

to the Age of seauenteene yeares. Before, to gaine the faire title of Exempt, they were bound to make faction during sixteene yeares, and to remaine foure other yeares in the Campe, exempted from the labours of Warre, which extended to all extremity. So that at the end of twentie yeares, they then enioyed all exemptions: to be licensed, and recompenced with Lands and Seigneuries for them and their posterity: So saith *Aulus Gellius*, in the eighteenth Chapter of his *Atticke Nights*. These distributions of Lands and Seigneuries, giuen to the *Veterans*, that is to say, to the old Soldiours, exempted from the Souldiours Cassocke (as we say at *Paris*) were ordered and stiled by diuers names: as namely Parishes, decimated Fields, by the Noble Historian *Tacitus* called *Agri Decumates*, and Lands of Lot or deuision, as we haue formerly obserued in the discourse of our Salique Lawes. So the Poet noateth for the fruite of the Ciuill warre, that the grounds and Lands of *Cremona*, were distributed to the old Soldiours, who had warred for *Augustus*, against the Chiefe pertakers *Antonius* and *Lepidus*. And those Lands being not sufficient to recompence the *Veteranes*; *Mantua* (his owne Countrey) serued as a supplement of succour, and was annexed to *Cremona* by right of neighbourhood.

Mantua vae miseræ nimium Vicina Cremonæ.

Of Lands distributed to old Soldiours.

Now, these old Soldiours being Licentiats; all the rest of their life time enioyed Military Honors and Priuiledges, hauing (before their retreate) Letters Patents giuen them of Ennobling by the Emperor, to testifie what good Seruices they had done for the Common-wealth.

Of such old Soldiours as were ennobled by the Emperour.

The Infamous *Mission*, was when the Cassheere was giuen to Legions and Cohortes *Ob male nauatam operam*, for hauing carried themselues cowardly in the Warre. And to such Casheerde Companies command was giuen, to beare no more Armes vpon paine of death: And if they were Horsemen, neuer to mount on Horsebacke againe. The Emperour *Galba* comming to the Empire, by the death of the impious and wicked *Nero*: decimated the *Prætorian* Guards, casheered a part of them, and made Foote-Soldiours of Horsemen. The Horse belonging to one of those Knights, followed (step by step) after his dismounted Maister, and would not leaue him, to serue any other. The Maister gaue him a stroake with his Sword, and afterward wounded himselfe cruelly, so that the Horse and Maister dyed both together.

Concerning Casheered Captaines.

There was yet another punishment vnder the *Romaine* Emperours, ordained for Traitors; which was with Fire, burning them aliue: As we learne by the Law, *Si quis aliquid*, at the first Paragraph *De Pœnis*, at the *Digest*, and in the Law *Proditores. D. de re Militari.*

The bloody Law of Decimation.

And as for Decimation, it was two cruel and extreame a rigor, to cut the throates of a whole Legion, which consisted (as we haue said in the first Booke of Officers, belonging to the Crowne of *France*) of fiue thousand and sixe hundred Foote-Soldiours, and three hundred men on Horse-backe. And yet neuertheless, wee haue obserued the exemption thereof, in that Armie of *Thebes*, vnder the *Order of Gall.*

The mildest kinde of Decimation.

The very mildest course was that of Decimation, that is to say, when one Souldiour was taken out of ten (as it fell to his Lot) and so put to death: when oftentimes the Lot lighted on the innocent, who yet notwithstanding, passed the Pikes, as *Tacitus* affirmeth in his Annales, the foureteenth Booke. *At quidem insontes peribunt? Nam ex fuso Exercitu, cum Decimus quisque Fuste feritur, etiam Strenui sortiuntur. Habet aliquid ex iniquo omne malum exemplum, quod contra singulos, utilitate publica rependitur.* And so in *Titus Liuius*, the Consull *Appius* caused the heads to be cut off, of Captaines and principall members in the *Romaine* Armie, and Decimated the Companies of Soldiours. *Cetera multitudo Sorte Decimus quisque ad Supplicium Lecti.*

The two Gates of the *Roman* Armie.

Vulgar and common it was, that in the Campe of the *Romaines* there were two Gates or Doores, the one called *Prætorian*, and the other *Decumane*, which was that whereby the Souldiours came forth, after they had bin *Decimated* before the *Prætor*, in the Tent or Pauillion of the Generall of the Armie, *Ante Principia*, where were

were kept the Military Banners and Ensignes. They were drawne violently out of the Campe, by this Gate *Decumane*, and on the bancke of a ditch had their heads smitten off. *Polybius*, in the sixt Booke of his Pollitickes, baptiseth this *Decimation* with the *Greeke* name Δεκα τλαν howbeit oftentimes by way of commiseration, they came to *Decimate* the twentieth Souldiour, and sometimes the hundred man.

The first executer of so bloudy a ordenance.

Appius Claudius, was the first Generall of the *Romaine* Armie, that did first put in execution so cruell and bloudy an Ordenation. For, as concerning the *Greekes*, it is very vncertaine who was the first Inuenter. We vnderstand indeede by *Seneca*, in the twentieth Chapter of his third Booke of Anger, that the King of the *Persians Cambyses* conducting an Armie, was brought to such extreamitie through want of Victuals: that he was enforced to *Decimate* the Soldiours, who should haue foode, and leaue the rest hunger-starued to the death.

This cruelty after vsed by the *Romaine* Emperours.

The *Romaine* Emperours haue made proofe too often of this cruell punishment: As did *Augustus*, by the report of *Suetonius* in his Life, the foure and twentieth Chapter: *Cohortes, si quæ cessissent loco Decimatas Ordeo pauit. Centuriones statione deserta, itidem vt Manipulares Capitali animaduersione puniuit; pro cetero delictorum genere varijs ignominijs affecit; vt* Stare *per totum diem iuberet ante Prætorium, interdum* Tunicatos, Distinctosque, *&c.*

By *Caius*, the Noble Historian *Tacitus*, in the first Booke of his Annales saith: *Decimum quemque ignominiosa Cohortis Sorte Ductos fuste necat.*

By *Galba*, the same Author in the first Booke of his Histories, saith. *Horror animum subit, quoties recordor seralem interitum, & hanc solam Galbæ Victoriam cum in oculis Vrbis,* Decumari deditos iuberet, *quos deprecantes in Fidem acceperat.*

Titus Maister of the Horse vnder *Piso* the Consull.

Valerius Maximus, in the second Booke and second Chapter of his Antiquities, obserueth the Historie of *Titus*, Maister of the *Romaine* Horsemen (vnder the Consull *Piso*) who suffering himselfe to be inuested, surprized, and shut vp in *Sicilie* by the Fugitiues, to whom he cowardly deliuered vp his Armes: was iustly sentenced with this punishment.

Thrust out of the Trench and Rampier.

Eum Consul Toga *lacinijs abscisis amictum*, Distinctaque Tunica *indutum*, Nudis pedibus *à Mane Noctem vsque*, Ad Principia *per omne tempus Militiæ adesse iussit.* It was not enough to haue his life saued, because it was couered with all shame and ignominie, farre worse to be endured then a thousand deaths: but he must be excluded out of the Trench and Rampier, without any Tent or Pauillion, exposed to the iniuries of all times, and haue for nourishment nothing else but Barley Bread onely.

To be left without Garment, and in a Cassocke onely, was (among the *Romans*) a noate of infamie, and the marke or Symbole, of being bereft both of goods and honor. *Summum dedecus Toga priuari apud.*

Romanos rerum Dominos, gentemque togatam.

The manner of pronouncing the sentence of death.

Because, before pronouncing the sentence of ciuill death, against a man accused of any crime: He that gouerned or presided in the Counsell, after he had balloted the Iudges opinions, and counted the most voyces concluding on death; if he were a Senatour, he was despoyled of his Scarlet Roabe, and the Sentence pronounced, *In Laticlauio.* If he were a Knight, or a Plebeian; then of his Cassocke. This Ceremonie of taking away the Roabe, or the Cloake or Cassocke by verdict of the Iudge, was the Preiudication or fore-iudgement, of losse of life and goods which fell to the Exchecker, if the partie accused died not before the sentence of death was pronounced. In which case, during the continuance of the *Roman* Common-wealth, Confiscation had no power, no more then vnder the State of the Emperors, for such as either by their command, or else in regard of feare, imposed death vpon themselues; saued their goods to their posteritie. Which *Tacitus* called *Præmium festinandi.* *nata Mortis*, and (by his custome and phrase) written *Pretium festinandi.*

Concerning the death of *Caius Licinius Macer.*

We learne further concerning this auncient obseruation, from the same *Valerius Maximus*, in the ninth Booke and twelfth Chapter of his Antiquities, speaking of the death of *Caius Licinius Macer*, a learned *Roman* Ciuill Lawyer, accused of con-

cession

cussion or priuie extortion, in which action presided *Cicero* the Oratour, in these words.

Caius Licinius Macer vir Prætorius, Calui Pater, repetundarum reus, dum Sententia diriberentur, in Menianum conscendit: Siquidem cum Marcum Ciceronum, qui id Iudicium cogebat, Prætextam Ponentem *vidisset, misit ad eum qui diceret,* Se non Damnatum, sed reum perijsse, nec sua bona Hastæ subijcit posse. *Ac protinus Sudario, quod forte in manu habebat, Ore, & Faucibus coartatis, incluso spiritu,* Pœnam Morte *præcurrit. Cognitare, Cicero de eo nihil pronontiauit.*

The Office of Diribitorem among the *Romaines.*

The *Romaines* called *Diribitorem*, the man that in iudgements criminall, distributed to each Senatour three Ballots and Tablets of Iuorie. He threw into the Balloting Boxe, that which he pleased, and according to his owne iudgement. That of Absolution was marked with the Letter A. That of Condemnation, with the Letter C. And the third with these two Letters N.L. *Non liquet*, Shall be more amply informed. In auncient times, there was nothing giuen to the Iudges, but two Flint Stones, the one White, the marke or Symbole of Absolution, and the other Blacke, the noate of Condemnation.

Mos erat Antiquis, Atris, Niueisque lapillis
His damnare Reos, illis absoluere culpa.

A Custome of the *Romaines* deriued from the *Greekes.*

So speaketh *Ouid* in his *Metamorphosis.* A Custome deriued from the *Greekes* by the *Romaines*, as *Plutarke* witnesseth in his Liues, and elsewhere, saying, that in criminall matters, a man is not to trust his Mother, for feare least (thorow negligence or ouersight) she cast the blacke Beane instead of the White. And that which is reported by *Valerius Maximus*, in the Hiſtory of *Titus* and *Piso*, in these tearmes *Discincta Tunica, Nudis Pedibus*, is very well worth the obseruation, and fitly serueth to this subiect. Because in foure words was contained the auncient *French* Prouerbe: *Of making Honorable Amends, Vnguirt, and without Hose or Shooes*, that is to say, *Nuds Pieds, & sans Ceinture*, whereof here you may behold some Examples.

A French prouerbe of long obseruation.

The Aduocate for the Children of *Monsieur Lewes* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, wickedly murdred by *Iohn*, Duke of *Bourgongne* (as hath bin declared in the *Order of Orleans*) concluded, that for so execrable an assassinate, the said *Iohn* of *Bourgongne* stood bound, to appeare in person at *Paris* vpon a certaine day, in the Castell of the *Louure*, or some such other place as should please the King to appoint, and that vpon a Scaffold, prepared for the purpose: *The people of Paris being present, the said* Iohn *of* Bourgongne, *being without Girdle, and bare headed, kneeling before Madam of Orleans and her Children*, accompanied with such persons as they pleased. He did there declare and publiquely confesse with a loud voyce; that maliciously and treacherously, he had procured the said Lord of *Orleans* to be murdered, by hatred, enuie and couetousnesse, and not vpon any other occasion. This is thus reported by *Enguerran de Monstrellet.*

The publique confession of the Duke of *Bourgongne.*

It was a most ignominious thing to be without a Girdle, as being a manifest marke and noate of infamie, the vse and practise whereof was obserued, as well in matters Ciuile, as Criminall, for seizure and abandoning of goods, the repudiation of some hereditament, and likewise for making honorable amends.

The open submission of the *Brugelins.*

The same *Monstrellet* informeth vs, that the *Brugelins*, being brought into a very good order to the number of about foureteene hundred men, came and presented themselues before their Duke *Phillip* of *Bourgongne*, second of the name: *All and euery one of them bare headed, bare footed, and without Girdles.*

Likewise, that in the Moneth of September, the yeare of Grace, One thousand foure hundred threescore and fiue, a *Norman*, that had called the *Parisians Bourgongnons*; was condemned with an ignominious sentence, to be performed before the Hostell of the Citie, in the place called *Le Greue*, and before the Aduocate for the Merchants of the same Citie. *His Head bare, vngirded*, and holding a lighted Torch in his hand. To speake there openly, that he had falsely and maliciously lyed, in speaking those words, humbly entreating, that they would be pleased to pardon and forgiue him. Which being done, his tongue was boared through with an hot burning Iron, and he for euer banished out of the Kingdome.

The punishment of a *Norman* for abusing the *Parisians.*

For

For renuntiation and repudiation of Inheritances, the same *Monstrellet* furnisheth vs with a double example.

For renouncing inheritances.

Monsieur Phillip of *France*, tearmed the *Hardie*, the first of the foure last Dukes of *Bourgongne*, dyed at the beginning of the yeare One thousand foure hundred and foure. *Margaret* of *Henault* his Widdow, renounced the moueable goods of the deceased, laying vpon the Hearse-Cloth, that couered the dead body of her Husband; *His Keyes, His Purse, and his Girdle*, and required to haue an Act thereof from the Notaries, to stand and auaile in her defence, against the Creditours to the deceased Duke her Husband.

Leauing goods left by an indebted Husband.

As much auoucheth the same Author, concerning the Widdow to *Waleran* of *Luxembourg*, Count of S. *Paul*. And this is the interpretation of our auncient *French* Prouerbe; *Hurling the Keyes vpon the Graue, so soone as it is couered.* That is to say; *Renouncing them to the Communaltie*, and to *Succession.*

Three vertues in a worthy wife.

Declaring hereby, that like as the Husband, at bringing his wife into his House, giueth and deliuereth to her his Keyes, and by that action, acknowledgeth her as a Companion in his communitie (so long as she hath three things alwayes before her eyes; namely, the feare of God, loue of her Husband, and care of his Household charge; the infallible noates and markes of an honorable Wife) which our *Salique* Law calleth *Partem Conlaborationis*; So in the same manner, after the death of her Husband, ouer-charged with debts and payments; the Wife leauing all to the Communitie: *She throweth her Keyes vpon the Graue, with her halfe Girdle.*

Of leauing goods to Creditours.

To be without a Girdle, is at this present day among vs (according as it was in times past) the Symbole and marke of cession and forsaking goods, and for a man to leaue his Girdle to his Creditours; is a signe of cession, made by Letters granted from the Princes fauour, who protecteth the bodies of his Subiects from imprisonment, when they abandon and leaue their goods to their Creditours, whereof they make publique declaration. This Custome came from the auncient *Gaules*, as we are enstructed by *Suidas*; because in former dayes, the Girdle was the Symbole of Riches and abounding in goods. And from thence, in a quite contrary sense, forsaking and leauing the Girdle, declared neede and pouertie.

The manner of parting with goods at *Rome.*

At *Rome*, this cession and forsaking of goods, was done before the principall gate of the Capitall, vpon an exalted Stone, whereon was engrauen the figure of a Lyon. Vpon which Stone. *The Cessionarie or parter from his goods, standeth bare headed, and without his Girdle*, crying with a loud voyce, *Cedo Bonis*, to the end, that the *Romaine* people hauing heard it with vnderstanding; should be forewarned, of medling any more with men of the like weake condition. This publication of *Cedo Bonis* being thus made by the Cessionarie, he commeth downe from the Stone, and his breeches being put downe, his naked shame is there discouered, and openly whipt with Roddes.

The Stone of Scandale and Infamie.

Whereupon, this Theater of Marble was named *The Stone of Scandale and infamie*, and from thence forward, he that made this cession, was published intestable, vnworthy and vncapable of bearing any testimonie: the light whereof we receiue from the Oratour, in his second *Philippicke*. For this benefit of cession (which the Emperour *Iustinian* in the eight Law, calleth *Auxilium miserabile*. C. was introduced and put in vse by *Iulius Cæsar*, in the time of *Cicero* the Oratour.

Cruell and bloudy Creditours.

Before those dayes, and in the time of the Common-wealths springing, the *Romaines* had the libertie, to take their debtors that could not make payment, and to dismember them in pieces, each man taking a piece, and so paying himselfe with part of his flesh, according as it is written by *Aulus Gellius*. And the Law of the twelue Tables allowed and permitted this barbarous Custome, to keepe men from becomming debters, and make them carefull House-keepers. Afterward it was changed into another forme, more mercifull in outward appearance, by reducing such knowne vnpayable debtors into Slauerie and Seruitude; which wee see was put in practise euen among the *Iewes*, as we reade in the fourth Chapter of the fourth Booke of the Kings. *Ecce Creditor venit, vt tollat duos Filios meos, ad seruiendum sibi.* *Behold, the Creditour is come, to take vnto him my two Sonnes, to be bond-men.* A Custome

The Sons of Debtors made Bondmen.

like-

likewise vsed by the *French* our Auncestours (according to the testimonie of Noble *Tacitus* in his *Germania*) who had among them a quite contrary forme for cession of goods, and repudiation of inheritances, then that of forsaking the Girdle, and casting the Keyes vpon the Graue.

Lands held by rent or ignoble seruices.

Because taking possession of Lands in Soccage, were made by tradition, and deliuery of a Switch, or Rodde of an Elle in length: and in want thereof, a Rush, or a Corne-Straw. From whence this forme of possession, was tearmed *Infestucatio*, deliuering of the Rush.

Inuesting and seizing a Seruant by gift of a Ring.

But if it were in Fiefe, or Free-hold, the Prince and Soueraigne Lord (vnder our first Monarches) inuested and seized his Seruant by a Ring, which he put vpon his Finger, the roundell whereof was marked with such an Armes, as hee would haue his Seruant to beare. And very oftentimes, this seizement was made by deliuery of a Rush or Straw, whereof the *Romaines* had deriued the practise, as taken from the *Gaules*, according to the obseruation of *Aulus Gellius*, in his last Booke and ninth Chapter, vpon the subiect *De Ciuilibus, & Festucarijs Actionibus*, whereof he discoursed very effectually, being of the *Gaules* Nation.

And as the taking of possession was noated with the word of Infestucation, *Infestucationem Dominicam*: so the same Cession of goods, and forsaking of inheritances, was branded with the tearme of *Exfestucation*, by breaking the Rush, or Corne-blade of Straw.

Publication of a mans insufficiency for paying his debts.

This course or forme was taken from our *Salique* Law, at the Title *De Chrenethruda*, that is to say, *De la Cession*. He which knew himselfe to be vnable of making payment; at the Law-day would present in the Court of Iustice twelue honest and sufficient men, free from scandale or reproach, to beare witnesse of his insufficiency and pouerty, with a faithfull declaration, of all his goods and faculties, in the presence of all his Creditours, and kinred that were to succeede him to the third generation, as well by Father and Mother, as Collaterall.

A mans electi- on of himselfe.

Hauing made his open publication, he entred into his House, and from the foure corners of the Planchers, gathered vp so much dust as filled his left hand, and setting his foote on the step or threshold of the doore (called in our *Salique* Law *Durpellum*) and holding the Ring thereof in his right hand, with his other hand that held the dust which he had gathered vp; he threw it vpon his owne shoulders, and likewise vpon the neerest kinsman he had. Then stripping himselfe into his Shirt, vngirt, bare legged, and by helpe of a Staffe, he lept vpon a hedge or dunghill; giuing his Creditours and kinred to vnderstand by this Ceremony, that now he was worth iust nothing, and when he made that leape, all his goods and liuelode lept away from him. *In Camisia discinctus, & discalceatus, cum palo in manu supra sepem Salire debet.* Such was the forme of Cession, and parting from goods in criminall matters, that is to say, in case of killing any one.

In criminall cases.

But in Ciuill matters, the case was otherwise gouerned. The debtor caused all his Creditours to be called together, and in their presence he declared; that he had abandoned and giuen ouer all his goods to them. In signe and assurance whereof, he layed a Hollie-wand, or else a Corne-straw vpon the Threshold of the doore. In case of such a resignation, it was called *Chrenechruda per Durpillum, & Festucam; Cession by the Roade and Threshold.* But this custome is abolished, and the former is retained in Ciuill occasions, in most parts of *France*: As in the Custome of *Bourbunnois*, the threescore and twelfth Article; *Of Auuergne*, the fourth Article; and *De la March* the threescore and fourth Article. In which places, the surrender or Cession is made, by being *Vngirt, Bare-foote* and *bare legde*. And hereof descended and came our auncient Prouerbes: *Tender, and giue vp the Girdle; And leaue off Hose, Shooes and Bootes.* But this last is ordenarily vnderstood, to signifie the death of some debter. So leauing this Argument, let vs come to the case of Degradations.

Proceeding in ciuil occasions.

Degradation vsed among the *Romans*.

Among the *Romaines* they began to degrade Souldiours and men of warre; by taking from them their Girdle and Sword. An Act which made them as Villaines and Peazants all the rest of their life: According as is said in the second Law, at the Paragraphe, *Ignominia. Vers. Sed & si, de his qui not. inf.* at the *Digest.* And this is the same

same which we haue formerly obserued from *Curopalates*, in his Tract concerning the Offices of the Court of *Constantinople*.

How this Degradation is performed in *France*.

The Ciuill Lawyers call it *Exauctorare*, that is to say, *Insignia Militaria detrahere*, which by vsing but one word in *French*, we tearme *Degrader*. In regard that this Degradation is performed by seuerall degrees, taking away the Armes piece by piece, from them that they will haue to be degraded. Among vs, the auncient Ceremonies, vsed in the Degradation of a Knight or Gentleman, were as followeth.

The degrees of proceeding in the cause.

After that, by command from the King, enstruction was giuen for the Processe, against such a one as had committed a Fellonious act in his owne person; the case being censured before the auncient Knights of the Court; being there assembled to the number of fiue and twenty, or thirty: they condemned the partie accused to losse of life, according to the importance and consequence of the Crime, either Treason, Intelligence, or Fellonie. And before they proceeded to the execution of their sentence and Iudgement of death; the condemned person was to be degraded of his Nobilitie, and the same ought to be done in this manner.

The true Order and forme of Degration, according as it is performed in France.

Preparation of two Scaffolds.

FIrst of all, two Scaffolds were erected in some faire and conspicuous place, well engirt or defenced with Lists and Barres. The one was couered and adorned with goodly Tapistries, Chaires, and Seates, for the Knights, Iudges, and other their Officers.

The other was much more highly aduanced, as appointed for the condemned Knight, the Kings, Heralds, and Pursuiuants of Armes. At both the ends were placed two Formes or Benches, for twelue Priests to be seated on them.

In the middest of this Scaffold standeth the condemned Knight, armed at all points, and his Shield or Escutcheon of Armes (emblazoned according to Art) fastened before him, vpon some conuenient materiall belonging to the Scaffold.

After Proclamation made by one of the Kings, or Heraulds of Armes, with a loud intelligible voyce, concerning Sentence and Iudgement of death, pronounced on the condemned Knight standing there present; the Priests begin to sing aloud the Vigils and Prayers for the dead, so farre as to *Placebo*, and then proceede on to the end of *Misere mei Deus*.

Degradation of the condemned Knight.

At the ending of each Psalmes, after *Requiem eternam*, the Priests make a pause and silence, during which time, the Kings and Heraulds of Armes doe begin to degrade the condemned Knight, despoyling him of all his Armour, beginning with his Helmet, it being the Armour for his Head. And at euery Stanza, the Herauld that holdeth the part taken from the despoyled Knight, crieth with a loud voyce:

This is the Helmet and Bassinet of such a man (naming him by his name, Sirname, Seigneuries and qualitie) Knight, attainted, and conuicted of Fellonie, Intelligence, Treason, Incendie, &c. (according to the crime) and therefore condemned and sentenced to such and such punishment.

This is the Chaire of Gold, and Collar of his Order; this is the Gorget; the Coate of Armes, his Girdle and Sword, his guilt Spurres, his Gauntlets: And these are the seuerall parcels of his Armour, naming them piece by piece, as they are taken off from his body, which is not done, but at the ending of euery Psalme.

When they come to speake of his Shield, there fastened before him on the Scaffold, one of the Pursuiuants, turning it topsie turuie diuers times, at last proclaimeth with a loud voyce: This is the Shield and Blazon of Armes, of this Traytour

tour and disloyall Knight here present; and then a Herauld breaketh it in three pieces with a Hammer.

After the last Psalme of Prayers for the dead, the Priests arise from their Seates, and circkling round the condemned Knight; lay their hands on his head, singing the hundred and nineteenth Psalme of *Dauid*, beginning with these words: *Deus laudem meam ne tacueris*. In which Psalme are contained the imprecations and maledictions, threatned against the execrable Traytour *Iudas*, and such as he was.

And like as the Squires, that would receiue the Order of Knighthood, in the Euening before the Ceremonie, were Bathed and washed, and spent the whole night in some Church, deuoutly on their knees in Prayer, that they might be the better prepared in soule and body, for worthy receiuing the Order of Knighthood.

So the Psalme of maledictions being ended, one of the Pursuiuants of Armes, holdeth a Siluer and Guilt Basin, full of luke-warme water, ouer the head of the Knight there present: And the King of Armes demandeth with a loud voyce three times, the name, Sirname and quality of the despoyled Knight; whereto the Pursuiuant hauing repeated his name three times, as thereby answering to the demand: the Herauld or King of Armes replieth; that he is deceiued, and that he whom he had so often named, was a Traytour, disloyall, periured, and a man of false faith. And to let the people perceiue that hee spake nothing but truth, he turneth himselfe to the Iudges, Knights; and then the Register of the Order causeth him to pronounce, that by plurality of voyces of the Knights there present, the man now in question, and whom the Pursuiuant had named three seuerall times, had bin already openly proclaimed, to be vtterly vnworthy of any more calling by the name of a Knight; but in regard of his vices and foule offences, was banished from their frequencie and company, degraded of Nobilitie, and condemned to punishment. Which being pronounced, the King or Herauld of Armes poureth the Basin of water, vpon the head of the despoyled Knight.

This last Act done, the Knights Iudges descended from their Scaffold, cloathed in Roabes and Hoods of mourning, and walke in that manner to the neerest Church.

The degraded person likewise descended from his Scaffold, but neither by Ladder or Stayres as he went vp: but is let downe by a Cord, fastened vnder his arme-pits, and laid vpon a durtie wheele-barrow, couered with a Cloath for semice of the dead, and so brought to the Church where the Knights attended for him. The Priests sing the Funerall Recommendums, with prayers appointed for the dead, ouer the miserable degraded Knight: who is afterward deliuered to the Iudge Royall, and then to the Hangman for execution to death, according to order of Law appointed: Except it shall please the King to grant grace, either by Banishment for a time, or else for euer out of the Kingdome.

After this execution, the King of Armes proclaimeth publiquely, and with a loud Voyce; that the Children and descendants of the degraded Knight, are Ignoble and Peazants, vnworthy and vncapable of bearing Armes; nor to be seene or appeare at Iousts, Tourneys, in Armes, Courts, or meetings of Kings, Princes, Lords and Gentlemen; on paine of being whipt and beaten naked with Rods, like infamous villaines and wretches as they were.

Vnder the flourishing State of the *Romaines*, the braue Knights and valiant Captaines that had carried themselues in faire dutie against the enemy; were honored with Triumph. It was lawfully permitted them, to decke and beautifie Temples and publique places with their Armes, and those which they had wonne from the enemy, in signes of Trophees.

Barbarico Postes Auro, Spoliisque superbi.
Multaque præterea sacris in Postibus Arma,
Captiui pendent Currus, curuæque Secures,
Et Cristæ Capitum, & Portarum ingentia claustra,
Spiculaque, Clypeique:

So speaketh the Poet *Virgil*, in the seauenth Booke of his *Eneidos*: And *Claudian* in *Eutropium*.

Festinus

Festinas vrgete Manus, meus ecce paratur
Ad bellum Stilico, qui me, de more, Tropæis
Ditat, & hostiles suspendit in arbore Cristas.

Which they put in practise the rather, to serue as a memory of their boldnesse and courage, to their descent and posterity. An encouragement to following times

In like manner, the Armes of Cowards and crauenly minded Knights, were battered and broken by the hand of Iustice. And among the *Romaines*, the very last office of all other, was denied to them, which is buriall, in the Monument or Sepulcher of their Ancestours. Their bodies were throwne into a Ditch, in some filthy blinde by-place, without any Ceremony whatsoeuer: according to the testemonie of *Polybius*, in the first Booke of his Pollitickes. The reward of Cowards and Crauens.

Their Armes, Images, Standards and Statues, ran the very same fortune of infamy, as their bodies did, being trailing in the publique streetes, and cast into noysome sinkes and Laystals.

Descendunt Statuæ, Rastemque sequuntur.

So *Iuuenall* telleth vs.

The Noble *Romaine* Historian, in the third Booke of his Annales, speaking of them belonging to *Piso*, dragged along the Streetes to the [a] *Gemonian Scala*, by the basest kinde of people: their Armes and Statues were likewise bruised and beaten into small pieces. [a] A place in *Rome*, where condemned men were cast downe.

Frangenda miseram funestat imagine Gentem.

Obserued by *Iuuenall*.

Senatus Scalas adferri, Clypeosque, & Imagines eius coram detrahi, & affigi Solo iubet. So speaketh *Suetonius*, in the Life of *Domitian*.

Moreouer, it was a very capitall crime and offence, to keepe the portraits and Figures of Traitours and perfidious men; as we learne of the Oratour in his Action for *Caius Rabirius*, where he saith, that *Sextus Titius* was condemned to grieuous punishment, because he had kept by him, the Table and Portraiture of *Lucius Saturninus*. The Pictures of offenders not to be kept

We will conclude this Chapter, with a notable obseruation of our Auncient *French*, who kept it for a custome, that if a Gentleman were condemned to death, for hauing troubled the State, and the repose of his Prince; or robbing on the High-wayes; violation of Wiues or Virgins; thieuing on Passengers; vndoing an honest man, by burning his Grandges and Garners, with such like other actions, farre vnfit for a Noble or generous minde: As they conducted him to his doomed punishment, they would make him to carrie a Dogge on his shoulders, round about the neighbouring parts, where he had exercised his thefts and pilfferies. An ancient custome obserued by the old *French*.

Otho of *Austria*, Bishop of *Frisinghen*, writeth (much to this purpose) in the Life of the Emperour *Fredericke Barbarossa*, the eleauenth Booke and eight and twentieth Chapter, that the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, *Harman*, being attainted and conuicted of Fellonie, with ten of his Complices: made honorable amends according to the Law. They were led and conducted a *Germaine* Mile, each of them carrying a Dogge vpon his shoulders. And obseruing this auncient Custome, he saith. *Vetus consuetudo apud* Francos *& Suenos inoleuit, vt si quis Nobilis, Ministerialis, vel Colonus. Perduellionis, Prædæ, aut Incendij Reus inuentus fuerit, antequam Morte puniatur, ad confusionis suæ ignominiam,* Nobilis Canem; *Ministerialis Sellam; Rusticus Aratri rotam de Comitatu gestare cogatur.* The History of Count Palatine of the *Rhine*.

The Gentleman was constrained to carrie a Dogge on his shoulders: The Officer, and Chamberlaine a Chayre or Stoole doubling: And the Countrey labouring man, a Wheele of his Plough or Cart, and so to walke from one Village to another; to the end, that the beholders should know their seuerall vocations in this punishment, before they suffered execution. Punishment of offenders for example.

The Poet *Guntherus Ligurinus*, in the life of the same Emperour *Fredericke Barbarossa*, the fift Booke, hath well remembred this auncient Custome.

Quippe vetus mos est, vt si quis Rege remoto,
Sanguine, vel Flamma, vel seditionis aperta.
Turbine, seu crebris Regnum vexare rapinis

Audeat, ante grauem quam fuso ſanguine pœnam.
Excipiat, ſi Liber erit, de more vetuſto
Impoſitum Scapulis ad contigui Comitatus
Cogatur per rura Canem *confinia ferre.*

A Hiſtory alleadged out of *Suggerus*, Abbot of S. *Denys*.

Suggerus, Abbot of Saint *Denys* in *France*, in the Life of our King *Lewes le Gros*, ſixt of the name, ſpeaking of the Aſſaſſinate, committed on the perſon of the Count of *Flanders* (Sonne to *Lewes*, King of *Denmarke*, Heire to *Bauldwine*, Count of *Flanders*, Sonne to *Robert* of *Ieruſalem*) in the Church of Saint *Donatus* of *Bruges*, by one named *Burchard*, Nephew to the Prouoſt of the ſaid Church, and his Complices, ſpeaketh thus. King *Lewes le Gros*, being requeſted by his Barons, to aſſiſt them with his powerfull Arme, that Iuſtice might be done for ſuch a Fellonious fact, committed vpon the Count his Subiect and Liedge-man: gaue order to his Armies, which he had in the Field, againſt *Henry* King of *England*, and *Thibault*, Count of *Champaigne*.

Into *Flanders* they went with part of the Armie, which comming to *Bruges*, beſiedged *Burchard* and his Complices fortefied in the Church, the Tower and Caſtell of the Count, and of Saint *Donatus*. Long continuance of the Siedge, Peſtilence and Famine, conſtrained *Burchard* to ſhift for himſelfe in the night time. But being betrayed and taken, and cenſured with ſeuerity of iudgement; the King commanded, that he ſhould be bound and chained vpon an high Wheele, with his face vp towards Heauen, aliue, to be rent and torne by Rauens and rauenous Foules of the Ayre. And Soldiours marching on the ground vnderneath the Wheele, gaue a thouſand wounds to his body with their Pikes and Arrowes, whereby his life expired miſerably. Afterward, his body, being ſo maſſacred and mangled, with more holes then a ranging Siue; was throwne into a filthy ſtincking Layſtall.

The taking of *Burchard* and his death.

The Arch *Achitophell*, and prime Counceller of this horrid murder, named *Berkolde*, being likewiſe apprehended, was hanged by the Armes vpon a Croſſe Gallowes, and a Maſtiffe Dogge faſtened by him, which Dogge, as leiſurely they prickt with Darts; he ſnarled at the liuing man hanging by him, biting and tearing his face, and voyding (oftentimes) his loathſome excrements vpon it. *Furcis cum Cane ſuſpenſus, quotiens Canis percutiebatur, in eum iram retorquens, totam faciem eius maſticando deuorabat: Aliquando etiam, quod horribile dictu eſt, ſtercorabat, ſicque miſeram Vitam miſerior miſerrimo, Morte perpetua terminauit.*

The death of *Berkold*, chiefe cauſer of the murder.

Adde vnto this exemplary death, the miſerable end of *Bauldwine*, Count of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, at large declared in the precedent Booke, and thereby gather; that the auncient *French*, executing to death Traitours and Fellons, made them to ſuffer ſeuerity of the Law, carrying a Dogge vpon their necke and ſholders, for two reaſons.

The death of *Bauldwine*, Count of *Flanders*.

The firſt, as we haue ſet downe in the end of the ſecond Booke, concerning the principall Officers of the Houſe and Crowne of *France*; ſerued to make knowne to the people: that the condemned party, was of Free and Noble extraction, to whom it was permitted by the Law of his original and birth, to take his pleaſure and paſtime in hunting.

Two reaſons why the Dog was carried.

Canibus circundare Saltus.

The other reaſon was likewiſe to make manifeſt, that the Dogge being the Hieroglyphicke, Embleme and Symbole of faithfulneſſe towards his Maiſter; the Gentleman attainted and conuicted of Fellony, was expoſed to the view of all the people, as a man without Faith, and any loyaltie whatſoeuer, towards his Prince and Benefactour, and conſequently, as worthy of paine and puniſhment, as the Dogge (that now ſhamed him) deſerued to be affected.

The praiſe of the Dogge for loue to his Maiſter.

For among all creatures vnfurniſhed with reaſon, the Dogge hath not his like for loue and faithfulneſſe to his Maiſter. Infinite examples are to read, of Dogges that haue couragiouſly defended their Maiſters, or elſe haue reuenged their death, when they haue bin ſlaine or murdered in priuie places. As did the Dogge of *Pyrrhus*, and of others beſide: as is reported by *Plutarke*, and by *Aelianus* in his Naturall Hiſtorie

Titus

A very worthy and memorable Hiſtory.

Titus Sabinus, a *Romaine* Knight, being executed to the death, by the inſtigation, and to pacifie the furious rage of the bloudy *Sejanus*: his Dogge continued alwayes by to defend his body, ſo long as it was kept vpon the ground. And ſuch bread or other foode, as was giuen to the Dogge, he would bring it to the mouth of his Maiſter, as thinking thereby to feede and nouriſh him. And when the ſame dead body was throwne into *Tyber*, to ſerue as prey for the deuouring Fiſhes in that Riuer: the Dogge leapt into the water after his Maiſter, holding vp the body in his teeth, to keepe it from ſincking. And that braue Citie of the World perceiued by this act, more loue and faithfulneſſe to be in this poore creature: then appeared in men, who who vnder pretended and feigned friendſhip, had betrayed this honeſt worthy Knight.

Appio Iunio, & P. Silio Coſſ. cum animaduerteretur ex cauſa Neronis Grammatici filij in T. Sabinum, & ſeruitia eius, vnius ex iis Canem nec a carcere abigi potuiſſe, nec à Corpore receſſiſſe; Abiecto in Gradibus Gemonijs maſtos edentem Vlulatus, magnâ Populi coronâ circumſtante; ex qua cum quidam ei cibum obiecciſſet, ad os defuncti tuliſſe. Inmatu t idem in Tyberim, cadauere abiecto ſuſtentare conatus, effuſa multitudine ad ſpectandam Animalis Fidem. So ſpeaketh *Plinie* in the eight Booke and fortieth Chapter of his Naturall Hiſtorie, where the Noble Reader may haue an infinite number of the like examples.

Noble Families bearing the Dogs Surname.

I haue ſeene many Noble Families in *France*, bearing the Sirname of *Robin*, and in *Nauarre* and *Gaſcoigne* the Sirname of *Perron*, of *Peraux* & *Perrots* (all theſe names ſignifying a Dogge) who beare for their Armes *D'Azur de Sable, or de Synople, Au Robin, ou Perron*, that is to ſay, *A vne Chien gay d'Argent, tenant vne Eſpe nue de meſme.* Wherein doe ſpeake properly, this is but a *Deuiſe* and *Embleme*, whereunto is ordenarily giuen for the Soule and Legand, theſe words. *Viriliter age, & ſuſtine Domine*, deriued from the laſt Verſe of the ſeauen and twentieth Pſalme of the Royall Prophet *Dauid*. And ſo it is neuertheleſſe, that the faithfulneſſe of this creature in the ſeruice of his Maiſter, hath giuen him the authority and priuiledge, to appeare in the *Theater of Honor*; next to *Eagles, Lyons*, and *Leopards*, Armes of high deſeruing.

How the Dog knoweth his Maiſter.

This creature beareth and ſheweth ſuch loue to his Maiſter, that he knoweth him by his voyce. *Soli Dominum nouere. Ignotum quoque ſi repente veniat intelligunt: Soli nomina ſua, Soli vocem domeſticam agnoſcunt. Itinera quamuis longa meminere. Nec vlli, Præter Hominem, memoria maior.* So ſaith *Plinie* in the fore-recited paſſage.

Of *Vlyſſes* and his Dogge.

And to knit vp this diſcourſe, with a well ſpunne thred from a worthy Authour, the *Greeke* Poet *Homer* writeth, that wiſe *Vlyſſes* returning into his Iſle and Realme of *Ithaca*, after the abſence of twenty yeares, imployed in Voyages to ſtrange Prouinces, and likewiſe at the Siedge of *Troye*: was knowne of none but by his Nurſe-Mother, and his Dogge. And vpon the ſame ſubiect, this creature (for his faithfulneſſe) is fixed at the feete of Marbles and Tombes of Kings and Knights.

Car nul des Animaux ne ſert tant aux Mortels
Que le Chien *garde-Forts, garde-Parcs, garde-Hoſtels,*
Diligent Pouruoyeur, qui d'vn Nez veritable
Fournit de mets friands des grands Princes la Table.
Amy iuſqu'a la Mort. Frayeur du Loup ruze:
Pœur du craintif Larron, Veneur bien aduiſe.
Ce dict noſtre Lucreſſe, en ſa docte Semaine.

The Dogge (aboue all Creatures) fits man beſt,
To keepe his Caſtell, Parke, Houſe: All in reſt.
A nimble Purueyer, by his ſente ſtill able,
With delicates to decke a Princes Table.
A Friend to death: The wilie Woolfes affright,
And filching Thiefe: A Hunt ſman day and night.

So ſpeaketh our *Lucretius*, in his learned Weeke.

The

The Ceremonies, vvhich are to be obser. in the Exequies and Funerals of the moſt Chriſtian Kings, the Kings of *France*.

CHAP. IX.

IF they haue departed this life, out of the royall Citie of *Paris*, the Capitall of the Realme of *France*, the body is brought into the Church, and Monaſtery of *Hault Pas*, in the Suburbs of Saint *Iames*, neere vnto *Paris*, or elſe to Saint *Anthonie* of the field, according to the ſolemnity of the man, and ſtate of the Prouince, whether or from whence they are brought; but if they dye in *Paris*, they ſtirre not out of the *Louure* their Pallace royall. But we will haue no other patterne, or modell, then the example of thoſe Ceremonies, and regardable ſtate, which were performed in the pompous funerals of *Henry* the Great, of famous memory, as they were and ought to be obſerued.

King *Henry* the great was laid vpon his bed in the Cabinet of the *Louure* on Friday, the fifteenth of May, in the yeare One thouſand ſixe hundred and tenne, ſome fiue houres after noone, whither Maiſter *Henry Gondy*, Biſhop of *Paris*, firſt Confeſſour of the King and his Court, repayred (For you muſt conſider, that whereſoeuer his Maieſty is, this Diuine Ceremory and office is daily celebrated, according to the cuſtome of *Paris*, and none other) and ſo the accuſtomed Prayers for the ſoule of the dead, were ſolemnely performed, and after him the reſt of the Cardinals and Prelats reſident in *Paris* continued the ſame.

About midnight the body, was diſrobed of all apparell, and the very Shirt, and taken from the bed of the Cabinet was brought into that of the Chamber, and there reueſted a new, with a faire white Shirt, a Doublet of blacke Sattin, a night Cap of crimſon Veluet embrodered with Gold, and ſo expoſed to the View, as a ſad ſpectacle of all the Pariſien. After this on Saturday morning, within foure houres of night, the foure Orders of Friers mendicants in *Paris*, ſung day and night round about the bed their Canonicall houres, and prayers for the ſoule departed.

On Saturday, the ſixteenth day of May, in the yeare, One thouſand ſixe hundred and tenne, foure houres after high noone, the body was opened, and the entrailes taken out, and ſo encloſed in a Casket of Lead, which was conueyed into a Caroſſe, to be enterred at Saint *Denys* of *France*, the ſolemne and ordinarie burying place for the Chriſtian Kings.

The Heart was reuerently put into a great ſiluer Baſin, by *Monſier* the Prince of *Conde*, *Francis* of *Burbon*, who kiſt it all bloody as it was, and ſo after him the Princes, Lords, Knights and Gentlemen of the Court performed the like: when this Ceremonie was finiſhed, the Heart was perfumd and encloſed within another hart, arteficially made of Siluer, all guilded, and ſo deliuered by the ſaid Prince of *Conde* to the Ieſuites, at their profeſſed Colledge of Saint *Lewis*, in Saint *Anthonies* Streete in *Paris*, and by them to be tranſported to the Colledge of *Fleche* in *Anion*.

The body being orderly embaulmed, wrapped vp in many folds of Sercecloth, and bound hard with wexed rowling bands, was put into a Coffin of Cipreſſe, which was alſo encloſed in a ſtrong ſquare Cheſt of thicke wood, bound about with Iron, hauing eight Rings, and as many Hookes for the better accommodating, it to be borne vpon mens ſhoulders in the Funerall pompe; which was the charge of the Scotch Guard with white ſleeues, who were not to abandon or forſake the ſame, till it was brought to Saint *Denys*, and there ſolemnely encloſed into the Ceremonious Vault for the Coffins of their Kings. Ouer all this was a ſumptuous Herſe-cloth,

cloth, faſtned and nayled with many little blacke Nailes of blacke Veluet full of croſſes of white Sattin.

The great Chamber of the *Louure* was hung with rich tapſtry of Silke interwouen with Gold and Siluer threds, which the deceaſed King had prouided in his life time, and all the Chamber was couered vnderfoote with cloath for that purpoſe.

Afterward, the Princely body, or Beere was brought before the Chimney, and ſet vpon certaine Treſſels betweene two great croſſes; it was then couered with a large cloath of Purple Veluet *ſemy flowry* of Gold, ſo richly Embroidred that you could ſcarce ſee the ground-worke: and for the greater ſtate, it trayled three foote round about on the ground; ouer all was a ſumptuous Canopy, of the ſame *ſeme flowry* Gold fringed, ſpangled, criſpinde, and indented accordingly. In the head of the Canopy in the middle was a rich embroidery with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre* crowned with Imperiall Diadems, and compaſſed or inuironed round about with the two Orders of Saint *Michael*, and the Holy Ghoſt: As for the ornaments of cloath of Gold at this time about the Hearſe, if it be done, it is doug out of ignorance.

Berry King of Armes, in the life of *Charles* the ſeauenth, talkes of a Herſe Canopy, and ornaments of Saint *Denis* Chancell with the Church of *Paris*, of Violet or Purple Veluet *ſemy flowry* with Floure de lis of Gold without number, or limitation: and in the manuſcript Chronicle of the *Chancelor du Prat*, hath it thus: The good King *Lewes* the twelfth, departed out of this life, at his lodging of the *Tournelles*, the firſt day of *Ianuary*, in the yeare One thouſand fiue hundred and foureteene, and after his body was ceremoniouſly embalmed, and ſeared: it was brought into the great Hall of the ſame lodging, and there encloſed in a Coffin of Cipreſſe, with a ſumptuons couering of Watchet or Blew Veluet *ſemy flowry* with Floure de lis of Gold.

On both ſides, where the body remained or was repoſed, there were two ſtately Altars ordained and adorned, very richly, as couered in the ſame manner with Purple Veluet embroidered with Gold, hauing Canopies of the ſame faſhion.

Before the body ſtood two little Stooles, couered with Cloath of Gold, and on them two holy Water-pots, one for the people, who had holy Water ſprinkled as they paſſed through the great Hall into the Chamber, and ſo went through the gallery of the pictures: the other for the Princes, Prelats, Lords, Knights and Gentlemen.

Behinde the body, was another Stoole couered and adorned in the ſame manner with cloath of Gold, but vpon that ſtood a Croſſe: At the foure corners of the Coffin, were placed foure great Candleſticks of Siluer gilded, wherein were as many great white Virgin Waxe Tapers, which burnt continually, and ſo did thoſe, that were on the Altars.

Both of the one ſide, and the other of this great Chamber, were placed diuers long Formes couered with Tapiſtry of Silke: behinde the body, on the left hand by the Gallery, there were two Chaires and a Bench couered with Cloath of Gold for the Cardinals, Archbiſhops, Counſellours of State, and Maſters of the requeſts; behinde them was another Bench for the Kings Almoners, and behinde them, two others for thoſe of the Order of the Religion.

On the other ſide, all along by the wall, there were likewiſe long Benches for the Pages of the Chamber, and before them for the Gentlemen in ordinary; and before them, as neere to the Hearſe as was conuenient, two other Chaires, and a forme couered with cloath of Gold, ſutable to that which the Cardinals had, for my Maſters the Princes of the bloud, the Officers of the Crowne, and Knights of the Orders.

The foure Mendicants, Capuchines, and other Monaſticall Orders, ſung day and night, not a Plaine ſong, or diuerſity of Tunes, but after the manner of the Friers *Minims* and *Capuchins*, who take the Cue one of another and anſwere by courſes.

On

On either ſide of the holy Water-pots, as neere the body as was conuenient, were alſo two little ſtooles couered with great Mantles of Cloath of Gold, on which two Heralds attended in their Coates of Armes, ouer Caſſocks of Veluet, with quoifes of their function, and gilded Scepters of Wood in their hands; theſe went vp and downe from one to another, or (if you had rather) ſtood ſtill to giue the Holy-water ſprinckled to the Princes, Prelats, and Lords, who paſſed by to receiue it ouer the body of the Defunct.

Within the Gallery of Pictures, there were eighteene Altars couered with blacke, on which were ſaid a hundred low Maſſes euery day, but within the Kings Chamber were ſixe of a higher note, the laſt of which, was alwayes the ordinary Maſſe for the Defunct, cellebrated in his life time by the Singing-men of his Chappell in the ſame manner as he himſelfe was wont to heare it. This Order was obſerued, as well in his owne Chamber, as in the great Hall, where appeared a ſolemnity of Mourning-cloth from *Aſcenſion* day, to Saint *Peter* and Saint *Paul*, the laſt ſaue one of *Iune*, when the body was tranſported into the great Church of *Paris*.

The Kings body remained in the Chamber full eighteene dayes, vntill Friday, the feaſt of Saint *Barnaby*, the eleauenth of *Iune*: The day after the Feaſt, the body was remoued from place to place, till it was laid on a bed of Honour prepared in the great Hall of the *Swiſs*, to whom it was preſented the ſeauenteenth of *Iune*, and ſo it came to the charge of the Archers of the *Corps du Guard of Scotts*: At euery one of theſe changes, and deſcents of the body, many Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and Abbots in the beſt robes of their Prelacy, or if you will Pontificallibus, attended with the Officers of the Crowne, Knights of the two Orders, Lords and Gentlemen, Captains of the Guard, and Officers of the Kings Pallace.

This Hall of the *Swiſſers* was moſt richly prepared with the Kings beſt tapiſtry, the wals were hung, and the very roofe and ſeelings aboue were adorned, and as for the Pillars, or if you pleaſe, the Supporters of the hanging Vault, they were all couered with cloath of Gold, from the very toppe to the bottome of the pauement.

In the croſſe-windowes from one ſide to another were, erected thoſe Altars to ſay Maſſe on, which ſtood in the gallery of pictures.

At the top of this Hall, there was a halfe-pace of fiue ſteppes, or degrees, and before the Chimny a platforme of foure greeces or ſtaires higher, vpon which was raiſed a Bedſted of nine foote long, mounted on high and faſhioned in ſtate round about (except where the bolſters lay againſt the Chimney:) for the Chimney was on the backe of the beds head, you had alſo three more ſteps euery one a foote high and broad, as if you went vp by degrees.

The Bedſted was apparrelled in this manner; the Teſton and top had a great cloath of State full of Floure de Luces, with Vallens and all things accordingly: on the bolſters and bed it ſelfe, were fine large Sheetes of the cloath of Holland, both Cambricke and Lawne, which trailed a great way on the ground, and the ground it ſelfe was all couered with rich cloath vnder feete. Ouer this was a Couerlet or Quilt of freezed gold, full of croſſes of Siluer quartred and cantoned with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre*, with a large border of purple Veluet *ſemy flowry*, or ful of Floure deliſes of Gold, a foote and a halfe broad; there was alſo another Border of *Ermines*, as large as that of the Veluet, which was done in ſuch a manner, as if there had been three Couerlets: the firſt, which for heighth and largeneſſe ſurpaſſed, was of Floure deliſes: the ſecond of Ermines: the laſt, of fine Cambricke or Lawne, which couered all to the bottome.

Now vpon this freeſed cloath of Gold, in the midſt of the bed (the true coffine elſewhere conueied away) was the portraiture of the King laied carued to the life, and apparrelled with robes of State, as he accuſtomed in magnificent ſolemnities. He had firſt on a very fine Shirt of Holland, with a ruffe, as he was wont to weare, when he was liuing: ouer his Shirt was a Waſtecoate of Crimſon Sattin, plaited or doubled with Carnation Taffety, laid ouer with gold lace, the ſleeues came no further then the elbowes, but the skirts within foure fingers of the knees. Ouer his Waſtecoate he wore a Dalmatique Gowne of Violet Sattin, full of Floure de Luces of

of Gold, ſo richly embrodered, that you could ſcarſe diſcerne the ground-worke, beſides it was laced round about with a fine thinne plate of Lace of Gold and Siluer foure or fiue fingers broad: this came alſo to the elbow, and halfe way to the legge; the Buskins and Sandales, which were open Shooes, were of Purple Veluet embrodered with Floure de Luſes of Gold, yea the very ſoles of the ſhooes were made of Crimſen or Red Sattin.

Ouer this *Dalmatique* Gowne was a Mantell Royall of ſix Ells long of Purple Veluet, ſemy flory with Gold, with a facing and edging or border of Ermines. It was open on the right ſide, bound and made faſt vpon the right ſhoulder with great buttons of Violes like and Gold, frieſled and creſpinde with the ſame: the traile of this great Mande was laid vpon the left ſhoulder, inſomuch that you might eaſily diſcerne, how the Waſt-coate and Gowne came but to the elbowes, the reſt of the ſhirt to the tying about the wriſt to the hand: to the compaſſing of the necke, to the comming vp to the enclоſure before the breſt, was all delicately fruſſled, and wrought moſt curiouſly.

About the necke of this Mantell Royall, otherwiſe called the Manteiet, *befides* a doubling or tippet of the Furre of Ermines, there was caſt ouer him the great Coller of the Order of the holy Ghoſt, the King alſo wore a night Cap or Coife of Crimoſen Sattin, ouer which was an Imperiall Crowne ſet full of Diamonds, and pretious Stones: on both ſides of his head there were alſo two Pillobers of Violet Veluet, ſemy flowry of Gold, embrodered as the reſt: vpon which, on the right hand, was laid the Scepter Royall, and on the other ſide the Scepter and hand of Iuſtice: on the other ſide againe as neere to the bolſter of the Bed, as was conuenient, was the Royal Chaire couered with Purple Veluet, embrodered alſo with Floure de Luſes of Gold. In a word, the Altars, Chaires, Benches & Stooles from one ſide to another, were all of the ſame faſhion, as you heard before in the Kings Chamber.

Round about the Hall-doores, and winding Staires there hung vp diuers ſquare Tables, in which was ſet out in the beſt oylie colours, the Scutcheon with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre*, crowned with Imperiall Crownes within, a border of the Orders of the King, and Supported by two Angels.

And the while this Image and Portrature of the King remained in this great Hall, there was ſolemne Seruice at Dinner, and Supper time in the ſame manner, as was accuſtomed the King liuing, that is to ſay: *Benedicite*: the Grace from the Prelate; the Muſicke to the Graces; the Seruice, and ſay of the Wine and Meate, as well by the Maiters of the Houſe, as by the Gentlemen, Seruants, and other Officers of the Mouth, and thus, was hee attended on in his Bed in open view with all ſolemnitie.

But when Wedneſday the twentie two of *Iune* approached, the great Hall made an exchange with his rich and magnificent furniture, putting on a maske of ſorrow, and ſhewing a face of mourning: For it was preſently hung with blacke both from the top to the bottome, yea round about the very Pillers: within, ouer the hangings of Serge there were two Borders, of black Veluet couered with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre*, embrodred with Gold, in which manner the two great Porches, and the Staires were alſo dreſſed.

The Hall it ſelfe was in a manner made ſhorter by certaine diuiſions: For from the Chimney to the fiue degrees or ſteps, and all the ſpace where the bed of Honor ſtood, the Tapeſtry was preſently couered with Serge and blacke Veluet. Into the middle of the Hall the body of the King was brought, and ſet vpon three Treſtels of foure foote and a halfe high, whereon, was put the forenamed Cheſt in which was the Cipreſſe Coffin, which was couered with a large Hearſecloth of blacke Veluet, trailing on euery ſide vpon the ground, full of croſſes of white Sattin, with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre* embrodered: It was alſo furniſhed with another couering of cloath of Gold, freeſed, croſſed, and tipped or dreſſed with the ſame, round about a border of Purple Veluet, with Floure de luces of Gold, embrodred to the full, with a welt and bordure of Ermines foure fingers broad.

Vpon the laſt named cloath or Couerlet of State, there were foure Pillowes and Cuſhions of cloath of Gold, freeſed & purled: vpon which, by the right ſide of his

head was placed the Royall Diadem, and vpon the other three the Order of the holy Ghoſt, the Scepter of Maieſtie, and the hand of Iuſtice, and at his feete was a great Croſſe of Gold.

The Coffin had ouer all a Tilt or ſtately frame of wood, painted ouer with blacke, of ten foote long, and nine foote broad, vpon the railes and barres of the ſame, from the one ſide to the other, were foureteene great Waxe Tapers or Candels of white Virgins waxe, weighing ſixe pound a piece, which burnt day and night, and at the foure corners were alſo foure other Tapers of the ſame weight, and aboue toward the head of the Coffin (higher then the reſt) was a great Herſe or Canopy, altogether charged with twelue burning Candels of the ſame weight and faſhion.

Ouer the top of this Coffin and frame there was ſpred a great cloath of Eſtate, or Canopy of blacke Veluet, fringed with blacke Silke and Gold, interwouen and crespinde with knots of the ſame.

On both ſides of this ſumptuous frame were two Altars, in like manner couered with blacke for to ſay Maſſe at, as you heard before in other preparations.

Without the Liſts & Barriers, or Railes in a foote or thereabouts, was a little low Stoole couered with blacke Veluet, vpon which ſtood a Veſſell of holy Water, and on either ſide two other low Stooles, decked as the former, for two Heralds of Armes, who in this ſeruice wore Chapperons on their heads, their Martiall Robes, and ouer that their Coates of Armes, who gaue the holy Water ſprinckell.

From one ſide to another were alſo ſeuerall Formes and Benches, couered with blacke Serge for the Princes, Prelats, and Officers to ſit on, and others who were aſſiſtant in the Seruice, and attended the Sermons, that were made during the time, that the body remained there.

On Sunday the twentieth of *Iune*, after Euening Prayer, all the Churches of *Paris*, as wel Pariſhes, as Monaſteries rang their Bels in their accuſtomed tune for the dead, which laſted three dayes together, euen till Wedneſday night, wherein they prayed day & night for the ſoule of the defunct, and the Churches with the Monaſteries (during thoſe three dayes) were all hung with Blacke, bedecked with Veluet, hauing the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre*, their Chappels with continuall burning Candels, and their Chanteries expreſſing a great deale of ſorrow, the principall Marchants and Burgeſſes of *Paris* frequenting their Pariſh Churches all the three dayes, and hauing ſolemne Seruice for the dead, their Shops ſhut vp, and themſelues forbidden to ſell any thing.

On Thurſday being the firſt of Saint *Iohn Baptiſt* the Bels began againe, and laſted till Saturday following, euery Fraternity anſwering one another, continuing the accuſtomed Prayers and Dirges for the ſoule of the departed.

This ſolemnity of Seruice in Prayers and Oriſons for the dead, laſting full three dayes, as you haue heard, to the honour of the departed, and accompliſhment of the Funerall Ceremonies, was not onely celebrated in *Paris*, but in all the Villages and Townes adioyning, yea ouer the Country: ſo that in truth it was ſo generall a ſorrow, and ſeruice in burning of Candels, and mourning for this our *Henry* the great, in his Obſequies and Prayers for his ſoule; that the like was not performed for fiue precedent Kings, neuer ſince *Lewes* the twelfth, ſurnamed the Father of the People.

The body of the King was full fiue dayes in the Hall of ſorrow, during which time, the Comminaltie of *Paris* came flocking in to receiue the holy Water-ſprinckell: and the Friday after S. *Iohn Baptiſt*, the King hauing dined at the Hoſtell of *Longeuile* departed ſome foure houres after noone, to performe his ſolemne prayers ouer the Coffin of the deceaſed King his Father.

Before his Maieſty marched the great Maiſter, or Prouoſt of the Houſe, with his Lieutenants, apparrelled in long mourning Robes, and Chapperons on their Heads, followed with the Guard of Archers in their Caſſocks and mourning Roabes, with their Chapperons in forme and faſhion, that is to ſay, that all ſuch as were appointo mourn, had certaine Bonnets and Caps on their Heads, & ouer all a Hood, which they tearme a Chapperon.

The Kings Guard of *Swiſſers* marched after them, which belonged to the great Prouoſt,

Prouoſt: After the Swiſſers marched the Fifes and Drommes, all couered ouer with Blacke Cipreſſe; then followed the two hundred Gentlemen of the Kings Houſe, their Pollaxes or Axes all couered with Cipreſſe, their points downeward: then came nine Heraulds in their Coates of Armes, marching two and two, with *Monioy* King of Armes all alone, and the laſt: Next vnto them, the Knights of the Order of the Holy Ghoſt, euery one with his Collar and ornaments of his Order, which came ouer their Roabes, with Hoods accordingly.

After them came his Maieſtie himſelfe, with the Cardinall *Francis*, Duke of *Ioieuſe* on the right hand, and the Cardinall of *Sourdis* on the other: his Maieſtie was reueſted with a long mourning Roabe, and large ſleeues of Scarlet dye, but Violet colour, with a cloſe Hood on his Head, without any Collar of his Order: the traile, or taile of this Garment of ſorrow, was full fiue Els long, and ſupported by fiue Princes, whereof two were of the blood royall, that is to ſay, on the right hand *Monſier le* Prince of *Conde*, *Francis de Burbon*, and *Monſier* the Count *Soyſons*, *Charles* of *Burbon*, and the three others were of the Houſe of *Lorraine*, the Duke of *Guiſe* on the right hand, the Prince *Ionueile*, or *Iainuile*, his brother, on the left; and at the end of the traine the Duke *D'elbœuf* their Coſin: Next after his Maieſtie, there was a diſtance of place, and then were carried in mens Armes, for their infancy or tender yeares, the Dukes of *Orleans*, and *Anion*, brothers to the King, in blacke Roabes with formall Hoods accordingly. For you muſt vnderſtand, that in ſuch a ſolemnity, it is lawfull for none, but the King himſelfe to weare Scarlet Violet, but if they had beene of age, then it belonged to them to carry vp the Kings traile, or the long taile of his Veſtement; and after them followed the other Princes of the blood, amongſt whom was no ſtranger Prince admitted.

The King paced on foote from the ſaid Hoſtell and Houſe of *Longue-Ville*, to the Pallace or Caſtell of the *Louure*, whoſe firſt Port or Gate was all hung with blacke Serge, bedecked with a Funerall Girdle, as it were, of blacke Veluet with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre*, embrodered to the number of fiue, all of one faſhion, and in the ſame manner it was furniſhed within, as well as without.

At the Doore or entrance of the great ſtaircaſe his Maieſty was receiued by *Monſier* the Duke of *Fronſac*, Count of Saint *Paul*: the Prince ſirnamed of *Orleans*, and others of the Houſe of *Longueuile*, with diuers Marſhals of *France* and Knights of the order, which alwayes remained in the great Hall, before the body of the deceaſed King his Father, where they kneeled vpon Cuſhions of Purple Veluet, hauing afterwards on either ſide the Kings brothers, my Lords the Dukes of *Anion* and *Orleans*, who alſo kneeled vpon Cuſhions of blacke Veluet

There were alſo a great number of Archbiſhops and Biſhops ſolemnely reueſted with hoods, or bonets of blacke Veluet ouer their white Sattin Miters. The Kings Chappell ſung continually *De Profundis*, and other Muſicall Pſalmes, after whom the Cardinall *de Perron*, Archbiſhop of *Sens*, and great Almonor of *France* made the accuſtomed Oriſons, which being done, there was an aſperſion and ſprinkell of Holy Water vpon his Maieſtie, who alſo caſt the ſame vpon the body of the defunct; after him, my Lords the *Enfans* of *France* perform'd the like, onely thoſe two that were the Kings brothers, but none of thoſe, who did ſupport the traile of the Kings Robe, or long Gowne: this Garment with the Hood of Scarlet Violet, belongeth properly to the Heraulds.

The ſame day about fiue houres and a halfe within night, my Lord the Chancellour *Sillery Brulart*, and the Lords of the Counſell approached the Coffin, and beſprinkled the Body with Holy Water.

The day following being Saturday the ſix and twentie of *Iune*, about the eight houre in the morning, there was a Summons proclaimed for the enterment of the King. The Lord of *Rhodes*, Knight of both Orders, and great Maiſter of the Ceremonies in the Court of *France*, hauing receiued the ſtile and title of the deceaſed King at the hands of *Monſier* the Chancellour, and other the Lords of the Priuie Counſels, proceeded from place to place with foure and twenty Criers belonging to the body; certaine Diuines of *Paris*, and many other perſons adorned with mourning roabes and countenances of ſadneſſe. The firſt Summons was in the Court of Parliament,

ment, from thence they went into the Chamber of Accounts, and ſo into the Court generall of the Kings aides, or Prerogatiue: from thence to the Mint, and ſo to the other Offices giuing warning of the Kings entertainment.

When theſe Ceremonies were diſpatched abroad, the Maiſter of the Ceremonies with his foure and twenty Criers and Proclaimers returne back againe to the *Louure*, and ſo came before the Marble Table in the great Hall of the Pallace, & after they haue ſounded certaine little Bels, *Monſier Melon* the principall amongſt them, publiſhed the Kings title, and with an audable voyce proclaimed the Superſcription, in this manner.

Noble and honorably deuoted perſons, pray for the ſoules of the moſt high, moſt puiſſant, and moſt excellent Prince Henry *the great, by the grace of God, the renowned Chriſtian King of* France *and* Nauarre, *moſt happy, moſt victorious, and incomparable in all clemencie, mercy and magnanimitie, who is departed out of this world at the Pallace of the* Louure: *looke I ſay, that you doe pray religiouſly, that God may receiue his ſoule. For on Thurſday, ſome two houres after Noone the body of his Maieſtie ſhall be aduanced, and carried into the Cathedrall Church of* Paris, *where muſt be continuall Mattins, and Vigils ſaid for the dead; the day after, early in the morning, the Prayers and Seruice accuſtomed are for to be ſolemnely celebrated, and when all is done, the body to be tranſported to Saint* Denis, *and there to be inhumed and buried with all princely ſolemnitie; looke you pray then, that God receiue his ſoule.*

This was the manner and Tenour of that Cry and Proclamation made firſt in the Pallace, and afterward in the foure quarters of the great Citie of *Paris*, beginning at the Hoſtell or before the Towne Houſe: the great Gates during the three dayes of the interment all couered with Blacke Serge, bedecked with quarters, or Scutcheons of blacke Veluet, with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre*.

The ſame day of the Summons, at the tenth houre or there abouts, or at tenne a Clocke, the Court in their Pallace Robes, went ſolemnely to giue the Holy Water to the deceaſed body. At one of the Clocke came the Chamber of accounts: at two the Court of Aides or Prerogatiues: at three, the Officers of the Mint, & ſo followed the Vniuerſity: the Ciuilians, and the whole body of the Burgeſſes of *Paris*.

On Tueſday, being Saint *Peters* day, about Noone, all the Pariſhes with the Collegiate and Monaſtery Churches of *Paris*, did goe to giue the Holy water ſprinckle, and ſo to ſay the accuſtomed Prayers in the Church ouer the body of the Defunct: they entred by the doore by the great Staires, and departed by that of the Hall of ſorrow, and went out marching in order with meaſured diſtance, and ſo continued in Saint *Germans* Church, called the Church of Pickaxes, from whence they departed within two houres by the Principall Gate, and tooke the Streete of the *Louure*, otherwiſe named *Auſtruch*, for to get into the great Streete of Saint *Honore*, and ſo they turned by the Croſſe of *Trayor*, all along the ditch of Saint *Germaines*, otherwiſe called the Streete of dry Trees, and ſo paſſed ouer the new Bridge, turning by the Key or Wharfe of the *Auguſtines*, marching by Saint *Michaels* Bridge to the new quarter and Streete of our *Ladies* Church, where all the Companies of his Maieſties Guard were ranged in order, euen to the doores of the Church: but for the better vnderſtanding of this Solemnitie, they were thus Marſhalled.

Firſt came the Captaine *Marchand*, Colonell of the Archers of the Citie of *Paris*, and his Lieutenants in their habilliments of mourning, followed by the three Companies of the Guard of the Citie, in their Iackets or Caſſockes with mourning Hoods ouer their Heads. The one ſort or company abaſed their Halberds, their points almoſt touching the ground: the ſecond company carried their Bowes and Quiuers reuerſed: the third Company had their Harquebuſſes in the bought of their Armes, ſuſtained by one hand, and in the other a burning Torch of two pound weight with the Scutcheon and Armes of the Citie, which is, A Field *Gueulles*, a Ship vnder ſaile *Argent* well rigged, and in good *Equipage*, on a *Cheef* of *France*.

After theſe companies came the new ſect of the *Franciſian Friers*, of the ſuburbs of *S. Martins*, & thoſe called *de Picque-puce*: the *Capuchins* and *Minorites*, carrying their great Croſs of wood; the poore Schollers of *Mont Aigu* Colledg in *Paris*; the *Cordeliers*, Friers

Friers *Iacobins*, *Auguſtines*, and *Carmelites*, the *Fuellants* in a browne habit, with all the other Orders, as well in the Pariſhes, as Monaſteries, hauing euery one foure Torches of yellow Wax of two pounds a peece, with the double Armes of the King.

After them followed more then fiue hundred poore men in long mourning gownes from the top to the toe, with hoods ouer their heads. After them, followed the lame Souldiers, maintained by the charity of Chriſtian people; in the ſame abillements as the poore men were: euery one carrying a burning Torch, with the double Armes of the King. Next them, the 24. ſworne Criers of *Paris*.

Then came the Knight *de Gueſt*, with his Lieutenants and Souldiers, as wel on foot as on horſeback, trayling their blacke Enſignes on the ground. A little after, on the right hand, marched the Sergeants of the Verge of the Guildhall in *Paris*, in a blacke Veſtment, or ſhort cloake, with their ſwords by their ſides, and Truncheons in their hands, blacked at the two ends: and then followed the Sergeants of Horſe on foote, as the reſt. On the left hand, were the Sergeants of the State-houſe (or Guildhall) in their Liueries. After theſe, came the publike Notaries of the Courts of Iuſtice, in garments and hoods of Mourning: and next them, the Commiſſaries of the ſame Courts.

The Preuoſt of *Paris*, was mounted on horſeback, with a Truncheon in his hand couered with blacke Veluet. He was apparrelled in a long Robe of the Serge of Florence; it had a traile or traine of two Elles, ſupported with three of his owne name, with a hood ouer his head: before him, marched ſixe Sergeants of the twelue, with their Caſſockes, and hoods ouer their heads, their Halberds and Partiſans downward to the ground. He was attended on with Vſhers, Audiencers, and Regiſters, with the three Lieutenants, Ciuill, Criminall, and Particular, with Councellers, Aduocates, & Proctors, belonging both to the King, and the Iudicatures.

After theſe, on the right hand, followed the Sergeants on Horſeback, who ordered the ſquadrons of the Caſtles; and on the left, after the Sergeants of the Towne-houſe, followed the Commanders of Wards, with their Deputies. Wee may reſemble them to Aldermens Deputies, or Captaines of Fifties, Squadrons, and Tenns. Then came thoſe who had beene Shrieues, with the foure and twenty Councellours of the City.

Heere was another diuiſion: and ſo there marched after them diuers Religious Orders. Such as were of the Holy Croſſe of *Bretonnery*, the *Billeres*, the white Cloakes: thoſe of Saint *Catherine du Val*, the Schollers, and the Mathurins. Then followed in order all the Pariſhes: Saint *Paul*, *S. Coſme*, *S. Eſtien* of the Mount, *S. Medard*, *S. Euſtace*, *S Croſſe* of the Citty, *S. Sauiour*, *S. James* of the Shambles, *S. Innocent*, *S. Ioſſe*, *S. Germain* the old, *S. Landry*, *S. Leu*, *S. Gilles*, *S. Geruais*, *S. Nicholas* of the Field, *S. Laurence*, *S. Peter* among the Beeues, *S Andrew de Laas*, *S. Hellary*, *S Geneuiefue* of *Ardents*, *S. Peter of Arcis*, *S. Chriſtopher*, *S. Martiall*, *S Iohn* in the *Greue*, *S. Nicholas of Chardonet*, *S. Bartholmew*, *S. Seuerin*, *S. Iames* of the Hoſpitall, *S. Magdalen*, *S. Lenis de la Chartre*, *S. Sulpice*, and *S. Marcel*.

Now you muſt conſider, that in this ſolemnity of Marching, the moſt ancient Pariſhes of *Paris* are thoſe which are laſt named, and ſo muſt take precedency of the firſt, and the like is to be obſerued in the other Orders of Religion, and the Churches Collegiates.

After the Pariſhes, marched the Religious Orders of *Bernardine*, *S. Maglory*, *S. Victor*, *S. Martin* in the Field, *S. German* the neeter, and *S. Geneuieue* of the Mount, all which tooke the right hand. Then on the left hand, followed the Churches called the Daughters of our Lady, that is to ſay, *S. Eſtienne* of the Greekes, the *Sepulcher*, *S. Opportune*, *S. Honore*, *S. Benoit* the conuerted, *S. Mederic*, and *S. Germaine* of the *Auxerrois*.

Then on the left hand followed the holy Chappell of the Pallace, and on the right, our Lady of *Paris*, and theſe onely ſung through the Towne.

After the holy Chappel, marched the whole body of the Vniuerſity; before whom came their Beadles in mourning veſtments, ouer which were certaine coats of Armes of Violet Taffata, fringed with ſilke of the ſame colour painted all ouer, euen from the necke or Collar, with an artificiall Cloud, out of which iſſued a hand, holding a booke of

of *Gueules*, filletted with Gold, vpon three Flower de Lizes of the ſame, which is the Armes of the Vniuerſity: the Maſters and Gouernors of the Colledges, marched along in their furred Cappes: and the Rector or Vice-Chancellour came face to face with the Deane of our Ladies Church.

Betweene the Canons of the Church of *Paris*, and the profeſſors of Phyſicke, and other Sciences marched the Kings Muſitians, euery one in a Surpleſſe, and a Hoode on the left ſhoulder.

After the Clergy and Vniuerſity of *Paris*, marched along the Harbengers, Meſſengers, Poſtes for the packets, Courtiers, Maſters ouer the Poſtes, with their Mourning Robes, Hoods on their heads, and the Scutcheon of France vppon their breſts on the left ſide: they were conducted by the Lord *de Varenne*, Comptroller generall of the Poſtes.

Then followed the Officers of the great and ſmaller Stables.

After them, marched the Hoboyes, Trumpets, Fifes, and Drummes, not ſounding at all, but all turn'd topſie-turuie, the mouths of their Inſtruments downward, their Bannerols wound vp, their hoods or hats very low carried, and their head bare.

Then came *Monſieur de Crequy*, Maſter of the Campe, with the Captaines, Lieutenants, and Enſignes of the regiments of the Guards, who were all on the right hand: and on the other, *Signeur de la Curee*, with the Captains and Cornets of the ſquadrons of Light-horſe.

After them, marched the great Prouoſt of the *Hoſtel Belangreuille* on Horſe-backe; followed of his Lieutenants and Archers on foote, hauing their Mourning Robes, without their Hoods, and beneath their Caſſockes carrying their Halberds very low.

Next, came the Captaine of the Porters Lodge of the *Louure*, with all his Attendants. Then the Captaine of the Switz on horſebacke, followed with an hundred Switz on foot of the *Corps du Guard*, their Enſigne halfe rowled vp, carried on their ſhoulder, and couered with blacke Cypers, all their Armes turned backward.

Then followed two hundred Gentlemen of the Kings Pallace, in mourning habits, Hoods on their heads, their Halberds or Axes couered with black Cypres, with their points downward. Then came the Officers of the Kings houſe on the right hand, with the Gentlemen ſeruitors, and the Maſters of the Hoſtell, their Truncheons couered with blacke Cypers, the end pointing to the ground. On the left hand marched the Officers of the Mint, the Court of Aydes, and the Chamber of Accompts, with ſuch as appertained vnto them.

Preſently followed twelue Pages of Honor, apparrelled in blacke Veluet, bare headed, the hats carried very low, booted, ſpurr'd, and mounted on horſebacke, couered with blacke Veluet, croſſed with white Sattin, without Armes; euery horſe led by a Footman all in blacke, bare-headed, and their hats carried very lowe.

Then marched the Squires and Querries, with twelue Armourers and ſumpter horſes with Armes; after whom came *du Vidame du Mans*, Captain of the hundred Gentlemen of the Kings Chamber.

Next vnto him followed the Biſhop, firſt Confeſſor to the deceaſed King, inſtead of the Biſhop of *Paris*, who was wont to go next before the Corpes or Coffin, after the faſhion of Curates or pariſh Parſons, who follow the domeſticke ſeruants of the Defunct, and are immediately betweene the body, and them: but after the Pourtraitures of the Kings were diuided from their true bodies, the Biſhoppe of *Paris* being the firſt Curate, and Ordinary of the King in euery place where he ſhall remaine, ought to follow the body in his Dioceſſe, to deliuer it to thoſe of S. *Denis* in France. For, in regard that *Paris* is the cheefe City of the ſacred Realme of France, the Biſhop thereof hath the chiefe cure and care of the true body, till it be diſpoſed of into the ground: and this is the reaſon, why the Diuine Seruice is celebrated at all times in the Kings Chappell, after the manner of *Paris*, and therefore the Biſhop of *Paris* attending now the true corpes of the Defunct to Saint *Denis*, another Biſhop the firſt Confeſſor of the King, went immediatly before the portraiture, as it was now in the Chariot, with a croſſe borne before him, and two Almoners following after.

Now came the Chariot of Eſtate, in which lay the Effigies of the deceaſed King. It was all couered ouer downe to the ground with black Veluet, croſſed vvith croſſes of

of white Sattin, cantonned or quartered with ſixe great Scocheons with the Armes of *France* and *Nauarre*, with the two Orders of the King with rich Imbroidery. It was drawne along with ſix horſes, two and two, couered with blacke Veluet, croſſed with croſſes of white Sattin: on the left ſide, vpon the firſt and laſt horſes, were two coachmen in blacke Veluet, bare-headed, and Hoods hanging full lowe.

Round about the Chariot of Armes, marched the Archers of the Scotch Guard in a mourning habite ouer their white Caſſockes, with their Hoods on their ſhoulders; their Halberds and Partizans couered with blacke Cypres, their points caried downward, as you heard before.

In the Front before, were the Lords *Vitry*, *Praſlin*, and *Monteſpan*, Captains of the Kings Guard, in their Mourning Robes, and Hoods on their heads.

There followed them, the Kings Almoners, Preachers, and Confeſſors, and then ſixteene Biſhops, two and two, with the Archbiſhop of *Lions*, all on foot, reueſted as the firſt Confeſſor of the King, with caps of black Veluet ouer their Miters of White Sattin.

After them, marched the Biſhops of *Chalons*, *Noyon*, and *Beauuais*, reputed Earles: the Biſhop of *Laon*, a Duke (the Biſhop and Duke of *Langres*, was at this time exempted by reaſon of ſickneſſe,) and the Archbiſhop and Duke of *Reimes*, Peeres of France: and theſe were mounted on their Mules.

After them, marched *Myron*, Biſhoppe of *Angiers*; repreſenting the perſon of the great Almoner of France *Iames Duny*, Cardinall *du Peron*, excuſed by his Gout.

After whom followed the Lord of *Bon-Oeil*, being on horſeback alone, in his robes of Mourning, and the Hood vpon his head, which we call due forme. And after him came the Ambaſſadors of *Sauoye*, of *Venice*, and of *Spaine*, mounted on Horſebacke, attyred in their Mourning Garments, and without Hoods. Each of them was conducted by a Biſhop, mounted vpon his Mule.

Then followed after, the two *Nuntio's* to the Pope, mounted on their Mules, with their Conducters.

The Ordinary, conducted by the Archbiſhop of *Embrun*.

The Extraordinary, by the Archbiſhop of *Aix* in *Prouence*, both the one & other, as well as the Biſhops, Peeres of France: and they which conducted the Ambaſſadors, were cloathed with their Violet Saplers and Rochets, and likewiſe their great Copes.

After the *Nuntios* marched

The Car. *De Ioyeuſe*, Archbiſhop of *Rouen*. And,
dinalles *De Sourdis*, Archbiſhop of *Burdeaux*, with their Violet Coapes, and Mules adorned with the ſame.

So finiſhed the ſolemne Funerall Pompe: after which, were carried the Honors of the deceaſed King: but before his Picture or Effigie, which ſeemed as if it had beene liuing. And yet notwithſtanding, all they which carried it, were cloathed in Mourning, with Hoods on their ſhoulders, and ſquare Caps on their heads.

Firſt of all,

Three Heralds of Armes of France marched equally together, hauing their Coates of Armes ouer their Mourning Gownes, their Hoods vpon their ſhoulders, black Veluet Caps (of the old faſhion) on their heads, and their Scepters in their hands, couered with blacke Cobweb Lawne all ouer.

The Lord of *Rhodes*, Great Maſter of the Ceremonies of France, Knight, and high Prouoſt of both the Kings Orders, Prime Eſquire, Caruer, and Bugle-bearer vnto the King, riding alone on horſebacke, in his Mourning habit, and Hoode vpon his head; bearing a Lance pointed with Blew, and headed with Golde, which was the *Phanon Carre*, that is to ſay, *The Cornet of France, made of violet Veluet, ſemed with Flower de Luces d'Or de Cypre*, in rich Embroidery, more full then wanting any, Frindged verie largely with Gold.

It was followed by the Cornets of the Marches and Prouinces of France, appertaining to the Sacred Domaine of the King. To wit, the Viſcounties, Counties, Dukedomes, Peeredomes, and other Seigneuries on the Frontiers of the Kingdome; and of them which (by right) belonged to the Crowne of France.

The

The VISCOVNTIES.

BEARNE.



A Soueraigne Viſcountie, holding the Parliament at *Pau*, with two Biſhopprickes, and thirteen Baronies. *Porte d'Or, a Deux Vaches de Gueulles, accornees, Accolees, & clarines de Gueules, Coronnes d'vn Cercle.*

Bearne, King of Armes, with his Coate of yellow Veluet, aſſiſted by two Heralds.

Her Cornet of yellow Sattin, the Lance painted with the ſame colour, and charged with the ſame Armes: carried by Sir N. repreſenting the prime Baron of *Bearn*.

LIMOGES.

AN Ancient Viſcountie, and Patrimonie to the Dukes *D'Albret*, Kings of *Nauar*. *Porte d'Ermines* (which we ſpeak in one word of *Bretaign*) *a la Bordure de Gueules*. It is of the Parliament of *Guienne*.

Limoges, Herald of Armes, his Coat of white Veluet, with the Armes of his March.

The Cornet of white Sattin, the Lance painted white, charged with the ſaid Armes. Carried by the Seneſchall of *Limoſin*.

The COVNTIES.

COMMENGE.

THe Frontier March of *Spaine*, within the *Pyrenean* Mountaines. After that, the Lords thereof were conuerted to the Chriſtian Faith, they tooke for Armes, *De Gueules a quatre Otelles* (which are blanched Almonds) *d'Argent diſpoſees en Sautoir*. And for deuice, theſe words: *En Creyant, Nous Amandons.*

Commenge, Herauld of Armes, with his Coat of red Veluet.

The Cornet of Red or Crimſon Sattin, the Launce painted with the ſame colour, charged with the ſaid Armes: carried by the Viſcount of *Peguilhan*, of the ſirname & Armes of *Commenge*, and hereditary Seneſchall of the ſame Countie.

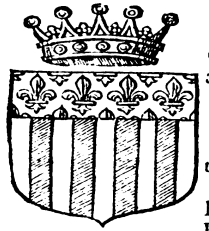
Saint GILLES.

A County, March, and Prouince, Frontiering on the *Mediterranean* Sea in *Languedock*. *Porte de Gueules, a Six Chaſteaux d'Or.* 3.2.1.

S *Gilles* Herald of Armes, wearing his Coat of Crimſon Veluet.

The Cornet of Crimſon Sattin, the Launce ſo painted, charged with the ſayde Armes: carried by the Seneſchall of *Niſmes*, and of *Beauquaire*.

PROVENCE.



A County of very great extendure, Limitrophing on the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the Alpes. *Porte d'Or, a Quatre Paulx de Gueules, au Chef de France ſans nombre.* Shee hath her Parliament, and two Metropolitane Cities.

Aix, where the Parliament is kept; And

Arles, tearmed the White.

Prouence, King of Armes, cloathed with the ſaide Liueries, betweene two Heralds of his March.

The Cornet of yellow Sattin, with the foreſaid Armes, and coloured Lance: carried by the high Seneſchall of *Prouence*. It is a Parliament apart, or by it ſelfe, and of reſort therto, are the Counts of *Folqualquier*, and the Lands adiacent.

The

The horſe of State, trapt and couered with yellow Satten, fringed with Gold, and bearing the ſaid Armes; and the like Armes enamelled on the horſes Chaufraine. A Plume of the Colour and Mettall of the ſaide County. The horſe being ledde by the two chiefe Barons of *Prouence*.

L'Eſcu d'Or, Blazonne des Armes, Coronces du Cercle: caried vpon the top of a ſtaffe, painted *Gueules* and Gold, by the prime Viſcount of *Prouence*.

BRESSE and BAVGIE.

THe Counties of *Breſſe* and *Baugie*, reunited to the Sacred Crowne of France, in exchange for the Marquiſate of *Saluces*; done by the ſaid King *Henry* the Great, of famous memory. Marches and Frontiers of *Sauoye*, and of the County of *Bourgongne*, are annexed to the Gouernment, and reſort to the Parliament of *Bourgongne* at *Dijon*, with the Bayliwickes of *Gex*, and of *Veromey*.

Breſſe. Porte d'Argent a la Bande d'Azur, i Deux Lyons de meſme, l'vn en Chef, & l'autre en Poinct.

Baugie. Porte de Gueules, au Lyon ſeme d'Ermines, Armé, Lampaſſé, & Coronné d'Or.

The Cornet of red Sattin, charged with the Armes quartered of *Breſſe* and *Baugie* carried by the Bayliff. of the Countries.

ARTOIS.

A Countie, Peereſome, and Appanage of France, reſorting to the Parliament at *Paris*. *De France, au Lambeau de Gueules de Quatre pieces, charge de Douze Chaſteaux d'Or.*

The Cornet of ſky-colour Sattin, with the ſaide Armes, carried by the Bayliffe of *Artois*.

BOLOGNE vpon the Sea.

A Countie and Frontiere on the Ocean Sea, reſorting to the Parliament of *Paris*. *Porte d'Or, a trois Torteaux de Gueules.* 2, 1. *Eſcartelé d'Or, au Gonfanon de Gueules, Frange de Synople.*

The Cornet of yellow Sattin, with the ſaide Armes painted: borne by the Bayliffe of *Boulenois*.

HOYE, and GVINES.

BOth in one Countie, and Frontering the Ocean Sea: But *Callu* is the Capitall Citty, a Gouernement a part by it ſelfe, and reſorting vnto the Parliament of *Paris*.

The Cornet of yellow Sattin (the Lance painted with the ſame colour) charged with the Armes of the ſaid Countie, which are *Vaire, Contre-Vaire d'Or, d'Or et d'Azur*: carried by the Bayliffe of *Guines*.

VERMANDOIS.

WHich is a Countie, Limitrophing on the Ocean Sea, and vpon the Eſtates of *Flanders*, comprehending the Gouernements of *Piccardie, Amiens*, of *Montdidier, Peronne* and *Roye*; As alſo *Abbeuille, Ponthieu*, and the March of *Corbie*. This Prouince is of long extendure, and reſorteth to the Parliament at *Paris*. It was (in former times) the ſecond Gouernement of France, giuen to the ſecond Prince of the Illuſtrious blood of France.

Porte Eſchiquete d'Or, et d'Azur de Cinq Traits.

Vermandois, King of Armes of *Piccardie*, his Coate of yellow Veluet, *Eſquichete d'Azur en Broderie*, with his two Heralds.

The Cornet of yellow Sattin, with the Armes of the March, carried by the Bayliffe of *Vermandois*.

The horſe of Honor, with the ſame adornment of Veluet, and Armed *Chanfraine*, Plumes of Mettall and Colour, led by long Cordions of Silke of the ſame colour, and by the two prime Barons of *Piccardie*.

POICTOV.

BEing a Countie and March of very great extendure, bounded with the Ocean sea. It was long since erected into a Peeredome, and the Resort to the Parliament of France, which is at *Paris*. *Porte de Gueules, a Cinq Tours d'Or, Maçonnees de Sable en Saultoir.*

Poictou, King of Armes for this rich Prouince, with his Coate of Crimson Velvet, bearing Armes of the Countie, with his two Heralds.

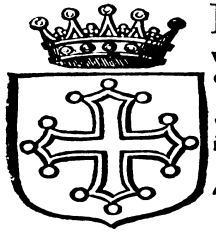
The Cornet of the same, and carried by the Seneschall of *Poictou*.

The horse of Honor, in like maner as before, conducted by the two chiefe Barons of *Poictou*.

The Shield of Armes, the same: carried by the first Viscount of *Poictou*.

Auncient Counties and Peeredomes, and euen to this present Honoured with the Title of Precedency, at the Sacring of our most Christian Kings.

TOLOSSA.



BEing a Countie, and the capitall City of *Languedock*, honoured with a Metropolitane Sea, with a Parliament of France, and with an Vniuersitie the most famous of Christendome. *Porte de Gueules, a la Croix Cleschee, & Terminee de Douze Pommes d'Or.*

Tolossa, King of Armes, his Coate of crimson Veluet, semed with the Armes of his March, in rich Embroiderie of Gold, going in the midst, betweene his two Heralds.

The Cornet of crimson Sattin, carried by the Seneschall of *Tolossa*.

The horse of Honor, as before.

The Shield of the Peeredome in the same manner. This is the third Peeredome in account.

CHAMPAIGNE.

A Countie Palatinate, and a great March, resorting to the Parliament of France, accounted for the second Peeredome. *Porte d'Azur, a deux Cottices d'Argent, Potencees, & Contrepotencees de Treize pieces d'Or.*

Champaigne, King of Armes for this great March; his Coate of Skye-coloured Veluet, with the Armes of his March in embroidery of Gold, and going in the midst betweene his two Heralds.

The Cornet of blew Sattin, carried by the Bayliffe of *Troyes*.

The horse of Honor as before, lead by the two chiefe Barons of *Champaigne*.

The Shield of the Peeredome, carried by the Count of *Vertus*.

FLANDERS.

IT being a Countie and Peeredome of France, of Ancient resort to the Parliament at *Paris*; and the prime Peeredome amongest the Counties. *Porte d'Or, au Lyon de Sable.*

Flanders, King of Armes, cloathed in his Coat of yellow Veluet, embroydred with the Armes of his March, and going in the midst betweene the two Heralds thereof.

The Cornet of yellow Sattin, carried by the Bayliffe of Flanders.

The Horse of Honor, in forme as before, and led by two Barons of Flanders.

The DVKEDOMES.

KIng *Henry* the Great, of whose Obsequies and Honourable Funerall Pompe, we are now making relation, being in peacefull possession of the Kingdome, made an Ordi-

Ordinance and declaration, concerning the vniting of his Ancient Patrimony, depending vpon the Crowne of France, and of that whereof he was Lord, when hee came to the saide Crowne. Giuen at *Paris* in the moneth of Iuly, and yeare of Grace, one thousand, sixe hundred and seuen. Signed *Henry*, and on the Fold, *By the King, De Lomenie* (the said Lord *de Lomenie*, Counceller to the King in his Councels of Estate and Priuate, and chiefe Secretary of his Commands: *Porte d'Or, a vn Arbre de Sinople, au Chef d'Azur charge de Trois Lozanges d'Argent.*) So that by meanes of the sayd Ordinance, the Viscounties of *Bearn* and of *Limoges*; the Counties of *Foix*, of *Armagnack*, and other Seigneuries came to the Crowne. Among which, is the Dukedome of *Albret*, the Auncient Patrimony of the Kings of *Nauarre*, *Iohn*, *Henry* the first, and *Iane d'Albret*, Queene of *Nauarre*, Mother to King *Henry* the Great: which was done to preserue the memory of this Royall Ligne.

ALBRET.

WHich is a Dukedome, on the Frontiers of *Gascoignie* and *Nauarre*, resorting to the Parliament of *Guienne*, the Capitall City whereof, is *Tartas*. *Portoit de France, Escartelle de Gueules.*

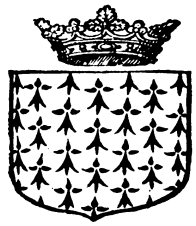
Albret, King of Armes, in his Coate of crimson Veluet, assisted by two Heraulds of his March.

The Cornet of crimson Sattin, borne by the Seneschall of the Country.

The horse of Honor, in manner as before, ledde by the two cheefe Barons of the Country.

The Shield carried by the prime Viscount.

BRETAIGNE.



A Dukedome of very great extendure, coasted along with the Ocean Sea, which hath her Parliament alone by her selfe at *Rennes*, and her Chamber of Accompts or Exchequer at *Nantes*. *Porte d'Argent seme d'Hermines de Sable.* Howbeit, this ought to be otherwise contraried, according to the naturall whitenesse of the *Hermine*, to wit, *De Sable, aux Ermines d'Argent, sans nombre.*

Bretaigne, King of Armes, wearing his Coate of white Veluet, powdred with *Ermines*; going in the middest betweene the two Heralds of his March.

The Cornet of white Sattin; carried by

The horse of Honor, couered with white Veluet, spotted with Ermines, the Armes on the Chaufraine, with Lambrequins of white and blacke. M.

The Shield of the saide Dukedome. P.

Ancient Dukedomes and Peeredomes, being honoured to this present, with the Title of Assistance, at the Sacring of our Most Christian Kings.

GVIENNE.



ANciently called *Aquitaine*, a Dukedome and Peeredome of France, the chiefe City whereof is *Bourdeaux*, honored with a Metropolitan Sea, and with a Court of Parliament: whereunto resorteth the Prouinces of *Agenois* and of *Condonois*, *Les Landes*, *Perigort*, *Xaintonge* and *Limosine*, and hauing a very famous Vniuersity. *Porte de Gueules, a vn Leopard d'Or.*

Guienne, King of Armes, habited in his Coat of crimson Veluet, going betweene two Heralds of his March.

The Cornet of crimson Satin, caried by the Seneschal of *Guienne*.

The horse of Honor in like manner. M.

The Shield of the Dukedome, as before. P.

NORMANDIE.



IN former times the Dutchy of *Normandie*, was named *Neustria*, a principall Dutchy and Palatine of France, whereof the principall or capitall City is named *Rouen*, a Metropolitane Towne, and seat of Court of Parliament, formerly called *Eschicquier*. *Porte de Gueules, a deux Leopards d'Or.*

Normandie King of Armes, in his Coat of Crimson red Veluet with the Armes of his Limitation, hauing as assistant, two other Heralds, in the same manner.

The Cornet was of crimson Sattin doubled, supported by the great Seneschall or Steward of the Prouince.

The horse of Honor was caparisond in the same manner, & led by an Officer in state.

The Escocheon of Armes was also carried by a man of quality. N.N.

BOVRGVNDIE.



THis Dutchy is the principall and ancient Peere of Fraunce, whose Court of Parliament is kept at *Dijon* in the Diocesse of *Langres*, a principall Dutchy belonging to the Church. *Porte Bande d'Or & d'Azur, de Six pieces a la Bordure de Gueules, Escartelle de France a la Bordure componnee d'Argent, & de Gueules.*

Bourgongne King of Armes in his coat of Violet Veluet with the Armes of his Prouince, betweene two other Heraldes in the same Furniture.

The Cornet of Watchet Sattin, or serene Azure, supported by the Bayliffe of the Dutchy.

The horse of Honor caparisond in blew or Violet Veluet, as the Heralds, led or conducted by N.N.

The Scutcheon of this Principality, was open or hollow aboue, and in the middle a double Flower de Luce of Gold, carried by N.

Dukedomes erected, as Peeres of France, being the Portion and Reuennues belonging to the maintenance of my Lords, the Kings Children.

EVREVX.

THe Dutchy of *Eureux*, was the auncient Patrimony and portion of the Kings of *Nauarre*, after *Monsieur* or the Lord *Lewis* of France was made Earle of *Eureux*: (he was sonne of King *Philip* the Hardy, sonne of S. *Lewis*) and Father of *Philip d'Eureux* King of *Nauarre*, by reason of his wife the Lady *Iane* of France, daughter vnto King *Lewis Hutine*. The Armes of *Eureux* are those of France, *a la Bande Componnee d'Argent, & de Gueules*, as is to be seene at this day in the Coine of *Nauarre*.

Eureux, King of Armes, in his Coate of France, assisted with two Heraldes of the Prouince.

The Cornet in the same manner.

The horse of Honor accordingly.

The Scutcheon of *Eureux*, with the Creast and Supporters of France.

VENDOSME.

THis Dutchy was the ancient Patrimony of the Kings of *Nauarre*, by the surname of *Bourbon*, the first Prince of the Blood. It beares *De France, au Baston de Gueules charge de trois Lyons d'Argent*, the Creast of France, which is a double Flower de luce.

Vendosme King of Armes in his Coat of Violet Veluet, with the Armes of the Prouince, assisted with two Heralds.

The

The Cornet in the same manner.

The Horse of Honour accordingly.

The Scutcheon with the Creast of *France*, &c.

ALENSON.

THe Patrimonie and reuenew of the yongest Sonne or second of *France*, before the Duchy of *Valois* was annexed, or reunited to the Crowne: it beares of *France*, a border *Gueulles* charged with eight *Besans* Siluer, the Heralds call them *plats*. *Alenson* King of Armes in his Coate of Violet Veluet with the Armes of his Prouince betweene his Heralds.

A Cornet.

A Horse of Honour.

A Scutcheon with the Creast of *France*, as before.

ANIOV and TOVRAINE.

THe ordinary Patrimony and portion of the third Sonne of *France*. The Armes of *Aniou* are as those of *France*, within a Border *Gueulles*.

The Armes of *Touraine* are as those of *France*, within a Border engrayled and componce of *Or* and *Gueulles*.

Touraine King of Armes in his Coate of Violet Veluet with his Heralds.

Cornet.

Horse of Honour.

Scutcheon, with the Creast of *France*.

Aniou, King of Armes in his Coate of Violet Veluet, with his Heralds.

Cornet.

Horse of Honour or State.

The Scutcheon, as the former.

ORLEANS and MILAN diuided or vnited together.



THe portion and patrimonie appertaining to the second Son of *France*: the Armes of *France* with a *Lambeaux*, or Table of Siluer. *Milan* beares *Argent* with a *Giure* of *Azure* scaled *Gueulles*.

Millan King of Armes in his Coate of white Veluet, *seme de Giures* assisted with the Heraulds of the same Prouince.

Cornet of double white Satten.

The Escutcheon accordingly.

Orleans King of Armes in his Coate of Violet Veluet, *semy de France*, with his Heralds.

Cornet Blew or *Azure* Sattin.

The Horse of State in Violet Veluet.

The Scutcheon, accordingly as in the rest.

DAVLPHINE.



THis principality is the portion or reuenew of the first or eldest Sonne of *France*, Heire apparant to the Sacred Crowne of the Floure de Luce by his birth: which is a Principate establishing his Court of Parliament at *Grenoble*, and from thence is the Principality of *Orenge* raised, or set vp, as we haue said elsewhere.

Monsieur le Dalphine beares as *France*, quartred with a *Dalphine*: the Field *de Or*, the *Dolphine Azure*.

Dalphine King of Armes, in his Coate of Violet Veluet, with a Crowne for his Prerogatiue:

Cornet; Violet Veluet.

The Horse of Honour or State, as the same.

The

The Scutcheon accordingly, but that theſe honours and markes of Soueraigntie were carried and mannaged by the foure Barons of *Dalphine*, after whom followed thoſe markes of Soueraigntie, which immediately belonged to the Crowne of *France*, namely:

IERVSALEM and SICIL.



THe King of Armes of the ſame name, with his Coate of Violet Veluet between his Heralds.

The Cornet of Violet Veluet.

The Horſe of honour, couerd or capariſed with Violet Veluet, ſemy a border of Gold of *Cipreſſe*, with a *Lambeau* or Table of red Veluet.



The Scutchion of *Sicell*, as of *France* with a *Label Gueulles*, and a Crowne of Floure de Luces.

HIERVSALEM.

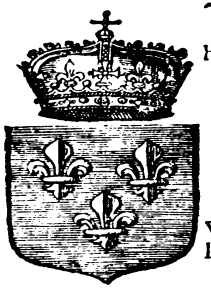
THe King of Armes of the ſaid name, in a Coate of white Veluet with the great Croſſe of *Hieruſalem*, embrodred with Gold of *Cypreſſe*, with his Herald.

Cornet of the ſame.

Horſe of State likewiſe.

The Scutcheon of the ſame Realme.

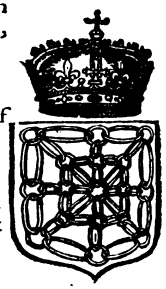
FRANCE and NAVARRE.



THe King of Armes of the ſame name with his Coate of crimſon red Veluet all alone, his Heralds going before.

Low Nauarre.
D'Olite.
Tudelle.
Sanqueſſa.
Viana.
Pampelone.

} The ſixe Prouinces of that Kingdome.



The Heralds hauing their Coates of redde Veluet with the Armes of their diuiſions, the laſt the leſſer, the firſt more fuller.

The Cornet.

The Horſe of Honour.

The Scutcheon of *Nauarre* within his Order of *Lillies*, or Floure de Luces.

After them followed the Cornet with the colours and liueries of his Maieſty, the moſt Chriſtian King; *Orenge*, white and blew, powdred or couered all ouer with *Hercules* Clubs in a border of *Argent*, with his Maieſties deuiſe, which is an H. crowned, enterlaced with two Scepters in *Saltoir*, a Sword in *Pale* ouer all, with a rich border of Gold of *Cipreſſe*, with the Motto or words as about the edge of a piece of Coine.

DVO. PROTEGIT. VNVS.

This Deuiſe is remarkeable, and to be ſeene in all the pieces of Gold or Florins of his noble anceſtors, or in the Flowrets of euidences; the Penons and Guidons were of the ſame colours, liueries, and deuiſes carried by N. N.

The Helmet of Gold crowned open before, the Creſt double Lillies or Floure de Luces, *de Or*: the Labels of the files of the ſame colours, and Liueries carried by N.

The Shield of Gold crowned, charged with the Deuiſe: carried by N.

The Horſe of eſtate couered or capariſond with blew Veluet, with a rich border of Gold and Siluer, linked with the ſame, and the ſame Deuiſe, led by N.

The

The great Standard of blew Sattin with the deuiſe, colours, and brodery of Gold of *Cypreſſe*, caried by N.

After theſe followed

Another great Standard of blew Sattin, or colour of the ſerene heauen, doubled with a rich brodery of Floure de Luces of Gold of *Cipreſſe*, yet voyded ſo plainely, that you might behold a plaine Croſſe of white Sattin, which is the Croſſe of *France*, ſupported or carried by N.

The great Standard of Saint *Michael*, the guardian Angell of *France*, of double blew Sattin or *Azure*, rich embrodered with Gold and *Cipreſſe*, powdred with Stars of Gold, carried or ſupported by N.

The great Standard of Saint *Denis*, called *Dioniſius Areopagita*, the Apoſtle of *France*, of double Sattin crimſon red, powdred with flames of Gold, in a rich embrodery: Saint *Denis* reueſted as of auncient time (according to the truth of the Story) all in white, carrying his Skull betweene his hands: this Statue was ſupported or aduanced by N.

The great Standard of the holy Order of Saint *Eſprit*, or the holy Ghoſt, made of double greene Sattin, with one pillar of Siluer, rancked with rich embrodery of Gold or hauing rankes, the reſt powdred with flames of Gold moſt plainely voyded, a border of Ciphers with the Coller of the ſame Order, fringed with Gold.

The penon of *France*, of Violet Veluet *ſemy*, or powdred with Floure de Luces of Gold of Cipreſſe, carried by N.

The Guidon of the ſame, carried by N.

Another great Standard of *France* of the ſame, carried by N.

After which followed certaine Squires on Horſebacke, carrying his Maieſties Armes, that is to ſay:

His Spurres of Gold couered with Cipreſſe, vpon a Truncheon, couered with blacke Veluet, carried by *Beniamin*.

His Gauntlets in the ſame manner, carried by *Beuis*.

The Scutcheon of *France* with an Imperiall Diadem, and the two Orders of Saint *Michael*, and the Holy Ghoſt, round about, carried by *Puluinel*.

The Coat Armour of Violet Veluet powdred with Lillies of Gold of Cipreſſe moſt plainely voided, doubled of Violet Sattin, carried by the Viſcount *de L'Iſle*.

His Helmet of Gold with an Imperiall Crowne of the ſame, to which was adioyned the mantell Royall of Violet Veluet, couered with Floure de Luces of Gold of Cipreſſe furred with Ermines; it was carried by the Lord *Liencourt* the firſt, or principall Eſquire.

The Kings Horſe of honor couered, or capariſond with Violet Veluet, *ſemy flowry* with golden Lillies of Cipreſſe, with fringes and creſpines of the ſame, with the *Labels* and Plumes Violet and Yellow, it was led by three Eſquires on foote: *Lu Paſſe: Lu Ferte: & la Reuiere Breton.*

After them marched *Montioy*, King of Armes of *France*, all alone

After him followed twelue Pages of the Chamber, apparrelled in blacke Veluet on foote, with Bonets on their heads of the ſame.

After them came on Horſeback all alone *Roger de Belgrade*, great Eſquire of *France*, carrying the Sword Royall in a Scarfe, the Scabberd, Girdell, and Hangers of Violet Veluet, full of Floure de Luces of Gold of Cipreſſe embrodered, the whole couered with Cipreſſe.

Then followed the Vſhers of the Chamber, carrying their Maces of Gold couered with blacke Cipreſſe.

After them marched the Biſhop of *Paris*, being the Kings Curat, or hauing the charge of the Kings body, with him of *Angiers*, repreſenting Cardinall *Peron*, great Almoner of *France*.

After them came the Court of Parliament in Robes of red Scarler, with Hoods of the ſame furred with Ermines, and Bonnets or Hats on their Heads, the Court of Parliament did not ſeeme to mourne, to ſhow, that Iuſtice did not ceaſe in *France*. In the midſt of them, the portrature or effigies of the King was ſumptuouſly carried in

his

The Scutcheon accordingly, but that theſe honours and markes of Soueraigntie were carried and mannaged by the foure Barons of *Dalphine*, after whom followed thoſe markes of Soueraigntie, which immediately belonged to the Crowne of *France*, namely:

IERVSALEM and SICIL.



THe King of Armes of the ſame name, with his Coate of Violet Veluet between his Heralds.

The Cornet of Violet Veluet.

The Horſe of honour, couerd or caparíſed with Violet Veluet, ſemy a border of Gold of *Cipreſſe*, with a *Lambeau* or Table of red Veluet.



The Scutchion of *Sicell*, as of *France* with a *Label Gueulles*, and a Crowne of Floure de Luces.

HIERVS ALEM.

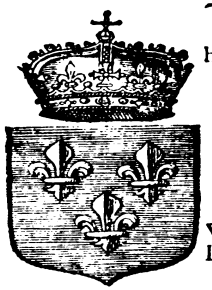
THe King of Armes of the ſaid name, in a Coate of white Veluet with the great Croſſe of *Hieruſalem*, embrodred with Gold of *Cypreſſe*, with his Herald.

Cornet of the ſame.

Horſe of State likewiſe.

The Scutcheon of the ſame Realme.

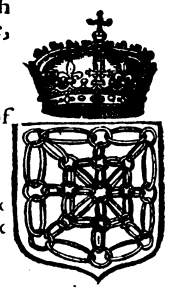
FRANCE and NAVARRE.



THe King of Armes of the ſame name with his Coate of crimſon red Veluet all alone, his Heralds going before.

Low Nauarre.
D'Olite.
Tudelle.
Sanqueſſa.
Viana.
Pampelone.

} The ſixe Prouinces of that Kingdome.



The Heralds hauing their Coates of redde Veluet with the Armes of their diuiſions, the laſt the leſſer, the firſt more fuller.

The Cornet.

The Horſe of Honour.

The Scutcheon of *Nauarre* within his Order of *Lillies*, or Floure de Luces.

After them followed the Cornet with the colours and liueries of his Maieſty, the moſt Chriſtian King; *Orenge*, white and blew, powdred or couered all ouer with *Hercules* Clubs in a border of *Argent*, with his Maieſties deuiſe, which is an Imperiall Crowned, enterlaced with two Scepters in *Saltoir*, a Sword in *Pale* ouer all, with a rich border of Gold of *Cipreſſe*, with the Motto or words as about the edge of a piece of Coine.

DVO. PROTEGIT. VNVS.

This Deuiſe is remarkeable, and to be ſeene in all the pieces of Gold or Florins of his noble anceſtors, or in the Flowrets of euidences; the Penons and Guidons were of the ſame colours, liueries, and deuiſes carried by N. N.

The Helmet of Gold crowned open before, the Creſt double Lillies or Floure de Luces, *de Or*: the Labels of the files of the ſame colours, and Liueries carried by N.

The Shield of Gold crowned, charged with the Deuiſe: carried by N.

The Horſe of eſtate couered or caparíſond with blew Veluet, with a rich border of Gold and Siluer, linked with the ſame, and the ſame Deuiſe, led by N.

The

The great Standard of blew Sattin with the deuiſe, colours, and brodery of Gold of *Cypreſſe*, caried by N.

After theſe followed

Another great Standard of blew Sattin, or colour of the ſerene heauen, doubled with a rich brodery of Floure de Luces of Gold of *Cipreſſe*, yet voyded ſo plainely, that you might behold a plaine Croſſe of white Sattin, which is the Croſſe of *France*, ſupported or carried by N.

The great Standard of Saint *Michael*, the guardian Angell of *France*, of double blew Sattin or *Azure*, rich embroderd with Gold and *Cipreſſe*, powdred with Stars of Gold, carried or ſupported by N.

The great Standard of Saint *Denis*, called *Dioniſius Areopagita*, the Apoſtle of *France*, of double Sattin crimſon red, powdred with flames of Gold, in a rich embrodery: Saint *Denis* reueſted as of auncient time (according to the truth of the Story) all in white, carrying his Skull betweene his hands: this Statue was ſupported or aduanced by N.

The great Standard of the holy Order of Saint *Eſprit*, or the holy Ghoſt, made of double greene Sattin, with one pillar of Siluer, rancked with rich embrodery of Gold or hauing rankes, the reſt powdred with flames of Gold moſt plainely voyded, a border of Ciphers with the Coller of the ſame Order, fringed with Gold.

The penon of *France*, of Violet Veluet *ſemy*, or powdred with Floure de Luces of Gold of Cipreſſe, carried by N.

The Guidon of the ſame, carried by N.

Another great Standard of *France* of the ſame, carried by N.

After which followed certaine Squires on Horſebacke, carrying his Maieſties Armes, that is to ſay:

His Spurres of Gold couered with Cipreſſe, vpon a Truncheon, couered with blacke Veluet, carried by *Beniamin*.

His Gauntlets in the ſame manner, carried by *Beuis*.

The Scutcheon of *France* with an Imperiall Diadem, and the two Orders of Saint *Michael*, and the Holy Ghoſt, round about, carried by *Puluinel*.

The Coat Armour of Violet Veluet powdred with Lillies of Gold of Cipreſſe moſt plainely voided, doubled of Violet Sattin, carried by the Viſcount *de L'Iſle*.

His Helmet of Gold with an Imperiall Crowne of the ſame, to which was adioyned the mantell Royall of Violet Veluet, couered with Floure de Luces of Gold of Cipreſſe furred with Ermines; it was carried by the Lord *Liencourt* the firſt, or principall Eſquire.

The Kings Horſe of honor couered, or caparíſond with Violet Veluet, *ſemy flowry* with golden Lillies of Cipreſſe, with fringes and creſpines of the ſame, with the *Labels* and Plumes Violet and Yellow, it was led by three Eſquires on foote: *Lu Paſſe: Lu Ferte: & la Reuiere Breton*.

After them marched *Montioy*, King of Armes of *France*, all alone

After him followed twelue Pages of the Chamber, apparrelled in blacke Veluet on foote, with Bonets on their heads of the ſame.

After them came on Horſeback all alone *Roger de Belgrade*, great Eſquire of *France*, carrying the Sword Royall in a Scarfe, the Scabberd, Girdell, and Hangers of Violet Veluet, full of Floure de Luces of Gold of Cipreſſe embrodered, the whole couered with Cipreſſe.

Then followed the Vſhers of the Chamber, carrying their Maces of Gold couered with blacke Cipreſſe.

After them marched the Biſhop of *Paris*, being the Kings Curat, or hauing the charge of the Kings body, with him of *Angiers*, repreſenting Cardinall *Peron*, great Almoner of *France*.

After them came the Court of Parliament in Robes of red Scarlet, with Hoods of the ſame furred with Ermines, and Bonnets or Hats on their Heads, the Court of Parliament did not ſeeme to mourne, to ſhow, that Iuſtice did not ceaſe in *France*. In the midſt of them, the portrature or effigies of the King was ſumptuouſly carried in

his

his bed of State, or Chariot of honor, with an Imperiall Crowne on his head, the Order of the *Holy Ghoſt* about his Coller or neck, the Scepter Royal in his right hand, and a hand of Iuſtice in the other, with a border of Ermines.

The couer or Canopy of this bed of State or Chariot of honor, vnder which (as you haue heard the portrature lay was ſupported or carried by the ſixe Preſidents of the great Chamber (*Monſier* the firſt Preſident *de Harlay*, abſent by reaſon of ſickneſſe) apparrelled in their Mantels, Hoods, and Caps of maintenance on their head, a Veſtment of honor vſed of auncient Monarkes and Potentates, the firſt two, who went before, were the Preſident *Mole* on the right hand, and *Iambeuile Camys* on the other; in the middle were the Preſident *Thou* and *Sequire*; behinde, came the Preſident of *Blanc meſnil Potier*, and *Forget*.

Round about the Lords of the Parliament, marched ſome of the *Scotch* Guard.

After them followed the Prouoſt of *Marchants Lury Sanguin*, Counſellor of the great Chamber, with the foure Sheriffes of *Paris* in the Roabes of their Liuerie, without mourning, carrying another Canopy or cloath of eſtate, after the body. This Canopy was of Cloath of Siluer, damaſked with great red branching worke, to the bottome of the ſame, croſſed with white Sattin round, without any Coates of Armes, the Staues which vpheld it, couered with white Veluet. It was receiued of them or from them, by the Religious or Clergy of Saint *Denis* in *France*, at the bowing of a Croſſe in the Village of the Chappell, and then carried by them after the portrature vnto their Church, where the ſaid Canopy remained euer after.

Next to the Sheriffes and the Prouoſt of the Merchants, marched in front, and on Horſeback couered with blacke Veluet, croſſed with white Sattin, the Duke of *Fronſacke*, Earle of Saint *Paul*, by the ſirname of *Orleans*, repreſenting the great Maiſter of the *Hoſtell* of *France*, and he carried in his right hand a Staffe, couered with blacke Veluet. In the middle came the Duke of *Guiſe*, carrying the great Banner of *France* of Violet Veluet, powdred with Floure de Luces of Gold of Cipreſſe, with a rich embrodery fringed with the ſame, he repreſented the great Chamberlaine of *France*; and the Baron *de Thermes* on the left hand, repreſented the firſt Gentleman of the Chamber.

After them marched the Lords, that were principall mourners, that is to ſay, my Lords: The Prince of *Conde* and Count *Soiſons*, Princes of the bloud, Knights of the Order of the *Holy Ghoſt*, with their Orders aboue their necks, or Collers.

The Duke of *Guiſe*, Prince *Iamuile*, and Duke of *Elbeuf*; Princes of the Houſe of *Lorraine*, but not Knights of the Order.

The Dukes of *Eſpernon*, And Of *Montbaſon*. } Knights of the ſaid Order.

All riding on Horſebacke, one after another, with Chapperons on their Heads, and Collars of the Order vpon their mourning Roabes, hauing long traines, containing about fiue Ells in length, and carried vp by their Gentlemen.

After the great mourners, Marched in front

The Vſher and Herauld of Armes, *Of the Order of the Holy Ghoſt*, being followed

By the High Treaſurer, and the Regiſter of the ſaid Order: And they were followed

By nine Knights of the Order, being mourners on foot, according as all the reſt of the Funerall Pompe were, which was compoſed of

Foure and twenty Pages, belonging to the Kings Stable, wearing Coates and Night-Caps of blacke Veluet.

An hundred Gentlemen of the Kings Houſe.

Foure Trompets, couered with blacke Cypreſſe, bearing their Trompets Boccales downeward.

Foure Banners, of foure Companies of Archers of the Kings Guard, conſiſting of foure different Cullers, as namely Red, Green, Blew and Aſh-Culler, couered likewiſe with black Cypreſſe, the Cullers trailing on the ground, and the Guard the heads of their Halberds in like manner.

Such

Such was the traine of this enterment, wherein were counted ten thouſand perſons cloathed in mourning, and teares trickling downe their cheekes, for the moſt part of them.

The Streetes of *Paris*, where the Conuoye paſſed for the two firſt dayes, were hung all with blacke, the moſt part of them being blacke Veluet, with the Armes of the deceaſed King, and of the Citie.

At euery ſixt Houſe, all along the ſaid Streetes, ſtood men in mourning, each one holding a lighted Torch in his hand, bearing the Armes of the Citie: the principall Gate whereof was hung with blacke Serge, and thereon blacke Veluet alſo, with the Armes of the dead King, during the three dayes of the Obſequies and Funerall.

The Churches of our Lady in *Paris*, and of Saint *Denis* in *France*, were hung with Serge, and blacke Veluet vpon it, with Armes of the deceaſed King. The bodies of thoſe Churches, the Quires, the Wings, Croſſings, Trauerſings, Pillers and Vaults, both aboue and below, were full of burning Waxe Lights, each of them containing a pound weight, and ſtanding (not aboue a foote in diſtance) one from another.

In the Quire of the Church of *Paris* (as alſo in that of Saint *Denys*, according to the length and wideneſſe of them) was fixed a frame, called *Vne Chappelle Ardente*, of Carpenters worke, the nether-part whereof was ſixteene foote in largeneſſe, and the toppe ſupported by foure great Pillars ſquare, of twentie foote in height, which ſuſtained three Friezes, and thirteene Piramids, with their degrees, all full of Croſſe-Croſſelets and pins of Wood, which carried aboue three thouſand burning Waxe-Candles, each of them containing a pound in weight. Theſe Piramides (and eſpecially the thirteenth in the midſt of all) were ſo highly raiſed, that they ſeemed to touch the roofe of the Church. Theſe *Chappelles Ardentes* were within the plaine grounds painted with Aſhe colour, and Floure de Luces of Orpine Siluer, according as the foure great Pillars were, the Balleſtars and Pillars round about, but beneath they were painted blacke.

Vpon the third Frieze aloft, were rancked the Armes of the Duchies, Counties and Seigneuries, belonging to the Crowne of *France*, all repreſented in Funerall Pompe.

That in the midſt, was engirt with a folding of Violet Veluet, very thickly powdred with Floure de Luces of fine Gold, in richeſt embrodery.

The laſt, but the firſt in order, was engirt with a wrapping of Blacke Veluet, and couered with the dead Kings Armes, in rich Embroderie.

The great Piramid in the midſt, was entoured with three gilded Crownes, in manner of Garlands with great Fleurons, repreſenting the Kingdomes of *Sicile*, *Ieruſalem* and *Nauarre*, and (aboue them) the great Imperiall Crowne of *France*, which couered the three other, and on the top thereof, a great double Croſſe, charged with burning Waxe-lights.

Vndernea th this *Chapelle Ardente*, engirt with great Tapers, of ſixe pounds a piece, lay the Body and Effigie of the deceaſed King, in his Bedde of Honour.

The firſt day of Funerall Pompe, was ſung in the Church of *Paris* (where the Body reſted for that night) Vigils, and other Prayers for the dead. On the morrow the Maſſes, the laſt whereof was ſaid by the Biſhop of *Paris*, the Funerall Oration deliuered by *Coſpeau*, Biſhop of *Aire* in *Guienne*; the Dinner performed at the Biſhops Pallace. After which was done, the Funerall Pompe began to March (according as the day before) ſo farre as to Saint *Denys*.

On the Thurſday, being the firſt day of Iuly, the Portrature or Effigies of the King, was carried to the Treaſurie of the Church, and the Body placed vnder the *Chappelle Ardente*; the Maſſes Celebrated, and the laſt ſaid by the Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe*, and the Funerall Oration deliuered by the Biſhop of *Angiers*, *Myron*.

The laſt Maſſe being ended, the Great Maiſter of the Ceremonies of *France*, *De Rhodes*, tooke from off the Hearſe the Crowne, the Scepter, the Hand of Iuſtice, and

the other Honors, which he diſtributed according to the ancient cuſtome; and after the State, Cloathes of cloth of Gold, and of Veluet.

The Gentlemen of the Chamber, and the Scottes Guard, tooke the Coffin, and brought it to the entrance of the caue or Vault of Ceremonies, which is at the entring into the Quire, on the Epiſtle ſide at the South doore, which euery day is hung with Blacke, where reſt the bodies, entoured with foure burning Tapers, day and night, vntill ſuch time as the Bodies are taken thence, and put into the place deſtinied and appointed at their Buriall.

At entering into the Vault, the Cardinall *de Ioyeuſe* (ouer the body of the deceaſed King) ſaid the accuſtomed Prayers. Which being ended, the ſaid Cardinall was ſeated at one ſide of the Vault, and the Duke of *Fronſack* (in quality of Great Maiſter) at the other ſide, hauing by them the Great Maſter of the Ceremonies.

Within the Vault, vpon the very firſt ſtep thereof, ſtood one of the Kings of Armes of France, who acording as he was commanded by the Great Maſter of the Ceremonies, called all them which carried the Honors. As namely, the Cornet, the Guidon, the Pennon, the great Standard, and the Banner Royall: the Spurres, the Helmet, the Coate of Armes, the Sword, the Crowne, the Scepter, the hand of Iuſtice, the Collar of the Order, and others; which ſuch as carried them, deliuered to this firſt King of Armes, who gaue them to the other Kings of his Companions, to rank them in their due Order. And then the Great Maiſter of the Houſhold, laſt of all deliuered vp his Staffe.

All theſe Honors being laide on the Bicre of the deceaſed King in the vault of Ceremonies; the Duke of *Fronſack* aroſe, ſaying in a ſoft and low voice, *The King is dead.* And immediately *Mon Ioye*, King of Armes, going on into the middeſt of the Quire, went to the high Altar, and to the *Chapelle Ardente*, ſpeaking out aloud three times together: *The King is dead, pray all to God for his Soule.* Then euery one falling on their knees, ſo long as while the *De profundis* may be ſaide, the ſame Duke of *Fronſacke* returning from the Vault, with his Staffe of Great Maiſter, ſaith; *Vine le Roy, God ſaue the King.* Then *Mon Ioye* King of Armes, going againe into the midſt of the Quire, before the high Altar, cryeth aloud three ſeuerall times; *God ſaue King Lewes, Thirteenth of the name, by the Grace of God, the Moſt-Chriſtian King of France, and of Nauarre, to whom God giue a moſt happy and long life.* Which was no ſooner ſaide, but the Church eechoed with ſounds of Drummes, Fifes, Trumpets, Cornets, Hoboyes, and all other kindes of Muſicke, their Cypreſſe Veyles being taken off, in ſigne of ioy, to finiſh this Funerall pompe, with the Maxime of State belonging to this Monarchie: *That the King of France neuer dyeth.* And for this reaſon, the Court of Parliament marched in his Funerals, not in habits of Mourning, but in Robes of Scarlet.

The parcels of Honour receiued againe, by them that had the carriage of them; the Princes were conducted into the Great Hall of the Abbey, there to haue their dinner: and after them the Soueraigne Courts, the Vniuerſitie, and other Aſſiſtants in the Funerall Pompe. In another Hall, dined the Duke of *Fronſack*: They which caried the Honors; And the Officers for the mouth.

After dinner, the Duke of *Fronſack* returning into the great Hall, made a ſummary Diſcourſe to the whole Aſſembly, concerning the death of the late King, and made offer of his ſeruice to the Officers of his houſe: promiſing, to recommend them to the King reigning, to the end that they might be ſtill maintained in their eſtates, Offices, and Dignities, deliuering theſe words: *We haue loſt our late Maſter, and therefore do hold no more authority in his Houſe.* Which being ſpoken, hee brake the Staffe, belonging to his Office of Great Maiſter.

The Queene (who neuer had beene ſeene in publique, ſince the Act of her Regencie;) came vpon the Saterday following, being the third day of Iuly, to the Byſhops Palace of *Paris*, to aſſiſt in the ſeruice which ſhe cauſed to be performed for her deceaſed Lord. The Church of *Paris* was hung with Blacke, according as it had beene before: except the *Chapelle Ardente*, which was taken away. Inſted thereof, and in the place of the Eagle (which they called vulgarly *Ad Aquilam*, where poſſeſſion is taken of the Benefices belonging to the ſaid Church) was erected an Oratory Pew, couered with a large great Canopie, made all of blacke Serge.

Shee

She came to the ſaid Church, betweene the houres of eleuen and twelue at noone, entering in at the South doore. Before her, went the Princes, Lords, and Knightes of the Court: my Lords the Princes of Blood, *De Conty*, and *de Soiſſons* led her. The Traine of her Mourning Garment, was about ſix Elles in length, being carried by the Ladies and Princeſſes Dowagers, of *Conde*, of *Conty*, of *Soiſſons*, and of *Montpenſier*.

Followed by Madam the Eldeſt daughter, *Elizabeth* of France; And ſhe followed By Queene *Margaret*, cloathed in Mourning.

And after them, the other Princeſſes and Ladies of the Court; attyred likewiſe in Mourning; that is to ſay, Serge and Blacke Cypreſſe.

Du Tillet, in the Tract of the later dayes Exequies and Enterrements of the Kings and Queenes of France, ſayth; *That Scarletted Violet is the Mourning for Kings, and for Queenes, ſad Tawny.* Hee ſhould there haue added, that this was in the life time of their Husbands, but not after their death. For, I do well remember, that I ſaw King *Henry*, Third of the name, of bleſſed memorie, to be cloathed in a Violet Robe, when he went and ſprinkled Holy-water, on the Body of the deceaſed Monſieur, Duke of *Alanſon* and of *Valois* his Brother, in the Hall of Saint *Iames du Hault Pas*, the Sunday before the Feaſt of Saint *Iohn Baptiſt*, Anno one thouſand, fiue hundred, foureſcore, and foure. After his Maieſtie followed the Queen, *Louiſa* of *Lorrain* and *Vaudemont*, his Wife, cloathed in a Garment of the Stuffe called *Tamine*, and of Hayre-colour, hir Litter whollie open, and lined with the ſame Stuffe.

But concerning Widdowed Queenes, their Mourning was (in former times) of White. And the ſame faſhion is to be ſeene at the Gray-Friers of *Paris*, in a Glaſſe-Window of the Chappell, for the deceaſed Lord, the firſt Preſident *Meſſire Gilles le Maiſtre*, the Wife or Mother of the ſayde Lord *Maiſtre*, ware White Mourning. And from thence, Widdowed Queenes ſeeme to bee ſtyled by the name of white Queenes.

Afterward, this Mourning habite became wholly Blacke, as is to bee ſeene at the ſame Grey-Friars, in the Quire on the right hand, in the glaſſe Windowe of deceaſed Queene *Elizabeth*, Widdow to King *Charles* the Ninth. And the very ſame haue we ſeene for the Queenes *Louiſa*, and *Mary*, Widdowes to the King *Henries*, the Third and Fourth of famous Memorie, to weare Blacke in Mourning, and not White, or Tawnie.

Index mæſtitiæ eſt pallus color: Vtimur omnes
Hoc habitu, tumulis cum damus inferias.

Blacke beſt becommeth Mourning: Vſually
For Buriall, there's no fitter Linery.
As *Alciat* ſaith in his Emblemes.

Of ſuch Ceremonies, as haue bin obſerued, and ought to be kept, at the Obſequies and Funeralles of Knights of Order.

CHAP. X. & VLT.

NOW we will finiſh theſe our famous Recherches, with the Funerals of Knights of Order, and Lords of note: as being the very laſt Acte of their Life, and finall ſhutting vp of our *Theater of Honor and Knighthood.*

The Great and worthie Captain *Bertrand du Gleſquin*, Conſtable of France; the Thunder-bolt and dreadfull terror of the Engliſh; the prop and ſupport of the *Caſtillians*, laid Siege before *Caſtel-Nau-de-Rondon* in *Geuaudan*, the laſt place which the Engliſh held in the Countrey of *Auuergne*, and ſware by his ordinarie Oath (*I vow to God*) that he would vn-neſt the Engliſh thence. Otherwiſe called *Du Gueſclin*.

The death of the Valiant Constable.

On the fifteenth day of the Siedge, the good Constable dyed by sickenesse, and his death being concealed some certaine dayes; the English were constrained to yeeld, & themselues brought the keyes of the place, and layde them on the Coffin of the great Constable: whose body being enbalmed, was carried by the Count *de Forests*, to *Moulins* in *Burbonnois*, where the good Duke of *Bourbon* performed for him a very solemn Obsequie, in the Church of *Nostre Dame de Moulins*, and where newly the Duke had founded a perpetuall Colledge. But before, the saide Duke of *Bourbon* had sent word to King *Charles* the Fift, concerning the death of his Noble Constable, which his Highnesse tooke exceeding greeuously.

It is an honor to Princes, to remember passed good Seruices.

And, because the King wel remembred, the many acceptable Seruices of his Constable *Messire Bertrand du Guesclin* (Count of *Longueuille*, whose Armes we haue noted in the Tract, concerning the Orders of Spaine, and of them of his Descent & Linage:) he being so forward for him during his life, hee would not now seeme backeward, in honouring so braue a Soldiour after death. For the King ordained, that (after his death) the saide Constable should be buried honourably at his feete: *At S. Denys, where the Kings of France haue their Royall Enterment. And likewise the good Marshal of Sancerre, who had serued him faithfully: As accordingly it was done, and there they lye.*

Out of the Chronicle of the Duke of Bourbon.

Not long was it after, but (the next yeare following) departed out of this World, King *Charles* of France, Fift of the name, that had so valiantly and wisely gouerned his Kingdome, and finished his dayes in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand, three hundred, fourescore, and eight. Now behold what is said in the Chronicle of *Lewes*, the good Duke of *Bourbon*. *And for the faithfull seruices, performed by Guesclin, Constable of France, to King Charles the Fift: his Monument is to be seene at the feete of the saide King Charles, in his Chappel at S. Denis in France, without the Quire, on the South side. And before that of Messire Bertrand du Guesclin, hath (a very long time) hung a Lampe, well maintained with Oyle, which burneth continually day and night.*

Out of *Iuuenaldes Vrsins* his Chronicle

Messire Iuuenal des Vrsins obserueth in his Chronicle, vnder the yeare of Grace, one thousand, three hundred, fourescore, and nine, That King *Charles*, Sixt of the name, being desirous to honor the person of the Constable *Guesclin*: caused to be sung in the said Church of Saint *Denis*, a very solemne Seruice for the dead, with a most goodly Luminarie of wax Tapers and Torches lighted.

Mourners at the Funerall.

For Mourners, were appointed *Messire Oliuer de Cliffon*, who is well knowne to beare *De Gueules, au Lyon d'Argent, Arme, Lampasse, & Coronné d'Or.*

The Marshall of *Sancerre*, whom *Perron* hath let passe in silence, and ranked another vnder the name of *Iohn de Bueill*, which is the Ancient sirname of this Family, holding the Countie of *Sancerre*, Admirall of France, and Knight of the Order of S. *Michael*, vnder King *Lewes* the Eleuenth: wherein he is much mistaken, confounding the one, with the other.

And ten other Knights, whose Sirnames and Armes I haue long desired, to giue them place (equall to desert) in this *Theater of Honor*: because it is a matter most certaine, that for Honour and Valiancie, they were the very worthiest men of their time. These ten great personages, were all attyred in Robes of Mourning.

The Bishop of *Auxerre* sung the Masse. And when they came to the Offring The Bishop and the King came and entred into the Quire.

And first of all came foure men of Armes, Armed at all points, mounted on Coursers well appointed and adorned, *Representing the person of the dead man, when hee liued.*

Secondly, after them came Foure men, hauing the Coates of Armes of the deceased when he liued, bearing Banners of his Armes. And wee haue heeretofore obserued, that *Messire Bertrand du Guesclin*, Count of *Longue Ville*, *Portoit d'Argent, a l'Aigle esploye de Sable, membre, & becque de Gueules, au Baston de mesme brochant sur le Tout.*

This being done, the Bishop returned to the Altar, and then the Mourners came to the Offring, each one holding *a Shield, with the deceaseds Armes; and a naked Sword with the point vpward.*

After these, the Offring was seconded by them of the Blood, and Kindred to the King. And

And then came Eight Gentlemen Armed in Coates of Maile, who cartied the Helmets, and foure Banners of the dead mans Armes, and placed them on the Altar.

When these things were done, a Learned Sermon was delliuered by a Doctour in Diuinity: declaring the Vertues, Valiance, and Wisedome of the party deceased; and after the Masse was ended, they went all to dinner.

Then was giuen a generall Almes to the poore, and all that would come.

And great gifts were giuen by the King, to the Lords and eminent persons there present, in honour of so worthy a Knight and Noble Gentleman, as was the late deceased Constable.

So in like manner, at the Obsequies and Funerals of Princes and great Lords, as also of Knights, Captaines, and Gentlemen, are carried their Banner and Coronet, their Pennons and great Standard of Black colour, and their deuises training to the ground. Their Sword, Spurres, Helmet and Shield of their Armes.

Diuers sorts of Funeral pompe.

If they be Knights, the Collar of their Order must lye vpon the Pal of black Veluet:

If they be Dukes or Counts, the Crowne or *Chappeau*, with the Coate of Armes, and the Mantle Ducall, or the Countes, according to the Dignities which they helde in their life time.

But before these Honors, are led their Horses of Battell, trapped in Blacke; Trumpets likewise couered with Blacke, and sounding softly; Drummes answering them in the same manner, and retorting sad sighings (as it were) each to other, as sorrowfully lamenting. And according as men haue finished the last Act of their life, so they ought to haue their buriall.

Dying in w

If he dyed in Warre, *which is the Bed of Honor, and of true Nobility*: His Effigie formed after the life, ought to be vpon his Tombe; but presented vppon his knees, the Helmet on his head, Sword by his side, Spurres on his heeles, Gauntlets on his hands, and Armed at all points, hauing aboue all the Coate of his Armes. And ouer the Monument, the Banner, Standard, Pennon and Shield of his Armes, aptly placed.

Dying of s nes, or wo ded in thefi

If he dyed of Sickenesse, or wounded, being in action of warre: his Effigie ought to be armed with a Cuirats and Coate of Armes, and a side by him his Helmet; but not vpon his head, his Gauntlet also neere it. He may be allowed to haue his Sword by his side, Spurres on his heeles: but aboue his Tombe or Monument, hee ought to haue but a Cornet, and the Pennon at the most, but not the great Standard.

Dying peac ably in the House.

If he dyed peaceably, that is to say, of some sickenesse in his house: his figure ought not to be vpon his knees, but onely lying along, with his Coate of Armes, Armed for fashion sake, the Helmet and Spurres placed at his feete, and his feete lying or vnderpropped with two little Dogges.

A Caueat to Caruers and Sculptures.

These circumstances ought to be very carefully obserued by Caruers & Engrauers, who (too often thorow their grosse ignorance) do confound the Order of these Authentick Ceremonies, which (in former times) haue beene kept most exactly.

In many places haue bin seen Effigies armed & on horseback, as in the chapel of our Lady at *Rouen*, the burial on horseback of *le Sieur de Breese*, great Seneschal of *Normandy*.

A history concerning King *Philip le Bel*.

In the body of the Church at *Paris*, the Figure of *Phillip le Bel*, King of *France*, and of *Nauarre*, who hauing vanquished the rebellious Flemmings at *Ments* in *Puelle*, the moneth of August, Anno one thousand, three hundred and foure, at his returning to *Paris*, entred into the Church of our Lady, euen as he is there to be seene on Horseback, and Armed. There he offered his Horse and Armes, according to the Vow he had formerly made, at such time as he was surprized by the Flemmings vnarmed, and saw slaine before him, *Messire Hugues de Bonuille*, a Knight, and two Brethren, Burgesses of *Paris*, *Peter* and *Iames Gentiens*. Wherefore, it is to be considered, that such Effigies on Horseback, and Armed in Churches, doe serue for Enquirie, concerning some extraordinary and excellent acte of Armes, done farre off from the common rule.

Concerning great Seales.

In the like manner, Princes, Soueraignes, and Barons of high Birth, are figured in their great Seales Armed, and mounted on Horse-backe, holding a naked Sword in the right hand, and a Shield of their Armes in the other. Their Wiues also are represented on Horseback, holding with the left hand their Palfraies Bridle, and a Hawke on the right fist. Which declareth the note of an high Baronie, that is to say, a Duchy, or County at the least. The

Funerall pomp in Churches.

The last testimony of Honor in Nobility and Knighthood, is Lights in Chappels, hanging Churches with Blacke, & Funerall Girdles, as well within as without Churches, where such buriall is performed. Funerall Girdles are charged with the Armes of the Lord deceased, and (in some respect) with them of their Wiues. The Armes of Lords are depicted with their Mettall and Colour, their Helmets *Tarrez de Front*, Charged with their Deuice on the Crest, wauing with Lambrequins, and sustayned by their Supporters. The Armes of the said Lords, are in Banner after the Anticke manner, and most commonly in the Shield, engirt with the Order of the Knight.

Those of widdowed Ladies, ought likewise to be in the Shield, but not otherwise, with the Armes, or at the least the moity of her Husbands on the right side, parted with the said Ladies on the left, and the Shields or Escocheons entoured with Girdles of Cordelieres, which we terme white Cordelieres, for reasons before alledged in this great Labour.

Eldest Sonnes deceasing vnmarried, carry their Armes in the Shield, the Helmet siluer, not open: the said Shield bearing the Fathers Armes, and ordinarily parted with the Mothers.

And as for Daughters, they beare but the Paternall Armes; yet not in Shield, as Widowed Ladies do, and the Cordeliers about; but onely in Lozenge, as wee haue related in the Tract of Shields, and elsewhere.

Soli Deo Laus, Honor, & Gloria.

MVSEVM BRITANNICVM

FINIS.

MVSEVM BRITANNICVM